ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

Third Edition

Jerry March

WHITMAN COLLEGE LIBRARY

WHITMAN COLLEGE LIBRARY

ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

ADVANCED ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

REACTIONS, MECHANISMS, AND STRUCTURE

THIRD EDITION

Jerry March
Professor of Chemistry
Adelphi University

Withdrawn by
Whitman College Library

A Wiley-Interscience Publication

JOHN WILEY & SONS

New York • Chichester • Brisbane • Toronto • Singapore

QD
251.2
.M37
1985

PENROSE MEMORIAL LIBRARY
WHITMAN COLLEGE
WALLA WALLA, WASHINGTON 99362

Copyright © 1985 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

All rights reserved. Published simultaneously in Canada.

Reproduction or translation of any part of this work beyond that permitted by Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act without the permission of the copyright owner is unlawful. Requests for permission or further information should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data:

March, Jerry, 1929–
Advanced organic chemistry.

"A Wiley-Interscience publication."
Includes bibliographical references and indexes.
1. Chemistry, Organic. I. Title.

QD251.2.M37 1985 547 84-15311
ISBN 0-471-88841-9

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

PENROSE MEMORIAL LIBRARY
RECEIVED

JUL 26 1985
86-152
ACQUISITIONS DEP'T

This book is dedicated to the more than 15,000 scientists whose names are listed in the Author Index, and to my wife, Beverly, and our children, Gale, David, and June

PREFACE

The growth of knowledge in organic chemistry has continued unabated since the second edition of this book was written. The third edition reflects this growth. Every topic retained from the second edition has been brought up to date. Changes, ranging from minor to extensive, have been made on virtually every page of the second edition. More than 5000 references have been added. An innovation is the addition of the new IUPAC names for transformations (see p. 252). However, no changes were made in the organization: The structure of the third edition is essentially the same as that of the second. Like the first two editions, the third is intended to be a textbook for a course in advanced organic chemistry taken by students who have had the standard undergraduate organic and physical chemistry courses. I have attempted to give equal weight to the three fundamental aspects of the study of organic chemistry: reactions, mechanisms, and structure. A student who has completed a course based on this book should be able to approach the literature directly, with a sound knowledge of modern basic organic chemistry. I have treated lightly or not at all the major special areas of organic chemistry: terpenes, carbohydrates, proteins, polymerization and electrochemical reactions, steroids, and the like. It is my opinion that these topics are best approached after the first year of graduate study, when the fundamentals have been mastered, either in advanced courses, or directly, by consulting the many excellent books and review articles available on these subjects.

The organization is based on reaction types, so that the student can be shown that despite the large number of organic reactions, a relatively few principles suffice to explain nearly all of them. Accordingly, the reactions–mechanisms section of this book (Part 2) is divided into 10 chapters, each concerned with a different type of reaction. In the first part of each chapter the appropriate basic mechanisms are discussed along with considerations of reactivity and orientation, while the second part consists of numbered sections devoted to individual reactions, where the scope and the mechanism of each reaction are discussed. I have used numbered sections for the reactions, because I have found that students learn better when they are presented with clear outlines (for a further discussion of the arrangement of Part 2, see pp. 251–252). Since the methods for the preparation of individual classes of compounds (e.g., ketones, nitriles, etc.) are not treated all in one place, an index has been provided (Appendix B) by use of which all methods for the preparation of a given type of compound will be found. For each reaction, a list of *Organic Syntheses* references is given. Thus for most reactions the student can consult actual examples in *Organic Syntheses*.

The structure of organic compounds is discussed in the first five chapters of Part 1. This section provides a necessary background for understanding mechanisms and is also important in its own right. The discussion begins with chemical bonding and ends with a chapter on stereochemistry. There follow two chapters on reaction mechanisms in general, one for ordinary reactions and the other for photochemical reactions. Part 1 concludes with two more chapters that give further background to the study of mechanisms.

In addition to reactions, mechanisms, and structure, the student should have some familiarity with the literature of organic chemistry. A chapter devoted to this topic has been placed in Appendix A, though many teachers may wish to cover this material at the beginning of the course.

In treating a subject as broad as the basic structures, reactions, and mechanisms of organic chemistry, it is obviously not possible to cover each topic in great depth. Nor would this be desirable even if possible. Nevertheless, students will often wish to pursue individual topics further. An effort has therefore been made to guide the reader to pertinent review articles and books published since about 1960. In this respect, this book is intended to be a guide to the secondary literature (since about 1960) of the field it covers. Furthermore, in a graduate course, students should be encouraged to consult primary sources. To this end, more than 10,000 references to original papers have been included.

Although basically designed for a one-year course on the graduate level, this book can also be used in advanced undergraduate courses as long as they are preceded by one-year courses in organic and physical chemistry. It can also be adapted, by the omission of a large part of its contents, to a one-semester course. Indeed, even for a one-year course, more is included than can be conveniently covered. Many individual sections can be easily omitted without disturbing continuity.

The reader will observe that this text contains much material that is included in first-year organic and physical chemistry courses, though in most cases it goes more deeply into each subject and, of course, provides references, which first-year texts do not. It has been my experience that students who have completed the first-year courses often have a hazy recollection of the material and greatly profit from a re-presentation of the material if it is organized in a different way. It is hoped that the organization of the material on reactions and mechanisms will greatly aid the memory and the understanding. In any given course the teacher may want to omit some chapters because his students already have an adequate knowledge of the material, or because there are other graduate courses that cover the areas more thoroughly. Chapters 1, 4, and 7 especially may fall into one of these categories.

Although this is a textbook, it has been designed to have reference value also. Students preparing for qualifying examinations and practicing organic chemists will find that Part 2 contains a survey of what is known about the mechanism and scope of about 590 reactions, arranged in an orderly manner based on reaction type and on which bonds are broken and formed. Also valuable for reference purposes are the previously mentioned lists of reactions classified by type of compound prepared (Appendix B) and of all of the *Organic Syntheses* references to each reaction.

I am happy to acknowledge the assistance of chemists who have been kind enough to read portions of the manuscript of one or more of the editions and to send me their exceedingly helpful comments. I wish to thank Professors J. F. Bunnett, A. W. Burgstahler, D. J. Cram, P. de Mayo, E. L. Eliel, R. W. Griffin, Jr., G. S. Hammond, M. Kreevoy, J. Landesberg, S. Moon, G. A. Olah, G. C. Pimentel, W. H. Saunders, Jr., C. G. Swain, R. W. Taft, Jr., W. S. Trahanovsky, N. J. Turro, C. Walling, and R. Wistar, each of whom read one or more chapters of either the first or second editions; B. B. Jarvis and C. A. Bunton, who read the entire manuscript of the second edition; M. P. Doyle, who read the entire manuscript of the third edition; and K. B. Wiberg, who offered valuable help in the preparation of the third edition. In addition, I wish to thank many of my colleagues at Adelphi University who have rendered assistance in various ways, among them F. Bettelheim, D. Davis, S. Z. Goldberg, R. Halliday, J. Landesberg, S. Milstein, S. Moon, D. Opalecky, R. Rudman, A. J. Sisti, and S. Windwer. Dr. Goldberg rendered exceptionally valuable assistance in the preparation of the indexes, for which a computer was used. Special thanks are due to the Interscience division of John Wiley & Sons, Dr. Ted Hoffman, and the other editors at Wiley for their fine work in turning the raw manuscript into the finished book. I am also grateful to those readers who wrote to tell me about errors they discovered in the preceding editions or to make other comments. Such letters are always welcome.

Jerry March
Garden City, New York
September 1984

CONTENTS

Bibliographical Note xiii

PART 1 1

Chapter 1 Localized Chemical Bonding 3

Chapter 2 Delocalized Chemical Bonding 24
- Aromaticity 37
- Hyperconjugation 64
- Tautomerism 66

Chapter 3 Bonding Weaker than Covalent 71
- Hydrogen Bonding 71
- Addition Compounds 74

Chapter 4 Stereochemistry 82
- Optical Activity and Chirality 82
- Cis–trans Isomerism 109
- Conformational Analysis 119
- Strain 130

Chapter 5 Carbocations, Carbanions, Free Radicals, Carbenes, and Nitrenes 141
- Carbocations 141
- Carbanions 151
- Free Radicals 162
- Carbenes 170
- Nitrenes 176

Chapter 6 Mechanisms and Methods of Determining Them 179

Chapter 7 Photochemistry 202

Chapter 8 Acids and Bases 218

Chapter 9 Effects of Structure on Reactivity 237

PART 2 251

Chapter 10 Aliphatic Nucleophilic Substitution **255**
Mechanisms 255
Reactivity 298
Reactions 326

Chapter 11 Aromatic Electrophilic Substitution **447**
Mechanisms 447
Orientation and Reactivity 453
Reactions 467

Chapter 12 Aliphatic Electrophilic Substitution **512**
Mechanisms 512
Reactivity 521
Reactions 523

Chapter 13 Aromatic Nucleophilic Substitution **576**
Mechanisms 576
Reactivity 584
Reactions 587

Chapter 14 Free-Radical Substitution **608**
Mechanisms 608
Reactivity 613
Reactions 620

Chapter 15 Addition to Carbon–Carbon Multiple Bonds **657**
Mechanisms 657
Orientation and Reactivity 670
Reactions 679

Chapter 16 Addition to Carbon–Hetero Multiple Bonds **780**
Mechanisms and Reactivity 780
Reactions 782

Chapter 17 Eliminations **873**
Mechanisms and Orientation 873
Reactivity 893
Mechanisms and Orientation in Pyrolytic Eliminations 896
Reactions 901

Chapter 18 Rearrangements **942**
Mechanisms 943
Reactions 958

Chapter 19 Oxidations and Reductions **1048**
Mechanisms 1048
Reactions 1051

Appendix A The Literature of Organic Chemistry **1121**
Primary Sources 1121
Secondary Sources 1125
Literature Searching 1141

Appendix B Classification of Reactions by Type of Compound Synthesized **1146**

Indexes **1177**
Author Index 1177
Subject Index 1287

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

In this book the practices used in citing references are slightly different from those prevailing elsewhere. The reader should note:

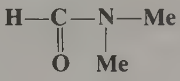
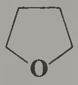
1. For technical reasons the format of the references is somewhat different from that currently used in American Chemical Society publications.

2. Author's initials are omitted in references. They will be found, however, in the author index.

3. For review articles, both the first and last page numbers are given, so that the reader may form an idea of the length of the article. If reference is made to only a portion of the article, these page numbers are also given.

4. When a journal is available both in Russian and in English, the page numbers of each article are, of course, different. The language of the journal title indicates whether the page number cited is to be found in the Russian or in the English version. For articles which have appeared in *Angewandte Chemie, International Edition in English,* both the English and German page numbers are given.

The following abbreviations are used for three common solvents:

DMF	Dimethylformamide	 $\mathrm{H-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-\underset{\overset{\vert}{Me}}{N}-Me}$
THF	Tetrahydrofuran	
HMPT	Hexamethylphosphoric triamide (also HMPA)	$(Me_2N)_3P{=}O$

ADVANCED
ORGANIC
CHEMISTRY

PART ONE

This book contains 19 chapters. Chapters 10 to 19, which make up Part 2, are directly concerned with organic reactions and their mechanisms. Chapters 1 to 9 may be thought of as an introduction to Part 2. The first five chapters deal with the structure of organic compounds. We discuss the kinds of bonding important in organic chemistry, the three-dimensional structure of organic molecules, and the structure of species in which the valence of carbon is less than 4. Chapters 6 to 9 are concerned with other topics that help form a background to Part 2: acids and bases, photochemistry, the relationship between structure and reactivity, and a general discussion of mechanisms and the means by which they are determined.

1

LOCALIZED CHEMICAL BONDING

Localized chemical bonding may be defined as bonding in which the electrons are shared by two and only two nuclei. In Chapter 2 we shall consider *delocalized bonding*, in which electrons are shared by more than two nuclei.

Covalent Bonding[1]

Wave mechanics is based on the fundamental principle that electrons behave as waves (e.g., they can be diffracted) and that consequently a wave equation can be written for them, in the same sense that light waves, sound waves, etc., can be described by wave equations. The equation that serves as a mathematical model for electrons is known as the *Schrödinger equation*, which for a one-electron system is

$$\frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial z^2} + \frac{8\pi^2 m}{h^2}(E - V)\psi = 0$$

where m is the mass of the electron, E is its total energy, V is its potential energy, and h is Planck's constant. In physical terms, the function ψ expresses the square root of the probability of finding the electron at any position defined by the coordinates x, y, and z, where the origin is at the nucleus. For systems containing more than one electron the equation is similar but more complicated.

The Schrödinger equation is a differential equation, which means that solutions of it are themselves equations. The solutions, however, are not differential equations, but simple equations for which graphs can be drawn. Such graphs, which are three-dimensional pictures of the electron density, are called *orbitals* or electron clouds. Most students are familiar with the shapes of the s and p atomic orbitals (Figure 1). Note that each p orbital has a *node*—a region in space where the probability of finding the electron is extremely small.[2] Also note that in Figure 1 some lobes of the orbitals are labeled + and others −. These signs do not refer to positive or negative *charges*, since both lobes of an electron cloud must be negatively charged. They are the signs of the wave function ψ. When two parts of any orbital are separated by a node, ψ always has opposite signs

---

[1] The treatment of orbitals given here is necessarily simplified. For much fuller treatments of orbital theory as applied to organic chemistry, see McWeeny, "Coulson's Valence," Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1980; Murrell, Kettle, and Tedder, "The Chemical Bond," Wiley, New York, 1978; Dewar and Dougherty, "The PMO Theory of Organic Chemistry," Plenum, New York, 1975; Borden, "Modern Molecular Orbital Theory for Organic Chemists," Prentice-Hall, New York, 1975; Dewar, "The Molecular Orbital Theory of Organic Chemistry," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969; Liberles, "Introduction to Molecular Orbital Theory," Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York, 1966; Streitwieser, "Molecular Orbital Theory for Organic Chemists," Wiley, New York, 1961.

[2] When wave-mechanical calculations are made according to the Schrödinger equation, the probability of finding the electron in a node is zero, but this treatment ignores relativistic considerations. When such considerations are applied, Dirac has shown that nodes do have a very small electron density: Powell, *J. Chem. Educ.* **45**, 558 (1968). See also Ellison and Hollingsworth, *J. Chem. Educ.* **53**, 767 (1976); McKelvey, *J. Chem. Educ.* **60**, 112 (1983).

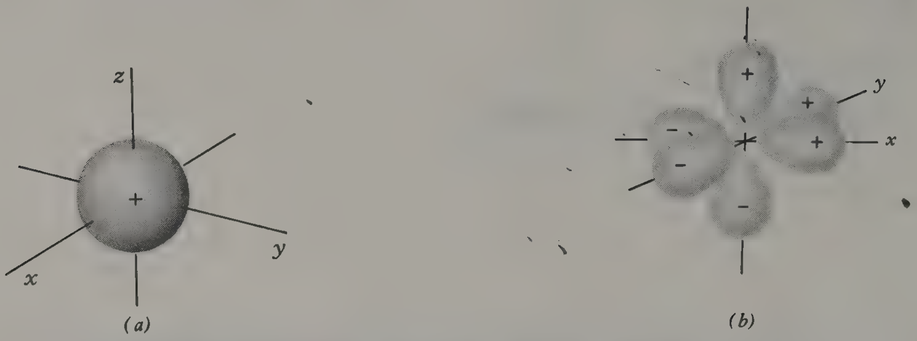


Figure 1 (*a*) the 1*s* orbital. (*b*) The three 2*p* orbitals.

on the two sides of the node. According to the Pauli exclusion principle, no more than two electrons can be present in any orbital, and they must have opposite spins.

Unfortunately, the Schrödinger equation can be solved exactly only for one-electron systems such as the hydrogen atom. If it could be solved exactly for molecules containing two or more electrons,[3] we would have a precise picture of the shape of the orbitals available to each electron (especially for the important ground state) and the energy for each orbital. Since exact solutions are not available, drastic approximations must be made. There are two chief general methods of approximation: the *molecular-orbital* method and the *valence-bond* method.

In the molecular-orbital method, bonding is considered to arise from the overlap of atomic orbitals. When any number of atomic orbitals overlap, they disappear and are replaced by an equal number of new orbitals, called *molecular orbitals*. Molecular orbitals differ from atomic orbitals in that they are clouds that surround the nuclei of two or more atoms, rather than just one atom. In localized bonding the number of atomic orbitals that overlap is two (each containing one electron), so that two molecular orbitals are generated. One of these, called a *bonding orbital*, has a lower energy than the original atomic orbitals (otherwise a bond would not form), and the other, called an *antibonding orbital*, has a higher energy. Orbitals of lower energy fill first. Since the two original atomic orbitals each held one electron, both of these electrons can now go into the new molecular *bonding* orbital, since any orbital can hold two electrons. The antibonding orbital remains empty in the ground state. The greater the overlap, the stronger the bond, although total overlap is prevented by repulsion between the nuclei. Figure 2 shows the bonding and antibonding orbitals that arise by the overlap of two 1*s* electrons. Note that since the antibonding orbital has a node between the nuclei, there is practically no electron density in that area, so that this orbital cannot be expected to bond very well. Molecular orbitals formed by the overlap of two atomic orbitals when the centers of electron density are on the axis common to the two nuclei are called σ (*sigma*) orbitals, and the bonds are called σ bonds. Corresponding antibonding orbitals are designated σ^*. σ orbitals are formed not only by the overlap of two *s* orbitals but also by the overlap of any of the kinds of atomic orbital (*s*, *p*, *d*, or *f*) whether the same or different, but the two lobes that overlap must have the same sign: a positive *s* orbital can form a bond only by overlapping with another positive *s* orbital or with a positive lobe of a *p*, *d*, or *f* orbital. Any σ orbital, no matter what kind of atomic orbitals it has arisen from, may be represented as approximately ellipsoidal in shape.

Orbitals are frequently designated by their symmetry properties. The σ orbital of hydrogen is

---

[3] For a number of simple systems containing two or more electrons, such as the H_2 molecule or the He atom, approximate solutions are available that are so accurate that for practical purposes they are as good as exact solutions. See, for example, Roothaan and Weiss, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **32,** 194 (1960); Kolos and Roothaan, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **32,** 219 (1960). For a review, see Clark and Stewart, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **24,** 95–118 (1970).

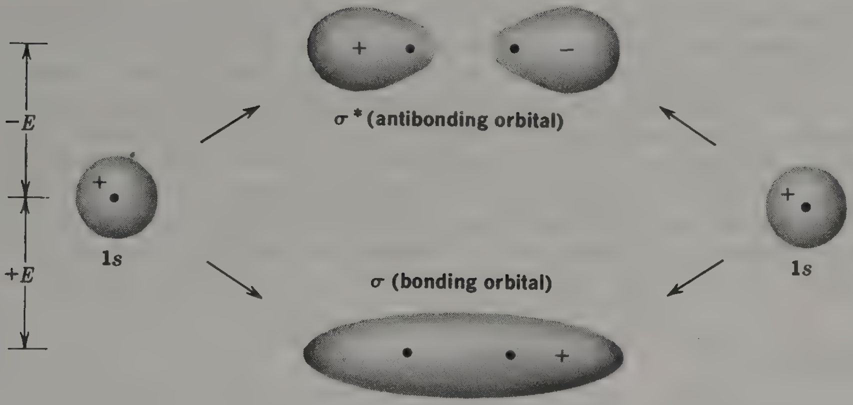


Figure 2 Overlap of two 1*s* orbitals gives rise to a σ and a σ* orbital.

often written Ψ_g. The *g* stands for *gerade*. A gerade orbital is one in which the sign on the orbital does not change when it is reflected through its center of symmetry. The σ* orbital is *ungerade* (designated Ψ_u). An ungerade orbital changes sign when reflected through its center of symmetry.

In molecular-orbital calculations, a wave function is formulated that is a linear combination of the atomic orbitals that have overlapped (this method is often called the *linear combination of atomic orbitals*, or LCAO):

$$\Psi = c_{\text{A}}\psi_{\text{A}} + c_{\text{B}}\psi_{\text{B}} \tag{1}$$

The functions ψ_{A} and ψ_{B} are the functions for the atomic orbitals of atoms A and B, respectively, and c_{A} and c_{B} represent weighting factors.

In the valence-bond method, a wave equation is written for each of various possible electronic structures that a molecule may have (each of these is called a *canonical form*), and the total Ψ is obtained by summation of as many of these as seem plausible, each with its weighting factor:

$$\Psi = c_{\text{A}}\psi_{\text{A}} + c_{\text{B}}\psi_{\text{B}} + \cdots \tag{2}$$

This resembles Eq. (1), but here each ψ represents a wave equation for an imaginary canonical form and each *c* is the amount contributed to the total picture by that form. For example, a wave function can be written for each of the following canonical forms of the hydrogen molecule:[4]

$$\mathbf{H{-}H} \qquad {}^{\ominus}\overline{\mathbf{H}}\ \ \mathbf{H}^{\oplus} \qquad {}^{\oplus}\mathbf{H}\ \ \overline{\mathbf{H}}^{\ominus}$$

Values for *c* in each method are obtained by solving the equation for various values of each *c* and choosing the solution of lowest energy. In practice, both methods give similar solutions for molecules that contain only localized electrons, and these are in agreement with the Lewis structures long familiar to the organic chemist. Delocalized systems are considered in Chapter 2.

Multiple Valence

A univalent atom has only one orbital available for bonding. But atoms with a valence of 2 or more must form bonds by using at least two orbitals. An oxygen atom has two half-filled orbitals, giving it a valence of 2. It forms single bonds by the overlap of these with the orbitals of two other atoms. According to the principle of maximum overlap, the other two nuclei should form an angle of 90° with the oxygen nucleus, since the two available orbitals on oxygen are *p* orbitals, which are perpendicular. Similarly, we should expect that nitrogen, which has three mutually perpendicular *p* orbitals, would have bond angles of 90° when it forms three single bonds. However, these are not the observed bond angles. The bond angles are,[5] in water, 104°27′, and in ammonia, 106°46′. For alcohols and ethers the angles are even larger (see p. 21). A discussion of this will be deferred to p. 20, but it is important to note that covalent compounds do have definite bond angles. Although the atoms are continuously vibrating, the mean position is the same for each molecule of a given compound.

---

[4] In this book a pair of electrons, whether in a bond or unshared, is represented by a straight line.

Hybridization

Consider the case of mercury. Its electronic structure is

$$\textbf{Xe} \text{ core } 4f^{14}5d^{10}6s^2$$

Although it has no half-filled orbitals, it has a valence of 2 and forms two covalent bonds. We can explain this by imagining that one of the 6*s* electrons is promoted to a vacant 6*p* orbital to give the configuration

$$\textbf{Xe} \text{ core } 4f^{14}5d^{10}6s^1 6p^1$$

In this state the atom has two half-filled orbitals, but they are not equivalent. If bonding were to occur by the overlap of these orbitals with the orbitals of external atoms, the two bonds would not be equivalent. The bond formed from the 6*p* orbital would be more stable than the one formed from the 6*s* orbital, since a larger amount of overlap is possible with the former. A more stable situation is achieved when in the course of bond formation, the 6*s* and 6*p* orbitals combine to form two new orbitals that *are* equivalent; these are shown in Figure 3.

Since these new orbitals are a mixture of the two original orbitals, they are called *hybrid orbitals*. Each is called an *sp* orbital, since a merger of an *s* and a *p* orbital was required to form it. The *sp* orbitals, each of which consists of a large lobe and a very small one, are atomic orbitals, although they arise only in the bonding process and do not represent a possible structure for the free atom. A mercury atom forms its two bonds by overlapping each of the large lobes shown in Figure 3

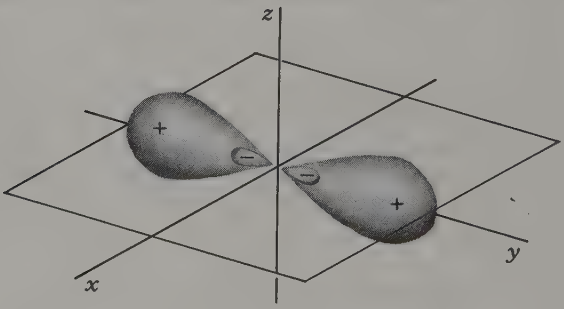


Figure 3 The two *sp* orbitals formed by mercury.

---

[5] Bent, *Chem. Rev.* **61**, 275–311 (1961), p. 277.

with an orbital from an external atom. This external orbital may be any of the atomic orbitals previously considered (s, p, d, or f) or it may be another hybrid orbital, although only lobes of the same sign can overlap. In any of these cases the molecular orbital that arises is called a σ orbital since it fits our previous definition of a σ orbital.

In general, because of mutual repulsion, equivalent orbitals lie as far away from each other as possible, and so the two sp orbitals form an angle of 180°. This means that $HgCl_2$, for example, should be a linear molecule (in contrast to H_2O), and it is. This kind of hybridization is called *digonal hybridization*. An sp hybrid orbital forms a stronger covalent bond than either an s or a p orbital because it extends out in space in the direction of the other atom's orbital farther than the s or the p and permits greater overlap. Although it would require energy to promote a $6s$ electron to the $6p$ state, the extra bond energy more than makes up the difference.

Many other kinds of hybridization are possible. Consider boron, which has the electronic configuration

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$$

yet has a valence of 3. Once again we may imagine promotion and hybridization:

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p^1 \xrightarrow{\text{promotion}} 1s^2 2s^1 2p_x^{\,1} 2p_y^{\,1} \xrightarrow{\text{hybridization}} 1s^2 (sp^2)^3$$

In this case there are three equivalent hybrid orbitals, each called sp^2 (*trigonal hybridization*). This method of designating hybrid orbitals is perhaps unfortunate since nonhybrid orbitals are designated by single letters, but it must be kept in mind that *each* of the three orbitals is called sp^2. These orbitals are shown in Figure 4. The three axes are all in one plane and point to the corners of an equilateral triangle. This accords with the known structure of BF_3, a planar molecule with angles of 120°.

The case of carbon (in forming four single bonds) may be represented as

$$1s^2 2s^2 2p_x^{\,1} 2p_y^{\,1} \xrightarrow{\text{promotion}} 1s^2 2s^1 2p_x^{\,1} 2p_y^{\,1} 2p_z^{\,1} \xrightarrow{\text{hybridization}} 1s^2 (sp^3)^4$$

There are four equivalent orbitals, each called sp^3, which point to the corners of a regular tetrahedron (Figure 4). The bond angles of methane would thus be expected to be 109°28′, which is the angle for a regular tetrahedron.

Although the hybrid orbitals discussed in this section satisfactorily account for most of the physical and chemical properties of the molecules involved, it is necessary to point out that the

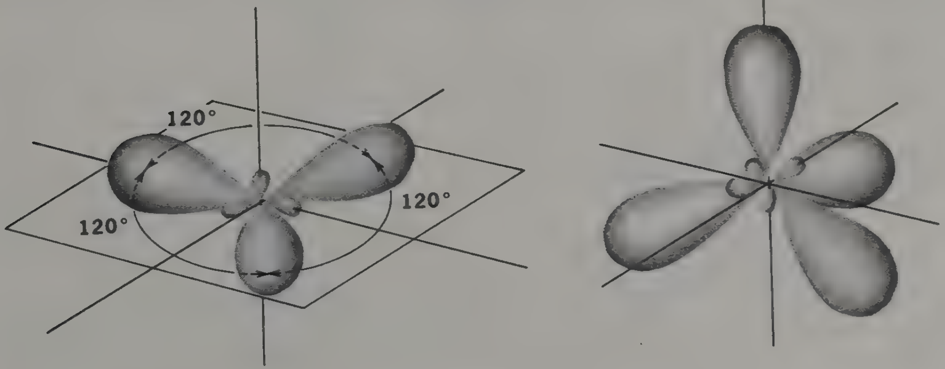


Figure 4 The three sp^2 and the four sp^3 orbitals.

sp^3 orbitals, for example, stem from only one possible approximate solution of the Schrödinger equation. The *s* and the three *p* atomic orbitals can also be combined in many other equally valid ways. As we shall see on p. 11, the four C—H bonds of methane do not always behave as if they are equivalent.

Multiple Bonds

If we consider the ethylene molecule in terms of the molecular-orbital concepts discussed so far, we have each carbon using sp^2 orbitals to form bonds with the three atoms to which it is connected. These sp^2 orbitals arise from hybridization of the $2s^1$, $2p_x^1$, and $2p_y^1$ electrons of the promoted state shown on p. 7. We may consider that any carbon atom that is bonded to only three different atoms uses sp^2 orbitals for this bonding. Each carbon of ethylene is thus bonded by three σ bonds: one to each hydrogen and one to the other carbon. Each carbon therefore has another electron in the $2p_z$ orbital that, by the principle of maximum repulsion, is perpendicular to the plane of the sp^2 orbitals. The two parallel $2p_z$ orbitals can overlap sideways to generate two new orbitals, a bonding and an antibonding orbital (Figure 5). Of course, in the ground state, both electrons go into the bonding orbital and the antibonding orbital remains vacant. Molecular orbitals formed by the overlap of atomic orbitals whose axes are parallel are called π orbitals if they are bonding and π^* if they are antibonding.

In this picture of ethylene, the two orbitals that make up the double bond are not equivalent. The σ orbital is ellipsoidal and symmetrical about the C—C axis. The π orbital is in the shape of two ellipsoids, one above the plane and one below. The plane itself represents a node for the π

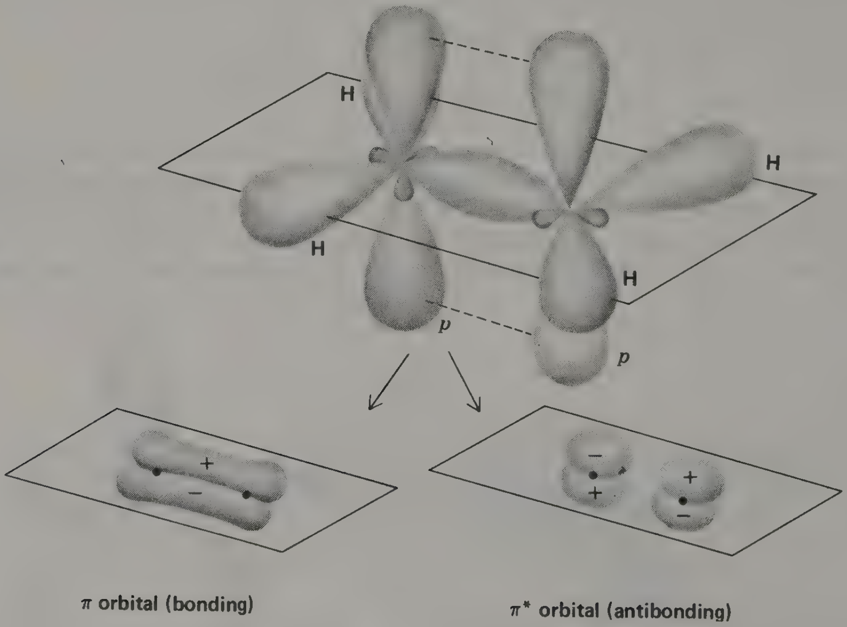


Figure 5 Overlapping *p* orbitals form a π and a π^* orbital. The σ orbitals are shown in the upper figure. They are still there in the diagrams below but have been removed from the picture for clarity.

orbital. In order for the *p* orbitals to maintain maximum overlap, they must be parallel. This means that free rotation is not possible about the double bond, since the two *p* orbitals would have to reduce their overlap to allow one H—C—H plane to rotate with respect to the other. The six atoms of a double bond are therefore in a plane with angles that should be about 120°. Double bonds are shorter than the corresponding single bonds because maximum stability is obtained when the *p* orbitals overlap as much as possible. Double bonds between carbon and oxygen or nitrogen are similarly represented: they consist of one σ and one π orbital.

In triple-bond compounds, carbon is connected to only two other atoms and hence uses *sp* hybridization, which means that the four atoms are in a straight line (Figure 6).[6] Each carbon has two *p* orbitals remaining, with one electron in each. These orbitals are perpendicular to each other and to the C—C axis. They overlap in the manner shown in Figure 7 to form two π orbitals. A triple bond is thus composed of one σ and two π orbitals. Triple bonds between carbon and nitrogen can be represented in a similar manner.

Double and triple bonds are important only for the first-row elements carbon, nitrogen, and oxygen.[7] For second-row elements multiple bonds are rare and compounds containing them are generally unstable[8] because the *p* orbitals necessary to form them are farther apart and hence overlap less. The only ones of any importance at all are C=S bonds, and C=S compounds are generally much less stable than the corresponding C=O compounds (however, see $p\pi$–$d\pi$ bonding, p. 35). Stable compounds with Si=C and Si=Si bonds are rare, but examples have been reported,[9] including a pair of cis and trans Si=Si isomers.[9a]

Photoelectron Spectroscopy

Although the four bonds of methane are equivalent according to most physical and chemical methods of detection (for example, neither the nmr nor the ir spectrum of methane contains peaks that can be attributed to different kinds of C—H bonds), there is one physical technique that shows that the eight valence electrons of methane can be differentiated. In this technique, called *photoelectron*

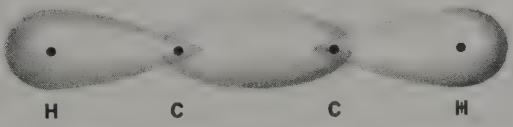


Figure 6 The σ electrons of acetylene.

---

[6] For reviews of triple bonds, see Simonetta and Gavezzotti, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," pp. 1–56; Wiley, New York, 1978; Dale, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 3–96, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969.

[7] This statement applies to the representative elements. Multiple bonding is also important for some transition elements. For a review of metal–metal multiple bonds, see Cotton, *J. Chem. Educ.* **60,** 713–720 (1983).

[8] For a review of double bonds between carbon and elements other than C, N, S, or O, see Jutzi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 232–245 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 269–283]. For a review of multiple bonds involving silicon and germanium, see Gusel'nikov and Nametkin, *Chem. Rev.* **79,** 529–577 (1979). For a review of C=P double bonds, see Appel, Knoll, and Ruppert, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 731–744 (1981) [*Angew Chem.* **93,** 771–784]. For a review of compounds containing S=S bonds, see Kutney and Turnbull, *Chem. Rev.* **82,** 333–357 (1982).

[9] For Si=C bonds, see Brook, Nyburg, Abdesaken, Gutekunst, Gutekunst, Kallury, Poon, Chang, and Wong-Ng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5667 (1982); Schaefer, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 283 (1982). For Si=Si bonds, see Zilm, Grant, Michl, Fink, and West, *Organometallics* **2,** 193 (1983); Fink, DeYoung, West, and Michl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1070 (1983); Fink, Michalczyk, Haller, West, and Michl, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1010 (1983); West, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **56,** 163–173 (1984); Masamune, Murakami, Snow, and Williams, *Organometallics* **3,** 333 (1984).

[9a] Michalczyk, West, and Michl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 821 (1984).

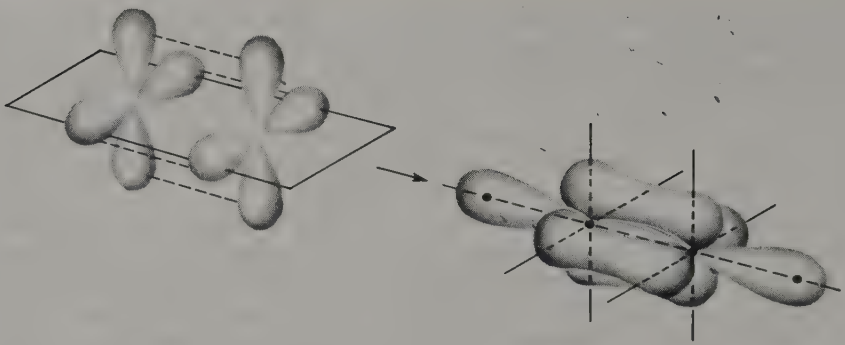


Figure 7 Overlap of *p* orbitals in a triple bond. For clarity, the σ orbitals have been removed from the drawing on the left, though they are shown on the right.

spectroscopy,[10] a molecule or free atom is bombarded with vacuum uv radiation, causing an electron to be ejected. The energy of the ejected electron can be measured, and the difference between the energy of the radiation used and that of the ejected electron is the *ionization potential* of that electron. A molecule that contains several electrons of differing energies can lose any one of them as long as its ionization potential is less than the energy of the radiation used (a single molecule loses only one electron; the loss of two electrons by any individual molecule almost never occurs). A photoelectron spectrum therefore consists of a series of bands, each of which corresponds to an orbital of a different energy. The spectrum gives a direct experimental picture of all of the orbitals present, in order of their energies, provided that radiation of sufficiently high energy is used.[11] Broad bands usually correspond to strongly bonding electrons and narrow bands to weakly bonding or nonbonding electrons. A typical spectrum is that of N_2, shown in Figure 8.[12] The N_2 molecule has the electronic structure shown in Figure 9. The two 2*s* orbitals of the nitrogen atoms combine

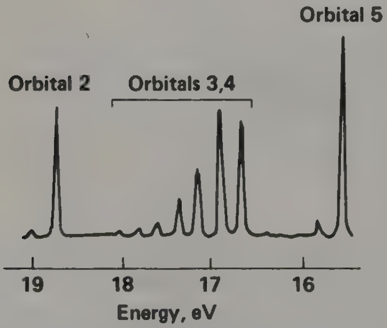


Figure 8 Photoelectron spectrum of N_2.[12]

---

[10] Only the briefest description of this subject is given here. For monographs, see Ballard, "Photoelectron Spectroscopy and Molecular Orbital Theory," Wiley, New York, 1978; Rabalais, "Principles of Ultraviolet Photoelectron Spectroscopy," Wiley, New York, 1977; Baker and Betteridge, "Photoelectron Spectroscopy," Pergamon, Elmsford, N.Y., 1972; and Turner, Baker, Baker, and Brundle, "High Resolution Molecular Photoelectron Spectroscopy," Wiley, New York, 1970. For reviews, see Carlson, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **26,** 211–233 (1975); Baker, Brundle, and Thompson, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **1,** 355–380 (1972); Bock and Mollère, *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 506–514 (1974); Bock and Ramsey, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 734–752 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 773–792]; Turner, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 31–71 (1966).

[11] The correlation is not perfect, but the limitations do not seriously detract from the usefulness of the method. The technique is not limited to vacuum uv radiation. Higher energy radiation can also be used.

[12] From Brundle and Robin, in Nachod and Zuckerman, "Determination of Organic Structures by Physical Methods," Vol. 3, p. 18, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

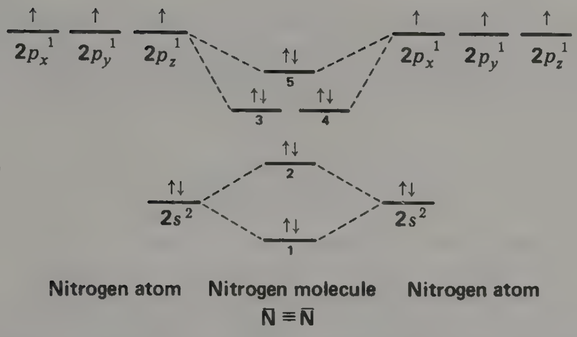


Figure 9 Electronic structure of N_2 (inner-shell electrons omitted).[12]

to give the two orbitals marked 1 (bonding) and 2 (antibonding), while the six 2*p* orbitals combine to give six orbitals, three of which (marked 3, 4, and 5) are bonding. The three antibonding orbitals (not indicated in Figure 9) are unoccupied. Electrons ejected from orbital 1 are not found in Figure 8 because the ionization potential of these electrons is greater than the energy of the light used (they can be seen when higher-energy light is used). The broad band in Figure 8 (the individual peaks within this band are caused by different vibrational levels; see Chapter 7) corresponds to the four electrons in the degenerate orbitals 3 and 4. The triple bond of N_2 is therefore composed of these two orbitals and orbital 1. The bands corresponding to orbitals 2 and 5 are narrow; hence these orbitals contribute little to the bonding and may be regarded as the two unshared pairs of $\overline{\text{N}}{\equiv}\overline{\text{N}}$. Note that this result is contrary to that expected from a naïve consideration of orbital overlaps, where it would be expected that the two unshared pairs would be those of orbitals 1 and 2, resulting from the overlap of the filled 2*s* orbitals, and that the triple bond would be composed of orbitals 3, 4, and 5, resulting from overlap of the *p* orbitals. This example is one illustration of the value of photoelectron spectroscopy.

The photoelectron spectrum of methane[13] shows *two* bands,[14] at about 23 and 14 eV, and not the single band we would expect from the equivalency of the four C—H bonds. The reason is that ordinary sp^3 hybridization is not adequate to explain phenomena involving ionized molecules (such as the $CH_4{\cdot}^+$ radical ion, which is left behind when an electron is ejected from methane). For these phenomena it is necessary to use other combinations of atomic orbitals (see p. 8). The band at 23 eV comes from two electrons in a low-energy level (called the a_1 level), which can be regarded as arising from a combination of the 2*s* orbital of carbon with an appropriate combination of hydrogen 1*s* orbitals. The band at 14 eV comes from six electrons in a triply degenerate level (the t_2 level), arising from a combination of the three 2*p* orbitals of carbon with other combinations of 1*s* hydrogen orbitals. As was mentioned above, most physical and chemical processes cannot distinguish these levels, but photoelectron spectroscopy can.

Electronic Structures of Molecules

For each molecule, ion, or free radical that has only localized electrons, it is possible to draw an electronic formula, called a *Lewis structure*, that shows the location of these electrons. Only the valence electrons are shown. Valence electrons may be found in covalent bonds connecting two atoms or they may be unshared. The student must be able to draw these structures correctly, since the position of electrons changes in the course of a reaction, and it is necessary to know where the electrons are initially before one can follow where they are going. To this end, the following rules operate:

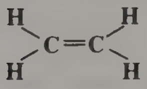
---

[13] Brundle, Robin, and Basch, *J. Chem. Phys.* **53,** 2196 (1970); Baker, Betteridge, Kemp, and Kirby, *J. Mol. Struct.* **8,** 75 (1971); Potts and Price, *Proc. R. Soc. (London), Ser A* **326,** 165 (1972).

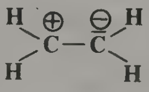
[14] A third band, at 290 eV, caused by the 1*s* electrons of carbon, can also be found if radiation of sufficiently high energy is used.

1. The total number of valence electrons in the molecule (or ion or free radical) must be the sum of all outer-shell electrons "contributed" to the molecule by each atom plus the negative charge or minus the positive charge, for the case of ions. Thus, for H_2SO_4, there are 2 (one for each hydrogen) + 6 (for the sulfur) + 24 (6 for each oxygen) = 32; while for SO_4^{2-}, the number is also 32, since each atom "contributes" 6 plus 2 for the negative charge.

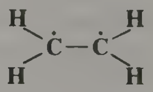
2. Once the number of valence electrons has been ascertained, it is necessary to determine which of them are found in covalent bonds and which are unshared. Unshared electrons (either a single electron or a pair) form part of the outer shell of just one atom, but electrons in a covalent bond are part of the outer shell of both atoms of the bond. *First-row atoms* (B, C, N, O, F) *can have a maximum of eight valence electrons*, and usually have this number, although some cases are known where a first-row atom has only six or seven. Where there is a choice between a structure that has six or seven electrons around a first-row atom and one in which all such atoms have an octet, it is the latter that generally has the lower energy and that consequently exists. For example, ethylene is



and not



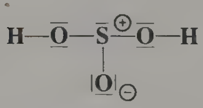
or

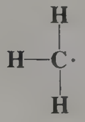


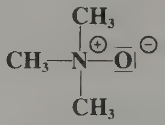
There are a few exceptions. In the case of the molecule O_2, the structure $|\dot{\underline{O}}-\dot{\underline{O}}|$ has a lower energy than $|\underline{O}=\underline{O}|$. Although first-row atoms are limited to 8 valence electrons, this is not so for second-row atoms, which can accommodate 10 or even 12 because they can use their empty *d* orbitals for this purpose.[15] For example, PCl_5 and SF_6 are stable compounds. In SF_6, one *s* and one p_x electron from the ground state $3s^2 3p_x^2 3p_y^1 3p_z^1$ are promoted to empty *d* orbitals, and the six orbitals hybridize to give six sp^3d^2 orbitals, that point to the corners of a regular octahedron.

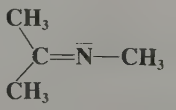
3. It is customary to show the formal charge on each atom. For this purpose an atom is considered to "own" all unshared electrons but only *one-half of the electrons in covalent bonds*. The sum of electrons that thus "belong" to an atom is compared with the number "contributed" by the atom. An excess belonging to the atom results in a negative charge, and a deficiency results in a positive charge. The total of the formal charges on all atoms equals the charge on the whole molecule or ion. It should be noted that the counting procedure is not the same for determining formal charge as for determining the number of valence electrons. For both purposes an atom "owns" all unshared electrons, but for outer-shell purposes it "owns" both the electrons of the covalent bond, while for formal-charge purposes, it "owns" only one-half of these electrons.

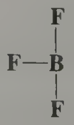
Examples of electronic structures are (as mentioned in footnote 4, in this book an electron pair, whether unshared or in a bond, is represented by a straight line):







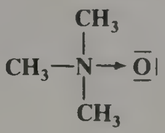




---

[15] For reviews concerning sulfur compounds with a valence shell larger than eight, see Cilento, *Chem. Rev.* **60**, 147–167 (1960), and Salmond, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **22**, 253–275 (1968).

A coordinate-covalent bond, represented by an arrow, is one in which both electrons come from the same atom; i.e., the bond can be regarded as being formed by the overlap of an orbital containing two electrons with an empty one. Thus trimethylamine oxide would be represented



$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH_3-N\rightarrow \underline{\overline{O}}| \\ | \\ CH_3 \end{array}$$

For a coordinate-covalent bond the rule concerning formal charge is amended, so that both electrons count for the donor and neither for the recipient. Thus, the nitrogen and oxygen atoms of trimethylamine oxide bear no formal charges. However, it is apparent that the electronic picture is exactly the same as the picture of trimethylamine oxide given just above, and we have our choice of drawing an arrowhead or a charge separation. Some compounds, e.g., amine oxides, must be drawn one way or the other. It seems simpler to use charge separation, since this spares us from having to consider as a "different" method of bonding a way that is really the same as ordinary covalent bonding once the bond has formed.

Electronegativity

The electron cloud that bonds two atoms is not symmetrical (with respect to the plane that is the perpendicular bisector of the bond) except when the two atoms are the same and have the same substituents. The cloud is necessarily distorted toward one side of the bond or the other, depending on which atom (nucleus plus electrons) maintains the greater attraction for the cloud. This attraction is called *electronegativity*;[16] it is greatest for atoms in the upper-right corner of the periodic table and lowest for atoms in the lower-left corner. Thus a bond between fluorine and chlorine is distorted so that there is a higher probability of finding the electrons near the fluorine than near the chlorine. This gives the fluorine a partial negative charge and the chlorine a partial positive charge.

A number of attempts have been made to set up quantitative tables of electronegativity that indicate the direction and extent of electron-cloud distortion for a bond between any pair of atoms. The most popular of these scales, devised by Pauling, is based on bond energies (see p. 21) of diatomic molecules. The reasoning here is that if in a molecule A—B the electron distribution were symmetrical, the bond energy would be the mean of the energies of A—A and B—B, since in these cases the cloud must be undistorted. If the actual bond energy of A—B is higher than this (and it usually is), it is the result of the partial charges, since the charges attract each other and make a stronger bond, which requires more energy to break. It is necessary to assign a value to one element arbitrarily (F = 4.0). Then the electronegativity of another is obtained from the difference between the actual energy of A—B and the mean of A—A and B—B (this difference is called Δ) by the formula

$$x_A - x_B = \sqrt{\frac{\Delta}{23.06}}$$

where x_A and x_B are the electronegativities of the known and unknown atoms and 23.06 is an arbitrary constant. Part of the scale derived from this treatment is shown in Table 1.[17]

---

[16] For reviews of this topic, see Batsanov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 332–351 (1968); Syrkin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 197–206 (1962); and Pauling, "The Nature of the Chemical Bond," 3d ed., Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1960.

[17] Taken from Pauling, Ref. 16, 93.

TABLE 1 Electronegativities of some atoms on the Pauling[17] and Sanderson[19] scales

Element	Pauling	Sanderson	Element	Pauling	Sanderson
F	4.0	4.000	H	2.1	2.592
O	3.5	3.654	P	2.1	2.515
Cl	3.0	3.475	B	2.0	2.275
N	3.0	3.194	Si	1.8	2.138
Br	2.8	3.219	Mg	1.2	1.318
S	2.5	2.957	Na	0.9	0.560
I	2.5	2.778	Cs	0.7	0.220
C	2.5	2.746			

Other treatments[18] have led to scales that are based on different principles, e.g., the "compactness" of an atom's electron cloud.[19] In some of these treatments electronegativities can be calculated for different valence states, for different hybridizations (e.g., *sp* carbon atoms are more electronegative than sp^2, which are still more electronegative than sp^3),[20] and even differently for primary, secondary, and tertiary carbon atoms. Also, electronegativities can be calculated for groups rather than atoms (Table 2).[21]

Electronegativity information can be obtained from nmr spectra. In the absence of a magnetically anisotropic group[22] the chemical shift of a proton is approximately proportional to the electron density around it and hence to the electronegativity of the atom or group to which it is attached. The greater the electronegativity of the atom or group, the lower the electron density around the proton and the further downfield the chemical shift. An example of the use of this correlation is found in the variation of chemical shift of the *ring* protons in the series toluene, ethylbenzene, isopropylbenzene, *t*-butylbenzene (there is a magnetically anisotropic group here, but its effect should be constant throughout the series). It is found that the electron density surrounding the ring protons decreases[23] in the order given.[24] However, this type of correlation is by no means perfect, since all the measurements are being made in a powerful field, which itself may affect the electron-density distribution. Coupling constants between the two protons of a system $-\underset{|}{C}H-\underset{|}{C}H-X$ have also been found to depend on the electronegativity of X.[25]

TABLE 2 Some group electronegativities relative to H = 2.176[21]

CH_3	2.472	CCl_3	2.666
CH_3CH_2	2.482	C_6H_5	2.717
CH_2Cl	2.538	CF_3	2.985
CBr_3	2.561	CN	3.208
$CHCl_2$	2.602	NO_2	3.421

---

[18] For several sets of electronegativity values, see Huheey, "Inorganic Chemistry," 3d ed., pp. 146–148, Harper and Row, New York, 1983.

[19] See Sanderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2259 (1983).

[20] Walsh, *Discuss. Faraday Soc.* **2,** 18 (1947).

[21] Inamoto and Masuda, *Chem. Lett.* 1003 (1982). For a review of group electronegativities, see Wells, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 111–145 (1968).

[22] A magnetically anisotropic group is one that is not equally magnetized along all three axes. The most common such groups are benzene rings (see p. 37) and triple bonds.

[23] This order is opposite to that expected from the field effect (p. 16). It is an example of the Baker–Nathan order (p. 65).

[24] Moodie, Connor, and Stewart, *Can. J. Chem.* **38,** 626 (1960).

[25] Williamson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 516 (1963); Laszlo and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2709 (1963); Niwa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40,** 2192 (1967). See also Williamson, Mosser, and Stedman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 7208 (1971).

When the difference in electronegativities is great, the orbital may be so far over to one side that it barely covers the other nucleus. This is an *ionic bond*, which is seen to arise naturally out of the previous discussion, leaving us with basically only one type of bond in organic molecules. Most bonds can be considered intermediate between ionic and covalent. We may speak of percent ionic character of a bond, which indicates the extent of electron-cloud distortion. There is a continuous gradation from ionic to covalent bonds.

Dipole Moment

The *dipole moment* is a property of the molecule that results from charge separations like those discussed above. However, it is not possible to measure the dipole moment of an individual bond within a molecule; we can measure only the total moment of the molecule, which is the vectorial sum of the individual bond moments.[26] These individual moments are roughly the same from molecule to molecule, but this constancy is by no means universal. Thus, from the dipole moments of toluene and nitrobenzene (Figure 10) we should expect the moment of *p*-nitrotoluene to be about 4.36 D. The actual value 4.39 D is reasonable. However, the moment of *p*-cresol (1.57 D) is quite far from the predicted value of 1.11 D. In some cases, molecules may have substantial individual bond moments but no total moments at all because the individual moments are canceled out by the overall symmetry of the molecule. Some examples are CCl_4, *trans*-1,2-dibromoethene, and *p*-dinitrobenzene.

Because of the small difference between the electronegativities of carbon and hydrogen, alkanes have very small dipole moments, so small that they are difficult to measure. For example, the dipole moment of isobutane is 0.132 D[27] and that of propane is 0.085 D.[28] Of course, methane and ethane, because of their symmetry, have no dipole moments.[30] Few organic molecules have dipole moments greater than 7 D.

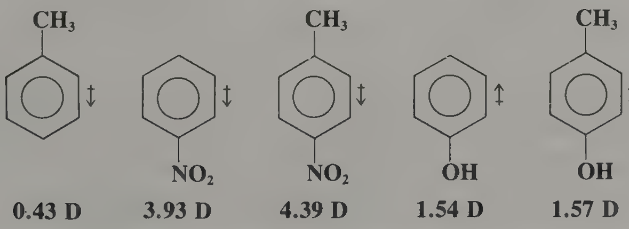


Figure 10 Some dipole moments, in debye units, measured in benzene. The arrow points to the negative part of the molecule.[29]

---

[26] For methods of determining dipole moments and discussions of their applications, see Exner, "Dipole Moments in Organic Chemistry," Georg Thieme Publishers, Stuttgart, 1975. For tables of dipole moments, see McClellan, "Tables of Experimental Dipole Moments," Vol. 1, W. H. Freeman, San Francisco, 1963; Vol. 2, Rahara Enterprises, El Cerrito, Calif., 1974.

[27] Maryott and Birnbaum, *J. Chem. Phys.* **24,** 1022 (1956); Lide and Mann, *J. Chem. Phys.* **29,** 914 (1958).

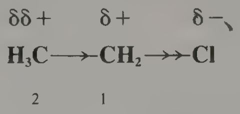
[28] Muenter and Laurie, *J. Chem. Phys.* **45,** 855 (1966).

[29] The values for toluene, nitrobenzene, and *p*-nitrotoluene are from McClellan, Ref. 26. The values for phenol and *p*-cresol were determined by Goode and Ibbitson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4265 (1960).

[30] Actually, symmetrical tetrahedral molecules like methane to do have extremely small dipole moments, caused by centrifugal distortion effects; these moments are so small that they can be ignored for all practical purposes. For CH_4 μ is about 5.4×10^{-6} D: Ozier, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* **27,** 1329 (1971); Rosenberg, Ozier, and Kudian, *J. Chem. Phys.* **57,** 568 (1972).

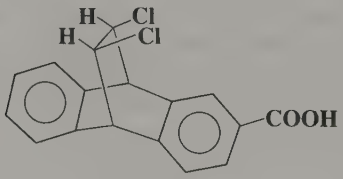
Inductive and Field Effects

The C—C bond in ethane is completely nonpolar because it connects two equivalent atoms. However, the C—C bond in chloroethane is polarized by the presence of the electronegative chlorine atom. This polarization is actually the sum of two effects. In the first of these, the C-1 atom, having been deprived of some of its electron density by the greater electronegativity of Cl, is



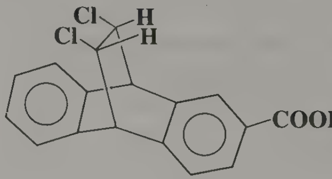
$$\overset{\delta\delta+}{\underset{2}{H_3C}}\longrightarrow\overset{\delta+}{\underset{1}{CH_2}}\twoheadrightarrow\overset{\delta-}{Cl}$$

partially compensated by drawing the C—C electrons closer to itself, resulting in a polarization of this bond and a slightly positive charge on the C-2 atom. This polarization of one bond caused by the polarization of an adjacent bond is called the *inductive effect.* The effect is greatest for adjacent bonds but may also be felt farther away; thus the polarization of the C—C bond causes a (slight) polarization of the three methyl C—H bonds. The other effect operates not through bonds, but directly through space or solvent molecules, and is called the *field effect.*[31] It is often very difficult to separate the two kinds of effect, but it has been done in a number of cases, generally by taking advantage of the fact that the field effect depends on the geometry of the molecule but the inductive effect depends only on the nature of the bonds. For example, in isomers **1** and **2**[32] the inductive effect of the chlorine atoms on the position of the electrons in the COOH group (and hence on the acidity, see Chapter 8) should be the same since the same bonds intervene; but the field effect is different because the chlorines are closer in space to the COOH in **1** than they are in **2**. Thus a comparison of the acidity of **1** and **2** should reveal whether a field effect is truly operating. The evidence obtained from such experiments is overwhelming that field effects are much more important than inductive effects.[33] In most cases the two types of effect are considered together; in this book we will not attempt to separate them but will use the name *field effect* to refer to their combined action.



pK_a = 5.67

1



pK_a = 6.07

2

Functional groups can be classified as electron-withdrawing ($-I$) or electron-donating ($+I$)

---

[31] Roberts and Moreland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2167 (1953).

[32] This example is from Grubbs, Fitzgerald, Phillips, and Petty, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 935 (1971).

[33] For example, see Dewar and Grisdale, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3548 (1962); Stock, *J. Chem. Educ.* **49,** 400 (1972); Golden and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3080 (1972); Cole, Mayers, and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4555 (1974); Modro and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 528 (1968); Liotta, Fisher, Greene, and Joyner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4891 (1972); Wilcox and Leung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 336 (1968); Butler, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 867 (1970); Adcock, Bettess, and Rizvi, *Aust. J. Chem.* **23,** 1921 (1970); Rees, Ridd, and Ricci, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2,* 294 (1976); Topsom, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 1–20 (1976); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 39 (1981); Grob, Kaiser, and Schweizer, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **60,** 391 (1977); Reynolds, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2,* 985 (1980), *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14,** 165–203 (1983); Bowden and Hojatti, *J. Chem Soc., Chem. Commun.* 273 (1982). For another view, see Exner and Fiedler, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **45,** 1251 (1980).

groups relative to hydrogen. This means, for example, that NO_2, a $-I$ group, will draw electrons to itself more than a hydrogen atom would if it occupied the same position in the molecule.

$$O_2N \leftarrow\leftarrow CH_2 \leftarrow Ph$$
$$H — CH_2 — Ph$$

Thus, in α-nitrotoluene, the electrons in the N—C bond are farther away from the carbon atom than the electrons in the H—C bond of toluene. Similarly, the electrons of the C—Ph bond are farther away from the ring in α-nitrotoluene than they are in toluene. Field effects are always comparison effects. We compare the $-I$ or $+I$ effect of one group with another (usually hydrogen). It is commonly said that, compared with hydrogen, the NO_2 group is electron-withdrawing and the O^- group electron-donating or electron-releasing. However, there is no actual donation or withdrawal of electrons, though these terms are convenient to use; there is merely a difference in the position of electrons due to the difference in electronegativity between H and NO_2 or between H and O^-.

Table 3 lists a number of the most common $-I$ and $+I$ groups.[34] It can be seen that compared with hydrogen, most groups are electron-withdrawing. The only electron-donating groups are groups with a formal negative charge (but not even all these), atoms of low electronegativity, such as Si, Mg, etc., and perhaps alkyl groups. Alkyl groups[35] have usually been regarded as electron-donating, but in recent years many examples of behavior have been found that can be interpreted only by the conclusion that alkyl groups are electron-withdrawing compared with hydrogen.[36] In accord with this is the value of 2.472 for the group electronegativity of CH_3 (Table 2) compared with 2.176 for H. We shall see that when an alkyl group is attached to an unsaturated or trivalent carbon (or other atom), its behavior is best explained by assuming it is $+I$ (see, for example, pp. 143, 152, 234, 457), but when it is connected to a saturated atom, the results are not as clear and alkyl groups seem to be $+I$ in some cases and $-I$ in others[37] (see also p. 235). Similarly, it is clear

TABLE 3 Field effects of various groups relative to hydrogen

The groups are listed approximately in order of decreasing strength for both $-I$ and $+I$ groups

$+I$	$-I$		
O^-	NR_3^+	COOH	OR
COO^-	SR_2^+	F	COR
CR_3	NH_3^+	Cl	SH
CHR_2	NO_2	Br	SR
CH_2R	SO_2R	I	OH
CH_3	CN	OAr	$C{\equiv}CR$
D	SO_2Ar	COOR	Ar
			$CH{=}CR_2$

---

[34] See also Ceppi, Eckhardt, and Grob, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3627 (1973).

[35] For a review of the field effects of alkyl groups, see Levitt and Widing, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 119–157 (1976).

[36] See Sebastian, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 97 (1971).

[37] See, for example, Schleyer and Woodworth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6528 (1968); Wahl and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7238 (1970). The situation may be even more complicated. See, for example, Minot, Eisenstein, Hiberty, and Anh, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-119 (1980).

that the field-effect order of alkyl groups attached to unsaturated systems is tertiary > secondary > primary > CH_3, but this order is not always maintained when the groups are attached to saturated systems. Deuterium is electron-donating with respect to hydrogen.[38] Other things being equal, atoms with *sp* bonding generally have a greater electron-withdrawing power than those with sp^2 bonding, which in turn have more electron-withdrawing power than those with sp^3 bonding.[39] This accounts for the fact that aryl, vinyl, and ethynyl groups are $-I$. Field effects always decrease with increasing distance, and in most cases (except when a very powerful $+I$ or $-I$ group is involved), cause very little difference in a bond four bonds away or more.

For discussions of field effects on acid and base strength and on reactivity, see Chapters 8 and 9, respectively.

Bond Distances[40]

The distances between atoms in a molecule are characteristic properties of the molecule and can give us information if we compare the same bond in different molecules. The chief methods of determining bond distances and angles are x-ray diffraction (only for solids), electron diffraction (only for gases), and spectroscopic methods. The distance between the atoms of a bond is not constant, since the molecule is always vibrating; the measurements obtained are therefore average values, so that different methods give different results.[41] However, this must be taken into account only when fine distinctions are made.

Measurements vary in accuracy, but indications are that similar bonds have fairly constant lengths from one molecule to the next. The variation is generally less than 1%. Thus for a bond between two sp^3 carbons the following results have been found:

C—C bond in	Bond length, Å	C—C bond in	Bond length, Å
Diamond	1.544[42]	Cyclohexane	1.540 ± 0.015[46]
C_2H_6	1.5324 ± 0.0011[43]	*t*-Butyl chloride	1.532[47]
C_2H_5Cl	1.5495 ± 0.0005[44]	*n*-Butane to *n*-heptane	1.531 – 1.534[48]
C_3H_8	1.532 ± 0.003[45]	Isobutane	1.535 ± 0.001[49]

Bond distances for some important bond types are given in Table 4. As can be seen in this table, carbon bonds are shortened by increasing *s* character. This is most often explained by the

---

[38] Streitwieser and Klein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2759 (1963).

[39] Bent, *Chem. Rev.* **61,** 275–311 (1961), p. 281.

[40] For a review of this subject and of bond angles, see Ref. 39. For tables of bond distances and angles, see Tables of Interatomic Distances and Configurations in Molecules and Ions, *Chem. Soc. Spec. Publ.* No. 11 (1958); Interatomic Distances Supplement, *Chem. Soc. Spec. Publ.* No. 18 (1965); Harmony, Laurie, Kuczkowski, Schwendeman, Ramsay, Lovas, Lafferty, and Maki, *J. Phys. Chem. Ref. Data* **8,** 619–721 (1979); Rogowski, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **4,** 1–50 (1963), pp. 22–31. For a review of molecular shapes and energies for many small organic molecules, radicals, and cations calculated by molecular-orbital methods, see Lathan, Curtiss, Hehre, Lisle, and Pople, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 175–261 (1974).

[41] Whiffen, *Chem. Br.* **7,** 57–61 (1971); Stals, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **20,** 1–22 (1970), pp. 2–5; Lide, *Tetrahedron* **17,** 125 (1962).

[42] Lonsdale, *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. London* **A240,** 219 (1947).

[43] Bartell and Higginbotham, *J. Chem. Phys.* **42,** 851 (1965).

[44] Wagner and Dailey, *J. Chem. Phys.* **26,** 1588 (1957).

[45] Iijima, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 1291 (1972).

[46] Tables of Interatomic Distances, Ref. 40.

[47] Momany, Bonham, and Druelinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3075 (1963); also see Lide and Jen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **38,** 1504 (1963).

[48] Bonham, Bartell, and Kohl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4765 (1959).

[49] Hilderbrandt and Wieser, *J. Mol. Struct.* **15,** 27 (1973).

TABLE 4 Bond distances

The values given are average lengths and do not necessarily apply exactly to the compounds mentioned

Bond type	Length, Å	Typical compounds
C—C[50]		
sp^3—sp^3	1.54	
sp^3—sp^2	1.50	Acetaldehyde, toluene, propene
sp^3—sp	1.46	Acetonitrile, propyne
sp^2—sp^2	1.48	Butadiene, glyoxal, biphenyl
sp^2—sp	1.43	Acrylonitrile, vinylacetylene
sp—sp	1.38	Cyanoacetylene, butadiyne
C═C[51]		
sp^2—sp^2	1.34	Ethylene
sp^2—sp	1.31	Ketene, allenes
sp—sp	1.28	Butatriene, carbon suboxide
C≡C[52]		
sp—sp	1.20	Acetylene
C—H[53]		
sp^3—**H**	1.11	Methane
sp^2—**H**	1.10	Benzene, ethylene
sp—**H**	1.08	**HCN,** acetylene
C—O		
sp^3—**O**	1.41[54]	Dimethyl ether, ethanol
sp^2—**O**	1.34[55]	Formic acid
C═O		
sp^2—**O**	1.20[55]	Formaldehyde, formic acid
sp—**O**	1.16[46]	CO_2
C—N		
sp^3—**N**	1.47[56]	Methylamine
sp^2—**N**	1.36[57]	Formamide
C═N[58]		
sp^2—**N**	1.28	Oximes, imines
C≡N[59]		
sp—**N**	1.16	**HCN**
C—S[60]		
sp^3—**S**	1.81	Methyl mercaptan
sp^2—**S**	1.75	Diphenyl sulfide
C═S[60]		
sp—**S**	1.56	CS_2

C—halogen[61]	**F**[57]	**Cl**[62]	**Br**[62]	**I**[62]
sp^3—halogen	1.38	1.78	1.94	2.14
sp^2—halogen	1.35	1.73	1.85	2.03
sp—halogen	1.27	1.63	1.79	1.99

---

[50] Somayajulu, *J. Chem. Phys.* **31,** 919 (1959). For a discussion of how sp^2–sp^2 distances vary with the structure of the molecule, see Kuchitsu, Fukuyama, and Morino, *J. Mol. Struct.* **1,** 463 (1968).

[51] Costain and Stoicheff, *J. Chem. Phys.* **30,** 777 (1959).

[52] For a full discussion of alkyne bond distances, see Simonetta and Gavezzotti, Ref. 6.

[53] Bartell, Roth, Hollowell, Kuchitsu, and Young, *J. Chem. Phys.* **42,** 2683 (1965).

[54] Blukis, Kasai, and Myers, *J. Chem. Phys.* **38,** 2753 (1963).

[55] Kwei and Curl, *J. Chem. Phys.* **32,** 1592 (1960).

fact that, as the percentage of *s* character in a hybrid orbital increases, the orbital becomes more like an *s* orbital and hence is held more tightly by the nucleus than an orbital with less *s* character. However, other explanations have also been offered (see p. 28), and the matter is not completely settled.

Indications are that a C—D bond is slightly shorter than a corresponding C—H bond. Thus, electron-diffraction measurements of C_2H_6 and C_2D_6 showed a C—H bond distance of 1.1122 ± 0.0012 Å and a C—D distance of 1.1071 ± 0.0012 Å.[43]

Bond Angles

It might be expected that the bond angles of sp^3 carbon would always be the tetrahedral angle 109°28′, but this is so only where the four groups are identical, as in methane, neopentane, or carbon tetrachloride. In most cases the angles deviate a little from the pure tetrahedral value. For example, the C—C—Br angle in 2-bromopropane is 114.2°.[63] Similarly, slight variations are generally found from the ideal values of 120 and 180° for sp^2 and *sp* carbon, respectively. These deviations occur because of slightly different hybridizations, that is, a carbon bonded to four other atoms hybridizes one *s* and three *p* orbitals, but the four hybrid orbitals thus formed are generally not equivalent, nor does each contain exactly 25% *s* and 75% *p* character. Because the four atoms have (in the most general case) different electronegativities, each makes its own demand for electrons from the carbon atom.[64] The carbon atom supplies more *p* character when it is bonded to more electronegative atoms, so that in chloromethane, for example, the bond to chlorine has somewhat more than 75% *p* character, which of course requires that the other three bonds have somewhat less, since there are only three *p* orbitals (and one *s*) to be divided among the four hybrid orbitals.[65] Of course, in strained molecules, the bond angles may be greatly distorted from the ideal values (see p. 130).

For oxygen and nitrogen, angles of 90° are predicted from p^2 bonding. However, as we have seen (p. 6), the angles of water and ammonia are much larger than this, as are the angles of other oxygen and nitrogen compounds (Table 5); in fact, they are much closer to the tetrahedral angle of 109°28′ than to 90°. These facts have led to the suggestion that in these compounds oxygen and nitrogen use sp^3 bonding; i.e., instead of forming bonds by the overlap of two (or three) *p* orbitals with 1*s* orbitals of the hydrogen atoms, they hybridize their 2*s* and 2*p* orbitals to form four sp^3 orbitals and then use only two (or three) of these for bonding with hydrogen, the others remaining occupied by unshared pairs (also called *lone pairs*). If this description is valid, and it is generally accepted by most chemists today, it becomes necessary to explain why the angles of these two compounds are in fact not 109°28′ but a few degrees smaller. One explanation that has been offered is that the unshared pair actually has a greater steric requirement than a pair in a bond, since there is no second nucleus to draw away some of the electron density and the bonds are thus crowded

---

[56] Higginbotham and Bartell, *J. Chem. Phys.* **42,** 1131 (1965).

[57] Lide, Ref. 41.

[58] Levine, *J. Chem. Phys.* **38,** 2326 (1963).

[59] Karakida, Fukuyama, and Kuchitsu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 299 (1974).

[60] Abrahams, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **10,** 407–436 (1956).

[61] For reviews of carbon–halogen bonds, see Trotter, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon-Halogen Bond," pt. 1, pp. 49–62, Wiley, New York, 1973; and Mikhailov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 983–997 (1971).

[62] Rajput and Chandra, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 1854 (1966).

[63] Schwendeman and Tobiason, *J. Chem. Phys.* **43,** 201 (1965).

[64] For a review of this concept, see Bingel and Lüttke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 899–910 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 944–956].

[65] This assumption has been challenged: see Pomerantz and Liebman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2385 (1975).

TABLE 5 Oxygen, sulfur, and nitrogen bond angles in some compounds

Angle	Value	Compound	Ref.
H—O—H	104°27′	Water	5
C—O—H	107–109°	Methanol	46
C—O—C	111°43′	Dimethyl ether	54
C—O—C	124 ± 5°	Diphenyl ether	60
H—S—H	92.1°	H_2S	60
C—S—H	99.4°	Methyl mercaptan	60
C—S—C	99.1°	Dimethyl sulfide	66
H—N—H	106°46′	Ammonia	5
H—N—H	106°	Methylamine	67
C—N—H	112°	Methylamine	67
C—N—C	108.7°	Trimethylamine	68

together. However, most evidence is that unshared pairs have smaller steric requirements than bonds[69] and the explanation most commonly accepted is that the hybridization is not pure sp^3. As we have seen above, an atom supplies more p character when it is bonded to more electronegative atoms. An unshared pair may be considered to be an ''atom'' of the lowest possible electronegativity, since there is no attracting power at all. Consequently, the unshared pairs have more s and the bonds more p character than pure sp^3 orbitals, making the bonds somewhat more like p^2 bonds and reducing the angle. As seen in Table 5, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur angles generally increase with decreasing electronegativity of the substituents. Note that the explanation given above cannot explain why some of these angles are *greater* than the tetrahedral angle.

Bond Energies[70]

There are two kinds of bond energy. The energy necessary to cleave a bond to give the constituent radicals is called the *dissociation energy D*. For example, D for $H_2O \rightarrow HO + H$ is 118 kcal/mol. However, this is not taken as the energy of the O—H bond in water, since D for $H—O \rightarrow H + O$ is 100 kcal/mol. The average of these two values, 109 kcal/mol, is taken as the *bond energy E*. In diatomic molecules, of course, $D = E$.

D values may be easy or difficult to measure, but there is no question as to what they mean. With E values the matter is not so simple. For methane, the total energy of conversion from CH_4

---

[66] Iijima, Tsuchiya, and Kimura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 2564 (1977).

[67] Lide, *J. Chem. Phys.* **27,** 343 (1957).

[68] Lide and Mann, *J. Chem. Phys.* **28,** 572 (1958).

[69] See, for example, Pumphrey and Robinson, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1903 (1963); Allinger, Carpenter, and Karkowski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3345 (1964); Eliel and Knoeber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5347 (1966); **90,** 3444 (1968); Jones, Katritzky, Richards, Wyatt, Bishop, and Sutton, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 127 (1970); Blackburne, Katritzky, and Takeuchi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 682 (1974), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 300–306 (1975); Aaron and Ferguson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7013 (1976); Anet and Yavari, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2794 (1977); Vierhapper and Eliel, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1081 (1979); Gust and Fagan, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2511 (1980). For other views, see Lambert and Featherman, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 611–626 (1975); Crowley, Morris, and Robinson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3575 (1976); Breuker, Kos, van der Plas, and van Veldhuizen, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 963 (1982).

[70] For reviews including methods of determination, see Kerr, *Chem. Rev.* **66,** 465–500 (1966); Knox and Palmer, *Chem. Rev.* **61,** 247–255 (1961); Benson, *J. Chem. Educ.* **42,** 502–518 (1965); Cottrell, ''The Strengths of Chemical Bonds,'' 2d ed., Academic Press, New York, 1958; Wiberg, in Nachod and Zuckerman, ''Determination of Organic Structures by Physical Methods,'' Vol. 3, pp. 207–245, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

to C + 4H (at 0 K) is 393 kcal/mol.[71] Consequently, *E* for the C—H bond in methane is 98 kcal/mol at 0 K. The more usual practice, though, is not to measure the heat of atomization (i.e., the energy necessary to convert a compound to its atoms) directly but to calculate it from the heat of combustion. Such a calculation is shown in Figure 11.

Heats of combustion are very accurately known for hydrocarbons.[72] For methane the value is 212.8 kcal/mol (at 25°C), which leads to a heat of atomization of 398.0 kcal/mol (at 25°C), or a value of *E* for the C—H bond of 99.5 kcal/mol at 25°C. This method is fine for molecules like methane in which all the bonds are equivalent, but for more complicated molecules assumptions must be made. Thus for ethane, the heat of atomization of 25°C is 676.1 kcal/mol (Figure 11), and we must decide how much of this energy is due to the C—C bond and how much to the six C—H bonds. Any assumption must be artificial, since there is no way of actually obtaining this information, and indeed the question has no real meaning. If we make the assumption that *E* for each of the C—H bonds is the same as *E* for the C—H bond in methane (99.5 kcal/mol), then $6 \times 99.5 = 597.0$, leaving 79.1 kcal/mol for the C—C bond. However, a similar calculation for propane gives a value of 80.3 for the C—C bond, and for isobutane, the value is 81.6. A consideration of heats of atomization of isomers also illustrates the difficulty. *E* values for the C—C bonds in pentane, isopentane, and neopentane, calculated from heats of atomization in the same way, are (at 25°C) 81.1, 81.8, and 82.4 kcal/mol, respectively, even though all of them have twelve C—H bonds and four C—C bonds.

These differences have been attributed to various factors caused by the introduction of new structural features. Thus isopentane has a tertiary carbon whose C—H bond does not have exactly the same amount of *s* character as the C—H bond in pentane, which for that matter contains secondary carbons not possessed by methane. It is known that *D* values, which *can* be measured, are not the same for primary, secondary, and tertiary C—H bonds (see Table 2 in Chapter 5). There is also the steric factor. Hence it is certainly not correct to use the value of 99.5 from methane as the *E* value for all C—H bonds. Several empirical equations have been devised that account for these factors; the total energy can be computed[73] if the proper set of parameters (one for each

$$\begin{array}{rlr}
C_2H_{6\,(gas)} + 3\tfrac{1}{2}O_{2\,(gas)} & = 2CO_{2(gas)} + 3H_2O_{(liq.)} & +372.9\text{ kcal} \\
2CO_{2(gas)} & = 2C_{(graphite)} + 2O_{2\,(gas)} & -188.2\text{ kcal} \\
3H_2O_{(liq.)} & = 3H_{2\,(gas)} + 1\tfrac{1}{2}O_{2(gas)} & -204.9\text{ kcal} \\
3H_{2\,(gas)} & = 6H_{(gas)} & -312.5\text{ kcal} \\
2C_{(graphite)} & = 2C_{(gas)} & -343.4\text{ kcal} \\
\hline
C_2H_{6\,(gas)} & = 6H_{(gas)} + 2C_{(gas)} & -676.1\text{ kcal}
\end{array}$$

Figure 11 Calculation of the heat of atomization of ethane at 25°C.

---

[71] For the four steps, *D* values are 101 to 102, 88, 124, and 80 kcal/mol, respectively, though the middle values are much less reliable than the other two. Knox and Palmer, *Chem. Rev.* **61,** 247–255 (1961); Brewer and Kester, *J. Chem. Phys.* **40,** 812 (1964); Linevsky, *J. Chem. Phys.* **47,** 3485 (1967).

[72] For values of heats of combustion of large numbers of organic compounds: hydrocarbons and others, see Cox and Pilcher, "Thermochemistry of Organic and Organometallic Compounds," Academic Press, New York, 1970; Domalski, *J. Phys. Chem. Ref. Data* **1,** 221–277 (1972). For large numbers of heats-of-formation values (from which heats of combustion are easily calculated) see Stull, Westrum, and Sinke, "The Chemical Thermodynamics of Organic Compounds," Wiley, New York, 1969.

[73] For reviews, see Cox and Pilcher, Ref. 72, pp. 531–597; Skinner and Pilcher, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17,** 264–288 (1963). See also Gasteiger, Jacob, and Strauss, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 139 (1979).

TABLE 6 Bond energy *E* values for some important bond types

E values are arranged within each group in order of decreasing strength. The mean values are averaged over a large series of compounds. The calculated values are computed for just one compound using values for other bonds from earlier values in the table

Bond	Mean value[75] of *E* at 25°C, kcal/mol	Value	Calculated from	Bond	Mean value[75] of *E* at 25°C, kcal/mol	Value	Calculated from
O—H	110–111	110.6	H_2O	C—S	66	64	C_2H_5SH
C—H	96–99	99.5	CH_4	C—I	52	50.1	CH_3I
N—H	93	93.4	NH_3				
S—H	82	83	H_2S	C≡C	199–200	194.4	C_2H_2
				C=C	146–151	141.3	C_2H_4
C—F	...	116	CF_4	C—C	83–85	79.1	C_2H_6
C—H	96–99	99.5	CH_4				
C—O	85–91	76.8	CH_3OH	C≡N	204	206.1	HCN
		84.2	C_2H_5OH	C=O	173–81	164	HCHO
C—C	83–85	79.1	C_2H_6			192	CO_2
C—Cl	79	78.3	CCl_4	C=N	143[76]		
C—N	69–75[76]	66.5	CH_3NH_2				
C—Br	66	69	CBr_4				
		65	$CHBr_3$				

structural feature) is inserted. Of course these parameters are originally calculated from the known total energies of some molecules which contain the structural feature.

Table 6 gives *E* values for various bonds. The mean values given are those averaged over a large series of compounds. The other values are calculated for just one compound, using values for the other bonds from earlier values in the table. The literature contains charts that take account of hybridization (thus an sp^3 C—H bond does not have the same energy as an sp^2 C—H bond).[74]

Certain generalizations can be derived from the data in Table 6.

1. There is a correlation of bond strengths with bond distances. A comparison of Tables 4 and 6 shows that, in general, *shorter bonds are stronger bonds.* Since we have already seen that increasing *s* character shortens bonds (p. 18), it follows that bond strengths increase with increasing *s* character.

2. Bonds become weaker as we move down the periodic table. Compare C—O and C—S or the four carbon–halogen bonds. This is a consequence of the first generalization, since bond distances must increase as we go down the periodic table because the number of inner electrons increases.

3. Double bonds are both shorter and stronger than the corresponding single bonds, but not twice as strong, because π overlap is less than σ overlap. This means that a σ bond is stronger than a π bond. The difference in energy between a single bond, say C—C, and the corresponding double bond is the amount of energy necessary to cause rotation around the double bond.[77]

[74] Ref. 73; Cox, *Tetrahedron* **18,** 1337 (1962).

[75] These values, except where noted, are from Lovering and Laidler, *Can. J. Chem.* **38,** 2367 (1960); Levi and Balandin, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 149 (1960).

[76] Bedford, Edmondson, and Mortimer, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2927 (1962).

[77] For a discussion of the different magnitudes of the bond energies of the two bonds of the double bond, see Miller, *J. Chem. Educ.* **55,** 778 (1978).

2

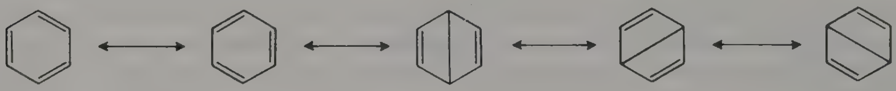
DELOCALIZED CHEMICAL BONDING

Although the bonding of many compounds can be adequately described by a single Lewis structure (page 11), this is not sufficient for many other compounds. These compounds contain one or more bonding orbitals that are not restricted to two atoms, but that are spread out over three or more. Such bonding is said to be *delocalized.*[1] In this chapter we shall see which types of compounds must be represented in this way.

The two chief general methods of approximately solving the wave equation, discussed in Chapter 1, are also used for compounds containing delocalized bonds.[2] In the valence-bond method, several possible Lewis structures (called *canonical forms*) are drawn and the molecule is taken to be a weighted average of them. Each ψ in Eq. (2), Chapter 1,

$$\Psi = c_A\psi_A + c_B\psi_B + \cdots$$

represents one of these structures. This representation of a real structure as a weighted average of two or more canonical forms is called *resonance*. For benzene the canonical forms are **1** and **2.**



1 **2** **3** **4** **5**

Double-headed arrows are used to indicate resonance. When the wave equation is solved, it is found that the energy value obtained by considering that **1** and **2** participate equally is lower than that for **1** or **2** alone. If **3, 4,** and **5** (called *Dewar structures*) are also considered, the value is lower still. According to this method, **1** and **2** each contribute 39% to the actual molecule and the others 7.3% each.[3] The carbon–carbon bond order is 1.463 (not 1.5, which would be the case if only **1** and **2** contributed). In the valence-bond method, the *bond order* of a particular bond is the sum of the weights of those canonical forms in which the bond is double plus 1 for the single bond that is present in all of them.[4] Thus, according to this picture, each C—C bond is not halfway between a single and a double bond but somewhat less. The energy of the actual molecule is obviously less than that of any one Lewis structure, since otherwise it would have one of those structures. The difference in energy between the actual molecule and the Lewis structure of lowest energy[5] is called the *resonance energy*.

---

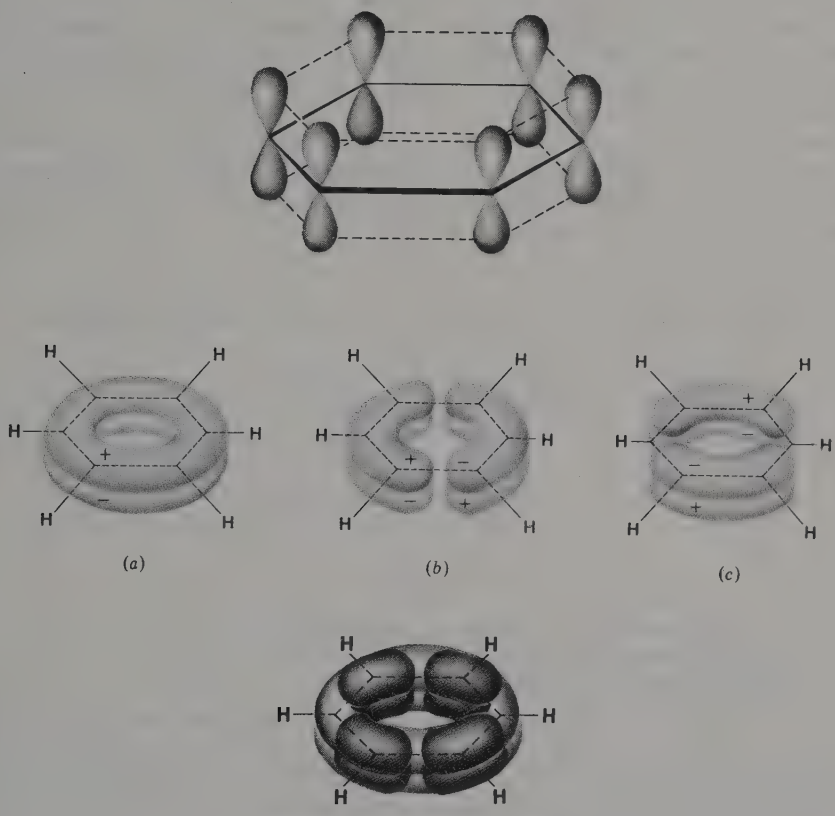
[1] The classic work on delocalized bonding is Wheland, "Resonance in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1955.

[2] There are other methods. For a discussion of the free-electron method, see Streitwieser, "Molecular Orbital Theory for Organic Chemists," pp. 27–29, Wiley, New York, 1961. For the nonpairing method, in which benzene is represented as having three electrons between adjacent carbons, see Hirst and Linnett, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1035 (1962); and Firestone, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2621 (1969).

[3] Pullman and Pullman, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **4,** 31–71 (1958), p. 33.

[4] For a more precise method of calculating valence-bond orders, see Clarkson, Coulson, and Goodwin, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 2153 (1963). See also Herndon and Párkányi, *J. Chem. Educ.* **53,** 689 (1976).

Qualitatively, the resonance picture is often used to describe the structure of molecules, but quantitative valence-bond calculations become much more difficult as the structures become more complicated (e.g., naphthalene, pyridine, etc.). Therefore the molecular-orbital method is used much more often for the solution of wave equations. If we look at benzene by this method (qualitatively), we see that each carbon atom, being connected to three other atoms, uses sp^2 orbitals to form σ bonds, so that all 12 atoms are in one plane. Each carbon has a *p* orbital (containing one electron) remaining and each of these can overlap equally with the two adjacent *p* orbitals. This overlap of six orbitals (see Figure 1) produces six new orbitals, three of which (shown) are bonding. These three (called π orbitals) all occupy approximately the same space. One of the three



Superposition of (*a*), (*b*), and (*c*).

(*d*)

Figure 1 The six *p* orbitals of benzene overlap to form three bonding orbitals, (*a*), (*b*), and (*c*). The three orbitals superimposed are shown in (*d*).

---

[5] Of course, the Lewis structures are not real, and their energies can only be estimated.

is of lower energy than the other two, which are degenerate. They each have the plane of the ring as a node and so are in two parts, one above and one below the plane. The two orbitals of higher energy (Figure 1*b* and *c*) also have another node. The six electrons that occupy this torus-shaped cloud are called the *aromatic sextet*. The carbon–carbon bond order for benzene, calculated by the molecular-orbital method, is 1.667.[6]

For planar unsaturated and aromatic molecules, many molecular-orbital calculations have been made by treating the σ and π electrons separately. It is assumed that the σ orbitals can be treated as localized bonds and the calculations involve only the π electrons. The first such calculations were made by Hückel; such calculations are often called *Hückel molecular-orbital* (HMO) *calculations*.[7] Because electron–electron repulsions are either neglected or averaged out in the HMO method, another approach, the *self-consistent field* (SCF), or *Hartree–Fock*, method, was devised.[8] Although these methods give many useful results for planar unsaturated and aromatic molecules, they are often unsuccessful for other molecules; it would obviously be better if all electrons, both σ and π, could be included in the calculations. The development of modern computers has now made this possible.[9] Many such calculations have been made[10] using a number of methods, among them an extension of the Hückel method (EHMO)[11] and the application of the SCF method to all valence electrons.[12]

Although the valence-bond and molecular-orbital methods give slightly different results, both show that there is delocalization in benzene. For example, each predicts that the six carbon–carbon bonds should have equal lengths, which is true. Since each method is useful for certain purposes, we shall use one or the other as appropriate.

Bond Distances and Energies in Compounds Containing Delocalized Bonds

If we add the energies of all the bonds in benzene, taking the values from a table like Table 6 in Chapter 1, the value for the heat of atomization turns out to be less than that actually found in benzene (Figure 2). The actual value is 1323 kcal/mol. If we use *E* values for a C═C double

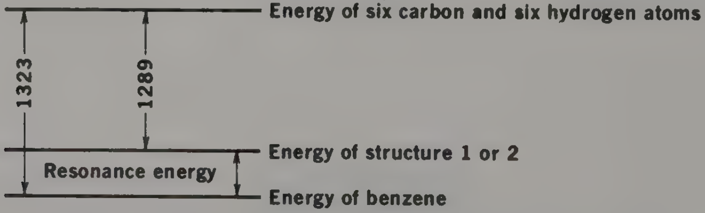

Energy of six carbon and six hydrogen atoms
1323
1289
Energy of structure 1 or 2
Resonance energy
Energy of benzene

Figure 2 Resonance energy in benzene (in kilocalories per mole).

---

[6] The molecular-orbital method of calculating bond order is more complicated than the valence-bond method. See Ref. 3, p. 36, and Clarkson, Coulson, and Goodwin, Ref. 4.

[7] See Yates, "Hückel Molecular Orbital Theory," Academic Press, New York, 1978; Coulson, O'Leary, and Mallion, "Hückel Theory for Organic Chemists," Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[8] Roothaan, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* **23,** 69 (1951); Pariser and Parr, *J. Chem. Phys.* **21,** 466, 767 (1952); Pople, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **49,** 1375 (1953), *J. Phys. Chem.* **61,** 6 (1975); Dewar, "The Molecular Orbital Theory of Organic Chemistry," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969; Dewar, in "Aromaticity," *Chem. Soc. Spec. Pub.* no. 21, pp. 177–215, 1967.

[9] For discussions of the progress made in quantum chemistry calculations, see Ramsden, *Chem. Br.* **14,** 396–403 (1978); Hall, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **2,** 21–28 (1973).

[10] For a review of molecular-orbital calculations on *saturated* organic compounds, see Herndon, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **9,** 99–177 (1972).

[11] Hoffmann, *J. Chem. Phys.* **39,** 1397 (1963). See Yates, Ref. 7, pp. 190–201.

[12] Dewar, "The Molecular Orbital Theory of Chemistry," Ref. 8; Jaffé, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **2,** 136–143 (1969); Kutzelnigg, Del Re, and Berthier, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **22,** 1–222 (1971).

bond obtained from cyclohexene (148.8), a C—C single bond from cyclohexane (81.8), and C—H bonds from methane (99.5), we get a total of 1289 kcal/mol for structure **1** or **2.** By this calculation the resonance energy is 34 kcal/mol. Of course, this is an arbitrary calculation since, in addition to the fact that we are calculating a heat of atomization for a nonexistent structure (**1**), we are forced to use E values that themselves do not have a firm basis in reality. The resonance energy can never be measured, only estimated, since we can measure the heat of atomization of the real molecule but can only make an intelligent guess at that of the Lewis structure of lowest energy. Another method frequently used for estimation of resonance energy involves measurements of heats of hydrogenation.[13] Thus, the heat of hydrogenation of cyclohexene is 28.6 kcal/mol, so that we might expect a hypothetical **1** or **2** with three double bonds to have a heat of hydrogenation of about 85.8 kcal/mol. The real benzene has a heat of hydrogenation of 49.8 kcal/mol, which gives a resonance energy of 36 kcal/mol. By any calculation the real molecule is more stable than a hypothetical **1** or **2.**

The energies of the six benzene orbitals can be calculated from HMO theory in terms of two quantities, α and β. α is the amount of energy possessed by an isolated $2p$ orbital before overlap, while β (called the *resonance integral*) is an energy unit expressing the degree of stabilization resulting from π-orbital overlap. A negative value of β corresponds to stabilization, and the energies of the six orbitals are (lowest to highest): $\alpha + 2\beta$, $\alpha + \beta$, $\alpha + \beta$, $\alpha - \beta$, $\alpha - \beta$, and $\alpha - 2\beta$.[14] The total energy of the three occupied orbitals is $6\alpha + 8\beta$, since there are two electrons in each orbital. The energy of an ordinary double bond is $\alpha + \beta$, so that structure **1** or **2** has an energy of $6\alpha + 6\beta$. The resonance energy of benzene is therefore 2β. Unfortunately, there is no convenient way to calculate the value of β from molecular-orbital theory. It is often given for benzene as about 18 kcal/mol; this number being half of the resonance energy calculated from heats of combustion or hydrogenation.

We might expect that bond distances in compounds exhibiting delocalization would lie between the values gives in Table 4 in Chapter 1. This is certainly the case for benzene, since the carbon–carbon bond distance is 1.40 Å,[15] which is between the 1.48 Å for an sp^2–sp^2 C—C single bond and the 1.34 Å of the sp^2–sp^2 C═C double bond.

Kinds of Molecules That Have Delocalized Bonds

There are three main types of structure that exhibit delocalization:

1. *Double (or triple) bonds in conjugation.*[16] Benzene is, of course, an example, but the simplest is butadiene. In the molecular orbital picture (Figure 3), the overlap of four orbitals gives two bonding orbitals that contain the four electrons and two vacant antibonding orbitals. It can be seen that each orbital has one more node than the one of next lower energy. The energies of the four orbitals are (lowest to highest): $\alpha + 1.618\beta$, $\alpha + 0.618\beta$, $\alpha - 0.618\beta$, and $\alpha - 1.618\beta$; hence the total energy of the two occupied orbitals is $4\alpha + 4.472\beta$. Since the energy of two isolated double bonds is $4\alpha + 4\beta$, the resonance energy by this calculation is 0.472β.

[13] For a review of heats of hydrogenation, with tables of values, see Jensen, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 189–228 (1976).

[14] For the method for calculating these and similar results given in this chapter, see Higasi, Baba, and Rembaum, "Quantum Organic Chemistry," Interscience, New York, 1965; Streitwieser, Ref. 2. For values of calculated orbital energies and bond orders for many conjugated molecules, see Coulson and Streitwieser, "Dictionary of π Electron Calculations," Freeman, San Francisco, 1965.

[15] Bastiansen, Fernholt, Seip, Kambara, and Kuchitsu, *J. Mol. Struct.* **18,** 163 (1973); Tamagawa, Iijima, and Kimura, *J. Mol. Struct.* **30,** 243 (1976).

[16] For reviews of conjugation in open-chain hydrocarbons, see Simmons, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 1–50 (1970); and Popov and Kogan, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 119–141 (1968).

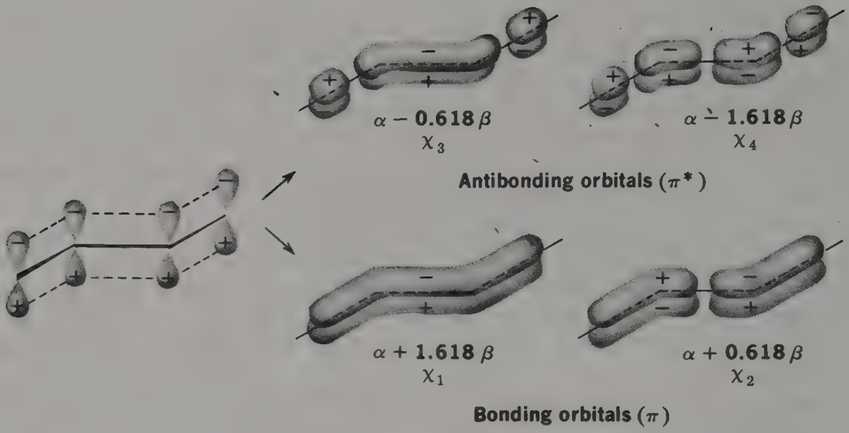
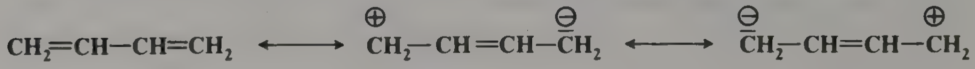


Figure 3 The four π orbitals of butadiene, formed by overlap of four *p* orbitals.

In the resonance picture, these structures are considered to contribute:



$$\underset{\mathbf{6}}{CH_2{=}CH{-}CH{=}CH_2} \longleftrightarrow \underset{\mathbf{7}}{\overset{\oplus}{C}H_2{-}CH{=}CH{-}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H_2} \longleftrightarrow \underset{\mathbf{8}}{\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H_2{-}CH{=}CH{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H_2}$$

6 **7** **8**

In either picture the bond order of the central bond should be higher than 1 and that of the other carbon–carbon bonds less than 2, although neither predicts that the three bonds have equal electron density. Molecular-orbital bond orders of 1.894 and 1.447 have been calculated.[17]

Since about 1959 doubt has been cast on the reality of delocalization in butadiene and similar molecules. Thus, the bond lengths in butadiene are 1.34 Å for the double bonds and 1.48 Å for the single bond.[18] Since the typical single-bond distance of a bond that is not adjacent to an unsaturated group is 1.54 Å (p. 18), it has been argued that the shorter single bond in butadiene provides evidence for resonance. However, this shortening can also be explained by hybridization changes (see p. 20); and other explanations have also been offered.[19] Resonance energies for butadienes, calculated from heats of combustion or hydrogenation, are only about 4 kcal/mol, and these values may not be entirely attributable to resonance. Thus, a calculation from heat of atomization data gives a resonance energy of 4.6 kcal/mol for *cis*-1,3-pentadiene, and −0.2 kcal/mol for 1,4-pentadiene. These two compounds, each of which possesses two double bonds, two C—C single bonds, and eight C—H bonds, would seem to offer as similar a comparison as we could make of a conjugated with a nonconjugated compound, but they are nevertheless not strictly comparable. The former has three sp^3 C—H and five sp^2 C—H bonds, while the latter has two and six, respectively. Also, the two single C—C bonds of the 1,4-diene are both sp^2–sp^3 bonds, while in the 1,3-diene, one is sp^2–sp^3 and the other is sp^2–sp^2. Therefore, it may be that some of the already small value of 4 kcal/mol is not resonance energy but arises from differing energies of bonds of different hybridization.[20]

---

[17] Coulson, *Proc. R. Soc. London, Ser. A* **169,** 413 (1939).

[18] Marais, Sheppard, and Stoicheff, *Tetrahedron* **17,** 163 (1962).

[19] Bartell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3497 (1959), *Tetrahedron* **17,** 177 (1962), **34,** 2891 (1978), *J. Chem. Educ.* **45,** 754–767 (1968); Wilson, *Tetrahedron* **17,** 191 (1962); Hughes, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 6423 (1968); Politzer and Harris, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 1567 (1971).

Although bond distances fail to show it and the resonance energy is low, the fact that butadiene is planar[21] shows that there is some delocalization, even if not as much as previously thought. Similar delocalization is found in other conjugated systems (e.g., C═C—C═O and C≡C—C═N), in longer systems with three or more multiple bonds in conjugation, and where double or triple bonds are conjugated with aromatic rings.

2. *Double (or triple) bonds in conjugation with a p orbital on an adjacent atom.* Where a *p* orbital is on an atom adjacent to a double bond, there are three parallel *p* orbitals that overlap. As we have previously noted, it is a general rule that the overlap of *n* atomic orbitals creates *n* molecular orbitals, so that overlap of a *p* orbital with an adjacent double bond gives rise to three new orbitals, as shown in Figure 4. The middle orbital is a *nonbonding orbital* of zero bonding energy. The central carbon atom does not participate in the nonbonding orbital.

There are three cases: the original *p* orbital may have contained two, one, or no electrons. Since the original double bond contributes two electrons, the total number of electrons accommodated by the new orbitals is four, three, or two. A typical example of the first situation is vinyl chloride CH_2═CH—Cl. Although the *p* orbital of the chlorine atom is filled, it still overlaps with the

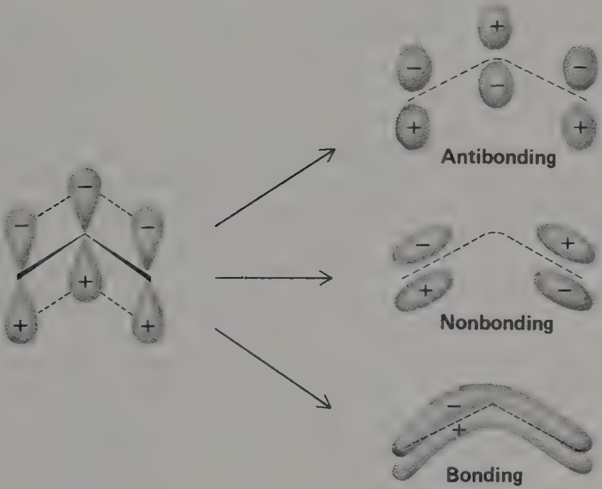


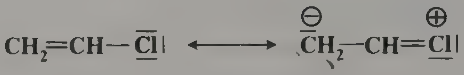
Figure 4 The three orbitals of an allylic system, formed by overlap of three *p* orbitals.

---

[20] For negative views on delocalization in butadiene and similar molecules, see Dewar and Gleicher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 692 (1965); Dewar and Schmeising, *Tetrahedron* **5,** 166 (1959), **11,** 96 (1960); Brown, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **55,** 694 (1959); Somayajulu, *J. Chem. Phys.* **31,** 919 (1959); Mikhailov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1284 (1960), *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **36,** 379 (1966). For positive views, see Miyazaki, Shigetani, and Shinoda, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 1491 (1971); Berry, *J. Chem. Phys.* **30,** 936 (1962); Kogan and Popov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1306 (1964); Altmann and Reynolds, *J. Mol. Struct.* **36,** 149 (1977). In general, the negative argument is that resonance involving excited structures, such as **7** and **8,** is unimportant. See rule 6 on p. 32. An excellent discussion of the controversy is found in Popov and Kogan, Ref. 16, pp. 119–124.

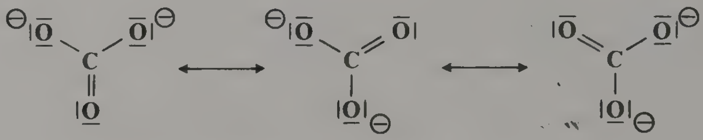
[21] See Ref. 18. See the discussion in Bastiansen and Traetteberg, *Tetrahedron* **17,** 147 (1962); Fischer-Hjalmars, *Tetrahedron* **17,** 235 (1962), **19,** 1805 (1963); and Coulson, *Tetrahedron* **17,** 258 (1962).

double bond. The four electrons occupy the two molecular orbitals of lowest energies. This is our first example of resonance involving overlap between unfilled orbitals and a *filled* orbital. Canonical forms for vinyl chloride are



$$CH_2{=}CH{-}\overline{\underline{Cl}}| \longleftrightarrow \overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}H_2}{-}CH{=}\overset{\oplus}{\overline{\underline{Cl}}}|$$

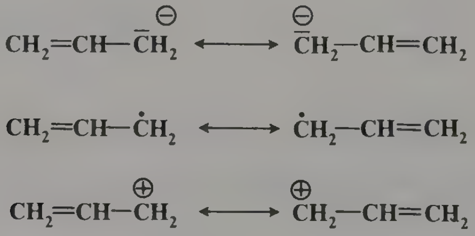
Any system containing an atom that has an unshared pair and that is directly attached to a multiple-bond atom can show this type of delocalization. Another example is the carbonate ion:



The bonding in allylic carbanions, e.g., $CH_2{=}CH{-}\overline{C}H_2^{\ominus}$, is similar.

The other two cases, where the original *p* orbital contains only one or no electron, are generally found only in free radicals and cations, respectively. Allylic free radicals have one electron in the nonbonding orbital. In allylic cations this orbital is vacant and only the bonding orbital is occupied. The orbital structures of the allylic carbanion, free radical, and cation differ from each other, therefore, only in that the nonbonding orbital is filled, half-filled, or empty. Since this is an orbital of zero bonding energy, it follows that the bonding π energies of the three species relative to electrons in the $2p$ orbitals of free atoms are the same. The electrons in the nonbonding orbital do not contribute to the bonding energy, positively or negatively.

By the resonance picture, the three species may be described as having double bonds in conjugation with, respectively, an unshared pair, an unpaired electron, and an empty orbital (see Chapter 5):



$$CH_2{=}CH{-}\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}H_2} \longleftrightarrow \overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}H_2}{-}CH{=}CH_2$$

$$CH_2{=}CH{-}\dot{C}H_2 \longleftrightarrow \dot{C}H_2{-}CH{=}CH_2$$

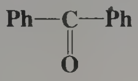
$$CH_2{=}CH{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H_2 \longleftrightarrow \overset{\oplus}{C}H_2{-}CH{=}CH_2$$

3. *Hyperconjugation.* The third type of delocalization, called *hyperconjugation*, is discussed on p. 64.

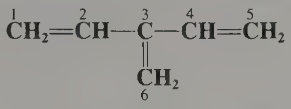
We shall find examples of delocalization which cannot be strictly classified as belonging to any of these types.

Cross Conjugation[22]

In a cross-conjugated compound, three groups are present, two of which are not conjugated with each other, although each is conjugated with the third. Some examples are



$Ph-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Ph$

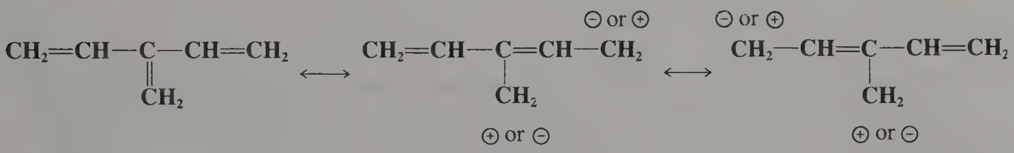


$\overset{1}{C}H_2=\overset{2}{C}H-\underset{\underset{\underset{6}{CH_2}}{\|}}{\overset{3}{C}}-\overset{4}{C}H=\overset{5}{C}H_2$

9

$CH_2=CH-O-CH=CH_2$

Using the molecular-orbital method, we find that the overlap of six *p* orbitals in **9** gives six molecular orbitals, of which the three bonding orbitals are shown in Figure 5, along with their energies. Note that two of the carbon atoms do not participate in the $\alpha + \beta$ orbital. The total energy of the three occupied orbitals is $6\alpha + 6.900\beta$, so the resonance energy is 0.900β. Molecular-orbital bond orders are 1.930 for the C-1,C-2 bond, 1.859 for the C-3,C-6 bond, and 1.363 for the C-2,C-3 bond.[22] Comparing these values with those for butadiene (p. 28), we see that the C-1,C-2 bond contains more and the C-3,C-6 bond less double-bond character than the double bonds in butadiene. The resonance picture supports this conclusion, since each C-1,C-2 bond is double in three of the

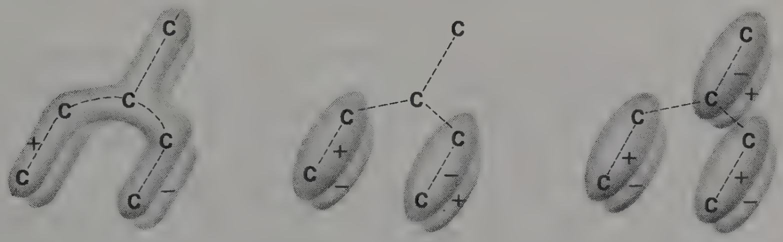


$$CH_2=CH-\underset{\underset{CH_2}{\|}}{C}-CH=CH_2 \longleftrightarrow \overset{\ominus \text{ or } \oplus}{CH_2}=CH-\underset{\underset{\underset{\oplus \text{ or } \ominus}{CH_2}}{|}}{C}=CH-CH_2 \longleftrightarrow \overset{\ominus \text{ or } \oplus}{CH_2}-CH=\underset{\underset{\underset{\oplus \text{ or } \ominus}{CH_2}}{|}}{C}-CH=CH_2$$

five canonical forms, while the C-3,C-6 bond is double in only one. In most cases it is easier to treat cross-conjugated molecules by the molecular-orbital method than the valence-bond method.

The Rules of Resonance

We have seen that one way of expressing the actual structure of a molecule containing delocalized bonds is to draw several possible structures and to assume that the actual molecule is a hybrid of



$\alpha + 1.932\beta$ $\alpha + \beta$ $\alpha + 0.518\beta$

Figure 5 The three bonding orbitals of 3-methylene-1,4-pentadiene (**9**).

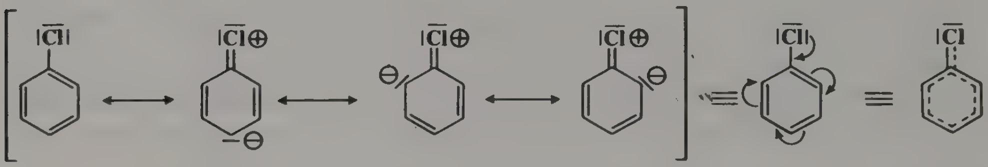
---

[22] For a discussion, see Phelan and Orchin, *J. Chem. Educ.* **45**, 633–637 (1968).

them. These canonical forms have no existence except in our imagination. The molecule does *not* rapidly shift between them. It is *not* the case that some molecules have one canonical form and some another. All the molecules of the substance have the same structure. That structure is always the same all the time and is a weighted average of all the canonical forms. In drawing canonical forms and deriving the true structures from them, we are guided by certain rules, among them the following:

1. All the canonical forms must be bona fide Lewis structures (see p. 11). For instance, none of them may have a carbon with five bonds.

2. The positions of the nuclei must be the same in all the structures. This means that all we are doing when we draw the various canonical forms is putting the *electrons* in in different ways. For this reason, shorthand ways of representing resonance are easy to devise:



10 **11**

The resonance interaction of chlorine with the benzene ring may be represented as shown in **10** or **11** and either of these representations is often used to save space. However, we shall not use the curved-arrow method of **10** since arrows will be used in this book to express the actual movement of electrons in reactions. We will use representations like **11** or else write out the canonical forms. The convention used in dashed-line formulas like **11** is that bonds that are present in all canonical forms are drawn as solid lines while bonds that are not present in all forms are drawn as dashed lines. In most resonance, σ bonds are not involved, and only the π or unshared electrons are put in in different ways. This means that if we write one canonical form for a molecule, we can then write the others by merely moving π and unshared electrons.

3. All atoms taking part in the resonance, i.e., covered by delocalized electrons, must lie in a plane or nearly so (see p. 34). This, of course, does not apply to atoms that have the same bonding in all the canonical forms. The reason for planarity is maximum overlap of the *p* orbitals.

4. All canonical forms must have the same number of unpaired electrons. Thus $\dot{C}H_2—CH{=}CH—\dot{C}H_2$ is not a valid canonical form for butadiene.

5. The energy of the actual molecule is lower than that of any form, obviously. Therefore, delocalization is a stabilizing phenomenon.

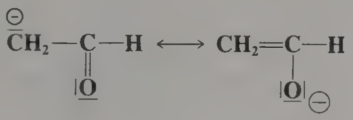
6. All canonical forms do not contribute equally to the true molecule. Each form contributes in proportion to its stability, the most stable form contributing most. Thus, for ethylene, the form $\bar{C}H_2—\overset{+}{C}H_2$ has such a high energy compared to $CH_2{=}CH_2$ that it essentially does not contribute at all. We have seen the argument that such structures do not contribute even in such cases as butadiene.[20] Equivalent canonical forms, such as **1** and **2**, contribute equally. The greater the number of significant structures that can be written and the more nearly equal they are, the greater the resonance energy, other things being equal.

It is not always easy to decide relative stabilities of imaginary structures; the chemist is often guided by intuition. However, the following rules may be helpful:

a. Structures with more covalent bonds are ordinarily more stable than those with fewer (compare **6** and **7**).

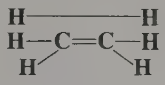
b. Stability is decreased by an increase in charge separation. Structures with formal charges are less stable than uncharged structures. Structures with more than two formal charges usually contribute very little. An especially unfavorable type of structure is one with two like charges on adjacent atoms.

c. Structures that carry a negative charge on a more electronegative atom are more stable than those in which the charge is on a less electronegative atom. Thus, **13** is more stable than **12.** Similarly, positive charges are best carried on atoms of low electronegativity.



$\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H_2{-}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{C}{-}H \longleftrightarrow CH_2{=}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}{-}H$

12 **13**

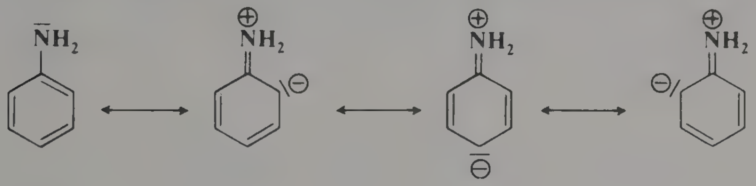


14

d. Structures with distorted bond angles or lengths are unstable, e.g., the structure **14** for ethane.

The Resonance Effect

Resonance always results in a different distribution of electron density than would be the case if there were no resonance. For example, if **15** were the actual structure of aniline, the two unshared electrons of the nitrogen would reside entirely on that atom. Since the real structure is not **15** but a hybrid that includes contributions from the other canonical forms shown, the electron density of the unshared pair does not reside entirely on the nitrogen, but is spread over the ring. This decrease in electron density at one position (and corresponding increase elsewhere) is called the *resonance* or *mesomeric effect*. We loosely say that the NH_2 contributes or donates electrons to the ring by a resonance effect, although no actual contribution takes place. The "effect" is caused by the fact that the electrons are in a different place from that we should expect if there were no resonance. In ammonia, where resonance is absent, the unshared pair *is* located on the nitrogen atom. As with the field effect (p. 17), we think of a certain molecule (in this case ammonia) as a substrate and then see what happens to the electron density when we make a substitution. When one of the hydrogen atoms of the ammonia molecule is replaced by a benzene ring, the electrons are "with-

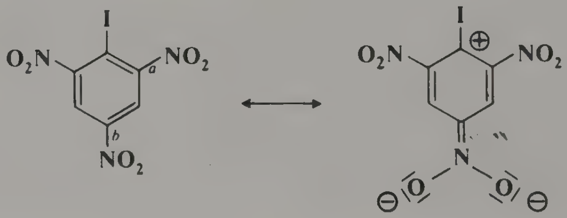


15

drawn'' by the resonance effect, just as when a methyl group replaces a hydrogen of benzene, electrons are ''donated'' by the field effect of the methyl. The idea of donation or withdrawal merely arises from the comparison of a compound with a closely related one or a real compound with a canonical form.

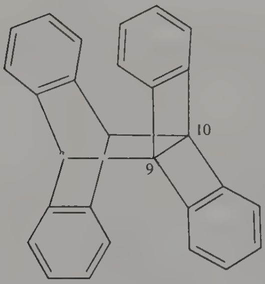
Steric Inhibition of Resonance

Rule 3 states that all the atoms covered by delocalized electrons must lie in a plane or nearly so. Many examples are known where resonance is reduced or prevented because the atoms are sterically forced out of planarity.

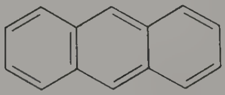


Bond lengths for the *o*- and *p*-nitro groups in picryl iodide are quite different.[23] Distance *a* is 1.45 Å, whereas *b* is 1.35 Å. The obvious explanation is that the oxygens of the *p*-nitro group are in the plane of the ring and thus in resonance with it, so that *b* has partial double-bond character, while the oxygens of the *o*-nitro groups are forced out of the plane by the large iodine atom.

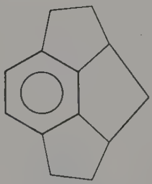
The Dewar-type structure for the central ring of the anthracene system in **16** is possible only because the 9,10 substituents prevent the system from being planar.[24] **16** is the actual structure of the molecule and is not in resonance with forms like **17**, although in anthracene itself, Dewar structures and structures like **17** both contribute. This is a consequence of rule 2 (p. 32). In order



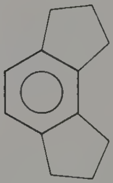
16



17



18



19

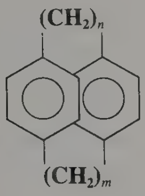
---

[23] Wepster, *Prog. Stereochem.* **2,** 99–156 (1958), p. 125. For another example of this type of steric inhibition of resonance, see Exner, Folli, Marcaccioli, and Vivarelli, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 757 (1983).

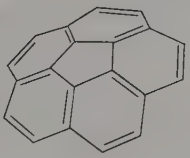
[24] Applequist and Searle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1389 (1964).

for a **17**-like structure to contribute to resonance in **16**, the nuclei would have to be in the same positions in both forms.

Even the benzene ring can be forced out of planarity.[25] Thus, **18** absorbs oxygen on standing and is easily hydrogenated, although **19** is almost completely unreactive.[26] Similarly, [*n*,*m*]paracyclophanes (**20**), where *n* and *m* are both 3 or less (the smallest yet prepared is [2.2]paracyclophane), have bent (boat-shaped) benzene rings and properties that depart significantly from those of ordinary benzene compounds.[27] Another molecule in which benzene rings are forced out of planarity is corannulene (**21**).[28]



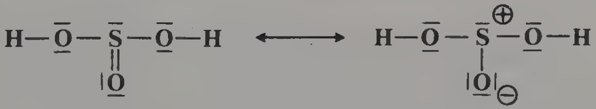
20



21

pπ–dπ Bonding. Ylides

We have mentioned (p. 9) that, in general, atoms of the second row of the periodic table do not form stable double bonds because the parallel *p* orbitals are too far for a reasonable amount of overlap. However, there is another type of double bond that is particularly common for the second-row atoms, sulfur and phosphorus. For example, such a double bond is found in the compound H_2SO_3, as written on the left. Like an ordinary double bond, this double bond contains one σ orbital but the second orbital is not a π orbital formed by overlap of half-filled *p* orbitals; instead it is formed by overlap of a filled *p* orbital from the oxygen with an empty *d* orbital from the sulfur. It is called a *pπ—dπ orbital*.[29] Note that we can represent this molecule by two canonical



$$\mathrm{H{-}\bar{O}{-}\underset{\underset{\underline{O}}{\|}}{\bar{S}}{-}\bar{O}{-}H} \longleftrightarrow \mathrm{H{-}\bar{O}{-}\underset{\underset{\underline{O}^{\ominus}}{|}}{\overset{\oplus}{\bar{S}}}{-}\bar{O}{-}H}$$

---

[25] For a review of planarity in aromatic systems, see Ferguson and Robertson, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1**, 203–281 (1963).

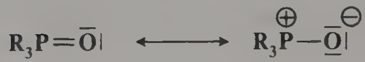
[26] Rapoport and Smolinksy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 1171 (1960).

[27] For a monograph, see Keehn and Rosenfeld, "Cyclophanes," 2 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1983. For reviews, see Vögtle and Hohner, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **74**, 1–29 (1978); Cram and Cram, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4**, 204–213 (1971); Vögtle and Neumann, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **48**, 67–129 (1974); and reviews in *Top. Curr. Chem.* **113**, 1–185; **115**, 1–163 (1983).

[28] Barth and Lawton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 1730 (1971).

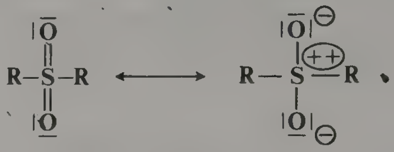
[29] For a monograph, see Kwart and King, "*d*-Orbitals in the Chemistry of Silicon, Phosphorus, and Sulfur," Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977.

forms but the bond is nevertheless localized, despite the resonance. Some other examples of $p\pi$–$d\pi$ bonding are

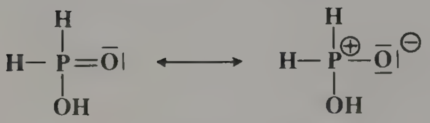


$$R_3P{=}\overline{O}| \longleftrightarrow R_3\overset{\oplus}{P}—\overset{\ominus}{\underline{\overline{O}}}|$$

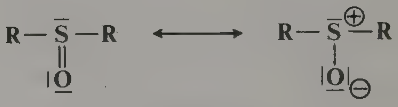
Phosphine oxides



Sulfones



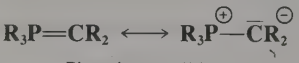
Hypophosphorous acid



Sulfoxides

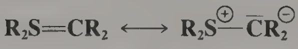
Nitrogen analogs are known for some of these phosphorus compounds, but they are less stable because the resonance is lacking. For example, amine oxides, analogs of phosphine oxides, can only be written $R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}—\overset{\ominus}{O}$. The $p\pi$–$d\pi$ canonical form is impossible since nitrogen is limited to eight outer-shell electrons.

In all the above examples the atom that donates the electron pair is oxygen and, indeed, oxygen is the most common such atom. But in another important class of compounds, called *ylides*, this atom is carbon.[30] There are three main types of ylides—phosphorus,[31] nitrogen,[32] and sulfur ylides,[33] although arsenic,[33a] selenium, etc., ylides are also known. Ylides may be defined as compounds



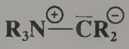
$$R_3P{=}CR_2 \longleftrightarrow R_3\overset{\oplus}{P}—\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}R_2$$

Phosphorus ylides



$$R_2S{=}CR_2 \longleftrightarrow R_2\overset{\oplus}{S}—\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}R_2$$

Sulfur ylides



$$R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}—\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}R_2$$

Nitrogen ylides

in which a positively charged atom from group V or VI of the periodic table is connected to a carbon atom carrying an unshared pair of electrons. Because of $p\pi$–$d\pi$ bonding, two canonical forms can be written for phosphorus and sulfur ylides, but there is only one for nitrogen ylides. Once again, because of the resonance, phosphorus ylides are much more stable than nitrogen ylides (see also p. 846). In spite of their resonance, sulfur ylides also have a low stability.

---

[30] For a monograph, see Johnson, "Ylid Chemistry," Academic Press, New York, 1966. For reviews, see Morris, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **10,** 189–257 (1983); Hudson, *Chem. Br.* **7,** 287–294 (1971); Lowe, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1070–1079 (1970).

[31] Although the phosphorus ylide shown has three R groups on the phosphorus atom, other phosphorus ylides are known where other atoms, e.g., oxygen, replace one or more of these R groups. When the three groups are all alkyl or aryl, the phosphorus ylide is also called a *phosphorane*.

[32] For a review of nitrogen ylides, see Musker, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **14,** 295–365 (1970).

[33] For a monograph on sulfur ylides, see Trost and Melvin, "Sulfur Ylides," Academic Press, New York, 1975. For reviews, see Belkin and Polezhaeva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 481–497 (1981); Block, in Stirling, "The Chemistry of the Sulphonium Group," part 2, pp. 680–702, Wiley, New York, 1981; Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," pp. 91–127, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[33a] For a review of arsenic ylides, see Yaozeng and Yanchang, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **20,** 115–157 (1982).

In almost all compounds that have $p\pi$–$d\pi$ bonds, the central atom is connected to four atoms or three atoms and an unshared pair and the bonding is approximately tetrahedral. The $p\pi$–$d\pi$ bond, therefore, does not greatly change the geometry of the molecule in contrast to the normal π bond, which changes an atom from tetrahedral to trigonal.

AROMATICITY

In the nineteenth century it was recognized that aromatic compounds[34] differ greatly from unsaturated aliphatic compounds,[35] but for many years chemists were hard pressed to arrive at a mutually satisfactory definition of aromatic character.[36] Qualitatively, there has never been real disagreement. Definitions have taken the form that aromatic compounds are characterized by a special stability and that they undergo substitution reactions more easily than addition reactions. The difficulty arises because these definitions are vague and not easy to apply in borderline cases.[37] In 1925 Armit and Robinson[38] recognized that the aromatic properties of the benzene ring are related to the presence of a closed loop of electrons, the *aromatic sextet* (aromatic compounds are thus the arch examples of delocalized bonding), but it still was not easy to determine whether rings other than the benzene ring possessed such a loop. With the advent of magnetic techniques, most notably nmr, it is possible to determine experimentally whether or not a compound has a closed ring of electrons; aromaticity can now be defined as the *ability to sustain an induced ring current.* A compound with this ability is called *diatropic*. Although this definition also has its flaws,[39] it is the one most commonly accepted today. There are several methods of determining whether a compound can sustain a ring current, but the most important one is based on nmr chemical shifts.[40] In order to understand this, it is necessary to remember that, as a general rule, the value of the chemical shift of a proton in an nmr spectrum depends on the electron density of its bond; the greater the density of the electron cloud surrounding or partially surrounding a proton, the more upfield is its chemical shift (a lower value of δ). However, this rule has several exceptions; one is for protons in the vicinity of an aromatic ring. When an external magnetic field is imposed upon an aromatic ring (as in an nmr instrument), the closed loop of aromatic electrons circulates in a diamagnetic ring current, which sends out a field of its own. As can be seen in the diagram, this induced field curves around and in the area of the proton is parallel to the external field, so that the field "seen" by the aromatic protons is greater than it would have been in the absence of the diamagnetic ring current. The protons are moved downfield (to higher δ) compared to where they would be if electron density were the only factor. Thus ordinary olefinic hydrogens are found at approximately 5 to 6 δ, while the hydrogens of benzene rings are located at about 7 to 8 δ. However, if there were protons located above or within the ring, they would be subjected to a *decreased* field and should appear at lower δ values than normal CH_2 groups (normal δ for CH_2 is approximately 1 to 2). The nmr spectrum of [10]paracyclophane (**22**) showed that this was indeed the case[41] and that the CH_2 peaks were shifted to lower δ the closer they were to the middle of the chain.

---

[34] For books on aromaticity, see Badger, "Aromatic Character and Aromaticity," Cambridge University Press, London, 1969; Snyder, "Nonbenzenoid Aromatics," 2 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1969–1971; Lloyd, "Carbocyclic Non-Benzenoid Aromatic Compounds," American Elsevier, New York, 1966; Bergmann and Pullman, "Aromaticity, Pseudo-Aromaticity, and Anti-Aromaticity," Israel Academy of Sciences and Humanities, Jerusalem, 1971; and "Aromaticity," *Chem. Soc. Spec. Pub.* no. 21, 1967. For reviews, see Sondheimer, *Chimia* **28,** 163–172 (1974); Cresp and Sargent, *Essays Chem.* **4,** 91–114 (1972); Figeys, *Top. Carbocyclic Chem.* **1,** 269–359 (1969); Garratt and Sargent, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 1–108 (1969); Vol'pin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 129–160 (1960); Hafner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 165–173 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 1041–1050 (1963)] and papers in *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 1397–1667 (1980).

[35] For an account of the early history of aromaticity, see Snyder, in Snyder, Ref. 34, vol. 1, pp. 1–31. See also Balaban, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 1409 (1980).

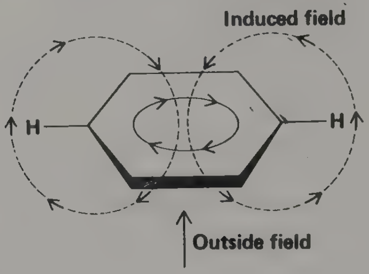
[36] For a review of the criteria used to define aromatic character, see Jones, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **18,** 253–280 (1968). For a method of assigning aromaticity on the basis of Hückel theory, see Schaad and Hess, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3068 (1972), *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 640 (1974).

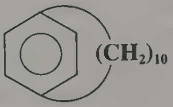
[37] It has been proposed that use of the word *aromatic* be discontinued altogether: see Lloyd and Marshall, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 404 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 477]; Labarre, in Bergmann and Pullman, Ref. 34, p. 55.

[38] Armit and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.* **127,** 1604 (1925).

[39] Jones, Ref. 36, pp. 266–274; Mallion, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 1541 (1980).

[40] For a review of nmr and other magnetic properties with respect to aromaticity, see Haddon, Haddon, and Jackman, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **16,** 103–220 (1971). For an example of a magnetic method other than nmr, see Dauben, Wilson, and Laity, in Snyder, Ref. 34, vol. 2, pp. 167–206.





22

It follows then that aromaticity can be determined from an nmr spectrum. If the protons attached to the ring are shifted downfield from the normal olefinic region, we can conclude that the molecule is diatropic and hence aromatic. In addition, if the compound has protons above or within the ring (we shall see an example of the latter on p. 57), then if the compound is diatropic, these will be shifted upfield. One drawback to this method is that it cannot be applied to compounds that have no protons in either category, e.g., the dianion of squaric acid (p. 63). Unfortunately, ^{13}C nmr is of no help here, since these spectra do not show ring currents.[42]

It should be emphasized that the old and new definitions of aromaticity are not necessarily parallel. If a compound is diatropic and therefore aromatic under the new definition, it is more stable than the canonical form of lowest energy, but this does not mean that it will be stable to air, light, or common reagents, since *this* stability is determined not by the resonance energy but by the difference in free energy between the actual molecule and the transition states for the reactions involved; and these differences may be quite small, even if the resonance energy is large. A unified theory has been developed that relates ring currents, resonance energies, and aromatic character.[43]

---

[41] Waugh and Fessenden, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 846 (1957). See also Shapiro, Gattuso, and Sullivan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 223 (1971).

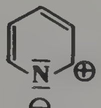
[42] For a review of ^{13}C spectra of aromatic compounds, see Günther and Schmickler, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **44,** 807–828 (1975).

[43] Haddon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1722 (1979); Haddon and Fukunaga, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1191 (1980).

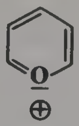
The vast majority of aromatic compounds have a closed loop of six electrons in a ring (the aromatic sextet), and we consider these compounds first.[44]

Six-Membered Rings

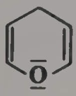
Not only is the benzene ring aromatic, but so are many heterocyclic analogs in which one or more hetero atoms replace carbon in the ring.[45] When nitrogen is the hetero atom, little difference is made in the sextet and the unshared pair of the nitrogen does not participate in the aromaticity. Therefore, derivatives such as N-oxides or pyridinium ions are still aromatic. However, for nitrogen heterocycles there are more significant canonical forms (e.g., **23**) than for benzene. Where oxygen or sulfur is the hetero atom, it must be present in its ionic form (**24**) in order to possess the valence of 3 that participation in such a system demands. Thus, pyran (**25**) is not aromatic, but the pyrylium ion (**24**) is.[46]



23

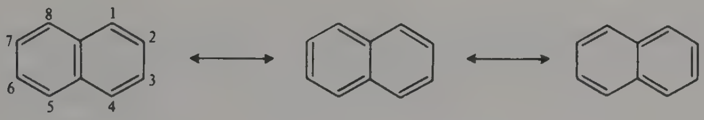


24



25

In systems of fused six-membered aromatic rings,[47] the principal canonical forms are usually not all equivalent. **26** has a central double bond and is thus different from the other two canonical forms of naphthalene, which are equivalent to each other. For naphthalene, these are the only forms that can be drawn without consideration of Dewar forms or those with charge separation.[48] If we assume that the three forms contribute equally, the 1,2 bond has more double-bond character than the 2,3 bond. Molecular-orbital calculations show bond orders of 1.724 and 1.603, respectively (compare benzene, 1.667). In agreement with these predictions, the 1,2 and 2,3 bond distances are 1.36 and 1.415 Å, respectively,[49] and ozone preferentially attacks the 1,2 bond.[50] This none-



26

---

[44] Values of molecular-orbital energies for many aromatic systems, calculated by the HMO method, are given in Coulson and Streitwieser, Ref. 14. Values calculated by a variation of the SCF method are given by Dewar and Trinajstič, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **35,** 3136, 3484 (1970).

[45] For a review of aromaticity of heterocycles, see Cook, Katritzky, and Linda, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **17,** 255–356 (1974).

[46] For a review of pyrylium salts, see Balaban, Schroth, and Fischer, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **10,** 241–326 (1969).

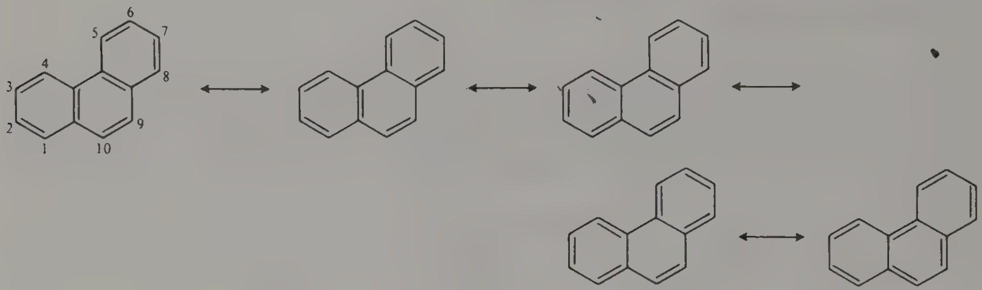
[47] For a treatise, see Clar, "Polycyclic Hydrocarbons," 2 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1964.

[48] As the size of a given fused ring system increases, it becomes more difficult to draw all the canonical forms. For discussions of methods for doing this, see Herndon, *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 10–15 (1974); Cyvin, *Monatsh. Chem.* **114,** 13, 525 (1983).

[49] Cruickshank, *Tetrahedron* **17,** 155 (1962).

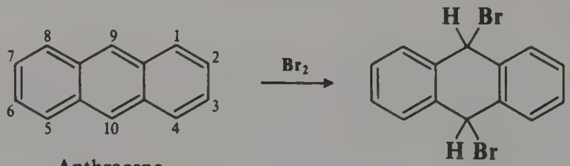
[50] Kooyman, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **66,** 201 (1947).

quivalency of bonds, called *partial bond fixation*,[51] is found in nearly all fused aromatic systems. In phenanthrene, where the 9,10 bond is a single bond in only one of five forms, bond fixation becomes extreme and this bond is readily attacked by many reagents:



In general there is a good correlation between bond distances in fused aromatic compounds and bond orders. Another experimental quantity that correlates well with the bond order of a given bond in an aromatic system is the nmr coupling constant for coupling between the hydrogens on the two carbons of the bond.[52]

The resonance energies of fused systems increase as the number of principal canonical forms increases, as predicted by rule 6 (p. 32).[53] Thus, for benzene, naphthalene, anthracene, and phenanthrene, for which we can draw, respectively, two, three, four, and five principal canonical forms, the resonance energies are, respectively, 36, 61, 84, and 92 kcal/mol, calculated from heat-of-combustion data.[54] Note that when phenanthrene, which has a total resonance energy of 92 kcal/mol, loses the 9,10 bond by attack of a reagent such as ozone or bromine, two complete benzene rings remain, each with 36 kcal/mol of resonance energy, so that the molecule has lost only 20 kcal/mol, which is much less than the 36 kcal/mol that would be lost if benzene was similarly attacked. The fact that anthracene undergoes many reactions across the 9,10 positions can be explained in a similar manner. Resonance energies for fused systems can be estimated by counting canonical forms.[55]



Anthracene

Not all fused systems can be fully aromatic. Thus for phenalene (**27**) there is no way double bonds can be distributed so that each carbon has one single and one double bond.[56] However, phenalene is acidic and reacts with potassium methoxide to give the corresponding anion (**28**),

---

[51] For reviews, see Efros, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 66–78 (1960); Badger, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **5,** 147–170 (1951).

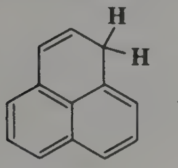
[52] Jonathan, Gordon, and Dailey, *J. Chem. Phys.* **36,** 2443 (1962); Cooper and Manatt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6325 (1969).

[53] See Herndon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2404 (1973); Herndon and Ellzey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6631 (1974).

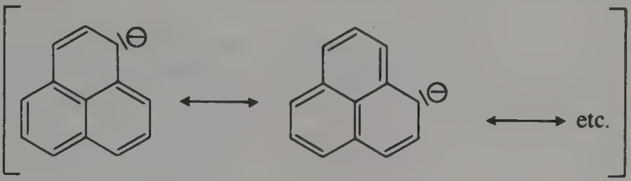
[54] Ref. 1, p. 98.

[55] Swinborne-Sheldrake and Herndon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 755 (1975).

[56] For reviews of phenalenes, see Murata, *Top. Nonbenzenoid Aromat. Chem.* **1,** 159–190 (1973); Reid, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **19,** 274–302 (1965).



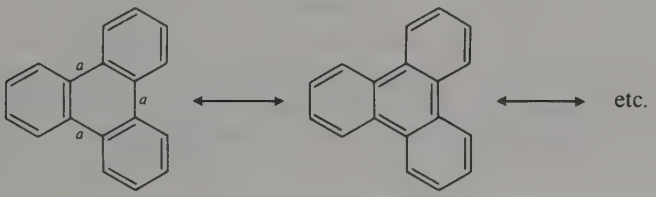
27



28

which is completely aromatic. So are the corresponding free radical and cation, in which the resonance energies are the same (see p. 47).[57]

In a fused system there are not six electrons for each ring. In naphthalene, if one ring is to have six, the other must have only four. One way to explain the greater reactivity of the ring system of naphthalene compared with benzene is to regard one of the naphthalene rings as aromatic and the other as a butadiene system.[58] This effect may become extreme, as in the case of triphenylene.[59] For this compound, there are eight canonical forms like **29**, in which none of the three bonds marked *a* is a double bond and only one form (**30**) in which at least one of them is double. Thus the molecule behaves as if the 18 electrons were distributed so as to give each of the outer rings a sextet, while the middle ring is "empty." Since none of the outer rings need share any electrons with an adjacent ring, they are as stable as benzene; triphenylene, unlike most fused aromatic hydrocarbons, does not dissolve in concentrated sulfuric acid and has a low reactivity.[60] This phenomenon, whereby some rings in fused systems give up part of their aromaticity to adjacent rings, is called *annellation* and can be demonstrated by uv spectra[47] as well as reactivities.



29 **30**

In this book we will use a circle to represent single aromatic rings (as, for example, in **22**), but will show one canonical form for fused ring compounds (e.g., **26**). It would be misleading to use two circles for naphthalene, for example, because that would imply 12 aromatic electrons, although naphthalene has only 10.[60a]

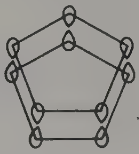
Five, Seven, and Eight-Membered Rings

Aromatic sextets can also be present in five and seven-membered rings. If a five-membered ring has two double bonds and the fifth atom possesses an unshared pair of electrons, the ring has five

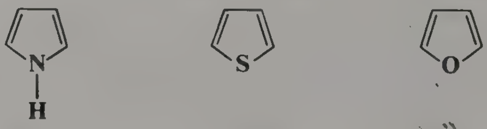
---

[57] Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1972 (1960).
[58] Meredith and Wright, *Can. J. Chem.* **38,** 1177 (1960).
[59] For a review of triphenylenes, see Buess and Lawson, *Chem. Rev.* **60,** 313–330 (1960).
[60] Clar and Zander, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1861 (1958).
[60a] See Belloli, *J. Chem. Educ.* **60,** 190 (1983).

p orbitals that can overlap to create five new orbitals—three bonding and two antibonding. There are six electrons for these orbitals: the four *p* orbitals of the double bonds each contribute one and

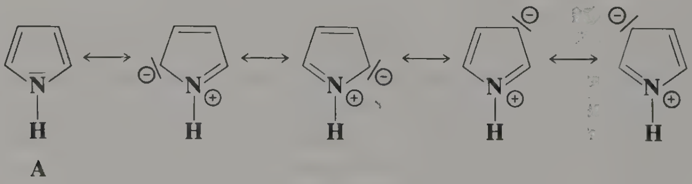


the filled orbital contributes the other two. The six electrons occupy the bonding orbitals and constitute an aromatic sextet. The heterocyclic compounds pyrrole, thiophene, and furan are the



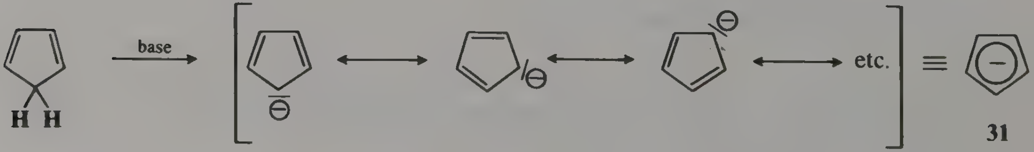
Pyrrole **Thiophene** **Furan**

most important examples of this kind of aromaticity, although furan has a lower degree of aromaticity than the other two.[61] Resonance energies for these three compounds are, respectively, 21, 29, and 16 kcal/mol.[62] The aromaticity can also be shown by canonical forms, e.g., for pyrrole:



In contrast to pyridine, the unshared pair in canonical structure **A** in pyrrole is needed for the aromatic sextet. This is why pyrrole is a much weaker base than pyridine.

The fifth atom may be carbon if it has an unshared pair. Cyclopentadiene has unexpected acidic properties ($pK_a \approx 16$) since on loss of a proton, the resulting carbanion is greatly stabilized by resonance although it is quite reactive. The cyclopentadienide ion is usually represented as in **31.**



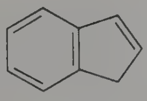
31

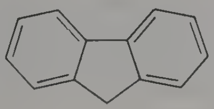
---

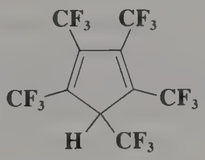
[61] The order of aromaticity in some of these compounds is benzene > thiophene > selenophene > tellurophene > furan: Fringuelli, Marino, Taticchi, and Grandolini, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 332 (1974).

[62] Ref. 1, p. 99. See also Calderbank, Calvert, Lukins, and Ritchie, *Aust. J. Chem.* **34,** 1835 (1981).

Resonance in this ion is greater than in pyrrole, thiophene, and furan, since all five forms are equivalent. The resonance energy for **31** has been estimated to be 24–27 kcal/mol.[63] That all five carbons are equivalent has been demonstrated by labeling the starting compound with ^{14}C and finding all positions equally labeled when cyclopentadiene was regenerated.[64] As expected for an aromatic system, the cyclopentadienide ion diatropic[65] and aromatic substitutions on it have been successfully carried out.[66] Indene (**32**) and fluorene (**33**) are also acidic ($pK_a \approx 20$ and 23, respectively) but less so than cyclopentadiene, since annellation causes the electrons to be less available to the five-membered ring. On the other hand, the acidity of 1,2,3,4,5-pentakis(trifluoromethyl)cyclopentadiene (**34**) is greater than that of nitric acid,[67] because of the electron-withdrawing effects of the triflouromethyl groups (see p. 230).

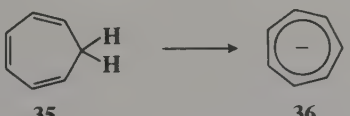

32


33

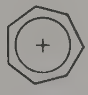


34

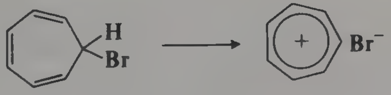
In sharp contrast to cyclopentadiene is cycloheptatriene (**35**), which has no unusual acidity. This would be hard to explain without the aromatic sextet theory, since, on the basis of resonance forms or a simple consideration of orbital overlaps, **36** should be as stable as the cyclopentadienyl anion (**31**). While **36** has been prepared in solution,[68] it is less stable than **31** and far less stable than **37**, in which **35** has lost not a proton but a hydride ion. The six double-bond electrons of **37** overlap with the empty orbital on the seventh carbon and there is a sextet of electrons covering seven carbon atoms. **37**, known as the *tropylium ion*, is quite stable.[69] Tropylium bromide, which could be completely covalent if the electrons of the bromine were sufficiently attracted to the ring, is actually an ionic compound:[70]



35 **36**



37



---

[63] Bordwell, Drucker, and Fried, *J. Org. Chem.* **46**, 632 (1981).

[64] Tkachuk and Lee, *Can. J. Chem.* **37**, 1644 (1959).

[65] Bradamante, Marchesini, and Pagani, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4621 (1971).

[66] Webster, *J. Org. Chem.* **32**, 39 (1967); Rybinskaya and Korneva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40**, 247–255 (1971).

[67] Laganis and Lemal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102**, 6633 (1980).

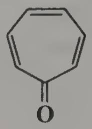
[68] Dauben and Rifi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85**, 3041 (1963); also see Breslow and Chang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 2200 (1965).

[69] For reviews, see Pietra, *Chem. Rev.* **73**, 293–364 (1973); Bertelli, *Top. Nonbenzenoid Aromat. Chem.* **1**, 29–46 (1973); Kolomnikova and Parnes, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36**, 735–753 (1967); Harmon, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 4, pp. 1579–1641, Wiley, New York, 1973; Nozoe, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **5**, 132–163 (1961).

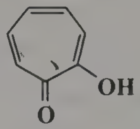
[70] Doering and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76**, 3203 (1954).

Just as with **31**, the equivalence of the carbons in **37** has been demonstrated by isotopic labeling.[71]

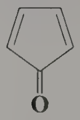
Another seven-membered ring that shows some aromatic character is tropone (**38**). This molecule would have an aromatic sextet if the two C=O electrons stayed away from the ring and resided near the electronegative oxygen atom. In fact, tropones are stable compounds, and tropolones (**39**) are found in nature.[72] However, analyses of dipole moments, nmr spectra, and x-ray diffraction measurements show that tropones and tropolones display appreciable bond alternations.[73] These molecules must be regarded as essentially nonaromatic, although with some aromatic character. Tropolones readily undergo aromatic substitution, emphasizing that the old and the new definitions of aromaticity are not always parallel. In sharp contrast to **38**, cyclopentadienone **40** is unknown, although many attempts have been made to prepare it. As in **38**, the electronegative oxygen atom draws electrons to itself, but in this case it leaves only four electrons and the molecule is unstable. Some derivatives of **40** have been prepared.[74]



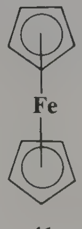
38



39



40



41

Another type of five-membered aromatic compound is the *metallocenes* (also called *sandwich compounds*), in which two cyclopentadienylide rings form a sandwich around a metallic ion. The best known of these is ferrocene (**41**), although others have been prepared with Co, Ni, Cr, Ti, V, and many other metals.[75] Ferrocene is quite stable, subliming above 100°C and unchanged at 400°C. The two rings rotate freely.[76] Many aromatic substitutions have been carried out on metallocenes.[77] Metallocenes containing two metal atoms and three cyclopentadienyl rings have also been prepared and are known as *triple-decker sandwiches.*[78] Even tetradecker and pentadecker sandwiches have been reported.[79]

---

[71] Vol'pin, Kursanov, Shemyakin, Maimind, and Neiman, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **29,** 3667 (1959).

[72] For reviews of tropones and tropolones, see Pietra, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 132–138 (1979); Nozoe, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **28,** 239–280 (1971); Pauson, *Chem. Rev.* **55,** 9–136 (1955).

[73] Bertelli and Andrews, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5280 (1969); Bertelli, Andrews, and Crews, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5286 (1969); Schaefer and Reed, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3902 (1971); Watkin and Hamor, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 2167 (1971); Barrow, Mills, and Filippini, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 66 (1973).

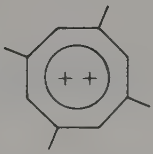
[74] For a review of cyclopentadienone derivatives and of attempts to prepare the parent compound, see Ogliaruso, Romanelli, and Becker, *Chem. Rev.* **65,** 261–367 (1965). See also Garbisch and Sprecher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6785 (1969).

[75] For a monograph on metallocenes, see Rosenblum, "Chemistry of the Iron Group Metallocenes," Wiley, New York, 1965. For reviews, see Pauson, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 839–855 (1977); Nesmeyanov and Kochetkova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 710–715 (1974); Shul'pin and Rybinskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 716–732 (1974); Perevalova and Nikitina, *Organomet. React.* **4,** 163–419 (1972); Bublitz and Rinehart, *Org. React.* **17,** 1–154 (1969); Leonova and Kochetkova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **42,** 278–292 (1973); Rausch, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **30,** 523–538 (1972); *Can. J. Chem.* **41,** 1289–1314 (1963); Little, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **1,** 133–210 (1963); Nesmeyanov, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1229–1239 (1965). For a bibliography of reviews on metallocenes, see Bruce, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **10,** 273–346 (1972), pp. 322–325.

[76] For a discussion of the molecular structure, see Haaland, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 415–422 (1979).

The bonding in ferrocene may be looked upon in simplified molecular-orbital terms as follows.[80] Each of the cyclopentadienide rings has five molecular orbitals—three filled bonding and two empty antibonding orbitals (p. 42). The outer shell of the Fe atom possesses nine atomic orbitals, i.e., one 4*s*, three 4*p*, and five 3*d* orbitals. The six filled orbitals of the two cyclopentadienide rings overlap with the *s*, three *p*, and two of the *d* orbitals of the Fe to form twelve new orbitals, six of which are bonding. These six orbitals make up two ring-to-metal triple bonds. In addition further bonding results from the overlap of the empty antibonding orbitals of the rings with additional filled *d* orbitals of the iron. All told, there are eighteen electrons (ten of which may be considered to come from the rings and eight from iron in the zero oxidation state) in nine orbitals; six of these are strongly bonding and three weakly bonding or nonbonding.

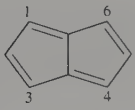
The tropylium ion has an aromatic sextet spread over seven carbon atoms. An analogous ion, with the sextet spread over eight carbon atoms, is 1,3,5,7-tetramethylcyclooctatetraene dication (**42**). This ion, which is stable in solution at −50°C, is diatropic and approximately planar. **42** is not stable above about −30°C.[81]



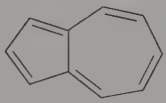
42

Other Systems Containing Aromatic Sextets

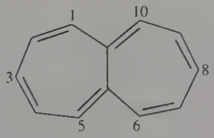
Simple resonance theory predicts that pentalene (**43**), azulene (**44**), and heptalene (**45**) should be aromatic, although no nonionic canonical form can have a double bond at the ring junction. Molecular-orbital calculations show that azulene should be stable but not the other two and this is



43



44



45

---

[77] For a review on aromatic substitution on ferrocenes, see Plesske, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 312–327, 394–399 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 301–316, 347–352].

[78] For a review, see Werner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 1–9 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 1–10].

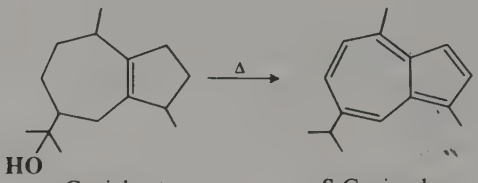
[79] Siebert, Böhle, and Krüger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 746 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 758]; Whiteley, Pritzkow, Zenneck, and Siebert, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 453 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 464].

[80] Rosenblum, Ref. 75, pp. 13–28; Coates, Green, and Wade, "Organometallic Compounds," 3d ed., vol. 2, pp. 97–104, Methuen, London, 1968; Ref. 76.

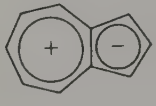
[81] This and related ions were prepared by Olah, Staral, Liang, Paquette, Melega, and Carmody, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3349 (1977). See also Radom and Schaefer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7522 (1977); Olah and Liang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3033 (1976); Willner and Rabinovitz, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **6,** 129 (1982).

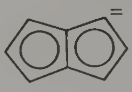
borne out by experiment. Heptalene has been prepared[82] but reacts readily with oxygen, acids, and bromine, is easily hydrogenated, and polymerizes on standing. Analysis of its nmr spectrum shows that it is not planar.[83] The 3,8-dibromo and 3,8-dicarbomethoxy derivatives of **45** are stable in air at room temperature but are not diatropic.[84] Pentalene has not been prepared,[85] but the hexaphenyl[86] and 1,3,5-tri-*t*-butyl derivatives[87] are known. The former is air-sensitive in solution. The latter is stable, but x-ray diffraction and photoelectron spectral data show bond alternation.[88] Pentalene and its methyl and dimethyl derivatives have been formed in solution, but they dimerize before they can be isolated.[89] Many other attempts to prepare these two systems have failed.

In sharp contrast to **43** and **45,** azulene, a blue solid, is quite stable and many of its derivatives are known.[90] Many sesquiterpenes, found in nature, are easily converted to azulene derivatives, e.g., upon heating guaiol gives S-guaiazulene (see **9-1**). Azulene readily undergoes aromatic substitution. Azulene may be regarded as a combination of **31** and **37** and, indeed, possesses a dipole moment of 0.8 D.[91] Interestingly, if two electrons are added to pentalene, a stable dianion (**46**) results.[92] It can be concluded that an aromatic system of electrons will be spread over two rings only if 10 electrons (not 8 or 12) are available for aromaticity.



Guaiol S-Guaiazulene





46

---

[82] Dauben and Bertelli, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4659 (1961); Vogel, Königshofen, Wassen, Müllen, and Oth, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 732 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 777]; Paquette, Browne, and Chamot, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 546 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 581]. For a review of heptalenes, see Paquette, *Isr. J. Chem.* **20,** 233–239 (1980).

[83] Bertelli, in Bergmann and Pullman, Ref. 34, p. 326. See also Stegemann and Lindner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2515 (1977).

[84] Vogel and Ippen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 734 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 778]; Vogel and Hogrefe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 735 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 779].

[85] Metal complexes of pentalene have been prepared: Knox and Stone, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 321–328 (1974).

[86] LeGoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3975 (1962). See also Hafner, Bangert, and Orfanos, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 451 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 414]; Hartke and Matusch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 50 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 61].

[87] Hafner and Süss, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 575 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 626]. See also Hafner and Suda, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 314 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 341].

[88] Kitschke and Lindner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2511 (1977); Bischof, Gleiter, Hafner, Knauer, Spanget-Larsen, and Süss, *Chem. Ber.* **111,** 932 (1978).

[89] Bloch, Marty, and de Mayo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3071 (1971); *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2031 (1972); Hafner, Dönges, Goedecke, and Kaiser, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 337 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 362].

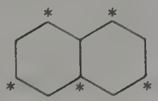
[90] For a review on azulene, see Mochalin and Porshnev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 530–547 (1977).

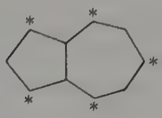
[91] Tobler, Bauder, and Günthard, *J. Mol. Spectrosc.* **18,** 239 (1965).

[92] Katz, Rosenberger, and O'Hara, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 249 (1964). See also Willner, Becker, and Rabinovitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 395 (1979).

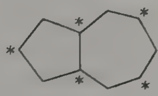
Alternant and Nonalternant Hydrocarbons[93]

Aromatic hydrocarbons can be divided into two types. In alternant hydrocarbons, the conjugated carbon atoms can be divided into two sets such that no two atoms of the same set are directly linked. For convenience one set may be starred. Naphthalene is an alternant and azulene a nonalternant hydrocarbon:



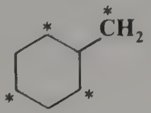


or



In alternant hydrocarbons, the bonding and antibonding orbitals occur in pairs; i.e., for every bonding orbital with an energy $-E$ there is an antibonding one with energy $+E$ (Figure 6). Even-alternant hydrocarbons are those with an even number of conjugated atoms, i.e., an equal number of starred and unstarred atoms. For these hydrocarbons all the bonding orbitals are filled and the π electrons are uniformly spread over the unsaturated atoms.

As with the allyl system, odd-alternant hydrocarbons (which must be carbocations, carbanions, or free radicals) in addition to equal and opposite bonding and antibonding orbitals also have a nonbonding orbital of zero energy. When an odd number of orbitals overlap, an odd number is created. Since orbitals of alternant hydrocarbons occur in $-E$ and $+E$ pairs, one orbital can have no partner and must therefore have zero bonding energy. For example, in the benzyl system the



cation has an unoccupied nonbonding orbital, the free radical has one electron there and the carbanion two (Figure 7). As with the allyl system, all three species have the same bonding energy. The

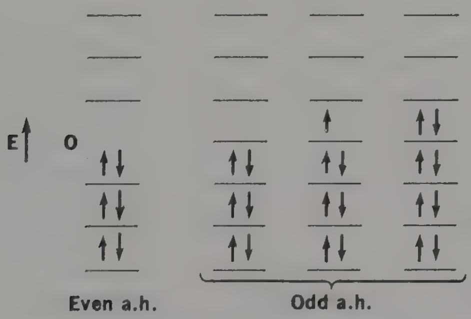


Figure 6 Energy levels in odd- and even-alternant hydrocarbons.[94] The arrows represent electrons. The orbitals are shown as having different energies, but some may be degenerate.

---

[93] For discussions, see Jones, "Physical and Mechanistic Organic Chemistry," 2nd ed., pp. 122–129, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1984; Dewar, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **2**, 1–28 (1953).

[94] Taken from Dewar, Ref. 93, p. 8.

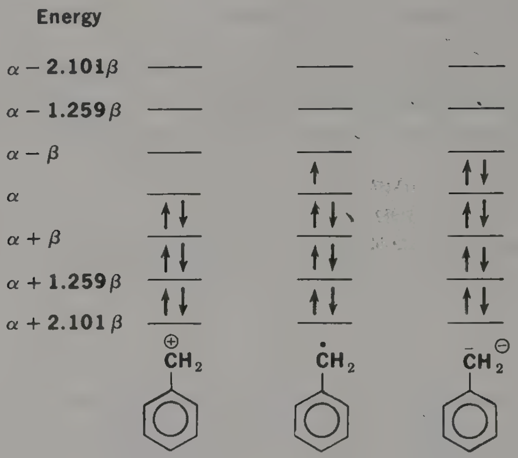


Figure 7 Energy levels for the benzyl cation, free radical, and carbanion. Since α is the energy of a *p* orbital (p. 27), the nonbonding orbital has no bonding energy.

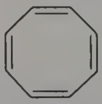
charge distribution (or unpaired-electron distribution) over the entire molecule is also the same for the three species and can be calculated by a relatively simple process.[93]

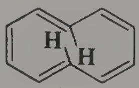
For nonalternant hydrocarbons the energies of the bonding and antibonding orbitals are not equal and opposite and charge distributions are not the same in cations, anions, and radicals. Calculations are much more difficult but have been carried out.[95] An experimental method for distinguishing between alternant and nonalternant compounds (in cases where the exact structure is unknown or uncertain) is based on the combined use of photoelectron and uv spectroscopy.[96]

Aromatic Systems with Electron Numbers Other than Six

Ever since the special stability of benzene was recognized, chemists have been thinking about homologous molecules and wondering whether this stability is also associated with rings that are similar but of different sizes, such as cyclobutadiene (**47**), cyclooctatetraene (**48**), cyclodecapentaene[97] (**49**), etc. The general name *annulene* is given to these compounds, benzene being [6]annulene, and **47** to **49** being called, respectively, [4], [8], and [10]annulene. By a naïve consideration of resonance forms, these annulenes and higher ones should be as aromatic as benzene. Yet they proved remarkably elusive. The ubiquitous benzene ring is found in thousands of natural products,

47


48



49

---

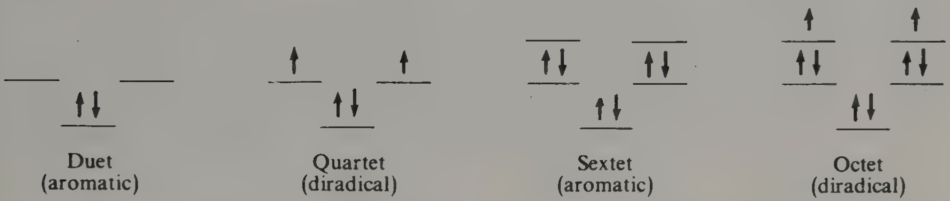
[95] Peters, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1023, 1028, 1039 (1958); Brown, Burden, and Williams, *Aust. J. Chem.* **21,** 1939 (1968). For reviews, see Zahradnik, in Snyder, Ref. 34, vol. 2, pp. 1–80; Zahradnik, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 1039–1050 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 1097–1109].

[96] Clar, Robertson, Schlögl, and Schmidt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1320 (1981).

[97] The cyclodecapentaene shown here is the cis–trans–cis–cis–trans form. For other stereoisomers, see p. 55.

in coal and petroleum, and is formed by strong treatment of many noncyclic compounds. None of the other annulene ring systems has ever been found in nature and, except for cyclooctatetraene, their synthesis is not simple. Obviously, there is something special about the number six in a cyclic system of electrons.

Hückel's rule, based on molecular-orbital calculations,[98] predicts that electron rings will constitute an aromatic system only if the number of electrons in the ring is of the form $4n + 2$, where n is zero or any positive integer. Systems that contain $4n$ electrons are predicted to be nonaromatic. The rule predicts that rings of 2, 6, 10, 14, etc., electrons will be aromatic, while rings of 4, 8, 12, etc., will not be. This is actually a consequence of Hund's rule. The first pair of electrons in an annulene goes into the π orbital of lowest energy. After that the bonding orbitals are degenerate and occur in pairs of equal energy. When there is a total of four electrons, Hund's rule predicts that two will be in the lowest orbital but the other two will be unpaired, so that the system will



exist as a diradical rather than as two pairs. The degeneracy can be removed if the molecule is distorted from maximum molecular symmetry to a structure of lesser symmetry. For example, if **47** assumes a rectangular rather than a square shape, one of the previously degenerate orbitals has a lower energy than the other and will be occupied by two electrons. In this case, of course, the double bonds are essentially separate and the molecule is still not aromatic. Distortions of symmetry can also occur when one or more carbons are replaced by hetero atoms or in other ways.[99]

In the following sections systems with various numbers of electrons are discussed. When we look for aromaticity we look for: (1) the presence of a diamagnetic ring current; (2) equal or approximately equal bond distances, except when the symmetry of the system is disturbed by a hetero atom or in some other way; (3) planarity; (4) chemical stability; (5) the ability to undergo aromatic substitution.

Systems of Two Electrons[100]

Obviously, there can be no ring of two carbon atoms though a double bond may be regarded as a degenerate case. However, in analogy to the tropylium ion, a three-membered ring with a double bond and a positive charge on the third atom (the *cyclopropenyl cation*) is a $4n + 2$ system and hence is expected to show aromaticity. The unsubstituted **50** has been prepared,[101] as well as several derivatives, e.g., the trichloro, diphenyl, and dipropyl derivatives, and these are stable despite the angles of only 60°. In fact, the tripropylcyclopropenyl[102] and tricyclopropylcyclopropenyl[103] cations are among the most stable carbocations known, being stable even in water solution. The tri-*t*-butylcyclopropenyl cation is also very stable.[104] In addition, cyclopropenone (**51**) and several of its derivatives are stable compounds,[105] in accord with the corresponding stability of the tropones.[106]

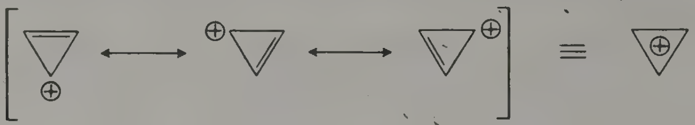
---

[98] For reviews of molecular-orbital calculations of nonbenzenoid cyclic conjugated hydrocarbons, see Nakajima, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **28,** 219–238 (1971); *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **32,** 1–42 (1972).

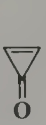
[99] For a discussion, see Hoffmann, *Chem. Commun.* 240 (1969).

[100] For reviews, see Potts and Baum, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 189–213 (1974); Yoshida, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **40,** 47–72 (1973); D'yakonov and Kostikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 557–563 (1967); Closs, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 53–127 (1966), pp. 102–126; Krebs, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 10–22 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 10–22]. Also see Carter and Frampton, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 497–525 (1964) for a review of cyclopropenes, which includes a large amount of material pertinent to this section.

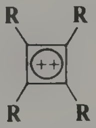
[101] Breslow, Groves, and Ryan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5048 (1967); Farnum, Mehta, and Silberman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5048 (1967); Breslow and Groves, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 984 (1970).



50



51



52

The ring system **50** is nonalternant and the corresponding radical and anion (which do not have an aromatic duet) have electrons in antibonding orbitals, so that their energies are much higher. As with **31** and **37**, the equivalence of the three carbon atoms in the triphenylcyclopropenyl cation has been demonstrated by ^{14}C labeling experiments.[107] The interesting dications **52** (R = Me or Ph) have been prepared,[108] and they too should represent aromatic systems of two electrons.[109]

Systems of Four Electrons. Antiaromaticity

The most obvious compound in which to look for a closed loop of four electrons is cyclobutadiene (**47**).[110] Hückel's rule predicts no aromatic character here, since 4 is not a number of the form

---

[102] Breslow, Höver, and Chang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3168 (1962).

[103] Komatsu, Tomioka, and Okamoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 947 (1980); Moss and Munjal, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1221 (1980).

[104] Ciabattoni and Nathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4495 (1968).

[105] See, for example, Breslow and Oda, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4787 (1972); Breslow and Ryan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3073 (1967); Yoshida, Konishi, Tawara, and Ogoshi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3043 (1973); Kursanov, Vol'pin, and Koreshkov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **30,** 2855 (1960); Breslow and Altman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 504 (1966); Ref. 104.

[106] For a review of cyclopropenones, see Eicher and Weber, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **57,** 1–109 (1975). For discussions of cyclopropenone structure, see Schäfer, Schweig, Maier, Sayrac, and Crandall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1213 (1974); Tobey, in Bergmann and Pullman, Ref. 34, pp. 351–362; Greenberg, Tomkins, Dobrovolny, and Liebman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6855 (1983).

[107] D'yakonov, Kostikov, and Molchanov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 171 (1969), **6,** 304 (1970).

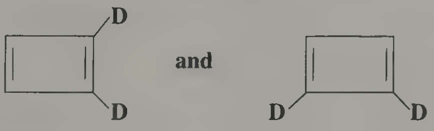
[108] Freedman and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 734 (1964); Olah, Bollinger, and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3667 (1969); Olah and Mateescu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1430 (1970); Olah and Staral, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6290 (1976). See also Lambert and Holcomb, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2994 (1971); Seitz, Schmiedel, and Mann, *Synthesis* 578 (1974).

[109] See Pittman, Kress, and Kispert, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 378 (1974). See, however, Krogh-Jesperson, Schleyer, Pople, and Cremer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4301 (1978).

[110] For a monograph, see Cava and Mitchell, "Cyclobutadiene and Related Compounds," Academic Press, New York, 1967. For reviews, see Bally and Masamune, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 343–370 (1980); Vollhardt, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **59,** 113–136 (1975); Maier, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 425–438 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 491–505]; Criegee, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 519–527 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 703–712], *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1–6 (1965).

$4n + 2$. There is a long history of attempts to prepare this compound and its simple derivatives, and, as we shall see, the evidence fully bears out Hückel's prediction—cyclobutadienes display none of the characteristics that would lead us to call them aromatic. More surprisingly, there is evidence that a closed loop of four electrons is actually *antiaromatic*.[111] If such compounds simply lacked aromaticity, we would expect them to be about as stable as similar nonaromatic compounds, but both theory and experiment show that they are *much less stable*.[112] An antiaromatic compound may be defined as a compound that is destabilized by a closed loop of electrons.

After years of attempts to prepare cyclobutadiene, the goal was finally reached by Pettit and co-workers.[113] It is now clear that **47** and its simple derivatives are extremely unstable compounds with very short lifetimes (they dimerize by a Diels–Alder reaction; see **5–47**) unless they are stabilized in matrices, where the molecules are forced to remain apart from each other, at very low temperatures (generally under 35 K). The structures of **47** and some of its derivatives have been studied a number of times using the low-temperature matrix technique.[114] Although there was for a time some disagreement on this point,[115] the ground-state structure of **47** has now been found to be a rectangular diene (not a diradical) as shown by the infrared (ir) spectra of **47** and deuterated **47** trapped in matrices.[116] Molecular-orbital calculations agree.[117] The same conclusion was also reached in an elegant experiment in which 1,2-dideuterocyclobutadiene was generated. If **47** is a rectangular diene, the dideutero compound should exist as two isomers



The compound was generated (as an intermediate that was not isolated) and two isomers were indeed found.[118]

There are some simple cyclobutadienes that are stable at room temperature for varying periods of time. These either have bulky substituents or carry certain other stabilizing substituents. Examples of the first type are tri-*t*-butylcyclobutadiene (**53**)[119] and the dithia compound **54**.[120] These compounds are relatively stable because dimerization is sterically hindered. Examination of the nmr spectrum of **53** showed that the ring proton ($\delta = 5.38$) was shifted *upfield*, compared with the position expected for a nonaromatic proton, e.g., cyclopentadiene. As we shall see on p. 60, this indicates that the compound is antiaromatic. A similar investigation cannot be made for **54** because it has no ring proton, but x-ray crystallography showed that the central ring is a rectangular diene (as shown) with single- and double-bond lengths of 1.600 and 1.344 Å, respectively.[121] The unusually

---

[111] For reviews of antiaromaticity, see Breslow, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **28,** 111–130 (1971); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 393–398 (1973), *Chem. Br. 4,* 100 (1968), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 565–570 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 573–578].

[112] For a discussion, see Bauld, Welsher, Cessac, and Holloway, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6920 (1978).

[113] Watts, Fitzpatrick, and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3253 (1965), **88,** 623 (1966). See also Cookson and Jones, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1881 (1965).

[114] See, for example, Lin and Krantz, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1111 (1972); Chapman, McIntosh, and Pacansky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 614 (1973); Maier, Mayer, Haacke, and Askani, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 1016 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 1057]; Maier and Mende, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3155 (1969).

[115] See references given in Whitman and Carpenter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4272 (1980).

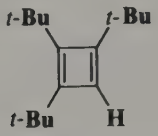
[116] Masamune, Souto-Bachiller, Machiguchi, and Bertie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4889 (1978).

[117] See, for example, Borden, Davidson, and Hart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 388 (1978); Kollmar and Staemmler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4304 (1978); Jafri and Newton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5012 (1978); Borden and Davidson, *Ann. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **30,** 125–153 (1979), pp. 134–141; Ermer and Heilbronner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 402 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 414].

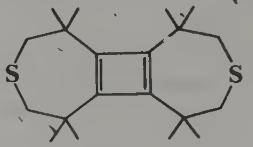
[118] Ref. 115. The results of these experiments were even more convincing than is indicated here. See the paper for details.

[119] Masamune, Nakamura, Suda, and Ona, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8481 (1973); Maier and Alzérreca, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 1015 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 1056]. For a discussion, see Masamune, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **44,** 861–884 (1975).

[120] Krebs, Kimling and Kemper, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 431 (1978).



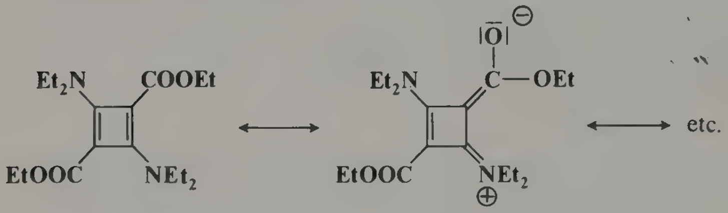
53



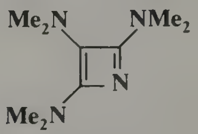
54

long single-bond distance may be due to repulsion between the methyl groups. Photoelectron spectroscopy showed that **54** is not a diradical.[122]

The other type of stable cyclobutadiene has two electron-donating and two electron-withdrawing groups, and is stable in the absence of water.[123] An example is **55**. The stability of these compounds



55



56

is generally attributed to the resonance shown, a type of resonance stabilization called the *push–pull effect*,[124] although it has been concluded from a photoelectron spectroscopy study that second-order bond fixation is more important.[125] An x-ray crystallographic study of **55** has shown[126] the ring to be a distorted square with bond lengths of 1.46 Å and angles of 87° and 93°. The azacyclobutane **56** is also stable[127] for similar reasons.

It is clear that simple cyclobutadienes, which could easily adopt a square planar shape if that would result in aromatic stabilization, do not in fact do so and are not aromatic. The high reactivity of these compounds is not caused merely by steric strain, since the strain should be no greater than that of simple cyclopropenes, which are known compounds. It is probably caused by antiaromaticity.[128]

[121] Irngartinger and Rodewald, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 740 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 783]. For an x-ray structure of tetra-*t*-butylcyclobutadiene, see Irngartinger and Nixdorf, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 403 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 415].

[122] Lauer, Müller, Schulte, Schweig, and Krebs, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 544 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 597]. See also Brown and Masamune, *Can. J. Chem.* **53,** 972 (1975); Lauer, Müller, Schulte, Schweig, Maier, and Alzérreca, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 172 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 194]; Irngartinger, Hase, Schulte, and Schweig, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 187 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 194].

[123] Gompper and Seybold, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 824 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 804]; Neuenschwander and Niederhauser, *Chimia* **22,** 491 (1968), *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 519 (1970); Gompper, Mensch, and Seybold, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 704 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 711]; Gompper, Kroner, Seybold, and Wagner, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 629 (1976).

[124] Manatt and Roberts, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 1336 (1959); Breslow, Kivelevich, Mitchell, Fabian, and Wendel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5132 (1965); Hess and Schaad, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3058 (1976).

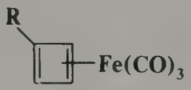
[125] Gompper, Holsboer, Schmidt, and Seybold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8479 (1973).

[126] Lindner and Gross, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 598 (1974).

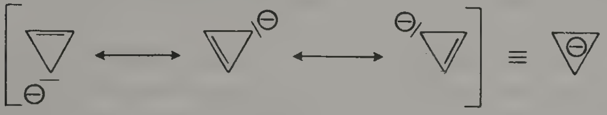
[127] Seybold, Jersak, and Gompper, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 847 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 918]; Wagner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 848 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 920].

[128] For evidence, see Breslow, Murayama, Murahashi, and Grubbs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6688 (1973); Herr, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2835 (1976).

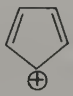
The unfused cyclobutadiene system is stable in complexes with metals[129] (see Chapter 3), but in these cases electron density is withdrawn from the ring by the metal and there is no aromatic quartet. In fact, these cyclobutadiene–metal complexes can be looked upon as systems containing an aromatic duet. The ring is square planar,[130] the compounds undergo aromatic substitution,[131] and nmr spectra of monosubstituted derivatives show that the C-2 and C-4 protons are equivalent.[131]



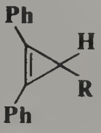
Two other systems that have been studied as possible aromatic or antiaromatic four-electron systems are **57** and **58.**[132] In these cases also the evidence supports antiaromaticity, not aromaticity. With respect to **57,** HMO theory predicts that an unconjugated **59** (i.e., a single canonical form) is more stable than a conjugated **57,**[133] so that **59** would actually lose stability by forming a closed loop of four-electrons. The HMO theory is supported by experiment. Among other evidence, it has been shown that **60** (R = COPh) loses its proton in hydrogen-exchange reactions about 6000 times more slowly than **61** (R = COPh).[134] Where R = CN, the ratio is about 10,000.[135] This indicates that **60** are much more reluctant to form carbanions (which would have to be cyclopropenyl carbanions) than **61,** which form ordinary carbanions. Thus the carbanions of **60** are less stable than corresponding ordinary carbanions. Although derivatives of cyclopropenyl anion have been prepared as fleeting intermediates (as in the exchange reactions mentioned above), all attempts to prepare the ion or any of its derivatives as relatively stable species have so far met with failure.[136]



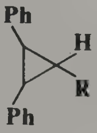
59 **57**



58



60



61

In the case of **58,** the ion has been prepared and has been shown to be a diradical in the ground state,[137] as predicted by the discussion on p. 49.[138] Evidence that **58** is not only nonaromatic but also antiaromatic comes from studies on **62** and **64.**[139] When **62** is treated with silver perchlorate in propionic acid, the molecule is rapidly solvolyzed (a reaction in which the intermediate **63** is formed; see Chapter 5). Under the same conditions, **64** undergoes no solvolysis at all; i.e., **58** does not form. If **58** were merely nonaromatic, it should be about as stable as **63** (which of course has no resonance stabilization at all). The fact that it is so much more reluctant to form indicates that **58** is much less stable than **63.**

---

[129] For reviews, see Efraty, *Chem. Rev.* **77,** 691–744 (1977); Pettit, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **17,** 253–272 (1968); Maitlis, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **4,** 95–143 (1966); Maitlis and Eberius, in Snyder, Ref. 34, vol. 2, pp. 359–409.

[130] Dodge and Schomaker, *Acta Crystallogr.* **18,** 614 (1965); *Nature* **186,** 798 (1960); Dunitz, Mez, Mills, and Shearer, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **45,** 647 (1962); Yannoni, Ceasar, and Dailey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2833 (1967).

[131] Fitzpatrick, Watts, Emerson, and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3255 (1965). For a discussion, see Pettit, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **100,** 205–217 (1975).

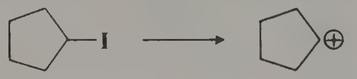
[132] For a review of cyclopentadienyl cations, see Breslow, *Top. Nonbenzenoid Aromat. Chem.* **1,** 81–94 (1973).

[133] Clark, *Chem. Commun.* 637 (1969); Ref. 111.

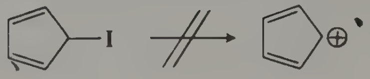
[134] Breslow, Brown, and Gajewski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4383 (1967).

[135] Breslow and Douek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2698 (1968).

[136] See, for example, Breslow, Cortes, Juan, and Mitchell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 795 (1982).



62 **63**



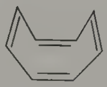
64 **58**

It is strong evidence for Hückel's rule that **57** and **58** are not aromatic while the cyclopropenyl cation (**50**) and the cyclopentadienyl anion (**31**) are, since simple resonance theory predicts no difference between **57** and **50** or **58** and **31** (the same number of equivalent canonical forms can be drawn for **57** as for **50** and for **58** as for **31**).

In compounds in which overlapping parallel *p* orbitals form a closed loop of $4n + 2$ electrons, the molecule is stabilized by resonance and the ring is aromatic. But the above evidence (and additional evidence below) indicates that when the closed loop contains $4n$ electrons, the molecule is *destabilized* by resonance. In summary, **47, 57,** and **58** and their simple derivatives are certainly not aromatic and are very likely antiaromatic.

Systems of Eight Electrons

Cyclooctatetraene[140] (**48**) is not planar but tub-shaped.[141] Therefore we would expect that it is neither aromatic nor antiaromatic, since both these conditions require overlap of parallel *p* orbitals.



48

The reason for the lack of planarity is that a regular octagon has angles of 135°, while sp^2 angles are most stable at 120°. To avoid the strain, the molecule assumes a nonplanar shape, in which orbital overlap is greatly diminished.[142] Single- and double-bond distances in **48** are, respectively, 1.46 and 1.33 Å, which is just what is expected for a compound made up of four individual double bonds.[141] The reactivity is also what would be expected for a linear polyene. However, the cyclooctadiendiynes **65** and **66** are planar conjugated eight-electron systems (the four extra triple-bond electrons do not participate), which nmr evidence show to be antiaromatic.[143] There is evidence that part of the reason for the lack of planarity in **48** itself is that a planar molecular would have to be antiaromatic.[144] The cycloheptatrienyl anion (**36**) also has eight electrons but does not behave like an aromatic system.[69] The nmr spectrum of the benzocycloheptatrienyl anion (**67**) shows that, like **53, 65,** and **66,** this compound is antiaromatic.[145]

---

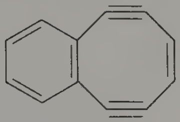
[137] Saunders, Berger, Jaffe, McBride, O'Neill, Breslow, Hoffman, Perchonock, Wasserman, Hutton, and Kuck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3017 (1973).

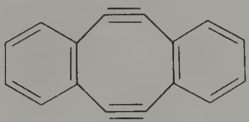
[138] Derivatives of **58** show similar behavior: Breslow, Chang, and Yager, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2033 (1963); Volz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1899 (1964); Breslow, Hill, and Wasserman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5349 (1964); Breslow, Chang, Hill, and Wasserman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1112 (1967); Gompper and Glöckner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **23,** 53 (1984) [*Angew. Chem.* **96,** 48].

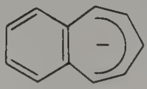
[139] Breslow and Mazur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 584 (1973); Breslow and Hoffman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2110 (1972). For further evidence, see Lossing and Traeger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1579 (1975).

[140] For a monograph, see Fray and Saxton, "The Chemistry of Cyclo-octatetraene and its Derivatives," Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1978. For a review, see Paquette, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 2855–2883 (1975). For a review of heterocyclic 8-π systems, see Schmidt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 581–591 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 603–613].

[141] Bastiansen, Hedberg, and Hedberg, *J. Chem. Phys.* **27,** 1311 (1957).


65

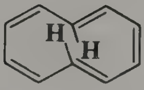

66



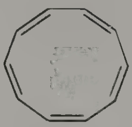
67

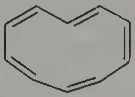
Systems of Ten Electrons[146]

There are three geometrically possible isomers of [10]annulene—the all-cis (**68**), the mono-trans (**69**), and the cis–trans–cis–cis–trans (**49**). If Hückel's rule applies, they should be planar. But it is far from obvious that the molecules would adopt a planar shape, since they must overcome considerable strain to do so. For a regular decagon (**68**) the angles would have to be 144°, considerably larger than the 120° required for sp^2 angles. Some of this strain would also be present in **69** but this kind of strain is eliminated in **49** since all the angles are 120°. However, it was pointed out by Mislow[147] that the hydrogens in the 1 and 6 positions should interfere with each other and force the molecule out of planarity.



49


68


69

Compounds **68** and **69** have been prepared[148] as crystalline solids at −80°C. Nmr spectra show that all the hydrogens lie in the olefinic region and neither compound is aromatic. From ^{13}C and proton nmr spectra it has been deduced that neither is planar. However, that the angle strain is not insurmountable has been demonstrated by the preparation of several compounds that have large angles but that are definitely planar 10-electron aromatic systems. Among these are the dianion **70,** the anions **71** and **72,** and the azonine **73.**[149] **70**[150] has angles of about 135°, while **71**[151] and **72**[152] have angles of about 140°, which are not very far from 144°. The inner proton in **72**[153] (which is the mono-trans isomer of the all-cis **71**) is found far upfield in the nmr (-3.5 δ). For **68** and **69,** the cost in strain energy to achieve planarity apparently outweighs the extra stability that would come from an aromatic ring. To emphasize the delicate balance between these factors, we add that the oxygen analog of **73** (oxonin) and the N-carbethoxy derivative of **73** are nonaromatic and nonplanar, while **73** itself is aromatic and planar.[154]

---

[142] The compound perfluorotetracyclobutacyclooctatetraene has been found to have a planar cyclooctatetraene ring, although the corresponding tetracyclopenta analog is nonplanar: Einstein, Willis, Cullen, and Soulen, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 526 (1981).

[143] For a review, see Huang and Sondheimer, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 96–102 (1982). See also Huang, Jia, Wang, Chan, and Mak, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4797 (1982); Chan, Huang, and Sondheimer, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 427 (1983), Dürr, Klauck, Peters, and von Schnering, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 332 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 321].

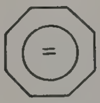
[144] Figeys and Dralants, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3901 (1971); Buchanan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 665 (1972).

[145] Staley and Orvedal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3382 (1973).

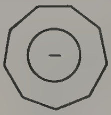
[146] For reviews, see Kemp-Jones and Masamune, *Top. Nonbenzenoid Aromat. Chem.* **1,** 121–157 (1973); Masamune and Darby, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 272–281 (1972); Burkoth and van Tamelen, in Snyder, Ref. 34, vol. 1, pp. 63–116; Vogel, in "Aromaticity," Ref. 34, pp. 113–147.

[147] Mislow, *J. Chem. Phys.* **20,** 1489 (1952).

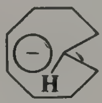
[148] Masamune, Hojo, Hojo, Bigam, and Rabenstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4966 (1971). [10]Annulenes had previously been prepared, but it was not known which ones: van Tamelen and Burkoth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 151 (1967); van Tamelen and Greeley, *Chem. Commun.* 601 (1971); van Tamelen, Burkoth, and Greeley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6120 (1971). See also Masamune and Seidner, *Chem. Commun.* 542 (1969); van Tamelen and Pappas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6111 (1971).



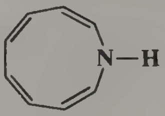
70



71



72



73

So far **49** has not been prepared, despite many attempts. However, there are various ways of avoiding the interference between the two inner protons. The approach that has been most successful involves bridging the 1 and 6 positions.[155] Thus, 1,6-methano[10]annulene (**74**)[156] and its oxygen and nitrogen analogs **75**[157] and **76**[158] have been prepared and are stable compounds that undergo aromatic substitution and are diatropic.[159] For example, the perimeter protons of **74** are found at 6.9 to 7.3 δ, while the bridge protons are at -0.5 δ. The crystal structure of **74** shows that the perimeter is nonplanar, but the bond distances are in the range 1.37 to 1.42 Å.[160] Bridging of the 1 and 5 positions also leads to aromatic compounds. For example, the bridge protons of **77** appear at −0.34 and −0.20 δ.[161] It has therefore been amply demonstrated that a closed loop of 10 electrons is an aromatic system, although some molecules that could conceivably have such a system are too distorted from planarity to be aromatic.

---

[149] For reviews of **73** and other nine-membered rings containing four double bonds and a hetero atom (*heteronins*), see Anastassiou, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 281–288 (1972), *Top. Nonbenzenoid Aromat. Chem.* **1,** 1–27 (1973), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **44,** 691–749 (1975). For a review of heteroannulenes in general, see Anastassiou and Kasmai, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **23,** 55–102 (1978).

[150] Katz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3784, 3785 (1960); see also Katz, Yoshida, and Siew, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4516 (1965); Noordik, van den Hark, Mooij, and Klaassen, *Acta Crystallogr. Sect. B* **30,** 833 (1974); Goldberg, Raymond, Harmon, and Templeton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1348 (1974); Evans, Wink, Wayda, and Little, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3925 (1981).

[151] Katz and Garratt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5194 (1964); LaLancette and Benson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1941 (1965); Simmons, Chesnut, and LaLancette, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 982 (1965); Paquette, Ley, Meisinger, Russell, and Oku, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5806 (1974); Radlick and Rosen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3461 (1966).

[152] Anastassiou and Gebrian, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 825 (1970).

[153] Boche, Weber, Martens, and Bieberbach, *Chem. Ber.* **111,** 2480 (1978). See also Anastassiou and Reichmanis, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 728 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 784]; Boche and Bieberbach, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1021 (1976).

[154] Anastassiou and Cellura, *Chem. Commun.* 903 (1969); Anastassiou and Gebrian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4011 (1969); Anastassiou, Cellura, and Gebrian, *Chem. Commun.* 375 (1970); Anastassiou and Yamamoto, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 286 (1972); Chiang, Paul, Anastassiou, and Eachus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1636 (1974).

[155] For reviews of bridged [10]-, [14]-, and [18]annulenes, see Vogel, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **54,** 1015–1039 (1982); *Isr. J. Chem.* **20,** 215–224 (1980); *Chimia* **22,** 21–32 (1968); Vogel and Günther, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 385–401 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 429–446].

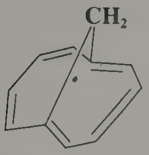
[156] Vogel and Roth, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 228 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 145]; Vogel and Böll, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 642 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 784]; Vogel, Böll, and Biskup, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1569 (1966).

[157] Vogel, Biskup, Pretzer, and Böll, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 642 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 785]; Sondheimer and Shani, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3168 (1964); Shani and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6310 (1967); Bailey and Mason, *Chem. Commun.* 1039 (1967).

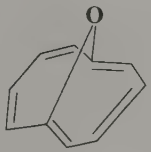
[158] Vogel, Pretzer, and Böll, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3613 (1965). See also the first paper of Ref. 157.

[159] For another type of bridged diatropic [10]annulene, see Lidert and Rees, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 499 (1982); Gilchrist, Rees, and Tuddenham, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 83 (1983); McCague, Moody, and Rees, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 165, 175 (1984).

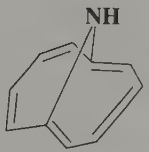
[160] Bianchi, Pilati, and Simonetta, *Acta Crystallogr., Sect. B* **36,** 3146 (1980). See also Dobler and Dunitz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **48,** 1429 (1965).



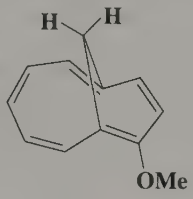
74



75



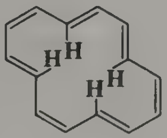
76



77

Systems of More than Ten Electrons: 4*n* + 2 Electrons[162]

Extrapolating from the discussion of [10]annulene, we expect larger 4*n* + 2 systems to be aromatic if they are planar. Mislow[147] predicted that [14]annulene (**78**) would possess the same type of interference as **49**, although in lesser degree. This is borne out by experiment. **78** is aromatic (it is diatropic: inner protons at 0.00 δ, outer protons at 7.6 δ),[163] but is completely destroyed by light and air in one day. X-ray analysis shows that although there are no alternating single and double bonds, the molecule is not planar.[164] However, a number of stable bridged [14]annulenes have been prepared,[165] e.g., *trans*-15,16-dimethyldihydropyrene (**79**),[166] *syn*-1,6:8,13-bisoxido[14]annulene



78

---

[161] Masamune, Brooks, Morio, and Sobczak, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 8277 (1976). See also Masamune and Brooks, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3239 (1977); Scott and Brunsvold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4320 (1978); Scott, Brunsvold, Kirms, and Erden, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 274 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 282].

[162] For reviews of annulenes, with particular attention to their nmr spectra, see Sondheimer, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 81–91 (1972), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **28,** 331–353 (1971), *Proc. R. Soc. London. Ser. A* **297,** 173–204 (1967); Sondheimer, Calder, Elix, Gaoni, Garratt, Grohmann, di Maio, Mayer, Sargent, and Wolovsky, in "Aromaticity," Ref. 34, pp. 75–107; Haddon, Haddon, and Jackman, Ref. 40. For a review of annulenoannulenes (two annulene rings fused together), see Nakagawa, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 202–214 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 215–226].

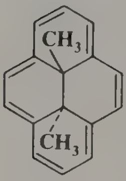
[163] Gaoni, Melera, Sondheimer, and Wolovsky, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 397 (1964).

[164] Bregman, *Nature* **194,** 679 (1962); Chiang and Paul, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4741 (1972). Another 14-electron system is the dianion of [12]annulene, which is also apparently aromatic though not planar: Oth and Schröder, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 904 (1971). See also Garratt, Rowland, and Sondheimer, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 3157 (1971); Oth, Müllen, Königshofen, Mann, Sakata, and Vogel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 284 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 232]. For some other 14-electron aromatic systems, see Anastassiou, Elliott, and Reichmanis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7823 (1974); Wife and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 640 (1975); Ogawa, Kubo, and Saikachi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4859 (1971); Oth, Müllen, Königshofen, Wassen, and Vogel, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 2387 (1974); Willner, Gutman, and Rabinovitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4167 (1977); Röttele and Schröder, *Chem. Ber.* **115,** 248 (1982).

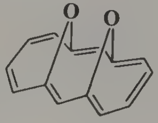
[165] For a review, see Vogel, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **28,** 355–377 (1971).

[166] Boekelheide and Phillips, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1695 (1967); Phillips, Molyneux, Sturm, and Boekelheide, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1704 (1967); Boekelheide and Miyasaka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1709 (1967). For reviews of dihydropyrenes, see Boekelheide, *Top. Nonbenzoid Arom. Chem.* **1,** 47–79 (1973), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **44,** 807–828 (1975).

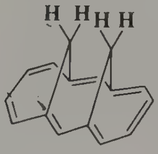
(**80**),[167] and *syn*- and *anti*-1,6:8,13-bismethano[14]annulene (**81** and **82**).[168] The dihydropyrene **79** (and its diethyl and dipropyl homologs) is undoubtedly aromatic: the π perimeter is approximately planar,[169] the bond distances are all 1.39 to 1.40 Å, and the molecule undergoes aromatic substitution[166] and is diatropic.[170] The outer protons are found at 8.14 to 8.67 δ, while the CH_3 protons are at −4.25 δ. **81** and **80** are also diatropic,[171] although x-ray crystallography indicates that the π periphery in at least **80** is not quite planar.[172] However, **82,** in which the geometry of the molecule greatly reduces the overlap of the *p* orbitals at the bridgehead positions with adjacent *p* orbitals, is definitely not aromatic,[173] as shown by nmr spectra[168] and x-ray crystallography, from which bond distances of 1.33 to 1.36 Å for the double bonds and 1.44 to 1.49 Å for the single bonds have been obtained.[174] In contrast, all the bond distances in **80** are ~1.38 to 1.40 Å.[172]



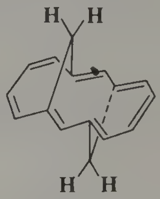
79



80

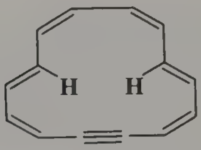


81

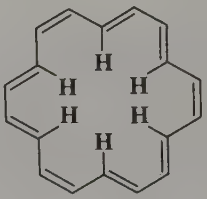


82

Another way of eliminating the hydrogen interferences of [14]annulene is to introduce one or more triple bonds into the system, as in dehydro[14]annulene (**83**).[175] All five known dehydro[14]annulenes are diatropic. **83** can be nitrated or sulfonated.[176] The extra electrons of the triple bond do not form part of the aromatic system but simply exist as a localized π bond.



83



84

---

[167] Vogel, Biskup, Vogel, and Günther, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 734 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 755]. For the di —NH— analog of **80,** see Vogel, Kuebart, Marco, Andree, Günther, and Aydin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6982 (1983).

[168] Vogel, Haberland, and Günther, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 513 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 510]; Vogel, Sombroek, and Wagemann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 564 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 591].

[169] Hanson, *Acta Crystallogr.* **18,** 599 (1965), **23,** 476 (1967).

[170] A number of annelated derivatives of **79** are less diatropic, as would be expected from the discussion on p. 41. Mitchell, Williams, Mahadevan, Lai, and Dingle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2571 (1982) and earlier papers in this series.

[171] As are several other similarly bridged [14]annulenes; see, for example, Vogel and Reel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4388 (1972); Batich, Heilbronner, and Vogel, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 2288 (1974); Flitsch and Peeters, *Chem. Ber.* **106,** 1731 (1973); Huber, Lex, Meul, and Müllen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 391 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 401]; Vogel, Nitsche, and Krieg, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 811 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 818]; Mitchell and Anker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5139 (1981).

[172] Ganis and Dunitz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 2369 (1967).

[173] For another such pair of molecules, see Vogel, Nitsche, and Krieg, Ref. 171.

[174] Gramaccioli, Mimun, Mugnoli, and Simonetta, *Chem. Commun.* 796 (1971). See also Destro and Simonetta, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1443 (1982).

[175] For a review of dehydroannulenes, see Nakagawa, *Top. Nonbenzenoid Aromat. Chem.* **1,** 191–219 (1973).

[176] Gaoni and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 521 (1964).

[18]Annulene (**84**) is diatropic:[177] the 12 outer protons are found at about δ = 9 and the 6 inner protons at about δ = −3. X-ray crystallography[178] shows that it is nearly planar, so that interference of the inner hydrogens is not important in annulenes this large. **84** is reasonably stable, being distillable at reduced pressures, and undergoes aromatic substitutions.[179] The C—C bond distances are not equal, but they do not alternate. There are 12 inner bonds of about 1.38 Å and 6 outer bonds of about 1.42 Å.[178] **84** has been estimated to have a resonance energy of about 37 kcal/mol, similar to that of benzene.[180]

The known bridged [18]annulenes are also diatropic[181] as are most of the known dehydro[18]annulenes.[182] The dianions of open and bridged [16]annulenes[183] are also 18-electron aromatic systems.[184]

[22]Annulene[185] and dehydro[22]annulene[186] are also diatropic. In the latter compound there are 13 outer protons at 6.25 to 8.45 δ and 7 inner protons at 0.70 to 3.45 δ. Some aromatic bridged [22]annulenes are also known.[187] [26]Annulene has not yet been prepared, but while a tridehydro[26]annulene is not diatropic,[188] two monodehydro[26]annulenes are aromatic.[189] Furthermore, the dianion of 1,3,7,9,13,15,19,21-octadehydro[24]annulene is another 26-electron system that is aromatic.[190] A tetra-*t*-butyldidehydro[30]annulene has been reported to be diatropic,[191] but a number of other dehydro and bridged [30]annulenes have been prepared and show no ring currents.[192]

There is now no doubt that $4n + 2$ systems are aromatic if they can be planar, although **68** and **82** among others, demonstrate that not all such systems are in fact planar enough for aromaticity. The cases of **78** and **80** prove that absolute planarity is not required for aromaticity, but that aromaticity decreases with decreasing planarity.

The proton nmr spectrum of **85** (called kekulene) showed that in a case where electrons can form either aromatic sextets or larger systems, the sextets are preferred.[193] The 48 π-electrons of **85** might, in theory, prefer structure **85a,** where each ring is a fused benzene ring, or **85b,** which has a [30]annulene on the outside and an [18]annulene on the inside. The proton nmr spectrum of this compound shows three peaks at δ = 7.94, 8.37, and 10.45 in a ratio of 2:1:1. It is seen from the structure that **85** contains three groups of protons. The peak at 7.94 δ is attributed to the 12 ortho protons and the peak at 8.37 δ to the six external para protons. The remaining peak comes from the six inner protons. If the molecule preferred **85b,** we would expect to find this peak upfield, probably with a negative δ, as in the case of **84.** The fact that this peak is far downfield indicates that the electrons prefer to be in benzenoid rings.

---

[177] Jackman, Sondheimer, Amiel, Ben-Efraim, Gaoni, Wolovsky, and Bothner-By, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4307 (1962); Gilles, Oth, Sondheimer, and Woo, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 2177 (1971). For a thorough discussion, see Baumann and Oth, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **65,** 1885 (1982).

[178] Bregman, Hirshfeld, Rabinovich, and Schmidt, *Acta Crystallogr.* **19,** 227 (1965); Hirshfeld and Rabinovich, *Acta Crystallogr.* **19,** 235 (1965).

[179] Calder, Garratt, Longuet-Higgins, Sondheimer, and Wolovsky, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1041 (1967); Woo and Sondheimer, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 3933 (1970).

[180] Oth, Bünzli, and de Julien de Zélicourt, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 2276 (1974).

[181] For some recent examples, see Otsubo, Gray, and Boekelheide, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2449 (1978); DuVernet, Wennerström, Lawson, Otsubo, and Boekelheide, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2457 (1978); Wagemann, Iyoda, Deger, Sombroek, and Vogel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 956 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 988]; Ogawa, Sadakari, Imoto, Miyamoto, Kato, and Taniguchi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 417 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 412].

[182] Okamura and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5991 (1967); Sondheimer, Ref. 162. For two that are not, see Endo, Sakata, and Misumi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 2465 (1971).

[183] For a review of this type of polycyclic ion, see Rabinovitz, Willner, and Minsky, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 298–304 (1983).

[184] Oth, Anthoine, and Gilles, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6265 (1968); Mitchell and Boekelheide, *Chem. Commun.* 1557 (1970); Oth, Baumann, Gilles, and Schröder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3498 (1972). See also Brown and Sondheimer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 337 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 346]; Cresp and Sargent, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 101 (1974); Schröder, Plinke, Smith, and Oth, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 325 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 350]; Rabinovitz and Minsky, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **54,** 1005–1014 (1982).

[185] McQuilkin, Metcalf, and Sondheimer, *Chem. Commun.* 338 (1971).

[186] McQuilkin and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6341 (1970); Iyoda and Nakagawa, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1003 (1972). See also Kabuto, Kitahara, Iyoda, and Nakagawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2787 (1976); Akiyama, Nomoto, Iyoda, and Nakagawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 2579 (1976).

[187] For example see Broadhurst, Grigg, and Johnson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2111 (1972).

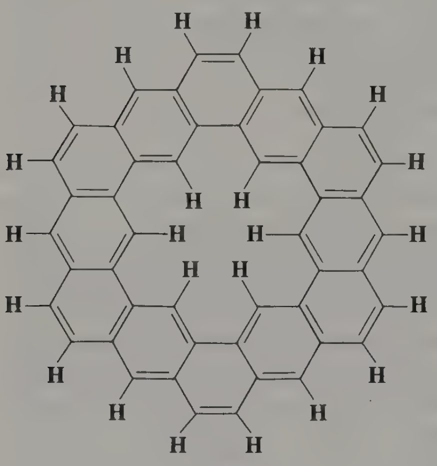
[188] Leznoff and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4247 (1967).

[189] Metcalf and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5271 (1971); Iyoda and Nakagawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4253 (1972).

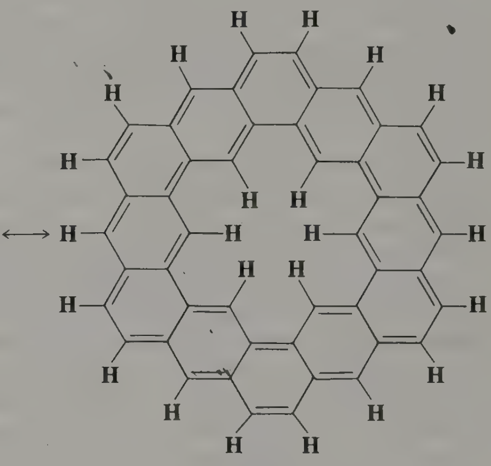
[190] McQuilkin, Garratt, and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6682 (1970). See also Huber, Müllen, and Wennerström, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 624 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 636].

[191] Iyoda and Nakagawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4743 (1973). See also Mitchell and Mahadevan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5131 (1981).

[192] Sondheimer and Gaoni, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3520 (1962); Sondheimer and Wolovsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 260 (1962); Elix, *Aust. J. Chem.* **22,** 1951 (1969).



85a



85b

Systems of More than Ten Electrons: 4*n* Electrons[162]

As we have seen (p. 51), these systems are expected to be not only nonaromatic but actually antiaromatic. The chief criterion for antiaromaticity in annulenes is the presence of a *paramagnetic* ring current,[194] which causes protons on the outside of the ring to be shifted *upfield* while any inner protons are shifted *downfield*, in sharp contrast to a diamagnetic ring current, which causes shifts in the opposite directions. Compounds that sustain a paramagnetic ring current are called *paratropic;* we have already seen such behavior in certain four- and eight-electron systems. As with aromaticity, we expect that antiaromaticity will be at a maximum when the molecule is planar and when bond distances are equal.

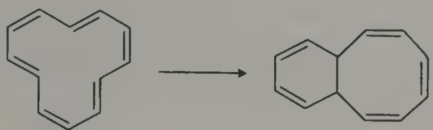
The [12]annulene **86** has been prepared.[195] In solution this molecule undergoes rapid conformational mobility (as do many other annulenes),[196] so that above a certain temperature, in this case −150°C, all protons are magnetically equivalent. However, at −170°C the mobility is greatly slowed and the three inner protons are found at about 8 δ while the nine outer protons are at about 6 δ. **86** suffers from hydrogen interference and is certainly not planar. It is very unstable and above −50°C rearranges to **87.** Several bridged and dehydro[12]annulenes are known, e.g., 5-bromo-1,9-didehydro[12]annulene (**88**),[197] cycl[3.3.3]azine (**89**),[198] and 1,7-methano[12]annulene (**90**).[199] In these compounds both hydrogen interference and conformational mobility are prevented. In **89** and **90** the bridge prevents conformational changes, while in **88** the bromine atom is too large to be found inside the ring. Nmr spectra show that all three compounds are paratropic, the inner proton of **88** being found at 16.4 δ.[200]

---

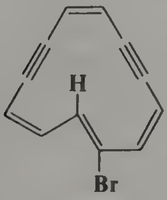
[193] Staab and Diederich, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 3487 (1983); Staab, Diederich, Krieger, and Schweitzer, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 3504 (1983).

[194] Pople and Untch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4811 (1966); Longuet-Higgins, in "Aromaticity," Ref. 34, pp. 109–111.

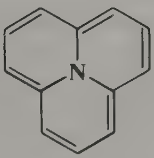
[195] Oth, Röttele, and Schröder, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 61 (1970); Oth, Gilles, and Schröder, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 67 (1970).



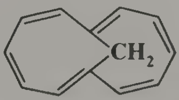
86 **87**



88



89



90

The results for [16]annulene are similar. The compound was synthesized in two different ways,[201] both of which gave **91,** which in solution is in equilibrium with **92.** Above −50°C there is conformational mobility, resulting in the magnetic equivalence of all protons, but at −130°C the compound is clearly paratropic: there are four protons at 10.56 δ and twelve at 5.35 δ. In the solid state, where the compound exists entirely as **91,** x-ray crystallography[202] shows that the molecules are nonplanar with almost complete bond alternation: the single bonds are 1.44 to 1.47 Å and the double bonds 1.31 to 1.35 Å. A number of dehydro and bridged [16]annulenes are also paratropic,[203]

---

[196] For a review of conformational mobility in annulenes, see Oth, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **25,** 573–622 (1971).

[197] Untch and Wysocki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6386 (1967).

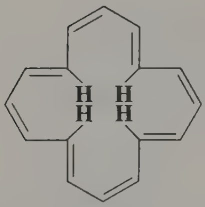
[198] Farquhar and Leaver, *Chem. Commun.* 24 (1969). See also Paudler and Stephan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4468 (1970); Trost, Bright, Frihart, and Brittelli, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 737 (1971); Kinson and Trost, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3823 (1971); Atwood, Hrncir, Wong, and Paudler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6132 (1974).

[199] Vogel, Königshofen, Müllen, and Oth, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 281 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 229]. See also Mugnoli and Simonetta, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 822 (1976); Scott, Kirms, Günther, and von Puttkamer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1372 (1983); Destro, Ortoleva, Simonetta, and Todeschini, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1227 (1983).

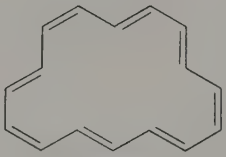
[200] For another paratropic 12-electron system, see Staley and Orvedal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3384 (1973).

[201] Schröder and Oth, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4083 (1966); Sondheimer and Gaoni, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4863 (1961); Oth and Gilles, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6259 (1968); Calder, Gaoni, and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4946 (1968). For monosubstituted [16]annulenes, see Schröder, Kirsch, and Oth, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 460 (1974).

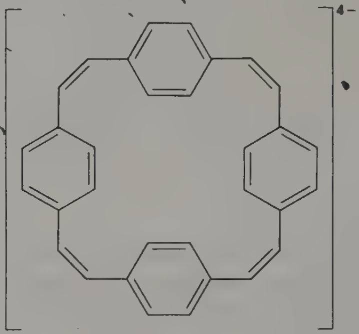
[202] Johnson, Paul, and King, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 643 (1970).



91



92



93

as are [20]annulene,[204] [24]annulene,[205] and **93,** a 28-electron system that is the tetraanion of $[2_4]$paracyclophanetetraene.[206]

The fact that many 4*n* systems are paratropic even though they may be nonplanar and have unequal bond distances indicates that if planarity were enforced, the ring currents might be even greater. That this is true is dramatically illustrated by the nmr spectrum of the dianion of **79** (and its diethyl and dipropyl homologs).[207] We may recall that in **79,** the outer protons were found at 8.14 to 8.67 δ with the methyl protons at −4.25 δ. For the dianion, however, which is forced to have approximately the same planar geometry but now has 16 electrons, the outer protons are shifted to about −3 δ while the methyl protons are found at about 21 δ, a shift of about 25 δ! We have already seen where the converse shift was made, when [16]annulenes that were antiaromatic were converted to 18-electron dianions that were aromatic.[183] In these cases, the changes in nmr chemical shifts were almost as dramatic. Heat of combustion measures also show that [16]annulene is much less stable than its dianion.[208]

We can therefore conclude that in 4*n* systems antiaromaticity will be at a maximum where the molecule is constrained to be planar (as in **57** or the dianion of **79**) but, where possible, the molecule will distort itself from planarity and avoid equal bond distances in order to reduce antiaromaticity. In some cases, such as cyclooctatraene, the distortion and bond alternation are great enough for antiaromaticity to be completely avoided. In other cases, e.g., **86** or **91,** it is apparently not possible for the molecules to avoid at least some *p*-orbital overlap. Such molecules show paramagnetic ring currents and other evidence of antiaromaticity, although the degree of antiaromaticity is not as great as in molecules such as **57** or the dianion of **79.**

[203] For example, see Calder, Garratt, and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4954 (1968); Murata, Nakazawa, and Okazaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3269 (1970); Murata, Okazaki, and Nakazawa, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 576 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 623]; Ogawa, Kubo, and Tabushi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 361 (1973); Nakatsuji, Morigaki, Akiyama, and Nakagawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1233 (1975); Tanner, Wennerström, and Vogel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1221 (1982); Elix, Ref. 192.

[204] Metcalf and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6675 (1971). See also Oth, Woo, and Sondheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7337 (1973); Beeby and Sondheimer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 411 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 406]; Nakatsuji and Nakagawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3927 (1975).

[205] Calder and Sondheimer, *Chem. Commun.* 904 (1966). See also Stöckel and Sondheimer, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 355 (1972); Nakatsuji, Akiyama, and Nakagawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2623 (1976).

[206] Huber, Müllen, and Wennerström, Ref. 190.

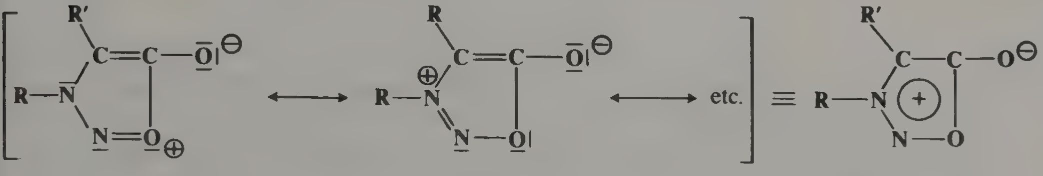
[207] Mitchell, Klopfenstein, and Boekelheide, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4931 (1969). For another example, see Deger, Müllen, and Vogel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 957 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 990].

[208] Stevenson and Forch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5985 (1980).

Other Aromatic Compounds

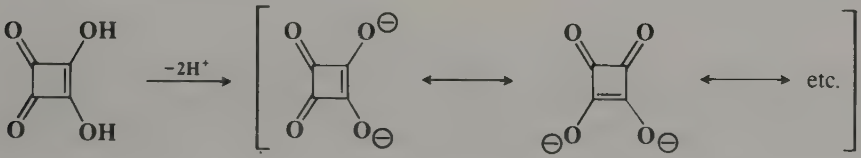
We shall briefly mention three other types of aromatic compounds.

1. *Mesoionic compounds*[209] cannot be satisfactorily represented by Lewis forms not involving charge separation. Most of them contain five-membered rings. The most common are the *sydnones* (**94**), stable aromatic compounds that undergo aromatic substitution when R′ is hydrogen.[210]



94

2. *The dianion of squaric acid.*[211]



The stability of this system is illustrated by the fact that the pK_1 of squaric acid is about 1.5 and the pK_2 is about 3.5,[212] which means that even the second proton is given up much more readily than the proton of acetic acid, for example.[213] The analogous three-,[214] five-, and six-membered ring compounds are also known.[215]

3. *Homoaromatic compounds.* When cyclooctatetraene is dissolved in concentrated H_2SO_4, a proton adds to one of the double bonds to form the homotropylium ion **95.**[216] In this species an aromatic sextet is spread over seven carbons, as in the tropylium ion. The eighth carbon is an sp^3 carbon and so cannot take part in the aromaticity. Nmr spectra show the presence of a diatropic ring current: H_b is found at $\delta = -0.3$; H_a at 5.1 δ; H_1 and H_7 at 6.4 δ; H_2–H_6 at 8.5 δ. This ion is an example of a *homoaromatic* compound, which may be defined as a compound that contains one or more[217] sp^3-hybridized carbon atoms in an otherwise conjugated cycle.[218] In order for the orbitals to overlap most effectively so as to close a loop, the sp^3 atoms are forced to lie almost vertically above the plane of the aromatic atoms. In **95,** H_b is directly above the aromatic sextet and so is shifted far upfield in the nmr. All homoaromatic compounds so far discovered are ions, and it seems unlikely that homoaromatic character can exist in uncharged systems.[219] Homoaromatic ions of two and ten electrons are also known.

---

[209] For reviews, see Newton and Ramsden, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2965–3011 (1982); Ollis and Ramsden, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **19,** 1–122 (1976); Ramsden, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 3203–3232 (1977); Yashunskii and Kholodov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 28–45 (1980); Ohta and Kato, in Snyder, Ref. 34, vol. 1, pp. 117–248; Noël, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 173–177 (1964); Stewart, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 129–147 (1964).

[210] For example, see Tien and Hunsberger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 178 (1961); Yashunskii, Vasil'eva, and Sheinker, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **29,** 2680 (1959).

[211] West and Powell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2577 (1963); Ito and West, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2580 (1963).

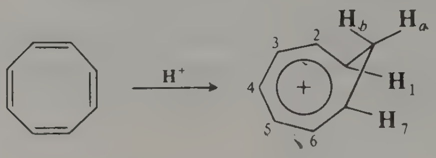
[212] Ireland and Walton, *J. Phys. Chem.* **71,** 751 (1967); MacDonald, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 4559 (1968).

[213] There has been a controversy as to whether this dianion is in fact aromatic. See Aihara, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1633 (1981).

[214] Eggerding and West, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3641 (1976).

[215] For a monograph, see West, "Oxocarbons," Academic Press, New York, 1980. For reviews, see Serratosa, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 170–176 (1983); Schmidt, *Synthesis* 961–994 (1980); West, *Isr. J. Chem.* **20,** 300–307 (1980); West and Niu, in Snyder, Ref. 34, vol. 1, pp. 311–345, and in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 2, pp. 241–275, Wiley, New York, 1970; Maahs and Hegenberg, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 888–893 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 927–931].

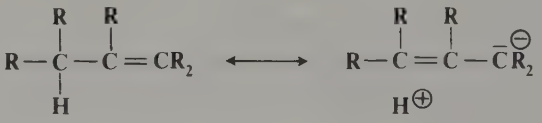
[216] Rosenberg, Mahler, and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2842 (1962); Keller and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 604, 606 (1966); Winstein, Kaesz, Kreiter, and Friedrich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3267 (1965); Winstein, Kreiter, and Brauman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2047 (1966). See also Childs, Mulholland, Varadarajan, and Yeroushalmi, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1431 (1983).



95

HYPERCONJUGATION

All of the delocalization discussed so far involves π electrons. Another type, called *hyperconjugation*, involves σ electrons.[220] When a carbon attached to at least one hydrogen is attached to an unsaturated atom or one with an unshared orbital, canonical forms such as **96** can be drawn. In such canonical forms there is no bond at all between the carbon and hydrogen, and this type of resonance has been called *no-bond resonance*. The hydrogen does not leave (because **96** does not exist but is only a canonical form that contributes to the actual structure of the molecule). The effect of **96** on the actual molecule is that the electrons in the C—H bond are closer to the carbon than they would be if **96** did not contribute at all.



$$\mathrm{R-\overset{R}{\underset{H}{C}}-\overset{R}{C}=CR_2 \longleftrightarrow R-\overset{R}{\underset{H^{\oplus}}{C}}=\overset{R}{C}-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}R_2}$$

96

Hyperconjugation in the above case may be regarded as an overlap of the σ orbital of the C—H bond and the π orbital of the C—C bond, analogous to the π–π-orbital overlap previously considered. As might be expected, those who reject the idea of resonance in butadiene (p. 28) believe it even less likely when it involves no-bond structures.

---

[217] If a compound contains two such atoms it is *bishomoaromatic*; if three, *trishomoaromatic*, etc. For examples see Paquette, Ref. 218.

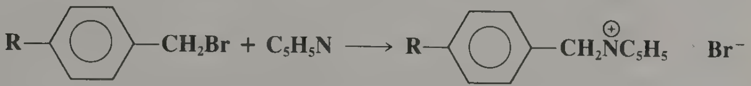
[218] For reviews, see Paquette, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 106–117 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 114–125]; Winstein, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **23,** 141–176 (1969); "Aromaticity," Ref. 34, pp. 5–45; and in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," Wiley, vol. 3, 1972, the reviews by Story and Clark, 1007–1098, pp. 1073–1093; Winstein, 965–1005. (The latter is a reprint of the *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* review mentioned above.)

[219] Houk, Gandour, Strozier, Rondan, and Paquette, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6797 (1979); Paquette, Snow, Muthard, and Cynkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6991 (1979).

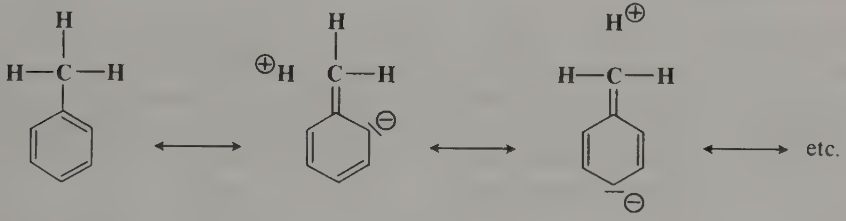
[220] For reviews, see Baker, "Hyperconjugation," Oxford University Press, Fair Lawn, N.J., 1952; symposia in *Tetrahedron* **5,** 107–274 (1959), **17,** 125–289 (1962); Dewar, "Hyperconjugation," Ronald Press, New York, 1962.

The concept of hyperconjugation arose from the discovery of apparently anomalous electron-release patterns for alkyl groups. By the field effect alone, the order of electron release for simple alkyl groups connected to an unsaturated system is *t*-butyl > isopropyl > ethyl > methyl, and this order is observed in many phenomena. Thus, the dipole moments in the gas phase of $PhCH_3$, PhC_2H_5, $PhCH(CH_3)_2$, and $PhC(CH_3)_3$ are, respectively, 0.37, 0.58, 0.65, and 0.70 D.[221]

However, Baker and Nathan observed that the rates of reaction with pyridine of *p*-substituted benzyl bromides (see p. 364) were about opposite that expected from electron release by the field effect.[222] That is, the methyl-substituted compound reacted fastest and the *t*-butyl-substituted compound reacted slowest.



This came to be called the *Baker–Nathan effect* and has since been found in many processes. Baker and Nathan explained it by considering that hyperconjugative forms contribute to the actual structure of toluene:



For the other alkyl groups, hyperconjugation is diminished because the number of C—H bonds is diminished and in *t*-butyl there are none; hence, with respect to this effect, methyl is the strongest electron donor and *t*-butyl the weakest.

However, the Baker–Nathan effect has now been shown not to be caused by hyperconjugation, but by differential solvation.[223] This was demonstrated by the finding that in certain instances where the Baker–Nathan effect was found to apply in solution, the order was completely reversed in the gas phase.[224] Since the molecular structures are unchanged in going from the gas phase into solution, it is evident that the Baker–Nathan order in these cases is not caused by a structural feature (hyperconjugation) but by the solvent. That is, the solvent solvates each alkyl group to a different extent.

At present the evidence is against hyperconjugation in the ground states of neutral molecules. However, for carbocations and free radicals[225] and for excited states of molecules,[226] there is evidence that hyperconjugation is important. In hyperconjugation in the ground state of neutral molecules, which Muller and Mulliken call *sacrificial hyperconjugation*,[227] the canonical forms involve not

[221] Baker and Groves, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1144 (1939).

[222] Baker and Nathan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1840, 1844 (1935).

[223] This idea was first suggested by Schubert and Sweeney, *J. Org. Chem.* **21,** 119 (1956).

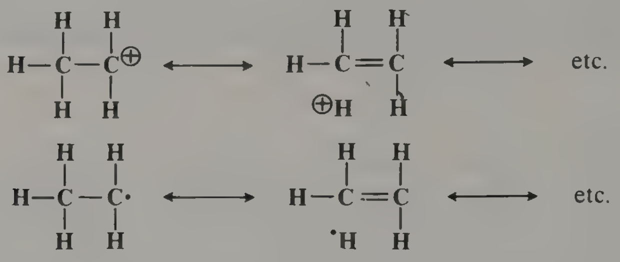
[224] Hehre, McIver, Pople, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7162 (1974); Arnett and Abboud, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3865 (1975); Glyde and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 678 (1977).

[225] Symons, *Tetrahedron* **18,** 333 (1962).

[226] Rao, Goldman, and Balasubramanian, *Can. J. Chem.* **38,** 2508 (1960).

[227] Muller and Mulliken, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 3489 (1958).

only no-bond resonance but also a charge separation not possessed by the main form. In free radicals and carbocations, the canonical forms display no more charge separation than the main form. Muller and Mulliken call this *isovalent hyperconjugation:*



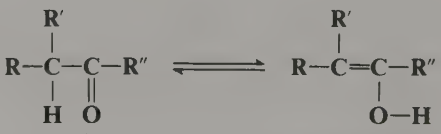
Even here the main form contributes more to the hybrid than the others.

TAUTOMERISM

There remains one topic to be discussed in our survey of chemical bonding in organic compounds. For most compounds all the molecules have the same structure, whether or not this structure can be satisfactorily represented by a Lewis formula. But for many other compounds there is a mixture of two or more structurally distinct compounds that are in rapid equilibrium. When this phenomenon, called *tautomerism*,[228] exists, there is a rapid shift back and forth among the molecules. In nearly all cases, it is a proton that shifts from one atom of a molecule to another.

Keto–Enol Tautomerism[229]

A very common form of tautomerism is that between a carbonyl compound containing an α hydrogen and its enol form:



Keto form   Enol form

In simple cases (R″ = H, alkyl, OR, etc.) the equilibrium lies well to the left.[230] The reason can be seen by examining the table of bond energies on p. 23. The keto form differs from the enol

---

[228] For reviews, see Kol'tsov and Kheifets, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 773–788 (1971), **41,** 452–467 (1972); Forsén and Nilsson, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 2, pp. 157–240, Interscience, New York, 1970; Wheland, "Advanced Organic Chemistry," 3d ed., pp. 663–730, Wiley, New York, 1960.

[229] The mechanism for conversion of one tautomer to another is discussed in Chapter 12 (reaction **2-3**).

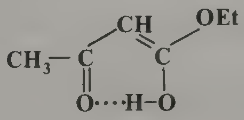
[230] There are some stable simple enols. For reviews, see Hart, *Chem. Rev.* **79,** 515–528 (1979); Hart and Sasaoka, *J. Chem. Educ.* **57,** 685–688 (1980).

TABLE 1 The enol content of some carbonyl compounds[231]

Compound	Enol content, %	Compound	Enol content, %
Acetone[232]	6×10^{-7}	$CH_3COCH_2COCH_3$	76.4
Acetaldehyde[233]	1×10^{-3}	$PhCOCH_2COCH_3$	89.2
$(CH_3)_2CHCHO$[234]	1.3×10^{-2}	$EtOOCCH_2COOEt$	7.7×10^{-3}
CH_3COOEt	No enol found[a]	$NCCH_2COOEt$	2.5×10^{-1}
CH_3COCH_2COOEt	8.0		

[a] Less than 1 part in 10 million.

form in possessing a C—H, a C—C, and a C=O bond where the enol has a C=C, a C—O, and an O—H bond. The approximate sum of the first three is 360 kcal/mol and of the second three is 345 kcal/mol. The keto form is therefore more stable by about 15 kcal/mol. When R contains a multiple bond that can be in conjugation with the enolic double bond, a larger amount of enol is present and it may even be the predominant form (Table 1).[231] As Table 1 shows, esters have a much smaller enolic content than ketones. In molecules like acetoacetic ester, the enol is also stabilized by internal hydrogen bonding, which is unavailable to the keto form:



Frequently, when the enol content is high, both forms can be isolated. The pure keto form of acetoacetic ester melts at −39°C, while the enol is a liquid even at −78°C. Each can be kept at room temperature for days if catalysts such as acids or bases are rigorously excluded.[235] Even the simplest enol, vinyl alcohol $CH_2{=}CHOH$, has been prepared in the gas phase at room temperature, where it has a half-life of about 30 min.[236]

The extent of enolization is greatly affected by solvent, concentration, and temperature. Thus, acetoacetic ester has an enol content of 0.4% in water and 19.8% in toluene.[237] In this case, water reduces the enol concentration by hydrogen bonding with the carbonyl. making this group less available for internal hydrogen bonding.

When a strong base is present, both the enol and the keto form can lose a proton. The resulting anion (the *enolate ion*) is the same in both cases. Since **97** and **98** differ only in placement of electrons, *they* are not tautomers but canonical forms. The true structure of the enolate ion is a

---

[231] Except where otherwise noted, these values are from Gero, *J. Org. Chem.* **19,** 469, 1960 (1954).

[232] Tapuhi and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5758 (1982); Chiang, Kresge, Tang, and Wirz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 460 (1984). See also Hine and Arata, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 3089 (1976); Guthrie, *Can. J. Chem.* **57,** 1177 (1979); Dubois, El-Alaoui, and Toullec, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5393 (1981); Ref. 233.

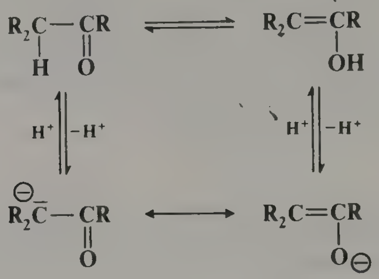
[233] Guthrie, *Can. J. Chem.* **57,** 797 (1979).

[234] Chiang, Kresge, and Walsh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6122 (1982).

[235] For an example of particularly stable enol and keto forms, which could be kept in the solid state for more than a year without significant interconversion, see Schulenberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7008 (1968).

[236] Saito, *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **42,** 399 (1976). See also Capon, Rycroft, Watson, and Zucco, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1761 (1981); Holmes and Lossing, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2648 (1982); McGarritty, Cretton, Pinkerton, Schwarzenbach, and Flack, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 405 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 426]; Capon and Siddhanta, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 255 (1984).

[237] Meyer, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **380,** 212 (1911).



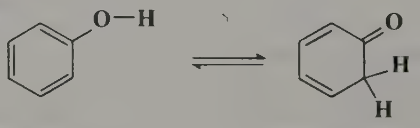
97 **98**

hybrid of **97** and **98,** although **98** contributes more, since in this form the negative charge is on the more electronegative atom.

Other Proton-Shift Tautomerism

In all such cases, the anion resulting from removal of a proton from either tautomer is the same because of resonance. Some examples are:[238]

1. Phenol-keto tautomerism.[239]



Phenol Cyclohexadienone

For most simple phenols this equilibrium lies well to the side of the phenol, since only on that side is there aromaticity. For phenol itself there is no evidence for the existence of the keto form.[240] However, the keto form becomes important and may predominate: (1) where certain groups, such as a second OH group or an N=O group, are present;[241] (2) in systems of fused aromatic rings;[242]

---

[238] For a review of the use of x-ray crystallography to determine tautomeric forms, see Furmanova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 775–791 (1981).

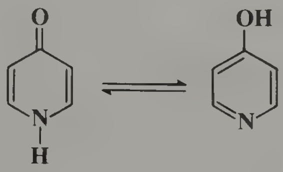
[239] For reviews, see Ershov and Nikiforov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 817–833 (1966); Forsén and Nilsson, Ref. 228, pp. 168–198.

[240] Keto forms of phenol and some simple derivatives have been generated as intermediates with very short lives, but long enough for spectra to be taken at − 196°C. Lasne, Ripoll, and Denis, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 463 (1980).

[241] Ershov and Nikiforov, Ref. 239. See also Highet and Chou, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3538 (1977).

[242] See for example, Majerski and Trinajstić, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 2648 (1970).

(3) in heterocyclic systems. In many heterocyclic compounds in the liquid phase or in solution, the keto form is more stable,[243] although in the vapor phase the positions of many of these equilibria are reversed.[244] For example, in the equilibrium between 4-pyridone (**99**) and 4-hydroxypyridine (**100**), **99** is the only form detectable in ethanolic solution, while **100** predominates in the vapor phase.[244]



99 **100**

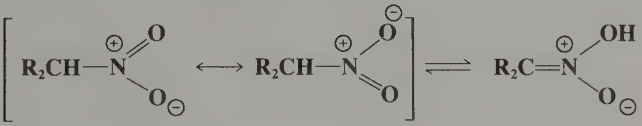
2. Nitroso-oxime tautomerism.

$$\mathbf{R_2CH{-}N{=}O \rightleftharpoons R_2C{=}N{-}OH}$$

Nitroso Oxime

This equilibrium lies far to the right, and as a rule nitroso compounds are stable only when there is no α-hydrogen.

3. Aliphatic nitro compounds are in equilibrium with aci forms.



Nitro form Aci form

The nitro form is much more stable than the aci form in sharp contrast to the parallel case of nitroso–oxime tautomerism, undoubtedly because the nitro form has resonance not found in the nitroso case.

4. Imine–enamine tautomerism.[245]

$$\mathbf{R_2CH{-}CR{=}NR \rightleftharpoons R_2C{=}CR{-}NHR}$$

Imine Enamine

---

[243] For a monograph on tautomerism in heterocyclic compounds, see Elguero, Marzin, Katritzky, and Linda, "The Tautomerism of Heterocycles," Academic Press, New York, 1976. For reviews, see Beak, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 186–192 (1977); Katritzky, *Chimia* **24,** 134–146 (1970); Katritzky and Lagowski, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1,** 311–437 (1963); **2,** 1–81 (1963).

[244] Beak, Fry, Lee, and Steele, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 171 (1976).

[245] For a review, see Shainyan and Mirskova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 107–117 (1979).

Enamines are normally stable only when there is no hydrogen on the nitrogen ($R_2C{=}CR{-}NR_2$). Otherwise, the imine form predominates.[246]

Ring-chain tautomerism[247] (as in sugars) consists largely of cyclic analogs of the previous examples. There are many other highly specialized cases of proton-shift tautomerism.

Valence Tautomerism

This type of tautomerism is discussed on p. 1024.

---

[246] For examples of the isolation of primary and secondary enamines, see Shin, Masaki, and Ohta, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 1657 (1971); de Jeso and Pommier, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 565 (1977).

[247] For reviews, see Valter, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **42,** 464–476 (1973), **43,** 665–678 (1974); Escale and Verducci, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1203–1206 (1974); Jones, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 461–487 (1963).

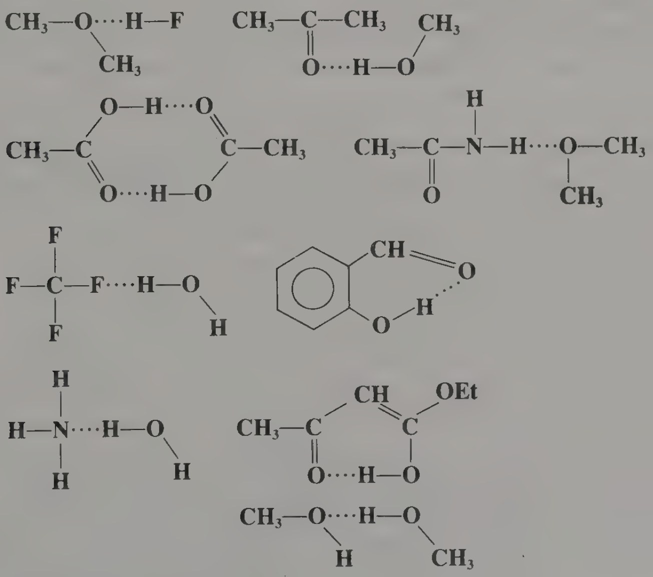
3

BONDING WEAKER THAN COVALENT

In the first two chapters we discussed the structure of molecules each of which is an aggregate of atoms in a distinct three-dimensional arrangement held together by bonds with energies on the order of 50 to 100 kcal/mol. There are also very weak attractive forces *between* molecules, on the order of a few tenths of a kilocalorie per mole. These forces, called van der Waals forces, are caused by electrostatic attractions such as those between dipole and dipole, induced dipole and induced dipole, etc, and are responsible for liquefaction of gases at sufficiently low temperatures. The bonding discussed in this chapter has energies of the order of 2 to 10 kcal/mol, intermediate between the two extremes, and produces clusters of molecules. We also discuss compounds in which portions of molecules are held together without any attractive forces at all.

HYDROGEN BONDING

A *hydrogen bond* is a bond between a functional group A—H and an atom or group of atoms B in the same or a different molecule.[1] With exceptions to be noted later, hydrogen bonds are formed only when A is oxygen, nitrogen, or fluorine and when B is oxygen, nitrogen, or fluorine. The oxygen may be singly or doubly bonded and the nitrogen singly, doubly, or triply bonded. The bonds are usually represented by dotted lines, as shown in the following examples:



---

[1] For a treatise, see Schuster, Zundel, and Sandorfy, "The Hydrogen Bond," 3 vols., North Holland Publishing Co., Amsterdam, 1976. For monographs, see Joesten and Schaad, "Hydrogen Bonding," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1974; Pimentel

Hydrogen bonds can exist in the solid and liquid phases and in solution. Even in the gas phase, compounds that form particularly strong hydrogen bonds may still be associated. Acetic acid, for example, exists in the gas phase as a dimer, as shown above, except at very low pressures.[2] In solution and in the liquid phase, hydrogen bonds rapidly form and break. The mean lifetime of the $NH_3\cdots\cdots H_2O$ bond is 2×10^{-12} sec.[3] Except for a few very strong hydrogen bonds,[4] such as the $FH\cdots\cdots F^-$ bond (which has an energy of about 50 kcal/mol), the strongest hydrogen bonds are the $FH\cdots\cdots F$ bond and the bonds connecting one carboxylic acid with another. The energies of these bonds are in the range of 6 to 8 kcal/mol (for carboxylic acids, this refers to the energy of each bond). Other $OH\cdots\cdots O$ bonds and $NH\cdots\cdots N$ bonds have energies of 3 to 6 kcal/mol. To a first approximation, the strength of hydrogen bonds increases with increasing acidity of A—H and basicity of B, but the parallel is far from exact.[5] A quantitative measure of the strengths of hydrogen bonds has been established, involving the use of an α scale to represent hydrogen-bond donor acidities and a β scale for hydrogen-bond acceptor basicities.[6]

The geometry of hydrogen bonds is difficult to determine, since hydrogen is not easy to detect in x-ray diffraction measurements but what little evidence there is is consistent with the hydrogen being on the straight line formed by A and B within about 15°,[7] except in some cases of intramolecular hydrogen bonding where the geometry forbids this. It is significant that the vast majority of intramolecular hydrogen bonding occurs where *six-membered rings* (counting the hydrogen as one of the six) can be formed, in which linearity of the hydrogen bond is geometrically favorable, while five-membered rings, where linearity is usually not favored (though it is known), are much rarer. Except for the special case of $FH\cdots\cdots F^-$ bonds (see p. 74), the hydrogen is not equidistant between A and B. For example, in ice the O—H distance is 0.97 Å, while the $H\cdots\cdots O$ distance is 1.79 Å.[8]

Hydrogen bonding has been detected in many ways, including measurements of dipole moments, solubility behavior, freezing-point lowering, and heats of mixing, but the most important way is by the effect of the hydrogen bond on ir[9] and other spectra. The ir frequencies of groups such as O—H or C=O are shifted when the group is hydrogen bonded. Hydrogen bonding always moves the peak toward lower frequencies, for both the A—H and the B groups, although the shift is greater for the former. For example, a free OH group of an alcohol or phenol absorbs at about 3590 to 3650 cm^{-1}, while a hydrogen-bonded OH group is found about 50 to 100 cm^{-1} lower, at

---

and McClellan, "The Hydrogen Bond," W. H. Freeman, San Francisco, 1960. For reviews, see Joesten, *J. Chem. Educ.* **59,** 362–366 (1982); Gur'yanova, Gol'dshtein, and Perepelkova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 792–806 (1976); Pimentel and McClellan, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **22,** 347–385 (1971); Kollman and Allen, *Chem. Rev.* **72,** 283–303 (1972); Huggins, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 147–151 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 163–168]; Rochester, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 1, pp. 327–392, Interscience, New York, 1971, pp. 328–369. See also Hamilton and Ibers, "Hydrogen Bonding in Solids," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1968.

[2] For a review of hydrogen bonding in carboxylic acids and acid derivatives, see Hadži and Detoni, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Acid Derivatives," pt. 1, pp. 213–266, Wiley, 1979.

[3] Emerson, Grunwald, Kaplan, and Kromhout, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 6307 (1960).

[4] For a review of very strong hydrogen bonding, see Emsley, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **9,** 91–124 (1980).

[5] For a review of the relationship between hydrogen bond strength and acid–base properties, see Epshtein, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 854–867 (1979).

[6] For a review, see Kamlet, Abboud, and Taft, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **13,** 485–630 (1981). For a comprehensive table and α and β values, see Kamlet, Abboud, Abraham, and Taft, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2877 (1983). See also Taft, Gramstad, and Kamlet, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4557 (1982).

[7] A statistical analysis of x-ray crystallographic data has shown that most hydrogen bonds in crystals are nonlinear by about 10 to 15°: Kroon, Kanters, van Duijneveldt–van de Rijdt, van Duijneveldt, and Vliegenthart, *J. Mol. Struct.* **24,** 109 (1975). See also Taylor, Kennard, and Versichel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5761 (1983); **106,** 244 (1984).

[8] Pimentel and McClellan, "The Hydrogen Bond," Ref. 1, p. 260.

[9] For reviews of the use of ir spectra to detect hydrogen bonding, see Symons, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **12,** 1–34 (1983); Egorochkin and Skobeleva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 1198–1211 (1979); Tichý, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **5,** 115–298 (1965); Ratajczak and Orville-Thomas, *J. Mol. Struct.* **1,** 449 (1968). For a review of studies by ir of the shapes of intramolecular-hydrogen-bonded compounds, see Aaron, *Top. Stereochem.* **11,** 1–52 (1979).

3500 to 3600 cm^{-1}.[10] In many cases, in dilute solution, there is partial hydrogen bonding, that is, some OH groups are free and some are hydrogen bonded. In such cases two peaks appear. Infrared spectroscopy can also distinguish between inter- and intramolecular hydrogen bonding, since intermolecular peaks are intensified by an increase in concentration while intramolecular peaks are unaffected. Other types of spectra that have been used for the detection of hydrogen bonding include Raman, electronic,[11] and nmr.[12] Since hydrogen bonding involves a rapid movement of protons from one atom to another, nmr records an average value. Hydrogen bonding can be detected because it usually produces a chemical shift to a lower field. Hydrogen bonding changes with temperature and concentration, and comparison of spectra taken under different conditions also serves to detect and measure it. As with infrared spectra, intramolecular hydrogen bonding can be distinguished from intermolecular by its constancy when the concentration is varied.

Hydrogen bonds are important because of the effects they have on the properties of compounds, among them:

1. Intermolecular hydrogen bonding raises boiling points and frequently melting points.

2. If hydrogen bonding is possible between solute and solvent, this greatly increases solubility and often results in large or even infinite solubility where none would otherwise be expected. It is interesting to speculate what the effect on the human race would be if ethyl alcohol had the same solubility in water as ethane or ethyl chloride.

3. Hydrogen bonding causes lack of ideality in gas and solution laws.

4. As previously mentioned, hydrogen bonding changes spectral absorption positions.

5. Hydrogen bonding, especially the intramolecular variety, changes many chemical properties. For example, it is responsible for the large amount of enol present in certain tautomeric equilibria (see p. 67). Also, by influencing the conformation of molecules (see Chapter 4), it often plays a significant role in determining reaction rates.[13] Hydrogen bonding is also important in maintaining the three-dimensional structures of protein and nucleic acid molecules.

Besides oxygen, nitrogen, and fluorine, there is evidence that weaker hydrogen bonding exists in other systems.[14] Although many searches have been made for hydrogen bonding where A is carbon,[15] only three types of C—H bonds have been found that are acidic enough to form weak hydrogen bonds. These are found in terminal acetylenes, RC≡CH,[16] chloroform and some other halogenated alkanes, and HCN. Weak hydrogen bonds are formed by compounds containing S—H bonds.[17] There has been much speculation regarding other possibilities for B. There is evidence that Cl can form weak hydrogen bonds,[18] but Br and I form very weak bonds if at all.[19] However, the *ions* Cl$^-$, Br$^-$, and I$^-$ form hydrogen bonds that are much stronger than those of the covalently bonded atoms.[20] As we have already seen, the FH····F⁻ bond is especially strong. In this case the hydrogen is equidistant from the fluorines.[21] Similarly, a sulfur atom[17] can be the B component in weak hydrogen bonds,[22] but the SH⁻ ions forms much stronger bonds.[23] A system that seems to form rather strong hydrogen bonds is the isonitrile system $R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}$.[24] There is evidence that double and triple bonds, aromatic rings, and even cyclopropane rings[25] may be the B component of hydrogen bonds, but these bonds are very weak.

---

[10] Tichý, Ref. 9, contains a lengthy table of free and intramolecularly hydrogen-bonded peaks.

[11] For a discussion of the effect of hydrogen bonding on electronic spectra, see Lees and Burawoy, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 419 (1963).

[12] For a review of the use of nmr to detect hydrogen bonding, see Davis and Deb, *Adv. Magn. Reson.* **4,** 201–270 (1970).

[13] For a review of the effect of intramolecular hydrogen bonding on reactivity, see Sadekov, Minkin, and Lutskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 179–195 (1970).

[14] For a review, see Pogorelyi, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 316–336 (1977).

[15] For a monograph on this subject, see Green, "Hydrogen Bonding by C—H Groups," Wiley, New York, 1974. See also Taylor and Kennard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5063 (1982); Harlow, Li, and Sammes, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 547 (1984).

[16] For a review, see Hopkinson, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," pt. 1, pp. 75–136, Wiley, 1978.

[17] For reviews of hydrogen bonding in sulfur-containing compounds, see Zuika and Bankovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **42,** 22–36 (1973); Crampton, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 1, pp. 379–396, Wiley, New York, 1974; Ref. 14.

[18] For a review of hydrogen bonding to halogens, see Smith, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Halogen Bond," pt. 1, pp. 265–300, Wiley, New York, 1973.

[19] West, Powell, Whatley, Lee, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3221 (1962); Fujimoto, Takeoka, and Kozima, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 991 (1970); Azrak and Wilson, *J. Chem. Phys.* **52,** 5299 (1970).

Deuterium also forms hydrogen bonds; in some systems these seem to be stronger than the corresponding hydrogen bonds; in others, weaker.[26]

ADDITION COMPOUNDS

When the reaction of two compounds results in a product that contains all the mass of the two compounds, the product is called an *addition compound*.[27] There are several kinds of addition compounds. Two of these do not fall within the scope of this chapter, since they do not contain bonds weaker than covalent bonds:

1. Regular covalent compounds, such as the product of reaction of ethylene and bromine.

2. Compounds formed by overlap of an orbital containing an unshared pair with an empty orbital, e.g., $H_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-\overset{\ominus}{B}F_3$ (see Lewis acids and bases, p. 227).

In other addition compounds, the molecules of the starting materials remain more or less intact and weak bonds hold two or more molecules together. We can divide these compounds into four broad classes: electron donor–acceptor complexes, complexes formed by crown ethers and similar compounds, inclusion compounds, and catenanes.

Electron Donor–Acceptor (EDA) Complexes[28]

In *EDA complexes*,[29] there is always a donor molecule and an acceptor. The donor may donate an unshared pair (an n donor) or a pair of electrons in a π orbital of a double bond or aromatic system (a π donor). One test for the presence of an EDA complex is the electronic spectrum. These complexes generally exhibit a spectrum (called a *charge-transfer spectrum*) that is not the same as the sum of the spectra of the two individual molecules.[30] Because the first excited state of the complex is relatively close in energy to the ground state, there is usually a peak in the visible or near-uv region and EDA complexes are often colored. Many EDA complexes are unstable and exist only in solutions in equilibrium with their components, but others are stable solids. In most EDA complexes the donor and acceptor molecules are present in an integral ratio, most often 1 : 1, but some complexes with nonintegral ratios are also known. There are several types of acceptor; we classify complexes into three groups, depending on the nature of the acceptor.

---

[20] Allerhand and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1233 (1963); McDaniel and Valleé, *Inorg. Chem.* **2,** 996 (1963); Fujiwara and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7625 (1974); French, Ikuta, and Kebarle, *Can. J. Chem.* **60,** 1907 (1982).

[21] A few exceptions have been found, where the presence of an unsymmetrical cation causes the hydrogen to be closer to one fluorine than to the other: Williams and Schneemeyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5780 (1973).

[22] Vogel and Drago, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5347 (1970); Mukherjee, Palit, and De, *J. Phys. Chem.* **74,** 1389 (1970); Sherry and Purcell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1848 (1972); Schaefer, Salman, Wildman, and Clark, *Can. J. Chem.* **60,** 342 (1982).

[23] McDaniel and Evans, *Inorg. Chem.* **5,** 2180 (1966); Sabin, *J. Chem. Phys.* **54,** 4675 (1971).

[24] Ferstandig, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3553 (1962); Allerhand and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 866 (1963).

[25] Joris, Schleyer, and Gleiter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 327 (1968); Yoshida, Ishibe, and Kusumoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2279 (1969).

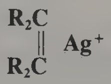
[26] Dahlgren and Long, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1303 (1960); Creswell and Allred, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3966 (1962); Singh and Rao, *Can. J. Chem.* **44,** 2611 (1966); Cummings and Wood, *J. Mol. Struct.* **23,** 103 (1974).

[27] For a general reference, see Wheland, "Advanced Organic Chemistry," 3d ed., pp. 136–183, Wiley, New York, 1960.

[28] For monographs, see Foster, "Organic Charge-Transfer Complexes," Academic Press, New York, 1969; Mulliken and Person, "Molecular Complexes," Interscience, New York, 1969; Rose, "Molecular Complexes," Pergamon, London, 1967; Andrews and Keefer, "Molecular Complexes in Organic Chemistry," Holden-Day, San Francisco, 1964. For reviews, see Poleshchuk and Maksyutin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 1077–1090 (1976); Banthorpe, *Chem. Rev.* **70,** 295–322 (1970); Andrews, *Chem. Rev.* **54,** 713–776 (1954); Kosower, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **3,** 81–163 (1965); Foster, *Chem. Br.* **12,** 18–23 (1976).

[29] These have often been called *charge-transfer complexes*, but this term implies that the bonding involves charge transfer, which is not always the case, so that the more neutral name EDA complex is preferable. See Ref. 44.

1. *Complexes in which the acceptor is a metal ion and the donor an olefin or an aromatic ring* (*n* donors do not give EDA complexes with metal ions but form covalent bonds instead).[31] Many metal ions form complexes, which are often stable solids, with olefins, dienes (usually conjugated, but not always), and aromatic rings. The generally accepted picture of the bonding in these complexes,[32] first proposed by Dewar,[33] can be illustrated for the complex in which silver ion is bonded to an olefin. There are two bonds between the metal ion and the olefin. One of these



$$\begin{matrix} R_2C & \\ \| & Ag^+ \\ R_2C & \end{matrix}$$

is a σ bond formed by overlap of the filled π orbital of the olefin with the empty 5*s* orbital of the silver ion, and the other is a π bond formed by overlap of a filled 4*d* orbital of the silver ion and an empty antibonding π* orbital of the olefin. The bond is not from the silver ion to one atom but to the whole π center. The net result is that some electron density is transferred from the olefin to the metal ion.[34]

Among the compounds that form complexes with silver and other metals are benzene[35] (represented as in **1**) and cyclooctatetraene. When the metal involved has a coordination number greater than 1, more than one donor molecule participates. In many cases, this extra electron density comes from CO groups, which in these complexes are called carbonyl groups. Thus, benzenechromium tricarbonyl (**2**) is a stable compound.[36] Three arrows are shown, since all three aromatic bonding orbitals contribute some electron density to the metal. Metallocenes (p. 44) may be considered a special case of this type of complex, although the bonding in metallocenes is much stronger.

---

[30] For examples of EDA complexes that do not show charge-transfer spectra, see Dewar and Thompson, *Tetrahedron Suppl.* **7,** 97 (1966); Bentley and Dewar, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5043 (1967).

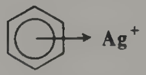
[31] For monographs, see Collman and Hegedus, "Principles and Applications of Organotransition Metal Chemistry," University Science Books, Mill Valley, Calif., 1980; Alper, "Transition Metal Organometallics in Organic Synthesis," 2 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1976, 1978; King, "Transition-Metal Organic Chemistry," Academic Press, New York, 1969; Green, "Organometallic Compounds," vol. 2, Methuen, London, 1968; Briegleb, "Elekronen-Donator-Acceptor-Komplexe," Springer-Verlag, Göttingen, 1961. For general reviews, see Churchill and Mason, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **5,** 93–135 (1967); Cais, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 1, pp. 335–385, Interscience, New York, 1964. Among the many reviews limited to certain classes of complexes are: transition metals–olefins and acetylenes, Pettit and Barnes, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **28,** 85–139 (1972); Quinn and Tsai, *Adv. Inorg. Chem. Radiochem.* **12,** 217–373 (1969); Pt- and Pd-olefins and acetylenes, Hartley, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 799–844 (1969); silver ion–olefins and aromatics, Beverwijk, van der Kerk, Leusink, and Noltes, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A,* **5,** 215–280 (1970); metals-substituted olefins, Jones, *Chem. Rev.* **68,** 785–806 (1968); transition metals–allylic compounds, Clarke, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **80,** 155–173 (1974); intramolecular complexes, Omae, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 889–902 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 902–915]; transition metals–arenes, Silverthorn, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **14,** 47–137 (1976); metals–organosilicon compounds, Haiduc and Popa, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **15,** 113–146 (1977); metals–carbocations, Pettit and Haynes, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 5, pp. 2263–2302, Wiley, New York, 1976; iron–dienes, Pettit and Emerson, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **1,** 1–40 (1964); metals–seven- and eight-membered rings, Bennett, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **4,** 353–387 (1966). For a list of review articles on this subject, see Bruce, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **10,** 273–346 (1972), pp. 317–321.

[32] For reviews, see Ittel and Ibers, *Advan. Organomet. Chem.* **14,** 33–61 (1976); Hartley, *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 163–190 (1973); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 596–606 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 657–667].

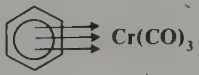
[33] Dewar, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* **18,** C79 (1951).

[34] For a discussion of how the nature of the metal ion affects the stability of the complex, see p. 229.

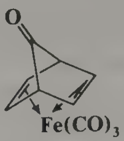
[35] For a monograph, see Zeiss, Wheatley, and Winkler, "Benzenoid–Metal Complexes," Ronald Press, New York, 1966. For a review, see Fischer and Fritz, *Angew. Chem.* **73,** 353–363 (1961).



1



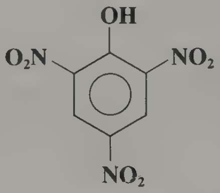
2



3

In a number of cases olefins that are too unstable for isolation have been isolated in the form of metal complexes. As example is norbornadienone, which was isolated in the form of its iron–tricarbonyl complex (**3**).[37] The free dienone spontaneously decomposes to carbon monoxide and benzene (reaction **7-39**).

2. *Complexes in which the acceptor is an organic molecule.* Picric acid, 1,3,5-trinitrobenzene, and similar polynitro compounds are the most important of these.[38] Picric acid forms addition compounds with many aromatic hydrocarbons, aromatic amines, aliphatic amines, olefins, and other compounds. These addition compounds are usually solids with definite melting points and are often used as derivatives of the compounds in question. They are called picrates, though they are not salts of picric acid but addition compounds. Unfortunately, salts of picric acid are also called picrates. Similar complexes are formed between phenols and quinones (quinhydrones).[39] Olefins that contain electron-withdrawing substituents also act as acceptor molecules as do certain anhydrides.[40] A particularly strong olefin acceptor is tetracyanoethylene.[41]



Picric acid

The bonding in these cases is more difficult to explain than in the previous case, and indeed no really satisfactory explanation is available.[42] The difficulty is that although the donor has a pair of electrons to contribute (both *n* donors and π donors are found here), the acceptor does not have a vacant orbital. Simple attraction of the dipole–induced-dipole type accounts for some of the bonding[43] but is too weak to explain the bonding in all cases;[44] e.g., nitromethane, with about the same dipole moment as nitrobenzene, forms much weaker complexes. Some other type of bonding clearly must also be present in many EDA complexes. The exact nature of this bonding, called *charge-transfer bonding*, is not well understood, but it presumably involves some kind of donor–acceptor interaction.

---

[36] Nicholls and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc.* 551 (1959). For a review of arene–transition-metal complexes, see Silverthorn, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **13,** 47–137 (1975).

[37] Landesberg and Sieczkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 972 (1971).

[38] For a review, see Parini, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 408–417 (1962); for a review of complexes in which the acceptor is an organic cation, see Kampar, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 107–118 (1982); also see Ref. 28.

[39] For a review of quinone complexes, see Foster and Foreman, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Quinonoid Compounds," pt. 1, pp. 257–333, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[40] For a review of anhydrides as acceptors, see Foster, in Patai, Ref. 2, pp. 175–212.

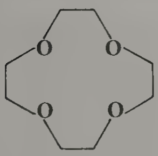
[41] For a review of complexes formed by tetracyanoethylene and other polycyano compounds, see Melby, in Rappoport, "The Chemistry of the Cyano Group," pp. 639–669, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[42] For reviews, see Bent, *Chem. Rev.* **68,** 587–648 (1968); Briegleb and Czekalla, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 401–413 (1960); Cauquis and Basselier, *Ann. Chim. (Paris)* [13] **7,** 745–761 (1962); Murrell, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **15,** 191–206 (1961).

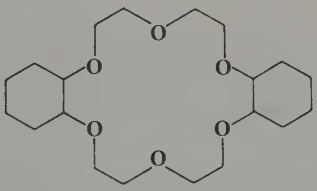
3. *Complexes in which the acceptor is* I_2, Br_2, *or even* Cl_2.[45] These molecules accept electrons from both *n* donors and π donors, presumably by expansion of the outer shell to hold 10 electrons. Such complexes are formed with amines, aromatic hydrocarbons, ketones, etc. This is the reason iodine is not its normal purple color in solvents such as acetone, ethanol, or benzene. Even in these cases the bonding is not simple. The authors of a review article state[46] that despite the presumption about expansion of the octet, . . . "a satisfactory theoretical interpretation of the observed geometry of the atomic arrangements associated with charge-transfer bonding [in these complexes] is still lacking." That there is charge transfer here seems certain, since the iodine–benzene complex has a dipole moment, though iodine and benzene are themselves nonpolar.[47]

Crown Ether Complexes and Cryptates[48]

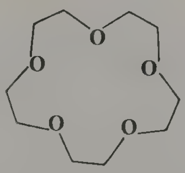
Crown ethers are large-ring compounds containing several oxygen atoms, usually in a regular pattern. Examples are 12-crown-4 (**4**),[49] dicyclohexano-18-crown-6 (**5**), and 15-crown-5 (**6**). These



4



5



6

---

[43] See, for example, Le Fèvre, Radford, and Stiles, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1297 (1968) and Ref. 30.

[44] Mulliken and Person, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3409 (1969).

[45] For reviews, see Hassel and Rømming, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **16,** 1–18 (1962); Andrews and Keefer, *Adv. Inorg. Chem. Radiochem.* **3,** 91–131 (1961).

[46] Hassel and Rømming, Ref. 45.

[47] For a discussion see Ratajczak and Orville-Thomas, *J. Mol. Struct.* **14,** 149, 155 (1972); Ratajczak, Mielke, and Orville-Thomas, *J. Mol. Struct.* **14,** 165 (1972).

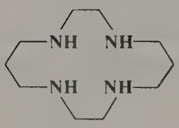
[48] For monographs, see Vögtle, "Host Guest Complex Chemistry I, II, and III" (*Top. Curr. Chem.* **98, 101, 121**), Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1981, 1982, 1984; De Jong and Reinhoudt, "Stability and Reactivity of Crown-Ether Complexes," Academic Press, New York, 1981; Izatt and Christensen, "Synthetic Multidentate Macrocyclic Compounds," Academic Press, New York, 1978. For reviews, see Gutsche, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 161–170 (1983); Tabushi and Yamamura, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **113,** 145–182 (1983); Stoddart, *Prog. Macrocyclic Chem.* **2,** 173–250 (1981); De Jong and Reinhoudt, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **17,** 279–433 (1980); Vögtle and Weber, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pp. 59–156, Wiley, New York, 1980; Poonia, *Prog. Macrocyclic Chem.* **1,** 115–155 (1979); Reinhoudt and De Jong, *Prog. Macrocyclic Chem.* **1,** 157–217 (1979); Cram and Cram, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 8–14 (1978); *Science,* **183,** 803–809 (1974); Knipe, *J. Chem. Educ.* **53,** 618–622 (1976); Gokel and Durst, *Synthesis* 168–184 (1976); *Aldrichimica Acta* **9,** 3–12 (1976); Lehn, *Struct. Bonding (Berlin)* **16,** 1–69 (1973); Christensen, Eatough, and Izatt, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 351–384 (1974); Pedersen and Frensdorff, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 16–25 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 16–26]. For a monograph on the synthesis of crown ethers, see Gokel and Korzeniowski, "Macrocyclic Polyether Synthesis," Springer–Verlag, New York, 1982. For reviews, see Gokel, Dishong, Schultz, and Gatto, *Synthesis* 997–1012 (1982); Bradshaw and Stott, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 461–510 (1980); Laidler and Stoddart, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pp. 3–42, Wiley, New York, 1980. For reviews of acyclic molecules with similar properties, see Vögtle, *Chimia* **33,** 239–251 (1979); Vögtle and Weber, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 753–776 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 813–837]. For a review of cryptands that hold two positive ions, see Lehn, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 2441–2459 (1980).

[49] Cook, Caruso, Byrne, Bowers, Speck, and Liotta, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4029 (1974).

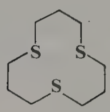
compounds have the property[50] of forming complexes with positive ions, generally metallic ions (though not usually ions of transition metals) or ammonium and substituted ammonium ions. In most cases the ions are held tightly in the center of the cavity. Each crown ether binds different ions, depending on the size of the cavity. For example, **4** binds Li^+[51] but not K^+, while **5** binds K^+ but not Li^+.[52] Similarly, **5** binds Hg^{2+} but not Cd^{2+} or Zn^{2+}, and Sr^{2+} but not Ca^{2+}.[53] The complexes can frequently be prepared as well-defined sharp-melting solids.

Apart from their obvious utility in separating mixtures of cations, crown ethers have found much use in organic synthesis (see the discussion on p. 321). Chiral crown ethers have been used for the resolution of racemic mixtures (p. 105). Although crown ethers are most frequently used to complex cations, amines, phenols, and other neutral molecules have also been complexed[54] (see p. 115 for the complexing of anions).

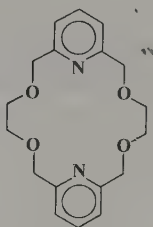
Macrocycles containing nitrogen or sulfur atoms,[55] e.g., **7** and **8**,[56] have similar properties, as do those containing more than one kind of hetero atom, e.g., **9**,[57] **10**,[58] or **11**.[59] Bicyclic molecules like **10** can surround the enclosed ion in three dimensions, binding it even more tightly than the monocyclic crown ethers. Bicyclics and cycles of higher order[60] are called *cryptands* and the complexes formed are called *cryptates* (monocylics are also sometimes called cryptands). The tricyclic cryptand **11** has ten binding sites and a spherical cavity.[59] Another molecule with a spherical cavity (though not a cryptand) is **12**, which complexes Li^+ and Na^+ (preferentially Na^+), but not K^+, Mg^{2+}, or Ca^{2+}.[61] Molecules such as these, whose cavities can be occupied only by spherical entities, have been called *spherands*.[61]



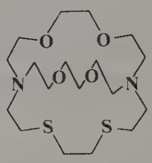
7



8



9



10

---

[50] Discovered by Pedersen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2495, 7017 (1967).

[51] Anet, Krane, Dale, Daasvatn, and Kristiansen, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **27,** 3395 (1973).

[52] Izatt, Nelson, Rytting, Haymore, and Christensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1619 (1971).

[53] Kimura, Iwashima, Ishimori, and Hamaguchi, *Chem. Lett.* 563 (1977).

[54] See, for example, Vögtle and Müller, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 3179 (1981); Elbasyouny, Brügge, von Deuten, Dickel, Knöchel, Koch, Kopf, Melzer, and Rudolph, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6568 (1983); Watson, Galloy, Grossie, Vögtle, and Müller, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 347 (1984).

[55] For a review of sulfur-containing macroheterocycles, see Voronkov and Knutov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 856–871 (1982).

[56] Rosen and Busch, *Inorg. Chem.* **9,** 262 (1970).

[57] Dietrich, Lehn, and Sauvage, *Chem. Commun.* 1055 (1970).

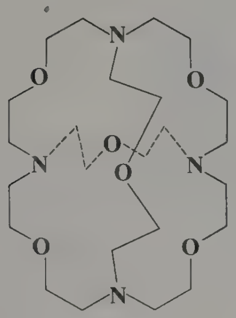
[58] Newcomb, Gokel, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6810 (1974).

[59] Graf and Lehn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5022 (1975).

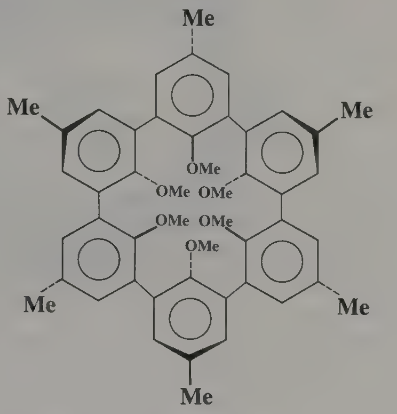
[60] For reviews, see Parker, *Adv. Inorg. Radiochem.* **27,** 1–26 (1983); Lehn, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 49–57 (1978); *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 857–870 (1977).

[61] Cram, Kaneda, Helgeson, and Lein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6752 (1979); *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 948 (1979); Trueblood, Knobler, Maverick, Helgeson, Brown, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5594 (1981); Cram and Dicker, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1219 (1982).

The bonding in these complexes is the result of ion–dipole attractions between the hetero atoms and the positive ions.



11



12

Inclusion Compounds[62]

This type of addition compound is different from either the EDA complexes or the crown ether type of complexes previously discussed. One of the compounds, called the *host*, forms a crystal lattice in which there are spaces large enough for the second compound, called the *guest*, to fit. There is no bonding between the host and the guest except van der Waals forces. There are two main types, depending on the shape of the space. The spaces in *inclusion compounds* are in the shape of long tunnels or channels, while the other type, often called *clathrate*, or *cage compounds* have spaces that are completely enclosed. In both types the guest molecule must fit into the space and potential guests that are too large or too small will not go into the lattice, so that the addition compound will not form.

The most important host molecule among the inclusion compounds is urea. Ordinary crystalline urea is tetragonal, but when a guest is present, urea crystallizes in a hexagonal lattice, containing the guest in long channels (see p. 80).[63] The hexagonal type of lattice can form only when a guest molecule is present, showing that van der Waals forces between the host and the guest, while small, are essential to the stability of the structure. The diameter of the channel is about 5 Å, and which molecules can be guests is dependent only on their shapes and sizes and not on any electronic or chemical effects. For example, octane and 1-bromooctane are suitable guests for urea, but 2-bromooctane, 2-methylheptane, and 2-methyloctane are not. Also both dibutyl maleate and dibutyl fumarate are guests; neither diethyl maleate or diethyl fumarate is a guest, but dipropyl fumarate is a guest and dipropyl maleate is not.[64] In these complexes, there is usually no integral molar ratio (though by chance there may be). For example, the octane–urea ratio is 1:6.73.[65]

The complexes are solids but are not useful as derivatives, since they melt, with decomposition

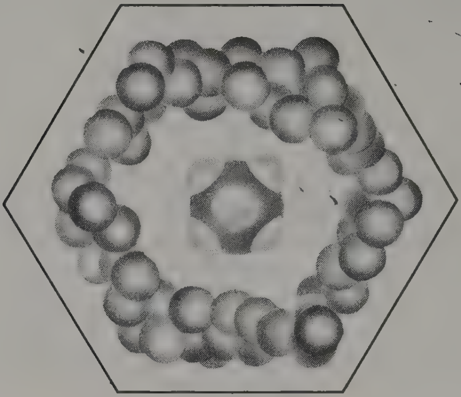
---

[62] For a review, see Cramer, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **5,** 143–164 (1955).

[63] This picture is taken from a paper by Montel, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1013 (1955).

[64] Radell, Connolly, and Cosgrove, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2960 (1961).

[65] Redlich, Gable, Dunlop, and Millar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 4153 (1950).



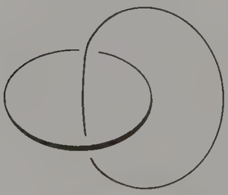
of the complex, at the melting point of urea. They are useful, however, in separating isomers that would be quite difficult to separate otherwise. Thiourea also forms inclusion compounds although with channels of larger diameter, so that *n*-alkanes cannot be guests but, for example, 2-bromooctane, cyclohexane, and chloroform readily fit.

Clathrate Compounds[66]

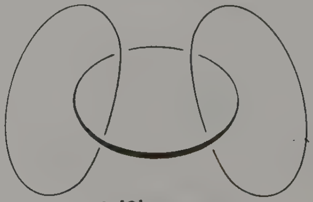
The most important host for this type of compound is hydroquinone. Three molecules, held together by hydrogen bonding, make a cage in which fits one molecule of guest. Typical guests are methanol (but not ethanol), SO_2, CO_2, and argon (but not neon). In contrast to the inclusion compounds, the crystal lattices here can exist partially empty. Another host is water. Usually six molecules of water form the cage and many guest molecules, among them Cl_2 and methyl iodide, can fit. The water clathrates, which are solids, can normally be kept only at low temperatures; at room temperature, they decompose.[67]

Catenanes and Rotaxanes[68]

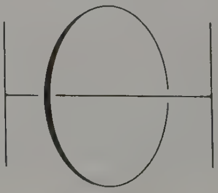
These compounds contain two or more independent portions that are not bonded to each other by any valence forces but nevertheless must remain linked. *Catenanes* are made up of two or more



A [2]catenane



A [3]catenane



A rotaxane

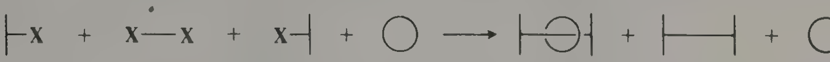
---

[66] For reviews, see MacNicol, McKendrick, and Wilson, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **7,** 65–87 (1978); Child, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **18,** 321–346 (1964).

[67] For reviews of water clathrates, see Cady, *J. Chem. Educ.* **60,** 915–918 (1983); Byk and Fomina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 469–491 (1968).

[68] For a monograph, see Schill, "Cantenanes, Rotaxanes, and Knots," Academic Press, New York, 1971. For a review, see Schill, in Chiurdoglu, "Conformational Analysis," pp. 229–239, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

rings held together as links in a chain, while in *rotaxanes* a linear portion is threaded through a ring and cannot get away because of bulky end groups. Catenanes and rotaxanes can be prepared by statistical methods or directed syntheses. An example of a statistical synthesis of a rotaxane is a reaction where a compound **A** is bonded at two positions to another compound **B** in the presence of a large ring **C**. It is hoped that some **A** molecules would by chance be threaded through **C** before combining with the two **B** molecules, so that some rotaxane (**D**) would be formed along with the normal product **E**.[69] For examples of statistical syntheses of catenanes, see p. 1114. In a directed synthesis, the separate parts of the molecule are held together by other bonds that are later cleaved. An example of a directed synthesis of a catenane is given on p. 1115.[70] Only a few syntheses of cantenanes or rotaxanes have been reported by either the statistical or the directed approach.[71]



B **A** **B** **C** **D** **E** **C**

---

[69] Schemes of this type were carried out by Harrison and Harrison, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5723 (1967) and Ogino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1303 (1981). For a different kind of statistical synthesis of a rotaxane, see Harrison, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 231 (1972); *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 301 (1974). See also Agam, Graiver, and Zilkha, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5206 (1976).

[70] For a directed synthesis of a rotaxane, see Schill and Zollenkopf, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **721,** 53 (1969); Schill, Zürcher, and Vetter, *Chem. Ber.* **106,** 228 (1973).

[71] For a discussion, see Ref. 68.

4

STEREOCHEMISTRY

In the previous chapters we discussed electron distribution in organic molecules. In this chapter we discuss the three-dimensional structure of organic compounds.[1] The structure may be such that *stereoisomerism*[2] is possible. Stereoisomers are compounds made up of the same atoms bonded by the same sequence of bonds but having different three-dimensional structures which are not interchangeable. These three-dimensional structures are called *configurations*.

OPTICAL ACTIVITY AND CHIRALITY

Any material that rotates the plane of polarized light is said to be *optically active*. If a pure compound is optically active, the molecule is nonsuperimposable on its mirror image. If a molecule is superimposable on its mirror image, the compound does not rotate the plane of polarized light; it is *optically inactive*. The property of nonsuperimposability of an object on its mirror image is called *chirality*. If a molecule is not superimposable on its mirror image, it is *chiral*. If it is superimposable on its mirror image, it is *achiral*. Although the relationship between optical activity and chirality is empirical, it is absolute. No exceptions are known, and many thousands of cases have been found in accord with it (however, see p. 86). The ultimate criterion, then, for optical activity is chirality (nonsuperimposability on the mirror image). This is both a necessary and a sufficient condition.[3] This fact has been used as evidence for the structure determination of many compounds, and historically the tetrahedral nature of carbon was deduced from the hypothesis that the relationship might be true.

If a molecule is nonsuperimposable on its mirror image, the mirror image must be a different molecule, since superimposability is the same as identity. In each case of optical activity of a pure compound there are two and only two isomers, called *enantiomers* (sometimes *enantiomorphs*), which differ in structure only in the left- and right-handedness of their orientations (Figure 1). Enantiomers have identical physical and chemical properties except in two important respects:

1. They rotate the plane of polarized light in opposite directions, though in equal amounts. The isomer that rotates the plane to the left (counterclockwise) is called the *levo isomer* and is designated

---

[1] For books on this subject, see Nógrádi, "Stereochemistry," Pergamon, New York, 1981; Kagan, "Organic Stereochemistry," Wiley, New York, 1979; Testa, "Principles of Organic Stereochemistry," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1979; Izumi and Tai, "Stereo-Differentiating Reactions," Academic Press, New York, Kodansha Ltd., Tokyo, 1977; Natta and Farina, "Stereochemistry," Harper and Row, New York, 1972; Eliel, "Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962, "Elements of Stereochemistry," Wiley, New York, 1969; Mislow, "Introduction to Stereochemistry," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1965. Two excellent treatments of stereochemistry that, though not recent, contain much that is valid and useful, are Wheland, "Advanced Organic Chemistry," 3d ed., pp. 195–514, Wiley, New York, 1960; Shriner, Adams, and Marvel, in Gilman, "Advanced Organic Chemistry," vol. 1, 2d ed., pp. 214–488, Wiley, New York, 1943.

[2] The IUPAC 1974 Recommendations, Section E, Fundamental Stereochemistry, give definitions for most of the terms used in this chapter, as well as rules for naming the various kinds of stereoisomers. They can be found in *Pure Appl. Chem.* **45,** 13–30 (1976), and in "Nomenclature of Organic Chemistry," Pergamon, New York, 1979 (the "Blue Book").

[3] For a discussion of the conditions for optical activity in liquids and crystals, see O'Loane, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 41–61 (1980).

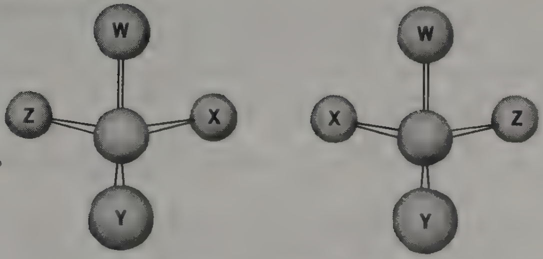


Figure 1 Enantiomers.

$(-)$, while the one that rotates the plane to the right (clockwise) is called the *dextro isomer* and is designated $(+)$.

2. They react at different rates with other chiral compounds. These rates may be so close together that the distinction is practically useless, or they may be so far apart that one enantiomer undergoes the reaction at a convenient rate while the other does not react at all. This is the reason that many compounds are biologically active while their enantiomers are not. Enantiomers react at the same rate with achiral compounds.

In general, it may be said that enantiomers have identical properties in a symmetrical environment, but their properties may differ in an unsymmetrical environment.[4] Besides the important differences previously noted, enantiomers may react at different rates with achiral molecules if an optically active *catalyst* is present; they may have different solubilities in an optically active *solvent;* they may have different indexes of refraction or absorption spectra *when examined with circularly polarized light*, etc. In most cases these differences are too small to be useful and are often too small to be measured.

Although pure compounds are always optically active if they are composed of chiral molecules, mixtures of equal amounts of enantiomers are optically inactive since the equal and opposite rotations cancel. Such mixtures are called *racemic mixtures*[5] or *racemates*.[6] Their properties are not always the same as those of the individual enantiomers. The properties in the gaseous or liquid state or in solution usually are the same, since such a mixture is nearly ideal, but properties involving the solid state,[7] such as melting points, solubilities, and heats of fusion, are often different. Thus racemic tartaric acid has a melting point of 204–206°C and a solubility in water at 20°C of 206 g/liter, while for the $(+)$ or the $(-)$ enantiomer, the corresponding figures are 170°C and 1390 g/liter. The separation of a racemic mixture into its two optically active components is called *resolution*.

Dependence of Rotation on Conditions of Measurement

The *amount* of rotation α is not a constant for a given enantiomer; it depends on the length of the sample vessel, the temperature, the solvent[8] and concentration (for solutions), the pressure (for gases), and the wavelength of light. Of course, rotations determined for the same compound under the same conditions are identical. The length of the vessel and the concentration or pressure determine the number of molecules in the path of the beam and α is linear with this. Therefore, a number is defined, called the *specific rotation* [α], which is

---

[4] For a review of discriminating interactions between chiral molecules, see Craig and Mellor, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **63**, 1–48 (1976).

[5] Strictly speaking, the term *racemic mixture* applies only when the mixture of molecules is present as separate solid phases, but in this book we shall use this expression to refer to any equimolar mixture of enantiomeric molecules, liquid, solid, gaseous, or in solution.

[6] For a monograph on the properties of racemates and their resolution, see Jacques, Collet, and Wilen, "Enantiomers, Racemates, and Resolutions," Wiley, New York, 1981.

[7] For a discussion, see Wynberg and Lorand, *J. Org. Chem.* **46**, 2538 (1981), and references cited therein.

[8] A good example is found in Kumata, Furukawa, and Fueno, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43**, 3920 (1970).

$$[\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{lc} \text{ for solutions} \qquad [\alpha] = \frac{\alpha}{ld} \text{ for pure compounds}$$

where α is the observed rotation, l is the cell length in decimeters, c is the concentration in grams per milliliter, and d is the density in the same units. The specific rotation is usually given along with the temperature and wavelength, in this manner: $[\alpha]_{546}^{25}$. These conditions must be duplicated for comparison of rotations, since there is no way to put them into a simple formula. The expression $[\alpha]_D$ means that the rotation was measured with sodium D light; i.e., $\lambda = 589$ nm. The molar rotation $[M]_\lambda^t$ is the specific rotation times the molecular weight divided by 100.

It must be emphasized that although the value of α changes with conditions, the molecular structure is unchanged. This is true even when the changes in conditions are sufficient to change not only the amount of rotation but even the direction. Thus one of the enantiomers of aspartic acid, when dissolved in water, has $[\alpha]_D$ equal to +4.36° at 20°C and −1.86° at 90°C, though the molecular structure is unchanged. A consequence of such cases is that there is a temperature at which there is *no* rotation (in this case 75°C). Of course, the other enantiomer exhibits opposite behavior. Other cases are known in which the direction of rotation is reversed by changes in wavelength, solvent, and even concentration.[9] In theory, there should be no change in [α] with concentration, since this is taken into account in the formula, but associations, dissociations, and solute–solvent interactions often cause nonlinear behavior. For example, $[\alpha]_D^{24}$ for (−)-2-ethyl-2-methylsuccinic acid in $CHCl_3$ is −5.0° at $c = 16.5$, −0.7° at $c = 10.6$, +1.7° at $c = 8.5$, and +18.9° at $c = 2.2$.[10]

It should be noted that any single reading of the polarimeter must be ambiguous. A reading of, say, 38° could also be 218° or 398° or any number of the form 38 ± 180n degrees, where n is any integer. However, it is relatively simple to determine the true reading by measuring another sample of the substance at a different concentration or cell length. For example, if the correct reading is 38°, a solution of one-fifth the concentration will give a value of 7.6°. If the correct reading is 218°, the new reading will be 43.6°, etc.

What Kinds of Molecules Display Optical Activity?

Although the ultimate criterion is, of course, nonsuperimposability on the mirror image (chirality), other tests may be used that are simpler to apply but not always accurate. One such test is the presence of a *plane of symmetry*. A plane of symmetry[11] (also called a *mirror plane*) is a plane passing through an object such that the part on one side of the plane is the exact reflection of the part on the other side (the plane acting as a mirror). *Compounds possessing such a plane are always optically inactive*, but there are a few cases known in which compounds lack a plane of symmetry and are nevertheless inactive. Such compounds possess a *center of symmetry*, such as in α-truxillic acid (**1**), or an *alternating axis of symmetry* as in **2**.[12] A center of symmetry[11] is a point within an object such that a straight line drawn from any part or element of the object to the center and extended an equal distance on the other side encounters an equal part or element. An alternating axis of symmetry[11] of order n is an axis such that when an object containing such an axis is rotated by 360°/n about the axis and then reflection is effected across a plane at right angles to the axis, a new object is obtained that is indistinguishable from the original one.

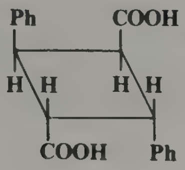
---

[9] For examples, see Shriner, Adams, and Marvel, Ref. 1, pp. 291–301.

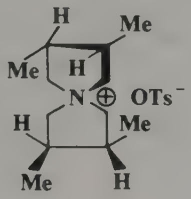
[10] Krow and Hill, *Chem. Commun.* 430 (1968).

[11] The definitions of plane, center, and alternating axis of symmetry are taken from Eliel, "Elements of Stereochemistry," Ref. 1, pp. 6, 7. See also Lemière and Alderweireldt, *J. Org. Chem.* **45**, 4175 (1980).

[12] McCasland and Proskow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77**, 4688 (1955).



1

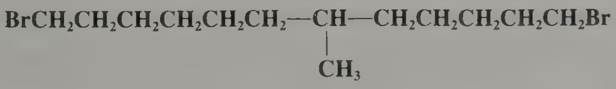


2

A molecule that contains just one *chiral carbon atom* (defined as a carbon atom connected to four different groups; also called an *asymmetric carbon atom*) is always chiral and hence optically active. As seen in Figure 1, such a molecule cannot have a plane of symmetry, whatever the identity of W, X, Y, and Z, as long as they are all different. However, the presence of a chiral carbon is neither a necessary not a sufficient condition for optical activity, since optical activity may be present in molecules with no chiral atom and since some molecules with two or more chiral carbon atoms are superimposable on their mirror images and hence inactive. Examples of such compounds will be discussed subsequently.

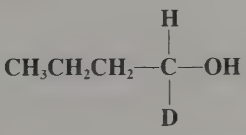
Chiral compounds may be classified into several categories.

1. *Compounds within a chiral carbon atom.* If there is only one such atom, the molecule must be optically active. This is so no matter how slight the differences are among the four groups. For example, optical activity is present in



$$BrCH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}\text{—}CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2Br$$

Optical activity has been detected even in cases[13] such as 1-butanol-1-*d*, where one group is hydrogen and another deuterium.[14]



$$CH_3CH_2CH_2\text{—}\overset{\displaystyle H}{\overset{|}{\underset{\displaystyle D}{\underset{|}{C}}}}\text{—}OH$$

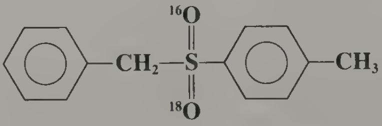
However, the amount of rotation is greatly dependent on the nature of the four groups, in general increasing with increasing differences in polarizabilities among the groups. Alkyl groups have very similar polarizabilities[15] and the optical activity of 5-ethyl-5-propylundecane is too low to be measureable at any wavelength between 280 and 580 nm.[16]

---

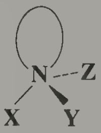
[13] For reviews of compounds where chirality is due to the presence of deuterium or tritium, see Barth and Djerassi, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 4123–4142 (1981); Arigoni and Eliel, *Top. Stereochem.* **4,** 127–243 (1969); Verbit, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 51–127 (1970).

[14] Streitwieser and Schaeffer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 5597 (1956).

2. *Compounds with other quadrivalent chiral atoms.*[17] Any molecule containing an atom that has four bonds pointing to the corners of a tetrahedron will be optically active if the four groups are different. Among atoms in this category are Si,[17a] Ge, Sn,[18] and N (in quaternary salts or N-oxides). In sulfones the sulfur bonds tetrahedrally, but since two of the groups are always oxygen, no chirality normally results. However, the preparation[19] of an optically active sulfone in which one oxygen is ^{16}O and the other ^{18}O illustrates the point that slight differences in groups are all that is necessary.



3. *Compounds with tervalent chiral atoms.* Atoms with pyramidal bonding[20] might be expected to give rise to optical activity if the atom is connected to three different groups, since the unshared pair of electrons is analogous to a fourth group, necessarily different from the others. For example, a secondary or tertiary amine where X, Y, and Z are different would be expected to be chiral and



thus resolvable. Many attempts have been made to resolve such compounds, but until recently all of them failed because of the *umbrella effect* (also called *pyramidal inversion*).[21] The umbrella effect is a rapid oscillation of the unshared pair from one side of the XYZ plane to the other, thus converting the molecule into its enantiomer. For ammonia there are 2 × 10^{11} inversions every second. The inversion is less rapid in substituted ammonias[22] (amines, amides, etc.). Two types of nitrogen atom invert particularly slowly, namely, a nitrogen atom in a three-membered ring and a nitrogen atom connected to another atom bearing an unshared pair. Even in such compounds, however, for many years pyramidal inversion proved too rapid to permit isolation of separate isomers. This goal was accomplished only when compounds were synthesized in which both features are combined: a nitrogen atom in a three-membered ring connected to an atom containing an unshared pair. For example, the two isomers of 1-chloro-2-methylaziridine (**3** and **4**) were separated and do not interconvert at room temperature.[23] In suitable cases this barrier to inversion can result in compounds that are optically active solely because of a chiral tervalent nitrogen atom. For example, **5** is one of several chiral oxaziridines, both enantiomers of which have been prepared.[24]

---

[15] For a discussion of optical activity in paraffins, see Brewster, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 1807 (1974).

[16] Wynberg, Hekkert, Houbiers, and Bosch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2635 (1965); Wynberg and Hulshof, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 1775 (1974); Ten Hoeve and Wynberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2754 (1980).

[17] For reviews of compounds with asymmetric atoms other than carbon, see Aylett, *Prog. Stereochem.* **4,** 213–271 (1969); Belloli, *J. Chem. Educ.* **46,** 640 (1969); Sokolov and Reutov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **34,** 1–12 (1965).

[17a] For a review of stereochemistry of silicon, see Corriu, Guérin, and Moreau, *Top. Stereochem,* **15,** 43–198 (1984).

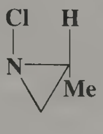
[18] For reviews of the stereochemistry of Sn and Ge compounds, see Gielen, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **104,** 57–105 (1982); *Top. Stereochem.* **12,** 217–251 (1981).

[19] Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5741 (1963); Sabol and Andersen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3603 (1969); Annunziata, Cinquini, and Colonna, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2057 (1972).

[20] For a review of the stereochemistry at trivalent nitrogen, see Raban and Greenblatt, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 1, pp. 53–83, Wiley, New York, 1982.

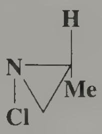
[21] For reviews of the mechanism of, and the effect of structure on, pyramidal inversion, see Lambert, *Top. Stereochem.* **6,** 19–105 (1971); Rauk, Allen, and Mislow, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 400–414 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 453–468]; Lehn, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **15,** 311–377 (1970); Mislow, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **25,** 549–562 (1968).

[22] For example, see Andose, Lehn, Mislow, and Wagner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4050 (1970); Stackhouse, Baechler, and Mislow, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3437, 3441 (1971).



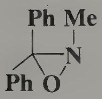
trans

3

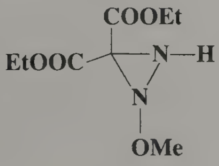


cis

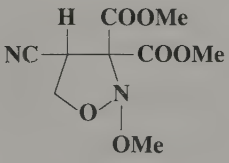
4



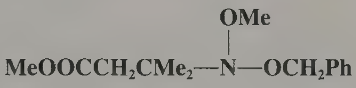
5



6



7



$$\mathrm{MeOOCCH_2CMe_2{-}\overset{\displaystyle OMe}{\overset{|}{N}}{-}OCH_2Ph}$$

8

Note that in this case too, the nitrogen is connected to an atom with an unshared pair. Conformational stability has also been demonstrated for diaziridines, e.g., **6**,[25] and 1,2-oxazolidines, e.g., **7**,[26] even though in this case the ring is five-membered. However, note that the nitrogen atom in **7** is connected to two oxygen atoms.

Another compound in which nitrogen is connected to two oxygens is **8**. In this case there is no ring at all, but it has been resolved into (+) and (−) enantiomers ($[\alpha]_D^{20} \approx \pm 3°$).[27] This compound and several similar ones reported in the same paper are the first examples of compounds whose optical activity is solely due to an acyclic tervalent chiral nitrogen atom. However, **8** is not optically stable and racemizes at 20°C with a half-life of 1.22 hr. A similar compound (**8**, with OCH_2Ph replaced by OEt) has a longer half-life—37.5 hr at 20°C.

---

[23] Brois, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 506, 508 (1968). See also Lehn and Wagner, *Chem. Commun.* 148 (1968); Felix and Eschenmoser, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 224 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 197]; Kostyanovskii, Samoilova, and Chervin, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 2705 (1968); *Tetrahedron Lett.* 719 (1969); Kostyanovskii, Markov, and Gella, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1301 (1972). For a review, see Brois, *Trans. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* **31,** 931–951 (1969).

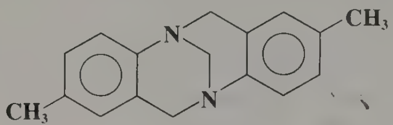
[24] Boyd, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4561 (1968); Boyd and Graham, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2648 (1969); Boyd, Spratt, and Jerina, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2650 (1969); Montanari, Moretti, and Torre, *Chem. Commun.* 1694 (1968), 1086 (1969). See also Mannschreck, Linss, and Seitz, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **727,** 224 (1969); Brückner, Forni, Moretti, and Torre, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1218 (1982). For a review of oxaziridines, see Schmitz, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **24,** 63–107 (1979).

[25] Rudchenko, D'yachenko, Zolotoi, Atovmyan, Chervin, and Kostyanovskii, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 961 (1982) and references cited therein. See also Mannschreck, Radeglia, Gründemann, and Ohme, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 1778 (1967).

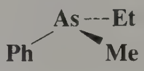
[26] Müller and Eschenmoser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **52,** 1823 (1969); Dobler, Dunitz, and Hawley, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **52,** 1831 (1969).

[27] Kostyanovskii, Rudchenko, Shtamburg, Chervin, and Nasibov, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 4245 (1981); Kostyanovskii and Rudchenko, *Doklad. Chem.* **263,** 121 (1982).

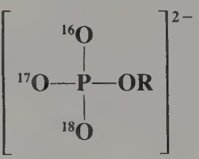
In molecules in which the nitrogen atom is at a bridgehead, pyramidal inversion is of course prevented. Such molecules, if chiral, can be resolved even without the presence of the two structural features noted above. For example, optically active **9** (Tröger's base) has been prepared.[28] Phosphorus inverts more slowly and arsenic still more slowly.[29] Nonbridgehead phosphorus, arsenic, and antimony compounds have also been resolved, e.g., **10.**[30] This has even been done for phosphate esters that are chiral because the three oxygens are isotopically distinct.[30a] Sulfur exhibits pyramidal bonding in sulfoxides, sulfinic esters, sulfonium salts, and sulfites. Examples of each of these have been resolved.[31] An interesting example is (+)-Ph$^{12}CH_2SO^{13}CH_2$Ph, a sulfoxide in which the two alkyl groups differ only in ^{12}C versus ^{13}C but which has $[\alpha]_{280} = +0.71°$.[32]



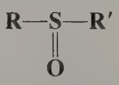
9



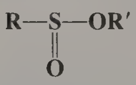
10



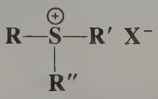
$$\left[\begin{array}{c} {}^{16}\text{O} \\ | \\ {}^{17}\text{O}\text{—P—OR} \\ | \\ {}^{18}\text{O} \end{array}\right]^{2-}$$



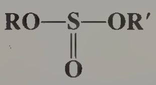
$$\text{R—}\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{S}}\text{—R}'$$



$$\text{R—}\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{S}}\text{—OR}'$$

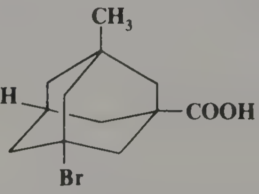


$$\text{R—}\underset{\underset{\text{R}''}{|}}{\overset{\oplus}{\text{S}}}\text{—R}'\ \text{X}^-$$



$$\text{RO—}\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{S}}\text{—OR}'$$

4. *Suitably substituted adamantanes.* Adamantanes bearing four different substituents at the bridgehead positions are chiral and optically active and **11,** for example, has been resolved.[33] This



11

---

[28] Prelog and Wieland, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **27,** 1127 (1944).

[29] For reviews, see Yambushev and Savin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 582–595 (1979); Gallagher and Jenkins, *Top. Stereochem.* **3,** 1–96 (1968); Horner, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 225–244 (1964); Kamai and Usacheva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 601–613 (1966).

[30] Horner and Fuchs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 203 (1962).

[30a] Abbott, Jones, Weinman, and Knowles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2558 (1978); Cullis and Lowe, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 512 (1978). For a review, see Lowe, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 244–251 (1983).

[31] For reviews of chiral organosulfur compounds, see Mikołajczyk and Drabowicz, *Top. Stereochem.* **13,** 333–468 (1982); Andersen, in Stirling, "The Chemistry of the Sulphonium Group," pt. 1, pp. 229–312, Wiley, New York, 1981.

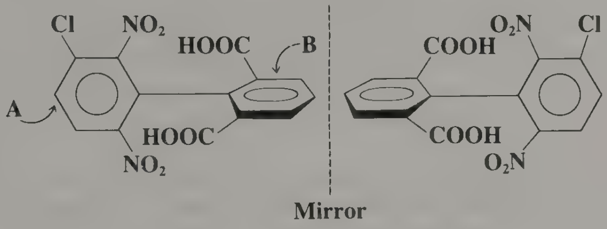
[32] Andersen, Colonna, and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 645 (1973).

[33] Hamill and McKervey, *Chem. Commun.* 864 (1969); Applequist, Rivers, and Applequist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5705 (1969).

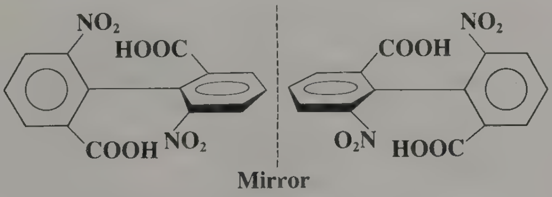
type of molecule is a kind of expanded tetrahedron and has the same symmetry properties as any other tetrahedron.

5. *Restricted rotation giving rise to perpendicular disymmetric planes.* Certain compounds that do not contain asymmetric atoms are nevertheless chiral because they contain a structure that can be schematically represented as in Figure 2. For these compounds we can draw two perpendicular planes neither of which can be bisected by a plane of symmetry. If either plane could be so bisected, the molecule would be superimposable on its mirror image, since such a plane would be a plane of symmetry. These points will be illustrated by examples.

Biphenyls containing four large groups in the ortho positions cannot freely rotate about the central bond because of steric hindrance.[34] In such compounds the two rings are in perpendicular planes. If either or both of the rings are symmetrical, the molecule has a plane of symmetry. For example, consider:



Ring B is symmetrical. A plane drawn perpendicular to ring B contains all the atoms and groups in ring A; hence it is a plane of symmetry and the compound is achiral. On the other hand, consider:



There is no plane of symmetry and the molecule is chiral; many such compounds have been resolved. It is important to note that if *either* ring is symmetrical, the molecule has a plane of

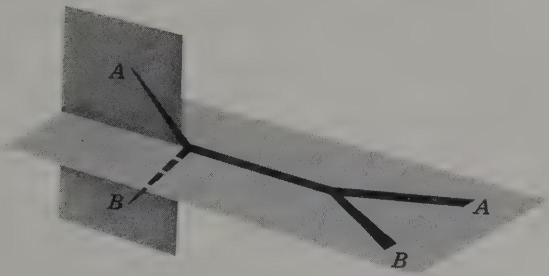


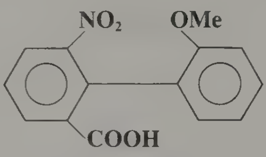
Figure 2 Perpendicular disymmetric planes.

---

[34] When the two rings of a biphenyl are connected by a bridge, rotation is of course impossible. For a review of such compounds, see Hall, *Prog. Stereochem.* **4**, 1–42 (1969).

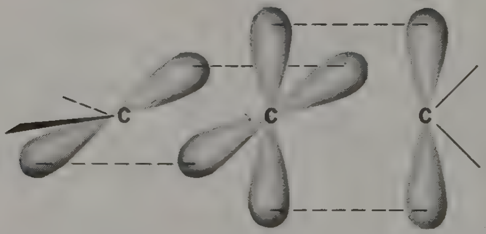
symmetry and is achiral, and that groups in the para position cannot cause lack of symmetry. Isomers that can be separated only because rotation about single bonds is prevented or greatly slowed are called *atropisomers*.[34a]

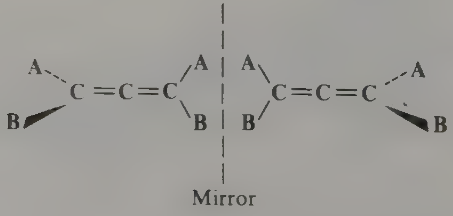
It is not always necessary for four large ortho groups to be present in order for rotation to be prevented. Compounds with three and even two groups, if large enough, can have hindered rotation and, if suitably substituted, can be resolved. An example is biphenyl-2,2′-bissulfonic acid.[35] In some cases, the groups may be large enough to slow rotation greatly but not to prevent it completely. In such cases, optically active compounds can be prepared that slowly racemize on standing. Thus, **12** loses its optical activity with a half-life of 9.4 min in ethanol at 25°C.[36] Compounds with greater rotational stability can often be racemized if higher temperatures are used to supply the energy necessary to force the groups past each other. Many analogous cases are known, where optical activity arises from hindered rotation of other types of aromatic ring, e.g., binaphthyls, bipyrryls, etc.



12

In allenes the central carbon is *sp*-bonded. The remaining two *p* orbitals are perpendicular to each other and each overlaps with the *p* orbital of one adjacent carbon atom, forcing the two remaining bonds of each carbon into perpendicular planes. Thus allenes fall into the category represented by Figure 2:



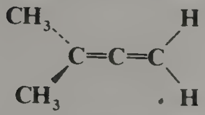


[34a] For a review, see Ōki, *Top. Stereochem.* **14**, 1–81 (1983).

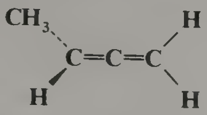
[35] Patterson and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **57**, 762 (1935).

[36] Stoughton and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **54**, 4426 (1932).

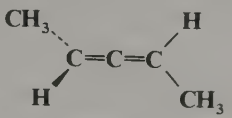
Like biphenyls, allenes are chiral only if both sides are dissymmetric.[37] For example,



Inactive



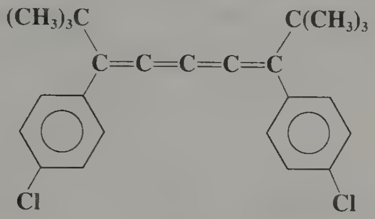
Inactive



Active

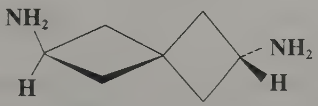
These cases are completely different from the cis–trans isomerism of compounds with one double bond (p. 109). In the latter cases the four groups are all in one plane, the isomers are not enantiomers, and neither is chiral, while in allenes the groups are in two perpendicular planes and the isomers are a pair of optically active enantiomers.

When three, five, or any *odd* number of cumulative double bonds exist, orbital overlap causes the four groups to occupy one plane and cis–trans isomerism is observed. When four, six, or any *even* number of cumulative double bonds exist, the situation is analogous to that in the allenes and optical activity is possible. **13** has been resolved.[38]

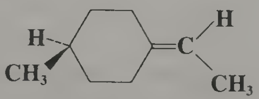


13

Among other types of compounds that contain the system illustrated in Figure 2 and that are similarly chiral if both sides are dissymmetric are spiranes, e.g., **14**, and compounds with exocyclic double bonds, e.g., **15**.



14



15

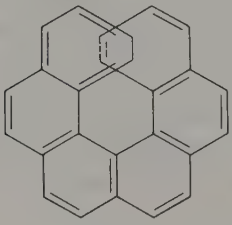
6. *Chirality due to a helical shape.* Several compounds have been prepared that are chiral because they have a shape that is actually helical and can therefore be left- or right-handed in orientation. The entire molecule is usually less than one full turn of the helix, but this does not alter the possibility of left- and right-handedness. An example is hexahelicene[39] (**16**), in which one side of the molecule must lie above the other because of crowding.[40] Another is *trans*-cyclooctene (**17**) (see p. 111), in which the carbon chain must lie above the plane of the double bond on one side and below it on the other.[41]

---

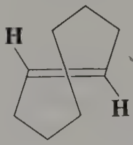
[37] For reviews of allene chirality, see Runge, in Landor, "The Chemistry of the Allenes," vol. 3, pp. 579–678, Academic Press, New York, 1982, and in Patai, "The Chemistry of Ketenes, Allenes, and Related Compounds," pt. 1, pp. 99–154, Wiley, New York, 1980; Rossi and Diversi, *Synthesis* 25–36 (1973).

[38] Nakagawa, Shingū, and Naemura, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 802 (1961).

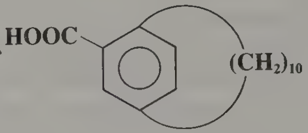
[39] Newman and Lednicer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 4765 (1956). Optically active heptahelicene has also been prepared, as have higher helicenes: Flammang-Barbieux, Nasielski, and Martin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 743 (1967); Martin, Morren, and Schurter, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3683 (1969); Martin and Baes, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 2135 (1975); Bernstein, Calvin, and Buchardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 494 (1972), **95,** 527 (1973); Martin and Libert, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 130 (1980). Even pentahelicene is crowded enough to be chiral: Goedicke and Stegemeyer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 937 (1970); Bestmann and Roth, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 2923 (1974).



16

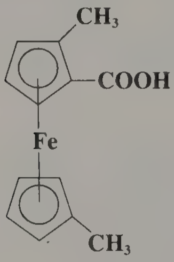


17

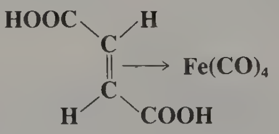


18

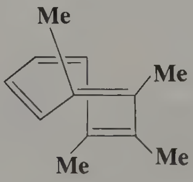
7. *Chirality caused by restricted rotation of other types.* Substituted paracyclophanes may be optically active and **18,** for example, has been resolved.[42] In this case chirality results because the benzene ring cannot rotate in such a way that the carboxyl group goes through the alicyclic ring. Metallocenes substituted with at least two different groups on one ring are also chiral.[43] More than 200 such compounds have been resolved, one example being **19.** Chirality is also found in other metallic complexes of suitable geometry.[44] For example, fumaric acid–iron tetracarbonyl (**20**) has been resolved.[45] 1,2,3,4-Tetramethylcyclooctatetraene (**21**) is also chiral.[46] This molecule, which exists in the tub form (p. 54), has no plane of symmetry. Another compound that is chiral solely because of hindered rotation is the propellor-shaped perchlorotriphenylamine, which has been resolved.[46a]



19



20



21

---

[40] For a review of the helicenes, see Martin, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 649–660 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 727–738].

[41] Cope, Ganellin, Johnson, Van Auken, and Winkler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3276 (1963). Also see Levin and Hoffmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3446 (1972).

[42] Blomquist, Stahl, Meinwald, and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 1687 (1961).

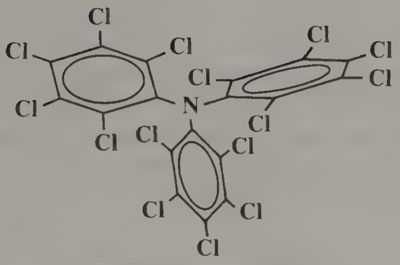
[43] For reviews on the stereochemistry of metallocenes, see Schlögl, *Top. Stereochem.* **1,** 39–91 (1967), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **23,** 413–432 (1970).

[44] For reviews of such complexes, see Paiaro, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **6,** 319–335 (1970).

[45] Paiaro, Palumbo, Musco, and Panunzi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1067 (1965); also see Paiaro and Panunzi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5148 (1964).

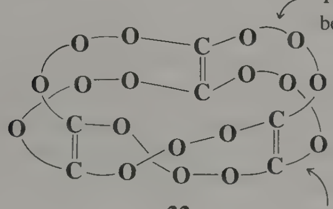
[46] Paquette, Gardlik, Johnson, and McCullough, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5026 (1980).

[46a] Hayes, Nagumo, Blount, and Mislow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2773 (1980); Okamoto, Yashima, Hatada, and Mislow, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 557 (1984).



perchlorotriphenylamine

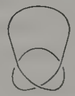
The main molecular chain in compound **22** has the form of a Möbius strip (see Fig. 4 on p. 755). This molecule has no chiral carbons, nor does it have a rigid shape, but it too has no plane of symmetry. **22** has been synthesized and has, in fact, been shown to be chiral.[47] Another interesting type of chirality has been proposed, though no example is yet known.[48] Rings containing 50 or more members should be able to exist as knots (**23**). Such a knot would be nonsuperimposable on its mirror image. Catenanes and rotaxanes (see p. 80) can also be chiral if suitably substituted.[49]



There is a CH_2—CH_2 group between each of the two oxygens

There is a CH_2 group between each C and O

22



23

Creation of a Chiral Center

Any structural feature of a molecule that gives rise to optical activity may be called a *chiral center*. In many reactions a new chiral center is created, e.g.,

$$CH_3CH_2COOH + Br_2 \xrightarrow{P} CH_3CHBrCOOH$$

If the reagents and reaction conditions are all symmetrical, the product must be a racemic mixture. No optically active material can be created if all starting materials and conditions are optically inactive.[50] This statement also holds when one begins with a racemic mixture. Thus racemic 2-butanol, treated with HBr, must give racemic 2-bromobutane.

---

[47] Walba, Richards, and Haltiwanger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3219 (1982).

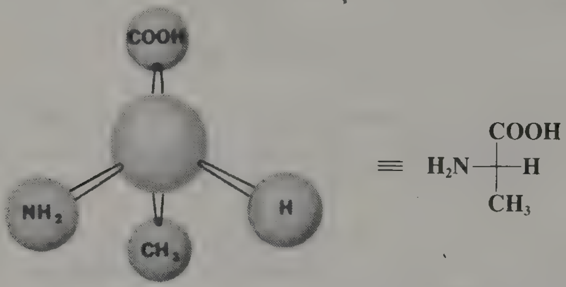
[48] Frisch and Wasserman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3789 (1961).

[49] For a discussion of the stereochemistry of these compounds, see Schill, "Catenanes, Rotaxanes, and Knots," pp. 11–18, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[50] There is one exception to this statement. In a very few cases racemic mixtures may crystallize from solution in such a way that all the (+) molecules go into one crystal and the (−) molecules into another. If one of the crystals crystallizes before the other, a rapid filtration results in optically active material. For a discussion, see Pincock and Wilson, *J. Chem. Educ.* **50,** 455 (1973).

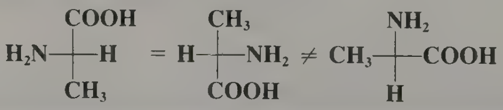
The Fischer Projection

For a thorough understanding of stereochemistry it is useful to examine molecular models (like those depicted in Figure 1). However, this is not feasible when writing on paper or the blackboard. In 1891 Emil Fischer greatly served the interests of chemistry by inventing the Fischer projection, a method of representing tetrahedral carbons on paper. By this convention, the model is held so that the two bonds in front of the paper are horizontal and those behind the paper are vertical.



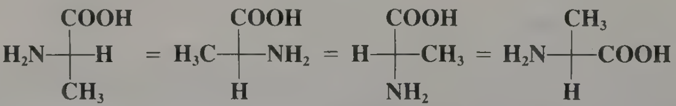
$$\equiv \begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{COOH} & \\ \mathrm{H_2N} & + & \mathrm{H} \\ & \mathrm{CH_3} & \end{array}$$

In order to obtain proper results from these formulas, it should be remembered that they are projections and must be treated differently from the models in testing for superimposability. Every plane is superimposable on its mirror image; hence with these formulas there must be added the restriction that they may not be taken out of the plane of the blackboard or paper. Also they may not be rotated 90°, though 180° rotation is permissible:



$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{COOH} & \\ \mathrm{H_2N} & + & \mathrm{H} \\ & \mathrm{CH_3} & \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{CH_3} & \\ \mathrm{H} & + & \mathrm{NH_2} \\ & \mathrm{COOH} & \end{array} \neq \begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{NH_2} & \\ \mathrm{CH_3} & + & \mathrm{COOH} \\ & \mathrm{H} & \end{array}$$

It is also permissible to keep any one group fixed and to rotate the other three clockwise or counterclockwise (because this can be done with models):



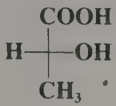
$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{COOH} & \\ \mathrm{H_2N} & + & \mathrm{H} \\ & \mathrm{CH_3} & \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{COOH} & \\ \mathrm{H_3C} & + & \mathrm{NH_2} \\ & \mathrm{H} & \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{COOH} & \\ \mathrm{H} & + & \mathrm{CH_3} \\ & \mathrm{NH_2} & \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc} & \mathrm{CH_3} & \\ \mathrm{H_2N} & + & \mathrm{COOH} \\ & \mathrm{H} & \end{array}$$

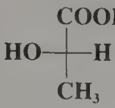
However, the *interchange* of any two groups results in the conversion of an enantiomer into its mirror image (this applies to models as well as to the Fischer projections).

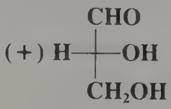
With these restrictions Fischer projections may be used instead of models to test whether a molecule containing asymmetric carbons is superimposable on its mirror image. However, there are no such conventions for molecules whose chirality arises from anything other than chiral atoms; when such molecules are examined on paper, three-dimensional pictures must be used. With models or three-dimensional pictures there are no restrictions about the plane of the paper.

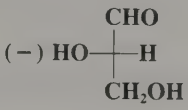
Absolute Configuration

Suppose we have two test tubes, one containing (−)-lactic acid and the other the (+) enantiomer. One test tube contains **24** and the other **25.** How do we know which is which? Chemists in the early part of this century pondered this problem and decided that they could not know—for lactic acid or any other compound. Therefore Rosanoff proposed that one compound be chosen as a standard and a configuration be arbitrarily assigned to it. The compound chosen was glyceraldehyde

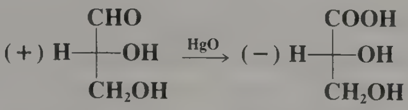

24


25


26


27

because of its relationship to the sugars. The (+) isomer was assigned the configuration shown in **26** and given the label D. The (−) isomer, designated to be **27,** was given the label L. Once a standard was chosen, other compounds could then be related to it. For example, (+)-glyceraldehyde, oxidized with mercuric oxide, gives (−)-glyceric acid:



Since it is highly improbable that the configuration at the central carbon changed, it can be concluded that (−)-glyceric acid has the same configuration as (+)-glyceraldehyde and therefore (−)-glyceric acid is also called D. This example emphasizes that molecules with the same configuration need not rotate the plane of polarized light in the same direction. This fact should not surprise us when we remember that the same compound can rotate the plane in opposite directions under different conditions.

Once the configuration of the glyceric acids was known (in relation to the glyceraldehydes), it was then possible to relate other compounds to either of these, and each time a new compound was related, others could be related to *it*. In this way many thousands of compounds were related, indirectly, to D- or L-glyceraldehyde, and it was determined that **24,** which has the D configuration, is the isomer that rotates the plane of polarized light to the left. Even compounds without asymmetric atoms, such as biphenyls and allenes, have been placed in the D or L series.[51] When a compound has been placed in the D or L series, its *absolute configuration* is said to be known.[52]

In 1951 it became possible to determine whether Rosanoff's guess was right. Ordinary x-ray crystallography cannot distinguish between a D and an L isomer, but by use of a special technique, Bijvoet was able to examine sodium rubidium tartrate and found that Rosanoff had made the correct choice.[53] It was perhaps historically fitting that the first true absolute configuration should have been determined on a salt of tartaric acid, since Pasteur made his great discoveries on another salt of this acid.

In spite of the former widespread use of D and L to denote absolute configuration, the method is not without faults. The designation of a particular enantiomer as D or L can depend on the compounds to which it is related. Examples are known where an enantiomer can, by five or six steps, be related to a known D compound, and by five or six other steps, be related to the L enantiomer of the same compound. In a case of this sort, an arbitrary choice of D or L must be used. Because of this and other flaws, the DL system is seldom used today, except for certain groups of compounds such as carbohydrates and amino acids.

---

[51] The use of small *d* and *l* is now discouraged, since some authors used it for rotation, and some for configuration. However, a racemic mixture is still a *dl* mixture, since there is no ambiguity here.

[52] For lists of absolute configurations of thousands of compounds, with references, mostly expressed as (*R*) or (*S*) rather than D or L, see Klyne and Buckingham, "Atlas of Stereochemistry," 2d ed. 2 vols., Oxford University Press, New York, 1978; Jacques, Gros, Bourcier, Brienne, and Toullec, "Absolute Configurations" (vol. 4 of Kagan, "Stereochemistry"), Georg Thieme Publishers, Stuttgart, 1977.

[53] Bijvoet, Peerdeman, and van Bommel, *Nature* **168,** 271 (1951). For a list of organic structures whose absolute configurations have been determined by this method, see Allen and Rogers, *Chem. Commun.* 838 (1966); Allen, Neidle, and Rogers, *Chem. Commun.* 308 (1968), 452 (1969); Neidle, Rogers, and Allen, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2340 (1970).

The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog System

The system that has essentially replaced the DL system is the *Cahn–Ingold–Prelog* system, in which the four groups on an asymmetric carbon are ranked according to a set of sequence rules.[54] For our purposes we confine ourselves to only a few of these rules, which are sufficient to deal with the vast majority of chiral compounds.

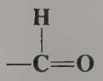
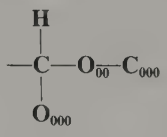
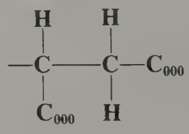
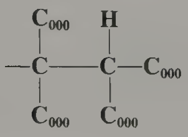
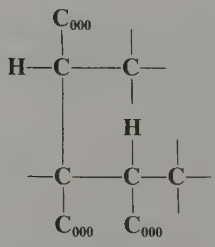
1. Substituents are listed in order of decreasing atomic number of the atom directly joined to the carbon.

2. Where two or more of the atoms connected to the asymmetric carbon are the same, the atomic number of the second atom determines the order. For example, in the molecule $Me_2CH—CHBr—CH_2OH$, the CH_2OH group takes precedence over the Me_2CH group because oxygen has a higher atomic number than carbon. Note that this is so even though there are two carbons in Me_2CH and only one oxygen in CH_2OH. If two or more atoms connected to the second atom are the same, the third atom determines the precedence, etc.

3. All atoms except hydrogen are formally given a valence of 4. Where the actual valence is less (as in nitrogen, oxygen, or a carbanion), phantom atoms (designated by a subscript $_0$) are used to bring the valence up to four. These phantom atoms are assigned an atomic number of zero and necessarily rank lowest. Thus the ligand $—\overset{\oplus}{N}HMe_2$ ranks higher than $—NMe_2$.

4. A tritium atom takes precedence over deuterium, which in turn takes precedence over ordinary hydrogen. Similarly, any higher isotope (such as ^{14}C) takes precedence over any lower one.

5. Double and triple bonds are counted as if they were split into two or three single bonds, respectively, as in these examples (note the treatment of the phenyl group):

Group	Treated as if it were	Group	Treated as if it were
 $—\overset{H}{C}=O$		$—CH=CH_2$	
$—C\equiv CH$		$—C_6H_5$	

---

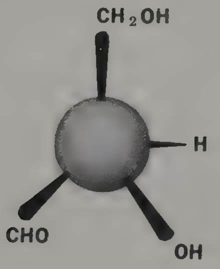
[54] For descriptions of the system and sets of sequence rules, see Ref. 2; Cahn, Ingold, and Prelog, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 385–415 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 413–447]; Cahn, *J. Chem. Educ.* **41,** 116 (1964); Fernelius, Loening, and Adams, *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 735 (1974). See also Prelog and Helmchen, *Angew. Chem., Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 567–583 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 614–631].

Note that in a C═C double bond, the two carbon atoms are *each* regarded as being connected to two carbon atoms and that one of the latter is counted as having three phantom substituents.

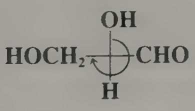
As an exercise, we shall compare the four groups shown above. The first atoms are connected, respectively, to (H, O, O), (H, C, C), (C, C, C), and (C, C, C). That is enough to establish that —CHO ranks first and —CH═CH$_2$ last, since even one oxygen outranks three carbons and three carbons outrank two carbons and a hydrogen. To classify the remaining two groups we must proceed further along the chains. We note that —C$_6$H$_5$ has two of its (C, C, C) carbons connected to (C, C, H), while the third is $(_0, _0, _0)$ and is thus preferred to —C≡CH, which has only one (C, C, H) and two $(_0, _0, _0)$s.

By application of the above rules, some groups in descending order of precedence are COOH, COPh, COMe, CHO, CH(OH)$_2$, *o*-tolyl, *m*-tolyl, *p*-tolyl, phenyl, C≡CH, *t*-butyl, cyclohexyl, vinyl, isopropyl, benzyl, neopentyl, allyl, *n*-pentyl, ethyl, methyl, deuterium, and hydrogen. Thus the four groups of glyceraldehyde are arranged in the sequence: OH, CHO, CH$_2$OH, H.

Once the order is determined, the molecule is held so that the lowest group in the sequence is pointed away from the viewer. Then if the other groups, in the order listed, are oriented clockwise, the molecule is designated *R*, and if counterclockwise, *S*. For glyceraldehyde, the (+) enantiomer is *R*:

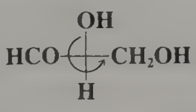


Note that when a compound is written in the Fischer projection, the configuration can easily be determined without constructing the model. If the lowest-ranking group is at the bottom, the *R* configuration is present if the other three groups in descending order are clockwise, e.g.,



$$\begin{array}{c} OH \\ HOCH_2 - CHO \\ H \end{array}$$

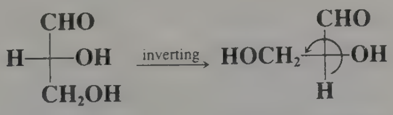
(*R*)-Glyceraldehyde



$$\begin{array}{c} OH \\ HCO - CH_2OH \\ H \end{array}$$

(*S*)-Glyceraldehyde

If the lowest-ranking group is not at the bottom, one can simply interchange it with the bottom group, bearing in mind that in so doing, one is inverting the isomer:



$$\begin{array}{c} CHO \\ H - OH \\ CH_2OH \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{inverting}} \begin{array}{c} CHO \\ HOCH_2 - OH \\ H \end{array}$$

(*S*)-Glyceraldehyde

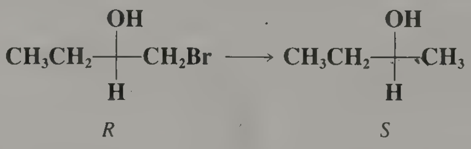
Therefore the original compound was (*R*)-glyceraldehyde.

The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system is unambiguous and easily applicable in most cases. Whether to call an enantiomer *R* or *S* does not depend on correlations, but the configuration must be known before the system can be applied and this does depend on correlations. The Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system has also been extended to chiral compounds that do not contain chiral atoms.[55]

Methods of Determining Configuration[56]

In all the methods,[57] it is necessary to relate the compound of unknown configuration to another whose configuration is known. The most important methods of doing this are:

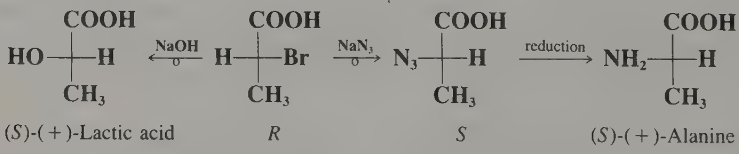
1. Conversion of the unknown to, or formation of the unknown from, a compound of known configuration without disturbing the chiral center. See the glyceraldehyde–glyceric acid example above (p. 95). Since the chiral center was not disturbed, the unknown obviously has the same configuration as the known. This does not necessarily mean that if the known is *R*, the unknown is also *R*. This will be so if the sequence is not disturbed but not otherwise. For example, when (*R*)-1-bromo-2-butanol is reduced to 2-butanol without disturbing the chiral center, the product is



$$\underset{R}{\mathrm{CH_3CH_2}\overset{\mathrm{OH}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{-\!\!+\!\!-}}\mathrm{CH_2Br}} \longrightarrow \underset{S}{\mathrm{CH_3CH_2}\overset{\mathrm{OH}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{-\!\!+\!\!-}}\mathrm{CH_3}}$$

the *S* isomer, even though the configuration is unchanged, because CH_3CH_2 ranks lower than $BrCH_2$ but higher than CH_3.

2. Conversion at the chiral center if the mechanism is known. Thus, the SN2 mechanism proceeds with inversion of configuration at an asymmetric carbon (see p. 256). It was by a series of such transformations that lactic acid was related to alanine (the symbol $\xrightarrow[\circlearrowright]{}$ is used to signify inversion of configuration):



$$\underset{(S)\text{-}(+)\text{-Lactic acid}}{\mathrm{HO}\overset{\mathrm{COOH}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{-\!\!+\!\!-}}\mathrm{H}} \xleftarrow[\circlearrowright]{\mathrm{NaOH}} \underset{R}{\mathrm{H}\overset{\mathrm{COOH}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{-\!\!+\!\!-}}\mathrm{Br}} \xrightarrow[\circlearrowright]{\mathrm{NaN_3}} \underset{S}{\mathrm{N_3}\overset{\mathrm{COOH}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{-\!\!+\!\!-}}\mathrm{H}} \xrightarrow{\text{reduction}} \underset{(S)\text{-}(+)\text{-Alanine}}{\mathrm{NH_2}\overset{\mathrm{COOH}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{-\!\!+\!\!-}}\mathrm{H}}$$

See also the discussion on p. 257.

3. Biochemical methods. In a series of similar compounds, such as amino acids or certain types of steroids, a given enzyme will usually attack only molecules with one kind of configuration. If the enzyme attacks only the L form of eight amino acids, say, then attack on the unknown ninth amino acid will also be on the L form.

4. Optical comparison. It is sometimes possible to use the sign and extent of rotation to determine which isomer has which configuration. In a homologous series, the rotation usually changes gradually and in one direction. If the configurations of enough members of the series are known, the configurations of the missing ones can be determined by extrapolation. Also certain groups contribute more or less fixed amounts to the rotation of the parent molecule, especially when the parent is a rigid system such as a steroid.

---

[55] For a discussion of these rules, as well as for a review of methods for establishing configurations of chiral compounds not containing chiral atoms, see Krow, *Top. Stereochem.* **5,** 31–68 (1970).

[56] For a monograph, see Kagan, "Determination of Configuration by Chemical Methods" (vol. 3 of Kagan, "Stereochemistry"), Georg Thieme Publishers, Stuttgart, 1977. For reviews, see Brewster, in Bentley and Kirby, "Elucidation of Organic Structures by Physical and Chemical Methods," 2d ed. (vol. 4 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Chemistry"), pt. 3, pp. 1–249, Wiley, New York, 1972; Klyne and Scopes, *Prog. Stereochem.* **4,** 97–166 (1969); Schlenk, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 139–145 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 161–168].

[57] Except the x-ray method of Bijvoet.

5. The special x-ray method of Bijvoet gives direct answers and has been used in a number of cases.[53]

Other methods have also been used, including optical rotatory dispersion,[58] circular dichroism,[58] and asymmetric synthesis (see p. 103).

The Cause of Optical Activity

The question may be asked: Just why does a chiral molecule rotate the plane of polarized light? Theoretically, the answer to this question is known and in a greatly simplified form may be explained as follows:[59]

Whenever any light hits any molecule in a transparent material, the light is slowed because of interaction with the molecule. This phenomenon on a gross scale is responsible for the refraction of light and the decrease in velocity is proportional to the refractive index of the material. The extent of interaction depends on the polarizability of the molecule. Plane-polarized light may be regarded as being made up of two kinds of circularly polarized light. Circularly polarized light has the appearance (or would have, if one could see the wave) of a helix propagating around the axis of light motion, and one kind is a left-handed and the other a right-handed helix. As long as the plane-polarized light is passing through a symmetrical region, the two circularly polarized components travel at the same speed. However, a chiral molecule has a different polarizability depending on whether it is approached from the left or the right. One circularly polarized component approaches the molecule, so to speak, from the left and sees a different polarizability (hence on a gross scale, a different refractive index) than the other and is slowed to a different extent. This would seem to mean that the left- and right-handed circularly polarized components travel at different velocities, since each has been slowed to a different extent. However, it is not possible for two components of the same light to be traveling at different velocities. What actually takes place, therefore, is that the faster component ''pulls'' the other towards it, resulting in rotation of the plane. These ideas can be expressed mathematically, and in principle it is possible to calculate the sign and amount of rotation for any molecule (this represents an additional way of determining absolute configuration). However, it is necessary to use wave equations, the limitations of which were discussed in Chapter 1. Hence, in practice, the sign and amount of rotation have been calculated for very few molecules; and the results have been wrong about as often as they have been right. Empirical methods for the prediction of the sign and amount of rotation based on bond refractions and polarizabilities of groups in a molecule have been devised.[60] These methods have given fairly good results in many cases.

In liquids and gases the molecules are randomly oriented. A molecule that is optically inactive because it has a plane of symmetry will very seldom be oriented so that the plane of the polarized light coincides with the plane of symmetry. When it is so oriented, that particular molecule does not rotate the plane but all others not oriented in that manner do rotate the plane, even though the molecules are achiral. There is no net rotation because, the molecules being present in large number and randomly oriented, there will always be another molecule later on in the path of the light that is oriented exactly opposite and will rotate the plane back again. Even though nearly all molecules rotate the plane individually, the total rotation is zero. For chiral molecules, however (if there is no racemic mixture), no opposite orientation is present and there is a net rotation.

---

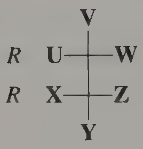
[58] See Ref. 140 for books and reviews on optical rotatory dispersion.

[59] For longer, nontheoretical discussions, see Eliel, ''Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds,'' Ref. 1, pp. 398–412; Wheland, Ref. 1, pp. 204–211. For theoretical discussions, see Caldwell and Eyring, ''The Theory of Optical Activity,'' Wiley, New York, 1971; Kauzmann, ''Quantum Chemistry,'' pp. 616–635, Academic Press, New York, 1957; Buckingham and Stiles, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 258–264 (1974); Mason, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17,** 20–66 (1963).

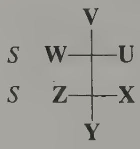
[60] Brewster, *Top. Stereochem.* **2,** 1–72 (1967), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5475, 5483, 5493 (1959); Davis and Jensen, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3410 (1970); Jullien, Requin, and Stahl-Larivière, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **3,** 91 (1979). See also Applequist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8255, 8258 (1973).

Molecules with More than One Chiral Center

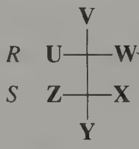
When a molecule has two chiral centers, each has its own configuration and can be classified *R* or *S* by the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog method. There are a total of four isomers, since the first center may be *R* or *S* and so may the second. Since a molecule can have only one mirror image, only one of the other three can be the enantiomer of **A**. This is **B**. **C** and **D** are a second pair of enantiomers and the relationship of **C** and **D** to **A** and **B** is designated by the term *diastereomer*. Diastereomers may be defined as *stereoisomers that are not enantiomers*. **C** and **D** being enantiomers, must have identical properties, except as noted on p. 82; the same is true for **A** and **B**. However, the properties of **A** and **B** are not identical with those of **C** and **D**. They have different melting points, boiling points, solubilities, reactivity, and all other physical, chemical, and spectral properties. The properties are usually *similar* but not *identical*. In particular, diastereomers have different specific rotations; indeed one diastereomer may be chiral and rotate the plane of polarized light while another may be achiral and not rotate at all (an example is presented below).



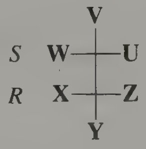
A



B



C

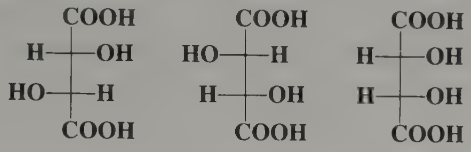


D

It is now possible to see why, as mentioned on p. 83, enantiomers react at different rates with other chiral molecules but at the same rate with achiral molecules. In the latter case, the activated complex formed from the *R* enantiomer and the other molecule is the mirror image of the activated complex formed from the *S* enantiomer and the other molecule. Since the two activated complexes are enantiomeric, their energies are the same and the rates of the reactions in which they are formed must be the same (see Chapter 6). However, when an *R* enantiomer reacts with a chiral molecule that has, say, the *R* configuration, the activated complex has two chiral centers with configurations *R* and *R*, while the activated complex formed from the *S* enantiomer has the configurations *S* and *R*. The two activated complexes are diastereomeric, do not have the same energies, and consequently are formed at different rates.

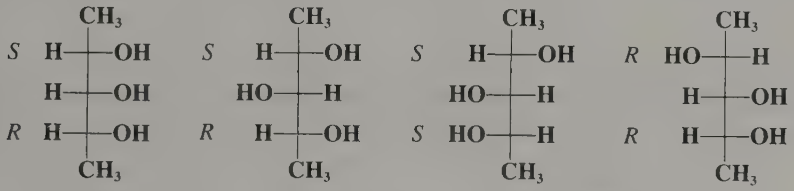
Although four is the maximum possible number of isomers when the compound has two chiral centers (chiral compounds without a chiral carbon, or with one chiral carbon and another type of chiral center also follow the rules described here), some compounds have fewer. When the three groups on one chiral atom are the same as those on the other, one of the isomers (called a *meso* form) has a plane of symmetry and hence is optically inactive, even though it has two chiral carbons.

Tartaric acid is a typical case. There are only three isomers of tartaric acid: a pair of enantiomers



and an inactive meso form. For compounds that have two chiral atoms, meso forms are found only where the four groups on one of the chiral atoms are the same as those on the other chiral atom.

In most cases with more than two chiral centers, the number of isomers can be calculated from the formula 2^n, where n is the number of chiral centers, although in some cases the actual number is less than this, owing to meso forms.[61] An interesting case is that of 2,3,4-pentanetriol (or any similar molecule). The middle carbon is not asymmetric when the 2- and 4-carbons are both R (or both S) but is asymmetric when one of them is R and the other S. Such a carbon is called a *pseudoasymmetric* carbon. In these cases there are four isomers: two meso forms and one *dl* pair.



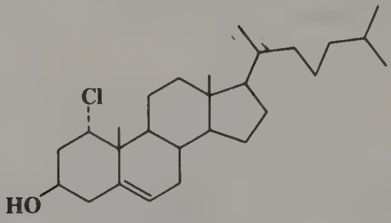
The student should satisfy himself, remembering the rules governing the use of the Fischer projections, that these isomers are different, that the meso forms are superimposable on their mirror images, and that there are no other stereoisomers. Two diastereomers that have a different configuration at only one chiral center are called *epimers*.

In compounds with two or more chiral centers, the absolute configuration must be separately determined for each center. The usual procedure is to determine the configuration at one center by the methods discussed on pp. 98–99 and then to relate the configuration at that center to the others in the molecule. One method is x-ray crystallography, which, as previously noted, cannot be used to determine the absolute configuration at any chiral center but which does give relative configurations of all of the chiral centers in a molecule and hence the absolute configurations of all once the first is independently determined. Other physical and chemical methods have also been used for this purpose (see, for example, p. 111).

The problem arises how to name the different stereoisomers of a compound when there are more than two.[2] Enantiomers are virtually always called by the same name, being distinguished by R and S or D and L or (+) and (−). In the early days of organic chemistry, it was customary to give each pair of enantiomers a different name or at least a different prefix (such as *epi-*, *peri-*, etc.). Thus the aldehexoses are called glucose, mannose, idose, etc., although they are all 2,3,4,5,6-pentahydroxyhexanal (in their open-chain forms). This practice was partially due to lack of knowledge about which isomers had which configurations. In recent years it has been customary to describe *each chiral position* separately as either *R* or *S* or, in special fields, using other symbols. Thus, in the case of steroids, groups above the "plane" of the ring system are designated β, and those below it α. Solid lines are often used to depict β groups and dashed lines for α groups. An example is

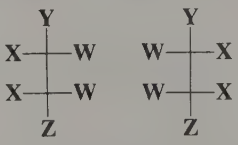
---

[61] For a method of generating all stereoisomers consistent with a given empirical formula, suitable for computer use, see Nourse, Carhart, Smith, and Djerassi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1216 (1979); **102,** 6289 (1980).

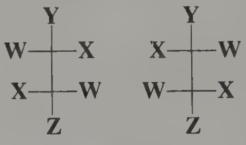


1α-Chloro-5-cholesten-3β-ol

For many open-chain compounds prefixes are used that are derived from the names of the corresponding sugars and that describe the whole system rather than each chiral center separately. Two such common prefixes are *erythro-* and *threo-*, which are applied to systems containing two asymmetric carbons when two of the groups are the same and the third is different.[62] The erythro pair has the identical groups on the same side when drawn in the Fischer convention, and if Y were changed to Z, it would be meso. The threo pair has them on opposite sides, and if Y were changed to Z, it would still be a *dl* pair.



Erythro *dl* pair



Threo *dl* pair

Asymmetric Synthesis[63]

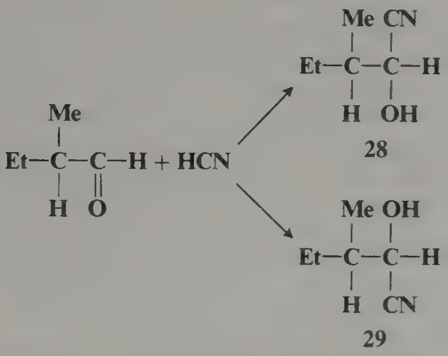
As was mentioned before, optically active materials cannot be created from inactive starting materials and conditions; hence true asymmetric synthesis is impossible, except in the manner previously noted.[50] However, when a new chiral center is created, the two possible configurations need not be formed in equal amounts if anything is present that is not symmetric. Such syntheses, usually called *asymmetric* or *stereoselective syntheses*, may be discussed under four headings.

---

[62] For more general methods of designating diastereomers, see Carey and Kuehne, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3811 (1982); Seebach and Prelog, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 654–660 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 696–702].

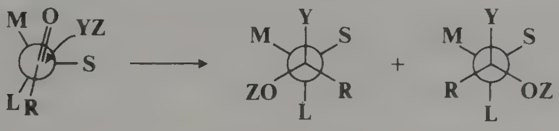
[63] For books on this subject, see Morrison and Mosher, "Asymmetric Organic Reactions," Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1971, paperback reprint, American Chemical Society, Washington, 1976; Izumi and Tai, Ref. 1. For reviews, see Schöllkopf, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **109,** 65–84 (1983); Quinkert and Stark, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 637–655 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 651–669]; Tramontini, *Synthesis* 605–644 (1982); Drauz, Kleeman, and Martens, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 584–608 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 590–613]; Wynberg, *Recl. J. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 393–399 (1981); Bartlett, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2–72 (1980); ApSimon and Seguin, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 2797–2842 (1979); Valentine and Scott, *Synthesis* 329–356 (1978); Scott and Valentine, *Science* **184,** 943–952 (1974); Kagan and Fiaud, *Top. Stereochem.* **10,** 175–285 (1978); ApSimon, in Bentley and Kirby, Ref. 56, pp. 251–408; Boyd and McKervey, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **22,** 95–122 (1968); Goldberg, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 363–394; Klabunovskii and Levitina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 1035–1049 (1970); Inch, *Synthesis* 466–473 (1970); Mathieu and Weill-Raynal, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1211–1244 (1968); Amariglio, Amariglio, and Duval, *Ann. Chim. (Paris)* [14] **3,** 5–25 (1968); Pracejus, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **8,** 493–553 (1967); Velluz, Valls, and Mathieu, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 778–789 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 774–785]. For a review of asymmetric synthesis via reactions in chiral crystals, see Green, Lahav, and Rabinovich, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 191–197 (1979).

1. *Active substrate.* If a new chiral center is created in a molecule that is already optically active, the two diastereomers are not (except fortuitously) formed in equal amounts. The reason is that the direction of attack by the reagent is determined by the groups already there. For certain additions to the carbon–oxygen double bond of ketones containing an asymmetric α-carbon, *Cram's rule* predicts which diastereomer will predominate.[64] If the molecule is observed along its axis, it may be represented as in **30** (see p. 120), where S, M, and L stand for small, medium, and large, respectively. The oxygen of the carbonyl orients itself between the small- and the medium-sized groups. The rule is that the incoming group preferentially attacks on the side of the plane containing the small group. By this rule, it can be predicted that **29** will be formed in larger amounts than **28.**



28

29



30

Major product

Minor product

Many reactions of this type are known, in some of which the extent of favoritism approaches 100%.[65] The farther away the reaction site is from the chiral center, the less influence the latter has and the more equal the amounts of diastereomers formed.

2. *Active reagent.* A pair of enantiomers can be separated by an active reagent that reacts faster with one of them than it does with the other (this is also a method of resolution). If the absolute configuration of the reagent is known, the configuration of the enantiomers can often be determined by a knowledge of the mechanism and by seeing which diastereomer is preferentially formed.[66] Creation of a new chiral center in an inactive molecule can also be accomplished with an active reagent, though it is rare for 100% selectivity to be observed. An example[67] is the reduction of isopropyl phenyl ketone with the Grignard reagent from (+)-1-chloro-2-phenylbutane to obtain isopropylphenylcarbinol that contains 91% of the (+) and 9% of the (−) isomer. (For another example, see p. 705.) A reaction in which an inactive substrate is converted selectively to one of two enantiomers is called an *enantioselective* reaction. Reactions in this category and in categories 3 and 4 come under this definition.

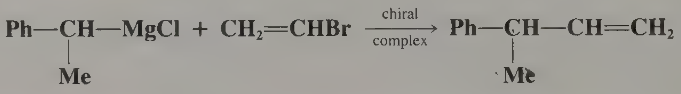
---

[64] Cram and Elhafez, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 5828 (1952); Cram and Kopecky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2748 (1959); Leitereg and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4019 (1968). For reviews, see Ref. 4 in Chapter 16. For discussions, see Eliel, "Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds," Ref. 1, pp. 68–74; Salem, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 94–101 (1973); Anh, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **88,** 145–162 (1980), pp. 151–161.

[65] For examples and references to earlier work, see Eliel, Koskimies, and Lohri, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1614 (1978); Still and McDonald, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1031 (1980); Still and Schneider, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1035 (1980).

[66] See, for example, Horeau, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 506 (1961); Weidmann and Horeau, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 117 (1967); Marquet and Horeau, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 124 (1967); Brockmann and Risch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 664 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 707].

3. *Active catalyst or solvent.* A number of such examples are present in the literature, the most important of which involve reduction of ketones and substituted alkenes to optically active (though not optically pure) secondary alcohols and substituted alkanes by treatment with hydrogen and a chiral homogeneous hydrogenation catalyst (reactions **6-26** and **5-10**).[68] In some instances, notably in the homogeneous catalytic hydrogenation of alkenes (**5-10**), the ratio of enantiomers prepared in this way is as high as 98:2.[69] Other examples of the use of a chiral catalyst or solvent are the reaction between secondary alkyl Grignard reagents and vinyl halides (**0-88**) in the presence of chiral transition-metal complexes,[70] the conversion of benzaldehyde to optically active mandelonitrile by treatment with HCN in the presence of an enzyme,[71] and the preparation of optically active alcohols by the treatment of Grignard reagents with aldehydes in optically active ether solvents.[72] For another example, see p. 417.



$$\mathrm{Ph{-}\underset{\displaystyle Me}{\underset{|}{C}H}{-}MgCl} + \mathrm{CH_2{=}CHBr} \xrightarrow[\text{complex}]{\text{chiral}} \mathrm{Ph{-}\underset{\displaystyle Me}{\underset{|}{C}H}{-}CH{=}CH_2}$$

4. *Reactions in the presence of circularly polarized light.*[73] If the light used to initiate a photochemical reaction (Chapter 7) of achiral reagents is circularly polarized, then, in theory, a chiral product richer in one enantiomer might be obtained. However, such experiments have not proved fruitful. In certain instances, the use of left and right circularly polarized light *has* given products with opposite rotations[74] (showing that the principle is valid), but up to now the extent of favoritism has always been less than 1%.

Methods of Resolution[75]

A pair of enantiomers can be separated in several ways, of which conversion of diastereomers and separation of these by fractional crystallization is by far the most often used. In this method and in some of the others, both isomers can be recovered, but in some methods it is necessary to destroy one.

---

[67] Birtwistle, Lee, Morrison, Sanderson, and Mosher, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 37 (1964). For reviews of asymmetric reduction, see Morrison, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **3,** 147–182 (1966); Yamada and Koga, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 1–33 (1970); Refs. 202 and 203 in Chapter 15.

[68] For a review, see Bosnich and Fryzuk, *Top. Stereochem.* **12,** 119–154 (1981).

[69] See Vineyard, Knowles, Sabacky, Bachman, and Weinkauff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5946 (1977); Fryzuk and Bosnich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5491 (1978).

[70] For a review, see Hayashi and Kumada, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 395–401 (1982). For another example, see Ref. 609 in Chapter 16.

[71] Wheland, Ref. 1, p. 323.

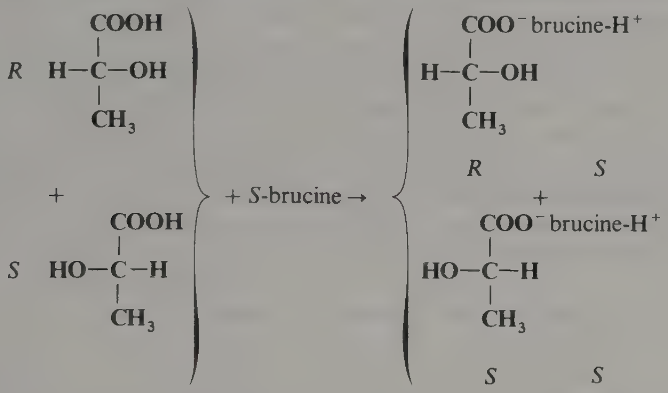
[72] See for example Blomberg and Coops, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **83,** 1083 (1964); Inch, Lewis, Sainsbury, and Sellers, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3657 (1969); Jalander and Strandberg, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **B37,** 15 (1983). See also Seebach, Kalinowski, Langer, Crass, and Wilka, *Org. Synth.* **61,** 24.

[73] For a review, see Buchardt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 179–185 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 222].

[74] See, for example, Moradpour, Nicoud, Balavoine, Kagan, and Tsoucaris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2353 (1971); Bernstein, Calvin, and Buchardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 494 (1972), **95,** 527 (1973), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2195 (1972); Nicoud and Kagan, *Isr. J. Chem.* **15,** 78 (1977).

[75] For a monograph, see Ref. 6. For reviews, see Wilen, Collet, and Jacques, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2725–2736 (1977); Wilen, *Top. Stereochem.* **6,** 107–176 (1971); Boyle, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **25,** 323–341 (1971); Buss and Vermeulen, *Ind. Eng. Chem.* **60** (8), 12–28 (August 1968).

1. *Conversion to diastereomers.* If the racemic mixture to be resolved contains a carboxyl group (and no strongly basic group), it is possible to form a salt with an optically active base. Since the base used is, say, the *S* form, there will be a mixture of two salts produced having the configurations *SS* and *RS*. Although the acids are enantiomers, the salts are diastereomers and have different properties. The property most often used for separation is differential solubility. The mixture of diastereomeric salts is allowed to crystallize from a suitable solvent. Since the solubilities are different, the initial crystals formed will be richer in one diastereomer. Filtration at this point will already have achieved a partial resolution. Unfortunately, the difference in solubilities is rarely if ever great enough to effect total separation with one crystallization. Usually fractional crystallizations must be used and the process is long and tedious. Fortunately, naturally occurring optically active bases (mostly alkaloids) are readily available. Among the most commonly used are brucine, ephedrine, strychnine, and morphine. Once the two diastereomers have been separated, it is easy to convert the salts back to the free acids and the recovered base can be used again.



Most resolution is done on carboxylic acids and often, when a molecule does not contain a carboxyl group, it is converted to a carboxylic acid before resolution is attempted. However, the principle of conversion to diastereomers is not confined to carboxylic acids, and other groups[76] may serve as handles to be coupled to an optically active reagent.[77] Racemic bases can be converted to diastereomeric salts with active acids. Alcohols[78] can be converted to diastereomeric esters, aldehydes to diastereomeric hydrazones, etc. Even hydrocarbons can be converted to diastereomeric inclusion compounds, with urea. Urea is not chiral, but the cage structure is.[79] Chiral crown ethers (p. 77) have been used to separate mixtures of enantiomeric alkyl and arylammonium ions, by the formation of diastereomeric complexes.[80] In this case, separation is often simplified by the fact that one diastereomer may form much more rapidly than the other. *trans*-Cyclooctene (**17**) was resolved by conversion to a platinum complex containing an optically active amine.[81]

---

[76] For summaries of methods used to resolve particular types of compounds, see Boyle, Ref. 75; Eliel, "Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds," Ref. 1, pp. 49–63.

[77] For an extensive list of reagents that have been used for this purpose and of compounds resolved, see Wilen, "Tables of Resolving Agents and Optical Resolutions," University of Notre Dame Press, Notre Dame, Ind., 1972.

[78] For a review of resolution of alcohols, see Klyashchitskii and Shvets, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 592–602 (1972).

[79] See Schlenk, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1145, 1156, 1179, 1195 (1973). Inclusion complexes of tri-*o*-thymotide can be used in a similar manner: See Arad-Yellin, Green, Knossow, and Tsoucaris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4561 (1983).

[80] See, for example, Kyba, Koga, Sousa, Siegel, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2692 (1973); Sogah and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3035 (1979); Lingenfelter, Helgeson, and Cram, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 393 (1981); Pearson, Leigh, and Sutherland, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 3113 (1979); Bussman, Lehn, Oesch, Plumeré, and Simon, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 657 (1981); Davidson, Bradshaw, Jones, Dalley, Christensen, Izatt, Morin, and Grant, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 353 (1984). See also Toda, Tanaka, Omata, Nakamura, and Ōshima, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5151 (1983). For reviews see Stoddart, *Prog. Macrocyclic Chem.* **2,** 173–250 (1981); Cram *et al.*, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 327–349 (1975); Cram and Cram, *Science* **183,** 803–809 (1974).

Although fractional crystallization has always been the most common method for the separation of diastereomers, its tediousness and the fact that it is limited to solids prompted a search for other methods. Fractional distillation has given only limited separation, but gas chromatography[82] and preparative liquid chromatography[83] have proved more useful and, in many cases, have supplanted fractional crystallization, especially where the quantities to be resolved are small.

2. *Differential absorption.* When a racemic mixture is placed on a chromatographic column, if the column consists of chiral substances, then in principle the enantiomers should move along the column at different rates and should be separable without having to be converted into diastereomers. This has been successfully accomplished with paper, column, thin-layer,[83a] and gas and liquid chromatography.[84] For example, racemic mandelic acid has been almost completely resolved by column chromatography on starch.[85] Gil-Av and others have achieved separations with gas and liquid chromatography by the use of columns packed with chiral absorbents.[86] Columns packed with chiral materials are now commercially available and are capable of separating the enantiomers of certain types of compounds.[86a]

3. *Biochemical processes.* The chiral compound that reacts at different rates with the two enantiomers may be present in a living organism. For instance, a certain bacterium may digest one enantiomer but not the other. This method is limited, since it is necessary to find the proper organism and since one of the enantiomers is destroyed in the process. However, when the proper organism is found, the method leads to a high extent of resolution since biological processes are usually very stereoselective.

4. *Mechanical separation.*[87] This is the method by which Pasteur proved that racemic acid was actually a mixture of (+)- and (−)-tartaric acids.[88] In the case of racemic sodium ammonium tartrate the enantiomers crystallize separately—all the (+) molecules going into one crystal and all the (−) into another. Since the crystals too are nonsuperimposable, their appearance is not identical and a trained crystallographer can separate them with tweezers.[89] However, this is seldom a practical method, since few compounds crystallize in this manner. Even sodium ammonium tartrate does so only when it is crystallized below 27°C. A more useful variation of the method, though still not very common, is the seeding of a racemic solution with something that will cause only one enantiomer to crystallize.[90] An interesting example of the mechanical separation technique was reported in the isolation of heptahelicene (p. 92). One enantiomer of this compound, which incidentally has the extremely high rotation of $[\alpha]_D^{20} = +6200°$, spontaneously crystallizes from benzene.[91] In the case of 1,1′-binaphthyl, optically active crystals can be formed simply by heating polycrystalline racemic samples of the compound at 76–150°. A phase change from one crystal form to another takes place.[92] It may be noted that 1,1-binaphthyl is one of the few compounds that can be resolved by the Pasteur tweezer method. In some cases resolution can be achieved by enantioselective crystallization in the presence of a chiral additive.[92a]

---

[81] Ref. 41. For a review, see Tsuji, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 109–255 (1969), pp. 220–227.

[82] See, for example, Casanova and Corey, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1664 (1961); Gil-Av and Nurok, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 146 (1962); Gault and Felkin, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 742 (1965); Gil-Av, Charles, and Fischer, *J. Chromatogr.* **17,** 408 (1965); Vitt, Saporovskaya, Gudkova, and Belikov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2575 (1965); Westley, Halpern, and Karger, *Anal. Chem.* **40,** 2046 (1968); Pereira and Halpern, *Aust. J. Chem.* **25,** 667 (1972); Kawa, Yamaguchi, and Ishikawa, *Chem. Lett.* 745 (1982). For a review, see Karger, *Anal. Chem.* **39** (8), 24A–50A (July 1967).

[83] For example, see Pirkle and Hoekstra, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3904 (1974); Pirkle and Hauske, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1839 (1977); Helmchen and Nill, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 65 (1979); [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 66]; Meyers, Slade, Smith, Mihelich, Hershenson, and Liang, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2247 (1979); Goldman, Kustanovich, Weinstein, Tishbee, and Gil-Av, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1093 (1982).

[83a] Weinstein, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 985 (1984).

[84] For reviews, see Blaschke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 13–24 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 14–25]; Rogozhin and Davankov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 565–575 (1968); Karger, Ref. 82.

[85] Ohara, Fujita, and Kwan, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **35,** 2049 (1962); Ohara, Ohta, and Kwan, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 76 (1964). See also Blaschke and Donow, *Chem. Ber.* **108,** 2792 (1975); Hess, Burger, and Musso, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 612 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 645].

[86] See, for example, Gil-Av, Feibush, and Charles-Sigler, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1009 (1966); Gil-Av, Tishbee, and Hare, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5115 (1980); Hesse and Hagel, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 996 (1976); König, Sievers, and Schulze, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 910 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 935]; Dobashi, Oka, and Hara, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7122 (1980); Okamoto, Honda, Okamoto, Yuki, Murata, Noyori, and Takaya, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 6971 (1981); Pirkle and Finn, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4037 (1982); Schlögl and Widhalm, *Chem. Ber.* **115,** 3042 (1982); Schurig and Bürkle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7573 (1982); Schurig and Weber, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 772 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 797].

[86a] See, for example, Pirkle and Welch, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 138 (1984).

[87] For reviews, see Collet, Brienne, and Jacques, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 215–230 (1980); *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 127–142 (1972), 494–498 (1977). For a discussion, see Curtin and Paul, *Chem. Rev.* **81,** 525–541 (1981), pp. 535–536.

[88] Besides discovering this method of resolution, Pasteur also discovered the method of conversion to diastereomers and separation by fractional crystallization and the method of biochemical separation.

[89] This is a case of optically active materials arising from inactive materials. However, it may be argued that an optically active investigator is required to use the tweezers. Perhaps a hypothetical human being constructed entirely of inactive molecules would be unable to tell the difference between left- and right-handed crystals.

5. *Differential reactivity.* Since enantiomers react with chiral compounds at different rates, it is sometimes possible to effect a partial separation by stopping the reaction before completion.[93] This method is very similar to the asymmetric syntheses discussed on p. 103. The most important application of this method[94] is the resolution of racemic alkenes by treatment with optically active diisopinocampheylborane, since alkenes do not easily lend themselves to conversion to diastereomers if no other functional groups are present.

Optical Purity[95]

Suppose we have just attempted to resolve a racemic mixture by one of the methods described in the previous section. How do we know that the two enantiomers we have obtained are pure? For example, how do we know that the (+) isomer is not contaminated by, say, 20% of the (−) isomer and vice versa? If we knew the value of [α] for the pure material ($[\alpha]_{max}$), we could easily determine the purity of our sample by measuring its rotation. For example, if $[\alpha]_{max}$ is +80° and our (+) enantiomer contains 20% of the (−) isomer, [α] for the sample will be +48°.[96] We define *optical purity* as

$$\text{Percent optical purity} = \frac{[\alpha]_{obs}}{[\alpha]_{max}} \times 100$$

Assuming that there is a linear relationship between [α] and concentration, which is true for most cases, the optical purity is equal to the percent excess of one enantiomer over the other:

$$\text{Optical purity} = \text{percent excess} = \frac{[R] - [S]}{[R] + [S]} \times 100 = \%R - \%S$$

---

[90] For a review of the seeding method, see Secor, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 297 (1963).

[91] Martin *et al.*, Ref. 39. See also Wynberg and Groen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5339 (1968).

[92] Wilson and Pincock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1474 (1975); Kress, Duesler, Etter, Paul, and Curtin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7709 (1980). See also Lu and Pincock, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 601 (1978). For a discussion and other examples, see Agranat, Perlmutter-Hayman, and Tapuhi, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **2,** 183 (1978).

[92a] Addadi, Weinstein, Gati, Weissbuch, and Lahav, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4610 (1982). See also Weissbuch, Addadi, Berkovitch-Yellin, Gati, Weinstein, Lahav, and Leiserowitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6615 (1983).

[93] For example, see Meurling, *Chem. Scr.* **6,** 92 (1974); Meurling and Bergson, *Chem. Scr.* **6,** 104 (1974); Martin, Woodard, Katsuki, Yamada, Ikeda, and Sharpless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 6237 (1981), and references cited in these papers.

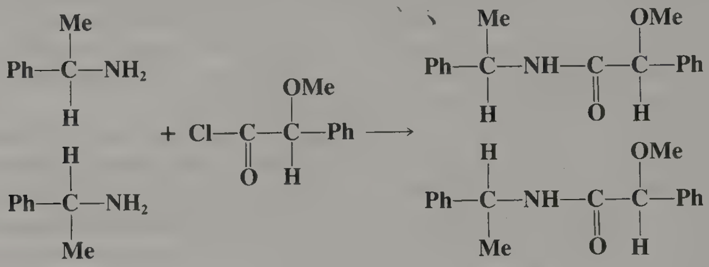
[94] Brown, Ayyangar, and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 397 (1964).

[95] For a review, see Raban and Mislow, *Top. Stereochem.* **2,** 199–230 (1967).

[96] If a sample contains 80% (+) and 20% (−) isomer, the (−) isomer cancels an equal amount of (+) isomer and the mixture behaves as if 60% of it were (+) and the other 40% inactive. Therefore the rotation is 60% of 80° or 48°. This type of calculation, however, is not valid for cases in which [α] is dependent on concentration (p. 84); see Horeau, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3121 (1969).

But how do we determine the value of $[\alpha]_{\max}$? It is plain that we have two related problems here; namely, what are the optical purities of our two samples and what is the value of $[\alpha]_{\max}$. If we solve one, the other is also solved. Several methods for solving these problems are known.

One of these methods involves the use of nmr.[97] Suppose we have a nonracemic mixture of two enantiomers and wish to know the proportions. We convert the mixture into a mixture of diastereomers with an optically pure reagent and look at the nmr spectrum of the resulting mixture, e.g.,



If we examined the nmr spectrum of the starting mixture, we would find only one peak (split into a doublet by the C—H) for the Me protons, since enantiomers give identical nmr spectra.[98] But the two amides are not enantiomers and each Me gives its own doublet. From the intensity of the two peaks, the relative proportions of the two diastereomers (and hence of the original enantiomers) can be determined. Alternatively, the unsplit OMe peaks could have been used. This method was satisfactorily used to determine the optical purity of a sample of 1-phenylethylamine (the case shown above),[99] as well as other cases, but it is obvious that sometimes corresponding groups in diastereomeric molecules will give nmr signals that are too close together for resolution. In such cases one may resort to the use of a different optically pure reagent. ^{13}C nmr has been used in a similar manner.[100]

A closely related method does not require conversion of enantiomers to diastereomers but relies on the fact that (in principle, at least) enantiomers have different nmr spectra *in a chiral solvent*. In some cases the peaks are separated enough to permit the proportions of enantiomers to be determined from their intensities.[101] Another variation, which gives better results in many cases, is to use an achiral solvent but with the addition of a *chiral lanthanide shift reagent* such as tris[3-trifluoroacetyl-*d*-camphorato]europium-(III).[102] Lanthanide shift reagents have the property of spreading nmr peaks of compounds with which they can form coordination compounds, e.g., alcohols, carbonyl compounds, amines, etc. Chiral lanthanide shift reagents shift the peaks of the two enantiomers of many such compounds to different extents.

Another method, involving gas chromatography,[103] is similar in principle to the nmr method.

---

[97] Raban and Mislow, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4249 (1965), 3961 (1966); Gerlach, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **49,** 2481 (1966); Dale, Dull, and Mosher, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2543 (1969); Jacobus and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4583 (1970); Baxter and Richards, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3357 (1972); Jacobus and Raban, *J. Chem. Educ.* **46,** 351 (1969). See also Ref. 95.

[98] Though enantiomers give identical nmr spectra, the spectrum of a single enantiomer may be different from that of the racemic mixture, even in solution. See Williams, Pitcher, Bommer, Gutzwiller, and Uskoković, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1871 (1969).

[99] Ref. 95, pp. 216–218. For some other chiral derivatizing agents, see Kalyanam and Lightner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 415 (1979); Pirkle and Simmons, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3239 (1981).

[100] Hiemstra and Wynberg, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2183 (1977).

[101] For a review of nmr chiral solvating agents, see Pirkle and Hoover, *Top. Stereochem.* **13,** 263–331 (1982).

[102] Whitesides and Lewis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6979 (1970), **93,** 5914 (1971). For a review of chiral lanthanide shift reagents, see Sullivan, *Top. Stereochem.* **10,** 287–329 (1978).

[103] Charles, Fischer, and Gil-Av, *Isr. J. Chem.* **1,** 234 (1963); Halpern and Westley, *Chem. Commun.* 246 (1965); Vitt, Saporovskaya, Gudkova, and Belikov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2575 (1965); Guetté and Horeau, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3049 (1965); Westley and Halpern, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3978 (1968).

A mixture of enantiomers whose purity is to be determined is converted by means of an optically pure reagent into a mixture of two diastereomers. These diastereomers are then separated by gas chromatography (p. 106) and the ratios determined from the peak areas. Once again, the ratio of diastereomers is the same as that of the original enantiomers. High-pressure liquid chromatography has been used in a similar manner and has wider applicability.[104] The direct separation of enantiomers by gas or liquid chromatography on a chiral column has also been used to determine optical purity.[105]

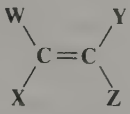
Other methods[106] involve isotopic dilution,[107] kinetic resolution,[108] and circular polarization of luminescence.[109]

CIS–TRANS ISOMERISM

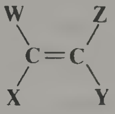
Compounds in which rotation is restricted may exhibit cis–trans isomerism.[110] These compounds do not rotate the plane of polarized light (unless they also happen to be chiral), and the properties of the isomers are not identical. The two most important types are isomerism resulting from double bonds and that resulting from rings.[111]

Cis–Trans Isomerism Resulting from Double Bonds

It has been mentioned (p. 9) that the two carbon atoms of a C=C double bond and the four atoms directly attached to them are all in the same plane and that rotation around the double bond is prevented. This means that in the case of a molecule WXC=CYZ, stereoisomerism exists when $W \neq X$ and $Y \neq Z$. There are two and only two isomers (**E** and **F**), each superimposably on its



E



F

mirror image unless one of the groups happens to carry a chiral center. Note that **E** and **F** are diastereomers, by the definition given on p. 100. There are two ways to name such isomers. In the older method, one isomer is called *cis* and the other *trans*. When W = Y, **E** is the cis and **F** the trans isomer. Unfortunately, there is no easy way to apply this method when the four groups are different. The newer method, which can be applied to all cases, is based on the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system (p. 96). The two groups at each carbon are ranked by the sequence rules. Then that isomer with the two higher ranking groups on the same side of the double bond is called *Z* (for the German word *zusammen* meaning *together*); the other is *E* (for *entgegen*, meaning *opposite*).[112] A few examples are shown. Note that the *Z* isomer is not necessarily the one that would be called

---

[104] Eberhardt, Glotzmann, Lehner, and Schlögl, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4365 (1974).

[105] Schurig, Koppenhöfer, and Bürkle, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 937 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 993]; Mannschreck, Mintas, Becher, and Stühler, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 469 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 490].

[106] See also Leitich, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3589 (1978); Hill, Zens, and Jacobus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 7090 (1979).

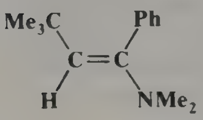
[107] Berson and Ben-Efraim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4083 (1959).

[108] Horeau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3171 (1964) *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2673 (1964); Horeau, Guetté, and Weidmann, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3513 (1966).

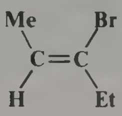
[109] Eaton, *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **8,** 251 (1971); Schippers and Dekkers, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2089 (1982).

[110] Cis–trans isomerism was formerly called *geometrical isomerism*.

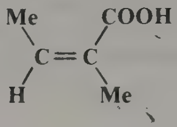
[111] For a review, see Crombie, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **6,** 101–140 (1952).



E

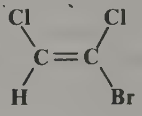


Z



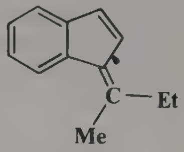
Z

31



E

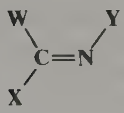
32



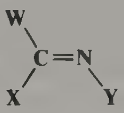
E

cis under the older system (e.g., **31, 32**). Like cis and trans, *E* and *Z* are used as prefixes; e.g., **32** is called (*E*)-1-bromo-1,2-dichloroethene.

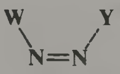
This type of isomerism is also possible with other double bonds, such as C=N,[113] N=N, or even C=S,[114] although in these cases only two or three groups are connected to the double-bond atoms. In the case of imines, oximes, and other C=N compounds, if W = Y **33** may be called syn and **34** anti, though *E* and *Z* are often used here too. In azo compounds there is no ambiguity. **35** is always syn or *Z* regardless of the nature of W and Y.



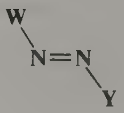
33



34



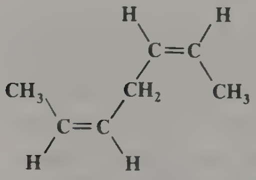
Z



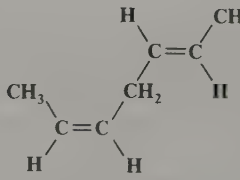
E

35

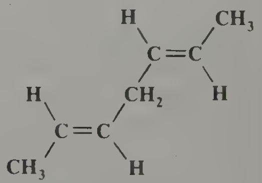
If there is more than one double bond[115] in a molecule and if W ≠ X and Y ≠ Z for each, the number of isomers in the most general case is 2^n, although this number may be decreased if some of the substituents are the same, as in



cis-cis or
Z, *Z*



cis-trans or
Z, *E*



trans-trans or
E, *E*

When a molecule contains a double bond and an asymmetric carbon, there are four isomers, a cis pair of enantiomers and a trans pair:

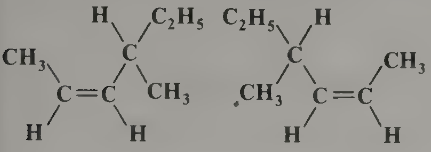
---

[112] For a complete description of the system, see Ref. 2.

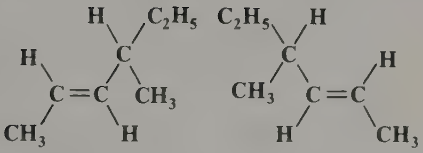
[113] For reviews of isomerizations about C=N bonds, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," Interscience, New York, 1970, see the articles by McCarty, 363–464 (pp. 364–408), and Wettermark, 565–596 (pp. 574–582).

[114] King and Durst, *Can. J. Chem.* **44**, 819 (1966).

[115] This rule does not apply to allenes, which do not show cis–trans isomerism at all (see p. 90).



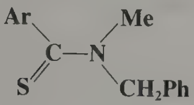
Z or cis *dl* pair



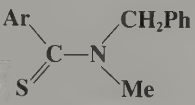
E or trans *dl* pair

Double bonds in small rings are so constrained that they must be cis. From cyclopropene (a known system) to cycloheptene, double bonds in a ring cannot be trans. However, the cyclooctene ring is large enough to permit trans double bonds to exist (see **17**), and for rings larger than 10- or 11-membered, trans isomers are more stable.[116]

In a few cases, single-bond rotation is so slowed that cis and trans isomers can be isolated even where no double bond exists. One example is N-methyl-N-benzylthiomesitylide (**36** and **37**),[117] the

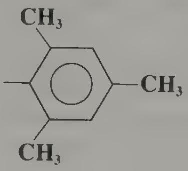


36

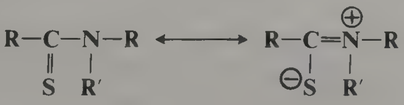


37

Ar =



isomers of which are stable in the crystalline state but interconvert with a half-life of about 25 hr in $CDCl_3$ at 50°C. This type of isomerism is rare; it is found chiefly in certain amides and thioamides, because resonance gives the single bond some double-bond character and slows rotation.[34a] (For other examples of restricted rotation about single bonds, see pp. 139–140).



$$R-\underset{\displaystyle S}{\overset{\|}{C}}-\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\overset{|}{N}}-R \longleftrightarrow R-\underset{\displaystyle {}^{\ominus}S}{\overset{|}{C}}=\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\overset{\oplus}{N}}-R$$

Since they are diastereomers, cis–trans isomers always differ in properties; the differences may range from very slight to considerable. The properties of maleic acid are so different from those of fumaric acid (Table 1) that it is not surprising that they have different names. Since they generally have more symmetry than cis isomers, trans isomers usually have higher melting points and lower solubilities in inert solvents. The cis isomer usually has a higher heat of combustion, which indicates a lower thermochemical stability. Other noticeably different properties are densities, acid strengths, boiling points, and various types of spectra, but the differences are too involved to be discussed here. It should be emphasized that the principles discussed in this paragraph are no more than general rules and that many exceptions are known.[118]

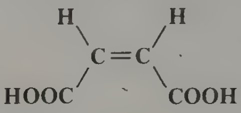
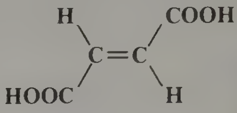
---

[116] Cope, Moore, and Moore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3153 (1959).

[117] Mannschreck, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 985 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 1032]. See also Toldy and Radics, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4753 (1966); Völter and Helmchen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1251 (1978); Walter and Hühnerfuss, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2147 (1981).

[118] For a discussion and references to examples, see Bingham, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 535 (1976).

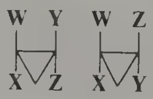
TABLE 1 Some properties of maleic and fumaric acids

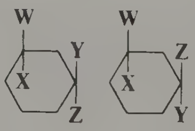
Property	 **Maleic acid**	 **Fumaric acid**
Melting point, °C	130	286
Solubility in water at 25°C, g/liter	788	7
K_1 (at 25°C)	1.5×10^{-2}	1×10^{-3}
K_2 (at 25°C)	2.6×10^{-7}	3×10^{-5}

Cis–Trans Isomerism of Monocyclic Compounds

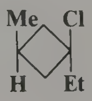
Although rings of four carbons and larger are not generally planar (see p. 129), they will be treated as such in this section, since the correct number of isomers can be determined when this is done[119] and the principles are easier to visualize (see p. 126).

The presence of a ring, like that of a double bond, prevents rotation. Cis and trans isomers are possible whenever there are two carbons on a ring, each of which is substituted by two different groups. The two carbons need not be adjacent. Examples are





As with double bonds, W may equal Y and X may equal Z, but W may not equal X and Y may not equal Z if cis and trans isomers are to be possible. There is an important difference from the double-bond case; the substituted carbons are chiral carbons. This means that there are not *only* two isomers. In the most general case, where W ≠ X ≠ Y ≠ Z, there are four isomers since neither the cis nor the trans isomer is superimposable on its mirror image. This is true regardless of ring size or which carbons are involved, except that in rings of even-numbered size when the chiral carbons are opposite each other, no chirality is present, e.g., **38.** Note that a plane of symmetry exists in such compounds. When W = Y and X = Z, the cis isomer is always super-

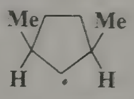


38

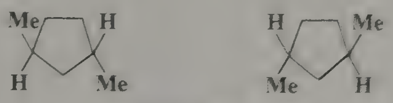
---

[119] For a discussion of why this is so, see Leonard, Hammond, and Simmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5052 (1975).

imposable on its mirror image and hence is a meso compound, while the trans isomer consists of a *dl* pair, except in the case noted above.



cis meso



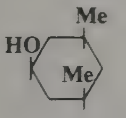
trans *dl* pair

Again, the cis isomer has a plane of symmetry while the trans does not.

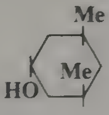
Rings with more than two differently substituted carbons can be dealt with on similar principles. In some cases it is not easy to tell the number of isomers by inspection.[62] The best method for the student is to count the number *n* of differently substituted carbons (these will normally be asymmetric, but not always, e.g., in **38**) and then to draw 2^n structures, crossing out those that can be superimposed on others (usually the easiest method is to look for a plane of symmetry). By this means it can be determined that for 1,2,3-cyclohexanetriol there are two meso compounds and a *dl* pair; and for 1,2,3,4,5,6-hexachlorocyclohexane there are seven meso compounds and a *dl* pair. The drawing of these structures is left as an exercise for the student.

Similar principles apply to heterocyclic rings as long as there are carbons (or other ring atoms) containing two different groups.

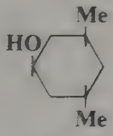
Cyclic stereoisomers containing only two differently substituted carbons are named either cis or trans, as previously indicated. The *Z*, *E* system is not used for cyclic compounds. However, if one tries to name ring compounds with more than two differently substituted atoms using only the prefixes cis and trans, one soon runs into difficulties, and yet until recently this was the way they were most commonly named. For example, **39** could unambiguously be given the prefix cis, cis,



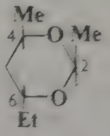
39



40



41

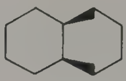


42

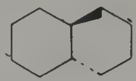
but **40** might be trans, trans or, perhaps with equal justice, cis, trans. For chiral compounds, a way out of this dilemma is to use the *R*, *S* system to label each asymmetric carbon, but this can hardly be applied to cases like **39** and **40**, where C-1 is not asymmetric. A solution to this problem is the following system, in which the configuration of each group is given with respect to a reference group, which is chosen as the group attached to the lowest-numbered ring member bearing a substituent giving rise to cis–trans isomerism. The reference group is indicated by the symbol *r*. Thus, **39** is *c*-3,*c*-5-dimethylcyclohexan-*r*-1-ol, **40** is *t*-3,*t*-5-dimethylcyclohexan-*r*-1-ol, and **41** is *c*-3,*t*-5-dimethylcyclohexan-*r*-1-ol. The last example demonstrates the rule that when there are two otherwise equivalent ways of going around the ring, one chooses the path that gives the cis designation to the first substituent after the reference. Another example is *r*-2,*c*-4-dimethyl-*t*-6-ethyl-1,3-dioxane (**42**). This system is clear and unambiguous.

Cis–Trans Isomerism of Fused-Ring Systems

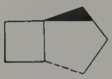
Where the rings are fused through adjacent atoms, there is no new principle. The fusion may be cis or trans, as illustrated by *cis*- and *trans*-decalin. However, when the rings are small enough, the trans configuration is impossible and the junction must be cis. The smallest trans junction that has been prepared when one ring is four-membered is a four–five junction; *trans*-bicyclo-[3.2.0]heptane (**43**) is known.[120] For the bicyclo[2.2.0] system (a four–four fusion), only cis compounds have been made. The smallest known trans junction when one ring is three-membered is a six–three junction (a bicyclo[4.1.0] system). An example is **44.**[121] When one ring is three-membered and the other eight-membered (an eight–three junction), the trans-fused isomer is more stable than the corresponding cis-fused isomer.[122]



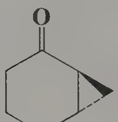
cis-Decalin



trans-Decalin

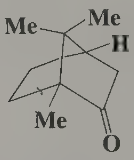


43

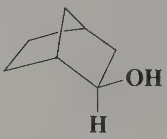


44

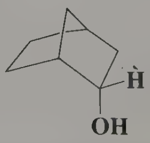
Rings that are fused through nonadjacent atoms are called *bridged*. In bridged-ring systems there may be fewer than 2^n isomers because of the structure of the system. For example, there are only two isomers of camphor (**45**) (a *dl* pair), although it has two asymmetric carbons. In both isomers the methyl and hydrogen are cis. The trans pair of enantiomers is impossible in this case, since the bridge *must* be cis. When one of the bridges contains a substituent, the question arises as to how to name the isomers involved. When the two bridges that do *not* contain the substituent are of unequal length, the rule generally followed is that the prefix *endo-* is used when the substituent is closer to the longer of the two unsubstituted bridges; the prefix *exo-* is used when the substituent is closer to the shorter bridge; e.g.,



45



exo-2-Norborneol



endo-2-Norborneol

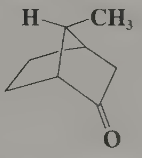
---

[120] Meinwald, Tufariello, and Hurst, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2914 (1964).

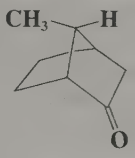
[121] Paukstelis and Kao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4783 (1972). For references to other examples, see Gassman and Bonser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 667 (1983).

[122] Corbally, Perkins, Carson, Laye, and Steele, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 778 (1978).

When the two bridges not containing the substituent are of equal length, this convention cannot be applied, but in some cases a decision can still be made; e.g., if one of the two bridges contains a functional group, the endo isomer is the one in which the substituent is closer to the functional group:



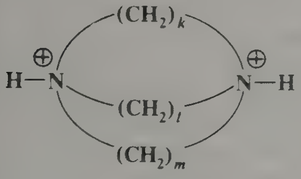
endo-7-Methyl-2-norcamphor



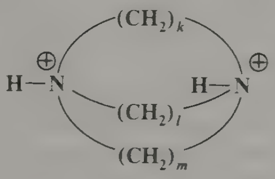
exo-7-Methyl-2-norcamphor

Out–In Isomerism

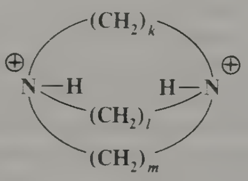
Another type of stereoisomerism, called *out–in isomerism*, is found in salts of tricyclic diamines with nitrogen at the bridgeheads. In cases where *k*, *l*, and *m* > 6, the N—H bonds can be inside the molecular cavity or outside, giving rise to three isomers, as shown. Simmons and Park[123] have isolated several such isomers with *k*, *l*, and *m* varying from 6 to 10. In the 9,9,9 compound, the cavity of the in–in isomer is large enough to encapsulate a chloride ion that is hydrogen bonded to the two N—H groups. The species thus formed is a cryptate, but differs from the cryptates discussed at p. 78 in that there is a negative rather than a positive ion enclosed.[123a] Even smaller ones (e.g., the 4,4,4 compound) have been shown to form mono-inside-protonated ions.[124] Out–in and in–in isomers have also been prepared in analogous all-carbon tricyclic systems.[124a]



out-out isomer



out-in isomer



in-in isomer

Enantiotopic and Diastereotopic Atoms, Groups, and Faces[125]

Many molecules contain atoms or groups which appear to be equivalent but which a close inspection will show to be actually different. We can test whether two atoms are equivalent by replacing each of them in turn with some other atom or group. If the new molecules created by this process are identical, the original atoms are equivalent; otherwise not. We can distinguish three cases.

---

[123] Simmons and Park, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2428 (1968); Park and Simmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2429, 2431 (1968); Simmons, Park, Uyeda, and Habibi, *Trans. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* **32,** 521 (1970). See also Dietrich, Lehn, and Sauvage, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2885, 2889 (1969), *Tetrahedron* **29,** 1647 (1973); Dietrich, Lehn, Sauvage, and Blanzat, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 1629 (1973).

[123a] For a review, see Pierre and Baret, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II–367–II–380 (1983).

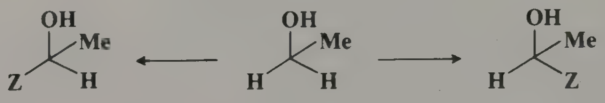
[124] Alder, Moss, and Sessions, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 997, 1000 (1983); Alder, Orpen, and Sessions, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 999 (1983). See also Dietrich, Guilhem, Lehn, Pascard, and Sonveaux, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **67,** 91 (1984).

[124a] Park and Simmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7184 (1972); Gassman and Thummel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7183 (1972); Gassman and Hoye, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 215 (1981). See also Haines and Karntaing, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2577 (1979).

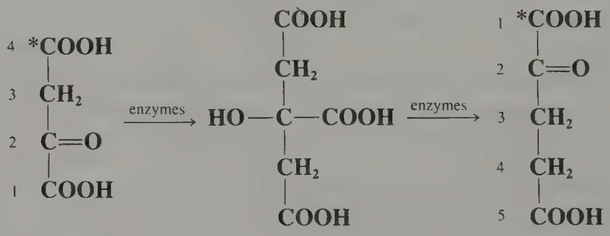
[125] These terms were coined by Mislow. For lengthy discussions of this subject, see Eliel, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **105,** 1–76 (1982), *J. Chem. Educ.* **57,** 52 (1980); Mislow and Raban, *Top. Stereochem.* **1,** 1–38 (1967). See also Ault, *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 729 (1974); Kaloustian and Kaloustian, *J. Chem. Educ.* **52,** 56 (1975); Jennings, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 307–322 (1975).

1. In the case of malonic acid $CH_2(COOH)_2$, propane CH_2Me_2, or any other molecule of the form CH_2Y_2,[126] if we replace either of the CH_2 hydrogens by a group Z, the identical compound results. The two hydrogens are thus equivalent. Equivalent atoms and groups need not, of course, be located on the same carbon atom. For example, all the chlorine atoms of hexachlorobenzene are equivalent as are the two bromine atoms of 1,3-dibromopropane.

2. In the case of ethanol CH_2MeOH, if we replace one of the CH_2 hydrogens by a group Z, we get one enantiomer of the compound ZCHMeOH (**46**), while replacement of the other hydrogen gives the *other* enantiomer (**47**). Since the two compounds which result upon replacement of H by Z (**46** and **47**) are not identical but enantiomeric, the hydrogens are *not* equivalent. We define as *enantiotopic* two atoms or groups that upon replacement with a third group give enantiomers. In any symmetric environment the two hydrogens behave as equivalent, but in a dissymmetric environment they may behave differently. For example, in a reaction with a chiral reagent they may be attacked at different rates. This has its most important consequences in enzymatic reactions,[127] since enzymes are capable of much greater discrimination than ordinary chiral reagents. An example is found in the Krebs cycle, in biological organisms, where oxaloacetic acid (**48**) is converted to α-oxoglutaric acid (**50**) by a sequence that includes citric acid (**49**) as an intermediate. When **48** is labeled with ^{14}C at the 4 position, the label is found only at C-1 of **50**, despite the fact that **49** is not chiral. The two CH_2COOH groups of **49** are enantiotopic and the enzyme easily discriminates between them.[128] Note that the X atoms or groups of any molecule of the form CX_2WY are always



46 **47**



48 **49** **50**

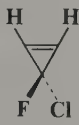
---

[126] In the case where Y is itself a chiral group, this statement is only true when the two Y groups have the same configuration.

[127] For a nonenzymatic example, see Job and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 809 (1974).

[128] The experiments were carried out by Evans and Slotin, *J. Biol. Chem.* **141,** 439 (1941); Wood, Werkman, Hemingway, and Nier, *J. Biol. Chem.* **142,** 31 (1942). The correct interpretation was given by Ogston, *Nature* **162,** 963 (1948). For discussion, see Hirschmann, in Florkin and Stotz, "Comprehensive Biochemistry," vol. 12, pp. 236–260, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 1964; Cornforth, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 1515 (1974); Vennesland, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **48,** 39–65 (1974); Eliel, *Top. Curr. Chem.*, Ref. 125, pp. 5–7, 45–70.

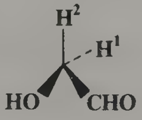
enantiotopic if neither W nor Y is chiral, though enantiotopic atoms and groups may also be found in other molecules, e.g., the hydrogen atoms in 3-fluoro-3-chlorocyclopropene (**51**). In this case,



51

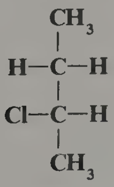
substitution of an H by a group Z makes the C-3 atom asymmetric and substitution at C-1 gives the opposite enantiomer from substitution at C-2.

The term *prochiral*[129] is used for a compound or group that has two enantiotopic atoms or groups, e.g., CX_2WY. That atom or group X that would lead to an *R* compound if preferred to the other is called *pro-R*. The other is *pro-S*; e.g.,



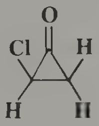
H^2 = pro-*S*
H^1 = pro-*R*

3. Where two atoms or groups in a molecule are in such positions that replacing each of them in turn by a group Z gives rise to diastereomers, the atoms or groups are called *diastereotopic*. Some examples are the CH_2 groups of 2-chlorobutane (**52**) and chlorocyclopropane (**53**) and the two olefinic hydrogens of **54**. Note that in **53** one hydrogen from the CH_2 group is cis to the Cl while the other is trans, so that they are obviously different. Diastereotopic atoms and groups are different in any environment, chiral or achiral. These hydrogens react at different rates with achiral reagents, but an even more important consequence is that in nmr spectra, diastereotopic hydrogens theoretically give different peaks and split each other. This is in sharp contrast to equivalent or enantiotopic hydrogens, which are indistinguishable in the nmr, except when chiral solvents are used, in which case enantiotopic (but not equivalent) protons give different peaks.[130] The term *isochronous* is used for hydrogens that are indistinguishable in the nmr.[131] In practice, the nmr signals from diastereotopic protons are often found to be indistinguishable, but this is merely because they are very close

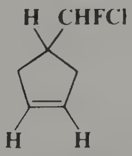


$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ | \\ H{-}C{-}H \\ | \\ Cl{-}C{-}H \\ | \\ CH_3 \end{array}$$

52



53



54

---

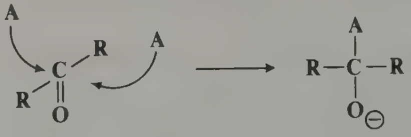
[129] Hanson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2731 (1966); Hirschmann and Hanson, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 3649 (1974).

[130] Pirkle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1837 (1966); Burlingame and Pirkle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4294 (1966); Pirkle and Burlingame, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4039 (1967).

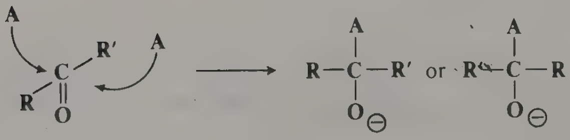
[131] For a review of isochronous and nonisochronous nuclei in the nmr, see van Gorkom and Hall, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **22,** 14–29 (1968). For a discussion, see Silverstein and LaLonde, *J. Chem. Educ.* **57,** 343 (1980).

together. Theoretically they are distinct, and they have been resolved in many cases. When they appear together, it is sometimes possible to resolve them by the use of lanthanide shift reagents[132] (p. 108) or by changing the solvent or concentration. Note that X atoms or groups in CX_2WY are diastereotopic if either W or Y is chiral.

Just as there are enantiotopic and diastereotopic atoms and groups, so we may distinguish *enantiotopic and diastereotopic faces* in trigonal molecules. Again we have three cases: (1) In formaldehyde or acetone (**55**), attack by an achiral reagent A from either face of the molecule

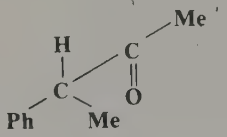


55



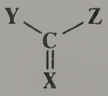
56

gives rise to the same transition state and product; the two faces are thus equivalent. (2) In butanone or acetaldehyde (**56**), attack by an achiral A at one face gives a transition state and product that are the enantiomers of those arising from attack at the other face. Such faces are enantiotopic. As we have already seen (p. 93), a racemic mixture must result in this situation. However, attack at an enantiotopic face by a chiral reagent gives diastereomers, which are not formed in equal amounts. (3) In a case like **57**, the two faces are obviously not equivalent and are called diastereotopic.

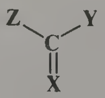


57

Enantiotopic and diastereotopic faces can be named by an extension of the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system.[129] If the three groups as arranged by the sequence rules have the order X > Y > Z, that



G



H

face in which the groups in this sequence are clockwise (as in **G**) is the *Re* face (from Latin *rectus*) whereas **H** shows the *Si* face (from Latin *sinister*).

The word *stereoheterotopic* has been suggested[133] as a term that would include both enantiotopic and diastereotopic atoms, groups, and faces. Equivalent atoms, groups, and faces would then be *homotopic*.

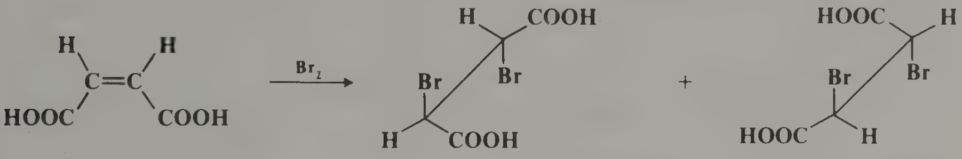
---

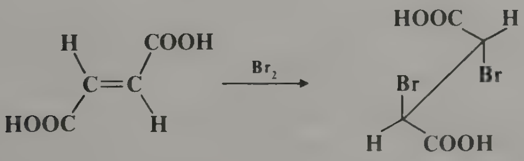
[132] For example, see Schiemenz and Rast, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4685 (1971).

[133] Eliel, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 163 (1971), **57,** 52 (1980).

Stereospecific and Stereoselective Syntheses

Any reaction in which only one of a set of stereoisomers is formed exclusively or predominantly is called a *stereoselective* synthesis.[134] The same term is used when a mixture of two or more stereoisomers is exclusively or predominantly formed at the expense of other stereoisomers. In a *stereospecific* reaction, a given isomer leads to one product while another stereoisomer leads to the opposite product. All stereospecific reactions are necessarily stereoselective, but the converse is not true. These terms are best illustrated by examples. Thus, if maleic acid treated with bromine gives the *dl* pair of 2,3-dibromosuccinic acid while fumaric acid gives the meso isomer (this is the case), the reaction is stereospecific as well as stereoselective because two opposite isomers give two opposite isomers:





However, if both maleic and fumaric acid gave the *dl* pair or a mixture in which the *dl* pair predominated, the reaction would be stereoselective but not stereospecific. If more or less equal amounts of *dl* and meso forms were produced in each case, the reaction would be nonstereoselective. A consequence of these definitions is that if a reaction is carried out on a compound that has no stereoisomers, it cannot be stereospecific, but at most stereoselective. For example, addition of bromine to methylacetylene could (and does) result in preferential formation of *trans*-1,2-dibromopropene, but this can be only a stereoselective, not a stereospecific reaction. Unfortunately, the term stereospecific is sometimes used in the literature where stereoselective is meant.

CONFORMATIONAL ANALYSIS

If two different three-dimensional arrangements in space of the atoms in a molecule are interconvertible merely by free rotation about bonds, they are called *conformations*; if not, *configurations*.[135]

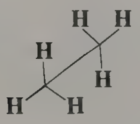
[134] For a further discussion of these terms and of stereoselective reactions in general, see Eliel, "Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds," Ref. 1, pp. 434–446. For a review of how certain reactions can be run with stereocontrol, see Bartlett, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2–72 (1980).

[135] For treatises on conformational analysis, see Eliel, Allinger, Angyal, and Morrison, "Conformational Analysis," Interscience, New York, 1965; Hanack, "Conformation Theory," Academic Press, New York, 1965; Chiurdoglu, "Conformational Analysis," Academic Press, New York, 1971. For reviews, see Dale, *Top. Stereochem.* **9,** 199–270 (1976); Truax and Wieser, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **5,** 411–429 (1976); Eliel, *J. Chem. Educ.* **52,** 762–767 (1975); Bastiansen, Seip, and Boggs, *Perspect. Struct. Chem.* **4,** 60–165 (1971); Lau, *Angew. Chem.* **73,** 423–432 (1961); (for oxygen and sulfur compounds) Bushweller and Gianni, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pp. 215–278, Wiley, New York, 1980.

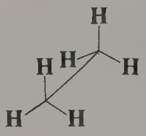
Configurations represent *isomers* that can be separated, as previously discussed in this chapter. Conformations represent *conformers*, which are rapidly interconvertible and thus nonseparable. The terms "conformational isomer" and "rotamer" are sometimes used instead of "conformer." A number of methods have been used to determine conformations.[136] These include x-ray and electron diffraction, ir, Raman, uv, nmr,[137] and microwave spectra,[138] photoelectron spectroscopy,[139] and optical rotatory dispersion and circular dichroism measurements.[140] Some of these methods are useful only for solids. It must be kept in mind that the conformation of a molecule in the solid state is not necessarily the same as in solution.[141]

Conformation in Open-Chain Systems

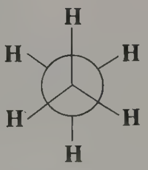
For any open-chain single bond connecting two sp^3 carbon atoms, there are an infinite number of conformations possible, each of which has a certain energy associated with it. For ethane there are two extremes, a conformation of highest and one of lowest potential energy, depicted in **58** and **59** and, by another type of diagram, in **60** and **61.** In the latter type of diagram, called the *Newman projection formula*, the observer looks at the C—C bond head on. The three lines emanating from the center of the circle represent the bonds coming from the front carbon, with respect to the observer.



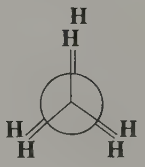
58
Staggered



59
Eclipsed



60
Staggered



61
Eclipsed

---

[136] For reviews, see Lau, *Angew. Chem.* **73,** 423–432 (1961); Eliel, Allinger, Angyal, and Morrison, Ref. 135, pp. 129–188.

[137] For reviews of the use of nmr to study conformational questions, see Anet and Anet, in Nachod and Zuckerman, "Determination of Organic Structures by Physical Methods," vol. 3, pp. 343–420, Academic Press, New York, 1971; Anderson, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **19,** 426–439 (1965); Franklin and Feltkamp, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 774–783 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 798–807; Johnson, *Adv. Magn. Reson.* **1,** 33–102 (1965); Kessler, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 219–235 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 237–253]; Ivanova and Kugatova-Shemyakina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 510–528 (1970).

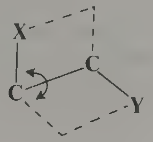
[138] For a review see Wilson, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **1,** 293–318 (1972).

[139] For a review, see Klessinger and Rademacher, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 826–837 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 885–896].

[140] For monographs, see Kagan, "Determination of Configurations by Dipole Moments, CD, or ORD" (vol. 2 of Kagan, "Stereochemistry"), Georg Thieme Publishers, Stuttgart, 1977; Crabbé, "ORD and CD in Chemistry and Biochemistry," Academic Press, New York, 1972, "Optical Rotatory Dispersion and Circular Dichroism in Organic Chemistry," Holden-Day, San Francisco, 1965; Snatzke, "Optical Rotatory Dispersion and Circular Dichroism in Organic Chemistry," Sadtler Research Laboratories, Philadelphia, 1967; Velluz, Legrand, and Grosjean, "Optical Circular Dichroism," Academic Press, New York, 1965; Djerassi, "Optical Rotatory Dispersion," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1960. For reviews, see Smith, *Chem. Rev.* **83,** 359–377 (1983); Håkansson, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Acid Derivatives," pt. 1, pp. 67–120, Wiley, New York, 1979; Hudec and Kirk, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2475–2506 (1976); Schellman, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 323–331 (1975); Velluz and Legrand, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.*, 1785–1795 (1970); Barrett, in Bentley and Kirby, Ref. 56, pt. 1, pp. 515–610, 1972; Snatzke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 14–25 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 15–26]; Crabbé in Nachod and Zuckerman, Ref. 137, vol. 3, pp. 133–205; Crabbé and Klyne, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 3449 (1967); Crabbé, *Top. Stereochem.* **1,** 93–198 (1967); Eyring, Liu, and Caldwell, *Chem. Rev.* **68,** 525–540 (1968); Yufit and Kucherov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 235–244 (1962); Djerassi, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **2,** 475–504 (1961); Klyne, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **1,** 239–348 (1960).

[141] See Kessler, Zimmermann, Förster, Engel, Oepen, and Sheldrick, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 1053 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* 93, 1085].

The staggered conformation (**58** or **60**) is the conformation of lowest potential energy for ethane. As the bond rotates, the energy gradually increases until the eclipsed conformation (**59** or **61**) is reached, when the energy is at a maximum. Further rotation decreases the energy again. Figure 3 illustrates this. The *angle of torsion*, which is a dihedral angle, is the angle between the XCC and the CCY planes, as shown:



For ethane the difference in energy is about 2.9 kcal/mol.[142] This difference is called the *energy barrier*, since in free rotation about a single bond there must be enough rotational energy present to cross the barrier every time two hydrogen atoms are opposite each other. There has been much speculation about the cause of the barriers and many explanations have been suggested.[143] Molecular-orbital calculations show that the barrier is caused by repulsion between overlapping filled molecular orbitals.[143a] That is, the ethane molecule has its lowest energy in conformation **58** because in this conformation the orbitals of the C—H bonds have the least amount of overlap with the C—H orbitals of the adjacent carbon.

At ordinary temperatures enough rotational energy is present for the ethane molecule to rapidly

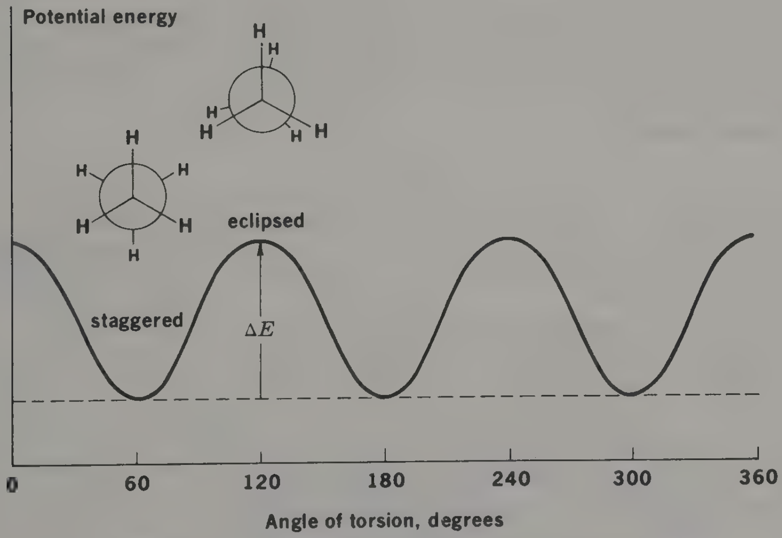


Figure 3 Conformational energy diagram for ethane.

---

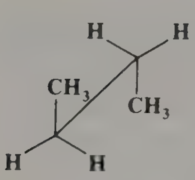
[142] Lide, *J. Chem. Phys.* **29,** 1426 (1958); Weiss and Leroi, *J. Chem. Phys.* **48,** 962 (1968); Hirota, Saito, and Endo, *J. Chem. Phys.* **71,** 1183 (1979).

[143] For a review of methods of measuring barriers, of attempts to explain barriers, and of values of barriers, see Lowe, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 1–80 (1968). For other reviews of this subject, see Oosterhoff, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **25,** 563–571 (1971); Wyn-Jones and Pethrick, *Top. Stereochem.* **5,** 205–274 (1970); Pethrick and Wyn-Jones, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **23,** 301–324 (1969); Brier, *J. Mol. Struct.* **6,** 23–36 (1970); Lowe, *Science* **179,** 527–533 (1973).

[143a] See Pitzer, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 207–210 (1983).

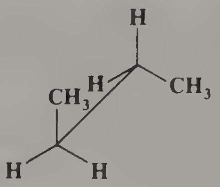
rotate, though it still spends most of its time at or near the energy minimum. Groups larger than hydrogen cause larger barriers. When the barriers are large enough, as in the case of suitably substituted biphenyls (p. 89), rotation at room temperature is completely prevented and we speak of configurations, not conformations. Even for compounds with small barriers, cooling to low temperatures may remove enough rotational energy for what would otherwise be conformational isomers to become configurational isomers.

A slightly more complicated case than ethane is that of a 1,2-disubstituted ethane ($YCH_2—CH_2Y$ or $YCH_2—CH_2X$),[144] such as *n*-butane, for which there are four extremes: a fully staggered conformation, called *anti* or *antiperiplanar* (**62**); another staggered conformation, called *gauche* or *synclinal* (**64**); and two types of eclipsed conformations, called *synperiplanar* (**65**) and *anticlinal* (**63**). An energy diagram for this systsem is given in Figure 4. Although there is constant rotation about the central bond, it is possible to estimate what percentage of the molecules are in each conformation at a given time. For example, it was concluded from a consideration of dipole moment



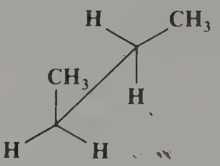
anti or
antiperiplanar

62



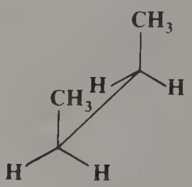
anticlinal

63



gauche or
synclinal

64



synperiplanar

65

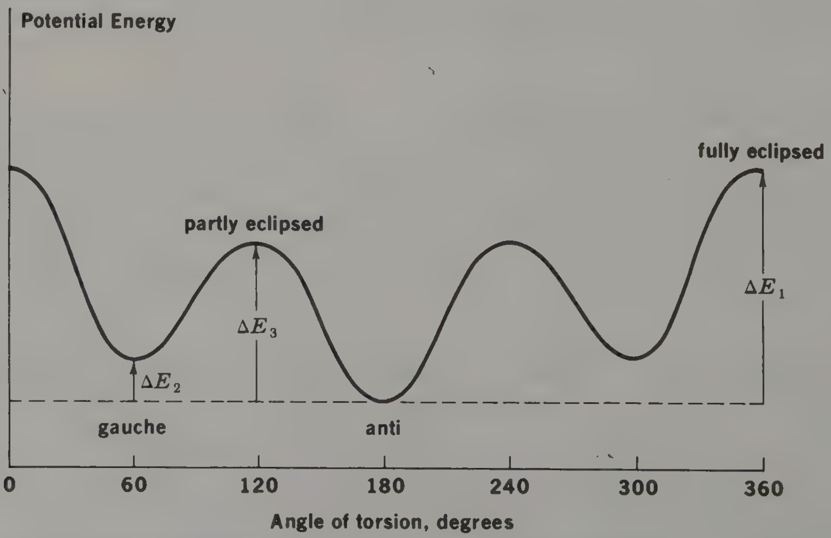


Figure 4 Conformational energy for $YCH_2—CH_2Y$ or $YCH_2—CH_2X$. For *n*-butane, $\Delta E_1 = 4$ to 6, $\Delta E_2 = 0.8$, and $\Delta E_3 = 3.4$ kcal/mol.

---

[144] For a discussion of the conformational analysis of such systems, see Kingsbury, *J. Chem. Educ.* **56**, 431–437 (1979).

and polarizability measurements that for 1,2-dichloroethane in CCl_4 solution at 25°C about 70% of the molecules are in the anti and about 30% in the gauche conformation.[145] The corresponding figures for 1,2-dibromoethane are 89% anti and 11% gauche.[146] The eclipsed conformations are unpopulated and serve only as pathways from one staggered conformation to another. Solids normally consist of a single conformer.

It may be observed that the gauche conformation of butane (**64**) or any other similar molecule is chiral. The lack of optical activity in such compounds arises from the fact that **64** and its mirror image are always present in equal amounts and interconvert too rapidly for separation.

For butane and for most other molecules of the forms $YCH_2—CH_2Y$ and $YCH_2—CH_2X$, the anti conformer is the most stable, but exceptions are known. One group of exceptions consists of molecules containing small electronegative atoms, especially fluorine and oxygen. Thus 2-fluoroethanol,[147] 1,2-difluoroethane,[148] and 2-fluoroethyl trichloroacetate ($FCH_2CH_2OCOCCl_3$)[149] exist predominantly in the gauche form and compounds such as 2-chloroethanol and 2-bromoethanol[147] also prefer the gauche form. There is as yet no generally accepted explanation for this behavior.[150] It was believed that the favorable gauche conformation of 2-fluoroethanol was the result of intramolecular hydrogen bonding, but this explanation does not do for molecules like 2-fluoroethyl trichloroacetate and has in fact been ruled out for 2-fluoroethanol as well.[151] Other exceptions are known, where small electronegative atoms are absent. For example, 1,1,2,2-tetrachloroethane and 1,1,2,2-tetrabromoethane both prefer the gauche conformation,[152] even though 1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane prefers the anti.[153] Also, both 2,3-dimethylpentane and 3,4-dimethylhexane prefer the gauche conformation,[154] and 2,3-dimethylbutane shows no preference for either.[155]

All the conformations so far discussed have involved rotation about sp^3–sp^3 bonds. Many studies have also been made of compounds with sp^3–sp^2 bonds.[156] For example, propionaldehyde (or any similar molecule) has four extreme conformations, two of which are called *eclipsing* and the other two *bisecting*. For propionaldehyde the eclipsing conformations have lower energy than the other two, with **66** favored over **67** by about 900 cal/mol.[157] As we have already pointed out (p. 111), for a few of these compounds, rotation is slow enough to permit cis–tris isomerism, though for simple compounds rotation is rapid. For example, acetaldehyde has a lower rotational barrier (about 1 kcal/mol) than ethane.[158]

---

[145] Aroney, Izsak, and Le Fèvre, *J. Chem. Soc.* (1962); Le Fèvre and Orr, *Aust. J. Chem.* **17,** 1098 (1964).

[146] The anti form of butane itself is also more stable than the gauche form: Schrumpf, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 146 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 152].

[147] Wyn-Jones and Orville-Thomas, *J. Mol. Struct.* **1,** 79 (1967); Buckley, Giguère, and Yamamoto, *Can. J. Chem.* **46,** 2917 (1968); Hagen and Hedberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8263 (1973); Davenport and Schwartz, *J. Mol. Struct.* **50,** 259 (1978).

[148] Klaboe and Nielsen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **33,** 1764 (1960); Abraham and Kemp, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1240 (1971); Bulthuis, van den Berg, and MacLean, *J. Mol. Struct.* **16,** 11 (1973); van Schaick, Geise, Mijlhoff, and Renes, *J. Mol. Struct.* **16,** 23 (1973); Friesen and Hedberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3987 (1980); Fernholt and Kveseth, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. A* **34,** 163 (1980).

[149] Abraham and Monasterios, *Org. Magn. Reson.* **5,** 305 (1973).

[150] It has been proposed that the preference for the gauche conformation in these molecules is an example of a more general phenomenon, known as the *gauche effect,* i.e., a tendency to adopt that structure that has the maximum number of gauche interactions between adjacent electron pairs or polar bonds. This effect is ascribed to nuclear electron attractive forces between the groups or unshared pairs: Wolfe, Rauk, Tel, and Csizmadia, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 136 (1971); Wolfe, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 102–111 (1972). See also Phillips and Wray, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 90 (1973); Radom, Hehre, and Pople, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2371 (1972); Zefirov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **10,** 1147 (1974); Juaristi, *J. Chem. Educ.* **56,** 438 (1979).

[151] Griffith and Roberts, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3499 (1974).

[152] Kagarise, *J. Chem. Phys.* **24,** 300 (1956).

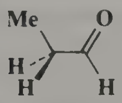
[153] Brown and Beagley, *J. Mol. Struct.* **38,** 167 (1977).

[154] Ritter, Hull, and Cantow, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3093 (1978).

[155] Lunazzi, Macciantelli, Bernardi, and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4573 (1977).

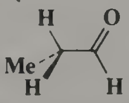
[156] For reviews, see Karabatsos and Fenoglio, *Top. Stereochem.* **5,** 167–203 (1970); (for esters) Jones and Owen, *J. Mol. Struct.* **18,** 1–32 (1973). See also Schweizer and Dunitz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **65,** 1547 (1982); Chakrabarti and Dunitz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **65,** 1555 (1982).

[157] Butcher and Wilson, *J. Chem. Phys.* **40,** 1671 (1964); Allinger and Hickey, *J. Mol. Struct.* **17,** 233 (1973).



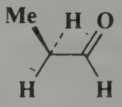
eclipsing

66

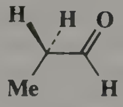


eclipsing

67



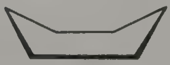
bisecting



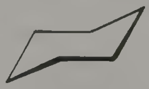
bisecting

Conformation in Six-membered Rings[159]

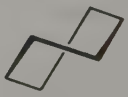
If the six carbons of cyclohexane were to lie in a plane, the bond angles would have to be 120° because these are the angles of a regular hexagon. Since the normal tetrahedral angle is about 109.5°, there would be strain. The existence of cyclopropane proves that molecules can contain a good deal more strain than this. However, cyclopropane *must* be planar (there is no other conformation possible), whereas for cyclohexane there are two extreme conformations in which all the angles are tetrahedral.[160] These are called the *boat* and the *chair* conformations and in each the ring is said to be *puckered*. The chair conformation is a rigid structure, but the boat form is flexible[161] and can easily pass over to a somewhat more stable form known as the *twist* conformation. The twist form is about 1.5 kcal/mol more stable than the boat because it has less eclipsing interaction (see p. 135).[162] The chair form is more stable than the twist form by about 5 kcal/mol.[163] In the vast majority of compounds containing a cyclohexane ring, the molecules exist almost entirely in the chair form. Yet it is known that the boat or twist form exists transiently. An inspection of the chair form shows that six of its bonds are directed differently from the other six:



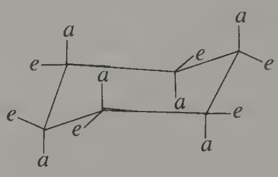
Boat



Chair



Twist



---

[158] Davidson and Allen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **54,** 2828 (1971).

[159] For reviews, see Jensen and Bushweller, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **3,** 139–194 (1971); Robinson and Theobald, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **21,** 314–330 (1967); Eliel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 761–774 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 784–797].

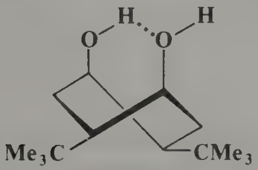
[160] The C—C—C angles in cyclohexane are actually 111.5° [Davis and Hassel, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **17,** 1181 (1963); Geise, Buys, and Mijlhoff, *J. Mol. Struct.* **9,** 447 (1971); Bastiansen, Fernholt, Seip, Kambara, and Kuchitsu, *J. Mol. Struct.* **18,** 163 (1973)], but this is within the normal tetrahedral range (see p. 20).

[161] See Dunitz, *J. Chem. Educ.* **47,** 488 (1970).

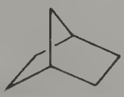
[162] For reviews of nonchair forms, see Kellie and Riddell, *Top. Stereochem.* **8,** 225–269 (1974); Balasubramanian, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 591 (1962).

[163] Margrave, Frisch, Bautista, Clarke, and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 546 (1963); Squillacote, Sheridan, Chapman, and Anet, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3244 (1975).

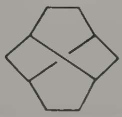
On each carbon, one bond is directed up or down and the other more or less in the "plane" of the ring. The up or down bonds are called *axial* and the others *equatorial*. The axial bonds point alternately up and down. If a molecule were frozen into a chair form, there would be isomerism in monosubstituted cyclohexanes. For example, there would be an equatorial methylcyclohexane and an axial isomer. However, it has never been possible to isolate isomers of this type at room temperature. This proves the transient existence of the boat or twist form, since in order for the two types of methylcyclohexane to be nonseparable, there must be rapid interconversion of one chair form to another (in which all axial bonds become equatorial and vice versa) and this is possible only through a boat or twist conformation. Conversion of one chair form to another requires an activation energy of about 10 kcal/mol[164] and is very rapid at room temperature.[165] However, by working at low temperatures, Jensen and Bushweller have been able to obtain the pure equatorial conformers of chlorocyclohexane and trideuteriomethoxycyclohexane as solids and in solution.[166] Equatorial chlorocyclohexane has a half-life of 22 years in solution at −160°C.



68



69



70

In some molecules the twist conformation is actually preferred.[167] An example is **68,** in which hydrogen bonding stabilizes the otherwise high-energy form. Of course, in certain bicyclic compounds, the six-membered ring is forced to maintain a boat or twist conformation, as in norbornane (**69**) or twistane (**70**).

In monosubstituted cyclohexanes, the substituent normally prefers the equatorial position because in the axial position there is interaction between the substituent and the axial hydrogens in the 3 and 5 positions, but the extent of this preference depends greatly on the nature of the group. Alkyl groups have a greater preference than polar groups and for alkyl groups the preference increases with size. For polar groups, size seems to be unimportant. Both the large HgBr[168] and HgCl[169] groups and the small F group have been reported to have little or no conformational preference (the HgCl group actually shows a slight preference for the axial position). Table 2 gives approximate values of the free energy required for various groups to go from the equatorial position to the axial,[170] although it must be kept in mind that these values vary somewhat with physical state, temperature, and solvent.[171]

In disubstituted compounds, the rule for alkyl groups is that the conformation is such that as many groups as possible adopt the equatorial position. How far it is possible depends on the configuration. In a *cis*-1,2-disubstituted cyclohexane, one substituent must be axial and the other equatorial. In a *trans*-1,2 compound both may be equatorial or both axial. This is also true for

---

[164] Jensen, Noyce, Sederholm, and Berlin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 386 (1962); Anet, Ahmad, and Hall, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 145 (1964); Bovey, Hood, Anderson and Kornegay, *J. Chem. Phys.* **41,** 2041 (1964); Anet and Bourn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 760 (1967). See also Strauss, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 221 (1971).

[165] For a review of chair–chair interconversions, see Anderson, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **45,** 139–167 (1974).

[166] Jensen and Bushweller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4279 (1966); **91,** 3223 (1969).

[167] Stolow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2592 (1961), **86,** 2170 (1964); Stolow, McDonagh, and Bonaventura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2165 (1964).

[168] Jensen and Gale, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 6337 (1959).

[169] Anet, Krane, Kitching, Dodderel, and Praeger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3255 (1974).

[170] Except where otherwise indicated, these values are from Jensen and Bushweller, Ref. 159. See also Ref. 173.

[171] See, for example, Ford and Allinger, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3178 (1970). For a critical review of the methods used to obtain these values, see Jensen and Bushweller, Ref. 159.

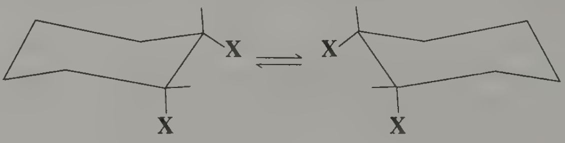
TABLE 2 Free-energy differences between equatorial and axial substituents on a cyclohexane ring[170]

Group	Approximate $-\Delta G^\circ$, kcal/mol	Group	Approximate $-\Delta G^\circ$, kcal/mol
HgCl[169]	−0.25	COOEt	1.1–1.2
HgBr	0	COOMe	1.27–1.31
CN	0.15–0.25	COOH	1.36–1.46
F	0.25	NH_2[174]	1.4
C≡CH	0.41	$CH{=}CH_2$[175]	1.7
I	0.46	CH_3[176]	1.74
Br	0.48–0.62	C_2H_5	~1.75
OTs	0.515	iso-Pr	~2.15
Cl	0.52	C_6H_{11}[177]	2.15
OAc	0.71	$SiMe_3$[175a]	2.4–2.6
OMe[173]	0.75	C_6H_5[175]	2.9
OH	0.92–0.97	*t*-Bu	>4
NO_2	1.1		

1,4-disubstituted cyclohexanes, but the reverse holds for 1,3 compounds: the trans isomer must have the *ae* conformation and the cis isomer may be *aa* or *ee*. For alkyl groups, the *ee* conformation predominates over the *aa* but for other groups this is not necessarily so. For example, both *trans*-1,4-dibromocyclohexane and the corresponding dichloro compound have the *ee* and *aa* conformations about equally populated[172] and most *trans*-1,2-dihalocyclohexanes exist predominantly in the *aa* conformation.[178] Note that in the latter case the two halogen atoms are anti in the *aa* conformation but gauche in the *ee* conformation.

Since compounds with alkyl equatorial substituents are generally more stable, *trans*-1,2 compounds, which can adopt the *ee* conformation, are thermodynamically more stable than their *cis*-1,2 isomers, which must exist in the *ae* conformation. For the 1,2-dimethylcyclohexanes, the difference in stability is about 2 kcal/mol. Similarly, *trans*-1,4 and *cis*-1,3 compounds are more stable than their steroisomers.

Incidentally, we can now see, in one case, why the correct number of stereoisomers could be predicted by assuming planar rings, even though they are not planar (p. 112). In the case of both a *cis*-1,2-XX-disubstituted and a *cis*-1,2-XY-disubstituted cyclohexane, the molecule is nonsuperimposable on its mirror image; neither has a plane of symmetry. However, in the former case (**71**)



71

---

[172] Atkinson and Hassel, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **13,** 1737 (1959); Abraham and Rossetti, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4965 (1972).

[173] Schneider and Hoppen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 579 (1974).

[174] Buchanan and Webb, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4519 (1983).

[175] Eliel and Manoharan, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1959 (1981).

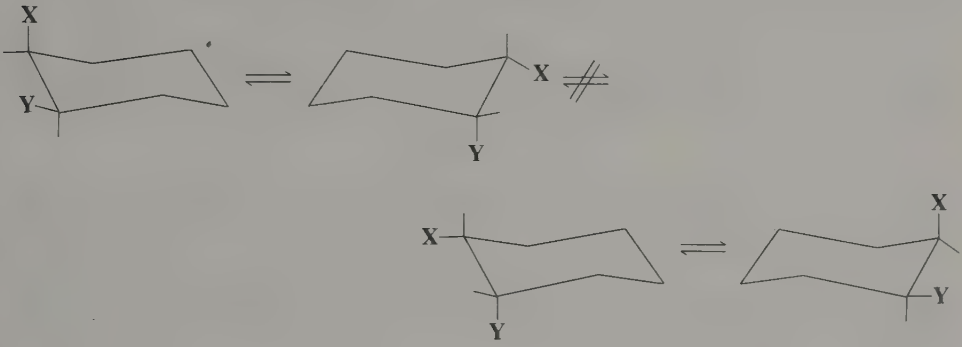
[175a] Kitching, Olszowy, Drew, and Adcock, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5153 (1982).

[176] Booth and Everett, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 278 (1976).

[177] Hirsch, *Top. Stereochem.* **1,** 199–222 (1967).

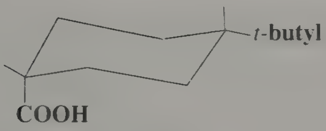
[178] Hageman and Havinga, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **88,** 97 (1969); Klaeboe, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **25,** 695 (1971); Abraham, Xodo, Cook, and Cruz, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1503 (1982); and references cited in these papers. *trans*-1,2-Difluorocyclohexane exists predominantly in the *ee* conformation: See Zefirov, Samoshin, Subbotin, and Sergeev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 1301 (1981).

conversion of one chair form to the other (which of course happens rapidly) turns the molecule into its mirror image, while in the latter case

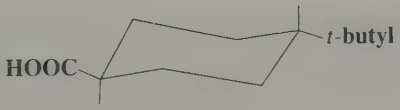


rapid interconversion does not give the mirror image but merely the conformer in which the original axial and equatorial substituents exchange places. Thus the optical inactivity of **71** is not due to a plane of symmetry but to a rapid interconversion of the molecule and its mirror image. A similar situation holds for *cis*-1,3 compounds. However, for *cis*-1,4 isomers (both XX and XY) optical inactivity arises from a plane of symmetry in both conformations. All *trans*-1,2- and *trans*-1,3-disubstituted cyclohexanes are chiral (whether XX or XY), while *trans*-1,4 compounds (both XX and XY) are achiral, since all conformations have a plane of symmetry.

The conformation of a group can be frozen into a desired position by putting into the ring a large alkyl group (most often *t*-butyl), which greatly favors the equatorial position.[179] For example, it was desired to compare the acidity of the carboxyl group in the axial and the equatorial position. For this purpose the *cis*- and *trans*-4-*t*-butylcyclohexanecarboxylic acids were synthesized. The geometry is such that in the cis compound the equatorial *t*-butyl group forces the carboxyl group to be axial, while in the trans compound it must be equatorial



cis:*ae*



trans:*ee*

The equatorial COOH has the greater acidity.[180]

The principles involved in the conformational analysis of six-membered rings containing one or two trigonal atoms, e.g., cyclohexanone and cyclohexene, are similar.[181]

---

[179] This idea was suggested by Winstein and Holness, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 5562 (1955). There are a few known compounds in which a *t*-butyl group is axial. See, for example, Vierhapper, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5161 (1981).

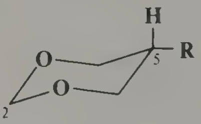
[180] Stolow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5806 (1959).

[181] For a review, see Johnson, *Chem. Rev.* **68,** 375–413 (1968). See also Refs. 135 and 159.

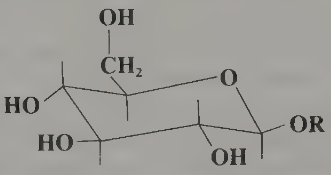
Conformation in Six-membered Rings Containing Hetero Atoms[182]

In six-membered rings containing hetero atoms, the basic principles are the same; i.e., there are chair, twist, and boat forms, axial and equatorial groups, etc., but in certain compounds a number of new factors enter the picture. We deal with only two of these.[183]

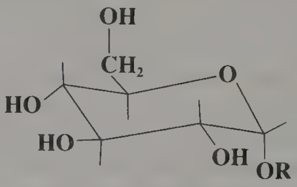
1. In 5-alkyl-substituted 1,3-dioxanes, the 5-substituent has a much smaller preference for the equatorial position than in cyclohexane derivatives;[184] the values of $-\Delta G°$ are much lower. This indicates that the lone pairs on the oxygens have a smaller steric requirement than the C—H bonds in the corresponding cyclohexane derivatives. Similar behavior is found in the 1,3-dithianes.[185] With certain nonalkyl substituents (e.g., F, NO_2, SOMe, NMe_3^+) the axial position is actually preferred.[186]



2. An alkyl group located on a carbon α to a hetero atom prefers the equatorial position, which is of course the normally expected behavior, but a *polar* group in such a location prefers the *axial* position. An example of this phenomenon, known as the *anomeric effect*,[187] is the greater stability of α-glucosides over β-glucosides. The reason for the anomeric effect is not completely understood, though several explanations have been offered.[188]



A β-glucoside



An α-glucoside

---

[182] For a monograph, see Riddell, "The Conformational Analysis of Heterocyclic Compounds," Academic Press, New York, 1980. For reviews, see Eliel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 739–750 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 779–791], *Pure Appl. Chem.* **25,** 509–525 (1971), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **3,** 1–8 (1970); Lambert, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 87–94 (1971); Romers, Altona, Buys, and Havinga, *Top. Stereochem.* **4,** 39–97 (1969); Bushweller and Gianni, Ref. 135, pp. 232–274.

[183] These factors are discussed by Eliel, Ref. 182.

[184] Riddell and Robinson, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 3417 (1967); Eliel and Knoeber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3444 (1968); see also Abraham, Banks, Eliel, Hofer, and Kaloustian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1913 (1972); Eliel and Evans, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8587 (1972); Eliel and Hofer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8041 (1973); Eliel and Alcudia, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1939 (1974).

[185] Hutchins and Eliel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2703 (1969).

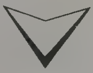
[186] Kaloustian, Dennis, Mager, Evans, Alcudia, and Eliel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98;** 956 (1976). See also Eliel, Kandasamy, and Sechrest, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1533 (1977).

[187] For books on this subject, see Kirby, "The Anomeric Effect and Related Stereoelectronic Effects at Oxygen," Springer-Verlag, New York, 1983; Szarek and Horton, "Anomeric Effect," American Chemical Society, New York, 1979. For reviews, see Zefirov, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 3193–3202 (1977); Zefirov and Shekhtman, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 315–329 (1971); Lemieux, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **27,** 527–547 (1971); Angyal, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 157–166 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 172–182]; Martin, *Ann. Chim. (Paris)* [14] **6,** 205–218 (1971).

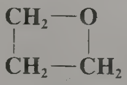
[188] See, for example, Ponec and Chvalovský, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **39,** 2613 (1974); Zhdanov, Minyaev, and Minkin, *J. Mol. Struct.* **16,** 357 (1973), *Doklad. Chem.* **211,** 563 (1973); David, Eisenstein, Hehre, Salem and Hoffmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3806 (1973); Hutchins, Kopp, and Eliel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7174 (1968); Wolfe, Rauk, Tel, and Csizmadia, Ref. 150; Ref. 187.

Conformation in Other Rings

Three-membered rings must be planar, but they seem to be the only saturated rings that generally are. Cyclobutane[189] is not planar but exists as in **72**, with an angle between the planes of about



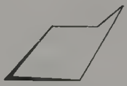
72



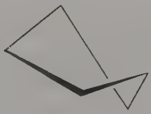
$$\begin{array}{ccc} CH_2 & - & O \\ | & & | \\ CH_2 & - & CH_2 \end{array}$$

Oxetane

35°.[190] The deviation from planarity is presumably caused by eclipsing in the planar form (see p. 135). Oxetane, in which eclipsing is less, is planar.[191] Cyclopentane might be expected to be planar, since the angles of a regular pentagon are 108°, but it is not so, also because of eclipsing effects.[192] There are two puckered conformations, the *envelope* and the *half-chair*. There is little energy difference between these two forms and many five-membered ring systems have conformations somewhere in between them.[193] Although in the envelope conformation one carbon is shown above the others, ring motions cause each of the carbons in rapid succession to assume this position. The puckering rotates around the ring in what may be called a *pseudorotation*.[194] In substituted cyclopentanes and five-membered rings in which at least one atom does not contain two substituents (such as tetrahydrofuran, cyclopentanone, etc.), one conformer may be more stable than the others. The barrier to planarity in cyclopentane has been reported to be 5.2 kcal/mol.[195]



Envelope



Half-chair

Rings larger than six-membered are always puckered[196] unless they contain a large number of sp^2 atoms (see the section on strain in medium rings, p. 134). It should be noted that axial and equatorial hydrogens are found only in the chair conformations of six-membered rings. In rings of other sizes the hydrogens protrude at angles that generally do not lend themselves to classification in this way, though in some cases the terms "pseudo-axial" and "pseudo-equatorial" have been used to classify hydrogens in rings of other sizes.[197]

---

[189] For reviews of the stereochemistry of four-membered rings, see Legon, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 231–262 (1980); Moriarty, *Top. Stereochem.* **8,** 271–421 (1974); Cotton and Frenz, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 1587–1594 (1974).

[190] Dows and Rich, *J. Chem. Phys.* **47,** 333 (1967); Stone and Mills, *Mol. Phys.* **18,** 631 (1970); Miller and Capwell, *Spectrochim. Acta, Part A* **27,** 947 (1971); Miller, Capwell, Lord, and Rea, *Spectrochim. Acta, Part A* **28,** 603 (1972). However, some cyclobutane derivatives are planar, at least in the solid state: for example, see Margulis and Fischer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 223 (1967); Margulis, *Chem. Commun.* 215 (1969), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2193 (1971).

[191] Chan, Zinn, Fernandez, and Gwinn, *J. Chem. Phys.* **33,** 1643 (1960).

[192] For reviews of the conformational analysis of five-membered rings, see Fuchs, *Top. Stereochem.* **10,** 1–94 (1978); Legon, Ref. 189.

[193] Willy, Binsch, and Eliel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5394 (1970); Lipnick, *J. Mol. Struct.* **21,** 423 (1974).

[194] Kilpatrick, Pitzer, and Spitzer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **69,** 2438 (1947); Pitzer and Donath, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3213 (1959); Durig and Wertz, *J. Chem. Phys.* **49,** 2118 (1968); Lipnick, *J. Mol. Struct.* **21,** 411 (1974); Poupko, Luz, and Zimmermann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5307 (1982).

[195] Carreira, Jiang, Person, and Willis, *J. Chem. Phys.* **56,** 1440 (1972).

[196] For reviews of conformations in larger rings, see Casanova and Waegell, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 911–921 (1975); Anet, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **45,** 169–220 (1974); Dunitz, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **25,** 495–508 (1971), *Perspect. Struct. Chem.* **2,** 1–70 (1968); Tochtermann, *Fortchr. Chem. Forsch.* **15,** 378–444 (1970); Dale, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 1000–1021 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 1070–1093]; Dunitz and Prelog, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 896–902 (1960); Prelog, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **6,** 545–560 (1963); Sicher, *Prog. Stereochem.* **3,** 202–264 (1962). Also see the monographs by Hanack and Eliel, Allinger, Angyal, and Morrison, Ref. 135.

STRAIN

Steric strain[198] exists in a molecule when bonds are forced to make abnormal angles. This results in a higher energy than would be the case in the absence of angle distortions. There are, in general, two kinds of structural features that result in sterically caused abnormal bond angles. One of these is found in small-ring compounds, where the angles must be less than those resulting from normal orbital overlap. Such strain is called *small-angle strain*. The other arises when nonbonded atoms are forced into close proximity by the geometry of the molecule. These are called *nonbonded interactions*.

Strain in Small Rings[199]

Three-membered rings have a great deal of angle strain, since 60° angles represent a large departure from the tetrahedral angles. In sharp contrast to other ethers, ethylene oxide is quite reactive, the ring being opened by many reagents (see p. 311). Ring opening, of course, relieves the strain. Cyclopropane,[200] which is even more strained than ethylene oxide, is also cleaved more easily than would be expected for an alkane. Thus, pyrolysis at 450 to 500°C converts it to propene, bromination gives 1,3-dibromopropane,[201] and it can be hydrogenated to propane (though at high pressure).[202] Other three-membered rings are similarly reactive.[203]

There is much evidence, chiefly derived from nmr coupling constants, that the bonding in cyclopropanes is not the same as in compounds that lack small-angle strain.[204] For a normal carbon atom, one *s* and three *p* orbitals are hybridized to give four approximately equivalent sp^3 orbitals (see p. 20), each containing about 25% *s* character. But for a cyclopropane carbon atom, the four hybrid orbitals are far from equivalent. The two orbitals directed to the outside bonds have more *s* character than a normal sp^3 orbital, while the two orbitals involved in ring bonding have less, because the more *p*-like they are the more they resemble ordinary *p* orbitals, whose preferred bond angle is 90° rather than 109.5°. Since the small-angle strain in cyclopropanes is the difference between the preferred angle and the real angle of 60°, this additional *p* character relieves some of the strain. The external orbitals have about 33% *s* character, so that they are approximately sp^2 orbitals, while the internal orbitals have about 17% *s* character, so that they may be called approximately sp^5 orbitals.[205] Each of the three carbon–carbon bonds of cyclopropane is therefore formed by overlap of two sp^5 orbitals. Molecular-orbital calculations show that such bonds are not completely σ in character. In normal C—C bonds, sp^3 orbitals overlap in such a way that the straight line connecting the nuclei becomes an axis about which the electron density is symmetrical.

---

[197] For a discussion of the angles of the ring positions, see Cremer, *Isr. J. Chem.* **20,** 12 (1980).

[198] For a monograph, see Greenberg and Liebman, "Strained Organic Molecules," Academic Press, New York, 1978. For a review, see Liebman and Greenberg, *Chem. Rev.* **76,** 311–365 (1976).

[199] For a review, see Vogel, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 4–25 (1960).

[200] For a review on cyclopropanes, see Lukina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 419 (1962).

[201] Ogg and Priest, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **60,** 217 (1938).

[202] Shortridge, Craig, Greenlee, Derfer, and Boord, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70,** 946 (1948).

[203] For a review of the pyrolysis of three- and four-membered rings, see Frey, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 147–193 (1966).

[204] For discussions of bonding in cyclopropanes, see Bernett, *J. Chem. Educ.* **44,** 17–24 (1967); de Meijere, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 809–826 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 867–884]; Honegger, Heilbronner, and Schmelzer, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **6,** 519 (1982); Ref. 207.

[205] Randić and Maksić, *Theor. Chim. Acta* **3,** 59 (1965); Foote, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 579 (1963); Weigert and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5962 (1967).

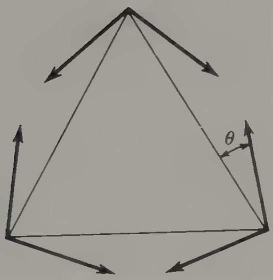
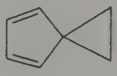


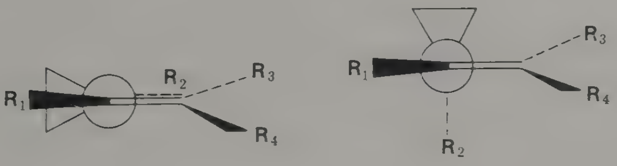
Figure 5 Orbital overlap in cyclopropane. The arrows point toward the center of electron density.

But in cyclopropane, the electron density is directed *away from* the ring. Figure 5 shows the direction of orbital overlap.[206] For cyclopropane, the angle (marked θ) is 21°. Cyclobutane exhibits the same phenomenon but to a lesser extent, θ being 7°.[206] The bonds in cyclopropane are called *bent* or *banana bonds*, and are intermediate in character between σ and π, so that cyclopropanes behave in some respects like double-bond compounds.[207] For one thing, there is much evidence, chiefly from uv spectra,[208] that a cyclopropane ring is conjugated with an adjacent double bond and that this conjugation is greatest for the conformation shown in *a* in Figure 6 and least or absent for the conformation shown in *b*, since overlap of the double-bond π orbital with two of the *p*-like orbitals of the cyclopropane ring is greatest in conformation *a*. However, the conjugation between a cyclopropane ring and a double bond is less than that between two double bonds.[209] In



73

73, the conjugation is enough to impart some aromatic character to the five-membered ring.[210] For other examples of the similarities in behavior of a cyclopropane ring and a double bond, see p. 676.



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 6 Conformations of α-cyclopropylalkenes. Conformation *a* leads to maximum conjugation and conformation *b* to minimum conjugation.

---

[206] Coulson and Goodwin, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2851 (1962), 3161 (1963); Peters, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 1539 (1963); Hoffmann and Davidson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5699 (1971).

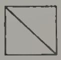
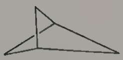
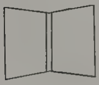
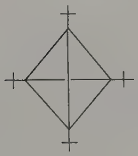
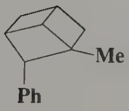
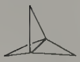
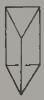
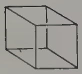
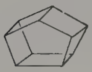
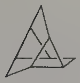
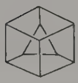
[207] For a review, see Charton, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 2, pp. 511–610, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[208] See, for example, Cromwell and Hudson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 872 (1953); Kosower and Ito, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 25 (1962); Dauben and Berezin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3449 (1967); Jorgenson and Leung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3769 (1968); Heathcock and Poulter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3766 (1968); Bischof, Gleiter, Heilbronner, Hornung, and Schröder, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 1645 (1970); Tsuji, Shibata, Hienuki, and Nishida, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1806 (1978).

[209] Staley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1532 (1967); Pews and Ojha, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5769 (1969). See, however, Noe and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6218 (1982).

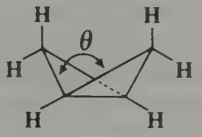
[210] Clark and Fiato, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4736 (1970); Staley, Howard, Harmony, Mathur, Kattija-Ari, Choe, and Lind, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3639 (1980).

TABLE 3 Some strained small-ring systems

Structural formula of compound prepared	Systematic name of ring system	Common name if any	Ref.
	Bicyclo[1.1.0]butane	Bicyclobutane	214
	Bicyclo[1.1.1.]pentane		215
	$\Delta^{1.4}$-Bicyclo[2.2.0]hexene		216
	Tricyclo[1.1.0.0$^{2.4}$]butane	Tetrahedrane	217
	Tricyclo[3.1.1.0$^{3.6}$]heptane		218
	Tricyclo[1.1.1.0$^{1.3}$]pentane	A [1.1.1]propellane	219
	Tetracyclo[2.2.0.0$^{2.6}$.0$^{3.5}$]hexane	Prismane	220
	Pentacyclo[4.2.0.0$^{2.5}$.0$^{3.8}$.0$^{4.7}$]octane	Cubane	221
	Hexacyclo[5.3.0.0$^{2.6}$.0$^{3.10}$.0$^{4.9}$.0$^{5.8}$]decane	Pentaprismane	222
	Tetracyclo[3.3.1.0$^{2.8}$.0$^{4.6}$]nonane	Triasterane	223
	Hexacyclo[4.4.0.0$^{2.4}$.0$^{3.9}$.0$^{5.8}$.0$^{7.10}$]decane		224

Four-membered rings also exhibit angle strain,[211] but much less, and are less easily opened. Cyclobutane is more resistant than cyclopropane to bromination, and though it can be hydrogenated to butane, more strenuous conditions are required. Nevertheless, pyrolysis at 420°C gives two molecules of ethylene. As mentioned earlier (p. 129), cyclobutane is not planar.

In recent years quite a few highly strained compounds containing fused small rings have been prepared,[212] showing that organic molecules can exhibit much more strain than simple cyclopropanes or cyclobutanes.[213] Table 3 shows a few of these compounds. Perhaps the most interesting are cubane, prismane, and the substituted tetrahedrane, since preparation of these ring systems had been the object of much endeavor. Prismane has the structure that Ladenburg proposed as a possible structure for benzene. The bicyclobutane molecule is bent, with the angle θ between the planes equal to 126 ± 3°.[225] The rehybridization effect, described above for cyclopropane, is even more extreme in this molecule. Calculations have shown that the central bond is essentially formed by overlap of two p orbitals with little or no s character.[226] *Propellanes* are compounds in which two



---

[211] For a review, see Wilson and Goldhamer, *J. Chem. Educ.* **40,** 504–517 (1963).

[212] For reviews discussing the properties of some of these as well as related compounds, see Jefford, *J. Chem. Educ.* **53,** 477–482 (1976); Seebach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 121–131 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 119–129]; Greenberg and Liebman, Ref. 198, pp. 210–220. For a review of bicyclo[*n.m.*0]alkanes, see Wiberg, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **2,** 185–254 (1968).

[213] For a useful classification of strained polycyclic systems, see Gund and Gund, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4458 (1981).

[214] Lemal, Menger, and Clark, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2529 (1963); Wiberg and Lampman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2173 (1963). For reviews of preparations and reactions of this system, see Wiberg, Lampman, Ciula, Connor, Schertler, and Lavanish, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 2749–2769 (1965); Wiberg, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **26,** 143–154 (1965); Wiberg, Ref. 212.

[215] Wiberg, Connor, and Lampman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 531 (1964); Wiberg and Connor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4437 (1966); Meinwald, Szkrybalo, and Dimmel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 731 (1967); Chiang and Bauer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1614 (1970); Almenningen, Andersen, and Nyhus, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **25,** 1217 (1971). For a review of [*n*.1.1] systems, see Meinwald and Meinwald, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 1–51 (1966).

[216] Casanova, Bragin, and Cottrell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2264 (1978).

[217] Maier, Pfriem, Schäfer, Malsch, and Matusch, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 3965 (1981); Maier, Pfriem, Malsch, Kalinowski, and Dehnicke, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 3988 (1981). For a review of attempts to synthesize tetrahedrane, see Zefirov, Koz'min, and Abramenkov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 163–171 (1978). See also Rauscher, Clark, Poppinger, and Schleyer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 276 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 306]; Zefirov, Kirin, Yur'eva, Koz'min, Kulikov, and Luzikov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1925 (1979).

[218] Meinwald and Mioduski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4137 (1974). See also Perrin and Hsia, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 751 (1975); Monti and Harless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2690 (1977).

[219] Wiberg and Walker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5239 (1982); Michl, Radziszewski, Downing, Wiberg, Walker, Miller, Kovacic, Jawdosiuk, and Bonačić-Koutecký, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **55,** 315 (1983). See also Jackson and Allen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 591 (1984).

[220] Katz and Acton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2738 (1973). See also Viehe, Merényi, Oth, Senders, and Valange, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 755 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 923]; Lemal and Lokensgard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5934 (1966); Wilzbach and Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4004 (1965); Criegee and Askani, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 519 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 494].

[221] Eaton and Cole, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3157 (1964); Barborak, Watts, and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1328 (1966).

[222] Eaton, Or, and Branca, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2134 (1981); Dauben and Cunningham, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2842 (1983).

[223] Musso and Biethan, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 119 (1967).

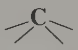
[224] Allred and Beck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2393 (1973).

[225] Haller and Srinivasan, *J. Chem. Phys.* **41,** 2745 (1964).

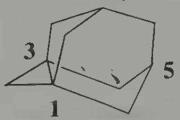
[226] Schulman and Fisanick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6653 (1970). See also Irngartinger and Goldmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 775 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 786].

carbons, directly connected, are also connected by three other bridges. The one in the table is the smallest possible propellane.[219]

In certain small-ring systems, including small propellanes, the geometry of one or more carbon atoms is so constrained that all four of their valences are directed to the same side of a plane



74

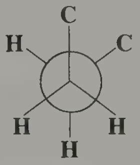


75

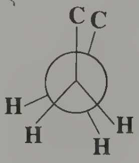
(''inverted tetrahedron''), as in **74**.[227] An example is 1,3-dehydroadamantane, **75** (which is also a propellane).[228] X-ray crystallography of the 5-cyano derivative of **75** shows that the four carbon valences at C-1 and C-3 are all directed ''into'' the molecule and none point outside.[229] **75** is quite reactive; it is unstable in air, readily adds hydrogen, water, bromine, or acetic acid to the $C_1—C_3$ bond, and is easily polymerized. When two such atoms are connected by a bond (as in **75**), the bond is very long (the $C_1—C_3$ bond length in the 5-cyano derivative of **75** is 1.64 Å), as the atoms try to compensate in this way for their enforced angles. The high reactivity of the $C_1—C_3$ bond of **75** is not only caused by strain, but also by the fact that reagents find it easy to approach these atoms since there are no bonds (e.g., C—H bonds on C-1 or C-3) to get in the way.

Strain in Medium Rings[230]

In rings larger than four-membered, there is no small-angle strain, but there are three other kinds of strain. First let us examine the chair form of cyclohexane, which does not exhibit any of the three kinds of strain. Each carbon–carbon bond in the chair form can be represented as in **76**; i.e.,



76



77

each bond is in the gauche conformation. In five-membered rings and in rings containing from 7 to 13 carbons any conformation in which all the bonds are as in **76** contains transannular interactions, i.e., interactions between the substituents on C-1 and C-3 or C-1 and C-4, etc. These interactions occur because the internal space is not large enough for all the quasi-axial hydrogen atoms to fit without coming into conflict. The molecule can adopt other conformations in which this *transannular*

---

[227] Wiberg, Hiatt, and Burgmaier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5855 (1968). For a discussion, see Greenberg and Liebman, Ref. 198, pp. 342–375.

[228] Pincock and Torupka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4593 (1969); Pincock, Schmidt, Scott, and Torupka, *Can. J. Chem.* **50,** 3958 (1972); Scott and Pincock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2040 (1973).

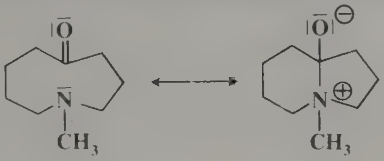
[229] Gibbons and Trotter, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 87 (1973).

[230] For reviews, see Gol'dfarb and Belen'kii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 214–235 (1960); Raphael, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 97–105 (1962); Sicher, *Prog. Stereochem.* **3,** 202–264 (1962).

strain is reduced, but then some of the carbon–carbon bonds must adopt eclipsed (**77**) or partially eclipsed conformations. The strain resulting from eclipsed conformations is called *Pitzer strain*. For saturated rings from 3- to 13-membered (except for the chair form of cyclohexane) there is no escape from at least one of these two types of strain. In practice each ring adopts conformations that minimize both sorts of strain as much as possible. For cyclopentane, as we have seen (p. 129), this means that the molecule is not planar. In rings larger than 9-membered, Pitzer strain seems to disappear, but transannular strain is still present.[231] For 9- and 10-membered rings, some of the transannular and Pitzer strain may be relieved by the adoption of a third type of strain, *large-angle strain*. Thus, C—C—C angles of 115 to 120° have been found in x-ray diffraction of cyclononylamine hydrobromide and 1,6-diaminocyclodecane dihydrochloride.[232]

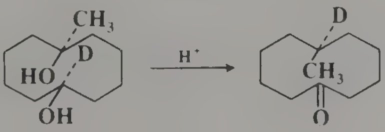
The amount of strain in cycloalkanes is shown in Table 4,[233] which lists heats of combustion per CH_2 group. As can be seen, cycloalkanes larger than 13-membered are as strain-free as cyclohexane.

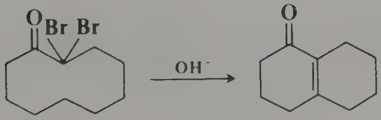
Transannular interactions may exist across rings from 8- to 11-membered and even larger.[234] Spectral and dipole measurements on **78** show that the carbonyl group is affected by the nitrogen.[235]

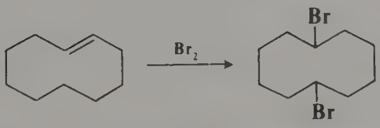


78 **79**

79 is probably another canonical form. It is significant that when this base accepts a proton, it goes to the oxygen rather than to the nitrogen. Many examples of transannular reactions are known. A few are given below.[236]







---

[231] Huber-Buser and Dunitz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **43,** 760 (1960).

[232] Bryan and Dunitz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **43,** 1 (1960); Dunitz and Venkatesan, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **44,** 2033 (1961). For other examples of large-angle strain, see Vögtle and Wingen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1459 (1978).

[233] Gol'dfarb and Belen'kii, Ref. 230, p. 218.

[234] For a review, see Cope, Martin, and McKervey, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **20,** 119–152 (1966).

[235] Leonard, Fox, and Oki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 5708 (1954); Leonard, Morrow, and Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5476 (1957).

[236] References are, in the order shown, Prelog and Küng, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **39,** 1394 (1956); Schenker and Prelog, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **36,** 896 (1953); Sicher, Závada, and Svoboda, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **27,** 1927 (1962).

TABLE 4 Heats of combustion in the gas phase for cycloalkanes, per CH_2 group[234]

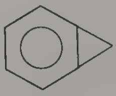
Size of ring	$-\Delta H_c(g)$, kcal/mol	Size of ring	$-\Delta H_c(g)$, kcal/mol
3	166.3	10	158.6
4	163.9	11	158.4
5	158.7	12	157.8
6	157.4	13	157.7
7	158.3	14	157.4
8	158.6	15	157.5
9	158.8	16	157.5

In summary, we can divide saturated rings into four groups, of which the first and third are more strained than the other two.[237]

1. *Small rings* (3- and 4-membered). Small-angle strain predominates.
2. *Common rings* (5-, 6-, and 7-membered). Largely unstrained. The strain that is present is mostly Pitzer strain.
3. *Medium rings* (8- to 11-membered). Considerable strain; Pitzer, transannular, and large-angle strain.
4. *Large rings* (12-membered and larger). Little or no strain.

Unsaturated Rings[238]

Double bonds can exist in rings of any size. As we would expect, the most highly strained are the three-membered rings. Small-angle strain, which is so important is cyclopropane, is even greater in cyclopropene because the ideal angle is greater. In cyclopropane, the bond angle is forced to be 60°, about 50° smaller than the tetrahedral angle; but in cyclopropene, the angle, also about 60°, is now about 60° smaller than the ideal angle of 120°. Thus, the angle is cyclopropene is about 10° more strained than in cyclopropane. However, this additional strain is offset by a decrease in strain arising from another factor. Cyclopropene, lacking two hydrogens, has none of the eclipsing stain present in cyclopropane. Cyclopropene has been prepared[239] and is stable at liquid-nitrogen temperatures, though on warming even to −80°C it rapidly polymerizes. Many other cyclopropenes are stable at room temperature and above.[240] The highly strained benzocyclopropene[241] (**80**), in which the cyclopropene ring is fused to a benzene ring, has been prepared[242] and is stable for weeks



80

---

[237] For a review on the influence of ring size on the properties of cyclic systems, see Granik, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 119–134 (1982).

[238] For a review of strained double bonds, see Zefirov and Sokolov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 87–100 (1967).

[239] Dem'yanov and Doyarenko, *Bull. Acad. Sci. Russ.* **16,** 297 (1922), *Ber.* **56,** 2200 (1923); Schlatter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **63,** 1733 (1941); Wiberg and Bartley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 6375 (1960); Stigliani, Laurie, and Li, *J. Chem. Phys.* **62,** 1890 (1975).

[240] For reviews of cyclopropenes, see Closs, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 53–127 (1966); Carter and Frampton, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 497–525 (1964). For a discussion of the bonding and hybridization, see Allen, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 645 (1982).

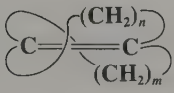
[241] For reviews of benzocyclopropenes, see Billups, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 245–251 (1978); Halton, *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 113–126 (1973).

[242] Vogel, Grimme, and Korte, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3625 (1965). Also see Anet and Anet, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 526 (1964).

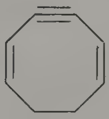
at room temperature, though it decomposes on distillation at atmospheric pressure. As in cyclopropanes, the orbitals of cyclopropenes are not directed along the straight line connecting the nuclei, and rehybridization often causes the strained double bond to behave like a triple bond.[238]

As previously mentioned, double bonds in relatively small rings must be cis. A stable trans double bond[243] first appears in an eight-membered ring (**17**, p. 92). Above about 11 members, the trans isomer is more stable than the cis.[116] It has proved possible to prepare compounds in which a trans double bond is shared by two cycloalkene rings (e.g., **81**). Such compounds have been called [*m·n*]*betweenanenes*, and several of them have been prepared with *m* and *n* values from 8 to 26.[244] The double bonds of the smaller betweenanenes, as might be expected from the fact that they are deeply buried within the bridges, are much less reactive than those of the corresponding cis–cis isomers. Evidence for the transient existence of a trans cyclohexene has been reported.[245]

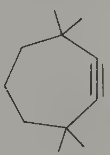
The smallest unstrained cyclic triple bond is found in cyclononyne.[246] Cyclooctyne has been isolated,[247] but its heat of hydrogenation shows that it is considerable strained. Even more strained is 1,5-cyclooctadien-3-yne (**82**), which has a half-life of about 2 hr at 27°C in $CDCl_3$.[248] There have been a few compounds isolated with triple bonds in seven-membered rings. 3,3,7,7-Tetramethylcycloheptyne (**83**) dimerizes within an hour at room temperature,[249] but the thia derivative **84**, in which the C—S bonds are longer than the corresponding C—C bonds in **83**, is indefinitely stable even at 140°C.[250] Cycloheptyne itself has not been isolated, though its transient existence has been shown.[251] Transient triple bonds have also been demonstrated in six- and five-membered rings.[252] Although cycloheptyne and cyclohexyne have not been isolated, Pt(0) complexes of these



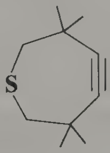
81



82



83



84

---

[243] For a review of trans cycloalkenes, see Marshall, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 213–218 (1980).

[244] Marshall and Lewellyn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3508 (1977); Nakazaki, Yamamoto, and Yanagi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 346 (1977); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 147 (1979); Marshall and Chung, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1566 (1979); Marshall, Bierenbaum, and Chung, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2081 (1979); Nakazaki, Yamamoto, and Maeda, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 294 (1980); Ceré, Paolucci, Pollicino, Sandri, and Fava, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 755 (1980); Marshall and Flynn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 3360 (1983). For a review, see Ref. 243.

[245] Bonneau, Joussot-Dubien, Salem, and Yarwood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 4329 (1976).

[246] For reviews of triple bonds in rings, see Krebs and Wilke, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **109,** 189–233 (1983); Nakagawa in Patai, "The Chemistry of the C—C Triple Bond," pt. 2, pp. 635–712, Wiley, New York; 1978; Krebs, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 987–1062, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Wittig, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 415–419 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 479–483].

[247] Blomquist and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2153 (1953). See also Bühl, Gugel, Kolshorn, and Meier, *Synthesis* 536 (1978).

[248] Meier, Echter, and Petersen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 942 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 997]. See also Meier and Echter, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 67 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 68].

[249] Krebs and Kimling, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 509 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 540]; Schmidt, Schweig, and Krebs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1471 (1974).

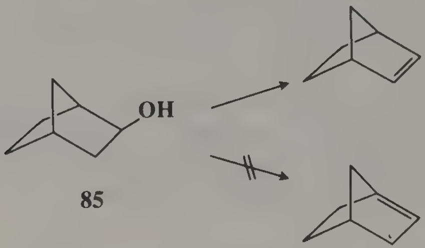
[250] Krebs and Kimling, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 761 (1970).

[251] Wittig and Meske-Schüller, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **711,** 65 (1968); Krebs and Kimling, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 509 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 540]; Bottini, Frost, Anderson, and Dev, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 1975 (1973).

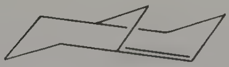
[252] See, for example, Wittig and Mayer, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 329, 342 (1963); Wittig and Weinlich, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 471 (1965); Bolster and Kellogg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2868 (1981); Gilbert and Baze, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 664 (1983).

compounds have been prepared and are stable.[253] The smallest cyclic allene so far isolated is 1,2-cyclononadiene,[254] but cyclic allenes are in general less strained than their acetylenic isomers.[255] The transient existence of 1,2-cyclooctadiene, 1,2-cycloheptadiene, and 1,2-cyclohexadiene has been demonstrated;[256] the first two have been isolated in platinum complexes.[257] 1,2-Cyclohexadiene has been trapped at low temperatures, and its structure has been proved by spectral studies.[257a]

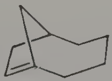
In bridged bicyclic compounds double bonds at the bridgehead are impossible in small systems. This is the basis of *Bredt's rule*,[258] which states that elimination to give a double bond in a bridged bicyclic system (e.g., **85**) always leads away from the bridgehead. This rule no longer applies when the rings are large enough. In determining whether a bicyclic system is large enough to accommodate a bridgehead double bond, the most reliable criterion is the size of the ring in which the double bond is located.[259] Bicyclo[3.3.1]non-1-ene[260] (**86**) and bicyclo[4.2.1]non-1(8)ene[261] (**87**) are stable compounds. Both can be looked upon as derivatives of *trans*-cyclooctene, which is of course a known compound. **86** has been shown to have a strain energy of the same order of



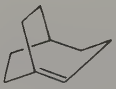
85



86



87



88

---

[253] Bennett, Robertson, Whimp, and Yoshida, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3797 (1971).

[254] Moore and Bertelson, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4182 (1962); Moore and Bach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3148 (1972).

[255] Moore and Ward, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 86 (1963).

[256] Marquis and Gardner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2793 (1966); Wittig, Dorsch, and Meske-Schüller, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **711,** 55 (1968); Wittig and Fritze, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **711,** 82 (1968); Oda, Itō, and Kitahara, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2587 (1975); Balci and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7608 (1980).

[257] Visser and Ramakers, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 178 (1972).

[257a] Wentrup, Gross, Maquestiau, and Flammang, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 542 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 551].

[258] For reviews, see Shea, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1683–1715 (1980); Buchanan, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **3,** 41–63 (1974); Köbrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 464–473 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 494–503]. For reviews of bridgehead olefins, see Szeimies, *React. Intermed.* (*Plenum*) **3,** 299–366 (1983); Keese, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 528–538 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 568–578].

[259] For a discussion and predictions of stability in such compounds, see Maier and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1891 (1981).

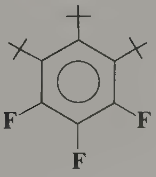
[260] Marshall and Faubl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5965 (1967), **92,** 948 (1970); Wiseman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5966 (1967); Wiseman and Pletcher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 956 (1970); Kim and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 451 (1975); Becker, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **60,** 81 (1977). For the preparation of optically active **86**, see Nakazaki, Naemura, and Nakahara, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2438 (1979).

[261] Wiseman, Chan, and Ahola, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2812 (1969); Carruthers and Qureshi, *Chem. Commun.* 832 (1969); Becker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2207 (1975).

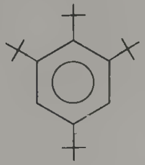
magnitude as that of *trans*-cyclooctene.[262] On the other hand, in bicyclo[3.2.2]non-1-ene (**88**), the largest ring that contains the double bond is *trans*-cycloheptene, which is as yet unknown. **88** has been prepared, but dimerized before it could be isolated.[263] Another criterion for stability of bridgehead double bonds is the *S* number,[264] which is defined as the sum of the atoms in the bridges of a bicyclic system. **86, 87,** and **88** all have $S = 7$ and the fact that **86** and **87** are stable, but not **88** shows that the largest-ring criterion is more important than the *S* number. However, no bridgehead double bond has yet been demonstrated in a stable bicyclic compound with *S* smaller than 7 (all such compounds would have to contain *trans*-cycloalkenes of 7 members or less), though a few of them have been shown to have transient existence.[265]

Strain Due to Unavoidable Crowding[266]

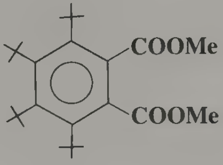
In some molecules, large groups are so close to each other than they cannot fit into the available space in such a way that normal bond angles are maintained. It has proved possible to prepare compounds with a high degree of this type of strain. For example, success has been achieved in synthesizing benzene rings containing ortho *t*-butyl groups. The 1,2,3-tri-*t*-butyl compounds **89**[267] (see p. 775) and **90**[268] have been prepared, as well as the 1,2,3,4-tetra-*t*-butyl compound **91.**[269] That these molecules are strained is demonstrated by uv and ir spectra, which show that the ring is not planar in 1,2,4-tri-*t*-butylbenzene, and by a comparison of the heats of reaction of this compound and its 1,3,5 isomer, which show that the 1,2,4 compound possesses about 22 kcal/mol more strain energy than its isomer[270] (see also p. 1009). Even smaller groups may sterically interfere in ortho positions. In hexaisopropylbenzene, the six isopropyl groups are so crowded that they cannot rotate but are lined up around the benzene ring, all pointed in the same direction.[271] In another similar instance, it has proved possible to prepare cis and trans isomers of 5-amino-



89



90



91

---

[262] Lesko and Turner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6888 (1968); Burkert, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 773 (1977).

[263] Wiseman and Chong, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7775 (1969).

[264] Fawcett, *Chem. Rev.* **47,** 219–274 (1950).

[265] For example, see Keese and Krebs, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 262 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 254]; Chong and Wiseman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8627 (1972); Grootveld, Blomberg, and Bickelhaupt, *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.* 542 (1973); Dauben and Robbins, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 151 (1975).

[266] For reviews, see Tidwell, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 1855–1868 (1978); Voronenkov and Osokin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 616–629 (1972).

[267] Viehe, Merényi, Oth, and Valange, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 746 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 890].

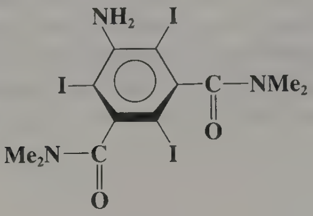
[268] Arnett and Bollinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3803 (1964).

[269] Maier and Schneider, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 1022 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 1056]. For another example, see Krebs, Franken, and Müller, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1675 (1981).

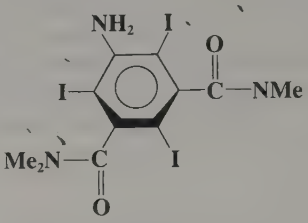
[270] Arnett, Sanda, Bollinger, and Barber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5389 (1967); Krüerke, Hoogzand, and Hübel, *Chem. Ber.* **94,** 2817 (1961); Dale, *Chem. Ber.* **94,** 2821 (1961).

[271] Arnett and Bollinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4730 (1964); Siegel and Mislow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7763 (1983).

2,4,6-triiodo-N,N,N′,N′-tetramethylisophthalamide because there is no room for the $CONMe_2$ groups to rotate, caught as they are between two bulky iodine atoms.[272] The trans isomer is chiral

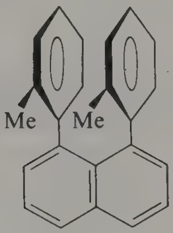


cis

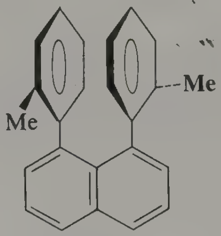


trans

and has been resolved, while the cis isomer is a meso form. Another example of cis–trans isomerism resulting from restricted rotation about single bonds[273] is found in 1,8-di-*o*-tolylnapthalene.[274]



cis



trans

There are many other cases of intramolecular crowding that result in the distortion of bond angles. We have already mentioned hexahelicene (**16**, p. 92) and bent benzene rings (p. 35). The compounds tri-*t*-butylamine and tetra-*t*-butylmethane are as yet unknown. In the latter, there is no way for the strain to be relieved and it is questionable whether this compound can ever be made. In tri-*t*-butylamine the crowding can be eased somewhat if the three bulky groups assume a planar instead of the normal pyramidal configuration. In tri-*t*-butylcarbinol, coplanarity of the three *t*-butyl groups is prevented by the presence of the OH group, and yet this compound has been prepared.[275] Tri-*t*-butylamine should have less steric strain than tri-*t*-butylcarbinol and it should be possible to prepare it.[276] The tetra-*t*-butylphosphonium cation $(t\text{-Bu})_4P^+$ has been prepared.[277] This species is expected to have less strain than tetra-*t*-butylmethane, because a C—P bond is considerably longer than a corresponding C—C bond. In fact, the C—P bond distances in this cation (1.92 Å) are even longer than the typical C—P bond distance of 1.88 Å.

---

[272] Ackerman, Laidlaw, and Snyder, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3879 (1969); Ackerman and Laidlaw, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4487 (1969).

[273] For reviews of restricted rotation about single bonds, see Förster and Vögtle, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 429–441 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 443–455]; Ōki, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 87–93 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 67–74].

[274] Clough and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1018 (1976).

[275] Bartlett and Lefferts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 2804 (1955); Bartlett and Tidwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4421 (1968).

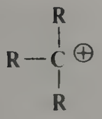
[276] For attempts to prepare tri-*t*-butylamine, see Back and Barton, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 924 (1977). For the preparation of di-*t*-butylmethylamine and other sterically hindered amines, see Kopka, Fataftah, and Rathke, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4616 (1980); Audeh, Fuller, Hutchinson, and Lindsay-Smith, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 270 (1979).

[277] Schmidbaur, Blaschke, Zimmer-Gasser, and Schubert, *Chem. Ber.* **113,** 1612 (1980).

5

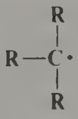
CARBOCATIONS, CARBANIONS, FREE RADICALS, CARBENES, AND NITRENES

There are four known types of organic species in which a carbon atom has a valence of only 2 or 3.[1] They are usually very short-lived, and most are present (at least in solution) only as intermediates that are quickly converted to more stable molecules. However, some are more stable than others and fairly stable examples have been prepared of three of the four types. The four types of species are *carbocations* (**1**), *free radicals* (**2**), *carbanions* (**3**), and *carbenes* (**4**). Of the four, only carbanions have a complete octet around the carbon. There are many other organic ions and radicals with charges and unpaired electrons on atoms other than carbon, but we will discuss only *nitrenes* (**5**), the nitrogen analogs of carbenes. Each of the five types will be discussed in a separate section, which in each case includes brief summaries of the ways in which the species form and react. These summaries are short and schematic. The generation and fate of the five types are more fully treated in appropriate places in Part 2 of this book.



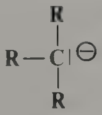
$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{R}{\underset{R}{C}}{\oplus}}$

1



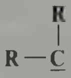
$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{R}{\underset{R}{C}}{\cdot}}$

2



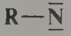
$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{R}{\underset{R}{C}}|{\ominus}}$

3



$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{R}{\underline{C}}}$

4



$\mathrm{R{-}\overline{\underline{N}}}$

5

CARBOCATIONS[2]

Nomenclature

First we must say a word about the naming of **1**. For many years these species were called "carbonium ions," though it was suggested[3] as long ago as 1902 that this was inappropriate because

---

[1] For general references, see Isaacs, "Reactive Intermediates in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1974; McManus, "Organic Reactive Intermediates," Academic Press, New York, 1973. Three serial publications devoted to review articles on this subject are *Reactive Intermediates* (*Wiley*), *Reactive Intermediates* (*Plenum*), and *Reviews of Chemical Intermediates*.

[2] For a treatise, see Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," 5 vols., Wiley, New York, 1968–76. For a monograph, see Bethell and Gold, "Carbonium Ions," Academic Press, New York, 1967. For reviews, see Isaacs, Ref. 1, pp. 92–199; McManus and Pittman, in McManus, Ref. 1, pp. 193–335; Bethell and Whittaker, *React. Intermed.* (*Wiley*) **2,** 211–250 (1981); Bethell, *React. Intermed.* (*Wiley*) **1,** 117–161 (1978); Olah, *Chem. Scr.* **18,** 97–125 (1981); *Top. Curr. Chem.* **80,** 19–88 (1979); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 173–212 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 183–225] (this review has been reprinted as Olah, "Carbocations and Electrophilic Reactions," Wiley, New York, 1974); Buss, Schleyer, and Allen, *Top. Stereochem.* **7,** 253–293 (1973); Olah and Pittman, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 305–347 (1966); Deno, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 129–193 (1964), *Chem. Eng. News* **42** (40), 88 (Oct. 5, 1964). For a review of carbodications, see Prakash, Rawdah, and Olah, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 390–401 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 356–367].

[3] Gomberg, *Ber.* **35,** 2397 (1902).

''-onium'' usually refers to a covalency higher than that of the neutral atom. Nevertheless, the name ''carbonium ion'' was well established and created few problems until some years ago, when George Olah and his co-workers found evidence for another type of intermediate in which there is a positive charge at a carbon atom, but in which the carbon atom bears a formal covalency of five rather than three. The simplest example is the methanonium ion CH_5^+ (see p. 523). Olah proposed[4] that the name ''carbonium ion'' be henceforth reserved for pentacoordinated positive ions, and that **1** be called ''carbenium ions.'' He also proposed the term ''carbocation'' to encompass both types. IUPAC has accepted these definitions.[5] Although some authors still refer to **1** as carbonium ions and others call them carbenium ions, the general tendency is to refer to them simply as *carbocations,* and we will follow this practice. The pentavalent species are much rarer than **1**, and the use of the term ''carbocation'' for **1** causes little or no confusion.

Stability and Structure

Carbocations are intermediates in several kinds of reactions. The more stable ones have been prepared in solution and in some cases even as solid salts. In solution the carbocation may be free (this is more likely in polar solvents, in which it is solvated) or it may exist as an ion pair,[6] which means that it is closely associated with a negative ion, called a *counterion* or *gegenion*. Ion pairs are more likely in nonpolar solvents.

Among simple alkyl carbocations[7] the order of stability is tertiary > secondary > primary. Many examples are known of rearrangements of primary or secondary carbocations to tertiary. Since simple alkyl cations are not stable in ordinary strong-acid solutions, e.g., H_2SO_4, the study of these species was greatly facilitated by the discovery that many of them could be kept indefinitely in stable solutions in mixtures of fluorosulfonic acid and antimony pentafluoride. Such mixtures, usually dissolved in SO_2 or SO_2ClF, are among the strongest acidic solutions known and are often called *super acids.* The original experiments involved the addition of alkyl fluorides to SbF_5.[8]

$$\mathbf{RF + SbF_5 \longrightarrow R^+\ SbF_6^-}$$

Subsequently it was found that the same cations could also be generated from alcohols in super acid-SO_2 at $-60°C$[9] and from alkenes by the addition of a proton from super acid or HF-SbF_5 in SO_2 or SO_2ClF at low temperatures.[10] Even alkanes give carbocations in super acid by loss of H^-. For example,[11] isobutane gives the *t*-butyl cation

$$\mathbf{Me_3CH \xrightarrow{FSO_3H\text{–}SbF_5} Me_3C^+\quad SbF_5FSO_3^- + H_2}$$

No matter how they are generated,[12] study of the simple alkyl cations has provided dramatic evidence for the stability order. Both propyl fluorides gave the isopropyl cation; all four butyl fluorides[13] gave the *t*-butyl cation, and all seven of the pentyl fluorides tried gave the *t*-pentyl cation. *n*-Butane, in super acid, gave only the *t*-butyl cation. To date no primary cation has survived long enough for detection. Neither methyl nor ethyl fluoride gave the corresponding cations when treated with SbF_5. At low temperatures, methyl fluoride gave chiefly the methylated sulfur dioxide salt $(CH_3OSO)^+\ SbF_6^-$,[14] while ethyl fluoride rapidly formed the *t*-butyl and *t*-hexyl cations by addition of the initially formed ethyl cation to ethylene molecules also formed.[15] At room temperature, methyl fluoride also gave the *t*-butyl cation.[16] In accord with the stability order, hydride ion is abstracted from alkanes by super acid most readily from tertiary and least readily from primary positions.

---

[4] Olah, *CHEMTECH* **1,** 566 (1971), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 808 (1972).

[5] Gold, ''IUPAC Glossary of Terms Used in Physical Organic Chemistry,'' *Pure Appl. Chem.* **55,** 1281–1371 (1983), pp. 1296–1297.

[6] For a treatise, see Szwarc, ''Ions and Ion Pairs in Organic Reactions,'' 2 vols., Wiley, New York, 1972–1974.

[7] For reviews, see Olah and Olah, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 3, vol. 2, pp. 715–782; Olah, *Chem. Eng. News.* **45** (14), 77–88 (Mar. 27, 1967).

[8] Olah, Baker, Evans, Tolgyesi, McIntyre, and Bastien, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1360 (1964); Brouwer and Mackor, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 147 (1964); Kramer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4819 (1969).

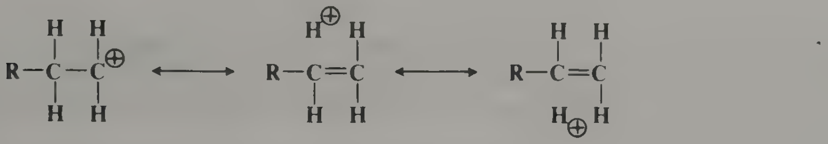
[9] Olah, Comisarow, Cupas, and Pittman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2997 (1965); Olah, Sommer, and Namanworth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3576 (1967).

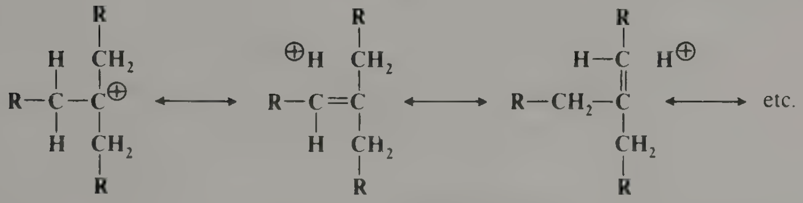
[10] Olah and Halpern, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2354 (1971). See also Herlem, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 107 (1977).

[11] Olah and Lukas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2227, 4739 (1967).

[12] For a convenient procedure, see Kelly and Brown, *Aust. J. Chem.* **29,** 957 (1976).

The stability order can be explained by hyperconjugation and by the field effect. In the hyperconjugation explanation,[17] we compare a primary carbocation with a tertiary. It is seen that many more canonical forms are possible for the latter:





In the examples shown the primary ion has only two hyperconjugative forms while the tertiary has six. According to rule 6 (p. 32), the greater the number of equivalent forms, the greater the resonance stability.

The field effect explanation is that the electron-donating effect of alkyl groups increases the electron density at the charge-bearing carbon, reducing the net charge on the carbon, and in effect spreading the charge over the α-carbons. It is a general rule that the more concentrated any charge is, the less stable the species bearing it will be.[18]

The most stable of all simple alkyl cations is the *t*-butyl cation. Even the relatively stable *t*-pentyl and *t*-hexyl cations fragment at higher temperatures to produce the *t*-butyl cation, as do all other alkyl cations with four or more carbons so far studied.[19] Methane,[20] ethane, and propane, treated with super acid, also yield *t*-butyl cations as the main product (see **2-16**). Even paraffin wax and polyethylene gave *t*-butyl cation. Solid salts of *t*-butyl and *t*-pentyl cations, e.g., $Me_3C^+SbF_6^-$, have been prepared from super-acid solutions and are stable below −20°C.[21]

---

[13] The *sec*-butyl cation has been prepared by slow addition of *sec*-butyl chloride to SbF_5–SO_2ClF solution at −110°C [Saunders, Hagen, and Rosenfeld, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6882 (1968)] and by allowing molecular beams of the reagents to impinge on a very cold surface [Saunders, Cox, and Ohlmstead, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3018 (1973); Saunders, Cox, and Lloyd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6656 (1979); Myhre and Yannoni, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 230 (1981)].

[14] Peterson, Brockington, and Vidrine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2660 (1976); Olah, Donovan, and Lin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2661 (1976); Calves and Gillespie, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 506 (1976); Olah and Donovan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5163 (1978).

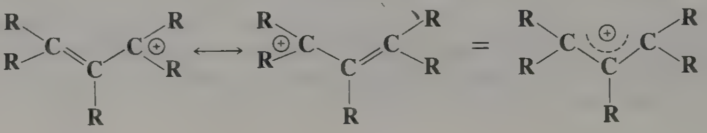
[15] Olah and Olah, Ref. 7, p. 722.

[16] Olah, DeMember, and Schlosberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6914 (1971).

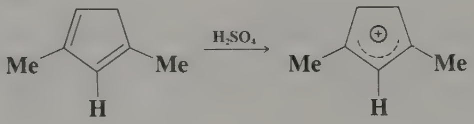
[17] For a review of molecular-orbital theory as applied to carbocations, see Radom, Poppinger, and Haddon, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 5, pp. 2303–2426

[18] An exception to this rule has been reported: Methyl-substituted oxocarbocations were reported to be more stable than the corresponding phenyl-substituted cations, though the charge concentration in the latter species should be lower: Larsen, Bouis, and Riddle, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4969 (1980).

Where the positive carbon is in conjugation with a double bond the stability is greater because of increased delocalization due to resonance and because the positive charge is spread over two



atoms instead of being concentrated on one (see the molecular-orbital picture of this species on p. 29). Each of the two atoms has a charge of about ½ (the charge is exactly ½ if all of the R groups are the same). Stable allylic-type cations[22] have been prepared by the solution of conjugated dienes in concentrated sulfuric acid, e.g.,[23]



The nmr spectrum of this ion demonstrates that the two canonical forms indeed contribute equally. There are only three peaks—one due to the six methyl hydrogens, one to the four methylene hydrogens, and one to the single C—H hydrogen—and the area ratios are 6:4:1, as expected.[23] Both cyclic and acyclic allylic cations have been produced in this way. Stable allylic cations have also been obtained by the reaction between alkyl halides, alcohols, or olefins (by hydride extraction) and SbF_5 in SO_2 or SO_2ClF.[24] Divinylmethyl cations[25] are more stable than the simple allylic type, and some of these have been prepared in concentrated sulfuric acid.[26] Arenium ions (p. 448) are important examples of this type. Open-chain trivinylmethyl cations are stable at low temperatures (−55°C) in fluorosulfuric acid.[27] Propargyl cations ($RC{\equiv}CCR_2^+$) have also been prepared.[28]

---

[19] Ref. 11; Olah and Olah, Ref. 7, pp. 750–764.

[20] Olah, Klopman, and Schlosberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3261 (1969). See also Hogeveen and Gaasbeek, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 319 (1968).

[21] Olah, Svoboda, and Ku, *Synthesis* 492 (1973); Ref. 11.

[22] For reviews, see Deno, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 2, pp. 783–806; Richey, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 2, pp. 39–114, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[23] Deno, Richey, Hodge, and Wisotsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1498 (1962); Deno, Richey, Friedman, Hodge, Houser, and Pittman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2991 (1963).

[24] Olah and Comisarow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5682 (1964); Olah, Clifford, Halpern, and Johanson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4219 (1971); Olah, Liang, and Mo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3544 (1972); Saunders and Berger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4049 (1972); Olah and Liang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6434 (1972); Olah and Spear, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1539 (1975).

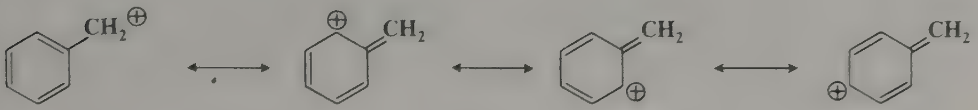
[25] For a review of divinylmethyl and trivinylmethyl cations, see Sorensen, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 2, pp. 807–835.

[26] Deno and Pittman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1871 (1964).

[27] Sorensen, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 2744 (1965).

[28] Pittman and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5632 (1965); Olah, Spear, Westerman, and Denis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5855 (1974).

Canonical forms can be drawn for benzylic cations,[29] similar to those shown above for allylic cations, e.g.,

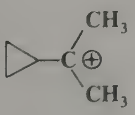


A number of benzylic cations have been obtained in solution as SbF_6^- salts.[30] Diarylmethyl and triarylmethyl cations are still more stable. Triphenylchloromethane ionizes in polar solvents that do not, like water, react with the ion. In SO_2, the equilibrium

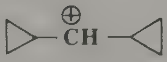
$$Ph_3CCl \rightleftharpoons Ph_3C^+ + Cl^-$$

has been known for many years. Both triphenylmethyl and diphenylmethyl cations have been isolated as solid salts[31] and, in fact, $Ph_3C^+\ BF_4^-$ and related salts are available commercially. Arylmethyl cations are further stabilized if they have electron-donating substituents in ortho or para positions.[32]

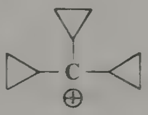
Cyclopropylmethyl cations[33] are even more stable than the benzyl type. **8** has been prepared by solution of the corresponding alcohol in 96% sulfuric acid,[34] and **6**, **7**, and similar ions by solution of the alcohols in FSO_3H-SO_2-SbF_5[35]. This special stability, which increases with each additional cyclopropyl group, is a result of conjugation between the bent orbitals of the cyclopropyl rings (p. 131) and the vacant *p* orbital of the cationic carbon. Nmr and other studies have shown that the vacant *p* orbital lies parallel to the C-2,C-3 bond of the cyclopropane ring and not perpendicular



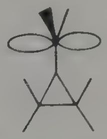
6



7



8



---

[29] For a review of benzylic, diarylmethyl, and triarylmethyl cations, see Freedman, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 4, pp. 1501–1578.

[30] Bollinger, Comisarow, Cupas, and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 5687 (1967); Olah, Porter, Jeueli, and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 2044 (1972).

[31] Volz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2**, 622 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75**, 921]; Volz and Schnell, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4**, 873 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77**, 864].

[32] Goldacre and Phillips, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1724 (1949); Deno and Schriesheim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77**, 3051 (1955).

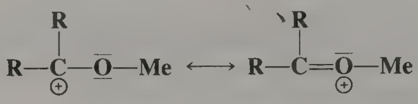
[33] For reviews, see in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 3: Richey, pp. 1201–1294; Wiberg, Hess, and Ashe, pp. 1295–1345.

[34] Deno, Richey, Liu, Hodge, Houser, and Wisotsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84**, 2016 (1962).

[35] Pittman and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 2998 (1965); Deno, Liu, Turner, Lincoln, and Fruit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 3000 (1965).

to it.[36] In this respect the geometry is similar to that of a cyclopropane ring conjugated with a double bond (p. 131). Cyclopropylmethyl cations are further discussed on pp. 283–285. The stabilizing effect just discussed is unique to cyclopropyl groups. Cyclobutyl and larger cyclic groups are about as effective at stabilizing a carbocation as ordinary alkyl groups.[37]

Another structural feature that increases carbocation stability is the presence, adjacent to the cationic center, of a hetero atom bearing an unshared pair,[38] e.g., oxygen, nitrogen,[39] or halogen.[40] Such ions are stabilized by resonance:

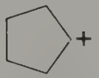


$$R-\overset{R}{\underset{\oplus}{C}}-\bar{\underline{O}}-Me \longleftrightarrow R-\overset{R}{C}=\underset{\oplus}{\bar{O}}-Me$$

The methoxymethyl cation can be obtained as a stable solid, $MeOCH_2^+\ SbF_6^-$.[41]

Simple acyl cations RCO^+ have been prepared[42] in solution and the solid state.[43] The acetyl cation CH_3CO^+ is about as stable as the *t*-butyl cation (see, for example, Table 1). The 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoyl and 2,3,4,5,6-pentamethylbenzoyl cations are especially stable (for steric reasons) and are easily formed in 96% H_2SO_4.[44] These ions are stabilized by a canonical form containing a

TABLE 1 Heterolytic $R—Br \rightarrow R^+ + Br^-$ dissociation energies in the gas phase. All values are ±2 kcal/mol[52]

Ion	$D(R^+—Br^-)$ kcal/mol	Ion	$D(R^+—Br^-)$ kcal/mol
CH_3^+	217.7		161.3
$C_2H_5^+$	181.9		
$(CH_3)_2CH^+$	162.9		
		CH_3CO^+	151.1
		$(CH_3)_3C^+$	148.7

---

[36] For example, see Ree and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1660 (1970); Kabakoff and Namanworth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc* **92,** 3234 (1970); Buss, Gleiter, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3927 (1971); Poulter and Spillner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7591 (1974); Ref. 34.

[37] Sorensen, Miller, and Ranganayakulu, *Aust. J. Chem.* **26,** 311 (1973).

[38] For examples of stable solutions of such ions, see Kabuss, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 675 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 714]; Dimroth and Heinrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 676 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 715]; Tomalia and Hart *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3389 (1966); Ramsey and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3058 (1966); Olah and Bollinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2993 (1967); Olah, Liang, and Mo, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2394 (1974); Borch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5303 (1968); Dusseau, Schaafsma, Steinberg, and de Boer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 467 (1969); Rabinovitz and Bruck, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 245 (1971).

[39] For a review of such ions where nitrogen is the hetero atom, see Scott and Butler, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 4, pp. 1643–1696.

[40] For reviews of such ions where the hetero atom is halogen, see Olah and Mo, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 5, pp. 2135–2262; *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **7,** 69–112 (1973).

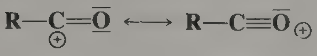
[41] Olah and Svoboda, *Synthesis* 52 (1973).

[42] For a review of acyl cations, see Olah, Germain, and White, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 5, pp. 2049–2133. For a review of the preparation of acyl cations from acyl halides and Lewis acids, see Lindner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 114–123 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 143–153].

[43] See, for example, Olah, Kuhn, Tolgyesi, and Baker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2733 (1962); Deno, Pittman, and Wisotsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4370 (1964); Olah, Dunne, Mo, and Szilagyi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4200 (1972); Olah and Svoboda, *Synthesis* 306 (1972).

[44] Hammett and Deyrup, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **55,** 1900 (1933); Newman and Deno, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 3651 (1951).

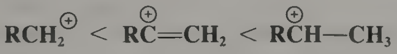
triple bond (**10**); though the positive charge is principally located on the carbon,[45] so that **9** contributes more than **10**.



$$R-\underset{\oplus}{C}=\overline{\underline{O}} \longleftrightarrow R-C\equiv\overline{O}_{\oplus}$$

9 **10**

The stabilities of most other stable carbocations can also be attributed to resonance. Among these are the tropylium, cyclopropenium, and other aromatic cations discussed in Chapter 2. Where resonance stability is completely lacking, as in the phenyl ($C_6H_5^+$) or vinyl cations, the ion, if formed at all, is usually very short-lived.[45a] Neither vinyl[46] nor phenyl cation has as yet been prepared as a stable species in solution.[47] Vinyl cations are probably more stable than the corresponding primary alkyl cations but less stable than the corresponding secondary alkyl cations:[48]



$$RCH_2^{\oplus} < R\overset{\oplus}{C}=CH_2 < R\overset{\oplus}{C}H-CH_3$$

Various quantitative methods have been developed to express the relative stabilities of carbocations.[49] One of the most common of these, though useful only for relatively stable cations that are formed by ionization of alcohols in acidic solutions, is based on the equation[50]

$$H_R = pK_{R^+} - \log \frac{C_{R^+}}{C_{ROH}}$$

pK_{R^+} is the pK value for the reaction $R^+ + 2H_2O \rightleftharpoons ROH + H_3O^+$ and is a measure of the stability of the carbocation. H_R (formerly called C_0 and J_0) is an easily obtainable measurement of the acidity of a solvent (see p. 224) and approaches pH at low concentrations of acid. In order to obtain pK_{R^+} for a cation R^+, one dissolves the alcohol ROH in an acidic solution of known H_R. Then the concentrations of R^+ and ROH are obtained, generally from spectra, and pK_R is easily calculated.[51] A measure of carbocation stability that applies to less-stable ions was obtained by Beauchamp and co-workers, who used ion cyclotron resonance to measure the energy of breaking an R—Br bond, to give R^+ and Br^- in the gas phase.[52] These values, given in Table 1, provide a measure of the stabilities of the corresponding cations in the gas phase.

---

[45] Boer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6706 (1968); Le Carpentier and Weiss, *Acta Crystallogr., Sect. B* 1430 (1972). See also Mateescu, Riemenschneider, Svoboda, and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7191 (1972); Olah and Westerman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3706 (1973).

[45a] For a review of destabilized carbocations, see Tidwell, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **23,** 20–32 (1984) [*Angew. Chem.* **96,** 16–28].

[46] Solutions of aryl-substituted vinyl cations have been reported to be stable for at least a short time at low temperatures. Nmr spectra have been obtained: Abram and Watts, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 857 (1974); Siehl, Carnahan, Eckes, and Hanack, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 675 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 677]. The 1-cyclobutenyl cation has been reported to be stable in the gas phase; Franke, Schwarz and Stahl, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3493 (1980).

[47] For a monograph, see Stang, Rappoport, Hanack, and Subramanian, "Vinyl Cations," Academic Press, New York, 1979. For reviews of aryl and/or vinyl cations, see Rappoport, *Reactiv. Intermed.* (*Plenum*) **3,** 427–615 (1983); Ambroz and Kemp, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **8,** 353–365 (1979); Hanack, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 333–341 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 346–359]; *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 364–371 (1976); Richey and Richey, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 2, pp. 899–957; Richey, Ref. 22, pp. 42–49; Modena and Tonellato, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **9,** 185–280 (1971); Stang, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **10,** 205–325 (1973).

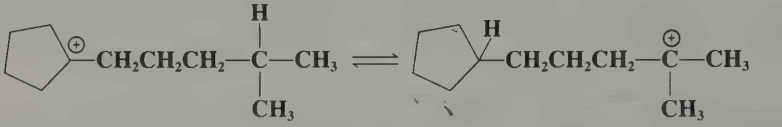
[48] Richey, Ref. 22, p. 44. For a discussion of vinyl cation stability, see Rappoport, Ref. 47, pp. 523–531.

[49] For a review, see Bethell and Gold, Ref. 2, pp. 59–87.

[50] Deno, Jaruzelski, and Schriesheim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3044 (1955); Deno and Schriesheim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3051 (1955); Deno, Berkheimer, Evans, and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2344 (1959).

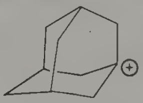
[51] For a list of stabilities of 39 typical carbocations, see Arnett and Hofelich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2889 (1983).

One way to measure relative carbocation stabilities is to allow two sites in the same molecule to compete for a hydride ion, e.g.,

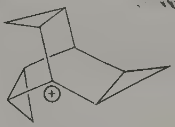


The relative stabilities of the two ions are obtained by measuring the equilibrium constant K.[53] Experiments showed that cycloalkyl rings of 5, 7, or 8 members stabilize carbocations better than acyclic groups.[53]

Since the central carbon of tricoordinated carbocations has only three bonds and no other valence electrons, the bonds are sp^2 and should be planar.[54] Raman, ir, and nmr spectroscopic data on simple alkyl cations show this to be so.[55] Other evidence is that carbocations are difficult or impossible to form at bridgeheads,[56] where they cannot be planar (see p. 261). However, the adamantyl cation (**11**) has been prepared, as the SF_6^- salt.[57] This represents an unusual type of bridgehead cation, and it may be planar or near-planar, even though the positive charge is at a bridgehead. Another bridgehead cation that has been prepared in super-acid solution at −78°C is the 1-trishomobarrelyl cation (**12**).[58] In this case the instability of the bridgehead position is balanced by the extra stability gained from the conjugation with the three cyclopropyl groups.

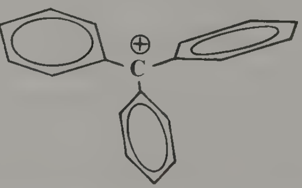


11



12

Triarylmethyl cations[59] are propeller-shaped, though the central carbon and the three ring carbons connected to it are in a plane:[60]



[52] Staley, Wieting, and Beauchamp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 5964 (1977). See also Arnett and Petro, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100**, 5408 (1978); Arnett and Pienta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102**, 3329 (1980).

[53] Okazawa and Sorensen, *Can. J. Chem.* **60**, 2180 (1982).

[54] For discussions of the stereochemistry of carbocations, see Henderson, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **2**, 397–413 (1973); Buss, Schleyer, and Allen, Ref. 2, Schleyer in Chiurdoglu, "Conformational Analysis," pp. 241–249, Academic Press, New York, 1971; Hehre, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8**, 369–376 (1975); Ref. 29, pp. 1561–1574.

[55] Olah, DeMember, Commeyras, and Bribes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 459 (1971); Olah et al., Ref. 8.

[56] For a review of bridgehead carbocations, see Fort, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 4, pp. 1783–1835.

[57] Schleyer, Fort, Watts, Comisarow, and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86**, 4195 (1964).

[58] deMeijere and Schallner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12**, 399 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85**, 400].

[59] For a review of crystal-structure determinations of triarylmethyl cations and other carbocations that can be isolated in stable solids, see Sundaralingam and Chwang, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 2, vol. 5, pp. 2427–2476.

[60] Sharp and Sheppard, *J. Chem. Soc.* 674 (1957); Gomes de Mesquita, MacGillavry, and Eriks, *Acta Crystallogr.* **18**, 437 (1965); Schuster, Colter, and Kurland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 4679 (1968).

The three benzene rings cannot be all in the same plane because of steric hindrance, though increased resonance energy would be gained if they could.

An important tool for the investigation of carbocation structure is measurement of the ^{13}C nmr chemical shift of the carbon atom bearing the positive charge.[61] This shift approximately correlates with electron density on the carbon. ^{13}C chemical shifts for a number of ions are given in Table 2.[62] As shown in the table, the substitution of an ethyl for a methyl or a methyl for a hydrogen causes a downfield shift, indicating that the central carbon becomes somewhat more positive. On the other hand, the presence of hydroxy or phenyl groups decreases the positive character of the central carbon. The ^{13}C chemical shifts are not always in exact order of carbocation stabilities as determined in other ways. Thus the chemical shift shows that the triphenylmethyl cation has a more positive central carbon than diphenylmethyl cation, though the former is more stable. Also, the 2-cyclopropylpropyl and 2-phenylpropyl cations have shifts of -86.8 and -61.1, respectively, though we have seen that according to other criteria a cyclopropyl group is better than a phenyl group at stabilizing a carbocation.[63] The reasons for this discrepancy are not fully understood.[61,64]

Nonclassical Carbocations

These are discussed at pp. 272–286.

The Generation and Fate of Carbocations

Carbocations, stable or unstable, are usually generated in one of two general ways:

1. A direct ionization, in which a group attached to a carbon atom leaves with its pair of electrons (see Chapters 10, 13, 17, 18):

$$R\overset{\curvearrowright}{-}X \longrightarrow R^+ + X^- \quad \text{(may be reversible)}$$

TABLE 2. ^{13}C chemical-shift values, in parts per million from $^{13}CS_2$, for some carbocations in $SO_2ClF–SbF_5$, $SO_2–FSO_3H–SbF_5$, or $SO_2–SbF_5$[62]

Ion	Chemical shift	Temp., °C	Ion	Chemical shift	Temp., °C
Et_2MeC^+	−139.4	−20	$C(OH)_3^+$	+28.0	−50
Me_2EtC^+	−139.2	−60	$PhMe_2C^+$	−61.1	−60
Me_3C^+	−135.4	−20	$PhMeCH^+$	−40[63]	
Me_2CH^+	−125.0	−20	Ph_2CH^+	−5.6	−60
Me_2COH^+	−55.7	−50	Ph_3C^+	−18.1	−60
$MeC(OH)_2^+$	−1.6	−30	Me_2(cyclopropyl)C^+	−86.8	−60
$HC(OH)_2^+$	+17.0	−30			

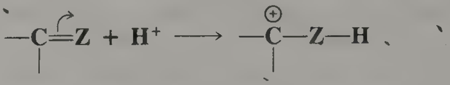
[61] For reviews of the nmr spectra of carbocations, see Young, *Prog. Nucl. Magn. Reson. Spectrosc.* **12,** 261–286 (1979); Farnum, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 123–175 (1975).

[62] Olah and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1884 (1968), **91,** 5801 (1969). For ^{13}C nmr data for additional ions, see Olah and Donovan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5026 (1977); Olah, Prakash, and Liang, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2666 (1977).

[63] Olah, Porter, and Kelly, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 464 (1971).

[64] For discussions, see Brown and Peters, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2400 (1973); **99,** 1712 (1977); Olah, Westerman, and Nishimura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3548 (1974); Wolf, Harch, Taft, and Hehre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2902 (1975); Fliszár, *Can. J. Chem.* **54,** 2839 (1976); Kitching, Adcock, and Aldous, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2652 (1979). See also Larsen and Bouis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 4418 (1975); Volz, Shin, and Streicher, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1297 (1975); Larsen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 330 (1978).

2. A proton or other positive species adds to one atom of an unsaturated system, leaving the adjacent carbon atom with a positive charge (see Chapters 11, 15, 16).



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}Z + H^+ \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-Z-H$$

Formed by either process, carbocations are most often short-lived transient species and react further without being isolated. There are several ways a carbocation may react, some of which give stable products and others lead to different carbocations, which themselves must react further to give stable products.

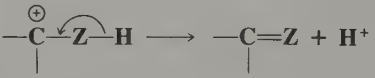
The two chief pathways by which carbocations react to give stable products are the reverse of the two pathways just described.

1. The carbocation may combine with a species possessing an electron pair (a Lewis acid–base reaction, see Chapter 8):

$$R^+ + Y^- \longrightarrow R-Y$$

This species may be OH^-, halide ion, or any other negative ion, or it may be a neutral species with a pair to donate, in which case, of course, the immediate product must bear a positive charge (see Chapters 10, 13, 15, 16).

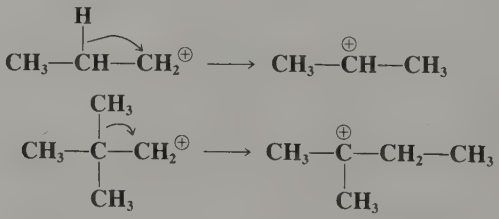
2. The carbocation may lose a proton (or much less often, another positive ion) from the adjacent atom (see Chapters 11, 17):



$$-\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-Z-H \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{C}{=}Z + H^+$$

Two pathways that lead to other carbocations are:

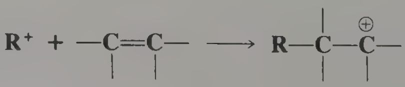
3. *Rearrangement.* An alkyl or aryl group or a hydrogen (sometimes another group) migrates with its electron pair to the positive center, leaving another positive charge behind (see Chapter 18):



$$CH_3-\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}H}-CH_2^{\oplus} \longrightarrow CH_3-\overset{\oplus}{C}H-CH_3$$

$$CH_3-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{\overset{CH_3}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-CH_2^{\oplus} \longrightarrow CH_3-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}}-CH_2-CH_3$$

4. *Addition.* A carbocation may add to a double bond, generating a positive charge at a new position (see Chapters 11, 15):



$$R^+ + -\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- \longrightarrow R-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-$$

13

Whether formed by pathway 3 or 4, the new carbocation normally reacts further in an effort to stabilize itself, usually by pathway 1 or 2. However, **13** may add to another olefin molecule, and this product may add to still another, etc. This is one of the mechanisms for vinyl polymerization.

CARBANIONS

Stability and Structure[65]

An *organometallic compound* is a compound that contains a bond between a carbon atom and a metal atom. Many such compounds are known, and organometallic chemistry is now a very large area, occupying a borderline region between organic and inorganic chemistry. Many carbon–metal bonds, e.g., carbon–mercury bonds, are undoubtedly covalent, but in bonds between carbon and the more active metals the electrons are closer to the carbon. Whether the position of the electrons in a given bond is close enough to the carbon to justify calling the bond ionic and the carbon moiety a carbanion depends on the metal, on the structure of the carbon moiety, and on the solvent and in many cases is a matter of speculation. In this section we discuss carbanions with little reference to the metal. In the next section we shall deal with the structures of organometallic compounds.

By definition, every carbanion possesses an unshared pair of electrons and is therefore a base. When a carbanion accepts a proton, it is converted into its conjugate acid (see Chapter 8). The stability of the carbanion is directly related to the strength of the conjugate acid. The weaker the acid, the greater the base strength and the lower the stability of the carbanion.[66] By stability here we mean stability toward a proton donor; the lower the stability, the more eager the carbanion is to accept a proton from any available source and hence to end its existence as a carbanion. Thus the determination of the order of stability of a series of carbanions is equivalent to a determination of the order of strengths of the conjugate acids, and one can obtain information about relative carbanion stability from a table of acid strengths like Table 1 in Chapter 8.

Unfortunately, it is not easy to measure acid strengths of very weak acids like the conjugate acids of simple unsubstituted carbanions. There is little doubt that these carbanions are very unstable in solution, and in contrast to the situation with carbocations, efforts to prepare solutions in which carbanions such as ethyl or isopropyl exist in a relatively free state have not yet been successful. Nevertheless, there have been several approaches to the problem. Applequist and O'Brien[67] studied the position of equilibrium for the reaction

$$\mathbf{RLi + R'I \rightleftharpoons RI + R'Li}$$

in ether and ether–pentane. The reasoning in these experiments was that the R group that forms the more stable carbanion would be more likely to be bonded to lithium than to iodide. Carbanion stability was found to be in this order: vinyl > phenyl > cyclopropyl > ethyl > *n*-propyl > isobutyl > neopentyl > cyclobutyl > cyclopentyl. In a somewhat similar approach, Dessy and co-workers[68] treated a number of alkylmagnesium compounds with a number of alkylmercury compounds in tetrahydrofuran, setting up the equilibrium

---

[65] For monographs, see Bates and Ogle, "Carbanion Chemistry," Springer-Verlag, New York, 1983; Buncel and Durst, "Comprehensive Carbanion Chemistry," pt. A, Elsevier, New York, 1980; Stowell, "Carbanions in Organic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1979; Cram, "Fundamentals of Carbanion Chemistry," Academic Press, New York, 1965. For reviews, see Solov'yanov and Beletskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 425–439 (1978); Staley and Dustman, *React. Intermed.* (*Wiley*) **2,** 15–57 (1981); le Noble, *React. Intermed.* (*Wiley*) **1,** 27–67 (1978); Isaacs, Ref. 1, pp. 234–293; Kaiser and Slocum, in McManus, Ref. 1, pp. 337–422; Ebel, *Fortchr. Chem. Forsch.* **12,** 387–439 (1969); Cram, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **4,** 45–68 (1968), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **7,** 155–172 (1963); Reutov and Beletskaya, "Reaction Mechanisms of Organometallic Compounds," pp. 1–64, North-Holland Publishing Co., Amsterdam, 1968; Streitwieser and Hammons, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **3,** 41–80 (1965). For reviews of nmr spectra of carbanions, see Young, Ref. 61; O'Brien, in "Comprehensive Carbanion Chemistry," cited above, pp. 271–322.

[66] For a monograph on hydrocarbon acidity, see Reutov, Beletskaya, and Butin, "CH-Acids," Pergamon, New York, 1978. For a review, see Fischer and Rewicki, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **7,** 116–161 (1968).

[67] Applequist and O'Brien, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 743 (1963).

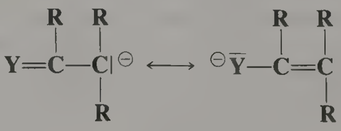
$$\mathrm{R_2Mg + R'_2Hg \rightleftharpoons R_2Hg + R'_2Mg}$$

where the group of greater carbanion stability is linked to magnesium. The carbanion stability determined this way was in the order phenyl > vinyl > cyclopropyl > methyl > ethyl > isopropyl. The two stability orders are in fairly good agreement, and they show that stability of simple carbanions decreases in the order methyl > primary > secondary. It was not possible by the experiments of Dessy and co-workers to determine the position of *t*-butyl, but there seems little doubt that it is still less stable. We can interpret this stability order solely as a consequence of the field effect since resonance is absent. The electron-donating alkyl groups of isopropyl result in a greater negative charge density at the central carbon atom (compared with methyl), thus decreasing its stability. The results of Applequist and O'Brien show that β branching also decreases carbanion stability. Cyclopropyl occupies an apparently anomalous position, but this is probably due to the large amount of *s* character in the carbanionic carbon (see p. 154).

A different approach to the problem of hydrocarbon acidity and hence carbanion stability is that of Shatenshtein and co-workers, who treated hydrocarbons with deuterated potassium amide and measured the rates of hydrogen exchange.[69] The experiments did not measure *thermodynamic* acidity, since rates were measured, not positions of equilibria. They measured *kinetic* acidity, i.e., which compounds gave up protons most rapidly (see p. 187 for the distinction between thermodynamic and kinetic control of product). Measurements of rates of hydrogen exchange enable one to compare acidities of a series of acids against a given base even where the positions of the equilibria cannot be measured because they lie too far to the side of the starting materials, i.e., where the acids are too weak to be converted to their conjugate bases in measurable amounts. Although the correlation between thermodynamic and kinetic acidity is far from perfect,[70] the results of the rate measurements, too, indicated that the order of carbanion stability is methyl > primary > secondary > tertiary.[69]

Many carbanions are far more stable than the simple kind mentioned above. The increased stability is due to certain structural features:

1. *Conjugation of the unshared pair with an unsaturated bond:*



$$\mathrm{Y{=}CR{-}CR_2^{\ominus}} \longleftrightarrow \mathrm{{}^{\ominus}\overline{Y}{-}CR{=}CR_2}$$

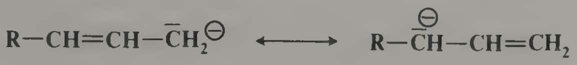
In cases where a double or triple bond is located α to the carbanionic carbon, the ion is stabilized by resonance in which the unshared pair overlaps with the π electrons of the double bond. This factor is responsible for the stability of the allylic[71] and benzylic[72] types of carbanions:

---

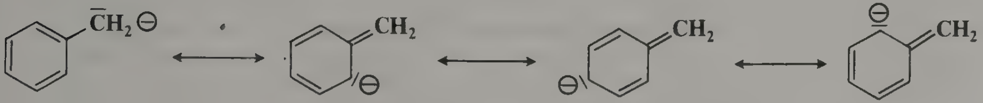
[68] Dessy, Kitching, Psarras, Salinger, Chen, and Chivers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 460 (1966).

[69] For reviews, see Jones, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **6,** 83–112 (1973); Shatenshtein and Shapiro, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 845–854 (1968); Shatenshtein, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1,** 153–201 (1963).

[70] For example, see Bordwell, Matthews, and Vanier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 442 (1975).

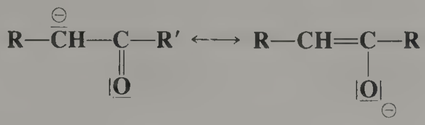


$$R-CH=CH-\overline{C}H_2^{\ominus} \longleftrightarrow R-\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}H-CH=CH_2$$



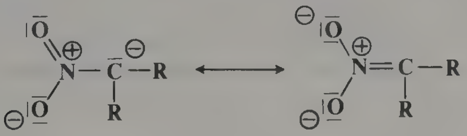
Diphenylmethyl and triphenylmethyl anions are still more stable and can be kept in solution indefinitely if water is rigidly excluded.[73]

Where the carbanionic carbon is conjugated with a carbon–oxygen or carbon–nitrogen multiple bond (Y=O or N), the stability of the ion is greater than that of the triarylmethyl anions, since these electronegative atoms are better capable of bearing a negative charge than carbon. However, it is questionable whether ions of this type should be called carbanions at all, since in the case of



14 **15**

enolate ions, for example, **15** contributes more to the hybrid than **14** although such ions react more often at the carbon than at the oxygen. Enolate ions can also be kept in stable solutions. A nitro group is particularly effective in stabilizing a negative charge on an adjacent carbon, and the anions of simple nitro alkanes can exist in water. Thus pK_a for nitromethane is 10.2, which means that at a pH of 10.2 an aqueous solution of nitromethane contains equal amounts of nitromethane and its



conjugate base and at higher pH values there is even more of the carbanion. Dinitromethane is even more acidic ($pK = 3.6$).

In contrast to the stability of cyclopropylmethyl cations (p. 145), the cyclopropyl group exerts only a weak stabilizing effect on an adjacent carbanionic carbon.[74]

---

[71] For a review of allylic anions, see Richey, Ref. 22, pp. 67–77.

[72] Although benzylic carbanions are more stable than the simple alkyl type, they have not proved stable enough for isolation so far. The benzyl carbanion has been formed and studied in submicrosecond times; Bockrath and Dorfman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5708 (1974).

[73] For a review of spectrophotometric investigations of this type of carbanion, see Buncel and Menon, in Buncel and Durst, Ref. 65, pp. 97–124.

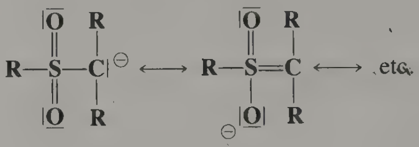
[74] Perkins and Ward, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 667 (1974); Perkins, Peynircioğlu, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1025 (1978).

2. *Carbanions increase in stability with an increase in the amount of s character at the carbanionic carbon.* Thus the order of stability is

$$RC{\equiv}C^- > R_2C{=}CH^- \approx Ar^- > R_3C{-}CH_2^-$$

Acetylene, where the carbon is *sp*-hybridized with 50% *s* character, is much more acidic than ethylene[75] (sp^2, 33% *s*), which in turn is more acidic than ethane, with 25% *s* character. Increased *s* character means that the electrons are closer to the nucleus and hence of lower energy. As previously mentioned, cyclopropyl carbanions are more stable than methyl, owing to the larger amount of *s* character as a result of strain (see p. 130).

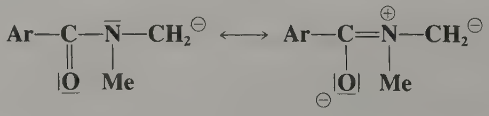
3. *Stabilization by sulfur*[76] *or phosphorus.* Attachment to the carbanionic carbon of a sulfur or phosphorus atom causes an increase in carbanion stability, although the reasons for this are in dispute. One theory is that there is overlap of the unshared pair with an empty *d* orbital[76a] ($p\pi$–$d\pi$ bonding, see p. 35). For example, a carbanion containing the SO_2R group would be written



$$R-\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{\overset{\overset{|\overline{O}}{\|}}{S}}-\underset{\underset{R}{|}}{\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}}|^{\ominus} \longleftrightarrow R-\underset{\underset{{}^{\ominus}|\underline{O}|}{|}}{\overset{\overset{|\overline{O}}{\|}}{S}}{=}\underset{\underset{R}{|}}{\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}} \longleftrightarrow \text{etc.}$$

However, there is evidence against *d*-orbital overlap; and the stabilizing effects have been attributed to other causes.[77]

4. *Field effects.* Most of the groups that stabilize carbanions by resonance effects (either the kind discussed in paragraph 1 above or the kind discussed in paragraph 3) have electron-withdrawing field effects and thereby stabilize the carbanion further by spreading the negative charge, though it is difficult to separate the field effect from the resonance effect. However, in a nitrogen ylide $R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}{-}\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}R_2$ (see p. 36), where a positive nitrogen is adjacent to the negatively charged carbon, only the field effect operates. Ylides are more stable than the corresponding simple carbanions. Carbanions are stabilized by a field effect if there is any hetero atom (O, N, or S) connected to the carbanionic carbon, provided the hetero atom bears a positive charge in at least one important canonical form,[78] e.g.,



$$Ar-\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{Me}{|}}{\overline{N}}-CH_2^{\ominus} \longleftrightarrow Ar-\underset{\underset{{}^{\ominus}|\underline{O}|}{|}}{C}{=}\underset{\underset{Me}{|}}{\overset{\oplus}{N}}-CH_2^{\ominus}$$

---

[75] For a review of vinyl anions, see Richey, Ref. 22, pp. 49–56.

[76] For reviews of α-sulfinyl carbanions, see Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," pp. 42–56, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Durst and Viau, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **7** (3), 63–74 (1973).

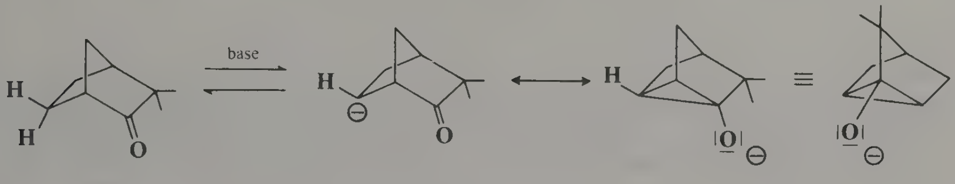
[76a] For support for this theory, see Wolfe, LaJohn, Bernardi, Mangini, and Tonachini, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 3789 (1983); Wolfe, Stolow, and LaJohn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 4071 (1983).

[77] Bernardi, Csizmadia, Mangini, Schlegel, Whangbo, and Wolfe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97**, 2209 (1975); Epiotis, Yates, Bernardi, and Wolfe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98**, 5435 (1976); Lehn and Wipff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98**, 7498 (1976); Borden, Davidson, Andersen, Denniston, and Epiotis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100**, 1604 (1978).

[78] For a review of such carbanions, see Beak and Reitz, *Chem. Rev.* **78**, 275–316 (1978). See also Rondan, Houk, Beak, Zajdel, Chandrasekhar, and Schleyer, *J. Org. Chem.* **46**, 4108 (1981).

5. Certain carbanions are stable because they are aromatic (see the cyclopentadienyl anion p. 42, and other aromatic anions in Chapter 2).

6. *Stabilization by a nonadjacent π bond.*[79] In contrast to the situation with carbocations (see pp. 274–276), there have been fewer reports of carbanions stabilized by interaction with a nonadjacent π bond. One that may be mentioned is **18**, formed when optically active camphenilone (**16**) was treated with a strong base (potassium *t*-butoxide).[80] That **18** was truly formed was shown by the following facts: (1) A proton was abstracted: ordinary CH_2 groups are not acidic enough for this base; (2) recovered **16** was racemized: **18** is symmetrical and can be attacked equally well from either side; (3) when the experiment was performed in deuterated solvent, the rate of deuterium uptake was equal to the rate of racemization; and (4) recovered **16** contained up to three atoms of deuterium per molecule, though if **17** were the only ion, no more than two could be taken up. Ions of this type, in which a negatively charged carbon is stabilized by a carbonyl group two carbons away, are called *homoenolate ions*.



16 **17** **18**

Overall, functional groups in the α position stabilize carbanions in the following order: $NO_2 > RCO > COOR > SO_2 > CN \approx CONH_2 > Hal > H > R$.

It is unlikely that free carbanions exist in solution. Like carbocations, they are usually in ion pairs or else solvated.[81] Among experiments which demonstrated this was the treatment of $Ph\text{-}CO\bar{C}HMe^- M^+$ with ethyl iodide, where M^+ was Li^+, Na^+, or K^+. The half-lives of the reaction were[82] for Li, 31×10^{-6}; Na, 0.39×10^{-6}; and K, 0.0045×10^{-6}, demonstrating that the species involved were not identical. Similar results[83] were obtained with Li, Na, and Cs triphenylmethides $Ph_3C^- M^+$.[84] Where ion pairs are unimportant, carbanions are solvated. Cram[65] has demonstrated solvation of carbanions in many solvents.

The structure of simple unsubstituted carbanions is not known with certainty since they have not been isolated, but it seems likely that the central carbon is sp^3-hybridized, with the unshared pair occupying one apex of the tetrahedron. Carbanions would thus have pyramidal structures, similar to those of amines.

---

[79] For reviews, see Werstiuk, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 205–268 (1983); Hunter, Stothers, and Warnhoff, in de Mayo, "Rearrangements in Ground and Excited States," vol. 1, pp. 410–437, Academic Press, New York, 1980.

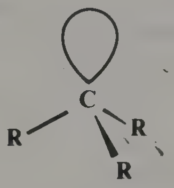
[80] Nickon and Lambert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1905 (1966). Also see Brown and Occolowitz, *Chem. Commun.* 376 (1965); Winstein, Ogliaruso, Sakai, and Nicholson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3656 (1967); Grutzner and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6562 (1968); Staley and Reichard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3998 (1969); Hunter, Johnson, Stothers, Nickon, Lambert, and Covey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8582 (1972); Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 751 (1969); Werstiuk, *Can. J. Chem.* **53,** 2211 (1975); Werstiuk, Yeroushalmi, and Timmins, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 1945 (1983).

[81] For reviews of carbanion pairs, see Hogen-Esch, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **15,** 153–266 (1977); Jackman and Lange, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2737–2769 (1977). See also Ref. 6.

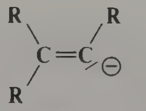
[82] Zook and Gumby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1386 (1960).

[83] Solov'yanov, Karpyuk, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 381 (1981).

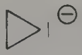
[84] For other evidence for the existence of carbanionic pairs, see Hogen-Esch and Smid, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 307, 318 (1966); **91,** 4580 (1969); Abatjoglou, Eliel, and Kuyper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8262 (1977); Solov'yanov, Karpyuk, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **237,** 668 (1977); DePalma and Arnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3514 (1978); Buncel and Menon, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 317 (1979); O'Brien, Russell, and Hart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 633 (1979); Streitwieser and Shen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 327 (1979).



If this structure is correct and if the three R groups are different, the carbanion should be chiral (see Chapter 4) and reactions in which it is an intermediate should give retention of configuration. Attempts have been made to demonstrate this but without success. A possible explanation is that the umbrella effect exists here, as in amines, so that the unshared pair and the central carbon rapidly oscillate from one side of the plane to the other. There is, however, other evidence for the sp^3 nature of the central carbon and for its tetrahedral structure. Carbons at bridgeheads,[85] though extremely reluctant to undergo reactions in which they must be converted to carbocations, undergo with ease reactions in which they must be carbanions and stable bridgehead carbanions are known.[86] Also, reactions at vinyl carbons proceed with retention,[87] indicating that the intermediate **19** has sp^2 hybridization and not the sp hybridization that would be expected in the analogous carbocation. There is evidence that a cyclopropyl anion (**20**) can also hold its configuration.[88]



19



20

Carbanions in which the negative charge is stabilized by resonance involving overlap of the unshared-pair orbital with the π electrons of a multiple bond are essentially planar, as would be expected by the necessity for planarity in resonance, though unsymmetrical solvation or ion-pairing effects may cause the structure to deviate somewhat from true planarity.[89] Cram and co-workers have shown that where chiral carbanions possessing this type of resonance are generated, retention, inversion, or racemization can result depending on the solvent (see p. 517). This result is explained by unsymmetrical solvation of planar or near-planar carbanions. However, some carbanions that are stabilized by adjacent sulfur or phosphorus, e.g.,

---

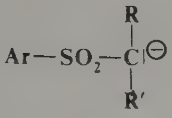
[85] Retention of configuration has never been observed with simple carbanions. Cram has obtained retention with carbanions stabilized by resonance. However, these carbanions are known to be planar or nearly planar, and retention was caused by asymmetric solvation of the planar carbanions (see p. 518).

[86] For other evidence that carbanions are pyramidal, see Streitwieser and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 529 (1969); Peoples and Grutzner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4709 (1980).

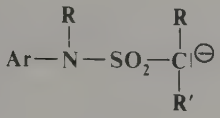
[87] Curtin and Harris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 2716, 4519 (1951); Braude and Coles, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2078 (1951); Nesmeyanov and Borisov, *Tetrahedron* **1,** 158 (1957). Also see Miller and Lee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 6313 (1959); Hunter and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5478 (1964); Walborsky and Turner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2273 (1972); Arnett and Walborsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3678 (1972).

[88] Walborsky and Motes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2445 (1970); Motes and Walborsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3697 (1970); and references cited in these papers.

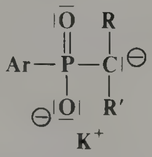
[89] See the discussion in Cram, "Fundamentals of Carbanion Chemistry," pp. 85–105, Academic Press, New York, 1965.



$\mathrm{Ar{-}SO_2{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{\underset{\displaystyle R'}{C}}|^{\ominus}}$



$\mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{N}{-}SO_2{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{\underset{\displaystyle R'}{C}}|^{\ominus}}$



$\mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{\displaystyle |\bar{O}}{\underset{\displaystyle {}^{\ominus}|\underline{O}|\ K^+}{P}}{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{\underset{\displaystyle R'}{C}}|^{\ominus}}$

are inherently chiral, since retention of configuration is observed where they are generated, even in solvents that cause racemization or inversion with other carbanions.[90] There is a controversy over whether this inherent chirality is the result of a pyramidal structure that does not invert or of a structure that is planar at the carbanionic carbon but is asymmetric because rotation about the C—S bond is hindered. The question is not yet settled.[91]

The Structure of Organometallic Compounds[92]

Whether a carbon–metal bond is ionic or polar-covalent is determined chiefly by the electronegativity of the metal and the structure of the organic part of the molecule. Ionic bonds become more likely as the negative charge on the metal-bearing carbon is decreased by resonance or field effects. Thus the sodium salt of acetoacetic ester has a more ionic carbon–sodium bond than methylsodium.

Most organometallic bonds are polar-covalent. Only the alkali metals have electronegativities low enough to form ionic bonds with carbon, and even here the behavior of lithium alkyls is more covalent than ionic. The simple alkyls and aryls of sodium, potassium, rubidium, and cesium are nonvolatile solids[93] insoluble in benzene or other organic solvents, while alkyllithiums are soluble, although they too are generally nonvolatile solids. Alkyllithiums do not exist as monomeric species in hydrocarbon solvents or ether.[94] In benzene and cyclohexane, freezing-point-depression studies have shown that alkyllithiums are normally hexameric unless steric interactions favor tetrameric aggregates.[95] Where steric hindrance is large enough, as in menthyllithium, dimeric aggregates are found in hydrocarbon solvents.[96] In such cases the alkyllithium is much more reactive than ordinary

[90] Cram, Nielsen, and Rickborn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 6415 (1960); Cram and Wingrove, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1496 (1962); Corey and Kaiser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 490 (1961); Goering, Towns, and Dittmer, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 736 (1962); Corey and Lowry, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 803 (1965); Bordwell, Phillips, and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 426 (1968); Annunziata, Cinquini, Colonna, and Cozzi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1005 (1981); Chassaing, Marquet, Corset, and Froment, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **232,** 293 (1982). For a discussion, see Ref. 89, pp. 105–113.

[91] See Rauk, Wolfe, and Csizmadia, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 113 (1969); Fraser and Schuber, *Chem. Commun.* 1474 (1969); Brown, Cook, Hutchinson, and Katritzky, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 593 (1971); Paquette, Freeman, and Wyvratt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3216 (1971); Henderson, Ref. 54.

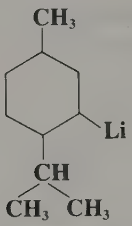
[92] For reviews, see Coates, Green, and Wade, "Organometallic Compounds," 3d ed., vol. 1, Methuen, London, 1967; Schlosser, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 287–306 (1964), pp. 287–291 [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 124–143].

[93] X-ray crystallography of potassium, rubidium, and cesium methyls shows completely ionic crystal lattices: Weiss and Sauermann, *Chem. Ber.* **103,** 265 (1970); Weiss and Köster, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 717 (1977). For x-ray crystallography of sodium and lithium methyls, see Weiss, Sauermann, and Thirase, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 74 (1983).

[94] For reviews of the structure of alkyllithium compounds, see Schleyer, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **56,** 151–162 (1984); Wakefield, "The Chemistry of Organolithium Compounds," pp. 3–18, Pergamon, New York, 1974; Brown, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **23,** 447–462 (1970), *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **3,** 365–395 (1965); Kovrizhnykh and Shatenshtein, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 840 (1969).

[95] Lewis and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4664 (1970); Brown and Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 1859 (1957); Weiner, Vogel, and West, *Inorg. Chem.* **1,** 654 (1962). See also Fraenkel, Henrichs, Hewitt, and Su, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 255 (1984).

[96] Glaze and Freeman, *J. Am. Chem. Sec.* **91,** 7198 (1969).



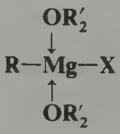
Menthyllithium

alkyllithiums. Boiling-point-elevation studies have been performed in ether solutions, where alkyllithiums exist in two- to fivefold aggregates.[97] Even in the gas phase[98] and in the solid state,[99] alkyllithiums exist as aggregates. X-ray crystallography has shown that methyllithium has the same tetrahedral structure in the solid state as in ether solution.[99]

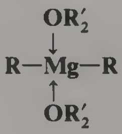
It is fairly certain that the C—Mg bond in Grignard reagents is covalent and not ionic. The actual structure of Grignard reagents in solution has been a matter of much controversy over the years.[100] In 1929 it was discovered[101] that the addition of dioxane to an ethereal Grignard solution precipitates all the magnesium halide and leaves a solution of R_2Mg in ether; i.e., there can be no RMgX in the solution since there is no halide. The following equilibrium, now called the *Schlenk equilibrium,* was proposed as the composition of the Grignard solution:

$$2RMgX \rightleftharpoons R_2Mg + MgX_2 \rightleftharpoons \underset{\mathbf{21}}{R_2Mg \cdot MgX_2}$$

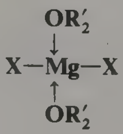
in which **21** is a complex of some type. Much work has demonstrated that the Schlenk equilibrium actually exists and that the position of the equilibrium is dependent on the identity of R, X, the solvent, the concentration, and the temperature.[102] It has been known for many years that the magnesium in a Grignard solution, no matter whether it is RMgX, R_2Mg, or MgX_2, can coordinate with two molecules of ether in addition to the two covalent bonds:



$$\begin{array}{c} OR'_2 \\ \downarrow \\ R{-}Mg{-}X \\ \uparrow \\ OR'_2 \end{array}$$



$$\begin{array}{c} OR'_2 \\ \downarrow \\ R{-}Mg{-}R \\ \uparrow \\ OR'_2 \end{array}$$



$$\begin{array}{c} OR'_2 \\ \downarrow \\ X{-}Mg{-}X \\ \uparrow \\ OR'_2 \end{array}$$

Rundle and co-workers performed x-ray-diffraction studies on solid phenylmagnesium bromide dietherate and on ethylmagnesium bromide dietherate, which they obtained by cooling ordinary ethereal Grignard solutions until the solids crystallized.[103] They found that the structures were monomeric:

---

[97] Wittig, Meyer, and Lange, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **571,** 167 (1951).

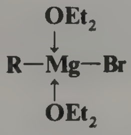
[98] Berkowitz, Bafus, and Brown, *J. Phys. Chem.* **65,** 1380 (1961); Brown, Dickerhoof, and Bafus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1371 (1962).

[99] Dietrich, *Acta Crystallogr.* **16,** 681 (1963); Weiss and Lucken, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **2,** 197 (1964); Weiss, Sauermann, and Thirase, Ref. 93. See also Hope and Power, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5320 (1983).

[100] For reviews, see Ashby, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2133–2142 (1972), *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **21,** 259–285 (1967); Wakefield, *Organomet. Chim. Rev.* **1,** 131–156 (1966); Bell, *Educ. Chem.* 143–145 (1973); Salinger, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **1,** 301–324 (1963).

[101] Schlenk and Schlenk, *Ber.* **62B,** 920 (1929).

[102] See Parris and Ashby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1206 (1971); Salinger and Mosher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1782 (1964); Kirrmann, Hamelin, and Hayes, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1395 (1963).



$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{\overset{\textstyle OEt_2}{\downarrow}}{\underset{\underset{\textstyle OEt_2}{\uparrow}}{Mg}}{-}Br}$$

R = ethyl, phenyl

A similar result was found for phenylmagnesium bromide crystallized from a Grignard solution prepared in tetrahydrofuran.[104] These solids still contained ether or tetrahydrofuran. When ordinary ethereal Grignard solutions prepared from methyl bromide, methyl chloride, ethyl bromide, and ethyl chloride were evaporated at about 100°C under vacuum so that the solid remaining contained no ether, x-ray diffraction showed *no* RMgX but a mixture of R_2Mg and MgX_2.[105] These results indicate that in the presence of ether $RMgX \cdot 2Et_2O$ is the preferred structure, while the loss of ether drives the Schlenk equilibrium to $R_2Mg + MgX_2$. However, conclusions drawn from a study of the solid materials do not necessarily apply to the structures in solution.

Boiling-point-elevation and freezing-point-depression measurements have demonstrated that in tetrahydrofuran at all concentrations and in ether at low concentrations (up to about 0.1 *M*) Grignard reagents prepared from alkyl bromides and iodides are monomeric, i.e., there are few or no molecules with two magnesium atoms.[106] Thus, part of the Schlenk equilibrium is operating

$$2RMgX \rightleftharpoons R_2Mg + MgX_2$$

but not the other part; i.e., **21** is not present in measurable amounts. That the equilibrium between RMgX and R_2Mg lies far over to the left for "ethylmagnesium bromide" in ether was shown by Smith and Becker, who mixed 0.1 *M* ethereal solutions of Et_2Mg and $MgBr_2$ and found that a reaction occurred with a heat evolution of 3.6 kcal/mol of Et_2Mg, and that the product was *monomeric* (by boiling-point-elevation measurements).[107] When either solution was added little by little to the other, there was a linear output of heat until almost a 1:1 molar ratio was reached. Addition of an excess of either reagent gave no further heat output. In tetrahydrofuran (THF) also, mixing of solutions of R_2Mg and MgX_2 gave RMgX, though in this case heat was absorbed on mixing because THF coordinates more strongly with $MgBr_2$ than with EtMgBr.[108] These results show that at least under some conditions *the Grignard reagent is largely RMgX* (coordinated with solvent) but that the equilibrium can be driven to R_2Mg by evaporation of all the ether or by addition of dioxane.

For some aryl Grignard reagents it has proved possible to distinguish separate nmr chemical shifts for ArMgX and Ar_2Mg.[109] From the area under the peaks the concentrations of the two species can be calculated, and from them, equilibrium constants for the Schlenk equilibrium. These data show[109] that the position of the equilibrium depends very markedly on the aryl group and the solvent but that conventional aryl Grignard reagents in ether are largely ArMgX, while in THF the predominance of ArMgX is less, and with some aryl groups there is actually more Ar_2Mg present. Separate nmr chemical shifts have also been found for alkyl RMgBr and R_2Mg in hexamethylphosphoric triamide (HMPT)[110] and in ether at low temperatures.[111] When Grignard reagents from alkyl bromides or chlorides are prepared in triethylamine the predominant species is RMgX.[112] Thus the most important factor determining the position of the Schlenk equilibrium is the solvent. For primary alkyl groups the equilibrium constant for the reaction as written above is lowest in Et_3N, higher in ether, and still higher in THF.[113]

---

[103] Guggenberger and Rundle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5375 (1968); Stucky and Rundle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4825 (1964).

[104] Schröder, *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 2035 (1969).

[105] Weiss, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 2805 (1965).

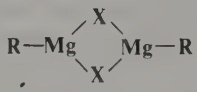
[106] Ashby and Becker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 118 (1963); Ashby and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4363 (1964); Vreugdenhil and Blomberg, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **82,** 453, 461 (1963).

[107] Smith and Becker, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 3027 (1966).

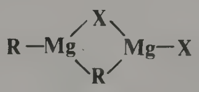
[108] Smith and Becker, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 4215 (1967).

[109] Evans and Khan, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 1643 (1967); Evans and Fazakerley, *Chem. Commun.* 974 (1968).

However, Grignard reagents prepared from alkyl bromides or iodides in ether at higher concentrations (0.5 to 1 *M*) contain dimers, trimers, and higher polymers, and those prepared from alkyl chlorides in ether at all concentrations are dimeric,[114] so that **21** is in solution, probably in equilibrium with RMgX and R_2Mg; i.e., the complete Schlenk equilibrium seems to be present. The structure of **21** is probably **22**,[115] though some **23** might also be present. X-ray analysis of solid EtMgBr coordinated with diisopropyl ether or triethylamine showed **22** to be the species present.[116]



22



23

The Grignard reagent prepared from 1-chloro-3,3-dimethylpentane in ether undergoes rapid inversion of configuration at the magnesium-containing carbon (demonstrated by nmr; this compound is not chiral).[117] The mechanism of this inversion is not completely known.

It might be mentioned that matters are much simpler for organometallic compounds with less polar bonds. Thus Et_2Hg and EtHgCl are both definite compounds, the former a liquid and the latter a solid.

The Generation and Fate of Carbanions

The two principal ways in which carbanions are generated are parallel with the ways of generating carbocations.

1. A group attached to a carbon leaves without its electron pair:

$$R{-}H \longrightarrow \overline{R}^{\ominus} + H^+$$

---

[110] Ducom, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Fr.* 3518, 3523, 3529 (1971).

[111] Ashby, Parris, and Walker, *Chem. Commun.* 1464 (1969); Parris and Ashby, Ref. 102.

[112] Ashby and Walker, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3821 (1968).

[113] Parris and Ashby, Ref. 102.

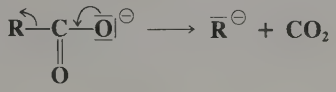
[114] Ashby and Smith, Ref. 106.

[115] Walker and Ashby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3845 (1969).

[116] Toney and Stucky, *Chem. Commun.* 1168 (1967); Spek, Voorbergen, Schat, Blomberg, and Bickelhaupt, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **77,** 147 (1974).

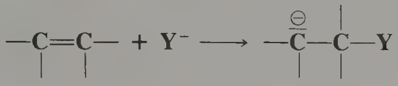
[117] Whitesides, Witanowski, and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2854 (1965); Whitesides and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4878 (1965). Also see Witanowski and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 737 (1966); Fraenkel and Dix, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 979 (1966); Fraenkel, Cottrell, and Dix, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1704 (1971); Pechhold, Adams, and Fraenkel, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1368 (1971); Maercker and Geuss, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 270 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 288].

The leaving group is most often a proton. This is a simple acid–base reaction, and a base is required to remove the proton. However, other leaving groups are known (see Chapter 12):



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overline{\underline{O}}|^{\ominus} \longrightarrow \overline{R}^{\ominus} + CO_2$$

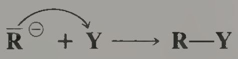
2. A negative ion adds to a carbon–carbon double or triple bond (see Chapter 15):



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + Y^- \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\ominus}{C}}{-}\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}Y$$

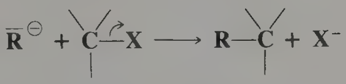
The addition of a negative ion to a carbon–oxygen double bond does not give a carbanion, since the negative charge resides on the oxygen.

The most common reaction of carbanions is combination with a positive species, usually a proton, or with another species that has an empty orbital in its outer shell (a Lewis acid–base reaction):



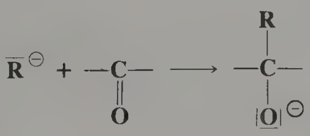
$$\overline{R}^{\ominus} + Y \longrightarrow R{-}Y$$

Carbanions may also form a bond with a carbon that already has four bonds, by displacing one of the four groups (SN2 reaction, see Chapter 10):



$$\overline{R}^{\ominus} + \underset{|}{\overset{\diagdown\,\diagup}{C}}{-}X \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{|}{\overset{\diagdown\,\diagup}{C}} + X^-$$

Like carbocations, carbanions may also react in ways in which they are converted to species that are still not neutral molecules. They may add to double bonds (usually C=O double bonds; see Chapters 10 and 16),



$$\overline{R}^{\ominus} + -\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{\underset{\underset{|\overline{\underline{O}}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}-$$

or rearrange, though this is rare (see Chapter 18),

$$Ph_3C\overline{C}H_2^{\ominus} \longrightarrow Ph_2\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}CH_2Ph$$

or be oxidized to free radicals.[117a]

[117a] For a review, see Guthrie, in Buncel and Durst, Ref. 65, pp. 197–269.

Organometallic compounds that are not ionic but polar-covalent behave very much as if they were ionic and give similar reactions.

FREE RADICALS

Stability and Structure[118]

A *free radical* (often simply called a *radical*) may be defined as a species that contains one or more unpaired electrons. Note that this definition includes certain stable inorganic molecules such as NO and NO_2, as well as many individual atoms, such as Na and Cl. Associated with the spin of an electron is a magnetic moment, which can be expressed by a quantum number of $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$. According to the Pauli principle, any two electrons occupying the same orbital must have opposite spins, so that the total magnetic moment is zero for any species in which all the electrons are paired. In radicals, however, one or more electrons are unpaired, so that there is a net magnetic moment and the species is paramagnetic. Free radicals can therefore be detected by magnetic-susceptibility measurements, but for this technique a relatively high concentration of radicals is required. A much more important technique is *electron spin resonance* (esr), also called *electron paramagnetic resonance* (epr).[119] The principle of esr is similar to that of nmr, except that electron spin is involved rather than nuclear spin. Like protons, electrons have two possible spin states when placed within a strong magnetic field. As in nmr, a strong external field is applied and electrons are caused to flip from the lower state to the higher by the application of the appropriate radio-frequency signal. Inasmuch as two electrons paired in one orbital must have opposite spins which cancel, an esr spectrum arises only from species that have one or more unpaired electrons, i.e., free radicals.

Since only free radicals give an esr spectrum, the method can be used to detect the presence of free radicals and to determine their concentration. Furthermore, information concerning the electron distribution (and hence the structure) of free radicals can be obtained from the splitting pattern of the esr spectrum (esr peaks are split by nearby protons).[120] Fortunately (for the existence of most free radicals is very short), it is not necessary for a radical to have a long lifetime in order for an esr spectrum to be obtained. Esr spectra have been observed for radicals with lifetimes considerably less than 1 sec.[121] Failure to observe an esr spectrum does not prove that radicals are not involved, since the concentration may be too low for direct observation. In such cases the *spin*

---

[118] For monographs, see Nonhebel, Tedder, and Walton, "Radicals," Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1979; Nonhebel and Walton, "Free-Radical Chemistry," Cambridge University Press, London, 1974; Kochi, "Free Radicals," 2 vols., Wiley, New York, 1973; Hay, "Reactive Free Radicals," Academic Press, New York, 1974; Pryor, "Free Radicals," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1966. For reviews, see Kaplan, *React. Intermed.* (*Wiley*) **2**, 251–314 (1981); **1**, 163–196 (1978); Griller and Ingold, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9**, 13–19 (1976); Huyser, in McManus, Ref. 1, pp. 1–59; Isaacs, Ref. 1, pp. 294–374.

[119] For monographs, see Wertz and Bolton, "Electron Spin Resonance," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1972; Assenheim, "Introduction to Electron Spin Resonance," Plenum, New York, 1967; Bersohn and Baird, "An Introduction to Electron Paramagnetic Resonance," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1966. For reviews, see Griller and Ingold, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13**, 193–200 (1980); Norman, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **8**, 1–27 (1980); Fischer, in Kochi, Ref. 118, vol. 2, pp. 435–491; Russell, in Nachod and Zuckerman, "Determination of Organic Structures by Physical Methods," vol. 3, pp. 293–341, Academic Press, New York, 1971; Rassat, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **25**, 623–634 (1971); Kevan, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **1**, 1–33 (1969); Geske, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4**, 125–211 (1967); Norman and Gilbert, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **5**, 53–119 (1967); Schneider, Möbius, and Plato, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4**, 856–867 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77**, 888–900]; Carrington, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17**, 67–99 (1963); Symons, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1**, 284–363 (1963). For a review on the application of esr to photochemistry, see Wan, *Adv. Photochem.* **9**, 1–145 (1974). See also Poole, "Electron Spin Resonance. A Comprehensive Treatise on Experimental Techniques," 2nd ed., Wiley, New York, 1983.

[120] For a review of the use of esr spectra to determine structures, see Kochi, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **5**, 189–317 (1975). For esr spectra of a large number of free radicals, see Bielski and Gebicki, "Atlas of Electron Spin Resonance Spectra," Academic Press, New York, 1967.

[121] For example, see Kochi and Krusic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91**, 3940 (1969).

trapping technique may be used.[122] In this technique a compound is added which is able to combine with very reactive radicals to produce more stable radicals; the new radicals can be observed by esr. The most important spin-trapping compounds are nitroso compounds, which react with radicals to give fairly stable nitroxide radicals: $RN{=}O + R'\bullet \longrightarrow RR'N{-}O\bullet$.

Because there is an equal probability that a given unpaired electron will have a quantum number of $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$, free radicals cause two lines or groups of lines to appear on an electronic spectrum, and are often referred to as *doublets*.

As with carbocations and carbanions, simple alkyl radicals are very reactive. Their lifetimes are extremely short in solution, but they can be kept for relatively long periods frozen within the crystal lattices of other molecules.[123] Many esr and other spectral[124] measurements have been made on radicals trapped in this manner. Even under these conditions the methyl radical decomposes with a half-life of 10 to 15 min in a methanol lattice at 77 K.[125]

Another magnetic technique for the detection of free radicals uses an ordinary nmr instrument. It was discovered[126] that if an nmr spectrum is taken during the course of a reaction, certain signals may be enhanced, either in a positive or negative direction; others may be reduced. When this type of behavior, called *chemically induced dynamic nuclear polarization*[127] (CIDNP), is found in the product of a reaction, it means that *at least a portion of that product was formed via the intermediacy of a free radical.*[128] For example, the question was raised whether radicals were intermediates in the exchange reaction between ethyl iodide and ethyllithium (**2-38**)

$$\mathbf{EtI + EtLi \rightleftharpoons EtLi + EtI}$$

Curve *a* in Figure 1[129] shows an nmr spectrum taken during the course of the reaction. Curve *b* is a reference spectrum of ethyl iodide (CH_3 protons at $\delta = 1.85$; CH_2 protons at $\delta = 3.2$). Note that in curve *a* some of the ethyl iodide signals are enhanced; others go below the base line (*negative enhancement;* also called *emission*). Thus the ethyl iodide formed in the exchange shows CIDNP and hence was formed via a free-radical intermediate. CIDNP results when protons in a reacting molecule become dynamically coupled to an unpaired electron while traversing the path from reactants to products. Although the presence of CIDNP always means that a free radical is involved, its absence does not prove that a free-radical intermediate is necessarily absent, since reactions involving free-radical intermediates can also take place without observable CIDNP. Also, the presence of CIDNP does not prove that *all* of a product was formed via a free-radical intermediate, only that some of it was.

---

[122] For reviews, see Perkins, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **17,** 1–64 (1980); Zubarev, Belevskii, and Bugaenko, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 729–745 (1979); Evans, *Aldrichimica Acta* **12,** 23–29 (1979); Janzen, *Acc. Chem. Rev.* **4,** 31–40 (1971). See also the collection of papers on this subject in *Can. J. Chem.* **60,** 1379–1636 (1982).

[123] For a review of the use of matrices to study radicals and other unstable species, see Dunkin, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **9,** 1–23 (1980); Jacox, *Rev. Chem. Intermed.* **2,** 1–36 (1978). For a review of the study of radicals at low temperatures, see Mile, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 507–519 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 519–531].

[124] For a review of infrared spectra of radicals trapped in matrices, see Andrews, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **22,** 109–132 (1971).

[125] Sullivan and Koski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 384 (1963).

[126] Ward and Lawler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5518 (1967); Ward, Lawler, and Cooper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 746 (1969); Bargon, Fischer, and Johnsen, *Z. Naturforsch., Teil A* **22,** 1551 (1967); Bargon and Fischer, *Z. Naturforsch., Teil A* **22,** 1556 (1967); Lepley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2710 (1968), **91,** 749 (1969); Lepley and Landau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 748 (1969).

[127] For a monograph on CIDNP, see Lepley and Closs, "Chemically Induced Magnetic Polarization," Wiley, New York, 1973. For reviews, see Lawler and Ward, in Nachod and Zimmerman, "Determination of Organic Structures by Physical Methods," vol. 5, pp. 99–150, Academic Press, New York, 1973; Ward, in Kochi, Ref. 118, vol. 1, pp. 239–273; *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 18–24 (1972); Closs, *Adv. Magn. Reson.* **7,** 157–229 (1974); Lawler, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 25–32 (1972); Kaptein, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **5,** 319–380 (1975); Bethell and Brinkman, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **10,** 53–128 (1973).

[128] A related technique is called chemically induced dynamic electron polarization (CIDEP). For a review, see Hore, Joslin, McLauchlan, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **8,** 29–61 (1979).

[129] Ward, Lawler, and Cooper, Ref. 126.

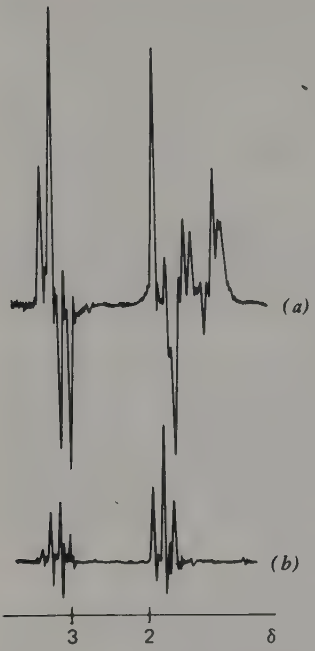
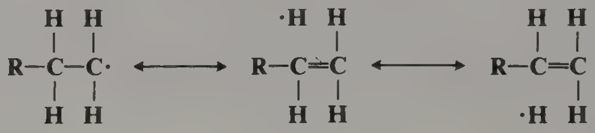


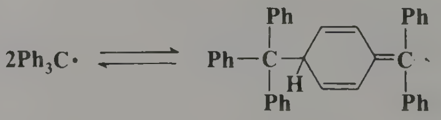
Figure 1[129] (*a*) Nmr spectrum taken during reaction between EtI and EtLi in benzene (the region between 2.5 and 3.5 δ was scanned with an amplitude twice that of the remainder of the spectrum). The signals at 1.0 to 1.6 δ are due to butane, some of which is also formed in the reaction. (*b*) Reference spectrum of EtI.

As with carbocations, the stability order of free radicals is tertiary > secondary > primary, explainable by hyperconjugation, analogous to that in carbocations (p. 143):



$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{H}{\underset{H}{C}}{-}\overset{H}{\underset{H}{C}}\cdot} \longleftrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\cdot H}{\underset{H}{C}}{=}\overset{H}{\underset{H}{C}}} \longleftrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{H}{\underset{\cdot H}{C}}{=}\overset{H}{\underset{H}{C}}}$$

With resonance possibilities, the stability of free radicals increases; some may be kept indefinitely.[130] Benzylic and allylic radicals for which canonical forms can be drawn similar to those shown for the corresponding cations (pp. 144, 145) and anions (pp. 152, 153) are more stable than simple alkyl radicals but still have only a transient existence. However, the triphenylmethyl and similar radicals[131] are stable enough to exist in solution at room temperature, though in equilibrium with a dimeric form. The concentration of triphenylmethyl radical in benzene solution is about 2%



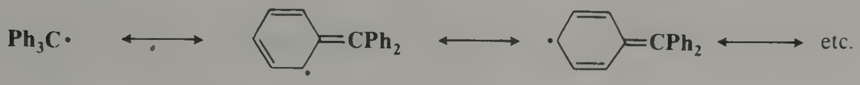
24

---

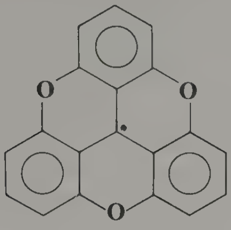
[130] For a monograph on stable radicals, including those in which the unpaired electron is not on a carbon atom, see Forrester Hay, and Thomson, "Organic Chemistry of Stable Free Radicals," Academic Press, New York, 1968.

[131] For a review, see Sholle and Rozantsev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **42,** 1011–1020 (1973).

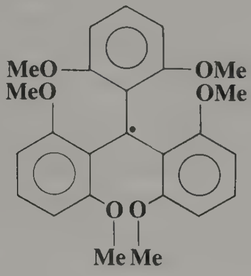
at room temperature. For many years it was assumed that $Ph_3C\bullet$, the first stable free radical known,[132] dimerized to hexaphenylethane ($Ph_3C—CPh_3$),[133] but uv and nmr investigation has shown that the true structure is **24.**[134] Although triphenylmethyl-type radicals are stabilized by resonance:



it is steric hindrance to dimerization and not resonance that is the major cause of their stability.[135] This fact was demonstrated by the preparation of the radicals **25** and **26.**[136] These radicals are electronically very similar, but **25,** being planar, has much less steric hindrance to dimerization



25



26

than $Ph_3C\bullet$, while **26,** with six groups in ortho positions, has much more. On the other hand, the planarity of **25** means that it has a maximum amount of resonance stabilization, while **26** must have much less, since its degree of planarity should be even less than $Ph_3C\bullet$, which itself is propeller-shaped and not planar. Thus if resonance is the chief cause of the stability of $Ph_3C\bullet$, **26** should dimerize and **25** should not, but if steric hindrance is the major cause, the reverse should happen. In the event, it was found[136] that **26** gave no evidence of dimerization, even in the solid state, while **25** existed primarily in the dimeric form, which is dissociated to only a small extent in solution,[137] indicating that steric hindrance to dimerization is the major cause for the stability of triarylmethyl radicals. A similar conclusion was reached in the case of $(NC)_3C\bullet$, which dimerizes readily though it is considerably stabilized by resonance.[138]

Completely chlorinated triarylmethyl radicals are more stable than the unsubstituted kind, probably for steric reasons, and many are quite inert in solution and in the solid state.[139] Certain radicals with the unpaired electron not on a carbon are also very stable.[140] Diphenylpicrylhydrazyl (**27**) is a solid that can be kept for years. We have already mentioned nitroxide radicals. **28** is a nitroxide radical so stable that reactions can be performed on it without affecting the unpaired electron[141] (the same is true for some of the chlorinated triarylmethyl radicals mentioned above[141a]).

---

[132] Gomberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **22,** 757 (1900), *Ber.* **33,** 3150 (1900).

[133] Hexaphenylethane has still not been prepared, but a substituted compound [hexakis(2,6-di-*t*-butyl-4-biphenylyl)ethane] has been shown by x-ray crystallography to be a nonbridged hexaarylethane: Stein, Winter, and Rieker, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 692 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 737].

[134] Lankamp, Nauta, and MacLean, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 249 (1968); Staab, Brettschneider, and Brunner, *Chem. Ber.* **103,** 1101 (1970); Volz, Lotsch, and Schnell, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 5343 (1970); McBride, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 2009 (1974). See also Guthrie and Weisman, *Chem. Commun.* 1316 (1969); Takeuchi, Nagai, and Tokura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 753 (1971).

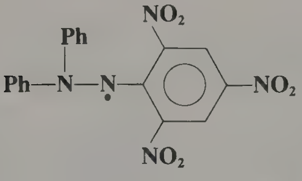
[135] For a review of steric effects in free radical chemistry, see Rüchardt, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **88,** 1–32 (1980).

[136] Sabacky, Johnson, Smith, Gutowsky, and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2054 (1967).

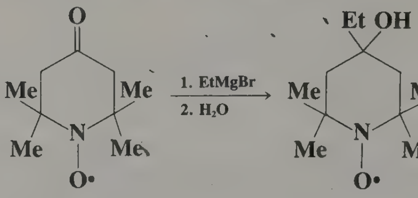
[137] Müller, Moosmayer, Rieker, and Scheffler, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3877 (1967). See also Neugebauer, Hellwinkel, and Aulmich, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4871 (1978).

[138] Kaba and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 523 (1976).

[139] Ballester, Castañer, Riera, Ibáñez, and Pujadas, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 259 (1982) and references cited therein.



27



28

Dissociation energies (D values) of R—H bonds provide a measure of the relative stability of free radicals R. Table 3 lists such values.[142] The higher the D value, the less stable the radical.

There are two possible structures for simple alkyl radicals.[144] They might have sp^2 bonding, in which case the structure would be planar, with the odd electron in a p orbital, or the bonding might be sp^3, which would make the structure pyramidal and place the odd electron in an sp^3 orbital. Esr spectra of CH_3• and other simple alkyl radicals as well as other evidence indicate that these radicals have planar structures.[145] This is in accord with the known loss of optical activity when a free radical is generated at an asymmetric carbon.[146] In addition, electronic spectra of the CH_3 and CD_3 radicals (generated by flash photolysis) in the gas phase have definitely established that under these

TABLE 3 D_{298} values (see p. 21) for some R—H bonds[142] *Free-radical stability is in the reverse order*

R	D, kcal/mol	R	D, kcal/mol	R	D, kcal/mol
Ph•	110	Me_3CCH_2•	100	Me_2CH•	95
CH_2=CH•	≥108	Et•	98	Me_3C•	92
CF_3•	106	Pr•	98	CH_2=$CHCH_2$•	89
Me•	104	CCl_3•	96	HCO•	87
Cyclopropyl[143]	101	Cyclohexyl	95.5	$PhCH_2$•	85

---

[140] For reviews of radicals with the unpaired electron on atoms other than carbon, see, in Kochi, Ref. 118, vol. 2, the reviews by Nelson, pp. 527–593 (N-centered); Bentrude, pp. 595–663 (P-centered); Kochi, pp. 665–710 (O-centered); Kice, pp. 711–740 (S-centered); Sakurai, pp. 741–807 (Si, Ge, Sn, and Pb-centered).

[141] Neiman, Rozantsev, and Mamedova. *Nature*, **200**, 256 (1963). For reviews of such radicals, see Aurich, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 1, pp. 565–622, Wiley, New York, 1982; Rozantsev and Sholle, *Synthesis* 190–202, 401–414 (1971).

[141a] See Ballester, Veciana, Riera, Castañer, Armet, and Rovira, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 982 (1983).

[142] These values are from Kerr and Trotman-Dickenson, in Weast, "Handbook of Chemistry and Physics," 61st ed., pp. F233–F234, CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla., 1980. See also Castelhano and Griller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 3655 (1982).

[143] For a review of cyclopropyl radicals, see Walborsky, *Tetrahedron* **37**, 1625–1651 (1981).

[144] For a review, see Kaplan, in Kochi, Ref. 118, vol. 2, pp. 361–434.

[145] See, for example, Cole, Pritchard, Davidson, and McConnell, *Mol. Phys.* **1**, 406 (1958); Fessenden and Schuler, *J. Chem. Phys.* **39**, 2147 (1963); Symons, *Nature* **222**, 1123 (1969), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 207 (1973); Bonazzola, Leray, and Roncin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 8348 (1977); Giese and Beckhaus, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17**, 594 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90**, 635]; Ellison, Engelking, and Lineberger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100**, 2556 (1978). See, however, Paddon-Row and Houk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103**, 5047 (1981).

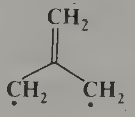
[146] There are a few exceptions. See p. 612.

conditions the radicals are planar or near-planar.[147] Ir spectra of $CH_3\bullet$ trapped in solid argon led to a similar conclusion.[148]

Evidence from studies on bridgehead compounds shows that though a planar configuration is more stable, pyramidal structures are not impossible. In contrast to the situation with carbocations, free radicals have often been generated at bridgeheads, although studies have shown that bridgehead free radicals are less rapidly formed than the corresponding open-chain radicals.[149] In sum, the available evidence indicates that though simple alkyl free radicals prefer a planar or near-planar shape, the energy difference between a planar and a pyramidal free radical is not great. However, free radicals in which the carbon is connected to atoms of high electronegativity, e.g., $CF_3\bullet$,[150] prefer a pyramidal shape;[151] increasing the electronegativity increases the deviation from planarity.[152]

Free radicals with resonance are definitely planar, though triphenylmethyl-type radicals are propeller-shaped,[153] like the analogous carbocations (p. 148).

A number of biradicals are known,[154] either stable or as intermediates. When the unpaired electrons of a biradical are widely separated, e.g., as in $\bullet CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2\bullet$, the species behaves spectrally like two doublets. When they are close enough for interaction or can interact through an unsaturated system (as in trimethylenemethane,[155] **29**), they can have total spin numbers of +1,



29

0, or −1, since each electron could be either $+\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2}$. Spectroscopically they are called *triplets*,[156] since each of the three possibilities is represented among the molecules and gives rise to its own spectral peak. In triplet *molecules* the two unpaired electrons have the same spin. Radicals with both unpaired electrons on the same carbon are discussed under carbenes (p. 171).

---

[147] Herzberg and Shoosmith, *Can. J. Phys.* **34,** 523 (1956); Herzberg, *Proc. R. Soc. London, Ser. A* **262,** 291 (1961).

[148] Andrews and Pimentel, *J. Chem. Phys.* **47,** 3637 (1967); Milligan and Jacox, *J. Chem. Phys.* **47,** 5146 (1967). See also Tan, Winer, and Pimentel, *J. Chem. Phys.* **57,** 4028 (1972).

[149] Lorand, Chodroff, and Wallace, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5266 (1968); Fort and Franklin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5267 (1968); Humphrey, Hodgson, and Pincock, *Can. J. Chem.* **46,** 3099 (1968); Oberlinner and Rüchardt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4685 (1969); Danen, Tipton, and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5186 (1971); Fort and Hiti, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3968 (1977).

[150] Fessenden and Schuler, *J. Chem. Phys.* **43,** 2704 (1965); Rogers and Kispert, *J. Chem. Phys.* **46,** 3193 (1967).

[151] Pauling, *J. Chem. Phys.* **51,** 2767 (1969).

[152] For example, 1,1-dichloroalkyl radicals are closer to planarity than the corresponding 1,1-difluoro radicals, though still not planar: Chen, Tang, Montgomery, and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2201 (1974). For a discussion, see Krusic and Bingham, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 230 (1976).

[153] Adrian, *J. Chem. Phys.* **28,** 608 (1958); Andersen, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **19,** 629 (1965).

[154] For a monograph, see Borden, "Diradicals," Wiley, New York, 1982. For reviews, see Borden, *React. Intermed. (Wiley)* **2,** 175–209 (1981); Salem and Rowland, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 92–111 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 86–106]; Salem, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **33,** 317–328 (1973); Jones, *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 175–181 (1974); Morozova and Dyatkina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 376–391 (1968). See also Döhnert and Koutecký, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1789 (1980). For a series of papers on biradicals, see *Tetrahedron* **38,** 735–867 (1982).

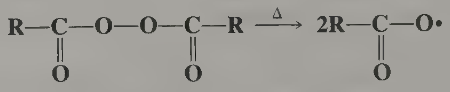
[155] For reviews of trimethylenemethane, see Borden and Davidson, *Ann. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **30,** 125–153 (1979); Bergman, in Kochi, Ref. 118, vol. 1, pp. 141–149.

[156] For discussions of the triplet state, see Wagner and Hammond, *Adv. Photochem.* **5,** 21–156 (1968); Turro, *J. Chem. Educ.* **46,** 2–6 (1969). For a discussion of esr spectra of triplet states, see Wasserman and Hutton, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 27–32 (1977).

The Generation and Fate of Free Radicals[157]

Free radicals are formed from molecules by breaking a bond so that each fragment keeps one electron.[158] The energy necessary to break the bond is supplied in one of two ways.

1. *Thermal cleavage.* Subjection of any organic molecule to a high enough temperature in the gas phase results in the formation of free radicals. When the molecule contains bonds with D values of 20 to 40 kcal/mol, cleavage can be caused in the liquid phase. Two common examples are cleavage of acyl peroxides[158a] and of azo compounds:[159]

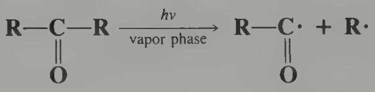


$$R{-}C(=O){-}O{-}O{-}C(=O){-}R \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2R{-}C(=O){-}O\cdot$$

$$R{-}N{=}N{-}R \xrightarrow{\Delta} 2R\cdot + N_2$$

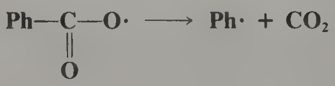
2. *Photochemical cleavage* (see p. 207). The energy of light of 600 to 300 nm is 48 to 96 kcal/mol, which is of the order of magnitude of covalent-bond energies. Typical examples are photochemical cleavage of chlorine and of ketones:

$$Cl_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} 2Cl\cdot$$



$$R{-}C(=O){-}R \xrightarrow[\text{vapor phase}]{h\nu} R{-}C(=O)\cdot + R\cdot$$

Free radicals are also formed from other free radicals, either by the reaction between a radical and a molecule (which *must* give another radical, since the total number of electrons is odd) or by cleavage of a radical to give another radical, e.g.,



$$Ph{-}C(=O){-}O\cdot \longrightarrow Ph\cdot + CO_2$$

Free radicals may also be formed by oxidation or reduction, including electrolytic methods.

Reactions of free radicals either give stable products (termination reactions) or lead to other radicals, which themselves must usually react further (propagation reactions). The most common termination reactions are simple combinations of similar or different radicals:

$$R\cdot + R'\cdot \longrightarrow R{-}R'$$

---

[157] For a review on formation of free radicals, see Walling, "Free Radicals in Solution," pp. 467–563, Wiley, New York, 1957.

[158] It is also possible for free radicals to be formed by the collision of two nonradical species. For a review, see Harmony, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **5,** 101–176 (1974).

[158a] For a review of free radical mechanisms involving peroxides in solution, see Howard, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Peroxides," pp. 235–258, Wiley, New York, 1983. For a review of pyrolysis of peroxides in the gas phase, see Batt and Liu, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Peroxides," pp. 685–710, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[159] For a review of the cleavage of azoalkanes, see Engel, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 99–150 (1980).

Another termination process is disproportionation:[160]

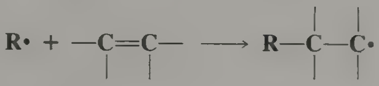
$$2CH_3—CH_2\bullet \longrightarrow CH_3—CH_3 + CH_2{=}CH_2$$

There are four principal propagation reactions, of which the first two are most common:

1. *Abstraction of another atom or group, usually a hydrogen atom* (see Chapter 14):

$$R\bullet + R'—H \longrightarrow R—H + R'\bullet$$

2. *Addition to a multiple bond* (see Chapter 15):

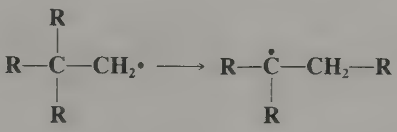


$$R\bullet + —\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}— \longrightarrow R—\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}—\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}\bullet$$

The radical formed here may add to another double bond, etc. This is one of the chief mechanisms for vinyl polymerization.

3. *Decomposition.* This can be illustrated by the decomposition of the benzoxy radical (p. 168).

4. *Rearrangement:*



$$R—\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}}—CH_2\bullet \longrightarrow R—\underset{R}{\dot{C}}—CH_2—R$$

This is less common than rearrangement of carbocations, but it does occur (though not when R = alkyl or hydrogen; see Chapter 18).

Besides these reactions, free radicals may be oxidized to carbocations or reduced to carbanions.[161]

Radical Ions[162]

Several types of radical ions are known with the unpaired electron or the charge or both on atoms other than carbon. Important examples are semiquinones (**30**) and ketyls (**31**). Only a few radical ions are known where both the unpaired electron and the charge reside on carbon atoms. One stable example is **32**.[163] Reactions in which alkali metals are reducing agents often involve radical ion

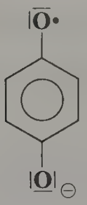
---

[160] For reviews of termination reactions, see Khudyakov, Levin, and Kuz'min, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 982–1002 (1980); Gibian and Corley, *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 441–464 (1973).

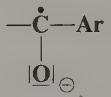
[161] For a review of the oxidation and reduction of free radicals, see Khudyakov and Kuz'min, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 22–42 (1978).

[162] For a monograph, see Kaiser and Kevan, "Radical Ions," Interscience, New York, 1968. For reviews, see Russell and Norris, in McManus, Ref. 1, pp. 423–448; Holy and Marcum, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 115–124 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 132–142]; Bilevich and Okhlobystin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 954–968 (1968); Szwarc, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 322–438 (1968); McClelland, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 301–315 (1964).

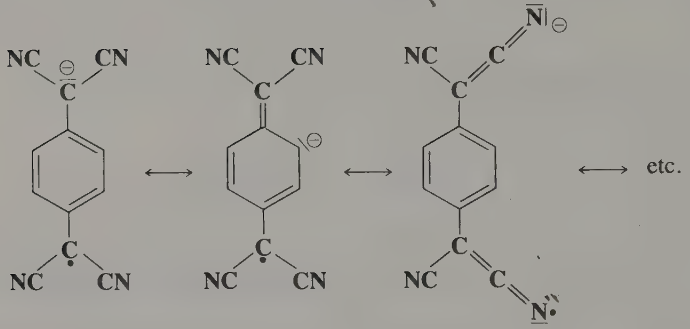
[163] Melby, Harder, Hertler, Mahler, Benson, and Mochel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3374 (1962).



30

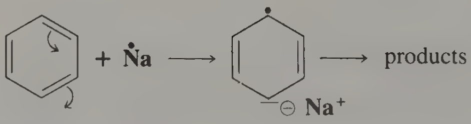


31



32

intermediates, e.g., reaction **5-11:**



Several types of radical cations are also known.[164]

CARBENES

Stability and Structure[165]

Carbenes are highly reactive species, practically all having lifetimes considerably under 1 sec. Carbenes have been isolated only by entrapment in matrices at low temperatures (77 K or less).[166]

---

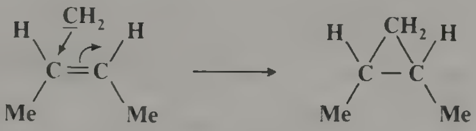
[164] For a review, see Bard, Ledwith, and Shine, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **13,** 155–278 (1976).

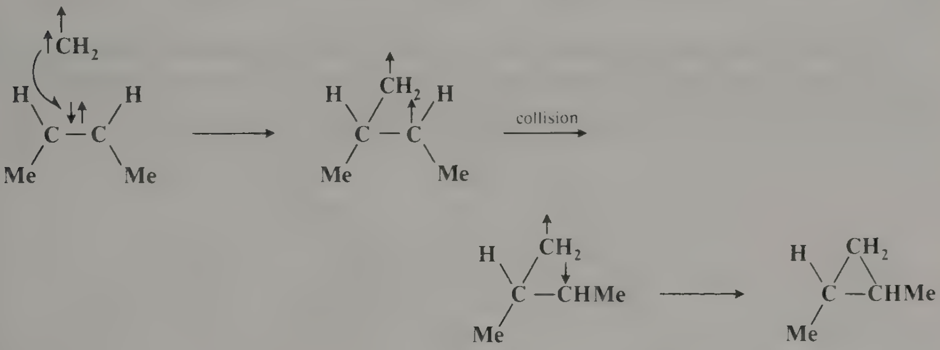
[165] For monographs, see Jones and Moss, "Carbenes," 2 vols., Wiley, New York, 1973–1975; Kirmse, "Carbene Chemistry," 2d ed., Academic Press, New York, 1971; Rees and Gilchrist," Carbenes, Nitrenes, and Arynes," Nelson, London, 1969; Hine, "Divalent Carbon," Ronald Press, New York, 1964. For reviews, see Moss and Jones, *React. Intermed. (Wiley)* **2,** 59–133 (1981); **1,** 69–115 (1978); Isaacs, Ref. 1, pp. 375–407; Bethell, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 153–209 (1969); Bethell, in McManus, Ref. 1, pp. 61–126; Closs, *Top. Stereochem.* **3,** 193–235 (1968); Herold and Gaspar, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **5,** 89–146 (1966); Rozantsev, Fainzil'berg, and Novikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **34,** 69–88 (1965); Schreck, *J. Chem. Educ.* **42,** 260 (1965); Chinoporos, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 235–255 (1963).

[166] For example, see Murray, Trozzolo, Wasserman, and Yager, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3213 (1962); Brandon, Closs, and Hutchison, *J. Chem. Phys.* **37,** 1878 (1962); Milligan, Mann, Jacox, and Mitsch, *J. Chem. Phys.* **41,** 1199 (1964); Trozzolo, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 329–335 (1968); Nefedov, Maltsev, and Mikaelyan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4125 (1971); Gano, Wettach, Platz, and Senthilnathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2326 (1982).

The parent species CH_2 is usually called *methylene*, although derivatives are more often named by the carbene nomenclature. Thus CCl_2 is generally known as dichlorocarbene, though it can also be called dichloromethylene.

The two nonbonded electrons of a carbene may be either paired or unpaired. If they are paired, the species is spectrally a *singlet*, while, as we have seen (p. 167), two unpaired electrons appear as a *triplet*. An ingenious method of distinguishing between the two possibilities was developed by Skell,[167] based on the common reaction of addition of carbenes to double bonds to form cyclopropane derivatives (**5-49**). If the singlet species adds to *cis*-2-butene, the resulting cyclopropane should be the cis isomer since the movements of the two pairs of electrons should occur either simultaneously or with one rapidly succeeding another. However, if the attack is by a triplet species, the two unpaired electrons cannot *both* go into a new covalent bond, since by Hund's rule they have parallel spins. So one of the unpaired electrons will form a bond with the electron from the double bond that has the opposite spin, leaving two unpaired electrons that have the same spin and therefore cannot form a bond at once but must wait until, by some collision process, one of the electrons can reverse its spin. During this time, there is free rotation about the C—C bond and a mixture of *cis*- and *trans*-1,2-dimethylcyclopropanes should result.[168]





The results of this type of experiment show that CH_2 itself is usually formed as a singlet species, which can decay to the triplet state, which consequently has a lower energy (molecular-orbital calculations show that the difference in energy between singlet and triplet CH_2 is about 9 to 11 kcal/mol[169]). However, it is possible to prepare triplet CH_2 directly by a photosensitized decomposition of diazomethane.[170] CH_2 is so reactive that it generally reacts as the singlet before it has a chance to decay to the triplet state.[171] As to other carbenes, some react as triplets, some as singlets, and others as singlets or triplets, depending on how they are generated. For gaseous reactions it is possible to increase the amount of carbene that reacts as the triplet by generating the carbene in the presence of an inert gas, since collisions with these molecules cause singlet carbenes to decay to the triplet state.[172]

---

[167] Skell and Woodworth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 4496 (1956).

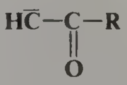
[168] These conclusions are generally accepted though the reasoning given here may be oversimplified. For discussions, see Closs, Ref. 165, pp. 203–210; Bethell, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ref. 165, pp. 194–200; Hoffmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1475 (1968).

[169] See, for example, Bender, Schaefer, Franceschetti, and Allen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6888 (1972); Hay, Hunt, and Goddard, *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **13,** 30 (1972); Dewar, Haddon, and Weiner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 253 (1974); Frey, *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.* 1024 (1972); Frey and Kennedy, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 233 (1975). Lucchese and Schaefer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 6765 (1977); Roos and Siegbahn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7716 (1977); Borden and Davidson, Ref. 155, pp. 128–134.

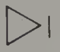
There is a limitation to the use of stereospecificity of addition as a diagnostic test for singlet or triplet carbenes.[173] When carbenes are generated by photolytic methods, they are often in a highly excited singlet state. When they add to the double bond, the addition is stereospecific; but the cyclopropane formed carries excess energy; i.e., it is in an excited state. It has been shown that under certain conditions (low pressures in the gas phase) the excited cyclopropane may undergo cis–trans isomerization *after* it is formed, so that triplet carbene may seem to be involved although in reality the singlet was present.[174]

The most common carbenes are CH_2 and CCl_2,[175] but many others have been reported, e.g.,[176]

$\cdot\dot{C}Ph_2$ $\qquad$ $R_2C{=}C{=}\overline{C}$

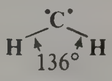


$H\overline{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R$

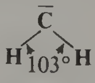


Studies of the ir spectrum of CCl_2 trapped at low temperatures in solid argon indicate that the ground state for this species is the singlet.[177] A dicarbene, $\overline{C}{=}C{=}\overline{C}$, is the major constituent of carbon vapor.[178]

The geometrical structure of triplet methylene can be investigated by esr measurements,[178a] since triplet species are biradicals. Such measurements made on triplet CH_2 trapped in matrices at very low temperatures (4 K) show that triplet CH_2 is a bent molecule, with an angle of about 136°.[179] Epr measurements cannot be made on singlet species, but from electronic spectra of CH_2 formed



Triplet
methylene



Singlet
methylene

---

[170] Kopecky, Hammond, and Leermakers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2397 (1961), **84,** 1015 (1962); Duncan and Cvetanović, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3593 (1962).

[171] For a review of the kinetics of CH_2 reactions, see Laufer, *Rev. Chem. Intermed.* **4,** 225–257 (1981).

[172] See Frey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5947 (1960); Braun, Bass, and Pilling, *J. Chem. Phys.* **52,** 5131 (1970).

[173] For other methods of distinguishing singlet from triplet carbenes, see Hendrick and Jones, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4249 (1978); Creary, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1611 (1980).

[174] Rabinovitch, Tschuikow-Roux, and Schlag, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1081 (1959); Frey, *Proc. R. Soc. London, Ser. A* **251,** 575 (1959). It has been reported that a singlet carbene (CBr_2) can add nonstereospecifically: Lambert, Larson, and Bosch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3799 (1983).

[175] For reviews concerning CH_2, see Bell, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 1–61 (1964); DeMore and Benson, *Adv. Photochem.* **2,** 219–261 (1964). For reviews of halocarbenes, see Burton and Hahnfeld, *Fluorine Chem. Rev.* **8,** 119–188 (1977); Margrave, Sharp, and Wilson, *Fort. Chem. Forsch.* **26,** 1–35 (1972), pp. 3–13; Parham and Schweizer, *Org. React.* **13,** 55–90 (1963).

[176] For reviews of unsaturated carbenes, see Stang, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 348–354 (1982); *Chem. Rev.* **78,** 383–403 (1878). For a review of carbalkoxycarbenes, see Marchand and Brockway, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 431–469 (1974). For a review of carbenes with neighboring hetero atoms, see Taylor, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2751–2772 (1982).

[177] Andrews, *J. Chem. Phys.* **48,** 979 (1968).

[178] Skell and Wescott, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1023 (1963).

[178a] The technique of spin trapping (p. 163) has been applied to the detection of transient triplet carbenes: Forrester and Sadd, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1273 (1982).

[179] Wasserman, Kuck, Hutton, and Yager, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7491 (1970); Wasserman, Yager, and Kuck, *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **7,** 409 (1970); Wasserman, Kuck, Hutton, Anderson, and Yager, *J. Chem. Phys.* **54,** 4120 (1971); Bernheim, Bernard, Wang, Wood, and Skell, *J. Chem. Phys.* **53,** 1280 (1970), **54,** 3223 (1971).

in flash photolysis of diazomethane it was concluded that singlet CH_2 is also bent, with an angle of about 103°.[180] Singlet CCl_2[177] and CBr_2[181] are also bent, with angles of about 100 and 114°, respectively. It has long been known that triplet aryl carbenes are bent.[182]

Flash photolysis of $CHBr_3$ produced the intermediate CBr[183]

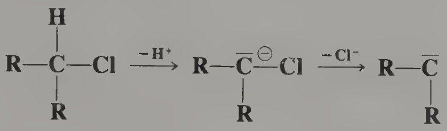
$$\mathbf{CHBr_3} \xrightarrow[\text{photolysis}]{\text{flash}} \cdot\overline{\mathbf{C}}\text{—}\mathbf{Br}$$

This is a *carbyne*. The intermediates CF and CCl were generated similarly from $CHFBr_2$ and $CHClBr_2$, respectively.

The Generation and Fate of Carbenes[184]

Carbenes are chiefly formed in two ways, though other pathways are also known.

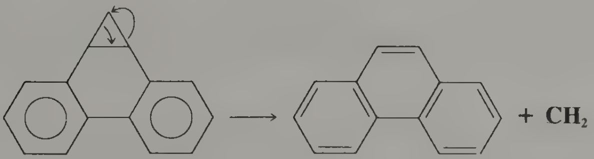
1. In α elimination, a carbon loses a group without its electron pair, usually a proton, and then a group with its pair, usually a halide ion:[185]



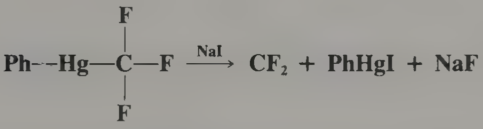
$$\mathrm{R{-}C(H)(R){-}Cl} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{H}^+} \mathrm{R{-}\overline{C}^{\ominus}(R){-}Cl} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{Cl}^-} \mathrm{R{-}\overline{C}{-}R}$$

The most common example of this is formation of dichlorocarbene by treatment of chloroform with a base (see reaction **0-3**), but many other examples are known, a few of which are

$$\mathbf{CCl_3{-}COO^- \xrightarrow{\Delta} CCl_2 + CO_2 + Cl^-} \qquad \text{Ref. 186}$$



Ref. 187



$$\mathbf{Ph{-}Hg{-}CF_2{-}F \xrightarrow{NaI} CF_2 + PhHgI + NaF} \qquad \text{Ref. 188}$$

---

[180] Herzberg and Shoosmith, *Nature* **183,** 1801 (1959); Herzberg, *Proc. R. Soc. London, Ser. A* **262,** 291 (1961); Herzberg and Johns, *Proc. R. Soc. London, Ser. A* **295,** 107 (1967); Herzberg and Johns, *J. Chem. Phys.* **54,** 2276 (1971).

[181] Ivey, Schulze, Leggett, and Kohl, *J. Chem. Phys.* **60,** 3174 (1974).

[182] Trozzolo, Wasserman, and Yager, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 129 (1965); Senthilnathan and Platz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5503 (1981).

[183] Ruzsicska, Jodhan, Choi, and Strausz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2489 (1983).

[184] For reviews, see Jones, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 415–421 (1974); Kirmse, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 9, pp. 373–415, Elsevier, New York, 1973; Ref. 165.

[185] For a review of formation of carbenes in this manner, see Kirmse, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 1–10 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 1–10].

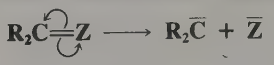
[186] Wagner, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 229 (1959).

[187] Richardson, Durrett, Martin, Putnam, Slaymaker, and Dvoretzky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2763 (1965). For reviews of this type of reaction, see Hoffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 529–537 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 595–603]; Griffin, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 537–547 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 604–613].

[188] Seyferth, Hopper, and Darragh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6536 (1969); Seyferth, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 65–74 (1972).

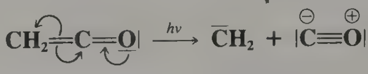
Though the positive group is lost first in most cases of α elimination, it is also possible for the negative group to be lost first[189] or for the two to be lost simultaneously.

2. Disintegration of compounds containing certain types of double bonds.



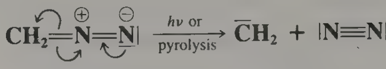
$$R_2C{=}Z \longrightarrow R_2\overline{C} + \overline{Z}$$

The two most important ways of forming CH_2 are examples: the photolysis of ketene



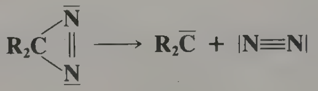
$$CH_2{=}C{=}\overline{O}| \xrightarrow{h\nu} \overline{C}H_2 + |\overset{\ominus}{C}{\equiv}\overset{\oplus}{O}|$$

and the isoelectronic decomposition of diazomethane



$$CH_2{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{N}}| \xrightarrow[\text{pyrolysis}]{h\nu\text{ or}} \overline{C}H_2 + |N{\equiv}N|$$

Diazirines (isomeric with diazoalkanes) also give carbenes:[190]

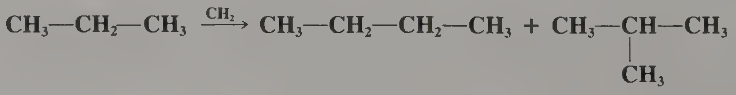


Because carbenes are so reactive, it is often difficult to prove that they are actually present in a given reaction. In many instances where a carbene is *apparently* produced by an α elimination or by disintegration of a double-bond compound there is evidence that no free carbene is actually involved. The neutral term *carbenoid* is used where it is known that a free carbene is not present or in cases where there is doubt. α-Halo organometallic compounds R_2CXM are often called carbenoids because they readily give α-elimination reactions[191] (for example, see p. 561).

The reactions of carbenes are more varied than those of the species previously discussed in this chapter.

1. Additions to carbon–carbon double bonds have already been mentioned. Carbenes also add to aromatic systems, but the immediate products rearrange, usually with ring enlargement (see reaction **5-49**). Additions of carbenes to other double bonds, such as C=N (reactions **6-63** and **6-64**), and to triple bonds have also been reported.

2. An unusual reaction of carbenes is that of insertion into C—H bonds (reaction **2-18**). Thus CH_2 reacts with methane to give ethane and with propane to give *n*-butane and isobutane. This



$$CH_3{-}CH_2{-}CH_3 \xrightarrow{CH_2} CH_3{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}CH_3 + CH_3{-}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}H}{-}CH_3$$

reaction is virtually useless for synthetic purposes but illustrates the extreme reactivity of carbene. Treatment in the liquid phase of an alkane such as pentane with carbene formed from the photolysis of diazomethane gives the three possible products in statistical ratios[192] demonstrating that carbene is displaying no selectivity. For many years, it was a generally accepted principle that the lower the selectivity the greater the reactivity; however, the generality of this principle has been questioned in recent years, because many exceptions have been found.[193] Singlet CH_2 generated by photolysis of diazomethane is probably the most reactive organic species known, but triplet CH_2 is somewhat less reactive, and other carbenes are still less reactive. The following series of carbenes of decreasing reactivity has been proposed on the basis of discrimination between insertion and addition reactions: $CH_2 > HCCOOR > PhCH > BrCH \approx ClCH$.[194] Dihalocarbenes generally do not give insertion reactions at all. Insertion of carbenes into other bonds has also been demonstrated, though not insertion into C—C bonds.[195]

---

[189] For example, see Olofson, Walinsky, Marino, and Jernow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6554 (1968).

[190] For reviews, see Liu, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **11,** 127–140 (1982); Frey, *Adv. Photochem.* **4,** 225–256 (1966).

[191] For a review, see Nefedov, D'yachenko, and Prokof'ev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 941–966 (1977).

[192] Doering, Buttery, Laughlin, and Chaudhuri, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 3224 (1956); Richardson, Simmons, and Dvoretzky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1934 (1961); Halberstadt and McNesby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3417 (1967).

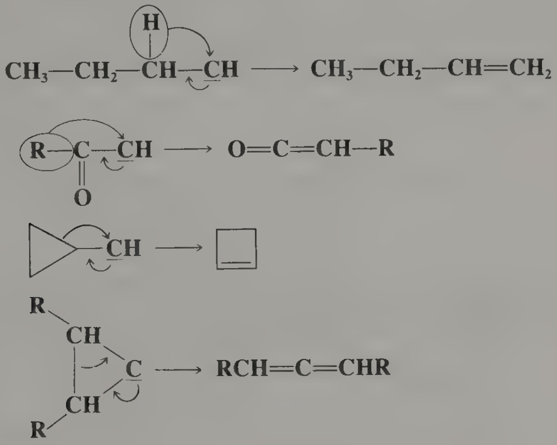
3. It would seem that dimerization should be an important reaction of carbenes

$$R_2\overline{C} + R_2\overline{C} \longrightarrow R_2C{=}CR_2$$

but it is not, because the reactivity is so great that the carbene species do not have time to find each other and because the dimer generally has so much energy that it dissociates again. Apparent dimerizations have been observed, but it is likely that the products in many reported instances of "dimerization" do not arise from an actual dimerization of two carbenes but from attack by a carbene on a molecule of carbene precursor, e.g.,

$$R_2\overline{C} + R_2CN_2 \longrightarrow R_2C{=}CR_2 + N_2$$

4. Alkylcarbenes can undergo rearrangement, with migration of alkyl or hydrogen.[196] Indeed these rearrangements are generally so rapid that additions to multiple bonds and insertion reactions, which are so common for CH_2, are seldom encountered with alkyl or dialkyl carbenes. Unlike rearrangement of the species previously encountered in this chapter, most rearrangements of carbenes directly give stable molecules. Some examples are[197]



---

[193] For reviews of this question, see Johnson, *Tetrahedron* **36**, 3461–3480 (1980); *Chem. Rev.* **75**, 755–765 (1975); Giese, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16**, 125–136 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89**, 162–173]; Pross, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14**, 69–132 (1977). See also Ritchie and Sawada, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 3754 (1977); Bordwell and Hughes, *J. Org. Chem.* **45**, 3320 (1980); Buncel and Chuaqui, *J. Org. Chem.* **45**, 2825 (1980); Argile and Ruasse, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21**, 1327 (1980); Godfrey, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2*, 645 (1981); Kurz and El-Nasr, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 5823 (1982).

[194] Closs and Coyle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 4270 (1965).

[195] For example, see Doering, Knox, and Jones, *J. Org. Chem.* **24**, 136 (1959); Franzen, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **627**, 22 (1959); Bradley and Ledwith, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1495 (1961); Frey and Voisey, *Chem. Commun.* 454 (1966); Seyferth, Damrauer, Mui, and Jula, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 2944 (1968).

[196] For reviews of carbene and nitrene rearrangements, see Wentrup, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **28**, 231–361 (1981); *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **1**, 263–319 (1980); *Top. Curr. Chem.* **62**, 173–251 (1976); Jones, in de Mayo, Ref. 79, vol. 1, pp. 95–160; Schaefer, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12**, 288–296 (1979); Kirmse, Ref. 165, pp. 457–496.

[197] Kirmse and Doering, *Tetrahedron* **11**, 266 (1960); Friedman and Berger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83**, 492, 500 (1961); Friedman and Shechter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 1002 (1960); Moore and Ward, *J. Org. Chem.* **27**, 4179 (1962).

The rearrangement of acylcarbenes to ketenes is called the Wolff rearrangement (reaction **8-9**). A few rearrangements in which carbenes rearrange to other carbenes are also known.[198] Of course, the new carbene must stabilize itself in one of the ways we have mentioned.

Triplet carbenes can abstract hydrogen or other atoms to give free radicals, e.g.,

$$\cdot\dot{C}H_2 + CH_3CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3\cdot + \cdot CH_2CH_3$$

This is not surprising, since triplet carbenes are free radicals. But singlet carbenes can also give this reaction, though in this case only halogen atoms are abstracted, not hydrogen.[199] A number of other possible carbene reactions are known but are less important.

NITRENES

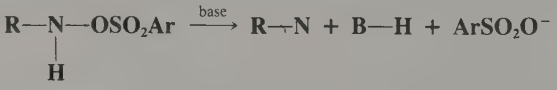
Nitrenes,[200] R—N, are the nitrogen analogs of carbenes, and most of what we have said about carbenes also applies to them. Nitrenes are too reactive for isolation under ordinary conditions. Alkyl nitrenes have been isolated by trapping in matrices at 4 K,[201] while aryl nitrenes, which are less reactive, can be trapped at 77 K.[202] The ground state of NH, and probably of most nitrenes,

$$\underset{\text{Single}}{R—\overline{\underline{N}}} \qquad \underset{\text{Triplet}}{R—\overline{\underset{\bullet}{N}}\bullet}$$

is a triplet, though nitrenes can be generated in both triplet and singlet states. In additions of EtOOC—N to C=C double bonds two species are involved, one of which adds stereospecifically and the other not. By analogy with Skell's proposal involving carbenes (p. 171) these are taken to be the singlet and triplet species, respectively.[203]

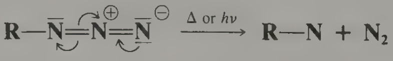
The two principal means of generating nitrenes are analogous to those used to form carbenes.

1. *Elimination.* An example is



$$R—\underset{\displaystyle H}{\underset{|}{N}}—OSO_2Ar \xrightarrow{\text{base}} R—N + B—H + ArSO_2O^-$$

2. *Breakdown of certain double-bond compounds.* The most common method of forming nitrenes is photolytic or thermal decomposition of azides,[204]



$$R—\overline{N}=\overset{\oplus}{N}=\overline{N}^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{\Delta \text{ or } h\nu} R—N + N_2$$

---

[198] For a review, see Jones, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 353–359 (1977).

[199] Roth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1527. 4935 (1971); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 85–91 (1977).

[200] For a monograph, see Lwowski, "Nitrenes," Interscience, New York, 1970. For reviews, see Scriven, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **2,** 1–54 (1982); Lwowski, *React. Intermed. (Wiley)* **2,** 315–334 (1981); **1,** 197–227 (1978); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 897–906 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 922–931]; Abramovitch, in McManus, Ref. 1, pp. 127–192; Hünig, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 1721–1747 (1971); Belloli, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 422–426 (1971); Abramovitch and Davis, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 149–185 (1964); Horner and Christmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 599–608 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 707–716]; Abramovitch and Sutherland, *Fortsch. Chem. Forsch.* **16,** 1–33 (1970) (sulfonyl nitrenes); and Ioffe and Kuznetsov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 131–146 (1972) (N-nitrenes).

[201] Wasserman, Smolinsky, and Yager, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3166 (1964).

[202] Smolinsky, Wasserman, and Yager, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3220 (1962).

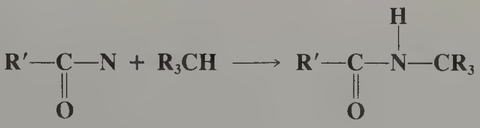
[203] McConaghy and Lwowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2357, 4450 (1967); Mishra, Rice, and Lwowski, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 481 (1968).

[204] For reviews, see Dyall, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement D," Wiley, New York, 1983; Dürr and Kober, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **66,** 89–114 (1976); L'Abbe, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 345–363 (1969).

The unsubstituted nitrene NH has been generated by photolysis of or electric discharge through NH_3, N_2H_4, or HN_3.

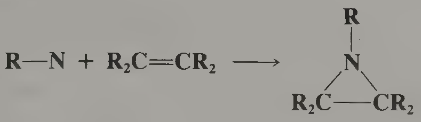
The reactions of nitrenes are also similar to those of carbenes. As in that case, many reactions in which nitrene intermediates are suspected probably do not involve free nitrenes. It is often very difficult to obtain proof in any given case that a free nitrene is or is not an intermediate.

1. *Insertion* (see reaction **2-11**). Nitrenes, especially acyl nitrenes and sulfonyl nitrenes, can insert into C—H and certain other bonds, e.g.,



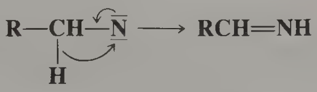
$$R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-N + R_3CH \longrightarrow R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{N}-CR_3$$

2. *Addition to C=C bonds* (see reaction **5-42**):



This reaction is most common for acyl nitrenes. There is no compelling evidence that aryl nitrenes can add to double bonds.[205] Though aziridines have been obtained in many such cases, they may have been formed by pathways not involving free nitrenes.[206]

3. *Rearrangements.*[196] Alkyl nitrenes do not generally give either of the two preceding reactions because rearrangement is more rapid, e.g.,



Such rearrangements are so rapid that it is usually difficult to exclude the possibility that a free nitrene was never present at all, i.e., that migration takes place at the same time that the nitrene is formed[207] (see p. 983).

4. *Abstraction*, e.g.,

$$R-N + R-H \longrightarrow R-\dot{\underline{N}}-H + R\cdot$$

5. *Dimerization.* One of the principal reactions of NH is dimerization to diimide N_2H_2. Azobenzenes are often obtained in reactions where aryl nitrenes are implicated:

$$2Ar-N \longrightarrow Ar-N=N-Ar$$

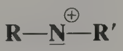
[205] Smith, in Lwowski, "Nitrenes," Ref. 200, p. 112. See, however, Abramovitch and Challand, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1160 (1972).

[206] For example, through triazoline intermediates (see reaction **5-42**).

[207] For example, see Moriarty and Reardon, *Tetrahedron* **26**, 1379 (1970); Abramovitch and Kyba, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 1537 (1971).

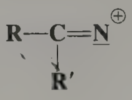
It would thus seem that dimerization is more important for nitrenes than it is for carbenes, but again it has not been proved that free nitrenes are actually involved.

At least two types of *nitrenium ions,* the nitrogen analogs of carbocations, can exist as intermediates, though much less work has been done in this area than on carbocations. In one type (**33**)



$R-\overset{\oplus}{\underline{N}}-R'$

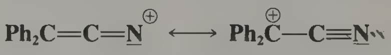
33



$R-\underset{\substack{\downarrow \\ R'}}{C}=\underline{N}^{\oplus}$

34

the nitrogen is bonded to two atoms and in the other (**34**) to only one.[208] When R=H in **33** the species is a protonated nitrene. Like carbenes and nitrenes, nitrenium ions can exist in singlet or triplet states.[209] A stable nitrenium ion, **35** (in resonance with the cyanocarbocation **36**), has been obtained in super-acid solution at −78°C.[210]



$Ph_2C=C=\underline{N}^{\oplus} \longleftrightarrow Ph_2\overset{\oplus}{C}-C\equiv\underline{N}$

35 **36**

---

[208] For a review of **34,** see Gassman, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **3,** 26–33 (1970). For a review of **35,** see Lansbury, in Lwowski, "Nitrenes," Ref. 200, pp. 405–419.

[209] Gassman and Cryberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5176 (1969).

[210] Olah, Prakash, and Arvanaghi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6640 (1980).

6

MECHANISMS AND METHODS OF DETERMINING THEM

A mechanism is the actual process by which a reaction takes place—which bonds are broken, in what order, how many steps are involved, the relative rate of each step, etc. In order to state a mechanism completely, we should have to specify the positions of all atoms, including those in solvent molecules, and the energy of the system, at every point in the process. A proposed mechanism must fit all the facts available. It is always subject to change as new facts are discovered. The usual course is that the gross features of a mechanism are the first to be known and then increasing attention is paid to finer details. The tendency is always to probe more deeply, to get more detailed descriptions.

Although for most reactions gross mechanisms can be written today with a good degree of assurance, no mechanism is known completely. There is much about the fine details which is still puzzling, and for some reactions even the gross mechanism is not yet clear. The problems involved are difficult because there are so many variables. Many examples are known where reactions proceed by different mechanisms under different conditions. In some cases there are several proposed mechanisms, each of which completely explains all the data.

Types of Mechanism

In most reactions of organic compounds one or more covalent bonds are broken. We can divide organic mechanisms into three basic types, depending on how the bonds break.

1. If a bond breaks in such a way that both electrons remain with one fragment, the mechanism is called *heterolytic*. Such reactions do not necessarily involve ionic intermediates, though they usually do. The important thing is that the electrons are never unpaired. For most reactions it is convenient to call one reactant the *attacking reagent* and the other the *substrate*. In this book we shall always designate as the substrate that molecule that supplies carbon to the new bond. When carbon–carbon bonds are formed, it is necessary to be arbitrary about which is the substrate and which the attacking reagent. In heterolytic reactions the reagent generally brings a pair of electrons to the substrate or takes a pair of electrons from it. A reagent that brings an electron pair is called a *nucleophile* and the reaction is *nucleophilic*. A reagent that takes an electron pair is called an *electrophile* and the reaction is *electrophilic*. In a reaction in which the substrate molecule becomes cleaved, part of it (the part not containing the carbon) is usually called the *leaving group*. A leaving group that carries away an electron pair is called *nucleofugal*. If it comes away without the electron pair, it is called *electrofugal*.

2. If a bond breaks in such a way that each fragment gets one electron, free radicals are formed and such reactions are said to take place by *homolytic* or *free-radical mechanisms*.

3. It would seem that all bonds must break in one of the two ways previously noted. But there is a third type of mechanism in which electrons (usually six, but sometimes some other number) move in a closed ring. There are no intermediates, ions or free radicals, and it is impossible to say whether the electrons are paired or unpaired. Reactions with this type of mechanism are called *pericyclic.*[1]

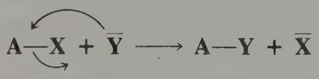
Examples of all three types of mechanisms are given in the next section.

Types of Reaction

The number and range of organic reactions is so great as to seem bewildering, but actually almost all of them can be fitted into just six categories. In the description of the six types that follows, the immediate products are shown, though in many cases they then react with something else. All the species are shown without charges, since differently charged reactants may undergo analogous changes. The descriptions given here are purely formal and are for the purpose of classification and comparison. All are discussed in detail in Part 2 of this book.

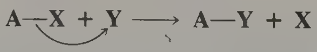
1. *Substitutions.* If heterolytic, these can be classified as nucleophilic or electrophilic depending on which reactant is designated as the substrate and which as the attacking reagent (very often Y must first be formed by a previous bond cleavage).

a. Nucleophilic substitution (Chapters 10, 13).



$$\mathbf{A{-}X + \overline{Y} \longrightarrow A{-}Y + \overline{X}}$$

b. Electrophilic substitution (Chapters 11, 12).



$$\mathbf{A{-}X + Y \longrightarrow A{-}Y + X}$$

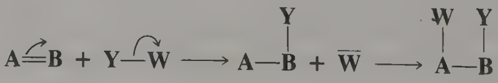
c. Free-radical substitution (Chapter 14).

$$\mathbf{A{-}X + Y\bullet \longrightarrow A{-}Y + X\bullet}$$

In free-radical substitution, Y• is usually produced in situ by a free-radical cleavage, and X• goes on to react further.

2. *Additions to double or triple bonds* (Chapters 15, 16). These reactions may take place by all three of the mechanistic possibilities.

a. Electrophilic addition (heterolytic).

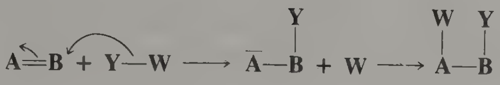


$$\mathbf{A{=}B + Y{-}W \longrightarrow A{-}\overset{\displaystyle Y}{\overset{|}{B}} + \overline{W} \longrightarrow \overset{\displaystyle W}{\overset{|}{A}}{-}\overset{\displaystyle Y}{\overset{|}{B}}}$$

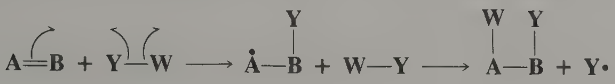
---

[1] For a classification of pericyclic reactions, see Hendrickson, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 47–76 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 71–100].

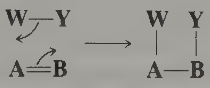
b. Nucleophilic addition (heterolytic).



c. Free-radical addition (homolytic).

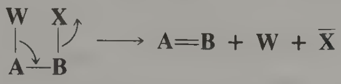


d. Simultaneous addition (pericyclic).



The examples show Y and W coming from the same molecule, but very often (except in simultaneous addition) they come from different molecules. Also, the examples show the Y—W bond cleaving at the same time that Y is bonding to B, but often (again except for simultaneous addition) this cleavage takes place earlier.

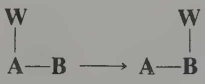
3. β-*elimination* (Chapter 17).



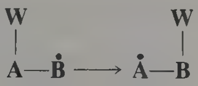
These reactions can take place by either heterolytic or pericyclic mechanisms. Examples of the latter are shown on p. 897. Free-radical β-eliminations are extremely rare. In heterolytic eliminations W and X may or may not leave simultaneously and may or may not combine.

4. *Rearrangement* (Chapter 18). Many rearrangements involve migration of an atom or group from one atom to another. There are three types, depending on how many electrons the migrating atom or group carries with it.

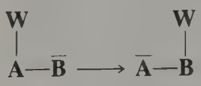
a. Migration with electron pair (nucleophilic).



b. Migration with one electron (free-radical).



c. Migration without electrons (electrophilic; rare).



$$\overset{\overset{\displaystyle W}{|}}{A}-\bar{B} \longrightarrow \bar{A}-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle W}{|}}{B}$$

The illustrations show 1,2 rearrangements, in which the migrating group moves to the adjacent atom. These are the most common, although longer rearrangements are also possible. There are also some rearrangements that do not involve simple migration at all (see Chapter 18). Some of the latter involve pericyclic mechanisms.

5. *Oxidation and reduction* (Chapter 19). Many oxidation and reduction reactions fall naturally into one of the four types mentioned above, but many others do not. For a description of oxidation–reduction mechanistic types, see p. 1049.

6. Combinations of the above.

Note that arrows are used to show movement of *electrons*. An arrow always follows the motion of electrons and never of a nucleus or anything else (it is understood that the rest of the molecule follows the electrons). Ordinary arrows (double-headed) follow electron pairs, while single-headed arrows follow unpaired electrons. Double-headed arrows are also used in pericyclic reactions for convenience, although in these reactions we do not really know how or in which direction the electrons are moving.

Thermodynamic Requirements for Reaction

In order for a reaction to take place spontaneously, the free energy of the products must be lower than the free energy of the reactants; i.e., ΔG must be negative. Reactions may go the other way, of course, but only if free energy is added. Like water on the surface of the earth, which only flows downhill and never uphill (though it can be carried or pumped uphill), molecules seek the lowest possible potential energy. Free energy is made up of two components, enthalpy H and entropy S. These quantities are related by the equation

$$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$$

The enthalpy change in a reaction is essentially the difference in bond energies (including resonance, strain, and solvation energies) between the reactants and the products. The enthalpy change can be calculated by totaling the bond energies of all the bonds broken, subtracting from this the total of the bond energies of all the bonds formed, and adding any changes in resonance, strain, or solvation energies. Entropy changes are quite different, and refer to the disorder or randomness of the system. The less order in a system, the greater the entropy. The preferred conditions in nature are *low* enthalpy and *high* entropy, and in reacting systems, enthalpy spontaneously decreases while entropy spontaneously increases.

For many reactions entropy effects are small and it is the enthalpy that mainly determines whether the reaction can take place spontaneously. However, in certain types of reaction entropy is important and can dominate enthalpy. We shall discuss several examples.

1. In general, liquids have lower entropies than gases, since the molecules of gas have much more freedom and randomness. Solids, of course, have still lower entropies. Any reaction in which the reactants are all liquids and one or more of the products is a gas is therefore thermodynamically favored by the increased entropy; the equilibrium constant for that reaction will be higher than it would otherwise be. Similarly, the entropy of a gaseous substance is higher than that of the same substance dissolved in a solvent.

2. In a reaction in which the number of product molecules is equal to the number of reactant molecules, e.g., $A + B \rightarrow C + D$, entropy effects are usually small, but if the number of molecules is increased, e.g., $A \rightarrow B + C$, there is a large gain in entropy because more arrangements in space are possible when more molecules are present. Reactions in which a molecule is cleaved into two or more parts are therefore thermodynamically favored by the entropy factor. Conversely, reactions in which the number of product molecules is less than the number of reactant molecules show entropy decreases, and in such cases there must be a sizable decrease in enthalpy to overcome the unfavorable entropy change.

3. Although reactions in which molecules are cleaved into two or more pieces have favorable entropy effects, many potential cleavages do not take place because of large increases in enthalpy. An example is cleavage of ethane into two methyl radicals. In this case a bond of about 79 kcal/mol is broken, and no new bond is formed to compensate for this enthalpy increase. However, ethane can be cleaved at very high temperatures, which illustrates the principle that *entropy becomes more important as the temperature increases,* as is obvious from the equation $\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$. The enthalpy term is independent of temperature, while the entropy term is directly proportional to the absolute temperature.

4. An open-chain molecule has more entropy than a similar cyclic molecule because there are more conformations (compare hexane and cyclohexane). Ring opening therefore means a gain in entropy and ring closing a loss.

Kinetic Requirements for Reaction

Just because a reaction has a negative ΔG does not necessarily mean that it will take place in a reasonable period of time. A negative ΔG is a *necessary* but not a *sufficient* condition for a reaction to occur spontaneously. For example, the reaction between H_2 and O_2 to give H_2O has a negative ΔG, but mixtures of H_2 and O_2 can be kept at room temperature for many centuries without reacting to any significant extent. In order for a reaction to take place, *free energy of activation* $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ must be added.[2] This situation is illustrated in Figure 1,[3] which is an energy profile[4] for a one-step reaction without an intermediate. In this type of diagram the horizontal axis signifies the progression of the reaction. $\Delta G_f^{\ddagger}$ is the free energy of activation for the forward reaction. If the reaction shown in Figure 1 is reversible, $\Delta G_r^{\ddagger}$ must be greater than $\Delta G_f^{\ddagger}$, since it is the sum of ΔG and $\Delta G_f^{\ddagger}$.

When a reaction between two or more molecules has progressed to the point corresponding to the top of the curve, the term *transition state* is applied to the positions of the nuclei and electrons. The transition state possesses a definite geometry and charge distribution but has no finite existence. The system at this point is called an *activated complex*.

In the *transition-state theory* the starting materials and the activated complex are taken to be in equilibrium, the equilibrium constant being designated $K^{\ddagger}$. According to the theory, all activated complexes go on to product at the same rate (which, though at first sight surprising, is not unreasonable, when we consider that they are all "falling downhill") so that the rate constant (see p. 192) of the reaction depends only on the position of the equilibrium between the starting materials

---

[2] For mixtures of H_2 and O_2 this can be done by striking a match.

[3] Strictly speaking, this is an energy profile for a reaction of the type $XY + Z \rightarrow X + YZ$. However, it may be applied, in a rough way, to other reactions.

[4] For a fuller discussion, see Moore and Pearson, "Kinetics and Mechanism," 3d ed., Wiley, New York, 1981; pp. 137–181, Klumpp, "Reactivity in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1982; pp. 227–378.

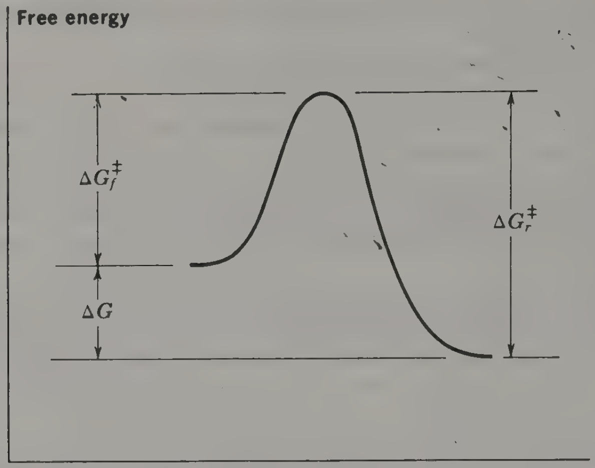


Figure 1 Free-energy profile of a reaction without an intermediate where the products have a lower free energy than the reactants.

and the activated complex, i.e., on the value of $K^\ddagger$. $\Delta G^\ddagger$ is related to $K^\ddagger$ by

$$\Delta G^\ddagger = -2.3RT \log K^\ddagger$$

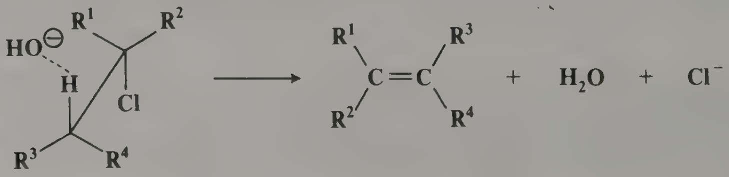
so that a higher value of $\Delta G^\ddagger$ is associated with a smaller rate constant. The rates of nearly all reactions increase with increasing temperature because the additional energy thus supplied helps the molecules to overcome the activation energy barrier. Some reactions have no free energy of activation at all, meaning that $K^\ddagger$ is essentially infinite and that virtually all collisions lead to reaction. Such processes are said to be *diffusion-controlled.*

Like ΔG, $\Delta G^\ddagger$ is made up of enthalpy and entropy components

$$\Delta G^\ddagger = \Delta H^\ddagger - T\,\Delta S^\ddagger$$

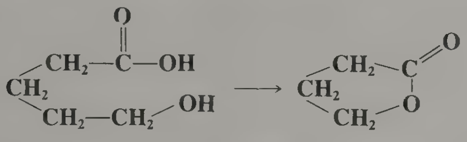
$\Delta H^\ddagger$, the *enthalpy of activation,* is the difference in bond energies, including strain, resonance, and solvation energies, between the starting compounds and the *transition state.* In many reactions bonds have been broken or partially broken by the time the transition state is reached; the energy necessary for this is $\Delta H^\ddagger$. It is true that additional energy will be supplied by the formation of new bonds, but if this occurs after the transition state, it can affect only ΔH and not $\Delta H^\ddagger$.

Entropy of activation $\Delta S^\ddagger$, which is the difference in entropy between the starting compounds and the transition state, becomes important when two reacting molecules must approach each other in a specific orientation in order for the reaction to take place. For example, the reaction between a simple noncyclic alkyl chloride and hydroxide ion to give an alkene (**7-14**) takes place only if, in the transition state, the reactants are oriented as shown. Not only must the OH$^-$ be near the

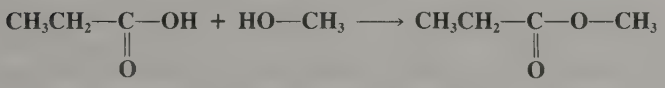


hydrogen, but the hydrogen must be oriented anti to the chlorine atom.[5] When the two reacting molecules collide, if the OH^- should be near the chlorine atom or near R^1 or R^2, no reaction can take place. In order for a reaction to occur, the molecules must surrender the freedom they normally have to assume many possible arrangements in space and adopt only that one that leads to reaction. Thus, a considerable loss in entropy is involved, i.e., ΔS^{+} is negative.

Entropy of activation is also responsible for the difficulty in closing rings[6] larger then six-membered. Consider a ring-closing reaction in which the two groups that must interact are situated on the ends of a ten-carbon chain. In order for reaction to take place, the groups must encounter each other. But a ten-carbon chain has many conformations, and in only a few of these are the ends of the chain near each other. Thus, forming the transition state requires a great loss of entropy.[7] This factor is also present, though less so, in closing rings of six members or less (except three-membered rings), but with rings of this size the entropy loss is less than that of bringing two individual molecules together. For example, a reaction between an OH group and a COOH group in the same molecule to form a lactone with a five- or six-membered ring takes place much faster than the same reaction between a molecule containing an OH group and another containing a COOH group. Though ΔH^{+} is about the same, ΔS^{+} is much less for the cyclic case. However, if the ring to be closed has three or four members, small-angle strain is introduced and the favorable ΔS^{+} may not be sufficient to overcome the unfavorable ΔH^{+} change. Table 1 shows the relative rate constants for the closing of rings of 3 to 23 members all by the same reaction.[8] Reactions in which the transition state has more disorder than the starting compounds, e.g., the pyrolytic conversion of cyclopropane to propene, have positive ΔS^{+} values and are thus favored by the entropy effect.



Faster



$$CH_3CH_2-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\Vert}}{C}-OH + HO-CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\Vert}}{C}-O-CH_3$$

Slower

Reactions with intermediates are two-step (or more) processes. In these reactions there is an energy "well." There are two transition states, each with an energy higher than the intermediate (Figure 2). The deeper the well, the more stable the intermediate. In Figure 2a, the second peak is higher than the first. The opposite situation is shown in Figure 2b. Note that in reactions in which the second peak is higher than the first, the overall ΔG^{+} is less than the sum of the ΔG^{+} values for the two steps. Minima in free-energy-profile diagrams correspond to real species which have a finite though very short existence. These may be the carbocations, carbanions, free radicals,

---

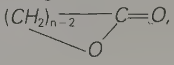
[5] As we shall see in Chapter 17, with some molecules elimination is also possible if the hydrogen is oriented syn, instead of anti, to the chlorine atom. Of course, this orientation also requires a considerable loss of entropy.

[6] For discussions of the entropy and enthalpy of ring-closing reactions, see De Tar and Luthra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4505 (1980).

[7] For a review of the cyclization and conformation of hydrocarbon chains, see Winnik, *Chem. Rev.* **81,** 491–524 (1981). For a review of steric and electronic effects in heterolytic ring closures, see Valters, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 788–801 (1982).

[8] The values for 4, 5, and 6 are from Mandolini, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 550 (1978); the others are from Galli, Illuminati, Mandolini, and Tamborra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2591 (1977). See also Illuminati and Mandolini, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **14,** 95–102 (1981). See, however, Benedetti and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1374 (1983).

TABLE 1 Relative rate constants at 50°C (*Eight-membered ring = 1*) *for the reaction* $Br(CH_2)_{n-2}CO_2^- \rightarrow$



$$(CH_2)_{n-2}\overset{}{—}C{=}O, \text{ with } (CH_2)_{n-2} \text{ and } C \text{ joined through } O$$

where n = the ring size[8]

Ring size	Relative rate
3	21.7
4	5.4×10^3
5	1.5×10^6
6	1.7×10^4
7	97.3
8	1.00
9	1.12
10	3.35
11	8.51
12	10.6
13	32.2
14	41.9
15	45.1
16	52.0
18	51.2
23	60.4

etc., discussed in Chapter 5 or molecules in which all the atoms have their normal valences. In either case, under the reaction conditions they do not live long (because $\Delta G_2^\ddagger$ is small) but rapidly go on to products. Maxima in these curves, however, do not correspond to actual species but only to transition states in which bond breaking and/or bond making have partially taken place. Transition states have only a transient existence with an essentially zero lifetime.

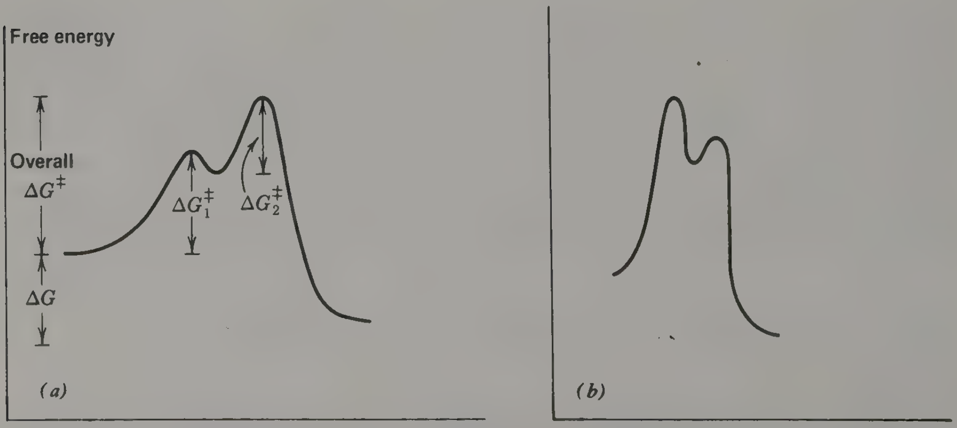
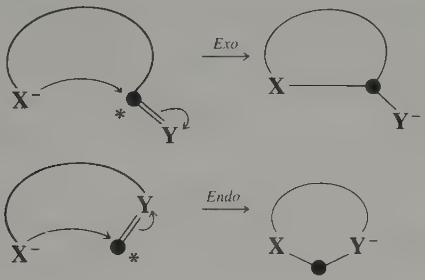


Figure 2 (*a*) Free-energy profile for a reaction with an intermediate. $\Delta G_1^\ddagger$ and $\Delta G_2^\ddagger$ are the free energy of activation for the first and second stages, respectively. (*b*) Free-energy profile for a reaction with an intermediate in which the first peak is higher than the second.

The Baldwin Rules for Ring Closure

In previous sections, we discussed, in a general way, the kinetic and thermodynamic aspects of ring-closure reactions. J. E. Baldwin has supplied a more specific set of rules for certain closings of 3- to 7-membered rings.[9] These rules distinguish two types of ring closure, called *Exo* and *Endo,*



and three kinds of atoms at the starred positions: *Tet* for sp^3, *Trig* for sp^2, and *Dig* for *sp*. The following are Baldwin's rules for closing rings of 3 to 7 members.

Rule 1. Tetrahedral systems
- (a) 3 to 7-*Exo-Tet* are all favored processes
- (b) 5 to 6-*Endo-Tet* are disfavored

Rule 2. Trigonal systems
- (a) 3 to 7-*Exo-Trig* are favored
- (b) 3 to 5-*Endo-Trig* are disfavored
- (c) 6 to 7-*Endo-Trig* are favored

Rule 3. Digonal systems
- (a) 3 to 4-*Exo-Dig* are disfavored
- (b) 5 to 7-*Exo-Dig* are favored
- (c) 3 to 7-*Endo-Dig* are favored

"Disfavored" does not mean it cannot be done—only that it is more difficult than the favored cases. These rules are empirical and have a stereochemical basis. The favored pathways are those in which the length and nature of the linking chain enables the terminal atoms to achieve the proper geometries for reaction. The disfavored cases require severe distortion of bond angles and distances. Many cases in the literature are in substantial accord with these rules.

Kinetic and Thermodynamic Control

There are many cases in which a compound under a given set of reaction conditions may undergo competing reactions to give different products:

$$A \begin{matrix} \nearrow B \\ \searrow C \end{matrix}$$

---

[9] Baldwin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 734 (1976); Baldwin, in "Further Perspectives in Organic Chemistry (Ciba Foundation Symposium 53)," pp. 85–99, Elsevier North Holland, Amsterdam, 1979. See also Baldwin and Kruse, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 233 (1977); Baldwin, Thomas, Kruse, and Silberman, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3846 (1977); Baldwin and Lusch, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2939 (1982); Anselme, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3615 (1977); Fountain and Gerhardt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3985 (1978).

Figure 3 shows a free-energy profile for a reaction in which B is thermodynamically more stable than C (lower ΔG), but C is formed faster (lower $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$). If neither reaction is reversible, C will be formed in larger amount because it is formed faster. The product is said to be *kinetically controlled.* However, if the reactions are reversible, this will not necessarily be the case. If such a process is stopped well before the equilibrium has been established, the reaction will be kinetically controlled since more of the faster-formed product will be present. However, if the reaction is permitted to approach equilibrium, the predominant or even exclusive product will be B. Under these conditions the C that is first formed reverts to A, while the more stable B does so much less. We say the product is *thermodynamically controlled.*[9a] Of course, Figure 3 does not describe all reactions in which a compound A can give two different products. In many cases the more stable product is also the one that is formed faster. In such cases the product of kinetic control is also the product of thermodynamic control.

The Hammond Postulate

Since transition states have zero lifetimes, it is impossible to observe them directly and information about their geometries must be obtained from inference. In some cases our inferences can be very strong. For example, in the SN2 reaction (p. 256) between CH_3I and I^- (a reaction in which the product is identical to the starting compound), the transition state should be perfectly symmetrical. In most cases, however, we cannot reach such easy conclusions, and we are greatly aided by the *Hammond postulate,*[10] which states that for any single reaction step, *the geometry of the transition state for that step resembles the side to which it is closer in free energy.* Thus, for an exothermic reaction like that shown in Figure 1, the transition state resembles the reactants more than the products, though not much more because there is a substantial $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ on both sides. The postulate is most useful in dealing with reactions with intermediates. In the reaction illustrated in Figure 2a,

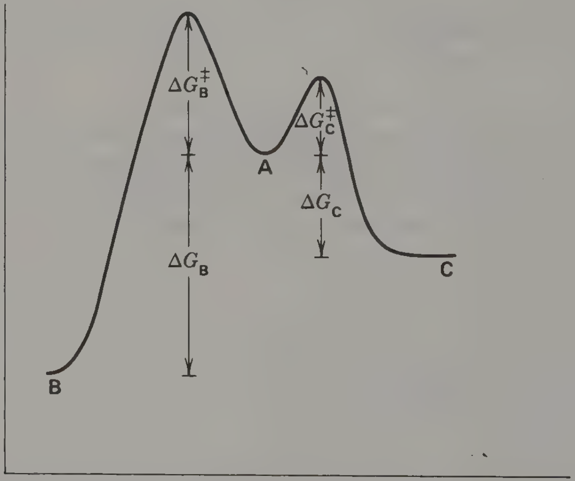


Figure 3 Free-energy profile illustrating kinetic versus thermodynamic control of product. The starting compound (**A**) can react to give either **B** or **C**.

[9a] For a discussion of thermodynamic vs. kinetic control, see Klumpp, Ref. 4, pp. 36–89.
[10] Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 334 (1955). For a discussion, see Fărcasiu, *J. Chem. Educ.* **52,** 76–79 (1975).

the first transition state lies much closer in energy to the intermediate than to the reactants, and we can predict that the geometry of the transition state resembles that of the intermediate more than it does that of the reactants. Likewise, the second transition state also has a free energy much closer to that of the intermediate than to the products, so that both transition states resemble the intermediate more than they do the products or reactants. This is generally the case in reactions that involve very reactive intermediates. Since we usually know more about the structure of intermediates than of transition states, we often use our knowledge of intermediates to draw conclusions about the transition states (for examples, see pp. 299, 673).

Microscopic Reversibility

In the course of a reaction the nuclei and electrons assume positions that at each point correspond to the lowest free energies possible. If the reaction is reversible, these positions must be the same in the reverse process, too. This means that the forward and reverse reactions (run under the same conditions) must proceed by the same mechanism. This is called the *principle of microscopic reversibility*. For example, if in a reaction A → B there is an intermediate C, then C must also be an intermediate in the reaction B → A. This is a useful principle since it enables us to know the mechanism of reactions in which the equilibrium lies far over to one side. Reversible photochemical reactions are an exception, since a molecule that has been excited photochemically does not have to lose its energy in the same way (Chapter 7).

METHODS OF DETERMINING MECHANISMS

There are a number of commonly used methods for determining mechanisms.[11] In most cases one method is not sufficient, and the problem is generally approached from several directions.

Identification of Products

Obviously any mechanism proposed for a reaction must account for all the products obtained and for their relative proportions, including products formed by side reactions. Incorrect mechanisms for the von Richter reaction (**3-26**) were accepted for many years because it was not realized that nitrogen was a major product. A proposed mechanism cannot be correct if it fails to predict the products in approximately the observed proportions. For example, any mechanism for the reaction

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} CH_3Cl$$

that fails to account for the formation of a small amount of ethane cannot be correct (see **4-1**).

Determination of the Presence of an Intermediate

Intermediates are postulated in many mechanisms. There are several ways, none of them foolproof, for attempting to learn whether or not an intermediate is present and, if so, its structure.

---

[11] For a treatise on this subject, see Lewis and Hammes, "Investigation of Rates and Mechanisms of Reactions," 3d ed. (vol. 6 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Chemistry"), 2 pts., Wiley, New York, 1974. For a monograph, see Carpenter, "Determination of Organic Reaction Mechanisms," Wiley, New York, 1984.

1. *Isolation of an intermediate.* It is sometimes possible to isolate an intermediate from a reaction mixture by stopping the reaction after a short time or by the use of very mild conditions. For example, in the reaction

$$\mathbf{RCONH_2 + NaOBr \longrightarrow RNH_2}$$

the intermediate RCONHBr has been isolated (see **8-16**). If it can then be shown that the isolated compound gives the same product when subjected to the reaction conditions and at a rate not slower than the starting compound, this constitutes strong evidence that the reaction involves that intermediate, though it is not conclusive, since the compound may arise by an alternate path and by coincidence give the same product.

2. *Detection of an intermediate.* In many cases an intermediate cannot be isolated but can be detected by ir, nmr, or other spectra.[11a] The detection by Raman spectra of NO_2^+ was regarded as strong evidence that this is an intermediate in the nitration of benzene (see reaction **1-2**). Free radical and triplet intermediates can often be detected by esr and by CIDNP (see Chapter 5).

3. *Trapping of an intermediate.* In some cases, the suspected intermediate is known to be one that reacts in a given way with a certain compound. The intermediate can then be detected by running the reaction in the presence of that compound. For example, benzynes (p. 581) react with dienes in the Diels–Alder reaction (**5-47**). In any reaction where a benzyne is a suspected intermediate, the addition of a diene and the detection of the Diels–Alder adduct indicate that the benzyne was probably present.

4. *Addition of a suspected intermediate.* If a certain intermediate is suspected, and if it can be obtained by other means, then under the same reaction conditions it should give the same products. This kind of experiment can provide conclusive negative evidence: if the same products are not obtained, the suspected compound is not an intermediate. However, if the correct products are obtained, this is not conclusive since they may arise by coincidence. The von Richter reaction (**3-26**) provides us with a good example here too. For many years it had been assumed that an aryl cyanide was an intermediate, since cyanides are easily hydrolyzed to carboxylic acids (reaction **6-5**). In fact, in 1954, *p*-chlorobenzonitrile was shown to give *p*-chlorobenzoic acid under normal von Richter conditions.[12] However, when the experiment was repeated with 1-cyanonaphthalene, no 1-naphthoic acid was obtained, although 2-nitronaphthalene gave 13% 1-naphthoic acid under the same conditions.[13] This proved that 2-nitronaphthalene must have been converted to 1-naphthoic acid by a route that does not involve 1-cyanonaphthalene. It also showed that even the conclusion that *p*-chlorobenzonitrile was an intermediate in the conversion of *m*-nitrochlorobenzene to *p*-chlorobenzoic acid must now be suspect, since it is not likely that the mechanism would substantially change in going from the naphthalene to the benzene system.

The Study of Catalysis[14]

Much information about the mechanism of a reaction can be obtained from a knowledge of which substances catalyze the reaction, which inhibit it, and which do neither. Of course, just as a mechanism must be compatible with the products, so must it be compatible with its catalysts. In general, catalysts perform their actions by providing an alternate pathway for the reaction in which ΔG^* is less than it would be without the catalyst. Catalysts do not change ΔG.

[11a] For a review on the use of electrochemical methods to detect intermediates, see Parker, *Advan. Phys. Org. Chem.* **19,** 131–222 (1983).

[12] Bunnett, Rauhut, Knutson, and Bussell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 5755 (1954).

[13] Bunnett and Rauhut, *J. Org. Chem.* **21,** 944 (1956).

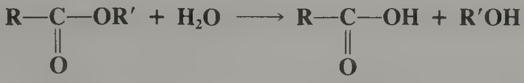
[14] For treatises, see Jencks, "Catalysis in Chemistry and Enzymology," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969; Bender, "Mechanisms of Homogeneous Catalysis from Protons to Proteins," Wiley, New York, 1971. For a review, see Coenen, *Recl: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 57–64 (1983).

Isotopic Labeling[15]

Much useful information has been obtained by using molecules that have been isotopically labeled and tracing the path of the reaction in that way. For example, in the reaction

$$\mathbf{RCOO^- + BrCN \longrightarrow RCN}$$

does the CN group in the product come from the CN in the BrCN? The use of ^{14}C supplied the answer, since $R^{14}CO_2^-$ gave *radioactive* RCN.[16] This surprising result saved a lot of labor, since it ruled out a mechanism involving the replacement of CO_2 by CN (see **6-61**). Other radioactive isotopes are also frequently used as tracers, but even stable isotopes can be used. An example is the hydrolysis of esters



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' + H_2O \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH + R'OH}$$

Which bond of the ester is broken, the acyl—O or the alkyl—O bond? The answer is found by the use of $H_2{}^{18}O$. If the acyl—O bond breaks, the labeled oxygen will appear in the acid; otherwise it will be in the alcohol (see **0-11**). Although neither compound is radioactive, the one that contains ^{18}O can be determined by submitting both to mass spectrometry. In a similar way, deuterium can be used as a label for hydrogen. In this case it is not necessary to use mass spectrometry, since ir and nmr spectra can be used to determine when deuterium has been substituted for hydrogen.

In the labeling technique, it is not generally necessary to use completely labeled compounds. Partially labeled material is usually sufficient.

Stereochemical Evidence[17]

If the products of a reaction are capable of existing in more than one stereoisomeric form, the form that is obtained may give information about the mechanism. For example, (+)-malic acid was discovered by Walden[18] to give (−)-chlorosuccinic acid when treated with PCl_5 and the (+) enantiomer when treated with $SOCl_2$, showing that the mechanisms of these apparently similar conversions could not be the same (see pp. 257, 287). Much useful information has been obtained about nucleophilic substitution, elimination, rearrangement, and addition reactions from this type of experiment. The isomers involved need not be enantiomers. Thus, the fact that *cis*-2-butene treated with $KMnO_4$ gives *meso*-2,3-butanediol and not the racemic mixture is evidence that the two OH groups attack the double bond from the same side (see **5-36**).

---

[15] For reviews see Collins, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 3–91 (1964); Raaen, in Ref. 11, pt. 1, pp. 257–284.

[16] Douglas, Eccles, and Almond, *Can. J. Chem.* **31,** 1127 (1953); Douglas and Burditt, *Can. J. Chem.* **36,** 1256 (1958).

[17] For lengthy treatments of the relationship between stereochemistry and mechanism, see Eliel, "Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962; Newman, "Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1956; Stevens, Billups, and Jacobson, in Ref. 11, pt. 1, pp. 285–366.

[18] Walden, *Ber.* **29,** 136 (1896), **30,** 3149 (1897), **32,** 1833 (1899).

Kinetic Evidence[19]

The rate of a homogeneous reaction[20] is the rate of disappearance of a reactant or appearance of a product. The rate nearly always changes with time, since it is usually proportional to concentration and the concentration of reactants decreases with time. However, the rate is not always proportional to the concentration of all reactants. In some cases a change in the concentration of a reactant produces no change at all in the rate, while in other cases the rate may be proportional to the concentration of a substance (a catalyst) that does not even appear in the stoichiometric equation. A study of which reactants affect the rate often tells a good deal about the mechanism.

If the rate is proportional to the change in concentration of only one reactant (A), the *rate law* (the rate of change of concentration of A with time t) is

$$\text{Rate} = \frac{-d[\text{A}]}{dt} = k[\text{A}]$$

where k is the *rate constant* for the reaction. There is a minus sign because the concentration of A decreases with time. A reaction that follows such a rate law is called a *first-order reaction.* The units of k for a first-order reaction are $\sec^{-1}$. The rate of a *second-order reaction* is proportional to the concentration of two reactants, or to the square of the concentration of one:

$$\frac{-d[\text{A}]}{dt} = k[\text{A}][\text{B}] \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{-d[\text{A}]}{dt} = k[\text{A}]^2$$

For a second-order reaction the units are liters mol^{-1} $\sec^{-1}$ or some other units expressing the reciprocal of concentration or pressure per unit time interval.

Similar expressions can be written for third-order reactions. A reaction whose rate is proportional to [A] and to [B] is said to be first order in A and in B, second order overall. A reaction rate may be measured in terms of any reactant or product, but the rates so determined are not necessarily the same. For example, if the stoichiometry of a reaction is $2\text{A} + \text{B} \rightarrow \text{C} + \text{D}$ then, on a molar basis, A must disappear twice as fast as B, so that $-d[\text{A}]/dt$ and $-d[\text{B}]/dt$ are not equal but the former is twice as large as the latter.

The rate law of a reaction is an experimentally determined fact. From this fact we attempt to learn the *molecularity,* which may be defined as the number of molecules that come together to form the activated complex. It is obvious that if we know how many (and which) molecules take part in the activated complex, we know a good deal about the mechanism. The experimentally determined rate order is not necessarily the same as the molecularity. Any reaction, no matter how many steps are involved, has only one rate law, but each step of the mechanism has its own molecularity. For reactions that take place in one step (reactions without an intermediate) the order is the same as the molecularity. A first-order, one-step reaction is always unimolecular; a one-step reaction that is second order in A always involves two molecules of A; if it is first order in A and in B, then a molecule of A reacts with one of B, etc. For reactions that take place in more than one step, the order *for each step* is the same as the molecularity *for that step.* This fact enables us to predict the rate law for any proposed mechanism, although the calculations may at times get lengthy.[21] If any one step of a mechanism is considerably slower than all the others (this is usually the case), the rate of the overall reaction is essentially the same as that of the slow step, which is consequently called the *rate-determining* step.[22]

---

[19] For the use of kinetics in determining mechanisms, see Drenth and Kwart, "Kinetics Applied to Organic Reactions," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1980; Hammett, "Physical Organic Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 53–100, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1970; Gardiner, "Rates and Mechanisms of Chemical Reactions," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1969; Leffler and Grunwald, "Rates and Equilibria of Organic Reactions," Wiley, New York, 1963; Jencks, Ref. 14, pp. 555–614; Refs. 4 and 11.

[20] A homogeneous reaction occurs in one phase. Heterogeneous kinetics have been studied much less.

[21] For a discussion of how order is related to molecularity in many complex situations, see Szabó, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 2, pp. 1–80, Elsevier, New York, 1969.

For reactions that take place in two or more steps, we can distinguish between two broad cases:

1. The first step is slower than any subsequent step and is consequently rate-determining. In such cases, the rate law simply includes the reactants that participate in the slow step. For example, if the reaction A + 2B → C has the mechanism

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} &\xrightarrow{\text{slow}} \mathbf{I} \\ \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{B} &\xrightarrow{\text{fast}} \mathbf{C} \end{aligned}$$

where I is an intermediate, the reaction is second order, with the rate law

$$\text{Rate} = \frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = k[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}]$$

2. When the first step is not rate-determining, determination of the rate law is usually much more complicated. For example, consider the mechanism

Step 1 $\quad \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} \mathbf{I}$

Step 2 $\quad \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{B} \xrightarrow{k_2} \mathbf{C}$

where the first step is a rapid attainment of equilibrium, followed by a slow reaction to give C. The rate of disappearance of A is

$$\frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = k_1[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}] - k_{-1}[\mathbf{I}]$$

Both terms must be included because A is being formed by the reverse reaction as well as being used up by the forward reaction. This equation is of very little help as it stands since we cannot measure the concentration of the intermediate. However, the combined rate law for the formation and disappearance of I is

$$\frac{d[\mathbf{I}]}{dt} = k_1[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}] - k_{-1}[\mathbf{I}] - k_2[\mathbf{I}][\mathbf{B}]$$

At first glance we seem to be no better off with this equation, but we may make the assumption that *the concentration of* I *does not change with time,* since it is an intermediate that is used up (going either to A + B or to C) as fast as it is formed. This assumption, called the assumption of the *steady state,* enables us to set $d[\mathrm{I}]/dt$ equal to zero and hence to solve for [I] in terms of the measurable quantities [A] and [B]:

$$[\mathbf{I}] = \frac{k_1[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}]}{k_2[\mathbf{B}] + k_{-1}}$$

We now insert this value for [I] into the original rate expression to obtain

$$\frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = \frac{k_1 k_2[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}]^2}{k_2[\mathbf{B}] + k_{-1}}$$

---

[22] Many chemists prefer to use the term *rate-limiting step* for the slow step, rather than *rate-determining step*. See the definitions in Gold, "IUPAC Glossary of Terms Used in Physical Organic Chemistry," *Pure Appl. Chem.* **55**, 1281–1371 (1983), p. 1352.

Note that this rate law is valid whatever the values of k_1, k_{-1}, and k_2. However, our original hypothesis was that the first step was faster than the second, or that

$$k_1[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}] \gg k_2[\mathbf{I}][\mathbf{B}]$$

Since the first step is an equilibrium

$$k_1[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}] = k_{-1}[\mathbf{I}]$$

we have

$$k_{-1}[\mathbf{I}] \gg k_2[\mathbf{I}][\mathbf{B}]$$

Canceling [I], we get

$$k_{-1} \gg k_2[\mathbf{B}]$$

We may thus neglect k_2[B] in comparison with k_{-1} and obtain

$$\frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = \frac{k_1 k_2}{k_{-1}}[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}]^2$$

The overall rate is thus third order: first order in A and second order in B. Incidentally, if the first step is rate-determining (as was the case in the preceding paragraph), then

$$k_2[\mathbf{B}] \gg k_{-1} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = k_1[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}]$$

which is the same rate law we deduced from the rule that where the first step is rate-determining, the rate law includes the reactants that participate in that step.

It is possible for a reaction to involve A and B in the rate-determining step, although only [A] appears in the rate law. This occurs when a large excess of B is present, say 100 times the molar quantity of A. In this case the complete reaction of A uses up only 1 mole of B, leaving 99 moles. It is not easy to measure the change in concentration of B with time in such a case, and it is seldom attempted, especially when B is also the solvent. Since [B], for practical purposes, does not change with time, the reaction appears to be first order in A though actually both A and B are involved in the rate-determining step. This is often referred to as a *pseudo-first-order* reaction. Pseudo-order reactions can also come about when one reactant is a catalyst whose concentration does not change with time because it is replenished as fast as it is used up and when a reaction is conducted in a medium that keeps the concentration of a reactant constant, e.g., in a buffer solution where H^+ or OH^- is a reactant. Pseudo-first-order conditions are frequently used in kinetic investigations for convenience in experimentation and calculations.

What is actually being measured is the change in concentration of a product or a reactant with time. Many methods have been used to make such measurements. The choice of a method depends on its convenience and its applicability to the reaction being studied. Among the most common methods are:[23]

1. *Periodic or continuous spectral readings.* In many cases the reaction can be carried out in the cell while it is in the instrument. Then all that is necessary is that the instrument be read,

---

[23] For a discussion, see Batt, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 1, pp. 1–111, Elsevier, New York, 1969.

periodically or continuously. Among the methods used are ir and uv spectroscopy, polarimetry, nmr, and esr.[24]

2. *Quenching and analyzing.* A series of reactions may be set up and each stopped in some way (perhaps by suddenly lowering the temperature or adding an inhibitor) after a different amount of time has elapsed. The materials are then analyzed by spectral readings, titrations, gas chromatography, polarimetry, or any other method.

3. *Removal of aliquots at intervals.* Each aliquot is then analyzed as in method 2.

4. *Measurement of changes in total pressure, for gas-phase reactions.*[25]

5. *Calorimetric methods.* The output or absorption of heat may be measured at time intervals.

Special methods exist for kinetic measurements of very fast reactions.[26]

In any case what is usually obtained is a graph showing how a concentration varies with time. This must be interpreted[27] to obtain a rate law and a value of k. If a reaction obeys simple first- or second-order kinetics, the interpretation is generally not difficult. For example, if the concentration at the start is A_0, the first-order rate law

$$\frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = k[\mathbf{A}] \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{[\mathbf{A}]} = k\,dt$$

can be integrated between the limits $t = 0$ and $t = t$ to give

$$-\ln\frac{[\mathbf{A}]}{\mathbf{A}_0} = kt \qquad \text{or} \qquad \ln[\mathbf{A}] = -kt + \ln \mathbf{A}_0$$

Therefore, if a plot of ln [A] against t is linear, the reaction is first order and k can be obtained from the slope. For first-order reactions it is customary to express the rate not only by the rate constant k but also by the *half-life*, which is the time required for half of any given quantity of a reactant to be used up. Since the half-life $t_{1/2}$ is the time required for [A] to reach $A_0/2$, we may say that

$$\ln\frac{\mathbf{A}_0}{2} = -kt_{1/2} + \ln \mathbf{A}_0$$

so that

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{\ln\dfrac{\mathbf{A}_0}{\mathbf{A}_0/2}}{k} = \frac{\ln 2}{k} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

For the general case of a reaction first order in A and first order in B, second order overall, integration is complicated, but it can be simplified if equimolar amounts of A and B are used, so that $A_0 = B_0$. In this case

$$\frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = k[\mathbf{A}][\mathbf{B}]$$

---

[24] For a review of esr to measure kinetics, see Norman, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **8,** 1–27 (1979).

[25] For a review of the kinetics of reactions in solution at high pressures, see le Noble, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **5,** 207–330 (1967).

[26] For reviews, see Krüger, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **11,** 227–255 (1982). Hague, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 1, pp. 112–179, Elsevier, New York, 1969; Ref. 11, pt. 2.

[27] For discussions, much fuller than that given here, of methods for interpreting kinetic data, see Margerison, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 1, pp. 343–421, Elsevier, New York, 1969; Ref. 4, pp. 12–82; Bunnett, in Ref. 11, pt. 1, pp. 367–488.

is equivalent to

$$\frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{dt} = k[\mathbf{A}]^2 \qquad \text{or} \qquad \frac{-d[\mathbf{A}]}{[\mathbf{A}]^2} = k\,dt$$

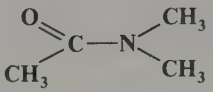
Integrating as before gives

$$\frac{1}{[\mathbf{A}]} - \frac{1}{\mathbf{A}_0} = kt$$

Thus, under equimolar conditions, if a plot of $1/[A]$ against t is linear, the reaction is second order with a slope of k. It is obvious that the same will hold true for a reaction second order in A.[28]

Although many reaction-rate studies do give linear plots, which can therefore be easily interpreted, the results in many other studies are not so simple. In some cases a reaction may be first order at low concentrations but second order at higher concentrations. In other cases fractional orders are obtained, and even negative orders. The interpretation of complex kinetics often requires much skill and effort. Even where the kinetics are relatively simple, there is often a problem in interpreting the data because of the difficulty of obtaining precise enough measurements.[29]

Nmr spectra can be used to obtain kinetic information in a completely different manner from that mentioned on p. 195. This method, which involves the study of nmr line shapes, depends on the fact that nmr spectra have an inherent time factor: if a proton changes its environment less rapidly than about 10^3 times per second, an nmr spectrum shows a separate peak for each position the proton assumes. For example, if the rate of rotation around the C—N bond of N,N-dimethylacetamide is slower than 10^3 rotations per second, the two N-methyl groups each have separate



chemical shifts since they are not equivalent, one being cis to the oxygen and the other trans. However, if the environmental change takes place more rapidly than about 10^3 times per second, only one line is found, at a chemical shift that is the weighted average of the two individual positions. In many cases, two or more lines are found at low temperatures, but as the temperature is increased, the lines coalesce because the interconversion rate increases with temperature and passes the 10^3 per second mark. From studies of the way line shapes change with temperature it is often possible to calculate rates of reactions and of conformational changes.[30] This method is not limited to changes in proton line shapes but can also be used for other atoms that give nmr spectra and for esr spectra.

Several types of mechanistic information can be obtained from kinetic studies.

1. From the order of a reaction, information can be obtained about which molecules and how many take part in the rate-determining step. Such knowledge is very useful and often essential in elucidating a mechanism. For any mechanism that can be proposed for a given reaction, a corresponding rate law can be calculated by the methods discussed on pp. 192–194. If the experimentally obtained rate law fails to agree with this, the proposed mechanism is wrong. However, it is often difficult to relate the order of a reaction to the mechanism, especially when the order is fractional or negative. In addition, it is frequently the case that two or more proposed mechanisms for a reaction are kinetically indistinguishable, i.e., they predict the same rate law.

---

[28] We have given the integrated equations for simple first- and second-order kinetics. For integrated equations for a large number of kinetic types, see Margerison, Ref. 27, p. 361.

[29] See Hammett, Ref. 19, pp. 62–70.

[30] For reviews, see Roberts, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **51,** 1037–1047 (1979); Binsch, *Top. Stereochem.* **3,** 97–192 (1968); Johnson, *Adv. Magn. Reson.* **1,** 33–102 (1965). See also Allerhand, Gutowsky, Jonas, and Meinzer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3185 (1966).

2. Probably the most useful data obtained kinetically are the rate constants themselves. They are important since they may tell us the effect on the rate of a reaction of changes in the structure of the reactants (see Chapter 9), the solvent, the ionic strength, the addition of catalysts, etc.

3. If the rate is measured at several temperatures, in most cases a plot of $\ln k$ against $1/T$ (T stands for absolute temperature) is nearly linear[30a] with a negative slope, and fits the equation

$$\ln k = \frac{-E_a}{RT} + \ln A$$

where R is the gas constant and A a constant called the *frequency factor*. This permits the calculation of E_a, which is the Arrhenius activation energy of the reaction. $\Delta H^{\ddagger}$ can be then obtained by

$$E_a = \Delta H^{\ddagger} + RT$$

It is also possible to use these data to calculate $\Delta S^{\ddagger}$ by the formula[31]

$$\frac{\Delta S^{\ddagger}}{4.576} = \log k - 10.753 - \log T + \frac{E_a}{4.576T}$$

One then obtains $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ from $\Delta G^{\ddagger} = \Delta H^{\ddagger} - T\Delta S^{\ddagger}$.

Isotope Effects

When a hydrogen in a reactant molecule is replaced by deuterium, there is often a change in the rate. Such changes are known as *deuterium isotope effects*[32] and are expressed by the ratio k_H/k_D. The ground-state vibrational energy (called the zero-point vibrational energy) of a bond depends on the mass of the atoms and is lower when the reduced mass is higher.[33] Therefore, D—C, D—O, D—N bonds, etc., have lower energies in the ground state than the corresponding H—C, H—O, H—N bonds, etc. Complete dissociation of a deuterium bond consequently requires more energy than that for a corresponding hydrogen bond in the same environment (Figure 4). If an H—C, H—O, or H—N bond is not broken at all in a reaction or is broken in a non-rate-determining step, substitution of deuterium for hydrogen causes no change in the rate (see below for an exception to this statement), but if the bond is broken in the rate-determining step, the rate must be lowered by the substitution.

[30a] For a review of cases where such a plot is nonlinear, see Blandamer, Burgess, Robertson, and Scott, *Chem. Rev.* **82,** 259–286 (1982).

[31] For a derivation of this equation, see Bunnett, in Ref. 11, pt. 1, p. 404.

[32] For a monograph, see Melander and Saunders, "Reaction Rates of Isotopic Molecules," Wiley, New York, 1980. For reviews, see Lewis, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **74,** 31–44 (1978); Saunders, in Ref. 11, pp. 211–255; Wolfsberg, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **20,** 449–478 (1969); Bigeleisen, Lee, and Mandel, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **24,** 407–440 (1973); Saunders, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **3,** 109–146 (1966); Simon and Palm, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 920–933 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 993–1007]; Bell, "The Proton in Chemistry," 2d ed. pp. 226–296, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1973, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **3,** 513–544 (1974); Jencks, Ref. 14, pp. 243–281. For a review of temperature dependence of primary isotope effects as a mechanistic criterion, see Kwart, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 401–408 (1982). See also the series *Isotopes in Organic Chemistry.*

[33] The reduced mass μ of two atoms connected by a covalent bond is $\mu = m_1m_2/(m_1 + m_2)$.

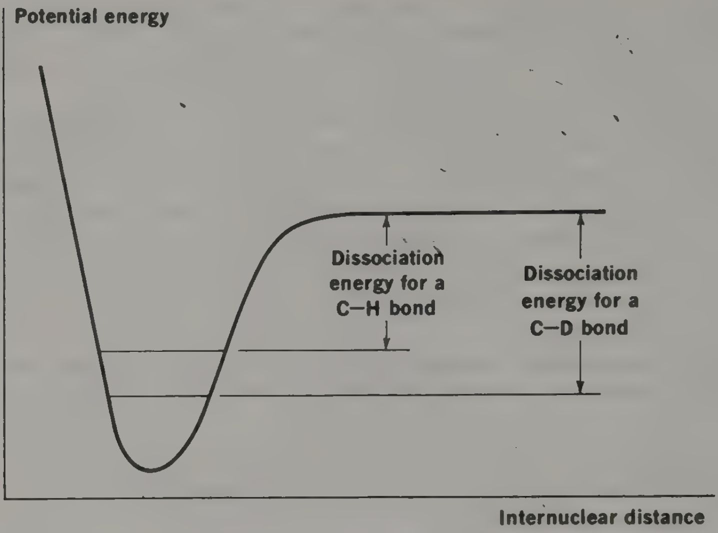


Figure 4 A C—D bond has a lower zero-point energy than does a corresponding C—H bond; thus the dissociation energy is higher.

This provides a valuable diagnostic tool for determination of mechanism. For example, in the bromination of acetone (**2-4**)

$$CH_3COCH_3 + Br_2 \longrightarrow CH_3COCH_2Br$$

the fact that the rate is independent of the bromine concentration led to the postulate that the rate-determining step was tautomerization of the acetone:

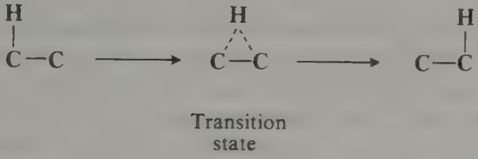
$$CH_3COCH_3 \rightleftharpoons CH_3\overset{OH}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}CH_2$$

In turn, the rate-determining step of the tautomerization involves cleavage of a C—H bond (see **2-3**). Thus there should be a substantial isotope effect if deuterated acetone is brominated. In fact, k_H/k_D was found to be about 7.[34] Deuterium isotope effects usually range from 1 (no isotope effect at all) to about 7 or 8, though in a few cases, larger[35] or smaller values have been reported. Values of k_H/k_D smaller than 1 are called *inverse isotope effects*. Isotope effects are greatest when, in the transition state, the hydrogen is symmetrically bonded to the atoms between which it is being transferred.[36] Also, calculations show that isotope effects are at a maximum when the hydrogen in the transition state is on the straight line connecting the two atoms between which the hydrogen is being transferred and that for sufficiently nonlinear configurations they decrease to $k_H/k_D = 1$ to 2.[37] Of course, in open systems there is no reason for the transition state to be nonlinear, but this is not the case in many intramolecular mechanisms, e.g., in a 1,2 migration of a hydrogen

---

[34] Reitz and Kopp, *Z. Phys. Chem., Abt. A* **184,** 429 (1939).

[35] For an example of a reaction with a deuterium isotope effect of 24.2, see Lewis and Funderburk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2322 (1967). The high isotope effect in this case has been ascribed to *tunneling* of the proton: because it is so small a hydrogen atom can sometimes get through a thin potential barrier without going over the top, i.e., without obtaining the usually necessary activation energy. A deuterium, with a larger mass, is less able to do this. The phenomenon of tunneling is a consequence of the uncertainty principle. k_H/k_T for the same reaction is 79; Lewis and Robinson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4337 (1968). For discussions of high isotope effects, see Kresge and Powell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 201 (1981); Caldin, Mateo, and Warrick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 202 (1981). For an argument that high isotope effects can be caused by factors other than tunneling, see McLennan, *Aust. J. Chem.* **32,** 1883 (1979).



The substitution of tritium for hydrogen gives isotope effects that are numerically larger.[38] Isotope effects have also been observed with other elements, but they are much smaller, about 1.02 to 1.10. For example, $k_{^{12}C}/k_{^{13}C}$ for

$$\mathrm{Ph^{*}CH_2Br + CH_3O^-} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{CH_3OH}} \mathrm{Ph^{*}CH_2OCH_3}$$

is 1.053.[39] Although they are small, heavy-atom isotope effects can be measured quite accurately and are often very useful.[40]

Deuterium isotope effects have been found even where it is certain that the C—H bond does not break at all in the reaction. Such effects are called *secondary isotope effects*,[41] the term *primary isotope effect* being reserved for the type discussed previously. Secondary isotope effects can be divided into α and β effects. In a β secondary isotope effect, substitution of deuterium for hydrogen β to the position of bond breaking slows the reaction. An example is solvolysis of isopropyl bromide:

$$\mathrm{(CH_3)_2CHBr + H_2O} \xrightarrow{k_H} \mathrm{(CH_3)_2CHOH}$$

$$\mathrm{(CD_3)_2CHBr + H_2O} \xrightarrow{k_D} \mathrm{(CD_3)_2CHOH}$$

where k_H/k_D was found to be 1.34.[42] The cause of β isotope effects has been a matter of much controversy, but they are most likely due to hyperconjugation effects in the transition state. The effects are greatest when the transition state has considerable carbocation character.[43] Although the C—H bond in question is not broken in the transition state, the carbocation is stabilized by hyperconjugation involving this bond. Because of hyperconjugation, the difference in vibrational energy between the C—H bond and the C—D bond in the transition state is less than it is in the ground state, so that the reaction is slowed by substitution of deuterium for hydrogen.

---

[36] Kwart and Latimore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 3770 (1971); Pryor and Kneipp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 5584 (1971); Bell and Cox, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 783 (1971); Bethell, Hare, and Kearney, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 684 (1981), and references cited in these papers. See, however, Motell, Boone, and Fink, *Tetrahedron* **34**, 1619 (1978).

[37] More O'Ferrall, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 785 (1970), and references cited therein.

[38] For a review of tritium isotope effects, see Yakushin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31**, 123–131 (1962).

[39] Stothers and Bourns, *Can. J. Chem.* **40**, 2007 (1962). See also Ando, Yamataka, Tamura, and Hanafusa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 5493 (1982).

[40] For a review of carbon isotope effects, see Willi, *Isot. Org. Chem.* **3**, 237–283 (1977).

[41] For reviews, see Sunko and Hehre, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14**, 205–246 (1983); Shiner, in Collins and Bowman, "Isotope Effects in Chemical Reactions," Van Nostrand-Reinhold, Princeton, 1970, pp. 90–159; Laszlo and Welvart, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2412–2438 (1966); Halevi, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1**, 109–221 (1963).

[42] Leffek, Llewellyn, and Robertson, *Can. J. Chem.* **38**, 2171 (1960).

[43] Bender and Feng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 6318 (1960); Jones and Bender, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 6322 (1960).

Support for hyperconjugation as the major cause of β isotope effects is the fact that the effect is greatest when D is anti to the leaving group[44] (because of the requirement that all atoms in a resonance system be coplanar, planarity of the D—C—C—X system would most greatly increase the hyperconjugation), and the fact that secondary isotope effects can be transmitted through unsaturated systems.[45] There is evidence that at least some β isotope effects are steric in origin[46] (e.g., a CD_3 group has a smaller steric requirement than a CH_3 group) and a field-effect explanation has also been suggested (CD_3 is apparently a better electron donor than CH_3[47]), but hyperconjugation is the most probable cause in most instances.[48] Part of the difficulty in attempting to explain these effects is their small size, ranging only as high as about 1.5. Another complicating factor is that they may change with temperature. In one case[49] k_H/k_D was 1.00 ± 0.01 at 0°C, 0.90 ± 0.01 at 25°C, and 1.15 ± 0.09 at 65°C. Whatever the cause, there seems to be a good correlation between β secondary isotope effects and carbocation character in the transition state, and they are thus a useful tool for probing mechanisms.

The other type of secondary isotope effect results from a replacement of hydrogen by deuterium at the carbon containing the leaving group. These (called α *secondary isotope effects*) are varied, with values so far reported ranging from 0.87 to 1.26.[50] These effects are also correlated with carbocation character. Nucleophilic substitutions that do not proceed through carbocation intermediates (SN2 reactions) have α isotope effects near unity.[51] Those that do involve carbocations (SN1 reactions) have higher α isotope effects, which depend on the nature of the leaving group.[52] The accepted explanation for α isotope effects is that one of the bending C—H vibrations is affected by the substitution of D for H more or less strongly in the transition state than in the ground state.[53] Depending on the nature of the transition state, this may increase or decrease the rate of the reaction. γ secondary isotope effects have also been reported.[54]

Another kind of isotope effect is the *solvent isotope effect*.[55] Reaction rates often change when the solvent is changed from H_2O to D_2O or from ROH to ROD. These changes may be due to any of three factors or a combination of all of them:

---

[44] Shiner, Murr, and Heinemann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2413 (1963); Shiner and Humphrey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2416 (1963); Shiner and Jewett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 945 (1964); DeFrees, Hehre, and Sunko, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2323 (1979).

[45] Shiner and Kriz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2643 (1964). See also Shiner, Buddenbaum, Murr, and Lamaty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 418 (1968).

[46] Bartell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3567 (1961); Brown and McDonald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2514 (1966); Brown, Azzaro, Koelling, and McDonald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2520 (1966); Kaplan and Thornton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6644 (1967); Carter and Dahlgren, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **24,** 633 (1970); Leffek and Matheson, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 439 (1971); Sherrod and Boekelheide, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5513 (1972).

[47] Halevi, Nussim, and Ron, *J. Chem. Soc.* 866 (1963); Halevi and Nussim, *J. Chem. Soc.* 876 (1963).

[48] Karabatsos, Sonnichsen, Papaioannou, Scheppele, and Shone, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 463 (1967); Kresge and Preto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5510 (1967); Jewett and Dunlap, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 809 (1968); Sunko, Szele, and Hehre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5000 (1977).

[49] Halevi and Margolin, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 174 (1964).

[50] Shiner, Buddenbaum, Murr, and Lamaty, Ref. 45; Harris, Hall, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2551 (1971).

[51] For reported exceptions, see Tanaka, Kaji, and Hayami, *Chem. Lett.* 1223 (1972); Westaway, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4229 (1975).

[52] Shiner and Dowd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1029 (1971); Shiner and Fisher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2553 (1971); Willi, Ho, and Ghanabarpour, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1185 (1972); Shiner, Neumann, and Fisher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 354 (1982); and references cited in these papers.

[53] Streitwieser, Jagow, Fahey, and Suzuki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 2326 (1958).

[54] Leffek, Llewellyn, and Robertson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 6315 (1960); *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 588 (1960); Werstiuk, Timmins, and Cappelli, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 1738 (1980).

[55] For reviews, see Schowen, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **9,** 275–332 (1972); Gold, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 259–331 (1969); Laughton and Robertson, in Coetzee and Ritchie, "Solute-Solvent Interactions," pp. 399–538, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969. For a review of the effect of isotopic changes in the solvent on the properties of nonreacting solutes, see Arnett and McKelvey, in Coetzee and Ritchie, cited above, pp. 343–398.

1. The solvent may be a reactant. If an O—H bond of the solvent is broken in the rate-determining step, there will be a primary isotope effect. If the molecules involved are D_2O or D_3O^+ there may also be a secondary effect caused by the O—D bonds that are not breaking.

2. The substrate molecules may become labeled with deuterium by rapid hydrogen exchange, and then the newly labeled molecule may become cleaved in the rate-determining step.

3. The extent or nature of solvent–solute interactions may be different in the deuterated and nondeuterated solvents; this may change the energies of the transition state and hence the activation energy of the reaction. These are secondary isotope effects. Two physical models for this third factor have been constructed.[56] It is obvious that in many cases the first and third factors at least, and often the second, are working simultaneously. Attempts have been made to separate them.[57]

The methods described in this chapter are not the only means of determining mechanisms. In an attempt to elucidate a mechanism, the investigator is limited only by his ingenuity.

---

[56] Swain and Bader, *Tetrahedron* **10,** 182 (1960); Swain, Bader, and Thornton, *Tetrahedron* **10,** 200 (1960); Bunton and Shiner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 42, 3207, 3214 (1961); Swain and Thornton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3884, 3890 (1961). See also Mitton, Gresser, and Schowen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2045 (1969).

[57] More O'Ferrall, Koeppl, and Kresge, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 9 (1971).

7

PHOTOCHEMISTRY

Most reactions carried out in organic chemistry laboratories take place between molecules all of which are in their ground electronic states. In a *photochemical reaction,*[1] however, a reacting molecule has been previously promoted by absorption of light to an electronically excited state. A molecule in an excited state must lose its extra energy in some manner; it cannot remain in the excited condition for long. However, a chemical reaction is not the only possible means of relinquishing the extra energy. In this chapter we first discuss electronically excited states and the processes of promotion to these states. Then we examine the possible pathways open to the excited molecule, first the physical and then the chemical pathways. The subject of electronic spectra is closely related to photochemistry.

Excited States and the Ground State

Electrons can move from the ground-state energy level of a molecule to a higher level if outside energy is supplied. In a photochemical process this energy is in the form of light. Light of any wavelength has associated with it an energy value given by $E = h\nu$, where ν is the frequency of the light (ν = velocity of light c divided by the wavelength λ) and h is Planck's constant. Since the energy levels of a molecule are quantized, the amount of energy required to raise an electron in a given molecule from one level to a higher one is a fixed quantity. Only light with exactly the frequency corresponding to this amount of energy will cause the electron to move to the higher level. If light of another frequency (too high or too low) is sent through a sample, it will pass out without a loss in intensity, since the molecules will not absorb it. However, if light of the correct frequency is passed in, the energy will be used by the molecules for electron promotion and hence the light that leaves the sample will be diminished in intensity or altogether gone. A *spectrophotometer* is an instrument that allows light of a given frequency to pass through a sample and that detects (by means of a phototube) the amount of light that has been transmitted, i.e., not absorbed. A spectrophotometer compares the intensity of the transmitted light with that of the incident light. Automatic instruments gradually and continuously change the frequency, and an automatic recorder plots a graph of absorption vs. frequency or wavelength.

The energy of electronic transitions corresponds to light in the visible, uv, and far-uv regions of the spectrum (Figure 1). Absorption positions are normally expressed in wavelength units, either in angstroms (Å) or nanometers (nm).[2] If a compound absorbs in the visible, it is colored, possessing a color complementary to that which is absorbed.[3] Thus a compound absorbing in the violet is

---

[1] There are many books on photochemistry. Some recent ones are Margaretha, "Preparative Organic Photochemistry," *Top. Curr. Chem.* **103** (1982); Turro, "Modern Molecular Photochemistry," Benjamin/Cummings, Menlo Park, Calif., 1978; Rohatgi-Mukherjee, "Fundamentals of Photochemistry," Wiley, New York, 1978; Cowan and Drisko, "Elements of Organic Photochemistry, Plenum, New York, 1976; Horspool, "Aspects of Organic Photochemistry," Academic Press, New York, 1976; Barltrop and Coyle, "Excited States in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1975. For a comprehensive older treatise, see Calvert and Pitts, "Photochemistry," Wiley, New York, 1966. See also the series, *Advances in Photochemistry* and *Organic Photochemistry*.

[2] Formerly, millimicrons (mμ) were frequently used; numerically they are the same as nanometers.

[3] For a monograph, see Griffiths, "Colour and Constitution of Organic Molecules," Academic Press, New York, 1976.

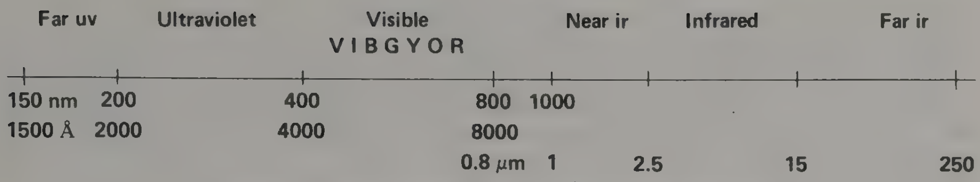

Far uv
Ultraviolet
Visible
VIBGYOR
Near ir
Infrared
Far ir
150 nm
200
400
800
1000
1500 Å
2000
4000
8000
0.8 μm
1
2.5
15
250

Figure 1 The uv, visible, and ir portions of the spectrum.

yellow. The far-uv region is studied by organic chemists less often than the visible or ordinary uv regions because special vacuum instruments are required owing to the fact that oxygen and nitrogen absorb in these regions.

From these considerations it would seem that an electronic spectrum should consist of one or more sharp peaks, each corresponding to the transfer of an electron from one electronic level to another. Under ordinary conditions the peaks are seldom sharp. In order to understand why, it is necessary to realize that molecules are constantly vibrating and rotating and that these motions are also quantized. A molecule at any time is not only in a given electronic state but also in a given vibrational and rotational state. The difference between two adjacent vibrational levels is much smaller than the difference between adjacent electronic levels, and the difference between adjacent rotational levels is smaller still. A typical situation is shown in Figure 2. When an electron moves from one electronic level to another, it moves from a given vibrational and rotational level within

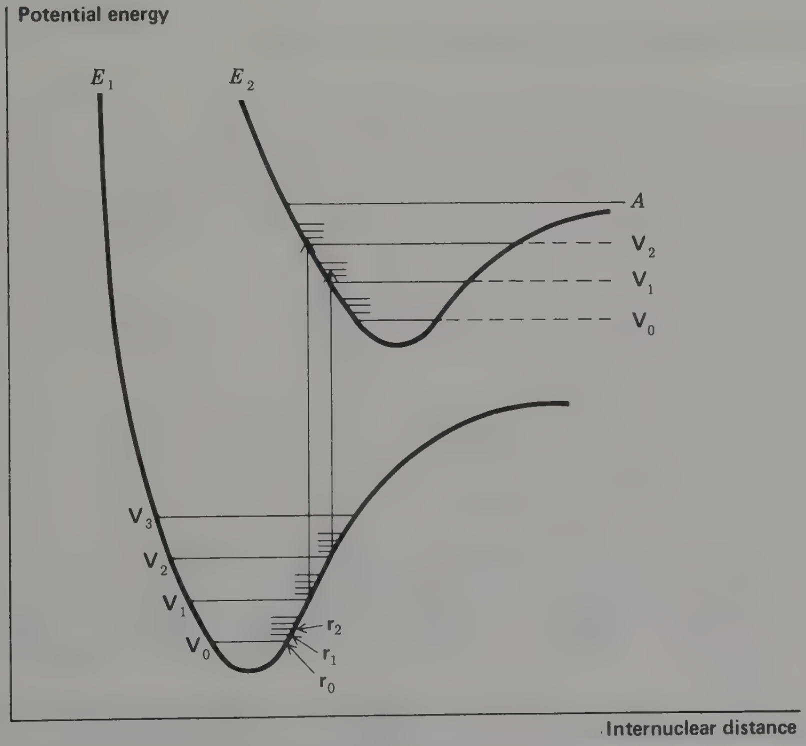

Potential energy
E_1
E_2
A
V_2
V_1
V_0
V_3
V_2
V_1
V_0
r_2
r_1
r_0
Internuclear distance

Figure 2 Energy curves for a diatomic molecule. Two possible transitions are shown. When an electron has been excited to the point marked *A*, the molecule may cleave (p. 207).

that electronic level to some vibrational and rotational level at the next electronic level. A given sample contains a large number of molecules, and even if all of them are in the ground electronic state, they are still distributed among the vibrational and rotational states (though the ground vibrational state V_0 is most heavily populated). This means that not just one wavelength of light will be absorbed but a number of them close together, with the most probable transition causing the most intense peak. But in molecules containing more than a few atoms there are so many possible transitions and these are so close together that what is observed is a relatively broad band. The height of the peak depends on the number of molecules making the transition and is proportional to log ε, where ε is the *extinction coefficient.* The extinction coefficient may be expressed by $\varepsilon = E/cl$, where c is the concentration in moles per liter, l is the cell length in centimeters, and $E = \log I_0/I$, where I_0 is the intensity of the incident light and I of the transmitted light. The wavelength is usually reported as λ_{max}, meaning that this is the top of the peak. Purely vibrational transitions, such as between V_0 and V_1 of E_1, which require much less energy, are found in the ir region and are the basis of ir spectra. Purely rotational transitions are found in the far-ir and microwave (beyond the far-ir) regions.

A uv or visible absorption peak is caused by the promotion of an electron in one orbital (usually a ground-state orbital) to a higher orbital. Normally the amount of energy necessary to make this transition depends mostly on the nature of the two orbitals involved and much less on the rest of the molecule. Therefore, a simple functional group such as the C=C double bond always causes absorption in the same general area. A group that causes absorption is called a *chromophore.*

Singlet and Triplet States. "Forbidden" Transitions

In most organic molecules, all electrons in the ground state are paired, with each member of a pair possessing opposite spin as demanded by the Pauli principle. When one of a pair of electrons is promoted to an orbital of higher energy, the two electrons no longer share an orbital, and the promoted electron may, in principle, have the same spin as its former partner or the opposite spin. As we saw in Chapter 5, a molecule in which two unpaired electrons have the same spin is called a *triplet,* while one in which all spins are paired is a *singlet.* Thus, at least in principle, for every excited singlet state there is a corresponding triplet state. In most cases, the triplet state has a lower energy than the corresponding singlet because of Hund's rule. Therefore, a different amount of energy and hence a different wavelength is required to promote an electron from the ground state (which is almost always a singlet) to an excited singlet than to the corresponding triplet state.

It would thus seem that promotion of a given electron in a molecule could result either in a singlet or a triplet excited state depending on the amount of energy added. However, this is often not the case because transitions between energy levels are governed by selection rules, which state that certain transitions are "forbidden." There are several types of "forbidden" transitions, two of which are more important than the others.

1. *Spin-forbidden transitions.* Transitions in which the spin of an electron changes are not allowed, because a change from one spin to the opposite involves a change in angular momentum and such a change would violate the law of conservation of angular momentum. Therefore singlet–triplet and triplet–singlet transitions are forbidden, whereas singlet–singlet and triplet–triplet transitions are allowed.

2. *Symmetry-forbidden transitions.* Among the transitions in this class are those in which a molecule has a center of symmetry. In such cases, a $g \rightarrow g$ or $u \rightarrow u$ transition (see p. 5) is "forbidden," while a $g \rightarrow u$ or $u \rightarrow g$ transition is allowed.

TABLE 1 Ultraviolet absorption[6] of $CH_3—(CH{=}CH)_n—CH_3$ for some values of *n*

n	nm
2	227
3	263
6	352
9	413

We have put the word "forbidden" into quotation marks because these transitions are not actually forbidden but only highly improbable. In most cases promotions from a singlet ground state to a triplet excited state are so improbable that they cannot be observed, and it is safe to state that in most molecules only singlet–singlet promotions take place. However, this rule does break down in certain cases, most often when a heavy atom (such as iodine) is present in the molecule, in which cases it can be shown from spectra that singlet–triplet promotions are occurring.[4] Symmetry-forbidden transitions can frequently be observed, though usually with low intensity.

Types of Excitation

When an electron in a molecule is promoted (normally only one electron in any molecule), it usually goes into the lowest available vacant orbital, though promotion to higher orbitals is also possible if any are available. For most organic molecules there are consequently four types of electronic excitation:

1. $\sigma \rightarrow \sigma^*$. Alkanes, which have no *n* or π electrons, can be excited only in this way.[5]
2. $n \rightarrow \sigma^*$. Alcohols, amines, ethers, etc. can also be excited in this manner.
3. $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$. This pathway is open to alkenes as well as to aldehydes, esters, etc.
4. $n \rightarrow \pi^*$. Aldehydes, ketones, esters, etc. can undergo this promotion as well as the other three.

The four excitation types above are listed in what is normally the order of decreasing energy. Thus light of the highest energy (in the far uv) is necessary for $\sigma \rightarrow \sigma^*$ excitation, while $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ promotions are caused by ordinary uv light. However, the order may sometimes be altered in some solvents.

In 1,3-butadiene (and other compounds with two conjugated double bonds) there are two π and two π^* orbitals (p. 28). The energy difference between the higher π (χ_2) and the lower π^* (χ_3) orbital is less than the difference between the π and π^* orbitals of ethylene. Therefore 1,3-butadiene requires less energy than ethylene, and thus light of a higher wavelength, to promote an electron. This is a general phenomenon, and it may be stated that, in general, *the more conjugation in a molecule, the more the absorption is displaced toward higher wavelengths* (see Table 1).[6] When a chromophore absorbs at a certain wavelength and the substitution of one group for another causes absorption at a longer wavelength, a *bathochromic shift* is said to have occurred. The opposite kind of shift is called *hypsochromic*.

---

[4] For a review of photochemical heavy-atom effects, see Koziar and Cowan, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11**, 334–341 (1978).
[5] An *n* electron is one in an unshared pair.
[6] Bohlmann and Mannhardt, *Chem. Ber.* **89**, 1307 (1956).

Of the four excitation types listed above, the $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ and $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ are far more important in organic photochemistry than the other two. Compounds containing C=O groups can be excited in both ways, giving rise to at least two peaks in the uv. These are often easy to distinguish, because $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ transitions are found farther toward the far uv and are generally much more intense (ε for $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ is usually about 100 to 10,000 compared with ε = 10 to 1000 for $n \rightarrow \pi^*$). However, there are many cases in which it is difficult to tell them apart. In such cases there are several methods that can be used,[7] one of which involves the measurement of the spectrum in different solvents. An increase in solvent polarity usually causes a hypsochromic shift in $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ transitions[7a] and a bathochromic shift in $\pi \rightarrow \pi^*$ transitions.

As we have seen, a chromophore is a group that causes a molecule to absorb light. Examples of chromophores in the visible or uv are C=O, N=N,[8] Ph, and NO_2. Some chromophores in the far uv (beyond 200 nm) are C=C, C≡C, Cl, and OH. An *auxochrome* is a group that displaces (through resonance) and usually intensifies the absorption of a chromophore present in the same molecule. Groups such as Cl, OH, and NH_2 are generally regarded as auxochromes since they shift (usually bathochromically) the uv and visible bands of chromophores such as Ph or C=O (see Table 2).[9] Since auxochromes are themselves chromophores (to be sure, generally in the far-uv), it is sometimes difficult to decide which group in a molecule is an auxochrome and which a chromophore. For example, in acetophenone (PhCOMe) is the chromophore Ph or C=O? In such cases the distinction becomes practically meaningless.

Nomenclature and Properties of Excited States

An excited state of a molecule can be regarded as a distinct chemical species, different from the ground state of the same molecule and from other excited states. It is obvious that we need some method of naming excited states. Unfortunately, there are several methods in use, depending on whether one is primarily interested in photochemistry, spectroscopy, or molecular-orbital theory.[10]

TABLE 2 Some uv peaks of substituted benzenes in water, or water with a trace of methanol (for solubility)

Note how auxochromes shift and usually intensify the peaks[9]

	Primary band		Secondary band	
	λ_{max}, nm	ε_{max}	λ_{max}, nm	ε_{max}
PhH	203.5	7,400	254	204
PhCl	209.5	7,400	263.5	190
PhOH	210.5	6,200	270	1,450
PhOMe	217	6,400	269	1,480
PhCN	224	13,000	271	1,000
PhCOOH	230	11,600	273	970
$PhNH_2$	230	8,600	280	1,430
PhO^-	235	9,400	287	2,600
PhAc	245.5	9,800		
PhCHO	249.5	11,400		
$PhNO_2$	268.5	7,800		

---

[7] See Calvert and Pitts, Ref. 1, pp. 260–262.

[7a] For a discussion of the origin of this shift, see Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5248 (1982).

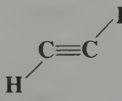
[8] For a review of the azo group as a chromophore, see Rau, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 224–235 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 248–258].

[9] These values are from Jaffé and Orchin, "Theory and Applications of Ultraviolet Spectroscopy," p. 257, Wiley, New York, 1962.

[10] For discussions of excited-state notation and other terms in photochemistry, see Pitts, Wilkinson, and Hammond, *Adv. Photochem.* **1,** 1–21 (1963); Porter, Balzani, and Moggi, *Adv. Photochem.* **9,** 147–196 (1974).

One of the most common methods simply designates the original and newly occupied orbitals, with or without a superscript to indicate singlet or triplet. Thus the singlet state arising from promotion of a π to a π^* orbital in ethylene would be the $^1(\pi,\pi^*)$ state or the π,π^* singlet state. Another very common method may be used even in cases where one is not certain which orbitals are involved. The lowest-energy excited state is called S_1, the next S_2, etc., and triplet states are similarly labeled T_1, T_2, T_3, etc. In this notation the ground state is S_0. Other notational systems exist, but in this book we shall confine ourselves to the two types just mentioned.

The properties of excited states are not easy to measure because of their generally short lifetimes and low concentrations, but enough work has been done for us to know that they often differ from the ground state in geometry, dipole moment, and acid or base strength.[11] For example, acetylene, which is linear in the ground state, has a trans geometry



with approximately sp^2 carbons in the $^1(\pi,\pi^*)$ state.[12] Similarly, the $^1(\pi,\pi^*)$ and the $^3(\pi,\pi^*)$ states of ethylene have a perpendicular and not a planar geometry,[13] and the $^1(n,\pi^*)$ and $^3(n,\pi^*)$ states of formaldehyde are both pyramidal.[14] Triplet species tend to stabilize themselves by distortion, which relieves interaction between the unpaired electrons. Obviously, if the geometry is different, the dipole moment will probably differ also and the change in geometry and electron distribution often results in a change in acid or base strength.[15] For example, the S_1 state of 2-naphthol is a much stronger acid (pK = 3.1) than the ground state (S_0) of the same molecule (pK = 9.5).[16]

Photolytic Cleavage

We have said that when a molecule absorbs a quantum of light, it is promoted to an excited state. Actually, that is not the only possible outcome. Because the energy of visible and uv light is of the same order of magnitude as that of covalent bonds (Table 3), another possibility is that the

TABLE 3 Typical energies for some covalent single bonds (see Table 6, Chapter 1) and the corresponding approximate wavelengths

Bond	E, kcal/mol	λ, nm
C—H	95	300
C—O	88	325
C—C	83	345
Cl—Cl	58	495
O—O	35	820

---

[11] For a review of the structures of excited states, see Brand and Williamson, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1,** 365–423 (1963).

[12] Ingold and King, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2702, 2704, 2708, 2725, 2745 (1953).

[13] Merer and Mulliken, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 639–656 (1969).

[14] Robinson and DiGiorgio, *Can. J. Chem.* **36,** 31 (1958); Buenker and Peyerimhoff, *J. Chem. Phys.* **53,** 1368 (1970); Garrison, Schaefer, and Lester, *J. Chem. Phys.* **61,** 3039 (1974). For reviews of excited states of formaldehyde, see Buck, *Recl: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 193–198, 225–233 (1982); Moule and Walsh, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 67–84 (1975).

[15] For a review of acid–base properties of excited states, see Ireland and Wyatt, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 131–221 (1976).

[16] Weller, *Z. Phys. Chem.* (*Frankfurt am Main*) **3,** 238 (1955), *Discuss. Faraday Soc.* **27,** 28 (1959).

molecule may cleave into two parts, a process known as *photolysis*. There are three situations that may lead to cleavage:

1. The promotion may bring the molecule to a vibrational level so high that it lies above the right-hand portion of the E_2 curve (line *A* in Figure 2). In such a case the excited molecule cleaves at its first vibration.

2. Even where the promotion is to a lower vibrational level, one which lies wholly within the E_2 curve (such as V_1 or V_2), the molecule may still cleave. As Figure 2 shows, equilibrium distances are greater in excited states than in the ground state. The *Franck–Condon principle* states that promotion of an electron takes place much faster than a single vibration (the promotion takes about 10^{-15} sec; a vibration about 10^{-12} sec). Therefore, when an electron is suddenly promoted, even to a low vibrational level, the distance between the atoms is essentially unchanged and the bond finds itself in a compressed condition like a pressed-in spring; this condition may be relieved by an outward surge that is sufficient to break the bond.

3. In some cases the excited state is entirely dissociative (Figure 3), i.e., there is no distance where attraction outweighs repulsion and the bond must cleave. An example is the hydrogen molecule, where a $\sigma \rightarrow \sigma^*$ promotion always results in cleavage.

A photolytic cleavage can break the molecule into two smaller molecules or into two free radicals (see p. 213). Cleavage into two ions, though known, is much rarer. Once free radicals are produced by a photolysis, they behave like free radicals produced in any other way (Chapter 5) except that they may be in excited states, and this can cause differences in behavior.

The Fate of the Excited Molecule: Physical Processes

When a molecule has been photochemically promoted to an excited state, it does not remain there for long. Most promotions are from the S_0 to the S_1 state. As we have seen, promotions from S_0

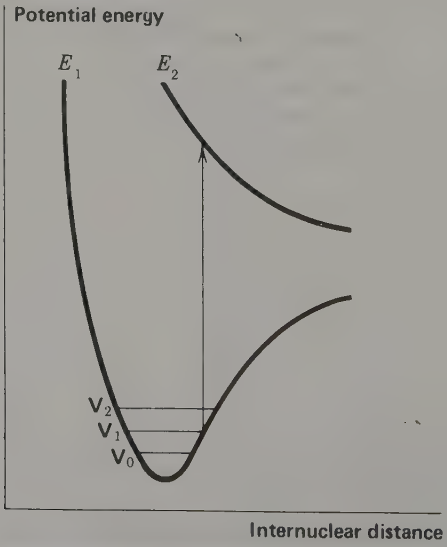


Figure 3 Promotion to a dissociative state results in bond cleavage.

to triplet states are "forbidden." Promotions to S_2 and higher singlet states take place, but in liquids and solids these higher states usually drop very rapidly to the S_1 state (about 10^{-13} to 10^{-11} sec). The energy lost when an S_2 or S_3 molecule drops to S_1 is given up in small increments to the environment by collisions with neighboring molecules. Such a process is called an *energy cascade*. In a similar manner, the initial excitation and the decay from higher singlet states initially populate many of the vibrational levels of S_1, but these also cascade, down to the lowest vibrational level of S_1. Therefore, in most cases, the lowest vibrational level of the S_1 state is the only important excited singlet state.[17] This state can undergo various physical and chemical processes. In the following list, we describe the physical pathways open to molecules in the S_1 and excited triplet states. These pathways are also shown in a modified Jablonski diagram (Figure 4) and in Table 4.

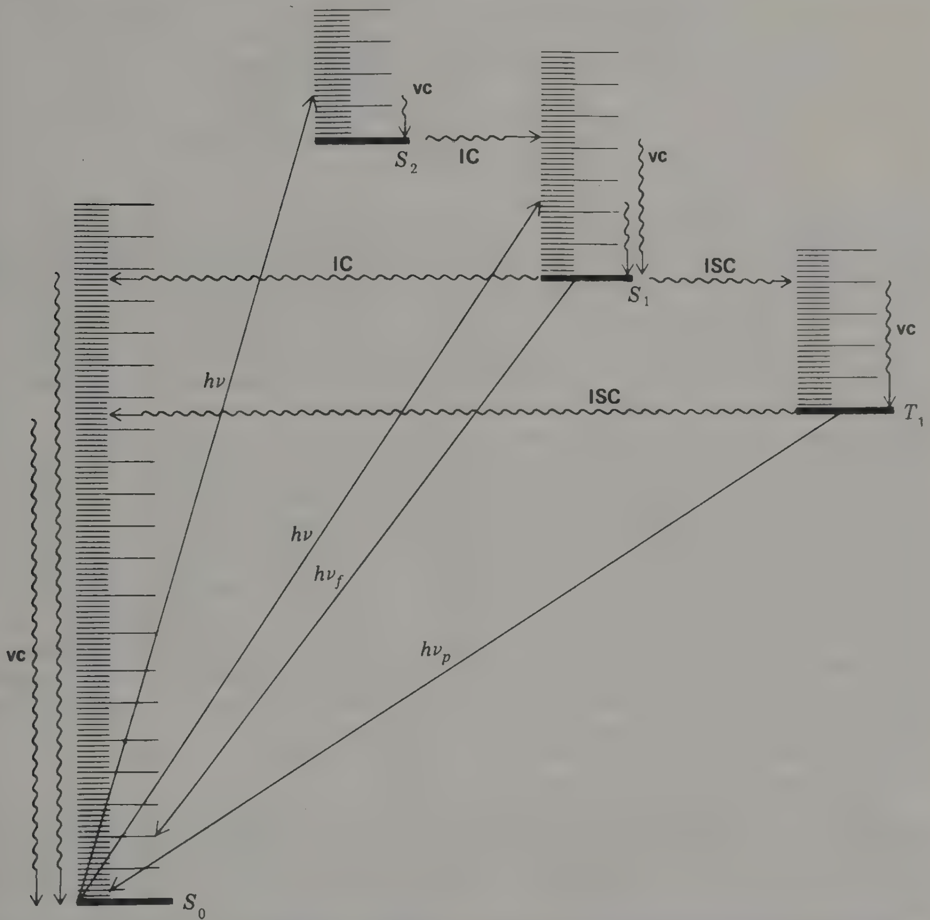


Figure 4 Modified Jablonski diagram showing transitions between excited states and the ground state. Radiative processes are shown by straight lines, radiationless processes by wavy lines. *IC* = internal conversion; *ISC* = intersystem crossing, *vc* = vibrational cascade; $h\nu_f$ = fluorescence; $h\nu_p$ = phosphorescence.

---

[17] For a review of physical and chemical processes undergone by higher states, see Turro, Ramamurthy, Cherry, and Farneth, *Chem. Rev.* **78,** 125–145 (1978).

TABLE 4 Physical processes undergone by excited molecules

The superscript v indicates vibrationally excited state: excited states higher than S_1 or T_1 are omitted

$S_0 + h\nu \rightarrow S_1{}^v$	Excitation
$S_1{}^v \rightsquigarrow S_1$ + heat	Vibrational relaxation
$S_1 \rightarrow S_0 + h\nu$	Fluorescence
$S_1 \rightsquigarrow S_0$ + heat	Internal conversion
$S_1 \rightsquigarrow T_1{}^v$	Intersystem crossing
$T_1{}^v \rightsquigarrow T_1$ + heat	Vibrational relaxation
$T_1 \rightarrow S_0 + h\nu$	Phosphorescence
$T_1 \rightsquigarrow S_0$ + heat	Intersystem crossing
$S_1 + A_{(S_0)} \rightarrow S_0 + A_{(S_1)}$	Singlet-singlet transfer (photosensitization)
$T_1 + A_{(S_0)} \rightarrow S_0 + A_{(T_1)}$	Triplet-triplet transfer (photosensitization)

1. A molecule in the S_1 state can cascade down through the vibrational levels of the S_0 state and thus return to the ground state by giving up its energy in small increments to the environment, but this is generally quite slow because the amount of energy is large. The process is called *internal conversion* (IC). Because it is slow, most molecules in the S_1 state adopt other pathways:[18]

2. A molecule in the S_1 state can drop to some low vibrational level of the S_0 state all at once by giving off the energy in the form of light. This process, which generally happens within 10^{-9} sec, is called *fluorescence*. This pathway is not very common either (because it is relatively slow), except for small molecules, e.g., diatomic, and rigid molecules, e.g., aromatic. For most other compounds fluorescence is very weak or undetectable. For compounds that do fluoresce, the fluorescence emission spectra are usually the approximate mirror images of the absorption spectra. This comes about because the fluorescing molecules all drop from the lowest vibrational level of the S_1 state to various vibrational levels of S_0, while excitation is from the lowest vibrational level of S_0 to various levels of S_1 (Figure 5). The only peak in common is the one resulting from transitions between the lowest vibrational levels of the two states. This peak is usually called the 0–0 peak, because the transition is from the V_0 level of one state to the V_0 level of another. In solution, even the 0–0 peak may be noncoincidental because the two states are solvated differently. Fluorescence nearly always arises from a $S_1 \rightarrow S_0$ transition, though azulene (p. 45) and its simple derivatives are exceptions,[19] emitting fluorescence from $S_2 \rightarrow S_0$ transitions.

Because of the possibility of fluorescence, any chemical reactions of the S_1 state must take place very fast, or fluorescence will occur before they can happen.

3. Most molecules (though by no means all) in the S_1 state can undergo an *intersystem crossing* (ISC) to the lowest triplet state T_1.[20] An important example is benzophenone, of which approximately 100% of the molecules that are excited to the S_1 state cross over to the T_1.[21] Intersystem crossing

---

[18] For a monograph on radiationless transitions, see Lin, "Radiationless Transitions," Academic Press, New York, 1980; For reviews, see Kommandeur, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **102**, 421–428 (1983); Freed, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11**, 74–80 (1978).

[19] For other exceptions, see Gregory, Hirayama, and Lipsky, *J. Chem. Phys.* **58**, 4697 (1973) and references cited therein. See also Ref. 17, pp. 126–129.

[20] Intersystem crossing from S_1 to T_2 and higher triplet states has also been reported in some aromatic molecules: Li and Lim, *J. Chem. Phys.* **57**, 605 (1972); Sharf and Silbey, *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **5**, 314 (1970). See also Schlag, Schneider, and Fischer, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **22**, 465–526 (1971), pp. 490–494.

[21] Moore, Hammond, and Foss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83**, 2789 (1961).

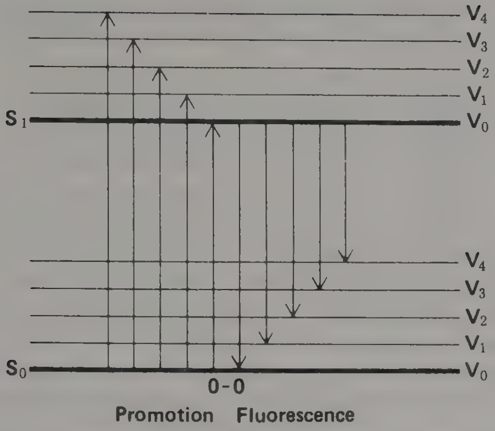


Figure 5 Promotion and fluorescence between S_1 and S_0 states.

from singlet to triplet is of course a ''forbidden'' pathway, since the angular-momentum problem (p. 204) must be taken care of, but this often takes place by compensations elsewhere in the system. Intersystem crossings take place without loss of energy. Since a singlet state usually has a higher energy than the corresponding triplet, this means that energy must be given up. One way for this to happen is for the S_1 molecule to cross to a T_1 state at a high vibrational level and then for the T_1 to cascade down to its lowest vibrational level (see Figure 4). This cascade is very rapid (10^{-12} sec). When T_2 or higher states are populated, they too rapidly cascade to the lowest vibrational level of the T_1 state.

4. A molecule in the T_1 state may return to the S_0 state by giving up heat (intersystem crossing) or light (this is called *phosphorescence*).[22] Of course, the angular-momentum difficulty exists here, so that both intersystem crossing and phosphorescence are very slow ($\sim 10^{-3}$ to 10^1 sec). This means that T_1 states generally have much longer lifetimes than S_1 states. When they occur in the same molecule, phosphorescence is found at lower frequencies than fluorescence (because of the higher difference in energy between S_1 and S_0 than between T_1 and S_0) and is longer-lived (because of the longer lifetime of the T_1 state).

5. If nothing else happens to it first, a molecule in an excited state (S_1 or T_1) may transfer its excess energy all at once to another molecule in the environment, in a process called *photosensitization*.[23] The excited molecule (which we shall call D for donor) thus drops to S_0 while the other molecule (A for acceptor) becomes excited:

$$\mathbf{D^* + A \longrightarrow A^* + D}$$

Thus there are *two* ways for a molecule to reach an excited state—by absorption of a quantum of light or by transfer from a previously excited molecule.[24] The donor D is also called a *photosensitizer*. This energy transfer is subject to the *Wigner spin-conservation rule*, which is actually a special case of the law of conservation of momentum we have encountered previously. According to the

[22] For a review of physical processes of triplet states, see Lower and El-Sayed, *Chem. Rev.* **66**, 199–241 (1966). For a review of physical and chemical processes of triplet states see Wagner and Hammond, *Adv. Photochem.* **5**, 21–156 (1968). For a review of phosphorescence, see Parker, *Adv. Photochem.* **2**, 305–383 (1964).

[23] For reviews, see Albini, *Synthesis* 249–264 (1981); Wilkinson, *Adv. Photochem.* **3**, 241–268 (1964); Turro, Dalton, and Weiss, *Org. Photochem.* **2**, 1–62 (1969).

[24] There is also a third way: in certain cases excited states can be produced directly in ordinary reactions. For a review, see White, Miano, Watkins, and Breaux, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13**, 229–243 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86**, 292–307].

Wigner rule, the total electron spin does not change after the energy transfer. For example, when a triplet species interacts with a singlet the following are some allowed possibilities:[25]

$$\begin{array}{lcll}
\mathbf{D^*} \qquad \mathbf{A} & & \mathbf{D} \qquad \mathbf{A^*} & \\
(\uparrow\uparrow)^* + \uparrow\downarrow & \longrightarrow & \uparrow\downarrow + (\uparrow\uparrow)^* & \text{singlet and triplet} \\
 & \longrightarrow & \uparrow\uparrow\downarrow + \uparrow & \text{doublet and doublet (two radicals)} \\
 & \longrightarrow & \uparrow\uparrow + \downarrow + \uparrow & \text{triplet and two doublets} \\
 & \longrightarrow & \uparrow\downarrow + \uparrow + \uparrow & \text{singlet and two doublets}
\end{array}$$

In all these cases the products have three electrons spinning "up" and the fourth "down" (as do the starting molecules). However, formation of, say, two triplets ($\uparrow\uparrow + \downarrow\downarrow$) or two singlets ($\uparrow\downarrow + \uparrow\downarrow$), whether ground states or excited, would violate the rule.

In the two most important types of photosensitization, both of which are in accord with the Wigner rule, a triplet excited state generates another triplet and a singlet generates a singlet:

$$\mathbf{D}_{T_1} + \mathbf{A}_{S_0} \longrightarrow \mathbf{A}_{T_1} + \mathbf{D}_{S_0} \qquad \text{triplet-triplet transfer}$$

$$\mathbf{D}_{S_1} + \mathbf{A}_{S_0} \longrightarrow \mathbf{A}_{S_1} + \mathbf{D}_{S_0} \qquad \text{singlet-singlet transfer}$$

Singlet–singlet transfer can take place over relatively long distances, e.g., 40 Å, but triplet transfer normally requires a collision between the molecules.[26] Both types of photosensitization can be useful for creating excited states when they are difficult to achieve by direct irradiation. Photosensitization is therefore an important method for carrying out photochemical reactions when a molecule cannot be brought to the desired excited state by direct absorption of light. Triplet–triplet transfer is especially important because triplet states are usually much more difficult to prepare by direct irradiation than singlet states (often impossible) and because triplet states, having longer lifetimes, are much more likely than singlets to transfer energy by photosensitization.

Photosensitization is most efficient when the donor D* has a higher energy than the excited acceptor A*. The excess energy appears as kinetic energy of D and A*. Thus, before carrying out a photosensitization, one should know the energies of these states. Table 5 lists some triplet energies.[27] In choosing a photosensitizer one should avoid a compound that absorbs in the same region as the acceptor because the latter will then compete for the light.[28] For examples of the use of photosensitization to accomplish reactions, see pp. 737, 764.

TABLE 5 Some triplet energies[27]

Compound	Energy, kcal/mol	Compound	Energy, kcal/mol
Benzene	84	Biacetyl	55
Acetophenone	74	Benzil	54
Benzophenone	69	Pyrene	49
Naphthalene	61	Anthracene	47
Chrysene	57		

---

[25] For another table of this kind, see Calvert and Pitts, Ref. 1, p. 89.

[26] Long-range triplet–triplet transfer has been observed in a few cases: Bennett, Schwenker, and Kellogg, *J. Chem. Phys.* **41,** 3040 (1964); Ermolaev and Sveshnikova, *Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Ser. Fiz.* **26,** 29 (1962) [*C. A.* **57,** 1688 (1962)], *Opt. Spectrosc.* (*USSR*) **16,** 320 (1964).

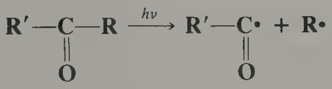
[27] These values are from Turro, Ref. 1, p. 352. See also Calvert and Pitts, Ref. 1, pp. 297–298.

[28] For a review of other complications that may take place in photosensitized reactions, see Engel and Monroe, *Adv. Photochem.* **8,** 245–313 (1971).

The Fate of the Excited Molecule: Chemical Processes

Although both excited singlet and triplet species can undergo chemical reactions, they are much more common for triplets, simply because these generally have much longer lifetimes. Excited singlet species, in most cases, have a lifetime of less than 10^{-10} sec and undergo one of the physical processes already discussed before they have a chance to react chemically. Therefore, photochemistry is largely the chemistry of triplet states.[29] Table 6[30] lists many of the possible chemical pathways that can be taken by an excited molecule.[31] The first four of these are unimolecular reactions; the others are bimolecular. In the case of bimolecular reactions it is rare for two excited molecules to react with each other (because the concentration of excited molecules at any one time is generally low); reactions are between an excited molecule and an unexcited molecule of either the same or another species. The reactions listed in Table 6 are primary processes. Secondary reactions often follow, since the primary products are frequently free radicals or carbenes; even if they are ordinary molecules, they are often in upper vibrational levels and so have excess energy. In almost all cases the primary products of photochemical reactions are in their ground states, though exceptions are known.[32] Of the reactions listed in Table 6, the most common are cleavage into free radicals (1), decomposition into molecules (2), and (in the presence of a suitable acceptor molecule) photosensitization (7), which we have already discussed. The following are some specific examples of reaction categories (1) to (6). Other examples are discussed in Part 2 of this book.

Category 1. *Simple cleavage into free radicals.* Aldehydes and ketones absorb in the 230 to 330 nm region. This is assumed to result from an $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ singlet–singlet transition. The excited aldehyde or ketone can then cleave:[33]



$$R'{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R \xrightarrow{h\nu} R'{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}\bullet + R\bullet$$

When applied to ketones, this is called *Norrish Type I cleavage* or often just *Type I cleavage*. In a secondary process, the acyl radical R′—CO• can then lose CO to give R′• radicals. Another example of a category 1 process is cleavage of Cl_2 to give two Cl atoms. Other bonds that are easily cleaved by photolysis are the O—O bonds of peroxy compounds and the C—N bonds of aliphatic azo compounds R—N═N—R.[34] The latter is an important source of radicals R•, since the other product is the very stable N_2.

---

[29] For a review of the chemical reactions of triplet states, see Wagner and Hammond, Ref. 22. For other reviews of triplet states, see *Top. Curr. Chem.*, vols. 54 and 55 (1975).

[30] Adapted from Calvert and Pitts, Ref. 1, p. 367.

[31] For a different kind of classification of photochemical reactions, see Dauben, Salem, and Turro, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 41–54 (1975).

[32] Turro, Lechtken, Lyons, Hautala, Carnahan, and Katz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2035 (1973).

[33] For full discussions of aldehyde and ketone photodissociative processes, see Calvert and Pitts, Ref. 1, pp. 368–427; Coyle and Carless, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **1,** 465–480 (1972); Pitts and Wan, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," pp. 823–916, Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1966; Dalton and Turro, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **21,** 499–560 (1970); Bérces, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 5, pp. 277–380, Elsevier, New York, 1972; Turro, Dalton, Dawes, Farrington, Hautala, Morton, Niemczyk, and Shore, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 92–101 (1972); Wagner, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **66,** 1–52 (1976); Wagner and Hammond, Ref. 22, pp. 87–129. For reviews of the photochemistry of cyclic ketones, see Weiss, *Org. Photochem.* **5,** 347–420 (1981); Chapman and Weiss, *Org. Photochem.* **3,** 197–288 (1973); Morton and Turro, *Adv. Photochem.* **9,** 197–309 (1974). For reviews of the photochemistry of α-diketones, see Rubin, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **13,** 251–306 (1969); Monroe, *Adv. Photochem.* **8,** 77–108 (1971). For a review of the photochemistry of protonated unsaturated carbonyl compounds, see Childs, *Rev. Chem. Intermed.* **3,** 285–314 (1980).

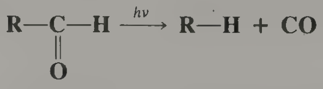
[34] For reviews of the photochemistry of azo compounds, see Dürr and Ruge, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **66,** 53–87 (1976); Drewer, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydrazo, Azo, and Azoxy Groups," pt. 2, pp. 935–1015, Wiley, New York, 1975.

TABLE 6 Primary photochemical reactions of an excited molecule **A—B—C**[30]

Examples are given in the text; the most common are (1), (2), and, in the presence of a suitable acceptor molecule, (7)

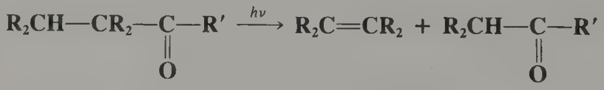
$\text{(A—B—C)} \longrightarrow \text{A—B}\cdot + \text{C}\cdot$	Simple cleavage into free radicals	(1)
$\text{(A—B—C)} \longrightarrow \text{E} + \text{F}$	Decomposition into molecules	(2)
$\text{(A—B—C)} \longrightarrow \text{A—C—B}$	Intramolecular rearrangement	(3)
$\text{(A—B—C)} \longrightarrow \text{A—B—C}'$	Photoisomerization	(4)
$\text{(A—B—C)} \xrightarrow{\text{RH}} \text{A—B—C—H} + \text{R}\cdot$	Hydrogen-atom abstraction	(5)
$\text{(A—B—C)} \longrightarrow \text{(ABC)}_2$	Photodimerization	(6)
$\text{(A—B—C)} \xrightarrow{\text{A}} \text{ABC} + \text{A*}$	Photosensitization	(7)

Category 2. *Decomposition into molecules.* Aldehydes (though not generally ketones) can also cleave in this manner:



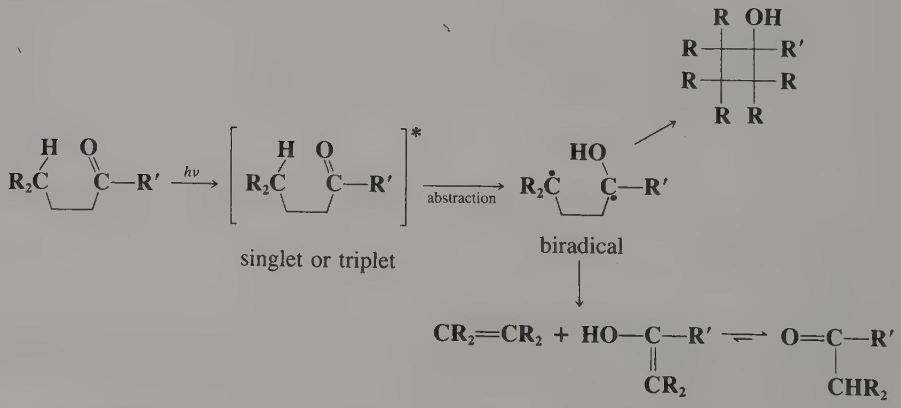
$$\text{R—}\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}\text{—H} \xrightarrow{h\nu} \text{R—H} + \text{CO}$$

This is an extrusion reaction (see Chapter 17). In another example of a process in category 2, aldehydes and ketones with a γ-hydrogen can cleave in still another way (a β-elimination, see Chapter 17):



$$\text{R}_2\text{CH—CR}_2\text{—}\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}\text{—R}' \xrightarrow{h\nu} \text{R}_2\text{C=CR}_2 + \text{R}_2\text{CH—}\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}\text{—R}'$$

This reaction, called *Norrish Type II cleavage*,[35] involves intramolecular abstraction of the γ-hydrogen followed by cleavage of the resulting biradical[36] (a secondary reaction) to give an enol that tautomerizes to the aldehyde or ketone product.[37]



---

[35] For thorough discussions of the mechanism, see Wagner, in de Mayo, "Rearrangements in Ground and Excited States," vol. 3, pp. 381–444, Academic Press, New York, 1980; *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4**, 168–177 (1971); Dalton and Turro, Ref. 33, pp. 526–538.

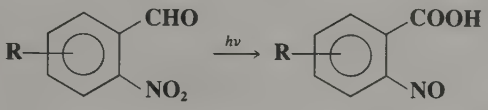
[36] For a review of the biradicals produced in this reaction, see Scaiano, Lissi, and Encina, *Rev. Chem. Intermed.* **2**, 139–196 (1978).

[37] This mechanism was proposed by Yang and Yang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80**, 2913 (1958). Among the evidence for this mechanism is the fact that the biradical intermediate has been trapped by the addition of mercaptans: Wagner and Zepp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 287 (1972); Wagner, Kelso, and Zepp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 7480 (1972). See also Zepp and Wagner, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 167 (1972).

Both singlet and triplet n,π^* states undergo the reaction.[38] The intermediate biradical can also cyclize to a cyclobutanol, which is often a side product. Esters, anhydrides, and other carbonyl compounds can also give this reaction.[39] The photolysis of ketene to CH_2 (p. 174) is still another example of a reaction in category 2. Both singlet and triplet CH_2 are generated, the latter in two ways:

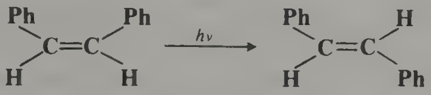
$$\begin{tikzcd}
CH_2{=}C{=}O \arrow[r, "h\nu"] & CH_2{=}C{=}O\,(S_1) \arrow[r] \arrow[d] & \overline{C}H_2 + CO \arrow[d] \\
& CH_2{=}C{=}O\,(T_1) \arrow[r] & \cdot\dot{C}H_2 + CO
\end{tikzcd}$$

Category 3. *Intramolecular rearrangement.* When *o*-nitrobenzaldehydes are irradiated, *o*-nitrosobenzoic acids are products:[40]



It is possible that this is not a one-step process but a cleavage from the NO_2 group of an oxygen which then combines with the CHO group.

Category 4. *Photoisomerization.* The most common reaction in this category is photochemical cis–trans isomerization.[41] For example, *cis*-stilbene can be converted to the trans isomer:



The isomerization takes place because the excited states, both S_1 and T_1, of many olefins have a perpendicular instead of a planar geometry (p. 207), so that cis–trans isomerism disappears upon excitation. When the excited molecule drops back to the S_0 state, either isomer can be formed. A useful example is the photochemical conversion of *cis*-cyclooctene to the much less stable trans isomer.[42] Another interesting example of this isomerization involves azo crown ethers. The crown ether **1**, in which the N═N bond is anti, preferentially binds NH_4^+, Li^+, and Na^+, but the syn isomer preferentially binds K^+ and Rb^+ (see p. 78). Thus, ions can be selectively put in or taken out of solution merely by turning a light source on or off.[43]

---

[38] Wagner and Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4009 (1965); Dougherty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4011 (1965); Ausloos and Rebbert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4512 (1964); Casey and Boggs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6457 (1972).

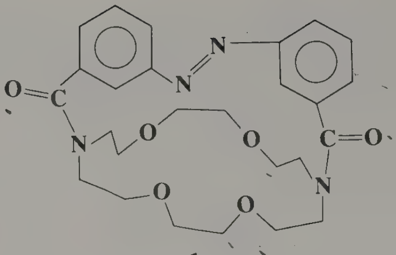
[39] For a review of the photochemistry of carboxylic acids and acid derivatives, see Givens and Levi, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Acid Derivatives," pt. 1, pp. 641–753, Wiley, New York, 1979.

[40] For a review of this and closely related reactions, see Morrison, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," pt. 1, pp. 165–213, 185–191, Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1969. For a review of photochemical rearrangements of benzene derivatives, see Kaupp, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 243–275 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 245–276].

[41] For reviews of cis–trans isomerizations, see Sonnet, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 557–604 (1980); Schulte-Frohlinde and Görner, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **51,** 279–297 (1979); Saltiel and Charlton, in de Mayo, Ref. 35, pp. 25–89; Saltiel and Charlton, in Patai, Ref. 39, pp. 25–89; Saltiel, Chang, Megarity, Rousseau, Shannon, Thomas, and Uriarte, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **41,** 559–579 (1975); Saltiel, D'Agostino, Megarity, Metts, Neuberger, Wrighton, and Zafiriou, *Org. Photochem.* **3,** 1–113 (1973); Saltiel, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **2,** 239–328 (1964), pp. 254–264. For reviews of the photochemistry of alkenes, see Mattes and Farid, *Org. Photochem.* **6,** 233–326 (1984); Kropp, *Org. Photochem.* **4,** 1–142 (1979); Morrison, *Org. Photochem.* **4,** 143–190 (1979); Kaupp, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 150–168 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 161–179].

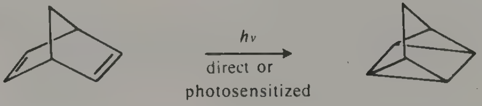
[42] Deyrup and Betkouski, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3561 (1972).

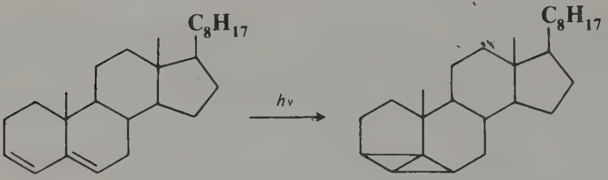
[43] Shinkai, Nakaji, Nishida, Ogawa, and Manabe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5860 (1980). See also Shinkai, Kouno, Kusano, and Manabe, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2741 (1982); Shinkai, Honda, Minami, Ueda, Manabe, and Tashiro, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 1700 (1983). For a review, see Shinkai and Manabe, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **121,** 67–104 (1984).



1

Two other examples of category 4 reactions are[44]

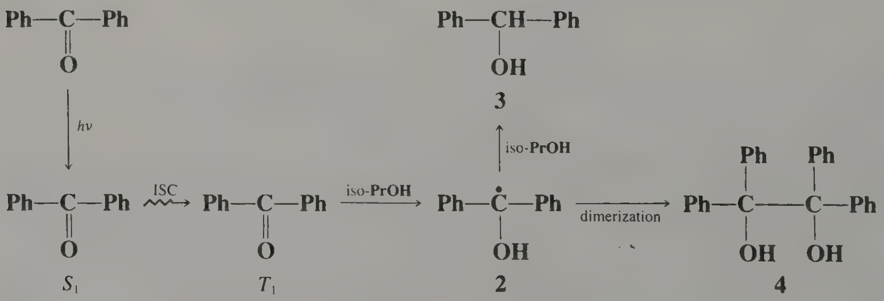

hν
direct or
photosensitized


C_8H_{17}
hν
C_8H_{17}

Cholesta-3, 5-diene

These examples illustrate that the use of photochemical reactions can make it very easy to obtain compounds that would be difficult to get in other ways. Reactions similar to these are discussed at **5-48.**

Category 5. *Hydrogen atom abstraction.* When benzophenone is irradiated in isopropyl alcohol, the initially formed S_1 state crosses to the T_1 state, which abstracts hydrogen from the solvent to give the ketyl radical **2. 2** then abstracts another hydrogen to give benzhydrol (**3**) or dimerizes to benzpinacol (**4**):

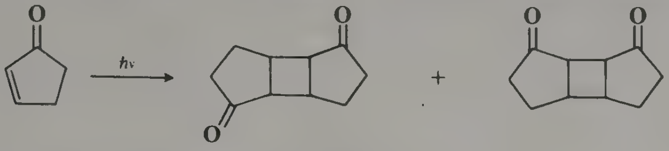

Ph—C—Ph
O
hν
Ph—CH—Ph
OH
3
iso-PrOH
Ph—C—Ph
O
S_1
ISC
Ph—C—Ph
O
T_1
iso-PrOH
Ph—C—Ph
OH
2
dimerization
Ph Ph
Ph—C——C—Ph
OH OH
4

An example of intramolecular abstraction has already been given (p. 214).

---

[44] Hammond, Turro, and Fischer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4674 (1961); Dauben and Cargill, *Tetrahedron* **15,** 197 (1961); Dauben and Willey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 893 (1962); Dauben and Wipke, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 539 (1964).

Category 6. *Photodimerization.* An example is dimerization of cyclopentenone:[45]



See p. 764 for a discussion of this and similar reactions.

The Determination of Photochemical Mechanisms[46]

Ideally, if one is to know a photochemical mechanism, one should know the states of all the molecules in the reaction and the energies and lifetimes of these states and all the side reactions that take place. In practice we usually know these things very imperfectly. ". . . to establish the exact fate of all the light-absorbing molecules and of all the free radicals formed in a photochemical system is an analytical task which to date has been nearly impossible to perform. . . ."[47] The methods used for the determination of photochemical mechanisms are largely the same as those used for organic mechanisms in general (Chapter 6): product identification, isotopic tracing, the detection and trapping of intermediates, and kinetics. There are, however, a few new factors: (1) there are generally many products in a photochemical reaction, as many as 10 or 15; (2) in measuring kinetics, there are more variables, since we can study the effect on the rate of the intensity or the wavelength of light; (3) in the detection of intermediates by spectra we can use the technique of *flash photolysis,* which can detect extremely short-lived intermediates.

In addition to these methods, there are two additional techniques.

1. The use of emission (fluorescence and phosphorescence) as well as absorption spectroscopy. From these spectra the presence of as well as the energy and lifetimes of singlet and triplet excited states can often be calculated.

2. The study of quantum yields. The *quantum yield* is the fraction of absorbed light that goes to produce a particular result. There are several types. A *primary quantum yield* (usually designated φ) for a particular process is the fraction of molecules absorbing light that undergo that particular process. Thus, if 10% of all the molecules that are excited to the S_1 state cross over to the T_1 state, the primary quantum yield for that process is 0.10. However, primary quantum yields are often difficult to measure. A *product quantum yield* Φ for a product P that is formed from a photoreaction of an initially excited molecule A may be expressed as

$$\Phi = \frac{\text{number of molecules of } \mathbf{P} \text{ formed}}{\text{number of quanta absorbed by } \mathbf{A}}$$

Product quantum yields are much easier to measure. The number of quanta absorbed can be determined by an instrument called an *actinometer,* which is actually a standard photochemical system whose quantum yield is known. An example of the information that can be learned from quantum yields is the following. If the quantum yield of a product is finite and invariant with changes in experimental conditions, it is likely that the product is formed in a primary rate-determining process. Another example: in some reactions, the product quantum yields are found to be well over 1 (perhaps as high as 1000). Such a finding indicates a chain reaction (see p. 609 for a discussion of chain reactions).

---

[45] Eaton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2344, 2454 (1962), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 50 (1968).

[46] For a review, see Calvert and Pitts, Ref. 1, pp. 580–670.

[47] Calvert and Pitts, Ref. 1, p. 581.

8

ACIDS AND BASES

Two acid–base theories are used in organic chemistry today—the Brönsted theory and the Lewis theory.[1] These theories are quite compatible and are used for different purposes.[2]

Brönsted Theory

According to this theory, an acid is defined as a *proton donor* and a base as a *proton acceptor* (a base must have a pair of electrons available to share with the proton; this is usually present as an unshared pair, but sometimes is in a π orbital). An acid–base reaction is simply the transfer of a proton from an acid to a base. (Protons do not exist free in solution but must be attached to an electron pair.) When the acid gives up a proton, the species remaining still retains the electron pair to which the proton was formerly attached. Thus the new species, in theory at least, can reacquire a proton and is therefore a base. It is referred to as the *conjugate base* of the acid. All acids have a conjugate base, and all bases have a *conjugate acid*. All acid–base reactions fit the equation

$$\underset{\text{Acid}_1}{\mathbf{A{-}H}} + \underset{\text{Base}_2}{\overline{\mathbf{B}}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Base}_1}{\overline{\mathbf{A}}} + \underset{\text{Acid}_2}{\mathbf{B{-}H}}$$

No charges are shown in this equation, but an acid always has a charge that is one positive unit higher than that of its conjugate base, whether the charge on the acid is positive, negative, or neutral. Many substances can be both bases and acids. Such species are called *amphoteric*.

Acid strength may be defined as the tendency to give up a proton and *base strength* as the tendency to accept a proton. Acid–base reactions occur because acids are not equally strong. If an acid, say HCl, is placed in contact with the conjugate base of a weaker acid, say acetate ion, the proton will be transferred because the HCl has a greater tendency to lose its proton than acetic acid. That is, the equilibrium

$$\mathbf{HCl + CH_3COO^- \rightleftharpoons CH_3COOH + Cl^-}$$

lies well over to the right. On the other hand, treatment of acetic acid with chloride ion gives essentially no reaction, since the weaker acid already has the proton.

This is always the case for any two acids, and by measuring the positions of the equilibrium the relative strengths of acids and bases can be determined.[3] Of course, if the two acids involved are close to each other in strength, a measurable reaction will occur from both sides, although the position of equilibrium will still be over to the side of the weaker acid (unless the acidities are equal within experimental limits). In this manner it is possible to construct a table in which acids are listed in order of acid strength (Table 1).[4] Next to each acid in Table 1 is shown its conjugate base. It is obvious that if the acids in such a table are listed in *decreasing* order of acid strength, the bases must be listed in *increasing* order of base strength, since the stronger the acid, the weaker must be its conjugate base. The pK_a values in Table 1 are most accurate in the middle of the table. They are much harder to measure[5] for very strong and very weak acids, and these values must be regarded as approximate. Qualitatively, it can be determined that $HClO_4$ is a stronger acid than H_2SO_4, since a mixture of $HClO_4$ and H_2SO_4 in methyl isobutyl ketone can be titrated to an $HClO_4$ end point without interference by H_2SO_4.[6] Similarly, $HClO_4$ can be shown to be stronger than HNO_3 or HCl. However, this is not quantitative, and the value of -10 in the table is not much more than an educated guess. The values for RNO_2H^+, $ArNO_2H^+$, HI, $RCNH^+$, and RSH_2^+ must also be regarded as highly speculative.[7] A wide variety of pK_a values has been reported for the conjugate acids of even such simple bases as acetone (-0.24 to -7.2), diethyl ether (-0.30 to -6.2), ethanol (-0.33 to -4.8), methanol (-0.34 to -4.9), and 2-propanol (-0.35 to -5.2), depending on the method used to measure them.[8] Very accurate values can be obtained only for acids weaker than hydronium ion and stronger than water.

---

[1] For monographs on acids and bases, see Bell, "The Proton in Chemistry," 2d ed., Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1973; Finston and Rychtman, "A New View of Current Acid–Base Theories," Wiley, New York, 1982. For a review, see Gillespie, in Olah, "Friedel–Crafts and Related Reactions," vol. 1, pp. 169–199, Interscience, New York, 1963.

[2] For discussion of the historical development of acid–base theory, see Bell, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **1,** 113–125 (1947); Bell, "The Proton in Chemistry," 1st ed., pp. 7–17, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1959.

[3] Although equilibrium is reached in most acid–base reactions extremely rapidly (the rates of proton transfer between singly bonded oxygen and/or nitrogen atoms are usually diffusion-controlled), some are slow (especially those in which the proton is given up by a carbon) and in these cases time must be allowed for the system to come to equilibrium.

The bottom portion of Table 1 consists of very weak acids[9] (pK_a above ~ 17). In most of these acids, the proton is lost from a carbon atom, and such acids are known as *carbon acids*. pK_a values for such weak acids are often difficult to measure and are known only approximately. The methods used to determine the relative positions of these acids are discussed in Chapter 5.[10] The acidity of carbon acids is proportional to the stability of the carbanions that are their conjugate bases (see p. 151).

The extremely strong acids at the top of the table are known as *super acids* (see p. 142). The actual species present in the FSO_3H—SbF_5 mixture are probably $H[SbF_5(SO_3F)]$ and $H[SbF_2(SO_3F)_4]$.[11] The addition of SO_3 causes formation of the still stronger $H[SbF_4(SO_3F)_2]$, $H[SbF_3(SO_3F)_3]$, and $H[(SbF_5)_2(SO_3F)]$.[11]

By the use of tables such as Table 1, it is possible to determine whether a given acid will react with a given base. For tables in which acids are listed in order of decreasing strength, the rule is that *any acid will react with any base in the table that is below it but not with any above it*.[12] It must be emphasized that the order of acid strength in Table 1 applies when a given acid and base

---

[4] Table 1 is a thermodynamic acidity scale and applies only to positions of equilibria. For the distinction between thermodynamic and kinetic acidity, see p. 152.

[5] For a review of methods of determining pK_a values, see Cookson, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 5–28 (1974).

[6] Kolthoff and Bruckenstein, in Kolthoff and Elving, "Treatise on Analytical Chemistry," vol. 1, pt. 1, pp. 475–542, 479, Interscience, New York, 1959.

[7] For reviews of organic compounds protonated at O, N, or S, see Olah, White, and O'Brien, *Chem. Rev.* **70,** 561–591 (1970); Olah, White, and O'Brien, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 4, pp. 1697–1781, Wiley, New York, 1973.

[8] Rochester, "Acidity Functions," Academic Press, New York, 1970. For a discussion of the basicity of such compounds, see Liler, "Reaction Mechanisms in Sulfuric Acid," pp. 118–139, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[9] For a monograph on very weak acids, see Reutov, Beletskaya, and Butin, "CH-Acids," Pergamon, New York, 1978. For other discussions, see Cram, "Fundamentals of Carbanion Chemistry," pp. 1–45, Academic Press, New York, 1965; Streitwieser and Hammons, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **3,** 41–80 (1965).

[10] For reviews of methods used to measure the acidity of carbon acids, see Jones, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **25,** 365–378 (1971); Fischer and Rewicki, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **7,** 116–161 (1968); Reutov, Beletskaya, and Butin, Ref. 9, Chapter 1 [an earlier version of this chapter appeared in *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 17–31 (1974)]; Ref. 5. For reviews on acidities of carbon acids, see, in Buncel and Durst, "Comprehensive Carbanion Chemistry," pt. A, Elsevier, New York, 1980, the reviews by Pellerite and Brauman, p. 55–96 (gas phase acidities); and Streitwieser, Juaristi, and Nebenzahl, pp. 323–381.

[11] Gillespie, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 202–209 (1968).

[12] These reactions are equilibria. What the rule actually says is that the position of equilibrium will be such that the weaker acid predominates. However, this needs to be taken into account only when the acid and base are close to each other in the table (within about 2 pK units).

TABLE 1 pK_a values for many types of acids

The values in boldface are exact values; the others are approximate, especially above 18 and below −2[13]

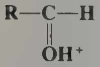
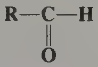
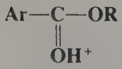
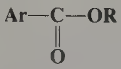
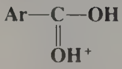
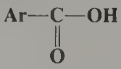
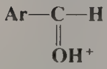
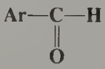
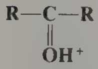
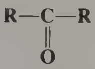
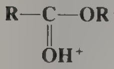
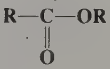
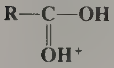
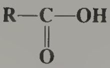
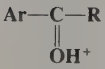
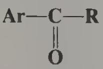
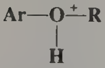
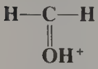
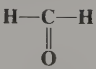
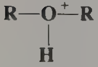
Acid	Base	Approximate pK_a (relative to water)	Ref.
Super acids:			
$HF{-}SbF_5$	SbF_6^-		18
$FSO_3H{-}SbF_5{-}SO_3$			11
$FSO_3H{-}SbF_5$			11, 18
FSO_3H	FSO_3^-		11
RNO_2H^+	RNO_2	−12	19
$ArNO_2H^+$	$ArNO_2$	−11	19
$HClO_4$	ClO_4^-	−10	20
HI	I^-	−10	20
$RCNH^+$	RCN	−10	21
 $R-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-H$	 $R-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-H$	−10	22
H_2SO_4	HSO_4^-		
HBr	Br^-	−9	20
 $Ar-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OR$[16]	 $Ar-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OR$	−7.4	19
HCl	Cl^-	−7	20
RSH_2^+	RSH	−7	19
 $Ar-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OH$[16]	 $Ar-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OH$	−7	24
 $Ar-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-H$	 $Ar-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-H$	−7	25
 $R-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-R$	 $R-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-R$	−7	21, 26
$ArSO_3H$	$ArSO_3^-$	−6.5	27
 $R-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OR$[16]	 $R-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OR$	−6.5	19
$ArOH_2^+$	ArOH	−6.4	23
 $R-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OH$[16]	 $R-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-OH$	−6	19
 $Ar-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-R$	 $Ar-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-R$	−6	25, 28
 $Ar-\underset{H}{\underset{\vert}{\overset{+}{O}}}-R$	Ar—O—R	−6	23, 29
$CH(CN)_3$	$^-C(CN)_3$	−5	30
Ar_3NH^+	Ar_3N	−5	31
 $H-\underset{OH^+}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-H$	 $H-\underset{O}{\underset{\Vert}{C}}-H$	−4	32
 $R-\underset{H}{\underset{\vert}{\overset{+}{O}}}-R$	R—O—R	−3.5	14, 21, 29
$R_3COH_2^+$	R_3COH	−2	14
$R_2CHOH_2^+$	R_2CHOH	−2	14
$RCH_2OH_2^+$	RCH_2OH	−2	14, 15, 21

TABLE 1 pK_a values for many types of acids (*Continued*)

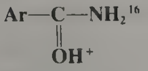
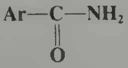
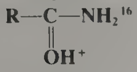
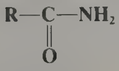
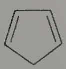
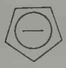
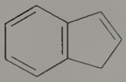
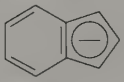
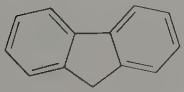
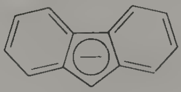
Acid	Base	Approximate pK_a (relative to water)	Ref.
H_3O^+	H_2O	**−1.74**	
 $Ar{-}\underset{\underset{OH^+}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2$[16]	 $Ar{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2$	−1.5	35
HNO_3	NO_3^-	−1.4	20
 $R{-}\underset{\underset{OH^+}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2$[16]	 $R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2$	−0.5	35
$Ar_2NH_2^+$	Ar_2NH	1	31
HSO_4^-	SO_4^{2-}	**1.99**	36
HF	F^-	**3.17**	36
HONO	NO_2^-	**3.29**	36
$ArNH_3^+$	$ArNH_2$	3–5	37
$ArNR_2H^+$	$ArNR_2$	3–5	37
RCOOH	$RCOO^-$	4–5	37
$HCOCH_2CHO$	$HCO\overset{\ominus}{C}HCHO$	5	38
H_2CO_3[17]	HCO_3^-	**6.35**	36
H_2S	HS^-	**7.00**	36
ArSH	ArS^-	6–8	39
$CH_3COCH_2COCH_3$	$CH_3CO\overset{\ominus}{C}HCOCH_3$	9	38
NH_4^+	NH_3	**9.24**	36
ArOH	ArO^-	8–11	40
RCH_2NO_2	$R\overset{\ominus}{C}HNO_2$	10	41
R_3NH^+	R_3N	10–11	37
RNH_3^+	RNH_2	10–11	37
HCO_3^-	CO_3^{2-}	**10.33**	36
RSH	RS^-	10–11	39
$R_2NH_2^+$	R_2NH	11	37
$NCCH_2CN$	$NC\overset{\ominus}{C}HCN$	11	38, 42
CH_3COCH_2COOR	$CH_3CO\overset{\ominus}{C}HCOOR$	11	38
$CH_3SO_2CH_2SO_2CH_3$	$CH_3SO_2\overset{\ominus}{C}HSO_2CH_3$	12.5	43
$EtOOCCH_2COOEt$	$EtOOC\overset{\ominus}{C}HCOOEt$	13	38
CH_3OH	CH_3O^-	15.2	47, 48
H_2O	OH^-	**15.74**	44
		16	45
RCH_2OH	RCH_2O^-	16	47
R_2CHOH	R_2CHO^-	16.5	47
R_3COH	R_3CO^-	17	47
$RCONH_2$	$RCONH^-$	17	46
$RCOCH_2R$	$RCO\overset{\ominus}{C}HR$	19–20	34, 49
		20	50, 51
		23	50,51

TABLE 1 pK_a values for many types of acids (*Continued*)

Acid	Base	Approximate pK_a (relative to water)	Ref.
ROOCCH_2R	$\text{ROOC}\overset{\ominus}{\text{C}}\text{HR}$	24.5	38
RCH_2CN	$\text{R}\overset{\ominus}{\text{C}}\text{HCN}$	25	38
$\text{HC}{\equiv}\text{CH}$	$\text{HC}{\equiv}\text{C}^-$	25	52
Ar_3CH	Ar_3C^-	31.5	50, 53
Ar_2CH_2	Ar_2CH^-	33.5	50, 53
H_2	H^-	35	54
NH_3	NH_2^-	38	55
PhCH_3	PhCH_2^-	41	56
$\text{CH}_2{=}\text{CHCH}_3$	$[\text{CH}_2{=\!=}\text{CH}{=\!=}\text{CH}_2]^-$	43	57
PhH	Ph^-	43	58
$\text{CH}_2{=}\text{CH}_2$	$\text{CH}_2{=}\text{CH}^-$	44	59
cyclo-C_3H_6	cyclo-C_3H_5^-	46	60
CH_4	CH_3^-	48	61
C_2H_6	C_2H_5^-	50	62
$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2$	$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}^-$	51	62
$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{CH}$	$(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{C}^-$	—	33

[13] In this table it has not been possible to give pK_a values for individual compounds (with a few exceptions), only average values for functional groups. Extensive tables of pK values for many carboxylic and other acids and amines are given in Ref. 37. Values for more than 5500 organic acids are given in Serjeant and Dempsey, "Ionisation Constants of Organic Acids in Aqueous Solution," Pergamon, New York, 1979; Kortüm, Vogel, and Andrussow, "Dissociation Constants of Organic Acids in Aqueous Solution," Butterworth, London, 1961. The index in the 1979 volume covers both volumes. Kortüm, Vogel, and Andrussow, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **1,** 190–536 (1960) give values for 631 carboxylic acids and 110 phenols. Ref. 19 gives hundreds of values for very strong acids (very weak bases). Perrin, "Dissociation Constants of Organic Bases in Aqueous Solution," Butterworth, London, 1965, and Supplement, 1972 list pK values for more than 7000 amines and other bases. Collumeau, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 5087–5112 (1968) gives pK values for about 800 acids and bases. Bordwell, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 963–968 (1977) gives values for about 50 weak acids (pK_a below ~7) in dimethyl sulfoxide. For inorganic acids and bases, see Perrin, "Ionisation Constants of Inorganic Acids and Bases in Aqueous Solution," 2d ed., Pergamon, New York, 1982; Perrin, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **20,** 133–236 (1969).

[14] Deno and Turner, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1969 (1966).

[15] Lee and Cameron, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4724 (1971).

[16] Acids, esters, and amides are shown in this table to be protonated on the carbonyl oxygen. There has been some controversy on this point, but the weight of evidence today is in that direction. See, for example, Katritzky and Jones, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 722 (1961); Ottenheym, van Raayen, Smidt, Groenewege, and Veerkamp, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **80,** 1211 (1961); Stewart and Muenster, *Can. J. Chem.* **39,** 401 (1961); Smith and Yates, *Can. J. Chem.* **50,** 771 (1972); Benedetti, Di Blasio, and Baine, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 500 (1980); Ref. 7; Homer and Johnson, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Amides," pp. 188–197, Interscience, New York, 1970. For a review of alternative proton sites, see Liler, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 267–392 (1975).

[17] This value includes the CO_2 usually present. The value for H_2CO_3 alone is 3.9 (Ref. 20).

[18] Brouwer and van Doorn, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **91,** 895 (1972); Gold, Laali, Morris, and Zdunek, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 769 (1981); Sommer, Canivet, Schwartz, and Rimmelin, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **5,** 45 (1981).

[19] Arnett, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1,** 223–403 (1963), pp. 324–325.

[20] Bell, Ref. 1.

[21] Deno and Wisotsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1735 (1963); Deno, Gaugler, and Wisotsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1967 (1966).

[22] Levy, Cargioli, and Racela, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6238 (1970). See, however, Brouwer and van Doorn, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **90,** 1010 (1971).

[23] Arnett and Wu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5660 (1960); Koeberg-Telder, Lambrechts, and Cerfontain, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 293 (1983).

[24] Stewart and Granger, *Can. J. Chem.* **39,** 2508 (1961).

[25] Yates and Stewart, *Can. J. Chem.* **37,** 664 (1959); Stewart and Yates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6355 (1958).

[26] Lee, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 1919 (1970).

[27] Cerfontain, Koeberg-Telder, and Kruk, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3639 (1975).

[28] Fischer, Grigor, Packer, and Vaughan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4208 (1961).

[29] Arnett and Wu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4999 (1960).

[30] Boyd, *J. Phys. Chem.* **67,** 737 (1963).

[31] Arnett, Quirk, and Burke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1260 (1970).

[32] McTigue and Sime, *Aust. J. Chem.* **16,** 592 (1963).

react without a solvent or, when possible, in water. In other solvents the order may be greatly different (see p. 236). In the gas phase, where solvation effects are completely or almost completely absent, acidity orders may also differ greatly. For example, in the gas phase, toluene is a stronger acid than water and *t*-butoxide ion is a weaker base than methoxide ion[63] (see also pp. 234–236). It is also possible for the acidity order to change with temperature. For example, above 50°C the order of base strength is BuOH $>$ H_2O $>$ Bu_2O; from 1 to 50°C the order is BuOH $>$ Bu_2O $>$ H_2O; while below 1°C the order becomes Bu_2O $>$ BuOH $>$ H_2O.[64]

Measurements of Solvent Acidity[65]

When a solute is added to an acidic solvent it may become protonated by the solvent. If the solvent is water and the concentration of solute is not very great, then the pH of the solution is a good

---

[33] Breslow and co-workers report a value of 71 [Breslow and Goodin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6076 (1976); Breslow and Grant, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7745 (1977)], but this was obtained by a different method, and is not comparable to the other values in Table 1. A more comparable value is about 53. See also Jaun, Schwarz, and Breslow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5741 (1980).

[34] Tapuhi and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5758 (1982).

[35] Cox, Druet, Klausner, Modro, Wan, and Yates, *Can. J. Chem.* **59,** 1568 (1981); Grant, McTigue, and Ward, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 2211 (1983).

[36] Bruckenstein and Kolthoff, in Kolthoff and Elving, "Treatise on Analytical Chemistry," vol. 1, pt. 1, pp. 432–433, Interscience, New York, 1959.

[37] Brown, McDaniel, and Häflinger, in Braude and Nachod, "Determination of Organic Structures by Physical Methods," vol. 1, pp. 567–662, Academic Press, New York, 1955.

[38] Pearson and Dillon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2439 (1953).

[39] Crampton, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 1, pp. 396–410, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[40] Rochester, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 1, p. 374, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[41] Cram, *Chem. Eng. News* **41**(33), 94 (Aug. 19, 1963).

[42] Bowden and Stewart, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 261 (1965).

[43] Hine, Philips, and Maxwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3943 (1970). See also Ang and Lee, *Aust. J. Chem.* **30,** 521 (1977).

[44] Harned and Robinson, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **36,** 973 (1940).

[45] Streitwieser and Nebenzahl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2188 (1976).

[46] Homer and Johnson, Ref. 16, pp. 238–240.

[47] Reeve, Erikson, and Aluotto, *Can. J. Chem.* **57,** 2747 (1979).

[48] See also Mackay and Bohme, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 327 (1978); Olmstead, Margolin, and Bordwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3295 (1980).

[49] Guthrie, Cossar, and Klym, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1351 (1984).

[50] Streitwieser, Ciuffarin, and Hammons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 63 (1967).

[51] Streitwieser, Hollyhead, Pudjaatmaka, Owens, Kruger, Rubenstein, MacQuarrie, Brokaw, Chu, and Niemeyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5088 (1971).

[52] Cram, Ref. 9, p. 19. See also Dessy, Kitching, Psarras, Salinger, Chen, and Chivers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 460 (1966).

[53] Streitwieser, Hollyhead, Sonnichsen, Pudjaatmaka, Chang, and Kruger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5096 (1971).

[54] Buncel and Menon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4457 (1977).

[55] Buncel and Menon, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **141,** 1 (1977).

[56] Streitwieser, Granger, Mares, and Wolf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4257 (1973); Streitwieser and Guibé, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4532 (1978); Algrim, Bares, Branca, and Bordwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 5024 (1978).

[57] Boerth and Streitwieser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 6443 (1981).

[58] Streitwieser, Scannon, and Niemeyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7936 (1972).

[59] Maskornick and Streitwieser, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1625 (1972); Streitwieser and Boerth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 755 (1978).

[60] This value is calculated from results given in Streitwiesser, Caldwell, and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 529 (1969).

[61] This value is calculated from results given in Streitwieser and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc. D* 1248 (1970).

[62] These values are based on those given in Ref. 41 but are corrected to the newer scale of Streitwieser; Refs. 56, 58, 59.

[63] Brauman and Blair, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5986 (1970); Bohme, Lee-Ruff, and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4608, 5153 (1972).

[64] Gerrard and Macklen, *Chem. Rev.* **59,** 1105–1123 (1959). For other examples, see Calder and Barton, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 338 (1971); Hambly, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **15,** 87–100 (1965), p. 88.

[65] For fuller treatments, see Hammett, "Physical Organic Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 263–313, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1970; Jones, "Physical and Mechanistic Organic Chemistry," 2nd ed., pp. 83–93, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1984; Arnett and Scorrano, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **13,** 83–153 (1976); Ref. 6, pp. 485–499; Deno, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **2,** 155–187 (1964), pp. 169–178; Arnett, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1,** 223–403 (1963), pp. 233–258.

measure of the proton-donating ability of the solvent. Unfortunately, this is no longer true in concentrated solutions because activity coefficients are no longer unity. A measurement of solvent acidity is needed which works in concentrated solutions and applies to mixed solvents as well. The Hammett acidity function[66] is a measurement that is used for acidic solvents of high dielectric constant.[67] For any solvent, including mixtures of solvents (but the proportions of the mixture must be specified), a value H_0 is defined as

$$H_0 = \mathrm{p}K_{\mathrm{BH}_w^+} - \log \frac{[\mathrm{BH}^+]}{[\mathrm{B}]}$$

H_0 is measured by using "indicators" that are weak bases (B) and so are partly converted, in these acidic solvents, to the conjugate acids BH^+. Typical indicators are *o*-nitroanilinium ion, with a pK in water of -0.29, and 2,4-dinitroanilinium ion, with a pK in water of -4.53. For a given solvent, $[\mathrm{BH}^+]/[\mathrm{B}]$ is measured for one indicator, usually by spectrophotometric means. Then, using the known pK in water ($\mathrm{p}K_{\mathrm{BH}_w^+}$) for that indicator, H_0 can be calculated for that solvent system. In practice, several indicators are used, so that an average H_0 is taken. Once H_0 is known for a given solvent system, pK_a values in it can be calculated for any other acid–base pair.

The symbol h_0 is defined as

$$h_0 = \frac{a_{\mathrm{H}^+}\, f_{\mathrm{I}}}{f_{\mathrm{HI}^+}}$$

where a_{H^+} is the activity of the proton and f_{I} and f_{HI^+} are the activity coefficients of the indicator and conjugate acid of the indicator,[68] respectively. H_0 is related to h_0 by

$$H_0 = -\log h_0$$

so that H_0 is analogous to pH and h_0 to $[\mathrm{H}^+]$, and indeed in dilute aqueous solution H_0 = pH.

H_0 reflects the ability of the solvent system to donate protons, but it can be applied only to acidic solutions of high dielectric constant, mostly mixtures of water with acids like nitric, sulfuric, perchloric, etc. It is apparent that the H_0 treatment is valid only when $f_{\mathrm{I}}/f_{\mathrm{HI}^+}$ is independent of the nature of the base (the indicator). Since this is so only when the bases are structurally similar, the treatment is limited. Even when similar bases are compared, many deviations are found.[69] Other acidity scales[69a] have been set up, among them H_- for bases with a charge of -1, H_{R} for aryl carbinols,[70] $H_{\mathrm{R}'}$ for aryl olefins and other molecules whose conjugate acids are stable carbocations that do not form hydrogen bonds with the solvent,[71] H_{C} for bases that protonate on carbon,[72] H_{E}

[66] Hammett and Deyrup, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **54,** 2721 (1932).

[67] For a monograph on acidity functions, see Rochester, Ref. 8. For reviews, see Ref. 65; Cox and Yates, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 2225–2243 (1983); Boyd, in Coetzee and Ritchie, "Solute–Solvent Interactions," pp. 97–218, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Vinnik, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 802–817 (1966); Liler, Ref. 8, pp. 26–58.

[68] For a review of activity coefficient behavior of indicators in acid solutions, see Yates and McClelland, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 323–420 (1974).

[69] For example, see Kresge, Barry, Charles, and Chiang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4343 (1962); Katritzky, Waring, and Yates, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 465 (1963); Arnett and Mach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2671 (1964); Jorgenson and Hartter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 878 (1963); Kreevoy and Baughman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8178 (1973); Ref. 31. Also see the discussion in Arnett, Ref. 65, pp. 236–242.

[69a] For lengthy tables of many acidity scales with references, see Cox and Yates, Ref. 67. For an equation that is said to combine the vast majority of acidity functions, see Zalewski, Sarkice, and Geltz, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1059 (1983).

[70] Deno, Jaruzelski, and Schriescheim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3044 (1955); Deno, Berkheimer, Evans, and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2344 (1959).

[71] Deno, Groves, and Saines, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5790 (1959); Deno, Groves, Jaruzelski, and Lugasch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4719 (1960).

[72] Reagan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5506 (1969).

for aliphatic esters,[73] and H_A for unsubstituted amides.[74] It is now clear that there is no single acidity scale that can be applied to a series of solvent mixtures, irrespective of the bases employed.[75]

Although most acidity functions have been applied only to acidic solutions, some work has also been done with strongly basic solutions. The H_- function, which is used for highly acidic solutions when the base has a charge of -1, can also be used for strongly basic solvents, in which case it measures the ability of these solvents to abstract a proton from a neutral acid BH.[76]

Another approach to the acidity function problem was proposed by Bunnett and Olsen,[77] who derived the equation

$$\log \frac{[\mathbf{SH}]^+}{[\mathbf{S}]} + H_0 = \phi(H_0 + \log [\mathbf{H}^+]) + \mathrm{p}K_{\mathrm{SH}^+}$$

where S is a base that is protonated by an acidic solvent. Thus the slope of a plot of log ([SH$^+$]/[S]) + H_0 against H_0 + log [H$^+$] is the parameter ϕ, while the intercept is the pK_a of the acid SH$^+$ (referred to infinite dilution in water). The value of ϕ expresses the response of the equilibrium $\mathrm{S} + \mathrm{H}^+ \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{SH}^+$ to changing acid concentration. A negative ϕ indicates that the log of the ionization ratio [SH$^+$]/[S] increases, as the acid concentration increases, more rapidly than $-H_0$. A positive ϕ value indicates the reverse. The Bunnett–Olsen equation given above is a linear free-energy relationship (see p. 245) that pertains to acid–base equilibria. A corresponding equation which applies to kinetic data is

$$\log k_\psi + H_0 = \phi(H_0 + \log [\mathbf{H}^+]) + \log k_2^\circ$$

where k_ψ is the pseudo-first-order rate constant for a reaction of a weakly basic substrate taking place in an acidic solution and k_2° is the second-order rate constant at infinite dilution in water. In this case ϕ characterizes the response of the reaction rate to changing acid concentration of the solvent. The Bunnett–Olsen treatment has also been applied to basic media, where, in a group of nine reactions in concentrated NaOMe solutions, no correlation was found between reaction rates and either H_- or stoichiometric base concentration but where the rates were successfully correlated by a linear free-energy equation similar to those given above.[78]

Another type of classification system was devised by Bunnett[79] for reactions occurring in moderately concentrated acid solutions. log k_ψ + H_0 is plotted against log $a_{\mathrm{H_2O}}$, where k_ψ is the pseudo-first-order rate constant for the protonated species and $a_{\mathrm{H_2O}}$ is the activity of water. Most such plots are linear or nearly so. According to Bunnett, the slope of this plot w tells something about the mechanism. Where w is between -2.5 and 0, water is not involved in the rate-determining step; where w is between 1.2 and 3.3, water is a nucleophile in the rate-determining step; where w is between 3.3 and 7, water is a proton-transfer agent. These rules hold for acids in which the proton is attached to oxygen or nitrogen.[80]

---

[73] Lee and Sadar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2862 (1974).

[74] Yates, Stevens, and Katritzky, *Can. J. Chem.* **42,** 1957 (1964); Yates and Riordan, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 2328 (1965); Edward and Wong, *Can. J. Chem.* **55,** 2492 (1977); Liler and Marković, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 551 (1982).

[75] Hammett, Ref. 65, p. 278; Rochester, Ref. 8, p. 21.

[76] For reviews, see Rochester, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **20,** 511–525 (1966); Rochester, Ref. 8, pp. 234–264; Bowden, *Chem. Rev.* **66,** 119–131 (1966) (the last review is reprinted in Coetzee and Ritchie, Ref. 67, pp. 186–215).

[77] Bunnett and Olsen, *Can. J. Chem.* **44,** 1899, 1917 (1966); Bunnett, McDonald, and Olsen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2855 (1974); Lucchini, Modena, Scorrano, Cox, and Yates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1958 (1982).

[78] More O'Ferrall, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 976 (1972).

[79] Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4956, 4968, 4973, 4978 (1961).

[80] The Bunnett w treatment has been criticized by Long and Bakule, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2313 (1963).

Acid and Base Catalysis[81]

The old idea that a catalyst is something which merely increases the rate of a reaction which would proceed without the catalyst, only more slowly, has been found to be invalid for most reactions that are acid- or base-catalyzed. In these cases there is no reaction at all without at least some catalyst. Older workers were deceived because often only a trace of catalyst is necessary. The catalyst is involved in a fundamental way in the mechanism. Nearly always the first step of such a reaction is a proton transfer between the catalyst and the substrate.

Reactions may be catalyzed by acid or base in two different ways, called *general* and *specific catalysis*. If the rate of an acid-catalyzed reaction run in a solvent S is proportional to $[SH^+]$, the reaction is said to be subject to *specific acid catalysis*, the acid being SH^+. The acid that is put into the solvent may be stronger or weaker than SH^+, but the rate is proportional only to the $[SH^+]$ that is actually present in the solution (derived from $S + HA \rightleftharpoons SH^+ + A^-$). The identity of HA makes no difference except insofar as it determines the position of equilibrium and hence the $[SH^+]$. Most measurements have been made in water, where SH^+ is H_3O^+.

In *general acid catalysis*, the rate is increased not only by an increase in $[SH^+]$ but also by an increase in the concentration of other acids (e.g., in water by phenols or carboxylic acids). These other acids increase the rate even when $[SH^+]$ is held constant. In this type of catalysis the strongest acids catalyze best, so that, in the example given, an increase in the phenol concentration catalyzes the reaction much less than a similar increase in $[H_3O^+]$. This relationship between acid strength of the catalyst and its catalytic ability may be expressed by the *Brönsted catalysis equation*[82]

$$\log k = \alpha \log K_a + C$$

where k is the rate constant for a reaction catalyzed by an acid of ionization constant K_a. According to this equation, when $\log k$ is plotted against $\log K_a$ for catalysis of a given reaction by a series of acids, a straight line should be obtained with slope α and intercept C. Although straight lines are obtained in many cases, this is not always the case. The relationship usually fails when acids of different types are compared. For example, it is much more likely to hold for a group of substituted phenols than for a collection of acids that contains both phenols and carboxylic acids. The Brönsted equation is another linear free-energy relationship (see p. 245).

Analogously, there are *general* and *specific* (S^- from an acidic solvent SH) *base-catalyzed reactions*. The Brönsted law for bases is

$$\log k = \beta \log K_b + C$$

A knowledge of whether a reaction is subject to general or specific acid catalysis supplies information about the mechanism. For any acid-catalyzed reaction we may write

Step 1 $$\mathbf{A} \overset{SH^+}{\rightleftharpoons} \mathbf{AH^+}$$

Step 2 $$\mathbf{AH^+} \longrightarrow \text{products}$$

If the reaction is catalyzed only by the specific acid SH^+, it means that step 1 is rapid and step 2 is rate-controlling, since an equilibrium has been rapidly established between A and the strongest acid present in the solution, namely, SH^+ (since this is the strongest acid that can be present in S). On the other hand, if step 2 is faster, there is no time to establish equilibrium and the rate-determining step must be step 1. This step is affected by all the acids present, and the rate reflects the sum of the effects of each acid (general acid catalysis). General acid catalysis is also observed if the slow step is the reaction of a hydrogen-bond complex A ····· HB, since each complex reacts with a base at a different rate. A comparable discussion may be used for general and specific base catalysis.[83] Further information can be obtained from the values α and β in the Brönsted catalysis equations, since these are approximate measures of the extent of proton transfer in the transition state. In most cases values of α and β are between 1 and 0. A value of α or β near 0 is generally taken to mean that the transition state resembles the reactants; i.e., the proton has been transferred very little when the transition state has been reached. A value of α or β near 1 is taken to mean the opposite; i.e., in the transition state the proton has been almost completely transferred. However, cases are known in which these generalizations are not followed.[84] In general, the proton in the transition state lies closer to the weaker base.

---

[81] For reviews, see Hammett, Ref. 65, pp. 315–345; Willi, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 8, pp. 1–95, Elsevier, New York, 1977; Jones, Ref. 65, pp. 72–82; Bell, Ref. 1, pp. 159–193; Jencks, "Catalysis in Chemistry and Enzymology," pp. 163–242, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969; Bender, "Mechanisms of Homogeneous Catalysis from Protons to Proteins," pp. 19–144, Wiley, New York, 1971.

[82] For reviews, see Klumpp, "Reactivity in Organic Chemistry," pp. 167–179, Wiley, New York, 1982; Bell, in Chapman and Shorter, "Correlation Analysis in Chemistry: Recent Advances," pp. 55–84, Plenum Press, 1978; Kresge, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **2,** 475–503 (1973).

Lewis Acids and Bases. Hard and Soft Acids and Bases

At about the same time that Brönsted proposed his acid–base theory, Lewis put forth a broader theory. A base in the Lewis theory is the same as in the Brönsted one, namely, a compound with an available pair of electrons, either unshared or in a π orbital. A *Lewis acid*, however, is any species with a vacant orbital.[85] In a Lewis acid–base reaction the unshared pair of the base forms a covalent bond with the vacant orbital of the acid, as represented by the general equation

$$\mathbf{A} + \overline{\mathbf{B}} \longrightarrow \mathbf{A{-}B}$$

in which charges are not shown, since they may differ. A specific example is

$$\mathbf{BF_3} + \overline{\mathbf{N}}\mathbf{H_3} \longrightarrow \mathbf{F_3}\overset{\ominus}{\mathbf{B}}{-}\overset{\oplus}{\mathbf{N}}\mathbf{H_3}$$

In the Brönsted picture, the acid is a proton donor, but in the Lewis picture the proton itself is the acid since it has a vacant orbital. A Brönsted acid becomes, in the Lewis picture, the compound that gives up the actual acid. The advantage of the Lewis theory is that it correlates the behavior of many more processes. For example, $AlCl_3$ and BF_3 are Lewis acids because they have only six electrons in the outer shell and have room for eight. $SnCl_4$ and SO_3 have eight, but their central elements, not being in the first row of the periodic table, have room for ten or twelve. Other Lewis acids are simple cations, like Ag^+. The simple reaction $A + \overline{B} \rightarrow A{-}B$ is not very common in organic chemistry, but the scope of the Lewis picture is much larger because reactions of the types

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{A^1 + A^2{-}B} &\longrightarrow \mathbf{A^1{-}B + A^2}\\
\mathbf{B^1 + A{-}B^2} &\longrightarrow \mathbf{A{-}B^1 + B^2}\\
\mathbf{A^1{-}B^1 + A^2{-}B^2} &\longrightarrow \mathbf{A^1{-}B^2 + A^2{-}B^1}
\end{aligned}$$

---

[83] For discussions of when to expect general or specific acid or base catalysis, see Jencks, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9**, 425–432 (1976); Stewart and Srinivasan, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11**, 271–277 (1978); Guthrie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102**, 5286 (1980).

[84] See, for example, Bordwell and Boyle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 3907 (1972); Davies, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1018 (1974); Hanna, Jermini, Loewenschuss, and Zollinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96**, 7222 (1974); Agmon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, **102**, 2164 (1980); Pross, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 835 (1983).

[85] For a monograph on Lewis acid–base theory, see Jensen, "The Lewis Acid–Base Concept," Wiley, New York, 1980. For a discussion of the definitions of Lewis acid and base, see Jensen, *Chem. Rev.* **78**, 1–22 (1978).

which are very common in organic chemistry, are also Lewis acid–base reactions. In fact, all reactions in which a covalent bond is formed through one species contributing a filled and the other a vacant orbital may be regarded as Lewis acid–base reactions.

When a Lewis acid combines with a base to give a negative ion in which the central atom has a higher-than-normal valence, the resulting salt is called an *ate complex*.[86] Examples are

$$\mathbf{Me_3B + LiMe \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Ate complex}}{Me_4B^- \; Li^+}}$$

$$\mathbf{Ph_5Sb + LiPh \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Ate complex}}{Ph_6Sb^- \; Li^+}}$$

Ate complexes are analogous to the onium salts formed when a Lewis base expands its valence, e.g.,

$$\mathbf{Me_3N + MeI \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Onium salt}}{Me_4N^+ \; I^-}}$$

Far fewer quantitative measurements have been made of Lewis acid strength compared to that of Brönsted acids.[87] A simple table of Lewis acidities based on some quantitative measurement (such as that given for Brönsted acids in Table 1) is not feasible because Lewis acidity depends on the nature of the base. Qualitatively, the following approximate sequence of acidity of Lewis acids of the type MX_n has been suggested, where X is a halogen atom or an inorganic radical: $BX_3 > AlX_3 > FeX_3 > GaX_3 > SbX_5 > SnX_4 > AsX_5 > ZnX_2 > HgX_2$.

The facility with which an acid–base reaction takes place depends of course on the strengths of the acid and the base. But it also depends on quite another quality, called the *hardness* or *softness* of the acid or base.[88] This quality cannot be precisely measured, only qualitatively described.[88a] The characteristics are as follows:

Soft bases. The donor atoms are of low electronegativity and high polarizability and are easy to oxidize. They hold their valence electrons loosely.

Hard bases. The donor atoms are of high electronegativity and low polarizability and are hard to oxidize. They hold their valence electrons tightly.

Soft acids. The acceptor atoms are large, have low positive charge, and contain unshared pairs of electrons (*p* or *d*) in their valence shells. They have high polarizability and low electronegativity.

Hard acids. The acceptor atoms are small, have high positive charge, and do not contain unshared pairs in their valence shells. They have low polarizability and high electronegativity.

Acids and bases can be ranked in (approximate) order of hardness or softness (e.g., base softness decreases in the order $I^- > Br^- > Cl^- > F^-$, and in the order $CH_3^- > NH_2^- > OH^- > F^-$), but since the quality is not precisely defined, it seems more appropriate to divide them each into three groups: hard, soft, and borderline. Such a listing is found in Table 2.[89] Note that the proton, which is involved in all Brönsted acid–base reactions, is classified as a hard acid.

---

[86] For a review of ate complexes, see Wittig, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **20,** 191–210 (1966).

[87] For reviews of the quantitative aspects of Lewis acidity, see Satchell and Satchell, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **25,** 171–199 (1971), *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 251–278 (1969).

[88] Pearson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3533 (1963), *Science* **151,** 172; Pearson and Songstad, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1827 (1967). For a monograph on the concept, see Ho, "Hard and Soft Acids and Bases Principle in Organic Chemistry," Academic Press, New York, 1977. For reviews, see Ho, *J. Chem. Educ.* **55,** 355–360 (1978); *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 1–20 (1975); Pearson, in Chapman and Shorter, "Advances in Linear Free-Energy Relationships," pp. 281–319, Plenum Press, New York, 1972; Pearson, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **5,** 1–52 (1969) [portions of this article slightly modified also appear in Pearson, *J. Chem. Educ.* **45,** 581–587, 643–648 (1968)]; Garnovskii, Osipov, and Bulgarevich, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 341–359 (1972); Seyden-Penne, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3871 (1968). For a collection of papers, see Pearson, "Hard and Soft Acids and Bases," Dowden, Hutchinson, and Ross, Stroudsberg, Pa., 1973.

[88a] However, a property called "absolute hardness" has been defined and a table of absolute hardness values has been compiled; Parr and Pearson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7512 (1983).

Once acids and bases have been classified as hard or soft, a simple rule can be given: *hard acids prefer to bond to hard bases, and soft acids prefer to bond to soft bases* (*the HSAB principle*). The rule has nothing to do with acid or base *strength* but merely says that the complex A—B will have extra stability if both A and B are hard or if both are soft. The rule is not a theory but a generalization based on experimental facts.[89a]

One application of the rule is found in complexes between alkenes or aromatic compounds and metal ions (p. 75). Alkenes and aromatic rings are soft bases and should prefer to complex with soft acids. Thus, Ag^+, Pt^{2+}, and Hg^{2+} complexes are common, but complexes of Na^+, Mg^{2+}, or Al^{3+} are rare. Chromium complexes are also common, but in such complexes the chromium is in a low or zero oxidation state (which softens it) or attached to other soft ligands. Another application of the rule is discussed on p. 308.

The Effects of Structure on the Strengths of Acids and Bases[90]

The structure of a molecule may affect its acidity or basicity in a number of ways. Unfortunately, in most molecules two or more of these effects (as well as solvent effects) are operating, and it is usually very difficult or impossible to say how much each effect contributes to the acid or base strength. Small differences in acidity or basicity between similar molecules are particularly difficult to interpret. It is well to be cautious when attributing them to any particular effect.

TABLE 2 Hard and soft acids and bases[89]

Hard bases	**Soft bases**	**Borderline bases**
H_2O OH^- F^- AcO^- SO_4^{2-} Cl^- CO_3^{2-} NO_3^- ROH RO^- R_2O NH_3 RNH_2	R_2S RSH RS^- I^- R_3P $(RO)_3P$ CN^- RCN CO C_2H_4 C_6H_6 H^- R^-	$ArNH_2$ C_5H_5N N_3^- Br^- NO_2^-
Hard acids	**Soft acids**	**Borderline acids**
H^+ Li^+ Na^+ K^+ Mg^{2+} Ca^{2+} Al^{3+} Cr^{2+} Fe^{3+} BF_3 $B(OR)_3$ $AlMe_3$ $AlCl_3$ AlH_3 SO_3 RCO^+ CO_2 HX (hydrogen-bonding molecules)	Cu^+ Ag^+ Pd^{2+} Pt^{2+} Hg^{2+} BH_3 $GaCl_3$ I_2 Br_2 CH_2 carbenes	Fe^{2+} Co^{2+} Cu^{2+} Zn^{2+} Sn^{2+} Sb^{3+} Bi^{3+} BMe_3 SO_2 R_3C^+ NO^+ GaH_3 $C_6H_5^+$

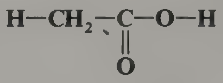
---

[89] Taken from larger listings in Pearson, Ref. 88.

[89a] Both this rule and the entire HSAB principle have been criticized: Arbelot and Chanon, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **7**, 499 (1983).

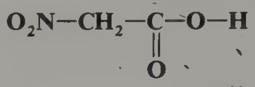
[90] For a monograph, see Hine, "Structural Effects on Equilibria in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1975. For reviews, see Taft, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14**, 247–350 (1983); Bell, Ref. 1, pp. 86–110; Barlin and Perrin, in Bentley and Kirby, "Elucidation of Organic Structures by Physical and Chemical Methods," 2d ed. (vol. 4 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Chemistry"), pt. 1, pp. 611–676, Wiley, New York, 1972. For discussions, see Bolton and Hepler, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **25,** 521–532 (1971); Clark and Perrin, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **18,** 295–320 (1964); Barlin and Perrin, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **20,** 75–101 (1966); Thirot, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3559 (1967); Liler, Ref. 8, pp. 59–144. For a monograph on methods of estimating p*K* values by analogy, extrapolation, etc., see Perrin, Dempsey, and Serjeant, "pK_a Prediction for Organic Acids and Bases," Chapman and Hall, London, 1981.

1. *Field effects.* These were discussed on p. 16. As an example of the influence of field effects on acidity, we may compare the acidity of acetic acid and nitroacetic acid:



$H{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}H$

$pK_a = 4.76$



$O_2N{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}H$

$pK_a = 1.68$

The only difference in the structure of these molecules is the substitution of NO_2 for H. Since NO_2 is a strongly electron-withdrawing group, it withdraws electron density from the negatively charged COO^- group in the anion of nitroacetic acid (compared with the anion of acetic acid) and, as the pK_a values indicate, nitroacetic acid is about 1000 times stronger than acetic acid.[90a] Any effect that results in electron withdrawal from a negatively charged center is a stabilizing effect because it spreads the charge and, consequently, decreases the electron density. Thus, $-I$ groups increase the acidity of uncharged acids like acetic because they spread the negative charge of the anion. However, $-I$ groups also increase the acidity of any acid, no matter what the charge. For example, if the acid has a charge of $+1$ (and its conjugate base is therefore uncharged), a $-I$ group destabilizes the positive center (by increasing and concentrating the positive charge) of the acid, a destabilization that will be relieved when the proton is lost. In general we may say that *groups that withdraw electrons by the field effect increase acidity and decrease basicity, while electron-donating groups act in the opposite direction.* Another example is the molecule $(C_6F_5)_3CH$, which has three strongly electron-withdrawing C_6F_5 groups and a pK_a of 16,[91] compared with Ph_3CH, with a pK_a of 31.5 (Table 1), an acidity enhancement of about 10^{15}. Table 3 shows pK_a values for some acids.[92] An approximate idea of field effects can be obtained from this table. In the case of the chlorobutyric acids note how the effect decreases with distance. It must be remembered, however, that field

TABLE 3 p*K* values for some acids[92]

Acid	p*K*	Acid	p*K*
HCOOH	3.77	$ClCH_2COOH$	2.86
CH_3COOH	4.76	$Cl_2CHCOOH$	1.29
CH_3CH_2COOH	4.88	Cl_3CCOOH	0.65
$CH_3(CH_2)_nCOOH$ (n = 2 to 7)	4.82–4.95	O_2NCH_2COOH	1.68
$(CH_3)_2CHCOOH$	4.86	$(CH_3)_3\overset{\oplus}{N}CH_2COOH$	1.83
$(CH_3)_3CCOOH$	5.05	$HOOCCH_2COOH$	2.83
		$PhCH_2COOH$	4.31
FCH_2COOH	2.66	$\overset{\ominus}{O}OCCH_2COOH$	5.69
$ClCH_2COOH$	2.86		
$BrCH_2COOH$	2.86		
ICH_2COOH	3.12	$\overset{\ominus}{O}_3SCH_2COOH$	4.05
		$HOCH_2COOH$	3.83
$ClCH_2CH_2CH_2COOH$	4.52	$H_2C{=}CHCH_2COOH$	4.35
$CH_3CHClCH_2COOH$	4.06		
$CH_3CH_2CHClCOOH$	2.84		

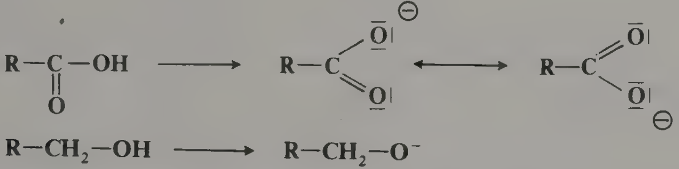
[90a] For a review of the enhancement of acidity by NO_2, see Lewis, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 2, pp. 715–729, Wiley, New York, 1982.

[91] Filler and Wang, *Chem. Commun.* 287 (1968).

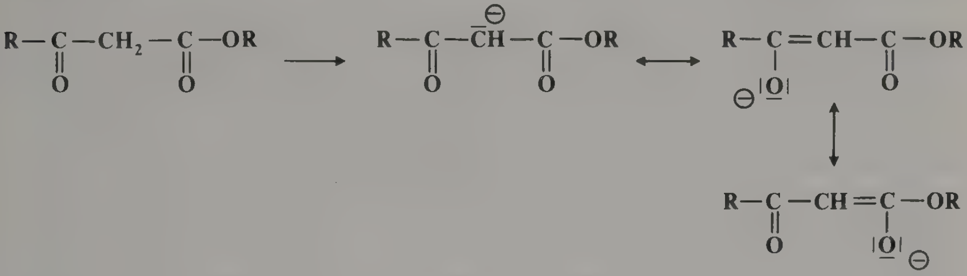
[92] These values are from Ref. 37.

effects are not the sole cause of the acidity differences noted and that in fact solvation effects may be more important in many cases (see pp. 234–236).[93]

2. *Resonance effects.* Resonance that stabilizes a base but not its conjugate acid results in the acid having a higher acidity than otherwise expected and vice versa. An example is found in the higher acidity of carboxylic acids compared with primary alcohols.



The $RCOO^-$ ion is stabilized by resonance not available to the RCH_2O^- ion (or to RCOOH). Note that the $RCOO^-$ is stabilized not only by the fact that there are two equivalent canonical forms but also by the fact that the negative charge is spread over both oxygen atoms and is therefore less concentrated than in RCH_2O^-. The same effect is found in other compounds containing a C=O or C≡N group. Thus amides $RCONH_2$ are more acidic than amines RCH_2NH_2; esters RCH_2COOR' than ethers RCH_2CH_2OR'; and ketones RCH_2COR' than alkanes RCH_2CH_2R' (Table 1). The effect is enhanced when two carbonyl groups are attached to the same carbon (because of additional resonance and spreading of charge); for example, β-keto esters are more acidic than simple ketones or esters (Table 1). Extreme examples of this effect are found in the molecules tricyanomethane $(NC)_3CH$, with a pK_a of −5, and 2-(dicyanomethylene)-1,1,3,3-tetracyanopropene $(NC)_2C{=}C[CH(CN)_2]_2$, whose first pK_a is below −8.5 and whose second pK_a is −2.5.



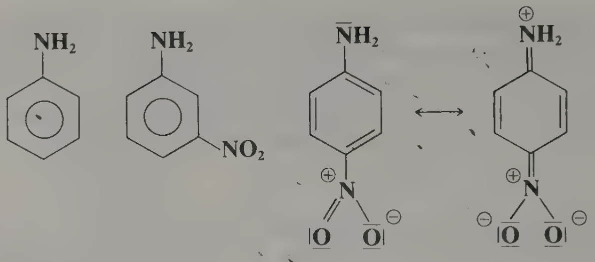
Resonance effects are also important in aromatic amines. *m*-Nitroaniline is a weaker base than aniline, a fact that can be accounted for by the $-I$ effect of the nitro group. But *p*-nitroaniline is weaker still, though the $-I$ effect should be less because of the greater distance. We can explain this result by taking into account the canonical form **1** (p. 232). Because **1** contributes to the resonance hybrid,[94] the electron density of the unshared pair is lower in *p*-nitroaniline than in *m*-nitroaniline, where a canonical form such as **1** is impossible. The basicity is lower in the para compound for two reasons, both caused by the same effect: (1) the unshared pair is less available for attack by a proton, and (2) when the conjugate acid is formed, the resonance stabilization afforded by **1** is no longer available because the previously unshared pair is now being shared by the proton. The acidity of phenols is affected by substituents in a similar manner.

In general, resonance effects lead to the same result as field effects. That is, here too, electron-withdrawing groups increase acidity and decrease basicity, and electron-donating groups act in the

---

[93] For discussions, see Edward, *J. Chem. Educ.* **59,** 354 (1982); Schwartz, *J. Chem. Educ.* **58,** 778 (1981); Ref. 13.

[94] See, however, Lipkowitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2647 (1982).



pK_a of conjugate[95] acid 4.60 2.47 1.11 **1**

opposite manner. As a result of both resonance and field effects, charge dispersal leads to greater stability.

3. *Periodic table correlations.* When comparing Brönsted acids and bases that differ in the position of an element in the periodic table:

a. Acidity increases and basicity decreases in going from left to right across a row of the periodic table. Thus acidity increases in the order $CH_4 < NH_3 < H_2O < HF$, and basicity decreases in the order $CH_3^- > NH_2^- > OH^- > F^-$. This behavior can be explained by the increase in electronegativity upon going from left to right across the table. It is this effect that is responsible for the great differences in acidity between carboxylic acids, amides, and ketones: $RCOOH \gg RCONH_2 \gg RCOCH_3$.

b. Acidity increases and basicity decreases in going down a column of the periodic table, despite the decrease in electronegativity. Thus acidity increases in the order $HF < HCl < HBr < HI$ and $H_2O < H_2S$, and basicity decreases in the order $NH_3 > PH_3 > AsH_3$. This behavior is related to the size of the species involved. Thus, for example, F^-, which is much smaller than I^-, attracts a proton much more readily because its negative charge occupies a smaller volume and is therefore more concentrated (note that F^- is also much harder than I^- and is thus more attracted to the hard proton; see p. 228). This rule does not always hold for positively charged acids. Thus, although the order of acidity for the group VIA hydrides is $H_2O < H_2S < H_2Se$, the acidity order for the positively charged ions is $H_3O^+ > H_3S^+ > H_3Se^+$.[95a]

Lewis acidity is also affected by periodic table considerations. In comparing acid strengths of Lewis acids of the form MX_n:[87]

c. Acids that require only one electron pair to complete an outer shell are stronger than those that require two. Thus $GaCl_3$ is stronger than $ZnCl_2$. This results from the relatively smaller energy gain in adding an electron pair that does not complete an outer shell and from the buildup of negative charge if two pairs come in.

d. Other things being equal, the acidity of MX_n decreases in going down the periodic table because as the size of the molecule increases, the attraction between the positive nucleus and the incoming electron pair is weaker. Thus BCl_3 is a stronger acid than $AlCl_3$.[96]

4. *Statistical effects.* In a symmetrical dibasic acid, the first dissociation constant is twice as large as expected since there are two equivalent ionizable hydrogens, while the second constant is only one-half as large as expected because the conjugate base can accept a proton at two equivalent sites. So K_1/K_2 should be 4, and approximately this value is found for dicarboxylic acids where the two groups are sufficiently far apart in the molecule that they do not influence each other. A similar argument holds for molecules with two equivalent basic groups.[97]

---

[95] Smith, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 161–204, Interscience, New York, 1968.

[95a] Taft, Ref. 90, pp. 250–254.

[96] Note that Lewis acidity *decreases*, whereas Brönsted acidity *increases*, going down the table. There is no contradiction here when we remember that in the Lewis picture the actual acid in all Brönsted acids is the same, namely, the proton. In comparing, say, HI and HF, we are not comparing different Lewis acids but only how easily F^- and I^- give up the proton.

5. *Hydrogen bonding.* Internal hydrogen bonding can greatly influence acid or base strength. For example, the pK for *o*-hydroxybenzoic acid is 2.98, while the value for the para isomer is 4.58. Internal hydrogen bonding between the OH and COO^- groups of the conjugate base of the ortho isomer stabilizes it and results in an increased acidity.

6. *Steric effects.*[98] The proton itself is so small that direct steric hindrance is seldom encountered in proton transfers. Steric effects are much more common in Lewis acid–base reactions in which larger acids are used. Spectacular changes in the order of base strength have been demonstrated when the size of the acid was changed. Table 4 shows the order of base strength of simple amines when compared against acids of various size.[99] It may be seen that the usual order of basicity of amines (when the proton is the reference acid) may be completely inverted by using a large enough acid. The strain caused by formation of a covalent bond when the two atoms involved each have three large groups is called *face strain* or *F strain*.

Steric effects may indirectly affect acidity or basicity by affecting the resonance (see p. 34). For example, *o-t*-butylbenzoic acid is about 10 times as strong as the para isomer, because the carboxyl group is forced out of the plane by the *t*-butyl group. Indeed, virtually all ortho benzoic acids are stronger than the corresponding para isomers, regardless of whether the group on the ring is electron-donating or electron-withdrawing.

Steric effects can also be caused by other types of strain. 1,8-Bis(diethylamino)-2,7-dimethoxynaphthalene (**2**) is an extremely strong base for a tertiary amine (pK_a of the conjugate acid = 16.3; compare N,N-dimethylaniline, pK_a = 5.1), but proton transfers to and from the nitrogen are exceptionally slow; slow enough to be followed by a uv spectrophotometer.[101] **2** is severely strained because the two nitrogen lone pairs are forced to be near each other. Protonation relieves the strain: one lone pair is now connected to a hydrogen, which then forms a hydrogen bond to the other lone pair. The same effect is found in 4,5-bis(dimethylamino)fluorene (**3**).[101a]

7. *Hybridization.* An *s* orbital has a lower energy than a *p* orbital. Therefore the energy of a

TABLE 4 Bases listed in increasing order of base strength when compared with certain reference acids[100]

Increasing order of base strength	Reference acid			
	H^+ or BMe_3	BMe_3	$B(CMe_3)_3$	
↓	NH_3	Et_3N	Me_3N	Et_3N
	Me_3N	NH_3	Me_2NH	Et_2NH
	$MeNH_2$	Et_2NH	NH_3	$EtNH_2$
	Me_2NH	$EtNH_2$	$MeNH_2$	NH_3

---

[97] The effect discussed here is an example of a symmetry factor. For an extended discussion, see Eberson, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Carboxylic Acids and Esters," pp. 211–293, Interscience, New York, 1969.

[98] For a review, see Gold, *Prog. Stereochem.* **3,** 169–201 (1962).

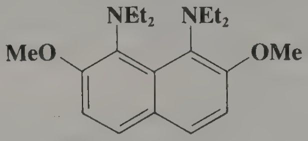
[99] Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **67,** 378, 1452 (1945), "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," pp. 53–64, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972. See also Brown, Krishnamurthy, and Hubbard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3343 (1978).

[100] The order of basicity (when the reference acids were boranes) was determined by the measurement of dissociation pressures.

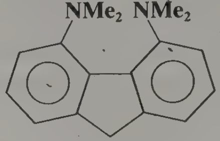
[101] Alder, Goode, Miller, Hibbert, Hunte, and Robbins, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* **89** (1978); Hibbert and Hunte, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1895 (1983).

[101a] Staab, Saupe, and Krieger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 731 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 748].

hybrid orbital is lower the more *s* character it contains. It follows that a carbanion at an *sp* carbon is more stable than a corresponding carbanion at an sp^2 carbon. Thus $HC{\equiv}C^-$, which has more *s* character in its unshared pair than $CH_2{=}CH^-$ or $CH_3CH_2^-$ (*sp* vs. sp^2 vs. sp^3, respectively), is a much weaker base. This explains the relatively high acidity of acetylenes and HCN. Another example is that alcohol and ether oxygens, where the unshared pair is sp^3, are more strongly basic than carbonyl oxygens, where the unshared pair is sp^2 (Table 1).



2



3

The Effects of the Medium on Acid and Base Strength

Structural features are not the only factors that affect acidity or basicity. The same compound can have its acidity or basicity changed when the conditions are changed. The effect of temperature (p. 223) has already been mentioned. More important is the effect of the solvent, which can exert considerable influence on acid and base strengths by differential solvation.[102] If a base is more solvated than its conjugate acid, its stability is increased relative to the conjugate acid. For example, Table 4 shows that toward the proton, where steric effects are absent, methylamine is a stronger base than ammonia and dimethylamine is stronger still.[103] These results are easily explainable if one assumes that methyl groups are electron-donating. However, trimethylamine, which should be even stronger, is a weaker base than dimethylamine or methylamine. This apparently anomalous behavior may be explained by differential hydration.[104] Thus, NH_4^+ is much better hydrated (by hydrogen bonding to the water solvent) than NH_3 because of its positive charge.[105] It has been estimated that this effect contributes about 11 p*K* units to the base strength of ammonia.[106] When methyl groups replace hydrogen, this difference in hydration decreases[107] until, for trimethylamine, it contributes only about 6 p*K* units to the base strength.[106] Thus two effects act in opposite directions, the field effect increasing the basicity as the number of methyl groups increases and the hydration effect decreasing it. When the effects are added, the strongest base is dimethylamine and the weakest is ammonia. If alkyl groups are electron-donating, one would expect that in the gas phase,[108] where the solvation effect does not exist, the basicity order of amines toward the proton should be $R_3N > R_2NH > RNH_2 > NH_3$, and this has indeed been confirmed, for R = Me as well as R = Et and Pr.[109] Aniline too, in the gas phase, is a stronger base than NH_3,[110] so that its much lower basicity in aqueous solution (pK_a of $PhNH_3^+$ 4.60 compared with pK_a of 9.24 for aqueous NH_4^+) is caused by similar solvation effects and not by resonance and field electron-withdrawing effects of a phenyl group, as had been generally believed. Similarly, pyridine[111] and pyrrole[112] are both much less basic than NH_3 in aqueous solution (pyrrole is neutral in aqueous solution) but *more* basic in the gas phase. These examples in particular show how careful one must be in attributing relative acidities or basicities to any particular effect.

---

[102] For a review of the effects of solvent, see Dyumaev and Korolev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 1021–1032 (1980).

[103] For a review of the basicity of amines, see Ref. 95.

[104] Trotman-Dickenson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1293 (1949); Pearson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70,** 204 (1948); Pearson and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 258 (1954); Hall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5441 (1957); Arnett, Jones, Taagepera, Henderson, Beauchamp, Holtz, and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4724 (1972); Aue, Webb, and Bowers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4726 (1972); **98,** 311, 318 (1976); Mucci, Domain, and Benoit, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 953 (1980).

[105] For discussions of the solvation of ammonia and amines, see Jones and Arnett, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 263–420 (1974); Grunwald and Ralph, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 107–113 (1971).

[106] Condon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4481, 4485 (1965).

[107] For two reasons—(1) the alkyl groups are poorly solvated by the water molecules, and (2) the strength of the hydrogen bonds of the BH^+ ions decreases as the basicity of B increases; Lau and Kebarle, *Can. J. Chem.* **59,** 151 (1981).

[108] For reviews of acidities and basicities in the gas phase, see Bohme, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 2, pp. 731–762, Wiley, New York, 1982; Bartmess and McIver, in Bowers, "Gas Phase Ion Chemistry," vol. 2, pp. 88–121, Academic Press, New York, 1979; Kabachnik, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 814–827 (1979); Arnett, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 404–409 (1973). See also the tables of gas-phase acidities and basicities in McMahon and Kebarle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2222, 3399 (1977); Wolf, Staley, Koppel, Taagepera, McIver, Beauchamp, and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5417 (1977); Cumming and Kebarle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5818 (1977); **100,** 1835 (1978); *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 1 (1978); Bartmess, Scott, and McIver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6046 (1979); Fujio, McIver, and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4017 (1981); Lau, Nishizawa, Tse, Brown, and Kebarle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 6291 (1981).

For simple alcohols the order of gas-phase *acidity* is completely reversed from that in aqueous solution. In solution the acidity is in the order $H_2O > MeCH_2OH > Me_2CHOH > Me_3COH$, but in the gas phase the order is precisely the opposite.[113] Once again solvation effects can be invoked to explain the differences. Comparing the two extremes, H_2O and Me_3COH, we see that the OH^- ion is very well solvated by water while the bulky Me_3CO^- is much more poorly solvated because the water molecules cannot get as close to the oxygen. Thus in solution H_2O gives up its proton more readily. When solvent effects are absent, however, the intrinsic acidity is revealed and Me_3COH is a stronger acid than H_2O. This result demonstrates that simple alkyl groups cannot be simply regarded as electron-donating. If methyl is an electron-donating group, then Me_3COH should be an intrinsically weaker acid than H_2O, yet it is stronger. The evidence in this and other cases[114] is that alkyl groups can be electron-donating when connected to unsaturated systems but in other systems may have either no effect or may actually be electron-withdrawing. The explanation given for the intrinsic gas-phase acidity order of alcohols as well as the basicity order of amines is that alkyl groups, because of their polarizability, can spread both positive and negative charges.[115] It has been calculated that even in the case of alcohols the field effects of the alkyl groups are still operating normally, but are swamped by the greater polarizability effects.[116] Polarizability effects on anionic centers are a major factor in gas-phase acid–base reactions.[117]

It has been shown (by running reactions on ions that are solvated in the gas phase) that solvation by even one molecule of solvent can substantially affect the order of basicities.[118]

An important aspect of solvent effects is the effect on the orientation of solvent molecules when an acid or base is converted to its conjugate. For example, consider an acid RCOOH converted to $RCOO^-$ in aqueous solution. The solvent molecules, by hydrogen bonding, arrange themselves around the COO^- group in a much more orderly fashion than they had been arranged around the

---

[109] Munson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2332 (1965); Brauman, Riveros, and Blair, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3914 (1971); Briggs, Yamdagni, and Kebarle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5128 (1972); Aue, Webb, and Bowers, Ref. 104.

[110] Briggs, Yamdagni, and Kebarle, Ref. 109, Dzidic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8333 (1972); Ikuta and Kebarle, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 97 (1983).

[111] Taagepera, Henderson, Brownlee, Beauchamp, Holtz, and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1369 (1972); Taft, Taagepera, Summerhays, and Mitsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3811 (1973); Briggs, Yamdagni, and Kebarle, Ref. 109.

[112] Yamdagni and Kebarle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3504 (1973).

[113] Baird, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 2306 (1969); Brauman and Blair, Ref. 13; Arnett, Small, McIver, and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5638 (1974); Blair, Isolani, and Riveros, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1057 (1973); McIver, Scott, and Riveros, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2706 (1973); Boand, Houriet, and Gäumann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2203 (1983). See also Graffeuil, Labarre, Leibovici, *J. Mol. Struct.* **23,** 65 (1974). The alkylthiols behave similarly; gas-phase acidity increases with increasing group size while solution (aqueous) acidity decreases; Bartmess and McIver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4163 (1977).

[114] Brauman and Blair, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4315 (1971); Kwart and Takeshita, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1161 (1964); Fort and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4194 (1964); Holtz and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2404 (1965); Laurie and Muenter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2883 (1966).

[115] Brauman and Blair, Ref. 13; Munson, Ref. 109; Brauman, Riveros, and Blair, Ref. 109; Huheey, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 204 (1971); Radom, *Aust. J. Chem.* **28,** 1 (1975); Aitken, Bahl, Bomben, Gimzewski, Nolan, and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4873 (1980).

[116] Taft, Taagepera, Abboud, Wolf, DeFrees, Hehre, Bartmess, and McIver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7765 (1978).

[117] Bartmess, Scott, and McIver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6056 (1979).

[118] Bohme, Rakshit, and Mackay, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1100 (1982).

TABLE 5 Thermodynamic values for the ionizations of acetic and chloroacetic acids in H_2O at 25°C[120]

Acid	pK_a	ΔG, kcal/mol	ΔH, kcal/mol	$T\Delta S$, kcal/mol
CH_3COOH	4.76	+6.5	−0.1	−6.6
$ClCH_2COOH$	2.86	+3.9	−1.1	−5.0
Cl_3CCOOH	0.65	+0.9	+1.5	+0.6

COOH group (because they are more strongly attracted to the negative charge). This represents a considerable loss of freedom and a decrease in entropy. Thermodynamic measurements show that for simple aliphatic and halogenated aliphatic acids in aqueous solution at room temperature, the entropy ($T\Delta S$) usually contributes much more to the total free-energy change ΔG than does the enthalpy ΔH.[119] Two examples are shown in Table 5.[120] Resonance and field effects of functional groups therefore affect the acidity of RCOOH in two distinct ways. They affect the enthalpy (electron-withdrawing groups increase acidity by stabilizing $RCOO^-$ by charge dispersal), but they also affect the entropy (by lowering the charge on the COO^- group and by changing the electron-density distribution in the COOH group, electron-withdrawing groups alter the solvent orientation patterns around both the acid and the ion, and consequently change ΔS).

As an example, the data in Table 5 show that more than half of the acid-strengthening effect of the Cl in $ClCH_2COOH$ comes from entropy and less than half is caused by ΔH. A more extreme example is trichloroacetic acid, which is about 10,000 times stronger than acetic acid but which actually would be a weaker acid if enthalpy factors were all that mattered (Table 5). In this case it is the very large entropy change that makes the difference. Because the field effect helps to spread the negatively charged electron pair of Cl_3CCOO^- all over the molecule, solvent molecules are less strongly attracted than they are to CH_3COO^-; they have much more freedom and consequently a higher entropy. There are other carboxylic acids in which enthalpy and entropy effects act in opposite directions, but in general, whether they act in the same or opposite directions, entropy effects are more important.

A change from a protic to an aprotic solvent can also affect the acidity or basicity, since there is a difference in solvation of anions by a protic solvent (which can form hydrogen bonds) and an aprotic one.[121] The effect can be extreme: in DMF, picric acid is stronger than HBr,[122] though in water HBr is far stronger. This particular result can be attributed to size. That is, the large ion $(O_2N)_3C_6H_2O^-$ is better solvated by DMF than the smaller ion Br^-, while in a protic solvent like water the solvation of an anion is by the small unshielded proton.[123] Even a change from one aprotic solvent to another may affect acidity or basicity. For example, the order of base strength against 2,4-dinitrophenol was $Bu_3N > Bu_2NH > BuNH_2$ in chlorobenzene; $Bu_2NH > Bu_3N > BuNH_2$ in benzene and $Bu_2NH > BuNH_2 > Bu_3N$ in dibutyl ether.[124] The ionic strength of the solvent also influences acidity or basicity, since it has an influence on activity coefficients.

In summary, solvation can have powerful effects on acidity and basicity. In the gas phase the effects discussed in the previous section, especially resonance and field effects, operate unhindered by solvent molecules. As we have seen, electron-withdrawing groups generally increase acidity (and decrease basicity); electron-donating groups act in the opposite way. In solution, especially aqueous solution, these effects still largely persist (which is why the pK values in Table 3 do largely correlate with resonance and field effects), but in general are much weakened, and sometimes even reversed.[93]

[119] Bolton and Hepler, Ref. 90; Ref. 64.

[120] Bolton and Hepler, Ref. 90, p. 529; Hambly, Ref. 64, p. 92.

[121] For a review, see Parker, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **16,** 163–187 (1962).

[122] Sears, Wolford, and Dawson, *J. Electrochem. Soc.* **103,** 633 (1956).

[123] Miller and Parker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 117 (1961).

[124] Bayles and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc.* 417 (1961).

9

EFFECTS OF STRUCTURE ON REACTIVITY

When the equation for a reaction of, say, carboxylic acids, is written, it is customary to use the formula RCOOH, which implies that all carboxylic acids undergo the reaction. Since most compounds with a given functional group do give more or less the same reactions, the custom is useful, and the practice is used in this book. It allows a large number of individual reactions to be classified together and serves as an aid both to the memorization and the understanding of them. Organic chemistry would be a huge morass of facts without the symbol R. Nevertheless, it must be borne in mind that a given functional group does not always react the same way, regardless of what molecule it is a part of. The reaction at the functional group is influenced by the rest of the molecule. This influence may be great enough to stop the reaction completely or to make it take an entirely unexpected course. Even when two compounds with the same functional group undergo the same reaction, the rates and/or the positions of equilibrium are usually different, sometimes slightly, sometimes greatly, depending on the structures of the compounds. The greatest variations may be expected when additional functional groups are present.

The effects of structure on reactivity can be divided into three major types: field, resonance (or mesomeric), and steric.[1] In most cases two or all three of these are operating, and it is usually not easy to tell how much of the rate enhancement (or decrease) is caused by each of the three effects.

Resonance and Field Effects

It is often particularly difficult to separate resonance and field effects; they are frequently grouped together under the heading of *electrical effects*.[2] Field effects were discussed on pp. 16–18. Table 3 in Chapter 1 (p.17) contains a list of some $+I$ and $-I$ groups. As for resonance effects, on p. 33 it was shown how the electron density distribution in aniline is not the same as it would be if there were no resonance interaction between the ring and the NH_2 group. Most groups that contain an unshared pair on an atom connected to an unsaturated system display a similar effect; i.e., the electron density on the group is less than expected, and the density on the unsaturated system is greater. Such groups are said to be electron-donating by the resonance effect ($+M$ groups). Alkyl groups, which do not have an unshared pair, are also $+M$ groups, presumably because of hyperconjugation.

---

[1] For a monograph, see Klumpp, "Reactivity in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1982. For a review of field effects on reactivity, see Grob, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 569–575 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 621–627].

[2] On p. 16 we showed that there are two types of inductive effects—bond and field effects. Similarly, it is possible to define several types of resonance effects. Dewar and Grisdale, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3539 (1962) recognize at least five distinct types of electrical effects, and Katritzky and Topsom, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 427 (1971) point out at least seven. However, quantitatively (see p. 246) only two variables are necessary to account for the total electrical effects of substituents, one an overall field and one an overall resonance contribution: Hammett, "Physical Organic Chemistry," 2d ed., p. 376, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1970; Swain and Lupton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4328 (1968); Topsom, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 1–20 (1976).

On the other hand, groups that have a multiple-bonded electronegative atom directly connected to an unsaturated system are $-M$ groups. In such cases we can draw canonical forms in which electrons have been taken from the unsaturated system into the group, e.g.,

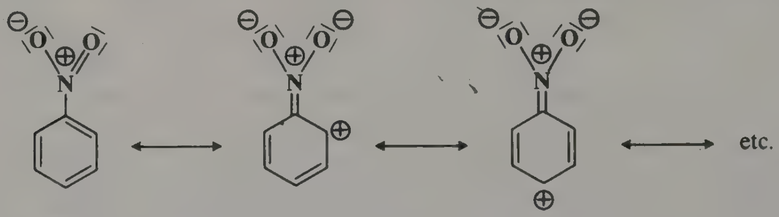


Table 1 contains a list of some $+M$ and $-M$ groups.

The resonance effect of a group, whether $+M$ or $-M$, operates only when the group is directly connected to an unsaturated system, so that, for example, in explaining the effect of the CH_3O group on the reactivity of the COOH in $CH_3OCH_2CH_2COOH$, only the field effect of the CH_3O need be considered. This is one way of separating the two effects. In *p*-methoxybenzoic acid both effects must be considered. The field effect operates through space, solvent molecules, or the σ bonds of a system, while the resonance effect operates through π electrons.

It must be emphasized once again that neither by the resonance nor by the field effect are any electrons actually being donated or withdrawn, though these terms are convenient (and we shall use them). As a result of both effects, the electron-density distribution is not the same as it would be without the effect (see pp. 17, 33).

One thing that complicates the study of these effects is that a given group may have an effect in the transition state which is considerably more or less than it has in the unreacting molecule. For example, consider a molecule $C_6H_5CH_2Y$, where Y is the reaction site. The replacement of, say, a para hydrogen by a group X gives $XC_6H_4CH_2Y$, in which the electron density at the CH_2 group is greater or less, depending on the resonance or field effects of X. However, when the molecule undergoes reaction, the bond between CH_2 and Y begins to break, causing the CH_2 to

TABLE 1 Some groups with $+M$ and $-M$ effects, not listed in order of strength of effect

Ar appears in both lists because it is capable of both kinds of effect

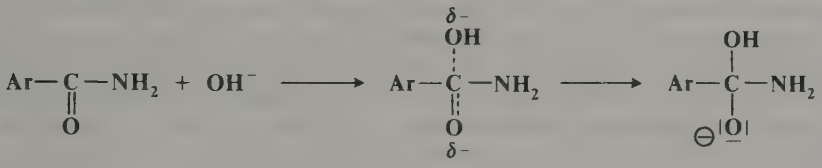
$+M$ groups		$-M$ groups	
O^-	SR	NO_2	CHO
S^-	SH	CN	COR
NR_2	Br	COOH	SO_2R
NHR	I	COOR	SO_2OR
NH_2	Cl	$CONH_2$	NO
NHCOR	F	CONHR	Ar
OR	R	$CONR_2$	
OH	Ar		
OCOR			

TABLE 2 Relative rates of reaction of RBr with ethanol[3]

R	Relative rate
CH_3	17.6
CH_3CH_2	1
$CH_3CH_2CH_2$	0.28
$(CH_3)_2CHCH_2$	0.030
$(CH_3)_3CCH_2$	4.2×10^{-6}

have partial carbanion, carbocation, or free-radical character, depending on the nature of the reaction. The group X, which in the unreacting molecule may have had only a weak electron-donating effect, may now donate electron density a good deal more or a good deal less. Some groups X may even be electron-donating in one reaction and electron-withdrawing in another.

An example will show the nature of electrical effects (resonance and field) on reactivity. In the alkaline hydrolysis of aromatic amides (**0-12**), the rate-determining step is the attack of hydroxide ion at the carbonyl carbon:



transition state

intermediate

1 **2**

In the transition state, which has a structure somewhere between that of the starting amide (**1**) and the intermediate (**2**), the electron density on the carbonyl carbon is increased. Therefore, electron-withdrawing groups ($-I$ or $-M$) on the aromatic ring will lower the free energy of the transition state (by spreading the negative charge). These groups have much less effect on the free energy of **1**. Since G is lowered for the transition state, but not substantially for **1**, $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ is lowered and the reaction rate is increased (Chapter 6). Conversely, electron-donating groups ($+I$ or $+M$) should decrease the rate of this reaction. Of course, many groups are $-I$ and $+M$, and for these it is not always possible to predict which effect will predominate.

Steric Effects

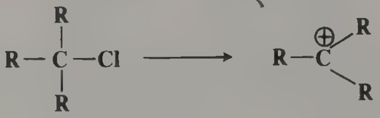
It occasionally happens that a reaction proceeds much faster or much slower than expected on the basis of electrical effects alone. Very often in these cases it can be shown that steric effects are influencing the rate. For example, Table 2 lists relative rates for the SN2 ethanolysis of certain alkyl halides (see p. 256).[3] All these compounds are primary bromides; the branching is on the second carbon, so that field-effect differences should be small. As Table 2 shows, the rate decreases with increasing β branching and reaches a very low value for neopentyl bromide. This reaction is known to involve an attack by the nucleophile from a position opposite to that of the bromine (see

---

[3] Hughes, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **2**, 107–131 (1948).

p. 256). The great decrease in rate may be attributed to *steric hindrance,* a sheer physical blockage to the attack of the nucleophile. Another example of steric hindrance is found in 2,6-disubstituted benzoic acids, which are difficult to esterify no matter what the resonance or field effects of the groups in the 2 or the 6 position. Similarly, once 2,6-disubstituted benzoic acids *are* esterified, the esters are difficult to hydrolyze.

Not all steric effects decrease reaction rates. In the hydrolysis of RCl by an SN1 mechanism (see p. 259), the first step, which is rate-determining, involves ionization of the alkyl chloride to a carbocation:



The central carbon in the alkyl chloride is sp^3-hybridized and thus has angles of about 109.5°, but when it is converted to the carbocation, the hybridization becomes sp^2 and the preferred angle is 120°. If the halide is tertiary and the three alkyl groups are large enough, they will be pushed together by the enforced tetrahedral angle, resulting in strain (see p. 139). This type of strain is called *B strain*[4] (for back strain), and it can be relieved by ionization to the carbocation.

The rate of ionization (and hence the solvolysis rate) of a molecule in which there is B strain is therefore expected to be larger than in cases where B strain is not present. Table 3 shows that this is so.[5] Substitution of ethyl groups for the methyl groups of *t*-butyl chloride does not cause B strain; the increase in rate is relatively small, and the rate smoothly rises with the increasing number of ethyl groups. The rise is caused by normal field and resonance (hyperconjugation) effects. Substitution by one isopropyl group is not greatly different. But with the second isopropyl group the crowding is now great enough to cause B strain, and the rate is increased tenfold. Substitution of a third isopropyl group increases the rate still more. Another example where B strain increases solvolysis rates is found with the highly crowded molecules tri-*t*-butylcarbinol, di-*t*-butylneopentylcarbinol, *t*-butyldineopentylcarbinol, and trineopentylcarbinol, where rates of solvolysis of the *p*-nitrobenzoate esters are faster than that of *t*-butyl nitrobenzoate by factors of 13,000, 19,000, 68,000, and 560, respectively.[6]

Another type of strain, that can affect rates of cyclic compounds, is called *I strain* (internal strain).[7] This type of strain results from changes in ring strain on going from a tetrahedral to a trigonal carbon or vice versa. For example, as mentioned above, SN1 solvolysis of an alkyl halide involves a change in the bond angle of the central carbon from about 109.5° to about 120°. This

TABLE 3 Rates of hydrolysis of tertiary alkyl chlorides at 25°C in 80% aqueous ethanol[5]

Halide	Rate	Halide	Rate
Me_3CCl	0.033	Et_3CCl	0.099
Me_2EtCCl	0.055	Me_2(iso-Pr)CCl	0.029
$MeEt_2CCl$	0.086	Me(iso-Pr)$_2$CCl	0.45

---

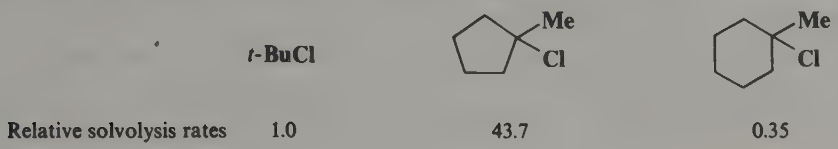
[4] For a discussion, see Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," pp. 114–121, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972.

[5] Brown and Fletcher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 1845 (1949).

[6] Bartlett and Tidwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4421 (1968).

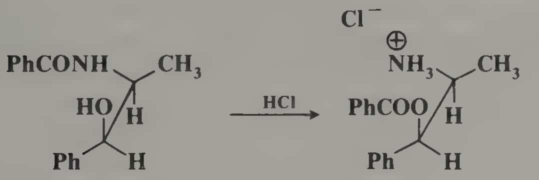
[7] For discussions, see Gol'dfarb and Belen'kii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 214–235 (1960), pp. 221–228; Ref. 4, pp. 105–107, 126–128.

change is highly favored in 1-chloro-1-methylcyclopentane because it relieves eclipsing strain (p. 135); thus this compound undergoes solvolysis in 80% ethanol at 25°C 43.7 times faster than the reference compound *t*-butyl chloride.[8] In the corresponding cyclohexyl compound this factor is absent because the substrate does not have eclipsing strain (p. 134), and this compound undergoes

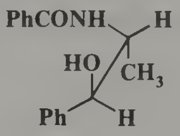


the reaction at about one-third the rate of *t*-butyl chloride. The reasons for this small decrease in rate are not clear. Corresponding behavior is found in the other direction, in changes from a trigonal to a tetrahedral carbon. Thus cyclohexanone undergoes addition reactions faster than cyclopentanone. Similar considerations apply to larger rings. Rings of 7 to 11 members exhibit eclipsing and transannular strain; and in these systems reactions in which a tetrahedral carbon becomes trigonal generally proceed faster than in open-chain systems.[9]

Conformational effects on reactivity may be considered under the heading of steric effects,[9a] although in these cases we are considering not the effect of a group X and that of another group X′ upon reactivity at a site Y but the effect of the conformation of the molecule. Many reactions fail entirely unless the molecules are able to assume the proper conformation. An example is the rearrangement of N-benzoylnorephedrine. The two diastereomers of this compound behave very differently when treated with alcoholic HCl. In one of the isomers nitrogen-to-oxygen migration takes place, while the other does not react at all.[10] In order for the migration to take place, the



3



4

nitrogen must be near the oxygen (gauche to it). When **3** assumes this conformation, the methyl and phenyl groups are anti to each other, which is a favorable position, but when **4** has the nitrogen gauche to the oxygen, the methyl must be gauche to the phenyl, which is so unfavorable that the reaction does not occur. Other examples are electrophilic additions to C=C double bonds (see p. 658) and E2 elimination reactions (see p. 874). Also, many examples are known where axial and equatorial groups behave differently.[11]

In steroids and other rigid systems, a functional group in one part of the molecule can strongly affect the rate of a reaction taking place at a remote part of the same molecule by altering the conformation of the whole skeleton. An example of this effect, called *conformational transmission,* is found in ergost-7-en-3-one (**5**) and cholest-6-en-3-one (**6**), where **6** condenses with benzaldehyde

---

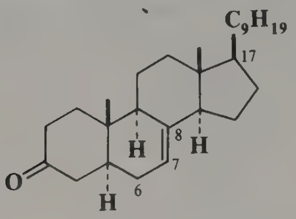
[8] Brown and Borkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 1894 (1952). See also Brown, Ravindranathan, Peters, Rao, and Rho, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5373 (1977).

[9] See, for example, Schneider and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1424 (1980).

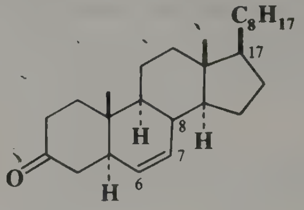
[9a] For reviews of conformational effects, see Ōki, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **17,** 154–159 (1984); Seeman, *Chem. Rev.* **83,** 83–134 (1983).

[10] Fodor, Bruckner, Kiss, and Óhegyi, *J. Org. Chem.* **14,** 337 (1949).

[11] For a discussion, see Eliel, "Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds," pp. 219–234, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962.



5



6

15 times faster than **5**.[12] The reaction site in both cases is the carbonyl group, and the rate increases because moving the double bond from the 7 to the 6 position causes a change in conformation at the carbonyl group (the difference in the side chain at C-17 does not affect the rate).

Quantitative Treatments of the Effect of Structure on Reactivity[13]

Suppose that the substitution of a group X for H in a reaction of $XCH{=}CHCH_2Y$ (the reaction taking place at the Y group) results in a rate increase by a factor of, say, 10. We would like to know just what part of the increase is due to each of the effects previously mentioned. The obvious way to approach such a problem is to try to find compounds in which one or two of the factors are absent or at least negligible. This is not easy to do acceptably because factors that seem negligible to one investigator do not always appear so to another. The first attempt to give numerical values was that of Hammett.[14] For the cases of *m*- and *p*-XC_6H_4Y, Hammett set up the equation

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = \sigma\rho$$

where k_0 is the rate constant or equilibrium constant for X = H, k is the constant for the group X, ρ is a constant for a given reaction under a given set of conditions, and σ is a constant characteristic of the group X. The equation is called the *Hammett equation.*

The value of ρ was set at 1.00 for dissociation of XC_6H_4COOH in water at 25°C. σ_m and σ_p values were then calculated for each group (for a group X, σ is different for the meta and para positions). Once a set of σ values was obtained, ρ values could be obtained for other reactions from the rates of just two X-substituted compounds, if the σ values of the X groups were known (in practice, at least four well-spaced values are used to calculate ρ because of experimental error and because the treatment is not exact). With the ρ value thus calculated and the known σ values for other groups, rates may be predicted for reactions that have not yet been run.

---

[12] Barton, McCapra, May, and Thudium, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1297 (1960).

[13] For monographs, see Johnson, "The Hammett Equation," Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1973; Shorter, "Correlation Analysis of Organic Reactivity," Wiley, New York, 1982; "Correlation Analysis in Organic Chemistry," Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1973; Chapman and Shorter, "Correlation Analysis in Chemistry: Recent Advances," Plenum, New York, 1978; "Advances in Linear Free Energy Relationships," Plenum, New York, 1972; Wells, "Linear Free Energy Relationships," Academic Press, New York, 1968. For reviews, see Hammett, Ref. 2, pp. 347–390; Jones, "Physical and Mechanistic Organic Chemistry," 2nd ed., pp. 38–68, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1984; Fuchs and Lewis in Lewis, "Investigation of Rates and Mechanisms of Reactions" (vol. 6 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Chemistry"), 3d ed., pp. 777–824, Wiley, New York, 1974; Charton, *CHEMTECH,* 502–511 (1974), 245–255 (1975); Hine, "Structural Effects in Organic Chemistry," pp. 55–102, Wiley, New York, 1975; Afanas'ev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 216–232 (1971); Laurence and Wojtkowiak, *Ann. Chim.* (*Paris*) [14] **5,** 163–191 (1970); Thirot, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 739–744 (1967); Wells, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 171–218 (1963); Ritchie and Sager, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 323–400 (1964); For theoretical discussions, see Sjöström and Wold, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **35,** 537 (1981); Ehrenson, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 195–251 (1964).

[14] For a review, see Jaffé, *Chem. Rev.* **53,** 191 (1953).

The σ values are numbers that sum up the total electrical effects (resonance plus field) of a group X when attached to a benzene ring. The treatment usually fails for the ortho position. The Hammett treatment has been applied to many reactions and to many functional groups and correlates quite well an enormous amount of data. Jaffé's review article[14] lists ρ values for 204 reactions,[15] many of which have different ρ values for different conditions. Among them are reactions as disparate as the following:

Rate constants for

$$\mathbf{ArCOOMe + OH^- \longrightarrow ArCOO^-}$$

$$\mathbf{ArCH_2Cl + I^- \longrightarrow ArCH_2I}$$

$$\mathbf{ArNH_2 + PhCOCl \longrightarrow ArNHCOPh}$$

$$\mathbf{ArH + NO_2^+ \longrightarrow ArNO_2}$$

$$\mathbf{ArCO_2OCMe_3} \longrightarrow \text{decomposition (a free-radical process)}$$

Equilibrium constants for

$$\mathbf{ArCOOH + H_2O \rightleftharpoons ArCOO^- + H_3O^+}$$

$$\mathbf{ArCHO + HCN \rightleftharpoons ArCH(CN)OH}$$

The Hammett equation has also been shown to apply to many physical measurements, including ir frequencies and nmr chemical shifts.[16] The treatment is reasonably successful whether the substrates are attacked by electrophilic, nucleophilic, or free-radical reagents, the important thing being that the mechanism be the same *within* a given reaction series.

However, there are many reactions that do not fit the treatment. These are mostly reactions where the attack is directly on the ring and where the X group can enter into direct resonance interaction with the reaction site in the transition state. For these cases, two new sets of σ values have been devised: σ^+ values (proposed by H. C. Brown) for cases in which an electron-donating group interacts with a developing positive charge in the transition state (this includes the important case of electrophilic aromatic substitutions; see Chapter 11) and σ^- values,[17] where electron-withdrawing groups interact with a developing negative charge. Table 4 gives σ, σ^+, and σ^- values for some common X groups.[18] As shown in the table, σ is not very different from σ^+ for most electron-withdrawing groups. σ_m^- values are not shown in the table, since they are essentially the same as the σ_m values.

A positive value of σ indicates an electron-withdrawing group and a negative value an electron-

---

[15] Additional ρ values are given in Wells, Ref. 13 and van Bekkum, Verkade, and Wepster, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **78,** 821–827 (1959).

[16] For a review of Hammett treatment of nmr chemical shifts, see Ewing in Chapman and Shorter, "Correlation Analysis in Chemistry: Recent Advances," pp. 357–396, Plenum, New York, 1978.

[17] These were formerly called σ* values, but this designation is now used for the field-effect values mentioned in footnote 35.

[18] Unless otherwise noted, σ values are from Exner, in Charman and Shorter, Ref. 16, pp. 439–540, and σ^+ values from Okamoto, Inukai, and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 4969 (1958) and Brown and Okamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 4979 (1958). σ^- values, except as noted, are from Jaffe, Ref. 14. Exner, pp. 439–540, has extensive tables giving σ values for more than 500 groups, as well as σ^+, σ^-, σ_I, σ_R°, and E_s values for many of these groups.

TABLE 4 σ, σ^+, and σ^- values for some common groups[18]

Group	σ_p	σ_m	σ_p^+	σ_m^+	σ_p^-
O$^-$	−0.81[19]	−0.47[19]			
NMe$_2$	−0.63	−0.10	−1.7		
NH$_2$	−0.57	−0.09	−1.3	−0.16	
OH	−0.38[20]	0.13[20]	−0.92[24]		
OMe	−0.28[20]	0.10	−0.78	0.05	
CMe$_3$	−0.15	−0.09	−0.26	−0.06	
Me	−0.14	−0.06	−0.31	−0.10[25]	
H	0	0	0	0	0
Ph	0.05[21]	0.05	−0.18	0[25]	
COO$^-$	0.11[19]	0.02[19]	−0.02	−0.03	
F	0.15	0.34	−0.07	0.35	
Cl	0.24	0.37	0.11	0.40	
Br	0.26	0.37	0.15	0.41	
I	0.28[21]	0.34	0.14	0.36	
COOH	0.44	0.35	0.42	0.32	0.73
COOR	0.44	0.35	0.48	0.37	0.68
COMe	0.47	0.36			0.87
CF$_3$	0.53	0.46		0.57[25]	
NH$_3^+$	0.60[19]	0.86[19]			
CN	0.70	0.62	0.66	0.56	1.00
SO$_2$Me	0.73	0.64			
NO$_2$	0.81	0.71	0.79	0.73[25]	1.27
NMe$_3^+$	0.82[22]	0.88[22]	0.41	0.36	
N$_2^+$	1.93[23]	1.65[23]	1.88[23]		3[26]

donating group. The constant ρ measures the susceptibility of the reaction to electrical effects. Reactions with a positive ρ are helped by electron-withdrawing groups and vice versa. The following ρ values for the ionization of some carboxylic acids illustrate this:[27]

XC_6H_4—COOH	1.00	**XC_6H_4—CH=CH—COOH**	0.47
XC_6H_4—CH_2—COOH	0.49	**XC_6H_4—CH_2CH_2—COOH**	0.21

This example shows that the insertion of a CH_2 or a CH=CH group diminishes electrical effects to about the same extent, while a CH_2CH_2 group diminishes them much more.

Similar calculations have been made for compounds with two groups X and X′ on one ring, where the σ values are sometimes additive and sometimes not,[28] for other ring systems such as naphthalene[29] and heterocyclic rings,[30] and for ethylenic and acetylenic systems.[31]

[19] Hine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4877 (1960).

[20] Matsui, Ko, and Hepler, *Can. J. Chem.* **52,** 2906 (1974).

[21] Sjöström and Wold, *Chem. Scr.* **9,** 200 (1976).

[22] McDaniel and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **23,** 420 (1958).

[23] Ustynyuk, Subbotin, Buchneva, Gruzdneva, and Kazitsyna, *Doklad. Chem.* **227,** 175 (1976).

[24] de la Mare and Newman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1305 (1982) give this value as −1.6.

[25] Amin and Taylor, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 267 (1978).

[26] Lewis and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2070 (1959).

[27] Jones, Ref. 13, p. 42.

[28] Stone and Pearson, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 257 (1961).

[29] Berliner and Winikov, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1630 (1959); see also Wells, Ehrenson, and Taft, Ref. 39.

[30] For reviews, see Charton, Ref. 16, pp. 175–268; Tomasik and Johnson, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **20,** 1–64 (1976).

[31] For reviews of the application of the Hammett treatment to unsaturated systems, see Ford, Katritzky, and Topsom, Ref. 16, pp. 269–311; Charton, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **10,** 81–204 (1973).

The Hammett equation is a *linear free-energy relationship*. This can be demonstrated as follows for the case of equilibrium constants (for rate constants a similar demonstration can be made with $\Delta G^{\ddagger}$ instead of ΔG). For each reaction, where X is any group,

$$\Delta G = -RT \ln K$$

For the unsubstituted case,

$$\Delta G_0 = -RT \ln K_0$$

The Hammett equation may be rewritten

$$\log K - \log K_0 = \sigma\rho$$

so that

$$\frac{-\Delta G}{2.3RT} + \frac{\Delta G_0}{2.3RT} = \sigma\rho$$

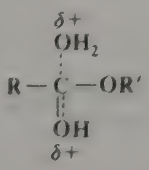
and

$$-\Delta G = \sigma\rho 2.3RT - \Delta G_0$$

For a given reaction under a given set of conditions, ρ, R, T, and ΔG_0 are all constant, so that σ is linear with ΔG.

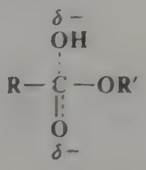
The Hammett equation is not the only linear free-energy relationship. Some, like the Hammett equation, correlate structural changes in reactants, but the Grunwald–Winstein relationship (see p. 318) correlates changes in solvent and the Brönsted relation (see p. 226) relates acidity to catalysis. The Taft equation is a structure-reactivity equation that correlates only field effects.[32]

Taft, following Ingold,[33] assumed that for the hydrolysis of esters, steric and resonance effects will be the same whether the hydrolysis is catalyzed by acid or base (see the discussion of ester-hydrolysis mechanisms, reaction **0-11**). Rate differences would therefore be caused only by the field effects of R and R′ in RCOOR′.[34] This is presumably a good system to use for this purpose because the transition state for acid-catalyzed hydrolysis (**7**) has a greater positive charge (and is hence destabilized by $-I$ and stabilized by $+I$ substituents) than the starting ester, while the transition state for base-catalyzed hydrolysis (**8**) has a greater negative charge than the starting ester. Field effects of substituents X could therefore be determined by measuring the rates of acid-



$$\mathrm{R{-}}\overset{\overset{\delta+}{\mathrm{OH_2}}}{\underset{\underset{\delta+}{\mathrm{OH}}}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{{-}OR'}$$

7



$$\mathrm{R{-}}\overset{\overset{\delta-}{\mathrm{OH}}}{\underset{\underset{\delta-}{\mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{{-}OR'}$$

8

---

[32] For reviews of the separation of resonance and field effects, see Charton, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **13,** 119–251 (1981); Shorter, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **24,** 433–453 (1970); *Chem. Br.* **5,** 269–274 (1969). For a review of field and inductive effects, see Reynolds, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14,** 165–203 (1983).

[33] Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1032 (1930).

[34] For a completely different method of quantifying field effects, see Hutchings and Gasteiger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2541 (1983).

and base-catalyzed hydrolysis of a series XCH_2COOR', where R′ is held constant.[35] From these rate constants, a value σ_I could be determined by the equation

$$\sigma_I \equiv 0.181 \left[\log \left(\frac{k}{k_0}\right)_B - \log \left(\frac{k}{k_0}\right)_A \right]$$

In this equation $(k/k_0)_B$ is the rate constant for basic hydrolysis of XCH_2COOR' divided by the rate constant for basic hydrolysis of CH_3COOR', $(k/k_0)_A$ is the similar rate-constant ratio for acid catalysis, and 0.181 is an arbitrary constant. σ_I is a substituent constant for a group X, substituted at a saturated carbon, which reflects only field effects.[36] Once a set of σ_I values was obtained, it was found that the equation

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = \rho_I \sigma_I$$

holds for a number of reactions, among them:[37]

$$\mathbf{RCH_2OH \longrightarrow RCH_2O^-}$$

$$\mathbf{RCH_2Br + PhS^- \longrightarrow RCH_2SPh + Br^-}$$

$$\text{Acetone} + \mathbf{I_2}\text{, catalyzed by } \mathbf{RCOOH} \longrightarrow$$

$$o\text{-Substituted-}\mathbf{ArNH_2 + PhCOCl \longrightarrow ArNHCOPh}$$

As with the Hammett equation, ρ_I is constant for a given reaction under a given set of conditions. For very large groups the relationship may fail because of the presence of steric effects, which are not constant. The equation also fails when X enters into resonance with the reaction center to different extents in the initial and final (or transition) states. A list of some σ_I values is given in Table 5.[38] The σ_I values are about what we would expect for pure field-effect values (see p. 16) and are additive, as field effects (but not resonance or steric effects) would be expected to be. Thus, in moving a group one carbon down the chain, there is a decrease by a factor of 2.8 ± 0.5 (compare the values of R and RCH_2 in Table 5 for R = Ph and CH_3CO).

Since σ_p values represent the sum of resonance and field effects, these values can be divided into resonance and field contributions if σ_I is taken to represent the field-effect portion.[39] The resonance contribution σ_R[40] is defined as

$$\sigma_R = \sigma_p - \sigma_I$$

As it stands, however, this equation is not very useful because the σ_R value for a given group, which should be constant if the equation is to have any meaning, is actually not constant but

---

[35] For another set of field-effect constants, based on a different premise, see Draffehn and Ponsold, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **320,** 249 (1978).

[36] There is another set of values (called σ^* values) that are also used to correlate field effects. These are related to σ_I values by $\sigma_{I(X)} = 0.45\sigma^*_{XCH_2}$. Following the suggestion by Ritchie and Sager (Ref. 13), we discuss only σ_I, not σ^* values. See also footnote 17.

[37] Wells, *Chem. Rev.*, Ref. 13, p. 196.

[38] These values are from Ref. 44, except that the values for NHAc, OH, and I are from Wells, Ehrenson, and Taft, Ref. 40, the values for Ph and NMe_3^+ are from Ref. 43 and Taft, Deno, and Skell, Ref. 39, and the value for CMe_3 is from Seth-Paul, de Meyer-van Duyse, and Tollenaere, *J. Mol. Struct.* **19,** 811 (1973). The values for the CH_2Ph and CH_2COCH_3 groups were calculated from σ^* values by the formula given in footnote 36. For much larger tables of σ_I and σ_R values, see Charton, Ref. 32.

[39] Roberts and Moreland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2167 (1953); Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 1045 (1957), *J. Phys. Chem.* **64,** 1805 (1960); Taft and Lewis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 2436 (1958); Taft, Deno, and Skell, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **9,** 287–314 (1958), pp. 290–293.

[40] For reviews of the σ_R and σ_I concept as applied to benzenes and naphthalenes, respectively, see Ehrenson, Brownlee, and Taft, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **10,** 1–80 (1973); Wells, Ehrenson, and Taft, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 147–322 (1968).

TABLE 5 σ_I and σ_R values for some groups[38]

Group	σ_I	σ_R
CMe_3	−0.07	−0.17
Me	−0.05	−0.13
H	0	0
$PhCH_2$	0.04	
NMe_2	0.06	−0.55
Ph	0.10	−0.10
CH_3COCH_2	0.10	
NH_2	0.12	−0.50
CH_3CO	0.20	0.16
COOEt	0.20	0.16
NHAc	0.26	−0.22
OMe	0.27	−0.42
OH	0.27	−0.44
I	0.39	−0.12
CF_3	0.42	0.08
Br	0.44	−0.16
Cl	0.46	−0.18
F	0.50	−0.31
CN	0.56	0.08
SO_2Me	0.60	0.12
NO_2	0.65	0.15
NMe_3^+	0.86	

depends on the nature of the reaction.[41] In this respect, the σ_I values are much better. Although they vary with solvent in some cases, σ_I values are essentially invariant throughout a wide variety of reaction series. However, it is possible to overcome[42] the problem of varying σ_R values by using a special set of σ_R values, called σ_R°,[43] that measure the ability to delocalize π electrons into or out of an unperturbed or "neutral" benzene ring. Several σ_R° scales have been reported; the most satisfactory values are obtained from ^{13}C chemical shifts of substituted benzenes.[44] Table 5 lists some values of σ_R°, most of which were obtained in this way.

The only groups in Table 5 with negative values of σ_I are the alkyl groups methyl and *t*-butyl. There has been some controversy on this point.[45] One opinion is that σ_I values decrease in the series methyl, ethyl, isopropyl, *t*-butyl (respectively, −0.046, −0.057, −0.065, −0.074).[46] Other evidence, however, has led to the belief that all alkyl groups have approximately the same field effect and that the σ_I values are invalid as a measure of the intrinsic field effects of alkyl groups.[47] (See also the discussion of this topic on p. 235.)

---

[41] Taft and Lewis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5343 (1959); Reynolds, Dais, MacIntyre, Topsom, Marriott, von Nagy-Felsobuki, and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 378 (1983).

[42] For a different way of overcoming this problem, see Happer and Wright, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 694 (1979).

[43] Taft, Ehrenson, Lewis, and Glick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5352 (1959).

[44] Bromilow, Brownlee, Lopez, and Taft, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4766 (1979).

[45] For a discussion, see Shorter, in Chapman and Shorter, "Advances in Linear Free Energy Relationships," Ref. 13, pp. 98–103.

[46] For support for this point of view, see Levitt and Widing, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 119–157 (1976); Taft and Levitt, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 916 (1977); MacPhee and Dubois, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2225 (1978); Screttas, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3332 (1979); Hanson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 101 (1984).

[47] For support for this point of view, see, for example, Ritchie, *J. Phys. Chem.* **65,** 2091 (1961); Bordwell, Drucker, and McCollum, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2786 (1976); Bordwell and Fried, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1121 (1977); Charton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5687 (1977); *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 903 (1979); Adcock and Khor, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1272 (1978); DeTar, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5166 (1980); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7988 (1980).

Another attempt to divide σ values into resonance and field contributions[48] is that of Swain and Lupton, who have shown that the large number of sets of σ values (σ_m, σ_p, σ_p^-, σ_p^+, σ_I, σ_R°, etc., as well as others we have not mentioned) are not entirely independent and that linear combinations of two sets of new values F (which expresses the field-effect contribution) and R (the resonance contribution) satisfactorily express 43 sets of σ values.[49] Each set is expressed as

$$\sigma = fF + rR$$

where f and r are weighting factors. Some F and R values for common groups are given in Table 6.[50] From the calculated values of f and r, Swain and Lupton calculated that the importance of resonance, % R is 20% for σ_m, 38% for σ_p, and 62% for σ_p^+.[51]

Taft was also able to isolate steric effects.[52] For the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of esters in aqueous acetone, log (k/k_0) was shown to be insensitive to polar effects.[53] In cases where resonance interaction was absent, this value was proportional only to steric effects (and any others that are not field or resonance). The equation is

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = E_s$$

Some E_s values are given in Table 7,[54] where hydrogen is taken as standard, with a value of 0.[55] This treatment is more restricted than those previously discussed, since it requires more assumptions, but the E_s values are approximately in order of the size of the groups. Charton has shown that E_s values for substituents of types CH_2X, CHX_2, and CX_3 are linear functions of the van der Waals

TABLE 6 *F* and *R* values for some groups[50]

Group	*F*	*R*	Group	*F*	*R*
COO^-	−0.27	0.40	**OMe**	0.54	−1.68
Me_3C	−0.11	−0.29	**CF_3**	0.64	0.76
Et	−0.02	−0.44	**I**	0.65	−0.12
Me	−0.01	−0.41	**Br**	0.72	−0.18
H	0	0	**Cl**	0.72	−0.24
Ph	0.25	−0.37	**F**	0.74	−0.60
NH_2	0.38	−2.52	**$NHCOCH_3$**	0.77	−1.43
COOH	0.44	0.66	**CN**	0.90	0.71
OH	0.46	−1.89	**NMe_3^+**	1.54	
COOEt	0.47	0.67	**N_2^+**	2.36	2.81
$COCH_3$	0.50	0.90			

---

[48] Yukawa and Tsuno have still another approach. For a review and critique of this method, see Shorter, Ref. 16, pp. 119–173 (pp. 126–144). This article also discusses the Swain–Lupton and Taft σ_I, σ_R approaches. For yet other approaches, see Afanas'ev. *J. Org. Chem. USSR*, **17,** 373 (1981); Ponec, *Coll. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **48,** 1564 (1983).

[49] Swain and Lupton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4328 (1968); Swain, Unger, Rosenquist, and Swain, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 492 (1983).

[50] Taken from a much longer list in Swain, Unger, Rosenquist, and Swain, Ref. 49.

[51] The Swain-Lupton treatment has been criticized by Reynolds and Topsom, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 1989 (1984); Hoefnagel, Oosterbeek, and Wepster, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 1993 (1984); and Charton, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 1997 (1984). For a reply to these criticisms, see Swain, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 2005 (1984).

[52] For reviews of quantitative treatments of steric effects, see Gallo, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14,** 115–163 (1983); Unger and Hansch, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 91–118 (1976).

[53] Another reaction used for the quantitative measurement of steric effects is the aminolysis of esters (**0-57**); De Tar and Delahunty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2734 (1983).

[54] E_s and ν values are taken from much longer tables in, respectively, Ref. 52 and Charton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1552 (1975); *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2217 (1976).

[55] In Taft's original work, Me was given the value 0. The E_s values in Table 7 can be converted to the original values by adding 1.24.

radii for these groups.[56] Charton has also defined another steric parameter ν derived from correlations between van der Waals radii and the rates of acid-catalyzed hydrolyses and esterifications.[57] Table 7 gives ν values for some groups.[58] As can be seen in the table, there is a good, though not perfect, correlation between E_s and ν values. Other sets of steric values, e.g., E'_s,[59] E^*_s,[60] and $\mathscr{S}_f$,[61] have also been proposed.[58]

Since the Hammett equation has been so successful in the treatment of the effects of groups in the meta and para positions, it is not surprising that attempts have been made to apply it to ortho positions also.[62] The effect on a reaction rate or equilibrium constant of a group in the ortho position is called the *ortho effect.*[63] Despite the many attempts made to quantify ortho effects, so far no set of values commands general agreement. However, the Hammett treatment is successful for ortho compounds when the group Y in *o*-XC_6H_4Y is separated from the ring; e.g., ionization constants of *o*-$XC_6H_4OCH_2COOH$ can be successfully correlated.[64]

Linear free-energy relationships may have mechanistic implications. If log (k/k_0) is linear with the appropriate σ, it is likely that the same mechanism operates throughout the series. If not, a smooth curve usually indicates a gradual change in mechanism, while a pair of intersecting straight lines indicates an abrupt change,[65] though nonlinear plots can also be due to other causes, such as complications arising from side reactions. If a reaction series follows σ^+ or σ^- better than σ it generally means that there is extensive resonance interaction in the transition state.[66]

Information can also be obtained from the magnitude and sign of ρ. For example, a strongly negative ρ value indicates a large electron demand at the reaction center, from which it may be concluded that a highly electron-deficient center, perhaps an incipient carbocation, is involved.

TABLE 7 E_s and ν values for some groups[54]

Group	E_s	ν	Group	E_s	ν
H	0	0	Cyclohexyl	−2.03	0.87
F	−0.46	0.27	iso-**Bu**	−2.17	0.98
CN	−0.51		sec-**Bu**	−2.37	1.02
OH	−0.55		**CF_3**	−2.4	0.91
OMe	−0.55		*t*-**Bu**	−2.78	1.24
NH_2	−0.61		**NMe_3^+**	−2.84	
Cl	−0.97	0.55	Neopentyl	−2.98	1.34
Me	−1.24	0.52	**CCl_3**	−3.3	1.38
Et	−1.31	0.56	**CBr_3**	−3.67	1.56
I	−1.4	0.78	**$(Me_3CCH_2)_2CH$**	−4.42	2.03
Pr	−1.6	0.68	**Et_3C**	−5.04	2.38
iso-**Pr**	−1.71	0.76	**Ph_3C**	−5.92	2.92

---

[56] Charton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 615 (1969).

[57] Charton, Ref. 54. See also Charton, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3995 (1978); Idoux and Schreck, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4002 (1978).

[58] For a discussion of the various steric parameters, see DeTar, Ref. 47.

[59] MacPhee, Panaye, and Dubois, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 3553 (1978); *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1164 (1980). Dubois, MacPhee, and Panaye, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4099 (1978); *Tetrahedron* **36,** 919 (1980).

[60] Fellous and Luft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5593 (1973).

[61] Beckhaus, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 593 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 633].

[62] For reviews, see Fujita and Nishioka, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 49–89 (1976); Charton, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **8,** 235–317 (1971); Shorter, Ref. 44, pp. 103–110.

[63] This is not the same as the ortho effect discussed on p. 460.

[64] Charton, *Can. J. Chem.* **38,** 2493 (1960).

[65] For a discussion, see Schreck, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 103–107 (1971).

[66] See, however, Gawley, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4595 (1981).

Conversely, a positive ρ value is associated with a developing negative charge in the transition state. The σρ relationship even applies to free-radical reactions, because free radicals can have some polar character (p. 615), though ρ values here are usually small (less than about 1.5) whether positive or negative. Reactions involving cyclic transition states (p. 180) also exhibit very small ρ values.

PART TWO

In Part 2 of this book we shall be directly concerned with organic reactions and their mechanisms. The reactions have been classified into 10 chapters, based primarily on reaction type: substitutions, additions to multiple bonds, eliminations, rearrangements, and oxidation-reduction reactions. Five chapters have been devoted to substitutions; these are classified on the basis of mechanism as well as substrate. Chapters 10 and 13 include nucleophilic substitutions at aliphatic and aromatic substrates, respectively. Chapters 12 and 11 deal with electrophilic substitutions at aliphatic and aromatic substrates, respectively. All free-radical substitutions are discussed in Chapter 14. Additions to multiple bonds are classified not according to mechanism, but according to the type of multiple bond. Additions to carbon–carbon multiple bonds are dealt with in Chapter 15, while we treat additions to other multiple bonds in Chapter 16. One chapter is devoted to each of the three remaining reaction types: Chapter 17, eliminations; Chapter 18, rearrangements; Chapter 19, oxidation–reduction reactions. This last chapter considers only those oxidation–reduction reactions that could not be conveniently treated in any of the other categories (except for oxidative eliminations).

Each chapter in Part 2 consists of two main sections. The first section of each chapter (except Chapter 19) deals with mechanism and reactivity. For each reaction type the various mechanisms are discussed in turn, with particular attention given to the evidence for each mechanism and to the factors that cause one mechanism rather than another to prevail in a given reaction. Following this, each chapter contains a section on reactivity, including, where pertinent, a consideration of orientation and the factors affecting it.

The second main section of each chapter is a treatment of the reactions belonging to the category indicated by the title of the chapter. It is not possible to discuss in a book of this nature all or nearly all known reactions. However, an attempt has been made to include all the important reactions of standard organic chemistry which may be used to prepare relatively pure compounds in reasonable yields. In order to present a well-rounded picture and to include some reactions that are traditionally discussed in textbooks, a number of reactions which do not fit into the above category have been included. The scope of the coverage is apparent from the fact that more than 90% of the individual preparations given in *Organic Syntheses* are treated. However, certain special areas have been covered only lightly or not at all. Among these are electrochemical and polymerization reactions, and the preparation and reactions of heterocyclic compounds, carbohydrates, steroids, and compounds containing phosphorus, silicon, arsenic, boron, and mercury. The basic principles involved in these areas are of course no different from those in the areas more fully treated. Even with these omissions, however, some 590 reactions are treated in this book.

Each reaction is discussed in its own numbered section.[1] These are numbered consecutively within a chapter. The *first* digit in each number is the *second* digit of the chapter number. Thus, reaction **6-1** is the first reaction of Chapter 16 and reaction **3-21** is the twenty-first reaction of Chapter 13. The second part of the reaction number has no other significance. The order in which the reactions are presented is not arbitrary but is based on an orderly outline that depends on the type of reaction. The placement of each reaction in a separate numbered section serves as an aid to both memory and understanding by setting clear boundary lines between one reaction and another, even if these boundary lines must be arbitrary, and by clearly showing the relationship of each reaction to all the others. Within each section, the scope and utility of the reaction are discussed and references are given to review articles, if any. If there are features of the mechanism that especially pertain to that reaction, these are also discussed within the section rather than in the first part of the chapter where the discussion of mechanism is more general.

---

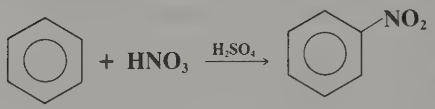
[1] The classification of reactions into sections is, of course, to some degree arbitrary. Each individual reaction (for example, $CH_3Cl + CN^- \rightarrow CH_3CN$ and $C_2H_5Cl + CN^- \rightarrow C_2H_5CN$) is different, and custom generally decides how we group them together. Individual preferences also play a part. Some chemists would say that $C_6H_5N_2^+ + CuCN \rightarrow C_6H_5CN$ and

IUPAC Nomenclature for Transformations

There has long been a need for a method of naming reactions. As we shall see in the rest of this book, many reactions are given the names of their discoverers or popularizers (e.g., Nef, Diels–Alder, Prins). This is useful as far as it goes, but each name must be individually memorized, and there are many reactions that do not have such names. The IUPAC Commission on Physical Organic Chemistry has begun a project to produce a *system* for naming not reactions, but transformations (a reaction includes all reactants; a transformation shows only the substrate and product, omitting the reagents.) The advantages of a systematic method are obvious. Once the system is known, no memorization is required; the name can be generated directly from the equation. The system as so far constructed (many transformations have not yet been dealt with) names straightforward transformations of three types: substitutions, additions, and eliminations. We give here only the most basic rules, which however will suffice for naming many transformations.[2] The complete rules give somewhat different names for speech-writing and indexing. Here we will give only the speech-writing names.

Substitutions. A name consists of the entering group, the syllable "de," and the leaving group. If the leaving group is hydrogen, it may be omitted (in all examples, the substrate is written on the left).

$CH_3CH_2Br + CH_3O^- \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2—O—CH_3$ **Methoxy-de-bromination**



Nitro-de-hydrogenation or Nitration

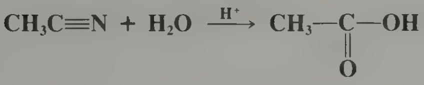
$C_6H_5N_2^+ + CuCl \rightarrow C_6H_5Cl$ are examples of the "same" reaction. Others would say that they are not, but that $C_6H_5N_2^+ + CuCl \rightarrow C_6H_5Cl$ and $C_6H_5N_2^+ + CuBr \rightarrow C_6H_5Br$ are examples of the "same" reaction. No claim is made that the classification system used in this book is more valid than any other.

[2] For the complete rules, as so far published, see Bunnett, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **53,** 305–321 (1981).

Multivalent substitutions are named by a modification of this system that includes suffixes such as "bisubstitution" and "tersubstitution."

$CH_2Cl_2 + 2EtO^- \longrightarrow CH_2(OEt)_2$ **Diethoxy-de-dichloro-bisubstitution**

$CH_3CHO + Ph_3P{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3CH{=}CH_2$ **Methylene-de-oxo-bisubstitution**

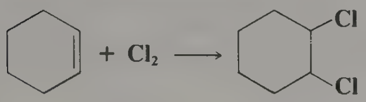


$CH_3C{\equiv}N + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} CH_3{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}OH$ **Hydroxy, oxo-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution**

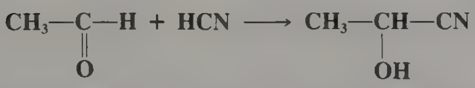
(Note: the nitrilo group is ≡N.)

Additions. For simple 1,2-additions, the names of both addends are given followed by the suffix "addition." The addends are named in order of priority in the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system (p. 96), the lower-ranking addend coming first. Multivalent addition is indicated by "biaddition," etc.

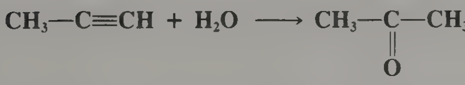
$CH_3{-}CH{=}CH_2 + HBr \longrightarrow CH_3{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}Br$ **Hydro-bromo-addition**



Dichloro-addition

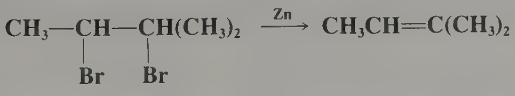


$CH_3{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}H + HCN \longrightarrow CH_3{-}\underset{\overset{|}{OH}}{CH}{-}CN$ ***O*-Hydro-*C*-cyano-addition**

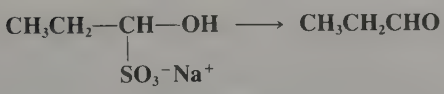


$CH_3{-}C{\equiv}CH + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}CH_3$ **Dihydro-oxo-biaddition**

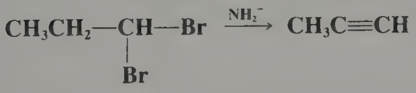
Eliminations are named the same way as additions, except that "elimination" is used instead of "addition."



$CH_3{-}\underset{\overset{|}{Br}}{CH}{-}\underset{\overset{|}{Br}}{CH}(CH_3)_2 \xrightarrow{Zn} CH_3CH{=}C(CH_3)_2$ **Dibromo-elimination**



$CH_3CH_2{-}\underset{\overset{|}{SO_3^-Na^+}}{CH}{-}OH \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2CHO$ ***O*-Hydro-*C*-sulfonato-elimination**



$CH_3CH_2{-}\underset{\overset{|}{Br}}{CH}{-}Br \xrightarrow{NH_2^-} CH_3C{\equiv}CH$ **Dihydro-dibromo-bielimination**

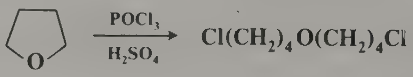
In the reaction sections of this book, we shall give IUPAC names for many of the straightforward transformations (these names will be printed in the same typeface used above). As will become apparent, some reactions require more rules than we have given here.[2] However, it is hoped that the simplicity of the system will also be apparent.

One further note: Many transformations can be named using either side as the substrate.

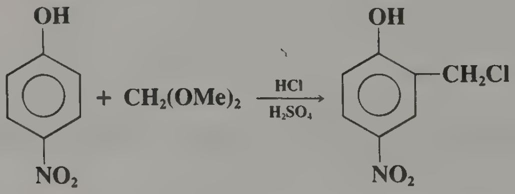
For example, the transformation **methylene-de-oxo-bisubstitution** above, can also be named **ethylidene-de-triphenylphosphoranediyl-bisubstitution.** In this book we will show only those names in which the substrate is considered to undergo the reactions indicated by the titles of the chapters. Thus the name we give to **1-13** (ArH + RCl → ArR) is **alkyl-de-hydrogenation,** not **aryl-de-chlorination,** though the latter name is also perfectly acceptable under the IUPAC system.

Organic Syntheses References

At the end of each numbered section there is a list of *Organic Syntheses* references (abbreviated OS). With the exception of a few very common reactions (**2-3, 2-20, 2-22,** and **2-37**) the list includes *all* OS references for each reaction. The volumes of OS that have been covered are Collective Volumes **I** to **V** and individual volumes **50** to **61.** Where no OS references are listed at the end of a section, the reaction has not been reported in OS through volume **61.** These listings thus constitute a kind of index to OS.[3] Certain ground rules were followed in assembling these lists. A reaction in which two parts of a molecule independently undergo simultaneous reaction is listed under both reactions. Similarly, if two reactions happen (or might happen) rapidly in succession without the isolation of an intermediate, the reactions are listed in both places. For example, at OS **IV,** 266 is



This reaction is treated as **0-69** followed by **0-18** and is listed in both places. However, certain reactions are not listed because they are trivial examples. An instance of this is the reaction found at OS **III,** 468:



This is a chloromethylation reaction and is consequently listed at **1-26.** However, in the course of the reaction formaldehyde is generated from the acetal. This reaction is not listed at **0-7** (hydrolysis of acetals), because it is not really a preparation of formaldehyde.

---

[3] A comprehensive index to Collective Volumes **I** to **V** has been published as part of the series: Shriner and Shriner, "Organic Syntheses Collective Volumes I, II, III, IV, V, Cumulative Indices," Wiley, New York, 1976. For another index to *Organic Syntheses* (through volume **45**), see Sugasawa and Nakai, "Reaction Index of Organic Syntheses," Wiley, New York, 1967.

10

ALIPHATIC NUCLEOPHILIC SUBSTITUTION

In nucleophilic substitution the attacking reagent (the nucleophile) brings an electron pair to the substrate, using this pair to form the new bond, and the leaving group (the nucleofuge) comes away with an electron pair:

$$R\overset{\curvearrowright}{-}X + \bar{Y} \longrightarrow R{-}Y + \bar{X}$$

This equation says nothing about charges. Y may be neutral or negatively charged; RX may be neutral or positively charged; so there are four charge types, examples of which are

Type I $\quad R{-}I + OH^- \longrightarrow R{-}OH + I^-$

Type II $\quad R{-}I + NMe_3 \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}Me_3 + I^-$

Type III $\quad R{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}Me_3 + OH^- \longrightarrow R{-}OH + NMe_3$

Type IV $\quad R{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}Me_3 + H_2S \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{\oplus}{S}H_2 + NMe_3$

In all cases, Y must have an unshared pair of electrons, so that all nucleophiles are Lewis bases. When Y is the solvent, the reaction is called *solvolysis*. Nucleophilic substitution at an aromatic carbon is considered in Chapter 13.

Nucleophilic substitution at an alkyl carbon is said to *alkylate* the nucleophile. For example, the above reaction between RI and NMe_3 is an *alkylation* of trimethylamine. Similarly, nucleophilic substitution at an acyl carbon is an *acylation* of the nucleophile.

MECHANISMS

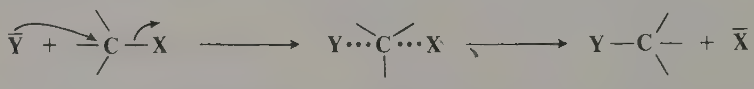
Several distinct mechanisms are possible for aliphatic nucleophilic substitution reactions, depending on the substrate, nucleophile, leaving group, and reaction conditions. In all of them, however, the attacking reagent carries the electron pair with it, so that the similarities are greater than the differences. Mechanisms that occur at a saturated carbon atom are considered first.[1] By far the most common are the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms.

---

[1] For monographs on this subject, see Hartshorn, "Aliphatic Nucleophilic Substitution," Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1973; Bunton, "Nucleophilic Substitution at a Saturated Carbon Atom," American Elsevier, New York, 1963; Thornton, "Solvolysis Mechanisms," Ronald Press, New York, 1964. For reviews, see de la Mare and Swedlund, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Halogen Bond," pt. 1, pp. 409–490, Wiley, New York, 1973; Streitwieser, *Chem. Rev.* **56**, 571–752 (1956). The latter review has been reprinted and more recent material added in Streitwieser, "Solvolytic Displacement Reactions," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962.

The SN2 Mechanism

SN2 stands for *substitution nucleophilic bimolecular*. In this mechanism there is *backside attack*: the nucleophile approaches the substrate from a position 180° away from the leaving group. The reaction is a one-step process with no intermediate (see, however, p. 266). The C—Y bond is formed as the C—X bond is broken:



1

The energy necessary to break the C—X bond is supplied by simultaneous formation of the C—Y bond. The position of the atoms at the top of the curve of free energy of activation can be represented as **1.** Of course the reaction does not stop here: this is the transition state. The group X must leave as the group Y comes in, because at no time can the carbon have more than eight electrons in its outer shell. When the transition state is reached, the central carbon atom has gone from its initial sp^3 hybridization to an sp^2 state with an approximately perpendicular p orbital. One lobe of this p orbital overlaps with the nucleophile and the other with the leaving group. This is why a frontside SN2 mechanism has never been observed. In a hypothetical frontside transition state, both the nucleophile and the leaving group would have to overlap with the same lobe of the p orbital. The backside mechanism involves the maximum amount of overlap throughout the course of the reaction. During the transition state the three nonreacting groups and the central carbon are approximately coplanar. They will be exactly coplanar if both the entering and the leaving group are the same.

There is a large amount of evidence for the SN2 mechanism. First we consider the kinetic evidence. Since both the nucleophile and the substrate are involved in the rate-determining step (the only step, in this case), the reaction should be first order in each component, second order overall, and satisfy the rate expression

$$\text{Rate} = k[\mathbf{RX}][\mathbf{Y}] \tag{1}$$

This rate law has been found to apply. It has been noted that the 2 in SN2 stands for bimolecular. It must be remembered that this is not always the same as second order (see p. 192). If a large excess of nucleophile is present—for example, if it is the solvent—the mechanism may still be bimolecular, though the experimentally determined kinetics will be first order:

$$\text{Rate} = k[\mathbf{RX}] \tag{2}$$

As previously mentioned (p. 194), such kinetics are called *pseudo-first order*.

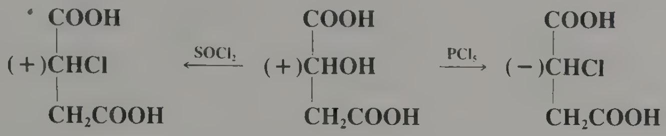
The kinetic evidence is a necessary but not a sufficient condition, since other mechanisms can be devised that would also be consistent with these data. Much more convincing evidence is obtained from the fact that the mechanism predicts inversion of configuration when substitution occurs at a chiral carbon and this has been observed many times.[2] This inversion of configuration (see p. 98) is called the *Walden inversion* and was observed long before the SN2 mechanism was formulated by Hughes and Ingold.[3]

---

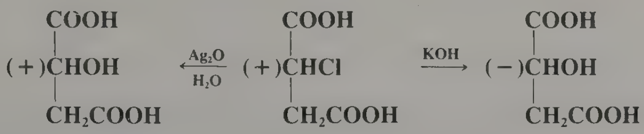
[2] For a reported example of an SN2 mechanism proceeding with partial retention of configuration, see Cayzergues, Georgoulis, and Ville, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 325 (1978). Previous reports of such behavior have all been proven wrong.

[3] Cowdrey, Hughes, Ingold, Masterman, and Scott, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1252 (1937). The idea that the addition of one group and removal of the other are simultaneous was first suggested by Lewis in "Valence and the Structure of Atoms and Molecules," p. 113, Chemical Catalog Company, New York, 1923. The idea that a one-step substitution leads to inversion was proposed by Olsen, *J. Chem. Phys.* **1,** 418 (1933).

At this point it is desirable for us to see just how it was originally proved that a given substitution reaction proceeds with inversion of configuration, even before the mechanism was known. Walden presented a number of examples[4] in which inversion *must* have taken place. For example, (+)-malic acid could be converted to (+)-chlorosuccinic acid by thionyl chloride and to (−)-chlorosuccinic acid by phosphorus pentachloride:

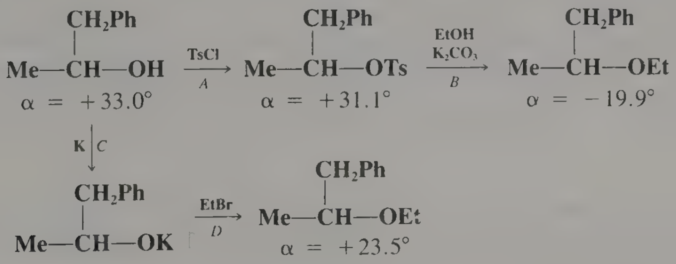

COOH
(+)CHCl
CH₂COOH
SOCl₂
COOH
(+)CHOH
CH₂COOH
PCl₅
COOH
(−)CHCl
CH₂COOH

One of these must be an inversion and the other a retention of configuration, but the question is which is which? The signs of rotation are of no help in answering this question since, as we have seen in Chapter 4 (p. 95), rotation need not be related to configuration. Another example discovered by Walden is


COOH
(+)CHOH
CH₂COOH
Ag₂O
H₂O
COOH
(+)CHCl
CH₂COOH
KOH
COOH
(−)CHOH
CH₂COOH

Once again, one reaction and only one must be an inversion, but which?[5] It may also be noticed [illustrated by the use of thionyl chloride on (+)-malic acid and treatment of the product with KOH] that it is possible to convert an optically active compound into its enantiomer.[6]

A series of experiments designed to settle the matter of exactly where inversion takes place was performed by Phillips, Kenyon, and co-workers. In 1923, Phillips carried out the following cycle:[7]


CH₂Ph
Me—CH—OH
α = +33.0°
TsCl
A
CH₂Ph
Me—CH—OTs
α = +31.1°
EtOH
K₂CO₃
B
CH₂Ph
Me—CH—OEt
α = −19.9°
K
C
CH₂Ph
Me—CH—OK
EtBr
D
CH₂Ph
Me—CH—OEt
α = +23.5°

In this cycle, (+)-1-phenyl-2-propanol is converted to its ethyl ether by two routes, path *AB* giving the (−) ether, and path *CD* giving the (+) ether. Therefore, at least one of the four steps must be an inversion. It is extremely unlikely that there is inversion in step *A*, *C*, or *D*, since in all these steps the C—O bond is unbroken, and in none of them could the oxygen of the bond have come from the reagent. There is therefore a high probability that *A*, *C*, and *D* proceeded with retention, leaving *B* as the inversion. A number of other such cycles were carried out, always with nonconflicting results.[8] These experiments not only definitely showed that certain specific reactions proceed with inversion, but also established the configurations of many compounds.

---

[4] Walden, *Ber.* **26**, 210 (1893), **29**, 133 (1896), **32**, 1855 (1899).

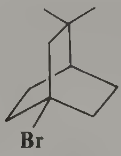
[5] For a discussion of these cycles, see Kryger and Rasmussen, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **26**, 2349 (1972).

[6] The student may wonder just what the mechanism is in cases where retention of configuration is involved since it certainly is not simple S_N2. As we shall see later, the reaction between malic acid and thionyl chloride is an S_Ni process (p. 286), while a neighboring-group mechanism (p. 268) is involved in the treatment of chlorosuccinic acid with silver oxide.

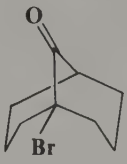
[7] Phillips, *J. Chem. Soc.* **123**, 44 (1923). For analyses of such cycles and general descriptions of more complex ones, see Garwood and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 4575 (1970); Cram and Cram, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **31**, 1–43 (1972).

Walden inversion has been found at a primary carbon atom by the use of a chiral substrate containing a deuterium and a hydrogen atom at the carbon bearing the leaving group.[9] Inversion of configuration has also been found for SN2 reactions proceeding in the gas phase.[10]

Another kind of evidence for the SN2 mechanism comes from compounds with potential leaving groups at bridgehead carbons. If the SN2 mechanism is correct, these compounds should not be able to react by this mechanism, since the nucleophile cannot approach from the rear. Among the many known examples of unsuccessful reaction attempts at bridgeheads under SN2 conditions[11] are treatment of the [2.2.2] system **2** with ethoxide ion[12] and treatment of the [3.3.1] system **3** with sodium iodide in acetone.[13] In these cases, open-chain analogs underwent the reactions readily. As a final example of evidence for the SN2 mechanism, the reaction between optically active 2-octyl iodide and radioactive iodide ion may be mentioned:



2



3

$$C_6H_{13}CHMeI + {}^*I^- \longrightarrow C_6H_{13}CHMe^*I + I^-$$

We expect racemization in this reaction, since if we start with the pure *R* isomer, at first each exchange will produce an *S* isomer, but with increasing concentration of *S* isomer, *it* will begin to compete for I^- with the *R* isomer, until at the end a racemic mixture is left, which will remain at equilibrium. The point investigated was a comparison of the rate of inversion with the rate of uptake of radioactive $^*I^-$. It was found[14] that the rates were identical within experimental error:

Rate of inversion	$2.88 \pm 0.03 \times 10^{-5}$
Rate of exchange	$3.00 \pm 0.25 \times 10^{-5}$

What was actually measured was the rate of racemization, which is twice the rate of inversion, since each inversion creates, in effect, two racemic molecules. The significance of this result is that it shows that every act of exchange is an act of inversion.

Eschenmoser and co-workers have provided strong evidence that the transition state in an SN2 reaction must be linear.[15] Base treatment of methyl α-tosyl-*o*-toluenesulfonate (**4**) gives the *o*-(1-

---

[8] For example, see Kenyon, Phillips, and Turley, *J. Chem. Soc.* **127,** 399 (1925); Kenyon, Phillips, and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc.* 173 (1933); Kenyon, Phillips, and Shutt, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1663 (1935).

[9] Streitwieser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 5014 (1953).

[10] Lieder and Brauman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4028 (1974); Speranza and Angelini, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3115 (1980).

[11] For a review of reactions at bridgehead carbons, see Fort and Schleyer, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 283–370 (1966).

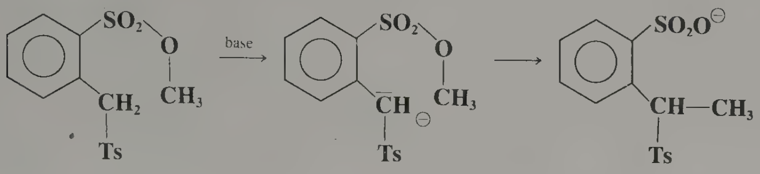
[12] Doering, Levitz, Sayigh, Sprecher, and Whelan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 1008 (1953). Actually, a slow substitution was observed in this case, but not by an SN2 mechanism.

[13] Cope and Synerholm, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 5228 (1950).

[14] Hughes, Juliusburger, Masterman, Topley, and Weiss, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1525 (1935).

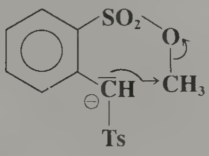
[15] Tenud, Farooq, Seibl, and Eschenmoser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 2059 (1970). See also King and McGarrity, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1140 (1979).

tosylethyl)benzenesulfonate ion (**6**). The role of the base is to remove the α-proton to give the ion



4 **5** **6**

5. It might be supposed that the negatively charged carbon of **5** attacks the methyl group in an internal SN2 process:



5

but this is not the case. Crossover experiments[15] (p. 499) have shown that the negatively charged carbon attacks the methyl group of another molecule rather than the nearby one in the same molecule, that is, the reaction is intermolecular and not intramolecular, despite the more favorable entropy of the latter pathway (p. 185). The obvious conclusion is that intramolecular attack does not take place because complete linearity cannot be attained. This behavior is in sharp contrast to that in cases in which the leaving group is not constrained (p. 268), where intramolecular SN2 mechanisms operate freely.

It has now been shown that the SN2 mechanism can operate in reactions of all four of the charge types shown on p. 255, even in the case of type III, where a negatively charged nucleophile must attack a positively charged substrate at a position in the molecule farthest away from the positive charge,[16] e.g., $(R)\text{-PhCHMe—}\overset{\oplus}{\text{S}}\text{Me}_2 + \text{N}_3^- \longrightarrow (S)\text{-PhCHMe—N}_3 + \text{Me}_2\text{S}$.

For a list of some of the more important reactions that operate by the SN2 mechanism, see Table 7 (p. 306).

The SN1 Mechanism

The most ideal version of the SN1 mechanism (*substitution nucleophilic unimolecular*) consists of two steps (once again, possible charges on the substrate and nucleophile are not shown):

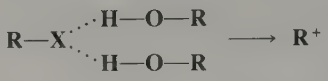
$$\text{Step 1} \qquad \text{R—X} \xrightleftharpoons{\text{slow}} \text{R}^+ + \text{X}$$

$$\text{Step 2} \qquad \text{R}^+ + \text{Y} \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} \text{R—Y}$$

The first step is a slow ionization of the substrate and is the rate-determining step. The second is a rapid reaction between the intermediate carbocation and the nucleophile. The ionization is always assisted by the solvent, since the energy necessary to break the bond is largely recovered by solvation of R^+ and of X. For example, the ionization of *t*-BuCl to *t*-Bu^+ and Cl^- in the gas phase without a solvent requires 150 kcal/mol. In the absence of a solvent such a process simply would not take place, except at very high temperatures. In water this ionization requires only 20 kcal/mol. The difference is solvation energy. In cases where the role of the solvent is solely to assist in departure of the leaving group from the frontside, that is, where there is a complete absence of backside (SN2) participation by solvent molecules, the mechanism is called *limiting* SN*1*. There is kinetic and other evidence[17] that in pulling X away from RX, two molecules of a protic solvent form weak hydrogen bonds with X

---

[16] Harvey, Hoye, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 800 (1960); Hughes and Whittingham, *J. Chem. Soc.* 806 (1960); Hoffmann and Hughes, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1252, 1259 (1964). See also Hall, Gupta, and Morton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103**, 2416 (1981).



$$\mathrm{R{-}X}\begin{smallmatrix}\cdots\mathrm{H{-}O{-}R}\\ \cdots\mathrm{H{-}O{-}R}\end{smallmatrix}\longrightarrow \mathrm{R^+}$$

In looking for evidence for the SN1 mechanism the first thought is that it should be a first-order reaction following the rate law

$$\text{Rate} = k[\mathbf{RX}] \tag{3}$$

Since the slow step involves only the substrate, the rate should be dependent only on the concentration of that. Although the solvent is necessary to assist in the process of ionization, it does not enter the rate expression, since it is present in large excess. However, the simple rate law given in Eq. (3) is not sufficient to account for all the data. Many cases are known where pure first-order kinetics are followed, but in many other cases more complicated kinetics are found. We can explain this by taking into account the reversibility of the first step. The X formed in this step competes with Y for the cation and the rate law must be modified as follows (see Chapter 6):

$$\mathbf{RX} \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} \mathbf{R^+ + X}$$

$$\mathbf{R^+ + Y} \xrightarrow{k_2} \mathbf{RY}$$

$$\text{Rate} = \frac{k_1k_2[\mathbf{RX}][\mathbf{Y}]}{k_{-1}[\mathbf{X}] + k_2[\mathbf{Y}]}$$

At the beginning of the reaction, when the concentration of X is very small, $k_{-1}[X]$ is negligible compared with $k_2[Y]$ and the rate law is reduced to Eq. (3). Indeed, SN1 reactions generally do display simple first-order kinetics in their initial stages. Most kinetic studies of SN1 reactions are carried out on solvolytic reactions, since most SN1 reactions fall into this category. In the later stages of SN1 solvolyses, [X] becomes large and Eq. (4) predicts that the rate should decrease. This is found to be the case for diarylmethyl halides,[18] though not for *t*-butyl halides, which follow Eq. (3) for the entire reaction.[19] An explanation for this difference is that *t*-butyl cations are less selective than the relatively stable diarylmethyl type (p. 145). Although halide ion is a much more powerful nucleophile than water, there is much more water available since it is the solvent.[20] The selective diphenylmethyl cation survives many collisions with solvent molecules before combining with a reactive halide, but the less selective *t*-butyl ion cannot wait for a reactive but relatively rare halide ion and combines with the solvent.

---

[17] Blandamer, Burgess, Duce, Symons, Robertson, and Scott, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 130 (1982).

[18] Benfey, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2488 (1952).

[19] Bateman, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 960 (1940).

[20] In the experiments mentioned, the solvent was actually "70%" or "80%" aqueous acetone. "80%" aqueous acetone consists of 4 vol of dry acetone and 1 vol of water.

If the X formed during the reaction can decrease the rate, at least in some cases, it should be possible to *add* X from the outside and further decrease the rate in that way. This retardation of rate by addition of X is called the *common-ion effect* or the *mass-law effect*. Once again, addition of halide ions decreases the rate for diphenylmethyl but not for *t*-butyl halides. Evidence that the common-ion effect operates even with *t*-butyl halides is that when *t*-butyl chloride was hydrolyzed in the presence of $^{36}Cl^-$ (which is radioactive), radioactive *t*-butyl chloride was detected.[21]

One factor that complicates the kinetic picture is the *salt effect*. An increase in ionic strength of the solution usually increases the rate of an SN1 reaction (p. 318). But when the reaction is of charge type II, where both Y and RX are neutral, so that X is negatively charged (and most solvolyses are of this charge type), then the ionic strength increases as the reaction proceeds and this increases the rate. This effect must be taken into account in studying the kinetics. Incidentally, the fact that the addition of outside ions *increases* the rate of most SN1 reactions makes especially impressive the *decrease* in rate caused by the common ion.

It may be noted that the pseudo-first-order rate law for an SN2 reaction in the presence of a large excess of Y [Eq. (2)] is the same as that for an ordinary SN1 reaction [Eq. (3)]. It is thus not possible to tell these cases apart by simple kinetic measurements. However, we can often distinguish between them by the common-ion effect mentioned above. Addition of a common ion will not markedly affect the rate of an SN2 reaction beyond the effect caused by other ions. Unfortunately, as we have seen, not all SN1 reactions show the common-ion effect, and this test fails for *t*-butyl and similar cases.

The role of the solvent in assisting the ionization of the substrate may be illustrated by experiments involving ethanolysis of benzhydryl chloride to give benzhydryl ethyl ether. The addition of small amounts of water linearly increases the rate of the reaction, but the product is still almost entirely the ether.[22] The added water clearly cannot be attacking the substrate from the rear (or a proportionate amount of benzhydrol would be found in the product). It must be helping the chloride ion to leave and obviously performs this task better than does ethanol.

Kinetic studies also provide other evidence for the SN1 mechanism. If this mechanism operates essentially as shown on p. 259 then the rate should be the same for a given substrate under a given set of conditions, *regardless of the identity of the nucleophile or its concentration.* One experiment that demonstrates this was carried out by Bateman, Hughes, and Ingold.[23] In this experiment benzhydryl chloride was treated in SO_2 with the nucleophiles fluoride ion, pyridine, and triethylamine at several concentrations of each nucleophile. In each case the initial rate of the reaction was approximately the same when corrections were made for the salt effect. The same type of behavior has been shown in a number of other cases, even when the reagents are as different in their nucleophilicities (see p. 305) as H_2O and OH^-.

Further evidence for the SN1 mechanism is that reactions run under SN1 conditions fail or proceed very slowly at bridgehead positions.[24] SN2 reactions also fail with these substrates (p. 258), though for a different reason. If SN1 reactions require carbocations and if carbocations must be planar or nearly planar, then it is no surprise that bridgehead carbon atoms, which cannot assume planarity, do not become the seat of carbocations. As an example, 1-chloroapocamphane (**7**) boiled 21 hr with 30% KOH in 80% ethanol or 48 hr with aqueous ethanolic silver nitrate, gave no reaction in either case,[25] although analogous open-chain systems reacted readily. According to this theory, if the rings are large enough, SN1 reactions should be possible, since near-planar carbocations might be expected there. This turns out to be the case. For example, [2.2.2] bicyclic systems undergo SN1 reactions much faster than smaller bicyclic systems, though the reaction is still slower than with open-chain systems. Proceeding to a still larger system, the bridgehead 1-bicyclo[3.2.2]nonyl cation (**8**) is actually stable enough to be kept in solution in SbF_5-SO_2ClF at temperatures below −50°C.[26]

---

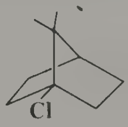
[21] Bunton and Nayak, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3854 (1959).

[22] Farinacci and Hammett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **59,** 2542 (1937), **60,** 3097 (1938).

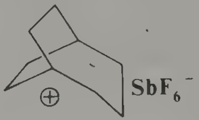
[23] Bateman, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1011 (1940).

[24] For a review, see Fort, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 4, pp. 1783–1835, Wiley, New York, 1973.

[25] Bartlett and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61,** 3184 (1939).

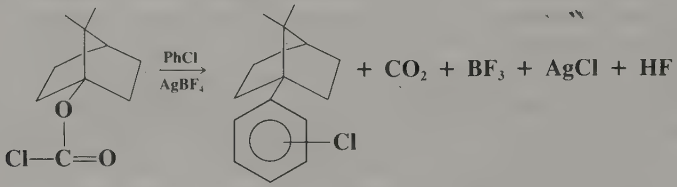


7



8

Certain nucleophilic substitution reactions that normally involve carbocations can take place at [2.2.1] bridgeheads[27] (though it is not certain that carbocations are actually involved in all cases) if the leaving group used is of the type that cannot function as a nucleophile (and thus come back) once it has gone, e.g.,



In this example,[28] chlorobenzene is the nucleophile (see **1-13**). Halogen exchange at a bridgehead [2.2.1] position has also been reported.[29]

Additional evidence for the SN1 mechanism—in particular, for the intermediacy of carbocations—is that solvolysis rates of alkyl chlorides in ethanol parallel carbocation stabilities as determined by heats of ionization measured in superacid solutions (p. 142).[30]

In certain reactions where an SN1 mechanism would seem to be obviously indicated, it has been shown (by esr detection of the intermediate) that free radicals are actually involved.[31] These are cases where a carbocation is a good electron acceptor and the nucleophile a good electron donor. Such mechanisms are often called *SET* (*single-electron transfer*) *mechanisms*.[32] An example is the reaction between the triphenylmethyl cation and the *t*-butoxide ion, which proceeds in this manner.[33]

$$\mathbf{Ph_3C^+ + \mathit{t}\text{-}BuO^- \longrightarrow Ph_3C\cdot + \mathit{t}\text{-}BuO\cdot \longrightarrow \mathit{t}\text{-}BuOCPh_3}$$

---

[26] Olah, Liang, Wiseman, and Chong, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 4927 (1972).

[27] Ref. 25; Beak and Trancik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2714 (1968); White, Tiwari, and Todd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4734 (1968); Clive and Denyer, *Chem. Commun.* 1112 (1971); White, McGirk, Aufdermarsh, Tiwari, and Todd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8107 (1973); Beak and Harris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6363 (1974).

[28] For a review of reactions with the OCOCl leaving group, see Beak, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 230–236 (1976).

[29] McKinley, Pincock, and Scott, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2030 (1973).

[30] Arnett and Petro, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5408 (1978); Arnett, Petro, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 522 (1979); Arnett and Pienta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3329 (1980).

[31] Similar behavior has been reported for "SN2" reactions: Bank and Noyd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8203 (1973).

[32] For a review, see Chanon and Tobe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 1–23 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 27–49].

[33] Bilevitch, Bubnov, and Okhlobystin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3465 (1968). For other claimed examples, see Ashby, Goel, and DePriest, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2429 (1981); Ashby, Goel, and Park, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4209 (1981). See, however, Huszthy, Lempert, and Simig, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 126 (1982).

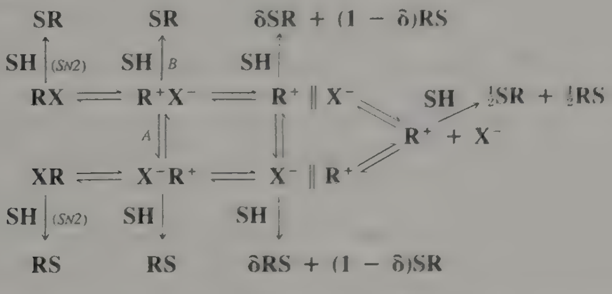
Ion Pairs in the SN1 Mechanism[34]

Like the kinetic evidence, the stereochemical evidence for the SN1 mechanism is less clear-cut than it is for the SN2 mechanism. If there is a free carbocation, it is planar (p. 148), and the nucleophile should attack with equal facility from either side of the plane, resulting in complete racemization. Although many first-order substitutions do give complete racemization, many others do not. Typically there is 5 to 20% inversion, though in a few cases, a small amount of retention of configuration has been found. These and other results have led to the conclusion that in many SN1 reactions at least some of the products are not formed from free carbocations but rather from *ion pairs*. According to this concept,[35] SN1 reactions proceed in this manner:

$$\mathrm{R{-}X} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\mathbf{9}}{\mathrm{R^+\,X^-}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\mathbf{10}}{\mathrm{R^+\,\|\,X^-}} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\mathbf{11}}{\mathrm{R^+ + X^-}}$$

where **9** is an *intimate, contact*, or *tight* ion pair, **10** a *loose*, or *solvent-separated* ion pair, and **11** the dissociated ions (each surrounded by molecules of solvent).[36] In **9** and **10**, X^- is called the *counterion* or *gegenion*. The reaction in which the intimate ion pair recombines to give the original substrate is referred to as *internal return*. The reaction products can result from attack by the nucleophile at any stage. In the intimate ion pair **9**, R^+ does not behave like the free cation of **11**. There is probably significant bonding between R^+ and X^- and asymmetry can well be maintained.[37] X^- "solvates" the cation on the side from which it departed, while solvent molecules near **9** can only solvate it from the opposite side. Nucleophilic attack by a solvent molecule on **9** thus leads to inversion.

A complete picture of the possibilities for solvolysis reactions in a solvent SH (ignoring the possibilities of elimination or rearrangement—see Chapters 17 and 18) is the following,[38] though in any particular case it is unlikely that all these reactions occur:



In this scheme RS and SR represent enantiomers, etc., and δ represents some fraction. The following are the possibilities: (1) Direct attack by SH on RX gives SR (complete inversion) in a straight SN2 process. (2) If the intimate ion pair $R^+\,X^-$ is formed, then the solvent can attack at this stage. This can lead to total inversion if reaction *A* does not take place or to a combination of inversion and racemization if there is competition between *A* and *B*. (3) If the solvent-separated ion pair is formed, SH can attack here. The stereochemistry is not maintained as tightly and more racemization (perhaps total) is expected. (4) Finally, if free R^+ is formed, it is planar, and attack by SH gives complete racemization.

---

[34] For reviews of ion pairs in SN reactions, see Beletskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **44**, 1067–1090 (1975); Harris, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11**, 89–173 (1974); Raber, Harris, and Schleyer, in Szwarc, "Ions and Ion Pairs in Organic Reactions," vol. 2, pp. 247–374, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[35] Proposed by Winstein, Clippinger, Fainberg, Heck, and Robinson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78**, 328 (1956).

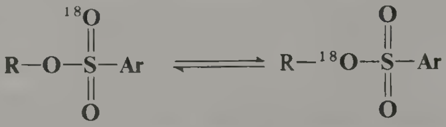
[36] For a review of the energy factors involved in the recombination of ion pairs, see Kessler and Feigel, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15**, 2–8 (1982).

[37] Fry, Lancelot, Lam, Harris, Bingham, Raber, Hall, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 2538 (1970).

[38] Shiner and Fisher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 2553 (1971).

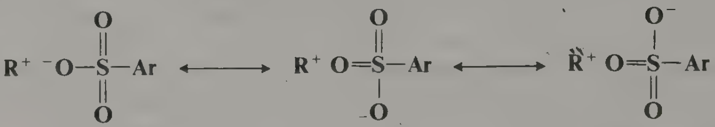
The ion-pair concept thus predicts that SN1 reactions can display either complete racemization or partial inversion. The fact that this behavior is generally found is evidence that ion pairs are involved in many SN1 reactions. There is much other evidence for the intervention of ion pairs:[39]

1. The compound 2-octyl brosylate was labeled at the sulfone oxygen with ^{18}O and solvolyzed. The unreacted brosylate recovered at various stages of solvolysis had the ^{18}O considerably, though not completely, scrambled:[40]



$$\mathrm{R{-}O{-}\overset{\overset{^{18}O}{\|}}{\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{S}}{-}Ar \rightleftharpoons R{-}^{18}O{-}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{S}}{-}Ar}$$

In an intimate ion pair, the three oxygens become equivalent:



$$\mathrm{R^+\ {}^-O{-}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{S}}{-}Ar \longleftrightarrow R^+\ O{=}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{\underset{\underset{{}^-O}{|}}{S}}{-}Ar \longleftrightarrow R^+\ O{=}\overset{\overset{O^-}{|}}{\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{S}}{-}Ar}$$

Similar results were obtained with several other sulfonate esters.[41] The possibility must be considered that the scrambling resulted from ionization of one molecule of $ROSO_2Ar$ to R^+ and $ArSO_2O^-$ followed by attack by the $ArSO_2O^-$ ion on *another* carbocation or perhaps on a molecule of $ROSO_2Ar$ in an SN2 process. However, this was ruled out by solvolyzing unlabeled substrate in the presence of labeled $HOSO_2Ar$. These experiments showed that there was some intermolecular exchange (3 to 20%), but not nearly enough to account for the amount of scrambling found in the original experiments. Similar scrambling was found in solvolysis of labeled esters $R{-}^{18}O{-}COR'$, where the leaving group is $R'COO^-$.[42] In this case also, the external addition of $RCOO^-$ did not result in significant exchange. Since the oxygen atoms of the intimate ion pair are not always completely equivalent (R^+ may remain closer to the oxygen from which it cleaved), such experiments provide a lower limit for ion-pair formation and internal return. In any given case, they could be a good deal higher.[43]

2. The *special salt effect*. The addition of $LiClO_4$ or LiBr in the acetolysis of certain tosylates produced an initial steep rate acceleration which then decreased to the normal linear acceleration (caused by the ordinary salt effect).[44] This is interpreted as follows: the ClO_4^- (or Br^-) traps the solvent-separated ion pair to give $R^+ \parallel ClO_4^-$ which, being unstable under these conditions, goes to product. Hence, the amount of solvent-separated ion pair that would have returned to the starting material is reduced, and the rate of the overall reaction is increased. The special salt effect has been directly observed by the use of picosecond absorption spectroscopy.[44a]

---

[39] For further evidence beyond that given here, see Winstein, Baker, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2072 (1964); Streitwieser and Walsh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3686 (1965); Sommer and Carey, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 800, 2473 (1967); Kwart, Givens, and Collins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5532 (1969); Kwart and Irvine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5541 (1969); Harris, Becker, Fagan, and Walden, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4484 (1974); Bunton, Huang, and Paik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 6262 (1975); Humski, Sendijarević, and Shiner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2865 (1976); Maskill, Thompson, and Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1239 (1981); McManus, Safavy, and Roberts, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4388 (1982); Ref. 34.

[40] Diaz, Lazdins, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1904 (1968).

[41] Goering and Thies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2967, 2968 (1968); Goering and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1628 (1980); Paradisi and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 946 (1981); Yukawa, Morisaki, Tsuji, Kim, and Ando, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5187 (1981); Chang and le Noble, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 3708 (1983).

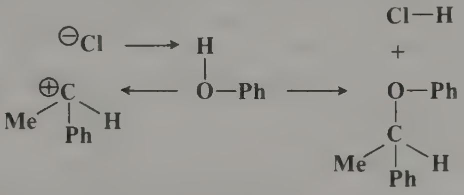
[42] Goering and Levy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3853 (1962), **86,** 120 (1964); Goering, Briody, and Sandrock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7401 (1970); Goering and Hopf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1224 (1971).

[43] See, for example, Goering and Humski, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 920 (1975).

[44] Ref. 35; Winstein, Klinedinst, and Clippinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4986 (1961); Cristol, Noreen, and Nachtigall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2187 (1972).

3. We have previously discussed the possibilities of racemization or inversion of the *product* RS of a solvolysis reaction. However, the formation of an ion pair followed by internal return may also affect the stereochemistry of the *substrate* molecule RX. Cases have been found where internal return racemizes an original optically active RX, an example being solvolysis in aqueous acetone of α-*p*-anisylethyl *p*-nitrobenzoate,[45] while in other cases partial or complete retention is found, for example, solvolysis in aqueous acetone of *p*-chlorobenzhydryl *p*-nitrobenzoate.[46] Racemization of RX is presumably caused by the pathway: $RX \rightleftharpoons R^+X^- \rightleftharpoons X^-R^+ \rightleftharpoons XR$. Evidence for ion pairs is that, in some cases where internal return involves racemization, it has been shown that such racemization is *faster* than solvolysis. For example, optically active *p*-chlorobenzhydryl chloride racemizes about 30 times faster than it solvolyzes in acetic acid.[47]

In a few cases, SN1 reactions have been found to proceed with partial retention (20 to 50%) of configuration. Ion pairs have been invoked to explain some of these.[48] For example, it has been proposed that the phenolysis of optically active α-phenylethyl chloride, in which the ether of net retained configuration is obtained, involves a four-center mechanism:



This conclusion is strengthened by the fact that partial retention was obtained in this system only with chloride or other neutral leaving groups; with leaving groups bearing a positive charge, which are much less likely to hydrogen bond with the solvent, no retention was found.[49] Partial retention can also arise when the ion pair is shielded at the backside by an additive such as acetonitrile or acetone.[50]

The difference between the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms is in the timing of the steps. In the SN1 mechanism, first X leaves, then Y attacks. In the SN2 case, the two things happen simultaneously. One could imagine a third possibility: first the attack of Y and then the removal of X. This is not possible at a saturated carbon, since it would mean more than eight electrons in the other shell of carbon. However, this type of mechanism is possible and indeed occurs at other types of substrate (p. 290; Chapter 13).

Mixed SN1 and SN2 Mechanisms

Some reactions of a given substrate under a given set of conditions display all the characteristics of SN2 mechanisms; other reactions seem to proceed by SN1 mechanisms, but cases are found that cannot be characterized so easily. There seems to be something in between, a mechanistic "borderline" region.[51] At least two broad theories have been devised to explain these phenomena. One theory holds that intermediate behavior is caused by a mechanism that is neither "pure" SN1 nor "pure" SN2, but some "in-between" type. According to the second theory, there is no intermediate mechanism at all, and borderline behavior is caused by simultaneous operation, in the same flask, of both the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms; that is, some molecules react by the SN1, while others react by the SN2 mechanism.

[44a] Simon and Peters, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6142 (1982).

[45] Goering, Briody, and Sandrock, Ref. 42.

[46] Goering, Briody, and Levy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3059 (1963).

[47] Winstein, Gall, Hojo, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1010 (1960). See also Winstein, Hojo, and Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* no. 22, 12 (1960); Shiner, Hartshorn, and Vogel, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3604 (1973).

[48] Okamoto, Yamada, Nitta, and Shingu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 299 (1966); Okamoto, Hayashi, Komatsu, and Shingu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40,** 624 (1967); Okamoto, Takeuchi, and Inoue, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 842 (1980).

[49] Okamoto, Kinoshita, and Shingu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 1545 (1970).

[50] Okamoto, Nitta, Dohi, and Shingu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 3220 (1971).

One formulation of the intermediate-mechanism theory is that of Sneen.[52] The formulation is in fact very broad and applies not only to borderline behavior but to all nucleophilic substitutions at a saturated carbon.[53] According to Sneen, all SN1 and SN2 reactions can be accommodated by one basic mechanism (the *ion-pair mechanism*). The substrate first ionizes to an intermediate ion pair which is then converted to products:

$$\mathbf{RX} \xrightleftharpoons{k_1} \mathbf{R^+\,X^-} \xrightleftharpoons{k_2} \text{products}$$

The difference between the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms is that in the former case the *formation* of the ion pair (k_1) is rate-determining, while in the SN2 mechanism its *destruction* (k_2) is rate-determining. Borderline behavior is found where the rates of formation and destruction of the ion pair are of the same order of magnitude.[54] However, a number of investigators have asserted that these results could also be explained in other ways.[55]

There is evidence for the Sneen formulation where the leaving group has a positive charge. In this case there is a cation–molecule pair ($RX^+ \rightarrow R^+ \quad X$) instead of the ion pair that would be present if the leaving group were uncharged. Katritzky, le Noble, and co-workers found that when such a reaction was run at varying high pressures, there was a minimum in the plot of rate constant vs. pressure.[55a] A minimum of this sort usually indicates a change in mechanism, and the interpretation in this case was that the normal SN2 mechanism operates at higher pressures and the cation–molecule mechanism at lower pressures.

An alternative view that also favors an intermediate mechanism is that of Schleyer and coworkers,[56] who believe that the key to the problem is varying degrees of nucleophilic solvent assistance to ion-pair formation. They have proposed an SN2 (intermediate) mechanism.[57]

Among the experiments that have been cited for the viewpoint that borderline behavior results from simultaneous SN1 and SN2 mechanisms is the behavior of 4-methoxybenzyl chloride in 70% aqueous acetone.[58] In this solvent, hydrolysis (that is, conversion to 4-methoxybenzyl alcohol) occurs by an SN1 mechanism. When azide ions are added, the alcohol is still a product, but now 4-methoxybenzyl azide is another product. Addition of azide ions increases the rate of ionization (by the salt effect) but *decreases* the rate of hydrolysis. If more carbocations are produced but fewer go to the alcohol, then some azide must be formed by reaction with carbocations—an SN1 process. However, the rate of ionization is always *less* than the total rate of reaction, so that some azide must also form by an SN2 mechanism.[58] Thus, the conclusion is that SN1 and SN2 mechanisms operate simultaneously.[59]

---

[51] For an essay on borderline mechanisms in general, see Jencks, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **10,** 345–375 (1982).

[52] Weiner and Sneen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 292 (1965); Sneen and Larsen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 362, 6031 (1969); Sneen, Felt, and Dickason, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 638 (1973); Sneen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 46–53 (1973).

[53] Including substitution at an allylic carbon; see Sneen and Bradley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6975 (1972); Sneen and Carter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6990 (1972); Bordwell and Mecca, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 123, 127 (1975); Bordwell, Wiley, and Mecca, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 132 (1975); Kevill and Degenhardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1465 (1979).

[54] For evidence for this point of view, see Ref. 52; Sneen, Carter, and Kay, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2594 (1966); Sneen and Robbins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7868 (1972); Graczyk and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3255 (1974); Peeters and Anteunis, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 312 (1975); Pross, Aronovitch, and Koren, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 197 (1978); Blandamer, Robertson, Scott, and Vrielink, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2585 (1980); Stein, Tencer, Moffatt, Dawe, and Sweet, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3539 (1980).

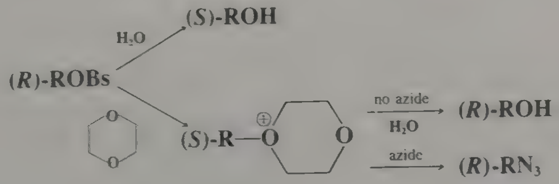
[55] See, for example, Gregory, Kohnstam, Queen, and Reid, *Chem. Commun.* 797 (1971); Kurz and Harris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4117 (1970); Raber, Harris, Hall, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4821 (1971); McLennan, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1577 (1972), 481 (1974), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 281–287 (1976), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4689 (1975); McLennan and Martin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4215 (1973); Raaen, Juhlke, Brown, and Collins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5928 (1974); Gregoriou, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 233 (1974); Queen and Matts, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1503 (1975); Stein, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 519 (1976); Gregoriou, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4605, 4767 (1976); Stephan, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 779 (1977); Katritzky, Musumarra, and Sakizadeh, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3831 (1981). For a reply to some of these objections, see Sneen and Robbins, Ref. 54. For a discussion, see Klumpp, "Reactivity in Organic Chemistry," pp. 442–450, Wiley, New York, 1982.

[55a] Katritzky, Sakizadeh, Gabrielsen, and le Noble, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1879 (1984).

[56] Bentley and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7658 (1976); Bentley, Bowen, Morten, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5466 (1981).

[57] For additional evidence for this view, see Laureillard, Casadevall, and Casadevall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1731 (1980), *Helv. Chim. Acta* **67,** 352 (1984); McLennan, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1316 (1981).

Some nucleophilic substitution reactions that seem to involve a "borderline" mechanism actually do not. Thus, one of the principal indications that a "borderline" mechanism is taking place has been the finding of partial racemization and partial inversion. However, Weiner and Sneen have demonstrated that this type of stereochemical behavior is quite consistent with a strictly SN2 process. These workers studied the reaction of optically active 2-octyl brosylate in 75% aqueous dioxane, under which conditions inverted 2-octanol was obtained in 77% optical purity.[60] When sodium azide was added, 2-octyl azide was obtained along with the 2-octanol, *but the latter was now 100% inverted*. It is apparent that, in the original case, 2-octanol was produced by two different processes: an SN2 reaction leading to inverted product, and another process in which some intermediate leads to racemization or retention. When azide ions were added, they scavenged this intermediate, so that the entire second process now went to produce azide, while the SN2 reaction, unaffected by addition of azide, still went on to give inverted 2-octanol. What is the nature of the intermediate in the second process? At first thought we might suppose that it is a carbocation, so that this would be another example of simultaneous SN1 and SN2 reactions. However, solvolysis of 2-octyl brosylate in pure methanol or of 2-octyl methanesulfonate in pure water, in the absence of azide ions, gave methyl 2-octyl ether or 2-octanol, respectively, *with 100% inversion of configuration*, indicating that the mechanism in these solvents was pure SN2. Since methanol and water are more polar than 75% aqueous dioxane and since an increase in polarity of solvent increases the rate of SN1 reactions at the expense of SN2 (p. 316), it is extremely unlikely that any SN1 process could occur in 75% aqueous dioxane. The intermediate in the second process is thus not a carbocation. What it is is suggested by the fact that, in the absence of azide ions, the amount of inverted 2-octanol decreased with an increasing percentage of dioxane in the solvent. Thus the intermediate is an oxonium ion formed by an SN2 attack *by dioxane*. This ion is not a stable product but reacts with water in another SN2 process to produce 2-octanol with retained configuration. The entire process may be shown as follows:



---

[58] Kohnstam, Queen, and Shillaker, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 157 (1959). For other evidence supporting the concept of simultaneous mechanisms, see Pocker, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3939, 3944 (1959); Casapieri and Swart, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4342 (1961), 1254 (1963); Ceccon, Papa, and Fava, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88**, 4643 (1966); Okamoto, Uchida, Saitô, and Shingu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39**, 307 (1966); Guinot and Lamaty, *Chem. Commun.* 960 (1967); Queen, *Can. J. Chem.* **57**, 2646 (1979); Katritzky, Musumarra, Sakizadeh, El-Shafie, and Jovanovic, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21**, 2697 (1980); Richard and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 4689, 4691 (1982).

[59] These data have also been explained as being in accord with the ion-pair mechanism: Sneen and Larsen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91**, 6031 (1969).

[60] Weiner and Sneen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 287 (1965).

That part of the original reaction that resulted in retention of configuration is thus seen to stem from two successive SN2 reactions and not from any "borderline" behavior.[61] In another investigation, Streitwieser, Walsh, and Wolfe showed that the racemization accompanying inversion in the acetolysis of optically active 2-octyl tosylate stems from processes other than the actual solvolytic displacement: from reaction of the product 2-octyl tosylate with the *p*-toluenesulfonic acid also formed, from addition of acetic acid to 2-octene (formed from the substrate by a competing elimination reaction), and from racemization of the starting tosylate.[62] The actual nucleophilic substitution

$$\mathbf{ROTs + HOAc \longrightarrow ROAc}$$

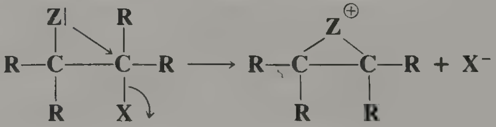
proceeds with essentially complete inversion of configuration.

The mechanisms so far considered can, in theory at least, operate on any type of saturated (or for that matter unsaturated) substrate. There are other mechanisms that are more limited in scope.

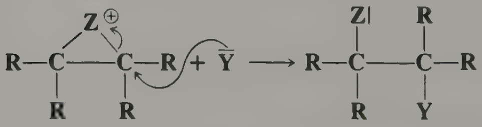
The Neighboring-Group Mechanism[63]

It is occasionally found with certain substrates that (1) the rate of reaction is greater than expected, and (2) the configuration at a chiral carbon is *retained* and not inverted or racemized. In these cases there is usually a group with an unshared pair of electrons β to the leaving group (or sometimes farther away). The mechanism operating in such cases is called the *neighboring-group mechanism* and consists essentially of two SN2 substitutions, each causing an inversion so that the net result is retention of configuration. In the first step of this reaction the neighboring group acts as a nucleophile, pushing out the leaving group but still retaining attachment to the molecule. In the second step the external nucleophile displaces the neighboring group by a backside attack:

Step 1



Step 2



The reaction obviously must go faster than if Y were attacking directly, since if the latter process were faster, *it* would be happening. The neighboring group Z is said to be lending *anchimeric assistance*. The rate law followed in the neighboring-group mechanism is the first-order law shown in Eq. (2) or (3); that is, Y does not take part in the rate-determining step.

---

[61] According to this scheme, the configuration of the isolated RN_3 should be retained. It was, however, largely inverted, owing to a competing SN2 reaction where N_3^- directly attacks ROBs.

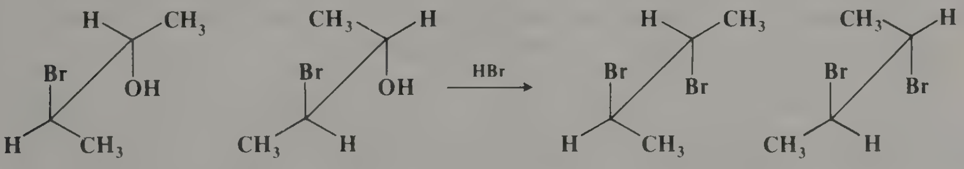
[62] Streitwieser, Walsh, and Wolfe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3682 (1965); Streitwieser and Walsh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3686 (1965). For another example, see Beronius, Nilsson, and Holmgren, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **26,** 3173 (1972). See also Knier and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6789 (1980).

[63] For a monograph, see Capon and McManus, "Neighboring Group Participation," vol. 1, Plenum, New York, 1976. For a review, see Capon, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **18,** 45–111 (1964).

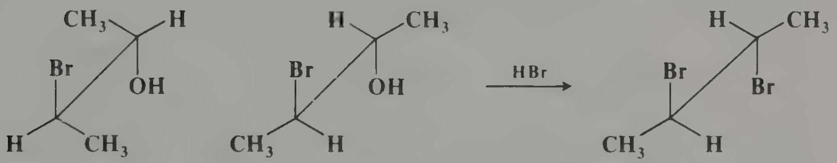
The question may be asked as to why attack by Z is faster than that by Y. The answer is that the group Z is more available. In order for Y to react, it must collide with the substrate, but Z is immediately available by virtue of its position. A reaction between the substrate and Y involves a large decrease in entropy of activation ($\Delta S^{\ddagger}$), since the reactants are far less free in the transition state than before. Reaction of Z involves a much smaller loss of $\Delta S^{\ddagger}$ (see p. 185).[64]

It is not always easy to determine when a reaction rate has been increased by anchimeric assistance. In order to be certain, it is necessary to know what the rate would be without participation by the neighboring group. The obvious way to examine this question is to compare the rates of the reaction with and without the neighboring group, for example, $HOCH_2CH_2Br$ vs. CH_3CH_2Br. However, this will certainly not give an accurate determination of the extent of participation, since the steric and field effects of H and OH are not the same. Furthermore, no matter what the solvent, the shell of solvent molecules which surrounds the polar protic OH group must differ greatly from that which surrounds the nonpolar H. Because of these considerations, it is desirable to have a large increase in the rate, preferably more than fiftyfold, before a rate increase is attributed to neighboring-group participation.

The first important evidence for the existence of this mechanism was the demonstration that retention of configuration can occur if the substrate is suitable. It was shown that the threo DL pair of 3-bromo-2-butanol when treated with HBr gave DL-2,3-dibromobutane, while the erythro pair gave the meso isomer:[65]



threo DL pair DL pair



erythro DL pair meso

This indicated that retention had taken place. Note that both products are optically inactive and so cannot be told apart by differences in rotation. The meso and DL dibromides have different boiling points and indexes of refraction and were identified by these properties. Even more convincing evidence was that either of the two threo isomers alone gave not just one of the enantiomeric dibromides, but the DL pair. The reason for this is that the intermediate present after the attack by the neighboring group (**12**) is symmetrical, so that the external nucleophile Br^- could equally well attack both carbon atoms. **12** is a bromonium ion, the existence of which has been demonstrated in several types of reactions.[66]

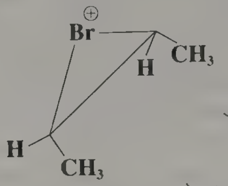
Although **12** is symmetrical, intermediates in most neighboring-group mechanisms are not, and it is therefore possible to get not a simple substitution product but a rearrangement. This will

---

[64] For a review of the energetics of neighboring-group participation, see Page, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **2**, 295–323 (1973).

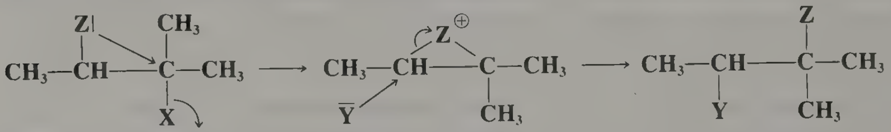
[65] Winstein and Lucas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61**, 1576, 2845 (1939).

[66] See Traynham, *J. Chem. Educ.* **40**, 392 (1963).



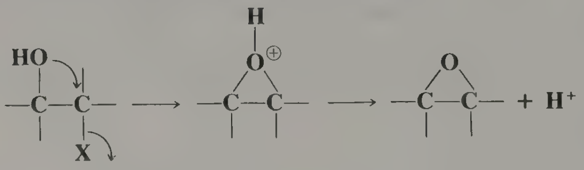
12

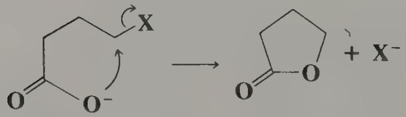
happen if Y attacks not the carbon atom from which X left, but the one to which Z was originally attached:



In such cases substitution and rearrangement products are often produced together. For a discussion of rearrangements, see Chapter 18.

Another possibility is that the intermediate may be stable or may find some other way to stabilize itself. In such cases, Y never attacks at all and the product is cyclic. These are simple internal SN2 reactions. Two examples are formation of epoxides and lactones:





The fact that acetolysis of both 4-methoxy-1-pentyl brosylate (**13**) and 5-methoxy-2-pentyl brosylate (**14**) gave the same mixture of products is further evidence for participation by a neighboring group.[67] In this case the intermediate **15** is common to both substrates.

The neighboring-group mechanism operates only when the ring size is right for a particular type of Z. For example, for $MeO(CH_2)_nOBs$, neighboring-group participation was important for $n = 4$ or 5 (corresponding to a five- or six-membered intermediate) but not for $n = 2, 3$, or 6.[68] However, optimum ring size is not the same for all reactions, even with a particular Z. In general, the most rapid reactions occur when the ring size is three, five, or six, depending on the reaction type.

The following are some of the more important neighboring groups: COO^- (but not COOH), OCOR, COOR, COAr, OR, OH, O^-,[69] NH_2, NHR, NR_2, NHCOR, SH, SR, S^-,[70] I, Br, and Cl.

---

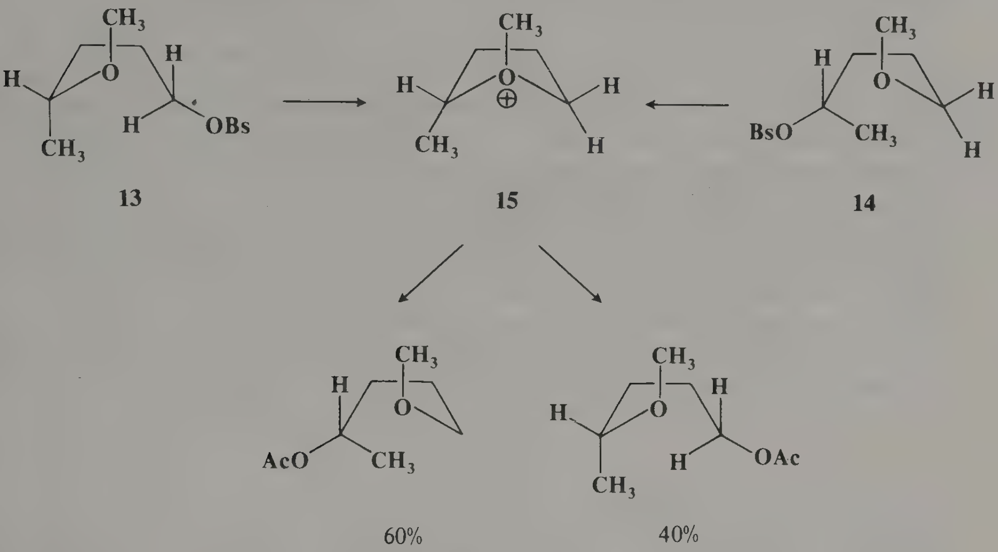
[67] Allred and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 3991, 3998 (1967).

[68] Winstein, Allred, Heck, and Glick, *Tetrahedron* **3**, 1 (1958); Allred and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 4012 (1967).

[69] For a review of oxygen functions as neighboring groups, see Perst, "Oxonium Ions in Organic Chemistry," pp. 100–127, Verlag Chemie, Weinheim/Bergstrasse, 1971.

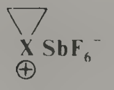
[70] For reviews of sulfur-containing neighboring groups, see Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," pp. 141–145, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Gundermann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2**, 674–683 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75**, 1194–1203].

The effectiveness of halogens as neighboring groups decreases in the order I > Br > Cl.[71] Cl is a very weak neighboring group and can be shown to act in this way only when the solvent does not interfere. For example, when 5-chloro-2-hexyl tosylate is solvolyzed in acetic acid, there is little participation by the Cl, but when the solvent is changed to trifluoroacetic acid, which is much less nucleophilic, neighboring-group participation by the Cl becomes the major reaction pathway.[72] Thus, Cl acts as a neighboring group *only when there is need for it* (for other examples of the *principle of increasing electron demand,* see pp. 272, 275).

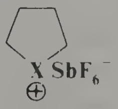


13 **15** **14**

A number of intermediates of halogen participation (halonium ions),[73] e.g., **16** and **17**, have been prepared as stable salts in SbF_5–SO_2 or SbF_5–SO_2ClF solutions.[74] Some of them have even been crystallized. Attempts to prepare four-membered homologs of **16** and **17** did not bear fruit as only three- or five-membered rings were obtained,[75] presumably by rearrangement, e.g.,



16



17

X = Br, Cl, or I

---

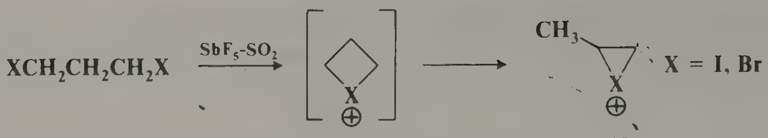
[71] Peterson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 407–413 (1971), and references cited therein.

[72] Peterson, Bopp, Chevli, Curran, Dillard, and Kamat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5902 (1967). See also Reich and Reich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2654 (1974).

[73] For a monograph, see Olah, "Halonium Ions," Wiley, New York, 1975. For a review, see Koster, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement D," pt. 2, pp. 1265–1351, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[74] See, for example Olah and Bollinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4744 (1967), **90,** 947 (1967); Olah and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4675 (1968); Peterson, Clifford, and Slama, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2840 (1970); Bonazza and Peterson, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1015 (1973); Henrichs and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7449 (1973), *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 362 (1976); Olah, Westerman, Melby, and Mo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3565 (1974); Olah, Liang, and Staral, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 8112 (1974).

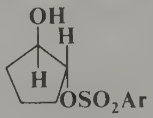
[75] Olah, Bollinger, Mo, and Brinich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1164 (1972).



18

The fact that **18** (X = I or Br) forms in this reaction but not the corresponding chloro analog is further evidence for the low effectiveness of Cl as a neighboring group. Experiments in the gas phase show that $CH_3\overset{+}{C}HCl$ is more stable than **16**(X = Cl), though both species exist.[76] There is no evidence that F can act as a neighboring group.[71]

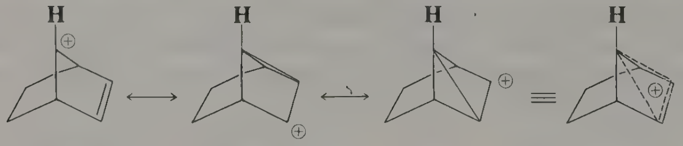
The principle that a neighboring group lends assistance in proportion to the need for such assistance also applies to differences in leaving-group ability. Thus, p-$NO_2C_6H_4SO_2O$ (the nosylate group) is a better leaving group than p-$MeC_6H_4SO_2O$ (the tosylate group). Experiments have shown that the OH group in *trans*-2-hydroxycyclopentyl arenesulfonates (**19**) acts as a neighboring group when the leaving group is tosylate but not when it is nosylate, apparently because the nosylate group leaves so rapidly that it does not require assistance.[77]



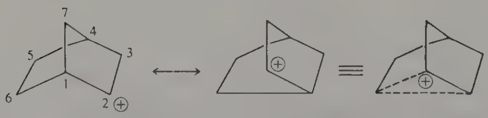
19

Neighboring-Group Participation by π and σ Bonds. Nonclassical Carbocations[78]

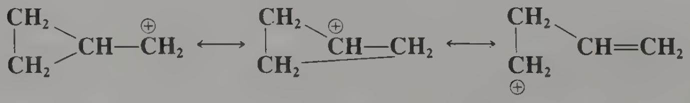
For all the neighboring groups listed in the preceding section, the internal nucleophilic attack is made by an atom with an unshared pair of electrons. In this section we consider neighboring-group



20a **20b** **20c** **20d**



21a **21b** **21c**



22a **22b** **22c**

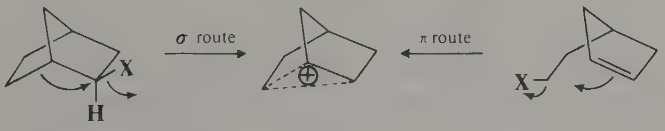
---

[76] Berman, Anicich, and Beauchamp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1239 (1979). For a similar result in super-acid solution, see Ref. 75.

[77] Haupt and Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4141 (1974).

[78] For monographs, see Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 3, Wiley, New York, 1972; Bartlett, "Nonclassical Ions," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1965. For reviews, see Barkhash, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **116/117,** 1–265 (1984); Kirmse, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **80,** 125–311 (1979), pp. 196–288; McManus and Pittman, in McManus, "Organic Reactive Intermediates," pp. 302–321, Academic Press, New York, 1973; Bethell and Gold, "Carbonium Ions," pp. 222–282, Academic Press, New York, 1967.

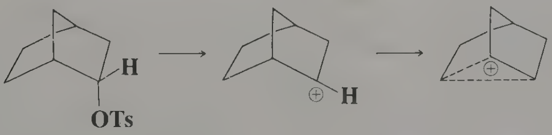
participation by C═C π bonds and C—C and C—H σ bonds. There has been a great deal of controversy over whether such bonds can act as neighboring groups and about the existence and structure of the intermediates involved. These intermediates are called *nonclassical* (or *bridged*) carbocations. In classical carbocations (Chapter 5) the positive charge is localized on one carbon atom or delocalized by resonance involving an unshared pair of electrons or a double or triple bond in the allylic position. In a nonclassical carbocation, the positive charge is delocalized by a double or triple bond that is not in the allylic position or by a single bond. Examples are the 7-norbornenyl cation (**20**), the norbornyl cation (**21**), and the cyclopropylmethyl cation (**22**). **20** is called a *homoallylic* carbocation, because in **20a** there is one carbon atom between the positively charged carbon and the double bond. Many of these carbocations can be produced in more than one way if the proper substrates are chosen. For example, **21** can be generated by the departure of a leaving group from **23** or from **24**.[79] The first of these pathways is called the σ route to a nonclassical carbocation, because participation of a σ bond is involved. The second is called the π route.[80] The argument against the existence of nonclassical carbocations is essentially that the structures **20a, 20b, 20c** (or **21a, 21b,** etc.) are not canonical forms but real structures and that there is rapid equilibration among them.



23 **21** **24**

In discussing nonclassical carbocations we must be careful to make the distinction between neighboring-group participation and the existence of nonclassical carbocations.[81] If a nonclassical carbocation exists in any reaction, then an ion with electron delocalization, as shown in the above examples, is a discrete reaction intermediate. If a carbon–carbon double or single bond participates in the departure of the leaving group to form a carbocation, it may be that a nonclassical carbocation is involved, but there is no necessary relation. There are four possibilities:

1. The leaving group may depart without assistance, and *then* a nonclassical ion may form,[81a] e.g.,



21c

Classical carbocation

Nonclassical carbocation

In this case there is no rate enhancement (compared, say, to the same reaction run on cyclopentyl tosylate, where no nonclassical ion is involved at any time).

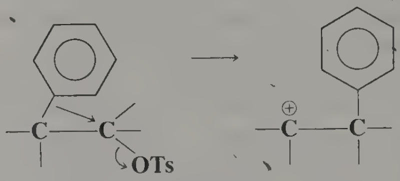
[79] Lawton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2399 (1961); Bartlett, Bank, Crawford, and Schmid, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1288 (1965).

[80] Winstein and Carter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4485 (1961).

[81] This was pointed out by Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3767 (1964).

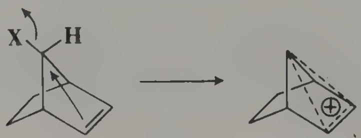
[81a] For a claimed example, see Maskill and Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 119 (1984).

2. A carbon–carbon double or single bond may lend assistance but may nonetheless give a classical open carbocation, e.g.,



In this case the rate *would* be enhanced, though no stable bridged ion is involved.[82]

3. Both assistance and a nonclassical ion may be involved, e.g.,



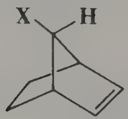
25 **20d**

4. And, of course, there may be unassisted ionization to a classical carbocation.

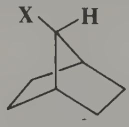
Enhanced rates are usually evidence for neighboring-group assistance but are not *always* evidence for the existence of nonclassical carbocations.

In the following pages we consider some of the evidence bearing on the questions of the participation of π and σ bonds and on the existence of nonclassical carbocations,[83] though a thorough discussion is beyond the scope of this book.[78]

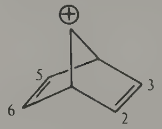
1. C=C *as a neighboring group*.[84] The most striking evidence that C=C can act as a neighboring group is that acetolysis of **25**-OTs is 10^{11} times faster than that of **26**-OTs and *proceeds with retention of configuration*.[85] The rate data alone do not necessarily prove that acetolysis of **25**-OTs involves a nonclassical intermediate (**20d**), but it is certainly strong evidence that the C=C group assists in the departure of the OTs. Evidence that **20** is indeed a nonclassical ion comes from an nmr study of the relatively stable norbornadienyl cation (**27**). The spectrum shows that the 2 and 3 protons are not equivalent to the 5 and 6 protons.[86] Thus there is interaction between the



25



26



27

---

[82] There is evidence that participation (as evidenced by retention of configuration) can take place without an increase in rate. For example, see Lambert, Finzel, and Belec, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3281 (1980).

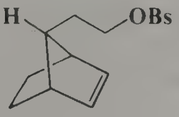
[83] The arguments against nonclassical ions are summed up in Brown, "The Nonclassical Ion Problem," Plenum, New York, 1977. This book also includes rebuttals by Schleyer. See also Brown, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **54,** 1783–1796 (1982).

[84] For reviews, see Story and Clark, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 78, vol. 3, pp. 1007–1060, 1972; Richey, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 2, pp. 77–101, Interscience, New York, 1970.

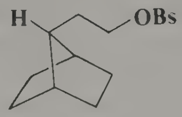
[85] Winstein and Shatavsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 592 (1956).

[86] Story and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4876 (1962); Story, Snyder, Douglass, Anderson, and Kornegay, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3630 (1963). For a discussion, see Story and Clark, Ref. 84, pp. 1026–1041. See also Lustgarten, Brookhart, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2347 (1972).

charged carbon and one double bond, which is evidence for the existence of **20d.**[87] In the case of **25** the double bond is geometrically fixed in an especially favorable position for backside attack on the carbon bearing the leaving group (hence the very large rate enhancement), but there is much evidence that other double bonds in the homoallylic position,[88] as well as in positions farther away,[89] can also lend anchimeric assistance, though generally with much lower rate ratios. One example of the latter is the compound β-(*syn*-7-norbornenyl)ethyl brosylate (**28**) which at 25°C undergoes acetolysis about 140,000 times faster than the saturated analog **29**.[90] Triple bonds[91] and allenes[92] can also act as neighboring groups.

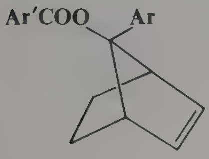


28

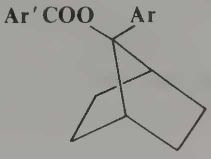


29

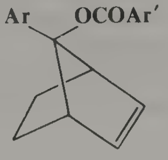
We have already seen evidence that participation by a potential neighboring group can be reduced or eliminated if an outside nucleophile is present that is more effective than the neighboring group in attacking the central carbon (p. 271), or if a sufficiently good leaving group is present (p. 272). In another example of this principle, Gassman and co-workers have shown that neighboring-group participation can also be reduced if the stability of the potential carbocation is increased. They found that the presence of a *p*-anisyl group at the 7 position of **25** and **26** exerts a powerful leveling effect on the rate differences. Thus, solvolysis in acetone-water at 85°C of *syn*-7-*p*-anisyl-*anti*-7-norborn-2-enyl *p*-nitrobenzoate (**30**) was only about 2.5 times faster than that of the saturated



30



31



32

Ar = p-$\mathrm{MeOC_6H_4}$

Ar′= p-$\mathrm{NO_2C_6H_4}$

---

[87] For further evidence for the nonclassical nature of **20**, see Winstein and Ordronneau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2084 (1960); Brookhart, Diaz, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3135 (1966); Richey and Lustgarten, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3136 (1966); Gassman and Patton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2160 (1969); Richey, Nichols, Gassman, Fentiman, Winstein, Brookhart, and Lustgarten, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3783 (1970); Gassman and Doherty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3742 (1982).

[88] For examples, see Shoppee, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1147 (1946); LeBel and Huber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3193 (1963); Closson and Kwiatkowski, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 2779 (1965); Cristol and Nachtigall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7132 (1968); Masamune, Takada, Nakatsuka, Vukov, and Cain, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4322 (1969); Hess, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5657 (1969); Brown, Peters, and Ravindranathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 7449 (1975); Lambert and Finzel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1954 (1983).

[89] For examples, see LeNy, *C. R. Acad. Sci.* **251,** 1526 (1960); Goering and Closson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3511 (1961); Bartlett, Trahanovsky, Bolon, and Schmid, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1314 (1965); Bly and Swindell, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 10 (1965); Marvell, Sturmer, and Knutson, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2991 (1968); Cogdell, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2541 (1972); Mihel, Orlović, Polla, and Borčić, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4086 (1979); Ferber and Gream, *Aust. J. Chem.* **34,** 1051 (1981); Kronja, Polla, and Borčić, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1044 (1983); Ref. 80. See also Ref. 79.

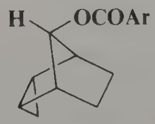
[90] Bly, Bly, Bedenbaugh, and Vail, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 880 (1967).

[91] See, for example, Closson and Roman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6015 (1966); Hanack, Herterich, and Vött, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3871 (1967); Peterson and Kamat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4521 (1969); Lambert, Papay, and Mark, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 633 (1975); Peterson and Vidrine, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 891 (1979). For a review of participation by triple bonds and allylic groups, see Rappoport, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **3,** 440–453 (1983).

[92] Jacobs and Macomber, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4877 (1967); Bly and Koock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3292, 3299 (1969); Von Lehman and Macomber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1531 (1975).

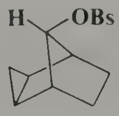
compound **31**.[93] Furthermore, both **30** and its stereoisomer **32** gave the same mixture of solvolysis products, showing that the stereoselectivity in the solvolysis of **25** is not present here. The difference between **30** and **25** is that in the case of **30** the positive charge generated at the 7 position in the transition state is greatly stabilized by the *p*-anisyl group. Apparently the stabilization by the *p*-anisyl group is so great that further stabilization that would come from participation by the C=C bond is not needed.[94] The use of a phenyl instead of a *p*-anisyl group is not sufficient to stop participation by the double bond completely, though it does reduce it.[95] These results permit us to emphasize our previous conclusion that *a neighboring group lends anchimeric assistance only when there is sufficient demand for it.*[96]

2. *Cyclopropyl*[97] *as a neighboring group.*[98] On p. 131 we saw that the properties of a cyclopropane ring are in some ways similar to those of a double bond. Therefore it is not surprising that a suitably placed cyclopropyl ring can also be a neighboring group. Thus *endo-anti*-tricyclo[3.2.1.0^{2,4}]octan-8-yl *p*-nitrobenzoate (**33**) solvolyzed about 10^{14} times faster than the *p*-nitrobenzoate of **26**-OH.[99] Obviously, a suitably placed cyclopropyl ring can be even more effective[100] as a neighboring group than a double bond.[101] The need for suitable placement is emphasized by the fact that **35** solvolyzed only about five times faster than **26**-OBs,[102] while **34** solvolyzed three times *slower* than **26**-OBs.[103] In the case of **33** and of all other cases known where cyclopropyl lends considerable anchimeric assistance, the developing *p* orbital of the carbocation is orthogonal to the

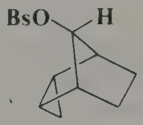


$\mathbf{Ar = \textit{p}\text{-}NO_2C_6H_4}$

33



34



35

---

[93] Gassman, Zeller, and Lamb, *Chem. Commun.* 69 (1968).

[94] Nevertheless, there is evidence from ^{13}C nmr spectra that some π participation is present, even in the cation derived from **30**: Olah, Berrier, Arvanaghi, and Prakash, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1122 (1981).

[95] Gassman and Fentiman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1545 (1969), **92,** 2549 (1970).

[96] For a discussion of the use of the tool of increasing electron demand to probe neighboring-group activity by double bonds, sigma bonds, and aryl rings, see Lambert, Mark, Holcomb, and Magyar, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 317–324 (1979).

[97] In this section we consider systems in which at least one carbon separates the cyclopropyl ring from the carbon bearing the leaving group. For a discussion of systems in which the cyclopropyl group is directly attached to the leaving-group carbon, see p. 283.

[98] For a review, see Haywood-Farmer, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 315–350 (1974).

[99] Tanida, Tsuji, and Irie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1953 (1967); Battiste, Deyrup, Pincock, and Haywood-Farmer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1954 (1967).

[100] For a competitive study of cyclopropyl vs. double-bond participation, see Lambert, Jovanovich, Hamersma, Koeng, and Oliver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1570 (1973).

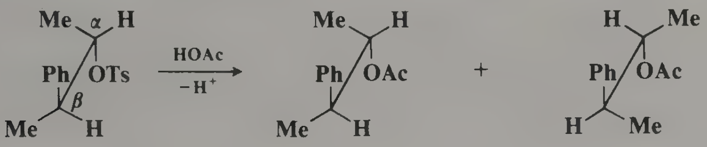
[101] For other evidence for anchimeric assistance by cyclopropyl, see Sargent, Lowry, and Reich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5985 (1967); Battiste, Haywood-Farmer, Malkus, Seidl, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2144 (1970); Gassman and Fentiman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2551 (1970); Coates and Kirkpatrick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4883 (1970); Coates and Yano, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2289 (1972); Masamune, Vukov, Bennett, and Purdham, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8239 (1972); Gassman and Creary, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2729 (1973); Costanza, Geneste, Lamaty, and Roque, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2358 (1975); Takakis and Rhodes, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2475 (1978), 4959 (1983).

[102] Battiste, Deyrup, Pincock, and Haywood-Farmer, Ref. 99; Haywood-Farmer and Pincock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3020 (1969).

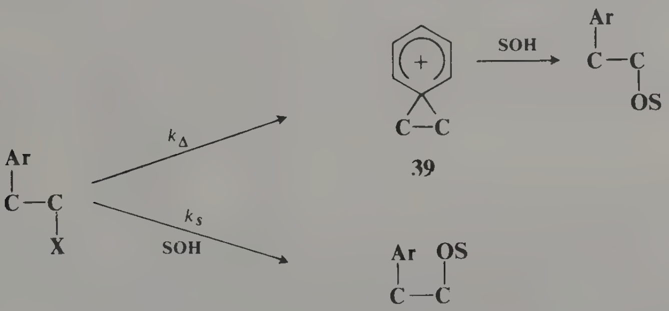
[103] Haywood-Farmer, Pincock, and Wells, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 2007 (1966); Haywood-Farmer and Pincock, Ref. 102. For some other cases where there was little or no rate enhancement by cyclopropyl, see Wiberg and Wenzinger, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2278 (1965); Sargent, Taylor, and Demisch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2275 (1968); Rhodes and Takino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4469 (1970); Hanack and Krause, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **760,** 17 (1972).

participating bond of the cyclopropane ring.[104] An experiment designed to test whether a developing *p* orbital that would be parallel to the participating bond would be assisted by that bond showed no rate enhancement.[104] This is in contrast to the behavior of cyclopropane rings directly attached to positively charged carbons, where the *p* orbital is parallel to the plane of the ring (pp. 145, 284). Rate enhancements, though considerably smaller, have also been reported for suitably placed cyclobutyl rings.[105]

3. *Aromatic rings as neighboring groups.*[106] There is a great deal of evidence that aromatic rings in the β-position can function as neighboring groups. Stereochemical evidence was obtained by solvolysis of L-*threo*-3-phenyl-2-butyl tosylate (**36**) in acetic acid.[107] Of the acetate product 96% was the threo isomer and only about 4% was erythro. Moreover, both the D and L threo isomers (**37** and **38**) were produced in approximately equal amounts (a racemic mixture). When solvolysis was conducted in formic acid, even less erythro isomer was obtained. This result is similar to that found on reaction of 3-bromo-2-butanol with HBr (p. 269) and leads to the conclusion that configuration is retained because phenyl acts as a neighboring group. However, evidence from rate studies is not so simple. If β-aryl groups assist the departure of the leaving group, then solvolysis rates should be enhanced. In general they are not. However, solvolysis rate studies in 2-arylethyl systems are complicated by the fact that, for primary and secondary systems, two pathways can exist.[108] In one of these (designated k_Δ), the aryl, behaving as a neighboring group, pushes out the leaving group to give a bridged ion, called a *phenonium ion* (**39**), and is in turn pushed out by the solvent SOH, so that the net result is substitution with retention of configuration (or rearrangement,



36 **37** **38**



---

[104] Gassman, Seter, and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1673 (1971). For a discussion, see Haywood-Farmer and Pincock, Ref. 102. See also Chenier, Jenson, and Wulff, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 770 (1982).

[105] For example, see Sakai, Diaz, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4452 (1970); Battiste and Nebzydoski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4450 (1970); Schipper, Driessen, de Haan, and Buck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4706 (1974); Ohkata, Doecke, Klein, and Paquette, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3253 (1980).

[106] For a review, see Lancelot, Cram, and Schleyer, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 78, vol. 3, pp. 1347–1483, 1972.

[107] Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 3863 (1949), **74,** 2129 (1952).

[108] Winstein and Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 4801 (1956); Brookhart, Anet, Cram, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5659 (1966); Lee, Unger, and Vassie, *Can. J. Chem.* **50,** 1371 (1972).

if **39** is opened from the other side). The other pathway (k_s) is simple SN2 attack by the solvent at the leaving-group carbon. The net result here is substitution with inversion and no possibility of rearrangement. Whether the leaving group is located at a primary or a secondary carbon,[109] there is no crossover between these pathways; they are completely independent.[110] Which of the two pathways predominates in any given case depends on the solvent and on the nature of the aryl group. As expected from the results we have seen for Cl as a neighboring group (p. 271), the k_Δ/k_s ratio is highest for solvents that are poor nucleophiles and so compete very poorly with the aryl group. For several common solvents the k_Δ/k_s ratio increases in the order EtOH < CH_3COOH < HCOOH < CF_3COOH.[111] In accord with this, the following percentages of retention were obtained in solvolysis of 1-phenyl-2-propyl tosylate at 50°C: solvolysis in EtOH 7%, CH_3COOH 35%, HCOOH 85%.[111] This indicates that k_s predominates in EtOH (phenyl participates very little), while k_Δ predominates in HCOOH. Trifluoroacetic acid is a solvent of particularly low nucleophilic power, and in this solvent the reaction proceeds entirely by k_Δ;[112] deuterium labeling showed 100% retention.[113] This case provides a clear example of neighboring-group rate enhancement by phenyl: the rate of solvolysis of $PhCH_2CH_2OTs$ at 75°C in CF_3COOH is 3040 times the rate for CH_3CH_2OTs.[112]

With respect to the aromatic ring, the k_Δ pathway is an electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 11). We predict that groups on the ring which activate that reaction (p. 453) will increase, and deactivating groups will decrease, the rate of this pathway. This prediction has been borne out by several investigations. The *p*-nitro derivative of L-*threo*-**36** solvolyzed in acetic acid 190 times slower than **36**, and there was much less retention of configuration; the acetate produced was only 7% threo and 93% erythro.[114] At 90°C, acetolysis of p-$ZC_6H_4CH_2CH_2OTs$ gave the rate ratios shown in Table 1.[115] Throughout this series k_s is fairly constant, as it should be since it is affected only by the rather remote field effect of Z. It is k_Δ that changes substantially as Z is changed from activating to deactivating. The evidence is thus fairly clear that participation by aryl groups depends greatly on the nature of the group. For some groups, e.g., *p*-nitrophenyl, in some solvents, e.g., acetic acid, there is essentially no neighboring-group participation at all,[116] while for others, e.g.,

TABLE 1 Approximate k_Δ/k_s ratios for acetolysis of p-$ZC_6H_4CH_2CH_2OTs$ at 90°C[115]

Z	k_Δ/k_s
MeO	30
Me	11
H	1.3
Cl	0.3

TABLE 2 Percent of product formed by the k_Δ pathway in solvolysis of p-$ZC_6H_4CH_2CHMeOTs$[117]

Z	Solvent	Percent by k_Δ
H	CH_3COOH	35–38
H	HCOOH	72–79
MeO	CH_3COOH	91–93
MeO	HCOOH	99

---

[109] Both the k_Δ and the k_s pathways are unimportant when the leaving group is at a tertiary carbon. In these cases the mechanism is SN1 and open carbocations $ArCH_2CR_2^+$ are intermediates. This pathway is designated k_c.

[110] Harris, Schadt, Schleyer, and Lancelot, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7508 (1969); Brown, Kim, Lancelot, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5244 (1970); Brown and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5765 (1971).

[111] Diaz, Lazdins, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6546 (1968); Diaz and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4300 (1969). See also Schadt, Lancelot, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 228 (1978).

[112] Nordlander and Deadman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1590 (1968); Nordlander and Kelly, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 996 (1969).

[113] Jablonski and Snyder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4445 (1969).

[114] Thompson and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1778 (1969). See also Tanida, Tsuji, Ishitobi, and Irie, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1086 (1969); Kingsbury and Best, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 3440 (1972).

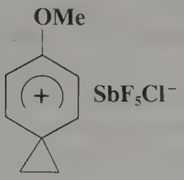
[115] Coke, McFarlane, Mourning, and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1154 (1969); Jones and Coke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4284 (1969). See also Harris, Schadt, Schleyer, and Lancelot, Ref. 110.

[116] The k_Δ pathway is important for *p*-nitrophenyl in CF_3COOH: Ando, Shimizu, Kim, Tsuno, and Yukawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 117 (1973).

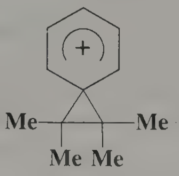
[117] Lancelot and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4291, 4296 (1969); Lancelot, Harper, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4294 (1969); Schleyer and Lancelot, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4297 (1969).

p-methoxyphenyl, neighboring-group participation is substantial. The combined effect of solvent and structure is shown in Table 2, where the figures shown were derived by three different methods.[117]

For some years there was controversy about the structure of phenonium ions **39**,[118] but several have now been prepared as stable ions in solution where they can be studied by nmr, among them

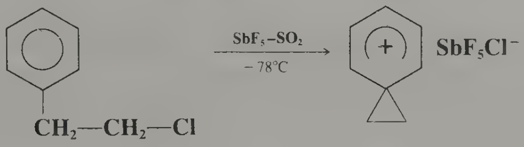


40



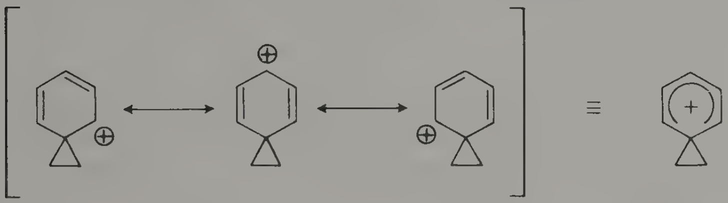
41

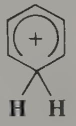
40,[119] **41**,[120] and the unsubstituted **39**.[121] These were prepared by the method shown for **39**: treatment of the corresponding β-arylethyl chloride with SbF_6–SO_2 at low temperatures. These conditions



39

are even more extreme than the solvolysis in CF_3COOH mentioned earlier. The absence of any nucleophile at all eliminates not only the k_s pathway but also nucleophilic attack on **39**. Although **39** is not in equilibrium with the open-chain ion $PhCH_2CH_2^+$ (which is primary and hence unstable), **41** is in equilibrium with the open-chain tertiary ions $PhCMe_2\overset{+}{C}Me_2$ and $Ph\overset{+}{C}MeCMe_3$, though only **41** is present in appreciable concentration. Proton and ^{13}C nmr show that **39**, **40**, and **41** are classical





42

carbocations where the only resonance is in the six-membered ring. The three-membered ring is a normal cyclopropane ring that is influenced only to a relatively small extent by the positive charge on the adjacent ring. Nmr spectra show that the six-membered rings have no aromatic character but are similar in structure to the arenium ions, e.g., **42**, which are intermediates in electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 11). Not all β-aryl substrates give rise to isolable arenium ions.

---

[118] For discussions, see Brown, Morgan, and Chloupek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2137 (1965); Brown, Bernheimer, Kim, and Scheppele, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 370 (1966); Brown and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2082 (1968); Kim and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5043, 5051 (1972); Thompson and Cram, Ref. 114; Ref. 81.

[119] Olah, Comisarow, Namanworth, and Ramsey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5259 (1967); Ramsey, Cook, and Manner, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3310 (1972).

[120] Olah, Comisarow, and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1458 (1969). See, however, Ramsey, Cook, and Manner, Ref. 119.

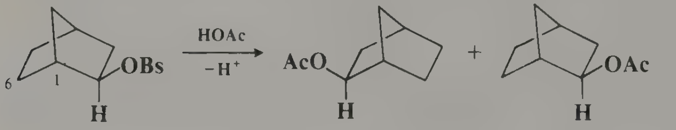
[121] Olah and Porter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6877 (1971). Olah, Spear, and Forsyth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6284 (1976).

2-Chloro-1-phenylpropane, for example, gave only the $Ph\overset{+}{C}HCH_2CH_3$ cation when treated with $HF–SbF_5–SO_2ClF$ at −78°C.[122]

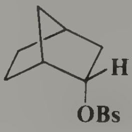
It is thus clear that β-aryl groups can function as neighboring groups.[123] Much less work has been done on aryl groups located in positions farther away from the leaving group, but there is evidence that these too can lend anchimeric assistance.[124]

4. *The carbon–carbon single bond as a neighboring group.*[125]

a. *The 2-norbornyl system.* In the investigations to determine whether a C—C σ bond can act as a neighboring group, by far the greatest attention has been paid to the 2-norbornyl system.[126] Winstein and Trifan found that solvolysis in acetic acid of optically active *exo*-2-norbornyl brosylate (**43**) gave a racemic mixture of the two exo acetates;[127] no endo isomers were formed:[128]

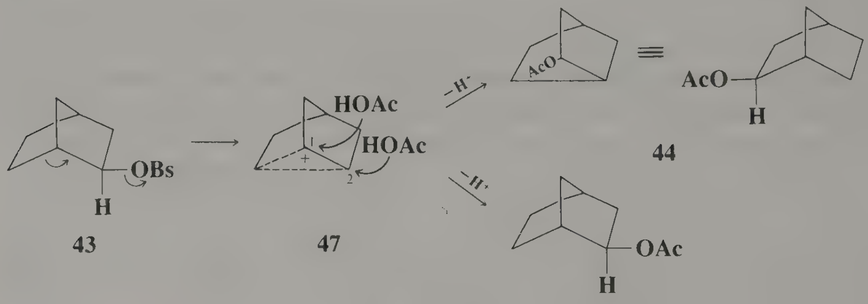


43 **44** **45**



46

Furthermore, **43** solvolyzed about 350 times faster than its endo isomer **46.** Similar high exo/endo rate ratios have been found in many other 2.2.1 systems. These two results—(1) that solvolysis of an optically active exo isomer gave only racemic exo isomers and (2) the high exo/endo rate ratio—were interpreted by Winstein and Trifan as indicating that the 1,6 bond assists in the departure of the leaving group and that a nonclassical intermediate (**47**) is involved. They reasoned that



43 **47** **44** **45**

---

[122] Olah, Spear, and Forsyth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2615 (1977).

[123] For additional evidence, see Tanida, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 239–245 (1968); Kingsbury and Best, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1499 (1967); Braddon, Wiley, Dirlam, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1901 (1968); Tanida, Ishitobi, and Irie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2688 (1968); Brown and Tritle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2689 (1968); Bentley and Dewar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3996 (1970); Raber, Harris, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4829 (1971); Shiner and Seib, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 862 (1976); Faïn and Dubois, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 791 (1978); Yukawa, Ando, Token, Kawada, Matsuda, Kim, and Yamataka, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 3536 (1981); Ferber and Gream, *Aust. J. Chem.* **34,** 2217 (1981). For a discussion of evidence obtained from isotope effects, see Scheppele, *Chem. Rev.* **72,** 511–532 (1972), pp. 522–525.

[124] Heck and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 3105 (1957); Muneyuki and Tanida, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 656 (1968); Ouellette, Papa, Attea, and Levin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4893 (1970); Jackman and Haddon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5130 (1974); Gates, Frank, and von Felten, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5138 (1974); Ando, Yamawaki, and Saito, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **51,** 219 (1978).

[125] For a review pertaining to studies of this topic at low temperatures, see Olah, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 173–212 (1973), pp. 192–198 [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 183–225].

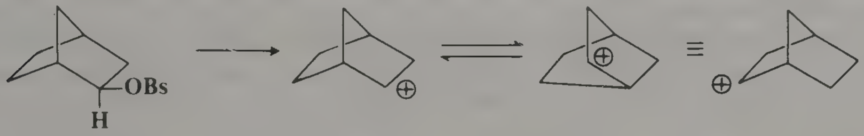
[126] For reviews, see Grob, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 87–96 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 87–96]; Sargent, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 78, vol. 3, pp. 1099–1200 (1972); Sargent, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **20,** 301–371 (1966); Gream, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **16,** 25–60 (1966); Ref. 78.

[127] Winstein and Trifan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 1147, 1154 (1952).

[128] It has been shown that the endo content is definitely less than 0.02%: Winstein, Clippinger, Howe, and Vogelfanger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 376 (1965).

solvolysis of the endo isomer **46** is not assisted by the 1,6 bond because it is not in a favorable position for backside attack, and that consequently solvolysis of **46** takes place at a "normal" rate. Therefore the much faster rate for the solvolysis of **43** must be caused by anchimeric assistance. The stereochemistry of the product is also explained by the intermediacy of **47,** since in **47** the 1 and 2 positions are equivalent and would be attacked by the nucleophile with equal facility, but only from the exo direction in either case. Incidentally, acetolysis of **46** also leads exclusively to the exo acetates (**44** and **45**), so that in this case Winstein and Trifan postulated that a classical ion (**48**) is first formed and then converted to the more stable **47.** Evidence for this interpretation is that the product from solvolysis of **46** is not racemic but contains somewhat more **45** than **44** (corresponding to 3 to 13% inversion, depending on the solvent),[128] suggesting that when **48** is formed, some of it goes to give **45** before it can collapse to **47.**

The concepts of σ participation and the nonclassical ion **47** have been challenged by H. C. Brown,[83] who has suggested that the two results can also be explained by postulating that **43** solvolyzes without participation of the 1,6 bond to give the classical ion **48** which is in rapid equilibrium with **49.** This rapid interconversion has been likened to the action of a windshield wiper. Obviously, in going from **48** to **49** and back again, **47** must be present, but in Brown's view it is a transition state and not an intermediate. Brown's explanation for the stereochemical result is that exclusive exo attack is a property to be expected from any 2-norbornyl system, not only for the cation but even for reactions not involving cations, because of steric hindrance to attack from the endo side. There is a large body of data that shows that exo attack on norbornyl systems is fairly general in many reactions. As for the obtention of a racemic mixture, this will obviously happen if **48** and **49** are present in equal amounts, since they are equivalent and exo attack on **48** and **49** gives, respectively, **45** and **44.** Brown explains the high exo/endo rate ratios by contending that it is not the endo rate which is normal and the exo rate abnormally high, but the exo rate which is normal and the endo rate abnormally *low,* because of steric hindrance to removal of the leaving group in that direction.[129]



43 **48** **49**

A vast amount of work has been done[130] on solvolysis of the 2-norbornyl system in an effort to determine whether the 1,6 bond participates and whether **47** is an intermediate. Most,[131] although not all,[132] chemists now accept the intermediacy of **47.**

[129] For evidence against steric hindrance as the only cause of this effect, see Menger, Perinis, Jerkunica, and Glass, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1503 (1978).

[130] For thorough discussions, see Grob, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 426–431 (1983); Brown, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 432–440 (1983); Walling, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 448–454 (1983); Refs. 78, 83, and 126.

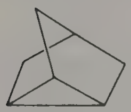
[131] For some recent evidence in favor of a nonclassical **47,** see Hartman and Traylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 6147 (1975); Battiste and Fiato, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1255 (1975); Maskill, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 8482 (1976); Lenoir, Röll, and Ipaktschi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3073 (1976); Nugent, Wu, Fehlner, and Kochi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 456 (1976); Arnett, Petro, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 522 (1979); Albano and Wold, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1447 (1980); Nordlander, Neff, Moore, Apeloig, Arad, Godleski, and Schleyer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4921 (1981); Wilcox and Tuszynski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3119 (1982); Grob, Günther, and Hanreich, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **65,** 2110 (1982); Kirmse and Siegfried, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 950 (1983); Flury and Grob, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3195 (1983), *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 1971, 1981 (1983); Creary and Geiger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7123 (1983); Chang and le Noble, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 810 (1984).

[132] For some recent evidence against a nonclassical **47,** see Brown, Ravindranathan, Takeuchi, and Peters, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2899 (1975); Brown and Ravindranathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 299 (1977), **100,** 1865 (1978); *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1709 (1978); Dewar, Haddon, Komornicki, and Rzepa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 377 (1977); Lambert and Mark, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2501 (1978); Christol, Coste, Pietrasanta, Plénat, and Renard, *J. Chem. Soc., Synop.* 62 (1978); Brown, Ravindranathan, Rao, Chloupek, and Rei, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3667 (1978); Werstiuk, Dhanoa, and Timmins, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 2403 (1983); Brown and Rao, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 133, 3536 (1979), **45,** 2113 (1980); Liu, Yen, and Hwang, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 152 (1980). See also Brown, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **80,** 1–18 (1979).

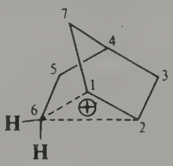
There is general agreement on two points: (1) *endo*-2-norbornyl substrates solvolyze without participation, though some workers believe that formation of **47** may follow, and (2) substituents in the 2 position that stabilize a positive charge (e.g., methyl or phenyl) either entirely eliminate σ participation or at least greatly decrease it[133] (by the principle that the extent of neighboring-group participation depends on the need for it). The fact that high exo/endo rate and product ratios are also found in these systems[134] lends support to those who believe that these phenomena are not caused by σ participation.

Besides the work done on solvolysis of 2-norbornyl compounds, the 2-norbornyl cation has also been extensively studied at low temperatures; there is much evidence that under these conditions the ion is definitely nonclassical. Olah and co-workers have prepared the 2-norbornyl cation in stable solutions at temperatures below −150°C in SbF_5–SO_2 and FSO_3H–SbF_5–SO_2, where the structure is static and hydride shifts are absent.[135] Studies by proton and ^{13}C nmr, as well as by laser Raman spectra and x-ray electron spectroscopy, led to the conclusion[136] that under these conditions the ion is nonclassical.[137] A similar result has been reported for the 2-norbornyl cation in the solid state where at 77 K and even 5 K, ^{13}C nmr spectra gave no evidence of the freezing out of a single classical ion.[138]

Olah and co-workers represented the nonclassical structure as a corner-protonated nortricyclane (**50**); the symmetry is better seen when the ion is drawn as in **51.** Almost all the positive charge resides on C-1 and C-2 and very little on the bridging carbon C-6. Other evidence for the nonclassical nature of the 2-norbornyl cation in stable solutions comes from heat of reaction measurements that show that the 2-norbornyl cation is more stable (by about 6 kcal/mol) than would be expected without the bridging.[139]

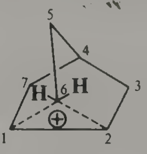


Nortricyclane

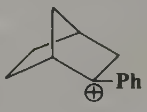


50

≡



51



52

The spectra of other norbornyl cations have also been investigated under these conditions.

---

[133] Brown and Rei, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5004 (1964), **90,** 6216 (1968); Goering and Humski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6213 (1968); Goering, Brown, and Schewene, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6214 (1968); Goering and Clevenger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1010 (1972); Takeuchi, Kurosaki, and Okamoto, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1557 (1980). See, however, Grob, Ref. 126, p. 91; Grob and Waldner, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 2481 (1983).

[134] Peters and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2397, 2398 (1973); Brown, Vander Jagt, Schleyer, Fort, and Watts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6848 (1969); Carey and Tremper, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 4 (1969); Brown and Takeuchi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5336 (1966), **99,** 2679 (1977); Rei and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5335 (1966); Brown, Chloupek, and Rei, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1248 (1964); Brown, Takeuchi, and Ravindranathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2684 (1977); Brown, Rao, and Vander Jagt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1780 (1979).

[135] The presence of hydride shifts (p. 960) under solvolysis conditions has complicated the interpretation of the data.

[136] Olah, White, DeMember, Commeyras, and Lui, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4627 (1970); Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 808 (1972); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 41–52 (1976); Olah, Liang, Mateescu, and Riemenschneider, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8698 (1973); Saunders and Kates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6867 (1980), **105,** 3571 (1983); Olah, Prakash, Arvanaghi, and Anet, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7380 (1982); Olah, Prakash, and Saunders, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 440–448 (1983). See also Schleyer, Lenoir, Mison, Liang, Prakash, and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 683 (1980).

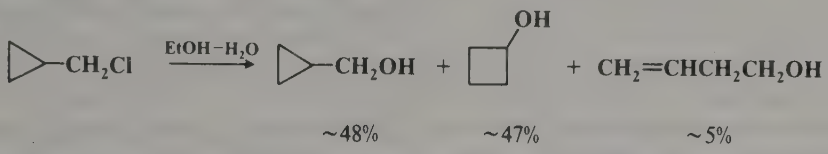
[137] This conclusion has been challenged: Fong, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7638 (1974); Kramer, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 177–224 (1975); Brown, Periasamy, Kelly, and Giansiracusa, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2089 (1982). See, however, Olah, Prakash, Farnum, and Clausen, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2146 (1983).

[138] Yannoni, Macho, and Myhre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 907, 7380 (1982); *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **91,** 422 (1982).

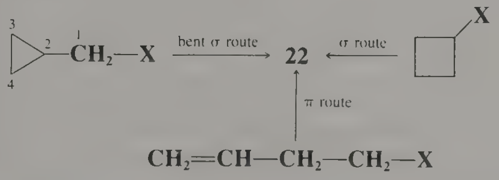
[139] For some examples, see Hogeveen and Gaasbeek, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **88,** 719 (1969); Hogeveen, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **89,** 74 (1970); Solomon and Field, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1567 (1976); Staley, Wieting, and Beauchamp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5964 (1977); Arnett and Petro, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2563 (1978); Arnett, Pienta, and Petro, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 398 (1980); Saluja and Kebarle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1084 (1979); Schleyer and Chandrasekhar, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 225 (1981). See, however, Fărcaşiu, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 223 (1981).

Spectra of the tertiary 2-methyl- and 2-ethylnorbornyl cations show less delocalization,[140] and the 2-phenylnorbornyl cation (**52**) is essentially classical,[141] as are the 2-methoxy-[142] and 2-chloronorbornyl cations.[143] We may recall (p. 146) that methoxy and halo groups also stabilize a positive charge. ^{13}C nmr data show that electron-withdrawing groups on the benzene ring of **52** cause the ion to become less classical, while electron-donating groups enhance the classical nature of the ion.[144]

b. *The cyclopropylmethyl system.* Apart from the 2-norbornyl system, the greatest amount of effort in the search for C—C participation has been devoted to the cyclopropylmethyl system.[145] It has long been known that cyclopropylmethyl substrates solvolyze with abnormally high rates and that the products often include not only unrearranged cyclopropylmethyl but also cyclobutyl and homoallylic compounds. An example is[146]



Cyclobutyl substrates also solvolyze abnormally rapidly and give similar products. Furthermore, when the reactions are carried out with labeled substrates, considerable, though not complete, scrambling is observed. For these reasons it has been suggested that a common intermediate (some kind of nonclassical intermediate, e.g., **22**, p. 272) is present in these cases. This common intermediate could then be obtained by three routes:



In recent years much work has been devoted to the study of these systems, and it is apparent that matters are not so simple. Though there is much that is still not completely understood, some conclusions can be drawn.

i. In solvolysis of simple primary cyclopropylmethyl systems the rate is enhanced because of participation by the σ bonds of the ring.[147] The ion that forms initially is an unrearranged cyclopropylmethyl cation[148] that is *symmetrically* stabilized, that is, both the 2,3 and 2,4 σ bonds help stabilize the positive charge. We have already seen (p. 145) that a cyclopropyl group stabilizes an adjacent positive charge even better than a phenyl group. One way of representing the structure of this cation is as shown in **53**. Among the evidence that **53** is a symmetrical ion is that substitution of one or more methyl groups in the 3 and 4 positions increases the rate of solvolysis of cyclo-

---

[140] Olah, DeMember, Lui, and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3958 (1969).

[141] Olah and Liang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 195 (1974); Olah, White, DeMember, Commeyras, and Lui, Ref. 136; Farnum and Mehta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3256 (1969); Ref. 140. See also Schleyer, Kleinfelter, and Richey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 479 (1963); Farnum and Wolf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5166 (1974).

[142] Nickon and Lin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6861 (1969).

[143] Fry and Farnham, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2314 (1969).

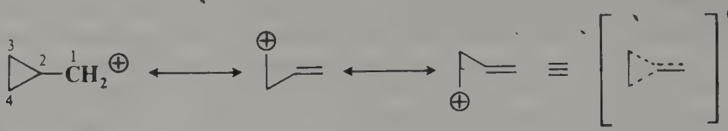
[144] Olah, Prakash, and Liang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5683 (1977); Farnum, Botto, Chambers, and Lam, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3847 (1978). See also Olah, Berrier, and Prakash, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3903 (1982).

[145] For reviews, see in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 78, vol. 3, 1972, the articles by Richey, pp. 1201–1294, and by Wiberg, Hess, and Ashe, pp. 1295–1345; Hanack and Schneider, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **8,** 554–607 (1967); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 666–677 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 709–720]; Sarel, Yovell, and Sarel-Imber, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 577–588 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 592–603].

[146] Roberts and Mazur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 2509 (1951).

[147] See, for example, Roberts and Snyder, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2860 (1979), and references cited therein.

[148] Wiberg and Ashe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 63 (1968).

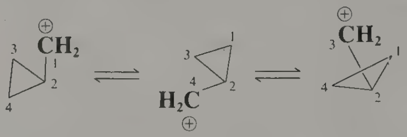


53

propylcarbinyl 3,5-dinitrobenzoates by approximately a factor of 10 for *each* methyl group.[149] If only one of the σ bonds (say, the 2,3 bond) stabilizes the cation, then methyl substitution at the 3 position should increase the rate, and a second methyl group at the 3 position should increase it still more, but a second methyl group at the 4 position should have little effect.[150]

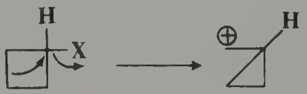
ii. The most stable geometry of simple cyclopropylmethyl cations is the bisected one shown on p. 145. There is much evidence that in systems where this geometry cannot be obtained, solvolysis is greatly slowed.[151]

iii. Once a cyclopropylmethyl cation is formed, it can rearrange to two other cyclopropylmethyl cations:



This rearrangement, which accounts for the scrambling, is completely stereospecific.[152] The rearrangements probably take place through a nonplanar cyclobutyl cation intermediate or transition state. The formation of cyclobutyl and homoallylic products from a cyclopropylmethyl cation is also completely stereospecific. These products may arise by direct attack of the nucleophile on **53** or on the cyclobutyl cation intermediate or transition state.[152] A planar cyclobutyl cation is ruled out in both cases because it would be symmetrical and the stereospecificity would be lost.

iv. The rate enhancement in the solvolysis of secondary cyclobutyl substrates is probably caused by participation by a σ bond leading directly to **53**, which accounts for the fact that solvolysis of



cyclobutyl and of cyclopropylmethyl substrates often gives similar product mixtures. There is no evidence that requires the cyclobutyl cations to be intermediates in most secondary cyclobutyl systems, though tertiary cyclobutyl cations can be solvolysis intermediates.

v. The unsubstituted cyclopropylmethyl cation has been generated in super-acid solutions at low temperatures, where ^{13}C nmr spectra have led to the conclusion that it consists of an equilibrium mixture of the bisected cyclopropylmethyl cation whose structure is shown as **53** and the bicyclobutonium ion **22**.[153]

---

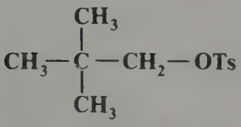
[149] Schleyer and Van Dine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2321 (1966).

[150] For a summary of additional evidence for the symmetrical nature of the cyclopropylmethyl cations, see Wiberg, Hess, and Ashe, Ref. 145, pp. 1300–1303.

[151] For example, see Ree and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1660 (1970); Rhodes and DiFate, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7582 (1972). See, however, Brown and Peters, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1927 (1975).

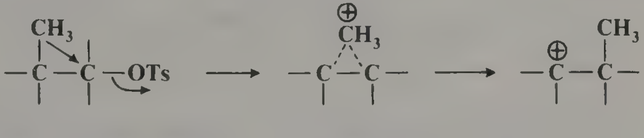
[152] Wiberg and Szeimies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4195 (1968), **92,** 571 (1970); Majerski and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 665 (1971).

c. *Methyl as a neighboring group.* Both the 2-norbornyl and cyclopropylmethyl system contain a σ bond that is geometrically constrained to be in a particularly favorable position for participation as a neighboring group. However, there have been a number of investigations to determine whether a C—C bond can lend anchimeric assistance even in a simple open-chain compound such as neopentyl tosylate (**54**). On solvolysis, neopentyl systems undergo almost exclusive rearrangement and **55** must lie on the reaction path, but the two questions that have been



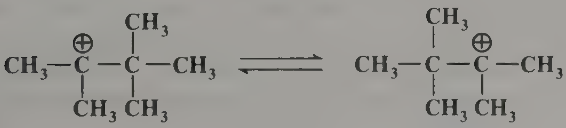
$\mathrm{CH_3{-}C(CH_3)_2{-}CH_2{-}OTs}$

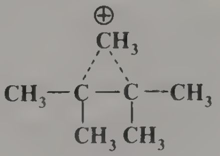
54



55

asked are: (1) Is the departure of the leaving group concerted with the formation of the CH_3—C bond (that is, does the methyl participate)? (2) Is **55** an intermediate or only a transition state? With respect to the first question, there is evidence, chiefly from isotope effect studies, that indicates that the methyl group in the neopentyl system does indeed participate,[154] though it may not greatly enhance the rate. As to the second question, evidence that **55** is an intermediate is that small amounts of cyclopropanes (10 to 15%) can be isolated in these reactions.[155] **55** is a protonated cyclopropane and would give cyclopropane on loss of a proton.[156] In an effort to isolate a species that has structure **55,** the 2,3,3-trimethyl-2-butyl cation was prepared in super-acid solutions at low temperatures.[157] However, proton and ^{13}C nmr, as well as Raman spectra, showed this to be a pair of rapidly equilibrating open ions. Of course, **56** must lie on the reaction path connecting the two





56

open ions, but it is evidently only a transition state.

5. *Hydrogen as a neighboring group.* The questions relating to hydrogen are similar to those relating to methyl. There is no question that hydride can migrate, but the two questions are: (1) Does the hydrogen participate in the departure of the leaving group? (2) Is **57** an intermediate or

---

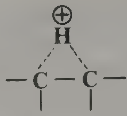
[153] Staral, Yavari, Roberts, Prakash, Donovan, and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 8016 (1978). See also Olah, Jeuell, Kelly, and Porter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 146 (1972); Olah, Spear, Hiberty, and Hehre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7470 (1976); Saunders and Siehl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6868 (1980).

[154] For example, see Dauben and Chitwood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6876 (1968); Ando and Morisaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 121 (1979); Shiner and Seib, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 123 (1979); Ando, Yamataka, Morisaki, Yamawaki, Kuramochi, and Yukawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 430 (1981); Shiner and Tai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 436 (1981); Yamataka and Ando, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1808 (1982); Yamataka, Ando, Nagase, Hanamura, and Morokuma, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 631 (1984).

[155] Skell and Starer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2971 (1960); Silver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2971 (1960); Friedman and Bayless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1790 (1969); Friedman, Jurewicz, and Bayless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1795 (1969); Friedman and Jurewicz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1800, 1803 (1969); Dupuy, Hudson, and Karam, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3193 (1971); Silver and Meek, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3579 (1971); Dupuy and Hudson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1715 (1972). See also Meek, Martin, Nadworny, and Silver, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 323 (1976).

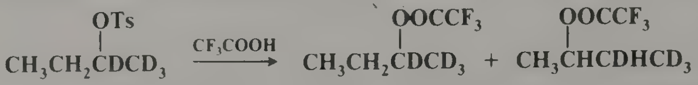
[156] For a further discussion of protonated cyclopropanes, see pp. 678, 947.

[157] Olah and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5801 (1969); Olah, Comisarow, and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1458 (1969); Olah, DeMember, Commeyras, and Bribes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 459 (1971).



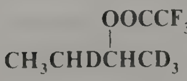
57

only a transition state? There is some evidence that a β-hydrogen can participate.[158] Evidence that **57** can be an intermediate in solvolysis reactions comes from a study of the solvolysis in trifluoroacetic acid of deuterated *sec*-butyl tosylate **58**. In this solvent of very low nucleophilic power, the products were an equimolar mixture of **59** and **60**,[159] but *no* **61** or **62** was found. If this reaction



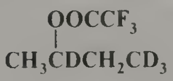
$$CH_3CH_2\overset{OTs}{\overset{|}{C}}DCD_3 \xrightarrow{CF_3COOH} CH_3CH_2\overset{OOCCF_3}{\overset{|}{C}}DCD_3 + CH_3\overset{OOCCF_3}{\overset{|}{C}}HCDHCD_3$$

58 **59** **60**



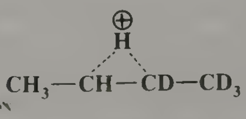
$$CH_3CHD\overset{OOCCF_3}{\overset{|}{C}}HCD_3$$

61



$$CH_3\overset{OOCCF_3}{\overset{|}{C}}DCH_2CD_3$$

62

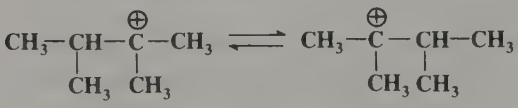


63

did not involve neighboring hydrogen at all (pure SN2 or SN1), the product would be only **59**. On the other hand, if hydrogen does migrate, but only open cations are involved, then there should be an equilibrium among these four cations:

$$CH_3CH_2\overset{\oplus}{C}DCD_3 \rightleftharpoons CH_3\overset{\oplus}{C}HCDHCD_3 \rightleftharpoons CH_3CDH\overset{\oplus}{C}HCD_3 \rightleftharpoons CH_3\overset{\oplus}{C}DCH_2CD_3$$

leading not only to **59** and **60**, but also to **61** and **62**. The results are most easily compatible with the intermediacy of the bridged ion **63** which can then be attacked by the solvent equally at the 2 and 3 positions. Attempts to prepare **57** as a stable ion in super-acid solutions at low temperatures have not been successful. Spectral results indicate that both the 2,3-dimethyl-2-butyl cation (**64**) and the 2-butyl cation (**65**) exist under these conditions as equilibrating pairs of ions,[157] where **57** is only a transition state.



$$CH_3-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}}-CH_3 \rightleftharpoons CH_3-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}}-\underset{CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_3$$

64

$$CH_3CH_2\overset{\oplus}{C}HCH_3 \rightleftharpoons CH_3\overset{\oplus}{C}HCH_2CH_3$$

65

The SNi Mechanism

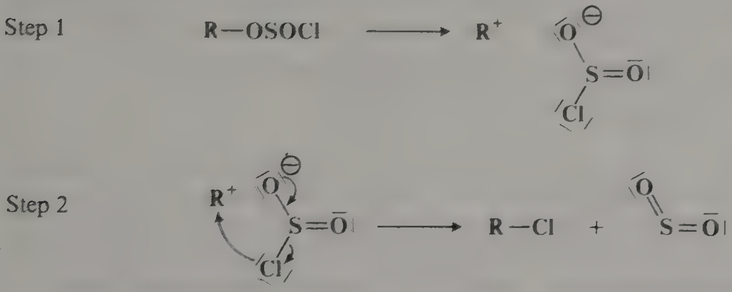
In a few reactions, nucleophilic substitution proceeds with retention of configuration, even where there is no possibility of a neighboring-group effect. In the SNi mechanism (*substitution nucleophilic*

---

[158] See, for example, Shiner and Jewett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1382 (1965); Pánková, Sicher, Tichý, and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 365 (1968); Tichý, Hapala, and Sicher, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3739 (1969); Myhre and Evans, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5641 (1969); Inomoto, Robertson, and Sarkis, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 4599 (1969); Shiner and Stoffer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3191 (1970); Krapcho and Johanson, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 146 (1971); Chuit, Felkin, Le Ny, Lion, and Prunier, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 4787 (1972); Stéhelin, Lhomme, and Ourisson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1650 (1971); Stéhelin, Kanellias, and Ourisson, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 847, 851 (1973); Hiršl-Starčević, Majerski, and Sunko, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3388 (1980).

[159] Dannenberg, Goldberg, Barton, Dill, Weinwurzel, and Longas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 7764 (1981). See also Dannenberg, Barton, Bunch, Goldberg, and Kowalski, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4524 (1983); Allen, Ambidge, and Tidwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4527 (1983).

internal) part of the leaving group must be able to attack the substrate, detaching itself from the rest of the leaving group in the process. The first step is the same as the very first step of the SN1 mechanism—dissociation into an intimate ion pair.[160] But in the second step part of the leaving group attacks, necessarily from the front since it is unable to get to the rear. This results in retention of configuration:



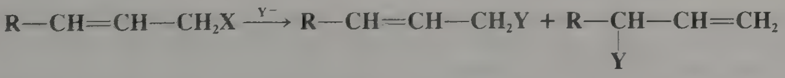
The example shown is the most important case of this mechanism yet discovered, since the reaction of alcohols with thionyl chloride to give alkyl halides usually proceeds in this way, with the first step in this case being $ROH + SOCl_2 \rightarrow ROSOCl$ (these alkyl chlorosulfites can be isolated).

Evidence for this mechanism is as follows: the addition of pyridine to the mixture of alcohol and thionyl chloride results in the formation of alkyl halide with *inverted* configuration. Inversion results because the pyridine reacts with ROSOCl to give $ROSO\overset{\oplus}{N}C_5H_5$ before anything further can take place. The Cl^- freed in this process now attacks from the rear. The reaction between alcohols and thionyl chloride is second order, which is predicted by this mechanism, but the decomposition by simple heating of ROSOCl is first order.[161]

The SNi mechanism is relatively rare. Another example is the decomposition of ROCOCl (alkyl chloroformates) into RCl and CO_2.[162]

Nucleophilic Substitution at an Allylic Carbon. Allylic Rearrangements[163]

Allylic substrates undergo nucleophilic substitution reactions especially rapidly (see p. 301), but we discuss them in a separate section because they are usually accompanied by a certain kind of rearrangement known as an *allylic rearrangement* or an *allylic shift*. When allylic substrates are treated with nucleophiles under SN1 conditions, two products are usually obtained: the normal one and a rearranged one.



$$R—CH{=}CH—CH_2X \xrightarrow{Y^-} R—CH{=}CH—CH_2Y + R—\underset{\displaystyle Y}{\underset{|}{C}H}—CH{=}CH_2$$

Two products are formed because an allylic type of carbocation is a resonance hybrid

---

[160] Lee and Finlayson, *Can. J. Chem.* **39**, 260 (1961); Lee, Clayton, Lee, and Finlayson, *Tetrahedron* **18**, 1395 (1962).

[161] Lewis and Boozer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74**, 308 (1952).

[162] Lewis, Herndon, and Duffey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83**, 1959 (1961); Lewis and Witte, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1198 (1968). For other examples, see Hart and Elia, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83**, 985 (1961); Stevens, Dittmer, and Kovacs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85**, 3394 (1963); Kice and Hanson, *J. Org. Chem.* **38**, 1410 (1973); Cohen and Solash, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2513 (1973); Verrinder, Hourigan, and Prokipcak, *Can. J. Chem.* **56**, 2582 (1978).

[163] For reviews, see DeWolfe, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 9, pp. 417–437, American Elsevier, New York, 1973; DeWolfe and Young, *Chem. Res.* **56**, 753–901 (1956); Young, *J. Chem. Educ.* **39**, 455–460 (1962); de la Mare, in Mayo, "Molecular Rearrangements," vol. 1, pp. 27–110, Interscience, New York, 1963; in Patai, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," Interscience, New York, 1964, the sections by Mackenzie, pp. 436–453 and DeWolfe and Young, pp. 681–738.

$$R{-}CH{=}CH{-}CH_2^{\oplus} \longleftrightarrow R{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H{-}CH{=}CH_2$$

so that C-1 and C-3 each carry a partial positive charge and both are attacked by Y. Of course an allylic rearrangement is undetectable in the case of symmetrical allylic cations, as in the case where R = H, unless isotopic labeling is used. This mechanism has been called the SN1′ mechanism.

As with other SN1 reactions, there is clear evidence that SN1′ reactions can involve ion pairs. If the intermediate attacked by the nucleophile is a completely free carbocation, then, say,

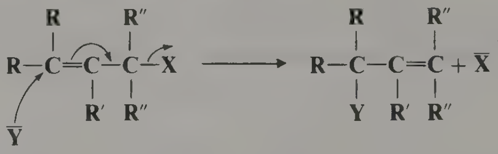
$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2Cl$ and $CH_3CHClCH{=}CH_2$

66 **67**

should give the same mixture of alcohols when reacting with hydroxide ion, since the carbocation from each should be the same. When treated with 0.8 *N* aqueous NaOH at 25°C, **66** gave 60% $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2OH$ and 40% $CH_3CHOHCH{=}CH_2$, while **67** gave the products in yields of 38% and 62%, respectively.[164] This phenomenon is called the *product spread.* In this case, and in most others, the product spread is in the direction of the starting compound. With increasing polarity of solvent, the product spread decreases and, in some cases, is entirely absent. It is evident that in such cases the high polarity of the solvent stabilizes completely free carbocations. There is other evidence for the intervention of ion pairs in many of these reactions. When $H_2C{=}CHCMe_2Cl$ was treated with acetic acid, both acetates were obtained, but also some $ClCH_2CH{=}CMe_2$,[165] and the isomerization was faster than the acetate formation. This could not have arisen from a completely free Cl^- returning to the carbon, since the rate of formation of the rearranged chloride was unaffected by the addition of external Cl^-. All these facts indicate that the first step in these reactions is the formation of an unsymmetrical intimate ion pair that undergoes a considerable amount of internal return and in which the counterion remains close to the carbon from which it departed. Thus, **66** and **67,** for example, give rise to two *different* intimate ion pairs. The field of the anion polarizes the allylic cation, making the nearby carbon atom more electrophilic, so that it has a greater chance of attracting the nucleophile.[166]

Nucleophilic substitution at an allylic carbon can also take place by an SN2 mechanism, in which case *no allylic rearrangement usually takes place*. However, allylic rearrangements can also take place under SN2 conditions. The following mechanism has been proposed,[167] in which the nucleophile attacks at the γ-carbon rather than the usual position:

SN2′ mechanism



This mechanism is a second-order allylic rearrangement; it usually comes about where SN2 conditions hold but where α substitution sterically retards the normal SN2 mechanism. There are thus few well-established cases of the SN2′ mechanism on substrates of the type $C{=}C{-}CH_2X$, while compounds of the form $C{=}C{-}CR_2X$ give the SN2′ rearrangement almost exclusively when they give bimolecular reactions at all. The SN2′ mechanism as shown above involves the simultaneous movement of three pairs of electrons. However, Bordwell has contended that there is no evidence that requires that this bond making and bond breaking be in fact concerted,[168] and that a true SN2′ mechanism is a myth. There is evidence both for[169] and against[170] this proposal.

---

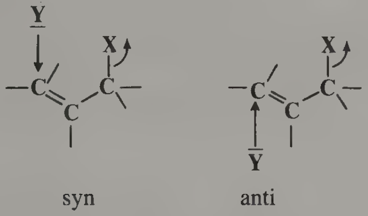
[164] DeWolfe and Young, Ref. 163, give several dozen such examples.

[165] Young, Winstein, and Goering, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 1958 (1951).

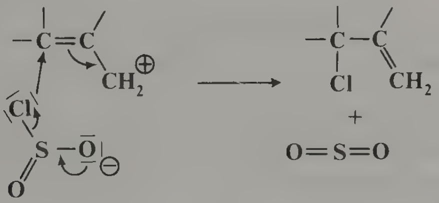
[166] For additional evidence for the involvement of ion pairs in SN1′ reactions, see Goering and Linsay, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7435 (1969); d'Incan and Viout, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3312 (1971); Astin and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1157 (1976); Kantner, Humski, and Goering, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1693 (1982); Ref. 53.

[167] For a review of the SN2′ mechanism, see Magid, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1901–1930 (1980), pp. 1901–1910.

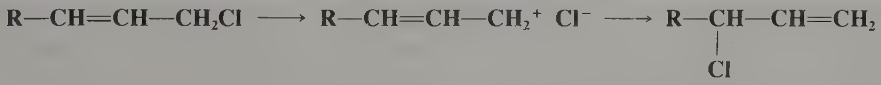
The stereochemistry of SN2′ reactions has been investigated. It has been found that both syn[171] (the nucleophile enters on the side from which the leaving group departs) and anti[172] reactions can take place, depending on the nature of X and Y,[173] though the syn pathway predominates in most cases.



When a molecule has in an allylic position a leaving group capable of giving the SNi reaction, it is possible for the nucleophile to attack at the γ-position instead of the α-position. This is called



the SNi′ mechanism and has been demonstrated on 2-buten-1-ol and 3-buten-2-ol, both of which gave 100% allylic rearrangement when treated with thionyl chloride in ether.[174] Ordinary allylic rearrangements (SN1′) or SN2′ mechanisms could not be expected to give 100% rearrangement in *both* cases. In the case shown, the nucleophile is only part of the leaving group, not the whole. But it is also possible to have reactions in which a simple leaving group, such as Cl, comes off to form an ion pair and then returns not to the position whence it came but to the allylic position:



$$\mathrm{R{-}CH{=}CH{-}CH_2Cl \longrightarrow R{-}CH{=}CH{-}CH_2^+\ Cl^- \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\displaystyle\overset{|}{Cl}}{CH}{-}CH{=}CH_2}$$

---

[168] Bordwell and Schexnayder, *J. Org. Chem.* **33**, 3240 (1968); Bordwell and Mecca, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 5829 (1972); Bordwell, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **3**, 281–290 (1970), pp. 282–285. See also de la Mare and Vernon, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1699 (1971); Dewar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106**, 209 (1984).

[169] See Uebel, Milaszewski, and Arlt, *J. Org. Chem.* **42**, 585 (1977).

[170] See Fry, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **8**, 409 (1964); Georgoulis and Ville, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 248 (1978); Meislich and Jasne, *J. Org. Chem.* **47**, 2517 (1982).

[171] See, for example, Stork and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78**, 4609 (1956); Jefford, Sweeney, and Delay, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **55**, 2214 (1972); Chiche, Coste, Christol, and Plenat, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3251 (1978); Kirmse, Scheidt, and Vater, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100**, 3945 (1978); Gallina and Ciattini, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101**, 1035 (1979); Magid and Fruchey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101**, 2107 (1979).

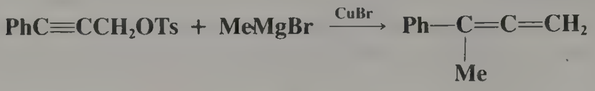
[172] See, for example, Borden and Corey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 313 (1969); Takahashi and Satoh, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **48**, 69 (1975); Staroscik and Rickborn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 3046 (1971); Wieland and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 3047 (1971). See also Liotta, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 523 (1975); Godtfredsen, Obrecht, and Arigoni, *Chimia* **31**, 62 (1977); Tanigawa, Ohta, Sonoda, and Murahashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100**, 4610 (1978); Stork and Schoofs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101**, 5081 (1979).

[173] Stork and Kreft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 3850, 3851 (1977); Oritani and Overton, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 454 (1978). See also Chapleo, Finch, Roberts, Wooley, Newton, and Selby, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1847 (1980); Stohrer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22**, 613 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95**, 642].

[174] Young, Ref. 163, p. 456. For other examples, see Pegolotti and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83**, 3251 (1961); Mark, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 281 (1962); Czernecki, Georgoulis, Labertrande, and Prévost, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3568 (1969); Lewis and Witte, Ref. 162.

Most S_Ni' reactions are of this type.

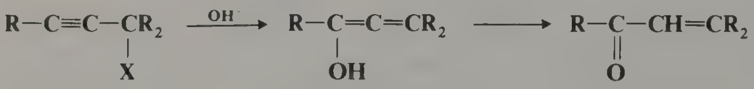
Allylic rearrangements have also been demonstrated in propargyl systems, e.g.,[175]



$$PhC{\equiv}CCH_2OTs + MeMgBr \xrightarrow{CuBr} Ph{-}\underset{\displaystyle Me}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}C{=}CH_2$$

(Reaction **0–88**)

The product in this case is an allene,[176] but such shifts can also give triple-bond compounds or, if Y = OH, an enol will be obtained that tautomerizes to an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde or ketone.



$$R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}\underset{\displaystyle X}{\underset{|}{C}}R_2 \xrightarrow{OH^-} R{-}\underset{\displaystyle OH}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}C{=}CR_2 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}CH{=}CR_2$$

When X = OH, this conversion of acetylenic alcohols to unsaturated aldehydes or ketones is called the *Meyer–Schuster rearrangement*.[177]

Nucleophilic Substitution at an Aliphatic Trigonal Carbon.[178] The Tetrahedral Mechanism

All the mechanisms so far discussed take place at a saturated carbon atom. Nucleophilic substitution is also important at trigonal carbons, especially when the carbon is double-bonded to an oxygen, a sulfur, or a nitrogen. Nucleophilic substitution at vinyl carbons is considered in the next section; at aromatic carbons in Chapter 13.

Substitution at a carbonyl group (or the corresponding nitrogen and sulfur analogs) most often proceeds by a second-order mechanism, which in this book is called the *tetrahedral*[179] *mechanism*.[180] S_N1 mechanisms, involving carbocations, are sometimes found with these substrates, especially with essentially ionic substrates such as $RCO^+\ BF_4^-$, but the tetrahedral mechanism is far more prevalent.[181] Although this mechanism displays second-order kinetics, it is not the same as the S_N2 mechanism previously discussed. Simple S_N2 mechanisms have seldom if ever been demonstrated for carbonyl substrates[182]. In the tetrahedral mechanism, first Y attacks to give an intermediate containing both X and Y, and then X leaves. This sequence, impossible at a saturated carbon, is possible at an unsaturated one because the central carbon can release a pair of electrons to the oxygen and so preserve its octet:

---

[175] Vermeer, Meijer, and Brandsma, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **94,** 112 (1975).

[176] For reviews of such rearrangements, see Taylor, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 317–359 (1967), pp. 324–328; Sandler and Karo, "Organic Functional Group Preparations," vol. 2, pp. 16–31, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[177] For a review, see Swaminathan and Narayanan, *Chem. Rev.* **71,** 429–438 (1971). For a discussion of the mechanism, see Edens, Boerner, Chase, Nass, and Schiavelli, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3403 (1977).

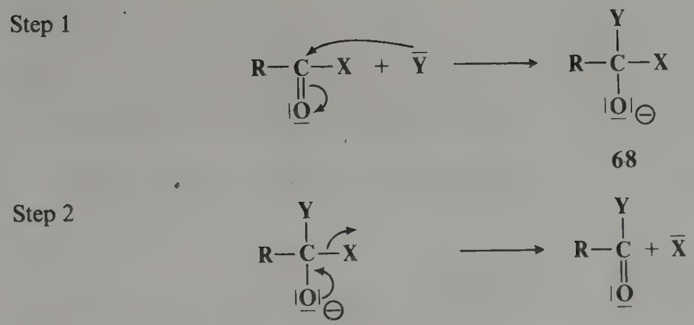
[178] For a review, see Satchell, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17,** 160–203 (1963).

[179] This mechanism has also been called the "addition–elimination mechanism," but in this book we limit this term to the type of mechanism shown on p. 295.

[180] For reviews of this mechanism, see Talbot, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 163, vol. 10, pp. 209–223, 1972; Jencks, "Catalysis in Chemistry and Enzymology," pp. 463–554, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969; Satchell and Satchell, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Carboxylic Acids and Esters," pp. 375–452, Interscience, New York; 1969; Johnson, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **5,** 237–330 (1967); Bender, *Chem. Rev.* **60,** 53–113 (1960).

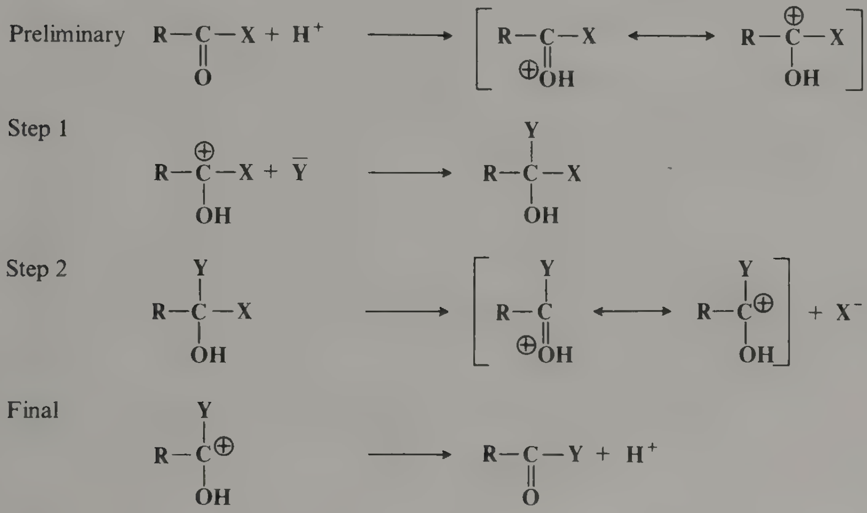
[181] There is evidence that S_N1 mechanisms are more prevalent in the gas phase: Kim and Caserio, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2124 (1981).

[182] For example, see Kevill and Foss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5054 (1969); Haberfield and Trattner, *Chem. Commun.* 1481 (1971); Kevill, Daum, and Sapre, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 963 (1975); Shpan'ko, Goncharov, and Litvinenko, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **15,** 1472, 1478 (1979); De Tar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7205 (1982); Bentley, Carter, and Harris, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 387 (1984).


Step 1
R—C—X + Y
O
Y
R—C—X
O
Step 2
Y
R—C—X
O
Y
R—C + X
O

68

When reactions are carried out in acid solution, there may also be a preliminary and a final step:


Preliminary
R—C—X + H⁺
O
R—C—X
OH
R—C—X
OH
Step 1
R—C—X + Y
OH
Y
R—C—X
OH
Step 2
Y
R—C—X
OH
Y
R—C
OH
Y
R—C
OH
+ X⁻
Final
Y
R—C
OH
R—C—Y + H⁺
O

The hydrogen ion is a catalyst. The reaction rate is increased because it is easier for the nucleophile to attack the carbon when the electron density of the latter has been decreased.[183]

Evidence for the existence of the tetrahedral mechanism is as follows:[184]

1. The kinetics are first order each in the substrate and in the nucleophile, as predicted by the mechanism.

2. There is other kinetic evidence in accord with a tetrahedral intermediate. For example, the rate "constant" for the reaction between acetamide and hydroxylamine is not constant but decreases with increasing hydroxylamine concentration.[185] This is not a smooth decrease; there is a break in the curve. A straight line is followed at low hydroxylamine concentration and another straight line at high concentration. This means that the identity of the rate-determining step is changing. Obviously, this cannot happen if there is only one step: there must be two steps and hence an intermediate. Similar kinetic behavior has been found in other cases as well,[186] in particular, plots of rate against pH are often bell-shaped.

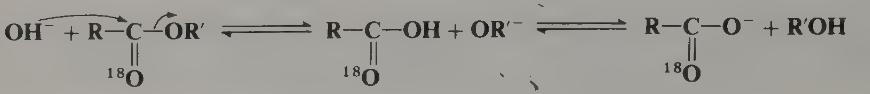
---

[183] For discussions of general acid and base catalysis of reactions at a carbonyl group, see Jencks, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 425–432 (1976); *Chem. Rev.* **72,** 705–718 (1972).

[184] For additional evidence, see Guthrie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5892 (1978); Kluger and Chin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7382 (1978); O'Leary and Marlier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3300 (1979).

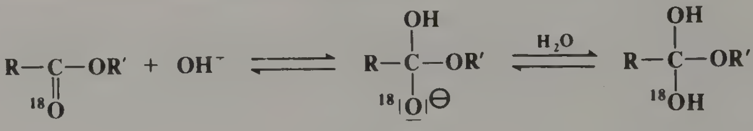
[185] Jencks and Gilchrist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5616 (1964).

3. Basic hydrolysis has been carried out on esters labeled with ^{18}O in the carbonyl group.[187] If this reaction proceeded by the normal SN2 mechanism, then all the ^{18}O would remain in the carbonyl group, even if, in an equilibrium process, some of the acid formed went back to the starting material:



$$\mathrm{OH^- + R{-}\underset{\underset{^{18}O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' \rightleftharpoons R{-}\underset{\underset{^{18}O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH + OR'^- \rightleftharpoons R{-}\underset{\underset{^{18}O}{\|}}{C}{-}O^- + R'OH}$$

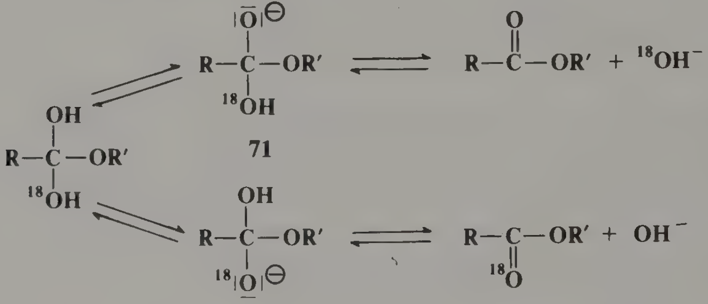
On the other hand, if the tetrahedral mechanism operates



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{^{18}O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' + OH^- \rightleftharpoons R{-}\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{^{18}O^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}{-}OR' \xrightleftharpoons{H_2O} R{-}\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{^{18}OH}{|}}{C}}{-}OR'}$$

69 **70**

then the intermediate **69,** by picking up a proton, becomes converted to the symmetrical intermediate **70.** In this intermediate the OH groups are equivalent, and (except for the small $^{18}O/^{16}O$ isotope effect) either one can lose a proton with equal facility:



71

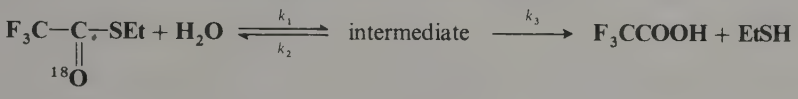
The intermediates **69** and **71** can now lose OR′ to give the acid (not shown in the equations given), or they can lose OH to regenerate the ester. If **69** goes back to ester, the ester will still be labeled, but if **71** reverts to ester, the ^{18}O will be lost. A test of the two possible mechanisms is to stop the reaction before completion and to analyze the recovered ester for ^{18}O. This is just what was done by Bender, who found that in alkaline hydrolysis of methyl, ethyl, and isopropyl benzoates, the esters had lost ^{18}O. A similar experiment carried out for acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of ethyl benzoate showed that here too the ester lost ^{18}O. However, alkaline hydrolysis of substituted benzyl benzoates showed *no* ^{18}O loss.[188] This result does not necessarily mean that no tetrahedral intermediate is involved in this case. If **69** and **71** do not revert to ester, but go entirely to acid, then no ^{18}O loss will be found even with a tetrahedral intermediate. In the case of benzyl benzoates this may very well be happening, because formation of the acid relieves steric strain. Even the experiments that *do* show ^{18}O loss do not *prove* the existence of the tetrahedral intermediate, since it is possible that ^{18}O is lost by some independent process not leading to ester hydrolysis. To deal with this possibility, Bender and Heck[189] measured the rate of ^{18}O loss in the hydrolysis of ethyl trifluorothioloacetate–^{18}O (**72**). This reaction had previously been shown[190] to involve an intermediate by the kinetic methods mentioned on p. 291. Bender and Heck showed that the rate of ^{18}O loss and the value of the partitioning ratio k_2/k_3 as determined by the oxygen exchange technique were exactly in accord with these values as previously determined by kinetic methods. Thus the original ^{18}O-exchange measurements showed that there is a tetrahedral species present, though not necessarily on the reaction path, while the kinetic experiments showed that there is some intermediate present, though not necessarily tetrahedral. Bender and Heck's results demonstrate that there is a tetrahedral intermediate and that it lies on the reaction pathway.

---

[186] Hand and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3505 (1962); Bruice and Fedor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4886 (1964); Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3819 (1964); Fedor and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5697 (1964), **87,** 4138 (1965); Kevill and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 928 (1965); Leinhard and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3855 (1965); Schowen, Jayaraman, and Kershner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3373 (1966).

[187] Bender, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 1626 (1951); Bender and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4183, 4189 (1961).

[188] Bender, Matsui, Thomas, and Tobey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4193 (1961). See also Shain and Kirsch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5848 (1968).



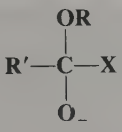
$$F_3C{-}\underset{\underset{^{18}O}{\|}}{C}{-}SEt + H_2O \underset{k_2}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} \text{intermediate} \xrightarrow{k_3} F_3CCOOH + EtSH$$

72

4. In a few cases, tetrahedral intermediates have been isolated[191] or detected spectrally.[191a]

Several studies have been made of the directionality of approach by the nucleophile. Menger[192] has proposed for reactions in general, and specifically for those that proceed by the tetrahedral mechanism, that there is no single definable preferred transition state, but rather a "cone" of trajectories. All approaches within this cone lead to reaction at comparable rates; it is only when the approach comes outside of the cone that the rate falls.

Directionality has also been studied for the second step. Once the tetrahedral intermediate (**68**) is formed, it loses Y (giving the product) or X (reverting to the starting compound). Deslongchamps has proposed that one of the factors affecting this choice is the conformation of the intermediate; more specifically, the positions of the lone pairs. In this view, a leaving group X or Y can depart only if the other two atoms on the carbon each has no orbital periplanar to the C—X or C—Y bond. For example, consider an intermediate



$$R'{-}\overset{\overset{OR}{|}}{\underset{\underset{O^-}{|}}{C}}{-}X$$

formed by attack of OR^- on a substrate $R'COX$. Cleavage of the C—X bond with loss of X can take place from conformation **A,** because the two lone-pair orbitals marked * are antiperiplanar to the C—X bond, but not from **B** because only the O^- has such an orbital. If the intermediate is in conformation **B,** the OR may leave (if X has a lone-pair orbital in the proper position) rather than X. This factor is called *stereoelectronic control.* Of course, there is free rotation in acyclic intermediates, and many conformations are possible, but some are preferred, and cleavage reactions

---

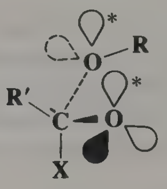
[189] Bender and Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1211 (1967).

[190] Fedor and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4138 (1965).

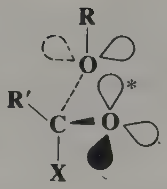
[191] Rogers and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2481 (1974); Khouri and Kaloustian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2249 (1979); Bender, Ref. 180, pp. 58–59.

[191a] For example, see Robinson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3138 (1970); Fodor, Letourneau, and Mandava, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 1465 (1970); Gravitz and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 489, 499, 507 (1974); Fraenkel and Watson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 231 (1975); Tee, Trani, McClelland, and Seaman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7219 (1982), and references in the last paper. For reviews, see McClelland and Santry, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 394–399 (1983); Capon, Ghosh, and Grieve, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **14,** 306–312 (1981).

[192] For discussion, see Menger, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 1013–1040 (1983).



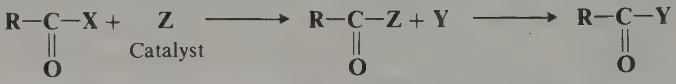
A



B

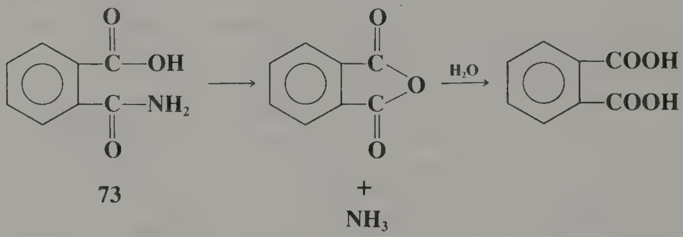
may take place faster than rotation, so that stereoelectronic control can be a factor in some situations. Much evidence has been presented for this concept.[193] More generally, the term *stereoelectronic effects* refers to any case in which orbital position requirements affect the course of a reaction. The backside attack in the SN2 mechanism is an example of a stereoelectronic effect.

Some nucleophilic substitutions at a carbonyl carbon are *catalyzed* by nucleophiles.[194] There occur, in effect, two tetrahedral mechanisms:



$$\underset{\displaystyle \text{O}}{\overset{}{\text{R—}\underset{\|}{\text{C}}\text{—X}}} + \underset{\text{Catalyst}}{\text{Z}} \longrightarrow \text{R—}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}\text{—Z} + \text{Y} \longrightarrow \text{R—}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}\text{—Y}$$

(For an example, see page 334.) When this happens internally, we have an example of a neighboring-group mechanism at a carbonyl carbon.[195] For example, the hydrolysis of phthalamic acid (**73**) takes place as follows:



73

Evidence comes from comparative rate studies.[196] Thus **73** was hydrolyzed about 10^5 times faster than benzamide ($PhCONH_2$) at about the same concentration of hydrogen ions. That this enhancement of rate was not caused by the resonance or field effects of COOH (an electron-withdrawing group) was shown by the fact that both *o*-nitrobenzamide and terephthalamic acid (the para isomer of **73**) were hydrolyzed more slowly than benzamide. Many other examples of neighboring-group participation at a carbonyl carbon have been reported.[197] It is likely that nucleophilic catalysis is involved in enzyme catalysis of ester hydrolysis.

---

[193] For monographs, see Kirby, "The Anomeric Effect and Related Stereoelectronic Effects at Oxygen," Springer Verlag, New York, 1983; Deslongchamps, "Stereoelectronic Effects in Organic Chemistry," Pergamon, New York, 1983. For lengthy treatments, see Deslongchamps, *Heterocycles* **7,** 1271–1317 (1977); *Tetrahedron* **31,** 2463–2490 (1975). For additional evidence, see Deslongchamps, Barlet, and Taillefer, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 2167 (1980); Perrin and Arrhenius, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2839 (1982), Desvard and Kirby, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4163 (1982); Briggs, Evans, Glenn, and Kirby, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1637 (1983); and references cited in these papers.

[194] For reviews of nucleophilic catalysis, see Bender, "Mechanisms of Homogeneous Catalysis from Protons to Proteins," pp. 147–179, Wiley, New York, 1971; Jencks, Ref. 180, pp. 67–77; Johnson, Ref. 180, pp. 271–318. For a review where Z = a tertiary amine (the most common case), see Cherkasova, Bogatkov, and Golovina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 246–263 (1977).

[195] For reviews, see Kirby and Fersht, *Prog. Bioorg. Chem.* **1,** 1–82 (1971); Capon, *Essays Chem.* **3,** 127–156 (1972).

[196] Bender, Chow, and Chloupek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5380 (1958).

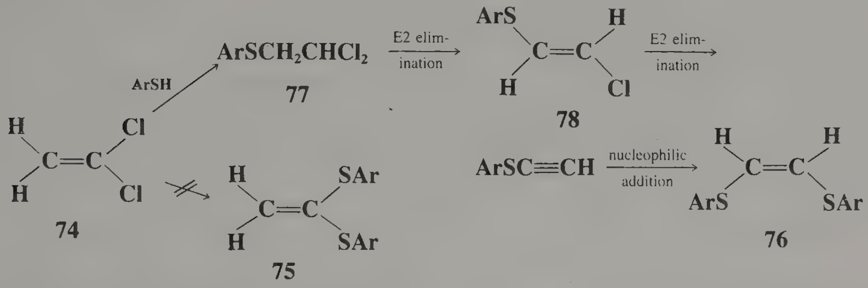
[197] For examples, see Bruice and Pandit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5858 (1960); Zimmering, Westhead, and Morawetz, *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* **25,** 376 (1957); Snell, Kwok, and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6728 (1967); Burrows and Topping, *Chem. Commun.* 904 (1969), 1389 (1970); Kirby, McDonald, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1495 (1974); Martin and Tan, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 129 (1974); Kluger and Lam, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2191 (1978).

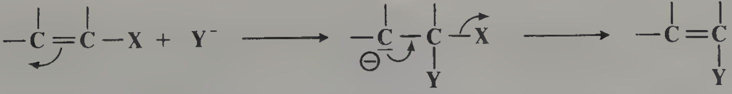
The attack of a nucleophile on a carbonyl group may result in substitution or addition (Chapter 16), though the first step of each mechanism is the same. The principal factor that determines the product is the identity of the group X in RCOX. When X is alkyl or hydrogen, addition usually takes place. When X is halogen, OH, OCOR, NH_2, etc., the usual reaction is substitution.

For a list of some of the more important reactions that operate by the tetrahedral mechanism, see Table 8 (p. 307).

Nucleophilic Substitution at a Vinylic Carbon[198]

Nucleophilic substitution at a vinylic carbon is difficult (see p. 300), but many examples are known. The most common mechanisms are the tetrahedral mechanism and the closely related *addition–elimination mechanism*. Both of these mechanisms are impossible at a saturated substrate. The addition–elimination mechanism has been demonstrated for the reaction between 1,1-dichloroethene (**74**) and ArS^-, catalyzed by EtO^-.[199] The product was not the 1,1-dithiophenoxy compound **75** but the "rearranged" compound **76.** Isolation of **77** and **78** showed that an addition–elimination mechanism had taken place. In the first step ArSH adds to the double bond (nucleophilic addition, p. 664) to give the saturated **77.** The second step is an E2 elimination reaction (p. 874) to give the alkene **78.** A second elimination and addition give **76.** The tetrahedral mechanism, often also called addition–elimination (*Ad*N-*E*), takes place with much less facility than with carbonyl groups, since the negative charge of the intermediate must be borne by a carbon, which is less electronegative than oxygen, sulfur, or nitrogen:





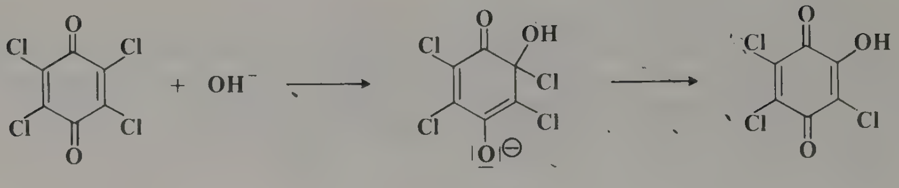
Such an intermediate can also stabilize itself by combining with a positive species. When it does, the reaction is nucleophilic addition to a C=C double bond (see Chapter 15). It is not surprising that with vinyl substrates addition and substitution often compete. For chloroquinones, where the charge is spread by resonance, tetrahedral intermediates have been isolated:[200]

---

[198] For reviews, see Rappoport, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 1–114 (1969); Modena, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 73–80 (1971); Patai and Rappoport, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," pp. 525–546, Interscience, New York, 1964. The nomenclature in the first and third of these reviews differs from that used in this book. Rappoport and Patai use the term "addition–elimination" to refer to three mechanisms; those we call tetrahedral, SN2, and addition–elimination. For a more recent review, see Rappoport, Ref. 91, pp. 427–615.

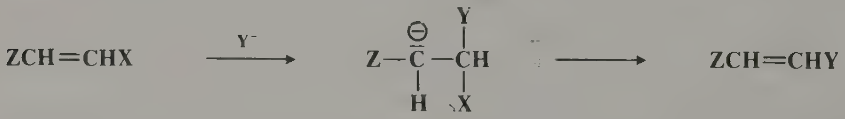
[199] Truce and Boudakian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2748 (1956).

[200] Hancock, Morrell, and Rhom, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 987 (1962).



Since both the tetrahedral and addition–elimination mechanisms begin the same way, it is usually difficult to tell them apart, and often no attempt is made to do so. The strongest kind of evidence for the addition–elimination sequence is the occurrence of a "rearrangement" (as in the conversion of **74** to **76**), but of course the mechanism could still take place even if no rearrangement is found. Evidence[201] that a tetrahedral or an addition–elimination mechanism takes place in certain cases (as opposed, for example, to an SN1 or SN2 mechanism) is that the reaction rate increases when the leaving group is changed from Br or Cl to F (this is called the *element effect*).[202] This clearly demonstrates that the carbon–halogen bond does not break in the rate-determining step (as it would have to in both the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms), because fluorine is by far the poorest leaving group among the halogens in both the SN1 and SN2 reactions (p. 310). The rate is faster with fluorides in the cases cited, because the superior electron-withdrawing character of the fluorine makes the carbon of the C—F bond more positive and thus more susceptible to nucleophilic attack. However, there is evidence that the tetrahedral mechanism at a vinyl substrate can also take place with the second step being rate-determining.[203]

Ordinary vinylic substrates react very poorly if at all by these mechanisms, but substitution is greatly enhanced in substrates of the type ZCH═CHX, where Z is an electron-withdrawing group such as HCO, RCO,[204] EtOOC, ArSO$_2$, NC, F,[205] etc., since these β-groups stabilize the carbanion:



$$\mathrm{ZCH{=}CHX} \xrightarrow{Y^-} \mathrm{Z}-\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\overset{\ominus}{\mathrm{C}}}-\underset{\mathrm{X}}{\overset{\mathrm{Y}}{\mathrm{CH}}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZCH{=}CHY}$$

Many such examples are known. In most cases where the stereochemistry has been investigated, retention of configuration is observed.[206] It is not immediately apparent why the tetrahedral mechanism should lead to retention, but this behavior has been ascribed, on the basis of mo calculations, to hyperconjugation involving the carbanionic electron pair and the substituents on the adjacent carbon.[207]

Vinyl substrates are in general very reluctant to undergo SN1 reactions, but they can be made to do so in two ways:[208] (1) By the use of an α-group that stabilizes the vinyl cation. For example, α-aryl vinyl halides $ArCBr{=}CR'_2$ have often been shown to give SN1 reactions.[209] SN1 reactions have also been demonstrated with other stabilizing groups: cyclopropyl,[210] vinylic,[211] alkynyl,[212] and an adjacent double bond ($R_2C{=}C{=}CR'X$).[213] (2) Even without α stabilization, by the use of a very good leaving group, e.g., OSO_2CF_3 (triflate).[214] The stereochemical outcome of SN1 reactions at a vinyl substrate is often randomization,[215] that is, either a cis or a trans substrate gives a 1 : 1 mixture of cis and trans products, indicating that the vinyl cation is linear. Another indication that vinyl cations prefer to be linear is the fact that reactivity in cycloalkenyl systems decreases with decreasing ring size.[216] However, a linear vinyl cation need not give random products.[217] The empty *p* orbital lies in the plane of the double bond, so entry of the nucleophile can be and often is

---

[201] Additional evidence comes from the pattern of catalysis by amines, similar to that discussed for aromatic substrates on p. 578. See Rappoport and Peled, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2682 (1979), and references cited therein.

[202] Beltrame, Favini, Cattania, and Guella, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **98,** 380 (1968). See also Rappoport and Rav-Acha, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 117 (1984).

[203] Rappoport, Ref. 198.

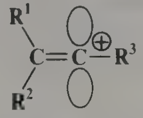
[204] For a review, see Rybinskaya, Nesmeyanov, and Kochetkov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 433–456 (1969).

[205] Sauvetre and Normant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3202 (1972).

[206] Rappoport, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ref. 198, pp. 31–62.

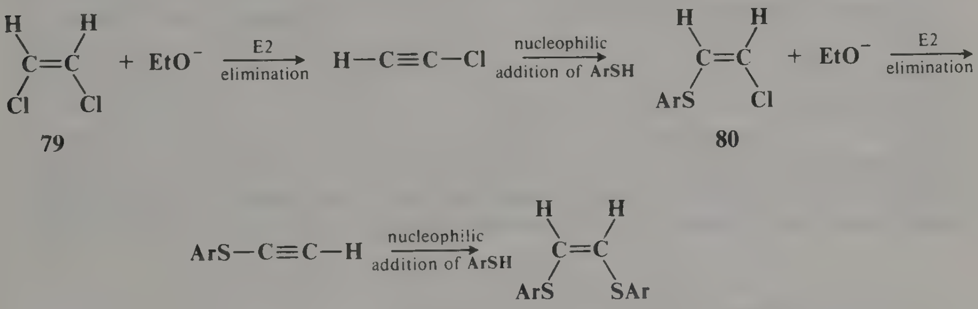
[207] Apeloig and Rappoport, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 5095 (1979).

[208] For reviews of the SN1 mechanism at a vinyl substrate, see Stang, Rappoport, Hanack, and Subramanian, "Vinyl Cations," Chapter 5, Academic Press, New York, 1979; Stang, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 107–114 (1978); *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **10,** 205–325 (1973); Rappoport, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 265–273 (1976); Subramanian and Hanack, *J. Chem. Educ.* **52,** 80–86 (1975); Hanack, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **3,** 209–216 (1970); Modena and Tonellato, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **9,** 185–280 (1971), pp. 231–253; Grob, *Chimia* **25,** 87–91 (1971); Rappoport, Bässler, and Hanack, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4985–4987 (1970).



influenced by the relative size of R¹ and R².[218] It must be emphasized that even where vinyl substrates do give SN1 reactions, the rates are generally lower than those of the corresponding saturated compounds.

Besides the mechanisms already discussed, another mechanism, involving an *elimination–addition* sequence, has been observed in vinyl systems (a similar mechanism is known for aromatic substrates, p. 580). An example of a reaction involving this mechanism is the reaction of 1,2-dichloroethane (**79**) with ArS^- and OEt^- to produce **76.** The mechanism may be formulated as:



79 **80** **76**

---

[209] For a review, see Stang, Rappoport, Hanack, and Subramanian, Ref. 208, Chapter 6.

[210] Sherrod and Bergman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2115 (1969), **93,** 1925 (1971); Kelsey and Bergman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 238 (1970), **93,** 1941 (1971); Hanack and Bässler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2117 (1969); Hanack, Bässler, Eymann, Heyd, and Kopp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6686 (1974).

[211] Grob and Spaar, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1439 (1969), *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 2119 (1970).

[212] Hassdenteufel and Hanack, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 503 (1980). See also Kobayashi, Nishi, Koyama, and Taniguchi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 103 (1980).

[213] Schiavelli, Gilbert, Boynton, and Boswell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5061 (1972).

[214] See, for example, Stang and Summerville, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4600 (1969); Clarke and Bergman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3627 (1972), **96,** 7934 (1974); Summerville and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3629 (1972), **96,** 1110 (1974); Eckes, Subramanian, and Hanack, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1967 (1973); Summerville, Senkler, Schleyer, Dueber, and Stang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1100 (1974); Hanack, Märkl, and Martinez, *Chem. Ber.* **115,** 772 (1982). See also Jones and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1960 (1967); Peterson and Indelicato, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6194 (1969).

[215] Rappoport and Apeloig, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6734 (1969); Kelsey and Bergman, Ref. 210.

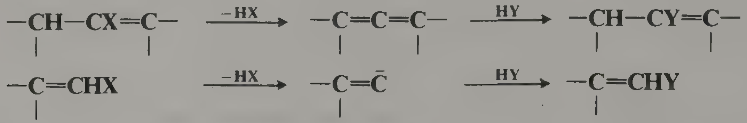
[216] Pfeifer, Bahn, Schleyer, Bocher, Harding, Hummel, Hanack, and Stang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1513 (1971).

[217] For examples of inversion, see Clarke and Bergman, Ref. 214; Summerville and Schleyer, Ref. 214.

[218] Maroni, Melloni, and Modena, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 857 (1972).

The steps are the same as in the addition–elimination mechanism, but in reverse order. Evidence for this sequence[219] is as follows: (1) The reaction does not proceed without ethoxide ion, and the rate is dependent on the concentration of this ion and not on that of ArS^-. (2) Under the same reaction conditions, chloroacetylene gave **80** and **76.** (3) **80,** treated with ArS^-, gave no reaction but, when EtO^- was added, **76** was obtained. It is interesting that the elimination–addition mechanism has even been shown to occur in five- and six-membered cyclic systems, where triple bonds are greatly strained.[220] Note that both the addition–elimination and elimination–addition sequences, as shown above, lead to overall retention of configuration, since in each case both addition and elimination are anti.

We have shown the elimination–addition sequence operating through an acetylenic intermediate, but in some cases it can also take place with an allene- or a carbene-type intermediate:[221]



$$-\mathrm{CH{-}CX{=}C}- \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{HX}} -\mathrm{C{=}C{=}C}- \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HY}} -\mathrm{CH{-}CY{=}C}-$$

$$-\mathrm{C{=}CHX} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{HX}} -\mathrm{C{=}\bar{C}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HY}} -\mathrm{C{=}CHY}$$

The elimination–addition sequence has also been demonstrated for certain reactions of saturated substrates, e.g., $\mathrm{ArSO_2CH_2CH_2SO_2Ar}$.[222] Treatment of this with ethoxide proceeds as follows:

$$\mathrm{ArSO_2CH_2CH_2SO_2Ar} \xrightarrow[\text{E2 elimination}]{\mathrm{EtO}^-} \mathrm{ArSO_2CH{=}CH_2} \xrightarrow[\text{addition}]{\mathrm{EtO}^-} \mathrm{ArSO_2CH_2CH_2OEt}$$

Mannich bases (see **6-16**) of the type $\mathrm{RCOCH_2CH_2NR_2}$ similarly undergo nucleophilic substitution by the elimination–addition mechanism.[223] The nucleophile replaces the $\mathrm{NR_2}$ group.

The simple SN2 mechanism has never been convincingly demonstrated for vinyl substrates.[224]

REACTIVITY

A large amount of work has been done on this subject. Many small effects have been examined. However, though a great deal is known, much is still poorly understood, and many results are anomalous and hard to explain. In this section only approximate generalizations are attempted.

The Effect of Substrate Structure

The effect on the reactivity of a change in substrate structure depends on the mechanism.

1. *Branching at the α- and β-carbons.* For the SN2 mechanism, branching at either the α- or the β-carbon decreases the rate. Tertiary systems seldom[225] react by the SN2 mechanism and

---

[219] Truce, Boudakian, Heine, and McManimie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2743 (1956); Flynn, Badiger, and Truce, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2298 (1963).

[220] Montgomery, Scardiglia, and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1917 (1965); Montgomery and Applegate, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2952 (1967); Montgomery, Clouse, Crelier, and Applegate, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3453 (1967); Caubere and Brunet, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 3515 (1971); Bottini, Corson, Fitzgerald, and Frost, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 4883 (1972).

[221] Rappoport, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ref. 198, pp. 91–98.

[222] Kader and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3686 (1962).

[223] For an example, see Andrisano, Angeloni, De Maria, and Tramontini, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2307 (1967).

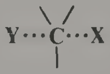
[224] For discussions, see Miller, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 1211 (1977); Texier, Henri-Rousseau, and Bourgois, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-86 (1979); Rappoport, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **14,** 7–15 (1981); Rappoport and Avramovitch, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1397 (1982).

[225] For a reported example, see Edwards and Grieco, *Can. J. Chem.* **52,** 3561 (1974).

TABLE 3 Average relative S_N2 rates for some alkyl substrates[227]

R	Relative rate	R	Relative rate
Methyl	30	Isobutyl	0.03
Ethyl	1	Neopentyl	10^{-5}
Propyl	0.4	Allyl	40
Butyl	0.4	Benzyl	120
Isopropyl	0.025		

neopentyl systems react so slowly as to make such reactions, in general, synthetically useless.[226] Table 3 shows average relative rates for some alkyl substrates.[227] The reason for these low rates is almost certainly steric.[227a] The transition state **1** is more crowded when larger groups are close to the central carbon.



1

The tetrahedral mechanism for substitution at a carbonyl carbon is also slowed or blocked completely by α or β branching for similar reasons. For example, esters of the formula R_3CCOOR' cannot generally be hydrolyzed by the tetrahedral mechanism (see **0-11**), nor can acids R_3CCOOH be easily esterified. Synthetic advantage can be taken of this fact, for example, when in a molecule containing two ester groups only the less hindered one is hydrolyzed.

For the S_N1 mechanism, α branching increases the rate, as shown in Table 4.[228] We can explain this by the stability order of alkyl cations (tertiary > secondary > primary). Of course, the rates are not actually dependent on the stability of the ions, but on the difference in free energy between the starting compounds and the transition states. We use the Hammond postulate (p. 188) to make the assumption that the transition states resemble the cations and that anything (such as α branching) that lowers the free energy of the ions also lowers it for the transition states. For simple alkyl groups, the S_N1 mechanism is important under all conditions only for tertiary substrates. As previously indicated (p. 267), secondary substrates generally react by the S_N2 mechanism,[229] except

TABLE 4 Relative rates of solvolysis of RBr in two solvents[228]

RBr substrate	In 60% ethanol at 55°C	In water at 50°C
MeBr	2.08	1.05
EtBr	1.00	1.00
iso-**PrBr**	1.78	11.6
t-**BuBr**	2.41×10^4	1.2×10^6

---

[226] S_N2 reactions on neopentyl tosylates have been conveniently carried out in the solvents HMPT and Me_2SO: Lewis, Gustafson, and Erman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 401 (1967); Paquette and Phillips, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4645 (1967); Stephenson, Solladié, and Mosher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4184 (1972); Anderson, Stephenson, and Mosher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3171 (1974). See also Zieger and Mathisen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2207 (1979).

[227] This table is from Streitwieser, Ref. 1, p. 13. Also see Table 2, Chapter 9 (p. 239).

[227a] For evidence, see Caldwell, Magnera, and Kebarle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 959 (1984).

[228] These values are from Streitwieser, Ref. 1, p. 43, where values are also given for other conditions. Methyl bromide reacts faster than ethyl bromide (and in the case of 60% ethanol, isopropyl bromide) because some of it (probably most of it) reacts by the S_N2 mechanism.

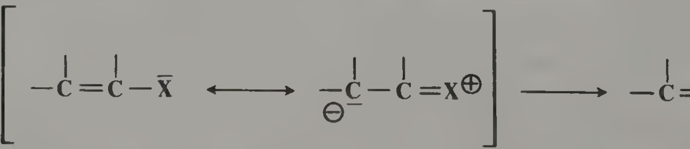
[229] See Raber and Harris, *J. Chem. Educ.* **49,** 60 (1972); Lambert, Putz, and Mixan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5132 (1972); Nordlander and McCrary, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5133 (1972); Ref. 37.

that the SN1 mechanism may become important at high solvent polarities. Table 4 shows that isopropyl bromide reacts less than twice as fast as ethyl bromide in the relatively nonpolar 60% ethanol (compare this with the 10^4 ratio for *t*-butyl bromide, where the mechanism is certainly SN1), but in the more polar water the rate ratio is 11.6. The 2-adamantyl system is an exception; it is a secondary system that reacts by the SN1 mechanism because backside attack is hindered for steric reasons.[230] Because there is no SN2 component, this system provides an opportunity for comparing the pure SN1 reactivity of secondary and tertiary substrates. It has been found that substitution of a methyl group for the α-hydrogen of 2-adamantyl substrates (thus changing a secondary to a tertiary system) increases solvolysis rates by a factor of about 10^8.[231] Simple primary substrates react by the SN2 mechanism (or with participation by neighboring alkyl or hydrogen) but not by the SN1 mechanism, even when solvolyzed in solvents of very low nucleophilicity (e.g., trifluoroacetic acid or trifluoroethanol[232]), and even when very good leaving groups (e.g., OSO_2F) are present[233] (see, however, p. 318).

For some tertiary substrates, the rate of SN1 reaction is greatly increased by the relief of B strain in the formation of the carbocation (see p. 240). Except where B strain is involved, β branching has little effect on the SN1 mechanism, except that carbocations with β branching undergo rearrangements readily. Of course, isobutyl and neopentyl are primary substrates, and for this reason react very slowly by the SN1 mechanism, but not more slowly than the corresponding ethyl or propyl compounds.

To sum up, primary and secondary substrates generally react by the SN2 mechanism and tertiary by the SN1 mechanism. However, tertiary substrates seldom undergo nucleophilic substitution at all. Elimination is always a possible side reaction of nucleophilic substitutions (wherever a β-hydrogen is present), and with tertiary substrates it usually predominates. With a few exceptions, nucleophilic substitutions at a tertiary carbon have little or no preparative value.

2. *Unsaturation at the α-carbon.* Vinyl, acetylenic,[234] and aryl substrates are very unreactive toward nucleophilic substitutions. For these systems both the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms are greatly slowed or stopped altogether. This may be attributed to several factors. The first is that sp^2 (and even more, sp) carbons have a higher electronegativity than sp^3 carbons and thus a greater attraction for the electrons of the bond. As we have seen (p. 234), an sp—H bond has a higher acidity than an sp^3—H bond, with that of an sp^2—H bond in between. This is reasonable; the carbon retains the electrons when the proton is lost and an sp carbon, which has the greatest hold on the electrons, loses the proton most easily. But in nucleophilic substitution, the leaving group *carries off* the electron pair, so that the situation is reversed and it is the sp^3 carbon that loses the leaving group and the electron pair most easily. Another factor holds only where the leaving group has one or more unshared pairs (of course, most of them do) and applies only to SN1 reactions. When X has an unshared pair, the *molecule* is stabilized by resonance in which some of the electron density of the leaving group is transferred into the C—X bond, making it stronger:



$$\left[-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-\overline{X} \longleftrightarrow \underset{\ominus}{-\overset{|}{\overline{C}}}-\overset{|}{C}=X^{\oplus} \right] \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}^{\oplus}$$

---

[230] Fry, Harris, Bingham, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2540 (1970); Schleyer, Fry, Lam, and Lancelot, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2542 (1970). See also Pritt and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1458 (1975).

[231] Fry, Engler, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4628 (1972). See also Gassman and Pascone, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7801 (1973).

[232] Dafforn and Streitwieser, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3159 (1970).

[233] Cafferata, Desvard, and Sicre, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 940 (1981).

[234] For a discussion of SN reactions at acetylenic substrates, see Miller and Dickstein, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 358–363 (1976).

This resonance is lost on going to the carbocation and there is no resonance there for a compensating gain. It may be recalled (p. 18) that bond distances decrease with increasing *s* character. Thus the bond length for a vinyl or aryl C—Cl bond is 1.73 Å compared with 1.78 Å for a saturated C—Cl bond. Other things being equal, a shorter bond is a stronger bond.

Of course we have seen (p. 296) that SN1 reactions at vinylic substrates can be accelerated by α-substituents that stabilize the cation, and that reactions by the tetrahedral mechanism can be accelerated by β-substituents that stabilize the carbanion. Also, reactions at vinyl substrates may in certain cases proceed by addition–elimination or elimination–addition sequences (pp. 295, 297).

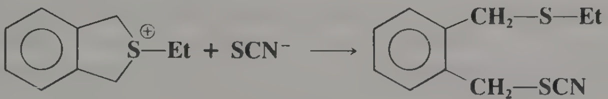
In contrast to such systems, substrates of the type RCOX are usually much *more* reactive than the corresponding RCH_2X. Of course, the mechanism here is almost always the tetrahedral one. There are three reasons for the enhanced reactivity of RCOX: (1) The carbonyl carbon has a sizable partial positive charge that makes it very attractive to nucleophiles. (2) In an SN2 reaction a σ bond must break in the rate-determining step, which requires more energy than the shift of a pair of π electrons, which is what happens in a tetrahedral mechanism. (3) A trigonal carbon offers less steric hindrance to a nucleophile than a tetrahedral carbon.

For reactivity in aryl systems, see Chapter 13.

3. *Unsaturation at the β-carbon.* SN1 rates are increased when there is a double bond in the β-position, so that allylic and benzylic substrates react rapidly (Table 5).[235] The reason is that allylic (p. 144) and benzylic (p. 145) cations are stabilized by resonance. In sharp contrast to the case of α unsaturation, where there is resonance stabilization of the molecule but not of the ion, here there is resonance stabilization of the ion but not of the molecule, since in the molecule the X group and the unsaturation are too far apart for resonance interaction. As shown in Table 5, a second and a third phenyl group increase the rate still more, because these carbocations are more stable yet. It should be remembered that allylic rearrangements are possible with allylic systems.

In general, SN1 rates at an allylic substrate are increased by any substituent in the 1 or 3 position which can stabilize the carbocation by resonance or hyperconjugation.[236] Among these are alkyl, aryl, and halo groups.

SN2 rates for allylic and benzylic systems are also increased (see Table 3), probably owing to resonance possibilities in the transition state. Evidence for this in benzylic systems is that the rate of the reaction



81

was 8000 times slower than the rate with $(PhCH_2)_2SEt^+$.[237] The cyclic **81** does not have the proper geometry for conjugation in the transition state.

Triple bonds in the β position (in propargyl systems) have about the same effect as double bonds.[238] Alkyl, aryl, halo, and cyano groups, among others, in the 3 position of allylic substrates increase SN2 rates, owing to increased resonance in the transition state, but alkyl and halo groups in the 1 position decrease the rates because of steric hindrance.

4. *α substitution.* Compounds of the formula ZCH_2X, where Z = RO, RS, or R_2N undergo

---

[235] Streitwieser, Ref. 1, p. 75. Actually, the figures for Ph_2CHOTs and Ph_3COTs are estimated from the general reactivity of these substrates.

[236] For discussions of the relative reactivities of different allylic substrates, see de la Mare, in Mayo, Ref. 163, vol. 1, pp. 42–47, 58–62, DeWolfe and Young, in Patai, Ref. 163, pp. 683–688, 695–697.

[237] King and Tsang, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1131 (1979).

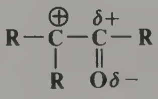
[238] Hatch and Chiola, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 360 (1951); Jacobs and Brill, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 1314 (1953).

TABLE 5 Relative rates for the SN1 reaction between ROTs and ethanol at 25°C[235]

Group	Relative rate
Et	0.26
iso-**Pr**	0.69
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2$	8.6
$PhCH_2$	100
Ph_2CH	$\sim 10^5$
Ph_3C	$\sim 10^{10}$

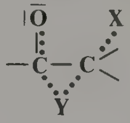
SN1 reactions very rapidly,[239] because of the increased resonance in the carbocation. These groups have an unshared pair on an atom directly attached to the positive carbon, which greatly stabilizes the carbocation (p. 146). The field effects of these groups would be expected to decrease SN1 rates (see Section 6, p. 303), so that the resonance effect is far more important.

When Z in ZCH_2X is RCO,[239a] HCO, ROCO, NH_2CO, NC,[240] or F_3C,[241] SN1 rates are decreased compared to CH_3X, owing to the electron-withdrawing field effects of these groups. Furthermore, carbocations[242] with an α-CO[243] or CN group are greatly destabilized because of the partial positive charge on the adjacent carbon (**82**). When SN2 reactions are carried out on these substrates, rates



$R-\overset{\oplus}{\underset{R}{C}}-\overset{\delta+}{\underset{\overset{\|}{O}\delta-}{C}}-R$

82



83

are greatly increased for certain nucleophiles (e.g., halide or halide-like ions), but decreased or essentially unaffected by others.[244] For example, α-chloroacetophenone ($PhCOCH_2Cl$) reacts with KI in acetone at 75° about 32,000 times faster than 1-chlorobutane,[245] but α-bromoacetophenone reacts with the nucleophile triethylamine 0.14 times as fast as iodomethane.[244] The reasons for this varying behavior are not clear, but those nucleophiles that form a "tight" transition state (one in which bond making and bond breaking have proceeded to about the same extent) are more likely to accelerate the reaction. It has been suggested that in such cases the transition state is stabilized by simultaneous overlap of the nucleophile with the central carbon and the C=O carbon (**83**).

---

[239] For a review of the reactions of α-haloamines, sulfides, and ethers, see Gross and Höft, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 335–355 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 358–378].

[239a] For a review of α-halo ketones, including reactivity, see Verhé and De Kimpe, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 73, pt. 1, pp. 813–931.

[240] There is evidence that the resonance effect of the cyano group acts in the opposite direction, resulting in less rate retardation than would be the case if only the field effect operated: Gassman, Saito, and Talley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7613 (1980).

[241] Allen, Jansen, Koshy, Mangru, and Tidwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 207 (1982); Liu, Kuo, and Shu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 211 (1982).

[242] For reviews of such carbocations, see Bégué and Charpentier-Morize, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 207–212 (1980); Charpentier-Morize, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 343–351 (1974).

[243] For an example of an SN1 reaction in a system where Z = RCO, see Creary, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3938 (1979). The rate retarding effect of the RCO is estimated at $10^{7.3}$ in the system studied. See also Creary and Geiger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4151 (1982). A carbocation with an α-COR group has been isolated: see Takeuchi, Kitagawa, and Okamoto, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 7 (1983).

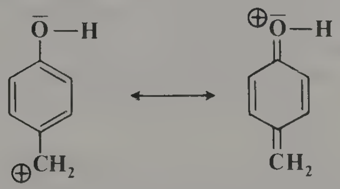
[244] Halvorsen and Songstad, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 327 (1978).

[245] Bordwell and Brannen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4645 (1964). For some other examples, see Conant, Kirner, and Hussey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **47,** 488 (1925); Sisti and Lowell, *Can. J. Chem.* **42,** 1896 (1964).

When Z is SOR or SO_2R (e.g., α-halo sulfoxides and sulfones), nucleophilic substitution is retarded.[246] The SN1 mechanism is slowed by the electron-withdrawing effect of the SOR or SO_2R group, and the SN2 mechanism presumably by the steric effect.

5. *β substitution.* For compounds of the type ZCH_2CH_2X, where Z is any of the groups listed in the previous section as well as halogen or phenyl, SN1 rates are lower than for unsubstituted systems, because the resonance effects mentioned in Section 4 are absent, but the field effects are still there, though smaller. These groups in the β-position do not have much effect on SN2 rates unless they behave as neighboring groups and enhance the rate through anchimeric assistance, or unless their size causes the rates to decrease for steric reasons.[247]

6. *The effect of electron-donating and electron-withdrawing groups.* If substitution rates of a series of compounds p-Z-C_6H_4—CH_2X are measured, it is possible to study the electronic effects of groups Z on the reaction. Steric effects of Z are minimized or eliminated, because Z is so far from the reaction site. For SN1 reactions electron-withdrawing Z decrease the rate and electron-donating Z increase it,[248] because the latter decrease the energy of the transition state (and of the carbocation) by spreading the positive charge, e.g.,

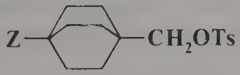


while electron-withdrawing groups concentrate the charge. The Hammett σ–ρ relationship (see p. 242) correlates fairly successfully the rates of many of these reactions (with σ^+ instead of σ). ρ values are generally about -4, which is expected for a reaction where a positive charge is created in the transition state.

For SN2 reactions no such simple correlations are found.[249] In this mechanism bond breaking is about as important as bond making in the rate-determining step, and substituents have an effect on both processes, often in opposite directions. The unsubstituted benzyl chloride and bromide solvolyze by the SN2 mechanism.[248]

For Z = alkyl, the Baker–Nathan order (p. 65) is usually observed both for SN1 and SN2 reactions.

In para-substituted benzyl systems, steric effects have been removed, but resonance and field effects are still present. However, Holtz and Stock studied a system that removes not only steric effects but also resonance effects. This is the 4-substituted bicyclo[2.2.2]octylmethyl tosylate system (**84**).[250] In this system steric effects are completely absent, owing to the rigidity of the molecules,



84

---

[246] Bordwell and Jarvis, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1182 (1968); Loeppky and Chang, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5415 (1968); Cinquini, Colonna, Landini, and Maia, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 996 (1976).

[247] See, for example, Okamoto, Kita, Araki, and Shingu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40,** 1913 (1967).

[248] Jorge, Kiyan, Miyata, and Miller, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 100 (1981); Vitullo, Grabowski, and Sridharan, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 737 (1981).

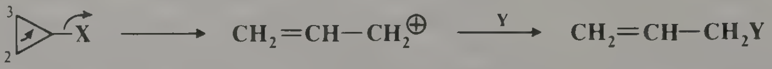
[249] See Sugden and Willis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1360 (1951); Baker and Nathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 840 (1935); Hayami, Tanaka, Kurabayashi, Kotani, and Kaji, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 3091 (1971); Westaway and Waszczylo, *Can. J. Chem.* **60,** 2500 (1982).

[250] Holtz and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2404 (1965).

and only field effects operate. By this means Holtz and Stock showed that electron-withdrawing groups increase the rate of SN2 reactions. This can be ascribed to stabilization of the transition state by withdrawal of some of the electron density.

For substrates that react by the tetrahedral mechanism, electron-withdrawing groups increase the rate and electron-donating groups decrease it.

7. *Cyclic substrates.* Cyclopropyl substrates are extremely resistant to nucleophilic attack.[251] For example, cyclopropyl tosylate solvolyzes about 10^6 times more slowly than cyclobutyl tosylate in acetic acid at 60°C.[252] When such attack does take place, the result is generally not normal substitution (though exceptions are known,[253] especially when an α stabilizing group such as aryl is present) but ring opening:[252]



There is much evidence that the ring opening is usually concerted with the departure of the leaving group[254] (as in the similar case of cyclobutyl substrates, p. 284), from which we can conclude that if the 2,3 bond of the cyclopropane ring did not assist, the rates would be lower still. It has been estimated[255] that without this assistance the rates of these already slow reactions would be further reduced by a factor of perhaps 10^{12}. For a discussion of the stereochemistry of the ring opening, see p. 1011. For larger rings, we have seen (p. 241) that, because of I strain, cyclohexyl substrates solvolyze slower than analogous compounds in which the leaving group is attached to a ring of 5 or of from 7 to 11 members.

8. *Bridgeheads.* Nucleophilic substitution at bridgeheads is impossible or very slow, except that SN1 reactions can take place readily when the rings are large enough (pp. 258, 261).

9. *Deuterium substitution.* α and β secondary isotope effects affect the rate in various ways (p. 199). The measurement of α secondary isotope effects provides a means of distinguishing between SN1 and SN2 mechanisms, since for SN2 reactions the values range from 0.95 to 1.06 per α-D, while for SN1 reactions the values are higher.[38] This method is especially good because it provides the minimum of perturbation of the system under study; changing from α-H to α-D hardly affects the reaction, while other probes, such as changing a substituent or the polarity of the solvent, may have a much more complex effect.

Table 6 is an approximate listing of groups in order of SN1 and SN2 reactivity. Table 7 shows the main reactions that proceed by the SN2 mechanism (if R = primary or, often, secondary alkyl); Table 8 shows the main reactions that proceed by the tetrahedral mechanism.

The Effect of the Attacking Nucleophile[256]

Any species that has an unshared pair (i.e., any Lewis base) can be a nucleophile, whether it is neutral or has a negative charge. The rates of SN1 reactions are independent of the identity of the

---

[251] For a review, see Aksenov, Terent'eva, and Savinykh, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 549–557 (1980).

[252] Roberts and Chambers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 5034 (1951).

[253] For example, see Kirmse and Schütte, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1284 (1967); Landgrebe and Becker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2505 (1967); Howell and Jewett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 798 (1971); Creary, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3734 (1976); Ledlie, Barber, and Switzer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 607 (1977); Brown, Rao, and Ravindranathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7946 (1978); van der Vecht, Steinberg, and de Boer, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **96,** 313 (1978); Engbert and Kirmse, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1689 (1980); Turkenburg, de Wolf, Bickelhaupt, Stam, and Konijn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3471 (1982).

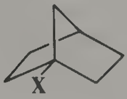
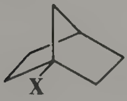
[254] For example, see Schleyer, Van Dine, Schöllkopf, and Paust, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2868 (1966); Jefford and Medary, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 4123 (1967); Jefford and Wojnarowski, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 2089 (1969); Hausser and Uchic, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4087 (1972); DePuy, Schnack, and Hausser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3343 (1966).

[255] Brown, Rao, and Ravindranathan, Ref. 253. See also Schleyer, Sliwinski, Van Dine, Schöllkopf, Paust, and Fellenberger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 125 (1972); Sliwinski, Su, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 133 (1972).

[256] For reviews, see Klumpp, "Reactivity in Organic Chemistry," pp. 145–167, 181–186, Wiley, New York, 1982; Hudson, in Klopman, "Chemical Reactivity and Reaction Paths," pp. 167–252, Wiley, New York, 1974; Bunnett, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **14,** 271–290 (1963); Edwards and Pearson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 16 (1962).

TABLE 5 List of groups in approximately descending order of reactivity toward SN1 and SN2 reactions

Z is RCO, HCO, ROCO, NH_2CO, NC, or a similar group

SN1 reactivity	SN2 reactivity
Ar_3CX	Ar_3CX
Ar_2CHX	Ar_2CHX
$ROCH_2X$, $RSCH_2X$, R_2NCH_2X	$ArCH_2X$
R_3CX	ZCH_2X
$ArCH_2X$	$-\overset{\vert}{C}=\overset{\vert}{C}CH_2X$
$-\overset{\vert}{C}=\overset{\vert}{C}CH_2X$	$RCH_2X \approx RCHDX \approx RCHDCH_2X$
R_2CHX	R_2CHX
$RCH_2X \approx R_3CCH_2X$	R_3CX
$RCHDX$	ZCH_2CH_2X
$RCHDCH_2X$	R_3CCH_2X
ZCH_2X	$-\overset{\vert}{C}=\overset{\vert}{C}X$
ZCH_2CH_2X	ArX
$-\overset{\vert}{C}=\overset{\vert}{C}X$	
ArX	
	

nucleophile, since it does not appear in the rate-determining step.[257] This may be illustrated by the effect of changing the nucleophile from H_2O to OH^- for a primary and a tertiary substrate. For methyl bromide, which reacts by an SN2 mechanism, the rate is multiplied by more than 5000 by the change to the more powerful nucleophile OH^-, but for *t*-butyl bromide, which reacts by an SN1 mechanism, the rate is unaffected.[258] A change in nucleophile may, however, change the *product* of an SN1 reaction. Thus solvolysis of benzyl tosylate in methanol gives benzyl methyl ether (the nucleophile is the solvent methanol). If the more powerful nucleophile Br^- is added, the rate is unchanged, but the product is now benzyl bromide.

For SN2 reactions in solution there are four main principles that govern the effect of the nucleophile on the rate, though the nucleophilicity order is not invariant but depends on substrate, solvent, leaving group, etc.

1. A nucleophile with a negative charge is always a more powerful nucleophile than its conjugate acid (assuming the latter is also a nucleophile). Thus OH^- is more powerful than H_2O, NH_2^- more powerful than NH_3, etc. See the example given above.

2. In comparing nucleophiles whose attacking atom is in the same row of the periodic table, nucleophilicity is roughly in order of basicity, though basicity is thermodynamically controlled and nucleophilicity is kinetically controlled. So an approximate order of nucleophilicity is

---

[257] It is, however, possible to measure the rates of reaction of nucleophiles with fairly stable carbocations: see Ritchie, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 348–354 (1972); Ritchie and Virtanen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1882 (1973); Ritchie, Minasz, Kamego, and Sawada, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3747 (1977).

[258] Bateman, Cooper, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 925 (1940).

TABLE 7 The more important synthetic reactions of Chapter 10 that take place by the S$_N$2 mechanism (R = primary, often secondary, alkyl). Catalysts are not shown.[a]

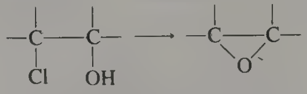
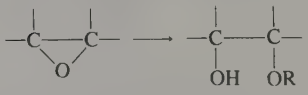
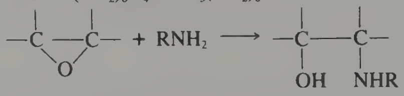
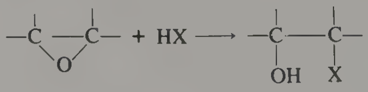
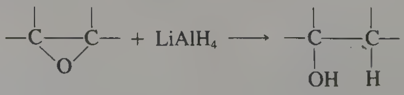
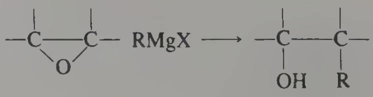
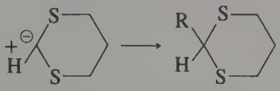
0-1	$RX + OH^- \rightarrow ROH$
0-14	$RX + OR'^- \rightarrow ROR'$
0-15	
0-16	$R—OSO_2OR'' + OR' \rightarrow ROR'$
0-18	$2ROH \rightarrow ROR$
0-20	
0-21	$R_3O^+ + R'OH \rightarrow ROR'$
0-26	$RX + R'COO^- \rightarrow R'COOR$
0-32	$RX + OOH^- \rightarrow ROOH$
0-37	$RX + SH^- \rightarrow RSH$
0-38	$RX + R'S^- \rightarrow RSR'$
0-40	$RX + S_2^{2-} \rightarrow RSSR$
0-43	$RX + SO_3^{2-} \rightarrow RSO_2O^-$
0-44	$RX + SCN^- \rightarrow RSCN$
0-45	$RX + R'_2NH \rightarrow RR'_2N$
0-45	$RX + R'_3N \rightarrow RR'_3N^+$
0-46	$RX + (CH_2)_6N_4 \rightarrow N_3(CH_2)_6NR^+ X \xrightarrow{H^+} RN$
0-51	
0-60	$RX + R'CONH^- \rightarrow R—NH—COR'$
0-62	$RX + NO_2^- \rightarrow RNO_2 + RONO$
0-63	$RX + N_3^- \rightarrow RN_3$
0-64	$RX + NCO^- \rightarrow RNCO$
0-64	$RX + NCS^- \rightarrow RNCS$
0-66	$RX + X'^- \rightarrow RX'$
0-67	$R—OSO_2OR' + X^- \rightarrow RX$
0-68	$ROH + PCl_5 \rightarrow RCl$
0-69	$ROR' + 2HI \rightarrow RI + R'I$
0-70	
0-71	$R—O—COR' + LiI \rightarrow RI + R'COO^-$
0-77	$RX + LiAlH_4 \rightarrow RH$
0-78	$R—OSO_2R' + LiAlH_4 \rightarrow RH$
0-81	
0-88	$RX + R'_2CuLi \rightarrow RR'$
0-94	

TABLE 7 *(Continued)*

0-96	$RX + H\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}(CO_2R')_2 \rightarrow RCH(CO_2R')_2$
0-97	$RX + R''\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H—COR' \rightarrow RCR''—COR'$
0-98	$RX + R'\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}HCOO^- \rightarrow RR'CHCOO^-$
0-99	RX + 
0-102	$RX + R'C{\equiv}C^{\ominus} \rightarrow RC{\equiv}CR'$
0-103	$RX + CN^- \rightarrow RCN$

[a] This is a schematic list only. Some of these reactions may also take place by other mechanisms and the scope may vary greatly. See the discussion of each reaction for details.

$NH_2^- > RO^- > OH^- > R_2NH > ArO^- > NH_3 >$ pyridine $> F^- > H_2O > ClO_4^-$, and another is $R_3C^- > R_2N^- > RO^- > F^-$ (see Table 1 in Chapter 8, p. 220). This type of correlation works best when the structures of the nucleophiles being compared are similar, as with a set of substituted phenoxides.[259]

3. Going down the periodic table, nucleophilicity increases, though basicity decreases. Thus the usual order of halide nucleophilicity is $I^- > Br^- > Cl^- > F^-$ (though as we shall see below, this order is solvent-dependent). Similarly, any sulfur nucleophile is more powerful than its oxygen analog, and the same is true for phosphorus vs. nitrogen. The main reason for this distinction between basicity and nucleophilic power is that the smaller negatively charged nucleophiles are

TABLE 8 The more important synthetic reactions of Chapter 10 that take place by the tetrahedral mechanism. Catalysts are not shown

0-9	$RCOX + H_2O \rightarrow RCOOH$	
0-10	$RCOOCOR + H_2O \rightarrow RCOOH$	
0-11	$RCO_2R' + H_2O \rightarrow RCOOH + R'OH$	
0-12	$RCONR'_2 + H_2O \rightarrow RCOOH + R'_2NH$	$(R' = H$, alkyl, aryl)
0-22	$RCOX + R'OH \rightarrow RCO_2R'$	
0-23	$RCOOCOR + R'OH \rightarrow RCO_2R'$	
0-24	$RCOOH + R'OH \rightarrow RCO_2R'$	
0-25	$RCO_2R' + R''OH \rightarrow RCO_2R'' + R'OH$	
0-29	$RCOX + R'COO^- \rightarrow RCOOCOR'$	
0-32	$RCOX + H_2O_2 \rightarrow RCO_3H$	
0-39	$RCOX + R'SH \rightarrow RCOSR'$	
0-54	$RCOX + NHR'_2 \rightarrow RCONR'_2$	$(R' = H$, alkyl, aryl)
0-55	$RCOOCOR + NHR'_2 \rightarrow RCONR'_2$	$(R' = H$, alkyl, aryl)
0-57	$RCO_2R' + NHR''_2 \rightarrow RCONR''_2$	$(R'' = H$, alkyl, aryl)
0-75	$RCOOH + SOCl_2 \rightarrow RCOCl$	
0-84	$RCOX + LiAlH(O\text{-}t\text{-}Bu)_3 \rightarrow RCHO$	
0-86	$RCONR'_2 + LiAlH_4 \rightarrow RCHO$	
0-106	$RCOX + R_2CuLi \rightarrow RCOR'$	
0-111	$2RCH_2CO_2R' \rightarrow RCH_2—CO—CHR—CO_2R'$	

---

[259] Within such a series, linear relationships can often be established between nucleophilic rates and p*K* values; see, for example, Jokinen, Luukkonen, Ruostesuo, Virtanen, and Koskikallio, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **25,** 3367 (1971); Bordwell and Hughes, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2206 (1983).

more solvated by the usual polar protic solvents; that is, because the negative charge of Cl$^-$ is more concentrated than the charge of I$^-$, the former is more tightly surrounded by a shell of solvent molecules that constitute a barrier between it and the substrate. This is most important for protic polar solvents in which the solvent may hydrogen bond to small nucleophiles. Evidence for this is that many nucleophilic substitutions with small negatively charged nucleophiles are much more rapid in aprotic polar solvents than in protic ones[260] and that, in DMF, an aprotic solvent, the order of nucleophilicity was $Cl^- > Br^- > I^-$.[261] Another experiment was the use of $Bu_4N^+ X^-$ and LiX as nucleophiles in acetone, where X$^-$ was a halide ion. The halide ion in the former salt is much less associated than in LiX. The relative rates with LiX were Cl$^-$, 1; Br$^-$, 5.7; I$^-$, 6.2, which is in the normal order, while with $Bu_4N^+ X^-$, where X$^-$ is much freer, the relative rates were Cl$^-$, 68; Br$^-$, 18; I$^-$, 3.7.[262] In a further experiment halide ions were allowed to react with the molten salt $(n\text{-}C_5H_{11})_4N^+ X^-$ at 180°C in the absence of a solvent.[263] Under these conditions, where the ions are unsolvated and unassociated, the relative rates were Cl$^-$, 620; Br$^-$, 7.7; I$^-$, 1. In the gas phase, where no solvent is present, an approximate order of nucleophilicity was found to be $OH^- > F^- \sim MeO^- > MeS^- \gg Cl^- > CN^- > Br^-$,[264] providing further evidence that solvation is responsible for the effect in solution.

However, solvation is not the entire answer since, even for *uncharged* nucleophiles, nucleophilicity increases going down a column in the periodic table. These nucleophiles are not so greatly solvated and changes in solvent do not greatly affect their nucleophilicity.[265] To explain these cases we may use the principle of hard and soft acids and bases (p. 228).[266] The proton is a hard acid, but an alkyl substrate (which may be considered to act as a Lewis acid toward the nucleophile considered as a base) is a good deal softer. According to the principle given on p. 229, we may then expect the alkyl group to prefer softer nucleophiles than the proton does. Thus the larger, more polarizable (softer) nucleophiles have a greater (relative) attraction toward an alkyl carbon than toward a proton. Another way of looking at this is that the more polarizable the nucleophile, the more easily the electron cloud is distorted, and thus large nucleophiles can actually bring a greater degree of electron density to the substrate than the small nucleophiles whose electron clouds are more tightly held.

4. The freer the nucleophile, the greater the rate.[267] We have already seen one instance of this.[262] Another is that the rate of attack by $(EtOOC)_2CBu^- Na^+$ in benzene was increased by the addition of substances (for example, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, adipamide) that specifically solvated the Na$^+$ and thus left the anion freer.[268] In a nonpolar solvent such as benzene, salts such as $(EtOOC)_2CBu^-$ Na^+ usually exist as ion-pair aggregations of molecular weights of at least 10,000. Similarly, it was shown that the half-life of the reaction between $C_6H_5COCHEt^-$ and ethyl bromide depended on the positive ion: K$^+$, 4.5×10^{-3}; Na$^+$, 3.9×10^{-5}; Li$^+$, 3.1×10^{-7}.[269] Presumably, the

[260] Parker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1328 (1961) has a list of about 20 such reactions.

[261] Weaver and Hutchison, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 261 (1964); See also Rodewald, Mahendran, Bear, and Fuchs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6698 (1968); Fuchs and Mahendran, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 730 (1971); Müller and Siegfried, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 2675 (1971); Liotta, Grisdale, and Hopkins, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4205 (1975); Bordwell and Hughes, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3570 (1981). For a contrary result in liquid SO$_2$, see Lichtin, Puar, and Wasserman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6677 (1967).

[262] Winstein, Savedoff, Smith, Stevens, and Gall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* no. 9, 24 (1960).

[263] Gordon and Varughese, *Chem. Commun.* 1160 (1971). See also Ford, Hauri, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4316 (1974).

[264] Olmstead and Brauman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4219 (1977). See also Tanaka, Mackay, Payzant, and Bohme, *Can. J. Chem.* **54,** 1643 (1976).

[265] Parker, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4398 (1961).

[266] Pearson, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **5,** 1–52 (1969), pp. 21–38.

[267] For a review of the effect of nucleophile association on nucleophilicity, see Guibe and Bram, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 933–948 (1975).

[268] Zaugg, Horrom, and Borgwardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2895 (1960); Zaugg and Leonard, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2253 (1972). See also Solov'yanov, Dem'yanov, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12,** 714, 2215 (1976); Solov'yanov, Karpyuk, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **262,** 10 (1982); Jackman and Lange, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4494 (1981).

[269] Zook and Gumby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1386 (1960).

potassium ion leaves the negative ion most free to attack most rapidly. Further evidence is that in the gas phase, where nucleophilic ions are completely free, without solvent or counterion, reactions take place orders of magnitude faster than the same reactions in solution.[264] It has proven possible to measure the rates of reaction of OH^- with methyl bromide in the gas phase, with OH^- either unsolvated or solvated with one, two, or three molecules of water.[270] The rates were, with the number of water molecules in parentheses: (0) 1.0×10^{-9}; (1) 6.3×10^{-10}; (2) 2×10^{-12}; (3) 2×10^{-13} cm³/molecule. This provides graphic evidence that solvation of the nucleophile decreases the rate. The rate of this reaction in aqueous solution is 2.3×10^{-25} cm³/molecule.

In Chapter 3 we saw that cryptands specifically solvate the alkali metal portion of salts like KF, KOAc, etc. Synthetic advantage can be taken of this fact to allow anions to be freer, thus increasing the rates of nucleophilic substitutions and other reactions (see p. 321).

However, the four rules given above do not always hold. One reason is that steric influences often play a part. For example, the *t*-butoxide ion Me_3CO^- is a stronger base than OH^- or OEt^-, but a much poorer nucleophile because its large bulk hinders it from closely approaching a substrate.

The following overall nucleophilicity order for S_N2 mechanisms (in protic solvents) was given by Edwards and Pearson:[256] $RS^- > ArS^- > I^- > CN^- > OH^- > N_3^- > Br^- > ArO^- > Cl^- >$ pyridine $> AcO^- > H_2O$. A quantitative relationship has been worked out by Swain and Scott[271] similar to the linear free-energy equations considered in Chapter 9:[272]

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = sn$$

where n is the nucleophilicity of a given group, s is the sensitivity of a substrate to nucleophilic attack, and k_0 is the rate for H_2O, which is taken as the standard and for which n is assigned a value of zero. s is defined as 1.0 for methyl bromide. Table 9 contains values of n for some common nucleophiles.[273] The order is similar to that of Edwards and Pearson.

It is now evident that an absolute order of either nucleophilicity[274] or leaving-group ability, even in the gas phase where solvation is not a factor, does not exist, because they have an effect on

TABLE 9 Nucleophilicities of some common reagents[273]

Nucleophile	n	Nucleophile	n
SH^-	5.1	Br^-	3.5
CN^-	5.1	PhO^-	3.5
I^-	5.0	AcO^-	2.7
$PhNH_2$	4.5	Cl^-	2.7
OH^-	4.2	F^-	2.0
N_3^-	4.0	NO_3^-	1.0
Pyridine	3.6	H_2O	0.0

---

[270] Bohme and Mackay, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 978 (1981); Bohme and Racksit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 3447 (1984). See also Henchman, Paulson, and Hierl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5509 (1983).

[271] Swain and Scott, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 141 (1953).

[272] This is not the only equation that has been devised in an attempt to correlate nucleophilic reactivity. For reviews of attempts to express nucleophilic power quantitatively, see Ritchie, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **50,** 1281–1290 (1978); Duboc, in Chapman and Shorter, "Correlation Analysis in Chemistry: Recent Advances," pp. 313–355, Plenum, New York, 1978; Ibne-Rasa, *J. Chem. Educ.* **44,** 89–94 (1967). See also Pearson, Sobel, and Songstad, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 319 (1968); Hoz and Speizman, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2904 (1983).

[273] From Wells, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 171–219 (1963), p. 212. See also Koskikallio, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **23,** 1477, 1490 (1969).

[274] However, for a general model of intrinsic nucleophilicity in the gas phase, see Pellerite and Brauman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2672 (1983).

each other. When the nucleophile and leaving group are both hard or both soft, the reaction rates are relatively high, but when one is hard and the other soft, rates are reduced.[275] Although this effect is smaller than the effects in paragraphs 1 and 4 above, it still prevents an absolute scale of either nucleophilicity or leaving-group ability.

For substitution at a carbonyl carbon, the nucleophilicity order is not the same as it is at a saturated carbon, but follows the basicity order more closely. This is presumably because the carbonyl carbon, with its partial positive charge, resembles a proton more than does the carbon at a saturated center. That is, a carbonyl carbon is a much harder acid than a saturated carbon. The following nucleophilicity order for these substrates has been determined.[276] $Me_2C{=}NO^- > EtO^- > MeO^- > OH^- > OAr^- > N_3^- > F^- > H_2O > Br^- \sim I^-$. Soft bases are quite ineffective at a carbonyl carbon.

If adjacent to the attacking atom on the nucleophile there is an atom containing one or more unshared pairs, the nucleophilicity is enhanced. Examples of such nucleophiles are HO_2^-, $Me_2C{=}NO^-$, NH_2NH_2, etc. This is called the *alpha effect*,[277] and the reasons for it are not completely understood. Several possible explanations have been offered.[278] One is that the ground state of the nucleophile is destabilized by repulsion between the adjacent pairs of electrons;[278a] another is that the transition state is stabilized by the extra pair of electrons;[279] a third is that the adjacent electron pair reduces solvation of the nucleophile. Evidence supporting the third explanation is that there was no alpha effect in the reaction of HO_2^- with methyl formate in the gas phase,[280] though HO_2^- shows a strong alpha effect in solution. The alpha effect is substantial for substitution at a carbonyl or other unsaturated carbon, at some inorganic atoms,[281] and for reactions of a nucleophile with a carbocation,[282] but is generally smaller or absent entirely for substitution at a saturated carbon.[283] The magnitude of the alpha effect correlates with β in the Brönsted equation (p. 226).[284] β is dependent on the position of the transition state (p. 227); hence the alpha effect is greatest where considerable bond formation has taken place in the transition state.

The Effect of the Leaving Group

1. *At a saturated carbon.* The leaving group comes off more easily the more stable it is as a free entity. This is usually inverse to its basicity, and the best leaving groups are the weakest bases. Thus iodide is the best leaving group among the halides and fluoride the poorest.[285] Since XH is always a weaker base than X^-, nucleophilic substitution is always easier at a substrate RXH^+ than at RX. An example of this effect is that OH and OR are not leaving groups from ordinary alcohols and ethers but can come off when the groups are protonated, that is, converted to ROH_2^+ or $RORH^+$.[286] Reactions in which the leaving group does not come off until it has been protonated have been called SN1cA or SN2cA, depending on whether after protonation the reaction is an SN1 or SN2 process (sometimes these designations are shortened to A1 and A2). The cA stands for conjugate acid, since the substitution takes place on the conjugate acid of the substrate. The ions ROH_2^+ and $RORH^+$ can be observed as stable entities at low temperatures in super-acid solutions.[287] At higher temperatures they cleave to give carbocations. Nmr spectra of ROH_2^+ ions were recorded at low temperatures, even in the absence of super acids, by dissolving alcohols in CF_2Br_2 and using excess HBr to protonate them.[288]

---

[275] Olmstead and Brauman, Ref. 264.

[276] Hudson and Green, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1055 (1962); Bender and Glasson, *J. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1590 (1959); Jencks and Gilchrist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2622 (1968).

[277] For reviews, see Grekov and Veselov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 631–648 (1978); Fina and Edwards, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **5,** 1–26 (1973); Ref. 256.

[278] For a discussion, see Wolfe, Mitchell, Schlegel, Minot, and Eisenstein, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 615 (1982).

[278a] Buncel and Hoz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4777 (1983).

[279] See Hoz, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3545 (1982); Laloi-Diard, Verchere, Gosselin, and Terrier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 1267 (1984).

[280] DePuy, Della, Filley, Grabowski, and Bierbaum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2481 (1983).

[281] For example, see Kice and Legan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3912 (1973).

[282] Dixon and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3248, 6592 (1971).

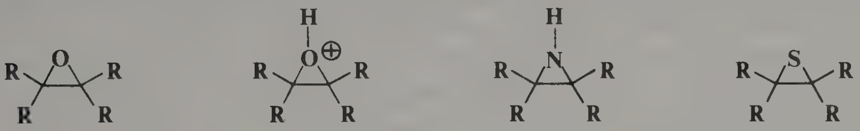
[283] Gregory and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4400 (1967); Oae, Kadoma, and Yano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 1110 (1969); McIsaac, Subbaraman, Subbaraman, Mulhausen, and Behrman, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1037 (1972). See, however, Beale, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3871 (1972); Buncel, Wilson, and Chuaqui, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4896 (1982); *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **14,** 823 (1982).

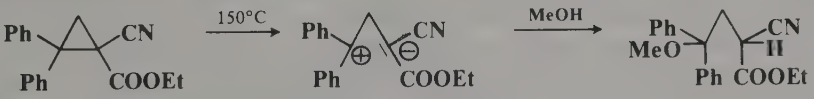
[284] Sander and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6154 (1968); Dixon and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2052 (1972); Buncel, Chuaqui, and Wilson, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3621 (1980).

[285] For a discussion of F as a leaving group, see Parker, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **3,** 63–91 (1963).

It is obvious that the best nucleophiles (e.g., NH_2^-, OH^-) cannot take part in SN1cA or SN2cA processes, because they would be converted to their conjugate acids under the acidic conditions necessary to protonate the leaving groups. Because SN1 reactions do not require powerful nucleophiles but do require good leaving groups, most of them take place under acidic conditions. In contrast, SN2 reactions, which do require powerful nucleophiles (which are generally strong bases), most often take place under basic or neutral conditions.

Another circumstance that increases leaving-group power is ring strain. Ordinary ethers do not cleave at all and protonated ethers only under strenuous conditions, but epoxides[289] are cleaved quite easily and protonated epoxides even more easily. Aziridines and episulfides, three-membered rings containing, respectively, nitrogen and sulfur, are also easily cleaved (see p. 325). Even cyclopropane rings can be cleaved in a similar manner if they contain groups that can stabilize the positive and negative charges.[290] An example is found in the treatment of ethyl 1-cyano-2,2-diphenylcyclopropanecarboxylate with methanol at 150°C for three days.[291] It has been calculated that such ring cleavage of suitably substituted cyclopropanes takes place about 10^{12} times faster than the same reaction in an unstrained system.[292]





Although halides are common leaving groups in nucleophilic substitution for synthetic purposes, it is often more convenient to use alcohols. Since OH does not leave from ordinary alcohols, it must be converted to a group that does leave. One way is protonation, mentioned above. Another is conversion to a reactive ester, most commonly a sulfonic ester. The sulfonic ester groups *tosylate,*

---

[286] For a review of ORH^+ as a leaving group, see Staude and Patat, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Ether Linkage," pp. 22–46, Interscience, New York, 1967.

[287] Olah and O'Brien, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 1725 (1967); Olah, Sommer, and Namanworth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 3576 (1967); Olah and Olah, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 78, vol. 2, pp. 743–747, 1970.

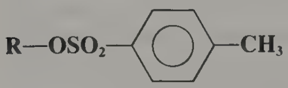
[288] Emsley, Gold, and Jais, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 961 (1979).

[289] For a review of the synthesis and reactions of epoxides, see Bartók and Láng, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E", pp. 609–681, Wiley, New York, 1980.

[290] Cram and Ratajczak, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 2198 (1968); Yankee, Spencer, Howe, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 4220 (1973); Chmurny and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 4237 (1973). For a review, see Danishefsky, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12**, 66–72 (1979).

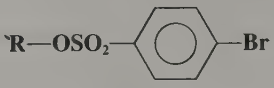
[291] Yankee, Badea, Howe, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 4210 (1973).

[292] Griffiths, Hughes, and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 236 (1982).



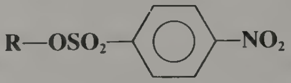
ROTs

p-Toluenesulfonates
Tosylates



ROBs

p-Bromobenzenesulfonates
Brosylates



RONs

p-Nitrobenzenesulfonates
Nosylates

$R—OSO_2CH_3$

ROMs

Methanesulfonates
Mesylates

brosylate, nosylate, and *mesylate* are better leaving groups than halides and are frequently used. In recent years still better leaving groups have been found, and compounds containing these groups make powerful alkylating agents. Among them are oxonium ions (ROR_2^+),[293] alkyl perchlorates ($ROClO_3$),[294] ammonioalkanesulfonate esters (*betylates*) ($ROSO_2(CH_2)_nNMe_3^+$),[295] alkyl fluorosulfonates ($ROSO_2F$),[296] and the fluorinated compounds *triflates*[297] and *nonaflates.*[297] *Tresylates* are about 400 times less reactive than triflates, but still about 100 times more reactive than tosylates.[298]

$R—OSO_2CF_3$	$R—OSO_2C_4F_9$	$R—OSO_2CH_2CF_3$
Trifluoromethanesulfonates	Nonafluorobutanesulfonates	2,2,2-Trifluoroethanesulfonates
Triflates	Nonaflates	Tresylates

Halonium ions ($RClR^+$, $RBrR^+$, RIR^+), which can be prepared in super-acid solutions (p. 271) and isolated as solid SbF_6^- salts, are also extremely reactive in nucleophilic substitution.[299] Of the above types of compound, the most important in organic synthesis are tosylates, mesylates, oxonium ions, and triflates. The others have been used mostly for mechanistic purposes.

NH_2, NHR, and NR_2 are extremely poor leaving groups,[299a] but the leaving-group ability of NH_2 can be greatly improved by converting a primary amine RNH_2 to the ditosylate $RNTs_2$. The NTs_2 group has been successfully replaced by a number of nucleophiles.[300] Another way of converting

---

[293] For a monograph, see Perst, Ref. 69. For reviews, see Perst, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 5, pp. 1961–2047, Wiley, New York, 1976; Granik, Pyatin, and Glushkov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 747–759 (1971). For a discussion of their use, see Curphey, *Org. Synth.* **51,** 144 (1971).

[294] Baum and Beard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3233 (1974). See also Kevill and Lin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 949 (1978).

[295] King, Loosmore, Aslam, Lock, and McGarrity, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7108 (1982); King and Lee, *Can. J. Chem.* **59,** 356, 362 (1981); King, Skonieczny, and Poole, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 235 (1983).

[296] Ahmed, Alder, James, Sinnott, and Whiting, *Chem. Commun.* 1533 (1968); Ahmed and Alder, *Chem. Commun.* 1389 (1969); Alder, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 983 (1973). For a discussion of the hazards involved in the use of these and other alkylating agents, see Alder, Sinnott, Whiting, and Evans, *Chem. Br.* 324 (1978).

[297] For reviews of triflates, nonaflates, and other fluorinated ester leaving groups, see Stang, Hanack, and Subramanian, *Synthesis* 85–126 (1982); Howells and Mc Cown, *Chem. Rev.* **77,** 69–92 (1977), pp. 85–87.

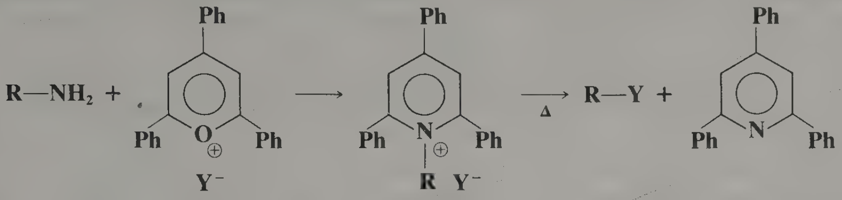
[298] Crossland, Wells, and Shiner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4217 (1971).

[299] Peterson, Clifford, and Slama, Ref. 74; Olah, DeMember, Schlosberg, and Halpern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 156 (1972); Peterson and Bonazza, Ref. 74; Peterson and Waller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5024 (1972); Olah and Svoboda, *Synthesis* 203 (1973); Olah and Mo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3560 (1974).

[299a] For a review of the deamination of amines, see Baumgarten and Curtis, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 2, pp. 929–997, Wiley, New York, 1982.

[300] For references, see Müller and Thi, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **63,** 2168 (1980); Curtis, Knutson, and Baumgarten, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 199 (1981).

NH_2 into a good leaving group has been extensively developed by Katritzky and co-workers.[301] In this method the amine is converted to a pyridinium compound (**86**)[302] by treatment with a pyrylium salt (frequently a 2,4,6-triphenylpyrylium salt, **85**).[303] When the salt is heated, the counterion acts as a nucleophile. In some cases a nonnucleophilic ion such as BF_4^- is used as the counterion for the conversion **85** → **86,** and then Y^- is added to **86**. Among the nucleophiles that have been used successfully in this reaction are I^-, Br^-, Cl^-, F^-, OAc^-, N_3^-, NHR_2, and H^-. Ordinary NR_2 groups are good leaving groups when the substrate is a Mannich base (these are compounds of the form $RCOCH_2CH_2NR_2$; see reaction **6-16**).[304] The elimination–addition mechanism applies in this case.



85 **86**

Probably the best leaving group is N_2 from the species RN_2^+, which can be generated in several ways,[305] of which the two most important are the treatment of primary amines with nitrous acid (see p. 570 for this reaction)

$$\mathbf{RNH_2 + HONO \longrightarrow RN_2^+}$$

and the protonation of diazo compounds[306]

$$\mathbf{R_2C{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}\overset{\ominus}{N} + H^+ \longrightarrow R_2CHN_2^+}$$

No matter how produced, RN_2^+ are too unstable to be isolable,[307] reacting presumably by the S_N1 or S_N2 mechanism.[308] Actually, the exact mechanisms are in doubt because the rate laws, stereochemistry, and products have proved difficult to interpret.[309] If there are free carbocations they should give the same ratio of substitution to elimination to rearrangements, etc. as carbocations generated in other S_N1 reactions, but they often do not. "Hot" carbocations (unsolvated and/or chemically activated) that can hold their configuration have been postulated,[310] as have ion pairs, in which OH^- (or OAc^-, etc., depending on how the diazonium ion is generated) is the counterion.[311]

---

[301] For a review, see Katritzky, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 679–699 (1980). See also the series of papers by Katritzky and co-workers in *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 418–450 (1979). For a review of the use of such leaving groups to study mechanistic questions, see Katritzky and Musumarra, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **13,** 47–68 (1984).

[302] Katritzky, Lloyd, and Patel, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 117 (1982).

[303] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Katritzky, Brzezinski, Ou, and Musumarra, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1463 (1983), and other papers in this series.

[304] For a review of Mannich bases, see Tramontini, *Synthesis* 703–775 (1973).

[305] For reviews, see Kirmse, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 251–261 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 273–283]; Collins, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 315–322 (1971); Moss, *Chem. Eng. News* **49** (48), 28–36 (Nov. 22, 1971).

[306] For reviews of the reactions of aliphatic diazo compounds with acids, see Hegarty, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Diazonium and Diazo Groups," pt. 2, pp. 511–591, Wiley, New York, 1978, pp. 571–575; More O'Ferrall, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **5,** 331–399 (1967). For a review of the structures of these compounds, see Studzinskii and Korobitsyna, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 834–843 (1970).

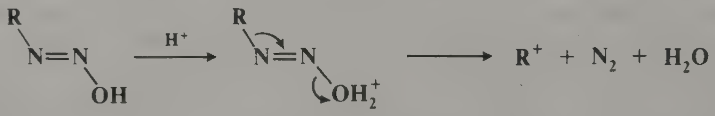
[307] *Aromatic* diazonium salts can, of course, be isolated (see Chapter 13), but only a few aliphatic diazonium salts have been prepared. For reviews see Bott, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 1, pp. 671–697, Wiley, New York, 1983; Bott, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 259–265 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 279–285]. The simplest aliphatic diazonium ion $CH_3N_2^+$ has been prepared at −120° in super-acid solution, where it lived long enough for an nmr spectrum to be taken. Berner and McGarrity, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3135 (1979).

[308] For an example of a diazonium ion reacting by an S_N2 mechanism, see Mohrig, Keegstra, Maverick, Roberts, and Wells, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 780 (1974).

[309] For reviews of the mechanism, see Saunders and Cockerill, "Mechanisms of Elimination Reactions," pp. 280–317, Wiley, New York, 1973; in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 78, vol. 2, 1970, the articles by Keating and Skell, pp. 573–653; and by Friedman, pp. 655–713; White and Woodcock, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 440–483, Interscience, New York, 1968; Ref. 305.

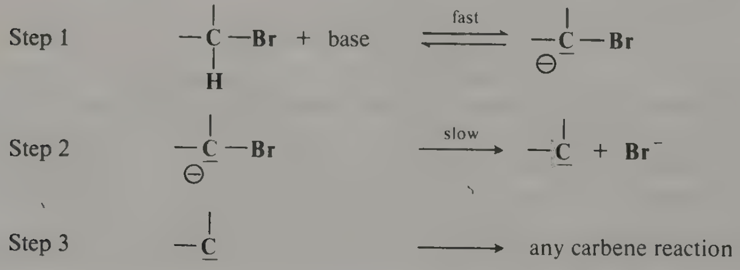
Diazonium ions generated from ordinary aliphatic primary amines are usually useless for preparative purposes, since they lead to a mixture of products giving not only substitution by any nucleophile present, but also elimination and rearrangements if the substrate permits. For example, diazotization of *n*-butylamine gave 25% 1-butanol, 5.2% 1-chlorobutane, 13.2% 2-butanol, 36.5% butenes (consisting of 71% 1-butene, 20% *trans*-2-butene, and 9% *cis*-2-butene), and traces of butyl nitrites.[312]

It has been suggested[313] that the reaction between aliphatic amines and nitrous acid may lead to carbocations *without* the intermediacy of diazonium ions. This could happen if the C—N bond of the diazohydroxide (see p. 571 for the mechanism of diazonium ion formation) is cleaved at the same time as the N—O bond:



There is evidence that changing to a better leaving group in an SN2 reaction causes the newly forming bond between the carbon and the nucleophile to be more fully formed in the transition state, while the bond from the carbon to the leaving group is essentially unchanged.[314]

In the SN1cA and SN2cA mechanisms (p. 311) there is a preliminary step, the addition of a proton, before the normal SN1 or SN2 process occurs. There are also reactions in which the substrate *loses* a proton in a preliminary step. In these reactions there is a carbene intermediate.



Once formed by this process, the carbene may undergo any of the normal carbene reactions (see p. 174). When the net result is substitution, this mechanism may be called the SN1cB (for conjugate base) mechanism.[315] Though the slow step is an SN1 step, the reaction is second order; first order in substrate and first order in base.

Table 10 lists some leaving groups in approximate order of ability to leave. The order of leaving-group ability is about the same for SN1 and SN2 reactions.

2. *At a carbonyl carbon.* In both the SN1 and SN2 mechanisms the leaving group departs during the rate-determining step and so directly affects the rate. In the tetrahedral mechanism at a carbonyl carbon, the bond between the substrate and leaving group is still intact during the slow

---

[310] Semenow, Shih, and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5472 (1958). For a review of "hot" or "free" carbocations, see Keating and Skell, Ref. 309.

[311] Collins, Ref. 305; Collins and Benjamin, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4358 (1972); Collins, Glover, Eckart, Raaen, Benjamin, and Benjaminov, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 899 (1972); White and Field, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2148 (1975); Cohen, Botelho, and Jankowski, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2839 (1980); Cohen, Daniewski, and Solash, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2847 (1980).

[312] Whitmore and Langlois, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **54,** 3441 (1932); Streitwieser and Schaeffer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 2888 (1957).

[313] Chérest, Felkin, Sicher, Šipoš, and Tichý, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2513 (1965). Also see Cram and Sahyun, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1257 (1963); Maskill and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1462 (1976).

[314] Westaway and Ali, *Can. J. Chem.* **57,** 1354 (1979).

[315] Pearson and Edgington, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4607 (1962).

TABLE 10 Leaving groups listed in approximate order of decreasing ability to leave. Groups that are common leaving groups at saturated and carbonyl carbons are indicated

	Common leaving groups	
Substrate RX	**At saturated carbon**	**At carbonyl carbon**
RN_2^+	×	
$ROR_2'^+$		
$ROSO_2C_4F_9$		
$ROSO_2CF_3$	×	
$ROSO_2F$		
ROTs, etc.[317]	×	
RI	×	
RBr	×	
ROH_2^+	× (conjugate acid of alcohol)	
RCl	×	× (acyl halides)
$RORH^+$	× (conjugate acid of ether)	
$RONO_2$, etc.[317]		
$RSR_2'^+$[318]		
$RNR_3'^+$	×	
RF		
ROCOR'[319]	×	× (anhydrides)
RNH_3^+		
ROAr[316]		× (aryl esters)
ROH		× (carboxylic acids)
ROR		× (alkyl esters)
RH		
RNH_2		× (amides)
RAr		
RR		

step. Nevertheless, the nature of the leaving group still affects the reactivity in two ways: (1) By altering the electron density of the carbonyl carbon, the rate of the reaction is affected. The greater the electron-withdrawing character of X, the greater the partial positive charge on C and the more rapid the attack by a nucleophile. (2) The nature of the leaving group affects the *position of equilibrium*. In the intermediate **68** (p. 291) there is competition between X and Y as to which group leaves. If X is a poorer leaving group than Y, then Y will preferentially leave and **68** will revert to the starting compounds. Thus there is a partitioning factor between **68** going on to product (loss of X) or back to starting compound (loss of Y). The sum of these two factors causes the sequence of reactivity to be $RCOCl > RCOOCOR' > RCOOAr > RCOOR' > RCONH_2 >$

[316] Nitro substitution increases the leaving-group ability of ArO groups, and alkyl picrates [2,4,6-$ROC_6H_2(NO_2)_3$] react at rates comparable to tosylates: Sinnott and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 965 (1971). See also Page, Pritt, and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 906 (1972).

[317] ROTs, etc., includes esters of sulfuric and sulfonic acids in general, for example, $ROSO_2OH$, $ROSO_2OR$, $ROSO_2R$, etc. $RONO_2$, etc., includes inorganic ester leaving groups, such as $ROPO(OH)_2$, $ROB(OH)_2$, etc.

[318] For a review of the reactions of sulfonium salts, see Knipe, in Stirling, "The Chemistry of the Sulphonium Group," pt. 1, pp. 313–385, Wiley, New York, 1981.

[319] For a review of S_N2 reactions of esters, where the leaving group is OCOR′, see McMurry, *Org. React.* **24,** 187–224 (1976).

$RCONR'_2 > RCOO^-$.[320] Note that this order is approximately the order of decreasing stability of the leaving-group anion. If the leaving group is bulky, it may exert a steric effect and retard the rate for this reason.

The Effect of the Reaction Medium[321]

The effect of solvent polarity on the rate of SN1 reactions depends on whether the substrate is neutral or positively charged. For neutral substrates, which constitute the majority of cases, the more polar the solvent, the faster the reaction, since there is a greater charge in the transition state than in the starting compound (Table 11) and the energy of an ionic transition state is reduced by polar solvents. However, when the substrate is positively charged, then the charge is more spread out in the transition state than in the starting ion, and a greater solvent polarity slows the reaction. Even for solvents with about the same polarity, there is a difference between protic and aprotic solvents. SN1 reactions of un-ionized substrates are more rapid in protic solvents, which can hydrogen bond with the leaving group. Examples of protic solvents are water, alcohols, and carboxylic acids, while some polar aprotic solvents are dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide,[323] acetonitrile, acetone, sulfur dioxide, and hexamethylphosphoric triamide [$(Me_2N)_3PO$, HMPT, also called hexamethylphosphoramide, HMPA].[324]

For SN2 reactions, the effect of the solvent depends on which of the four charge types the reaction belongs to (p. 255). In types I and IV, an initial charge is dispersed in the transition state, so that the reaction is hindered by polar solvents. In type III initial charges are *decreased* in the transition state, so that the reaction is even more hindered by polar solvents. Only type II, where the reactants are uncharged but the transition state has built up a charge, is aided by polar solvents. These effects are summarized in Table 11. For SN2 reactions also, the difference between protic

TABLE 11 Transition states for SN1 reactions of charged and uncharged substrates, and for SN2 reactions of the four charge types[322]

		Reactants and transition states	Change in the transition state relative to starting materials	How an increase in solvent polarity affects the rate
SN2	Type I	$RX + Y^- \longrightarrow Y^{\delta-}\cdots\cdots R\cdots\cdots X^{\delta-}$	Dispersed	Small decrease
	Type II	$RX + Y \longrightarrow Y^{\delta+}\cdots\cdots R\cdots\cdots X^{\delta-}$	Increased	Large increase
	Type III	$RX^+ + Y^- \longrightarrow Y^{\delta-}\cdots\cdots R\cdots\cdots X^{\delta+}$	Decreased	Large decrease
	Type IV	$RX^+ + Y \longrightarrow Y^{\delta+}\cdots\cdots R\cdots\cdots X^{\delta+}$	Dispersed	Small decrease
SN1		$RX \longrightarrow R^{\delta+}\cdots\cdots X^{\delta-}$	Increased	Large increase
		$RX^+ \longrightarrow R^{\delta+}\cdots\cdots X^{\delta+}$	Dispersed	Small decrease

---

[320] RCOOH would belong in this sequence just after RCOOAr, but it fails to undergo many reactions for a special reason. Many nucleophiles, instead of attacking the C=O group, are basic enough to take a proton from the acid, converting it to the unreactive $RCOO^-$.

[321] For a monograph, see Reichardt, "Solvent Effects in Organic Chemistry," Verlag Chemie, New York, 1979. For reviews, see Klumpp, Ref. 256, pp. 186–203; Bentley and Schleyer, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14,** 1–67 (1977).

[322] This analysis is due to Ingold, "Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 457–463. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1969.

[323] For reviews of reactions in dimethyl sulfoxide, see Buncel and Wilson, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **14,** 133–202 (1977); Martin, Weise, and Niclas, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 318–334 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 340–357].

[324] For reviews of HMPT, see Normant, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 457–484 (1970), *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 791–826 (1968), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 1046–1067 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 1029–1050].

and aprotic solvents must be considered.[325] For reactions of types I and III the transition state is more solvated in polar aprotic solvents than in protic ones, while (as we saw on p. 308) the original charged nucleophile is less solvated in aprotic solvents[326] (the second factor is generally much greater than the first[327]). So the change from, say, methanol to dimethyl sulfoxide should greatly increase the rate. As an example, the relative rates at 25°C for the reaction between methyl iodide and Cl^- were[260] in MeOH, 1; in $HCONH_2$ (still protic though a weaker acid), 12.5; in HCONHMe, 45.3; and in $HCONMe_2$, 1.2×10^6. The change in rate in going from a protic to an aprotic solvent is also related to the *size* of the attacking anion. Small ions are solvated best in protic solvents, since hydrogen bonding is most important for them, while large anions are solvated best in aprotic solvents (protic solvents have highly developed structures held together by hydrogen bonds; aprotic solvents have much looser structures, and it is easier for a large anion to be fitted in). So the rate of attack by small anions is most greatly increased by the change from a protic to an aprotic solvent. This may have preparative significance. The review articles in Ref. 325 have lists of several dozen reactions of charge types I and III in which yields are improved and reaction times reduced in polar aprotic solvents. Reaction types II and IV are much less susceptible to the difference between protic and aprotic solvents.

Since for most reactions SN1 rates go up and SN2 rates go down in solvents of increasing polarity, it is quite possible for the same reaction to go by the SN1 mechanism in one solvent and the SN2 in another. Table 12 is a list of solvents in order of ionizing power;[328] a solvent high on the list is a good solvent for SN1 reactions. Trifluoroacetic acid, which was not studied by Smith, Fainberg, and Winstein, has greater ionizing power than any solvent listed in Table 12.[329] Because it also has very low nucleophilicity, it is an excellent solvent for SN1 solvolyses.[330] Other good solvents for this purpose are 1,1,1-trifluoroethanol CF_3CH_2OH, and 1,1,1,3,3,3-hexafluoro-2-propanol $(F_3C)_2CHOH$.[331]

TABLE 12 Relative rates of ionization of *p*-methoxyneophyl toulenesulfonate in various solvents[328]

Solvent	Relative rate	Solvent	Relative rate
HCOOH	153	Ac_2O	0.020
H_2O	39	Pyridine	0.013
80% $EtOH\text{-}H_2O$	1.85	Acetone	0.0051
AcOH	1.00	EtOAc	6.7×10^{-4}
MeOH	0.947	Tetrahydrofuran	5.0×10^{-4}
EtOH	0.370	Et_2O	3×10^{-5}
Me_2SO	0.108	$CHCl_3$	Lower still
Octanoic acid	0.043	Benzene	
MeCN	0.036	Alkanes	
$HCONMe_2$	0.029		

---

[325] For reviews of the effects of protic and aprotic solvents, see Parker, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 1–32 (1969), *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **5,** 173–235 (1967), *Adv. Org. Chem.* **5,** 1–46 (1965), *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **16,** 163–187 (1962); Madaule-Aubry, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1456 (1966).

[326] See, for example, Fuchs and Cole, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3194 (1973).

[327] See, however, Haberfield, Clayman, and Cooper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 787 (1969).

[328] Smith, Fainberg, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 618 (1961).

[329] Refs. 72, 112; Streitwieser, and Dafforn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1263 (1969).

[330] See, however, Bentley, Bowen, Parker, and Watt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2486 (1979).

[331] Schadt, Schleyer, and Bentley, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2335 (1974).

We have seen how the polarity of the solvent influences the rates of SN1 and SN2 reactions. The ionic strength of the medium has similar effects. In general, the addition of an external salt affects the rates of SN1 and SN2 reactions in the same way as an increase in solvent polarity, though this is not quantitative; different salts have different effects.[332] However, there are exceptions: although the rates of SN1 reactions are usually increased by the addition of salts (this is called the *salt effect*), addition of the leaving-group ion often decreases the rate (the common-ion effect, p. 261). There is also the special salt effect of $LiClO_4$, mentioned on p. 264. In addition to these effects, SN1 rates are also greatly accelerated when there are ions present that specifically help in pulling off the leaving group.[332a] Especially important are Ag^+, Hg^{2+}, and $Hg_2{}^{2+}$, but H^+ helps to pull off F (hydrogen bonding).[333] Even primary halides have been reported to undergo SN1 reactions when assisted by metal ions.[334] This does not mean, however, that reactions in the presence of metallic ions invariably proceed by the SN1 mechanism. It has been shown that alkyl halides can react with $AgNO_2$ and $AgNO_3$ by the SN1 or SN2 mechanism, depending on the reaction conditions.[335]

The effect of solvent has been treated quantitatively (for SN1 mechanisms, in which the solvent pulls off the leaving group) by a linear free-energy relationship[336]

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = mY$$

where m is characteristic of the substrate (defined as 1.00 for *t*-BuCl), and is usually near unity, Y is characteristic of the solvent and measures its "ionizing power," and k_0 is the rate in a standard solvent, 80% aqueous ethanol at 25°C. This is known as the Grunwald–Winstein equation, and its utility is at best limited. Y values can of course be measured for solvent *mixtures* too, and this is one of the principal advantages of the treatment, since it is not easy otherwise to assign a polarity arbitrarily to a given mixture of solvents.[337] The treatment is most satisfactory for different proportions of a given solvent pair. For wider comparisons the treatment is not so good quantitatively, although the Y values do give a reasonably good idea of solvolyzing power.[338] Table 13 contains a list of some Y values.[339]

In order to include a wider range of solvents than those in which Y values can be conveniently measured, other attempts have been made at correlating solvent polarities.[340] Kosower found that the position of the charge-transfer peak (see p. 75) in the uv spectrum of the complex (**87**) between

---

[332] See, for example, Duynstee, Grunwald, and Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5654 (1960); Bunton and Robinson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5965 (1968).

[332a] For a review, see Kevill, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 73, pt. 2, pp. 933–984.

[333] For a review of assistance by metallic ions, see Rudakov, Kozhevnikov, and Zamashchikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 305–316 (1974). For an example of assistance in removal of F by H^+, see Coverdale and Kohnstam, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3906 (1960).

[334] Zamashchikov, Rudakov, Litvinenko, and Uzhik, *Doklad. Chem.* **258,** 186 (1981). See, however, Kevill and Fujimoto, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1149 (1983).

[335] Kornblum, Jones, and Hardies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1704 (1966); Kornblum and Hardies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1707 (1966).

[336] Grunwald and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70,** 846 (1948).

[337] For a review of polarity scales of solvent mixtures, see Langhals, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 724–733 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 739–749].

[338] For lists of Y values based on adamantane compounds instead of *t*-BuCl, see Bentley and Carter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5741 (1982); *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 579 (1983).

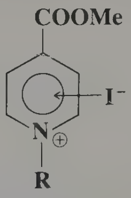
[339] Y values are from Fainberg and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2770 (1956), except for the value for CF_3CH_2OH which is from Shiner, Dowd, Fisher, Hartshorn, Kessick, Milakofsky, and Rapp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4838 (1969). Z values are from Ref. 341, E_T values are from Reichardt and Dimroth, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **11,** 1–73 (1969); Reichardt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 98–110 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 119–131]; Reichardt and Harbusch-Görnert, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 721–743 (1983). Values for many additional solvents are given in the last two papers.

[340] For reviews of solvent polarity scales, see Kamlet, Abboud, and Taft, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **13,** 485–630 (1981); Shorter, "Correlation Analysis of Organic Reactivity," pp. 127–172, Wiley, New York, 1982; Reichardt, Ref. 339; *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 29–40 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 30–40]; Abraham, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 1–87 (1974); Koppel and Palm, in Chapman and Shorter, "Advances in Linear Free Energy Relationships," pp. 203–280, Plenum, New York, 1972; Reichardt and Dimroth, Ref. 339 and Ref. 337. See also Chastrette and Carretto, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1615 (1982).

TABLE 13 Y, Z, and E_T values for some solvents[339]

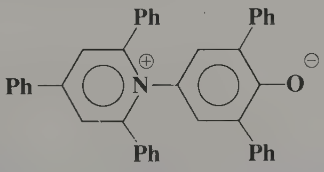
Solvent	Y	Z	E_T
CF_3COOH			
H_2O	3.5	94.6	63.1
$(CF_3)_2CHOH$			69.3
HCOOH	2.1		
H_2O–EtOH (1:1)	1.7	90	55.6
CF_3CH_2OH	1.0		59.5
$HCONH_2$	0.6	83.3	56.6
80% EtOH	0.0	84.8	53.7
MeOH	−1.1	83.6	55.5
AcOH	−1.6	79.2	51.7
EtOH	−2.0	79.6	51.9
90% dioxane	−2.0	76.7	46.7
iso-PrOH	−2.7	76.3	48.6
95% acetone	−2.8	72.9	48.3
t-BuOH	−3.3	71.3	43.9
MeCN		71.3	46.0
Me_2SO		71.1	45.0
$HCONMe_2$		68.5	43.8
Acetone		65.7	42.2
Pyridine		64.0	40.2
$CHCl_3$		63.2	39.1
PhCl			37.5
THF			37.4
Dioxane			36.0
Et_2O			34.6
C_6H_6		54	34.8
CCl_4			33.6
n-Hexane			33.1

iodide ion and 1-methyl- or 1-ethyl-4-carbomethoxypyridinium ion was dependent on the polarity of the solvent.[341] From these peaks, which are very easy to measure, Kosower calculated transition energies that he called Z values. Z values are thus measures of solvent polarity analogous to Y values. Another scale is based on the position of electronic spectra peaks of the pyridinium-*N*-



87

R = Me or Et



88

---

[341] Kosower, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 3253, 3261, 3267 (1958); Kosower, Wu, and Sorensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3147 (1961). See also Larsen, Edwards, and Dobi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6780 (1980).

phenolbetaine **88** in various solvents.[342] Solvent polarity values on this scale are called E_T values. E_T values are related to Z values by the expression[343]

$$Z = 1.41E_T + 6.92$$

Table 13 shows that Z and E_T values are generally in the same order as Y values. Still another scale, the π^* scale, is also based on spectral data.[344]

The effect of solvent on nucleophilicity has already been discussed (p. 308).

It has been proposed[271] that if the Grunwald–Winstein equation, which applies only to removal of the leaving group, is combined with the nucleophilicity relationship (p. 309), which applies only to pushing by the nucleophile, an equation can be obtained that correlates both effects:

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = sn + s'e$$

In this equation, s and n are as defined on page 309, s' is analogous to m, and e is analogous to Y. In solvolysis reactions, the solvent may be both pushing and pulling, so that n and e are different functions of the same compound. This equation has not proved very satisfactory and numerous attempts have been made to improve it.[345]

Phase Transfer Catalysis

A difficulty that occasionally arises when carrying out nucleophilic substitution reactions is that the reactants do not mix. For a reaction to take place the reacting molecules must collide. In nucleophilic substitutions the substrate is usually insoluble in water and other polar solvents, while the nucleophile is often an anion, which is soluble in water but not in the substrate or other organic solvents. Consequently, when the two reactants are brought together, their concentrations in the same phase are too low for convenient reaction rates. One way to overcome this difficulty is to use a solvent that will dissolve both species. As we saw on p. 317, a dipolar aprotic solvent may serve this purpose. Another way, which has found much use in recent years, is *phase transfer catalysis*.[346]

In this method, a catalyst is used to carry the nucleophile from the aqueous into the organic phase. As an example, simply heating and stirring a two-phase mixture of 1-chlorooctane for several days with aqueous NaCN gives essentially no yield of 1-cyanooctane. But if a small amount of an appropriate quaternary ammonium salt is added, the product is quantitatively formed in about 2 hr.[347] There are two principal types of phase transfer catalyst. Though the action of the two types is somewhat different, the effects are the same. Both get the anion into the organic phase and allow it to be relatively free to react with the substrate.

---

[342] Dimroth, Reichardt, Siepmann, and Bohlmann, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **661,** 1 (1963); Dimroth and Reichardt, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **727,** 93 (1969).

[343] Reichardt and Dimroth, Ref. 339, p. 32.

[344] Kamlet, Abboud, and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 6027 (1977); Taft, Pienta, Kamlet, and Arnett, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 661 (1981); Kamlet, Abboud, Abraham, and Taft, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2877 (1983); and other papers in this series. See also Doan and Drago, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4524 (1982); Kamlet, Abboud, and Taft, Ref. 340; Bekárek, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1293 (1983).

[345] See, for example, Bentley and Schleyer, Ref. 321, pp. 52–58; Peterson, Vidrine, Waller, Henrichs, Magaha, and Stevens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7968 (1977).

[346] For monographs, see Dehmlow and Dehmlow, "Phase Transfer Catalysis," 2d ed., Verlag Chemie, Deerfield Beach, Fla., 1983; Starks and Liotta, "Phase Transfer Catalysis," Academic Press, New York, 1978; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," Springer Verlag, New York, 1977. For reviews, see Montanari, Landini, and Rolla, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **101,** 147–200 (1982); Alper, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **19,** 183–211 (1981); Gallo, Dou, and Hassanaly, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **90,** 849–879 (1981); Dehmlow, *Chimia* **34,** 12–20 (1980); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 493–505 (1977), **13,** 170–174 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 521–533; **86,** 187–196]; Mąkosza, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **9,** 1–53 (1980); Starks, *CHEMTECH* 110–117 (1980); Sjöberg, *Aldrichimica Acta* **13,** 55–58 (1980); McIntosh, *J. Chem. Educ.* **55,** 235–238 (1978); Gokel and Weber, *J. Chem. Educ.* **55,** 350–354, (1978); Weber and Gokel, *J. Chem. Educ.* **55,** 429–433 (1978); Liotta, in Izatt and Christensen, "Synthetic Multidentate Macrocyclic Compounds," pp. 111–205, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Brändström, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **15,** 267–330 (1977); Jones, *Aldrichimica Acta* **9,** 35–45 (1976); Dockx, *Synthesis* 441–456 (1973).

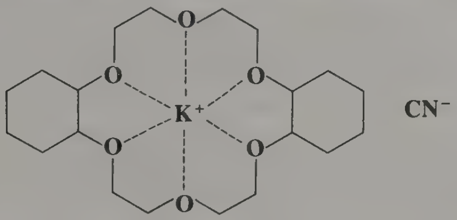
1. *Quaternary ammonium or phosphonium salts.* In the above-mentioned case of NaCN, the uncatalyzed reaction does not take place because the CN^- ions cannot cross the interface between the two phases, except in very low concentration. The reason is that the Na^+ ions are solvated by the water, and this solvation energy would not be present in the organic phase. The CN^- ions cannot cross without the Na^+ ions because that would destroy the electrical neutrality of each phase. In contrast to Na^+ ions, quaternary ammonium (R_4N^+) and phosphonium (R_4P^+) ions with sufficiently large R groups are poorly solvated in water and prefer organic solvents. If a small amount of such a salt is added, three equilibria are set up:

$$\begin{tikzcd}
\text{Organic phase} & Q^+\ CN^- + RCl \arrow[rr, "4"] \arrow[d, shift left, "1"] & & RCN + Q^+\ Cl^- \arrow[d, shift left, "2"] & \\
\text{Aqueous phase} & Q^+\ CN^- + Na^+\ Cl^- \arrow[u, shift left] \arrow[rr, shift left, "3"] & & Na^+\ CN^- + Q^+\ Cl^- \arrow[ll, shift left] \arrow[u, shift left] & Q^+ = R_4N^+ \text{ or } R_4P^+
\end{tikzcd}$$

The Na^+ ions remain in the aqueous phase; they cannot cross. The Q^+ ions do cross the interface and carry an anion with them. At the beginning of the reaction the chief anion present is CN^-. This gets carried into the organic phase (equilibrium 1) where it reacts with RCl to produce RCN and Cl^-. The Cl^- then gets carried into the aqueous phase (equilibrium 2). Equilibrium 3, taking place entirely in the aqueous phase, allows $Q^+\ CN^-$ to be regenerated. All the equilibria are normally reached much faster than the actual reaction (4), so the latter is the rate-determining step.

In some cases, the Q^+ ions have such a low solubility in water that virtually all remain in the organic phase.[348] In such cases the exchange of ions (equilibrium 3) takes place across the interface.

2. *Crown ethers and other cryptands.*[349] We saw in Chapter 3 that certain cryptands are able to surround certain cations. In effect, a salt like KCN is converted by dicyclohexano-18-crown-6 into a new salt whose anion is the same, but whose cation is now a much larger species with the positive charge spread over a large volume and hence much less concentrated. This larger cation is much less solubilized by water than K^+ and much more attracted to organic solvents. Though KCN is generally insoluble in organic solvents, the cryptate salt is soluble in many of them. In these cases we do not need an aqueous phase at all but simply add the salt to the organic phase. Suitable cryptands have been used to increase greatly the rates of reactions where F^-, Br^-, I^-, OAc^-, and CN^- are nucleophiles.[350]



---

[347] Starks and Liotta, Ref. 346, p. 2.

[348] Landini, Maia, and Montanari, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 112 (1977); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2796 (1978).

[349] For a review of this type of phase transfer catalysis, see Liotta, in Patai, Ref. 289.

[350] See, for example, Liotta, Harris, McDermott, Gonzalez, and Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2417 (1974); Sam and Simmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2252 (1974); Durst, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2421 (1974).

Both of the above-mentioned catalyst types get the anions into the organic phase, but there is another factor as well. There is evidence that sodium and potassium salts of many anions, even if they could be dissolved in organic solvents, would undergo reactions very slowly (dipolar aprotic solvents are exceptions) because in these solvents the anions exist as ion pairs with Na^+ or K^+ and are not free to attack the substrate (p. 308). Fortunately, ion pairing is usually much less with the quaternary ions and with the positive cryptate ions, so the anions in these cases are quite free to attack. Such anions have sometimes been referred to as "naked" anions.

Not all quaternary salts and cryptands work equally well in all situations. Some experimentation is often required to find the optimum catalyst.

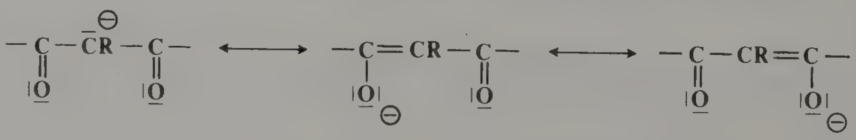
Although phase transfer catalysis has been most often used for nucleophilic substitutions, it is not confined to these reactions. Any reaction that needs an insoluble anion dissolved in an organic solvent can be accelerated by an appropriate phase transfer catalyst. We shall see some examples in later chapters. In fact, in principle, the method is not even limited to anions, and a small amount of work has been done in transferring cations,[351] radicals, and molecules.[352]

The catalysts mentioned above are soluble. Certain cross-linked polystyrene resins, as well as alumina[353] and silica gel, have been used as insoluble phase transfer catalysts. These, called *triphase catalysts*[354] have the advantage of simplified product work-up and easy and quantitative catalyst recovery, since the catalyst can easily be separated from the product by filtration.

Ambident Nucleophiles. Regioselectivity

Some nucleophiles have a pair of electrons on each of two or more atoms, or canonical forms can be drawn in which two or more atoms bear an unshared pair. In these cases the nucleophile may attack in two or more different ways to give different products. Such reagents are called *ambident nucleophiles*.[355] In most cases a nucleophile with two potentially attacking atoms can attack with either of them, depending on conditions, and mixtures are often obtained, though this is not always the case. For example, the nucleophile NCO^- usually gives only isocyanates RNCO and not the isomeric cyanates ROCN.[355a] When a reaction can potentially give rise to two or more structural isomers (e.g., ROCN or RNCO) but actually produces only one, the reaction is said to be *regioselective*[356] (compare the definition of stereoselective, p. 119). Some important ambident nucleophiles are:

1. *Ions of the type* $-\mathrm{CO}-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{R}-\mathrm{CO}-$. These ions, which are derived by removal of a proton from malonic esters, β-keto esters, β-diketones, etc., are resonance hybrids:



$$\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{-\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{R}-\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{\mathrm{C}}- \longleftrightarrow \underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{-\mathrm{C}}=\mathrm{CR}-\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{\mathrm{C}}- \longleftrightarrow \underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{-\mathrm{C}}-\mathrm{CR}=\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{\mathrm{C}}-$$

---

[351] See Armstrong and Godat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2489 (1979); Iwamoto, Yoshimura, Sonoda, and Kobayashi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 796 (1983).

[352] See, for example, Dehmlow and Slopianka, *Chem. Ber.* **112,** 2765 (1979).

[353] Quici and Regen, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3436 (1979).

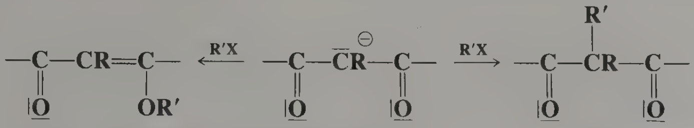
[354] For reviews, see Regen, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **6,** 629–637 (1982); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 421–429 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 464–472]. See also Molinari, Montanari, Quici, and Tundo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3920 (1979).

[355] For a monograph, see Reutov, Beletskaya, and Kurts, "Ambident Anions," Plenum, New York, 1983.

[355a] Both cyanates and isocyanates have been isolated in treatment of secondary alkyl iodides with NCO^-: Holm and Wentrup, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **20,** 2123 (1966).

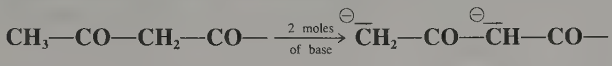
[356] This term was introduced by Hassner, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2684 (1968).

They can thus attack a saturated carbon with their carbon atoms (C-alkylation) or with their oxygen atoms (O-alkylation):



With unsymmetrical ions, three products are possible, since either oxygen may attack. With a carbonyl substrate the ion may analogously undergo C-acylation or O-acylation.

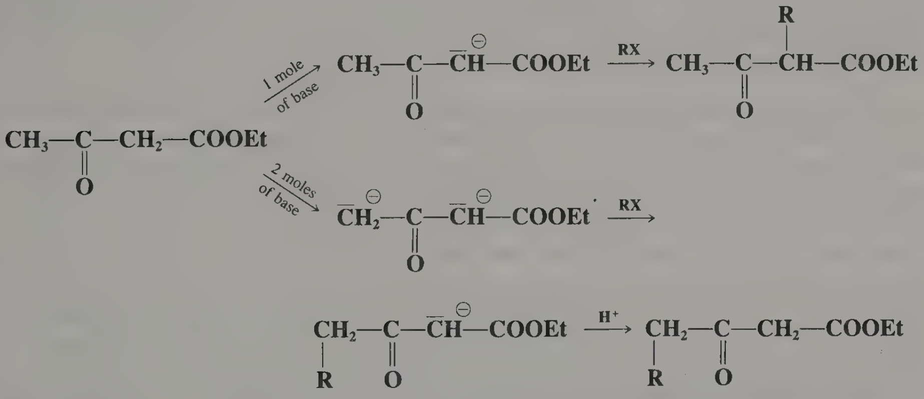
2. Compounds of the type $CH_3CO—CH_2—CO—$ can give up two protons, if treated with 2 moles of a strong enough base, to give dicarbanions:



$$CH_3—CO—CH_2—CO— \xrightarrow[\text{of base}]{\text{2 moles}} \overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H_2—CO—\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H—CO—$$

89

Such ions are ambident nucleophiles, since they have two possible attacking carbon atoms, aside from the possibility of attack by oxygen. In such cases, the attack is virtually always by the more basic carbon.[357] Since the hydrogen of a carbon bonded to two carbonyl groups is more acidic than that of a carbon bonded to just one (see Chapter 8), the CH group of **89** is less basic than the CH_2 group, so that the latter attacks the substrate. This gives rise to a useful general principle: whenever we desire to remove a proton at a given position for use as a nucleophile but there is a stronger acidic group in the molecule, it may be possible to take off both protons; if it is, then attack is always by the desired position since it is the ion of the weaker acid. On the other hand, if it is desired to attack with the more acidic position, all that is necessary is to remove just one proton.[358] For example, ethyl acetoacetate may be alkylated at either the methyl or the methylene group (**0-96**):



3. *The* CN^- *ion.* This nucleophile may give nitriles RCN (**0-103**) or isonitriles RN≡C.

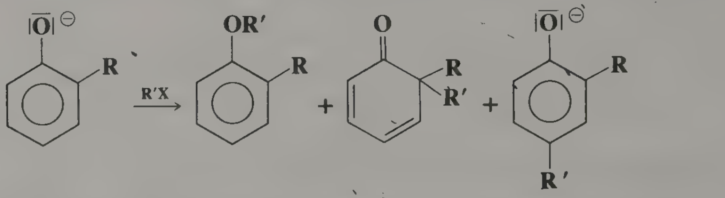
4. *The nitrite ion.* This ion may give nitrite esters R—O—N=O (**0-33**) or nitro compounds RNO_2 (**0-62**), which are not esters.

---

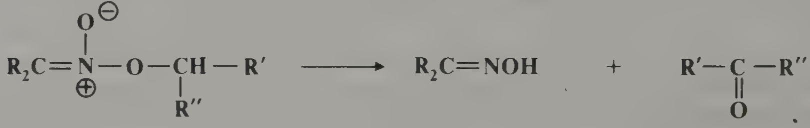
[357] For an exception, see Trimitsis, Hinkley, TenBrink, Faburada, Anderson, Poli, Christian, Gustafson, Erdman, and Rop, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2957 (1983).

[358] The use of this principle was first reported by Hauser and Harris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6360 (1958). It has since been applied many times by Hauser, Harris, and co-workers. For reviews, see Kaiser, Petty, and Knutson, *Synthesis* 509–550 (1977); Harris and Harris, *Org. React.* **17,** 155–211 (1969).

5. Phenoxide ions (which are analogous to enolate ions) can undergo C-alkylation or O-alkylation:



6. Removal of a proton from an aliphatic nitro compound gives a carbanion ($R_2C^{\ominus}—NO_2$) that can be alkylated at oxygen or carbon.[359] O-Alkylation gives nitronic esters, which are generally unstable to heat but break down to give an oxime and an aldehyde or ketone.



$$R_2C{=}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O^{\ominus}}{|}}{\underset{\oplus}{N}}{-}O{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle R''}{|}}{CH}{-}R' \longrightarrow R_2C{=}NOH + R'{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R''$$

There are many other ambident nucleophiles. An interesting case is that of β-amino-α, β-unsaturated ketones, which may be alkylated on a carbon, oxygen, or nitrogen atom.[360]

It would be useful to have general rules as to which atom of an ambident nucleophile will attack a given substrate under a given set of conditions.[361] Unfortunately, the situation is complicated by the large number of variables. It might be expected that the more electronegative atom would always attack, but this is often not the case. Where the products are determined by thermodynamic control (p. 188), the principal product is usually the one in which the atom of higher basicity has attacked (i.e., $C > N > O > S$). However, in most reactions, the products are kinetically controlled and matters are much less simple. Nevertheless, the following generalizations can be made, while recognizing that there are many exceptions and unexplained results. As in the discussion of nucleophilicity in general (p. 308), there are two major factors: the polarizability (hard–soft character) of the nucleophile and solvation effects.

1. The principle of hard and soft acids and bases states that hard acids prefer hard bases and soft acids prefer soft bases (p. 229). In an SN1 mechanism the nucleophile attacks a carbocation, which is a hard acid. In an SN2 mechanism the nucleophile attacks the carbon atom of a molecule, which is a softer acid. The more electronegative atom of an ambident nucleophile is a harder base than the less electronegative atom. We may thus make the statement: As the character of a given reaction changes from SN1-like to SN2-like, an ambident nucleophile becomes more likely to attack with its less electronegative atom.[362] Therefore, changing from SN1 to SN2 conditions should favor C attack by CN^-, N attack by NO_2^-, C attack by enolate or phenoxide ions, etc. As an example, primary alkyl halides are attacked (in protic solvents) by the carbon atom of the anion of CH_3COCH_2COOEt, while α-chloro ethers, which react by the SN1 mechanism, are attacked by the oxygen atom. However, this does not mean that attack is by the less electronegative atom in all SN2 reactions and by the more electronegative atom in all SN1 reactions. The position of attack also depends on the nature of the nucleophile, the solvent, the leaving group, and other conditions. The rule merely states that increasing the SN2 character of the transition state makes attack by the less electronegative atom more likely.

---

[359] For a review, see Erashko, Shevelev, and Fainzil'berg, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 719–732 (1966).

[360] Leonard and Adamcik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 595 (1959).

[361] For reviews, see Jackman and Lange, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2737–2769 (1977); Reutov and Kurts, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 1040–1056 (1977); Gompper and Wagner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 321–333 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 389–401]; Shevelev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 844–858 (1970); Gompper, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 560–570 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 412–423].

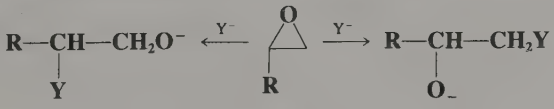
[362] This principle, sometimes called *Kornblum's rule,* was first stated by Kornblum, Smiley, Blackwood, and Iffland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 6269 (1955).

2. All negatively charged nucleophiles must of course have a positive counterion. If this ion is Ag^+ (or some other ion that specifically helps in removing the leaving group, p. 318), rather than the more usual Na^+ or K^+, then the transition state is more SN1-like. Therefore the use of Ag^+ promotes attack at the more electronegative atom. For example, alkyl halides treated with NaCN generally give mostly RCN, but the use of AgCN increases the yield of isonitriles RNC.[363]

3. In many cases the solvent influences the position of attack. The freer the nucleophile, the more likely it is to attack with its more electronegative atom, but the more this atom is encumbered by either solvent molecules or positive counterions, the more likely is attack by the less electronegative atom. In protic solvents, the more electronegative atom is better solvated by hydrogen bonds than the less electronegative atom. In polar aprotic solvents, neither atom of the nucleophile is greatly solvated, but these solvents are very effective in solvating cations. Thus in a polar aprotic solvent the more electronegative end of the nucleophile is freer from entanglement by both the solvent and the cation, so that a change from a protic to a polar aprotic solvent often increases the extent of attack by the more electronegative atom. An example is attack by sodium β-naphthoxide on benzyl bromide, which resulted in 95% O-alkylation in dimethyl sulfoxide and 85% C-alkylation in 2,2,2-trifluoroethanol.[364] Changing the cation from Li^+ to Na^+ to K^+ (in nonpolar solvents) also favors O- over C-alkylation[365] for similar reasons (K^+ leaves the nucleophile much freer than Li^+), as does the use of crown ethers, which are good at solvating cations (p. 78).[366]

Ambident Substrates

Some substrates (e.g., 1,3-dichlorobutane) can be attacked at two or more positions. We may call these *ambident substrates*. In the example given, there happen to be two leaving groups in the molecule, but there are two kinds of substrates that are inherently ambident (unless symmetrical). One of these, the allylic type, has already been discussed (p. 287). The other is the epoxy (or the similar aziridine or episulfide) substrate.[367]



90

---

[363] Actually, this reaction is more complicated than it seems on the surface; see Austad, Songstad, and Stangeland, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **25,** 2327 (1971).

[364] Kornblum, Berrigan, and le Noble, *J. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1141 (1963); Kornblum, Seltzer, and Haberfield, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1148 (1963). For other examples, see le Noble and Puerta, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1087 (1966); Brieger and Pelletier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3555 (1965); Heiszwolf and Kloosterziel, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **89,** 1153, 1217 (1970); Kurts, Masias, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **7,** 2323 (1971); Schick, Schwarz, Finger, and Schwarz, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1279 (1982).

[365] Kornblum, Seltzer, and Haberfield, Ref. 364; Kurts, Beletskaya, Masias, and Reutov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3679 (1968). See, however, Sarthou, Bram, and Guibe, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 786 (1980).

[366] Smith and Hanson, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1931 (1971); Kurts, Dem'yanov, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **9,** 1341 (1973); Cambillau, Sarthou, and Bram, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 281 (1976); Akabori and Tuji, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **51,** 1197 (1978). See also Zook, Russo, Ferrand, and Stotz, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2222 (1968); le Noble and Palit, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 493 (1972).

[367] For reviews of SN reactions at such substrates, see Rao, Paknikar, and Kirtane, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2323–2367 (1983); Behrens and Sharpless, *Aldrichimica Acta* **16,** 67–79 (1983); Enikolopiyan, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **48,** 317–328 (1976); Fokin and Kolomiets, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 25–42 (1976); Wohl, *Chimia* **28,** 1–5 (1974); Kirk, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 109–116 (1973); Buchanan and Sable, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **2,** 1–95 (1972); Dermer and Ham, "Ethylenimine and Other Aziridines," pp. 206–273, Academic Press, New York, 1969; Akhrem, Moiseenkov, and Dobrynin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 448–462 (1968); Gritter, in Patai, Ref. 286, pp. 390–400.

Substitution of the free epoxide, which generally occurs under basic or neutral conditions, usually involves an SN2 mechanism. Since primary substrates undergo SN2 attack more readily than secondary, compounds of the type **90** are attacked in neutral or basic solution at the less highly substituted carbon, and stereospecifically, with inversion at that carbon. Under acidic conditions, it is the protonated epoxide that undergoes the reaction. Under these conditions the mechanism may be either SN1 or SN2. In SN1 mechanisms, which favor tertiary carbons, we might expect that attack would be at the more highly substituted carbon, and this is indeed the case. However, even when protonated epoxides react by the SN2 mechanism, attack is usually at the more highly substituted position.[368] Thus, it is often possible to change the direction of ring opening by changing the conditions from basic to acidic or vice versa. When an epoxide ring is fused to a cyclohexane ring, SN2 ring opening invariably gives diaxial rather than diequatorial ring opening.[369]

REACTIONS

The reactions in this chapter are classified according to the attacking atom of the nucleophile in the order O, S, N, halogen, H, C. For a given nucleophile, reactions are classified by the substrate and leaving group, with alkyl substrates usually considered before acyl ones. Nucleophilic substitutions at a sulfur atom are treated at the end.

Not all the reactions in this chapter are actually nucleophilic substitutions. In some cases the mechanisms are not known with enough certainty even to decide whether a nucleophile, an electrophile, or a free radical is attacking. In other cases (such as **0-77**), conversion of one compound to another may occur by two or even all three of these possibilities, depending on the reagent and the reaction conditions. However, one or more of the nucleophilic mechanisms previously discussed do hold for the overwhelming majority of the reactions in this chapter. For the alkylations, the SN2 is by far the most common mechanism, as long as R is primary or secondary alkyl. For the acylations, the tetrahedral mechanism is the most common.

Oxygen Nucleophiles

A. Attack by OH at an Alkyl Carbon

0-1 Hydrolysis of Alkyl Halides
Hydroxy-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + H_2O \longrightarrow ROH_2^+ \xrightarrow{-H^+} ROH + H^+}$$

$$\mathbf{RX + OH^- \longrightarrow ROH}$$

Alkyl halides can be hydrolyzed to alcohols. Hydroxide ion is usually required, except that especially active substrates such as allylic or benzylic types can be hydrolyzed by water. Ordinarily halides can also be hydrolyzed by water, if the solvent is HMPT or N-methyl-2-pyrrolidone.[370] In contrast to most nucleophilic substitutions at saturated carbons, this reaction can be performed on tertiary substrates without significant interference from elimination side reactions. The reaction is not frequently used for synthetic purposes, because alkyl halides are usually obtained from alcohols.

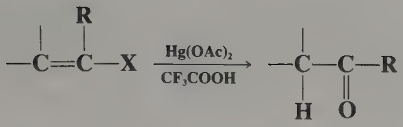
Vinyl halides are unreactive (p. 300), but they can be hydrolyzed to ketones at room temperature with mercuric trifluoroacetate, or with mercury acetate in either trifluoroacetic acid or acetic acid

---

[368] Addy and Parker, *J. Chem. Soc.* 915 (1963); Biggs, Chapman, Finch, and Wray, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 55 (1971).

[369] Murphy, Alumbaugh, and Rickborn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2649 (1969).

[370] Hutchins and Taffer, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1360 (1983).

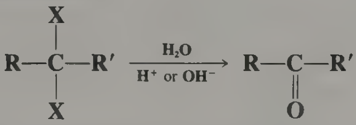


$$-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}-X \xrightarrow[CF_3COOH]{Hg(OAc)_2} -\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R$$

containing BF_3 etherate.[371] The reaction can also be carried out with sulfuric acid, but high temperatures are required.

OS **II,** 408; **III,** 434; **IV,** 128; **51,** 60; **57,** 117.

0-2 Hydrolysis of *gem*-Dihalides
Oxo-de-dihalo-bisubstitution



$$R-\underset{\underset{X}{|}}{\overset{\overset{X}{|}}{C}}-R' \xrightarrow[H^+ \text{ or } OH^-]{H_2O} R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'$$

gem-Dihalides can be hydrolyzed with either acid or basic catalysis to give aldehydes or ketones.[372] Formally, the reaction may be regarded as giving R—C(OH)XR′, which is unstable and loses HX to give the carbonyl compound. For aldehydes, strong bases cannot be used, because the product undergoes the aldol condensation (**6-40**) or the Cannizzaro reaction (**9-70**).

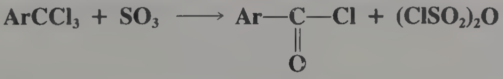
OS **I,** 95; **II,** 89, 133, 244, 549; **III,** 538, 788; **IV,** 110, 423, 807. Also see OS **III,** 737.

0-3 Hydrolysis of 1,1,1-Trihalides
Hydroxy, oxo-de-trihalo-tersubstitution

$$RCX_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow RCOOH$$

This reaction is similar to the previous one. The utility of the method is limited by the lack of availability of trihalides, though these compounds can be prepared by addition of CCl_4 and similar compounds to double bonds (**5-34**) and by free-radical halogenation of methyl groups on aromatic rings (**4-1**). When the hydrolysis is carried out in the presence of an alcohol, an ester can be obtained directly.[373] 1,1-Dichloroalkenes can also be hydrolyzed to carboxylic acids, by treatment with H_2SO_4. In general 1,1,1-trifluorides do not undergo this reaction,[374] though exceptions are known.[375]

Aryl 1,1,1-trihalomethanes can be converted to acyl halides by treatment with sulfur trioxide.[376]



$$ArCCl_3 + SO_3 \longrightarrow Ar-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Cl + (ClSO_2)_2O$$

Chloroform is more rapidly hydrolyzed with base than dichloromethane or carbon tetrachloride and gives not only formic acid but also carbon monoxide.[377] Hine[378] has shown that the mechanism of chloroform hydrolysis is quite different from that of dichloromethane or carbon tetrachloride, though superficially the three reactions appear similar. The first step is the loss of a proton to give CCl_3^- which then loses Cl^- to give dichlorocarbene CCl_2, which is hydrolyzed to formic acid or carbon monoxide.

---

[371] Martin and Chou, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1943 (1978); Yoshioka, Takasaki, Kobayashi, and Matsumoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3489 (1979).

[372] For a review, see Salomaa, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 1, pp. 177–210, Interscience, New York, 1966.

[373] See, for example, Le Fave and Scheurer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 2464 (1950).

[374] Sheppard and Sharts, "Organic Fluorine Chemistry," pp. 410–411, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1969; Hudlický, "Chemistry of Organic Fluorine Compounds," pp. 205–207, Macmillan, New York, 1962.

[375] See, for example, Kobayashi and Kumadaki, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 197–204 (1978).

[376] Rondestvedt, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3569, 3574, 3576 (1976). For another method, see Nakano, Ohkawa, Matsumoto, and Nagai, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 808 (1977).

[377] For a review, see Kirmse, "Carbene Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 129–141, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[378] Hine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 2438 (1950). Also see le Noble, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2434 (1965).

$$\mathrm{HCCl_3} \overset{\mathrm{OH^-}}{\rightleftharpoons} \mathrm{CCl_3^-} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{Cl^-}} \overline{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{Cl_2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{HCOOH} \text{ or } \mathrm{CO}$$

This is an example of an SN1cB mechanism (p. 314). The other two compounds react by the normal mechanisms. Carbon tetrachloride cannot give up a proton and dichloromethane is not acidic enough.

OS **III,** 270; **V,** 93. Also see OS **I,** 327.

0-4 Hydrolysis of Alkyl Esters of Inorganic Acids

Hydroxy-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution, etc.

$$\left.\begin{array}{l} \mathrm{R{-}OSO_2R'} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OSO_2OH} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OSO_2OR'} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OSOOH} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OSOOR'} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OSOR'} \\ \mathrm{R{-}ONO_2} \\ \mathrm{R{-}ONO} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OPO(OH)_2} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OPO(OR')_2} \\ \mathrm{R{-}OB(OH)_2} \\ \text{and others} \end{array}\right\} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{R{-}OH}$$

Esters of inorganic acids, including those given above and others, can be hydrolyzed to alcohols. The reactions are most successful when the ester is that of a strong acid, but it can be done for esters of weaker acids by the use of hydroxide ion (a more powerful nucleophile) or acid conditions (which make the leaving group come off more easily). When vinyl substrates are hydrolyzed, the products are aldehydes or ketones.

$$\mathrm{R_2C{=}CH{-}X} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{R_2C{=}CH{-}OH} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{R_2CH{-}CHO}$$

These reactions are all considered at one place because they are formally similar, but though some of them involve R—O cleavage and are thus nucleophilic substitutions at a saturated carbon, others involve cleavage of the bond between the inorganic atom and oxygen and are thus nucleophilic substitutions at a sulfur, nitrogen, etc. It is even possible for the same ester to be cleaved at either position, depending on the conditions. Thus benzhydryl *p*-toluenesulfinate ($Ph_2CHOSOC_6H_4CH_3$) was found to undergo C—O cleavage in $HClO_4$ solutions and S—O cleavage in alkaline media.[379] In general, the weaker the corresponding acid, the less likely is C—O cleavage. Thus, sulfonic acid esters $ROSO_2R'$ generally give C—O cleavage,[380] while nitrous acid esters RONO usually give N—O cleavage.[381] Esters of sulfonic acids that are frequently hydrolyzed are mentioned on p. 312. For hydrolysis of sulfonic acid esters, see also **0-117.**

OS **50,** 88.

---

[379] Bunton and Hendy, *J. Chem. Soc.* 627 (1963). For another example, see Batts, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 551 (1966).

[380] Barnard and Robertson, *Can. J. Chem.* **39,** 881 (1961). See also Drabicky, Myhre, Reich, and Schmittou, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1472 (1976).

[381] Allen, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1968 (1954).

0-5 Diazotization of Primary Aliphatic Amines

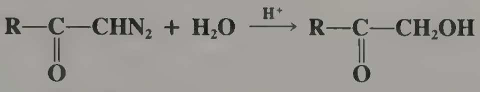
Hydroxy-de-diazoniation

$$\mathrm{RNH_2 + HONO \rightarrow [RN_2^+] \xrightarrow{H_2O} N_2 + ROH} + \text{other products}$$

The diazotization of primary amines is not usually a good method for the preparations of alcohols, because it leads to a mixture of products (see p. 314).

0-6 Hydrolysis of Diazo Ketones

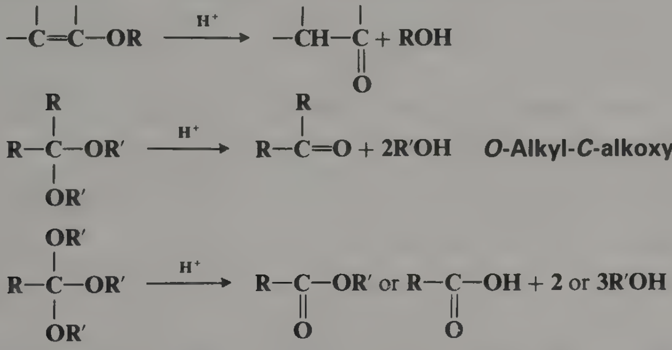
Hydro,hydroxy-de-diazo-bisubstitution



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}CHN_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} R{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}CH_2OH}$$

Diazo ketones are relatively easy to prepare (see **0-115**). When treated with acid, they add a proton to give α-keto diazonium salts, which are hydrolyzed to the alcohols by the S_N1 or S_N2 mechanism.[382] Relatively good yields of α-hydroxy ketones can be prepared in this way, since the diazonium ion is somewhat stabilized by the presence of the carbonyl group, which discourages N_2 from leaving because that would result in an unstable α-carbonyl carbocation.

0-7 Hydrolysis of Enol Ethers, Acetals, and Similar Compounds[383]



$$\mathrm{-\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}{-}OR \xrightarrow{H^+} -\overset{|}{C}H{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{\overset{|}{C}} + ROH}$$

$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{OR'}{\overset{R}{C}}{-}OR' \xrightarrow{H^+} R{-}\overset{R}{C}{=}O + 2R'OH}$$

***O*-Alkyl-*C*-alkoxy-elimination**

$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{OR'}{\overset{OR'}{C}}{-}OR' \xrightarrow{H^+} R{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}OR'} \text{ or } \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}OH + 2 \text{ or } 3R'OH}$$

The alkoxyl group OR is not a leaving group, and so these compounds must be converted to the conjugate acids before they can be hydrolyzed. Although 100% sulfuric acid and other concentrated strong acids readily cleave simple ethers,[384] the only acids used preparatively for this purpose are HBr and HI (**0-69**). However, acetals, ketals, and ortho esters are easily cleaved by dilute acids. These compounds are hydrolyzed with greater facility because carbocations of the type

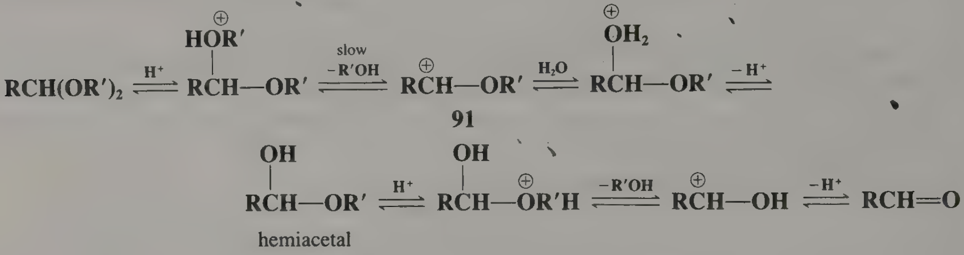
---

[382] Dahn and Gold, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **46,** 983 (1963); Thomas and Leveson, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **15,** 25 (1983). For a review of the acid-promoted decomposition of diazo ketones, see Smith and Dieter, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2407–2439 (1981).

[383] For reviews, see Bergstrom, in Patai, Ref. 289, pp. 881–902; Cockerill and Harrison, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement A," pt. 1, pp. 149–329, Wiley, New York, 1977; Cordes and Bull, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 581–603 (1974); Cordes, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 1–44 (1967); Salomaa, Ref. 372, pp. 184–198; Cordes, in Patai, Ref. 180, pp. 632–656, Interscience, New York, 1969 (ortho esters); DeWolfe, "Carboxylic Ortho Acid Derivatives," pp. 134–146, Academic Press, New York, 1970 (ortho esters); Rekasheva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 1009–1022 (1968) (vinyl ethers).

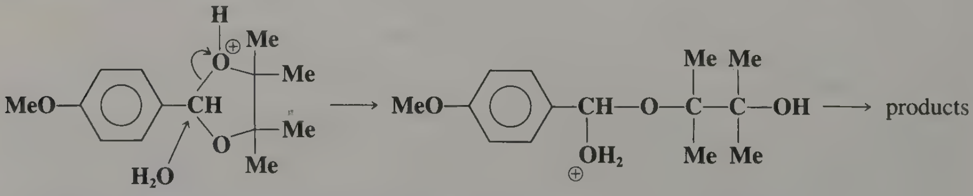
[384] Jaques and Leisten, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2683 (1964). See also Olah and O'Brien, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1725 (1967).

$\mathrm{RO{-}\overset{\oplus}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}}$ are greatly stabilized by resonance (p. 146). The reactions therefore proceed by the SN1 mechanism, as shown for acetals:[385]



This mechanism (which is an SN1cA or A1 mechanism) is the reverse of that for acetal formation by reaction of an aldehyde and an alcohol (**6-6**). Among the facts supporting the mechanism are:[386] (1) The reaction proceeds with *specific* H_3O^+ catalysis (see p. 226). (2) It is faster in D_2O. (3) Optically active ROH are not racemized. (4) Even with *t*-butyl alcohol the R—O bond does not cleave, as shown by ^{18}O labeling.[387] (5) In the case of acetophenone ketals, the intermediate corresponding to **91** $[\mathrm{Ar\overset{+}{C}Me(OR)_2}]$ could be trapped with sulfite ions (SO_3^{2-}).[388] (6) Trapping of this ion did not affect the hydrolysis rate,[388] so the rate-determining step must come earlier. (7) In the case of 1,1-dialkoxyalkanes, intermediates corresponding to **91** were isolated as stable ions in super-acid solution at −75°C, where their spectra could be studied.[389] (8) Hydrolysis rates greatly increase in the order $CH_2(OR')_2 < RCH(OR')_2 < R_2C(OR')_2 < RC(OR')_3$, as would be expected for a carbocation intermediate. It has been generally accepted that formation of **91** is usually the rate-determining step (as marked above), but recent results show that at least in some cases this step is fast, and the rate-determining step is loss of R′OH from the protonated hemiacetal.[390]

While the A1 mechanism shown above operates in most acetal hydrolyses, it has been shown that at least two other mechanisms can take place with suitable substrates.[391] In one of these mechanisms the second and third of the above steps are concerted, so that the mechanism is SN2cA (or A2). This mechanism has been demonstrated for hydrolysis of 2-(*p*-methoxyphenyl)-4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3-dioxolane.[392]



---

[385] Kreevoy and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3146, 5590 (1955).

[386] For a discussion of these, and of other evidence, see Cordes, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.*, Ref. 383.

[387] Cawley and Westheimer, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 656 (1960).

[388] Young and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8238 (1977). See also Jencks, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 161–169 (1980); McClelland and Ahmad, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7027, 7031 (1978); Young, Bogseth, and Rietz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6268 (1980).

[389] See White and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2943 (1969); Akhmatdinov, Kantor, Imashev, Yasman, and Rakhmankulov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 626 (1981).

[390] Jensen and Lenz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1291 (1978); Finley, Kubler, and McClelland, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 644 (1980); Przystas and Fife, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4884 (1981).

[391] For a review, see Fife, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 264–272 (1972). For a discussion, see Wann and Kreevoy, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 419 (1981).

[392] Fife, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3228 (1967). See also Craze, Kirby, and Osborne, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 357 (1978).

In the second mechanism, the first and second steps are concerted. In the case of hydrolysis of 2-(*p*-nitrophenoxy)tetrahydropyran, *general* acid catalysis was shown,[393] demonstrating that the substrate is protonated in the rate-determining step (p. 227). Reactions in which a substrate is protonated in the rate-determining step are called A-SE2 reactions.[394] However, if protonation of the substrate were all that happens in the slow step, then the proton in the transition state would be expected to lie closer to the weaker base (p. 227). Because the substrate is a much weaker base than water, the proton should be largely transferred. Since the Brönsted coefficient was found to be 0.5, the proton was actually transferred only about halfway. This can be explained if the basicity of the substrate is increased by partial breaking of the C—O bond. The conclusion is thus drawn that steps 1 and 2 are concerted. The hydrolysis of ortho esters in most cases is also subject to general acid catalysis.[395]

A particularly convenient reagent for acetals is wet silica gel.[396] Ketals can be converted to ketones under nonaqueous conditions by treatment with Me_3SiI in CH_2Cl_2 or $CHCl_3$.[397] Both acetals and ketals can be hydrolyzed with $LiBF_4$ in wet MeCN.[398]

Although acetals, ketals, and ortho esters are easily hydrolyzed by acids, they are extremely resistant to hydrolysis by bases. An aldehyde or ketone can therefore be protected from attack by a base by conversion to the acetal or ketal (**6-6**), and then can be cleaved with acid. Thioacetals, thioketals, *gem*-diamines, and other compounds that contain any two of the groups OR, OCOR, NR_2, NHCOR, SR, and halogen on the same carbon can also be hydrolyzed to aldehydes or ketones, in most cases, by acid treatment. Thioacetals $RCH(SR'_2)$ and thioketals $R_2C(SR'_2)$ are among those compounds generally resistant to acid hydrolysis. Because conversion to these compounds (**6-11**) serves as an important method for protection of aldehydes and ketones, many methods have been devised to cleave them to the parent carbonyl compounds. Among reagents[399] used for this purpose are $HgCl_2$,[400] $HgO–BF_3$,[401] $H_2O_2–HCl$,[402] *t*-BuBr–Me_2SO,[403] $PbO_2–BF_3$–etherate,[404] Me_2SO–HCl–dioxane,[405] and benzeneseleninic anhydride $(PhSeO)_2O$.[406]

Enol ethers are readily hydrolyzed by acids; the rate-determining step is protonation of the substrate. However, protonation does not take place at the oxygen but at the β-carbon,[407] because that gives rise to the stable carbocation **92.**[408] After that the mechanism is similar to the A1 mechanism given above for the hydrolysis of acetals.

---

[393] Fife and Jao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4081 (1968); Fife and Brod, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1681 (1970). For other examples, see Kankaanperä and Lahti, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **23,** 2465 (1969); Anderson and Capon, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1033 (1969); Anderson and Fife, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1701 (1971); Mori and Schaleger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5039 (1972); Capon and Nimmo, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1113 (1975); Eliason and Kreevoy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7037 (1978); Jensen, Herold, Lenz, Trusty, Sergi, Bell, and Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4672 (1979).

[394] For a review of A-SE2 reactions, see Williams and Kreevoy, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 63–101 (1968).

[395] See Bergstrom, Cashen, Chiang, and Kresge, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1639 (1979); Ahmad, Bergstrom, Cashen, Chiang, Kresge, McClelland, and Powell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2669 (1979); Burt, Chiang, Kresge, and McKinney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3685 (1982). Chiang, Kresge, Lahti, and Weeks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6852 (1983); Santry and McClelland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6138 (1983).

[396] Huet, Lechevallier, Pellet, and Conia, *Synthesis* 63 (1978).

[397] Jung, Andrus, and Ornstein, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4175 (1977). See also Morita, Okamoto, and Sakurai, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 267 (1981). Balme and Goré, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3336 (1983).

[398] Lipshutz and Harvey, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 267 (1982).

[399] For references to other reagents, see Gröbel and Seebach, *Synthesis* 357–402 (1977), pp. 359–367; Cussans, Ley, and Barton, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1654 (1980).

[400] Corey and Erickson, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3553 (1971).

[401] Vedejs and Fuchs, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 366 (1971).

[402] Olah, Narang, and Salem, *Synthesis* 657, 659 (1980).

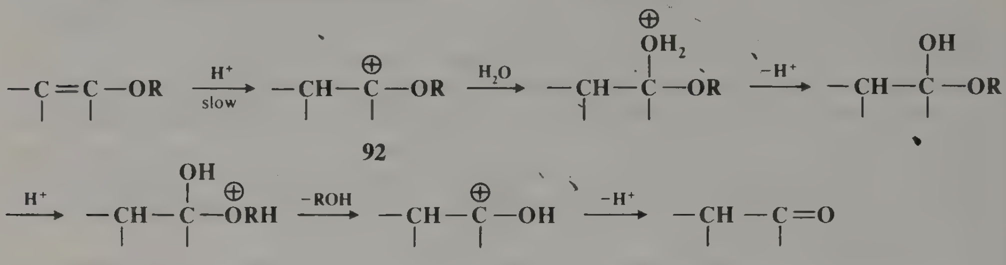
[403] Olah, Mehrotra, and Narang, *Synthesis* 151 (1982).

[404] Ghiringhelli, *Synthesis* 580 (1982).

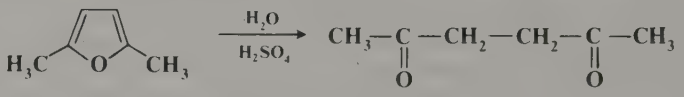
[405] Prato, Quintily, Scorrano, and Sturaro, *Synthesis* 679 (1982).

[406] Cussans, Ley, and Barton, Ref. 399.

[407] Jones and Wood, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5400 (1964); Okuyama, Fueno, Nakatsuji, and Furukawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5826 (1967); Okuyama, Fueno, and Furukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 3256 (1970); Kreevoy and Eliason, *J. Phys. Chem.* **72,** 1313 (1969); Lienhard and Wang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1146 (1969); Kresge and Chen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2818 (1972); Burt, Chiang, Kresge, and Szilagyi, *Can. J. Chem.* **62,** 74 (1984).



Among the facts supporting this mechanism (which is an A-SE2 mechanism because the substrate is protonated in the rate-determining step) are: (1) ^{18}O labeling shows that in $ROCH{=}CH_2$ it is the vinyl–oxygen bond and not the RO bond that cleaves;[409] (2) the reaction is subject to general acid catalysis;[410] (3) there is a solvent isotope effect when D_2O is used.[410] Enamines are also hydrolyzed by acids (see **6-2**); the mechanism is similar. Furans represent a special case of vinyl ethers that are cleaved by acid to give 1,4 diones. Thus

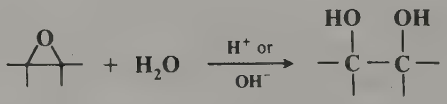


Oxonium ions are cleaved by water to give an alcohol and an ether:

$$R_3O^+\ BF_4^- + H_2O \longrightarrow R_2O + ROH + HBF_4$$

OS **I,** 67, 205; **II,** 302, 305, 323; **III,** 37, 127, 465, 470, 536, 541, 564, 641, 701, 731, 800; **IV,** 302, 499, 660, 816, 903; **V,** 91, 292, 294, 703, 716, 937, 967, 1088; **51,** 11, 24, 39, 76; **53,** 44, 48; **54,** 19, 42; **56,** 8; **57,** 41, 83, 107; **60,** 6, 49, 72; **61,** 59, 65.

0-8 Hydrolysis of Epoxides



The hydrolysis of epoxides is a convenient method for the preparation of *vic*-glycols. The reaction is catalyzed by acids or bases (see discussion of the mechanism on p. 326). Among acid catalysts the reagent of choice is perchloric acid, since side reactions are minimized with this reagent.[411] Dimethyl sulfoxide is a superior solvent for the alkaline hydrolysis of epoxides.[412]

OS **V,** 414.

---

[408] See Chwang, Kresge, and Wiseman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6972 (1979).

[409] Kiprianova and Rekasheva, *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR* **142,** 589 (1962).

[410] Fife, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1084 (1965); Salomaa, Kankaanperä, and Lajunen, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **20,** 1790 (1966); Kresge and Chiang, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 53, 58 (1967).

[411] Fieser and Fieser, "Reagents for Organic Synthesis," vol. 1, p. 796, Wiley, New York, 1967.

[412] Berti, Macchia, and Macchia, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3421 (1965).

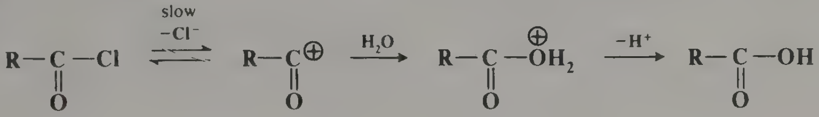
B. Attack by OH at an Acyl Carbon

0-9 Hydrolysis of Acyl Halides
Hydroxy-de-halogenation

$$RCOCl + H_2O \longrightarrow RCOOH$$

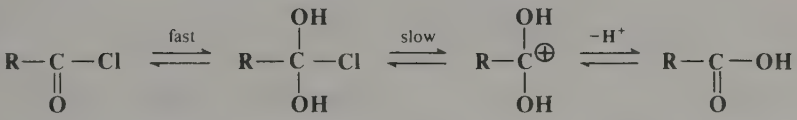
Acyl halides are so reactive that hydrolysis is easily carried out. In fact, most simple acyl halides must be stored under anhydrous conditions lest they react with water in the air. Consequently, water is usually a strong enough nucleophile for the reaction, though in difficult cases hydroxide ion may be required. The reaction is seldom synthetically useful, because acyl halides are normally prepared from acids. The reactivity order is $F < Cl < Br < I$.[413] If a carboxylic acid is used as the nucleophile, an exchange may take place (see **0-75**). The mechanism[413] of hydrolysis may be either S_N1 or tetrahedral, the former occurring in highly polar solvents and in the absence of strong nucleophiles.[414] There are two possible paths for the S_N1 mechanism:

Path 1



$$R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-Cl \overset{\text{slow}}{\xrightleftharpoons{-Cl^-}} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}^{\oplus} \xrightarrow{H_2O} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{\oplus}{O}H_2 \xrightarrow{-H^+} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH$$

Path 2



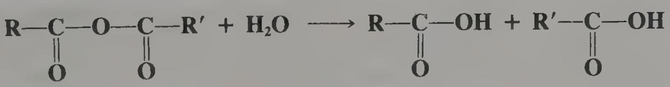
$$R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-Cl \overset{\text{fast}}{\rightleftharpoons} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}-Cl \overset{\text{slow}}{\rightleftharpoons} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}{}^{\oplus} \overset{-H^+}{\rightleftharpoons} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH$$

It is not easy to distinguish path 2 (which involves preliminary hydration) from path 1, but most evidence favors path 2.[415]

Hydrolysis of acyl halides is not usually catalyzed by acids, except for acyl fluorides, where hydrogen bonding can assist in the removal of F.[416]

OS **II**, 74.

0-10 Hydrolysis of Anhydrides
Hydroxy-de-acyloxy-substitution



$$R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-O-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-R' + H_2O \longrightarrow R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH + R'-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-OH$$

Anhydrides are somewhat more difficult to hydrolyze than acyl halides, but here too water is usually a strong enough nucleophile. The mechanism is usually tetrahedral. Only under acid catalysis does the S_N1 mechanism occur and seldom even then.[417] Anhydride hydrolysis can also be catalyzed by bases. Of course, OH^- attacks more readily than water, but other bases can also catalyze the reaction. This phenomenon, called *nucleophilic catalysis* (p. 294), is actually the result of *two* successive tetrahedral mechanisms. For example, pyridine catalyzes the hydrolysis of acetic anhydride in this manner:[418]

---

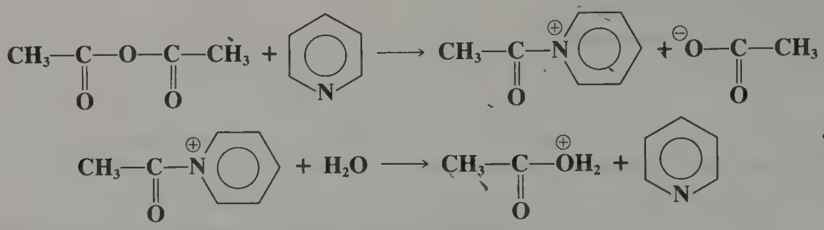
[413] For a review, see Talbot, Ref. 180, pp. 226–257. For a review of the mechanisms of reactions of acyl halides with water, alcohols, and amines, see Kivinen, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Acyl Halides," pp. 177–230, Interscience, New York, 1972.

[414] Bender and Chen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85**, 30 (1963).

[415] Hudson and Moss, *J. Chem. Soc.*, 5157 (1962).

[416] Bevan and Hudson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2187 (1953); Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc.* 555 (1963).

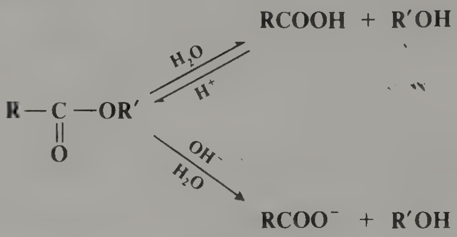
[417] Satchell, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17**, 160–203 (1963), pp. 172–173. For a review of the mechanism, see Talbot, Ref. 180, pp. 280–287.



Many other nucleophiles similarly catalyze the reaction.

OS **I,** 408; **II,** 140, 368, 382; **IV,** 766; **V,** 8, 813.

0-11 Hydrolysis of Esters
Hydroxy-de-alkoxylation



Ester hydrolysis is usually catalyzed by acids or bases. Since OR is a much poorer leaving group than halide or OCOR, water alone does not hydrolyze most esters. When bases catalyze the reaction, the attacking species is the more powerful nucleophile OH^-. This reaction is called *saponification* and gives the salt of the acid. Acids catalyze the reaction by making the carbonyl carbon more positive and therefore more susceptible to attack by the nucleophile. Both reactions are equilibrium reactions, so that they are practicable only when there is a way of shifting the equilibrium to the right. Since formation of the salt does just this, ester hydrolysis is almost always done for preparative purposes in basic solution, unless the compound is base-sensitive. Ester hydrolysis may also be catalyzed by metal ions, by enzymes, and by nucleophiles (see **0-10**).[180] Methanesulfonic acid is also a good catalyst,[419] as are Me_3SiI[420] and $MeSiCl_3$–NaI.[421] Phenolic esters may be similarly cleaved; in fact the reaction is usually faster for these compounds. Lactones also undergo the reaction[422] (though if the lactone is five- or six-membered, the hydroxy acid often spontaneously relactonizes) and thiol esters (RCOSR′) give mercaptans R′SH. Sterically hindered esters are hydrolyzed with difficulty (p. 299), though this can be accomplished at room temperature with "anhydrous hydroxide," generated via the reaction of 2 moles of *t*-BuOK with 1 mole of water.[423] Hindered esters can also be cleaved with *n*-propyllithium.[424] For esters insoluble in water the rate of two-phase ester saponification can be greatly increased by the application of ultrasound.[425] Phase-transfer techniques have also been applied.[426]

---

[418] Butler and Gold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4362 (1961); Fersht and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5432, 5442 (1970); Deady and Finlayson, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 1951 (1983).

[419] Loev, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 193 (1964).

[420] Ho and Olah, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 774 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 847]; Jung and Lyster, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 968 (1977). For a review of this reagent, see Olah and Narang, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2225–2277 (1982).

[421] Olah, Husain, Singh, and Mehrotra, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3667 (1983).

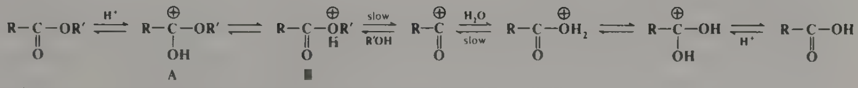
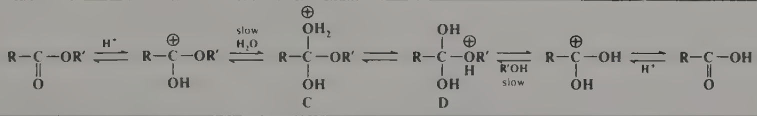
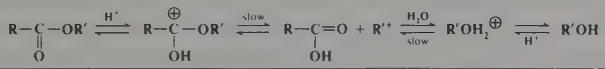
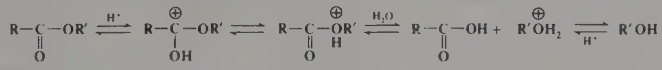
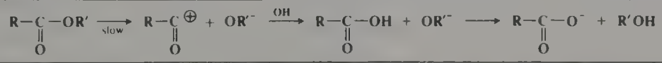
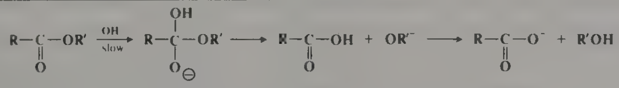
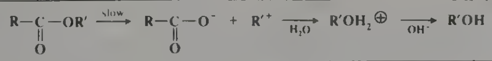
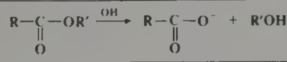
[422] For a reivew of the mechanisms of lactone hydrolysis, see Kaiser and Kézdy, *Prog. Bioorg. Chem.* **4,** 239–267 (1976), pp. 254–265.

[423] Gassman and Schenk, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 918 (1977).

[424] Lion, Dubois, MacPhee, and Bonzougou, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 2077 (1979).

Ingold[427] has classified the acid- and base-catalyzed hydrolyses of esters (and the formation of esters, since these are reversible reactions and thus have the same mechanisms) into eight possible mechanisms (Table 14), depending on the following criteria: (1) acid- or base-catalyzed, (2) unimolecular or bimolecular, and (3) acyl cleavage or alkyl cleavage.[428] All eight of these are SN1, SN2, or tetrahedral mechanisms. The acid-catalyzed mechanisms are shown with reversible arrows. They are not only reversible but symmetrical; that is, the mechanisms for ester formation are exactly the same as for hydrolysis, except that H replaces R. Internal proton transfers, such as shown for **A** and **B** and for **C** and **D**, may not actually be direct but may take place through the solvent. There is much physical evidence to show that esters are initially protonated on the carbonyl and not on the alkyl oxygen (Chapter 8, Ref. 16). We have nevertheless shown the AAC1 mechanism as proceeding through the ether-protonated intermediate **A**, since it is difficult to envision OR′ as a leaving group here. It is of course possible for a reaction to proceed through an intermediate even if only a tiny concentration is present. The designations AAC1, etc., are those of Ingold. The AAC2 and AAC1 mechanisms are also called A2 and A1, respectively. It may be noted that the AAC1 mechanism is actually the same as the SN1cA mechanism for this type of substrate and that AAL2 is analogous to SN2cA. Some authors use A1 and A2 to refer to all types of nucleophilic substitution in which the leaving group first acquires a proton. The base-catalyzed reactions are

TABLE 14 Classification of the eight mechanisms for ester hydrolysis and formation[427]

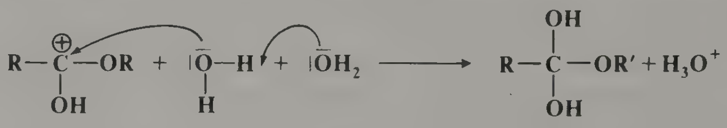
		Name	Type	
Acid catalysis	Acyl cleavage	AAC1	SN1	
		AAC2	Tetrahedral	
	Alkyl cleavage	AAL1	SN1	
		AAL2	SN2	
Basic catalysis	Acyl cleavage	BAC1	SN1	
		BAC2	Tetrahedral	
	Alkyl cleavage	BAL1	SN1	
		BAL2	SN2	

---

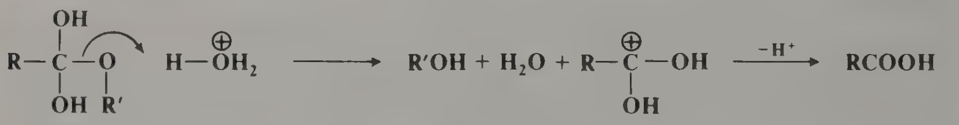
[425] Moon, Duchin, and Cooney, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3917 (1979).
[426] Dehmlow and Naranjo, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 238 (1979).
[427] Ingold, Ref. 322, pp. 1129–1131.
[428] For reviews of the mechanisms of ester hydrolysis and formation, see Kirby, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 163, vol. 10, pp. 57–207, 1972; Euranto, in Patai, Ref. 180, pp. 505–588.

not shown with reversible arrows, since they are reversible only in theory and not in practice. Hydrolyses taking place under neutral conditions are classified as B mechanisms.

Of the eight mechanisms, only six have actually been observed in hydrolysis of carboxylic esters. The two that have not been observed are the BAC1 and the AAL2 mechanisms. The BAC1 is an SN1 mechanism with OR′ as the leaving group, which does not happen, while the AAL2 requires water to be a nucleophile in an SN2 process.[429] The most common mechanisms are the BAC2 for basic catalysis and the AAC2[430] for acid catalysis, that is, the two tetrahedral mechanisms. Both of these involve acyl–oxygen cleavage. The evidence for this is: (1) hydrolysis with $H_2{}^{18}O$ results in the ^{18}O appearing in the acid and not in the alcohol;[431] (2) esters with chiral R′ groups give alcohols with *retention* of configuration;[432] (3) allylic R′ gives no allylic rearrangement;[433] (4) neopentyl R′ gives no rearrangement;[434] all these facts indicate that the O—R′ bond is not broken. It has been concluded that two molecules of water are required in the AAC2 mechanism.



If this is so, the protonated derivatives **C** and **D** would not appear at all. This conclusion stems from a value of *w* (see p. 225) of about 5, indicating that water acts as a proton donor here as well as a nucleophile.[435] Termolecular processes are rare, but in this case the two water molecules are already connected by a hydrogen bond. To maintain the symmetry of the process, the reaction would then continue as follows:



The other mechanism involving acyl cleavage is the AAC1 mechanism. This is rare, being found only where R is very bulky, so that bimolecular attack is sterically hindered, and only in ionizing solvents. The mechanism has been demonstrated for esters of 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoic acid (mesitoic acid). This acid depresses the freezing point of sulfuric acid four times as much as would be predicted from its molecular weight, which is evidence for the equilibrium

$$\mathrm{ArCOOH + 2H_2SO_4 \rightleftharpoons ArCO^{\oplus} + H_3O^+ + 2HSO_4^-}$$

In a comparable solution of benzoic acid the freezing point is depressed only twice the predicted amount, indicating only a normal acid–base reaction. Further, a sulfuric acid solution of methyl mesitoate when poured into water gave mesitoic acid, while a similar solution of methyl benzoate similarly treated did not.[436] The AAC1 mechanism is also found when acetates of phenols or of primary alcohols are hydrolyzed in concentrated (more than 90%) H_2SO_4 (the mechanism under the more usual dilute acid conditions is the normal AAC2).[437]

---

[429] There is evidence that the AAL2 mechanism can take place in the hydrolysis of imino esters RC(OR′)=NR″: McClelland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97**, 3177 (1975).

[430] For a discussion of this mechanism with specific attention to the proton transfers involved, see Zimmermann and Rudolph, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4**, 40–49 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77**, 65–74].

[431] For one of several examples, see Polanyi and Szabo, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **30**, 508 (1934).

[432] Holmberg, *Ber.* **45**, 2997 (1912).

[433] Ingold and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 758 (1932).

[434] Norton and Quayle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **62**, 1170 (1940).

[435] Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84**, 4130 (1962). See also Lane, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86**, 2521 (1964); Lane, Cheung, and Dorsey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 6492 (1968); Yates and McClelland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 2686 (1967); Yates, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6**, 136–144 (1971); Huskey, Warren, and Hogg, *J. Org. Chem.* **46**, 59 (1981).

The mechanisms involving alkyl–oxygen cleavage[438] are ordinary SN1 and SN2 mechanisms in which OCOR (an acyloxy group) or its conjugate acid is the leaving group. Two of the three mechanisms, the BAL1 and AAL1 mechanisms, occur most readily when R′ comes off as a stable carbocation, that is, when R′ is tertiary alkyl, allyl, benzyl, etc. For acid catalysis, most esters with this type of alkyl group (especially tertiary alkyl) cleave by this mechanism, but even for these substrates, the BAL1 mechanism occurs only in neutral or weakly basic solution, where the rate of attack by OH^- is so slowed that the normally slow (by comparison) unimolecular cleavage takes over. These two mechanisms have been established by kinetic studies, ^{18}O labeling, and isomerization of R′.[439] Secondary and benzylic acetates hydrolyze by the AAC2 mechanism in dilute H_2SO_4, but in concentrated acid the mechanism changes to AAL1.[437] Despite its designation, the BAL1 mechanism is actually uncatalyzed (as is the unknown BAC1 mechanism).

The remaining mechanism, BAL2, is very rare, because it requires OH^- to attack an alkyl carbon when an acyl carbon is also available. It has been observed, however, in the hydrolysis of β-lactones under neutral conditions[440] (because cleavage of the C—O bond in the transition state opens the four-membered ring and relieves strain), the alkaline hydrolysis of methyl 2,4,6-tri-*t*-butyl benzoate,[441] and in the unusual reaction[442]

$$\mathbf{ArCOOMe + RO^- \longrightarrow ArCOO^- + ROMe}$$

When it does occur, the BAL2 mechanism is easy to detect, since it is the only one of the six observed mechanisms that requires inversion at R′. However, in the last example given, the mechanism is evident from the nature of the product, since the ether could have been formed in no other way.

To sum up the acid-catalysis mechanisms, AAC2 and AAL1 are the common mechanisms, the latter for R′ that give stable carbocations, the former for practically all the rest. AAC1 is rare, being found mostly with strong acids and sterically hindered R. AAL2 has not been observed. For basic catalysis, BAC2 is almost universal; BAL1 occurs only with R′ that give stable carbocations and then only in weakly basic or neutral solutions; BAL2 is very rare; and BAC1 has never been observed.

The above results pertain to reactions in solution. In the gas phase[443] reactions can take a different course, as illustrated by the reaction of carboxylic esters with MeO^-, which in the gas phase was shown to take place only by the BAL2 mechanism,[444] even with aryl esters,[445] where this means that an SN2 mechanism takes place at an aryl substrate. However, when the gas-phase reaction of aryl esters was carried out with MeO^- ions, each of which was solvated with a single molecule of MeOH or H_2O, the BAC2 mechanism was observed.[445]

---

[436] Treffers and Hammett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **59,** 1708 (1937). For other evidence for this mechanism, see Bender and Chen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 37 (1963).

[437] Yates, Ref. 435.

[438] For a review of these, see Davies and Kenyon, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **9,** 203–228 (1955).

[439] For discussions, see Kirby, Ref. 428, pp. 86–101; Ingold, Ref. 322, pp. 1137–1142, 1157–1163.

[440] Cowdrey, Hughes, Ingold, Masterman, and Scott, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1264 (1937); Long and Purchase, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 3267 (1950).

[441] Barclay, Hall, and Cooke, *Can. J. Chem.* **40,** 1981 (1962).

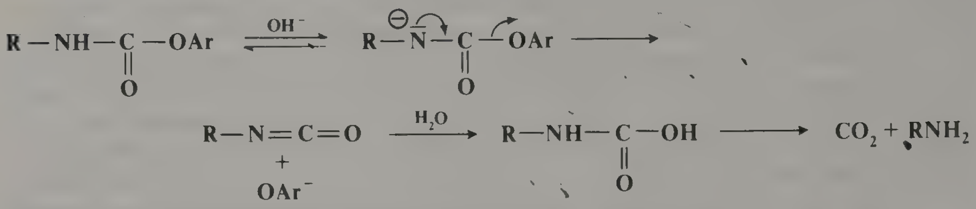
[442] Sneen and Rosenberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2099 (1961). See also Müller and Siegfried, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 987 (1974).

[443] Takashima, José, do Amaral, and Riveros, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1255 (1983).

[444] Comisarow, *Can. J. Chem.* **55,** 171 (1977).

[445] Fukuda and McIver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2498 (1979).

In the special case of alkaline hydrolysis of N-substituted aryl carbamates, there is another mechanism[446] involving elimination–addition:[447]



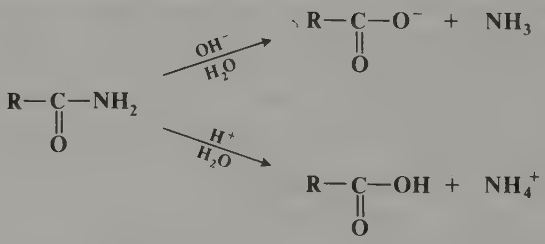
$$\mathrm{R{-}NH{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OAr} \xrightleftharpoons{OH^-} \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\ominus}{N}{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OAr} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}O} + \mathrm{OAr^-} \xrightarrow{H_2O} \mathrm{R{-}NH{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2 + RNH_2}$$

This mechanism does not apply to unsubstituted or N,N-disubstituted aryl carbamates, which hydrolyze by the normal mechanisms. Carboxylic esters substituted in the α-position by an electron-withdrawing group (e.g., CN or COOEt) can also hydrolyze by a similar mechanism involving a ketene intermediate.[448] These elimination–addition mechanisms usually are referred to as E1cB mechanisms, because that is the name given to the elimination portion of the mechanism (p. 882).

The acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of enol esters $RCOOCR'{=}CR''_2$ can take place either by the normal AAC2 mechanism or by a mechanism involving initial protonation on the double-bond carbon, similar to the mechanism for the hydrolysis of vinyl ethers given in **0-7,** depending on reaction conditions.[449] In either case, the products are the carboxylic acid RCOOH and the aldehyde or ketone R''_2CHOR'.

OS **I,** 351, 360, 366, 379, 391, 418, 523; **II,** 1, 5, 53, 93, 194, 214, 258, 299, 416, 422, 474, 531, 549; **III,** 3, 33, 101, 209, 213, 234, 267, 272, 281, 300, 495, 510, 526, 531, 615, 637, 652, 705, 737, 774, 785, 809 (but see OS **V,** 1050), 833, 835; **IV,** 15, 55, 169, 317, 417, 444, 532, 549, 555, 582, 590, 608, 616, 628, 630, 633, 635, 804; **V,** 8, 445, 509, 687, 762, 887, 985, 1031; **50,** 94; **51,** 139; **52,** 39; **53,** 13; **55,** 67; **56,** 112; **57,** 113; **60,** 66; **61,** 56, 77. Ester hydrolyses with concomitant decarboxylation are listed at reaction **2-39.**

0-12 Hydrolysis of Amides
Hydroxy-de-amination



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2} \xrightarrow[H_2O]{OH^-} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O^-} + \mathrm{NH_3}$$

$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2} \xrightarrow[H_2O]{H^+} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH} + \mathrm{NH_4^+}$$

---

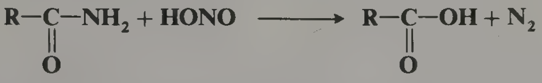
[446] For a review of elimination–addition mechanisms at a carbonyl carbon, see Williams and Douglas, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 627–649 (1975).

[447] Bender and Homer, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3975 (1965); Vontor, Socha, and Večeřa, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **37,** 2183 (1972); Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 808 (1972), 1244 (1973); Hegarty and Frost, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1719 (1973); Menger and Glass, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2469 (1974); Sartoré, Bergon, and Calmon, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 650 (1977); Moravcová and Večeřa, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **42,** 3048 (1977).

[448] Casanova, Werner, and Kiefer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2411 (1967); Holmquist and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2993, 3003 (1969); Campbell and Lawrie, *Chem. Commun.* 355 (1971); Kirby and Lloyd, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1762 (1976); Broxton and Duddy, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1186 (1981); Inoue and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1644 (1982); *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3559 (1983); Alborz and Douglas, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 331 (1982).

[449] See, for example, Noyce and Pollack, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 119, 7158 (1969). For a discussion, see Euranto, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 1009–1020 (1977).

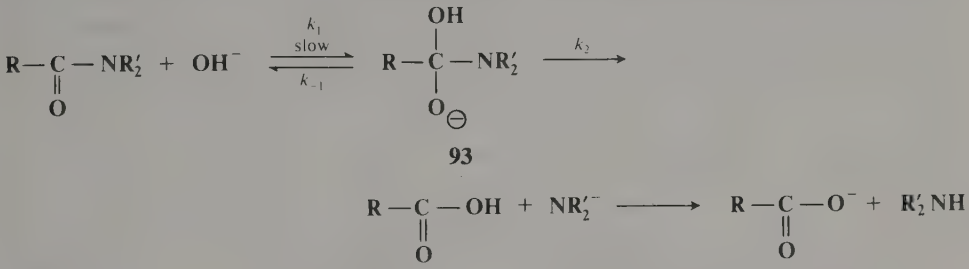
Unsubstituted amides ($RCONH_2$) can be hydrolyzed with either acidic or basic catalysis, the products being, respectively, the free acid and the ammonium ion or the salt of the acid and ammonia. N-Substituted ($RCONHR'$) and N,N-disubstituted ($RCONR'_2$) amides can be hydrolyzed analogously, with the primary or secondary amine, respectively (or their salts), being obtained instead of ammonia. Lactams, imides, cyclic imides, hydrazides, etc., also undergo the reaction. Water alone is not sufficient to hydrolyze most amides, since NH_2 is even a poorer leaving group than OR. Prolonged heating is often required, even with acid or basic catalysts. In difficult cases, nitrous acid can be used (unsubstituted amides only[450]) in a reaction similar to **0-5:**



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NH_2 + HONO \longrightarrow R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-OH + N_2$$

In contrast to **0-5,** side reactions are not a problem here, and this reaction is much faster than ordinary hydrolysis; for benzamide the nitrous acid reaction took place 2.5 × 10^7 times faster than ordinary hydrolysis.[451] Another procedure for difficult cases involves treatment with aqueous sodium peroxide.[452] In still another method, the amide is treated with water and *t*-BuOK at room temperature.[453] The strong base removes the proton from **93,** thus preventing the reaction marked k_{-1}. Imidazolides (**98,** p. 350) are particularly easy to hydrolyze[454] and are often used in synthesis. Amide hydrolysis can also be catalyzed by nucleophiles (see p. 294).

The same framework of eight possible mechanisms that was discussed for ester hydrolysis can also be applied to amide hydrolysis.[455] Both the acid- and base-catalyzed hydrolyses are essentially irreversible, since salts are formed in both cases. For basic catalysis[456] the mechanism is BAC2.



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NR'_2 + OH^- \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1 \atop \text{slow}}{\rightleftharpoons}} R-\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{O^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}-NR'_2 \xrightarrow{k_2}$$

93

$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-OH + NR_2'^{-} \longrightarrow R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-O^- + R'_2NH$$

There is much evidence for this mechanism, similar to that discussed for ester hydrolysis. In certain cases, kinetic studies have shown that the reaction is second order in OH^-, indicating that **93** can lose a proton to give **94.**[457] Depending on the nature of R′, **94** can cleave directly to give the two negative ions (path *a*) or become N-protonated prior to or during the act of cleavage (path *b*), in which case the products are obtained directly and a final proton transfer is not necessary.[458] Studies

---

[450] N-Substituted amides can be converted to N-nitrosoamides, which are more easily hydrolyzable than the original amide. For example, see Rull, Serratosa, and Vilarrasa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4549 (1977); *An. Quim. Ser. C.* **76,** 226 (1980). For another method of hydrolyzing N-substituted amides, see Flynn, Zelle, and Grieco, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2424 (1983).

[451] Ladenheim and Bender, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1895 (1960).

[452] Vaughan and Robbins, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1187 (1975).

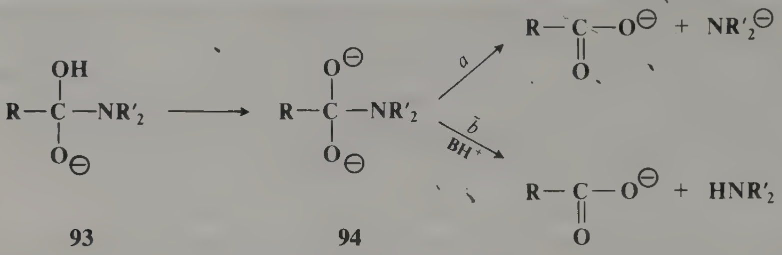
[453] Gassman, Hodgson, and Balchunis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1275 (1976).

[454] For reviews, see Staab, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 351–367 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 407–423]; Staab and Rohr, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **5,** 61–108 (1968).

[455] For reviews, see O'Connor, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **24,** 553–564 (1970); Talbot, Ref. 180, pp. 257–280; Challis and Challis, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Amides," pp. 731–857, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[456] For a comprehensive list of references, see DeWolfe and Newcomb, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3870 (1971).

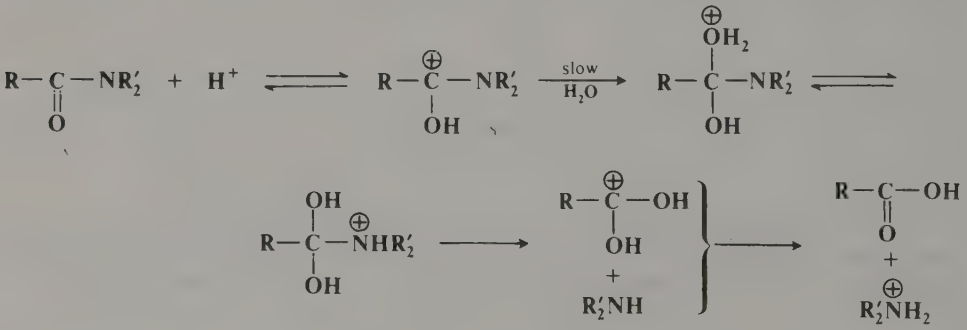
[457] Biechler and Taft, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 4927 (1957). For evidence that a similar intermediate can arise in base-catalyzed ester hydrolysis, see Khan and Olagbemiro, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3695 (1982).



93 **94**

of the effect, on the rate of hydrolysis and on the ratio k_{-1}/k_2, of substituents on the aromatic rings in a series of amides $CH_3CONHAr$ led to the conclusion that path *a* is taken when Ar contains electron-withdrawing substituents and path *b* when electron-donating groups are present.[459] The presence of electron-withdrawing groups helps stabilize the negative charge on the nitrogen, so that $NR_2'^-$ can be a leaving group (path *a*). Otherwise, the C—N bond does not cleave until the nitrogen is protonated (either prior to or in the act of cleavage), so that the leaving group, *even in the base-catalyzed reaction,* is not $NR_2'^-$ but the conjugate NHR_2' (path *b*). Though we have shown formation of **93** as the rate-determining step in the BAC2 mechanism, this is true only at high base concentrations. At lower concentrations of base, the cleavage of **93** or **94** becomes rate-determining.[460]

For acid catalysis, matters are less clear. The reaction is generally second order, and it is known that amides are primarily protonated on the oxygen (Chapter 8, Ref. 16). Because of these facts it has been generally agreed that most acid-catalyzed amide hydrolysis takes place by the AAC2 mechanism.



Further evidence for this mechanism is that a small but detectable amount of ^{18}O exchange (see p. 292) has been found in the acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of benzamide.[461] (^{18}O exchange has also been detected for the base-catalyzed process,[462] in accord with the BAC2 mechanism.) However, on the basis of certain kinetic results, it has been suggested[463] that acid-catalyzed amide hydrolysis in at least some cases takes place partially or exclusively on the small amount of N-protonated amide.[464] Kinetic data have shown that three molecules of water are involved in the rate-determining step,[465] suggesting that, as in the AAC2 mechanism for ester hydrolysis (**0-11**), additional water molecules take part in a process such as

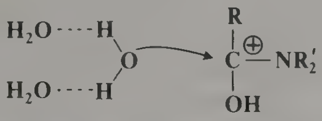
---

[458] Eriksson and Holst, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **20,** 1892 (1966); Eriksson and Bratt, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **21,** 1812 (1967); Eriksson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **22,** 892 (1968); *Acta Pharm. Suec.* **6,** 139–162 (1969).

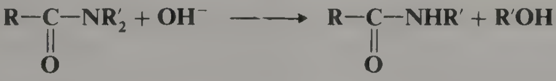
[459] Bender and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4183 (1961); Pollack and Bender, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7190 (1970); Kershner and Schowen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2014 (1971); Schowen, Hopper, and Bazikian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3095 (1972). See also Ref. 456; Gani and Viout, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5241 (1972); Menger and Donohue, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 432 (1973); Hopper, Schowen, Venkatasubban, and Jayaraman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3280 (1973); Pollack and Dumsha, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4463 (1973).

[460] Schowen, Jayaraman, and Kershner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3373 (1966). See also Gani and Viout, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 1669, 2883 (1976).

[461] McClelland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5281 (1975).



The four mechanisms involving alkyl—N cleavage (the AL mechanisms) do not apply to this reaction. They are not possible for unsubstituted amides, since the only N—C bond is the acyl bond. They are possible for N-substituted and N,N-disubstituted amides, but in these cases they give entirely different products and are not amide hydrolyses at all.

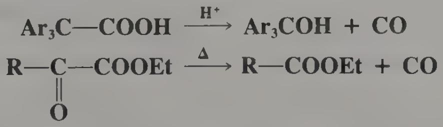


$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NR'_2 + OH^- \longrightarrow R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NHR' + R'OH$$

This reaction, while rare, has been observed for various N-*t*-butyl amides in 98% sulfuric acid, where the mechanism was the AAL1 mechanism,[466] and for certain amides containing an azo group, where a BAL1 mechanism was postulated.[467] Of the two first-order acyl cleavage mechanisms, only the AAC1 has been observed, in concentrated sulfuric acid solutions.[468] Of course, the diazotization of unsubstituted amides might be expected to follow this mechanism, and there is evidence that this is true.[451]

OS **I,** 14; 111, 194, 201, 286; **II,** 19, 25, 28, 49, 76, 208, 330, 374, 384, 457, 462, 491, 503, 519, 612; **III,** 66, 88, 154, 256, 410, 456, 586, 591, 661, 735, 768, 813; **IV,** 39, 42, 55, 58, 420, 441, 496, 664; **V,** 27, 96, 341, 471, 612, 627; **51,** 53; **55,** 114; **56,** 95; **58,** 5; **59,** 159; **60,** 72.

0-13 Decarbonylation of Acids and Esters



$$Ar_3C-COOH \xrightarrow{H^+} Ar_3COH + CO$$

$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-COOEt \xrightarrow{\Delta} R-COOEt + CO$$

Decarbonylations of esters and acids are not general reactions. Only certain acids can be decarbonylated in this manner: formic, oxalic, triarylacetic, α-hydroxy, and α-keto acids. Most but not all α-keto esters can be decarbonylated simply by heating. The mechanisms are little known.[469]

---

[462] Bender and Thomas, Ref. 459, Bunton, Nayak, and O'Connor, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 572 (1968); Ref. 461.

[463] Bunton, O'Connor, and Turney, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1835 (1967); Challis and Jones, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 748 (1974); *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 153 (1975); Giffney and O'Connor, *Aust. J. Chem.* **29,** 307 (1976).

[464] For evidence against this view, see Hall and Satchell, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 527 (1974); Kresge, Fitzgerald, and Chiang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4698 (1974); Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5645 (1976); Modro, Yates, and Beaufays, *Can. J. Chem.* **55,** 3050 (1977).

[465] Moodie, Wale, and Whaite, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4273 (1963); Yates and Stevens, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 529 (1965); Yates and Riordan, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 2328 (1965).

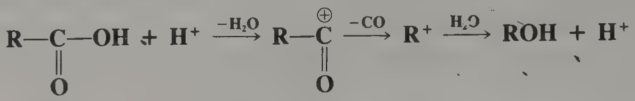
[466] Lacey, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1633 (1960).

[467] Stodola, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 178 (1972).

[468] Duffy and Leisten, *J. Chem. Soc.* 545, 853 (1960); Barnett and O'Connor, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 525 (1972), *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 2378 (1972).

[469] See, for example, Louw and Kooyman, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **86,** 1041 (1967).

The reactions are included in this chapter because this mechanism has been demonstrated at least in some cases.[470]



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH} + \mathrm{H^+} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}}} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{CO}} \mathrm{R^+} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{ROH} + \mathrm{H^+}$$

This is an SN1 mechanism. The cleavage of the acyl cation is analogous to the cleavage of the diazonium ion RN_2^+.

OS **II,** 279, 288, 531; **IV,** 141. See also OS **I,** 10.

The oxidation of aldehydes to carboxylic acids can proceed by a nucleophilic mechanism, but more often it does not. The reaction is considered in Chapter 14 (**4-6**). Basic cleavage of β-keto esters and the haloform reaction could be considered at this point, but they are also electrophilic substitutions and are treated in Chapter 12 (**2-42** and **2-43**).

C. Attack by OR at an Alkyl Carbon

0-14 Alkylation with Alkyl Halides. The Williamson Reaction
Alkoxy-de-halogenation

$$\mathrm{RX + OR'^- \longrightarrow ROR'}$$

The *Williamson reaction,* discovered in 1850, is still the best general method for the preparation of unsymmetrical ethers or, for that matter, symmetrical ones.[471] The reaction can also be carried out with aromatic R′, though C-alkylation is sometimes a side reaction (see p. 324). The normal method involves treatment of the halide with alkoxide or aroxide ion prepared from an alcohol or phenol, but it is also possible to mix the halide and alcohol or phenol directly with solid KOH in Me_2SO[472] or with HgO and HBF_4 in CH_2Cl_2.[473] The reaction is not successful for tertiary R (because of elimination), and low yields are obtained with secondary R. Many other functional groups may be present in the molecule without interference. Ethers with one tertiary group *can* be prepared by treatment of an alkyl halide or sulfate ester (**0-16**) with a tertiary alkoxide $R'O^-$, which is prepared by removal of a proton from a tertiary alcohol with methylsulfinyl carbanion[474] or with a copper(**I**) tertiary alkoxide.[475] Di-*t*-butyl ether was prepared in high yield by direct attack by *t*-BuOH on the *t*-butyl cation (at −80°C in SO_2ClF).[476] Di-*t*-alkyl ethers, in general, have proved difficult to make, but they can be prepared in low-to-moderate yields by treatment of a tertiary halide with Ag_2CO_3 or Ag_2O.[477] Active halides such as Ar_3CX may react directly with the alcohol without the need for the more powerful nucleophile alkoxide ion.[478] Even tertiary halides have been converted to ethers in this way, with no elimination.[479] The mechanism in these cases is of course SN1. *t*-Butyl halides can be converted to aryl *t*-butyl ethers by treatment with phenols and an amine such as pyridine.[480]

---

[470] Ropp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 842 (1960); Margolin and Samuel, *Chem. Commun.* 802 (1970). For a review, see Liler, "Reaction Mechanisms in Sulphuric Acid," pp. 254–259, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[471] For a review, see Feuer and Hooz, in Patai, Ref. 286, pp. 446–450, 460–468.

[472] Benedict, Bianchi, and Cate, *Synthesis* 428 (1979); Johnstone and Rose, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 2169 (1979).

[473] Barluenga, Alonso-Cires, Campos, and Asensio, *Synthesis* 53 (1983).

[474] Sjöberg and Sjöberg, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **26,** 275 (1972).

[475] Whitesides, Sadowski, and Lilburn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2829 (1974).

[476] Olah, Halpern, and Lin, *Synthesis* 315 (1975). For another synthesis of di-*t*-butyl ether, see Masada, Yonemitsu, and Hirota, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1315 (1979).

[477] Masada and Sakajiri, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **51,** 866 (1978).

[478] For a review of reactions in which alcohols serve as nucleophiles, see Salomaa, Kankaanperä, and Pihlaja, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 1, pp. 454–466, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[479] Biordi and Moelwyn-Hughes, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4291 (1962).

[480] Masada and Oishi, *Chem. Lett.* 57 (1978). For another method, see Camps, Coll, and Moretó, *Synthesis* 186 (1982).

Aryl alkyl ethers can be prepared from alkyl halides by treatment with an aryl acetate (instead of a phenol) in the presence of K_2CO_3 and a crown ether.[481] *gem*-Dihalides react with alkoxides to give acetals, and 1,1,1-trihalides give ortho esters.[482] Both aryl alkyl and dialkyl ethers can be efficiently prepared with the use of phase transfer catalysis (p. 320).[483]

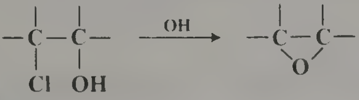
Hydroxy groups can be protected[484] by reaction of their salts with chloromethyl methyl ether.

$$\mathbf{RO^- + CH_3OCH_2Cl \longrightarrow ROCH_2OCH_3}$$

This protecting group is known as MOM (methoxymethyl) and such compounds are called MOM ethers. The resulting acetals are stable to bases and are easily cleaved with mild acid treatment (**0-7**).[485] Another protecting group, the 2-methoxyethoxymethyl group (the MEM group), is formed in a similar manner: $RO^- + MeOCH_2CH_2OCH_2Cl \rightarrow ROCH_2OCH_2CH_2OMe$. Phenacyl bromides ($ArCOCH_2Br$) have also been used for this purpose.[486] The resulting ethers can easily be hydrolyzed with zinc and acetic acid. Aryl cyanates[487] can be prepared by reaction of phenols with cyanogen halides in the presence of a base: $ArO^- + ClCN \rightarrow ArOCN + Cl^-$.[488] This reaction has also been applied to certain alkyl cyanates.[489]

OS **I,** 75, 205, 258, 296, 435; **II,** 260; **III,** 127, 140, 209, 418, 432, 544; **IV,** 427, 457, 558, 590, 836; **V,** 251, 258, 266, 403, 424, 684; **52,** 66; **54,** 19; **57,** 30, 41; **60,** 92; **61,** 35.

0-15 Epoxide Formation



This is a special case of **0-14.** Many epoxides have been made in this way.[490] The method can also be used to prepare larger cyclic ethers: five- and six-membered rings. Additional treatment with base yields the glycol (**0-8**). The base removes the proton from the OH group and the epoxide then attacks in an internal SN2 reaction.[491]

OS **I,** 185, 233; **II,** 256; **III,** 835; **56,** 112.

0-16 Alkylation with Inorganic Esters

Alkoxy-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution

$$\mathbf{R{-}OSO_2OR'' + R'O^- \longrightarrow ROR'}$$

The reaction of alkyl sulfates with alkoxide ions is quite similar to **0-14** in mechanism and scope. Other inorganic esters may also be used. However, the most common usage of this reaction is the formation of methyl ethers of alcohols and phenols by treatment of alkoxides or aroxides with methyl sulfate. Organic esters sometimes give ethers when treated with alkoxides (BAL2 mechanism, p. 337) in a very similar process (see also **0-25**).

---

[481] Banerjee, Gupta, and Singh, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 815 (1982).

[482] For a review of the formation of ortho esters by this method, see DeWolfe, Ref. 383, pp. 12–18.

[483] For reviews, see Starks and Liotta, Ref. 346, pp. 128–138; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," Ref. 346, pp. 73–84.

[484] For other protecting groups for OH, see Greene, "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis," pp. 10–113, Wiley, New York, 1981; Corey, Gras, and Ulrich, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 809 (1976), and references cited therein.

[485] McOmie, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **3,** 191–294 (1963), pp. 232–233.

[486] Hendrickson and Kandall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 343 (1970).

[487] For reviews of alkyl and aryl cyanates, see Jensen and Holm in Patai, "The Chemistry of Cyanates and Their Thio Derivatives," pt. 1, pp. 569–618, Wiley, 1977; Grigat and Pütter, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 206–218 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 219–231].

[488] Grigat and Pütter, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 3012 (1964); Martin and Bauer, *Org. Synth.* **61,** 35.

[489] Kauer and Henderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4732 (1964).

[490] For a review, see Berti, *Top. Stereochem.* **7,** 93–251 (1973), pp. 187–209.

[491] See, for example, Swain, Ketley, and Bader, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2353 (1959); Knipe, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 589 (1973).

OS **I,** 58, 537; **II,** 387, 619; **III,** 127, 564, 800; **IV,** 588; **53,** 90; **59,** 202; **61,** 24. Also see OS **V,** 431.

0-17 Alkylation with Diazo Compounds[492]

Hydro,alkoxy-de-diazo-bisubstitution

$$\mathbf{CH_2N_2 + ROH \xrightarrow{HBF_4} CH_3OR}$$

$$\mathbf{R_2CN_2 + ArOH \longrightarrow R_2CHOAr}$$

Reaction with alcohols is general for diazo compounds, but it is most often performed with diazomethane to produce methyl ethers or with diazo ketones to produce α-keto ethers, since these kinds of diazo compounds are most readily available. With diazomethane[493] the method is expensive and requires great caution. It is used chiefly to methylate alcohols and phenols that are expensive or available in small amounts, since the conditions are mild and high yields are obtained. Hydroxy compounds react better as their acidity increases; ordinary alcohols do not react at all unless a catalyst such as HBF_4[494] rhodium(II) acetate $Rh_2(OAc)_4$,[495] or silica gel[496] is present. The more acidic phenols react very well in the absence of a catalyst. Oximes, and ketones that have substantial enolic contributions give O-alkylation to form, respectively, O-alkyl oximes and enol ethers. The mechanism[497] is as in **0-6:**

$$\mathbf{H_2C{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{N}}| + ROH \longrightarrow H_3C{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}{\equiv}\underline{N} \xrightarrow[\text{S}_\text{N}1 \text{ or } \text{S}_\text{N}2]{RO^-} CH_3OR}$$

Diazoalkanes can also be converted to ethers by thermal or photochemical cleavage in the presence of an alcohol. These are carbene or carbenoid reactions.[498] Similar intermediates are involved when diazoalkanes react with alcohols in the presence of *t*-BuOCl to give acetals.[499]

$$\mathbf{R_2CN_2 + 2R'OH \xrightarrow{\mathit{t}\text{-BuOCl}} R_2C(OR')_2}$$

OS **V,** 245. Also see OS **V,** 1099.

0-18 Dehydration of Alcohols

$$\mathbf{2ROH \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} ROR + H_2O}$$

The dehydration of alcohols to form ethers[500] is analogous to **0-14** and **0-16,** but the species from which the leaving group departs is ROH_2^+ or $ROSO_2OH$. The former is obtained directly on treatment of alcohols with sulfuric acid and may go, by an SN1 or SN2 pathway, directly to the ether if attacked by another molecule of alcohol. On the other hand, it may, again by either an SN1 or SN2 route, be attacked by the nucleophile HSO_4^-, in which case it is converted to $ROSO_2OH$, which in turn may be attacked by an alcohol molecule to give ROR. Elimination is always a side reaction and, in the case of tertiary alkyl substrates, completely predominates.

---

[492] For reviews, see Zollinger, "Azo and Diazo Chemistry," pp. 68–71, 102–108, Interscience, New York, 1961; Ref. 471, pp. 478–484.

[493] For a review of diazomethane, see Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 2, pp. 65–142, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[494] Neeman, Caserio, Roberts, and Johnson, *Tetrahedron* **6,** 36 (1959).

[495] See Paulissen, Reimlinger, Hayez, Hubert, and Teyssié, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2233 (1973).

[496] Ohno, Nishiyama, and Nagase, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4405 (1979).

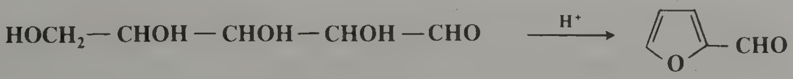
[497] Kreevoy and Thomas, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3979 (1977). See also McGarrity and Smyth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7303 (1980).

[498] Bethell and Howard, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 745 (1969); Bethell, Newall, and Whittaker, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 23 (1971); Noels, Demonceau, Petiniot, Hubert, and Teyssié, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2733 (1982).

[499] Baganz and May, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 420 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 448].

[500] For a review, see Ref. 471, pp. 457–460, 468–470.

The ether prepared is symmetrical. Mixed ethers can be prepared if one group is tertiary alkyl and the other primary or secondary, since the latter group is not likely to compete with the tertiary group in the formation of the carbocation, while a tertiary alcohol is a very poor nucleophile. If one group is not tertiary, then the reaction of a mixture of two alcohols leads to all three possible ethers. Diols can be converted to cyclic ethers, though the reaction is most successful for five-membered rings.[501] Thus, 1,6-hexanediol gives mostly 2-ethyltetrahydrofuran. This reaction is also important in preparing furfural derivatives from aldoses, with concurrent elimination:



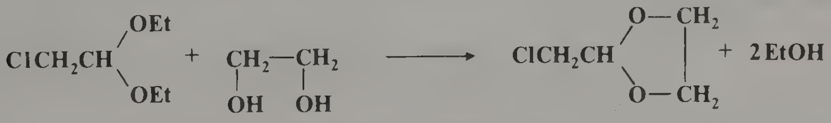
Phenols and primary alcohols form ethers when heated with dicyclohexylcarbodiimide[502] (see **0-24**). 1,2-Glycols can be converted to epoxides by treatment with dimethylformamide dimethyl acetal $[(MeO)_2CHNMe_2]$,[503] with diethyl azodicarboxylate [EtOOCN=NCOOEt] and Ph_3P,[504] or with the diaryldialkoxysulfurane $Ph_2S[OCPh(CF_3)_2]_2$.[505]

OS **I,** 280; **II,** 126; **IV,** 25, 72, 266, 350, 393, 534; **V,** 539, 1024; **58,** 12. Also see OS **V,** 721.

0-19 Transetherification
Hydroxy-de-alkoxylation
Alkoxy-de-hydroxylation

$$ROR' + R''OH \longrightarrow ROR'' + R'OH$$

The exchange of one alkoxyl group for another is very rare for *ethers,* though it has been accomplished with reactive R, for example, diphenylmethyl with *p*-toluenesulfonic acid as a catalyst,[506] and by treatment of alkyl aryl ethers with alkoxide ions: $ROAr + R'O^- \rightarrow ROR' + ArO^-$.[507] However, acetals and ortho esters undergo transetherification readily,[508] for example,[509]



because, as we have seen (**0-7**), departure of the leaving group from an acetal gives a particularly stable carbocation. These are equilibrium reactions, and most often the equilibrium is shifted by removing the lower-boiling alcohol by distillation. Enol ethers can be prepared by treating an alcohol with an enol ester or a different enol ether, with mercuric acetate as a catalyst,[510] e.g.,

---

[501] See Vlad and Ungur, *Synthesis* 216 (1983). For examples where 5, 6, 7, and 8-membered rings have been prepared with a Nafion-H acid catalyst, see Olah, Fung, and Malhotra, *Synthesis* 474 (1981).

[502] Vowinkel, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 2997 (1962), **96,** 1702 (1963), **99,** 42 (1966).

[503] Neumann, *Chimia* **23,** 267 (1969).

[504] Guthrie, Jenkins, Yamasaki, Skelton, and White, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2328 (1981) and references cited therein.

[505] Martin, Franz, and Arhart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4604 (1974).

[506] Pratt and Draper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 2846 (1949).

[507] Zoltewicz and Sale, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3462 (1970).

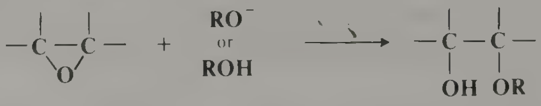
[508] For reviews, see Ref. 478, pp. 458–463; DeWolfe, Ref. 383, pp. 18–29, 146–148.

[509] McElvain and Curry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70,** 3781 (1948).

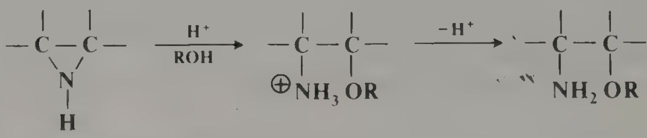
$$\text{ROCH}{=}\text{CH}_2 + \text{R}'\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Hg(OAc)}_2} \text{R}'\text{OCH}{=}\text{CH}_2 + \text{ROH}$$

OS **51,** 39; **53,** 116; **54,** 71, 74, 77; **60,** 81. Also see OS V, 1080, 1096.

0-20 Alcoholysis of Epoxides



This reaction is analogous to **0-8.** It may be acid, base, or alumina[511] catalyzed, and may occur by either an SN1 or SN2 mechanism. Many of the β-hydroxy ethers produced in this way are valuable solvents, for example, diethylene glycol, Cellosolve, etc. Aziridines can similarly be converted to β-amino ethers.[512]



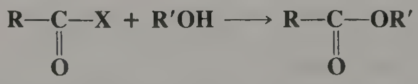
0-21 Alkylation with Onium Salts
Alkoxy-de-hydroxylation

$$\text{R}_3\text{O}^+ + \text{R}'\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{ROR}' + \text{R}_2\text{O}$$

Oxonium ions are excellent alkylating agents, and ethers can be conveniently prepared by treating them with alcohols or phenols.[513] Quaternary ammonium salts can sometimes also be used.[514]

D. Attack by OR at an Acyl Carbon

0-22 Alcoholysis of Acyl Halides
Alkoxy-de-halogenation



$$\text{R}{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\ \text{O}}}{\text{C}}{-}\text{X} + \text{R}'\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{R}{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\ \text{O}}}{\text{C}}{-}\text{OR}'$$

The reaction between acyl halides and alcohols is the best general method for the preparation of esters. The reaction is of wide scope, and many functional groups do not interfere. A base is frequently added to combine with the HX formed. When aqueous alkali is used, this is called the *Schotten–Baumann procedure,* but pyridine is also frequently used. Both R and R′ may be primary, secondary, or tertiary alkyl or aryl. Enolic esters can also be prepared by this method, although C-acylation competes in these cases. In difficult cases, especially with hindered acids or tertiary

---

[510] Watanabe and Conlon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 2828 (1957); Büchi and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2884 (1964). For a review, see Shostakovskii, Trofimov, Atavin, and Lavrov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 907–919 (1968). For a discussion of the mechanism, see Gareev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 36 (1982).

[511] See Posner and Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8208, 8214 (1977).

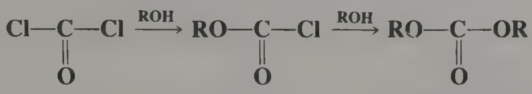
[512] For a review, see Dermer and Ham, Ref. 367, pp. 224–227, 256–257.

[513] Granik, Pyatin, and Glushkov, Ref. 293, p. 749.

[514] For an example, see Rodionov, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* **39,** 305 (1926).

R′, the alkoxide can be used instead of the alcohol.[515] Thallium salts of phenols give very high yields of phenolic esters.[516] Phase transfer catalysis has been used for hindered phenols.[517]

When phosgene is the acyl halide, haloformic esters[518] or carbonates may be obtained.



$$\underset{\displaystyle\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{Cl—C—Cl}}} \xrightarrow{\text{ROH}} \underset{\displaystyle\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{RO—C—Cl}}} \xrightarrow{\text{ROH}} \underset{\displaystyle\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{RO—C—OR}}}$$

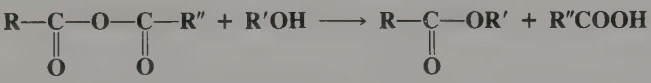
An important example is the preparation of carbobenzoxy chloride ($PhCH_2OCOCl$) from phosgene and benzyl alcohol. This compound is widely used for protection of amino groups during peptide synthesis (see **0-54**).

As with **0-9,** the mechanism can be S_N1 or tetrahedral.[413] In the tetrahedral mechanism there is evidence (the reaction is second order or higher in ROH) that the OH proton is lost or partially lost in the rate-determining step.[519] Pyridine catalyzes the reaction by the nucleophilic catalysis route (see **0-10**).

OS **I,** 12; **III,** 142, 144, 167, 187, 623, 714; **IV,** 84, 263, 478, 479, 608, 616, 788; **V,** 1, 166, 168, 171; **51,** 11, 96, 139; **59,** 95.

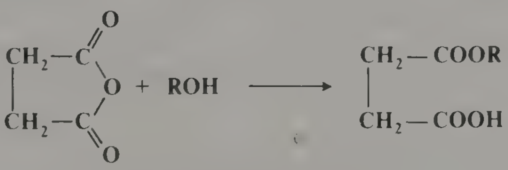
0-23 Alcoholysis of Anhydrides

Alkoxy-de-acyloxy-substitution



$$\text{R—}\underset{\displaystyle\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}\text{—O—}\underset{\displaystyle\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}\text{—R}'' + \text{R}'\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{R—}\underset{\displaystyle\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}\text{—OR}' + \text{R}''\text{COOH}$$

The scope of this reaction is similar to that of **0-22.** Though anhydrides are somewhat less reactive than acyl halides, they are often used to prepare esters. Acids, Lewis acids, and bases are often used as catalysts—most often, pyridine. Catalysis by pyridine is of the nucleophilic type (see **0-10**). 4-(N,N-Dimethylamino)pyridine is a better catalyst than pyridine and can be used in cases where pyridine fails.[520] Formic anhydride is not a stable compound but esters of formic acid can be prepared by treating alcohols[521] or phenols[522] with acetic–formic anhydride. Cyclic anhydrides give monoesterified dicarboxylic acids, for example,



---

[515] For an example, see Kaiser and Woodruff, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1198 (1970).

[516] Taylor, McLay, and McKillop, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2422 (1968).

[517] Illi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2431 (1979). For another method, see Nekhoroshev, Ivakhnenko, and Okhlobystin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **13,** 608 (1977).

[518] For a review of this method as applied to the synthesis of chloroformates, see Matzner, Kurkjy, and Cotter, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 645–687 (1964).

[519] Ross, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5998 (1970); Babaeva, Bogatkov, Grineva, and Kruglikova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12,** 1236 (1976).

[520] For reviews, see Scriven, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **12,** 129–161 (1983); Höfle, Steglich, and Vorbrüggen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 569–583 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 602–615].

[521] For example, see Stevens and van Es, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas,* **83,** 1287 (1964); van Es and Stevens, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas,* **84,** 704 (1965).

[522] For example, see Stevens and van Es, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas,* **83,** 1294 (1964); Sōfuku, Muramatsu, and Hagitani, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40,** 2942 (1967).

Alcohols can also be acylated by mixed organic–inorganic anhydrides, such as acetic–phosphoric anhydride $MeCOOPO(OH)_2$[523] (see **0-34**).

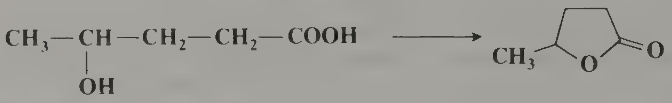
OS **I,** 285, 418; **II,** 69, 124; **III,** 11, 127, 141, 169, 237, 281, 428, 432, 452, 690, 833; **IV,** 15, 242, 304; **V,** 8, 459, 591, 887; **51,** 90; **52,** 39; **54,** 49; **56,** 112.

0-24 Esterification of Acids
Alkoxy-de-hydroxylation

$$\mathrm{RCOOH + R'OH \overset{H^+}{\rightleftharpoons} RCOOR' + H_2O}$$

The esterification of acids with alcohols[524] is the reverse of **0-12** and can be accomplished only if a means is available to drive the equilibrium to the right. There are many ways of doing this, among which are: (1) addition of an excess of one of the reactants, usually the alcohol; (2) removal of the ester or the water by distillation; (3) removal of water by azeotropic distillation; and (4) removal of water by use of a dehydrating agent or a molecular sieve.[525] When R′ is methyl, the most common way of driving the equilibrium is by adding excess MeOH; when R′ is ethyl, it is preferable to remove water by azetropic distillation.[526] The most common catalysts are H_2SO_4 and TsOH, though some reactive acids (e.g., formic,[527] trifluoroacetic[528]) do not require a catalyst. Besides methyl and ethyl, R′ may be other primary or secondary alkyl groups, but tertiary alcohols usually give carbocations and elimination. Phenols can sometimes be used to prepare phenolic esters, but yields are generally very low.

γ- and δ-hydroxy acids are easily lactonized by treatment with acids, or often simply on standing, but larger and smaller lactone rings cannot be made in this manner, because polyester formation



occurs more readily.[529] However, sometimes the polyester can be converted to the lactone. Often the conversion of a group such as keto or halogen, γ or δ to a carboxyl group, to a hydroxyl group gives the lactone directly, since the hydroxy acid cyclizes too rapidly for isolation. β-Substituted β-hydroxy acids can be converted to β-lactones by treatment with benzenesulfonyl chloride in pyridine at 0 to 5° C.[530] ε-Lactones (seven-membered rings) have been made by cyclization of ε-hydroxy acids at high dilution.[531] Macrocyclic lactones[532] can be prepared indirectly in very good yields by conversion of the hydroxy acids to 2-pyridinethiol esters and adding these to refluxing xylene.[533]

---

[523] Fatiadi, *Carbohydr. Res.* **6,** 237 (1968).

[524] For a review of some recent methods, see Haslam, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2409–2433 (1980).

[525] For example, see Harrison, Haynes, Arthur, and Eisenbraun, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1568 (1968).

[526] Newman, "An Advanced Organic Laboratory Course," pp. 8–10, Macmillan, New York, 1972.

[527] Formates can be prepared if diisopropyl ether is used to remove water by azeotropic distillation: Werner, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 196 (1980).

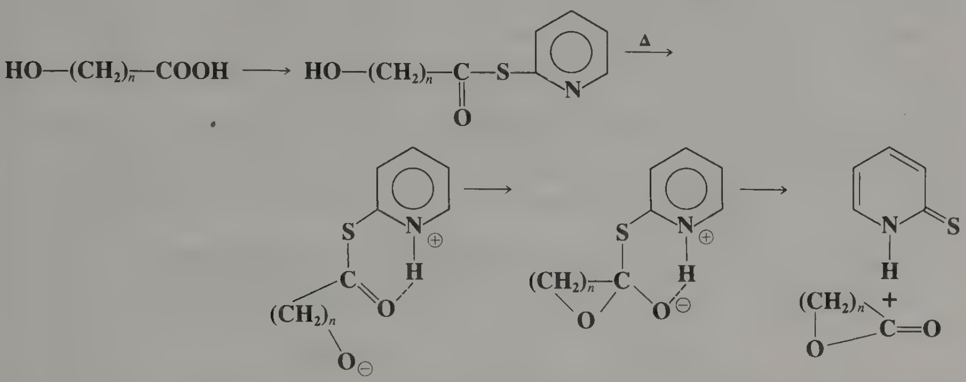
[528] Johnston, Knipe, and Watts, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4225 (1979).

[529] For a review of the synthesis of lactones and lactams, see Wolfe and Ogliaruso, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Acid Derivatives," pt. 2, pp. 1062–1330, Wiley, New York, 1979.

[530] Adam, Baeza, and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2000 (1972). For other methods of converting β-hydroxy acids to β-lactones, see Merger, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 2413 (1968); Blume, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1047 (1969).

[531] Lardelli, Lamberti, Weller, and de Jonge, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **86,** 481 (1967).

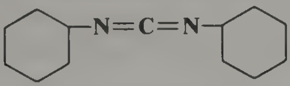
[532] For reviews on the synthesis of macrocyclic lactones, see Nicolaou, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 683–710 (1977); Back, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 3041–3059 (1977); Masamune, Bates, and Corcoran, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Chem.* **16,** 585–607 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 602–624].



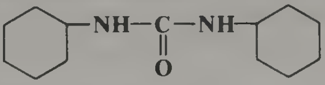
A closely related method, which often gives higher yields, involves treatment of the hydroxy acids with 1-methyl- or 1-phenyl-2-halopyridinium salts.[534] Another method uses organotin oxides.[535]

Esterification is catalyzed by acids (not bases) in ways that were discussed on p. 335.[428] The mechanisms are usually AAC2, but AAC1 and AAL1 have also been observed.[536] Certain acids, such as 2,6-di-ortho-substituted benzoic acids, cannot be esterified by the AAC2 mechanism because of steric hindrance (p. 299). In such cases, esterification may be accomplished by dissolving the acid in 100% H_2SO_4 (forming the ion RCO^+) and pouring the solution into the alcohol (AAC1 mechanism). The reluctance of hindered acids to undergo the normal AAC2 mechanism can sometimes be put to advantage when, in a molecule containing two COOH groups, only the less hindered one is esterified. The AAC1 pathway cannot be applied to unhindered carboxylic acids.

Another way to esterify an acid is to treat it with an alcohol in the presence of a dehydrating agent. One of these is dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), which is converted in the process to dicyclohexylurea (DHU). The mechanism[537] has much in common with the nucleophilic catalysis



DCC



DHU

---

[533] Corey and Nicolaou, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5614 (1974); Corey, Nicolaou, and Melvin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 653, 655 (1975); Gerlach and Thalmann, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 2661 (1974); Corey, Brunelle, and Stork, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3405 (1976); Corey and Brunelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3409 (1976); Wollenberg, Nimitz, and Gokcek, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2791 (1980); See also Schmidt and Heermann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 308 (1979) [*Angew.Chem.* **91,** 330].

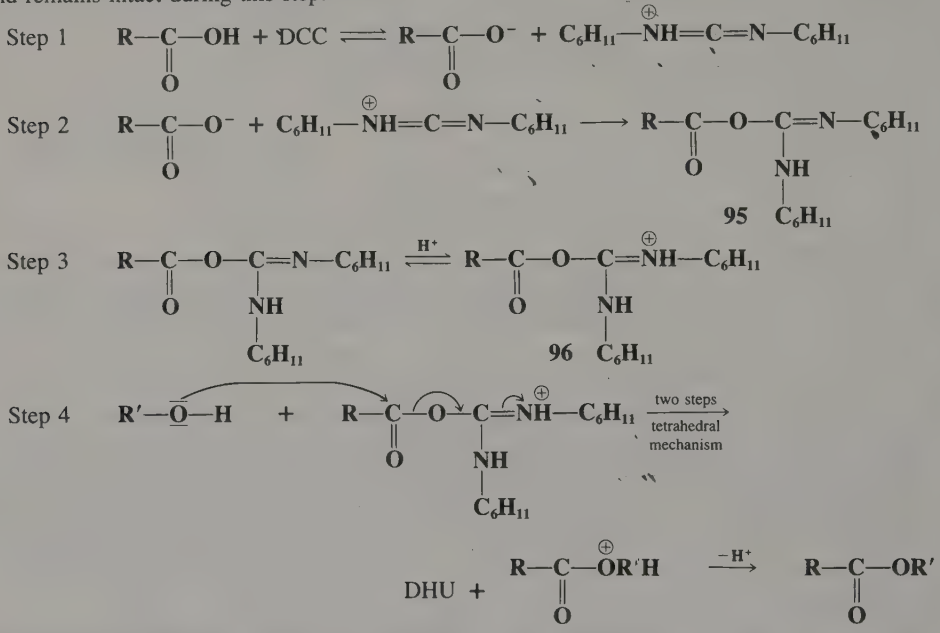
[534] For a review of reactions with this and related methods, see Mukaiyama, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 707–721 (1979) [*Agnew. Chem.* **91,** 798–812].

[535] Steliou, Szczygielska-Nowosielska, Favre, Poupart, and Hanessian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7578 (1980); Steliou and Poupart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7130 (1983). For some other methods, see Masamune, Kamata, and Schilling, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3515 (1975); Scott and Naples, *Synthesis* 738 (1976); Kurihara, Nakajima, and Mitsunobu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2455 (1976); Corey, Brunelle, and Nicolaou, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7359 (1977); Vorbrüggen and Krolikiewicz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 876 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 914]; Nimitz and Wollenberg, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3523 (1978); Inanaga, Hirata, Saeki, Katsuki, and Yamaguchi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 1989 (1979); Venkataraman and Wagle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1893 (1980); Schmidt and Dietsche, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 771 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 786].

[536] For a review of aspects of the mechanism, see Ref. 478, pp. 466–481.

[537] Smith, Moffatt, and Khorana, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6204 (1958).

mechanism; the acid is converted to a compound with a better leaving group. However, the conversion is not by a tetrahedral mechanism (as it is in nucleophilic catalysis), since the C—O bond remains intact during this step:



Step 1 $$\mathrm{R{-}C({=}O){-}OH + DCC \rightleftharpoons R{-}C({=}O){-}O^- + C_6H_{11}{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}H{=}C{=}N{-}C_6H_{11}}$$

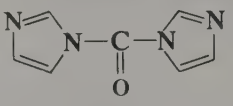
Step 2 $$\mathrm{R{-}C({=}O){-}O^- + C_6H_{11}{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}H{=}C{=}N{-}C_6H_{11} \longrightarrow \underset{\textbf{95}}{R{-}C({=}O){-}O{-}C({=}N{-}C_6H_{11}){-}NH{-}C_6H_{11}}}$$

Step 3 $$\mathrm{R{-}C({=}O){-}O{-}C({=}N{-}C_6H_{11}){-}NH{-}C_6H_{11} \xrightleftharpoons{H^+} \underset{\textbf{96}}{R{-}C({=}O){-}O{-}C({=}\overset{\oplus}{N}H{-}C_6H_{11}){-}NH{-}C_6H_{11}}}$$

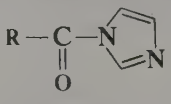
Step 4 $$\mathrm{R'{-}\underline{O}{-}H + R{-}C({=}O){-}O{-}C({=}\overset{\oplus}{N}H{-}C_6H_{11}){-}NH{-}C_6H_{11} \xrightarrow[\text{tetrahedral mechanism}]{\text{two steps}} DHU + R{-}C({=}O){-}\overset{\oplus}{O}R'H \xrightarrow{-H^+} R{-}C({=}O){-}OR'}$$

Evidence for this mechanism was the preparation of O-acylureas similar to **95** and the finding that when catalyzed by acids they react with alcohols to give esters.[538]

However, there are limitations to the use of DCC; yields are variable and N-acylureas are side products. Many other dehydrating agents[539] have been used, including an alkyl chloroformate and Et_3N,[540] pyridinium salts–Bu_3N,[534] phenyl dichlorophosphate $PhOPOCl_2$,[541] DCC and an aminopyridine,[542] 2-chloro-1,3,5-trinitrobenzene and pyridine,[543] polyphosphate ester,[544] chlorosulfonyl isocyanate $ClSO_2NCO$,[545] chlorosilanes,[546] $MeSO_2Cl–Et_3N$,[547] $Ph_3P–CCl_4–Et_3N$,[548] and N,N′-carbonyldiimidazole (**97**).[454] In the latter case easily alcoholyzed imidazolides (**98**) are intermediates.



97



98

---

[538] Doleschall and Lempert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1195 (1963).

[539] For a list of many of these with references, see Arrieta, García, Lago, and Palomo, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 471 (1983).

[540] Kim, Kim, and Lee, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3365 (1983).

[541] Liu, Chan, and Lee, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4461 (1978). García, Arrieta, and Palomo, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 681 (1982).

[542] Hassner and Alexanian, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4475 (1978); Neises and Steglich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 522 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 556]. See also Holmberg and Hansen, *Acta Chem. Scand.*; *Ser. B* **33,** 410 (1979).

[543] Takimoto, Inanaga, Katsuki, and Yamaguchi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 1470 (1981). See also Kim and Yang, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 121 (1981); Takimoto, Abe, Kodera, and Ohta, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 639 (1983).

[544] Adams, Lewis, and Paul, *Synthesis* 429 (1979).

[545] Keshavamurthy, Vankar, and Dhar, *Synthesis* 506 (1982).

[546] Nakao, Oka, and Fukumoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 1267 (1981); Brook and Chan, *Synthesis* 201 (1983).

[547] Chandrasekaran and Turner, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 727 (1982).

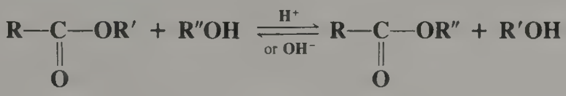
[548] Hashimoto and Furukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 2227 (1981).

BF_3 promotes the esterification by converting the acid to $RCO^+ \ BF_3OH^-$, so that the reaction proceeds by an $\dot{A}$AC1 type of mechanism. The use of BF_3–etherate is simple and gives high yields.[549] Carboxylic esters may also be prepared by treating carboxylic acids with *t*-butyl ethers and acid catalysts.[550]

$$RCOOH + t\text{-Bu-OR}' \longrightarrow RCOOR' + H_2C{=}CMe_2 + H_2O$$

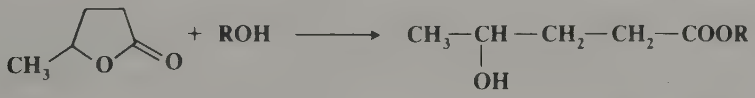
OS **I,** 42, 138, 237, 241, 246, 254, 261, 451; **II,** 260, 264, 276, 292, 365, 414, 526; **III,** 46, 203, 237, 381, 413, 526, 531, 610; **IV,** 169, 178, 302, 329, 390, 398, 427, 506, 532, 635, 677; **V,** 80, 762, 946; **55,** 45, 77; **60,** 92; **61,** 56, 77. Also see OS **III,** 536, 742.

0-25 Alcoholysis of Esters. Transesterification
Alkoxy-de-alkoxylation

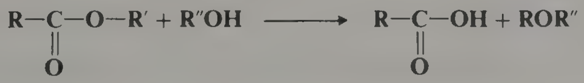


$$R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' + R''OH \underset{\text{or } OH^-}{\overset{H^+}{\rightleftharpoons}} R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR'' + R'OH$$

Transesterification is catalyzed by acids or bases.[551] It is an equilibrium reaction and must be shifted in the desired direction. In many cases low-boiling esters can be converted to higher ones by the distillation of the lower-boiling alcohol as fast as it is formed. This reaction has been used as a method for the acylation of a primary OH in the presence of a secondary OH: The diol is treated with ethyl acetate in the presence of Woelm neutral alumina.[552] Lactones are easily opened by treatment with alcohols to give open-chain hydroxy esters:



Transesterification occurs by mechanisms[553] that are identical with those of ester hydrolysis—except that ROH replaces HOH—that is, by the acyl–oxygen fission mechanisms. When alkyl fission takes place, the products are the *acid* and the *ether*:



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}R' + R''OH \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH + ROR''$$

Therefore, transesterification reactions frequently fail when R′ is tertiary, since this type of substrate most often reacts by alkyl–oxygen cleavage. In such cases, the reaction is of the Williamson type with OCOR as the leaving group (see **0-16**).

It has been shown that intramolecular transesterification of ethyl 2-hydroxymethylbenzoate to give phthalide can be catalyzed by imidazole and other bases.[554] It is likely that the catalyst functions by assisting the removal of the O—H proton in the rate-determining step (general base catalysis).

---

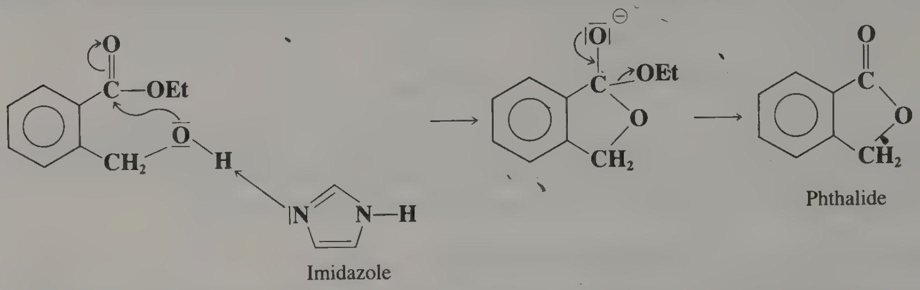
[549] For examples, see Marshall, Erickson, and Folsom, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4011 (1970); Kadaba, *Synthesis* 628 (1972), *Synth. Commun.* 4, 167 (1974).

[550] Derevitskaya, Klimov, and Kochetkov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4269 (1970). See also Mohacsi, *Synth. Commun.* 453 (1982).

[551] For some methods of transesterification under neutral conditions, see Bittner, Barneis, and Felix, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3871 (1975); Hashimoto, Furukawa, and Kuroda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2857 (1980); Olah, Narang, Salem, and Gupta, *Synthesis* 142 (1981).

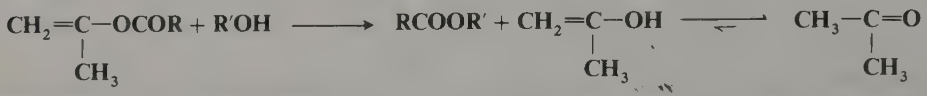
[552] Posner and Oda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5003 (1981); Rana, Barlow, and Matta, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5007 (1981).

[553] For a review, see Koslikallio, in Patai, Ref. 180, pp. 103–136.



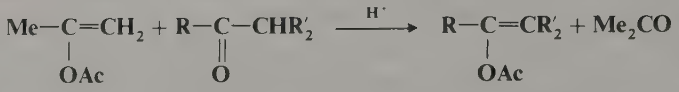
Similar catalysis has been shown in the conversion of 2-hydroxymethylbenzamide to phthalide.[555]

With enol esters, the free alcohol is the enol of a ketone, so such esters easily undergo the reaction



$$CH_2{=}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}-OCOR + R'OH \longrightarrow RCOOR' + CH_2{=}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}-OH \rightleftharpoons CH_3-\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O$$

Hence, enol esters such as isopropenyl acetate are good acylating agents for alcohols.[556] Isopropenyl acetate can also be used to convert other ketones to the corresponding enol acetates in an exchange reaction:[557]



$$Me-\underset{\displaystyle OAc}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CH_2 + R-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-CHR'_2 \xrightarrow{H^+} R-\underset{\displaystyle OAc}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CR'_2 + Me_2CO$$

Enol esters can also be prepared in the opposite type of exchange reaction, catalyzed by mercuric acetate[558] or Pd(II) chloride,[559] e.g.,

$$RCOOH + R'COOCH{=}CH_2 \xrightleftharpoons[]{Hg(OAc)_2,\ H_2SO_4} RCOOCH{=}CH_2 + R'COOH$$

A closely related reaction is equilibration of a dicarboxylic acid and its diester to produce monoesters:

$$ROCO(CH_2)_nCOOR + HOOC(CH_2)_nCOOH \rightleftharpoons 2ROCO(CH_2)_nCOOH$$

OS **II,** 5, 122, 360; **III,** 123, 146, 165, 231, 281, 581, 605; **IV,** 10, 549, 630, 977; **V,** 155, 545, 863; **55,** 39; **60,** 66. See also OS **61,** 48.

---

[554] Fife and Benjamin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2059 (1973). See also Kirby and Lloyd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 637 (1974); Fife and Benjamin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 525 (1974); Pollack and Dumsha, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 377 (1975); Chiong, Lewis, and Shafer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 418 (1975).

[555] Belke, Su, and Shafer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4552 (1971).

[556] Jeffery and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1906 (1962); Rothman, Hecht, Pfeffer, and Silbert, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3551 (1972).

[557] For examples, see Deghenghi and Engel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3201 (1960); House and Trost, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2502 (1965).

[558] For example, see Hopff and Osman, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 2205, 3887 (1968); Mondal, van der Meer, German, and Heikens, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 4205 (1974).

[559] Henry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3853 (1971), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 16–24 (1973).

Alcoholysis of amides is possible but is seldom performed,[560] except for the imidazolide type of amide (**98**).

E. Attack by OCOR at an Alkyl Carbon

0-26 Alkylation of Acid Salts
Acyloxy-de-halogenation

$$\text{RX} + \text{R}'\text{COO}^- \xrightarrow{\text{HMPT}} \text{R}'\text{COOR}$$

Sodium salts of carboxylic acids, including hindered acids such as mesitoic, rapidly react with primary and secondary bromides and iodides at room temperature in dipolar aprotic solvents, especially HMPT, to give high yields of carboxylic esters.[561] The mechanism is SN2. Another method uses phase transfer catalysis.[562] With this method good yields of esters have been obtained from primary, secondary, benzylic, allylic, and phenacyl halides.[563] In a similar method, which also gives high yields, the carboxylate salt is mixed with the halide and a catalytic amount of a quaternary ammonium salt without any solvent.[563a] In still another method, carboxylic acids have been esterified by treatment with primary or secondary halides in benzene in the presence of DBU (p. 915).[564] In most cases good yields of esters can be obtained only with one of these methods. Without phase transfer catalysts and in protic solvents, the reaction is useful only for fairly active R, such as benzyl, allyl, etc. (SN1 mechanism), but not for tertiary alkyl, since elimination occurs instead.[565] Sodium salts are often used, but potassium, silver, cesium,[566] and substituted ammonium salts have also been used. Lactones can be prepared from halo acids by treatment with base (see **0-24**). This has most often been accomplished with γ and δ lactones, but macrocyclic lactones (e.g., 11 to 17 members) have also been prepared in this way.[567]

Copper(I) carboxylates give esters with primary (including neopentyl without rearrangement), secondary, and tertiary alkyl, allylic, and vinylic halides.[568] A simple SN mechanism is obviously precluded in this case. Vinyl halides can be converted to vinyl acetates by treatment with sodium acetate if palladium(II) chloride is present.[569]

A carboxylic acid (not the salt) can be the nucleophile if F^- is present.[570] Dihalides have been converted to diesters by this method.[570] A COOH group can be conveniently protected by reaction of its ion with a phenacyl bromide (ArCOCH_2Br).[486] The resulting ester is easily cleaved when desired with zinc and acetic acid. Dialkyl carbonates can be prepared without phosgene (see **0-22**) by phase-transfer catalyzed treatment of primary alkyl halides with dry $KHCO_3$ and K_2CO_3.[571]

---

[560] For example see Greenlee and Thorsett, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5351 (1981).

[561] Parker, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **5,** 1–46 (1965), p. 37; Alvarez and Watt, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2143 (1968); Mehta, *Synthesis* 262 (1972); Shaw, Kunerth, and Sherry, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 689 (1973); Shaw and Kunerth, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1968 (1974); Larock, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3721 (1974); Pfeffer and Silbert, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1373 (1976).

[562] For reviews of phase transfer catalysis of this reaction, see Starks and Liotta, Ref. 346, pp. 140–155; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," Ref. 346, pp. 85–95.

[563] For an alternative method for phenacyl halides, see Clark and Miller, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 599 (1977).

[563a] Barry, Bram, Decodts, Loupy, Pigeon, and Sansoulet, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2673 (1983).

[564] Ono, Yamada, Saito, Tanaka, and Kaji, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **51,** 2401 (1978).

[565] See, however, Moore, Foglia, and McGahan, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2425 (1979).

[566] See Kruizinga, Strijtveen, and Kellogg, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4321 (1981).

[567] For example, see Galli and Mandolini, *Org. Synth.* **58,** 98 (1978); Kruizinga and Kellogg, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 286 (1979); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5183 (1981); Regen and Kimura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2064 (1982); Kimura and Regen, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1533 (1983).

[568] Lewin and Goldberg, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 491 (1972); Klumpp, Bos, Schakel, Schmitz, and Vrielink, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3429 (1975).

[569] Kohll and van Helden, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 481 (1968); Volger, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 501 (1968); Yamaji, Fujiwara, Imanaka, and Teranishi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 2659 (1970); Yamaji, Fujiwara, Asano, and Teranishi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **46,** 90 (1973).

[570] Clark, Emsley, and Hoyte, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1091 (1977). See also Barluenga, Alonso-Cires, Campos, and Asensio, *Synthesis* 649 (1983).

Other leaving groups can also be replaced by OCOR. Alkyl chlorosulfites (ROSOCl) and other derivatives of sulfuric, sulfonic, and other inorganic acids can be treated with carboxylate ions to give the corresponding esters. The use of dimethyl sulfate[572] or trimethyl phosphate[573] allows sterically hindered COOH groups to be methylated. With certain substrates, carboxylic acids are strong enough nucleophiles for the reaction. Examples of such substrates are trialkyl phosphites $P(OR)_3$[574] and acetals of dimethylformamide.[575]

$$\mathbf{(RO)_2CHNMe_2 + R'COOH \longrightarrow R'COOR + ROH + HCONMe_2}$$

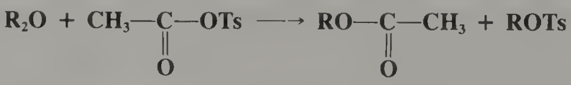
This is an S_N2 process, since inversion is found at R. Another good leaving group is NTs_2; ditosylamines react quite well with acetate ion in dipolar aprotic solvents:[576] $RNTs_2 + OAc^- \rightarrow ROAc$. Ordinary primary amines have been converted to acetates and benzoates by the Katritzky pyrylium–pyridinium method (p. 313).[577] Quaternary ammonium salts can be cleaved by heating with AcO^- in an aprotic solvent.[578] Oxonium ions may also be used as substrates:[579] $R_3O^+ + R'COO^- \rightarrow R'COOR + R_2O$.

OS **II,** 5; **III,** 650; **IV,** 582; **V,** 580; **56,** 59; **57,** 26; **58,** 98.

0-27 Cleavage of Ethers with Acetic Anhydride
Acyloxy-de-alkoxylation

$$\mathbf{R{-}O{-}R' + Ac_2O \xrightarrow{FeCl_3} ROAc + R'OAc}$$

Dialkyl ethers can be cleaved by treatment with anhydrous ferric chloride in acetic anhydride.[580] In this reaction both R groups are converted to acetates. Yields are moderate to high. Ethers can also be cleaved by the mixed anhydride acetyl tosylate:[581]



$$\mathbf{R_2O + CH_3{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}OTs \longrightarrow RO{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}CH_3 + ROTs}$$

0-28 Alkylation of Acids with Diazo Compounds
Hydro,acyloxy-de-diazo-bisubstitution

$$\mathbf{R_2CN_2 + R'COOH \longrightarrow R'COOCHR_2}$$

Acids can be converted to esters with diazo compounds in a reaction essentially the same as **0-17**. In contrast to alcohols, carboxylic acids undergo the reaction quite well at room temperature, since the reactivity of the reagent increases with acidity. The reaction is used where high yields are important or where the acid is sensitive to higher temperatures. Because of availability, the diazo compounds most often used are diazomethane[493] (for methyl esters)

---

[571] Lissel and Dehmlow, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 1210 (1981).

[572] Grundy, James, and Pattenden, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 757 (1972).

[573] Harris and Patel, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1002 (1973).

[574] Szmuszkovicz, *Org. Prep. Proceed. Int.* **4,** 51 (1972).

[575] Vorbrüggen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 211 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 296]; Brechbühler, Büchi, Hatz, Schreiber, and Eschenmoser, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 212 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 296].

[576] Anderson and Uh, *Synth. Commun.* **2,** 297 (1972); Curtis, Schwartz, Hartman, Pick, Kolar, and Baumgarten, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1969 (1977).

[577] See Katritzky, Gruntz, Kenny, Rezende, and Sheikh, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 430 (1979).

[578] Wilson and Joule, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 5493 (1968).

[579] Raber, Gariano, Brod, Gariano, Guida, Guida, and Herbst, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1149 (1979).

[580] Ganem and Small, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3728 (1974).

[581] Karger and Mazur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3878 (1968). See also Coffi-Nketsia, Kergomard, and Tautou, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2788 (1967).

$$CH_2N_2 + RCOOH \longrightarrow RCOOCH_3$$

and diazo ketones. The mechanism is as shown in **0-17**.

OS **V**, 797.

F. Attack by OCOR at an Acyl Carbon

0-29 Acylation of Acids with Acyl Halides

Acyloxy-de-halogenation

$$RCOCl + R'COO^- \longrightarrow RCOOCOR'$$

Unsymmetrical as well as symmetrical anhydrides are often prepared by the treatment of an acyl halide with an acid salt. If a metallic salt is used, then Na^+, K^+, or Ag^+ are the most common cations, but more often pyridine or another tertiary amine is added to the free acid and the salt thus formed is treated with the acyl halide. Thallium(I) salts are particularly effective and react with acyl halides to give anhydrides in high yield.[516] Symmetrical anhydrides can be prepared by reaction of the acyl halide with aqueous NaOH under phase transfer conditions.[581a]

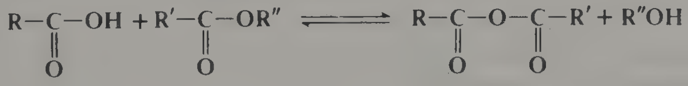
OS **III,** 28, 422, 488; **IV,** 285; **50,** 1; **51,** 48. See also OS **57,** 45.

0-30 Acylation of Acids with Acids

$$2RCOOH \xrightleftharpoons{P_2O_5} (RCO)_2O + H_2O$$

Anhydrides can be formed from two molecules of an ordinary acid only if a dehydrating agent is present so that the equilibrium can be driven to the right. Common dehydrating agents[582] are acetic anhydride, trifluoroacetic anhydride, dicyclohexylcarbodiimide,[583] methoxyacetylene,[584] and P_2O_5.[585] The method is very poor for the formation of mixed anhydrides, which in any case generally undergo disproportionation to the two simple anhydrides when they are heated. However, simple heating of dicarboxylic acids does give cyclic anhydrides, provided that the ring formed contains five, six, or seven members. Malonic acid and its derivatives, which would give four-membered cyclic anhydrides, do not give this reaction when heated but undergo decarboxylation (**2-39**) instead.

Carboxylic acids exchange with amides and esters; these methods are sometimes used to prepare anhydrides if the equilibrium can be shifted, e.g.,



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-OH + R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-OR'' \rightleftharpoons R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-O-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' + R''OH$$

[581a] Roulleau, Plusquellec, and Brown, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4195 (1983).

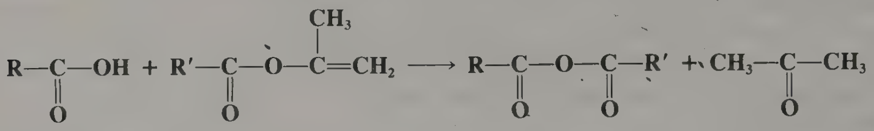
[582] For a list of other dehydrating agents with references, see Ogliaruso and Wolfe, Ref. 529, pt. 1, pp. 437–438.

[583] For example, see Schüssler and Zahn, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 1076 (1962); Rammler and Khorana, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1997 (1963). See also Hata, Tajima, and Mukaiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **41,** 2746 (1968).

[584] See, for example, Eglinton, Jones, Shaw, and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1860 (1954); Arens and Doornbos, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **74,** 9 (1955).

[585] High yields are obtained with either of two phosphorus reagents—diphenyl phosphorochloridate $(PhO)_2POCl$ and phenyl N-phenylphosphoramidochloridate $(PhO)(PhNH)POCl$: Mestres and Palomo, *Synthesis* 218 (1981).

Enolic esters are especially good for this purpose, since the equilibrium is shifted by formation of the ketone.



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH + R'{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}\overset{\overset{CH_3}{|}}{C}{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' + CH_3{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}CH_3}$$

Acids also exchange with anhydrides; indeed, this is how acetic anhydride acts as a dehydrating agent in this reaction.

Anhydrides can be formed by treatment of the triethylammonium *salt* of a carboxylic acid with phosgene:[586]

$$2\mathrm{RCOO}^{\ominus}\ \overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{N}}\mathrm{HEt_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{COCl_2}} \mathrm{RCOOCOR} + 2\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{N}}\mathrm{HEt_3}\ \mathrm{Cl^-} + \mathrm{CO_2}$$

or of thallium(I) carboxylates with thionyl chloride,[516] or of sodium carboxylates with CCl_4 and a catalyst such as CuCl or $FeCl_2$.[587]

OS **I,** 91, 410; **II,** 194, 368, 560; **III,** 164, 449; **IV,** 242, 630, 790; **V,** 8, 822. Also see OS **54,** 79.

G. Other Oxygen Nucleophiles

0-31 Formation of Oxonium Salts

$$\mathrm{RX + R_2O \xrightarrow{AgBF_4} R_3O^+\quad BF_4^- + AgX}$$ **Dialkyloxonio-de-halogenation**

$$\mathrm{RX + R'_2CO \xrightarrow{AgBF_4} R'_2C{=}\overset{\oplus}{O}{-}R\quad BF_4^- + AgX}$$

Alkyl halides can be alkylated by ethers or ketones to give oxonium salts, if a very weak, negatively charged nucleophile is present to serve as a counterion and a Lewis acid is present to combine with X^-.[588] A typical procedure consists of treating the halide with the ether or the ketone in the presence of $AgBF_4$ or $AgSbF_6$. The Ag^+ serves to remove X^- and the BF_4^- or SbF_6^- acts as the counterion. Another method involves treatment of the halide with a complex formed between the oxygen compound and a Lewis acid, e.g., $R_2O{-}BF_3 + RF \rightarrow R_3O^+\ BF_4^-$, though this method is most satisfactory when the oxygen and halogen atoms are in the same molecule so that a cyclic oxonium ion is obtained. Ethers and oxonium ions also undergo exchange reactions:

$$\mathrm{2R_3O^+\ BF_4^- + 3R'_2O \rightleftharpoons 2R'_3O^+\ BF_4^- + 3R_2O}$$

OS **V** 1080, 1096, 1099; **51,** 142.

0-32 Preparation of Peroxides and Hydroperoxides
Hydroperoxy-de-halogenation

$$\mathrm{RX + OOH^- \longrightarrow ROOH}$$
$$\mathrm{2RX + O_2^{2-} \longrightarrow ROOR}$$

Hydroperoxides can be prepared by treatment of alkyl halides, esters of sulfuric or sulfonic acids, or alcohols with hydrogen peroxide in basic solution, where it is actually HO_2^-.[589] Sodium peroxide is similarly used to prepare dialkyl peroxides. For R = benzyl, it has been suggested that the reaction proceeds by the SN1cB mechanism with phenylcarbene (PhCH) as an intermediate.[590] Another method, which gives primary, secondary, or tertiary hydroperoxides and peroxides, involves treatment of the halide with H_2O_2 or a peroxide in the presence of silver trifluoroacetate.[591] Peroxides can also be prepared[592] by treatment of alkyl bromides or tosylates with potassium superoxide KO_2 in the presence of crown ethers (though alcohols may be side products)[593] and by the reaction between alkyl triflates and germanium or tin peroxide.[594]

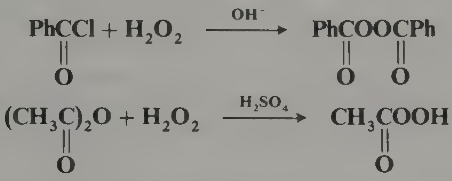
---

[586] Rinderknecht and Ma, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **47,** 152 (1964). See also Nangia and Chandrasekaran, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 100 (1984).

[587] Weiss, Havelka, and Nefedov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **27,** 193 (1978).

[588] Meerwein, Hederich, and Wunderlich, *Arch. Pharm.* **291/63,** 541 (1958). For a review, see Ref. 69, pp. 22–39.

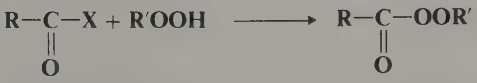
Diacyl peroxides and acyl hydroperoxides can similarly be prepared[595] from acyl halides or anhydrides



$$\mathrm{Ph\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}Cl + H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{OH^-} Ph\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}OO\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}Ph}$$

$$\mathrm{(CH_3\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C})_2O + H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} CH_3\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}OOH}$$

and from carboxylic acids.[596] Diacyl peroxides can also be prepared by the treatment of carboxylic acids with hydrogen peroxide in the presence of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide,[597] H_2SO_4, methanesulfonic acid, or some other dehydrating agent. Mixed alkyl–acyl peroxides (peresters) can be made from acyl halides and hydroperoxides.



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}X + R'OOH \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OOR'}$$

OS **III,** 619, 649; **V,** 805, 904; **50,** 15.

0-33 Preparation of Inorganic Esters
Nitrosooxy-de-hydroxylation, etc.

$$\mathrm{ROH + HONO \xrightarrow{H^+} RONO}$$

$$\mathrm{ROH + HONO_2 \xrightarrow{H^+} RONO_2}$$

$$\mathrm{ROH + SOCl_2 \longrightarrow ROSOOR}$$

$$\mathrm{ROH + POCl_3 \longrightarrow PO(OR)_3}$$

$$\mathrm{ROH + SO_3 \longrightarrow ROSO_2OH}$$

---

[589] For a review, see Hiatt, in Swern, "Organic Peroxides," vol. 2, pp. 1–151, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[590] Pearson and Edgington, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4607 (1962).

[591] Cookson, Davies, and Roberts, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1022 (1976).

[592] Johnson, Nidy, and Merritt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7960 (1978).

[593] Alcohols have also been reported to be the main products: San Filippo, Chern, and Valentine, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1678 (1975); Corey, Nicolaou, Shibasaki, Machida, and Shiner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3183 (1975).

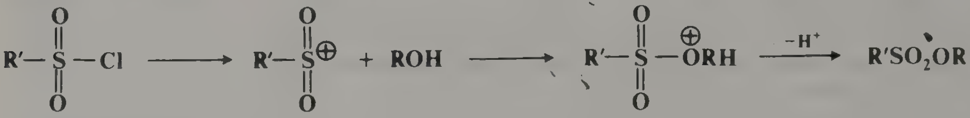
[594] Salomon and Salomon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4290 (1979).

[595] For a review of the synthesis and reactions of acyl peroxides and peresters, see Bouillon, Lick, and Schank, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Peroxides," pp. 279–309, Wiley, New York, 1983. For a review of the synthesis of acyl peroxides, see Hiatt, Ref. 589, vol. 2, pp. 799–929.

[596] See Silbert, Siegel, and Swern, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 1336 (1962).

[597] Greene and Kazan, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2168 (1963).

The above reactions show a few of the many inorganic esters that can be prepared by attack of an inorganic acid or, better, its acid halide or anhydride, on an alcohol.[598] Although for convenience all these similar reactions are grouped together, the mechanism in many cases is not nucleophilic substitution at R. The other possible mechanism is nucleophilic substitution at the inorganic central atom:[599]



or a corresponding S_N2 type (see p. 442). In such cases there is no alkyl–O cleavage. Mono esters of sulfuric acid (alkylsulfuric acids), which are important industrially because their salts are used as detergents, can be prepared by treating alcohols with SO_3, H_2SO_4, $ClSO_2OH$, or SO_3 complexes.[600] Alkyl nitrites can be conveniently prepared by an exchange reaction ROH + R′ONO → RONO + R′OH, where R = *t*-Bu.[600a] Primary amines can be converted to alkyl nitrates ($RNH_2 \rightarrow RONO_2$) by treatment with N_2O_4 at −78°C in the presence of an excess of amidine base.[601]

Alkyl halides are often used as substrates instead of alcohols. In such cases the *salt* of the inorganic acid is usually used and the mechanism is nucleophilic substitution at the carbon atom. An important example is the treatment of alkyl halides with silver nitrate to form alkyl nitrates. This is often used as a test for alkyl halides. In some cases there is competition from the central atom. Thus nitrite ion is an ambident nucleophile that can give nitrites or nitro compounds (see **0-62**). In some cases ethers can be substrates. Thus dialkyl or aryl alkyl ethers may be cleaved with anhydrous sulfonic acids.[602]

$$\mathrm{ROR' + R''SO_2OH \longrightarrow ROSO_2R'' + R'OH}$$

R″ may be alkyl or aryl. For dialkyl ethers, the reaction does not end as indicated above, since R′OH is rapidly converted to R′OR′ by the sulfonic acid (reaction **0-18**), which in turn is further cleaved to $R'OSO_2R''$ so that the product is a mixture of the two sulfonates. For aryl alkyl ethers, cleavage always takes place to give the phenol, which is not converted to the aryl ether under these conditions. Ethers can also be cleaved in a similar manner by mixed anhydrides of sulfonic and carboxylic acids[603] (prepared as in **0-34**).

OS **II,** 106, 108, 109, 112, 204, 412; **III,** 148, 471; **IV,** 955; **V,** 839. Also see OS **II,** 111.

0-34 Preparation of Mixed Organic–Inorganic Anhydrides[604]

Nitrooxy-de-acyloxy-substitution

$$\mathrm{(RCO)_2O + HONO_2 \longrightarrow RCOONO_2}$$

Mixed organic–inorganic anhydrides are seldom isolated, though they are often intermediates when acylation is carried out with acid derivatives catalyzed by inorganic acids. Sulfuric, perchloric, phosphoric, and other acids form similar anhydrides, most of which are unstable or not easily obtained because the equilibrium lies in the wrong direction. These intermediates are formed from amides, acids, and esters, as well as anhydrides. Organic anhydrides of phosphoric acid are more stable than most others and, for example, $RCOOPO(OH)_2$ can be prepared in the form of its salts.[605] Mixed anhydrides of carboxylic and sulfonic acids ($RCOOSO_2R'$) are obtained in high yields by treatment of sulfonic acids with acyl halides or (less preferred) anhydrides.[606]

---

[598] For a review, see Ref. 478, pp. 481–497.

[599] For an example involving nitrite formation, see Aldred, Williams, and Garley, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 777 (1982).

[600] For a review, see Sandler and Karo, Ref. 176, vol. 3, pp. 114–133 (1972).

[600a] Doyle, Terpstra, Pickering, and LaPoire, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3379 (1983).

[601] Barton and Narang, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1114 (1977).

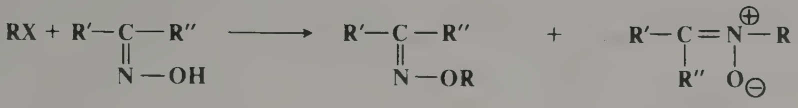
[602] Klamann and Weyerstahl, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 2070 (1965).

[603] Karger and Mazur, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 532, 540 (1971).

[604] For a review, see Satchell, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17,** 160–203 (1963), pp. 179–181.

OS **I,** 495; **50,** 9; **61,** 134.

0-35 Alkylation of Oximes



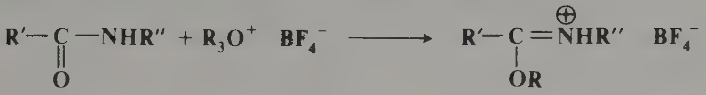
$$RX + R'-\underset{\underset{N-OH}{\|}}{C}-R'' \longrightarrow R'-\underset{\underset{N-OR}{\|}}{C}-R'' + R'-\underset{\underset{R''}{|}}{C}=\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{O^{\ominus}}{|}}{N}}-R$$

A nitrone

Oximes can be alkylated by alkyl halides or sulfates. N-Alkylation is a side reaction, yielding a nitrone. The relative yield of oxime ether and nitrone depends on the nature of the reagents, including the configuration of the oxime, and on the reaction conditions. For example, *anti*-benzaldoximes give nitrones, while the syn isomers give oxime ethers.[607]

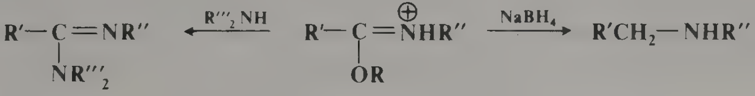
OS **III,** 172; **V,** 1031. Also see OS **V,** 269; **59,** 95.

0-36 Alkylation of Amides and Other Carbonyl Compounds



$$R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NHR'' + R_3O^+\ \ BF_4^- \longrightarrow R'-\underset{\underset{OR}{|}}{C}=\overset{\oplus}{N}HR''\ \ BF_4^-$$

The oxygen atom of amides can be alkylated by oxonium salts to give salts of N-alkylimino esters (alkoxymethyleniminium salts).[608] These ions can then be treated with a variety of nucleophiles. For example, they can be reduced to amines with $NaBH_4$ or converted to amidines with secondary amines.[609] The reaction is also good for lactams, lactones, and esters of carbonic acid but is generally unsuccessful for aldehydes, ketones, and open-chain carboxylic esters. O-Alkylation of amides has also been accomplished with alkyldiphenylsulfonium salts $Ar_2SR^+\ \ BF_4^-$.[610]



$$R'-\underset{\underset{NR'''_2}{|}}{C}=NR'' \xleftarrow{R'''_2NH} R'-\underset{\underset{OR}{|}}{C}=\overset{\oplus}{N}HR'' \xrightarrow{NaBH_4} R'CH_2-NHR''$$

There are no OS references, but see OS **59,** 132.

Sulfur Nucleophiles

Sulfur compounds[611] are better nucleophiles than their oxygen analogs (p. 307), so that in most cases these reactions take place faster and more smoothly than the corresponding reactions with oxygen nucleophiles.

---

[605] Avison, *J. Chem. Soc.* 732 (1955).

[606] Karger and Mazur, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 528 (1971).

[607] Buehler, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 261 (1967).

[608] For a review of this reaction and of these salts, see Kantlehner, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **9,** pt. 2, 181–277 (1979). For other reviews, see Granik, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **52,** 377–393 (1983); Ref. 69, pp. 128–137; Granik, Pyatin, and Glushkov, Ref. 293, pp. 749–755.

[609] Weintraub, Oles, and Kalish, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1679 (1968).

[610] Julia and Mestdagh, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 433 (1983).

[611] For a monograph on sulfur compounds, see Oae, "Organic Chemistry of Sulfur," Plenum, New York, 1977.

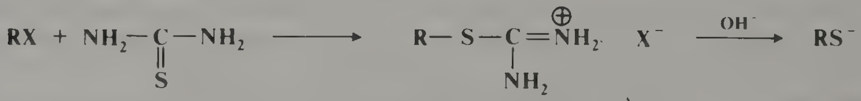
0-37 Attack by SH at an Alkyl Carbon. Formation of Mercaptans[612]

Mercapto-de-halogenation

$$RX + H_2S \longrightarrow RSH_2^+ \longrightarrow RSH + H^+$$

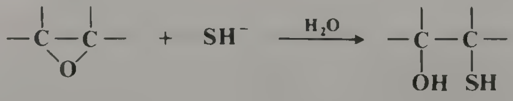
$$RX + HS^- \longrightarrow RSH$$

Sodium sulfhydride (NaSH) is a much better reagent for the formation of mercaptans from alkyl halides than H_2S and is used much more often.[613] It is easily prepared by bubbling H_2S into an alkaline solution. The reaction is most useful for primary halides. Secondary substrates give much lower yields, and the reaction fails completely for tertiary halides because elimination predominates. Sulfuric and sulfonic esters can be used instead of halides. Sulfides (RSR) are often side products.[613a] An indirect method for the conversion of an alkyl halide to a mercaptan consists of treatment with thiourea to give an isothiuronium salt, which with alkali or a high-molecular-weight amine is cleaved to the mercaptan:



Another indirect method is hydrolysis of Bunte salts (see reaction **0-41**).

Mercaptans have also been prepared from alcohols. One method involves treatment with H_2S and a catalyst such as Al_2O_3,[614] but this is limited to primary alcohols. Another method, involving the use of a fluoropyridinium salt and sodium N,N-dimethylthiocarbamate, can be applied to primary, secondary, allylic, and benzylic alcohols.[615] When epoxides are substrates, the products are β-hydroxy mercaptans:[616]



Tertiary nitro compounds give thiols ($RNO_2 \rightarrow RSH$) when treated with sulfur and sodium sulfide, followed by amalgamated aluminum.[617]

OS **III,** 363, 440; **IV,** 401, 491; **V,** 1046. Also see OS **II,** 345, 411, 573; **IV,** 232; **V,** 223; **59,** 183.

0-38 Attack by SR at an Alkyl Carbon. Formation of Sulfides

Alkylthio-de-halogenation

$$RX + R'S^- \longrightarrow RSR'$$

Sulfides can be prepared by treatment of alkyl halides with salts of mercaptans (thiolate ions).[618] R′ may be alkyl or aryl. As in **0-37**, RX cannot be a tertiary halide, and sulfuric and sulfonic esters can be used instead of halides. As in the Williamson reaction (**0-14**), yields are improved by phase-transfer catalysis.[619] Instead of RS^- ions, mercaptans themselves can be used, if the reaction is run in benzene in the presence of DBU (p. 915).[620]

---

[612] For a review, see Wardell, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 1, pp. 179–211, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[613] For a review, see Reid, "Organic Chemistry of Bivalent Sulfur," vol. 1, pp. 21–29, 32–35, vol. 5, pp. 27–34, Chemical Publishing Company, New York, 1958, 1963.

[613a] For a method of avoiding sulfide formation, see Vasil'tsov, Trofimov, and Amosova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **19,** 1197 (1983).

[614] Lucien, Barrault, Guisnet, and Maurel, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **3,** 15 (1979).

[615] Hojo, Yoshino, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 133, 437 (1977).

[616] For a review, see Ref. 612, pp. 246–251.

[617] Kornblum and Widmer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7086 (1978).

[618] For reviews, see Ref. 613, vol. 2, pp. 16–21, 24–29, vol. 3, pp. 11–14 (1960); Peach, in Patai, Rf. 612, pt. 2, pp. 721–735.

R may be tertiary if an alcohol is the substrate, e.g.,[621]

$$\mathbf{R_3COH + R'_3CSH \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} R_3CSCR'_3}$$

This reaction is analogous to **0-18**. Primary and secondary alcohols can be converted to alkyl aryl sulfides (ROH → RSAr) in high yields by treatment with Bu_3P and an N-(arylthio)succinimide in benzene.[622]

Thiolate ions are also useful for the demethylation of certain ethers, esters, amines, and quaternary ammonium salts. Aryl methyl ethers[623] can be cleaved by heating with EtS^- in the dipolar aprotic solvent dimethylformamide: $ROAr + EtS^- \rightarrow ArO^- + EtSR$.[624] Similarly, MeSLi[625] or *n*-PrSLi[626] in HMPT can be used to cleave methyl esters of sterically hindered acids, e.g., methyl mesitoate. Carboxylic esters and lactones are cleaved (the lactones give ω-alkylthio carboxylic acids) with a mercaptan and $AlCl_3$ or $AlBr_3$.[627] Esters and lactones are similarly cleaved in high yield by phenyl selenide ion $PhSe^-$.[628] A good method for the demethylation of quaternary ammonium salts consists of refluxing them with PhS^- in butanone:[629]

$$\mathbf{R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}Me + PhS^- \xrightarrow{MeCOEt} R_3N + PhSMe}$$

A methyl group is cleaved more readily than other simple alkyl groups (such as ethyl), though loss of these groups competes, but benzyl and allyl groups cleave even more easily, and this is a useful procedure for the cleavage of benzyl and allyl groups from quaternary ammonium salts, even if methyl groups are also present.[630] One alkyl group is similarly cleaved from tertiary amines by PhSNa, $PhCH_2SNa$, or PhSeLi, in the presence of a Pd or Ru catalyst, to give secondary amines and sulfides or selenides.[631] The reaction with PhSeLi (lithium phenylselenide, also called lithium phenylselenolate) could be extended to primary and secondary amines by first converting these to $RN(SiMe_3)_2$ or R_2NSiMe_3, respectively.[632]

Symmetrical sulfides can also be prepared by treatment of an alkyl halide with sodium sulfide.

$$\mathbf{2RX + Na_2S \longrightarrow RSR}$$

---

[619] For a review of the use of phase transfer catalysis to prepare sulfur-containing compounds, see Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," Ref. 346, pp. 221–233.

[620] Ono, Miyake, Saito, and Kaji, *Synthesis* 952 (1980). See also Ferreira, Comasseto, and Braga, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 595 (1982); Ando, Furuhata, Tsumaki, and Sekiguchi, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 627 (1982).

[621] Fehnel and Carmack, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 84 (1949); Cain, Evans, and Lee, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1694 (1962).

[622] Walker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4475 (1977). See the references in this paper for other methods of converting alcohols to sulfides.

[623] Certain other sulfur-containing reagents also cleave methyl and other ethers: see Hanessian and Guindon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2305 (1980); Williard and Fryhle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3731 (1980); Node, Nishide, Fuji, and Fujita, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4275 (1980). For cleavage with selenium-containing reagents, see Evers and Christiaens, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 377 (1983).

[624] Feutrill and Mirrington, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1327 (1970); *Aust. J. Chem.* **25,** 1719, 1731 (1972).

[625] Kelly, Dali, and Tsang, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3859 (1977).

[626] Bartlett and Johnson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4459 (1970).

[627] Node, Nishide, Ochiai, Fuji, and Fujita, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5163 (1981).

[628] Scarborough and Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4361 (1977); Liotta and Santiesteban, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4369 (1977); Liotta, Sunay, Santiesteban, and Markiewicz, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2605 (1981).

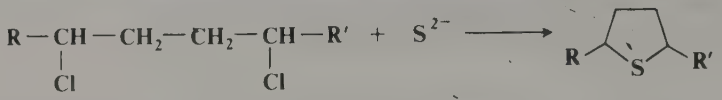
[629] Shamma, Deno, and Remar, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1375 (1966). For alternative procedures, see Hutchins and Dux, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1961 (1973); Posner and Ting, *Synth. Commun.* **4,** 355 (1974).

[630] Kametani, Kigasawa, Hiiragi, Wagatsuma, and Wakisaka, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 635 (1969).

[631] Murahashi and Yano, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 270 (1979); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2456 (1980). See also Reich and Cohen, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3148 (1979).

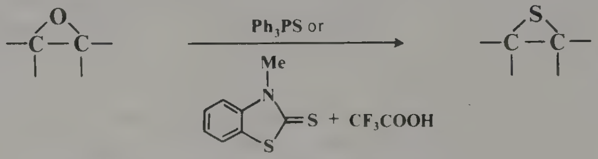
[632] Murahashi and Yano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2456 (1980).

This reaction may be carried out internally, by addition of sulfide ions to 1,4- or 1,5-dihalides, to prepare five- and six-membered sulfur-containing heterocyclic rings.



Certain larger rings have also been closed in this way.[633]

Selenides and tellurides can be prepared similarly.[634] When epoxides are substrates, β-hydroxy sulfides are obtained in a manner analogous to that mentioned in **0-37**. Epoxides can also be directly converted to episulfides,[635] by treatment with a phosphine sulfide such as Ph_3PS[636] or with 3-methylbenzothiazole-2-thione and trifluoroacetic acid.[637]



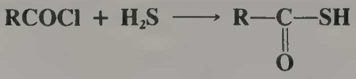
Alkyl halides, treated with sulfides, give sulfonium salts.[638]

$$\mathbf{RI + R'_2S \longrightarrow R'_2SR^+\ I^-}$$

Other leaving groups have also been used for this purpose.[639]

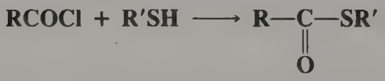
OS **II,** 31, 345, 547, 576; **III,** 332, 751, 763; **IV,** 396, 667, 892, 967; **V,** 562, 780, 1046; **50,** 31, 33, 72; **51,** 70; **53,** 1, 90; **54,** 19, 27; **56,** 72, 77; **57,** 53; **58,** 143; **59,** 190, 202. See also OS **55,** 127.

0-39 Attack by SH or SR at an Acyl Carbon[640]



$$\mathbf{RCOCl + H_2S \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}SH}$$

Mercapto-de-halogenation



$$\mathbf{RCOCl + R'SH \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}SR'}$$

Alkylthio-de-halogenation

Thiol acids and thiol esters[641] can be prepared in this manner, which is analogous to **0-9** and **0-25**. Anhydrides and aryl esters (RCOOAr)[642] are also used as substrates, but the reagents in these cases are usually SH^- and SR^-. Thiol esters can also be prepared by treatment of carboxylic acids with trisalkylthioboranes $B(SR)_3$[643] or with a thiol RSH and either polyphosphate ester or phenyl dichlorophosphate $PhOPOCl_2$.[644] Esters RCOOR′ can be converted to thiol esters RCOSR″ by treatment with trimethylsilyl sulfides Me_3SiSR'' and $AlCl_3$.[645]

---

[633] See Hammerschmidt, Bieber, and Vögtle, *Chem. Ber.* **111,** 2445 (1978); Singh, Menrotra, and Regen, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 409 (1981).

[634] Brandsma and Wijers, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **82,** 68 (1963).

[635] For a review of episulfide formation, see Fokin and Kolomiets, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **44,** 138–153 (1975).

[636] Chan and Finkenbine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2880 (1972).

[637] Calō, Lopez, Marchese, and Pesce, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 621 (1975).

[638] For a review of the synthesis of sulfonium salts, see Lowe, in Stirling, Ref. 318, pp. 267–312.

[639] See Badet, Jacob, and Julia, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 887 (1981); Badet and Julia, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1101 (1979), and references cited in the latter paper.

[640] For a review, see Ref. 604, pp. 182–184.

[641] For reviews of these compounds, see Scheithauer and Mayer, *Top. Sulfur Chem.* **4,** 1–373 (1979); Ref. 613, vol. 4, pp. 7–130 (1962).

[642] Hirabayashi, Mizuta, and Mazume, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **38,** 320 (1965).

[643] Pelter, Levitt, Smith, and Jones, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1672 (1977).

OS **III,** 116, 599; **IV,** 924, 928; **61,** 134.

0-40 Formation of Disulfides

$$2RX + S_2^{2-} \longrightarrow RSSR + 2X^-$$

Disulfides[646] can be prepared by treatment of alkyl halides with disulfide ions and also indirectly by the reaction of Bunte salts (see **0-41**) with acid solutions of iodide, thiocyanate ion, or thiourea,[647] or by pyrolysis or treatment with hydrogen peroxide. Alkyl halides also give disulfides when refluxed with sulfur and NaOH.[648]

There are no OS references, but a similar preparation of a polysulfide may be found in OS **IV,** 295.

0-41 Formation of Bunte Salts
Sufonatothio-de-halogenation

$$RX + S_2O_3^{2-} \longrightarrow R—S—SO_3^- + X^-$$

Primary and secondary but not tertiary alkyl halides are easily converted to Bunte salts ($RSSO_3^-$) by treatment with thiosulfate ion.[649] Bunte salts can be hydrolyzed with acids to give the corresponding mercaptans[650] or converted to disulfides, tetrasulfides, or pentasulfides.[651]

OS **58,** 147.

0-42 Alkylation of Sulfinic Acid Salts
Alkylsulfonyl-de-halogenation

$$RX + R'SO_2^- \longrightarrow R—SO_2—R' + X^-$$

Alkyl halides or alkyl sulfates, treated with the salts of sulfinic acids, give sulfones. Alkyl sulfinates R′SO—OR may be side products.[652]

OS **IV,** 674. See also OS **54,** 33.

0-43 Attack by Sulfite Ion
Sulfonato-de-halogenation

$$RX + SO_3^{2-} \longrightarrow R—SO_2O^- + X^-$$

Salts of sulfonic acids may be prepared by treatment of primary or secondary alkyl halides with sulfite ion.[653] Even tertiary halides have been used, though the yields are low. Epoxides treated with bisulfite give β-hydroxy sulfonic acids.[654]

---

[644] Imamoto, Kodera, and Yokoyama, *Synthesis* 134 (1982); Liu and Sabesan, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 2645 (1980). For other methods of converting acids to thiol esters, see the references given in these papers.

[645] Mukaiyama, Takeda, and Atsumi, *Chem. Lett.* 187 (1974). See also Hatch and Weinreb, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3960 (1977); Cohen and Gapinski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4319 (1978).

[646] For a review of disulfides, see Ref. 613, vol. 3, pp. 362–462 (1960).

[647] Milligan and Swan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2712 (1962).

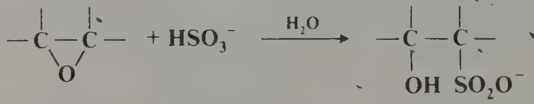
[648] Chorbadjiev, Roumian, and Markov, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **319,** 1036 (1977).

[649] For reviews of Bunte salts, see Milligan and Swan, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **12,** 72–94 (1962); Distler, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 544–553 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 520–529].

[650] Kice, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 957 (1963).

[651] Milligan, Saville, and Swan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3608 (1963).

[652] Schank, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **702,** 75 (1967), **714,** 117 (1968); Meek and Fowler, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3422 (1968).



OS **II**, 558, 564; **IV**, 529.

0-44 Formation of Alkyl Thiocyanates
Thiocyanato-de-halogenation

$$RX + SCN^- \longrightarrow RSCN + X^-$$

Alkyl halides or sulfuric or sulfonic esters can be heated with sodium or potassium thiocyanate to give alkyl thiocyanates,[655] though the attack by the analogous cyanate ion (**0-64**) gives exclusive N-alkylation. Primary amines can be converted to thiocyanates by the Katritzky pyrylium–pyridinium method (p. 313).[656]

OS **II**, 366.

Nitrogen Nucleophiles

A. Attack by NH_2, NHR, or NR_2 at an Alkyl Carbon

0-45 Alkylation of Amines
Amino-de-halogenation

$$\begin{array}{llllll}
3RX + NH_3 & \longrightarrow & R_3N & + RX & \longrightarrow & R_4N^+ \quad X^- \\
2RX + R'NH_2 & \longrightarrow & R_2R'N & + RX & \longrightarrow & R_3R'N^+ \quad X^- \\
RX + R'R''NH & \longrightarrow & RR'R''N & + RX & \longrightarrow & R_2R'R''N^+ \quad X^- \\
RX + R'R''R'''N & \longrightarrow & RR'R''R'''N^+ \quad X^- & & &
\end{array}$$

The reaction between alkyl halides and ammonia or primary amines is not usually a feasible method for the preparation of primary or secondary amines, since they are stronger bases than ammonia and preferentially attack the substrate. However, the reaction is very useful for the preparation of tertiary amines[657] and quaternary ammonium salts. If ammonia is the nucleophile, the three or four alkyl groups on the nitrogen of the product must be identical. If a primary, secondary, or tertiary amine is used, then different alkyl groups may be placed on the same nitrogen atom. The conversion of tertiary amines to quaternary salts is called the *Menschutkin reaction.*[658] It is sometimes possible to use this method for the preparation of a primary amine by the use of a large excess of ammonia or a secondary amine by the use of a large excess of primary amine. However, the limitations of this approach can be seen in the reaction of a saturated solution of ammonia in 90% ethanol with ethyl bromide in a 16:1 molar ratio, under which conditions the yield of primary amine was 34.2% (at a 1:1 ratio the yield was 11.3%).[659] One type of substrate that does give reasonable yields of primary amine (provided a large excess of NH_3 is used) are α-halo acids, which are converted to amino acids.

---

[653] For a review, see Gilbert, "Sulfonation and Related Reactions," pp. 136–148, 161–163, Interscience, New York, 1965.

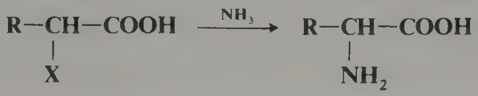
[654] For a discussion, see Yoneda, Griffin, and Carlyle, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 375 (1975).

[655] For reviews of thiocyanates, see Guy, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Cyanates and Their Thio Derivatives," pt. 2, pp. 819–886, Wiley, New York, 1977; Ref. 613, vol. 6, pp. 34–37 (1965).

[656] Katritzky, Gruntz, Mongelli, and Rezende, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1953 (1979). For the conversion of primary alcohols to thiocyanates, see Tamura, Kawasaki, Adachi, Tanio, and Kita, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4417 (1977).

[657] For reviews of this reaction, see Gibson, in Patai, Ref. 309, pp. 45–55; Spialter and Pappalardo, "The Acyclic Aliphatic Tertiary Amines," pp. 14–29, Macmillan, New York, 1965.

[658] For a review of stereoselectivity in this reaction, especially where the tertiary nitrogen is included in a ring, see Bottini, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 89–142 (1970). For reviews of quaternization of heteroaromatic rings, see Zoltewicz and Deady, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **22,** 71–121 (1978); Duffin, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **3,** 1–56 (1964).



$$\underset{X}{R-CH}-COOH \xrightarrow{NH_3} \underset{NH_2}{R-CH}-COOH$$

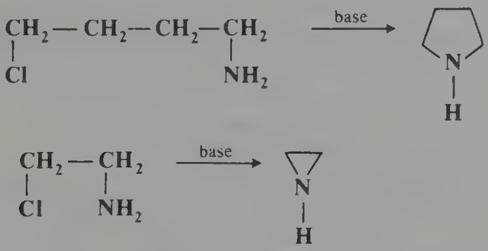
Primary amines can be prepared from alkyl halides by **0-46**, by **0-63** followed by reduction of the azide (**9-53**), or, more commonly, by the Gabriel synthesis (**0-60**).

The immediate product in any particular step is the protonated amine, which, however, rapidly loses a proton to another molecule of ammonia or amine in an equilibrium process, e.g.,

$$RX + R_2NH \longrightarrow R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}H + R_2NH \rightleftharpoons R_3N + R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2$$

When it is desired to convert a primary or secondary amine directly to the quaternary salt (*exhaustive alkylation*), then the rate can be increased by the addition of a nonnucleophilic strong base that serves to remove the proton from $RR'NH_2^+$ or $RR'R''NH^+$ and thus liberates the amine to attack another molecule of RX.[660]

The conjugate bases of ammonia and of primary and secondary amines (NH_2^-, RNH^-, R_2N^-) are sometimes used as nucleophiles. However, in most cases they offer no advantages over ammonia or the amines, since the latter are basic enough. This is in contrast to the analogous methods **0-1**, **0-14**, **0-37** and **0-38**. Primary arylamines are easily alkylated, but diaryl- and triarylamines are very poor nucleophiles. However, the reaction has been carried out with diarylamines.[661] Sulfates or sulfonates can be used instead of halides. The reaction can be carried out intramolecularly to give cyclic amines, with three-, five-, and six-membered (but not four-membered) rings being easily prepared. Thus, 4-chloro-1-aminobutane treated with base gives pyrrolidine, and 2-chloroethylamine gives aziridine[662] (analogous to **0-15**):



As usual, tertiary substrates do not give the reaction at all but undergo preferential elimination. However, tertiary (but not primary or secondary) halides R_3CCl can be converted to primary amines R_3CNH_2 by treatment with NCl_3 and $AlCl_3$[663] in a reaction related to **0-52**.

---

[659] Werner, *J. Chem. Soc.* **113**, 899 (1918).

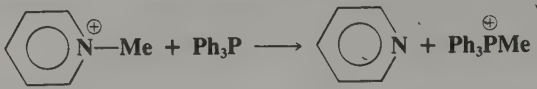
[660] Sommer and Jackson, *J. Org. Chem.* **35**, 1558 (1970); Sommer, Lipp, and Jackson, *J. Org. Chem.* **36**, 824 (1971).

[661] Patai and Weiss, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1035 (1959).

[662] For a review of aziridine formation by this method, see Dermer and Ham, Ref. 367, pp. 1–59.

[663] Kovacic and Lowery, *J. Org. Chem.* **34**, 911 (1969); Strand and Kovacic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 2977 (1973).

Phosphines behave similarly, and compounds of the type R_3P and $R_4P^+ \ X^-$ can be so prepared. The reaction between triphenylphosphine and quaternary salts of nitrogen heterocycles in an aprotic solvent is probably the best way of dealkylating the heterocycles, e.g.,[664]



OS **I,** 23, 48, 102, 300, 488; **II,** 85, 183, 290, 328, 374, 397, 419, 563; **III,** 50, 148, 254, 256, 495, 504, 523, 705, 753, 774, 813, 848; **IV,** 84, 98, 383, 433, 466, 582, 585, 980; **V,** 88, 124, 306, 361, 434, 499, 541, 555, 608, 736, 751, 758, 769, 825, 883, 985, 989, 1018, 1085, 1145; **51,** 53; **53,** 13, 111; **54,** 58, 60, 93; **55,** 3, 114; **56,** 77; **58,** 86. Also see OS **II,** 395; **IV,** 950.

0-46 Conversion of Alkyl Halides to Primary Amines with Hexamethylenetetramine

Amino-de-halogenation (overall transformation)

$$\mathrm{RX + (CH_2)_6N_4 \longrightarrow N_3(CH_2)_6\overset{\oplus}{N}R\ X^- \xrightarrow[\text{EtOH}]{\text{HCl}} RNH_2}$$

Primary amines can be prepared from alkyl halides by the use of hexamethylenetetramine[665] followed by cleavage of the resulting salt with ethanolic HCl. The method, called the *Delépine reaction*, is most successful for active halides such as allylic and benzylic halides and α-halo ketones, and for primary iodides.

OS **V,** 121.

0-47 Conversion of Alkyl Halides to Secondary Amines With Cyanamide

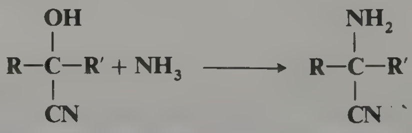
$$\mathrm{2RX + {}^{2-}N{-}CN \longrightarrow R_2N{-}CN \xrightarrow[2.\,OH^-]{1.\,H_3O^+} R_2NH}$$

A convenient way of obtaining secondary amines without contamination by primary or tertiary amines involves treatment of alkyl halides with the sodium or calcium salt of cyanamide $NH_2{-}CN$ to give disubstituted cyanamides, which are then hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to secondary amines. Good yields are obtained when the reaction is carried out under phase-transfer conditions.[666] R may be primary, secondary, allylic, or benzylic. 1,ω-Dihalides give cyclic secondary amines.

OS **I,** 203.

0-48 Replacement of a Hydroxy by an Amino Group

Amino-de-hydroxylation



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{CN}{\overset{OH}{C}}{-}R' + NH_3 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{CN}{\overset{NH_2}{C}}{-}R'}$$

Cyanohydrins can be converted to amines by treatment with ammonia. The use of primary or secondary amines instead of ammonia leads to secondary and tertiary cyanoamines, respectively.

---

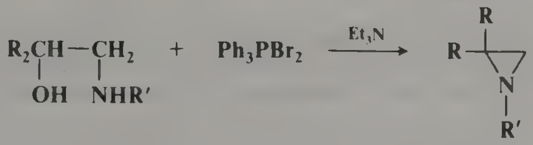
[664] For example, see Deady, Finlayson, and Korytsky, *Aust. J. Chem.* **32,** 1735 (1979).

[665] For a review of the reactions of this reagent, see Blažević, Kolbah, Belin, Šunjić, and Kajfež, *Synthesis* 161–176 (1979).

[666] Jończyk, Ochal, and Mąkosza, *Synthesis* 882 (1978).

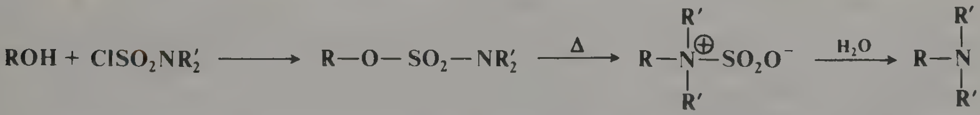
It is more common to perform the conversion of an aldehyde or ketone directly to the cyanoamine without isolation of the cyanohydrin (see **6-50**). α-Hydroxy ketones (acyloins and benzoins) behave similarly.[667] Primary and secondary alcohols ROH (but not methanol) can be converted to tertiary amines[668] R'_2NR by treatment with the secondary amine R'_2NH and $(t\text{-BuO})_3Al$ in the presence of Raney nickel.[669] The use of aniline gives secondary amines PhNHR.

β-Amino alcohols give aziridines when treated with triphenylphosphine dibromide in the presence of triethylamine:[670]



The fact that inversion takes place at the OH carbon indicates that an SN2 mechanism is involved, with $OPPh_3$ as the leaving group.

Alcohols can be converted to amines in an indirect manner.[671] The salt of the alcohol is treated with a sulfamoyl chloride to give a sulfonamate ester which on heating rearranges to a zwitterion.[672] Hydrolysis of this gives the amine:



$$ROH + ClSO_2NR'_2 \longrightarrow R{-}O{-}SO_2{-}NR'_2 \xrightarrow{\Delta} R{-}\overset{R'}{\underset{R'}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{N}}}}{}^{\oplus}{-}SO_2O^- \xrightarrow{H_2O} R{-}\overset{R'}{\underset{R'}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{N}}}}$$

The reaction has been carried out with R′ = methyl to give tertiary amines. The rearrangement step is an SNi process, as shown by retention of configuration at R. The success of the method increases with the stability of R^+ as a carbocation (compatible with the ion-pair nature of the SNi reaction, see p. 287). Therefore it is a particularly useful method for the preparation of tertiary alkylamines, which are difficult to prepare in other ways. In another indirect method, primary alcohols are converted to alkyloxyphosphonium perchlorates which in dimethylformamide successfully *monoalkylate* not only secondary but also primary amines.[673]

$$ROH \xrightarrow[2.\,NH_4ClO_4]{1.\,CCl_4\text{–}P(NMe_2)_3} \overset{\oplus}{ROP}(NMe_2)_3 \quad ClO_4^- \xrightarrow[R'R''NH]{DMF} RR'R''N + OP(NMe_2)_3$$

Thus by this means secondary as well as tertiary amines can be prepared in good yields.

A solution of the sodium salt of N-methylaniline in HMPT can be used to cleave the methyl group from aryl methyl ethers:[674] $ArOMe + PhNMe^- \rightarrow ArO^- + PhNMe_2$. This reagent also cleaves benzyl groups. In a similar reaction, methyl groups of aryl methyl ethers can be cleaved with lithium diphenylphosphide Ph_2PLi.[675] This reaction is specific for methyl ethers and can be carried out in the presence of ethyl ethers with high selectivity.

---

[667] For example, see Klemmensen, Schroll, and Lawesson, *Ark. Kemi* **28,** 405 (1968).

[668] For other methods of converting certain alcohols to secondary and tertiary amines, see Atkins, Walker, and Manyik, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3821 (1970); Murahashi, Shimamura, and Moritani, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 931 (1975); Murahashi, Kondo, and Hakata, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 229 (1982); Baiker and Richarz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1937 (1977); *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 1169 (1978); *Synth. Commun.* **8,** 27 (1978); Watanabe, Tsuji, and Ohsugi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2667 (1981); Grigg, Mitchell, Sutthivaiyakit, and Tongpenyai, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 611 (1981); Arcelli, Bui-The-Khai, and Porzi, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **235,** 93 (1982).

[669] Botta, De Angelis, and Nicoletti, *Synthesis* 722 (1977).

[670] Okada, Ichimura, and Sudo, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 1185 (1970).

[671] For some other indirect methods, see Burgess, Penton, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5224 (1970); Hendrickson and Joffee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4083 (1973); Trost and Keinan, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3451 (1979).

[672] White and Ellinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5261 (1965).

[673] Castro and Selve, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4368 (1971). For a similar method, see Tanigawa, Murahashi, and Moritani, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 471 (1975).

[674] Loubinoux, Coudert, and Guillaumet, *Synthesis* 638 (1980).

OS **II,** 29, 231; **IV,** 91, 283; **56,** 40, 44. Also see OS **I,** 473; **III,** 272, 471.

0-49 Transamination

Alkylamino-de-amination

$$RNH_2 + R'NH^- \longrightarrow RR'NH + NH_2^-$$

Where the nucleophile is the conjugate base of a primary amine, NH_2 can be a leaving group. The method has been used to prepare secondary amines.[676] In another process, primary amines are converted to secondary amines in which both R groups are the same ($2RNH_2 \rightarrow R_2NH + NH_3$)[677] by refluxing in xylene in the presence of Raney nickel.[678] Quaternary salts can be dealkylated with ethanolamine.[679]

$$R_4N^+ + NH_2CH_2CH_2OH \longrightarrow R_3N + \overset{\oplus}{R}NH_2CH_2CH_2OH$$

In this reaction, methyl groups are cleaved in preference to other saturated alkyl groups. A similar reaction takes place between a Mannich base (see **6-16**) and a secondary amine, where the mechanism is elimination–addition[680] (see p. 298). See also **9-5**.

OS **V,** 1018.

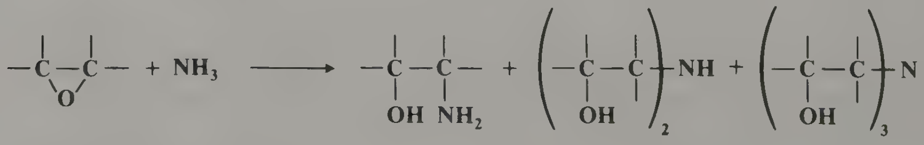
0-50 Alkylation of Amines with Diazo Compounds

Hydro,dialkylamino-de-diazo-bisubstitution

$$CR_2N_2 + R'_2NH \xrightarrow{BF_3} CHR_2NR'_2$$

The reaction of diazo compounds with amines is similar to **0-17**.[681] The acidity of amines is not great enough for the reaction to proceed without a catalyst, but BF_3, which converts the amine to the $F_3B{-}NHR'_2$ complex, enables the reaction to take place. Cuprous cyanide can also be used as a catalyst.[682] The most common substrate is diazomethane,[493] in which case this is a method for the methylation of amines. Ammonia has been used as the amine but, as in the case of **0-45**, mixtures of primary, secondary, and tertiary amines are obtained. Primary aliphatic amines give mixtures of secondary and tertiary amines. Secondary amines give successful alkylation. Primary aromatic amines also give the reaction, but diaryl or arylalkylamines react very poorly.

0-51 Amination of Epoxides



---

[675] Ireland and Walba, *Org. Synth.* **56,** 44.

[676] Baltzly and Blackman, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1158 (1963).

[677] In a similar manner, a mixture of primary amines can be converted to a mixed secondary amine. For a review of the mechanism, see Geller, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 297–306 (1978).

[678] De Angelis, Grgurina, and Nicoletti, *Synthesis* 70 (1979); See also Ballantine, Purnell, Rayanakorn, Thomas, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 9 (1981); Arcelli, Bui-The-Khai, and Porzi, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **231,** C31 (1982); Jung, Fellmann, and Garrou, *Organometallics* **2,** 1042 (1983).

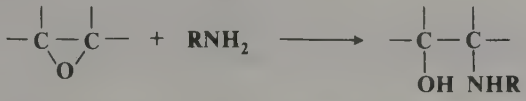
[679] Hünig and Baron, *Chem. Ber.* **90,** 395, 403 (1957).

[680] See, for example, Casy and Myers, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4639 (1964).

[681] Müller, Huber-Emden, and Rundel, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **623,** 34 (1959).

[682] Saegusa, Ito, Kobayashi, Hirota, and Shimizu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6131 (1966).

The reaction between epoxides and ammonia is a general and useful method for the preparation of β-hydroxyamines.[683] Ammonia gives largely the primary amine, but also some secondary and tertiary amines. The useful solvents, the ethanolamines, are prepared by this reaction. Primary and secondary amines give, respectively, secondary and tertiary amines, e.g.,



$$-\overset{|}{C}-\overset{|}{C}-\ (\text{epoxide, }-O-) + RNH_2 \longrightarrow -\underset{OH}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{NHR}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-$$

Episulfides, which can be generated in situ in various ways, react similarly to give β-amino mercaptans,[684] and aziridines give 1,2-diamines.[685] Triphenylphosphine similarly reacts with epoxides to give an intermediate that then undergoes elimination to give olefins (see the Wittig reaction, **6-47**).

There are no OS references, but see OS **58,** 86 for a related reaction.

0-52 Amination of Alkanes

Amino-de-hydrogenation or **Amination**

$$R_3CH + NCl_3 \xrightarrow[0\text{–}10°C]{AlCl_3} R_3CNH_2$$

Alkanes, arylalkanes, and cycloalkanes can be aminated, at tertiary positions only, by treatment with trichloroamine and aluminum chloride at 0 to 10°C.[686] For example, *p*-cymene (p-MeC$_6$H$_4$CHMe$_2$) gives p-MeC$_6$H$_4$CMe$_2$NH$_2$, methylcyclopentane gives 1-amino-1-methylcyclopentane, and adamantane gives 1-aminoadamantane, all in good yields. This is a useful reaction, since there are not many other methods for the preparation of *t*-alkylamines. The mechanism has been rationalized as an SN1 process with H$^-$ as the leaving group:[686]

$$NCl_3 + AlCl_3 \longrightarrow (Cl_2N{-}AlCl_3)^-Cl^+$$

$$R_3CH \xrightarrow{Cl^+} R_3C^+ \xrightarrow{NCl_2^-} R_3CNCl_2 \xrightarrow[2H^+]{-2Cl^+} R_3CNH_2$$

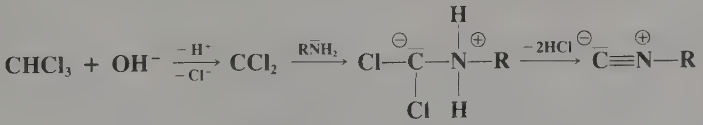
See also **2-10**.

OS **V,** 35.

0-53 Formation of Isonitriles

$$CHCl_3 + RNH_2 \xrightarrow{OH^-} R{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}{\equiv}\bar{C}^{\ominus}$$

Reaction with chloroform under basic conditions is a common test for primary amines, both aliphatic and aromatic, since isonitriles have very strong bad odors. The reaction probably proceeds by an SN1cB mechanism with dichlorocarbene as an intermediate:



$$CHCl_3 + OH^- \xrightarrow[-Cl^-]{-H^+} CCl_2 \xrightarrow{R\bar{N}H_2} Cl{-}\overset{\ominus}{\underset{Cl}{C}}{-}\overset{H}{\underset{H}{\overset{\oplus}{N}}}{-}R \xrightarrow{-2HCl} \overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}{\equiv}\overset{\oplus}{N}{-}R$$

---

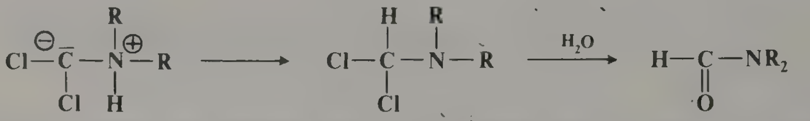
[683] For an example, see McManus, Larson, and Hearn, *Synth. Commun.* **3,** 177 (1973).

[684] Reynolds, Massad, Fields, and Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 5109 (1961); Reynolds, Fields, and Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 5111, 5116, 5119, 5125 (1961); Wineman, Gollis, James, and Pomponi, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4222 (1962).

[685] For a review, see Dermer and Ham, Ref. 367, pp. 262–268.

[686] Kovacic and Chaudhary, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 3563 (1967); Strand and Kovacic, Ref. 663; Wnuk, Chaudhary, and Kovacic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5678 (1976), and references cited in these papers.

The reaction can also be used synthetically for the preparation of isonitriles, though yields are generally not high.[687] An improved procedure has been reported.[688] When secondary amines are involved, the adduct cannot lose two moles of HCl. Instead it is hydrolyzed to an N,N-disubstituted formamide:[689]



$$\mathrm{Cl}-\overset{\ominus}{\underset{\mathrm{Cl}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\overset{\mathrm{R}}{\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{N}^{\oplus}}}-\mathrm{R} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl}-\overset{\mathrm{H}}{\underset{\mathrm{Cl}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\overset{\mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{N}}-\mathrm{R} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{H}-\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{NR_2}$$

OS **55**, 96.

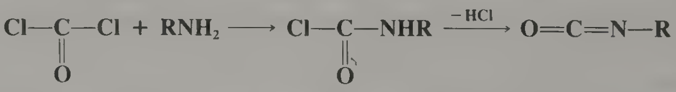
B. Attack by NH_2, NHR, or NR_2 at an Acyl Carbon[690]

0-54 Acylation of Amines by Acyl Halides
Amino-de-halogenation

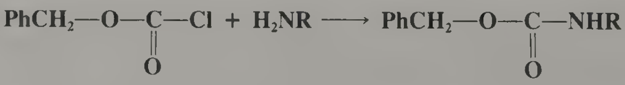
$$\mathrm{RCOX + NH_3 \longrightarrow RCONH_2 + HX}$$

The treatment of acyl halides with ammonia or amines is a very general reaction for the preparation of amides.[691] The reaction is highly exothermic and must be carefully controlled, usually by cooling or dilution. Ammonia gives unsubstituted amides, primary amines give N-substituted amides, and secondary amines give N,N-disubstituted amides. Arylamines can be similarly acylated. In some cases aqueous alkali is added to combine with the liberated HCl. This is called the *Schotten–Baumann procedure* as in **0-22**.

Hydrazine and hydroxylamine also react with acyl halides to give, respectively, hydrazides $RCONHNH_2$[692] and hydroxamic acids RCONHOH,[692a] and these compounds are often made in this way. When phosgene is the acyl halide, both aliphatic and aromatic primary amines give chloroformamides ClCONHR that lose HCl to give isocyanates RNCO.[693] This is one of the most common methods for the preparation of isocyanates.[694] Thiophosgene, similarly treated, gives isothiocyanates. A safer substitute for phosgene in this reaction is trichloromethyl chloroformate CCl_3OCOCl.[695] When chloroformates ROCOCl are treated with primary amines, carbamates ROCONHR′ are obtained. An example of this reaction is the use of carbobenzoxy chloride to protect the amino group of amino acids and peptides:



$$\mathrm{Cl}-\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{RNH_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl}-\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{NHR} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{HCl}} \mathrm{O{=}C{=}N{-}R}$$



$$\mathrm{PhCH_2}-\mathrm{O}-\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{H_2NR} \longrightarrow \mathrm{PhCH_2}-\mathrm{O}-\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{NHR}$$

---

[687] For a review of isonitriles, see Periasamy and Walborsky, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **11**, 293–311 (1979).

[688] Weber and Gokel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1637 (1972); Weber, Gokel, and Ugi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11**, 530 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84**, 587].

[689] Saunders and Murray, *Tetrahedron* **6**, 88 (1959); Frankel, Feuer, and Bank, *Tetrahedron Lett.* no. 7, 5 (1959).

[690] For a review, see Challis and Butler, in Patai, Ref. 309, pp. 279–290.

[691] For review, see Beckwith, in Zabicky, Ref. 455, pp. 73–185.

[692] For a review of hydrazides, see Paulsen and Stoye, in Zabicky, Ref. 455, pp. 515–600.

[692a] For an improved method, see Ando and Tsumaki, *Synth. Commun.* **13**, 1053 (1983).

[693] For reviews of the preparation and reactions of isocyanates and isothiocyanates, see, respectively, the articles by Richter and Ulrich, pp. 619–818, and Drobnica, Kristián, and Augustín, pp. 1003–1221, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Cyanates and Their Thio Derivatives," pt. 2, Wiley, New York, 1977.

[694] For examples, see Ozaki, *Chem. Rev.* **72**, 457–496 (1972), pp. 457–460. For a review of the industrial preparation of isocyanates by this reaction, see Twitchett, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **3**, 209–230 (1974).

[695] Kurita and Iwakura, *Org. Synth.* **59**, 195.

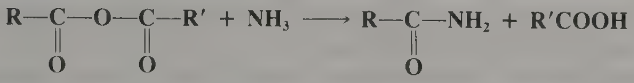
Amino groups in general are often protected by conversion to amides. The treatment of acyl halides with lithium nitride gives N,N-diacyl amides (triacylamines):[696]

$$\mathbf{3RCOCl + Li_3N \longrightarrow (RCO)_3N}$$

The reactions proceed by the tetrahedral mechanism.[697]

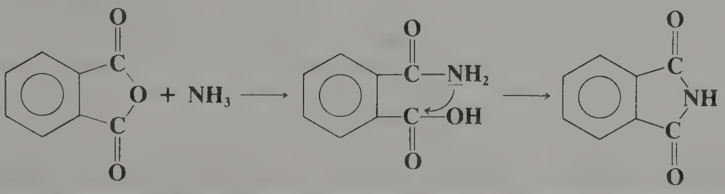
OS **I,** 99, 165; **II,** 76, 208, 278, 328, 453; **III,** 167, 375, 415, 488, 490, 613; **IV,** 339, 411, 521, 620, 780; **V,** 201, 336; **54,** 88; **59,** 195; **60,** 72; **61,** 17. See also OS **61,** 71.

0-55 Acylation of Amines by Anhydrides
Amino-de-acyloxy-substitution



$$\mathbf{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' + NH_3 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2 + R'COOH}$$

This reaction, similar in scope and mechanism to **0-54**, can be carried out with ammonia or primary or secondary amines.[698] However, ammonia and primary amines may also give imides, in which two acyl groups are attached to the nitrogen. This is especially easy with cyclic anhydrides, which produce cyclic imides.[699]



The second step in this case, which is much slower than the first, is the attack of the amide nitrogen on the carboxylic acid. Primary amines react with excess acetic anhydride to give N-alkyl or N-aryl imides, if magnesium is present to remove the acetic acid formed:[700] $RNH_2 + Ac_2O + Mg \rightarrow RN(Ac)_2 + Mg(OH)_2 + H_2$.

Even though formic anhydride is not a stable compound (see p. 487), amines can be formylated with the mixed anhydride of acetic and formic acids HCOOCOMe[701] or with a mixture of formic acid and acetic anhydride. Acetamides are not formed with these reagents. Secondary amines can be acylated in the presence of a primary amine by conversion to their salts and addition of 18-crown-6.[702] The crown ether complexes the primary ammonium salt, preventing its acylation, while the secondary ammonium salts, which do not fit easily into the cavity, are free to be acylated.

OS **I,** 457; **II,** 11; **III,** 151, 456, 661, 813; **IV,** 5, 42, 106, 657; **V,** 27, 373, 650, 944, 973; **56,** 3.

0-56 Acylation of Amines by Acids
Amino-de-hydroxylation

$$\mathbf{RCOOH + NH_3 \longrightarrow RCOO^- \ NH_4^+ \xrightarrow{\text{pyrolysis}} RCONH_2}$$

When carboxylic acids are treated with ammonia or amines, salts are obtained. The salts of ammonia or primary or secondary amines can be pyrolyzed to give amides,[703] but the method is less convenient than **0-54, 0-55,** and **0-57**[704] and is seldom of preparative value. Lactams are produced fairly easily from γ- or δ-amino acids,[705] e.g.,

---

[696] Baldwin, Blanchard, and Koenig, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 671 (1965).

[697] Kivinen, Ref. 413; Ref. 604, p. 185; Bender and Jones, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3771 (1962).

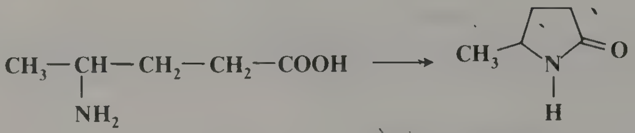
[698] For a review, see Beckwith, in Zabicky, Ref. 455, pp. 86–96. For a review of peptide synthesis by treatment of an amino acid with a mixed anhydride of another amino acid, see Albertson, *Org. React.* **12,** 157–355 (1962).

[699] For reviews of imides, see Wheeler and Rosado, in Zabicky, Ref. 455, pp. 335–381; Hargreaves, Pritchard, and Dave, *Chem. Rev.* **70,** 439–469 (1970) (cyclic imides).

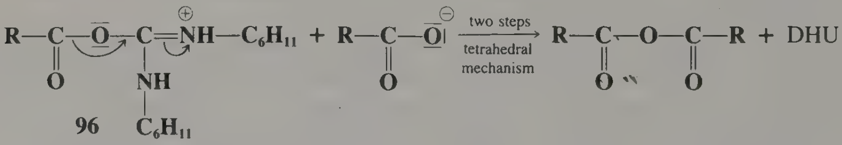
[700] Meyer, Nolde, Thomsen, and Lawesson, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **87,** 621 (1978).

[701] For the formylation of amines with the mixed anhydride of formic and trimethylacetic acid, see Vlietstra, Zwikker, Nolte, and Drenth, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 460 (1982).

[702] Barrett and Lana, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 471 (1978).



Although treatment of acids with amines does not directly give amides, the reaction can be made to proceed in good yield at room temperature or slightly above by the use of coupling agents,[706] the most important of which is dicyclohexylcarbodiimide. This is very convenient and is used[707] a great deal in peptide synthesis.[708] The mechanism is probably the same as in **0-24** up to the formation of **96.** This intermediate is then attacked by another molecule of $RCOO^-$ to give the anhydride $(RCO)_2O$, which is the actual species that reacts with the amine:



96

The anhydride has been isolated from the reaction mixture and then used to acylate an amine.[709] Other promoting agents[710] are N,N′-carbonyldiimidazole (**97,** p. 350),[454] which behaves as in reaction **0-24** and has been used for peptide synthesis,[711] $POCl_3$,[712] $TiCl_4$,[713] sulfuryl chloride fluoride SO_2ClF,[714] chlorosulfonyl isocyanate,[545] P_2I_4,[715] pyridinium salts–Bu_3N,[716] and a mixture of Bu_3P and PhCNO.[717] Certain dicarboxylic acids form amides simply on treatment with primary aromatic amines. In these cases the cyclic anhydride is an intermediate and is the species actually attacked by the amine.[718] Acids can also be converted to amides by heating with amides of carboxylic acids (exchange),[719] sulfonic acids, or phosphoric acids, e.g.,[720]

---

[703] For example, see Mitchell and Reid, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **53,** 1879 (1931).

[704] For a review of amide formation from carboxylic acids, see Beckwith, in Zabicky, Ref. 455, pp. 105–109.

[705] See, for example, Bladé-Font, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2443 (1980).

[706] For reviews of peptide synthesis with dicyclohexylcarbodiimide and other coupling agents, see Albertson, Ref. 698, pp. 205–218; Klausner and Bodansky, *Synthesis* 453–463 (1972).

[707] It was first used this way by Sheehan and Hess, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 1067 (1955).

[708] For a treatise on peptide synthesis, see Gross and Meienhofer, "The Peptides," 3 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1979–1981.

[709] Schüssler and Zahn, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 1076 (1962); Rebek and Feitler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1606 (1974). There is evidence that some of the **96** is converted to products by another mechanism. See Rebek and Feitler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4052 (1973).

[710] For some other methods, see Belleau and Malek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1651 (1968); Tani, Oine, and Inoue, *Synthesis* 714 (1975); Aigner and Marquarding, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3325 (1978); Neuenschwander, Fahrni, and Lienhard, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 2437 (1978); Inomata, Kinoshita, Fukuda, Tanabe, and Kotake, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **51,** 1866 (1978), and references listed in Ref. 717.

[711] Paul and Anderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4596 (1960).

[712] Klosa, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4]**19,** 45 (1963).

[713] Wilson and Weingarten, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 983 (1970).

[714] Olah, Narang, and Garcia-Luna, *Synthesis* 661 (1980).

[715] Suzuki, Tsuji, Hiroi, Sato, and Osuka, *Chem. Lett.* 449 (1983).

[716] Bald, Saigo, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1163 (1975). See also Mukaiyama, Aikawa, and Kobayashi, *Chem. Lett.* 57 (1976).

[717] Grieco, Clark, and Withers, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2945 (1979).

[718] Higuchi, Miki, Shah, and Herd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3655 (1963).

[719] For example, see Schindbauer, *Monatsh. Chem.* **99,** 1799 (1968).

$$\mathrm{RCOOH + Ph_2PONH_2 \longrightarrow RCONH_2 + Ph_2POOH}$$

or by treatment with trisalkylaminoboranes [$B(NHR')_3$] or trisdialkylaminoboranes [$B(NR'_2)_3$].[721]

$$\mathrm{RCOOH + B(NR'_2)_3 \longrightarrow RCONR'_2}$$

An important technique, discovered by R. B. Merrifield in 1963[722] and since used for the synthesis of many peptides,[723] is called *solid phase synthesis* or *polymer-supported synthesis*.[724] The reactions used are the same as in ordinary synthesis, but one of the reactants is anchored onto a solid polymer. For example, if it is desired to couple two amino acids (to form a dipeptide), the polymer selected might be polystyrene with CH_2Cl side chains (Fig. 1, **99**). One of the amino acids, protected by a *t*-butoxycarbonyl group (Boc), would then be coupled to the side chains (step A). It is not necessary that all the side chains be converted, but a random selection of them will be. The Boc group is then removed by hydrolysis with trifluoroacetic acid in CH_2Cl_2 (step B) and the second amino acid is coupled to the first, using DCC or some other coupling agent (step C). The second Boc group is removed (step D), resulting in a dipeptide that is still anchored to the polymer. If this dipeptide is the desired product, it can be cleaved from the polymer with HF (step E). If a longer peptide is wanted, additional amino acids can be added by repeating steps C and D.

The basic advantage of the polymer support techniques is that the polymer (including all chains attached to it) is easily separated from all other reagents, because it is insoluble in the solvents used. Excess reagents, other reaction products (such as DHU), side products, and the solvents themselves are quickly washed away. Purification of the polymeric species (such as **100, 101,** and **102**) is rapid and complete. In some cases the process can even be automated,[725] to the extent that six or more amino acids can be added to a peptide chain in one day. Commercial automated peptide synthesizers are now available.

Although the solid phase technique was first developed for the synthesis of peptide chains and has seen considerable use for this purpose, it has also been used to synthesize chains of polysaccharides and polynucleotides. The technique has been applied less often to reactions in which only two molecules are brought together (nonrepetitive syntheses), but many examples have been reported.[726]

OS **I,** 3, 82, 111, 172, 327; **II,** 65, 562; **III,** 95, 328, 475, 590, 646, 656, 768; **IV,** 6, 62, 513; **V,** 670, 1070. Also see OS **III,** 360; **56,** 88.

---

[720] Zhmurova, Voitsekhovskaya, and Kirsanov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **29,** 2052 (1959). See also Kopecký and Šmejkal, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1529 (1966); Liu, Chan, and Lee, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 31 (1979).

[721] Pelter, Levitt, and Nelson, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 1539 (1970); Pelter and Levitt, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 1545, 1899 (1970).

[722] Merrifield, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2149 (1963).

[723] For reviews of solid phase peptide synthesis, see Barany and Merrifield, pp. 1–284, and Fridkin, pp. 333–363, in vol. 2 of Ref. 708; Erickson and Merrifield, in Neurath, Hill, and Boeder, "The Proteins," 3d ed., vol. 2, pp. 255–527, Academic Press, New York, 1976.

[724] For monographs on solid phase synthesis in general, see Mathur, Narang, and Williams, "Polymers as Aids in Organic Chemistry," Academic Press, New York 1980; Hodge and Sherrington, "Polymer-supported Reactions in Organic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1980. For reviews, see Sheppard, *Chem. Br.* 402–414 (1983); Pillai and Mutter, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **106,** 119–175 (1982); Akelah and Sherrington, *Chem. Rev.* **81,** 557–587 (1981); Akelah, *Synthesis* 413–438 (1981); Rebek, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 723–731 (1979); McKillop and Young, *Synthesis* 401–422, 481–500 (1979); Neckers, *CHEMTECH* 108–116 (Feb. 1978); Crowley and Rapoport, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 135–144 (1976); Patchornik and Kraus, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 503–526 (1975).

[725] This was first reported by Merrifield, Stewart, and Jernberg, *Anal. Chem.* **38,** 1905 (1966).

[726] For reviews, see Fréchet, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 663–683 (1981); Fréchet, in Hodge and Sherrington, Ref. 724, pp. 293–342; Leznoff, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 327–333 (1978); *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **3,** 64–85 (1974).

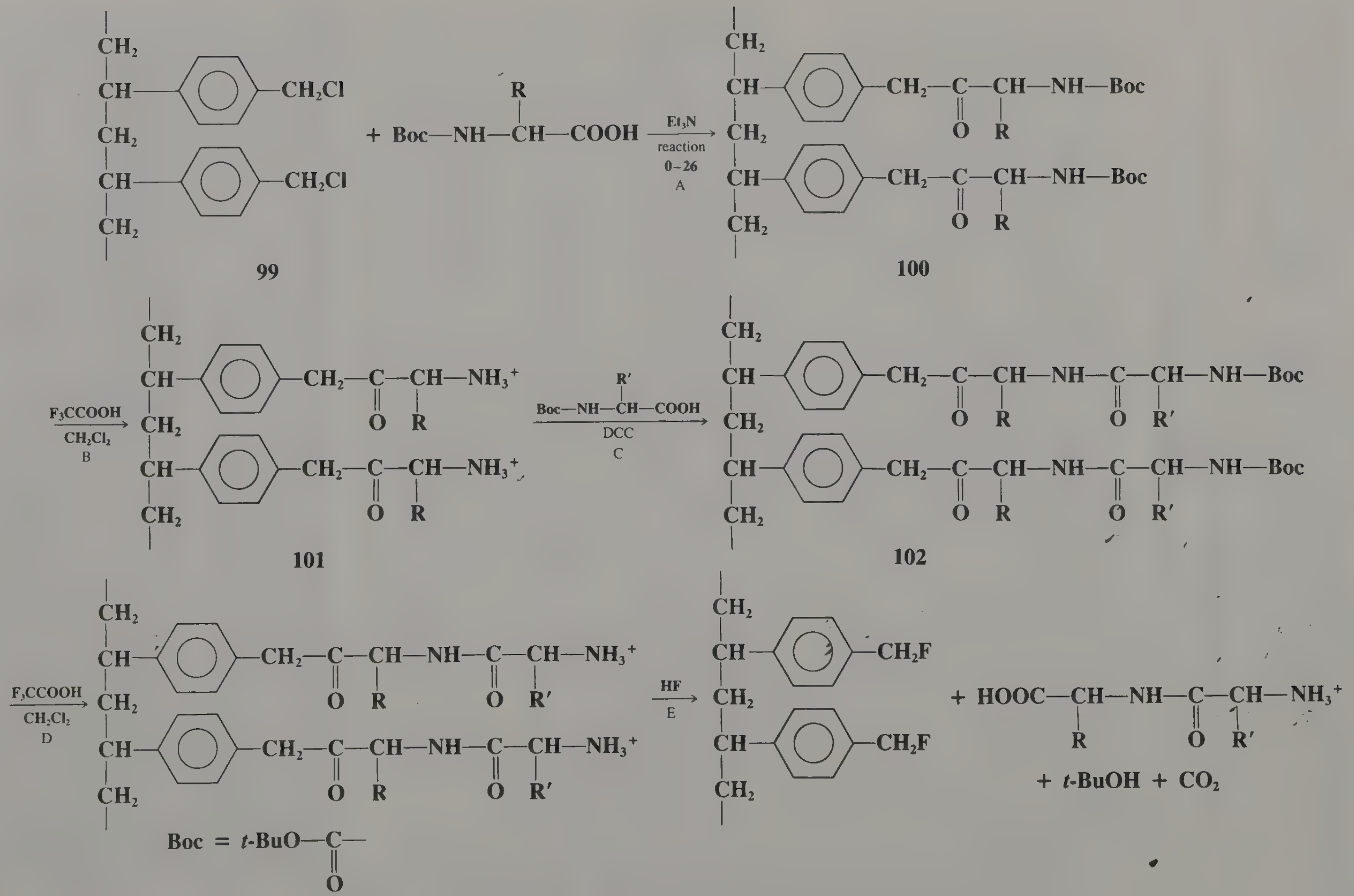

99
100
101
102
Et$_3$N
reaction
0–26
A
F$_3$CCOOH
CH$_2$Cl$_2$
B
Boc—NH—CH(R′)—COOH
DCC
C
F$_3$CCOOH
CH$_2$Cl$_2$
D
HF
E
+ HOOC—CH(R)—NH—C(=O)—CH(R′)—NH$_3$$^+$
+ t-BuOH + CO$_2$
Boc = t-BuO—C(=O)—

Figure 1 An outline of dipeptide synthesis by the solid phase technique.

0-57 Acylation of Amines by Esters
Amino-de-alkoxylation

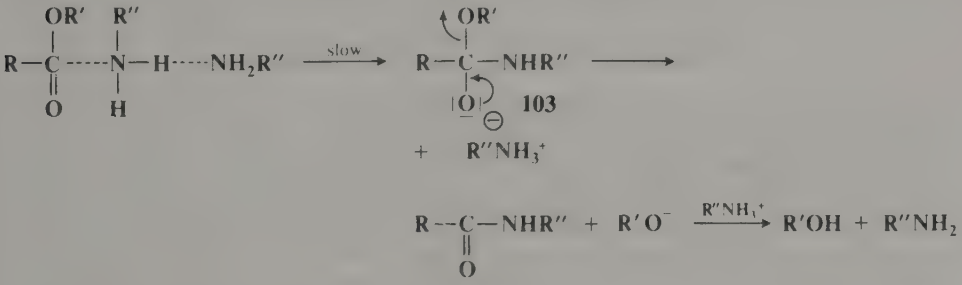
$$\mathrm{RCOOR' + NH_3 \longrightarrow RCONH_2 + R'OH}$$

The conversion of esters to amides is a useful reaction, and unsubstituted, N-substituted, and N,N-disubstituted amides can be prepared this way from the appropriate amine.[727] Both R and R′ may be alkyl or aryl. An especially good leaving group is *p*-nitrophenyl. The reaction is particularly useful because many esters are readily available or easy to prepare, even in cases where the corresponding acyl halide or anhydride is not. In another procedure, esters are treated with dimethylaluminum amides Me_2AlNRR' to give good yields of amides under mild conditions.[728] The reagents are easily prepared from Me_3Al and NH_3 or a primary or secondary amine or their salts.

As in **0-54** hydrazides and hydroxamic acids can be prepared from esters, with hydrazine and hydroxylamine, respectively. Both hydrazine and hydroxylamine react more rapidly than ammonia or primary amines (the alpha effect, p. 310). Phenylhydrazides, prepared with phenylhydrazine, are often used as derivatives for esters. The formation of hydroxamic acids, which form colored complexes in the presence of ferric ions, is often used as a test for esters. Imidates $RC({=}NH)OR'$ give amidines $RC({=}NH)NH_2$[729] (see **0-36**). Lactones, when treated with ammonia or primary amines, give lactams. Lactams are also produced from γ- and δ-amino esters in an internal example of this reaction. Isopropenyl formate is a useful compound for the formylation of primary and secondary amines.[730]

$$\mathrm{R_2NH + HCOOCMe{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow R_2NCHO + CH_2{=}CMeOH \rightleftharpoons MeCOMe}$$

Although more studies have been devoted to the mechanism of the acylation of amines with esters than with other reagents, the mechanistic details are not yet entirely clear.[731] In its broad outlines, the mechanism appears to be essentially BAc2.[732] Under the normal basic conditions, the reaction is general base-catalyzed,[733] indicating that a proton is being transferred in the rate-determining step and that two molecules of amine are involved.[734]



103

---

[727] For a review, see Beckwith, Ref. 691, pp. 96–105.

[728] Basha, Lipton, and Weinreb, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4171 (1977); *Org. Synth.* **59,** 49; Levin, Turos, and Weinreb, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 989 (1982).

[729] For a review, see Sandler and Karo, Ref. 176, pp. 217–222 (1972).

[730] van Melick and Wolters, *Synth. Commun.* **2,** 83 (1972).

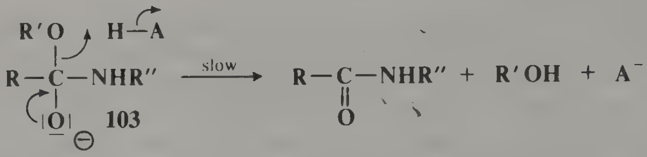
[731] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Satchell and Satchell, Ref. 180, pp. 410–431.

[732] Bunnett and Davis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 665 (1960); Bruice, Donzel, Huffman, and Butler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2106 (1967).

[733] Bunnett and Davis, Ref. 732, Jencks and Carriuolo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 675 (1960); Bruice and Mayahi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3067 (1960).

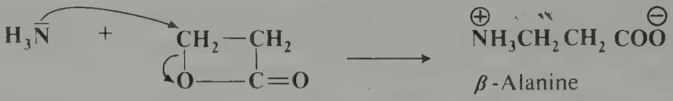
[734] Blackburn and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2638 (1968); Bruice and Felton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2799 (1969); Felton and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6721 (1969).

Alternatively, another base, such as H_2O or OH^-, can substitute for the second molecule of amine. With some substrates and under some conditions, especially at low pH, the breakdown of **103** may become rate-determining.[735] The reaction also takes place under acidic conditions and is general acid-catalyzed, so that breakdown of **103** is rate-determining and proceeds as follows:[736]



HA may be $R''NH_3^+$ or another acid. **103** may or may not be further protonated on the nitrogen. Even under basic conditions, a proton donor may be necessary to assist leaving-group removal. Evidence for this is that the rate is lower with NR_2^- in liquid ammonia than with NHR_2 in water, apparently owing to the lack of acids to protonate the leaving oxygen.[737]

In the special case of β-lactones, where small-angle strain is an important factor, alkyl–oxygen cleavage is observed (BAL2 mechanism, as in the similar case of hydrolysis of β-lactones, **0-11**), and the product is not an amide but a β-amino acid:



A similar result has been found for certain sterically hindered esters.[738] This reaction is similar to reaction **0-45**, with OCOR as the leaving group.

OS **I,** 153, 179; **II,** 67, 85; **III,** 10, 96, 108, 404, 440, 516, 536, 751, 765; **IV,** 80, 357, 441, 486, 532, 566, 819; **V,** 168, 301, 645; **51,** 121; **53,** 25; **59,** 49, 183; **60,** 66; **61,** 24. Also see OS **I,** 5; **V,** 582.

0-58 Acylation of Amines by Amides
Alkylamino-de-amination

$$\mathbf{RCONH_2 + R'\overset{\oplus}{N}H_3 \longrightarrow RCONHR' + NH_4^+}$$

This is an exchange reaction and is usually carried out with the salt of the amine. The leaving group is usually NH_2 rather than NHR or NR_2 and primary amines (in the form of their salts) are the most common reagents. BF_3 can be added to complex with the leaving ammonia. The reaction is often used to convert urea to substituted ureas: $NH_2CONH_2 + RNH_3^+ \rightarrow NH_2CONHR + NH_4^+$. Dimethylformamide can be converted to other formamides by prolonged heating with a primary or secondary amine.[739] N-R-Substituted amides are converted to N-R′-substituted amides by treatment with N_2O_4 to give an N-nitroso compound, followed by treatment of this with a primary amine $R'NH_2$.[740] Lactams can be converted to ring-expanded lactams if a side chain containing an amino group is present on the nitrogen. A strong base is used to convert the NH_2 to NH^-, which

---

[735] Hansen, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **17,** 1307 (1963); Satterthwait and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7018, 7031 (1974); Blackburn and Jencks, Ref. 734; Gresser and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 6963, 6970 (1977).

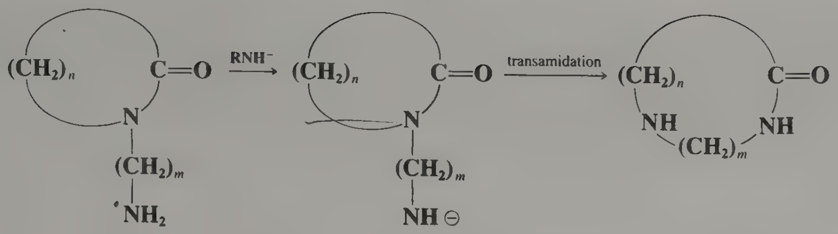
[736] Blackburn and Jencks, Ref. 734.

[737] Bunnett and Davis, Ref. 732.

[738] Zaugg, Helgren, and Schaefer, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2617 (1963). See also Weintraub and Terrell, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2470 (1965); Harada and Kinoshita, *Bull Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40,** 2706 (1967).

[739] Kraus, *Synthesis* 361 (1973). See also Otsuji, Matsummura, and Imoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **41,** 1485 (1968); Gramain and Rémuson, *Synthesis* 264 (1982).

[740] Garcia and Vilarrasa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1127 (1982).



then acts as a nucleophile, expanding the ring by means of a transamidation.[741] The discoverers call it the Zip reaction, by analogy with the action of zippers.

OS **I,** 302 (but see **V,** 589), 450, 453; **II,** 461; **III,** 151, 404; **IV,** 52, 361.

0-59 Acylation of Amines by Other Acid Derivatives

Acid derivatives that can be converted to amides include thiol acids RCOSH, thiol esters RCOSR, methylselenol esters RCOSeMe,[742] acyloxyboranes $RCOB(OR')_2$,[743] silicic esters $(RCOO)_4Si$, 1,1,1-trihalo ketones $RCOCX_3$, α-keto nitriles, acyl azides, and nonenolizable ketones (see the Haller–Bauer reaction **2-32**).

OS **III,** 394; **IV,** 6, 569; **V,** 160, 166; **56,** 122.

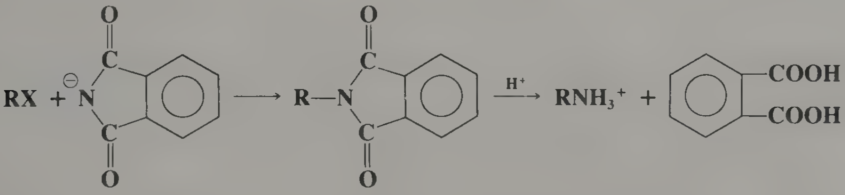
C. Attack by NHCOR

0-60 N-Alkylation of Amides and Imides
Acylamino-de-halogenation

$$RX + {}^{\ominus}NHCOR' \longrightarrow RNHCOR'$$

Amides are very weak bases, far too weak to attack alkyl halides, so that they must first be converted to their conjugate bases. By this method, unsubstituted amides can be converted to N-substituted, or N-substituted to N,N-disubstituted, amides.[744] Esters of sulfuric or sulfonic acids can also be substrates. Tertiary substrates give elimination. O-Alkylation is at times a side reaction.[745] Both amides and sulfonamides have been alkylated under phase transfer conditions.[746]

The *Gabriel synthesis*[747] for converting halides to primary amines is based on this reaction. The halide is treated with potassium phthalimide and the product hydrolyzed (**0-12**):



---

[741] Kramer, Guggisberg, Hesse, and Schmid, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 861 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 899]; *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 1342 (1978); Heidelberger, Guggisberg, Stephanou, and Hesse, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 399 (1981). For a carbon analog, see Nakashita and Hesse, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 845 (1983).

[742] Kozikowski and Ames, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2735 (1978).

[743] The best results are obtained when the acyloxyboranes are made from a carboxylic acid and catecholborane (p. 552): Collum, Chen, and Ganem, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4393 (1978).

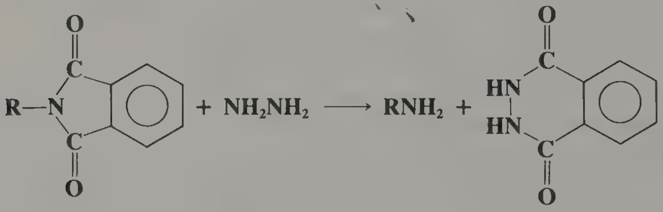
[744] For procedures, see Luh and Fung, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 757 (1979); Koziara, Zawadzki, and Zwierzak, *Synthesis* 527 (1979); Gajda, Koziara, Zawadzki, and Zwierzak, *Synthesis* 549 (1979); Yamawaki, Ando, and Hanafusa, *Chem. Lett.* 1143 (1981).

[745] For a review of alkylation of amides, see Challis and Challis, Ref. 455, pp. 734–754.

[746] Gajda and Zwierzak, *Synthesis* 1005 (1981).

[747] For a review, see Gibson and Bradshaw, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 919–930 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 986–996].

It is obvious that the primary amines formed in this reaction will be uncontaminated by secondary or tertiary amines (unlike **0-45**). The reaction is usually rather slow but can be conveniently speeded by the use of a dipolar aprotic solvent such as DMF[748] or with a crown ether.[749] Hydrolysis of the phthalimide, whether acid- or base-catalyzed (acid catalysis is used far more frequently), is also usually very slow, and better procedures are generally used. A common one is the Ing–Manske procedure,[750] in which the phthalimide is heated with hydrazine in an exchange reaction, but other methods have been introduced, using Na_2S in aqueous THF or acetone,[751] 40% aqueous methylamine,[752] and *n*-pentylamine.[753]



N-Alkylphthalimides can also be prepared starting from alcohols by treatment of the latter with equimolar amounts of phthalimide, Ph_3P, and diethyl azodicarboxylate (EtOOCN═NCOOEt) at room temperature.[754]

An alternative to the Gabriel synthesis, in which alkyl halides can be converted to primary amines in good yields, involves treatment of the halide with the strong base guanidine followed by alkaline hydrolysis.[755] In another alternative, alkyl bromides or tosylates are treated with $(PhS)_2NLi$ to give bisbenzenesulfenimides $(PhS)_2NR$ that can be hydrolyzed to RNH_2 by 3 *N* HCl or thiophenol.[756] In still another method,[757] the sodium salt of diphenylphosphinamide Ph_2PONH_2 is alkylated with primary[758] or secondary[759] alkyl halides or with alcohols in the presence of $MeSO_2Cl$,[760] which converts ROH to $ROSO_2Me$. Hydrolysis of Ph_2PONHR with HCl gives the amine.

Amides can also be alkylated with diazo compounds, as in **0-50**. Salts of sulfonamides ($ArSO_2NH^-$) can be used to attack alkyl halides to prepare N-alkyl sulfonamides ($ArSO_2NHR$) that can be further alkylated to $ArSO_2NRR'$. Hydrolysis of the latter is a good method for the preparation of secondary amines. Secondary amines can also be made by crown-ether assisted alkylation of $F_3CCONHR$ (R = alkyl or aryl) and hydrolysis of the resulting $F_3CCONRR'$.[761]

---

[748] For example, see Sheehan and Bolhofer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 2786 (1950). See also Landini and Rolla, *Synthesis* 389 (1976).

[749] Soai, Ookawa, and Kato, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **55,** 1671 (1982).

[750] Ing and Manske, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2348 (1926).

[751] Kukolja and Lammert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5582 (1975).

[752] Wolfe and Hasan, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 3572 (1970).

[753] Kasztreiner, Szilágyi, Kośáry, and Huszti, *Acta Chim. Acad. Sci. Hung.* **84,** 167 (1975) [*Chem. Abstr.* **83,** 113804].

[754] Mitsunobu, Wada, and Sano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 679 (1972); Grunewald, Paradkar, Pazhenchevsky, Pleiss, Sall, Seibel, and Reitz, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2321 (1983). For a review, see Mitsunobu, *Synthesis* 1–28 (1981).

[755] Hebrard and Olomucki, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1938 (1970).

[756] Mukaiyama and Taguchi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3411 (1970); Mukaiyama, Taguchi, and Nishi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 2797 (1971).

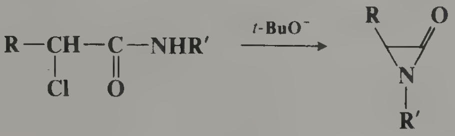
[757] For other methods, see Hendrickson, Bergeron, and Sternbach, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 2517 (1975); Hendrickson, Bergeron, Giga, and Sternbach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3412 (1973); Clarke, Elliott, and Jones, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1088 (1978); Mukaiyama, Tsuji, and Watanabe, *Chem. Lett.* 1057 (1978); Zwierzak and Pilichowska, *Synthesis* 922 (1982); Calverley, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 601 (1983).

[758] Zwierzak and Podstawczyńska, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 702 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 737].

[759] Ślusarska and Zwierzak, *Synthesis* 717 (1980).

[760] Ślusarska and Zwierzak, *Synthesis* 155 (1981).

Internal N-alkylation has been used to prepare the highly strained compounds α-lactams.[762]



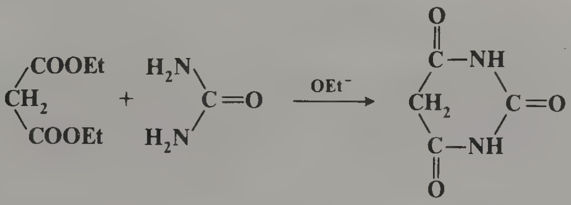
OS **I,** 119, 203, 271; **II,** 25, 83, 208; **III,** 151; **IV,** 810; **V,** 1064; **56,** 95.

0-61 N-Acylation of Amides and Imides
Acylamino-de-halogenation

$$RCOCl + H_2NCOR' \longrightarrow RCONHCOR'$$

Imides can be prepared by the attack of amides or their salts on acyl halides, anhydrides, esters, or acids.[763] The best synthetic method for the preparation of acyclic imides is the reaction between an amide and an anhydride at 100°C catalyzed by H_2SO_4.[764] When acyl chlorides are treated with amides in a 2:1 molar ratio at low temperatures in the presence of pyridine, the products are N,N-diacylamides $(RCO)_3N$.[765]

This reaction is often used to prepare urea derivatives, an important example being the preparation of barbituric acid:



When the substrate is oxalyl chloride (ClCOCOCl) and the reagent an unsubstituted amide, an acyl isocyanate (RCONCO) is formed. The "normal" product (RCONHCOCOCl) does not form, or if it does, it rapidly loses CO and HCl.[766]

OS **II,** 60, 79, 422; **III,** 763; **IV,** 245, 247, 496, 566, 638, 662, 744; **V,** 204, 944.

---

[761] Nordlander, Catalane, Eberlein, Farkas, Howe, Stevens, and Tripoulas, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4987 (1978). For other methods, see Zwierzak and Brylikowska-Piotrowicz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 107 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 109]; Briggs, Brown, Jiricny, and Meidine, *Synthesis* 295 (1980); Ref. 758.

[762] Baumgarten, Fuerholzer, Clark, and Thompson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3303 (1963). For a review of α-lactams, see Lengyel and Sheehan, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 25–36 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 27–37].

[763] For a review, see Challis and Challis, Ref. 455, pp. 759–773.

[764] Baburao, Costello, Petterson, and Sander, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2779 (1968); Davidson and Skovronek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 376 (1958).

[765] For example, see LaLonde and Davis, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 771 (1970).

[766] Speziale and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3742 (1962); Speziale, Smith, and Fedder, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 4306 (1965). See also Goerdeler and Schenk, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 552 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 675]; *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 2954 (1965).

D. Other Nitrogen Nucleophiles

0-62 Formation of Nitro Compounds[767]

Nitro-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + NO_2^- \longrightarrow RNO_2}$$

Sodium nitrite can be used to form nitro compounds with primary or secondary alkyl bromides or iodides, though the method is of limited scope. Silver nitrite gives nitro compounds only when RX is a primary bromide or iodide. Nitrite esters are an important side product in all these cases (**0-33**) and become the major product (by an SN1 mechanism) when secondary or tertiary halides are treated with silver nitrite.

OS **I,** 410; **IV,** 368, 454, 724.

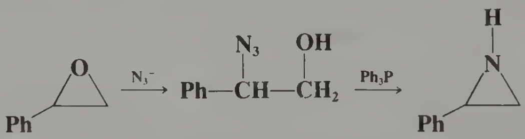
0-63 Formation of Azides

Azido-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + N_3^- \longrightarrow RN_3}$$

$$\mathbf{RCOX + N_3^- \longrightarrow RCON_3}$$

Alkyl azides can be prepared by treatment of the appropriate halide with azide ion.[768] Phase transfer catalysis has been used.[769] Other leaving groups have also been used.[770] For example, primary and secondary alcohols can be converted to azides with diphenylphosphoryl azide $(PhO)_2PON_3$.[771] Epoxides react with NaN_3 to give β-azido alcohols; these are easily converted to aziridines,[772] e.g.,



Tertiary alkyl azides can be prepared by stirring tertiary alkyl chlorides with NaN_3 and $ZnCl_2$ in CS_2[773] or by treating tertiary alcohols with NaN_3 and CF_3COOH.[774] Acyl azides, which can be used in the Curtius reaction (**8-17**), can be similarly prepared from acyl halides or anhydrides.[775]

OS **III,** 846; **IV,** 715; **V,** 273, 586; **50,** 9; **51,** 48; **55,** 32; **59,** 1; **60,** 104.

0-64 Formation of Isocyanates and Isothiocyanates

Isocyanato-de-halogenation

Isothiocyanato-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + NCO^- \longrightarrow RNCO}$$

$$\mathbf{RX + NCS^- \longrightarrow RNCS}$$

---

[767] For reviews, see Larson, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," pt. 1, pp. 325–339, Interscience, New York, 1969; Kornblum, *Org. React.* **12,** 101–156 (1962).

[768] For a review, see Biffin, Miller, and Paul, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Azido Group," pp. 57–119, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[769] See Reeves and Bahr, *Synthesis* 823 (1976); Nakajima, Oda, and Inouye, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3107 (1978).

[770] See, for example, Svetlakov, Mikheev, and Fedotov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **7,** 2304 (1971); Hojo, Kobayashi, Soai, Ikeda, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 635 (1977).

[771] Lal, Pramanik, Manhas, and Bose, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1977 (1977).

[772] Ittah, Sasson, Shahak, Tsaroom, and Blum, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4271 (1978). See also Shahak, Ittah, and Blum, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4003 (1976).

[773] Miller, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2959 (1975).

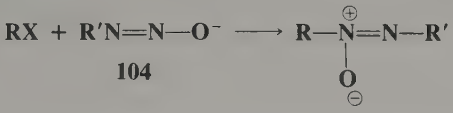
[774] Balderman and Kalir, *Synthesis* 24 (1978).

[775] For a review of acyl azides, see Lwowski, in Patai, Ref. 768, pp. 503–554.

When the reagent is the thiocyanate ion, S-alkylation is an important side reaction (**0-44**), but the cyanate ion practically always gives exclusive N-alkylation.[355] When alkyl halides are treated with NCO^- in the presence of ethanol, carbamates can be prepared directly (see **6-8**).[776] Acyl halides give the corresponding acyl isocyanates and isothiocyanates.[777] For the formation of isocyanides, see reaction **0-103.**

OS **III,** 735.

0-65 Formation of Azoxy Compounds
Alkyl-*NNO*-azoxy-de-halogenation



$$RX + R'N{=}N{-}O^- \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{\ominus}{O}}{N}}{=}N{-}R'$$

104

The reaction between alkyl halides and alkanediazotates (**104**) gives azoxyalkanes.[778] R and R′ may be the same or different, but neither may be aryl or tertiary alkyl. The reaction is regioselective; only the isomer shown is obtained.

Halogen Nucleophiles[778a]

A. Attack at an Alkyl Carbon

0-66 Halide Exchange. The Finkelstein Reaction
Halo-de-halogenation

$$RX + X'^- \rightleftharpoons RX' + X^-$$

Halide exchange, sometimes called the *Finkelstein reaction,* is an equilibrium process, but it is often possible to shift the equilibrium. The reaction is most often applied to the preparation of iodides and fluorides. Iodides can be prepared from chlorides or bromides by taking advantage of the fact that sodium iodide, but not the bromide or chloride, is soluble in acetone. When an alkyl chloride or bromide is treated with a solution of sodium iodide in acetone, the equilibrium is shifted by the precipitation of sodium chloride or bromide. Since the mechanism is SN2, the reaction is much more successful for primary halides than for secondary or tertiary halides; sodium iodide in acetone is often used as a test for primary bromides or chlorides. Tertiary chlorides can be converted to iodides by treatment with excess NaI in CS_2, with $ZnCl_2$ as catalyst.[779] Vinyl bromides give vinyl iodides with retention of configuration when treated with KI and a nickel bromide–zinc catalyst.[780]

Fluorides[781] are prepared by treatment of other alkyl halides with any of a number of fluorinating agents, among them anhydrous HF (which is useful only for reactive substrates such as benzylic or allylic), AgF, KF, HgF_2, and, for polyhalo compounds (such as chloroform), HF plus SbF_3.[782] The equilibria in these cases are shifted because the alkyl fluoride once formed has little tendency to react, owing to the extremely poor leaving-group ability of fluorine. Phase transfer catalysis of the exchange reaction is a particularly effective way of preparing both fluorides and iodides.[783]

---

[776] Argabright, Rider, and Sieck, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3317 (1965); Effenberger, Drauz, Förster, and Müller, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 173 (1981).

[777] For reviews of acyl isocyanates, see Tsuge, in Patai, Ref. 487, pt. 1, pp. 445–506; Nuridzhanyan, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 130–139 (1970); Lozinskii and Pel'kis, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 363–375 (1968).

[778] For reviews, see Yandovskii, Gidaspov, and Tselinskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 237–248 (1980); Moss, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 421–427 (1974).

[778a] For a review of the formation of carbon-halogen bonds, see Hudlicky and Hudlicky, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 73, pt. 2, pp. 1021–1172.

[779] Miller and Nunn, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 1* 416 (1976).

[780] Takagi, Hayama, and Inokawa, *Chem. Lett.* 1435 (1978).

[781] For a review of the introduction of fluorine into organic compounds, see Sheppard and Sharts, Ref. 374, pp. 52–184, 409–430.

Primary alkyl chlorides can be quantitatively converted to bromides with ethyl bromide, N-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone and a catalytic amount of NaBr.[784] Alkyl chlorides or bromides may be prepared from iodides by treatment with HCl or HBr in the presence of HNO_3, making use of the fact that the leaving I^- is oxidized to I_2 by the HNO_3.[785]

Not only can one halogen be substituted for another, but the halogen exchange reaction can also be carried out with, say, radioactive chloride replacing chloride, for studying mechanisms (see p. 258).

OS **II,** 476; **IV,** 84, 525.

0-67 Formation of Alkyl Halides from Esters of Sulfuric and Sulfonic Acids
Halo-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution, etc.

$$\mathbf{ROSO_2R' + X^- \longrightarrow RX}$$

Alkyl sulfates, tosylates, and other esters of sulfuric and sulfonic acids can be converted to alkyl halides with any of the four halide ions. Neopentyl tosylate reacts with Cl^-, Br^-, or I^- without rearrangement in HMPT.[786] Similarly, allylic tosylates can be converted to chlorides without allylic rearrangement by reaction with LiCl in the same solvent.[787] Inorganic esters are intermediates in the conversion of alcohols to alkyl halides with $SOCl_2$, PCl_5, PCl_3, etc. (**0-68**), but are seldom isolated.

OS **I,** 25; **II,** 111, 404; **IV,** 597, 753; **V,** 545.

0-68 Formation of Alkyl Halides from Alcohols
Halo-de-hydroxylation

$$\mathbf{ROH + HX \longrightarrow RX}$$

$$\mathbf{ROH + SOCl_2 \longrightarrow RCl}$$

Alcohols can be converted to alkyl halides with several reagents, the most common of which are halogen acids HX and inorganic acid halides such as $SOCl_2$,[788] PCl_5, PCl_3, $POCl_3$, etc.[789] HBr is usually used for alkyl bromides and HI for alkyl iodides. These reagents are often generated in situ from the halide ion and an acid such as phosphoric or sulfuric. The use of HI sometimes results in reduction of the alkyl iodide to the alkane (**0-77**) and, if the substrate is unsaturated, can also reduce the double bond.[790] The reaction can be used to prepare primary, secondary, or tertiary halides, but alcohols of the isobutyl or neopentyl type often give large amounts of rearrangement products. Tertiary chlorides are easily made with concentrated HCl, but primary and secondary alcohols react with HCl so slowly that a catalyst, usually zinc chloride, is required.[791] Primary alcohols give good yields of chlorides upon treatment with HCl in HMPT.[792] The inorganic acid chlorides $SOCl_2$, PCl_3, etc., give primary, secondary, or tertiary alkyl chlorides with much less rearrangement than is observed with HCl. These reagents are often preferred for the preparation of chlorides. With tertiary alcohols, PCl_5 gives halides, under mild conditions, with retention of configuration.[793]

---

[782] For reviews of the use of halogen exchange to prepare alkyl fluorides, see Sharts and Sheppard, *Org. React.* **21,** 125–406 (1974); Barbour, Belf, and Buxton, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **3,** 181–270 (1963); Hudlický, Ref. 374, pp. 87–112; Stephens and Tatlow, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **16,** 44–70 (1962).

[783] For reviews, see Starks and Liotta, Ref. 346, pp. 112–125; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," Ref. 346, pp. 117–124.

[784] Willy, McKean, and Garcia, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 1989 (1976).

[785] Svetlakov, Moisak, and Averko-Antonovich, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 971 (1969).

[786] Stephenson, Solladié, and Mosher, Ref. 226.

[787] Stork, Grieco, and Gregson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1393 (1969).

[788] For a review of thionyl chloride $SOCl_2$, see Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 1, pp. 321–357, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[789] For a review, see Brown, in Patai, Ref. 478, pt. 1, pp. 595–622.

[790] Jones and Pattison, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1046 (1969).

Analogous bromides and iodides, especially PBr_3, have also been used, but they are more expensive and used less often than HBr or HI, though some of them may also be generated in situ (e.g., PBr_3 from red phosphorus and bromine). Secondary alcohols always give *some* rearranged bromides if another secondary position is available, even with PBr_3, PBr_5, or $SOBr_2$; thus 3-pentanol gives both 2- and 3-bromopentane.[794] Such rearrangement can be avoided by converting the alcohol to a sulfonate and then using **0-67.**[795] HF does not generally convert alcohols to alkyl fluorides.[796] Such conversions can be carried out with SF_4,[797] SeF_4,[798] with α-fluoroamines of the type $R'CF_2NR''_2$,[799] or, indirectly, by conversion to a sulfate or tosylate, etc. (**0-67**). The commercially available diethylaminosulfur trifluoride Et_2NSF_3 converts alcohols to fluorides under mild conditions.[800]

Primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols can be converted to any of the four halides by treatment with the appropriate NaX, KX, or NH_4X in polyhydrogen fluoride–pyridine solution.[801] This method is even successful for neopentyl halides.

Other reagents[802] have also been used, for example, $(RO)_3PRX$[803] and R_3PX_2[804] (made from R_3P and X_2), which give good yields of primary (including neopentyl), secondary, and tertiary halides without rearrangements,[805] Me_2SBr_2[806] (prepared from Me_2S and Br_2), and a mixture of PPh_3 and CCl_4.[807]

$$\mathbf{ROH + Ph_3P + CCl_4 \longrightarrow RCl + Ph_3PO + HCCl_3}$$

---

[791] Phase-transfer catalysts have been used instead of $ZnCl_2$: Landini, Montanari, and Rolla, *Synthesis* 37 (1974).

[792] Fuchs and Cole, *Can. J. Chem.* **53,** 3620 (1975).

[793] Carman and Shaw, *Aust. J. Chem.* **29,** 133 (1976).

[794] Secondary alcohols also give some rearrangement products with $SOCl_2$: Hudson and de Spinoza, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 104 (1976).

[795] Cason and Correia, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 3645 (1961).

[796] For an exception, see Hanack, Eggensperger, and Hähnle, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **652,** 96 (1962); See also Politanskii, Ivanyk, Sarancha, and Shevchuk, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **10,** 697 (1974).

[797] For reviews, see Kollonitsch, *Isr. J. Chem.* **17,** 53–59 (1978); Boswell, Ripka, Scribner, and Tullock, *Org. React.* **21,** 1–124 (1974). See also Kollonitsch, Marburg, and Perkins, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 771 (1979).

[798] Olah, Nojima, and Kerekes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 925 (1974).

[799] For a review, see Sharts and Sheppard, Ref. 782.

[800] Middleton, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 574 (1975); Rozen, Faust, and Ben-Yakov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1823 (1979).

[801] Olah and Welch, *Synthesis* 653 (1974); Olah, Welch, Vankar, Nojima, Kerekes, and Olah, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3872 (1979). Alvernhe, Lacombe, Laurent, and Rousset, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 246 (1983).

[802] For some other reagents, not listed here, see Speziale and Freeman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 909 (1960); Sandler, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3967 (1970); Kobayashi, Tsutsui, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 373 (1976); Echigo and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 465 (1978); Hepburn and Hudson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 754 (1976); Barton, Stick, and Subramanian, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2112 (1976); Anderson, Owen, Freenor, and Erickson, *Synthesis* 398 (1976); Savel'yanov, Nazarov, Savel'yanova, and Suchkov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **13,** 604 (1977); Jung and Hatfield, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4483 (1978); Lauwers, Regnier, Van Eenoo, Denis, and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1801 (1979); Sevrin and Krief, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 656 (1980); Morita, Yoshida, Okamoto, and Sakurai, *Synthesis* 379 (1979); Olah, Gupta, Malhotra, and Narang, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1638 (1980); Hanessian, Leblanc, and Lavallée, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4411 (1982); Cristol and Seapy, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 132 (1982); Richter and Tucker, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2625 (1983); Imamoto, Matsumoto, Kusumoto, and Yokoyama, *Synthesis* 460 (1983); Ref. 421.

[803] Rydon, *Org. Synth.* **51,** 44 (1971).

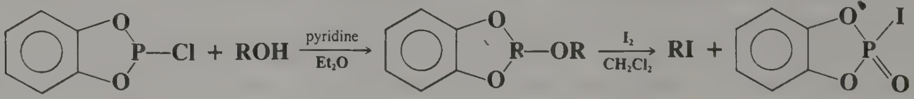
[804] Wiley, Hershkowitz, Rein, and Chung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 964 (1964); Wiley, Rein, and Hershkowitz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2509 (1964); Schaefer and Weinberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2635 (1965); Kaplan, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3454 (1966); Weiss and Snyder, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 403 (1971); Garegg, Johansson, and Samuelsson, *Synthesis* 168 (1984).

[805] For reviews of reactions with these reagents, see Castro, *Org. React.* **29,** 1–162 (1983); Mackie, in Cadogan, "Organophosphorus Reagents in Organic Synthesis," pp. 433–466, Academic Press, New York, 1979.

[806] Furukawa, Inoue, Aida, and Oae, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 212 (1973).

[807] For a review, see Appel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 801–811 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 863–874]. For a general review of this and related reagents, see Appel and Halstenberg, in Cadogan, Ref. 805, pp. 387–431. For a discussion of the mechanism, see Slagle, Huang, and Franzus, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3526 (1981).

The latter method converts allylic alcohols[808] to the corresponding halides without allylic rearrangements.[809] Another method that yields this result involves treatment of the allylic alcohol with a mixture of CH_3SO_2Cl, LiCl, and *s*-collidine (2,4,6-trimethylpyridine) in dimethylformamide at 0°C.[810] A simple indirect method for the conversion of alcohols to alkyl iodides consists of treating the alcohol with *o*-phenylene phosphorochlorodite (**105**, easily prepared from catechol and PCl_3), and then reaction of the resulting ester with I_2.[811] A simple method that is specific for benzylic and allylic alcohols (and does not give allylic rearrangement) involves reaction with N-chloro- or N-bromosuccinimide and methyl sulfide.[812] The specificity of this method is illustrated by the conversion, in 87% yield, of (*Z*)-$HOCH_2CH_2CMe{=}CHCH_2OH$ to (*Z*)-$HOCH_2CH_2CMe{=}CHCH_2Cl$. Only the allylic OH group was affected.



105

When the reagent is HX, the mechanism is SN1cA or SN2cA; i.e., the leaving group is not OH^-, but OH_2 (p. 311). The leaving group is not OH^- with the other reagents either, since in these cases the alcohol is first converted to an inorganic ester, e.g., ROSOCl with $SOCl_2$ (**0-33**). The leaving group is therefore $OSOCl^-$ or a similar group (**0-67**). These may react by the SN1 or SN2 mechanism and, in the case of ROSOCl, by the SNi mechanism (p. 287).

OS **I,** 25, 36, 131, 142, 144, 292, 294, 533; **II,** 91, 136, 159, 246, 308, 322, 358, 399, 476; **III,** 11, 227, 370, 446, 698, 793, 841; **IV,** 106, 169, 323, 333, 576, 681; **V,** 1, 249, 608; **51,** 44; **53,** 13, 70; **54,** 63, 68; **57,** 72; **58,** 75; **61,** 56, 77. Also see OS **III,** 818; **IV,** 278, 383, 597.

0-69 Cleavage of Ethers
Halo-de-alkoxylation

$$ROR' + HI \longrightarrow RI + R'OH$$

Ethers can be cleaved by heating with concentrated HI or HBr.[813] HCl is seldom successful. HBr reacts more slowly than HI, but it is often a superior reagent, since it causes fewer side reactions. Phase transfer catalysis has also been used.[814] Dialkyl ethers and alkyl aryl ethers can be cleaved. In the latter case the alkyl–oxygen bond is the one broken. As in **0-68** the actual leaving group is not OR'^-, but OHR'. Although alkyl aryl ethers always cleave so as to give an alkyl halide and a phenol, there is no general rule for dialkyl ethers. Often cleavage occurs from both sides, and a mixture of two alcohols and two alkyl halides is obtained. However, methyl ethers are usually cleaved so that methyl iodide or bromide is a product. An excess of HI or HBr converts the alcohol product into alkyl halide, so that dialkyl ethers (but not alkyl aryl ethers) are converted to 2 moles of alkyl halide. This procedure is often carried out so that a mixture of only two products is obtained instead of four. Cyclic ethers (usually tetrahydrofuran derivatives) can be similarly cleaved (see **0-70** for epoxides). Ethers have also been cleaved with Lewis acids such as BF_3, BCl_3, Me_2BBr,[815]

---

[808] For a review of the conversion of allylic alcohols to allylic halides, see Magid, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1901–1930 (1980), pp. 1924–1926.

[809] Snyder, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1466 (1972); Axelrod, Milne, and van Tamelen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2139 (1973).

[810] Collington and Meyers, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3044 (1971).

[811] Corey and Anderson, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 4160 (1967).

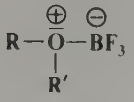
[812] Corey, Kim, and Takeda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4339 (1972).

[813] For reviews of ether cleavage in general, see Bhatt and Kulkarni, *Synthesis* 249–282 (1983); Ref. 286.

[814] Landini, Montanari, and Rolla, *Synthesis* 771 (1978).

[815] Guindon, Yoakim, and Morton, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2969 (1983).

BBr_3,[816] or $AlCl_3$.[817] In such cases, the departure of the OR is assisted by complex formation with the Lewis acid:



$$R-\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\overline{O}}}-\overset{\ominus}{B}F_3$$

Lewis acids are also used in conjunction with acyl halides.

Dialkyl and alkyl aryl ethers can be cleaved with iodotrimethylsilane: $ROR' + Me_3SiI \longrightarrow RI + Me_3SiOR$.[818] A more convenient and less expensive alternative, which gives the same products, is a mixture of chlorotrimethylsilane and NaI.[819] A mixture of $SiCl_4$ and NaI has also been used.[820] Alkyl aryl ethers can also be cleaved with LiI to give alkyl iodides and salts of phenols[821] in a reaction similar to **0-71**. Triphenyldibromophosphorane (Ph_3PBr_2) cleaves dialkyl ethers to give 2 moles of alkyl bromide.[822]

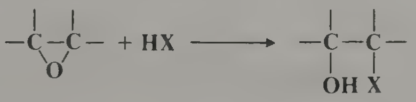
A closely related reaction is cleavage of oxonium salts.

$$R_3O^+ \ X^- \longrightarrow RX + R_2O$$

For these substrates, HX is not required, and X may be any of the four halide ions.

OS **I,** 150; **II,** 571; **III,** 187, 432, 586, 692, 753, 774, 813; **IV,** 266, 321; **V,** 412; **59,** 35.

0-70 Formation of Halohydrins from Epoxides



This is a special case of **0-69** and is frequently used for the preparation of halohydrins. In contrast to the situation with open-chain ethers and with larger rings, many epoxides react with all four hydrohalic acids, though with HF[823] the reaction is unsuccessful with simple aliphatic and cycloalkyl epoxides.[824] HF does react with more rigid epoxides, such as those in steroid systems. The reaction can be applied to simple epoxides if polyhydrogen fluoride–pyridine is the reagent.[825] Chloro-, bromo-, and iodohydrins can also be prepared by treating epoxides with Ph_3P and X_2.[826] Epoxides can be converted directly to 1,2-dichloro compounds by treatment with $SOCl_2$ and pyridine,[827] with Ph_3P and CCl_4,[828] or with Ph_3PCl_2.[829] These are two-step reactions: a halohydrin is formed first and is then converted by the reagents to the dihalide (**0-68**). As expected, inversion is found at both carbons. HI reduces α-keto epoxides to olefins.

---

[816] Manson and Musgrave, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1011 (1963); McOmie, Watts, and West, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 2289 (1968); Egly, Pousse, and Brini, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1357 (1972); Press, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 407 (1979); Niwa, Hida, and Yamada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4239 (1981).

[817] For a review, see Johnson, in Olah, "Friedel-Crafts and Related Reactions," vol. 4, pp. 1–109, Interscience, New York, 1965.

[818] Jung and Lyster, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3761 (1977); *Org. Synth.* **59,** 35.

[819] Morita, Okamoto, and Sakurai, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 874 (1978); Olah, Narang, Gupta, and Malhotra, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1247 (1979); Ref. 421. See also Friedrich and DeLucca, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1678 (1983).

[820] Bhatt and El-Morey, *Synthesis* 1048 (1982).

[821] Harrison, *Chem. Commun.* 616 (1969).

[822] Anderson and Freenor, *J. Org.Chem.* **37,** 626 (1972).

[823] For a review of reactions of HF with epoxides, see Sharts and Sheppard, Ref. 781.

[824] Shahak, Manor, and Bergmann, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2129 (1968).

[825] Olah and Meidar, *Isr. J. Chem.* **17,** 148 (1978).

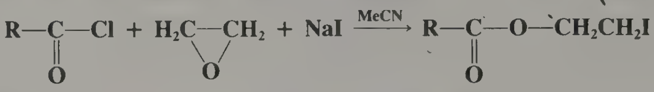
[826] Palumbo, Ferreri, and Caputo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1307 (1983).

[827] Campbell, Jones, and Wolfe, *Can. J. Chem.* **44,** 2339 (1966).

[828] Isaacs and Kirkpatrick, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3869 (1972).

[829] Sonnet and Oliver, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3279 (1976); *Org. Synth.* **58,** 64. This method also applies to Ph_3PBr_2. For another method, see Echigo, Watanabe, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1013 (1977).

Acyl chlorides react with ethylene oxide in the presence of NaI to give 2-iodoethyl esters.[830]



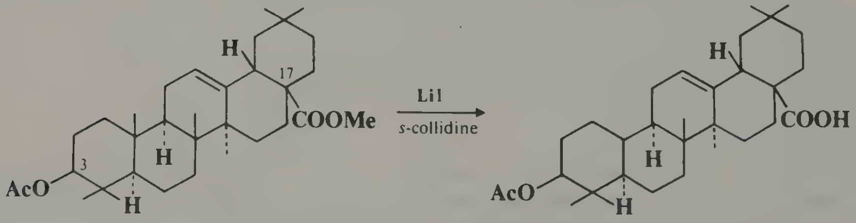
$$R\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle \| \atop O}{C}\text{—}Cl + H_2C\text{—}CH_2 \text{ (epoxide, } O\text{)} + NaI \xrightarrow{MeCN} R\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle \| \atop O}{C}\text{—}O\text{—}CH_2CH_2I$$

OS **I**, 117; **58**, 64.

0-71 Cleavage of Esters with Lithium Iodide
Iodo-de-acyloxy-substitution

$$R'COOR + LiI \xrightarrow[\Delta]{pyridine} RI + R'COOLi$$

Carboxylic esters where R is methyl or ethyl can be cleaved by heating with lithium iodide in refluxing pyridine or a higher-boiling amine.[831] The reaction is useful where a molecule is sensitive to acid and base (so that **0-11** cannot be used) or where it is desired to cleave selectively only one ester group in a molecule containing two or more. For example, refluxing O-acetyloleanolic acid methyl ester with LiI in *s*-collidine cleaved only the 17-carbomethoxy group, not the 3-acetyl group.[832] The reaction is an equilibrium and the heat of reaction is such that relatively high temperatures are required to drive it to completion. However, the reaction temperature can be lowered if another nucleophile, e.g., OAc^- or CN^-, is added to react with the RI, thus preventing the reverse reaction from taking place.[833] Esters RCOOR′ and lactones can also be cleaved with a mixture of Me_3SiCl and NaI to give R′I and RCOOH.[834]



0-72 Conversion of Diazo Ketones to α-Halo Ketones
Hydro, halo-de-diazo-bisubstitution

$$RCOCHN_2 + HBr \longrightarrow RCOCH_2Br$$

When diazo ketones are treated with HBr or HCl, they give the respective α-halo ketones. HI does not give the reaction, since it reduces the product to a methyl ketone (**0-83**). α-Fluoro ketones can be prepared by addition of the diazo ketone to polyhydrogen fluoride–

---

[830] Belsner and Hoffmann, *Synthesis* 239 (1982).

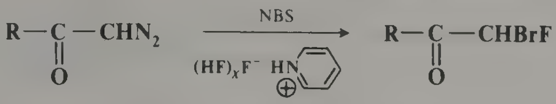
[831] Taschner and Liberek, *Rocz. Chem.* **30**, 323 (1956) [*CA* **51**, 1039 (1957)]. For a review, see Ref. 319.

[832] Elsinger, Schreiber, and Eschenmoser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **43**, 113 (1960).

[833] McMurry and Wong, *Synth. Commun.* **2**, 389 (1972).

[834] Olah, Narang, Gupta, and Malhotra, Ref. 819. See also Kolb and Barth, *Synth. Commun.* **11**, 763 (1981).

pyridine.[835] This method is also successful for diazoalkanes. When a halide ion (Cl^-, Br^-, or I^-) or an N-halosuccinimide is added to this mixture, a mixed *gem*-dihalide is obtained, e.g.,



Diazotization of α-amino acids in the above solvent at room temperature gives α-fluoro acids.[836] If this reaction is run in the presence of excess KCl or KBr, the corresponding α-chloro or α-bromo acid is obtained instead.[837]

OS **III,** 119.

0-73 Conversion of Amines to Halides
Halo-de-amination

$$\mathbf{RNH_2 \longrightarrow RNTs_2 \xrightarrow[DMF]{I^-} RI}$$

Primary alkyl amines RNH_2 can be converted[838] to alkyl halides by (1) conversion to $RNTs_2$ (p. 312) and treatment of this with I^- or Br^- in DMF,[300] (2) diazotization with *t*-butyl nitrite and a metal halide such as $TiCl_4$ in DMF,[839] or (3) the Katritzky pyrylium–pyridinium method (p. 313).[840] Alkyl groups can be cleaved from secondary and tertiary aromatic amines by concentrated HBr in a reaction similar to **0-69**, e.g.,[841]

$$\mathbf{ArNR_2 + HBr \longrightarrow RBr + ArNHR}$$

Tertiary aliphatic amines are also cleaved by HI, but useful products are seldom obtained. Tertiary amines can be cleaved by reaction with phenyl chloroformate:[842] $R_3N + ClCOOPh \longrightarrow RCl + R_2NCOOPh$. Alkyl halides may be formed when quaternary ammonium salts are heated: $R_4N^+ X^- \longrightarrow R_3N + RX$.[843]

There are no OS references, but see OS **I,** 428, for a related reaction.

0-74 Conversion of Tertiary Amines to Cyanamides. The von Braun Reaction
Bromo-de-dialkylamino-substitution

$$\mathbf{R_3N + BrCN \longrightarrow R_2NCN + RBr}$$

The *von Braun reaction*, which involves the cleavage of tertiary amines by cyanogen bromide to give an alkyl bromide and a disubstituted cyanamide, has been applied to many tertiary amines.[844]

---

[835] Olah and Welch, *Synthesis* 896 (1974); Olah, Welch, Vankar, Nojima, Kerekes, and Olah, Ref. 801.

[836] Olah, Prakash, and Chao, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 2528 (1981); Faustini, De Munary, Panzeri, Villa, and Gandolfi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4533 (1981); Barber, Keck, and Rétey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1549 (1982).

[837] Olah, Shih, and Prakash, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 1028 (1983).

[838] For another method, see Lorenzo, Molina, and Vilaplana, *Synthesis* 853 (1980).

[839] Doyle, Bosch, and Seites, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4120 (1978).

[840] Katritzky, Horvath, and Plau, *Synthesis* 437 (1979); Katritzky, Al-Omran, Patel, and Thind, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1890 (1980); Katritzky, Chermprapai, and Patel, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2901 (1980).

[841] Chambers and Pearson, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 3144 (1963).

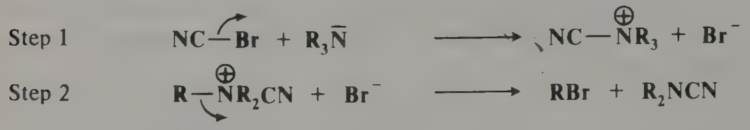
[842] Hobson and McCluskey, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2015 (1967). See also Gol'dfarb, Ispiryan, and Belen'kii, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 839 (1969); Montzka, Matiskella, and Partyka, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1325 (1974); Leclerc, Rouot, and Wermuth, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3765 (1974); Olofson, Schnur, Bunes, and Pepe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1567 (1977).

[843] For examples, see Ko and Leffek, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 1865 (1970); **49,** 129 (1971); Deady and Korytsky, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 451 (1979).

[844] For a review, see Hageman, *Org. React.* **7,** 198–262 (1953).

Usually, the R group that cleaves is the one that gives the most reactive halide (for example, benzyl or allyl). For simple alkyl groups, the smallest are the most readily cleaved. One or two of the groups on the amine may be aryl, but they do not cleave. Cyclic amines have been frequently cleaved by this reaction. Secondary amines also give the reaction, but the results are usually poor.[845]

The mechanism consists of two successive nucleophilic substitutions, with the tertiary amine as the first nucleophile and the liberated bromide ion as the second:



Step 1 $$NC-Br + R_3\bar{N} \longrightarrow NC-\overset{\oplus}{N}R_3 + Br^-$$

Step 2 $$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}R_2CN + Br^- \longrightarrow RBr + R_2NCN$$

The intermediate N-cyanoammonium bromide has been trapped, and its structure confirmed by chemical, analytical, and spectral data.[846]

OS **III,** 608.

B. Attack at an Acyl Carbon

0-75 Formation of Acyl Halides from Acids

Halo-de-hydroxylation

$$\mathbf{RCOOH + SOCl_2 \longrightarrow RCOCl}$$

The same inorganic acid halides that convert alcohols to alkyl halides (**0-68**) also convert acids to acyl halides.[847] The reaction is the best and the most common method for the preparation of acyl chlorides. Bromides and iodides are also made in this manner, but much less often. Thionyl chloride[788] is the best reagent, since the by-products are gases and the acyl halide is easily isolated, but PX_3 and PX_5 (X=Cl or Br) are also commonly used. However, hydrogen halides do not give the reaction. A particularly mild procedure, similar to one mentioned in **0-68**, involves reaction of the acid with Ph_3P in CCl_4, whereupon acyl chlorides are produced without the obtention of any acidic compound as a by-product.[848] Acyl fluorides can be prepared by treatment of carboxylic acids with cyanuric fluoride.[849] Acid salts are also sometimes used as substrates. Acyl halides are also used as reagents in an exchange reaction:

$$\mathbf{RCOOH + R'COCl \rightleftharpoons RCOCl + R'COOH}$$

which probably involves an anhydride intermediate. This is an equilibrium reaction that must be driven to the desired side. Oxalyl chloride and bromide are frequently used as the acyl halide reagent, since oxalic acid decomposes to CO and CO_2, and the equilibrium is thus driven to the side of the other acyl halide.

OS **I,** 12, 147, 394; **II,** 74, 156, 169, 569; **III,** 169, 490, 547, 555, 613, 623, 712, 714; **IV,**

---

[845] For a detailed discussion of the scope of the reaction and of the ease of cleavage of different groups, see Ref. 843, pp. 205–225.

[846] Fodor and Abidi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1369 (1971); Abidi, Fodor, Huber, Miura, and Nakanishi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 355 (1972); Fodor, Abidi, and Carpenter, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1507 (1974). See also Paukstelis and Kim, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1494 (1974).

[847] For a review, see Ansell, in Patai, Ref. 413, pp. 35–68.

[848] Lee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3440 (1966). For other methods of preparing acyl chlorides, see Venkataraman and Wagle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3037 (1979); Devos, Remion, Frisque-Hesbain, Colens, and Ghosez, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1180 (1979).

[849] Olah, Nojima, and Kerekes, *Synthesis* 487 (1973). For other methods of preparing acyl fluorides, see Mukaiyama and Tanaka, *Chem. Lett.* 303 (1976); Ishikawa and Sasaki, *Chem. Lett.* 1407 (1976).

34, 88, 154, 263, 339, 348, 554, 608, 616, 620, 715, 739, 900; **V,** 171, 258, 887; **52,** 36; **55,** 27; **59,** 1, 195; **61,** 1.

0-76 Formation of Acyl Halides from Acid Derivatives
Halo-de-acyloxy-substitution
Halo-de-halogenation

$$(RCO)_2O + HF \longrightarrow RCOF$$

$$RCOCl + HF \longrightarrow RCOF$$

These reactions are most important for the preparation of acyl fluorides. Acyl chlorides and anhydrides can be converted to acyl fluorides by treatment with polyhydrogen fluoride–pyridine solution[801] or with liquid HF at −10°C.[850] Formyl fluoride, which is a stable compound, was prepared by the latter procedure from the mixed anhydride of formic and acetic acids.[851] Acyl fluorides can also be obtained by reaction of acyl chlorides with KF or with diethylaminosulfur trifluoride Et_2NSF_3.[852] Esters and anhydrides can be converted to acyl halides other than fluorides by the inorganic acid halides mentioned in **0-75,** as well as with Ph_3PX_2 (X = Cl or Br),[853] but this is seldom done. Halide exchange can be carried out in a similar manner. When halide exchange is done, it is always acyl bromides and iodides that are made from chlorides, since chlorides are by far the most readily available.[854] As with **0-75,** acyl halides are sometimes used as reagents in an exchange reaction.[855]

OS **II,** 528; **III,** 422; **V,** 66, 1103. See also OS **IV,** 307.

Hydrogen as Nucleophile

The reactions in this section (**0-77** to **0-86**) are reductions and could have been considered in Chapter 19. They are treated here because they involve replacement of a leaving group by hydrogen, which frequently attacks as the nucleophile hydride ion. However, not all the reactions in this section are true nucleophilic substitutions and for some of them more than one kind of mechanism may be involved, depending on the reagents and on the conditions. When cleavage of a carbon–hetero atom bond is accomplished by catalytic hydrogenation, the reaction is called *hydrogenolysis*.

A. Attack at an Alkyl Carbon

0-77 Reduction of Alkyl Halides
Hydro-de-halogenation or **Dehalogenation**

$$RX + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow RH$$

This type of reduction can be accomplished with many reducing agents,[856] the most common being lithium aluminum hydride.[857] This reagent reduces almost all types of alkyl halide, including vinyl, bridgehead, and cyclopropyl halides.[858] Reduction with lithium aluminum deuteride serves to introduce deuterium into organic compounds. An even more powerful reducing agent, indeed reportedly the strongest SN2 nucleophile known, is lithium triethylborohydride $LiEt_3BH$. This reagent rapidly reduces primary, secondary, allylic, benzylic, and neopentyl halides, but not tertiary (these give elimination) or aryl halides.[859] Another powerful reagent, which reduces primary, secondary, tertiary, allylic, vinylic, aryl, and neopentyl halides, is a complex formed from lithium trimethoxyaluminum hydride $LiAlH(OMe)_3$ and CuI.[860] A milder reducing agent is $NaBH_4$ in a dipolar aprotic solvent such as Me_2SO, DMF, or sulfolane,[861] which at room temperature or above reduces primary, secondary, and some tertiary[862] halides in good yield without affecting other functional groups that would be reduced by $LiAlH_4$, for example, COOH, COOR, CN. Other reducing agents[863] are zinc (with acid or base), $SnCl_2$, chromium(II) ion,[864] either in the form of simple chromous salts (for active substrates or *gem*-dihalides[865]) or complexed with ethylenediamine or ethanolamine (for ordinary alkyl halides[866]), and Et_3SiH in the presence of $AlCl_3$ (good for primary, secondary, and tertiary halides).[867] Sodium arsenite and base, diethyl phosphonate–Et_3N,[867a] phosphorus tris(dimethyl)amide $(Me_2N)_3P$,[868] or organotin hydrides R_nSnH_{4-n}[869] (chiefly Bu_3SnH)[870] can be used to reduce just one halogen of a *gem*-dihalide or a 1,1,1-trihalide.[870a] Reduction can also be effected by catalytic hydrogenation. A good reducing agent for the removal of all halogen atoms in a polyhalo compound (including vinyl, allylic, geminal, and even bridgehead halogens) is lithium[871] or sodium[872] and *t*-BuOH in tetrahydrofuran. Propargylic halides can often be reduced with allylic rearrangement to give allenes.[873]

---

[850] Olah and Kuhn, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 237 (1961).

[851] Olah and Kuhn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2380 (1960).

[852] Markovski and Pashinnik, *Synthesis* 801 (1975).

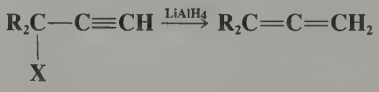
[853] Burton and Koppes, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 425 (1973), *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3026 (1975); Anderson and Kono, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5121 (1973).

[854] For methods of converting acyl chlorides to bromides or iodides, see Schmidt, Russ, and Grosse, *Synthesis* 216 (1981); Hoffmann and Haase, *Synthesis* 715 (1981).

[855] For an example, see Middleton, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2291 (1979).

[856] For a review, see Pinder, *Synthesis* 425–452 (1980).

[857] For review of $LiAlH_4$, see Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 1, pp. 101–294, Wiley, New York, 1974. For a monograph on complex metal hydrides, see Hajós, "Complex Hydrides," Elsevier, New York, 1979.



$$\underset{\displaystyle X}{\underset{|}{R_2C}}—C\equiv CH \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} R_2C=C=CH_2$$

---

[858] Jefford, Kirkpatrick, and Delay, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8905 (1972); Krishnamurthy and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 276 (1982).

[859] Brown, Kim, and Krishnamurthy, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1 (1980); Krishnamurthy and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 849 (1980); **48,** 3085 (1983).

[860] Masamune, Rossy, and Bates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6452 (1973); Masamune, Bates, and Georghiou, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3686 (1974).

[861] Bell, Vanderslice, and Spehar, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3923 (1969); Hutchins, Hoke, Keogh, and Koharski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3495 (1969); Vol'pin, Dvolaitzky, and Levitin, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1526 (1970); Hutchins, Kandasamy, Dux, Maryanoff, Rotstein, Goldsmith, Burgoyne, Cistone, Dalessandro, and Puglis, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2259 (1978).

[862] Hutchins, Bertsch, and Hoke, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1568 (1971).

[863] For some other reagents, not mentioned here, see Nelson and Tufariello, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3159 (1975); Alper, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2257 (1975); Alper, Logbo, and des Abbayes, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2861 (1977); Ashby and Lin, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1263 (1978); Kagan, Namy, and Girard, *Tetrahedron* **37,** Suppl. 9, 175 (1981); Vanderesse, Brunet, and Caubere, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1270 (1981); Brunet, Besozzi, Courtois, and Caubere, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7130 (1982); Colon, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2622 (1982).

[864] For reviews, see Hanson, *Synthesis* 1–8 (1974), pp. 2–5; Hanson and Premuzic, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 247–252 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 271–276]. For a review of the mechanisms of reduction of alkyl halides by metal complexes, see Kochi, "Organometallic Mechanisms and Catalysis," pp. 138–177, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[865] Castro and Kray, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4447 (1966).

[866] Kochi and Mocadlo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4094 (1966); Kochi and Powers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 137 (1970).

[867] Doyle, McOsker, and West, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1393 (1976).

[867a] Hirao, Kohno, Oshiro, and Agawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 1881 (1983).

[868] Downie and Lee, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4951 (1968).

[869] Seyferth, Yamazaki, and Alleston, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 703 (1963).

[870] For reviews of organotin hydrides, see Kuivila, *Synthesis* 499–509 (1970), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 299–305 (1968).

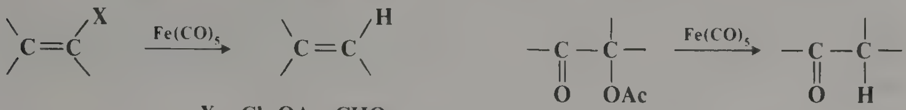
[870a] This can also be accomplished with transition metal compounds and a hydrogen donor. For a review, see Chukovskaya, Freidlina, and Kuz'mina, *Synthesis* 773–784 (1983).

[871] For example, see Bruck, Thompson, and Winstein, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 405 (1960); Gassman and Pape, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 160 (1964); Fieser and Sachs, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 1113 (1964); Nazer, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1737 (1965).

[872] For example, see Gassman, Aue, and Patton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7271 (1968); Gassman and Marshall, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 424.

[873] For examples, see Crandall, Keyton, and Kohne, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3655 (1968); Claesson and Olsson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 7302 (1979).

Another reagent that reduces vinyl chlorides (as well as vinyl acetates, α,β-unsaturated aldehydes, and α-acetoxy ketones) is iron pentacarbonyl.[874]



X = Cl, OAc, CHO

The choice of a reducing agent usually depends on what other functional groups are present. Each reducing agent reduces certain groups and not others. For example, there are several reagents that reduce only the halogen of α-halo ketones, leaving the carbonyl group intact.[874a] Among them are i-Pr_2NLi,[875] CH_3SNa,[876] aqueous $TiCl_3$,[877] NaI in aqueous acid–THF,[878] PI_3 or P_2I_4[879] sodium hydrogen telluride NaTeH,[880] $MeSiCl_3$–NaI,[421] and sodium hydrosulfite $Na_2S_2O_4$.[881] Both zinc-modified cyanoboride reagent (prepared form $NaBH_3CN$ and $ZnCl_2$)[882] and the *n*-butyllithium ate complex (p. 228) of B-*n*-butyl-9-BBN[883] (see p. 426) reduce tertiary alkyl, benzylic, and allylic halides, but do not react with primary or secondary alkyl or aryl halides. Another highly selective reagent, in this case for primary and secondary iodo and bromo groups, is sodium cyanoborohydride $NaBH_3CN$ in HMPT.[884] Most of the reducing agents mentioned reduce chlorides, bromides, and iodides, but organotin hydrides also reduce fluorides.[885] See page 1093 for a discussion of selectivity in reduction reactions.

With lithium aluminum hydride and most other metallic hydrides, the mechanism usually consists of simple nucleophilic substitution with attack by hydride ion that may or may not be completely free. The mechanism is SN2 rather than SN1, since primary halides react better than secondary or tertiary (tertiary generally give alkenes or do not react at all) and since Walden inversion has been demonstrated. However, rearrangements found in the reduction of bicyclic tosylates with $LiAlH_4$ indicate that the SN1 mechanism can take place.[886] There is evidence that $LiAlH_4$ and other metal hydrides can also reduce halides by a free radical mechanism,[887] especially those, such as vinyl,[888] cyclopropyl,[889] or bridgehead halides, that are resistant to nucleophilic substitution. Reduction of halides by $NaBH_4$ in 80% aqueous diglyme[890] and by BH_3 in nitromethane[891] takes place by an SN1 mechanism. $NaBH_4$ in sulfolane reduces tertiary halides possessing a β-hydrogen by an elimination–addition mechanism.[892]

---

[874] Nelson, Detre, and Tanabe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 447 (1973).

[874a] For a review of reductive dehalogenation of polyhalo ketones, see Noyori and Hayakawa, *Org. React.* **29,** 163–344 (1983).

[875] Dubois, Lion, and Dugast, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4207 (1983).

[876] Ōki, Funakoshi, and Nakamura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 828 (1971). See also Inoue, Hata, and Imoto, *Chem. Lett.* 1241 (1975).

[877] Ho and Wong, *Synth. Commun.* **3,** 237 (1973); McMurry, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 281–286 (1974), pp. 284–285.

[878] Gemal and Luche, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3195 (1980). See also Olah, Arvanaghi, and Vankar, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3531 (1980); Ho, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 101 (1981).

[879] Denis and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1431 (1981).

[880] Osuka and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 119 (1983). See also Clive and Beaulieu, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1124 (1982).

[881] Chung and Hu, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 261 (1982).

[882] Kim, Kim, and Ahn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3369 (1983).

[883] Toi, Yamamoto, Sonada, and Murahashi, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2261 (1981).

[884] Hutchins, Kandasamy, Maryanoff, Masilamani, and Maryanoff, *J.Org. Chem.* **42,** 82 (1977).

[885] Fluorides can also be reduced by a solution of K and dicyclohexano-18-crown-6 in toluene or diglyme: Ohsawa, Takagaki, Haneda, and Oishi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2583 (1981). See also Brandänge, Dahlman, and Ölund, *Acta Chem. Soc., Ser. B* **37,** 141 (1983).

[886] Appleton, Fairlie, and McCrindle, *Chem. Commun.* 690 (1967); Kraus and Chassin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1443 (1970).

[887] Ashby, DePriest, and Goel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1763, 3729 (1981); Ashby, DePriest, and Pham. *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2825 (1983); Singh, Khurana, and Nigam, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2901 (1981).

[888] Chung, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3513 (1980).

[889] McKinney, Anderson, Keyes, and Schmidt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3443 (1982).

[890] Bell and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1473 (1966).

[891] Matsumura and Tokura, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 363 (1969).

With other reducing agents the mechanism is not always nucleophilic substitution. For example, reductions with organo tin hydrides generally[893] take place by free-radical mechanisms,[894] as do those with $Fe(CO)_5$.[874] Alkyl halides, including fluorides and polyhalides, can be reduced with magnesium and a secondary or tertiary alcohol (most often isopropyl alcohol).[895] This is actually an example of the occurrence in one step of the sequence:

$$RX \longrightarrow RMgX \xrightarrow{H^+} RH$$

More often the process is carried out in two separate steps (**2-37** and **2-21**).

OS **I,** 357, 358, 548; **II,** 320, 393; **V,** 424; **51,** 60; **53,** 107; **54,** 11.

0-78 Reduction of Tosylates and Similar Compounds
Hydro-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution

$$RCH_2OTs + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow RCH_3$$

Tosylates and other sulfonates can be reduced with $LiAlH_4$,[896] with $NaBH_4$ in a dipolar aprotic solvent,[897] with $LiEt_3BH$, with Bu_3SnH-NaI,[897a] or with NaI and Zn in 1,2-dimethoxyethane.[898] The scope of the reaction seems to be similar to that of **0-77.** When the reagent is $LiAlH_4$, alkyl tosylates are reduced more rapidly than iodides or bromides if the solvent is Et_2O, but the order is reversed in diglyme.[899] The reactivity difference is great enough so that a tosylate function can be reduced in the presence of a halide and vice versa.

OS **52,** 109; **53,** 107. See also OS **61,** 116.

0-79 Hydrogenolysis of Alcohols[900]
Hydro-de-hydroxylation or **Dehydroxylation**

$$ROH + H_2 \xrightarrow{\text{catalyst}} RH$$

The hydroxyl groups of most alcohols can seldom be cleaved by catalytic hydrogenation and alcohols are often used as solvents for hydrogenation of other compounds. However, benzyl-type alcohols undergo the reaction readily and have often been reduced.[901] Diaryl and triarylcarbonols are similarly easy to reduce and this has been accomplished with $LiAlH_4$–$AlCl_3$,[902] with $NaBH_4$ in F_3CCOOH,[903] with alcohols and sulfuric or formic acid,[904] and with iodine, water, and red phosphorus (OS **I,**

---

[892] Jacobus, *Chem. Commun.* 338 (1970); Ref. 862.

[893] For an exception, see Carey and Tremper, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1645 (1969).

[894] Kuivila and Menapace, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2165 (1963); Menapace and Kuivila, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3047 (1964).

[895] Bryce-Smith, Wakefield, and Blues, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 219 (1963).

[896] For examples, see Rapoport and Bonner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 2872 (1951); Eschenmoser and Frey, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **35,** 1660 (1952); Hardegger, Furter, and Kiss, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **41,** 2401 (1958); Dimitriadis and Massy-Westropp, *Aust. J. Chem.* **35,** 1895 (1982).

[897] Hutchins, Hoke, Keogh, and Koharski, Ref. 861.

[897a] Ueno, Tanaka, and Okawara, *Chem. Lett.* 795 (1983).

[898] Kočovský and Černý, *Coll. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **44,** 246 (1979).

[899] Krishnamurthy, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2550 (1980).

[900] For a review, see Müller, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pt. 1, pp. 515–522, Wiley, New York, 1980.

[901] For a review, see Rylander, "Catalytic Hydrogenation over Platinum Metals," pp. 449–468, Academic Press, New York, 1967. For a review of the stereochemistry of hydrogenolysis, see Klabunovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 546–558 (1966).

[902] Blackwell and Hickinbottom, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1405 (1961).

[903] Gribble, Leese, and Evans, *Synthesis* 172 (1977).

[904] Dar'eva and Miklukhin, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **29,** 620 (1959).

224). Other reagents have been used, among them diiododimethylsilane Me_2SiI_2,[905] $Fe(CO)_5$,[906] P_2I_4,[907] and tin and hydrochloric acid. 1,3-Glycols are especially susceptible to hydrogenolysis. Tertiary alcohols can be reduced by catalytic hydrogenolysis when the catalyst is platinum bis(triphenylphosphine) dichloride.[908] Certain tertiary and secondary alcohols can be reduced with an organosilane and BF_3.[909] Allylic alcohols (and ethers and acetates) can be reduced (often with accompanying allylic rearrangement) with Zn amalgam and HCl, as well as with certain other reagents.[910]

Alcohols can also be reduced indirectly by conversion to a sulfonate and reduction of that compound (**0-78**). The two reactions can be carried out without isolation of the sulfonate if the alcohol is treated with pyridine–SO_3 in tetrahydrofuran, and $LiAlH_4$ then added.[911] Another indirect reduction[912] that can be done in one step involves treatment of the alcohol (primary, secondary, or benzylic) with NaI, Zn, and Me_3SiCl.[913] In this case the alcohol is first converted to the iodide, which is reduced. The OH group of an α-hydroxy ketone can be indirectly reduced without affecting the C═O group by successive treatment with 1-methyl-2-fluoropyridinium tosylate and sodium hydrosulfite $Na_2S_2O_4$.[914] For other indirect reductions of OH, see **0-82.**

Though the mechanisms of most alcohol reductions are obscure,[915] in at least some cases nucleophilic substitution has been demonstrated.[904] Hydrogenolysis of benzyl alcohols can give inversion or retention of configuration, depending on the catalyst.[916]

OS **I,** 224; **IV,** 25, 218, 482; **V,** 339; **56,** 101.

0-80 Replacement of Alkoxyl by Hydrogen
Hydro-de-alkoxylation or **Dealkoxylation**

$$\text{—}\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{(OR)_2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{LiAlH_4–AlCl_3}} \text{—}\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{HOR} + \mathrm{ROH}$$

$$\text{—}\mathrm{C(OR)_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{LiAlH_4}} \text{—}\mathrm{CH(OR)_2} + \mathrm{ROH}$$

Simple ethers are not normally cleaved by reducing agents, although such cleavage has sometimes been reported (for example, tetrahydrofuran treated with $LiAlH_4$–$AlCl_3$[917] or with a mixture of $LiAlH(O\text{-}t\text{-}Bu)_3$ and Et_3B[918] gave 1-butanol; the latter reagent also cleaves methyl alkyl ethers).[919] Certain types of ethers can be cleaved quite well by reducing agents. Among these are allyl aryl,[920] vinyl aryl,[921] and benzyl ethers[901] (for epoxides, see **0-81**). Acetals and ketals are resistant to $LiAlH_4$ and similar hydrides, and carbonyl groups are often converted to acetals or ketals for protection.

---

[905] Ando and Ikeno, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4941 (1979).

[906] Alper and Sališová, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 801 (1980).

[907] Suzuki, Tani, Kubota, Sato, Tsuji, and Osuka, *Chem. Lett.* 247 (1983).

[908] Parnes, Shaapuni, Kalinkin, and Kursanov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **23,** 1592 (1974). See also Kalinkin, Parnes, Shaapuni, and Kursanov, *Dokl. Chem.* **219,** 888 (1974).

[909] Adlington, Orfanopoulos and Fry, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2955 (1976).

[910] For discussion, see Elphimoff-Felkin and Sarda, *Org. Synth.* **56,** 101; *Tetrahedron* **33,** 511 (1977).

[911] Corey and Achiwa, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3667 (1969).

[912] For still another, see Barton, Hartwig, Motherwell, Motherwell, and Stange, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 2019 (1982).

[913] Morita, Okamoto, and Sakurai, *Synthesis* 32 (1981).

[914] Wada, Imaoka, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 381 (1976).

[915] For discussions of the mechanisms of the hydrogenolysis of benzyl alcohols, see Khan, McQuillin, and Jardine, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2649 (1966); *J. Chem. Soc. C* 136 (1967); Garbisch, Schreader, and Frankel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4233 (1967); Mitsui, Imaizumi, and Esashi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 2143 (1970).

[916] Mitsui, Kudo, and Kobayashi, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 1921 (1969); Mitsui, Imaizumi, and Esashi, Ref. 915.

[917] Bailey and Marktscheffel, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 1797 (1960).

[918] Krishnamurthy and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3678 (1979).

[919] For a review of the reduction of ethers, see Müller, Ref. 900, pp. 522–528.

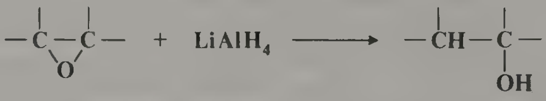
[920] Tweedie and Cuscurida, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5463 (1957).

[921] Tweedie and Barron, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 2023 (1960). See also Hutchins and Learn, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4380 (1982).

However, a combination of $LiAlH_4$ and $AlCl_3$[922] does reduce acetals and ketals,[923] removing one group, as shown above.[924] The actual reducing agents in this case are primarily chloroaluminum hydride AlH_2Cl and dichloroaluminum hydride Al_2HCl, which are formed from the reagents.[925] This conversion can also be accomplished with i-Bu_2AlH.[925a] Ortho esters are easily reduced to acetals by $LiAlH_4$ alone, offering a route to aldehydes, since these are easily prepared by hydrolysis of the acetals (**0-7**).

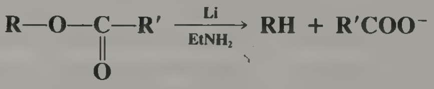
OS **III,** 693; **IV,** 798; **V,** 303. Also see OS **III,** 742; **60,** 92.

0-81 Reduction of Epoxides



Reduction of epoxides is a special case of **0-80** and is easily carried out. The most common reagent is $LiAlH_4$, which reacts by the SN2 mechanism, giving inversion of configuration. An epoxide on a substituted cyclohexane ring cleaves in such a direction as to give an axial alcohol. As expected for an SN2 mechanism, cleavage usually occurs so that a tertiary alcohol is formed if possible. If not, a secondary alcohol is preferred. However, for certain substrates, the epoxide ring can be opened the other way by reduction with $NaBH_3CN–BF_3$,[926] with $Me_3SiCl–Zn$,[926a] or with BH_3 in tetrahydrofuran[927] in the presence of BF_3 (for aryl-substituted epoxides) or of BH_4^- (for trisubstituted epoxides).[928] The reaction has also been carried out with other reagents, for example, sodium amalgam in EtOH, and Li in ethylenediamine,[929] and by catalytic hydrogenation.[930] Highly hindered epoxides can be conveniently reduced, without rearrangement, with lithium triethylborohydride.[931] See **9-47** for another type of epoxide reduction.

0-82 Reductive Cleavage of Esters
Hydro-de-acyloxylation or **Deacyloxylation**



$$R—O—\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}—R' \xrightarrow[EtNH_2]{Li} RH + R'COO^-$$

The alkyl group R of certain carboxylic esters can be reduced to RH[931a] by treatment with lithium in ethylamine.[932] The reaction is successful when R is a tertiary or a sterically hindered secondary alkyl group. A free-radical mechanism is likely.[933] Similar reduction, also by a free-radical mechanism, has been reported with sodium in HMPT-*t*-BuOH.[934] In the latter case, tertiary R groups give high yields of RH, but primary and secondary R are converted to a mixture of RH and ROH. Both of these methods provide an indirect method of accomplishing **0-79** for tertiary R. The same thing can be done for primary and secondary R by treating dialkylaminothiocarbamates ROC(=S)NR$_2$ with K and 18-crown-6,[935] or by treating alkyl chloroformates ROCOCl with tri-*n*-propylsilane in the presence of *t*-butyl peroxide.[936] Allylic acetates can be reduced with NaBH$_4$ and a palladium complex.[937] For other ester reductions, see **9-41, 9-43,** and **9-44**.

---

[922] For a review of reductions by metal hydride–Lewis acid combinations, see Rerick, in Augustine, "Reduction," pp. 1–94, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1968.

[923] For a list of other reagents that accomplish this conversion, with references, see Tsunoda, Suzuki, and Noyori, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4679 (1979).

[924] Eliel, Badding, and Rerick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2371 (1962).

[925] Ashby and Prather, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 729 (1966); Diner, Davis, and Brown, *Can. J. Chem.* **45,** 207 (1967).

[925a] See, for example, Zakharkin and Khorlina, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 2156 (1959); Takano, Akiyama, Sato, and Ogasawara, *Chem. Lett.* 1593 (1983).

[926] Hutchins, Taffer, and Burgoyne, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5214 (1981).

[926a] Vankar, Arya, and Rao, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 869 (1983).

[927] For a review of epoxide reduction with BH_3, see Cragg, "Organoboranes in Organic Synthesis," pp. 345–348, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1973. See also Yamamoto, Toi, Sonoda, and Murahashi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 672 (1976).

[928] Brown and Yoon, *Chem. Commun.* 1549 (1968); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2686 (1968).

[929] Brown, Ikegami, and Kawakami, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3243 (1970).

[930] For a review, see Rylander, Ref. 901, pp. 478–485.

[931] Krishnamurthy, Schubert, and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8486 (1973).

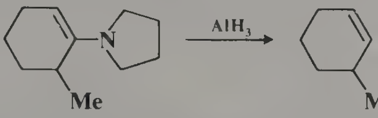
[931a] For a review of some of the reactions in this section and some others, see Hartwig, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2609–2645 (1983).

[932] Barrett, Godfrey, Hollinshead, Prokopiou, Barton, Boar, Joukhadar, McGhie, and Misra, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1501 (1981).

0-83 Reduction of the C—N Bond
Hydro-de-amination or **Deamination**

$$\mathbf{RNH_2 + NH_2OSO_2OH \xrightarrow[0°C]{OH^-} RH + N_2 + SO_4^{2-}}$$

Primary amines have been reduced to RH with hydroxylamine-O-sulfonic acid and aqueous NaOH.[938] It is postulated that R—N=N—H is an intermediate that decomposes to the carbocation. The reaction has also been accomplished with difluoroamine HNF$_2$;[939] the same intermediates are postulated in this case. An indirect means of achieving the same result is the conversion of the primary amine to the sulfonamide RNHSO$_2$R′ (**0-119**) and treatment of this with NH$_2$OSO$_2$OH.[940] Other indirect methods involve reduction of N,N-ditosylates (p. 312) with NaBH$_4$ in HMPT[941] and a modification of the Katritzky pyrylium–pyridinium method.[942] Allylic and benzylic amines[901] can be reduced by catalytic hydrogenation.[943] Enamines are cleaved to olefins with alane AlH$_3$,[944] e.g.,



Since enamines can be prepared from ketones (**6-14**), this is a way of converting ketones to alkenes. Diazo ketones are reduced to methyl ketones by HI: RCOCHN$_2$ + HI → RCOCH$_3$.[945]

Quaternary ammonium salts can be cleaved with LiAlH$_4$

$$\mathbf{R_4N^+ + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow R_3N + RH}$$

as can quaternary phosphonium salts R$_4$P$^+$. Other reducing agents have also been used, for example, lithium triethylborohydride (which preferentially cleaves methyl groups)[946] and sodium in liquid ammonia. When quaternary salts are reduced with sodium amalgam in water, the reaction is known as the *Emde reduction*. However, this reagent is not applicable to the cleavage of ammonium salts

[933] Barrett, Prokopiou, Barton, Boar, and McGhie, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1173 (1979).

[934] Deshayes and Pete, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 567 (1978).

[935] Barrett, Prokopiou, and Barton, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1510 (1981).

[936] Jackson and Malek, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1207 (1980).

[937] Hutchins, Learn, and Fulton, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 27 (1980).

[938] Doldouras and Kollonitsch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 341 (1978).

[939] Bumgardner, Martin, and Freeman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 97 (1963).

[940] Nickon and Hill, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1152 (1964).

[941] Hutchins, Cistone, Goldsmith, and Heuman, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2018 (1975).

[942] Katritzky, Horvath, and Plau, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2554 (1980).

[943] For another method, applicable to allylic and benzylic primary amines only, see Boulton, Epsztajn, Katritzky, and Nie, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2689 (1976).

[944] Coulter, Lewis, and Lynch, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 4489 (1968).

[945] For example, see Pojer, Ritchie, and Taylor, *Aust. J. Chem.* **21,** 1375 (1968).

[946] Cooke and Parlman, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 531 (1975). See also Newkome, Majestic, and Sauer, *Org. Prep. Proceed. Int.* **12,** 345 (1980).

with four *saturated* alkyl groups. Some tertiary amines have been cleaved with $LiAlH_4$.[947] Of course, aziridines[930] can be reduced in the same way as epoxides (**0-81**).

Nitro compounds RNO_2 can be reduced to RH by sodium methylmercaptide CH_3SNa in an aprotic solvent[948] or by Bu_3SnH.[949] Both reactions have free-radical mechanisms. The latter reagent also reduces isonitriles RNC (prepared from RNH_2 by formylation followed by **7-44**) to RH,[950] a reaction that can also be accomplished with Li or Na in liquid NH_3.[951]

OS **III,** 148; **IV,** 508.

For reduction of the C—S bond, see **4-37.**

B. Attack at an Acyl Carbon

0-84 Reduction of Acyl Halides
Hydro-de-halogenation or **Dehalogenation**

$$\mathbf{RCOCl} \xrightarrow[-78^\circ C]{LiAlH(O\text{-}t\text{-}Bu)_3} \mathbf{RCHO}$$

Acyl halides can be reduced to aldehydes[952] by treatment with lithium tri-*t*-butoxyaluminum hydride in diglyme at −78°C.[953] R may be alkyl or aryl and may contain many types of substituents, including NO_2, CN, and EtOOC groups. The reaction stops at the aldehyde stage because steric hindrance prevents further reduction under these conditions. Acyl halides can also be reduced to aldehydes by hydrogenation with palladium-on-barium sulfate as catalyst. This is called the *Rosenmund reduction*.[954] A more convenient hydrogenation procedure involves palladium-on-charcoal as the catalyst, with ethyldiisopropylamine as acceptor of the liberated HCl and acetone as the solvent.[955] The reduction of acyl halides to aldehydes has also been carried out[956] with Bu_3SnH,[957] with $NaBH_4$ in a mixture of DMF and THF,[958] and with bis(triphenylphosphine)tetrahydroboratocopper(I) $(Ph_3P)_2CuBH_4$.[959] In some of these cases, the mechanisms are free-radical. There are several indirect methods for the conversion of acyl halides to aldehydes, most of them involving prior conversion of the halides to certain types of amides (see **0-86**). There is also a method in which the COOH group is replaced by a completely different CHO group (**0-113**). Also see **9-46.**

OS **III,** 551, 627; **51,** 8; **53,** 52. Also see OS **III,** 818; **51,** 11.

---

[947] Tweedie and Allabash, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 3676 (1961).

[948] Kornblum, Carlson, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 647 (1979); Kornblum, Widmer, and Carlson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 658 (1979).

[949] Ono, Miyake, Tamura, and Kaji, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1705 (1981); Tanner, Blackburn, and Diaz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1557 (1981). For another method, see Rosini, Ballini, and Zanotti, *Synthesis* 137 (1983).

[950] Barton, Bringmann, and Motherwell, *Synthesis* 68 (1980).

[951] See Niznik and Walborsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2396 (1978).

[952] For a review of the formation of aldehydes from acid derivatives, see Fuson, in Patai, Ref. 372, pp. 211–232. For a review of the reduction of acyl halides, see Wheeler, in Patai, Ref. 413, pp. 231–251.

[953] Brown and McFarlin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5372 (1958); Brown and Subba Rao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5377 (1958).

[954] For a review, see Rylander, Ref. 901, pp. 398–404.

[955] Peters and van Bekkum, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **90,** 1323 (1971); **100,** 21 (1981). See also Burgstahler, Weigel, and Shaefer, *Synthesis* 767 (1976).

[956] For some other methods, see Wagenknecht, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1513 (1972); Smith and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 459 (1975); Cole and Pettit, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 781 (1977); Hutchins and Markowitz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 813 (1980).

[957] Kuivila, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 284 (1960); Kuivila and Walsh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 571 (1966); Walsh, Stoneberg, Yorke, and Kuivila, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1156 (1969); Four and Guibe, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4439 (1981); Lusztyk, Lusztyk, Maillard, Lunazzi, and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4475 (1983).

[958] Babler and Invergo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 11 (1981); Babler, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 839 (1982). For the use of $NaBH_4$ and metal ions, see Entwistle, Boehm, Johnstone, and Telford, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 27 (1980).

[959] Fleet and Harding, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 975 (1979); Sorrell and Pearlman, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3449 (1980).

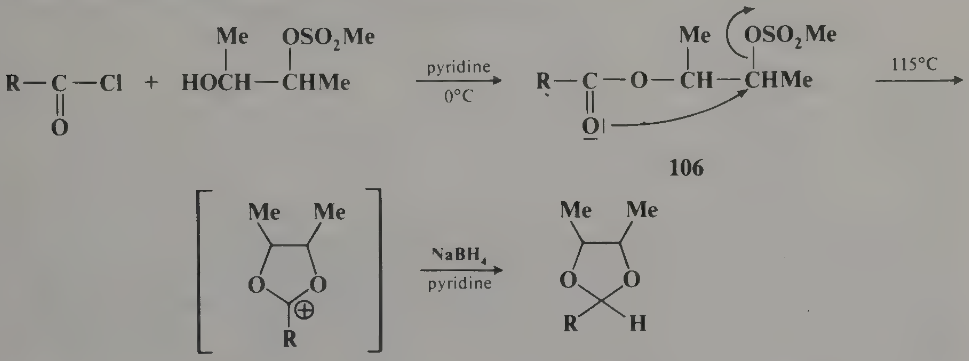
0-85 Reduction of Carboxylic Acids, Esters, and Anhydrides to Aldehydes

Hydro-de-hydroxylation or **Dehydroxylation** (overall transformation)

$$\mathrm{RCOOH} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{MeNH_2}]{\mathrm{Li}} \mathrm{RCH{=}N{-}Me} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{RCHO}$$

With most reducing agents, reduction of carboxylic acids generally gives the primary alcohol (**9-39**) and the isolation of aldehydes is not feasible. However, simple straight-chain carboxylic acids have been reduced to aldehydes by treatment with Li in $MeNH_2$ or NH_3 followed by hydrolysis of the resulting imine[960] with borane–Me_2S followed by pyridinium chlorochromate,[961] with isobutylmagnesium bromide and a titanium-complex catalyst followed by hydrolysis,[962] with LiAlH(O-*t*-Bu)$_3$ and N,N-dimethylchloromethyleniminium chloride $Me_2N{=}CHCl^+\ Cl^-$ in pyridine,[963] and with diaminoaluminum hydrides.[964] Some aldehydes have also been prepared by heating carboxylic acids with formic acid and thorium oxide (this is actually an example of **0-116**). Caproic and isovaleric acids have been reduced to aldehydes in 50% yields or better with (iso-Bu)$_2$AlH at -75 to -70°C.[965]

Esters have been reduced to aldehydes with (iso-Bu)$_2$AlH at -70°C, with diaminoaluminum hydrides,[964] and with $NaAlH_4$ at -65 to -45°C, and (for phenolic esters) with LiAlH(O-*t*-Bu)$_3$ at 0°C.[966] An unusual way of converting acyl halides to aldehydes through an ester is treatment of a 2,3-butanediol monomesylate ester (**106**) with $NaBH_4$ in pyridine at 115°C.[967] Hydrolysis of the acetal (**107**) gives the aldehyde RCHO.



106

107

Anhydrides, both aliphatic and aromatic, as well as mixed anhydrides of carboxylic and carbonic acids, have been reduced to aldehydes in moderate yields with disodium tetracarbonylferrate $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$.[968]

Also see **9-41** and **9-43.**

OS **51,** 11.

---

[960] Bedenbaugh, Bedenbaugh, Bergin, and Adkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5774 (1970); Burgstahler, Worden, and Lewis, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2918 (1963).

[961] Brown, Rao, and Kulkarni, *Synthesis* 704 (1979).

[962] Sato, Jinbo, and Sato, *Synthesis* 871 (1981).

[963] Fujisawa, Mori, Tsuge, and Sato, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1543 (1983).

[964] Muraki and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1447 (1974), 215 (1975).

[965] Zakharkin and Khorlina, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **34,** 1021 (1964); Zakharkin and Sorokina, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **37,** 525 (1967).

[966] Zakharkin and Khorlina, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 619 (1962); *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 288–290 (1963), 435 (1964); Zakharkin, Gavrilenko, Maslin, and Khorlina, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2087 (1963); Zakharkin, Gavrilenko, and Maslin, *Bull. Acad. Sci., Div. Chem. Sci.* 867 (1964); Weissman and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 283 (1966).

[967] Johnson and Rickborn, *Org. Synth.* **51,** 11 (1971). See also Doleschall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 681 (1975).

[968] Watanabe, Yamashita, Mitsudo, Igami, and Takegami, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **48,** 2490 (1975); Watanabe, Yamashita, Mitsudo, Igami, Tomi, and Takegami, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1063 (1975).

0-86 Reduction of Amides to Aldehydes

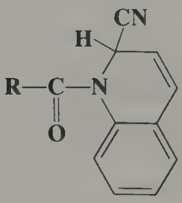
Hydro-de-dialkylamino-substitution

$$\mathrm{RCONR'_2} + \mathrm{LiAlH_4} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RCHO} + \mathrm{NHR'_2}$$

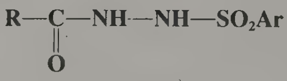
N,N-Disubstituted amides can be reduced to amines with $LiAlH_4$ (see **9-40**), but also to aldehydes.[969] Keeping the amide in excess gives the aldehyde rather than the amine. Sometimes it is not possible to prevent further reduction and primary alcohols are obtained instead. Other reagents that give good yields of aldehydes are $(\text{iso-Bu})_2AlH$,[970] $LiAlH(O\text{-}t\text{-}Bu)_3$, $LiAlH_4$-EtOH,[971] $NaAlH_4$,[972] and diaminoaluminum hydrides.[973]

Aldehydes have been prepared from acids or acyl halides by first converting them to certain types of amides that are easily reducible. The following are some examples:[974]

1. *Reissert compounds*[975] (**108**) are prepared from the acyl halide by treatment with quinoline and cyanide ion. Treatment of **108** with sulfuric acid gives the corresponding aldehyde.

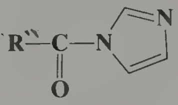


108



$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{}{\underset{\displaystyle \overset{\|}{O}}{C}}{-}NH{-}NH{-}SO_2Ar}$$

109



98

2. Acyl sulfonylhydrazides (**109**) are cleaved with base to give aldehydes. This is known as the *McFadyen–Stevens reduction* and is applicable only to aromatic aldehydes or aliphatic aldehydes with no α-hydrogen.[976] RCON=NH (see **0-83**) has been proposed as an intermediate in this reaction.[977] Both aromatic and aliphatic aldehydes (including those with α hydrogens) can be prepared in good yields, if the dry Na or Li salt of **109** is subjected to vacuum pyrolysis.[978]

3. Imidazoles (**98**)[454] can be reduced to aldehydes with $LiAlH_4$.

4. See also the Sonn–Müller method (**6-29**).

See OS **IV**, 641, **56**, 19 for the preparation of Reissert compounds.

---

[969] For a review, see Fuson, Ref. 952, pp. 220–225.

[970] Zakharkin and Khorlina, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 2046 (1959).

[971] Brown and Tsukamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1089 (1964).

[972] Zakharkin, Maslin, and Gavrilenko, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 5555 (1969).

[973] Muraki and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 875 (1975).

[974] For other examples, see Brown and Tsukamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4549 (1961); Doleschall, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2549 (1976); Atta-ur-Rahman and Basha, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 594 (1976); Izawa and Mukaiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 555 (1979); Craig, Ekwuribe, Fu, and Walker, *Synthesis* 303 (1981).

[975] For reviews of Reissert compounds, see Popp, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **90,** 609–613 (1981); *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **24,** 187–214 (1979); **9,** 1–25 (1968).

[976] Sprecher, Feldkimel, and Wilchek, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 3664 (1961); Babad, Herbert, and Stiles, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2927 (1966); Dudman, Grice, and Reese, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4645 (1980).

[977] For discussions, see Cacchi and Paolucci, *Gazz. Chem. Ital.* **104,** 221 (1974); Matin, Craig, and Chan, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2285 (1974).

[978] Nair and Shechter, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 793 (1978).

Carbon Nucleophiles

In any ionic reaction in which a new carbon–carbon bond is formed[979] one carbon atom attacks as a nucleophile and the other as an electrophile. The classification of a given reaction as nucleophilic or electrophilic is a matter of convention and is usually based on analogy. Although not discussed in this chapter, **1-13** to **1-30** and **2-14** to **2-18** are actually nucleophilic substitutions with respect to one reactant, though, following convention, we classify them with respect to the other. Similarly, all the reactions in this section (**0-87** to **0-116**) would be called electrophilic substitutions (aromatic or aliphatic) if we were to consider the reagent as the substrate.

A. Attack at an Alkyl Carbon. In **0-87** to **0-95** the nucleophile is a "carbanion" part of an organometallic compound, often a Grignard reagent. There is much that is still not known about the mechanisms of these reactions and many of them are not nucleophilic substitutions at all. In those reactions that are nucleophilic substitutions, the attacking carbon brings a pair of electrons with it to the new C—C bond, whether or not free carbanions are actually involved. The connection of two alkyl or aryl groups is called *coupling*. Reactions **0-87** to **0-95** include both symmetrical and unsymmetrical coupling reactions. The latter are also called *cross-coupling reactions*. Other coupling reactions are considered in later chapters.

0-87 Coupling of Alkyl Halides. The Wurtz Reaction

$$2RX + Na \longrightarrow RR$$

The coupling of alkyl halides by treatment with sodium to give a symmetrical product is called the *Wurtz reaction*. Side reactions (elimination and rearrangement) are so common that the reaction is seldom used. Mixed Wurtz reactions of two alkyl halides are even less feasible because of the number of products obtained. A somewhat more useful reaction (though still not very good) takes place when a mixture of an alkyl and an aryl halide is treated with sodium to give an alkylated aromatic compound (the *Wurtz–Fittig reaction*).[980] However, the coupling of two aryl halides with sodium is impractical (see, however, **3-16**). Other metals have also been used to effect Wurtz reactions, notably silver, zinc,[981] iron,[982] and pyrophoric lead.[983] With the latter reagent, a COOH group may be present in the molecule without being affected, e.g., succinic acid was produced from chloroacetic acid. Lithium, under the influence of ultrasound, has been used to couple alkyl, aryl, and benzyl halides.[984] A mixture of VCl_3 and $LiAlH_4$ dimerizes benzyl halides to give $ArCH_2CH_2Ar$.[985] Benzal bromides ($ArCHBr_2$) can be coupled with CuCl in dimethyl sulfoxide (to give ArCHBrCHBrAr).[986]

One type of Wurtz reaction that is quite useful is the closing of small rings, especially three-membered rings.[987] For example, 1,3-dibromopropane can be converted to cyclopropane by Zn and NaI.[988] Two highly strained molecules that have been prepared this way are bicyclobutane[989] and tetracyclo[3.3.1.1^{3,7}.0^{1,3}]decane.[990] Three- and four-membered rings can also be closed in this manner with certain other reagents,[991] including benzoyl peroxide,[992] *t*-BuLi,[993] ethylenediamine-chromium(II) reagent,[991] and lithium amalgam,[994] as well as electrochemically.[995]

---

[979] For a monograph that discusses most of the reactions in this section, see Stowell, "Carbanions in Organic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1979. For a review, see Noyori, in Aiper, "Transition Metal Organometallics in Organic Synthesis," vol. 1, pp. 83–187, Academic Press, New York, 1976.

[980] For an example, see Kwa and Boelhouwer, *Tetrahedron* **25**, 5771 (1970).

[981] See, for example, Nosek, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **29**, 597 (1964).

[982] Nozaki and Noyori, *Tetrahedron* **22**, 2163 (1966); Onsager, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **32**, 15 (1978).

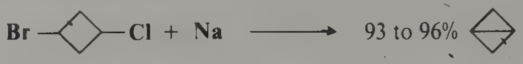
[983] Mészáros, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4951 (1967); Azoo and Grimshaw, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2403 (1968).

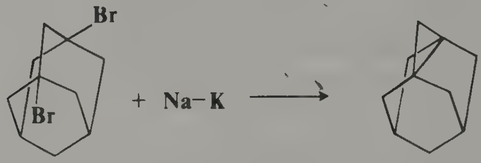
[984] Han and Boudjouk, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22**, 2757 (1981).

[985] Ho and Olah, *Synthesis* 170 (1977). For some other reagents that accomplish this, see Sayles and Kharasch, *J. Org. Chem.* **26**, 4210 (1961); Cooper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 4158 (1973); Ballatore, Crozet, and Surzur, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3073 (1979); Yamada and Momose, *Chem. Lett.* 1277 (1981).

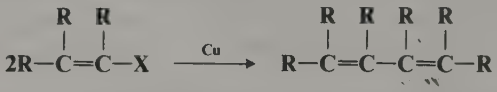
[986] Nozaki, Shirafuji, and Yamamoto, *Tetrahedron* **25**, 3461 (1969).

[987] For a review, see Freidlina, Kamyshova, and Chukovskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51**, 368–376 (1982).





Vinyl halides can be coupled to give 1,3-butadienes by treatment with activated copper powder in a reaction analogous to the Ullmann reaction (**3-16**).[996] This reaction is stereospecific, with retention of configuration at both carbons. Vinyl halides can also be coupled[997] with CuCl,[998] with Zn–NiCl$_2$,[998a] and with *n*-BuLi in ether in the presence of MnCl$_2$.[999]



$$2\text{R}-\overset{\text{R}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}=\overset{\text{R}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}-\text{X} \xrightarrow{\text{Cu}} \text{R}-\overset{\text{R}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}=\overset{\text{R}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}-\overset{\text{R}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}=\overset{\text{R}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}-\text{R}$$

It seems likely that the mechanism of the Wurtz reaction consists of two basic steps. The first is halogen–metal exchange to give an organometallic compound (RX + M → RM), which in many cases can be isolated (**2-37**). Following this, the organometallic compound reacts with a second molecule of alkyl halide (RX + RM → RR). This reaction and its mechanism are considered in the next section (**0-88**).

OS **III,** 157; **V,** 328, 1058; **51,** 55; **52,** 22.

0-88 The Reaction of Alkyl Halides with Organometallic Reagents[999a]
Alkyl-de-halogenation

$$\text{RX} + \text{R}'_2\text{CuLi} \longrightarrow \text{R}-\text{R}'$$

The reagents lithium dialkylcopper[1000] react with alkyl bromides, chlorides, and iodides in ether or tetrahydrofuran to give good yields of the cross-coupling products.[1001] The reaction is of wide scope.[1002] R may be primary alkyl, allylic, benzylic, aryl, vinylic, or allenic,[1003] and may contain keto, COOH, COOR, or $CONR_2$ groups. The reaction at a vinylic substrate occurs sterospecifically, with retention of configuration.[1004] When the reagent and substrate are both vinylic, yields are low, but the reaction can be made to go (to give 1,3-butadienes) stereospecifically in high yields by the use of $ZnBr_2$ and a Pd(0) complex.[1005] Many *gem*-dihalides do not react, but when the two halogens are on a carbon α to an aromatic ring[1006] or on a cyclopropane ring,[1007] both halogens can be replaced by R, e.g., $PhCHCl_2 \rightarrow PhCHMe_2$. However, 1,2-dibromides give exclusive elimination[1008] (**7-29**). R′ in R'_2CuLi may be primary alkyl, vinyl, allyl, or aryl. Thus, in the reaction as so far described, neither R nor R′ may be secondary or tertiary alkyl. However, secondary and tertiary alkyl coupling can be achieved (on primary RX) by the use of $R'_2CuLi \cdot PBu_3$[1009] (although this procedure introduces problems in the workup); by the use of PhS(R′)CuLi,[1010] which selectively couples a secondary or tertiary R′ with a primary iodide RI to give RR′;[1011] or by mixing an organolithium compound with an iodo(triarylphosphine)copper that is bound to a polymer.[1012] From the opposite standpoint, coupling to a secondary R can be achieved in high yield with the reagents $R'_2Cu(CN)Li_2$, where R′ is primary alkyl or vinyl (but not aryl).[1013] The reagents $RCu(PPh_2)Li$, $RCu(NR'_2)Li$, and $RCu(PR'_2)Li$ (R′ = cyclohexyl) are more stable than R_2CuLi and can be used at higher temperatures.[1014] The fact that R'_2CuLi do not react with ketones provides a method for the alkylation of ketones[1015] (see also **0-97** and **0-101**), though halogen–metal exchange (**2-38**) is a side reaction and can become the main reaction.[1016]

---

[988] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Applequist and Pfohl, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 867 (1978).

[989] Wiberg and Lampman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2173 (1963); Lampman and Aumiller, *Org. Synth.* **51,** 55 (1971).

[990] Pincock, Schmidt, Scott, and Torupka, *Can. J. Chem.* **50,** 3958 (1972).

[991] For a discussion, see Kochi and Singleton, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1027 (1968).

[992] Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1753 (1967), *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 4059 (1967).

[993] Bailey and Gagnier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 5123 (1982).

[994] Connor and Wilson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4925 (1967).

[995] Rifi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4442 (1967), *Org. Synth.* **52,** 22 (1972).

[996] Cohen and Poeth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4363 (1972).

[997] For some other methods, see Jones, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1667 (1967); Semmelhack, Helquist, and Gorzynski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 9234 (1972); Wellmann and Steckhan, *Synthesis* 901 (1978); Miyahara, Shiraishi, Inazu, and Yoshino, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 953 (1979).

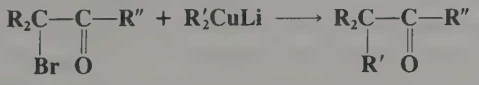
[998] Kauffmann and Sahm, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 85 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 101]; Toda and Takehira, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 174 (1975).

[998a] Takagi and Hayama, *Chem. Lett.* 637 (1983).

[999] Cahiez, Bernard, and Normant, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **113,** 99 (1976).

[999a] For a review of the reactions in this section, see Naso and Marchese, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 73, pt. 2, pp. 1353–1449.

[1000] For the structure of Me$_2$CuLi (a cyclic dimer), see Pearson and Gregory, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 4098 (1976). See also Ashby and Watkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5312 (1977).



$$\underset{\mathrm{Br}}{\underset{|}{\mathbf{R_2C}}}-\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathbf{C}}}-\mathbf{R''} + \mathbf{R'_2CuLi} \longrightarrow \underset{\mathrm{R'}}{\underset{|}{\mathbf{R_2C}}}-\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathbf{C}}}-\mathbf{R''}$$

When α,α′-dibromo ketones are treated with Me_2CuLi in ether at −78°C and the mixture quenched with methanol, *mono*methylation takes place[1017] (no dimethylation is observed). It has been suggested that the reaction involves cyclization (**0-87**) to a cyclopropanone followed by nucleophilic attack to give the enolate ion **111** which is protonated by the methanol. If methyl iodide is added instead of methanol, an α,α′-dimethyl ketone is obtained, presumably from SN2 attack by **111** on methyl iodide (**0-97**). Only halides that are highly reactive to SN2 attack (e.g., methyl and benzyl halides) react successfully with **111.** Primary, secondary, *and tertiary* monoalkylation of **110** can be achieved if **110** is treated with a lithium *t*-butoxy(alkyl)copper reagent[1018] instead of Me_2CuLi. For example, 2,6-dibromocyclohexanone, treated with lithium *t*-butoxy(*t*-butyl)copper, gave 66% 2-*t*-butylcyclohexanone. This is one of the few methods for introducing a tertiary alkyl group α to a carbonyl group. With an unsymmetrical α,α′-dibromo ketone, monomethylation takes place predominantly on the less substituted side when the incoming group is large, but this predominance decreases with decreasing size until, with methyl, an approximately 1:1 mixture of both products is obtained.

[1001] Corey and Posner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3911 (1967), **90,** 5615 (1968); Whitesides, Fischer, San Filippo, Bashe, and House, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4871 (1969); Bergbreiter and Whitesides, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 779 (1975).

[1002] For a review of this reaction, see Posner, *Org. React.* **22,** 253–400 (1975). For a review of organocopper reagents, see Normant, *Synthesis* 63–80 (1972). For examples of the use of this reaction in the synthesis of natural products, see Posner, "An Introduction to Synthesis Using Organocopper Reagents," pp. 68–81, Wiley, New York, 1980.

[1003] Kalli, Landor, and Landor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1347 (1973).

[1004] Corey and Posner, Ref. 1001; Klein and Levene, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2520 (1972).

[1005] Jabri, Alexakis, and Normant, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 959 (1981), **23,** 1589 (1982), *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-321, II-332 (1983).

[1006] Posner and Brunelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 293 (1972).

[1007] See, for example, Kitatani, Hiyama, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 1600 (1977).

[1008] Posner and Ting, *Synth. Commun.* **3,** 281 (1973).

[1009] Whitesides, Fischer, San Filippo, Bashe, and House, Ref. 1001.

[1010] Prepared as in Ref. 1018 or by treatment of PhSCu with RLi: Posner, Brunelle, and Sinoway, *Synthesis* 662 (1974).

[1011] Posner, Whitten, and Sterling, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7788 (1973); Posner and Whitten, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1815 (1973).

[1012] Schwartz and San Filippo, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2705 (1979).

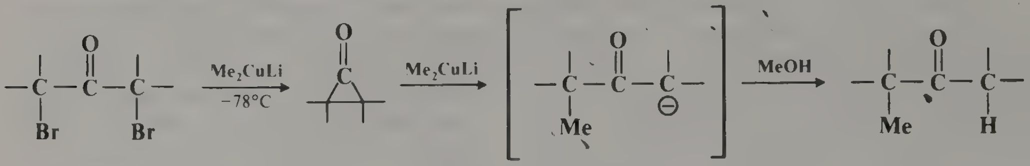
[1013] Lipshutz, Wilhelm, and Floyd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 7672 (1981).

[1014] Bertz, Dabbagh, and Villacorta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5824 (1982); Bertz and Dabbagh, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 1119 (1984).

[1015] Dubois, Lion, and Moulineau, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 177 (1971); Dubois, Fournier, and Lion, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1871 (1976).

[1016] See Corey and Posner, Ref. 1001; Wakselman and Mondon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4285 (1973).

[1017] Posner and Sterling, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3076 (1973). See also Posner, Sterling, Whitten, Lentz, and Brunelle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 107 (1975); Lion and Dubois, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 1223 (1975).



110

111

R'_2CuLi reagents can be prepared by mixing 2 moles of RLi with 1 mole of cuprous halide in ether solution at low temperatures[1019] (**2-34**) or by dissolving an alkylcopper compound in an alkyllithium solution.

A much older reaction is the coupling of alkyl halides with Grignard reagents.[1020] Grignard reagents have the advantage that they are usually simpler to prepare than the corresponding R'_2CuLi, but the reaction is much narrower in scope. Grignard reagents couple only with active halides: allylic (though allylic rearrangements are common) and benzylic. They also couple with tertiary alkyl halides, but in low yields (30 to 50%). Aryl Grignard reagents usually give better yields in these reactions than alkyl Grignard reagents. Furthermore, because Grignard reagents react with the C═O group (**6-30, 6-33**), they cannot be used to couple with halides containing ketone, COOR, or amide functions. Though the coupling of Grignard reagents with ordinary alkyl halides is usually not useful for synthetic purposes, small amounts of symmetrical coupling product are commonly formed while Grignard reagents are being prepared. Grignard reagents can be made to couple with alkyl halides in good yields by the use of certain catalysts.[1021] Among these are Cu(I) salts, which permit the coupling of Grignard reagents with primary alkyl halides in good yield[1022] (organocopper salts are probably intermediates here), and iron(III)[1023] or palladium[1024] complexes, or copper salts,[1025] which allow the coupling of Grignard reagents and vinyl halides. Grignard reagents couple with only one halogen of a dihalide, provided the second halogen is at least two carbons away, if the reaction is carried out in tetrahydrofuran in the presence of lithium tetrachlorocuprate.[1026] Grignard reagents prepared from primary or secondary[1027] alkyl or aryl halides can be coupled with vinyl or

$$\mathbf{RMgX + Br(CH_2)_nBR \xrightarrow[\text{THF}]{Li_2CuCl_4} R(CH_2)_nBR} \qquad n = 3 \text{ or more}$$

[1018] Prepared by treating CuI with *t*-BuOLi in tetrahydrofuran at 0°C and adding RLi to this solution.

[1019] An improved method is given by House, Chu, Wilkins, and Umen, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1460 (1975).

[1020] For a review, see Kharasch and Reinmuth, "Grignard Reactions of Nonmetallic Substances," pp. 1046–1165, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1954.

[1021] For reviews, see Erdik, *Tetrahedron* **40,** 641–657 (1984); Kochi, Ref. 864, pp. 374–398.

[1022] Tamura and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1485 (1971), *Synthesis* 303 (1971), *J. Organomet. Chem.* **42,** 205 (1972); Onuma and Hashimoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 2582 (1972); Derguini-Boumechal and Linstrumelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3225 (1976).

[1023] Tamura and Kochi, *Synthesis* 303 (1971), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1487 (1971); Neumann and Kochi, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 599 (1975); Smith and Kochi, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 502 (1976); Walborsky and Banks, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5074 (1981); Molander, Rahn, Shubert, and Bonde, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5449 (1983).

[1024] Dang and Linstrumelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 191 (1978).

[1025] Commercon, Normant, and Villieras, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **128,** 1 (1977).

[1026] Friedman and Shani, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7101 (1974).

[1027] Hayashi, Konishi, Kobori, Kumada, Higuchi, and Hirotsu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 158 (1984).

aryl halides in high yields in the presence of a nickel(II) catalyst.[1028] Among the catalysts that have been used are dichloro 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphine)ethane nickel(II) and nickel(II) acetonylacetonate. Grignard reagents prepared from secondary halides may also give isomerization products.[1029] When a chiral nickel(II) catalyst is used, optically active hydrocarbons can be prepared from achiral reagents.[1030]

Other organometallic compounds have also been used to couple with alkyl halides.[1031] Organosodium and organopotassium compounds are more reactive than Grignard reagents and couple even with less reactive halides. The difficulty is in preparing and keeping them long enough for the alkyl halide to be added. Alkenes can be prepared by the coupling of vinyllithium compounds with primary halides[1032] or of vinylic halides with alkyllithiums in the presence of a Pd or Ru catalyst.[1033] When treated with organocopper compounds and Lewis acids (e.g., n-BuCu·BF_3), allylic halides give substitution with almost complete allylic rearrangement, irrespective of the degree of substitution at the two ends of the allylic system.[1034]

Organoaluminum compounds couple very well with tertiary (to give products containing a quaternary carbon) and benzylic halides at $-78°C$.[1035] This reaction can also be applied to allylic, secondary, and some primary halides, but several days standing at room temperature is required (see also **0-91**). Products containing a quaternary carbon can also be obtained by treatment of tertiary halides with dialkyl or diaryl zinc reagents in CH_2Cl_2,[1036] with Me_4Si and $AlCl_3$,[1037] or with alkyltitanium reagents $RTiCl_3$ and R_2TiCl_2.[1038] The titanium method can also be used with secondary halides ($R_2CHCl \rightarrow R_2CHMe$), tertiary ethers ($R_3COR' \rightarrow R_3CMe$), and *gem*-dihalides ($R_2CCl_2 \rightarrow R_2CMe_2$).[1039] Vinylaluminum compounds (in the presence of a suitable transition-metal catalyst) couple with allylic halides, acetates, and alcohol derivatives to give 1,4-dienes,[1040] and with vinylic and benzylic halides to give 1,3-dienes and allylic arenes, respectively.[1041] Arylpalladium salts "ArPdX" prepared from arylmercury compounds and lithium palladium chloride couple with allylic chlorides in moderate yields, though allylic rearrangements can occur.[1042] The advantage of this procedure is that the aryl group may contain nitro, ester, or aldehyde groups, etc., which cannot be present in a Grignard reagent. Alkenylboranes ($R'_2C{=}CHBZ_2$; Z = various groups) couple in high yields with vinylic, alkynyl, aryl, benzylic, and allylic halides in the presence of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium $Pd(PPh_3)_4$ and a base to give $R'_2C{=}CHR$.[1043]

[1028] Corriu and Masse, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 144 (1972); Tamao, Sumitani, and Kumada, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4374 (1972). For a review, see Kumada, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 669–679 (1980).

[1029] Kumada, Ref. 1028.

[1030] Consiglio and Botteghi, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **56,** 460 (1973); Hayashi, Fukushima, Konishi, and Kumada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 79 (1980).

[1031] For a review of the coupling of organic halides with organotin, mercury, and copper compounds catalyzed by palladium complexes, see Beletskaya, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **250,** 551–564 (1983).

[1032] Linstrumelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3809 (1974); Millon, Lorne, and Linstrumelle, *Synthesis* 434 (1975); Duhamel and Poirier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8356 (1977).

[1033] Murahashi, Yamamura, Yanagisawa, Mita, and Kondo, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2408 (1979).

[1034] Yamamoto, Yamamoto, Yatagai, and Maruyama, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2318 (1980).

[1035] Miller, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 908 (1966); Kennedy, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 532 (1970). See also Kennedy and Sivaram, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2262 (1973); Sato, Kodama, and Sato, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **157,** C30 (1978).

[1036] Reetz, Wenderoth, Peter, Steinbach, and Westermann, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1202 (1980). See also Klingstedt and Frejd, *Organometallics* **2,** 598 (1983).

[1037] Bolestova, Parnes, Latypova, and Kursanov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 1203 (1981).

[1038] Reetz, Westermann, and Steinbach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 900, 901 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 931, 933].

[1039] Reetz, Steinbach, and Wenderoth, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 261 (1981).

[1040] Lynd and Zweifel, *Synthesis* 658 (1974); Matsushita and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2882 (1981); *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 160 (1982). For similar reactions with other metals, see Larock, Bernhardt, and Driggs, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **156,** 45 (1978); Yoshida, Tamao, Takahashi, and Kumada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2161 (1978); Brown and Campbell, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 550 (1980).

[1041] Baba and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6729 (1976); Negishi, Matsushita, and Okukado, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2715 (1981); Negishi, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 340–348 (1982); Negishi and Luo, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1560 (1983).

[1042] Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5531 (1968).

[1043] Miyaura, Suginome, and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 127 (1981); Brown and Molander, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 645 (1981), and references cited in these papers.

Much study has been devoted to the mechanisms of these reactions,[1044] but firm conclusions are still lacking, in part because the mechanisms vary depending on the metal, the R group, the catalyst, if any, and the reaction conditions. Two basic pathways can be envisioned: a nucleophilic substitution process (which might be SN1 or SN2) and a free-radical mechanism:

$$RX + R'M \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Solvent cage}}{\begin{bmatrix} R\cdot + R'\cdot \\ + MX \end{bmatrix}} \longrightarrow RR'$$

It is necessary to postulate the solvent cage because, if the radicals were completely free, the products would be about 50% RR', 25% RR, and 25% R'R'. This is generally not the case; in most of these reactions RR' is the predominant or exclusive product.[1045] An example where an SN2 mechanism has been demonstrated (by the finding of inversion of configuration at R) is the reaction between allylic or benzylic lithium reagents with secondary halides.[1046] Similarly, inversion has been shown in the reaction of 2-bromobutane with Ph_2CuLi[1009] (though the same reaction with 2-iodobutane has been reported to proceed with racemization[1047]). The fact that in some of these cases the reaction can be successfully applied to aryl and vinyl substrates indicates that a simple SN process cannot be the only mechanism. One possibility is that the reagents first undergo an exchange reaction: $ArX + RM \rightarrow RX + ArM$, and then a nucleophilic substitution takes place. On the other hand, there is much evidence that many coupling reactions involving organometallic reagents with simple alkyl groups occur by free-radical mechanisms. Among the evidence is the observation of CIDNP in reactions of alkyl halides with simple organolithium reagents[1048] (see p. 163), the detection of free radicals by esr spectroscopy[1049] (p. 162), and the formation of 2,3-dimethyl-2,3-diphenylbutane when the reaction was carried out in the presence of cumene[1050] (this product is formed when a free radical abstracts a hydrogen from cumene to give $Ph\dot{C}Me_2$, which dimerizes). Evidence for free-radical mechanisms has also been found for the coupling of alkyl halides with simple organosodium compounds (Wurtz),[1051] with Grignard reagents,[1052] and with lithium dialkylcopper reagents.[1053] Free radicals have also been implicated in the metal-ion-catalyzed coupling of alkyl and aryl halides with Grignard reagents.[1054]

For symmetrical coupling of organometallic reagents ($2RM \rightarrow RR$), see **4-34** to **4-36**.

OS **I,** 186; **III,** 121; **IV,** 748; **V,** 1092; **55,** 62, 103; **58,** 127; **60,** 41; **61,** 141.

[1044] For a review, see Beletskaya, Artamkina, and Reutov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 330–347 (1976).

[1045] When a symmetrical distribution of products *is* found, this is evidence for a free-radical mechanism: the solvent cage is not efficient and breaks down.

[1046] Sauer and Braig, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4275 (1969); Sommer and Korte, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 22 (1970); Korte, Kinner, and Kaska, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 603 (1970). See also Schlosser and Fouquet, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 1162, 1171 (1974).

[1047] Lipshutz and Wilhelm, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4696 (1982); Lipshutz, Wilhelm, Nugent, Little, and Baizer, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3306 (1983).

[1048] Ward, Lawler, and Cooper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 746 (1969); Lepley and Landau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 748 (1969); Podoplelov, Leshina, Sagdeev, Kamkha, and Shein, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12,** 488 (1976). For a review, see Ward, Lawler, and Cooper, in Lepley and Closs, "Chemically Induced Magnetic Polarization," pp. 281–322, Wiley, New York, 1973.

[1049] Russell and Lamson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3967 (1969).

[1050] Bryce-Smith, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1418 (1963). See also D'yachkovskii and Shilov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 300–307 (1966), pp. 304–306.

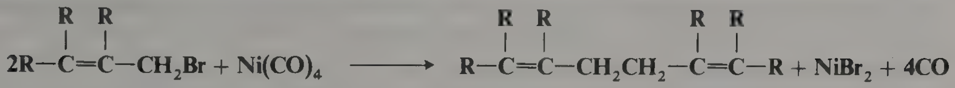
[1051] Garst and Cox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6389 (1970); Kasukhin and Gragerov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **7,** 2087 (1971); Garst and Hart, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 215 (1975).

[1052] Gough and Dixon, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2148 (1968); Ward, Lawler, and Marzilli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 521 (1970); Kasukhin, Ponomarchuk, and Buteiko, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **8,** 673 (1972); Singh, Tayal, and Nigam, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **42,** C9 (1972).

[1053] Ashby, DePriest, Tuncay, and Srivastava, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 5251 (1982).

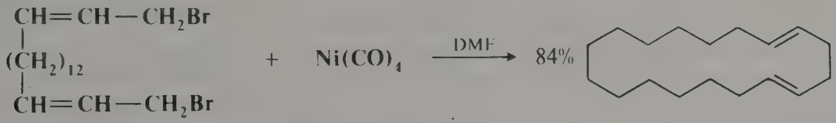
[1054] Norman and Waters, *J. Chem. Soc.* 950 (1957); Frey, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 5187 (1961); Slaugh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2734 (1961); Davies, Done, and Hey, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1392, 2021, 2056 (1969); Abraham and Hogarth, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **12,** 1, 497 (1968); Tamura and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1483, 1485, 1487 (1971), *J. Organomet. Chem.* **31,** 289 (1971), **42,** 205 (1972); Allen, Lawler, and Ward, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1692 (1973), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3303 (1973).

0-89 Allylic and Propargylic Coupling with a Halide Substrate

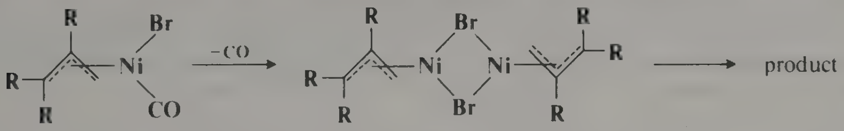


$$2R-\overset{R}{C}=\overset{R}{C}-CH_2Br + Ni(CO)_4 \longrightarrow R-\overset{R}{C}=\overset{R}{C}-CH_2CH_2-\overset{R}{C}=\overset{R}{C}-R + NiBr_2 + 4CO$$

Because of the presence of the 1,5-diene moiety in many naturally occurring compounds, a great deal of effort has been expended in searching for methods to couple[1055] allylic groups.[1056] In one of these methods, allylic halides, tosylates, and acetates can be symmetrically coupled by treatment with nickel carbonyl at room temperature in a solvent such as THF or DMF to give 1,5-dienes.[1057] The order of halide reactivity is I > Br > Cl. With unsymmetrical allylic substrates, coupling nearly always takes place at the less substituted end. The reaction can be performed intramolecularly; large (11- to 20-membered) rings can be made in good yields (60 to 80%) by the use of high dilution. An example[1058] is



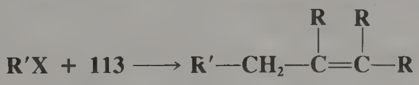
It is likely that the mechanism involves reaction of the allylic compound with $Ni(CO)_4$ to give one or more π-allyl complexes, one of which may be **112**, which can then lose CO to give a



112 **113**

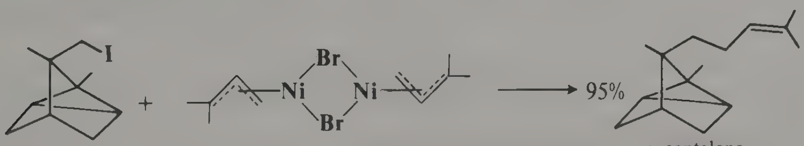
π-allylnickel bromide (**113**) which then reacts further, perhaps with CO, to give the product. The complexes **113** can be isolated from the solution and crystallized as stable solids.

Unsymmetrical coupling can be achieved by treating an alkyl halide directly with **113**,[1059] in a



$$R'X + \mathbf{113} \longrightarrow R'-CH_2-\overset{R}{C}=\overset{R}{C}-R$$

polar aprotic solvent.[1060] An example is the synthesis of α-santalene.[1060]



α-santalene

[1055] For a review of some allylic coupling reactions, see Magid, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1901–1930 (1980), pp. 1910–1924.

[1056] In this section are discussed methods in which one molecule is a halide. For other allylic coupling reactions, see **0-88, 0-91, 0-92, 0-95,** and **2-28.**

[1057] For reviews, see Collman and Hegedus, "Principles and Applications of Organotransition Metal Chemistry," pp. 468–479, University Science Books, Mill Valley, Calif., 1980; Kochi, Ref. 864, pp. 398–408; Semmelhack, *Org. React.* **19,** 115–198 (1972), pp. 162–170; Baker, *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 487–530 (1973), pp. 512–517; Heimbach, Jolly, and Wilke, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **8,** 29–86 (1970), pp. 30–39.

[1058] Corey and Wat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2757 (1967). See also Corey and Hamanaka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2758 (1967); Corey and Helquist, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4091 (1975); Reijnders, Blankert, and Buck, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **97,** 30 (1978).

[1059] For a discussion of the preparation and handling of π-allylnickel halides, see Semmelhack, Ref. 1057, pp. 144–146.

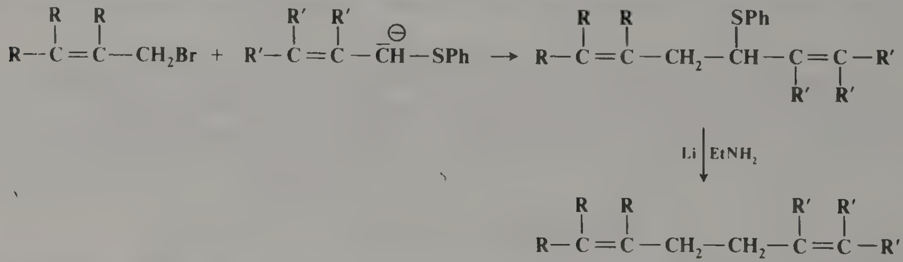
[1060] Corey and Semmelhack, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2755 (1967). For a review, see Semmelhack, Ref. 1057, pp. 147–162.

Once again, as shown in the example, unsymmetrical allylic groups couple at the less substituted end. In this case too the mechanism is not completely known, but it cannot be simple nucleophilic substitution, since aryl and vinyl halides undergo the reaction as well as or better than simple primary bromides. Hydroxy or carbonyl groups in the alkyl halide do not interfere. When **113** reacts with an allylic halide, a mixture of three products is obtained because of halogen–metal interchange. For example, allyl bromide treated with **113** prepared from methallyl bromide gave an approximately statistical mixture of 1,5-hexadiene, 2-methyl-1,5-hexadiene, and 2,5-dimethyl-1,5-hexadiene.[1061]

The reaction between primary and secondary halides and allyltributylstannane provides another method for unsymmetrical coupling $RX + CH_2{=}CH{-}CH_2SnBu_3 \rightarrow RCH_2{-}CH{=}CH_2$.[1062] The converse coupling, of allyl halides with organotin compounds, can be accomplished with a Pd complex catalyst.[1062a]

Symmetrical coupling of allylic halides can also be accomplished by heating with magnesium in ether,[1063] with a cuprous iodide–dialkylamide complex,[1064] with $CrCl_3$–$LiAlH_4$,[1065] with Te^{2-} ions,[1066] or with iron powder in DMF.[1067] The coupling of two different allyl groups has been achieved by treatment of an allylic bromide with an allyllithium (generated in situ from an allylic mesitoate) at 0°C in THF,[1068] with an allylic Grignard reagent in THF containing HMPT,[1069] or with an allylic tin reagent.[1070] This type of coupling can be achieved with almost no allylic rearrangement in the substrate (and almost complete allylic rearrangement in the reagent) by treatment of allylic halides with lithium allylic boron ate complexes $(RCH{=}CHCH_2\overset{\ominus}{B}R''_3\ Li^+)$.[1071]

In another method for the coupling of two different allylic groups,[1072] a carbanion derived from a β, γ-unsaturated thioether couples with an allylic halide.[1073] The product contains an SPh group that must be removed (with Li in ethylamine) to give the 1,5-diene, but this method has the



$$R{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}CH_2Br + R'{-}\overset{R'}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R'}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}H{-}SPh \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}CH_2{-}\overset{SPh}{\overset{|}{C}H}{-}\underset{R'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}\underset{R'}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}R' \xrightarrow{Li\ |\ EtNH_2} R{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}CH_2{-}CH_2{-}\overset{R'}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R'}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}R'$$

advantage that, unlike most of the methods previously discussed, the coupling preserves the original positions and configurations of the two double bonds; no allylic rearrangements take place.

[1061] Corey, Semmelhack, and Hegedus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2416 (1968).

[1062] See Keck and Yates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5829 (1982); Migita, Nagai, and Kosugi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 2480 (1983).

[1062a] Sheffy and Stille, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7173 (1983).

[1063] Turk and Chanan, *Org. Synth.* **III,** 121.

[1064] Kitagawa, Oshima, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1859 (1975).

[1065] Okude, Hiyama, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3829 (1977).

[1066] Clive, Anderson, Moss, and Singh, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1641 (1982).

[1067] Hall and Hurley, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 1238 (1969).

[1068] Katzenellenbogen and Lenox, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 326 (1973).

[1069] Stork, Grieco, and Gregson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1393 (1969); Grieco, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5660 (1969).

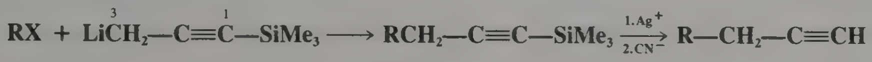
[1070] Godschalx and Stille, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2599 (1980); **24,** 1905 (1983).

[1071] Yamamoto, Yatagai, and Maruyama, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1969 (1981); *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 157 (1979).

[1072] For other procedures, see Axelrod, Milne, and van Tamelen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2139 (1970); Morizawa, Kanemoto, Oshima, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 2953 (1982).

[1073] Biellmann and Ducep, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3707 (1969).

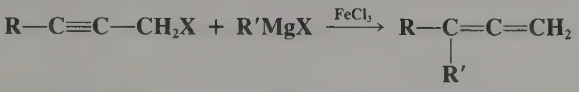
In a method for propargylating an alkyl halide without allylic rearrangement, the halide is treated with lithio-1-trimethylsilylpropane (**114**) which is a lithium compound protected by an $SiMe_3$ group.[1074] Attack by the ambident nucleophile at its 1 position (which gives an allene) takes place



$$RX + Li\overset{3}{C}H_2{-}C{\equiv}\overset{1}{C}{-}SiMe_3 \longrightarrow RCH_2{-}C{\equiv}C{-}SiMe_3 \xrightarrow[2.CN^-]{1.Ag^+} R{-}CH_2{-}C{\equiv}CH$$

114

only to a small extent, because of steric blockage by the large $SiMe_3$ group. The $SiMe_3$ group is easily removed by treatment with Ag^+ followed by CN^-. **114** is prepared by treating propynyllithium with Me_3SiCl to give $MeC{\equiv}CSiMe_3$ from which a proton is removed with BuLi. R may be primary or allyl.[1075] On the other hand, propargyl halides can be alkylated with essentially complete allylic rearrangement, to give allenes, by treatment with Grignard reagents and metallic salts,[1076] or with dialkylcuprates R_2Cu.[1077]



$$R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_2X + R'MgX \xrightarrow{FeCl_3} R{-}\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}C{=}CH_2$$

OS **III,** 121; **IV,** 748; **52,** 115.

0-90 Coupling of Organometallic Reagents with Esters of Sulfuric and Sulfonic Acids **Alkyl-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution,** etc.

$$ROSO_2OR' + R''_2CuLi \longrightarrow RR''$$

Lithium dialkylcopper reagents couple with alkyl tosylates.[1078] High yields are obtained with primary tosylates; secondary tosylates give lower yields. Aryl tosylates do not react. Vinylic triflates couple very well to give alkenes,[1079] as do vinylic diphenylphosphates $R_2C{=}CR{-}OPO(OPh)_2$.[1080] Tosylates and other sulfonates and sulfates also couple with Grignard reagents,[1081] most often those prepared from aryl or benzylic halides. Alkyl sulfates and sulfonates generally make better substrates in reactions with Grignard reagents than the corresponding alkyl halides (**0-88**). The method is useful for primary and secondary R. Allylic tosylates can be symmetrically coupled with $Ni(CO)_4$ (see **0-89**). Propargylic tosylates couple with vinylic cuprates to give vinylallenes.[1082]

OS **I,** 471; **II,** 47, 360.

0-91 Coupling Involving Alcohols

$$2ROH \xrightarrow[-78^\circ C]{MeLi{-}TiCl_3} RR$$

[1074] Corey and Kirst, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5041 (1968); Corey, Kirst, and Katzenellenbogen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6314 (1970).

[1075] For an alternative procedure, see Ireland, Dawson, and Lipinski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2247 (1970).

[1076] Pasto, Chou, Waterhouse, Shults, and Hennion, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1385 (1978); Jeffery-Luong and Linstrumelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 5019 (1980).

[1077] Pasto, Chou, Fritzen, Shults, Waterhouse, and Hennion, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1389 (1978). See also Tanigawa and Murahashi, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4536 (1980).

[1078] Johnson and Dutra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7777, 7783 (1973). For examples, see Posner, "An Introduction to Synthesis Using Organocopper Reagents," Ref. 1002, pp. 85–90.

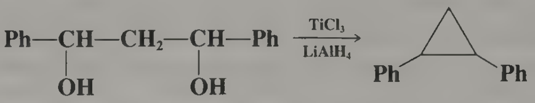
[1079] McMurry and Scott, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4313 (1980).

[1080] Blaszczak, Winkler, and O'Kuhn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4405 (1976).

[1081] For a review, see Ref. 1020, pp. 1277–1286.

[1082] Baudouy and Goré, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 278 (1981).

Allylic or benzylic alcohols can be symmetrically coupled[1083] by treatment with methyllithium and titanium trichloride at −78°C[1084] or by refluxing with $TiCl_3$ and $LiAlH_4$.[1085] When the substrate is an allylic alcohol, the reaction is not regiospecific, but a mixture of normal coupling and allylically rearranged products is found. Applying the reaction to a mixture of two different alcohols gives an approximately statistical mixture of RR, R′R, and R′R′, but better yields of RR′ can be obtained by the use of an excess of one alcohol. A free-radical mechanism is involved.[1086] Another reagent that symmetrically couples allylic and benzylic alcohols is $NbCl_5$–$NaAlH_4$.[1087] The $TiCl_3$–$LiAlH_4$ reagent can also convert 1,3-diols to cyclopropanes, provided that at least one α phenyl is present,[1088] e.g.,

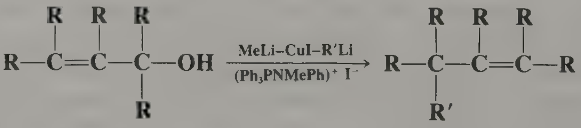


(cis and trans)

Tertiary alcohols react with trimethylaluminum at 80 to 200°C to give methylation.[1089] The

$$R_3COH + Me_3Al \xrightarrow{80\text{–}200^\circ C} R_3CMe$$

presence of side products from elimination and rearrangement, as well as the lack of stereospecificity,[1090] indicate an SN1 mechanism. The reaction can also be applied to primary and secondary alcohols if these contain an aryl group in the α-position. Higher trialkylaluminums are far less suitable, because reduction competes with alkylation (see also reactions of Me_3Al with ketones, **6-30,** and with carboxylic acids, **6-33**). Me_2TiCl_2 also reacts with tertiary alcohols in the same way.[1091] Allylic alcohols couple with lithium alkoxyalkylcuprates (prepared from MeLi, CuI, and R′Li) in the presence of N-methyl-N-phenylaminotriphenylphosphonium iodide $(Ph_3PNMePh)^+\ I^-$



$$R-\overset{R}{C}=\overset{R}{C}-\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}}-OH \xrightarrow[(Ph_3PNMePh)^+\ I^-]{MeLi-CuI-R'Li} R-\underset{R'}{\overset{R}{C}}-\overset{R}{C}=\overset{R}{C}-R$$

to give alkenes that are products of allylic rearrangement.[1092] The reaction gives good yields with primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols, and with alkyl and aryllithiums.[1093] Allylic alcohols also couple with certain Grignard reagents[1094] in the presence of a nickel complex to give both normal products and the products of allylic rearrangement.

[1083] For a review, see Lai, *Org. Prep. Proceed. Int.* **12,** 363–391 (1980), pp. 377–388.

[1084] Sharpless, Hanzlik, and van Tamelen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 209 (1968).

[1085] McMurry, Silvestri, Fleming, Hoz, and Grayston, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3249 (1978). For another method, see Nakanishi, Shundo, Nishibuchi, and Otsuji, *Chem. Lett.* 955 (1979).

[1086] van Tamelen, Åkermark, and Sharpless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1552 (1969).

[1087] Sato and Oshima, *Chem. Lett.* 157 (1982). For a regent that couples benzhydrols, see Pri-Bar, Buchman, and Blum, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1443 (1977).

[1088] Baumstark, McCloskey, Tolson, and Syriopoulos, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3003 (1977); Walborsky and Murati, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 426 (1980).

[1089] Meisters and Mole, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 595 (1972); Harney, Meisters, and Mole, *Aust. J. Chem.* **27,** 1639 (1974).

[1090] Salomon and Kochi, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3715 (1973).

[1091] Reetz, Westermann, and Steinbach, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 237 (1981).

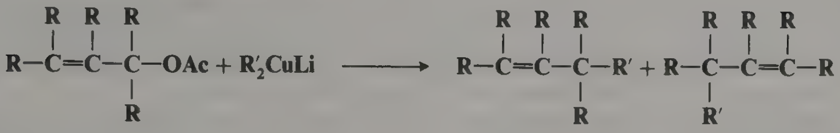
[1092] Tanigawa, Ohta, Sonoda, and Murahashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4610 (1978); Goering and Kantner, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2144 (1981). For another procedure, see Yamamoto and Maruyama, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **156,** C9 (1978).

[1093] For the allylation of benzylic alcohols, see Cella, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2125 (1982).

[1094] Buckwalter, Burfitt, Felkin, Joly-Goudket, Naemura, Salomon, Wenkert, and Wovkulich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6445 (1978); Felkin, Joly-Goudket, and Davies, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1157 (1981); Consiglio, Morandini, and Piccolo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1846 (1981), and references cited in these papers. For a review, see Felkin and Swierczewski, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 2735–2748 (1975). For other procedures, see Mukaiyama, Imaoka, and Izawa, *Chem. Lett.* 1257 (1977); Fujisawa, Iida, Yukizaki, and Sato, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5745 (1983).

0-92 Coupling of Organometallic Reagents with Carboxylic Esters

Alkyl-de-acyloxy-substitution



$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\underset{\underset{R}{|}}{\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}}{-}OAc + R'_2CuLi \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\underset{\underset{R}{|}}{\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}}{-}R' + R{-}\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}}{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}R}$$

Lithium dialkylcopper reagents couple with allylic acetates to give normal coupling products or those resulting from allylic rearrangement, depending on the substrate.[1095] A mechanism involving a σ-allylic copper complex has been suggested.[1096] With propargyl substrates, the products are

$$\mathrm{RC{\equiv}C{-}CR_2{-}OAc + R'_2CuLi \longrightarrow RR'C{=}C{=}CR_2}$$

allenes.[1097] Allenes are also obtained when propargyl acetates are treated with methylmagnesium iodide.[1098] Lithium dialkylcopper reagents also give normal coupling products with enol acetates of β-dicarbonyl compounds.[1099] Allylic, benzylic, and cyclopropylmethyl acetates couple with trialkylaluminums.[1100] Allylic acetates can be symmetrically coupled by treatment with $Ni(CO)_4$ (reaction **0-89**) or converted to unsymmetrical 1,5-dienes by treatment with an allylstannane $R_2C{=}CHCH_2SnR_3$ in the presence of a palladium complex.[1101]

0-93 Coupling of Organometallic Reagents with Compounds Containing the Ether Linkage[1102]

Alkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution

$$\mathrm{R_2C(OR')_2 + R''MgX \longrightarrow R_2CR''(OR') + R'OMgX}$$
$$\mathrm{RC(OR')_3 + R''MgX \longrightarrow RCR''(OR')_2 + R'OMgX}$$

Acetals, ketals, and ortho esters[1103] react with Grignard reagents to give, respectively, ethers and acetals (or ketals). The latter can be hydrolyzed to aldehydes or ketones (**0-7**). This procedure is a way of converting a halide R″X (which may be alkyl, aryl, vinyl, or alkynyl) to an aldehyde R″CHO, increasing the length of the carbon chain by one carbon. The ketone synthesis generally gives lower yields. Tertiary amines can be prepared by the reaction of amino ethers with Grignard reagents,[1104] ($R_2N{-}CH_2{-}OR' + R''MgX \rightarrow R_2N{-}CH_2{-}R''$) or with lithium dialkyl copper reagents.[1105] Amino thioethers R_2NCH_2SAr behave similarly.[1106] Ordinary ethers are not cleaved by Grignard reagents (in fact, diethyl ether and THF are the most common solvents for Grignard reagents), though more active organometallic compounds often do cleave them.[1107] Phenolic ethers have been cleaved by heating to a high temperature with Grignard reagents ($\mathrm{ROAr} + \mathrm{R''MgX} \rightarrow \mathrm{RR''} + \mathrm{ArOMgX}$). Allylic ethers can be cleaved by Grignard reagents in THF if CuBr is present.[1108] The reaction takes place either with or without allylic rearrangement.[1109] Vinylic ethers can also be cleaved by Grignard reagents in the presence of a catalyst, in this case, a nickel complex.[1110] Silyl enol ethers $\mathrm{R_2C{=}CROSiMe_3}$ behave similarly.[1111]

[1095] Roma, Tökes, Tremble, and Crabbé, *Chem. Commun.* 43 (1969); Anderson, Henrick, and Siddall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 735 (1970); Goering and Singleton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7854 (1976); Gallina and Ciattini, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1035 (1979); Goering and Kantner, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 422 (1984). For examples of the use of this reaction with allylic and propargyl substrates, see Posner, Ref. 1078, pp. 91–104.

[1096] Goering and Kantner, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 721 (1983); Goering and Singleton, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1531 (1983); Goering and Tseng, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3986 (1983).

[1097] Crabbé, Barreiro, Dollat, and Luche, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 183 (1976), and references cited therein.

[1098] Roumestant and Gore, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 591, 598 (1972).

[1099] Casey, Marten, and Boggs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2071 (1973); Casey and Marten, *Synth. Commun.* **3,** 321 (1973), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 925 (1974). See also Posner and Brunelle, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 907 (1973); Kobayashi, Takei, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1097 (1973).

[1100] Itoh, Oshima, Sasaki, Yamamoto, Hiyama, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4751 (1979).

[1101] Trost and Keinan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2595 (1980).

[1102] For a review, see Trofimov and Korostova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **44,** 41–55 (1975).

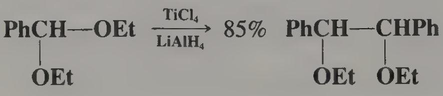
[1103] For a review of the reaction with ortho esters, see DeWolfe, Ref. 383, pp. 44–45, 224–230.

[1104] For example, see Miginiac and Mauzé, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2544 (1968); Eisele and Simchen, *Synthesis* 757 (1978); Kapnang and Charles, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1597 (1983). See also Bourhis, Bosc, and Golse, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **256,** 193 (1983).

[1105] Germon, Alexakis, and Normant, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3763 (1980).

[1106] Pollak, Trifunac, and Grillot, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 272 (1967); Ref. 1104.

Certain acetals and ketals can be dimerized in a reaction similar to **0-87** by treatment with $\mathrm{TiCl_4{-}LiAlH_4}$, e.g.,[1112]

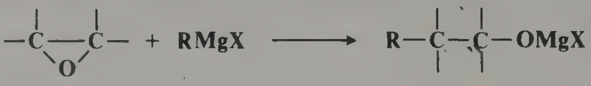


$$\underset{\displaystyle\mathrm{OEt}}{\mathrm{PhCH}}\mathrm{-OEt} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{LiAlH_4}]{\mathrm{TiCl_4}} 85\%\ \underset{\displaystyle\mathrm{OEt}}{\mathrm{PhCH}}\mathrm{-}\underset{\displaystyle\mathrm{OEt}}{\mathrm{CHPh}}$$

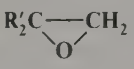
Also see **0-94.**

OS **II,** 323; **III,** 701. Also see OS **V,** 431.

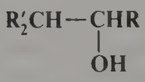
0-94 The Reaction of Organometallic Reagents with Epoxides



The reaction between Grignard reagents and epoxides is very valuable and is often used to increase the length of a carbon chain by two carbons.[1113] The Grignard reagent may be aromatic or aliphatic, though tertiary Grignard reagents give low yields. As expected for an SN2 process, attack is at the less substituted carbon. In some cases better results can be obtained by catalysis with copper salts.[1114] Lithium dialkylcopper reagents also give the reaction,[1115] often producing higher yields, and have the additional advantage that they do not react with ester or ketone groups so that the epoxide ring of epoxy esters and ketones may be selectively attacked.[1116]



115



$$\mathrm{R'_2CH-}\underset{\displaystyle\mathrm{OH}}{\mathrm{CHR}}$$

116

When *gem*-disubstituted epoxides (**115**) are treated with Grignard reagents (and sometimes other epoxides), the product may be **116,** that is, the new alkyl group may appear on the same carbon as the OH. In such cases, the epoxide is isomerized to an aldehyde or a ketone before reacting with the Grignard reagent. Halohydrins are often side products.

[1107] For a review of the reactions of ethers with Grignard reagents, see Ref. 1020, pp. 1013–1045.

[1108] Commercon, Bourgain, Delaumeny, Normant, and Villieras, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3837 (1975); Claesson and Olsson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 621 (1978).

[1109] Normant, Commercon, Gendreau, Bourgain, and Villieras, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-309 (1979); Gendreau and Normant, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 1517 (1979).

[1110] Wenkert, Michelotti, and Swindell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2246 (1979).

[1111] Hayashi, Katsuro, and Kumada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3915 (1980).

[1112] Ishikawa and Mukaiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **51,** 2059 (1978).

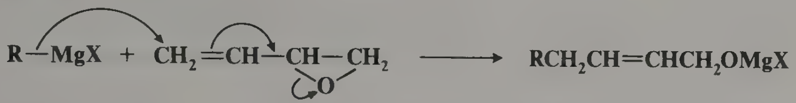
[1113] For a review, see Ref. 1020, pp. 961–1012. For a thorough discussion, see Schaap and Arens, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 1249 (1968). For an improved procedure, see Schrumpf, Grätz, Meinecke, and Fellenberger, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 162 (1982).

[1114] Huynh, Derguini-Boumechal, and Linstrumelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1503 (1979).

[1115] For examples of the use of this reaction, see Posner, Ref. 1078, pp. 104–113. See also Lipshutz, Kozlowski, and Wilhelm, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2305 (1982).

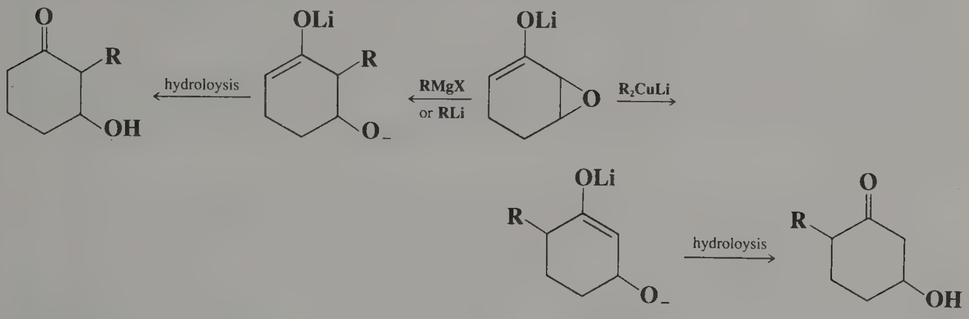
[1116] Johnson, Herr, and Wieland, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4263 (1973); Hartman, Livinghouse, and Rickborn, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4346 (1973); Hudrlik, Peterson, and Rona, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2265 (1975); See also Acker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3407 (1977).

When the substrate is a vinylic epoxide, Grignard reagents generally give a mixture of the normal product and the product of allylic rearrangement.[1117]



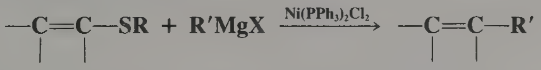
$$R{-}MgX + CH_2{=}CH{-}\underset{O}{CH{-}CH_2} \longrightarrow RCH_2CH{=}CHCH_2OMgX$$

The latter often predominates. In the case of R_2CuLi, allylic rearrangement takes place almost exclusively if the substrate is acyclic.[1117] The double bond of the "vinylic" epoxide can be part of an enolate ion if the substrate is cyclic. In this case R_2CuLi give exclusive allylic rearrangement (SN2′), while Grignard and organolithium reagents give normal substitution, e.g.,[1118]



OS I, 306.

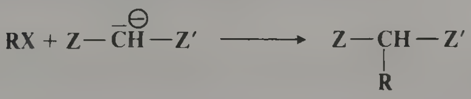
0-95 Coupling of Organometallic Reagents with Sulfur and Selenium Compounds
Alkyl-de-alkylthio-substitution



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}SR + R'MgX \xrightarrow{Ni(PPh_3)_2Cl_2} -\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}R'$$

Grignard reagents, in the presence of nickel complexes, couple with vinylic sulfides to give alkenes.[1119] If R = aryl, the RR′ is also a product. The reaction has also been applied to aryl sulfides ArSR, aryl thiols ArSH, aryl sulfoxides, aryl sulfones, and allylic sulfides,[1120] as well as to allylic, vinylic, and aryl selenides.[1121] Allylic sulfones couple with Grignard reagents (in the presence of cupper acetylacetonate)[1122] and with lithium dialkylcopper reagents[1123] in a similar reaction.

0-96 Alkylation at a Carbon Bearing an Active Hydrogen
Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl-de-halogenation, etc.



$$RX + Z{-}\overset{\ominus}{CH}{-}Z' \longrightarrow Z{-}\underset{R}{\underset{|}{CH}}{-}Z'$$

[1117] Anderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4978 (1970); Johnson, Herr, and Wieland, Ref. 1116.

[1118] Wender, Erhardt, and Letendre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2114 (1981).

[1119] Wenkert, Ferreira, and Michelotti, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 637 (1979); Okamura, Miura, and Takei, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 43 (1979).

[1120] Okamura and Takei, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3425 (1979). See also Gendreau, Normant, and Villieras, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **142,** 1 (1977).

[1121] Okamura, Miura, Kosugi, and Takei, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 87 (1980).

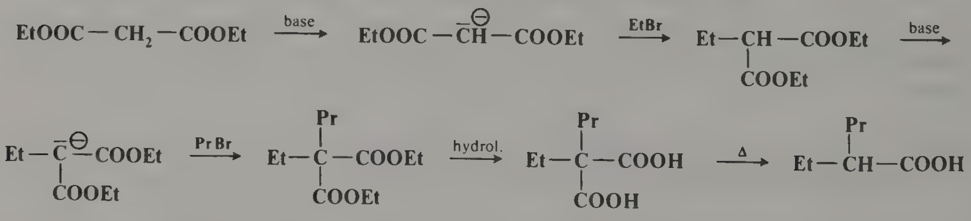
[1122] Julia, Righini-Tapie, and Verpeaux, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 3283 (1983); Julia and Verpeaux, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 3289 (1983).

[1123] Masaki, Sakuma, and Kaji, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 434 (1980).

Compounds that contain two (or three, but this is rare) strong electron-withdrawing groups on a carbon atom are more acidic than compounds without such groups (p. 231) and are easily converted to their corresponding enolate ions (p. 68). These enolate ions can attack alkyl halides, resulting in their alkylation.[1124] Z and Z′ may be COOR′, CHO, COR′, CONR$'_2$, COO$^-$, CN,[1125] NO_2, SOR′, SO_2R', SO_2OR', $SO_2NR'_2$ or similar groups. A carbon atom with any two of these (the same or different) will give up a proton (if it has one) to a suitable base. Some commonly used bases are sodium ethoxide and potassium *t*-butoxide, each in its respective alcohol as solvent. With particularly acidic compounds (e.g., β-diketones—Z, Z′ = COR′), sodium hydroxide in water or aqueous alcohol or acetone, or even sodium carbonate,[1126] is a strong enough base for the reaction. If at least one Z group is COOR′, saponification is a possible side reaction. In addition to the groups listed above, Z may also be phenyl, but if two phenyl groups are on the same carbon, the acidity is less than in the other cases and a stronger base must be used. However, the reaction can be successfully carried out with diphenylmethane with $NaNH_2$ as the base.[1127] The solvent used in the reaction must not be acidic enough to protonate either the enolate ion or the base, which in most cases rules out water. The use of polar aprotic solvents, e.g., DMF or Me_2SO markedly increases the rate of alkylation[1128] but also increases the extent of alkylation at the oxygen rather than the carbon (p. 325).

Usually the reaction is carried out on a CH_2 group connected to two Z groups. In such cases it is possible to alkylate twice, first removing the proton with a base, then alkylating with RX, then removing the proton from ZCHRZ′, and finally alkylating the resulting enolate ion with the same or a different RX. The reaction is successful for primary and secondary alkyl, allylic (with allylic rearrangement possible), and benzylic RX, but fails for tertiary halides, since these undergo elimination under the reaction conditions (see, however, p. 414). Various functional groups may be present in RX as long as they are not sensitive to base. Side reactions that may cause problems are the above-mentioned competing O-alkylation, elimination (if the enolate ion is a strong enough base), and dialkylation. One way to avoid both O-alkylation and dialkylation is to alkylate in the presence of tetraalkylammonium fluoride.[1129] If dialkylation with 2 moles of RX is desired, it can be accomplished by using the base DBU (p. 915).[1130]

An important example of this reaction is the *malonic ester synthesis*, in which both Z groups are COOEt. The product can be hydrolyzed and decarboxylated (**2-39**) to give a carboxylic acid. An illustration is the preparation of 2-ethylpentanoic acid from malonic ester:



$$\mathrm{EtOOC{-}CH_2{-}COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \mathrm{EtOOC{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}H{-}COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{EtBr}} \mathrm{Et{-}\underset{\displaystyle COOEt}{\underset{|}{C}H}{-}COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{base}}$$

$$\mathrm{Et{-}\underset{\displaystyle COOEt}{\underset{|}{\overset{\ominus}{C}}}{-}COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{PrBr}} \mathrm{Et{-}\underset{\displaystyle COOEt}{\underset{|}{\overset{\displaystyle Pr}{\overset{|}{C}}}}{-}COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} \mathrm{Et{-}\underset{\displaystyle COOH}{\underset{|}{\overset{\displaystyle Pr}{\overset{|}{C}}}}{-}COOH} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathrm{Et{-}\overset{\displaystyle Pr}{\overset{|}{C}H}{-}COOH}$$

[1124] For discussions of reactions **0-96** and **0-97**, see House, "Modern Synthetic Reactions," 2d ed., pp. 492–570, 586–595, W. A. Benjamin, Menlo Park, Calif., 1972; Carruthers, "Some Modern Methods of Organic Synthesis," pp. 1–29, 2d ed., Cambridge University Press, London, 1978.

[1125] For reviews of the reactions of malononitrile $CH_2(CN)_2$, see Fatiadi, *Synthesis* 165–204, 241–282 (1978); Freeman, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 591–624 (1969).

[1126] See, for example, Fedoryński, Wojciechowski, Matacz, and Mąkosza, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4682 (1978).

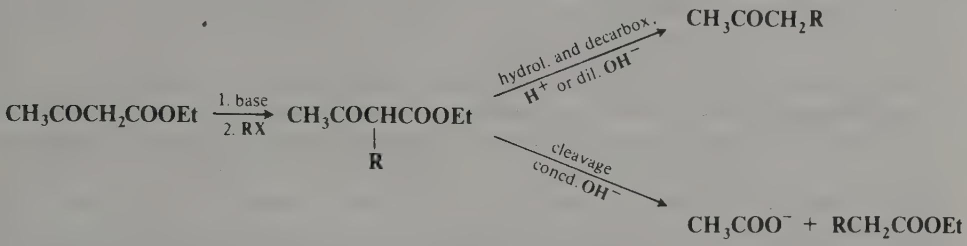
[1127] Murphy, Hamrick, and Hauser, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 523.

[1128] Zaugg, Horrom, and Borgwardt, Ref. 268; Zaugg, Dunnigan, Michaels, Swett, Wang, Sommers, and DeNet, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 644 (1961); Johnstone, Tuli, and Rose, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 283 (1980).

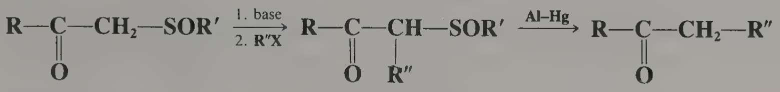
[1129] Clark and Miller, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1743 (1977).

[1130] Oediger and Möller, *Liebigs Ann. Chim.* 348 (1976). Monoalkylation can also be achieved with the same base: Ono, Yoshimura, Saito, Tamura, Tanikaga, and Kaji, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 1716 (1979).

It is obvious that many carboxylic acids of the formulas RCH_2COOH and $RR'CHCOOH$ can be synthesized by this method (for some other ways of preparing such acids, see **0-98, 0-100,** and **0-101**). Another important example is the *acetoacetic ester synthesis*, in which Z is COOEt and Z′ is $COCH_3$. In this case the product can be decarboxylated with acid or dilute base (**2-39**) to give a ketone or cleaved with concentrated base (**2-42**) to give an ester and a salt of acetic acid:



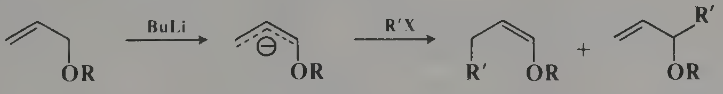
Another way of preparing ketones involves alkylation[1131] with primary halides of β-keto sulfoxides[1132] or sulfones,[1133] e.g.,



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}CH_2{-}SOR' \xrightarrow[2.\ R''X]{1.\ base} R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\underset{\underset{R''}{|}}{CH}{-}SOR' \xrightarrow{Al\text{-}Hg} R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}CH_2{-}R''$$

since the product in this case is easily reduced to a ketone in high yields with aluminum amalgam or by electrolysis.[1134] The β-keto sulfoxides or sulfones are easily prepared (**0-112**). Other examples of the reaction are the *cyanoacetic ester synthesis*, in which Z is COOEt and Z′ is CN (as in the malonic ester synthesis, the product here can be hydrolyzed and decarboxylated), and the *Sorensen* method of amino acid synthesis, in which the reaction is applied to N-acetylaminomalonic ester $(EtOOC)_2CHNHCOCH_3$. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the product in this case gives an α-amino acid. The amino group is also frequently protected by conversion to a phthalimido group.

The reaction is not limited to Z—CH_2—Z′ compounds. Other acidic C—H hydrogens, which include, for example, the methyl hydrogens of α-aminopyridines, the methyl hydrogens of ynamines of the form $CH_3C{\equiv}CNR_2$[1135] (the product in this case can be hydrolyzed to an amide $RCH_2CH_2CONR_2$), the CH_2 hydrogens of cyclopentadiene and its derivatives (p. 42), hydrogens connected to a triple-bond carbon (**0-102**), and the hydrogen of HCN (**0-103**) can also be removed with a base and the resulting ion alkylated (see also **0-97** to **0-100**). A proton can be removed from an allylic ether by treatment with an alkyllithium at about −70°C (at higher temperatures the Wittig rearrangement—**8-25**—takes place) to give the ion **117**, which reacts with alkyl halides to give the products **118**



117 **118** **119**

[1131] For a review of the synthetic uses of β-keto sulfoxides, sulfones, and sulfides, see Trost, *Chem. Rev.* **78,** 363–382 (1978). For a review of asymmetric synthesis with chiral sulfoxides, see Solladié, *Synthesis* 185–196 (1981).

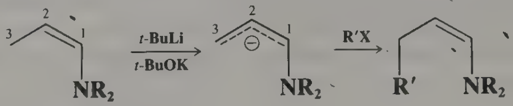
[1132] Gassman and Richmond, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2355 (1966). Such sulfoxides can be alkylated on the other side of the C=O group by the use of two moles of base: Kuwajima and Iwasawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 107 (1974).

[1133] House and Larson, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 61 (1968).

[1134] Lamm and Samuelsson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **23,** 691 (1969).

[1135] Corey and Cane, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3405 (1970).

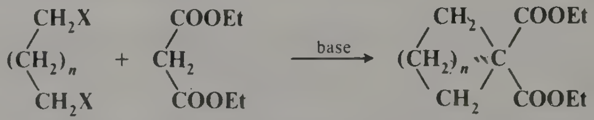
and **119.**[1136] Similar reactions[1137] have been reported for allylic[1138] and vinylic tertiary amines. In the latter case, enamines **120,** treated with a strong base, are converted to anions that are then alkylated, generally at C-3.[1139] (For direct alkylation of enamines at C-2, see **2-17.**)



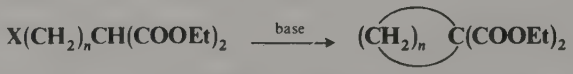
120

Alkylation takes place at the most acidic position of a reagent molecule; for example, acetoacetic ester (CH_3COCH_2COOEt) is alkylated at the methylene and not at the methyl group, because the former is more acidic than the latter and hence gives up its proton to the base. However, if 2 moles of base are used, then not only is the most acidic proton removed but also the second most acidic. Alkylation of this doubly charged anion then takes place at the less acidic position (see p. 323). This technique has been used to alkylate many compounds in the second most acidic position.[358]

When ω,ω′-dihalides are used, ring closures may be effected:[1139a]



This method has been used to close rings of from three ($n = 0$) to seven members, although five-membered ring closures proceed in highest yields. Another ring-closing method involves internal alkylation.[1140]



The mechanism of these reactions is usually SN2 with inversion taking place at a chiral RX, though in certain instances there is evidence that a radical–anion mechanism is involved.[1141] Tertiary alkyl groups can be introduced by an SN1 mechanism if the ZCH_2Z' compound (not the enolate ion) is treated with a tertiary carbocation generated in situ from an alcohol or alkyl halide and BF_3 or $AlCl_3$,[1142] or with a tertiary alkyl perchlorate.[1143]

Other leaving groups are sometimes used. Sulfates, sulfonates, and epoxides give the expected products. Acetals can behave as substrates, one OR group being replaced by ZCHZ′ in a reaction similar to **0-93**.[1144] Ortho esters behave similarly, but the product loses R′OH to give an enol ether.[1145] The SO_2Ph group of allylic sulfones can be a leaving group if a palladium(0) complex is

---

[1136] Evans, Andrews, and Buckwalter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5560 (1974); Still and Macdonald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5561 (1974). For a similar reaction with triple-bond compounds, see Hommes, Verkruijsse, and Brandsma, *Recl: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 113 (1980), and references cited therein.

[1137] For a review of allylic and benzylic carbanions substituted by hetero atoms, see Biellmann and Ducep, *Org. React.* **27,** 1–344 (1982).

[1138] Martin and DuPriest, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3925 (1977), and references cited therein.

[1139] For a review, see Ahlbrecht, *Chimia* **31,** 391–403 (1977).

[1139a] Zefirov, Kuznetsova, Kozhushkov, Surmina, and Rashchupkina, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **19,** 474 (1983).

[1140] For example, see Knipe and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 67 (1968); Gosselck and Winkler, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2437 (1970). For a review of this method as applied to the synthesis of β-lactams, see Bose, Manhas, Chatterjee, and Abdulla, *Synth. Commun.* **1,** 51–73 (1971).

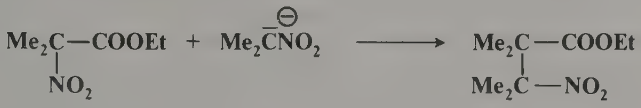
[1141] Kerber, Urry, and Kornblum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4520 (1965); Kornblum, Michel, and Kerber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5660, 5662 (1966); Russell and Danen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5663 (1966); Russell and Ros, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7349 (1982); Ashby and Argyropoulos, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 7 (1984).

[1142] For example, see Boldt and Militzer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3599 (1966); Crimmins and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2615 (1967); Boldt, Militzer, Thielecke, and Schulz, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **718,** 101 (1968).

[1143] Boldt and Thielecke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 1044 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 1058]; Boldt, Ludwieg, and Militzer, *Chem. Ber.* **103,** 1312 (1970).

$$ZCH_2Z' + RC(OR')_3 \xrightarrow{Ac_2O} ZZ'C{=}CROR'$$

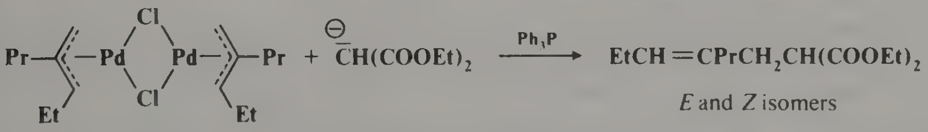
present.[1146] The NR_2 group from Mannich bases such as $RCOCH_2CH_2NR_2$ can also act as a leaving group in this reaction (elimination–addition mechanism, p. 298). A nitro group can be displaced[1147] from α-nitro esters, ketones, nitriles, and α,α-dinitro compounds, and even from simple tertiary nitro compounds of the form R_3CNO_2[1148] or ArR_2CNO_2[1149] by salts of nitroalkanes, e.g.,



$$\underset{\displaystyle NO_2}{Me_2C}{-}COOEt + Me_2\overset{\ominus}{C}NO_2 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{l}Me_2C{-}COOEt\\ \quad|\\ Me_2C{-}NO_2\end{array}$$

but this is not nucleophilic substitution. A radical–ion mechanism, called SRN1 (shown on p. 583), is involved.[1150]

However, with α-nitro sulfones it is the sulfone group that is displaced, rather than the nitro group.[1151] Alkylation α to a nitro group can be achieved with the Katritzky pyrylium–pyridinium reagents.[1152] This reaction probably has a free-radical mechanism.[1153] Palladium can be the leaving atom if the substrate is a π-allylpalladium complex. The ion of malonic ester reacts with such complexes in the presence of triphenylphosphine,[1154] e.g.,


Cl
Pr
Pd
Pd
Pr
Cl
Et
Et
+ $\overset{\ominus}{C}H(COOEt)_2$
Ph_3P
$EtCH{=}CPrCH_2CH(COOEt)_2$
E and *Z* isomers

Alkene–palladium complexes (introducing the nucleophile at a vinylic rather than an allylic carbon) can also be used.[1155]

OS **I,** 248, 250; **II,** 262, 279, 384, 474; **III,** 213, 219, 397, 405, 495, 705; **IV,** 10, 55, 288, 291, 623, 641, 962; **V,** 76, 187, 514, 523, 559, 743, 767, 785, 848, 1013; **53,** 21, 70; **54,** 97; **55,** 57; **57,** 36, 41, 53, 60; **60,** 66.

[1144] Yufit, Krasnaya, Levchenko, and Kucherov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 123 (1967); Aleskerov, Yufit, and Kucherov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **21,** 2279 (1972).

[1145] For a review, see DeWolfe, Ref. 383, pp. 231–266.

[1146] Trost, Schmuff, and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5979 (1980).

[1147] For reviews, see Kornblum, in Patai, Ref. 299a, pt. 1, pp. 361–393; Kornblum, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 734–745 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 797–808].

[1148] Kornblum and Erickson, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1037 (1981).

[1149] Kornblum, Carlson, Widmer, Fifolt, Newton, and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1394 (1978).

[1150] For a review of the mechanism, see Beletskaya and Drozd, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 431–448 (1979). See also Ref. 1147; Norris and Smyth-King, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1051 (1982); Russell, Mudryk, Ros, and Jawdosiuk, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1059 (1982); Bowman and Symons, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 25 (1983). For an example with accompanying allylic rearrangement, see Barker and Norris, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 973 (1979).

[1151] Kornblum, Boyd, and Ono, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2580 (1974).

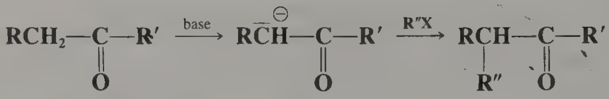
[1152] Katritzky, de Ville, and Patel, *Tetrahedron* **37,** Suppl. 1, 25 (1981).

[1153] Katritzky, Kashmiri, de Ville, and Patel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 90 (1983).

[1154] For reviews, see Trost, *Aldrichimica Acta* **14,** 43–50 (1981); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 385–393 (1980); *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2615–2649 (1977). See also Hegedus, Hayashi, and Darlington, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7747 (1978); Fiaud and Malleron, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4437 (1980); Trost and Verhoeven, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4730, 4743 (1980).

[1155] Hegedus, Williams, McGuire, and Hayashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4973 (1980). See also Trost and Molander, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5969 (1981).

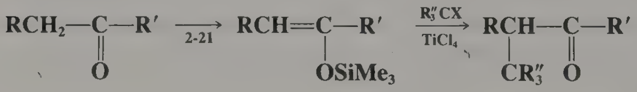
0-97 Alkylation of Ketones, Nitriles, and Esters
α-Acylalkyl-de-halogenation, etc.



$$\underset{\substack{\| \\ \mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{RCH_2{-}C{-}R'}} \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \underset{\substack{\| \\ \mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{R\overset{\ominus}{C}H{-}C{-}R'}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R''X}} \underset{\substack{| \quad \| \\ \mathrm{R''} \quad \mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{RCH{-}C{-}R'}}$$

Ketones,[1156] nitriles,[1156a] and esters[1157] can be alkylated in the α-position in a reaction similar to **0-96,**[1124] but a stronger base must be employed, since only one activating group is present. Some typical bases are *t*-BuOK, $NaNH_2$, KH, Et_2NLi, and (iso-Pr)$_2$NLi. The base lithium N-isopropyl-N-cyclohexylamide is particularly successful for esters[1158] and nitriles.[1159] Some of these bases are strong enough to convert the ketone, nitrile, or ester completely to its enolate ion conjugate base; others (especially *t*-BuOK) convert a significant fraction of the molecules. In the latter case, aldol condensation (**6-40**) or Claisen condensation (**0-111**) may be a side reaction, since both the free molecule and its conjugate base are present at the same time. It is therefore important to use a base strong enough to convert the starting compound completely. Protic solvents are generally not suitable because they protonate the base (though of course this is not a problem with a conjugate pair, such as *t*-BuOK in *t*-BuOH). Some common solvents are 1,2-dimethoxyethane, THF, DMF, and liquid NH_3. Good results can be obtained by the use of butylmagnesium bromide as the base in the solvent HMPT.[1160] Phase transfer catalysis has been used to alkylate many nitriles, as well as some esters and ketones.[1161] These reactions have been used to prepare sterically hindered compounds (e.g., RR′R″CCN); nitriles are better for this purpose than esters.[1162]

As in **0-96,** the alkyl halide may be primary or secondary. Tertiary halides give elimination. Even primary and secondary halides give predominant elimination if the enolate ion is a strong enough base (e.g., the enolate ion from Me_3CCOMe).[1163] Tertiary alkyl groups, as well as other groups that normally give SN1 reactions, can be introduced if the reaction is performed on a silyl enol ether of a ketone, aldehyde, or ester with a Lewis acid catalyst.[1164]



$$\underset{\substack{\| \\ \mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{RCH_2{-}C{-}R'}} \xrightarrow[\text{2-21}]{} \underset{\substack{| \\ \mathrm{OSiMe_3}}}{\mathrm{RCH{=}C{-}R'}} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{TiCl_4}]{\mathrm{R''_3CX}} \underset{\substack{| \quad \| \\ \mathrm{CR''_3} \quad \mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{RCH{-}C{-}R'}} \qquad \mathrm{R'} = \mathrm{R, H,} \text{ or } \mathrm{OR}$$

[1156] For a review of the alkylation and acylation of ketones and aldehydes, see Caine, in Augustine, "Carbon–Carbon Bond Formation," vol. 1, pp. 85–352, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1979.

[1156a] For a review, see Arseniyadis, Kyler, and Watt, *Org. React.* **31,** 1–364 (1984).

[1157] For a review, see Petragnani and Yonashiro, *Synthesis* 521–578 (1982).

[1158] Rathke and Lindert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2319 (1971); Bos and Pabon, *Recl: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 141 (1980). See also Cregge, Herrmann, Lee, Richman, and Schlessinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2425 (1973).

[1159] Watt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 707 (1974).

[1160] Fauvarque and Fauvarque, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 160 (1969).

[1161] For reviews, see Mąkosza, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 1151–1166 (1977); *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 439–462 (1975); Starks and Liotta, Ref. 346, pp. 170–217; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," Ref. 346, pp. 136–204.

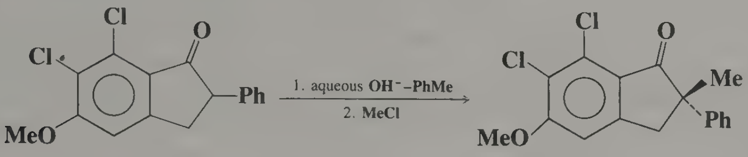
[1162] MacPhee and Dubois, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 694 (1977); *Tetrahedron* **36,** 775 (1980).

[1163] Zook, Kelly, and Posey, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3477 (1968).

[1164] Chan, Paterson, and Pinsonnault, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4183 (1977); Reetz and Maier, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 48 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 50]; Reetz and Heimbach, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 3702 (1983); Reetz, Schwellnus, Hübner, Massa, and Schmidt, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 3708 (1983). Lion and Dubois, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-375 (1982). For a review, see Reetz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 96–108 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 97–109]. See also Reetz, Walz, Hübner, Hüttenhain, Heimbach, and Schwellnus, *Chem. Ber.* **117,** 322 (1984).

Vinylic and aryl halides can be used to vinylate or arylate esters (but not ketones) by the use of $NiBr_2$ as a catalyst.[1165] However, ketones have been vinylated by treating their enol acetates with vinylic bromides in the presence of a Pd compound catalyst.[1165a] Also as in **0-96**, this reaction can be used to close rings.[1166]

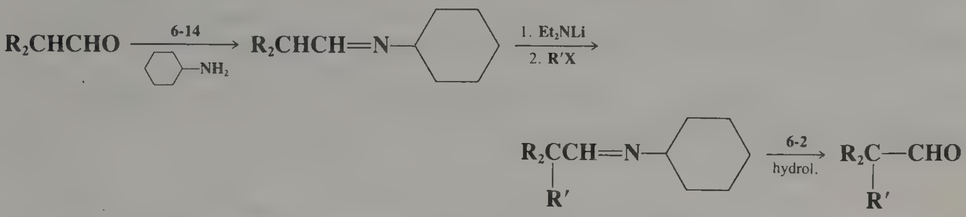
An efficient enantioselective alkylation has been reported:



95% yield; 92% ee

The indanone substrate was methylated in 92% enantiomeric excess, by the use of a chiral catalyst, N-(*p*-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl)cinchoninium bromide, under phase transfer conditions.[1166a]

The reaction can be applied to aldehydes, indirectly, by alkylating an imine derivative of the aldehyde.[1167] The derivative is easily prepared (**6-14**) and the product easily hydrolyzed to the aldehyde (**6-2**). Either or both R groups may be hydrogen, so that mono-, di-, and trisubstituted acetaldehydes can be prepared by this method. R′ may be primary alkyl, allylic, or benzylic. Direct alkylation of aldehydes is not generally possible because base treatment of aldehydes normally gives rapid aldol condensation (**6-40**), though aldehydes bearing only one α-hydrogen have been alkylated with allylic and benzylic halides in good yields by the use of the base KH to prepare the potassium enolate,[1168] or in moderate yields, by the use of a phase transfer catalyst.[1169] Imines, hydrazones, and other compounds with C=N bonds can be similarly alkylated.[1170] The use of chiral amines (followed by hydrolysis **6-2** of the alkylated imine) can lead to chiral alkylated ketones in high optical yields.[1171]



[1165] Millard and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4833 (1977).

[1165a] Kosugi, Hagiwara, and Migita, *Chem. Lett.* 839 (1983).

[1166] For example, see Etheredge, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1990 (1966); Wilcox and Whitney, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2933 (1967); Bird and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 111 (1968); Stork and Boeckman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2016 (1973); Stork and Cohen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5270 (1974). In the latter case, the substrate moiety is an epoxide function.

[1166a] Dolling, Davis, and Grabowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 446 (1984).

[1167] Cuvigny and Normant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3976 (1970); Cuvigny, Le Borgne, Larchevêque, and Normant, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **70,** C5 (1974), *Synthesis* 237 (1976); Le Borgne, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **122,** 123, 129 (1976); Savoia, Trombini, and Umani-Ronchi, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2907 (1978); Whitesell and Whitesell, *Synthesis* 517–536 (1983). For a method in which the metalated imine is prepared from a nitrile, see Goering and Tseng, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5250 (1981).

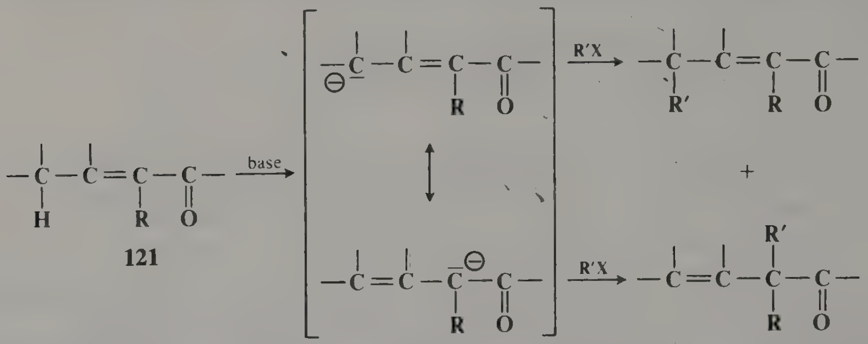
[1168] Groenewegen, Kallenberg, and van der Gen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 491 (1978).

[1169] Dietl and Brannock, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1273 (1973); Purohit and Subramanian, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 731 (1978); Buschmann and Zeeh, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1585 (1979).

[1170] For example, see Fraser, Banville, and Dhawan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7999 (1978); Corey and Enders, *Chem. Ber.* **111,** 1337 (1978); Asai, Aoyama, and Shioiri, *Synthesis* 811 (1980).

[1171] Meyers, Williams, Erickson, White, and Druelinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3081 (1981); Meyers, Williams, White, and Erickson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3088 (1981).

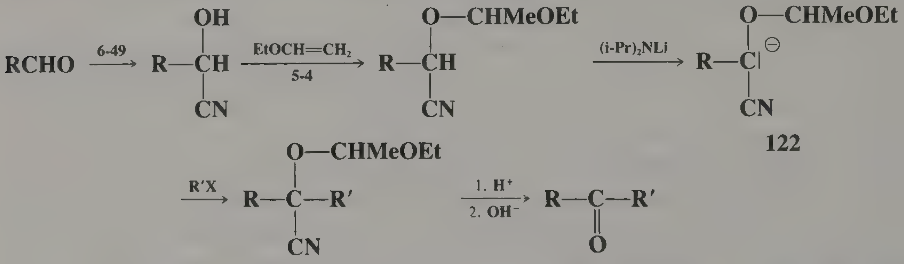
In α,β-unsaturated ketones, nitriles, and esters (e.g., **121**), the γ-hydrogen assumes the acidity normally held by the position α to the carbonyl group, especially when R is not hydrogen and so



121

cannot compete. This principle, called *vinylology*, operates because the resonance effect is transmitted through the double bond. However, because of the resonance, alkylation at the α-position (with allylic rearrangement) competes with alkylation at the γ-position and usually predominates.[1172]

α-Hydroxynitriles (cyanohydrins), protected by conversion to acetals with ethyl vinyl ether (**5-4**), can be easily alkylated with primary or secondary alkyl or allylic halides.[1173]



122

R can be aryl or saturated or unsaturated alkyl. Since the cyanohydrins[1173a] are easily formed from aldehydes (**6-49**) and the product is easily hydrolyzed to a ketone, this is a method for converting an aldehyde RCHO to a ketone RCOR′[1174] (for other methods, see **0-99** and **8-10**).[1175] In this procedure the normal mode of reaction of a carbonyl carbon is reversed. The C atom of an aldehyde molecule is normally electrophilic and is attacked by nucleophiles (Chapter 16), but by conversion to the protected cyanohydrin this carbon atom has been induced to perform as a nucleophile.[1176]

[1172] One way to alkylate the γ position is to introduce a removable activating group at that position (see p. 419). For an example, see Lansbury, Erwin, and Jeffrey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1602 (1980).

[1173] Stork and Maldonado, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5286 (1971); Stork, Depezay, and d'Angelo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 389 (1975). See also Rasmussen and Heilmann, *Synthesis* 219 (1978); Ahlbrecht, Raab, and Vonderheid, *Synthesis* 127 (1979); Hertenstein, Hünig, and Öller, *Chem. Ber.* **113,** 3783 (1980), and previous papers in this series.

[1173a] For a review of **122**, see Albright, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 3207–3233 (1983).

[1174] For similar methods, see Stetter, Schmitz, and Schreckenberg, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 1971 (1977); Hünig, *Chimia* **36,** 1 (1982).

[1175] For a review of methods of synthesis of aldehydes, ketones, and carboxylic acids by coupling reactions, see Martin, *Synthesis* 633–665 (1979).

[1176] For reviews of such reversals of carbonyl group reactivity, see Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," pp. 56–67, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Gröbel and Seebach, *Synthesis* 357–402 (1977); Lever, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 1943–1971 (1976); Seebach and Kolb, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 687–692 (1974); Seebach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 639–649 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 690–700]. For a compilation of references to masked acyl and formyl anions, see Hase and Koskimies, *Aldrichimica Acta* **14,** 73–77 (1981).

The German word *umpolung*[1177] is used to describe this kind of reversal (another example is found in **0-99**). Since the ion **122** serves as a substitute for the unavailable $\text{R}-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{\text{C}}}=\text{O}$ anion, it is often called a "masked" $\text{R}-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{\text{C}}}=\text{O}$ ion. This method fails for formaldehyde (R = H), but other masked formaldehydes have proved successful.[1178]

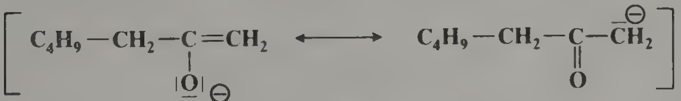
When the compound to be alkylated is a nonsymmetrical ketone, the question arises as to which side will be alkylated. If an α-phenyl or α-vinyl group is present on one side, alkylation goes predominantly on that side. When only alkyl groups are present, the reaction is generally not regioselective; mixtures are obtained in which sometimes the more alkylated and sometimes the less alkylated side is predominantly alkylated. Which product is found in higher yield depends on the nature of the substrate, the cation, and the solvent. In any case, di- and trisubstitution are frequent and it is often difficult to stop with the introduction of just one alkyl group.[1179]

Several methods have been developed for ensuring that alkylation takes place regioselectively on the *desired* side of a ketone.[1180] Among these are:[1181]

1. Block one side of the ketone by introducing a removable group. Alkylation takes place on the *other* side; the blocking group is then removed.[1182] A common reaction for this purpose is formylation with ethyl formate (**0-112**); this generally blocks the less hindered side. The formyl group is easily removed by alkaline hydrolysis (**2-42**).

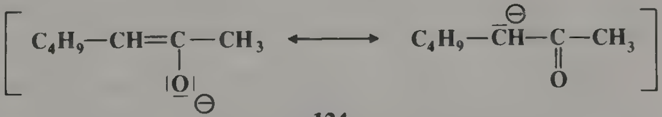
2. Introduce an activating group on one side; alkylation then takes place on *that* side (**0-96**); the activating group is then removed.[1182]

3. Prepare the desired one of the two possible enolate ions.[1183] The two ions, e.g., **123** and **124** for 2-heptanone, interconvert rapidly only in the presence of the parent ketone or any stronger acid.[1184] In the absence of such acids, it is possible to prepare either **123** or **124** and thus achieve selective alkylation on either the more or less highly alkylated side of the ketone.[1185] The desired



$$\left[\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-\text{CH}_2-\underset{|\underline{\text{O}}|^{\ominus}}{\text{C}}=\text{CH}_2 \longleftrightarrow \text{C}_4\text{H}_9-\text{CH}_2-\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{\text{C}}}\text{H}_2\right]$$

123



$$\left[\text{C}_4\text{H}_9-\text{CH}=\underset{|\underline{\text{O}}|^{\ominus}}{\text{C}}-\text{CH}_3 \longleftrightarrow \text{C}_4\text{H}_9-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{\text{C}}}\text{H}-\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\text{CH}_3\right]$$

124

[1177] For a review of the umpolung concept, see Seebach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 239–258 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 259–278].

[1178] Possel and van Leusen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4229 (1977); Stork, Ozorio, and Leong, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5175 (1978).

[1179] For references to some methods of reducing dialkylation, see Hooz and Oudenes, *Synth. Commun.* **10,** 139 (1980).

[1180] For a review, see House, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **28,** 99–120 (1968).

[1181] For methods of regiospecific alkylation of a ketimine RC(=NR″)R′, see Smith, Newcomb, Bergbreiter, Williams, and Meyers, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3559 (1983).

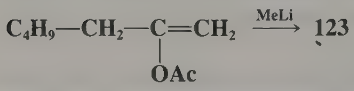
[1182] For examples, see House, Ref. 1124, pp. 561–563; Carruthers, Ref. 1124, pp. 17–19.

[1183] For reviews, see d'Angelo, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2979–2990 (1976); Stork, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 553–562 (1975).

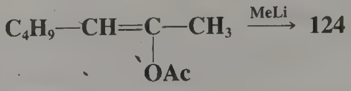
[1184] House and Trost, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1341 (1965).

[1185] House and Trost, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2502 (1965); Whitlock and Overman, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1962 (1969); House, Gall and Olmstead, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2361 (1971). See also Kuwajima and Nakamura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3257 (1975).

enolate ion can be obtained by treatment of the corresponding enol acetate with two equivalents of methyllithium in 1,2-dimethoxyethane. Each enol acetate gives the corresponding enolate, e.g.,



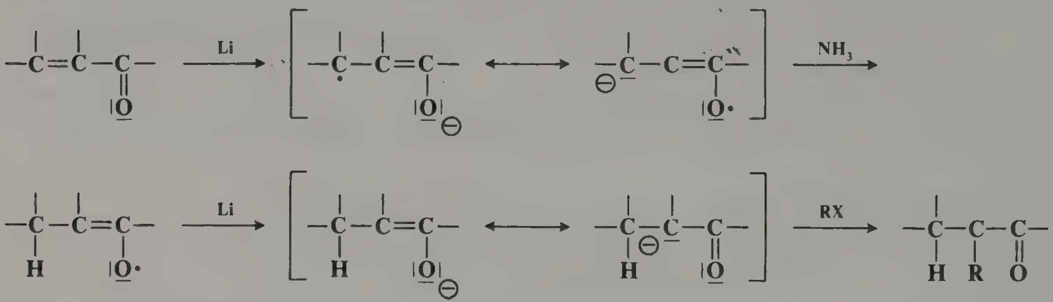
$$C_4H_9\text{—}CH_2\text{—}\underset{\underset{\text{OAc}}{|}}{C}\text{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow{\text{MeLi}} \mathbf{123}$$



$$C_4H_9\text{—}CH\text{=}\underset{\underset{\text{OAc}}{|}}{C}\text{—}CH_3 \xrightarrow{\text{MeLi}} \mathbf{124}$$

The enol acetates, in turn, can be prepared by treatment of the parent ketone with an appropriate reagent.[1185] Such treatment generally gives a mixture of the two enol acetates in which one or the other predominates, depending on the reagent. The mixtures are easily separable.[1185] An alternate procedure involves conversion of a silyl enol ether[1186] (see **2-21**) or a dialkylboron enol ether[1187] (an enol borinate, see p. 428) to the corresponding enolate ion. If the less hindered enolate ion is desired (e.g., **123**), it can be prepared directly from the ketone by treatment with lithium diisopropylamide in THF or 1,2-dimethoxyethane at −78°C.[1187a]

4. Begin not with the ketone itself, but with an α,β-unsaturated ketone in which the double bond is present on the side where alkylation is desired. Upon treatment with lithium in liquid NH_3, such a ketone is reduced to an enolate ion. When the alkyl halide is added, it must react with the enolate ion on the side where the double bond was.[1188] Of course, this method is not actually an alkylation of the ketone, but of the α,β-unsaturated ketone, though the product is the same as if the saturated ketone had been alkylated on the desired side.



Among other methods for the preparation of alkylated ketones are: (1) the Stork enamine reaction (**2-17**), (2) the acetoacetic ester synthesis (**0-96**), (3) alkylation of β-keto sulfones or sulfoxides (**0-96**), (4) acylation of $CH_3SOCH_2^-$ followed by reductive cleavage (**0-112**), (5) treatment of α-halo ketones with lithium dialkylcopper reagents (**0-88**), and (6) treatment of α-halo ketones with trialkylboranes (**0-101**).

Sulfones[1189] and sulfonic esters can also be alkylated in the α-position if strong enough bases are used.[1190]

[1186] Stork and Hudrlik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4462 (1968). For reviews, see Fleming, *Chimia* **34,** 265–71 (1980); Colvin, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **7,** 15–64 (1978); Rasmussen, *Synthesis* 91–110 (1977). See also Kuwajima, Nakamura, and Shimizu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1025 (1982).

[1187] Pasto and Wojtkowski, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1790 (1971). See also Negishi, Idacavage, DiPasquale, and Silveira, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 845 (1979).

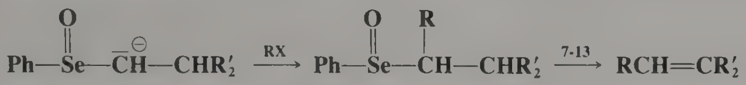
[1187a] House, Gall, and Olmstead, Ref. 1185. See also Corey and Gross, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 495 (1984).

[1188] Stork, Rosen, Goldman, Coombs, and Tsuji, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 275 (1965). For a review, see Caine, *Org. React.* **23,** 1–258 (1976). For similar approaches, see Coates and Sowerby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1027 (1971); Näf and Decorzant, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 1317 (1974); Wender and Eissenstat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 292 (1978).

[1189] For a review, see Magnus, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2019–2045 (1977), pp. 2022–2025. For alkylation of sulfones containing the F_3CSO_2 group, see Hendrickson, Sternbach, and Bair, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 306–312 (1977).

[1190] For examples, see Truce, Hollister, Lindy, and Parr, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 43 (1968); Truce and Vrencur, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 860 (1969), *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1226 (1970); Julia and Arnould, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 743, 746 (1973); Bird and Stirling, Ref. 1166.

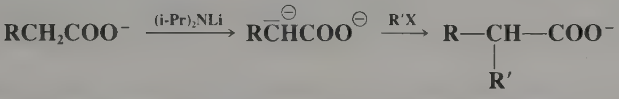
Alkylation at the α-position of selenoxides allows the formation of alkenes, since selenoxides easily undergo elimination (**7-13**).[1191]



$$\mathrm{Ph{-}\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{Se}}{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}H{-}CHR'_2 \xrightarrow{RX} Ph{-}\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{Se}}{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}H{-}CHR'_2 \xrightarrow{7\text{-}13} RCH{=}CR'_2}$$

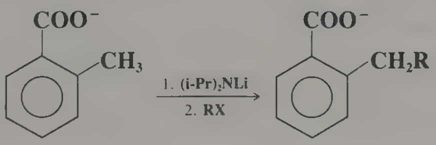
OS **III,** 44, 219, 221, 223, 397; **IV,** 278, 597, 641, 962; **V,** 187, 514, 559, 848; **52,** 33, 39; **54,** 93, 97; **57,** 91; **56,** 19, 52; **59,** 147.

0-98 Alkylation of Carboxylic Acid Salts
α-Carboxyalkyl-de-halogenation



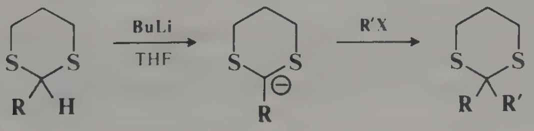
$$\mathrm{RCH_2COO^- \xrightarrow{(i\text{-}Pr)_2NLi} R\overset{\ominus}{C}HCOO^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{R'X} R{-}\underset{R'}{\underset{|}{C}H}{-}COO^-}$$

Carboxylic acids can be alkylated in the α-position by conversion of their salts to dianions [which actually have the enolate structures $\mathrm{RCH{=}C(O^-)_2}$[1192]] by treatment with a strong base such as lithium diisopropylamide.[1193] The use of $\mathrm{Li^+}$ as the counterion is important, because it increases the solubility of the dianionic salt. The reaction has been applied to primary alkyl, allylic, and benzylic halides, and to carboxylic acids of the form $\mathrm{RCH_2COOH}$ and RR″CHCOOH.[1157] This method, which is an example of the alkylation of a dianion at its more nucleophilic position (see pp. 323, 414), is an alternative to the malonic ester synthesis (**0-96**) as a means of preparing carboxylic acids and has the advantage that acids of the form RR′R″CCOOH can also be prepared. In a related reaction, methylated aromatic acids can be alkylated at the methyl group by a similar procedure.[1194]



OS **V,** 526; **50,** 58; **61,** 59.

0-99 Alkylation at a Position α to a Hetero Atom. Alkylation of 1,3-Dithianes
2-(2-Alkyl-1,3-dithianyl)-de-halogenation



1,3-Dithianes can be alkylated if a proton is first removed by treatment with butyllithium in tetrahydrofuran.[1195] Since 1,3-dithianes can be prepared by treatment of an aldehyde or its acetal

---

[1191] Reich and Shah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3250 (1975).

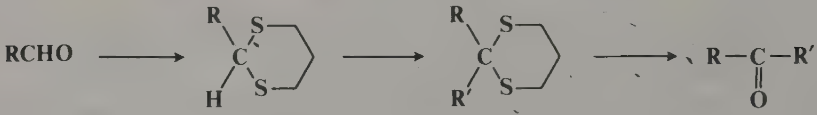
[1192] Mladenova, Blagoev, Gaudemar, Dardoize, and Lallemand, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2153 (1981).

[1193] Cregar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2500 (1967), **92,** 1397 (1970); Pfeffer and Silbert, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 262 (1970); Pfeffer, Silbert, and Chirinko, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 451 (1972).

[1194] Cregar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1396 (1970).

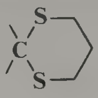
[1195] Corey and Seebach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 1075, 1077 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 1134, 1135]; Seebach and Corey, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 231 (1975). For reviews, see Seebach, *Synthesis* 17–36 (1969), especially pp. 24–27; Olsen and Currie, in Patai, Ref. 612, pt. 2, pp. 536–547.

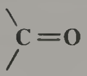
(see OS **50,** 72) with 1,3-propanedithiol (**6-11**) and can be hydrolyzed (**0-7**), this is a method for the conversion of an aldehyde to a ketone (see also **0-97** and **8-10**):

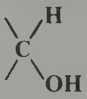


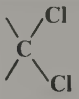
This is another example of umpolung (see **0-97**);[1176] the normally electrophilic carbon of the aldehyde is made to behave as a nucleophile. The reaction can be applied to the unsubstituted dithiane (R = H) and one or two alkyl groups can be introduced, so that a wide variety of aldehydes and ketones can be made starting with formaldehyde.[1196] R′ may be primary or secondary alkyl or benzylic. Iodides give the best results. The reaction has been used to close rings.[1197] A similar synthesis of aldehydes can be performed starting with ethyl ethylthiomethyl sulfoxide $EtSOCH_2SEt$.[1198]

The group **A** may be regarded as a structural equivalent for the carbonyl group **B,** since introduction of **A** into a molecule is actually an indirect means of introducing **B.** It is convenient


A


B

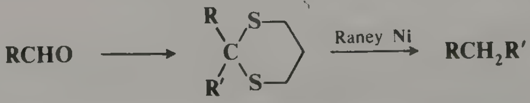

C


D

to have a word for units within molecules; such a word is *synthon*, introduced by Corey,[1199] which is defined as a structural unit within a molecule that can be formed and/or assembled by known or conceivable synthetic operations. There are many other synthons equivalent to **A** and **B,** for example, **C** (by reactions **6-26** and **9-3**) and **D** (by reactions **0-2** and **6-25**).[1200]

Carbanions generated from 1,3-dithianes also react with epoxides[1201] to give the expected products.

Another useful application of this reaction stems from the fact that dithianes can be desulfurated with Raney nickel (**4-37**). Aldehydes can therefore be converted to chain-extended hydrocarbons:[1202]



Similar reactions have been carried out with other thioacetals, as well as with compounds containing three thioether groups on a carbon.[1203]

The carbanion derived from a 1,3-dithiane is stabilized by two thioether groups. If a strong enough base is used, it is possible to alkylate at a position adjacent to only one such group. For example, benzylic and allylic thioethers[1204] ($RSCH_2Ar$ and $RSCH_2CH{=}CH_2$) have been successfully

[1196] For a direct conversion of RX to RCHO, see reaction **0-104.**

[1197] For example, see Seebach, Jones, and Corey, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 300 (1968); Hylton and Boekelheide, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6887 (1968); Ogura, Yamashita, Suzuki, and Tsuchihashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3653 (1974).

[1198] Richman, Herrmann, and Schlessinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3267 (1973). See also Ogura and Tsuchihashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3151 (1971); Schill and Jones, *Synthesis* 117 (1974); Hori, Hayashi, and Midorikawa, *Synthesis* 705 (1974).

[1199] Corey, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **14,** 19–37 (1967), pp. 20–23.

[1200] For a long list of synthons for RCO, with references, see Hase and Koskimies, *Aldrichimica Acta* **15,** 35–41 (1982).

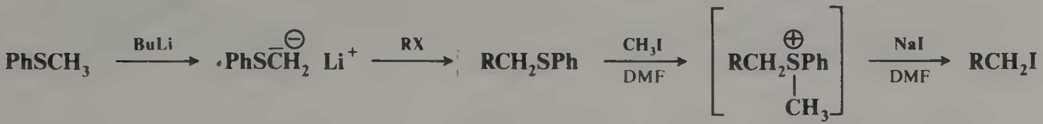
[1201] For example, see Corey and Seebach, Ref. 1195; Jones and Grayshan, *Chem. Commun.* 141, 741 (1970).

[1202] For examples, see Hylton and Boekelheide, Ref. 1197; Jones and Grayshan, Ref. 1201.

[1203] For example, see Seebach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 442 (1967); [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 468 (1967)]; Olsson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **22,** 2390 (1968); Mori, Hashimoto, Takenaka, and Takigawa, *Synthesis* 720 (1975); Lissel, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1589 (1982).

[1204] The same reaction has been done on benzylic and allylic thiols. In this case 2 moles of base are used, the first to remove the SH proton: Geiss, Seebach, and Seuring, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 1833 (1977).

alkylated at the carbon adjacent to the sulfur atom.[1205] Stabilization by one thioether group has also been used in a method for the homologization of primary halides.[1206] Thioanisole (**125**) is treated with BuLi to give the corresponding anion[1207] which reacts with the halide to give the thioether **127**. **127** is then refluxed with a mixture of methyl iodide and sodium iodide in dimethylformamide.

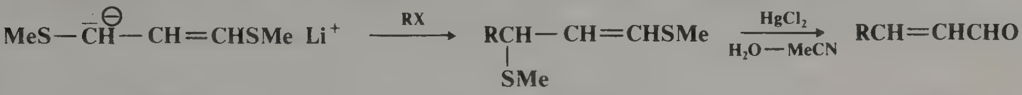


$$PhSCH_3 \xrightarrow{BuLi} PhS\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H_2\ Li^+ \xrightarrow{RX} RCH_2SPh \xrightarrow[DMF]{CH_3I} \left[RCH_2\overset{\oplus}{S}Ph \atop \quad | \atop \quad CH_3 \right] \xrightarrow[DMF]{NaI} RCH_2I$$

125 **126** **127**

By this sequence an alkyl halide RX is converted to its homolog RCH_2X by a pathway involving only two laboratory steps (the shortest pathway known for this conversion). RX may also be allylic, but here the use of the copper analog of **126** (prepared from **126** and CuI) gives higher yields.[1206]

Vinyl sulfides containing an α-hydrogen can also be alkylated[1208] by alkyl halides or epoxides. In one application, the ion **128**, which can be prepared in three steps from epichlorohydrin, reacts

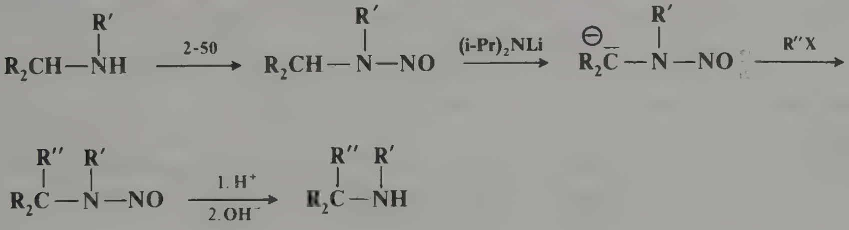


$$MeS-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H-CH{=}CHSMe\ Li^+ \xrightarrow{RX} \underset{SMe}{RCH}-CH{=}CHSMe \xrightarrow[H_2O-MeCN]{HgCl_2} RCH{=}CHCHO$$

128 **129** **130**

with alkyl halides to give the bis(methylthio) compound **129**[1209] which is easily hydrolyzed[1210] with $HgCl_2$ in aqueous MeCN. This is a method for converting an alkyl halide RX to an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde **130** using **128** which is the synthetic equivalent of the unknown $H\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}{=}CH-CHO$ ion. Even simple alkyl aryl sulfides RCH_2SAr and $RR'CHSAr$ have been alkylated α to the sulfur.[1211]

Alkylation can also be carried out, in certain compounds, at positions α to other hetero atoms. For example, alkylation has been reported at a position α to the nitrogen of tertiary amines.[1212] Alkylation α to the nitrogen of primary or secondary amines is not generally feasible because an NH hydrogen is usually more acidic than a CH hydrogen. It has been accomplished, however, by replacing the NH hydrogens with other (removable) groups. In one example, a secondary amine is converted to its N-nitroso derivative (**2-50**).[1213] The N-nitroso product is easily hydrolyzed to the



$$R_2CH-\overset{R'}{N}H \xrightarrow{2\text{-}50} R_2CH-\overset{R'}{N}-NO \xrightarrow{(i\text{-}Pr)_2NLi} R_2\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}-\overset{R'}{N}-NO \xrightarrow{R''X}$$

$$R_2\overset{R''}{C}-\overset{R'}{N}-NO \xrightarrow[2.\ OH^-]{1.\ H^+} R_2\overset{R''}{C}-\overset{R'}{N}H$$

[1205] Biellmann and Ducep, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5629 (1968), 3707 (1969), *Tetrahedron* **27**, 5861 (1971). See also Narasaka, Hayashi, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 259 (1972).

[1206] Corey and Jautelat, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5787 (1968).

[1207] Corey and Seebach, *J. Org. Chem.* **31**, 4097 (1966).

[1208] Oshima, Shimoji, Takahashi, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 2694 (1973).

[1209] Corey, Erickson, and Noyori, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 1724 (1971).

[1210] Corey and Shulman, *J. Org. Chem.* **35**, 777 (1970). See, however, Mura, Majetich, Grieco, and Cohen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4437 (1975).

[1211] Dolak and Bryson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1961 (1977).

[1212] Lepley and Khan, *J. Org. Chem.* **31**, 2061, 2064 (1966), *Chem. Commun.* 1198 (1967); Lepley and Giumanini, *J. Org. Chem.* **31**, 2055 (1966); Ahlbrecht and Dollinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25**, 1353 (1984). See also Stork, Jacobson, and Levitz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 771 (1979).

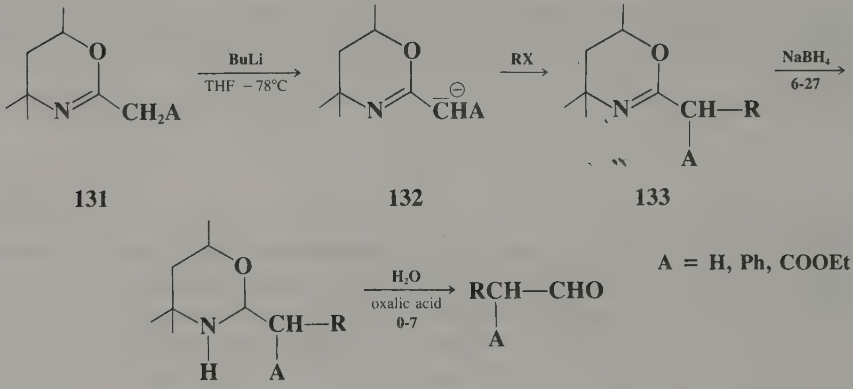
[1213] Seebach, Enders, and Renger, *Chem. Ber.* **110**, 1852 (1977); Renger, Kalinowski, and Seebach, *Chem. Ber.* **110**, 1866 (1977).

product amine (**9-53**).[1214] Alkylation of secondary and primary amines has also been accomplished with other protecting groups.[1215]

Alkylation α to the oxygen of allylic ethers was mentioned on p. 413. It is also possible to alkylate a methyl, ethyl, or other primary group of an aryl ester ArCOOR, where Ar is a 2,4,6-trialkylphenyl group.[1216] Since esters can be hydrolyzed to alcohols, this constitutes an indirect alkylation of primary alcohols. Methanol has also been alkylated by converting it to $^{\ominus}CH_2O^{\ominus}$.[1217]

OS **51,** 39, 76; **54,** 27; **56,** 77; **58,** 113.

0-100 Alkylation of Dihydro-1,3-Oxazine. The Meyers Synthesis of Aldehydes, Ketones, and Carboxylic Acids



131 **132** **133**

A = H, Ph, COOEt

A synthesis of aldehydes developed by Meyers[1218] begins with the commercially available (or synthesized from 2-methyl-2,4-pentanediol and a nitrile ACH_2CN) dihydro-1,3-oxazine derivatives **131** (A = H, Ph, or COOEt).[1219] Though the ions (**132**) prepared from **131** are ambident, they are regioselectively alkylated at carbon by a wide variety of alkyl bromides and iodides. R may be primary or secondary alkyl, allylic, or benzylic and may carry another halogen or a CN group.[1220] The alkylated oxazine **133** is then reduced and hydrolyzed to give an aldehyde containing two more carbons than the starting RX. This method thus complements **0-99** which converts RX to an aldehyde containing one more carbon.[1221] Since A can be H, mono- or disubstituted acetaldehydes can be produced by this method. Reduction with $NaBD_4$ leads to C-1-deuterated aldehydes. If desired, **133** can be alkylated again (provided A is Ph) with the same or a different alkyl halide to give a trisubstituted aldehyde after reduction and hydrolysis. If A is H, however, **133** generally cannot be alkylated again, because the ion formed by BuLi treatment of **133** (which is **131** with an R group replacing the hydrogen) tautomerizes[1222] to the ketenimine **134**.[1223]

[1214] Fridman, Mukhametshin, and Novikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 34–50 (1971), pp. 41–42.

[1215] See, for example, Beak, McKinnie, and Reitz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1839 (1977); Schöllkopf, Henneke, Madawinata, and Harms, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 40 (1977); Schell, Carter, and Wiaux-Zamar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2894 (1978); Meyers and Hellring, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5119 (1981).

[1216] Beak and McKinnie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5213 (1977); Beak and Carter, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2363 (1981).

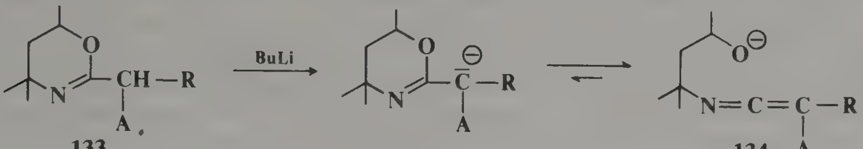
[1217] Seebach and Meyer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 438 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 484].

[1218] Meyers, Nabeya, Adickes, Politzer, Malone, Kovelesky, Nolen, and Portnoy, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 36 (1973).

[1219] For reviews of the preparation and reactions of **131** see Schmidt, *Synthesis* 333–350 (1972); Collington, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 987–991 (1973).

[1220] Meyers, Malone, and Adickes, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3715 (1970).

[1221] For an alternative procedure, see Meyers, and Nazarenko, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3243 (1972).

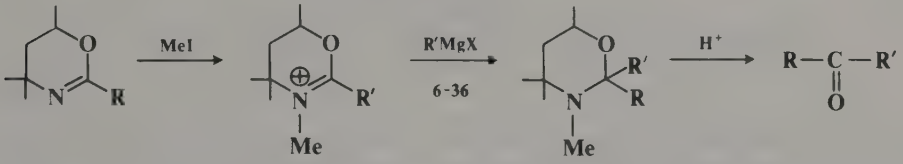


133 **134**

In an alternate procedure, **133** can be hydrolyzed instead of reduced (see **6-2**), producing a carboxylic acid RCHA—COOH.[1224]

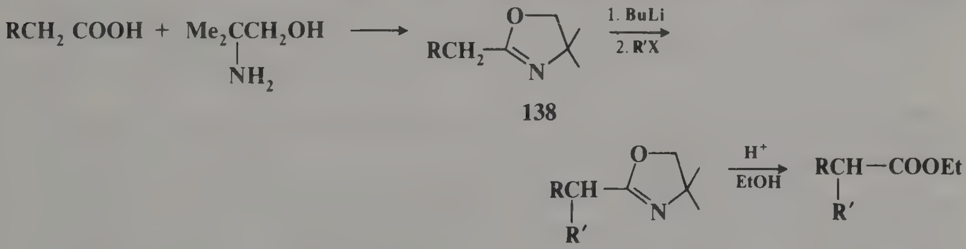
The ion **132** also reacts with epoxides, to form γ-hydroxy aldehydes after reduction and hydrolysis,[1225] and with aldehydes and ketones (**6-42**). Similar aldehyde synthesis has also been carried out with thiazoles[1226] and thiazolines[1227] (five-membered rings containing N and S in the 1 and 3 positions).

The reaction has been extended to the preparation of ketones:[1228] treatment of a dihydro-1,3-oxazine (**135**) with methyl iodide forms the iminium salt **136** (**0-45**) which, when treated with a Grignard reagent or organolithium compound (**6-36**), produces **137** which can be hydrolyzed to a ketone. R may be alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, benzylic, etc., and R′ may be alkyl, aryl, benzylic, or allylic. **131, 133,** and **135** themselves do not react with Grignard reagents.



135 **136** **137**

The fact that dihydro-1,3-oxazines do not react with Grignard reagents gives rise to a useful method for the protection of carboxylic acids.[1229] These could be converted to dihydro-1,3-oxazines, but in this case it is more convenient to use 2-oxazolines[1230] (**138**) which are readily formed by



138

139 **140**

[1222] Meyers and Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4355 (1970).

[1223] However, this ketinimine can be alkylated, not with RX, but with RM (reaction **2-17**).

[1224] Meyers, Politzer, Bandlish, and Malone, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5886 (1969).

[1225] Adickes, Politzer, and Meyers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2155 (1969).

[1226] Altman and Richheimer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4709 (1971).

[1227] Meyers and Durandetta, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2021 (1975).

[1228] Meyers and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1084 (1970); *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4289 (1972).

[1229] Meyers, Temple, Haidukewych, and Mihelich, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2787 (1974).

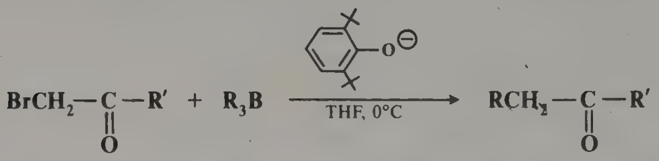
[1230] For a review, see Meyers and Mihelich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 270–281 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 321–332].

treatment of the acid with 2-amino-2-methyl-1-propanol [the simplest **138** (R = H) is commercially available].[1231] Conversion of a carboxylic acid to a 2-oxazoline permits reaction of a functional group which may be present in R with a Grignard reagent[1232] or with LiAlH$_4$[1231] without disturbing the oxazoline ring. In a further application, **138** can be alkylated to give **139**[1233] which is easily converted directly to the esters **140** by heating in 5 to 7% ethanolic sulfuric acid. **138** and **139** are thus synthons for carboxylic acids; this is another indirect method for the α alkylation of a carboxylic acid,[1234] representing an alternative to the malonic ester synthesis (**0-96**) and to **0-98** and **0-101**. The method can be adapted to the preparation of optically active carboxylic acids by the use of a chiral reagent. Note that, unlike **131, 138** can be alkylated even if R is alkyl. However, the C═N bond of **138** and **139** cannot be effectively reduced, so that aldehyde synthesis is not feasible here.[1235]

OS **51,** 24.

0-101 Alkylation with Trialkylboranes

Alkyl-de-halogenation



Trialkylboranes react rapidly and in high yields with α-halo ketones,[1236] α-halo esters,[1237] α-halo nitriles,[1238] and α-halo sulfonyl derivatives (sulfones, sulfonic esters, sulfonamides)[1239] in the presence of a base to give, respectively, alkylated ketones, esters, nitriles, and sulfonyl derivatives.[1240] Potassium *t*-butoxide is often a suitable base, but potassium 2,6-di-*t*-butylphenoxide at 0°C in THF gives better results in most cases, possibly because the large bulk of the two *t*-butyl groups prevents the base from coordinating with the R_3B.[1241] The trialkylboranes are prepared by treatment of 3 moles of an alkene with 1 mole of BH_3 (**5-13**). However, the use of R_3B prepared this way has two disadvantages. With α-halo ketones, boranes containing branched R (e.g., isobutyl, *sec*-butyl) do not react, and with any substrate, 2 moles of R are lost. Both of these disadvantages are overcome by the use of a 9-alkyl-9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (B-R-9-BBN) in place of an ordinary R_3B.[1242] These reagents, which can be prepared by addition of 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN) to an alkene (see p. 704) or by reaction of 9-BBN with an alkyl- or aryllithium followed by treatment with methanesulfonic acid,[1243] react nicely with α-halo esters, α-halo ketones, and α-halo nitriles.

[1231] For an alternate method for the conversion of carboxylic acids to **138,** see Haidukewych and Meyers, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3031 (1972).

[1232] Meyers and Temple, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6644, 6646 (1970).

[1233] Meyers, Temple, Nolen, and Mihelich, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2778 (1974); Meyers, Mihelich, and Nolen, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2783 (1974); Meyers, Mihelich, and Kamata, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 768 (1974).

[1234] For reviews, see Meyers, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **51,** 1255–1268 (1979); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 375–381 (1978). See also Hoobler, Bergbreiter, and Newcomb, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 8182 (1978); Meyers, Snyder, and Ackerman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 8186 (1978).

[1235] Meyers and Temple, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6644 (1970).

[1236] Brown, Rogić, and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6218 (1968).

[1237] Brown, Rogić, Rathke, and Kabalka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 818 (1968).

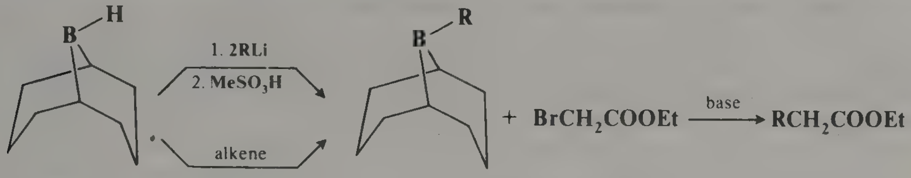
[1238] Brown, Nambu, and Rogić, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6854 (1969).

[1239] Truce, Mura, Smith, and Young, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1449 (1974).

[1240] For reviews, see Weill-Raynal, *Synthesis* 633–651 (1976); Brown and Rogić, *Organomet. Chem. Synth.* **1,** 305–327 (1972); Rogić, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* 7(2), 155–167 (1973); Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," pp. 372–391, 404–409, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972; Cragg, Ref. 927, pp. 275–278, 283–287.

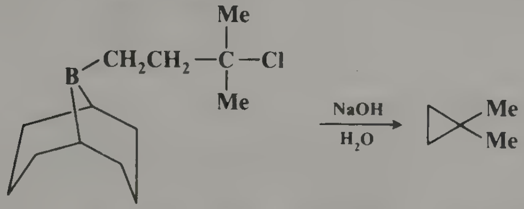
[1241] Brown, Nambu, and Rogić, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6852, 6854, 6855 (1969).

[1242] Brown and Rogić, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2146 (1969); Brown, Rogić, Nambu, and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2147 (1969).

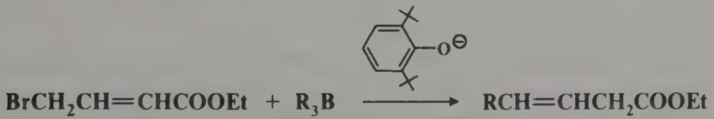


9-BBN **5-13** B-R-9-BBN

When R_3B or B-R-9-BBN prepared from an alkene is used, the R must be an alkyl group containing at least two carbons, but the use of B-R-9-BBN prepared the other way allows R to be methyl or aryl. The reaction has also been accomplished with R = i-Pr and *t*-Bu.[1244] When the R of B-R-9-BBN contains a γ-halogen, treatment with a base gives a cyclopropane,[1245] e.g.,



The reaction (with R_3B or B-R-9-BBN) can be extended to α,α-dihalo esters[1246] and α,α-dihalo nitriles.[1247] It is possible to replace just one halogen or both. In the latter case the two alkyl groups can be the same or different. When dialkylation is applied to dihalo nitriles, the two alkyl groups can be primary or secondary, but with dihalo esters, dialkylation is limited to primary R. Another extension is the reaction of boranes with γ-halo-α,β-unsaturated esters.[1248] Alkylation takes place in the γ-position, but the double bond migrates, e.g.,



$$BrCH_2CH{=}CHCOOEt + R_3B \longrightarrow RCH{=}CHCH_2COOEt$$

In this case, however, double-bond migration is an advantage, because nonconjugated β,γ-unsaturated esters are usually much more difficult to prepare than their α,β-unsaturated isomers.

The alkylation of activated halogen compounds is one of several reactions of trialkylboranes developed by H. C. Brown[1249] (see also **5-13, 5-19, 8-26** to **8-30,** etc.). These compounds are extremely versatile and can be used for the preparation of many types of compounds. In this reaction, for example, an alkene (through the BR_3 or B-R-9-BBN prepared from it) can be coupled to a ketone, a nitrile, an ester, or a sulfonyl derivative. Note that this is still another indirect way to alkylate a ketone (see **0-97**) or a carboxylic acid (see **0-98**), and provides an additional alternative to the malonic ester and acetoacetic ester syntheses (**0-96**).

[1243] Brown and Rogić, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4304 (1969).

[1244] Katz, Dubois, and Lion, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 683 (1977).

[1245] Brown and Rhodes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2149, 4306 (1969). For a review of this type of reaction, see Brown, Ref. 1240, pp. 336–340.

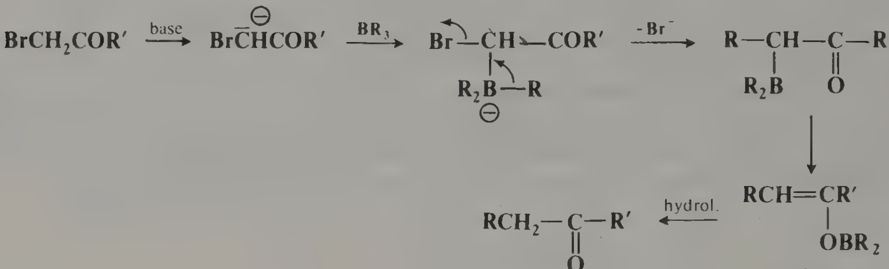
[1246] Brown, Rogić, Rathke, and Kabalka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1911 (1968).

[1247] Nambu and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5790 (1970).

[1248] Brown and Nambu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1761 (1970).

[1249] Brown, "Organic Syntheses via Boranes," Wiley, New York, 1975, "Hydroboration," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1962, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," Ref. 1240.

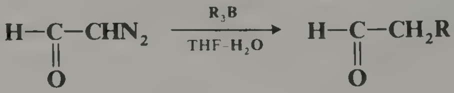
Although superficially this reaction resembles **0-88** it is likely that the mechanism is quite different, involving migration of an R group from boron to carbon (see also **8-26** to **8-30**). The mechanism is not known with certainty,[1250] but it may be tentatively shown as (illustrated for an α-halo ketone):



141

The first step is removal of the acidic proton by the base to give an enolate ion which combines with the borane (Lewis acid–base reaction). An R group then migrates, displacing the halogen leaving group.[1251] Another migration then follows, this time of BR_2 from carbon to oxygen to give the enol borinate **141**[1252] which is hydrolyzed. Configuration at R is retained.[1253]

The reaction has also been applied to compounds with other leaving groups. Diazo ketones, diazo esters, diazo nitriles, and diazo aldehydes[1254] react with trialkylboranes in a similar manner, e.g.,



$$\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{\mathrm{H-C-CHN_2}} \xrightarrow[\text{THF-}H_2O]{R_3B} \underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{\mathrm{H-C-CH_2R}}$$

The mechanism is probably also similar. In this case a base is not needed, since the carbon already has an available pair of electrons. The reaction with diazo aldehydes[1255] is especially notable, since successful reactions cannot be obtained with α-halo aldehydes. However, the reaction with diazo compounds suffers from the earlier noted disadvantage that two R groups are wasted. An attempt to use B-R-9-BBN was not successful.[1256] However, the use of alkyldichloroboranes $RBCl_2$ (prepared as on p. 705) overcomes this problem and also accommodates bulky groups that react slowly when R_3B is used.[1257]

OS **53,** 77.

[1250] See Prager and Reece, *Aust. J. Chem.* **28,** 1775 (1975).

[1251] It has been shown that this migration occurs stereospecifically with inversion in the absence of a solvent, but nonstereospecifically in the presence of a solvent such as THF or dimethyl sulfide: Midland, Zolopa, and Halterman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 248 (1979). See also Midland and Preston, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 747 (1980).

[1252] Pasto and Wojtkowski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 215 (1970), Ref. 1187.

[1253] Brown, Rogić, Rathke, and Kabalka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2150 (1969).

[1254] Hooz and Linke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5936, 6891 (1968); Hooz, Gunn, and Kono, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 2371 (1971); Mikhailov and Gurskii, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **22,** 2588 (1973).

[1255] Hooz and Morrison, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 868 (1970).

[1256] Hooz and Gunn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3455 (1969).

[1257] Hooz, Bridson, Calzada, Brown, Midland, and Levy, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2574 (1973). See also Brown, Midland, and Levy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3662 (1972).

0-102 Alkylation at an Alkynyl Carbon
Alkynyl-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + R'C{\equiv}C^- \longrightarrow RC{\equiv}CR'}$$

The reaction between alkyl halides and acetylide ions is quite useful but is of limited scope.[1258] Only primary halides unbranched in the β-position give good yields, though allylic halides can be used if CuI is present.[1259] If acetylene is the reagent, two different groups can be successively attached. Sulfates, sulfonates, and epoxides[1260] are sometimes used as substrates. The acetylide ion is often prepared by treatment of an alkyne with a strong base such as $NaNH_2$. Magnesium acetylides (ethynyl Grignard reagents; prepared as in **2-19**) are also frequently used, though they react only with active substrates, such as allylic, benzylic, and propargylic halides, and not with primary alkyl halides. Another convenient method for preparation of the acetylide ion is the addition of the alkyne to a solution of $CH_3SOCH_2^-$ in dimethyl sulfoxide.[1261] This solution can be prepared by the addition of sodium hydride to dimethyl sulfoxide. Alternatively, the alkyl halide can be treated with a lithium acetylide–ethylenediamine complex.[1262] Tertiary alkyl halides can be coupled by treatment with an alkynylalane $(RC{\equiv}C)_3Al$.[1263] If 2 moles of a very strong base are used, alkylation can be effected at a carbon α to a terminal triple bond: $RCH_2C{\equiv}CH + 2BuLi \rightarrow R\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}HC{\equiv}\overline{C}^{\ominus} + R'Br \rightarrow RR'CHC{\equiv}\overline{C}^{\ominus}$.[1264] For another method of alkylating at an alkynyl carbon, see **8-30.**

OS **IV,** 117; **57,** 26, 65; **58,** 1. Also see OS **IV,** 801; **50,** 97.

0-103 Preparation of Nitriles
Cyano-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + CN^- \longrightarrow RCN}$$

The reaction between cyanide ion (isoelectronic with $HC{\equiv}\overline{C}^{\ominus}$ and of similar geometry) and alkyl halides is a convenient method for the preparation of nitriles.[1265] Primary, benzylic, and allylic halides give good yields of nitriles; secondary halides give moderate yields. The reaction fails for tertiary halides, which give elimination under these conditions. Many other groups on the molecule do not interfere. Though a number of solvents have been used, the high yields and short reaction times observed with dimethyl sulfoxide make it a very good solvent for this reaction.[1266] Another way to obtain high yields under mild conditions is to use a phase transfer catalyst.[1267]

[1258] For reviews, see Ben-Efraim, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," pp. 790–800, Wiley, New York, 1978; Ziegenbein, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 185–206, 241–244, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969. For a discussion of the best ways of preparing various types of alkyne, see Bernadou, Mesnard, and Miginiac, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 106 (1978), 190 (1979).

[1259] Bourgain and Normant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1777 (1973). See also Yatagai, Yamamoto, and Maruyama, *Chem. Lett.* 669 (1980).

[1260] For example, see Fried, Lin, and Ford, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1379 (1969).

[1261] Kříž, Beneš, and Peška, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2881 (1965). See also Beckmann, Doerjer, Logemann, Merkel, Schill, and Zürcher, *Synthesis* 423 (1975).

[1262] Smith and Beumel, *Synthesis* 441 (1974).

[1263] Negishi and Baba, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 7385 (1975).

[1264] Bhanu and Scheinmann, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1218 (1979); Quillinan and Scheinmann, *Org. Synth.* **58,** 1.

[1265] For reviews, see, in Patai, and Rappoport, Ref. 307, the articles by Fatiadi, pt. 2, pp. 1057–1303, and Friedrich, pt. 2, pp. 1345–1390; Friedrich and Wallenfels, in Rappoport, "The Chemistry of the Cyano Group," pp. 77–86, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[1266] Smiley and Arnold, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 257 (1960); Friedman and Shechter, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 877 (1960); Argabright and Hall, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1365 (1964).

[1267] For reviews, see Starks and Liotta, Ref. 346, pp. 94–112; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," Ref. 346, pp. 96–108.

This is an important way of increasing the length of a carbon chain by one carbon, since nitriles are easily hydrolyzed to carboxylic acids (**6-5**). The cyanide ion is an ambident nucleophile and isonitriles may be side products. If the preparation of isonitriles is desired, they can be made the main products by the use of silver or copper(I) cyanide[1268] (p. 325). Vinyl bromides can be converted to vinyl cyanides with CuCN,[1269] with the mixed cyanide ''$NaCu(CN)_2$'' prepared from NaCN and CuCN,[1270] with KCN, a crown ether, and a Pd(0) complex,[1271] with KCN and a Ni(0) catalyst,[1272] or with $K_4Ni_2(CN)_6$.[1273] Tertiary halides can be converted to the corresponding nitriles by treatment with trimethylsilyl cyanide in the presence of catalytic amounts of $SnCl_4$: $R_3CCl + Me_3SiCN \rightarrow R_3CCN$.[1274]

The cyanide nucleophile also reacts with compounds containing other leaving groups. Esters of sulfuric and sulfonic acids behave like halides. Epoxides give β-hydroxy nitriles. Primary, secondary, and tertiary alcohols are converted to nitriles in good yields by treatment with NaCN, Me_3SiCl, and a catalytic amount of NaI in DMF–MeCN.[1275] NaCN in HMPT selectively cleaves methyl esters in the presence of ethyl esters: $RCOOMe + CN^- \rightarrow MeCN + RCOO^-$.[1276]

OS **I,** 46, 107, 156, 181, 254, 256, 536; **II,** 292, 376; **III,** 174, 372, 557; **IV,** 438, 496, 576; **V,** 578, 614.

0-104 Direct Conversion of Alkyl Halides to Aldehydes and Ketones

Formyl-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + Na_2Fe(CO)_4 \xrightarrow{Ph_3P} RCOFe(CO)_3PPh_3{}^- \xrightarrow{HOAc} RCHO}$$

142

The direct conversion of alkyl bromides to aldehydes, with an increase in the chain length by one carbon, can be accomplished[1277] by treatment with sodium tetracarbonylferrate(−II)[1278] (*Collman's reagent*) in the presence of triphenylphosphine and subsequent quenching of **142** with acetic acid. The reagent $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$ can be prepared by treatment of iron pentacarbonyl $Fe(CO)_5$ with sodium amalgam in tetrahydrofuran. Good yields are obtained from primary alkyl bromides; secondary bromides give lower yields. The reaction is not satisfactory for benzylic bromides. The initial species produced from RX and $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$ is the ion $RFe(CO)_4{}^-$ (**143**) (which can be isolated[1279]); it then reacts with Ph_3P to give **143**.[1280]

The synthesis can be extended to the preparation of ketones in five distinct ways.[1281]

[1268] For an example, see Jackson and McKusick, *Org. Synth.* **IV,** 438.

[1269] For example, see Koelsch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **58,** 1328 (1936); Newman and Boden, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2525 (1961); Lapouyade, Daney, Lapenue, and Bouas-Laurent, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 720 (1973).

[1270] House and Fischer, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3626 (1969).

[1271] Yamamura and Murahashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4429 (1977).

[1272] Sakakibara, Yadani, Ibuki, Sakai, and Uchino, *Chem. Lett.* 1565 (1982); Procházka and Široký, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **48,** 1765 (1983).

[1273] Corey and Hegedus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1233 (1969). See also Funabiki, Hosomi, Yoshida, and Tarama, *J. Am. Chem.* **104,** 1560 (1982).

[1274] Reetz and Chatziiosifidis, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 1017 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 1075].

[1275] Davis and Untch, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2985 (1981). See also Brett, Downie, and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 855 (1967); Mizuno, Hamada, and Shioiri, *Synthesis* 1007 (1980).

[1276] Müller and Siegfried, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 987 (1974).

[1277] Cooke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6080 (1970).

[1278] For a review of this reagent, see Collman, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 342–347 (1975).

[1279] Siegl and Collman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2516 (1972).

[1280] For the mechanism of the conversion **143** → **142,** see Collman, Finke, Cawse, and Brauman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2515 (1977), **100,** 4766 (1978).

[1281] For the first four of these methods, see Collman, Winter, and Clark, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1788 (1972); Collman and Hoffman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2689 (1973).

1. Instead of quenching **142** with acetic acid, the addition of a second alkyl halide at this point gives a ketone: **142** + R′X → RCOR′.

2. Treatment of $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$ with an alkyl halide in the absence of Ph_3P gives rise to a solution of **143**. Addition of a second alkyl halide produces a ketone: **143** + R′X → RCOR′.

3. Treatment of $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$ with an alkyl halide in the presence of CO results in an acylated iron complex (**144**) that can be isolated.[1279] Treatment of this with a second alkyl halide gives a ketone.[1282] Aryl ketones can be prepared by treating **144** with diaryliodonium salts $Ar_2I^+\ X^-$.[1283]

$$\mathbf{RX + Na_2Fe(CO)_4 \xrightarrow{CO} \underset{144}{RCOFe(CO)_4^-} \xrightarrow{R'X} RCOR'}$$

4. Treatment of $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$ with an acyl halide produces **144** which, when treated with an alkyl halide, gives a ketone or, when treated with an epoxide, gives an α,β-unsaturated ketone.[1284]

5. Alkyl halides and tosylates react with $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$ in the presence of ethylene to give alkyl ethyl ketones.[1285] The reaction was not successful for higher alkenes, except that where the double bond and the tosylate group are in the same molecule, 5 and 6-membered rings can be closed.[1286]

In the first stage of methods 1, 2, and 3, primary bromides, iodides, and tosylates and secondary tosylates may be used. The second stage of the first four methods requires more active substrates, such as primary iodides or tosylates or benzylic halides. Method 5 has been applied to primary and secondary substrates.

Aryl, benzylic, vinylic, and allylic halides have been converted to aldehydes by treatment with CO and Bu_3SnH, with a Pd(0) catalyst.[1286a] Various other groups do not interfere. Symmetrical ketones R_2CO can be prepared by treatment of a primary alkyl or benzylic halide with $Fe(CO)_5$ and a phase transfer catalyst.[1287] In another procedure, alkyl aryl ketones are formed in good yields by treatment of a mixture of an aryl iodide, an alkyl iodide, and a Zn–Cu couple with CO and a Pd(0) catalyst (ArI + RI + CO → RCOAr).[1288]

The conversion of alkyl halides to aldehydes and ketones can also be accomplished indirectly (**0-99**). See also **2-31**.

OS **59,** 102.

0-105 Conversion of Alkyl Halides, Alcohols, or Alkanes to Carboxylic Acids and Their Derivatives

Alkoxycarbonyl-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RX + CO + R'OH \xrightarrow[-70^\circ C]{SbCl_5-SO_2} RCOOR'}$$

Several methods, all based on carbon monoxide or metal carbonyls, have been developed for converting an alkyl halide to a carboxylic acid or an acid derivative with the chain extended by one carbon. When an alkyl halide is treated with $SbCl_5$–SO_2 at −70°C, it dissociates into the corresponding carbocation (p. 142). If carbon monoxide and an alcohol are present, then a carboxylic ester is formed by the following route:[1289]

[1282] See also Sawa, Ryang, and Tsutsumi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5189 (1969).

[1283] Cookson and Farquharson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1255 (1979).

[1284] Yamashita, Yamamura, Kurimoto, and Suemitsu, *Chem. Lett.* 1067 (1979).

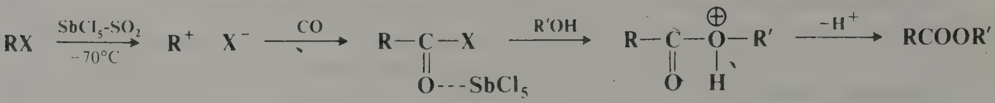
[1285] Cooke and Parlman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 6863 (1975).

[1286] McMurry and Andrus, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4687 (1980), and references cited therein.

[1286a] Baillargeon and Stille, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7175 (1983). See also Kasahara, Izumi, and Yanai, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 898 (1983).

[1287] Kimura, Tomita, Nakanishi, and Otsuji, *Chem. Lett.* 321 (1979).

[1288] Tamaru, Ochiai, Yamada, and Yoshida, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3869 (1983).



$$RX \xrightarrow[-70^\circ C]{SbCl_5\text{-}SO_2} R^+ \quad X^- \xrightarrow{CO} \underset{\substack{\| \\ O\text{---}SbCl_5}}{R-C-X} \xrightarrow{R'OH} \underset{\substack{\|\quad\;\; | \\ O\quad\;\; H}}{R-C-\overset{\oplus}{O}-R'} \xrightarrow{-H^+} RCOOR'$$

Not surprisingly, only tertiary halides perform satisfactorily; secondary halides give mostly rearrangement products. An analogous reaction takes place with alkanes possessing a tertiary hydrogen, e.g.,[1290]

$$EtCHMe_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ HF\text{–}SbF_5\text{–}CO} 75\%\ EtCMe_2COOH$$

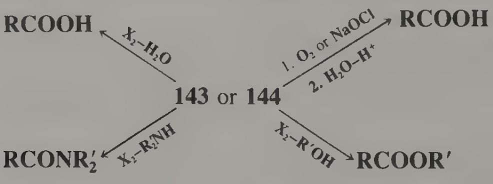
Carboxylic acids or esters are the products, depending on whether the reaction mixture is solvolyzed with water or an alcohol. Similarly, tertiary alcohols[1291] react with H_2SO_4 and CO (which is often generated from HCOOH and the H_2SO_4 in the solution) to give trisubstituted acetic acids in a process called the *Koch–Haaf reaction* (see also **5-22**).[1292] If a primary or secondary alcohol is the substrate, the carbocation initially formed rearranges to a tertiary ion before reacting with the CO. Better results are obtained if trifluoromethanesulfonic acid F_3CSO_2OH is used instead of H_2SO_4.[1292a]

Another method[1293] for the conversion of alkyl halides to esters is treatment of a halide with nickel carbonyl $Ni(CO)_4$ in the presence of an alcohol and its conjugate base.[1294] When R′ is primary,

$$RX + Ni(CO)_4 \xrightarrow[R'OH]{R'O^-} RCOOR'$$

then RX may only be a vinyl or an aryl halide; retention of configuration is observed at a vinyl R. Consequently, a carbocation intermediate is not involved here. When R′ is tertiary, R may be primary alkyl as well as vinyl or aryl. This is thus one of the few methods for preparing esters of tertiary alcohols. Alkyl iodides give the best results, then bromides. In the presence of an amine, an amide can be isolated directly, at least in some instances.

Still another method for the conversion of halides to acid derivatives makes use of $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$. As described in **0-104,** primary and secondary alkyl halides and tosylates react with this reagent to give the ion $RFe(CO)_4^-$ (**143**) or, if CO is present, the ion $RCOFe(CO)_4^-$ (**144**). Treatment of **143** or **144** with oxygen or sodium hypochlorite gives, after hydrolysis, a carboxylic acid.[1295]



[1289] Yoshimura, Nojima, and Tokura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **46,** 2164 (1973); Puzitskii, Pirozhkov, Ryabova, Myshenkova, and Éidus, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **23,** 192 (1974).

[1290] Paatz and Weisgerber, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 984 (1967). See also Souma and Sano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 3335 (1976).

[1291] For reviews of other carbonylation reactions of alcohols and other saturated oxygenated compounds, see Bahrmann and Cornils, in Falbe, "New Syntheses with Carbon Monoxide," pp. 226–241, Springer Verlag, New York, 1980; Piacenti and Bianchi, in Wender and Pino, "Organic Syntheses via Metal Carbonyls," vol. 2, pp. 1–42, Wiley, New York, 1977.

[1292] For a review, see Bahrmann, in Falbe, Ref. 1291, pp. 372–413.

[1292a] Booth and El-Fekky, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2441 (1979).

[1293] For reviews of methods involving transition metals, see Collman and Hegedus, Ref. 1057, pp. 479–496; Heck, *Adv. Catal.* **26,** 323–349 (1977), pp. 323–336; Cassar, Chiusoli, and Guerrieri, *Synthesis* 509–523 (1973).

[1294] Corey and Hegedus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1233 (1969). See also Crandall and Michaely, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **51,** 375 (1973).

[1295] Collman, Winter, and Komoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 249 (1973).

Alternatively, **143** or **144** reacts with a halogen (for example, I_2) in the presence of an alcohol to give an ester,[1296] or in the presence of a secondary amine or water to give, respectively, the corresponding amide or free acid. **143** and **144** prepared from primary R give high yields. With secondary R, the best results are obtained in the solvent THF by the use of **144** prepared from secondary tosylates. Ester and keto groups may be present in R without being affected. A similar reaction has been carried out with epoxides.[1297]

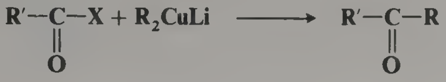
Carboxylic esters RCO_2R' have also been prepared by treating primary alkyl halides RX with alkoxides $R'O^-$ in the presence of $Fe(CO)_5$.[1298] **144** is presumably an intermediate.

OS **V**, 20, 739.

B. Attack at an Acyl Carbon[1299]

0-106 The Conversion of Acyl Halides to Ketones with Organometallic Compounds[1300]

Alkyl-de-halogenation



$$R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-X + R_2CuLi \longrightarrow R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R$$

Acyl halides react cleanly and under mild conditions with lithium dialkylcopper reagents[1301] (see **0-88**) to give high yields of ketones.[1302] R′ may be primary, secondary, or tertiary alkyl or aryl and may contain iodo, keto, ester, nitro, or cyano groups. R groups that have been used successfully are methyl, primary alkyl, and vinylic. Secondary and tertiary alkyl groups can be introduced by the use of PhS(R)CuLi (p. 401) instead of R_2CuLi,[1303] or by the use of either the mixed homocuprate $(R'SO_2CH_2CuR)^-\ Li^+$,[1304] or a magnesium dialkylcopper reagent "RMeCuMgX."[1305] R may be alkynyl if a cuprous acetylide $R''C{\equiv}CCu$ is the reagent.[1306]

Another type of organometallic reagent that gives good yields of ketones when treated with acyl halides are organocadmiums R_2Cd (prepared from Grignard reagents, **2-19**). In this case R may be aryl or primary alkyl. In general, secondary and tertiary alkylcadmium reagents are not stable enough to be useful in this reaction.[1307] An ester group may be present in either R′COX or R_2Cd. Organozinc compounds behave similarly, but are used less often.[1307a] Organomercury compounds[1308] and tetraalkylsilanes[1309] also give the reaction if an AlX_3 catalyst is present. Organotin reagents

---

[1296] Ref. 1295; Masada, Mizuno, Suga, Watanabe, and Takegami, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43**, 3824 (1970).

[1297] Takegami, Watanabe, Masada, and Kanaya, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40**, 1456 (1967).

[1298] Yamashita, Mizushima, Watanabe, Mitsudo, and Takegami, *Chem. Lett.* 1355 (1977). See also Tanguy, Weinberger, and des Abbayes, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 4005 (1983).

[1299] For a discussion of many of the reactions in this section, see House, Ref. 1124, pp. 691–694, 734–765.

[1300] For a review, see Cais and Mandelbaum, in Patai, Ref. 372, vol. 1, pp. 303–330 (1966).

[1301] For examples of the use of this reaction in the synthesis of natural products, see Posner, Ref. 1078, pp. 81–85. See also Ref. 1002.

[1302] Vig, Sharma, and Kapur, *J. Indian Chem. Soc.* **46**, 167 (1969); Jukes, Dua, and Gilman, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **21**, 241 (1970); Posner, Whitten, and McFarland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 5106 (1972); Luong-Thi, Rivière, and Spassky, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2102 (1973); Luong-Thi and Rivière, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **77**, C52 (1974).

[1303] Ref. 1011, Bennett, Nadelson, Alden, and Jani, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **8**, 13 (1976).

[1304] Johnson and Dhanoa, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 358 (1982).

[1305] Bergbreiter and Killough, *J. Org. Chem.* **41**, 2750 (1976).

[1306] Castro, Havlin, Honwad, Malte, and Mojé, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91**, 6464 (1969). See also Tohda, Sonogashira, and Hagihara, *Synthesis* 777 (1977).

[1307] Cason and Fessenden, *J. Org. Chem.* **25**, 477 (1960).

[1307a] For an example, see Negishi, Bagheri, Chatterjee, Luo, Miller, and Stoll, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 5181 (1983).

[1308] Kurts, Beletskaya, Savchenko, and Reutov, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **17**, P21 (1969); Larock and Bernhardt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3097 (1976). See also Takagi, Okamoto, Sakakibara, Ohno, Oka, and Hayama, *Chem. Lett.* 951 (1975); Bumagin, Kalinovskii, and Beletskaya, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18**, 1152 (1982).

[1309] Olah, Ho, Prakash, and Gupta, *Synthesis* 677 (1977).

R_4Sn react with acyl halides to give high yields of ketones, if a Pd complex is present.[1310] Various other groups, for example, nitrile, ester and aldehyde may be present in the acyl halide without interference. Still other reagents are organomanganese compounds[1311] (R may be primary, secondary, or tertiary alkyl, vinylic, alkynyl, or aryl), lithium aryltrialkylborates[1312] $ArBR_3^- Li^+$ (which transfer an aryl group) and the alkylrhodium(I) complexes bis(triphenylphosphine)carbonylalkylrhodium(I) $Rh^IR(CO)(Ph_3P)_2$. The latter, generated in situ from $Rh^ICl(CO)(Ph_3P)_2$ (**145**) and a Grignard reagent or organolithium compound, react with acyl halides in THF at −78°C to give good yields of ketones.[1313] R may be primary alkyl or aryl. An advantage of the rhodium reagents is that they do not react with aldehydes, esters, or nitriles, so that these groups may be present in R′. Another advantage is that the complex **145** is regenerated in reusable form at the end of the reaction.

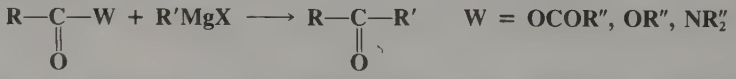
When the organometallic compound is a Grignard reagent,[1314] ketones are generally not obtained because the initially formed ketone reacts with a second molecule of RMgX to give the salt of a tertiary alcohol (**6-33**). Ketones *have* been prepared in this manner by the use of low temperatures, inverse addition (i.e., addition of the Grignard reagent to the acyl halide rather than the other way), excess acyl halide, etc., but the yields are usually low, though high yields have been reported in THF at −78°C.[1315] Some ketones are unreactive toward Grignard reagents for steric or other reasons; these can be prepared in this way.[1316] Also, certain metallic halides, notably ferric and cuprous halides, are catalysts that improve the yields of ketone at the expense of tertiary alcohol.[1317] For these catalysts, both free-radical and ionic mechanisms have been proposed.[1318] The reactions with R_2CuLi, R_2Cd, and the rhodium complexes are successful because these compounds do not generally react with ketones.

Grignard reagents react with ethyl chloroformate to give esters $EtOCOCl + RMgX \rightarrow EtOCOR$. Acyl halides can also be converted to ketones by treatment with $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$ followed by R′X (**0-104**, method 4).

OS **II**, 198; **III**, 601; **IV**, 708; **54**, 97; **55**, 122; **60**, 81.

0-107 The Conversion of Anhydrides, Esters, or Amides to Ketones with Organometallic Compounds[1319]

Alkyl-de-acyloxy-substitution



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}W} + \mathrm{R'MgX} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} \qquad \mathbf{W = OCOR'', OR'', NR''_2}$$

As is the case with acyl halides (**0-106**), anhydrides and esters give tertiary alcohols (reaction **6-33**) when treated with Grignard reagents. Low temperatures,[1320] the solvent HMPT,[1321] and inverse addition have been used to increase the yields of ketone. Amides give better yields of ketone at room temperature, but still only about 10 to 50%. 2-Pyridinethiol esters (p. 349) are one type of ester that gives high yields of ketones when added to Grignard reagents.[1322] Thioesters RCOSR′ give good yields of ketones when treated with lithium dialkylcopper reagents R″CuLi (R″ = primary or secondary alkyl or aryl),[1323] as do selenoesters RCOSeR′.[1323a] Organocadmium reagents are less successful with these substrates than with acyl halides (**0-106**). Esters of formic acid and dialkylformamides give good yields of aldehydes, when treated with Grignard reagents. Ethyl carbonate has been used to prepare esters

---

[1310] Kosugi, Shimizu, and Migita, *Chem. Lett.* 1423 (1977); Labadie and Stille, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105**, 669, 6129 (1983); Labadie, Tueting, and Stille, *J. Org. Chem.* **48**, 4634 (1983).

[1311] Cahiez, Bernard, and Normant, *Synthesis* 130 (1977); Cahiez, Alexakis, and Normant, *Synth. Commun.* **9**, 639 (1979).

[1312] Negishi, Abramovitch, and Merrill, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 138 (1975); Negishi, Chiu, and Yoshida, *J. Org. Chem.* **40**, 1676 (1975). See also Miyaura, Sasaki, Itoh, and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 173 (1977).

[1313] Hegedus, Kendall, Lo, and Sheats, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97**, 5448 (1975) See also Pittman and Hanes, *J. Org. Chem.* **42**, 1194 (1977).

[1314] For a review, see Ref. 1020, pp. 712–724.

[1315] Sato, Inoue, Oguro, and Sato, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4303 (1979); Eberle and Kahle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21**, 2303 (1980). See also Parham, Bradsher, and Edgar, *J. Org. Chem.* **46**, 1057 (1981).

[1316] For example, see Lion, Dubois, and Bonzougou, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 46 (1978).

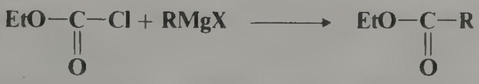
[1317] For examples, see Cason and Kraus, *J. Org. Chem.* **26**, 1768, 1772 (1961); Dubois, Leheup, Hennequin, and Bauer, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1150 (1967); MacPhee and Dubois, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 467 (1972); Luong-Thi, Rivière, Bégué, and Forestier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2113 (1971). See also Fiandanese, Marchese, and Ronzini, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 3677 (1983).

[1318] For example, see Dubois and Boussu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2523 (1970), *Tetrahedron* **29**, 3943 (1973); MacPhee, Boussu, and Dubois, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1525 (1974).

[1319] For a review, see Ref. 1020, pp. 561–562, 846–908.

[1320] See, for example, Newman and Booth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **67**, 154 (1945); Newman and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **13**, 592 (1948); Edwards and Kammann, *J. Org. Chem.* **29**, 913 (1964); Araki and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 663 (1974); Araki, Sakata, Takei, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 687 (1974).

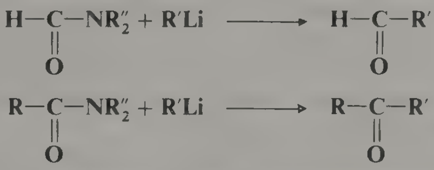
[1321] Huet, Emptoz, and Jubier, *Tetrahedron* **29**, 479 (1973); Huet, Pellet, and Conia, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3579 (1976).



$$\mathrm{EtO{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}Cl + RMgX \longrightarrow EtO{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R}$$

but more often the reaction goes further to give the ketone or the tertiary alcohol.

Alkyllithium compounds have been used to give good yields of ketones from esters. The reaction must be carried out in a high-boiling solvent such as toluene, since reaction at lower temperatures gives tertiary alcohols.[1324] Alkyllithiums also give good yields of carbonyl compounds with N,N-disubstituted amides.[1325] Dialkylformamides give aldehydes and other disubstituted amides give ketones.



$$\mathrm{H{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NR''_2 + R'Li \longrightarrow H{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'}$$

$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NR''_2 + R'Li \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'}$$

N,N-Disubstituted amides can be converted to alkynyl ketones by treatment with alkenylboranes: $RCONR''_2 + (R'C{\equiv}C)_3B \rightarrow RCOC{\equiv}CR'$.[1326] N,N-Disubstituted carbamates (X = OR″) and carbamoyl chlorides (X = Cl) react with 2 moles of an alkyl- or aryllithium or Grignard reagent to give symmetrical ketones, in which both R groups are derived from the organometallic compound: $R'_2NCOX + 2RMgX \rightarrow R_2CO$.[1327] Ketones have also been made by treating carboxylic acids with Grignard reagents, in the presence of dichlorotriphenylphosphorane.[1327a] A phosphonium salt $RCOOPPh_3^+\ Cl^-$ is an intermediate.

Ketones can also be obtained by treatment of the lithium salt of a carboxylic acid with an alkyllithium reagent (**6-32**). For an indirect way to convert carboxylic esters to ketones, see **6-34**.

OS **II,** 282; **III,** 353; **IV,** 285; **52,** 75.

0-108 The Coupling of Acyl Halides

$$2RCOCl \xrightarrow{\text{pyrophoric Pb}} RCOCOR$$

Acyl halides can be coupled with pyrophoric lead to give symmetrical α-diketones in a Wurtz-type reaction.[1328] The reaction has been performed with R = Me and Ph. Another reagent that gives the same reaction is diiodosamarium SmI_2.[1329] Benzoyl chloride was coupled to give benzil by subjecting it to ultrasound in the presence of Li wire: $2PhCOCl + Li \rightarrow PhCOCOPh$.[984]

[1322] Araki, Sakata, Takei, and Mukaiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 1777 (1974).

[1323] Anderson, Henrick, and Rosenblum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3654 (1974). See also Kim and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2608 (1983).

[1323a] Sviridov, Ermolenko, Yashunsky, and Kochetkov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4355, 4359 (1983).

[1324] Petrov, Kaplan, and Tsir, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 691 (1962).

[1325] Evans, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4691 (1956); Izzo and Safir, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 701 (1959); Owsley, Nelke, and Bloomfield, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 901 (1973); Scilly, *Synthesis* 160 (1973); Wattanasin and Kathawala, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 811 (1984). See also Nahm and Weinreb, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3815 (1981); Olah and Arvanaghi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 878 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 925].

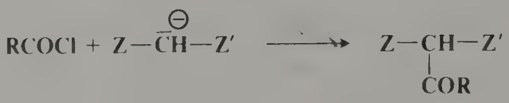
[1326] Yamaguchi, Waseda, and Hirao, *Chem. Lett.* 35 (1983).

[1327] Michael and Hörnfeldt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5219 (1970); Scilly, Ref. 1325.

[1327a] Fujisawa, Iida, Uehara, and Sato, *Chem. Lett.* 1267 (1983). See also Fujisawa, Mori, Higuchi, and Sato, *Chem. Lett.* 1791 (1983).

0-109 Acylation at a Carbon Bearing an Active Hydrogen

Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl-de-halogenation, etc.



$$RCOCl + Z-\overset{\ominus}{C}H-Z' \longrightarrow Z-\underset{\displaystyle COR}{\underset{|}{C}H}-Z'$$

This reaction is similar to **0-96**, though many fewer examples have been reported. Z and Z′ may be any of the groups listed in **0-96.** Anhydrides react similarly but are used less often. The product contains three Z groups, since RCO is a Z group. One or two of these can then be cleaved (**2-39, 2-42**). In this way a compound ZCH_2Z' can be converted to ZCH_2Z'' or an acyl halide RCOCl to a methyl ketone $RCOCH_3$. O-Acylation is sometimes a side reaction.[1330] When thallium(I) salts of ZCH_2Z' are used, it is possible to achieve regioselective acylation at either the C or the O position. For example, treatment of the thallium(I) salt of $MeCOCH_2COMe$ with acetyl chloride at −78°C gave > 90% O-acylation, while acetyl fluoride at room temperature gave > 95% C-acylation.[1331] Carboxylic acids will directly acylate ZCH_2Z' in high yields, if diethyl phosphorocyanidate $(EtO)_2P(O)CN$ and a base such as Et_3N are present.[1332]

The application of this reaction to simple ketones[1156] (in parallel with **0-97**) requires a strong base, such as $NaNH_2$, NaH, or Ph_3CNa, and is often complicated by O-acylation, which in many cases, becomes the principal pathway because acylation at the oxygen is usually much faster. It is possible to increase the proportion of C-acylated product by employing an excess (2 to 3 equivalents) of enolate ion (and adding the substrate to this, rather than vice versa), by the use of a relatively nonpolar solvent and a metal ion (such as Mg^{2+}) which is tightly associated with the enolate oxygen atom, by the use of an acyl halide rather than an anhydride,[1333] and by working at low temperatures.[1334] In cases where the use of an excess of enolate ion results in C-acylation, it is because O-acylation takes place first, and the O-acylated product (an enol ester) is then C-acylated. (Note that C-acylation of ketones can be accomplished with BF_3; **0-110**.) Simple ketones can also be acylated by treatment of their silyl enol ethers with an acyl chloride in the presence of $ZnCl_2$ or $SbCl_3$.[1335] Simple esters RCH_2COOEt can be acylated at the α-carbon (at −78°C) if a strong base such as lithium N-isopropylcyclohexylamide is used to remove the proton.[1336] Nitroalkanes can be α-acylated with imidazolides (**98,** p. 350).[1337]

OS **II,** 266, 268, 594, 596; **III,** 390, 637; **IV,** 285, 415, 708; **V,** 384, 937; **61,** 5. See also OS **59,** 183.

[1328] Mészáros, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4951 (1967).

[1329] Girard, Couffignal, and Kagan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3959 (1981).

[1330] When phase transfer catalysts are used, O-acylation becomes the main reaction: Jones, Nokkeo, and Singh, *Synth. Commun.* **7,** 195 (1977).

[1331] Taylor, Hawks, and McKillop, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2421 (1968).

[1332] Shioiri and Hamada, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3631 (1978).

[1333] See House, Ref. 1124, pp. 762–765; House, Auerbach, Gall, and Peet, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 514 (1973).

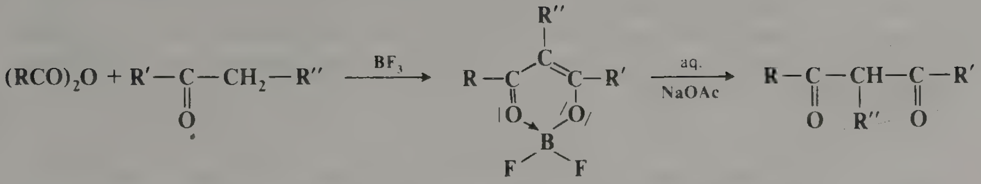
[1334] Seebach, Weller, Protschuk, Beck, and Hoekstra, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 716 (1981).

[1335] Tirpak and Rathke, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5099 (1982).

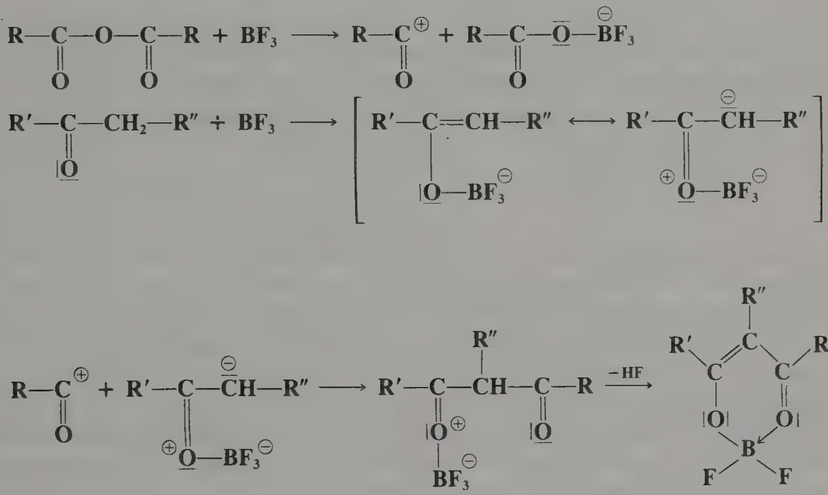
[1336] For example, see Rathke and Deitch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2953 (1971); Logue, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3455 (1974); Couffignal and Moreau, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **127** C65 (1977).

[1337] Baker and Putt, *Synthesis* 478 (1978).

0-110 Acylation of Ketones by Anhydrides
α-Acylalkyl-de-acyloxy-substitution



Ketones can be acylated by anhydrides with BF_3 as catalyst[1338] to give β-diketones. With unsymmetrical ketones, acylation occurs chiefly on the more highly substituted side. The actual product is a complex containing BF_2, which can be decomposed by aqueous sodium acetate to give the acylated ketone. Therefore 1 mole of boron trifluoride is required for each mole of ketone. The boron trifluoride plays a double role in the mechanism. It assists in ionization of the anhydride (an SN1 type of process) and converts the ketone into a boron derivative of the enolate:



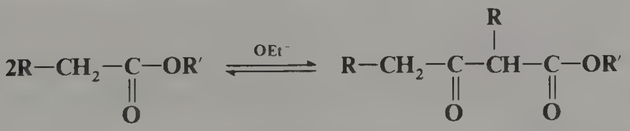
$$R-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-O-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-R + BF_3 \longrightarrow R-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}^{\oplus} + R-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-\bar{O}-\overset{\ominus}{B}F_3$$

$$R'-\underset{\overset{\|}{|O}}{C}-CH_2-R'' + BF_3 \longrightarrow \left[R'-\underset{\overset{|}{|O-BF_3^{\ominus}}}{C}=CH-R'' \longleftrightarrow R'-\underset{\overset{\|}{{}^{\oplus}O-BF_3^{\ominus}}}{C}-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H-R'' \right]$$

With respect to the ketone, this is an electrophilic substitution with a mechanism similar to that of the bromination of ketones (**2-4**).

OS **III,** 16; **51,** 90.

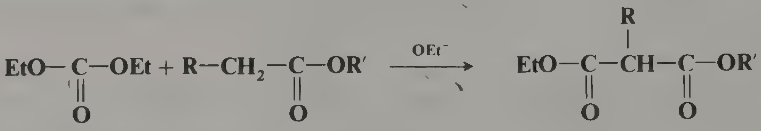
0-111 Acylation of Esters by Esters. The Claisen and Dieckmann Condensations
Alkoxycarbonylalkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution



$$2R-CH_2-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-OR' \xrightleftharpoons{OEt^-} R-CH_2-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}H}-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-OR'$$

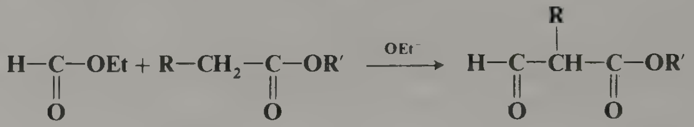
When esters containing an α-hydrogen are treated with a strong base such as sodium ethoxide, a condensation occurs to give a β-keto ester. This reaction is called the *Claisen condensation*. When it is carried out with a mixture of two different esters, each of which possesses an α-hydrogen, a mixture of all four products is generally obtained and the reaction is seldom useful synthetically. However, if only one of the esters has an α-hydrogen, then the mixed reaction is frequently satisfactory. Among esters lacking α-hydrogens (hence acting as the substrate ester) that are commonly used in this way are esters of aromatic acids, and ethyl carbonate and ethyl oxalate. Ethyl carbonate gives malonic esters.

[1338] For a review, see Hauser, Swamer, and Adams, *Org. React.* **8**, 59–196 (1954), pp. 98–106.



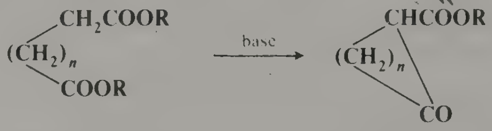
$$EtO{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OEt + R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' \xrightarrow{OEt^-} EtO{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR'$$

Ethyl formate serves to introduce the formyl group:



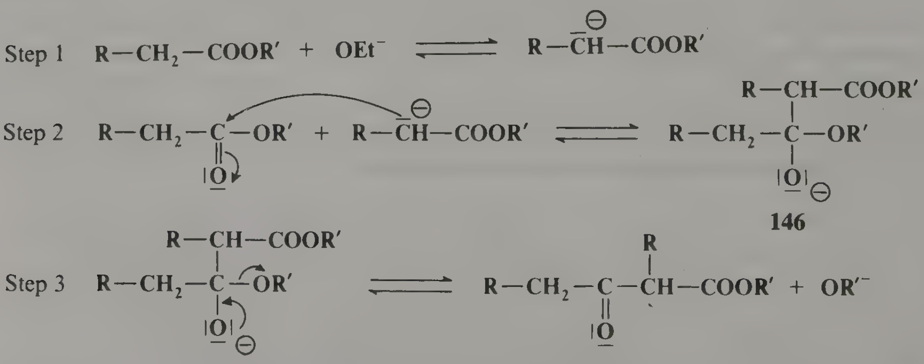
$$H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OEt + R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' \xrightarrow{OEt^-} H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR'$$

When the two ester groups involved in the condensation are in the same molecule, the product is a cyclic β-keto ester and the reaction is called the *Dieckmann condensation.*[1339]



The Dieckmann condensation is most successful for the formation of 5-, 6-, and 7-membered rings. Yields for rings of 9 to 12 members are very low or nonexistent; larger rings can be closed with high-dilution techniques. Reactions in which large rings are to be closed are generally assisted by high dilution, since one end of the molecule has a better chance of finding the other end than of finding another molecule. Dieckmann condensation of unsymmetrical substrates can be made regioselective (unidirectional) by the use of solid-phase supports.[1340]

The mechanism of the Claisen and Dieckmann reactions is the ordinary tetrahedral mechanism,[1341] with one molecule of ester being converted to a nucleophile by the base and the other serving as the substrate.



Step 1 $R{-}CH_2{-}COOR' + OEt^- \rightleftharpoons R{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}H{-}COOR'$

Step 2 $R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' + R{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}H{-}COOR' \rightleftharpoons R{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\overset{R-CH-COOR'}{|}}{\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}{-}OR'$

146

Step 3 $R{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\overset{R-CH-COOR'}{|}}{\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}{-}OR' \rightleftharpoons R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}H{-}COOR' + OR'^-$

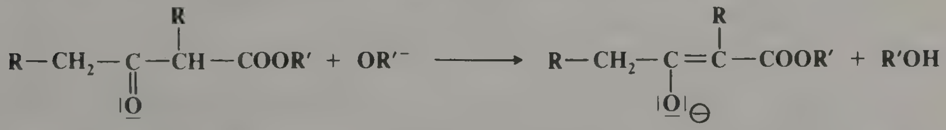
[1339] For a review, see Schaefer and Bloomfield, *Org. React.* **15,** 1–203 (1967).

[1340] Crowley and Rapoport, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3215 (1980). For another method, see Yamada, Ishii, Kimura, and Hosaka, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1353 (1981).

[1341] There is evidence that, at least in some cases, a free radical SET mechanism (see p. 821) is involved: Ashby and Park, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1667 (1983).

This reaction illustrates the striking difference in behavior between esters on the one hand and aldehydes and ketones on the other. When a carbanion such as an enolate ion is added to the carbonyl group of an aldehyde or ketone (**6-42**), the H or R is not lost, since these groups are much poorer leaving groups than OR. Instead the intermediate similar to **146** adds a proton at the oxygen to give a hydroxy compound.

In contrast to **0-96** ordinary esters react quite well, that is, two Z groups are not needed. A lower degree of acidity is satisfactory because it is not necessary to convert the attacking ester entirely to its ion. Step 1 is an equilibrium that lies well to the left. Nevertheless, the small amount of enolate ion formed is sufficient to attack the readily approachable ester substrate. All the steps are equilibria. The reaction proceeds because the product is converted to its conjugate base by the base present (that is, a β-keto ester is a stronger acid than an alcohol):

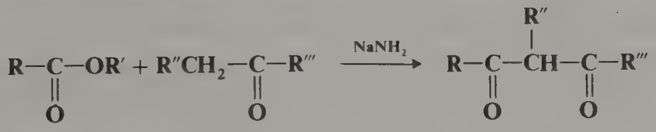


$$\mathrm{R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}H{-}COOR' + OR'^{-} \longrightarrow R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}{=}\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}{-}COOR' + R'OH}$$

The use of a stronger base, such as sodium amide, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride,[1342] often increases the yield. For some esters stronger bases *must* be used, since sodium ethoxide is ineffective. Among these are esters of the type $R_2CHCOOEt$, the products of which ($R_2CHCOCR_2COOEt$) lack an acidic hydrogen, so that they cannot be converted to enolate ions by sodium ethoxide.[1343]

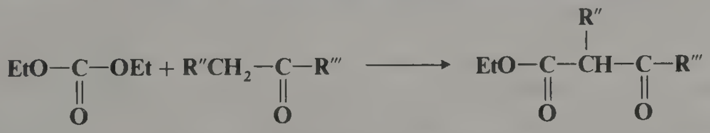
OS **I,** 235; **II,** 116, 194, 272, 288; **III,** 231, 300, 379, 510; **IV,** 141; **V,** 288, 687, 989.

0-112 Acylation of Ketones and Nitriles by Esters
α-Acylalkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution



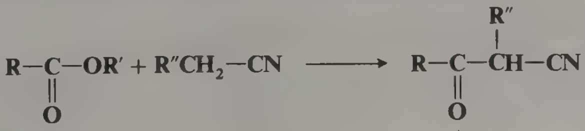
$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' + R''CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R''' \xrightarrow{NaNH_2} R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{R''}{|}}{C}H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'''}$$

Esters can be treated with ketones to give β-diketones in a reaction that is essentially the same as **0-111**. The reaction is so similar that it is sometimes also called the Claisen condensation, though this usage is unfortunate. A fairly strong base, such as sodium amide or sodium hydride, is required. Esters of formic acid R = H give β-keto aldehydes. Ethyl carbonate gives β-keto esters.



$$\mathrm{EtO{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OEt + R''CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R''' \longrightarrow EtO{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{R''}{|}}{C}H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'''}$$

In the case of unsymmetrical ketones, the attack usually comes from the less highly substituted side, so that CH_3 is more reactive than RCH_2, and the R_2CH group rarely attacks. This is in sharp contrast to **0-110.** The two reactions are thus complementary. As in the case of **0-111,** this reaction has been used to effect cyclization, especially to prepare 5- and 6-membered rings. Nitriles are frequently used instead of ketones, the products being β-keto nitriles.



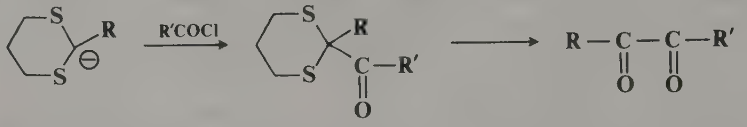
$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' + R''CH_2{-}CN \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{R''}{|}}{C}H{-}CN}$$

[1342] Brown, *Synthesis* 326 (1975).

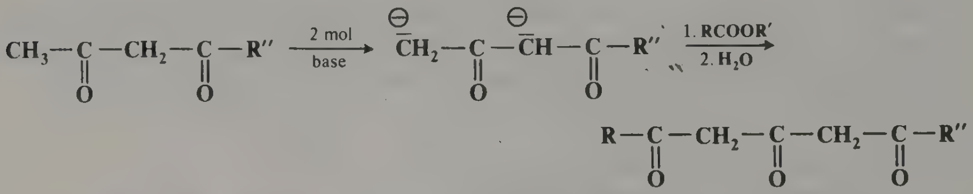
[1343] For a discussion, see Garst, *J. Chem. Educ.* **56,** 721 (1979).

Similarly, α-cyano esters can be obtained on treatment of ethyl carbonate with nitriles.[1344]

Other carbanionic groups, such as acetylide ions, and ions derived from α-methylpyridines have also been used as nucleophiles. A particularly useful nucleophile is the methylsulfinyl carbanion $CH_3SOCH_2^-$,[1345] the conjugate base of dimethyl sulfoxide, since the β-keto sulfoxide produced can easily be reduced to a methyl ketone (p. 413). The methylsulfonyl carbanion $CH_3SO_2CH_2^-$, the conjugate base of dimethyl sulfone, behaves similarly,[1346] and the product can be similarly reduced. Certain esters, acyl halides, and dimethylformamide acylate 1,3-dithianes[1347] (see **0-99**) to give, after oxidative hydrolysis with N-bromo- or N-chlorosuccinimide, α-keto aldehydes or α-diketones,[1348] e.g.,



As in **0-96,** a ketone attacks with its second most acidic position if 2 moles of base are used. Thus, β-diketones have been converted to 1,3,5-triketones.[1349]

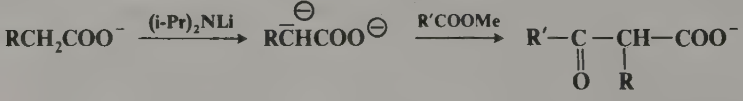


$$CH_3-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'' \xrightarrow[\text{base}]{\text{2 mol}} \overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'' \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O]{\text{1. } RCOOR'} R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R''$$

Side reactions are condensation of the ketone with itself (**6-40**), of the ester with itself (**0-111**), and of the ketone with the ester but with the ester supplying the α-position (**6-41**). The mechanism is the same as in **0-111.**[1350]

OS **I,** 238; **II,** 126, 200, 287, 487, 531; **III,** 17, 251, 291, 387, 829; **IV,** 174, 210, 461, 536; **V,** 187, 198, 439, 567, 718, 747; **58,** 83.

0-113 Acylation of Carboxylic Acid Salts
α-Carboxyalkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution



$$RCH_2COO^- \xrightarrow{(i\text{-}Pr)_2NLi} R\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}HCOO^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{R'COOMe} R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{R}{|}}{CH}-COO^-$$

We have previously seen (**0-98**) that dianions of carboxylic acids can be alkylated in the α-position. These ions can also be acylated on treatment with an ester[1351] to give salts of β-keto acids. As in **0-98,** the carboxylic acid may be of the form RCH_2COOH or $RR''CHCOOH$. Since β-keto acids are so easily converted to ketones (**2-39**), this is also a method for the preparation of ketones $R'COCH_2R$ and $R'COCHRR''$, where R′ can be primary, secondary, or tertiary alkyl, or aryl. If the ester is ethyl formate, an α-formyl carboxylate salt (R′ = H) is formed, which on acidification spontaneously decarboxylates into an aldehyde.[1352] This is a method, therefore, for achieving the conversion $RCH_2COOH \rightarrow RCH_2CHO$, and as such is an alternative to the reduction methods discussed in **0-84**. When the carboxylic acid is of the form RR″CHCOOH, better yields are obtained by acylating with acyl halides rather than esters.[1353]

[1344] For example, see Albarella, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2009 (1977).

[1345] Becker, Mikol, and Russell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3410 (1963); Becker and Russell, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1896 (1963); Corey and Chaykovsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1639 (1964); Russell, Sabourin, and Hamprecht, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2339 (1969). For a review, see Durst, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 285–388 (1969), pp. 296–301.

[1346] Becker and Russell, Ref. 1345; Schank, Hasenfratz, and Weber, *Chem. Ber.* **106,** 1107 (1973); Ref. 1133.

[1347] Corey and Seebach, Ref. 1195.

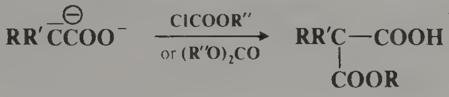
[1348] Ref. 400. See also Herrmann, Richman, Wepplo, and Schlessinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4707 (1973); Ogura, Furukawa, and Tsuchihashi, *Chem. Lett.* 659 (1974).

[1349] Miles, Harris, and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1007 (1965).

[1350] Hill, Burkus, and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 602 (1959).

[1351] Kuo, Yahner, and Ainsworth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6321 (1971); Angelo, *C. R. Seances Acad. Sci., Ser. C* **276** 293 (1973).

When the substrate is an alkyl chloroformate or a dialkyl carbonate, mono esters of malonic acids are obtained.[1354]



$$RR'\overset{\ominus}{C}COO^- \xrightarrow[\text{or } (R''O)_2CO]{ClCOOR''} RR'\underset{\displaystyle COOR}{\underset{|}{C}}-COOH$$

0-114 Preparation of Acyl Cyanides
Cyano-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RCOX + CuCN \longrightarrow RCOCN}$$

Acyl cyanides[1355] can be prepared by treatment of acyl halides with copper cyanide. The mechanism is not known and might be free-radical or nucleophilic substitution. The reaction has also been accomplished with thallium(I) cyanide,[1356] with Me_3SiCN and an $SnCl_4$ catalyst,[1357] and with Bu_3SnCN,[1358] but these reagents are successful only when R = aryl or tertiary alkyl. KCN has also been used, along with ultrasound,[1359] as has NaCN with phase transfer catalysts.[1360]

OS **III,** 119.

0-115 Preparation of Diazo Ketones
Diazomethyl-de-halogenation

$$\mathbf{RCOX + CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow RCOCHN_2}$$

The reaction between acyl halides and diazomethane is of wide scope and is the best way to prepare diazo ketones.[1361] Diazomethane must be present in excess or the HX produced will react with the diazo ketone (**0-72**). This reaction is the first step of the Arndt–Eistert synthesis (**8-9**). Diazo ketones can also be prepared directly from a carboxylic acid and diazomethane or diazoethane in the presence of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide.[1362]

OS **III,** 119; **50,** 77; **53,** 35.

---

[352] Pfeffer and Silbert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 699 (1970); Koch and Kop, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 603 (1974).

[1353] Krapcho, Kashdan, Jahngen, and Lovey, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1189 (1977); Lion and Dubois, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 44 (1980).

[1354] Krapcho, Jahngen, and Kashdan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2721 (1974).

[1355] For a review of acyl cyanides, see Hünig and Schaller, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 36–49 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 1–15].

[1356] Taylor, Andrade, John, and McKillop, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2280 (1978).

[1357] Olah, Arvanaghi, and Prakash, *Synthesis* 636 (1983).

[1358] Tanaka, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2959 (1980). See also Tanaka and Koyanagi, *Synthesis* 973 (1981).

[1359] Ando, Kawate, Yamawaki, and Hanafusa, *Synthesis* 637 (1983).

[1360] Koenig and Weber, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2275 (1974).

[1361] For reviews, see Fridman, Ismagilova, Zalesov, and Novikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 371–389 (1972); Ried and Mengler, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **5,** 1–88 (1965).

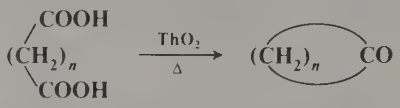
[1362] Hodson, Holt, and Wall, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 971 (1970).

0-116 Ketonic Decarboxylation[1363]

$$2\text{RCOOH} \xrightarrow[\text{ThO}_2]{400\text{–}500^\circ\text{C}} \text{RCOR} + \text{CO}_2$$

Carboxylic acids can be converted to symmetrical ketones by pyrolysis in the presence of thorium oxide. An alternative method involves heating of the ferrous salt of the acid.[1364] In a mixed reaction, formic acid and another acid heated over thorium oxide give aldehydes. Mixed alkyl aryl ketones have been prepared by heating mixtures of ferrous salts.[1365] When the R group is large, the methyl ester rather than the acid can be decarbmethoxylated over thorium oxide to give the symmetrical ketone.

The reaction has been performed on dicarboxylic acids, whereupon cyclic ketones are obtained:



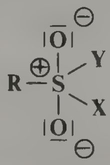
This process, called *Ruzicka cyclization,* is good for the preparation of rings of 6 and 7 members and, with lower yields, of C_8 and C_{10} to C_{30} cyclic ketones.[1366] In another method, calcium and barium salts of dicarboxylic acids can be heated to give cyclic ketones of 5-, 6-, and 7-members. Though not general, the barium or calcium salt method is also good for a few monocarboxylic acids, for example, acetic and phenylacetic.[1367]

Not much work has been done on the mechanism of this reaction. However, a free-radical mechanism has been suggested on the basis of a thorough study of all the side products.[1368]

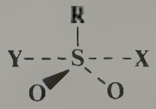
OS **I,** 192; **II,** 389; **IV,** 854; **V,** 589. Also see OS **IV,** 555, 560.

Nucleophilic Substitution at a Sulfonyl Sulfur Atom[1369]

Nucleophilic substitution at RSO_2X is similar to attack at RCOX. Many of the reactions are essentially the same, though sulfonyl halides are not as active as halides of carboxylic acids. Less work has been done on these reactions than on those at an acyl carbon. The mechanisms are not identical, because a "tetrahedral" intermediate in this case (**147**) would have five groups on the central atom.[1370] Though this is possible (since sulfur can accommodate up to 12 electrons in its valence shell) it seems more likely that these mechanisms more closely resemble the S_N2 mechanism,



147



148

[1363] For a review, see Kwart and King, in Patai, Ref. 180, pp. 362–370.

[1364] Davis and Schultz, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 854 (1962).

[1365] Granito and Schultz, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 879 (1963).

[1366] See, for example, Ruzicka, Stoll, and Schinz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **9,** 249 (1926); **11,** 1174 (1928); Ruzicka, Brugger, Seidel, and Schinz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **11,** 496 (1928).

[1367] Houben-Weyl, "Methoden der organischen Chemie," vol. 7/2a, p. 625, Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart, 1973.

[1368] Hites and Biemann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5772 (1972). See also Bouchoule, Blanchard, and Thomassin, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1773 (1973).

[1369] For a review of mechanisms of nucleophilic substitutions at di-, tri-, and tetracoordinated sulfur atoms, see Ciuffarin and Fava, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 81–109 (1968).

[1370] For a review, see Vizgert, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **32,** 1–20 (1963).

with a trigonal pyramidal transition state (**148**). There are two major experimental results leading to this conclusion.

1. The stereospecificity of this reaction is more difficult to determine than that of nucleophilic substitution at a saturated carbon, where chiral compounds are relatively easy to prepare, but it may be recalled (p. 86) that optical activity is possible in a compound of the form RSO_2X if one oxygen is ^{16}O and the other ^{18}O. When a sulfonate ester possessing this type of chirality was converted to a sulfone with a Grignard reagent (**0-122**), inversion of configuration was found.[1371] This is not incompatible with an intermediate such as **147** but it is also in good accord with an SN2-like mechanism with backside attack.

2. More direct evidence against **147** (though still not conclusive) was found in an experiment involving acid and basic hydrolysis of aryl arenesulfonates, where it has been shown by the use of ^{18}O that an intermediate like **147** is not reversibly formed, since ester recovered when the reaction was stopped before completion contained no ^{18}O when the hydrolysis was carried out in the presence of labeled water.[1372]

Other evidence favoring the SN2-like mechanism comes from kinetics and substituent effects.[1373] However, evidence for the mechanism involving **147** is that the rates did not change much with changes in the leaving group[1374] and that ρ values were large, indicating that a negative charge builds up in the transition state.[1375]

In certain cases in which the substrate carries an α-hydrogen, there is strong evidence[1376] that at least some of the reaction takes place by an elimination--addition mechanism (E1cB, similar to the one shown on p. 338), going through a *sulfene* intermediate,[1377] e.g., the reaction between methanesulfonyl chloride and aniline.

$$CH_3{-}SO_2Cl \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \underset{\text{A sulfene}}{CH_2{=}SO_2} \xrightarrow{PhNH_2} CH_3{-}SO_2{-}NHPh$$

In the special case of nucleophilic substitution at a sulfonic ester RSO_2OR', where R′ is alkyl, R′—O cleavage is much more likely than S—O cleavage because the OSO_2R group is such a good leaving group (p. 312). Many of these reactions have been considered previously (e.g., **0-4, 0-16,** etc.), because they are nucleophilic substitutions at an alkyl carbon atom and not at a sulfur atom. However, when R′ is aryl, then the S—O bond is much more likely to cleave because of the very low tendency aryl substrates have for nucleophilic substitution.[1378]

The order of nucleophilicity toward a sulfonyl sulfur has been reported as $OH^- > RNH_2 >$

[1371] Sabol and Andersen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3603 (1969). See also Williams, Nudelman, Booms, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4684 (1972); Jones and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2183 (1974).

[1372] Christman and Oae, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1251 (1959); Oae, Fukumoto, and Kiritani, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **36,** 346 (1963); Kaiser and Zaborsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4626 (1968).

[1373] See, for example, Robertson and Rossall, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 1441 (1971); Rogne, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1855 (1971), *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 489 (1972); Gnedin, Ivanov, and Spryskov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12,** 1894 (1976); Banjoko and Okwuiwe, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4966 (1980); Thea and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2,* 72 (1981); Ballistreri, Cantone, Maccarone, Tomaselli, and Tripolone, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 438 (1981); Lee and Koo, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 1803 (1983); Suttle and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1563 (1983).

[1374] Ciuffarin, Senatore, and Isola, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 468 (1972).

[1375] Ciuffarin and Senatore, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1635 (1974).

[1376] For a review, see Opitz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 107–123 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 161–177]. See also King and Lee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6524 (1969); Bezrodnyi, Saiganov, and Skrypnik, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 1905 (1981); Skrypnik and Bezrodnyi, *Doklad. Chem.* **266,** 341 (1982); Farng and Kice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1137 (1981); Thea, Guanti, Hopkins, and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1128 (1982).

[1377] For reviews of sulfenes, see King, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 10–17 (1975); Nagai and Tokura, *Int. J. Sulfur Chem., Part B* 207–216 (1972); Truce and Liu, *Mech. React. Sulfur Compd.* **4,** 145–154 (1969); Opitz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 107–123 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 161–177]; Wallace, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **20,** 67–74 (1966).

[1378] See, for example, Oae, Fukumoto, and Kiritani, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **36,** 346 (1963); Tagaki, Kurusu, and Oae, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 2894 (1969).

$N_3^- > F^- > AcO^- > Cl^- > H_2O > I^-$.[1379] This order is similar to that at a carbonyl carbon (p. 310). Both of these substrates can be regarded as relatively hard acids, compared to a saturated carbon which is considerably softer and which has a different order of nucleophilicity (p. 309).

0-117 Attack by OH. Hydrolysis of Sulfonic Acid Derivatives

***S*-Hydroxy-de-chlorination,** etc.

$$RSO_2Cl \xrightarrow{H_2O} RSO_2OH$$

$$RSO_2OR' \xrightarrow[H^+]{H_2O} RSO_2OH$$

$$RSO_2NR'_2 \xrightarrow[H^+]{H_2O} RSO_2OH$$

Sulfonyl chlorides as well as esters and amides of sulfonic acids can be hydrolyzed to the corresponding acids. Sulfonyl chlorides can be hydrolyzed with water or with an alcohol in the absence of acid or base. Basic catalysis is also used, though of course the salt is the product obtained. Esters are readily hydrolyzed, many with water or dilute alkali. This is the same reaction as **0-4,** and usually involves R′—O cleavage, except when R′ is aryl. However, in some cases retention of configuration has been shown at alkyl R′, indicating S—O cleavage in these cases.[1380] Sulfonamides are generally not hydrolyzed by alkaline treatment, not even with hot concentrated alkali, but acids hydrolyze them, though less readily than they do sulfonyl halides or sulfonic esters. Of course, ammonia or the amine appears as the salt. However, sulfonamides can be hydrolyzed with base if the solvent is HMPT.[1381] Sulfonamides of the form RSO_2NH_2 can also be hydrolyzed with HNO_2 in a reaction similar to **0-5.**

OS **I,** 14; **II,** 471; **III,** 262; **IV,** 34; **V,** 406; **57,** 88; **58,** 86. Also see OS **V,** 673; **54,** 33.

0-118 Attack by OR. Formation of Sulfonic Esters

***S*-Alkoxy-de-chlorination,** etc.

$$RSO_2Cl + R'OH \xrightarrow{\text{base}} RSO_2OR'$$

$$RSO_2NR''_2 + R'OH \xrightarrow{\text{base}} RSO_2OR' + NHR''_2$$

Sulfonic esters are most frequently prepared by treatment of the corresponding halides with alcohols in the presence of a base. The method is much used for the conversion of alcohols to tosylates,[1382] brosylates, and similar sulfonic esters (p. 312). Both R and R′ may be alkyl or aryl. The base is often pyridine, which functions as a nucleophilic catalyst,[1383] as in the similar alcoholysis of carboxylic acyl halides (**0-22**). Primary alcohols react the most rapidly, and it is often possible to sulfonate selectively a primary OH group in a molecule that also contains secondary or tertiary OH groups. The reaction with sulfonamides has been much less frequently used and is limited to N,N-disubstituted sulfonamides; that is, R″ may not be hydrogen. However, within these limits it is a useful reaction. The nucleophile in this case is actually $R'O^-$. However, R″ may be hydrogen (as well as alkyl) if the nucleophile is a phenol, so that the product is RSO_2OAr. Acidic catalysts are used in this case.[1384]

OS **I,** 145; **III,** 366; **IV,** 753; **55,** 57, 114; **57,** 53; **58,** 86. Also see OS **IV,** 529; **54,** 79, 84.

[1379] Kice, Kasperek, and Patterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5516 (1969); Rogne, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1056 (1970); Ref. 281.

[1380] Chang, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 305 (1964).

[1381] Cuvigny and Larchevêque, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **64,** 315 (1974).

[1382] For a procedure, see Fieser and Fieser, Ref. 411, vol. 1, p. 1180 (1967).

[1383] Rogne, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1334 (1971). See also Litvinenko, Shatskaya, and Savelova, *Doklad. Chem.* **265,** 199 (1982).

[1384] Klamann and Fabienke, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 252 (1960).

0-119 Attack by Nitrogen. Formation of Sulfonamides
S-Amino-de-chlorination

$$RSO_2Cl + NH_3 \longrightarrow RSO_2NH_2$$

The treatment of sulfonyl chlorides with ammonia or amines is the usual way of preparing sulfonamides. Primary amines give N-alkyl sulfonamides, and secondary amines give N,N-dialkyl sulfonamides. The reaction is the basis of the *Hinsberg test* for distinguishing between primary, secondary, and tertiary amines. N-Alkyl sulfonamides, having an acidic hydrogen, are soluble in alkali, while N,N-dialkyl sulfonamides are not. Since tertiary amines are usually recovered unchanged, primary, secondary, and tertiary amines can be told apart. However, the test is limited for at least two reasons.[1385] (1) Many N-alkyl sulfonamides in which the alkyl group has six or more carbons are insoluble in alkali, despite their acidic hydrogen,[1386] so that a primary amine may appear to be a secondary amine. (2) If the reaction conditions are not carefully controlled, tertiary amines may not be recovered unchanged.[1385] In fact, the reason the test often does succeed with aliphatic tertiary amines is not that they do not react with RSO_2Cl, but that (when the reagents are mixed in a 1:1 ratio) the reaction gives quaternary sulfonamide salts $RSO_2NR_3^+\ X^-$ which are hydrolyzed to RSO_2O^- under the usual aqueous basic conditions. When other proportions are used, or when aryl tertiary amines ($ArNR_2$) are involved, other reactions may take place and, if so, the test is negated.

A primary or a secondary amine can be protected by reaction with phenacylsulfonyl chloride ($PhCOCH_2SO_2Cl$) to give a sulfonamide $RNHSO_2CH_2COPh$ or $R_2NSO_2CH_2COPh$.[1387] The protecting group can be removed when desired with zinc and acetic acid. Sulfonyl chlorides react with azide ion to give sulfonyl azides RSO_2N_3.[1388]

OS **IV;** 34, 943; **V,** 39, 179, 1055; **52,** 11; **58,** 86. See also OS **56,** 40.

0-120 Attack by Halogen. Formation of Sulfonyl Halides
S-Halo-de-hydroxylation

$$RSO_2OH + PCl_5 \longrightarrow RSO_2Cl$$

This reaction, parallel with **0-75,** is the standard method for the preparation of sulfonyl halides. Also used are PCl_3 and $SOCl_2$, and sulfonic acid salts can also serve as substrates. Sulfonyl bromides and iodides have been prepared from sulfonyl hydrazides ($ArSO_2NHNH_2$, themselves prepared by **0-119**) by treatment with bromine or iodine.[1389] Sulfonyl fluorides generally are prepared from the chlorides, by halogen exchange.[1390]

OS **I,** 84; **IV,** 571, 693, 846, 937; **V,** 196.

0-121 Attack by Hydrogen. Reduction of Sulfonyl Chlorides
S-Hydro-de-chlorination or **S-Dechlorination**

$$2RSO_2Cl + Zn \longrightarrow (RSO_2)_2Zn \xrightarrow{H^+} 2RSO_2H$$

Sulfinic acids can be prepared by reduction of sulfonyl chlorides. Though mostly done on aromatic sulfonyl chlorides, the reaction has also been applied to alkyl compounds. Besides zinc, sodium sulfite, hydrazine, sodium sulfide, and other reducing agents have been used. For reduction of sulfonyl chlorides to mercaptans, see **9-54**.

[1385] For directions for performing and interpreting the Hinsberg test, see Gambill, Roberts, and Shechter, *J. Chem. Educ.* **49,** 287 (1972).

[1386] Fanta and Wang, *J. Chem. Educ.* **41,** 280 (1964).

[1387] Hendrickson and Bergeron, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 345 (1970).

[1388] For an example, see Regitz, Hocker, and Liedhegener, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 179.

[1389] Poshkus, Herweh, and Magnotta, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2766 (1963); Litvinenko, Dadali, Savelova, and Krichevtsova, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **34,** 3780 (1964).

[1390] See Bianchi and Cate, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2031 (1977), and references cited therein.

OS **I,** 7, 492; **IV**, 674.

0-122 Attack by Carbon. Preparation of Sulfones
***S*-Aryl-de-chlorination**

$$\mathrm{ArSO_2Cl} + \mathrm{Ar'MgX} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ArSO_2Ar'}$$

Grignard reagents convert aromatic sulfonyl chlorides or aromatic sulfonates to sulfones. Aromatic sulfonates have also been converted to sulfones with organolithium compounds.[1391]

[1391] Baarschers, *Can. J. Chem.* **54,** 3056 (1976).

11

AROMATIC ELECTROPHILIC SUBSTITUTION

Most substitutions at an aliphatic carbon are nucleophilic. In aromatic systems the situation is reversed, because the high electron density at the aromatic ring attracts positive species and not negative ones. In electrophilic substitutions the attacking species is a positive ion or the positive end of a dipole or induced dipole. The leaving group (the electrofuge) must necessarily depart without its electron pair. In nucleophilic substitutions, the chief leaving groups are those best able to carry the unshared pair: Br^-, H_2O, OTs^-, etc., that is, the weakest bases. In electrophilic substitutions the most important leaving groups are those that can best exist without the pair of electrons necessary to fill the outer shell, that is, the weakest Lewis acids. The most common leaving group in electrophilic aromatic substitutions is the proton.

MECHANISMS

Electrophilic aromatic substitutions are unlike nucleophilic substitutions in that the large majority proceed by just one mechanism with respect to the substrate.[1] In this mechanism, which we call the *arenium ion mechanism*, the electrophile attacks in the first step, giving rise to a positively charged intermediate (the arenium ion), and the leaving group departs in the second step, so that there is a resemblance to the tetrahedral mechanism of Chapter 10, but with the charges reversed. Another mechanism, much less common, consists of the opposite behavior: the leaving group departs *before* the electrophile arrives. This mechanism, the SE1 mechanism, corresponds to the SN1 mechanism of nucleophilic substitution. Simultaneous attack and departure mechanisms (corresponding to SN2) are not found at all. An addition–elimination mechanism has been postulated in one case (see reaction **1-6**).

The Arenium Ion Mechanism[2]

In the arenium ion mechanism the attacking species may be produced in various ways, but what happens to the aromatic ring is basically the same in all cases. For this reason most attention in the study of this mechanism centers around the identity of the attacking entity and how it is produced.[3]

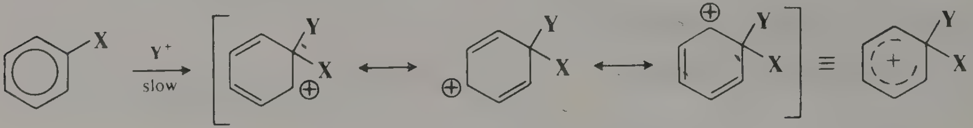
The electrophile may be a positive ion or a dipole. If it is a positive ion, it attacks the ring, removing a pair of electrons from the sextet to give a carbocation, which is a resonance hybrid, as shown in **1**, and is frequently represented as in **2**. Ions of this type are called[4] *Wheland*

---

[1] For monographs, see Norman and Taylor, "Electrophilic Substitution in Benzenoid Compounds," American Elsevier, New York, 1965; de la Mare and Ridd, "Aromatic Substitution—Nitration and Halogenation," Academic Press, New York, 1959; For a review, see Taylor, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 13, pp. 1–406, American Elsevier, New York, 1972.

[2] This mechanism is sometimes called the SE2 mechanism because it is bimolecular, but in this book we reserve that name for aliphatic substrates (see Chapter 12).

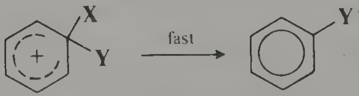
[3] For a review of the mechanism of the substitution process itself, see Berliner, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 253–321 (1964).



1 **2**

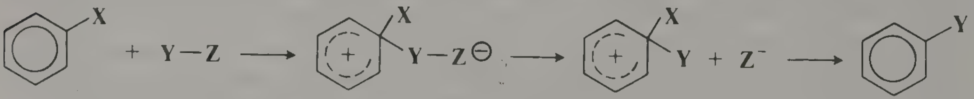
intermediates, *σ complexes*, *or arenium ions*.[5] In the case of benzenoid systems they are cyclohexadienyl cations. It may easily be seen that the great stability associated with an aromatic sextet is no longer present in **1**, although the ion is stabilized by resonance of its own. The arenium ion is generally a highly reactive intermediate and must stabilize itself by a further reaction, although it has been isolated (see p. 450).

Carbocations can stabilize themselves in various ways (see p. 150), but for this type of ion the most likely way[6] is by loss of either X^+ or Y^+. The aromatic sextet will then be restored, and in fact this is the second step of the mechanism:



The second step is nearly always faster than the first, so that the first is rate-determining and the reaction is second order (unless the formation of the attacking species is slower still, in which case the aromatic compound does not take part in the rate expression at all). If Y^+ is lost, there is no net reaction, but if X^+ is lost, an aromatic substitution has taken place. If X^+ is a proton, then a base is necessary to help remove it.

If the attacking species is not an ion but a dipole, then the product must have a negative charge unless part of the dipole, with its pair of electrons, is broken off somewhere in the process, e.g.,



The attacking entity in each case and how it is formed are discussed for each reaction in the reactions section of this chapter.

The evidence for the arenium ion mechanism is mainly of two kinds:

1. *Isotope effects*.[7] If the hydrogen ion departed before the arrival of the electrophile (SE1 mechanism) or if the arrival and departure were simultaneous, then there should be a substantial isotope effect (i.e., deuterated substrates should undergo substitution more slowly than nondeuterated compounds) because, in each case, the C—H bond is broken in the rate-determining step. However, in the arenium ion mechanism, the C—H bond is not broken in the rate-determining step, and so no isotope effect should be found. Many such studies have been carried out and, in most cases, especially in the case of nitrations, there is no isotope effect.[8] This result is incompatible with either the SE1 or the simultaneous mechanism.

---

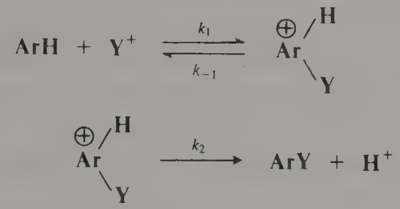
[4] Just what to call these ions has been a matter for debate. The term σ complex is a holdover from the time when much less was known about the structure of carbocations and it was thought they might be complexes of the type discussed in Chapter 3. Other names have also been used. We will call them arenium ions, following the suggestion of Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 808 (1972).

[5] For reviews of arenium ions formed by addition of a proton to an aromatic ring, see Brouwer, Mackor, and MacLean, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 2, pp. 837–897, Interscience, New York, 1970; Perkampus and Baumgarten, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3**, 776–783 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76**, 965–972]; Perkampus, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4**, 195–304 (1966).

[6] For a discussion of cases in which **1** stabilizes itself in other ways, see de la Mare, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7**, 361–368 (1974).

[7] For reviews of hydrogen isotope effects in aromatic substitutions, see Zollinger, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2**, 163–200 (1964); Ref. 3, pp. 281–294.

However, in many instances, isotope effects have been found. Since the values are generally much lower than expected for either the SE1 or the simultaneous mechanisms (e.g., 1 to 3 for k_H/k_D instead of 6 to 7), we must look elsewhere for the explanation. For the case where hydrogen is the leaving group, the arenium ion mechanism may be summarized:

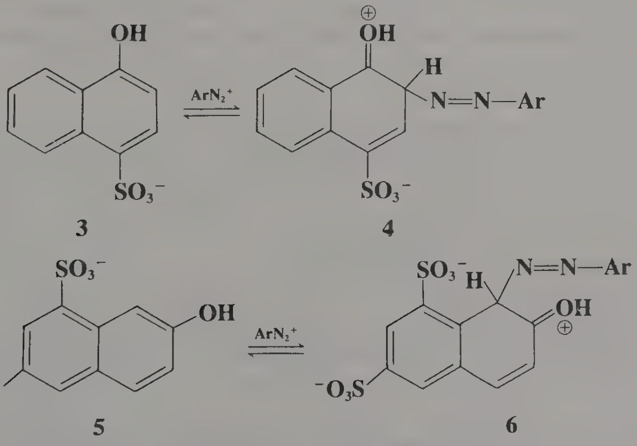


Step 1 $$ArH + Y^+ \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} \overset{\oplus}{Ar}\begin{smallmatrix}H\\Y\end{smallmatrix}$$

Step 2 $$\overset{\oplus}{Ar}\begin{smallmatrix}H\\Y\end{smallmatrix} \xrightarrow{k_2} ArY + H^+$$

Isotope effects can arise from this mechanism in at least two ways.[9] If the second step has a rate comparable to or less than the first ($k_2[ArHY^+] \overset{\approx}{<} k_1[ArH][Y^+]$), then there will obviously be an isotope effect. However, it is probable that most isotope effects in aromatic substitutions are not caused by this circumstance and that the first step is generally much slower than the second. It is likely that most isotope effects arise from the reversibility of step 1 by a *partitioning effect*. The rate at which $ArHY^+$ reverts to ArH should be essentially the same as that at which $ArDY^+$ (or $ArTY^+$) reverts to ArD (or ArT), since the Ar—H bond is not cleaving. However, $ArHY^+$ should go to ArY faster than either $ArDY^+$ or $ArTY^+$, since the Ar—H bond is broken in this step. If $k_2 \gg k_{-1}$, this does not matter; since a large majority of the intermediates go to product, the rate is determined only by the slow step ($k_1[ArH][Y^+]$) and no isotope effect is predicted. However, if k_2 k_{-1}, then reversion to starting materials is important. If k_2 for $ArDY^+$ (or $ArTY^+$) is less than k_2 for $ArHY^+$, but k_{-1} is the same, then a larger proportion of $ArDY^+$ reverts to starting compounds. That is, k_2/k_{-1} (the *partition factor*) for $ArDY^+$ is less than that for $ArHY^+$. Consequently, the reaction is slower for ArD than for ArH and an isotope effect is observed.

One circumstance that could affect the k_2/k_{-1} ratio is steric hindrance. Thus, diazonium coupling of **3** gave no isotope effect, while coupling of **5** gave a k_H/k_D ratio of 6.55.[10] For steric reasons it



3 **4**

5 **6**

---

[8] The pioneering studies were by Melander: Melander, *Ark. Kemi* **2,** 211 (1950); Berglund-Larsson and Melander, *Ark. Kemi* **6,** 219 (1953). Zollinger, in Ref. 7, presents a table of isotope-effect results.

[9] For a discussion, see Hammett, "Physical Organic Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 172–182, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1970.

[10] Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **38,** 1597, 1617, 1623 (1955).

is much more difficult for **6** to lose a proton (it is harder for a base to approach) than it is for **4,** so k_2 is greater for the latter. Since no base is necessary to remove ArN_2^+, k_{-1} does not depend on steric factors[11] and is about the same for each. Thus the partition factor k_2/k_{-1} is sufficiently different for **4** and **6** that **5** exhibits a large isotope effect and **3** exhibits none.[12] Base catalysis can also affect the partition factor, since an increase in base concentration increases the rate at which the intermediate goes to product without affecting the rate at which it reverts to starting materials. In some cases, isotope effects can be diminished or eliminated by a sufficiently high concentration of base.

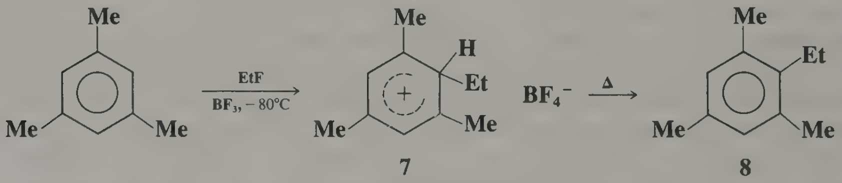
Small isotope effects can also arise in other ways (e.g., in the step $ArXH^+ \longrightarrow ArH$ there may be a *secondary* isotope effect), and not all the results are fully understood.[13]

Evidence for the arenium ion mechanism has also been obtained from another kind of isotope-effect experiment, involving substitutions of the type

$$\mathbf{ArMR_3 + H_3O^+ \longrightarrow ArH + R_3MOH_2^+}$$

where M is Si, Ge, Sn, or Pb, and R is methyl or ethyl. In these reactions the proton is the electrophile. If the arenium ion mechanism is operating, then the use of D_3O^+ should give rise to an isotope effect, since the D—O bond would be broken in the rate-determining step. Isotope effects of 1.55 to 3.05 were obtained,[14] in accord with the arenium ion mechanism.

2. *Isolation of arenium ion intermediates.* Very strong evidence for the arenium ion mechanism comes from the isolation of arenium ions in a number of instances.[15] For example, **7** was isolated as a solid with melting point −15°C from treatment of mesitylene with ethyl fluoride and the catalyst BF_3 at −80°C. When **7** was heated, the normal substitution product **8** was obtained.[16]



Even the simplest such ion, the benzenonium ion (**9**) has been prepared in HF-SbF_5-SO_2ClF-SO_2F_2 at −134°C, where it could be studied spectrally.[17] ^{13}C nmr spectra of the benzenonium ion[18] and the pentamethylbenzenonium ion[19] give graphic evidence for the charge distribution shown in **1.**

---

[11] Snyckers and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 1294 (1970).

[12] For some other examples of isotope effects caused by steric factors, see Helgstrand, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **19,** 1583 (1965); Nilsson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **21,** 2423 (1967); Baciocchi, Illuminati, Sleiter, and Stegel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 125 (1967); Myhre, Beug, and James, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2105 (1968); Dubois and Uzan, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3534 (1968); Márton, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **23,** 3321, 3329 (1969).

[13] For secondary isotope effects of a different kind, see Szele, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 2733 (1981).

[14] Bott, Eaborn, and Greasley, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4803 (1964).

[15] For a review, see Koptyug, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **23,** 1031–1045 (1974). For a review of polyfluorinated arenium ions, see Shteingarts, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 735–749 (1981). For a review of the protonation of benzene and simple alkylbenzenes, see Fărcaşiu, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 46–51 (1982).

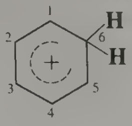
[16] Olah and Kuhn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6541 (1958). For some other examples, see Ershov and Volod'kin, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 680 (1962); Farrell, Newton, and White, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 637 (1967); Kamshii and Koptyug, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **23,** 232 (1974); Olah, Spear, Messina, and Westerman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 4051 (1975); Nambu, Hiraoka, Shigemura, Hamanaka, and Ogawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 3637 (1976); Effenberger, Menzel, and Seufert, *Chem. Ber.* **112,** 1660 (1979).

[17] Olah, Schlosberg, Porter, Mo, Kelly, and Mateescu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2034 (1972).

[18] Olah, Staral, Asencio, Liang, Forsyth, and Mateescu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6299 (1978).

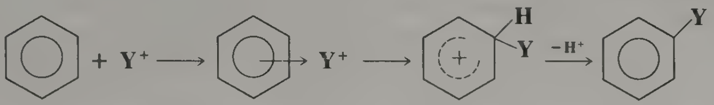
[19] Lyerla, Yannoni, Bruck, and Fyfe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4770 (1979).

According to this, the 1, 3, and 5 carbons, which each bears a charge of about $+\frac{1}{3}$, should have a greater chemical shift in the nmr than the 2 and 4 carbons, which are uncharged. The spectra bear this out. For example, ^{13}C nmr chemical shifts for **9** are C-3: 178.1; C-1 and C-5: 186.6; C-2 and C-4: 136.9, and C-6: 52.2.[18]



9

In Chapter 3 it was mentioned that positive ions can form addition complexes with π systems. Since the initial step of electrophilic substitution involves attack by a positive ion on an aromatic ring, it has been suggested[20] that such a complex, called a π *complex* (represented as **10**), is formed first and then is converted to the arenium ion **11.** Stable solutions of arenium ions or π complexes (e.g., with Br_2, I_2, picric acid, Ag^+, or HCl) can be formed at will. For example, π complexes are formed when aromatic hydrocarbons are treated with HCl alone, but the use of HCl plus a Lewis acid (e.g., $AlCl_3$) gives arenium ions. The two types of solution have very different properties. For example, a solution of an arenium ion is colored and conducts electricity (showing positive and negative ions are present), while a π complex formed from HCl and benzene is colorless and does not conduct a current. Furthermore, when DCl is used to form a π complex, no deuterium exchange takes place (because there is no covalent bond between the electrophile and the ring), while formation of an arenium ion with DCl and $AlCl_3$ gives deuterium exchange. The relative stabilities of some methylated arenium ions and π complexes are shown in Table 1. The arenium ion stabilities listed were determined by the relative basicity of the substrate toward HF.[21] The π complex stabilities are relative equilibrium constants for the reaction[22] between the aromatic hydrocarbon and HCl. As shown in Table 1, the relative stabilities of the two types of species are very different: the π complex stability changes very little with methyl substitution, but the arenium ion stability changes a great deal. There are at least two reasons for this difference. (1) A methyl group stabilizes an adjacent positive charge (p. 143). In an arenium ion a full unit of positive charge is present on the ring, but in a π complex very little charge is transferred to the ring. (2) In a π complex, the small amount of charge is spread over the entire ring, so that a methyl group can stabilize it more or less equally from any position, but an arenium ion is a hybrid of three canonical forms (**1**) and the charge is localized on three of the six carbons. A methyl group located on one of these three is particularly effective in stabilizing a positive charge.



10 **11**

How can we tell if **10** is present on the reaction path? If it is present, there are two possibilities: (1) The formation of **10** is rate-determining (the conversion of **10** to **11** is much faster), or (2) the formation of **10** is rapid, and the conversion **10** to **11** is rate-determining. One way to ascertain which species is formed in the rate-determining step in a given reaction is to use the stability information given in Table 1. We measure the relative rates of reaction of a given electrophile with

---

[20] Dewar, "Electronic Theory of Organic Chemistry," Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1949.

[21] Kilpatrick and Luborsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 577 (1953).

[22] Brown and Brady, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 3570 (1952).

TABLE 1 Relative stabilities of arenium ions and π complexes and relative rates of chlorination and nitration

In each case, p-xylene = 1.00

Substituents	Relative arenium ion stability[21]	Relative π-complex stability[21]	Rate of chlorination[22]	Rate of nitration[26]
None (benzene)	0.09	0.61	0.0005	0.51
Me	0.63	0.92	0.157	0.85
p-**Me**$_2$	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
o-**Me**$_2$	1.1	1.13	2.1	0.89
m-**Me**$_2$	26	1.26	200	0.84
1,2,4-**Me**$_3$	63	1.36	340	
1,2,3-**Me**$_3$	69	1.46	400	
1,2,3,4-**Me**$_4$	400	1.63	2000	
1,2,3,5-**Me**$_4$	16,000	1.67	240,000	
Me$_5$	29,000		360,000	

the series of compounds listed in Table 1. If the relative rates resemble the arenium ion stabilities, then we conclude that the arenium ion is formed in the slow step; but if they resemble the stabilities of the π complexes, then the latter are formed in the slow step.[23] When such experiments are carried out, it is found in most cases that the relative rates are similar to the arenium ion and not to the π complex stabilities. For example, Table 1 lists chlorination rates.[22] Similar results have been obtained in room-temperature bromination with Br_2 in acetic acid[24] and in acetylation with CH_3CO^+ SbF_6^-.[25] It is clear that in these cases the π complex either does not form at all, or if it does, its formation is not rate-determining (unfortunately, it is very difficult to distinguish between these two possibilities).

On the other hand, in nitration with the powerful electrophile NO_2^+ (in the form of NO_2^+ BF_4^-), the relative rates resembled π complex stabilities much more than arenium ion stabilities (Table 1).[26] Similar results were obtained for bromination with Br_2 and $FeCl_3$ in nitromethane. These results were taken to mean[26,27] that in these cases π complex formation is rate-determining (which means of course that they must be on the reaction path); if so, it is likely that π complexes are also on the reaction path even where formation of arenium ions is rate-determining. However, graphical analysis of the NO_2^+ data showed that a straight line could not be drawn when the nitration rate was plotted against π complex stability,[28] which casts doubt on the rate-determining formation of a π complex in this case.[29] There is other evidence, from positional selectivities (discussed on

---

[23] Condon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 2528 (1952).

[24] Brown and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 1421 (1957).

[25] Olah, Kuhn, Flood, and Hardie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2203 (1964). See also Olah, Lukas, and Lukas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5319 (1969).

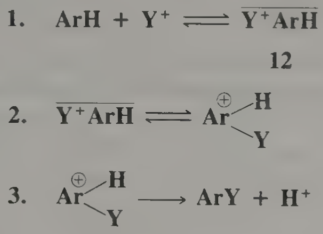
[26] Olah, Kuhn, and Flood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4571, 4581 (1961).

[27] Olah, Kuhn, Flood, and Hardie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1039, 1044 (1964).

[28] Rys, Skrabal, and Zollinger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 874–883 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 921–930]. See also DeHaan, Covey, Delker, Baker, Feigon, Miller, and Stelter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1336 (1979); Santiago, Houk, and Perrin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1337 (1979).

[29] For other evidence against π complexes, see Tolgyesi, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 343 (1965); Caille and Corriu, *Chem. Commun.* 1251 (1967), *Tetrahedron* **25,** 2005 (1969); Coombes, Moodie, and Schofield, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 800 (1968); Hoggett, Moodie, and Schofield, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1 (1969); Christy, Ridd, and Stears, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 797 (1970); Ridd, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 248–253 (1971); Taylor and Tewson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 836 (1973); Naidenov, Guk, and Golod, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1731 (1982). For further support for π complexes, see Olah and Overchuk, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 3279 (1965); Olah, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 240–248 (1971); Olah and Lin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2892 (1974); Koptyug, Rogozhnikova, and Detsina, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **19,** 1007 (1983). For an excellent discussion of the whole question, see Banthorpe, *Chem. Rev.* **70,** 295–322 (1970), especially sections VI and IX.

p. 466), that *some* intermediate is present before the arenium ion is formed, whose formation can be rate-determining with powerful electrophiles. Not much is known about this intermediate, which is given the nondescriptive name *encounter complex* and generally depicted as **12.** The arenium complex mechanism is therefore written as[30]



$$1.\quad \mathrm{ArH} + \mathrm{Y}^+ \rightleftharpoons \underset{\mathbf{12}}{\overline{\mathrm{Y}^+\mathrm{ArH}}}$$

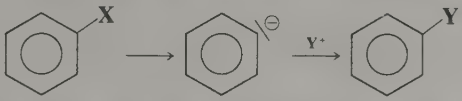
$$2.\quad \overline{\mathrm{Y}^+\mathrm{ArH}} \rightleftharpoons \overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{Ar}}\genfrac{}{}{0pt}{}{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{Y}}$$

$$3.\quad \overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{Ar}}\genfrac{}{}{0pt}{}{\mathrm{H}}{\mathrm{Y}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ArY} + \mathrm{H}^+$$

For the reason given above and for other reasons, it is unlikely that the encounter complex is a π complex, but just what kind of attraction exists between Y^+ and ArH is not known, other than the presumption that they are together within a solvent cage (see also p. 466).

The SE1 Mechanism

The SE1 mechanism (*substitution electrophilic unimolecular*) is rare, being found only in certain cases in which carbon is the leaving atom (see **1-40, 1-41**) or when a very strong base is present (see **1-1, 1-12,** and **1-45**).[31] It consists of two steps with an intermediate carbanion.



Reactions **2-40, 2-44,** and **2-45** also take place by this mechanism when applied to aryl substrates.

ORIENTATION AND REACTIVITY

Orientation and Reactivity in Monosubstituted Benzene Rings[32]

When an electrophilic substitution reaction is performed on a monosubstituted benzene, the new group may be directed primarily to the ortho, meta, or para position and the substitution may be slower or faster than with benzene itself. The group already on the ring determines which position the new group will take and whether the reaction will be slower or faster than with benzene. Groups that increase the reaction rate are called *activating* and those that slow it *deactivating*. Some groups are predominantly meta-directing; all of these are deactivating. Others are mostly ortho-para-directing; some of these are deactivating too, but most are activating. Groups direct *predominantly*, but usually not *exclusively*. For example, nitration of nitrobenzene gave 93% *m*-dinitrobenzene, 6% of the ortho, and 1% of the para isomer.

The orientation and reactivity effects of each group are explained on the basis of resonance and field effects on the stability of the intermediate arenium ion. To understand why we can use this approach, it is necessary to know that in these reactions the product is usually kinetically and not thermodynamically controlled (see p. 187). Some of the reactions are irreversible and the others are usually stopped well before equilibrium is reached. Therefore, which of the three possible intermediates is formed is dependent not on the thermodynamic stability of the products but on the activation energy necessary to form each of the three intermediates. It is not easy to predict which of the three activation energies is lowest, but we make the assumption that the free-energy profile resembles either Figure 2a or 2b in Chapter 6 (p. 186). In either case, the transition state is closer in energy to the arenium ion intermediate than to the starting compounds. Invoking the Hammond postulate (p. 188), we can then assume that the geometry of the transition state also resembles that of the intermediate and that anything that increases the stability of the intermediate will also lower the activation energy necessary to attain it. Since the intermediate, once formed, is rapidly converted to products, we can use the relative stabilities of the three intermediates as guides to predict which products will predominantly form. Of course, if reversible reactions are allowed to proceed to equilibrium, we may get product ratios that are quite different. For example, the sulfonation of naphthalene at 80°C, where the reaction does not reach equilibrium, gives mostly α-naphthalenesulfonic acid,[33] while at 160°C, where equilibrium is attained, the β-isomer predominates[34] (the α-isomer is thermodynamically less stable because of steric interaction between the SO_3H group and the hydrogen at the 8 position).

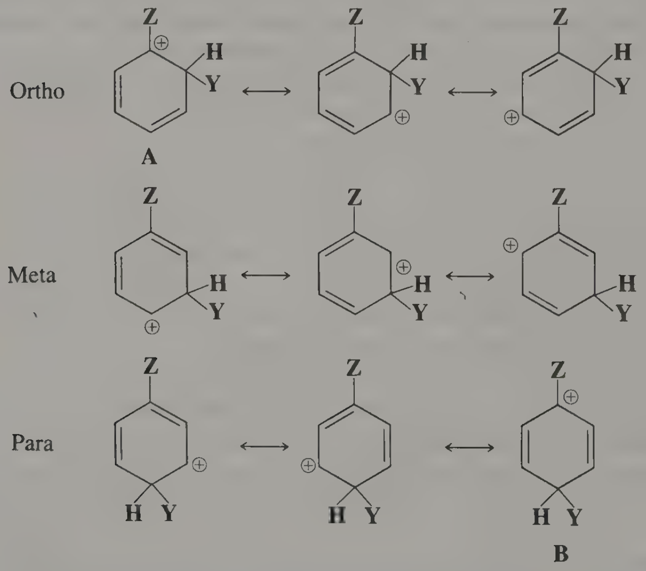
---

[30] For discussions, see Stock, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **12,** 21–47 (1976); Ridd, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **16,** 1–49 (1978).

[31] It has also been found with a metal ($\mathrm{SnMe_3}$) as electrofuge: Eaborn, Hornfeld, and Walton, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1036 (1967).

[32] For a review of orientation and reactivity in benzene and other aromatic rings, see Hoggett, Moodie, Penton, and Schofield, "Nitration and Aromatic Reactivity," pp. 122–145, 163–220, Cambridge University Press, London, 1971.

Now that we see why we can use the relative stabilities of the arenium ions to predict orientation effects, let us examine the three possible ions:



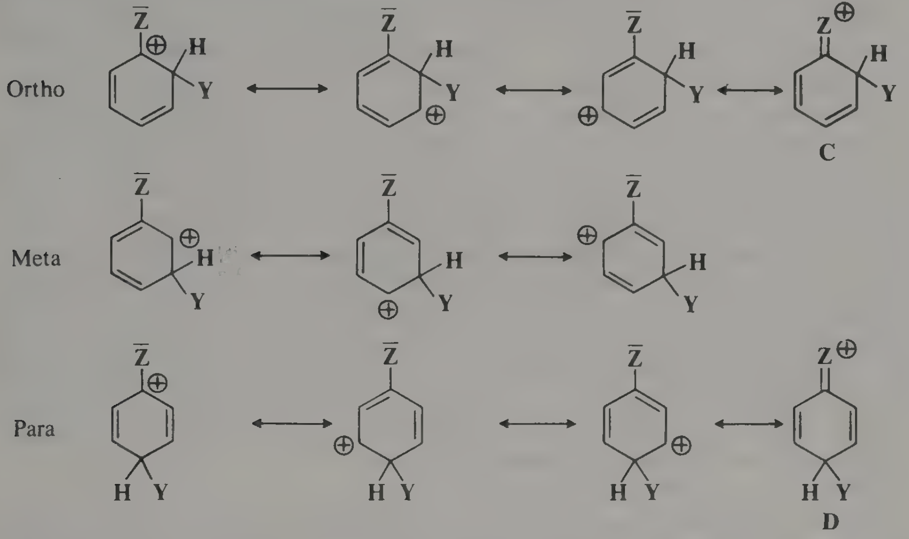
For each ion we see that the ring has a positive charge. We can therefore predict that any group Z that has an electron-donating field effect $(+I)$ should stabilize all three ions (relative to **1**), but that electron-withdrawing groups, which increase the positive charge on the ring, should destabilize them. But we can make a further prediction concerning field effects. These taper off with distance and are thus strongest at the carbon connected to the group Z. Of the three arenium ions, only the ortho and para have any positive charge at this carbon. None of the canonical forms of the meta ion has a positive charge there and so the hybrid has none either. Therefore, $+I$ groups should stabilize all three ions but mostly the ortho and para, so they should be not only activating but ortho-para-directing as well. On the other hand, $-I$ groups, by removing electron density, should destabilize all three ions but mostly the ortho and para, and should be not only deactivating but also meta-directing.

---

[33] Fierz and Weissenbach, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **3,** 312 (1920).
[34] Witt, *Ber.* **48,** 743 (1915).

These conclusions are correct as far as they go, but they do not lead to the proper results in all cases. In many cases there is *resonance interaction* between Z and the ring; this also affects the relative stability, in some cases in the same direction as the field effect, but in others differently.

Some substituents have a pair of electrons (usually unshared) that may be contributed *toward* the ring. The three arenium ions would then look like this:



For each ion the same three canonical forms may be drawn as before, but now we may draw an extra form for the ortho and para ions. The stability of these two ions is increased by the extra form not only because it is another canonical form, but because it is more stable than the others and makes a greater contribution to the hybrid. Every atom (except of course hydrogen) in these forms (**C** and **D**) has a complete octet, while all the other forms have one carbon atom with a sextet. No corresponding form can be drawn for the meta isomer. The inclusion of this form in the hybrid lowers the energy not only because of rule 6 (p. 32) but also because it spreads the positive charge over a larger area—out onto the group Z. Groups with a pair of electrons to contribute would be expected, then, in the absence of field effects, not only to direct ortho and para, but also to activate these positions for electrophilic attack.

On the basis of these discussions, we may distinguish three types of groups.

1. Groups that contain an unshared pair of electrons on the atom connected to the ring. In this category are O^-, NR_2, NHR, NH_2,[35] OH, OR, NHCOR, OCOR, SR, and the four halogens.[36] The

---

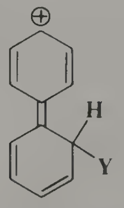
[35] It must be remembered that in acid solution amines are converted to their conjugate acids, which for the most part are meta-directing (type 2). Therefore in acid (which is the most common medium for electrophilic substitutions) amino groups may direct meta. However, unless the solution is highly acidic, there will be a small amount of free amine present, and since amino groups are activating and the conjugate acids deactivating, ortho-para direction is often found even under acidic conditions.

[36] For a review of the directing and orienting effects of amino groups, see Chuchani, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 250–265, Interscience, New York, 1968; for ether groups, see Kohnstam and Williams, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Ether Linkage," pp. 132–150, Interscience, New York, 1967.

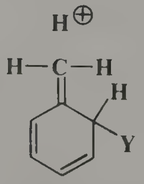
SH group would probably belong here too, except that in the case of thiophenols electrophiles usually attack the sulfur rather than the ring, and ring substitution is not feasible with these substrates.[37] The resonance explanation predicts that all these groups should be ortho-para-directing, and they are, though all except O^- are electron-withdrawing by the field effect (p. 17). Therefore, for these groups, resonance is more important than the field effect. This is especially true for NR_2, NHR, NH_2, and OH, which are *strongly* activating, as is O^-. The other groups are mildly activating, except for the halogens, which are deactivating. Fluorine is the least deactivating, and fluorobenzenes usually show a reactivity approximating that of benzene itself. The other three halogens deactivate about equally. In order to explain why chlorine, bromine, and iodine deactivate the ring, even though they direct ortho-para, we must assume that the canonical forms **C** and **D** make such great contributions to the respective hybrids that they make the ortho and para arenium ions more stable than the meta, even though the $-I$ effect of the halogen is withdrawing sufficient electron density from the ring to deactivate it. The three halogens make the ortho and para ions more stable than the meta, but less stable than the unsubstituted arenium ion (**1**). For the other groups that contain an unshared pair, the ortho and para ions are more stable than either the meta ion or the unsubstituted ion. For most of the groups in this category, the meta ion is more stable than **1**, so that groups such as NH_2, OH, etc., activate the meta positions too, but not as much as the ortho and para positions (see also the discussion on pp. 462–463).

2. Groups that lack an unshared pair on the atom connected to the ring and that are $-I$. In this category we may list, in approximate order of decreasing deactivating ability, NR_3^+, NO_2, CN, SO_3H, CHO, COR, COOH, COOR, $CONH_2$, CCl_3, and NH_3^+. Also in this category are all other groups with a positive charge on the atom directly connected to the ring[38] (SR_2^+, PR_3^+, etc.) and many groups with positive charges on atoms farther away, since often these are still powerful $-I$ groups. The field-effect explanation predicts that these should all be meta-directing and deactivating, and (except for NH_3^+) this is the case. The NH_3^+ group is an anomaly, since this group directs para about as much as or a little more than it directs meta.[39] The NH_2Me^+, $NHMe_2^+$, and NMe_3^+ groups all give more meta than para substitution, the percentage of para product decreasing with the increasing number of methyl groups.[40]

3. Groups that lack an unshared pair on the atom connected to the ring and that are ortho-para-directing. In this category are alkyl groups, aryl groups, and the COO^- group,[41] all of which activate the ring. We shall discuss them separately. Since aryl groups are $-I$ groups, they might seem to belong to category 2. They are nevertheless ortho-para-directing and activating. This can be explained in a similar manner as in category 1, with a pair of electrons from the aromatic sextet playing the part played by the unshared pair, so that we have forms like **E**. The effect of negatively



E



F

---

[37] Tarbell and Herz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 4657 (1953). Ring substitution *is* possible if the SH group is protected. For a method of doing this, see Walker, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 835 (1966).

[38] For discussions, see Gastaminza, Modro, Ridd, and Utley, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 534 (1968); Gastaminza, Ridd, and Roy, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 684 (1969); Gilow, De Shazo, and Van Cleave, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1745 (1971); Hoggett, Moodie, Penton, and Schofield, Ref. 29, pp. 167–176.

[39] Brickman and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 6845 (1965); Hartshorn and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1063 (1968). For a discussion, see Ridd, in "Aromaticity," *Chem. Soc. Spec. Publ.* no. 21, 149–162 (1967).

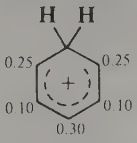
[40] Brickman, Utley, and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 6851 (1965).

[41] Spryskov and Golubkin, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **31,** 833 (1961). Since the COO^- group is present only in alkaline solution, where electrophilic substitution is not often done, it is seldom met with.

charged groups like COO^- is easily explained by the field effect (negatively charged groups are of course electron-donating), since there is no resonance interaction between the group and the ring. The effect of alkyl groups can be explained in the same way, but, in addition, we can also draw canonical forms, even though there is no unshared pair. These of course are hyperconjugation forms like **F.** This effect, like the field effect, predicts activation and ortho-para direction, so that it is not possible to say how much each effect contributes to the result. Another way of looking at the effect of alkyl groups (which sums up both field and hyperconjugation effects) is that (for Z = R) the ortho and para arenium ions are more stable because each contains a form (**A** and **B**) that is a tertiary carbocation, while all the canonical forms for the meta ion and for **1** are secondary carbocations. In activating ability, alkyl groups usually follow the Baker–Nathan order (p. 65), but not always.[42] The cyclopropyl group is highly activating, since cyclopropylbenzene could be brominated at −75°C and nitrated at −50°C.[43]

The Ortho/Para Ratio[44]

When an ortho-para-directing group is on a ring, it is usually difficult to predict how much of the product will be the ortho isomer and how much the para isomer. Indeed, these proportions may depend greatly on the reaction conditions. For example, chlorination of toluene gives an ortho/para ratio anywhere from 62:38 to 34:66.[45] Nevertheless, certain points can be made. On a purely statistical basis there would be 67% ortho and 33% para, since there are two ortho positions and only one para. However, the phenonium ion **9**, which arises from protonation of benzene, has the approximate charge distribution shown.[46] If we accept this as a model for the arenium ion in aromatic substitution, then a para substituent would have a greater stabilizing effect on the adjacent carbon than an ortho substituent. If other effects are absent, this would mean that more than 33% para and less than 67% ortho substitution would be found. In hydrogen exchange (reaction **1-1**), where other effects are absent, it has been found for a number of substituents that the average ratio of the logarithms of the partial rate factors for these positions (see p. 462 for a definition of partial rate factor) was close to 0.865,[47] which is not far from the value predicted from the ratio of charge densities in **9.** This picture is further supported by the fact that meta-directing groups, which destabilize a positive charge, give ortho/para ratios greater than 67:33[48] (of course the total amount of ortho and para substitution with these groups is small, but the *ratios* are generally greater than 67:33). Another important factor is the steric effect. If either the group on the ring or the attacking group is large, then steric hindrance inhibits formation of the ortho product and increases the amount



9

---

[42] For examples of situations where the Baker–Nathan order is not followed, see Eaborn and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc.* 247 (1961); Stock, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 4120 (1961); Utley and Vaughan, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 196 (1968); Schubert and Gurka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1443 (1971); Himoe and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1452 (1971).

[43] Levina and Gembitskii, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **31,** 3242 (1961). See also Fischer and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 781 (1980).

[44] For discussions, see Pearson and Buehler, *Synthesis* 455–477 (1971), pp. 451–464; Norman and Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 301–310.

[45] Stock and Himoe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4605 (1961).

[46] Olah, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 240 (1970), p. 248.

[47] Bailey and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1446 (1971); Ansell, Le Guen, and Taylor, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 13 (1973).

[48] Hoggett, Moodie, Penton, and Schofield, Ref. 32, pp. 176–180.

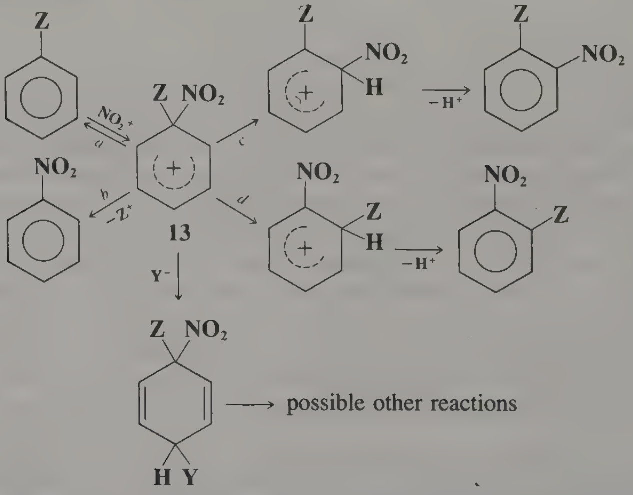
of the para isomer. An example may be seen in the nitration, under the same conditions, of toluene and *t*-butylbenzene. The former gave 58% of the ortho compound and 37% of the para, while the more bulky *t*-butyl group gave 16% of the ortho product and 73% of the para.[49] A few groups are so large that they direct almost entirely para.

When the ortho-para-directing group is one with an unshared pair (this of course applies to most of them), there is another effect that increases the amount of para product at the expense of the ortho. A comparison of the intermediates involved (p. 455) shows that **C** is a canonical form with an ortho-quinonoid structure, while **D** has a para-quinonoid stucture. Since we know that *para*-quinones are more stable than the ortho isomers, it seems reasonable to assume that **D** is more stable than **C** and therefore contributes more to the hybrid and increases its stability compared to the ortho intermediate.

It has been shown that it is possible to compel regiospecific para substitution by enclosing the substrate molecules in a cavity from which only the para position projects. Anisole was chlorinated in solutions containing a cyclodextrin (cyclohexaamylose), a molecule in which the anisole is almost entirely enclosed (similar to the inclusion compounds discussed at p. 79). With a high enough concentration of cyclohexaamylose, it was possible to achieve a para/ortho ratio of 21.6[50] (in the absence of the cyclodextrin the ratio was only 1.48). This behavior is a model for the regioselectivity found in the action of enzymes.

Ipso Attack

We have discussed orientation in the case of monosubstituted benzenes entirely in terms of attack at the ortho, meta, and para positions. In recent years it has become apparent that attack at the position bearing the substituent (called the *ipso position*[51]) can also be important. Ipso attack has mostly been studied for nitration.[52] When NO_2^+ attacks at the ipso position there are at least five possible fates for the resulting arenium ion (**13**).



---

[49] Nelson and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 5605 (1951). For product ratios in the nitration of many monoalkylbenzenes, see Baas and Wepster, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **90,** 1081, 1089 (1971), **91,** 285, 517, 831 (1972).

[50] Breslow and Campbell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3085 (1969); *Bioorg. Chem.* **1,** 140 (1971). See also Chen, Kaeding, and Dwyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6783 (1979); Konishi, Yokota, Ichihashi, Okano, and Kiji, *Chem. Lett.* 1423 (1980); Komiyama and Hirai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2018 (1983), **106,** 174 (1984).

[51] Perrin and Skinner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3389 (1971). For a review of ipso substitution, see Traynham, *J. Chem. Educ.* **60,** 937–941 (1983).

[52] For a review, see Moodie and Schofield, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 287–292 (1976).

Path a. The arenium ion can lose NO_2^+ and revert to the starting compounds. This results in no net reaction and is often undetectable.

Path b. The arenium ion can lose Z^+, in which case this is simply aromatic substitution with a leaving group other than H (see **1-39** to **1-47**).

Path c. The electrophilic group (in this case NO_2^+) can undergo a 1,2-migration, followed by loss of the proton. The product in this case is the same as that obtained by direct attack of NO_2^+ at the ortho position of PhZ. It is not always easy to tell how much of the ortho product in any individual case arises from this pathway,[53] though there is evidence that it can be a considerable proportion. Because of this possibility, many of the reported conclusions about the relative reactivity of the ortho, meta, and para positions are cast into doubt, since some of the product may have arisen not from direct attack at the ortho position, but from attack at the ipso position followed by rearrangement.[54]

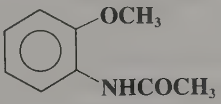
Path d. The ipso substituent (Z) can undergo a 1,2-migration, which also produces the ortho product (though the rearrangement would become apparent if there were other substituents present). The evidence is that this pathway is very minor, at least when the electrophile is NO_2^+.

Path e. Attack of a nucleophile on **13.** In some cases the products of such an attack (cyclohexadienes) have been isolated[55] (this is 1,4-addition to the aromatic ring), but further reactions are also possible.

Orientation in Benzene Rings with More than One Substituent[56]

It is often possible in these cases to predict the correct isomer. In many cases the groups already on the ring reinforce each other. Thus, 1,3-dimethylbenzene is substituted at the 4 position, since this is ortho to one group and para to the other, but not at the 5 position, which is meta to both. Likewise the incoming group in *p*-chlorobenzoic acid goes to the position ortho to the chloro and meta to the carboxyl group.

When the groups oppose each other, predictions may be more difficult. In a case such as



where two groups of about equal directing ability are in competing positions, all four products can be expected, and it is not easy to predict the proportions, except that steric hindrance should probably reduce the yield of substitution ortho to the acetamido group, especially for large electrophiles. Mixtures of about equal proportions are frequent in such cases. Nevertheless, even when groups on a ring oppose each other, there are some regularities.

1. If a strongly activating group competes with a weaker one or with a deactivating group, the former controls. Thus *o*-cresol gives substitution mainly ortho and para to the *hydroxyl* group and not to the methyl.[57] For this purpose we can arrange the groups in the following order: NH_2, OH, NR_2, O^- > OR, OCOR, NHCOR > R, Ar > halogen > meta-directing groups.

2. All other things being equal, a third group is least likely to enter between two groups in the meta relationship. This is the result of steric hindrance and increases in importance with the size of the groups on the ring and with the size of the attacking species.[58]

---

[53] For methods of doing so, see Gibbs, Moodie, and Schofield, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1145 (1978).

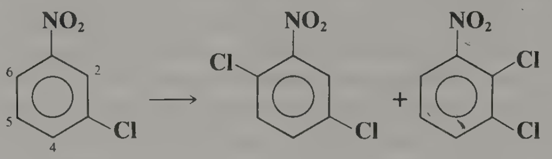
[54] This was first pointed out by Myhre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7921 (1972).

[55] For examples, see Banwell, Morse, Myhre, and Vollmar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3042 (1977); Fischer and Greig, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 1063 (1978).

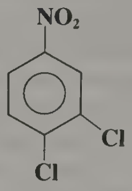
[56] For a quantitative discussion, see pp. 462–463.

[57] For an exception, see Miller, McLaughlin, and Marhevka, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 710 (1982).

3. When a meta-directing group is meta to an ortho-para-directing group, the incoming group primarily goes ortho to the meta-directing group rather than para.[59] For example, chlorination of



14 **15** **16**



17

14 gives mostly **15.** The importance of this effect is underscored by the fact that **16,** which is in violation of the preceding rule, is formed in smaller amounts, but **17** is not formed at all. This is called the *ortho effect*,[60] and many such examples are known.[61] Another is the nitration of *p*-bromotoluene, which gives 2,3-dinitro-4-bromotoluene. In this case, once the first nitro group came in, the second was directed ortho to it rather than para, even though this means that the group has to come in between two groups in the meta position. There is no good explanation yet for the ortho effect, though possibly there is intramolecular assistance from the meta-directing group.

It is interesting that chlorination of **14** illustrates all three rules. Of the four positions open to the electrophile, the 5 position violates rule 1, the 2 position rule 2, and the 4 position rule 3. The principal attack is therefore at position 6.

Orientation in Other Ring Systems[62]

In fused ring systems the positions are not equivalent and there is usually a preferred orientation, even in the unsubstituted hydrocarbon. The preferred positions may often be predicted as for benzene rings. Thus it is possible to draw more canonical forms for the arenium ion when naphthalene is attacked at the α-position than when it is attacked at the β-position, and the α-position is the preferred site of attack,[63] though, as previously mentioned (p. 454), the isomer formed by substitution at the β-position is thermodynamically more stable and is the product if the reaction is reversible and equilibrium is reached. Because of the more extensive delocalization of charges in the corresponding arenium ions, naphthalene is more reactive than benzene and substitution is faster at both positions. Similarly, anthracene, phenanthrene, and other fused polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons are also substituted faster than benzene.

Heterocyclic compounds, too, have nonequivalent positions, and the principles are similar. Furan, thiophene, and pyrrole are chiefly substituted at the 2 position, and all are substituted faster than benzene.[64] Pyrrole is particularly reactive, with a reactivity approximating that of aniline or the phenoxide ion. For pyridine[65] it is not the free base that is attacked but the conjugate acid, pyridinium ion.[66] The 3 position is most reactive, but the reactivity in this case is much less than that of benzene, being similar to that of nitrobenzene. However, groups can be introduced into the 4 position of a pyridine ring indirectly, by performing the reaction on the corresponding pyridine N-oxide.[67]

---

[58] In some cases, an electrophile preferentially attacks the position between two groups in the meta relationship. For a list of some of these cases and a theory to explain them, see Kruse and Cha, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1333 (1982).

[59] An exception has been reported when the meta-directing group is NH_3^+: Schimelpfenig, *Texas J. Sci.* **31,** 99 (1979).

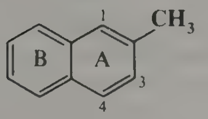
[60] This is not the same as the ortho effect mentioned on p. 249.

[61] See Hammond and Hawthorne, in Newman, "Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry," pp. 164–200, 178–182, Wiley, New York, 1956.

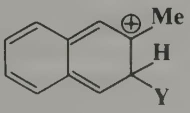
[62] For a review of substitution on nonbenzenoid aromatic systems, see Hafner and Moritz, in Olah, "Friedel–Crafts and Related Reactions," vol. 4, pp. 127–183, Interscience, New York, 1965. For a review of aromatic substitution on ferrocenes, see Bublitz and Rinehart, *Org. React.* **17,** 1–154 (1969).

[63] For a discussion on the preferred site of attack for many ring systems, see de la Mare and Ridd, Ref. 1, pp. 169–209.

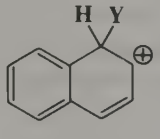
When fused ring systems contain substituents, successful predictions can often be made by using a combination of the above principles. Thus, ring A of 2-methylnaphthalene (**18**) is activated by the methyl group; ring B is not (though the presence of a substituent in a fused ring system affects all the rings,[68] the effect is generally greatest on the ring to which it is attached). We therefore expect substitution in ring A. The methyl group activates positions 1 and 3, which are ortho to itself, but not position 4, which is meta to it. However, substitution at the 3 position gives rise to an arenium ion for which it is impossible to write a low-energy canonical form in which ring B has a complete sextet. All we can write are forms like **19**, in which the sextet is no longer intact. In contrast, substitution at the 1 position gives rise to a more stable arenium ion, for which two canonical forms (one of them is **20**) can be written in which ring B is benzenoid. We thus predict predominant substitution at C-1, and that is what is generally found.[69] However, in some cases predictions are much harder to make. For example, chlorination or nitration of **21** gives mainly the 4 derivative, but bromination yields chiefly the 6 compound.[70]



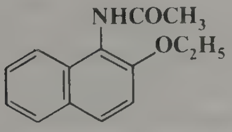
18



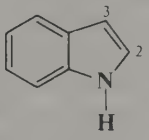
19



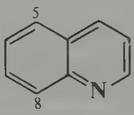
20



21



indole



quinoline

For fused heterocyclic systems too, we can often make predictions based on the above principles, though many exceptions are known. Thus, indole is chiefly substituted in the pyrrole ring (at position 3) and reacts faster than benzene, while quinoline generally reacts in the benzene ring (not the pyridine ring) at the 5 and 8 positions and slower than benzene, though faster than pyridine.

---

[64] For a review of electrophilic substitution on five-membered aromatic heterocycles, see Marino, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **13,** 235–314 (1971). For a review of electrophilic substitution on thiophenes, see Gronowitz, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **1,** 1–124 (1963), pp. 43–68.

[65] For reviews of substitution on pyridines and other six-membered nitrogen-containing aromatic rings, see Aksel'rod and Berezovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 627–643 (1970); Katritzky and Johnson, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 608–615 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 629–636]; Abramovitch and Saha, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **6,** 229–345 (1966).

[66] Olah, Olah, and Overchuk, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3373 (1965); Katritzky and Kingsland, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 862 (1968).

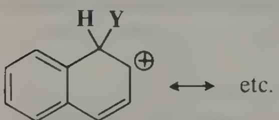
[67] Jaffé, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 3527 (1954).

[68] See, for example, Ansell, Sheppard, Simpson, Stroud, and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 381 (1979).

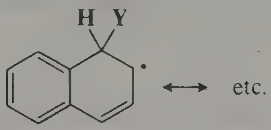
[69] For example, see Alcorn and Wells, *Aust. J. Chem.* **18,** 1377, 1391 (1965); Eaborn, Golborn, Spillett, and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1112 (1968); Kim, Chen, Krieger, Judd, Simpson, and Berliner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 910 (1970). For discussions, see Taylor, *Chimia* **22,** 1–8 (1968); Gore, Siddiquei, and Thorburn, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1781 (1972).

[70] Bell, *J. Chem. Soc.* 519 (1959).

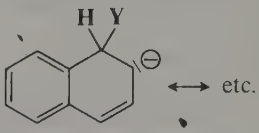
In alternant hydrocarbons (p. 47) the reactivity at a given position is similar for electrophilic, nucleophilic, and free-radical substitution, because the same kind of resonance can be shown in all three types of intermediate (compare **20, 22,** and **23**). Attack at the position that will best delocalize a positive charge will also best delocalize a negative charge or an unpaired electron. Most results are in accord with these predictions. For example, naphthalene is attacked primarily at the 1 position by NO_2^+, NH_2^-, and Ph·, and always more readily than benzene.



20



22

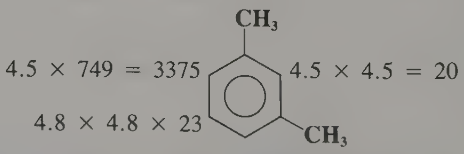


23

Quantitative Treatments of Reactivity in the Substrate

Quantitative rate studies of aromatic substitutions are complicated by the fact that there are usually several hydrogens that can leave, so that measurements of overall rate ratios do not give a complete picture as they do in nucleophilic substitutions, where it is easy to compare substrates that have only one possible leaving group in a molecule. What is needed is not, say, the overall rate ratio for acetylation of toluene vs. that for benzene, but the *rate ratio at each position*. These can be calculated from the overall rates and a careful determination of the proportion of isomers formed. We may thus define the *partial rate factor* for a given group and a given reaction as the rate of substitution at a single position relative to a single position in benzene. For example, for acetylation of toluene the partial rate factors are: for the ortho position $o_f^{\mathrm{Me}} = 4.5$, for the meta $m_f^{\mathrm{Me}} = 4.8$, and for the para $p_f^{\mathrm{Me}} = 749$.[71] This means that toluene is acetylated at the ortho position 4.5 times as fast as a single position in benzene, or 0.75 times as fast as the overall rate of acetylation of benzene. A partial rate factor greater than 1 for a given position indicates that the group in question activates that position for the given reaction. Partial rate factors differ from one reaction to another and are even different, though less so, for the same reaction under different conditions.

Once we know the partial rate factors, we can predict the proportions of isomers to be obtained when two or more groups are present on a ring, *if we make the assumption that the effect of substituents is additive*. For example, if the two methyl groups in *m*-xylene have the same effect as the methyl group in toluene, we can calculate the theoretical partial rate factors at each position by multiplying those from toluene, so that they should be as indicated:



From this it is possible to calculate the overall theoretical rate ratio for acetylation of *m*-xylene relative to benzene, since this is one-sixth of the sum of the partial rate factors (in this case 1130), and the isomer distribution if the reaction is kinetically controlled. The overall rate ratio actually is 347[72] and the calculated and observed isomer distributions are listed in Table 2. In this case,

---

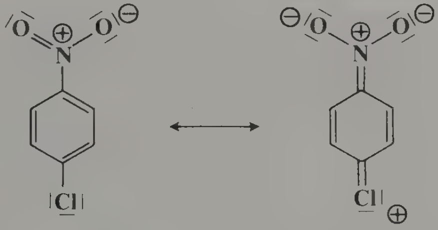
[71] Brown, Marino, and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3310 (1959).

[72] Marino and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5929 (1959).

TABLE 2 Calculated and experimental isomer distributions in the acetylation of *m*-xylene[72]

	Isomer distribution, %	
Position	**Calculated**	**Observed**
2	0.30	0
4	99.36	97.5
5	0.34	2.5

and in many others, agreement is fairly good, but many cases are known where the effects are not additive.[73] For example, the treatment predicts that for 1,2,3-trimethylbenzene there should be 35% 5 substitution and 65% 4 substitution, but acetylation gave 79% 5 substitution and 21% of the 4 isomer. The treatment is thrown off by steric effects, such as those mentioned earlier (p. 457), by products arising from ipso attack (p. 458) and by resonance interaction *between* groups (for example, **24**), which must make the results deviate from simple additivity of the effects of the groups.



24

Another approach that avoids the problem created by having competing leaving groups present in the same substrate is the use of substrates that contain only one leaving group. This is most easily accomplished by the use of a leaving group other than hydrogen. By this means overall rate ratios can be measured for specific positions.[74] Results obtained in this way[75] give a reactivity order quite consistent with that for hydrogen as leaving group.

A Quantitative Treatment of Reactivity of the Electrophile. The Selectivity Relationship

Not all electrophiles are equally powerful. The nitronium ion attacks not only benzene but also aromatic rings that contain a strongly deactivating group. On the other hand, diazonium ions couple only with rings containing a powerful activating group. Attempts have been made to correlate the influence of substituents with the power of the attacking group. The most obvious way to do this is with the Hammett equation (p. 242):

---

[73] For some examples where additivity fails, see Fischer, Vaughan and Wright, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 368 (1967); Coombes, Crout, Hoggett, Moodie, and Schofield, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 347 (1970); Richards, Wilkinson, and Wright, *Aust. J. Chem.* **25,** 2369 (1972); Cook, Phillips, and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1166 (1974). For a theoretical treatment of why additivity fails, see Godfrey, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1545 (1971).

[74] For a review of aryl–silicon and related cleavages, see Eaborn, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **100,** 43–57 (1975).

[75] See, for example, Deans and Eaborn, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2299 (1959); Eaborn and Pande, *J. Chem. Soc.* 297 (1961); Eaborn, Walton, and Young, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 15 (1969); Eaborn and Jackson, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 21 (1969).

$$\log \frac{k}{k_0} = \rho\sigma$$

For aromatic substitution, k_0 is divided by 6 and, for meta substitution, k is divided by 2, so that comparisons are made for only one position (consequently, k/k_0 for, say, the methyl group at a para position is identical to the partial rate factor p_f^{Me}). It was soon found that, while this approach worked fairly well for electron-withdrawing groups, it failed for those that are electron-donating. However, if the equation is modified by the insertion of the Brown σ^+ values instead of the Hammett σ values (because a positive charge develops during the transition state), more satisfactory correlations can be made, even for electron-donating groups (see p. 244 for a list of σ^+ values). Groups with a negative value of $\sigma_p{}^+$ or $\sigma_m{}^+$ are activating for that position; groups with a positive value are deactivating. The ρ values correspond to the susceptibility of the reaction to stabilization or destabilization by the Z group and to the reactivity of the electrophile. The ρ values vary not only with the electrophile but also with conditions. A large negative value of ρ means an electrophile of relatively low reactivity. Of course, this approach is completely useless for ortho substitution, since the Hammett equation does not apply there.

A modification of the Hammett approach, suggested by Brown, called the *selectivity relationship*,[76] is based on the principle that reactivity of a species varies inversely with selectivity. Table 3 shows how electrophiles can be arranged in order of selectivity as measured by two indexes: (1) their selectivity in attacking toluene rather than benzene, and (2) their selectivity between the meta and para positions in toluene.[77] As the table shows, an electrophile more selective in one respect is also more selective in the other. In many cases, electrophiles known to be more stable (hence less reactive) than others show a higher selectivity, as would be expected. For example, the *t*-butyl cation is more stable and more selective than the isopropyl (p. 142), and Br_2 is more selective than Br^+. However, deviations from the relationship are known. Selectivity depends not only on the nature of the electrophile but also on the temperature. As expected, it normally decreases with increasing temperature.

TABLE 3 Relative rates and product distributions in some electrophilic substitutions on toluene and benzene[77]

	Relative rate	**Product distribution, %**	
Reaction	$k_{\text{toluene}}/k_{\text{benzene}}$	m	p
Bromination	605	0.3	66.8
Chlorination	350	0.5	39.7
Benzoylation	110	1.5	89.3
Nitration	23	2.8	33.9
Mercuration	7.9	9.5	69.5
Isopropylation	1.8	25.9	46.2

---

[76] For a comprehensive review, see Stock and Brown, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1,** 35–154 (1963). Shorter reviews are by Olah, in Olah, Ref. 62, vol. 1, pp. 905–927 (1963); Leffler and Grunwald, "Rates and Equilibria of Organic Reactions," pp. 196–210, Wiley, New York, 1963; Brown and Stock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3298 (1962).

[77] Stock and Brown, Ref. 76, p. 45.

Brown assumed that a good measurement of selectivity was the ratio of the para and meta partial rate factors in toluene. He defined the selectivity S_f of a reaction as

$$S_f = \log \frac{p_f^{\mathrm{Me}}}{m_f^{\mathrm{Me}}}$$

That is, the more reactive an attacking species, the less preference it has for the para position compared to the meta. If we combine the Hammett–Brown $\sigma^+\rho$ relationship with the linearity between $\log S_f$ and $\log p_f^{\mathrm{Me}}$ and between $\log S_f$ and $\log m_f^{\mathrm{Me}}$, it is possible to derive the following expressions:

$$\log p_f^{\mathrm{Me}} = \frac{\sigma_p^+}{\sigma_p^+ - \sigma_m^+} S_f$$

$$\log m_f^{\mathrm{Me}} = \frac{\sigma_m^+}{\sigma_p^+ - \sigma_m^+} S_f$$

S_f is related to ρ by

$$S_f = \rho(\sigma_p^+ - \sigma_m^+)$$

The general validity of these equations is supported by a great deal of experimental data on aromatic substitution reactions of toluene. Examples of values for some reactions obtained from these equations are given in Table 4.[78] For other substituents, the treatment works well with groups that, like methyl, are not very polarizable. For more polarizable groups the correlations are sometimes satisfactory and sometimes not, probably because each electrophile in the transition state makes a different demand on the electrons of the substituent group.

Not only are there substrates for which the treatment is poor, but it also fails with very powerful electrophiles; this is why it is necessary to postulate the encounter complex mentioned on p. 453. For example, relative rates of nitration of *p*-xylene, 1,2,4-trimethylbenzene, and 1,2,3,5-tetramethylbenzene were 1.0, 3.7, and 6.4,[79] though the extra methyl groups should enhance the rates much more (*p*-xylene itself reacted 295 times faster than benzene). The explanation is that with powerful electrophiles the reaction rate is so rapid (reaction taking place at virtually every encounter[80]

TABLE 4 Values of m_f^{Me}, p_f^{Me}, S_f, and ρ for three reactions of toluene[78]

Reaction	m_f^{Me}	p_f^{Me}	S_f	ρ
PhMe + EtBr $\xrightarrow[\text{benzene, 25 °C}]{\mathrm{GaBr_3}}$	1.56	6.02	0.587	−2.66
PhMe + $\mathrm{HNO_3}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{45 °C}]{\text{90\% HOAc}}$	2.5	58	1.366	−6.04
PhMe + $\mathrm{Br_2}$ $\xrightarrow[\text{25 °C}]{\text{85\% HOAc}}$	5.5	2420	2.644	−11.40

---

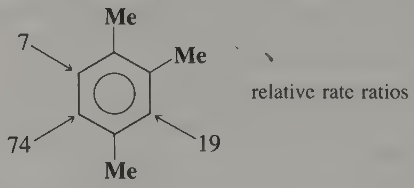
[78] Stock and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3323 (1959). Stock and Brown, Ref. 76, present many tables of these kinds of data.

[79] Olah and Lin, Ref. 29.

[80] See Coombes, Moodie, and Schofield, Ref. 29; Moodie, Schofield, and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 318 (1978).

between an electrophile and a substrate molecule)[81] that the presence of additional activating groups can no longer increase the rate.[82]

Given this behavior (little selectivity in distinguishing between different substrate molecules), the selectivity relationship would then predict that positional selectivity should also be very small. However, it is not. For example, under conditions where nitration of *p*-xylene and 1,2,4-trimethylbenzene takes place at about equal rates, there was no corresponding lack of selectivity at positions *within* the latter.[83] Though steric effects are about the same at both positions, more than 10 times as much 5-nitro product was formed as 6-nitro product. It is clear that the selectivity relationship has broke down and it becomes necessary to explain why such an extremely rapid reaction should occur with positional selectivity. The explanation offered is that the rate-determining step is formation of an encounter complex (**12,** p. 453).[84] Since the position of attack is not determined in the rate-determining step, the 5/6 ratio is not related to the reaction rate. Essentially the same idea was suggested earlier[85] and for the same reason (failure of the selectivity relationship in some cases), but the earlier explanation specifically pictured the complex as a π complex, and we have seen (p. 452) that there is evidence against this.



One interesting proposal[86] is that the encounter pair is a radical pair $\overline{NO_2\cdot\ ArH\cdot^+}$ formed by an electron transfer, which would explain why the electrophile, once in the encounter complex, can acquire the selectivity that the free NO_2^+ lacked (it is not proposed that a radical pair is present in all aromatic substitutions; only in those that do not obey the selectivity relationship). The radical pair subsequently collapses to the arenium ion. There is evidence both for[87] and against[88] this proposal.

The Effect of the Leaving Group

In the vast majority of aromatic electrophilic substitutions, the leaving group is H^+ (it is certainly one of the best), and very little work has been done on the relative electrofugal ability of other leaving groups. However, the following orders of leaving-group ability have been suggested:[89] (1) for leaving groups that depart without assistance (SN1 process with respect to the leaving group), $NO_2^+ < \text{iso-Pr}^+ \sim SO_3 < t\text{-Bu}^+ \sim ArN_2^+ < ArCHOH^+ < NO^+ < CO_2$; (2) for leaving groups that depart with assistance from an outside nucleophile (SN2 process), $Me^+ < Cl^+ < Br^+ <$

---

[81] For a review of diffusion control in electrophilic aromatic substitution, see Ridd, Ref. 30.

[82] Coombes, Moodie, and Schofield, Ref. 29; Hoggett, Moodie, and Schofield, Ref. 29; Hartshorn, Moodie, Schofield, and Thompson, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 2447 (1971); Manglik, Moodie, Schofield, Dedeoglu, Dutly, and Rys, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1358 (1981).

[83] Barnett, Moodie, Schofield, and Weston, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 648 (1975); Barnett, Moodie, Schofield, Taylor, and Weston, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 747 (1979).

[84] For kinetic evidence in favor of encounter complexes, see Sheats and Strachan, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 1280 (1978).

[85] Olah, Ref. 29.

[86] Perrin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5516 (1977).

[87] Reents and Freiser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 271 (1980); Morkovnik, Dobaeva, Panov, and Okhlobystin, *Doklad. Chem.* **251,** 116 (1980); Ridd and Sandall, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* **402** (1981).

[88] Draper and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 445 (1978); Barnes and Myhre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 975 (1978); Eberson and Radner, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **34,** 739 (1980).

[89] Perrin, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 420 (1971).

$D^+ \sim RCO^+ < H^+ \sim I^+ < Me_3Si^+$. We can use this kind of list to help predict which group, X or Y, will cleave from an arenium ion **1** once it has been formed, and so obtain an idea of which electrophile substitutions are feasible. However, a potential leaving group can also affect a reaction in another way: by influencing the rate at which the original electrophile attacks directly at the ipso position. Partial rate factors for electrophilic attack at a position substituted by a group other than hydrogen are called ipso partial rate factors (i_f^X).[51] Such factors for the nitration of *p*-haloanisoles are 0.18, 0.08, and 0.06, for *p*-iodo, *p*-bromo-, and *p*-chloroanisole, respectively.[90] This means, for example, that the electrophile in this case attacks the 4 position of 4-iodoanisole 0.18 times as fast as a single position of benzene. Note that this is far slower than it attacks the 4 position of anisole itself so that the presence of the iodo group greatly slows the reaction at that position. Thus halogens deactivate the ipso position just as they do the other positions.[91]

REACTIONS

The reactions in this chapter are classified according to leaving group. Hydrogen replacements are treated first, then rearrangements in which the attacking entity is first cleaved from another part of the molecule (hydrogen is also the leaving group in these cases), and finally replacements of other leaving groups.

Hydrogen as the Leaving Group in Simple Substitution Reactions

A. Hydrogen as the Electrophile

1-1 Hydrogen Exchange
Deuterio-de-hydrogenation or **Deuteriation**

$$\mathrm{ArH} + \mathrm{D}^+ \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{ArD} + \mathrm{H}^+$$

Aromatic compounds can exchange hydrogens when treated with acids. The reaction is used chiefly to study mechanistic questions[92] (including substituent effects), but can also be useful to deuterate or tritiate aromatic rings selectively. The usual directive effects apply and, for example, phenol treated with D_2O gives slow exchange on heating, with only ortho and para hydrogens being exchanged.[93] Strong acids, of course, exchange faster with aromatic substrates, and this exchange must be taken into account when studying the mechanism of any aromatic substitution catalyzed by acids. There is a great deal of evidence that exchange takes place by the ordinary arenium ion mechanism. Among the evidence are the orientation effects noted above and the finding that the reaction is general-acid-catalyzed, which means that a proton is transferred in the slow step[94] (p. 227). Furthermore, many examples have been reported of stable solutions of arenium ions formed by attack of a proton on an aromatic ring.[5] Simple aromatic compounds can be extensively deuterated in a convenient fashion by treatment with D_2O and BF_3.[95]

---

[90] Ref. 51. See also Fischer and Zollinger, *Hevl. Chim. Acta* **55,** 2139 (1972).

[91] For other work on ipso reactivity, see Baciocchi and Illuminati, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4017 (1967); Berwin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 237 (1972); Galley and Hahn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4337 (1974); Fischer and Wright, *Aust. J. Chem.* **27,** 217 (1974); Clemens, Hartshorn, Richards, and Wright, *Aust. J. Chem.* **30,** 103, 113 (1977).

[92] For a review, see Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 194–277.

[93] Small and Wolfenden, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1811 (1936).

[94] For example, see Challis and Long, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2524 (1963); Batts and Gold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4284 (1964); Kresge, Chiang, and Sato, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4418 (1967); Gruen and Long, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1287 (1967); Butler and Hendry, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 852 (1970).

[95] Larsen and Chang, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3602 (1978).

Hydrogen exchange may also be effected with strong bases,[96] such as NH_2^-. In these cases the slow step is the proton transfer:

$$\mathrm{ArH + B \longrightarrow Ar^- + BH^+}$$

so that the SE1 mechanism and not the usual arenium ion mechanism is operating.[97] As would be expected from the SE1 mechanism, only field and not resonance effects of substituents affect the rates, $-I$ groups causing increases and $+I$ groups causing decreases.[98] The effect is most strongly felt at the ortho position. Aromatic rings can also be deuterated by treatment with D_2O and a rhodium(III) chloride[99] or platinum[100] catalyst or with C_6D_6 and an alkylaluminum dichloride catalyst,[101] though rearrangements may take place during the latter procedure. Tritium can be introduced by treatment with T_2O and an alkylaluminum dichloride catalyst.[101]

B. Nitrogen Electrophiles

1-2 Nitration or Nitro-de-hydrogenation

$$\mathrm{ArH + HNO_3 \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} ArNO_2}$$

Most aromatic compounds, whether of high or low reactivity, can be nitrated, because a wide variety of nitrating agents is available.[102] For benzene, the simple alkylbenzenes, and less reactive compounds, the most common reagent is a mixture of concentrated nitric and sulfuric acids, but for active substrates, the reaction can be carried out with nitric acid alone, or in water, acetic acid, or acetic anhydride. In fact, these milder conditions are necessary for active compounds like amines, phenols, and pyrroles, since reaction with mixed nitric and sulfuric acids would oxidize these substrates. If anhydrous conditions are required, nitration can be effected with N_2O_5 in CCl_4 in the presence of P_2O_5, which removes the water formed in the reaction.[103] Nitration in alkaline media can be accomplished with esters of nitric acid such as ethyl nitrate ($EtONO_2$). These reagents can also be used with proton or Lewis-acid catalysts. Other nitrating agents are methyl nitrate and BF_3,[104] $NaNO_2$ and trifluoroacetic acid,[105] N_2O_4 (which gives good yields with polycyclic hydrocarbons[106]), and nitronium salts[107] such as $NO_2^+\ BF_4^-$, $NO_2^+\ PF_6^-$, and $NO_2^+\ CF_3SO_3^-$. The last-mentioned salt gives a very high yield of products at low temperatures.[108] With active substrates such as amines and phenols, nitration may be accomplished by nitrosation under oxidizing conditions with a mixture of dilute nitrous and nitric acids.[109]

---

[96] For a review of base-catalyzed hydrogen exchange on heterocycles, see Elvidge, Jones, O'Brien, Evans, and Sheppard, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **16,** 1–31 (1974).

[97] Shatenshtein, *Tetrahedron* **18,** 95 (1962).

[98] Hall, Libby, and James, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 311 (1963); Streitwieser, Lawler, and Perrin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5383 (1965); Streitwieser, Hudson, and Mares, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 648 (1968).

[99] Lockley, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3819 (1982).

[100] See, for example, Leitch, *Can. J. Chem.* **32,** 813 (1954); Fraser and Renaud, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4365 (1966); Fischer and Puza, *Synthesis* 218 (1973); Blake, Garnett, Gregor, Hannan, Hoa, and Long, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 930 (1975). See also Parshall, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 113–117 (1975).

[101] Garnett, Long, Vining, and Mole, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5913, 8632 (1972); Long, Garnett, and Vining, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1298 (1975); Long, Garnett, and West, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4171 (1978).

[102] For monographs, see Schofield, "Aromatic Nitration," Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1980; Hoggett, Moodie, Penton, and Schofield, Ref. 32. For reviews, see Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 10–47; Weaver, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," pt. 2, pp. 1–48, Interscience, New York, 1970; de la Mare and Ridd, Ref. 1, pp. 48–93; Olah and Kuhn, in Olah, Ref. 62, vol. 3, pp. 1393–1491 (1964). For a review of side reactions, see Suzuki, *Synthesis* 217–238 (1977).

[103] For another method, see Olah, Krishnamurthy, and Narang, *J. Org. Chem.* *47,* 596 (1982).

[104] Olah and Lin, *Synthesis* 488 (1973).

[105] Uemura, Toshimitsu, and Okano, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1076 (1978).

[106] Radner, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **37,** 65 (1983).

[107] Olah and Kuhn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3684 (1962). These have also been used together with crown ethers: Masci, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1262 (1982). For a review of nitronium salts in organic chemistry, see Guk, Ilyushin, Golod, and Gidaspov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **52,** 284–297 (1983).

[108] Coon, Blucher, and Hill, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4243 (1973); Effenberger and Geke, *Synthesis* 40 (1975).

When amines are nitrated under strong-acid conditions, meta orientation is generally observed, because the species undergoing nitration is actually the conjugate acid of the amine. If the conditions are less acidic, the free amine is nitrated and the orientation is ortho-para. Although the free base may be present in much smaller amounts than the conjugate acid, it is far more susceptible to aromatic substitution (see also p. 456). Because of these factors and because they are vulnerable to oxidation by nitric acid, primary aromatic amines are often protected before nitration by treatment with acetyl chloride (**0-54**) or acetic anhydride (**0-55**). Nitration of the resulting acetanilide derivative avoids all these problems. There is evidence that when the reaction takes place on the free amine, it is the nitrogen that is attacked to give an N-nitro compound Ar—NH—NO_2 which rapidly undergoes rearrangement (see **1-34**) to give the product.[110]

Since the nitro group is deactivating, it is usually easy to stop the reaction after one group has entered the ring, but a second and a third group can be introduced if desired, especially when an activating group is also present. Even *m*-dinitrobenzene itself can be nitrated if vigorous conditions are applied. This has been accomplished with $NO_2^+ \ BF_4^-$ in FSO_3H at 150°C.[111]

With most of the reagents mentioned, the attacking species is the nitronium ion NO_2^+. Among the ways in which this ion is formed are:

1. In concentrated sulfuric acid, by an acid–base reaction in which nitric acid is the base:

$$\mathbf{HNO_3 + 2H_2SO_4 \rightleftharpoons NO_2^+ + H_3O^+ + 2HSO_4^-}$$

This ionization is essentially complete.

2. In concentrated nitric acid alone, by a similar acid–base reaction in which one molecule of nitric acid is the acid and another the base:

$$\mathbf{2HNO_3 \rightleftharpoons NO_2^+ + NO_3^- + H_2O}$$

This equilibrium lies to the left (about 4% ionization), but enough NO_2^+ is formed for nitration to occur.

3. The equilibrium just mentioned occurs to a small extent even in organic solvents.

4. With N_2O_5 in CCl_4, there is spontaneous dissociation:

$$\mathbf{N_2O_5 \rightleftharpoons NO_2^+ + NO_3^-}$$

but in this case there is evidence that some nitration also takes place with undissociated N_2O_5 as the electrophile.

5. When nitronium salts are used, NO_2^+ is of course present to begin with. Esters and acyl halides of nitric acid ionize to form NO_2^+.

There is a great deal of evidence that NO_2^+ is present in most nitrations and that it is the attacking entity,[112] e.g.,

1. Nitric acid has a peak in the Raman spectrum. When nitric acid is dissolved in concentrated sulfuric acid, the peak disappears and two new peaks appear, one at 1400 cm^{-1} attributable to NO_2^+ and one at 1050 cm^{-1} due to HSO_4^-.[113]

---

[109] For discussions of the mechanism in this case, see Bazanova and Stotskii, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **16,** 2070, 2075 (1980); Main, Moodie, and Schofield, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 48 (1982); Ross, Moran, and Malhotra, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2118 (1983).

[110] Ridd and Scriven, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 641 (1972). See also Helsby and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 1191 (1983).

[111] Olah and Lin, *Synthesis* 444 (1974).

[112] For an exhaustive study of this reaction, see Hughes, Ingold, and co-workers, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2400–2684 (1950).

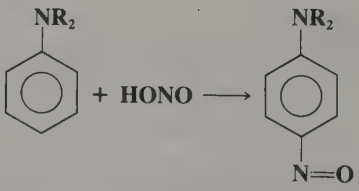
2. On addition of nitric acid, the freezing point of sulfuric acid is lowered about four times the amount expected if no ionization has taken place.[114] This means that the addition of one molecule of nitric acid results in the production of four particles, which is strong evidence for the ionization reaction between nitric and sulfuric acids given above.

3. The fact that nitronium salts in which nitronium ion is known to be present (by x-ray studies) nitrate aromatic compounds shows that this ion does attack the ring.

4. The rate of the reaction with most reagents is proportional to the concentration of NO_2^+, not to that of other species.[115] When the reagent produces this ion in small amounts, the attack is slow and only active substrates can be nitrated. In concentrated and aqueous mineral acids the kinetics are second order: first order each in aromatic substrate and in nitric acid (unless pure nitric acid is used in which case there are pseudo-first-order kinetics). But in organic solvents like nitromethane, acetic acid, and CCl_4, the kinetics are first order in nitric acid alone and zero order in aromatic substrate, because the rate-determining step is formation of NO_2^+ and the substrate does not take part in this.

OS **I,** 372, 396, 408 (see also OS **53,** 129); **II,** 254, 434, 438, 447, 449, 459, 466; **III,** 337, 644, 653, 658, 661, 837; **IV,** 42, 364, 654, 711, 722, 735; **V,** 346, 480, 829, 1029, 1067.

1-3 **Nitrosation** or **Nitroso-de-hydrogenation**



Ring nitrosation with nitrous acid is normally carried out only with active substrates such as amines and phenols. However, primary aromatic amines give diazonium ions (**2-48**) when treated with nitrous acid, and secondary amines tend to give N-nitroso rather than C-nitroso compounds (**2-50**); hence this reaction is normally limited to phenols and tertiary aromatic amines. Nevertheless secondary aromatic amines can be C-nitrosated in two ways. The N-nitroso compound first obtained may be isomerized to a C-nitroso compound (the Fischer–Hepp rearrangement, **1-35**), or it may be treated with another mole of nitrous acid to give an N,C-dinitroso compound. Much less work has been done on the mechanism of this reaction than on the preceding one.[116] In some cases the attacking entity is NO^+, but in others it is apparently NOCl, NOBr, N_2O_3, etc., in each of which there is a carrier of NO^+. NOCl and NOBr are formed during the normal process of making nitrous acid—the treatment of sodium nitrite with HCl or HBr. Nitrosation requires active substrates because NO^+ is much less reactive than NO_2^+. Kinetic studies have shown that NO^+ is at least 10^{14} times less reactive than NO_2^+.[117] A consequence of the relatively high stability of NO^+ is that this species is easily cleaved from the arenium ion, so that k_{-1} competes with k_2 (p. 449) and isotope effects are found.[118] With phenols, there is evidence that nitrosation may first take place at the OH group, after which the nitrite ester thus formed rearranges to the C-nitroso product.[119] Tertiary aromatic amines substituted in the ortho position generally do not react with HONO, probably because the ortho substituent prevents planarity of the dialkylamino group, without which the ring is no longer activated. This is an example of steric inhibition of resonance (p. 34).

---

[113] Ingold, Millen, and Poole, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2576 (1950).

[114] Gillespie, Graham, Hughes, Ingold, and Peeling, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2504 (1950).

[115] This is not always strictly true. See Ross, Kuhlmann, and Malhotra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4299 (1983).

[116] For a review of nitrosation mechanisms at C and other elements, see Williams, *Advan. Phys. Org. Chem.* **19,** 381–428 (1983).

[117] Challis, Higgins, and Lawson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1831 (1972); Challis and Higgins, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 2365 (1972).

OS **I,** 214, 411, 511; **II,** 223; **IV,** 247.

1-4 Diazonium Coupling
Arylazo-de-hydrogenation

$$\mathbf{ArH + Ar'N_2^+ \longrightarrow Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Ar'}$$

Aromatic diazonium ions normally couple only with active substrates such as amines and phenols.[120] Presumably because of the size of the attacking species, substitution is mostly para to the activating group, unless that position is already occupied, in which case ortho substitution takes place. The pH of the solution is important both for phenols and amines. For amines, the solutions may be mildly acidic or neutral. The fact that amines give ortho and para products shows that even in mildly acidic solution they react in their un-ionized form. If the acidity is too high, the reaction does not occur, because the concentration of free amine becomes too small. Phenols must be coupled in slightly alkaline solution where they are converted to the more reactive phenoxide ions, because phenols themselves are not active enough for the reaction. However, neither phenols nor amines react in moderately alkaline solution, because the diazonium ion is converted to a diazo hydroxide Ar—N=N—OH. Primary and secondary amines face competition from attack at the nitrogen.[121] However, the resulting N-azo compounds (aryl triazenes) may be isomerized to C-azo compounds (reaction **1-36**). In at least some cases, even when the C-azo compound is isolated, it is the result of initial N-azo compound formation followed by isomerization. It is therefore possible to synthesize the C-azo compound directly in one laboratory step.[122] Acylated amines and phenolic ethers and esters are ordinarily not active enough for this reaction, though it is sometimes possible to couple them (as well as such polyalkylated benzenes as mesitylene and pentamethylbenzene) to diazonium ions containing electron-withdrawing groups in the para position, since such groups increase the concentration of the positive charge and thus the electrophilicity of the ArN_2^+. Some coupling reactions which are otherwise very slow (in cases where the coupling site is crowded) are catalyzed by pyridine for reasons discussed on p. 450. Coupling of a few aliphatic diazonium compounds to aromatic rings has been reported. All the examples reported so far involve cyclopropanediazonium ions and bridgehead diazonium ions, in which loss of N_2 would lead to very unstable carbocations.[123]

OS **I,** 49, 374; **II,** 35, 39, 145.

---

[118] Challis and Lawson, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 770 (1971); Challis and Osborne, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1526 (1973); Challis and Higgins, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1597 (1973).

[119] Gosney and Page, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1783 (1980).

[120] For reviews, see Szele and Zollinger, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **112,** 1–66 (1983); Hegarty, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Diazonium and Diazo Groups," pt. 2, pp. 545–551, Wiley, New York, 1978; Zollinger, "Azo and Diazo Chemistry," pp. 210–265, Interscience, New York, 1961.

[121] See Penton and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 1717, 1728 (1981).

[122] Kelly, Penton, and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **65,** 122 (1982).

[123] See Szele and Zollinger, Ref. 120, pp. 3–6.

1-5 Direct Introduction of the Diazonium Group
Diazoniation or **Diazonio-de-hydrogenation**

$$\mathrm{ArH} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HX}]{\mathrm{2HONO}} \mathrm{ArN_2^+\ X^-}$$

Diazonium salts can be prepared directly by replacement of an aromatic hydrogen without the necessity of going through the amino group.[124] The reaction is essentially limited to active substrates (amines and phenols), since otherwise poor yields are obtained. As in reaction **1-3** and for the same reason, tertiary amines containing an ortho substituent react extremely slowly.[125] Since the reagents and the substrate are the same as in reaction **1-3,** the first species formed is the nitroso compound. In the presence of excess nitrous acid, this is converted to the diazonium ion.[126] The reagent (azidochloromethylene)dimethylammonium chloride $\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{Me_2N}}\mathrm{=C(Cl)N_3\ Cl^-}$ can also introduce the diazonium group directly into a phenol.[127]

1-6 **Amination** or **Amino-de-hydrogenation**[128]

$$\mathrm{ArH + HN_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{AlCl_3}} \mathrm{ArNH_2}$$

Aromatic compounds can be converted to primary aromatic amines, in 10 to 65% yields, by treatment with hydrazoic acid HN_3 in the presence of $AlCl_3$ or H_2SO_4.[129] Tertiary amines have been prepared in fairly good yields (about 50 to 90%) by treatment of aromatic hydrocarbons with N-chlorodialkylamines, by heating in 96% sulfuric acid; or with $AlCl_3$ or $FeCl_3$ in nitroalkane solvents; or by irradiation.[130]

Tertiary (and to a lesser extent, secondary) aromatic amines can also be prepared in moderate to high yields by amination with an N-chlorodialkylamine (or an N-chloroalkylamine) and a metallic-ion catalyst (e.g., Fe^{2+}, Ti^{3+}, Cu^+, Cr^{2+}) in the presence of sulfuric acid.[131] The attacking species in this case is the aminium radical ion $\mathrm{R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}H\cdot}$ formed by[132]

$$\mathrm{R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}HCl + M^+ \longrightarrow R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}H\cdot + M^{2+} + Cl^-}$$

Because attack is by a positive species (even though it is a free radical), orientation is similar to that in other electrophilic substitutions (e.g., phenol and acetanilide give ortho and para substitution, mostly para). When an alkyl group is present, attack at the benzylic position competes with ring substitution. Aromatic rings containing only meta-directing groups do not give the reaction at all. Fused ring systems react well.

Unusual orientation has been reported for amination with haloamines and with NCl_3 in the presence of $AlCl_3$. For example, toluene gave predominantly meta amination.[133] It has been suggested that initial attack in this case is by Cl^+ and that a nitrogen nucleophile (whose structure is not known but is represented here as NH_2^- for simplicity) adds to the resulting arenium ion, so that the initial reaction is addition to a carbon–carbon double bond followed by elimination of HCl:[134]

---

[124] Tedder, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4003 (1957). For a review, see Belov and Kozlov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **32,** 59–75 (1963), pp. 61–62.

[125] Patel and Tedder, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4889 (1963).

[126] Tedder and Theaker, *Tetrahedron* **5,** 288 (1959).

[127] Kokel and Viehe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 716 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 754].

[128] For a review, see Kovacic, in Olah, Ref. 62, vol. 3, pp. 1493–1506 (1964).

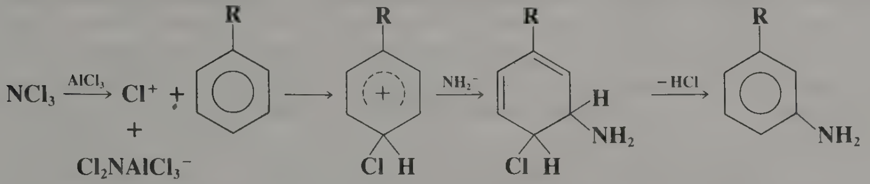
[129] Kovacic, Russell, and Bennett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1588 (1964).

[130] Bock and Kompa, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 783 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 807], *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 1347, 1357, 1361 (1966).

[131] For reviews, see Minisci, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **62,** 1–48 (1976), pp. 6–16; *Synthesis* 1–24 (1973), pp. 2–12; Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **4,** 203–284 (1972), pp. 213–238.

[132] For a review of aminium radical ions, see Chow, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **1,** 151–262 (1980).

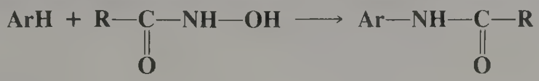
[133] See Kovacic, Lange, Foote, Goralski, Hiller, and Levisky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1650 (1964); Strand and Kovacic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2977 (1973).



According to this suggestion, the electrophilic attack is at the para position (or the ortho, which leads to the same product) and the meta orientation of the amino group arises indirectly. This mechanism is called the *σ-substitution mechanism.*[135]

Aromatic compounds that do not contain meta-directing groups can be converted to diarylamines by treatment with aryl azides in the presence of phenol at −60°C: $ArH + Ar'N_3 \rightarrow ArNHAr'$.[136] Diarylamines are also obtained by the reaction of N-arylhydroxylamines with aromatic compounds (benzene, toluene, anisole) in the presence of F_3CCOOH: $ArH + Ar'NHOH \rightarrow ArNHAr'$.[137]

Direct *amidation* can be carried out if an aromatic compound is heated with a hydroxamic acid in polyphosphoric acid, though the scope is essentially limited to phenolic ethers.[138]



$$ArH + R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH{-}OH \longrightarrow Ar{-}NH{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R$$

Also see **3-18** and **3-19.**

C. Sulfur Electrophiles

1-7 Sulfonation or Sulfo-de-hydrogenation

$$ArH + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow ArSO_2OH$$

The sulfonation reaction is very broad in scope and many aromatic hydrocarbons (including fused ring systems), aryl halides, ethers, carboxylic acids, acylated amines, ketones, nitro compounds, and sulfonic acids have been sulfonated.[139] Phenols can also be successfully sulfonated, but attack at oxygen may compete. Sulfonation is often accomplished with concentrated sulfuric acid, but it also may be done with fuming sulfuric acid, SO_3, $ClSO_2OH$, or other reagents. As with nitration (**1-2**), reagents of a wide variety of activity are available to suit both highly active and highly inactive substrates. Since this is a reversible reaction (see **1-44**), it may be necessary to drive the reaction to completion. However, at low temperatures the reverse reaction is very slow and the forward reaction is practically irreversible.[140] SO_3 reacts much more rapidly than sulfuric acid—with benzene it is nearly instantaneous. Sulfones are often side products. When sulfonation is carried out on a benzene ring containing four or five alkyl and/or halogen groups, rearrangements usually occur (see **1-42**).

---

[134] Kovacic and Levisky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1000 (1966).

[135] An addition–elimination mechanism has also been suggested, in the bromination of a bridged [10]annulene: Scholl, Lex, and Vogel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 920 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 924].

[136] Nakamura, Ohno, and Oka, *Synthesis* 882 (1974).

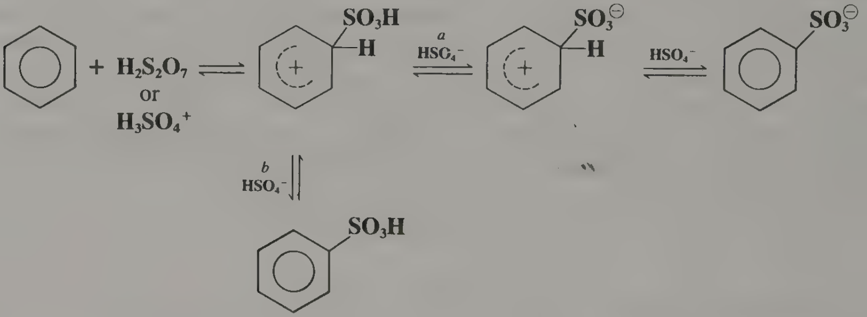
[137] Shudo, Ohta, and Okamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 645 (1981).

[138] Wassmundt and Padegimas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 7131 (1967); March and Engenito, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4304 (1981).

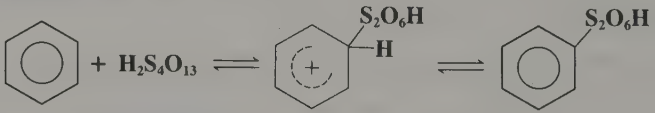
[139] For reviews, see Nelson, in Olah, Ref. 62, vol. 3, pp. 1355–1392 (1964); Gilbert, "Sulfonation and Related Reactions," pp. 62–83, 87–124, Interscience, New York, 1965.

[140] Spryskov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **30,** 2433 (1960).

A great deal of work has been done on the mechanism,[141] chiefly by Cerfontain and co-workers. Mechanistic study is made difficult by the complicated nature of the solutions. Indications are that the electrophile varies with the reagent, though SO_3 is involved in all cases, either free or combined with a carrier. In aqueous H_2SO_4 solutions the electrophile is thought to be $H_3SO_4^+$ (or a combination of H_2SO_4 and H_3O^+) at concentrations below about 80 to 85% H_2SO_4, and $H_2S_2O_7$ (or a combination of H_2SO_4 and SO_3) at concentrations higher than this[142] (the changeover point varies with the substrate[143]). Evidence for a change in electrophile is that in the dilute and in the concentrated solutions the rate of the reaction was proportional to the activity of $H_3SO_4^+$ and $H_2S_2O_7$, respectively. Further evidence is that with toluene as substrate the two types of solution gave very different ortho/para ratios. The mechanism is essentially the same for both electrophiles and may be shown as:[142]



The other product of the first step is HSO_4^- or H_2O from $H_2S_2O_7$ or $H_3O_4^+$, respectively. Path *a* is the principal route, except at very high H_2SO_4 concentrations, when path *b* becomes important. With $H_3SO_4^+$ the first step is rate-determining under all conditions, but with $H_2S_2O_7$ the first step is the slow step only up to about 96% H_2SO_4, when a subsequent proton transfer becomes partially rate-determining.[144] $H_2S_2O_7$ is more reactive than $H_3SO_4^+$. Values of ρ for $H_2S_2O_7$ and $H_3SO_4^+$ attack were calculated as -6.1 and -9.3, respectively.[142] In fuming sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4 containing excess SO_3), the electrophile is thought to be $H_3S_2O_7^+$ (protonated $H_2S_2O_7$) up to about 104% H_2SO_4 and $H_2S_4O_{13}$ (H_2SO_4 + $3SO_3$) beyond this concentration.[145] Again, these conclusions were reached from the fact that the rates of sulfonation were proportional to the concentrations of these species. The mechanism shown above (with path *b*) seems to hold for $H_3S_2O_7^+$, while the following mechanism has been proposed with $H_2S_4O_{13}$:



---

[141] For a monograph, see Cerfontain, "Mechanistic Aspects in Aromatic Sulfonation and Desulfonation," Interscience, New York, 1968. For reviews, see Cerfontain and Kort, *Int. J. Sulfur Chem. C* **6,** 123–136 (1971); Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 56–77.

[142] Kort and Cerfontain, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 24 (1968), **88,** 860 (1969); Maarsen and Cerfontain, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1003 (1977).

[143] See, for example, Kaandorp and Cerfontain, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **88,** 725 (1969).

[144] Kort and Cerfontain, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **86,** 865 (1967).

[145] Kort and Cerfontain, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **88,** 1298 (1969); Koeberg-Telder and Cerfontain, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 633 (1973).

Finally, when pure SO_3 is the reagent in aprotic solvents, SO_3 itself is the actual electrophile.[146] Free SO_3 is the most reactive of all these species, so that attack here is generally fast and a subsequent step is usually rate-determining, at least in some solvents.

OS **II,** 42, 97, 482, 539; **III,** 288, 824; **IV,** 364; **52,** 135.

1-8 **Halosulfonation** or **Halosulfo-de-hydrogenation**

$$\mathbf{ArH + ClSO_2OH \longrightarrow ArSO_2Cl}$$

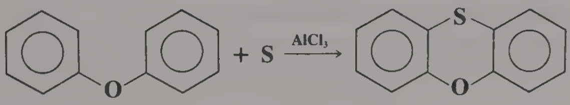
Aromatic sulfonyl chlorides can be prepared directly, by treatment of aromatic rings with chlorosulfuric acid.[147] Since sulfonic acids can also be prepared by the same reagent (**1-7**), it is likely that they are intermediates, being converted to the halides by excess chlorosulfuric acid.[148] The reaction has also been effected with bromo- and fluorosulfuric acids.

OS **I,** 8, 85.

1-9 Sulfurization

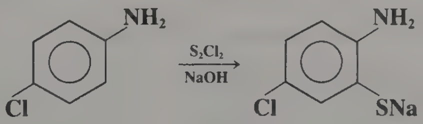
$$\mathbf{ArH + SCl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArSAr}$$

Diaryl sulfides can be prepared by treating aromatic compounds with SCl_2 and a Friedel–Crafts catalyst. Other reagents that can bring about the same result are S_2Cl_2, thionyl chloride, and even sulfur itself. A catalyst is not always necessary. The reaction has been used for ring closure:



When thionyl chloride is used, diaryl sulfoxides are usually the main products.[149] Unsymmetrical diaryl sulfides may be obtained by treatment of an aromatic compound with an aryl sulfenyl chloride (ArSCl) in the presence of a trace amount of iron powder.[150]

With certain substrates (primary amines with a chloro group, or a group not replaceable by chloro, in the para position), treatment with S_2Cl_2 and NaOH gives thiophenolate salts:



This is called the *Herz reaction*.[151]

OS **II,** 242, 485. Also see OS **I,** 574; **III,** 76.

---

[146] Koeberg-Telder and Cerfontain, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **90,** 193 (1971), **91,** 22 (1972); Lammertsma and Cerfontain, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 28 (1980).

[147] For a review, see Gilbert, Ref. 139, pp. 84–87.

[148] For a discussion of the mechanism with this reagent, see van Albada and Cerfontain, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1548, 1557 (1977).

[149] Nikolenko and Krizhechkovskaya, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 3664 (1963); Oae and Zalut, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5359 (1960).

[150] Fujisawa, Kobori, Ohtsuka, and Tsuchihashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5071 (1968).

[151] For a review, see Warburton, *Chem. Rev.* **57,** 1011–1020 (1957).

1-10 Sulfonylation
Alkylsulfonylation or **Alkylsulfo-de-hydrogenation**

$$\mathrm{ArH + RSO_2Cl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArSO_2R}$$

Aryl sulfones can be formed by treatment of aromatic compounds with sulfonyl halides and a Friedel–Crafts catalyst.[152] R may also be aryl. This reaction is analogous to Friedel–Crafts acylation with carboxylic acid halides (**1-15**). Alternatively, the aromatic compound may be treated with a sulfonic acid with polyphosphoric acid as catalyst[153] or with an arylsulfonic trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride $ArSO_2OSO_2CF_3$ (generated in situ from $ArSO_2Br$ and CF_3SO_3Ag) without a catalyst.[154]

1-11 Thiocyanation or Thiocyanato-de-hydrogenation

$$\mathrm{ArH + (SCN)_2 \longrightarrow ArSCN}$$

Phenols and aromatic amines can be converted to thiocyanates by treatment with thiocyanogen.[155] Substitution generally takes place in the para position if available, otherwise in the ortho position. Phenolic ethers and acylated aromatic amines do not react with (SCN_2), but can be thiocyanated with thiocyanogen chloride (ClSCN).

D. Halogen Electrophiles

1-12 Halogenation[156] or Halo-de-hydrogenation

1. *Chlorine and bromine.*

$$\mathrm{ArH + Br_2 \xrightarrow{Fe} ArBr}$$

Aromatic compounds can be brominated or chlorinated by treatment with bromine or chlorine in the presence of a catalyst, most often iron. However, the real catalyst is not the iron itself, but the ferric bromide or ferric chloride formed in small amounts from the reacton between iron and the reagent. Ferric chloride and other Lewis acids are often directly used as catalysts, as is iodine. When thallium(III) acetate is the catalyst, many substrates are brominated with high regioselectivity para to an ortho-para-directing group.[157] For active substrates, including amines, phenols, naphthalene, and polyalkylbenzenes[158] such as mesitylene and isodurene, no catalyst is needed. Indeed, for amines and phenols the reaction is so rapid that it is carried out with a dilute solution of Br_2 or Cl_2 in water at room temperature. Even so, with amines it is not possible to stop the reaction before all the available ortho and para positions are substituted, because the initially formed haloamines are weaker bases than the original amines and are less likely to be protonated by the liberated HX. For this reason, primary amines are often converted to the corresponding anilides if monosubstitution is desired. With phenols it is possible to stop after one group has entered.[158a] The rapid room-temperature reaction with amines and phenols is often used as a test for these compounds. Chlorine is a more active reagent than bromine. Phenols can be brominated exclusively in the ortho position (disubstitution of phenol gives 2,6-dibromophenol) by treatment about −70°C with Br_2 in the presence of *t*-butylamine or triethylenediamine, which precipitates out the liberated HBr.[159] Predominant ortho chlorination of phenols has been achieved with chlorinated cyclohexadienes.[160] On the other hand, certain alkylated phenols can be brominated in the meta positions with Br_2 in the super-acid solution SbF_5-HF.[161] It is likely that the meta orientation is the result of conversion by the super acid of the OH group to the OH_2^+ group, which should be meta-directing because of its positive charge. Bromination and the Sandmeyer reaction (**4-24**) can be carried out in one laboratory step by treatment of an aromatic primary amine with $CuBr_2$ and *t*-butyl nitrite, e.g.,[161a]

---

[152] For reviews, see Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 77–83; Jensen and Goldman, in Olah, Ref. 62, vol. 3, pp. 1517–1593 (1964).

[153] Graybill, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2931 (1967).

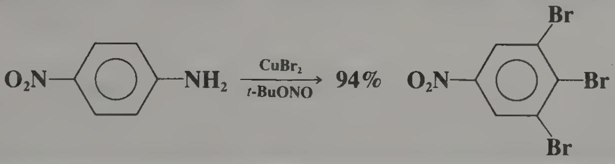
[154] Effenberger and Huthmacher, *Chem. Ber.* **109,** 2315 (1976). For a similar method, see Hancock, Tyobeka, and Weigel, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 270 (1980).

[155] Fieser and Fieser, "Reagents for Organic Synthesis," vol. 1, pp. 1152–1153, Wiley, New York, 1967.

[156] For a monograph, see de la Mare, "Electrophilic Halogenation," Cambridge University Press, London, 1976. For reviews, see Buehler and Pearson, "Survey of Organic Synthesis," pp. 392–404, Interscience, New York, 1970; Norman and Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 119–155; Braendlin and McBee, in Olah, Ref. 62, vol. 3, pp. 1517–1593 (1964). For a review of the halogenation of heterocyclic compounds, see Eisch, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **7,** 1–37 (1966).

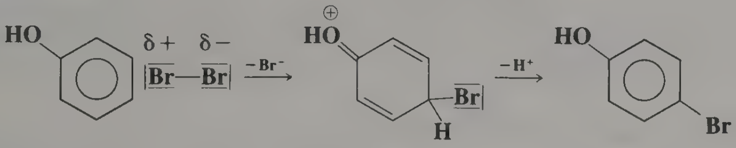
[157] McKillop, Bromley, and Taylor, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 88 (1972). The same regioselectivity can be achieved by chlorinating with N-chloroammonium salts: Lindsay Smith and McKeer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3117 (1983).

[158] For a review of aromatic substitution on polyalkylbenzenes, see Baciocchi and Illuminati, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **5,** 1–79 (1967).



Other reagents have also been used, among them HOCl, HOBr, and N-chloro and N-bromo amides (especially N-bromosuccinimide). In all these cases the reaction is catalyzed by the addition of acids. Dibromoisocyanuric acid in H_2SO_4 is a very good brominating agent[162] for substrates with strongly deactivating substituents.[163] Two particularly powerful reagents consist of (1) S_2Cl_2 and $AlCl_3$ in sulfuryl chloride (SO_2Cl_2),[164] and (2) dichlorine oxide Cl_2O and a strong acid such as sulfuric.[165] If the substrate contains alkyl groups, then side-chain halogenation (**4-1**) is possible with most of the reagents mentioned, including chlorine and bromine. Since side-chain halogenation is catalyzed by light, the reactions should be run in the absence of light wherever possible.

For reactions in the absence of a catalyst, the attacking entity is simply Br_2 or Cl_2 that has been polarized by the ring.[166]



25

Evidence for molecular chlorine or bromine as the attacking species in these cases is that acids, bases, and other ions, especially chloride ion, accelerate the rate about equally, though if chlorine dissociated into Cl^+ and Cl^-, the addition of chloride should decrease the rate and the addition of acids should increase it. **25** has been detected spectrally in the aqueous bromination of phenol.[167]

[158a] For a review of the halogenation of phenols, see Brittain and de la Mare, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement D," pt. 1, pp. 522–532, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[159] Pearson, Wysong, and Breder, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2358 (1967).

[160] Guy, Lemaire, and Guetté, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 8 (1980); *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2339, 2347 (1982).

[161] Jacquesy, Jouannetaud, and Makani, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 110 (1980).

[161a] Doyle, Van Lente, Mowat, and Fobare, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2570 (1980).

[162] Nitrobenzene is pentabrominated in 1 min with this reagent in 15% oleum at room temperature.

[163] Gottardi, *Monatsh. Chem.* **99,** 815 (1968), **100,** 42 (1969).

[164] Ballester, Molinet, and Castaner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4254 (1960); Andrews, Glidewell, and Walton, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 294 (1978).

[165] Marsh, Farnham, Sam, and Smart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4680 (1982).

[166] For reviews of the mechanism of halogenation, see de la Mare, Ref. 156; de la Mare and Swedlund, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Halogen Bond," pt. 1, pp. 490–536, Wiley, New York, 1973; Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 83–139; Berliner, *J. Chem. Educ.* **43,** 124–232 (1966). See also Schubert and Dial, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3877 (1975); Keefer and Andrews, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5693 (1977); Briggs, de la Mare, and Hall, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 106 (1977).

When a Lewis-acid catalyst is used with chlorine or bromine, the attacking entity may be Cl^+ or Br^+, formed by $FeCl_3 + Br_2 \rightarrow FeCl_3Br^- + Br^+$, or it may be Cl_2 or Br_2, polarized by the catalyst. With other reagents, the attacking entity in brominations may be Br^+ or a species such as H_2OBr^+ (the conjugate acid of HOBr), in which H_2O is a carrier of Br^+.[168] With HOCl in water the electrophile may be Cl_2O, Cl_2, or H_2OCl^+; in acetic acid it is generally AcOCl. All these species are more reactive than HOCl itself. It is extremely doubtful that Cl^+ is a significant electrophile in chlorinations by HOCl.[169] It has been demonstrated in the reaction between N-methylaniline and calcium hypochlorite that the chlorine attacking entity attacks the *nitrogen* to give N-chloro-N-methylaniline, which rearranges (as in **1-37**) to give a mixture of ring-chlorinated N-methylanilines in which the ortho isomer predominates.[170]

$FeCl_3$ itself, and also $CuCl_2$, $SbCl_5$, etc.,[171] can give moderate yields of aryl chlorides.[172] The electrophile might be a species such as $FeCl_2^+$, but the reactions can also take place by a free-radical mechanism.[173]

When chlorination or bromination is carried out at high temperatures (e.g., 300 to 400°C), ortho-para-directing groups direct meta and vice versa.[174] A different mechanism operates here, which is not completely understood. It is also possible for bromination to take place by the SE1 mechanism, e.g., in the *t*-BuOK-catalyzed bromination of 1,3,5-tribromobenzene.[175]

2. *Iodine.* Iodine is the least reactive of the halogens in aromatic substitution.[176] Except for active substrates, an oxidizing agent must normally be present to oxidize I_2 to a better electrophile.[177] Examples of such oxidizing agents are HNO_3, HIO_3, SO_3, and H_2O_2. ICl is a better iodinating agent than iodine itself. Iodination can also be accomplished by treatment of the substrate with I_2 in the presence of copper salts,[178] $SbCl_5$,[179] $AlCl_3$-$CuCl_2$,[180] silver trifluoromethanesulfonate CF_3SO_3Ag,[181] bis(trifluoroacetoxyiodo) benzene,[182] or thallium(I) acetate.[183] The TlOAc method is regioselective for ortho iodination.

The actual attacking species is less clear than with bromine or chlorine. Iodine itself is too unreactive, except for active species such as phenols, where there is good evidence that I_2 is the attacking entity.[184] There is evidence that AcOI may be the attacking entity when peroxyacetic acid is the catalyst,[185] and I_3^+ when SO_3 or HIO_3 is the catalyst.[186] For an indirect method for accomplishing aromatic iodination, see **2-28.**

---

[167] Tee, Iyengar, and Paventi, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 759 (1983).

[168] For discussions, see Gilow and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1321 (1973); Rao, Mali, and Dangat, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 205 (1978).

[169] Swain and Crist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3195 (1972).

[170] Haberfield and Paul, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5502 (1965); Gassman and Campbell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3891 (1972); Paul and Haberfield, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3170 (1976).

[171] Kovacic, Wu, and Stewart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1917 (1960); Ware and Borchert, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2263, 2267 (1961); Commandeur, Mathais, Raynier, and Waegell, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **3,** 385 (1979).

[172] For a review of halogenations with metal halides, see Kovacic, in Olah, Ref. 62, vol. 4, pp. 111–126 (1965).

[173] Nonhebel, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1216 (1963); Nonhebel and Russell, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 3493 (1969).

[174] For a review of this type of reaction, see Kooyman, *Pure. Appl. Chem.* **7,** 193–202 (1963).

[175] Mach and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 936 (1974).

[176] For a review of I_2 as an electrophilic reagent, see Pizey, in Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 3, pp. 227–276, Wiley, New York, 1977.

[177] It is often stated that the function of the oxidizing agent is to oxidize the liberated HI that would otherwise reduce the aryl iodide. However, this statement is incorrect. See Butler, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 508 (1971).

[178] Baird and Surridge, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3436 (1970).

[179] Uemura, Onoe, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 147 (1974).

[180] Sugita, Idei, Ishibashi, and Takegami, *Chem. Lett.* 1481 (1982).

[181] Kobayashi, Kumadaki, and Yoshida, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 215 (1977). For a similar procedure, see Merkushev, Simakhina, and Koveshnikova, *Synthesis* 486 (1980).

[182] Merkushev and Yudina, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 2320 (1981).

[183] Cambie, Rutledge, Smith-Palmer, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1161 (1976).

[184] Grovenstein, Aprahamian, Bryan, Gnanapragasam, Kilby, McKelvey, and Sullivan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4261 (1973).

[185] Ogata and Urasaki, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1689 (1970).

[186] Arotsky, Butler, and Darby, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1480 (1970).

3. *Fluorine.* Direct fluorination of aromatic rings with F_2 is not feasible at room temperature, because of the extreme reactivity of F_2. It has been accomplished at low temperatures (e.g., -70 to $-20°C$, depending on the substrate),[187] but the reaction is not yet of preparative significance.[188] Fluorination has also been reported with silver difluoride AgF_2,[189] with cesium fluoroxysulfate $CsSO_4F$,[190] with CH_3COOF (generated from F_2 and sodium acetate),[191] with XeF_2,[192] with an XeF_6–graphite intercalate,[193] and with fluoroxytrifluoromethane CF_3OF[194] under various conditions and with various yields, in some cases by electrophilic and in other cases by free-radical mechanisms. However, none of these methods seems likely to displace the Schiemann reaction (**3-25**) as the most common method for introducing fluorine into aromatic rings.

The overall effectiveness of reagents in aromatic substitution is $Cl_2 > BrCl > Br_2 > ICl > I_2$.

OS **I,** 111, 121, 123, 128, 207, 323; **II,** 95, 97, 100, 173, 196, 343, 347, 349, 357, 592; **III,** 132, 134, 138, 262, 267, 575, 796; **IV,** 114, 166, 256, 545, 547, 872, 947; **V,** 117, 147, 206, 346; **51,** 94; **55,** 20. Also see OS **II,** 128.

E. Carbon Electrophiles In the reactions in this section, a new carbon–carbon bond is formed. With respect to the aromatic ring, they are electrophilic substitutions, because a positive species attacks the ring. We treat them in this manner because it is customary. However, with respect to the electrophile, most of these reactions are nucleophilic substitutions, and what was said in Chapter 10 is pertinent to them. Some are not substitutions with respect to the reagent, e.g., **1-13,** when performed with an olefin as reagent, is addition to a C=C double bond, and **1-24** is addition to a C=O double bond.

1-13 Friedel–Crafts Alkylation

Alkylation or **Alkyl-de-hydrogenation**

$$\mathbf{ArH + RCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArR}$$

The alkylation of aromatic rings, called *Friedel–Crafts alkylation,* is a reaction of very broad scope.[195] The most important reagents are alkyl halides, olefins, and alcohols, but many other types of reagent have also been employed.[195] When alkyl halides are used, the reactivity order is $F > Cl > Br > I$[196]; e.g., $FCH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$ reacts with benzene to give $PhCH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$[197] when the catalyst is BCl_3. By the use of this catalyst, it is therefore possible to place a halo alkyl group on a ring (see also **1-26**).[198] Di- and trihalides, when all the halogens are the same, usually react with more than one molecule of aromatic compound; it is usually not possible to stop the reaction earlier. Thus, benzene with CH_2Cl_2 gives not $PhCH_2Cl$, but Ph_2CH_2; benzene with $CHCl_3$ gives Ph_3CH. With CCl_4, however, the reaction stops when only three rings have been substituted to give Ph_3CCl.

---

[187] Grakauskas, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 723 (1970); Cacace, Giacomello, and Wolf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3511 (1980); Stavber and Zupan, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2223 (1983).

[188] For a review of direct liquid-phase fluorination of organic compounds, aliphatic as well as aromatic, see Grakauskas, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **5,** 85–104 (1971).

[189] Zweig, Fischer, and Lancaster, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3597 (1980).

[190] Ip, Arthur, Winans, and Appelman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1964 (1981); Stavber and Zupan, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 148 (1981).

[191] Lerman, Tor, Hebel, and Rozen, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 806 (1984).

[192] Shaw, Hyman, and Filler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1563 (1969), **92,** 6498 (1970), *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2917 (1971); Mackenzie and Fajer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4994 (1970); Filler, *Isr. J. Chem.* **17,** 71 (1978).

[193] Selig, Rabinovitz, Agranat, and Lin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1601 (1976).

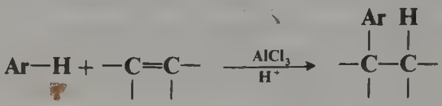
[194] Barton, Ganguly, Hesse, Loo, and Pechet, *Chem. Commun.* 806 (1968); Kollonitsch, Barash, and Doldouras, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7494 (1970); Patrick, Cantrell, and Chang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 7434 (1979). For a review of this reagent, see Barton, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 1241–1249 (1977).

[195] For a treatise on Friedel–Crafts reactions in general, see Olah, "Friedel–Crafts and Related Reactions," Interscience, New York, 1963–1965. Volume 1 covers general aspects, such as catalyst activity, intermediate complexes, etc. Volume 2 covers alkylation and related reactions. In this volume the various reagents are treated by the indicated authors as follows: alkenes and alkanes, Patinkin and Friedman, pp. 1–288; dienes and substituted alkenes, Koncos and Friedman, pp. 289–412; alkynes, Franzen, pp. 413–416; alkyl halides, Drahowzal, pp. 417–475; alcohols and ethers, Schriesheim, pp. 477–595; sulfonates and inorganic esters, Drahowzal, pp. 641–658. For a monograph in which five chapters of the above treatise are reprinted and more recent material added, see Olah, "Friedel–Crafts Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1973. For a more recent monograph, see Roberts and Khalaf, "Friedel-Crafts Alkylation Chemistry," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1984.

[196] For example, see Calloway, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **59,** 1474 (1937); Brown and Jungk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 5584 (1955).

[197] Olah and Kuhn, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2317 (1964).

Olefins are especially good alkylating agents. With respect to them the reaction is addition of ArH to a C=C double bond:



$$\text{Ar—H} + \text{—}\underset{|}{\text{C}}\text{=}\underset{|}{\text{C}}\text{—} \xrightarrow[\text{H}^+]{\text{AlCl}_3} \text{—}\underset{|}{\overset{\text{Ar}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}}\text{—}\underset{|}{\overset{\text{H}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}}\text{—}$$

Accetylene reacts with 2 moles of aromatic compound to give 1,1-diarylethanes, but other alkynes react poorly, if at all. Alcohols are more active than alkyl halides, though if a Lewis-acid catalyst is used, more catalyst is required, since the catalyst complexes with the OH group. However, proton acids, especially H_2SO_4, are often used to catalyze alkylation with alcohols. When esters are the reagents, there is competition between alkylation and acylation (**1-15**). Though this competition may often be controlled by choice of catalyst and alkylation is usually favored, carboxylic esters are not often employed in Friedel–Crafts reactions. Other alkylating agents are ethers, mercaptans, sulfates, sulfonates, alkyl nitro compounds,[199] and even alkanes and cycloalkanes, under conditions where these are converted to carbocations. Notable here are ethylene oxide, which puts the CH_2CH_2OH group onto the ring, and cyclopropane. For all types of reagent the reactivity order is allyl, benzyl type > tertiary > secondary > primary.

Regardless of which reagent is used, a catalyst is nearly always required.[200] Aluminum chloride is the most common, but many other Lewis acids have been used, and also proton acids such as HF and H_2SO_4.[201] For active halides a trace of a less active catalyst, e.g., $ZnCl_2$, may be enough. For an unreactive halide, such as methyl chloride, a more powerful catalyst is needed, for example, $AlCl_3$, and in larger amounts. In some cases, especially with olefins, a Lewis-acid catalyst causes reaction only if a small amount of proton-donating cocatalyst is present. Catalysts have been arranged in the following order of overall reactivity: $AlBr_3 > AlCl_3 > GaCl_3 > FeCl_3 > SbCl_5$[202] $> ZrCl_4$, $SnCl_4 > BCl_3$, BF_3, $SbCl_3$;[203] but the reactivity order in each case depends on the substrate, reagent, and conditions.

Friedel–Crafts alkylation is unusual among the principal aromatic substitutions in that the entering group is activating so that di- and polyalkylation are frequently observed. However, the activating effect of simple alkyl groups (e.g., ethyl, isopropyl) is such that compounds with these groups as substituents are attacked in Friedel–Crafts alkylations only about 1.5 to 3 times as fast as benzene,[204] so it is often possible to obtain high yields of monoalkyl product. Actually, the fact that di- and polyalkyl derivatives are frequently obtained is not due to the small difference in reactivity but to the circumstance that alkylbenzenes are preferentially soluble in the catalyst layer, where the reaction actually takes place.[205] This factor may be removed by the use of a suitable solvent, by high temperatures, or by high-speed stirring.

---

[198] For a review of selectivity in this reaction, i.e., which group preferentially attacks when the reagent contains two or more, see Olah, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 1, pp. 881–905. This review also covers the case of alkylation vs. acylation.

[199] Bonvino, Casini, Ferappi, Cingolani, and Pietroni, *Tetrahedron* **37**, 615 (1981).

[200] There are a few exceptions. Certain alkyl and vinyl triflates (p. 312) alkylate aromatic rings without a catalyst: see Gramstad and Haszeldine, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4069 (1957); Olah and Nishimura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2214 (1974); Stang and Anderson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1485 (1977); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1520 (1978).

[201] For a review of catalysts and solvents in Friedel–Crafts reactions, see Olah, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 1, pp. 201–366, 853–81.

[202] For a review of $SbCl_5$ as a Friedel–Crafts catalyst, see Yakobson and Furin, *Synthesis* 345–364 (1980).

[203] Russell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4834 (1959).

[204] Condon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70,** 2265 (1948); Olah, Kuhn, and Flood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1688 (1962).

Also unusual is the fact that the OH, OR, NH_2, etc., groups do not facilitate the reaction, since the catalyst coordinates with these basic groups. Although phenols give the usual Friedel–Crafts reactions, orienting ortho and para,[206] the reaction is very poor for amines. However, amines can undergo the reaction if olefins are used as reagents and aluminum anilides as catalysts.[207] In this method the catalyst is prepared by treating the amine to be alkylated with $\frac{1}{3}$ mole of $AlCl_3$. A similar reaction can be performed with phenols, though here the catalyst is $Al(OAr)_3$.[208] Primary aromatic amines (and phenols) can be methylated regioselectively in the ortho position by an indirect method (see **1-28**).

Naphthalene and other fused ring compounds generally give poor yields in Friedel–Crafts alkylation, because they are so reactive that they react with the catalyst. Heterocyclic rings are usually also poor substrates for the reaction. Although some furans and thiophenes have been alkylated, a true alkylation of a pyridine or a quinoline has never been described.[209] However, alkylation of pyridine and other nitrogen heterocycles can be accomplished by a free radical (**4-21**) and by a nucleophilic method (**3-17**).

In most cases, meta-directing groups make the ring too inactive for alkylation. Nitrobenzene cannot be alkylated, and there are only a few reports of successful Friedel–Crafts alkylations when electron-withdrawing groups are present.[210] This is not because the attacking species is not powerful enough; indeed we have seen (p. 464) that alkyl cations are among the most powerful of electrophiles. The difficulty is caused by the fact that, with inactive substrates, degradation and polymerization of the electrophile occurs before it can attack the ring. However, if an activating and a deactivating group are both present on a ring, Friedel–Crafts alkylation can be accomplished.[211] Aromatic nitro compounds can be methylated by a nucleophilic mechanism (**3-17**).

An important synthetic limitation of Friedel–Crafts alkylation is that rearrangement frequently takes place in the reagent. For example, benzene treated with *n*-propyl bromide gives mostly isopropylbenzene (cumene) and much less *n*-propylbenzene. Rearrangement is usually in the order primary → secondary → tertiary and occurs mostly by migration of H^- but also of R^- (see discussion of rearrangement mechanisms in Chapter 18). However, it is sometimes possible to choose conditions that yield unrearranged products. For example, when treated with *n*-propyl chloride at room temperature, benzene gives mostly *n*-propylbenzene; and straight-chain alcohols usually do not rearrange when the catalyst is $AlCl_3$, though they do with BF_3[212] or H_2SO_4.[213] When unrearranged products are obtained, it is frequently the result of thermodynamic rather than kinetic control of the products. The order of thermodynamic stability of alkylbenzenes is primary > secondary > tertiary.[214] For example, the lack of rearrangement in the case of primary alcohols and $AlCl_3$ is only apparent: the products are actually the result of *two* rearrangements.[215] The initially formed product is the secondary alkylbenzene, which then rearranges to the thermodynamically more stable primary product.

---

[205] Francis, *Chem. Rev.* **43,** 257 (1948).

[206] For a review of alkylations of phenols, see Shuikin and Viktorova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 560–576 (1960).

[207] For a review, see Stroh, Ebersberger, Haberland, and Hahn, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **2,** 227–252 (1963). This article also appeared in *Angew. Chem.* **69,** 124–131 (1957).

[208] For a review, see Stroh, Seydel, and Hahn, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **2,** 337–359 (1963). This article also appeared in *Angew. Chem.* **69,** 669–706 (1957).

[209] Drahowzal, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 2, p. 433.

[210] Campbell and Spaeth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5933 (1959); Yoneda, Fukuhara, Takahashi, and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 1003 (1979).

[211] Olah, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 1, p. 34.

[212] Streitwieser, Shaeffer, and Andreades, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1113 (1959).

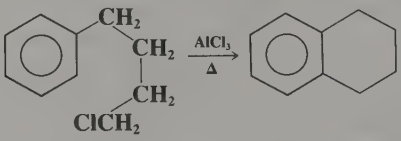
[213] Ioffe and Yan, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 2141 (1963).

[214] Olah, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 1, p. 70.

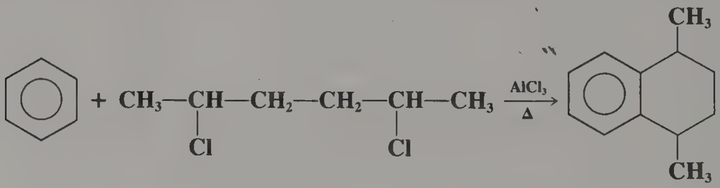
[215] Roberts, Lin, and Anderson, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 4173 (1969).

Because of the rearrangements that usually accompany alkylation with primary reagents, *n*-alkylbenzenes are often prepared by *acylation* (**1-15**), followed by reduction (**9-38**). However, rearrangements are not the only reason for using this alternate approach. Alkylation is less selective than acylation. For example, toluene with ethyl bromide and $GaBr_3$ gave 38.4% *o*-ethyltoluene, 40.6% of the para isomer, and 21.0% of the meta isomer, while acylation gave 97.6% *p*-methylacetophenone.[216] Hence, even in this case, where isomerization is not a factor, it is profitable to acylate and reduce rather than to separate the mixture of isomers.

An important use of the Friedel–Crafts alkylation reaction is to effect ring closure.[217] The most common method is to heat with aluminum chloride an aromatic compound having a halogen, hydroxy, or olefinic group in the proper position, as, for example, in the preparation of tetralin:



Another way of effecting ring closure through Friedel–Crafts alkylation is to use a reagent containing two groups, e.g.,



These reactions are most successful for the preparation of six-membered rings,[218] though five- and seven-membered rings have also been closed in this manner. For other Friedel–Crafts ring-closure reactions, see **1-14, 1-15,** and **1-25.**

From what has been said thus far it is evident that the electrophile in Friedel–Crafts alkylation is a carbocation, at least in most cases.[219] This is in accord with the knowledge that carbocations rearrange in the direction primary → secondary → tertiary (see Chapter 18). In each case the cation is formed from the attacking reagent and the catalyst. For the three most important types of reagent these reactions are:

From alkyl halides: $RCl + AlCl_3 \longrightarrow R^+ + AlCl_4^-$

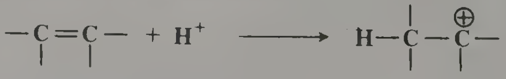
From alcohols and Lewis acids:

$$ROH + AlCl_3 \longrightarrow ROAlCl_2 \longrightarrow R^+ + {}^-OAlCl_2$$

From alcohols and proton acids:

$$ROH + H^+ \longrightarrow ROH_2^+ \longrightarrow R^+ + H_2O$$

From olefins (a supply of protons is always required):



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + H^+ \longrightarrow H-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-$$

---

[216] Stock and Brown, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1,** 46–47 (1963).

[217] For a review, see Barclay, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 2, pp. 785–977.

[218] See Khalaf and Roberts, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 89 (1966).

[219] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 139–158.

There is direct evidence, from ir and nmr spectra, that the *t*-butyl cation is quantitatively formed when *t*-butyl chloride reacts with $AlCl_3$ in anhydrous liquid HCl.[220] In the case of olefins, Markovnikov's rule (p. 673) is followed. Carbocation formation is particularly easy from some reagents, because of the stability of the cations. Triphenylmethyl chloride[221] and 1-chloroadamantane[222] alkylate activated aromatic rings (e.g., phenols, amines) with no catalyst or solvent. Ions as stable as this are less reactive than other carbocations and often attack only active substrates. The tropylium ion, for example, alkylates anisole but not benzene.[223] It was noted on p. 297 that relatively stable vinylic cations can be generated from certain vinylic compounds. These have been used to introduce vinylic groups into aryl substrates.[224]

However, there is much evidence that many Friedel–Crafts alkylations, especially with primary reagents, do not go through a completely free carbocation. The ion may exist as a tight ion pair with, say, $AlCl_4^-$ as the counterion or as a complex. Among the evidence is that methylation of toluene by methyl bromide and methyl iodide gave different ortho/para/meta ratios,[225] though if the same species attacked in each case we would expect the same ratios. Other evidence is that, in some cases, the reaction kinetics are third order; first order each in aromatic substrate, attacking reagent, and catalyst.[226] In these instances a mechanism in which the carbocation is slowly formed and then rapidly attacks the ring is ruled out since, in such a mechanism, the substrate would not appear in the rate expression. Since it is known that free carbocations, once formed, rapidly attack the ring, there are no free carbocations here. Another possibility (with alkyl halides) is that some alkylations take place by an SN2 mechanism (with respect to the halide), in which case no carbocations would be involved at all. However, a completely SN2 mechanism requires inversion of configuration. Most investigations of Friedel–Crafts stereochemistry, even where an SN2 mechanism might most be expected, have resulted in total racemization, or at best a few percent inversion. A few exceptions have been found,[227] most notably where the reagent was optically active propylene oxide, in which case 100% inversion was reported.[228]

Rearrangement is possible, even with a non-carbocation mechanism. The rearrangement could occur *before* the attack on the ring takes place. It has been shown that treatment of $CH_3{}^{14}CH_2Br$ with $AlBr_3$ *in the absence of any aromatic compound* gave a mixture of the starting material and $^{14}CH_3CH_2Br$.[229] Similar results were obtained with $PhCH_2{}^{14}CH_2Br$, in which case the rearrangement was so fast that the rate could be measured only below −70°C. Rearrangement could also occur *after* formation of the product, since alkylation is reversible (see **1-39**).[230] In another experiment, ethylation of benzene with $CH_3{}^{13}CH_2F$ and CH_3CD_2F showed no rearrangement in the ethylbenzene product when BF_3 was the catalyst, but almost 50% rearrangement when the catalyst was $BF_3 \cdot H_2O$.[231] This was interpreted to mean that a free ethyl cation (which is subject to hydride shifts) was the electrophile in the latter, but not in the former case.

---

[220] Kalchschmid and Mayer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 773 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 849].

[221] See, for example, Chuchani, *J. Chem. Soc.* 325 (1960); Hart and Cassis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 1634 (1954); Hickinbottom, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1700 (1934); Chuchani and Zabicky, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 297 (1966).

[222] Takaku, Taniguchi, and Inamoto, *Synth. Commun.* **1,** 141 (1971).

[223] Bryce-Smith and Perkins, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5295 (1962).

[224] Kitamura, Kobayashi, Taniguchi, and Rappoport, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5003 (1982).

[225] Brown and Jungk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2182 (1956).

[226] For examples, see Brown and Grayson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 6285 (1953); Jungk, Smoot, and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2185 (1956); Choi and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2596 (1963).

[227] Some instances of retention of configuration have been reported; a neighboring-group mechanism is likely in these cases: see Masuda, Nakajima, and Suga, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 1089 (1983).

[228] Nakajima, Suga, Sugita, and Ichikawa, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 1807 (1969). Partial inversion (up to about 90%) has been reported in several other instances: See, for example, Brauman and Solladié-Cavallo, *Chem. Commun.* 1124 (1968); Suga, Segi, Kitano, Masuda, and Nakajima, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 3611 (1981).

[229] Sixma and Hendriks, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **75,** 169 (1956); Adema and Sixma, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **81,** 323, 336 (1962).

[230] For an example, see Lee, Hamblin, and Uthe, *Can. J. Chem.* **42,** 1771 (1964).

[231] Oyama, Hamano, Nagumo, and Nakane, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **51,** 1441 (1978).

See **4-19** and **4-21** for *free-radical* alkylation.

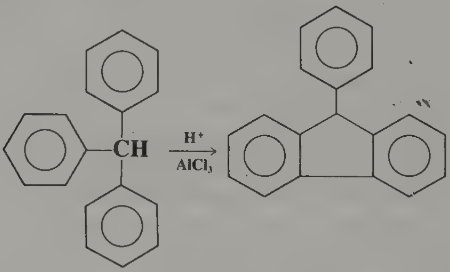
OS **I,** 95, 548; **II,** 151, 229, 232, 236, 248; **III,** 343, 347, 504, 842; **IV,** 47, 520, 620, 665, 702, 898, 960; **V,** 130, 654; **51,** 109; **56,** 8.

1-14 Friedel–Crafts Arylation. The Scholl Reaction

$$2\text{ArH} \xrightarrow[\text{H}^+]{\text{AlCl}_3} \text{Ar—Ar} + \text{H}_2$$

The coupling of two aromatic molecules by treatment with a Lewis acid and a proton acid is called the *Scholl reaction.*[232] Yields are low and the synthesis is seldom useful. High temperatures and strong-acid catalysts are required, and the reaction fails for substrates that are destroyed by these conditions. Because the reaction becomes important with large fused-ring systems, ordinary Friedel–Crafts reactions (**1-13**) on these systems are rare. For example, naphthalene gives binaphthyl under Friedel–Crafts conditions. Yields may be increased by the addition of a salt such as $CuCl_2$ or $FeCl_3$, which acts as an oxidant.[233]

Intramolecular Scholl reactions, e.g.,



are much more successful than the intermolecular kind. The mechanism is not clear, but it may involve attack by a proton to give an arenium ion of the type **9** (p. 451), which would then be the electrophile that attacks the other ring.[234]

Another method is to treat an aromatic compound with a transition-metal compound such as $Pd(OAc)_2$[235] or thallium(III) trifluoroacetate.[236] The latter reagent gives regioselective coupling in certain cases. Sometimes arylations have been accomplished by treating aromatic substrates with particularly active aryl halides, especially fluorides. For free-radical arylations, see reactions **4-16** to **4-20.**

OS **IV,** 482. Also see OS **V,** 102, 952.

1-15 Friedel–Crafts Acylation
Acylation or **Acyl-de-hydrogenation**

$$\text{ArH} + \text{RCOCl} \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} \text{ArCOR}$$

The most important method for the preparation of aryl ketones is known as *Friedel–Crafts acyl-*

---

[232] For a review, see Balaban and Nenitzescu, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 2, pp. 979–1047.

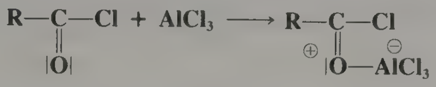
[233] Kovacic and Koch, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1864 (1963), **30,** 3176 (1965); Kovacic and Wu, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 759, 762 (1961).

[234] For a discussion, see Clowes, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2519 (1968).

[235] For a review, see Kozhevnikov and Matveev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 649–664 (1978).

[236] McKillop, Turrell, Young, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6504 (1980).

ation.[237] The reaction is of wide scope. Reagents used are not only acyl halides but also carboxylic acids, anhydrides, and ketenes. Esters usually give predominant alkylation (see **1-13**). R may be aryl as well as alkyl. The major disadvantage of Friedel–Crafts alkylation are not present here. Rearrangement of R is never found, and, because the RCO group is deactivating, the reaction stops cleanly after one group is introduced. All four acyl halides can be used, although chlorides are most commonly employed. The order of activity is usually, but not always, $I > Br > Cl > F$.[238] Catalysts are Lewis acids, similar to those in reaction **1-13,** but in acylation a little more than 1 mole of catalyst is required per mole of reagent, since the first mole coordinates with the oxygen of the reagent.[239]



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{|O|}{\|}}{C}{-}Cl + AlCl_3 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{{}^{\oplus}|O{-}\overset{\ominus}{A}lCl_3}{\|}}{C}{-}Cl}$$

Proton acids may be used as catalysts when the reagent is a carboxylic acid. The mixed carboxylic sulfonic anhydrides $RCOOSO_2CF_3$ are extremely reactive acylating agents and can smoothly acylate benzene without a catalyst.[240] With active substrates (e.g., aryl ethers, fused-ring systems, thiophenes), Friedel–Crafts acylation can be carried out with very small amounts of catalyst, often just a trace, or even sometimes with no catalyst at all. Ferric chloride, iodine, zinc chloride, and iron are the most common catalysts when the reaction is carried out in this manner.[241]

The reaction is quite successful for many types of substrate, including fused-ring systems, which give poor results in **1-13.** Compounds containing ortho-para-directing groups, including alkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy,[242] halogen, and acetamido groups, are easily acylated and give mainly or exclusively the para products, because of the relatively large size of the acyl group. However, aromatic amines give poor results. With amines and phenols there may be competition from N- or O-acylation; however, O-acylated phenols can be converted to C-acylated phenols by the Fries rearrangement (**1-32**). Friedel–Crafts acylation is usually prevented by meta-directing groups. Indeed, nitrobenzene is often used as a solvent for the reaction. Many heterocyclic systems, including furans, thiophenes, pyrans, and pyrroles but not pyridines or quinolines, may be acylated in good yield (however, pyridines and quinolines can be acylated by a free-radical mechanism, reaction **4-21**). Gore, in Ref. 237 (pp. 36–100; with tables, pp. 105–321), presents an exhaustive summary of the substrates to which this reaction has been applied.

When a mixed anhydride RCOOCOR′ is the reagent, two products are possible—ArCOR and ArCOR′. Which product predominates depends on two factors. If R contains electron-withdrawing groups, then ArCOR′ is chiefly formed, but if this factor is approximately constant in R and R′, then the ketone with the larger R group predominantly forms.[243] This means that *formylations* of the ring do not occur with mixed anhydrides of formic acid HCOOCOR.

---

[237] For reviews of Friedel–Crafts acylation, see Olah, "Friedel–Crafts and Related Reactions," Interscience, New York, 1963–1964, as follows: vol. 1, Olah, pp. 91–115; vol. 3, Gore, pp. 1–381; Peto, pp. 535–910; Sethna, pp. 911–1002; Jensen and Goldman, pp. 1003–1032. Other reviews are by Gore, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 727–731 (1974); Norman and Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 174–182.

[238] Yamase, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **34,** 480 (1961); Corriu, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 821 (1965).

[239] The crystal structures of several of these complexes have been reported: Rasmussen and Broch, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **20,** 1351 (1966); Chevrier, Le Carpentier, and Weiss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5718 (1972). For a review of these complexes, see Chevrier and Weiss, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 1–10 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 12–21].

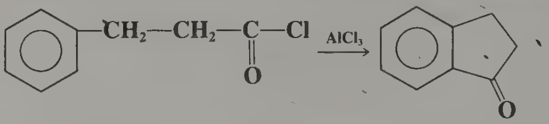
[240] Effenberger, Sohn, and Epple, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 1195 (1983). See also Keumi, Saga, Taniguchi, and Kitajima, *Chem. Lett.* 1099 (1977).

[241] For a review, see Pearson and Buehler, *Synthesis* 533–542 (1972).

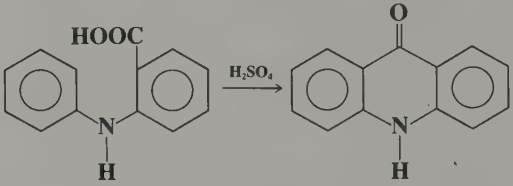
[242] For a discussion of the role of the catalyst when alkoxy groups are present, see Buckley and Rapoport, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3056 (1980).

[243] Edwards and Sibelle, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 674 (1963).

An important use of the Friedel–Crafts acylation is to effect ring closure.[244] This may be done if an acyl halide, anhydride, or acid group is in the proper position. An example is

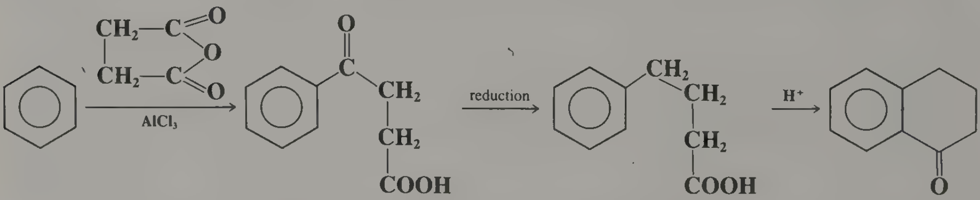


The reaction is used mostly to close six-membered rings, but has also been done for five- and seven-membered rings, which close less readily. Even larger rings can be closed by high-dilution techniques.[245] Tricyclic and larger systems are often made by using substrates containing one of the acyl groups on a ring. An example is the formation of acridone:



Many fused ring systems are made in this manner. If the bridging group is CO, then the product is a quinone.[246] One of the most common catalysts for intramolecular Friedel–Crafts acylation is polyphosphoric acid,[247] (because of its high potency), but $AlCl_3$, H_2SO_4, and other Lewis and proton acids are also used, although acylations with acyl halides are not generally catalyzed by proton acids.

Friedel–Crafts acylation can be carried out with cyclic anhydrides,[248] in which case the product contains a carboxyl group in the side chain. When succinic anhydride is used, the product is $ArCOCH_2CH_2COOH$. This can be reduced (**9-38**) to $ArCH_2CH_2CH_2COOH$, which can then be cyclized by an internal Friedel–Crafts acylation. The total process is called the *Haworth reaction*:[249]



The mechanism of Friedel–Crafts acylation is not completely understood, but at least two mechanisms probably operate, depending on conditions.[250] In most cases the attacking species is the acyl cation, either free or as an ion pair, formed by[251]

$$\mathbf{RCOCl + AlCl_3 \longrightarrow RCO^+ + AlCl_4^-}$$

---

[244] For a review, see Sethna, Ref. 237.

[245] For example, see Schubert, Sweeney, and Latourette, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 5462 (1954).

[246] For a discussion, see Thomson, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Quinonoid Compounds," pt. 1, pp. 136–139, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[247] For reviews of this catalyst, see Uhlig and Snyder, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **1,** 35–81 (1960); Popp and McEwen, *Chem. Rev.* **58,** 321–401 (1958).

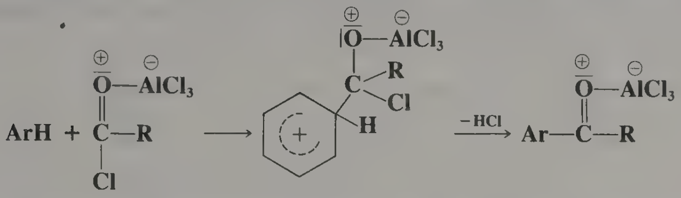
[248] For a review, see Peto, Ref. 237.

[249] See Agranat and Shih, *J. Chem. Educ.* **53,** 488 (1976).

[250] For a review of the mechanism, see Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 166–185.

[251] After 2 min, exchange between PhCOCl and $Al(^{36}Cl)_3$ is complete: Oulevey and Susz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **47,** 1828 (1964).

If R is tertiary, then RCO^+ may lose CO to give R^+, so that the alkylarene ArH is often a side product or even the main product. This kind of cleavage is much more likely with relatively unreactive substrates, where the acylium ion has time to break down. For example, pivaloyl chloride Me_3CCOCl gives the normal acyl product with anisole, but the alkyl product Me_3CPh with benzene. In the other mechanism an acyl cation is not involved, but the 1:1 complex attacks directly.[252]



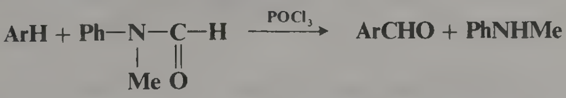
Free-ion attack is more likely for sterically hindered R.[253] The ion CH_3CO^+ has been detected (by ir spectroscopy) in the liquid complex between acetyl chloride and aluminum chloride, and in polar solvents such as nitrobenzene; but in nonpolar solvents such as chloroform, only the complex and not the free ion is present.[254] In any event, 1 mole of catalyst certainly remains complexed to the product at the end of the reaction. When the reaction is performed with $RCO^+ \quad SbF_6^-$, no catalyst is required and the free ion[255] (or ion pair) is undoubtedly the attacking entity.[256]

OS **I,** 109, 353, 476, 517; **II,** 3, 8, 15, 81, 156, 169, 304, 520, 569; **III,** 6, 14, 23, 53, 109, 183, 248, 272, 593, 637, 761, 798; **IV,** 8, 34, 88, 898, 900; **V,** 111; **51,** 100; **53,** 5; **56,** 28.

Reactions **1-16** through **1-20** are direct formylations of the ring.[257] Reaction **1-15** has not been used for formylation, since neither formic anhydride nor formyl chloride is stable at ordinary temperatures. Formyl chloride has been shown to be stable in chloroform solution for 1 hr at −60°C,[258] but it is not useful for formylating aromatic rings under these conditions. Formic anhydride has been prepared in solution, but has not been isolated.[259] Mixed anhydrides of formic and other acids are known[260] and can be used to formylate amines (see **0-55**) and alcohols, but no formylation takes place when they are applied to aromatic rings.

1-16 Formylation with Disubstituted Formamides

Formylation or **Formyl-de-hydrogenation**[261]



$$ArH + Ph-\underset{\displaystyle Me}{\underset{|}{N}}-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-H \xrightarrow{POCl_3} ArCHO + PhNHMe$$

The reaction with disubstituted formamides and phosphorus oxychloride, which is called the *Vilsmeier* or the *Vilsmeier–Haack reaction*, is the most common method for the formylation of aromatic rings.[262] However, it is applicable only to active substrates, such as amines and phenols. Aromatic hydrocarbons and heterocycles can also be formylated, but only if they are much more active than benzene (e.g., azulenes, ferrocenes). Though N-phenyl-N-methylformamide is a common reagent, other arylalkyl amides and dialkyl amides are also used.[263] $COCl_2$ has been used in place of $POCl_3$. The reaction has also been carried out with other amides to give ketones (actually an example of **1-15**), but not often. The attacking species[264] is **26**,[265] and the mechanism is probably:

---

[252] For example, see Corriu and Coste, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2562, 2568, 2574 (1967), 3272 (1969); Corriu, Dore, and Thomassin, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 5601, 5819 (1971); Tan and Brownstein, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 302 (1983).

[253] Yamase, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **34,** 484 (1961); Gore, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **35,** 1627 (1962); Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5404 (1961).

[254] Cook, *Can. J. Chem.* **37,** 48 (1959); Cassimatis, Bonnin, and Theophanides, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 3860 (1970).

[255] Crystal structures of solid $RCO^+ \quad SbF_6^-$ salts have been reported: Boer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6706 (1968); Chevrier, Le Carpentier, and Weiss, *Acta Crystallogr., Sect. B* **28,** 2673 (1972); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5718 (1972).

[256] Olah, Kuhn, Flood, and Hardie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2203 (1964); Olah, Lin, and Germain, *Synthesis* 895 (1974); Olah, Lukas, and Lukas, Ref. 25.

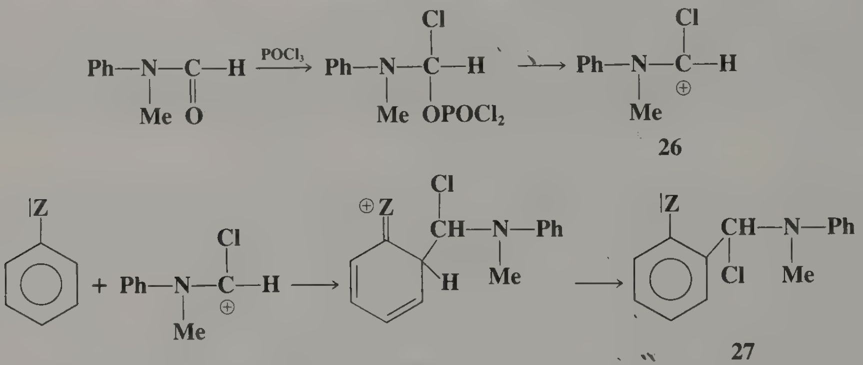
[257] For a review, see Olah and Kuhn, in Olah, Ref. 237, vol. 3, pp. 1153–1256 (1964).

[258] Staab and Datta, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 132 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 1203 (1963)].

[259] Olah, Vankar, Arvanaghi, and Sommer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 614 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 649]; Schijf, Scheeren, van Es, and Stevens, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **84,** 594 (1965).

[260] Stevens and Van Es, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **83,** 863 (1964).

[261] These names also apply to reactions **1-17** to **1-20.**



27 is unstable and easily hydrolyzes to the product. Either formation of **26** or the reaction of **26** with the substrate may be rate-determining, depending on the reactivity of the substrate.[266]

OS **I,** 217; **III,** 98, **IV,** 331, 539, 831, 915.

1-17 Formylation with Carbon Monoxide and HCl. The Gatterman–Koch Reaction

$$\mathbf{ArH + CO + HCl \xrightarrow[CuCl]{AlCl_3} ArCHO}$$

Certain aromatic compounds can be formylated with a mixture of CO and HCl in the presence of $AlCl_3$ and CuCl.[267] The method, known as the *Gatterman–Koch reaction,*[268] has been largely limited to benzene and alkylbenzenes. It fails for phenols, phenolic ethers, and rings that contain meta-directing substituents. Substitution is largely para. An easy way to prepare the reagent mixture is to drop chlorosulfuric acid HSO_3Cl on formic acid, which generates CO, HCl, and H_2SO_4.

OS **II,** 583.

1-18 Formylation with Zinc Cyanide and HCl. The Gatterman Reaction

$$\mathbf{ArH + Zn(CN)_2 \xrightarrow{HCl} ArCH{=}NH_2^+\ Cl^- \xrightarrow{H_2O} ArCHO}$$

Formylation with $Zn(CN)_2$ and HCl is called the *Gatterman reaction.*[269] In contrast to reaction

---

[262] For reviews, see Jutz, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **9,** pt. 1, 225–342 (1976); de Meheas, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1989–1999 (1962); Minkin and Dorofeenko, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 599 (1960).

[263] For a review of dimethylformamide, see Pizey, Ref. 176, vol. 1, pp. 1–99, 1974.

[264] For a review of such species, see Kantlehner, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **9,** pt. 2, 5–172 (1979).

[265] See Arnold and Holý, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **27,** 2886 (1962); Martin and Martin, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1637 (1963); Fritz and Oehl, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **749,** 159 (1971); Jugie, Smith, and Martin, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 925 (1975).

[266] Alunni, Linda, Marino, Santini, and Savelli, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 2070 (1972).

[267] The CuCl is not always necessary: see Toniolo and Graziani, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **194,** 221 (1980).

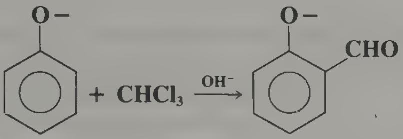
[268] For a review, see Crounse, *Org. React.* **5,** 290–300 (1949).

[269] For a review, see Truce, *Org. React.* **9,** 37–72 (1957).

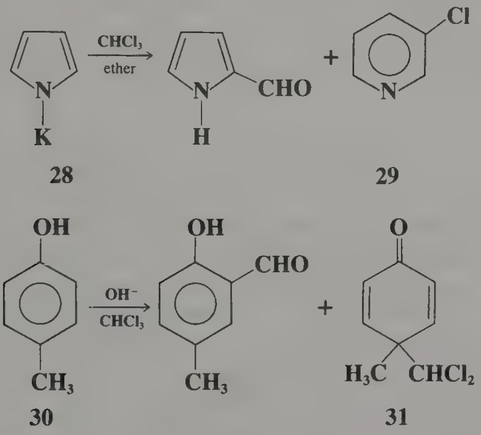
1-17, this method can be successfully applied to phenols and their ethers and to many heterocyclic compounds. However, it cannot be applied to aromatic amines. In the original version of this reaction the substrate was treated with HCN, HCl, and $ZnCl_2$, but the use of $Zn(CN)_2$ and HCl (HCN and $ZnCl_2$ are generated *in situ*) makes the reaction more convenient to carry out and does not reduce yields. The mechanism of the Gatterman reaction has not been investigated very much, but there is an initial nitrogen-containing product that is normally not isolated but is hydrolyzed to aldehyde. The above structure is presumed for this product. The Gatterman reaction may be regarded as a special case of **1-29.**

OS **III,** 549.

1-19 Formylation with Chloroform. The Reimer–Tiemann Reaction



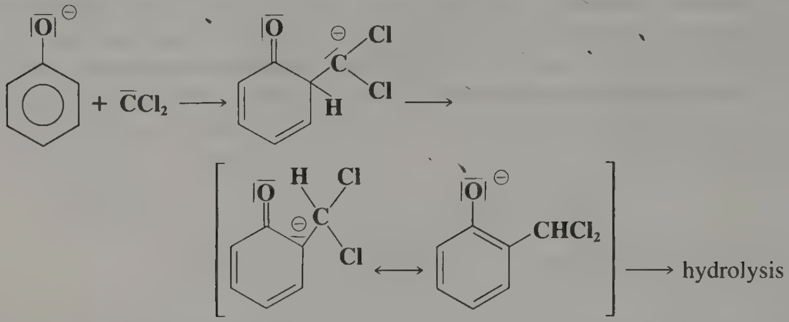
In the *Reimer–Tiemann reaction* chloroform and hydroxide ion are used to formylate aromatic rings.[270] The method is useful only for phenols and certain heterocyclic compounds such as pyrroles and indoles. Unlike the previous formylation methods (**1-16** to **1-18**), this one is conducted in basic solution. Yields are generally low, seldom rising above 50%. The incoming group is directed ortho, unless both ortho positions are filled, in which case the attack is para. Certain substrates have been shown to give abnormal products instead of or in addition to the normal ones. For example, **28** and **30** gave, respectively, **29** and **31** as well as the normal aldehyde products. From the nature of the reagents and from the kind of abnormal products obtained, it is clear that the attacking entity in this reaction is dichlorocarbene CCl_2. This is known to be produced by treatment of chloroform with bases (p. 328); it is an electrophilic reagent and is known to give ring expansion of aromatic



---

[270] For a review, see Wynberg and Meijer, *Org. React.* **28,** 1–36 (1982).

rings (see **5-49**), which accounts for products like **29.** The mechanism of the normal reaction is thus something like this.[271]



The proton transfer shown above probably does not occur by a single 1,2 proton shift, but by two intermolecular proton transfers,[272] that is, first the CCl_2^- group acquires a proton from the solvent and then the ring proton is lost to the solvent. The formation of **31** in the case of **30** may be explained by attack of some of the CCl_2 para to the OH group. Since this position does not contain a hydrogen, normal proton loss cannot take place and the reaction ends when the CCl_2^- moiety acquires a proton.

A method closely related to the Reimer–Tiemann reaction is the *Duff reaction,* in which hexamethylenetetramine $(CH_2)_6N_4$ is used instead of chloroform. This reaction can be applied only to phenols and amines; ortho substitution is generally observed and the yields are low. A mechanism[273] has been proposed that involves initial aminoalkylation (**1-27**) to give $ArCH_2NH_2$, followed by dehydrogenation to ArCH=NH and hydrolysis of this to the aldehyde product. When $(CH_2)_6N_4$ is used in conjunction with F_3CCOOH, the reaction can be applied to simple alkylbenzenes; yields are much higher and a high degree of regioselectively para substitution is found.[274] In this case too an imine seems to be an intermediate.

OS **III,** 463; **IV,** 866.

1-20 Other Formylations

$$ArH + Cl_2CHOMe \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArCHO$$

Besides **1-16** to **1-19**, several other formylation methods are known. In one of these, dichloromethyl methyl ether formylates aromatic rings with Friedel–Crafts catalysts.[275] ArCHClOMe is probably an intermediate. Orthoformates have also been used.[276] In another method, aromatic rings are formylated with formyl fluoride HCOF and BF_3.[277] Unlike formyl chloride, formyl fluoride is stable enough for this purpose. This reaction was successful for benzene, alkylbenzenes, PhCl, PhBr, and naphthalene. Phenols can be regioselectively formylated in the ortho position in high yields by treatment with two equivalents of paraformaldehyde in aprotic solvents in the presence of $SnCl_4$ and a tertiary amine.[278] Phenols have also been formylated indirectly with 2-ethoxy-1,3-dithiolane.[279]

[271] Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1663 (1961); Hine and van der Veen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 6446 (1959).

[272] Kemp, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 202 (1971).

[273] Ogata, Kawasaki, and Sugiura, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 5001 (1968).

[274] Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3972 (1972).

[275] Rieche, Gross, and Höft, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 88 (1960); Lewin, Parker, Fleming, and Carroll, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **10,** 201 (1978).

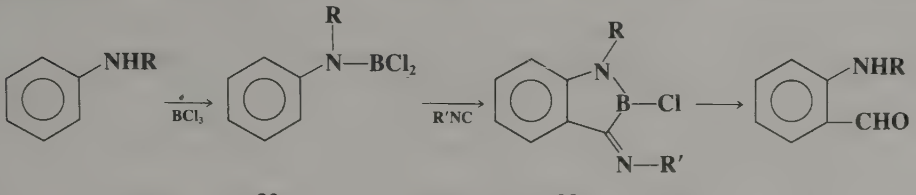
[276] Gross, Rieche, and Matthey, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 308 (1963).

[277] Olah and Kuhn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2380 (1960).

[278] Casiraghi, Casnati, Puglia, Sartori, and Terenghi, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1862 (1980).

[279] Jo, Tanimoto, Sugimoto, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 2120 (1981).

Finally, secondary aromatic amines can be regioselectively formylated in the ortho position if they are treated first with BCl_3 (to give **32**), then with an isocyanide to give **33**, followed by acidic work-up.[280] See also the indirect method mentioned at **1-28.**



32 **33**

OS **V,** 49; **60,** 49.

Reactions **1-21** and **1-22** are direct carboxylations[281] of aromatic rings.[282]

1-21 Carboxylation with Carbonyl Halides

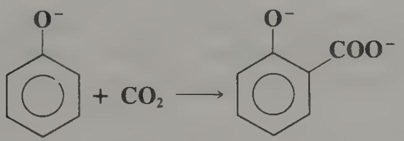
Carboxylation or **Carboxy-de-hydrogenation**[283]

$$ArH + COCl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} ArCOOH$$

Phosgene, in the presence of Friedel–Crafts catalysts, can carboxylate the ring. This process is analogous to **1-15,** but the ArCOCl initially produced hydrolyzes to the carboxylic acid. However, in most cases the reaction does not take this course, but instead the ArCOCl attacks another ring to give a ketone ArCOAr. A number of other reagents have been used to get around this difficulty, among them oxalyl chloride, urea hydrochloride, alkyl thiolchloroformates RSCOCl,[284] carbamoyl chloride H_2NCOCl, and N,N-diethylcarbamoyl chloride.[285] With carbamoyl chloride the reaction is called the *Gatterman amide synthesis* and the product is an amide. With RSCOCl the product is a thiol ester ArCOSR, but of course these compounds can be hydrolyzed to the corresponding carboxylic acids. Among compounds carboxylated by one or another of these reagents are benzene, alkylbenzenes, and fused ring systems.

OS **V,** 706; **61,** 8.

1-22 Carboxylation with Carbon Dioxide. The Kolbe–Schmitt Reaction



Sodium phenoxides can be carboxylated, mostly in the ortho position, by carbon dioxide (the *Kolbe–Schmitt reaction*).[286] The mechanism is not clearly understood, but apparently some kind of a complex is formed between the reactants,[287] making the carbon of the CO_2 more positive and putting it in a good position to attack the ring. Potassium phenoxide, which is less likely to form

---

[280] Sugasawa, Hamana, Toyoda, and Adachi, *Synthesis* 99 (1979).

[281] For other carboxylation methods, one of which leads to the anhydride, see Sakakibara and Odaira, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2049 (1976); Fujiwara, Kawata, Kawauchi, and Taniguchi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 132 (1982).

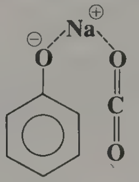
[282] For a review, see Olah and Olah, in Olah, Ref. 237, vol. 3, pp. 1257–1273 (1964).

[283] These names also apply to reaction **1-22.**

[284] Olah and Schilling, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **761,** 77 (1972).

[285] Naumov, Isakova, Kost, Zakharov, Zvolinskii, Moiseikina, and Nikeryasova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **11,** 362 (1975).

[286] For a review, see Lindsey and Jeskey, *Chem. Rev.* **57,** 583–620 (1957).



such a complex,[288] is chiefly attacked in the para position.[289] Carbon tetrachloride may be used instead of CO_2 under Reimer–Tiemann (**1-19**) conditions. Sodium or potassium phenoxide can be carboxylated regioselectively in the para position in high yield by treatment with sodium or potassium carbonate and carbon monoxide.[290] ^{14}C labeling showed that it is the carbonate carbon that appears in the *p*-hydroxybenzoic acid product.[291] The CO is converted to sodium or potassium formate.

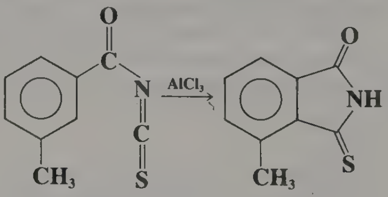
OS **II,** 557.

1-23 Amidation with Isocyanates

***N*-Alkylcarbamoyl-de-hydrogenation**

$$\text{ArH} + \text{RNCO} \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} \text{ArCONHR}$$

N-Substituted amides can be prepared by direct attack of isocyanates on aromatic rings.[292] R may be alkyl or aryl, but if the latter, dimers and trimers are also obtained. Isothiocyanates similarly give thioamides. The reaction has been carried out intramolecularly both with aralkyl isothiocyanates and acyl isothiocyanates.[293] In the latter case, the product is easily hydrolyzable to a dicarboxylic acid; this is a way of putting a carboxyl group on a ring ortho to one already there (**34** is prepared by treatment of the acyl halide with lead thiocyanate). The reaction gives better yields with substrates of the type $ArCH_2CONCS$, where six-membered rings are formed. Ethyl carbamate NH_2COOEt (with P_2O_5 in xylene) has also been used to amidate aromatic rings.[294]



34

OS **V,** 1051; **50,** 52.

Reactions **1-24** to **1-28** involve the introduction of a CH_2Z group, where Z is halogen, hydroxy, amino, or alkylthio. They are all Friedel–Crafts reactions of aldehydes and ketones and, with respect to the carbonyl compound, additions to the C=O double bond. They follow mechanisms discussed in Chapter 16.

---

[287] Hales, Jones, and Lindsey, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3145 (1954).

[288] There is evidence that, in the complex formed from potassium salts, the bonding is between the aromatic compound and the carbon atom of CO_2: Hirao and Kito, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **46,** 3470 (1973).

[289] Actually, the reaction seems to be more complicated than this. At least part of the potassium *p*-hydroxybenzoate that forms comes from a rearrangement of initially formed potassium salicylate. Sodium salicylate does not rearrange. See Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 344–348. See also Ota, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 2343 (1974).

[290] Yasuhara and Nogi, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 4512 (1968); *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 229 (1967), 77 (1969).

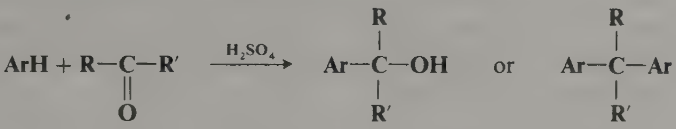
[291] Yasuhara, Nogi, and Saishō, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 2070 (1969).

[292] Effenberger and Gleiter, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 472 (1964); Effenberger, Gleiter, Heider, and Niess, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 502 (1968).

[293] Smith and Kan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4753 (1960), *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2261 (1964).

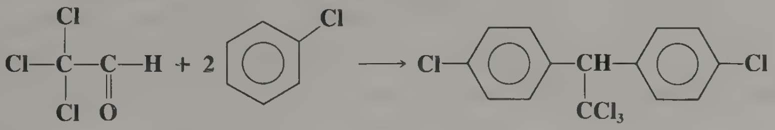
[294] Chakraborty, Mandal, and Roy, *Synthesis* 977 (1981).

1-24 Hydroxyalkylation or Hydroxyalkyl-de-hydrogenation

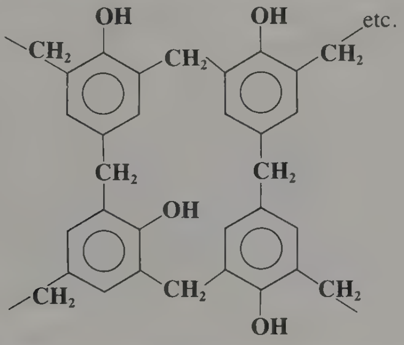


$$\mathrm{ArH} + \mathrm{R}-\underset{\displaystyle \mathrm{O}}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}}-\mathrm{R'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2SO_4}} \mathrm{Ar}-\underset{\displaystyle \mathrm{R'}}{\overset{\displaystyle \mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{OH} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathrm{Ar}-\underset{\displaystyle \mathrm{R'}}{\overset{\displaystyle \mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{Ar}$$

The condensation of aromatic rings with aldehydes or ketones is called *hydroxyalkylation*.[295] The reaction can be used to prepare alcohols,[296] though more often the alcohol initially produced reacts with another molecule of aromatic compound (**1-13**) to give diarylation. For this the reaction is quite useful, an example being the preparation of DDT:



The diarylation reaction is especially common with phenols (the diaryl product here is called a *bisphenol*). The reaction is normally carried out in alkaline solution on the phenolate ion.[297] The hydroxymethylation of phenols with formaldehyde is called the *Lederer–Manasse reaction*. This reaction must be carefully controlled,[298] since it is possible for the para and both ortho positions to be substituted and for each of these to be rearylated, so that a polymeric structure is produced:



However, such polymers, which are of the Bakelite type (phenol–formaldehyde resins), are of considerable commercial importance.

The attacking species is the carbocation, $\mathrm{R}-\underset{\displaystyle \mathrm{OH}}{\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{R'}$, formed from the aldehyde or ketone and the acid catalyst, except when the reaction is carried out in basic solution.

When an aromatic ring is treated with diethyl oxomalonate $(\mathrm{EtOOC})_2\mathrm{C{=}O}$, the product is an arylmalonic acid derivative $\mathrm{ArC(OH)\ (COOEt)_2}$, which can be converted to an arylmalonic acid $\mathrm{ArCH(COOEt)_2}$.[299] This is therefore a way of applying the malonic ester synthesis (**0-96**) to an aryl group (see also **3-14**). Of course, the opposite mechanism applies here: the aryl species is the nucleophile.

---

[295] For a review, see Hofmann and Schriesheim, in Olah, Ref. 237, vol. 2, pp. 597–640.

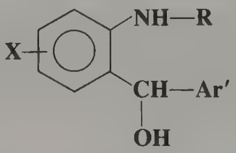
[296] See, for example, Casiraghi, Casnati, Puglia, and Sartori, *Synthesis* 124 (1980).

[297] For a review, see Schnell and Krimm, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 373–379 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 662–668].

[298] See, for example, Casiraghi, Casnati, Pochini, Puglia, Ungaro, and Sartori, *Synthesis* 143 (1981).

[299] Ghosh, Pardo, and Salomon, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4692 (1982).

Two methods, both involving boron-containing reagents, have been devised for the regioselective ortho hydroxymethylation of phenols or aromatic amines. In one of these methods, a phenol is treated with an aldehyde in the presence of benzeneboronic acid $PhB(OH)_2$ and a catalytic amount of propanoic acid to give an isolable adduct that can be oxidized or hydrolyzed to an ortho (hydroxyalkyl)phenol.[300] In the other method, an aromatic secondary amine ArNHR reacts with BCl_3 to give $ArNRBCl_2$, which is treated with an aromatic aldehyde Ar′CHO yielding, after hydrolysis, the secondary amine **35**.[301]

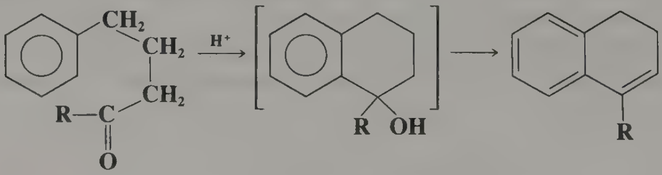


X = various groups

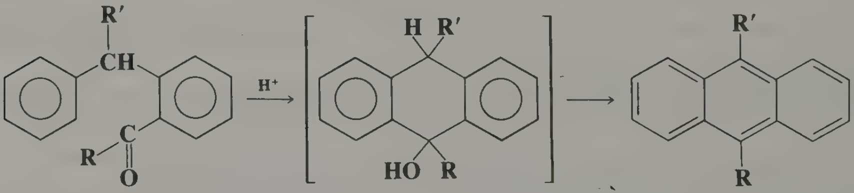
35

OS **III,** 326; **V,** 422; **55,** 45; **57,** 74. Also see OS **I,** 214.

1-25 Cyclodehydration of Aldehydes and Ketones



When an aromatic compound contains an aldehyde or ketone function in a position suitable for closing a six-membered ring, then treatment with acid results in cyclodehydration. The reaction is a special case of **1-24,** but in this case dehydration almost always takes place to give a double bond conjugated with the aromatic ring. The method is very general and is widely used to close both carbocyclic and heterocyclic rings. Polyphosphoric acid is a common reagent, but other acids have also been used. In a variation known as the *Bradsher reaction,*[302] diarylmethanes containing a carbonyl group in the ortho position can be cyclized to anthracene derivatives. In this case 1,4-dehydration takes place, at least formally.



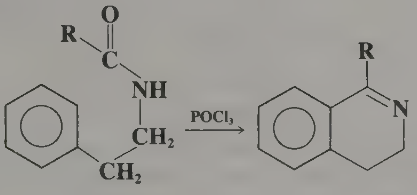
---

[300] Nagata, Okada, and Aoki, *Synthesis* 365 (1979).

[301] Sugasawa, Toyoda, Adachi, and Sasakura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4892 (1978).

[302] For examples, see Bradsher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **62,** 486 (1940); Vingiello and Henson, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1357 (1966); Saraf and Vingiello, *Synthesis* 655 (1970); Ashby, Ayad, and Meth-Cohn, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1104 (1973).

Among the many applications of cyclodehydration to the formation of heterocyclic systems is the *Bischler–Napieralski reaction.*[303] In this reaction amides of the type **36** are cyclized with phosphorus oxychloride:



36

If the starting compound contains a hydroxyl group in the α-position, an additional dehydration takes place and the product is an isoquinoline. Higher yields can be obtained if the amide is treated with PCl_5 to give an imino chloride $ArCH_2CH_2N{=}CR{-}Cl$, which is isolated and then cyclized by heating.[304] The nitrilium ion $ArCH_2CH_2\overset{\oplus}{N}{\equiv}CR$ is an intermediate.

OS **I,** 360, 478; **II,** 62, 194; **III,** 281, 300, 329, 568, 580, 581; **IV,** 590; **V,** 550; **56,** 3. Also see OS **I,** 54.

1-26 Haloalkylation or Haloalkyl-de-hydrogenation

$$\mathbf{ArH + HCHO + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} ArCH_2Cl}$$

When certain aromatic compounds are treated with formaldehyde and HCl, the CH_2Cl group is introduced into the ring in a reaction called *chloromethylation.* The reaction has also been carried out with other aldehydes and with HBr and HI. The more general term *haloalkylation* covers these cases.[305] The reaction is successful for benzene, and alkyl-, alkoxy-, and halobenzenes. It is greatly hindered by meta-directing groups, which reduce yields or completely prevent the reaction. Amines and phenols are too reactive and usually give polymers unless deactivating groups are also present, but phenolic ethers and esters successfully undergo the reaction. Compounds of lesser reactivity can often be chloromethylated with chloromethyl methyl ether $ClCH_2OMe$, bis(chloromethyl) ether $(ClCH_2)_2O$,[306] methoxyacetyl chloride $MeOCH_2COCl$,[307] or 1-chloro-4-(chloromethoxy)butane.[308] Zinc chloride is the most common catalyst, but other Friedel–Crafts catalysts are also employed. As with reaction **1-24** and for the same reason, an important side product is the diaryl compound Ar_2CH_2 (from formaldehyde).

Apparently, the initial step involves reaction of the aromatic compound with the aldehyde to form the hydroxyalkyl compound, exactly as in reaction **1-24,** and then the HCl converts this to the chloroalkyl compound.[309] The acceleration of the reaction by $ZnCl_2$ has been attributed[310] to the raising of the acidity of the medium, causing an increase in the concentration of $HOCH_2^+$ ions.

OS **III,** 195, 197, 468, 557; **IV,** 980.

---

[303] For a review of the mechanisms, see Fodor and Nagubandi, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1279–1300 (1980).

[304] Fodor, Gal, and Phillips, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 919 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 947].

[305] For reviews, see Belen'kii, Vol'kenshtein, and Karmanova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 891–903 (1978); Olah and Tolgyesi, in Olah, Ref. 237, vol. 2, pp. 659–784.

[306] Suzuki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 3299 (1970); Kuimova and Mikhailov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **7,** 1485 (1971).

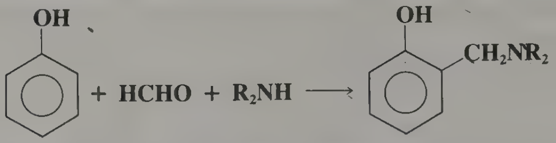
[307] McKillop, Madjdabadi, and Long, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1933 (1983).

[308] Olah, Beal, and Olah, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1627 (1976).

[309] Ziegler, Hontschik, and Milowiz, *Monatsh. Chem.* **78,** 334 (1947); Ziegler, *Monatsh. Chem.* **79,** 142 (1948); Ogata and Okano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 5423 (1956). See also Olah and Yu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2293 (1975).

[310] Lyushin, Mekhtiev, and Guseinova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **6,** 1445 (1970).

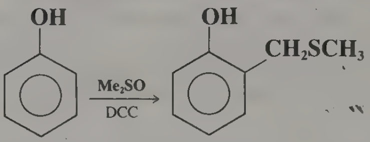
1-27 Aminoalkylation
Dialkylaminoalkylation or **Dialkylamino-de-hydrogenation**



Phenols, secondary and tertiary aromatic amines,[311] pyrroles, and indoles can be aminomethylated by treatment with formaldehyde and a secondary amine. Other aldehydes have sometimes been employed. Aminomethylation is a special case of the Mannich reaction (**6-16**).[311a]

OS **I,** 381; **IV,** 626; **V,** 434; **51,** 136; **60,** 49.

1-28 Thioalkylation
Alkylthioalkylation or **Alkylthioalkyl-de-hydrogenation**



A methylthiomethyl group can be inserted into the ortho position of phenols by heating with dimethyl sulfoxide and dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC).[312] Other reagents can be used instead of DCC, among them pyridine–SO_3[313] and acetic anhydride.[314] Alternatively, the phenol can be treated with dimethyl sulfide and N-chlorosuccinimide, followed by triethylamine.[315] The reaction can be applied to amines (to give o-$NH_2C_6H_4CH_2SMe$) by treatment with t-BuOCl, Me_2S, and NaOMe in CH_2Cl_2.[316] It is possible to convert the CH_2SMe group to the CHO group,[317] so that this becomes an indirect method for the preparation of ortho-amino and ortho-hydroxy aromatic aldehydes; or to the CH_3 group (with Raney nickel—reaction **4-37**), which makes this an indirect method[318] for the introduction of a CH_3 group ortho to an OH or NH_2 group.[316]

OS **56,** 15, 72.

1-29 Acylation with Nitriles. The Hoesch Reaction
Acylation or **Acyl-de-hydrogenation**

$$\mathrm{ArH + RCN \xrightarrow[ZnCl_2]{HCl} ArCOR}$$

Friedel–Crafts acylation with nitriles and HCl is called the *Hoesch* or the *Houben–Hoesch reaction*.[319] In most cases, a Lewis acid is necessary; zinc chloride is the most common. The reaction is generally useful only with phenols, phenolic ethers, and some reactive heterocyclic compounds, e.g., pyrrole, but it can also be extended to aromatic amines by the use of BCl_3.[320] Acylation in the case of amines is regioselectively ortho. Monohydric phenols, however, generally do not give ketones[321] but are attacked at the oxygen to produce imino esters. Many nitriles have been used.

---

[311] Miocque and Vierfond, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1896, 1901, 1907 (1970).

[311a] For a review of aromatic amidoalkylation, see Zaugg, *Synthesis* 85–110 (1984).

[312] Burdon and Moffatt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5855 (1966), **89,** 4725 (1967); Olofson and Marino, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 4195 (1971).

[313] Claus, *Monatsh. Chem.* **102,** 913 (1971).

[314] Hayashi and Oda, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 457 (1967); Pettit and Brown, *Can. J. Chem.* **45,** 1306 (1967); Claus, *Monatsh. Chem.* **99,** 1034 (1968). See also Claus, Vavra, and Schilling, *Monatsh. Chem.* **102,** 1072 (1972).

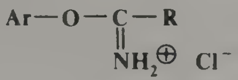
[315] Gassman and Amick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7611 (1978).

[316] Gassman and Gruetzmacher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 588 (1973); Gassman and van Bergen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 590, 591 (1973).

[317] Gassman and Drewes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7600 (1978); Ref. 315.

[318] For another indirect method, in this case for alkylation ortho to an amino group, see Gassman and Parton, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2055 (1977).

[319] For reviews, see Zil'berman, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 615–633 (1962); Ruske, in Olah, Ref. 237, vol. 3, pp. 383–497 (1964).

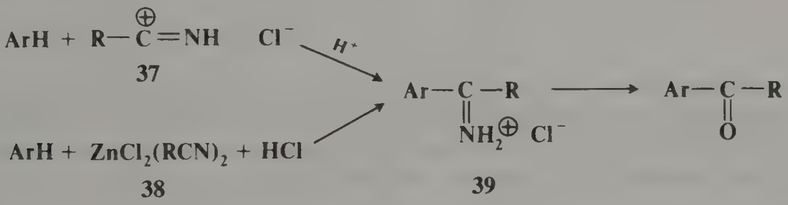


$$Ar—O—\underset{\underset{NH_2^{\oplus}}{\|}}{C}—R \quad Cl^-$$

An imino ester

Even aryl nitriles give good yields if they are first treated with HCl and $ZnCl_2$ and then the substrate added at 0°C.[322] In fact, this procedure increases yields with any nitrile. If thiocyanates RSCN are used, thiol esters ArCOSR can be obtained. The Gatterman reaction (**1-18**) is a special case of the Hoesch synthesis.

The reaction mechanism is complex and not completely settled.[323] The first stage consists of an attack on the substrate by a species containing the nitrile and HCl (and the Lewis acid, if present) to give an imine salt (**39**). Among the possible attacking species are **37** and **38.** In the second stage, the salts are hydrolyzed to the products:



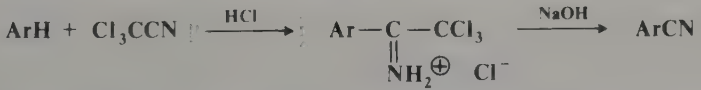
$$ArH + R—\overset{\oplus}{C}=NH \quad Cl^- \;\; (\mathbf{37}) \xrightarrow{H^+} Ar—\underset{\underset{NH_2^{\oplus}}{\|}}{C}—R \quad Cl^- \;\; (\mathbf{39}) \longrightarrow Ar—\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}—R$$

$$ArH + ZnCl_2(RCN)_2 + HCl \;\; (\mathbf{38}) \longrightarrow \mathbf{39}$$

Ketones can also be obtained by treating phenols or phenolic ethers with a nitrile in the presence of F_3CSO_2OH.[324] The mechanism in this case is different.

OS **II,** 522.

1-30 **Cyanation** or **Cyano-de-hydrogenation**



$$ArH + Cl_3CCN \xrightarrow{HCl} Ar—\underset{\underset{NH_2^{\oplus}}{\|}}{C}—CCl_3 \quad Cl^- \xrightarrow{NaOH} ArCN$$

Aromatic hydrocarbons (including benzene), phenols, and phenolic ethers can be cyanated with trichloroacetonitrile, BrCN, or mercury fulminate $Hg(ONC)_2$.[325] In the case of Cl_3CCN, the actual attacking entity is probably $Cl_3C—\overset{\oplus}{C}=NH$, formed by addition of a proton to the cyano nitrogen.

OS **III,** 293.

F. Oxygen Electrophiles Oxygen electrophiles are very uncommon, since oxygen does not bear a positive charge very well. However, there is one reaction that can be mentioned.

---

[320] Ref. 301; Sugasawa, Adachi, Sasakura, and Kitagawa, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 578 (1979).

[321] For an exception, see Toyoda, Sasakura, and Sugasawa, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 189 (1981).

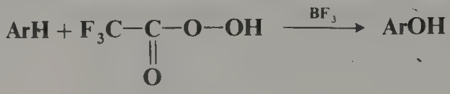
[322] Zil'berman and Rybakova, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **30,** 1972 (1960).

[323] For discussions, see Ref. 319 and Jeffery and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 579 (1966).

[324] Booth and Noori, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2894 (1980); Amer, Booth, Noori, and Proença, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1075 (1983).

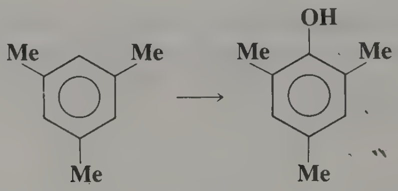
[325] Olah, in Olah, Ref. 195, vol. 1, pp. 119–120 (1963).

1-31 **Hydroxylation** or **Hydroxy-de-hydrogenation**



$$\mathrm{ArH} + \mathrm{F_3C{-}\overset{}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}}{-}O{-}OH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{BF_3}} \mathrm{ArOH}$$

There have been only a few reports of direct hydroxylation by an electrophilic process (see, however, **2-24, 3-20,** and **4-5**).[326] In general, poor results are obtained, partly because the introduction of an OH group activates the ring to further attack. Quinone formation is common. However, alkyl-substituted benzenes such as mesitylene or durene can be hydroxylated in good yield with trifluoroperacetic acid and boron trifluoride.[327] In the case of mesitylene, the product is not subject to further attack:



Low to moderate yields of phenols can be obtained by treatment of simple alkylbenzenes with H_2O_2 in HF-BF_3[328] or H_2O_2 catalyzed by $AlCl_3$[329] or liquid HF, in some cases under CO_2 pressure.[330] With the latter procedure even benzene could be converted to phenol in 37% yield (though 37% hydroquinone and 16% catechol were also obtained).

G. Metal Electrophiles Reactions in which a metal replaces the hydrogen of an aromatic ring are considered along with their aliphatic counterparts in Chapter 12 (**2-19** and **2-20**).

Hydrogen as the Leaving Group in Rearrangement Reactions

In these reactions a group is detached from a *side chain* and then attacks the ring, but in other aspects they resemble the reactions already treated in this chapter.[331] Since a group moves from one position to another in a molecule, these are rearrangements. In all these reactions the question arises as to whether the group that cleaves from a given molecule attacks the same molecule or another one, i.e., is the reaction intramolecular or intermolecular? For intermolecular reactions the mechanism is the same as ordinary aromatic substitution, but for intramolecular cases the migrating group could never be completely free, or else it would be able to attack another molecule. Since the migrating species in intramolecular rearrangements is thus likely to remain near the atom from which it cleaved, intramolecular reactions are more likely to lead to ortho products than are the intermolecular type; and this characteristic has been used, among others, to help decide whether a given rearrangement is inter- or intramolecular.

---

[326] For a review of electrophilic hydroxylation, see Norman and Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 110–116.

[327] Hart and Buehler, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2397 (1964). See also Hart, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 337–343 (1971).

[328] Olah, Fung, and Keumi, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4305 (1981). See also Gesson, Jacquesy, and Jouannetaud, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **6,** 477 (1982).

[329] Kurz and Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3184 (1971).

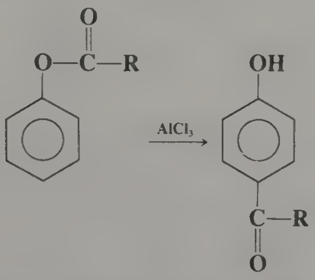
[330] Vesely and Schmerling, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 4028 (1970). For other hydroxylations, see Chambers, Goggin, and Musgrave, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1804 (1959); Hamilton and Friedman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1008 (1963); Kovacic and Morneweck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1566 (1965); Kovacic and Kurz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4811 (1965), *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2011, 2549 (1966); Walling and Camaioni, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1603 (1975); So and Miller, *Synthesis* 468 (1976); Ogata, Sawaki, Tomizawa, and Ohno, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 1485 (1981); Galliani and Rindone, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2313 (1981).

[331] For a monograph, see Shine, "Aromatic Rearrangements," American Elsevier, New York, 1967. For reviews, see Williams, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 1, pp. 433–486; Dewar, in Mayo, "Molecular Rearrangements," vol. 1, pp. 295–299, 306–323, Interscience, New York, 1963.

The Claisen (**8-37**) and benzidine (**8-40**) rearrangements, which superficially resemble those in this section, have different mechanisms and are treated in Chapter 18.

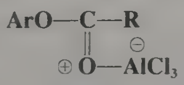
A. Groups Cleaving from Oxygen

1-32 The Fries Rearrangement



Phenolic esters can be rearranged by heating with Friedel–Crafts catalysts in a synthetically useful reaction known as the *Fries rearrangement*.[332] Both *o*- and *p*-acylphenols may be produced, and it is often possible to select conditions so that either one predominates. The ortho/para ratio is dependent on the temperature, solvent, and amount of catalyst used. Though exceptions are known, low temperatures generally favor the para product and high temperatures the ortho product. R may be aliphatic or aromatic. Any meta-directing substituent on the ring interferes with the reaction, as might be expected for a Friedel–Crafts process. In the case of aryl benzoates treated with F_3CSO_2OH, the Fries rearrangement was shown to be reversible and an equilibrium was established.[333]

The exact mechanism has still not been completely worked out. Opinions have been expressed that it is completely intermolecular,[334] completely intramolecular,[335] and partially inter- and intramolecular.[336] One way to decide between inter- and intramolecular processes is to run the reaction of the phenolic ester in the presence of another aromatic compound, say, toluene. If some of the toluene is acylated, then the reaction must be, at least in part, intermolecular. If the toluene is not acylated, the presumption is that the reaction is intramolecular, though this is not certain, for it may be that the toluene is not attacked because it is less active than the other. A number of such experiments (called *crossover experiments*) have been carried out; sometimes crossover products have been found and sometimes not. As in reaction **1-15,** an initial complex (**40**) is formed between



$$\begin{array}{l}\mathrm{ArO{-}C{-}R} \\ \qquad\ \ \| \quad \ominus \\ \qquad\!\!\oplus\mathrm{O{-}AlCl_3}\end{array}$$

40

---

[332] For reviews, see Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 72–82, 365–368; Gerecs, in Olah, Ref. 237, vol. 3, pp. 499–533 (1964).

[333] Effenberger and Gutmann, *Chem. Ber.* **115,** 1089 (1982).

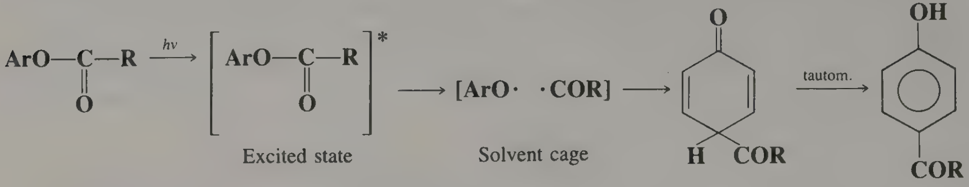
[334] Krausz and Martin, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2192 (1965); Martin, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 983 (1974), II-373 (1979).

[335] Ogata and Tabuchi, *Tetrahedron* **20,** 1661 (1964).

[336] Munavilli, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 293 (1972); Warshawsky, Kalir, and Patchornik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4544 (1978).

the substrate and the catalyst, so that a catalyst/substrate molar ratio of at least 1:1 is required. There is evidence that both a mono- (**40**) and a di-$AlCl_3$ catalyst can be formed.[337]

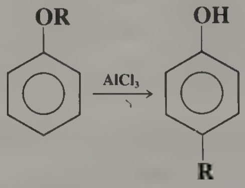
The Fries rearrangement can also be carried out with uv light, in the absence of a catalyst.[338] This reaction, called the *photo-Fries rearrangement*,[339] is predominantly an intramolecular free-radical process. Both ortho and para migration are observed. Unlike the Lewis-acid-catalyzed Fries rearrangement, the photo-Fries reaction can be accomplished, though often in low yields, when meta-directing groups are on the ring. The available evidence strongly suggests the following mechanism[340] for the photo-Fries rearrangement[341] (illustrated for para attack):



The phenol ArOH is always a side product, resulting from some ArO· that leaks from the solvent cage and abstracts a hydrogen atom from a neighboring molecule. When the reaction was performed on phenyl acetate in the gas phase, where there are no solvent molecules to form a cage (but in the presence of isobutane as a source of abstractable hydrogens), phenol was the chief product and virtually no *o*- or *p*-hydroxyacetophenone was found.[342] Other evidence for the mechanism is that CIDNP (p. 163) has been observed during the course of the reaction[343] and that the ArO• radical has been detected by flash photolysis[344] and by nanosecond time-resolved Raman spectroscopy.[345]

OS **II,** 543; **III,** 280, 282.

1-33 Rearrangement of Phenolic Ethers



This reaction bears the same relationship to reaction **1-32** that reaction **1-13** bears to **1-15.**[346] However, yields are generally low and this reaction is much less useful synthetically. Isomerization of the R group usually is found when that is possible. Evidence has been found for both inter- and intramolecular processes. The fact that dialkylphenols can often be isolated shows that at least some intermolecular processes occur. Evidence for intramolecular reaction is that conversion of optically active *p*-tolyl *sec*-butyl ether to 2-*sec*-butyl-4-methylphenol proceeded with some retention of configuration,[347] and that rearrangement of benzyl phenyl ethers (with $AlBr_3$ or $AlCl_3$) takes place with virtually exclusive ortho migration.[348] The mechanism is probably similar to that of reaction **1-13.** In at least some cases the reaction can proceed without a catalyst. For example, simple heating at 250°C of phenyl benzyl ether gave *o*- and *p*-benzylphenol.[349]

---

[337] Cullinane, Woolhouse, and Edwards, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3842 (1961).

[338] Kobsa, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 2293 (1962); Anderson and Reese, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1781 (1963); Finnegan and Matice, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 1015 (1965).

[339] For reviews, see Belluš, *Adv. Photochem.* **8,** 109–159 (1971); Belluš and Hrdlovič, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 599–609 (1967); Stenberg, *Org. Photochem.* **1,** 127–153 (1967).

[340] Proposed by Kobsa, Ref. 338.

[341] It has been suggested that a second mechanism, involving a four-center transition state, is also possible: Belluš, Schaffner, and Hoigné, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **51,** 1980 (1968); Sander, Hedaya, and Trecker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7249 (1968); Belluš, Ref. 339.

[342] Meyer and Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2187 (1970), **94,** 2219 (1972).

[343] Adam, Arce de Sanabia, and Fischer, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2571 (1973); Adam, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 289 (1974).

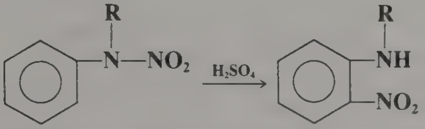
[344] Kalmus and Hercules, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 449 (1974).

[345] Beck and Brus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1805 (1982).

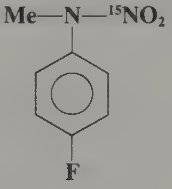
[346] For reviews, see Dalrymple, Kruger, and White, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Ether Linkage," Ref. 36, pp. 628–635; Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 82–89, 368–370.

B. Groups Cleaving from Nitrogen[350] It has been shown that $\text{Ph}\overset{\oplus}{\text{N}}\text{H}_2\text{D}$ rearranges to *o*- and *p*-deuterioaniline.[351] The migration of OH, formally similar to reactions **1-34** to **1-38,** is a nucleophilic substitution and is treated in Chapter 13 (reaction **3-28**).

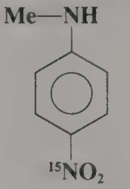
1-34 Migration of the Nitro Group



N-Nitro aromatic amines rearrange on treatment with acids to give *o*- and *p*-nitroamines with the ortho compounds predominating.[352] Aside from this indication of an intramolecular process, there is also the fact that virtually no meta isomer is produced in this reaction,[353] though direct nitration of an aromatic amine generally gives a fair amount of meta product. Thus a mechanism in which NO_2^+ is dissociated from the ring and then attacks another molecule must be ruled out. Further results indicating an intramolecular process are that rearrangement of several substrates in the presence of $K^{15}NO_3$ gave products containing no ^{15}N[354] and that rearrangement of a mixture of $PhNH^{15}NO_2$ and unlabeled *p*-$MeC_6H_4NHNO_2$ gave 2-nitro-4-methylaniline containing no ^{15}N.[355] On the other hand, rearrangement of **41** in the presence of unlabeled $PhNMeNO_2$ gave labeled **42,** which did not arise by displacement of F.[356] R may be hydrogen or alkyl.



41



42

Two principal mechanisms have been suggested, one involving cyclic attack by the oxygen of the nitro group at the ortho position before the group cleaves,[357] and the other involving a cleavage into a radical and a radical ion held together in a solvent cage.[358] Among the evidence for the latter view[359] are the effects of substituents on the rate of the reaction[360] and the fact that both N-methylaniline and nitrous acid are produced in sizable and comparable amounts in addition to the normal products *o*- and *p*-nitro-N-methylaniline.[361] These side products are formed when the radicals escape from the solvent cage.

---

[347] Sprung and Wallis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **56,** 1715 (1934). See also Hart and Elia, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 3031 (1954).

[348] Tarbell and Petropoulos, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 244 (1952); Palmer and McVie, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 742 (1968).

[349] Elkobaisi and Hickinbottom, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1873 (1959), 1286 (1960).

[350] For a review, see Stevens and Watts, "Selected Molecular Rearrangements," pp. 192–199, Van Nostrand Reinhold Company, London, 1973.

[351] Okazaki and Okumura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **34,** 989 (1961).

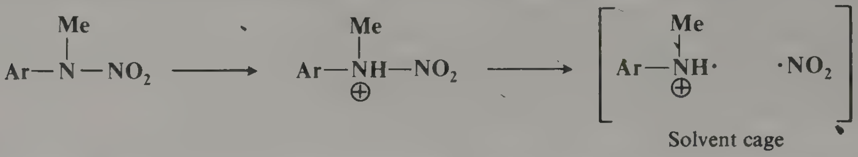
[352] For reviews, see Williams, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 1, pp. 127–153, Wiley, New York, 1982; White, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 109–143 (1971); Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 235–249.

[353] Hughes and Jones, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2678 (1950).

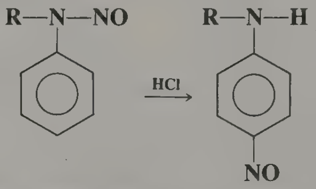
[354] Brownstein, Bunton, and Hughes, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4354 (1958); Banthorpe, Thomas, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.* 6135 (1965).

[355] Geller and Dubrova, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **30,** 2627 (1960).

[356] White and Golden, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2759 (1970).

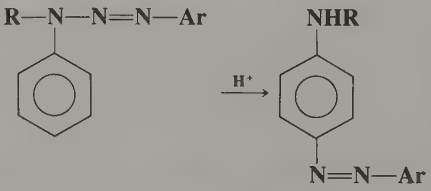


1-35 Migration of the Nitroso Group. The Fischer–Hepp Rearrangement



The migration of a nitroso group, formally similar to reaction **1-34,** is important because *p*-nitroso secondary aromatic amines cannot generally be prepared by direct C-nitrosation of secondary aromatic amines (see **2-50**). The reaction, known as the *Fischer–Hepp rearrangement*,[362] is brought about by treatment of N-nitroso secondary aromatic amines with HCl. Other acids give poor or no results. In benzene systems the para product is exclusively formed. The mechanism of the rearrangement is not completely understood. The fact that the reaction takes place in a large excess of urea[363] shows that it is intramolecular[364] since, if NO^+, NOCl, or some similar species were free in the solution, it would be captured by the urea, preventing the rearrangement. The exclusive formation of para product is puzzling, since this is not what we would expect from an intramolecular rearrangement.

1-36 Migration of an Arylazo Group



---

[357] Banthorpe, Hughes, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5349 (1964); Banthorpe and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc.* 7149, 7158 (1965). Also see Ref. 354.

[358] White, Lazdins, and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1517 (1964); White, White, and Fentiman, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3166 (1976).

[359] For additional evidence, see White, Hathaway, and Huston, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 737 (1970); White, Golden, and Lazdins, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2048 (1970); White and Klink, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 166 (1977); Ridd and Sandall, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 261 (1982).

[360] White and Klink, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 965 (1970).

[361] White and White, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1803 (1970).

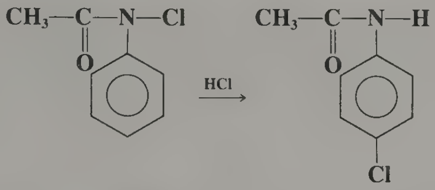
[362] For reviews, see Williams, Ref. 352; Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 231–235.

[363] Aslapovskaya, Belyaev, Kumarev, and Porai-Koshits, *Org. React. USSR* **5,** 189 (1968); Morgan and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkins Trans. 2* 74 (1972).

[364] See also Belyaev and Nikulicheva, *Org. React. USSR* **7,** 165 (1971); Williams and Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 13 (1974); Biggs and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 601 (1976); Williams, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **7,** 215 (1975); *Tetrahedron* **31,** 1343 (1975); *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 655 (1975); Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 801 (1982).

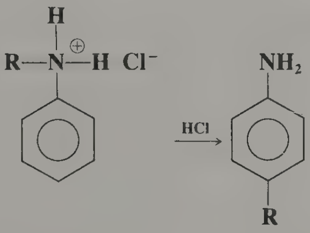
Rearrangement of aryl triazenes can be used to prepare azo derivatives of primary and secondary aromatic amines.[365] These are first diazotized at the amino group (see **1-4**) to give triazenes, which are then rearranged by treatment with acid. The rearrangement always gives the para isomer, unless that position is occcupied. The reaction is probably intermolecular,[366] with ArN_2^+ as the migrating species.[367]

1-37 Migration of Halogen. The Orton Rearrangement



Migration of a halogen from a nitrogen side chain to the ring by treatment with HCl is called the *Orton rearrangement*.[368] The main product is the para isomer, though some ortho product may also be formed. The reaction has been carried out with N-chloro- and N-bromoamines and less often with N-iodo compounds. The amine must be acylated, except that $PhNCl_2$ gives 2,4-dichloroaniline. The reaction is usually performed in water or acetic acid. There is much evidence (cross-halogenation, labeling, etc.) that this is an intermolecular process.[369] First the HCl reacts with the starting material to give $ArNHCOCH_3$ and Cl_2; then the chlorine halogenates the ring as in reaction **1-12.** Among the evidence for this is that chlorine has been isolated from the reaction mixture. The Orton rearrangement can also be brought about photochemically[370] and by heating in the presence of benzoyl peroxide.[371] These are free-radical processes.

1-38 Migration of an Alkyl Group[372]



When HCl salts of arylalkylamines are heated at about 200 to 300°C, migration occurs. This is called the *Hofmann–Martius reaction*. It is an intermolecular reaction, since crossing is found. For example, methylanilinium bromide gave not only the normal products *o*- and *p*-toluidine but also aniline and di- and trimethylanilines.[373] As would be expected for an intermolecular process, there is isomerization when R is primary.

---

[365] For reviews, see Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 212–221; Zollinger, Ref. 120, pp. 182–187.

[366] See, however, Ogata, Nakagawa, and Inaishi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 2853 (1981).

[367] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Ref. 122.

[368] For reviews, see Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 221–230, 362–364; Bieron and Dinan, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Amides," pp. 263–269, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[369] The reaction has been found to be intramolecular in aprotic solvents: Golding, Reddy, Scott, White, and Winter, *Can. J. Chem.* **59,** 839 (1981).

[370] For example, see Hodges, *J. Chem. Soc.* 240 (1933).

[371] For example, see Ayad, Beard, Garwood, and Hickinbottom, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2981 (1957); Coulson, Williams, and Johnston, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 174 (1967).

[372] For reviews, see Grillot, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 237–270 (1971); Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 249–257.

[373] Ogata, Tabuchi, and Yoshida, *Tetrahedron* **20,** 2717 (1964).

With primary R, the reaction probably goes through the alkyl halide formed initially in an SN2 reaction:

$$\overset{\oplus}{\text{R}}\text{NH}_2\text{Ar} + \text{Cl}^- \longrightarrow \text{RCl} + \text{ArNH}_2$$

Evidence for this view is that alkyl halides have been isolated from the reaction mixture and that Br^-, Cl^-, and I^- gave different ortho/para ratios, which indicates that the halogen is involved in the reaction.[373] Further evidence is that the alkyl halides isolated are unrearranged (as would be expected if they are formed by an SN2 mechanism), even though the alkyl groups in the ring are rearranged. Once the alkyl halide is formed, it reacts with the substrate by a normal Friedel–Crafts alkylation process (**1-13**), accounting for the rearrangement. When R is secondary or tertiary, carbocations may be directly formed so that the reaction does not go through the alkyl halides.[374]

It is also possible to carry out the reaction by heating the amine (not the salt) at a temperature between 200 and 350°C with a metal halide such as $CoCl_2$, $CdCl_2$, or $ZnCl_2$. When this is done, the reaction is called the *Reilly–Hickinbottom rearrangement*. Primary R groups larger than ethyl give both rearranged and unrearranged products.[375] The reaction is not generally useful for secondary and tertiary R groups, which are usually cleaved to olefins under these conditions. The mechanism of the Reilly–Hickinbottom rearrangement is probably similar to that of the Hofmann–Martius rearrangement.

When acylated arylamines are photolyzed, migration of an acyl group takes place[376] in a process that resembles the photo-Fries reaction (**1-32**). N,N-disubstituted amides ArNR′COR also give the reaction. An N-acyl group can also be caused to migrate by treatment with $BiCl_3$.[377]

Other Leaving Groups

Three types of reactions are considered in this section.

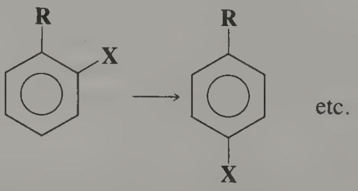
1. Reactions in which hydrogen replaces another leaving group:

$$\text{ArX} + \text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \text{ArH}$$

2. Reactions in which an electrophile other than hydrogen replaces another leaving group:

$$\text{ArX} + \text{Y}^+ \longrightarrow \text{ArY}$$

3. Reactions in which a group (other than hydrogen) migrates from one position in a ring to another. Such migrations may be either inter- or intramolecular.



The three types are not treated separately, but reactions are classified by leaving group.

---

[374] Hart and Kosak, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 116 (1962).

[375] For example, see Birchall, Clark, Goldwhite, and Thorpe, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2579 (1972).

[376] For examples, see Elad, Rao, and Stenberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3252 (1965); Shizuka and Tanaka, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **41,** 2343 (1968), **42,** 909 (1969); Fischer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4295 (1968); Hageman, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **91,** 1447 (1972); Chênevert and Plante, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 1092 (1983).

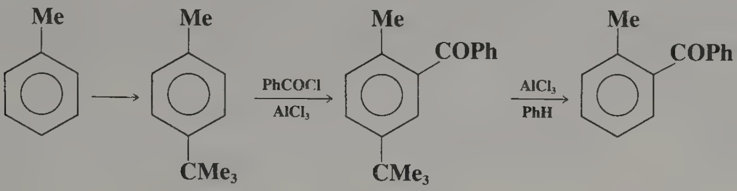
[377] Basha, Ahmed, and Farooqui, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3217 (1976).

A. Carbon Leaving Groups

1-39 Reversal of Friedel–Crafts Alkylation
Hydro-de-alkylation or **Dealkylation**

$$\mathrm{ArR} + \mathrm{H}^+ \xrightarrow{\mathrm{AlCl_3}} \mathrm{ArH}$$

Alkyl groups may be cleaved from aromatic rings by treatment with proton and/or Lewis acids. Tertiary R groups are the most easily cleaved; because this is true, the *t*-butyl group is occasionally introduced into a ring, used to direct another group, and then removed.[378] For example,[379]



Secondary R groups are harder to cleave, and primary R harder still. Because of this reaction, care must be taken when using Friedel–Crafts catalysts (Lewis or proton acids) on aromatic compounds containing alkyl groups. True cleavage, in which the R becomes an olefin, occurs only at high temperatures—above 400°C.[380] At ordinary temperatures, the R group attacks another ring, so that the bulk of the product may be dealkylated, but there is a residue of heavily alkylated material. The isomerization reaction, in which a group migrates from one position in a ring to another or to a different ring, is therefore more important than true cleavage. In these reactions, the meta isomer is generally the most favored product among the dialkylbenzenes; and the 1,3,5 product the most favored among the trialkylbenzenes, because they have the highest thermodynamic stabilities. Alkyl migrations may be inter- or intramolecular, depending on the conditions and on the R group. The following experiments can be cited: ethylbenzene treated with HF and $\mathrm{BF_3}$ gave, almost completely, benzene and diethylbenzenes[381] (entirely intermolecular); propylbenzene labeled in the β-position gave benzene, propylbenzene, and di- and tripropylbenzenes, but the propylbenzene recovered was partly labeled in the α-position and not at all in the γ-position[382] (both intra- and intermolecular); *o*-xylene treated with HBr and $\mathrm{AlBr_3}$ gave a mixture of *o*- and *m*- but no *p*-xylene, while *p*-xylene gave *p*- and *m*- but no *o*-xylene, and no trimethyl compounds could be isolated in these experiments[383] (exclusively intramolecular rearrangement). Apparently, methyl groups migrate only intramolecularly, while other groups may follow either path.[384]

The mechanism[385] of intermolecular rearrangement may involve free alkyl cations, but there is much evidence to show that this is not necessarily the case. For example, many of them occur without rearrangement within the alkyl group. The following mechanism has been proposed for intermolecular rearrangement without the involvement of carbocations that are separated from the ring.[386]

---

[378] For reviews of such reactions, where the blocking group is *t*-butyl, benzyl, or a halogen, see Tashiro, *Synthesis* 921–936 (1979); Tashiro and Fukata, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **8,** 51–74 (1976).

[379] Hofman, Reiding, and Nauta, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **79,** 790 (1960).

[380] Olah, in Olah, Ref. 237, vol. 1, pp. 36–38 (1963).

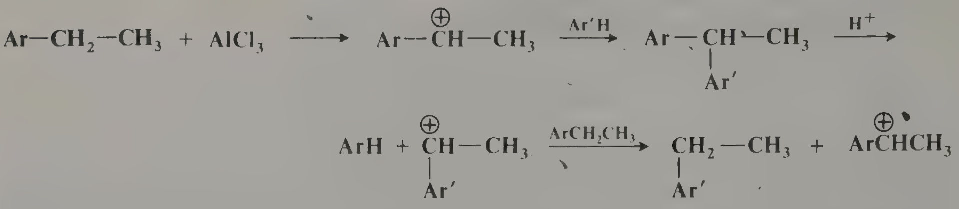
[381] McCaulay and Lien, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2407 (1953); For similar results, see Roberts and Roengsumran, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3689 (1981); Bakoss, Roberts, and Sadri, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4053 (1982).

[382] Roberts and Brandenberger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5484 (1957); Roberts and Douglass, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1225 (1963).

[383] Brown and Jungk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 5579 (1955); Allen and Yats, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5289 (1959).

[384] Allen, Alfrey, and Yats, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 42 (1959); Allen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4856 (1960).

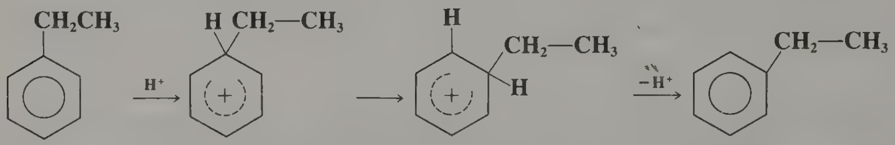
[385] For a review of the mechanism of this and closely related reactions, see Shine, Ref. 331, pp. 1–55.



$$\mathrm{Ar{-}CH_2{-}CH_3 + AlCl_3 \longrightarrow Ar{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H{-}CH_3 \xrightarrow{Ar'H} Ar{-}\underset{\displaystyle Ar'}{CH}{-}CH_3 \xrightarrow{H^+}}$$

$$\mathrm{ArH + \underset{\displaystyle Ar'}{\overset{\oplus}{C}H}{-}CH_3 \xrightarrow{ArCH_2CH_3} \underset{\displaystyle Ar'}{CH_2}{-}CH_3 + Ar\overset{\oplus}{C}HCH_3}$$

Evidence for this mechanism is that optically active $PhCHDCH_3$ labeled in the ring with ^{14}C and treated with $GaBr_3$ in the presence of benzene gave ethylbenzene containing no deuterium and two deuteriums and that the rate of loss of radioactivity was about equal to the rate of loss of optical activity.[386] The mechanism of intramolecular rearrangement is not very clear. 1,2 shifts of this kind have been proposed:[387]



There is evidence from ^{14}C labeling that intramolecular migration occurs only through 1,2 shifts.[388] Any 1,3 or 1,4 migration takes place by a series of two or more 1,2 shifts.

Phenyl groups have also been found to migrate. Thus *o*-terphenyl, heated with $AlCl_3$-H_2O, gave a mixture containing 7% *o*-, 70% *m*-, and 23% *p*-terphenyl.[389] Alkyl groups have also been replaced by groups other than hydrogen, e.g., nitro groups.

Unlike alkylation, Friedel–Crafts *acylation* has been generally considered to be an irreversible reaction, but reversibility has been demonstrated in certain instances.[390]

OS **V,** 332. Also see OS **III,** 282, 653; **V,** 598.

1-40 Decarbonylation of Aromatic Aldehydes
Hydro-de-formylation or **Deformylation**

$$\mathrm{ArCHO \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} ArH + CO}$$

The decarbonylation of aromatic aldehydes with H_2SO_4[391] is the reverse of **1-17.** It has been carried out with trialkyl- and trialkoxybenzaldehydes. The reaction takes place by the ordinary arenium ion mechanism: the attacking species is H^+ and the leaving group is HCO^+, which can lose a proton to give CO or combine with OH^- from the water solvent to give formic acid.[392] Aromatic aldehydes have also been decarbonylated over Pd,[393] and with basic catalysts.[394] When basic catalysts are used, the mechanism is probably similar to the SE1 process of reaction **1-41.** See also **4-26.**

---

[386] Streitwieser and Reif, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1988 (1964).

[387] Olah, Meyer, and Overchuk, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2313 (1964).

[388] See, for example, Steinberg and Sixma, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **81,** 185 (1962); Koptyug, Isaev, and Vorozhtsov, *Doklad. Akad. Nauk SSSR* **149,** 100 (1963).

[389] Olah and Meyer, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3682 (1962).

[390] See Agranat, Bentor, and Shih, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7068 (1977); Andreou, Bulbulian, Gore, Morris, and Short, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 830 (1981).

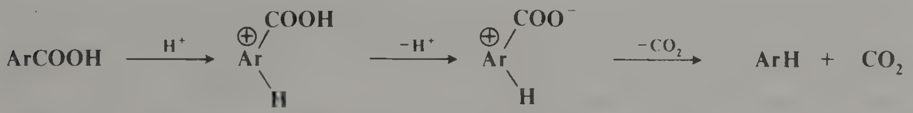
[391] For reviews of the mechanism, see Schubert and Kintner, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 1, pp. 695–760, Interscience, New York, 1966; Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 316–323.

[392] Burkett, Schubert, Schultz, Murphy, and Talbott, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3923 (1959).

1-41 Decarboxylation of Aromatic Acids
Hydro-de-carboxylation or **Decarboxylation**

$$\mathrm{ArCOOH} \xrightarrow[\text{quinoline}]{\text{Cu}} \mathrm{ArH} + \mathrm{CO_2}$$

The decarboxylation of aromatic acids is most often carried out by heating with copper and quinoline. However, two other methods can be used with certain substrates. In one method the salt of the acid ($\mathrm{ArCOO^-}$) is heated, and in the other the carboxylic acid is heated with a strong acid, often sulfuric. The latter method is accelerated by the presence of electron-donating groups in ortho and para positions and by the steric effect of groups in the ortho positions; in benzene systems it is generally limited to substrates that contain such groups. In this method decarboxylation takes place by the arenium ion mechanism,[395] with $\mathrm{H^+}$ as the electrophile and $\mathrm{CO_2}$ as the leaving group.[396]



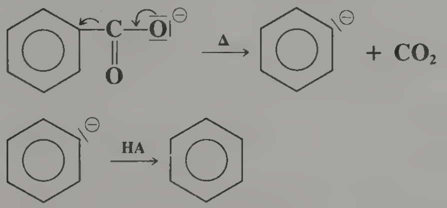
$$\mathrm{ArCOOH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H^+}} \overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{Ar}}(\mathrm{COOH})(\mathrm{H}) \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{H^+}} \overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{Ar}}(\mathrm{COO^-})(\mathrm{H}) \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{CO_2}} \mathrm{ArH} + \mathrm{CO_2}$$

Evidently, the order of electrofugal ability is $\mathrm{CO_2} > \mathrm{H^+} > \mathrm{COOH^+}$, so that it is necessary, at least in most cases, for the COOH to lose a proton before it can cleave.

When carboxylate *ions* are decarboxylated, the mechanism is entirely different, being essentially of the SE1 type. Evidence for this mechanism is that the reaction is first order and that electron-withdrawing groups, which would stabilize a carbanion, facilitate the reaction.

Step 1

Step 2



Despite its synthetic importance, the mechanism of the copper–quinoline method has been studied very little, but it has been shown that the actual catalyst is cuprous ion.[397] In fact, the reaction proceeds much faster if the acid is heated in quinoline with cuprous oxide instead of copper, provided that atmospheric oxygen is rigorously excluded. A mechanism has been suggested in which it is the cuprous salt of the acid that actually undergoes the decarboxylation.[397] According to this suggestion the aryl group of $\mathrm{ArCOO^-}$ is coordinated with $\mathrm{Cu^+}$ which helps to stabilize the negative charge that develops on the ring as the $\mathrm{CO_2}$ cleaves. The resulting $\mathrm{Ar^-}$ (coordinated with $\mathrm{Cu^+}$) rearranges to give ArCu which then reacts with some molecule in the solution (reaction

---

[393] Hawthorne and Wilt, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 2215 (1960).

[394] Bunnett, Miles, and Nahabedian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2512 (1961); Forbes and Gregory, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 205 (1968).

[395] For a review, see Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 303–316.

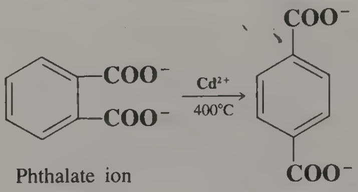
[396] See, for example, Los, Rekker and Tonsbeek, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **86,** 622 (1967); Longridge and Long, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3092 (1968); Huang and Long, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2872 (1969); Willi, Cho, and Won, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 663 (1970).

[397] Cohen and Schambach, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3189 (1970). See also Chodowska-Palicka and Nilsson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **24,** 3353 (1970).

1-47) to give the product. It has been shown that cuprous salts of aromatic acids are easily decarboxylated by heating in quinoline[398] and that arylcopper compounds are intermediates that can be isolated in some cases.[398]

In certain cases the carboxyl group can be replaced by electrophiles other than hydrogen, e.g., NO[399] or Br.[400]

Rearrangements are also known to take place. For example, when the phthalate ion is heated with a catalytic amount of cadmium, the terphthalate ion (**43**) is produced:[401]



Phthalate ion

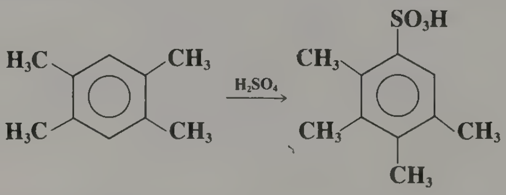
43

In a similar process, potassium benzoate heated with cadmium salts disproportionates to benzene and **43.** The term *Henkel reaction* (named for the company that owns the patents) is used for these rearrangements.[402] An S_E1 mechanism has been suggested.[403] The terphthalate is the main product, because it crystallizes from the reaction mixture, driving the equilibrium in that direction.[404]

For aliphatic decarboxylation, see reaction **2-39.**

OS **I,** 274, 455, 541; **II,** 100, 214, 217, 341; **III,** 267, 272, 471, 637; **IV,** 590, 628; **V,** 635, 813, 982, 985. Also see OS **I,** 56.

1-42 The Jacobsen Reaction



When polalkyl- or polyhalobenzenes are treated with sulfuric acid, the ring is sulfonated, but rearrangement also takes place. The reaction, known as the *Jacobsen reaction,* is limited to benzene rings that have at least four substituents, which may be any combination of alkyl and halogen groups, where the alkyl groups may be ethyl or methyl and the halogen iodo, chloro, or bromo. When isopropyl or *t*-butyl groups are on the ring, these groups are cleaved to give olefins. Since a sulfo group can later be removed (reaction **1-44**), the Jacobsen reaction can be used as a means of rearranging polyalkylbenzenes. The rearrangement always brings the alkyl or halo groups closer together than they were originally. Side products in the case illustrated above are pentamethylbenzenesulfonic acid, 2,4,5-trimethylbenzenesulfonic acid, etc., indicating an intermolecular process, at least partially.

---

[398] Cairncross, Roland, Henderson, and Sheppard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3187 (1970); Cohen, Berninger, and Wood, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 837 (1978).

[399] For example, see Ibne-Rasa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4962 (1962); Tedder and Theaker, *J. Chem. Soc.* 257 (1959).

[400] For example, see Grovenstein and Ropp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2560 (1956).

[401] Raecke, *Angew. Chem.* **70,** 1 (1958); Riedel and Kienitz, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 738 (1960); Ogata, Hojo, and Morikawa, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 2082 (1960); McNelis, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1209 (1965); Ogata and Nakajima, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 2393 (1965); Ratuský and Šorm, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1798 (1966).

[402] For a review, see Ratuský, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Acid Derivatives," pt. 2, pp. 915–944, Wiley, New York, 1979.

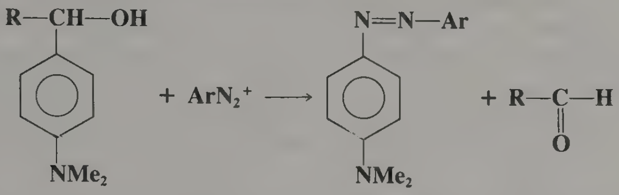
[403] See, for example, Ratuský, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **32,** 2504 (1967), **37,** 2436 (1972), **38,** 74, 87 (1973).

[404] Ratuský, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1093 (1967), *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **33,** 2346 (1968).

The mechanism of the Jacobsen reaction is not established,[405] but a likely possibility is attack by a sulfonating species (see reaction **1-7**) at an ipso position, with the alkyl group thus freed migrating inter- or intramolecularly to another position. However, other mechanisms have also been suggested, including one that involves a radical cation intermediate.[406] It has been shown by labeling that ethyl groups migrate without internal rearrangement.[407]

1-43 The Stiles–Sisti Reaction

Arylazo-de-hydroxyalkyl-substitution



α-Hydroxyalkyl groups are replaced by azo groups when there is a dialkylamino group in the para position. The reaction is similar to reaction **1-4,** except that the leaving group is not hydrogen. The reaction is used to prepare aldehydes[408] and ketones.[409]

α-Hydroxyalkyl groups have also been replaced by halogen.[410] In this case too, best results are obtained when there is an activating group in the para position.

OS **V,** 46.

B. Sulfur Leaving Groups

1-44 Desulfonation or **Hydro-de-sulfonation**

$$ArSO_3H \xrightarrow[\text{dil. } H_2SO_4]{135\text{–}200°C} ArH + H_2SO_4$$

The cleavage of sulfo groups from aromatic rings is the reverse of reaction **1-7.**[411] By the principle of microscopic reversibility, the mechanism is also the reverse. Dilute H_2SO_4 is generally used, as the reversibility of sulfonation decreases with increasing H_2SO_4 concentration. The reaction permits the sulfo group to be used as a blocking group to direct meta and then to be removed. The sulfo group has also been replaced by nitro and halogen groups. Sulfo groups have also been removed from the ring by heating with an alkaline solution of Raney nickel.[412] In another catalytic process, aromatic sulfonyl bromides or chlorides are converted to aryl bromides or chlorides, respectively, on heating with chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium(I).[413] This reaction is similar to the decarbonylation of aromatic acyl halides mentioned in **4-40.**

---

[405] For discussions, see Suzuki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **36,** 1642 (1963); Koeberg-Telder and Cerfontain, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 717 (1977); Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 22–32, 48–55; Cerfontain, Ref. 141, pp. 214–226.

[406] Bohlmann and Riemann, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 1515 (1964).

[407] Marvell and Webb, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4408 (1962).

[408] Stiles and Sisti, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 1691 (1960); Sisti, Burgmaster, and Fudim, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 279 (1962).

[409] Sisti, Sawinski, and Stout, *J. Chem. Eng. Data* **9,** 108 (1964).

[410] Clarke and Esselen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **33,** 1135 (1911); Sarkanen and Dence, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 715 (1960); Arnett and Klingensmith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1023, 1032, 1038 (1965).

[411] For reviews, see Cerfontain, Ref. 141, pp. 185–214; Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 349–355; Gilbert, Ref. 139, pp. 427–442.

[412] Feigl, *Angew. Chem.* **73,** 113 (1961).

$$\mathrm{ArSO_2Br} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{RhCl(PPh_3)_3}} \mathrm{ArBr}$$

OS **I,** 388; **II,** 97; **III,** 262; **IV,** 364. Also see OS **I,** 519; **II,** 128; **V,** 1070.

C. Halogen Leaving groups

1-45 Dehalogenation or Hydro-de-halogenation

$$\mathrm{ArX} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{AlCl_3}} \mathrm{ArH}$$

Aryl halides can be dehalogenated by Friedel–Crafts catalysts. Iodine is the most easily cleaved. Dechlorination is seldom performed and defluorination apparently never. The reaction is most successful when a reducing agent, say, $\mathrm{Br^-}$ or $\mathrm{I^-}$, is present to combine with the $\mathrm{I^+}$ or $\mathrm{Br^+}$ coming off.[414] Except for deiodination, the reaction is seldom used for preparative purposes. Migration of halogen is also found, both intramolecular and intermolecular.[415] An example of the latter was conversion of *p*-dibromobenzene to a mixture containing 6% *o*-, 59% *m*-, and 35% *p*-dibromobenzene, as well as bromobenzene and some tribromobenzenes, by heating at 200°C with $\mathrm{AlBr_3}$.[416] On the other hand, radioactive labeling showed that the $\mathrm{AlCl_3}$-catalyzed isomerization of *o*-dichlorobenzene to a mixture consisting mostly of *m*-dichlorobenzene was largely intramolecular.[417] The mechanism is probably the reverse of that of reaction **1-12.**[418]

Rearrangement of polyhalobenzenes can also be catalyzed by very strong bases; e.g., 1,2,4-tribromobenzene is converted to 1,3,5-tribromobenzene by treatment with PhNHK.[419] This reaction, which involves aryl carbanion intermediates (SE1 mechanism), has been called the *halogen dance*.[420]

Removal of halogen from aromatic rings can also be accomplished by various reducing agents, among them $\mathrm{Ph_3SnH}$,[421] HI, Sn and HBr, $\mathrm{Ph_3P}$,[422] Cu and $\mathrm{H_2O}$,[423] Zn and an acid or base,[424] sodium formate and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium $\mathrm{(Ph_3P)_4Pd}$,[425] catalytic hydrogenation,[426] $\mathrm{LiAlH_4}$,[427] $\mathrm{LiAlH_4}$ irradiated with light[428] or with ultrasound,[429] $\mathrm{NaAlH_4}$,[430] $\mathrm{NaBH_4}$ and a catalyst,[431]

---

[413] Blum and Scharf, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1895 (1970).

[414] Pettit and Piatak, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 721 (1960).

[415] Olah, Tolgyesi, and Dear, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3441, 3449, 3455 (1962); de Valois, van Albada, and Veenland, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 1835 (1968); Olah, Meidar, and Olah, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **3,** 275 (1979).

[416] Kooyman and Louw, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **81,** 365 (1962); Augustijn, Kooyman, and Louw, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **82,** 965 (1963).

[417] Koptyug, Isaev, Gershtein, and Berezovskii, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **34,** 3830 (1964); Erykalov, Becker, and Belokurova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **4,** 2054 (1968). For another intramolecular example, see Jacquesy and Jouannetaud, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1673 (1982).

[418] Choguill and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 822 (1961); Ref. 385; Ref. 415.

[419] Moyer and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1891 (1963).

[420] Bunnett and McLennan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2190 (1968); Bunnett, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 139–147 (1972); Mach and Bunnett, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4660 (1980).

[421] Lorenz, Shapiro, Stern, and Becker, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2332 (1963); Neumann and Hillgärtner, *Synthesis* 537 (1971).

[422] Hoffmann and Michael, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 528 (1962).

[423] Sokolenko, L'vova, Tyurin, Platonov, and Yakobson, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **6,** 2508 (1970).

[424] Tashiro and Fukuta, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 835 (1977). See also Colon, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2622 (1982).

[425] Helquist, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1913 (1978). See also Pandey and Purkayastha, *Synthesis* 876 (1982).

[426] For example, see Kämmerer, Happel, and Böhmer, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **8,** 245 (1976).

[427] Karabatsos and Shone, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 619 (1968); Brown and Krishnamurthy, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3918 (1969); Virtanen and Jaakkola, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1223 (1969); Ricci, Danieli, and Pirazzini, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **105,** 37 (1975); Chung and Chung, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2473 (1979). Evidence for a free-radical mechanism has been found in this reaction; see Chung and Filmore, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 358 (1983); Beckwith and Goh, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 905 (1983).

[428] Beckwith and Goh, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 907 (1983).

[429] Han and Boudjouk, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1643 (1982).

[430] Zakharkin, Gavrilenko, and Rukasov, *Dokl. Chem.* **205,** 551 (1972).

[431] Egli, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **51,** 2090 (1968); Bosin, Raymond, and Buckpitt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4699 (1974); Lin and Roth, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 309 (1979).

NaH,[432] and Raney nickel in alkaline solution,[433] the latter method being effective for fluorine as well as for the other halogens. Not all these reagents operate by electrophilic substitution mechanisms. Some are nucleophilic substitutions and some are free-radical processes. Photochemical reduction is also known.[434] Halogen can also be removed from aromatic rings indirectly by conversion to Grignard reagents (**2-37**) followed by hydrolysis (**2-22**).

OS **III**, 132, 475, 519; **V**, 149, 346, 998; **52**, 62; **59**, 71.

1-46 Formation of Organometallic Compounds

$$\mathbf{ArBr + M \longrightarrow ArM}$$

$$\mathbf{ArBr + RM \longrightarrow ArM + RBr}$$

These reactions are considered along with their aliphatic counterparts (reactions **2-37** and **2-38**).

D. Metal Leaving Groups

1-47 Hydrolysis of Organometallic Compounds

Hydro-de-metallation or **Demetallation**

$$\mathbf{ArM + H^+ \longrightarrow ArH + M^+}$$

Organometallic compounds can be hydrolyzed by acid treatment. For active metals such as Mg, Li, etc., water is sufficiently acidic. The most important example of this reaction is hydrolysis of Grignard reagents, but M may be many other metals or metalloids. Examples are SiR_3, HgR, Na, and $B(OH)_2$. Since aryl Grignard and aryllithium compounds are fairly easy to prepare, they are often used to prepare salts of weak acids, e.g.,

$$\mathbf{PhMgBr + H{-}C{\equiv}C{-}H \longrightarrow H{-}C{\equiv}C^- \quad MgBr^+ + PhH}$$

Where the bond between the metal and the ring is covalent, the usual arenium ion mechanism operates.[435] Where the bonding is essentially ionic, this is a simple acid–base reaction. Other electrophiles can replace metals. For example, azo compounds can be prepared by attack of diazonium ions on arylzinc or arylmercury compounds[436] or on Grignard reagents,[437] and aryltrimethylsilanes $ArSiMe_3$ react with acyl chlorides in the presence of $AlCl_3$ to give ketones ArCOR.[438] For the aliphatic counterpart of this reaction, see reaction **2-22.**

Other reactions of aryl organometallic compounds are treated with their aliphatic analogs: reactions **2-23** through **2-35.**

---

[432] Nelson and Gribble, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1425 (1974).

[433] Buu-Hoï, Xuong, and van Bac, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2442 (1963); de Koning, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **7,** 31 (1975).

[434] See, for example, Pinhey and Rigby, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1267, 1271 (1969); Barltrop and Bradbury, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5085 (1973).

[435] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Taylor, Ref. 1, pp. 278–303, 324–349.

[436] Curtin and Tveten, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 1764 (1961).

[437] Nomura, Anzai, Tarao, and Shiomi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 967 (1964).

[438] Dey, Eaborn, and Walton, *Organomet. Chem. Synth.* **1,** 151–160 (1971).

12

ALIPHATIC ELECTROPHILIC SUBSTITUTION

In Chapter 11 it was pointed out that the most important leaving groups in electrophilic substitution are those which can best exist with an outer shell that is deficient in a pair of electrons. For aromatic systems the most common leaving group is the proton. The proton is also a leaving group in aliphatic systems, but the reactivity depends on the acidity. Protons in saturated alkanes are very unreactive, but electrophilic substitutions are often easily carried out at more acidic positions, e.g., α to a carbonyl group, or at an alkynyl position (RC≡CH). Since metallic ions are easily able to bear positive charges, we might expect that organometallic compounds would be especially susceptible to electrophilic substitution, and this is indeed the case.[1] Another important type of electrophilic substitution, known as *anionic cleavage,* involves the breaking of C—C bonds; in these reactions there are carbon leaving groups (**2-39** to **2-45**). A number of electrophilic substitutions at a nitrogen atom are treated at the end of the chapter.

Since a carbanion is what remains when a positive species is removed from a carbon atom, the subject of carbanion structure and stability (Chapter 5) is inevitably related to the material in this chapter. So is the subject of very weak acids and very strong bases (Chapter 8), because the weakest acids are those in which the hydrogen is bonded to carbon.

MECHANISMS

The mechanistic picture for aliphatic electrophilic substitution is less clear than for aliphatic nucleophilic substitution (Chapter 10) or aromatic electrophilic substitution (Chapter 11). However, we can distinguish at least four possible major mechanisms,[2] which we call SE1, SE2 (front), SE2 (back), and SEi. The SE1 is unimolecular; the other three are bimolecular.

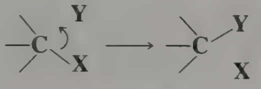
---

[1] For books on the preparation and reactions of organometallic compounds, see Negishi, "Organometallics in Organic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1980; Coates, Green, and Wade, "Organometallic Compounds," 3d ed., 2 vols., Methuen, London, 1967–1968; Eisch, "The Chemistry of Organometallic Compounds," Macmillan, New York, 1967. For reviews, see Maslowsky, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **9,** 25–40 (1980), and in Tsutsui, "Characterization of Organometallic Compounds," Interscience, New York, 1969–1971, the articles by Cartledge and Gilman, pt. 1, pp. 1–33, and by Reichle, pt. 2, pp. 653–826.

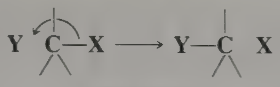
[2] For monographs, see Abraham, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," Bamford and Tipper, Eds., vol. 12, American Elsevier, New York, 1973; Jensen and Rickborn, "Electrophilic Substitution of Organomercurials," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1968; Reutov and Beletskaya, "Reaction Mechanisms of Organometallic Compounds," North-Holland Publishing Company, Amsterdam, 1968. For reviews, see Beletskaya, *Sov. Sci. Rev., Sect. B,* **1,** 119–204 (1979); Reutov, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **50,** 717–724 (1978), **17,** 79–94 (1968); *Tetrahedron* **34,** 2827–2855 (1978); *J. Organomet. Chem.* **100,** 219–235 (1975), *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 163–174 (1967), *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **8,** 61–90 (1967); Matteson, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **4,** 263–305 (1969); Dessy and Kitching, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **4,** 267–351 (1966); Ingold, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **47,** 1191–1203 (1964) [reprinted in *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **25,** 145–158 (1964)]; Köbrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 382–393 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 453–465]; Dessy and Paulik, *J. Chem. Educ.* **40,** 185–194 (1963).

Bimolecular Mechanisms. SE2 and SEi

The bimolecular mechanisms for electrophilic aliphatic substitution are analogous to the SN2 mechanism (p. 256) in that the new bond forms as the old one breaks. However, in the SN2 mechanism the incoming group brings with it a pair of electrons, and this orbital can overlap with the central carbon only to the extent that the leaving group takes away *its* electrons; otherwise the carbon would have more than eight electrons at once in its outer shell. Since electron clouds repel, this means also that the incoming group attacks backside, at a position 180° from the leaving group, so that inversion of configuration is found. When the attacking species is an electrophile, which brings to the substrate only a vacant orbital, it is obvious that this consideration does not apply and we cannot a priori predict from which direction the attack must come. We can imagine two main possibilities: attack from the front, which we call SE2 (front), and attack from the rear, which we call SE2 (back). These possibilities can be pictured (charges not shown):

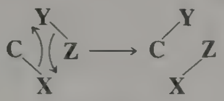


SE2 (front)



SE2 (back)

With substrates in which we can distinguish the possibility, the former mechanism should result in retention of configuration and the latter in inversion. When the electrophile attacks from the front, there is a third possibility. A portion of the electrophile may assist in the removal of the leaving group, forming a bond with it at the same time that the new C—Y bond is formed:



SEi

This mechanism, which we call the SEi mechanism,[3] also results in retention of configuration.[4] Plainly, where a second-order mechanism involves this kind of internal assistance, backside attack is impossible.

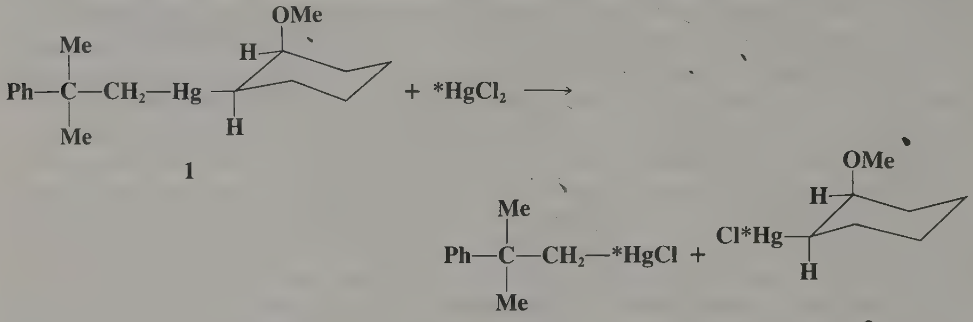
It is evident that these three mechanisms are not easy to distinguish. All three give second-order kinetics, and two result in retention of configuration.[5] In fact, although much work has been done on this question, there are few cases in which we can unequivocally say that one of these three and not another is actually taking place. Clearly, a study of the stereochemistry can distinguish between SE2 (back) on the one hand and SE2 (front) or SEi on the other. Many such investigations have been made. In the overwhelming majority of second-order electrophilic substitutions, the result has been retention of configuration or some other indication of frontside attack, indicating an SE2 (front) or SEi mechanism. For example, when *cis*-**1** was treated with labeled mercuric chloride, the **2** produced was 100% cis. The bond between the mercury and the ring must have been broken (as well as the other Hg—C bond), since each of the products contained about half of the labeled mercury.[6] Another indication of frontside attack is that second-order electrophilic substitutions proceed very easily at *bridgehead* carbons (see p. 258).[7] Still another indication is the behavior of neopentyl as a substrate. SN2 reactions at neopentyl are extremely slow (p. 299), because attack from the rear is blocked. The fact that neopentyl systems undergo electrophilic substitution only slightly more slowly than ethyl[8] is further evidence for frontside attack. One final elegant experiment may be noted. The compound di-*sec*-butylmercury was prepared with one *sec*-butyl group optically active and the other racemic.[9] This was accomplished by treatment of optically active *sec*-butylmercuric bromide with racemic *sec*-butylmagnesium bromide. The di-*sec*-butyl compound was then treated with mercuric bromide to give 2 moles of *sec*-butylmercuric bromide. The steric course of the reaction could then be predicted by the following analysis, assuming that the bonds between the mercury and each carbon have a 50% chance of breaking.

---

[3] The names for these mechanisms vary throughout the literature. For example, the SEi mechanism has also been called the SF2, the SE2 (closed), and the SE2 (cyclic) mechanism. The original designations, SE1, SE2, etc., were devised by the Hughes–Ingold school.

[4] It has been contended that the SEi mechanism violates the principle of conservation of orbital symmetry (p. 751), and that the SE2 (back) mechanism partially violates it: Slack and Baird, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5539 (1976).

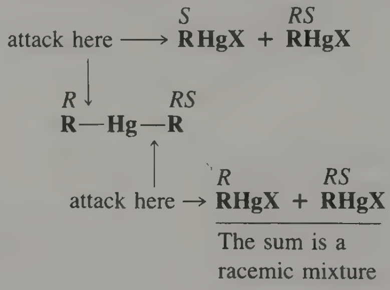
[5] For a review of the stereochemistry of reactions in which a carbon–transition metal σ bond is formed or broken, see Flood, *Top. Stereochem.* **12,** 37–117 (1981). See also Ref. 10.


OMe
Me
H
Ph—C—CH₂—Hg
Me
H
+ *HgCl₂
OMe
H
Me
Ph—C—CH₂—*HgCl +
Cl*Hg
Me
H

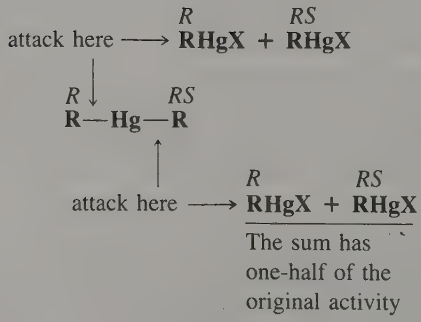
1

2

If inversion,


S
RS
attack here
RHgX + RHgX
R
RS
R—Hg—R
attack here
R
RS
RHgX + RHgX
The sum is a racemic mixture

If retention,


R
RS
attack here
RHgX + RHgX
R
RS
R—Hg—R
attack here
R
RS
RHgX + RHgX
The sum has one-half of the original activity

---

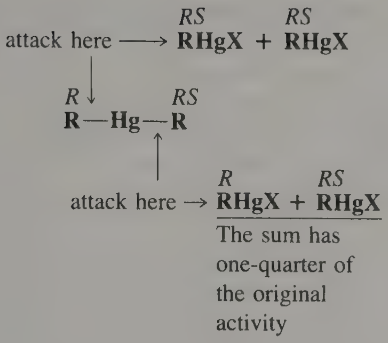
[6] Winstein, Traylor, and Garner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3741 (1955).

[7] Winstein and Traylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2597 (1956); Schöllkopf, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 147–159 (1960). For a discussion, see Fort and Schleyer, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 283–370 (1966), pp. 353–370.

[8] Hughes and Volger, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2359 (1961).

[9] Jensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2469 (1960); Ingold, Ref. 2.

If racemization,



The original activity referred to is the activity of the optically active *sec*-butylmercuric bromide used to make the dialkyl compound. The actual result was that, under several different sets of conditions, the product had one-half of the original activity, demonstrating retention of configuration.

On the other hand, inversion of configuration has been found in certain cases, demonstrating that the S_E2 (back) mechanism can take place. For example, the reaction of optically active *sec*-butyltrineopentyltin with bromine (**2-28**) gives inverted *sec*-butyl bromide.[10] A number of other

$$sec\text{-}\mathbf{BuSnR_3} + \mathbf{Br_2} \longrightarrow sec\text{-}\mathbf{BuBr} \qquad \mathbf{R} = \text{neopentyl}$$

organometallic compounds have also been shown to give inversion when treated with halogens,[11] although others do not.[12] So far, no inversion has been found with an organomercury substrate. It may be that still other examples of backside attack exist[13] but have escaped detection because of the difficulty in preparing compounds with a configurationally stable carbon–metal bond. Compounds that are chiral because of an asymmetric carbon at which a carbon–metal bond is located are often difficult to resolve and once resolved are often easily racemized. The resolution has been accomplished most often with organomercury compounds,[14] and most stereochemical investigations have therefore been made with these substrates. Only a few optically active Grignard reagents have been prepared[15] (i.e., in which the only asymmetric center is the carbon bonded to the magnesium). Because of this, the steric course of electrophilic substitutions at the C—Mg bond has not often been determined. However, in one such case, the reaction of both the exo and endo isomers of the 2-norbornyl Grignard reagent with $HgBr_2$ (to give 2-norbornylmercuric bromide) has been shown to proceed with retention of configuration.[16] It is likely that inversion takes place only when

[10] Jensen and Davis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4048 (1971). For a review of the stereochemistry of S_E2 reactions with organotin substrates, see Fukuto and Jensen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 177–184 (1983).

[11] For example, see Applequist and Chmurny, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 875 (1967); Glaze, Selman, Ball, and Bray, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 641 (1969); Brown and Lane, *Chem. Commun.* 521 (1971); Jensen, Madan, and Buchanan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5283 (1971); Espenson and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1008 (1974); Bock, Boschetto, Rasmussen, Demers, and Whitesides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2814 (1974); Magnuson, Halpern, Levitin, and Vol'pin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 44 (1978).

[12] See, for example, Rahm and Pereyre, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 1672 (1977); McGahey and Jensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4397 (1979).

[13] Cases of inversion involving replacement of a metal by a metal have been reported. See Tada and Ogawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2639 (1973); Fritz, Espenson, Williams, and Molander, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2378 (1974); Gielen and Fosty, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **83,** 333 (1974); Bergbreiter and Rainville, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **121,** 19 (1976).

[14] Organomercury compounds were first resolved by three groups: Jensen, Whipple, Wedegaertner, and Landgrebe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1262 (1959); Charman, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2523, 2530 (1959); Reutov and Uglova, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 735 (1959).

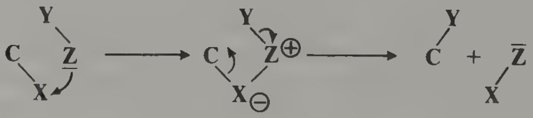
[15] This was done first by Walborsky and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3288 (1964).

[16] Jensen and Nakamaye, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3437 (1966).

steric hindrance prevents frontside attack and when the electrophile does not carry a Z group (p. 513).

The SE2 (back) mechanism can therefore be identified in certain cases (if inversion of configuration is found), but it is plain that stereochemical investigations cannot distinguish between the SE2 (front) and the SEi mechanisms and that, in the many cases where configurationally stable substrates cannot be prepared, such investigations are of no help at all in distinguishing among all three of the second-order mechanisms. Unfortunately, there are not many other methods that lead to unequivocal conclusions. One method that has been used in an attempt to distinguish between the SEi mechanism on the one hand and the SE2 pathways on the other involves the study of salt effects on the rate. It may be recalled (p. 316) that reactions in which neutral starting molecules acquire charges in the transition state are aided by an increasing concentration of added ions. Thus the SEi mechanism would be less influenced by salt effects than would either of the SE2 mechanisms. On this basis Abraham and co-workers[17] concluded that the reactions $R_4Sn + HgX_2 \rightarrow RHgX + R_3SnX$ ($X = Cl$ or I) take place by SE2 and not by SEi mechanisms. Similar investigations involve changes in solvent polarity[18] (see also p. 522). Information from salt-effect studies can be put on a quantitative basis; the extent of charge separation in the transition state (Z) can be calculated from the kinetic values.[19] A high value of Z means an "open" transition state (SE2), while a low value indicates a "closed" transition state (SEi).

On the basis of evidence from reactivity studies, it has been suggested[20] that a variation of the SEi mechanism is possible in which the group Z becomes attached to X before the latter becomes detached:



This process has been called the SEC[20] or SE2 (co-ord)[21] mechanism.

It has been shown that in certain cases (e.g., $Me_4Sn + I_2$) the reactants in an SE2 reaction, when mixed, give rise to an immediate charge-transfer spectrum (p. 75), showing that an electron donor–acceptor (EDA) complex has been formed.[22] In these cases it is likely that the EDA complex is an intermediate in the reaction.

The SE1 Mechanism

The SE1 mechanism is analogous to the SN1 (p. 259). It involves two steps—a slow ionization and a fast combination.

Step 1 $\quad R{-}X \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} \bar{R}^- + X^+$

Step 2 $\quad \bar{R}^- + Y^+ \longrightarrow R{-}Y$

---

[17] Abraham and Spalding, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 784 (1969); Abraham and Johnston, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 188 (1970).

[18] See, for example, Abraham and Dorrell, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 444 (1973).

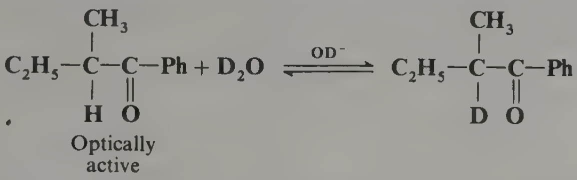
[19] Abraham and Behbahany, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 1469 (1971).

[20] Abraham and Hill, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **7,** 11 (1967).

[21] Abraham, Ref. 2, p. 15.

[22] Fukuzumi and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2141, 7290 (1980).

First-order kinetics are predicted and many such examples have been found. Other evidence for the SE1 mechanism was obtained in a study of base-catalyzed tautomerism. In the reaction

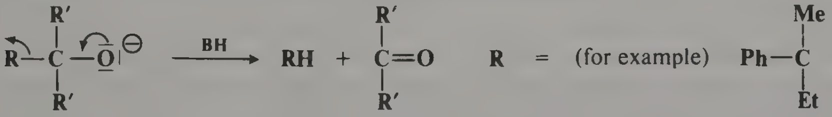


$$C_2H_5-\underset{H}{\overset{CH_3}{C}}-\underset{O}{\overset{}{C}}-Ph + D_2O \xrightleftharpoons{OD^-} C_2H_5-\underset{D}{\overset{CH_3}{C}}-\underset{O}{C}-Ph$$

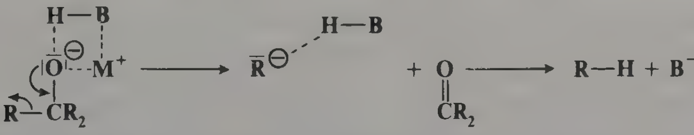
the rate of deuterium exchange was the same as the rate of racemization[23] and there *was* an isotope effect.[24] SN1 reactions do not proceed at bridgehead carbons in small bicyclic systems (p. 261) because planar carbocations cannot form at these carbons. However, carbanions not stabilized by resonance are probably not planar; SE1 reactions should readily occur with this type of substrate. This is the case.

Indeed, the question of carbanion structure is intimately tied into the problem of the stereochemistry of the SE1 reaction. If a carbanion is planar, racemization should occur. If it is pyramidal and *can hold its structure,* the result should be retention of configuration. On the other hand, even a pyramidal carbanion will give racemization if it cannot hold its structure, i.e., if there is an umbrella effect as with amines (p. 86). Unfortunately, the only carbanions that can be studied easily are those stabilized by resonance, which makes them planar, as expected (p. 156). For simple alkyl carbanions, the main approach to determining structure has been to study the stereochemistry of SE1 reactions rather than the other way around. What is found is almost always racemization. Whether this is caused by planar carbanions or by oscillating pyramidal carbanions is not known. In either case racemization occurs whenever a carbanion is completely free or is symmetrically solvated.

However, even planar carbanions need not give racemization. Cram found that retention and even inversion can occur in the alkoxide cleavage reaction (**2-40**):



which is a first-order SE1 reaction involving resonance-stabilized planar carbanions (here designated R^-).[25] By changing the solvent Cram was able to produce products ranging from 99% retention to 60% inversion and including complete racemization. These results are explained by a carbanion that is not completely free but is solvated. In nondissociating, nonpolar solvents such as benzene or dioxane, the alkoxide ion exists as an ion pair, which is solvated by the solvent BH:



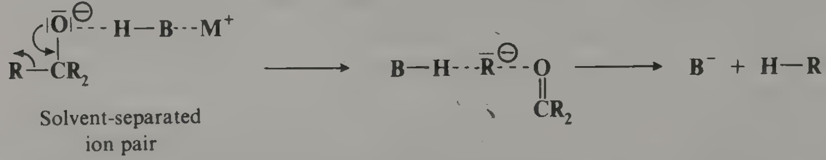
In the course of the cleavage, the proton of the solvent moves in to solvate the newly forming carbanion. As is easily seen, this solvation is asymmetrical since the solvent molecule is already on the front side of the carbanion. When the carbanion actually bonds with the proton, the result is retention of the original configuration. In protic solvents, such as diethylene glycol, a good deal of inversion is found. In these solvents, the *leaving group* solvates the carbanion, so that the solvent can solvate it only from the opposite side:

---

[23] Hsu, Ingold, and Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 78 (1938).

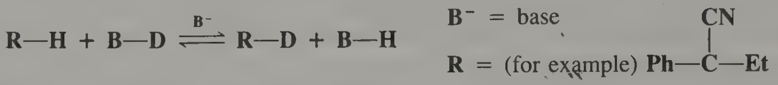
[24] Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1550 (1936).

[25] See Cram, Langemann, Allinger, and Kopecky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5740 (1959); Hoffman and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1009 (1969). For a discussion, see Cram, "Fundamentals of Carbanion Chemistry," pp. 138–158, Academic Press, New York, 1965.



When C—H bond formation occurs, the result is inversion. Racemization results in polar aprotic solvents like dimethyl sulfoxide. In these solvents the carbanions are relatively long-lived (because the solvent has no proton to donate) and symmetrically solvated.

Similar behavior was found for carbanions generated by base-catalyzed hydrogen exchange (reaction **2-1**):[26]

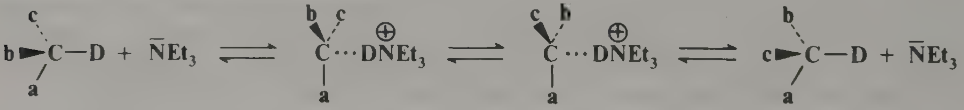


$$\mathrm{R{-}H + B{-}D \xrightleftharpoons{B^-} R{-}D + B{-}H}$$

$\mathrm{B^-}$ = base

$\mathrm{R} = $ (for example) $\mathrm{Ph{-}C(CN){-}Et}$

In this case information was obtained from measurement of the ratio of k_e (rate constant for isotopic exchange) to k_α (rate constant for racemization). A k_e/k_α ratio substantially greater than 1 means retention of configuration, since many individual isotopic exchanges are not producing a change in configuration. A k_e/k_α ratio of about 1 indicates racemization and a ratio of $\frac{1}{2}$ corresponds to inversion (see p. 258). All three types of steric behavior were found, depending on R, the base, and the solvent. As with the alkoxide cleavage reaction, retention was generally found in solvents of low dielectric constant, racemization in polar aprotic solvents, and inversion in protic solvents. However, in the proton exchange reactions, a fourth type of behavior was encountered. In aprotic solvents, with aprotic bases like tertiary amines, the k_e/k_α ratio was found to be *less* than 0.5, indicating that racemization took place *faster* than isotopic exchange (this process is known as *isoracemization*). Under these conditions, the conjugate acid of the amine remains associated with the carbanion as an ion pair. Occasionally, the ion pair dissociates long enough for the carbanion to turn over and recapture the proton:

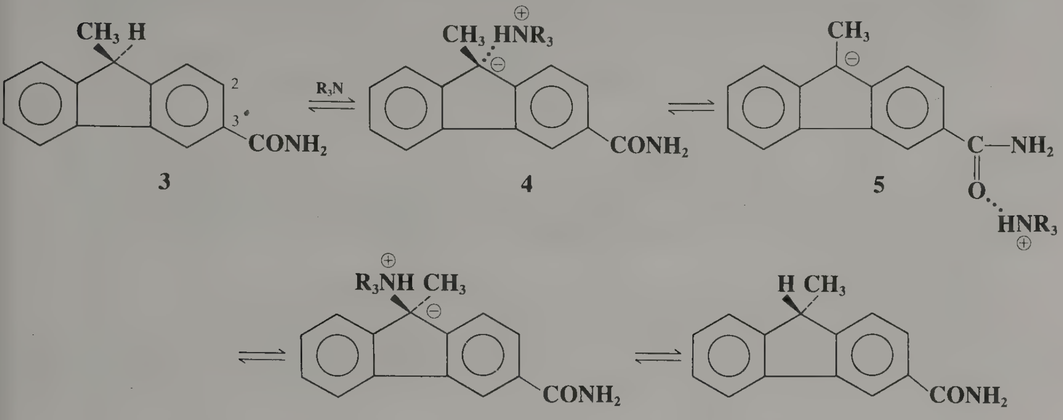


Thus, inversion (and hence racemization, which is produced by repeated acts of inversion) occurs without exchange. A single act of inversion without exchange is called *isoinversion*.

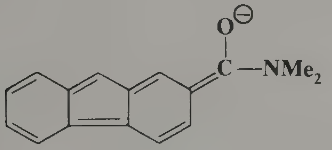
The isoinversion process can take place by a pathway in which a positive species migrates in a stepwise fashion around a molecule from one nucleophilic position to another. For example, in the exchange reaction of 3-carboxamido-9-methylfluorene (**3**) with $\mathrm{Pr_3N}$ in *t*-BuOH, it has been proposed that the amine removes a proton from the 9 position of **3** and conducts the proton out to the C=O oxygen (**5**), around the molecule, and back to C-9 on the opposite face of the anion. Collapse of **6** gives the inverted product **7**. Of course **5** could also go back to **3**, but a molecule that undergoes the total process **3** → **4** → **5** → **6** → **7** has experienced an inversion without an exchange. Evidence for this pathway, called the *conducted tour mechanism*,[27] is that the 2-carboxamido isomer of **3** does not give isoracemization. In this case the negative charge on the oxygen atom in the anion corresponding to **5** is less, because a canonical form in which oxygen acquires a full negative charge (**8**) results in disruption of the aromatic sextet in both benzene rings (compare **9** where one benzene ring is intact). Whether the isoracemization process takes place by the conducted tour mechanism or a simple nonstructured contact ion-pair mechanism depends on the nature of the substrate (e.g., a proper functional group is necessary for the conducted tour mechanism) and of the base.[28]

---

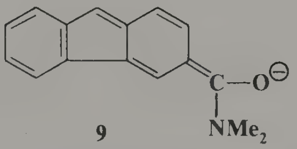
[26] See Cram, Kingsbury, and Rickborn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3688 (1961); Cram and Gosser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3890 (1963), **86,** 5445, 5457 (1964); Roitman and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2225, 2231 (1971); Cram and Cram, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* 7(3), 1–17 (1973). For a discussion, see Cram, Ref. 25, pp. 85–105.



3 **4** **5** **6** **7**

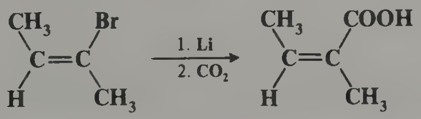


8



9

It is known that vinyl carbanions *can* maintain configuration, so that SE1 mechanisms should produce retention there. This has been found to be the case. For example, *trans*-2-bromo-2-butene was converted to 64–74% angelic acid:[29]



$$\mathrm{CH_3(H)C{=}C(Br)CH_3} \xrightarrow[2.\ \mathrm{CO_2}]{1.\ \mathrm{Li}} \mathrm{CH_3(H)C{=}C(COOH)CH_3}$$

Only about 5% of the cis isomer, tiglic acid, was produced. In addition, certain carbanions in which the negative charge is stabilized by *d*-orbital overlap can maintain configuration (p. 157) and SE1 reactions involving them proceed with retention of configuration.

---

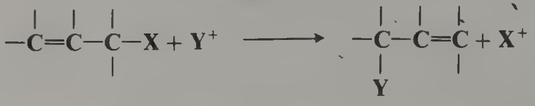
[27] Cram, Ford, and Gosser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2598 (1968); Ford and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2606, 2612 (1968). See also Cram and Whitney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4651 (1967); Wong, Fischer, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2235 (1971).

[28] Chu and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3521 (1972); Almy, Hoffman, Chu, and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95.** 1185 (1973).

[29] Dreiding and Pratt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 1902 (1954). See also Walborsky and Turner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2273 (1972).

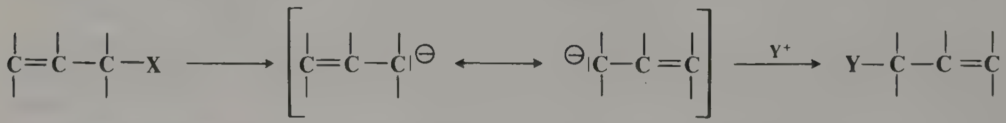
Electrophilic Substitution Accompanied by Double-Bond Shifts

When electrophilic substitution is carried out at an allylic substrate, the product may be rearranged:

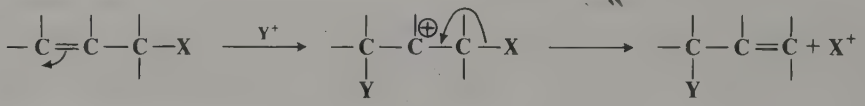


$$-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-X + Y^+ \longrightarrow -\underset{\underset{Y}{|}}{\overset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}} + X^+$$

This type of process is analogous to the nucleophilic allylic shifts discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 287). There are two principal pathways. The first of these is analogous to the SE1 mechanism in that the leaving group is first removed, giving a resonance-stabilized allyl type of carbanion, and then the electrophile attacks.

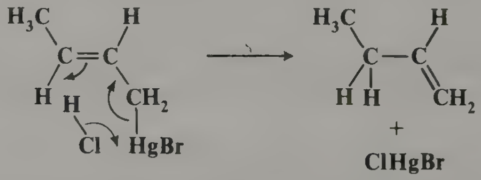


In the other pathway the Y group first attacks, giving a carbocation, which then loses X.

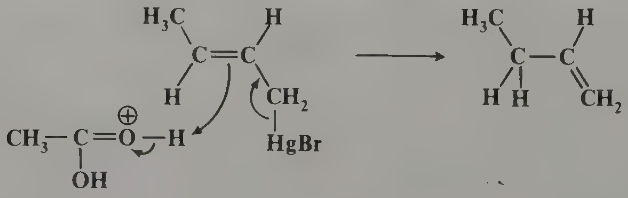


These mechanisms are more fully discussed under reaction **2-2.**

Most electrophilic allylic rearrangements involve hydrogen as the leaving group, but they have also been observed with metallic leaving groups.[30] Sleezer, Winstein, and Young found that crotylmercuric bromide reacted with HCl about 10^7 times faster than *n*-butylmercuric bromide and the product was more than 99% 1-butene.[31] These facts point to an SEi′ mechanism:



The reaction of the same compound with acetic acid–perchloric acid seems to proceed by an SE2′ mechanism:[31]



---

[30] For a review of reactions of allylic organometallic compounds, see Courtois and Miginiac, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **69,** 1–44 (1974).

[31] Sleezer, Winstein, and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1890 (1963). See also Cunningham and Overton, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2140 (1975); Kashin, Bakunin, Khutoryanskii, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **15,** 12 (1979); *J. Organomet. Chem.* **171,** 309 (1979).

The geometry of electrophilic allylic rearrangement has not been studied very much (compare the nucleophilic case, p. 289), but one in which the electrophile was CH_3CO^+ and the leaving group $SiFMe_2$ has been shown to occur with almost complete syn stereoselectivity,[32] while another, in which D^+ was the electrophile (from CF_3COOD) and SiR_3 the leaving group went with high anti stereoselectivity.[33] In still a third case, use of the electrophile H^+ and the leaving group $SnMe_3$ gave both syn and anti stereoselectivity, depending on whether the substrate was cis or trans.[33a]

Other Mechanisms

Elimination–addition (see **2-1**), addition–elimination (**2-14**), and cyclic mechanisms (**2-39**) are also known.

Much less work has been done on electrophilic aliphatic substitution mechanisms than on nucleophilic substitutions, and the exact mechanisms of many of the reactions in this chapter are in doubt. For many of them, not enough work has been done to permit us to decide which of the mechanisms described in this chapter is operating, if indeed any is. There may be other electrophilic substitution mechanisms, and some of the reactions in this chapter may not even be electrophilic substitutions at all.

REACTIVITY

Only a small amount of work has been done in this area, compared to the vast amount done for aliphatic nucleophilic substitution and aromatic electrophilic substitution. Only a few conclusions, most of them sketchy or tentative, can be drawn.[34]

1. *Effect of substrate.* For SE1 reactions electron-donating groups decrease rates and electron-withdrawing groups increase them. This is as would be expected from a reaction in which the rate-determining step is analogous to the cleavage of a proton from an acid. For the SE2 (back) mechanism, Jensen and Davis[10] showed that the reactivity of alkyl groups is similar to that for the SN2 mechanism (i.e., Me > Et > Pr > iso-Pr > neopentyl), as would be expected, since both involve backside attack and both are equally affected by steric hindrance. In fact, this pattern of reactivity can be regarded as evidence for the occurrence of the SE2 (back) mechanism in cases where stereochemical investigation is not feasible.[35] For SE2 reactions that proceed with retention, several studies have been made with varying results, depending on the reaction.[36] One such study, which examined the reaction $RHgBr + Br_2 \rightarrow RBr$ catalyzed by Br^-, gave the results shown in Table 1.[37] As can be seen, α branching increased the rates, while β branching decreased them.

---

[32] Wetter, Scherer, and Schweizer, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **62,** 1985 (1979). For other examples, see Young and Kitching, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 614 (1983), *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5793 (1983).

[33] Hayashi, Ito, and Kumada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4605 (1982); Wetter and Scherer, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 118 (1983); Wickham and Kitching, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 612 (1983). See also Fleming and Terrett, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4151, 4153 (1983).

[33a] Kashin, Bakunin, Beletskaya, and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1973 (1982). See also Young, Kitching, and Wickham, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5789 (1983).

[34] For a discussion, see Abraham, Ref. 2, pp. 211–241.

[35] Another method involves measurement of the susceptibility of the rate to increased pressure: See Isaacs and Javaid, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3073 (1977).

[36] For some of these, see Abraham and Grellier, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1132 (1973); Dessy, Reynolds, and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2683 (1959); Minato, Ware, and Traylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3024 (1963); Boué, Gielen, and Nasielski, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **9,** 443 (1967); Abraham, Broadhurst, Clark, Koenigsberger, and Dadjour, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **209,** 37 (1981).

[37] Sayre and Jensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6001 (1979).

TABLE 1 Relative rates of the reaction of RHgBr with Br_2 and Br^-[37]

R	Relative rate	R	Relative rate
Me	1	Et	10.8
Et	10.8	iso-Bu	1.24
iso-Pr	780	neopentyl	0.173
t-Bu	3370		

Sayre and Jensen attributed the decreased rates to steric hindrance, though attack here was definitely frontside, and the increased rates to the electron-donating effect of the alkyl groups, which stabilized the electron-deficient transition state.[38] Of course, steric hindrance should also be present with the α branched groups, so these workers concluded that if it were not, the rates would be even greater. The Br electrophile is rather a large one and it is likely that smaller steric effects are present with smaller electrophiles. The rates of certain second-order substitutions of organotin compounds have been found to increase with increasing electron withdrawal by substituents. This behavior has been ascribed[39] to an SE2 mechanism involving ion pairs, analogous to Sneen's ion-pair mechanism for nucleophilic substitution (p. 266).

2. *Effect of leaving group.* For both SE1 and second-order mechanisms, the more polar the C—X bond, the easier it is for the electrofuge to cleave. For metallic leaving groups in which the metal has a valence greater than 1, the nature of the other group or groups attached to the metal thus has an effect on the reaction. For example, consider a series of organomercurials RHgW. Because a more electronegative W decreases the polarity of the C—Hg bond and furthermore results in a less stable HgW^+, the electrofugal ability of HgW decreases with increasing electronegativity of W. For example, HgR′ (from RHgR′) is a better leaving group than HgCl (from RHgCl). Also in accord with this is the leaving-group order Hg-*t*-Bu > Hg-iso-Pr > Hg-Et > Hg-Me, reported for acetolysis of R_2Hg,[38] since the more highly branched alkyl groups better help to spread the positive charge. It might be expected that, when metals are the leaving groups, SE1 mechanisms would be favored, while with carbon leaving groups, second-order mechanisms would be found. However, the results so far reported have been just about the reverse of this. For carbon leaving groups the mechanism is usually SE1, while for metallic leaving groups the mechanism is almost always SE2 or SEi. A number of reports of SE1 reactions with metallic leaving groups have appeared,[40] but the mechanism is not easy to prove and many of these reports have been challenged.[41] Reutov and co-workers[40] have expressed the view that in such reactions a nucleophile (which may be the solvent) must assist in the removal of the electrofuge and refer to such processes as SE1(*N*) reactions.

3. *Effect of solvent.*[42] In addition to the solvent effects on certain SE1 reactions, mentioned earlier (p. 517), solvents can influence the mechanism that is preferred. As with nucleophilic substitution (p. 316), an increase in solvent polarity increases the possibility of an ionizing mechanism, in this case SE1, in comparison with the second-order mechanisms, which do not involve ions. As previously mentioned (p. 516), the solvent can also exert an influence between the SE2

---

[38] A similar conclusion, that steric and electronic effects are both present, was reached for a different system by Nugent and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5979 (1976).

[39] Beletskaya, Kashin, and Reutov, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **155,** 31 (1978); Reutov, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **250,** 145–156 (1983). See also Beletskaya, Ref. 2.

[40] For discussions, see Reutov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **29,** 1461–1477 (1980); Beletskaya, Butin, and Reutov, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **7,** 51–79 (1971). See also Deacon and Smith, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1584 (1982).

[41] For a discussion, see Kitching, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **19,** 1–16 (1969).

[42] For a discussion of solvent effects on organotin alkyl exchange reactions, see Petrosyan, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **250,** 157–170 (1983).

(front or back) and SEi mechanisms in that the rates of SE2 mechanisms should be increased by an increase in solvent polarity, while SEi mechanisms are much less affected.

REACTIONS

The reactions in this chapter are arranged in order of leaving group: hydrogen, metals, halogen, and carbon. Electrophilic substitutions at a nitrogen atom are treated last. The following reactions, treated in other chapters, are also electrophilic substitutions with respect to the attacking molecule: **0-87** to **0-116, 0-122, 3-11** to **3-16, 5-15** to **5-19,** and **6-30** to **6-55.**

Hydrogen as Leaving Group

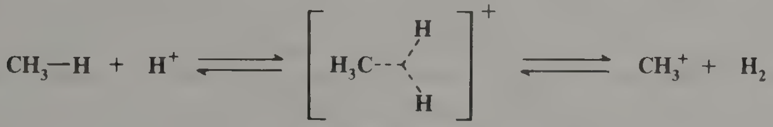
A. Hydrogen as the Electrophile

2-1 Hydrogen Exchange

Deuterio-de-hydrogenation or **Deuteriation**

$$\mathrm{R{-}H} + \mathrm{D^+} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{R{-}D} + \mathrm{H^+}$$

Hydrogen exchange can be accomplished by treatment with acids or bases. As with **1-1,** the exchange reaction is mostly used to study mechanistic questions such as relative acidities, but it can be used synthetically to prepare deuterated or tritiated molecules. When ordinary strong acids such as H_2SO_4 are used, only fairly acidic protons exchange, e.g., acetylenic, allylic, etc. However, primary, secondary, and tertiary hydrogens of alkanes can be exchanged by treatment with super-acids (p. 219).[43] The order of hydrogen reactivity is tertiary > secondary > primary. Where C—C bonds are present, they may be cleaved also (**2-46**). The mechanism of the exchange (illustrated for methane) has been formulated as involving attack of H^+ on the C—H bond to give the pentavalent methanonium ion which loses H_2 to give a tervalent carbocation. The methanonium ion CH_5^+ has a three-center, two-electron bond. It is not known whether the methanonium ion is a transition state or a true intermediate, but an ion CH_5^+ has been detected in mass spectra.[44] Note that the two electrons in the three-center, two-electron bond can move in three directions, in accord with the threefold symmetry of such a structure. The electrons can move to unite the two hydrogens, leaving the CH_3^+ free (the forward reaction), or they can unite the CH_3 with either of the two hydrogens, leaving the other hydrogen as a free H^+ ion (the reverse reaction). Actually, the methyl cation is not stable under these conditions. It can go back to CH_4 by the route shown (leading to



Methanonium ion

---

[43] Hogeveen and Bickel, *Chem. Commun.* 635 (1967), *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **88,** 371 (1969); Hogeveen and Gaasbeek, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 319 (1968); Olah, Klopman, and Schlosberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3261 (1969); Olah, Halpern, Shen, and Mo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4960 (1973). For reviews, see Olah, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 173–212 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 183–225]; *Chem. Technol.* **1,** 566–573 (1971); Brouwer and Hogeveen, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **9,** 179–240 (1972), pp. 180–203.

[44] See, for example, Sefcik, Henis, and Gaspar, *J. Chem. Phys.* **61,** 4321 (1974).

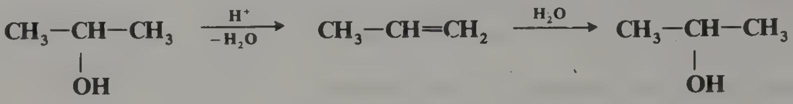
H^+ exchange) or it can react with additional CH_4 molecules (**2-16**) to yield, eventually, the *t*-butyl cation, which is stable in these super-acid solutions. Hydride ion can also be removed from alkanes (producing tervalent carbocations) by treatment with pure SbF_5 in the absence of any source of H^+.[45] It has been proposed[45] that SbF_5 directly abstracts the hydride ion to give R^+ SbF_5H^-.

Exchange with bases involves an SE1 mechanism.

Step 1 $\quad \mathbf{RH + B^- \longrightarrow R^- + BH}$

Step 2 $\quad \mathbf{R^- + BD \longrightarrow RD + B^-}$

Of course, such exchange is most successful for relatively acidic protons, such as those α to a carbonyl group, but even weakly acidic protons can exchange with bases if the bases are strong enough (see p. 152). Still another mechanism has been found for the slow acid exchange of hydrogens β to an OH group (such as the methyl protons in 2-propanol). This is an elimination–addition mechanism in which the alcohol is first dehydrated (**7-1**) and then water re-adds (**5-2**).[46]



$$\underset{\displaystyle OH}{CH_3-\overset{|}{CH}-CH_3} \xrightarrow[-H_2O]{H^+} CH_3-CH=CH_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} \underset{\displaystyle OH}{CH_3-\overset{|}{CH}-CH_3}$$

Alkanes and cycloalkanes, of both low and high molecular weight, can be fully perdeuterated by treatment with D_2 gas and a catalyst such as Rh, Pt, or Pd.[47]

OS **53,** 38.

2-2 Migration of Double Bonds

$$C_5H_{11}-CH_2-CH=CH_2 \xrightarrow[Me_2SO]{KNH_2} C_5H_{11}-CH=CH-CH_3$$

The double bonds of many unsaturated compounds are shifted on treatment with strong bases.[48] In many cases equilibrium mixtures are obtained and the most thermodynamically stable isomer predominates.[49] Thus, if the new double bond can be in conjugation with one already present or with an aromatic ring, it goes that way. If the choice is between an exocyclic and an endocyclic double bond (in a six-membered ring), it chooses the latter. In the absence of considerations like these, Zaitsev's rule (p. 889) applies and the double bond goes to the carbon with the fewest hydrogens. All these considerations lead us to predict that terminal olefins can be isomerized to internal ones, nonconjugated olefins to conjugated, exo six-membered-ring olefins to endo, etc., and not the other way around. This is indeed usually the case.

This reaction, for which the term *prototropic rearrangement* is often used, is an example of electrophilic substitution with accompanying allylic rearrangement. The mechanism involves abstraction by the base to give a resonance-stabilized carbanion, which then combines with a proton at the position that will give the more stable olefin:[50]

---

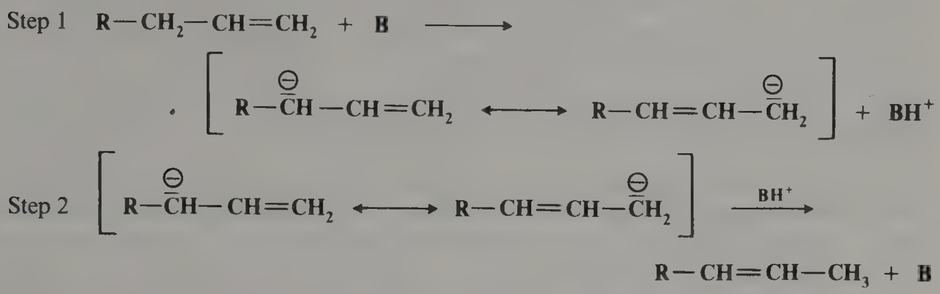
[45] Lukas, Kramer, and Kouwenhoven, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **92,** 44 (1973).

[46] Gold and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1930, 1937 (1963).

[47] See for example, Atkinson, Luke, and Stuart, *Can. J. Chem.* **45,** 1511 (1967).

[48] For reviews of double-bond migrations, see Pines and Stalick, "Base-Catalyzed Reactions of Hydrocarbons and Related Compounds," pp. 25–123, Academic Press, New York, 1977; DeWolfe, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 9, pp. 437–449, American Elsevier, New York, 1973; Yanovskaya and Shakhidayatov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 859–874 (1970); Hubert and Reimlinger, *Synthesis* 97–112 (1969), 405–430 (1970); Mackenzie, in "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 1, Patai, Ed., pp. 416–436, vol. 2, Zabicky, Ed., pp. 132–148, Interscience, New York, 1964, 1970; Broaddus, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 231–238 (1968); Cram, Ref. 25, pp. 175–210.

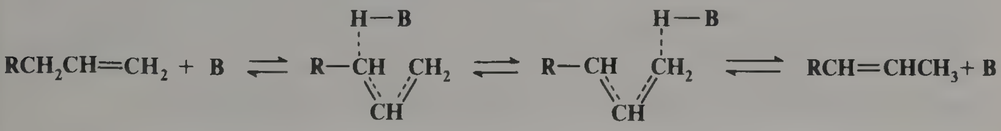
[49] For lists of which double bonds are more stable in conversions of $XCH_2CH=CHY$ to $XCH=CHCH_2Y$, see Hine and Skoglund, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4766 (1982). See also Hine and Linden, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 584 (1983).



$$\text{Step 1}\quad R{-}CH_2{-}CH{=}CH_2 + \mathbf{B} \longrightarrow \left[R{-}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H{-}CH{=}CH_2 \longleftrightarrow R{-}CH{=}CH{-}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H_2\right] + BH^+$$

$$\text{Step 2}\quad \left[R{-}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H{-}CH{=}CH_2 \longleftrightarrow R{-}CH{=}CH{-}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}}H_2\right] \xrightarrow{BH^+} R{-}CH{=}CH{-}CH_3 + \mathbf{B}$$

This mechanism is exactly analogous to the allylic-shift mechanism for nucleophilic substitution (p. 287). Uv spectra of allylbenzene and 1-propenylbenzene in solutions containing NH_2^- are identical, which shows that the same carbanion is present in both cases, as required by this mechanism.[51] It has been shown that base-catalyzed double-bond shifts are partially intramolecular, at least in some cases.[52] The intramolecularity has been ascribed to a conducted tour mechanism (p. 519) in which the base leads the proton from one carbanionic site to the other:[53]



Triple bonds can also migrate in the presence of bases,[54] but through the allene intermediate:[55]

$$R{-}CH_2{-}C{\equiv}CH \rightleftharpoons R{-}CH{=}C{=}CH_2 \rightleftharpoons R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_3$$

In general, strong bases such as $NaNH_2$ convert internal alkynes to terminal alkynes (a particularly good base for this purpose is potassium 3-aminopropylamide $NH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NHK$[56]), because the equilibrium is shifted by formation of the acetylide ion; with weaker bases such as NaOH (which are not strong enough to remove the acetylenic proton), the internal alkynes are favored because of their greater thermodynamic stability. In some cases the reaction can be stopped at the allene stage. The reaction then becomes a method for the preparation of allenes.

Double-bond rearrangements can also take place on treatment with acids. Both proton and

---

[50] See, for example, Hassan, Nour, Satti, and Kirollos, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **14,** 351 (1982).

[51] Rabinovich, Astaf'ev, and Shatenshtein, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 746 (1962).

[52] See, for example, Cram and Uyeda, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5466 (1964); Bank, Rowe, and Schriesheim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2115 (1963); Doering and Gaspar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3043 (1963); Ohlsson, Wold, and Bergson, *Ark. Kemi* **29,** 351 (1968).

[53] Almy and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4459 (1969).

[54] For reviews, see Pines and Stalick, Ref. 48, pp. 124–204; Théron, Verny, and Vessière, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," pt. 1, pp. 381–445, Wiley, New York, 1978; Bushby, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **24,** 585–600 (1970); Iwai, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **2,** 73–116 (1969); Wotiz, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 365–424, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Vartanyan and Babanyan, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 670 (1967). See also Carr, Gan, and Reid, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 668, 672 (1973).

[55] For a review of rearrangements involving allenes, see Huntsman, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Ketenes, Allenes, and Related Compounds," pt. 2, pp. 521–667, Wiley, New York, 1980.

[56] Brown and Yamashita, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 891 (1975); Macaulay, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 734 (1980).

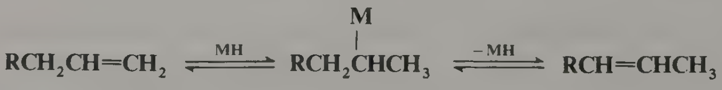
Lewis[57] acids can be used. The mechanism in the case of proton acids is the reverse of the previous one; first a proton is gained, giving a carbocation, and then another is lost:

$$\text{Step 1}\quad CH_3{-}CH_2{-}CH{=}CH_2 + H^+ \longrightarrow CH_3{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H{-}CH_3$$

$$\text{Step 2}\quad CH_3{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H{-}CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3{-}CH{=}CH{-}CH_3 + H^+$$

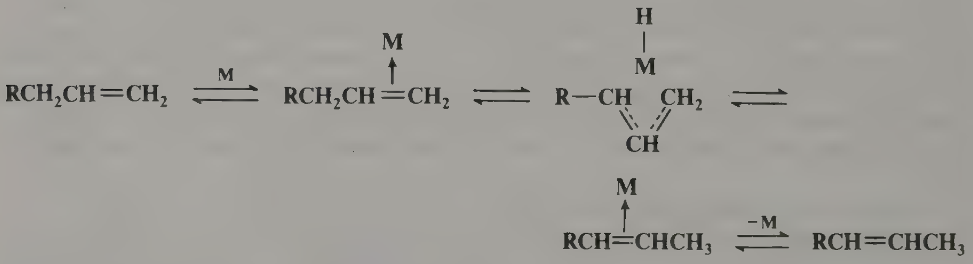
As in the case of the base-catalyzed reaction, the thermodynamically most stable olefin is the one predominantly formed. However, the acid-catalyzed reaction is much less synthetically useful because carbocations give rise to many side products. If the substrate has several possible locations for a double bond, mixtures of all possible isomers are usually obtained. Isomerization of 1-decene, for example, gives a mixture that contains not only 1-decene and *cis*- and *trans*-2-decene but also the cis and trans isomers of 3-, 4-, and 5-decene as well as branched alkenes resulting from rearrangement of carbocations. It is true that the most stable olefins predominate, but many of them have stabilities that are close together. Acid-catalyzed migration of triple bonds (with allene intermediates) can be accomplished if very strong acids (e.g., HF-PF_5) are used.[58] If the mechanism is the same as that for double bonds, then vinyl cations are intermediates.

Double-bond isomerization can also take place in other ways. Nucleophilic allylic rearrangements were discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 287). Electrocyclic and sigmatropic rearrangements are treated at **8-31** to **8-39.** Double-bond migrations have also been accomplished photochemically,[59] and by means of metallic ion (most often complex ions containing Pd, Pt, Rh, or Ru) or metal carbonyl catalysts.[60] In the latter case there are at least two possible mechanisms. One of these, which requires external hydrogen, is called the *metal hydride addition–elimination mechanism*:



$$RCH_2CH{=}CH_2 \xrightleftharpoons{MH} RCH_2\overset{\overset{\displaystyle M}{|}}{C}HCH_3 \xrightleftharpoons{-MH} RCH{=}CHCH_3$$

The other mechanism, called the *π-allyl complex mechanism,* does not require external hydrogen:



Another difference between the two mechanisms is that the former involves 1,2 and the latter 1,3 shifts. The isomerization of 1-butene by rhodium(I) is an example of a reaction that takes place by the metal hydride mechanism,[61] while an example of the π-allyl complex mechanism is found in the $Fe_3(CO)_{12}$-catalyzed isomerization of 3-ethyl-1-pentene.[62]

---

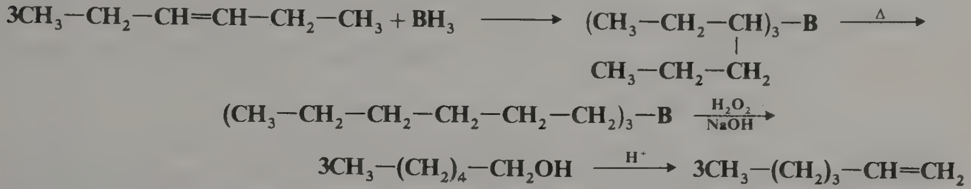
[57] For an example of a Lewis-acid catalyzed rearrangement, see Cameron and Stimson, *Aust. J. Chem.* **30,** 923 (1977).

[58] Barry, Beale, Carr, Hei, and Reid, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 177 (1973).

[59] Schönberg, "Preparative Organic Photochemistry," pp. 22–24, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1968.

[60] For reviews, see Khan and Martell, "Homogeneous Catalysis by Metal Complexes," pp. 9–37, Academic Press, New York, 1974; Heck, "Organotransition Metal Chemistry," pp. 76–82, Academic Press, New York, 1974; Jira and Freiesleben, *Organomet. React.* **3,** 1–190 (1972), pp. 133–149; Biellmann, Hemmer, and Levisalles, in Zabicky, Ref. 48, vol. 2, pp. 224–230; Bird, "Transition Metal Intermediates in Organic Synthesis," pp. 69–87, Academic Press, New York, 1967; Davies, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **17,** 83–93 (1967); Orchin, *Adv. Catal.* **16,** 1–47 (1966).

No matter which of the electrophilic methods of double-bond shifting is employed, the thermodynamically most stable olefin is usually formed in the largest amount in most cases, though a few anomalies are known. However, there is another, indirect, method of double-bond isomerization, by means of which migration in the other direction can often be carried out. This involves conversion of the olefin to a borane (**5-13**), rearrangement of the borane (**8-13**), oxidation and hydrolysis of the newly formed borane to the alcohol (**2-26**), and dehydration of the alcohol (**7-1**):



$$3CH_3-CH_2-CH=CH-CH_2-CH_3 + BH_3 \longrightarrow (CH_3-CH_2-\underset{\displaystyle CH_3-CH_2-CH_2}{\underset{|}{CH}})_3-B \xrightarrow{\Delta}$$

$$(CH_3-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2-CH_2)_3-B \xrightarrow[NaOH]{H_2O_2}$$

$$3CH_3-(CH_2)_4-CH_2OH \xrightarrow{H^+} 3CH_3-(CH_2)_3-CH=CH_2$$

Since the migration reaction is always toward the end of a chain, terminal olefins may be produced from internal ones, so that the migration is often opposite to that with the other methods. Alternatively, the rearranged borane may be converted directly to the olefin by heating with an alkene of molecular weight higher than that of the product (**7-16**). Photochemical isomerization can also lead to the thermodynamically less stable isomer.[63]

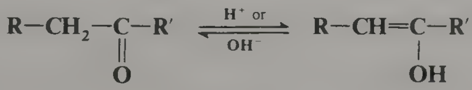
If a hydroxy group is present in the chain, *it* may lose a proton, so that a ketone is the product. For example,[64]

$$R_2C=CHCH_2CH_2CHOHCH_3 \xrightarrow[\text{acid}]{\text{polyphosphoric}} R_2CHCH_2CH_2CH_2COCH_3$$

Similarly, α-hydroxy triple-bond compounds have given α,β-unsaturated ketones.

OS **II,** 140; **III,** 207; **IV,** 189, 192, 195, 234, 398, 683; **50,** 97; **51,** 17; **54,** 1; **55,** 12; **61,** 59.

2-3 Keto–Enol Tautomerization



$$R-CH_2-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{||}{C}}-R' \underset{OH^-}{\overset{H^+ \text{ or}}{\rightleftharpoons}} R-CH=\underset{\displaystyle OH}{\underset{|}{C}}-R'$$

The tautomeric equilibrium between enols and ketones or aldehydes is not normally a preparative reaction, although for some ketones both forms can be prepared (see p. 66 for a discussion of this and other aspects of tautomerism). For most ketones and aldehydes, only the keto form is detectable, though the equilibrium must occur, since aldehydes and ketones often react through their enol forms.

Neither the forward nor the reverse reaction can take place without at least a trace of acid or base, ruling out a direct shift of a hydrogen from carbon to oxygen or vice versa. The mechanisms are identical to those in **2-2.**[65]

---

[61] Cramer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2272 (1966).

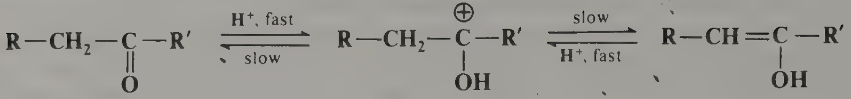
[62] Casey and Cyr, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2248 (1973).

[63] For example, see Kropp and Krauss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5199 (1967); Rando and Doering, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1671 (1968); Barltrop and Wills, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4987 (1968); Jorgenson and Gundel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4991 (1968); Reardon and Krauss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5593 (1971).

[64] Colonge and Brunie, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1799 (1963).

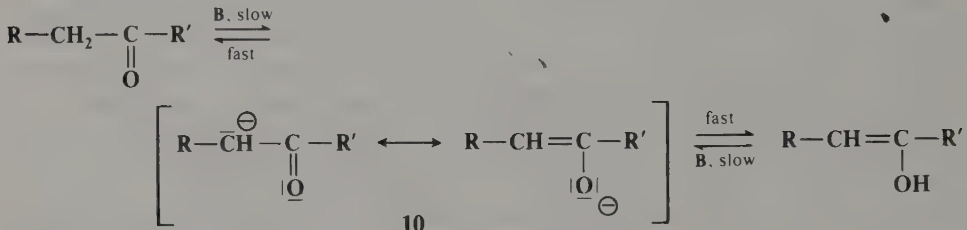
[65] For a review of the mechanism, see Toullec, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **18,** 1–77 (1982). For discussions, see Ingold, "Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 794–837, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1969; Bell, "The Proton in Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 171–181, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1973; Bruice and Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 844 (1976).

Acid-catalyzed



$$R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' \underset{\text{slow}}{\overset{H^+,\ \text{fast}}{\rightleftharpoons}} R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}{-}R' \underset{H^+,\ \text{fast}}{\overset{\text{slow}}{\rightleftharpoons}} R{-}CH{=}\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}{-}R'$$

Base-catalyzed[66]

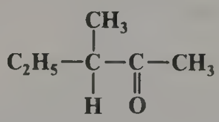


10

$$R{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' \underset{\text{fast}}{\overset{B,\ \text{slow}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \left[R{-}\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}H}{-}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}}{\|}}{C}{-}R' \longleftrightarrow R{-}CH{=}\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}{-}R' \right] \underset{B,\ \text{slow}}{\overset{\text{fast}}{\rightleftharpoons}} R{-}CH{=}\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}{-}R'$$

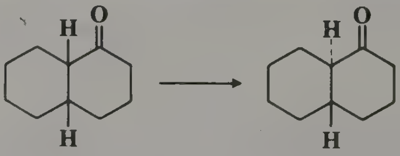
For each catalyst, the mechanism for one direction is the exact reverse of the other, by the principle of microscopic reversibility. As expected from mechanisms in which the C—H bond is broken in the rate-determining step, substrates of the type RCD_2COR show deuterium isotope effects (of about 5) in both the basic-[67] and the acid[68]-catalyzed processes.

Although the conversion of an aldehyde or a ketone to its enol tautomer is not generally a preparative procedure, the reactions do have their preparative aspects. If a full mole of base per mole of ketone is used, then the enolate ion (**10**) is formed and can be isolated (see for example, **0-97**).[69] When enol ethers or esters are hydrolyzed, the enols initially formed immediately tautomerize to the aldehydes or ketones. In addition, the overall processes (forward plus reverse reactions) are often used for equilibration purposes. When an optically active compound in which the chirality is due to an asymmetric carbon α to a carbonyl group (as in **11**) is treated with acid or base, racemization results.[70] If there is another asymmetric center in the molecule, the less stable epimer may be converted to the more stable one in this manner, and this is often done. For example, *cis*-decalone can be equilibrated to the trans isomer. Isotopic exchange can also be accomplished at the α-position of an aldehyde or ketone in a similar manner. For the acid-catalyzed process, exchange or equilibration is accomplished only if the carbonyl compound is completely converted to the enol and then back, but in the base-catalyzed process exchange or equilibration can take place if only the first step (conversion to the enolate ion) takes place. The difference is usually academic. Another synthetic use for the enolization reaction is the protection of a carbonyl group. It was found that one keto group in a molecule could be converted to the enolate, allowing a less enolizable keto group to be reduced without affecting the first group.[71]



$$C_2H_5{-}\overset{\overset{CH_3}{|}}{\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{C}}{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}CH_3$$

11



cis-decalone

trans-decalone

---

[66] Another mechanism for base-catalyzed enolization has been reported when the base is a tertiary amine: See Bruice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4982 (1983).

[67] Riley and Long, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 522 (1962). See, however, Miller and Saunders, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5039 (1982), where low isotope effects show that in some cases breaking of the C—H bond is not the rate-determining step.

[68] Swain, Stivers, Reuwer, and Schaad, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5885 (1958); Lienhard and Wang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1146 (1969). See also Toullec and Dubois, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3524 (1974).

[69] For a review of the preparation and uses of enolates, see d'Angelo, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2979–2990 (1976).

[70] For an exception, see Guthrie and Nicolas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4637 (1981).

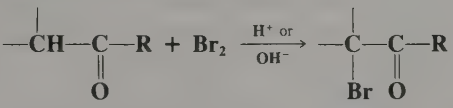
[71] Barton, Hesse, Wilshire, and Pechet, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1075 (1977).

Enolizable hydrogens can be replaced by deuterium (and ^{16}O by ^{18}O) by passage of a sample through a deuterated (or ^{18}O-containing) gas-chromatography column.[72]

There are many enol–keto interconversions and acidifications of enolate ions to the keto forms listed in *Organic Syntheses*. No attempt is made to list them here.

B. Halogen Electrophiles

2-4 Halogenation of Aldehydes and Ketones
Halogenation or **Halo-de-hydrogenation**[73]



$$-\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{H}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\|}}{\mathrm{C}}-\mathrm{R} + \mathrm{Br}_2 \xrightarrow[\mathrm{OH}^-]{\mathrm{H}^+\text{ or}} -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\mathrm{Br}}{|}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\|}}{\mathrm{C}}-\mathrm{R}$$

Aldehydes and ketones can be halogenated in the α-position with bromine, chlorine, or iodine.[74] The reaction cannot be performed with fluorine, but active compounds, such as β-keto esters and β-diketones, have been fluorinated with XeF_2 in the presence of a resin,[75] with an N-fluoro-N-alkylsulfonamide,[75a] with $C_{19}XeF_6$ (a reagent in which XeF_6 is lamellated on graphite),[76] and with acetyl hypofluorite.[77] In another method, enolate ions of β-keto esters are fluorinated with perchloryl fluoride $FClO_3$.[78] However, if the carbon attacked with $FClO_3$ has two hydrogens, then the reaction cannot be stopped until two fluorines have entered. Monofluorination can be accomplished indirectly by treating an enamine, enol ether, or similar ketone derivative with $FClO_3$.[79] Trifluoromethyl hypofluorite CF_3OF and similar compounds behave similarly.[80] In another similar method, silyl enol ethers are fluorinated with XeF_2.[81] Sulfuryl chloride,[82] hexachloro-2,4-cyclohexadiene,[83] and cupric chloride[84] have been used as reagents for chlorination, and N-bromosuccinimide for bromination (see **4-2**). Pyrrolidone hydrotribromide is a reagent that can α-brominate a ketone without affecting a double bond also present.[85]

For unsymmetrical ketones the preferred position of halogenation is usually a CH group, then a CH_2 group, and then CH_3;[86] however, mixtures are frequent. With aldehydes the aldehydic hydrogen is sometimes replaced (see **4-3**). It is also possible to prepare di- and polyhalides. When basic catalysts are used, one α-position of a ketone is completely halogenated before the other is attacked, and the reaction cannot be stopped until all the hydrogens of the first carbon have been replaced (see below). If one of the groups is methyl, then the haloform reaction (**2-43**) takes place. With acid catalysts, it is easy to stop the reaction after only one halogen has entered, though a second halogen can be introduced by the use of excess reagent. In chlorination the second halogen generally appears on the same side as the first,[87] while in bromination the α,α′-dibromo product is found.[88] Actually, with both halogens it is the α,α-dihalo ketone that is formed first, but in the case of bromination this compound isomerizes under the reaction conditions to the α,α′ isomer.[87]

---

[72] Senn, Richter, and Burlingame, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 680 (1965); Richter, Senn, and Burlingame, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1235 (1965).

[73] These names also apply to reactions **2-5** and **2-6.**

[74] For a review, see House, "Modern Synthetic Reactions," 2d ed., pp. 459–478, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972. For a review of α-halo ketones, see Verhé and De Kimpe, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement D," pt. 1, pp. 813–931, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[75] Zajc and Zupan, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 759 (1980); *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 573 (1982).

[75a] Barnette, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 452 (1984).

[76] Yemul, Kagan, and Setton, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 277 (1980).

[77] Lerman and Rozen, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 724 (1983). See also Purrington and Jones, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 761 (1983).

[78] Inman, Oesterling, and Tyczkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6533 (1958); Machleidt, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **667,** 24 (1963); Machleidt and Hartmann, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **679,** 9 (1964); Kamlet and Adolph, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3073 (1968); Sheppard, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 83 (1969). For reviews of perchloryl fluoride, see Sharts and Sheppard, *Org. React.* **21,** 125–406 (1974), pp. 225–236; Sheppard and Sharts, "Organic Fluorine Chemistry," pp. 136–148, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1969; Khutoretskii, Okhlobystina, and Fainzil'berg, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 145–155 (1967).

[79] For example, see Gabbard and Jensen, *J. Org. Chem.* **23,** 1406 (1958); Nakanishi, Morita, and Jensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5259 (1959); Nakanishi and Jensen, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 702 (1962).

[80] Barton, Godinho, Hesse, and Pechet, *Chem. Commun.* 804 (1968); Barton, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **21,** 285–293 (1970); Hesse, *Isr. J. Chem.* **17,** 60 (1978); Middleton and Bingham, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4845 (1980). See also Sharts and Sheppard, Ref. 78, pp. 243–256; Rozen and Menahem, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 725 (1979).

[81] Tsushima, Kawada, and Tsuji, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1165 (1982).

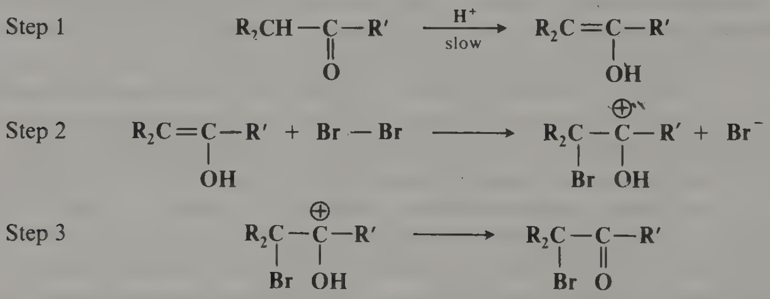
[82] For a review of sulfuryl chloride, see Tabushi and Kitaguchi, in Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 4, pp. 336–396, Wiley, New York, 1981.

[83] Guy, Lemaire, and Guetté, *Synthesis* 1018 (1982).

[84] For a review, see Nigh, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. B, pp. 67–81, Academic Press, New York, 1973. Cupric chloride has been used to chlorinate α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones in the γ position: Dietl, Normark, Payne, Thweatt, and Young, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1719 (1973).

[85] Awang and Wolfe, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 706 (1969).

It is not the aldehyde or ketone itself that is halogenated, but the corresponding enol or enolate ion. The purpose of the catalyst is to provide a small amount of enol or enolate. The reaction is often done without addition of acid or base, and even in the vapor state,[89] but traces of acid or base are always present, and these are enough to catalyze formation of the enol or enolate. With acid catalysis the mechanism is

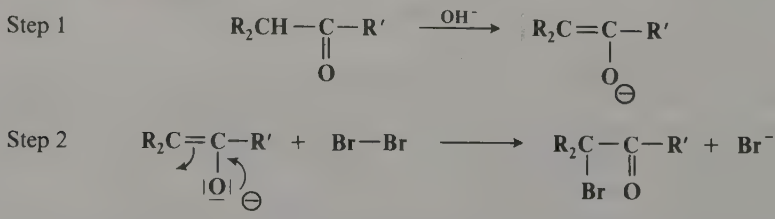


Step 1 $$R_2CH-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow[\text{slow}]{H^+} R_2C=\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}-R'$$

Step 2 $$R_2C=\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}-R' + Br-Br \longrightarrow R_2\underset{\underset{Br}{|}}{C}-\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-R' + Br^-$$

Step 3 $$R_2\underset{\underset{Br}{|}}{C}-\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-R' \longrightarrow R_2\underset{\underset{Br}{|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'$$

The first step, as we have already seen (**2-3**), actually consists of two steps. The second step is very similar to the first step in electrophilic addition to double bonds (p. 657). There is a great deal of evidence for this mechanism: (1) the rate is first order in substrate; (2) bromine does not appear in the rate expression at all,[90] a fact consistent with a rate-determining first step;[91] (3) the reaction rate is the same for bromination, chlorination, and iodination under the same conditions;[92] and (4) the reaction shows an isotope effect. With basic catalysts the mechanism may be the same as that given above (since bases also catalyze formation of the enol), or the reaction may go directly through the enolate ion without formation of the enol:



Step 1 $$R_2CH-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow{OH^-} R_2C=\underset{\underset{O^\ominus}{|}}{C}-R'$$

Step 2 $$R_2C=\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^\ominus}{|}}{C}-R' + Br-Br \longrightarrow R_2\underset{\underset{Br}{|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' + Br^-$$

---

[86] For chlorination this is reversed if the solvent is methanol; Gallucci and Going, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2532 (1981).

[87] Rappe, *Ark. Kemi* **24,** 321 (1965). But see also Teo and Warnhoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2728 (1973).

[88] Rappe and Schotte, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **16,** 2060 (1962); Rappe, *Ark. Kemi* **21,** 503 (1964); Garbisch, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2109 (1965).

[89] Dick, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 272 (1962).

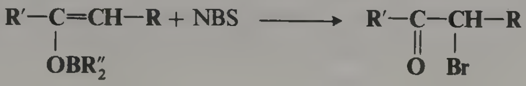
[90] When the halogenating species is at low concentration or has a low reactivity, it can appear in the rate expression: The reaction becomes first order in the halogenating species: see, for example, Tapuhi and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5758 (1982). For a case in which the reaction is first order in bromine, even at relatively high Br_2 concentration, see Pinkus and Gopalan, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1016 (1981); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 2630 (1984).

[91] Under some conditions it is possible for step 2 to be rate-determining: Deno and Fishbein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7445 (1973).

[92] Bell and Yates, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1927 (1962).

It is difficult to distinguish the two possibilities. It was mentioned above that in the base-catalyzed reaction, if the substrate has two or three α-halogens on the same side of the C=O group, then it is not possible to stop the reaction after just one halogen atom has entered. The reason for this is that the electron-withdrawing field effect of the first halogen increases the acidity of the remaining hydrogens, i.e., a CHX group is more acidic than a CH_2 group, so that initially formed halo ketone is converted to enolate ion (and hence halogenated) more rapidly than the original substrate.

Regioselectivity in the halogenation of unsymmetrical ketones can be attained by treatment of the appropriate enol borinate of the ketone with N-bromo- or N-chlorosuccinimide.[93]

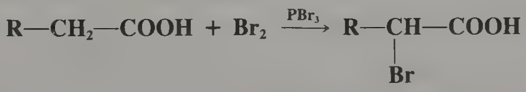


$$\mathrm{R'{-}}\underset{\mathrm{OBR''_2}}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{{=}CH{-}R} + \mathrm{NBS} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R'{-}}\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{{-}}\underset{\mathrm{Br}}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{CH}}}\mathrm{{-}R}$$

The desired halo ketone is formed in high yield. Another method for achieving the same result involves bromination of the appropriate lithium enolate at a low temperature[94] (see p. 419 for the regioselective formation of enolate ions). In a similar process, α-bromo and α-chloro aldehydes have been prepared in good yield by treatment of silyl enol ethers $R_2C{=}CHOSiMe_3$ with Br_2 or Cl_2,[95] or with I_2 and silver acetate.[96] Enol acetates have been regioselectively iodinated with I_2 and either thallium(I) acetate[97] or copper(II) acetate.[98] α,β-Unsaturated ketones can be converted to α-halo-α,β-unsaturated ketones by treatment with phenylselenium bromide or chloride,[99] and to α-halo-β,γ-unsaturated ketones by two-phase treatment with HOCl.[100]

OS **I,** 127; **II,** 87, 88, 244, 480; **III,** 188, 343, 538; **IV,** 110, 162, 590; **V,** 514; **52,** 33; **53,** 111, 123; **54,** 97; **55,** 24; **56,** 107; **58,** 17, 56; **61,** 65. See also OS **58,** 152.

2-5 Halogenation of Acids and Acyl Halides



$$\mathrm{R{-}CH_2{-}COOH} + \mathrm{Br_2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{PBr_3}} \mathrm{R{-}}\underset{\mathrm{Br}}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{CH}}}\mathrm{{-}COOH}$$

The α-hydrogens of carboxylic acids can be replaced by bromine or chlorine with a phosphorus halide as catalyst.[101] The reaction, known as the *Hell–Volhard–Zelinskii reaction*, is not applicable to iodine or fluorine. When there are two α-hydrogens, one or both may be replaced, although it is often hard to stop with just one. The reaction actually takes place on the acyl halide formed from the acid and the catalyst. Acids alone are inactive, except for those with relatively high enol content, such as malonic. Less than one full mole of catalyst (per mole of substrate) is required, because of the exchange reaction between acids and acyl halides (see **0-75**). Each molecule of acid is α-halogenated while it is in the acyl halide stage. The halogen from the catalyst does not enter the α position. For example, the use of Cl_2 and PBr_3 results in α chlorination, not bromination. As expected from the foregoing, acyl halides undergo α halogenation without a catalyst. So do anhydrides and many compounds that enolize easily, e.g., malonic ester, aliphatic nitro compounds, etc. The mechanism is usually regarded as proceeding through the enol as in **2-4.**[102] If chlorosulfuric acid $ClSO_2OH$ is used as a catalyst, carboxylic acids can be α iodinated,[103] as well as chlorinated or brominated.[104]

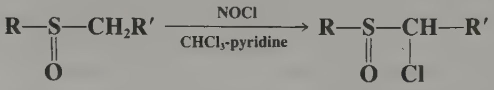
---

[93] Hooz and Bridson, *Can. J. Chem.* **50,** 2387 (1972).
[94] Stotter and Hill, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2576 (1973).
[95] Reuss and Hassner, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1785 (1974); Blanco, Amice, and Conia, *Synthesis* 194 (1976).
[96] Rubottom and Mott, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1731 (1979).
[97] Cambie, Hayward, Jurlina, Rutledge, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 126 (1978).
[98] Horiuchi and Satoh, *Synthesis* 312 (1981).
[99] Ley and Whittle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3301 (1981).
[100] Hegde and Wolinsky, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5019 (1981).
[101] For a review, see Harwood, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 99–154 (1962), pp. 102–103.
[102] But see, however, Kwart and Scalzi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5496 (1964).

A number of other methods exist for the α-halogenation of acids or their derivatives. Carboxylic acids or their chlorides or anhydrides can be α-chlorinated by treatment with $CuCl_2$ in polar inert solvents (e.g., sulfolane).[105] Acyl halides can be α-brominated or α-chlorinated by use of N-bromo- or N-chlorosuccinimide and HBr or HCl.[106] The latter is an ionic, not a free-radical halogenation (see **4-2**). Acyl chlorides can be α-iodinated with I_2 and a trace of HI.[106] Esters can be α-halogenated by conversion to their enolate ions with lithium N-isopropylcyclohexylamide in tetrahydrofuran and treatment of this solution at −78° with I_2[107] or with a carbon tetrahalide.[108]

OS **I,** 115, 245; **II,** 74, 93; **III,** 347, 381, 495, 523, 623, 705, 848; **IV,** 254, 348, 398, 608, 616; **V,** 255; **50,** 31; **55,** 27; **59,** 20. Also see OS **IV,** 877; **58,** 67.

2-6 Halogenation of Sulfoxides and Sulfones

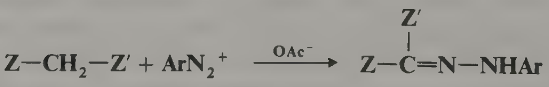


$$\underset{\substack{\| \\ O}}{R{-}S}{-}CH_2R' \xrightarrow[\text{CHCl}_3\text{-pyridine}]{\text{NOCl}} \underset{\substack{\| \\ O}}{R{-}S}{-}\underset{\substack{| \\ Cl}}{CH}{-}R'$$

Sulfoxides can be chlorinated in the α position[109] by treatment with NOCl,[110] Cl_2,[111] TsCl,[112], N-chlorosuccinimide,[113] or $PhICl_2$,[114] all in the presence of pyridine, or with *t*-BuOCl and KOAc (or pyridine).[115] All these methods involve basic conditions. The reaction can also be accomplished in the absence of base with SO_2Cl_2 in CH_2Cl_2.[116] The bromination of sulfoxides with bromine[114] and with N-bromosuccinimide-bromine[117] have also been reported. Sulfones have been chlorinated by treatment of their conjugate bases $RSO_2\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}HR'$ with various reagents, among them SO_2Cl_2, CCl_4,[118] N-chlorosuccinimide,[119] and hexachloroethane.[120]

C. Nitrogen Electrophiles

2-7 Aliphatic Diazonium Coupling
Arylhydrazono-de-dihydro-bisubstitution



$$Z{-}CH_2{-}Z' + ArN_2^+ \xrightarrow{OAc^-} Z{-}\overset{\substack{Z' \\ |}}{C}{=}N{-}NHAr$$

---

[103] Ogata and Watanabe, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2768 (1979); **45,** 2831 (1980).

[104] Ogata and Sugimoto, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3684 (1978); Ogata and Adachi, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1182 (1982).

[105] Louw, *Chem. COmmun.* 544 (1966).

[106] Gleason and Harpp, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3431 (1970); Harpp, Bao, Black, Gleason, and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3420 (1975).

[107] Rathke and Lindert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3995 (1971).

[108] Arnold and Kulenovic, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3687 (1978).

[109] For a review, see Venier and Barager, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **6,** 77–102 (1974), pp. 81–84.

[110] Leoppky and Chang, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5415 (1968).

[111] Tsuchihashi and Iriuchijima, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 2271 (1970).

[112] Hojo and Yoshida, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4496 (1968).

[113] Ogura, Imaizumi, Iida, and Tsuchihashi, *Chem. Lett.* 1587 (1980).

[114] Cinquini and Colonna, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1883 (1972). See also Cinquini and Colonna, *Synthesis* 259 (1972).

[115] Iriuchijima and Tsuchihashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5259 (1969).

[116] Tin and Durst, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4643 (1970).

[117] Iriuchijima and Tsuchihashi, *Synthesis* 588 (1970).

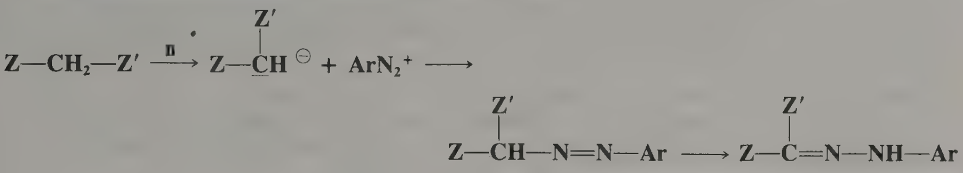
[118] Regis and Doweyko, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 2539 (1982).

[119] Paquette and Houser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3870 (1969), *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1015 (1971).

[120] Kattenberg, de Waard, and Huisman, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 4149 (1973), **30,** 463 (1974).

If a C—H bond is acidic enough, it couples with diazonium salts in the presence of a base, most often aqueous sodium acetate.[121] The reaction is commonly carried out on compounds of the form Z—CH_2—Z′, where Z and Z′ are as defined on p. 412, e.g., β-keto esters, β-keto amides, malonic ester.

The mechanism is probably of the simple SE1 type:

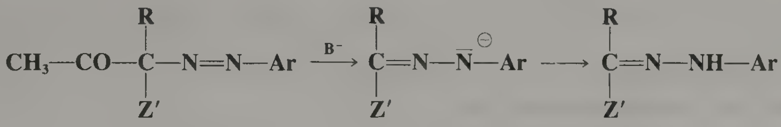


$$Z{-}CH_2{-}Z' \xrightarrow{B} Z{-}\overset{Z'}{C}H^{\ominus} + ArN_2^+ \longrightarrow Z{-}\overset{Z'}{C}H{-}N{=}N{-}Ar \longrightarrow Z{-}\overset{Z'}{C}{=}N{-}NH{-}Ar$$

12 **13**

Aliphatic azo compounds that contain a hydrogen at the carbon containing the azo group (**12**) are unstable and tautomerize to the isomeric hydrazones (**13**), which are therefore the products of the reaction.

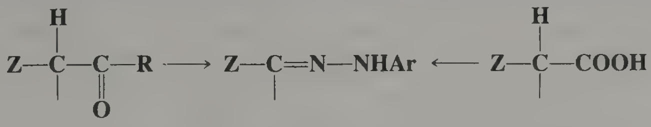
When the reaction is carried out on a compound of the form Z—CHR—Z′, so that the azo compound does not have a tautomerizable hydrogen, if at least one Z is acyl or carboxyl, this group usually cleaves:



$$CH_3{-}CO{-}\overset{R}{\underset{Z'}{C}}{-}N{=}N{-}Ar \xrightarrow{B^-} \overset{R}{\underset{Z'}{C}}{=}N{-}\overline{N}^{\ominus}{-}Ar \longrightarrow \overset{R}{\underset{Z'}{C}}{=}N{-}NH{-}Ar$$

14

so that the product in this case too is the hydrazone, and not the azo compound. In fact, compounds of the type **14** are seldom isolable from the reaction, although this has been accomplished.[122] The cleavage step shown is an example of **2-42** and, when a carboxyl group cleaves, of **2-39.** The overall reaction in this case is called the *Japp–Klingemann reaction*[123] and involves conversion of a ketone (**15**) or an acid (**16**) to a hydrazone (**17**). When an acyl and a carboxyl group are both



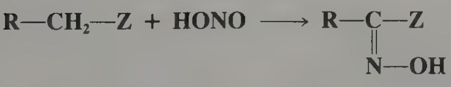
$$Z{-}\overset{H}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}{-}R \longrightarrow Z{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}N{-}NHAr \longleftarrow Z{-}\overset{H}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOH$$

15 **17** **16**

present, it is the carboxyl that preferentially cleaves. When there is no acyl or carboxyl group present, the aliphatic azo compound is stable.

OS **III,** 660; **IV,** 633.

2-8 Nitrosation at a Carbon Bearing an Active Hydrogen



$$R{-}CH_2{-}Z + HONO \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{N-OH}}{C}{-}Z$$

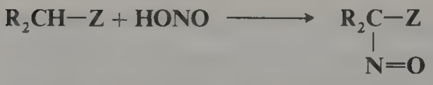
Hydroxyimino-de-dihydro-bisubstitution

---

[121] For a review, see Parmerter, *Org. React.* **10,** 1–142 (1959).

[122] See, for example, Yao and Resnick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3514 (1962).

[123] For a review, see Phillips, *Org. React.* **10,** 143–178 (1959).

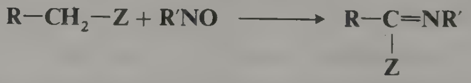


$$R_2CH{-}Z + HONO \longrightarrow R_2\underset{\displaystyle N{=}O}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}Z$$

Nitrosation or **Nitroso-de-hydrogenation**

Carbons adjacent to a Z group (as defined on p. 412) can be nitrosated with nitrous acid or alkyl nitrites.[124] The initial product is always the C-nitroso compound, but these are stable only when there is no tautomerizable hydrogen. When there is, the product is the more stable oxime. The situation is analogous to that with azo compounds and hydrazones (**2-7**). The mechanism is similar to that in **2-7**:[124a] $R{-}H \rightarrow R^- + {}^+N{=}O \rightarrow R{-}N{=}O$. The attacking species is either NO^+ or a carrier of it. As in the Japp–Klingemann reaction, when Z is an acyl or carboxyl group (in the case of $R_2CH{-}Z$), it can be cleaved. Since oximes and nitroso compounds can be reduced to primary amines, this reaction often provides a route to amino acids. As in the case of **2-4**, the silyl enol ether of a ketone may be used instead of the ketone itself.[125]

Imines can be prepared in a similar manner by treatment of an active hydrogen compound with a nitroso compound:



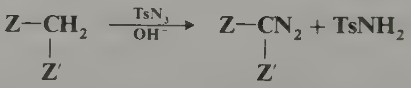
$$R{-}CH_2{-}Z + R'NO \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\displaystyle Z}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}NR'$$

Alkanes can be nitrosated photochemically, by treatment with NOCl and uv light.[126] For nitration at an activated carbon, see **4-12.**

OS **II,** 202, 204, 223, 363; **III,** 191, 513; **V,** 32, 373; **52,** 53; **59,** 95. Also see OS **V,** 650.

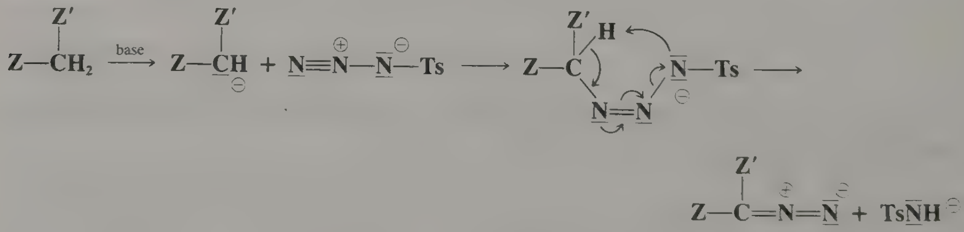
2-9 Direct Formation of Diazo Compounds

Diazo-de-dihydro-bisubstitution



$$\underset{\displaystyle Z'}{\underset{|}{Z{-}CH_2}} \xrightarrow[OH^-]{TsN_3} \underset{\displaystyle Z'}{\underset{|}{Z{-}CN_2}} + TsNH_2$$

Compounds containing a CH_2 bonded to two Z groups (as defined on p. 412) can be converted to diazo compounds on treatment with tosyl azide in the presence of a base.[127] The use of phase-transfer catalysis increases the convenience of the method.[128] *p*-Dodecylbenzenesulfonyl azide also gives the reaction.[129] The reaction, which is called the *diazo transfer reaction*, can also be applied to other reactive positions, e.g., the 5 position of cyclopentadiene.[130] The mechanism is probably as follows:



---

[124] For a review, see Touster, *Org. React.* **7,** 327–377 (1953).

[124a] For a review, see Williams, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **19,** 381–428 (1983).

[125] Rasmussen and Hassner, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2558 (1974).

[126] For a review, see Pape, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **7,** 559–604 (1967).

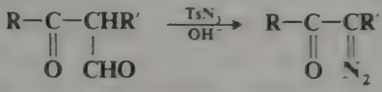
[127] For reviews, see Regitz, *Synthesis* 351–373 (1972), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 733–749 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 786–801], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **6,** 81–126 (1971). See also Hendrickson and Wolf, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3610 (1968); Hünig, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 335–344 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 343–352].

[128] Ledon, *Synthesis* 347 (1974); *Org. Synth.* **59,** 66.

[129] Hazen, Weinstock, Connell, and Bollinger, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 947 (1981).

[130] Doering and DePuy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 5955 (1953).

A diazo group can be introduced adjacent to a single carbonyl group indirectly by first converting the ketone to an α-formyl ketone (reaction **0-111**) and then treating it with tosyl azide. As in the similar case of **2-7** and **2-8**, the formyl group is cleaved during the reaction.

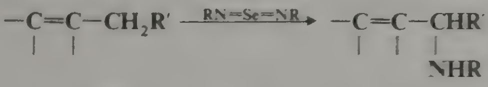


$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\O}}{C}{-}\underset{\substack{|\\CHO}}{CHR'}} \xrightarrow[OH^-]{TsN_3} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\O}}{C}{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\N_2}}{CR'}}$$

OS V, 179; **51**, 86; **59**, 66.

2-10 Direct Amination at an Activated Position

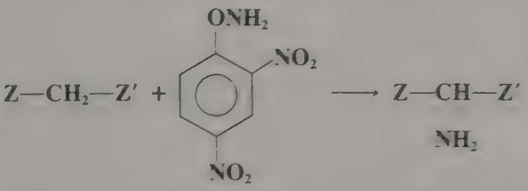
Alkylamino-de-hydrogenation, etc.



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-CH_2R' \xrightarrow{RN=Se=NR} -\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-\underset{\substack{|\\NHR}}{CHR'}$$

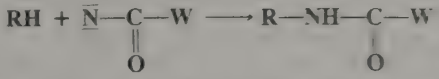
R = *t*-Bu, Ts

Alkenes can be aminated[130a] in the allylic position by treatment with solutions of imido selenium compounds R—N=Se=N—R.[131] The reaction, which is similar to the allylic oxidation of alkenes with SeO_2 (see **4-4**), has been performed with R = *t*-Bu and R = Ts. The imido sulfur compound TsN=S=NTs has also been used.[132] In another reaction, compounds containing an active hydrogen can be converted to primary amines in moderate yields by treatment with O-(2,4-dinitrophenyl)hydroxylamine.[133]



In an amidation reaction, alkenes R_2C=CH—CH_2R can be converted to N-allylated hydroxamic acids R_2C=CH—CHR—N(OH)COR in high yields by treatment with nitrosocarbonylmethane MeCONO generated in situ from a Diels–Alder adduct.[134] See also **0-52**.

2-11 Insertion by Nitrenes



$$RH + \overline{N}-\underset{\substack{\|\\O}}{C}-W \longrightarrow R-NH-\underset{\substack{\|\\O}}{C}-W$$

Carbonylnitrenes NCOW (W = R′, Ar, or OR′) are very reactive species (see p. 176) and insert into the C—H bonds of alkanes to give amides (W = R′ or Ar) or carbamates (W = OR′).[135] The nitrenes are generated as discussed on p. 176. The order of reactivity among alkane C—H bonds is tertiary > secondary > primary.[136] In cyclohexyl systems, equatorial C—H bonds are preferred to axial C—H bonds.[137] Indications are that in general it is only singlet and not triplet nitrenes that insert.[138] Retention of configuration is found at a chiral carbon.[139] The mechanism is presumably similar to the simple one-step mechanism for insertion of carbenes (**2-18**). Other nitrenes (e.g., cyanonitrene NCN[140] and arylnitrenes NAr) can also insert into C—H bonds, but alkylnitrenes usually undergo rearrangement before they can react with the alkane. The insertion reactions are not generally useful synthetically, since they usually lead to mixtures of products, but exceptions are known,[141] chiefly in cyclizations. For example, heating of 2-(2-methylbutyl)phenyl azide gave about 60% 2-ethyl-2-methylindoline.[139]

[130a] For a review of direct aminations, see Sheradsky, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 1, pp. 395–416, Wiley, New York, 1982.

[131] Sharpless, Hori, Truesdale, and Dietrich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98**, 269 (1976). For another method, see Kresze and Münsterer, *J. Org. Chem.* **48**, 3561 (1983). For a review, see Cheikh, Chaabouni, Laurent, Mison, and Nafti, *Synthesis* 685–700 (1983), pp. 691–696.

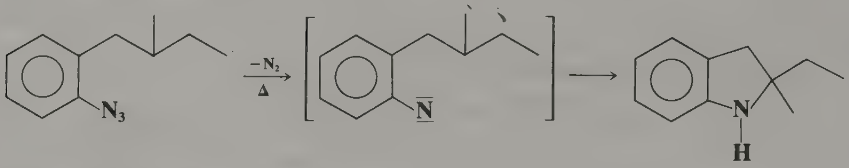
[132] Sharpless and Hori, *J. Org. Chem.* **41**, 176 (1976); Singer and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **43**, 1448 (1978).

[133] Sheradsky, Salemnick, and Nir, *Tetrahedron* **28**, 3833 (1972); Radhakrishna, Loudon, and Miller, *J. Org. Chem.* **44**, 4836 (1979).

[134] Keck and Yates, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4627 (1979).

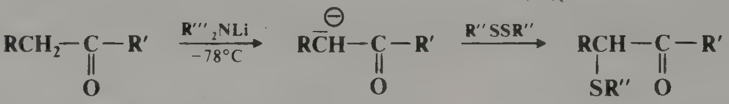
[135] For a review, see Lwowski, in Lwowski, "Nitrenes," pp. 199–207, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[136] Nitrenes are much more selective (and less reactive) in this reaction than carbenes (reaction **2-18**). For a discussion, see Alewood, Kazmaier, and Rauk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 5466 (1973).



D. Sulfur Electrophiles

2-12 Sulfenylation and Selenylation of Ketones and Esters
Alkylthio-de-hydrogenation, etc.



$$\mathrm{RCH_2{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} \xrightarrow[-78^\circ\mathrm{C}]{\mathrm{R'''_2NLi}} \mathrm{R\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R''SSR''}} \mathrm{R\underset{\underset{\displaystyle SR''}{|}}{C}H{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'}$$

Ketones, esters (including lactones),[142] and amides (including lactams)[143] can be sulfenylated in the α position by conversion to the enolate ion with a base such as lithium N-isopropylcyclohexylamide and treatment of this with a disulfide.[143a] The reaction, shown above for ketones, involves nucleophilic substitution at sulfur. Analogously, α-phenylseleno ketones RCH(SePh)COR′ and α-phenylseleno esters RCH(SePh)COOR′ can be prepared by treatment of the corresponding enolates with PhSeBr,[144] PhSeSePh,[145] or benzeneseleninic anhydride PhSe(O)OSe(O)Ph.[146] Another method for the introduction of a phenylseleno group into the α position of a ketone involves simple treatment of an ethyl acetate solution of the ketone with PhSeCl (but not PhSeBr) at room temperature.[147] This procedure is also successful for aldehydes but not for esters. In another method that avoids the use of PhSeX reagents, a ketone enolate is treated with selenium to give an $R'COCHRSe^-$

---

[137] Shingaki, Inagaki, Torimoto, and Takebayashi, *Chem. Lett.* 155 (1972).

[138] For example, see Simson and Lwowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5107 (1969); Inagaki, Shingaki, and Nagai, *Chem. Lett.* 1419 (1981).

[139] Smolinsky and Feuer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3085 (1964).

[140] For a review of cyanonitrenes, see Anastassiou, Shepelavy, Simmons, and Marsh, in Lwowski, Ref. 135, pp. 305–344.

[141] For a synthetically useful noncyclization example, see Meinwald and Aue, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2317 (1967).

[142] Trost and Salzmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6840 (1973); Seebach and Teschner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5113 (1973). For discussions, see Trost, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 563–585 (1975), pp. 572–578; Caine, in Augustine, "Carbon–Carbon Bond Formation," vol. 1, pp. 278–282, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1979.

[143] Zoretic and Soja, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3587 (1976); Gassman and Balchunis, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3236 (1977).

[143a] For another reagent, see Scholz, *Synthesis* 944 (1983).

[144] Reich, Reich, and Renga, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5813 (1973); Clive, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 695 (1973); Brocksom, Petragnani, and Rodrigues, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2114 (1974); Schwartz and Hayasi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1497 (1980). See also Liotta, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **17,** 28–34 (1984).

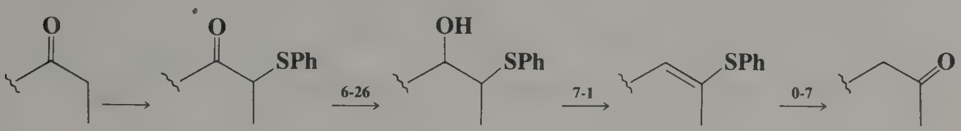
[145] Grieco and Miyashita, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 120 (1974). α-Phenylselenation can also be accomplished with PhSeSePh, SeO_2, and an acid catalyst: Miyoshi, Yamamoto, Kambe, Murai, and Sonoda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4813 (1982).

[146] Barton, Lester, and Ley, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2209 (1980); Barton, Morzycki, Motherwell, and Ley, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1044 (1981).

[147] Sharpless, Lauer, and Teranishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6137 (1973).

ion, which is treated with MeI, producing the α-methylseleno ketone R′COCHRSeMe.[148] This method has also been applied to esters.

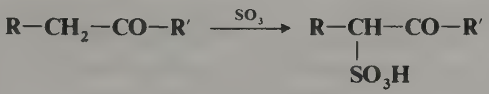
The α-seleno and α-sulfenyl carbonyl compounds prepared by this reaction can be converted to α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds (**7-13**). The sulfenylation reaction has also been used[149] as a key step in a sequence for moving the position of a carbonyl group to an adjacent carbon.[150]



OS **56,** 8; **59,** 58.

2-13 Sulfonation of Aldehydes, Ketones, and Acids

Sulfonation or **Sulfo-de-hydrogenation**



$$\mathrm{R{-}CH_2{-}CO{-}R' \xrightarrow{SO_3} R{-}\underset{\displaystyle SO_3H}{\underset{|}{CH}}{-}CO{-}R'}$$

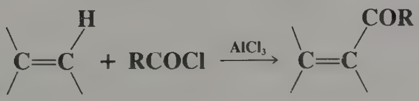
Aldehydes, ketones, and carboxylic acids containing α hydrogens can be sulfonated with sulfur trioxide.[151] The mechanism is presumably similar to that of **2-4.** Sulfonation has also been accomplished at vinylic hydrogen. Ketones can be thiocyanated in the α position (CH → C—SCN) by treatment with copper(II) thiocyanate.[152]

OS **IV,** 846, 862.

E. Carbon Electrophiles With respect to the attacking molecule, these are nucleophilic substitutions.

2-14 Acylation at an Aliphatic Carbon

Acylation or **Acyl-de-hydrogenation**



$$\mathrm{\overset{\quad\ \ H}{>C{=}C<} + RCOCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} \overset{\quad\ \ COR}{>C{=}C<}}$$

Olefins can be acylated with an acyl halide and a Lewis-acid catalyst in what is essentially a Friedel–Crafts reaction at an aliphatic carbon.[153] The product can arise by two paths. The initial attack is by the acyl cation RCO^+ (or by the acyl halide free or complexed; see **1-15**) on the olefin to give a carbocation:

---

[148] Liotta, Zima, Barnum, and Saindane, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3643 (1980); Liotta, Saindane, Barnum, Ensley, and Balakrishnan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3043 (1981); Liotta, Ref. 144.

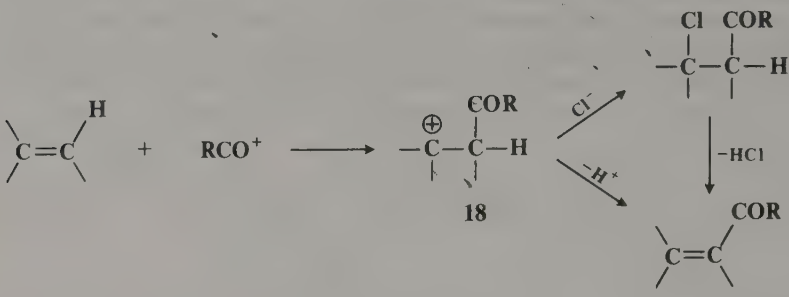
[149] Trost, Hiroi, and Kurozumi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 438 (1975).

[150] There are numerous other ways of achieving this conversion. For reviews, see Morris, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **11,** 397–434 (1982); Kane, Singh, Martin, and Doyle, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 345–394 (1983).

[151] For reviews, see Gilbert, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 549–589 (1962), pp. 558–559; "Sulfonation and Related Reactions," pp. 33–61, Interscience, New York, 1965.

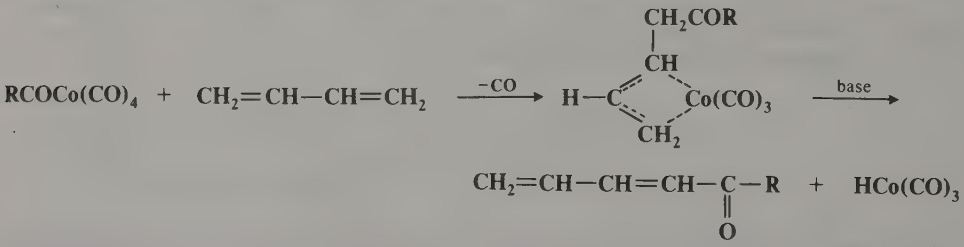
[152] Ali, Clarke, Cliff, and Morrison, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 234 (1981).

[153] For reviews, see Groves, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **1,** 73–97 (1972); House, Ref. 74, pp. 786–797; Satchell and Satchell in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 1, pp. 259–266, 270–273, Interscience, New York, 1966; Nenitzescu and Balaban, in Olah, "Friedel–Crafts and Related Reactions," vol. 3, pp. 1033–1152, Interscience, New York, 1964.



Ion **18** may either lose a proton or combine with chloride ion. If it loses a proton, the product is an unsaturated ketone; the mechanism is similar to the tetrahedral mechanism of Chapter 10, but with the charges reversed. If it combines with chloride, the product is a β-halo ketone, which can be isolated, so that the result is addition to the double bond (see **5-35**). On the other hand, the β-halo ketone may, under the conditions of the reaction, lose HCl to give the unsaturated ketone, this time by an addition–elimination mechanism. In the case of unsymmetrical olefins, the attacking ion prefers the position at which there are more hydrogens, following Markovnikov's rule (p. 673). Anhydrides and carboxylic acids (the latter with a proton acid such as anhydrous HF, H_2SO_4, or polyphosphoric acid as a catalyst) are sometimes used instead of acyl halides. Even alkanes can be acylated with acyl halides and a Friedel–Crafts catalyst if there is present a trace of a compound, such as an olefin, which can give rise to carbocations. With some substrates and catalysts double-bond migrations are occasionally encountered so that, for example, when 1-methylcyclohexene was acylated with acetic anhydride and zinc chloride, the major product was 6-acetyl-1-methylcyclohexene.[154]

Conjugated dienes can be acylated by treatment with acyl- or alkylcobalt tetracarbonyls, followed by base-catalyzed cleavage of the resulting π-alkyl carbonyl derivatives.[155] The reaction is very general and seems to be applicable to all alkyl- and acylcobalt tetracarbonyls and all conjugated dienes and higher conjugated polyenes that have an appropriately situated hydrogen atom and are not excessively hindered or constrained to unfavorable configurations. With unsymmetrical dienes, the acyl group generally substitutes most readily at a cis double bond, next at a terminal olefinic group, and least readily at a trans double bond. If both ends are trans, the acyl group prefers the less substituted side. The most useful bases are strongly basic, hindered amines such as dicyclo-



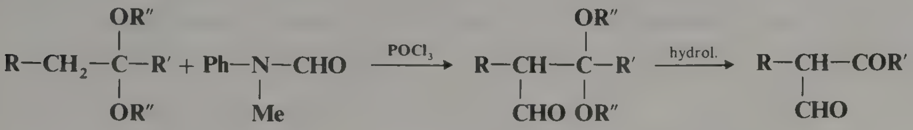
---

[154] Deno and Chafetz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 3940 (1952). See also Beak and Berger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3848 (1980), and references cited therein.

[155] For a review, see Heck, in Wender and Pino, "Organic Syntheses via Metal Carbonyls," vol. 1, pp. 388–397, Interscience, New York, 1968.

hexylethylamine. The use of an alkylcobalt tetracarbonyl $RCo(CO)_4$ gives the same product as that shown above.

Formylation of olefins can be accomplished with N-disubstituted formamides and $POCl_3$.[156] This is an aliphatic Vilsmeier reaction (see **1-16**). Vilsmeier formylation may also be performed on the α position of acetals and ketals, so that hydrolysis of the products gives keto aldehydes or dialdehydes:[157]

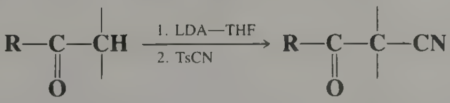


$$R{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\displaystyle OR''}{\underset{\displaystyle OR''}{C}}{-}R' + Ph{-}\underset{\displaystyle Me}{N}{-}CHO \xrightarrow{POCl_3} R{-}\underset{\displaystyle CHO}{CH}{-}\overset{\displaystyle OR''}{\underset{\displaystyle OR''}{C}}{-}R' \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} R{-}\underset{\displaystyle CHO}{CH}{-}COR'$$

Acetylation of acetals or ketals can be accomplished with acetic anhydride and BF_3–etherate.[158] The mechanisms with acetals or ketals also involves attack at an olefinic carbon, since enol ethers are intermediates.[158] Ketones can be formylated in the α position by treatment with CO and a strong base.[159]

OS **IV,** 555, 560; **51,** 109. Also see OS **52,** 1.

2-15 **Cyanation** or **Cyano-de-hydrogenation**



$$R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}H \xrightarrow[\text{2. TsCN}]{\text{1. LDA—THF}} R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}CN$$

Introduction of a cyano group α to the carbonyl group of a ketone can be accomplished by prior formation of the enolate with lithium diisopropylamide (LDA) in THF and addition of this solution to *p*-TsCN at −78°C.[160] The products are formed in moderate to high yields. The reaction is not applicable to methyl ketones. In a different kind of reaction, nitro compounds are α-cyanated by treatment with CN^- and $K_3Fe(CN)_6$.[161] The mechanism probably involves ion radicals.

2-16 Alkylation of Alkanes
Alkylation or **Alkyl-de-hydrogenation**

$$RH + R'^+ \longrightarrow R{-}R' + H^+$$

Alkanes can be alkylated by treatment with solutions of stable carbocations[162] (p. 142), though the reaction has not been used for synthetic purposes. Mixtures are generally obtained. In a typical experiment, the treatment of propane with isopropyl fluoroantimonate ($Me_2C^+\ SbF_6^-$) gave 26% 2,3-dimethylbutane, 28% 2-methylpentane, 14% 3-methylpentane, and 32% *n*-hexane, as well as some butanes, pentanes (formed by **2-46**), and higher alkanes. Mixtures arise in part because intermolecular hydrogen exchange ($RH + R'^+ \rightleftharpoons R^+ + R'H$) is much faster than alkylation, so that alkylation products are also derived from the new alkanes and carbocations formed in the exchange reaction. Furthermore, the carbocations present are subject to rearrangement (Chapter 18), giving rise to new carbocations. Products result from all the hydrocarbons and carbocations present in the system, so that mixtures are to be expected. As expected from their relative stabilities, secondary alkyl cations alkylate alkanes more readily than tertiary alkyl cations (the *t*-butyl cation does not alkylate methane or ethane). Stable primary alkyl cations are not available, but alkylation has been achieved with complexes formed between CH_3F or C_2H_5F and SbF_5.[163] The mechanism of alkylation can be formulated (similar to that shown in hydrogen exchange with super acids, reaction **2-1**) as

---

[156] For reviews, see Burn, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 870 (1973); Satchell and Satchell, Ref. 153, pp. 281–282; Minkin and Dorofeenko, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 599–618 (1960), pp. 606–608; Olah and Kuhn, in Olah, Ref. 153, vol. 3, pp. 1214–1219 (1964).

[157] Youssefyeh, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2161 (1964).

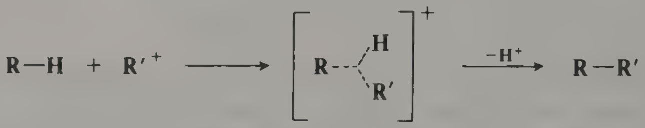
[158] Youssefyeh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3901 (1963).

[159] See, for example, van der Zeeuw and Gersmann, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **84,** 1535 (1965).

[160] Kahne and Collum, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5011 (1981).

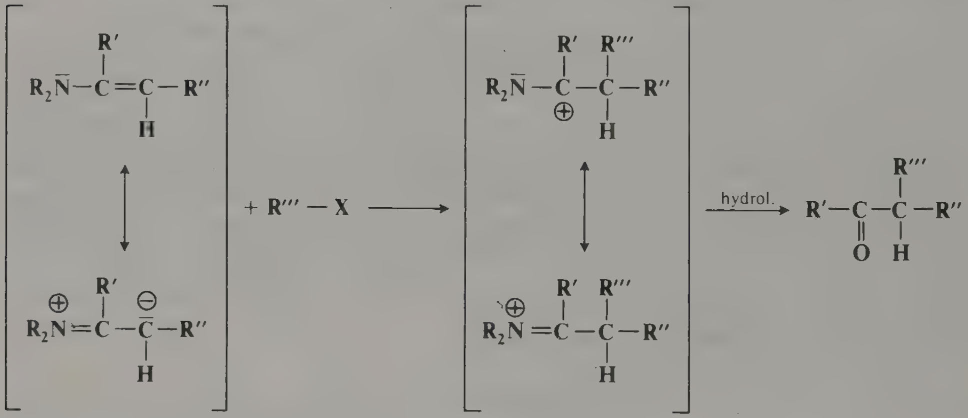
[161] Matacz, Piotrowska, and Urbanski, *Pol. J. Chem.* **53,** 187 (1979); Kornblum, Singh, and Kelly, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 332 (1983).

[162] Olah, Mo, and Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4939 (1973). For a review of the thermodynamic behavior of alkanes in super-acid media, see Fabre, Devynck, and Trémillon, *Chem. Rev.* **82,** 591–614 (1982).



It is by means of successive reactions of this sort that simple alkanes like methane and ethane give *t*-butyl cations in super-acid solutions (p. 144).[164]

2-17 The Stork Enamine Reaction



When enamines are treated with alkyl halides, an alkylation occurs that is analogous to the first step of **2-14.** Hydrolysis of the imine salt gives a ketone. Since the enamine is normally formed from a ketone (**6-1**), the net result is alkylation of the ketone at the α position. The method, known as the *Stork enamine reaction*,[165] is an alternative to the ketone alkylation considered at **0-97.** The Stork method has the advantage that it generally leads almost exclusively to monoalkylation of the ketone, while **0-97,** when applied to ketones, is difficult to stop with the introduction of just one alkyl group. Alkylation usually takes place on the less substituted side of the original ketone. The most commonly used amines are the cyclic amines piperidine, morpholine, and pyrrolidine. There is evidence that at least in some cases the alkylation takes place on the nitrogen and the quaternary salt thus formed rearranges to the C-alkylated product.[166]

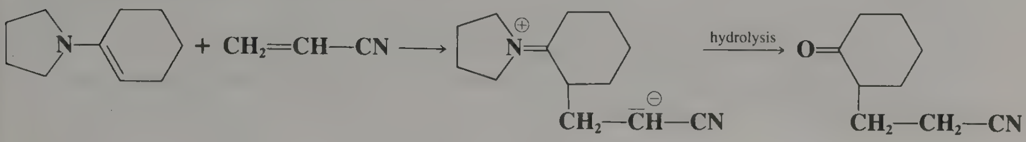
---

[163] Olah, DeMember, and Shen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4952 (1973). See also Sommer, Muller, and Laali, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **6,** 3 (1982).

[164] For example, see Hogeveen and Roobeek, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **91,** 137 (1972).

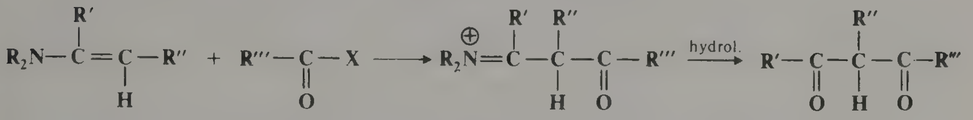
[165] Stork, Brizzolara, Landesman, Szmuszkovicz, and Terrell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 207 (1963). For a general review of enamines, see Hickmott, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1975–2050, 3363–3446 (1982). For reviews of this reaction, see Whitesell and Whitesell, *Synthesis* 517–536 (1983); Kuehne, *Synthesis* 510–537 (1970); House, Ref. 74, pp. 570–582, 766–772; Bláha and Červinka, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **6,** 147–227 (1966), pp. 186–204; Szmuszkovicz, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **4,** 1–113 (1963), pp. 25–92; in Cook, "Enamines," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969, the articles by Alt, pp. 115–168 and Kuehne, pp. 313–468.

The method is quite useful for particularly active alkyl halides such as allyl, benzyl, and propargyl halides, and for α-halo ethers and esters, but is not very serviceable for ordinary primary and secondary halides. Tertiary halides do not give the reaction at all since, with respect to the halide, this is nucleophilic substitution and elimination predominates. The reaction may also be applied to activated aryl halides (such as 2,4-dinitrochlorobenzene; see Chapter 13), to epoxides,[167] and to activated olefins such as acrylonitrile, e.g.,



The latter is a Michael-type reaction (p. 665) with respect to the olefin.

Acylation[168] can be accomplished with acyl halides:



$$R_2N-\underset{}{\overset{R'}{C}}=\underset{H}{C}-R'' + R'''-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-X \longrightarrow R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}=\overset{R'}{C}-\underset{H}{\overset{R''}{C}}-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R''' \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} R'-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{R''}{C}}-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R'''$$

19

or with anhydrides. A COOEt group can be introduced by treatment of the enamine with ethyl chloroformate ClCOOEt,[169] a CN group with cyanogen chloride[170] (not cyanogen bromide or iodide, which leads to halogenation of the enamine), and a CHO group with the mixed anhydride of formic and acetic acids[169] or with DMF and phosgene.[171] The acylation of the enamine can take place by the same mechanism as alkylation, but another mechanism is also possible, if the acyl halide has an α-hydrogen and if a tertiary amine is present, as it often is (it is added to neutralize the HX given off). In this mechanism, the acyl halide is dehydrohalogenated by the tertiary amine, producing a ketene (reaction **7-15**) which adds to the enamine to give a cyclobutanone (reaction **5-48**). This compound can be cleaved in the solution to form the same acylated imine salt (**19**) that would form by the more direct mechanism, or it can be isolated (in the case of enamines derived from aldehydes), or it may cleave in other ways.[172]

Primary and secondary halides do not perform well, mostly because N-alkylation becomes important, particularly with enamines derived from aldehydes. An alternative method, which gives good yields of alkylation with primary and secondary halides, is alkylation of enamine *salts*, which are prepared[173] by treating an imine with ethylmagnesium bromide in tetrahydrofuran:[174]

---

[166] For example, see Elkik, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 903 (1969).

[167] Britten, Owen, and Went, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 3157 (1969).

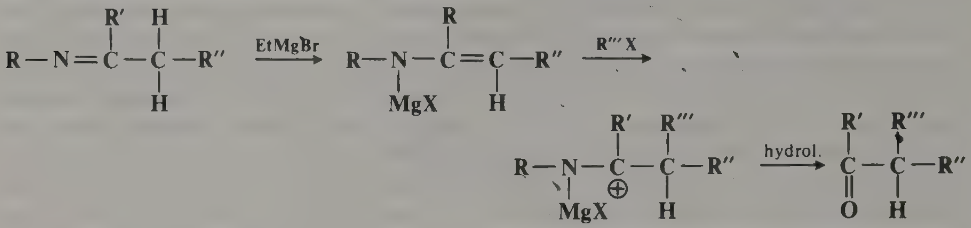
[168] For reviews, see Hickmott, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 731 (1974); Hünig and Hoch, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **14,** 235 (1970).

[169] Stork, Brizzolara, Landesman, Szmuszkovicz, and Terrell, Ref. 165.

[170] Kuehne, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5400 (1959).

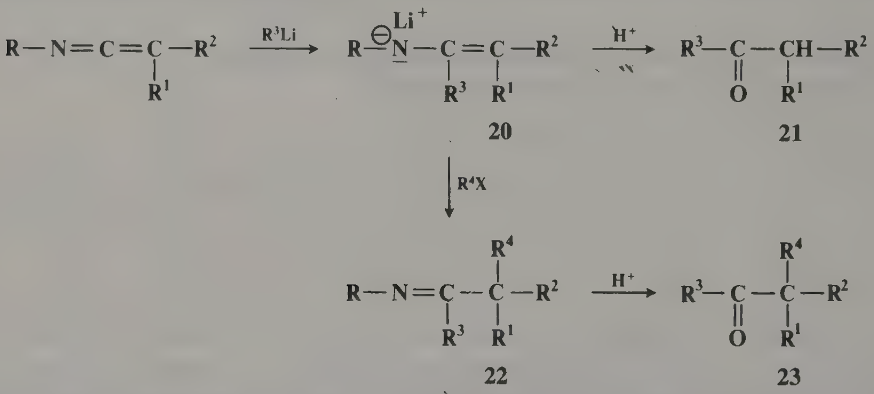
[171] Ziegenbein, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 358 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 380].

[172] See Alt, Ref. 165, pp. 135–145.



The imines are prepared by reaction **6-14.** The enamine salt method has also been used to give good yields of mono α-alkylation of α,β-unsaturated ketones.[175] Enamines prepared from aldehydes and butylisobutylamine can be alkylated by simple primary alkyl halides in good yields.[176] N-alkylation in this case is presumably prevented by steric hindrance.

Ketenimines (these can be formed by the Meyers method, **0-100**) react with alkyllithium reagents[177] to give lithioenamines (**20**), which may be hydrolyzed to the ketones **21** or treated with an alkyl



halide to give the Stork reaction product **22** which on hydrolysis gives the α-alkylated ketones **23.** It is obvious that a large number of ketones of types **21** and **23** can be prepared starting from dihydro-1,3-oxazines (reaction **0-100**).

OS **V,** 533, 869; **53,** 48; **54,** 46; **57,** 69; **61,** 129.

2-18 Insertion by Carbenes

$$RH + \overline{C}H_2 \longrightarrow RCH_3$$

The highly reactive species methylene inserts into C—H bonds,[178] both aliphatic and aromatic,[179] though with aromatic compounds ring expansion is also possible (see **5-49**). The reaction is useless for synthetic purposes because of its nonselectivity (see p. 174). Alkylcarbenes usually rearrange rather than give insertion (p. 175), but, when this is impossible, *intramolecular* insertion[180] is found rather than intermolecular.[181]

---

[173] For another way to prepare these salts, see Wender and Schaus, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 782 (1978).

[174] Stork and Dowd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2178 (1963).

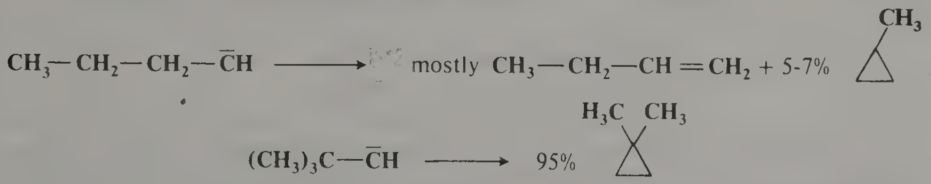
[175] Stork and Benaim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5938 (1971).

[176] Curphey, Hung, and Chu, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 607 (1975). See also Ho and Wong, *Synth. Commun.* **4,** 147 (1974).

[177] Meyers, Smith, and Ao, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2129 (1973); Lion and Dubois, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 3417 (1973), *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2673 (1973).

[178] First reported by Meerwein, Rathjen, and Werner, *Ber.* **75,** 1610 (1942). For reviews, see Bethell, in McManus, "Organic Reactive Intermediates," pp. 92–101, Academic Press, New York, 1973; Kirmse, "Carbene Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 209–266, Academic Press, New York, 1971; Hine, "Divalent Carbon," pp. 15–20, 110–116, Ronald Press, New York, 1964; Bell, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 1–61 (1964), pp. 30–43.

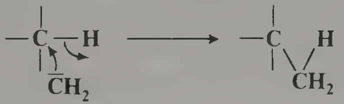
[179] Terao and Shida, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 687 (1964).


$CH_3-CH_2-CH_2-\overline{C}H$
mostly $CH_3-CH_2-CH=CH_2$ + 5-7%
CH_3
$(CH_3)_3C-\overline{C}H$
95%
H_3C CH_3

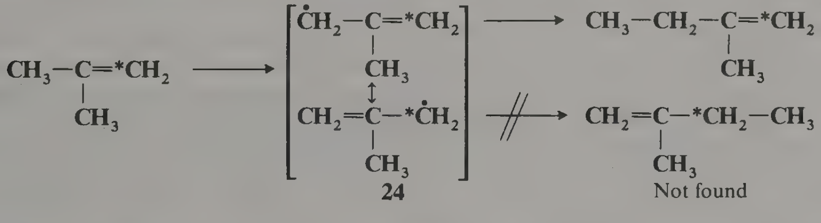
CH_2 generated by photolysis of CH_2N_2 in the liquid phase is indiscriminate—totally nonselective—in its reactivity (p. 174). CH_2 generated in other ways and other carbenes are less reactive and insert in the order tertiary > secondary > primary.[182] Halocarbenes insert much less readily, though a number of instances have been reported[183] (an unusual example is that of adamantane, which gives a good yield of 1-dichloromethyladamantane with dichlorocarbene under phase transfer conditions[184]). Nevertheless, even for less reactive carbenes, the insertion reaction has seldom been used for synthetic purposes. The carbenes can be generated in any of the ways mentioned in Chapter 5 (p. 173). For the similar insertion of nitrenes, see **2-11.**

The mechanism[185] of the insertion reaction is not known with certainty, but there seems to be at least two possible pathways.

1. A simple one-step process involving a three-center cyclic transition state:



The most covincing evidence for this mechanism is that in the reaction between isobutylene-1-^{14}C and carbene the product 2-methyl-1-butene was labeled only in the 1 position.[186] This rules out a free radical or other free intermediate such as a carbocation or carbanion. If **24** (or a corresponding ion) were an intermediate, resonance would ensure that some carbene attacked at the 1 position:



---

[180] Kirmse and Doering, *Tetrahedron* **11,** 266 (1960); Friedman and Berger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 492, 500 (1961). Also see Kirmse and Wächtershäuser, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 63, 73 (1966).

[181] For a review of the intramolecular insertions of carbenes or carbenoids generated from diazocarbonyl compounds, see Burke and Grieco, *Org. React.* **26,** 361–475 (1979).

[182] Doering and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1989 (1961).

[183] For example, see Parham and Koncos, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4034 (1961); Fields, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1744 (1962); Anderson, Lindsay, and Reese, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4874 (1964); Landgrebe and Thurman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1759 (1969); Dehmlow, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 4071 (1971); Seyferth and Cheng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6763 (1973), *Synthesis* 114 (1974); Birchall, Haszeldine, and Tissington, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1638 (1975); Steinbeck, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1103 (1978); Boev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 1190 (1981).

[184] Tabushi, Yoshida, and Takahashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6670 (1970). See also Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," pp. 44–46, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977; Starks and Liotta, "Phase Transfer Catalysis," pp. 268–273, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[185] For a discussion, see Bethell, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 153–209 (1969), pp. 190–194.

[186] Doering and Prinzbach, *Tetrahedron* **6,** 24 (1959).

Other evidence is that retention of configuration, which is predicted by this mechanism, has been found in a number of instances.[187]

2. A free-radical process in which the carbene directly abstracts a hydrogen from the substrate to generate a pair of free radicals:

$$RH + CH_2 \longrightarrow R\cdot + CH_3\cdot$$
$$R\cdot + CH_3\cdot \longrightarrow RCH_3$$

One fact supporting this mechanism is that among the products obtained (besides butane and isobutane) on treatment of propane with CH_2 (generated by photolysis of diazomethane and ketene) were propene and ethane,[188] which could arise, respectively, by

$$2CH_3CH_2CH_2\cdot \longrightarrow CH_3CH{=}CH_2 + CH_3CH_2CH_3 \quad \text{(disproportionation)}$$

and

$$CH_3CH_2CH_3 + \bar{C}H_2 \longrightarrow CH_3CH_2CH_2\cdot + CH_3\cdot$$
$$2CH_3\cdot \longrightarrow CH_3CH_3$$

That this mechanism can take place under suitable conditions has been demonstrated by isotopic labeling[189] and by other means.[190] However, the obtention of disproportionation and dimerization products does not always mean that the free-radical abstraction process takes place. In some cases these products arise in a different manner.[191] We have seen that the product of the reaction between a carbene and a molecule may have excess energy (p. 172). Therefore it is possible for the substrate and the carbene to react by mechanism 1 (the direct-insertion process) and for the excess energy to cause the compound thus formed to cleave to free radicals. When this pathway is in operation, the free radicals are formed *after* the actual insertion reaction.

$$\begin{array}{cccc} CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3 \longrightarrow & CH_3CH_2CH_2\cdot & + & CH_3\cdot \\ & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{Excited} & \text{disproportionation} & & \text{dimerization} \end{array}$$

It has been suggested[192] that singlet carbenes insert by the one-step direct-insertion process and triplets (which, being free radicals, are more likely to abstract hydrogen) by the free-radical process. In support of this suggestion is that CIDNP signals[193] (p. 163) were observed in the ethylbenzene produced from toluene and triplet CH_2, but not from the same reaction with singlet CH_2.[194]

The reaction in which aldehydes are converted to methyl ketones, $RCHO + CH_2N_2 \rightarrow RCOCH_3$, while apparently similar, does not involve a free carbene intermediate. It is considered in Chapter 18 (**8-10**).

OS **61,** 39.

---

[187] See, for example, Kirmse and Buschhoff, *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 1098 (1969); Seyferth and Cheng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4072 (1971); Landgrebe and Thurman, Ref. 183.

[188] Frey, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 318 (1959).

[189] Halberstadt and McNesby, *J. Chem. Phys.* **45,** 1666 (1966); McNesby and Kelly, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **3,** 293 (1971).

[190] Ring and Rabinovitch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4285 (1966), *Can. J. Chem.* **46,** 2435 (1968).

[191] Bell, Ref. 178.

[192] Richardson, Simmons, and Dvoretzky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5001 (1961), **83,** 1934 (1961).

[193] For a review of the use of CIDNP to study carbene mechanisms, see Roth, *Acc. Chem. Rec.* **10,** 85–91 (1977).

[194] Roth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1761 (1972). See also Closs and Closs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4549 (1969); Bethell and McDonald, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 671 (1977).

F. Metal Electrophiles

2-19 Metallation with Organometallic Compounds
Metallation or **Metallo-de-hydrogenation**[195]

$$\mathrm{RH + R'M \longrightarrow RM + R'H}$$

Many organic compounds can be metallated by treatment with an organometallic compound.[196] Since the reaction involves a proton transfer, the equilibrium lies on the side of the weaker acid. For example, fluorene reacts with butyllithium to give butane and 9-fluoryllithium. Since aromatic hydrocarbons are usually stronger acids than aliphatic ones, R is most often aryl. The most common reagent is butyllithium.[196a] Normally, only active aromatic rings react with butyllithium. Benzene itself is not reactive enough, though benzene can be metallated by butyllithium in the presence of *t*-BuOK,[197] or by butyllithium coordinated with various diamines.[198] Metallation of aliphatic RH is most successful when the carbanions are stabilized by resonance (allyl, benzyl, propargyl,[199] etc.) or when the negative charge is at an *sp* carbon (at triple bonds). A very good reagent for allylic or benzylic metallation is trimethylsilylmethyl potassium Me_3SiCH_2K.[200] In certain cases *gem*-dialkali metal or 1,1,1-trialkali metal compounds can be prepared. Examples are the conversion of phenylacetonitrile to 1,1-dilithiophenylacetonitrile $PhCLi_2CN$[201] and propyne to tetralithiopropyne $Li_3CC{\equiv}CLi$[202] in each case by treatment with excess butyllithium.

In general, the reaction can be performed only with organometallics of active metals such as lithium, sodium, and potassium, but Grignard reagents abstract protons from a sufficiently acidic C—H bond, as in $R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}H \rightarrow R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}MgX$. This is the best method for the preparation of ethynyl Grignard reagents.[203]

The reaction can be used to determine relative acidities of very weak acids by allowing two R—H compounds to compete for the same R′M and to determine which proton in a molecule is the most acidic.[204] When a hetero atom, such as N, O, S, or a halogen, is present in a molecule containing an aromatic ring or a double bond, lithiation is usually quite regioselective. The lithium bonds with the sp^2 carbon closest to the hetero atom, probably because the attacking species coordinates with the hetero atom.[205] In the case of aromatic rings this means attack at the ortho position. Two examples are

---

[195] These names also apply to reaction **2-20.**

[196] For reviews, see Narasimhan and Mali, *Synthesis* 957–986 (1983); Biellmann and Ducep, *Org. React.* **27,** 1–344 (1982); Gschwend and Rodriguez, *Org. React.* **26,** 1–360 (1979); Mallan and Bebb, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 693–755 (1969).

[196a] For an article on the safe handling of RLi compounds, see Anderson, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 205 (1984).

[197] Schlosser, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **8,** 9 (1967).

[198] Eberhardt and Butte, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2928 (1964); Langer, *Trans. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* **27,** 741 (1965); Eastham and Screttas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3276 (1965); Rausch and Ciappenelli, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **10,** 127 (1967).

[199] For a review of directive effects in allylic and benzylic metallation, see Klein, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2733–2759 (1983). For a review of propargylic metallation, see Klein, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," pt. 1, pp. 342–379, Wiley, New York, 1978.

[200] Hartmann and Schlosser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **59,** 453 (1976).

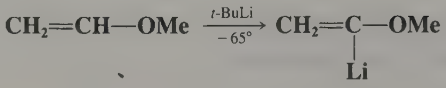
[201] Kaiser, Solter, Schwartz, Beard, and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4237 (1971). See also Kowalski, O'Dowd, Burke, and Fields, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5411 (1980).

[202] Priester and West, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 8421, 8426 (1976) and references cited therein.

[203] For a review of the synthetic applications of metallation by Grignard reagents at positions other than at triple bonds, see Blagoev and Ivanov, *Synthesis* 615–628 (1970).

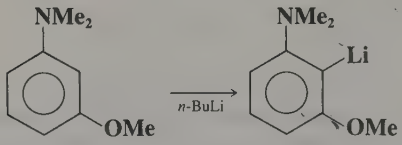
[204] For examples, see Broaddus, Logan, and Flautt, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1174 (1963); Finnegan and McNees, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 3234 (1964); Shirley and Hendrix, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **11,** 217 (1968).

[205] For many examples with references, see Ref. 196; Beak and Snieckus, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 306–312 (1982); Figuly and Martin, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3728 (1980), and the papers in *Tetrahedron* **39,** 1955–2091 (1983).



$$CH_2{=}CH{-}OMe \xrightarrow[-65^\circ]{t\text{-BuLi}} CH_2{=}\underset{\displaystyle Li}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}OMe$$

Ref. 206



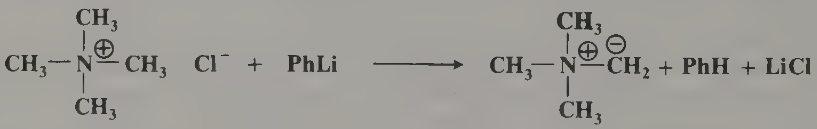
Ref. 207

In the second example, the lithium goes into the 2 position so as to be ortho to both substituents.[208] This regioselectivity can be quite valuable synthetically.

The mechanism involves a nucleophilic attack by R'^- (or a polar R′) on the *hydrogen*.[209] Evidence for this is that resonance effects of substituents in R seem to make little difference. When R is aryl, OMe and CF_3 *both* direct ortho, while isopropyl directs meta and para (mostly meta).[210] These results are exactly what would be expected from pure field effects, with no contribution from resonance effects, which implies that attack occurs at the hydrogen and not at R. Other evidence for the involvement of H in the rate-determining step is that there are large isotope effects.[211] The nature of R′ also has an effect on the rate. In the reaction between triphenylmethane and R′Li, the rate decreased in the order $R' = PhCH_2 >$ allyl > Bu > Ph > vinyl > Me.[212]

With respect to the reagent, this reaction is a special case of **2-22.**

A closely related reaction is formation of nitrogen ylides from quaternary ammonium salts (see **7-7**):



$$CH_3{-}\overset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\overset{\oplus}{N}}}{-}CH_3\quad Cl^- + PhLi \longrightarrow CH_3{-}\overset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\overset{\oplus}{N}}}{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}H_2 + PhH + LiCl$$

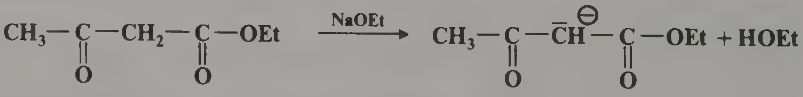
Phosphonium salts undergo a similar reaction (see **6-47**).

OS **II,** 198; **III,** 413, 757; **IV,** 792; **V,** 751; **50,** 104; **52,** 90; **53,** 56; **59,** 202; **60,** 81.

2-20 Metallation with Metals and Strong Bases

$$2RH + M \longrightarrow 2RM + H_2$$

Organic compounds can be metallated at suitably acidic positions by active metals and by strong bases. The reaction has been used to study the acidities of very weak acids (see p. 152). Synthetically, the most important use of the method is to convert ketones, esters, and similar compounds to their enolate forms,[213] e.g.,



$$CH_3{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}CH_2{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}OEt \xrightarrow{NaOEt} CH_3{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}H}{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}OEt + HOEt$$

---

[206] Baldwin, Höfle, and Lever, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7125 (1974).

[207] Slocum and Jennings, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3653 (1976).

[208] However, the regioselectivity can depend on reaction conditions: See Meyers and Avila, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3335 (1980).

[209] Benkeser, Trevillyan, and Hooz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4971 (1962).

[210] Bryce-Smith, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5983 (1963); Benkeser, Hooz, Liston, and Trevillyan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3984 (1963).

[211] Bryce-Smith, Gold, and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2743 (1954); Pocker and Exner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6764 (1968).

[212] Waack and West, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4494 (1964).

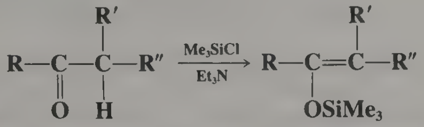
[213] For a review, see Caine, Ref. 142, vol. 1, pp. 95–145, 284–291.

for use in nucleophilic substitutions (**0-96, 0-97,** and **3-14**) and in additions to multiple bonds (**5-17** and **6-42**). Another important use is the conversion of terminal alkynes to acetylide ions.[214] The mechanism for the reaction between $ArCR_2H$ and RNHLi has been shown to be SEi.[215]

Mercuration of aromatic compounds can be accomplished with mercuric salts, most often $Hg(OAc)_2$[216] or $Hg(ClO_4)_2$ (to give ArHgOAc or $ArHgClO_4$, respectively). This is ordinary electrophilic aromatic substitution and takes place by the arenium ion mechanism (p. 447).[217] Aromatic compounds can also be converted to arylthallium bis(trifluoroacetates) $ArTl(OOCCF_3)_2$ by treatment with thallium(III) trifluoroacetate in trifluoroacetic acid.[218] These arylthallium compounds can be converted to phenols (**2-24**), aryl iodides or fluorides (**2-28**), aryl cyanides (**2-32**), aryl nitro compounds,[219] or aryl esters (**2-31**).

OS **I,** 70, 161, 490; **IV,** 473; **52,** 75; **54,** 19; **55,** 70; **57,** 18; **58,** 113. Conversions of ketones or esters to enolates are not listed.

2-21 Conversion of Enolates to Silyl Enol Ethers



Silyl enol ethers,[220] important reagents with a number of synthetic uses (see, for example, **0-97, 2-4, 5-17, 5-49, 6-40**), can be prepared by base treatment of a ketone (converting it to its enolate) followed by addition of a trialkylchlorosilane. Enolates prepared in other ways (e.g., as shown for **111** on p. 402) also give the reaction. The reaction can be applied to aldehydes by the use of the base KH in 1,2-dimethoxyethane.[221] A particularly mild method for conversion of ketones or aldehydes to silyl enol ethers uses Me_3SiI and the base hexamethyldisilazane $(Me_3Si)_2NH$.[222]

OS **58,** 163; **59,** 113; **61,** 122, 147. See also OS **61,** 116.

Metals as Leaving Groups

A. Hydrogen as the Electrophile

2-22 Replacement of Metals by Hydrogen **Hydro-de-metallation** or **Demetallation**

$$\mathbf{RM + HA \longrightarrow RH + MA}$$

---

[214] For a review, see Ziegenbein, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 170–185, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969. For an improved method, see Fisch, Coisne, and Figeys, *Synthesis* 211 (1982).

[215] Streitwieser, Van Sickle, and Langworthy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 244 (1962); Streitwieser and Reif, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 258 (1962).

[216] For a review of mercuric acetate, see Butler, in Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 4, pp. 1–145, Wiley, New York, 1981.

[217] For a review, see Taylor, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 48, vol. 13, pp. 186–194 (1972).

[218] McKillop, Hunt, Zelesko, Fowler, Taylor, McGillivray, and Kienzle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4841 (1971); Taylor, Kienzle, Robey, McKillop, and Hunt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4845 (1971); Taylor, Kienzle, and McKillop, *Org. Synth.* **55,** 70; Al-Azzawi and Roberts, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 677 (1982).

[219] Uemura, Toshimitsu, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 2582 (1976).

[220] For reviews of these compounds, see Brownbridge, *Synthesis* 1–28, 85–104 (1983); Colvin, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **7,** 15–64 (1978), pp. 43–50; Rasmussen, *Synthesis* 91–110 (1977). See also references given in Rubottom, Mott, and Krueger, *Synth. Commun.* **7,** 327 (1977). For a monograph on silicon reagents in organic synthesis, see Weber, "Silicon Reagents for Organic Synthesis," Springer-Verlag, New York, 1983. For a review, see Ager, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **11,** 493–522 (1982). See also *Tetrahedron* **39,** 841–1009, which is entirely devoted to the use of silicon in organic synthesis.

[221] Ladjama and Riehl, *Synthesis* 504 (1979).

[222] Miller and McKean, *Synthesis* 730 (1979); *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 319 (1982).

Organometallic compounds react with acids in reactions in which the metal is replaced by hydrogen.[223] R may be aryl (see **1-47**). For Grignard reagents, water is usually a strong enough acid, but stronger acids are also used. An important method for the reduction of alkyl halides consists of the process RX → RMgX → RH. The reaction is often used to introduce deuterium or tritium into susceptible positions.

Other organometallic compounds that are hydrolyzed by water are those of sodium, potassium, lithium, zinc, etc.—the ones high in the electromotive series. When the metal is less active, stronger acids are required. For example, R_2Zn compounds react explosively with water, R_2Cd slowly, and R_2Hg not at all, though the latter can be cleaved with concentrated HCl. However, this general statement has many exceptions, some hard to explain. For example, BR_3 compounds are completely inert to water, and GaR_3 at room temperature cleave just one R group, but AlR_3 react violently with water. However, BR_3 can be converted to RH with carboxylic acids.[224] For less active metals it is often possible to cleave just one R group from a multivalent metal. For example,

$$R_2Hg + HCl \longrightarrow RH + RHgCl$$

Organometallic compounds of less active metals and metalloids, such as silicon, antimony, bismuth, etc., are quite inert to water. Organomercury compounds (RHgX or R_2Hg) can be reduced to RH by H_2, $NaBH_4$, or other reducing agents.[225] There is evidence that the reduction with $NaBH_4$ takes place by a free-radical mechanism.[226]

In the *Zerewittenoff process* the number of moles of active hydrogen in an unknown compound is determined by treatment of the compound with methylmagnesium bromide and measurement of the volume of methane evolved. An *active hydrogen* is defined as one that will react with this reagent. Usually it is a hydrogen connected to oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus, etc., but hydrogens attached to some carbons are acidic enough for the reaction.[227]

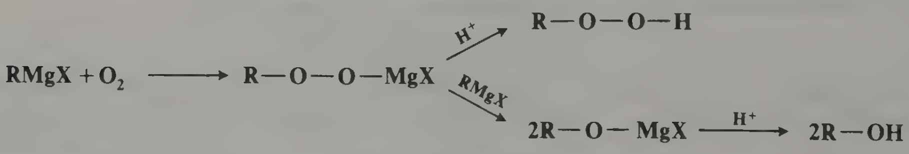
When the hydrogen of the HA is attached to carbon, this reaction is the same as **2-19.**

We do not list the many hydrolyses of sodium or potassium enolates, etc. found in *Organic Syntheses*. The hydrolysis of a Grignard reagent to give an alkane is found in OS **II,** 478.

B. Oxygen Electrophiles

2-23 The Reaction between Organometallic Reagents and Oxygen

Hydroperoxy-de-metallation; Hydroxy-de-metallation



Oxygen reacts with Grignard reagents to give either hydroperoxides or alcohols.[228] The reaction can be used to convert alkyl halides to alcohols without side reactions. With aryl Grignard reagents yields are lower and only phenols are obtained, not hydroperoxides. It is because of the possibility of this reaction that oxygen must be excluded when Grignard reagents are desired for other purposes. A better procedure for the conversion of aryl Grignard reagents to phenols involves the use of trimethyl borate followed by oxidation with H_2O_2 in acetic acid[229] (see **2-26**).

---

[223] For reviews, see Abraham, Ref. 2, pp. 107–134; Jensen and Rickborn, Ref. 2, pp. 45–74; Schlosser, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 287–306, 362–373 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 124–143, 258–269], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **5,** 238–311 (1968).

[224] Brown, "Hydroboration," pp. 64–65, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1962, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," pp. 313–317, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972; Brown and Hébert, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **255,** 135 (1983).

[225] For a review, see Makarova, *Organomet. React.* **1,** 119–348 (1970), pp. 251–270, 275–300.

[226] Kitching, Atkins, Wickham, and Alberts, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 563 (1981) and references cited therein.

[227] For a review, see Kharasch and Reinmuth, "Grignard Reactions of Nonmetallic Substances," pp. 1166–1198, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1954.

[228] For a monograph, see Brilkina and Shushunov, "Reactions of Organometallic Compounds with Oxygen and Peroxides," Chemical Rubber Company Press, Cleveland, Ohio, 1969. For a review, see Ref. 227, pp. 1264–1274.

$$\mathrm{ArMgX} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{B(OMe)_3}} \mathrm{ArB(OMe)_2} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H_2O_2}]{\mathrm{H^-}} \mathrm{ArOH}$$

Most other organometallic compounds also react with oxygen. Trialkylboranes and alkyldichloroboranes $RBCl_2$ can be conveniently converted to hydroperoxides by treatment with oxygen followed by hydrolysis.[230] Dilithiated carboxylic acids (see **0-98**) react with oxygen to give (after hydrolysis) α-hydroxy carboxylic acids.[231] There is evidence that the reaction between Grignard reagents and oxygen involves a free-radical mechanism.[232]

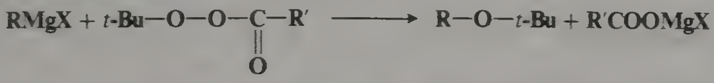
OS **V**, 918.

2-24 Conversion of Arylthallium Compounds to Phenols
Hydroxy-de-(bistrifluoroacetoxy)thallation

$$\mathrm{ArTl(OOCCF_3)_2} \xrightarrow[\substack{\text{2. PPh}_3 \\ \text{3. dil. NaOH}}]{\text{1. Pb(OAc)}_4} \mathrm{ArOH}$$

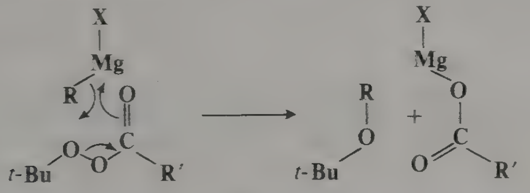
Arythallium bis(trifluoroacetates), which can be prepared by **2-20**, can be converted to phenols by treatment with lead tetraacetate followed by triphenylphosphine and then dilute NaOH.[233] The entire process, including the thallation reaction, can be carried out in a single reaction vessel without isolation of any of the intermediate products, so that this is a method of accomplishing the conversion ArH → ArOH. Diarylthallium trifluoroacetates undergo the same reaction.[234]

2-25 Conversion of Grignard Reagents to *t*-Butyl Ethers
***t*-Butoxy-de-metallation**



$$\mathrm{RMgX} + t\text{-Bu}{-}\mathrm{O}{-}\mathrm{O}{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle\mathrm{O}}{\|}}{\mathrm{C}}{-}\mathrm{R'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R}{-}\mathrm{O}{-}t\text{-Bu} + \mathrm{R'COOMgX}$$

A convenient method of preparation of *t*-butyl ethers consist of treating Grignard reagents with *t*-butyl acyl peroxides.[235] Both alkyl and aryl Grignard reagents may be used. The mechanism is probably of the cyclic, six-center type:



---

[229] Hawthorne, *J. Org. Chem.* **22**, 1001 (1957). For other procedures, see Lewis and Gabhe, *Aust. J. Chem.* **31**, 2091 (1978); Hoffmann and Ditrich, *Synthesis* 107 (1983). See also Rauchschwalbe and Schlosser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **58**, 1094 (1975).

[230] Brown and Midland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 4078 (1971); Midland and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95**, 4069 (1973); Midland, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* 7(1), 65–71 (1973).

[231] Moersch and Zwiesler, *Synthesis* 647 (1971); Adam and Cueto, *J.Org. Chem.* **42**, 38 (1977).

[232] Lamb, Ayers, Toney, and Garst, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88**, 4261 (1966); Davies and Roberts, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 317 (1969); Walling and Cioffari, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 6609 (1970); Garst, Smith, and Farrar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 7707 (1972). For a review, see Davies, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **200**, 87–99 (1980).

[233] Taylor, Altland, Danforth, McGillivray, and McKillop, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 3520 (1970).

[234] Taylor, Altland, and McKillop, *J. Org. Chem.* **40**, 2351 (1975).

[235] Lawesson and Yang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81**, 4230 (1959); Lawesson, Frisell, Denney, and Denney, *Tetrahedron* **19**, 1229 (1963). For a monograph on the reactions of organometallic compounds with peroxides, see Ref. 228. For a review, see Razuveav, Shushunov, Dodonov, and Brilkina, in Swern, "Organic Peroxides," vol. 3, pp. 141–270, Wiley, New York, 1972.

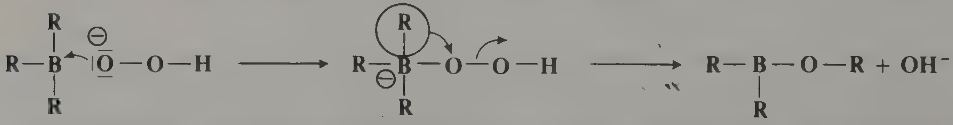
The application of this reaction to Grignard reagents prepared from cyclopropyl halides permits cyclopropyl halides to be converted to *t*-butyl ethers of cyclopropanols,[236] which can then be easily hydrolyzed to the cyclopropanols. The direct conversion of cyclopropyl halides to cyclopropanols by **0-1** is not generally feasible, because cyclopropyl halides do not generally undergo nucleophilic substitutions without ring opening.

OS **V,** 642, 924.

2-26 Oxidation of Trialkylboranes to Borates

$$R_3B \xrightarrow[NaOH]{H_2O_2} (RO)_3B \longrightarrow 3ROH + B(OH)_3$$

Trialkylboranes can be oxidized to esters of boric acid by alkaline H_2O_2.[237] This reaction does not affect double or triple bonds, aldehydes, ketones, halides, or nitriles. The R group does not rearrange, and this reaction is a step in the hydroboration method of converting olefins to alcohols (**5-11**). The mechanism has been formulated as involving a rearrangement from boron to oxygen:[237]

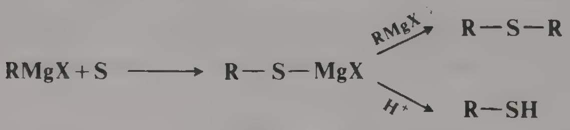


The other two R groups then similarly migrate. Retention of configuration is observed in R. Boranes can also be oxidized to borates in good yields with oxygen[238] and with trimethylamine oxide, either anhydrous[239] or in the form of the dihydrate.[240] The reaction with oxygen is free radical in nature.[241]

OS **V,** 918; **50,** 88; **52,** 59; **53,** 77.

C. Sulfur Electrophiles

2-27 Conversion of Grignard Reagents to Sulfur Compounds



Mercapto-de-metallation

Mercaptans and sulfides are occasionally prepared by treatment of Grignard reagents with sulfur.[242] Analogous reactions are known for selenium and tellurium compounds. Grignard reagents and other organometallic compounds react with sulfuryl chloride to give sulfonyl chlorides,[243] with esters of sulfinic acids to give (stereospecifically) sulfoxides,[244] with disulfides to give sulfides,[245] and with

---

[236] Longone and Miller, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4941 (1967).

[237] For reviews, see Brown, "Hydroboration," Ref. 224, pp. 69–72, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," Ref. 224, pp. 321–325.

[238] Brown, Midland, and Kabalka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1024 (1971).

[239] Köster and Morita, *Justus Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **704,** 70 (1967); Köster, Arora, and Binger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 205 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 185].

[240] Kabalka and Hedgecock, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1776 (1975), *J. Chem. Educ.* **52,** 745 (1975); Kabalka and Slayden, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **125** 273 (1977).

[241] Mirviss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3051 (1961), *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1713 (1967); Davies and Roberts, *Chem. Commun.* 298 (1966); Midland and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1506 (1971).

[242] For a review, see Wardell, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 1, pp. 211–215, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[243] Bhattacharya, Eaborn, and Walton, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1265 (1968). For a similar reaction with alkyllithiums, see Quast and Kees, *Synthesis* 489 (1974).

$$\mathrm{RMgX + SO_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow RSO_2Cl}$$

$$\mathrm{RMgX + R'SO{-}OR'' \longrightarrow RSOR'}$$

$$\mathrm{RMgX + R'SSR' \longrightarrow RSR'}$$

$$\mathrm{RMgX + SO_2 \longrightarrow RSO{-}OMgX}\begin{array}{l}\xrightarrow{H^+} \mathrm{RSO_2H} \\ \xrightarrow{X_2} \mathrm{RSO_2X}\end{array}$$

SO_2 to give sulfinic acid salts[246] that can be hydrolyzed to sulfinic acids or treated with halogens to give sulfonyl halides.[247]

OS **III,** 771; **IV,** 667; **50,** 104; **59,** 141.

D. Halogen Electrophiles

2-28 Halogenation of Organometallic Compounds
Halo-de-metallation

$$\mathrm{RMgX + I_2 \longrightarrow RI + MgIX}$$

Grignard reagents react with halogens to give alkyl halides. The reaction is useful for the preparation of iodo compounds from the corresponding chloro or bromo compounds. The reaction is not useful for preparing chlorides, since the reagents RMgBr and RMgI react with Cl_2 to give mostly RBr and RI, respectively.[248] Alkyl, aryl, and vinyl Grignard reagents and lithium compounds can be converted to fluorides in moderate to high yields with perchloryl fluoride $FClO_3$.[249]

Most organometallic compounds, both alkyl and aryl, also react with halogens to give alkyl or aryl halides.[250] The reaction can be used to convert acetylide ions to 1-haloalkynes.[251] Since acetylide ions are easily prepared from alkynes (reaction **2-20**), this provides a means of making the conversion $\mathrm{RC{\equiv}CH \rightarrow RC{\equiv}CX}$. Trialkylboranes react rapidly with I_2[252] or Br_2[253] in the presence of NaOMe in methanol, or with NCl_3 in CCl_4[254] to give alkyl iodides, bromides, or chlorides, respectively. Combined with the hydroboration reaction (**5-13**), this is an indirect way of adding HBr or HI to a double bond to give products with an anti-Markovnikov orientation (see **5-1**). Trialkylboranes can also be converted to alkyl iodides by treatment with allyl iodide and air in a free radical process.[255]

---

[244] Harpp, Vines, Montillier, and Chan, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3987 (1976).

[245] For a discussion, see Negishi, Ref. 1, pp. 243–247.

[246] For a review of the reaction of organometallic compounds with SO_2, see Kitching and Fong, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **5,** 281–321 (1970).

[247] Asinger, Laue, Fell, and Gubelt, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 1696 (1967).

[248] Zakharkin, Gavrilenko, and Paley, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **21,** 269 (1970).

[249] Schlosser and Heinz, *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 1944 (1969).

[250] For a review with respect to organomercury compounds, see Makarova, Ref. 225, pp. 325–348.

[251] For a review, see Delavarenne and Viehe, Ref. 214, pp. 665–688.

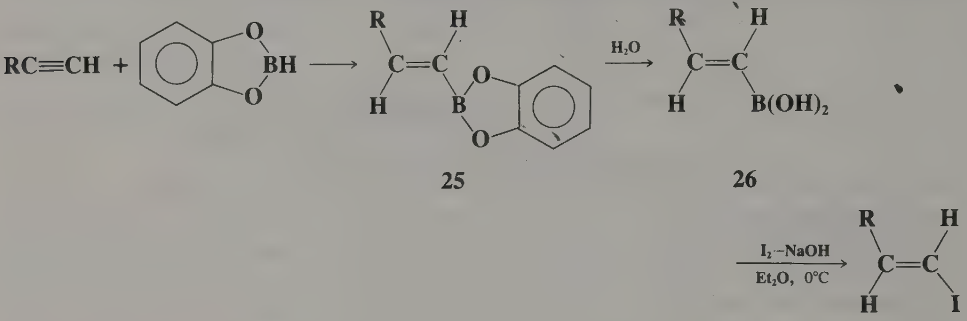
[252] De Lue and Brown, *Synthesis* 114 (1976); Brown, De Lue, Kabalka, and Hedgecock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1290 (1976). See also Kabalka and Gooch, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2582 (1981); Kabalka, Sastry, and Sastry, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 101 (1982).

[253] Brown and Lane, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6660 (1970). See also Lane and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7212 (1970), *J.Organomet. Chem.* **26,** C51 (1971); Lane, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **7**(2), 133–145 (1973); Kabalka, Sastry, Hsu, and Hylarides, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3113 (1981).

[254] Brown and De Lue, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **135,** C57 (1977). For other reagents, see Jigajinni, Paget, and Smith, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 376 (1981).

[255] Suzuki, Nozawa, Harada, Itoh, Brown, and Midland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1508 (1971). For reviews, see Brown and Midland, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 692–700 (1972), pp. 699–700 [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 702–710]; Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," Ref. 224, pp. 442–446.

trans-1-Alkenylboronic acids **25**, prepared by hydroboration of terminal alkynes with catecholborane[256] (**5-13**) followed by hydrolysis, react with I_2 in the presence of NaOH at 0°C in ethereal solvents to give trans vinyl iodides.[257] This is an indirect way of accomplishing the anti-Markovnikov addition of HI to a terminal triple bond. The reaction cannot be applied to alkenylboronic acids prepared from internal alkynes. However, alkenylboronic acids prepared from both internal and terminal alkynes react with Br_2 (2 moles of Br_2 must be used) followed by base to give the corresponding vinyl bromide, but in this case with *inversion* of configuration; so the product is the cis vinyl bromide.[258] Alkenylboronic acids also give vinyl bromides and iodides when treated with a mild oxidizing agent and NaBr or NaI, respectively.[258a] Vinyl halides can also be prepared from vinylaluminum[259] or vinylcopper reagents. The latter react with I_2 to give iodides,[260] and with N-chloro- or N-bromosuccinimide at −45°C to give chlorides or bromides.[261]



25

26

Aryl iodides and fluorides can be prepared from arylthallium bis(trifluoroacetates) (see **2-20**), indirectly achieving the conversions ArH → ArI and ArH → ArF. The bis(trifluoroacetates) react with KI to give ArI in high yields.[262] The reaction with KF gives arylthallium(III) difluorides $ArTlF_2$, but these react with BF_3 to give ArF in moderate overall yields.[263] Aryl fluorides have also been prepared in low-to-moderate yields by treatment of arylmetal compounds such as Ph_4Sn and Ph_2Hg with F_2.[264]

For the reaction of lithium enolates of esters with I_2 or CX_4 see **2-5**.

It is unlikely that a single mechanism suffices to cover all conversions of organometallic compounds to alkyl halides.[265] In a number of cases the reaction has been shown to involve inversion of configuration (see p. 515), indicating an SE2 (back) mechanism, while in other cases retention of configuration has been shown,[266] implicating an SE2 (front) or SEi mechanism. In still other cases complete loss of configuration as well as other evidence have demonstrated the presence of a free-radical mechanism.[267]

OS **I,** 125, 325, 326; **III,** 774, 813; **55,** 70. Also see OS **II,** 150.

---

[256] For a review of this reagent, see Kabalka, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **9,** 131–147 (1977).

[257] Brown, Hamaoka, and Ravindran, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5786 (1973). See also Kabalka, Gooch, and Hsu, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 247 (1981).

[258] Brown, Hamaoka, and Ravindran, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6456 (1973); see also Hamaoka and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1189 (1975).

[258a] See Kabalka, Sastry, Knapp, and Srivastava, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 1027 (1983).

[259] Zweifel and Whitney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2753 (1967).

[260] Normant, Cahiez, Chuit, and Villieras, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **77,** 269 (1974), *Synthesis* 803 (1974).

[261] Westmijze, Meijer, and Vermeer, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 168 (1977); Levy, Talley, and Dunford, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3545 (1977).

[262] Ref. 218. See also Ishikawa and Sekiya, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 1680 (1974) and Ref. 234.

[263] Taylor, Bigham, Johnson, and McKillop, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 362 (1977).

[264] Adam, Berry, Hall, Pate, and Ruth, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 658 (1983).

[265] For reviews of the mechanisms, see Abraham, Ref. 2, pp. 135–177; Jensen and Rickborn, Ref. 2, pp. 75–97.

[266] For example, see Jensen and Gale, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 148 (1960).

[267] See, for example, Ref. 266; Beletskaya, Reutov, and Gur'yanova, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1483 (1961); Beletskaya, Ermanson, and Reutov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 218 (1965).

E. Nitrogen Electrophiles

2-29 The Conversion of Organometallic Compounds to Amines
Amino-de-metallation

$$\mathrm{RLi} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{MeLi}]{\mathrm{CH_3ONH_2}} \mathrm{RNH_2}$$

Alkyl and aryllithium compounds can be converted to primary amines by treatment with methoxyamine and MeLi in ether at −78°C.[268] Grignard reagents give lower yields. The reaction can be extended to give secondary amines by the use of N-substituted methoxyamines CH_3ONHR'.[269] There is evidence[269a] that the mechanism involves the direct displacement of OCH_3 by R on an intermediate $CH_3O\bar{N}R'^-$ ($CH_3O\bar{N}R'^-\ Li^+ + RLi \rightarrow CH_3OLi + R\bar{N}R'^-\ Li^+$). Organoboranes react with a mixture of aqueous NH_3 and NaOCl to produce primary amines.[270] It is likely that the actual

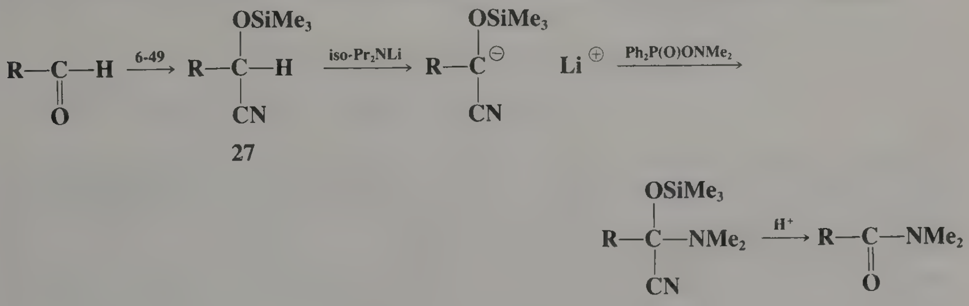
$$\mathrm{R_3B} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{NH_3\text{–}NaOCl}} \mathrm{2RNH_2 + RB(OH)_2}$$

reagent is chloramine NH_2Cl. Chloramine itself, and hydroxylamine-O-sulfonic acid in diglyme, also give the reaction.[271] Since the boranes can be prepared by the hydroboration of alkenes (**5-13**), this is an indirect method for the addition of NH_3 to a double bond with anti-Markovnikov orientation. Secondary amines can be prepared[272] by the treatment of alkyl- or aryldichloroboranes or dialkylchloroboranes (prepared as on p. 705) with alkyl or aryl azides.

$$\mathrm{RBCl_2 + R'N_3 \longrightarrow RR'NBCl_2 \xrightarrow[\mathrm{OH^-}]{\mathrm{H_2O}} RNHR'}$$

$$\mathrm{R_2BCl + R'N_3 \xrightarrow[\text{2. } \mathrm{H_2O}]{\text{1. } \mathrm{Et_2O}} RNHR'}$$

An indirect method for the conversion of aldehydes to N,N-disubstituted amides is based on the conversion of an O-(trimethylsilyl)aldehyde cyanohydrin **27** to the amine **28**.[273]



27

28

Secondary amines have been converted to tertiary by treatment with dialkylcopperlithium reagents: $R_2CuLi + NHR'_2 \rightarrow RNR'_2$.[274] The reaction was also used to convert primary amines to secondary, but yields were lower.[274]

---

[268] Beak and Kokko, *J. Org. Chem.* **47**, 2822 (1982). For other reagents, see Colvin, Kirby, and Wilson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23**, 3835 (1982); Boche, Bernheim, and Schrott, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23**, 5399 (1982); Boche and Schrott, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23**, 5403 (1982); Reed and Snieckus, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 3795 (1983).

[269] Kokko and Beak, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 561 (1983).

[269a] Beak, Basha, and Kokko, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106**, 1511 (1984).

[270] Kabalka, Sastry, McCollum, and Yoshioka, *J. Org. Chem.* **46**, 4296 (1981).

[271] Brown, Heydkamp, Breuer, and Murphy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86**, 3565 (1964); Rathke, Inoue, Varma, and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88**, 2870 (1966). See also Tamura, Minamikawa, Fujii, and Ikeda, *Synthesis* 196 (1974).

[272] Brown, Midland and Levy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 2114 (1972), **95**, 2394 (1973).

[273] Boche, Bosold, and Niessner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23**, 3255 (1982).

[274] Yamamoto and Maruoka, *J. Org. Chem.* **45**, 2739 (1980).

Molecular nitrogen (N_2) reacts with aryllithium compounds in the presence of compounds of such transition metals as titanium, chromium, molybdenum, or vanadium (e.g., $TiCl_4$) to give (after hydrolysis) primary aromatic amines.[275]

$$\text{ArLi} + \text{N}_2 \xrightarrow[\text{2. H}_2\text{O}]{\text{1. MX}_n} \text{ArNH}_2 + \text{NH}_3$$

Another method for the conversion of ArM to $ArNH_2$ makes use of the reagent azidomethyl phenyl sulfide $PhSCH_2N_3$ to give triazenes that are hydrolyzed to the amines.[276]

$$\text{ArMgX} \xrightarrow{\text{PhSCH}_2\text{N}_3} \text{ArNHN{=}NCH}_2\text{SPh} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrolysis}} \text{ArNH}_2$$

OS **58**, 32.

2-30 The Conversion of Organometallic Reagents to Azides

Azido-de-metallation (Overall transformation)

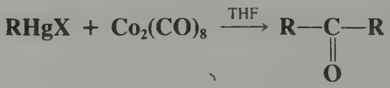
$$\text{ArMgX} + \text{TsN}_3 \longrightarrow (\text{ArNNNTs})\text{MgX} \xrightarrow[\text{pyrophosphate}]{\text{sodium}} \text{ArN}_3$$

Aryl Grignard reagents react with tosyl azide to give triazene salts that can be fragmented by treatment with aqueous sodium pyrophosphate to give moderate-to-good yields of aryl azides.[277] Alkyl Grignard reagents also give the reaction, but yields are poor. Alkyl azides RN_3 can be prepared by reaction of organoboranes R_3B with $Fe(N_3)_3$ in the presence of H_2O_2.[278]

F. Carbon Electrophiles

2-31 The Conversion of Organometallic Compounds to Ketones, Aldehydes, Esters, or Amides

Acyl-de-metallation, etc.



$$\text{RHgX} + \text{Co}_2(\text{CO})_8 \xrightarrow{\text{THF}} \text{R}\text{—}\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}\text{—R}$$

Symmetrical ketones can be prepared in good yields by the reaction of organomercuric halides[279] with dicobalt octacarbonyl in THF,[280] or with nickel carbonyl in DMF or certain other solvents.[281] R may be aryl or alkyl. However, when R is alkyl, rearrangements may intervene in the $Co_2(CO)_8$ reaction, although the $Ni(CO)_4$ reaction seems to be free from such rearrangements.[281] Divinyl ketones have been prepared in high yields by treatment of vinylmercuric halides with CO and a rhodium catalyst.[282] When arylmercury halides are treated with nickel carbonyl in the presence of Ar′I, unsymmetrical diaryl ketones can be obtained.[281] In a more general synthesis of unsymmetrical ketones, tetraalkyltin compounds R_4Sn are treated with a halide R′X (R′ = aryl, vinyl, benzyl), CO, and a Pd complex catalyst.[283] A similar reaction used Grignard reagents, $Fe(CO)_5$, and an alkyl halide.[284]

---

[275] Vol'pin, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **30,** 607 (1972).

[276] Trost and Pearson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2483 (1981); **105,** 1054 (1983). For other methods, see Hassner, Munger, and Belinka, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 699 (1982); Narasimhan and Ammanamanchi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4733 (1983); Mori, Aoyama, and Shioiri, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 429 (1984).

[277] Smith, Rowe, and Bruner, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3430 (1969).

[278] Suzuki, Ishidoya, and Tabata, *Synthesis* 687 (1976).

[279] For reviews of the use of organomercury compounds in organic synthesis, see Larock, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1713–1754 (1982); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 27–37 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 28–38].

[280] Seyferth and Spohn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3037 (1969).

[281] Hirota, Ryang, and Tsutsumi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1531 (1971).

[282] Larock and Hershberger, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3840 (1980).

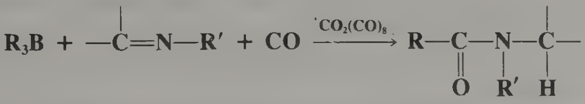
Grignard reagents react with formic acid to give good yields of aldehydes. Two moles of RMgX are used; the first converts HCOOH to $HCOO^-$, which reacts with the second mole to give RCHO.[285] Aryllithiums and Grignard reagents react with iron pentacarbonyl to give aldehydes ArCHO,[286] while alkyllithium reagents react with CO to give symmetrical ketones.[287] α,β-Unsaturated aldehydes can be prepared by treatment of vinylsilanes with dichloromethyl methyl ether and $TiCl_4$ at −90°C.[288] Vinylic aluminum compounds react with methyl chloroformate ClCOOMe to give α,β-unsaturated esters directly.[289] The latter compounds can also be prepared by treating **25** with CO, $PdCl_2$, and NaOAc in MeOH.[290]

Arylthallium bis(trifluoroacetates) (see **2-20**) can be carbonylated with CO, an alcohol, and a $PdCl_2$ catalyst to give esters of aryl carboxylic acids:[291]

$$ArTl(OOCCF_3)_2 + ROH + CO \xrightarrow{PdCl_2} ArCOOR$$

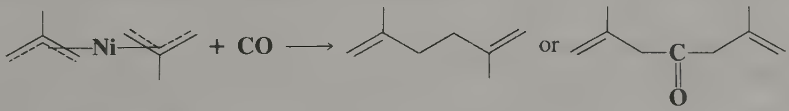
Alkyl and aryl Grignard reagents undergo a similar reaction with $Fe(CO)_5$ instead of CO.[292]

Amides have been prepared by the treatment of trialkyl or triarylboranes with CO and an imine, in the presence of catalytic amounts of cobalt carbonyl:[293]



$$R_3B + -\overset{|}{C}=N-R' + CO \xrightarrow{CO_2(CO)_8} R-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-\underset{R'}{\underset{|}{N}}-\underset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

Treatment of bis-π-allylnickel complexes [which can be prepared from an allyl Grignard reagent and $NiBr_2$ or from a π-allylnickel bromide (p. 405)] with CO gives either a 1,5-hexadiene or a diallyl ketone, depending on the structure of the ligand.[294]



See also reactions **0-104, 5-20, 6-71,** and **8-26** to **8-28.**

2-32 Cyanation of Organometallic Compounds

Cyano-de-metallation

$$ArTl(OOCCF_3)_2 \xrightarrow[\text{aq. KCN}]{\text{excess}} ArTl(CN)_3^- \ K^+ \xrightarrow[\text{KCN}]{h\nu} ArCN$$

---

[283] Tanaka, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2601 (1979).

[284] Yamashita and Suemitsu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 761 (1978).

[285] Sato, Oguro, Watanabe, and Sato, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2869 (1980). For another method of converting RMgX to RCHO, see Meyers and Comins, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5179 (1978); Comins and Meyers, *Synthesis* 403 (1978); Amaratunga and Fréchet, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1143 (1983).

[286] Ryang, Rhee, and Tsutsumi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 341 (1964); Giam and Ueno, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3166 (1977); Yamashita, Miyoshi, Nakazono, and Suemitsu, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **55,** 1663 (1982). For another method, see Gupton and Polk, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 571 (1981).

[287] Ryang and Tsutsumi, *Bull. Chem Soc. Jpn.* **35,** 1121 (1962); Ryang, Sawa, Hasimoto, and Tsutsumi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 1704 (1964); Trzupek, Newirth, Kelly, Sbarbati, and Whitesides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8118 (1973).

[288] Yamamoto, Nunokawa, and Tsuji, *Synthesis* 721 (1977); Yamamoto, Yohitake, Qui, and Tsuji, *Chem. Lett.* 859 (1978).

[289] Zweifel and Lynd, *Synthesis* 625 (1976).

[290] Miyaura and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 879 (1981).

[291] Larock and Fellows, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1900 (1982).

[292] Yamashita and Suemitsu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1477 (1978). For a method involving palladium, see Schoenberg, Bartoletti, and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3318 (1974); Schoenberg and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3327 (1974).

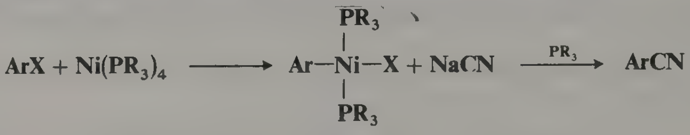
[293] Alper and Amaratunga, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3593 (1982).

[294] For a review, see Semmelhack, *Org. React.* **19,** 115–198 (1972), pp. 123–128.

Arylthallium bis(trifluoroacetates) (see **2-20**) can be converted to aryl nitriles by treatment with excess aqueous KCN followed by photolysis of the resulting complex ion $ArTl(CN)_3^-$ in the presence of excess KCN.[233] Alternatively, arylthallium(III) salts react with $Cu(CN)_2$ or CuCN to give aryl nitriles without irradiation,[295] e.g.,

$$\mathbf{PhTl(OAc)(ClO_4) + Cu(CN)_2} \xrightarrow[\text{pyridine}]{115^\circ\text{C},\ 5\ \text{hr}} 75\%\ \mathbf{PhCN}$$

Yields from this procedure are variable, ranging from almost nothing to 90 or 100%. In another method, the arylnickel(0) complex **29** reacts with sodium cyanide to give aryl nitriles.[296] **29** are prepared by treatment of aryl halides with $Ni(PR_3)_4$ complexes.[297]



$$\mathbf{ArX + Ni(PR_3)_4 \longrightarrow Ar{-}\overset{\displaystyle PR_3}{\underset{\displaystyle PR_3}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{Ni}}}}{-}X + NaCN \xrightarrow{PR_3} ArCN}$$

29

Vinylcopper reagents react with ClCN to give vinyl cyanides, though BrCN and ICN give the vinyl halide instead.[298] Vinyl cyanides have also been prepared by the reaction between vinyllithium compounds and phenyl cyanate PhOCN.[299] Alkyl cyanides RCN have been prepared, in varying yields, by treatment of sodium trialkylcyanoborates with NaCN and lead tetraacetate.[299a]

For other electrophilic substitutions of the type RM → RC, see **0-87** to **0-109,** which are discussed under nucleophilic substitutions in Chapter 10. See also **6-71.**

G. Metal Electrophiles

2-33 Transmetallation with a Metal

Metallo-de-metallation[300]

$$\mathbf{RM + M' \rightleftharpoons RM' + M}$$

Many organometallic compounds are best prepared by this reaction, which involves replacement of a metal in an organometallic compound by another metal. RM′ can be successfully prepared only when M′ is above M in the electromotive series, unless some other way is found to shift the equilibrium. That is, RM is usually an unreactive compound and M′ is a metal more active than M. Most often, RM is R_2Hg, since mercury alkyls[279] are easy to prepare and mercury is far down in the electromotive series.[301] Alkyls of Li, Na, K, Be, Mg, Al, Ga, Zn, Cd, Te, Sn, etc. have been prepared this way. An important advantage of this method over **2-37** is that it ensures that the organometallic compound will be prepared free of any possible halide. This method can be used for the isolation of solid sodium and potassium alkyls. If the metals lie too close together in the series, it may not be possible to shift the equilibrium. For example, alkylbismuth compounds cannot be prepared in this way from alkylmercury compounds.

OS **V,** 1116.

---

[295] Uemura, Ikeda, and Ichikawa, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 3025 (1972).

[296] Cassar, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **54,** C57 (1973).

[297] For example, see Gerlach, Kane, Parshall, Jesson, and Muetterties, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3543 (1971).

[298] Westmijze and Vermeer, *Synthesis* 784 (1977).

[299] Murray and Zweifel, *Synthesis* 150 (1980).

[299a] Masuda, Hoshi, Yamada, and Arase, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 398 (1984).

[300] This name also applies to reactions **2-34** and **2-35.**

[301] For a review of the reaction when M is mercury, see Makarova, Ref. 225, pp. 190–226. See also Ref. 279.

2-34 Transmetallation with a Metal Halide

$$\mathbf{RM + M'X \rightleftharpoons RM' + MX}$$

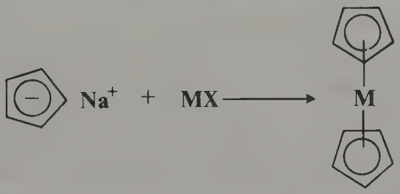
In contrast to **2-33** the reaction between an organometallic compound and a metal *halide* is successful only when M′ is *below* M in the electromotive series.[302] The two reactions considered together therefore constitute a powerful tool for preparing all kinds of organometallic compounds. In this reaction the most common substrates are Grignard reagents and organolithium compounds. Among others, alkyls of Be, Zn, Cd, Hg, Al, Sn, Pb, Co, Pt, and Au have been prepared by treatment of Grignard reagents with the appropriate halide.[303] The reaction has been used to prepare alkyls of almost all nontransition metals and even of some transition metals. Alkyls of metalloids and of nonmetals, including Si, B, Ge, P, As, Sb, and Bi, can also be prepared in this manner.[304] Except for alkali-metal alkyls and Grignard reagents, the reaction between RM and M′X is the most common method for the preparation of organometallic compounds.[305]

If M′ has a valence higher than 1, it is often possible to stop the reaction before all the halogens have been replaced, e.g.,

$$\mathbf{RMgX + SiCl_4 \longrightarrow RSiCl_3}$$

However, it is not always possible: RMgX + BF_3 gives only BR_3, although $BRCl_2$ can be prepared from R_2Zn and BCl_3.

Metallocenes (see p. 44) are usually made by this method:



Among others, metallocenes of Sc, Ti, V, Cr, Mn, Fe, Co, and Ni have been prepared in this manner.[306]

Metal nitrates are sometimes used instead of halides.

OS **I,** 231, 550; **III,** 601; **IV,** 258, 473, 881; **V,** 211, 496, 727, 918, 1001; **55,** 127; **58,** 152; **59,** 122. Also see OS **IV,** 476

2-35 Transmetallation with an Organometallic Compound

$$\mathbf{RM + R'M' \rightleftharpoons RM' + R'M}$$

This type of metallic exchange is used much less often than **2-33** and **2-34.** It is an equilibrium reaction and is useful only if the equilibrium lies in the desired direction. Usually the goal is to prepare a lithium compound that is not prepared easily in other ways,[307] e.g., vinyl- or allyllithium, most commonly from an organotin substrate. Examples are the preparation of vinyllithium from phenyllithium and tetravinyltin and the formation of α-dimethylamino organolithium compounds from the corresponding organotin compounds[308]

---

[302] For reviews of the mechanism, see Abraham, Ref. 2, pp. 39–106; Jensen and Rickborn, Ref. 2, pp. 100–192. Also see Schlosser, Ref. 223.

[303] For a review, see Noltes, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2151 (1972).

[304] For a review as applied to Si, B, and P, see Ref. 227, pp. 1306–1345.

[305] For a review where M is aluminum, see Mole, *Organomet. React.* **1,** 1–54 (1970), pp. 31–43; where M is mercury, see Makarova, Ref. 225, pp. 129–178, 227–240.

[306] For reviews of the preparation of metallocenes, see Bublitz and Rinehart, *Org. React.* **17,** 1–154 (1969); Birmingham, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **2,** 365–413 (1965), pp. 375–382.

[307] For reviews, see Kauffmann, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **92,** 109–147 (1980), pp. 130–136; Seyferth, Vaughan, Raab, Welch, Cohen, and Alleston, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1364–1367 (1963).

$$\mathbf{RR'NCH_2SnBu_3 + BuLi \xrightarrow{0^\circ C} RR'NCH_2Li + Bu_4Sn}$$

The reaction has also been used to prepare 1,30dilithiopropanes from the corresponding mercury compounds.[309] In general, the equilibrium lies in the direction in which the more electropositive metal is bonded to that alkyl or aryl group that is the more stable carbanion (p. 152). The reaction proceeds with retention of configuration;[310] an SEi mechanism is likely.[311]

OS **V**, 452; **51**, 17.

Halogen as Leaving Group

A. Hydrogen as the Electrophile

2-36 Reduction of Alkyl Halides

Although this reaction can proceed by an electrophilic substitution mechanism, it is considered in Chapter 10 (**0-77**).

B. Metal Electrophiles

2-37 Replacement of a Halogen with a Metal

Metallo-de-halogenation[312]

$$\mathbf{RX + M \longrightarrow RM}$$

Alkyl halides react directly with certain metals to give organometallic compounds.[313] The most common metal is magnesium, and of course this is by far the most common method for the preparation of Grignard reagents.[314] The order of halide activity is I > Br > Cl. The reaction can be applied to many alkyl halides—primary, secondary, and tertiary—and to aryl halides, though aryl *chlorides* require the use of THF or another higher-boiling solvent instead of the usual ether, or special entrainment methods.[315] Aryl iodides and bromides can be treated in the usual manner. Allyl Grignard reagents can also be prepared in the usual manner (or in THF),[316] though in the presence of excess halide these may give Wurtz-type coupling products (see **0-88**). Like aryl chlorides, vinyl halides require higher-boiling solvents (see OS **IV**, 258). Ethynyl Grignard reagents are not generally prepared by this method at all. For these, **2-19** is used. Chemically activated magnesium can be used for difficult cases.[317] Dihalides[318] can be converted to Grignard reagents if the halogens are different and are at least three carbons apart. If the halogens are the same, it is possible to obtain dimagnesium compounds, e.g., $BrMg(CH_2)_4MgBr$.[319] 1,2-Dihalides give elimination instead of Grignard reagent formation (**7-29**), and the reaction is seldom successful with 1,1-dihalides, though the preparation of *gem*-disubstituted compounds, such as $CH_2(MgBr)_2$, has been accomplished with these substrates.[320] α-Halo Grignard reagents and α-halolithium reagents can be prepared by the method given in **2-38.**[321] Alkylmagnesium fluorides can be prepared by refluxing alkyl fluorides with Mg in the presence of appropriate catalysts (e.g., I_2 or EtBr) in tetrahydrofuran for several days.[322]

---

[308] Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4027 (1971); Peterson and Ward, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **66,** 209 (1974). See also Seyferth and Mammarella, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **177,** 53 (1979).

[309] Seetz, Schat, Akkerman, and Bickelhaupt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6848 (1982).

[310] Seyferth and Vaughan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 883 (1964).

[311] Dessy, Kaplan, Coe, and Salinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1191 (1963).

[312] This name also applies to reaction **2-38.**

[313] For a review, see Negishi, Ref. 1, pp. 30–37.

[314] For a review, see Ref. 227, pp. 5–91.

[315] Pearson, Cowan, and Beckler, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 504 (1959).

[316] For a review of allyl and crotyl Grignard reagents, see Benkeser, *Synthesis* 347–358 (1971).

[317] For a review, see Lai, *Synthesis* 585–604 (1981).

[318] For a review of the preparation of Grignard reagents from dihalides, see Heaney, *Organomet. Chem. Rev.* **1,** 27–42 (1966).

The presence of other functional groups in the halide usually affects the preparation of the Grignard reagent. Groups that contain active hydrogen (as defined on p. 548), such as OH, NH_2, and COOH, may be present in the molecule, but only if they are converted to the salt form (O^-, NH^-, COO^-, respectively). Groups that react with Grignard reagents, such as C═O, C≡N, NO_2, COOR, etc., inhibit Grignard formation entirely. In general, the only functional groups that may be present in the halide molecule without any interference at all are double and triple bonds (except terminal triple bonds) and OR and NR_2 groups. However, β-halo ethers generally give β-elimination when treated with magnesium (see **7-31**), and Grignard reagents from α-halo ethers[323] can only be formed in tetrahydrofuran or methylal at a low temperature, e.g.,[324]

$$\mathbf{EtOCH_2Cl + Mg \xrightarrow[-30^\circ C]{THF\ or\ CH_2(OMe)_2} EtOCH_2MgCl}$$

because such reagents immediately undergo α elimination (see **2-38**) at room temperature in ether solution.

Because Grignard reagents react with water (**2-22**) and with oxygen (**2-23**), it is generally best to prepare them in an anhydrous nitrogen atmosphere. Grignard reagents are generally neither isolated nor stored; solutions of Grignard reagents are used directly for the required synthesis. Grignard reagents can also be prepared in benzene or toluene, if a tertiary amine is added to complex with the RMgX.[325] This method eliminates the need for an ether solvent. With certain primary alkyl halides it is even possible to prepare alkylmagnesium compounds in hydrocarbon solvents in the absence of an organic base.[326]

Next to the formation of Grignard reagents, the most important application of this reaction is the conversion of alkyl and aryl halides to organolithium compounds,[327] but it has also been carried out with many other metals, e.g., Na, Be, Zn, Hg, As, Sb, and Sn.[328] With sodium, the Wurtz reaction (**0-87**) is an important side reaction. The reaction is not successful for potassium, complex mixtures being obtained in which RK is an unimportant constituent.[329] In some cases where the reaction between a halide and a metal is too slow, an alloy of the metal with potassium or sodium can be used instead. The most important example is the preparation of tetraethyllead from ethyl bromide and a Pb–Na alloy.

---

[319] For example, see Denise, Ducom, and Fauvarque, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 990 (1972); Seetz, Hartog, Böhm, Blomberg, Akkerman, and Bickelhaupt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1497 (1982).

[320] For example, see Bertini, Grasselli, Zubiani, and Cainelli, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 1281 (1970). For the synthesis of trilithiomethane $CHLi_3$, see Landro, Gurak, Chinn, Newman, and Lagow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7345 (1982).

[321] For a review of compounds containing both carbon–halogen and carbon–metal bonds, see Chivers, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **6,** 1–64 (1970).

[322] Yu and Ashby, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2123 (1971).

[323] For a review of organometallic compounds containing an α hetero atom (N, O, P, S, or Si), see Peterson, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **7,** 295–358 (1972).

[324] For example, see Normant and Castro, *C. R. Acad. Sci.* **257,** 2115 (1963), **259,** 830 (1964); Castro, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1533, 1540, 1547 (1967); Taeger, Kahlert, and Walter, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4] **28,** 13 (1965).

[325] Ashby and Reed, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 971 (1966); Gitlitz and Considine, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **23,** 291 (1970).

[326] Smith, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **64,** 25 (1974).

[327] For a monograph on organolithium compounds, see Wakefield, "The Chemistry of Organolithium Compounds," Pergamon, New York, 1974.

[328] For a review, see Rochow, *J. Chem. Educ.* **43,** 58–62 (1966).

[329] Finnegan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1303 (1962), 851 (1963).

The efficiency of the reaction can often be improved by use of the metal in its powdered[330] or vapor[331] form. These techniques have permitted the preparation of some organometallic compounds that cannot be prepared by the standard procedures.

The mechanism of Grignard reagent formation is not well known, though considerable work has been done in the area.[332] There is much evidence from CIDNP[333] (p. 163) and from stereochemical, rate, and product studies[334] that free radicals are intermediates. Further evidence is that free radicals have been trapped.[335] The following mechanism has been proposed:[333]

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{R{-}X} + \overline{\mathrm{Mg}} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}X}^{\dot{-}} + \mathrm{Mg}_s^{\dot{+}} \\ \mathrm{R{-}X}^{\dot{-}} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{R}\cdot + \mathrm{X}^- \\ \mathrm{X}^- + \mathrm{Mg}_s^{\dot{+}} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{XMg}_s^{\bullet} \\ \mathrm{R}\cdot + \mathrm{XMg}_s^{\bullet} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{RMgX} \end{aligned}$$

The species $\mathrm{R{-}X}^{\dot{-}}$ and $\mathrm{Mg}^{\dot{+}}$ are radical ions.[336] The subscript "s" is meant to indicate that the species so marked are bound to the surface of the magnesium.

There are too many preparations of Grignard reagents in *Organic Syntheses* for us to list here. Use of the reaction to prepare other organometallic compounds can be found in OS **I,** 228; **II,** 184, 517, 607; **III,** 413, 757; **52,** 19; **55,** 103. The preparation of unsolvated butylmagnesium bromide is described at OS **V,** 1141. The preparation of highly reactive (powdered) magnesium is given at OS **59,** 85.

2-38 Replacement of a Halogen by a Metal from an Organometallic Compound

$$\mathbf{RX + R'M \longrightarrow RM + R'X}$$

The exchange reaction between halides and organometallic compounds is almost entirely limited to the cases where M is lithium and X is bromide or iodide,[337] though it has been shown to occur with magnesium.[338] R′ is usually, although not always, alkyl, and often butyl; R is usually aromatic. Alkyl halides are generally not reactive enough, while allylic and benzylic halides usually give Wurtz coupling. Of course, the R that becomes bonded to the halogen is the one for which RH is the weaker acid. Vinylic halides react with retention of configuration.[339] The reaction can be used to prepare α-halo organolithium and α-halo organomagnesium compounds,[340] e.g.,[341]

---

[330] For reviews, see Ref. 317; Rieke, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 301–306 (1977); *Top. Curr. Chem.* **59,** 1–31 (1975). See also Rieke, Li, Burns, and Uhm, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4323 (1981).

[331] For reviews, see Klabunde, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **1,** 37–149 (1980); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 393–399 (1975); Skell, Havel, and McGlinchey, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 97–105 (1973); Timms, *Adv. Inorg. Radiochem.* **14,** 121 (1972).

[332] For a review, see Blomberg, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2143 (1972).

[333] Bodewitz, Blomberg, and Bickelhaupt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 281 (1972), 2003 (1975), *Tetrahedron* **29,** 719 (1973), **31,** 1053 (1975). See also Lawler and Livant, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3710 (1976); Schaart, Blomberg, Akkerman, and Bickelhaupt, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 932 (1980).

[334] See, for example, Walborsky and Aronoff, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **51,** 31 (1973); Czernecki, Georgoulis, Gross, and Prevost, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3720 (1968); Rogers, Hill, Fujiwara, Rogers, Mitchell, and Whitesides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 217 (1980); Barber and Whitesides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 239 (1980).

[335] Lawrence and Whitesides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2493 (1980).

[336] For additional evidence for this mechanism, see Vogler, Stein, and Hayes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3163 (1978); Sergeev, Zagorsky, and Badaev, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **243,** 123 (1983).

[337] For a review, see Parham and Bradsher, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 300–305 (1982).

[338] See, for example, Zakharkin, Okhlobystin, and Bilevitch, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **2,** 309 (1964); Tamborski and Moore, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **26,** 153 (1971).

[339] For examples of exchange where R = vinyl, see Neumann and Seebach, *Chem. Ber.* **111,** 2785 (1978); Miller and McGarvey, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 831 (1979).

$$\mathrm{CCl_4 + BuLi \xrightarrow[-105^\circ C]{THF} Cl_3C{-}Li}$$

Such compounds can also be prepared by hydrogen–metal exchange, e.g.,[342]

$$\mathrm{Br_3CH + iso\text{-}PrMgCl \xrightarrow[-95^\circ C]{THF{-}HMPT} Br_3C{-}MgCl + C_3H_8}$$

This is an example of **2-19.** However, these α-halo organometallic compounds are stable only at low temperatures (~ – 100°C) and only in tetrahydrofuran or mixtures of tetrahydrofuran and other solvents (e.g., HMPT). At ordinary temperatures they lose MX (α elimination) to give carbenes (which then react further) or carbenoid reactions. The α-chloro-α-magnesio sulfones $\mathrm{ArSO_2CH(Cl)MgBr}$ are exceptions, being stable in solution at room temperature and even under reflux.[343]

When the substrate has a halogen and a hydrogen on the same carbon, halogen–metal exchange is usually more rapid than hydrogen–metal exchange (the reaction of bromoform under the conditions shown above is an exception).[344] α-Halo sodium and α-halo potassium compounds have also been prepared by a hydrogen–metal exchange reaction.[345]

The mechanism[346] of the reaction of alkyllithium compounds with alkyl and aryl iodides has been shown to involve free radicals.[347]

$$\mathrm{RX + R'M \rightleftharpoons \underset{\text{Solvent cage}}{[R\cdot, X, M, R'\cdot]} \rightleftharpoons RM + R'X}$$

Evidence for this mechanism is the obtention of coupling and disproportionation products from R• and R′• and the observation of CIDNP (p. 163).[348]

In a completely different kind of process, alkyl halides can be converted to certain organometallic compounds by treatment with organometallate ions, e.g.,

$$\mathrm{RX + R_3'SnLi \longrightarrow RSnR_3' + LiX}$$

These may be nucleophilic or free-radical substitutions.[349]

OS **59,** 71; **61,** 65. See also OS **61,** 122.

---

[340] For reviews of such compounds, see Siegel, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **106,** 55–78 (1982); Negishi, Ref. 1, pp. 136–151; Köbrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 473–485 (1972), **6,** 41–52 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 557–570, **79,** 15–27], *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2712–2720 (1969); Villiéras, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **7,** 81–94 (1971). For related reviews, see Krief, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2531–2640 (1980); Normant, *J. Organomet. Chem* **100,** 189–203 (1975).

[341] Hoeg, Lusk, and Crumbliss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4147 (1965). See also Tarhouni, Kirschleger, Rambaud, and Villiéras, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 835 (1984).

[342] Villiéras, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1520 (1967).

[343] Stetter and Steinbeck, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **766,** 89 (1972).

[344] For a review of reactions of organometallic compounds with di- and polyhalomethanes, see Zhil'tsov and Druzhkov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 126–141 (1971).

[345] Martel and Hiriart, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2737 (1971).

[346] For a review of the mechanism, see Beletskaya, Artamkina, and Reutov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 330–347 (1976).

[347] Ward, Lawler, and Cooper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 746 (1969); Lepley and Landau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 748 (1969). For evidence that radicals are not involved in the reaction between bromobenzene and *n*-butyllithium, see Rogers and Houk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 522 (1982).

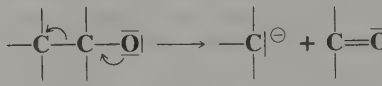
[348] Ward, Lawler, and Loken, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7359 (1968); Ref. 347.

[349] For example, see San Filippo and Silbermann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2831 (1982).

Carbon Leaving Groups

In these reactions (**2-39** to **2-47**) a carbon–carbon bond cleaves. We regard as the substrate that side which retains the electron pair; hence the reactions are considered electrophilic substitutions. The incoming group is hydrogen in all but one (**2-41**) of the cases. The reactions in groups A and B are sometimes called *anionic cleavages,* though they do not always occur by mechanisms involving free carbanions (SE1). When they do, the reactions are facilitated by increasing stability of the carbanion.

A. Carbonyl-Forming Cleavages. These reactions follow the pattern

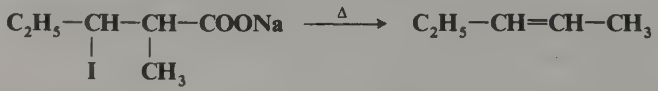


The leaving group is stabilized because the electron deficiency at its carbon is satisfied by a pair of electrons from the oxygen. With respect to the leaving group the reaction is elimination to form a C=O bond. Retrograde aldol condensations (**6-40**) and cleavage of cyanohydrins (**6-49**) belong to this classification but are treated in Chapter 16 under their more important reverse reactions. Other eliminations to form C=O bonds are discussed in Chapter 17 (**7-46** and **7-47**).

2-39 Decarboxylation of Aliphatic Acids

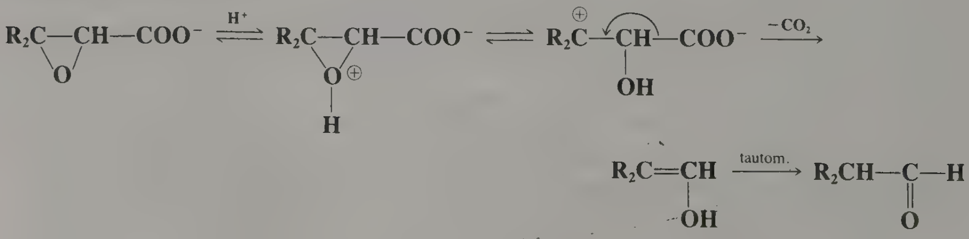
$$\mathrm{RCOOH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RH} + \mathrm{CO_2}$$

Many carboxylic acids can be successfully decarboxylated, either as the free acid or in the salt form, but not simple fatty acids.[350] An exception is acetic acid, which as the acetate, heated with base, gives good yields of methane. Aliphatic acids that do undergo successful decarboxylation have certain functional groups or double or triple bonds in the α or β position. Some of these are shown in Table 2. For decarboxylation of aromatic acids, see **1-41.** Decarboxylation of an α-cyano acid may give a nitrile or a carboxylic acid, since the cyano group may or may not be hydrolyzed in the course of the reaction. In addition to the compounds listed in Table 2, decarboxylation can also be carried out on α,β-unsaturated and α,β-acetylenic acids. β-Halo acids give decarboxylation accompanied by elimination:[351]



$$\mathrm{C_2H_5{-}\underset{\displaystyle I}{CH}{-}\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{CH}{-}COONa} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathrm{C_2H_5{-}CH{=}CH{-}CH_3}$$

α,β-Unsaturated acids can also be decarboxylated with copper and quinoline in a manner similar to that discussed in **1-41.** Glycidic acids give aldehydes on decarboxylation. The following mechanism has been suggested:[352]



---

[350] March, *J. Chem. Educ.* **40,** 212 (1963).

[351] For a discussion of the mechanism of this elimination, see Vaughan, Cartwright, and Henzi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4978 (1972).

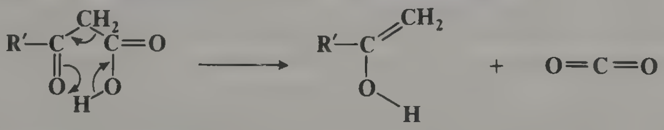
[352] Singh and Kagan, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2203 (1970).

TABLE 2 Some acids which undergo decarboxylation fairly readily
Others are described in the text

	Acid type	Decarboxylation product
Malonic	$\mathrm{HOOC{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{HOOC{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H}$
α-Cyano	$\mathrm{NC{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{NC{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H}$ or $\mathrm{HOOC{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H}$
α-Nitro	$\mathrm{O_2N{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{O_2N{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H}$
α-Aryl	$\mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H}$
α-Keto	$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}H}$
α,α,α-Trihalo	$\mathrm{X_3C{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{X_3CH}$
β-Keto	$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H}$
β,γ-Unsaturated	$\mathrm{{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOH}$	$\mathrm{{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H}$

The direct product is an enol that tautomerizes to the aldehyde.[353] This is the usual last step in the Darzens reaction (**6-45**).

Decarboxylations can be regarded as reversals of the addition of carbanions to carbon dioxide (**6-33**), but free carbanions are not always involved.[354] When the carboxylate *ion* is decarboxylated, the mechanism may be either SE1 or SE2. In the case of the SE1 mechanism, the reaction is of course aided by the presence of electron-withdrawing groups, which stabilize the carbanion.[355] Decarboxylations of carboxylate ions can be accelerated by the addition of a suitable crown ether, which in effect removes the metallic ion.[356] But some acids can also be decarboxylated directly and, in most of these cases, there is a cyclic, six-center mechanism:



Here too there is an enol that tautomerizes to the product. The mechanism is illustrated for the case of β-keto acids,[357] but it is likely that malonic acids, α-cyano acids, α-nitro acids, and β,γ-unsaturated acids[358] behave similarly, since similar six-membered transition states can be written for them. Some α,β-unsaturated acids are also decarboxylated by this mechanism by isomerizing to the β,γ-isomers before they actually decarboxylate.[359] Evidence is that **30** and similar bicyclic β-keto acids resist decarboxylation.[360] In such compounds the six-membered cyclic transition state

---

[353] Shiner and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4824 (1962).

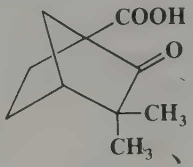
[354] For reviews of the mechanism, see Richardson and O'Neal, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 48, vol. 5, pp. 447–482 (1972); Clark, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Carboxylic Acids and Esters," pp. 589–622, Interscience, New York, 1969. For a review of carbon isotope effect studies, see Dunn, in Buncel and Lee, "Isotopes in Organic Chemistry," vol. 3, pp. 1–38, Elsevier, New York, 1977.

[355] See, for example, Oae, Tagaki, Uneyama, and Minamida, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 5283 (1968); Buncel, Venkatachalam, and Menon, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 413 (1984).

[356] Hunter, Patel, and Perry, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 2271 (1980) and references cited therein.

[357] For a review of the mechanism of the decarboxylation of β-keto acids, see Jencks, "Catalysis in Chemistry and Enzymology," pp. 116–120, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1969.

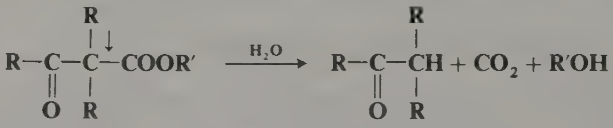
[358] Bigley and Clarke, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1 (1982) and references cited therein. For a review, see Smith and Kelly, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **8,** 75–234 (1971), pp. 150–153.



30

cannot form for steric reasons, and if it could, formation of the immediate enol product would violate Bredt's rule (p. 138). Some carboxylic acids which cannot form a six-membered transition state can still be decarboxylated, and these presumably react through an SE1 or SE2 mechanism.[361] Further evidence for the cyclic mechanism is that the reaction rate varies very little with a change from a nonpolar to a polar solvent (even from benzene to water[362]), and is not subject to acid catalysis.[363] The rate of decarboxylation of a β,γ-unsaturated acid was increased about 10^5–10^6 times by introduction of a β-methoxy group, indicating that the cyclic transition state has dipolar character.[364]

Although β-keto acids[365] are easily decarboxylated, this reaction is seldom performed because such acids are usually prepared from β-keto esters, and the esters are easily decarboxylated themselves on hydrolysis without isolation of the acids. This decarboxylation of β-keto esters involving cleavage on the carboxyl side of the substituted methylene group (arrow) is carried out under acidic,



$$\underset{\substack{\|\\ \mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{R-C}}-\overset{\substack{\mathrm{R}\\ |\,\downarrow}}{\underset{\substack{|\\ \mathrm{R}}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{COOR'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \underset{\substack{\|\\ \mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{R-C}}-\overset{\substack{\mathrm{R}\\ |}}{\underset{\substack{|\\ \mathrm{R}}}{\mathrm{CH}}} + \mathrm{CO_2} + \mathrm{R'OH}$$

neutral, or slightly basic conditions to yield a ketone. When strongly basic conditions are used, cleavage occurs on the other side of the CR_2 group (**2-42**). β-Keto esters can be decarbalkoxylated without passing through the free-acid stage by treatment with boric anhydride B_2O_3 at 150°C.[366] The alkyl portion of the ester (R′) is converted to an alkene or, if it lacks a β-hydrogen, to an ether R′OR′. Another method for the decarbalkoxylation of β-keto esters, malonic esters, and α-cyano esters consists of heating the substrate in wet dimethyl sulfoxide containing NaCl, Na_3PO_4, or some other simple salt.[367] In this method too, the free acid is probably not an intermediate, but here the alkyl portion of the substrate is converted to the corresponding alcohol. Ordinary carboxylic acids, containing no activating groups, can be decarboxylated by conversion to esters of 9-hydroxy-10-chlorodihydrophenanthrene and treatment of these with Bu_3SnH.[368] A free-radical mechanism is likely. Certain decarboxylations can also be accomplished photochemically.[369] See also the decarbonylation of acyl halides, mentioned in **4-40.**

---

[359] Bigley, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3897 (1964).

[360] Wasserman, in Newman, "Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry," p. 352, Wiley, New York, 1956. See also Buchanan, Kean, and Taylor, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 1583 (1975).

[361] For example, see Ferris and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3522 (1966).

[362] Westheimer and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **63,** 3283 (1941); Swain, Bader, Esteve, and Griffin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1951 (1961). See also Logue, Pollack, and Vitullo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 6868 (1975).

[363] Pederson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **15,** 1718 (1961); Noyce and Metesich, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3243 (1967).

[364] Bigley and Al-Borno, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 15 (1982).

[365] For a review of β-keto acids, see Oshry and Rosenfeld, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **14,** 249–264 (1982).

[366] Lalancette and Lachance, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3903 (1970).

[367] For a review of the synthetic applications of this method, see Krapcho, *Synthesis* 805–822, 893–914 (1982). For another method, see Aneja, Hollis, Davies, and Eaton, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4641 (1983).

[368] Barton, Dowlatshahi, Motherwell, and Villemin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 732 (1980). For another method, of more limited scope, see Maier, Roth, Thies, and Schleyer, *Chem. Ber.* **115,** 808 (1982).

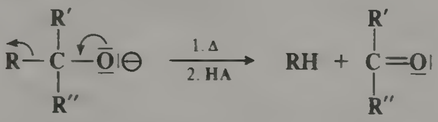
Some of the decarboxylations listed in *Organic Syntheses* are performed with concomitant ester or nitrile hydrolysis and others are simple decarboxylations.

With ester or nitrile hydrolysis: OS **I,** 290, 451, 523; **II,** 200, 391; **III,** 281, 286, 317, 326, 510, 513, 591; **IV,** 55, 93, 176, 441, 664, 708, 790, 804; **V,** 76, 288, 572, 687, 989; **53,** 70, 98; **57,** 80; **58,** 79; **61,** 56, 77.

Simple decarboxylations: OS **I,** 351, 401, 440, 473, 475; **II,** 21, 61, 93, 229, 302, 333, 368, 416, 474, 512, 523; **III,** 213, 425, 495, 705, 733, 783; **IV,** 234, 254, 278, 337, 555, 560, 597, 630, 731, 857; **V,** 251, 585; **51,** 73, 136; **61,** 59. Also see OS **IV,** 633.

2-40 Cleavage of Alkoxides

Hydro-de-(α-oxidoalkyl)-substitution

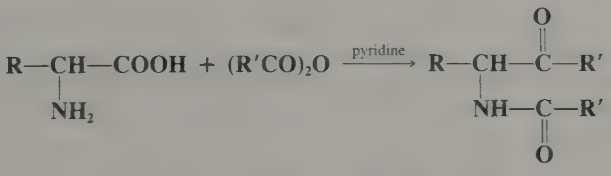


Alkoxides of tertiary alcohols can be cleaved in a reaction that is essentially the reverse of addition of carbanions to ketones (**6-30**).[370] The reaction is unsuccessful when the R groups are simple unbranched alkyl groups, e.g., the alkoxide of triethylcarbinol. Cleavage is accomplished with branched alkoxides such as the alkoxides of diisopropylneopentylcarbinol or tri-*t*-butylcarbinol.[371] The reaction also takes place when R is aryl; for example, the alkoxide of triphenylcarbinol gives benzene and benzophenone. The reaction has been used for extensive mechanistic studies (see p. 517).

OS **51,** 70.

2-41 Replacement of a Carboxyl Group by an Acyl Group

Acyl-de-carboxylation



$$\underset{\substack{|\\ NH_2}}{R{-}CH}{-}COOH + (R'CO)_2O \xrightarrow{\text{pyridine}} \underset{\substack{|\\ NH{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\ O}}{C}{-}R'}}{R{-}CH}{-}\overset{\substack{O\\ \|}}{C}{-}R'$$

When an α-amino acid is treated with an anhydride in the presence of pyridine, the carboxyl group is replaced by an acyl group and the NH_2 becomes acylated. This is called the *Dakin–West reaction.* The mechanism involves formation of an oxazolone.[372] The reaction sometimes takes place on carboxylic acids even when an α-amino group is not present. In such cases, γ and δ amino groups facilitate the reaction.[373]

OS **IV,** 5; **V,** 27.

---

[369] See Davidson and Steiner, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1357 (1972); Kraeutler and Bard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5985 (1978).

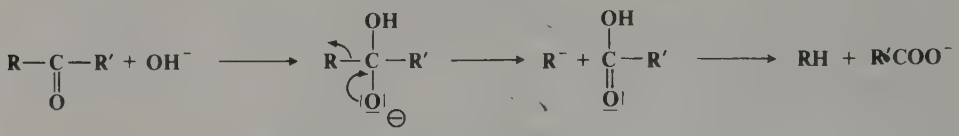
[370] Zook, March, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1617 (1959); Barbot and Miginiac, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **132,** 445 (1977); Benkeser, Siklosi, and Mozdzen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2134 (1978).

[371] Arnett, Small, McIver, and Miller, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 815 (1978). See also Lomas and Dubois, *J. Org. Chem,* **49,** 2067 (1984).

[372] Allinger, Wang, and Dewhurst, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1730 (1974).

[373] Cruickshank and Sheehan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2891 (1961).

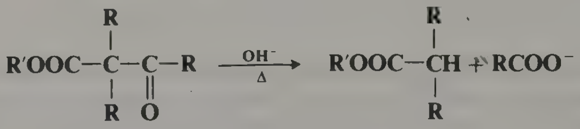
B. Acyl Cleavages. In these reactions (**2-42** to **2-45**) a carbonyl group is attacked by a hydroxide ion (or amide ion), giving an intermediate that undergoes cleavage to a carboxylic acid (or an amide). With respect to the leaving group, this is nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl group and the mechanism is the tetrahedral one discussed in Chapter 10.



With respect to R of course this is electrophilic substitution. Indications are that the mechanism is usually SE1.

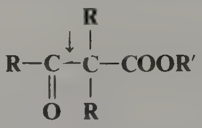
2-42 Basic Cleavage of β-Keto Esters and β-Diketones

Hydro-de-acylation[374]



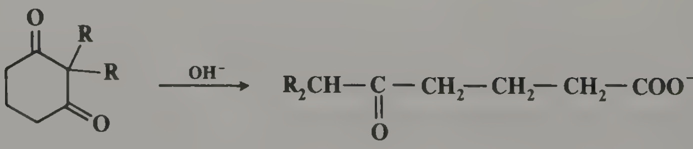
$$R'OOC-\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}}-\underset{O}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{C}}}-R \xrightarrow[\Delta]{OH^-} R'OOC-\underset{R}{\overset{R}{CH}} + RCOO^-$$

When β-keto esters are treated with concentrated base, cleavage occurs, but is on the keto side of the CR_2 group (arrow) in contrast to the acid cleavage mentioned on page 564. The products are



$$R-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}\overset{\downarrow}{-}\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}}-COOR'$$

an ester and the salt of an acid. However, the utility of the reaction is somewhat limited by the fact that decarboxylation is a side reaction, even under basic conditions. β-Diketones behave similarly to give a ketone and the salt of a carboxylic acid. The reaction has often been applied to cyclic β-diketones:[375]



With both β-keto esters and β-diketones, OEt^- may be used instead of OH^-, in which case the ethyl esters of the corresponding acids are obtained instead of the salts. In the case of β-keto esters, this is the reverse of Claisen condensation (**0-111**).

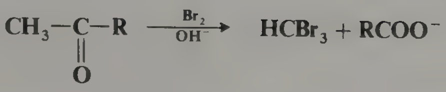
OS **II**, 266, 531; **III**, 379; **IV**, 415, 957; **V**, 179, 187, 277, 533, 747, 767.

---

[374] This name also applies to reactions **2-44** and **2-45**.

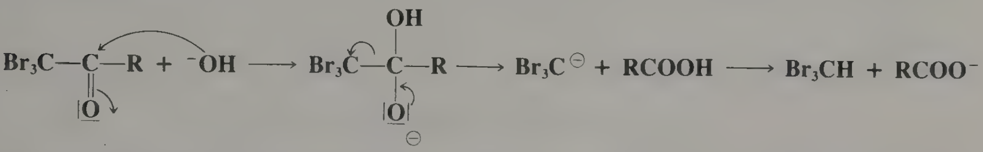
[375] For a review, see Stetter, *Angew. Chem.* **67**, 769 (1955), *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **2**, 51–99 (1963).

2-43 The Haloform Reaction



$$CH_3\text{—}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}\text{—}R \xrightarrow[OH^-]{Br_2} HCBr_3 + RCOO^-$$

In the *haloform reaction,* methyl ketones (and the only methyl aldehyde, acetaldehyde) are cleaved with halogen and a base.[376] The halogen may be bromine, chlorine, or iodine. What takes place is actually a combination of two reactions. The first is an example of **2-4,** in which, under the basic conditions employed, the methyl group is trihalogenated. Then the resulting trihalo ketone is attacked by hydroxide ion:

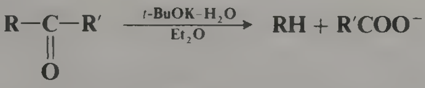


Primary or secondary methylcarbinols also give the reaction, since they are oxidized to the carbonyl compounds under the conditions employed. As with **2-4,** the rate-determining step is the preliminary enolization of the methyl ketone.[377] A side reaction is α halogenation of the nonmethyl R group. Sometimes these groups are also cleaved.[378] The reaction cannot be applied to F_2, but ketones of the form $RCOCF_3$ (R = alkyl or aryl) give fluoroform and $RCOO^-$ when treated with base.[379] The haloform reaction is often used as a test for methylcarbinols and methyl ketones. Iodine is most often used as the test reagent, since iodoform is an easily identifiable yellow solid. The reaction is also frequently used for synthetic purposes.

OS **I,** 526; **II,** 428; **III,** 302; **IV,** 345; **V,** 8. Also see OS **51,** 100.

2-44 Cleavage of Nonenolizable Ketones

Hydro-de-acylation



$$R\text{—}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}\text{—}R' \xrightarrow[Et_2O]{t\text{-BuOK-}H_2O} RH + R'COO^-$$

Ordinary ketones are generally much more difficult to cleave than trihalo ketones or β-diketones, because the carbanion intermediates in these cases are more stable than simple carbanions. However, nonenolizable ketones can be cleaved by treatment with a 10:3 mixture of *t*-BuOK-H_2O in an aprotic solvent such as ether, dimethyl sulfoxide, 1,2-dimethoxyethane (glyme), etc.,[380] or with solid *t*-BuOK in the absence of a solvent.[381] When the reaction is applied to monosubstituted diaryl ketones, that aryl group preferentially cleaves that comes off as the more stable carbanion, except that aryl groups substituted in the ortho position are more readily cleaved than otherwise because of the steric effect (relief of strain).[382] Combined with the preparation of diaryl ketones by Friedel–

---

[376] For a review of this and related reactions, see Chakrabartty, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. C, pp. 343–370, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[377] Pocker, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1383 (1959).

[378] Levine and Stephens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 1642 (1950).

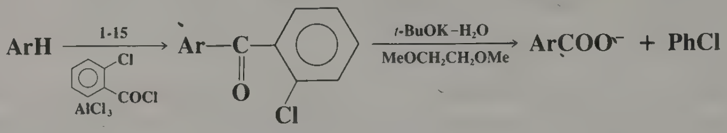
[379] See Hudlický, "Chemistry of Organic Fluorine Compounds," pp. 208–209, Macmillan, New York, 1962.

[380] Swan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1408 (1948); Gassman, Lumb, and Zalar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 946 (1967).

[381] March and Plankl, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 460 (1977).

[382] Davies, Derenberg, and Hodge, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 455 (1971); Ref. 381.

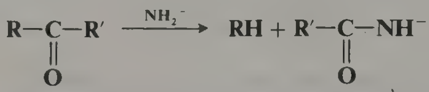
Crafts acylation (**1-15**), this reaction provides an indirect method for introducing a carboxyl group into an aromatic ring:[383]



2-Chlorobenzoyl chloride is the preferred reagent here, because a 2-chlorophenyl group cleaves much more readily than most other aryl groups. In certain cases, cyclic ketones can be cleaved by base treatment, even if they are enolizable.[384]

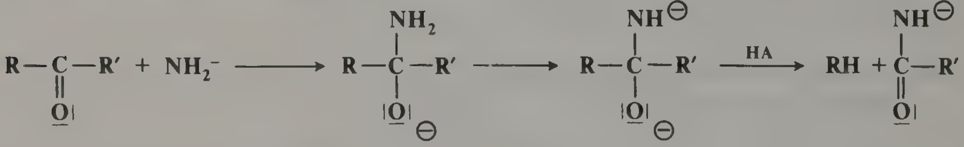
OS **56,** 28.

2-45 The Haller–Bauer Reaction



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' \xrightarrow{NH_2^-} RH + R'{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH^-$$

Cleavage of ketones with sodium amide is called the *Haller–Bauer reaction.*[385] As with **2-44,** which is exactly analogous, the reaction is usually applied only to nonenolizable ketones, most often to ketones of the form $ArCOCR_3$, where the products R_3CCONH_2 are not easily attainable by other methods. However, many other ketones have been used, though benzophenone is virtually unaffected. It has been shown that the configuration of optically active R is retained.[386] The NH_2 loses its proton *before* the R is cleaved:[387]



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \underline{O}|}{\|}}{C}{-}R' + NH_2^- \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NH_2}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle |\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}{-}R' \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NH^{\ominus}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle |\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}{-}R' \xrightarrow{HA} RH + \overset{\overset{\displaystyle NH^{\ominus}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \underline{O}|}{\|}}{C}}{-}R'$$

OS **V,** 384, 1074.

C. Other Cleavages

2-46 The Cleavage of Alkanes
Hydro-de-*t*-butylation, etc.

$$(CH_3)_4C \xrightarrow{FSO_3H\text{-}SbF_5} CH_4 + (CH_3)_3C^+$$

The C—C bonds of alkanes can be cleaved by treatment with super acids[43] (p. 219). The reaction may be called *alkylolysis*. For example, neopentane in FSO_3H-SbF_5 can cleave to give methane and the *t*-butyl cation. C—H cleavage (see **2-1**) is a competing reaction and, for example, neopentane can give H_2 and the *t*-pentyl cation (formed by rearrangement of the initially formed neopentyl cation) by this pathway. In general, the order of reactivity is tertiary C—H > C—C > secondary

---

[383] Derenberg and Hodge, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3825 (1971).

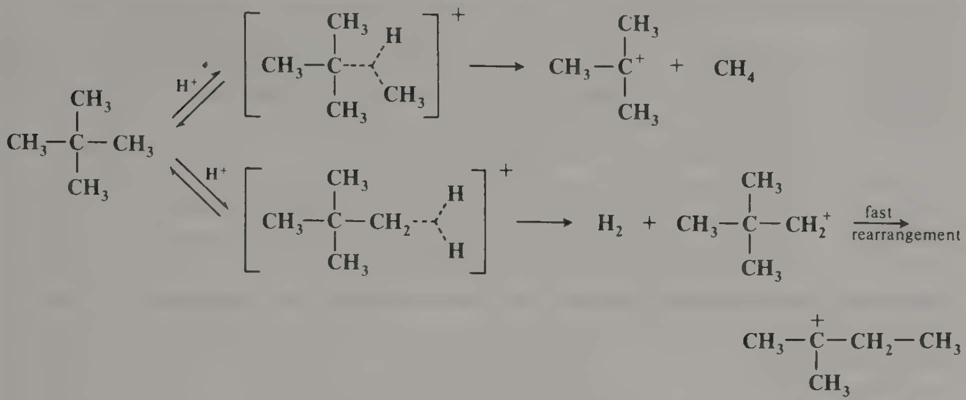
[384] For example, see Swaminathan and Newman, *Tetrahedron* **2,** 88 (1958); Hoffman and Cram, Ref. 25.

[385] For a review, see Hamlin and Weston, *Org. React.* **9,** 1–36 (1957). For an improved procedure, see Kaiser and Warner, *Synthesis* 395 (1975).

[386] Impastato and Walborsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4838 (1962).

[387] Bunnett and Hrutfiord, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4152 (1962).

C—H ≫ primary C—H, though steric factors cause a shift in favor of C—C cleavage in such a hindered compound as tri-*t*-butylmethane. The mechanism is similar to that shown in **2-1** and **2-16** and involves attack by H^+ on the C—C bond to give a pentavalent cation. The two major pathways for neopentane may therefore be shown as:



t-Pentyl cation

Catalytic hydrogenation seldom breaks unactivated C—C bonds (i.e., $R—R' + H_2 \rightarrow RH + R'H$), but methyl and ethyl groups have been cleaved from substituted adamantanes by hydrogenation with a Ni-Al_2O_3 catalyst at about 250°C.[388] Certain C—C bonds have been cleaved by alkali metals.[388a]

2-47 **Decyanation** or **Hydro-de-cyanation**

$$\text{RCN} \xrightarrow[\text{Na-Fe(acac)}_3]{\text{Na-NH}_3 \text{ or}}$$

The cyano group of alkyl nitriles can be removed by treatment with metallic sodium, either in liquid ammonia,[389] or together with tris(acetylacetonato)iron(III) $Fe(acac)_3$[390] or, with lower yields, titanocene $C_{20}H_{20}Ti_2$. The two procedures are complementary. Although both can be used to decyanate many kinds of nitriles, the Na-NH_3 method gives high yields with R groups such as trityl, benzyl, phenyl, and tertiary alkyl, but lower yields (~35 to 50%) when R = primary or secondary alkyl. On the other hand, primary and secondary alkyl nitriles are decyanated in high yields by the Na-$Fe(acac)_3$ procedure. Sodium in liquid ammonia is known to be a source of solvated electrons, and the reaction may proceed through the free radical R· which would then be reduced to the carbanion R^-, which by abstraction of a proton from the solvent, would give RH. The mechanism with $Fe(acac)_3$ is presumably different. Another procedure,[391] which is successful for R = primary, secondary, or tertiary, involves the use of highly dispersed K on Al_2O_3.[392]

---

[388] Grubmüller, Schleyer, and McKervey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 181 (1979).

[388a] For examples and references, see Grovenstein, Bhatti, Quest, Sengupta, and VanDerveer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6290 (1983).

[389] Büchner and Dufaux, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **49,** 1145 (1966); Arapakos, Scott, and Huber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2059 (1969); Birch and Hutchinson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1546 (1972); Yamada, Tomioka, and Koga, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 61 (1976).

[390] van Tamelen, Rudler, and Bjorklund, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 7113 (1971).

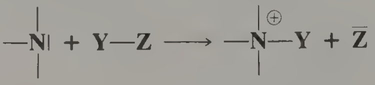
[391] For other procedures, see Cuvigny, Larcheveque, and Normant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1174 (1973); Berkoff, Rivard, Kirkpatrick, and Ives, *Synth. Commun.* **10,** 939 (1980); Ozawa, Iri, and Yamamoto, *Chem. Lett.* 1707 (1982).

[392] Savoia, Tagliavini, Trombini, and Umani-Ronchi, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3227 (1980).

α-Amino and α-amido nitriles $RCH(CN)NR_2'$ and $RCH(CN)NHCOR'$ can be decyanated in high yield by treatment with $NaBH_4$.[393]

Electrophilic Substitution at Nitrogen

In most of the reactions in this section, an electrophile bonds with the unshared pair of a nitrogen atom. The electrophile may be a free positive ion or a positive species attached to a carrier that breaks off in the course of the attack or shortly after:



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{N}}| + Y-Z \longrightarrow -\overset{|\,\oplus}{\underset{|}{N}}-Y + \overline{Z}$$

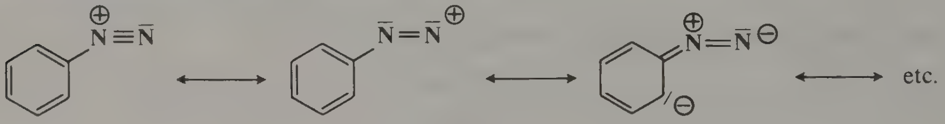
31

Further reaction of **31** depends on the nature of Y and of the other groups attached to the nitrogen.

2-48 Diazotization

$$Ar-NH_2 + HONO \longrightarrow Ar-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overline{N}$$

When primary aromatic amines are treated with nitrous acid, diazonium salts are formed.[394] The reaction also occurs with aliphatic primary amines, but aliphatic diazonium ions are extremely unstable, even in solution (see p. 313). Aromatic diazonium ions are more stable, because of the resonance interaction between the nitrogens and the ring:



33

Incidentally, **32** contributes more to the hybrid than **33**, as shown by bond-distance measurements.[395] In benzenediazonium chloride, the C—N distance is ~1.42 Å, and the N—N distance ~1.08 Å,[396] which values fit more closely to a single and a triple bond than to two double bonds (see p. 19). Even aromatic diazonium salts are stable only at low temperatures, usually only below 5°C, though more stable ones, such as the diazonium salt obtained from sulfanilic acid, are stable up to 10 or 15°C. Diazonium salts are usually prepared in aqueous solution and used without isolation,[397] though it is possible to prepare solid diazonium salts if desired (see **3-25**). The stability of aryl diazonium salts can be increased by crown ether complexation.[398]

---

[393] Yamada and Akimoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3105 (1969); Fabre, Hadj Ali Salem, and Welvart, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 178 (1975).

[394] For reviews, see, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Diazonium and Diazo Groups," Wiley, New York, 1978, the articles by Hegarty, pt. 2, pp. 511–591, and Schank, pt. 2, pp. 645–657; Godovikova, Rakitin, and Khmel'nitskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **52,** 440–445 (1983); Challis and Butler, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 305–320, Interscience, New York, 1968; Ridd, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **15,** 418–441 (1961); Belov and Kozlov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **32,** 59–75 (1963), pp. 59–63; Zollinger, "Azo and Diazo Chemistry," pp. 1–37, Interscience, New York, 1961.

[395] For a review of diazonium salt structures, see Sorriso, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Diazonium and Diazo Groups," pt. 1, pp. 95–105, Wiley, New York, 1978.

[396] Rømming, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **13,** 1260 (1959); **17,** 1444 (1963); Sorriso, Ref. 395, p. 98; Cygler, Przybylska, and Elofson, *Can. J. Chem.* **60,** 2852 (1982).

[397] For a review of reactions of diazonium salts, see Wulfman, in Patai, Ref. 395, pt. 1, pp. 247–339.

[398] Korzeniowski, Leopold, Beadle, Ahern, Sheppard, Khanna, and Gokel, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2153 (1981) and references cited therein. For reviews, see Bartsch, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 1, pp. 889–915, Wiley, New York, 1983; Bartsch, *Prog. Macrocyclic Chem.* **2,** 1–39 (1981).

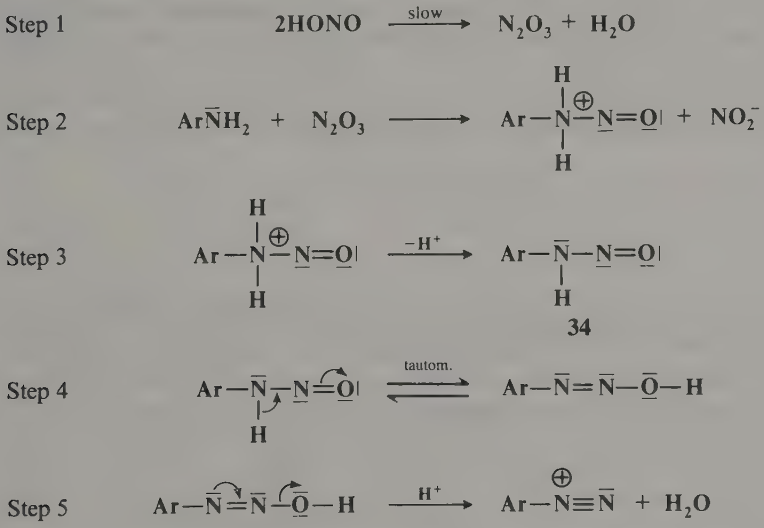
For aromatic amines, the reaction is very general.[399] Halogen, nitro, alkyl, aldehyde, sulfonic acid, etc., groups do not interfere. Since aliphatic amines do not react with nitrous acid below a pH of about 3, it is even possible, by working at a pH of about 1, to diazotize an aromatic amine without disturbing an aliphatic amino group in the same molecule.[400]

If an aliphatic amino group is α to a COOR, CN, CHO, COR, etc. and has an α-hydrogen, then treatment with nitrous acid gives not a diazonium salt, but a *diazo compound.*[401] Such diazo

$$\mathrm{EtOOC{-}CH_2{-}NH_2 + HONO \longrightarrow EtOOC{-}CH{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{N}}}$$

compounds can also be prepared, often more conveniently, by treatment of the substrate with isoamyl nitrite and a small amount of acid.[402] Certain heterocyclic amines also give diazo compounds rather than diazonium salts.[399]

Despite the fact that diazotization takes place in acid solution, the actual species attacked is not the salt of the amine, but the small amount of free amine present.[403] It is because aliphatic amines are stronger bases than aromatic ones that at pH values below 3 there is not enough free amine present for the former to be diazotized, while the latter still undergo the reaction. In dilute acid the actual attacking species is N_2O_3, which acts as a carrier of NO^+. Evidence for this is that the reaction is second order in nitrous acid and, at sufficiently low acidities, the amine does not appear in the rate expression.[404] Under these conditions the mechanism is



Step 1 $\mathrm{2HONO \xrightarrow{slow} N_2O_3 + H_2O}$

Step 2 $\mathrm{Ar\bar{N}H_2 + N_2O_3 \longrightarrow Ar{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2{-}\underline{N}{=}\underline{O}| + NO_2^-}$

Step 3 $\mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2{-}\underline{N}{=}\underline{O}| \xrightarrow{-H^+} Ar{-}\bar{N}H{-}\underline{N}{=}\underline{O}|}$

34

Step 4 $\mathrm{Ar{-}\bar{N}H{-}\underline{N}{=}\underline{O}| \overset{tautom.}{\rightleftharpoons} Ar{-}\bar{N}{=}\bar{N}{-}\underline{O}{-}H}$

Step 5 $\mathrm{Ar{-}\bar{N}{=}\bar{N}{-}\underline{O}{-}H \xrightarrow{H^+} Ar{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}{\equiv}\bar{N} + H_2O}$

There exists other evidence for this mechanism.[405] Other attacking species may be NOCl, $H_2NO_2^+$, and at high acidities even NO^+.

There are many preparations of diazonium salts listed in *Organic Syntheses*, but they are always prepared for use in other reactions. We do not list them here, but under reactions in which they are used. The preparation of aliphatic diazo compounds can be found in OS **III,** 392; **IV,** 424. See also OS **52,** 53.

---

[399] For a review with respect to heterocyclic amines, see Butler, *Chem. Rev.* **75**, 241–257 (1975).

[400] Kornblum and Iffland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71**, 2137 (1949).

[401] For reviews of diazo compounds, see, in Patai, Ref. 395, the articles by Regitz, pt. 2, pp. 659–708, 751–820, and Wulfman, Linstrumelle, and Cooper, pt. 2, pp. 821–976.

[402] Takamura, Mizoguchi, Koga, and Yamada, *Tetrahedron* **31**, 227 (1975).

[403] Challis and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5197, 5208 (1962); Challis, Larkworthy, and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5203 (1962).

[404] Hughes, Ingold, and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 58, 65, 77, 88 (1958); Hughes and Ridd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 70, 82 (1958).

[405] For a discussion, see Ridd, Ref. 394, pp. 422–424. See also Casado, Castro, and Quintela, *Monatsh. Chem.* **112**, 1221 (1981).

2-49 The Conversion of Hydrazines to Azides

$$RNHNH_2 + HONO \longrightarrow R{-}\overline{N}{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}\overline{N}^{\ominus}$$

Monosubstituted hydrazines treated with nitrous acid give azides in a reaction that is exactly analogous to the formation of aliphatic diazo compounds mentioned in **2-48.**

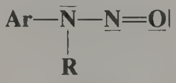
OS **III,** 710; **IV,** 819; **V,** 157.

2-50 *N*-Nitrosation or *N*-Nitroso-de-hydrogenation

$$R_2NH + HONO \longrightarrow R_2N{-}NO$$

When secondary amines are treated with nitrous acid, N-nitroso compounds are formed.[406] The reaction can be accomplished with dialkyl-, diaryl-, or alkylarylamines, and even with mono-N-substituted amides: RCONHR′ + HONO → RCON(NO)R′. Tertiary amines have also been N-nitrosated, but in these cases one group cleaves, so that the product is the nitroso derivative of a secondary amine.[407] The group that cleaves appears as an aldehyde or ketone. Other reagents have also been used, for example NOCl, which is useful for amines or amides that are not soluble in an acidic aqueous solution or where the N-nitroso compounds are highly reactive. N-Nitroso compounds are also formed by treatment of amines with gaseous N_2O_3 or N_2O_4.[408]

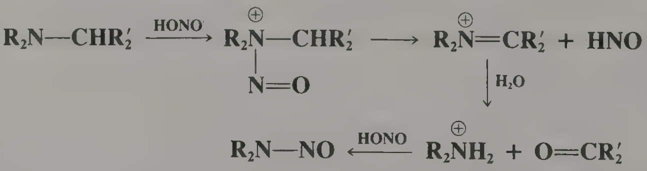
The mechanism of nitrosation is essentially the same as in **2-48** up to the point where **35** (analogous to **34**) is formed. Since this species cannot lose a proton, it is stable and the reaction



$$Ar{-}\underset{\displaystyle R}{\underset{|}{\overline{N}}}{-}\underline{N}{=}\underline{O}|$$

35

ends there. The attacking entity may be any of those mentioned in **2-48.** The following has been suggested as the mechanism for the reaction with tertiary amines:[409]



$$R_2N{-}CHR'_2 \xrightarrow{HONO} R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}(N{=}O){-}CHR'_2 \longrightarrow R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}CR'_2 + HNO \xrightarrow{H_2O}$$
$$R_2N{-}NO \xleftarrow{HONO} R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2 + O{=}CR'_2$$

The evidence for this mechanism includes the facts that nitrous oxide is a product (formed by 2HNO → $H_2O + N_2O$) and that quinuclidine, where the nitrogen is at a bridgehead and therefore cannot give elimination, does not react.

---

[406] For reviews, see Ref. 124a; Challis and Challis, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 130a, pt. 2, pp. 1151–1223; Sandler and Karo, "Organic Functional Group Preparations," vol. 2, pp. 424–450, Academic Press, New York, 1971; Ridd, Ref. 394. For a review of the chemistry of aliphatic N-nitroso compounds, including methods of synthesis, see Fridman, Mukhametshin, and Novikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 34–50 (1971).

[407] Hein, *J. Chem. Educ.* **40,** 181 (1963).

[408] Challis and Kyrtopoulos, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 299 (1979).

[409] Smith and Loeppky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1147 (1967); Smith and Pars, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 1324 (1959); Gowenlock, Hutchison, Little, and Pfab, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1110 (1979). See also Loeppky, Outram, Tomasik, and Faulconer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4271 (1983).

Amines and amides can be N-*nitrated* with nitric acid,[410] N_2O_5,[411] or NO_2^+,[412] and aromatic amines can be converted to triazenes with diazonium salts. Aliphatic primary amines can also be converted to triazenes if the diazonium salts contain electron-withdrawing groups.[413] C-nitrosation is discussed at **1-3** and **2-8.**

OS **I,** 177, 399, 417; **II,** 163, 211, 290, 460, 461, 462, 464 (also see **V,** 842); **III,** 106, 244; **IV,** 718, 780, 943; **V,** 336, 650, 797, 839, 962; **57,** 95; **58,** 113. Also see OS **III,** 711.

2-51 Conversion of Amines to Azides

$$\mathbf{RNH^-} \xrightarrow[\text{base}]{\text{TsN}_3} \mathbf{RN_3}$$

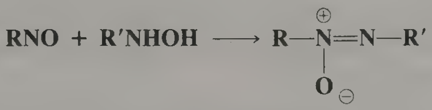
The treatment of the anion of a primary amine with tosyl azide produces the corresponding alkyl azide in low to moderate yields.[414] The reaction is analogous to the diazo transfer reaction (**2-9**) but takes place at a nitrogen rather than a carbon substrate. The conversion of amine anions to azides has also been effected with nitrous oxide N_2O.[415]

2-52 Conversion of Amines to Azo Compounds

$$\mathbf{ArNH_2 + Ar'NO} \xrightarrow{\text{HOAc}} \mathbf{Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Ar'}$$

Aromatic nitroso compounds combine with primary arylamines in glacial acetic acid to give symmetrical or unsymmetrical azo compounds (the *Mills reaction*).[416] A wide variety of substituents may be present in both aryl groups.[417]

2-53 Conversion of Nitroso Compounds to Azoxy Compounds



$$\mathbf{RNO + R'NHOH \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{\ominus}{O}}{N}}{=}N{-}R'}$$

In a reaction similar to **2-52,** azoxy compounds can be prepared by the condensation of a nitroso compound with a hydroxylamine.[418] The position of the oxygen in the final product is determined by the nature of the R groups, not by which R groups came from which starting compound. Both R and R′ may be alkyl or aryl, but when two different aryl groups are involved, mixtures of azoxy compounds (ArNONAr, ArNONAr′, and Ar′NONAr′) are obtained[419] and the unsymmetrical product (ArNONAr′) is likely to be formed in the smallest amount. This behavior is probably caused by an equilibration between the starting compounds prior to the actual reaction ($ArNO + Ar'NHOH \rightleftharpoons Ar'NO + ArNHOH$).[420] The mechanism[421] has been investigated in the presence of base. Under these conditions both reactants are converted to radical anions, which couple:

---

[410] Cherednichenko, Dmitrieva, Kuznetsov, and Gidaspov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12,** 2101, 2105 (1976).

[411] Emmons, Pagano, and Stevens, *J. Org. Chem.* **23,** 311 (1958); Runge and Treibs, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4] **15,** 223 (1962); Halevi, Ron, and Speiser, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2560 (1965).

[412] Ilyushin, Golod, and Gidaspov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **13,** 8 (1977); Andreev, Lebedev, and Tselinskii, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **16,** 1166, 1170, 1175, 1179 (1980).

[413] For a review of alkyl triazenes, see Vaughan and Stevens, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **7,** 377–397 (1978).

[414] Anselme and Fischer, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 855 (1969). Steinheimer, Wulfman, and McCullagh, *Synthesis* 325 (1971); Nakajima and Anselme, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4421 (1976).

[415] Koga and Anselme, *Chem. Commun.* 446 (1968).

[416] For a review, see Boyer, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," pt. 1, pp. 278–283, Interscience, New York, 1969.

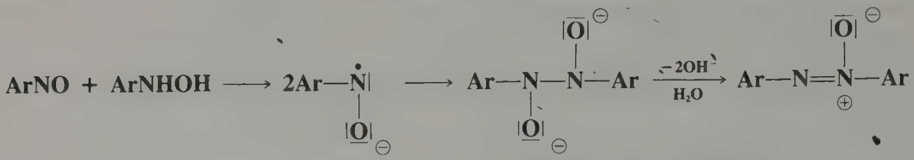
[417] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Ref. 404.

[418] Boyer, Ref. 416.

[419] See, for example, Ogata, Tsuchida, and Takagi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 3397 (1957).

[420] Knight and Saville, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1550 (1973).

[421] For discussions of the mechanism in the absence of base, see Darchen and Moinet, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 812 (1976); Becker and Sternson, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1708 (1980).



$$\mathrm{ArNO + ArNHOH \longrightarrow 2Ar{-}\overset{\bullet}{N}(\underline{O}^{\ominus}) \longrightarrow Ar{-}N(\underline{O}^{\ominus}){-}N(\overline{O}^{\ominus}){-}Ar \xrightarrow[H_2O]{-2OH^-} Ar{-}N{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}(\overline{O}^{\ominus}){-}Ar}$$

These radical anions have been detected by esr.[422] This mechanism is consistent with the following result: when nitrosobenzene and phenylhydroxylamine are coupled, ^{18}O and ^{15}N labeling show that the two nitrogens and the two oxygens become equivalent.[423] Unsymmetrical azoxy compounds can be prepared[424] by combination of a nitroso compound with an N,N-dibromoamine.

2-54 *N*-Halogenation or *N*-Halo-de-hydrogenation

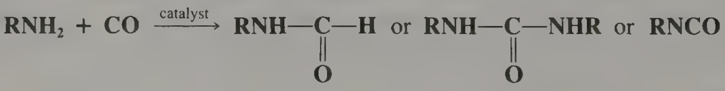
$$\mathrm{RNH_2 + NaOCl \longrightarrow RNHCl}$$

Treatment with sodium hypochlorite or hypobromite converts primary amines into N-halo- or N,N-dihaloamines. Secondary amines may be converted to N-halo secondary amines. Similar reactions can be carried out on unsubstituted and N-substituted amides and on sulfonamides. With unsubstituted amides the N-halogen product is seldom isolated but usually rearranges (see **8-16**); however, N-halo-N-alkyl amides and N-halo imides are quite stable. The important reagent N-bromosuccinimide is made in this manner. N-Halogenation has also been accomplished with other reagents, e.g., *t*-BuOCl.[425] Unsubstituted amides can be N-brominated or N,N-dibrominated by treatment with dibromoisocyanuric acid.[426] The mechanisms of these reactions involve attack by a positive halogen and are probably similar to those of **2-48** and **2-50**.[427] N-Fluorination can be accomplished by direct treatment of amines[428] or amides[429] with F_2. Fluorination of N-alkyl-N-fluoro amides results in cleavage to N,N-difluoroamines.[430]

$$\mathrm{RNFCOR' \xrightarrow{F_2} RNF_2}$$

OS **III,** 159; **IV,** 104, 157; **V,** 208, 663, 909; **56,** 118; **61,** 93.

2-55 The Reaction of Amines with Carbon Monoxide
N-Formylation or *N*-Formyl-de-hydrogenation, etc.



$$\mathrm{RNH_2 + CO \xrightarrow{catalyst} RNH{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}H \quad or \quad RNH{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}NHR \quad or \quad RNCO}$$

---

[422] Russell, Geels, Smentowski, Chang, Reynolds, and Kaupp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3821 (1967). See also Hutton and Waters, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 191 (1968).

[423] Shemyakin, Maimind, and Vaichunaite, *Izv. Akad. Nauk SSSR, Ser. Khim.* 1260 (1957); Oae, Fukumoto, and Yamagami, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **36,** 728 (1963).

[424] Zawalski and Kovacic, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2130 (1979). See also Wrobel, Nelson, Sumiejski, and Kovacic, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2345 (1979).

[425] Altenkirk and Isrealstam, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4532 (1962).

[426] Gottardi, *Monatsh. Chem.* **104,** 421 (1973), **106,** 611 (1975).

[427] For studies of reactivity in this reaction, see Thomm and Wayman, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 3289 (1969); Higuchi, Hussain, and Pitman, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 626 (1969).

[428] Sharts, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1008 (1968).

[429] Grakauskas and Baum, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2840 (1969), **35,** 1545 (1970).

[430] Ref. 429. See also Wiesboeck and Ruff, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 837 (1970); Barton, Hesse, Klose, and Pechet, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 97 (1975).

Three types of product can be obtained from the reaction of amines with carbon monoxide, depending on the catalyst. (1) Both primary and secondary amines react with CO in the presence of various catalysts [e.g., $Cu(CN)_2$, trimethylamine–hydrogen selenide, rhodium or ruthenium complexes] to give N-substituted and N,N-disubstituted formamides, respectively.[431] (2) Symmetrically substituted ureas can be prepared by treatment of a primary amine (or ammonia) with CO in the presence of selenium[432] or sulfur.[433] R may be alkyl or aryl. (3) When $PdCl_2$ is the catalyst, primary amines yield isocyanates.[434] Isocyanates can also be obtained by treatment of CO with azides: $RN_3 + CO \rightarrow RNCO$,[435] or with an aromatic nitroso or nitro compound and a rhodium complex catalyst.[436] A fourth type of product, a carbamate RNHCOOR′, can be obtained from primary or secondary amines, if these are treated with CO, O_2, and an alcohol R′OH in the presence of Pt and iodide ion.[437] Thiocarbamates RNHCOSR′ are formed on treatment of primary aliphatic amines RNH_2 with CO and a disulfide R′SSR′ in the presence of selenium.[438] See also **6-19.**

---

[431] Tsuji and Iwamoto, *Chem. Commun.* 380 (1966); Durand and Lassau, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2329 (1969); Saegusa, Kobayashi, Hirota, and Ito, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 2610 (1969); Byerley, Rempel, Takebe, and James, *Chem. Commun.* 1482 (1971); Nefedov, Sergeeva, and Éidus, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **22,** 784 (1973); Kondo, Sonoda, and Sakurai, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 853 (1973).

[432] Sonoda, Yasuhara, Kondo, Ikeda, and Tsutsumi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6344 (1971).

[433] Franz, Applegath, Morriss, Baiocchi, and Bolze, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 3309 (1961).

[434] Stern and Spector, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 596 (1966).

[435] Bennett and Hardy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3295 (1968).

[436] Unverferth, Rüger, and Schwetlick, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **319** 841 (1977); Unverferth, Höntsch, and Schwetlick, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **321,** 928 (1979). See also Braunstein, Bender, and Kervennal, *Organometallics* **1,** 1236 (1982).

[437] Fukuoka, Chono, and Kohno, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 1458 (1984), *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 399 (1984).

[438] Koch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2087 (1975).

13

AROMATIC NUCLEOPHILIC SUBSTITUTION

On p. 300 it was pointed out that nucleophilic substitutions proceed so slowly at an aromatic carbon that the reactions of Chapter 10 are not feasible for aromatic substrates. There are, however, exceptions to this statement, and it is these exceptions that form the subject of this chapter.[1] Reactions that *are* successful at an aromatic substrate are largely of four kinds: (1) reactions activated by electron-withdrawing groups ortho and para to the leaving group; (2) reactions catalyzed by very strong bases and proceeding through aryne intermediates; (3) reactions initiated by electron donors; and (4) reactions in which the nitrogen of a diazonium salt is replaced by a nucleophile. However, not all the reactions discussed in this chapter fit into these categories.

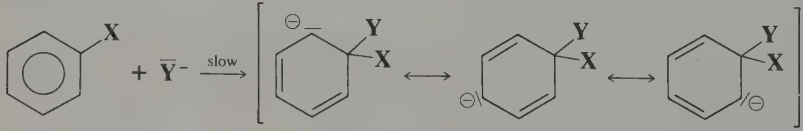
MECHANISMS

There are four principal mechanisms for aromatic nucleophilic substitution.[2] Three of them are similar to certain of the aliphatic nucleophilic substitution mechanisms discussed in Chapter 10. The fourth (SRN1) involves radical ions.

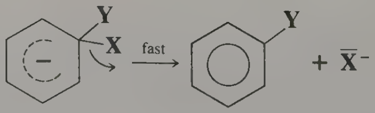
The SNAr Mechanism

By far the most important mechanism for nucleophilic aromatic substitution consists of two steps:

Step 1



Step 2



1

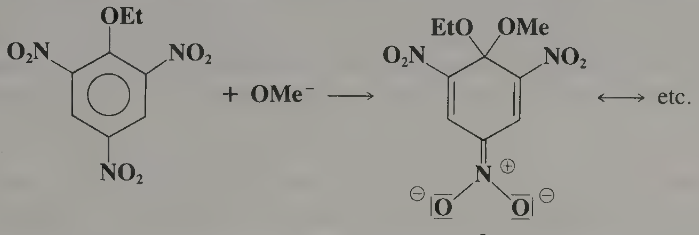
---

[1] For reviews of aromatic nucleophilic substitution, see Zoltewicz, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **59,** 33–64 (1975); Bunnett and Zahler, *Chem. Rev.* **49,** 273–412 (1951).

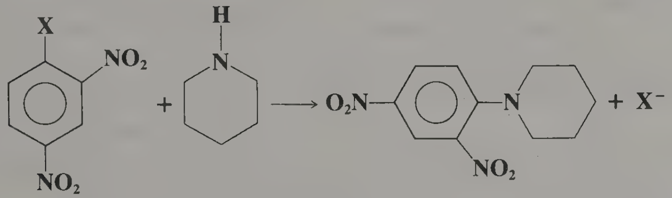
[2] For a monograph on aromatic-nucleophilic-substitution mechanisms, see Miller, "Aromatic Nucleophilic Substitution," American Elsevier, New York, 1968. For reviews, see Bernasconi, *Chimia* **34,** 1–11 (1980); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 147–152 (1978); Bunnett, *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 312–315 (1974); Ross, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 13, pp. 407–431, American Elsevier, New York, 1972, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **1,** 31–74 (1963); Buck, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 120–131 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 136–148]; Buncel, Norris, and Russell, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **22,** 123–146 (1968); Sauer and Huisgen, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 294–315 (1960); Ref. 1.

The first step is usually, but not always, rate-determining. It can be seen that this mechanism greatly resembles the tetrahedral mechanism discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 290) and, in another way, the arenium ion mechanism of electrophilic aromatic substitution (p. 448). In all three cases, the attacking species forms a bond with the substrate, giving an intermediate, and then the leaving group departs. We refer to this mechanism as the SNAr mechanism.[3]

There is a great deal of evidence for the mechanism; we shall discuss only some of it.[2] Probably the most convincing evidence was the isolation, as long ago as 1902, of the intermediate **2** in the reaction between ethyl picrate and methoxide ion.[4] Intermediates of this type are stable salts, called *Meisenheimer salts,* and many more of them have been isolated since 1902.[5] The structures of several of these intermediates have been proved by nmr[6] and by x-ray crystallography.[7] Further evidence comes from studies of the effect of the leaving group on the reaction. If the mechanism were similar to either the SN1 or SN2 mechanisms described in Chapter 10, the Ar—X bond would be broken in the rate-determining step. In the SNAr mechanism this bond is not broken until after the rate-determining step (that is, if step 1 is rate-determining). We would predict from this that if the SNAr mechanism is operating, a change in leaving group should not have much effect on the rate of the reaction. In the reaction



2



when X was Cl, Br, I, SOPh, SO_2Ph, or *p*-nitrophenoxy, the rates differed only by a factor of about 5.[8] This behavior would not be expected in a reaction in which the Ar—X bond is broken in the rate-determining step. We do not expect the rates to be *identical,* because the nature of X affects the rate at which Y attacks. An increase in the electronegativity of X causes a decrease in the electron density at the site of attack, resulting in a faster attack by a nucleophile. Thus, in the reaction just mentioned, when X = F, the relative rate was 3300 (compared with I = 1). The very fact that fluoro is the best leaving group among the halogens in most aromatic nucleophilic substitutions is good evidence that the mechanism is different from the SN1 and the SN2 mechanisms, where fluoro is by far the poorest leaving group of the halogens. This is an example of the element effect (p. 296).

---

[3] The mechanism has also been called by other names, including the SN2Ar, the addition–elimination, and the intermediate complex mechanism.

[4] Meisenheimer, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **323,** 205 (1902).

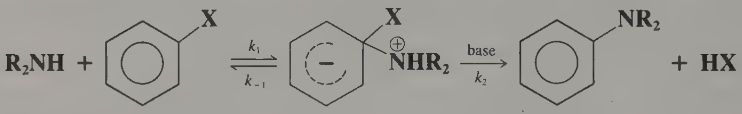
[5] For reviews of structural and other studies on Meisenheimer salts, see Illuminati and Stegel, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **34,** 305–444 (1983); Artamkina, Egorov, and Beletskaya, *Chem. Rev.* **82,** 427–459 (1982); Terrier, *Chem. Rev.* **82,** 77–152 (1982); Strauss, *Chem. Rev.* **70,** 667–712 (1970), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 181–188 (1974); Hall and Poranski, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," pt. 2, pp. 329–384, Interscience, New York, 1970; Crampton, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 211–257 (1969); Foster and Fyfe, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **16,** 61–82 (1966).

[6] See, for example, Crampton and Gold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4293 (1964), *J. Chem. Soc. B* 893 (1966); Foster and Fyfe, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 3372 (1965); Servis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5495 (1965), **89,** 1508 (1967); Caveng, Fischer, Heilbronner, Miller, and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 848 (1967); Fendler, Camaioni, and Fendler, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1544 (1971); Olah and Mayr, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3448 (1976); Fyfe, Damji, and Koll, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 951 (1979); Sekiguchi, Hikage, Obana, Matsui, Ando, and Tomoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 2921 (1980).

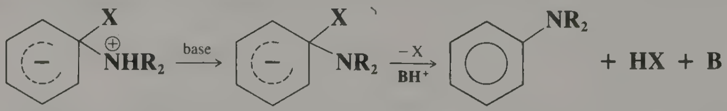
[7] Destro, Gramaccioli, and Simonetta, *Acta Crystallogr.* **24,** 1369 (1968); Ueda, Sakabe, Tanaka, and Furusaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **41,** 2866 (1968); Messmer and Palenik, *Chem. Commun.* 470 (1969).

[8] Bunnett, Garbisch, and Pruitt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 385 (1957).

The pattern of base catalysis of reactions with amine nucleophiles provides additional evidence. These reactions are catalyzed by bases only when a relatively poor leaving group (such as OR) is present (not Cl or Br) and only when relatively bulky amines are nucleophiles.[9] Bases could not catalyze step 1, but if amines are nucleophiles, bases can catalyze step 2. Base catalysis is found precisely in those cases where the amine moiety cleaves easily but X does not, so that k_{-1} is large and step 2 is rate-determining. This is evidence for the SNAr mechanism because it implies two steps. Furthermore, in cases where bases *are* catalysts, they catalyze only at low base concentrations: a plot of the rate against the base concentration shows that small increments of base rapidly increase the rate until a certain concentration of base is reached, after which further base addition no longer greatly affects the rate. This behavior, based on a partitioning effect (see p. 449), is also evidence for the SNAr mechanism. At low base concentration, each increment of base, by increasing the rate of step 2, increases the fraction of intermediate that goes to product rather than reverting to reactants. At high base concentration the process is virtually complete: there is very little reversion to reactants and the rate becomes dependent on step 1. Just how bases catalyze step 2 has been investigated. For protic solvents two proposals have been presented. One is that step 2 consists of two steps: rate-determining deprotonation of **3** followed by rapid loss of X, and that bases catalyze the reaction by increasing the rate of the deprotonation step.[10] According to the other proposal, loss of X assisted by BH^+ is rate-determining.[11] For aprotic solvents like benzene, the situation seems to be more complicated.[12] Further evidence for the SNAr mechanism has been obtained from $^{18}O/^{16}O$ and $^{15}N/^{14}N$ isotope effects.[13]



3



3

---

[9] Kirby and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3217 (1965); Bunnett and Garst, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3875, 3879 (1965), *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2320 (1968); Bunnett and Bernasconi, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 70 (1970); Bernasconi and Schmid, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2953 (1967); Bernasconi and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **49,** 103, 2570 (1966), **50,** 1 (1967); Pietra and Vitali, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1595 (1968).

[10] Bernasconi, de Rossi, and Schmid, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4090 (1977) and references cited therein. See also Spinelli, Consiglio, and Noto, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1316 (1977); Bamkole, Hirst, and Onyido, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1317 (1979).

[11] Bunnett, Sekiguchi, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4865 (1981) and references cited therein. See also Aveta, Doddi, and Illuminati, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5661 (1983).

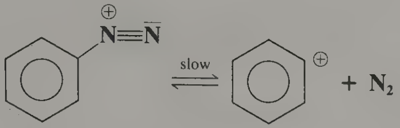
[12] Bamkole, Hirst, and Onyido, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 889 (1982); Nudelman and Palleros, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1607, 1613 (1983).

[13] Hart and Bourns, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2995 (1966); Ayrey and Wylie, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 738 (1970).

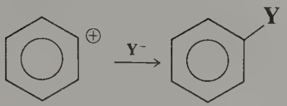
The SN1 Mechanism

For aryl halides and sulfonates,[14] even active ones, a unimolecular SN1 mechanism has never been observed with certainty. It is in reactions with diazonium salts that this mechanism is important:[15]

Step 1



Step 2



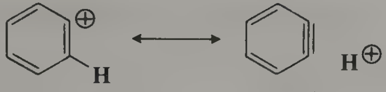
Among the evidence for the SN1 mechanism with aryl cations as intermediates,[16] is the following:[17]

1. The reaction rate is first order in diazonium salt and independent of the concentration of Y.

2. When high concentrations of halide salts are added, the product is an aryl halide but the rate is independent of the concentration of the added salts.

3. The effects of ring substituents on the rate are consistent with a unimolecular rate-determining cleavage.[18]

4. When reactions were run with substrate deuterated in the ortho position, isotope effects of about 1.22 were obtained.[19] It is difficult to account for such high secondary isotope effects in any other way except that an incipient phenyl cation is stabilized by hyperconjugation, which is reduced



when hydrogen is replaced by deuterium.

5. That the first step is a reversible cleavage[20] was demonstrated by the observation that when $\mathrm{Ar}^{15}\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{N}}\equiv\mathrm{N}$ was the reacting species, recovered starting material contained not only $\mathrm{Ar}^{15}\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{N}}\equiv\mathrm{N}$ but also $\mathrm{Ar}\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{N}}\equiv{}^{15}\mathrm{N}$.[21] This could arise only if the nitrogen breaks away from the ring and then returns. Additional evidence was obtained by treating $\mathrm{PhN}\equiv{}^{15}\mathrm{N}$ with unlabeled N_2 at various pressures.

---

[14] See Streitwieser and Dafforn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1435 (1976); Subramanian, Hanack, Chang, Imhoff, Schleyer, Effenberger, Kurtz, Stang, and Dueber, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 4099 (1976); Laali, Szele, and Yoshida, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 1710 (1983).

[15] Aryl iodonium salts $\mathrm{Ar_2I^+}$ also undergo substitutions by this mechanism (and by a free-radical mechanism).

[16] For a review of aryl cations, see Ambroz and Kemp, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **8,** 353–365 (1979).

[17] For a review, see Zollinger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 141–150 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 151–160]. For discussions, see Swain, Sheats, and Harbison, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 783, 796 (1975); Burri, Wahl, and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 2099 (1974); Richey and Richey, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 2, pp. 922–931, Interscience, New York, 1970; Zollinger, "Azo and Diazo Chemistry," pp. 138–142, Interscience, New York, 1961; Miller, Ref. 2, pp. 29–40.

[18] Lewis and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 429 (1953).

[19] Swain, Sheats, Gorenstein, and Harbison, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 791 (1975).

[20] For a discussion, see Zollinger, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **55,** 401–408 (1983).

[21] Lewis and Insole, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 32 (1964); Lewis and Kotcher, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 4873 (1969); Lewis and Holliday, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 426 (1969); Ref. 22; Tröndlin, Medina, and Rüchardt, *Chem. Ber.* **112,** 1835 (1979).

At 300 atm the recovered product had lost about 3% of the labeled nitrogen, indicating that PhN_2^+ was exchanging with atmospheric N_2.[22]

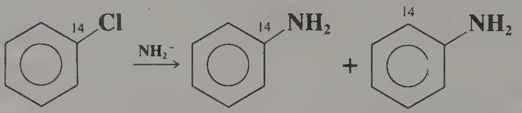
There is kinetic and other evidence[23] that step 1 is more complicated and involves two steps, both reversible:

$$ArN_2^+ \rightleftharpoons \underset{\mathbf{4}}{[Ar^+ \; N_2]} \rightleftharpoons Ar^+ + N_2$$

4 is probably some kind of a tight ion-molecule pair.

The Benzyne Mechanism[24]

Some aromatic nucleophilic substitutions are clearly different in character from those that occur by the SNAr mechanism (or the SN1 mechanism). These substitutions occur on aryl halides that have no activating groups; bases are required that are stronger than those normally used; and most interesting of all, the incoming group does not always take the position vacated by the leaving group. That the latter statement is true was elegantly demonstrated by the reaction of 1-^{14}C-chlorobenzene with potassium amide:

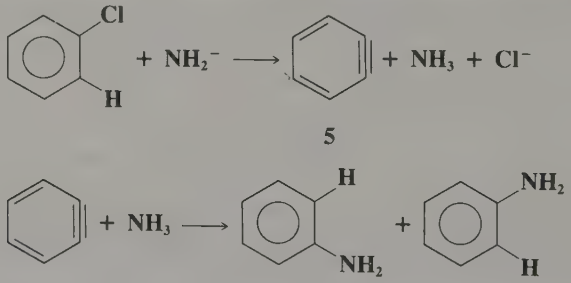


The product consisted of almost equal amounts of aniline labeled in the 1 position and in the 2 position.[25]

A mechanism that can explain all these facts involves elimination followed by addition:

Step 1

Step 2



5

The symmetrical intermediate **5** can be attacked by the NH_3 at either of two positions, which explains why about half of the aniline produced from the radioactive chlorobenzene was labeled at the 2 position. The fact that the 1 and 2 positions were not labeled equally is the result of a small isotope effect. Other evidence for this mechanism is the following:

---

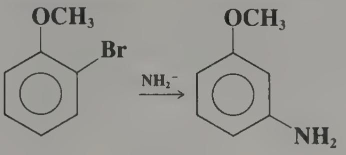
[22] Bergstrom, Landells, Wahl, and Zollinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3301 (1976).

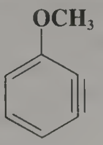
[23] Maurer, Szele, and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **62,** 1079 (1979); Szele and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 2728 (1981).

[24] For a monograph, see Hoffmann, "Dehydrobenzene and Cycloalkynes," Academic Press, New York, 1967. For reviews, see Gilchrist, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 1, pp. 383–419, Wiley, New York, 1983; Bryce and Vernon, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **28,** 183–229 (1981); Levin, *React. Intermed. (Wiley)* **1,** 1–26 (1978), **2,** 1–14 (1981); Nefedov, D'yachenko, and Prokof'ev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 941–966 (1977); Fields, in McManus, "Organic Reactive Intermediates," pp. 449–508, Academic Press, New York, 1973; Heaney, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **16,** 35–74 (1970), *Essays Chem.* **1,** 95–115 (1970), *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 81–97 (1962); Hoffmann in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 1063–1148, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Fields and Meyerson, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 1–61 (1968); Wittig, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 731–737 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 752–759], *Pure Appl. Chem.* **7,** 173–191 (1963); Bunnett, *J. Chem. Educ.* **38,** 278–285 (1961).

1. If the aryl halide contains two ortho substituents, the reaction should not be able to occur. This is indeed the case.[25]

2. It had been known many years earlier that aromatic nucleophilic substitution occasionally results in substitution at a different position. This is called *cine substitution*[26] and can be illustrated by the conversion of *o*-bromoanisole to *m*-aminoanisole.[27] In this particular case, only the meta





6

isomer is formed. The reason a 1 : 1 mixture is not formed is that the intermediate **6** is not symmetrical and the methoxy group directs the incoming group meta but not ortho (see p. 586). However, not all cine substitutions proceed by this kind of mechanism (see **3-26**).[28]

3. The fact that the order of halide reactivity is $Br > I > Cl \gg F$ (when the reaction is performed with KNH_2 in liquid NH_3) shows that the SNAr mechanism is not operating here.[25]

In the conversion of the substrate to **6**, either proton removal or subsequent loss of halide ion can be rate-determining. In fact, the unusual leaving-group order just mentioned ($Br > I > Cl$) stems from a change in the rate-determining step. When the leaving group is Br or I, proton removal is rate-determining and the rate order for this step is $F > Cl > Br > I$. When Cl or F is the leaving group, cleavage of the C—X bond is rate-determining and the order for this step is $I > Br > Cl > F$. Confirmation of the latter order was found in a direct competitive study. *meta*-Dihalobenzenes in which the two halogens are different were treated with NH_2^-.[29] In such compounds, the most acidic hydrogen is the one between the two halogens; when it leaves, the remaining anion can lose either halogen. Therefore a study of which halogen is preferentially lost provides a direct measure of leaving-group ability. The order was found to be $I > Br > Cl$.[29]

Species such as **5** and **6** are called *benzynes* (sometimes *dehydrobenzenes*), or, more generally, *arynes,* and the mechanism is known as the *benzyne mechanism.* Benzynes differ from the species discussed in Chapter 5 in that each carbon has a valence of 4. However, they are very reactive, as are the species in that chapter. Neither benzyne nor any other aryne has yet been isolated under ordinary conditions, but stable benzyne has been isolated in an argon matrix at 8 K,[30] where its ir spectrum could be observed. In addition, spectra of transient benzynes have been detected,[31] and benzynes can be trapped; e.g., they undergo the Diels–Alder reaction (see **5-47**). It should be noted that the extra pair of electrons does not affect the aromaticity. The original sextet still functions as a closed ring, and the two additional electrons are merely located in a π orbital that covers only two carbons. Benzynes do not have a formal triple bond, since two canonical forms (**A** and **B**) contribute to the hybrid. The ir spectrum, mentioned above, indicates that **A** contributes more than

---

[25] Roberts, Semenow, Simmons, and Carlsmith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 601 (1956).

[26] For a review of cine substitution, see Dyall, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **8,** 33–52 (1958).

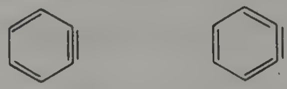
[27] This example is from Gilman and Avakian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **67,** 349 (1945). For a table of many such examples, see Bunnett and Zahler, Ref. 1, pp. 385–386.

[28] For another example, see Reinecke and Adickes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 511 (1968).

[29] Bunnett and Kearley, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 184 (1971).

[30] Chapman, Mattes, McIntosh, Pacansky, Calder, and Orr, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6134 (1973). See also Jayalekshmy and Mazur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6710 (1976).

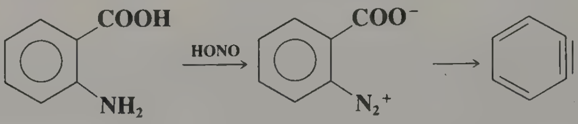
[31] Berry, Spokes, and Stiles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3570 (1962). Benzynes have also been detected by mass spectroscopy: Fisher and Lossing, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1018 (1963); Berry, Clardy, and Schafer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2738 (1964).



A **B**

B. Not only benzene rings but other aromatic rings[32] and even nonaromatic rings (p. 298) can react through this kind of intermediate. Of course, the nonaromatic rings do have a formal triple bond.

There are other ways to prepare benzyne intermediates.[33] Probably the most convenient method involves thermal or photolytic decomposition of the product of diazotization of anthranilic acid or its derivatives.[34]

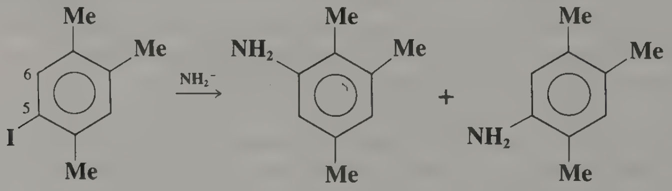


7

The zwitterion (**7**) decomposes to give the highly reactive benzyne.

The $S_{RN}1$ Mechanism

In several cases there is strong evidence that still another mechanism exists. For example, when 5-iodo-1,2,4-trimethylbenzene **8** was treated with KNH_2 in NH_3, **9** and **10** were formed in the ratio 0.63:1. From what we have already seen, the presence of an unactivated substrate, a strong base,



8 **9** **10**

and the occurrence of cine along with normal substitution would be strong indications of a benzyne mechanism. Yet if that were so, the 6-iodo isomer of **8** should have given **9** and **10** in the same ratio (because the same aryne intermediate should be formed in both cases), but in this case the ratio of **9** to **10** was 5.9:1 (the chloro and bromo analogs did give the same ratio, 1.46:1, showing that the benzyne mechanism may be taking place in this case).

---

[32] For reviews of *hetarynes* (benzyne intermediates in heterocyclic rings), see van der Plas and Roeterdink, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 24, pt. 1, pp. 421–511; Reinecke, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **2,** 367–526 (1982); *Tetrahedron* **38,** 427–498 (1982); den Hertog and van der Plas, in Viehe, Ref. 24, pp. 1149–1197, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **4,** 121–144 (1971); Kauffmann and Wirthwein, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 20–33 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 21–34]; Kauffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 543–557 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 557–571]; Hoffmann, "Dehydrobenzene and Cycloalkynes," Ref. 24, pp. 275–309.

[33] For a full discussion, see Hoffmann, "Dehydrobenzene and Cycloalkynes," Ref. 24, pp. 9–98.

[34] Stiles and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3802 (1960); Stiles, Miller, and Burckhardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1792 (1963); Gompper, Seybold, and Schmolke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 389 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 404]; Logullo, Seitz, and Friedman, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 54.

To explain the iodo result, it has been proposed[35] that besides the benzyne mechanism, this free-radical mechanism is also operating here:

$$\mathrm{ArI} \xrightarrow[\text{donor}]{\text{electron}} [\mathrm{ArI}]^{\bullet -} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ar}^{\bullet} + \mathrm{I}^{-}$$

$$\mathrm{Ar}^{\bullet} + \mathrm{NH_2}^{-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ArNH_2}^{\bullet -} + \mathrm{ArI} \longrightarrow \mathrm{ArNH_2} + \mathrm{ArI}^{\bullet -}$$

Termination steps

This is called the SRN1 mechanism,[36] and several other aromatic examples have been found (see **3-5, 3-7, 3-14**), as well as aliphatic examples (see p. 415). Note that the last step of the mechanism produces $\mathrm{ArI}^{\cdot -}$ radical ions, so that the process is a chain mechanism[37] (see p. 609). An electron donor is required to initiate the reaction. In the case above it was solvated electrons from $\mathrm{KNH_2}$ in $\mathrm{NH_3}$. Evidence was that the addition of potassium metal (a good producer of solvated electrons in ammonia) completely suppressed the cine substitution. Further evidence for the SRN1 mechanism was that addition of radical scavengers (which would suppress a free-radical mechanism) led to **9**:**10** ratios much closer to 1.46:1. Numerous other observations of SRN1 mechanisms that were stimulated by solvated electrons and inhibited by radical scavengers have also been recorded.[38] Further evidence for the SRN1 mechanism in the case above was that some 1,2,4-trimethylbenzene was found among the products. This could easily be formed by abstraction by $\mathrm{Ar}^{\cdot}$ of H from the solvent $\mathrm{NH_3}$. Besides initiation by solvated electrons, SRN1 reactions have been initiated photochemically,[39] electrochemically,[40] and even thermally.[41]

SRN1 reactions have a fairly wide scope. There is no requirement for activating groups or strong bases. Alkyl, alkoxy, aryl, and $\mathrm{COO^-}$ groups do not interfere, although $\mathrm{Me_2N}$, $\mathrm{O^-}$, and $\mathrm{NO_2}$ groups do interfere. Cine substitution is not found.

Other Mechanisms

There is no clear-cut proof that a one-step SN2 mechanism, so important at a saturated carbon, ever actually occurs with an aromatic substrate. Such a mechanism has been suggested[42] in cases where fluoro is a very poor leaving group, since this would be consistent with an SN2 process, but not with the SNAr mechanism as shown on p. 576. On the other hand, an SNAr mechanism in which the *second* step is rate-determining would be quite compatible with reactions in which fluoro is a poor leaving group, and some of them have been shown to operate by such a process.[43] The hypothetical aromatic SN2 process is sometimes called the *one-stage* mechanism to distinguish it from the *two-stage* SNAr mechanism.

Some of the reactions in this chapter operate by still other mechanisms, among them an addition–elimination mechanism (see **3-17**).

---

[35] Kim and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7463, 7464 (1970).

[36] For reviews, see Norris, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement D," pt. 1, pp. 681–701, Wiley, New York, 1983; Chanon and Tobe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 1–23 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 27–49]; Rossi, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 164–170 (1982); Beletskaya and Drozd, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 431–448 (1979); Bunnett, *Acc. Chem. Rev.* **11,** 413–420 (1978); Wolfe and Carver, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **10,** 225–253 (1978). For a monograph, see Rossi and de Rossi, "Aromatic Substitution by the SRN1 Mechanism," American Chemical Society, Washington, 1983.

[37] For a discussion, see Amatore, Pinson, Savéant, and Thiébault, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 6930 (1981).

[38] Bunnett, Ref. 36.

[39] For reviews of photochemical aromatic nucleophilic substitutions, see Cornelisse, de Gunst, and Havinga, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **11,** 225–266 (1975); Cornelisse, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **41,** 433–453 (1975); Pietra, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **23,** 504–521 (1969), pp. 519–521.

[40] For a review, see Savéant, *Acc. Chem. Rev.* **13,** 323–329 (1980).

[41] Swartz and Bunnett, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 340 (1979) and references cited therein.

[42] Chapman and Russell-Hill, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1563 (1956); Parker and Read, *J. Chem. Soc.* 9, 3149 (1962).

[43] Bunnett and Randall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6020 (1958). See also Lam and Miller, *Chem. Commun.* 642 (1966); Lamm and Lammert, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **27,** 191 (1973).

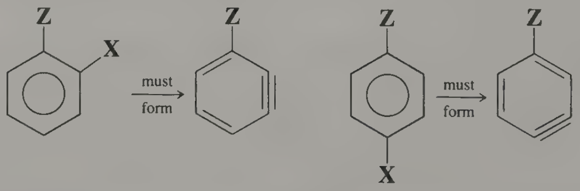
REACTIVITY

The Effect of Substrate Structure

In the discussion of electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 11) equal attention was paid to the effect of substrate structure on reactivity (activation or deactivation) and on orientation. The question of orientation was important because in a typical substitution there are four or five hydrogens that could serve as leaving groups. This type of question is much less important for aromatic nucleophilic substitution, since in most cases there is only one potential leaving group in a molecule. Therefore attention is largely focused on the reactivity of one molecule compared with another and not on the comparison of the reactivity of different positions within the same molecule.

Aromatic nucleophilic substitutions proceeding by the SNAr mechanism are accelerated by electron-withdrawing groups, especially in positions ortho and para to the leaving group[44] and hindered by electron-attracting groups. This is, of course, opposite to the effects of these groups on electrophilic substitutions, and the reasons are similar to those discussed in Chapter 11 (p. 453). Table 1 contains a list of groups arranged approximately in order of activating or deactivating ability. Hetero nitrogen atoms are also strongly activating (especially to the α and γ positions) and are even more so when quaternized.[48] Thus 2- and 4-chloropyridine, for example, are often used as substrates. Heterocyclic N-oxides are readily attacked by nucleophiles in the 2 and 4 positions, but the oxygen is generally lost in these reactions.[49] The N_2^+ group is seldom deliberately used to activate a reaction, but it sometimes happens that in the diazotization of a compound such as *p*-nitroaniline or *p*-chloroaniline the group para to the diazonium group is replaced by OH from the solvent or by X from $ArN_2^+ X^-$, to the surprise and chagrin of the investigator, who was trying only to replace the diazonium group and to leave the para group untouched. By far the most common activating group is the nitro group and the most common substrates are 2,4-dinitrophenyl halides and 2,4,6-trinitrophenyl halides (also called picryl halides).[50] Polyfluorobenzenes, e.g., C_6F_6, also undergo aromatic nucleophilic substitution quite well.[51] Benzene rings that lack activating substituents are generally not useful substrates for the SNAr mechanism, because the two extra electrons in **1** are in an antibonding orbital (p. 25). Activating groups, by withdrawing electron density, are able to stabilize the intermediates.

In reactions involving aryne intermediates, two factors affect the position of the incoming group, the first being the direction in which the aryne forms.[52] When there are groups ortho or para to the leaving group, there is no choice:



---

[44] The effect of meta substituents has been studied much less, but it has been reported that here too, electron-withdrawing groups increase the rate: See Nurgatin, Sharnin, and Ginzburg, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **19,** 343 (1983).

[45] For additional tables of this kind, see Miller, Ref. 2, pp. 61–136.

[46] Miller and Parker, *Aust. J. Chem.* **11,** 302 (1958).

[47] Berliner and Monack, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 1574 (1952).

[48] For reviews of reactivity of nitrogen-containing heterocycles, see Illuminati, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **3,** 285–371 (1964); Shepherd and Fedrick, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **4,** 145–423 (1965).

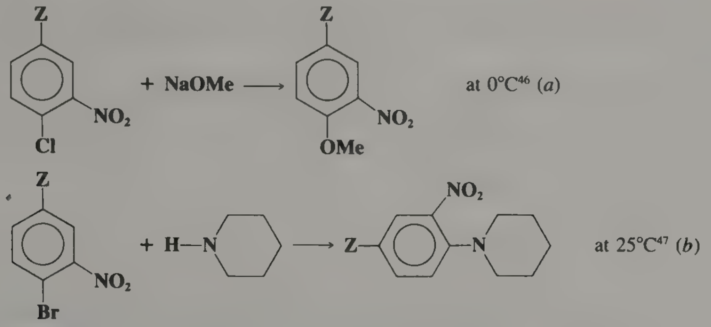
[49] For a review, see Katritzky and Lagowski, "Chemistry of the Heterocyclic N-Oxides," pp. 258–319, 550–553, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[50] For a review of the activating effect of nitro groups, see de Boer and Dirkx, in Feuer, Ref. 5, pt. 1, pp. 487–612.

[51] For reviews, see Yakobson and Vlasov, *Synthesis* 652–672 (1976); Kobrina, *Fluorine Chem. Rev.* **7,** 1–114 (1974).

[52] This analysis is from Roberts, Vaughan, Carlsmith, and Semenow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 611 (1956). For a discussion, see Hoffmann, "Dehydrobenzene and Cycloalkynes," Ref. 24, pp. 134–150.

TABLE 1 Groups listed in approximate descending order of activating ability in the SNAr mechanism[45]

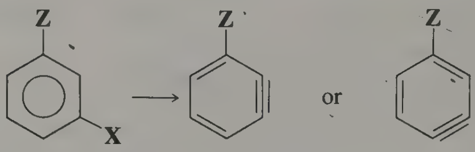


For reaction (a) the rates are relative to **H**; *for (b) they are relative to* **NH$_2$**

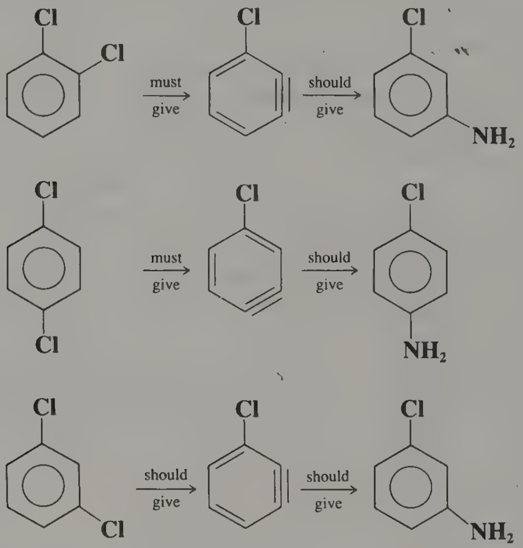
		Relative rate of reaction	
	Group Z	(*a*) **H = 1**[46]	(*b*) **NH$_2$ = 1**[47]
Activates halide exchange at room temperature	**N$_2^+$**		
Activates reaction with strong nucleophiles at room temperature	**N$^+$—R (heterocyclic)**		
Activate reactions with strong nucleophiles at 80–100°C	**NO**	5.22 × 10^6	
	NO$_2$	6.73 × 10^5	Very fast
	N (heterocyclic)		
With nitro also present, activate reactions with strong nucleophiles at room temperature	**SO$_2$Me**		
	NMe$_3^+$		
	CF$_3$		
	CN	3.81 × 10^4	
	CHO	2.02 × 10^4	
With nitro also present, activate reactions with strong nucleophiles at 40–60°C	**COR**		
	COOH		
	SO$_3^-$		
	Br		6.31 × 10^4
	Cl		4.50 × 10^4
	I		4.36 × 10^4
	COO$^-$		2.02 × 10^4
	H	1	8.06 × 10^3
	F		2.10 × 10^3
	CMe$_3$		1.37 × 10^3
	Me		1.17 × 10^3
	OMe		145
	NMe$_2$		9.77
	OH		4.70
	NH$_2$		1

The comments on the left are from Bunnett and Zahler, Ref. 1, p. 308.

but when a meta group is present, the aryne can form in two different ways:



In such cases, the more acidic hydrogen is removed. Since acidity is related to the field effect of Z, it can be stated that an electron-attracting Z favors removal of the ortho hydrogen while an electron-donating Z favors removal of the para hydrogen. The second factor is that the aryne, once formed, can be attacked at two positions. The favored position for nucleophilic attack is the one that leads to the more stable carbanion intermediate, and this in turn also depends on the field effect of Z. For $-I$ groups, the more stable carbanion is the one in which the negative charge is closer to the substituent. These principles are illustrated by the reaction of the three dichlorobenzenes with alkali-metal amides. The predicted products are



In each case the predicted product was the one chiefly formed.[53] The obtention of *m*-aminoanisole, mentioned on p. 581, is also in accord with these predictions.

Just as electrophilic aromatic substitutions were found more or less to follow the Hammett relationship (with σ^+ instead of σ; see p. 464), so do nucleophilic substitutions, with σ^- instead of σ for electron-withdrawing groups.[54]

As pointed out on p. 462, the position of attack at alternant hydrocarbons is the same for electrophiles, nucleophiles, and free radicals.

---

[53] Wotiz and Huba, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 595 (1959). Eighteen other reactions also gave products predicted by these principles. See also Caubère and Lalloz, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1983, 1989, 1996 (1974).

[54] For a discussion of linear free-energy relationships in this reaction, see Bartoli and Todesco, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 125–132 (1977). For a list of σ^- values, see p. 244.

The Effect of the Leaving Group[55]

The common leaving groups in aliphatic nucleophilic substitution (halide, sulfate, sulfonate, NR_3^+, etc.) are also common leaving groups in aromatic nucleophilic substitutions, but the groups NO_2, OR, OAr, SO_2R, and SR, which are not generally lost in aliphatic systems, *are* leaving groups when attached to aromatic rings. Surprisingly, NO_2 is a particularly good leaving group.[56] An approximate order of leaving-group ability is[57] $F > NO_2 > OTs > SOPh > Cl, Br, I > N_3 > NR_3^+ > OAr, OR, SR, SO_2R, NH_2$. However, this depends greatly on the nature of the nucleophile, as illustrated by the fact that $C_6Cl_5OCH_3$ treated with NH_2^- gives mostly $C_6Cl_5NH_2$; i.e., one methoxy group is replaced in preference to five chlorines.[58] As usual, OH can be a leaving group if it is converted to an inorganic ester. Among the halogens, fluoro is generally a much better leaving group than the other halogens, which have reactivities fairly close together. The order is usually $Cl > Br > I$, but not always.[59] The leaving-group order is quite different from that for the SN1 or SN2 mechanisms. The most likely explanation is that the first step of the SNAr mechanism is usually rate-determining, and this step is promoted by groups with strong $-I$ effects. This would explain why fluoro and nitro are such good leaving groups when this mechanism is operating. Fluoro is the poorest leaving group of the halogens when the second step of the SNAr mechanism is rate-determining (p. 583) or when the benzyne mechanism is operating. The four halogens, as well as SPh, NMe_3^+, and $OPO(OEt)_2$, have been shown to be leaving groups in the SRN1 mechanism.[38] The only important leaving group in the SN1 mechanism is N_2^+.

The Effect of the Attacking Nucleophile[60]

It is not possible to construct an invariant nucleophilicity order because different substrates and different conditions lead to different orders of nucleophilicity, but an overall approximate order is $NH_2^- > Ph_3C^- > PhNH^-$ (aryne mechanism) $> ArS^- > RO^- > R_2NH > ArO^- > OH^- > ArNH_2 > NH_3 > I^- > Br^- > Cl^- > H_2O > ROH$.[61] As with aliphatic nucleophilic substitution, nucleophilicity is generally dependent on base strength and nucleophilicity increases as the attacking atom moves down a column of the periodic table, but there are some surprising exceptions, e.g., OH^-, a stronger base than ArO^-, is a poorer nucleophile. In a series of similar nucleophiles, such as substituted anilines,[62] nucleophilicity *is* correlated with base strength. Oddly, the cyanide ion is not a nucleophile for aromatic systems, except for sulfonic acid salts (**3-12**) and in the von Richter (**3-26**) and Rosenmund–von Braun (**3-11**) reactions, which are special cases.

REACTIONS

In the first part of this section, reactions are classified according to attacking species, with all leaving groups considered together, except for hydrogen and N_2^+, which are treated subsequently. Finally, a few rearrangement reactions are discussed.

[55] For a review, see Miller, Ref. 2, pp. 137–179.

[56] For a review, see Beck, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 2057–2068 (1978).

[57] Loudon and Shulman, *J. Chem. Soc.* 722 (1941); Suhr, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 3268 (1964).

[58] Kobrina and Yakobson, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 3238 (1963).

[59] Reinheimer, Taylor, and Rohrbaugh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 835 (1961); Ross, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2113 (1959); Bunnett, Garbisch, and Pruitt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 385 (1957); Parker and Read, *J. Chem. Soc.* 9, 3149 (1962); Litvinenko, Shpan'ko, and Korostylev, *Doklad. Chem.* **266,** 309 (1982).

[60] For a review, see Miller, Ref. 2, pp. 180–233.

[61] This list is compiled from data in Bunnett and Zahler, Ref. 1, p. 340; Bunnett, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **12,** 1–16 (1958), p. 13; Sauer and Huisgen, Ref. 2, p. 311; Bunnett, *Annu. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **14,** 271–290 (1963).

[62] Sauer and Huisgen, Ref. 2, p. 311. Also see Murto, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **18,** 1043 (1964).

All Leaving Groups except Hydrogen and N_2^+

A. Oxygen Nucleophiles

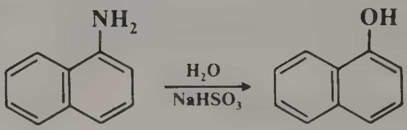
3-1 Replacement by OH
Hydroxy-de-halogenation

$$\mathrm{ArBr} + \mathrm{OH}^- \longrightarrow \mathrm{ArOH}$$

Aryl halides can be converted to phenols only if activating groups are present or if exceedingly strenuous conditions are employed.[63] Other leaving groups, including nitro,[64] azide, NR_3^+, etc., can also be replaced by OH groups. When the reaction is carried out at high temperatures, cine substitution is observed, indicating a benzyne mechanism.[65] Phenols have been obtained from unactivated aryl halides by treatment with borane and a metal such as lithium, followed by oxidation with alkaline H_2O_2.[66]

OS **I,** 455; **II,** 451; **V,** 632. Also see OS **V,** 918.

3-2 Replacement of an Amino Group by a Hydroxyl Group
Hydroxy-de-amination



The amino group of naphthylamines can be replaced by a hydroxyl group by treatment with aqueous bisulfite.[67] The scope is greatly limited; the amino group (which may be NH_2 or NHR) must be on a naphthalene ring, with very few exceptions. The reaction is reversible (see **3-7**), and both the forward and reverse reactions are called the *Bucherer reaction.* The mechanism is completely different from any outlined in the first section of this chapter and is discussed at **3-7.**

3-3 Alkali Fusion of Sulfonate Salts
Oxido-de-sulfonato-substitution

$$\mathrm{ArSO_3}^- \xrightarrow[\text{300–320°C}]{\text{NaOH fus.}} \mathrm{ArO}^-$$

Aryl sulfonic acids can be converted, through their salts, to phenols, by alkali fusion. In spite of the extreme conditions, the reaction gives fairly good yields, except when the substrate contains other groups that are attacked by alkali at the fusion temperatures. Milder conditions can be used when the substrate contains activating groups, but the presence of deactivating groups hinders the reaction. The mechanism is obscure, but a benzyne intermediate has been ruled out by the finding that cine substitution does not occur.[68]

OS **I,** 175; **III,** 288.

---

[63] For a review of OH^- and OR^- as nucleophiles in aromatic substitution, see Fyfe, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 1, pp. 83–124, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[64] For a convenient way of achieving this conversion, see Knudsen and Snyder, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3343 (1974).

[65] The benzyne mechanism for this reaction is also supported by ^{14}C labeling experiments: Bottini and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 1458 (1957); Dalman and Neumann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1601 (1968).

[66] Pickles and Thorpe, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **76,** C23 (1974).

[67] For reviews, see Seeboth, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 307–317 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 329–340]; Drake, *Org. React.* **1,** 106–128 (1942); Gilbert, "Sulfonation and Related Reactions," pp. 166–169, Interscience, New York, 1965.

[68] Buzbee, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3289 (1966); Oae, Furukawa, Kise, and Kawanishi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 1212 (1966).

3-4 Replacement by OR or OAr

Alkoxy-de-halogenation

$$\text{ArBr} + \text{OR}^- \longrightarrow \text{ArOR}$$

This reaction is similar to **3-1** and, like that one, generally requires activated substrates.[63] With unactivated substrates, side reactions predominate, though aryl methyl ethers have been prepared from unactivated chlorides by treatment with MeO^- in HMPT.[69] This reaction gives better yields than **3-1** and is used more often. In addition to halides, leaving groups may be nitro, NR_3^+, other OR, etc., even OH.[70] The substrates Ar_2Br^+ are converted to ArOR in very high yields.[71] Acid salts, $RCOO^-$, are sometimes used as nucleophiles. Good yields of aryl benzoates can be obtained by the treatment of aryl halides with cuprous benzoate in diglyme or xylene at 140 to 160°C.[72] Unactivated substrates have been converted to esters in low-to-moderate yields under oxidizing conditions.[73] A mechanism similar to the SRN1 has been suggested for this.

For aroxide nucleophiles, the reaction is promoted by copper salts,[73a] and when these are used, activating groups need not be present. This method of preparation of diaryl ethers is called the *Ullmann ether synthesis*[74] and should not be confused with the more important Ullmann coupling reaction (**3-16**). The reactivity order is typical of nucleophilic substitutions, despite the presence of the copper salts.[75] Because aryloxycopper(I) reagents ArOCu react with aryl halides to give ethers, it has been suggested that they are intermediates in the Ullmann ether synthesis.[76] Indeed, high yields of ethers can be obtained by reaction of ROCu or ArOCu with aryl halides.[77] Diaryl ethers can be prepared from activated aryl halides by treatment with a triaryl phosphate $(ArO)_3PO$.[78]

OS **I,** 219; **II,** 445; **III,** 293, 566; **V,** 926; **51,** 82.

B. Sulfur Nucleophiles

3-5 Replacement by SH or SR

$$\text{ArBr} + \text{SH}^- \longrightarrow \text{ArSH} \qquad \textbf{Mercapto-de-halogenation}$$

$$\text{ArBr} + \text{SR}^- \longrightarrow \text{ArSR} \qquad \textbf{Alkylthio-de-halogenation}$$

Aryl thiols and thioethers can be prepared in reactions similar to **3-1** and **3-4.**[79] Activated aryl halides generally give good results, but side reactions are occasionally important. Diaryl sulfides can be prepared by the use of SAr^-. Even unactivated aryl halides react with SAr^- if polar aprotic solvents, e.g., DMF,[80] Me_2SO,[81] or HMPT,[82] are used, though the mechanism is still nucleophilic substitution. Unactivated aryl halides also give good yields of sulfides on treatment with SAr^- or SR^- in the presence of a catalytic amount of $(Ph_3P)_4Pd$.[83] Diaryl sulfides can also be prepared (in high yields) by treatment of unactivated aryl iodides with ArS^- in liquid ammonia under irradiation.[84] The mechanism in this case is probably SRN1.

---

[69] Shaw, Kunerth, and Swanson, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 732 (1976); Testaferri, Tiecco, Tingoli, Chianelli, and Montanucci, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 193 (1983).

[70] Oae and Kiritani, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 770 (1964), **39,** 611 (1966).

[71] Lubinkowski and McEwen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4817 (1972).

[72] Cohen and Lewin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4521 (1966); Cohen, Wood, and Dietz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3555 (1974).

[73] Eberson, Jönsson, and Wistrand, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 1087 (1982).

[73a] For a review of copper assisted aromatic nucleophilic substitution, see Lindley, *Tetrahedron* **40,** 1433–1456 (1984).

[74] For a review of the Ullmann ether synthesis, see Moroz and Shvartsberg, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 679–689 (1974).

[75] Weingarten, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 977, 3624 (1964).

[76] Kawaki and Hashimoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 1499 (1972).

[77] Whitesides, Sadowski, and Lilburn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2829 (1974).

[78] Ohta, Iwasaki, and Akita, *Synthesis* 828 (1982). For another procedure, see Bates and Janda, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4374 (1982).

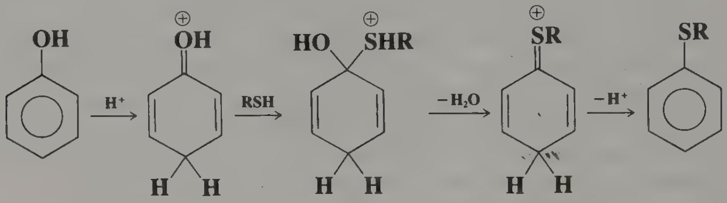
[79] For reviews of sulfur nucleophiles in aromatic substitution, see Peach, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 2, pp. 735–744, Wiley, New York, 1974; Parker, in Kharasch, "Organic Sulfur Compounds," vol. 1, pp. 103–111, Pergamon, New York, 1961.

Other sulfur nucleophiles also react with activated aryl halides:

$$2ArX + S_2^{2-} \longrightarrow Ar\text{—}S\text{—}S\text{—}Ar \qquad ArX + SCN^- \longrightarrow ArSCN$$

$$ArX + SO_3^{2-} \longrightarrow Ar\text{—}SO_3^- \qquad ArX + RSO_2^- \longrightarrow Ar\text{—}SO_2\text{—}R$$

Hydroxyl groups can be replaced by SR groups in acid solution.[85] In this case the mechanism bears certain resemblances to that of the Bucherer reaction (**3-7**):



As with the Bucherer reaction, yields are highest with naphthols (50 to 60%), although in this case phenols also give the reaction (20 to 40% yields).

OS **I,** 220; **III,** 86, 239, 667; **V,** 107, 474; **50,** 75; **51,** 139. Also see OS **V,** 977.

C. Nitrogen Nucleophiles

3-6 Replacement by NH_2, NHR, or NR_2
Amino-de-halogenation

$$ArBr + NH_3 \longrightarrow ArNH_2$$

$$ArBr + RNH_2 \longrightarrow ArNHR$$

$$ArBr + R_2NH \longrightarrow ArNR_2$$

Activated aryl halides react quite well with ammonia and with primary and secondary amines to give the corresponding arylamines. Primary and secondary amines usually give better results than ammonia, with piperidine being especially reactive. Picryl chloride (2,4,6-trinitrochlorobenzene) is often used to form amine derivatives. 2,4-Dinitrofluorobenzene is used to tag the amino end of a peptide or protein chain. Other leaving groups in this reaction may be NO_2, N_3, OSO_2R, OR, SR, and N═NAr (where Ar contains electron-withdrawing groups).[86] Activated halides can be converted to diethylamino compounds $ArX \rightarrow ArNMe_2$ by treatment with HMPT.[87]

---

[80] Campbell, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 1830 (1964); Testaferri, Tiecco, Tingoli, Chianelli, and Montanucci, *Synthesis* 751 (1983). For the extension of this to selenides, see Tiecco, Testaferri, Tingoli, Chianelli, and Montanucci, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4289 (1983).

[81] Bradshaw, South, and Hales, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2381 (1972).

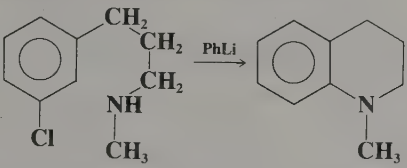
[82] Cogolli, Maiolo, Testaferri, Tingoli, and Tiecco, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2642 (1979). See also Testaferri, Tingoli, and Tiecco, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3099 (1980); Suzuki, Abe, and Osuka, *Chem. Lett.* 1363 (1980).

[83] Migita, Shimizu, Asami, Shiobara, Kato, and Kosugi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 1385 (1980). For a different catalyst, see Cristau, Chabaud, Chêne, and Christol, *Synthesis* 892 (1981).

[84] Bunnett and Creary, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3173, 3611 (1974).

[85] Oae and Kiritani, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **38,** 1381 (1965).

Unactivated aryl halides can be converted to amines by the use of $NaNH_2$, NaNHR, or $NaNR_2$.[88] With these reagents, the benzyne mechanism generally operates, and so cine substitution is often found. Ring closure has been effected by this type of reaction,[89] e.g.,



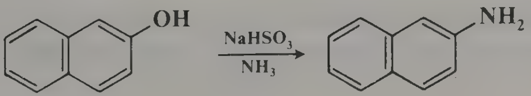
It has also proved possible to close larger rings in this manner: eight- and even twelve-membered. Triarylamines have been prepared in a similar manner from ArI and $Ar_2'NLi$, even with unactivated ArI.[90] Sulfonic acid salts can be fused with alkali-metal amides to give aromatic amines, a process similar to **3-3.** In the *Goldberg reaction,* an aryl bromide reacts with an acetanilide in the presence of K_2CO_3 and CuI to give an N-acetyldiarylamine, which can be hydrolyzed to a diarylamine: $ArBr + Ar'NHAc \rightarrow ArAr'NAc$.[91]

The reaction with ammonia or amines, which undoubtedly proceeds by the SNAr mechanism, is catalyzed by copper[73a] and nickel[92] salts, although these are normally used only with rather unreactive halides. The manner of catalysis is poorly understood.[93] Copper ion catalysts (especially cuprous oxide or iodide) also permit the Gabriel synthesis (**0-60**) to be applied to aromatic substrates. Aryl bromides or iodides are refluxed with potassium phthalimide and Cu_2O or CuI in dimethylacetamide to give N-aryl phthalimides, which can be hydrolyzed to primary aryl amines.[94] Copper catalysts also permit the reaction to be applied to amides and imides.[95]

In certain cases the SRN1 mechanism has been found (p. 582). When the substrate is a heterocyclic aromatic nitrogen compound, still a different mechanism [the SN(ANRORC) mechanism], involving opening and reclosing of the aromatic ring, has been shown to take place.[96]

OS **I,** 544; **II,** 15, 221, 228; **III,** 53, 307, 573; **IV,** 336, 364; **V,** 816, 1067.

3-7 Replacement of a Hydroxy Group by an Amino Group
Amino-de-hydroxylation



---

[86] Kazankov and Ginodman, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **11,** 451 (1975).

[87] See, for example, Gupton, Idoux, Baker, Colon, Crews, Jurss, and Rampi, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2933 (1983).

[88] For a review, see Heaney, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 81–97 (1962), pp. 83–89.

[89] Huisgen, König, and Lepley, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 1496 (1960); Bunnett and Hrutfiord, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1691 (1961). For a review of ring closures by the benzyne mechanism, see Hoffmann, "Dehydrobenzene and Cycloalkynes," Ref. 24, pp. 150–164.

[90] Neunhoeffer and Heitmann, *Chem. Ber.* **94,** 2511 (1961).

[91] See Freeman, Butler, and Freedman, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4975 (1978).

[92] See Cramer and Coulson, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2267 (1975).

[93] For discussion, see Tuong and Hida, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 676 (1974); Kondratov and Shein, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **15,** 2160 (1979).

[94] Bacon and Karim, *Chem. Commun.* 578 (1969), *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 272, 278 (1973); Sato, Ebine, and Akabori, *Synthesis* 472 (1981).

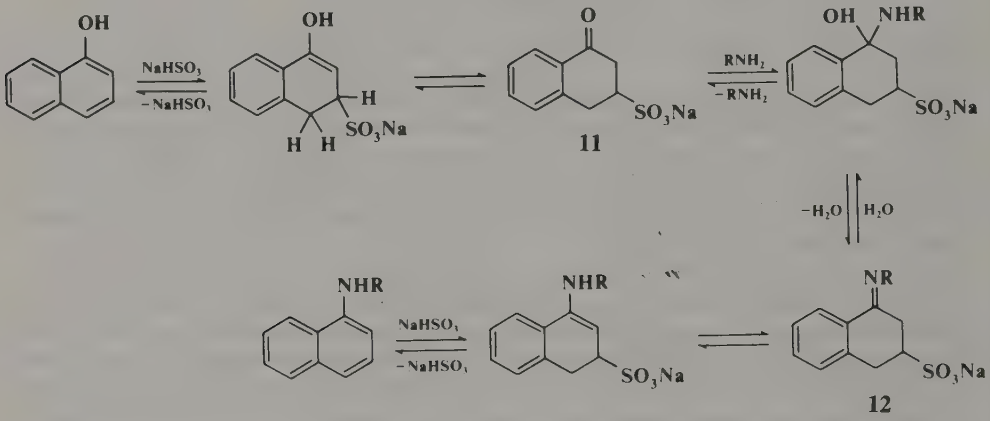
[95] Yamamoto and Kurata, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 86 (1983).

[96] For a review, see van der Plas, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 462–468 (1978).

The reaction of naphthols with ammonia and sodium bisulfite is the reverse of **3-2** and has a similar scope.[67] It is also called the *Bucherer reaction*. Primary amines may be used instead of ammonia, in which case N-substituted naphthylamines are obtained. In addition, primary naphthylamines can be converted to secondary, by a transamination reaction:

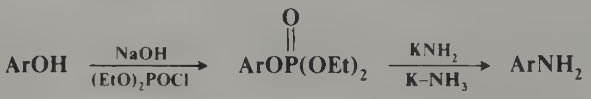
$$\mathrm{ArNH_2 + RNH_2 \xrightarrow{NaHSO_3} ArNHR}$$

The mechanism of the Bucherer reaction amounts to a kind of overall addition–elimination:[97]



The first step in either direction consists of addition of $NaHSO_3$ to one of the double bonds of the ring, which gives an enol (or enamine) that tautomerizes to the keto (or imine) form. The conversion of **11** to **12** (or vice versa) is an example of **6-14** (or **6-2**). Evidence for this mechanism was the isolation of **11**[98] and the demonstration that for β-naphthol treated with ammonia and HSO_3^-, the rate of the reaction depends only on the substrate and on HSO_3^-, indicating that ammonia is not involved in the rate-determining step.[99] If the starting compound is a β-naphthol, the intermediate is a 2-keto-4-sulfonic acid compound, so that the sulfur of the bisulfite in either case attacks meta to the OH or NH_2.[100]

Hydroxy groups on benzene rings can be replaced by NH_2 groups if they are first converted to aryl diethyl phosphates. Treatment of these with KNH_2 and potassium metal in liquid ammonia



$$\mathrm{ArOH \xrightarrow[(EtO)_2POCl]{NaOH} ArO\overset{O}{\overset{\|}{P}}(OEt)_2 \xrightarrow[K\text{-}NH_3]{KNH_2} ArNH_2}$$

gives the corresponding primary aromatic amines.[101] The mechanism of the second step is $S_{RN}1$.[102]

OS **III,** 78.

---

[97] Rieche and Seeboth, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **638,** 66 (1960).

[98] Rieche and Seeboth, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **638,** 43, 57 (1960).

[99] Kozlov and Veselovskaia, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **28,** 3359 (1958).

[100] Rieche and Seeboth, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **638,** 76 (1960).

[101] Rossi and Bunnett, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3570 (1972).

[102] For another method of converting phenols to amines, see Scherrer and Beatty, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1681 (1972).

D. Halogen Nucleophiles

3-8 The Introduction of Halogens
Halo-de-halogenation, etc.

$$\mathrm{Ar{-}X + X'^{-} \longrightarrow Ar{-}X' + X^{-}}$$

It is possible to replace a halogen on a ring by another halogen if the ring is activated. There is an equilibrium, but it is usually possible to shift this in the desired direction by the use of an excess of added halide ion.[103] Another common leaving group is nitro, which can be replaced with chloro by use of NH_4Cl, PCl_5, $SOCl_2$, HCl, Cl_2, or CCl_4. Some of these reagents operate only at high temperatures and the mechanism is not always nucleophilic substitution. A nitro group can be replaced by a fluoro in activated rings by treatment with F^-.[104]

A phenolic hydroxy group can be replaced by chloro with PCl_5 or $POCl_3$, but only if activated. Unactivated phenols give phosphates when treated with $POCl_3$: $3ArOH + POCl_3 \rightarrow (ArO)_3PO$. Phenols, even unactivated ones, can be converted to aryl bromides by treatment with Ph_3PBr_2[105] (see **0-67**). However, when an ortho-*t*-butyl group is present, this group may be cleaved.[106]

Halide exchange is particularly useful for putting fluorine into a ring, since there are fewer alternate ways of doing this than for the other halogens.[107] Activated aryl chlorides give fluorides when treated with KF in DMF, Me_2SO, or dimethyl sulfone.[108] All six chlorines of hexachlorobenzene can be replaced by F by heating with KF at 450 to 500°C in the absence of a solvent.[109] The use of a crown ether allows the use of lower temperatures.[110] Halide exchange can also be accomplished with copper halides. Since the leaving-group order in this case is $I > Br > Cl \gg F$, the SNAr mechanism is probably not operating.[111]

OS **III,** 194, 272, 475; **V,** 142, 478.

E. Hydrogen as Nucleophile

3-9 Reduction of Phenols and Phenolic Esters and Ethers
Hydro-de-hydroxylation or **Dehydroxylation,** etc.

$$\mathrm{ArOH \xrightarrow{Zn} ArH}$$

Phenols can be reduced by distillation over zinc dust or with HI and red phosphorus, but these methods are quite poor and are seldom feasible. Catalytic hydrogenation has also been used, but the corresponding cyclohexanol (see **5-13**) is a side product.[112]

---

[103] Sauer and Huisgen, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 294–315 (1960), p. 297.

[104] Attiná, Cacace, and Wolf, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 108 (1983).

[105] Wiley, Hershkowitz, Rein, and Chung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 964 (1964); Wiley, Rein, and Hershkowitz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2509 (1964); Schaefer and Higgins, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1607 (1967).

[106] Lee, *Chem. Commun.* 1554 (1968).

[107] For a review of the preparation of organic fluorides by halogen exchange, see Barbour, Belf, and Buxton, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **3,** 181–270 (1963).

[108] Starr and Finger, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1328 (1962); Shiley, Dickerson, and Finger, *J. Fluorine Chem.* **2,** 19 (1972).

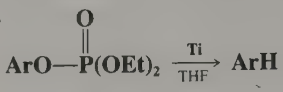
[109] Yakobson, Platonov, and Vorozhtsov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **35,** 1161 (1965).

[110] Akhmetova, Vlasov, and Yakobson, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR* **27,** 823 (1978).

[111] Bacon and Hill, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1097, 1108 (1964). See also van Koten, Jastrzebski, and Noltes, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 223 (1976). Nefedov, Tarygina, Kryuchkova, and Ryabokobylko, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 487 (1981).

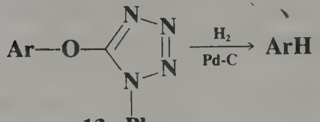
[112] Shuikin and Erivanskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 309–320 (1960), pp. 313–315. See also Bagnell and Jeffery, *Aust. J. Chem.* **34,** 697 (1981).

Much better results have been obtained by conversion of phenols to certain esters or ethers and reduction of the latter



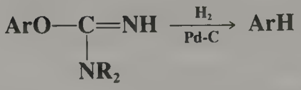
$$ArO{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{P}(OEt)_2 \xrightarrow[\text{THF}]{\text{Ti}} ArH$$ Ref. 113

$$ArOTs + NH_2NH_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Pd}} ArH$$ Ref. 114



13

Ref. 115



$$ArO{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle NR_2}{|}}{C}{=}NH \xrightarrow[\text{Pd-C}]{H_2} ArH$$ Ref. 116

13 are prepared by treatment of phenols with 1-phenyl-5-chlorotetrazole in acetone containing K_2CO_3.

OS **51,** 82.

3-10 Reduction of Halides and Nitro Compounds

The reaction ArX → ArH is treated in Chapter 11 (reaction **1-45**), although, depending on reagent and conditions, it may be nucleophilic[117] or free-radical[118] substitution, as well as electrophilic.

The nitro group of aromatic nitro compounds has been removed with sodium borohydride.[119] This reaction involves an addition–elimination mechanism.

F. Carbon Nucleophiles

3-11 The Rosenmund—von Braun reaction
Cyano-de-halogenation

$$ArBr + \text{anhydrous } CuCN \xrightarrow{200^{\circ}C} ArCN$$

The reaction between aryl halides and cuprous cyanide is called the *Rosenmund–von Braun reaction.*[120] The mechanism may involve conversion of the aryl halide to an arylcopper intermediate.[72] Other cyanides, e.g., KCN and NaCN, do not react with aryl halides, even activated ones. However,

---

[113] Welch and Walters, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4797 (1978). See also Rossi and Bunnett, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2314 (1973).

[114] Kenner and Murray, *J. Chem. Soc.* S178 (1949); Rottendorf and Sternhell, *Aust. J. Chem.* **16,** 647 (1963).

[115] Musliner and Gates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4271 (1966); Hussey, Johnstone, and Entwistle, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 3775 (1982). For related methods, see Pailer and Gössinger, *Monatsh. Chem.* **100,** 1613 (1969); van Muijlwijk, Kieboom, and van Bekkum, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **93,** 204 (1974).

[116] Vowinkel and Baese, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 1213 (1974). See also Vowinkel and Wolff, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 907, 1739 (1974).

[117] For example, see Corbett and Holt, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2385 (1963).

[118] Menapace and Kuivila, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3047 (1964).

[119] Severin, Schmitz, and Temme, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 2499 (1963); Kniel, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **51,** 371 (1968). For another method, see Ono, Tamura, and Kaji, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4017 (1983).

[120] For a review, see Mowry, *Chem. Rev.* **42,** 189–283 (1948), pp. 207–209.

alkali cyanides do convert aryl halides to nitriles in DMF or HMPT in the presence of Pd(II) salts[121] or under phase-transfer conditions in the presence of a nickel complex.[122] Aromatic ethers ArOR[123] and some nitro compounds $ArNO_2$[124] have been photochemically converted to ArCN.

OS **III,** 212, 631.

3-12 Cyanide Fusion of Sulfonate Salts[125]
Cyano-de-sulfonato-substitution

$$ArSO_3^- \xrightarrow{\text{NaCN fus.}} ArCN$$

This reaction is very similar to **3-3.** Yields are usually low.

3-13 Coupling of Organometallic Compounds with Aryl Halides, Ethers, and Esters
Alkyl-de-halogenation, etc.

$$ArI + R_2CuLi \longrightarrow ArR$$

Aryl iodides, which need not be activated, couple with lithium dialkylcopper reagents. The reaction is discussed at **0-88.** Aryl halides, even when activated, generally do not couple with Grignard reagents, though certain transition-metal catalysts do effect this reaction in variable yields.[126] The reaction with Grignard reagents proceeds better when OR can be the leaving group, providing that activating groups are present in the ring.

Unactivated aryl halides react with copper acetylides to give good yields of arylacetylenes (*Stephens–Castro coupling*).[127]

$$ArI + RC{\equiv}CCu \longrightarrow ArC{\equiv}CR$$

R may be alkyl or aryl. A wide variety of aryl iodides has been used and the reaction is of considerable synthetic importance.

Unactivated aryl halides couple with alkyllithium reagents in tetrahydrofuran to give moderate-to-good yields of alkyl arenes.[128] Unactivated aryl triflates $ArOSO_2CF_3$ react with $R_2Cu(CN)Li_2$ to give ArR in good yields.[129]

OS **52,** 128.

---

[121] Takagi, Okamoto, Sakakibara, Ohno, Oka, and Hayama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **48,** 3298 (1975), **49,** 3177 (1976). See also Sekiya and Ishikawa, *Chem. Lett.* 277 (1975).

[122] Cassar, Foà, Montanari, and Marinelli, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **173,** 335 (1979).

[123] Letsinger and Colb, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3665 (1972).

[124] See, for example, Vink, Verheijdt, Cornelisse and Havinga, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 5081 (1972).

[125] For a review, see Ref. 120, pp. 193–194.

[126] See, for example, Sekiya and Ishikawa, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **118,** 349 (1976), **125,** 281 (1977); Negishi, King, and Okukado, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1821 (1977); Negishi, Matsushita, Kobayashi, and Rand, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3823 (1983); Ibuki, Ozasa, Fujioka, Okada, and Terada, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 821 (1980); Tiecco, Testaferri, Tingoli, Chianelli, and Wenkert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4629 (1982); Eapen, Dua, and Tamborski, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 478 (1984).

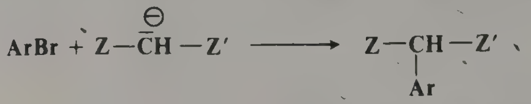
[127] Castro and Stephens, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2163 (1963); Stephens and Castro, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 3313 (1963); Sladkov, Ukhin, and Korshak, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 2043 (1963). For a review, see Sladkov and Gol'ding, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 868–896 (1979). For an improved procedure, see Bumagin, Kalinovskii, Ponomarov, and Beletskaya, *Doklad. Chem.* **265,** 262 (1982).

[128] Merrill and Negishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3452 (1974). For another method, see Hallberg and Westerlund, *Chem. Lett.* 1993 (1982).

[129] McMurry and Mohanraj, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2723 (1983).

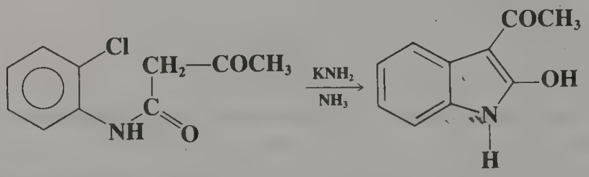
3-14 Arylation at a Carbon Containing an Active Hydrogen

Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl-de-halogenation, etc.



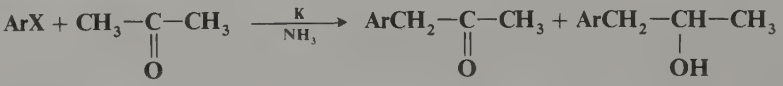
$$\mathrm{ArBr} + \mathrm{Z{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}H{-}Z'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Z{-}\underset{\substack{|\\ Ar}}{C}H{-}Z'}$$

The arylation of compounds of the form ZCH_2Z' is analogous to **0-96,** and Z is as defined there. Activated aryl halides generally give good results.[130] Even unactivated aryl halides can be employed if the reaction is carried out in the presence of excess sodium amide.[131] Compounds of the form ZCH_2Z' and even simple ketones[132] and esters have been arylated in this manner. The reaction with unactivated halides proceeds by the benzyne mechanism and represents a method for extending the malonic ester (and similar) syntheses to aromatic compounds. The base performs two functions: it removes a proton from ZCH_2Z' and catalyzes the benzyne mechanism. The reaction has been used for ring closure:[133]



The reaction on unactivated halides can also be done with copper halide catalysts[73a] (the *Hurtley reaction*).[134]

Compounds of the form CH_3Z can be arylated by treatment with an aryl halide in liquid ammonia containing Na or K, e.g., [135]



$$\mathrm{ArX} + \mathrm{CH_3{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\ O}}{C}{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{NH_3}]{\mathrm{K}} \mathrm{ArCH_2{-}\underset{\substack{\|\\ O}}{C}{-}CH_3} + \mathrm{ArCH_2{-}\underset{\substack{|\\ OH}}{C}H{-}CH_3}$$

The same products are obtained (though in different proportions) when Na or K is omitted but the solution is irradiated with near-uv light.[136] In either case other leaving groups may be used instead of halogens (e.g., NR_3^+, SAr) and the mechanism is the SRN1 mechanism. This reaction has also been used for ring closure.[137] In certain instances of the intermolecular reaction there is evidence that the leaving group exerts an influence on the product ratios, even when it has already departed at the time that product selection takes place.[138] Malonic and β-keto esters can be arylated in high yields by treatment with aryllead tricarboxylates: RCOCHR′COOEt + $ArPb(OAc)_3 \rightarrow$ RCOCArR′COOEt.[139] Diaryliodonium salts have also been used to arylate ZCH_2Z', but the mechanism is apparently free radical.[140]

---

[130] The mechanism is SNAr. For example, see Leffek and Matinopoulos-Scordou, *Can. J. Chem.* **55,** 2656, 2664 (1977).

[131] Leake and Levine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1169, 1627 (1959).

[132] For example, see Caubere and Guillaumet, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4643, 4649 (1972).

[133] Bunnett and Hrutfiord, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1691 (1961); Bunnett, Kato, Flynn, and Skorcz, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1 (1963). For a review, see Hoffmann, Ref. 89, pp. 150–164. See also Kessar, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 283–288 (1978).

[134] For discussions and procedures, see Bruggink and McKillop, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 2607 (1975); McKillop and Rao, *Synthesis* 759 (1977); Setsune, Matsukawa, Wakemoto, and Kitao, *Chem. Lett.* 367 (1981); Osuka, Kobayashi, and Suzuki, *Synthesis* 67 (1983); Suzuki, Kobayashi, and Yoshida, *Chem. Lett.* 193 (1983); Suzuki, Kobayashi, and Osuka, *Chem. Lett.* 589 (1983).

[135] Rossi and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 683 (1972), *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3020 (1973); Bunnett and Gloor, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4156 (1973), **39,** 382 (1974).

[136] Rossi and Bunnett, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1407 (1973); Hay, Hudlicky, and Wolfe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 374 (1975); Bunnett and Sundberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1702 (1976); Rajan and Muralimohan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 483 (1978); Rossi, de Rossi, and Pierini, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2662 (1979); Rossi and Alonso, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1239 (1980); Beugelmans, Bois-Choussy, and Boudet, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 3479 (1982).

[137] See Semmelhack and Bargar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7765 (1980).

[138] Bard, Bunnett, Creary, and Tremelling, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2852 (1980); Tremelling and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7375 (1980).

OS **V,** 12, 263; **51,** 128; **57,** 80, **58,** 52.

3-15 Carbalkoxylation, Carboxylation, and Acylation[141]

Alkoxycarbonyl-de-halogenation, etc.

$$\mathrm{ArI} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Ni(CO)_4}]{\mathrm{ROH}} \mathrm{ArCOOR}$$

Aryl iodides can be converted directly to esters by treatment with nickel carbonyl in ROH as solvent[142] (see **0-105**). The yields are nearly quantitative. In aprotic solvents, such as tetrahydrofuran, the products are benzils, ArCOCOAr. The reaction is not successful for aryl chlorides, bromides, or fluorides. Aryl bromides can be carboxylated (ArBr → ArCOOH) in high yields by treatment with CO in the presence of water and either a catalytic amount of $Ni(CO)_4$ (provided that a salt such as KOAc is present to neutralize the HBr formed[143]) or a cobalt carbonyl $Co_2(CO)_8$ catalyst under irradiated phase transfer conditions.[144] Aryl iodides are converted to unsymmetrical diaryl ketones on treatment with arylmercury halides and nickel carbonyl: ArI + Ar′HgX + $Ni(CO)_4 \rightarrow$ ArCOAr′.[145]

3-16 The Ullmann Reaction

$$2\mathrm{ArI} \xrightarrow[\Delta]{\mathrm{Cu}} \mathrm{Ar{-}Ar}$$

The coupling of aryl halides with copper is called the *Ullmann reaction.*[146] The reaction is of broad scope and has been used to prepare many symmetrical and unsymmetrical biaryls.[147] When a mixture of two different aryl halides is used, there are three possible products, but often only one is obtained. For example, picryl chloride and iodobenzene gave only 2,4,6-trinitrobiphenyl.[148] The best leaving group is iodo, and the reaction is most often done on aryl iodides, but bromides, chlorides, and even thiocyanates have been used.

The effects of other groups on the ring are unusual. The nitro group is strongly activating, but only in the ortho (not meta or para) position.[149] R and OR activate in all positions. Not only do OH, NH_2, NHR, and NHCOR inhibit the reaction, as would be expected for aromatic nucleophilic substitution, but so do COOH (but not COOR), SO_2NH_2, and similar group for which the reaction fails completely. These groups inhibit the coupling reaction by causing side reactions.

---

[139] Pinhey and Rowe, *Aust. J. Chem.* **33,** 113 (1980); *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 965 (1980). See also May and Pinhey, *Aust. J. Chem.* **35,** 1859 (1982).

[140] Hampton, Harris, and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 3511 (1964).

[141] For a review, see Weil, Cassar, and Foá, in Wender and Pino, "Organic Synthesis Via Metal Carbonyls," vol. 2, pp. 517–543, Wiley, New York, 1977.

[142] Bauld, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1841 (1963). See also Corey and Hegedus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1233 (1969); Nakayama and Mizoroki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 508 (1971).

[143] Nakayama and Mizoroki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 1124 (1969). See also Cassar and Foá, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **51,** 381 (1973).

[144] Brunet, Sidot, and Caubere, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1013 (1981); *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1166 (1983).

[145] Rhee, Ryang, Watanabe, Omura, Murai, and Sonoda, *Synthesis* 776 (1977). For other acylation reactions, see Tanaka, *Synthesis* 47 (1981); *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 637 (1981).

[146] For reviews, see Fanta, *Synthesis* 9–21 (1974), *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 613–632 (1964). Goshaev, Otroshchenko, and Sadykov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 1046 (1972); Bacon and Hill, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **19,** 95–125 (1965), pp. 101–107.

[147] For a review of methods of aryl–aryl bond formation, see Sainsbury, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 3327–3359 (1980).

[148] Rule and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1096 (1937).

[149] Forrest, *J. Chem. Soc.* 592 (1960).

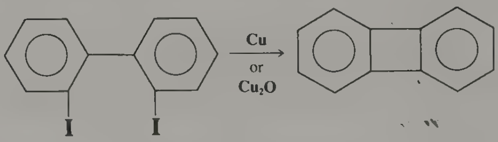
The mechanism is not known with certainty. It seems likely that it is basically a two-step process, similar to that of the Wurtz reaction (**0-87**), which can be represented schematically by:

Step 1 $$\mathrm{ArI + Cu \longrightarrow ArCu}$$

Step 2 $$\mathrm{ArCu + ArI \longrightarrow ArAr}$$

The species represented as ArCu may not actually have this structure, but some kind of a complex is formed.[150] Organocopper compounds have been trapped by coordination with organic bases.[151] In addition, arylcopper compounds (ArCu) have been independently prepared and shown to give biaryls (ArAr′) when treated with aryl iodides Ar′I.[152] An alternate possible second step is 2ArCu → ArAr, and indeed arylcopper compounds are known to dimerize in this fashion.[153] It is unlikely that free radicals intervene in step 1.[154] Step 2 may well be a nucleophilic attack by ArCu on ArI. Evidence is that a Meisenheimer salt could be isolated from treatment of 1,3,5-trinitrobenzene with an arylcopper compound[155] (in this case the leaving group is hydrogen).

A similar reaction has been used for ring closure:[156]



Aryl halides ArX can also be converted to Ar—Ar by treatment with certain nickel complexes,[157] with activated Ni metal,[158] with Zn and $NiBr_2$ in HMPT,[159] and with aqueous alkaline sodium formate, Pd-C, and a phase transfer catalyst.[160]

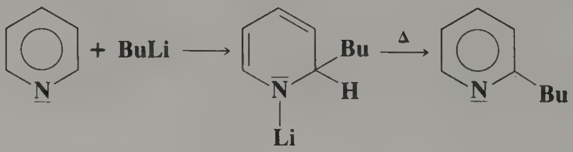
For other methods of coupling of aromatic rings, see **4-16, 4-19,** and **4-20.**

OS **III,** 339; **V,** 1120.

Hydrogen as Leaving Group[161]

3-17 Alkylation and Arylation

Alkylation or **Alkyl-de-hydrogenation,** etc.



---

[150] There is kinetic evidence that the complex contains copper in the +3 oxidation state: Cohen and Cristea, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 748 (1976).

[151] Lewin and Cohen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4531 (1965).

[152] For examples, see Nilsson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 675 (1966); Cairncross and Sheppard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2186 (1968); Ullenius, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **26,** 3383 (1972); Mack, Suschitzky, and Wakefield, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1682 (1980).

[153] Nilsson and Wennerström, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3307 (1968), *Acta Chem. Scand.* **24,** 482 (1970).

[154] Ref. 150; Mugnier and Laviron, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 1264 (1979).

[155] Björklund, Nilsson, and Wennerström, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **24,** 3599 (1970).

[156] Salfeld and Baume, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3365 (1966); Lothrop, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **63,** 1187 (1941).

[157] Semmelhack, Helquist, and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5908 (1971); Clark, Norman, and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 121 (1975); Kende, Liebeskind, and Braitsch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3375 (1975); Zembayashi, Tamao, Yoshida, and Kumada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4089 (1977); Tsou and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 7547 (1979).

[158] Inaba, Matsumoto, and Rieke, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4215 (1982); Matsumoto, Inaba, and Rieke, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 840 (1983); Chao, Cheng, and Chang, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4904 (1983).

[159] Takagi, Hayama, and Inokawa, *Chem. Lett.* 917 (1979).

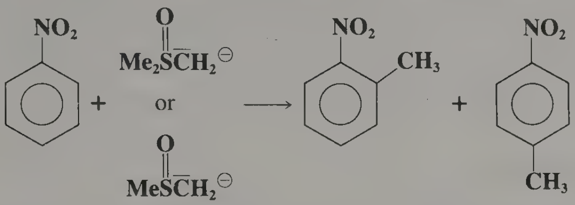
[160] Bamfield and Quan, *Synthesis* 537 (1978).

[161] For a review, see Chupakhin and Postovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 454–468 (1976).

The alkylation of heterocyclic nitrogen compounds with alkyllithiums is called *Ziegler alkylation.* Aryllithiums give arylation. The reaction occurs by an addition–elimination mechanism and the adduct can be isolated.[162] Upon heating of the adduct, elimination of LiH occurs (see **7-17**) and an alkylated product is obtained. With respect to the 2-carbon the first step is the same as that of the SNAr mechanism. The difference is that the unshared pair of electrons on the nitrogen combines with the lithium, so that the extra pair of ring electrons has a place to go: it becomes the new unshared pair on the nitrogen.

The reaction has been applied to nonheterocyclic aromatic compounds: benzene, naphthalene, and phenanthrene have been alkylated with alkyllithiums, though the usual reaction with these reagents is **2-19**,[163] and Grignard reagents have been used to alkylate naphthalene.[164] The addition–elimination mechanism apparently applies in these cases too.

Aromatic nitro compounds can be methylated by treatment with dimethyloxosulfonium methylide[165] or the methylsulfinyl carbanion (obtained by treatment of dimethyl sulfoxide with a strong base):[166]

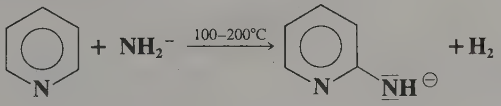


The latter reagent also methylates certain heterocyclic compounds, e.g., quinoline, and certain fused aromatic compounds, e.g., anthracene, phenanthrene.[167] The reactions with the sulfur carbanions are especially useful, since none of these substrates can be methylated by the Friedel–Crafts procedure (**1-13**). It has been reported[168] that aromatic nitro compounds can also be alkylated, not only with methyl but with other alkyl and substituted alkyl groups as well, in ortho and para positions, by treatment with an alkyllithium compound (or, with lower yields, a Grignard reagent), followed by an oxidizing agent such as Br_2 or DDQ (p. 1053).

For the introduction of CH_2SR groups into phenols, see **1-28.** See also **4-21.**

OS **II,** 517.

3-18 Amination of Nitrogen Heterocycles
Amination or **Amino-de-hydrogenation**[169]



---

[162] Nmr spectra of these adducts have been reported: Fraenkel and Cooper, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1825 (1968); Foster and Fyfe, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 1489 (1969).

[163] Dixon and Fishman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1356 (1963); Eppley and Dixon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1606 (1968).

[164] Bryce-Smith and Wakefield, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3295 (1964).

[165] Traynelis and McSweeney, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 243 (1966).

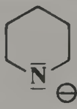
[166] Russell and Weiner, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 248 (1966).

[167] Ref. 166, Argabright, Hofmann, and Schriesheim, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3233 (1965); Trost, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5761 (1966); Yamamoto, Nisimura, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 541 (1971).

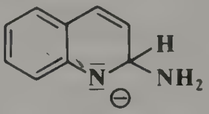
[168] Kienzle, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 449 (1978). See also Mąkosza, Goliński, and Pankowski, *Synthesis* **40** (1983); Mąkosza, Goliński, and Rykowski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3277 (1983); Mąkosza and Glinka, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3860 (1983); Mąkosza, Chylińska, and Mudryk, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 8 (1984); Peake, Oyler, Heikkila, Liukkonen, Engroff, and Carlson, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 21 (1983); Stahly, Stahly, and Lilje, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 578 (1984).

[169] These names also apply to reaction **3-19** and, in part, to **3-20.**

Pyridine and other heterocyclic nitrogen compounds can be aminated with alkali-metal amides in a process called the *Chichibabin reaction.*[170] The attack is always in the 2 position unless both such positions are filled, in which case the 4 position is attacked. Nitro compounds do not give the reaction.[171] Substituted alkali-metal amides, e.g., sodium piperidide (**14**), have also been used. The mechanism is probably similar to that of reaction **3-17.** The existence of intermediate ions such as **15** (from quinoline) has been demonstrated by nmr spectra.[172] A pyridyne type of intermediate



14



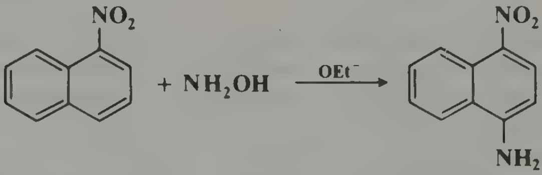
15

was ruled out by several observations including the facts that 3-ethylpyridine gave 2-amino-3-ethylpyridine[173] and that certain heterocycles that cannot form an aryne could nevertheless be successfully aminated.

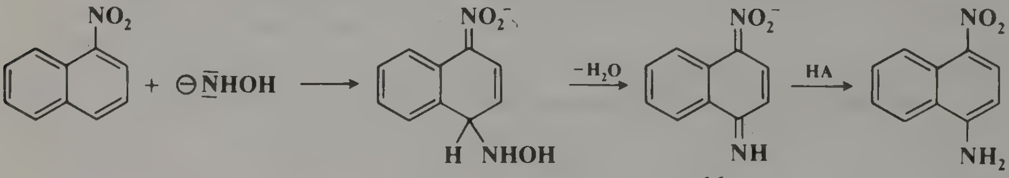
Analogous reactions have been carried out with hydrazide ions, $R_2N\overline{N}H^-$.[174] For other methods of aminating aromatic rings, see **1-6, 3-19,** and **3-20.**

There are no *Organic Syntheses* references, but see OS **V,** 977, for a related reaction.

3-19 Amination by Hydroxylamine



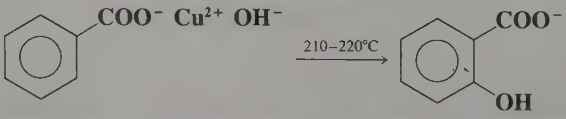
Activated aromatic compounds can be directly aminated with hydroxylamine in the presence of strong bases.[175] Conditions are mild and yields are high. Ions of the type **16** are intermediates:



16

OS **III,** 664.

3-20 Hydroxylation and Amination of Aromatic Acids
Hydroxylation or **Hydroxy-de-hydrogenation**



---

[170] For a review, see Pozharskii, Simonov, and Doron'kin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 1042–1060 (1978).

[171] See, for example, Levitt and Levitt, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 520 (1975).

[172] Zoltewicz, Helmick, Oestreich, King, and Kandetzki, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1947 (1973); van den Haak, van der Plas, and van Veldhuizen, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2134 (1981).

[173] Ban and Wakamatsu, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 710 (1964).

[174] Kauffmann, Hansen, Kosel, and Schoeneck, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **656,** 103 (1962).

[175] See Ref. 161, p. 456.

When basic copper salts of aromatic acids are heated, hydroxylation occurs in the ortho position.[176] Better results are obtained by heating cupric carboxylates in protic solvents.[177] Phenols are also produced, by concomitant decarboxylation of the salicyclic acids or their esters.[178] In an analogous reaction, aromatic amines are produced by heating copper salts of aromatic acids with ammonia at 220°C under pressure.[179] See also **1-31, 4-5,** and **4-10.**

N_2^+ as Leaving Group

The diazonium group can be replaced by a number of groups.[180] Some of these are nucleophilic substitutions, with SN1 mechanisms (p. 579), but others are free-radical reactions and are treated in Chapter 14. The solvent in all these reactions is usually water. With other solvents it has been shown that the SN1 mechanism is favored by solvents of low nucleophilicity, while those of high nucleophilicity favor free-radical mechanisms.[181] (For *formation* of diazonium ions, see **2-48.**) The N_2^+ group can be replaced by Cl^-, Br^-, and CN^-, by a nucleophilic mechanism (see OS **IV,** 182), but the Sandmeyer reaction is much more useful (**4-24** and **4-27**). As mentioned on p. 584 it must be kept in mind that the N_2^+ group can activate the removal of another group on the ring.

3-21 Replacement by OH
Hydroxy-de-diazoniation

$$ArN_2^+ + H_2O \longrightarrow ArOH$$

Water is usually present whenever diazonium salts are made, but at these temperatures (0 to 5°C) the reaction proceeds very slowly. When it is *desired* to have OH replace the diazonium group, the excess nitrous acid is destroyed and the solution is usually boiled. Some diazonium salts require even more vigorous treatment, e.g., boiling with aqueous sulfuric acid or with trifluoroacetic acid containing potassium trifluoroacetate.[182] The reaction can be performed on solutions of any diazonium salts, but hydrogen sulfates are preferred to chlorides or nitrates, since in these cases there is competition from the nucleophiles Cl^- or NO_3^-. A better method, which is faster, avoids side reactions, takes place at room temperature, and gives higher yields consists of adding Cu_2O to a dilute solution of the diazonium salt dissolved in a solution containing a large excess of $Cu(NO_3)_2$.[183] Aryl radicals are intermediates when this method is used. It has been shown that aryl radicals are at least partly involved when ordinary hydroxy-de-diazoniation is carried out in weakly alkaline aqueous solution.[184]

OS **I,** 404; **III,** 130, 453, 564; **V,** 1130.

3-22 Replacement by Sulfur-containing Groups
Mercapto-de-diazoniation, etc.

$$ArN_2^+ + HS^- \longrightarrow ArSH$$
$$ArN_2^+ + S^{2-} \longrightarrow ArSAr$$
$$ArN_2^+ + RS^- \longrightarrow ArSR$$
$$ArN_2^+ + SCN^- \longrightarrow ArSCN + ArNCS$$

---

[176] Kaeding and Shulgin, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3551 (1962). For a review, see Nigh, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. B, pp. 91–94, Academic Press, New York, 1973.

[177] Kaeding and Collins, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3750 (1965).

[178] See Oae, Watabe, and Furukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 1329 (1966).

[179] Arzoumanidis and Rauch, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3930 (1981).

[180] For a review of such reactions, see Wulfman, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Diazonium and Diazo Groups," pt. 1, pp. 286–297, Wiley, New York, 1978.

[181] Szele and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 1721 (1978).

[182] Horning, Ross, and Muchowski, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 2347 (1973).

[183] Cohen, Dietz, and Miser, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2053 (1977).

[184] Dreher, Niederer, Rieker, Schwarz, and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 488 (1981).

These reactions are convenient methods for putting sulfur-containing groups onto an aromatic ring. With $Ar'S^-$, attack at the nitrogen takes precedence, so that the product is a diazosulfide ($Ar—N{=}N—S—Ar'$).[185] Thiophenols can be made as shown above, but more often the diazonium ion is treated with $EtO—CSS^-$ or S_2^{2-}, which give the expected products, and these are easily convertible to thiophenols. See also **4-26.**

OS **II,** 580; **III,** 809 (but see OS **V,** 1050). Also see OS **II,** 238.

3-23 Replacement by the Azido Group

Azido-de-diazoniation

$$ArN_2^+ + N_3^- \longrightarrow ArN_3$$

Diazonium salts can be converted to aryl azides by the addition of sodium azide to the acidic diazonium salt solution.[186]

OS **IV,** 75; **V,** 829.

3-24 Replacement by Iodine

Iodo-de-diazoniation

$$ArN_2^+ + I^- \longrightarrow ArI$$

One of the best methods for the introduction of iodine into aromatic rings is the reaction of diazonium salts with iodide ions. Analogous reactions with chloride, bromide, and fluoride ions give poorer results, and **4-24** and **3-25** are preferred for the preparation of aryl chlorides, bromides, and fluorides. However, when other diazonium reactions are carried out in the presence of these ions, halides are usually side products.

The actual attacking species is probably not only I^-, if it is I^- at all. The iodide ion is oxidized (by the diazonium ion, nitrous acid, or some other oxidizing agent) to iodine, which in a solution containing iodide ions is converted to I_3^-; this is the actual attacking species, at least partly. This was shown by isolation of $ArN_2^+ \; I_3^-$ salts, which, on standing, gave ArI.[187] From this, it can be inferred that the reason the other halide ions give poor results is not that they are poor nucleophiles but that they are poor reducing agents (compared with iodide). A free-radical mechanism has also been proposed.[188]

OS **II,** 351, 355, 604; **V,** 1120.

3-25 Replacement by Fluorine. The Schiemann Reaction

Fluoro-de-diazoniation (overall transformation)

$$ArN_2^+ \; BF_4^- \xrightarrow{\Delta} ArF + N_2 + BF_3$$

Heating of diazonium fluoroborates (the *Schiemann reaction*) is by far the best way of introducing fluorine into an aromatic ring.[189] In the most common procedure, the fluoroborate salts are prepared by diazotizing as usual with nitrous acid and HCl and then adding a cold aqueous solution of $NaBF_4$, HBF_4, or NH_4BF_4. A precipitate forms, which is then dried, and the salt is heated in the dry state. These salts are unusually stable for diazonium salts, and the reaction is usually quite successful. In general, any aromatic amine that can be diazotized will form a BF_4^- salt, usually with high yields. The diazonium fluoroborates can be formed directly[190] from primary aromatic amines with *t*-butyl nitrite and BF_3-etherate.[191] The reaction has also been carried out on ArN_2^+ PF_6^-, ArN_2^+ SbF_6^-, and ArN_2^+ AsF_6^- salts, in many cases with better yields.[192] The reaction has been extended to ArN_2^+ BCl_4^- and ArN_2^+ BBr_4^-,[193] but aryl chlorides and bromides are more commonly prepared by the Sandmeyer reaction (**4-24**). In an alternative procedure, aryl fluorides have been prepared by treatment of aryltriazenes Ar—N═N—NR_2 with 70% HF in pyridine.[194]

---

[185] Price and Tsunawaki, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1867 (1963).

[186] Smith and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 2438 (1951). For a review, see Biffin, Miller, and Paul, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Azido Group," pp. 147–176, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[187] Carey and Millar, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 97 (1960).

[188] Singh and Kumar, *Aust. J. Chem.* **25,** 2133 (1972); Kumar and Singh, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 613 (1972); Meyer, Rössler, and Stöcklin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3121 (1979).

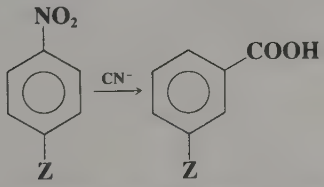
[189] For a review, see Suschitzky, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **4,** 1–30 (1965).

The mechanism is of the SN1 type. That phenyl cations are intermediates was shown by the following experiments:[195] aryl diazonium chlorides are known to arylate other aromatic rings by a free-radical mechanism (see **4-16**). In radical arylation it does not matter whether the other ring contains electron-withdrawing or electron-donating groups; in either case a mixture of isomers is obtained, since the attack is not by a charged species. If a phenyl free radical were an intermediate in the Schiemann reaction and the reaction were run in the presence of other rings, it should not matter what kinds of groups were on these other rings: mixtures of biaryls should be obtained in all cases. But if a phenyl cation is an intermediate in the Schiemann reaction, compounds containing meta-directing groups, i.e., meta-directing for *electrophilic* substitutions, should be meta-arylated and those containing ortho-para-directing groups should be ortho- and para-arylated, since a phenyl cation should behave in this respect like any electrophile (see Chapter 11). Experiments have shown[196] that such orientation is observed, demonstrating that the Schiemann reaction has a positively charged intermediate. The attacking species, in at least some instances, is not F^- but BF_4^-.[197]

OS **II,** 188, 295, 299; **V,** 133.

Rearrangements

3-26 The von Richter Rearrangement



When aromatic nitro compounds are treated with cyanide ion, the nitro group is displaced and a carboxyl group enters with cine substitution (p. 581), always ortho to the displaced group, never meta or para. The scope of this reaction, called the *von Richter rearrangement,* is variable.[198] As with other nucleophilic aromatic substitutions, the reaction gives best results when electron-withdrawing groups are in ortho and para positions, but yields are low, usually less than 20% and never more than 50%.

---

[190] For an older direct method, which is less useful synthetically, see Wannegat and Hohlstein, *Chem. Ber.* **88,** 1839 (1955); Yakobson, D'yachenko, and Bel'chikova, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 842 (1962).

[191] Doyle and Bryker, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1572 (1979).

[192] Rutherford, Redmond, and Rigamonti, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 5149 (1961); Sellers and Suschitzky, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2317 (1968).

[193] Olah and Tolgyesi, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2053 (1961).

[194] Rosenfeld and Widdowson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 914 (1979).

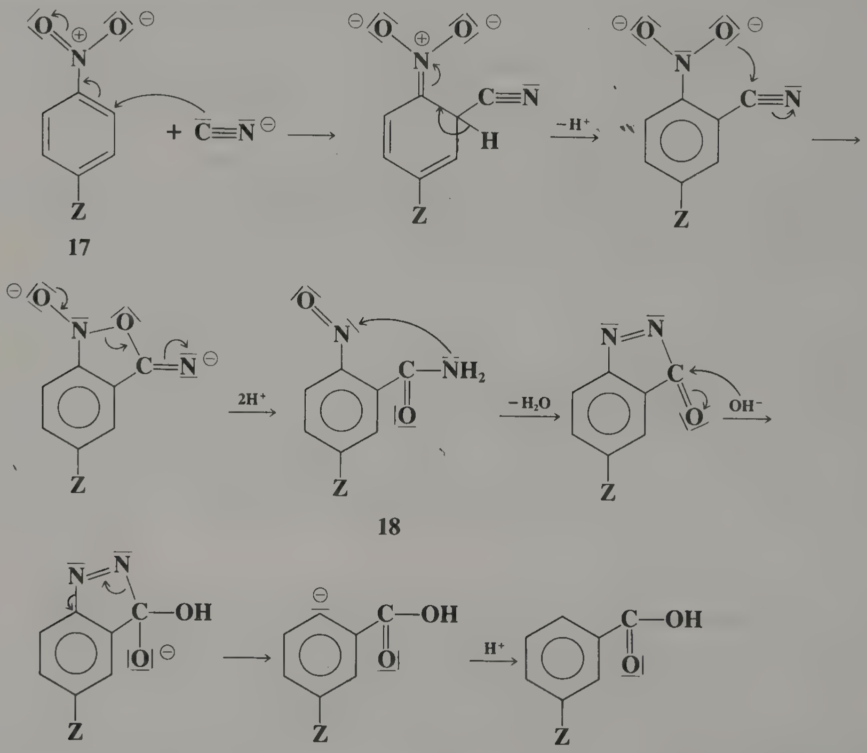
[195] See also Swain, Sheats, and Harbison, Ref. 17; Becker and Israel, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **321,** 579 (1979).

[196] Makarova and Matveeva, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 548 (1958); Makarova, Matveeva, and Gribchenko, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1399 (1958).

[197] Swain and Rogers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 799 (1975).

[198] For a review, see Shine, "Aromatic Rearrangements," pp. 326–335, American Elsevier, New York, 1967.

For many years, it was believed that a nitrile, ArCN, was an intermediate, since cyanide is the reagent and nitriles are hydrolyzable to carboxylic acids under the reaction conditions (**6-5**). However, a remarkable series of results have shown this belief to be in error. Bunnett and Rauhut demonstrated[199] that α-naphthyl cyanide is *not* hydrolyzable to α-naphthoic acid under conditions at which β-nitronaphthalene undergoes the von Richter rearrangement to give α-naphthoic acid. This proved that the nitrile cannot be an intermediate in this case and cast doubt on all other cases, since it is unlikely that different mechanisms would be operating. It was subsequently demonstrated that *elemental nitrogen* is a major product of the reaction.[200] It had previously been assumed that all the nitrogen in the reaction was converted to ammonia, which would be compatible with a nitrile intermediate, since ammonia is a hydrolysis product of nitriles. At the same time it was shown that NO_2^- is not a major product. The discovery of nitrogen indicated that a nitrogen–nitrogen bond must be formed during the course of the reaction. A mechanism in accord with all the facts was proposed by Rosenblum:[200]



17

18

It may be noted that **18** are stable compounds; hence it should be possible to prepare them independently and to subject them to the conditions of the von Richter rearrangement. This has been done and the correct products are obtained.[201] Further evidence for the mechanism is that when **17** (Z = Cl or Br) was treated with cyanide in $H_2{}^{18}O$, one-half of the oxygen in the product was labeled, showing that one of the oxygens of the carboxyl group came from the nitro group and one from the solvent, as required by this mechanism.[202]

OS **IV**, 114.

---

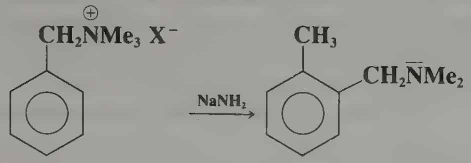
[199] Bunnett and Rauhut, *J. Org. Chem.* **21**, 934, 944 (1956).

[200] Rosenblum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 3796 (1960).

[201] Ibne-Rasa and Koubek, *J. Org. Chem.* **28**, 3240 (1963).

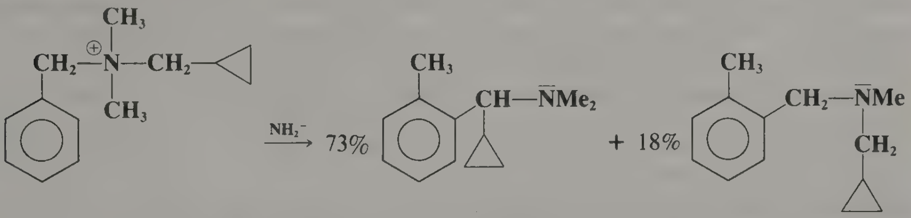
[202] Samuel, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1318 (1960). For other evidence, see Cullen and L'Ecuyer, *Can. J. Chem.* **39**, 144, 155, 382 (1961); Ullman and Bartkus, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 93 (1962).

3-27 The Sommelet–Hauser Rearrangement



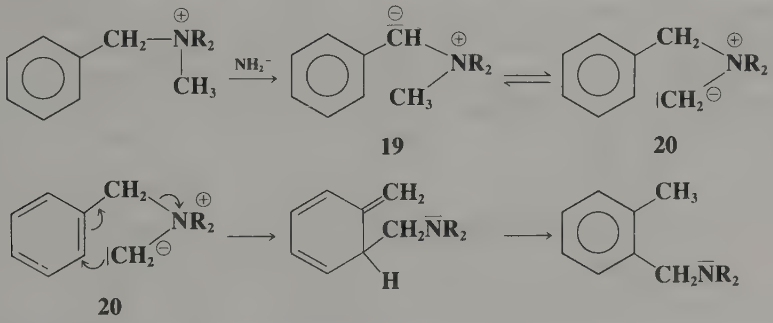
Benzyl quaternary ammonium salts, when treated with alkali-metal amides, undergo a rearrangement called the *Sommelet–Hauser rearrangement.*[203] Since the product is a benzyl tertiary amine, it can be further alkylated and the product again subjected to the rearrangement. This process can be continued around the ring until an ortho position is blocked.[204]

The rearrangement occurs with high yields and can be performed with various groups present in the ring.[205] The reaction is most often carried out with three methyl groups on the nitrogen, but other groups can also be used, though if a β-hydrogen is present, Hofmann elimination (**7-6**) can and often does compete. When the three groups are not the same, competing products may be obtained, e.g.,[206]



In any case, the Stevens rearrangement (**8-24**) is a competing process. When both rearrangements are possible, the Stevens is favored at high temperatures and the Sommelet–Hauser at low temperatures.[207] When the migrating group carries an α-SR′ group, the Sommelet–Hauser product is an aromatic aldehyde, formed by hydrolysis during the workup of the ArCH(SR′)NR$_2$ product.[208]

The mechanism is



The benzyl hydrogen is most acidic and is the one that first loses a proton to give the ylide **19.**

---

[203] For reviews, see Pine, *Org. React.* **18,** 403–464 (1970); Lepley and Giumanini, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 297–440 (1971); Wittig, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1921–1924 (1971); Stevens and Watts, "Selected Molecular Rearrangements," pp. 81–88, Van Nostrand Reinhold, London, 1973; Shine, Ref. 198, pp. 316–326; Zimmerman, in Mayo, "Molecular Rearrangements," pp. 382–391, Interscience, New York, 1963.

[204] Beard and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 334 (1960).

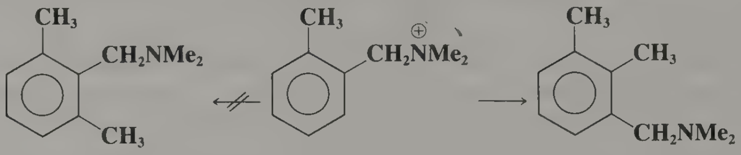
[205] Beard and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 371 (1961); Jones, Beard, and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 199 (1963).

[206] Bumgardner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 73 (1963).

[207] Wittig and Streib, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **584,** 1 (1953).

[208] Huynh, Julia, Lorne, and Michelot, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4057 (1972).

However, **20,** which is present in smaller amount, is the species that undergoes the rearrangement, shifting the equilibrium in its favor. This mechanism is an example of a [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangement (see **8-39**). Another mechanism which might be proposed is one in which a methyl group actually breaks away (in some form) from the nitrogen and then attaches itself to the ring. That this is not so was shown by a product study and by labeling experiments.[209] If the second mechanism were true, **21** should give **22,** but the former mechanism predicts the formation of **23,**



22 **21** **23**

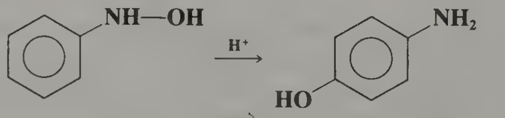
which is what was actually obtained.[210] In the labeling experiments, benzyltrimethylamine labeled with ^{14}C in the α position of the benzyl group gave a product labeled in the ring methyl group, as predicted by the first mechanism, and not in the methylene, as required by the second.[211]

The mechanism as we have pictured it can lead only to an ortho product. However, a small amount of para product has been obtained in some cases.[212] A mechanism[206] in which there is a dissociation of the ArC—N bond (similar to the ion-pair mechanism of the Stevens rearrangement, p. 993) has been invoked to explain the obtention of the para products.

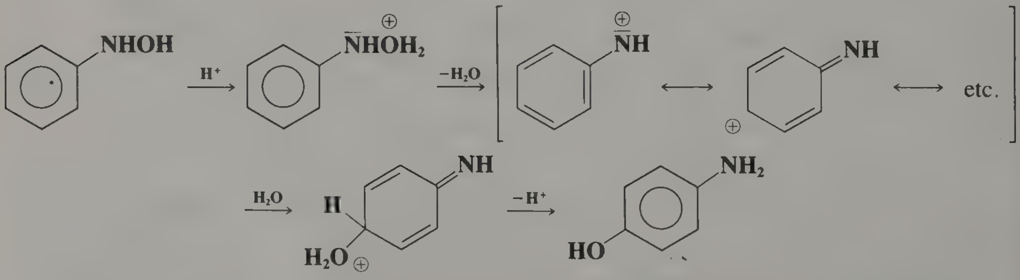
Sulfur ylides containing a benzylic group (analogous to **20**) undergo an analogous rearrangement.[213]

OS **IV,** 585.

3-28 Rearrangement of Aryl Hydroxylamines



Aryl hydroxylamines treated with acids rearrange to aminophenols.[214] Although this reaction (known as the *Bamberger rearrangement*) is similar in appearance to **1-34** to **1-38,** the attack on the ring is not electrophilic but nucleophilic. The rearrangement is intermolecular, with the following mechanism:



24

Among the evidence[215] for this mechanism are the facts that other products are obtained when the reaction is run in the presence of competing nucleophiles, e.g., *p*-ethoxyaniline when ethanol is present, and that when the para position is blocked, compounds similar to **24** are isolated.

---

[209] For other evidence for the mechanism given, see Hauser and Van Eenam, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5512 (1957); Pine and Sanchez, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1319 (1969); Puterbaugh and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1105 (1964).

[210] Kantor and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 4122 (1951).

[211] Jones and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2979 (1961).

[212] Pine, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3393 (1967); Pine, Ref. 203, p. 418.

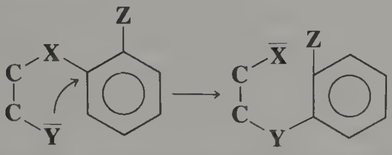
[213] See Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," pp. 118–124, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[214] For a review, see Ref. 198, pp. 182–190.

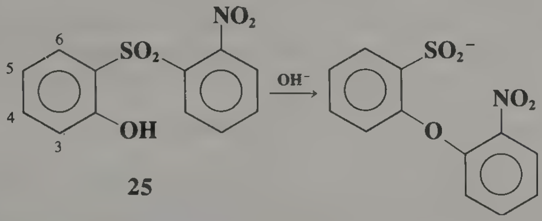
[215] For additional evidence, see Kohnstam, Petch, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 423 (1984); Sone, Hamamoto, Seiji, Shinkai, and Manabe, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1596 (1981) and references cited in these papers.

OS **IV,** 148.

3-29 The Smiles Rearrangement



The *Smiles rearrangement* actually comprises a group of rearrangements that follow the pattern given above.[216] A specific example is

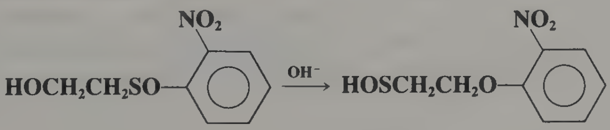


25

Smiles rearrangements are simply intramolecular nucleophilic substitutions. In the example given, SO_2Ar is the leaving group and ArO^- the nucleophile, and the nitro group serves to activate its ortho position. The ring at which the substitution takes place is nearly always activated, usually by ortho or para nitro groups. X is usually S, SO, SO_2,[217] O, or COO. Y is usually the conjugate base of OH, NH_2, NHR, or SH. The reaction has even been carried out with Y = CH_2^- (phenyllithium was the base here).[218]

The reaction rate is greatly enhanced by substitution in the 6 position of the attacking ring, for steric reasons. For example, a methyl, chloro, or bromo group in the 6 position of **25** caused the rate to be about 10^5 times faster than when the same groups were in the 4 position,[219] though electrical effects should be similar at these positions. The enhanced rate comes about because the most favorable conformation the molecule can adopt to suit the bulk of the 6-substituent is also the conformation required for the rearrangement. Thus, less entropy of activation is required.

Although the Smiles rearrangement is usually carried out on compounds containing two rings, this need not be the case; e.g.,[220]



26

In this case the sulfenic acid (**26**) is unstable[221] and the actual products isolated were the corresponding sulfinic acid (RSO_2H) and disulfide (R_2S_2).

---

[216] For reviews, see Truce, Kreider, and Brand, *Org. React.* **18,** 99–215 (1971); Shine, Ref. 198, pp. 307–316; Stevens and Watts, Ref. 203, pp. 120–126; Bunnett and Zahler, Ref. 1, pp. 362–372.

[217] For a review for the case of X = SO_2, see Cerfontain, "Mechanistic Aspects in Aromatic Sulfonation and Desulfonation," pp. 262–274, Interscience, New York, 1968.

[218] Truce and Ray, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 481 (1959); Truce, Robbins, and Kreider, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4027 (1966); Drozd and Nikonova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 313 (1969).

[219] Bunnett and Okamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 5363 (1956).

[220] Kent and Smiles, *J. Chem. Soc.* 422 (1934).

[221] For a stable sulfenic acid, see Nakamura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7172 (1983).

14

FREE-RADICAL SUBSTITUTION

MECHANISMS

Free-Radical Mechanisms in General[1]

A free-radical process consists of at least two steps. The first step involves the *formation* of free radicals, nearly always by homolytic cleavage of a bond, i.e., a cleavage in which each fragment retains one electron:

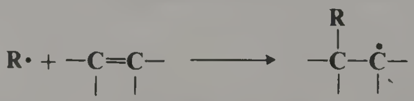
$$\mathrm{A{-}B} \longrightarrow \mathrm{A}\bullet + \mathrm{B}\bullet$$

This is called an *initiation* step. It may happen spontaneously or may be induced by heat or light (see the discussion on p. 168), depending on the type of bond. Peroxides, including hydrogen peroxide, dialkyl, diacyl, and alkyl acyl peroxides, and peracids are the most common source of free radicals induced spontaneously or by heat, but other organic compounds with low-energy bonds, such as azo compounds, are also used. Molecules that are cleaved by light are most often chlorine, bromine, and various ketones (see Chapter 7). Radicals can also be formed in another way, by a one-electron transfer (loss or gain), e.g., $\mathrm{A}^+ + e^- \rightarrow \mathrm{A}\bullet$. One-electron transfers usually involve inorganic ions or electrochemical processes.

The second step involves the *destruction* of free radicals. This usually happens by a process opposite to the first, namely, a combination of two like or unlike radicals to form a new bond:

$$\mathrm{A}\bullet + \mathrm{B}\bullet \longrightarrow \mathrm{A{-}B}$$

This type of step is called *termination,*[2] and it ends the reaction as far as these particular radicals are concerned.[3] However, it is not often that termination follows *directly* upon initiation. The reason is that most radicals are very reactive and will react with the first available species with which they come in contact. In the usual situation, in which the concentration of radicals is low, this is much more likely to be a molecule than another radical. When a radical (which has an odd number of electrons) reacts with a molecule (which has an even number), the total number of electrons in the products must be odd. The product in a particular step of this kind may be one particle, e.g.,



$$\mathrm{R}\bullet + -\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}{=}\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}- \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{R}}{|}}{\mathrm{C}}}-\underset{|}{\dot{\mathrm{C}}}-$$

---

[1] For books on free-radical mechanisms, see Nonhebel, Tedder, and Walton, ''Radicals,'' Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1979; Nonhebel and Walton, ''Free-Radical Chemistry,'' Cambridge University Press, London, 1974; Huyser, ''Free-Radical Chain Reactions,'' Interscience, New York, 1970; Pryor, ''Free Radicals,'' McGraw-Hill, New York, 1966; Walling, ''Free Radicals in Solution,'' Wiley, New York, 1957. For reviews, see Huyser, in McManus, ''Organic Reactive Intermediates,'' pp. 1–59, Academic Press, New York, 1973; Lloyd, *Chem. Technol.* 176–180, 371–381, 687–696 (1971), 182–188 (1972). For a monograph on the use of free-radical reactions in synthesis, see Davies and Parrott, ''Free Radicals in Organic Synthesis,'' Springer-Verlag, New York, 1978.

[2] Another type of termination is disproportionation (see p. 169).

[3] For a review of termination reactions, see Lapporte, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 759–766 (1960).

in which case it must be another free radical; or it may consist of two particles, e.g.,

$$\mathbf{R\cdot + R'H \longrightarrow RH + R'\cdot}$$

in which case one must be a molecule and one a free radical, but in any case *a new radical is generated*. This type of step is called *propagation*, since the newly formed radical can now react with another molecule and produce another radical, and so on, until two radicals do meet each other and terminate the process. The process just described is called a *chain reaction*, and there may be hundreds or thousands of propagation steps between an initiation and a termination. Two other types of propagation reactions do not involve a molecule at all. These are (1) cleavage of a radical into, necessarily, a radical and a molecule and (2) rearrangement of one radical to another (see Chapter 18). When free radicals are highly reactive, e.g., alkyl radicals, chains are long, since reactions occur with many molecules; but with radicals of low reactivity, e.g., aryl radicals, the radical may be unable to react with anything until it meets another radical, so that chains are short, or the reaction may be a nonchain process. In any particular chain process there is usually a wide variety of propagation and termination steps. Because of this, these reactions lead to many products and are often difficult to treat kinetically.[4]

The following are some general characteristics of free-radical reactions:

1. Reactions are fairly similar whether they are occurring in the vapor or liquid phase, though solvation of free radicals in solution does cause some differences.[5]

2. They are largely unaffected by the presence of acids or bases or by changes in the polarity of solvents, except that nonpolar solvents may suppress competing ionic reactions.

3. They are initiated or accelerated by typical free-radical sources, such as the peroxides referred to, or by light. In the latter case the concept of quantum yield applies (p. 217). Quantum yields may be quite high, e.g., 1000, if each quantum generates a long chain, or low, in the case of nonchain processes.

4. Their rates are decreased or the reactions are suppressed entirely by substances that scavenge free radicals, e.g., nitric oxide, molecular oxygen, or benzoquinone. These substances are called *inhibitors*.

In this chapter are discussed free-radical substitution reactions. Free-radical additions to unsaturated compounds and rearrangements are discussed in Chapters 15 and 18, respectively. In addition, many of the oxidation–reduction reactions considered in Chapter 19 involve free-radical mechanisms. Several important types of free-radical reactions do not usually lead to reasonable yields of pure products and are not generally treated in this book. Among these are polymerizations and high-temperature pyrolyses.

Free-Radical Substitution Mechanisms[6]

In a free-radical substitution reaction

$$\mathbf{R{-}X \longrightarrow R{-}Y} \qquad (1)$$

there must first be a cleavage of the substrate RX so that R• radicals are produced. This may happen by a spontaneous cleavage

$$\mathbf{R{-}X \longrightarrow R\cdot + X\cdot} \qquad (2)$$

---

[4] For a discussion of the kinetic aspects of free-radical chain reactions, see Huyser, "Free-Radical Chain Reactions," Ref. 1, pp. 39–65.

[5] For a discussion, see Mayo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 2654 (1967).

[6] For a review, see Poutsma, in Kochi, "Free Radicals," vol. 2, pp. 113–158, Wiley, New York, 1973.

or it may be caused by light or heat, or, more often, there is no actual cleavage, but R• is produced by an *abstraction*

$$\mathrm{R{-}X + W\cdot \longrightarrow R\cdot + W{-}X} \tag{3}$$

W• is produced by adding a compound, such as a peroxide, which spontaneously forms free radicals. Such a compound is called an *initiator*. Once R• is formed, it may go to product in two ways, by abstraction

$$\mathrm{R\cdot + Y{-}W \longrightarrow R{-}Y + W\cdot} \tag{4}$$

or by coupling with another radical

$$\mathrm{R\cdot + Y\cdot \longrightarrow R{-}Y} \tag{5}$$

In a reaction with a moderately long chain, much more of the product will be produced by abstraction (4) than by coupling (5). Cleavage steps like (2) have been called S_H1 (H for homolytic), and abstraction steps like (3) and (4) have been called S_H2; reactions can be classified as S_H1 or S_H2 on the basis of whether RX is converted to R by (2) or (3).[7] Most chain substitution mechanisms follow the pattern (3), (4), (3), (4). . . . Chains are long and reactions go well where both (3) and (4) are energetically favored (no worse than slightly endothermic, see pp. 614, 623).

It is known that with certain radicals the transition state in an abstraction reaction has some polar character. For example, consider the abstraction of hydrogen from the methyl group of toluene by a bromine atom. We can represent the transition state (assuming it is linear) as

$$\mathrm{PhCH_2{\text{------}}H{\text{-----}}Br}$$

Since bromine is more electronegative than carbon, it is reasonable to assume that in the transition state there is a separation of charge, with a partial negative charge on the halogen and a partial positive charge on the carbon. Another way to represent this is to draw canonical forms for the transition state. Evidence for the polar character of the transition state is that electron-withdrawing

$$\mathrm{Ph\overset{\delta+}{C}H_2{\text{----}}H{\text{-----}}\overset{\delta-}{Br}} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathrm{PhCH_2{-}H\cdot Br \leftrightarrow PhCH_2\cdot H{-}Br \leftrightarrow Ph\overset{+}{C}H_2\ \ \dot{H}\ \ \overset{-}{Br}}$$

groups in the para position of toluene (which would destabilize a positive charge) decrease the rate of hydrogen abstraction by bromine while electron-donating groups increase it.[8] However, as we might expect, substituents have a smaller effect here ($\rho \approx -1.4$) than they do in reactions where a completely ionic intermediate is involved, e.g., the S_N1 mechanism (see p. 303). Other evidence for polar transition states in radical abstraction reactions is mentioned on p. 615. For abstraction by radicals such as methyl or phenyl, polar effects are very small or completely absent. For example, rates of hydrogen abstraction from ring-substituted toluenes by the methyl radical were relatively unaffected by the presence of electron-donating or electron-withdrawing substituents.[9] Those radicals (e.g., Br•) that have a tendency to abstract electron-rich hydrogen atoms are called *electrophilic radicals*.

When the reaction step R—X → R• takes place at a chiral carbon, racemization is almost always observed because free radicals do not retain configuration. Exceptions to this rule are found at cyclopropyl substrates, where both inversion[10] and retention[11] of configuration have been reported, and in the reactions mentioned on p. 612.

---

[7] Eliel, in Newman, "Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry," pp. 142–143, Wiley, New York, 1956.

[8] For example, see Pearson and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85**, 354, 3142 (1963).

[9] For example, see Kalatzis and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1112 (1966); Pryor, Tonellato, Fuller, and Jumonville, *J. Org. Chem.* **34**, 2018 (1969).

[10] Altman and Nelson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91**, 5163 (1969).

[11] Jacobus and Pensak, *Chem. Commun.* 400 (1969).

Certain stable compounds have unpaired electrons, and are hence free radicals (p. 166). When such a compound is used as a solvent, it may promote the homolytic cleavage of a weak bond that may be present in the solute molecules. Such a process is known as *homosolvolysis.*[12] An example is the reaction that takes place when bromotriphenylmethane is dissolved in di-*t*-butylnitroxide.

$$\mathbf{Ph_3CBr + (\mathit{t}\text{-}Bu)_2{-}N{-}O\bullet \longrightarrow Ph_3C\bullet + (\mathit{t}\text{-}Bu)_2{-}N{-}O{-}Br}$$

Mechanisms at an Aromatic Substrate[13]

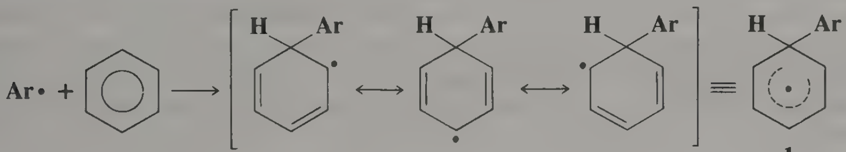
When the R in reaction (1) is aromatic, the simple abstraction mechanism just discussed may be operating, especially in gas-phase reactions. However, mechanisms of this type cannot account for all reactions of aromatic substrates. In processes such as the following (see **4-16, 4-19,** and **4-20**):

$$\mathbf{Ar\bullet + ArH \longrightarrow Ar{-}Ar} \tag{6}$$

which occur in solution, the coupling of two rings cannot be explained on the basis of a simple abstraction

$$\mathbf{Ar\bullet + ArH \longrightarrow Ar{-}Ar + H\bullet} \tag{7}$$

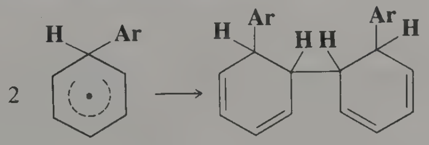
since, as discussed on p. 613, abstraction of an entire group such as phenyl by a free radical is very unlikely. The products can be explained by a mechanism similar to that of electrophilic and nucleophilic aromatic substitution. In the first step, the radical attacks the ring in much the same way as would an electrophile or a nucleophile:



1

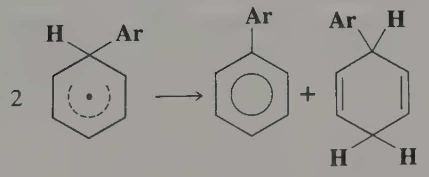
(8)

The intermediate is relatively stable because of the resonance. The reaction may terminate in three ways: by simple coupling, or by disproportionation



2

(9)



3

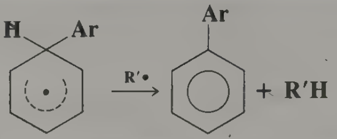
(10)

---

[12] Scott, Tedder, Walton, and Mhatre, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 260 (1980).

[13] For a treatise, see Williams, "Homolytic Aromatic Substitution," Pergamon, New York, 1960. For reviews, see Kobrina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 348–360 (1977); Perkins, in Kochi, Ref. 6, vol. 2, pp. 231–271; Bolton and Williams, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **5,** 1–25 (1975); Nonhebel and Walton, Ref. 1, pp. 417–469; Minisci and Porta, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **16,** 123–180 (1974); Bass and Nababsing, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **4,** 1–47 (1972); Hey, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1591 (1968); Norman and Radda, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **2,** 131–177 (1963).

or, if a species (R′•) is present which abstracts hydrogen, by abstraction[14]

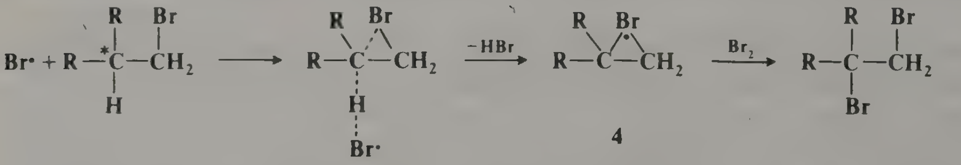


(11)

2 is a partially hydrogenated quaterphenyl. Of course, the coupling need not be ortho–ortho, and other isomers may also be formed. Among the evidence for steps (9) and (10) was isolation of compounds of types **2** and **3**,[15] although normally under the reaction conditions dihydrobiphenyls like **3** are oxidized to the corresponding biphenyls. Other evidence for this mechanism is the detection of the intermediate **1** by CIDNP[16] (see p. 163) and the absence of isotope effects, which would be expected if the rate-determining step were (7), which involves cleavage of the Ar—H bond. In the mechanism just given, the rate-determining step (8) does not involve loss of hydrogen. A similar mechanism has been shown where the attacking radical was HO• (reaction **4-5**).

Neighboring-Group Assistance in Free-Radical Reactions

In a few cases it has been shown that cleavage steps (2) and abstraction steps (3) have been accelerated by the presence of neighboring groups. Photolytic halogenation (**4-1**) is a process that normally leads to mixtures of many products. However, bromination of carbon chains containing a bromine atom occurs with high regioselectivity. Bromination of alkyl bromides gave 84 to 94% substitution at the carbon adjacent to the bromine already in the molecule.[17] This result is especially surprising because, as we shall see (p. 615), positions close to a polar group such as bromine should actually be *deactivated* by the electron-withdrawing field effect of the bromine. The unusual regioselectivity is explained by a mechanism in which abstraction (3) is assisted by a neighboring bromine atom:[18]



(12)

In the normal mechanism, Br• abstracts a hydrogen from RH, leaving R•. When a bromine is present in the proper position, it assists this process, giving a cyclic intermediate (a *bridged free radical*, **4**).[19] In the final step (very similar to R• + $Br_2 \rightarrow$ RBr + Br•) the ring is broken. If this mechanism is correct, the configuration at the substituted carbon (marked *) should be retained. This has been shown to be the case: optically active 1-bromo-2-methylbutane gave 1,2-dibromo-2-methylbutane with retention of configuration.[18] Furthermore, when this reaction was carried out in the presence of DBr, the "recovered" 1-bromo-2-methylbutane was found to be deuterated in the 2 position, and its configuration was retained.[20] This is just what would be predicted if some of the **4** present abstracted D from DBr. There is evidence that Cl can form bridged radicals,[21] though esr spectra show that the bridging is not necessarily symmetrical.[22] Still more evidence for bridging by Br has been found in isotope effect and other studies.[23] However, evidence from CIDNP (p. 163) shows that the methylene protons of the β-bromoethyl radical are not equivalent, at least while the radical is present in the radical pair [PhCOO• •CH_2CH_2Br] within a solvent cage.[24] This evidence indicates that under these conditions $BrCH_2CH_2$• is not a symmetrically bridged radical, but it could be unsymmetrically bridged. A bridged intermediate has also been invoked, when a bromo group is in the proper position, in the Hunsdiecker reaction[25] (**4-39**), and in abstraction of iodine atoms by the phenyl radical.[26] Neighboring-group participation in cleavage reactions (2) has also been shown, in the case of decomposition of *t*-butyl peresters.[27] The neighboring group in this case was SR.

---

[14] **1** can also be oxidized to the arene Ar—Ph by atmospheric O_2. For a discussion of the mechanism of this oxidation, see Narita and Tezuka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 7316 (1982).

[15] De Tar and Long, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80**, 4742 (1958). See also Ref. 279.

[16] Fahrenholtz and Trozzolo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 282 (1972).

[17] Thaler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85**, 2607 (1963). See also Traynham and Hines, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 5208 (1968); Ucciani, Pierri, and Naudet, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 791 (1970); Hargis, *J. Org. Chem.* **38**, 346 (1973).

[18] Skell, Tuleen, and Readio, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85**, 2849 (1963). For other stereochemical evidence, see Huyser and Feng, *J. Org. Chem.* **36**, 731 (1971). For another explanation, see Lloyd and Wood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97**, 5986 (1975).

[19] For a monograph, see Kaplan, "Bridged Free Radicals," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1972. For reviews, see Skell and Traynham, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **17**, 160–166 (1984); Skell and Shea, in Kochi, Ref. 6, vol. 2, pp. 809–852.

The above facts support the neighboring-group mechanism for certain free-radical substitutions. However, the concept of anchimeric assistance in these reactions has been challenged by Tedder and co-workers[28] on the basis of results obtained in brominations in the gas phase. These workers distinguish between (1) interaction between a neighboring group and the half-filled orbital at the adjacent carbon (bridging) and (2) accelerated attack resulting from this bridging; they believe that bridging may be an important factor but that anchimeric assistance is not. However, anchimeric assistance approaching 10^3 in magnitude has been demonstrated in the bromination of alkyl bromides.[29] No such assistance was found in bromination of alkyl fluorides or chlorides.

REACTIVITY

Reactivity for Aliphatic Substrates[30]

In a chain reaction, the step that determines what the product will be is most often an abstraction step. What is abstracted by a free radical is almost never a tetra- or trivalent atom[31] (except in strained systems, see p. 679)[32] and seldom a divalent one.[33] Nearly always it is univalent, and so, for organic compounds, it is hydrogen or halogen. For example, a reaction between a chlorine atom and ethane gives an ethyl radical, not a hydrogen atom:

---

[20] Shea and Skell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 283 (1973).

[21] Everly, Schweinsberg, and Traynham, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1200 (1978); Wells and Franke, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4681 (1979).

[22] Bowles, Hudson, and Jackson, *Chem. Phys. Lett.* **5,** 552 (1970); Cooper, Hudson, and Jackson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 831 (1973); Chen, Elson, and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5341 (1973).

[23] Skell and Readio, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3334 (1964); Skell, Pavlis, Lewis, and Shea, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6735 (1973); Juneja and Hodnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5685 (1967); Lewis and Kozuka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 282 (1973); Cain and Solly, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 148 (1974); Chenier, Tremblay, and Howard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1618 (1975); Howard, Chenier, and Holden, *Can. J. Chem.* **55,** 1463 (1977). See however Tanner, Blackburn, Kosugi, and Ruo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2714 (1977).

[24] Hargis and Shevlin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 179 (1973).

[25] Applequist and Werner, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 48 (1963).

[26] Danen and Winter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 716 (1971).

[27] Tuleen, Bentrude, and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1938 (1963); Fisher and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3382 (1966). For a review of neighboring-group participation in cleavage reactions, especially those involving SiR_3 as a neighboring group, see Reetz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 173–180 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 185–192].

[28] Ashton, Tedder, Walker, and Walton, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1346 (1973); Ashton, Tedder, Walton, Nechvatal, and Stoddart, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 846 (1973); Ody, Nechvatal, and Tedder, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 521 (1976).

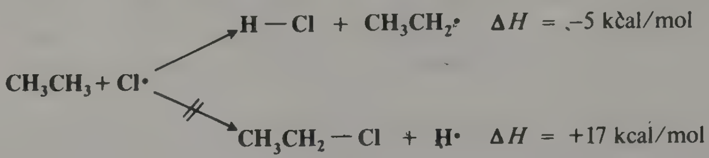
[29] Shea, Lewis, and Skell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7768 (1973). See also Maj, Symons, and Trousson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 561 (1984).

[30] For a review of the factors involved in reactivity and regioselectivity in free-radical substitutions and additions, see Tedder, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 401–410 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 433–442].

[31] See, for example, Back, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 916 (1983).

[32] For an example of an abstraction occurring to a small extent at an unstrained carbon atom, see Jackson and Townson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1452 (1980). See also Johnson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 343–349 (1983).

[33] For a monograph on abstractionsof divalent and higher-valent atoms, see Ingold and Roberts, "Free-Radical Substitution Reactions," Interscience, New York, 1971.



$$CH_3CH_3 + Cl\cdot \longrightarrow H{-}Cl + CH_3CH_2\cdot \quad \Delta H = -5 \text{ kcal/mol}$$

$$CH_3CH_3 + Cl\cdot \not\longrightarrow CH_3CH_2{-}Cl + H\cdot \quad \Delta H = +17 \text{ kcal/mol}$$

The principal reason for this is *steric*. A univalent atom is much more exposed to attack by the incoming radical than an atom with a higher valence. Another reason is that in many cases abstraction of a univalent atom is energetically more favored. For example, in the reaction given above, a C_2H_5—H bond is broken (D = 98 kcal/mol, from Table 3, Chapter 5, p. 166) whichever pathway is taken, but in the former case an H—Cl bond is formed (D = 103 kcal/mol) while in the latter case it is a C_2H_5—Cl bond (D = 81 kcal/mol). Thus the first reaction is favored because it is exothermic by 5 kcal/mol (98 − 103), while the latter is endothermic by 17 kcal/mol (98 − 81).[34] However, the steric reason is clearly more important, because even in cases where ΔH is not very different for the two possibilities, the univalent atom is chosen.

Most studies of aliphatic reactivity have been made with hydrogen as the leaving atom and chlorine atoms as the abstracting species.[35] In these reactions, every hydrogen in the substrate is potentially replaceable and mixtures are usually obtained. However, the abstracting radical is not totally unselective, and some positions on a molecule lose hydrogen more easily than others. We discuss the position of attack under several headings:[36]

1. *Alkanes.* The tertiary hydrogens of an alkane are the ones preferentially abstracted by almost any radical, with secondary hydrogens being next preferred. This is in the same order as D values for these types of C—H bonds (Table 2 in Chapter 5). The extent of the preference depends on the selectivity of the abstracting radical and on the temperature. Table 1 shows[37] that at high temperatures selectivity decreases, as might be expected. An example of the effect of radical selectivity may be noted in a comparison of fluorine atoms with bromine atoms. For the former, the ratio of primary to tertiary abstraction (of hydrogen) is 1 : 1.4, while for the less reactive bromine atom this ratio is 1 : 1600. With certain large radicals there is a steric factor which may change the selectivity pattern. For example, in the photochemical chlorination of isopentane in H_2SO_4 with

TABLE 1 Relative susceptibility to attack by Cl• of primary, secondary, and tertiary positions at 100 and 600°C in the gas phase[37]

Temp., °C	Primary	Secondary	Tertiary
100	1	4.3	7.0
600	1	2.1	2.6

---

[34] ΔH for a free-radical abstraction reaction may be regarded simply as the difference in D values for the bond being broken and the one formed.

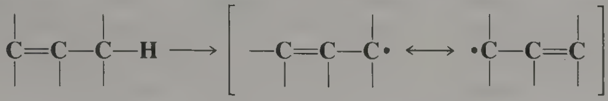
[35] For a review that lists many rate constants for abstraction of hydrogen at various positions of many molecules, see Hendry, Mill, Piszkiewicz, Howard, and Eigenmann, *J. Phys. Chem. Ref. Data* **3**, 937–978 (1974).

[36] For reviews, see Tedder, *Tetrahedron* **38**, 313–329 (1982); Kerr, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 18, pp. 39–109, Elsevier, New York, 1976; Russell, in Kochi, Ref. 6, vol. 2, pp. 275–331; Rüchardt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9**, 830–843 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82**, 845–858]; Poutsma, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **1**, 79–193 (1969); Davidson, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **21**, 249–258 (1967); Pryor, Fuller, and Stanley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 1632 (1972).

[37] Hass, McBee, and Weber, *Ind. Eng. Chem.* **28**, 333 (1936).

N-chloro-di-*t*-butylamine and N-chloro-*t*-butyl-*t*-pentylamine, the primary hydrogens are abstracted 1.7 times *faster* than the tertiary hydrogen.[38] In this case the attacking radicals (the radical ions $R_2NH\bullet^+$, see p. 622) are bulky enough for steric hindrance to become a major factor.

2. *Olefins.* When the substrate molecule contains a double bond, treatment with chlorine or bromine usually leads to addition rather than substitution. However, for other free radicals (and even for chlorine or bromine atoms when they do abstract a hydrogen) the position of attack is perfectly clear. Vinylic hydrogens are practically never abstracted, and allylic hydrogens are greatly preferred to other positions of the molecule. This is generally attributed[39] to resonance stabilization of the allylic radical:



$$\mathrm{C{=}C{-}C{-}H} \longrightarrow \left[\, -\mathrm{C{=}C{-}C}\bullet \longleftrightarrow \bullet\mathrm{C{-}C{=}C} \,\right]$$

As might be expected, allylic rearrangements (see p. 287) are common in these cases.[40]

3. *Alkyl side chains of aromatic rings.* The preferential position of attack on a side chain is usually the one α to the ring. Both for active radicals such as chlorine and phenyl and for more selective ones such as bromine such attack is faster than that at a primary carbon, but for the active radicals benzylic attack is slower than for tertiary positions, while for the selective ones it is faster. Two or three aryl groups on a carbon activate its hydrogens even more, as would be expected from the resonance involved. These statements can be illustrated by the following abstraction ratios:[41]

	Me—H	$MeCH_2$—H	Me_2CH—H	Me_3C—H	$PhCH_2$—H	Ph_2CH—H	Ph_3C—H
Br	0.0007	1	220	19,400	64,000	1.1×10^6	6.4×10^6
Cl	0.004	1	4.3	6.0	1.3	2.6	9.5

However, many anomalous results have been reported for these substrates. The benzylic position is not always the most favored. One thing certain is that *aromatic* hydrogens are seldom abstracted if there are aliphatic ones to compete (note from Table 3, Chapter 5, p. 166, that *D* for Ph—H is higher than that for any alkyl—H bond). A $\sigma^\bullet$ scale (similar to the σ, σ^+, and σ^- scales discussed in Chapter 9) has been developed for benzylic radicals.[42]

4. *Compounds containing electron-withdrawing substituents.* In halogenations electron-withdrawing groups greatly deactivate adjacent positions. Compounds of the type Z—CH_2—CH_3 are attacked predominantly or exclusively at the β position when Z is COOH, COCl, COOR, SO_2Cl, or CX_3. Such compounds as acetic acid and acetyl chloride are not attacked at all. This is in sharp contrast to electrophilic halogenations (**2-4** to **2-6**), where *only* the α position is substituted. This deactivation of α positions is also at variance with the expected stability of the resulting radicals, since they would be expected to be stabilized by resonance similar to that for allylic and benzylic radicals. This behavior is a result of the polar transition states discussed on p. 610. Halogen atoms are electrophilic radicals and look for positions of high electron density. Hydrogens on carbon atoms next to electron-withdrawing groups have low electron densities (because of the field effect of Z) and are therefore shunned. Radicals that are not electrophilic do not display this behavior.

---

[38] Deno, Fishbein, and Wyckoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2065 (1971).

[39] See however Kwart, Brechbiel, Miles, and Kwart, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4524 (1982).

[40] For reviews, see Wilt, in Kochi, Ref. 6, vol. 1, pp. 458–466; Walling, in Mayo, "Molecular Rearrangements," pp. 431–438, Interscience, New York, 1963.

[41] Russell, Ref. 36, p. 289.

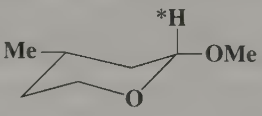
[42] Dinçtürk and Jackson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1127 (1981).

For example, the methyl radical is essentially nonpolar and does not avoid positions next to electron-withdrawing groups; relative rates of abstraction at the α and β carbons of propionic acid are:[43]

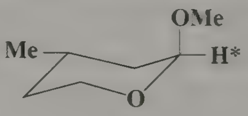
	CH_3-	CH_2-COOH
Me•	1	7.8
Cl•	1	0.03

Some free radicals, e.g., *t*-butyl,[44] benzyl,[45] and cyclopropyl,[46] are *nucleophilic* (they tend to abstract electron-poor hydrogen atoms). The phenyl radical appears to have a very small degree of nucleophilic character.[47] For longer chains, the field effect continues, and the β position is also deactivated to attack by halogen, though much less so than the α position. We have already mentioned (p. 610) that abstraction of an α hydrogen atom from ring-substituted toluenes can be correlated by the Hammett equation. A similar correlation with Taft σ_I values (p. 245) has been found for abstraction of hydrogen from substituted adamantanes by the electrophilic radical $\cdot CCl_3$.[48]

5. *Stereoelectronic effects.* On p. 293, we saw an example of a stereoelectronic effect. It has been shown that such effects are important where a hydrogen is abstracted from a carbon adjacent to a C—O or C—N bond. In such cases hydrogen is abstracted from C—H bonds that have a relatively small dihedral angle (~30°) with the unshared orbitals of the O or N much more easily than from those with a large angle (~90°). For example, the starred hydrogen of **5** was abstracted about 8 times faster than the starred hydrogen of **6**.[49]



5

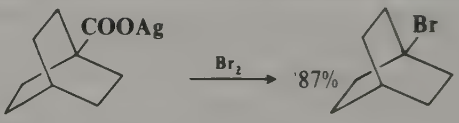


6

Abstraction of a halogen has been studied much less,[50] but the order of reactivity is RI > RBr > RCl ⩾ RF.

Reactivity at a Bridgehead[51]

Many free-radical reactions have been observed at bridgehead carbons, e.g., (see **4-39**).[52]



---

[43] Russell, Ref. 36, p. 311.

[44] Pryor, Davis, and Stanley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4754 (1973); Pryor, Tang, Tang, and Church, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2885 (1982); Dütsch and Fischer, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **14,** 195 (1982).

[45] Clerici, Minisci, and Porta, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 2775 (1973).

[46] Stefani, Chuang, and Todd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4168 (1970).

[47] Clerici, Minisci, and Porta, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **103,** 171 (1973); Suehiro, Suzuki, Tsuchida, and Yamazaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 3324 (1977).

[48] Owens, Gleicher, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4122 (1968).

[49] Hayday and McKelvey, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2222 (1976). For additional examples, see Malatesta and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 609 (1981); Beckwith and Easton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 615 (1981); Beckwith and Westwood, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 2123 (1983); Griller, Howard, Marriott, and Scaiano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 619 (1981). For a stereoselective abstraction step, see Dneprovskii, Pertsikov, and Temnikova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1951 (1982).

[50] For a review, see Danen, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **5,** 1–99 (1974).

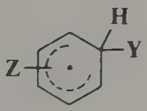
[51] For reviews, see Bingham and Schleyer, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **18,** 1–102 (1971), pp. 79–81; Fort and Schleyer, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 283–370 (1966), pp. 337–352.

[52] Grob, Ohta, Renk, and Weiss, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **41,** 1191 (1958).

demonstrating that the free radical need not be planar. However, treatment of norbornane with sulfuryl chloride and benzoyl peroxide gave mostly 2-chloronorbornane, although the bridgehead position is tertiary.[53] So, while bridgehead free-radical substitution is possible, it is not preferred, presumably because of the strain involved.[54]

Reactivity in Aromatic Substrates

Free-radical substitution at an aromatic carbon seldom takes place by a mechanism in which a hydrogen is abstracted to give an aryl radical. Reactivity considerations here are similar to those in Chapters 11 and 13; i.e., we need to know which position on the ring will be attacked to give the intermediate



The obvious way to obtain this information is to carry out reactions with various Z groups and to analyze the products for percent ortho, meta, and para isomers, as has so often been done for electrophilic substitution. However, this procedure is much less accurate in the case of free-radical substitutions because of the many side reactions. It may be, for example, that in a given case the ortho position is more reactive than the para but the intermediate from the para attack may go on to product while that from ortho attack gives a side reaction. In such a case, analysis of the three products does not give a true picture of which position is most susceptible to attack. The following generalizations can nevertheless be drawn, although there has been much controversy over just how meaningful such conclusions are:[55]

1. All substituents increase reactivity at ortho and para positions over that of benzene. There is no great difference between electron-donating and electron-withdrawing groups.

2. Reactivity at meta positions is usually similar to that of benzene, perhaps slightly higher or lower. This fact, coupled with the preceding one, means that all substituents are activating and ortho-para-directing; none are deactivating or (chiefly) meta-directing.

3. Reactivity at ortho positions is usually somewhat greater than at para positions, except where a large group decreases ortho reactivity for steric reasons.

4. In direct competition, electron-withdrawing groups exert a somewhat greater influence than electron-donating groups. Arylation of para-disubstituted compounds XC_6H_4Y showed that substitution ortho to the group X became increasingly preferred as the electron-withdrawing character of X increases (with Y held constant).[56] The increase could be correlated with the Hammett σ_p values for X.

5. Substituents have a much smaller effect than in electrophilic or nucleophilic substitution; hence the partial rate factors (see p. 462) are not great. Partial rate factors for a few groups are given in Table 2.[57]

---

[53] Roberts, Urbanek, and Armstrong, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 3049 (1949). See also Kooyman and Vegter, *Tetrahedron* **4,** 382 (1958); Walling and Mayahi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1485 (1959).

[54] See, for example, Koch and Gleicher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1657 (1971).

[55] De Tar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1014 (1961) (book review); Dickerman and Vermont, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4150 (1962); Morrison, Cazes, Samkoff, and Howe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4152 (1962); Ohta and Tokumaru, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 3218 (1971); Vidal, Court, and Bonnier, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 2071 (1973); Tezuka, Ichikawa, Marusawa, and Narita, *Chem. Lett.* 1013 (1983).

[56] Davies, Hey, and Summers, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2653 (1970).

[57] Davies, Hey, and Summers, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2681 (1971).

TABLE 2 Partial rate factors for attack of substituted benzenes by phenyl radicals generated from Bz_2O_2 (reaction **4-19**)[57]

	Partial rate factor		
Z	*o*	*m*	*p*
H	1	1	1
NO_2	5.50	0.86	4.90
CH_3	4.70	1.24	3.55
CMe_3	0.70	1.64	1.81
Cl	3.90	1.65	2.12
Br	3.05	1.70	1.92
MeO	5.6	1.23	2.31

6. Although hydrogen is the leaving group in most free-radical aromatic substitutions, ipso attack (p. 458) and ipso substitution (e.g., with Br, NO_2, or CH_3CO as the leaving group) have been found in certain cases.[58]

It should be remembered that in *alternant hydrocarbons*, the position of attack is the same for electrophilic, nucleophilic, and free-radical substitution (see p. 462).

Reactivity in the Attacking Radical[59]

We have already seen that some radicals are much more selective than others (p. 614). The bromine atom is so selective that when only primary hydrogens are available, as in neopentane or *t*-butylbenzene, the reaction is slow or nonexistent; and isobutane can be selectively brominated to give *t*-butyl bromide in high yields. However, toluene reacts with bromine atoms instantly. Bromination of other alkylbenzenes, e.g., ethylbenzene and cumene, takes place exclusively at the α position,[60] emphasizing the selectivity of Br• The dissociation energy *D* of the C—H bond is more important for radicals of low reactivity than for highly reactive radicals, since bond breaking in the transition state is greater. Thus, bromine shows a greater tendency than chlorine to attack α to an electron-withdrawing group because the energy of the C—H bond there is lower than in other places in the molecule.

Some free radicals, e.g., triphenylmethyl, are so unreactive that they abstract hydrogens very poorly if at all. Table 3 lists some common free radicals in approximate order of reactivity.[61]

It has been mentioned that some free radicals, e.g., chloro, are electrophilic and some, e.g., *t*-butyl, are nucleophilic. It must be borne in mind that these tendencies are relatively slight compared with the electrophilicity of a positive ion or the nucleophilicity of a negative ion. The predominant character of a free radical is neutral, whether it has slight electrophilic or nucleophilic tendencies.

---

[58] For reviews, see Traynham, *J. Chem. Educ.* **60,** 937–941 (1983), *Chem. Rev.* **79,** 323–330 (1979); Tiecco, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 51–57 (1980); *Pure Appl. Chem.* **53,** 239–258 (1981).

[59] For reviews, see Trotman-Dickenson, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **1,** 1–38 (1965); Spirin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 529–539 (1969). For a review with respect to CH_3• and CF_3•, see Gray, Herod, and Jones, *Chem. Rev.* **71,** 247–294 (1971).

[60] Huyser, "Free-Radical Chain Reactions," Ref. 1, p. 97.

[61] Trotman-Dickenson, Ref. 59.

TABLE 3 Some common free radicals in decreasing order of activity

The E values represent activation energies for the reaction

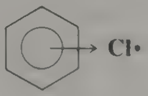
$$X\cdot + C_2H_6 \rightarrow X—H + C_2H_5\cdot$$[61]

iso-Pr• *is less active than* Me•*, and t*-Bu• still less so[62]

Radical	*E*, kcal/mol	Radical	*E*, kcal/mol
F•	0.3	H•	9.0
Cl•	1.0	Me•	11.8
MeO•	7.1	Br•	13.2
$CF_3\cdot$	7.5		

The Effect of Solvent on Reactivity[63]

As has been noted earlier, the solvent usually has little effect on free-radical substitutions in contrast to ionic ones: indeed, reactions in solution are often quite similar in character to those in the gas phase, where there is no solvent at all. However, in certain cases the solvent *can* make an appreciable difference. The chlorination of 2,3-dimethylbutane in aliphatic solvents gave about 60% $(CH_3)_2CHCH(CH_3)CH_2Cl$ and 40% $(CH_3)_2CHCCl(CH_3)_2$, while in aromatic solvents the ratio became about 10:90.[64] This result is attributed to complex formation between the aromatic solvent and the chlorine atom



7

which makes the chlorine less reactive and more selective.[65] This type of effect is not found in cases where the differences in abstractability are caused by field effects of electron-withdrawing groups (p. 615). In such cases aromatic solvents make little difference.[66] The complex **7** has been detected as a very short-lived species by observation of its visible spectrum in the pulse radiolysis of a solution of benzene in CCl_4.[67] Differences caused by solvents have also been reported in reactions of other radicals.[68] Some of the anomalous results obtained in the chlorination of aromatic side chains (p. 615) can also be explained by this type of complexing, in this case not with the solvent but with the reacting species.[69]

---

[62] Kharasch, Hambling, and Rudy, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 303 (1959).

[63] For reviews, see Reichardt, "Solvent Effects in Organic Chemistry," pp. 110–123, Verlag Chemie, New York, 1979; Martin, in Kochi, Ref. 6, vol. 2, pp. 493–524; Huyser, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **1,** 77–135 (1965).

[64] Russell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 4987, 4997, 5002 (1958), *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 300 (1959).

[65] See also Soumillion and Bruylants, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **78,** 425 (1969); Aver'yanov, Kirichenko, and Shvets, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1089 (1982); Aver'yanov, Zarytovskii, and Shvets, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1487 (1982); Potter and Tedder, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1689 (1982); Skell, Baxter, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 120 (1983).

[66] Russell, *Tetrahedron* **8,** 101 (1960); Nagai, Horikawa, Ryang, and Tokura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 2771 (1971).

[67] Bühler, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **51,** 1558 (1968).

[68] Walling and Azar, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3885 (1968); Walling and Wagner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2333 (1963); Ito and Matsuda, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 568 (1982).

[69] Russell, Ito, and Hendry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2976 (1963); Corbiau and Bruylants, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **79,** 203, 211 (1970); Newkirk and Gleicher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3543 (1974).

REACTIONS

The reactions in this chapter are classified according to leaving group. The most common leaving groups are hydrogen and nitrogen (from the diazonium ion); these are considered first.[70]

Hydrogen as Leaving Group

A. Substitution by Halogen

4-1 Halogenation at an Alkyl Carbon
Halogenation or **Halo-de-hydrogenation**[71]

$$\mathbf{R{-}H + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} R{-}Cl}$$

Alkanes can be chlorinated or brominated by treatment with chlorine or bromine in the presence of visible or uv light.[72] The reaction can also be applied to alkyl chains containing many functional groups. The chlorination reaction is usually not useful for preparative purposes precisely because it is so general: not only does substitution take place at virtually every alkyl carbon in the molecule, but di- and polychloro substitution almost invariabily occur even if there is a large molar ratio of substrate to halogen. When functional groups are present, the principles are those outlined on p. 615; favored positions are those α to aromatic rings, while positions α to electron-withdrawing groups are least likely to be substituted. Tertiary carbons are most likely to be attacked and primary least. Positions α to an OR group are very readily attacked. Nevertheless, mixtures are nearly always obtained. This can be contrasted to the regioselectivity of electrophilic halogenation (**2-4** to **2-6**), which always takes place α to a carbonyl group (except when the reaction is catalyzed by $AgSbF_6$; see following). Of course, if a *mixture* of chlorides is wanted, the reaction is usually quite satisfactory and indeed it is of considerable industrial importance. For obtaining pure compounds, the chlorination reaction is essentially limited to substrates with only one type of replaceable hydrogen, e.g., ethane, cyclohexane, neopentane. The most common are substrates with methyl groups on aromatic rings, since few cases are known where halogen atoms substitute at an aromatic position.[73] Of course, ring substitution *does* take place in the presence of a positive-ion-forming catalyst (**1-12**). In addition to mixtures of various alkyl halides, traces of other products are obtained. These include hydrogen gas, olefins, higher alkanes, lower alkanes, and halogen derivatives of *them*.

The bromine atom is much more selective than the chlorine atom. As indicated on p. 618, it is often possible to brominate tertiary positions selectively.[74] High regioselectivity may also be obtained where the neighboring-group mechanism (p. 612) can operate.

As already mentioned, halogenation can be performed with chlorine or bromine. Fluorine has also been used,[75] but seldom, because it is too reactive and hard to control.[76] It often breaks carbon chains down into smaller units, a side reaction that sometimes becomes troublesome in chlorinations too. Fluorination has been achieved by the use of fluoroxytrifluoromethane CF_3OF and uv light.[77] For example, cyclohexane gave 44% fluorocyclohexane ($CFCl_3$ solvent, $-78°C$). CF_3OF without uv light fluorinates tertiary positions of certain molecules in good yields with high regioselectivity.[78] For example, adamantane gave 75% 1-fluoroadamantane. F_2 at $-70°C$, diluted with N_2, is also highly regioselective for tertiary positions.[79] These reactions probably have electrophilic (see p. 624), not free-radical mechanisms.

---

[70] For a review of *intramolecular* free-radical substitutions, see Heusler and Kalvoda, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 525–538 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 518–531].

[71] These names also apply to reactions **4-2** and **4-3.**

[72] For reviews, see Poutsma, in Kochi, Ref. 6, vol. 2, pp. 159–229; Huyser, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Halogen Bond," pt. 1, pp. 549–607, Wiley, New York, 1973; Poutsma, Ref. 36 (chlorination); Thaler, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **2,** 121–227 (1969) (bromination); Sosnovsky, "Free Radical Reactions in Preparative Organic Chemistry," pp. 282–331, 355–382, 387–401, Macmillan, New York, 1964.

[73] Dermer and Edmison, *Chem. Rev.* **57,** 77–122 (1957), pp. 110–112. An example of free-radical ring halogenation can be found in Engelsma and Kooyman, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **80,** 526, 537 (1961). For a review of aromatic halogenation in the gas phase, see Kooyman, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **1,** 137–153 (1965).

[74] For example, see Siegmann, Beers, and Huisman, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **83,** 67 (1964).

[75] Hudlický, "The Chemistry of Organic Fluorine Compounds," pp. 72–87, Macmillan, New York, 1962; Tedder, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **2,** 104–137 (1961); Gerstenberger and Haas, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 647–667 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 659–680].

[76] However, there are several methods by which *all* the C—H bons in a molecule can be converted to C—F bonds. For reviews, see Lagow and Margrave, *Prog. Inorg. Chem.* **26,** 161–210 (1979); Burdon and Tatlow, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **1,**

Iodine can be used if the activating light has a wavelength of 184.9 nm,[80] but iodinations are seldom attempted, largely because the HI formed reduces the alkyl iodide. Iodinations have been accomplished in low-to-moderate yields with "*t*-BuOI," generated in situ from HgI_2 and *t*-BuOCl.[81]

Many other halogenation agents have been employed, the most common of which is sulfuryl chloride SO_2Cl_2.[82] The reaction in this case is more rapid and convenient than the one with chlorine itself. A mixture of Br_2 and HgO is a more active brominating agent than bromine alone.[83] The actual brominating agent in this case is believed to be bromine monoxide Br_2O. Other agents used have been N-bromosuccinimide (see **4-2**), CCl_4, N-chlorophthalimide,[84] dichlorine monoxide Cl_2O,[85] $BrCCl_3$,[86] PCl_5,[87] phosgene, *t*-butyl hypobromite[88] and hypochlorite,[89] N-haloamines and sulfuric acid,[90] and trichloromethanesulfonyl chloride and bromide.[91] In all these cases a chain-initiating catalyst is required, usually peroxides or uv light.

When chlorination is carried out with N-haloamines and sulfuric acid (catalyzed by either uv light or metal ions), selectivity is much greater than with other reagents.[90] In particular, alkyl chains are chlorinated with high regioselectivity at the position next to the end of the chain (the $\omega - 1$ position).[92] Some typical selectivity values are[93]

$$\begin{array}{lllllll} \mathrm{CH_3}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_3} \\ 1 & 56 & 29 & 14 & & & \end{array} \qquad \text{Ref. 94}$$

$$\begin{array}{lllllllll} \mathrm{CH_3}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{OH} \\ 1 & 92 & 3 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & \end{array} \qquad \text{Ref. 95}$$

$$\begin{array}{lllllll} \mathrm{CH_3}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{CH_2}- & \mathrm{COOMe} \\ 3 & 72 & 20 & 4 & 1 & 0 & \end{array} \qquad \text{Ref. 96}$$

129–165 (1960); Stacey and Tatlow, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **1**, 166–198 (1960). See also Adcock, Horita, and Renk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103**, 6937 (1981)

[77] Kollonitsch, Barash, and Doldouras, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 7494 (1970).

[78] Alker, Barton, Hesse, Lister-James, Markwell, Pechet, Rozen, Takeshita, and Toh, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **4**, 239 (1980).

[79] Rozen, Gal, and Faust, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102**, 6860 (1980); Gal, Ben-Shoshan, and Rozen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21**, 5067 (1980); Gal and Rozen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25**, 449 (1984); Ref. 78.

[80] Gover and Willard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 3816 (1960).

[81] Tanner and Gidley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 808 (1968).

[82] For a review of this regent, see Tabushi and Kitaguchi, in Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 4, pp. 336–396, Wiley, New York, 1981.

[83] Bunce, *Can. J. Chem.* **50**, 3109 (1972).

[84] Mosher and Estes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 6928 (1977).

[85] Marsh, Farnham, Sam, and Smart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 4680 (1982).

[86] Huyser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 391 (1960); Baldwin and O'Neill, *Synth. Commun.* **6**, 109 (1976).

[87] Wyman, Wang, and Freeman, *J. Org. Chem.* **28**, 3173 (1963).

[88] Walling and Padwa, *J. Org. Chem.* **27**, 2976 (1962).

[89] Walling and Mintz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 1515 (1967).

[90] For reviews, see Minisci, *Synthesis* 1–24 (1973); Deno, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **3**, 135–154 (1972); Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **4**, 203–284 (1972).

[91] Pinnell, Huyser, and Kleinberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **30**, 38 (1965).

[92] The $\omega - 1$ regioselectivity diminishes when the chains are longer than 10 carbons; see Deno and Jedziniak, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1259 (1976); Konen, Maxwell, and Silbert, *J. Org. Chem.* **44**, 3594 (1979).

[93] The $\omega - 1$ selectivity values shown here may actually be lower than the true values because of selective solvolysis of the $\omega - 1$ chlorides in concentrated H_2SO_4; see Deno and Pohl, *J. Org. Chem.* **40**, 380 (1975).

[94] Bernardi, Galli, and Minisci, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 324 (1968). See also Deno, Gladfelter, and Pohl, *J. Org. Chem.* **44**, 3728 (1979); Fuller, Lindsay Smith, Norman, and Higgins, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 545 (1981).

[95] Deno, Billups, Fishbein, Pierson, Whalen, and Wyckoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 438 (1971).

[96] Minisci, Galli, Galli, and Bernardi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2207 (1967); Minisci, Gardini, and Bertini, *Can. J. Chem.* **48**, 544 (1970).

Furthermore, di- and polychlorination are much less prevalent. Dicarboxylic acids are predominantly chlorinated in the middle of the chain,[97] and adamantane and bicyclo[2.2.2]octane at the bridgeheads[98] by this procedure. The reasons for the high ω − 1 specificity are not clearly understood.[93] Alkyl bromides can be regioselectively chlorinated one carbon away from the bromine (to give *vic*-bromochlorides) by treatment with PCl_5.[99] Alkyl chlorides can be converted to *vic*-dichlorides by treatment with $MoCl_5$.[100] For regioselective chlorination at certain positions of the steroid nucleus, see **9-2.**

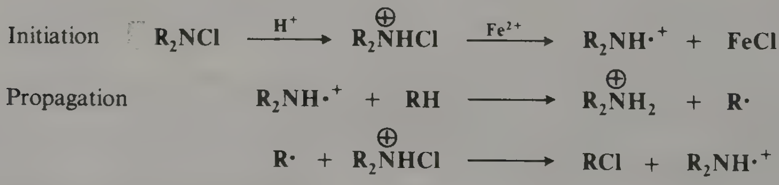
In almost all cases, the mechanism involves a free-radical chain:[101]

$$\begin{array}{lrl}
\text{Initiation} & X_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} & 2X\cdot \\
\text{Propagation} & RH + X\cdot \longrightarrow & R\cdot + XH \\
 & R\cdot + X_2 \longrightarrow & RX + X\cdot \\
\text{Termination} & R\cdot + X\cdot \longrightarrow & RX
\end{array}$$

When the reagent is halogen, initiation occurs as shown above. When it is another reagent, a similar cleavage occurs (catalyzed by light or, more commonly, peroxides), followed by propagation steps that do not necessarily involve abstraction by halogen. For example, the propagation steps for chlorination by *t*-BuOCl have been formulated as[102]

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
RH + t\text{-}BuO\cdot & \longrightarrow & R\cdot + t\text{-}BuOH \\
R\cdot + t\text{-}BuOCl & \longrightarrow & RCl + t\text{-}BuO\cdot
\end{array}$$

and the abstracting radicals in the case of N-haloamines are the aminium radical cations $R_2NH\cdot^+$ (p. 472), with the following mechanism (in the case of initiation by Fe^{2+}):[90]



$$\begin{array}{llcl}
\text{Initiation} & R_2NCl \xrightarrow{H^+} R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}HCl & \xrightarrow{Fe^{2+}} & R_2NH\cdot^+ + FeCl \\
\text{Propagation} & R_2NH\cdot^+ + RH & \longrightarrow & R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2 + R\cdot \\
 & R\cdot + R_2\overset{\oplus}{N}HCl & \longrightarrow & RCl + R_2NH\cdot^+
\end{array}$$

This mechanism is similar to that of the Hofmann–Löffler reaction (**8-44**).

The two propagation steps shown above for X_2 are those that lead directly to the principal products (RX and HX), but many other propagation steps are possible and many occur. Similarly, the only termination step shown is the one that leads to RX, but any two radicals may combine.

---

[97] Kämper, Schäfer, and Luftmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 306 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 334].

[98] Smith and Billups, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4307 (1974).

[99] Luche, Bertin, and Kagan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 759 (1974).

[100] San Filippo, Sowinski, and Romano, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3463 (1975).

[101] For reviews, see Chiltz, Goldfinger, Huybrechts, Martens, and Verbeke, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 355–372 (1963); Bratolyubov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **30,** 602–612 (1961).

[102] Carlsson and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4885, 4891 (1967); Walling and Kurkov, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4895 (1967); Walling and McGuiness, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2053 (1969). See also Zhulin and Rubinshtein, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR* **26,** 2082 (1977).

Thus, products like hydrogen, higher alkanes, and alkyl halides can be accounted for by steps like these (these are for chlorination of methane, but analogous steps can be written for other substrates):

$$\begin{aligned}
Cl\cdot + HCl &\longrightarrow Cl{-}Cl + H\cdot \\
H\cdot + H\cdot &\longrightarrow H{-}H \\
CH_3\cdot + CH_3\cdot &\longrightarrow CH_3CH_3 \\
CH_3CH_3 + Cl\cdot &\longrightarrow CH_3CH_2\cdot + HCl \\
CH_3CH_2\cdot + Cl_2 &\longrightarrow CH_3CH_2Cl + Cl\cdot \\
CH_3CH_2\cdot + CH_3CH_2\cdot &\longrightarrow CH_3CH_3 + CH_2{=}CH_2 \\
CH_3CH_2\cdot + CH_3CH_2\cdot &\longrightarrow CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_3 \\
CH_3CH_2\cdot + HCl &\longrightarrow CH_3CH_3 + Cl\cdot
\end{aligned}$$

etc.

At least when methane is the substrate, the rate-determining step is

$$CH_4 + Cl\cdot \longrightarrow CH_3\cdot + HCl$$

since an isotope effect of 12.1 was observed at 0°C.[103] For chlorinations, chains are very long, typically 10^4 to 10^6 propagations before a termination step takes place.

The order of reactivity of the halogens can be explained by energy considerations. For the substrate methane, ΔH values for the two principal propagation steps are:

	kcal/mol			
	F_2	Cl_2	Br_2	I_2
$CH_4 + X\cdot \rightarrow CH_3\cdot + HX$	−32	+1	+17	+33
$CH_3\cdot + X_2 \rightarrow CH_3X + X\cdot$	−72	−26	−24	−20

In each case D for CH_3—H is 104 kcal/mol, while D values for the other bonds involved are given in Table 4.[104] F_2 is so reactive[105] that neither uv light nor any other initiation is needed (total $\Delta H = -104$ kcal/mol);[106] while Br_2 and I_2 essentially do not react with methane. The second step is exothermic in all four cases, but it cannot take place before the first, and it is this step that is very unfavorable for Br_2 and I_2. It is apparent that the most important single factor causing the order of halogen reactivity to be $F_2 > Cl_2 > Br_2 > I_2$ is the decreasing strength of the HX bond in the order HF > HCl > HBr > HI. The increased reactivity of secondary and tertiary positions is in accord with the decrease in D values for R—H in the order primary > secondary > tertiary (Table 3 in Chapter 5, p. 166). (Note that for chlorination step 1 is exothermic for practically all substrates other than CH_4, since most other aliphatic C—H bonds are weaker than those in CH_4.)

---

[103] Wiberg and Motell, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 2009 (1963).

[104] Trotman-Dickenson and Kerr, in Weast, "Handbook of Chemistry and Physics," 60th ed. pp. F220–223, F241, CRC Press, Boca Raton, Fla., 1979.

[105] It has been reported that the reaction of F atoms with CH_4 at 25 K takes place with practically zero activation energy: Johnson and Andrews, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5736 (1980).

[106] For F_2 the following initiation step is possible: $F_2 + RH \rightarrow R\cdot + F\cdot + HF$ [first demonstrated by Miller, Koch, and McLafferty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 4992 (1956)]. ΔH for this reaction is equal to the small positive value of 5 kcal/mol. The possibility of this reaction (which does not require an initiator) explains why fluorination can take place without uv light (which would otherwise be needed to furnish the 37 kcal/mol necessary to break the F—F bond). Once the reaction has been initiated, the large amount of energy given off by the propagation steps is ample to cleave additional F_2 molecules. Indeed, it is the magnitude of this energy that is responsible for the cleavage of carbon chains by F_2.

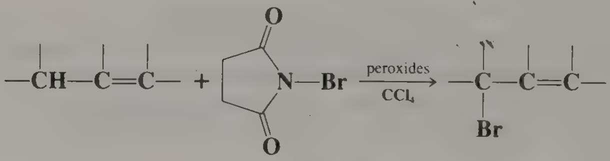
TABLE 4 Some *D* values[104]

Bond	*D*, kcal/mol	Bond	*D*, kcal/mol	Bond	*D*, kcal/mol
H—F	136	F—F	37	CH_3—F	109
H—Cl	103	Cl—Cl	58	CH_3—Cl	84
H—Br	87	Br—Br	46	CH_3—Br	70
H—I	71	I—I	36	CH_3—I	56

Bromination and chlorination of alkanes and cycloalkanes can also take place by an electrophilic mechanism if the reaction is catalyzed by $AgSbF_6$.[107] Electrophilic fluorination has already been mentioned (p. 621).

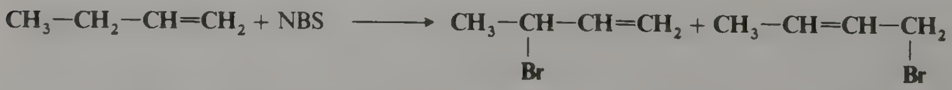
OS **II,** 89, 133, 443, 549; **III,** 737, 788; **IV,** 807, 921, 984; **V,** 145, 221, 328, 504, 635, 825; **50,** 33; **51,** 73; **59,** 195. Also see OS **V,** 921.

4-2 Allylic Halogenation



This reaction is actually a special case of **4-1,** but is important enough to be treated separately.[108] Olefins can be halogenated in the allylic position by a number of reagents, of which N-bromosuccinimide (NBS)[109] is by far the most common. When this reagent is used, the reaction is known as *Wohl–Ziegler bromination.* A nonpolar solvent is used, most often CCl_4. Other N-bromo amides, including various N-bromohydantoins and N-bromocaprolactam,[110] have also been used. To a much lesser extent, allylic chlorination has been carried out, with N-chlorosuccinimide, N-chloro-N-cyclohexylbenzenesulfonamide,[111] or *t*-butyl hypochlorite.[112] With any reagent an initiator is needed; this is usually a peroxide or, less often uv light.

The reaction is usually quite specific at the allylic position and good yields are obtained. However, when the allylic radical intermediate is unsymmetrical, allylic shifts can take place, so that mixtures of both possible products are obtained, e.g.,



$$CH_3-CH_2-CH{=}CH_2 + NBS \longrightarrow CH_3-\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH{=}CH_2 + CH_3-CH{=}CH-\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{|}{CH_2}}$$

When a double bond has two different α positions, e.g., $CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3$, a secondary position is substituted more readily than a primary. The relative reactivity of tertiary hydrogen is not clear, although many substitutions at allylic tertiary positions have been performed.[113] It is possible to brominate both sides of the double bond.[114] Because of the electron-withdrawing nature of bromine, the second bromine substitutes on the other side of the double bond rather than α to the first bromine.

---

[107] Olah, Renner, Schilling, and Mo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7686 (1973); See also Olah, Schilling, Renner, and Kerekes, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3472 (1974).

[108] For reviews, see Nechvatal, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **4,** 175–201 (1972); Novikov, Sevost'yanova, and Fainzil'berg, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 671–681 (1962), pp. 674–677; Horner and Winkelmann, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **3,** 151–198 (1964).

[109] For a review of this reagent, see Pizey, Ref. 82, vol. 2, pp. 1–63, 1974.

[110] Taub and Hino, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 263 (1960).

[111] Theilacker and Wessel, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **703,** 34 (1967).

[112] Walling and Thaler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3877 (1961).

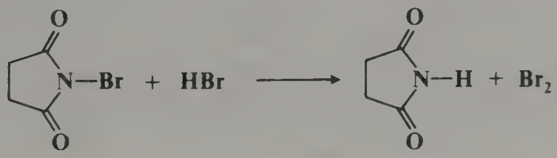
NBS is also a highly regioselective brominating agent at other positions, including positions α to a carbonyl group, to a C≡C triple bond, to a boron atom[115] (see p. 997), and to an aromatic ring (benzylic position). When both a double and a triple bond are in the same molecule, the preferred position is α to the triple bond.[116] It has been shown that the regioselectivity of NBS can be substantially increased by changing the solvent.[117]

That the mechanism of allylic bromination is of the free-radical type was demonstrated by Dauben and McCoy,[118] who showed that the reaction is very sensitive to free-radical initiators and inhibitors and indeed does not proceed at all unless at least a trace of initiator is present. Subsequent work indicated that the species that actually abstracts hydrogen from the substrate is the bromine atom.[119] The reaction is initiated by small amounts of Br•. Once it is formed, the main propagation steps are

Step 1 $\mathrm{Br}\cdot + \mathrm{RH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R}\cdot + \mathrm{HBr}$

Step 2 $\mathrm{R}\cdot + \mathrm{Br_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RBr} + \mathrm{Br}\cdot$

The source of the Br_2 is a fast ionic reaction between NBS and the HBr liberated in step 1:



The function of the NBS is therefore to provide a source of Br_2 in a low, steady-state concentration and to use up the HBr liberated in step 1.[120] The main evidence for this mechanism is that NBS and Br_2 show similar selectivity[121] and that the various N-bromo amides also show similar selectivity,[122] which is consistent with the hypothesis that the same species is abstracting in each case.[123]

It may be asked why, if Br_2 is the reacting species, it does not add to the double bond, either by an ionic or by a free-radical mechanism (see **5-27**). Apparently the concentration is too low.

---

[113] Dauben and McCoy, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 1577 (1959).

[114] Ucciani and Naudet, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 871 (1962).

[115] Brown and Yamamoto, *Synthesis* 699 (1972).

[116] Peifter, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 537 (1963).

[117] Offermann and Vögtle, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 464 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 471].

[118] Dauben and McCoy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4863 (1959).

[119] There is evidence that the mechanism may be more complicated than this: see Walling, El-Taliawi, and Zhao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5119 (1983); Skell, Tlumak, and Seshadri, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5125 (1983); Skell and Day, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 381–387 (1978); Tanner, Ruo, Takiguchi, Guillaume, Reed, Setiloane, Tan, and Meintzer, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2743 (1983); Skell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1838 (1984).

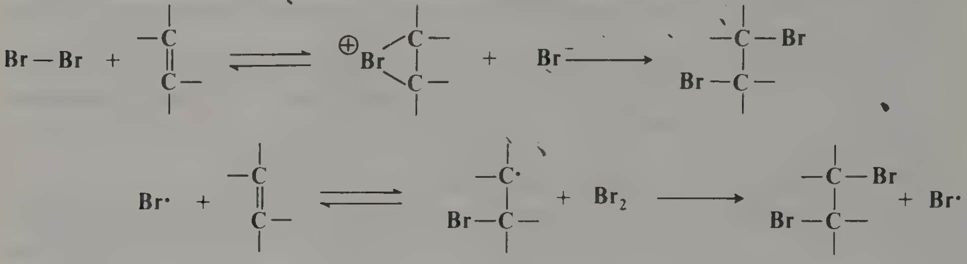
[120] This mechanism was originally suggested by Adam, Gosselain, and Goldfinger, *Nature* **171,** 704 (1953), *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **65,** 533 (1956).

[121] Walling, Rieger, and Tanner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3129 (1963); Russell and Desmond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3139 (1963); Russell, DeBoer, and Desmond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 365 (1963); Pearson and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3142 (1963); Skell, Tuleen, and Readio, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2850 (1963).

[122] Walling and Rieger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3134 (1963); Pearson and Martin, Ref. 121; Incremona and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 627 (1970).

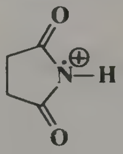
[123] For other evidence, see Day, Lindstrom, and Skell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5616 (1974).

In bromination of a double bond, only one atom of an attacking bromine molecule becomes attached to the substrate, whether the addition is electrophilic or free-radical:



The other bromine comes from another bromine-containing molecule or ion. If the concentration is sufficiently low, there is a low probability that the proper species will be in the vicinity once the intermediate forms. The intermediate in either case reverts to the initial species and the allylic substitution competes successfully. If this is true, it should be possible to brominate an olefin in the allylic position without competition from addition, even in the absence of NBS or a similar compound, if a very low concentration of bromine is used and if the HBr is removed as it is formed so that it is not available to complete the addition step. This has indeed been demonstrated.[124]

In polar solvents, the mechanism may be entirely different, involving electrophilic attack by Br^+. In protonating solvents the protonated radical **8** may be the abstracting species.[125]



8

Allylic chlorination has also been carried out[126] with N-chlorosuccinimide and either arylselenyl chlorides ArSeCl, aryl diselenides ArSeSeAr, or TsNSO as catalysts. Use of the selenium catalysts produces almost entirely the allylically rearranged chlorides in high yields. With TsNSO the products are the unrearranged chlorides in lower yields. A free-radical mechanism is unlikely in these reactions.

OS **IV,** 108; **V,** 825; **56,** 49.

4-3 Halogenation of Aldehydes

$$\mathbf{RCHO + Cl_2 \longrightarrow RCOCl}$$

Aldehydes can be directly converted to acyl chlorides by treatment with chlorine; however, the reaction operates only when the aldehyde does not contain an α hydrogen and even then it is not very useful. When there is an α hydrogen, α halogenation (**2-4**) occurs instead. Other sources of chlorine have also been used, among them SO_2Cl_2[127] and *t*-BuOCl.[128] The mechanisms are probably of the free-radical type. NBS (with uv light)[129] has been used to convert aldehydes to acyl bromides.

OS **I,** 155.

---

[124] McGrath and Tedder, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 80 (1961).

[125] Tanner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4674 (1964).

[126] Hori and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4204 (1979).

[127] Arai, *Nippon Kagaku Zasshi* **81,** 1450 (1960) [*CA* **56,** 2370f (1962)], *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 1280 (1964), **38,** 252 (1965).

[128] Walling and Mintz, Ref. 89.

[129] Cheung, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3809 (1979).

B. Substitution by Oxygen

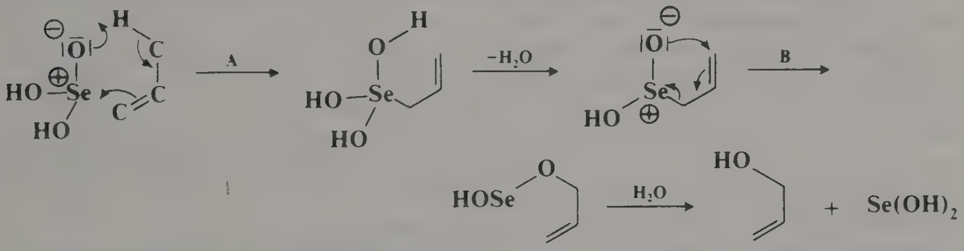
4-4 Hydroxylation at an Aliphatic Carbon
Hydroxylation or **Hydroxy-de-hydrogenation**[130]

$$R_3CH \xrightarrow[\text{silica gel}]{O_3} R_3COH$$

Compounds containing susceptible C—H bonds can be oxidized to alcohols.[131] Nearly always, the C—H bond involved is tertiary, so that the product is a tertiary alcohol. This is partly because tertiary C—H bonds are more susceptible to free-radical attack than primary and secondary bonds and partly because the reagents involved would oxidize primary and secondary alcohols further. In the best method the reagent is ozone and the substrate is adsorbed on silica gel.[132] Yields as high as 99% have been obtained by this method. Other reagents, which often give much lower yields, are chromic acid,[133] alkaline permanganate,[134] certain perbenzoic acids,[135] and peracetic acid with uv light.[136] Alkanes and cycloalkanes have been oxidized at secondary positions, to a mixture of alcohols and trifluoroacetates, by 30% aqueous H_2O_2 in trifluoroacetic acid.[137] This reagent does not oxidize the alcohols further and ketones are not found. As in the case of chlorination with N-haloamines and sulfuric acid (see **4-1**), the $\omega - 1$ position is the most favored.

When chromic acid is the reagent, the mechanism is probably as follows: a Cr^{6+} species abstracts a hydrogen to give $R_3C\bullet$, which is held in a solvent cage near the resulting Cr^{5+} species. The two species then combine to give R_3COCr^{4+}, which is hydrolyzed to the alcohol. This mechanism predicts retention of configuration; this is largely observed.[138] The oxidation by permanganate also involves predominant retention of configuration, and a similar mechanism has been proposed.[139]

Treatment of double-bond compounds with selenium dioxide introduces an OH group into the allylic position (see also **9-16**).[140] Allylic rearrangements are common. There is evidence that the mechanism does not involve free radicals but includes two pericyclic steps (**A** and **B**):[141]



---

[130] These names also apply to reactions **4-5** and **4-6.**

[131] For reviews, see Chinn, "Selection of Oxidants in Synthesis," pp. 7–11, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1971; Lee, in Augustine, "Oxidation," vol. 1, pp. 2–6, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969.

[132] Cohen, Keinan, Mazur, and Varkony, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2141 (1975); *Org. Synth.* **59,** 176; Keinan and Mazur, *Synthesis* 523 (1976); McKillop and Young, *Synthesis* 401–422 (1979), pp. 418–419.

[133] Sager and Bradley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 1187 (1956).

[134] Eastman and Quinn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4249 (1969).

[135] Schneider and Müller, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 146 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 153]; Takaishi, Fujikura, and Inamoto, *Synthesis* 293 (1983).

[136] Rotman and Mazur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6228 (1972); Mazur, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **41,** 145–166 (1975).

[137] Deno, Jedziniak, Messer, Meyer, Stroud, and Tomezsko, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2503 (1977). For another procedure, see Groves and Nemo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6243 (1983).

[138] Wiberg and Foster, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 423 (1961), *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 108 (1961); Wiberg and Eisenthal, *Tetrahedron* **20,** 1151 (1964).

[139] Wiberg and Fox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3487 (1963); Brauman and Pandell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 329 (1970); Stewart and Spitzer, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 1273 (1978).

[140] For reviews, see Rabjohn, *Org. React.* **24,** 261–415 (1976); Jerussi, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 301–326 (1970); Trachtenberg, in Augustine, Ref. 131, pp. 125–153.

[141] Sharpless and Lauer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7154 (1972); Arigoni, Vasella, Sharpless, and Jensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7917 (1973); Woggon, Ruther, and Egli, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 706 (1980). For other mechanistic proposals, see Schaefer, Horvath, and Klein, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2647 (1968); Trachtenberg, Nelson, and Carver, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1653 (1970); Bhalerao and Rapoport, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4835 (1971). Stephenson and Speth, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4683 (1979).

The step marked **A** is similar to the ene synthesis (**5-16**). The step marked **B** is a [2,3]sigmatropic rearrangement (see **8-39**). The reaction can also be accomplished with *t*-butyl hydroperoxide, if SeO_2 is present in catalytic amounts.[142] The SeO_2 is the actual reagent; the peroxide re-oxidizes the $Se(OH)_2$. This method makes work-up easier, but gives significant amounts of side products when the double bond is in a ring.[143] Alkynes generally give α,α'-dihydroxylation.[144]

Ketones and esters can be α-hydroxylated by treatment of their enolate forms (prepared by adding the ketone or ester to lithium diisopropylamide) with a molybdenum peroxide reagent (MoO_5–pyridine–HMPT) in tetrahydrofuran–hexane at −70°C[145] or by oxidation of their trimethylsilyl enol ethers with *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid,[146] or osmium tetroxide-N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide.[147] Yields in both methods are moderate to high. The enolate forms of amides and esters[148] and the enamine derivatives of ketones[149] can similarly be converted to their α-hydroxy derivatives by reaction with molecular oxygen. The MoO_5 method can also be applied to certain nitriles.[145]

Ketones can be α-hydroxylated in good yields, without conversion to the enolates, by treatment with *o*-iodosobenzoic acid[149a] or phenyliodoso acetate $PhI(OAc)_2$ in methanolic NaOH.[150] The latter reagent has also been used on carboxylic esters.[151]

OS **IV,** 23; **56,** 25; **59,** 176.

4-5 Hydroxylation at an Aromatic Carbon[152]

$$\mathbf{ArH + H_2O_2 + FeSO_4 \longrightarrow ArOH}$$

A mixture of hydrogen peroxide and ferrous sulfate,[153] called *Fenton's reagent,*[154] can be used to hydroxylate aromatic rings, though yields are usually not high. Biaryls are usually side products. Among other reagents used have been H_2O_2 and titanous ion; H_2O_2 in SbF_5–HF;[155] a mixture of ferrous ion, oxygen, ascorbic acid, and ethylenetetraaminetetraacetic acid (*Udenfriend's reagent*);[156] α-azo hydroperoxides ArN═NCHPhOOH;[157] O_2 and KOH in liquid NH_3;[158] and peracids such as pernitrous and trifluoroperacetic acids.

Much work has been done on the mechanism of the reaction with Fenton's reagent, and it is known that free aryl radicals (formed by a process such as $HO\bullet + ArH \rightarrow Ar\bullet + H_2O$) are not intermediates. The mechanism is essentially that outlined on p. 611, with HO• as the attacking species,[159] formed by

---

[142] Umbreit and Sharpless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5526 (1977). See also Chhabra, Hayano, Ohtsuka, Shirahama, and Matsumoto, *Chem. Lett.* 1703 (1981); Uemura, Fukuzawa, Toshimitsu, and Okano, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 87 (1982).

[143] Warpehoski, Chabaud, and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2897 (1982).

[144] Chabaud and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4202 (1979).

[145] Vedejs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5944 (1974); Vedejs and Telschow, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 740 (1976).

[146] Rubottom, Vazquez, and Pelegrina, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4319 (1974); Rubottom and Gruber, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1599 (1978); Hassner, Reuss, and Pinnick, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3427 (1975).

[147] McCormick, Tomasik, and Johnson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 607 (1981).

[148] Wasserman and Lipshutz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1731 (1975).

[149] Cuvigny, Valette, Larcheveque, and Normant, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **155,** 147 (1978).

[149a] Moriarty and Hou, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 691 (1984).

[150] Moriarty, Hu, and Gupta, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1283 (1981).

[151] Moriarty and Hu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2747 (1981).

[152] For reviews, see Vysotskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **42,** 851–856 (1974); Sangster, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 1, pp. 133–191, Interscience, New York, 1971; Metelitsa, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 563–580 (1971); Enisov and Metelitsa, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 656–665 (1969); Loudon, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **5,** 47–72 (1961).

[153] For a review of reactions of H_2O_2 and metal ions with all kinds of organic compounds, including aromatic rings, see Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, in Swern, "Organic Peroxides," vol. 2, pp. 269–336, Interscience, New York, 1970. See also Sheldon and Kochi, "Metal-Catalyzed Oxidations of Organic Compounds," Academic Press, New York, 1981.

[154] For a discussion of Fenton's reagent, see Walling, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 125–131 (1975).

[155] Gesson, Jacquesy, Jouannetaud, and Morellet, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3095 (1983); Jacquesy, Jouannetaud, and Morellet, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3099 (1983).

[156] Udenfriend, Clark, Axelrod, and Brodie, *J. Biol. Chem.* **208,** 731 (1954); Brodie, Shore, and Udenfriend, *J. Biol. Chem.* **208,** 741 (1954).

[157] Tezuka, Narita, Ando, and Oae, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3045 (1981).

[158] Malykhin, Shtark, and Shteingarts, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1661 (1982).

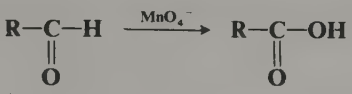
$$\mathrm{Fe^{2+} + H_2O_2 \longrightarrow Fe^{3+} + OH^- + HO\bullet}$$

The rate-determining step is formation of HO• and not its reaction with the aromatic substrate.

Another hydroxylation reaction is the *Elbs reaction.*[160] In this method phenols can be oxidized to *para*-diphenols with $K_2S_2O_8$ in alkaline solution.[161] Primary, secondary, or tertiary aromatic amines give predominant or exclusive ortho substitution unless both ortho positions are blocked, in which case para substitution is found. The reaction with amines is called the *Boyland–Sims oxidation*. Yields are low with either phenols or amines, generally under 50%. The mechanisms are not clear but may involve attack by $S_2O_8{}^{2-}$ at the oxygen or nitrogen, followed by rearrangement to the products.[162]

See also **1-31** and **3-20.**

4-6 Oxidation of Aldehydes to Carboxylic Acids



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}H \xrightarrow{MnO_4^-} R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH}$$

Oxidation of aldehydes to carboxylic acids is one of the most common oxidation reactions in organic chemistry[163] and has been carried out with many oxidizing agents, the most popular of which is permanganate in acid, basic, or neutral solution. Chromic acid and bromine are other reagents frequently employed. Silver oxide is a fairly specific oxidizing agent for aldehydes and does not readily attack other groups. Benedict's and Fehling's solutions oxidize aldehydes,[164] and a test for aldehydes depends on this reaction, but the method is seldom used for preparative purposes and in any case gives very poor results with aromatic aldehydes. α,β-Unsaturated aldehydes can be oxidized by sodium chlorite without disturbing the double bond.[165] Aldehydes are also oxidized to carboxylic acids by atmospheric oxygen, but the actual direct oxidation product in this case is the peroxy acid RCO_3H,[166] which with another molecule of aldehyde disproportionates to give two molecules of acid (see **4-8**).[167]

Mechanisms of aldehyde oxidation[168] are not firmly established, but there seem to be at least two main types—a free-radical mechanism and an ionic one. In the free-radical process, the aldehydic hydrogen is abstracted to leave an acyl radical, which obtains OH from the oxidizing agent. In the ionic process, the first step is addition of a species OZ^- to the carbonyl bond to give

---

[159] Jefcoate, Lindsay-Smith, and Norman, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1013 (1969); Brook, Castle, Lindsay-Smith, Higgins, and Morris, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 687 (1982); Lai and Piette, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 775 (1979).

[160] For a review, see Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, Ref. 153, pp. 319–323.

[161] For a method for the ortho hydroxylation of phenols, see Capdevielle and Maumy, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1573, 1577 (1982).

[162] Behrman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3478 (1963), **89,** 2424 (1967); Ogata and Akada, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 5945 (1970). See also Walling, Camaioni, and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4814 (1978).

[163] For reviews, see Chinn, Ref. 131, pp. 63–70; Lee, Ref. 131, pp. 81–86.

[164] For a review, see Nigh, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. B, pp. 31–34, Academic Press, New York, 1973.

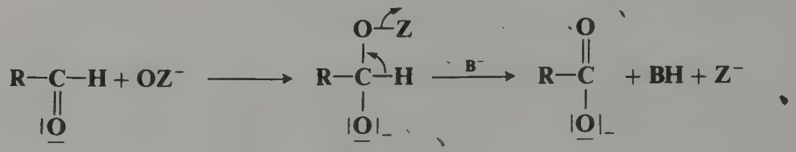
[165] Bal, Childers, and Pinnick, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2091 (1981).

[166] For a review of the preparation of peroxy acids by this and other methods, see Swern, in Swern, Ref. 153, vol. 1, pp. 313–516.

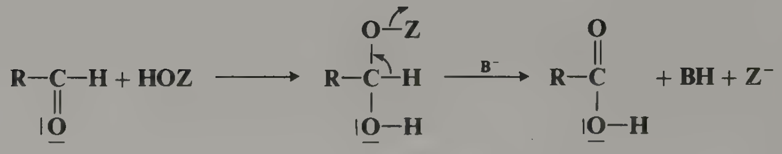
[167] For a review of the autoxidation of aldehydes, see Maslov and Blyumberg, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 155–167 (1976). For a review of photochemical oxidation of aldehydes by O_2, see Niclause, Lemaire, and Letort, *Adv. Photochem.* **4,** 25–48 (1966).

[168] For a review, see Roček, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 1, pp. 461–505, Interscience, New York, 1966.

9 in alkaline solution and **10** in acid or neutral solution. The aldehydic hydrogen of **9** or **10** is then lost as a proton to a base, while Z leaves with its electron pair.

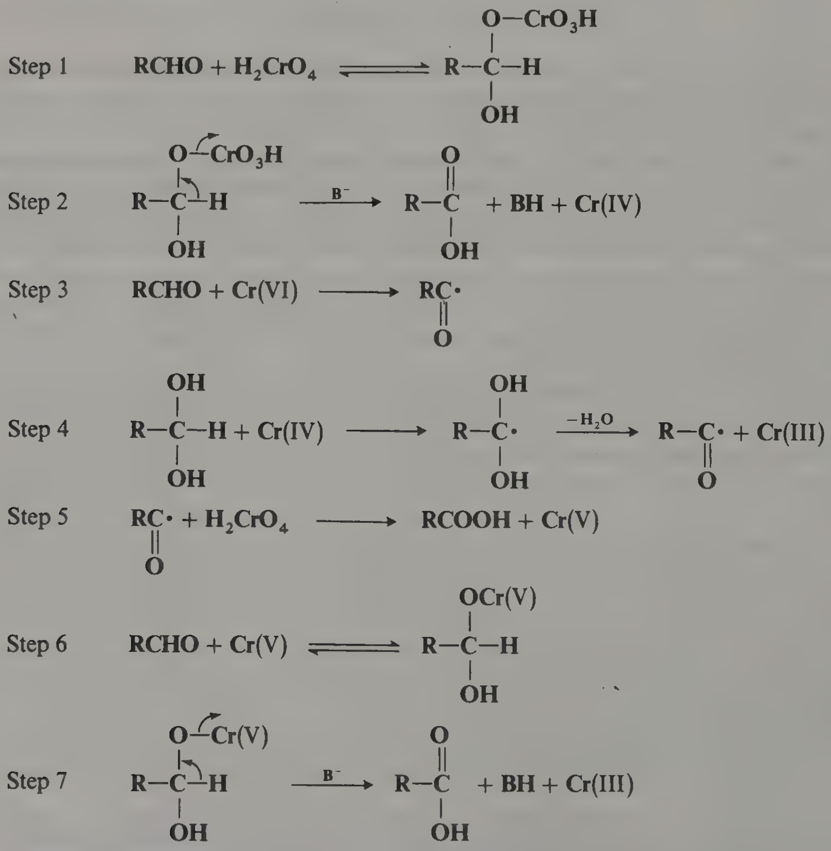


9


R—C—H + HOZ
B⁻
+ BH + Z⁻

10

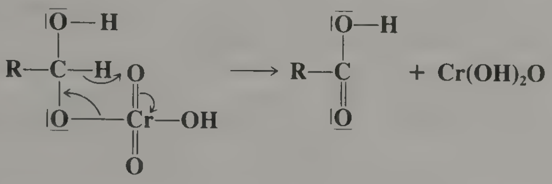
For oxidation with acid dichromate the picture seems to be quite complex, with several processes of both types going on:[169]


Step 1
RCHO + H₂CrO₄
Step 2
B⁻
+ BH + Cr(IV)
Step 3
RCHO + Cr(VI)
Step 4
+ Cr(IV)
−H₂O
+ Cr(III)
Step 5
+ H₂CrO₄
RCOOH + Cr(V)
Step 6
RCHO + Cr(V)
Step 7
B⁻
+ BH + Cr(III)

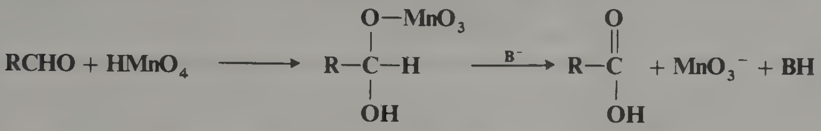
---

[169] Wiberg and Richardson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84**, 2800 (1962); Wiberg and Szeimies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96**, 1889 (1974). See also Roček and Ng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96**, 1522, 2840 (1974).

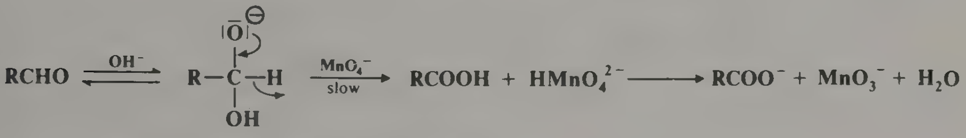
Steps 1 and 2 constitute an oxidation by the ionic pathway by Cr(VI), and steps 6 and 7 a similar oxidation by Cr(V), which is produced by an electron-transfer process. Either Cr(VI) (step 3) or Cr(IV) (step 4) [Cr(IV) is produced in step 2] may abstract a hydrogen and the resulting acyl radical is converted to carboxylic acid in step 5. Thus, chromium in three oxidation states is instrumental in oxidizing aldehydes. Still another possible process has been proposed in which the chromic acid ester decomposes as follows:[170]



The mechanism with permanganate is less well-known, but an ionic mechanism has been proposed[171] for neutral and acid permanganate, similar to steps 1 and 2 for dichromate:



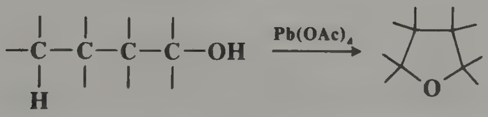
For alkaline permanganate, the following mechanism has been proposed:[172]



$$\text{Mn(V)} + \text{Mn(VII)} \longrightarrow 2\text{Mn(VI)}$$

OS **I,** 166; **II,** 302, 315, 538; **III,** 745; **IV,** 302, 493, 499, 919, 972, 974.

4-7 Formation of Cyclic Ethers



Alcohols with a hydrogen in the δ position can be cyclized with lead tetraacetate.[173] The reaction is usually carried out at about 80°C (most often in refluxing benzene) but can also be done at room temperature if the reaction mixture is irradiated with uv light. Tetrahydrofurans are formed in high yields. Little or no four- and six-membered cyclic ethers (oxetanes and tetrahydropyrans, respectively) are obtained even when γ and ε hydrogens are present. The reaction has also been carried out with a mixture of halogen (Br_2 or I_2) and a salt or oxide of silver or mercury (especially HgO or AgOAc),[174] and with ceric ammonium nitrate (CAN).[175] The following mechanism is likely for the lead tetraacetate reaction:[176]

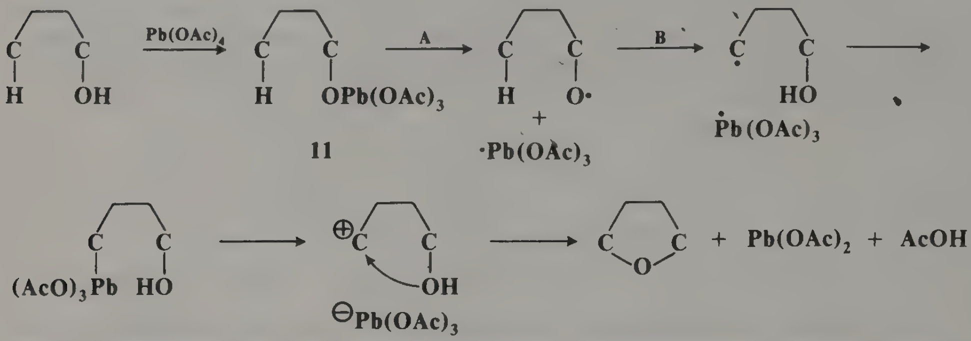
---

[170] See Roček and Ng, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3348 (1973).

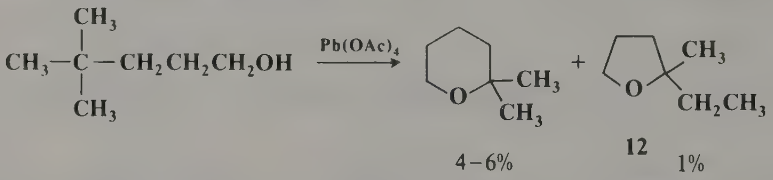
[171] See, for example, Freeman, Lin, and Moore, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 56 (1982); Jain and Banerji, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 60 (1983).

[172] Freeman, Brant, Hester, Kamego, Kasner, McLaughlin, and Paull, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 982 (1970).

[173] For reviews, see Mihailović and Partch, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **2,** 97–182 (1972); Mihailović and Čeković, *Synthesis* 209–224 (1970). For a review of the chemistry of lead tetraacetate, see Butler, in Pizey, Ref. 82, vol. 3, pp. 277–419, 1977.

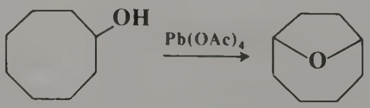


though **11** has never been isolated. The step marked **A** is a photochemical cleavage if irradiation is used; otherwise it is a thermal cleavage. The step marked **B** is a 1,5 internal hydrogen abstraction. Such abstractions are well-known (see p. 1044) and are greatly favored over 1,4 or 1,6 abstractions (the small amounts of tetrahydropyran formed result from 1,6 abstractions). Evidence for the intermediacy of a carbocation is that 4,4-dimethylpentanol, which cannot give a normal product since it has no δ hydrogen, gave 1% of the rearranged product 2-methyl-2-ethyltetrahydrofuran (**12**) in addition to 4 to 6% of the tetrahydropyran:[177]



12 could only have been produced by a 1,2-shift of a methyl in the carbocation intermediate $^+CH_2CMe_2CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$. Carbocations, but not free radicals, commonly rearrange in this manner (see Chapter 18).

Reactions that sometimes compete are oxidation to the aldehyde or acid (**9-3** and **9-22**) and fragmentation of the substrate into $H\text{—}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}\text{—}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}\text{—}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}\text{—}OAc$ and $\text{—}\overset{|}{C}\text{=}O$. When the OH group is on a ring of at least seven members, a transannular product may be formed, e.g.,[178]



There are no references in *Organic Syntheses*, but see OS **V**, 692; **59**, 147, for related reactions.

---

[174] Akhtar and Barton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86**, 1528 (1964); Sneen and Matheny, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86**, 3905, 5503 (1964); Deluzarche, Maillard, Rimmelin, Schue, and Sommer, *Chem. Commun.* 976 (1970); Mihailović, Gojkovič, and Konstantinović, *Tetrahedron* **29**, 3675 (1973); Roscher and Jedziniak, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1049 (1973). For a review, see Kalvoda and Heusler, *Synthesis* 501–526 (1971).

[175] See, for example, Trahanovsky, Young, and Nave, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2501 (1969); Doyle, Zuidema, and Bade, *J. Org. Chem.* **40**, 1454 (1975).

[176] Mihailović, Čeković, Maksimović, Jeremić, Lorenc, and Mamuzić, *Tetrahedron* **21**, 2799 (1965).

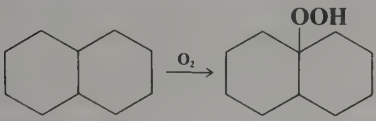
[177] Mihailović, Čeković, and Jeremić, *Tetrahedron* **21**, 2813 (1965).

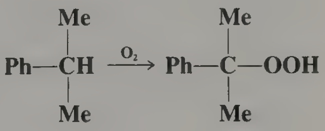
[178] Cope, Gordon, Moon, and Park, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 3119 (1965); Moriarty and Walsh, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 465 (1965); Mihailović, Čeković, Andrejević, Matić, and Jeremić, *Tetrahedron* **24**, 4947 (1968).

4-8 Formation of Hydroperoxides
Hydroperoxy-de-hydrogenation

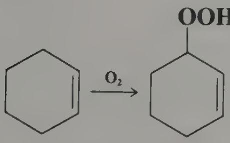
$$RH + O_2 \longrightarrow R—O—O—H$$

The slow atmospheric oxidation (*slow* meaning without combustion) of a C—H bond to a C—O—O—H group is called *autoxidation*.[179] The reaction occurs when compounds are allowed to stand in air and is catalyzed by light, so that unwanted autoxidations can be greatly slowed by keeping the compounds in dark places. The hydroperoxides produced often react further to alcohols, ketones, and more complicated products, so that the reaction is not often used for preparative purposes, although in some cases hydroperoxides have been prepared in good yield.[179a] It is because of autoxidation that foods, rubber, paint, lubricating oils, etc. deteriorate on exposure to the atmosphere over periods of time. On the other hand, a useful application of autoxidation is the atmospheric drying of paints and varnishes. As with other free-radical reactions of C—H bonds, some bonds are attacked more readily than others,[180] and these are the ones we have seen before (pp. 614–616), although the selectivity is very low at high temperatures and in the gas phase. The reaction can be carried out successfully at tertiary (to a lesser extent, secondary), allylic (though allylic rearrangements are common), and benzylic R.[181] The following are actual examples:

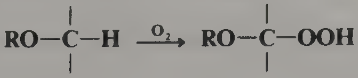




$$Ph—\overset{\overset{\large Me}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\large Me}{|}}{C}}H \xrightarrow{O_2} Ph—\overset{\overset{\large Me}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\large Me}{|}}{C}}—OOH$$



Another susceptible position is aldehydic C—H, but the peracids so produced are not easily isolated[166] since they are converted to the corresponding carboxylic acids (reaction **4-6**). The α positions of ethers are also easily attacked by oxygen:



$$RO—\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}—H \xrightarrow{O_2} RO—\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}—OOH$$

but the resulting hydroperoxides are almost never isolated. However, this reaction constitutes a hazard in the storage of ethers since solutions of these hydroperoxides and their rearrangement products in ethers are potential spontaneous explosives.[182]

Oxygen itself (a diradical) is too unreactive to be the species that actually abstracts the hydrogen.

---

[179] The term autoxidation actually applies to any slow oxidation with atmospheric oxygen. For reviews, see Sheldon and Kochi, *Adv. Catal.* **25,** 272–413 (1976); Howard, in Kochi, Ref. 6, vol. 2, pp. 3–62; Lloyd, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **4,** 1–131 (1973); Betts, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **25,** 265–288 (1971); Huyser, "Free-Radical Chain Reactions," Ref. 1, pp. 306–312; Chinn, Ref. 131, pp. 29–39; Ingold, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **2,** 1–9 (1969); Mayo, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 193–201 (1968); Waters, "Mechanisms of Oxidation of Organic Compounds," pp. 6–16, Wiley, New York, 1964, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **5,** 1–46 (1961), pp. 17–26. For a monograph on these and similar reactions, see Sheldon and Kochi, Ref. 153.

[179a] For a review of the synthesis of alkyl peroxides and hydroperoxides, see Sheldon, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Peroxides," pp. 161–200, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[180] For a discussion, see Korcek, Chenier, Howard, and Ingold, *Can. J. Chem.* **50,** 2285 (1972), and previous papers in this series.

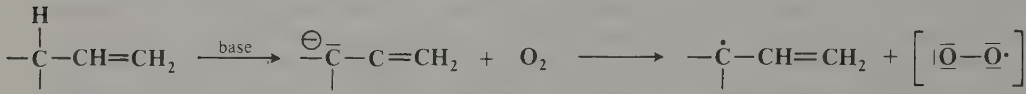
[181] For a review of autoxidation at allylic and benzylic positions, see Voronenkov, Vinogradov, and Belyaev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 944–952 (1970).

[182] For methods of detection and removal of peroxides from either solvents, see Gordon and Ford, "The Chemist's Companion," p. 437, Wiley, New York, 1972; Burfield, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3821 (1982).

But if a trace of free radical (say R′•) is produced by some initiating process, *it* reacts with oxygen to give R′—O—O• ; since this type of radical *does* abstract hydrogen, the chain is

$$\mathrm{R'OO\cdot + RH \longrightarrow R\cdot + R'OOH}$$
$$\mathrm{R\cdot + O_2 \longrightarrow R{-}O{-}O\cdot}$$
$$\text{etc.}$$

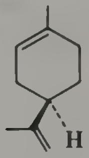
In at least some cases (in alkaline media)[183] the radical R• can be produced by formation of a carbanion and its oxidation (by O_2) to a radical, e.g.,[184]



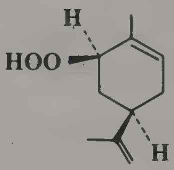
$$-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-CH{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \overset{\ominus}{-\underset{|}{\bar{C}}}-C{=}CH_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\dot{C}}-CH{=}CH_2 + \left[\,|\bar{O}-\bar{O}\cdot\,\right]$$

Autoxidations in alkaline media can also proceed by a different mechanism: R—H + base → R^- + O_2 → ROO^- [185]

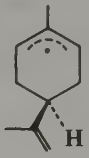
When alkenes are treated with oxygen that has been photosensitized (p. 211), they are substituted by OOH in the allylic position in a synthetically useful reaction.[186] Although superficially similar to autoxidation, this reaction is clearly different because 100% allylic rearrangement always takes place. The reagent here is not the ground-state oxygen (a triplet) but an excited singlet state[187] (in which all electrons are paired), and the function of the photosensitization is to promote the oxygen to this singlet state. Singlet oxygen can also be produced by nonphotochemical means,[188] e.g., by the reaction between H_2O_2 and NaOCl[189] or between ozone and triphenyl phosphite.[190] The oxygen generated by either photochemical or nonphotochemical methods reacts with olefins in the same way;[191] this is evidence that singlet oxygen is the reacting species in the photochemical reaction and not some hypothetical complex between triplet oxygen and the photosensitizer, as had previously been suggested. The fact that 100% allylic rearrangement always takes place is incompatible with a free-radical mechanism, and further evidence that free radicals are not involved comes from the treatment of optically active limonene (**13**) with singlet oxygen. Among other products is the



13



14



15

---

[183] For a review of base-catalyzed autoxidations in general, see Sosnovsky and Zaret, in Swern, Ref. 153, vol. 1, pp. 517–560.

[184] Barton and Jones, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3563 (1965); Russell and Bemis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5491 (1966).

[185] Gersmann and Bickel, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 2230 (1971).

[186] For reviews, see Wasserman and Ives, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 1825–1852 (1981); Gollnick and Kuhn, in Wasserman and Murray, Ref. 187, pp. 287–427; Denny and Nickon, *Org. React.* **20,** 133–336 (1973); Adams, in Augustine, Ref. 131, vol. 2, pp. 65–112.

[187] For a monograph on singlet oxygen, see Wasserman and Murray, "Singlet Oxygen," Academic Press, New York, 1979. For reviews, see Frimer, in Patai, Ref. 179a, pp. 201–234; Gorman and Rodgers, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **10,** 205–231 (1981); Shinkarenko and Aleskovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 220–231 (1981); Shlyapintokh and Ivanov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 99–110 (1976); Ohloff, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 481–502 (1975); Kearns, *Chem. Rev.* **71,** 395–427 (1971); Wayne, *Adv. Photochem.* **7,** 311–371 (1969).

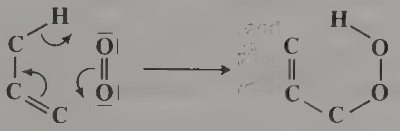
[188] For reviews, see Turro and Ramamurthy, in de Mayo, "Rearrangements in Ground and Excited States," vol. 3, pp. 1–23, Academic Press, New York, 1980; Murray, in Wasserman and Murray, Ref. 187, pp. 59–114. For a general monograph, see Adam and Cilento, "Chemical and Biological Generation of Excited States," Academic Press, New York, 1982.

[189] Foote and Wexler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3879 (1964).

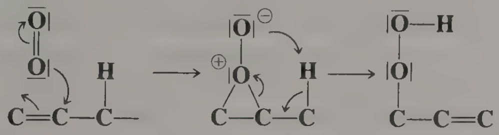
[190] Murray and Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5358 (1969); Bartlett, Mendenhall, and Durham, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4269 (1980).

[191] Foote, Wexler, Ando, and Higgins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 975 (1968). See also McKeown and Waters, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1040 (1966).

optically active hydroperoxide **14**, though if **15** were an intermediate, it could not give an optically active product since it possesses a plane of symmetry.[192] In contrast, autoxidation of **13** gave optically inactive **14** (a mixture of four diastereomers in which the two pairs of enantiomers are present as racemic mixtures). As this example shows, singlet oxygen reacts faster with more highly substituted than with less highly substituted alkenes (note that only the trisubstituted double bond of **13** was attacked). The order of alkene reactivity is tetrasubstituted > trisubstituted > disubstituted. Electron-withdrawing substituents deactivate the olefin.[193] In simple trisubstituted olefins, there is a general preference for the hydrogen to be removed from the more highly congested side of the double bond.[194] Several mechanisms have been proposed for the reaction with singlet oxygen.[195] One of these is a pericyclic mechanism, similar to that of the ene synthesis



(**5-16**) and to the first step of the reaction between alkenes and SeO_2 (**4-4**). Another involves addition of singlet oxygen to the double bond to give a peroxirane (**16**), followed by internal proton transfer.[196]



16

Still other proposed mechanisms involve diradicals or dipolar intermediates.[197]

OS **IV,** 895.

4-9 Formation of Peroxides
Alkyldioxy-de-hydrogenation

$$\mathbf{RH + R'OOH \xrightarrow{CuCl} ROOR'}$$

Peroxy groups (ROO) can be introduced into susceptible organic molecules by treatment with a hydroperoxide in the presence of cuprous chloride or other catalysts, e.g., cobalt and manganese salts.[198] Very high yields can be obtained. The type of hydrogen replaced is similar to that with N-bromosuccinimide (reaction **4-2**), i.e., mainly benzylic, allylic, and tertiary. The mechanism is therefore of the free-radical type, involving ROO• formed from ROOH and the metal ion.

---

[192] Schenck, Gollnick, Buchwald, Schroeter and Ohloff, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **674,** 93 (1964); Schenck, Neumüller, Ohloff, and Schroeter, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **687,** 26 (1965).

[193] For example, see Foote and Denny, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5162 (1971).

[194] Schulte-Elte, Muller, and Rautenstrauch, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 2777 (1978); Schulte-Elte and Rautenstrauch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1738 (1980); Orfanopoulos, Grdina, and Stephenson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 275 (1979).

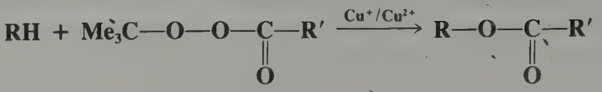
[195] For reviews of the mechanism, see Stephenson, Grdina, and Orfanopoulos, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 419–425 (1980); Gollnick and Kuhn, Ref. 186, pp. 288–341; Frimer, *Chem. Rev.* **79,** 359–387 (1979); Foote, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 104–110 (1968), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **27,** 635–645 (1971); Gollnick, *Adv. Photochem.* **6,** 1–122 (1968); Kearns, Ref. 187. See also Stephenson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1005 (1980).

[196] For evidence in favor of this mechanism, at least with some kinds of substrates, see Jefford and Rimbault, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6437 (1978); Okada and Mukai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6509 (1978); Paquette, Hertel, Gleiter, and Böhm, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6510 (1978); Hurst and Schuster, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6854 (1982).

[197] See, for example, Jefford, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 2534 (1981). See also Asveld and Kellogg, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1250 (1982).

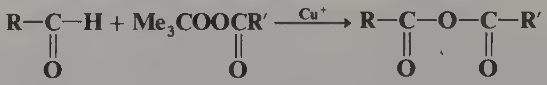
[198] For a review, see Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, Ref. 153, pp. 153–268. See also Ref. 179a.

4-10 **Acyloxylation** or **Acyloxy-de-hydrogenation**



$$\mathrm{RH} + \mathrm{Me_3C{-}O{-}O{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Cu^+/Cu^{2+}}} \mathrm{R{-}O{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'}$$

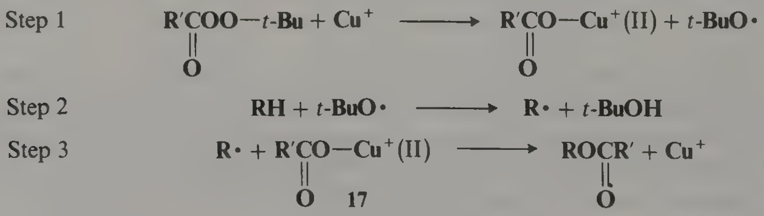
Susceptible positions of organic compounds can be directly acyloxylated by *t*-butyl peresters, the most frequently used being acetic and benzoic ($R' = \mathrm{Me}$ or Ph).[199] The reaction requires a catalyst (cuprous ion is the actual catalyst, but a trace is all that is necessary, and such traces are usually present in cupric compounds, so that these are often used) and without it is not selective. Susceptible positions are similar to those in **4-8**: benzylic, allylic, and the α position of ethers and sulfides. Terminal olefins are substituted almost entirely in the 3 position, i.e., with only a small amount of allylic rearrangement, but internal olefins generally give mixtures containing a large amount of allylic-shift product. If the reaction with olefins is carried out in an excess of another acid R″COOH, the ester produced is of *that* acid ROCOR″. Aldehydes give anhydrides:



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}H} + \mathrm{Me_3COO\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}R'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Cu^+}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'}$$

Acyloxylation has also been achieved with metallic acetates such as lead tetraacetate[200] and mercuric acetate.[201] In this case not only does the reaction take place at allylic and benzylic positions and at those α to an OR or SR group but also at positions α to the carbonyl groups of aldehydes, ketones, or esters and at those α to two carbonyl groups ($\mathrm{ZCH_2Z'}$). It is likely that in the latter cases it is the enol forms that react. Ketones can be α-acylated indirectly by treatment of various enol derivatives with metallic acetates, for example, enol silyl ethers with silver carboxylates–iodine,[202] enol thioethers with lead tetraacetate,[203] and enamines with lead tetraacetate[204] or thallium triacetate.[205] Methylbenzenes have been acetoxylated in the methyl group, in moderate yields, with sodium peroxydisulfate in boiling acetic acid in the presence of sodium acetate and Cu(II) acetate.[206] Palladium acetate converts alkenes to vinyl and/or allylic acetates.[207]

Studies of the mechanism of the cuprous-catalyzed reaction show that the most common mechanism is the following:[208]



Step 1 $$\mathrm{R'\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}OO{-}\mathit{t}\text{-}Bu} + \mathrm{Cu^+} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R'\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}O{-}Cu^+(II)} + \mathit{t}\text{-}\mathrm{BuO}\cdot$$

Step 2 $$\mathrm{RH} + \mathit{t}\text{-}\mathrm{BuO}\cdot \longrightarrow \mathrm{R}\cdot + \mathit{t}\text{-}\mathrm{BuOH}$$

Step 3 $$\mathrm{R}\cdot + \underset{\mathbf{17}}{\mathrm{R'\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}O{-}Cu^+(II)}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RO\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}R'} + \mathrm{Cu^+}$$

---

[199] For reviews, see Rawlinson and Sosnovsky, *Synthesis* 1–28 (1972); Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, in Swern, Ref. 153, vol. 1, pp. 585–608; Doumaux, in Augustine, Ref. 131, vol. 2, pp. 141–185 (1971); Sosnovsky and Lawesson, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 269–276 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 218–225].

[200] For a review of lead tetraacetate, see Butler, Ref. 173.

[201] For a review, see Rawlinson and Sosnovsky, *Synthesis* 567–602 (1973).

[202] Rubottom, Mott, and Juve, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2717 (1981).

[203] Trost and Tanigawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4413 (1979).

[204] See Butler, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 499–500 (1976).

[205] Kuehne and Giacobbe, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3359 (1968).

[206] Belli, Giordano, and Citterio, *Synthesis* 477 (1980).

[207] For reviews, see Rylander, "Organic Synthesis with Noble Metal Catalysts," pp. 80–87, Academic Press, New York, 1973; Jira and Freiesleben, *Organomet. React.* **3,** 1–190 (1972), pp. 44–84; Heck, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **16,** 221–242 (1971), pp. 231–237; Tsuji, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 109–255 (1969), pp. 132–143.

[208] Kharasch, Sosnovsky, and Yang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5819 (1959); Kochi and Mains, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1862 (1965).

This mechanism, involving a free radical R•, is compatible with the allylic shifts found.[209] The finding that *t*-butyl peresters labeled with ^{18}O in the carbonyl oxygen gave ester with 50% of the label in each oxygen[210] is in accord with a combination of R• with the intermediate **17,** in which the copper is ionically bound, so that the oxygens are essentially equivalent. Other evidence is that *t*-butoxy radicals have been trapped with dienes.[211] Much less is known about the mechanisms of the reactions with metal acetates.[212]

Free-radical acyloxylation of aromatic substrates has been accomplished with a number of reagents including cupric benzoate[213] (see also **3-20**), benzoyl peroxide–iodine,[214] silver(II) complexes,[215] and cobalt(III) trifluoroacetate.[216]

OS **III,** 3; **V,** 70, 151.

C. Substitution by Sulfur

4-11 **Chlorosulfonation** or **Chlorosulfo-de-hydrogenation**

$$\mathbf{RH + SO_2 + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} RSO_2Cl}$$

The chlorosulfonation of organic molecules with chlorine and sulfur dioxide is called the *Reed reaction*.[217] In scope and range of products obtained, the reaction is similar to **4-1.** The mechanism is also similar, except that there are two additional main propagation steps:

$$\mathbf{R\cdot + SO_2 \longrightarrow R{-}SO_2\cdot}$$

$$\mathbf{R{-}SO_2\cdot + Cl_2 \longrightarrow R{-}SO_2Cl + Cl\cdot}$$

Chlorosulfenation[218] can be accomplished by treatment with SCl_2 and uv light: $RH + SCl_2 \xrightarrow{h\nu} RSCl$.

D. Substitution by Nitrogen

4-12 Nitration of Alkanes
Nitration or **Nitro-de-hydrogenation**

$$\mathbf{RH + HNO_3 \xrightarrow{400°C} RNO_2}$$

Nitration of alkanes can be carried out in the gas phase at about 400°C or in the liquid phase.[219] The reaction is not practical for the production of pure products for any alkane except methane. For other alkanes, not only does the reaction produce mixtures of the mono-, di-, and polynitrated alkanes at every combination of positions, but extensive chain cleavage occurs.[220] The mechanism of the reaction has been the subject of considerable study. Titov has demonstrated[221] that nitric acid has no effect on alkanes in the absence of nitrogen dioxide, which suggests that the abstracting species is NO_2 (a stable free radical). The principal product-forming steps are

---

[209] Goering and Mayer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3753 (1964); Denney, Appelbaum, and Denney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4969 (1962).

[210] Denney, Denney, and Feig, *Tetrahedron Lett.* no. 15, p. 19 (1959).

[211] Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2785, 3271 (1962); Story, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 401 (1962).

[212] See, for example, Jones and Mellor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 511 (1977).

[213] Kaeding, Kerlinger, and Collins, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3754 (1965).

[214] For example, see Kovacic, Reid, and Brittain, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2152 (1970).

[215] Nyberg and Wistrand, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2613 (1978).

[216] Kochi, Tang, and Bernath, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7114 (1973).

[217] For reviews, see Walling, Ref. 1, pp. 393–396; Gilbert, "Sulfonation and Related Reactions," pp. 126–131, Interscience, New York, 1965.

[218] Müller and Schmidt, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 3050 (1963), **97,** 2614 (1964). For a review of the formation and reactions of sulfenyl halides, see Kühle, *Synthesis* 561–580 (1970), 563–586, 617–638 (1971).

[219] For reviews, see Ogata, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 164, part C, pp. 295–342, 1978; Ballod and Shtern, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 721–737 (1976); Sosnovsky, Ref. 72, pp. 216–234.

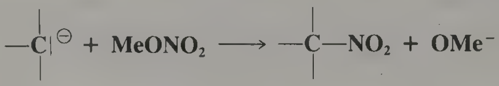
[220] For a discussion of the mechanism of this cleavage, see Matasa and Hass, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 1284 (1971).

$$RH + \cdot NO_2 \longrightarrow R\cdot + HNO_2$$

$$R\cdot + \cdot NO_2 \longrightarrow RNO_2$$

The only purpose of the nitric acid is to furnish a supply of nitrogen dioxide.

Activated positions (e.g., ZCH_2Z' compounds) can be nitrated by fuming nitric acid in acetic acid, by acetyl nitrate and an acid catalyst,[222] or by alkyl nitrates under alkaline conditions.[223] In the latter case it is the carbanionic form of the substrate that is actually nitrated. What is isolated under these alkaline conditions is the conjugate base of the nitro compound. Yields are not high.



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}|^{\ominus} + MeONO_2 \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-NO_2 + OMe^-$$

Of course, the mechanism in this case is not of the free-radical type at all but is electrophilic substitution with respect to the carbon (similar to the mechanisms of **2-7** and **2-8**). Positions activated by only one electron-withdrawing group, e.g., α positions of simple ketones, nitriles, sulfones, or N,N-dialkyl amides, can be nitrated with alkyl nitrates if a very strong base, e.g., *t*-BuOK or $NaNH_2$, is present to convert the substrate to the carbanionic form.[224] Electrophilic nitration of alkanes has been performed with nitronium salts, e.g., $NO_2^+ PF_6^-$ and with HNO_3–H_2SO_4 mixtures, but mixtures of nitration and cleavage products are obtained and yields are generally low.[225]

Aliphatic nitro compounds can be α nitrated [$R_2CHNO_2 \longrightarrow R_2C(NO_2)_2$] by treatment of their conjugate bases $R\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}NO_2$ with NO_2^- and $K_3Fe(CN)_6$.[226]

OS **I,** 390; **II,** 440, 512.

4-13 The Direct Conversion of Aldehydes to Amides
Amination or **Amino-de-hydrogenation**

$$ArCHO \xrightarrow[\substack{\text{nickel peroxide} \\ -20°C}]{NH_3} ArCONH_2$$

Aromatic and α,β-unsaturated aldehydes can be directly converted to the corresponding amides by treatment with dry ammonia gas and nickel peroxide.[227] Best yields (80 to 90%) are obtained at −25 to −20°C. The reaction has also been performed with MnO_2 and NaCN along with ammonia or an amine at 0°C in isopropyl alcohol,[228] and with a secondary amine and a palladium acetate catalyst.[228a] In the nickel peroxide reaction the corresponding alcohols ($ArCH_2OH$) have also been used as substrates. For an indirect way of converting aldehydes to amides, see **2-29.**

---

[221] Titov, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 557–580 (1963). This paper is a review of Titov's considerable work in this field. See also Dubourg, Fischer, and Brini, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3665, 3669 (1971).

[222] Sifniades, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3562 (1975).

[223] For reviews, see Larson, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," vol. 1, pp. 310–316, Interscience, New York, 1969; Kornblum, *Org. React.* **12,** 101–156 (1962), 120–127.

[224] For examples, see Feuer, Shepherd, and Savides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 4364 (1956); Feuer and Lawrence, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3662 (1972); Truce and Christensen, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 181 (1969); Pfeffer and Silbert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 699 (1970); Feuer and Spinicelli, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2981 (1976); Feuer, Van Buren, and Grutzner, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4676 (1978).

[225] Olah and Lin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1259 (1973). See also Bach, Holubka, Badger, and Rajan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4416 (1979).

[226] Matacz, Piotrowska, and Urbanski, *Pol. J. Chem.* **53,** 187 (1979); Kornblum, Singh, and Kelly, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 332 (1983).

[227] Nakagawa, Onoue, and Minami, *Chem. Commun.* 17 (1966).

[228] Gilman, *Chem. Commun.* 733 (1971).

[228a] Tamaru, Yamada, and Yoshida, *Synthesis* 474 (1983).

E. Attack by Carbon In these reactions a new carbon–carbon bond is formed, and they may be given the collective title *coupling reactions*. In each case an alkyl or aryl radical is generated and then combines with another radical (a termination process) or attacks an aromatic ring or olefin to give the coupling product.[229]

4-14 Simple Coupling at a Susceptible Position

$$2RH \xrightarrow{\text{peroxides}} R{-}R$$

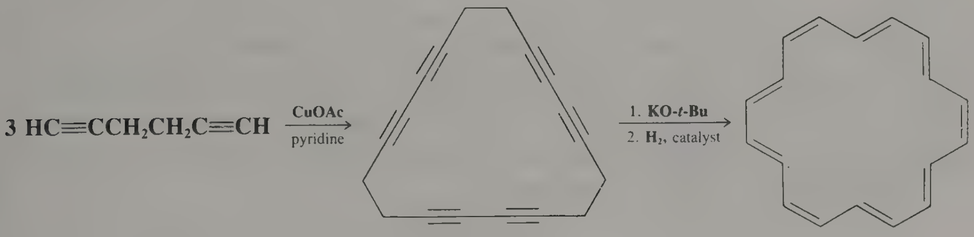
In this reaction, the peroxide decomposes to give a radical that abstracts a hydrogen from RH to give R•, which dimerizes. Dialkyl and diacyl peroxides have been used, as well as Fenton's reagent (p. 628). This reaction is far from general, though in certain cases respectable yields have been obtained. Among susceptible positions are those at a tertiary carbon,[230] as well as those α to a phenyl group (especially if there is also an α-alkyl or α-chloro group),[231] an ether group,[232] a carbonyl group,[233] a cyano group,[234] a dialkylamino group,[235] or a carboxylic ester group, either the acid or alcohol side.[236]

OS **IV,** 367; **V,** 1026; **60,** 78.

4-15 Coupling of Alkynes

$$2R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}H \xrightarrow[\text{pyridine}]{CuX_2} R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}C{\equiv}C{-}R$$

Terminal alkynes can be coupled by heating with stoichiometric amounts of cupric salts in pyridine or a similar base. This reaction, which produces symmetrical diynes in high yields, is called the *Eglinton reaction*.[237] The large-ring annulenes of Sondheimer et al. (see p. 59) were prepared by rearrangement and hydrogenation of cyclic polyynes,[238] prepared by Eglinton coupling of terminal diynes, e.g.,[239]



18

---

[229] For a review of aryl–aryl coupling, see Sainsbury, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 3327–3359 (1980).

[230] Meshcheryakov and Érzyutova, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 94 (1966).

[231] McBay, Tucker, and Groves, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 536 (1959); Johnston and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1168 (1960).

[232] Pfordte and Leuschner, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **643,** 1 (1961).

[233] Kharasch, McBay, and Urry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70,** 1269 (1948); Leffingwell, *Chem. Commun.* 357 (1970); Hawkins and Large, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 280 (1974).

[234] Kharasch and Sosnovsky, *Tetrahedron* **3,** 97 (1958).

[235] Schwetlick, Jentzsch, Karl, and Wolter, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4] **25,** 95 (1964).

[236] Boguslavskaya and Razuvaev, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 1967 (1963).

[237] For reviews, see Simándi, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 1, pp. 529–534, Wiley, New York, 1983; Nigh, Ref. 164, pp. 11–31; Cadiot and Chodkiewicz, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 597–647, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Eglinton and McCrae, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **4,** 225–328 (1963).

[238] For a review of cyclic alkynes, see Nakagawa, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," part 2, pp. 635–712, Wiley, New York, 1978.

[239] Sondheimer and Wolovsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 260 (1962); Sondheimer, Wolovsky, and Amiel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 274 (1962).

18 is a cyclic trimer of 1,5-hexadiyne. The corresponding tetramers (C_{24}), pentamers (C_{30}), and hexamers (C_{36}) were also formed.

The Eglinton reaction is of wide scope. Many functional groups may be present on the alkyne. The oxidation is usually quite specific for triple-bond hydrogen. Another common procedure is the use of catalytic amounts of cuprous salts in the presence of ammonia or ammonium chloride (this method is called the *Glaser reaction*). Atmospheric oxygen or some other oxidizing agent such as permanganate or hydrogen peroxide is required in the latter procedure. This method is not satisfactory for cyclic coupling. Unsymmetrical diynes can be prepared by *Cadiot–Chodkiewicz* coupling:[240]

$$\text{R—C}\equiv\text{C—H} + \text{R}'\text{—C}\equiv\text{C—Br} \xrightarrow{\text{Cu}^+} \text{R—C}\equiv\text{C—C}\equiv\text{C—R}' + \text{HBr}$$

This may be regarded as a variation of **0-102** but it must have a different mechanism since acetylenic halides give the reaction but ordinary alkyl halides do not. This is hardly compatible with a nucleophilic mechanism. However, the mechanism is not fully understood. Propargyl halides also give the reaction.[241] A variation of the Cadiot–Chodkiewicz method consists of treating a haloalkyne ($R'C\equiv CX$) with a copper acetylide ($RC\equiv CCu$).[242] The Cadiot–Chodkiewicz procedure can be adapted to the preparation of diynes in which R′ = H by the use of $BrC\equiv CSiEt_3$ and subsequent cleavage of the $SiEt_3$ group.[243] This protecting group can also be used in the Eglinton or Glaser methods.[244]

The mechanism of the Eglinton and Glaser reactions probably begins with loss of a proton

$$\text{R—C}\equiv\text{C—H} \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \text{R—C}\equiv\text{C}^-$$

since there is a base present and acetylenic protons are acidic. The last step is probably the coupling of two free radicals:

$$2\text{R—C}\equiv\text{C}\cdot \longrightarrow \text{R—C}\equiv\text{C—C}\equiv\text{C—R}$$

but just how the carbanion becomes oxidized to the radical and what part the cuprous ion plays (other than forming the acetylide salt) are matters of considerable speculation,[245] and depend on the oxidizing agent. It is known, of course, that cuprous ion can form complexes with triple bonds.

OS **V**, 517; **50**, 97; **54**, 1.

4-16 Arylation of Aromatic Compounds by Diazonium Salts
Arylation or **Aryl-de-hydrogenation**[246]

$$\text{ArH} + \text{Ar}'\text{N}_2^+\ \text{X}^- \xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-} \text{Ar—Ar}'$$

When the normally acidic solution of a diazonium salt is made alkaline, the aryl portion of the diazonium salt can couple with another aromatic ring. Known as the *Gomberg* or *Gomberg–Bachmann reaction*,[247] it has been performed on several types of aromatic rings and on quinones.

---

[240] Chodkiewicz, *Ann. Chim. (Paris)* [13] **2**, 819 (1957).

[241] Sevin, Chodkiewicz, and Cadiot, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 913 (1974).

[242] Curtis and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 186 (1971).

[243] Eastmond and Walton, *Tetrahedron* **28**, 4591 (1972); Ghose and Walton, *Synthesis* 890 (1974).

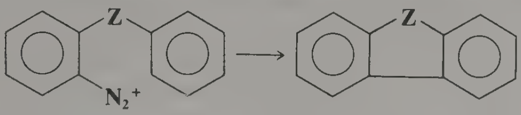
[244] Johnson and Walton, *Tetrahedron* **28**, 5221 (1972).

[245] See the discussions in Nigh, Ref. 164, pp. 27–31; Fedenok, Berdnikov, and Shvartsberg, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **9**, 1908 (1973); Clifford and Waters, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3056 (1963).

[246] These names also apply to reactions **4-17** and **4-20**, and, in part, to **4-18** and **4-19.**

[247] For reviews, see Hey, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **2**, 47–86 (1966); Williams, Ref. 13, pp. 27–34, 80–93. For a review applied to heterocyclic substrates, see Vernin, Dou, and Metzger, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1173–1203 (1972).

Yields are not high (usually under 40%) because of the many side reactions undergone by diazonium salts, though higher yields have been obtained under phase transfer conditions.[248] The conditions of the Meerwein reaction (**4-17**), treatment of the solution with a copper-ion catalyst, have also been used, as has the addition of sodium nitrite in Me_2SO (to benzene diazonium fluoroborate in Me_2SO).[249] When the Gomberg–Bachmann reaction is performed intramolecularly, either by the alkaline solution or by the copper-ion procedure, it is called the *Pschorr ring closure*[250] and yields are usually somewhat higher. Still higher yields have been obtained by carrying out the Pschorr reaction electrochemically.[251] The Pschorr reaction has been carried out for Z = $CH{=}CH$, CH_2CH_2, NH, $C{=}O$, CH_2, and quite a few others. A rapid and convenient way to carry out the Pschorr synthesis is to diazotize the amine substrate with isopropyl nitrite in the presence of sodium iodide, in which case the ring-closed product is formed in one step.[252]



Other compounds with nitrogen–nitrogen bonds have been used instead of diazonium salts. Among these are N-nitroso amides [Ar—N(NO)—COR], triazenes, and azo compounds. Still another method involves treatment of an aromatic primary amine directly with an alkyl nitrite in an aromatic substrate as solvent.[253]

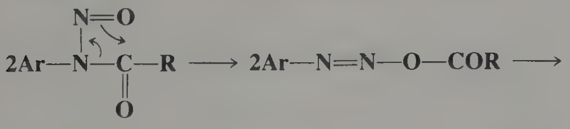
In each case the mechanism involves generation of an aryl radical from a *covalent* azo compound. In acid solution diazonium salts are ionic and their reactions are polar. When they cleave, the product is an aryl cation (see p. 579). However, in neutral or basic solution, diazonium ions are converted to covalent compounds, and these cleave to give free radicals:

$$\mathbf{Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Z \longrightarrow Ar\bullet + N{\equiv}N + Z\bullet}$$

Under Gomberg–Bachmann conditions, the species that cleaves is the anhydride Ar—N=N—O—N=N—Ar:[254]

$$\mathbf{Ar{-}N{=}N{-}O{-}N{=}N{-}Ar \longrightarrow Ar\bullet + N_2 + \bullet O{-}N{=}N{-}Ar}$$

The aryl radical thus formed attacks the substrate to give the intermediate **1** (p. 611), from which the radical Ar—N=N—O• abstracts hydrogen to give the product. N-Nitroso amides probably rearrange to N-acyloxy compounds, which cleave to give aryl radicals:[255]



$$\mathbf{2Ar{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle N{=}O}{|}}{N}{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R \longrightarrow 2Ar{-}N{=}N{-}O{-}COR \longrightarrow Ar\bullet + Ar{-}N{=}N{-}O\bullet + N_2 + (RCO)_2O}$$

There is evidence that the reaction with alkyl nitrites also involves attack by aryl radicals.[256]

The Pschorr reaction can take place by two different mechanisms, depending on conditions: (1)

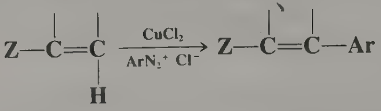
---

[248] Rosenberg, Beadle, Korzeniowski, and Gokel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4141 (1980).
[249] Kamigata, Kurihara, Minato, and Kobayashi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 3152 (1971).
[250] For a review, see Abramovitch, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **2,** 87–138 (1966).
[251] Elofson and Gadallah, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1769 (1971).
[252] Chauncy and Gellert, *Aust. J. Chem.* **22,** 993 (1969).
[253] Cadogan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4257 (1962); Fillipi, Vernin, Dou, Metzger, and Perkins, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1075 (1974).
[254] Rüchardt and Merz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2431 (1964); Eliel, Saha, and Meyerson, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2451 (1965).
[255] Cadogan, Murray, and Sharp, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 583 (1976), and references cited therein.
[256] Gragerov and Levit, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **4,** 7 (1968).

attack by an aryl radical (as in the Gomberg–Bachmann reaction) or (2) attack by an aryl cation (similar to the SN1 mechanism discussed on p. 579).[257] Under certain conditions the ordinary Gomberg–Bachmann reaction can also involve attack by aryl cations.[258]

OS **I,** 113; **IV,** 718.

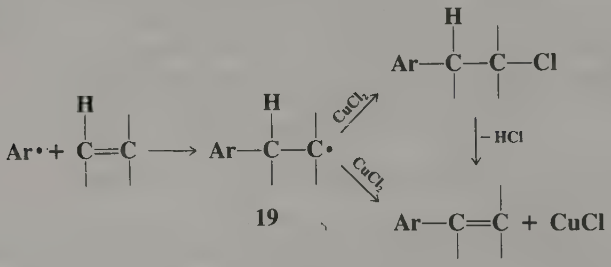
4-17 Arylation of Activated Olefins by Diazonium Salts. Meerwein Arylation



$$\text{Z—}\overset{|}{\text{C}}\text{=}\underset{\text{H}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}} \xrightarrow[\text{ArN}_2^+\ \text{Cl}^-]{\text{CuCl}_2} \text{Z—}\overset{|}{\text{C}}\text{=}\overset{|}{\text{C}}\text{—Ar}$$

Olefins activated by an electron-withdrawing group (Z may be C=C, halogen, C=O, Ar, CN, etc.) can be arylated by treatment with a diazonium salt and a cupric chloride[259] catalyst. This is called the *Meerwein arylation reaction.*[260] Addition of ArCl to the double bond (to give $\text{Z—}\underset{\text{Cl}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}\text{—}\underset{\text{H}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}\text{—Ar}$) is a side reaction (**5-34**). In an improved procedure, an arylamine is treated with an alkyl nitrite (generating ArN_2^+ in situ) and a copper(II) halide in the presence of the olefin.[260a]

The mechanism is probably of the free-radical type, with Ar• forming as in **4-24** and then[261]



The radical **19** can react with cupric chloride by two pathways, one of which leads to addition and the other to substitution. Even when the addition pathway is taken, however, the substitution product may still be formed by subsequent elimination of HCl.[262]

OS **IV,** 15.

4-18 Arylation and Alkylation of Olefins by Organopalladium Compounds
Alkylation or **Alkyl-de-hydrogenation,** etc.[263]

$$\text{R}_2\text{C=CH}_2 + \text{“ArPdX”} \longrightarrow \text{R}_2\text{C=CH—Ar}$$

---

[257] For an alternative to the second mechanism, see Gadallah, Cantu, and Elofson, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2386 (1973).

[258] For examples, see Kobori, Kobayashi, and Minato, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 223 (1970); Kamigata, Hisada, Minato, and Kobayashi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **46,** 1016 (1973); Cooper and Perkins, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2477 (1969); Kaul and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **51,** 2132 (1968); Burri and Zollinger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **56,** 2204 (1973); Eustathopoulos, Rinaudo, and Bonnier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2911 (1974). For a discussion, see Zollinger, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 335–341 (1973), pp. 338–339.

[259] FeCl_2 is also effective: Ganushchak, Obushak, and Luka, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 765 (1981).

[260] For reviews, see Rondestvedt, *Org. React.* **24,** 225–259 (1976); **11,** 189–260 (1960).

[260a] Doyle, Siegfried, Elliott, and Dellaria, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2431 (1977).

[261] Dickerman and Vermont, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4150 (1962); Morrison, Cazes, Samkoff, and Howe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4152 (1962).

[262] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Zollinger, "Azo and Diazo Chemistry," pp. 162–165, Interscience, New York, 1961.

[263] These names also apply, in part, to reactions **4-19** and **4-21.**

Arylation of olefins can also be achieved[264] by treatment with an ''arylpalladium'' reagent that can be generated in situ by several[265] methods: (1) by treatment of an aryl bromide with a palladium–triarylphosphine complex (ArBr → ''ArPdBr'');[266] (2) by treatment of an aryl iodide with palladium acetate in the presence of a base such as tributylamine or potassium acetate (ArI → ''ArPdI'');[267] (3) by treatment of an arylmercury compound (either Ar_2Hg or ArHgX) with $LiPdCl_3$ (ArHgX → ''ArPdX'')[268] (in some cases other group VIII metal salts have been used); or (4) by the reaction of an aromatic compound with palladium acetate or palladium metal and silver acetate in acetic acid [in this case an aryl *hydrogen* is replaced (ArH → ''ArPdOAc'')].[269]

Unlike **4-17,** this reaction is not limited to activated substrates. The substrate may be a simple olefin, or it may contain a variety of functional groups, such as ester, carboxyl, phenolic, or cyano groups. Primary and secondary allylic alcohols give aldehydes or ketones that are products of double-bond migration,[270] e.g.,

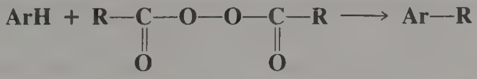
$$\mathbf{CH_2{=}CH{-}CH_2OH \xrightarrow{\text{"PhPdCl"}} PhCH_2CH_2CHO}$$

Ethylene is the most reactive olefin. Increasing substitution lowers the reactivity. Substitution therefore takes place at the less highly substituted side of the double bond.[271] Alkylation can also be accomplished, but only if the alkyl group lacks a β-hydrogen, e.g., the reaction is successful for the introduction of methyl, benzyl, and neopentyl groups.[272] However, vinyl groups, even those possessing β-hydrogens, have been successfully introduced (to give 1,3-dienes) by the reaction of the olefin with a vinyl halide in the presence of a trialkylamine and a catalyst composed of palladium acetate and a triarylphosphine at 100 to 150°C.[273]

The mechanisms are not completely known, but it is likely that an addition–elimination reaction (addition of ArPdX followed by elimination of HPdX) is involved in all the methods.[274] The reactions are stereospecific, yielding products expected from syn addition followed by syn elimination.[275]

OS **51,** 17; **61,** 82.

4-19 Alkylation and Arylation of Aromatic Compounds by Peroxides



$$\mathbf{ArH + R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}O{-}O{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}R \longrightarrow Ar{-}R}$$

---

[264] For reviews of this and related reactions, see Heck, *Org. React.* **27,** 345–390 (1982); *Adv. Catal.* **26,** 323–349 (1977); Volkova, Levitin, and Vol'pin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **44,** 552–560 (1975); Moritani and Fujiwara, *Synthesis* 524–533 (1973); Jira and Freiesleben, *Organomet. React.* **3,** 1–190 (1972), pp. 84–105.

[265] For other methods, see Murahashi, Yamamura, and Mita, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2870 (1977); Luong-Thi and Riviere, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 918 (1978); Akiyama, Miyazaki, Kaneda, Teranishi, Fujiwara, Abe, and Taniguchi, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2359 (1980); Kikukawa, Maemura, Nagira, Wada, and Matsuda, *Chem. Lett.* 551 (1980); Kikukawa, Maemura, Kiseki, Wada, Matsuda, and Giam, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4885 (1981).

[266] For reviews, see Heck, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 146–151 (1979); *Pure Appl. Chem.* **50,** 691–701 (1978). See also Bender, Stakem, and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1278 (1982); Spencer, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **258,** 101 (1983).

[267] Mizoroki, Mori, and Ozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 581 (1971); Mori, Mizoroki, and Ozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **46,** 1505 (1973); Heck and Nolley, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2320 (1972); Ziegler and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2941 (1978); Hirao, Enda, Ohshiro, and Agawa, *Chem. Lett.* 403 (1981).

[268] Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5518, 5526, 5335 (1968).

[269] See, for example, Fujiwara, Moritani, and Matsuda, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 4819 (1968); Fujiwara, Asano, Moritani, and Teranishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1681 (1976); Fujiwara, Maruyama, Yoshidomi, and Taniguchi, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 851 (1981). For a review, see Kozhevnikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **52,** 138–151 (1983).

[270] See, for example, Melpolder and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 265 (1976); Chalk and Magennis, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 273, 1206 (1976).

[271] Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6707 (1969), **93,** 6896 (1971).

[272] Heck, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **37,** 389 (1972); Heck and Nolley, Ref. 267.

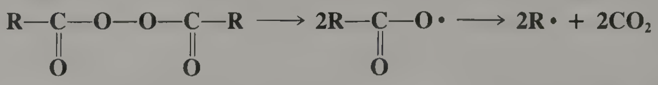
[273] Dieck and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1083 (1975); Patel, Kao, Cortese, Minkiewicz, and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 918 (1979); Kim, Patel, and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1067 (1981); Heck, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **53,** 2323–2332 (1981). See also Luong-Thi and Riviere, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4657 (1979).

[274] Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6707 (1969); Shue, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 7116 (1971); Heck and Nolley, Ref. 267.

[275] Heck, Ref. 274; Moritani, Danno, Fujiwara, and Teranishi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 578 (1971).

This reaction is most often carried out with R = aryl, so that the net result is the same as in **4-16,** though the reagent is different.[276] It is used less often than **4-16,** but the scope is similar. When R = alkyl, the scope is more limited.[277] Only certain aromatic compounds, particularly benzene rings with two or more nitro groups, and fused ring systems, can be alkylated by this procedure. 1,4-Quinones can be alkylated with diacyl peroxides or with lead tetraacetate (methylation occurs with this reagent).

The mechanism is as shown on p. 611 (CIDNP has been observed[278]); the radicals are produced by



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}O{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R \longrightarrow 2R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O\bullet \longrightarrow 2R\bullet + 2CO_2}$$

Since no relatively stable free radical is present (such as Ph—N=N—O• in **4-16**), most of the product arises from dimerization and disproportionation.[279] The addition of a small amount of nitrobenzene increases the yield of arylation product because the nitrobenzene is converted to diphenyl nitroxide, which abstracts the hydrogen from **1** and reduces the extent of side reactions.[280]

Aromatic compounds can also be arylated by aryllead tricarboxylates.[281] Best yields (~70 to 85%) are obtained when the substrate contains alkyl groups; an electrophilic mechanism is likely.

$$\mathbf{ArH + Ar'Pb(OAc)_3 \longrightarrow ArAr'}$$

OS **V,** 51. See also OS **V,** 952; **56,** 68.

4-20 Photochemical Arylation of Aromatic Compounds

$$\mathbf{ArH + Ar'I \xrightarrow{h\nu} ArAr'}$$

Another free-radical arylation method consists of the photolysis of aryl iodides in an aromatic solvent.[282] Yields are generally higher than in **4-16** or **4-19.** The aryl iodide may contain OH or COOH groups. The mechanism is similar to that of **4-16.** The aryl radicals are generated by the photolytic cleavage ArI → Ar• + I•. The reaction has been applied to intramolecular arylation (analogous to the Pschorr reaction).[283] A similar reaction is photolysis of an arylthallium bis(trifluoroacetate) (**2-20**) in an aromatic solvent. Here too, an unsymmetrical biaryl is produced in good yields.[284] In this case

$$\mathbf{Ar'Tl(OCOCF_3)_2 \xrightarrow[ArH]{h\nu} ArAr'}$$

it is the C—Tl bond which is cleaved to give aryl radicals.

---

[276] For reviews, see Hey, Ref. 247; Vernin, Dou, and Metzger, Ref. 247.

[277] For reviews of the free-radical alkylation of aromatic compounds, see Tiecco and Testaferri, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **3,** 61–111 (1983); Dou, Vernin, and Metzger, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4593 (1971).

[278] Kaptein, Freeman, Hill, and Bargon, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 953 (1973).

[279] We have given the main steps that lead to biphenyls. The mechanism is actually more complicated than this and includes more than 100 elementary steps resulting in many side products, including those mentioned on p. 612. DeTar, Long, Rendleman, Bradley, and Duncan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4051 (1967); DeTar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4058 (1967).

[280] Chalfont, Hey. Liang, and Perkins, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 233 (1971).

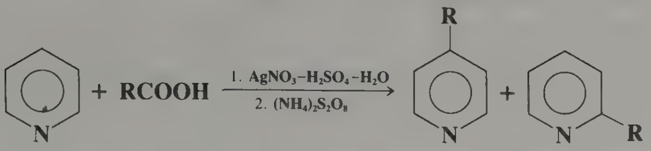
[281] Bell, Kalman, May, Pinhey, and Sternhell, *Aust. J. Chem.* **32,** 1531 (1979).

[282] Wolf and Kharasch, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2493 (1965). For a review, see Sharma and Kharasch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 36–44 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 69–77].

[283] See, for example, Kupchan and Wormser, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3792 (1965); Jeffs and Hansen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2798 (1967); Thyagarajan, Kharasch, Lewis, and Wolf, *Chem. Commun.* 614 (1967).

[284] Taylor, Kienzle, and McKillop, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6088 (1970).

4-21 Alkylation and Acylation of Nitrogen Heterocycles[285]

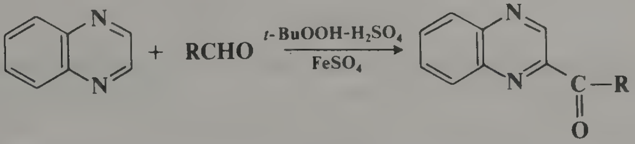


Alkylation of protonated nitrogen heterocycles (e.g., pyridines, quinolines) can be accomplished by treatment with a carboxylic acid, silver nitrate, sulfuric acid, and ammonium peroxydisulfate.[286] R may be primary, secondary, or tertiary. The attacking species is R•, formed by[287]

$$2Ag^+ + S_2O_8{}^{2-} \longrightarrow 2Ag^{2+} + 2SO_4{}^{2-}$$
$$RCOOH + Ag^{2+} \longrightarrow RCOO\cdot + H^+ + Ag^+$$
$$RCOO\cdot \longrightarrow R\cdot + CO_2$$

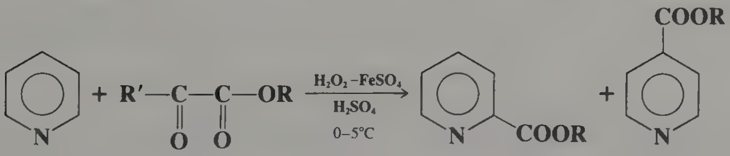
Similar alkylation can be accomplished with other reagents, including hydroperoxides and $FeSO_4$;[288] and carboxylic acids and lead tetraacetate. The reaction has also been applied to acetophenone and ferrocene.[289]

Protonated nitrogen heterocycles can be acylated by treatment with an aldehyde, *t*-butyl hydroperoxide, sulfuric acid, and ferrous sulfate, e.g.,[290]



These alkylation and acylation reactions are important because Friedel–Crafts alkylation and acylation (**1-13, 1-15**) cannot be applied to most nitrogen heterocycles. See also **3-17.**

4-22 Carbalkoxylation and Carboamidation of Nitrogen Heterocycles[291]
Alkoxycarbonyl-de-hydrogenation, etc.



---

[285] For reviews, see Minisci, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **62,** 1–48 (1976), pp. 17–46; *Synthesis* 1–24 (1973), pp. 12–19.

[286] Minisci, Mondelli, Gardini, and Porta, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 2403 (1972); Citterio, Minisci, and Franchi, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4752 (1980).

[287] Anderson and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1651 (1970).

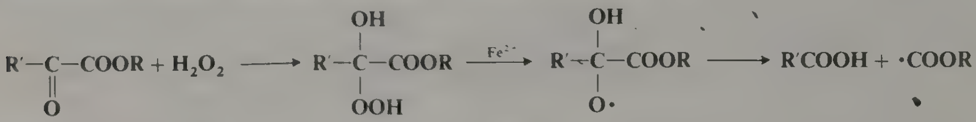
[288] Minisci, Selva, Porta, Barilli, and Gardini, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 2415 (1972).

[289] Din, Meth-Cohn, and Walshe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4783 (1979).

[290] Caronna, Gardini, and Minisci, *Chem. Commun.* 201 (1969); Arnoldi, Bellatti, Caronna, Citterio, Minisci, Porta, and Sesana, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **107,** 491 (1977).

[291] For a review, see Minisci, *Top. Curr. Chem.*, Ref. 285, pp. 28–31.

In a reaction related to **4-21**, protonated nitrogen heterocycles can be carbalkoxylated[292] by treatment with •COOR radicals generated from esters of α-keto acids:



$$R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-COOR + H_2O_2 \longrightarrow R'-\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OOH}{|}}{C}}-COOR \xrightarrow{Fe^{2+}} R'-\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{O\cdot}{|}}{C}}-COOR \longrightarrow R'COOH + \cdot COOR$$

Similarly, a carbamoyl group can be introduced[293] by the use of the radicals $H_2N\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}\cdot$ or $_2N\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}\cdot$ generated from formamide or dimethylformamide and H_2SO_4, H_2O_2, and $FeSO_4$ or other oxidants.

N_2 as Leaving Group[294]

In these reactions diazonium salts are cleaved to aryl radicals,[295] in most cases with the assistance of copper salts. Reactions **4-16** and **4-17** may also be regarded as belonging to this category with respect to the attacking compound. For nucleophilic substitutions of diazonium salts, see **3-21** to **3-25**.

4-23 Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Hydrogen
Dediazoniation or **Hydro-de-diazoniation**

$$ArN_2^+ + H_3PO_2 \longrightarrow ArH$$

Reduction of the diazonium group (*dediazoniation*) provides an indirect method for the removal of an amino group from a ring.[295a] The best and most common way of accomplishing this is by use of hypophosphorous acid H_3PO_2,[296] although many other reducing agents[297] have been used, among them ethanol, HMPT,[297] thiophenol,[298] and sodium stannite. Ethanol was the earliest reagent used, and it frequently gives good yields, but often ethers (ArOEt) are side products. When H_3PO_2 is used, 5 to 15 mol of this reagent is required per mole of substrate. Diazonium salts can be reduced in nonaqueous media by several methods,[299] including treatment with Bu_3SnH or Et_3SiH in ethers or MeCN[300] and by isolation as the BF_4^- salt and reduction of this with $NaBH_4$ in DMF.[301] Aromatic amines can be deaminated ($ArNH_2 \rightarrow ArH$) in one laboratory step by treatment with an alkyl nitrite in DMF[302] or boiling THF.[303] The corresponding diazonium salt is an intermediate.

Not many investigations of the mechanism have been carried out. It is generally assumed that the reaction of diazonium salts with ethanol to produce ethers takes place by an ionic (SN1) mechanism while the reduction to ArH proceeds by a free-radical process.[304] The reduction with H_3PO_2 is also believed to have a free-radical mechanism.[305] In the reduction with $NaBH_4$, an aryldiazene intermediate (ArN=NH) has been demonstrated,[306] arising from nucleophilic attack by BH_4^- on the β-nitrogen. Such diazenes can be obtained as moderately stable (half-life of several hours) species in solution by the decarboxylation of aryldiazenecarboxylate ions ($ArN{=}NCOO^-$).[307] It is not entirely clear how the aryldiazene decomposes, but there are indications that either the aryl radical Ar• or the corresponding anion Ar^- may be involved.[308]

---

[292] Bernardi, Caronna, Galli, Minisci, and Perchinunno, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 645 (1973).

[293] Minisci, Gardini, Galli, and Bertini, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 15 (1970); Arnone, Cecere, Galli, Minisci, Perchinunno, Porta, and Gardini, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **103**, 13 (1973).

[294] For a review, see Wulfman, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Diazonium and Diazo Groups," pt. 1, pp. 286–297, Wiley, New York, 1978.

[295] For reviews, see Zollinger, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6**, 335–341 (1973), pp. 339–341, Ref. 262, pp. 153–169; Belov and Kozlov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **32**, 59–75 (1963).

[295a] For a review, see Zollinger, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 237, pp. 603–669.

[296] For reviews, see Kornblum, *Org. React.* **2**, 262–340 (1944); Belov and Kozlov, Ref. 295, pp. 65–66.

[297] For a list of some of these, with references, see Tröndlin and Rüchardt, *Chem. Ber.* **110**, 2494 (1977).

[298] Shono, Matsumura, and Tsubata, *Chem. Lett.* 1051 (1979).

[299] For a list of some of these, with references, see Korzeniowski, Blum, and Gokel, *J. Org. Chem.* **42**, 1469 (1977).

[300] Nakayama, Yoshida, and Simamura, *Tetrahedron* **26**, 4609 (1970).

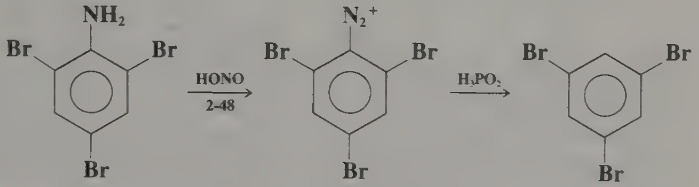
[301] Hendrickson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83**, 1251 (1961).

[302] Doyle, Dellaria, Siegfried, and Bishop, *J. Org. Chem.* **42**, 3494 (1977).

[303] Cadogan and Molina, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 541 (1973).

An important use of the dediazoniation reaction is to remove an amino group after it has been used to direct one or more other groups to ortho and para positions. For example, the compound 1,3,5-tribromobenzene cannot be prepared by direct bromination of benzene because the bromo group is ortho-para-directing; however, this compound is easily prepared by the following sequence:

$$C_6H_6 \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4 \atop 1\text{-}2]{HNO_3} PhNO_2 \xrightarrow[9\text{-}48]{Sn{-}HCl} PhNH_2 \xrightarrow[1\text{-}12]{3Br_2}$$



Many other compounds which would otherwise be difficult to prepare are easily synthesized with the aid of the dediazoniation reaction.

OS **I,** 133, 415; **II,** 353, 592; **III,** 295; **IV,** 947; **58,** 101.

4-24 Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Chlorine or Bromine
Chloro-de-diazoniation, etc.

$$ArN_2^+ + CuCl \longrightarrow ArCl$$

Treatment of diazonium salts with cuprous chloride or bromide leads to aryl chlorides or bromides, respectively. In either case the reaction is called the *Sandmeyer reaction*. The reaction can also be carried out with copper and HBr or HCl, in which case it is called the *Gatterman reaction* (not to be confused with **1-18**). The Sandmeyer reaction is not useful for the preparation of fluorides or iodides, but for bromides and chlorides it is of wide scope and is probably the best way of introducing bromine or chlorine into an aromatic ring. The yields are usually high.

The mechanism is by no means known with certainty but is believed to take the following course:[309]

$$ArN_2^+ \quad X^- + CuX \longrightarrow Ar\cdot + N_2 + CuX_2$$
$$Ar\cdot + CuX_2 \longrightarrow ArX + CuX$$

---

[304] For examples, see DeTar and Turetzky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 1745 (1955), **78,** 3925, 3928 (1956); DeTar and Kosuge, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6072 (1958); Lewis and Chambers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3267 (1971); Broxton, Bunnett, and Paik, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 643 (1977).

[305] See, for example, Kornblum, Cooper, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 3013 (1950); Beckwith, *Aust. J. Chem.* **25,** 1887 (1972); Levit, Kiprianova, and Gragerov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **11,** 2395 (1975).

[306] Bloch, Musso, and Záhorszky, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 370 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 392]; König, Musso, and Záhorszky, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 45 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 33]; McKenna and Traylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2313 (1971).

[307] Huang and Kosower, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2354, 2362, 2367 (1968).

[308] Rieker, Niederer, and Leibfritz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4287 (1969); Kosower, Huang, and Tsuji, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2325 (1969); König, Musso, and Záhorszky, Ref. 306; Broxton and McLeish, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 1031 (1983).

[309] Dickerman, Weiss, and Ingberman, *J. Org. Chem.* **21,** 380 (1956), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 1904 (1958); Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 2942 (1957); Dickerman, DeSouza, and Jacobson, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 710 (1969); Galli, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1459 (1981), 1139 (1982).

The first step involves a reduction of the diazonium ion by the cuprous ion, which results in the formation of an aryl radical. In the second step, the aryl radical abstracts halogen from cupric chloride, reducing it. CuX is regenerated and is thus a true catalyst.

Aryl bromides and chlorides can be prepared from primary aromatic amines in one step by several procedures,[310] including treatment of the amine (1) with *t*-butyl nitrite and anhydrous $CuCl_2$ or $CuBr_2$ at 65°C,[311] and (2) with *t*-butyl thionitrite or *t*-butyl thionitrate and $CuCl_2$ or $CuBr_2$ at room temperature.[312] These procedures are, in effect, a combination of **2-48** and the Sandmeyer reaction. A further advantage is that cooling to 0°C is not needed.

For the preparation of fluorides and iodides from diazonium salts, see **3-25** and **3-24.**

OS **I,** 135, 136, 162, 170; **II,** 130; **III,** 185; **IV,** 160. Also see OS **III,** 136; **IV,** 182.

4-25 Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Nitro
Nitro-de-diazoniation

$$\mathrm{ArN_2^+ + NaNO_2 \xrightarrow{Cu^+} ArNO_2}$$

Nitro compounds can be formed in good yields by treatment of diazonium salts with sodium nitrite in the presence of cuprous ion. The reaction occurs only in neutral or alkaline solution. This is not usually called the Sandmeyer reaction, although, like **4-24** and **4-27,** it was discovered by Sandmeyer. BF_4^- is often used as the negative ion to avoid competition from the chloride ion. The mechanism is probably like that of **4-24.**[313] If electron-withdrawing groups are present, the catalyst is not needed; $NaNO_2$ alone gives nitro compounds in high yields.[314]

OS **II,** 225; **III,** 341.

4-26 Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Sulfur-containing Groups
Chlorosulfo-de-diazoniation

$$\mathrm{ArN_2^+ + SO_2 \xrightarrow[HCl]{CuCl_2} ArSO_2Cl}$$

Diazonium salts can be converted to sulfonyl chlorides by treatment with sulfur dioxide in the presence of cupric chloride.[315] The use of $FeSO_4$ and copper metal instead of $CuCl_2$ gives sulfinic acids $ArSO_2H$.[316] See also **3-22**.

OS **V,** 60; **60,** 121.

4-27 Replacement of the Diazonium Group by Cyano
Cyano-de-diazoniation

$$\mathrm{ArN_2^+ + CuCN \longrightarrow ArCN}$$

This reaction, also called the *Sandmeyer reaction*, is similar to **4-24** in scope and mechanism. It is usually conducted in neutral solution to avoid liberation of HCN.

OS **I,** 514.

---

[310] For other procedures, see Brackman and Smit, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **85,** 857 (1966); Cadogan, Roy, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1249 (1966).

[311] Doyle, Siegfried, and Dellaria, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2426 (1977).

[312] Oae, Shinhama, and Kim, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 1065 (1980), *Chem. Lett.* 939 (1979).

[313] For discussions, see Opgenorth and Rüchardt, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1333 (1974); Singh, Kumar, and Khanna, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 5191 (1982).

[314] Bagal, Pevzner, and Frolov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 1767 (1969).

[315] Gilbert, *Synthesis* 1–10 (1969), p. 6.

[316] Wittig and Hoffmann, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 60.

4-28 Aryl Dimerization with Diazonium Salts

$$2\mathrm{ArN_2}^+ \xrightarrow[\text{or Cu+H}^+]{\mathrm{Cu}^+} \mathrm{Ar{-}Ar} + 2\mathrm{N_2} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathrm{Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Ar} + \mathrm{N_2}$$

When diazonium salts are treated with cuprous ion (or with copper and acid, in which case it is called the *Gatterman method*), two products are possible. If the ring contains electron-withdrawing groups, the main product is the biaryl, but the presence of electron-donating groups leads mainly to the azo compound. This reaction is different from **4-16** (and from **1-4**) in that *both* aryl groups in the product originate from $\mathrm{ArN_2}^+$, i.e., hydrogen is not a leaving group in this reaction. The mechanism probably involves free radicals.[317]

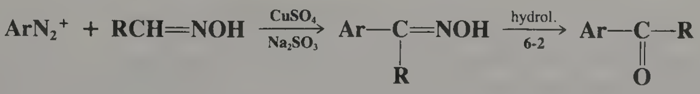
OS **I,** 222; **IV,** 872. Also see OS **IV,** 273.

4-29 Methylation and Vinylation of Diazonium Salts
Methyl-de-diazoniation, etc.

$$\mathrm{ArN_2}^+ + \mathrm{Me_4Sn} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{MeCN}]{\mathrm{Pd(OAc)_2}} \mathrm{ArMe}$$

A methyl group can be introduced into an aromatic ring by treatment of diazonium salts with tetramethyltin and a palladium acetate catalyst.[318] The reaction has been performed with Me, Cl, Br, and $\mathrm{NO_2}$ groups on the ring. A vinyl group can be introduced with $\mathrm{CH_2{=}CHSnBu_3}$.

4-30 Conversion of Diazonium Salts to Aldehydes or Ketones
Acyl-de-diazoniation, etc.



$$\mathrm{ArN_2}^+ + \mathrm{RCH{=}NOH} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Na_2SO_3}]{\mathrm{CuSO_4}} \mathrm{Ar{-}\underset{\displaystyle R}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}NOH} \xrightarrow[\text{6-2}]{\text{hydrol.}} \mathrm{Ar{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}R}$$

Diazonium salts react with oximes to give aryl oximes, which are easily hydrolyzed to aldehydes (R = H) or ketones.[319] A copper sulfate–sodium sulfite catalyst is essential. In most cases higher yields (40 to 60%) are obtained when the reaction is used for aldehydes than for ketones. In another method[320] for achieving the conversion $\mathrm{ArN_2}^+ \rightarrow \mathrm{ArCOR}$, diazonium salts are treated with $\mathrm{R_4Sn}$ and CO with palladium acetate as catalyst.[321]

OS **V,** 139.

4-31 Conversion of Diazonium Salts to Carboxylic Acids
Carboxy-de-diazoniation

$$\mathrm{ArN_2}^+\ \mathrm{BF_4}^- + \mathrm{CO} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{NaOAc}]{\mathrm{Pd(OAc)_2}} \mathrm{ArCOOH}$$

Carboxylic acids can be prepared in moderate-to-high yields by treatment of diazonium fluoroborates with carbon monoxide, palladium acetate, and sodium acetate in MeCN.[322] The mixed anhydride ArCOOCOMe is an intermediate that can be isolated. Other mixed anhydrides can be prepared by the use of other salts instead of sodium acetate.[323] An arylpalladium compound is probably an intermediate.[323]

---

[317] See Cohen, Lewarchik, and Tarino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7753 (1974).

[318] Kikukawa, Kono, Wada, and Matsuda, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1333 (1983).

[319] Beech, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1297 (1954).

[320] For still another method, see Citterio, Serravalle, and Vismara, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1831 (1982).

[321] Kikukawa, Kono, Wada, and Matsuda, *Chem. Lett.* 35 (1982).

[322] Nagira, Kikukawa, Wada, and Matsuda, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2365 (1980).

4-32 Replacement of the Diazonium Group by a Metal
Metallo-de-diazoniation

$$ArN_2^+\ BF_4^- + M \longrightarrow ArM$$

Aromatic organometallic compounds can be prepared by the treatment of diazonium salts (most often fluoroborates) with metals.[324] Among the metals used have been Hg, Tl, Sn, Pb, Sb, and Bi. Another method consists of treating the double salt of the diazonium salt and a metal chloride with a metallic powder, e.g.,

$$ArN_2Cl{\cdot}HgCl_2 \xrightarrow{Cu^+} ArHgCl + CuCl_2$$

Organometallic compounds of Hg, Ge, Sn, and As have been among those prepared by this method. The mechanisms are not clear and may be either homolytic or heterolytic.

OS **II,** 381, 432, 494; **III,** 665.

Metals as Leaving Groups

4-33 The Conversion of Boranes to Sulfides
Alkylthio-de-dialkylboration

$$R_3B + R'SSR' \xrightarrow[\text{or } h\nu]{O_2} RSR' + R_2BSR'$$

Unsymmetrical sulfides can be prepared in very high yields by treatment of a trialkylborane with a disulfide.[325] The reaction has been applied to R = primary or secondary alkyl and R′ = methyl or phenyl. The reaction rate is greatly accelerated by either light or air.

4-34 Coupling of Grignard Reagents

$$2RMgX \xrightarrow{TlBr} RR$$

Grignard reagents can be coupled to give symmetrical dimers by treatment with either thallium(I) bromide[326] or with a transition-metal halide such as $CrCl_2$, $CrCl_3$, $CoCl_2$, $CoBr_2$, or $CuCl_2$.[327] The metallic halide is an oxidizing agent and becomes reduced. Both aryl and alkyl Grignard reagents can be dimerized by either procedure, though the TlBr method cannot be applied to R = primary alkyl or to aryl groups with ortho substituents. Aryl Grignard reagents can also be dimerized by treatment with either 1,4-dichloro-2-butene or 1,4-dichloro-2-butyne.[328] Vinyl and alkynyl Grignard reagents can be coupled (to give 1,3-dienes and 1,3-diynes, respectively) by treatment with thionyl chloride.[329] Primary alkyl, vinyl, aryl, and benzylic Grignard reagents give symmetrical dimers in high yield (~90%) when treated with a silver(I) salt, e.g., $AgNO_3$, AgBr, $AgClO_4$, in the presence of a nitrogen-containing oxidizing agent such as lithium nitrate, methyl nitrate, or NO_2.[330] This method has been used to close rings of 4, 5, and 6 members.[331]

---

[323] Kikukawa, Kono, Nagira, Wada, and Matsuda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2877 (1980); *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4413 (1981).

[324] For a review, see Reutov and Ptitsyna, *Organomet. React.* **4,** 73–162 (1972).

[325] Brown and Midland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3291 (1971).

[326] McKillop, Elsom, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2423 (1968), *Tetrahedron* **26,** 4041 (1970).

[327] For reviews, see Kauffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 291–305 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 321–335]; Elsom, Hunt, and McKillop, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **8,** 135–152 (1972); Nigh, Ref. 164, pp. 85–91.

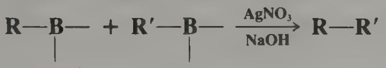
[328] Taylor, Bennett, Heinz, and Lashley, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2194 (1981).

[329] Uchida, Nakazawa, Kondo, Iwata, and Matsuda, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3749 (1972).

The mechanisms of the reactions with metal halides, at least in some cases, probably begin with conversion of RMgX to the corresponding RM (**2-34**), followed by its decomposition to free radicals.[332]

OS **55,** 48.

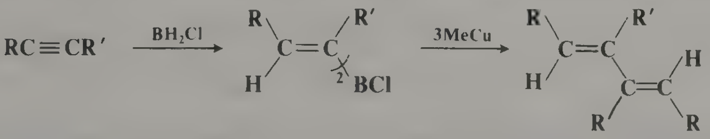
4-35 Coupling of Boranes
Alkyl-de-dialkylboration



$$R{-}\underset{|}{B}{-} + R'{-}\underset{|}{B}{-} \xrightarrow[\text{NaOH}]{\text{AgNO}_3} R{-}R'$$

Alkylboranes can be coupled by treatment with silver nitrate and base.[333] Since alkylboranes are easily prepared from olefins (**5-13**), this is essentially a way of coupling and reducing olefins; in fact, olefins can be hydroborated and coupled in the same flask. For symmetrical coupling ($R = R'$) yields range from 60 to 80% for terminal olefins and from 35 to 50% for internal ones. Unsymmetrical coupling has also been carried out,[334] but with lower yields. Arylboranes react similarly, yielding biaryls.[335] Dienes have been coupled intramolecularly to give cycloalkanes.[336] The mechanism is probably of the free-radical type.

Vinyl dimerization can be achieved by treatment of divinylchloroboranes (prepared by addition of BH_2Cl to alkynes; see **5-13**) with methylcopper. (*E*,*E*)-1,3-Dienes are prepared in high yields.[337]



In a similar reaction, symmetrical conjugated diynes RC≡C—C≡CR can be prepared by reaction of lithium dialkyldialkynylborates $Li^+ [R'_2B(C{\equiv}CR)_2]^-$ with iodine.[338]

4-36 Coupling of Other Organometallic Reagents

$$R_2CuLi \xrightarrow[-78°C, THF]{O_2} RR$$

Lithium dialkylcopper reagents can be oxidized to symmetrical dimers by O_2 at −78°C in THF.[339] The reaction is successful for R = primary and secondary alkyl, vinyl, or aryl. Other oxidizing agents, e.g., nitrobenzene, can be used instead of O_2. Vinylcopper reagents dimerize on treatment with oxygen, or simply on standing at 0°C for several days or at 25°C for several hours, to yield 1,3-dienes.[340] The finding of retention of configuration for this reaction demonstrates that free-radical intermediates are not involved. Lithium organoaluminates $\mathrm{LiAlR_4}$ are dimerized to R—R by treatment with $\mathrm{Cu(OAc)_2}$.[341] Terminal vinylalanes (prepared by **5-14**) can be dimerized to 1,3-dienes with CuCl in THF.[342] Symmetrical 1,3-dienes can also be prepared in high yields by treatment of vinylmercury chlorides with LiCl and a rhodium catalyst.[343] Arylmercuric salts are converted to biaryls by treatment with copper and a catalytic amount of $\mathrm{PdCl_2}$.[344] Alkyl- and aryllithium compounds can be dimerized by transition-metal halides in a reaction similar to **4-34**.[345] Unsymmetrical coupling of vinylic, alkynyl, and arylmercury compounds was achieved in moderate-to-good yields by treatment with alkyl and vinylic dialkylcopper reagents, e.g., $\mathrm{PhCH{=}CHHgCl + Me_2CuLi \rightarrow PhCH{=}CHMe}$.[346]

---

[330] Tamura and Kochi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 1120 (1972).

[331] Whitesides and Gutowski, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2882 (1976).

[332] For a review of the mechanism, see Kashin and Beletskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 503–526 (1982).

[333] Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," pp. 332–336, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972; Snyder, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **7** (2), 169–179 (1973).

[334] Brown, Verbrugge, and Snyder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1001 (1961).

[335] Breuer and Broster, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2193 (1972).

[336] Murphy and Prager, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 463 (1976).

[337] Yamamoto, Yatagai, Maruyama, Sonoda, and Murahashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5652 (1977); *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 3427 (1977). For other methods of dimerizing vinylic boron compounds, see Rao, Kumar, and Devaprabhakara, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **179,** C7 (1979); Campbell and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 549 (1980).

[338] Pelter, Smith, and Tabata, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 857 (1975). For extensions to unsymmetrical and conjugated diynes, see Pelter, Hughes, Smith, and Tabata, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4385 (1976); Sinclair and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1078 (1976).

[339] Whitesides, SanFilippo, Casey, and Panek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5302 (1967). See also Kauffmann, Kuhlmann, Sahm, and Schrecken, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 541 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 566].

Halogen as Leaving Group

The conversion of RX to RH may occur by a free-radical mechanism but is treated at **0-77.**

Sulfur as Leaving Group

4-37 Desulfurization with Raney Nickel
Hydro-de-mercapto-substitution, etc.

$$\mathbf{RSH \xrightarrow[Ni]{H_2} RH}$$

$$\mathbf{RSR' \xrightarrow[Ni]{H_2} RH + R'H}$$

Thiols and thioethers,[347] both alkyl and aryl, can be desulfurized by hydrogenolysis with Raney nickel.[348] The hydrogen is usually not applied externally, since Raney nickel already contains enough hydrogen for the reaction. Other sulfur compounds can be similarly desulfurized, among them:

Disulfides	$\mathbf{RSSR' \longrightarrow RH + R'H}$
Thiono esters[349]	$\mathbf{RCSOR' \longrightarrow RCH_2OR'}$
Thioamides	$\mathbf{RCSNHR' \longrightarrow RCH_2NHR}$
Sulfoxides	$\mathbf{RSOR' \longrightarrow RH + R'H}$
Thioacetals	$\mathbf{RS\overset{\vert}{\underset{\vert}{C}}SR' \longrightarrow \overset{\vert}{\underset{\vert}{CH_2}}}$

---

[340] Whitesides, Casey, and Krieger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1379 (1971); Walborsky, Banks, Banks, and Duraisamy, *Organometallics* **1,** 667 (1982). See also Lambert, Duffley, Dalzell, and Razdan, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3350 (1982).

[341] Sato, Mori, and Sato, *Chem. Lett.* 1337 (1978).

[342] Zweifel and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6678 (1970).

[343] Larock and Bernhardt, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1680 (1977). For extension to unsymmetrical 1,3-dienes, see Larock and Riefling, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1468 (1978).

[344] Kretchmer and Glowinski, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2661 (1976). See also Bumagin, Kalinovskii, and Beletskaya, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1151 (1982); Larock and Bernhardt, Ref. 343.

[345] Morizur, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1331 (1964).

[346] Larock and Leach, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3435 (1981); *Organometallics* **1,** 74 (1982). For another method, see Larock and Hershberger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2443 (1981).

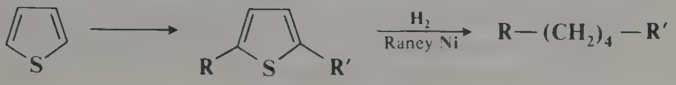
[347] For a review of the reduction of thioethers, see Block, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pt. 1, pp. 585–600, Wiley, New York, 1980.

[348] For reviews, see Pettit and van Tamelen, *Org. React.* **12,** 356–529 (1962); Hauptmann and Walter, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 347–404 (1962).

[349] See Baxter and Bradshaw, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 831 (1981).

The last reaction, which is an indirect way of accomplishing reduction of a carbonyl to a methylene group (see **9-38**), can also give the olefin if an α-hydrogen is present.[350] In most of the examples given, R may also be aryl. Other reagents have also been used.[351]

An important special case of RSR reduction is desulfurization of thiophene derivatives. This proceeds with concomitant reduction of the double bonds. Many otherwise difficultly accessible compounds have been made by alkylation of thiophene, followed by reduction:



20

Thiophenes can also be desulfurized to alkenes ($RCH_2CH{=}CHCH_2R'$ from **20**) with a nickel boride catalyst prepared from nickel(II) chloride and $NaBH_4$ in methanol.[352] Phenyl selenides RSePh can be reduced to RH with Ph_3SnH.[353]

The exact mechanisms of the Raney nickel reactions are still in doubt, though they are probably of the free-radical type.[354] It has been shown that reduction of thiophene proceeds through butadiene and butene, not through butyl mercaptan or other sulfur compounds, i.e., the sulfur is removed before the double bonds are reduced. This was demonstrated by isolation of the olefins and the failure to isolate any potential sulfur-containing intermediates.[355]

OS **IV,** 638; **V,** 419; **56,** 8, 15, 72. See also OS **61,** 74.

Carbon as Leaving Group

4-38 Decarboxylative Dimerization. The Kolbe Reaction

$$2RCOO^- \xrightarrow{\text{electrol.}} R{-}R$$

Electrolysis of carboxylate ions, which results in decarboxylation and combination of the resulting radicals, is called the *Kolbe reaction*.[356] It is used to prepare symmetrical R—R, where R is straight- or branched-chained, except that little or no yield is obtained when there is α branching. When R is aryl, the reaction fails. Many functional groups may be present, though many others inhibit the reaction.[356] Unsymmetrical R—R′ have been made by coupling mixtures of acid salts.

A free-radical mechanism is involved:

$$RCOO^- \xrightarrow[\text{oxidation}]{\text{electrolytic}} RCOO\cdot \xrightarrow{-CO_2} R\cdot \longrightarrow R{-}R$$

There is much evidence[357] for a free-radical mechanism, including side products (RH, alkenes) characteristic of free-radical intermediates and the fact that electrolysis of acetate ion in the presence of styrene caused some of the styrene to polymerize to polystyrene (such polymerizations can be initiated by free radicals, see p. 667).

---

[350] Fishman, Torigoe, and Guzik, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1443 (1963).

[351] For example, triethyl phosphite, by Hoffmann, Ess, Simmons, and Hanzel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 6414 (1956); sodium in liquid ammonia, by Truce, Tate, and Burdge, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2872 (1960); $Mo(CO)_6$ and acetic acid, by Alper and Blais, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 169 (1980). See also Trost and Ornstein, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3463 (1981).

[352] Schut, Engberts, and Wynberg, *Synth. Commun.* **2,** 415 (1972).

[353] Clive, Chittattu, and Wong, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 41 (1978).

[354] For a review, see Bonner and Grimm, in Kharasch and Meyers, "The Chemistry of Organic Sulfur Compounds," vol. 2, pp. 35–71, 410–413, Pergamon, New York, 1966.

[355] Owens and Ahmberg, *Can. J. Chem.* **40,** 941 (1962).

[356] For reviews, see Schäfer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 911–934 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 978–1000]; Gilde, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **3,** 1–82 (1972); Eberson, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Carboxylic Acids and Esters," pp. 53–101, Interscience, New York, 1969; Svadkovskaya and Voitkevich, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 161–180 (1960); Weedon, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **1,** 1–34 (1960); Vijh and Conway, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 623–664 (1967). For a monograph on electrochemical reactions in general, see Kyriacou, "Basics of Electroorganic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1981. For reviews, see Baizer, *Tetrahedron* **40,** 935–969 (1984); Eberson and Schäfer, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **21,** 1–182 (1971).

[357] For other evidence, see Kraeutler, Jaeger, and Bard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4903 (1978).

When the reaction is carried out in the presence of 1,3-dienes, additive dimerization may occur:[358]

$$2RCOO^- + CH_2{=}CH{-}CH{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow RCH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2R$$

The radical R• adds to the conjugated system to give $RCH_2CH{=}CHCH_2\bullet$, which dimerizes. Another possible product is $RCH_2CH{=}CHCH_2R$, from coupling of the two kinds of radicals.[359]

Arylacetic acids can be converted to *vic*-diaryl compounds $2ArCR_2COOH \longrightarrow ArCR_2CR_2Ar$ without electrolysis by treatment with sodium persulfate $Na_2S_2O_8$ and a catalytic amount of $AgNO_3$.[360] This also involves dimerization of free radicals.

OS **III,** 401; **V,** 445, 463; **60,** 1.

4-39 Decarboxylative Bromination. The Hunsdiecker Reaction
Bromo-de-carboxylation

$$RCOOAg + Br_2 \longrightarrow RBr + CO_2 + AgBr$$

Reaction of a silver salt of a carboxylic acid with bromine is called the *Hunsdiecker reaction* and is a way of decreasing the length of a carbon chain by one unit.[361] The reaction is of wide scope, giving good results for normal-alkyl R from 2 to 18 carbons and for many branched R too, producing primary, secondary, and tertiary bromides. Many functional groups may be present as long as they are not α-substituted. R may also be aryl. However, if R contains unsaturation, the reaction seldom gives good results. Although bromine is the most often used halogen, chlorine and iodine have also been used.

When iodine is the reagent, the ratio between the reactants is very important and determines the products. A 1:1 ratio of salt to iodine gives the alkyl halide, as above. A 2:1 ratio, however, gives the ester RCOOR. This is called the *Simonini reaction* and is sometimes used to prepare esters. A 3:2 ratio gives both products—1 mole of ester and 1 mole of halide from 3 moles of salt. The Simonini reaction can also be carried out with lead salts of acids.[362] A more convenient way to perform the Hunsdiecker reaction is by use of a mixture of the acid and mercuric oxide instead of the salt, since the silver salt must be very pure and dry and such pure silver salts are often not easy to prepare.[363]

Other methods for accomplishing this reaction are: (1) treatment of thallium(I) carboxylates (which are easy to prepare and purify) with bromine;[364] (2) treatment of carboxylic acids with lead tetraacetate and halide *ions* (Cl^-, Br^-, or I^-);[365] (3) reaction of the acids with lead tetraacetate and N-chlorosuccinimide, which gives tertiary and secondary chlorides in good yields but is not good for R = primary or phenyl;[366] (4) the reaction between an acyl peroxide and $CuCl_2$, $CuBr_2$, or

---

[358] Lindsey and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2073 (1959); Khrizolitova, Mirkind, and Fioshin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **4,** 1640 (1968); Bruno and Dubois, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2270 (1973).

[359] Smith and Gilde, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5325 (1959), **83,** 1355 (1961); Schäfer and Pistorius, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 841 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 893].

[360] Fristad and Klang, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2219 (1983).

[361] For reviews, see Wilson, *Org. React.* **9,** 332–388 (1957); Johnson and Ingham, *Chem. Rev.* **56,** 219–269 (1957); Sosnovsky, Ref. 72, pp. 383–386.

[362] Bachman, Kite, Tuccarbasu, and Tullman, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3167 (1970).

[363] Cristol and Firth, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 280 (1961). See also Meyers and Fleming, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3405 (1979), and references cited therein.

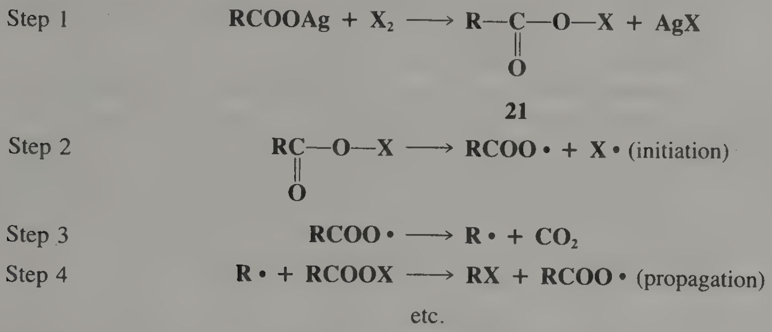
[364] McKillop, Bromley, and Taylor, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1172 (1969); Cambie, Hayward, Jurlina, Rutledge, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2608 (1981).

[365] Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2500 (1965), *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3265 (1965). For a review, see Sheldon and Kochi, *Org. React.* **19,** 279–421 (1972), pp. 326–334, 390–399.

[366] Becker, Geisel, Grob, and Kuhnen, *Synthesis* 493 (1973).

CuI_2[367] [this reaction also takes place with $Cu(SCN)_2$, $Cu(N_3)_2$, and $Cu(CN)_2$]; (5) treatment of acyl chlorides with a sodium salt of N-hydroxypyridine-2-thione in CCl_4 ($RCOCl \rightarrow RCl$), $BrCCl_3$ ($RCOCl \rightarrow RBr$), or benzene containing CHI_3 ($RCOCl \rightarrow RI$), and an amine catalyst.[367a] Alkyl fluorides can be prepared in moderate to good yields by treating carboxylic acids with XeF_2 and HF.[368]

The mechanism of the Hunsdiecker reaction is believed to be as follows:



Step 1 $$RCOOAg + X_2 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}X + AgX$$

21

Step 2 $$R\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}X \longrightarrow RCOO\bullet + X\bullet \text{ (initiation)}$$

Step 3 $$RCOO\bullet \longrightarrow R\bullet + CO_2$$

Step 4 $$R\bullet + RCOOX \longrightarrow RX + RCOO\bullet \text{ (propagation)}$$

etc.

The first step is not a free-radical process, and its actual mechanism is not known. **21** is an acyl hypohalite and is presumed to be an intermediate, although it has never been isolated from the reaction mixture. Among the evidence for the mechanism is that optical activity at R is lost (except when a neighboring bromine atom is present, see p. 613); if R is neopentyl, there is no rearrangement, which would certainly happen with a carbocation; and the side products, notably R—R, are consistent with a free-radical mechanism. There is evidence that the Simonini reaction involves the same mechanism as the Hunsdiecker reaction but that the alkyl halide formed then reacts with excess RCOOAg (**0-26**) to give the ester.[369] See also reaction **9-13**.

OS **III,** 578; **V,** 126; **51,** 106. See also OS **50,** 31.

4-40 Decarbonylation of Aldehydes and Acyl Halides

$$RCHO \xrightarrow{RhCl(Ph_3P)_3} RH$$

Aldehydes, both aliphatic and aromatic, can be decarbonylated[370] by heating with chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium[371] or other catalysts such as palladium.[372] $RhCl(Ph_3P)_3$ is often called *Wilkinson's catalyst*.[373] In an older reaction aliphatic (but not aromatic) aldehydes are decarbonylated by heating with di-*t*-butyl peroxide or other peroxides,[374] usually in a solution containing a hydrogen donor, such as a mercaptan. The reaction has also been initiated with light, and thermally (without an initiator) by heating at about 500°C.

---

[367] Jenkins and Kochi, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3095, 3103 (1971).

[367a] Barton, Crich, and Motherwell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4979 (1983).

[368] Patrick, Johri, and White, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4158 (1983). For another method, see Grakauskas, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2446 (1969).

[369] Oae, Kashiwagi, and Kozuka, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 2441 (1966); Bunce and Murray, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 5323 (1971).

[370] For reviews, see Baird, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement B," pt. 2, pp. 825–857, Wiley, New York, 1979; Tsuji, in Wender and Pino, "Organic Syntheses Via Metal Carbonyls," vol. 2, pp. 595–654, Wiley, New York, 1977; Tsuji and Ohno, *Synthesis* 157–169 (1969); Bird, "Transition Metal Intermediates in Organic Synthesis," pp. 239–247, Academic Press, New York, 1967.

[371] Tsuji and Ohno, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3969 (1965); Ohno and Tsuji, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 99 (1968); Baird, Nyman, and Wilkinson, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 348 (1968).

[372] For a review, see Rylander, Ref. 207, pp. 260–267.

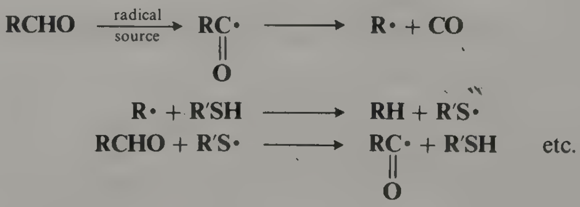
[373] For a review of this catalyst, see Jardine, *Prog. Inorg. Chem.* **28,** 63–202 (1981).

[374] For reviews of free-radical aldehyde decarbonylations, see Vinogradov and Nikishin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 916–932 (1971); Schubert and Kinter, in Patai, Ref. 168, pp. 711–735.

Wilkinson's catalyst has also been reported to decarbonylate aromatic acyl halides at 180°C (ArCOCl → ArCl).[375] This reaction has been carried out with acyl iodides,[376] bromides, and chlorides. Aliphatic acyl halides that lack an α-hydrogen also give this reaction,[377] but if an α-hydrogen is present, elimination takes place instead (**7-19**). Aromatic acyl cyanides give aryl cyanides (ArCOCN → ArCN).[378] Aromatic acyl chlorides can also be decarbonylated with palladium catalysts.[379]

It is possible to decarbonylate acyl halides in another way, to give alkanes (RCOCl → RH). This is done by heating the substrate with tripropylsilane Pr_3SiH in the presence of *t*-butyl peroxide.[380] Yields are good for R = primary or secondary and poor for R = tertiary or benzyl. There is no reaction when R = aryl.

The mechanism of the peroxide- or light-induced reaction seems to be as follows (in the presence of mercaptans):[381]

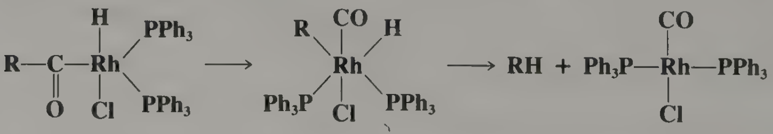


$$\mathrm{RCHO} \xrightarrow[\text{source}]{\text{radical}} \mathrm{R}\underset{\overset{\|}{\mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{C}}\cdot \longrightarrow \mathrm{R}\cdot + \mathrm{CO}$$

$$\mathrm{R}\cdot + \mathrm{R'SH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RH} + \mathrm{R'S}\cdot$$

$$\mathrm{RCHO} + \mathrm{R'S}\cdot \longrightarrow \mathrm{R}\underset{\overset{\|}{\mathrm{O}}}{\mathrm{C}}\cdot + \mathrm{R'SH} \qquad \text{etc.}$$

The reaction of aldehydes with Wilkinson's catalyst goes through complexes of the form **22** and **23**, which have been trapped.[382] The reaction has been shown to give retention of configuration at a chiral R;[383] and deuterium labeling demonstrates that the reaction is intramolecular: RCOD gave RD.[384] Free radicals are not involved.[385] The mechanism with acyl halides appears to be more complicated.[386] The tripropylsilane reaction has been postulated to go through a free-radical chain mechanism.[380]



22 **23**

For aldehyde decarbonylation by an electrophilic mechanism, see **1-40**.

---

[375] Kampmeier, Rodehorst, and Philip, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1847 (1981); Blum, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1605 (1966); Blum, Oppenheimer, and Bergmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2338 (1967).

[376] Blum, Rosenman, and Bergmann, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1928 (1968).

[377] Tsuji and Ohno, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4713 (1966), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3452 (1966).

[378] Blum, Oppenheimer, and Bergmann, Ref. 375.

[379] Verbicky, Dellacoletta, and Williams, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 371 (1982).

[380] Billingham, Jackson, and Malek, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1137 (1979).

[381] Slaugh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2262 (1959); Berman, Stanley, Sherman, and Cohen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 4010 (1963).

[382] Suggs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 640 (1978); Kampmeier, Harris, and Mergelsberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 621 (1984).

[383] Walborsky and Allen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5465 (1971); see also Tsuji and Ohno, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2173 (1967).

[384] Prince and Raspin, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 612 (1969); Walborsky and Allen, Ref. 383.

[385] Kampmeier, Harris, and Wedegaertner, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 315 (1980).

[386] Kampmeier, Rodehorst, and Philip, Ref. 375; Kampmeier and Mahalingam, *Organometallics* **3,** 489 (1984).

15

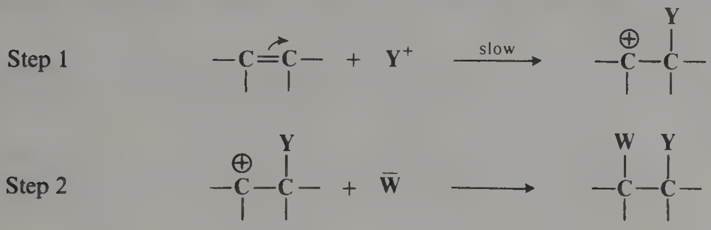
ADDITION TO CARBON–CARBON MULTIPLE BONDS

There are basically four ways in which addition to a double or triple bond can take place. Three of these are two-step processes, with initial attack by a nucleophile, an electrophile, or a free radical. The second step consists of combination of the resulting intermediate with, respectively, a positive species, a negative species, or a neutral entity. In the fourth type of mechanism, attack at the two carbon atoms of the double or triple bond is simultaneous. Which of the four mechanisms is operating in any given case is determined by the nature of the substrate, the reagent, and the reaction conditions. Some of the reactions in this chapter can take place by all four mechanisms.

MECHANISMS

Electrophilic Addition[1]

In this mechanism a positive species approaches the double or triple bond and in the first step forms a bond by converting the π pair of electrons into a σ pair:

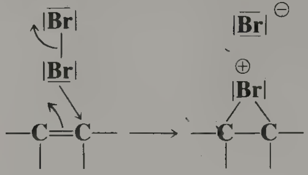


1

As in electrophilic substitution (p. 448), Y need not actually be a positive ion but can be the positive end of a dipole or an induced dipole, with the negative part breaking off either during the first step or shortly after. In any case, **1** has a positive charge on the other carbon. The second step is a combination of **1** with a species carrying an electron pair and usually bearing a negative charge. This step is the same as the second step of the SN1 mechanism. There is evidence that **1** is not the actual intermediate ion in all cases. In many brominations it is fairly certain that **1**, if formed at all, very rapidly cyclizes to a bromonium ion (**2**):

---

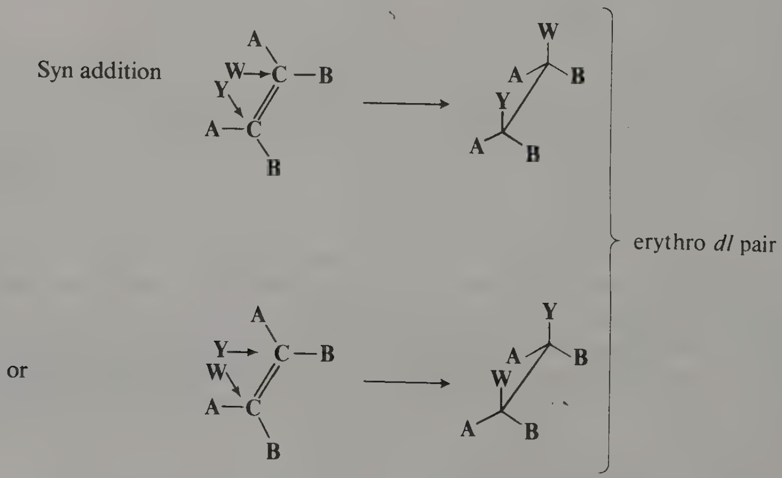
[1] For a monograph, see de la Mare and Bolton, "Electrophilic Additions to Unsaturated Systems," 2d ed., Elsevier, New York, 1982. For reviews, see V'yunov and Ginak, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 151–163 (1981); Schmid and Garratt, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups: Supplement A," pt. 2, pp. 725–912, Wiley, New York, 1977; Freeman, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 439–490 (1975); Bolton, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 9, pp. 1–86, American Elsevier, New York, 1973; Dolbier, *J. Chem. Educ.* **46,** 342–344 (1969).



2

This intermediate is similar to those encountered in the neighboring-group mechanism of nucleophilic substitution (see p. 268). The attack of $\overline{W}$ on an intermediate like **2** is a nucleophilic substitution. Whether the intermediate is **1** or **2**, the mechanism is called AdE2 (electrophilic addition, bimolecular).

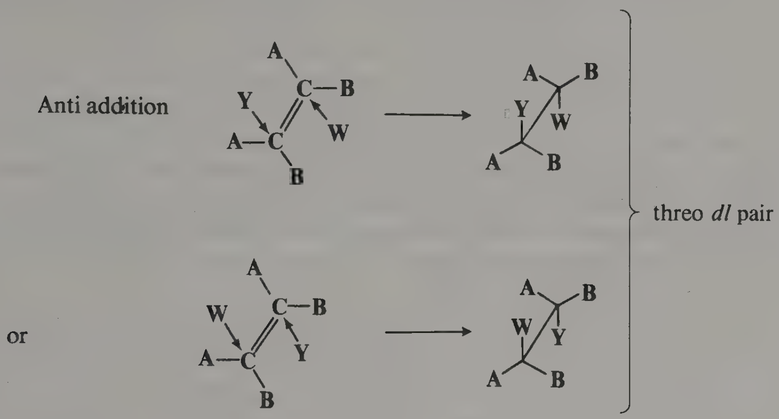
In investigating the mechanism of addition to a double bond, perhaps the most useful type of information is the stereochemistry of the reaction.[2] The two carbons of the double bond and the four atoms immediately attached to them are all in a plane (p. 9); there are thus three possibilities. Y and W may enter from the same side of the plane, in which case the addition is stereospecific and *syn;* they may enter from opposite sides for stereospecific *anti* addition; or the reaction may be nonstereospecific. In order to determine which of these possibilities is occurring in a given reaction, the following type of experiment is often done: YW is added to the cis and trans isomers of an olefin of the form ABC=CBA. We may use the cis olefin as an example. If the addition is syn, the product will be the erythro *dl* pair, because each carbon has a 50% chance of being attacked by Y:



---

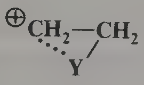
[2] For a review of the stereochemistry of electrophilic additions to double and triple bonds, see Fahey, *Top. Stereochem.* **3,** 237–342 (1968). For a review of the synthetic uses of stereoselective additions, see Bartlett, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2–72 (1980), pp. 3–15.

On the other hand, if the addition is anti, the threo *dl* pair will be formed:



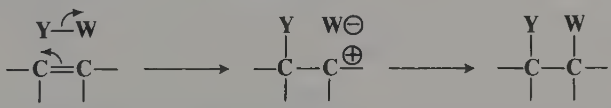
Of course, the trans isomer will give the threo pair if the addition is syn and the erythro pair if it is anti. The threo and erythro isomers have different physical properties. In the special case where Y = W (as in the addition of Br_2), the "erythro pair" is a meso compound. In addition to triple-bond compounds of the type AC≡CA, syn addition results in a cis olefin and anti addition in a trans olefin. By the definition given on p. 119, addition to triple bonds cannot be stereospecific, though it can be, and often is, stereoselective.

It can easily be seen that in reactions involving cyclic intermediates like **2** addition must be anti, since the second step must occur from the backside. It is not so easy to predict the stereochemistry for reactions involving **1.** If **1** has a relatively long life, the addition should be nonstereospecific, since there will be free rotation about the single bond. On the other hand, there may be some factor that maintains the configuration, in which case W may come in from the same side or the opposite side, depending on the circumstances. For example, the positive charge might be stabilized by an attraction for Y that does not involve a full bond:



3

The second group would then come in anti. A circumstance that would favor syn addition would be the formation of an ion pair after the addition of Y:[3]

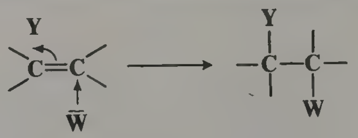


Since W is already on the same side of the plane as Y, collapse of the ion pair leads to syn addition.

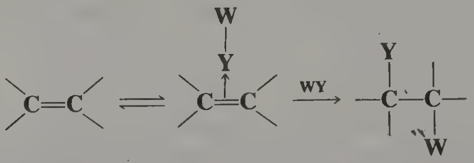
Another possibility is that anti addition might, at least in some cases, be caused by the operation of a mechanism in which attack by W and Y are essentially simultaneous but from opposite sides:

---

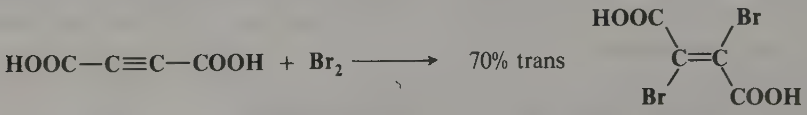
[3] Dewar, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 245–249 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 320–325]; Heasley, Bower, Dougharty, Easdon, Heasley, Arnold, Carter, Yaeger, Gipe, and Shellhamer, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5150 (1980).



This mechanism, which is called the AdE3 mechanism (*termolecular addition*), has the disadvantage that three molecules must come together in the transition state. However, it is the reverse of the E2 mechanism for elimination, for which the transition state is known to possess this geometry (p. 874). Another third-order reaction (also called AdE3) has also been proposed. In this case one molecule of YW forms a π complex (Chapter 3) with the substrate,[4] while a second molecule attacks from the rear, leading to anti addition.[5]



There is much evidence that when the attack is by Br^+ (or a carrier of it), the bromonium ion **2** is often an intermediate and the addition is anti. As long ago as 1912, McKenzie showed that treatment of maleic acid with bromine gave the *dl* pair of 2,3-dibromosuccinic acid, while fumaric acid (the trans isomer) gave the meso compound.[6] Many similar experiments have been performed since with similar results. For triple bonds, stereoselective anti addition was shown even earlier. Bromination of dicarboxyacetylene gave 70% of the trans isomer.[7]



$$HOOC—C{\equiv}C—COOH + Br_2 \longrightarrow \text{70\% trans}$$

There is other evidence for mechanisms involving **2.** We have already mentioned (p. 271) that bromonium ions have been isolated in stable solutions in nucleophilic substitution reactions involving bromine as a neighboring group. Such ions have also been isolated in reactions involving addition of a Br^+ species to a double bond.[8] The following is further evidence. If the two bromines approach the double bond from opposite sides, it is very unlikely that they could come from the same bromine molecule. This means that if the reaction is performed in the presence of nucleophiles, some of these will compete in the second step with the bromide liberated from the bromine. It has been found, indeed, that treatment of ethylene with bromine in the presence of chloride ions gives some

---

[4] See Olah and Hockswender, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3574 (1974); Olah, Schilling, Westerman, and Lin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3581 (1974).

[5] For evidence for one or the other of these AdE3 mechanisms, see, for example, Hammond and Nevitt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 4121 (1954); Hammond and Collins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4323 (1960); Bell and Pring, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1119 (1966); Pincock and Yates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5643 (1968); Fahey and Lee, *J. Am. Chem Soc.* **89,** 2780 (1967), **90,** 2124 (1968); Fahey and Monahan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2816 (1970); Fahey, Payne, and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1124 (1974); Roberts, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1374 (1976); Pasto and Gadberry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1469 (1978); Naab and Staab, *Chem. Ber.* **111,** 2982 (1978); Nordlander, Haky, and Landino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7487 (1980); Fukuzumi and Kochi, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **15,** 249 (1983).

[6] McKenzie, *J. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1196 (1912).

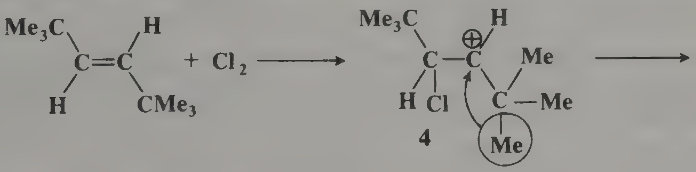
[7] Michael, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **46,** 209 (1892).

[8] Strating, Wieringa, and Wynberg, *Chem. Commun.* 907 (1969); Olah, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 173–212 (1973), p. 207 [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 183–225].

1-chloro-2-bromoethane along with the dibromoethane.[9] Similar results are found when the reaction is carried out in the presence of nitrate ions and of water.

However, a number of examples have been found where addition of bromine is not stereospecifically anti. For example, the addition of Br_2 to *cis*- and *trans*-1-phenylpropenes in CCl_4 was nonstereospecific.[10] Furthermore, the stereospecificity of bromine addition to stilbene depends on the dielectric constant of the solvent. In solvents of low dielectric constant, the addition was 90 to 100% anti, but with an increase in dielectric constant, the reaction became less stereospecific, until, at a dielectric constant of about 35, the addition was completely nonstereospecific.[11] Likewise in the case of triple bonds, stereoselective anti addition was found in bromination of 3-hexyne, but both cis and trans products were obtained in bromination of phenylacetylene.[12] These results indicate that a bromonium ion is not formed where the open cation can be stabilized in other ways (e.g., addition of Br^+ to 1-phenylpropene gives the ion $Ph\overset{\oplus}{C}HCHBrCH_3$, which is a relatively stable benzylic cation) and that there is probably a spectrum of mechanisms between complete bromonium ion (**2,** no rotation) formation and completely open-cation (**1,** free rotation) formation, with partially bridged bromonium ions (**3,** restricted rotation) in between.[13] We have previously seen cases (e.g., p. 276) where cations require more stabilization from outside sources as they become intrinsically less stable themselves.[14]

Attack by Cl^+,[15] I^+,[16] and RS^+[17] is similar to that by Br^+; there is a spectrum of mechanisms between cyclic intermediates and open cations. As might be expected, iodonium ions compete with open carbocations more effectively than bromonium ions, while chloronium ions compete less effectively. For example, when *trans*-1,2-di-*t*-butylethene was treated with chlorine the product was not the simple addition product, but **5.**[18] This compound could only have been formed by a carbocation rearrangement, which is, of course, evidence for the open cation intermediate **4.**



4

---

[9] Francis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **47,** 2340 (1925).

[10] Fahey and Schneider, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4429 (1968). See also Rolston and Yates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1469, 1477, 1483 (1969).

[11] Buckles, Bader, and Thurmaier, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4523 (1962); Heublein, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4] **31,** 84–91 (1966). See also Buckles, Miller, and Thurmaier, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 888 (1967); Heublein and Lauterbach, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **311,** 91 (1969); Ruasse and Dubois, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1977 (1975).

[12] Pincock and Yates, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 3332 (1970).

[13] For other evidence for this concept, see Pincock and Yates, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 2944 (1970); Heasley and Chamberlain, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 539 (1970); Dubois, Toullec, and Barbier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4485 (1970); Dalton and Davis, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1057 (1972); Wilkins and Regulski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6016 (1972); Sisti and Meyers, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4431 (1973); McManus and Peterson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2753 (1975); Abraham and Monasterios, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1446 (1973); Bienvenue-Goetz and Dubois, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 2021 (1978); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5388 (1981); Ruasse, Argile, and Dubois, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7645 (1978); *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1173 (1979); Schmid, Modro, and Yates, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 665 (1980); Ruasse and Argile, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 202 (1983); Kanska and Fry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7666 (1983).

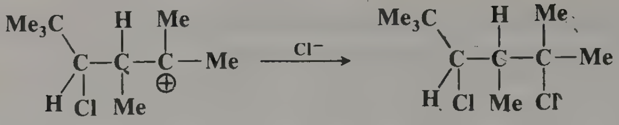
[14] In a few special cases, stereospecific syn addition of Br_2 has been found, probably caused by an ion pair mechanism as shown on p. 659: Naae, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1394 (1980).

[15] Fahey, Ref. 2, pp. 273–277.

[16] Hassner, Boerwinkle, and Levy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4879 (1970).

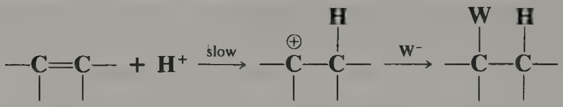
[17] For reviews of thiiranium ions, see Dittmer and Patwardhan, in Stirling, "The Chemistry of the Sulphonium Group," pt. 1, pp. 387–412, Wiley, New York, 1981; Schmid, *Top. Sulfur Chem.* **3,** 102–117 (1977); Mueller, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 482–492 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 475–484]. The specific nature of the 3-membered sulfur-containing ring is in dispute: see Smit, Zefirov, Bodrikov, and Krimer, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 282–288 (1979); Bodrikov, Borisov, Chumakov, Zefirov, and Smit, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 115 (1980). For a review of thiirenium ions, see Capozzi, Lucchini, and Modena, *Rev. Chem. Intermed.* **2,** 347–375 (1979).

[18] Puterbaugh and Newman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1611 (1959).



5

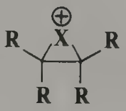
When the electrophile is a proton,[19] a cyclic intermediate is not possible, and the mechanism is

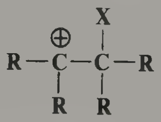


This is an A-SE2 mechanism (p. 331). There is a great deal of evidence[20] for it, including:

1. The reaction is general-acid, not specific-acid-catalyzed, implying rate-determining proton transfer from the acid to the double bond.[21]

2. The existence of open carbocation intermediates is supported by the contrast in the pattern of alkyl substituent effects[22] with that found in brominations, where cyclic intermediates are involved. In the latter case substitution of alkyl groups on $H_2C{=}CH_2$ causes a cumulative rate acceleration until all four hydrogens have been replaced by alkyl groups, because each group helps to stabilize the positive charge.[23] In addition of HX the effect is not cumulative. Replacement of the two hydrogens on one carbon causes great rate increases (primary → secondary → tertiary carbocation), but additional substitution on the other carbon produces little or no acceleration.[24] This is evidence for open cations when a proton is the electrophile.





3. Open carbocations are prone to rearrange (Chapter 18). Many rearrangements have been found to accompany additions of HX and H_2O.[25]

It may also be recalled that vinyl ethers react with proton donors in a similar manner (see **0-7**).

The stereochemistry of HX addition is varied. Examples are known of predominant syn, anti, and nonstereoselective addition. It was found that treatment of 1,2-dimethylcyclohexene (**6**) with HBr gave predominant anti addition,[26] while addition of water to **4** gave equal amounts of the cis and trans alcohols:[27]

---

[19] For a review of the addition of HCl, see Sergeev, Smirnov, and Rostovshchikova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **52,** 259–274 (1983).

[20] For other evidence, see Baliga and Whalley, *Can. J. Chem.* **42,** 1019 (1964); **43,** 2453 (1965); Gold and Kessick, *J. Chem. Soc.* 6718 (1965); Corriu and Guenzet, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 671 (1970); Simandoux, Torck, Hellin, and Coussemant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4402, 4410 (1972); Bernasconi and Boyle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6070 (1974); Hampel, Just, Pisanenko, and Pritzkow, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **318,** 930 (1976); Chwang and Tidwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1904 (1978); Allen and Tidwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3145 (1982).

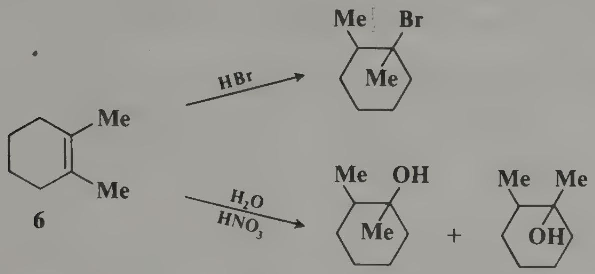
[21] Kresge, Chiang, Fitzgerald, McDonald, and Schmid, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4907 (1971); Loudon and Noyce, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1433 (1969); Schubert and Keeffe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 559 (1972).

[22] Bartlett and Sargent, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1297 (1965); Schmid and Garratt, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 2463 (1973).

[23] See, for example, Anantakrishnan and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1396 (1935); Swern, in Swern, "Organic Peroxides," vol. 2, pp. 451–454, Interscience, New York, 1971; Nowlan and Tidwell, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 252–258 (1977).

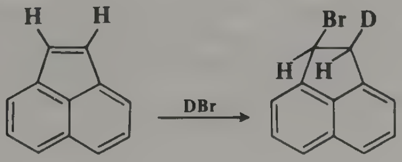
[24] Bartlett and Sargent, Ref. 22; Riesz, Taft, and Boyd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 3724 (1957).

[25] For example, see Whitmore and Johnston, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **55,** 5020 (1933); Fahey and McPherson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3865 (1969); Bilke, Collin, Duschek, Höbold, Höhn, Pritzkow, Schmidt, and Schnurpfeil, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **311,** 1037 (1969); Bundel', Ryabtsev, Sorokin, and Reutov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1311 (1969); Pocker and Stevens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4205 (1969); Staab, Wittig, and Naab, *Chem. Ber.* **111,** 2965 (1978); Stammann and Griesbaum, *Chem. Ber.* **113,** 598 (1980).



6

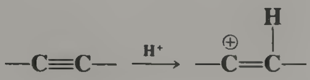
On the other hand, addition of DBr to acenaphthylene (**7**) and to indene and 1-phenylpropene gave predominant syn addition.[28]



7

In fact it has been shown that the stereoselectivity of HCl addition can be controlled by changing the reaction conditions. Addition of HCl to **6** in CH_2Cl_2 at −98°C gave predominantly syn addition, while in ethyl ether at 0°C, the addition was mostly anti.[29]

Addition of HX to triple bonds has the same mechanism, though the intermediate in this case is a vinyl cation:[30]



$$-C\equiv C- \xrightarrow{H^+} -\overset{\oplus}{C}=\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}-$$

In all these cases (except for the AdE3 mechanisms) we have assumed that formation of the intermediate (**1**, **2**, or **3**) is the slow step and attack by the nucleophile on the intermediate is rapid, and this is probably true in most cases. However, some additions have been found in which the second step is rate-determining.[31]

---

[26] Hammond and Nevitt, Ref. 5; Hammond and Collins, Ref. 5. See also Pasto, Meyer, and Kang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2162 (1969); Fahey and Monahan, Ref. 5; Pasto, Meyer, and Lepeska, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1858 (1974).

[27] Collins and Hammond, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 911 (1960).

[28] Dewar and Fahey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2245, 2248 (1963). For a review of syn addition of HX, see Ref. 3.

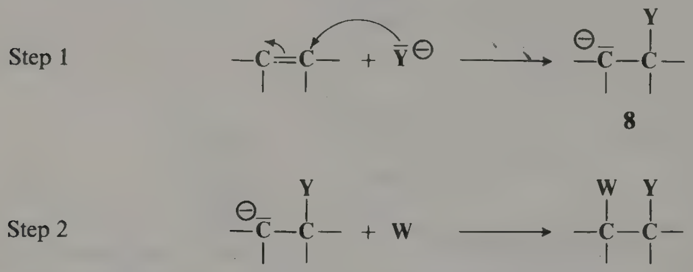
[29] Becker and Grob, *Synthesis* 789 (1973); see also Marcuzzi, Melloni, and Modena, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 413 (1974); Naab and Staab, Ref. 5.

[30] For reviews of electrophilic addition to alkynes, including much evidence, see Rappoport, *React. Intermed.* (*Plenum*) **3,** 427–615 (1983), pp. 428–440; Stang, Rappoport, Hanack, and Subramanian, "Vinyl Cations," pp. 24–151, Academic Press, New York, 1979; Stang, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **10,** 205–325 (1973); Modena and Tonellato, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **9,** 185–280 (1971), pp. 187–231; Richey and Richey, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 2, pp. 906–922, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[31] See, for example, Rau, Alcais, and Dubois, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3336 (1972); Bellucci, Berti, Ingrosso, and Mastrorilli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3911 (1973).

Nucleophilic Addition[32]

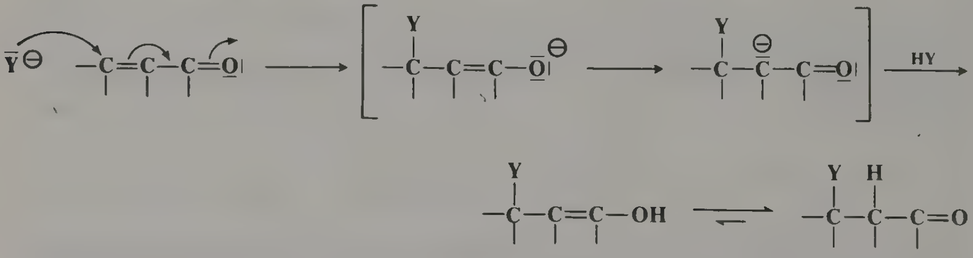
In the first step of nucleophilic addition a nucleophile brings its pair of electrons to one carbon atom of the double or triple bond, forcing the π electrons to become centered on the other carbon, creating a carbanion. The second step is combination of this carbanion with a positive species:



8

This mechanism is the same as the simple electrophilic one shown on page 657 except that the charges are reversed. When the olefin contains a good leaving group (as defined for nucleophilic substitution, p. 310), substitution is a side reaction (this is nucleophilic substitution at a vinyl substrate, see p. 295). There are at least five other types of side reactions that intermediates like **8** can undergo.[33]

In the special case of addition of HY to a substrate of the form —C=C—Z, where Z = CHO, COR (including quinones[34]), COOR, $CONH_2$, CN, NO_2, SOR, SO_2R, etc., addition nearly always follows a nucleophilic mechanism, with Y^- bonding with the carbon *away* from the Z group, e.g.,



9

Protonation of the enolate ion is chiefly at the oxygen, which is more negative than the carbon, but this produces the enol **9**, which tautomerizes. So although the net result of the reaction is addition to a carbon–carbon double bond, the *mechanism* is 1,4 nucleophilic addition to the C=C—C=O (or similar) system and is thus very similar to the mechanism of addition to carbon–oxygen double and similar bonds (see Chapter 16). When Z is CN or a C=O group, it is also possible for Y^- to attack at *this* carbon, and this reaction sometimes competes. When it happens, it is called 1,2 addition. 1,4 addition to these substrates is also known as *conjugate addition*. Y^-

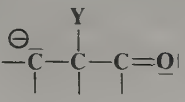
---

[32] For a review, see Patai and Rappoport, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 1, pp. 469–584, Interscience, New York, 1964.

[33] Patai and Rappoport, *J. Chem. Soc.* 377, 383, 392, 396 (1962); Ref. 32.

[34] For a review of addition reactions of quinones, see Finley, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Quinonoid Compounds," pt. 2, pp. 877–1144, Wiley, New York, 1974.

never attacks at the 3 position, since the resulting carbanion would have no resonance stabilization:



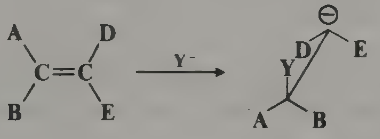
$$-\overset{\ominus}{\underset{|}{\bar{C}}}-\overset{Y}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{|}{C}=\underline{O}|$$

An important substrate of this type is acrylonitrile, and 1,4 addition to it is called *cyanoethylation* because the Y is cyanoethylated:

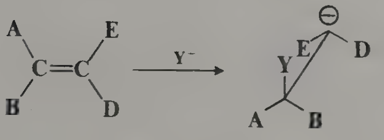
$$H_2C=CH-CN + HY \longrightarrow Y-CH_2-CH_2-CN$$

With any substrate, when Y is an ion of the type $Z-\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}R_2$ (Z is as defined above; R may be alkyl, aryl, hydrogen, or another Z), the reaction is called the *Michael reaction* (see **5-17**). In this book we shall call all other reactions that follow this mechanism *Michael-type additions*. Systems of the type C=C—C=C—Z may give 1,2, 1,4, or 1,6 addition. Michael-type reactions are reversible, and compounds of the type YCH_2CH_2Z can often be decomposed to YH and $CH_2=CHZ$ by heating, either with or without alkali.

If the mechanism for nucleophilic addition is the simple carbanion mechanism outlined on p. 664, the addition should be nonstereospecific, though it might well be stereoselective (see p. 119 for the distinction). For example, the cis and trans forms of an olefin ABC=CDE would give, respectively, **10** and **11**:



10



11

If the carbanion has even a short lifetime, **10** and **11** will assume the most favorable conformation before the attack of W. This is of course the same for both of them, and when W attacks, the same product will result from each. This will be one of two possible diastereomers, so the reaction will be stereoselective; but since the cis and trans isomers do not give rise to different isomers, it will not be stereospecific. Unfortunately, this prediction has not been tested on open-chain olefins. Except for Michael-type substrates, the stereochemistry of nucleophilic addition to double bonds has been studied only in cyclic systems, where only the cis isomer exists. In these cases the reaction has been shown to be stereoselective, with syn addition reported in some cases[35] and anti addition in others.[36] When the reaction is performed on a Michael-type substrate, C=C—Z, the hydrogen does not arrive at the carbon directly but only through a tautomeric equilibrium. The product naturally assumes the most thermodynamically stable configuration, without relation to the direction of original attack of Y. For obvious reasons, additions to triple bonds cannot be stereospecific.[37] As with electrophilic additions, nucleophilic additions to triple bonds are usually stereoselective and anti,[38] though syn addition[39] and nonstereoselective addition[40] have also been reported.

---

[35] For example, Truce and Levy, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 679 (1963).

[36] For example, Truce and Levy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4641 (1961); Zefirov, Yur'ev, Prikazchikova, and Bykhovskaya, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 2100 (1963).

Free-Radical Addition[41]

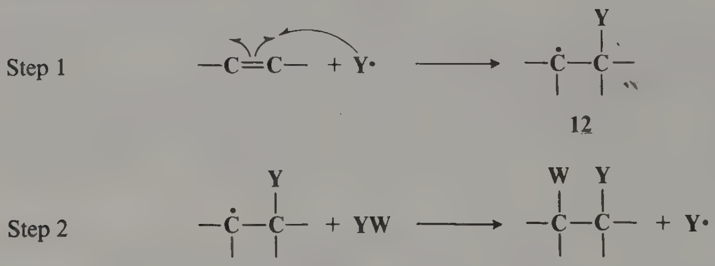
The mechanism of free-radical addition follows the pattern discussed in Chapter 14 (pp. 608–609). A radical is generated by

$$\mathrm{YW} \xrightarrow[\text{dissociation}]{h\nu\text{ or spontaneous}} \mathrm{Y}\cdot + \mathrm{W}\cdot$$

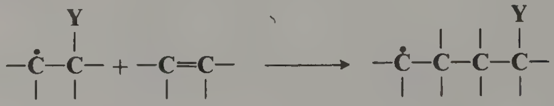
or

$$\mathrm{R}\cdot\ \text{(from some other source)} + \mathrm{YW} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RW} + \mathrm{Y}\cdot$$

Propagation then occurs by



Step 2 is an abstraction, so that W is nearly always univalent, either hydrogen or halogen (p. 613). Termination of the chain may occur in any of the ways discussed in Chapter 14. If **12** adds to another olefin molecule,



12

---

[37] For a review of nucleophilic addition to triple bonds, see Miller and Tanaka, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 143–238 (1970).

[38] Truce and Simms, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2756 (1956); Shostakovskii, Chekulaeva, Kondrat'eva, and Lopatin, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 2118 (1962); Théron and Vessière, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2994 (1968); Bowden and Price, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1466, 1472 (1970); Raunio and Frey, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 345 (1971); Truce and Tichenor, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2391 (1972).

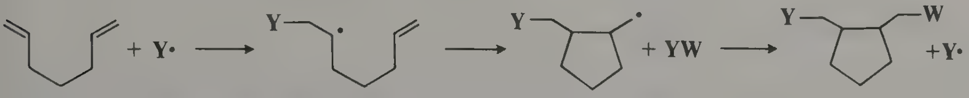
[39] Truce, Goldhamer, and Kruse, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4931 (1959); Dolfini, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1298 (1965); Winterfeldt and Preuss, *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 450 (1966).

[40] Gracheva, Laba, Kul'bovskaya, and Shostakovskii, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 2431 (1963); Truce and Brady, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3543 (1966); Prilezhaeva, Vasil'ev, Mikhaleshvili, and Bogdanov, *Bull. Acad. Sci., USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1820 (1970).

[41] For monographs on this subject, see Huyser, "Free-Radical Chain Reactions," Interscience, New York, 1970; Sosnovsky, "Free Radical Reactions in Preparative Organic Chemistry," Macmillan, New York, 1964. Other books with much of interest in this field are Nonhebel and Walton, "Free-Radical Chemistry," Cambridge University Press, London, 1974; Pryor, "Free Radicals," McGraw-Hill, New York, 1965. For reviews, see Giese, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 753–764 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 771–782]; Amiel, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 1, pp. 341–382, Wiley, New York, 1983; Abell, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 18, pp. 111–165, Elsevier, New York, 1976; Abell, in Kochi, "Free Radicals," vol. 2, pp. 63–112, Wiley, New York, 1973; Minisci, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 165–171 (1975); Julia, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 335–354, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Elad, *Org. Photochem.* **2,** 168–212 (1969); Schönberg, "Preparative Organic Photochemistry," pp. 155–181, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1968; Walling and Huyser, *Org. React.* **13,** 19–149 (1963); Stacey and Harris, *Org. React.* **13,** 150–376 (1963); Cadogan and Perkins, in Patai, Ref. 32, pp. 585–632.

a dimer is formed. This may now add to still another, and chains, long or short, may be built up. This is the mechanism of free-radical polymerization. Short polymeric molecules (called *telomers*), formed in this manner, are often troublesome side products in free-radical addition reactions.

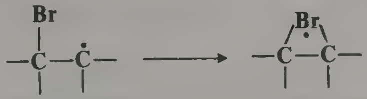
When free radicals are added to 1,5- or 1,6-dienes, the initially formed radical can add intramolecularly to the other double bond, leading to a cyclic product, e.g.,[42]



13

Free radicals of the type **13,** generated in other ways, also undergo these cyclizations. Both five- and six-membered rings can be formed in these reactions (see p. 674).

The free-radical addition mechanism just outlined predicts that the addition should be nonstereospecific, at least if **12** has any but an extremely short lifetime. However, the reactions may be stereoselective, for reasons similar to those discussed for nucleophilic addition on p. 665.[43] Many free-radical additions have been found to be stereoselective, though not all. For example, addition of HBr to 1-bromocyclohexene gave only *cis*-1,2-dibromocyclohexane and none of the trans isomer (anti addition),[44] and propyne (at −78 to −60°C) gave only *cis*-1-bromopropene (anti addition).[45] However, stereospecificity has been found only in a few cases. The most important of these is addition of HBr to 2-bromo-2-butene under free-radical conditions at −80°C. Under these conditions, the cis isomer gave 92% of the meso addend, while the trans isomer gave mostly the *dl* pair.[46] This stereospecificity disappeared at room temperature, where both olefins gave the same mixture of products (about 78% of the *dl* pair and 22% of the meso compound), so that the addition was still stereoselective but no longer stereospecific. The stereospecificity at low temperatures is probably caused by a stabilization of the intermediate radical through the formation of a bridged bromine radical, of the type mentioned on p. 612:



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle Br}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\bullet}{\underset{|}{C}}- \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{C}\overset{\overset{\bullet}{Br}}{\frown}\underset{|}{C}-$$

This species is similar to the bromonium ion, which is responsible for stereospecific anti addition in the electrophilic mechanism. Further evidence for the existence of such bridged radicals was obtained by addition of Br• to olefins at 77 K. Esr spectra of the resulting species were consistent with bridged structures.[47]

For many radicals step 1 ($C{=}C + Y\bullet \rightarrow \bullet C{-}C{-}Y$) is reversible. In such cases free radicals can cause cis → trans isomerization of a double bond by the pathway[48]

---

[42] For reviews of these and other free-radical cyclization reactions, see Surzur, *React. Intermed.* (*Plenum*) **2,** 121–295 (1982); Julia, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 386–392 (1972), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **40,** 553–567 (1974), **15,** 167–183 (1967), *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **25,** 3–29 (1964); Nonhebel and Walton, Ref. 41, pp. 533–544; Wilt, in Kochi, Ref. 41, vol. 1, pp. 418–446.

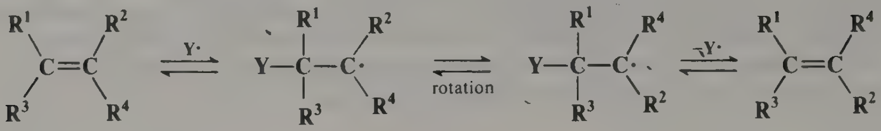
[43] For a review of the stereochemistry of free-radical addition, see Bohm and Abell, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 599–609 (1962).

[44] Goering, Abell, and Aycock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 3588 (1952). See also LeBel, Czaja, and DeBoer, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3112 (1969).

[45] Skell and Allen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5997 (1958).

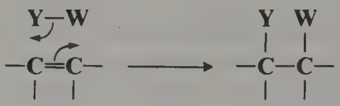
[46] Goering and Larsen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 2653 (1957), **81,** 5937 (1959). Also see Skell and Allen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5383 (1959); Skell and Freeman, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2524 (1964).

[47] Abell and Piette, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 916 (1962). See also Leggett, Kennerly, and Kohl, *J. Chem. Phys.* **60,** 3264 (1974).



Cyclic Mechanisms

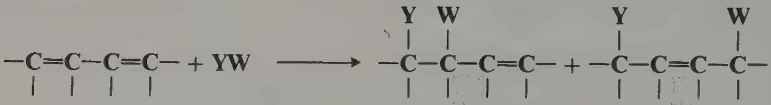
There are some addition reactions where the initial attack is not at one carbon of the double bond, but both carbons are attacked simultaneously. Some of these are four-center mechanisms, which follow this pattern:



In others there is a five- or a six-membered transition state. In these cases the addition to the double or triple bond must be syn. The most important reaction of this type is the Diels–Alder reaction (**5-47**).

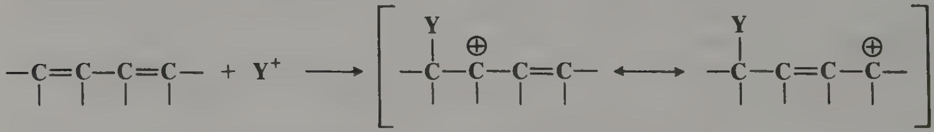
Addition to Conjugated Systems

When electrophilic addition is carried out on a compound with two double bonds in conjugation, a 1,2-addition product (**14**) is often obtained, but in most cases there is also a 1,4-addition product (**15**), often in larger yield:

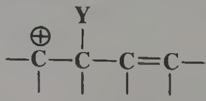


14 **15**

If the diene is unsymmetrical, there may be two 1,2-addition products. The competition between two types of addition product comes about because the carbocation resulting from attack by Y^+ is a resonance hybrid, with partial positive charges at the 2 and 4 positions:



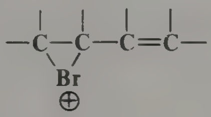
W^- may then attack either position. The original attack of Y^+ is always at the end of the conjugated system because an attack at a middle carbon would give a cation unstabilized by resonance:



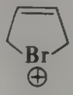
---

[48] Benson, Egger, and Golden, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 468 (1965); Golden, Furuyama, and Benson, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **1**, 57 (1969).

In the case of electrophiles like Br^+, which can form cyclic intermediates, both 1,2- and 1,4-addition products can be rationalized as stemming from an intermediate like **16.** Direct nucleophilic attack by W^- would give the 1,2-product, while the 1,4-product could be formed by attack at the 4 position, by an SN2′-type mechanism (see p. 288). Intermediates like **17** have been postulated but ruled out for Br and Cl by the observation that chlorination or bromination of butadiene gives trans 1,4-products.[49] If an ion like **17** were the intermediate, the 1,4-products would have to have the cis configuration.



16

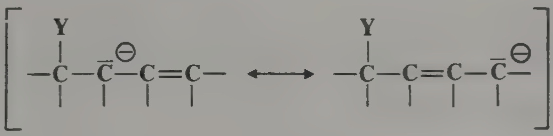


17

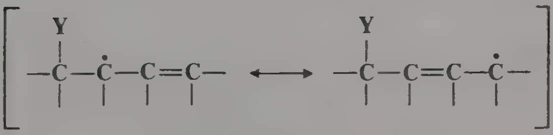
In most cases more 1,4- than 1,2-addition product is obtained. This may be a consequence of thermodynamic control of products, as against kinetic. In most cases, under the reaction conditions, **14** is converted to a mixture of **14** and **15** which is richer in **15.** That is, either isomer gives the same mixture of both, which contains more **15.** It was found that at low temperatures, butadiene and HCl gave only 20 to 25% 1,4-adduct, while at high temperatures, where attainment of equilibrium is more likely, the mixture contained 75% 1,4-product.[50] 1,2-Addition predominated over 1,4- in the reaction between DCl and 1,3-pentadiene, where the intermediate was the symmetrical (except for the D label) $\mathrm{CH_3CH{\cdots}\overset{\oplus}{C}H{\cdots}CHCH_2D}$.[51] Ion pairs were invoked to explain this result, since a free ion would be expected to be attacked by Cl^- equally well at both positions, except for the very small isotope effect.

Another aspect of the stereochemistry of 1,4 addition, besides the configuration (cis or trans) of the new double bond, is the question of whether the groups Y and W both come in from the same face of the conjugated system or from opposite faces. This can be determined only for dienes of the type XZC=CR—CR=CUV (where X can be the same as U and Z can be the same as V but X ≠ Z and U ≠ V). Electrophilic bromination and chlorination of such systems has shown that the addition is primarily syn, with both bromines or chlorines entering mostly from the same face of the plane.[52]

Addition to conjugated systems can also be accomplished by any of the other three mechanisms. In each case there is competition between 1,2 and 1,4 addition. In the case of nucleophilic or free-



$$\left[-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}}-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- \longleftrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-\underset{|}{\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}}-\right]$$



$$\left[-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\dot{C}}-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- \longleftrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-\underset{|}{\dot{C}}-\right]$$

---

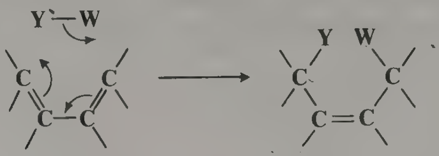
[49] Mislow and Hellman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 244 (1951); Mislow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2512 (1953).

[50] Kharasch, Kritchevsky, and Mayo, *J. Org. Chem.* **2,** 489 (1938).

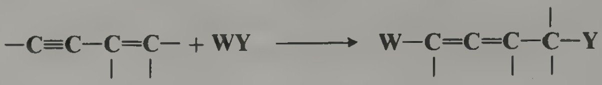
[51] Nordlander, Owuor, and Haky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1288 (1979).

[52] Heasley, Hayse, McClung, Strickland, Heasley, Davis, Ingle, Rold, and Ungermann, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 334 (1976).

radical attack,[53] the intermediates are resonance hybrids (p. 669) and behave like the intermediate from electrophilic attack. Dienes can give 1,4 addition by a cyclic mechanism in this way:



Other conjugated systems, including trienes, enynes, diynes, etc., have been studied much less but behave similarly.[54] 1,4 addition to enynes is an important way of making allenes:[55]



$$-C\equiv C-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + WY \longrightarrow W-\underset{|}{C}=C=\underset{|}{C}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-Y$$

ORIENTATION AND REACTIVITY

Reactivity

As with electrophilic aromatic substitution (Chapter 11), electron-donating groups increase the reactivity of a double bond toward electrophilic addition and electron-withdrawing groups decrease it. This is illustrated in Tables 1 and 2.[56] As a further illustration it may be mentioned that the reactivity toward electrophilic addition of a group of olefins increased in the order $CCl_3CH{=}CH_2 < Cl_2CHCH{=}CH_2 < ClCH_2CH{=}CH_2 < CH_3CH_2{=}CH_2$.[57] For nucleophilic addition the situation is reversed. These reactions are best carried out on substrates containing three or four electron-withdrawing groups, two of the most common being $F_2C{=}CF_2$[58] and $(NC)_2C{=}C(CN)_2$.[59]

TABLE 1 Relative reactivity of some olefins toward bromine in acetic acid at 24°C[56]

Olefin	Relative rate
$PhCH{=}CH_2$	Very fast
$PhCH{=}CHPh$	18
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2Cl$	1.6
$CH_2{=}CHCH_2Br$	1.0
$PhCH{=}CHBr$	0.11
$CH_2{=}CHBr$	0.0011

TABLE 2 Relative reactivity of some olefins toward bromine in methanol[56]

Olefin	Relative rate
$CH_2{=}CH_2$	3.0×10^1
$CH_3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$	2.9×10^3
cis-$CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_3$	1.3×10^5
$(CH_3)_2C{=}C(CH_3)_2$	2.8×10^7

[53] For a review of free-radical addition to conjugated dienes, see Afanas'ev and Samokhvalov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 318–329 (1969).

[54] For reviews of addition to conjugated enynes, see Petrov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 489–509 (1960); Taylor, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 317–359 (1967), pp. 329–331.

[55] For a discussion, see Sandler and Karo, "Organic Functional Group Preparations," vol. 2, pp. 31–34, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[56] Table 1 is from de la Mare, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **3,** 126–145 (1949), p. 145. Table 2 is from Dubois and Mouvier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1325 (1963). See also Dubois and Mouvier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1426 (1968); Grosjean, Mouvier, and Dubois, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3869, 3872 (1976).

[57] Shelton and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 428 (1960).

[58] For a review of additions of $F_2C{=}CF_2$ and other fluoroolefins, see Chambers and Mobbs, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **4,** 51–112 (1965).

[59] For reviews of additions to tetracyanoethylene, see Dhar, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 611–622 (1967); Cairns and McKusick, *Angew. Chem.* **73,** 520–525 (1961).

The effect of substituents is so great that it is possible to make the statement that *simple olefins do not react by the nucleophilic mechanism, and polyhalo or polycyano olefins do not generally react by the electrophilic mechanism.*[60] There are some reagents that attack only as nucleophiles, e.g., ammonia, and these add only to substrates susceptible to nucleophilic attack. Other reagents attack only as electrophiles, and, for example, $F_2C{=}CF_2$ does not react with these. In still other cases, the same reagent reacts with a simple olefin by the electrophilic mechanism and with a polyhalo olefin by a nucleophilic mechanism. For example, Cl_2 and HF are normally electrophilic reagents, but it has been shown that Cl_2 adds to $(NC)_2C{=}CHCN$ with initial attack by Cl^-[61] and that HF adds to $F_2C{=}CClF$ with initial attack by F^-.[62] Compounds that have a double bond conjugated with a Z group (as defined on p. 664) nearly always react by a nucleophilic mechanism. These are actually 1,4 additions, as discussed on p. 664. A number of studies have been made of the relative activating abilities of various Z groups.[63] On the basis of these studies, the following order of decreasing activating ability has been suggested: Z = NO_2, COAr, CHO, COR, SO_2Ar, CN, COOR, SOAr, $CONH_2$, CONHR.[64] When Michael-type reactions are performed on $ZCH{=}CHZ'$, then, in general, the more activating Z controls the position of attack[65] so that, for example, $PhCOCH{=}CHCN$ is attacked at the carbon adjacent to the CN.[66] However, exceptions are known.

It seems obvious that electron-withdrawing groups enhance nucleophilic substitution and inhibit electrophilic substitution because they lower the electron density of the double bond. This is probably true, and yet similar reasoning does not always apply to a comparison between double and triple bonds.[67] There is a higher concentration of electrons between the carbons of a triple bond than in a double bond, and yet triple bonds are *less* subject to electrophilic attack and *more* subject to nucleophilic attack than double bonds.[68] This statement is not universally true, but it does hold in most cases. In compounds containing both double and triple bonds (nonconjugated), bromine, an electrophilic reagent, always adds to the double bond.[69] In fact, all reagents that form bridged intermediates like **2** react faster with double than with triple bonds. On the other hand, addition of electrophilic H^+ (acid-catalyzed hydration, **5-2;** addition of hydrogen halides, **5-1**) takes place at about the same rates for alkenes as for corresponding alkynes.[70]

Still, it is true that in general triple bonds are more susceptible to nucleophilic and less to electrophilic attack than double bonds, in spite of their higher electron density. One explanation for this is that the electrons in the triple bond are held more tightly because of the smaller carbon–carbon distance; it is thus harder for an attacking electrophile to pull out a pair. There is evidence from far-uv spectra to support this conclusion.[71] Another possible explanation has to do with the availability of the unfilled orbital in the alkyne. It has been shown that a π^* orbital of bent alkynes

---

[60] Such reactions can take place under severe conditions. For example, electrophilic addition could be accomplished with $F_2C{=}CHF$ in super-acid solutions [Olah and Mo, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1028 (1972)] although $F_2C{=}CF_2$ did not react under these conditions. For reviews of electrophilic additions to fluoroolefins, see Dyatkin, Mochalina, and Knunyants, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 417–427 (1966), *Fluorine Chem. Rev.* **3,** 45–71 (1969); Ref. 58, pp. 77–81.

[61] Dickinson, Wiley, and McKusick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 6132 (1960). For another example, see Atkinson, de la Mare, and Larsen, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 217 (1983).

[62] Miller, Fried, and Goldwhite, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3091 (1960).

[63] See, for example, Friedman and Wall, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2888 (1966); Ring, Tesoro, and Moore, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1091 (1967).

[64] Shenhav, Rappoport, and Patai, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 469 (1970).

[65] For a review, see Nesmeyanov, Rybinskaya, and Rybin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 453–467 (1967).

[66] Nesmeyanov, Rybinskaya, and Rybin, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 2013 (1961).

[67] For reviews of ionic additions to triple bonds, see, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," Wiley, New York, 1978, the articles by Schmid, pt. 1, pp. 275–341, and by Dickstein and Miller, pt. 2, pp. 813–955; Winterfeldt, in Viehe, Ref. 41, pp. 267–354. For comparisons of double and triple bond reactivity, see Melloni, Modena, and Tonellato, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **14,** 227–233 (1981); Allen, Chiang, Kresge, and Tidwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 775 (1982).

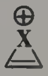
[68] For discussions, see Daniels and Bauer, *J. Chem. Educ.* **35,** 444 (1958); DeYoung, Ehrlich, and Berliner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 290 (1977); Strozier, Caramella, and Houk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1340 (1979).

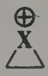
[69] Petrov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 489–509 (1960).

[70] Melloni, Modena, and Tonellato, Ref. 67, p. 686.

[71] Walsh, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **2,** 73–91 (1948).

(such as cyclooctyne) has a lower energy than the π^* orbital of alkenes, and it has been suggested[72] that linear alkynes can achieve a bent structure in their transition states when reacting with an electrophile. Where electrophilic addition involves bridged-ion intermediates, those arising from triple bonds (**18**) are more strained than the corresponding **19** and furthermore are antiaromatic systems (see p. 53), which **19** are not. This may be a reason why electrophilic addition by such electrophiles as Br, I, SR, etc., is slower for triple than for double bonds.[73] As might be expected, triple bonds connected to a Z group (C≡C—Z) undergo nucleophilic addition especially well.[74]

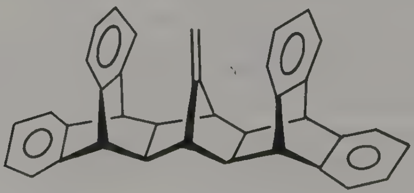

18


19

Although alkyl groups in general increase the rates of electrophilic addition, we have already mentioned (p. 662) that there is a different pattern depending on whether the intermediate is a bridged ion or an open carbocation.

Free-radical additions can occur with any type of substrate. The determining factor is the presence of a free-radical attacking species. Some reagents, e.g., HBr, RSH, attack by ionic mechanisms if no initiator is present, but in the presence of a free-radical initiator, the mechanism changes and the addition is of the free-radical type. Nucleophilic radicals (see p. 616) behave like nucleophiles, in that the rate is increased by the presence of electron-withdrawing groups in the substrate. The reverse is true for electrophilic radicals.[75] However, nucleophilic radicals react with alkynes more slowly than with the corresponding alkenes,[76] which is contrary to what might have been expected.

Steric influences are important in some cases. In catalytic hydrogenation, where the substrate must be adsorbed onto the catalyst surface, the reaction becomes more difficult with increasing substitution. The hydrocarbon **20**, in which the double bond is entombed between the benzene rings, does not react with Br_2, H_2SO_4, O_3, BH_3, CBr_2, or other reagents that react with most double bonds.[77] A similarly inactive compound is tetra-*t*-butylallene $(t\text{-Bu})_2C{=}C{=}C(t\text{-Bu})_2$, which is inert to Br_2, Cl_2, O_3, and catalytic hydrogenation.[78]


20

---

[72] Ng, Jordan, Krebs, and Rüger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7414 (1982).

[73] Nevertheless, bridged ions **18** have been implicated in some additions to triple bonds. See, for example, Pincock and Yates, Ref. 12; Mauger and Berliner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 194 (1972); Bassi and Tonellato, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 669 (1973); Schmid, Modro, Lenz, Garratt, and Yates, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2331 (1976).

[74] For a review of additions to these substrates, see Winterfeldt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 423–434 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 389–400], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **6,** 243–279 (1971).

[75] For reviews of reactivity in free-radical additions, see Tedder, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 401–410 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 433–442]; Tedder and Walton, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 701–707 (1980).

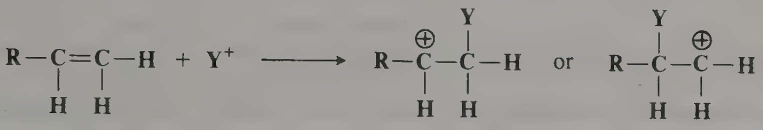
[76] Giese and Lachhein, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 768 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 780].

[77] Butler, Gupta, Ng, and Nyburg, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 596 (1980).

[78] Bolze, Eierdanz, Schlüter, Massa, Grahn, and Berndt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 924 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 927].

Orientation

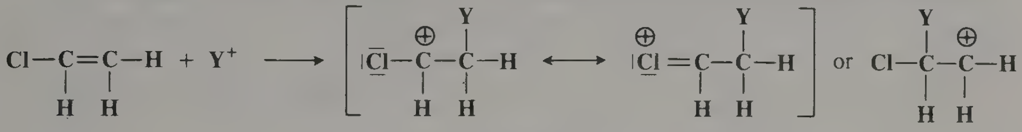
When an unsymmetrical reagent is added to an unsymmetrical substrate, the question arises: Which side of the reagent goes to which side of the double or triple bond? For electrophilic attack, the answer is given by *Markovnikov's rule: the positive portion of the reagent goes to the side of the double or triple bond that has more hydrogens.*[79] A number of explanations have been suggested for this regioselectivity, but the most probable is that Y^+ adds to that side that will give the more stable carbocation. Thus, when an alkyl group is present, secondary carbocations are more stable than primary:



$$R-\underset{H}{C}=\underset{H}{C}-H + Y^+ \longrightarrow R-\underset{H}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{Y}{C}}-H \quad \text{or} \quad R-\underset{H}{\overset{Y}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-H$$

More stable

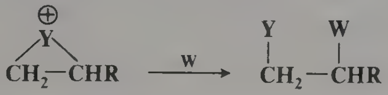
We may ask: How does Y^+ "know" which side will give the more stable carbocation? As in the similar case of electrophilic aromatic substitution (p. 454), we invoke the Hammond postulate and say that the lower energy carbocation is preceded by the lower energy transition state. Markovnikov's rule also applies for halogen substituents because the halogen stabilizes the carbocation by resonance:



$$Cl-\underset{H}{C}=\underset{H}{C}-H + Y^+ \longrightarrow \left[|\overline{\underline{Cl}}-\underset{H}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{Y}{C}}-H \longleftrightarrow \overset{\oplus}{|\underline{Cl}}=\underset{H}{C}-\underset{H}{\overset{Y}{C}}-H \right] \quad \text{or} \quad Cl-\underset{H}{\overset{Y}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-H$$

More stable

Markovnikov's rule is also usually followed where bromonium ions or other three-membered rings are intermediates.[80] This means that in these cases attack by W must resemble the SN1 rather than the SN2 mechanism (see p. 326), though the overall stereospecific anti addition in these reactions means that the nucleophilic substitution step is taking place with inversion of configuration.



Olefins containing strong electron-withdrawing groups may violate Markovnikov's rule. For example, attack at the Markovnikov position of $Me_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-CH=CH_2$ would give an ion with positive charges on adjacent atoms. The compound $CF_3CH=CH_2$ has been reported to give electrophilic addition with acids in an anti-Markovnikov direction, but it has been shown[81] that, when treated with acids, this compound does not give simple electrophilic addition at all; the apparently anti-Markovnikov products are formed by other pathways.

For nucleophilic addition the direction of attack has been studied very little, except for Michael-type addition, with compounds of the type C=C—Z. Here the negative part of the reagent *always* attacks regioselectively at the carbon that does not carry the Z (see p. 664).

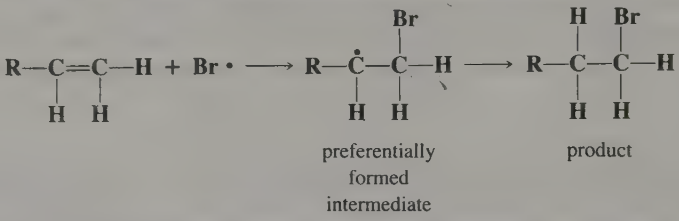
---

[79] For discussions of Markovnikov's rule, see Isenberg and Grdinic, *J. Chem. Educ.* **46,** 601 (1969); Grdinic and Isenberg, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **4,** 145–162 (1970).

[80] This has been graphically demonstrated by direct treatment of stabilized bromonium ions by nucleophiles: Dubois and Chrétien, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3506 (1978).

[81] Myhre and Andrews, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7595, 7596 (1970).

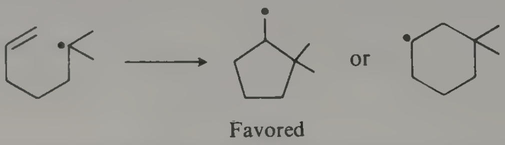
In free-radical addition[82] the main effect seems to be steric. All substrates $CH_2{=}CHX$ are preferentially attacked at the CH_2, regardless of the identity of X or of the attacking radical.[83] With a reagent such as HBr, this means that the addition is anti-Markovnikov:



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{H}{C}{=}\underset{H}{C}{-}H} + \mathrm{Br}\cdot \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\underset{H}{\dot{C}}{-}\overset{Br}{\underset{H}{C}}{-}H} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{H}{\underset{H}{C}}{-}\overset{Br}{\underset{H}{C}}{-}H}$$

Thus the observed orientation in both kinds of HBr addition (Markovnikov electrophilic and anti-Markovnikov free radical) is caused by formation of the secondary intermediate. In the electrophilic case it forms because it is more stable than the primary; in the free-radical case because it is sterically preferred. The stability order of the free-radical intermediates is also usually in the same direction: 3° > 2° > 1° (p. 164), but this factor is apparently less important than the steric factor. Internal olefins with no groups present to stabilize the radical usually give approximately a 1:1 mixture.

In *intramolecular* additions of radicals containing a 5,6 double bond, both five- and six-membered rings may be formed, but in most cases the five-membered rings are greatly preferred kinetically, even (as in the case shown) where five-membered ring closure means generating a primary radical and six-membered ring closure a secondary radical. This phenomenon may be caused by more favorable entropy factors leading to a five-membered ring, as well as by stereoelectronic factors, but other explanations have also been offered.[84] Similar behavior is found when the double bond is in other positions (from the 3,4 to the 7,8 position). In each case the smaller ring (exo addition) is preferred to the larger (endo addition).[85]



For conjugated dienes, attack by a positive ion, a negative ion, or a free radical is always at the *end* of the conjugated system, since in each case this gives an intermediate stabilized by resonance. In the case of an unsymmetrical diene, the more stable ion is the one that is formed. For example, isoprene $CH_2{=}CMeCH{=}CH_2$, treated with HCl gives only $Me_2CClCH{=}CH_2$ and $Me_2C{=}CHCH_2Cl$, with none of the product arising from attack at the other end. $PhCH{=}CHCH{=}CH_2$ gives only $PhCH{=}CHCHClCH_3$ since it is the only one of the eight possible products that has a double bond in conjugation with the ring and that results from attack by H^+ at an end of the conjugated system.

---

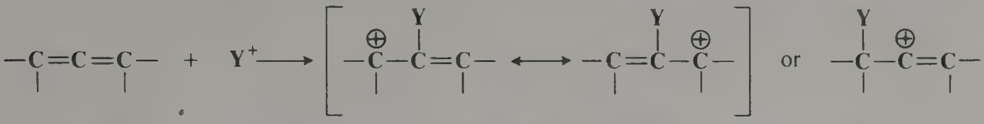
[82] For reviews of orientation in free-radical additions, see Tedder and Walton, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 701–707 (1980); *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **16,** 51–86 (1978); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 183–191 (1976). See also Giese, Ref. 41; Tedder, *J. Chem. Educ.* **61,** 237 (1984).

[83] It has been contended that this regioselectivity is caused by an electronic effect: Poblet, Canadell, and Sordo, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 2068 (1983).

[84] For discussions, see Beckwith, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 3073–3100 (1981); Verhoeven, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **99,** 143 (1980).

[85] See Beckwith, Easton, and Serelis, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 482 (1980).

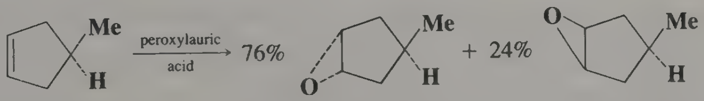
When allenes are attacked by electrophilic reagents,[86] Markovnikov's rule would predict that the attack should be at the end of the system, since there are no hydrogens in the middle. Attack at the center gives a carbocation stabilized by resonance, but not immediately. In order for such stabilization to be in effect the three p orbitals must be parallel, and it requires a rotation about the C—C bond for this to happen.[87] Therefore, the stability of the allyl cation has no effect on the transition state, which still has a geometry similar to that of the original allene (p. 90). Probably because of this, attack on the unsubstituted $CH_2{=}C{=}CH_2$ is most often at the end carbon, to give a vinyl cation,[30] though center attack has also been reported. However, as alkyl or aryl groups are substituted on the allene carbons, attack at the middle carbon becomes more favorable because the resulting cation is stabilized by the alkyl or aryl groups (it is now a secondary, tertiary, or benzylic cation). For example, allenes of the form $RCH{=}C{=}CH_2$ are still attacked most often at the end, but with $RCH{=}C{=}CHR'$ center attack is more prevalent. Tetramethylallene is also attacked predominantly at the center carbon.[88] Free radicals[89] attack allenes most often at the end,[90] though attack at the middle has also been reported. As with electrophilic attack and for the same reason, the stability of the allyl radical has no effect on the transition state of the reaction between a free radical and an allene. Again, as with electrophilic attack, the presence of alkyl groups increases the extent of attack by a free radical at the middle carbon.[91]



$$-\underset{|}{C}=C=\underset{|}{C}- \quad + \quad Y^{+} \longrightarrow \left[-\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-\overset{Y}{\overset{|}{C}}=\underset{|}{C}- \longleftrightarrow -\underset{|}{C}=\overset{Y}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}-\right] \quad \text{or} \quad -\underset{|}{\overset{Y}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\overset{\oplus}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-$$

Stereochemical Orientation

It has already been pointed out that some additions are syn, with both groups, approaching from the same side, and that others are anti, with the groups approaching from opposite sides of the double or triple bond. For cyclic compounds there are further aspects of steric orientation. In syn addition to an unsymmetrical cyclic olefin, the two groups can come in from the more-hindered side or from the less-hindered side of the double bond. The rule is that syn addition is usually, though not always, from the less-hindered side.[92] For example, epoxidation of 4-methylcyclopentene gave 76% addition from the less-hindered and 24% from the more-hindered side.[93]



---

[86] For reviews of additions to allenes, see, Smadja, *Chem. Rev.* **83,** 263–320 (1983); in Landor, "The Chemistry of Allenes," vol. 2, Academic Press, New York, 1982, articles by Landor, Jacobs, and Hopf; pp. 351–577; Stang, Rappoport, Hanack, and Subramanian, Ref. 30, pp. 152–167; Blake, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Ketenes, Allenes, and Related Compounds," pt. 1, pp. 342–357, Wiley, New York, 1980; Modena and Tonellato, Ref. 30, pp. 215–231; Richey and Richey, Ref. 30, pp. 917–922; Caserio, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 239–299 (1970); Taylor, Ref. 54, pp. 338–346; Mavrov and Kucherov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 233–249 (1967); Griesbaum, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 933–946 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 953–966]; Petrov and Fedorova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **33,** 1–13 (1964).

[87] For evidence that this is so, see Okuyama, Izawa, and Fueno, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6749 (1973).

[88] For example, see Bianchini and Guillemonat, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2120 (1968); Pittman, *Chem. Commun.* 122 (1969); Poutsma and Ibarbia, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 440 (1971).

[89] For a review, see Jacobs, in Landor, Ref. 86, vol. 2, pp. 399–415.

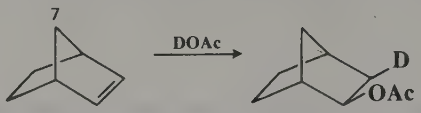
[90] Griesbaum, Oswald, Quiram, and Naegele, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1952 (1963).

[91] For example, see Byrd and Caserio, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3881 (1972); Pasto, Warren, and Morrison, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2837 (1981). See however Bartels and Boldt, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 40 (1981).

[92] For a review of stereoselectivity in cyclic additions, see Henbest, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 159–165 (1963).

[93] Henbest and McCullough, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 74 (1962).

In anti addition to a cyclic substrate, the initial attack by the electrophile is also from the less-hindered side. However, many (though not all) electrophilic additions to norbornene and similar strained bicycloalkenes are syn additions.[94] In these cases attack is always from the exo side, e.g.,[95]



unless the exo side is blocked by substituents in the 7 position, in which case endo attack may predominate; e.g., 7,7-dimethylnorbornene undergoes syn–endo epoxidation (**5-37**) and hydroboration[96] (**5-13**). However, addition of DCl and F_3CCOOD to, and oxymercuration (**5-2**) of, 7,7-dimethylnorbornene proceed syn–exo in spite of the methyl groups in the 7 position.[97] Similarly, free-radical additions to norbornene and similar molecules are often syn–exo, though anti additions and endo attacks are also known.[98]

It has been mentioned that additions of Br_2 and HOBr are often anti because of formation of bromonium ions and that free-radical addition of HBr is also anti. When the substrate in any of these additions is a cyclohexene, the addition is not only anti but the initially formed product is conformationally specific too, being mostly diaxial.[99] This is so because diaxial opening of the three-membered ring preserves a maximum coplanarity of the participating centers in the transition state; indeed, on opening, epoxides also give diaxial products.[100] However, the initial diaxial product may then pass over to the diequatorial conformer (see p. 125) unless other groups on the ring render the latter less stable than the former. In free-radical additions to cyclohexenes in which cyclic intermediates are not involved, the initial attack by the radical is also usually from the axial direction,[101] resulting in a diaxial initial product if the overall addition is anti.

Addition to Cyclopropane Rings[102]

We have previously seen (p. 131) that in some respects, cyclopropane rings resemble double bonds.[103] It is not surprising, therefore, that cyclopropanes undergo addition reactions analogous to those undergone by double-bond compounds, resulting in the opening of the three-membered rings, e.g. (the reaction numbers of the analogous addition reactions are given in parentheses),

$+ \ \mathrm{HBr} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3CH_2CH_2Br}$ **(5-1)**

---

[94] For a discussion, see Traylor, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **2,** 152–160 (1969).

[95] Cristol, Morrill, and Sanchez, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2719 (1966); Brown, Kawakami, and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5536 (1970). See also Bond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5326 (1968); Stille and Hughes, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 340 (1971).

[96] Brown and Kawakami, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 201, 1990 (1970); Brown, Kawakami, and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2209 (1973).

[97] Brown and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 600, 2469 (1975); Brown and Kawakami, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8665 (1973); Tidwell and Traylor, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2614 (1968).

[98] For a review of free-radical addition to these systems, see Azovskaya and Prilezhaeva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 516–528 (1972).

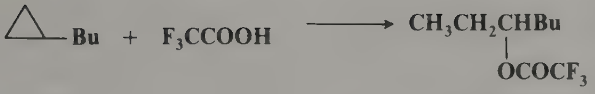
[99] Barton, in "Theoretical Organic Chemistry, The Kekulé Symposium," pp. 127–143, Butterworth, London, 1959; Goering, Abell, and Aycock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 3588 (1952); Goering and Sims, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3465 (1955); Shoppee, Akhtar, and Lack, *J. Chem. Soc.* 877 (1964); Readio and Skell, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 753, 759 (1966).

[100] For example, see Anselmi, Berti, Catelani, Lecce, and Monti, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2271 (1977).

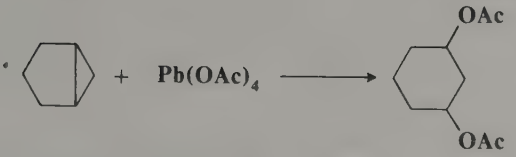
[101] Huyser, Benson, and Sinnige, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 622 (1967); LeBel, Czaja, and DeBoer, Ref. 44.

[102] For a review, see Charton, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 2, pp. 569–592, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[103] For a review, see Lukina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 419 (1962). The analogies are by no means complete: see Gordon, *J. Chem. Educ.* **44,** 461 (1967).



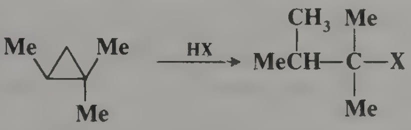
(5-5) Ref. 104



(5-36) Ref. 105

Other examples are discussed at **5-12, 5-48,** and **5-49.**

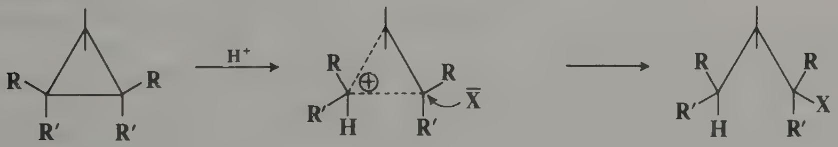
Additions to cyclopropanes can take place by any of the four mechanisms already discussed in this chapter, but the most important type involves electrophilic attack.[106] For substituted cyclopropanes, these reactions usually follow Markovnikov's rule, though exceptions are known and the degree of regioselectivity is often small. The application of Markovnikov's rule to these substrates can be illustrated by the reaction of 1,1,2-trimethylcyclopropane with HX.[107] The rule predicts that the electrophile (in this case H^+) goes to the carbon with the most hydrogens and the nucleophile



goes to the carbon that can best stabilize a positive charge (in this case the tertiary rather than the secondary carbon). The stereochemistry of the reaction can be investigated at two positions—the one that becomes connected to the electrophile and the one that becomes connected to the nucleophile. The results at the former position are mixed. Additions have been found to take place with 100% retention,[108] 100% inversion,[109] and with mixtures of retention and inversion[110] At the carbon that becomes connected to the nucleophile the result is usually inversion, though retention has also been found,[111] and elimination, rearrangement, and racemization processes often compete, indicating that in many cases a positively charged carbon is generated at this position.

At least three mechanisms have been proposed for electrophilic addition (these mechanisms are shown for attack by HX, but analogous mechanisms can be written for other electrophiles).

Mechanism *a*



21

---

[104] Peterson and Thompson, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 968 (1968).

[105] Moon, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3456 (1964).

[106] For a review, see DePuy, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **40,** 73–101 (1973).

[107] Kramer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4344 (1970).

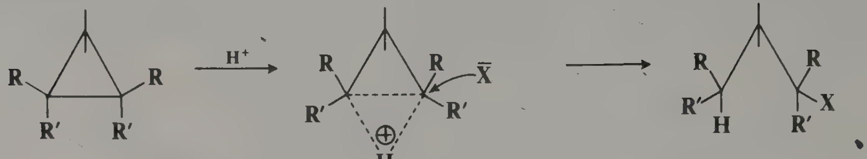
[108] For example, see DePuy, Breitbeil, and DeBruin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3347 (1966); Hendrickson and Boeckman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3269 (1969).

[109] For example, see LaLonde, Ding, and Tobias, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6651 (1967); Warnet and Wheeler, *Chem. Commun.* 547 (1971); Hogeveen, Roobeek, and Volger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 221 (1972); Battiste and Mackiernan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4095 (1972). See also Jensen, Patterson, and Dinizo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1315 (1974).

[110] Nickon and Hammons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3322 (1964); Hammons, Probasco, Sanders, and Whalen, *J. Org. Chem* **33,** 4493 (1968); DePuy, Fünfschilling, Andrist, and Olson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 6297 (1977).

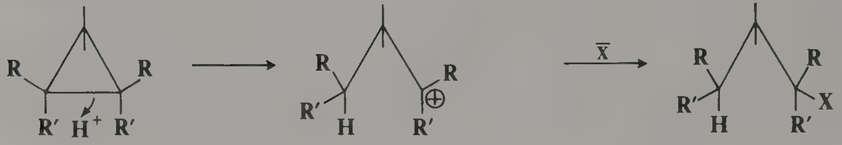
[111] Cristol, Lim, and Dahl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4013 (1970); Hendrickson and Boeckman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4491 (1971).

Mechanism *b*



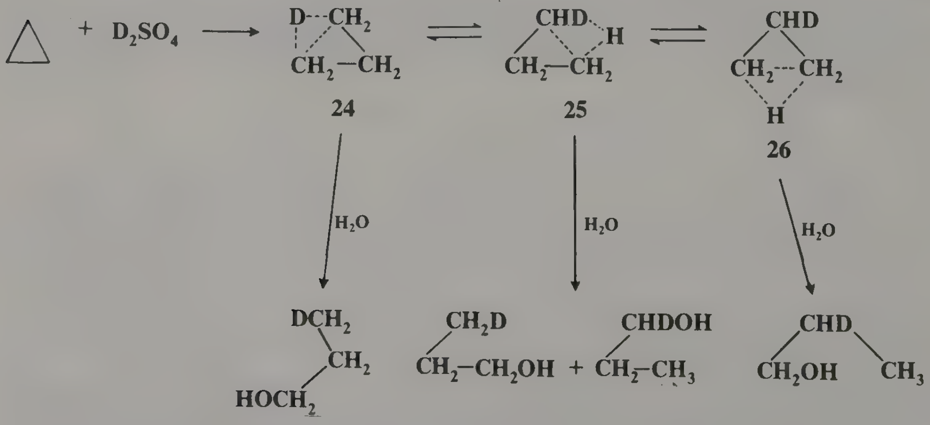
22

Mechanism *c*



23

Mechanism *a* involves a corner-protonated cyclopropane[112] (**21**); we have already seen examples of such ions in the 2-norbornyl and 7-norbornenyl cations (pp. 282, 274). Mechanism *b* involves an edge-protonated cyclopropane (**22**). Mechanism *c* consists of a one-step SE2-type attack by H^+ to give the classical cation **23**, which then reacts with the nucleophile. Although the three mechanisms as we have drawn them show retention of configuration at the carbon that becomes attached to the proton, mechanisms *a* and *c* at least can also lead to inversion at this carbon. Unfortunately, the evidence on hand at present does not allow us unequivocally to select any of these as the exclusive mechanism in all cases. Matters are complicated by the possibility that more than one edge-protonated cyclopropane is involved, at least in some cases. When cyclopropane was treated with D_2SO_4 (reaction **5-2**), the deuterium was found at all three carbons of the resulting 1-propanol.[113] This result can be explained by an equilibrium among the three edge-protonated species **24** to **26**.



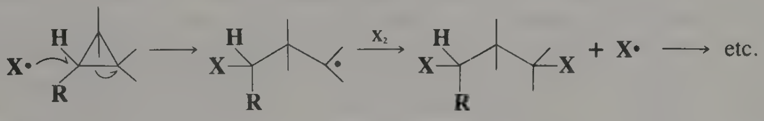
---

[112] For reviews of protonated cyclopropanes, see Collins, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 543–550 (1969); Lee, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 129–187 (1970).

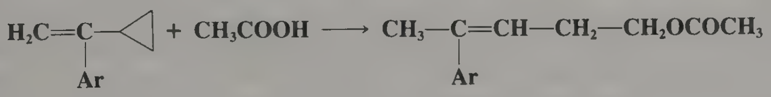
[113] Baird and Aboderin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 235 (1963), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 252 (1964); Lee and Gruber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3775 (1968); Lee, Chwang, and Wan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3778 (1968); Deno, LaVietes, Mockus, and Scholl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6457 (1968). See also Deno, Billups, LaVietes, Scholl, and Schneider, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3700 (1970).

A similar equilibrium (with CH_3CO^+ instead of D^+) can explain the reaction of cyclopropane with CH_3COCl to give $CH_3COCH_2CH_2CH_2Cl$, $CH_3COCHMeCH_2Cl$, and $CH_3COCHEtCl$ (as well as $CH_3COCMe{=}CH_2$, formed by elimination of HCl from $CH_3COCHMeCH_2Cl$).[114] There are also the possibilities that three corner-protonated cyclopropanes might be in equilibrium with each other (corner-to-corner hydrogen shifts) and with the edge-protonated species and that in some cases **21** or **22** might form first and then be converted to **23.**

Free-radical additions to cyclopropanes have been studied much less, but it is known that Br_2 and Cl_2 add to cyclopropanes by a free-radical mechanism in the presence of uv light. The addition follows Markovnikov's rule, with the initial radical attacking the least-substituted carbon and the second group going to the most-substituted position. Several investigations have shown that the reaction is stereospecific at one carbon, taking place with inversion there, but nonstereospecific at the other carbon.[115] A mechanism that accounts for this behavior is



In some cases conjugate addition has been performed on systems where a double bond is "conjugated" with a cyclopropyl ring. An example is[116]



(5-5)

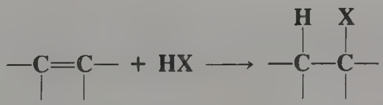
REACTIONS

Reactions are classified by type of reagent. All reactions where hydrogen adds to one side of the double bond are treated first.

Reactions in Which Hydrogen Adds to One Side

A. Halogen on the Other Side

5-1 Addition of Hydrogen Halides
Hydro-halo-addition



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- + HX \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle X}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-$$

---

[114] Hart and Schlosberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5189 (1968).

[115] Maynes and Applequist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 856 (1973); Incremona and Upton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 301 (1972); Shea and Skell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6728 (1973); Poutsma, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4293 (1965); Jarvis, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 924 (1970); Upton and Incremona, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 528 (1976).

[116] Sarel and Ben-Shoshan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1053 (1965). See also Danishefsky, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 66–72 (1979).

Any of the four hydrogen halides may be added to double bonds. HI, HBr, and HF[117] add at room temperature. The addition of HCl usually requires heat.[19] The reaction can be carried out with a large variety of double-bond compounds, including conjugated systems, where both 1,2 and 1,4 addition are possible. A convenient method for the addition of HF involves the use of a polyhydrogen fluoride–pyridine solution.[118] When the substrate is mixed with this solution in a solvent such as tetrahydrofuran at 0°C, alkyl fluorides are obtained in moderate-to-high yields.

The addition of hydrogen halides to simple olefins, in the absence of peroxides, take place by an electrophilic mechanism, and the orientation is in accord with Markovnikov's rule.[119] When peroxides are added, the addition of HBr occurs by a free-radical mechanism and the orientation is anti-Markovnikov (p. 674).[120] It must be emphasized that this is true only for HBr. Free-radical addition of HF and HI has never been observed, even in the presence of peroxides, and of HCl only rarely. In the rare cases where free-radical addition of HCl was noted, the orientation was still Markovnikov, presumably because the more stable *product* was formed.[121] Free-radical addition of HF, HI, and HCl is energetically unfavorable (see the discussions on pp. 614, 623). It has often been found that anti-Markovnikov addition of HBr takes place even when peroxides have not been added. This happens because the substrate alkenes absorb oxygen from the air, forming small amounts of peroxides (**4-8**). Markovnikov addition can be ensured by rigorous purification of the substrate, but in practice this is not easy to achieve, and it is more common to add inhibitors, e.g., phenols or quinones, which suppress the free-radical pathway. The presence of free-radical precursors such as peroxides does not inhibit the ionic mechanism, but the radical reaction, being a chain process, is much more rapid than the electrophilic reaction. In most cases it is possible to control the mechanism (and hence the orientation) by adding peroxides to achieve complete free-radical addition, or inhibitors to achieve complete electrophilic addition, though there are some cases where the ionic mechanism is fast enough to compete with the free-radical mechanism and complete control cannot be attained. Markovnikov addition of HBr, HCl, and HI has also been accomplished, in high yields, by the use of phase transfer catalysis.[122] For alternative methods of adding HBr (or HI) with anti-Markovnikov orientation, see **2-28.**

It is also possible to add one[123] or two moles of any of the four hydrogen halides to triple bonds.

$$-\mathrm{C}{\equiv}\mathrm{C}- \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HX}} -\mathrm{CH}{=}\mathrm{CX}- \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HX}} -\mathrm{CH_2}-\mathrm{CX_2}-$$

Markovnikov's rule ensures that *gem*-dihalides and not *vic*-dihalides are the products of the addition of two moles.

HX are electrophilic reagents, and many polyhalo and polycyano alkenes, e.g., $\mathrm{Cl_2C{=}CHCl}$, do not react with them at all in the absence of free-radical conditions. When such reactions do occur, however, they take place by a nucleophilic addition mechanism, i.e., initial attack is by X^-. This type of mechanism also occurs with Michael-type substrates C=C—Z,[124] where the orientation is always such that the halogen goes to the carbon that does not bear the Z, so that the product is of the form X—C—CH—Z, even in the presence of free-radical initiators. HI adds 1,4 to conjugated dienes in the gas phase by a pericyclic mechanism:[125]

---

[117] For reviews of addition of HF, see Sharts and Sheppard, *Org. React.* **21,** 125–406 (1974), pp. 192–198, 212–214; Hudlický, "The Chemistry of Organic Fluorine Compounds," pp. 65–68, Macmillan, New York, 1962.

[118] Olah, Welch, Vankar, Nojima, Kerekes, and Olah, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3872 (1979). For a related method, see Yoneda, Abe, Fukuhara, and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 1135 (1983).

[119] For reviews of electrophilic addition of HX, see Ref. 19, and Dewar, Ref. 3.

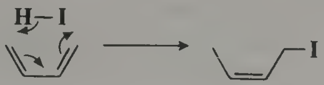
[120] For reviews of free-radical addition of HX, see Thaler, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **2,** 121–227 (1969), pp. 182–195; Stacey and Harris, *Org. React.* **13,** 150–376 (1963), pp. 154–164, 238–246; Sosnovsky, Ref. 41, pp. 6–18.

[121] Mayo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3964 (1962).

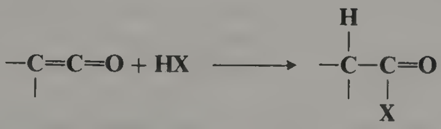
[122] Landini and Rolla, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3527 (1980).

[123] For a convenient method of adding one mole of HCl or HBr to a triple bond, see Cousseau and Gouin, *J. Chem Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1797 (1977); Cousseau, *Synthesis* 805 (1980).

[124] For an example, see Marx, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 1529 (1983).



HX can be added to ketenes[126] to give acyl halides:[127]

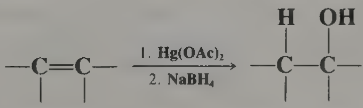


$$\underset{|}{-\mathrm{C}}{=}\mathrm{C}{=}\mathrm{O} + \mathrm{HX} \longrightarrow \underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{H}}{|}}{-\mathrm{C}}}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{X}}{|}}{\mathrm{C}}{=}\mathrm{O}$$

OS **I,** 166; **II,** 137, 336; **III,** 576; **IV,** 238, 543; **57,** 26.

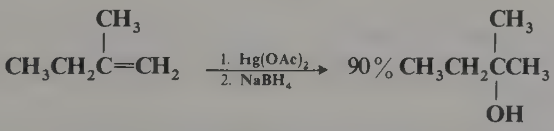
B. Oxygen on the Other Side

5-2 Hydration of Double bonds
Hydro-hydroxy-addition



$$\underset{|}{-\mathrm{C}}{=}\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}-} \xrightarrow[\text{2. NaBH}_4]{\text{1. Hg(OAc)}_2} \underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{H}}{|}}{-\mathrm{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{OH}}{|}}{\mathrm{C}}}-$$

Olefins can be hydrated quickly under mild conditions in high yields without rearrangement products by the use of *oxymercuration*[128] (addition of oxygen and mercury) followed by in situ treatment with sodium borohydride[129] (**2-22**). For example, 2-methyl-1-butene treated with mercuric acetate,[130] followed by $NaBH_4$, gave 90% 2-methyl-2-butanol:



$$\mathrm{CH_3CH_2}\overset{\overset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{|}}{\mathrm{C}}{=}\mathrm{CH_2} \xrightarrow[\text{2. NaBH}_4]{\text{1. Hg(OAc)}_2} 90\%\ \mathrm{CH_3CH_2}\underset{\underset{\mathrm{OH}}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{|}}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{CH_3}$$

This method, which is applicable to mono-, di-, tri-, and tetraalkyl as well as phenyl-substituted olefins, gives almost complete Markovnikov addition. Hydroxy, methoxy, acetoxy, and halo groups may be present in the substrate without, in general, causing difficulties.[131]

---

[125] Gorton and Walsh, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 782 (1972). For evidence that a pericyclic mechanism may be possible, even for an isolated double bond, see Sergeev, Stepanov, Leenson, Smirnov, Pupyshev, Tyurina, and Mashyanov, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 2585 (1982).

[126] For a review of the mechanisms of reactions of ketenes with HX, H_2O, ROH, RCOOH, and amines, see Satchell and Satchell, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **4,** 231–250 (1975).

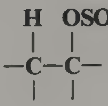
[127] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Lillford and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 897 (1968).

[128] For reviews of oxymercuration and other oxymetalation reactions, see Kitching, *Organomet. React.* **3,** 319–398 (1972), *Organomet. Chem. Rev.* **3,** 61–134 (1968); Oullette, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. B, pp. 140–166, Academic Press, New York, 1973; House, "Modern Synthetic Reactions," 2d ed., pp. 387–396, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972; Zefirov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **34,** 527–536 (1965).

[129] Brown and Geoghegan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1522 (1967), *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1844 (1970), **37,** 1937 (1972); Brown, Geoghegan, Kurek, and Lynch, *Organomet. Chem. Synth.* **1,** 7 (1970), *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1941 (1972); Brown and Hammar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1524 (1967); Moon and Waxman, *Chem. Commun.* 1283 (1967); Moon, Takakis, and Waxman, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2951 (1969); Moon, Ganz, and Waxman, *Chem. Commun.* 866 (1969); Johnson and Rickborn, *Chem. Commun.* 1073 (1968); Klein and Levene, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4833 (1969); Chamberlain and Whitham, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1382 (1970); Barrelle and Apparu, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2016 (1972).

[130] For a review of this reagent, see Butler, in Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 4, pp. 1–145, Wiley, New York, 1981.

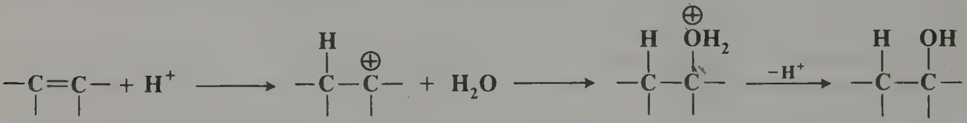
Double bonds can also be hydrated by treatment with water and an acid catalyst. The most common catalyst is sulfuric acid, but other acids, such as nitric or perchloric can also be used. The mechanism is electrophilic and begins with attack by a proton (see p. 662). The negative attacking species may be HSO_4^- (or similar ion in the case of other acids) to give the initial product



$$\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{-C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle OSO_2OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

27

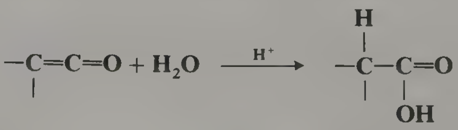
which can be isolated but, under the conditions of the reaction, is usually hydrolyzed to the alcohol (reaction **0-4**). However, the conjugate base of the acid is not the only possible species that attacks the initial carbocation. The attack may also be by water:



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + H^+ \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}- + H_2O \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle \overset{\oplus}{O}H_2}{|}}{C}}- \xrightarrow{-H^+} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

When the reaction proceeds by this pathway, **27** and similar intermediates are not involved and the mechanism is exactly (by the principle of microscopic reversibility) the reverse of E1 elimination of alcohols (**7-1**).[132] It is likely that the mechanism involves both pathways. Sometimes the initial carbocation rearranges to a more stable one. For example, hydration of $CH_2{=}CHCH(CH_3)_2$ gives $CH_3CH_2COH(CH_3)_2$. With ordinary olefins the addition predominantly follows Markovnikov's rule. Water can be added indirectly, with anti-Markovnikov orientation, by treatment of the alkene with a 1:2 mixture of $TiCl_4$ and $NaBH_4$ in 1,2-dimethoxyethane, followed by addition of water.[133] For another method of anti-Markovnikov hydration, see **5-13.** With substrates of the type C=C—Z (Z is as defined on p. 664) the product is always HO—C—CH—Z and the mechanism is usually nucleophilic,[134] although electrophilic addition gives the same product[135] since a cation $CH—\overset{\oplus}{C}—Z$ would be destabilized by the positive charges (full or partial) on two adjacent atoms. Conjugated dienes are seldom hydrated.

The addition of water to vinyl ethers causes hydrolysis to aldehydes or ketones (**0-7**). Ketenes add water to give carboxylic acids in a reaction catalyzed by acids:[136]



$$-\underset{|}{C}=C=O + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{\underset{\textstyle OH}{|}}{C}=O$$

OS **IV,** 555, 560; **53,** 94. Also see OS **V,** 818.

---

[131] Brown and Lynch, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 531, 930 (1981).

[132] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Liler, "Reaction Mechanisms in Sulphuric Acid," pp. 210–225, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

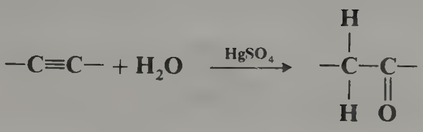
[133] Kano, Tanaka, and Hibino, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 414 (1980).

[134] For example, see Fedor, De, and Gurwara, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2905 (1973); Jensen and Hashtroudi, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3299 (1976); Bernasconi and Leonarduzzi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5133, 5143 (1982).

[135] For example, see Noyce and DeBruin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 372 (1968).

[136] For discussions of the mechanism, see Lillford and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 889 (1968); Ref. 126; Kabir, Seikaly, and Tidwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1059 (1979); Poon and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1381 (1983).

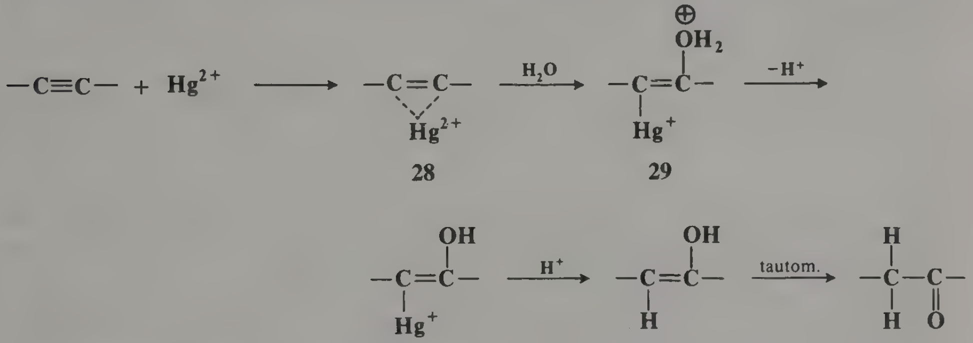
5-3 Hydration of Triple Bonds
Dihydro-oxo-biaddition



$$-C{\equiv}C- + H_2O \xrightarrow{HgSO_4} -\underset{H}{\overset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-$$

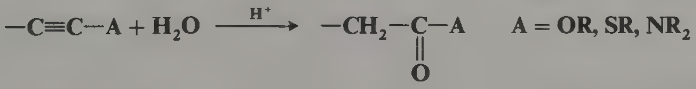
The hydration of triple bonds is generally carried out with mercuric ion salts (often the sulfate) as catalysts.[137] Since the addition follows Markovnikov's rule, only acetylene gives an aldehyde. All other triple-bond compounds give ketones (for a method of reversing the orientation for terminal alkynes, see **5-13**). With alkynes of the form RC≡CH methyl ketones are formed almost exclusively, but with RC≡CR′ both possible products are usually obtained. However, if R is primary and R′ secondary or tertiary, the carbonyl group is formed preferentially next to the secondary or tertiary carbon.[138] The reaction can be conveniently carried out with a catalyst prepared by impregnating mercuric oxide onto Nafion-H (a superacidic perfluorinated resinsulfonic acid).[139]

The first step of the mechanism is formation of a complex (**28**) (ions like Hg^{2+} form complexes with alkynes—p. 75). Water then attacks in an SN2-type process to give the intermediate **29,** which loses a proton to give **30.** Hydrolysis of **30** (an example of **2-22**) gives the enol, which tautomerizes to the product.



28 **29** **30**

Carboxylic esters, thiol esters, and amides can be made, respectively, by acid-catalyzed hydration of acetylenic ethers, thioethers,[140] and ynamines, without a mercuric catalyst:[141]



$$-C{\equiv}C-A + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} -CH_2-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-A \qquad A = OR, SR, NR_2$$

This is ordinary electrophilic addition, with rate-determining protonation as the first step.[142] Certain other alkynes have also been hydrated to ketones with strong acids in the absence of mercuric salts. These include $ArC{\equiv}CCOOH$,[143] $ArC{\equiv}CCH_3$,[144] and 3-hexyne.[145]

---

[137] For reviews, see Khan and Martell, "Homogeneous Catalysis by Metal Complexes," vol. 2, pp. 91–95, Academic Press, New York, 1974; Miocque, Hung, and Yen, *Ann. Chim.* (*Paris*) [13] **8,** 157–174 (1963).

[138] Krupin and Petrov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 3799 (1963).

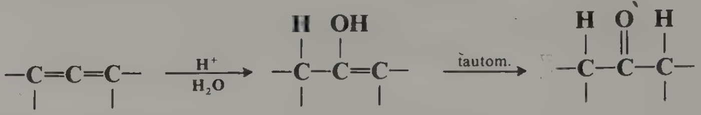
[139] Olah and Meidar, *Synthesis* 671 (1978).

[140] For a review of acetylenic ethers and thioethers, see Brandsma, Bos, and Arens, in Viehe, Ref. 41, pp. 751–860.

[141] Arens, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **2,** 163 (1960); Ref. 140, pp. 774–775.

[142] Hogeveen and Drenth, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **82,** 375, 410 (1963); Verhelst and Drenth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6692 (1974).

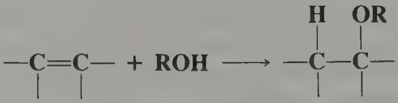
Allenes can also be hydrolyzed to ketones, with an acid catalyst:[146]



$$-C{=}C{=}C- \xrightarrow[H_2O]{H^+} -\overset{H}{C}-\overset{OH}{C}{=}C- \xrightarrow{\text{tautom.}} -\overset{H}{C}-\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{H}{C}-$$

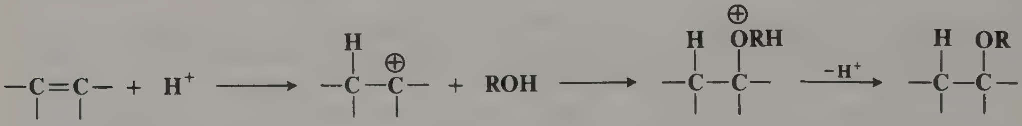
OS **III,** 22; **IV,** 13; **V,** 1024.

5-4 Addition of Alcohols and Phenols
Hydro-alkoxy-addition



$$-C{=}C- + ROH \longrightarrow -\overset{H}{C}-\overset{OR}{C}-$$

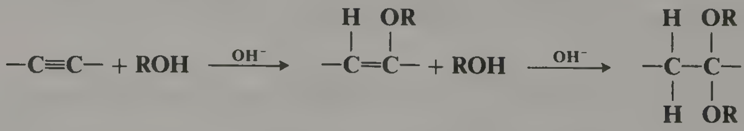
The addition of alcohols and phenols to double bonds is catalyzed by acids or bases. When the reactions are acid-catalyzed, the mechanism is electrophilic, with H^+ as the attacking species. The resulting carbocation combines with a molecule of alcohol:



$$-C{=}C- + H^+ \longrightarrow -\overset{H}{C}-\overset{\oplus}{C}- + ROH \longrightarrow -\overset{H}{C}-\overset{\overset{\oplus}{ORH}}{C}- \xrightarrow{-H^+} -\overset{H}{C}-\overset{OR}{C}-$$

The addition, therefore, follows Markovnikov's rule. Primary alcohols give better results than secondary, and tertiary alcohols are very inactive. This is a convenient method for the preparation of tertiary ethers by the use of a suitable olefin such as $Me_2C{=}CH_2$.

For those substrates more susceptible to nucleophilic attack, e.g., polyhalo olefins and olefins of the type $C{=}C{-}Z$, it is better to carry out the reaction in basic solution, where the attacking species is RO^-.[147] The reactions with $C{=}C{-}Z$ are of the Michael type, and OR always goes to the side away from the Z. Since triple bonds are more susceptible to nucleophilic attack than double bonds, it might be expected that bases would catalyze addition to triple bonds particularly well. This is the case, and enol ethers and acetals can be produced by this reaction:[148]



$$-C{\equiv}C- + ROH \xrightarrow{OH^-} -\overset{H}{C}{=}\overset{OR}{C}- + ROH \xrightarrow{OH^-} -\underset{H}{\overset{H}{C}}-\underset{OR}{\overset{OR}{C}}-$$

Because enol ethers are more susceptible than triple bonds to electrophilic attack, the addition of alcohols to enol ethers can also be catalyzed by acids. One utilization of this reaction involves the compound dihydropyran (**31**), which is often used to protect the OH groups of primary and secondary

---

[143] Noyce, Matesich, and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6225 (1967).

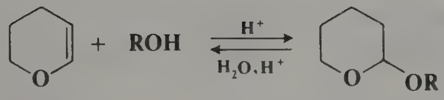
[144] Noyce and Schiavelli, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 845 (1968), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1020, 1023 (1968).

[145] Richey and Buckley, cited by Deno, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 181 (1964).

[146] For example, see Fedorova and Petrov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 1740 (1962); Mühlstadt and Graefe, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 223 (1967); Cramer and Tidwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2683 (1981).

[147] For a review with respect to fluoroolefins, see Ref. 58, pp. 53–61.

[148] For reviews, see Shostakovskii, Trofimov, Atavin, and Lavrov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 907–919 (1968); Shostakovskii, Bogdanova, and Plotnikova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **33,** 66–77 (1964).



31 **32**

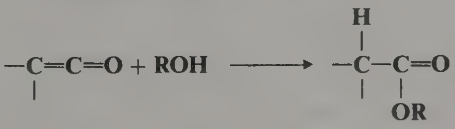
alcohols and phenols.[149] The tetrahydropyranyl acetal formed by this reaction (**32**) is stable to bases, Grignard reagents, $LiAlH_4$, and oxidizing agents, any of which may be used to react with functional groups located within the R group. When the reactions are completed, **32** is easily cleaved by treatment with dilute acids (**0-7**).

In base-catalyzed addition to triple bonds the rate falls in going from a primary to a tertiary alcohol, and phenols require more severe conditions. Other catalysts, namely, BF_3 and mercuric salts, have also been used in addition of ROH to triple bonds.

Alcohols can be added to certain double-bond compounds (cyclohexenes, cycloheptenes) photochemically in the presence of a photosensitizer such as benzene. The mechanism is electrophilic and Markovnikov orientation is found. The olefins react in their first excited triplet states.[150]

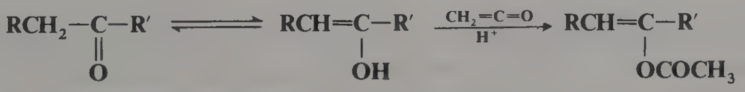
The oxymercuration–demercuration procedure mentioned in **5-2** can be adapted to the preparation of ethers (Markovnikov orientation) if the oxymercuration is carried out in an alcohol ROH as solvent, e.g., 2-methyl-1-butene in ethanol gives $EtMe_2COEt$.[151] Primary and secondary alcohols give good yields when mercuric acetate is used, but for tertiary alcohols it is necessary to use mercuric trifluoroacetate. However, even with this reagent the method fails where the product would be a ditertiary ether. If the oxymercuration is carried out in the presence of a hydroperoxide instead of an alcohol, the product (after demercuration with $NaBH_4$) is an alkyl peroxide (peroxymercuration).[152]

Both alcohols and phenols add to ketenes to give esters:[153]



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}C{=}O + ROH \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{OR}{|}}{C}{=}O$$

Similarly, carbon suboxide gives malonic esters: $O{=}C{=}C{=}C{=}O + 2ROH \rightarrow ROOCCH_2COOR$.[154] In the presence of a strong acid, ketene reacts with aldehydes or ketones (in their enol forms) to give enol acetates:



$$RCH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' \rightleftharpoons RCH{=}\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow[H^+]{CH_2=C=O} RCH{=}\underset{\underset{OCOCH_3}{|}}{C}-R'$$

Alcohols can also add to olefins in a different way (see **5-21**).

OS **III,** 371, 774, 813; **IV,** 184, 558; **52,** 128; **60,** 81; **61,** 112, 116.

---

[149] For a useful catalyst for this reaction, see Miyashita, Yoshikoshi, and Grieco, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3772 (1977).

[150] Marshall, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **2,** 33–40 (1969).

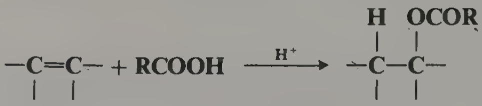
[151] Brown and Rei, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5646 (1969).

[152] Ballard and Bloodworth, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 945 (1971); Bloodworth and Loveitt, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1031 (1977); Bloodworth and Courtneidge, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 3258 (1981), 1807 (1982). See also Sokolov and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 168 (1969); Schmitz, Rieche, and Brede, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **312,** 30 (1970).

[153] Lacey, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **2,** 213–263 (1960), pp. 216–217; Quadbeck, *Angew. Chem.* **68,** 361 (1956), *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **2,** 133–161 (1963). See also Chihara, Teratini, and Ogawa, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1120 (1981). For discussions of the mechanism see Tille and Pracejus, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 196–210 (1967); Brady, Vaughn, and Hoff, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 843 (1969); Ref. 126; Jähme and Rüchardt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4011 (1982).

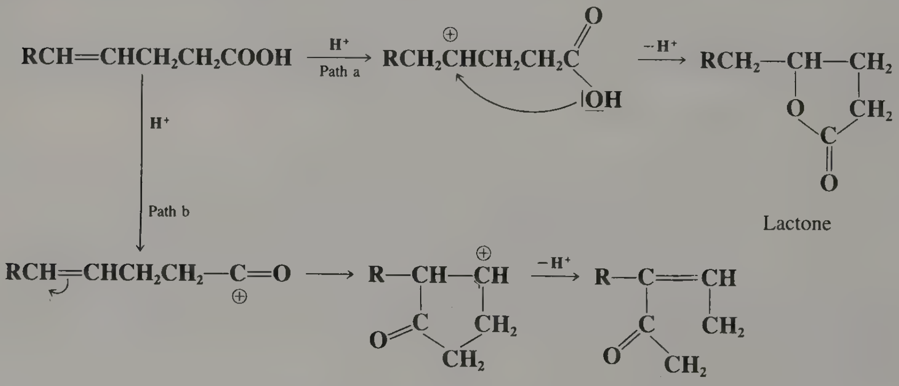
[154] For a review of carbon suboxide, see Kappe and Ziegler, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 491–504 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 529–542].

5-5 Addition of Carboxylic Acids
Hydro-acyloxy-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + RCOOH \xrightarrow{H^+} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\displaystyle OCOR}{|}}{C}}-$$

Carboxylic esters are produced by the addition of carboxylic acids to olefins, a reaction that is usually acid-catalyzed (by proton or Lewis acids[155]) and similar in mechanism to **5-4.** Since Markovnikov's rule is followed, hard-to-get esters of tertiary alcohols can be prepared from olefins of the form $R_2C{=}CHR$.[156] *t*-Butyl alcohol is a particularly good solvent for this reaction.[157] When a carboxylic acid that contains a double bond in the chain is treated with a strong acid, the addition occurs internally and the product is a γ- and/or a δ-lactone, regardless of the original position of the double bond in the chain, since strong acids catalyze double-bond shifts (**2-2**).[158] The double bond always migrates to a position favorable for the reaction, whether this has to be toward or away from the carboxyl group. However, another reaction competes, in which the product is a cyclopentenone or a cyclohexenone. This is essentially an example of **2-14.** In either case, the double bond first migrates into the proper position,



Cyclopentenone

and then whether path a or b predominates depends mainly on which type of acid is used as catalyst. Proton-donating acids, e.g., H_2SO_4, HCOOH, and HF, give mostly lactones, while Lewis acids like acetic anhydride, $ZnCl_2$ in HOAc, P_2O_5, etc., are among those which give mostly ketones. Since carbocations are involved, rearrangements take place in both reactions.

Triple bonds can give enol esters or acylals when treated with carboxylic acids. Mercuric salts are usually catalysts, and vinylmercury compounds $-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle HgX}{|}}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-OCOR$ are intermediates.[159] With

---

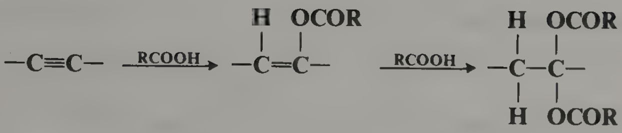
[155] See, for example, Guenzet and Camps, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3167 (1973), *Tetrahedron* **30,** 849 (1974); Ballantine, Davies, Purnell, Rayanakorn, Thomas, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 8 (1981).

[156] See, for example, Peterson and Tao, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2322 (1964).

[157] Pavlov, Bogavac, and Arsenijevic, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2985 (1974).

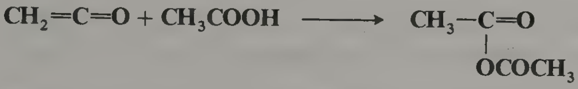
[158] For a review of such lactonizations, see Ansell and Palmer, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **18,** 211–225 (1964).

[159] See for example, Bach, Woodard, Anderson, and Glick, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3707 (1982); Alekseeva, Chalova, and Temkin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **19,** 431 (1983). Ruthenium complexes have also been used as catalysts: Rotem and Shvo, *Organometallics* **2,** 1689 (1983).



$$-C\equiv C- \xrightarrow{RCOOH} -\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}=\overset{OCOR}{\overset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow{RCOOH} -\underset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-\underset{OCOR}{\underset{|}{\overset{OCOR}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-$$

ketenes, carboxylic acids give anhydrides[160] and acetic anhydride is prepared industrially in this manner:



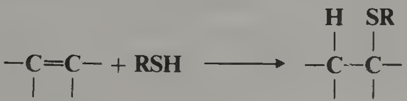
$$CH_2=C=O + CH_3COOH \longrightarrow CH_3-\underset{OCOCH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}=O$$

Esters can also be obtained by the addition to olefins of acyl peroxides.[161] These reactions are catalyzed by copper and are free-radical processes.

OS **III,** 853; **IV,** 261, 417, 444; **V,** 852, 863; **60,** 66. Also see OS **I,** 317.

C. Sulfur on the Other Side

5-6 Addition of H_2S and Mercaptans
Hydro-alkylthio-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + RSH \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{SR}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

H_2S and mercaptans add to olefins by electrophilic, nucleophilic, or free-radical mechanisms.[162] In the absence of initiators the addition to simple olefins is by an electrophilic mechanism, similar to that in **5-4,** and Markovnikov's rule is followed. However, this reaction is usually very slow and often cannot be done or requires very severe conditions unless an acid catalyst is used. For example, the reaction can be performed in concentrated H_2SO_4.[163] In the presence of free-radical initiators, H_2S and mercaptans add to double and triple bonds by a free-radical mechanism and the orientation is anti-Markovnikov.[164] In fact, the orientation can be used as a diagnostic tool to indicate which mechanism is operating. Free-radical addition can be done with H_2S, RSH (R may be primary, secondary, or tertiary), ArSH, or RCOSH.[165] R may contain various functional groups. The olefins may be terminal, internal, contain branching, be cyclic, and have various functional groups including OH, COOH, COOR, NO_2, RSO_2, etc. With acetylenes it is possible to add 1 or 2 moles of RSH.

When mercaptans are added to substrates susceptible to nucleophilic attack, bases catalyze the reaction and the mechanism is nucleophilic. These substrates may be of the Michael type[166] or may be polyhalo olefins or alkynes.[148] As with the free-radical mechanism, alkynes may give either vinyl thioethers or thioacetals:

---

[160] For discussions of the mechanism, see Briody, Lillford, and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 885 (1968); Corriu, Guenzet, Camps, and Reye, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3679 (1970); Ref. 126; Blake and Vayjooee, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1533 (1976).

[161] Kharasch and Fono, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 606 (1959); Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1572 (1962).

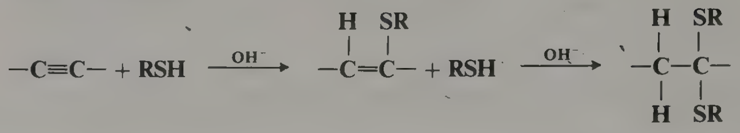
[162] For reviews, see Prilezhaeva and Shostakovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **32,** 399–426 (1963); Wardell, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 1, pp. 169–178, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[163] Shostakovskii, Kul'bovskaya, Gracheva, Laba, and Yakushina, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 707 (1962).

[164] For reviews of free-radical addition of H_2S and RSH, see Griesbaum, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 273–287 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 276–290]; Oswald and Griesbaum, in Kharasch and Meyers, "Organic Sulfur Compounds," vol. 2, pp. 233–256, Pergamon, New York, 1966; Stacey and Harris, *Org. React.* **13,** 150–376 (1963), pp. 165–196, 247–324; Sosnovsky, Ref. 41, pp. 62–97.

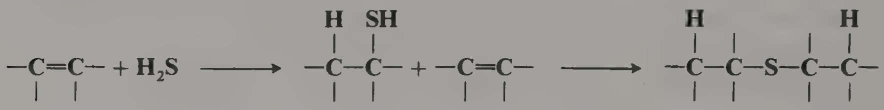
[165] For a review of the addition of thio acids, see Janssen, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Carboxylic Acids and Esters," pp. 720–723, Interscience, New York, 1969.

[166] Michael substrates usually give the expected orientation. For a method of reversing the orientation for RS groups (the RS group goes α to the C=O bond of a C=C—C=O system), see Gassman, Gilbert, and Cole, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3233 (1977).



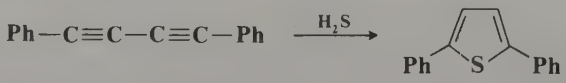
$$-C{\equiv}C- + RSH \xrightarrow{OH^-} -\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{SR}{\overset{|}{C}}- + RSH \xrightarrow{OH^-} -\underset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-\underset{SR}{\underset{|}{\overset{SR}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-$$

By any mechanism, the initial product of addition of H_2S to a double bond is a mercaptan, which is capable of adding to a second molecule of olefin, so that sulfides are often produced:

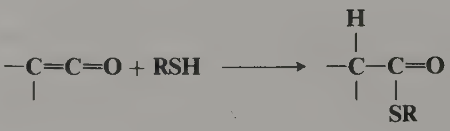


$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + H_2S \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{SH}{\overset{|}{C}}}- + -\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-S-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

Additions to conjugated dienes have been rare. For electrophilic (acid-catalyzed) conditions, 1,4-addition has been reported.[167] For free-radical addition, both 1,2[167] and 1,4 addition[168] have been demonstrated. Conjugated diynes, treated with H_2S, give thiophenes:[169]



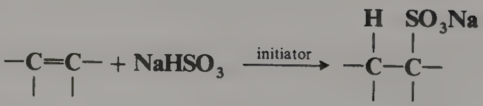
Ketenes add mercaptans to give thiol esters:



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}C{=}O + RSH \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{SR}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O$$

OS **III,** 458; **IV,** 669.

5-7 Addition of Sodium Bisulfite **Hydro-sulfonato-addition**



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + NaHSO_3 \xrightarrow{\text{initiator}} -\underset{|}{\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{SO_3Na}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

Salts of aliphatic sulfonic acids can be prepared by addition of bisulfite salts to olefins in the presence of free-radical initiators.[170] The orientation is anti-Markovnikov.

---

[167] Saville, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5040 (1962); Tolstikov, Kanzafarov, Sangalov, Zelenova, and Vyrypaev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17**, 203 (1981).

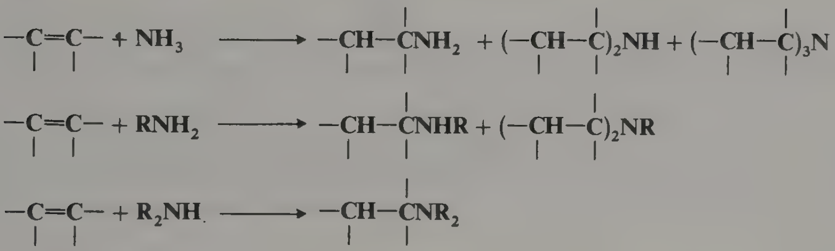
[168] Oswald, Griesbaum, Thaler, and Hudson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3897 (1962); Claisse and Davies, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4894 (1965), obtained both 1,2 and 1,4 products.

[169] Schulte, Reisch, and Hörner, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 1943 (1962).

[170] For a review, see Gilbert, "Sulfonation and Related Reactions," pp. 148–156, Interscience, New York, 1965.

D. Nitrogen on the Other Side

5-8 Addition of Ammonia and Amines
Hydro-amino-addition

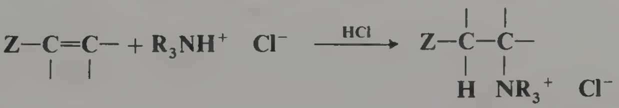


$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + NH_3 \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{CH}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}NH_2 + (-\underset{|}{CH}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}})_2NH + (-\underset{|}{CH}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}})_3N$$

$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + RNH_2 \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{CH}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}NHR + (-\underset{|}{CH}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}})_2NR$$

$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + R_2NH \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{CH}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}NR_2$$

Ammonia and primary and secondary amines add to olefins that are susceptible to nucleophilic attack.[171] Ammonia gives three possible products, since the initial product is a primary amine, which may add to a second molecule of olefin, etc. Similarly, primary amines give both secondary and tertiary products. In practice it is usually possible to control which product predominates. Since ammonia and amines are much weaker acids than water, alcohols, and mercaptans (see **5-2, 5-4, 5-6**) and since acids could hardly catalyze the reaction (because they would turn NH_3 into NH_4^+), this reaction does not occur by an electrophilic mechanism and so gives very low yields, if any, with ordinary olefins, unless extreme conditions are used (e.g., 178–200°C, 800–1000 atm, and the presence of metallic Na, for the reaction between NH_3 and ethylene[172]). The mechanism is nearly always nucleophilic, and the reaction is generally performed on polyhalo olefins,[173] Michael-type substrates, and alkynes. As expected, on Michael-type substrates the nitrogen goes to the carbon that does not carry the Z. Other nitrogenous compounds, among them hydroxylamine, hydrazines, amides[174] ($RCONH_2$ and $RCONHR'$ including imides and lactams), and sulfonamides, also add to olefins. In the case of amides, basic catalysts are required, since amides are not good enough nucleophiles for the reaction and must be converted to $RCONH^-$. Even with amines, basic catalysts are sometimes used, so that RNH^- or R_2N^- is the actual nucleophile. Tertiary amines (except those that are too bulky) add to Michael-type substrates in a reaction that is catalyzed by acids like HCl or HNO_3 to give the corresponding quaternary ammonium salts.[175]



$$Z-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + R_3NH^+ \quad Cl^- \xrightarrow{HCl} Z-\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{NR_3^+}{|}}{C}}- \quad Cl^-$$

The tertiary amine may be aliphatic, cycloalkyl, or heterocyclic (including pyridine).

Primary amines add to triple bonds[176] to give enamines, which have a hydrogen on the nitrogen and (analogously to enols) tautomerize to the more stable imines:

---

[171] For reviews, see Gasc, Lattes, and Périé, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 703–731 (1983); Pines and Stalick, "Base-Catalyzed Reactions of Hydrocarbons and Related Compounds," pp. 423–454, Academic Press, New York, 1977; Suminov and Kost, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 884–899 (1969); Gibson, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 61–65, Interscience, New York, 1968.

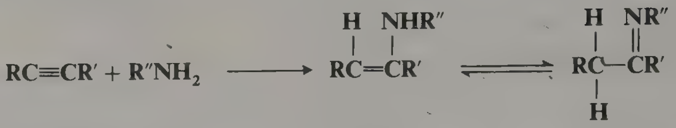
[172] Howk, Little, Scott, and Whitman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 1899 (1954).

[173] For a review with respect to fluoroolefins, see Chambers and Mobbs, *Adv. Fluorine Chem.* **4,** 51–112 (1965), pp. 62–68.

[174] See for example Batty, Howes, and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1543 (1976).

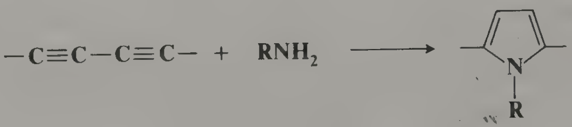
[175] Le Berre and Delacroix, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 640, 647 (1973).

[176] For a review of addition of ammonia and amines to triple bonds, see Chekulaeva and Kondrat'eva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **34,** 669–680 (1965).



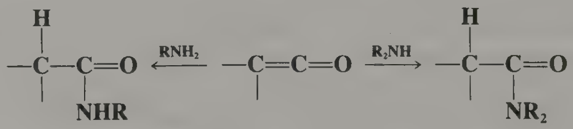
$$RC\equiv CR' + R''NH_2 \longrightarrow R\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}=\overset{NHR''}{\overset{|}{C}}R' \rightleftharpoons R\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\overset{NR''}{\overset{\|}{C}}R'$$

These are often stable enough for isolation.[177] When ammonia is used instead of a primary amine, the corresponding $RCH_2-\overset{\overset{NH}{\|}}{C}R'$ is not stable enough for isolation, but polymerizes. Secondary amines give enamines $RCH=CR'NR_2''$, which, lacking a hydrogen on the nitrogen, are quite stable. Ammonia and primary amines (aliphatic and aromatic) add to conjugated diynes to give pyrroles:[178]



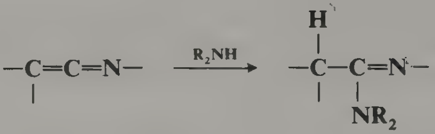
This is not 1,4 addition but 1,2 addition twice.

Primary and secondary amines add to ketenes to give, respectively, N-substituted and N,N-disubstituted amides:[179]



$$-\overset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{NHR}{\underset{|}{C}}=O \xleftarrow{RNH_2} -\underset{|}{C}=C=O \xrightarrow{R_2NH} -\overset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{NR_2}{\underset{|}{C}}=O$$

and to ketenimines to give amidines:[180]



$$-\underset{|}{C}=C=N- \xrightarrow{R_2NH} -\overset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{NR_2}{\underset{|}{C}}=N-$$

R = H or alkyl

Secondary amines can be added to certain nonactivated olefins if palladium(II) complexes are used as catalysts.[181] Markovnikov orientation is observed.

NH_3 can be added to double bonds (even ordinary double bonds) in an indirect manner by the use of hydroboration (**5-13**) followed by treatment with NH_2Cl or NH_2OSO_2OH (**2-29**). This produces a primary amine with anti-Markovnikov orientation. An indirect way of adding a primary or secondary amine to a double bond consists of aminomercuration followed by reduction (see

---

[177] For example, see Kruse and Kleinschmidt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 213, 216 (1961).

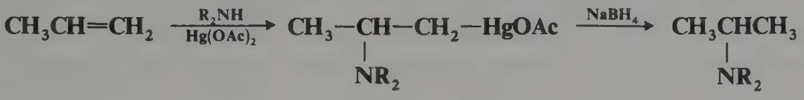
[178] Schulte, Reisch, and Walker, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 98 (1965).

[179] For discussions of the mechanism of this reaction, see Briody and Satchell, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 2649 (1966); Lillford and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 360 (1967), 54 (1968); Ref. 126.

[180] Stevens, Freeman, and Noll, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3718 (1965).

[181] See, for example, Walker, Manyik, Atkins, and Farmer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3817 (1970); Takahashi, Miyake, and Hata, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 1183 (1972); Baker, Cook, Halliday, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1511 (1974); Åkermark and Bäckvall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 819 (1975); Hegedus, Allen, and Waterman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2674 (1976). For a review, see Gasc, Lattes, and Périé, Ref. 171.

5-2 for the analogous oxymercuration–demercuration procedure), e.g.,[182]



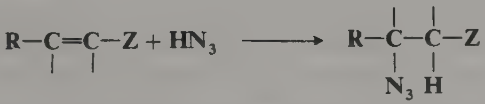
$$CH_3CH{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow[Hg(OAc)_2]{R_2NH} \underset{\displaystyle NR_2}{CH_3{-}\overset{}{CH}}{-}CH_2{-}HgOAc \xrightarrow{NaBH_4} \underset{\displaystyle NR_2}{CH_3CHCH_3}$$

33

The addition of a secondary amine (shown above) produces a tertiary amine, while addition of a primary amine gives a secondary amine. The overall orientation follows Markovnikov's rule. Amido- and sulfamidomercuration–demercuration[183] and nitromercuration[184] have also been accomplished (see also **6-56**). For conversion of **33** to other products, see **5-40** and **5-41.**

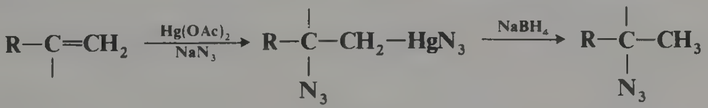
OS **I,** 196; **III,** 91, 93, 244, 258; **IV,** 146, 205; **V,** 39, 575, 929; **53,** 13; **58,** 32. See also OS **53,** 98.

5-9 Addition of Hydrazoic Acid
Hydro-azido-addition



$$R{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}Z + HN_3 \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{|}{\underset{N_3}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{H}{C}}{-}Z$$

Hydrazoic acid can be added to certain Michael-type substrates (Z is as defined on p. 664) to give β-azido compounds.[185] The reaction apparently fails if R is phenyl. HN_3 can be added indirectly to ordinary olefins by azidomercuration, followed by demercuration,[186] analogous to the similar

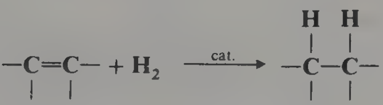


$$R{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow[NaN_3]{Hg(OAc)_2} R{-}\overset{|}{\underset{N_3}{C}}{-}CH_2{-}HgN_3 \xrightarrow{NaBH_4} R{-}\overset{|}{\underset{N_3}{C}}{-}CH_3$$

procedures mentioned in **5-2, 5-4,** and **5-8.** The method can be applied to terminal alkenes or strained cycloalkenes (e.g., norbornene) but fails for unstrained internal alkenes.

E. Hydrogen on Both Sides

5-10 Hydrogenation of Double and Triple Bonds[187]
Dihydro-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + H_2 \xrightarrow{cat.} -\overset{H}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{H}{\underset{|}{C}}-$$

Most carbon–carbon double bonds, whether substituted by electron-donating or electron-withdrawing substituents, can be catalytically hydrogenated, usually in quantitative or near-quantitative yields.[188] Almost all known alkenes add hydrogen at temperatures between 0 and 275°C. Many functional groups may be present in the molecule, e.g., OH, COOH, NH_2, CHO, COR, COOR, or CN. Some of these groups are also susceptible to catalytic reduction, but it is usually possible to find conditions under which double bonds can be reduced selectively[189] (see Table 2 in Chapter 19, p. 1093). The catalysts used can be divided into two broad classes, both of which mainly consist of transition metals and their compounds: (1) catalysts insoluble in the reaction medium (*heterogeneous catalysts*). These have been the ones traditionally used. Among the most effective are Raney nickel,[190] palladium-on-charcoal (perhaps the most common), $NaBH_4$-reduced nickel[191] (also called nickel boride), platinum metal or its oxide, rhodium, ruthenium, NaH-RONa-$Ni(OAc)_2$,[192] and zinc oxide,[193] (2) Catalysts soluble in the reaction medium (*homogeneous catalysts*).[194] These are of more recent discovery. The most important is chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium $RhCl(Ph_3P)_3$,[195] (*Wilkinson's catalyst*),[196] which catalyzes the hydrogenation of many olefinic compounds without disturbing such groups as COOR, NO_2, CN, or COR present in the same molecule.[197] Even unsaturated aldehydes can be reduced to saturated aldehydes,[198] though in this case decarbonylation (**4-40**) may be a side reaction. Among other homogeneous catalysts are chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)hydridoruthenium(II) $(Ph_3P)_3RuClH$,[199] which is specific for terminal double bonds (other double bonds are hydrogenated slowly or not at all), and pentacyanocobaltate(II) $Co(CN)_5^{3-}$, which is effective for double and triple bonds only when they are part of conjugated systems[200] (the conjugation may be with C=C, C=O, or an aromatic ring). Homogeneous catalysts often have the advantages of better catalyst reproducibility and better selectivity. They are also less susceptible to catalyst poisoning[201] (heterogeneous catalysts are usually poisoned by small amounts of sulfur, often found in rubber stoppers, or by sulfur-containing compounds such as mercaptans and sulfides). On the other hand, heterogeneous catalysts are usually easier to separate from the reaction mixture. Optically active homogeneous (as well as heterogeneous) catalysts have been used to achieve partially asymmetric (enantioselective) hydrogenations.[202] In recent years these have been developed to such a point that optical purities greater than 90% have been achieved in certain cases.[203]

---

[182] Lattes and Périé, *C. R. Acad. Sci., Ser. C* **262,** 1591 (1966), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5165 (1967); Bäckvall and Åkermark, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **78,** 177 (1974); Gasc. Périé, and Lattes, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 1943 (1978); Barluenga, Villamaña, and Yus, *Synthesis* 375 (1981). See also Koziara, Olejniczak, Osowska, and Zwierzak, *Synthesis* 918 (1982).

[183] Barluenga, Jiménez, Nájera, and Yus, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 591 (1983); *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1178 (1981).

[184] Bachman and Whitehouse, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2303 (1967).

[185] Boyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 5248 (1951); Harvey and Ratts. *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3907 (1966). For a review, see Biffen, Miller, and Paul, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Azido Group," pp. 120–136, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[186] Heathcock, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 134 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 148].

[187] For a review, see Mitsui and Kasahara, in Zabicky, Ref. 102, vol. 2, pp. 175–214.

---

[188] For books on catalytic hydrogenation, see Rylander, "Catalytic Hydrogenation in Organic Synthesis," Academic Press, New York, 1979; "Catalytic Hydrogenation over Platinum Metals," Academic Press, New York, 1967; Freifelder, "Catalytic Hydrogenation in Organic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1978; "Practical Catalytic Hydrogenation," Wiley, New York, 1971; Augustine, "Catalytic Hydrogenation," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1965. For reviews, see Kalinkin, Kolomnikova, Parnes, and Kursanov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 332–342 (1979); Candlin and Rennie, in Bentley and Kirby, "Elucidation of Organic Structures by Physical and Chemical Methods." 2d ed. (vol. 4 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Chemistry"), pt. 2, pp. 97–117, Wiley, New York, 1973; McQuillin, in Bentley, "Elucidation of Structures by Physical and Chemical Methods," 1st ed. (vol. 9 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Organic Chemistry"), pt. 1, pp. 497–580, Interscience, New York, 1963; House, Ref. 128, pp. 1–34; Carruthers, "Some Modern Methods of Organic Synthesis," 2d ed., pp. 407–432, Cambridge University Press, London, 1978.

[189] For a discussion, see Rylander, "Catalytic Hydrogenation over Platinum Metals," Ref. 188, pp. 59–120.

[190] For a review of Raney nickel, see Pizey, Ref. 130, vol. 2, pp. 175–311, 1974.

[191] Paul, Buisson, and Joseph, *Ind. Eng. Chem.* **44,** 1006 (1952); Brown, *Chem. Commun.* 952 (1969), *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1900 (1970); Brown and Ahuja, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2226 (1973), *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 553 (1973); Schreifels, Maybury, and Swartz, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1263 (1981); Nakao and Fujishige, *Chem. Lett.* 925 (1981); Nakao, *Chem. Lett.* 997 (1982).

[192] Brunet, Gallois, and Caubere, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1937, 1946 (1980).

[193] For reviews of hydrogenation with metal oxides, see Minachev, Khodakov, and Nakhshunov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 142–154 (1976); Kokes and Dent, *Adv. Catal.* **22,** 1–50 (1972) (ZnO).

[194] For a monograph, see James, "Homogeneous Hydrogenation," Wiley, New York, 1973. For reviews, see Birch and Williamson, *Org. React.* **24,** 1–186 (1976); Collman and Hegedus, "Principles and Applications of Organotransition Metal Chemistry," pp. 316–384, University Science Books, Mill Valley, Calif., 1980; James, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **17,** 319–405 (1979); Harmon, Gupta, and Brown, *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 21–52 (1973); Strohmeier, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **25,** 71–104 (1972); Heck, "Organotransition Metal Chemistry," pp. 55–65, Academic Press, New York, 1974; Rylander, "Organic Syntheses with Noble Metal Catalysts," pp. 60–76, Academic Press, New York, 1973; Lyons, Rennick, and Burmeister, *Ind. Eng. Chem., Prod. Res. Dev.* **9,** 2–20 (1970); Vol'pin and Kolomnikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 273–289 (1969); Osborn, *Endeavor* **26,** 144–148 (1967); Bird, "Transition Metal Intermediates in Organic Synthesis," pp. 248–271, Academic Press, New York, 1967.

[195] Young, Osborn, Jardine, and Wilkinson, *Chem. Commun.* 131 (1965); Osborn, Jardine, Young, and Wilkinson, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 1711 (1966); Osborn and Wilkinson, *Inorg. Synth.* **10,** 67 (1967); Biellmann, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3055 (1968); van Bekkum, van Rantwijk, and van de Putte, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1 (1969).

[196] For a review of Wilkinson's catalyst, see Jardine, *Prog. Inorg. Chem.* **28,** 63–202 (1981).

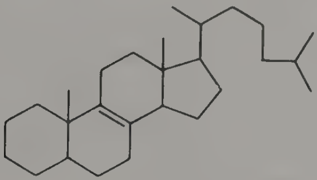
[197] Harmon, Parsons, Cooke, Gupta, and Schoolenberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3684 (1969).

[198] Jardine and Wilkinson, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 270 (1967).

[199] Hallman, Evans, Osborn, and Wilkinson, *Chem. Commun.* 305 (1967); Hallman, McGarvey, and Wilkinson, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 3143 (1968); Jardine and McQuillin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5189 (1968).

[200] Kwiatek, Mador, and Seyler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 304 (1962); Jackman, Hamilton, and Lawlor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1914 (1968); Funabiki, Matsumoto, and Tarama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 2723 (1972); Reger, Habib, and Fauth, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 115 (1979).

Hydrogenations in most cases are carried out at room temperature and just above atmospheric pressure, but some double bonds are more resistant and require higher temperatures and pressures. The resistance is usually a function of increasing substitution and is presumably caused by steric factors. Trisubstituted double bonds require, say, 25°C and 100 atm, while tetrasubstituted double bonds may require 275°C and 100 atm. Among the double bonds most difficult to hydrogenate or which cannot be hydrogenated at all are those common to two rings, as in the steroid shown.



Hydrogenations, even at about atmospheric pressure, are ordinarily performed in a special hydrogenator, but this is not always necessary. Both the catalyst and the hydrogen may be generated in situ, by treatment of H_2PtCl_6 or $RhCl_3$ with $NaBH_4$;[204] ordinary glassware may then be used.

Although catalytic hydrogenation is the method most often used, double bonds can be reduced by other reagents, as well. Among these are sodium in ethanol, sodium and *t*-butyl alcohol in HMPT,[205] lithium and aliphatic amines[206] (see also **5-11**), chromous ion,[207] zinc and acids, sodium hydrogen telluride NaTeH,[208] water and precipitated nickel,[209] trifluoroacetic acid and triethylsilane Et_3SiH,[210] hydrazine (if a small amount of oxidizing agent, such as air, H_2O_2, or cupric ion is present),[211] hydroxylamine and ethyl acetate,[212] and NH_2OSO_3H.[213] However, metallic hydrides, such as lithium aluminum hydride and sodium borohydride, do not in general reduce carbon–carbon double bonds,[214] although this can be done in special cases where the double bond is polar, as in 1,1-diarylethenes.[215] In certain cases[216] these reagents may also reduce double bonds in conjugation with C=O bonds, as well as reducing the C=O bonds, e.g.,[217]

---

[201] Birch and Walker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1935 (1967).

[202] For reviews, see Knowles, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 106–112 (1983); Brunner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 897–907 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 921–931]; Klabunovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 630–643 (1982); Čaplar, Comisso, and Šunjić, *Synthesis* 85–116 (1981); Morrison, Masler, and Neuberg, *Adv. Catal.* **25,** 81–124 (1976); Kagan, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 401–421 (1975); Bogdanović, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 954–964 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 1013–1023]; Izumi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 871–881 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 956–966]. See also Ref. 67 in Chapter 4.

[203] See Vineyard, Knowles, Sabacky, Bachman, and Weinkauff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5946 (1977); Fryzuk and Bosnich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5491 (1978); Chan, Pluth, and Halpern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5952 (1980); Cullen and Woollins, *Can. J. Chem.* **60,** 1793 (1982); Amma and Stille, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 468 (1982).

[204] Brown and Sivasankaran, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2828 (1962); Brown and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1494, 1495, 2829 (1962), *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3989 (1966); Brown, Sivasankaran, and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 214 (1963). See also Brown and Brown, *Tetrahedron Suppl.* **8,** pt. 2, 149 (1966); Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5901 (1969), *Chem. Commun.* 139 (1970).

[205] Angibeaud, Larchevêque, Normant, and Tchoubar, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 595 (1968); Whitesides and Ehmann, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3565 (1970).

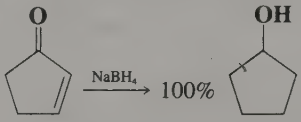
[206] Benkeser, Schroll, and Sauve, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3378 (1955).

[207] For example, see Castro and Stephens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4358 (1964); Castro, Stephens, and Mojé, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4964 (1966).

[208] Ramasamy, Kalyanasundaram, and Shanmugam, *Synthesis* 545 (1978); Yamashita, Kato, and Suemitsu, *Chem. Lett.* 847 (1980).

[209] Sakai, Ishige, Kono, Motoyama, Watanabe, and Hata, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **41,** 1902 (1968).

[210] Kursanov, Parnes, Bassova, Loim, and Zdanovich, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 2235 (1967); Doyle and McOsker, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 693 (1978). For a review, see Kursanov, Parnes, and Loim, *Synthesis* 633–651 (1974). See also Kalinkin, Parnes, Shaapuni, and Kursanov, *Doklad. Chem.* **219,** 888 (1974); Kolomnikova, Kalinkin, Parnes, and Kursanov, *Doklad. Chem.* **265,** 216 (1982).



$NaBH_4$ has a greater tendency than $LiAlH_4$ to effect this double reduction, though even with $NaBH_4$ the product of single reduction (of the C=O bond) is usually formed in larger amount than the doubly reduced product. $LiAlH_4$ gives significant double reduction only in cinnamyl systems, e.g., with PhCH=CHCOOH.[218]

The double reduction can also be avoided by the use of AlH_3,[219] $NaBH_4$ in the presence of lanthanide chlorides (e.g., $LaCl_3$, $CeCl_3$, $SmCl_3$),[220] 9-BBN (see p. 704),[221] Et_3SiH,[222] lithium *n*-butylborohydride,[223] or diisobutylaluminum hydride,[224] which selectively reduce C=O groups in the presence of conjugated C=C bonds (see also p. 809). On the other hand, C=C bonds can be selectively reduced in the presence of conjugated C=O bonds by hydrogenation with $RhCl(PPh_3)_3$ as catalyst,[225] as well as[226] by a number of other methods.[227] $LiAlH_4$ also reduces the double bonds of allylic alcohols.[228] Furthermore, both $LiAlH_4$ and $NaBH_4$, as well as NaH, reduce ordinary alkenes and alkynes when complexed with transition metal salts, such as $FeCl_2$ or $CoBr_2$.[229]

---

[211] Corey, Mock, and Pasto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 347 (1961); Hünig, Müller, and Thier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 353 (1961); Furst, Berlo, and Hooton, *Chem. Rev.* **65,** 51–68 (1965), pp. 64–65; Nagendrappa and Devaprabhakara, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4243 (1970); Hoffman and Schlessinger, *Chem. Commun.* 1245 (1971); Kondo, Murai, and Sonoda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3727 (1977).

[212] Wade and Amin, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 287 (1982).

[213] Appel and Büchner, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **654,** 1 (1962); Dürckheimer, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **721,** 240 (1969). For a review of the reagent hydroxylamine-O-sulfonic acid, see Wallace, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **14,** 265–307 (1982).

[214] For a review of the action of metallic hydrides on olefins and acetylenes, see Gaylord, "Reduction with Complex Metal Hydrides," pp. 925–975, Interscience, New York, 1956. See also Hajós, "Complex Hydrides," Elsevier, New York, 1979.

[215] See Granoth, Segall, Leader, and Alkabets, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3682 (1976).

[216] For discussion, see Meyer, *J. Chem. Educ.* **58,** 628 (1981).

[217] Brown and Hess, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2206 (1969).

[218] Nystrom and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **69,** 2548 (1947), **70,** 3738 (1948); Gammill, Gold, and Mizsak, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3095 (1980).

[219] Jorgenson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 559 (1962); Dilling and Plepys, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2971 (1970); Ref. 217.

[220] Gemal and Luche, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5454 (1981).

[221] Krishnamurthy and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1197 (1977).

[222] Ojima and Kogure, *Organometallics* **1,** 1390 (1982).

[223] Kim, Moon, and Ahn, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3311 (1982).

[224] Wilson, Seidner, and Masamune, *Chem. Commun.* 213 (1970).

[225] Djerassi and Gutzwiller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4537 (1966); Ref. 197.

[226] For a review of the stereochemistry of catalytic hydrogenation of α,β-unsaturated ketones, see Augustine, *Adv. Catal.* **25,** 56–80 (1976).

[227] See Kadin, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 620 (1966); Pereyre and Valade, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 489 (1969); Iqbal and Jackson, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 616 (1968); Angibeaud, Larchevêque, Normant, and Tchoubar, Ref. 205; Gautier, Miocque, and Duclos, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4348 (1969); Buchanan and Woodgate, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **23,** 522–536 (1969); Mel'nikova and Pivnitskii, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **6,** 2635 (1970), **8,** 2138 (1972); Blum, Sasson, and Iflah, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1015 (1972); Noyori, Umeda, and Ishigami, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1542 (1972); Kursanov, Loim, Baranova, Moiseeva, Zalukaev, and Parnes, *Synthesis* 420 (1973); House and Kinloch, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1173 (1974); Masamune, Bates, and Georghiou, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3686 (1974); McMurry, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 281–286 (1974), p. 284; Boeckman and Michalak, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1623 (1974); Schauble, Walker, and Morin, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 755 (1974); Kitamura, Joh, and Hagihara, *Chem. Lett.* 203 (1975); Ashby and Lin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3865 (1976); Fortunato and Ganem, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2194 (1976); Hutchins, Rotstein, Natale, Fanelli, and Dimmel, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3328 (1976); Boldrini, Umani-Ronchi, and Panunzio, *Synthesis* 596 (1976); Rakowski and Muetterties, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 739 (1977); Semmelhack, Stauffer, and Yamashita, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3180 (1977); Mueller and Gillick, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4647 (1978); Collman, Finke, Matlock, Wahren, Komoto, and Brauman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1119 (1978); Russell, Duncan, and Hansen, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 551 (1977); Mordenti, Brunet, and Caubere, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2203 (1979); Tsuda, Fujii, Kawasaki, and Saegusa, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1013 (1980); Keinan and Gleize, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 477 (1982); Four and Guibe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1825 (1982); Sondengam, Fomum, Charles, and Akam, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1219 (1983); Ref. 222.

The inertness of ordinary double bonds toward metallic hydrides is quite useful, since it permits reduction of, say, a carbonyl or nitro group, without disturbing a double bond in the same molecule (see Chapter 19 for a discussion of selectivity in reduction reactions). Sodium in liquid ammonia also does not reduce ordinary double bonds,[230] although it does reduce alkynes, allenes, conjugated dienes,[231] and aromatic rings (**5-11**).

Another hydrogenation method is called *transfer hydrogenation*.[232] In this method the hydrogen comes from another organic molecule, which is itself oxidized. A transition-metal catalyst is frequently employed. A common reducing agent is cyclohexene, which, when a palladium catalyst is used, is oxidized to benzene, losing 2 moles of hydrogen.

Triple bonds can be reduced, either by catalytic hydrogenation or by the other methods mentioned. The comparative reactivity of triple and double bonds depends on the catalyst.[233] With most catalysts, e.g., Pd, triple bonds are hydrogenated more easily, and therefore it is possible to add just 1 mole of hydrogen and reduce a triple bond to a double bond (usually a stereoselective syn addition) or to reduce a triple bond without affecting a double bond present in the same molecule.[234] A particularly good catalyst for this purpose is the Lindlar catalyst ($Pd\text{-}CaCO_3\text{-}PbO$).[235] Triple bonds can also be selectively reduced to double bonds with diisobutylaluminum hydride[236] or a zinc–copper couple[237] (usually a stereoselective syn addition) or (internal triple bonds only) with alkali metals (Na, Li) in liquid ammonia or a low-molecular-weight amine (a stereoselective anti addition). Terminal alkynes are not reduced by the $Na\text{-}NH_3$ procedure because they are converted to acetylide ions under these conditions. However, terminal triple bonds can be reduced to double bonds by the addition to the $Na\text{-}NH_3$ solution of $(NH_4)_2SO_4$, which liberates the free ethynyl group.[238]

An indirect method[239] of double-bond reduction involves hydrolysis of boranes (prepared by **5-13**). Trialkylboranes can be hydrolyzed by refluxing with carboxylic acids,[240] while monoalkylboranes RBH_2 can be hydrolyzed with base.[241] Triple bonds can be similarly reduced, to cis olefins.[242]

Conjugated dienes can add hydrogen by 1,2 or 1,4 addition. Selective 1,4 addition can be achieved by hydrogenation in the presence of carbon monoxide, with bis(cyclopentadienyl)chromium as catalyst.[243] With allenes catalytic hydrogenation usually reduces both double bonds, but reduction of just one double bond, to give an olefin, has been accomplished by treatment with $Na\text{-}NH_3$[244] or with diisobutylaluminum hydride,[245] and by hydrogenation with $RhCl(PPh_3)_3$ as catalyst.[246]

---

[228] For discussions of the mechanism of this reaction, see Snyder, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3531 (1967); Borden, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2197 (1968); Blunt, Hartshorn, Soong, and Munro, *Aust. J. Chem.* **35,** 2519 (1982).

[229] See for example Sato, Sato, and Sato, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **122,** C25 (1976), **131,** C26 (1977); Fujisawa, Sugimoto, and Ohta, *Chem. Lett.* 581 (1976); Ashby and Lin, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2567 (1978); Chung, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1014 (1979).

[230] There are some exceptions. See for example Butler, *Synth. Commun.* **7,** 441 (1977), and references cited therein.

[231] For a review of reductions of α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds with metals in liquid NH_3, see Caine, *Org. React.* **23,** 1–258 (1976).

[232] For reviews, see Brieger and Nestrick, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 567–580 (1974); Jackman, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **2,** 329–366 (1960).

[233] For a discussion, see Wells, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1742 (1964).

[234] For reviews of the hydrogenation of alkynes, see Hutchins and Hutchins, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 41, pt. 1, pp. 571–601; Marvell and Li, *Synthesis* 457–468 (1973); Gutmann and Lindlar, in Viehe, Ref. 67, pp. 355–363.

[235] Lindlar and Dubois, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 880. See also Rajaram, Narula, Chawla, and Dev. *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2315 (1983); McEwen, Guttieri, Maier, Laine, and Shvo, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4436 (1983).

[236] Wilke and Müller, *Chem. Ber.* **89,** 444 (1956); *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **629,** 224 (1960); Gensler and Bruno, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1254 (1963); Eisch and Kaska, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2213 (1966).

[237] Sondengam, Charles, and Akam, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1069 (1980).

[238] Henne and Greenlee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **65,** 2020 (1943).

[239] For a review, see Zweifel, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **7**(2), 181–189 (1973).

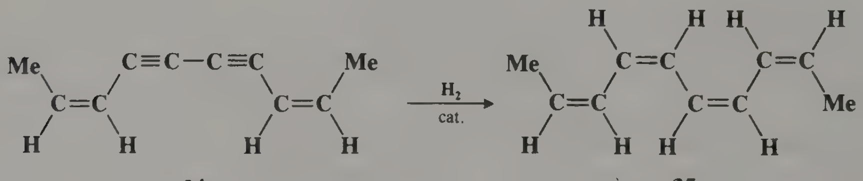
[240] Brown and Murray, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4108 (1959); Kabalka, Newton, and Jacobus, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4185 (1979).

[241] Weinheimer and Marisco, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 1926 (1962).

[242] Brown and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1512 (1959).

[243] Miyake and Kondo, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 631 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 663]. See also Cais, Frankel, and Rejoan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1919 (1968); Yamamoto, Kanai, and Tarama, *Chem. Lett.* 1377 (1977).

Most catalytic reductions of double or triple bonds, whether heterogeneous or homogeneous, have been shown to be syn, with the hydrogens entering from the less-hindered side of the molecule.[247] Stereospecificity can be investigated only for tetrasubstituted olefins (except when the reagent is D_2), which are the hardest to hydrogenate, but the results of these investigations show that the addition is usually 80 to 100% syn, though some of the anti addition product is normally also found and in some cases predominates. Catalytic hydrogenation of alkynes nearly always is stereoselective, giving the cis olefin (usually at least 80%), even when it is thermodynamically less stable. For example, **34** gave **35**, even though the steric hindrance is such that a planar molecule is impossible.[248] This is thus a useful method for preparing such cis olefins.[249] However, when steric hindrance is too great, the trans olefin may be formed. One factor that complicates the study of the stereochemistry of heterogeneous catalytic hydrogenation is that exchange of hydrogens takes place, as can be shown by hydrogenation with deuterium. Thus deuterogenation of ethylene produced all the possible deuterated ethylenes and ethanes (even C_2H_6), as well as HD.[250] With 2-butene, it was found that double-bond migration, cis–trans isomerization, and even exchange of hydrogen with groups not on the double bond could occur; e.g., $C_4H_2D_8$ and C_4HD_9 were detected on treatment of *cis*-2-butene with deuterium and a catalyst.[251] Indeed, *alkanes* have been found to exchange with deuterium over a catalyst,[252] and even without deuterium, i.e., $CH_4 + CD_4 \rightarrow CHD_3 + CH_2D_2$ in the gas phase, with a catalyst. All this makes it difficult to investigate the stereochemistry of heterogeneous catalytic hydrogenation.



34

35

It was mentioned that catalytic hydrogenation of triple bonds and the reaction with diisobutylaluminum hydride usually give the cis olefin. Most of the other methods of triple-bond reduction lead to the more thermodynamically stable trans olefin. However, this is not the case with the method involving hydrolysis of boranes or with the reductions with hydrazine or NH_2OSO_3H, which also give the cis products.

The mechanism of the heterogeneous catalytic hydrogenation of double bonds is not thoroughly

---

[244] Gardner and Narayana, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 3518 (1961); Devaprabhakara, and Gardner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 648 (1963); Vaidyanathaswamy, Joshi, and Devaprabhakara, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2075 (1971).

[245] Montury and Goré, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 51 (1980).

[246] Bhagwat and Devaprabhakara, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1391 (1972). See also Freidlin, Kopyttsev, Litvin, and Nazarova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **10,** 434 (1974); Pregaglia, Ferrari, Andreeta, Capparella, Genoni, and Ugo, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **70,** 89 (1974).

[247] For a review of the stereochemistry of heterogeneous catalytic hydrogenation, see Burwell, *Chem. Rev.* **57,** 895–934 (1957).

[248] Holme, Jones, and Whiting, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 928 (1956).

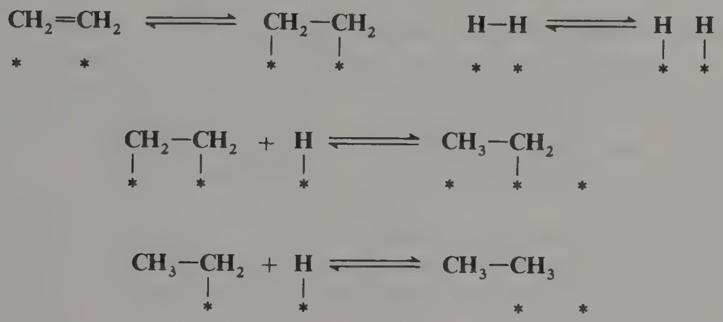
[249] For a catalyst that leads to trans olefins, see Burch, Muetterties, Teller, and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4257 (1982).

[250] Turkevich, Schissler, and Irsa, *J. Phys. Chem.* **55,** 1078 (1951).

[251] Wilson, Otvos, Stevenson, and Wagner, *Ind. Eng. Chem.* **45,** 1480 (1953).

[252] For a review, see Gudkov and Balandin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 756–761 (1966). For an example of intramolecular exchange, see Lebrilla and Maier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1119 (1983).

understood because it is a very difficult reaction to study.[253] Because the reaction is heterogeneous, kinetic data, though easy to obtain (measurement of decreasing hydrogen pressure), are difficult to interpret. Furthermore, there are the difficulties caused by the aforementioned hydrogen exchange. The currently accepted mechanism for the common two-phase reaction was originally proposed in 1934.[254] According to this, the olefin is adsorbed onto the surface of the metal, though the nature of the actual bonding is unknown,[255] despite many attempts to elucidate it.[256] The metallic site is usually indicated by an asterisk. For steric reasons it is apparent that adsorption of the olefin takes place with its less-hindered side attached to the catalyst surface. The fact that addition of hydrogen is generally also from the less-hindered side indicates that the hydrogen too is probably adsorbed on the catalyst surface before it reacts with the olefin. It is likely that the H_2 molecule is cleaved to hydrogen atoms in the act of being adsorbed. It has been shown that platinum catalyzes homolytic cleavage of hydrogen molecules.[257] In the second step one of the adsorbed hydrogen atoms becomes attached to a carbon atom, creating in effect, an alkyl radical (which is still bound to the catalyst though only by one bond) and two vacant catalyst sites. Finally, another hydrogen atom (not necessarily the one originally connected to the first hydrogen) combines with the radical to give the reaction product, freed from the catalyst surface, and two more vacant sites. All the various side reactions, including hydrogen exchange and isomerism, can be explained by this type of process. For example, the scheme at the top of p. 698 shows the steps that may be occurring in hydrogenation of 1-butene.[258] In this scheme the normal reaction is represented by **36** → **37** → **38** → **39**, double-bond migration by **36** → **37** → **38** → **40** → **42**, cis–trans isomerization by **43** → **41** → **38** → **40** → **42**, and hydrogen exchange by **36** → **37** → **38** → **40** → **44** → **45**. Although this mechanism is satisfactory as far as it goes, there are still questions it does not answer, among them questions involving the nature of the asterisk, the nature of the bonding, and the differences caused by the differing nature of each catalyst.[259]



$$\underset{*}{CH_2}{=}\underset{*}{CH_2} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\overset{|}{*}}{CH_2}-\underset{\overset{|}{*}}{CH_2} \qquad \underset{*}{H}-\underset{*}{H} \rightleftharpoons \underset{\overset{|}{*}}{H}\;\;\underset{\overset{|}{*}}{H}$$

$$\underset{\overset{|}{*}}{CH_2}-\underset{\overset{|}{*}}{CH_2} + \underset{\overset{|}{*}}{H} \rightleftharpoons \underset{*}{CH_3}-\underset{\overset{|}{*}}{CH_2} \quad *$$

$$CH_3-\underset{\overset{|}{*}}{CH_2} + \underset{\overset{|}{*}}{H} \rightleftharpoons CH_3-CH_3 \quad * \quad *$$

The mechanism of homogeneous hydrogenation catalyzed by $RhCl(Ph_3P)_3$[260] involves reaction of the catalyst with hydrogen to form a metal hydride $(PPh_3)_2RhH_2Cl$ (**46**), which rapidly transfers two hydrogen atoms to the alkene. The intermediate **46** can be isolated. If a mixture of H_2 and D_2

---

[253] For reviews, see Webb, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 20, pp. 1–121, Elsevier, New York, 1978; Clarke and Rooney, *Adv. Catal.* **25,** 125–183 (1976); Siegel, *Adv. Catal.* **16,** 123–177 (1966); Burwell, *Chem. Eng. News* **44** (34), 56–67 (Aug. 22, 1966); Bond and Wells, *Adv. Catal.* **15,** 91–226 (1964).

[254] Horiuti and Polanyi, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **30,** 1164 (1934).

[255] See, for example, Burwell and Schrage, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5234 (1965).

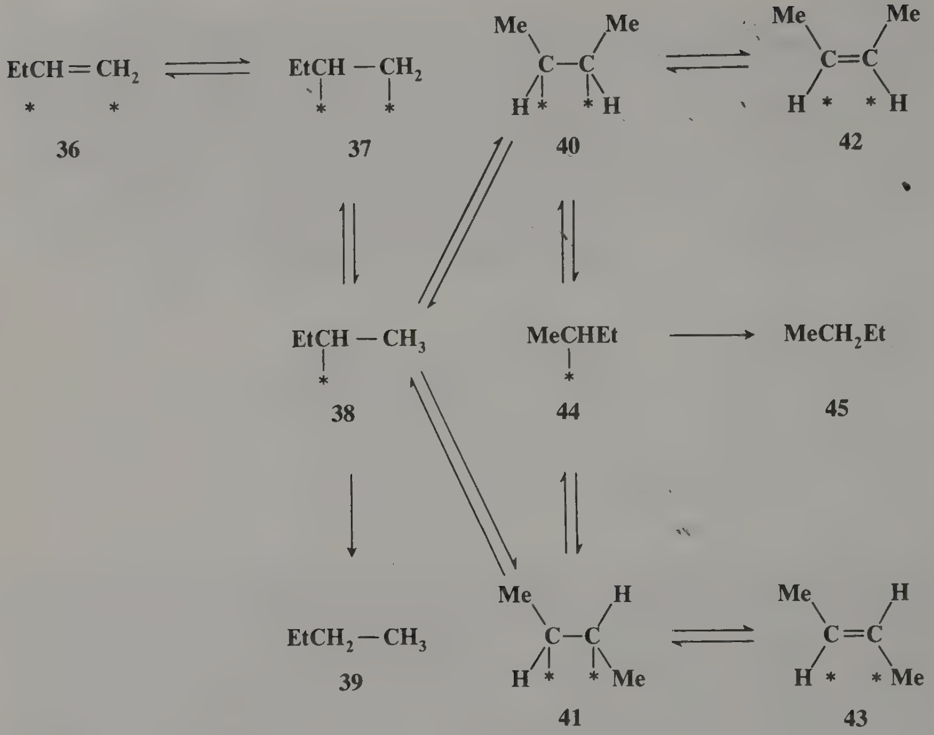
[256] See, for example, McKee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1109 (1962); Ledoux, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **2,** 9 (1978).

[257] Krasna, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 289 (1961).

[258] Smith and Burwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 925 (1962).

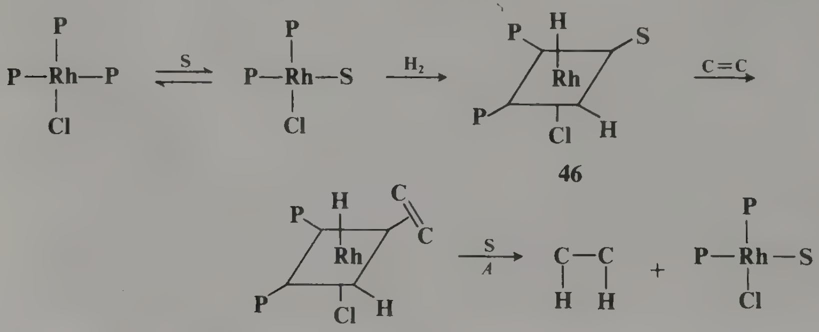
[259] For a different mechanistic proposal, see Thomson and Webb, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 526 (1976).

[260] Osborn, Jardine, Young, and Wilkinson, Ref. 195; Jardine, Osborn, and Wilkinson, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 1574 (1967); Montelatici, van der Ent, Osborn, and Wilkinson, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 1054 (1968).



---

is used, the product contains only dideuterated and nondeuterated compounds; no monodeuterated products are found, indicating that (unlike the case of heterogeneous catalysis) H_2 or D_2 has been added to one olefin molecule and that no exchange takes place.[260] Although the addition is syn, there is evidence that the actual addition of the two hydrogens to the double bond (the step marked *A*) is not concerted but takes place in a stepwise fashion, at least in some cases.[261]

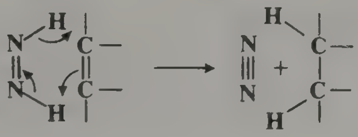


P = PPh_3
S = solvent

In the above-mentioned reactions with hydrazine and hydroxylamine, the actual reducing species is diimide NH=NH, which is formed from N_2H_4 by the oxidizing agent and from NH_2OH by the

[261] Biellmann and Jung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1673 (1968); Hussey and Takeuchi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 672 (1969); Heathcock and Poulter, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2755 (1969); Smith and Shuford, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 525 (1970); Atkinson and Luke, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 3580 (1970).

ethyl acetate.[262] Although both the syn and anti forms of diimide are produced, only the syn form reduces the double bond,[263] at least in part by a cyclic mechanism:[264]



The addition is therefore stereospecifically syn[265] and, like catalytic hydrogenation, generally takes place from the less-hindered side of a double bond, though not much discrimination in this respect is observed where the difference in bulk effects is small.[266] Diimide reductions are most successful with symmetrical multiple bonds (C═C, C≡C, N═N) and are more difficult for those inherently polar (C≡N, C═N, C═O, etc.). Diimide is not stable enough for isolation at ordinary temperatures, although it has been prepared[267] as a yellow solid at − 196°C. Diimide can also be generated by acid treatment of potassium azodicarboxylate (KOOC—N═N—COOK)[268] and by base-catalyzed or thermal elimination of a proton and the substituent from an acyl or sulfonyl hydrazide.[269]

When double bonds are reduced by lithium in ammonia or amines, the mechanism is similar to that of the Birch reduction (**5-11**). The reduction with trifluoroacetic acid and Et_3SiH has an ionic mechanism, with H^+ coming in from the acid and H^- from the silane.[210] In accord with this mechanism, the reaction can be applied only to those olefins which when protonated can form a tertiary carbocation or one stabilized in some other way, e.g., by α-OR substitution.[270] It has been shown, by the detection of CIDNP, that reduction of α-methylstyrene by hydridopentacarbonylmanganese(I) $HMn(CO)_5$ involves free-radical addition.[271]

The occurrence of hydrogen exchange and double-bond migration in heterogeneous catalytic hydrogenation means that the hydrogenation does not necessarily take place by straightforward addition of two hydrogen atoms at the site of the original double bond. Consequently, this method is not synthetically useful for adding D_2 to a double or triple bond in a regioselective or stereospecific manner. However, this objective can be achieved (with syn addition) by homogeneous catalytic hydrogenation, which usually adds D_2 without scrambling[272] or by the use of one of the diimide methods.[265] Deuterium can also be regioselectively added by the hydroboration–reduction procedure previously mentioned.

Reductions of double and triple bonds are found at OS **I,** 101, 311; **II,** 191, 491; **III,** 385, 586, 742, 794; **IV,** 136, 298, 302, 304, 408, 887; **V,** 16, 96, 277, 281, 993; **53,** 63; **54,** 1; **60,** 72.

---

[262] For reviews of hydrogenations with diimide, see Miller, *J. Chem. Educ.* **42,** 254–259 (1965); House, Ref. 128, pp. 248–256. For a review of the formation and structure of diimides, see Hünig, Müller, and Thier, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 271–280 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 368–377].

[263] Aylward and Sawistowska, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1435 (1964).

[264] Ref. 211; van Tamelen, Dewey, Lease, and Pirkle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4302 (1961); Willis, Back, Parsons, and Purdon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4451 (1977).

[265] Corey, Pasto, and Mock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2957 (1961).

[266] van Tamelen and Timmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1067 (1962).

[267] Wiberg, Fischer, and Bachhuber, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 1456 (1974). See also Trombetti, *Can. J. Phys.* **46,** 1005 (1968); Bondybey and Nibler, *J. Chem. Phys.* **58,** 2125 (1973); Sellmann, Brandl, and Endell, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 1019 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 1122]; Craig, Kliewer, and Shih, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2480 (1979).

[268] See, for example, Hamersma and Snyder, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3985 (1965).

[269] Dewey and van Tamelen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3729 (1961); Cusack, Reese, Risius, and Roozpeikar, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2157 (1976).

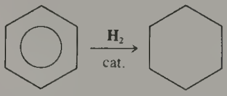
[270] Parnes, Bolestova, and Kursanov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **21,** 1927 (1972).

[271] Sweany and Halpern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8335 (1977).

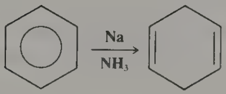
[272] Biellmann and Liesenfelt, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4029 (1966); Birch and Walker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4939 (1966), *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1894 (1966); Morandi and Jensen, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1889 (1969). See, however, Atkinson and Luke, Ref. 261.

Catalysts and apparatus for hydrogenation are found at OS **I,** 61, 463; **II,** 142; **III,** 176, 181, 685; **V,** 880.

5-11 Hydrogenation of Aromatic Rings



Hexahydro-teraddition



1/4/Dihydro-addition

Aromatic rings can be reduced by catalytic hydrogenation,[273] but higher temperatures (100 to 200°C) are required than for ordinary double bonds. Though the reaction is usually carried out with heterogeneous catalysts, homogeneous catalysts have also been used; conditions are much milder with these.[274] Mild conditions are also successful in hydrogenations with phase transfer catalysts.[275] Many functional groups, such as OH, O^-, COOH, COOR, NH_2, etc., do not interfere with the reaction, but some groups may be preferentially reduced. Among these are CH_2OH groups, which undergo hydrogenolysis to CH_3 (**0-79**). Phenols may be reduced to *cyclohexanones,* presumably through the enol. Heterocyclic compounds are often reduced. Thus furan gives tetrahydrofuran. With benzene rings it is usually impossible to stop the reaction after only one or two bonds have been reduced, since olefins are more easily reduced than aromatic rings. Thus, 1 mole of benzene, treated with 1 mole of hydrogen, gives no cyclohexadiene or cyclohexene but $\frac{1}{3}$ mole of cyclohexane and $\frac{2}{3}$ mole of recovered benzene. This is not true for all aromatic systems. With phenanthrene, for example, it is easy to stop after only the 9,10-bond has been reduced (see p. 40).

When aromatic rings are reduced by sodium (or potassium or lithium) in liquid ammonia (such reductions are known as *dissolving metal reductions*), usually in the presence of an alcohol (often ethyl, isopropyl, or *t*-butyl alcohol), 1,4 addition of hydrogen takes place and nonconjugated cyclohexadienes are produced. This reaction is called the *Birch reduction.*[276] Ammonia obtained commercially often has iron salts as impurities that lower the yield in the Birch reduction. Therefore it is often necessary to distill the ammonia. When substituted aromatic compounds are subjected to the Birch reduction, electron-donating groups such as alkyl or alkoxyl decrease the rate of the reaction and are generally found on the nonreduced positions of the product. For example, anisole gives 1-methoxy-1,4-cyclohexadiene, not 3-methoxy-1,4-cyclohexadiene. On the other hand, electron-withdrawing groups such as COOH or $CONH_2$ increase the reaction rate and are found on the reduced positions of the product.[277] The mechanism involves direct transfer of electrons from the metal:[278]

---

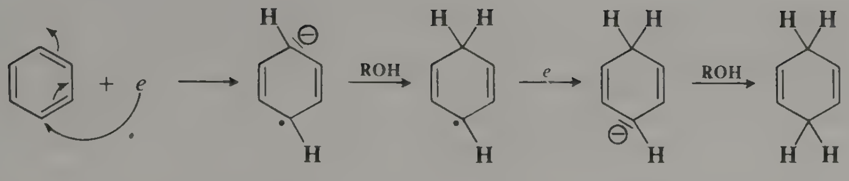
[273] For reviews, see Smith, in Augustine, "Reduction Techniques and Applications in Organic Synthesis," pp. 309–395, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1968; Weitkamp, *Adv. Catal.* **18,** 1–110 (1968) (for naphthalenes); Freifelder, *Adv. Catal.* **14,** 203–253 (1963) (for pyridines and quinolines).

[274] For reviews, see Bennett, *CHEMTECH* 10, 444–446 (1980); Muetterties and Bleeke, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 324–331 (1979).

[275] Januszkiewicz and Alper, *Organometallics* **2,** 1055 (1983).

[276] For a monograph, see Akhrem, Reshotova, and Titov, "Birch Reduction of Aromatic Compounds," Plenum, New York, 1972. For reviews, see Birch and Subba Rao, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **8,** 1–65 (1972); Kaiser, *Synthesis* 391–415 (1972); Harvey, *Synthesis* 161–172 (1970); House, Ref. 128, pp. 145–150, 173–209; Hückel, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **6,** 197–250 (1966); Smith, Ref. 273, pp. 95–170.

[277] These regioselectivities have generally been explained by molecular-orbital considerations regarding the intermediates involved. For example, see Birch, Hinde, and Radom, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3370, 4074, 6430 (1980); **103,** 284 (1981).

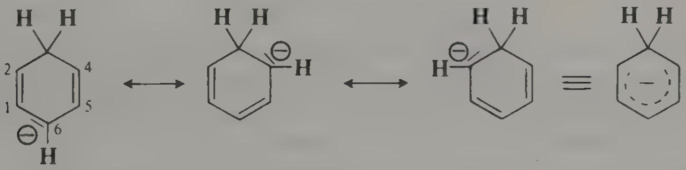


47 **48**

The sodium transfers an electron to the ring, becoming oxidized to Na^+ and creating a radical ion (**47**).[279] There is a great deal of evidence from esr spectra for these species.[280] The radical ion accepts a proton from the alcohol to give a radical, which is reduced to a carbanion by another sodium atom. Finally, **48** accepts another proton. Thus the function of the alcohol is to supply protons, since with most substrates ammonia is not acidic enough for this purpose. In the absence of the alcohol, products arising from dimerization of **47** are frequently obtained. There is evidence[281] at least with some substrates, e.g., biphenyl, that the radical ion corresponding to **47** is converted to the carbanion corresponding to **48** by a different pathway, in which the order of the steps is reversed: first a second electron is gained to give a dianion,[279] which then acquires a proton, producing the intermediate corresponding to **48.**

Ordinary olefins are usually unaffected by Birch-reduction conditions, and double bonds may be present in the molecule if they are not conjugated with the ring. However, phenylated olefins, internal alkynes (p. 695), and conjugated olefins (with C=C or C=O) are reduced under these conditions.

It may be noted that **48** is a resonance hybrid; i.e., we can write two additional canonical forms:



The question therefore arises: Why does the carbanion pick up a proton at the 6 position to give the 1,4-diene? Why not at the 2 position to give the 1,3-diene?[281a] An answer to this question has been proposed by Hine, who has suggested that this case is an illustration of the operation of the *principle of least motion.*[282] According to this principle, "those elementary reactions will be favored that involve the least change in atomic position and electronic configuration."[282] The principle can be applied to the case at hand in the following manner (simplified): The valence-bond bond orders (p. 24) for the six carbon–carbon bonds (on the assumption that each of the three forms contributes equally) are (going around the ring) $1\frac{2}{3}$, 1, 1, $1\frac{2}{3}$, $1\frac{1}{3}$, and $1\frac{1}{3}$. When the carbanion is converted to the diene, these bond orders change as follows:

---

[278] Birch and Nasipuri, *Tetrahedron* **6,** 148 (1959).

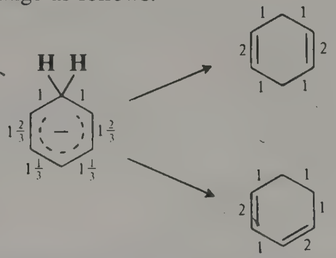
[279] For a review of radical ions and diions generated from aromatic compounds, see Holy, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 243–277 (1974).

[280] For example, see Jones, in Kaiser and Kevan, "Radical Ions," pp. 245–274, Interscience, New York, 1968; Bowers, *Adv. Magn. Reson.* **1,** 317–396 (1965); Carrington, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17,** 67–99 (1963).

[281] Lindow, Cortez, and Harvey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5406 (1972); Rabideau, Peters, and Huser, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1593 (1981).

[281a] For a discussion of this question, see Rabideau and Huser, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4266 (1983).

[282] Hine, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1236 (1966). For a review of this principle, see Hine, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **15,** 1–61 (1977). See also Tee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7144 (1969); Jochum, Gasteiger, and Ugi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 495–505 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 503–513].

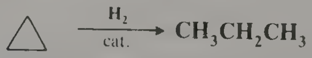


It can be seen that the two bonds whose bond order is 1 are unchanged in the two products, but for the other four bonds there is a change. If the 1,4-diene is formed, the change is $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{3}$, while formation of the 1,3-diene requires a change of $\frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{3} + \frac{2}{3} + \frac{1}{3}$. Since a greater change is required to form the 1,3-diene, the principle of least motion predicts formation of the 1,4-diene. This may not be the only factor, because the ^{13}C nmr spectrum of **48** shows that the 6 position has a somewhat greater electron density than the 2 position, which presumably would make the former more attractive to a proton.[283]

Reduction of aromatic rings with lithium[284] or calcium[285] in amines (instead of ammonia) proceeds further and cyclohexenes are obtained. It is thus possible to reduce a benzene ring, by proper choice of reagent, so that one, two, or all three double bonds are reduced. Another reagent reported to reduce aromatic rings to cyclohexanes is $NaBH_4$ with a rhodium chloride catalyst in ethanol.[286]

OS **I,** 99, 499; **II,** 566; **III,** 278, 742; **IV,** 313, 887, 903; **V,** 398, 400, 467, 591, 670, 743, 989; **50,** 50, 88; **51,** 103; **52,** 66; **54,** 11; **57,** 74, 107; **61,** 59.

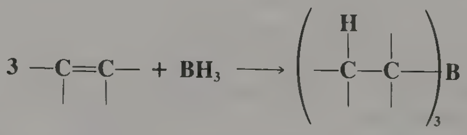
5-12 Reductive Cleavage of Cyclopropanes



Cyclopropanes can be cleaved by catalytic hydrogenolysis.[287] Among the catalysts used have been Ni, Pd, and Pt. The reaction can often be run under mild conditions.[288] Certain cyclopropane rings, especially cyclopropyl ketones and aryl-substituted cyclopropanes,[289] can be reductively cleaved by an alkali metal (generally Na or Li) in liquid ammonia.[290]

F. A Metal on the Other Side

5-13 Hydroboration



$$3\ -\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-\ +\ BH_3 \longrightarrow \left(-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\right)_3 B$$

---

[283] Bates, Brenner, Cole, Davidson, Forsythe, McCombs, and Roth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 926 (1973).

[284] Benkeser, Robinson, Sauve, and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3230 (1955); Reggel, Friedel, and Wender, *J. Org. Chem.* **22,** 891 (1957); Benkeser, Agnihotri, Burrous, Kaiser, Mallan, and Ryan, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 1313 (1964); Kwart and Conley, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2011 (1973).

[285] Benkeser and Kang, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3737 (1979); Benkeser, Belmonte, and Kang, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2796 (1983); Benkeser, Belmonte, and Yang, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 1103 (1983).

[286] Nishiki, Miyataka, Niino, Mitsuo, and Satoh, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 193 (1982).

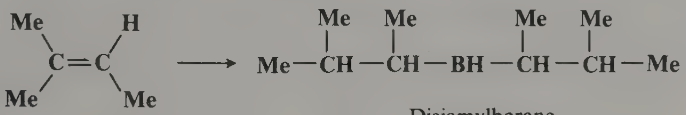
[287] For reviews, see Charton, Ref. 102, pp. 588–592; Newham, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 123–137 (1963); Liberman, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **30,** 237–251 (1961); Rylander, "Catalytic Hydrogenation over Platinum Metals," Ref. 188, pp. 469–474.

[288] See, for example, Woodworth, Buss, and Schleyer, *Chem. Commun.* 569 (1968).

[289] See, for example, Walborsky and Pierce, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 4102 (1968); Walborsky, Aronoff, and Schulman, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1036 (1970).

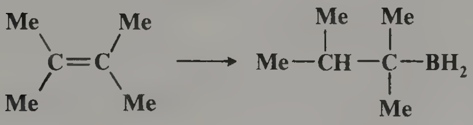
[290] For a review, see Staley, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **2,** 309–348 (1972).

When olefins are treated with borane[291] in ether solvents, BH_3 adds across the double bond.[292] Borane cannot be prepared as a stable pure compound[293] (it dimerizes to diborane B_2H_6), but it is commercially available in the form of complexes with tetrahydrofuran, dimethyl sulfide,[294] or tertiary amines. The olefins can be treated with a solution of one of these complexes (THF-BH_3 reacts at 0°C and is the most convenient to use; R_3N-BH_3 generally require temperatures of about 100°C; however, the latter can be prepared as air-stable liquids or solids, while the former can only be used as relatively dilute solutions in THF and are decomposed by moisture in air) or with a mixture of $NaBH_4$ and BF_3 etherate (or $NaBH_4$ and acetic acid[295]), which generates borane in situ. Ordinarily, the process cannot be stopped with the addition of one molecule of BH_3 because the resulting RBH_2 adds to another molecule of olefin to give R_2BH, which in turn adds to a third olefin molecule, so that the isolated product is a trialkylborane R_3B. The reaction can be performed on alkenes with one to four substituents, including cyclic olefins, but when the olefin is moderately hindered,[296] the product *is* the dialkylborane R_2BH or even the monoalkylborane RBH_2.[297] For example, **49** (*disiamylborane*), **50** (*thexylborane*),[298] and **52** have been prepared in this manner:



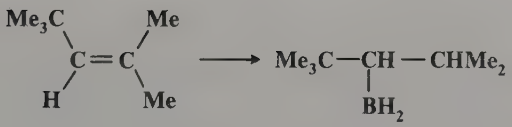
Disiamylborane

49



Thexylborane

50



51

52

---

[291] For a review of this reagent, see Lane, in Ref. 130, vol. 3, pp. 1–191, 1977.

[292] For books on this reaction and its manifold applications, see Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972, "Organic Syntheses Via Boranes," Wiley, New York, 1975; "Hydroboration," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1962; Cragg, "Organoboranes in Organic Synthesis," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1973. For reviews, see Zweifel and Brown, *Org. React.* **13,** 1–54 (1963); Brown, *Tetrahedron* **12,** 117–138 (1961).

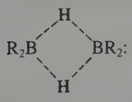
[293] Mappes and Fehlner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1562 (1970); Fehlner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6366 (1971).

[294] For a review of $BH_3 \cdot SMe_2$, see Hutchins and Cistone, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **13,** 225–240 (1981).

[295] Hach, *Synthesis* 340 (1974).

[296] Hydroboration of hindered olefins can be performed under high pressure: Rice and Okamoto, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4189 (1982).

[297] Unless coordinated with a strong Lewis base such as a tertiary amine, mono and dialkylboranes actually exist as dimers, e.g.,

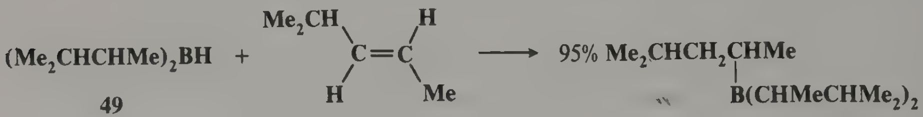


: Brown and Klender, *Inorg. Chem.* **1,** 204 (1962).

[298] For a review of the chemistry of thexylborane, see Negishi and Brown, *Synthesis* 77–89 (1974).

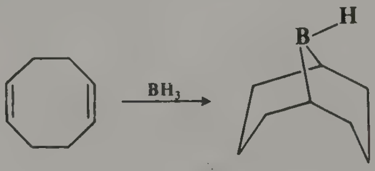
Monoalkylboranes RBH_2 (which can be prepared from hindered olefins, as above) and dialkylboranes R_2BH also add to olefins, to give the mixed trialkylboranes $RR_2'B$ and $R_2R'B$,[299] respectively.[300]

In all cases the boron goes to the side of the double bond that has more hydrogens, whether the substituents are aryl or alkyl.[301] Thus the reaction of **51** with BH_3 gives 98% **52** and only 2% of the other product. This actually follows Markovnikov's rule, since boron is more positive than hydrogen. However, the regioselectivity is caused mostly by steric factors, though electronic factors also play a part. Studies of the effect of ring substituents on rates and on the direction of attack in hydroboration of substituted styrenes showed that the attack by boron has electrophilic character.[302] When both sides of the double bond are monosubstituted or both disubstituted, about equal amounts of each isomer are obtained. However, it is possible in such cases to make the addition regioselective by the use of a large attacking molecule. For example, treatment of iso-PrCH═CHMe with borane gave 57% of product with boron on the methyl-bearing carbon and 43% of the other, while treatment with disiamylborane (**49**) gave 95% of **53** and only 5% of the other isomer.[303]


49

53

Another reagent with high regioselectivity is 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), which is prepared by hydroboration of 1,5-cyclooctadiene:[304]


9-BBN

9-BBN has the advantage that it is stable in air. Borane is quite unselective and attacks all sorts of double bonds. Disiamylborane, 9-BBN, and similar molecules are far more selective and will preferentially attack less-hindered bonds, so that it is often possible to hydroborate one double bond in a molecule selectively and leave others unaffected or to hydroborate one olefin in the presence of a less reactive olefin.[305] For example, 1-pentene can be removed from a mixture of 1- and 2-pentenes, and a cis olefin can be selectively hydroborated in a mixture of the cis and trans isomers.

---

[299] See for example Pelter, Rowe, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 532 (1975).

[300] For a method of synthesis of RR′R″B, see Kulkarni, Basavaiah, Zaidlewicz, and Brown, *Organometallics* **1,** 212 (1982).

[301] For a thorough discussion of the regioselectivity with various types of substrate and hydroborating agents, see Cragg, Ref. 292, pp. 63–84, 137–197.

[302] Brown and Sharp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5851 (1966); Klein, Dunkelblum, and Wolff, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **7,** 377 (1967). See also Marshall and Prager, *Aust. J. Chem.* **32,** 1251 (1979).

[303] Brown and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1241 (1961).

[304] Knights and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5280, 5281 (1968); Brown, Liotta, and Scouten, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5297 (1976); Brener and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2702 (1977); Brown, Liotta, and Kramer, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1058 (1978); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2966 (1979); Brown and Chen, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3978 (1981); Soderquist and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4599 (1981).

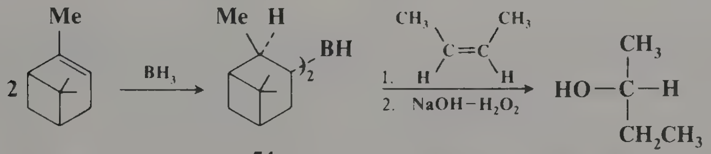
[305] Brown and Moerikofer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2063 (1963); Zweifel and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2066 (1963); Zweifel, Ayyangar, and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2072 (1963); Ref. 302.

Another hydroboration reagent with even greater regioselectivity than BH_3 (for terminal alkenes or those of the form $R_2C{=}CHR$) is monochloroborane[306] BH_2Cl coordinated with dimethyl sulfide (the hydroboration product is a dialkylchloroborane R_2BCl).[307] For example, 1-hexene gave 94% of the anti-Markovnikov product with BH_3-THF, but 99.2% with BH_2Cl-SMe_2. Treatment of alkenes with dichloroborane-dimethyl sulfide $BHCl_2$-SMe_2 in the presence of BF_3 gives alkyldichloroboranes $RBCl_2$.[308]

An important use of the hydroboration reaction is that alkylboranes, when oxidized with hydrogen peroxide and NaOH, are converted to alcohols (**2-26**). This is therefore an indirect way of adding H_2O across a double bond in an anti-Markovnikov manner. However, boranes undergo other reactions as well. Among other things, they react with α-halo carbonyl compounds to give alkylated products (**0-101**), with α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compounds to give Michael-type addition of R and H (**5-19**), with CO to give alcohols and ketones (**8-26** to **8-28**); they can be reduced with carboxylic acids, providing an indirect method for reduction of double bonds (reaction **5-10**), or they can be oxidized with chromic acid or pyridinium chlorochromate to give ketones[309] or aldehydes (from terminal olefins),[310] dimerized with silver nitrate and NaOH (**4-35**), isomerized (**8-13**), or converted to amines (**2-29**) or halides (**2-28**). They are thus useful intermediates for the preparation of a wide variety of compounds.

Besides alkyl and aryl groups, such functional groups as OR, OH, NH_2, SMe, halogen, and COOR may be present in the molecule,[311] but not groups that are reducible by borane.

Use of the reagent diisopinocampheylborane **54** (prepared by treating optically active α-pinene with BH_3) results in enantioselective hydroboration–oxidation.[312] Alcohols with optical purities as high as 98% have been obtained in this way.[313] However, **54** does not give good results with even moderately hindered alkenes; better reagents for these compounds are isopinocampheylborane[314] and dilongifolyborane,[315] though optical yields are lower. The method has been improved[315a] by synthesizing the chiral isopinocampheylborane in the presence of tetramethylenediamine (TMED), whereupon a TMED–isopinocampheylborane adduct is formed. This adduct, in Et_2O, reacts with a prochiral alkene to give a dialkylborane RBHR′ (R′ = isocampheyl). The RBHR′ crystallizes from THF in 99–100% optical purity (the other diastereomer remains in solution). The optically



α-Pinene
Optically active

54

Optically active

---

[306] For a review of haloboranes, see Brown and Kulkarni, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **239,** 23–41 (1982).

[307] Brown, Ravindran, and Kulkarni, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2417 (1979).

[308] Brown, Ravindran, and Kulkarni, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 384 (1980).

[309] Brown and Garg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2951 (1961); Rao, Devaprabhakara, and Chandrasekaran, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **162,** C9 (1978).

[310] Rao, Kulkarni, and Brown, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **172,** C20 (1979).

[311] See, for example, Brown and Unni, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2902 (1968); Brown and Gallivan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2906 (1968); Brown and Sharp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2915 (1968).

[312] Brown, Ayyangar, and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 397 (1964). Brown and Yoon, *Isr. J. Chem.* **15,** 12 (1977); Brown, Desai, and Jadhav, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5065 (1982); Brown and Singaram, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 945 (1984).

[313] For a review of enantioselective syntheses with organoboranes, see Brown, Jadhav, and Mandal, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 3547–3587 (1981).

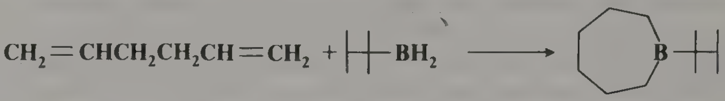
[314] Brown, Jadhav, and Mandal, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5074 (1982).

[315] Jadhav and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2988 (1981).

[315a] Brown and Singaram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1797 (1984).

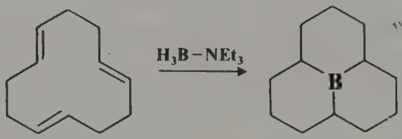
pure RBHR′ is treated with acetaldehyde to produce α-pinene and optically pure R_2BH, which can be converted to optically pure alcohols or to other products. Since both (+) and (−) α-pinene are readily available, both enantiomers can be prepared.

The double bonds in a conjugated diene are hydroborated separately, i.e., there is no 1,4 addition. However, it is not easy to hydroborate just one of a conjugated system, since conjugated double bonds are less reactive than isolated ones. Thexylborane[298] (**50**) is particularly useful for achieving the cyclic hydroboration of dienes, conjugated or nonconjugated,[316] e.g.,

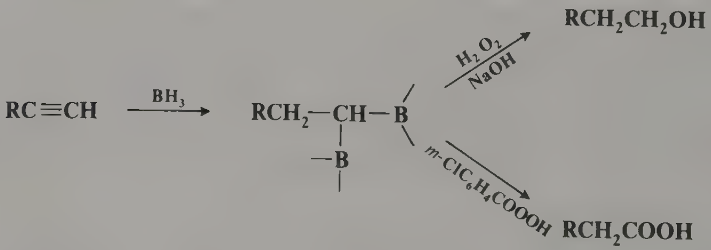


50

Rings of five, six, or seven members can be formed in this way. Similar cyclization can also be accomplished with other monoalkylboranes and, in some instances, with BH_3 itself.[317] One example is the formation of 9-BBN, shown above. Another is conversion of 1,5,9-cyclododecatriene to perhydro-9*b*-boraphenalene:[318]



Triple bonds[319] can be monohydroborated to give vinylic boranes, which can be reduced with carboxylic acids to cis alkenes or oxidized and hydrolyzed to aldehydes or ketones. Terminal alkynes give aldehydes by this method, in contrast to the mercuric or acid-catalyzed addition of water discussed at **5-3.** However, terminal alkynes give vinylic boranes[320] (and hence aldehydes) only when treated with a hindered borane such as **49, 50,** or catecholborane (p. 552),[321] or with $BHBr_2$-SMe_2.[322] The reaction between terminal alkynes and BH_3 produces 1,1-dibora compounds, which can be oxidized either to primary alcohols (with NaOH-H_2O_2) or to carboxylic acids (with



---

[316] Brown and Pfaffenberger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5475 (1967); Brown and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3567 (1972).

[317] For a review of cyclic hydroboration, see Brown and Negishi, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2331–2357 (1977). See also Brown, Pai, and Naik, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 1072 (1984).

[318] Rotermund and Köster, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **686,** 153 (1965); Brown and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5478 (1967).

[319] For a review of hydroboration of triple bonds, see Hudrlik and Hudrlik, in Patai, Ref. 67, pt. 1, pp. 203–219.

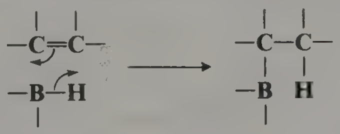
[320] For a review of the preparation and reactions of vinylic boranes, see Brown and Campbell, *Aldrichimica Acta* **14,** 1–11 (1981).

[321] Brown and Gupta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4370 (1972), **97,** 5249 (1975). For a review of catecholborane, see Lane and Kabalka, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 981–990 (1976).

[322] Brown and Campbell, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 389 (1980).

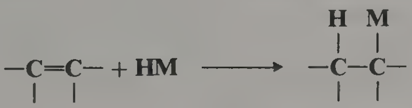
m-chloroperbenzoic acid).[323] Double bonds can be hydroborated in the presence of triple bonds if the reagent is 9-BBN.[324] On the other hand, dimesitylborane selectively hydroborates triple bonds in the presence of double bonds.[325]

The addition in hydroboration has been shown to be stereospecific and syn, with attack taking place from the less-hindered side.[326] The mechanism[327] may be a cyclic four-center one:[328]



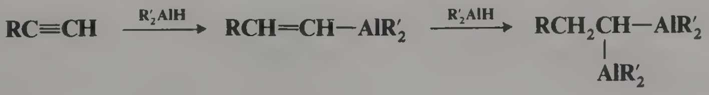
OS **50,** 88; **52,** 59; **53,** 77; **58,** 32; **61,** 103.

5-14 Other Hydrometalation
Hydro-metallo-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + HM \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{M}{|}}{C}}-$$

Metal hydrides of groups IIIA and IVA of the periodic table (e.g., AlH_3, GaH_3) as well as many of their alkyl and aryl derivatives (e.g., R_2AlH, Ar_3SnH) add to double bonds to give organometallic compounds.[329] The hydroboration reaction (**5-13**) is the most important example, but other important metals in this reaction are aluminum, silicon, tin,[330] and zirconium[331] (a group IVB metal). The mechanism with group IIIA hydrides seems to be electrophilic (or four-centered pericyclic with some electrophilic characteristics) while with group IVA hydrides a mechanism involving free radicals seems more likely. Dialkylmagnesiums have been obtained by adding MgH_2 to double bonds.[332] With some reagents triple bonds[333] can add 1 or 2 moles, e.g.,[334]



$$RC\equiv CH \xrightarrow{R'_2AlH} RCH=CH-AlR'_2 \xrightarrow{R'_2AlH} RCH_2\underset{\underset{AlR'_2}{|}}{CH}-AlR'_2$$

---

[323] Zweifel and Arzoumanian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 291 (1967).

[324] Brown and Coleman, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2328 (1979).

[325] Pelter, Singaram, and Brown, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1433 (1983).

[326] Kabalka and Bowman, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1607 (1973); Brown and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2544 (1961); Bergbreiter and Rainville, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3031 (1976); Kabalka, Newton, and Jacobus, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1567 (1978).

[327] For kinetic studies, see Wang and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5303 (1980); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7148 (1982); Vishwakarma and Fry, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5306 (1980); Brown, Chandrasekharan, and Wang, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2901 (1983); *Pure Appl. Chem.* **55,** 1387–1414 (1983); Brown and Chandrasekharan, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 5080 (1983), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1863 (1984).

[328] Brown and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 247 (1959); Pasto, Lepeska, and Balasubramaniyan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6090 (1972); Pasto, Lepeska, and Cheng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6083 (1972). See, however, Jones, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1886 (1972).

[329] Eisch, "The Chemistry of Organometallic Compounds," pp. 107–111, Macmillan, New York, 1967. See also Eisch and Fichter, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **250,** 63 (1983).

[330] For a review with respect to Al, Si, and Sn, see Negishi, "Organometallics in Organic Synthesis," vol. 1, pp. 45–48, 357–363, 406–412, Wiley, New York, 1980. For reviews of hydrosilylation, see Speier, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **17,** 407–447 (1979); Andrianov, Souček, and Khananashvili, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 657–668 (1979).

[331] For a review of hydrozirconation, see Schwartz and Labinger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 333–340 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 402–409].

[332] Bogdanović, Schwickardi, and Sikorsky, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 199 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 206].

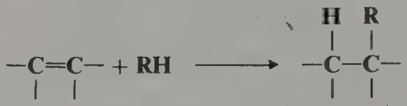
[333] For a review of the hydrometalation of triple bonds, see Ref. 319, pp. 219–232.

[334] Wilke and Müller, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **629,** 222 (1960); Eisch and Kaska, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2213 (1966); Eisch and Rhee, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 565 (1975).

When 2 moles are added, electrophilic addition generally gives 1,1-dimetallic products (as with hydroboration), while free-radical addition usually gives the 1,2-dimetallic products.

G. Carbon on the Other Side

5-15 Addition of Alkanes and Alkenes
Hydro-alkyl-addition

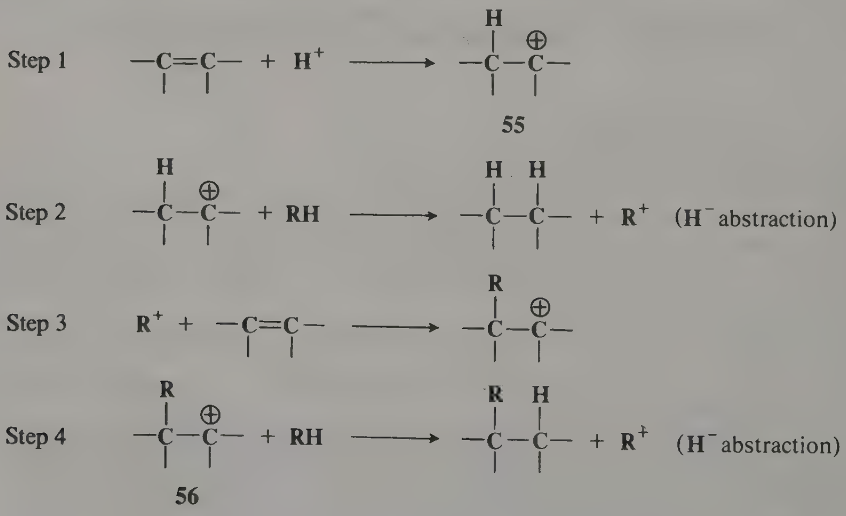


$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- + RH \longrightarrow -\overset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\overset{R}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

There are two important ways of adding alkanes to olefins—the thermal method and the acid-catalysis method.[335] Both give chiefly mixtures, and neither is useful for the preparation of relatively pure compounds in reasonable yields. However, both are useful industrially. In the thermal method the reactants are heated to high temperatures (about 500°C) at high pressures (150 to 300 atm) without a catalyst. As an example, propane and ethylene gave 55.5% isopentane, 7.3% hexanes, 10.1% heptanes, and 7.4% alkenes.[336] The mechanism is undoubtedly of a free-radical type and can be illustrated by one possible sequence in the reaction between propane and ethylene:

$$\begin{array}{lrcl}
\text{Step 1} & CH_3CH_2CH_3 & \xrightarrow{\Delta} & CH_3\cdot + CH_3CH_2\cdot \\
\text{Step 2} & CH_3\cdot + CH_3CH_2CH_3 & \longrightarrow & CH_4 + CH_3\underset{\bullet}{C}HCH_3 \\
\text{Step 3} & CH_3\underset{\bullet}{C}HCH_3 + CH_2{=}CH_2 & \longrightarrow & (CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2\cdot \\
\text{Step 4} & (CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_2\cdot + CH_3CH_2CH_3 & \longrightarrow & (CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3 + CH_3\underset{\bullet}{C}HCH_3
\end{array}$$

In the acid-catalysis method, a proton or Lewis acid is used as the catalyst and the reaction is carried out at temperatures between −30 and 100°C. This is a Friedel–Crafts process with a carbocation mechanism (illustrated for a proton acid catalyst):

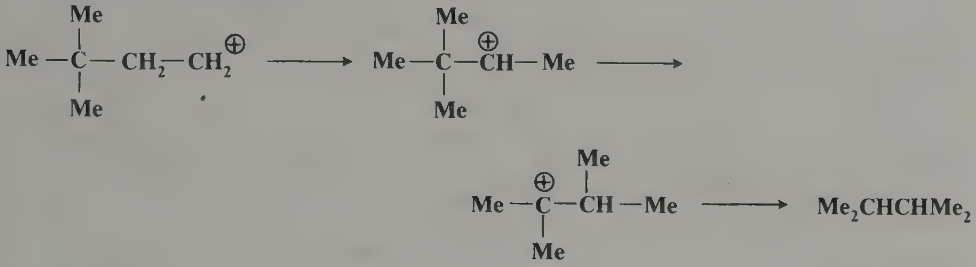


---

[335] For reviews, see Shuikin and Lebedev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 448–455 (1966); Schmerling, in Olah, "Friedel–Crafts and Related Reacctions," vol. 2, pp. 1075–1111, 1121–1122, Interscience, New York, 1964.

[336] Frey and Hepp, *Ind. Eng. Chem.* **28,** 1439 (1936).

56 often rearranges before it abstracts a hydride ion, explaining, for example, why the principal product from the reaction between isobutane and ethylene is 2,3-dimethylbutane:



$$\mathrm{Me{-}\overset{\displaystyle Me}{\underset{\displaystyle Me}{C}}{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Me{-}\overset{\displaystyle Me}{\underset{\displaystyle Me}{C}}{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}H{-}Me} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Me{-}\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\displaystyle Me}{C}}{-}\overset{\displaystyle Me}{C}H{-}Me} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Me_2CHCHMe_2}$$

It is also possible for **55** (or **56**) instead of abstracting a hydride ion, to add to another mole of olefin, so that not only rearrangement products but also dimeric and polymeric products are frequent.

The addition of secondary or tertiary cations (generated from the corresponding alcohols, esters, or alkenes) to 1,1-dichloroethene gives carboxylic acids by hydrolysis of the intermediate ions (see **0-3**):[337]

$$\mathrm{R_3C^+ + CH_2{=}CCl_2 \longrightarrow R_3C{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}Cl_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} R_3CCH_2COOH}$$

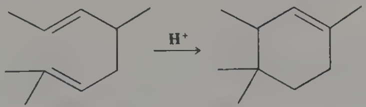
The reaction may also be base-catalyzed, in which case there is nucleophilic addition and a carbanion mechanism.[338] Carbanions most often used are those stabilized by one or more α-aryl groups. For example, toluene adds to styrene in the presence of sodium to give 1,3-diphenylpropane:[339]

$$\mathrm{PhCH_3 \xrightarrow{Na} Ph\bar{C}H_2^{\ominus} + PhCH{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow Ph\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H{-}CH_2CH_2Ph \xrightarrow{solvent} PhCH_2CH_2CH_2Ph}$$

Conjugated dienes give 1,4 addition.[340] This reaction has also been performed with salts of carboxylic acids in what amounts to a method of alkylation of carboxylic acids[341] (see also **0-98**):

$$\mathrm{CH_3COOK \xrightarrow{NaNH_2} \overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H_2COOK + CH_2{=}CH_2 \longrightarrow \overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H_2{-}CH_2CH_2COOK}$$

It is possible in the acid-catalyzed process for an olefin to add to an olefin so that the product is a dimer that contains one double bond, e.g., $\mathrm{CH_2{=}CH_2 + CH_2{=}CH_2 \rightarrow CH_2{=}CHCH_2CH_3}$. This reaction has also been carried out internally, e.g.,



---

[337] For reviews, see Bott, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 171–178 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 169–176]; Bott and Hellmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 870–874 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 932–936], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **6,** 67–80 (1971).

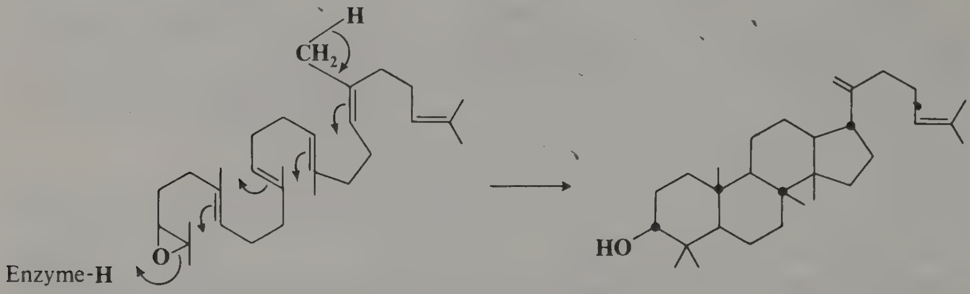
[338] For reviews, see Pines and Stalick, Ref. 171, pp. 240–422; Pines, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 155–162 (1974); Pines and Schaap, *Adv. Catal.* **12,** 117–148 (1960), pp. 126–146.

[339] Pines and Wunderlich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6001 (1958).

[340] Eberhardt and Peterson, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 82 (1965); Pines and Stalick, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3723 (1968).

[341] Schmerling and Toekelt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3694 (1962).

Processes of this kind are important in the biosynthesis of steroids and tetra- and pentacyclic terpenes. For example, squalene 2,3-oxide is converted by enzymic catalysis to dammaradienol.

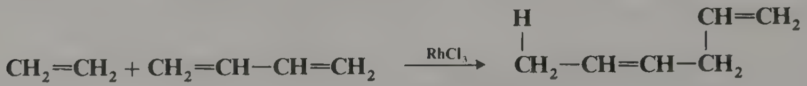


Squalene 2,3-oxide

Dammaradienol

The squalene → lanosterol biosynthesis (which is a key step in the biosynthesis of cholesterol) is similar.[342]

The addition of olefins to olefins can also be accomplished by bases[343] as well as by the use of catalyst systems[344] consisting of nickel complexes and alkylaluminum compounds (known as *Ziegler catalysts*)[345] and by catalysts derived from rhodium chloride.[346] These and similar catalysts also catalyze the 1,4-addition of olefins to dienes,[347] e.g.,



$$CH_2{=}CH_2 + CH_2{=}CH{-}CH{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow{RhCl_3} \overset{\displaystyle H}{\overset{|}{C}}H_2{-}CH{=}CH{-}\overset{\displaystyle CH{=}CH_2}{\overset{|}{C}}H_2$$

In the presence of cuprous chloride and ammonium chloride, acetylene adds to another molecule of itself to give vinylacetylene.

$$HC{\equiv}CH + HC{\equiv}CH \xrightarrow[NH_4Cl]{CuCl} HC{\equiv}C{-}CH{=}CH_2$$

This type of alkyne dimerization is also catalyzed by certain nickel complexes, as well as other catalysts.[348]

Olefins and alkynes may also add to each other to give cyclic products (see **5-48** and **5-50**).

OS **I,** 229; **IV,** 665; **60,** 58.

---

[342] For reviews, see Sutherland, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **9,** 265–280 (1980); Johnson, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 9–17 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 33–40], *Bioorg. Chem.* **5,** 51–98 (1976), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 1–8 (1968); van Tamelen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 152–158 (1975).

[343] For a review, see Pines, *Synthesis* 309–327 (1974).

[344] For reviews, see Jira and Freiesleben, *Organomet. React.* **3,** 1–190 (1972), pp. 117–130; Heck, Ref. 194, pp. 84–94, 150–157; Khan and Martell, Ref. 137, vol. 2, pp. 135–158; Rylander, Ref. 194, pp. 175–196; Tsuji, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 109–255 (1969), pp. 213–220.

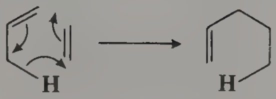
[345] See for example, Onsager, Wang, and Blindheim, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **52,** 187, 196, 215, 224, 230 (1969); Jones and Symes, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1124 (1971); Fischer, Jonas, Misbach, Stabba, and Wilke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 943 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 1002]. See also McClure and Barnett, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **80,** 385 (1974); Bogdanović, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **17,** 105–140 (1979).

[346] Cramer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4717 (1965), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 186–191 (1968); Kobayashi and Taira, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 5763 (1968); Takahashi, Okura, and Keii, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 7489 (1975).

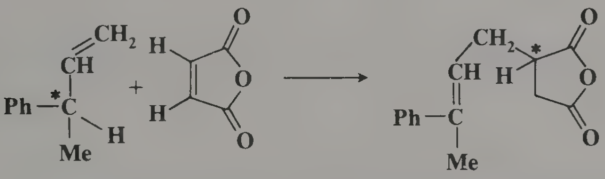
[347] Alderson, Jenner, and Lindsey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5638 (1965). For a review, see Su, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **17,** 269–318 (1979).

[348] See for example, Carlton and Read, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1631 (1978); Schmitt and Singer, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **153,** 165 (1978); Giacomelli, Marcacci, Caporusso, and Lardicci, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3217 (1979); Selimov, Rutman, and Dzhemilev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **19,** 1621 (1983).

5-16 The Ene Synthesis
Hydro-allyl-addition

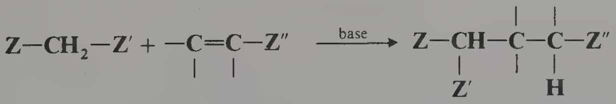


Olefins can add to double bonds in a reaction different from those discussed in **5-15,** which, however, is still formally the addition of RH to a double bond. This reaction is called the *ene synthesis*[349] and bears a certain similarity to the Diels–Alder reaction (**5-47**). For the reaction to proceed without a catalyst, one of the components must be a reactive dienophile (see **5-47** for a definition of this word) such as maleic anhydride, but the other (which supplies the hydrogen) may be a simple alkene such as propene. There has been much discussion of the mechanism of this reaction, and both concerted pericyclic (as shown above) and stepwise mechanisms have been suggested. The reaction between maleic anhydride and optically active $PhCHMeCH{=}CH_2$ gave an optically active product,[350] which is strong evidence for a concerted rather than a stepwise mechanism.[351] The reaction can be extended to less-reactive enophiles by the use of Lewis-acid catalysts, especially alkylaluminum halides.[352]



OS **IV,** 766; **V,** 459.

5-17 The Michael Reaction
Hydro-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl-addition, etc.



$$Z{-}CH_2{-}Z' + {-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}Z'' \xrightarrow{\text{base}} Z{-}\underset{\underset{Z'}{|}}{CH}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{C}}{-}Z''$$

Compounds containing electron-withdrawing groups (Z is defined on p. 664) add, in the presence of bases, to olefins of the form C=C—Z (including quinones). This is called the *Michael reaction* and involves conjugate addition.[353] The base removes the acidic proton and then the mechanism is as outlined on p. 664. The reaction has been carried out with malonates, cyanoacetates, acetoacetates, other β-keto esters, and compounds of the form Z—CH_3, ZCH_2R, $ZCHR_2$, and $ZCHRZ'$, including esters, ketones, aldehydes, nitriles, nitro compounds,[354] and sulfones, as well as other compounds with relatively acidic hydrogens, such as indenes and fluorenes. These reagents do not add to ordinary double bonds, except in the presence of free-radical initiators (**5-21**). 1,2 addition (to the C═O or C≡N group) often competes and sometimes predominates (**6-42**). In particular, α,β-unsaturated *aldehydes* seldom give 1,4 addition.[355]

---

[349] Alder and Brachel, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **651,** 141 (1962). For reviews, see Carruthers, "Some Modern Methods of Organic Synthesis," 2d ed. pp. 222–228, Cambridge University Press, London, 1978; Keung and Alper, *J. Chem. Educ.* **49,** 97–100 (1972); Hoffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 556–577 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 597–618]. For reviews of intramolecular ene reactions see Oppolzer and Snieckus, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 476–486 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 506–516]; Conia and Le Perchec, *Synthesis* 1–19 (1975).

[350] Hill and Rabinovitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 965 (1964). See also Garsky, Koster, and Arnold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4207 (1974); Stephenson and Mattern, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3614 (1976).

[351] For other evidence for a concerted mechanism, see Benn, Dwyer, and Chappell, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 533 (1977).

[352] For a review, see Snider, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 426–432 (1980).

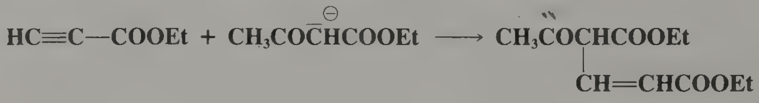
[353] For reviews, see Bergmann, Ginsburg, and Pappo, *Org. React.* **10,** 179–560 (1959); House, Ref. 128, pp. 595–623. The subject is also discussed at many places in Stowell, "Carbanions in Organic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1979.

Mannich bases (see **6-16**) and β-halo carbonyl compounds can also be used as substrates; these are converted to the C═C—Z compounds in situ by the base (**6-16, 7-14**).[356] Substrates of this kind are especially useful in cases where the C═C—Z compound is unstable. The reaction of C═C—Z compounds with enamines (**2-17**) can also be considered a Michael reaction. Michael reactions are reversible (**7-20**).

The ketene thioacetal monoxide $CH_2{=}C(SMe)SOMe$ (**57**) reacts with ZCH_2Z' compounds to give adducts that can be hydrolyzed to the substituted aldehydes $ZCHZ'CH_2CHO$.[357] **57** is thus a synthon for the —CH_2CHO group. This reaction has been performed with Z, Z′ = COR and COOR, as well as with simple esters $R'CH_2COOR$ and with enamines (see **2-17**).

The Michael reaction has been performed diastereoselectively and enantioselectively.[358]

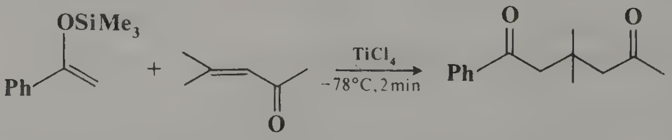
Michael reactions are sometimes applied to substrates of the type C≡C—Z, e.g.,



$$HC{\equiv}C{-}COOEt + CH_3CO\overset{\ominus}{C}HCOOEt \longrightarrow CH_3CO\underset{\displaystyle CH{=}CHCOOEt}{\underset{|}{C}}HCOOEt$$

Indeed, because of the greater susceptibility of triple bonds to nucleophilic attack, it is even possible for nonactivated alkynes, e.g., acetylene, to be substrates in this reaction.[359]

In a closely related reaction, silyl enol ethers add to α,β-unsaturated ketones and esters when catalyzed by $TiCl_4$, e.g.,[360]



Allylic silanes $R_2C{=}CHCH_2SiMe_3$ may be used instead of silyl enol ethers.[361]

OS **I,** 272; **II,** 200; **III,** 286; **IV,** 630, 652, 662, 776; **V,** 486, 1135; **53,** 1; **55,** 99; **56,** 36; **58,** 158; **60,** 117.

---

[354] For a review of Michael reactions where Z or Z″ is nitro, see Baer and Urbas, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," pt. 2, pp. 130–148, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[355] For a report of successful 1,4 additions to α,β-unsaturated aldehydes, involving phase-transfer catalysis, see Kryshtal, Kulganek, Kucherov, and Yanovskaya, *Synthesis* 107 (1979).

[356] Mannich bases react with ketones *without* basic catalysts to give 1,5-diketones, but this process, known as the *thermal-Michael reaction,* has a different mechanism: Brown, Buchanan, Curran, and McLay, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 4565 (1968); Gill, James, Lions, and Potts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 4923 (1952).

[357] Herrmann, Kieczykowski, Romanet, Wepplo, and Schlessinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4711 (1973).

[358] See Blarer and Seebach, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 3086 (1983); Mulzer, Chucholowski, Lammer, Jibril, and Huttner, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 869 (1983).

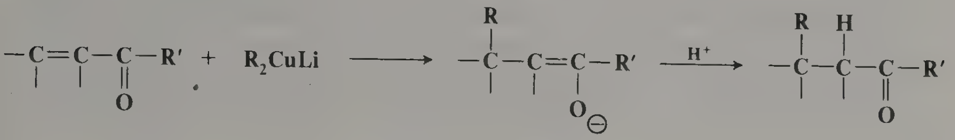
[359] See, for example, Makosza, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5489 (1966).

[360] Narasaka, Soai, Aikawa, and Mukaiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 779 (1976); Saigo, Osaki, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 163 (1976).

[361] Hosomi and Sakurai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 1673 (1977); Hosomi, Hashimoto, Kobayashi, and Sakurai, *Chem. Lett.* 245 (1979); Jellal and Santelli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4487 (1980).

5-18 1,4 Addition of Organometallic Compounds to Activated Double Bonds

Hydro-alkyl-addition



58

Lithium dialkylcopper reagents (see **0-88**) adds to α,β-unsaturated aldehydes[362] and ketones (R′ = H, R, Ar) to give conjugate addition products[363] in a reaction closely related to the Michael reaction. α,β-Unsaturated esters are less reactive, and the corresponding acids do not react at all. R may be primary alkyl, vinyl, or aryl. Various functional groups such as OH and unconjugated C═O groups may be present in the substrate. A characteristic of the reaction is that only one of the R groups of R_2CuLi adds to the substrate; the other is wasted. This can be a limitation where the precursor (RLi or RCu, see p. 402) is expensive or available in limited amounts. The difficulty can be overcome by using one of the mixed reagents $R(R'C{\equiv}C)CuLi$,[364] R(O—*t*-Bu)CuLi,[365] or R(PhS)CuLi,[366] each of which transfers only the R group. These reagents are easily prepared by the reaction of RLi with $R'C{\equiv}CCu$ (R′ = *n*-Pr or *t*-Bu), *t*-BuOCu, or PhSCu, respectively. A further advantage of these mixed reagents is that good yields of addition product are achieved when R is tertiary, so that use of one of them permits the introduction of a tertiary alkyl group. The mixed reagents R(CN)CuLI[367] (prepared from RLi and CuCN) and $R_2Cu(CN)Li_2$[368] also selectively transfer the R group. The reagent $(H_2C{=}C[OMe])_2CuLi$ transfers the $H_2C{=}C(OMe)$ group, which can be hydrolyzed to CH_3—CO.[369] Another way to avoid waste is to use a reagent derived from equimolar amounts of RLi and CuI along with 2 to 3 moles of *n*-Bu_3P.[370] Conjugate addition to α,β-unsaturated and acetylenic acids and esters, as well as ketones, can be achieved by the use of the coordinated reagents $RCu \cdot BF_3$ (R = primary).[371] Some of these reagents have been shown to add diastereoselectively to chiral substrates.[371a]

There is generally little or no competition from 1,2 addition (to the C═O).However, when R is allyl, 1,4 addition is observed with some substrates and 1,2 addition with others.[372] R_2CuLi also add to α,β-unsaturated sulfones ($C{=}C{-}SO_2Ar$)[373] but not to simple α,β-unsaturated nitriles.[374]

[362] Chuit, Foulon, and Normant, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2305 (1980); **37,** 1385 (1981). For a review, see Alexakis, Chuit, Commerçon-Bourgain, Foulon, Jabri, Mangeney, and Normant, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **56,** 91–98 (1984). A better reagent for the addition of a methyl group to an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde is $Me_5Cu_3Li_2$: Clive, Farina, and Beaulieu, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2572 (1982).

[363] House, Respess, and Whitesides, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3128 (1966). For reviews, see Posner, *Org. React.* **19,** 1–113 (1972); House, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 59–67 (1976). For examples of the use of this reaction in the synthesis of natural products, see Posner, "An Introduction to Synthesis Using Organocopper Reagents," pp. 10–67, Wiley, New York, 1980.

[364] Corey and Beames, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7210 (1972); House and Umen, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3893 (1973); Corey, Floyd, and Lipshutz, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3419 (1978).

[365] Posner and Whitten, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1815 (1973).

[366] Posner, Whitten, and Sterling, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7788 (1973).

[367] Gorlier, Hamon, Levisalles, and Wagnon, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 88 (1973). For another useful mixed reagent, see Ledlie and Miller, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1006 (1979).

[368] Lipshutz, Wilhelm, and Kozlowski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3755 (1982); Lipshutz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 127 (1983).

[369] Chavdarian and Heathcock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3822 (1975).

[370] Suzuki, Suzuki, Kawagishi, and Noyori, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1247 (1980).

[371] Yamamoto, Yamamoto, Yatagai, Ishihara, and Maruyama, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 119 (1982).

[371a] For example, see Oppolzer, Moretti, Godel, Meunier, and Löhrer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4971 (1983); Posner, Kogan, and Hulce, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 383 (1984).

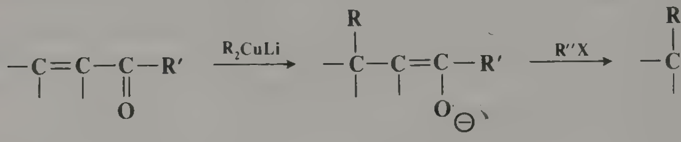
[372] House and Fischer, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3615 (1969). See also Daviaud and Miginiac, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3345 (1973).

[373] Posner and Brunelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 935 (1973).

[374] House and Umen, Ref. 364.

Organocopper reagents RCu (as well as certain R_2CuLi) add to α,β-unsaturated and acetylenic sulfoxides C═C—SOR and C≡C—SOR.[375]

When the solvent is 1,2-dimethoxyethane, instead of hydrolyzing the enolate ion **58,** it is possible to alkylate it directly with an alkyl halide, where R″ is primary alkyl or allylic[376] (**0-97**). Thus, by

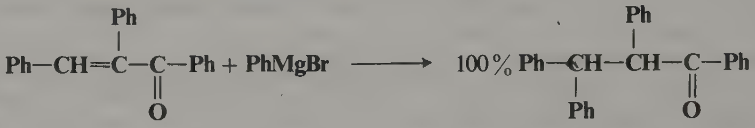


$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow{R_2CuLi} -\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{\underset{O^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow{R''X} -\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\overset{R''}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'$$

58

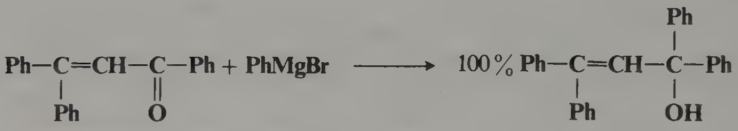
this method, both the α and β positions of a ketone are alkylated in one synthetic operation (see also **5-52**).

Grignard reagents also add to these substrates, but with these reagents, 1,2 addition may seriously compete:[377] the product is often controlled by steric factors. Thus **59** with phenylmagnesium bromide gives 100% 1,4 addition, while **60** gives 100% 1,2 addition:



$$Ph-CH=\overset{\overset{Ph}{|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Ph + PhMgBr \longrightarrow 100\%\ Ph-\underset{\underset{Ph}{|}}{CH}-\overset{\overset{Ph}{|}}{CH}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Ph$$

59



$$Ph-\underset{\underset{Ph}{|}}{C}=CH-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Ph + PhMgBr \longrightarrow 100\%\ Ph-\underset{\underset{Ph}{|}}{C}=CH-\overset{\overset{Ph}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-Ph$$

60

In general, substitution at the carbonyl group increases 1,4 addition, while substitution at the double bond increases 1,2 addition. In most cases both products are obtained, but α,β-unsaturated *aldehydes* nearly always give exclusive 1,2 addition when treated with Grignard reagents. However, the extent of 1,4 addition of Grignard reagents can be increased by the use of a copper ion catalyst, e.g., CuCl, $Cu(OAc)_2$.[378] It is likely that alkylcopper reagents, formed from RMgX and Cu^+ (cupric acetate is reduced to cuprous ion by excess RMgX), are the actual attacking species in these cases.[363] Alkyllithiums, treated with compounds of the form $C{=}C{-}COCH_3$ and $C{=}C{-}COOC_2H_5$, gave only 1,2 addition,[379] but alkyllithiums can be made to give 1,4 addition with α,β-unsaturated ketones[380] and aldehydes[381] if the reactions are conducted in the presence of HMPT. Among alkyllithiums that have been found to add 1,4 in this manner are 2-lithio-1,3-dithianes (see **0-99**).[382]

---

[375] Truce and Lusch, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3174 (1974), **43,** 2252 (1978).

[376] Coates and Sandefur, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 275 (1974); Posner and Lentz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3215 (1977). See also Tidwell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4615 (1979); Mpango, Mahalanabis, Mahdavi-Damghani, and Snieckus, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4823 (1980); Cooke, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4963 (1982), and references cited in these papers.

[377] For a discussion of the factors affecting 1,2 vs. 1,4 addition, see Negishi, Ref. 330, pp. 127–133.

[378] Posner, Ref. 363.

[379] Rozhkov and Makin, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **34,** 57 (1964).

[380] Sauvetre and Seyden-Penne, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3949 (1976); Roux, Wartski, and Seyden-Penne, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 1927 (1981); *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 85 (1981).

[381] El-Bouz and Wartski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2897 (1980).

[382] Lucchetti, Dumont, and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2695 (1979); Brown and Yamaichi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 100 (1979); Ref. 381. See also Bürstinghaus and Seebach, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 841 (1977).

1,4 Addition of alkyllithiums to α,β-unsaturated aldehydes can also be achieved by converting the aldehyde to a benzothiazole derivative (masking the aldehyde function),[383] from which the aldehyde group can be regenerated.

However, neither Grignard reagents nor lithium dialkylcopper reagents generally add to ordinary C═C double bonds. Grignard reagents in general add only to double bonds susceptible to nucleophilic attack, e.g., fluoroolefins and tetracyanoethylene.[384] However, active Grignard reagents (benzyl, allyl) also add to the double bonds[384a] of allylic amines,[385] and of allylic and homoallylic alcohols,[386] as well as to the triple bonds of propargyl alcohols and certain other alkynols.[387] It is likely that cyclic intermediates are involved in these cases, in which the magnesium coordinates with the hetero atom. Organolithium reagents (primary, secondary, and tertiary alkyl and in some cases aryl) also add to the double and triple bonds of allylic and propargylic alcohols[388] (in this case tetramethylethylenediamine is a catalyst) and to certain other olefins containing hetero groups such as OR, NR_2, or SR.[389] Allylic, benzylic, and tertiary Grignard reagents also add to 1-alkenes and strained internal alkenes, e.g., norbornene, if the reaction is carried out not in ether but in a hydrocarbon solvent such as pentane or in the alkene itself as solvent, heated, under pressure if necessary, to 60 to 130°C.[390] Yields are variable. *Intramolecular* addition of RMgX to completely unactivated double and triple bonds has been demonstrated,[391] e.g., refluxing of 6-chloro-1-heptene with Mg for 5 hr gave, after hydrolysis, an 88% yield of 1,2-dimethylcyclopentane.

An alkynyl group can be added to the double bond of an α,β-unsaturated ketone by use of the diethylalkynylalane reagents $Et_2AlC{\equiv}CR$.[392] In a similar manner, the alkenyl reagents $R_2AlCH{=}CR'$ transfer an alkenyl group.[393] Trialkylalanes R_3Al also add 1,4 to such ketones in the presence of nickel acetylacetonate.[394] Also used for 1,4 addition to these ketones are trialkylzinclithium reagents R_3ZnLi,[395] arylpalladium compounds,[395a] and arylmercury compounds with phase transfer catalysts.[396] Trialkylalanes R_3Al and dialkylzinc compounds R_2Zn add to triple bonds in the presence of a zirconium complex.[397]

---

[383] Corey and Boger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 9 (1978).

[384] Gardner and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 558 (1976).

[384a] For a review of the addition of RM to isolated double bonds, see Vara Prasad and Pillai, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **259,** 1–30 (1983).

[385] Richey, Moses, Domalski, Erickson, and Heyn, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3773 (1981).

[386] Eisch and Husk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4194 (1965); Felkin and Kaeseberg, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4587 (1970); Richey and Szucs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3785 (1971); Eisch, Merkley, and Galle, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 587 (1979); Eisch and Merkley, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **20,** P27 (1969), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1148 (1979).

[387] Eisch and Merkley, Ref. 386; Richey and Von Rein, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **20,** P32 (1969); Von Rein and Richey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3777 (1971); Miller and Reichenbach, *Synth. Commun.* **6,** 319 (1976). See also Vermeer, de Graaf, and Meijer, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **93,** 24 (1974); Duboudin and Jousseaume, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **168,** 1 (1979); *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 53 (1979).

[388] Felkin, Swierczewski, and Tambuté, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 707 (1969); Crandall and Clark, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 325 (1969), *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4236 (1972); Dimmel and Huang, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2756 (1973); Olsson and Claesson, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **30,** 521 (1976).

[389] Veefkind, Schaaf, Bickelhaupt, and Klumpp, *Chem. Commun.* 722 (1971); Kauffmann, Ahlers, Tilhard, and Woltermann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 710 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 760]; Isobe, Kitamura, and Goto, *Chem. Lett.* 331 (1980). See also Raucher and Koolpe, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4252 (1978).

[390] Lehmkuhl and Reinehr, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **25,** C47 (1970); **57,** 29 (1973); Lehmkuhl and Janssen, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1854 (1978).

[391] See, for example, Richey and Rees, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4297 (1966); Richey and Veale, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2641 (1974), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 615 (1975); Drozd, Ustynyuk, Tsel'eva, and Dmitriev, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **39,** 1951 (1969); Felkin, Umpleby, Hagaman, and Wenkert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2285 (1972); Hill and Myers, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **173,** 1 (1979).

[392] Hooz and Layton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 7320 (1971); Schwartz, Carr, Hansen, and Dayrit, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3053 (1980).

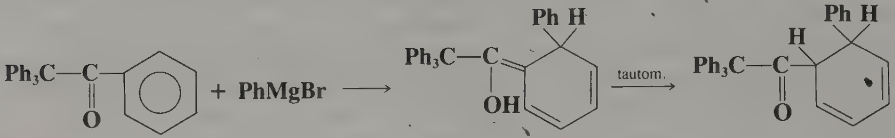
[393] Hooz and Layton, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 2098 (1973). For a similar reaction with an alkenylzirconium reagent, see Schwartz, Loots, and Kosugi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1333 (1980); Dayrit and Schwartz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4466 (1981).

[394] Jeffery, Meisters, and Mole, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **74,** 365 (1974); Bagnell, Meisters, and Mole, *Aust. J. Chem.* **28,** 817 (1975); Ashby and Heinsohn, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3297 (1974). See also Kabalka and Daley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4428 (1973); Sato, Oikawa, and Sato, *Chem. Lett.* 167 (1979).

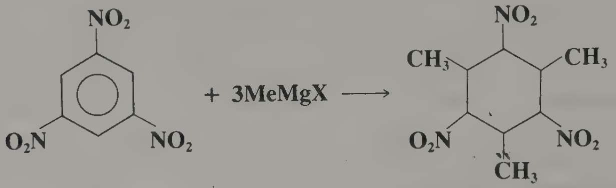
[395] Isobe, Kondo, Nagasawa, and Goto, *Chem. Lett.* 679 (1977).

[395a] Cacchi and Arcadi, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4236 (1983).

In certain cases, Grignard reagents add 1,4 to *aromatic* systems, e.g.,[398]

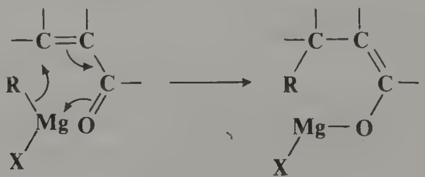


Such cyclohexadienes are easily oxidizable to benzenes (often by atmospheric oxygen), so that this reaction becomes a method of alkylating and arylating suitably substituted (usually hindered) aryl ketones. A similar reaction has been reported for aromatic nitro compounds:[399]



Both Grignard and R_2CuLi reagents[400] have also been added to triple-bond systems of the form C≡C—C═O.[401]

The mechanisms of most of these reactions are not well known. The 1,4 uncatalyzed Grignard reaction has been postulated to proceed by a cyclic mechanism



but there is evidence against it.[402] The R_2CuLi and copper-catalyzed Grignard additions may involve a free-radical mechanism of some type,[403] though the fact that retention of configuration at R has been demonstrated in several cases rules out a completely free R• radical.[404] The addition of R_3Al takes place by a free-radical mechanism.[394]

---

[396] Cacchi, Misiti, and Palmieri, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2941 (1981).

[397] Negishi, Van Horn, Yoshida, and Rand, *Organometallics* **2,** 563 (1983).

[398] This example is from Schmidlin and Wohl, *Ber.* **43,** 1145 (1910), and Mosher and Huber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 4604 (1953). For a review of such reactions, see Fuson, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **1,** 221–238 (1964).

[399] Severin and Schmitz, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 3081 (1963). See also Bartoli, Bosco, and Baccolini, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 522 (1980); Bartoli, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **17,** 109–115 (1984).

[400] For example, see Corey and Katzenellenbogen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1851 (1969); Siddall, Biskup, and Fried, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1853 (1969); Corey, Kim, Chen, and Takeda, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4395 (1972); Anderson, Corbin, Cotterrell, Cox, Henrick, Schaub, and Siddall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1197 (1975).

[401] For a review of the addition of organometallic reagents to conjugated enynes, see Miginiac, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **238,** 235–266 (1982).

[402] House and Thompson, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 360 (1963); Klein, *Tetrahedron* **20,** 465 (1964). See however Marets and Rivière, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4320 (1970).

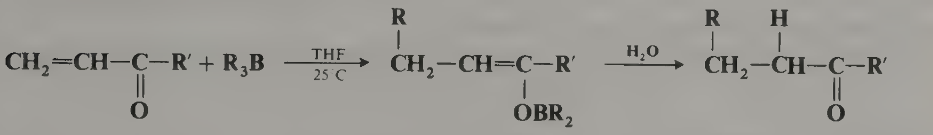
[403] See for example, House and Umen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5495 (1972); Ruden and Litterer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2043 (1975); House and Snoble, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3076 (1976). For other mechanistic investigations, see Berlan, Battioni, and Koosha, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3355 (1976); *J. Organomet. Chem.* **152,** 359 (1978); *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-183 (1979); Four, Riviere, and Tang, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3879 (1977); Casey and Cesa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4236 (1979); Smith and Hannah, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 1183 (1979); *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1081 (1980); Krauss and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 141 (1981); Bartoli, Bosco, Dal Pozzo, and Ciminale, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5227 (1982).

For the addition of organocopper reagents to alkynes and conjugated dienes, see **5-52.**

OS **IV,** 93; **V,** 762; **50,** 38; **52,** 109; **55,** 1; **58,** 158.

5-19 The Addition of Boranes to Activated Double Bonds

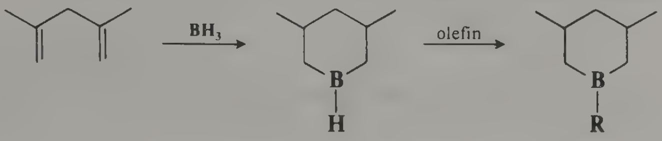
Hydro-alkyl-addition (overall transformation)



$$\mathrm{CH_2{=}CH{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' + R_3B \xrightarrow[25^\circ C]{THF} \overset{\overset{\displaystyle R}{|}}{CH_2}{-}CH{=}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OBR_2}{|}}{C}{-}R' \xrightarrow{H_2O} \overset{\overset{\displaystyle R}{|}}{CH_2}{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{CH}{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'}$$

$R' = H, Me$

Trialkylboranes rapidly add to the double bonds of acrolein, methyl vinyl ketone, and certain of their derivatives in THF at 25°C to give enol borinates, which can be hydrolyzed to aldehydes or ketones.[405] The water may be present from the beginning, so that the reaction can be run in one laboratory step. Since the boranes can be prepared from olefins (**5-13**), this reaction provides a means of lengthening a carbon chain by three or four carbons, respectively. Compounds containing a terminal alkyl group, such as crotonaldehyde $CH_3CH{=}CHCHO$ and 3-penten-2-one, fail to react under these conditions, as does acrylonitrile, but these compounds can be induced to react by the slow and controlled addition of O_2 or by initiation with peroxides or uv light.[406] As in the Michael reaction, the α,β-unsaturated compound can be generated in situ from the corresponding Mannich base (reaction **6-16**).[407] A disadvantage is that only one of the three R groups of R_3B adds to the substrate, so that the other two are wasted. This difficulty is overcome by the use of a B-alkyl borinate such as **61,**[408] which can be prepared as shown. **61** (R = *t*-butyl) can be made by treatment of **61** (R = OMe) with *t*-BuLi. The use of this reagent permits *t*-butyl groups to be added. B-1-Alkenyl-9-BBN compounds B-RCH=CR′-9-BBN (prepared by treatment of alkynes with 9-BBN) add to methyl vinyl ketones to give, after hydrolysis, γ,δ-unsaturated ketones,[409] though B-R-9-BBN, where R = a saturated group, are not useful here, because the R group of these reagents does not preferentially add to the substrate.[408] The corresponding B-1-alkynyl-9-BBN



61

---

[404] Näf and Degen, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 1939 (1971); Whitesides and Kendall, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3718 (1972). See also Ref. 363.

[405] Suzuki, Arase, Matsumoto, Itoh, Brown, Rogić, and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5708 (1967); Köster, Zimmermann, and Fenzl, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1116 (1976). For reviews, see Brown and Midland, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 692–700 (1972), pp. 694–698 [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 702–710]; Kabalka, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **7**(1), 57–64 (1973); Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," Ref. 292, pp. 413–433.

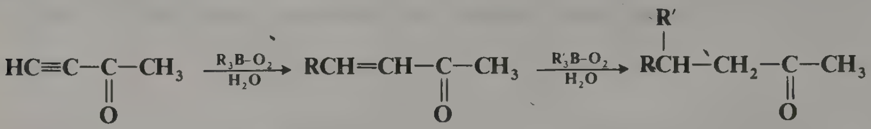
[406] Brown and Kabalka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 712, 714 (1970). See also Utimoto, Tanaka, Furubayashi, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 787 (1973); Miyaura, Kashiwagi, Itoh, and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 395 (1974).

[407] Brown, Rathke, Kabalka, and Rogić, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4166 (1968).

[408] Brown and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3777 (1971).

[409] Jacob and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7832 (1976).

compounds also give the reaction.[410] Like the three substrates mentioned above, 3-butyn-2-one fails to react in the absence of air but undergoes the reaction when exposed to a slow stream of air:[411]



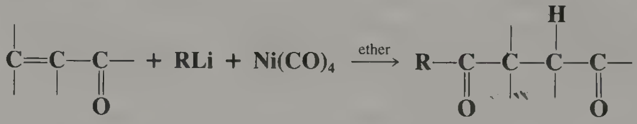
$$HC\equiv C-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_3 \xrightarrow[H_2O]{R_3B-O_2} RCH=CH-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_3 \xrightarrow[H_2O]{R'_3B-O_2} R\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{C}H-CH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_3$$

62

Since the product is an α,β-unsaturated ketone, it can be made to react with another BR_3, the same or different, to produce a wide variety of ketones **62.**

The fact that these reactions are catalyzed by free-radical initiators and inhibited by galvinoxyl[412] (a free-radical inhibitor) indicates that free-radical mechanisms are involved.

5-20 Acylation of Activated Double Bonds and of Triple Bonds
Hydro-acyl-addition

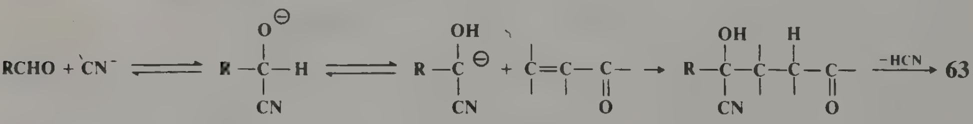


$$\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- + RLi + Ni(CO)_4 \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-$$

63

An acyl group can be introduced into the 4 position of an α,β-unsaturated ketone by treatment with an organolithium compound and nickel carbonyl.[413] The product is a 1,4-diketone. R may be aryl or primary alkyl. The reaction can also be applied to alkynes (which need not be activated), in which case 2 moles add and the product is also a 1,4-diketone, e.g., $R'C\equiv CH \rightarrow RCOCHR'CH_2COR$.[414]

Another method involves treatment with an aldehyde and cyanide ion (see **6-49**) in a polar aprotic solvent such as DMF or Me_2SO.[415]



$$RCHO + CN^- \rightleftharpoons R-\overset{\overset{O^{\ominus}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{C}}-H \rightleftharpoons R-\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{C}}{}^{\ominus} + \overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- \rightarrow R-\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{CN}{|}}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- \xrightarrow{-HCN} 63$$

64

This method has been applied to α,β-unsaturated ketones, esters, and nitriles to give the corresponding 1,4-diketones, γ-keto esters, and γ-keto nitriles, respectively (see also **6-55**). The ion **64** is a synthon for the unavailable $R\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}{=}O$ anion (see also p. 418); it is a masked $R\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}{=}O$ anion. Other masked carbanions that have been used in this reaction are the $EtS\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}RSOEt$ ion[416] (see p.

---

[410] Sinclair, Molander, and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 954 (1977). See also Molander and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3106 (1977).

[411] Suzuki, Nozawa, Itoh, Brown, Kabalka, and Holland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3503 (1970).

[412] Kabalka, Brown, Suzuki, Honma, Arase, and Itoh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 710 (1970). See also Arase, Masuda, and Suzuki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 2275 (1976).

[413] Corey and Hegedus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4926 (1969).

[414] Sawa, Hashimoto, Ryang, and Tsutsumi, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2159 (1968).

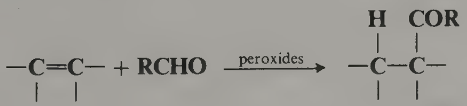
[415] For a review, see Stetter, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 639–647 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 695–704]. For a similar method involving thiazolium salts, see Stetter and Kuhlmann, *Chem. Ber.* **109,** 2890 (1976); Stetter and Mertens, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1550 (1980).

[416] Herrmann, Richman, and Schlessinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3271, 3275 (1973).

422), the $CH_2{=}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}OEt$ ion,[417] $CH_2{=}C(OEt)Cu_2Li$,[418] $CH_2{=}CMe(SiMe_3)$,[418] and the $R\bar{C}^{\ominus}(OCHMeOEt)CN$ ion[419] (see p. 418). In the last case, best results are obtained when R is a vinylic group. Anions of 1,3-dithianes (**0-99**) do not give 1,4 addition to these substrates (except in the presence of HMPT, see **5-18**) but add 1,2 to the C=O group instead (**6-42**).

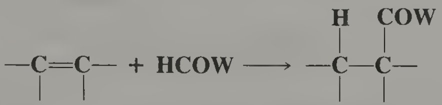
OS **59,** 53.

5-21 Addition of Alcohols, Amines, Esters, Aldehydes, etc.
Hydro-acyl-addition, etc.



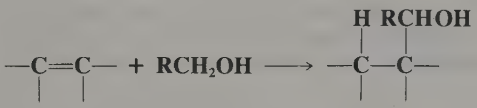
$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + \mathbf{RCHO} \xrightarrow{\text{peroxides}} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{COR}{|}}{C}}-$$

Aldehydes, formates, primary, and secondary alcohols, amines, ethers, alkyl halides, compounds of the type Z—CH_2—Z′, and a few other compounds add to double bonds in the presence of free-radical initiators.[420] This is formally the addition of RH to a double bond, but the "R" is not just any carbon but one connected to an oxygen or a nitrogen, a halogen, or to two Z groups (defined as on p. 412). The addition of aldehydes is illustrated above. Formates and formamides[421] add similarly:



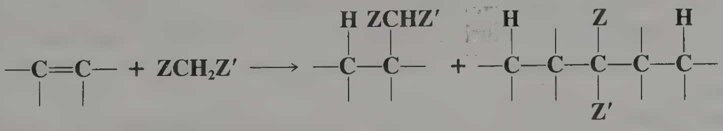
$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + \mathbf{HCOW} \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{COW}{|}}{C}}- \qquad W = OR, NH_2$$

Alcohols, ethers, amines, and alkyl halides add as follows (shown for alcohols):



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + \mathbf{RCH_2OH} \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{RCHOH}{|}}{C}}-$$

ZCH_2Z' compounds react at the carbon bearing the active hydrogen:[422]



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + \mathbf{ZCH_2Z'} \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{ZCHZ'}{|}}{C}}- + -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{Z'}{|}}{\overset{\overset{Z}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-$$

Similar additions have been successfully carried out with carboxylic acids, anhydrides,[423] cyclic ketones,[424] acyl halides, esters, nitriles, and other types of compounds.[425]

---

[417] Boekman, Bruza, Baldwin, and Lever, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 519 (1975).

[418] Boeckman and Bruza, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4781 (1979).

[419] Stork and Maldonado, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5272 (1974).

[420] For reviews, see Vogel, *Synthesis* 99–140 (1970); Huyser, Ref. 41, pp. 152–159; Elad, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **7,** 528–558 (1967); Walling and Huyser, Ref. 41, pp. 108–112, 132–146; Sosnovsky, Ref. 41, pp. 121–152.

[421] Elad, Ref. 420, pp. 530–543.

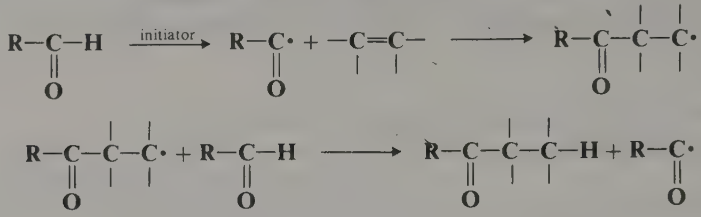
[422] For example, see Cadogan, Hey, and Sharp, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1743 (1966), *J. Chem. Soc. B* 803 (1967); Hájek and Málek, *Coll. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **44,** 3695 (1979).

[423] de Klein, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **94,** 48 (1975).

[424] Hájek and Málek, *Coll. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **41,** 746 (1976).

[425] Allen, Cadogan, and Hey, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1918 (1965); Cadogan, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **15,** 153–165 (1967), pp. 153–158. See also Giese and Zwick, *Chem. Ber.* **115,** 2526 (1982); Giese and Erfort, *Chem. Ber.* **116,** 1240 (1983).

These reactions are not successful when the olefin contains electron-withdrawing groups such as halo or carbonyl groups. A free-radical initiator is required, usually peroxides or uv light. The mechanism is illustrated for aldehydes but is similar for the other compounds:



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}H} \xrightarrow{\text{initiator}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}\cdot} + \mathrm{{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}\cdot}$$

$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}\cdot} + \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}H} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}H} + \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}\cdot}$$

etc.

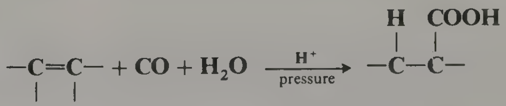
Polymers are often side products.

Similar reactions have been carried out on acetylene.[426]

OS **IV,** 430; **V,** 93; **55,** 57; **58,** 79.

5-22 Hydrocarboxylation

Hydro-carboxy-addition



$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}} + \mathrm{CO} + \mathrm{H_2O} \xrightarrow[\text{pressure}]{\mathrm{H^+}} \mathrm{{-}\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}{-}\overset{\overset{COOH}{|}}{C}{-}}$$

The acid-catalyzed hydrocarboxylation of olefins (the *Koch reaction*) can be performed in a number of ways.[427] In one method, the olefin is treated with carbon monoxide and water at 100 to 350°C and 500 to 1000 atm pressure with a mineral-acid catalyst. However, the reaction can also be performed under milder conditions. If the olefin is first treated with CO and catalyst and then water added, the reaction can be accomplished at 0 to 50°C and 1 to 100 atm. If formic acid is used as the source of both the CO and the water, the reaction can be carried out at room temperature and atmospheric pressure.[428] The formic acid procedure is called the *Koch–Haaf reaction* (the Koch–Haaf reaction can also be applied to alcohols, see **0-105**). Nearly all olefins can be hydrocarboxylated by one or more of these procedures. However, conjugated dienes are polymerized instead. If the olefin contains a functional group such as OH, NH_2, or $CONH_2$, the corresponding lactone (**0-24**), lactam (**0-56**), or cyclic imide may be the product.[429] Cyclic ketones can be produced from 1,5- and 1,6-dienes.

Hydrocarboxylation can also be accomplished under mild conditions (160°C and 50 atm) by the use of nickel carbonyl as catalyst. This is more often applied to triple bonds to give α,β-unsaturated acids, in which cases the conditions are milder still. Acid catalysts are used along with the nickel carbonyl, but basic catalysts may also be employed.[430] Other metallic salts and complexes, e.g., bis(triphenylphosphine)palladium dichloride $(Ph_3P)_2PdCl_2$,[431] have also been used.

---

[426] For example, see Cywinski and Hepp, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3814 (1965); DiPietro and Roberts, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 415 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 388].

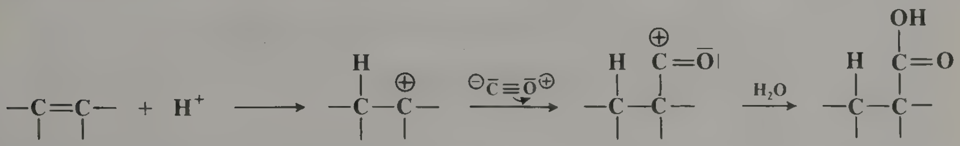
[427] For reviews of hydrocarboxylation of double and triple bonds catalyzed by acids or metallic compounds, see in Falbe, "New Syntheses with Carbon Monoxide," Springer-Verlag, New York, 1980, the articles by Mullen, pp. 243–308, and Bahrmann, pp. 372–413; in Wender and Pino, "Organic Syntheses via Metal Carbonyls," vol. 2, Wiley, New York, 1977, the articles by Pino, Piacenti, and Bianchi, pp. 233–296, and Pino and Braca, pp. 419–516; Eidus, Lapidus, Puzitskii, and Nefedov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **42,** 199–213 (1973); *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 429–440 (1971); Falbe, "Carbon Monoxide in Organic Synthesis," pp. 78–174, Springer-Verlag Berlin, 1970; Bird, Ref. 194, pp. 149–204, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 283–302 (1962); Olah and Olah, in Olah, Ref. 335, vol. 3, pp. 1272–1296 (1964).

[428] Koch and Haaf, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **618,** 251 (1958); Haaf, *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 1149 (1966); Christol and Solladié, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1307 (1966).

[429] For reviews of these ring closures, see Falbe, Ref. 427, pp. 147–174, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 435–446 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 532–544], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **6,** 193–222 (1971).

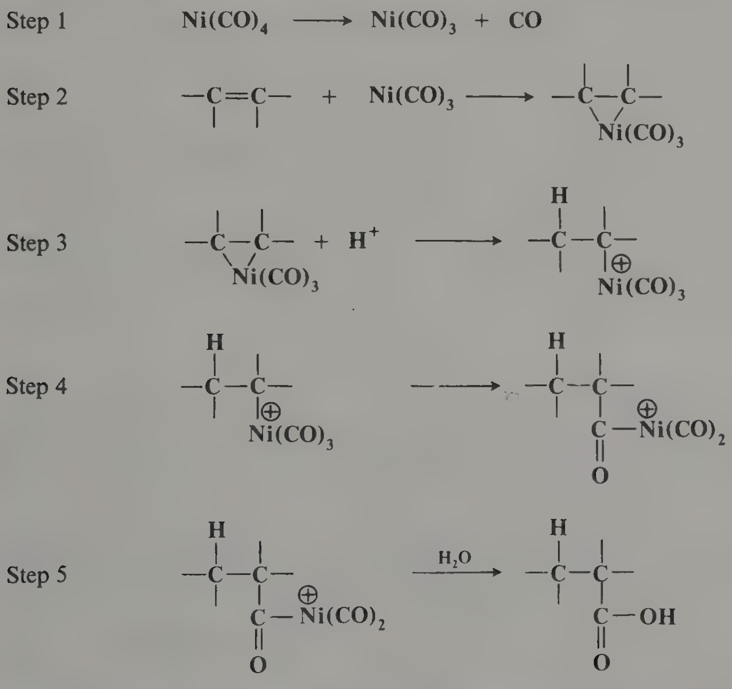
In another method, the palladium chloride complex of the olefin is treated with CO in ethanol at about 100°C.[432] The product in this case is the ethyl ester.

When acid catalysts are employed, in the absence of nickel carbonyl, the mechanism[433] involves initial attack by a proton, followed by attack of the resulting carbocation on carbon monoxide to give an acyl cation, which, with water, gives the product:



Therefore, Markovnikov's rule is followed, and carbon skeleton rearrangements and double-bond isomerizations (prior to attack by CO) are frequent.

For the nickel carbonyl reaction, the addition is syn for both alkenes and alkynes.[434] The following mechanism has been proposed:[434]



---

[430] Sternberg, Markby, and Wender, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3638 (1960).

[431] For a review, see Bittler, Kutepow, Neubauer, and Reis, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 329–335 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **7,** 329–335]. See also Fenton, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3192 (1973); Knifton, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2885 (1976); Alper, Woell, Despeyroux, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1270 (1983); Alper, Despeyroux, and Woell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5691 (1983).

[432] Tsuji, Morikawa, and Kiji, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4851 (1964). For a review, see Tsuji, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 109–255 (1969), pp. 153–159.

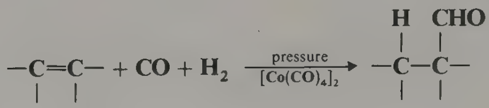
[433] For a review, see Hogeveen, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **10,** 29–52 (1973).

[434] Bird, Cookson, Hudec, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.* 410 (1963).

Step 3 is an electrophilic substitution. The principal step of the mechanism, step 4, is a rearrangement.

In either the acid catalysis or the nickel carbonyl (or other metallic catalyst) method, if alcohols, mercaptans, amines, etc. are used instead of water, the product is the corresponding ester, thiol ester, or amide, instead of the carboxylic acid.

5-23 Hydroformylation
Hydro-formyl-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + CO + H_2 \xrightarrow[{[Co(CO)_4]_2}]{\text{pressure}} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{CHO}{|}}{C}}-$$

Olefins can be hydroformylated[435] by treatment with carbon monoxide and hydrogen over a catalyst that is usually a cobalt carbonyl but may also be a rhodium complex[436] [e.g., hydridocarbonyltris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium] or another transition-metal compound. Commercially, this is called the *oxo process,* but it can be carried out in the laboratory in an ordinary hydrogenation apparatus. The order of reactivity is straight-chain terminal olefins > straight-chain internal olefins > branched-chain olefins. Conjugated dienes give dialdehydes when rhodium catalysts are used[437] but saturated monoaldehydes (the second double bond is reduced) with cobalt carbonyls. Many functional groups, e.g., OH, CHO, COOR, CN, may be present in the molecule, though halogens usually interfere. Hydroformylation of triple bonds proceeds very slowly, and few examples have been reported.[438] Among the side reactions are aldol condensation (**6-40**), acetal formation, the Tishchenko reaction (**9-71**), and polymerization. Stereoselective syn addition has been reported.[439] Asymmetric hydroformylation has been accomplished with a chiral catalyst.[440]

When dicobalt octacarbonyl $[Co(CO)_4]_2$ is the catalyst, the species that actually adds to the double bond is tricarbonylhydrocobalt $HCo(CO)_3$.[441] Carbonylation $RCo(CO)_3 + CO \rightarrow RCo(CO)_4$ takes place, followed by a rearrangement and a reduction of the C—Co bond, similar to steps 4 and 5 of the nickel carbonyl mechanism shown in **5-22.** The reducing agent in the reduction step is tetracarbonylhydrocobalt $HCo(CO)_4$,[442] or possibly under some conditions, H_2. Alcohols can be obtained by allowing the reduction to continue after all the carbon monoxide is used up. It has been shown[443] that the formation of alcohols is a second step, occurring after the formation of aldehydes, and that $HCo(CO)_3$ is the reducing agent.

---

[435] For reviews, see Pino, Piacenti, and Bianchi, in Wender and Pino, Ref. 427, pp. 43–231; Cornils, in Falbe, "New Syntheses with Carbon Monoxide," Ref. 427, pp. 1–225; Collman and Hegedus, Ref. 194, pp. 420–434; Pino, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **200,** 223–242 (1980); Pruett, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **17,** 1–60 (1979); Stille and James, in Patai, Ref. 1, pt. 2, pp. 1099–1166; Heck, Ref. 194, pp. 215–224; Khan and Martell, Ref. 137, vol. 2, pp. 39–60; Falbe, "Carbon Monoxide in Organic Synthesis," Ref. 427, pp. 3–77; Bird, Ref. 194, pp. 117–148; Chalk and Harrod, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **6,** 119–170 (1968).

[436] For example, see Osborn, Wilkinson, and Young, *Chem. Commun.* 17 (1965); Brown and Wilkinson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1725 (1969), *J. Chem. Soc. A* 2753 (1970); Pruett and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 327 (1969); Heil, Markó, and Bor, *Chem. Ber.* **104,** 3418 (1971); Fell and Müller, *Monatsh. Chem.* **103,** 1222 (1972); Stefani, Consiglio, Botteghi, and Pino, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6504 (1973); Arai, Kaneko, and Kunugi, *Chem. Lett.* 265 (1975); Bott, *Chem. Ber.* **108,** 997 (1975); Strohmeier and Kühn, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **110,** 265 (1976); Pittman and Honnick, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2132 (1978); Siegel and Himmele, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 178–183 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 182–187]; van Leeuwen and Roobeek, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **258,** 343 (1983); Salvadori, Vitulli, Raffaelli, and Lazzaroni, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **258,** 351 (1983); Collman, Belmont, and Brauman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7288 (1983).

[437] Fell and Rupilius, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2721 (1969).

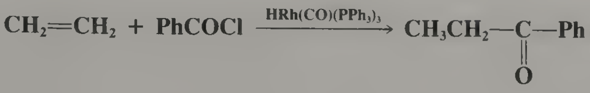
[438] For examples with rhodium catalysts, see Fell and Beutler, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3455 (1972); Botteghi and Salomon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4285 (1974).

[439] See, for example, Haelg, Consiglio, and Pino, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 1865 (1981).

[440] For a review, see Consiglio and Pino, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **105,** 77–123 (1982). See also Consiglio, Pino, Flowers, and Pittman, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 612 (1983).

[441] Heck and Breslow, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 467 (1960), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4023 (1961); Karapinka and Orchin, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 4187 (1961); Clark, Terapane, and Orchin, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2405 (1974); Whyman, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **81,** 97 (1974); Mirbach, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **265,** 205 (1984). For a discussion of the mechanism, see Orchin, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **14,** 259–266 (1981).

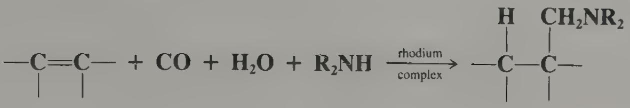
An indirect method for the hydroformylation of olefins involves formation of the trialkylborane (**5-13**) and treatment of this with carbon monoxide and a reducing agent (see **8-28**). *Hydroacylation* of alkenes has been accomplished, in variable yields, by treatment with an acyl halide and a rhodium complex catalyst, e.g.,[444]



$$CH_2{=}CH_2 + PhCOCl \xrightarrow{HRh(CO)(PPh_3)_3} CH_3CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}Ph$$

OS **57**, 11.

5-24 Aminomethylation of Alkenes
Hydro-dialkylaminoalkyl-addition

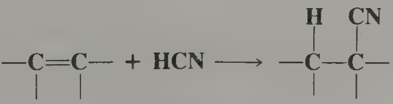


$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + CO + H_2O + R_2NH \xrightarrow[\text{complex}]{\text{rhodium}} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}{-}\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{CH_2NR_2}{|}}{C}}-$$

65

Alkenes react with carbon monoxide, water, and a secondary amine to give the tertiary amines **65.** A catalyst is required; rhodium complexes give the highest yields.[445]

5-25 Addition of HCN
Hydro-cyano-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + HCN \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}{-}\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{CN}{|}}{C}}-$$

Ordinary olefins do not react with HCN, but polyhalo olefins and olefins of the form C=C—Z add HCN to give nitriles.[446] The reaction is therefore a nucleophilic addition and is base-catalyzed.[447] When Z is COR or, more especially, CHO, 1,2 addition (**6-51**) is an important competing reaction and may be the only reaction. Triple bonds react very well when catalyzed by an aqueous solution of CuCl, NH_4Cl, and HCl or by Ni or Pd compounds.[448] One or two moles of HCN may be added to a triple bond, since the initial product is a Michael-type substrate. Acrylonitrile is commercially prepared this way, by the addition of HCN to acetylene. Alkylaluminum cyanides, e.g., Et_2AlCN, or mixtures of HCN and trialkylalanes R_3Al are especially good reagents for conjugate addition of HCN[449] to α,β-unsaturated ketones and α,β-unsaturated acyl halides. HCN may be added to ordinary olefins in the presence of dicobalt octacarbonyl[450] or certain other transition-metal compounds.[451] *t*-Butyl isocyanide and $TiCl_4$ have been used to add HCN to C═C—Z olefins.[452]

---

[442] Alemdaroğlu, Penninger, and Oltay, *Monatsh. Chem.* **107,** 1153 (1976); Ungváry and Markó, *Organometallics* **1,** 1120 (1982).

[443] Aldridge and Jonassen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 886 (1963).

[444] Schwartz and Cannon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4721 (1974). For some other hydroacylation methods, see Cooke and Parlman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5222 (1977); Larock and Bernhardt, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 710 (1978); Suggs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 489 (1979); Isnard, Denise, Sneeden, Cognion, and Durual, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **240,** 285 (1982); Zudin, Il'inich, Likholobov, and Yermakov, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 545 (1984).

[445] Iqbal, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 1440 (1971); Jachimowicz and Raksis, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 445 (1982).

[446] For reviews, see Friedrich, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 41, pt. 2, pp. 1345–1390; Nagata and Yoshioka, *Org. React.* **25,** 255–476 (1977); Brown, in Wender and Pino, Ref. 427, pp. 655–672; Friedrich and Wallenfels, in Rappoport, "The Chemistry of the Cyano Group," pp. 68–72, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[447] For the use of "naked" cyanide in this reaction, see Liotta, Dabdoub, and Zalkow, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1117 (1977).

[448] Jackson and Lovel, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1231 (1982).

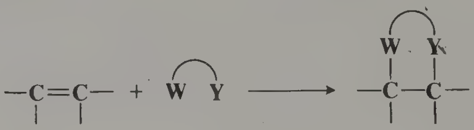
OS **I,** 451; **II,** 498; **III,** 615; **IV,** 392, 393, 804; **V,** 239, 572; **52,** 100.

5-26 Addition of ArH

See **1-13** (Friedel–Crafts alkylation).

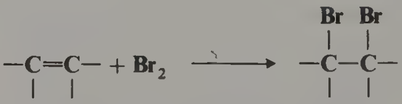
Reactions in Which Hydrogen Adds to Neither Side

Some of these reactions are *cycloadditions* (reactions **5-37, 5-38, 5-42, 5-44,** and **5-46** to **5-51**). In such cases addition to the multiple bond closes a ring:



A. Halogen on One or Both Sides

5-27 Halogenation of Double and Triple Bonds (Addition of Halogen, Halogen) **Dihalo-addition**



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + Br_2 \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{Br}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{Br}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

Most double bonds are easily halogenated with bromine, chlorine, or interhalogen compounds.[453] Iodination has also been accomplished, but the reaction is slower.[454] Under free-radical conditions, iodination proceeds more easily.[455] However, *vic*-diiodides are generally unstable and tend to revert to iodine and the olefin. The order of activity for some of the reagents is $BrCl > ICl > Br_2 > IBr > I_2$.[456] Mixed halogenations have also been achieved by other methods. Mixtures of Br_2 and Cl_2 have been used to give bromochlorination;[457] iodochlorination has been achieved with $CuCl_2$ and either I_2, HI, CdI_2, or other iodine donors;[458] iodofluorination[459] with mixtures of AgF and I_2;[460] and mixtures of N-bromo amides in anhydrous HF give bromofluorination.[461] Bromo-, iodo-, and chlorofluorination have also been achieved by treatment of the substrate with a solution of Br_2, I_2, or an N-chloro-, N-bromo-, or N-iodo amide in polyhydrogen fluoride–pyridine.[462] Under ordinary conditions fluorine itself is too reactive to give simple addition; it attacks other bonds and mixtures are obtained.[463] However, F_2 has been successfully added to certain double bonds in an inert solvent at low temperatures ($-78°C$).[464] Addition of fluorine has also been accomplished with other reagents, e.g., CoF_3;[465] XeF_2;[466] and a mixture of PbO_2 and SF_4.[467]

---

[449] For a review, see Nagata and Yoshioka, Ref. 446.

[450] Arthur, England, Pratt, and Whitman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 5364 (1954).

[451] For a review, see Brown, Ref. 446, pp. 658–667. For studies of the mechanism with nickel complexes, see Jackson and Lovel, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 1975 (1983); Tolman, Seidel, Druliner, and Domaille, *Organometallics* **3,** 33 (1984); Druliner, *Organometallics* **3,** 205 (1984); Bäckvall and Andell, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 260 (1984).

[452] Ito, Kato, Imai, and Saegusa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6449 (1982).

[453] For a monograph, see de la Mare, "Electrophilic Halogenation," Cambridge University Press, London, 1976. For a review, see House, Ref. 128, pp. 422–431.

[454] Sumrell, Wyman, Howell, and Harvey, *Can. J. Chem.* **42,** 2710 (1964); Zanger and Rabinowitz, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 248 (1975).

[455] Skell and Pavlis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2956 (1964); Ayres, Michejda, and Rack, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1389 (1971).

[456] White and Robertson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1509 (1939).

[457] Buckles, Forrester, Burham, and McGee, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 24 (1960).

The reaction with bromine is very rapid and is easily carried out at room temperature. Bromine is often used as a test, qualitative or quantitative, for unsaturation.[468] The vast majority of double bonds can be successfully brominated. Even when aldehyde, ketone, amine, etc., functions are present in the molecule, they do not interfere, since the reaction with double bonds is faster.

Several other reagents add Cl_2 to double bonds, among them NCl_3,[469] SO_2Cl_2,[470] PCl_5,[471] $SbCl_5$,[472] $MoCl_5$,[473] and iodobenzene dichloride $PhICl_2$.[474] A convenient reagent for the addition of Br_2 to a double bond on a small scale is the commercially available pyridinium bromide perbromide $C_5H_5NH^+ Br_3^-$.[475] Br_2 or Cl_2 can also be added with $CuBr_2$ or $CuCl_2$ in the presence of a compound such as acetonitrile, methanol, or triphenylphosphine.[476]

The mechanism is usually electrophilic (see p. 660), but when free-radical initiators (or uv light) are present, then addition may occur by a free-radical mechanism.[477] Once Br• or Cl• radicals are formed, however, substitution may compete (**4-1** and **4-2**). This is especially important when the olefin has allylic hydrogens. Under free-radical conditions (uv light) bromine or chlorine adds to the benzene ring to give, respectively, hexabromo- and hexachlorocyclohexane. These are mixtures of stereoisomers (see p. 113).[478]

---

[458] Baird, Surridge, and Buza, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2088, 3324 (1971).

[459] For a review of mixed halogenations where one side is fluorine, see Sharts and Sheppard, *Org. React.* **21,** 125–406 (1974), pp. 137–157.

[460] Hall and Jones, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 2902 (1973); see also Zupan and Pollak, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2179 (1976); *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1745 (1976); Rozen and Brand, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4543 (1980).

[461] Robinson, Finckenor, Oliveto, and Gould, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2191 (1959); Bowers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4107 (1959); Pattison, Peters, and Dean, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 1689 (1965). See also Míčková, Moural, and Schwarz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1315 (1978).

[462] Olah, Nojima, and Kerekes, *Synthesis* 780 (1973); Ref. 118.

[463] See, for example, Fuller, Stacey, Tatlow, and Thomas, *Tetrahedron* **18,** 123 (1962).

[464] Merritt and Stevens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1822 (1966); Merritt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 609 (1967); Barton, Lister-James, Hesse, Pechet, and Rozen, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1105 (1982).

[465] Rausch, Davis, and Osborne, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 494 (1963).

[466] Zupan and Pollak, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2646 (1974), **41,** 4002 (1976), **42,** 1559 (1977), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1015 (1974); Gregorčič and Zupan, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1255 (1979); Shackelford, McGuire, and Pflug, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 363 (1977); Shackelford, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3485 (1979); Filler, *Isr. J. Chem.* **17,** 71–79 (1978). For a review of fluorination with xenon fluorides, see Zupan, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement D," pt. 1, pp. 657–679, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[467] Bissell and Fields, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 1591 (1964).

[468] For a review of this, see Kuchar, in Patai, Ref. 32, pp. 273–280.

[469] Field and Kovacic, *Synthesis* 135 (1969); Strand and Kovacic, *Synth. Commun.* **2,** 129 (1972).

[470] Kharasch and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61,** 3432 (1939).

[471] Spiegler and Tinker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61,** 940 (1939).

[472] Uemura, Onoe, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 692 (1974); Heasley, Rold, Titterington, Leach, Gipe, McKee, and Heasley, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3997 (1976).

[473] Uemura, Onoe, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 3121 (1974); San Filippo, Sowinski, and Romano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1599 (1975). See also Nugent, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3427 (1978).

[474] See, for example, Tanner and Gidley, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 38 (1968); Masson and Thuillier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4368 (1969); Lasne and Thuillier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 249 (1974).

[475] Fieser and Fieser, "Reagents for Organic Synthesis," vol. 1, pp. 967–970, Wiley, New York, 1967.

[476] Koyano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 1439, 3501 (1970); Koyano and Watanabe, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 1378 (1971); Uemura, Tabata, Kimura, and Ichikawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 1973 (1971); Or, Levy, Asscher, and Vofsi, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 857 (1974); Uemura, Okazaki, Onoe, and Okano, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 676 (1977); Ref. 458. See also Arganbright and Yates, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 1205 (1962).

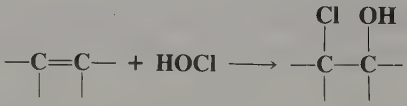
[477] For example, see Poutsma, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2161, 2172 (1965), *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 4167 (1966); Dessau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1344 (1979).

Conjugated systems give both 1,2 and 1,4 addition.[478] Triple bonds add bromine, although generally more slowly than double bonds (see p. 671). Molecules that contain both double and triple bonds are preferentially attacked at the double bond. Two moles of bromine may be added to triple bonds to give tetrabromo products. There is evidence that the addition of the first mole of bromine to a triple bond may take place by a nucleophilic mechanism.[479] With allenes it is very easy to stop the reaction after only 1 mole has added, to give X—C—CX=C.[480] In most cases a second mole of halogen can be added only by forced treatment. Addition of halogen to ketenes gives α-halo acyl halides, but the yields are not good.

OS **I,** 205, 521; **II,** 171, 177, 270, 408; **III,** 105, 123, 127, 209, 350, 526, 531, 731, 785; **IV,** 130, 195, 748, 851, 969; **V,** 136, 370, 403, 467, 921; **50,** 36; **55,** 32, 62, 86; **59,** 10.

5-28 Addition of Hypohalous Acids and Hypohalites (Addition of Halogen, Oxygen)

Hydroxy-chloro-addition, etc.[481]



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + \text{HOCl} \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\text{Cl}}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\text{OH}}{|}}{C}}-$$

HOCl, HOBr, and HOI can be added to olefins to produce halohydrins.[482] HOBr and HOCl are often generated in situ by the reaction between water and Br_2 or Cl_2, respectively. HOI, generated from I_2 and H_2O, also adds to double bonds, if the reaction is carried out in tetramethylene sulfone–$CHCl_3$[483] or if an oxidizing agent such as HIO_3 is present.[484] HOF has also been added, but this reagent is difficult to prepare in a pure state and detonations occur.[485] HOBr can also be conveniently added by the use of a reagent consisting of an N-bromo amide [e.g., N-bromosuccinimide (NBS) or N-bromoacetamide] and a small amount of water in a solvent such as dimethyl sulfoxide or dioxane.[486] Chlorohydrins can be conveniently prepared by treatment of the alkene with Chloramine T ($TsNCl^- \ Na^+$)[487] in acetone–water.[487a]

The mechanism of HOX addition is electrophilic, with initial attack by the positive halogen end of the HOX dipole. Following Markovnikov's rule, the positive halogen goes to the side of the double bond that has more hydrogens. The resulting carbocation (or bromonium or iodonium ion) reacts with OH^- or H_2O to give the product. If the substrate is treated with Br_2 or Cl_2 (or another source of positive halogen such as NBS or BrN_3[488]) in an alcohol or a carboxylic acid solvent, it is possible to obtain, directly, $X-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-OR$ or $X-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-OCOR$, respectively (see also **5-36**). Even the weak nucleophile $CF_3SO_2O^-$ can participate in the second step: The addition of Cl_2 or Br_2 to olefins in the presence of this ion resulted in the formation of some β-haloalkyl triflates.[489] There is evidence that the mechanism with Cl_2 and H_2O is different from that with HOCl.[490] HOCl and HOBr can be added to triple bonds to give dihalo carbonyl compounds —CX_2—CO—.

---

[478] For a review, see Cais, in Patai, Ref. 32, pp. 993–999.

[479] Sinn, Hopperdietzel, and Sauermann, *Monatsh. Chem.* **96,** 1036 (1965).

[480] However, formation of side products may be extensive. See, for example, Poutsma, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 4080 (1968).

[481] Addends are listed in order of priority in the Cahn–Ingold–Prelog system (p. 96).

[482] For a review, see Boguslavskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 740–749 (1972).

[483] Cambie, Noall, Potter, Rutledge, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 226 (1977).

[484] See for example, Cornforth and Green, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 846 (1970); Furrow, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **14,** 927 (1982); Antonioletti, D'Auria, De Mico, Piancatelli, and Scettri, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 1765 (1983).

[485] Migliorese, Appelman, and Tsangaris, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1711 (1979).

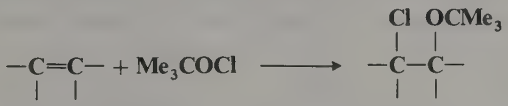
[486] For examples, see Dalton, Hendrickson, and Jones, *Chem. Commun.* 591 (1966); Dalton and Dutta, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 85 (1971); Sisti, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2670 (1970).

[487] For a review of this reagent, see Campbell and Johnson, *Chem. Rev.* **78,** 65–79 (1978).

[487a] Damin, Garapon, and Sillion, *Synthesis* 362 (1981).

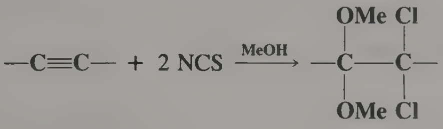
[488] Boerwinkle and Hassner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3921 (1968).

t-Butyl hypochlorite, hypobromite, and hypoiodite[491] add to double bonds to give *t*-butyl ethers, e.g.,



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + Me_3COCl \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{Cl}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\overset{OCMe_3}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-$$

This is a convenient method for the preparation of tertiary ethers. When Me_3COCl or Me_3COBr is added to olefins in the presence of excess ROH, the ether produced is $X-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-OR$.[492] Vinyl ethers give β-halo acetals.[493] Two moles of "MeOCl" can be added to triple bonds by treatment with N-chlorosuccinimide in methanol.[494]



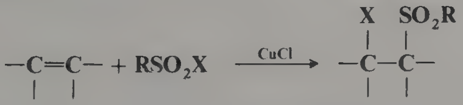
$$-C\equiv C- + 2\ NCS \xrightarrow{MeOH} -\overset{\overset{OMe}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OMe}{|}}{C}}-\overset{\overset{Cl}{|}}{\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{C}}-$$

These acetals can then be hydrolyzed to α,α-dichloro ketones. Chlorine acetate [solutions of which are prepared by treating Cl_2 with $Hg(OAc)_2$ in an appropriate solvent] adds to olefins to give acetoxy chlorides.[495] The latter are also produced by treatment of olefins with a mixture of $PdCl_2$ and $CuCl_2$ in acetic acid[496] or with chromyl chloride CrO_2Cl_2 in acetyl chloride.[497]

For a method of iodoacetyl addition, see **5-36.**

OS **I,** 158; **IV,** 130, 157; **56,** 112; **57,** 41; **59,** 16.

5-29 Addition of Sulfur Compounds (Addition of Halogen Sulfur)
Alkylsulfonyl-chloro-addition, etc.[498]



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + RSO_2X \xrightarrow{CuCl} -\overset{\overset{X}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\overset{SO_2R}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-$$

[489] Zefirov, Koz'min, Sorokin, and Zhdankin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 1546 (1982).

[490] Buss, Rockstuhl, and Schnurpfeil, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **324,** 197 (1982).

[491] Glover and Goosen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2005 (1980).

[492] Bresson, Dauphin, Geneste, Kergomard, and Lacourt, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2432 (1970), 1080 (1971).

[493] Weissermel and Lederer, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 77 (1963).

[494] Reed, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2195 (1965).

[495] de la Mare, Wilson, and Rosser, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1480 (1973); de la Mare, O'Connor, and Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1150 (1975). For the addition of bromine acetate, see Wilson and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 141 (1976).

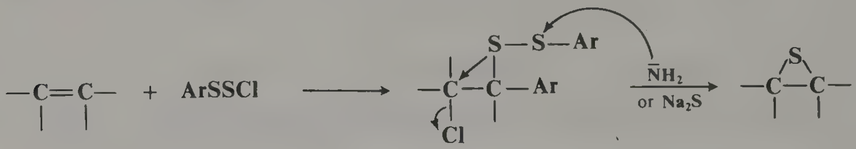
[496] Henry, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2575 (1967), **38,** 1681 (1973). See also Bäckvall, Nordberg, and Nyström, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1617 (1982).

[497] Bäckvall, Young, and Sharpless, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3523 (1977).

[498] When a general group (such as halo) is used, its priority is that of the lowest member of its group (see footnote 481). Thus the general name for this transformation is halo-alkylsulfonyl-addition, because "halo" has the same priority as "fluoro," its lowest member.

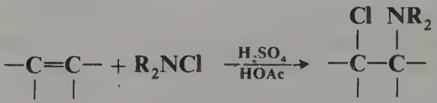
Sulfonyl halides add to double bonds, to give β-halo sulfones, in the presence of free-radical initiators. A particularly good catalyst is cuprous chloride.[499] Triple bonds behave similarly, to give β-halo-α,β-unsaturated sulfones.[500] In a similar reaction, sulfenyl chlorides, RSCl, give β-halo thioethers, $\mathrm{Cl{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}SR}$.[501] The latter may be free-radical or electrophilic additions, depending on conditions. Other sulfur compounds also add to double bonds by free-radical mechanisms.[502] β-Iodo thiocyanates can be prepared from alkenes by treatment with I_2 and KSCN.[503] Bromothiocyanation can be accomplished with Br_2 and thallium(I) thiocyanate.[504]

β-Halo disulfides, formed by addition of arenethiosulfenyl chlorides to double-bond compounds, are easily converted to thiiranes by treatment with sodium amide or sodium sulfide.[505]



The overall episufidation is a stereospecific syn addition.

5-30 Addition of Halogen and an Amino Group (Addition of Halogen, Nitrogen)
Dialkylamino-chloro-addition



$$\mathrm{-\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}- + R_2NCl \xrightarrow[HOAc]{H_2SO_4} -\overset{\overset{Cl}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\overset{NR_2}{|}}{\underset{|}{C}}-}$$

The groups R_2N and Cl can be added directly to olefins, allenes, conjugated dienes, and alkynes, by treatment with dialkyl-N-chloroamines and acids.[506] These are free-radical additions, with initial attack by the $R_2NH\cdot^+$ radical ion.[507] N-Halo amides RCONHX add RCONH and X to double bonds under the influence of uv light or chromous chloride.[508] For an indirect way of adding NH_2 and I to a double bond, see reaction **5-33.**

---

[499] Asscher and Vofsi, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4962 (1964); Truce, Goralski, Christensen, and Bavry, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 4217 (1970); Sinnreich and Asscher, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1543 (1972).

[500] Truce and Wolf, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1727 (1971); Amiel, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3691, 3697 (1971), **39,** 3867 (1974); Zakharkin and Zhigareva, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **9,** 918 (1973); Okuyama, Izawa, and Fueno, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 351 (1974).

[501] For reviews, see Rasteikiene, Greiciute, Lin'kova, and Knunyants, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 548–564 (1977); Kühle, *Synthesis* 563–586 (1971).

[502] For reviews, see Stacey and Harris, *Org. React.* **13,** 150–376 (1963), pp. 200–207, 327–332; Sosnovsky, Ref. 41, pp. 103–115.

[503] Cambie, Chambers, Rutledge, Woodgate, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 33 (1981), and references cited therein. See also Watanabe, Uemura, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 2458 (1983).

[504] Cambie, Larsen, Rutledge, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 58 (1981).

[505] Fujisawa and Kobori, *Chem. Lett.* 935 (1972).

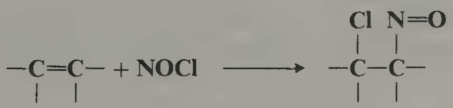
[506] Neale and Hinman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2666 (1963); Neale and Marcus, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3273 (1967); Minisci, Galli, and Cecere, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3163 (1966). See also Scholz and Viehe, *Chimia* **29,** 512 (1975). For reviews, see Neale, *Synthesis* 1–15 (1971); Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **4,** 203–284 (1972), pp. 238–249.

[507] For a review of these species, see Chow, Danen, Nelson, and Rosenblatt, *Chem. Rev.* **78,** 243–274 (1978).

[508] Mondon and Lessard, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 2590 (1978), and references cited therein.

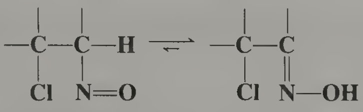
5-31 Addition of NOX and NO_2X (Addition of Halogen, Nitrogen)

Nitroso-chloro-addition



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- + \text{NOCl} \longrightarrow -\overset{\text{Cl}}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\overset{\text{N=O}}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

There are three possible products when NOCl is added to olefins.[509] The initial product is always the β-halo nitroso compound, but these are stable only if the carbon bearing the nitrogen has no hydrogen. If it has, the nitroso compound tautomerizes to the oxime:



$$-\underset{\text{Cl}}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{\text{N=O}}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\text{H} \rightleftharpoons -\underset{\text{Cl}}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{\text{N—OH}}{\underset{\|}{\overset{|}{C}}}$$

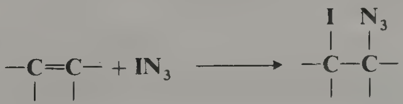
With some olefins, the initial β-halo nitroso compound is oxidized by the NOCl to a β-halo nitro compound.[510] Many functional groups can be present without interference, e.g., COOH, COOR, CN, OR. The mechanism in most cases is probably simple electrophilic addition, and the addition is usually anti, although syn addition has been reported in some cases.[511] Markovnikov's rule is followed, the positive NO going to the carbon that has more hydrogens.

Nitryl chloride NO_2Cl also adds to olefins, to give β-halo nitro compounds, but this is a free-radical process. The NO_2 goes to the less-substituted carbon.[512] Nitryl chloride also adds to triple bonds to give the expected 1-nitro-2-chloro olefins.[513] FNO_2 can be added to olefins[514] by treatment with HF in HNO_3[515] or by addition of the olefin to a solution of nitronium tetrafluoroborate NO_2^+ BF_4^- (see **1-2**) in 70% polyhydrogen fluoride–pyridine solution[516] (see also **5-27**).

OS **IV,** 711; **V,** 266, 863; **56,** 65.

5-32 Addition of XN_3 (Addition of Halogen, Nitrogen)

Azido-iodo-addition



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- + IN_3 \longrightarrow -\overset{\text{I}}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\overset{N_3}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

The addition of iodine azide to double bonds gives β-iodo azides.[517] The addition is stereospecific and anti, suggesting that the mechanism involves a cyclic iodonium ion intermediate (see p. 661).[518] The reaction has been performed on many double-bond compounds, including α,β-unsaturated ketones. Similar reactions can be performed with BrN_3 and ClN_3. 1,4 addition has been found with acylic conjugated dienes.[519] In the case of BrN_3 both electrophilic and free-radical mechanisms are important,[520] while with ClN_3 the additions are chiefly free-radical.[521] IN_3 also adds to triple bonds to give β-iodo-α,β-unsaturated azides.[522]

---

[509] For reviews, see Kadzyauskas and Zefirov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 543–550 (1968); Sosnovsky, Ref. 41, pp. 247–251, 272–275.

[510] For a review of the preparation of halo nitro compounds, see Shvekhgeimer, Smirnyagin, Sadykov, and Novikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 351–363 (1968).

[511] For example, see Meinwald, Meinwald, and Baker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4074 (1964).

[512] Shechter, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **25,** 55–76 (1964).

[513] Schlubach and Braun, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **627,** 28 (1959).

[514] For a review, see Sharts and Sheppard, *Org. React.* **21,** 125–406 (1974), pp. 236–243.

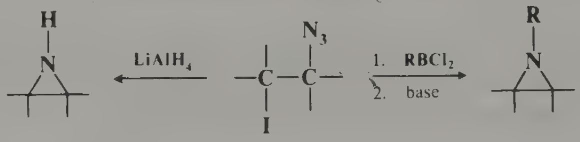
[515] Knunyants, German, and Rozhkov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1794,(1963).

[516] Olah and Nojima, *Synthesis* 785 (1973).

[517] For reviews, see Dehnicke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 507–514 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 527–534]; Hassner, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 9–16 (1971); Biffin, Miller, and Paul, Ref. 185, pp. 136–147.

[518] See however Cambie, Hayward, Rutledge, Smith-Palmer, Swedlund, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 180 (1979).

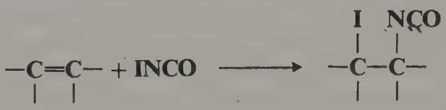
β-iodo azides can be reduced to aziridines with $LiAlH_4$[523] or converted to N-alkyl- or N-arylaziridines by treatment with an alkyl- or aryldichloroborane followed by a base.[524] In both cases



the azide is first reduced to the corresponding amine (primary or secondary, respectively) and ring closure (reaction **0-45**) follows.

OS **57,** 83.

5-33 Addition of INCO (Addition of Halogen, Nitrogen)
Isocyanato-iodo-addition

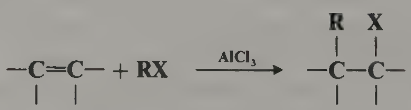


$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- + \text{INCO} \longrightarrow -\overset{\text{I}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\overset{\text{NCO}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-$$

In a reaction similar to **5-32,** iodine isocyanate adds to double bonds to give β-iodo isocyanates.[525] The addition is stereospecific and anti; the mechanism similar to that shown in **5-32.** The reaction has been applied to mono-, di-, and some trisubstituted olefins. The orientation generally follows Markovnikov's rule, the positive iodine adding to the less highly substituted side. α,β-Unsaturated carbonyl compounds do not react. Triple bonds give β-iodo-α,β-unsaturated isocyanates in low yields.[526] Allenes add 1 mole of INCO to give β-iodo-β,γ-unsaturated isocyanates.[527] Since an isocyanate group can be hydrolyzed to an amino group ($RNCO \rightarrow RNH_2$, **6-3**), the method is an indirect way of adding H_2N and I to double bonds.

OS **51,** 112.

5-34 Addition of Alkyl Halides (Addition of Halogen, Carbon)
Alkyl-halo-addition[498]



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- + \text{RX} \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} -\overset{\text{R}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\overset{\text{X}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-$$

---

[519] Hassner and Keogh, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1575 (1975).

[520] Hassner and Boerwinkle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 217 (1968); Hassner and Teeter, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2176 (1971).

[521] Even IN_3 can be induced to add by a free-radical mechanism [see for example, Cambie, Jurina, Rutledge, Swedlund, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 327 (1982)]. For a review of free-radical additions of XN_3, see Hassner, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **4,** 109–114 (1970).

[522] Hassner, Isbister, and Friederang, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2939 (1969).

[523] Hassner, Matthews, and Fowler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5046 (1969).

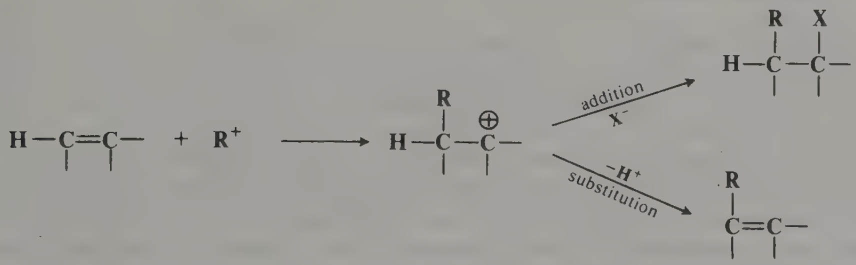
[524] Levy and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4067 (1973).

[525] Heathcock and Hassner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 213 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 344]; Birckenbach and Linhard, *Ber.* **64B,** 961, 1076 (1931); Drehfahl and Ponsold, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 519 (1960); Hassner, Hoblitt, Heathcock, Kropp, and Lorber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1326 (1970); Gebelein, Rosen, and Swern, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1677 (1969); Gebelein, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 57 (1970); Cambie, Hume, Rutledge, and Woodgate, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 2569 (1983).

[526] Grimwood and Swern, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3665 (1967).

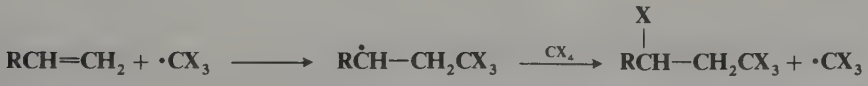
[527] Greibrokk, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **27,** 3368 (1973).

Alkyl halides can be added to olefins in the presence of a Friedel–Crafts catalyst, most often $AlCl_3$.[528] The yields are best for tertiary R. Secondary R can also be used, but primary R give rearrangement products (as with **1-13**). Methyl and ethyl halides, which cannot rearrange, give no reaction at all. The attacking species is the carbocation formed from the alkyl halide and the catalyst (see **1-13**). The addition therefore follows Markovnikov's rule, with the cation going to the carbon with more hydrogens. Substitution is a side reaction, arising from loss of hydrogen from the carbocation formed when the original carbocation attacks the double bond:



Conjugated dienes can add 1,4.[529] Triple bonds also undergo the reaction, to give vinyl halides.[530]

CCl_4, $BrCCl_3$, ICF_3, and similar simple polyhalo alkanes add to olefins in good yield.[531] These are free-radical additions and require initiation by peroxides, metal halides (e.g., $FeCl_2$, CuCl),[532] dichlorotris(triphenylphosphine)ruthenium(II),[533] or uv light. The initial attack is by the carbon, and it goes to the carbon with more hydrogens, as in most free-radical attack:



$$\mathrm{RCH{=}CH_2 + \cdot CX_3 \longrightarrow R\dot{C}H{-}CH_2CX_3 \xrightarrow{CX_4} R\overset{X}{\overset{|}{C}}H{-}CH_2CX_3 + \cdot CX_3}$$

This type of polyhalo alkane adds to halogenated olefins in the presence of $AlCl_3$ by an electrophilic mechanism. This is called the *Prins reaction* (not to be confused with the other Prins reaction, **6-53**).[534]

ArX can be added across double bonds, in a free-radical process, by treatment of olefins with diazonium salts, though Meerwein arylation (substitution) (**4-17**) competes.[535] This addition may be either 1,2 or 1,4 with conjugated dienes.[536] Addition of ArX can also be accomplished by treatment with an arylmercury halide ArHgX in the presence of CuX_2, LiX, and a palladium compound catalyst, usually Li_2PdCl_4.[537] In this case also, substitution (**4-18**) is a side reaction. Yields of addition product are increased by increasing the concentration of CuX_2. Palladium compounds also catalyze the addition of allylic halides to alkynes.[538]

---

[528] For a review, see Schmerling, in Olah, Ref. 335, vol. 2, pp. 1133–1174. See also Mayr and Striepe, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1159 (1983).

[529] Kolyaskina and Petrov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 1067 (1962).

[530] See, for example, Maroni, Melloni, and Modena, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2491 (1973), 353 (1974); Marcuzzi and Melloni, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **105,** 495 (1975).

[531] For reviews, see Freidlina and Velichko, *Synthesis* 145–154 (1977); Freidlina and Chukovskaya, *Synthesis* 477–488 (1974); Walling and Huyser, *Org. React.* **13,** 91–149 (1963), pp. 107–108, 122-131; Huyser, Ref. 41, pp. 148–151; Sosnovsky, Ref. 41, pp. 19–61.

[532] For example, see Asscher and Vofsi, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1887, 3921 (1963), *J. Chem. Soc. B* 947 (1968); Murai and Tsutsumi, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3000 (1966). For the addition of CH_2Cl_2 and PhBr, see Mitani, Nakayama, and Koyama, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4457 (1980).

[533] Matsumoto, Nakano, Takasu, and Nagai, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1734 (1978); Nakano, Shimada, Sako, Kayama, Matsumoto, and Nagai, *Chem. Lett.* 1255 (1982).

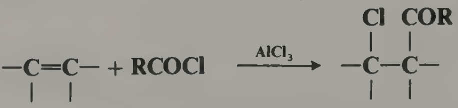
[534] For a review with respect to fluoroolefins, see Paleta, *Fluorine Chem. Rev.* **8,** 39–71 (1977).

[535] For example, see Iurkevich, Dombrovskii, and Terent'ev, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **28,** 226 (1958); Fedorov, Pribytkova, Kanishchev, and Dombrovskii, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **9,** 1517 (1973); Cleland, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 3362 (1961), **34,** 744 (1969); Doyle, Siegfried, Elliott, and Dellaria, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2431 (1977).

[536] For example, see Dombrovskii and Ganushchak, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **31,** 1191 (1961), **32,** 1867 (1962); Ganushchak, Golik, and Migaichuk, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **8,** 2403 (1972).

OS **II,** 312; **IV,** 727; **V,** 1076; **51,** 1.

5-35 Addition of Acyl Halides (Addition of Halogen, Carbon)
Acyl-halo-addition



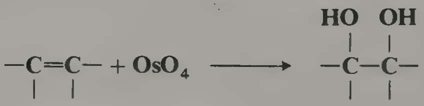
$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + RCOCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} -\underset{|}{\overset{Cl}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{COR}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

Acyl halides have been added to many olefins, in the presence of Friedel–Crafts catalysts. The reaction has been applied to straight-chain, branched, and cyclic olefins, but to very few containing functional groups, except halogen.[539] The mechanism is similar to that of **5-34,** and, as in that case, substitution competes (**2-14**). Increasing temperature favors substitution,[540] and good yields of addition products can be achieved if the temperature is kept under 0°C. The reaction usually fails with conjugated dienes, since polymerization predominates. The reaction can be performed on triple-bond compounds, producing compounds of the form $RCO-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-Cl$.[541] A *formyl* group and a halogen can be added to triple bonds by treatment with N,N-disubstituted formamides and $POCl_3$ (Vilsmeier conditions, see **1-16**).[542]

OS **IV,** 186; **51,** 115.

B. Oxygen or Nitrogen on One or Both Sides

5-36 Hydroxylation (Addition of Oxygen, Oxygen)
Dihydroxy-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + OsO_4 \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{HO}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{|}{\overset{OH}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

There are many reagents that add two OH groups to a double bond.[543] OsO_4[544] and alkaline $KMnO_4$ give syn addition, from the less-hindered side of the double bond.[545] Osmium tetroxide adds rather slowly but almost quantitatively. The cyclic ester **66** is an intermediate and can be isolated, but is usually decomposed in solution, with sodium sulfite in ethanol or other reagents. Bases catalyze the reaction by coordinating with the ester. The chief drawback to this reaction is that OsO_4 is expensive and highly toxic, so that its use has been limited to small-scale preparations of scarce materials. However, the same result (syn addition) can be accomplished more economically by the use of H_2O_2, with OsO_4 present in catalytic amounts.[546] *t*-Butyl hydroperoxide in alkaline solution[547] and N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide[548] have been substituted for H_2O_2 in this procedure.

---

[537] Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5538 (1968).

[538] Kaneda, Uchiyama, Fujiwara, Imanaka, and Teranishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 55 (1979).

[539] For reviews, see Groves, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **1,** 73–97 (1972); House, Ref. 128, pp. 786–797; Nenitzescu and Balaban, in Olah, Ref. 335, vol. 3, pp. 1033–1152 (1964).

[540] Jones, Taylor, and Rudd, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1342 (1961).

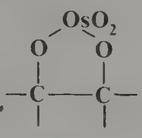
[541] For example, see Nifant'ev, Grachev, Bakinovskii, Kara-Murza, and Kochetkov, *J. Appl. Chem. USSR* **36,** 646 (1963); Savenkov, Khokhlov, Nazarova, and Mochalkin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **9,** 914 (1973); Martens, Janssens, and Hoornaert, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 177 (1975).

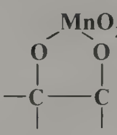
[542] Yen, *Ann. Chim. (Paris)* [13] **7,** 785 (1962).

[543] For reviews, see Sheldon and Kochi, "Metal-Catalyzed Oxidations of Organic Compounds," pp. 162–171, 294–296, Academic Press, New York, 1981; Gunstone, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **1,** 103–147 (1960).

[544] For a review, see Schröder, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 187–213 (1980). OsO_4 was first used for this purpose by Criegee, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **522,** 75 (1936).

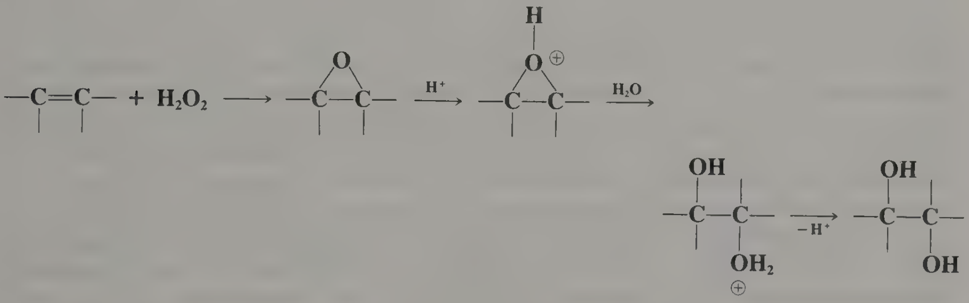
[545] For diastereoselective addition of OsO_4 to allylic alcohols and α,β-unsaturated esters, see, respectively, Cha, Christ, and Kishi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3943, 3947 (1983); Stork and Kahn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3951 (1983).


66


67

Potassium permanganate is a strong oxidizing agent and can oxidize the glycols[549] that are the products of this reaction (see **9-7** and **9-10**). In acid and neutral solution it always does so; hence it is not feasible to prepare glycols in this manner. Glycols can be prepared with alkaline permanganate, but the conditions must be mild. Even so, yields are seldom above 50%, though they can be improved with phase transfer catalysis[550] or increased stirring.[550a] As with OsO_4, it is likely that cyclic esters (**67**) are intermediates; species believed to be such intermediates have been detected spectrally.[551] This reaction is the basis of the *Baeyer test* for the presence of double bonds.

Anti hydroxylation can be achieved by treatment with H_2O_2 and formic acid. In this case, epoxidation (**5-37**) occurs first, followed by an SN2 reaction, which results in overall anti addition:



The same result can be achieved in one step with monopersuccinic acid.[552] Overall anti addition can also be achieved by the method of Prevost. In this method the olefin is treated with iodine and silver benzoate in a 1:2 molar ratio. The initial addition is anti and results in a β-halo benzoate (**68**). These can be isolated, and this represents a method of addition of IOCOPh. However, under the normal reaction conditions, the iodine is replaced by a second PhCOO group. This is a nucleophilic substitution reaction, and it operates by the neighboring-group mechanism (p. 268), so that the groups are still anti:

---

[546] Milas and Sussman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **58,** 1302 (1936), **59,** 2345 (1937). For a review, see Rylander, Ref. 194, pp. 121–133.

[547] Akashi, Palermo, and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2063 (1978).

[548] VanRheenen, Kelly, and Cha, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1973 (1976). See also Ray and Matteson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 449 (1980).

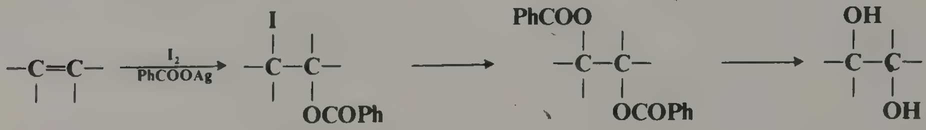
[549] Or give more-highly-oxidized products, such as α-hydroxy ketones, without going through the glycols. See for example, Wolfe, Ingold, and Lemieux, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 938 (1981); Wolfe and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 940 (1981).

[550] See for example, Weber and Shepherd, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4907 (1972); Ogino and Mochizuki, *Chem. Lett.* 443 (1979).

[550a] Taylor, Williams, Edwards, Otonnaa, and Samanich, *Can. J. Chem.* **62,** 11 (1984).

[551] Lee and Brownridge, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3033 (1973), **96,** 5517 (1974); Wiberg, Deutsch and Roček, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3034 (1973); Simándi and Jáky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1995 (1976); Ogino, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 177 (1980); Lee and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5076 (1982).

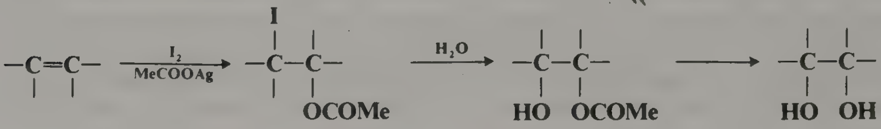
[552] Lombard and Schroeder, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2800 (1963).



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow[\text{PhCOOAg}]{I_2} -\overset{I}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{OCOPh}{C}}- \longrightarrow -\overset{PhCOO}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{OCOPh}{C}}- \longrightarrow -\overset{OH}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{OH}{C}}-$$

68

Hydrolysis of the ester does not change the configuration. Woodward's method is similar, but results in overall syn hydroxylation. The olefin is treated with iodine and silver acetate in a 1:1 molar ratio in acetic acid containing water.[553] Here again, the initial product is a β-halo ester; the addition is anti and a nucleophilic replacement of the iodine occurs. However, in the presence of water, neighboring-group participation is prevented or greatly decreased by solvation of the ester function, and the mechanism is the normal SN2 process, so that the monoacetate is syn.



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow[\text{MeCOOAg}]{I_2} -\overset{I}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{OCOMe}{C}}- \xrightarrow{H_2O} -\overset{|}{\underset{HO}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{OCOMe}{C}}- \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{\underset{HO}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{OH}{C}}-$$

Hydrolysis gives the glycol that is the product of overall syn addition. With cyclic trisubstituted olefins, both the Woodward and the Prevost methods may give allylic alcohols and ketones rather than the normal products.[554] Although the Woodward method results in overall syn addition, the product may be different from that with OsO_4 or $KMnO_4$, since the overall syn process is from the more-hindered side of the olefin.[555] Both the Prevost and the Woodward methods have also been carried out in high yields with thallium(I) acetate and thallium(I) benzoate instead of the silver carboxylates.[556] Addition of IOCOMe has also been accomplished with I_2 and peracetic acid[557] and with I_2 and potassium iodate in acetic acid.[558] The resulting β-iodo acetate can then be converted to the diol that is the product of syn addition by treatment with cupric acetate or potassium acetate. By a combination of the I_2-KIO_3 and $Cu(OAc)_2$ or KOAc methods, a double bond can be converted to the diol without the use of expensive silver acetate.[558]

Olefins can also be oxidized with metallic acetates such as lead tetraacetate[559] or thallium acetate[560] to give bisacetates of glycols.[561]

OS **II,** 307; **III,** 217; **IV,** 317; **V,** 647; **50,** 24; **58,** 44; **59,** 169.

---

[553] For an alternative method, see Jasserand, Girard, Rossi, and Granger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1581 (1976).

[554] Parrilli, Dovinola, and Mangoni, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **104,** 829 (1974), and references cited therein.

[555] For another method of syn hydroxylation, which can be applied to either face, see Corey and Das, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4217 (1982).

[556] Cambie, Hayward, Roberts, and Rutledge, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 359 (1973); *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1858, 1864 (1974); Cambie and Rutledge, *Org. Synth.* **59,** 169 (1980).

[557] Ogata and Aoki, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1625 (1966). See also Aoki and Ogata, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **41,** 1476 (1968).

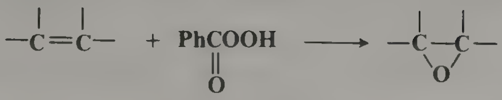
[558] Mangoni, Adinolfi, Barone, and Parrilli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4485 (1973), *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **105,** 377 (1975).

[559] For a review, see Moriarty, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **2,** 183–237 (1972).

[560] See for example, Uemura, Miyoshi, Tabata, and Okano, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 291 (1981).

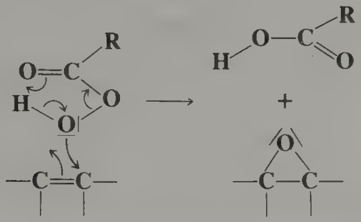
[561] For another method, see Fristad and Peterson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4547 (1983).

5-37 Epoxidation (Addition of Oxygen, Oxygen)



Olefins can be epoxidized with any of a number of peracids, of which *m*-chloroperbenzoic is the most often used. The reaction, called the *Prilezhaev reaction,* has wide utility.[562] Alkyl, aryl, hydroxyl, ester, and other groups may be present, though not amino groups, since these are affected by the reagent. Electron-donating groups increase the rate, and the reaction is particularly rapid with tetraalkyl olefins. Conditions are mild and yields are high. Other peracids, especially peracetic and perbenzoic, are also used; trifluoroperacetic acid[563] and 3,5-dinitroperoxybenzoic acid[564] are particularly reactive ones.

The following one-step mechanism[565] was proposed by Bartlett:[566]



Evidence for this mechanism is as follows:[567] (1) The reaction is second order. If ionization were the rate-determining step, it would be first order in peracid. (2) The reaction readily takes place in nonpolar solvents, where formation of ions is inhibited. (3) Measurements of the effect on the reaction rate of changes in the substrate structure show that there is no carbocation character in the transition state.[568] (4) The addition is stereospecific, i.e., a trans olefin gives a trans epoxide and a cis olefin a cis epoxide.

Conjugated dienes can be epoxidized (1,2 addition), though the reaction is slower than for corresponding olefins, but α,β-unsaturated ketones do not generally give epoxides when treated with peracids.[569] However, α,β-unsaturated esters react normally, to give glycidic esters.[570] When a carbonyl group is in the molecule but not conjugated with the double bond, the Baeyer–Villiger reaction (**8-22**) may compete. Allenes are converted by peracids to allene oxides[571] (**69**) or spiro dioxides (**70**), which in certain cases can be isolated[572] but more often are unstable under the reaction conditions and react further to give other products.[573]

---

[562] For reviews, see Plesničar, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. C, pp. 211–252, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Swern, in Swern, "Organic Peroxides," vol. 2, pp. 355–533, Interscience, New York, 1971; Metelitsa, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 807–821 (1972); Hiatt, in Augustine and Trecker, "Oxidation," vol. 2, pp. 113–140, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1971; House, Ref. 128, pp. 292–321. For a review pertaining to the stereochemistry of the reaction, see Berti, *Top. Stereochem.* **7,** 93–251 (1973), pp. 95–187.

[563] Emmons and Pagano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 89 (1955).

[564] Rastetter, Richard, and Lewis, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3163 (1978).

[565] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Dryuk, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2855–2866 (1976). For a review of polar mechanisms involving peroxides, see Plesničar, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Peroxides," pp. 521–584, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[566] Bartlett, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **18,** 111 (1957). For other proposed mechanisms, see Kwart and Hoffman, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 419 (1966); Hanzlik and Shearer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5231 (1975).

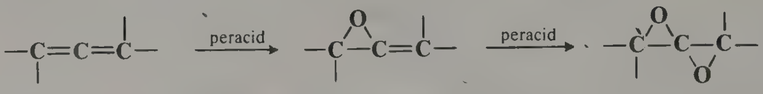
[567] Ogata and Tabushi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3440 (1961).

[568] Khalil and Pritzkow, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **315,** 58 (1973); Schneider, Becker, and Philippi, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 1562 (1981); Batog, Savenko, Batrak, and Kucher, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 1860 (1981).

[569] A few exceptions are known. For example, see Hart, Verma, and Wang, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3418 (1973).

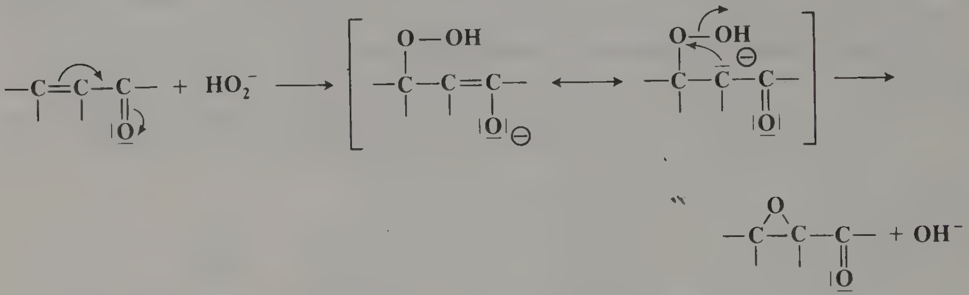
[570] MacPeek, Starcher, and Phillips, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 680 (1959).

[571] For a review of allene oxides, see Chan and Ong, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2269–2289 (1980).



69 **70**

α,β-Unsaturated ketones (including quinones), aldehydes, and sulfones can be epoxidized with alkaline H_2O_2.[574] This is a nucleophilic addition by a Michael-type mechanism, involving attack by HO_2^-:[575]



Epoxides can also be prepared[576] by treating olefins with oxygen or with an alkyl peroxide,[577] catalyzed by a complex of V, Mo, Ti, or Co. The reaction with oxygen, which can also be carried out without a catalyst, is probably a free-radical process.[578] When the reaction is carried out with *t*-BuOOH, titanium tetraisopropoxide, and (+) or (−)-diethyl tartrate, allylic alcohols can be converted, by asymmetric induction, to optically active epoxides in better than 90% enantiomeric excess.[579]

It would be useful if triple bonds could be simply epoxidized to give oxirenes (**71**). However, oxirenes are not stable compounds.[580] Two of them have been trapped in solid argon matrices at very low temperatures, but they decayed on warming to 35 K.[581] Oxirenes probably form in the reaction[582] but react further before they can be isolated. Note that oxirenes bear the same relationship

---

[572] Crandall, Machleder, and Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7346 (1968); Camp and Greene, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7349 (1968); Crandall, Conover, Komin, and Machleder, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1723 (1974).

[573] For example, see Crandall and Machleder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7292, 7347 (1968); Crandall, Machleder, and Sojka, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1149 (1973).

[574] For example, see Payne and Williams, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 54 (1959), **26,** 651 (1961); Zwanenburg and ter Wiel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 935 (1970).

[575] Bunton and Minkoff, *J. Chem. Soc.* 665 (1949); Temple, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1275 (1970); Apeloig, Karni, and Rappoport, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2784 (1983). For a review, see Patai and Rappoport, in Patai, Ref. 32, pt. 1, pp. 512–517.

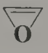
[576] For other methods of converting olefins to epoxides, see Miyaura and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2368 (1983); Kim and Chung, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1562 (1983); Venturello, Alneri, and Ricci, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3831 (1983); de Carvalho and Meunier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3621 (1983).

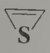
[577] For example, see Gould, Hiatt, and Irwin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4573 (1968); Sharpless and Michaelson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6136 (1973); Sheldon, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **92,** 253 (1973); Hart and Lavrik, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1793 (1974); Chong and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1587 (1977); Beg and Ahmad, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1590 (1977); Kochi, "Organometallic Mechanisms and Catalysis," pp. 69–73, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Itoh, Jitsukawa, Kaneda, and Teranishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 159 (1979); Mihelich, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4729 (1979); Ledon, Durbut, and Varescon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3601 (1981).

[578] For a review, see Filippova and Blyumberg, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 582–591 (1982). See also Budnik and Kochi, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1384 (1976).

[579] Katsuki and Sharpless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5974 (1980); Rossiter, Katsuki, and Sharpless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 464 (1981); Sharpless, Woodard, and Finn, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **55,** 1823–1836 (1983). See also Mihelich, Daniels, and Eickhoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 7690 (1981); Lu, Johnson, Finn, and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 728 (1984).

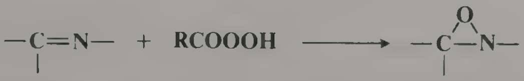
[580] For a review of oxirenes, see Lewars, *Chem. Rev.* **83,** 519–534 (1983).


71


72

to cyclobutadiene that furan does to benzene and may therefore be expected to be antiaromatic (see p. 53). The analogous thiirene (**72**) has also been prepared in an argon matrix, at 8 K, by a variation of **7-49.**[583]

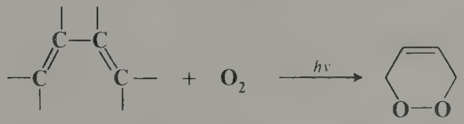
Peracids react with C=N bonds to give oxaziridines.[584]



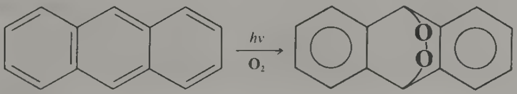
$$-\underset{|}{C}{=}N- \;+\; \text{RCOOOH} \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{C}\overset{O}{-}N-$$

OS **I,** 494; **IV,** 552, 860; **V,** 191, 414, 467, 1007; **55,** 52, 86; **56,** 1; **57,** 36; **60,** 29, 63.

5-38 Photooxidation of Dienes (Addition of Oxygen, Oxygen)



Conjugated dienes react with oxygen under the influence of light to give internal peroxides.[585] The reaction has mostly been applied to cyclic dienes.[586] The scope extends to certain aromatic compounds,[587] e.g.,



In addition to those dienes and aromatic rings that can be photooxidized directly, there is a larger group that give the reaction in the presence of a photosensitizer such as eosin (see p. 211). Among these is α-terpinene, which is converted to ascaridole:

---

[581] Torres, Bourdelande, Clement, and Strausz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1698 (1983). See also Laganis, Janik, Curphey, and Lemal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 7457 (1983).

[582] McDonald and Schwab, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4866 (1964); Stille and Whitehurst, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4871 (1964); Ciabattoni, Campbell, Renner, and Concannon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3286 (1970); Ibne-Rasa, Pater, Ciabattoni, and Edwards, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7894 (1973); Ogata, Sawaki, and Inoue, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1044 (1973).

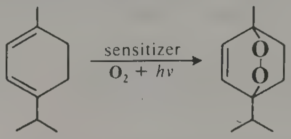
[583] Krantz and Laureni, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 486 (1981).

[584] Emmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5739 (1957); Horner and Jürgens, *Chem. Ber.* **90,** 2184 (1957); Krimm, *Chem. Ber.* **91,** 1057 (1958); Madan and Clapp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6078 (1969); Ogata and Sawaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4687, 4692 (1973); Schmitz, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **2,** 83–130 (1963).

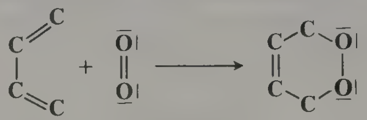
[585] For reviews, see Wasserman and Ives, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 1825–1852 (1981); Denny and Nickon, *Org. React.* **20,** 133–336 (1973); Adams, in Augustine and Trecker, Ref. 562, vol. 2, pp. 65–112; Gollnick, *Adv. Photochem.* **6,** 1–122 (1968); Schönberg, Ref. 41, pp. 382–397; Gollnick and Schenck, in Hamer, "1,4-Cycloaddition Reactions," pp. 255–344, Academic Press, New York, 1967; Arbuzov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **34,** 558–574 (1965).

[586] For reviews of cyclic peroxides, see Saito and Nittala, in Patai, Ref. 565, pp. 311–374; Balci, *Chem. Rev.* **81,** 91–108 (1981); Adam and Bloodworth, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **97,** 121–158 (1981).

[587] For reviews, see, in Wasserman and Murray, "Singlet Oxygen," Academic Press, New York, 1979, the articles by Wasserman and Lipshutz, pp. 429–509, and Saito and Matsuura, pp. 511–574; Rigaudy, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **16,** 169–186 (1968).

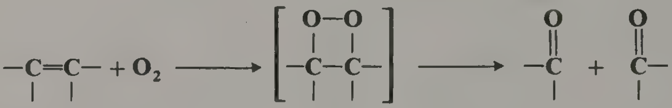


As in **4-8,** it is not the ground-state oxygen (the triplet), that reacts, but the excited singlet state,[588] so the reaction is actually a Diels–Alder reaction (see **5-47**) with singlet oxygen as dienophile:[589]



Like **5-47,** this reaction is reversible.

We have previously discussed the reaction of singlet oxygen with double-bond compounds to give hydroperoxides (**4-8**), but singlet oxygen can also react with double bonds in another way to give a dioxetane intermediate[590] (**73**), which usually cleaves to aldehydes or ketones[591] but has been isolated.[592]

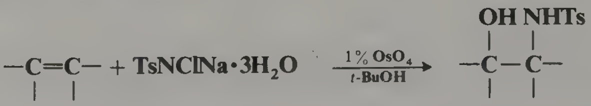


$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + O_2 \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{c} O{-}O \\ |\quad\ | \\ -\underset{|}{C}-\underset{|}{C}- \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}} + \underset{|}{\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}}-$$

73

5-39 Oxyamination (Addition of Oxygen, Nitrogen)

Tosylamino-hydroxy-addition



$$-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + \text{TsNClNa}\cdot 3H_2O \xrightarrow[t\text{-BuOH}]{1\%\ OsO_4} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{NHTs}{|}}{C}}-$$

N-Tosylated β-hydroxy alkylamines (which can be easily hydrolyzed to β-hydroxyamines[593]) can be prepared[594] by treatment of alkenes with the trihydrate of Chloramine-T.[487] In some cases yields can be improved by the use of phase-transfer catalysis.[595] In another procedure, certain β-hydroxy secondary alkylamines can be prepared by treatment of alkenes with the osmium compounds

---

[588] For a monograph on and reviews of singlet oxygen, see Ref. 187 in Chapter 14.

[589] Foote and Wexler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3880 (1964); Corey and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3881 (1964); Foote, Wexler, and Ando, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4111 (1965); Monroe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 7253 (1981).

[590] For reviews, see Adam and Cilento, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 529–542 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 525–538]; Schaap and Zaklika, in Wasserman and Murray, Ref. 587, pp. 173–242; Bartlett, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **5,** 149–163 (1976). For a discussion of the mechanisms, see Frimer, *Chem. Rev.* **79,** 359–387 (1979). See also Schaap, Zaklika, Kaskar, and Fung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 389 (1980).

[591] For discussions, see Kearns, *Chem. Rev.* **71,** 395–427 (1971), pp. 422–424; Foote, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **27,** 635–645 (1971).

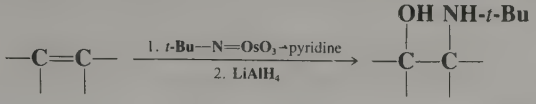
[592] For reviews of 1,2-dioxetanes, see Adam, in Patai, Ref. 565, pp. 829–920; Bartlett and Landis, in Wasserman and Murray, Ref. 587, pp. 243–286; Adam, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **21,** 437–481 (1977). See also Inoue, Hakushi, and Turro, *Kokagaku Toronkai Koen Yoshishu* 150 (1979) [*C.A.* **92,** 214798q (1980)]; Adam and Encarnación, *Chem. Ber.* **115,** 2592 (1982); Adam and Baader, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **23,** 166 (1984) [*Angew. Chem.* **96,** 156].

[593] For some reactions of the oxyamination products, see Bäckvall, Oshima, Palermo, and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1953 (1979).

[594] Sharpless, Chong, and Oshima, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 177 (1976).

[595] Herranz and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2544 (1978).

t-Bu—N=OsO$_3$, followed by reductive cleavage with LiAlH$_4$ of the initially formed osmic esters.[596] It is presumed that Ts—N=OsO$_3$ is an intermediate in the Chloramine-T reaction. Another oxyamination reaction involves treatment of a palladium complex of the olefin with a secondary or primary amine, followed by lead tetraacetate or another oxidant.[597]

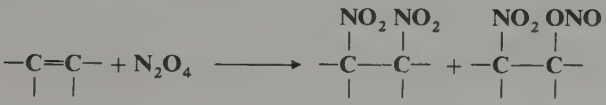


$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow[2.\ \mathrm{LiAlH_4}]{1.\ t\text{-Bu}-\mathrm{N=OsO_3}\text{-pyridine}} -\overset{\mathrm{OH}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{NH}\text{-}t\text{-Bu}}{\underset{|}{C}}-$$

OS **61,** 85, 93.

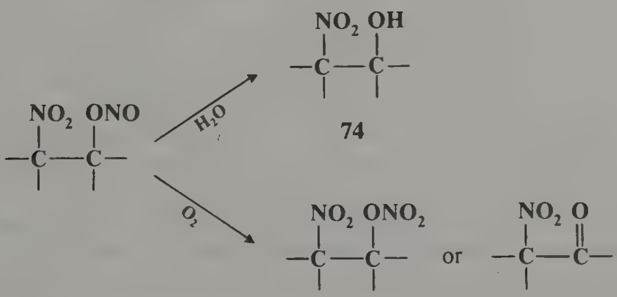
5-40 Addition of N_2O_4 and Related Reactions (Addition of Nitrogen, Nitrogen, or Nitrogen, Oxygen):

Dinitro-addition; Nitro-nitrosooxy-addition



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}- + N_2O_4 \longrightarrow -\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}- + -\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{ONO}}{\underset{|}{C}}-$$

When olefins are treated with N_2O_4 in an ether, ester, or alkane[598] as solvent, *vic*-dinitro compounds and β-nitro alkyl nitrites are produced.[599] The reaction can be successfully performed with all kinds of olefins and acetylenes. Generally, both products are produced. The dinitro compound is usually stable, but the ester is quite reactive. Upon addition of water or alcohol it is hydrolyzed to a β-nitro alcohol. If oxygen is added, it is oxidized to a β-nitro alkyl nitrate or an α-nitro aldehyde or ketone.



$$-\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{ONO}}{\underset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow{H_2O} -\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{OH}}{\underset{|}{C}}- \quad \mathbf{74}$$

$$-\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{ONO}}{\underset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow{O_2} -\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{ONO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}- \quad \text{or} \quad -\overset{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{O}}{\overset{\|}{C}}-$$

The nitrate is stable. Even without deliberate addition of oxygen, it is not uncommon to find some nitrate or ketone. It is therefore possible to prepare four types of compound in this reaction, not counting the nitrite.

---

[596] Sharpless, Patrick, Truesdale, and Biller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2305 (1975); Hentges and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2257 (1980). For another method, in which the NH in the product is connected to an easily removable protecting group, see Herranz, Biller, and Sharpless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3596 (1978); Herranz and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2710 (1980).

[597] Bäckvall and Björkman, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2893 (1980); Bäckvall, Björkman, and Byström, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 943 (1982); Bäckvall and Byström, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1126 (1982).

[598] Bonetti, DeSavigny, Michalski, and Rosenthal, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 237 (1968).

[599] For reviews, see Ogata, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 562, pt. C, pp. 309–313; Larson, in Feuer, Ref. 354, pt. 1, pp. 316–323 (1969); Stacey and Harris, *Org. React.* **13,** 150–376 (1963), pp. 224–229, 361–367; Shechter, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **25,** 55–76 (1964); Sosnovsky, Ref. 41, pp. 252–269; Noble, Borgardt, and Reed, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 19–57 (1964), pp. 20–22.

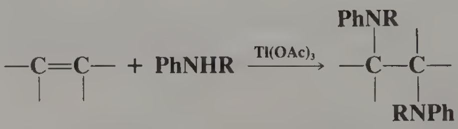
The mechanism is probably of the free-radical type,[600] with initial attack by NO_2 to give $-\dot{C}-C-NO_2$ as the intermediate for both products. In accord with this, the nitro group (in the nitrite derivatives) is found on the side with more hydrogens. When oxygen is completely absent, the product is a β-nitroso nitrate $O_2NOCR_2CR_2NO$, and it is likely that in this case N_2O_4 adds by a heterolytic mechanism.[601]

β-Nitro alcohols (**74**) can also be prepared indirectly, by addition of acetyl nitrate $AcONO_2$ to double bonds.[602] The resulting β-nitro acetate can be hydrolyzed to the alcohol. Side products of the addition of $AcONO_2$ are nitro olefins. The addition follows Markovnikov's rule, with the nitro group going to the carbon with more hydrogens.

β-Amino alcohols can be prepared by treatment of an olefin with a reagent prepared from HgO and HBF_4 along with aniline to give an aminomercurial compound $-\underset{\text{PhNH}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{HgBF_4}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-$ (aminomercuration; see **5-8**) which is hydrolyzed to $-\underset{\text{PhNH}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{OH}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-$.[603] The use of an alcohol instead of water gives the corresponding amino ether.

OS **50,** 84.

5-41 Diamination (Addition of Nitrogen, Nitrogen)
Di(alkylarylamino)-addition



$$-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}- + \text{PhNHR} \xrightarrow{\text{Tl(OAc)}_3} -\underset{|}{\overset{\text{PhNR}}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{\text{RNPh}}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-$$

Primary (R = H) and secondary aromatic amines react with alkenes in the presence of thallium(III) acetate to give *vic*-diamines in good yields.[604] The reaction is not successful for primary aliphatic amines. In another procedure, olefins can be diaminated by treatment with the osmium compounds R_2NOsO_2 and R_3NOsO (R = *t*-Bu),[605] analogous to the osmium compound mentioned at **5-39.** The palladium-promoted method of **5-39** has also been extended to diamination.[606] Alkenes can also be diaminated[607] indirectly by treatment of the aminomercurial compound mentioned in **5-40** with a primary or secondary aromatic amine.[608]

Two azide groups can be added to double bonds by treatment with sodium azide and hydrogen peroxide in the presence of ferrous ion:[609]

---

[600] Shechter, Gardikes, and Pagano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5420 (1959); Shechter, Gardikes, Cantrell, and Tiers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3005 (1967).

[601] Duynstee, Housmans, Voskuil, and Berix, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **92,** 698 (1973).

[602] Bordwell and Garbisch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3588 (1960), *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 2322, 3049 (1962), **28,** 1765 (1963); Bordwell and Biranowski, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 629 (1967).

[603] Barluenga, Alonso-Cires, and Asensio, *Synthesis* 376 (1981).

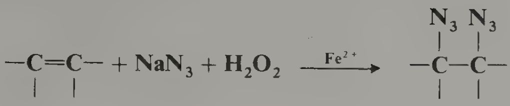
[604] Gómez Aranda, Barluenga, and Aznar, *Synthesis* 504 (1974).

[605] Chong, Oshima, and Sharpless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3420 (1977). See also Sharpless and Singer, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2504 (1976).

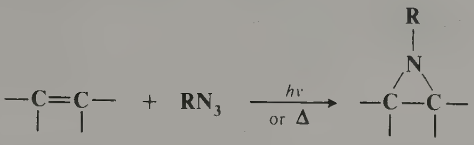
[606] Bäckvall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 163 (1978).

[607] For other diamination methods, see Michejda and Campbell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 7687 (1979); Becker, White, and Bergman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5676 (1980); Becker and Bergman, *Organometallics* **2,** 787 (1983); Kohn and Jung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4106 (1983); Jung and Kohn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 399 (1984).

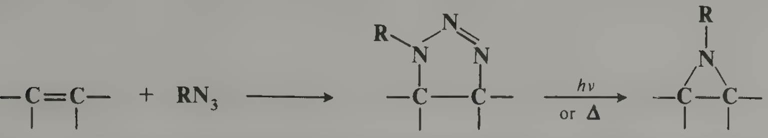
[608] Barluenga, Alonso-Cires, and Asensio, *Synthesis* 962 (1979).



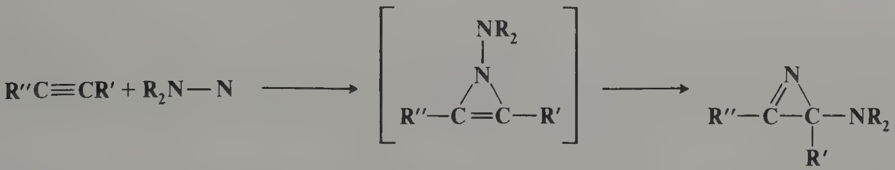
5-42 Formation of Aziridines (Addition of Nitrogen, Nitrogen)



Aziridines can be prepared directly from double-bond compounds by photolysis or thermolysis of a mixture of the substrate and azide.[610] The reaction has been carried out with R = aryl, cyano, EtOOC, and RSO_2, as well as other groups. The reaction can take place by at least two pathways. In one, the azide is converted to a nitrene (p. 176), which adds to the double bond in a manner analogous to that of carbene addition (reaction **5-49**). In the other pathway a 1,3 dipolar addition (reaction **5-46**) takes place to give a triazoline (which can be isolated), followed by extrusion of nitrogen (reaction **7-49**). Evidence for the nitrene pathway is most compelling for R = acyl groups.



As discussed on p. 176, singlet nitrenes add stereospecifically while triplet nitrenes do not. Diphenyl sulfimide Ph_2SNH converts Michael-type substrates to the corresponding aziridines.[611] Aminonitrenes R_2NN have been shown to add to triple bonds to give 1-azirines, which arise from rear-



rangement of the initially formed 2-azirines.[612] Like oxirenes (p. 737), 2-azirines are unstable, probably because of antiaromaticity.

Nitrenes can also add to aromatic rings to give ring-expansion products analogous to those mentioned in **5-49.**[613] Nitrenoids can also add to C=N bonds and C=O bonds to give diaziridines and oxaziranes, respectively.[614]

---

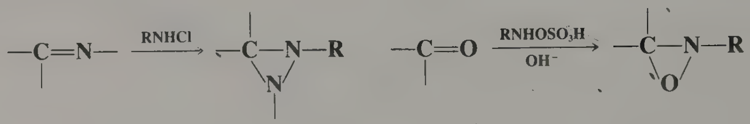
[609] Minisci and Galli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 533 (1962).

[610] For reviews, see Dermer and Ham, "Ethylenimine and Other Aziridines," pp. 68–79, Academic Press, New York, 1969; Muller and Hamer, "1,2-Cycloaddition Reactions," pp. 5–43, Interscience, New York, 1967.

[611] Furukawa, Yoshimura, Ohtsu, Akasaka, and Oae, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 73 (1980). For another method, see Groves and Takahashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2073 (1983).

[612] Anderson, Gilchrist, and Rees, *Chem. Commun.* 147 (1969).

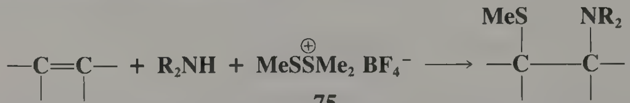
[613] For example, see Hafner and König, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 96 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 89]; Lwowski and Johnson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 891 (1967).



OS **55,** 114.

5-43 Azasulfenylation (Addition of Nitrogen, Sulfur)

Dialkylamino-alkylthio-addition

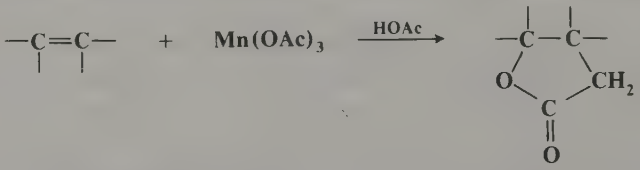


$$-\mathrm{C}{=}\mathrm{C}- + \mathrm{R_2NH} + \overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{MeSSMe_2}}\ \mathrm{BF_4^-} \longrightarrow -\overset{\mathrm{MeS}}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{\mathrm{NR_2}}{\mathrm{C}}-$$

75

An amino group and a methylthio group can be added to a double bond by treatment with dimethyl(methylthio)sulfonium fluoroborate (**75**) and ammonia or an amine.[615] It is likely that **75** attacks as an electrophile and the amine as nucleophile. The reaction was extended to other nucleophiles:[616] N_3^-, NO_2^-, CN^-, OH^-, and OAc^- to give MeS—C—C—A, where A = N_3, NO_2, CN, OH, and OAc, respectively. The use of Me_2SO as nucleophile led (after addition of diisopropylethylamine) to β-keto sulfides MeS—C—C=O. All of these reactions give high yields.

5-44 The Conversion of Olefins to γ-Lactones (Addition of Oxygen, Carbon)



Olefins react with manganese(III) acetate to give γ-lactones.[617] The mechanism is probably free-radical, involving addition of $\cdot CH_2COOH$ to the double bond. Lactone formation has also been accomplished by treatment of olefins with α-bromo carboxylic acids in the presence of benzoyl peroxide as catalyst,[618] and with lead tetraacetate.[619] Olefins can also be converted to γ-lactones by indirect routes.[620]

OS **61,** 22.

5-45 Addition of Aldehydes and Ketones (Addition of Oxygen, Carbon)

See the Prins reaction (**6-53**), and reactions **6-54, 6-65,** and **6-66.**

---

[614] For reviews, see Muller and Hamer, Ref. 610; Schmitz, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **2,** 83–130 (1963).

[615] Trost and Shibata, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3225 (1982); Caserio and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3231 (1982).

[616] Trost, Shibata, and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3228 (1982); Trost and Shibata, Ref. 615.

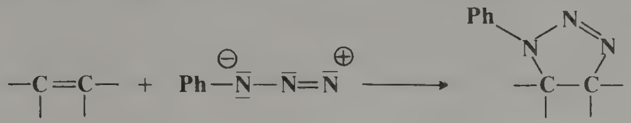
[617] Bush and Finkbeiner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5903 (1968); Heiba, Dessau, and Koehl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5905 (1968); Heiba, Dessau, and Rodewald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7977 (1974).

[618] Nakano, Kayama, Matsumoto, and Nagai, *Chem. Lett.* 415 (1981).

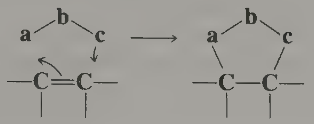
[619] Heiba, Dessau, and Koehl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2706 (1968).

[620] Boldt, Thielecke, and Etzemüller, *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 4157 (1969); Das Gupta, Felix, Kempe, and Eschenmoser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **55,** 2198 (1972).

5-46 1,3-Dipolar Addition (Addition of Oxygen, Nitrogen, Carbon)



Azides add to double bonds to give triazolines. This is one example of a large group of reactions (2 + 3 cycloadditions) in which five-membered heterocyclic compounds are prepared by addition of 1,3-dipolar compounds to double bonds.[621] These are compounds that have a sequence of three atoms a—b—c, of which a has a sextet of electrons in the outer shell and c an octet with at least one unshared pair. The reaction can then be formulated as



Since compounds with six electrons in the outer shell of an atom are usually not stable, the a—b—c system is actually one canonical form of a resonance hybrid, for which at least one other form can be drawn, e.g., for azides

$$R-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{\overline{N}}}-\overline{N}=\overset{\oplus}{\overline{N}} \longleftrightarrow R-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{\overline{N}}}-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overline{N}$$

1,3-Dipolar compounds can be divided into two main types:

1. Those in which the dipolar canonical form has a double bond on the sextet atom and the other canonical form has a triple bond on that atom:

$$-\overset{\oplus}{a}=\underline{b}-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{c}} \longleftrightarrow -a\equiv\overset{\oplus}{b}-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{c}}$$

If we limit ourselves to the first row of the periodic table, b can only be nitrogen, a can be carbon or nitrogen, and c can be carbon, oxygen, or nitrogen; hence there are six types. Among these are azides (a = b = c = N), illustrated above, and diazoalkanes ($R_2\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}-\overline{N}=\overset{\oplus}{\overline{N}}$).

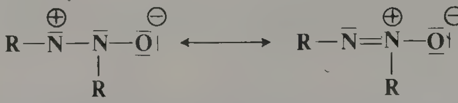
2. Those in which the dipolar canonical form has a single bond on the sextet atom and the other form has a double bond:

$$-\overset{\oplus}{a}-\underline{b}-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{c}} \longleftrightarrow -a=\overset{\oplus}{b}-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{c}}$$

---

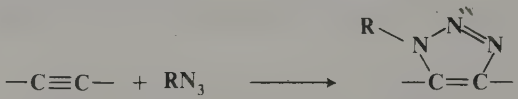
[621] For a treatise, see Padwa, "1,3-Dipolar Cycloaddition Chemistry," 2 vols., Wiley, New York, 1984. For reviews, see Bianchi, Gandolfi, and Grünanger, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 41, pp. 752–784; Bianchi, De Micheli, and Gandolfi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 721–738 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 781–798]; in Patai, Ref. 1, pt. 1, pp. 369–532; Huisgen, in "Aromaticity," *Chem. Soc. Spec. Publ.* no. 21, 51–73 (1967), *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 2421–2439 (1967), *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3431 (1965), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 565–598, 633–645 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 604–637, 742–754], *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 357–369 (1961); Beltrame, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 1, vol. 9, pp. 117–131; Huisgen, Grashey, and Sauer, in Patai, Ref. 32, vol. 1, pp. 806–878; Black, Crozier, and Davis, *Synthesis* 205–221 (1975); Stuckwisch, *Synthesis* 469–483 (1973). For a review of intramolecular 1,3-dipolar additions, see Padwa, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 123–136 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 131–144]. See also Grigg, Gunaratne, and Kemp, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 41 (1984).

Here b can be nitrogen or oxygen, and a and c can be nitrogen, oxygen, or carbon, but there are only 12 types, since, for example, N—N—C is only another form of C—N—N. Examples are azoxy compounds:

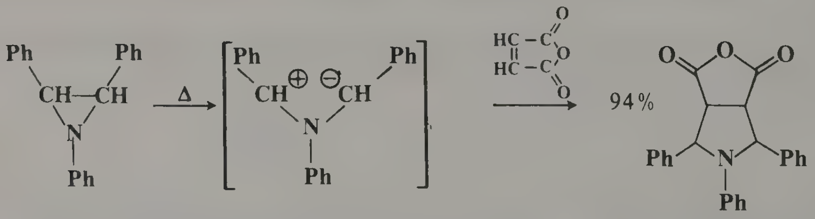


Of the 18 systems, some of which are unstable and must be generated in situ, the reaction has been accomplished for at least 15, though not in all cases with a carbon–carbon double bond (the reaction also can be carried out with other double bonds). Not all olefins undergo 1,3-dipolar addition equally well. The reaction is most successful for those which are good dienophiles in the Diels–Alder reaction (**5-47**). The addition is stereoselective and syn, and the mechanism is probably a one-step synchronous process, as illustrated above.[622] As expected for this type of mechanism, the rates do not vary much with changes in solvent.[623] There are no simple rules covering orientation in 1,3-dipolar additions. Regioselectivities are complicated but have been explained by molecular-orbital treatments.[624]

Carbon–carbon triple bonds can also undergo 1,3-dipolar addition.[625] For example, azides give triazoles:



The 1,3-dipolar reagent can in some cases be generated by the in situ opening of a suitable three-membered ring system. For example, aziridines can add to activated double bonds to give pyrrolidines, e.g.,[626]



Aziridines also add to C≡C triple bonds as well as to other unsaturated linkages, including C═O, C═N, and C≡N.[627] In some of these reactions it is a C—N bond of the aziridine that opens rather than the C—C bond.

The addition of the nitrile oxide **76** (generated in situ from the bromooxime $PhSO_2C(Br)$═N—OH) to alkenes, followed by reduction of the resulting adduct (**77**) with 2% sodium amalgam provides a method for adding CN and OH to a double bond.[628]

---

[622] For discussions, see Huisgen, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 403 (1976); Firestone, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 3009–3039 (1977); Harcourt, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 3125 (1978).

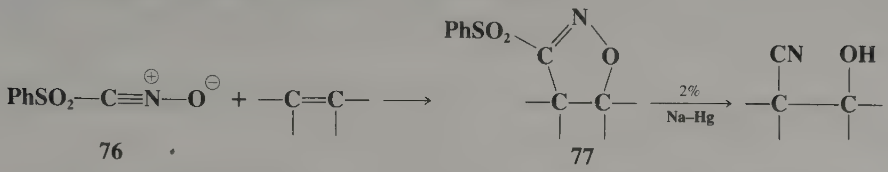
[623] For a review of the role of solvents in this reaction, see Kadaba, *Synthesis* 71–84 (1973).

[624] See for example, Sustmann, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2717 (1971), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **40,** 569–593 (1974); Sustmann, Wenning, and Huisgen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 877 (1977); Houk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8953 (1972); Caramella, Cellerino, Houk, Albini, and Santiago, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3006 (1978); Bastide and Henri-Rousseau, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2294 (1973), 1037 (1974); Gordon, Alston, and Rossi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5701 (1978); Beltrame, Cattania, Redaelli, and Zecchi, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 706 (1977); Padwa, Burgess, Gingrich, and Roush, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 786 (1982). See also Ali, Senaratne, Illig, Meckler, and Tufariello, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4167 (1979).

[625] For reviews, see Bastide, Hamelin, Texier, and Quang, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2555–2579; 2871–2887 (1973); Fuks and Viehe, in Viehe, Ref. 41, pp. 460–477.

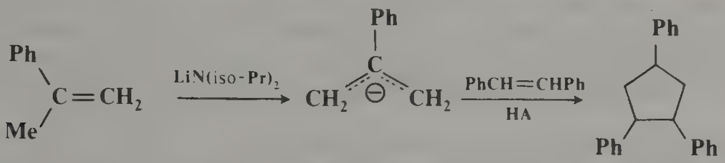
[626] Heine, Peavy, and Durbetaki, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3924 (1966).

[627] For reviews, see Lown, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **32,** 51–83 (1971); Gladysheva, Sineokov, and Etlis, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 118–129 (1970).



76 77

2 + 3 cycloadditions are also known in which the compound adding to the double or triple bond is not a 1,3-dipolar compound but an anion with a partial negative charge at *both* ends. Such reactions are called 1,3-*anionic cycloadditions*.[629] An important example is the case where the anion is an allylic carbanion and the product a cyclopentane. For example, α-methylstyrene adds to stilbene upon treatment with the strong base lithium diisopropylamide.[630]

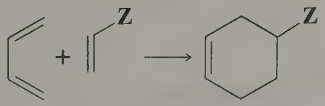


In this case the reagent is an allylic anion,[631] but similar 2 + 3 cycloadditions involving allylic cations have also been reported.[632] Alkynes have been converted to cyclopentenes by treatment with allylic chlorides and zinc chloride.[633]

OS **V,** 96, 127; **53,** 59. Also see OS **IV,** 380; **58,** 106.

C. Carbon on Both Sides. Reactions 5-47 to 5-51 are cycloaddition reactions.[634]

5-47 The Diels–Alder Reaction



In the *Diels–Alder reaction* a double bond adds 1,4 to a conjugated diene (a 4 + 2 cycloaddition),[635] so that the product is always a six-membered ring. The double-bond compound is called a *dienophile*.

---

[628] Wade and Hinney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1319 (1979); Wade and Pillay, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5425 (1981). For another method, see Kozikowski and Adamczyk, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 366 (1983).

[629] For reviews, see Kauffmann, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **92,** 109–147 (1980), pp. 111–116; *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 627–639 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 715–727].

[630] Eidenschink and Kauffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 292 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 292].

[631] For other examples, see Boche and Martens, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 724 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 768]; Marino and Mesbergen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4050 (1974); Klumpp and Schmitz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2911 (1974); Ford and Luteri, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5330 (1977). See also Trost and Chan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6429, 6432 (1979); Altenbach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 940 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 1005]; Knapp, O'Connor, and Mobilio, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4557 (1980).

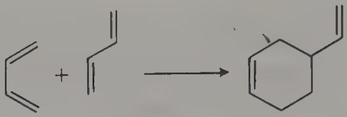
[632] For example, see Noyori, Yokoyama, and Hayakawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2722 (1973); Hoffmann and Vathke-Ernst, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 2208, 2898 (1981); Klein and Mayr, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 1027 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 1069].

[633] Miller and Moore, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 577 (1980).

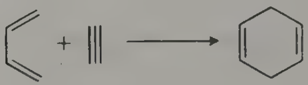
[634] For a system of classification of cycloaddition reactions, see Huisgen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 321–328 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 329–337].

[635] For a monograph, see Wasserman, "Diels–Alder Reactions," American Elsevier, New York, 1965. For reviews, see Brieger and Bennett, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 63–97 (1980); Oppolzer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 10–23 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 10–24]; Beltrame, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 1, vol. 9, pp. 94–117; Huisgen, Grashey, and Sauer, in Patai, Ref. 32, vol. 1, pp. 878–929; Carruthers, Ref. 188, pp. 161–222; Sauer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 211–230 (1966), **6,** 16–33 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 233–252, **79,** 76–94]. For a monograph on intramolecular Diels–Alder reactions, see Taber, "Intramolecular Diels–Alder and Alder Ene Reactions," Springer-Verlag, New York, 1984. For a review, see Fallis, *Can. J. Chem.* **62,** 183–234 (1984).

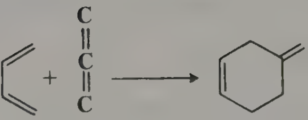
The reaction is easy and rapid and of very broad scope.[635a] Ethylene and simple olefins make poor dienophiles, although the reaction has been carried out with these compounds. Most dienophiles are of the form $-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-Z$ or $Z-\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-Z'$, where Z and Z′ are CHO, COR, COOH, COOR, COCl, COAr, CN,[636] NO_2,[637] Ar, CH_2OH, CH_2Cl, CH_2NH_2, CH_2CN, CH_2COOH, halogen, or C=C.[638] In the latter case, the dienophile is itself a diene:



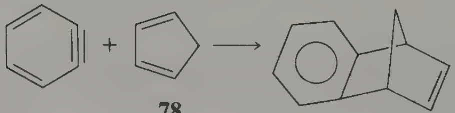
When two dienes react, mixtures are quite possible. Thus, butadiene and isoprene ($CH_2=CH-CMe=CH_2$) gave all nine possible Diels–Alder adducts, as well as eight-membered rings and trimers.[639] Particularly common dienophiles are maleic anhydride[640] and quinones.[641] Triple bond compounds ($-C\equiv C-Z$ or $Z-C\equiv C-Z'$) may be dienophiles[642]



as may allenes



Benzynes, although not isolable, act as dienophiles and can be trapped with dienes,[643] e.g.,



78

[635a] For a review of reactivity in the Diels–Alder reaction, see Konovalov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **52,** 1064–1080 (1983).

[636] For a review of the Diels–Alder reaction with acrylonitrile, see Butskus, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 283–284 (1962). For a review of tetracyanoethylene as a dienophile, see Ciganek, Linn, and Webster, in Rappoport, Ref. 446, pp. 449–453.

[637] For a review of the Diels–Alder reaction with nitro compounds, see Novikov, Shuekhgeimer, and Dudinskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 79–94 (1960).

[638] For a review of Diels–Alder reactions with many ethylenic and acetylenic dienophiles, see Holmes, *Org. React.* **4,** 60–173 (1948).

[639] Johnstone and Quan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 935 (1963).

[640] For a review of Diels–Alder reactions with maleic anhydride, see Kloetzel, *Org. React.* **4,** 1–59 (1948).

[641] For a review of Diels–Alder reactions with quinones, see Finley, in Patai, Ref. 34, pt. 2, pp. 986–1018.

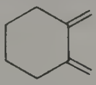
[642] For reviews of triple bonds in cycloaddition reactions, see Bastide and Henri-Rousseau, in Patai, Ref. 67, pt. 1, pp. 447–522, Wiley, New York, 1978; Fuks and Viehe, in Viehe, Ref. 41, pp. 477–508.

[643] For a review of benzynes as dienophiles, with a table listing 155 examples, see Hoffmann, "Dehydrobenzene and Cycloalkynes," pp. 200–239, Academic Press, New York, 1967. For a review of the reactions of benzynes with heterocyclic compounds, see Bryce and Vernon, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **28,** 183–229 (1981).

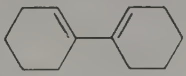
The low reactivity of ethylene can be overcome by using phenyl vinyl sulfone $PhSO_2CH{=}CH_2$ instead.[644] The $PhSO_2$ group can be easily removed with Na-Hg after the ring-closure reaction. Similarly, phenyl vinyl sulfoxide $PhSOCH{=}CH_2$ can be used as a synthon for acetylene.[645] In this case PhSOH is lost from the sulfoxide product (**7-13**).

Besides carbon–carbon multiple bonds, other double- and triple-bond compounds can be dienophiles, giving rise to heterocyclic compounds. Among these are $N{\equiv}C{—}$, $—N{=}C—$, $—N{=}N—$, $O{=}N$, and $—C{=}O$ compounds[646] and, as we have seen (**5-38**), even molecular oxygen.

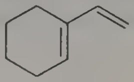
Dienes may be open-chain, inner-ring (e.g., **78**), outer-ring[647] (e.g., **79**), across rings (e.g., **80**), or inner-outer (e.g., **81**), except that they may not be frozen into a transoid conformation (see p. 748). They need no special activating groups, and nearly all conjugated dienes undergo the reaction with suitable dienophiles.[648]



79

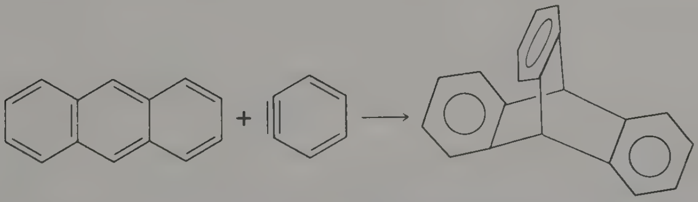


80



81

Aromatic compounds can also behave as dienes.[649] Benzene is very unreactive toward dienophiles; very few dienophiles (one of them is benzyne) have been reported to give Diels–Alder adducts with it.[650] Naphthalene and phenanthrene are also quite resistant, though naphthalene has given Diels–Alder addition at high pressures.[651] However, anthracene and other compounds with at least three linear benzene rings give Diels–Alder reactions readily. The interesting compound triptycene can be prepared by a Diels–Alder reaction between benzyne and anthracene:[652]



It is possible for a diene to have one double bond in an aromatic system and the other outside it, e.g.,

---

[644] Carr, Williams, and Paquette, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4976 (1983); Kinney, Crouse, and Paquette, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4986 (1983).

[645] Paquette, Moerck, Harirchian, and Magnus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1597 (1978). For other acetylene synthons, see De Lucchi, Lucchini, Pasquato, and Modena, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 596 (1984); Hermeling and Schäfer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **23,** 233 (1984) [*Angew. Chem.* **96,** 238]. For a review, see De Lucchi and Modena, *Tetrahedron* **40,** 2585–2632 (1984).

[646] For a monograph on dienes and dienophiles with hetero atoms, see Hamer, Ref. 585. For reviews, see Boger, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2869–2939 (1983); Weinreb and Staib, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 3087–3128 (1982); Weinreb and Levin, *Heterocycles* **12,** 949–975 (1979); Desimoni and Tacconi, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 651–692 (1975); Kresze and Firl, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **11,** 245–284 (1969); Arbuzov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **33,** 407–424 (1964); Needleman and Chang Kuo, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 405–431 (1962).

[647] For a review of Diels–Alder reactions of some of these compounds, see Oppolzer, *Synthesis* 793–802 (1978).

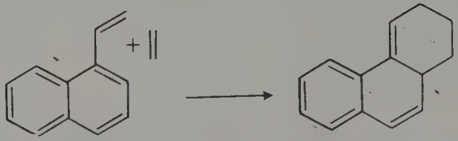
[648] For a review of Diels–Alder reactions with cyclopentadienone as diene, see Allen, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 653–664 (1962). For a review with perchlorocyclopentadiene, see Ungnade and McBee, *Chem. Rev.* **58,** 249–320 (1958), pp. 254–305. For a review with 2-pyrones, see Shusherina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 851–861 (1974). For a review of dienes with hetero substituents, see Petrzilka and Grayson, *Synthesis* 753–786 (1981).

[649] For a review, see Wagner-Jauregg, *Synthesis* 165–214, 769–798 (1980). See also Biermann and Schmidt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3163, 3173 (1980).

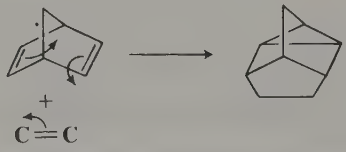
[650] Miller and Stiles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1798 (1963); Meyerson and Fields, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1230 (1966); Ciganek, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3321 (1967); Friedman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3071 (1967); Liu and Krespan, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1271 (1969).

[651] Jones, Mangold, and Plieninger, *Tetrahedron* **18,** 267 (1962); Plieninger, Wild, and Westphal, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 5561 (1969). See also Dufraisse, Rigaudy, and Ricard, *Tetrahedron Suppl.* **8,** 491 (1966).

[652] Wittig and Niethammer, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 944 (1960); Wittig, Härle, Knauss, and Niethammer, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 951 (1960). For a review of triptycene, see Skvarchenko, Shalaev, and Klabunovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 951–966 (1974).

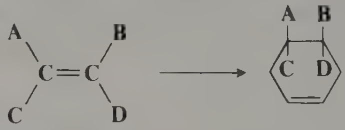


Even styrene has been shown to react in this manner.[653] Certain heterocyclic aromatic rings (among them furans) can also behave as dienes in the Diels–Alder reaction. Some hetero dienes that give the reaction are $-\mathrm{C{=}C{-}C{=}O}$, $\mathrm{O{=}C{-}C{=}O}$, and $\mathrm{N{=}C{-}C{=}N}$.[646] For both all-carbon and hetero systems, the "diene" may be a conjugated enyne. If the geometry of the molecule is suitable, the diene may even be nonconjugated, e.g.,[654]



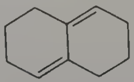
The stereochemistry of the Diels–Alder reaction can be considered from several aspects:[655]

1. With respect to the dienophile, the addition is stereospecifically syn, with very few exceptions.[656] This means that groups that are cis in the olefin will be cis in the cyclohexene ring:



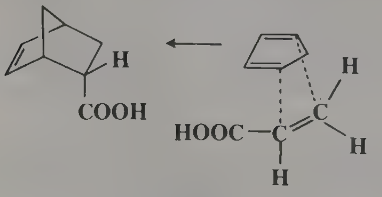
2. With respect to 1,4-disubstituted dienes, fewer cases have been investigated, but here too the reaction is stereospecific and syn. Thus, *trans,trans*-1,4-diphenylbutadiene gives *cis*-1,4-diphenylcyclohexene derivatives.

3. The diene must be in the cisoid conformation. If it is frozen into the transoid conformation, as in **82,** the reaction does not take place. The diene either must be frozen into the cisoid conformation or must be able to achieve it during the reaction.

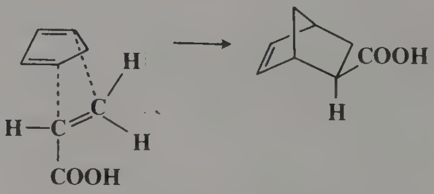


82

4. When the diene is cyclic, there are two possible ways in which addition can occur if the dienophile is not symmetrical. The larger side of the dienophile may be under the ring (*endo addition*), or it may be the smaller side (*exo addition*):



Endo addition



Exo addition

---

[653] Lora-Tamayo, *Tetrahedron* **4,** 17 (1958); Ciganek, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1923 (1969).

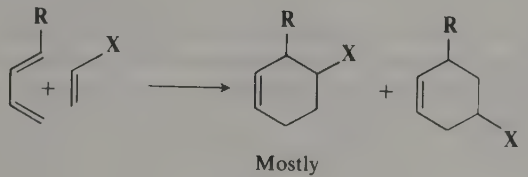
[654] Fickes and Metz, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4057 (1978), and references cited therein.

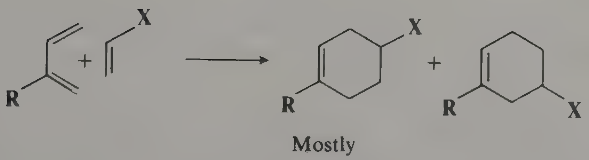
[655] For a review, see Martin and Hill, *Chem. Rev.* **61,** 537–562 (1961).

[656] For some exceptions, see Mark, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3179, 3181 (1974).

Most of the time, the addition is predominantly endo; i.e., the more bulky side of the olefin is under the ring, and this is probably true for open-chain dienes also. However, exceptions are known, and in many cases mixtures of exo and endo addition products are found.[657]

When an unsymmetrical diene adds to an unsymmetrical dienophile, there are two possible products (not counting stereoisomers):





Although mixtures are often obtained, usually one predominates,[658] the one indicated above. This regioselectivity, in which the "ortho" or "para" product is favored over the "meta," has been explained by molecular-orbital considerations.[659]

Electron-donating substituents in the diene accelerate the reaction; electron-withdrawing groups retard it. For the dienophile it is just the reverse: donating groups decrease the rate, and withdrawing groups increase it. Cyclic dienes, in which the cisoid conformation is built in, usually react faster than the corresponding open-chain compounds, which have to achieve the cisoid conformation by rotation.[660]

As should be apparent from the foregoing, many interesting compounds can be prepared by the Diels–Alder reaction, some of which we would be hard put to make in any other way. It has thus been exceedingly useful. Competing reactions are polymerization of the diene or dienophile, or both, and 1,2 cycloaddition (**5-48**). However, yields are usually quite high. No catalyst is needed, although it has been found that Lewis acids catalyze some Diels–Alder reactions,[661] usually those in which Z in the dienophile is a C═O or C═N group. A Lewis acid catalyst usually increases both the regioselectivity of the reaction (in the sense given above)[662] and the extent of endo addition.[663] The Diels–Alder reaction is usually reversible and has been used to protect double bonds.[664] A convenient substitute for butadiene in the Diels–Alder reaction is the compound 3-sulfolene since the latter is a solid which is easy to handle while the former is a gas.[665] Butadiene

---

[657] See, for example, Alder and Günzl, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 809 (1960); Stockmann, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2025 (1961); Kobuke, Fueno, and Furukawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6548 (1970); Jones and Wife, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 421 (1973); Lindsay Smith, Norman, and Stillings, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 1381 (1978).

[658] For a review, see Titov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 267–282 (1962).

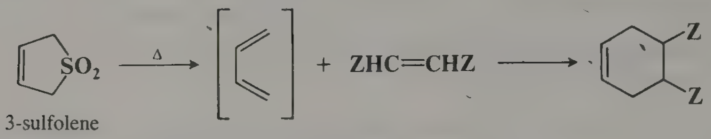
[659] Feuer, Herndon, and Hall, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 2575 (1968); Inukai, Sato, and Kojima, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 891 (1972); Epiotis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5624 (1973); Sustmann, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **40,** 569–593 (1974); Eisenstein, Lefour, Anh, and Hudson, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 523 (1977); Fleming, Michael, Overman, and Taylor, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1313 (1978); Houk, Domelsmith, Strozier, and Patterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6531 (1978); Trost, Vladuchick, and Bridges, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3554 (1980); Alston, Gordon, Ottenbrite, and Cohen, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 5051 (1983).

[660] Sauer, Lang, and Mielert, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 268 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 352]; Sauer and Wiest, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 269 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 353]. See however Scharf, Plum, Fleischhauer, and Schleker, *Chem. Ber.* **112,** 862 (1979).

[661] Yates and Eaton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4436 (1960); Fray and Robinson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 249 (1961); Inukai and Kojima, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 869, 872 (1967); Ciganek, Ref. 650.

[662] For an exception, see Stojanac, Dickinson, Stojanac, Woznow, and Valenta, *Can. J. Chem.* **53,** 616 (1975).

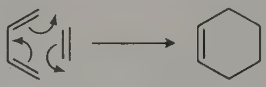
[663] For discussions, see Houk and Strozier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4094 (1973); Alston and Ottenbrite, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1111 (1975).



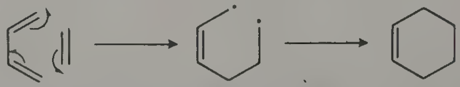
is generated in situ by a reverse Diels–Alder reaction (see **7-25**).

There are, broadly speaking, three possible mechanisms that have been considered for the Diels–Alder reaction.[666] In mechanism *a* there is a cyclic six-centered transition state and no intermediate.

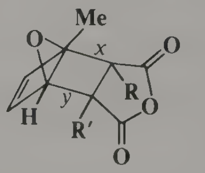
Mechanism *a*



Mechanism *b*



The reaction is concerted and occurs in one step. In mechanism *b* one end of the diene fastens to one end of the dienophile first to give a diradical, and then, in a second step, the other ends become fastened. A diradical formed in this manner must be a singlet; i.e., the two unpaired electrons must have opposite spins, by an argument similar to that outlined on p. 171. The third mechanism (*c*, not shown) is similar to mechanism *b*, but the initial bond and the subsequent bond are formed by movements of electron pairs and the intermediate is a diion. There have been many mechanistic investigations of the Diels–Alder reaction. The bulk of the evidence suggests that most Diels–Alder reactions take place by the one-step cyclic mechanism *a*,[666a] although it is possible that a diradical[667] or even a diion mechanism may be taking place in some cases. The main evidence in support of mechanism *a* is as follows: (1) The reaction is stereospecific in both the diene and dienophile. A completely free diradical or diion probably would not be able to retain its configuration. (2) In general, the rates of Diels–Alder reactions depend very little on the nature of the solvent. This would rule out a diion intermediate because polar solvents increase the rates of reactions that develop charges in the transition state. (3) It was shown that, in the decomposition of **83**, the isotope effect k_I/k_{II} was equal to 1.00 within experimental error.[668] If bond *x* broke before bond *y*, there should surely be a secondary isotope effect. This result strongly indicates that the bond



83

I: R=H, R′=D
II: R=D, R′=H

---

[664] For reviews of the reverse Diels–Alder reaction, see Ripoll, Rouessac, and Rouessac, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 19–40 (1978); Kwart and King, *Chem. Rev.* **68,** 415–447 (1968).

[665] Sample and Hatch, *Org. Synth.* **50,** 43 (1970).

[666] For reviews, see Sauer and Sustmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 779–807 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 773–801]; Houk, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **79,** 1–40 (1979); Seltzer, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **2,** 1–57 (1968); Ref. 635.

[666a] For a contrary view, see Dewar and Pierini, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 203 (1984); Dewar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 209 (1984).

[667] See, for example, Bartlett and Mallet, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 143 (1976); Jenner and Rimmelin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3039 (1980); Huybrechts, Poppelsdorf, Maesschalck, and van Mele, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **16,** 93 (1984).

[668] Seltzer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1360 (1963), **87,** 1534 (1965); for other isotope effect evidence, see Taagepera and Thornton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1168 (1972).

breaking of x and y is simultaneous. This is the reverse of a Diels–Alder reaction, and by the principle of microscopic reversibility, the mechanism of the forward reaction should involve simultaneous formation of bonds x and y. Subsequently, a similar experiment was carried out on the forward reaction[669] and the result was the same. There is also other evidence for mechanism *a*.[670] However, the fact that the mechanism is concerted does not necessarily mean that in the transition state both new σ bonds have been formed to the same extent. It could very well be that one bond has been formed to a greater degree than the other.[671]

In another aspect of the mechanism, the effects of electron-donating and electron-withdrawing substituents (p. 749) indicate that the diene is behaving as a nucleophile and the dienophile as an electrophile. However, this can be reversed. Perchlorocyclopentadiene reacts better with cyclopentene than with maleic anhydride and not at all with tetracyanoethylene, though the latter is normally the most reactive dienophile known. It is apparent, then, that this diene is the electrophile in its Diels–Alder reactions.[672]

We have emphasized that the Diels–Alder reaction generally takes place rapidly and conveniently. In sharp contrast, the apparently similar dimerization of olefins to cyclobutanes (**5-48**) gives very poor results in most cases, except when photochemically induced. Fukui, Woodward, and Hoffmann have shown that these contrasting results can be explained by the *principle of conservation of orbital symmetry*,[673] which predicts that certain reactions are allowed and others forbidden. The orbital-symmetry rules (also called the Woodward–Hoffmann rules) apply *only to concerted reactions*, e.g., mechanism *a*, and are based on the principle that reactions take place in such a way as to maintain maximum bonding throughout the course of the reaction. There are several ways of applying the orbital-symmetry principle to cycloaddition reactions, three of which are used more frequently than others.[674] Of these three we will discuss two: the frontier-orbital method and the Möbius–Hückel method. The third, called the correlation diagram method,[675] is less convenient to apply than the other two.

---

[669] Van Sickle and Rodin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3091 (1964).

[670] See, for example, Dewar and Pyron, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3098 (1970); Brun and Jenner, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 3113 (1972); Doering, Franck-Neumann, Hasselmann, and Kaye, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3833 (1972); McCabe and Eckert, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 251–257 (1974); Berson, Dervan, Malherbe, and Jenkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5937 (1976); Rücker, Lang, Sauer, Friege, and Sustmann, *Chem. Ber.* **113,** 1663 (1980); Tolbert and Ali, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2104 (1981).

[671] Woodward and Katz, *Tetrahedron* **5,** 70 (1959); Liu and Schmidt, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 5289 (1971); Dewar and Pyron, Ref. 670; Papadopoulos and Jenner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1889 (1982).

[672] Sauer and Wiest, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 269 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 353]. For another example, see Bradsher and Stone, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 519 (1968), **34,** 1700 (1969).

[673] For monographs, see Gilchrist and Storr, ''Organic Reactions and Orbital Symmetry,'' 2d ed., Cambridge University Press, London, 1979; Fleming, ''Frontier Orbitals and Organic Chemical Reactions,'' Wiley, New York, 1976; Woodward and Hoffmann, ''The Conservation of Orbital Symmetry,'' Academic Press, New York, 1970 [the text of this book also appears in *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 781–853 (1969); *Angew. Chem.* **81,** 797–869]; Lehr and Marchand, ''Orbital Symmetry,'' Academic Press, New York, 1972. For reviews, see Pearson, *J. Chem. Educ.* **58,** 753–757 (1981); in Klopman, ''Chemical Reactivity and Reaction Paths,'' Wiley, New York, 1974, the articles by Fujimoto and Fukui, pp. 23–54, Klopman, pp. 55–165, Herndon, Feuer, Giles, Otteson, and Silber, pp. 275–299, and Michl, pp. 301–338; Simonetta, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **42,** 1–47 (1973); Houk, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **6,** 113–208 (1973); Vollmer and Servis, *J. Chem. Educ.* **47,** 491–500 (1970); Gill, *Essays Chem.* **1,** 43–76 (1970), *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **22,** 338–389 (1968); Seebach, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **11,** 177–215 (1969); Miller, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **6,** 185–332 (1968); Woodward, in ''Aromaticity,'' Ref. 621, pp. 217–249; Millie, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4031 (1966). For reviews of applications to inorganic chemistry, see Pearson, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **41,** 75–112 (1973), *Chem. Eng. News* **48** (41), 66–72 (Sept. 28, 1970).

[674] For other approaches, see Epiotis, ''Theory of Organic Reactions,'' Springer-Verlag, New York, 1978; Epiotis and Shaik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1, 9 (1978); Halevi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 593–607 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88.** 664–679]; Shen, *J. Chem. Educ.* **50,** 238–242 (1973); Salem, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 543, 553 (1968); Trindle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3251, 3255 (1970); Mulder and Oosterhoff, *Chem. Commun.* 305, 307 (1970); Goddard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7520 (1970), **94,** 793 (1972); Herndon, *Chem. Rev.* **72,** 157–179 (1972); Perrin, *Chem. Br.* **8,** 163–173 (1972); Langlet and Malrieu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7254 (1972); Pearson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8287 (1972); Mathieu, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 807 (1973); Silver and Karplus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2645 (1975); Day, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2431 (1975); Mok and Nye, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1810 (1975).

[675] For excellent discussions of this method, see Woodward and Hoffmann, Ref. 673; Jones, ''Physical and Mechanistic Organic Chemistry,'' 2nd ed., pp. 352–366, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1984; Klumpp, ''Reactivity in Organic Chemistry,'' pp. 378–389, Wiley, New York, 1982; Yates, ''Hückel Molecular Orbital Theory,'' pp. 263–276, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

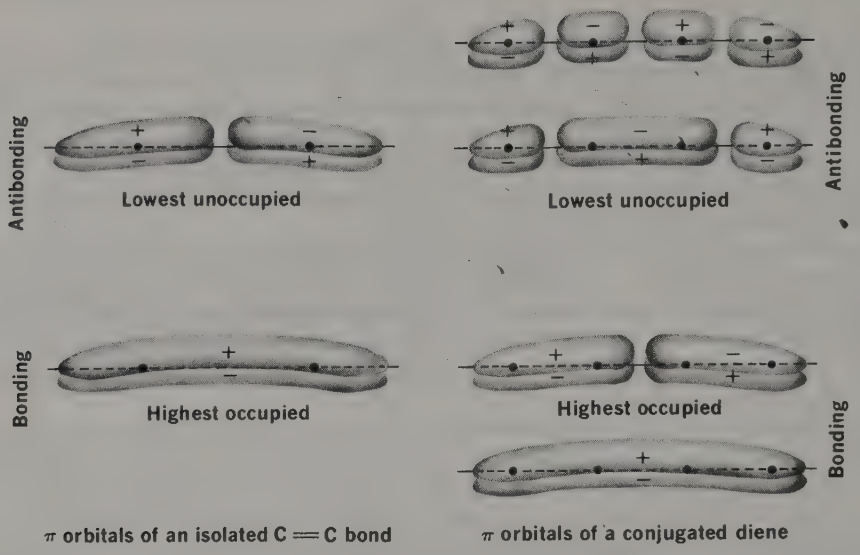
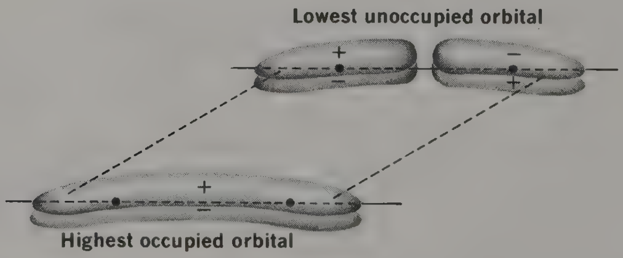

Antibonding
Lowest unoccupied
Bonding
Highest occupied
π orbitals of an isolated C ═ C bond
Lowest unoccupied
Antibonding
Highest occupied
Bonding
π orbitals of a conjugated diene
+
−

Figure 1 Schematic drawings of the π orbitals of an isolated C═C bond and a conjugated diene.

The Frontier-Orbital Method[676]

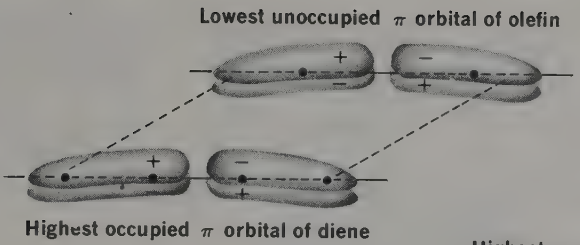
As applied to cycloaddition reactions the rule is that *reactions are allowed only when all overlaps between the highest-occupied molecular orbital* (HOMO) *of one reactant and the lowest-unoccupied molecular orbital* (LUMO) *of the other are such that a positive lobe overlaps only with another positive lobe and a negative lobe only with another negative lobe.* We may recall that monoolefins have two π molecular orbitals (p. 8) and that conjugated dienes have four (p. 28), as shown in Figure 1. A concerted cyclization of two monoolefins (a 2 + 2 reaction) is not allowed because it would require that a positive lobe overlap with a negative lobe:

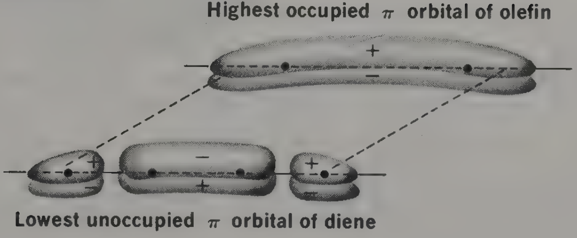

Lowest unoccupied orbital
+
−
Highest occupied orbital

On the other hand, the Diels–Alder reaction (a 4 + 2 reaction) is allowed, whether considered from either direction:

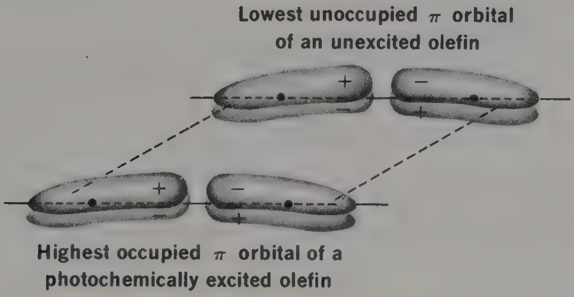
---

[676] Fukui and Fujimoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40,** 2018 (1967), **42,** 3399 (1969); Fukui, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **15,** 1–85 (1970), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 57–64 (1971); Houk, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 361–369 (1975). See also Chu, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 645 (1978). For a monograph on frontier orbitals, see Fleming, Ref. 673. For reviews, see Fukui, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 801–809 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 852–861]; Houk, in Marchand and Lehr, "Pericyclic Reactions," vol. 2, pp. 181–271, Academic Press, New York, 1977.


Lowest unoccupied π orbital of olefin
+
−
−
+
+
−
+
Highest occupied π orbital of diene


Highest occupied π orbital of olefin
+
−
+
−
+
+
−
−
Lowest unoccupied π orbital of diene

These considerations are reversed when the ring closures are photochemically induced since in such cases an electron is promoted to a vacant orbital before the reaction occurs. Obviously, the 2 + 2 reaction is now allowed:


Lowest unoccupied π orbital of an unexcited olefin
+
−
−
+
+
−
+
Highest occupied π orbital of a photochemically excited olefin

and the 4 + 2 reaction disallowed. The reverse reactions follow the same rules, by the principle of microscopic reversibility. In fact, Diels–Alder adducts are usually cleaved quite readily, while cyclobutanes, despite the additional strain, require more strenuous conditions.

The Möbius–Hückel Method[677]

In this method, the orbital symmetry rules are related to the Hückel aromaticity rule discussed in Chapter 2. Hückel's rule, which states that a cyclic system of electrons is aromatic (hence, stable) when it consists of $4n + 2$ electrons, applies of course to molecules in their ground states. In applying the orbital symmetry principle we are not concerned with ground states, but with transition states. In the present method we do not examine the molecular orbitals themselves, but rather the *p* orbitals before they overlap to form the molecular orbitals. Such a set of *p* orbitals is called a *basis set* (Figure 2). In investigating the possibility of a concerted reaction, we put the basis sets into the position they would occupy in the transition state. Figure 3 shows this for both the 2 + 2 and the 4 + 2 ring closures. What we look for are *sign inversions.* In Figure 3 we can see that

---

[677] Zimmerman, in Marchand and Lehr, Ref. 676, pp. 53–107; *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 272–280 (1971); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1564, 1566 (1966); Dewar, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 761–775 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 859–875]; Jefford and Burger, *Chimia,* **25,** 297–307 (1971); Herndon, *J. Chem. Educ.* **58,** 371–376 (1981).

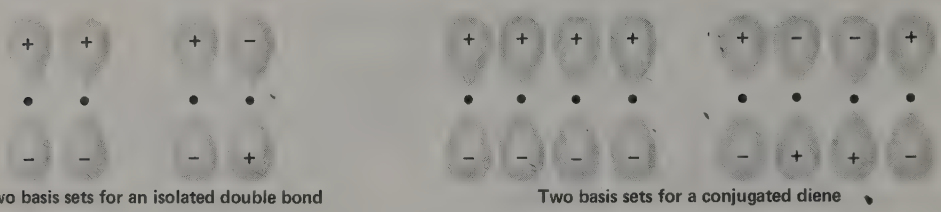

Two basis sets for an isolated double bond
Two basis sets for a conjugated diene

Figure 2 Some basis sets.

there are no sign inversions in either case. That is, the dashed line connects only lobes with a minus sign. Systems with *zero or an even number* of sign inversions are called *Hückel systems.* Because they have no sign inversions, both of these systems are Hückel systems. Systems with *an odd number* of sign inversions are called *Möbius systems* (because of the similarity to the Möbius strip, which is a mathematical surface, shown in Figure 4). Möbius systems do not enter into either of these reactions, but examples of such systems are shown on p. 1006 and 1027.

The rule may then be stated: *A thermal pericyclic reaction involving a Hückel system is allowed only if the total number of electrons is 4n + 2. A thermal pericyclic reaction involving a Möbius system is allowed only if the total number of electrons is 4n.* For photochemical reactions these rules are reversed. Since both the 4 + 2 and 2 + 2 cycloadditions are Hückel systems, the Möbius–Hückel method predicts that the 4 + 2 reaction, with 6 electrons, is thermally allowed, but the 2 + 2 reaction is not. On the other hand, the 2 + 2 reaction is allowed photochemically, while the 4 + 2 reaction is forbidden.

Note that both the 2 + 2 and 4 + 2 transition states are Hückel systems no matter what basis sets we chose. For example, Figure 5 shows other basis sets we might have chosen. In every case there will be zero or an even number of sign inversions.

Thus, the frontier-orbital and Hückel–Möbius methods (and the correlation-diagram method as well) lead to the same conclusions: thermal 2 + 4 cycloadditions and photochemical 2 + 2 cycloadditions (and the reverse ring openings) are allowed, while photochemical 2 + 4 and thermal 2 + 2 ring closings (and openings) are forbidden. Application of the same procedures to other

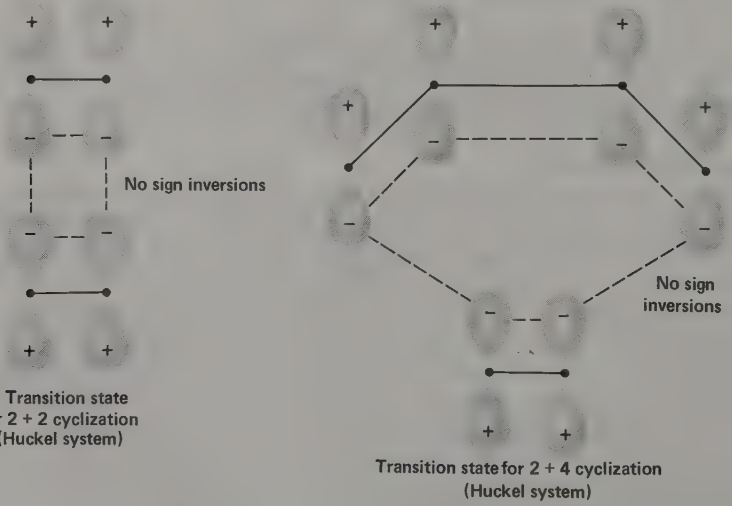

No sign inversions
Transition state for 2 + 2 cyclization (Huckel system)
No sign inversions
Transition state for 2 + 4 cyclization (Huckel system)

Figure 3 Transition states illustrating Hückel–Möbius rules for cycloaddition reactions.

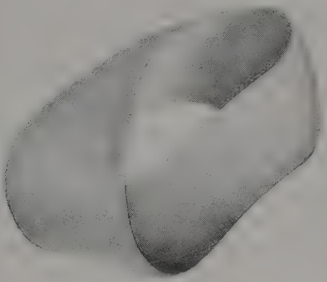


Figure 4 A Möbius strip. Such a strip is easily constructed by twisting a thin strip of paper 180° and fastening the ends together.

ring closures shows that 4 + 4 and 6 + 2 ring closures and openings require photochemical induction while the 6 + 4 and 8 + 2 reactions can take place only thermally (see **5-51**). In general cycloaddition reactions allowed thermally are those with $4n + 2$ electrons, while those allowed photochemically have $4n$ electrons.

It must be emphasized once again that the rules apply only to cycloaddition reactions that take place by cyclic mechanisms, i.e., where two σ bonds are formed (or broken) at about the same time.[678] The rule does not apply to cases where one bond is clearly formed (or broken) before the other. It must further be emphasized that the fact that the thermal Diels–Alder reaction (mechanism *a*) is allowed by the principle of conservation of orbital symmetry does not constitute proof that any given Diels–Alder reaction proceeds by this mechanism. The principle merely says the mechanism is allowed, not that it must go by this pathway. However, the principle does say that thermal 2 + 2 cycloadditions in which the molecules assume a face-to-face geometry cannot[679] take place

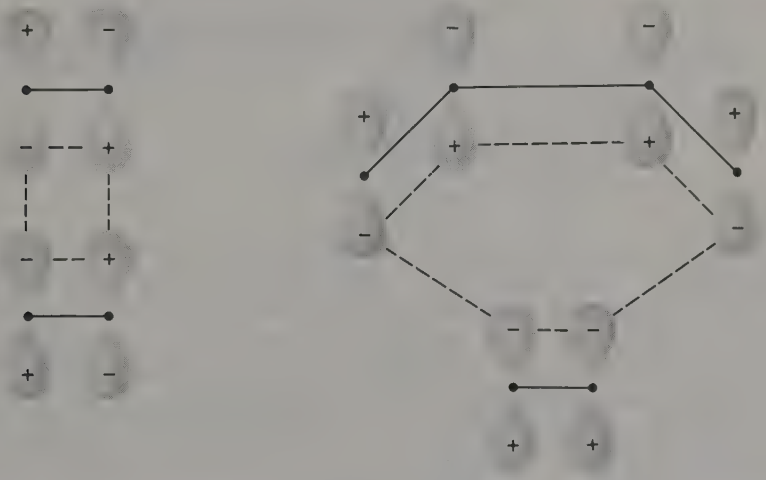


Figure 5 Transition states for 2 + 2 and 2 + 4 cyclizations involving other basis sets.

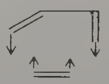
---

[678] For a discussion of concertedness in these reactions, see Lehr and Marchand, in Marchand and Lehr, Ref. 676, vol. 1, pp. 1–51.

[679] The possibility has been raised that some disallowed reactions may nevertheless proceed by concerted mechanisms: see Schmidt, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 862 (1971), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 581 (1972); Muszkat and Schmidt, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 1195 (1971); Baldwin, Andrist, and Pinschmidt, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 402–406 (1972); Berson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 406–414 (1972); Baldwin, in Marchand and Lehr, Ref. 676, vol. 2, pp. 273–302.

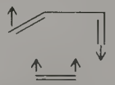
by a cyclic mechanism because their activation energies would be too high (however, see below). As we shall see (**5-48**), such reactions largely occur by two-step mechanisms. Similarly, 4 + 2 photochemical cycloadditions are also known, but the fact that they are not stereospecific indicates that they also take place by the two-step diradical mechanism[680] (mechanism *b*[681]).

In all of the above discussion we have assumed that a given molecule forms both the new σ bonds from the same face of the π system. This manner of bond formation, called *suprafacial,* is certainly most reasonable and almost always takes place. The subscript s is used to designate this geometry, and a normal Diels–Alder reaction would be called a $[_{\pi}4_s + {}_{\pi}2_s]$ cycloaddition (the subscript π indicates that π electrons are involved in the cycloaddition). However, we can conceive of another approach in which the newly forming bonds of the diene lie on *opposite* faces of the π system, i.e., they point in opposite directions.



Normal Diels-Alder reaction

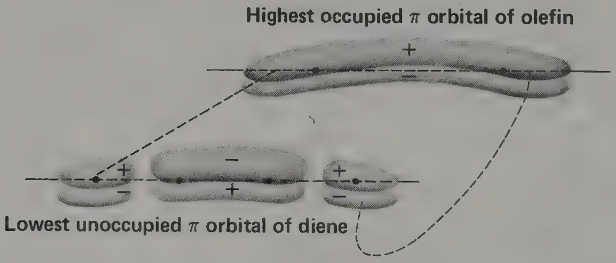
$[4_s + 2_s]$



Twisted Diels-Alder reaction

$[4_a + 2_s]$

This type of orientation of the newly formed bonds is called *antarafacial,* and the reaction would be a $[_{\pi}4_a + {}_{\pi}2_s]$ cycloaddition (a stands for antarafacial). We can easily show by the frontier-orbital method that this reaction (and consequently the reverse ring-opening reaction) are thermally forbidden and photochemically allowed. Thus in order for a $[_{\pi}4_a + {}_{\pi}2_s]$ reaction to proceed, overlap between the highest occupied π orbital of the olefin and the lowest unoccupied π orbital of the diene would have to occur as follows, with a + lobe overlapping a − lobe:


Highest occupied π orbital of olefin
+
−
−
+
+
−
+
−
Lowest unoccupied π orbital of diene

Since like signs are no longer overlapping, the thermal reaction is now forbidden. Similarly, thermal $[_{\pi}4_s + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ and $[_{\pi}2_a + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ cyclizations are forbidden, while thermal $[_{\pi}4_a + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ and $[_{\pi}2_s + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ cyclizations are allowed, and these considerations are reversed for the corresponding photochemical processes. Of course, an antarafacial approach is highly unlikely in a 2 + 4 cyclization,[682] but larger ring closures could take place by such a pathway, and 2 + 2 thermal cyclizations, where the $[_{\pi}2_s + {}_{\pi}2_s]$ pathway is forbidden, can also do so in certain cases (see **5-48**). We therefore see that whether a given cycloaddition is allowed or forbidden depends on the geometry of approach of the two molecules involved.

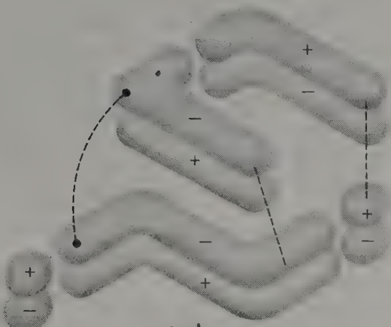
---

[680] It has been contended that 2 + 2 thermal and 2 + 4 photochemical cycloadditions occur by concerted mechanisms and the observed nonstereospecificity stems from completely concerted processes: Epiotis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1191, 1935, 1941 (1972).

[681] For example, see Sieber, Heimgartner, Hansen, and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **55,** 3005 (1972). For discussions, see Bartlett, Helgeson, and Wersel, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **16,** 187–200 (1968); Seeley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4378 (1972); Kaupp, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 313, 718 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 259, 718].

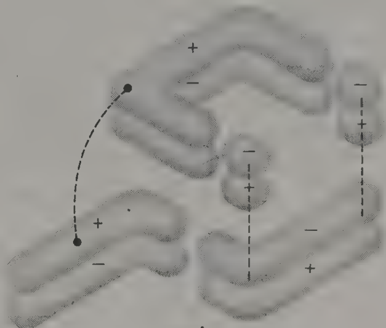
[682] A possible photochemical $[_{\pi}4_s + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ cycloaddition has been reported: Hart, Miyashi, Buchanan, and Sasson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4857 (1974).

Symmetry considerations have also been advanced to explain predominant endo addition.[683] In the case of 4 + 2 addition of butadiene to itself, the approach may be exo or endo:



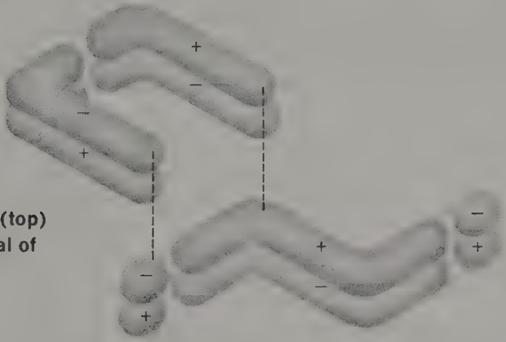
endo

Highest-occupied orbital of diene (top) overlaps lowest-unoccupied orbital of "olefin" (bottom)



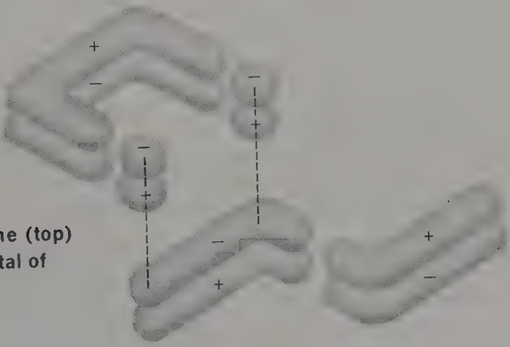
endo

Lowest-unoccupied orbital of diene (top) overlaps highest occupied orbital of "olefin" (bottom)



exo

Highest-occupied orbital of diene (top) overlaps lowest-unoccupied orbital of "olefin" (bottom)



exo

Lowest unoccupied orbital of diene (top) overlaps highest-occupied orbital of "olefin" (bottom)

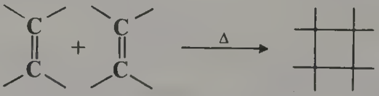
---

[683] Hoffmann and Woodward, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 4388 (1965).

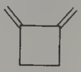
It can be seen that whether the highest-occupied molecular orbital of the diene overlaps with the lowest-unoccupied molecular orbital of the olefin or vice versa, the endo orientation is stabilized by additional secondary overlap of orbitals[684] of like sign (dashed lines between heavy dots). Addition from the exo direction has no such stabilization. Evidence for secondary orbital overlap as the cause of predominant endo orientation, at least in some cases, is that 6 + 4 cycloaddition is predicted by similar considerations to proceed with predominant exo orientation, and that is what is found.[685] However, this explanation does not account for endo orientation in cases where the dienophile does not possess additional π orbitals, and a number of alternative explanations have also been offered.[686]

OS **II,** 102; **III,** 310, 807; **IV,** 238, 311, 738, 890, 964; **V,** 60, 96, 414, 424, 604, 985, 1037; **50,** 24, 36, 43; **58,** 68, 163; **59,** 71; **60,** 41; **61,** 147.

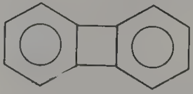
5-48 Dimerization of Olefins



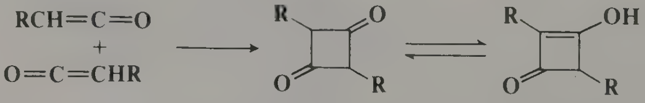
The thermal reaction between two molecules of olefin to give cyclobutane derivatives (a 2 + 2 cycloaddition) can be carried out where the olefins are the same or different, but the reaction is not a general one for olefins.[687] Dimerization of like olefins occurs with the following compounds: $F_2C{=}CX_2$ (X = F or Cl) and certain other fluorinated alkenes (though not $F_2C{=}CH_2$), allenes (to give derivatives of **84**),[688] benzynes [to give biphenylene (**85**) derivatives], activated olefins (e.g., styrene, acrylonitrile, butadiene), and certain methylenecyclopropanes.[689] Substituted ketenes dimerize to give cyclobutenone derivatives (**86**) as the major primary products, though ketene itself dimerizes in a different manner, to give an unsaturated β-lactone (**6-65**).[690]



84



85



86

---

[684] For reviews of secondary orbital interactions, see Ginsburg, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2095–2135 (1983); Gleiter and Paquette, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 328–334 (1983).

[685] See, for example, Cookson, Drake, Hudec, and Morrison, *Chem. Commun.* 15 (1966); Itô, Fujise, Okuda, and Inoue, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 1351 (1966); Paquette and Barrett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2590 (1966); Paquette, Barrett, and Kuhla, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3616 (1969); Houk and Woodward, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4143, 4145 (1970); Jones and Kneen, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 420 (1973).

[686] See, for example, Houk, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2621 (1970); Houk and Luskus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4606 (1971); Kobuke, Fueno, and Furukawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6548 (1970); Kobuke, Sugimoto, Furukawa, and Fueno, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3633 (1972); Jacobson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2579 (1973); Mellor and Webb, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 17, 26 (1974); Cantello, Mellor, and Webb, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 22 (1974).

[687] For reviews, see Reinhoudt, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **21,** 253–321 (1977); Roberts and Sharts, *Org. React.* **12,** 1–56 (1962); Gilchrist and Storr, Ref. 673, pp. 173–212; Beltrame, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 1, vol. 9, pp. 131–152; Huisgen, Grashey, and Sauer, in Patai, Ref. 32, pp. 779–802; Wilson and Goldhamer, *J. Chem. Educ.* **40,** 599–603 (1963). For a review of the use of 2 + 2 cycloadditions in polymerization reactions, see Dilling, *Chem. Rev.* **83,** 1–47 (1983).

[688] For a review, see Fischer in Patai, Ref. 32, pp. 1064–1067.

[689] Dolbier, Lomas, Garza, Harmon, and Tarrant, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 3185 (1972).

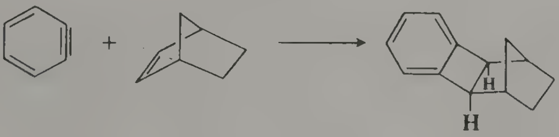
[690] Farnum, Johnson, Hess, Marshall, and Webster, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5191 (1965).

Different olefins combine as follows:

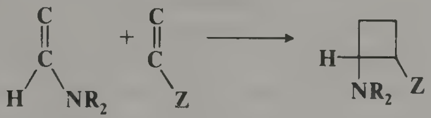
1. $F_2C{=}CX_2$ (X = F or Cl), especially $F_2C{=}CF_2$, form cyclobutanes with many olefins. Compounds of this type even react with conjugated dienes to give four-membered rings rather than undergoing normal Diels–Alder reactions.[691]

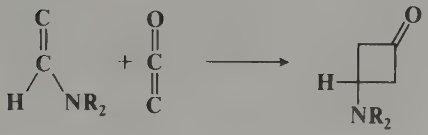
2. Allenes[692] and ketenes[693] react with activated olefins and alkynes. Ketenes give 1,2 addition, even with conjugated dienes.[694] Ketenes also add to unactivated olefins if sufficiently long reaction times are used.[695] A synthon for a ketene in this reaction is a ketenimmonium salt $R_2C{=}C{=}NR'_2{}^+\ ZnCl_3{}^-$.[696] The product is readily hydrolyzed (**6-2**) to the same cyclobutanone that would be obtained from the corresponding ketene. Allenes and ketenes also add to each other.[697]

3. Benzynes react with certain olefins,[698] e.g.,



4. Enamines[699] form four-membered rings with Michael-type olefins[700] and ketenes.[701] In both cases, only enamines from aldehydes give stable four-membered rings:





---

[691] Bartlett, Montgomery, and Seidel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 616 (1964).

[692] For reviews of 2 + 2 cycloadditions of allenes, see Ghosez and O'Donnell, in Marchand and Lehr, Ref. 676, vol. 2, pp. 79–140; Baldwin and Fleming, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **15,** 281-310 (1970).

[693] For reviews of cycloadditions of ketenes, see Ghosez and O'Donnell, Ref. 692; Brady, *Synthesis* 415–422 (1971); Luknitskii and Vovsi, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 487–494 (1969); Ulrich, "Cycloaddition Reactions of Heterocumulenes," pp. 38–121, Academic Press, New York, 1967; Holder, *J. Chem. Educ.* **53,** 81–85 (1976).

[694] See, for example, Martin, Gott, Goodlett, and Hasek, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 4175 (1965); Brady and O'Neal, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2704 (1967); Huisgen, Feiler, and Otto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4491 (1968), *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 3475 (1969); Ghosez, Montaigne, Roussel, Vanlierde, and Mollet, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 615 (1971). For indirect methods of the 1,4 addition of the elements of ketene to a diene, see Freeman, Balls, and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2211 (1968); Corey, Ravindranathan, and Terashima, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4326 (1971). For a review of ketene equivalents, see Ranganathan, Ranganathan, and Mehrotra, *Synthesis* 289–296 (1977).

[695] Huisgen and Feiler, *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 3391 (1969); Brady and Patel, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4106 (1973); Bak and Brady, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 107 (1979).

[696] Marchand-Brynaert and Ghosez, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2870 (1972). For a review of these compounds, see Ghosez and Marchand-Brynaert, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **9,** pt. 1, 421–532 (1976).

[697] Bampfield, Brook, and McDonald, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 132 (1975); Gras and Bertrand, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **5,** 521 (1981).

[698] Simmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1657 (1961); Bowne, Christopher, and Levin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4111 (1976). See also Crews and Beard, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 522, 529 (1973). For a review, see Hoffmann, Ref. 643, pp. 200–205.

[699] For reviews of cycloaddition reactions of enamines, see Cook, in Cook, "Enamines," pp. 211–252, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Szmuszkovicz, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **4,** 1–113 (1963), pp. 39–42.

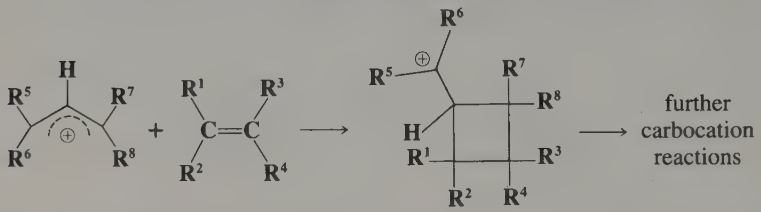
[700] Brannock, Bell, Goodlett, and Thweatt, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 813 (1964).

[701] Berchtold, Harvey, and Wilson, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 4776 (1961); Opitz and Kleeman, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **665,** 114 (1963); Hasek, Gott, and Martin, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1931 (1966).

The reaction of enamines with ketenes can conveniently be carried out by generating the ketene in situ from an acyl halide and a tertiary amine. Ynamines react with ketenes to give the corresponding 3-dialkylaminocyclobutenones.[702]

5. Olefins with electron-withdrawing groups may form cyclobutanes with olefins containing electron-donating groups. The enamine reactions, mentioned above, are examples of this, but it has also been accomplished with tetracyanoethylene and similar molecules, which give substituted cyclobutanes when treated with olefins of the form C=C—A, where A may be OR, SR (enol and thioenol ethers),[703] cyclopropyl,[704] or certain aryl groups.[705]

6. Certain allylic cations add to alkenes:[706]

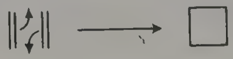


R⁵ and R⁶ must be alkyl groups. If not, 3 + 2 cycloaddition takes place instead.

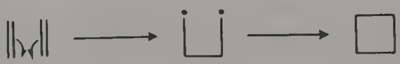
Solvents are not necessary for 2 + 2 cycloadditions. They are usually carried out at 100 to 225°C under pressure, although the reactions in group 5 occur under milder conditions.

The reaction is similar to the Diels–Alder (in action, not in scope), and if dienes are involved, the latter reaction may compete, though most olefins react with a diene either entirely by 1,2 or entirely by 1,4 addition. Three mechanisms can be proposed[707] analogous to those proposed for the Diels–Alder reaction. Mechanism *a* is a concerted pericyclic process, and mechanisms *b* and *c* are two-step reactions involving, respectively, a diradical (**87**) and a diion (**88**) intermediate. As in **5-47,** a diradical intermediate must be a singlet. In searching for ways to tell which mechanism is operating in a given case, we would expect mechanism *c* to be sensitive to changes in solvent polarity, while mechanisms *a* and *b* should be insensitive. We would also expect mechanism *a* to be stereospecific, while mechanisms *b* and *c* probably would not be stereospecific, though if the second step of these processes takes place very rapidly, before **87** or **88** has a chance to rotate

Mechanism *a*

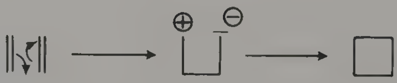


Mechanism *b*



87

Mechanism *c*



88

---

[702] Delaunois and Ghosez, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 72 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 36].

[703] Williams, Wiley, and McKusick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2210 (1962).

[704] Nishida, Moritani, and Teraji, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1878 (1973).

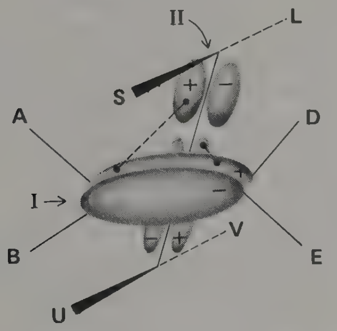
[705] Nagata, Shirota, Nogami, and Mikawa, *Chem. Lett.* 1087 (1973); Shirota, Yoshida, Nogami, and Mikawa, *Chem. Lett.* 1271 (1973).

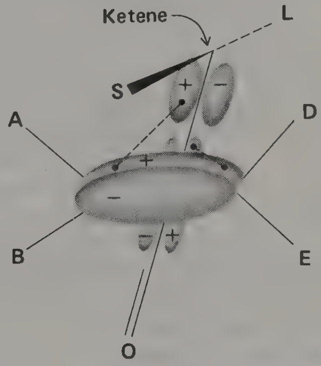
[706] Klein, Freyberger, and Mayr, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 49 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 62].

[707] For a review, see Bartlett, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **24,** 473–497 (1970).

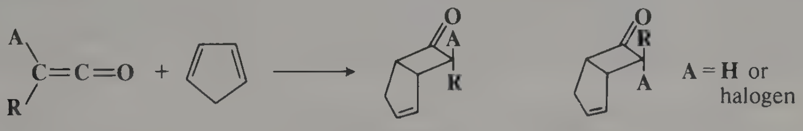
about the newly formed single bond, stereospecificity might be observed. Because of entropy considerations such rapid ring closure might be more likely here than in a 4 + 2 cycloaddition.

There is evidence that the reactions can take place by all three mechanisms, depending on the structure of the reactants. A thermal $[_{\pi}2_s + {}_{\pi}2_s]$ mechanism is ruled out for most of these substrates by the orbital symmetry rules, but a $[_{\pi}2_s + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ mechanism is allowed (p. 756), and there is much evidence that ketenes and certain other linear molecules in which the steric hindrance to such an approach is minimal can and often do react by this mechanism.[707a] In a $[_{\pi}2_s + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ cycloaddition the molecules must approach each other in such a way that the + lobe of the HOMO of one molecule (I) overlaps with both + lobes of the LUMO of the other (II), even though these lobes are on opposite sides of the nodal plane of II.





The geometry of this approach requires that the groups S and U of molecule II project *into* the plane of molecule I. This has not been found to happen for ordinary alkenes,[708] but if molecule II is a ketene, the group marked U is not present and the $[_{\pi}2_s + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ reaction can take place. Among the evidence[709] for this mechanism is the following: (1) The reactions are stereospecific.[710] (2) The isomer that forms is the *more-hindered one*. Thus methylketene plus cyclopentadiene gave only the endo product (**89**, A = H, R = CH_3).[711] Even more remarkably, when haloalkyl ketenes



endo **89** exo **90**

[707a] There is evidence that a cyclopentyne (generated in situ) also adds to a double bond by an antarafacial process: Gilbert and Baze, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106**, 1885 (1984).

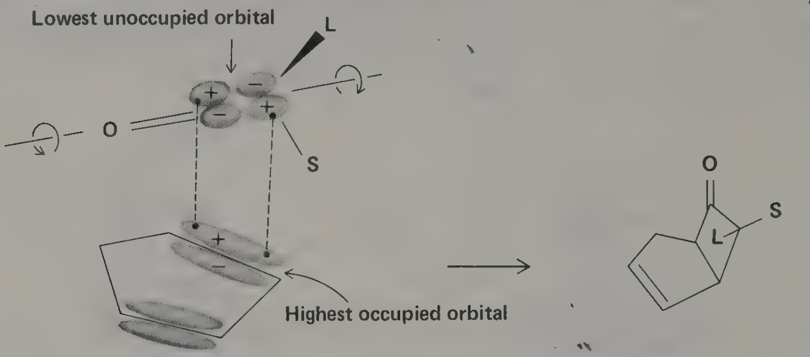
[708] See, for example, Padwa, Koehn, Masaracchia, Osborn, and Trecker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 3633 (1971); Bartlett, Cohen, Elliott, Hummel, Minns, Sharts, and Fukunaga, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 2899 (1972).

[709] For other evidence, see Baldwin and Kapecki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 4874 (1970); Brook and Griffiths, *Chem. Commun.* 1344 (1970); Frey and Isaacs, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 830 (1970); Egger, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **5**, 285 (1973); Moon and Kolesar, *J. Org. Chem.* **39**, 995 (1974); Isaacs and Hatcher, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 593 (1974); Hassner, Cory, and Sartoris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98**, 7698 (1976); Gheorghiu, Pârvulescu, Drâghici, and Elian, *Tetrahedron* **37** *Suppl.* 143 (1981). See however Holder, Graf, Duesler, and Moss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105**, 2929 (1983).

[710] Huisgen, Feiler, and Binsch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3**, 753 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76**, 892], *Chem. Ber.* **102**, 3460 (1969); Martin, Goodlett, and Burpitt, *J. Org. Chem.* **30**, 4309 (1965); Montaigne and Ghosez, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7**, 221 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80**, 194]; Bertrand, Gras, and Gore, *Tetrahedron* **31**, 857 (1975); Marchand-Brynaert and Ghosez, Ref. 696; Huisgen and Mayr, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2965, 2969 (1975).

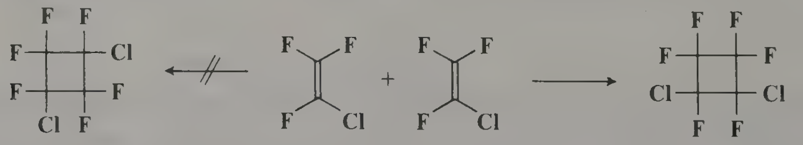
[711] Brady, Hoff, Roe, and Parry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91**, 5679 (1969); Rey, Roberts, Dieffenbacher, and Dreiding, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53**, 417 (1970). See also Brady and Roe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 1662 (1971); Brady, Parry, and Stockton, *J. Org. Chem.* **36**, 1486 (1971); DoMinh and Strausz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 1766 (1970); Isaacs and Stanbury, *Chem. Commun.* 1061 (1970); Brook, Harrison, and Duke, *Chem. Commun.* 589 (1970); Dehmlow, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2573 (1973); Bampfield, Brook, and McDonald, Ref. 697; Rey, Roberts, Dreiding, Roussel, Vanlierde, Toppet, and Ghosez, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **65**, 703 (1982).

RXC=C=O were treated with cyclopentadiene, the endo–exo ratio of the product (**89**, **90**, A = halogen) actually *increased* substantially when R was changed from Me to iso-Pr to *t*-Bu![712] One would expect preferential formation of the exo products (**90**) from $[_{\pi}2_s + {_{\pi}2_s}]$ cycloadditions where the molecules approach each other face-to-face, but a $[_{\pi}2_s + {_{\pi}2_a}]$ process leads to endo products because the ketene molecule (which for steric reasons would approach with its smaller group directed toward the olefin) must twist as shown



(L = larger; S = smaller group) in order for the + lobes to interact and this swings the larger group into the endo position.[713] The experimental results in which the amount of endo isomer increases with the increasing size of the R group have been called *masochistic steric effects*, though, as we have seen, they are just what would be expected from a $[_{\pi}2_s + {_{\pi}2_a}]$ reaction. (3) There is only moderate polar solvent acceleration.[714] (4) The rate of the reaction is not very sensitive to the presence of electron-withdrawing or electron-donating substituents.[715] Because cycloadditions involving allenes are often stereospecific, it has been suggested that these also take place by the $[_{\pi}2_s + {_{\pi}2_a}]$ mechanism,[716] but the evidence in these cases is more consistent with the diradical mechanism *b*.[717]

The diradical mechanism *b* is most prominent in the reactions involving fluorinated alkenes. These reactions are generally not stereospecific[718] and are insensitive to solvent effects. Further evidence that a diion is not involved is that head-to-head coupling is found when an unsymmetrical molecule is dimerized. Thus dimerization of $F_2C{=}CFCl$ gives **91**, not **92**. If one pair of electrons



92 **91**

---

[712] Brady and Roe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 4618 (1970).

[713] Brook, Harrison, and Duke, Ref. 711.

[714] Brady and O'Neal, *J. Org. Chem.* **32**, 612 (1967); Huisgen and Otto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 5342 (1968); Huisgen, Feiler, and Otto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4485 (1968), *Chem. Ber.* **102**, 3444 (1969); Sterk, *Z. Naturforsch., Teil B*, **27**, 143 (1972).

[715] Baldwin and Kapecki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92**, 4868 (1970); Isaacs and Stanbury, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 166 (1973).

[716] For example, see Kiefer and Okamura, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90**, 4187 (1968); Baldwin and Roy, *Chem. Commun.* 1225 (1969); Moore, Bach, and Ozretich, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91**, 5918 (1969).

[717] Muscio and Jacobs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2867 (1969); Taylor, Warburton, and Wright, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 385 (1971); Taylor and Wright, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 391 (1971); Dai and Dolbier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 3946 (1972); Duncan, Weyler, and Moore, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4391 (1973); Roth, Heiber and Erker, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12**, 504 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85**, 511]; Grimme and Rother, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12**, 505 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85**, 512]; Levek and Kiefer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98**, 1875 (1976); Pasto, Heid, and Warren, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 3676 (1982).

[718] Montgomery, Schueller, and Bartlett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86**, 621 (1964); Bartlett, Hummel, Elliott, and Minns, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94**, 2898 (1972).

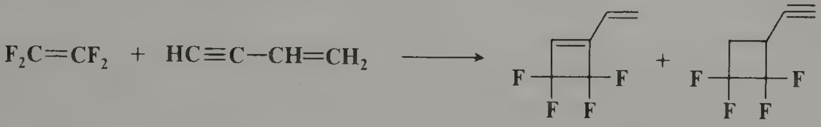
moved before the other, the positive end of one molecule would be expected to attack the negative end of the other.[719]

The diion mechanism[720] *c* has been reported for at least some of the reactions[721] in categories 4 and 5,[722] as well as some ketene dimerizations.[723] For example, the rate of the reaction between 1,2-bis(trifluoromethyl)-1,2-dicyanoethene and ethyl vinyl ether was strongly influenced by changes in solvent polarity.[724] Some of these reactions are nonstereospecific, but others are stereospecific.[725] As previously indicated, it is likely that in the latter cases the diionic intermediate closes before rotation can take place. Such rapid ring closure is more likely for a diion than for a diradical because of the attraction between the opposite charges. Other evidence for the diion mechanism in these cases is that reaction rates are greatly dependent on the presence of electron-donating and electron-withdrawing groups and that it is possible to trap the diionic intermediates.

Whether a given olefin reacts by the diradical or diion mechanism depends, among other things, on the groups attached to it. For example, phenyl and vinyl groups at the α positions of **87** or **88** help to stabilize a diradical, while donors such as oxygen and nitrogen favor a diion (they stabilize the positively charged end).[726] A table on p. 451 of reference 726 shows which mechanism is more likely for 2 + 2 cycloadditions of various pairs of olefins.

Thermal cleavage of cyclobutanes[727] to give two olefin molecules (*cycloreversion,*[728] the reverse of 2 + 2 cycloaddition) operates by the diradical mechanism, and the $[_{\sigma}2_s + {}_{\sigma}2_a]$ pathway has not been found[729] (the subscripts σ indicate that σ bonds are involved in this reaction).

In some cases, double bonds add to triple bonds to give cyclobutenes, apparently at about the same rate that they add to double bonds, e.g.,



About equal amounts

The addition of triple bonds to triple bonds would give cyclobutadienes, and this has not been observed, except where these rearrange before they can be isolated (see **5-50**)[730] or in the presence of a suitable coordination compound, so that the cyclobutadiene is produced in the form of a complex (p. 53).[731]

---

[719] For additional evidence, based on radical stabilities, see Silversmith, Kitahara, Caserio, and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5840 (1958); Ref. 691; Doering and Guyton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3229 (1978).

[720] For reviews of this mechanism, see Huisgen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 117–124, 199–206 (1977); Huisgen, Schug, and Steiner, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1813–1820 (1976).

[721] For a review of cycloadditions with polar intermediates, see Gompper, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 312–327 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 348–363].

[722] The reactions of ketenes with enamines and ynamines are apparently not concerted but take place by the diionic mechanism: Otto, Feiler, and Huisgen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 737 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 759]; Ref. 702.

[723] See Moore and Wilbur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6523 (1978).

[724] Proskow, Simmons, and Cairns, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5254 (1966). See also Huisgen, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 2283–2302 (1980).

[725] Proskow, Simmons, and Cairns, Ref. 724; Huisgen and Steiner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5054, 5055 (1973).

[726] Hall, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 440–455 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 448–464].

[727] See Frey, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 147–193 (1966), pp. 170–175, 180–183.

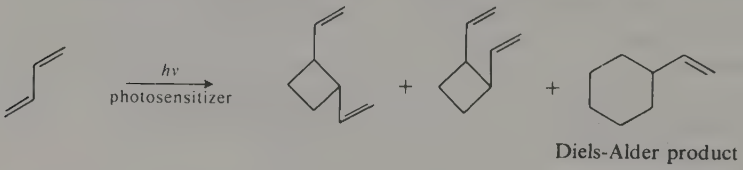
[728] For a review of 2 + 2 cycloreversions, see Schaumann and Ketcham, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 225–247 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 231–253].

[729] See, for example, Cocks, Frey, and Stevens, *Chem. Commun.* 458 (1969); Srinivasan and Hsu, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1213 (1972); Paquette and Kukla, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1241 (1973); Paquette and Carmody, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 8175 (1976). See however Cant, Coxon, and Hartshorn, *Aust. J. Chem.* **28,** 391 (1975).

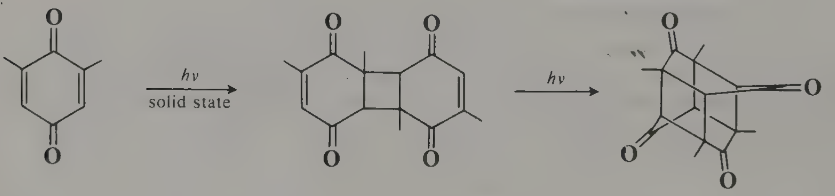
[730] For a review of these cases, and of cycloadditions of triple bonds to double bonds, see Fuks and Viehe, in Viehe, Ref. 41, pp. 435–442.

[731] D'Angelo, Ficini, Martinon, Riche, and Sevin, *J. Orgomet. Chem.* **177,** 265 (1979). For a review, see Hogeveen and Kok, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 41, pt. 2, pp. 981–1013.

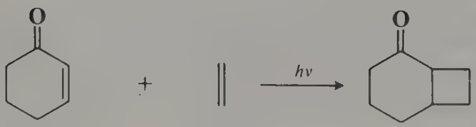
Although thermal 2 + 2 cycloaddition reactions are essentially limited to the cases described above, many (though by no means all) double-bond compounds undergo such reactions *when photochemically excited* (either directly or by a photosensitizer—see p. 211), even if they are not in the above categories.[732] Simple alkenes absorb in the far uv (p. 206), which is difficult to reach experimentally, though this problem can sometimes be overcome by the use of suitable photosensitizers. The reaction has been applied to simple alkenes[733] (especially to strained compounds such as cyclopropenes and cyclobutenes), but more often the double-bond compounds involved are conjugated dienes,[734] α,β-unsaturated ketones,[735] acids or acid derivatives, or quinones, since these compounds, because they are conjugated, absorb at longer wavelengths (p. 205). Both dimerizations and mixed additions are common, some examples being (see also the example on p. 216):



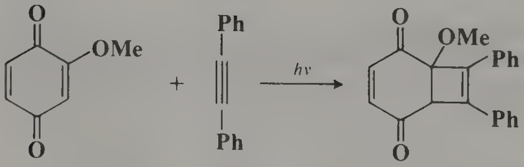
Ref. 736



Ref. 737



Ref. 738



Ref. 739

---

[732] For reviews, see Baldwin, *Org. Photochem.* **5,** 123–225 (1981); Kricka and Ledwith, *Synthesis* 539–549 (1974); Herndon, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **46,** 141–179 (1974); Sammes, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **24,** 37–68 (1970), pp. 46–55; Crowley and Mazzocchi, in Zabicky, Ref. 102, pp. 297–316; Scharf, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **11,** 216–244 (1969); Steinmetz, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **7,** 445–527 (1967); Warrener and Bremner, *Rev. Appl. Chem.* **16,** 117–173 (1966), pp. 122–128; Turro, Dalton, and Weiss, *Org. Photochem.* **2,** 1–62 (1969); Trecker, *Org. Photochem.* **2,** 63–116 (1969); Fonken, *Org. Photochem.* **1,** 197–246 (1967); Chapman and Lenz, *Org. Photochem.* **1,** 283–321 (1967); Schönberg, Ref. 41, pp. 70–96, 109–117; Neckers, "Mechanistic Organic Photochemistry," pp. 98–130, 138–148, Reinhold, New York, 1967; Kan, "Organic Photochemistry," pp. 155–198, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1966; Turro, "Modern Molecular Photochemistry," pp. 417–425, 458–465, Benjamin/Cummings, Menlo Park, Calif., 1978. See also Caldwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4004 (1980).

[733] For examples of nonphotosensitized dimerization of simple alkenes, see Arnold and Abraitys, *Chem. Commun.* 1053 (1967); Yamazaki and Cvetanović, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 520 (1969).

[734] For a review, see Dilling, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 845–877 (1969).

[735] For reviews, see Lenz, *Rev. Chem. Intermed.* **4,** 369–404 (1981); Margaretha, *Chimia* 203–209 (1975); Bauslaugh, *Synthesis* 287–300 (1970); Eaton, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 50–57 (1968).

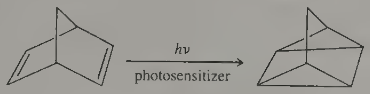
[736] Hammond, Turro, and Fischer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4674 (1961); Hammond, Turro, and Liu, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 3297 (1963); Liu, Turro, and Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3406 (1965); Cundall and Griffiths, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **61,** 1968 (1965); DeBoer, Turro, and Hammond, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 528.

[737] Cookson, Cox, and Hudec, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4499 (1961).

[738] Owsley and Bloomfield, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 3445 (1971). See also Corey, Bass, LeMahieu, and Mitra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5570 (1964).

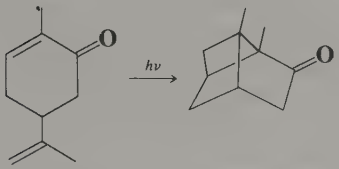
[739] Pappas and Pappas, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1597 (1967).

Photochemical 2 + 2 cycloadditions can also take place intramolecularly if a molecule has two double bonds that are properly oriented.[740] The cyclization of the quinone dimer shown above is one example. Other examples are



Quadricyclane

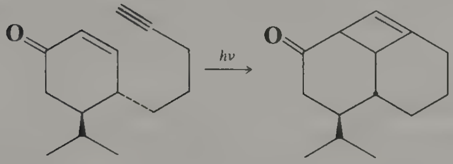
Ref. 741



Carvone

Carvonecamphor

Ref. 742



Ref. 743

It is obvious that many molecules can be constructed in this way that would be difficult to make by other procedures. However, attempted cyclizations of this kind are not always successful. In many cases polymeric or other side products are obtained instead of the desired product.

It is possible that some of these photochemical cycloadditions take place by a $[_{\pi}2_s + _{\pi}2_s]$ mechanism (which is of course allowed by orbital symmetry); when and if they do, one of the molecules must be in the excited singlet state (S_1) and the other in the ground state.[744] The non-photosensitized dimerizations of *cis*- and *trans*-2-butene are stereospecific,[745] making it likely that the $[_{\pi}2_s + _{\pi}2_s]$ mechanism is operating in these reactions. However, in most cases it is a triplet excited state that reacts with the ground-state molecule; in these cases the diradical (or in certain cases, the diionic) mechanism is taking place. Photosensitized $2\pi + 2\pi$ cycloadditions almost always involve the triplet state and hence a diradical (or diionic) mechanism.

The photochemical diradical mechanism is not quite the same as the thermal diradical mechanism. In the thermal mechanism the initially formed diradical must be a singlet, but in the photochemical process a triplet excited state is adding to a ground state (which is of course a singlet). Thus, in order to conserve spin,[746] the initially formed diradical must be a triplet; i.e., the two electrons must have the same spin. Consequently the second, or ring-closing, step of the mechanism cannot take place at once, because a new bond cannot form from a combination of two electrons with the same spin, and the diradical has a reasonably long lifetime before collisions with molecules in the environment allow a spin inversion to take place and the diradical to cyclize. We would therefore predict nonstereospecificity, and that is what is found.[747] At least some 2 + 2 photocycloadditions take place by way of exciplex intermediates[748] [an *exciplex*[749] is an excited EDA complex (p. 74) which is dissociated in the ground state; in this case one double bond is the donor and the other the acceptor].

---

[740] For reviews, see Oppolzer, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 135–141 (1982); Prinzbach, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **16,** 17–46 (1968); Dilling, *Chem. Rev.* **66,** 373–393 (1966).

[741] Hammond, Turro, and Fischer, Ref. 736; Dauben and Cargill, *Tetrahedron* **15,** 197 (1961). See also Cristol and Snell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 1950 (1958).

[742] Ciamician and Silber, *Ber.* **41,** 1928 (1908); Büchi and Goldman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 4741 (1957).

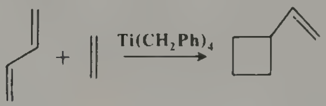
[743] Koft and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 2115 (1984).

[744] We have previously seen (p. 213) that reactions between two excited molecules are extremely rare.

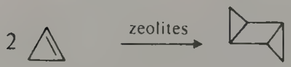
[745] Yamazaki and Cvetanović, Ref. 733; Yamazaki, Cvetanović, and Irwin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2198 (1976). For another likely example, see Lewis, Hoyle, and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3267 (1975).

[746] This is an example of the Wigner spin conservation rule (p. 211). Note that spin conservation is something entirely different from symmetry conservation.

It has been found that certain 2 + 2 cycloadditions which do not occur thermally can be made to take place without photochemical initiation by the use of certain catalysts, usually transition-metal compounds.[750] Examples are:



Ref. 751



Ref. 752

Among the catalysts used are Lewis acids[753] and phosphine–nickel complexes.[754] Certain of the reverse cyclobutane ring openings can also be catalytically induced (reaction **8-42**). The role of the catalyst is not certain and may be different in each case. One possibility is that the presence of the catalyst causes a forbidden reaction to become allowed, through coordination of the catalyst to the π or σ bonds of the substrate.[755] In such a case the reaction would of course be a concerted $2_s + 2_s$ process. However, the available evidence is more consistent with nonconcerted mechanisms involving metal–carbon σ-bonded intermediates, at least in most cases.[756] For example, such an intermediate was isolated in the dimerization of norbornadiene, catalyzed by iridium complexes.[757]

Thermal cycloadditions leading to four-membered rings can also take place between a cyclopropane ring and an alkene or alkyne[758] bearing electron-withdrawing groups.[759] These reactions are $_{\pi}2 + {}_{\sigma}2$ cycloadditions. Ordinary cyclopropanes do not undergo the reaction, but it has been accomplished with strained systems such as bicyclo[1.1.0]butanes[760] and bicyclo[2.1.0]pentanes.

---

[747] See for example, Liu and Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4936 (1967); Kramer and Bartlett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3934 (1972).

[748] See for example, Farid, Doty, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 711 (1972); Mizuno, Pac, and Sakurai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2993 (1974); Caldwell and Creed, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 45–50 (1980); Mattes and Farid, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 80–86 (1982).

[749] For a review of exciplexes, see Davidson, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **19,** 1–130 (1983).

[750] For a review, see Kricka and Ledwith, Ref. 732.

[751] Cannell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6867 (1972).

[752] Schipperijn and Lukas, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 231 (1972).

[753] West and Kwitowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4697 (1968); Lukas, Baardman, and Kouwenhoven, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 369 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 412].

[754] See for example, Hoover and Lindsey, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3051 (1969); Noyori, Ishigami, Hayashi, and Takaya, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1674 (1973); Yoshikawa, Aoki, Kiji, and Furukawa, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 405 (1974).

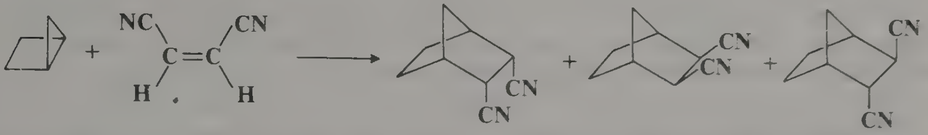
[755] For discussions, see Labunskaya, Shebaldova, and Khidekel', *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 1–16 (1974); Mango, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **45,** 39–91 (1974), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1509 (1973), *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **6,** (3), 171–187 (1972), *Chem. Technol.* **1,** 758–765 (1971), *Adv. Catal.* **20,** 291–325 (1969); Mango and Schachtschneider, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1123 (1971), **91,** 2484 (1969); van der Lugt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2281 (1970); Wristers, Brener, and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7499 (1970).

[756] See for example, Cassar and Halpern, *Chem. Commun.* 1082 (1970); Doyle, McMeeking, and Binger, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 376 (1976); Grubbs, Miyashita, Liu, and Burk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3863 (1977).

[757] Fraser, Bird, Bezman, Shapley, White, and Osborn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 597 (1973).

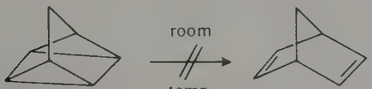
[758] Gassman and Mansfield, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1517, 1524 (1968).

[759] For a review, see Gassman, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 128–136 (1971).

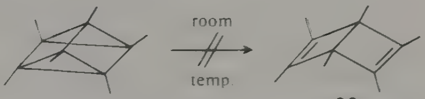


For example, bicyclo[2.1.0]pentane reacts with maleonitrile (or fumaronitrile) to give all three isomers of 2,3-dicyanonorbornane, as well as four other products.[761] The lack of stereospecificity and the negligible effect of solvent on the rate indicate a diradical mechanism. Photochemical[762] and metal-catalyzed[763] $_{\pi}2 + {}_{\sigma}2$ cycloadditions have also been reported.

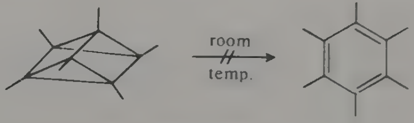
In **5-47** we used the principle of conservation of orbital symmetry to explain why certain reactions take place readily and others do not. The orbital-symmetry principle can also explain why certain molecules are stable though highly strained. For example, quadricyclane and hexamethylprismane[764] are thermodynamically much less stable (because much more strained) than their corresponding isomeric dienes, norbornadiene and hexamethylbicyclo[2.2.0]hexadiene (**93**).[765] Yet the former two compounds can be kept indefinitely at room temperature, although in the absence of orbital-symmetry considerations it is not easy to understand why the electrons simply do not move over to give the more stable diene isomers. The reason is that both these reactions involve the conversion of a cyclobutane ring to a pair of double bonds (a $_{\sigma}2 + {}_{\sigma}2$ process) and, as we have seen, a thermal process of this sort is forbidden by the Woodward–Hoffmann rules. The process is allowed photochemically, and we are not surprised to find that both quadricyclane and hexamethylprismane can be photochemically converted to the respective dienes at room temperature or below.[766] It is also possible to conceive of simple bond rearrangements whereby hexamethylprismane is converted



Quadricyclane Norbornadiene



Hexamethyl-prismane **93** (A Dewar benzene)



---

[760] Cairncross and Blanchard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 496 (1966).

[761] Gassman, Mansfield, and Murphy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1684 (1969).

[762] Freeman and Balls, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2354 (1967); Wiskott and Schleyer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 694 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 680]; Prinzbach and Eberbach, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 4083 (1968); Prinzbach, Sedelmeier, and Martin, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 103 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 111].

[763] See for example, Volger, Hogeveen, and Gaasbeek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 218 (1969); Katz and Cerefice, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2405, 6519 (1969).

[764] This compound can be prepared by photolysis of **93**, another example of an intramolecular photochemical 2 + 2 cycloaddition: Lemal and Lokensgard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5934 (1966); Schäfer, Criegee, Askani, and Grüner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 78 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 54].

[765] For a review of this compound, see Schäfer and Hellmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 518–525 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 566–573].

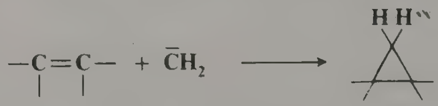
[766] These conversions can also be carried out by the use of transition metal catalysts: Hogeveen and Volger, *Chem. Commun.* 1133 (1967), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2486 (1967); Kaiser, Childs, and Maitlis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1270 (1971); Ref. 756; Landis, Gremaud, and Patrick, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 375 (1982).

to hexamethylbenzene, which of course is far more stable than either hexamethylprismane or **93.** It has been calculated that hexamethylbenzene is at least 90 kcal/mol more stable than hexamethylprismane. The fact that hexamethylprismane does not spontaneously undergo this reaction has prompted the observation[767] that the prismane has "the aspect of an angry tiger unable to break out of a paper cage." However, a correlation diagram for this reaction[767] discloses that it too is a symmetry-forbidden process. All three of these "forbidden" reactions do take place when the compounds are heated, but the diradical mechanism is likely under these conditions.[768]

Bicyclo[2.2.0]hexadienes and prismanes are *valence isomers* of benzenes.[769] These compounds actually have the structures that were proposed for benzenes in the nineteenth century. Prismanes have the Ladenburg formula, and bicyclo[2.2.0]hexadienes have the Dewar formula.[770] On p. 24 it was mentioned that Dewar formulas are canonical forms (though not very important) of benzenes. Yet they also exist as separate compounds in which the positions of the nuclei are different from those of benzenes.[771]

OS **V,** 54, 235, 277, 297, 370, 393, 424, 459, 528; **51,** 133; **53,** 30; **55,** 43; **57,** 113, 117; **58,** 37; **61,** 62. For the reverse reaction, see OS **V,** 734.

5-49 The Addition of Carbenes and Carbenoids to Double and Triple Bonds



Carbenes and substituted carbenes add to double bonds to give cyclopropane derivatives (2 + 1 cycloaddition).[772] Many derivatives of carbene, e.g., PhCH, ROCH,[773] MeOCCl,[773a] $Me_2C{=}C$, $C(CN)_2$, have been added to double bonds, but the reaction is most often performed with CH_2 itself, with halo and dihalocarbenes,[774] and with carbalkoxycarbenes[775] (generated from diazoacetic esters[776]). Alkylcarbenes HCR have been added to olefins,[777] but more often these rearrange to give olefins (p. 175). The carbene can be generated in any of the ways normally used (p. 173). However, most reactions in which a cyclopropane is formed by treatment of an olefin with a carbene "precursor" do not actually involve free carbene intermediates. In some cases, e.g., the Simmons–Smith procedure, p. 772, it is certain that free carbenes are not involved, and in other cases there is doubt. Because of this, the term *carbene transfer* is often used to cover all reactions in which a double bond is converted to a cyclopropane, whether a carbene or a carbenoid (p. 174) is actually involved.

---

[767] Woodward and Hoffmann, Ref. 673, pp. 107–112.

[768] See, for example, Oth, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 1185 (1968).

[769] For reviews of valence isomers of benzene, see Kobayashi and Kumadaki, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **31,** 169–206 (1982); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **14,** 76–82 (1981); van Tamelen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 186–192 (1972), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 738–745 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 759–767]; Bolesov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 666–670 (1968); Viehe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 746–751 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 768–773]; Ref. 765.

[770] Because of this, bicyclo[2.2.0]hexadiene is often called Dewar benzene.

[771] For an electron-diffraction study of Dewar benzene, see McNeill and Scholer, *J. Mol. Struct.* **31,** 65 (1976).

[772] For reviews, see Marchand, in Patai, Ref. 1, pt. 1, pp. 534–607, 625–635; Bethell, in McManus, "Organic Reactive Intermediates," pp. 101–113, Academic Press, New York, 1973; in Patai, Ref. 32, the articles by Cadogan and Perkins, pp. 633–671 and Huisgen, Grashey, and Sauer, pp. 755–776; Kirmse, "Carbene Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 85–122, 267–406, Academic Press, New York, 1971. For a review of certain intramolecular additions, see Burke and Grieco, *Org. React.* **26,** 361–475 (1979).

[773] For a review, see Schöllkopf, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 588–598 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 603–613].

[773a] Smith and Stevens, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1931 (1978); Moss and Shieh, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1935 (1978).

[774] For a review of the addition of halocarbenes, see Parham and Schweizer, *Org. React.* **13,** 55–90 (1963).

[775] For a review, see Dave and Warnhoff, *Org. React.* **18,** 217–401 (1970).

[776] For a review of the reactions of carbenoids generated from diazo compounds and metal salts, see Wulfman and Poling, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **1,** 321–512 (1980). For a discussion of the mechanism, see Doyle, Griffin, Bagheri, and Dorow, *Organometallics* **3,** 53 (1984).

[777] For example, see Frey, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2293 (1962).

Carbene itself is extremely reactive and gives many side reactions, especially insertion reactions (**2-18**), which greatly reduce yields.[778] When it is desired to add CH_2 for preparative purposes, free carbene is not used, but the Simmons–Smith procedure or some other method that does not involve free carbenes is employed instead. Halocarbenes are less active than carbenes, and this reaction proceeds quite well, since insertion reactions do not interfere.[779] A few of the many ways[780] in which halocarbenes or carbenoids are generated for this reaction are the following,[781] most of which involve formal α elimination (the first two steps of the SN1cB mechanism, p. 314):

$$\mathbf{CH_2Cl_2 + RLi \longrightarrow CHCl}$$

$$\mathbf{N_2CHBr \xrightarrow{h\nu} CHBr}$$

$$\mathbf{CHCl_3 + OH^- \longrightarrow CCl_2}$$

$$\mathbf{PhHgCCl_2Br \xrightarrow{\Delta} CCl_2} \qquad \text{(Ref. 782)}$$

$$\mathbf{Me_3SnCF_3 + NaI \longrightarrow CF_2} \qquad \text{(Ref. 783)}$$

$$\mathbf{CHBr_2F + RLi \longrightarrow CFBr} \qquad \text{(Ref. 783)}$$

The reaction between $CHCl_3$ and OH^- is often carried out under phase transfer conditions.[784] It has been shown that the reaction between $PhCHCl_2$ and *t*-BuOK produces a carbenoid but when the reaction is run in the presence of a crown ether (p. 77), the free PhCCl is formed instead.[785] This is therefore a method for generating a free carbene.[786] Dihalocyclopropanes are very useful compounds[787] that can be reduced to cyclopropanes, treated with magnesium or sodium to give allenes (reaction **8-3**), or converted to a number of other products.

Olefins of all types can be converted to cyclopropane derivatives by this reaction (though difficulty may be encountered with sterically hindered ones).[788] Even tetracyanoethylene, which responds very poorly to electrophilic attack, gives cyclopropane derivatives with carbenes.[789] Conjugated dienes give 1,2 addition:[790]

---

[778] For a review of additions of CH_2, see Bell, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 1–61 (1964), pp. 8–27, 43–45.

[779] For a review of carbene selectivity in this reaction, see Moss, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 58–64 (1980). See also Giese, Lee, and Meister, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 725 (1980); Schoeller, Aktekin, and Friege, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 932 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 930]; Moss, Perez, Turro, Gould, and Hacker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 685 (1983).

[780] Much of the work in this field has been carried out by Seyferth and co-workers; see, for example, Seyferth, Burlitch, Minasz, Mui, Simmons, Treiber, and Dowd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4259 (1965); Seyferth, Simmons, and Singh, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **3,** 336 (1965); Seyferth and Haas, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **46,** C33 (1972), *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1620 (1975); Seyferth and Shih, *Organomet. Chem. Synth.* **1,** 415 (1972); Seyferth and Hopper, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4070 (1972), *J. Organomet. Chem.* **51,** 77 (1973); Seyferth, Haas, and Dagani, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **104,** 9 (1976).

[781] A much longer list, with references, is given in Kirmse, "Carbene Chemistry," Ref. 772, pp. 313–319.

[782] For a review of the use of phenyl(trihalomethyl)mercury compounds as dihalocarbene or dihalocarbenoid precursors, see Seyferth, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 65–74 (1972).

[783] For reviews of fluorinated carbenes, see Seyferth, in Moss and Jones, "Carbenes," vol. 2, pp. 101–158. Wiley, New York, 1975; Sheppard and Sharts, "Organic Fluorine Chemistry," pp. 237–270, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1969.

[784] For reviews of the use of phase-transfer catalysis in the addition of dihalocarbenes to C=C bonds, see Starks and Liotta, "Phase Transfer Catalysis," pp. 224–268, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," pp. 18–43, 58–62, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977.

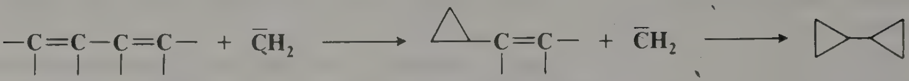
[785] Moss and Pilkiewicz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5632 (1974).

[786] See Moss, Joyce, and Pilkiewicz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2425 (1975).

[787] For reviews of dihalocyclopropanes, see Weyerstahl, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 466, pt. 2, pp. 1451–1497; Barlet and Vo-Quang, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3729–3760 (1969).

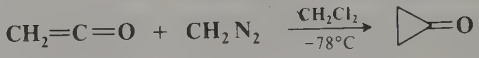
[788] Dehmlow and Eulenberger, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1112 (1979).

[789] Cairns and McKusick, *Angew. Chem.* **73,** 520 (1961).

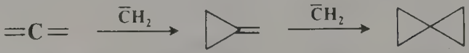


$-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-$
+ $\bar{C}H_2$
C=C
+ $\bar{C}H_2$

Addition of a second mole gives bicyclopropyl derivatives.[791] 1,4 addition is rare but has been reported for addition of $C(CN)_2$ to cyclooctatetraene.[792] Carbene adds to ketene to give cyclopropanone.[793]

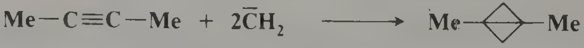


Allenes react with carbenes to give cyclopropanes with exocyclic unsaturation:[794]

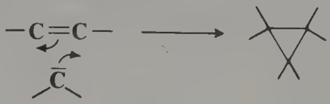


A second mole gives spiropentanes. In fact, any size ring with an exocyclic double bond can be converted by a carbene to a spiro compound.[795]

Triple-bond compounds[796] react with carbenes to give cyclopropenes, except that in the case of acetylene itself, the cyclopropenes first formed cannot be isolated because they rearrange to allenes.[797] Cyclopropenones (p. 50) are obtained by hydrolysis of dihalocyclopropenes.[798] It has proved possible to add 2 moles of a carbene to an alkyne to give a bicyclobutane:[799]



Most carbenes are electrophiles, and, in accord with this, electron-donating substituents on the olefin increase the rate of the reaction, and electron-withdrawing groups decrease it,[800] though the range of relative rates is not very great.[801] As discussed on p. 171, carbenes in the singlet state (which is the most common state) react stereospecifically and syn,[802] probably by a one-step mechanism,[803] similar to mechanism *a* of **5-47** and **5-48:**



---

[790] Woodworth and Skell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 2542 (1957).

[791] Orchin and Herrick, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 139 (1959); Nakhapetyan, Safonova, and Kazanskii, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 840 (1962); Skattebøl, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2951 (1964).

[792] Anastassiou, Cellura, and Ciganek, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5267 (1970). See also Jefford, Kabengele, Kovacs, and Burger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 257 (1974), *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 104 (1974); Jefford, Mareda, Gehret, Kabengele, Graham, and Burger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2585 (1976); Turkenburg, de Wolf, and Bickelhaupt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 769 (1982).

[793] Turro and Hammond, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 6017 (1968); Rothgery, Holt, and McGee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 4971 (1975).

[794] For a review of the addition of carbenes and carbenoids to allenes, see Bertrand, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3044–3054 (1968).

[795] For a review of the preparation of spiro compounds by this reaction, see Krapcho, *Synthesis* 77–126 (1978).

[796] For reviews, see Fuks and Viehe, in Viehe, Ref. 41, pp. 427–434; Closs, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 53–127 (1966), pp. 58–65.

[797] Frey, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1266 (1960).

[798] Vol'pin, Koreshkov, and Kursanov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 535 (1959).

[799] Doering and Coburn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 991 (1965). Also see Mahler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4600 (1962).

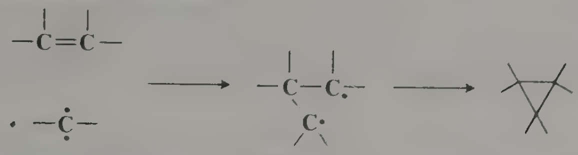
[800] Skell and Garner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 5430 (1956); Doering and Henderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 5274 (1958); Mitsch and Rodgers, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **1,** 439 (1969).

[801] For a review of reactivity in this reaction with many comprehensive tables of data, see Moss, in Jones and Moss, "Carbenes," vol. 1, pp. 153–304, Wiley, New York, 1973. See also Cox, Gould, Hacker, Moss, and Turro, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5313 (1983).

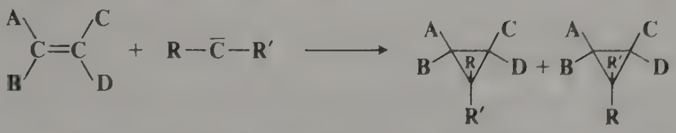
[802] Woodworth and Skell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3383 (1959); Jones, Ando, Hendrick, Kulczycki, Howley, Hummel, and Malament, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7469 (1972).

[803] For evidence that at least some singlet carbenes add by a two-step mechanism, see Giese, Lee, and Neumann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 310 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 320].

Carbenes in the triplet state react nonstereospecifically,[804] probably by a diradical mechanism, similar to mechanism *b* of **5-47** and **5-48:**

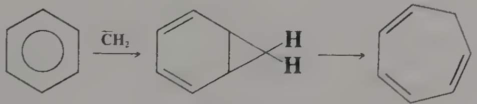


For carbenes or carbenoids of the type R—C—R′ there is another aspect of stereochemistry.[805] When these species are added to all but symmetrical olefins, two isomers are possible, even if the four groups originally on the double-bond carbons maintain their configurations:



Which isomer is predominantly formed depends on R, R′, and on the method by which the carbene or carbenoid is generated. Most studies have been carried out on monosubstituted species (R′ = H), and in these studies it is found that aryl groups generally prefer the more substituted side (syn addition) while carbethoxy groups usually show anti stereoselectivity. When R = halogen, free halocarbenes show little or no stereochemical preference, while halocarbenoids exhibit a preference for syn addition. Beyond this, it is difficult to make simple generalizations. Optically active cyclopropanes can be enantioselectively prepared by the use of chiral catalysts.[806]

Carbenes are so reactive that they add to the "double bonds" of aromatic rings. The products are usually not stable and rearrange to give ring expansion. Carbene reacts with benzene to give cycloheptatriene:[807]



Norcaradiene

but not all carbenes are reactive enough to add to benzene. The norcaradiene intermediate cannot be isolated in this case[808] (it undergoes an electrocyclic rearrangement, p. 1003), though certain substituted norcaradienes, e.g., the product of addition of $C(CN)_2$ to benzene,[809] have been isolated.[810] With CH_2, insertion is a major side reaction, and, for example, benzene gives toluene as well as cycloheptatriene. A method of adding CH_2 to benzene rings without the use of free carbene is the catalytic decomposition of CH_2N_2 in the aromatic compound as solvent with CuCl or CuBr.[811] By this method better yields of cycloheptatrienes are obtained without insertion side products.[812] CHCl is active enough to add to benzene, but dihalocarbenes do not add to benzene or toluene, only to rings with greater electron density. Pyrroles and indoles can be expanded, respectively, to pyridines and quinolines by treatment with halocarbenes,[813] e.g.,

---

[804] Skell and Klebe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 247 (1960). See also Jones, Tortorelli, Gaspar, and Lambert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4257 (1978).

[805] For reviews of the stereochemistry of carbene and carbenoid addition to double bonds, see Moss, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 35–88 (1970); Closs, *Top. Stereochem.* **3,** 193–235 (1968). For a discussion of enentioselectivity in this reaction, see Nakamura, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **50,** 37 (1978).

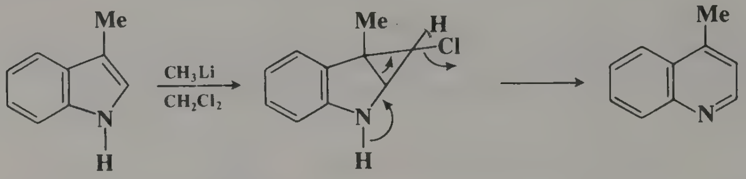
[806] See Nakamura, Konishi, Tsujitani, Kudo, and Otsuka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3449 (1978); Nakamura, Ref. 805; Quinkert *et al, Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1999 (1982).

[807] Doering and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 297 (1951).

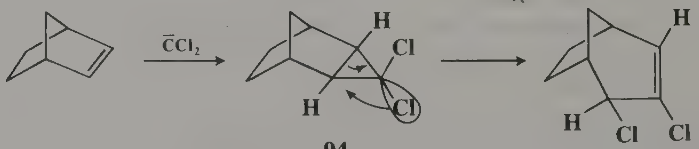
[808] It has been detected by uv spectroscopy: Rubin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 7791 (1981).

[809] Ciganek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1454 (1967).

[810] See, for example, Mukai, Kubota, and Toda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3581 (1967); Maier and Heep, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 1371 (1968); Jones, Harrison, and Rettig, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7462 (1969); Schönleber, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 76 [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 83]; Ciganek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2207 (1971); Dürr and Kober, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1255, 1259 (1972); Vogel, Wiedemann, Roth, Eimer, and Günther, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **759,** 1 (1972); Bannerman, Cadogan, Gosney, and Wilson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 618 (1975); Klärner, Schmidt, and Rahman, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 138 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 136]; Takeuchi, Kitagawa, Senzaki, and Okamoto, *Chem. Lett.* 73 (1983); L'abbé, Toppet, Van Stappen, Bieri, and Prewo, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belges,* **92,** 915 (1983).



In such cases a side reaction that sometimes occurs is expansion of the *six-membered* ring. Ring expansion may occur even with nonaromatic compounds, when the driving force is supplied by relief of strain,[814] e.g.,



94

94 is so strained that it rearranges,[815] though it has been isolated.[816]

As previously mentioned, free carbene is not very useful for additions to double bonds since it gives too many side products. The *Simmons–Smith procedure* accomplishes the same result without a free carbene intermediate and without insertion side products.[817] This procedure involves treatment of the double-bond compound with CH_2I_2 and a Zn-Cu couple and leads to cyclopropane derivatives in good yields.[818] The Zn-Cu couple can be prepared in several ways,[819] of which heating Zn dust with CuCl in ether under nitrogen[820] is particularly convenient. The reaction has also been done with unactivated zinc and ultrasound.[821] The actual attacking species is an organozinc intermediate, probably $(ICH_2)_2Zn{\cdot}ZnI_2$. This intermediate is stable enough for solutions of it to be isolable.[822] These solutions give CH_2I_2 when treated with I_2 (**2-28**), and CH_3I when treated with

---

[811] Wittig and Schwarzenbach, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **650,** 1 (1961); Müller and Fricke, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **661,** 38 (1963); Müller, Kessler, Fricke, and Kiedaisch, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **675,** 63 (1961).

[812] For a review of catalyzed reactions of diazomethane, see Müller, Kessler, and Zeeh, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **7,** 128–171 (1966).

[813] For a review of the reactions of heterocyclic compounds with carbenes, see Rees and Smithen, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **3,** 57–78 (1964).

[814] Jefford, Gunsher, Hill, Brun, Le Gras, and Waegell, *Org. Synth.* **51,** 60 (1971). For a review of the addition of halocarbenes to bridged bicyclic olefins, see Jefford, *Chimia* **24,** 357–363 (1970).

[815] Bergman, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2210 (1963).

[816] Moore, Moser, and LaPrade, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2200 (1963); DeSelms and Combes, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2206 (1963).

[817] For reviews, see Simmons, Cairns, Vladuchick, and Hoiness, *Org. React.* **20,** 1–131 (1973); Furukawa and Kawabata, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **12,** 83–134 (1974), pp. 84–103.

[818] Simmons and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4256 (1959).

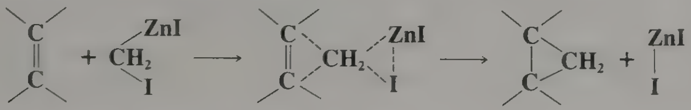
[819] Shank and Shechter, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 1525 (1959); LeGoff, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2048 (1964). For the use of a Zn-Ag couple, see Denis, Girard, and Conia, *Synthesis* 549 (1972).

[820] Rawson and Harrison, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2057 (1970).

[821] Repič and Vogt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 2729 (1982); Repič, Lee, and Giger, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **16,** 25 (1984).

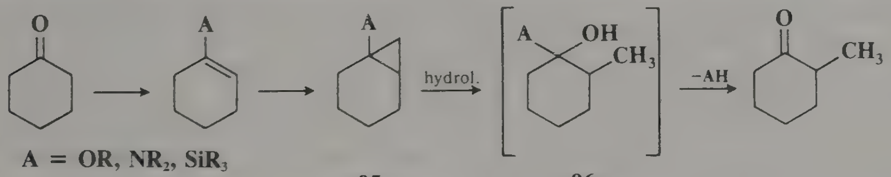
[822] Blanchard and Simmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1337 (1964).

H_2O (**2-22**). The addition is stereospecifically syn, and a concerted mechanism is likely, perhaps[823]



With the Simmons–Smith procedure, as with free carbenes, conjugated dienes give 1,2 addition,[824] and allenes give methylenecyclopropanes or spiropentanes. An alternative way of carrying out the Simmons–Smith reaction is by treatment of the substrate with CH_2I_2 or another dihalomethane and Et_2Zn in ether. This method can be adapted to the introduction of RCH and ArCH by the use of $RCHI_2$ or $ArCHI_2$ instead of the dihalomethane.[825] Another method uses a *gem*-dihalide and copper.[826] In still another approach, the reagent $CpFe(CO)_2CH_2SMe_2^+\ BF_4^-$ (Cp = cyclopentadienyl) converts alkenes to cyclopropanes without the intervention of free CH_2.[827] This reaction has been extended to the transfer of CHMe by use of the reagent $CpFe(CO)_2CH(Me)SPh$.[828]

The Simmons–Smith reaction has been used as the basis of a method for the indirect α-methylation of a ketone.[829] The ketone (illustrated for cyclohexanone) is first converted to the enol ether, e.g., by **6-6,** or to the enamine (**6-14**) or silyl ether (**2-21**). Application of the Simmons–Smith reaction gives the norcarane derivative **95,** which is then cleaved (addition of water to a cyclopropane ring) to an intermediate **96,** which loses ROH, RNH_2, or R_3SiH, producing the methylated ketone. Cleavage of **95** is carried out by acid hydrolysis if A is OR, by basic hydrolysis if A is SiR_3,[830] and by neutral hydrolysis in aqueous methanol at 150 to 170°C if A is NR_2.



95

96

Double-bond compounds that undergo the Michael reaction (**5-17**) can be converted to cyclopropane derivatives with sulfur ylides.[831] Among the most common of these is dimethyloxosulfonium methylide (**97**),[832] which is widely used to transfer CH_2 to activated double bonds, but other sulfur ylides, e.g., **98** (A = acyl,[833] carbethoxy[834]), **99,**[835] and **100,**[836] which transfer CHA, CH—vinyl,

---

[823] Simmons, Blanchard, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1347 (1964).

[824] Overberger and Halek, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 867 (1963).

[825] Furukawa, Kawabata, and Nishimura, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 53 (1968), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3495 (1968); Nishimura, Kawabata, and Furukawa, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 2647 (1969); Miyano and Hashimoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **46,** 892 (1973); Friedrich and Biresaw, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1615 (1982). See also Sawada and Inouye, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 2669 (1969).

[826] Kawabata, Kamemura, and Naka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2139 (1979); Kawabata, Tanimoto, and Fujiwara, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 1919 (1979).

[827] Brandt and Helquist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6473 (1979).

[828] Kremer, Helquist, and Kerber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1862 (1981).

[829] See Wenkert, Mueller, Reardon, Sathe, Scharf, and Tosi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7428 (1970) for the enol ether procedure; Kuehne and King, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 304 (1973) for the enamine procedure; Conia, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43,** 317–326 (1975) for the silyl ether procedure.

[830] In the case of silyl ethers the inner bond can be cleaved with $FeCl_3$, giving a ring-enlarged β-chloro ketone: Ito, Fujii, and Saegusa, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2073 (1976); *Org. Synth.* **59,** 113.

[831] For a monograph and reviews on sulfur ylides, see Chapter 2, Ref. 33.

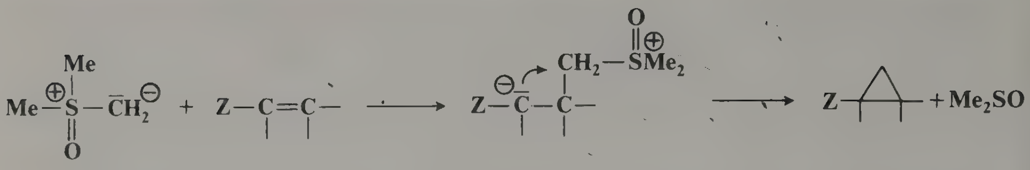
[832] Truce and Badiger, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 3277 (1964); Corey and Chaykovsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1353 (1965); Agami, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1391 (1967); Agami and Prevost, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2299 (1967). For a review, see Durst, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 285–388 (1969), pp. 333–339.

[833] Trost, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 138 (1967). See also Nozaki, Takaku, and Kondô, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 2145 (1966).

[834] Payne, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3551 (1967).

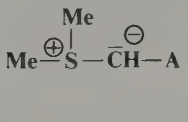
[835] LaRochelle, Trost, and Krepski, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1126 (1971); Marino and Kaneko, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3971, 3975 (1973).

[836] Corey and Jautelat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3912 (1967).

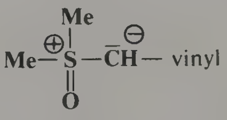


97

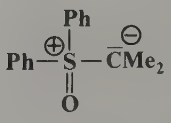
and CMe_2, respectively, have also been used. CHR and CR_2 can be added in a similar manner with certain nitrogen-containing compounds. For example, the ylides[837] **101** and **102** and the carbanion **103** can be used, respectively, to add CHMe, cyclopropylidene, and CMe_2 to activated double bonds.[838] Similar reactions have been performed with phosphorus ylides.[839] The reactions with ylides are of course nucleophilic addition.



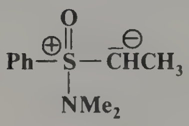
98



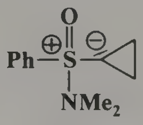
99



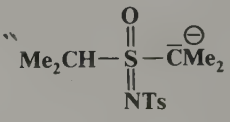
100



101



102

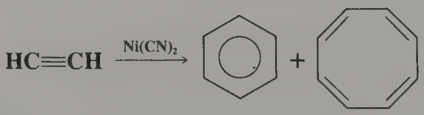


103

Many substituted cyclopropanes have been made by treatment of olefins with HCWZX, where W = H, R, Ar, Cl, or COOR; Z = COOR, CN, or COAr, and X = Cl or Br.[840] This is a syn addition.

OS **V,** 306, 855, 859, 874; **50,** 94; **51,** 60; **52,** 132; **54,** 11; **55,** 12; **56,** 32; **59,** 113; **60,** 6, 53; **61,** 39.

5-50 Trimerization and Tetramerization of Alkynes



When acetylene is heated with nickel cyanide, other Ni(II) or Ni(0) compounds, or similar catalysts, it gives benzene and cyclooctatetraene.[841] It is possible to get more of either product by a proper choice of catalyst. Substituted acetylenes give substituted benzenes. This reaction has been used to prepare very crowded molecules. Diisopropylacetylene was trimerized over $Co_2(CO)_8$ and over $Hg[Co(CO)_4]_2$ to hexaisopropylbenzene, which was previously unknown.[842] The six isopropyl groups are not free to rotate but are lined up perpendicular to the plane of the benzene ring. Even more interesting was the *spontaneous* (no catalyst) trimerization of *t*-BuC≡CF to give 1,2,3-tri-*t*-butyl-4,5,6-trifluorobenzene (**105**), the first time three adjacent *t*-butyl groups had been put onto a benzene ring.[843] The fact that this is a head-to-head joining makes the following sequence likely:

---

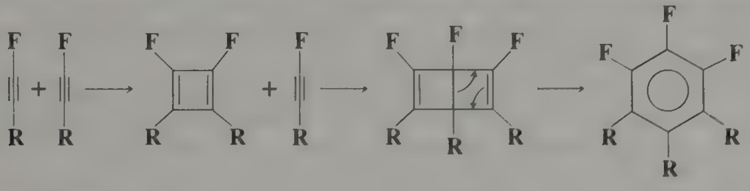
[837] For a review of sulfoximides $R_2S(O)NR_2$ and ylides derived from them, see Kennewell and Taylor, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **9,** 477–498 (1980).

[838] For reviews, see Kennewell and Taylor, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **4,** 189–209 (1975); Trost, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 85–92 (1974), Johnson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 341–347 (1973). See also Johnson, Kirchhoff, Reischer, and Katekar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4287 (1973); Johnson and Janiga, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7692 (1973).

[839] Bestmann and Seng, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 116 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 154]; Grieco and Finkelhor, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3781 (1972).

[840] Warner, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 1536 (1959); McCoy, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 2078 (1960), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2246 (1962).

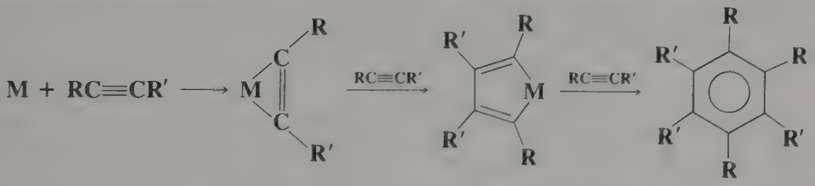
[841] For reviews, see Maitlis, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **200,** 161–176 (1980); *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 93–99 (1976); *Pure Appl. Chem.* **30,** 427–448 (1972); Vollhardt, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 1–8 (1977); Yur'eva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 48–68 (1974); Khan and Martell, Ref. 137, pp. 163–168; Reppe, Kutepow, and Magin, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 727–733 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 717–723]; Fuks and Viehe, in Viehe, Ref. 41, pp. 450–460; Hoogzand and Hübel, in Wender and Pino, "Organic Syntheses Via Metal Carbonyls," vol. 1, pp. 343–371, Interscience, New York, 1968; Bird, Ref. 194, pp. 1–29; Reikhsfel'd and Makovetskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 510–523 (1966); Schrauzer, Glockner, and Eichler, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 185–191 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 28–35].



R = *t*-butyl **104** **105**

The fact that **104** (a bicyclo[2.2.0]hexadiene) was also isolated lends support to this scheme.

In contrast to the spontaneous reaction, the catalyzed process seldom gives the 1,2,3-trisubstituted benzene isomer from an acetylene RC≡CH. The chief product is usually the 1,2,4-isomer, with lesser amounts of the 1,3,5-isomer also generally obtained, but little if any of the 1,2,3-isomer. Mechanisms of the catalyzed reactions are not well established, although coordination of the metal with the triple bond is believed to be involved.[844] However, it has been shown that at least some of these reactions proceed through three- and five-membered heterocyclic intermediates (**106** and **107**). Such intermediates (where M = Rh, Ir, or Ni) have been isolated and shown to give benzenes



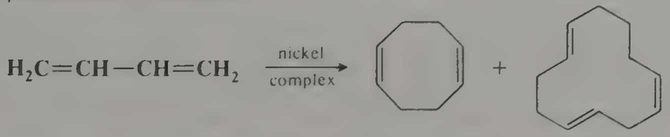
106 **107**

when treated with alkynes.[845] Note that this pathway accounts for the predominant formation of the 1,2,4-isomer.

For addition of triple bonds to triple bonds, but not with ring formation, see **5-15.**

OS **61,** 62.

5-51 Other Cycloaddition Reactions



---

[842] Arnett and Bollinger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4729 (1964); Hopff, *Chimia* **18,** 140 (1964); Hopff and Gati, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **48,** 509 (1965).

[843] Viehe, Merényi, Oth, and Valange, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 746 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 888]; Viehe, Merényi, Oth, Senders, and Valange, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 755 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 923]. Also see Arnett and Bollinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3803 (1964); Schäfer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 669 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 716].

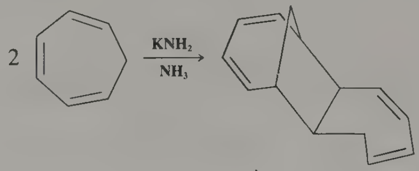
[844] See for example, Colborn and Vollhardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 6259 (1981); Kochi, "Organometallic Mechanisms and Catalysis," pp. 428–432, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[845] See for example, Collman and Kang, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 844 (1967); Collman, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 136–143 (1968); Yamazaki and Hagihara, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **7,** P22 (1967); Wakatsuki, Kuramitsu, and Yamazaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4549 (1974); Moseley and Maitlis, *J. Chem. Soc., Dalton Trans.* 169 (1974); Müller, *Synthesis* 761–774 (1974); Eisch and Galle, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **96,** C23 (1975); McAlister, Bercaw, and Bergman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 1666 (1977).

Conjugated dienes can be dimerized or trimerized at their 1,4 positions (formally, 4 + 4 and 4 + 4 + 4 cycloadditions) by treatment with certain complexes or other transition-metal compounds.[846] Thus butadiene gives 1,5-cyclooctadiene and 1,5,9-cyclododecatriene.[847] The relative amount of each product can be controlled by use of the proper catalyst. For example, $\mathrm{Ni{:}P(OC_6H_4\text{-}}o\mathrm{\text{-}Ph)_3}$ gives predominant dimerization, while $\mathrm{Ni(cyclooctadiene)_2}$ gives mostly trimerization. The products arise, not by direct 1,4 to 1,4 attack, but by stepwise mechanisms involving metal-olefin complexes.[848] Treatment of a mixture of ethylene and butadiene with the appropriate nickel compound gives 1,5-cyclodecadiene, formed from two molecules of the diene and one of the olefin[849] (a 4 + 4 + 2 cycloaddition). In a similar manner, cocyclization of butadiene and triple-bond compounds gives 1,4,7-cyclodecatrienes.[850]

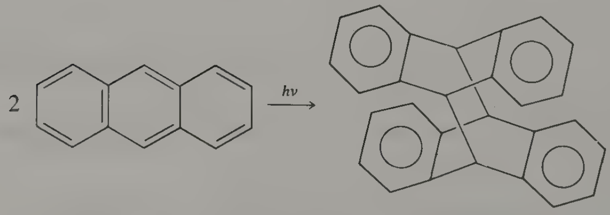
As we have seen in reaction **5-47,** the Woodward–Hoffmann rules allow suprafacial concerted cycloadditions to take place thermally if the total number of electrons is $4n + 2$ and photochemically if the number is $4n$. Furthermore, forbidden reactions become allowed if one molecule reacts antarafacially. It would thus seem that syntheses of many large rings could easily be achieved. However, when the newly formed ring is eight-membered or greater, concerted mechanisms, though allowed by orbital symmetry for the cases stated, become difficult to achieve because of the entropy factor (the two ends of one system must simultaneously encounter the two ends of the other), unless one or both components are cyclic, in which case the molecule has many fewer possible conformations. There have been a number of reports of cycloaddition reactions leading to eight-membered and larger rings, some thermally and some photochemically induced, but (apart from the dimerization and trimerization of butadienes mentioned above, which are known not to involve direct 4 + 4 or 4 + 4 + 4 cycloaddition) in most cases evidence is lacking to indicate whether they are concerted or stepwise processes. Some examples are

6 + 2



Ref. 851

4 + 4



Ref. 852

---

[846] For reviews, see Heimbach and Schenkluhn, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **92,** 45–108 (1980); Wilke, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **200,** 349–364 (1980); Heimbach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 975–989 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 1035–1049]; Baker, *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 487–530 (1973), pp. 489–512; Semmelhack, *Org. React.* **19,** 115–198 (1972), pp. 128–143; Heimbach, Jolly, and Wilke, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **8,** 29–86 (1970), pp. 48–83; Wilke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 105–115 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 10–20]; Khan and Martell, Ref. 137, pp. 159–163; Heck, Ref. 194, pp. 157–164; Bird, Ref. 194, pp. 30–68.

[847] For a review of the 1,5,9-cyclododecatrienes (there are four stereoisomers, of which the *t,t,t* is shown above), see Rona, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **5,** 105–148 (1971).

[848] For example, see Heimbach and Wilke, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **727,** 183 (1969); Barnett, Büssemeier, Heimbach, Jolly, Krüger, Tkatchenko, and Wilke, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1457 (1972); Barker, Green, Howard, Spencer, and Stone, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3373 (1976); Graham and Stephenson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7098 (1977).

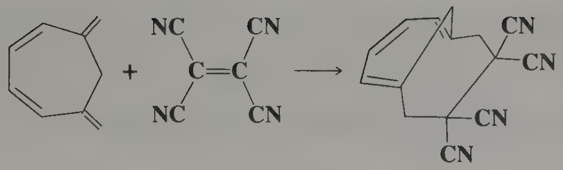
[849] Heimbach and Wilke, Ref. 848.

[850] Heimbach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 961 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 983]; Heimbach and Brenner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 961 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 983]; Brenner, Heimbach, and Wilke, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **727,** 194 (1969).

[851] Staley and Orvedal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1618 (1974). In this case the reagent converted one molecule of cycloheptatriene to the cycloheptatrienyl anion (p. 43), which then added stepwise to the other molecule.

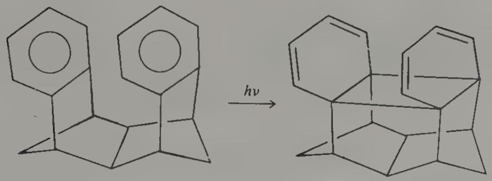
[852] Shönberg, Ref. 41, pp. 97–99.

8 + 2



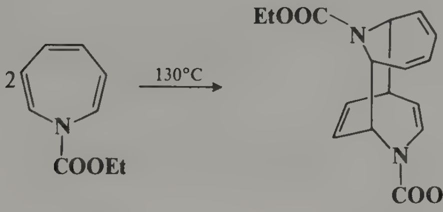
Ref. 853

6 + 6



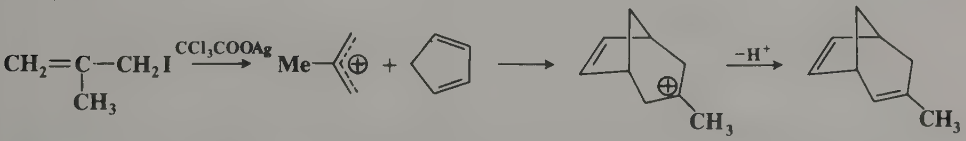
Ref. 854

6 + 4



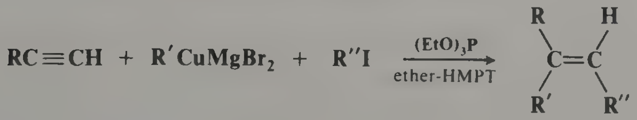
Ref. 855

The suprafacial thermal addition of an allylic cation to a diene (a 4 + 3 cycloaddition) is allowed by the Woodward–Hoffmann rules (note that the highest-occupied molecular orbital of an allylic cation, p. 29, has the same symmetry as the highest-occupied orbital of a simple alkene, so that this reaction would be expected to follow the same rules as the Diels–Alder reaction). Such cycloadditions can be carried out[856] by treatment of a diene with an allylic halide in the presence of a suitable silver salt, e.g.,[857]



This reaction has even been carried out with benzene assuming the role of the diene.[858]
OS **58,** 17; **60,** 41.

5-52 The Addition of Two Alkyl Groups to an Alkyne
Dialkyl-addition



$$RC{\equiv}CH + R'CuMgBr_2 + R''I \xrightarrow[\text{ether-HMPT}]{(EtO)_3P} (R)(R')C{=}C(H)(R'')$$

---

[853] Farrant and Feldmann, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4979 (1970).

[854] Prinzbach, Sedelmeier, Krüger, Goddard, Martin, and Gleiter, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 271 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 297].

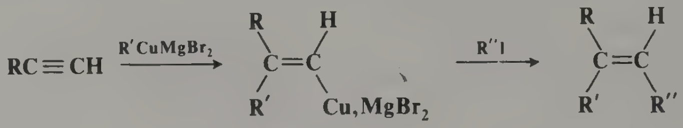
[855] Paquette, Barrett, and Kuhla, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3616 (1969); Paul, Johnson, Barrett, and Paquette, *Chem. Commun.* 6 (1969).

[856] For reviews of 4 + 3 cycloadditions, see Hoffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **23,** 1–19 (1984), **12,** 819–835 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **96,** 29–47, **85,** 877–894]; Noyori, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 61–66 (1979).

[857] Hoffmann, Joy, and Suter, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 57 (1968).

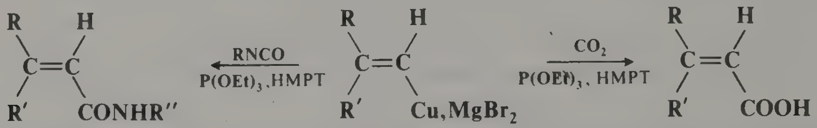
[858] Hoffmann and Hill, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 136 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 127].

Two different alkyl groups can be added to a terminal alkyne[859] in one laboratory step by treatment with an alkylcopper–magnesium bromide reagent[860] and an alkyl iodide in ether–HMPT containing triethyl phosphite.[861] The groups add stereoselectively syn. The reaction, which has been applied to primary R′ and to primary, allylic, benzylic, vinylic, and α-alkoxyalkyl R″, involves initial addition of the alkylcopper reagent,[862] followed by a coupling reaction (**0-88**):

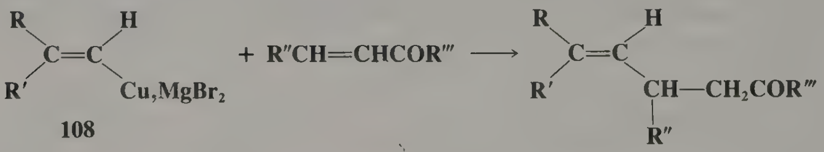


108

Acetylene itself (R = H) undergoes the reaction with R_2CuLi instead of the reagent mentioned above.[863] If the alkyl iodide is omitted, the vinylcopper intermediate **108** can be converted to a carboxylic acid by the addition of CO_2 (see **6-35**) or to an amide by the addition of an isocyanate



(see **6-37**), in either case in the presence of HMPT and a catalytic amount of triethyl phosphite.[864] The intermediate **108** can also be added to α,β-unsaturated ketones to give the Michael adducts:[865]



108

The reaction can also be performed on conjugated dienes, in which case the overall addition is 1,4.[866]

Similar reactions, in which two alkyl groups are added to a triple bond, have been carried out with trialkylalanes R_3Al, with zirconium complexes as catalysts.[867]

---

[859] For a review of reactions of organocopper reagents with triple bonds, see Hudrlik and Hudrlik, in Patai, Ref. 67, pt. 1, pp. 233–238. For a review of the addition of organometallic reagents to alkynes, see Normant and Alexakis, *Synthesis* 841–870 (1981).

[860] For the composition of these reagents, see Ashby, Smith, and Goel, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5133 (1981); Ashby and Goel, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2125 (1983).

[861] Normant, Cahiez, Chuit, Alexakis, and Villieras, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **40,** C49 (1972); Normant, Cahiez, Chuit, and Villieras, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2407 (1973); Alexakis, Cahiez, Normant, and Villieras, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 693 (1977); Gardette, Alexakis, and Normant, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 5155 (1982). For an extensive list of references, see Ref. 865.

[862] The initial product, **108,** can be hydrolyzed with acid to give $RR'C{=}CH_2$. See Westmijze, Kleijn, Meijer, and Vermeer, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 98 (1981), and references cited therein.

[863] Alexakis, Normant, and Villieras, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3461 (1976); Alexakis, Cahiez, and Normant, *Synthesis* 826 (1979); *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1961 (1980).

[864] Normant, Cahiez, Chuit, and Villieras, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **54,** C53 (1973).

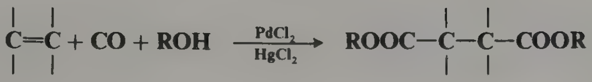
[865] Marfat, McGuirk, and Helquist, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3888 (1979).

[866] Normant, Cahiez, and Villieras, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **92,** C28 (1975).

[867] Yoshida and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4985 (1981); Rand, Van Horn, Moore, and Negishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4093 (1981). For a review, see Negishi, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **53,** 2333–2356 (1981).

5-53 Dicarbalkoxylation of Olefins and Acetylenes

Dicarboxy-addition

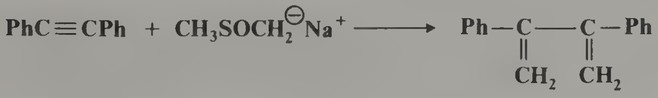


$$\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}{=}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}} + \mathrm{CO} + \mathrm{ROH} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HgCl_2}]{\mathrm{PdCl_2}} \mathrm{ROOC}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{COOR}$$

Alkenes can be converted to succinic esters by reaction with carbon monoxide, an alcohol, and palladium chloride in the presence of mercuric chloride.[868] The addition is mostly syn. In a similar reaction, both terminal and internal alkynes can be converted to esters of maleic acid.

5-54 The Conversion of Diphenylacetylene to a Butadiene

Dimethylene-biaddition



$$\mathrm{PhC{\equiv}CPh} + \mathrm{CH_3SOCH_2^{\ominus}Na^+} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ph}-\underset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\underset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}-\mathrm{Ph}$$

Diphenylacetylene reacts with methylsulfinyl carbanion to give 2,3-diphenylbutadiene.[869] Neither the scope nor the mechanism of this reaction seems to have been investigated.

OS **50,** 62.

---

[868] Heck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2712 (1972). See also Fenton and Steinwand, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2034 (1972); James, Hines, and Stille, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1806 (1976); Stille and Divakaruni, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3474 (1979); Catellani, Chiusoli, and Peloso, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 813 (1983).

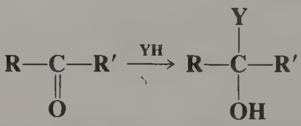
[869] Iwai and Ide, *Org. Synth.* **50,** 62.

16

ADDITION TO CARBON–HETERO MULTIPLE BONDS

MECHANISM AND REACTIVITY

The reactions considered in this chapter involve addition to the carbon–oxygen, carbon–nitrogen, and carbon–sulfur double bonds and the carbon–nitrogen triple bond. The mechanistic study of these reactions is much simpler than that of the additions to carbon–carbon multiple bonds considered in Chapter 15.[1] Most of the questions that concerned us there either do not arise here or can be answered very simply. Since C=O, C=N, and C≡N bonds are strongly polar, with the carbon always the positive end (except for isonitriles, see p. 869), there is never any doubt about *orientation* of unsymmetrical addition to these bonds. Nucleophilic attacking species always go to the carbon and electrophilic ones to the oxygen or nitrogen. Additions to C=S bonds are much less common,[2] but in these cases the addition can be in the other direction. For example, thiobenzophenone $Ph_2C{=}S$, when treated with phenyllithium gives, after hydrolysis, benzhydryl phenyl sulfide Ph_2CHSPh.[3] The *stereochemistry* of addition is not generally a factor because it is not normally possible to determine whether the addition is syn or anti. In addition of YH to a ketone, e.g.,



$$R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow{YH} R-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle Y}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}-R'$$

the product has a chiral carbon, but unless there is chirality in R or R′ or YH is optically active, the product must be a racemic mixture and there is no way to tell from its steric nature whether the addition of Y and H was syn or anti. The same holds true for C=N and C=S bonds, since in none of these cases can chirality be present at the hetero atom. The stereochemistry of addition of a single YH to the carbon–nitrogen triple bond could be investigated, since the product can exist in *E* and *Z* forms (p. 110), but these reactions are not very important. Of course, if R or R′ *is* chiral, a racemic mixture will not always arise and the stereochemistry of addition can be studied in such cases. Cram's rule (p. 103) allows us to predict the direction of attack of Y in many cases.[4]

---

[1] For a discussion, see Jencks, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 63–118 (1964).

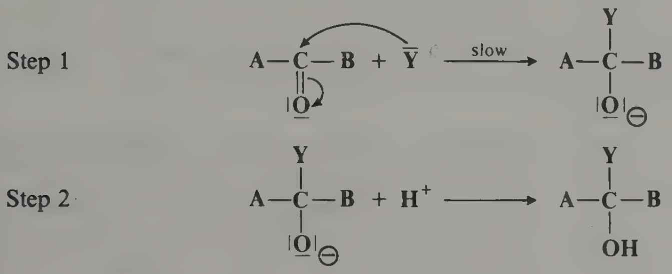
[2] For reviews of thioketones, see Ohno, in Oae, "Organic Chemistry of Sulfur," pp. 189–229, Plenum, New York, 1977; Mayer, in Janssen, "Organosulfur Chemistry," pp. 219–240, Interscience, New York, 1967; Campaigne, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," pt. 1, pp. 917–959, Interscience, New York, 1966; Mayer, Morganstern, and Fabian, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 227–286 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 157–167].

[3] Beak and Worley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 597 (1972). For some other examples, see Schaumann and Walter, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 3562 (1974); Ohno, Nakamura, Shizume, and Oka, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 1003 (1977); Metzner, Vialle, and Vibet, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 2289 (1978).

[4] For a discussion of such rules, see Eliel, "The Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds," pp. 68–74, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1962. For reviews of the stereochemistry of addition to carbonyl compounds, see Bartlett, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2–72 (1980), pp. 22–28; Ashby and Laemmle, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 521–546 (1975); Goller, *J. Chem. Educ.* **51,** 182–185 (1974); Toromanoff, *Top. Stereochem.* **2,** 157–198 (1967); Kamernitskii and Akhrem, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **30,** 43–61 (1961) [the last review can also be found in *Tetrahedron* **18,** 705–750 (1962)].

However, even in this type of study, the relative directions of attack of Y and H are not determined but only the direction of attack of Y with respect to the rest of the substrate molecule.

Not only are questions of orientation and stereochemistry not of great importance in the study of these mechanisms, but the picture is further simplified by the fact that free-radical additions to carbon–hetero double bonds are rare.[5] The principal question remaining is which attacks first, the nucleophile or electrophile. In most cases it is the nucleophile, and these reactions are regarded as *nucleophilic additions*, which can be represented thus (for the C=O bond, analogously for the others):

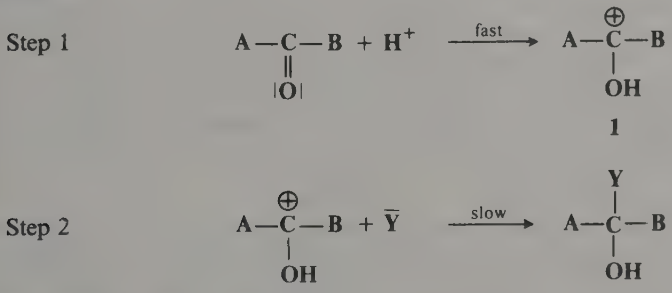


$$\text{Step 1}\qquad A-\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|}{\|}}{C}-B + \overline{Y} \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} A-\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}-B$$

$$\text{Step 2}\qquad A-\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{\underset{\underset{|\underline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}}-B + H^+ \longrightarrow A-\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-B$$

The electrophile shown in step 2 is the proton. In almost all the reactions considered in this chapter the electrophilic attacking atom is either hydrogen or carbon. It may be noted that step 1 is exactly the same as step 1 of the tetrahedral mechanism of nucleophilic substitution at a carbonyl carbon (p. 291), and it might be expected that substitution would compete with addition. However, this is seldom the case. When A and B are H, R, or Ar, the substrate is an aldehyde or ketone and these almost never undergo substitution, owing to the extremely poor nature of H, R, and Ar as leaving groups. For acids and their derivatives (B = OH, OR, NH_2, etc.) addition is seldom found, because these are much better leaving groups. It is thus the nature of A and B which determines whether a nucleophilic attack at a carbon–hetero multiple bond will lead to substitution or addition.

As is the case in the tetrahedral mechanism, it is also possible for the electrophilic species to attack first, in which case it goes to the hetero atom. This species is most often a proton and the mechanism is



$$\text{Step 1}\qquad A-\underset{\underset{|O|}{\|}}{C}-B + H^+ \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} A-\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-B \quad \mathbf{1}$$

$$\text{Step 2}\qquad A-\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-B + \overline{Y} \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} A-\overset{\overset{Y}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-B$$

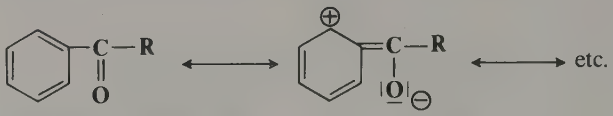
In each case the rate-determining step is usually the one involving nucleophilic attack. It may be observed that many of these reactions can be catalyzed by both acids and bases.[6] Bases catalyze the reaction by converting a reagent of the form YH to the more powerful nucleophile Y^- (see p. 305). Acids catalyze it by converting the substrate to an ion (e.g., **1**) in which the positive charge on the carbon is greatly increased, thus making it more attractive to nucleophilic attack. Similar catalysis can also be found with metallic ions, such as Ag^+, which act here as Lewis acids.[7] We have mentioned before (p. 146) that ions of type **1** are comparatively stable carbocations because the positive charge is spread by resonance.

---

[5] For examples, see Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1833 (1966); Urry, Nishihara, and Niu, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 347 (1967); Maruyama, Taniuchi, and Oka, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 712 (1974); Drew and Kerr, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **15,** 281 (1983).

[6] For a discussion of acid and base catalysis in these reactions, see Jencks and Gilbert, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 1021–1027 (1977).

Reactivity factors in additions to carbon–hetero multiple bonds are similar to those for the tetrahedral mechanism of nucleophilic substitution.[8] If A and/or B are electron-donating groups, rates are decreased. Electron-attracting substituents increase rates. This means that aldehydes are more reactive than ketones. Aryl groups are somewhat deactivating compared to alkyl, because of resonance that stabilizes the substrate molecule but is lost on going to the intermediate:

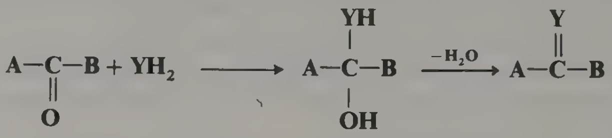


Double bonds in conjugation with the carbon–hetero multiple bond also lower addition rates, for similar reasons but, more important, may provide competition from 1,4 addition (p. 664). Steric factors are also quite important and contribute to the decreased reactivity of ketones compared with aldehydes. Highly hindered ketones like hexamethylacetone and dineopentyl ketone[9] either do not undergo many of these reactions or require extreme conditions.

REACTIONS

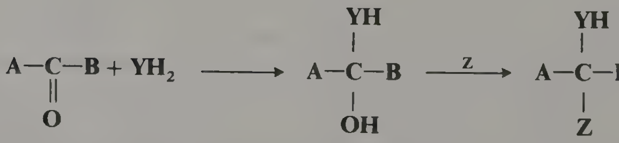
Many of the reactions in this chapter are simple additions to carbon–hetero multiple bonds, with the reaction ending as soon as the two groups have been added. But in many other cases subsequent reactions take place. We shall meet a number of such reactions, but most are of two types:

Type *A*



$$\mathrm{A-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-B + YH_2 \longrightarrow A-\overset{\overset{YH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-B \xrightarrow{-H_2O} A-\overset{\overset{Y}{\|}}{C}-B}$$

Type *B*



$$\mathrm{A-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-B + YH_2 \longrightarrow A-\overset{\overset{YH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-B \xrightarrow{Z} A-\overset{\overset{YH}{|}}{\underset{\underset{Z}{|}}{C}}-B}$$

In type *A*, the adduct loses water (or, in the case of addition to C═NH, ammonia, etc.), and the net result of the reaction is the substitution of C═Y for C═O (or C═NH, etc.). In type *B* there is a rapid substitution, and the OH (or NH_2, etc.) is replaced by another group Z, which is often another YH moiety. This substitution is in most cases nucleophilic, since Y usually has an unshared pair and SN1 reactions occur very well on this type of compound (see p. 301), even when the leaving group is as poor as OH or NH_2. In this chapter we shall classify reactions according to what is initially adding to the carbon–hetero multiple bond, even if subsequent reactions take place so rapidly that it is not possible to isolate the initial adduct. It is true that this involves a certain danger, since we cannot always be sure just which reaction occurred first (e.g., **6-7** and **6-16**). In such cases we shall make the assumptions that seem most reasonable from the mechanistic data at hand.

---

[7] Toromanoff, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1190 (1962).

[8] For a review of the reactivity of nitriles, see Schaefer, in Rappoport, "The Chemistry of the Cyano Group," pp. 239–305, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[9] Liberman and Vasina, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 3179 (1962).

Most of the reactions considered in this chapter can be reversed. In many cases we shall consider the reverse reactions with the forward ones, in the same section. The reverse of some of the other reactions are considered in other chapters. In still other cases, one of the reactions in this chapter is the reverse of another, e.g., **6-2** and **6-14.** For reactions that are reversible, the principle of microscopic reversibility (p. 189) applies.

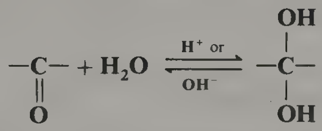
We shall discuss first reactions in which hydrogen or a metallic ion (or in one case phosphorus or sulfur) adds to the hetero atom and then reactions in which carbon adds to the hetero atom. Within each group, the reactions are classified by the nature of the nucleophile. Additions to isonitriles, which are somewhat different in character, are treated at the end.

Reactions in Which Hydrogen or a Metallic Ion Adds to the Hetero Atom

A. Attack by OH (Addition of H_2O)

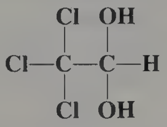
6-1 The Addition of Water to Aldehydes and Ketones. Formation of Hydrates

O-Hydro-C-hydroxy-addition

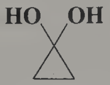


$$\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{-C-} + H_2O \underset{OH^-}{\overset{H^+ \text{ or}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{-C-}}$$

The adduct formed upon addition of water to an aldehyde or ketone is called a hydrate or a *gem*-diol.[10] These compounds are usually stable only in water solution and decompose on distillation; i.e., the equilibrium shifts back toward the carbonyl compound. The position of the equilibrium is greatly dependent on the structure of the hydrate. Thus, formaldehyde in water at 20°C exists 99.99% in the hydrated form, while for acetaldehyde this figure is 58%, and for acetone the hydrate concentration is negligible.[11] It has been found, by exchange with ^{18}O, that the reaction with acetone is quite rapid when catalyzed by acid or base, but the equilibrium lies on the side of acetone and water.[12] Since methyl, a $+I$ group, inhibits hydrate formation, it may be expected that electron-attracting groups would have the opposite effect, and this is indeed the case. The hydrate of chloral[13] is a stable crystalline substance. In order for it to revert to chloral, OH^- or H_2O must leave; this is made difficult by the electron-withdrawing character of the Cl_3C group. Some other[14] polychlorinated and polyfluorinated aldehydes and ketones[15] and α-keto aldehydes also form stable hydrates,



chloral hydrate



hydrate of cyclopropanone

---

[10] For reviews, see Bell, "The Proton in Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 183–187, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1973, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 1–29 (1966); Le Hénaff, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4687–4700 (1968).

[11] Bell and Clunie, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **48,** 439 (1952). See also Bell and McDougall, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **56,** 1281 (1960).

[12] Cohn and Urey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **60,** 679 (1938).

[13] For a review of chloral, see Luknitskii, *Chem. Rev.* **75,** 259–289 (1975).

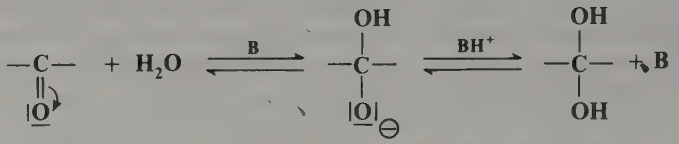
[14] For a discussion, see Schulman, Bonner, Schulman, and Laskovics, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3793 (1976).

[15] For a review of additions to fluorinated ketones, see Gambaryan, Rokhlin, Zeifman, Ching-Yun, and Knunyants, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 947–956 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 1008–1017].

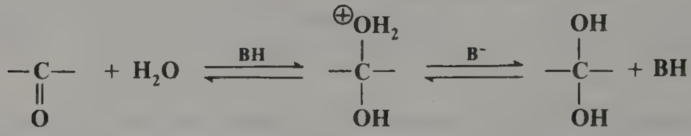
as do cyclopropanones.[16] In the last case[17] formation of the hydrate relieves some of the *I* strain (p. 240) of the parent ketone.

The reaction is subject to both general-acid and general-base catalysis; the following mechanisms can be written for basic (B) and acidic (BH) catalysis, respectively:[18]

Mechanism *a*



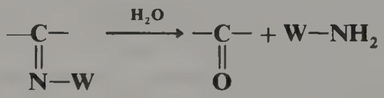
Mechanism *b*



In mechanism *a*, as the H_2O attacks, the base pulls off a proton, and the net result is addition of OH^-. This can happen because the base is already hydrogen-bonded to the H_2O molecule before the attack. In mechanism *b*, because HB is already hydrogen-bonded to the oxygen of the carbonyl group, it gives up a proton to the oxygen as the water attacks. In this way B and HB accelerate the reaction even beyond the extent that they form OH^- or H_3O^+ by reaction with water.

For the reaction between ketones and H_2O_2, see reaction **7-52.**

6-2 Hydrolysis of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond
Oxo-de-alkylimino-bisubstitution, etc.



$$\underset{\text{N—W}}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{\text{—C—}}}} \xrightarrow{H_2O} \underset{\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{—C—}}} + W\text{—}NH_2$$

Compounds containing carbon–nitrogen double bonds can be hydrolyzed to the corresponding aldehydes or ketones. For imines (W = R or H) the hydrolysis is easy and can be carried out with water. When W = H, the imine is seldom stable enough for isolation, and hydrolysis usually occurs in situ, without isolation. The hydrolysis of Schiff bases (W = Ar) is more difficult and requires acid or basic catalysis. Oximes (W = OH), arylhydrazones (W = NHAr), and, most easily, semicarbazones (W = $NHCONH_2$) can also be hydrolyzed. Often a reactive aldehyde is added to combine with the liberated amine. Formaldehyde is generally used for this purpose, but levulinic acid is excellent for hydrolyzing oximes and arylhydrazones.[19]

A number of other reagents have been used to cleave C═N bonds, especially those not easily hydrolyzable with acidic or basic catalysts or which contain other functional groups which are attacked under these conditions. In particular, oximes have been converted to the corresponding aldehyde or ketone by treatment with, among other reagents, thallium(III) nitrate,[20] aqueous $TiCl_3$

---

[16] For other examples, see Krois, Langer, and Lehner, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1345 (1980); Krois and Lehner, *Monatsh. Chem.* **113,** 1019 (1982).

[17] Turro and Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1028 (1967); Schaafsma, Steinberg, and de Boer, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **86,** 651 (1967). For a review of cyclopropanone chemistry, see Wasserman, Clark, and Turley, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **47,** 73–156 (1974).

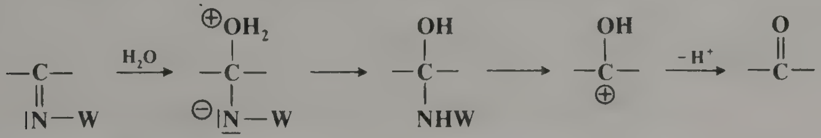
[18] Bell, Rand, and Wynne-Jones, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **52,** 1093 (1956); Pocker, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 17 (1960); Ogata and Kawasaki, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 2, pp. 3–11, Interscience, New York, 1970; Funderburk, Aldwin, and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5444 (1978).

[19] DePuy and Ponder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4629 (1959).

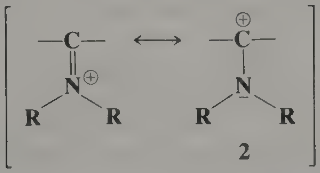
[20] McKillop, Hunt, Naylor, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4918 (1971).

and acetic acid,[21] aqueous $NaHSO_3$,[22] iron pentacarbonyl and BF_3,[23] benzeneseleninic anhydride $(PhSeO)_2O$,[24] NOCl,[25] alkaline H_2O_2,[26] triethylammonium chlorochromate,[27] aluminum isopropoxide in isopropyl alcohol,[28] lead tetraacetate,[29] cerium(IV) ions,[30] and by treatment of the O-acetate of the oxime with chromium(II) acetate.[31] Tosylhydrazones can be hydrolyzed to the corresponding ketones with NaOCl,[32] thallium(III) acetate,[33] aqueous acetone and BF_3–etherate,[34] $CuSO_4{\cdot}5H_2O$,[35] sodium peroxide,[36] as well as with other reagents.[37] Among other reagents that have been used to cleave C═N bonds are nitrous acid (as well as nitrosonium salts such as $NO^+ \; BF_4^-$)[38] and ozone[39] (see **9-9**).

The hydrolysis of carbon–nitrogen double bonds involves initial addition of water and elimination of a nitrogen moiety:



It is thus an example of reaction type *A* (p. 782). The sequence shown is generalized.[40] In specific cases there are variations in the order of the steps, depending on acid or basic catalysis or other conditions.[41] Which step is rate-determining also depends on acidity and on the nature of W and of the groups connected to the carbonyl.[42] Iminium ions (**2**)[43] would be expected to undergo hydrolysis quite readily, since there is a contributing form with a positive charge on the carbon.

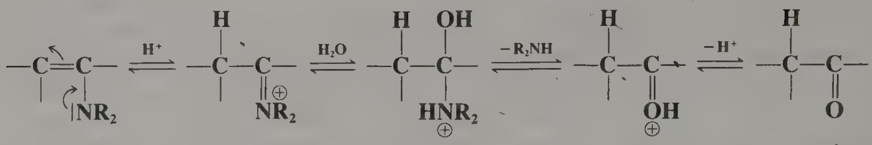


2

Indeed, they react with water at room temperature.[44] Acid-catalyzed hydrolysis of enamines (the last step of the Stork reaction, **2-17**) involves conversion to iminium ions:[45]

---

[21] Timms and Wildsmith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 195 (1971). See also McMurry and Silvestri, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1502 (1975).
[22] Pines, Chemerda, and Kozlowski, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3446 (1966).
[23] Alper and Edward, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2938 (1967).
[24] Barton, Lester, and Ley, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. I* 1212 (1980).
[25] Narayanan, Ramaswamy, and Wadia, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 454 (1977).
[26] Ho, *Synth. Commun.* **10,** 465 (1980).
[27] Rao, Radhakrishna, Singh, and Bhatnagar, *Synthesis* 808 (1983).
[28] Sugden, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 680 (1972).
[29] Yukawa, Sakai, and Suzuki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 2266 (1966).
[30] Bird and Diaper, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 145 (1969).
[31] Corey and Richman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5276 (1970).
[32] Ho and Wong, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3453 (1974).
[33] Butler and O'Donohue, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4583 (1979).
[34] Sacks and Fuchs, *Synthesis* 456 (1976).
[35] Attanasi and Gasperoni, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **108,** 137 (1978).
[36] Ho and Olah, *Synthesis* 611 (1976).
[37] For references, see Jiricny, Orere, and Reese, *Synthesis* 919 (1978).
[38] Doyle, Wierenga, and Zaleta, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1597 (1972); Doyle, Zaleta, DeBoer, and Wierenga, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1663 (1973); Olah and Ho, *Synthesis* 610 (1976).
[39] For example, see Erickson, Andrulis, Collins, Lungle, and Mercer, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2961 (1969).
[40] For reviews of the mechanism, see Bruylants and Feytmants-de Medicis, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," pp. 465–504, Interscience, New York, 1970; Salomaa, in Patai, Ref. 2, pt. 1, pp. 199–205.
[41] For example, see Reeves, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3332 (1962); Sayer and Conlon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3592 (1980).
[42] Cordes and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2843 (1963).
[43] For a review of iminium ions, see Böhme and Haake, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **9,** pt. 1, 107–223 (1976).
[44] Hauser and Lednicer, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 46 (1959).



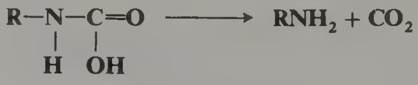
The mechanism of enamine hydrolysis is thus similar to that of vinyl ether hydrolysis (**0-7**).

OS **I,** 217, 298, 318, 381; **II,** 49, 223, 234, 284, 310, 333, 395, 519, 522; **III,** 20, 172, 626, 818; **IV,** 120; **V,** 139, 277, 736, 758; **50,** 66; **51,** 31; **53,** 98, 104; **56,** 3; **59,** 79.

6-3 Hydrolysis of Isocyanates and Isothiocyanates

$$R{-}N{=}C{=}O + H_2O \xrightarrow{OH^- \text{ or } H^+} R{-}NH_2 + CO_2$$

A common method for the preparation of primary amines involves the hydrolysis of isocyanates or isothiocyanates.[46] The latter react more slowly and more vigorous conditions are required. The reaction is catalyzed by acids or bases. In this case simple addition of water to the carbon–nitrogen double bond would give an N-substituted carbamic acid (**3**). Such compounds are unstable and break down to carbon dioxide (or COS in the case of isothiocyanates) and the amine:



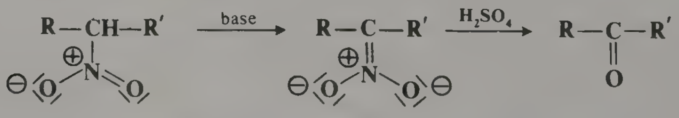
$$\underset{\text{H}}{\underset{|}{R{-}N}}{-}\underset{\text{OH}}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O \longrightarrow RNH_2 + CO_2$$

3

In the absence of a basic catalyst, disubstituted ureas, RNHCONHR, can be obtained by a nucleophilic substitution of RNH_2 on the carbamic acid or by addition of RNH_2 to another mole of RNCO.[47]

OS **II,** 24; **IV,** 819; **V,** 273; **51,** 48.

6-4 Hydrolysis of Aliphatic Nitro Compounds
Oxo-de-hydro,nitro-bisubstitution



Primary or secondary aliphatic nitro compounds can be hydrolyzed, respectively, to aldehydes or ketones, by treatment of their conjugate bases with sulfuric acid. This is called the *Nef reaction.*[48] Tertiary aliphatic nitro compounds do not give the reaction because they cannot be converted to their conjugate bases. Like **6-2,** this reaction involves hydrolysis of a C=N double bond. A possible mechanism is[49]

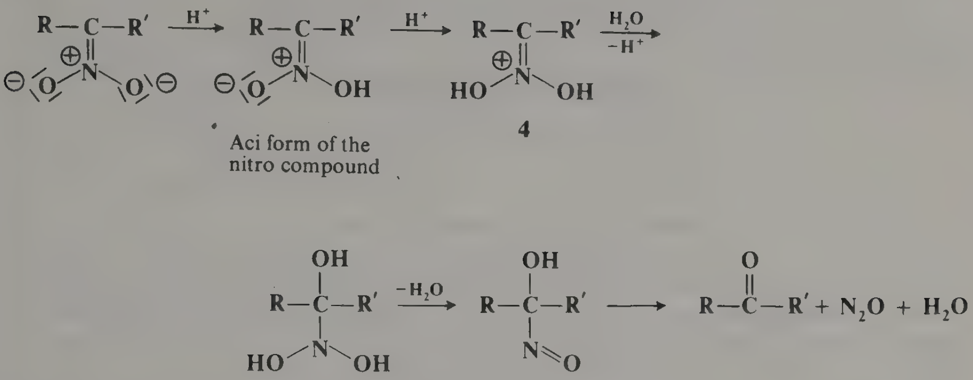
---

[45] Stamhuis and Maas, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2156 (1965); Maas, Janssen, Stamhuis, and Wynberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1111 (1967); Sollenberger and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4261 (1970). For a review of enamine hydrolysis, see Stamhuis, in Cook, "Enamines," pp. 101–113, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969.

[46] For a review of the mechanisms of reactions of isocyanates with various nucleophiles, see Satchell and Satchell, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **4,** 231–250 (1975).

[47] Arnold, Nelson, and Verbang, *Chem. Rev.* **57,** 47 (1957).

[48] For a review, see Noland, *Chem. Rev.* **55,** 137–155 (1955).



Intermediates of type **4** have been isolated in some cases.[50]

The conversion of nitro compounds to aldehydes or ketones has been carried out with better yields and fewer side reactions by several alternative methods. Among these are treatment of the nitro compound with aqueous $TiCl_3$,[51] activated dry silica gel,[52] 30% H_2O_2-K_2CO_3,[53] or a mixture of $NaNO_2$ and an alkyl nitrite,[54] and treatment of the conjugate base of the nitro compound with $KMnO_4$,[55] *t*-BuOOH and a catalyst,[56] ceric ammonium nitrate (CAN),[57] MoO_5-pyridine-HMPT,[58] or ozone.[59]

When *primary* nitro compounds are treated with sulfuric acid without previous conversion to the conjugate bases, they give carboxylic acids. Hydroxamic acids are intermediates and can be isolated, so that this is also a method for preparing *them*. Both the Nef reaction and the hydroxamic acid process involve the aci form; the difference in products arises from higher acidity, e.g., a difference in sulfuric acid concentration from 2 *M* to 15.5 *M* changes the product from the aldehyde to the hydroxamic acid.[60] The mechanism of the hydroxamic acid reaction is not known with certainty, but if higher acidity is required, it may be that the protonated aci form of the nitro compound is further protonated.

OS **56,** 36; **60,** 117. See also OS **IV,** 573.

---

[49] Hawthorne, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 2510 (1957). A similar mechanism, but with some slight differences, was suggested earlier by van Tamelen and Thiede, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 2615 (1952). See also Sun and Folliard, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 323 (1971).

[50] Feuer and Spinicelli, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2091 (1977).

[51] McMurry and Melton, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4367 (1973); McMurry, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 281–286 (1974), pp. 282–284. See also Kirchhoff, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2533 (1976).

[52] Keinan and Mazur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3861 (1977).

[53] Olah, Arvanaghi, Vankar, and Prakash, *Synthesis* 662 (1980).

[54] Kornblum and Wade, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1418 (1973).

[55] Shechter and Williams, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3699 (1962); Freeman and Yeramyan, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2061 (1970); Freeman and Lin, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1335 (1971); Kornblum, Erickson, Kelly, and Henggeler, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4534 (1982).

[56] Bartlett, Green, and Webb, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 331 (1977).

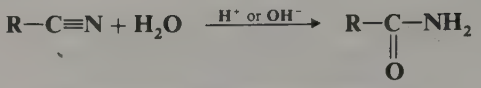
[57] Olah and Gupta, *Synthesis* 44, (1980).

[58] Galobardes and Pinnick, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5235 (1981). For another method, see Barton, Motherwell, and Zard, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5227 (1983).

[59] McMurry, Melton and Padgett, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 259 (1974). See Williams, Unger, and Moore, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1271 (1978), for the use of singlet oxygen instead of ozone.

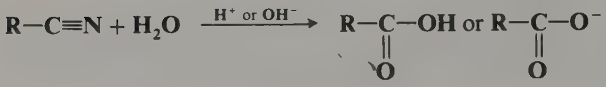
[60] Kornblum and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1742 (1965). See also Cundall and Locke, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 98 (1968); Edward and Tremaine, *Can J. Chem.* **49,** 3483, 3489, 3493 (1971).

6-5 Hydrolysis of Nitriles



$$\mathrm{R{-}C{\equiv}N + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+\ or\ OH^-} R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2}$$

***NN*-Dihydro-*C*-oxo-biaddition**



$$\mathrm{R{-}C{\equiv}N + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+\ or\ OH^-} R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH\ or\ R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}O^-}$$

Hydroxy,oxo-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution

Nitriles can be hydrolyzed to give either amides or carboxylic acids.[61] The amide is initially formed, but since amides are also hydrolyzed with acid or basic treatment, the carboxylic acid is the more common product. When the acid is desired, the reagent of choice is aqueous NaOH containing about 6 to 12% H_2O_2, though acid-catalyzed hydrolysis is also frequently carried out. However, there are a number of procedures for stopping at the amide stage,[62] among them the use of concentrated H_2SO_4; formic acid and HCl or HBr;[63] acetic acid and BF_3; H_2O_2 and OH^-;[64] and dry HCl followed by H_2O. The same result can also be obtained by use of water and certain metal ions or complexes;[65] MnO_2 in methylene chloride;[66] sodium superoxide NaO_2 in Me_2SO;[67] *t*-BuOH and solid KOH;[68] reduced copper;[69] KF-Al_2O_3;[70] or $TiCl_4$ and water.[71]

The hydrolysis of nitriles to carboxylic acids is one of the best methods for the preparation of these compounds. Nearly all nitriles give the reaction, with either acid or basic catalysts. The sequences

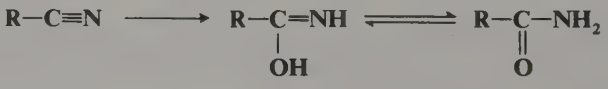
$$\mathrm{RX + NaCN \longrightarrow RCN \longrightarrow RCOOH} \tag{0-103}$$

$$\mathrm{RCHO + HCN \longrightarrow RCH(OH)CN \longrightarrow RCH(OH)COOH} \tag{6-49}$$

$$\mathrm{RCHO + NaCN + NH_4Cl \longrightarrow RCH(NH_2)CN \longrightarrow RCH(NH_2)COOH} \tag{6-50}$$

are very common. The last two sequences are often carried out without isolation of the cyanide intermediates.

The first addition product is **5**, which tautomerizes to the amide.



$$\mathrm{R{-}C{\equiv}N \longrightarrow \underset{\mathbf{5}}{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}{=}NH} \rightleftharpoons R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH_2}$$

5

[61] For reviews, see Compagnon and Miocque, *Ann. Chim. (Paris)* [14] **5,** 11–22, 23–37 (1970); Zil'berman, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 615–633 (1962).

[62] For a discussion, see Beckwith, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Amides," pp. 119–125, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[63] Becke, Fleig, and Pässler, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **749,** 198 (1971).

[64] For an example with phase transfer catalysis, see Cacchi, Misiti, and La Torre, *Synthesis* 243 (1980).

[65] For example, see Watanabe, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **32,** 1280 (1959), **37,** 1325 (1964); Bennett and Yoshida, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3030 (1973); Paraskewas, *Synthesis* 574 (1974). See also Diamond, Grant, Tom, and Taube, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4025 (1974).

[66] Cook, Forbes, and Kahn, *Chem. Commun.* 121 (1966).

[67] Kornblum and Singaram, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4727 (1979).

[68] Hall and Gisler, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3769 (1976).

[69] Ravindranathan, Kalyanam, and Sivaram, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4812 (1982).

[70] Rao, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 177 (1982).

[71] Mukaiyama, Kamio, Kobayashi, and Takei, *Chem. Lett.* 357 (1973).

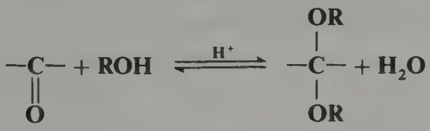
Thiocyanates can be converted to thiocarbamates, in a similar reaction:[72] $R—S—C{\equiv}N + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} R—S—CO—NH_2$. Hydrolysis of cyanamides gives amines, produced by the breakdown of the unstable carbamic acid intermediates: $R_2NCN \rightarrow [R_2NCOOH] \rightarrow R_2NH$.

OS **I,** 21, 131, 201, 289, 298, 321, 336, 406, 436, 451; **II,** 29, 44, 292, 376, 512, 586 (see, however, **V,** 1054), 588; **III,** 34, 66, 84, 88, 114, 221, 557, 560, 615, 851; **IV,** 58, 93, 496, 506, 664, 760, 790; **V,** 239; **53,** 98. Also see OS **III,** 609; **IV,** 359, 502.

B. Attack by OR (Addition of ROH)

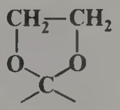
6-6 The Addition of Alcohols to Aldehydes and Ketones

O-Alkyl-*C*-alkoxy-addition



$$-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- + ROH \underset{}{\overset{H^+}{\rightleftharpoons}} -\overset{\overset{OR}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OR}{|}}{C}}- + H_2O$$

Acetals and ketals are formed by treatment of aldehydes and ketones, respectively, with alcohols in the presence of acid catalysts.[73] This is a reversible reaction, and acetals and ketals can be hydrolyzed by treatment with acid (**0-7**). With small unbranched aldehydes the equilibrium lies to the right. If it is desired to prepare ketals, or acetals of larger molecules, the equilibrium must be shifted, usually by removal of water. This can be done by azeotropic distillation, ordinary distillation, or the use of a drying agent such as Al_2O_3 or a molecular sieve.[74] The reaction in neither direction is catalyzed by bases, so most acetals and ketals are quite stable to bases, though they are easily hydrolyzed by acids. This makes this reaction a useful method of protection of aldehyde or ketone functions from attack by bases. The reaction is of wide scope. Most aldehydes are easily converted to acetals. With ketones the process is more difficult, presumably for steric reasons, and the reaction often fails, though many ketals, especially from cyclic ketones, have been made in this manner. Many functional groups may be present without being affected. 1,2-Glycols and 1,3-glycols form cyclic acetals and ketals, e.g.,



and these are often used to protect aldehydes and ketones.[75]

The mechanism, which involves initial formation of a *hemiacetal,*[76] is the reverse of that given for acetal hydrolysis (**0-7**):

---

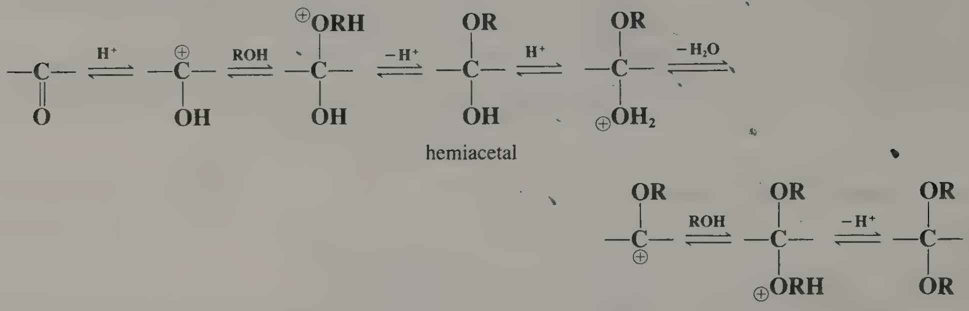
[72] Zil'berman and Lazaris, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 1012 (1963).

[73] For reviews, see Meskens, *Synthesis* 501–522 (1981); Sandler and Karo, "Organic Functional Group Preparations," vol. 3, pp. 4–17, 34–42, Academic Press, New York, 1972; Ogata and Kawasaki, Ref. 18, pp. 14–20; Schmitz and Eichhorn, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Ether Linkage," pp. 309–351, Interscience, New York, 1967.

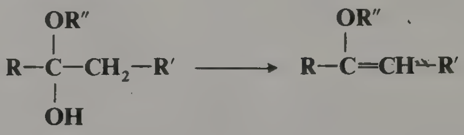
[74] For many examples of each of these methods, see Meskens, Ref. 73, pp. 502–505.

[75] For an improved procedure, see Chan, Brook, and Chaly, *Synthesis* 203 (1983).

[76] For a review of hemiacetals, see Hurd, *J. Chem. Educ.* **43,** 527–531 (1966).



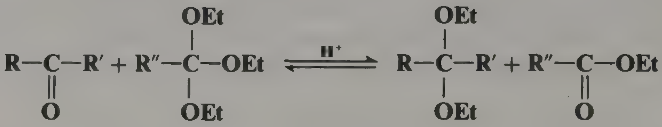
If the original aldehyde or ketone has an α-hydrogen, it is possible for water to split out in that way and enol ethers can be prepared in this manner:



$$R-\underset{OH}{\overset{OR''}{C}}-CH_2-R' \longrightarrow R-\overset{OR''}{C}=CH-R'$$

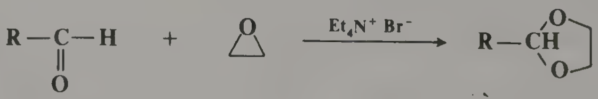
Hemiacetals themselves are no more stable than the corresponding hydrates (**6-1**). As with hydrates, hemiacetals of cyclopropanones[76a] and of polychloro and polyfluoro aldehydes and ketones may be quite stable.

When acetals or ketals are treated with an alcohol of higher molecular weight than the one already there, it is possible to get a transacetalation (see **0-19**). In another type of transacetalation, aldehydes or ketones can be converted to acetals or ketals by treatment with another acetal or ketal or with an ortho ester,[77] in the presence of an acid catalyst (shown for an ortho ester):



$$R-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R' + R''-\underset{OEt}{\overset{OEt}{C}}-OEt \xrightleftharpoons{H^+} R-\underset{OEt}{\overset{OEt}{C}}-R' + R''-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-OEt$$

This method is especially useful for the conversion of ketones to ketals, since the direct reaction of a ketone with an alcohol often gives poor results. In a variation of this method, aldehydes are converted to cyclic acetals by heating in an autoclave with an epoxide and a quaternary ammonium salt.[78]



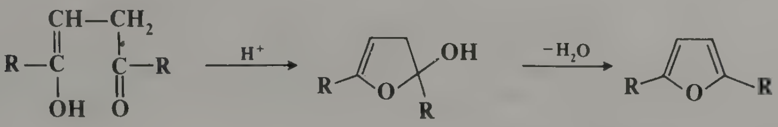
A feature of this method is that acid catalysts are not required. In another method, the substrate is treated with an alkoxysilane $ROSiMe_3$ in the presence of trimethylsilyl trifluoromethanesulfonate.[79]

[76a] For a review, see Salaun, *Chem. Rev.* **83**, 619–632 (1983).

[77] For a review with respect to ortho esters, see DeWolfe, "Carboxylic Ortho Ester Derivatives," pp. 154–164, Academic Press, New York, 1970.

[78] Nerdel, Buddrus, Scherowsky, Klamann, and Fligge, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **710**, 85 (1967).

1,4-Diketones give furans when treated with acids. This is actually an example of an intramolecular addition of an alcohol to a ketone, since it is the enol form that adds:

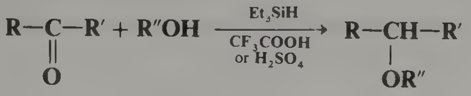


Similarly, 1,5-diketones give pyrans. Formic acid reacts with alcohols to give orthoformates.

OS **I,** 1, 298, 364, 381; **II,** 137; **III,** 123, 387, 502, 536, 644, 731, 800; **IV,** 21, 479, 679; **V,** 5, 292, 303, 450, 539; **56,** 44; **58,** 158; **59,** 10; **61,** 65. Also see OS **IV,** 558, 588; **V,** 25.

6-7 Reductive Alkylation of Alcohols

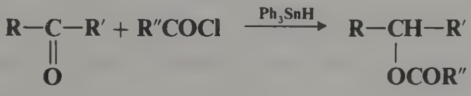
***C*-Hydro-*O*-alkyl-addition**



$$\underset{\displaystyle \overset{\|}{O}}{R{-}C{-}R'} + R''OH \xrightarrow[\text{CF}_3\text{COOH or H}_2\text{SO}_4]{\text{Et}_3\text{SiH}} \underset{\displaystyle \overset{|}{OR''}}{R{-}CH{-}R'}$$

Aldehydes and ketones can be converted to ethers by treatment with an alcohol and triethylsilane in the presence of a strong acid[80] or by hydrogenation in alcoholic acid in the presence of platinum oxide.[81] The process can formally be regarded as addition of ROH to give a hemiacetal RR′CHOR″, followed by reduction of the OH.

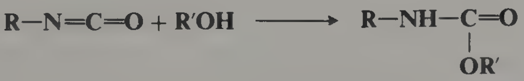
In this respect it is similar to **6-15.** In a similar reaction, ketones can be converted to carboxylic esters (reductive acylation of ketones) by treatment with an acyl chloride and triphenyltin hydride.[82]



$$\underset{\displaystyle \overset{\|}{O}}{R{-}C{-}R'} + R''COCl \xrightarrow{\text{Ph}_3\text{SnH}} \underset{\displaystyle \overset{|}{OCOR''}}{R{-}CH{-}R'}$$

6-8 The Addition of Alcohols to Isocyanates

***N*-Hydro-*C*-alkoxy-addition**



$$R{-}N{=}C{=}O + R'OH \longrightarrow R{-}NH{-}\underset{\displaystyle \overset{|}{OR'}}{C}{=}O$$

Carbamates (substituted urethans) are prepared when isocyanates are treated with alcohols.[46] This is an excellent reaction, of wide scope, and gives good yields. The carbamates are often used as derivatives of the alcohols. Cyanic acid HNCO gives unsubstituted carbamates. Addition of a second mole of HNCO gives *allophanates*, which make good derivatives for many alcohols.

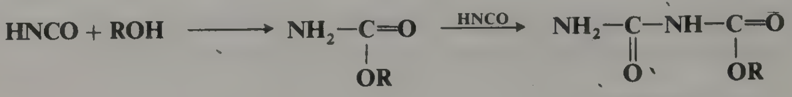
---

[79] Tsunoda, Suzuki, and Noyori, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1357 (1980).

[80] Doyle, DeBruyn, and Kooistra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3659 (1972).

[81] Verzele, Acke, and Anteunis, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5598 (1963). For still another method, see Loim, Parnes, Vasil'eva, and Kursanov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **8,** 902 (1972).

[82] Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4970 (1966).



$$\mathrm{HNCO + ROH \longrightarrow NH_2{-}\underset{OR}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O \xrightarrow{HNCO} NH_2{-}\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}NH{-}\underset{OR}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O}$$

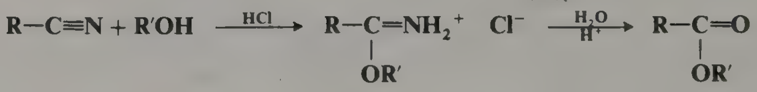
Allophanate

Polyurethans are made by combining compounds with two NCO groups with compounds containing two OH groups. Isothiocyanates similarly give thiocarbamates[83] RNHCSOR′, though they react slower than the corresponding isocyanates.

The details of the mechanism are poorly understood,[84] though the oxygen of the alcohol is certainly attacking the carbon of the isocyanate. Hydrogen bonding complicates the kinetic picture.[85] The addition of ROH to isocyanates can also be catalyzed by organometallic compounds,[86] by light,[87] or, for tertiary ROH, by lithium alkoxides.[88]

OS **I,** 140; **V,** 162; **51,** 112; **56,** 40; **59,** 1, 132.

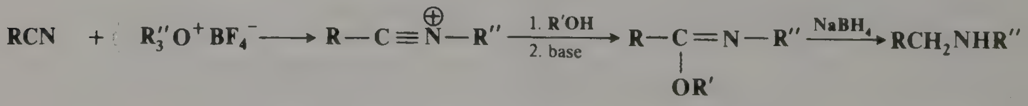
6-9 Alcoholysis of Nitriles
Alkoxy,oxo-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution



$$\mathrm{R{-}C{\equiv}N + R'OH \xrightarrow{HCl} R{-}\underset{OR'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}NH_2^{+}\ \ Cl^{-} \xrightarrow[H^+]{H_2O} R{-}\underset{OR'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O}$$

The addition of dry HCl to a mixture of a nitrile and an alcohol in the absence of water leads to the hydrochloride salt of an imino ester (imino esters are also called imidates and imino ethers). This reaction is called the *Pinner synthesis*.[89] The salt can be converted to the free imino ester by treatment with a weak base such as sodium bicarbonate, or it can be hydrolyzed with water and an acid catalyst to the corresponding carboxylic ester. If the latter is desired, water may be present from the beginning, in which case aqueous HCl can be used and the need for adding gaseous HCl is eliminated. Imino esters can also be prepared from nitriles with basic catalysts.[90]

This reaction is of broad scope and is good for aliphatic, aromatic, and heterocyclic R and for nitriles with oxygen-containing functional groups. The application of the reaction to nitriles containing a carboxyl group constitutes a good method for the synthesis of mono esters of dicarboxylic acids with the desired group esterified with no diester or diacid present. Addition of alcohols to nitrilium salts (prepared by treatment of nitriles with $R_3O^+\ BF_4^-$, see **0-36**) gives N-alkylimino



$$\mathrm{RCN + R''_3O^{+}BF_4^{-} \longrightarrow R{-}C{\equiv}\overset{\oplus}{N}{-}R'' \xrightarrow[2.\ base]{1.\ R'OH} R{-}\underset{OR'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}N{-}R'' \xrightarrow{NaBH_4} RCH_2NHR''}$$

---

[83] For a review of thiocarbamates, see Walter and Bode, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 281–293 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 285–297].

[84] For a review, see Entelis and Nesterov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 917–930 (1966).

[85] See for example, Robertson and Stutchbury, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4000 (1964); Lammiman and Satchell, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 2300 (1972), 877 (1974). See also Skorobogatova, Kartashov, and Mikhotov; *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **15,** 210 (1979); Sivakamasundari and Ganesan, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 720 (1984).

[86] For example, see Davies and Puddephatt, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2663 (1967), 1479 (1968).

[87] McManus, Bruner, Coble, and Ortiz, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1428 (1977).

[88] Bailey and Griffith, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2690 (1978).

[89] For reviews, see Compagnon and Miocque, *Ann. Chim.* (*Paris*) [14] **5,** 23–27 (1970), pp. 24–26; Zil'berman, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 615–633 (1962), p. 621; Sandler and Karo, Ref. 73, vol. 3, pp. 268–281 (1972). For a review of imino esters, see Neilson, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Amidines and Imidates," pp. 385–489, Wiley, New York, 1975.

[90] Schaefer and Peters, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 412 (1961).

esters.[91] These imino esters can be reduced with $NaBH_4$ to yield secondary amines[92] (see also reactions **6-27, 6-28**).

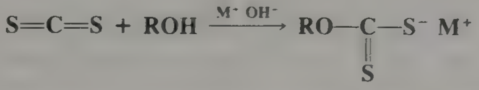
Cyanogen chloride reacts with alcohols in the presence of an acid catalyst such as dry HCl or $AlCl_3$ to give carbamates:[93]

$$ClCN + 2ROH \xrightarrow[\text{or } AlCl_3]{HCl} ROCONH_2 + RCl$$

ROH can also be added to nitriles in another manner (reaction **6-56**).

OS **I,** 5, 270; **II,** 284, 310; **IV,** 645; **58,** 4.

6-10 The Formation of Xanthates
***S*-Metallo-*C*-alkoxy-addition**



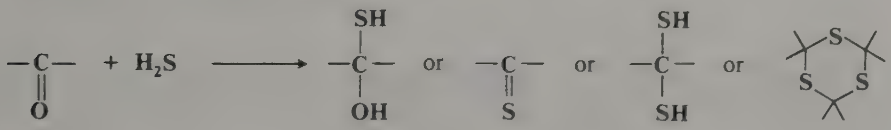
$$S{=}C{=}S + ROH \xrightarrow{M^+\ OH^-} RO{-}\underset{\underset{S}{\|}}{C}{-}S^-\ M^+$$

The addition of alcohols to carbon disulfide in the presence of a base produces xanthates. The base is often OH^-, but in some cases better results can be obtained by using methylsulfinyl carbanion $MeSOCH_2^-$.[94] In a similar manner, alkoxide ions add to CO_2 to give carbonate ester salts $ROCOO^-$

OS **V,** 439; **50,** 9; **57,** 45.

C. Sulfur Nucleophiles

6-11 The Addition of H_2S and Mercaptans to Carbonyl Compounds
***O*-Hydro-*C*-mercapto-addition**[95]



6 7 8 9

The addition of H_2S to an aldehyde or ketone can result in a variety of products.[96] The most usual product is the trithiane **9.**[97] α-Hydroxy thiols (**6**) can be prepared from polychloro and polyfluoro aldehydes and ketones.[98] Apparently **6** are stable only when prepared from these compounds, and not even for all of them. Thioketones[2] (**7**) can be prepared from certain ketones, such as diaryl ketones, by treatment with H_2S and an acid catalyst, usually HCl. They are often unstable and tend to trimerize (to **9**) or to react with air. Thioaldehydes are even less stable and simple ones[99] apparently have never been isolated, though *t*-BuCHS has been prepared in solution, where it exists for several hours at 20°C.[100] A high-yield synthesis of thioketones involves treatment of acyclic[101] ketones with 2,4-bis(4-methoxyphenyl)-1,3,2,4-dithiadiphosphetane-2,4-disulfide **10**.[102] **10** also converts the C=O groups of amides and carboxylic esters[102a] to C=S groups.[103] In a similar reaction, bis(tricyclohexyltin)-sulfide $(R_3Sn)_2S$ [R = cyclohexyl] and BCl_3 convert C=O groups of ketones, lactones and lactams to C=S groups.[104] Thioketones can also be prepared by treatment of ketones with P_4S_{10},[105] and from oximes or various types of hydrazone (overall conversion C=N— → C=S).[106]

---

[91] Borch, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 627 (1969); Pilotti, Reuterhäll, Torssell, and Lindblad, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **23,** 818 (1969).

[92] Borch, Ref. 91.

[93] Bodrikov and Danova, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **4,** 1611 (1968), **5,** 1558 (1969); Fuks and Hartemink, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **82,** 23 (1973).

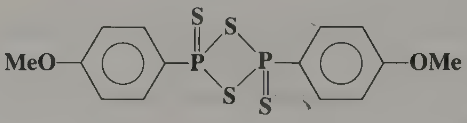
[94] Meurling, Sjöberg, and Sjöberg, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **26,** 279 (1972).

[95] This name applies to formation of **6.** Names for formation of **7** and **8** are, respectively, **thioxo-de-oxo-bisubstitution** and **dimercapto-de-oxo-bisubstitution.**

[96] For a review see Campaigne, in Kharasch, "Organic Sulfur Compounds," vol 1, pp. 134–145, Pergamon, New York, 1961.

[97] Campaigne and Edwards, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3760 (1962).

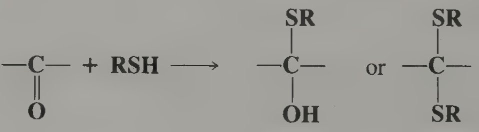
[98] Harris, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 2259 (1960).



10

gem-Dithiols (**8**) are much more stable than the corresponding hydrates or α-hydroxy thiols.[107] They have been prepared by the treatment of ketones with H_2S under pressure[108] and under mild conditions with HCl as a catalyst.[109] *gem*-Dithiols can also be prepared by the treatment of imines with H_2S,[110] and this can be accomplished without isolation of the imine if the aldehyde or ketone is treated with H_2S in the presence of ammonia or an amine.[111] In some cases *gem*-dithiols can be converted to thioketones by elimination of H_2S.[112]

Mercaptans add to aldehydes and ketones[113] to give hemimercaptals and thioacetals.[114] Hemi-



$$-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}- + \mathrm{RSH} \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle SR}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}- \quad \text{or} \quad -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle SR}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle SR}{|}}{C}}-$$

hemimercaptal thioacetal

---

[99] For the preparation and reactions of certain substituted thioaldehydes, see Muraoka, Yamamoto, and Takeshima, *Chem. Lett.* 101 (1982); Okazaki, Ishii, Fukuda, Oyama, and Inamoto, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1187 (1982), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 849 (1984); Hofstra, Kamphuis, and Bos, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 873 (1984), and references cited in these papers.

[100] Vedejs and Perry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1683 (1983). See also Baldwin and Lopez, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1029 (1982).

[101] Cyclopentanone and cyclohexanone gave different products: Scheibye, Shabana, Lawesson, and Rømming, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 993 (1982).

[102] Pedersen, Scheibye, Nilsson, and Lawesson, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belges* **87,** 223 (1978).

[102a] For a review of thiono esters RC(=S)OR′, see Jones and Bradshaw, *Chem. Rev.* **84,** 17–30 (1984).

[103] Scheibye, Pedersen, and Lawesson, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belges* **87,** 229 (1978); Pedersen, Scheibye, Clausen, and Lawesson, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belges* **87,** 293 (1978); Ghattas, El-Khrisy, and Lawesson, *Sulfur Lett.* **1,** 69 (1982).

[104] Steliou and Mrani, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3104 (1982).

[105] See, for example, Scheeren, Ooms, and Nivard, *Synthesis* 149 (1973).

[106] See for example, Kimura, Niwa, and Motoki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 2751 (1977); de Mayo, Petrašiūnas, and Weedon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4621 (1978); Okazaki, Inoue, and Inamoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3673 (1979).

[107] For a review of the preparation of *gem*-dithiols, see Mayer, Hiller, Nitzcshke, and Jentzsch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 370–373 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 1011–1014].

[108] Cairns, Evans, Larchar, and McKusick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 3982 (1952).

[109] Ref. 97; Demuynck and Vialle, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1213 (1967).

[110] Magnusson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **16,** 1536 (1962), **17,** 273 (1963).

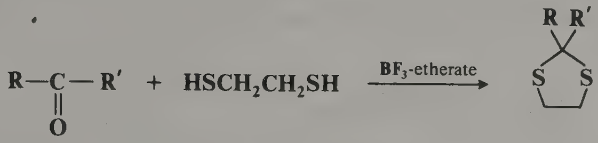
[111] Jentzsch, Fabian, and Mayer, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 1764 (1962).

[112] Bleisch and Mayer, *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 1771 (1966); Demuynck and Vialle, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2748 (1967).

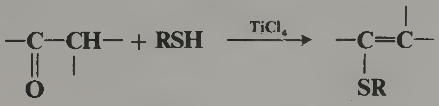
[113] For reviews, see Reid, "Organic Chemistry of Bivalent Sulfur," vol. 3, pp. 320–348, Chemical Publishing Company, New York, 1960; Campaigne, Ref. 96.

[114] When derived from aldehydes, these compounds are called *thioacetals* or *mercaptals*. When derived from ketones, they are often called *thioketals* or *mercaptoles*.

mercaptals are ordinarily unstable,[115] though they are more stable than the corresponding hemiacetals and can be isolated in certain cases.[116] Thioacetals, like acetals, are stable in the presence of bases, except that a strong base can remove the aldehyde proton, if there is one[117] (see **0-99**). A common method for the protection of ketones involves treatment with ethanedithiol to give a cyclic thioketal.[118] After subsequent reactions involving the R or R′ group, the protecting group can then be



removed by reaction **0-7.** Alternatively, the thioketal can be desulfurized with Raney nickel (**4-37**), giving the overall conversion C═O → CH_2. Thioacetals can also be prepared from aldehydes or ketones by treatment with mercaptans in the presence of $TiCl_4$,[119] with orthothioborates $(RS)_3B$,[120] with a disulfide RSSR (R = alkyl or aryl),[121] or with methylthiotrimethylsilane $MeSSiMe_3$.[122] If an aldehyde or ketone possesses an α-hydrogen, it can be converted to the corresponding enol thioether by treatment with a mercaptan in the presence of titanium tetrachloride:[123]



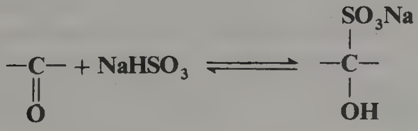
$$-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{|}{CH}- + RSH \xrightarrow{TiCl_4} -\underset{\underset{SR}{|}}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-$$

Aldehydes and ketones have been converted to sulfides by treatment with thiols and pyridine–borane, RCOR′ + R″SH $\xrightarrow{BH_3}$ RR′CHSR″,[124] in a reductive alkylation reaction, analogous to **6-7.**

OS **II,** 610; **IV,** 927; **56,** 8; **61,** 74. Also see OS **III,** 332; **IV,** 967; **V,** 780; **50,** 72.

6-12 Formation of Bisulfite Addition Products

***O*-Hydro-*C*-sulfonato-addition**



$$-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- + NaHSO_3 \rightleftharpoons -\overset{\overset{SO_3Na}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

Bisulfite addition products are formed from aldehydes, methyl ketones, cyclic ketones (generally seven-membered and smaller rings), α-keto esters, and isocyanates, upon treatment with sodium bisulfite. Most other ketones do not undergo the reaction, probably for steric reasons. The reaction is reversible (by treatment of the addition product with either acid or base)[125] and is useful for the purification of the starting compounds, since the addition products are soluble in water and many of the impurities are not.[126]

---

[115] See, for example, Fournier, Lamaty, Natat, and Roque, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 809 (1975).

[116] For example, see Field and Sweetman, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1799 (1969).

[117] Truce and Roberts, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 961 (1963).

[118] For a review, see Olsen and Currie, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 2, pp. 521–532, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[119] Kumar and Dev, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1289 (1983).

[120] Bessette, Brault, and Lalancette, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 307 (1965); Lalancette and Lachance, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 859 (1969).

[121] Tazaki and Takagi, *Chem. Lett.* 767 (1979).

[122] Evans, Grimm, and Truesdale, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3229 (1975). See also Ong and Chan, *Synth. Commun.* **7,** 283 (1977).

[123] Mukaiyama and Saigo, *Chem. Lett.* 479 (1973). See also Akiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 936 (1977).

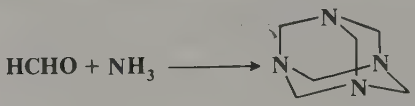
[124] Kikugawa, *Chem. Lett.* 1157 (1981).

[125] For a discussion of the mechanism, see Young and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1228 (1978).

OS **I,** 241, 336; **III,** 438; **IV,** 903; **V,** 437.

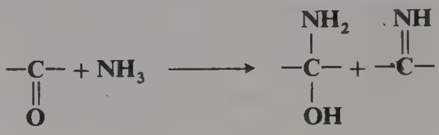
D. Attack by NH_2, NHR, or NR_2 (Addition of NH_3, RNH_2, R_2NH)

6-13 The Addition of Ammonia to Aldehydes and Ketones



11

The addition of ammonia to aldehydes or ketones does not generally give useful products. According to the pattern followed by analogous nucleophiles, the initial products would be expected to be *hemiaminals* (also called "aldehyde ammonias") (**12**) and/or imines (**13**):



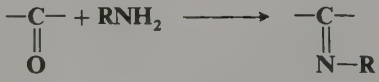
$$\underset{\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\|}}{-\mathrm{C}-} + NH_3 \longrightarrow \underset{\underset{\mathrm{OH}}{|}}{\overset{\overset{NH_2}{|}}{-\mathrm{C}-}} + \overset{\overset{\mathrm{NH}}{\|}}{-\mathrm{C}-}$$

12 **13**

However, these compounds are generally unstable. Imines with a hydrogen on the nitrogen spontaneously polymerize.[127] Stable hemiaminals can be prepared from polychlorinated and polyfluorinated aldehydes and ketones. Aside from these, when stable compounds *are* prepared in this reaction, they are the result of combinations and condensations of one or more molecules of **12** and/or **13** with each other or with additional molecules of ammonia or carbonyl compound. The most important example of such a product is hexamethylenetetramine[128] (**11**), prepared from ammonia and formaldehyde.[129] Analogs of this compound have been prepared from aromatic aldehydes and ammonium carbonate.[130] Aromatic aldehydes give hydrobenzamides $ArCH(N{=}CHAr)_2$ derived from three molecules of aldehyde and two of ammonia.[131] Cyclic trimers of **13** can sometimes be isolated as crystalline compounds, but these are unstable in solution.[132]

OS **II,** 214, 219; **IV,** 451; **50,** 81; **52,** 135. Also see OS **III,** 471; **V,** 897.

6-14 The Addition of Amines to Aldehydes and Ketones
Alkylimino-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\underset{\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\|}}{-\mathrm{C}-} + RNH_2 \longrightarrow \underset{\underset{\mathrm{N-R}}{\|}}{-\mathrm{C}-}$$

---

[126] The reaction has also been used to protect an aldehyde group in the presence of a keto group: Chihara, Wakabayashi, and Taya, *Chem. Lett.* 1657 (1981).

[127] Methanimine $CH_2{=}NH$ is stable in solution for several hours at −95°C, but rapidly decomposes at −80°C: Braillon, Lasne, Ripoll, and Denis, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **6,** 121 (1982).

[128] For a review of this compound, see Blažević, Kolbah, Belin, Šunjić, and Kajfež, *Synthesis* 161–176 (1979).

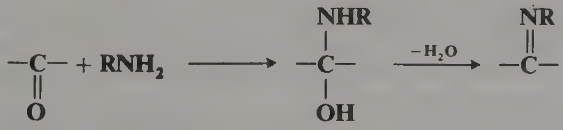
[129] For a discussion of the mechanism, See Nielsen, Moore, Ogan, and Atkins, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1678 (1979).

[130] Kamal, Ahmad, and Qureshi, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 869 (1963).

[131] Ogata, Kawasaki, and Okumura, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 1985 (1964); Crowell and McLeod, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 4030 (1967). See also Hasek, Elam, and Martin, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 1822 (1961).

[132] For example, see Nielsen, Atkins, DiPol, and Moore, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1349 (1974).

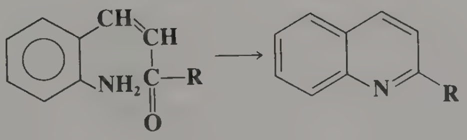
Primary, secondary, and tertiary amines can add to aldehydes[133] and ketones to give different kinds of products. Primary amines give imines.[134] In contrast to imines in which the nitrogen is attached to a hydrogen (**6-13**), these imines are stable enough for isolation. However, in some cases, especially with simple R groups, they rapidly decompose or polymerize unless there is at least one aryl group on the nitrogen or the carbon. When there is an aryl group, the compounds are quite stable. They are usually called *Schiff bases*, and this reaction is the best way to prepare them. The reaction is straightforward and proceeds in high yields. The initial N-substituted hemiaminals[134a] lose water to give the stable Schiff bases:



$$-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}- + RNH_2 \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NHR}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}- \xrightarrow{-H_2O} -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NR}{\|}}{C}-$$

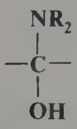
In general, ketones react more slowly than aldehydes, and higher temperatures and longer reaction times are often required. In addition, the equilibrium must often be shifted, usually by removal of the water, either azeotropically by distillation, or with a drying agent such as $TiCl_4$,[135] or with a molecular sieve.[136]

The reaction is often used to effect ring closure. The *Friedlander quinoline synthesis*[137] is an example:



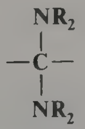
Pyrylium ions react with ammonia or primary amines to give pyridinium ions[138] (see p. 313).

When secondary amines are added to aldehydes or ketones, the initially formed N,N-disubstituted hemiaminals (**14**) cannot lose water in the same way, and it is possible to isolate them.[139] However, they are generally unstable, and under the reaction conditions usually react further. If no α-hydrogen



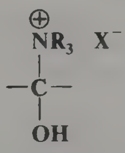
$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NR_2}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

14



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NR_2}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle NR_2}{|}}{C}}-$$

15



$$-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle \overset{\oplus}{N}R_3\ X^-}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

16

---

[133] For a review of the reactions between amines and formaldehyde, see Farrar, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **29,** 85–101 (1968).

[134] For reviews of reactions of carbonyl compounds leading to the formation of C═N bonds, see Dayagi and Degani, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," Ref. 40, pp. 64–83; Reeves, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," Ref. 40, pp. 600–614. For a review of the chemistry of imines, see Layer, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 489–510 (1963).

[134a] Some of these have been observed spectrally; see Forlani, Marianucci, and Todesco, *J. Chem. Res.* (*Synop.*) 126 (1984).

[135] Weingarten, Chupp, and White, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3246 (1967).

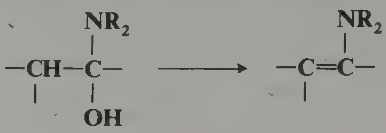
[136] Bonnett and Emerson, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4508 (1965); Roelofsen and van Bekkum, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **91,** 605 (1972).

[137] For a review, see Cheng and Yan, *Org. React.* **28,** 37–201 (1982).

[138] For a review, see Zvezdina, Zhadonva, and Dorofeenko, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 469–484 (1982).

[139] For example, see Duhamel and Cantacuzène, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1843 (1962).

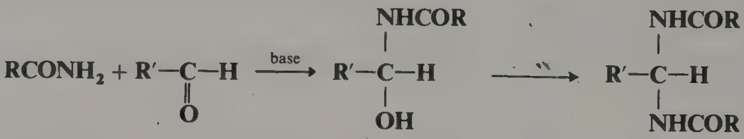
is present, **14** is converted to the more stable *aminal* (**15**).[139a] However, if an α-hydrogen is present, water (from **14**) or RNH_2 (from **15**) can be lost in that direction to give an enamine:[140]



$$-\underset{|}{CH}-\overset{NR_2}{\underset{OH}{C}}- \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{C}=\overset{NR_2}{C}-$$

This is the most common method for the preparation of enamines and usually takes place when an aldehyde or ketone containing an α-hydrogen is treated with a secondary amine. The water is usually removed azeotropically or with a drying agent,[141] but molecular sieves can also be used.[142] Secondary amine perchlorates react with aldehydes and ketones to give iminium salts (**2**, p. 785).[143] Tertiary amines can only give salts (**16**).

Amides can add to aldehydes in the presence of bases (so the nucleophile is actually $RCONH^-$) or acids to give acylated amino alcohols, which often react further to give alkylidene or arylidene bisamides:[144]

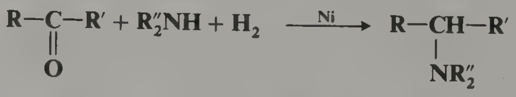


$$RCONH_2 + R'-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-H \xrightarrow{\text{base}} R'-\overset{NHCOR}{\underset{OH}{C}}-H \longrightarrow R'-\overset{NHCOR}{\underset{NHCOR}{C}}-H$$

If the R′ group contains an α-hydrogen, water may split out.

OS **I,** 80, 355, 381; **II,** 31, 49, 65, 202, 231, 422; **III,** 95, 328, 329, 332, 358, 374, 513, 753, 827; **IV,** 210, 605, 638, 824; **V,** 191, 277, 533, 567, 627, 703, 716, 736, 758, 808, 941, 1070; **50,** 66; **53,** 44, 48, 59; **54,** 39, 46, 93; **56,** 72; **58,** 56; **59,** 153, 190; **60,** 34; **61,** 129. Also see OS **IV,** 283, 464.

6-15 Reductive Alkylation of Ammonia or Amines
Hydro,dialkylamino-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$R-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R' + R''_2NH + H_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Ni}} R-\underset{NR''_2}{\underset{|}{CH}}-R'$$

When an aldehyde or a ketone is treated with ammonia or a primary or secondary amine in the presence of hydrogen and a hydrogenation catalyst (heterogeneous or homogeneous[145]), *reductive alkylation* of ammonia or the amine (or *reductive amination* of the carbonyl compound) takes place.[146] The reaction can formally be regarded as occurring in the following manner (shown for a primary amine), which probably *does* correspond to the actual sequence of steps:[147]

[139a] For a review of aminals, see Duhamel, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 2, pp. 849–907, Wiley, New York, 1982.

[140] For reviews of the preparation of enamines, see Pitacco and Valentin, in Patai, Ref. 139a, pt. 1, pp. 623–714; in Cook, Ref. 45, the articles by Haynes, pp. 55–100, and Kuehne, 315–341; Szmuszkovicz, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **4,** 1–113 (1963), pp. 9–12; Sandler and Karo, Ref. 73, vol. 2, pp. 86–94 (1971).

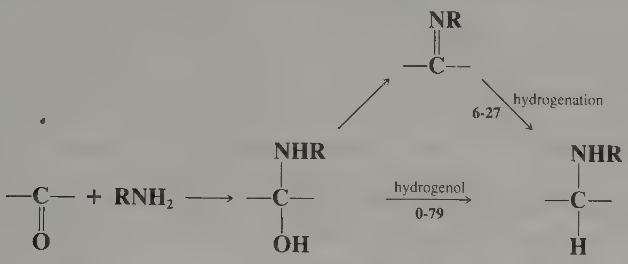
[141] For example, $TiCl_4$: White and Weingarten, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 213 (1967); Kuo and Daly, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1861 (1970).

[142] Brannock, Bell, Burpitt, and Kelly, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 801 (1964); Taguchi and Westheimer, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1570 (1971); Roelofsen and van Bekkum, Ref. 136; Carlson, Nilsson, and Strömqvist, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **37,** 7 (1983).

[143] Leonard and Paukstelis, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 3021 (1963).

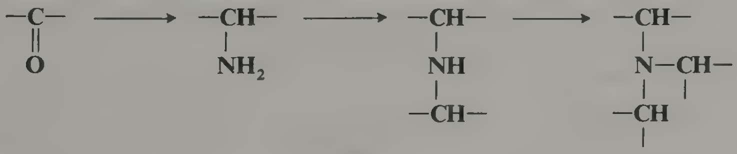
[144] For reviews, see Challis and Challis, in Zabicky, Ref. 62, pp. 754–759; Zaugg and Martin, *Org. React.* **14,** 52–269 (1965), pp 91–95, 104–112. For a discussion, see Gilbert, *Synthesis* 30 (1972).

[145] Markó and Bakos, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **81,** 411 (1974).



For ammonia and primary amines there are two possible pathways, but when secondary amines are involved, only the hydrogenolysis pathway is possible. Other reducing agents can be used instead of hydrogen and a catalyst, among them zinc and HCl, sodium cyanoborohydride $NaBH_3CN$,[148] sodium borohydride,[149] iron pentacarbonyl and alcoholic KOH,[150] selenophenol PhSeH,[151] and formic acid. When the last is used, the process is called the *Wallach reaction*. In the particular case where primary or secondary amines are reductively methylated with *formaldehyde* and formic acid, the method is called the *Eschweiler–Clarke procedure*. It is possible to use ammonium (or amine) salts of formic acid, or formamides, as a substitute for the Wallach conditions. This method is called the *Leuckart reaction*,[152] and in this case the products obtained are often the N-formyl derivatives of the amines instead of the free amines. Primary and secondary aromatic amines can be N-ethylated (e.g., ArNHR → ArNREt) by treatment with $NaBH_4$ in acetic acid.[153]

When the reagent is ammonia, it is possible for the initial product to react again and for this product to react again, so that secondary and tertiary amines are usually obtained as side products:



Similarly, primary amines give tertiary as well as secondary amines. In order to minimize this, the aldehyde or ketone is treated with an excess of ammonia or primary amine (unless of course the higher amine is desired).

Primary amines have been prepared from many aldehydes with at least five carbons and from many ketones by treatment with ammonia and a reducing agent. Smaller aldehydes are usually too reactive to permit isolation of the primary amine. Secondary amines have been prepared by both possible procedures: 2 moles of ammonia and 1 mole of aldehyde or ketone, and 1 mole of primary amine and 1 mole of carbonyl compound, the latter method being better for all but aromatic aldehydes. Tertiary amines can be prepared in three ways, but the method is seldom carried out with 3 moles of ammonia and 1 mole of carbonyl compound. Much more often they are prepared from primary or secondary amines.[154] The most common method for this purpose is the Eschweiler–Clarke procedure, i.e., treatment of the primary or secondary amine with formaldehyde and formic acid. Amines of the form $RNMe_2$ and R_2NMe are prepared in this manner.[155] Another method for accomplishing the conversions $RNH_2 \rightarrow RNMe_2$ and $R_2NH \rightarrow R_2NMe$ is to treat the amine with aqueous formaldehyde and $NaBH_4$[156] or $NaBH_3CN$.[157]

---

[146] For reviews, see Klyuev and Khidekel, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 14–27 (1980); Rylander, "Catalytic Hydrogenation over Platinum Metals," pp. 291–303, Academic Press, New York, 1967.

[147] See, for example, Le Bris, Lefebvre, and Coussemant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1366, 1374, 1584, 1594 (1964).

[148] Borch, Bernstein, and Durst, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2897 (1971). See also Boutigue and Jacquesy, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 750 (1973). For reviews of $NaBH_3CN$, see Hutchins and Natale, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **11,** 201–246 (1979); Lane, *Synthesis* 135–146 (1975).

[149] Schellenberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 3259 (1963).

[150] Watanabe, Yamashita, Mitsudo, Tanaka, and Takegami, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1879 (1974); Watanabe, Mitsudo, Yamashita, Shim, and Takegami, *Chem. Lett.* 1265 (1974).

[151] Fujimori, Yoshimoto, and Oae, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3385 (1980).

[152] For a review, see Moore, *Org. React.* **5,** 301–330 (1949); for discussions of the mechanism, see Lukasiewicz, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 1789 (1963); Ito, Oba, and Sekiya, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 2485 (1976); Agwada and Awachie, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 779 (1982).

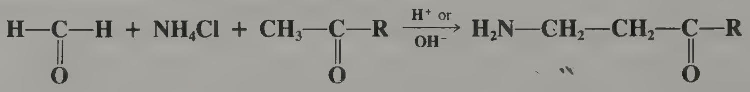
[153] Gribble, Lord, Skotnicki, Dietz, Eaton, and Johnson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7812 (1974). See also Marchini, Liso, Reho, Liberatore, and Moracci, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3453 (1975).

Reductive alkylation has also been carried out on nitro, nitroso, azo, and other compounds that are reduced in situ to primary or secondary amines.

OS **I,** 347, 528, 531; **II,** 503; **III,** 328, 501, 717, 723; **IV,** 603; **V,** 552; **52,** 124; **61,** 14.

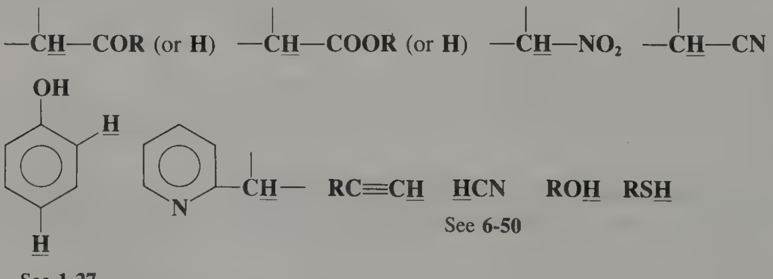
6-16 The Mannich Reaction

Acyl,amino-de-oxo-bisubstitution, etc.



$$H-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-H + NH_4Cl + CH_3-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R \xrightarrow[OH^-]{H^+ \text{ or}} H_2N-CH_2-CH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R$$

In the *Mannich reaction,* formaldehyde (or sometimes another aldehyde) is condensed with ammonia, in the form of its salt, and a compound containing an active hydrogen.[158] This can formally be considered as an addition of ammonia to give H_2NCH_2OH, followed by a nucleophilic substitution. Instead of ammonia, the reaction can be carried out with salts of primary or secondary amines,[159] or with amides,[160] in which cases the product is substituted on the nitrogen with R, R_2, and RCO, respectively. Arylamines do not normally give the reaction. In any case, the product is referred to as a *Mannich base.* Many active hydrogen compounds give the reaction. Among these are the following types, with the active hydrogen underlined:



$$-\overset{|}{C}\underline{H}-COR \text{ (or H)} \quad -\overset{|}{C}\underline{H}-COOR \text{ (or H)} \quad -\overset{|}{C}\underline{H}-NO_2 \quad -\overset{|}{C}\underline{H}-CN$$

$$RC\equiv C\underline{H} \quad \underline{H}CN \quad RO\underline{H} \quad RS\underline{H}$$

See **1-27**

See **6-50**

---

[154] For a review of the preparation of tertiary amines by reductive alkylation, see Spialter and Pappalardo, "The Acyclic Aliphatic Tertiary Amines," pp. 44–52, Macmillan, New York, 1965.

[155] For a discussion, see Pine and Sanchez, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 829 (1971).

[156] Sondengam, Hentchoya Hémo, and Charles, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 261 (1973).

[157] Borch and Hassid, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1673 (1972); Kapnang, Charles, Sondengam, and Hentchoya Hémo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3469 (1977). See also Ref. 148.

[158] For reviews, see Tramontini, *Synthesis* 703–775 (1973); House, "Modern Synthetic Reactions," 2d ed. pp. 654–660, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972. For a review of Mannich reactions in which the active-hydrogen component is a nitro compound, see Baer and Urbas, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," pp. 117–130, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[159] For a review where the amine component is an amino acid, see Agababyan, Gevorgyan, and Mndzhoyan, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **51,** 387–396 (1982).

[160] Hellmann, *Angew. Chem.* **69,** 463 (1957), *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **2,** 277–302 (1963).

The Mannich base can react further in three ways. If it is a primary or secondary amine, then it may condense with one or two additional molecules of aldehyde and active compound, e.g.,

$$\mathrm{H_2NCH_2CH_2COR \xrightarrow[CH_3COR]{HCHO} HN(CH_2CH_2COR)_2 \xrightarrow[CH_3COR]{HCHO} N(CH_2CH_2COR)_3}$$

If the active hydrogen compound has two or three active hydrogens, the Mannich base may condense with one or two additional molecules of aldehyde and ammonia or amine, e.g.,

$$\mathrm{H_2NCH_2CH_2COR \xrightarrow[NH_3]{HCHO} (H_2NCH_2)_2CHCOR \xrightarrow[NH_3]{HCHO} (H_2NCH_2)_3CCOR}$$

Another further reaction consists of condensation of the Mannich base with excess formaldehyde:

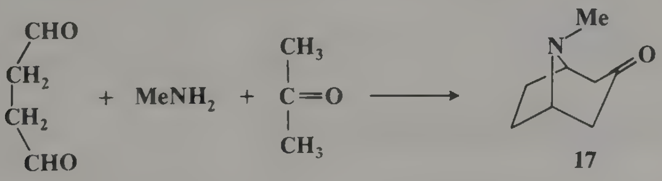
$$\mathrm{H_2NCH_2CH_2COR + HCHO \longrightarrow H_2C{=}NCH_2CH_2COR}$$

Sometimes it is possible to obtain these products of further condensation as the main products of the reaction. At other times they are side products.

When the Mannich base contains an amino group β to a carbonyl (and it usually does), ammonia is easily eliminated. This is a route to α,β-unsaturated aldehydes, ketones, esters, etc.:

$$\mathrm{H_2NCH_2CH_2COR \xrightarrow{\Delta} H_2C{=}CHCOR}$$

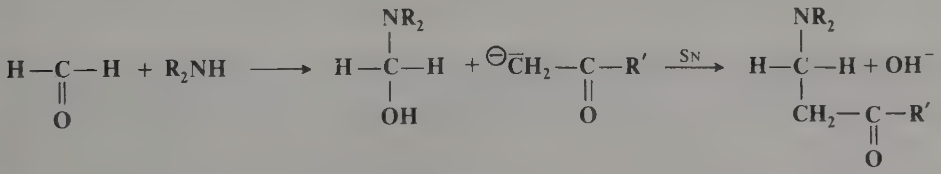
The Mannich reaction is an important biosynthetic route to natural products, mainly alkaloids, and some of these routes have been duplicated in the laboratory. A classic example is the synthesis of tropinone (**17**) by Robinson in 1917. Robinson synthesized tropinone by a Mannich reaction involving succindialdehyde, methylamine, and acetone:[161]



17

Studies of the reaction kinetics have led to the following proposals for the mechanism of the Mannich reaction.[162]

The base-catalyzed reaction



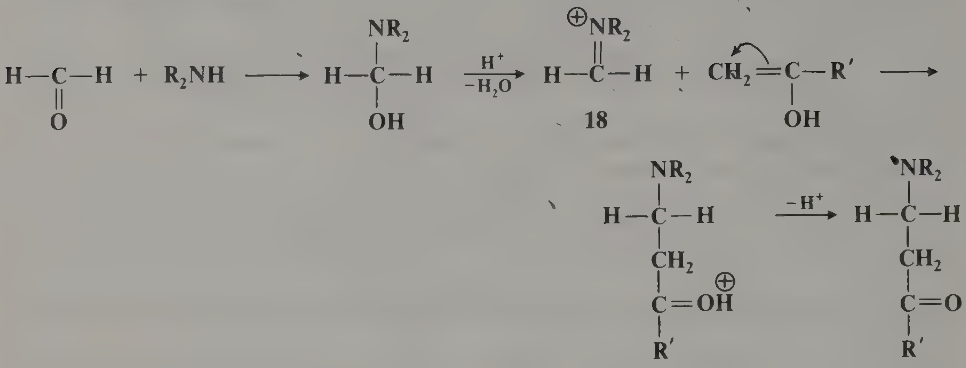
$$\mathrm{H{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}H} + \mathrm{R_2NH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NR_2}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}{-}H} + {}^{\ominus}\overline{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{H_2{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{S_N}} \mathrm{H{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle NR_2}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle CH_2{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'}{|}}{C}}{-}H} + \mathrm{OH^-}$$

---

[161] Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.* **111,** 762 (1917).

[162] Cummings and Shelton, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 419 (1960).

The acid-catalyzed reaction



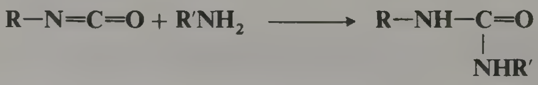
According to this mechanism, it is the free amine, not the salt that reacts, even in acid solution; and the active-hydrogen compound (in the acid-catalyzed process) reacts as the enol when that is possible. This latter step is similar to what happens in reaction **2-4.** There is kinetic evidence for the intermediacy of the iminium ion (**18**).[163]

When it is desired to use an unsymmetrical ketone as the active-hydrogen component, it is possible to get two products. Regioselectivity has been obtained by treatment of the ketone with preformed iminium ions:[164] the use of $Me_2\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}CH_2\quad CF_3COO^-$ in CF_3COOH gives substitution at the more highly substituted position, while with iso-$Pr_2\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}CH_2\quad ClO_4^-$ the reaction takes place at the less highly substituted position.[165] The preformed iminium compound dimethyl(methylene)ammonium iodide $CH_2{=}NMe_2^+\ I^-$, called *Eschenmoser's salt,*[166] has also been used in Mannich reactions.[167]

Regioselective synthesis of Mannich bases can also be carried out in an indirect manner (see **6-36**). Also see **6-50** and **1-27.**

OS **III,** 305; **IV,** 281, 515, 816; **57,** 95, 102; **59,** 153.

6-17 The Addition of Amines to Isocyanates
N-Hydro-*C*-alkylamino-addition



$$R{-}N{=}C{=}O + R'NH_2 \longrightarrow R{-}NH{-}\underset{\displaystyle NHR'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O$$

Ammonia and primary and secondary amines can be added to isocyanates to give substituted ureas.[46] Isothiocyanates give thioureas. This is an excellent method for the preparation of ureas and thioureas, and these compounds are often used as derivatives for primary and secondary amines. Cyanic acid

---

[163] Benkovic, Benkovic, and Comfort, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1860 (1969).

[164] For earlier use of preformed iminium ions in the Mannich reaction, see Ahond, Cavé, Kan-Fan, Husson, de Rostolan, and Potier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5622 (1968); Ahond, Cavé, Kan-Fan, and Potier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2707 (1970); Ref. 166.

[165] Jasor, Luche, Gaudry, and Marquet, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 253 (1974); Gaudry, Jasor, and Khac, *Org. Synth.* **59,** 153.

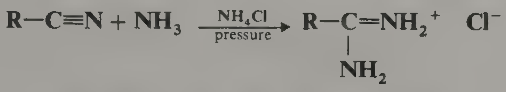
[166] Schreiber, Maag, Hashimoto, and Eschenmoser, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 330 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 355 (1971)]. See also Kinast and Tietze, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 239 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 261].

[167] See Holy, Fowler, Burnett, and Lorenz, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 613 (1979); Bryson, Bonitz, Reichel, and Dardis, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 524 (1980), and references cited in these papers.

HNCO also gives the reaction; usually its salts, e.g., NaNCO, are used. Wöhler's famous synthesis of urea involved the addition of ammonia to a salt of cyanic acid.[168]

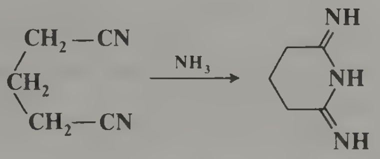
OS **II,** 79; **III,** 76, 617, 735; **IV,** 49, 180, 213, 515, 700; **V,** 555, 801, 802, 967; **51,** 121; **56,** 95.

6-18 The Addition of Ammonia or Amines to Nitriles
***N*-Hydro-*C*-amino-addition**



$$R{-}C{\equiv}N + NH_3 \xrightarrow[\text{pressure}]{NH_4Cl} R{-}\underset{\displaystyle NH_2}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}NH_2^{+} \quad Cl^-$$

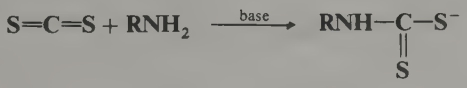
Unsubstituted amidines (in the form of their salts) can be prepared by addition of ammonia to nitriles.[169] Many amidines have been made in this way. Dinitriles of suitable chain length can give imidines:[170]



Primary and secondary amines can be used instead of ammonia, to give substituted amidines, but only if the nitrile contains electron-withdrawing groups; e.g., Cl_3CCN gives the reaction. Ordinary nitriles do not react, and, in fact, acetonitrile is often used as a solvent in this reaction.[171] However, aniline can be added to benzonitrile with $AlCl_3$ as catalyst. The addition of ammonia to cyanamide NH_2CN gives guanidine $(NH_2)_2C{=}NH$.

OS **I,** 302 [but also see OS **V,** 589]; **IV,** 245, 247, 515, 566, 769. See also OS **V,** 39.

6-19 The Addition of Amines to Carbon Disulfide and Carbon Dioxide
***S*-Metallo-*C*-alkylamino-addition**



$$S{=}C{=}S + RNH_2 \xrightarrow{\text{base}} RNH{-}\underset{\displaystyle S}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}S^-$$

Salts of dithiocarbamic acid can be prepared by the addition of primary amines to carbon disulfide.[171a] This reaction is similar to **6-10.** H_2S can be eliminated from the product, directly or indirectly, to give isothiocyanates RNCS. Isothiocyanates can be obtained directly by the reaction of primary amines and CS_2 in pyridine in the presence of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide.[172] In the presence of diphenyl phosphite and pyridine, primary amines add to CO_2 and to CS_2 to give, respectively, symmetrically substituted ureas and thioureas:[173]

---

[168] For a history of the investigation of the mechanism of the Wöhler synthesis, see Shorter, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **7,** 1–14 (1978). For some recent work, see Williams and Jencks, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1753, 1760 (1974); Hall and Watts, *Aust. J. Chem.* **30,** 781, 903 (1977).

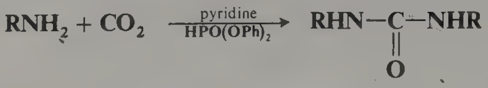
[169] For reviews of amidines, see Granik, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **52,** 377–393 (1983); Gautier, Miocque, and Farnoux, in Patai, Ref. 89, pp. 283–348.

[170] Elvidge, Linstead, and Salaman, *J. Chem. Soc.* 208 (1959).

[171] Grivas and Taurins, *Can. J. Chem.* **39,** 761 (1961).

[171a] Castro, Peña, Santos, and Vega, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 863 (1984).

[172] Jochims, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 1746 (1968). For other methods, see Sakai, Fujinami, and Aizawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **48,** 2981 (1975); Gittos, Davies, Iddon, and Suschitzky, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 141 (1976); Shibanuma, Shiono, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 573 (1977); Molina, Alajarin, and Arques, *Synthesis* 596 (1982).

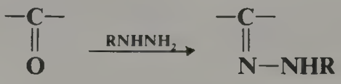


$$\mathrm{RNH_2 + CO_2 \xrightarrow[\text{HPO(OPh)}_2]{\text{pyridine}} RHN{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NHR}$$

OS **I,** 447; **III,** 360, 394, 599, 763; **V,** 223.

E. Other Nitrogen Nucleophiles

6-20 The Addition of Hydrazine Derivatives to Carbonyl Compounds
Hydrazono-de-oxo-bisubstitution

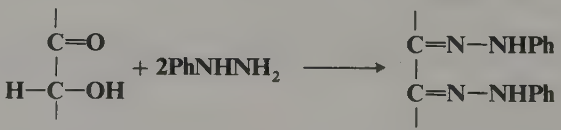


$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-} \xrightarrow{RNHNH_2} {-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle N{-}NHR}{\|}}{C}{-}}$$

The product of condensation of a hydrazine and an aldehyde or ketone is called a *hydrazone*. Hydrazine itself gives hydrazones only with aryl ketones. With other aldehydes and ketones, either no useful product can be isolated, or the remaining NH_2 group condenses with a second mole of carbonyl compound to give an *azine*. This type of product is especially important for aromatic aldehydes:

$$\mathrm{ArCH{=}N{-}NH_2 + ArCHO \longrightarrow \underset{\text{An azine}}{ArCH{=}N{-}N{=}CHAr}}$$

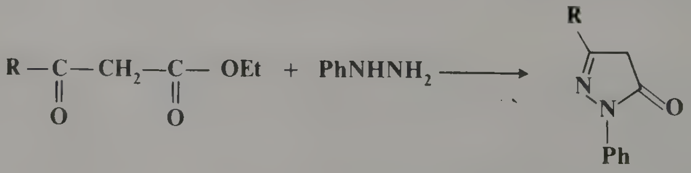
However, in some cases azines can be converted to hydrazones by treatment with excess hydrazine and NaOH.[174] Arylhydrazines, especially phenyl, *p*-nitrophenyl, and 2,4-dinitrophenyl, are used much more often and give the corresponding hydrazones with most aldehydes and ketones.[175] Since these are usually solids, they make excellent derivatives and are commonly employed for this purpose. α-Hydroxy aldehydes and ketones and α-dicarbonyl compounds give *osazones*, in which two adjacent carbons have carbon–nitrogen double bonds:



$$\begin{array}{c} | \\ \mathrm{C{=}O} \\ | \\ \mathrm{H{-}C{-}OH} \\ | \end{array} + \mathrm{2PhNHNH_2} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{l} | \\ \mathrm{C{=}N{-}NHPh} \\ | \\ \mathrm{C{=}N{-}NHPh} \\ | \end{array}$$

An osazone

Osazones are particularly important in carbohydrate chemistry. In contrast to this behavior, β-diketones and β-keto esters give *pyrazoles* and *pyrazolones*, respectively (illustrated for β-keto esters):



---

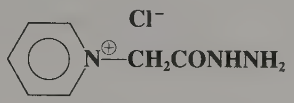
[173] Yamazaki, Higashi, and Iguchi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1191 (1974). For another method for the conversion of amines and CO_2 to ureas, see Ogura, Takeda, Tokue, and Kobayashi, *Synthesis* 394 (1978).

[174] For example, see Day and Whiting, *Org. Synth.* **50,** 3.

[175] For a review of arylhydrazones, see Buckingham, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **23,** 37–56 (1969).

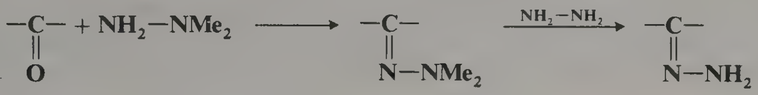
Other hydrazine derivatives frequently used to prepare the corresponding hydrazone are semicarbazide $NH_2NHCONH_2$, in which case the hydrazone is called a semicarbazone, and *Girard's reagents T and P,* in which case the hydrazone is water-soluble because of the ionic group. Girard's reagents are often used for purification of carbonyl compounds.

$Cl^- \; Me_3NCH_2CONHNH_2$



Girard's reagent T Girard's reagent P

Simple N-unsubstituted hydrazones can be obtained by an exchange reaction. The N,N-dimethylhydrazone is prepared first and then treated with hydrazine:[176]

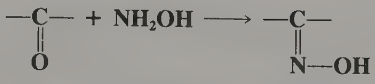


$$\underset{\text{O}}{\overset{\|}{-\text{C}-}} + \text{NH}_2\text{—NMe}_2 \longrightarrow \underset{\text{N—NMe}_2}{\overset{\|}{-\text{C}-}} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2\text{—NH}_2} \underset{\text{N—NH}_2}{\overset{\|}{-\text{C}-}}$$

No azines are formed under these conditions.

OS **II,** 395; **III,** 96, 351; **IV,** 351, 377, 536, 884; **V,** 27, 258, 747, 929; **50,** 3, 102; **52,** 122; **55,** 52, 73; **57,** 69; **59,** 42; **61,** 141. Also see OS **III,** 708; **50,** 6.

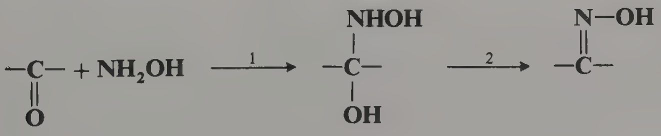
6-21 The Formation of Oximes
Hydroxyimino-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\underset{\text{O}}{\overset{\|}{-\text{C}-}} + \text{NH}_2\text{OH} \longrightarrow \underset{\text{N—OH}}{\overset{\|}{-\text{C}-}}$$

In a reaction very much like **6-20,** oximes can be prepared by the addition of hydroxylamine to aldehydes or ketones.[177] Derivatives of hydroxylamine, e.g., H_2NOSO_3H and $HON(SO_3Na)_2$, have also been used. For hindered ketones, such as hexamethylacetone, high pressures, e.g., 10,000 atm, may be necessary.[178] Another procedure, successful for hindered ketones, is to allow the ketone to stand with hydroxylamine and a strongly basic catalyst for 1 to 6 months. High yields of oximes are achieved in this way.[179]

It has been shown[180] that the rate of formation of oximes is at a maximum at a pH which depends on the substrate but is usually about 4, and that the rate decreases as the pH is either raised or lowered from this point. We have previously seen (p. 292) that bell-shaped curves like this are often caused by changes in the rate-determining step. In this case, at low pH values step 2 is rapid



$$\underset{\text{O}}{\overset{\|}{-\text{C}-}} + \text{NH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{1} \underset{\text{OH}}{\overset{\text{NHOH}}{-\text{C}-}} \xrightarrow{2} \overset{\text{N—OH}}{\overset{\|}{-\text{C}-}}$$

19

---

[176] Newkome and Fishel, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 677 (1966).

[177] For a review, see Sandler and Karo, Ref. 73, vol. 3, pp. 372–381.

[178] Jones, Tristram, and Benning, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2151 (1959).

[179] Pearson and Keaton, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1557 (1963).

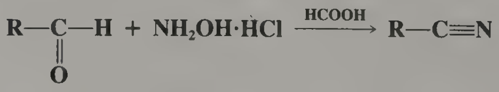
[180] Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 475 (1959), *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **2,** 63–128 (1964).

(because it is acid-catalyzed), and step 1 is slow (and rate-determining), because under these acidic conditions most of the NH_2OH molecules have been converted to the conjugate NH_3OH^+ ions, which cannot attack the substrate. As the pH is slowly increased, the fraction of free NH_2OH molecules increases and consequently so does the reaction rate, until the maximum rate is reached at about pH = 4. As the rising pH has been causing an increase in the rate of step 1, it has also been causing a *decrease* in the rate of the acid-catalyzed step 2, although this latter process has not affected the overall rate since step 2 was still faster than step 1. However, when the pH goes above about 4, step 2 becomes rate-determining, and although the rate of step 1 is still increasing (as it will until essentially all the NH_2OH is unprotonated), it is now step 2 that determines the rate, and this step is slowed by the decrease in acid concentration. Thus the overall rate decreases as the pH rises beyond about 4. It is likely that similar considerations apply to the reaction of aldehydes and ketones with amines, hydrazines, and other nitrogen nucleophiles.[181] There is evidence that when the nucleophile is 2-methylthiosemicarbazide, there is a second change in the rate-determining step: above pH about 10 *basic* catalysis of step 2 has increased the rate of this step to the point where step 1 is again rate-determining.[182] Still a third change in the rate-determining step has been found at about pH = 1, showing that at least in some cases step 1 actually consists of two steps: formation of a zwitterion, e.g., $HO\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}O^{\ominus}$ in the case shown above, and conversion of this to **19.**[183] The intermediate **19** has been detected by nmr in the reaction between NH_2OH and acetaldehyde.[184]

In another type of process, oximes can be obtained by passing a mixture of ketone vapor, NH_3, and O_2 over a silica-gel catalyst.[185] Ketones can also be converted to oximes by treatment with other oximes, in a transoximation reaction.[186]

OS **I,** 318, 327; **II,** 70, 204, 313, 622; **III,** 690; **IV,** 229; **V,** 139, 1031. See also OS **58,** 106.

6-22 The Conversion of Aldehydes to Nitriles
Nitrilo-de-hydro,oxo-tersubstitution



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}H + NH_2OH{\cdot}HCl \xrightarrow{HCOOH} R{-}C{\equiv}N$$

Aldehydes can be converted to nitriles in one step by treatment with hydroxylamine hydrochloride and either formic acid,[187] concentrated HCl,[188] SeO_2,[189] $MeNO_2$–polyphosphoric acid,[189a] or pyridine–toluene.[190] The reaction is a combination of **6-21** and **7-40.** Direct nitrile formation has also been accomplished with certain derivatives of NH_2OH, notably, N,O-bistrifluoroacetylhydroxylamine

---

[181] For reviews of the mechanisms of such reactions, see Cockerill and Harrison, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups: Supplement A," pt. 1, pp. 288–299, Wiley, New York, 1977; Sollenberger and Martin, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 367–392, Interscience, New York, 1968.

[182] Sayer and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3262 (1972).

[183] Rosenberg, Silver, Sayer, and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7986 (1974); Sayer, Pinsky, Schonbrunn, and Washtien, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7998 (1974); Sayer and Edman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3010 (1979).

[184] Cocivera, Fyfe, Effio, Vaish, and Chen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1573 (1976); Cocivera and Effio, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7371 (1976).

[185] Armor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 1453 (1980).

[186] For example, see Block and Newman, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 1031.

[187] Olah and Keumi, *Synthesis* 112 (1979).

[188] Findlay and Tang, *Can. J. Chem.* **45,** 1014 (1967).

[189] Sosnovsky, Krogh, and Umhoefer, *Synthesis* 722 (1979).

[189a] Ganboa and Palomo, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 999 (1983).

[190] Saednya, *Synthesis* 190 (1982).

$F_3CCONHOCOCF_3$[191] and NH_2OSO_2OH.[192] Another method involves treatment with hydrazoic acid, although the Schmidt reaction (**8-19**) may compete.[193] Aromatic aldehydes have been converted to nitriles in good yield with $NH_4H_2PO_4$ and nitropropane in acetic acid,[194] with hydroxylamine hydrochloride, Mg_2SO_4, and TsOH,[195] and with ammonia and iodine or lead tetraacetate.[196]

On treatment with two equivalents of dimethylaluminum amide Me_2AlNH_2, carboxylic esters can be converted to nitriles: $RCOOR' \rightarrow RCN$.[197] This is very likely a combination of **0-57** and **7-42.**

See also **9-5.**

OS **V,** 656.

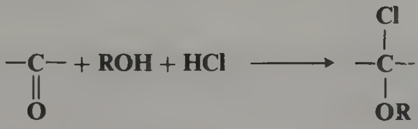
6-23 The Addition of Nitriles to Aldehydes

See reaction **6-59.**

F. Halogen Nucleophiles

6-24 The Formation of α-Halo Ethers

Alkoxy,halo-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \text{O}}{\|}}{-\text{C}-} + \text{ROH} + \text{HCl} \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle \text{Cl}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \text{OR}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-$$

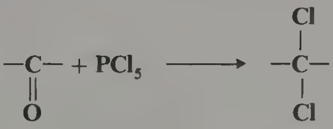
α-Halo ethers can be prepared by treatment of aldehydes and ketones with an alcohol and HX. The reaction is applicable to aliphatic aldehydes and ketones and to primary and secondary alcohols. Aromatic aldehydes and ketones react poorly.[198]

The addition of HX to an aldehyde or ketone gives α-halo alcohols, which are usually unstable, although exceptions are known, especially with perfluoro and perchloro species.[199] Unstable α-halo alcohols may be quite stable in the dimeric form $2XCR_2OH \rightarrow XCR_2OCR_2X$.

OS **I,** 377; **IV,** 101 (see, however, OS **V,** 218), 748; **52,** 16.

6-25 The Formation of *gem*-Dihalides from Aldehydes and Ketones

Dihalo-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \text{O}}{\|}}{-\text{C}-} + \text{PCl}_5 \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle \text{Cl}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \text{Cl}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-$$

---

[191] Pomeroy and Craig, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 6340 (1959).

[192] Streith, Fizet, and Fritz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **59,** 2786 (1976).

[193] For additional methods, see Glass and Hoy, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1781 (1976); Ikeda, Machii, and Okahara, *Synthesis* 301 (1978); Nakagawa, Mineo, Kawamura, Horikawa, Tokumoto, and Mori, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 529 (1979); Furukawa, Fukumura, Akasaka, Yoshimura, and Oae, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 761 (1980); Gelas-Mialhe and Vessière, *Synthesis* 1005 (1980); Arques, Molina, and Soler, *Synthesis* 702 (1980).

[194] Blatter, Lukaszewski, and de Stevens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2203 (1961). See also Dauzonne, Demerseman, and Royer, *Synthesis* 739 (1981).

[195] Ganboa and Palomo, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 219 (1983).

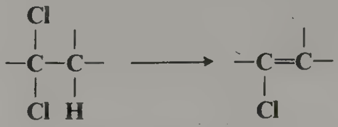
[196] Misono, Osa, and Koda, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 854 (1966), **40,** 2875 (1967); Parameswaran and Friedman, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 988 (1965).

[197] Wood, Khatri, and Weinreb, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4907 (1979).

[198] Klages and Mühlbauer, *Chem. Ber.* **92,** 1818 (1959).

[199] For example, see Andreades and England, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4670 (1961).

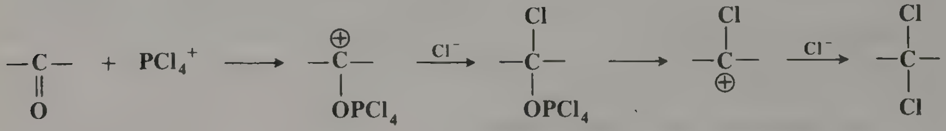
Aliphatic aldehydes and ketones can be converted to *gem*-dichlorides by treatment with PCl_5. The reaction fails for perhalo ketones.[200] If the aldehyde or ketone has an α-hydrogen, elimination of HCl may follow and a vinyl chloride is a frequent side product:[201]



$$-\underset{Cl}{\overset{Cl}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-\underset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}- \longrightarrow -\underset{Cl}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{|}{C}-$$

or even the main product.[202] PBr_5 does not give good yields of *gem*-dibromides, but BBr_3 does, at least with aromatic aldehydes.[203]

The mechanism of *gem*-dichloride formation involves initial attack of PCl_4^+ (which is present in solid PCl_5) at the oxygen, followed by addition of Cl^- to the carbon:[204]



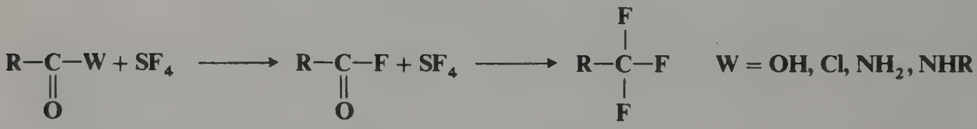
$$-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}- + PCl_4^+ \longrightarrow -\underset{OPCl_4}{\underset{|}{\overset{\oplus}{C}}}- \xrightarrow{Cl^-} -\underset{OPCl_4}{\underset{|}{\overset{Cl}{\overset{|}{C}}}}- \longrightarrow -\underset{\oplus}{\overset{Cl}{\overset{|}{C}}}- \xrightarrow{Cl^-} -\underset{Cl}{\underset{|}{\overset{Cl}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-$$

20

This chloride ion may come from PCl_6^- (which is also present in solid PCl_5). There follows a two-step SN1 process. Alternatively, **20** can be converted to the product without going through the chlorocarbocation, by an SNi process.

This reaction has sometimes been performed on esters, though these compounds very seldom undergo any addition to the C=O bond. An example is the conversion of $F_3CCOOPh$ to F_3CCCl_2OPh.[205] However, formates commonly give the reaction. PCl_5 converts hydrazides $RCONHNH_2$ to di- or trichlorides $RCHCl_2$ or $RCCl_3$.[206] R may be alkyl or aryl.

Many aldehydes and ketones have been converted to *gem*-difluoro compounds with sulfur tetrafluoride SF_4,[207] including quinones, which give 1,1,4,4-tetrafluorocyclohexadiene derivatives. Carboxylic acids, acyl chlorides, and amides react with SF_4 to give 1,1,1-trifluorides. In these cases the first product is the acyl fluoride, which then undergoes the *gem*-difluorination reaction:



$$R-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-W + SF_4 \longrightarrow R-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-F + SF_4 \longrightarrow R-\underset{F}{\underset{|}{\overset{F}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-F \qquad W = OH, Cl, NH_2, NHR$$

The acyl fluroide can be isolated. Esters also give trifluorides, though more vigorous conditions are required, but in this case the carbonyl group of the ester is attacked first, and RCF_2OR' can be isolated from $RCOOR'$ and then converted to the trifluoride. Anhydrides can react in either manner, and both types of intermediate are isolable under the right conditions. SF_4 even converts carbon dioxide to CF_4. A disadvantage of reactions with SF_4 is that they require a pressure vessel lined with stainless steel. Selenium tetrafluoride SeF_4 gives similar reactions, but atmospheric pressure and ordinary glassware can be used.[208] Other reagents that have been used to convert aldehydes and ketones to *gem*-difluorides are phenylsulfur trifluoride $PhSF_3$,[209] carbonyl fluoride COF_2,[210] molybdenum hexafluoride MoF_6,[211] and the commercially available diethylaminosulfur trifluoride (DAST) Et_2NSF_3.[212] Gaseous ClF and HF has been used to convert carboxylic esters to RCF_2OR'.[213]

---

[200] Farah and Gilbert, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1241 (1965).

[201] For example, see Nikolenko and Popov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **32,** 29 (1962).

[202] See, for example, Newman, Fraenkel, and Kirn, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1851 (1963).

[203] Lansinger and Ronald, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 341 (1979).

[204] Newman and Wood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4300 (1959); Newman, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 741 (1969).

[205] Kirsanov and Molosnova, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **28,** 31 (1958); Clark and Simons, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 5197 (1961).

[206] Mikhailov, Matyushecheva, Derkach, and Yagupol'skii, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **6,** 147 (1970); Mikhailov, Matyushecheva, and Yagupol'skii, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **9,** 1847 (1973).

[207] For reviews, see Boswell, Ripka, Scribner, and Tullock, *Org. React.* **21,** 1–124 (1974); Smith, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 467–475 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 742–751].

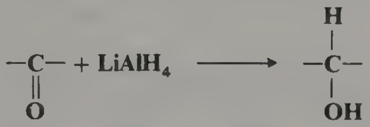
The mechanism with SF_4 is probably similar in general nature, if not in specific detail, to that with PCl_5.

OS **II,** 549; **V,** 365, 396, 1082; **57,** 62; **59,** 85. Also see OS **I,** 506.

G. Attack by Hydrogen

6-26 Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones to Alcohols

***C,O*-Dihydro-addition**



$$-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

Aldehydes can be reduced to primary alcohols, and ketones to secondary alcohols, by a number of reducing agents, of which lithium aluminum hydride and other metallic hydrides are the most commonly used.[214] These reagents have two main advantages over many other reducing agents: they do not reduce carbon–carbon double (or triple) bonds, and they generally contain a lot of hydrogen in a small amount of reagent—with $LiAlH_4$, all four hydrogens are usable for reduction. The reaction is broad and general. $LiAlH_4$ easily reduces aliphatic, aromatic, alicyclic, and heterocyclic aldehydes, containing double or triple bonds and/or nonreducible groups such as NR_3, OH, OR, F, etc. If the molecule contains a group reducible by $LiAlH_4$ (e.g., NO_2, CN, COOR), then it is also reduced.[215] $LiAlH_4$ reacts readily with water and alcohols, so that these compounds must be excluded. Common solvents are ether and THF. $NaBH_4$ has a similar scope but is more selective and so may be used with NO_2, Cl, COOR, CN, etc. in the molecule. Another advantage of $NaBH_4$ is that it can be used in water or alcoholic solvents and so reduces compounds such as sugars that are not soluble in ethers. The double bonds that are generally not affected by metallic hydrides may be isolated or conjugated, but double bonds that are conjugated with the C=O group may or may not be reduced, depending on the substrate, reagent, and reaction conditions. For example, it has proved possible to reduce only the C=O bonds of α,β-unsaturated ketones with AlH_3 and with diisobutylaluminum hydride (p. 694). Also, both $LiAlH_4$[216] and $NaBH_4$[217] predominantly reduce only the C=O bonds of C=C—C=O systems in most cases, though substantial amounts of fully saturated alcohols have been found in some cases[216] (p. 694). The scope of these reagents with ketones is similar to that with aldehydes. $LiAlH_4$ reduces even sterically hindered ketones.

---

[208] Olah, Nojima, and Kerekes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 925 (1974).

[209] Sheppard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3058 (1962).

[210] Fawcett, Tullock, and Coffman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4275 (1962).

[211] Mathey and Bensoam, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 3965 (1971), **31,** 391 (1975).

[212] Markovskii, Pashinnik, and Kirsanov, *Synthesis* 787 (1973); Middleton, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 574 (1975).

[213] Boguslavskaya, Panteleeva, and Chuvatkin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **18,** 198 (1982).

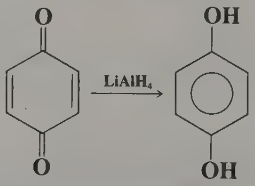
[214] For a treatise on metal hydrides, see Hajós, "Complex Hydrides," Elsevier, New York, 1979. For reviews, see House, Ref. 158, pp. 49–71; Wheeler, in Patai, Ref. 2, pp. 507–566; Brown, *J. Chem. Educ.* **38,** 173–179 (1961); Schenker, *Angew. Chem.* **73,** 81–106 (1961), *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **4,** 196–235 (1968).

[215] For a method of reducing only the keto group of keto esters, see Kamitori, Hojo, Masuda, Inoue, and Izumi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4585 (1982).

[216] Johnson and Rickborn, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1041 (1970).

[217] Chaikin and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 122 (1949).

When a functional group is selectively attacked in the presence of a different functional group, the reaction is said to be *chemoselective*. A number of reagents have been found to reduce aldehydes much faster than ketones. Among these[218] are $NaBH_4$ in isopropyl alcohol,[219] sodium triacetoxyborohydride,[220] lithium tris[(3-ethyl-3-pentyl)oxy]aluminum hydride $Li(Et_3CO)_3AlH$,[221] 9-BBN-pyridine,[222] and tributyltin hydride.[223] On the other hand, ketones can be chemoselectively reduced in the presence of aldehydes with $NaBH_4$ in aqueous EtOH at −15°C in the presence of cerium trichloride $CeCl_3$.[224] The reagent lithium N-dihydropyridylaluminum hydride reduces diaryl ketones much better than it does dialkyl or alkyl aryl ketones.[225] Most other hydrides reduce diaryl ketones more slowly than other types of ketones. It is obvious that reagents can often be found to reduce one kind of carbonyl function in the presence of another. For a discussion of selectivity in reduction reactions, see p. 1093. Quinones are reduced to hydroquinones by $LiAlH_4$, $SnCl_2$-HCl, or sodium hydrosulfite $Na_2S_2O_4$, as well as by other reducing agents.



The reagent lithium tri-*sec*-butylborohydride $LiBH(sec\text{-}Bu)_3$, prepared by treatment of tri-*sec*-butylborane with lithium trimethoxyaluminum hydride $LiAlH(OMe)_3$, reduces cyclic and bicyclic ketones in a highly stereoselective manner, giving the less stable isomer.[226] For example, 2-methylcyclohexanone gave *cis*-2-methylcyclohexanol with an isomeric purity greater than 99%. The more usual reagents, e.g., $LiAlH_4$, $NaBH_4$, reduce relatively unhindered cyclic ketones either with little or no stereoselectivity or give predominant formation of the more stable isomer.[227] The less stable axial alcohol is also predominantly formed when cyclohexanones are reduced with (among other reagents) AlH_3 in ether at −70°C,[228] with triethyl phosphite and iridium tetrachloride in aqueous isopropyl alcohol,[229] with potassium triisopropoxyborohydride,[230] or with lithium dimesitylborohydride bis(dimethoxyethane).[231] Cyclohexanones that have a large degree of steric hindrance near the carbonyl group usually give predominant formation of the axial alcohol, even with $LiAlH_4$ and $NaBH_4$. The commercially available chiral reducing agent B-(3-pinanyl)-9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane reduces deuterated aldehydes with almost complete optical purity.[232] The same reagent also reduces prochiral ketones (RCOR′), though optical purities are lower[233] unless high pressures are used.[233a]

---

[218] For some others, see Hutchins and Kandasamy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6131 (1973); Midland and Tramontano, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1470 (1978); Risbood and Ruthven, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3969 (1979); Andrews, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 697 (1980); Babler and Invergo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 621 (1981); Fleet and Harding, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 675 (1981); Boyer, Corriu, Perz, and Reye, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2165 (1981); Yamaguchi, Kabuto, and Yasuhara, *Chem. Lett.* 461 (1981).

[219] Brown, Wheeler, and Ichikawa, *Tetrahedron* **1,** 214 (1957).

[220] Gribble and Ferguson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 535 (1975). See also Nutaitis and Gribble, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4287 (1983).

[221] Krishnamurthy, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4628 (1981).

[222] Brown and Kulkarni, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 4169 (1977).

[223] Fung, de Mayo, Schauble, and Weedon, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3977 (1978).

[224] Luche and Gemal, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 5848 (1979). See also Gemal and Luche, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4077 (1981). For another method, see Paradisi, Zecchini, and Ortar, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 5085 (1980).

[225] Lansbury and Peterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1756 (1962).

[226] Brown and Krishnamurthy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7159 (1972); Krishnamurthy and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3383 (1976).

[227] For reviews of the stereochemistry and mechanism, see Caro, Boyer, Lamaty, and Jaouen, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-281-II-303 (1983); Boone and Ashby, *Top. Stereochem.* **11,** 53–95 (1979); Wigfield, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 449–462 (1979). For a review of the stereoselective syntheses of amino alcohols by this method, see Tramontini, *Synthesis* 605–644 (1982).

[228] Ayres and Sawdaye, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 581 (1967); Ayres, Kirk, and Sawdaye, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 505 (1970).

[229] Henbest and Mitchell, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 785 (1970); Eliel, Doyle, Hutchins, and Gilbert, *Org. Synth.* **50,** 13. See also Henbest and Zurqiyah, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 604 (1974).

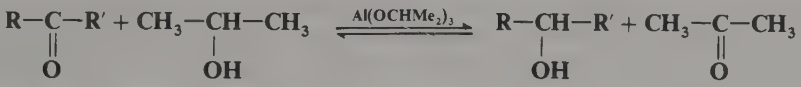
[230] Brown, Krishnamurthy, and Kim, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 391 (1973).

Among other reagents that reduce aldehydes and ketones to alcohols are the following:

1. *Hydrogen and a catalyst.*[234] The most common catalysts are platinum and ruthenium, but homogeneous catalysts have also been used.[235] Before the discovery of the metal hydrides this was one of the most common ways of effecting this reduction, but it suffers from the fact that C═C, C≡C, C═N, and C≡N bonds are more susceptible to attack than C═O bonds.

2. *Sodium in ethanol.*[236] This is called the *Bouveault–Blanc procedure* and was more popular for the reduction of esters (**9-43**) than of aldehydes or ketones before the discovery of $LiAlH_4$.

3. *Isopropyl alcohol and aluminum isopropoxide.* This is called the *Meerwein–Ponndorf–Verley reduction.*[237] It is reversible, and the reverse reaction is known as the *Oppenauer oxidation* (see **9-3**):



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' + CH_3{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{CH}{-}CH_3 \xrightleftharpoons{Al(OCHMe_2)_3} R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{CH}{-}R' + CH_3{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}CH_3}$$

The equilibrium is shifted by removal of the acetone by distillation. The reaction takes place under very mild conditions and is highly specific for aldehydes and ketones, so that C═C bonds (including those conjugated with the C═O bonds) and many other functional groups can be present without themselves being reduced.[238] This includes acetals, so that one of two carbonyl groups in a molecule may be specifically reduced if the other is first converted to an acetal. β-Keto esters, β-diketones, and other ketones and aldehydes with a relatively high enol content do not give this reaction. In a variation of this reaction, aldehydes are selectively reduced by isopropyl alcohol or diisopropylcarbinol on dehydrated alumina.[239]

4. Borane BH_3 and substituted boranes[240] reduce aldehydes and ketones in a manner similar to their addition to C═C bonds (**5-13**).[241] That is, the boron adds to the oxygen and the hydrogen to the carbon:[242]

---

[231] Hooz, Akiyama, Cedar, Bennett, and Tuggle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 274 (1974).

[232] Midland, Greer, Tramontano, and Zderic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2352 (1979). See also Noyori, Tomino, and Tanimoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3129 (1979); Brown, Jadhav, and Mandal, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 3547–3587 (1981); Midland and Zderic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 525 (1982).

[233] Brown and Pai, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1606 (1982), **48,** 1784 (1983); Brown, Pai, and Jadhav, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1531 (1984). For other chiral compounds that reduce ketones enantioselectively, see Noyori, Tomino, and Tanimoto, Ref. 232; Hirao, Itsuno, Owa, Nagami, Mochizuki, Zoorov, Nakahama, and Yamazaki, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 900 (1981); Midland and Kazubski, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2495 (1982); Kogure and Ojima, *J Organomet. Chem.* **234,** 249 (1982); Itsuno, Ito, Hirao, and Nakahama, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 469 (1983); Itsuno, Hirao, Nakahama, and Yamazaki, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1673 (1983); Sato, Gotoh, Wakabayashi, and Fujisawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4123 (1983); Giacomelli, Lardicci, and Palla, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 310 (1984); Itsuno, Ito, Hirao, and Nakahama, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 555 (1984).

[233a] Midland and McLoughlin, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 1316 (1984).

[234] For a review, see Rylander, Ref. 146, pp. 238–290.

[235] For a review, see Heck, "Organotransition Metal Chemistry," pp. 65–70, Academic Press, New York, 1974.

[236] For a discussion, see House, Ref. 158, pp. 152–160.

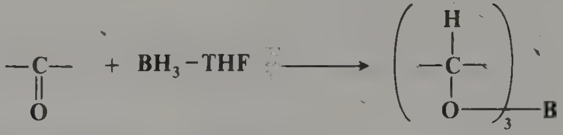
[237] For a review, see Wilds, *Org. React.* **2,** 178–223 (1944).

[238] Diisobornyloxyaluminum isopropoxide gives higher yields under milder conditions than aluminum isopropoxide: Hutton, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 483 (1979).

[239] Posner, Runquist, and Chapdelaine, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1202 (1977).

[240] See, for example, Brown and Varma, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1631 (1974).

[241] For a review, see Cragg, "Organoboranes in Organic Synthesis," pp. 324–335, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1973.



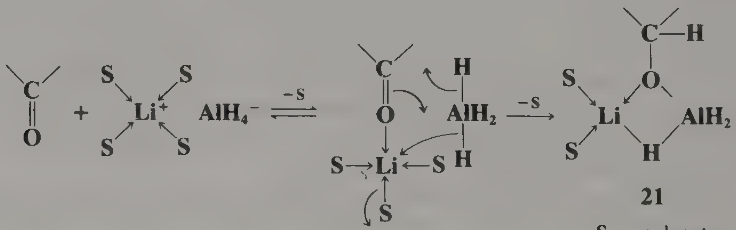
The borate is then hydrolyzed to the alcohol. 9-BBN[243] (p. 427) and BH_3-Me_2S[244] reduce only the C=O group of conjugated aldehydes and ketones. It has been reported that pyridine–borane in CF_3COOH reduces aldehydes to symmetrical ethers: $2RCHO \rightarrow RCH_2OCH_2R$.[245]

5. *Diimide* (N_2H_2, see p. 698) reduces aromatic aldehydes[246] and ketones, but aliphatic carbonyl compounds react very poorly.[247]

6. A single carbonyl group of an α-diketone can be reduced (to give an α-hydroxy ketone) by heating with zinc powder in aqueous dimethylformamide.[248] This has also been accomplished with aqueous VCl_2.[249]

7. In the Cannizzaro reaction (**9-70**) aldehydes without an α-hydrogen are reduced to alcohols.

With most reagents there is an initial attack on the carbon of the carbonyl group by H^- or some carrier of it, though with BH_3[250] the initial attack is on the oxygen. Detailed mechanisms are not known in most cases.[227] With metallic hydrides of aluminum or boron, the attacking species is the AlH_4^- (or BH_4^-) ion, which, in effect, transfers H^- to the carbon. The following mechanism has been proposed for $LiAlH_4$:[251]



21

S = solvent molecules

Evidence that the cation plays an essential role, at least in some cases, is that when the Li^+ was effectively removed from $LiAlH_4$ (by the addition of a crown ether), the reaction did not take place.[252] The complex **21** must now be hydrolyzed to the alcohol. For $NaBH_4$ the Na^+ does not seem to participate in the transition state, but kinetic evidence shows that an OR group from the solvent does participate and remains attached to the boron:[253]

---

[242] Brown and Subba Rao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 681 (1960); Brown and Korytnyk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3866 (1960).

[243] Krishnamurthy and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1864 (1975); Lane, *Aldrichimica Acta* **9,** 31 (1976).

[244] Mincione, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1829 (1978).

[245] Kikugawa, *Chem. Lett.* 415 (1979).

[246] Curry, Uff, and Ward, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1120 (1967).

[247] van Tamelen, Davis, and Deem, *Chem. Commun.* 71 (1965).

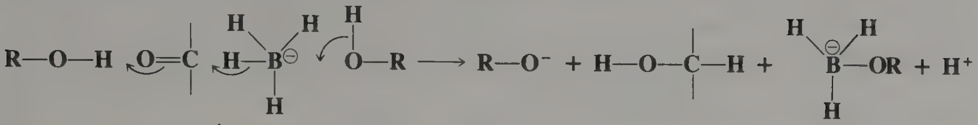
[248] Kreiser, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **745,** 164 (1971).

[249] Ho and Olah, *Synthesis* 815 (1976).

[250] For a discussion of the mechanism with boranes, see Brown, Wang, and Chandrasekharan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2340 (1983).

[251] Ashby and Boone, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5524 (1976).

[252] Pierre and Handel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2317 (1974). See also Loupy, Seyden-Penne, and Tchoubar, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1677 (1976); Ref. 251.

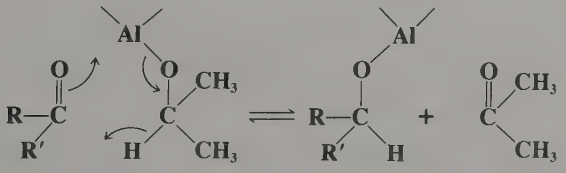


Free H^- cannot be the attacking entity in most reductions with boron or aluminum hydrides because the reactions are frequently sensitive to the size of the MH_4^- [or $MR_mH_n^-$ or $M(OR)_mH_n^-$, etc.].

There has been much controversy about whether the initial complex in the $LiAlH_4$ reduction (**21**, which can be written as $H—C—OAlH_3^-$, **22**) can reduce another carbonyl to give $(H—C—O)_2AlH_2^-$, and so on. It has been shown[254] that this is probably not the case but that, more likely, **22** disproportionates to $(H—C—O)_4Al^-$ and AlH_4^-, which is the only attacking species. However, disproportion does not take place in the $NaBH_4$ reaction.[255]

22 is essentially $LiAlH_4$ with one of the hydrogens replaced by an alkoxy group, i.e., $LiAlH_3OR$. The fact that **22** and other alkoxy derivatives of $LiAlH_4$ are less reactive than $LiAlH_4$ itself has led to the use of such compounds as reducing agents that are less reactive and more selective than $LiAlH_4$.[256] We have already met some of these, e.g., LiAlH(O-*t*-Bu)$_3$ (reactions **0-84** to **0-86;** see also Table 5, Chapter 19, p. 1095). As an example of selectivity in this reaction it may be mentioned that LiAlH(O-*t*-Bu)$_3$ has been used to reduce only the keto group in a molecule containing both keto and ester groups.[257] However, the use of such reagents is sometimes complicated by the disproportionation mentioned above, which may cause $LiAlH_4$ to be the active species, even if the reagent is an alkoxy derivative. Another highly selective reagent (reducing aldehydes and ketones, but not other functional groups), which does not disproportionate, is potassium triisopropoxyborohydride.[230] The use of tin hydrides, such as Ph_2SnH_2, gives alcohols from aldehydes or ketones directly; i.e., both hydrogens come from the hydride, and no hydrolysis is needed.[258]

The Meerwein–Ponndorf–Verley reaction usually[259] involves a cyclic transition state:[260]



---

[253] Wigfield and Gowland, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1108 (1977); *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3373 (1976). See however Adams, Gold, and Reuben, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 182 (1977); *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1466, 1472 (1977); Kayser, Eliev, and Eisenstein, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1015 (1983).

[254] Haubenstock and Eliel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2363 (1962).

[255] Wigfield and Gowland, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 786 (1978).

[256] For a review of reductions with alkoxyalumino hydrides, see Málek and Černý, *Synthesis* 217–234 (1972).

[257] Levine and Eudy, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 549 (1970); Heusler, Wieland, and Meystre, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 692.

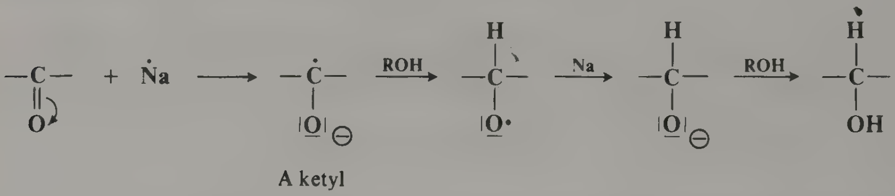
[258] Kuivila and Beumel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1246 (1961). For a review of reductions with organotin hydrides, see Kuivila, *Synthesis* 499–509 (1970).

[259] It has been shown that in some cases reduction with metal alkoxides, including aluminum isopropoxide, involves free-radical intermediates (SET mechanism): Ashby, Goel, and Argyropoulos, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 2273 (1982).

[260] See for example, Shiner and Whittaker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2337 (1963); Warnhoff, Reynolds-Warnhoff, and Wong, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5956 (1980).

but in some cases 2 moles of aluminum alkoxide are involved—one attacking the carbon and the other the oxygen, a conclusion that stems from the finding that in these cases the reaction was 1.5 order in alkoxide.[261] Although, for simplicity, we have shown the alkoxide as a monomer, it actually exists as trimers and tetramers, and it is these that react.[262]

The mechanism[263] of the reaction with sodium in ethanol is similar to that of the Birch reduction (**5-11**) and involves a ketyl intermediate, which can be isolated.[264]



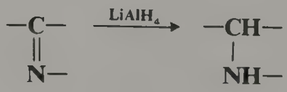
The mechanism of catalytic hydrogenation of aldehydes and ketones is probably similar to that of reaction **5-10,** though not much is known about it.[265]

For other reduction reactions of aldehydes and ketones, see reactions **9-38** and **9-63.** Also see reaction **9-70.**

OS **I,** 90, 304, 554; **II,** 317, 545, 598; **III,** 286; **IV,** 15, 25, 216, 660; **V,** 175, 294, 595, 692; **50,** 13; **56,** 101; **58,** 12; **60,** 25.

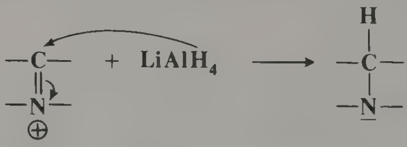
6-27 Reduction of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond

C,N-Dihydro-addition



$$\begin{matrix} -\text{C}- \\ \| \\ \text{N}- \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\text{LiAlH}_4} \begin{matrix} -\text{CH}- \\ | \\ \text{NH}- \end{matrix}$$

Imines, Schiff bases, hydrazones, and other C═N compounds can be reduced with $LiAlH_4$, $NaBH_4$, Na–EtOH, hydrogen and a catalyst, as well as with other reducing agents.[266] Iminium salts are also reduced by $LiAlH_4$, though here there is no "addition" to the nitrogen:[267]



Isocyanates have been catalytically hydrogenated to N-substituted formamides: RNCO → R—NH—CHO.[268]

---

[261] Moulton, Van Atta, and Ruch, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 290 (1961).

[262] Williams, Krieger, and Day, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2404 (1953); Shiner and Whittaker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 394 (1969).

[263] For a review of the stereochemistry of these reactions in liquid NH_3, see Rassat, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 1049–1058 (1977). For discussions of the mechanisms, see Huffman, Desai, and LaPrade, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1474 (1983); Huffman, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 399–405 (1983).

[264] For example, see Rautenstrauch and Geoffroy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5035 (1976); **99,** 6280 (1977).

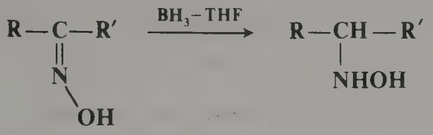
[265] For example, see Newham and Burwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1179 (1964).

[266] For a review, see Harada, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," Ref 40, pp. 276–293. For a review with respect to catalytic hydrogenation, see Rylander, Ref. 146, pp. 123–138.

[267] For a review of nucleophilic additions to iminium salts, see Paukstelis, in Cook, Ref. 45, pp. 169–209.

[268] Howell, Synth. Commun. **13,** 635 (1983).

Oximes are generally reduced to amines (**9-52**), but simple addition of H_2 to give hydroxylamines can be accomplished with borane at 25°C[269] or with sodium cyanoborohydride.[148]



$$\underset{\underset{\text{OH}}{\overset{\|}{\text{N}}}}{\text{R—C—R}'} \xrightarrow{\text{BH}_3\text{-THF}} \underset{\text{NHOH}}{\text{R—CH—R}'}$$

OS **III,** 328, 827; **51,** 24. Also see OS **IV,** 283.

6-28 The Reduction of Nitriles to Amines
***CC,NN*-Tetrahydro-biaddition**

$$\text{R—C}\equiv\text{N} + \text{LiAlH}_4 \longrightarrow \text{R—CH}_2\text{—NH}_2$$

Nitriles can be reduced to primary amines with many reducing agents,[270] including $LiAlH_4$, BH_3-Me_2S,[271] NaOEt, and hydrogen and a catalyst.[272] $NaBH_4$ does not generally reduce nitriles but does so in alcoholic solvents when a $CoCl_2$ catalyst is added[273] or in the presence of Raney nickel.[274] The reaction is of wide scope and has been applied to many nitriles. When catalytic hydrogenation is used, secondary amines $(RCH_2)_2NH$ are often side products. These can be avoided by adding a compound such as acetic anhydride, which removes the primary amine as soon as it is formed,[275] or by the use of excess ammonia to drive the equilibria backward.[276]

It is not possible to stop with the addition of only 1 mole of hydrogen, i.e., to convert the nitrile to an imine, except where the imine is subsequently hydrolyzed (reaction **6-29**).

N-Alkylnitrilium ions are reduced to secondary amines by $NaBH_4$.[277]

$$\text{RCN} \xrightarrow{\text{R}'_3\text{O}^+\ \ \text{BF}_4^-} \text{R—C}\equiv\overset{\oplus}{\text{N}}\text{—R}' \xrightarrow[\text{diglyme}]{\text{NaBH}_4} \text{RCH}_2\text{—NH—R}'$$

Since nitrilium salts can be prepared by treatment of nitriles with trialkyloxonium salts (see **6-9**), this is a method for the conversion of nitriles to secondary amines. In contrast, triethylsilane reduces nitrilium ions to imines: $\text{R—C}\equiv\overset{\oplus}{\text{N}}\text{—R}' \rightarrow \text{R—CH=N—R}'$.[278] The imines can be hydrolyzed to aldehydes RCHO, making this an indirect method for the conversion of nitriles to aldehydes.

OS **III,** 229, 358, 720; **53,** 21.

6-29 The Reduction of Nitriles to Aldehydes
Hydro,oxy-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution

$$\text{R—C}\equiv\text{N} \xrightarrow[\text{2. hydrolysis}]{\text{1. HCl, SnCl}_2} \text{R—CH=O}$$

---

[269] Feuer and Vincent, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3771 (1962); Feuer, Vincent, and Bartlett, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2877 (1965); Ioffe, Tartakovskii, Medvedeva, and Novikov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1446 (1964); Kawase and Kikugawa, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 643 (1979). See also Sternbach and Jamison, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3331 (1981).

[270] For a review, see Rabinovitz, in Rappoport, "The Chemistry of the Cyano Group," pp. 307–340, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[271] See Brown, Choi, and Narasimhan, *Synthesis* 605 (1981).

[272] For reviews of catalytic hydrogenation of nitriles, see Rylander, Ref. 146, pp. 203–226; Freidlin and Sladkova, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **33,** 319–330 (1964).

[273] Satoh and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4555 (1969). For a discussion of the mechanism, see Heinzman and Ganem, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6801 (1982).

[274] Egli, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 47 (1970).

[275] For example, see Carothers and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **47,** 3051 (1925); Gould, Johnson, and Ferris, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 1658 (1960).

[276] For example, see Freifelder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2386 (1960).

[277] Borch, *Chem. Commun.* 442 (1968).

[278] Fry, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 45 (1974).

There are two principal methods for the reduction of nitriles to aldehydes.[279] In one of these, known as the *Stephen reduction,* the nitrile is treated with HCl to form

$$\mathrm{RCCl{=}NH_2^+\ Cl^-}$$

23

This is reduced with anhydrous $SnCl_2$ to RCH=NH, which precipitates as a complex with $SnCl_4$ and is then hydrolyzed (**6-2**) to the aldehyde. The Stephen reduction is most successful when R is aromatic, but it can be done for aliphatic R up to about six carbons.[280] It is also possible to prepare **23** in a different way, by treating ArCONHPh with PCl_5. The **23** obtained in this way can then be converted to the aldehyde. This is known as the *Sonn–Müller method.*

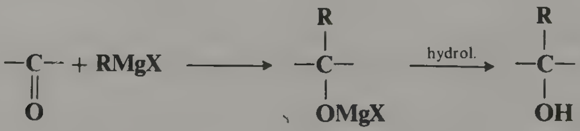
The other way of reducing nitriles to aldehydes involves using a metal hydride reducing agent to add 1 mole of hydrogen and hydrolysis, in situ, of the resulting imine (which is undoubtedly coordinated to the metal). This has been carried out with $LiAlH_4$, $LiAlH(OEt)_3$,[281] $AlH(CH_2CHMe_2)_2$,[282] and $NaAlH_4$.[283] The metal hydride method is useful for aliphatic and aromatic nitriles. Reduction to the aldehyde has also been accomplished[284] by treatment of the nitrile with sodium hypophosphate and Raney nickel in aqueous acetic acid–pyridine of formic acid,[285] and with zinc and a Cob(I)alamin catalyst in aqueous acetic acid.[286] Another method for the conversion of nitriles to aldehydes (by way of the nitrilium ion) was mentioned at **6-28.**

OS **III,** 626, 818; **51,** 20.

H. Carbon Attack by Organometallic Compounds

6-30 The Addition of Organometallic Compounds to Aldehydes and Ketones

***O*-Hydro-*C*-alkyl-addition**



$$\underset{\substack{\| \\ \mathrm{O}}}{-\mathrm{C}-} + \mathrm{RMgX} \longrightarrow \overset{\substack{\mathrm{R} \\ |}}{\underset{\substack{| \\ \mathrm{OMgX}}}{-\mathrm{C}-}} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} \overset{\substack{\mathrm{R} \\ |}}{\underset{\substack{| \\ \mathrm{OH}}}{-\mathrm{C}-}}$$

The addition of Grignard reagents to aldehydes and ketones is known as the *Grignard reaction.*[287] Formaldehyde gives primary alcohols; other aldehydes give secondary alcohols; and ketones give tertiary alcohols. The reaction is of very broad scope, and hundreds of alcohols have been prepared in this manner. R may be alkyl or aryl. In many cases the hydrolysis step is carried out with dilute HCl or H_2SO_4, but this cannot be done for tertiary alcohols in which at least one R group is alkyl because such alcohols are easily dehydrated under acidic conditions (reaction **7-1**). In such cases

---

[279] For a review, see Ref. 270.

[280] Zil'berman and Pyryalova, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **33,** 3348 (1964).

[281] Brown and Shoaf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1079 (1964); Brown and Garg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1085 (1964); de Peretti, Strzalko-Bottin, and Seyden-Penne, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2925 (1974).

[282] Miller, Biss, and Schwartzman, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 627 (1959); Marshall, Andersen, and Schlicher, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 858 (1970).

[283] Zakharkin, Maslin, and Gavrilenko, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1415 (1964).

[284] For some other methods, see Tinapp, *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 2770 (1969), **104,** 2266 (1971); Ferris and Antonucci, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8091 (1972); Fry and Ott, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 602 (1981); Corriu, Moreau, and Pataud-Sat, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3372 (1981).

[285] Backeberg and Staskun, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3961 (1962); van Es and Staskun, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5775 (1965), *Org. Synth.* **51,** 20 (1971).

[286] Fischli, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 2560 (1978).

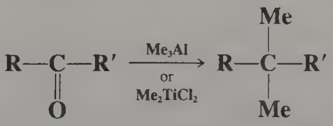
[287] For reviews of the addition of organometallic compounds to carbonyl groups, see Eicher, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," Ref. 40, pp. 621–693; Kharasch and Reinmuth, "Grignard Reactions of Nonmetallic Substances," pp. 138–528, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1954.

(and often for other alcohols as well) an aqueous solution of ammonium chloride is used instead of a strong acid. Other organometallic compounds may also be used, but in general only of active metals; e.g., alkylmercurys do not react. In practice, the only organometallic compounds used to any extent, besides Grignard reagents, are alkyl- and aryllithiums, though alkylzinc reagents were used in the past.[288] For the addition of acetylenic groups, sodium may be the metal used: RC≡CNa (**6-42**); while vinylalanes (prepared as in **5-14**) are the reagents of choice for the addition of vinyl groups.[289] Allyltrialkyltin compounds (in the presence of BF_3-etherate) have been used for the addition of allyl groups.[290]

The reaction with alkyl- and aryllithium reagents has also been carried out without preliminary formation of RLi: a mixture of RX and the carbonyl compound was added to a suspension of lithium pieces in THF.[291] Yields were generally satisfactory. The magnesium analog of this process is called the *Barbier reaction*.[292] Lithium dimethylcopper Me_2CuLi reacts with aldehydes[293] and with certain ketones[294] to give the expected alcohols.

Chiral secondary alcohols with high optical yields have been obtained by addition to aldehydes or alkyllithium and Grignard reagents in the presence of chiral amino alcohols as ligands.[295] These are enantioselective syntheses. Diastereoselective syntheses have been carried out with crotylmetallic reagents ($CH_3CH{=}CH{-}CH_2M$).[296]

Trimethylaluminum[297] and dimethyltitanium dichloride[298] exhaustively methylate ketones to give *gem*-dimethyl compounds (see also **0-91**):



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Me_2TiCl_2}]{\mathrm{Me_3Al}\ \text{or}} \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle Me}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle Me}{|}}{C}}{-}R'}$$

α,β-Unsaturated aldehydes or ketones can give 1,4 addition as well as normal 1,2 addition (see p. 714). In general, alkyllithiums give less 1,4 addition than the corresponding Grignard reagents.[299] Quinones add Grignard reagents on one or both sides or give 1,4 addition. In a compound containing both an aldehydic and a ketonic carbonyl group it is possible to add RMgX chemoselectively to the aldehydic function without significantly disturbing the ketonic group.[300] On the other hand, chemoselective addition to a ketonic group can be carried out if the aldehyde is protected with a titanium tetrakis(dialkylamide).[301]

---

[288] For a review with respect to organozinc compounds, see Furukawa and Kawabata, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **12,** 103–112 (1974). For a review with respect to organocadmium compounds, see Jones and Desio, *Chem. Rev.* **78,** 491–516 (1978).

[289] Newman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4571 (1971). Vinyl groups can also be added with 9–vinylic–9–BBN compounds: Jacob and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 579 (1977).

[290] Naruta, Ushida, and Maruyama, *Chem. Lett.* 919 (1979); See also Mukaiyama and Harada, *Chem. Lett.* 1527 (1981). For other methods for addition of allylic groups, see Mikhailov, Bubnov, Tsyban', and Grigoryan, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **154,** 131 (1978); Yamaguchi and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 993 (1980); Hiyama, Obayashi, and Nakamura, *Organometallics* **1,** 1249 (1982); Hiyama, Okude, Kimura, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **55,** 561 (1982); Yamamoto and Maruyama, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1564 (1983); Nokami, Otera, Sudo, and Okawara, *Organometallics* **2** 191 (1983).

[291] Pearce, Richards, and Scilly, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1655 (1972); Luche and Damiano, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7926 (1980).

[292] For a review, with Mg, Li, and other metals, see Blomberg and Hartog, *Synthesis* 18–30 (1977). For a discussion of the mechanism, see Molle and Bauer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3481 (1982).

[293] Barreiro, Luche, Zweig, and Crabbé, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2353 (1975); Zweig, Luche, Barreiro, and Crabbé, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2355 (1975).

[294] House, Prabhu, Wilkins, and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3067 (1976). See also Still and Macdonald, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2659 (1976).

[295] Mukaiyama, Soai, Sato, Shimizu, and Suzuki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1455 (1979). See also Mazaleyrat and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4584 (1981); Olivero, Weidman, and Seebach, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 2485 (1981).

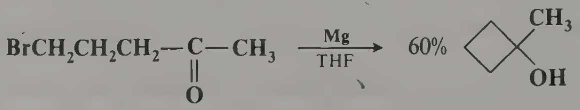
[296] For a review, see Hoffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 555–566 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 569–580]. See also Reetz and Jung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4833 (1983).

[297] Meisters and Mole, *Aust. J. Chem.* **27,** 1655 (1974). See also Jeffery, Meisters, and Mole, *Aust. J. Chem.* **27,** 2569 (1974). For discussions of the mechanism of this reaction, see Ashby and Goel, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **221,** C15 (1981); Ashby and Smith, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **225,** 71 (1982).

[298] Reetz, Westermann, and Steinbach, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 237 (1981).

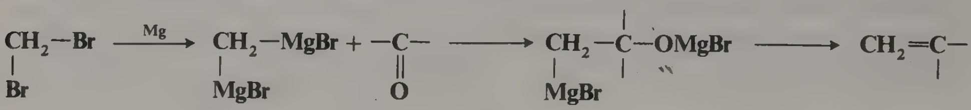
[299] An example was given on p. 714. Another can be found in Wessely, Budzikiewicz, and Janda, *Monatsh. Chem.* **92,** 621 (1961).

In some cases the Grignard reaction can be performed intramolecularly. For example, treatment of 5-bromo-2-pentanone with magnesium and a small amount of mercuric chloride in tetrahydrofuran



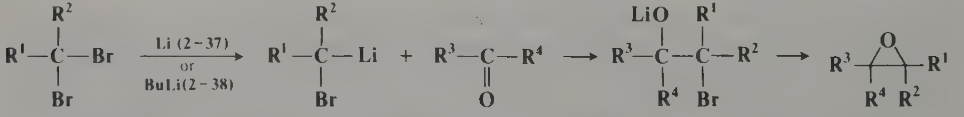
produced 1-methyl-1-cyclobutanol in 60% yield.[302] Other four- and five-membered ring compounds were also prepared by this procedure. Similar closing of five- and six-membered rings was achieved by treatment of a δ- or ε-halocarbonyl compound, not with a metal, but with a dianion derived from nickel tetraphenylporphine.[303]

The *gem*-disubstituted magnesium compounds formed from CH_2Br_2 or CH_2I_2 (reaction **2-37**) react with aldehydes or ketones to give olefins in moderate-to-good yields.[304] The reaction could



$$\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\overset{}{CH_2}}\!-\!Br \xrightarrow{Mg} \underset{\displaystyle MgBr}{CH_2}\!-\!MgBr + -\underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{C}}}- \longrightarrow \underset{\displaystyle MgBr}{CH_2}\!-\!\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}\!-\!OMgBr \longrightarrow CH_2\!=\!\underset{|}{C}-$$

not be extended to other *gem*-dihalides. Similar reactions with *gem*-dimetallic compounds prepared with metals other than magnesium have also produced olefins, though sometimes with low yields.[305] However, exceptions are the α,α-dimetallic derivatives of phenyl sulfones $PhSO_2CM_2R$ (M = Li or Mg), which react with aldehydes or ketones R′COR″ to give good yields of the α,β-unsaturated sulfones $PhSO_2CR{=}CR'R''$,[306] which can be reduced with aluminum amalgam (see **0-96**) or with $LiAlH_4$-$CuCl_2$ to give the olefins $CHR{=}CR'R''$.[307] These reactions are closely related to the Wittig reaction (**6-47**) and, like it, provide a means of achieving the conversion $R_2C{=}O \rightarrow R_2C{=}R_2'$. On the other hand, *gem*-dihalides treated with a carbonyl compound and Li or BuLi give epoxides[308]



(see also **6-63**). In another use of *gem*-dihalo compounds, methylene halides add the CHX_2 group to aldehydes or ketones when treated with lithium dicyclohexylamide at low temperatures.[309]

---

[300] Vaskan and Kovalev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **9,** 501 (1973). See also Kauffmann, Hamsen, and Beirich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 144 (1982) [*Angew, Chem.* **94,** 145]; Takai, Kimura, Kuroda, Hiyama, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5281 (1983).

[301] Reetz, Wenderoth, and Peter, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 406 (1983).

[302] Leroux, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 359 (1968).

[303] Corey and Kuwajima, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 395 (1970).

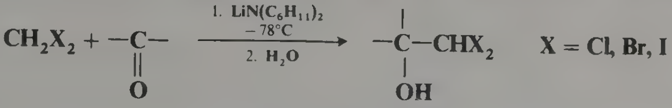
[304] Bertini, Grasselli, Zubiani, and Cainelli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **26,** 1281 (1970). See also Hasselmann, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 3486 (1974).

[305] For example, see Zweifel and Steele, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6021 (1966); Cainelli, Bertini, Grasselli, and Zubiani, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1581 (1967); Miyano, Hida, and Hashimoto, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **12,** 263 (1968); Harrison, Rawson, Turnbull, and Fried, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3515 (1971); Bongini, Savoia, and Umani-Ronchi, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **72,** C4 (1974); Kauffmann, Ahlers, Joussen, Kriegesmann, Vahrenhorst, and Woltermann, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4399 (1978); Takai, Hotta, Oshima, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 1698 (1980).

[306] Pascali, Tangari, and Umani-Ronchi, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1166 (1973).

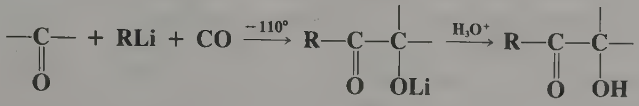
[307] Pascali and Umani-Ronchi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 351 (1973).

[308] Cainelli, Umani-Ronchi, Bertini, Grasselli, and Zubiani, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 6109 (1971); Cainelli, Tangari, and Umani-Ronchi, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 3009 (1972). See also Köbrich and Werner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2181 (1969); Shanklin, Johnson, Ollinger, and Coates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3429 (1973).



$$CH_2X_2 + \underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{-C-} \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O]{\text{1. } LiN(C_6H_{11})_2,\ -78^\circ C} -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}-CHX_2 \qquad X = Cl, Br, I$$

It is possible to add an acyl group to a ketone to give (after hydrolysis) an α-hydroxy ketone. This is done by adding RLi and CO to the ketone at −110°C:[310]

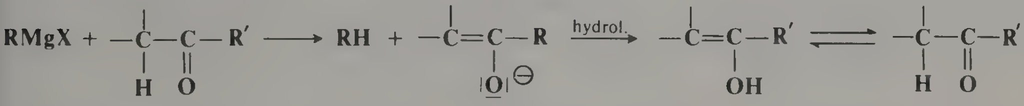


$$\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{-C-} + RLi + CO \xrightarrow{-110^\circ} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OLi}{|}}{C}}- \xrightarrow{H_3O^+} R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

When the same reaction is carried out with carboxylic esters R′COOR″, α-diketones RCOCOR′ are obtained.[310]

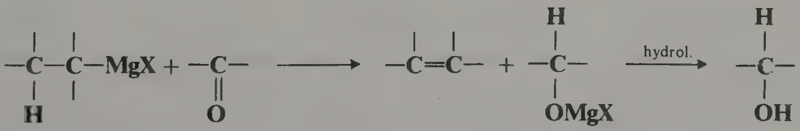
Although most aldehydes and ketones react very nicely with most Grignard reagents, there are several types of side reaction that occur mostly with hindered ketones and with bulky Grignard reagents. The two most important of these are *enolization* and *reduction*. The former requires that the aldehyde or ketone have an α-hydrogen, and the latter requires that the Grignard reagent have a β-hydrogen:

Enolization



$$RMgX + -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-R' \longrightarrow RH + -\overset{|}{C}=\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \overline{\underline{O}}^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}-R \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} -\overset{|}{C}=\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}-R' \rightleftharpoons -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{C}}-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-R'$$

Reduction



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-MgX + \underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{-C-} \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}- + -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OMgX}{|}}{C}}- \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} -\overset{\overset{\displaystyle H}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

Enolization is an acid–base reaction (**2-22**) in which a proton is transferred from the α-carbon to the Grignard reagent. The carbonyl compound is converted to its enolate ion form, which, on hydrolysis, gives the original ketone or aldehyde. Enolization is important not only for hindered ketones but also for those that have a relatively high percentage of enol form, e.g., β-keto esters, etc. In reduction, the carbonyl compound is reduced to an alcohol (**6-26**) by the Grignard reagent, which itself undergoes elimination to give an olefin. Two other side reactions are condensation (between enolate ion and excess ketone) and Wurtz-type coupling (**0-93**). Such highly hindered tertiary alcohols as triisopropylcarbinol, tri-*t*-butylcarbinol, and diisopropylneopentylcarbinol cannot be prepared (or can be prepared only in extremely low yields) by the addition of Grignard reagents to ketones, because reduction and/or enolization become prominent.[311] However, these carbinols can be prepared by the use of alkyllithiums at −80°C,[312] under which conditions enolization and reduction are much less important.[313] Other methods of increasing the degree of addition at the expense of reduction consist of complexing the Grignard reagent with $LiClO_4$ or $Bu_4N^+ Br^-$,[314] or using benzene or toluene instead of ether as solvent.[315]

---

[309] Taguchi, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3010 (1974), *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 1588 (1977).

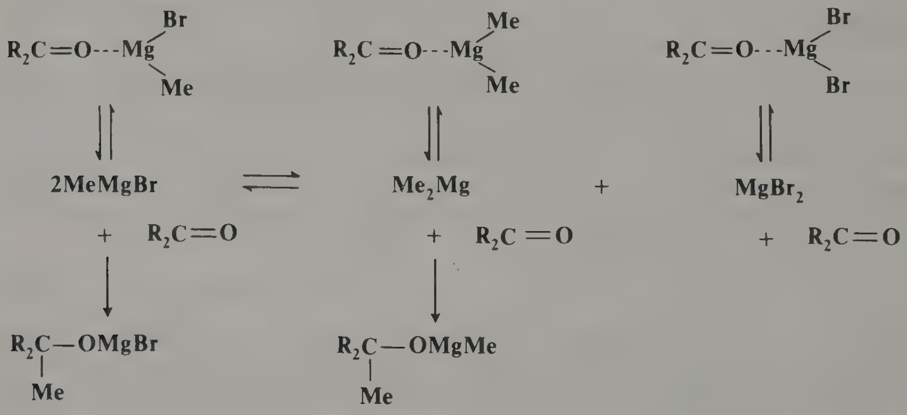
[310] Seyferth, Weinstein, and Wang, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1144 (1983); Seyferth, Weinstein, Wang, and Hui, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4907 (1983). See also Chatani, Furukawa, Kato, Murai, and Sonoda, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 430 (1984), and references cited therein.

[311] Whitmore and George, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **64,** 1239 (1942).

[312] Bartlett and Lefferts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 2804 (1955); Zook, March, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1617 (1959); Bartlett and Tidwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4421 (1968).

Another way to avoid complications is to add $(RO)_3TiCl$, $(RO)_3ZrCl$, or $(R_2N)_3TiX$ to the Grignard or lithium reagent. This produces organotitanium or organozirconium compounds that are much more selective than Grignard or organolithium reagents.[316] An important advantage of these reagents is that they do not react with NO_2 or CN functions that may be present in the substrate, as Grignard and organolithium reagents do.

There has been much controversy regarding the mechanism of addition of Grignard reagents to aldehydes and ketones.[317] The reaction is difficult to study because of the variable nature of the species present in the Grignard solution (p. 159) and because the presence of small amounts of impurities in the magnesium seems to have a great effect on the kinetics of the reaction, making reproducible experiments difficult.[318] Furthermore, the mechanism seems to be quite complicated, since both RMgX and R_2Mg can react with the ketone, since both of these species as well as Mg_2X form complexes (Chapter 3) with the ketone.[319] and since the products initially formed can then react further (as described below). A detailed mechanism for the reaction between methylmagnesium bromide and 2-methylbenzophenone has been proposed by Ashby and co-workers,[320] based on the discovery that this reaction proceeds by two paths—one first order in MeMgBr and the other first order in Me_2Mg.[321] The initial stages of this mechanism, which starts with the three complexes formed from MeMgBr, Me_2Mg, and $MgBr_2$, are[322]



24 **25**

---

[313] Buhler, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 904 (1973). See also Huet and Emptoz, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **101,** 139 (1975).

[314] Chastrette and Amouroux, *Chem. Commun.* 470 (1970), *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4348 (1970).

[315] Canonne, Foscolos, Caron, and Lemay, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 3563 (1982).

[316] For reviews, see Weidmann and Seebach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 31–45 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 12–26]; Reetz, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **106,** 1–54 (1982).

[317] For reviews, see Ashby, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 545–569 (1980), *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2133–2142 (1972), *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **21,** 259–285 (1967); Ashby, Laemmle, and Neumann, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 272–280 (1974); Blomberg, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2143–2149 (1972). For a review of the stereochemistry of the reaction, see Ashby and Laemmle, Ref. 4.

[318] See, for example, Ashby, Walker, and Neumann, *Chem. Commun.* 330 (1970); Ashby, Neumann, Walker, Laemmle, and Chao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3330 (1973).

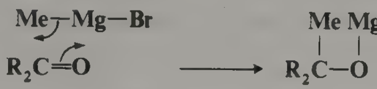
[319] Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 409 (1963).

[320] Ashby, Laemmle, and Neumann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5421 (1972).

[321] Ashby, Laemmle, and Neumann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4601 (1971); Laemmle, Ashby, and Neumann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5120 (1971). See also Rudolph, Charbonneau, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7083 (1973).

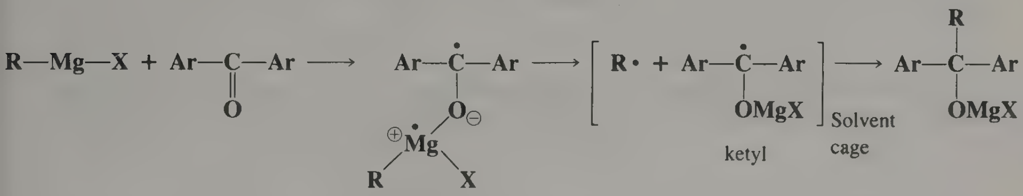
[322] The coefficient 2 in front of the MeMgBr refers only to the Schlenk equilibrium, presented horizontally, and not to the reactions between MeMgBr and the ketone, presented vertically.

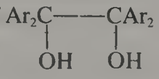
When excess Grignard reagent is present, the steps shown are essentially all that are required to describe the mechanism, but when the ketone-to-Grignard ratio is about 1 : 1, or when excess ketone is present, **24** and **25** react further—with each other and with additional molecules of RMgX and of ketone to give dimeric and trimeric species. Although the formation of these species complicates the mechanistic picture, they present no synthetic problem, since the hydrolysis step at the end of the reaction converts them all to the same alcohol, in this case R_2MeCOH. The exact nature of the step by which MeMgBr or Me_2Mg reacts with the substrate is not certain. One possibility is a four-centered cyclic transition state:[323]



In the case of RLi, addition of a cryptand (p. 78) that binds Li^+ inhibited the normal addition reaction, showing that the lithium is necessary for the reaction to take place.[324]

The mechanism just outlined is not the only one. There is evidence that, in some cases, at least a part of the reaction may go through a ketyl (p. 169) intermediate:[325]



This pathway is called the *single-electron-transfer* (SET) *pathway*.[326] The SET pathway is more likely for conjugated (including aromatic) aldehydes and ketones and is favored by the presence of small amounts of transition metals[327] (which are often found as impurities in the magnesium). Among the evidence[328] for the SET mechanism are esr spectra[329] and the obtention of  $\underset{OH}{Ar_2C}—\underset{OH}{CAr_2}$ side products (from dimerization of the ketyl).[330]

---

[323] Tuulmets, *Org. React. (USSR)* **4,** 5 (1967); House and Oliver, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 929 (1968); Ashby, Yu, and Roling. *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1918 (1972). See also Smith and Billet, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6948 (1967); Billet and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4108 (1968); Holm, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **23,** 579 (1969); Lasperas, Perez-Rubalcaba, and Quiroga-Feijoo, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 3403 (1980).

[324] Perraud, Handel, and Pierrre, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-283 (1980). See also Loupy, Roux-Schmitt, and Seyden-Penne, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1685 (1981).

[325] Maruyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **37,** 897 (1964); Blomberg and Mosher, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **13,** 519 (1968); Fauvarque and Rouget, *C. R. Acad. Sci., Ser. C* **267,** 1355 (1968); Holm and Crossland, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **25,** 59 (1971); Lopp, Buhler, and Ashby, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 4966 (1975). See also Kochi, "Organometallic Mechanisms and Catalysis," pp. 512–517, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[326] For a review, see Dagonneau, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-269-II-280 (1982).

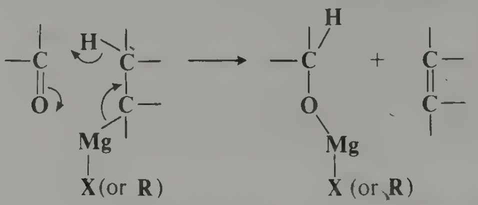
[327] Ashby, Buhler, Lopp, Wiesemann, Bowers, and Laemmle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6561 (1976).

[328] For other evidence, see Maruyama, Ref. 325; Lopp, Buhler, and Ashby, Ref. 325; Savin and Kitaev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **11,** 2622 (1975); Ōkubo, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 2379 (1977); Ashby and Wiesemann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 189, 3101 (1978); Ashby and Bowers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2242 (1981); Holm, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **36,** 266 (1982), **37,** 567 (1983); Liotta, Saindane, and Waykole, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2922 (1983).

[329] Fauvarque and Rouget, Ref. 325.

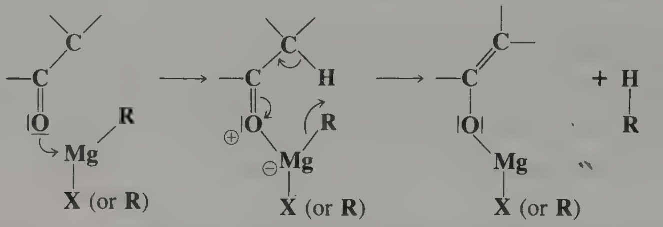
[330] Holm and Crossland, Ref. 325; Blomberg and Mosher, Ref. 325.

There is general agreement that the mechanism leading to reduction[331] is usually as follows:



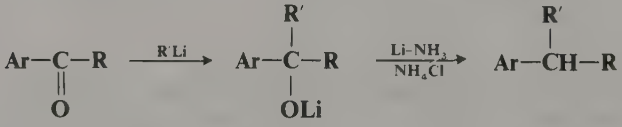
reduction

However, it has been shown that reduction can also take place by an SET mechanism.[332] There is evidence that the mechanism leading to enolization is also cyclic, but involves prior coordination with magnesium:[333]



enolization

Aromatic aldehydes and ketones can be alkylated and reduced in one reaction vessel by treatment with an alkyl- or aryllithium, followed by lithium and ammonia and then by ammonium chloride.[334]

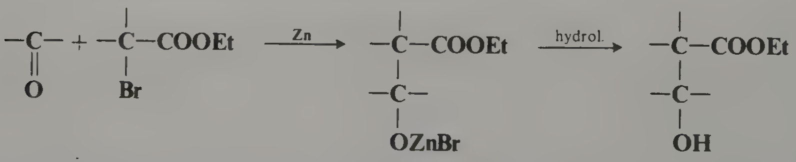


$$\mathrm{Ar{-}C({=}O){-}R} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R'Li}} \mathrm{Ar{-}CR'(OLi){-}R} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{NH_4Cl}]{\mathrm{Li{-}NH_3}} \mathrm{Ar{-}CHR'{-}R}$$

R = alkyl, aryl, H

OS **I,** 188; **II,** 406, 606; **III,** 200, 696, 729, 757; **IV,** 771, 792; **V,** 46, 452, 608, 1058; **53,** 56, 116; **54,** 97; **55,** 7; **58,** 113, 152; **59,** 202; **61,** 42, 65.

6-31 The Reformatsky Reaction
O-Hydro-*C*-α-ethoxycarbonylalkyl-addition



$$\mathrm{{-}C({=}O){-}} + \mathrm{{-}C(Br){-}COOEt} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Zn}} \mathrm{{-}C(OZnBr){-}C{-}COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} \mathrm{{-}C(OH){-}C{-}COOEt}$$

---

[331] For discussions of the mechanism of reduction, see Singer, Salinger, and Mosher, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3821 (1967); Denise, Fauvarque, and Ducom, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 335 (1970); Chauvière and Welvart, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 765, 771, 774 (1970); Cabaret and Welvart, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **80,** 199 (1974); Holm, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **29,** C45 (1971), *Acta Chem. Scand.* **27,** 1552 (1973); Morrison, Tomaszewski, Mosher, Dale, Miller, and Elsenbaumer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3167 (1977); Okuhara, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 244 (1980).

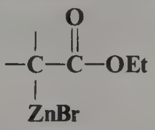
[332] Ashby and Goel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4983 (1981). See also Ashby, Goel, and DePriest, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 7779 (1980).

[333] Pinkus and Servoss, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 1600 (1979); Pinkus and Sabesan, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 273 (1981).

[334] Hall and Lipsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1735 (1973); Lipsky and Hall, *Org. Synth.* **55,** 7; McEnroe, Sha, and Hall, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3456 (1976).

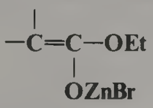
The *Reformatsky reaction* is very similar to **6-30.**[335] An aldehyde or ketone is treated with zinc and a halide; the halide is nearly always an α-halo ester or a vinylog of an α-halo ester (e.g., RCHBrCH═CHCOOEt), though α-halo nitriles,[336] α-halo N,N-disubstituted amides, and the zinc salts of α-halo carboxylic acids[337] have also been used. With the last reagent the product is a β-hydroxy acid. The reaction has also been carried out with tin[338] or activated indium[339] instead of zinc, and with a Zn-Cu couple.[340] The aldehyde or ketone may be aliphatic, aromatic, or heterocyclic or contain various functional groups. The reaction can be run in less time with higher yields if done in the presence of ultrasound.[341]

Formally, the reaction can be regarded as if it were analogous to the Grignard reaction (**6-30**), with **26** as an intermediate analogous to RMgX. There *is* an intermediate derived from zinc and



$-\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\text{ZnBr}}{|}}{C}}-\overset{\overset{\text{O}}{\|}}{C}-\text{OEt}$

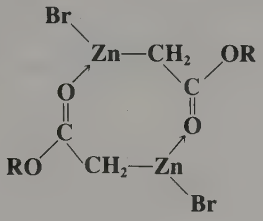
26



$-\overset{|}{C}{=}\underset{\underset{\text{OZnBr}}{|}}{C}-\text{OEt}$

27

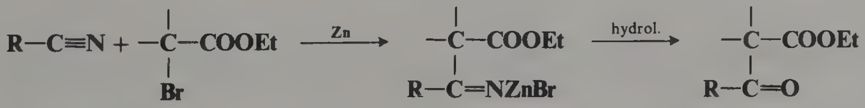
the ester, and there has been much controversy as to whether it has the structure **26** or the enolate structure **27.**[342] However, x-ray crystallography of the solid intermediate prepared from $t\text{-BuOCOCH}_2\text{Br}$ and Zn showed it to be dimeric with the structure **28,**[343] so it has characteristics of both **26** and **27.**



R = *t*-Bu

28

Usually, after hydrolysis, the alcohol is the product, but sometimes (especially with aryl aldehydes) elimination follows directly and the product is an olefin. Since Grignard reagents cannot be formed from α-halo esters, the method is quite useful, although there are competing reactions and yields are sometimes low. A similar reaction (called the *Blaise reaction*) has been carried out on nitriles:[344]



$$\text{R}-\text{C}{\equiv}\text{N} + -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\text{Br}}{|}}{C}}-\text{COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn}} -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\text{R}-\text{C}=\text{NZnBr}}{|}}{C}}-\text{COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O}}{|}}{C}}-\text{COOEt}$$

---

[335] For reviews, see Rathke, *Org. React.* **22,** 423–460 (1975); Gaudemar, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **8,** 183–233 (1972).

[336] Vinograd and Vul'fson, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **29,** 248, 1118, 2658, 2659 (1960).

[337] Bellassoued and Gaudemar, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **102,** 1 (1975).

[338] Harada and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 161 (1982).

[339] Chao and Rieke, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2253 (1975).

[340] Santaniello and Manzocchi, *Synthesis* 698 (1977).

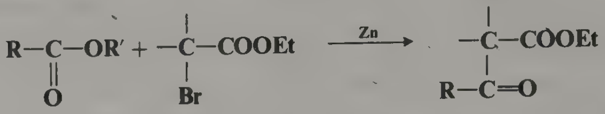
[341] Han and Boudjouk, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5030 (1982).

[342] For evidence for **26** see Canceill, Gabard, and Jaques, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 231 (1968); Goasdoué and Gaudemar, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **39,** 17 (1972); Orsini, Pelizzoni, and Ricca, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3945 (1982). For evidence for **27,** see Zimmerman and Traxler. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 1920 (1957); Vaughan and Knoess, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2394 (1970); Matsumoto, Hosoda, Mōri, and Fukui, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 3156 (1972).

[343] Dekker, Boersma, and van der Kerk, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 553 (1983).

[344] See Cason, Rinehart, and Thornton, *J. Org. Chem.* **18,** 1594 (1953); Bellassoued and Gaudemar, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **81,** 139 (1974); Hannick and Kishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3833 (1983).

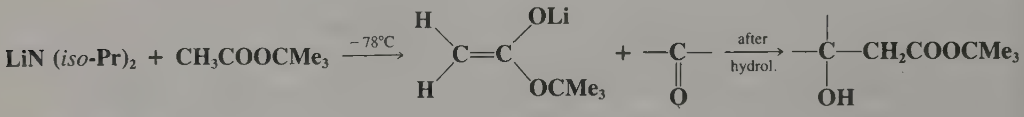
Esters have also been used as substrates, but then, as might be expected (p. 781), the result is substitution and not addition:



$$\text{R}-\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\text{OR}' + -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\text{Br}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-\text{COOEt} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn}} -\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{\text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-\text{COOEt}$$

The product in this case is the same as with the corresponding nitrile, though the pathways are different.

Addition of *t*-butyl acetate to lithium diisopropylamide in hexane at −78°C gives the lithium salt of *t*-butyl acetate[345] (**2-20**) as a stable white solid. The nmr and ir spectra of this salt in benzene show it to have the enolate structure **29**, similar to the structure **27** given above.



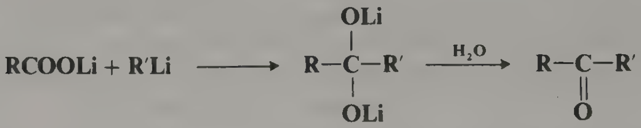
29

Reaction of **29** with a ketone provides a simple rapid alternative to the Reformatsky reaction as a means of preparing β-hydroxy *t*-butyl esters. A similar reaction involves treatment of a ketone with a silyl ketene acetal $R_2C{=}C(OSiMe_3)OR'$ in the presence of $TiCl_4$.[346]

OS **III,** 408; **IV,** 120, 444.

6-32 The Conversion of Carboxylic Acid Salts to Ketones with Organometallic Compounds

Alkyl-de-oxido-substitution



$$\text{RCOOLi} + \text{R}'\text{Li} \longrightarrow \text{R}-\overset{\overset{\text{OLi}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\text{OLi}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-\text{R}' \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{R}-\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\text{R}'$$

Good yields of ketones can often be obtained by treatment of the lithium salt of a carboxylic acid with an alkyllithium reagent, followed by hydrolysis.[347] The reaction can be run in two ways: the acid can be treated with 2 moles of R′Li, or the lithium carboxylate can be independently prepared and treated with 1 mole of R′Li. R′ may be aryl or primary, secondary, or tertiary alkyl. MeLi and PhLi have been employed most often. R may be alkyl or aryl, though lithium acetate generally gives low yields. Tertiary alcohols are side products.

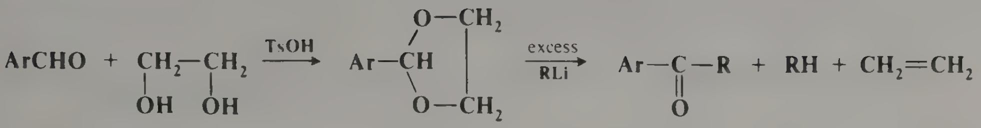
A reaction between ArCOOLi and RLi is one step in a conversion of an aromatic aldehyde to an alkyl aryl ketone. The aldehyde is converted to the corresponding cyclic acetal, which is treated with excess RLi.[348]

---

[345] Rathke and Sullivan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3050 (1973).

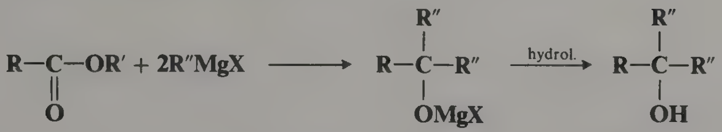
[346] See for example, Saigo, Osaki, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 989 (1975); Wenke, Jacobsen, Totten, Karydas, and Rhodes, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 449 (1983).

[347] For a review, see Jorgenson, *Org. React.* **18,** 1–97 (1970). For an improved procedure, see Rubottom and Kim, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1550 (1983).



OS **V**, 775.

6-33 The Addition of Grignard Reagents to Acid Derivatives

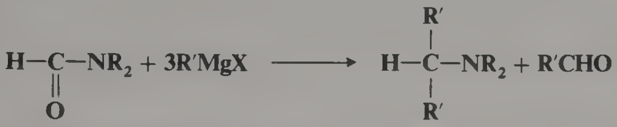


$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OR' + 2R''MgX \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{OMgX}{|}}{\overset{\overset{R''}{|}}{C}}{-}R'' \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} R{-}\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{\overset{\overset{R''}{|}}{C}}{-}R''}$$

When esters are treated with Grignard reagents, there is usually concomitant addition to the carbonyl (**6-30**) and substitution of R″ for OR′ (**0-106**), so that tertiary alcohols are formed in which two R groups are the same. Formates give secondary alcohols and carbonates give tertiary alcohols in which all three R groups are the same: $(EtO)_2C{=}O + RMgX \rightarrow R_3COMgX$. Acyl halides and anhydrides behave similarly, though these substrates are employed less often.[349] There are many side reactions possible, especially when the acid derivative or the Grignard reagent is branched: enolizations, reductions (not for esters, but for halides), condensations, and cleavages, but the most important is simple substitution (**0-106**), which in some cases can be made to predominate. Trimethylaluminum, which exhaustively methylates ketones (**6-30**), also exhaustively methylates carboxylic acids to give *t*-butyl compounds[350] (see also **0-91**):

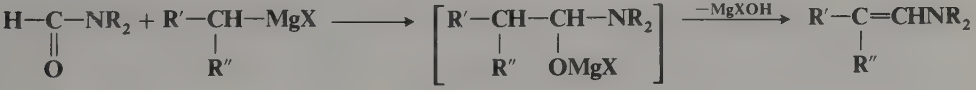
$$\mathrm{RCOOH + excess\ Me_3Al \xrightarrow{120^\circ C} RCOOAlMe_2 \xrightarrow{Me_3Al} RCMe_3}$$

Disubstituted formamides can give addition of 2 moles of Grignard reagent.



$$\mathrm{H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NR_2 + 3R'MgX \longrightarrow H{-}\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{C}}{-}NR_2 + R'CHO}$$

The products of this reaction (called the *Bouveault reaction*) are an aldehyde and a tertiary amine.[351] The use of an amide other than a formamide can give a ketone instead of an aldehyde, but yields are generally low. It has proven possible to add two different R groups by sequential addition of two Grignard reagents.[352] Alternatively, if R′ contains an α-hydrogen, the product may be an enamine, and enamines have been synthesized in good yields by this method.[353]



$$\mathrm{H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NR_2 + R'{-}\underset{\underset{R''}{|}}{CH}{-}MgX \longrightarrow \left[R'{-}\underset{\underset{R''}{|}}{CH}{-}\underset{\underset{OMgX}{|}}{CH}{-}NR_2\right] \xrightarrow{-MgXOH} R'{-}\underset{\underset{R''}{|}}{C}{=}CHNR_2}$$

OS **I,** 226; **II,** 179, 602; **III,** 237, 831, 839; **IV,** 601; **52,** 19; **55,** 39.

---

[348] Berlin, Rathore, and Peterson, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 226 (1965).

[349] For a review of these reactions, see Kharasch and Reinmuth, Ref. 287, pp. 549–766, 846–869.

[350] Meisters and Mole, *Aust. J. Chem.* **27,** 1665 (1974).

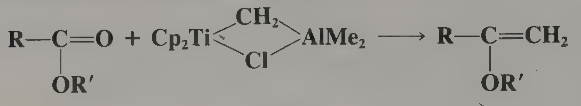
[351] For a review, see Ref. 154, pp. 59–63.

[352] Comins and Dernell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1085 (1981).

[353] Hansson and Wickberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3074 (1973).

6-34 Conversion of Carboxylic Esters to Enol Ethers

Methylene-de-oxo-bisubstitution



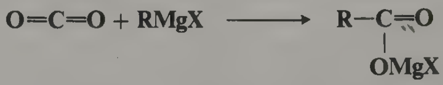
30

Cp = cyclopentadienide

Carboxylic esters and lactones can be converted in good yields to the corresponding enol ethers by treatment with the titanium cyclopentadienide complex **30** in toluene–THF containing a small amount of pyridine.[354] **30** is prepared from dicyclopentadienyltitaniumdichloride and trimethylaluminum. There are several methods for the conversion C=O to $C{=}CH_2$ when the substrate is an aldehyde or ketone (see **6-40** to **6-44, 6-47**), but very few ways to make the same conversion for a carboxylic ester. The enol ether can be hydrolyzed to a ketone (**0-7**), so this is also an indirect method for making the conversion RCOOR′ → $RCOCH_3$ (see also **0-107**).

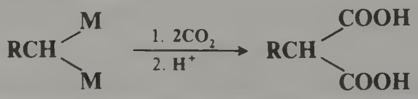
6-35 The Addition of Organometallic Compounds to CO_2

C-Alkyl-*O*-halomagnesio-addition



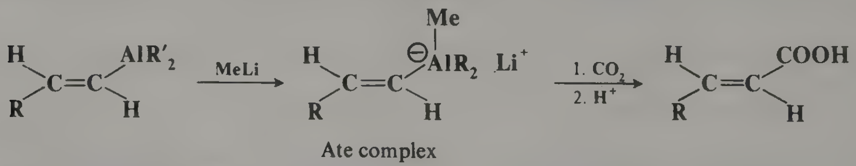
$$O{=}C{=}O + RMgX \longrightarrow \begin{array}{l} R{-}C{=}O \\ \quad\ | \\ \quad OMgX \end{array}$$

Grignard reagents add to one C=O bond of CO_2 exactly as they do to an aldehyde or a ketone.[355] Here, of course, the product is the salt of a carboxylic acid. The reaction is usually performed by adding the Grignard reagent to dry ice. Many carboxylic acids have been prepared in this manner, and, along with the sequence **0-103–6-5** and reaction **8-9,** this constitutes an important way of increasing a carbon chain by one unit. Since labeled CO_2 is commercially available, this is a good method for the preparation of carboxylic acids labeled in the carboxyl group. Other organometallic compounds have also been used (RLi, RNa, RCaX, etc.), but much less often. The formation of the salt of a carboxylic acid after the addition of CO_2 to a reaction mixture is regarded as a positive test for the presence of a carbanion or of a reactive organometallic intermediate in that reaction mixture (see also **6-43**). Addition of CO_2 to *gem*-dimetallic compounds gives replacement of both metal atoms, the product being a malonic acid.[356]



$$RCH\begin{array}{l} M \\ M \end{array} \xrightarrow[2.\ H^+]{1.\ 2CO_2} RCH\begin{array}{l} COOH \\ COOH \end{array}$$

α,β-Unsaturated acids can be prepared by carbonation of an ate complex of a vinylalane.[357]



---

[354] Tebbe, Parshall, and Reddy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3611 (1978); Pine, Zahler, Evans, and Grubbs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3270 (1980). See also Schrock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5399 (1976).

[355] For reviews of the reaction between organometallic compounds and CO_2, see Volpin and Kolomnikov, *Organomet. React.* **5,** 313–386 (1975); Sneeden, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Carboxylic Acids and Esters," pp. 137–173, Interscience, New York, 1969; Kharasch and Reinmuth, Ref. 287, pp. 913–948. For a more general review, see Lapidus and Ping, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 63–75 (1981).

[356] For examples, see Cainelli, Dal Bello, and Zubiani, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3429 (1965); Zweifel and Steele, Ref. 305; Bertini, Grasselli, Zubiani, and Cainelli, Ref. 304.

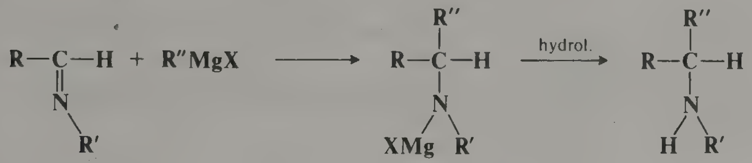
[357] Zweifel and Steele, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2754, 5085 (1967).

Vinylalanes can be prepared by addition of a dialkylalane to a triple bond (**5-14**).

OS **I,** 361, 524; **II,** 425; **III,** 413, 553, 555; **V,** 890, 1043; **59,** 85.

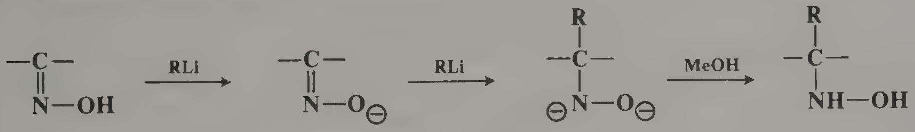
6-36 The Addition of Organometallic Compounds to C═N compounds

***N*-Hydro-*C*-alkyl-addition**[358]



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\substack{\| \\ N \\ \diagdown \\ R'}}{C}{-}H} + \mathrm{R''MgX} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\substack{R'' \\ |}}{\underset{\substack{| \\ N \\ / \ \backslash \\ XMg \ \ R'}}{C}}{-}H} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\substack{R'' \\ |}}{\underset{\substack{| \\ N \\ / \ \backslash \\ H \ \ R'}}{C}}{-}H}$$

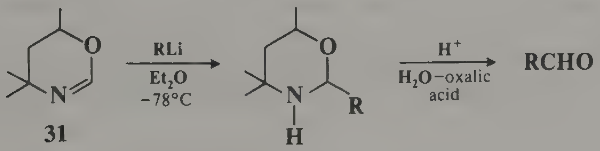
Aldimines can be converted to secondary amines by treatment with Grignard reagents.[359] Ketimines generally give reduction instead of addition. However, organolithium compounds give the normal addition product with both aldimines and ketimines.[360] Many other C═N systems (phenylhydrazones, oxime ethers, etc.) give normal addition when treated with Grignard reagents; others give reduction; others (oximes) give an active hydrogen to the Grignard reagent; still others give miscellaneous reactions. Oximes can be converted to hydroxylamines by treatment with 2 moles of an alkyllithium reagent, followed by methanol.[361]



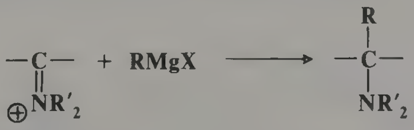
$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\substack{\| \\ N{-}OH}}{C}{-}} \xrightarrow{\text{RLi}} \mathrm{{-}\underset{\substack{\| \\ N{-}O^{\ominus}}}{C}{-}} \xrightarrow{\text{RLi}} \mathrm{{-}\overset{\substack{R \\ |}}{\underset{\substack{| \\ {}^{\ominus}N{-}O^{\ominus}}}{C}}{-}} \xrightarrow{\text{MeOH}} \mathrm{{-}\overset{\substack{R \\ |}}{\underset{\substack{| \\ NH{-}OH}}{C}}{-}}$$

The conjugate bases of nitro compounds (formed by treatment of the nitro compound with BuLi) react with Grignard reagents in the presence of $\mathrm{ClCH{=}NMe_2^+\ Cl^-}$ to give oximes: $\mathrm{RCH{=}N(O)OLi + R'MgX \rightarrow RR'C{=}NOH}$.[361a]

Alkyllithium compounds add to the C═N bond of the dihydro-1,3-oxazine **31**.[362] Since the products can be hydrolyzed to aldehydes, this is a method for the conversion of RLi to RCHO (see also **2-31**).



Iminium salts[267] give tertiary amines directly, with just R adding:



$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\substack{\| \\ {}^{\oplus}NR'_2}}{C}{-}} + \mathrm{RMgX} \longrightarrow \mathrm{{-}\overset{\substack{R \\ |}}{\underset{\substack{| \\ NR'_2}}{C}}{-}}$$

---

[358] This name also applies to reaction **6-37**.

[359] For reviews of the addition of organometallic reagents to C═N bonds, see Harada, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," Ref. 40, pp. 266–272; Kharasch and Reinmuth, Ref. 287, pp. 1204–1227.

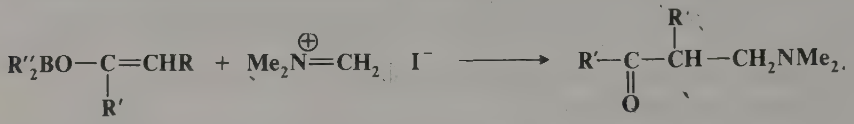
[360] Huet, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 952, 960, 967, 973 (1964).

[361] Richey, McLane, and Phillips, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 233 (1976).

[361a] Fujisawa, Kurita, and Sato, *Chem. Lett.* 1537 (1983).

[362] Meyers and Adickes, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5151 (1969).

Enol borinates react with iminium ions to give β-dialkylamino ketones (Mannich bases):[363]



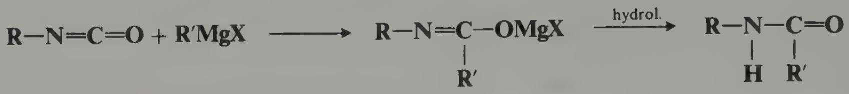
$$\mathrm{R''_2BO{-}\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CHR} + \mathrm{Me_2\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}CH_2\ \ I^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R'{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{\overset{|}{C}}H{-}CH_2NMe_2}.$$

This reaction provides a means of constructing a Mannich base from a given ketone in a regioselective manner, since either enol borinate can be prepared at will. The enol borinates (which need not be isolated) are prepared as in **0-101.**

For the addition of alkyllithium compounds to the C=N bond of ketenimines, see **2-17.**

OS **IV,** 605; **54,** 42. Also see OS **III,** 329.

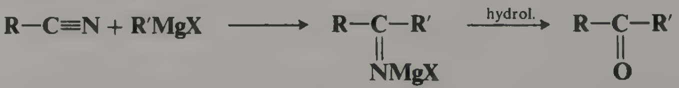
6-37 The Addition of Grignard Reagents to Isocyanates



$$\mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}O + R'MgX} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}N{=}\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}OMgX} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\displaystyle H}{\underset{|}{N}}{-}\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O}$$

The addition of Grignard reagents to isocyanates gives, after hydrolysis, N-substituted amides. The reaction is written above as involving addition to C=O, but the ion is a resonance hybrid and the addition might just as well have been shown as occurring on the C=N. In any event, hydrolysis gives the amide. This is a very good reaction and may be used to prepare derivatives of alkyl and aryl halides. The reaction has also been performed with alkyllithium compounds.[364] Isothiocyanates give N-substituted thioamides.

6-38 The Addition of Grignard Reagents to Nitriles
Alkyl,oxo-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution (Overall transformation)



$$\mathrm{R{-}C{\equiv}N + R'MgX} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\displaystyle NMgX}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}R'} \xrightarrow{\text{hydrol.}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}R'}$$

Ketones can be prepared by addition of Grignard reagents to nitriles and subsequent hydrolysis. Many ketones have been made in this manner, though when both R groups are alkyl, yields are not high.[365] Better yields are obtained when benzene containing one equivalent of ether is used as the solvent, rather than ether alone.[366] The ketimine salt does not in general react with Grignard reagents; hence tertiary alcohols or tertiary alkyl amines are not often side products.[367] By careful hydrolysis of the salt it is sometimes possible to isolate ketimines $\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\displaystyle NH}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}R'}$.[368] The addition of Grignard reagents to the C≡N group is normally slower than to the C=O group, and CN-containing aldehydes add the Grignard reagent without disturbing the CN group.[369] In a similar reaction, triethylaluminum[370] reacts with nitriles (in a 2:1 ratio) to give, after hydrolysis, ethyl ketones.[371]

---

[363] Hooz and Bridson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 602 (1973).

[364] LeBel, Cherluck, and Curtis, *Synthesis* 678 (1973).

[365] For a review, see Kharasch and Reinmuth, Ref. 287, pp. 767–845.

[366] Canonne, Foscolos, and Lemay, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 155 (1980).

[367] For examples where tertiary amines have been made the main products, see Alvernhe and Laurent, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1057 (1973); Gauthier, Axiotis, and Chastrette, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **140,** 245 (1977).

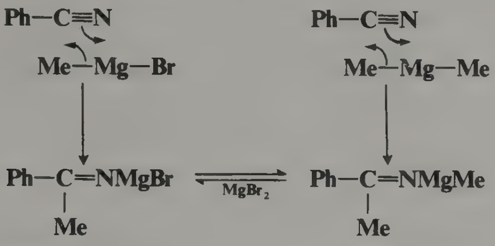
[368] Pickard and Tolbert, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 4886 (1961).

[369] Cason, Kraus, and McLeod, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 392 (1959). See also Borch, Levitan, and Van-Catledge, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 726 (1972).

[370] For a review of the reactions of organoaluminum compounds, see Reinheckel, Haage, and Jahnke, *Organomet. Chem. Rev., Sect. A* **4,** 47–136 (1969).

[371] Reinheckel and Jahnke, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 2661 (1964). See also Bagnell, Jeffery, Meisters, and Mole, *Aust. J. Chem.* **27,** 2577 (1974).

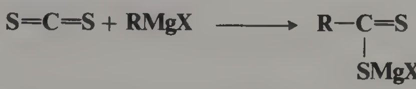
The following mechanism has been proposed for the reaction of the methyl Grignard reagent with benzonitrile:[372]



OS **III,** 26, 562; **V,** 520.

6-39 The Addition of Grignard Reagents to CS_2

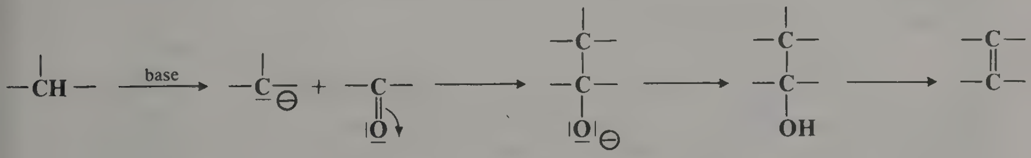
***C*-Alkyl-*S*-halomagnesio-addition**



$$S{=}C{=}S + RMgX \longrightarrow \underset{\substack{|\\ SMgX}}{R{-}C{=}S}$$

This reaction is analogous to **6-33.**[373] See also **6-43.**

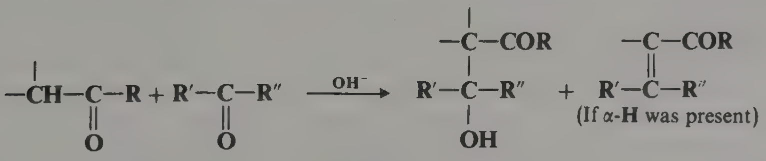
I. Carbon Attack by Active Hydrogen Compounds. Reactions **6-40** through **6-48** are base-catalyzed condensations (although some of them are also catalyzed by acids).[374] In **6-40** through **6-47,** a base removes a C—H proton to give a carbanion, which then adds to a C=O. The oxygen acquires a proton, and the resulting alcohol may or may not be dehydrated, depending on whether an α-hydrogen is present and on whether the new double bond would be in conjugation with double bonds already present:



The reactions differ in the nature of the active hydrogen component and the carbonyl component. Table 1 illustrates the differences. Reaction **6-48** is an analogous reaction involving addition to C≡N.

6-40 The Aldol Condensation

***O*-Hydro-*C*-(α-acylalkyl)-addition; α-Acylalkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution**



$$-\overset{|}{C}H-\underset{\substack{\|\\ O}}{C}-R + R'-\underset{\substack{\|\\ O}}{C}-R'' \xrightarrow{OH^-} R'-\overset{\substack{|\\ -C-COR\\ |}}{\underset{\substack{|\\ OH}}{C}}-R'' + R'-\overset{\substack{-C-COR\\ \|}}{C}-R'' \quad \text{(If α-H was present)}$$

---

[372] Ashby, Chao, and Neuman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4896, 5186 (1973).

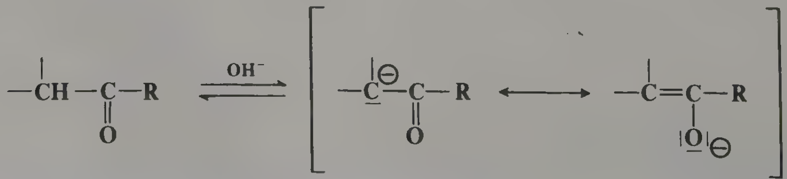
[373] For a review of the addition of Grignard reagents to C=S bonds, see Paquer, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1439–1449 (1975). For a review of the synthesis of dithiocarboxylic acids and esters, see Ramadas, Srinivasan, Ramachandran, and Sastry, *Synthesis,* 605–622 (1983).

[374] For reviews, see House, Ref. 158, pp. 629–682; Reeves, in Patai, Ref. 2, pp. 567–619. See also Stowell, "Carbanions in Organic Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1979.

TABLE 1 Base-catalyzed condensations showing the active-hydrogen components and the carbonyl components

Reaction	Active-hydrogen component	Carbonyl component	Subsequent reactions
6-40 Aldol condensation	Aldehyde $-\overset{\vert}{C}H-CHO$ Ketone $-\underset{\vert}{C}H-COR$	Aldehyde, ketone	Dehydration may follow
6-41	Ester $-\overset{\vert}{C}H-COOR$	Aldehyde, ketone (usually without α-hydrogens)	Dehydration may follow
6-42 Knoevenagel reaction	$Z-CH_2-Z'$, $Z-CHR-Z'$, and similar molecules	Aldehyde, ketone (usually without α-hydrogens)	Dehydration usually follows
6-43	$-\overset{\vert}{C}H-Z \quad Z = COR, COOR, NO_2$	CO_2, CS_2	
6-44 Perkin reaction	Anhydride $-\overset{\vert}{C}H-COOCOR$	Aromatic aldehyde	Dehydration usually follows
6-45 Darzen's reaction	α-Halo ester $X\overset{\vert}{C}H-COOR$	Aldehyde, ketone	Epoxidation (SN reaction) follows
6-46 Tollens' reaction	Aldehyde $-\overset{\vert}{C}H-CHO$ Ketone $-\overset{\vert}{C}H-COR$	Formaldehyde	Crossed Cannizzaro reaction follows
6-47 Wittig reaction	Phosphorus ylide $Ph_3\overset{\oplus}{P}-\overset{\vert}{\underline{C}}^{\ominus}$	Aldehyde, ketone	"Dehydration" always follows
6-48 Thorpe reaction	Nitrile $-\overset{\vert}{C}H-CN$	Nitrile	

In the *aldol condensation* the α-carbon of one aldehyde or ketone molecule adds to the carbonyl carbon of another.[375] The base most often used is OH^-, though stronger bases, e.g., aluminum *t*-butoxide, are sometimes employed. Hydroxide ion is not a strong enough base to convert substantially all of an aldehyde or ketone molecule to the corresponding enolate ion, i.e., the equilibrium

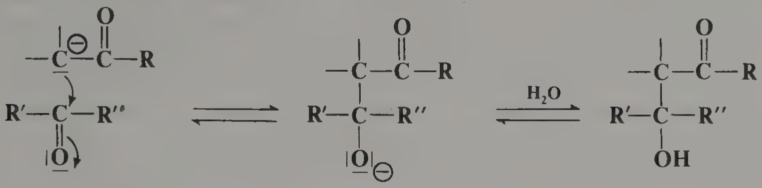


$$-\overset{|}{C}H-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-R \xrightleftharpoons{OH^-} \left[-\overset{|}{\underline{C}}^{\ominus}-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-R \longleftrightarrow -\overset{|}{C}=\underset{\overset{|}{\underline{O}}|^{\ominus}}{C}-R \right]$$

---

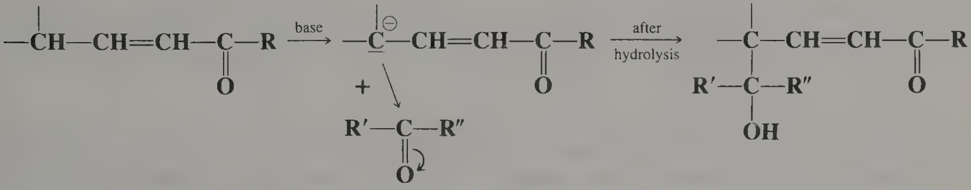
[375] For reviews, see Hajos, in Augustine, "Carbon–Carbon Bond Formation," vol. 1, pp. 1–84, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1979; Nielsen and Houlihan, *Org. React.* **16,** 1–438 (1968).

lies well to the left, for both aldehydes and ketones. Nevertheless, enough enolate ion is present for the reaction to proceed:



The product is a β-hydroxy aldehyde (called an *aldol*) or ketone, which in some cases is dehydrated during the course of the reaction. Even if the dehydration is not spontaneous, it can usually be done easily, since the new double bond will be in conjugation with the C=O bond; so that this is a method of preparing α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones as well as β-hydroxy aldehydes and ketones. The entire reaction is an equilibrium (including the dehydration step), and α,β-unsaturated and β-hydroxy aldehydes and ketones can be cleaved by treatment with OH^-. There is evidence that an SET mechanism (see **6-30**) can intervene when the substrate is an aromatic ketone.[376]

The reverse reaction is known as the *retrograde aldol reaction*. Under the principle of vinylology, the active hydrogen may be one in the γ position of an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound:



The scope of the aldol condensation may be discussed under five headings:

1. *Condensation between two molecules of the same aldehyde.* This equilibrium lies far to the right,[377] and the reaction is quite feasible. Many aldehydes have been converted to aldols and/or their dehydration products in this manner. The most effective catalysts are basic ion-exchange resins. Of course, the aldehyde must be one with an α-hydrogen.

2. *Condensation between two molecules of the same ketone.* In this case the equilibrium lies well to the left, and the reaction is feasible only if the equilibrium can be shifted. This can often be done by allowing the reaction to proceed in a Soxhlet extractor (for example, see OS **I**, 199). In this method the ketone is refluxed in such a way that the condensate drips into a separate chamber, in which the base is present. In this chamber the reaction proceeds to the small extent permitted by the unfavorable equilibrium. When the chamber is full, the mixture of the ketone and its dimer is siphoned back into the original flask, out of contact with the base. Since the boiling point of the dimer is higher than that of the ketone, only the ketone is volatilized back to the chamber containing the base, where a little more of it is converted to dimer, and the process is repeated until a reasonable yield of dimer is obtained. Two molecules of the same ketone can also be condensed without a Soxhlet extractor, by use of the reagent barium pernitride Ba_3N_4[378] and by treatment with basic Al_2O_3.[379] Unsymmetrical ketones condense on the side that has more hydrogens.

---

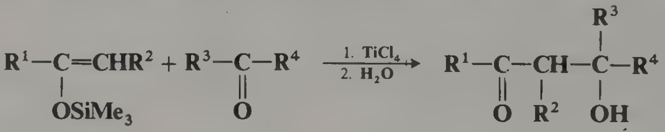
[376] Ashby, Argyropoulos, Meyer, and Goel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6788 (1982).
[377] For a discussion of equilibrium constants in aldol condensations, see Guthrie, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 962 (1978).
[378] Okamoto and Goswami, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 2778 (1966).
[379] Muzart, *Synthesis* 60 (1982).

(An exception is butanone, which reacts at the CH_2 group with acid catalysts, though with basic catalysts, it too reacts at the CH_3 group.)

3. *Condensation between two different aldehydes.* In the most general case, this will produce a mixture of four products (eight, if the olefins are counted). However, if one aldehyde does not have an α-hydrogen, only two aldols are possible, and in many cases the crossed product is the main one. The crossed aldol condensation is often called the *Claisen–Schmidt reaction.*

4. *Condensation between two different ketones.* This is seldom attempted (except with the use of preformed enolates, see below), but similar considerations apply. Enolizable ketones, such as β-diketones, can be condensed with aromatic aldehydes and ketones with KH as base.[380]

5. *Condensation between an aldehyde and a ketone.* This is usually feasible, especially when the aldehyde has no α-hydrogen, since there is no competition from ketone condensing with itself. This is also called the *Claisen–Schmidt reaction.* Even when the aldehyde has an α-hydrogen, it is the α-carbon of the ketone that adds to the carbonyl of the aldehyde, not the other way around. The reaction can be made regioselective by preparing an enol derivative of the ketone separately[381] and then adding this to the aldehyde (or ketone), which assures that the coupling takes place on the desired side of an unsymmetrical ketone. One way of doing this is to add a lithium enolate (prepared by **2-20**) in the presence of $ZnCl_2$;[382] in this case the aldol product is stabilized by chelation of its two oxygen atoms with the zinc ion.[383] Another pre-formed reagent is the silyl enol ether of the ketone. This can be condensed with an aldehyde or ketone with various catalysts,[384] including $TiCl_4$.[385] This reaction can also be run with the aldehyde or ketone in the form of its acetal $R^3R^4C(OR')_2$, in which case the product is the ether $RCOCHR^2CR^3R^4OR'$ instead of **32.**[386] Enol acetates and enol ethers also give this product when treated with acetals and $TiCl_4$ or a similar catalyst.[387] Another type of pre-formed enol derivative that reacts with aldehydes and ketones are enol borinates $R'CH{=}CR''{-}OBR_2$.[388]



$$R^1-\underset{\underset{OSiMe_3}{|}}{C}=CHR^2 + R^3-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R^4 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ TiCl_4} R^1-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{R^2}{|}}{CH}-\overset{\overset{R^3}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-R^4$$

32

---

[380] Rathman, Greenwood, Wolfe, and Morris, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1086 (1980).

[381] For some other aldol condensations with pre-formed enol derivatives, see Schulz and Steglich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 251 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 255]; Paterson and Fleming, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2179 (1979); Maruoka, Hashimoto, Kitagawa, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 3301 (1980); Itoh, Ozawa, Oshima, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 274 (1981); Yamamoto, Yatagai, and Maruyama, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 162 (1981); Kowalski and Fields, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1777 (1982); Fujita and Schlosser, *Helv. Chim. Acta,* **65,** 1258 (1982); Stille and Grubbs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1664 (1983); Kato and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1727 (1983). For a review of this subject, see Caine, in Augustine, Ref. 375, pp. 264–276.

[382] House, Crumrine, Teranishi, and Olmstead, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3310 (1973). See also Stork, Kraus, and Garcia, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3459 (1974); Stork and d'Angelo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7114 (1974); Kuwajima, Sato, Arai, and Minami, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1817 (1976).

[383] It has been contended that such stabilization is not required: Mulzer, Brüntrup, Finke, and Zippel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 7723 (1979).

[384] For other catalysts, see Noyori, Nishida, and Sakata, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2106 (1981); Nakamura, Shimizu, Kuwajima, Sakata, Yokoyama, and Noyori, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 932 (1983).

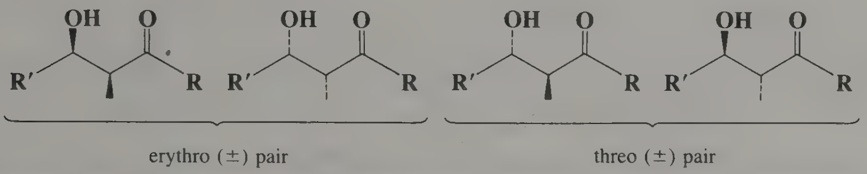
[385] Mukaiyama, Banno, and Narasaka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7503 (1974); Banno, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 2284 (1976); Ojima, Yoshida, and Inaba, *Chem. Lett.* 429 (1977); Mukaiyama, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **55,** 1749–1758 (1983). For a review of this and other applications of $TiCl_4$ in organic synthesis, see Mukaiyama, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 817–826 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 858–866]. See also Reetz, Ref. 316.

[386] Mukaiyama and Hayashi, *Chem. Lett.* 15 (1974). See also Sato, Arai, and Kuwajima, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5827 (1977); Murata, Suzuki, and Noyori, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3248 (1980); Reetz and Peter, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4691 (1981).

[387] Mukaiyama, Izawa, and Saigo, *Chem. Lett.* 323 (1974); Kitazawa, Imamura, Saigo, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 569 (1975).

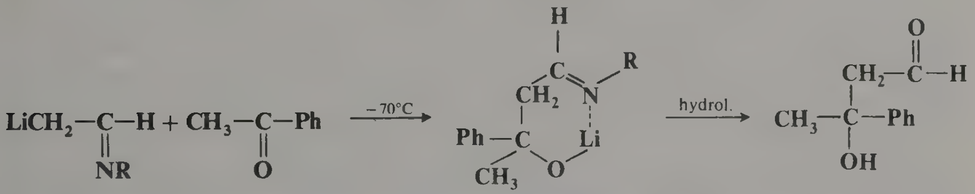
[388] Inoue and Mukaiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 174 (1980); Kuwajima, Kato, and Mori, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4291 (1980); Wada, *Chem. Lett.* 153 (1981). See also Gennari, Colombo, and Poli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 2279 (1984).

The reactions with pre-formed enol derivatives provide a way to control the stereoselectivity of the aldol condensation. In recent years much progress has been made in this area.[389] The reaction creates two new chiral centers, and, in the most general case, there are four stereoisomers of the aldol product, which can be represented as



In general, the *Z* enol derivatives give the erythro pair, while the *E* derivatives give the threo pair. Among the pre-formed enol derivatives used in this way have been enolates of magnesium, lithium,[390] zirconium,[391] and tin,[392] silyl enol ethers,[393] and enol borinates.[394] These reactions can also be made enantioselective (in which case only one of the four isomers predominates) by using chiral enol derivatives,[395] chiral aldehydes or ketones,[396] or both.[397]

It is possible to make the α-carbon of the aldehyde add to the carbonyl carbon of the ketone, by using an imine instead of an aldehyde, and $LiN(iso\text{-}Pr)_2$ as the base:[398]



This is known as the *directed aldol reaction*. Similar reactions have been performed with α-lithiated dimethylhydrazones of aldehydes or ketones.[399] A way to make the α carbon of acetaldehyde add to the C=O of a ketone (or another aldehyde) is to use the enolate LiCH=CHOEt.[400]

---

[389] For reviews, see Evans, Nelson, and Taber, *Top. Stereochem.* **13,** 1–115 (1982); Evans, *Aldrichimica Acta* **15,** 23–32 (1982); Heathcock, *Science* **214,** 395–400 (1981).

[390] Fellmann and Dubois, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 1349 (1978); Heathcock, Pirrung, Montgomery, and Lampe, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 4087 (1981); Masamune, Ellingboe, and Choy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5526 (1982).

[391] Evans and McGee, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3975 (1980); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2876 (1981).

[392] Harada and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 467 (1982); Stevens and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 595 (1983). See also Nakamura and Kuwajima, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3347 (1983).

[393] Matsuda and Izumi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1805 (1981); Yamamoto, Maruyama, and Matsumoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6963 (1983), Sakurai, Sasaki, and Hosomi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 3195 (1983).

[394] Masamune, Mori, Van Horn, and Brooks, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1665 (1979); Hirama, Garvey, Lu, and Masamune, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3937 (1979); Evans, Nelson, Vogel, and Taber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3099 (1981); Evans, Bartroli, and Shih, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2127 (1981); Masamune, Choy, Kerdesky, and Imperiali, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1566 (1981). See also Gennari, Cardani, Colombo, and Scolastico, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 2283 (1984).

[395] For examples, see Ref. 394; Eichenauer, Friedrich, Lutz, and Enders, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 206 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 219]; Masamune, Ali, Snitman, and Garvey, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 557 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 573]; Masamune, Kaiho, and Garvey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5521 (1982); Meyers and Yamamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 4278 (1981); Iwasawa and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1441 (1982); Annunziata, Cinquini, Cozzi, Montanari, and Restelli, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1138 (1983); Braun and Devant, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 788 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 802].

[396] For example, see Ojima, Yoshida, and Inaba, Ref. 385; Heathcock and Flippin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1667 (1983).

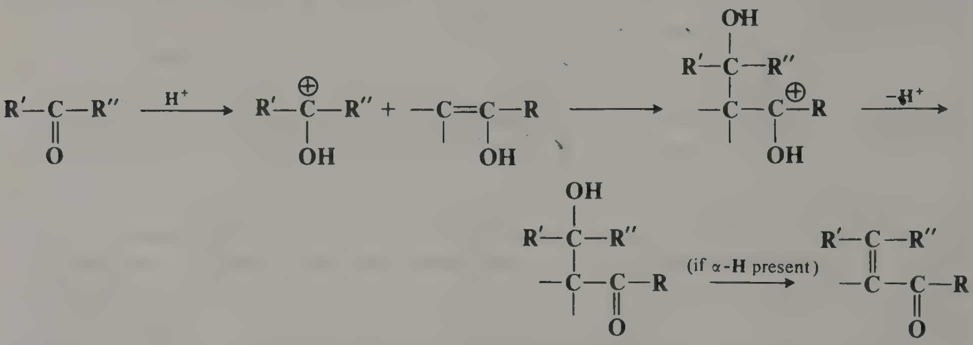
[397] For example, see Heathcock, White, Morrison, and VanDerveer, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1296 (1981).

[398] Wittig, Frommeld, and Suchanek, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 683 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 303]. For reviews, see Mukaiyama, *Org. React.* **28,** 203–331 (1982); Wittig, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **67,** 1–14 (1976); *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **28,** 45–60 (1967); Wittig and Reiff, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 7–14 (1968); [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 8–15]; Reiff, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **6,** 48–66 (1971).

[399] Corey and Enders, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 11 (1976). See also Beam, Thomas, Sandifer, Foote, and Hauser, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 487 (1976); Sugasawa, Toyoda, and Sasakura, *Synth. Commun.* **9,** 515 (1979); Depezay and Le Merrer, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-306 (1981).

[400] Wollenberg, Albizati, and Peries, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7365 (1977).

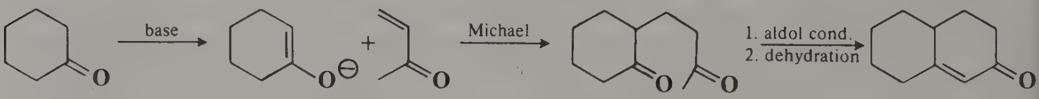
The aldol condensation can also be performed with acid catalysts, in which case dehydration usually follows. Here there is initial protonation of the carbonyl group, which attacks the α-carbon of the *enol* form of the other molecule:



With respect to the enol, this mechanism is similar to that of α halogenation (**2-4**).

A side reaction that is sometimes troublesome is further condensation, since the product of an aldol condensation is still an aldehyde or ketone.

Aldol condensations are often used to close five- and six-membered rings. Because of the favorable entropy (p. 185), such ring closures generally take place with ease, even where a ketone condenses with a ketone. An important example is the *Robinson annulation reaction,*[401] which has often been used in the synthesis of steroids and terpenes. In this reaction a cyclic ketone is converted to another cyclic ketone, with one additional six-membered ring containing a double bond. The substrate is treated with methyl vinyl ketone (or a simple derivative of methyl vinyl ketone) and a base.[402] The enolate ion of the substrate adds to the methyl vinyl ketone in a Michael reaction (**5-17**) to give a diketone that undergoes or is made to undergo an internal aldol condensation and subsequent dehydration to give the product. Because methyl vinyl ketone has a tendency to polymerize, precursors are often used instead, i.e., compounds that will give methyl vinyl ketone when treated with a base. One common example, $MeCOCH_2CH_2NEt_2Me^+ I^-$ (see **7-8**), is easily prepared by quaternization of $MeCOCH_2CH_2NEt_2$, which itself is prepared by a Mannich reaction (**6-16**) involving acetone, formaldehyde, and dimethylamine. The Robinson annulation reaction has also been carried out with 3-butyn-2-one, in which case the new ring of the product contains two double bonds.[403] α-Silylated vinyl ketones $RCOC(SiMe_3){=}CH_2$ have also been used successfully in annulation reactions.[404] The $SiMe_3$ group is easily removed. 1,5-Diketones prepared in other ways are also frequently cyclized by internal aldol condensations.



OS **I,** 77, 78, 81, 199, 283, 341; **II,** 167, 214; **III,** 317, 353, 367, 747, 806, 829; **V,** 486, 869; **50,** 66; **53,** 48, 70; **54,** 49; **58,** 158; **60,** 88; **61,** 129.

---

[401] For reviews of this and related reactions, see Gawley, *Synthesis* 777–794 (1976); Jung, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 1–31 (1976); Mundy, *J. Chem. Educ.* **50,** 110–113 (1973).

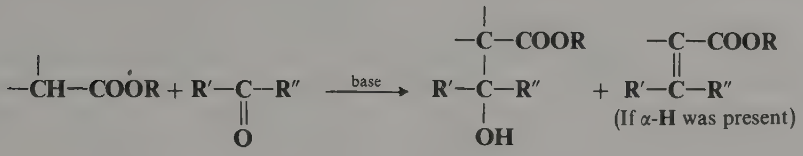
[402] Acid catalysis has also been used; see Heathcock, Ellis, McMurry, and Coppolino, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4995 (1971).

[403] For example, see Woodward and Singh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 494 (1950).

[404] Stork and Ganem, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6152 (1973); Stork and Singh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6181 (1974); Boeckman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 6179 (1974).

6-41 Condensations between Esters and Aldehydes or Ketones

O-Hydro-*C*-(α-alkoxycarbonylalkyl)-addition; α-Alkoxycarbonylalkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution



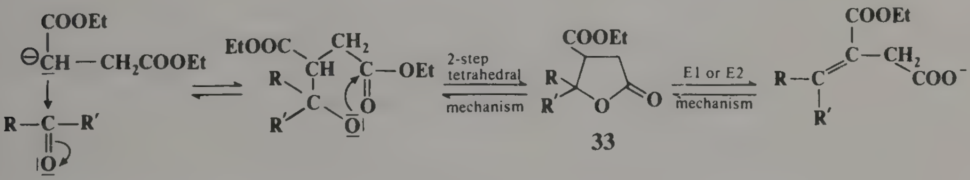
$$-\overset{|}{C}H-COOR + R'-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'' \xrightarrow{\text{base}} R'-\overset{\overset{|}{-C-COOR}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{\overset{|}{C}}}-R'' + R'-\overset{-C-COOR}{\overset{\|}{C}}-R''$$

(If α-H was present)

In the presence of a strong base, the α-carbon of an ester can condense with the carbonyl carbon of an aldehyde or ketone to give a β-hydroxy ester, which may or may not be dehydrated to the α,β-unsaturated ester. This reaction is sometimes called the Claisen condensation,[405] an unfortunate usage since that name is more firmly connected to **0-111.** It is also possible for the α-carbon of an aldehyde or ketone to add to the carbonyl carbon of an ester, but this is a different reaction (**0-112**) involving nucleophilic substitution and not addition to a C=O bond. It can, however, be a side reaction if the aldehyde or ketone has an α-hydrogen.

Besides ordinary esters (containing an α-hydrogen), the reaction can also be carried out with lactones and, as in **6-40,** with the γ position of α,β-unsaturated esters (vinylology).

For most esters, a much stronger base is needed than for aldol condensations; $(i\text{-}Pr)_2NLi$, Ph_3CNa and $LiNH_2$[406] are among those employed. However, one type of ester reacts more easily, and such strong bases are not needed: diethyl succinate and its derivatives condense with aldehydes and ketones in the presence of bases such as NaOEt, NaH, or $KOCMe_3$. This reaction is called the *Stobbe condensation.*[407] One of the ester groups (sometimes both) is hydrolyzed in the course of the reaction. The following mechanism accounts for (1) the fact that succinic esters react so much better than others; (2) one ester group is always cleaved; and (3) the alcohol is not the product but the olefin. In addition, intermediate lactones **33** have been isolated from the mixture:[408]



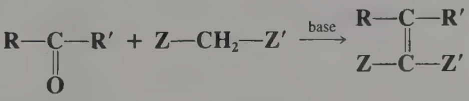
33

The Stobbe condensation has been extended to di-*t*-butyl esters of glutaric acid.[409]

OS **I,** 252; **III,** 132; **V,** 80, 564. Also see OS **IV,** 278, 478; **V,** 251.

6-42 The Knoevenagel Condensation

Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methylene-de-oxo-bisubstitution, etc.



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' + Z-CH_2-Z' \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \begin{matrix} R-C-R' \\ \| \\ Z-C-Z' \end{matrix}$$

---

[405] Because it was discovered by Claisen: *Ber.* **23,** 977 (1890).

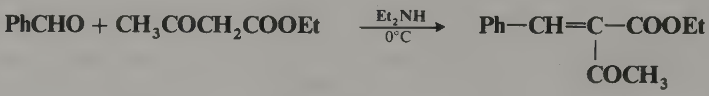
[406] Dunnavant and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 503, 1693 (1960).

[407] For a review, see Johnson and Daub, *Org. React.* **6,** 1–73 (1951).

[408] Robinson and Seijo, *J. Chem. Soc.* 582 (1941).

[409] Puterbaugh, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4010 (1962). See also El-Newaihy, Salem, Enayat, and El-Bassiouny, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **324,** 379 (1982).

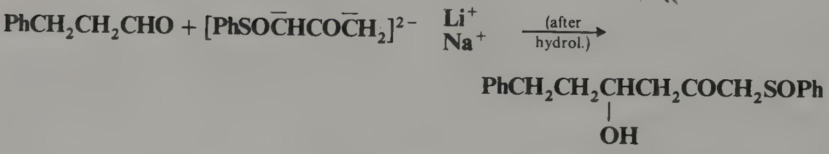
The condensation of aldehydes or ketones, usually not containing an α-hydrogen, with compounds of the form Z—CH$_2$—Z′ or Z—CHR—Z′ is usually called the *Knoevenagel reaction*,[410] although some limit the use of this name to only some of the active-hydrogen compounds that give the reaction. Z and Z′ may be CHO, COR, COOH, COOR, CN, NO$_2$,[411] SOR, SO$_2$R, SO$_2$OR, or similar groups. When Z = COOH, decarboxylation of the product often takes place in situ. If a strong enough base is used, the reaction can be performed on compounds possessing only a single Z, e.g., CH$_3$Z or RCH$_2$Z. Other active hydrogen compounds can also be employed, among them CHCl$_3$, 2-methylpyridines, terminal acetylenes, cyclopentadienes, etc.; in fact any compound that contains a C—H bond the hydrogen of which can be removed by a base. The following examples illustrate the wide scope of the reaction:



$$\mathrm{PhCHO + CH_3COCH_2COOEt \xrightarrow[0^\circ C]{Et_2NH} Ph{-}CH{=}\underset{\displaystyle COCH_3}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}COOEt}$$

34

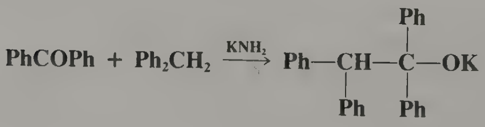
$$\mathrm{PhCHO + CH_3NO_2 \xrightarrow{\mathit{n}\text{-}C_5H_{11}NH_2} Ph{-}CH{=}CH{-}NO_2} \qquad \text{(Ref. 411)}$$



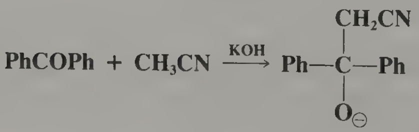
$$\mathrm{PhCH_2CH_2CHO + [PhSO\bar{C}HCO\bar{C}H_2]^{2-}\ \overset{Li^+}{Na^+} \xrightarrow[\text{hydrol.)}]{\text{(after}} PhCH_2CH_2\underset{\displaystyle OH}{\underset{|}{C}}HCH_2COCH_2SOPh} \qquad \text{(Ref. 412)}$$

35

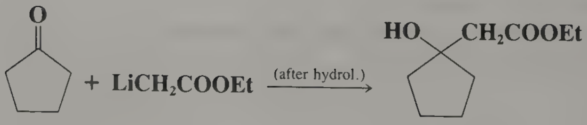
$$\mathrm{PrCHO + HOOCCH_2COOH \xrightarrow[\text{piperidine}]{\text{pyridine-}} PrCH{=}CHCOOH}$$



$$\mathrm{PhCOPh + Ph_2CH_2 \xrightarrow{KNH_2} Ph{-}\underset{\displaystyle Ph}{\underset{|}{C}}H{-}\overset{\displaystyle Ph}{\overset{|}{\underset{\displaystyle Ph}{\underset{|}{C}}}}{-}OK} \qquad \text{(Ref. 413)}$$



$$\mathrm{PhCOPh + CH_3CN \xrightarrow{KOH} Ph{-}\overset{\displaystyle CH_2CN}{\overset{|}{\underset{\displaystyle O^{\ominus}}{\underset{|}{C}}}}{-}Ph} \qquad \text{(Ref. 414)}$$



(Ref. 415)

---

[410] For a review, see Jones, *Org. React.* **15,** 204–599 (1967).

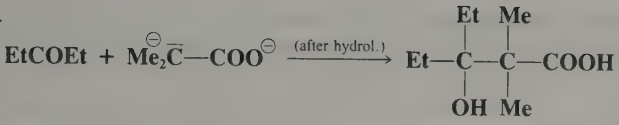
[411] For a review of this reaction with respect to nitroalkanes, (often called the *Henry reaction*), see Baer and Urbas, in Feuer, Ref. 158, pp. 76–117. See also Wollenberg and Miller, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3219 (1978); Colvin, Beck, and Seebach, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **64,** 2264 (1981); Rosini, Ballini, and Sorrenti, *Synthesis* 1014 (1983).

[412] Kuwajima and Iwasawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 107 (1974). See also Huckin and Weiler, *Can. J. Chem.* **52,** 2157 (1974).

[413] Hamrick and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2096, 3144 (1959).

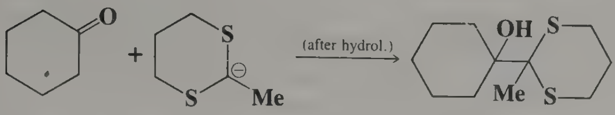
[414] DiBiase, Lipisko, Haag, Wolak, and Gokel, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4640 (1979). For a review of addition of the conjugate bases of nitriles, see Arseniyadis, Kyler, and Watt, *Org. React.* **31,** 1–364 (1984).

[415] Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3222 (1970). See also reaction **6-31.**



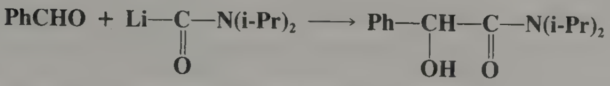
$EtCOEt + Me_2\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}-COO^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{\text{(after hydrol.)}} Et-\overset{Et}{\underset{OH}{C}}-\overset{Me}{\underset{Me}{C}}-COOH$

(Ref. 416)



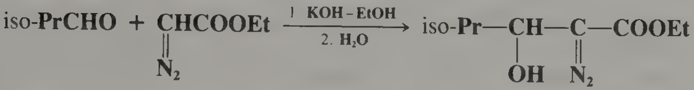
36

(Ref. 417)



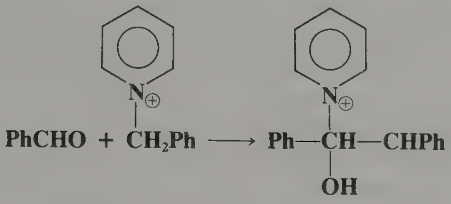
$PhCHO + Li-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-N(i\text{-}Pr)_2 \longrightarrow Ph-\underset{OH}{CH}-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-N(i\text{-}Pr)_2$

(Ref. 418)

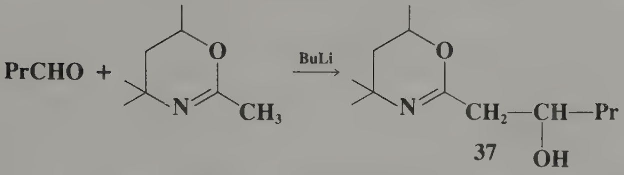


$iso\text{-}PrCHO + \underset{N_2}{\underset{\|}{C}}HCOOEt \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ KOH-EtOH} iso\text{-}Pr-\underset{OH}{CH}-\underset{N_2}{\underset{\|}{C}}-COOEt$

(Ref. 419)

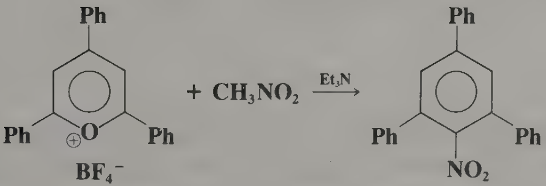


(Ref. 420)



37

(Ref. 421)



(Ref. 422)

[416] Moersch and Burkett, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1149 (1971). See also Caron and Lessard, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 981 (1973); Cainelli, Cardillo, Contento, and Umani-Ronchi, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **104,** 625 (1974). When the nucleophile is $Ph\bar{C}^{\ominus}HCOO^{\ominus}$, the reaction is known as the *Ivanov reaction.*

[417] Corey and Seebach, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 1075 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 1134]. For other examples of the addition of 1,3-dithianes and similar reagents to aldehydes, ketones, and compounds containing C=N bonds, see Seebach, *Synthesis* 17–36 (1969), pp. 27–29; Corey and Crouse, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 298 (1968); Ogura and Tsuchihashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1383, 2681 (1972); Duhamel, Duhamel, and Mancelle, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 331 (1974); Gröbel, Bürstinghaus, and Seebach, *Synthesis* 121 (1976); Meyers, Tait, and Comins, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4657 (1978); Blatcher and Warren, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1074 (1979).

[418] Smith and Swaminathan, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 387 (1976).

[419] Wenkert and MePherson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8084 (1972). See also Schöllkopf, Bánhidai, Frasnelli, Meyer, and Beckhaus, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1767 (1974).

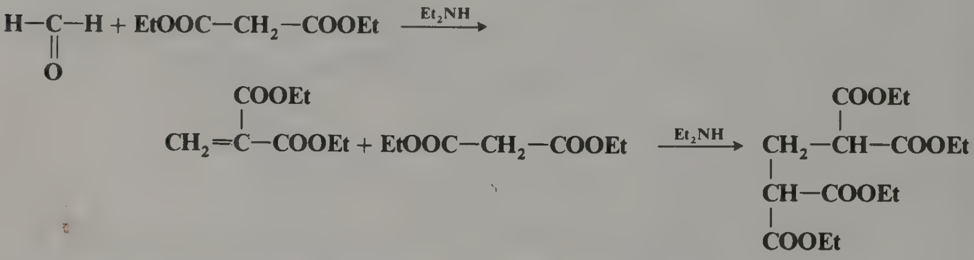
[420] For a review of these reactions with pyridinium salts, see Kröhnke, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 225–237 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 181–194].

[421] Meyers, Nabeya, Adickes, Fitzpatrick, Malone, and Politzer, *J. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 764 (1969). For other examples, see Meyers and Temple. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6644 (1970); Fitzpatrick, Malone, Politzer, Adickes, and Meyers, *Org. Prep. Proced.* **1,** 193 (1969); Meyers, Nabeya, Adickes, Politzer, Malone, Kovelesky, Nolen, and Portnoy, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 36 (1973).

[422] Dimroth, Berndt, and Reichardt, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 1128. See also Dimroth, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 331–342 (1960); Dimroth and Wolf, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **3,** 357–423 (1964).

We see from these examples that many of the carbon nucleophiles we encountered in Chapter 10 are also nucleophiles toward aldehydes and ketones (compare reactions **0-96** through **0-100** and **0-102**). As we have seen in Chapter 10, the initial products in many of these cases, e.g., **34** through **37**, can be converted by relatively simple procedures (hydrolysis, reduction, decarboxylation, etc.) to various other products. In the reaction with terminal acetylenes,[423] sodium acetylides are the most common reagents (when they are used, the reaction is often called the *Nef reaction*), but lithium,[424] magnesium, and other metallic acetylides have also been used. A particularly convenient reagent is lithium acetylide–ethylenediamine complex,[425] a stable, free-flowing powder that is commercially available. Alternatively, the substrate may be treated with the alkyne itself in the presence of a base, so that the acetylide is generated in situ. This procedure is called the *Favorskii reaction*, not to be confused with the Favorskii rearrangement (**8-8**).[426] 1,4-Diols can be prepared by the treatment of aldehydes with dimetalloacetylenes $MC{\equiv}CM$.[427]

With most of these reagents the alcohol is not isolated (only the olefin) if the alcohol has a hydrogen in the proper position. However, in some cases it is the alcohol that is the major product. When the reactant is of the form ZCH_2Z', aldehydes react much better than ketones and few successful reactions with ketones have been reported. However, it is possible to get good yields of olefin from the condensation of ethyl malonate $CH_2(COOEt)_2$ with ketones, as well as with aldehydes, if the reaction is run with $TiCl_4$ and pyridine in tetrahydrofuran.[428] In reactions with ZCH_2Z', the catalyst is most often a secondary amine (piperidine is the most common), though many other catalysts have been used. When the catalyst is pyridine (to which piperidine may or may not be added) the reaction is known as the *Doebner modification* of the Knoevenagel reaction. Alkoxides are also common catalysts. In some cases it is possible to get a second molecule of active compound to add to the initial product, in a Michael reaction, e.g.,



$$\mathrm{H{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}H + EtOOC{-}CH_2{-}COOEt \xrightarrow{Et_2NH}}$$

$$\mathrm{CH_2{=}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle COOEt}{|}}{C}{-}COOEt + EtOOC{-}CH_2{-}COOEt \xrightarrow{Et_2NH} \begin{array}{l} CH_2{-}\overset{\overset{\displaystyle COOEt}{|}}{CH}{-}COOEt \\ | \\ CH{-}COOEt \\ | \\ COOEt \end{array}}$$

As with **6-40**, these reactions have sometimes been performed with acid catalysts.[429]

Imines can be employed instead of aldehydes or ketones; the products are the same—an amine is lost instead of water.[430]

A number of special applications of the Knoevenagel reaction follow:

1. The dilithio derivative of N-methanesulfinyl-*p*-toluidine[431] (**38**) adds to aldehydes and ketones to give, after hydrolysis, the hydroxysulfinamides **39**, which, upon heating, undergo stereospecifically syn eliminations to give olefins.[432] The reaction is thus a method for achieving the conversion $RR'CO \rightarrow RR'C{=}CH_2$ and represents an alternative to the Wittig reaction.[433]

---

[423] For reviews, see Ziegenbein, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 207–241, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Ried, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **4**, 95–138 (1968).

[424] See Midland, *J. Org. Chem.* **40**, 2250 (1975), for the use of amine-free monolithium acetylide.

[425] Beumel and Harris, *J. Org. Chem.* **28**, 2775 (1963).

[426] For a discussion of the mechanism of the Favorskii addition reaction, see Kondrat'eva, Potapova, Grigina, Glazunova, and Nikitin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12**, 948 (1976).

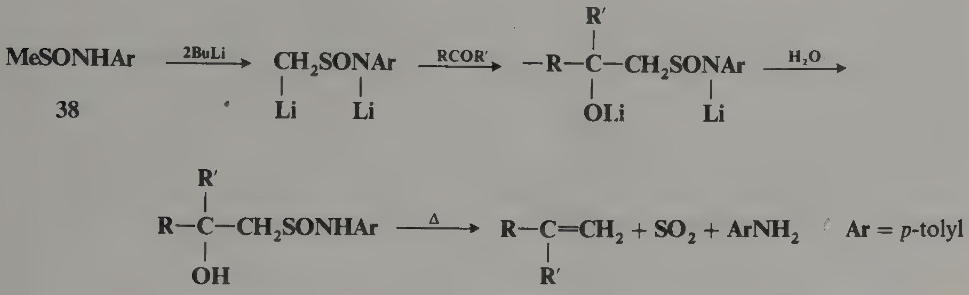
[427] Sudweeks and Broadbent, *J. Org. Chem.* **40**, 1131 (1975).

[428] Lehnert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4723 (1970), *Tetrahedron* **28**, 663 (1972), **29**, 635 (1973), *Synthesis* 667 (1974).

[429] For example, see Rappoport and Patai, *J. Chem. Soc.* 731 (1962).

[430] Charles, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1559, 1566, 1573, 1576 (1963); Siegrist, Liechti, Meyer, and Weber, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **52**, 2521 (1969). For a review as applied to heterocyclic compounds, see Fletcher and Siegrist, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **23**, 171–261 (1978).

[431] For a method of preparing **38**, see Bowlus and Katzenellenbogen, *Synth. Commun.* **4**, 137 (1974).

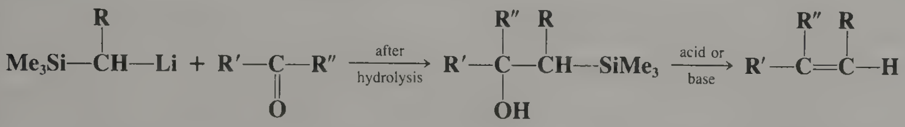


$$\underset{\mathbf{38}}{\mathrm{MeSONHAr}} \xrightarrow{2\mathrm{BuLi}} \underset{\mathrm{Li}}{\mathrm{CH_2}}\underset{\mathrm{Li}}{\mathrm{SONAr}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{RCOR'}} \mathrm{-R-}\overset{\mathrm{R'}}{\underset{\mathrm{OLi}}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{-CH_2SO}\underset{\mathrm{Li}}{\mathrm{NAr}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}}$$

$$\mathrm{R-}\overset{\mathrm{R'}}{\underset{\mathrm{OH}}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{-CH_2SONHAr} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathrm{R-}\underset{\mathrm{R'}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{{=}CH_2 + SO_2 + ArNH_2} \qquad \mathrm{Ar} = p\text{-tolyl}$$

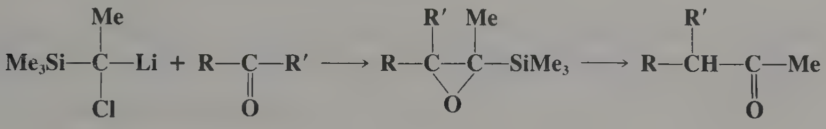
39

2. Another alternative to the Wittig reaction is the *Peterson olefination reaction.*[434] In this method, the lithio (or sometimes magnesio) derivative of a trialkylsilane[435] adds to an aldehyde or



$$\mathrm{Me_3Si-}\overset{\mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{H-Li} + \mathrm{R'-}\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}}\mathrm{-R''} \xrightarrow[\text{hydrolysis}]{\text{after}} \mathrm{R'-}\overset{\mathrm{R''}}{\underset{\mathrm{OH}}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{-}\overset{\mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{H-SiMe_3} \xrightarrow[\text{base}]{\text{acid or}} \mathrm{R'-}\overset{\mathrm{R''}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{{=}}\overset{\mathrm{R}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{-H}$$

ketone to give a β-hydroxysilane, which spontaneously eliminates water, or can be made to do so by treatment with acid or base, to produce an olefin. R can also be a COOR group, in which case the product is an α,β-unsaturated ester,[436] or an SO_2Ph group, in which case the product is a vinyl sulfone.[437] When aldehydes or ketones are treated with reagents of the form **40,** the product is an epoxy silane (**6-63**), which can be hydrolyzed to a methyl ketone.[438] For aldehydes, this is a method for converting RCHO to a methyl ketone RCH_2COMe.



$$\mathrm{Me_3Si-}\overset{\mathrm{Me}}{\underset{\mathrm{Cl}}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{-Li} + \mathrm{R-}\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{-R'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R-}\overset{\mathrm{R'}}{\mathrm{C}}\overset{}{\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\diagdown\!\diagup}}\overset{\mathrm{Me}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{-SiMe_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R-}\overset{\mathrm{R'}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{H-}\underset{\mathrm{O}}{\underset{\|}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{-Me}$$

40

---

[432] Corey and Durst, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5548, 5553 (1968).

[433] For similar reactions, see Jung, Sharma, and Durst, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3420 (1973); Kuwajima and Uchida, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 649 (1972); Johnson, Shanklin, and Kirchhoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6462 (1973); Lau and Chan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2383 (1978); Yamamoto, Tomo, and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2861 (1980); Martin, Phillips, Puckette, and Colapret, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5866 (1980).

[434] Peterson, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 780 (1968). For reviews, see Weber, "Silicon Reagents for Organic Synthesis," pp. 58–78, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1983; Magnus, *Aldrichimica Acta* **13,** 43–51 (1980); Chan, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 442–448 (1977). See also Yamakado, Ishiguro, Ikeda, and Yamamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5568 (1981). For reviews on silicon reagents in organic synthesis, see Chapter 12, Ref. 220.

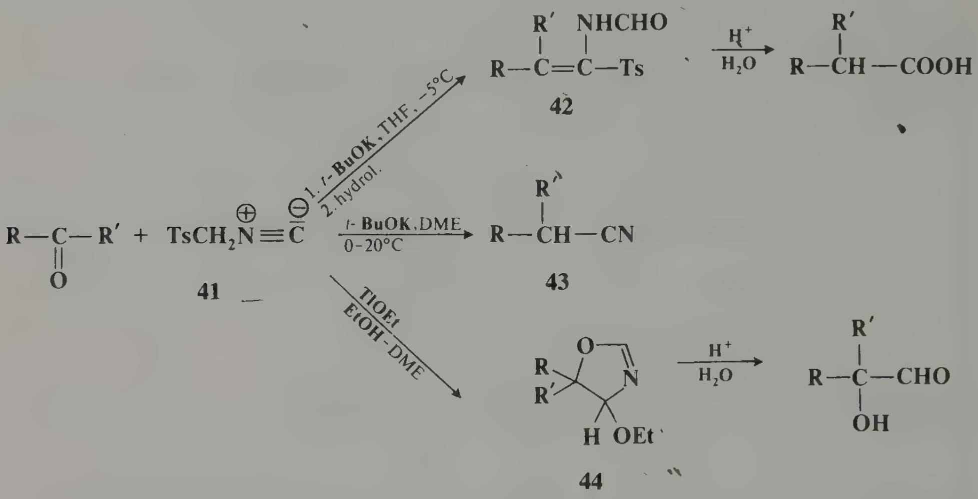
[435] For a convenient method of preparing α-lithiosilanes, see Cohen, Sherbine, Matz, Hutchins, McHenry, and Willey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc* .**106,** 3245 (1984). See also Seitz and Zapata, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3451 (1980).

[436] Hartzell, Sullivan, and Rathke, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1403 (1974); Shimoji, Taguchi, Oshima, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1620 (1974); Chan and Moreland, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 515 (1978). For similar reactions, see Chan, Chang, and Vinokur, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1137 (1970); Larchevêque and Debal, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 877 (1981).

[437] Ley and Simpkins, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1281 (1983).

[438] Cooke, Roy, and Magnus, *Organometallics* **1,** 893 (1982).

3. The reaction of ketones with tosylmethylisocyanide (**41**) gives different products,[439] depending on the reaction conditions. When the reaction is run with potassium *t*-butoxide in THF at −5°C,



one obtains (after hydrolysis) the normal Knoevenagel product **42,** except that the isonitrile group has been hydrated (**6-67**).[440] With the same base but with 1,2-dimethoxyethane (DME) as solvent the product is the nitrile **43.**[441] When the ketone is treated with **41** and thallium(I) ethoxide in a 4:1 mixture of absolute ethanol and DME at room temperature, the product is a 4-ethoxy-2-oxazoline **44.**[442] Since **43** can be hydrolyzed[443] to a carboxylic acid[440] and **44** to an α-hydroxy aldehyde,[442] this versatile reaction provides a means for achieving the conversion of RCOR′ to RCHR′COOH, RCHR′CN, or RCR′(OH)CHO. The conversions to RCHR′COOH[444] and to RCHR′CN[445] have also been carried out with certain aldehydes (R′ = H).

4. Aldehydes and ketones RCOR′ react with α-methoxyvinyllithium $CH_2=C(Li)OMe$ to give hydroxy enol ethers $RR'C(OH)C(OMe)=CH_2$, which are easily hydrolyzed to acyloins $RR'C(OH)COMe$.[446] In this reaction, the $CH_2=C(Li)OMe$ is a synthon for the unavailable $CH_3—C=O$ ion. The reagent also reacts with esters RCOOR′ to give $RC(OH)(COMe=CH_2)_2$. A synthon for the $Ph—\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}=O$ ion is $Ph\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}(CN)OSiMe_3$, which adds to aldehydes and ketones RCOR′ to give, after hydrolysis, the α-hydroxy ketones RR′C(OH)COPh.[447]

5. A procedure for converting an aldehyde or ketone RR′CO to the homologous aldehyde

---

[439] For reviews of α-metalated isocyanides, see Schöllkopf, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **51,** 1347–1355 (1979); *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 339–348 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 351–360]; Hoppe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 789–804 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 878–893].

[440] Schöllkopf, Schröder, and Blume, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **766,** 130 (1972); Schöllkopf and Schröder, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 311 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 289].

[441] Oldenziel, van Leusen, and van Leusen, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3114 (1977).

[442] Oldenziel and van Leusen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 163, 167 (1974).

[443] **42** can also be converted to a nitrile; see **7-41.**

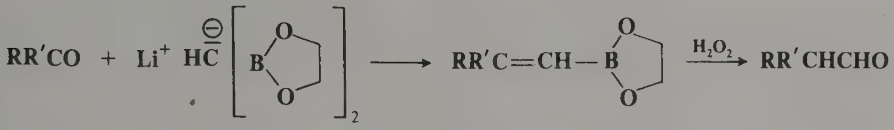
[444] For another method of achieving the conversion RCHO → RCH_2COOH, see Gross and Costisella, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 391 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 364].

[445] van Leusen and Oomkes, *Synth. Commun.* **10,** 399 (1980).

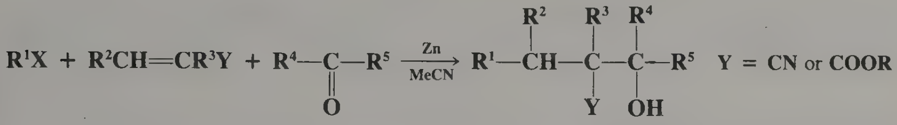
[446] Baldwin, Höfle, and Lever, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7125 (1974). For a similar reaction, see Tanaka, Nakai, and Ishikawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4809 (1978).

[447] Hünig and Wehner, *Synthesis* 391 (1975). For a similar reaction, see Reutrakul, Ratananukul, and Nimgirawath, *Chem. Lett.* 71 (1980).

RR′CHCHO consists of treating the substrate with lithium bis(ethylenedioxyboryl)methide, followed by oxidation with aqueous H_2O_2:[448]

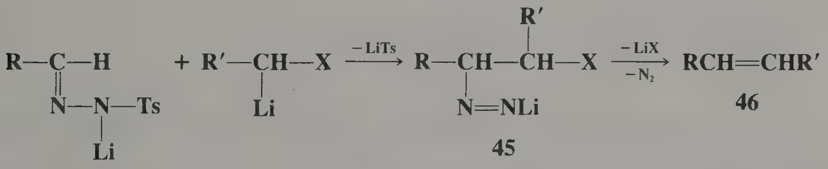


6. An α-CN or α-COOR unit can be added to aldehydes and ketones by treatment in one laboratory step with a primary or secondary halide R^1X, an activated olefin $R^2CH{=}CR^3Y$ (Y = CN or COOR) and zinc powder in MeCN.[449]



$$R^1X + R^2CH{=}CR^3Y + R^4{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R^5 \xrightarrow[MeCN]{Zn} R^1{-}\overset{\overset{R^2}{|}}{CH}{-}\overset{\overset{R^3}{|}}{\underset{\underset{Y}{|}}{C}}{-}\overset{\overset{R^4}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}{-}R^5 \quad Y = \text{CN or COOR}$$

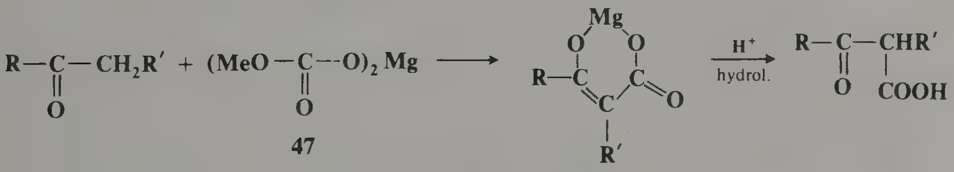
7. The lithium salt of an active hydrogen compound adds to the lithium salt of the tosylhydrazone of an aldehyde to give product **45.** If X = CN, SPh, or SO_2R, **45** spontaneously loses N_2 and LiX to give the alkene **46.** The entire process is done in one reaction vessel: The active hydrogen compound is mixed with the tosylhydrazone and the mixture is treated with $(i\text{-}Pr)_2NLi$ to form both salts at once.[450] This process is still another alternative to the Wittig reaction for forming double bonds.



45 **46**

OS **I,** 181, 290, 413; **II,** 202; **III,** 39, 165, 317, 320, 377, 385, 399, 416, 425, 456, 479, 513, 586, 591, 597, 715, 783; **IV,** 93, 210, 221, 234, 293, 327, 387, 392, 408, 441, 463, 471, 549, 573, 730, 731, 777; **V,** 130, 381, 572, 585, 627, 833, 1088, 1128; **50,** 36; **53,** 66; **54,** 19; **57,** 8; **59,** 1; **60,** 92. Also see OS **III,** 395; **V,** 450.

6-43 The Addition of Active Hydrogen Compounds to CO_2 and CS_2



47 **48**

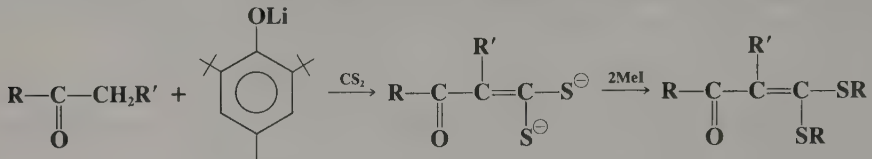
---

[448] Matteson and Moody, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1091 (1980). For another method of achieving this conversion, see Corey and Tius, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3535 (1980).

[449] Shono, Nishiguchi, and Sasaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4314 (1978).

[450] Vedejs, Dolphin, and Stolle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 249 (1979).

Ketones of the form $RCOCH_3$ and $RCOCH_2R'$ can be carboxylated indirectly by treatment with magnesium methyl carbonate **47.**[451] Because formation of the chelate **48** provides the driving force of the reaction, carboxylation cannot be achieved at a disubstituted α-position. The reaction has also been performed on CH_3NO_2 and compounds of the form RCH_2NO_2[452] and on certain lactones.[453] Direct carboxylation has been reported in a number of instances. Various ketones, esters, and other active hydrogen compounds have been carboxylated in the α position with the aid of phenolate bases ArONa, though yields are generally low.[454] Ketones have been carboxylated in the α position to give β-keto acids.[455] The base here was lithium 4-methyl-2,6-di-*t*-butylphenoxide (**49**). This base has also been used in the addition of ketones to CS_2 to give dianions (**50**), which are easily alkylated

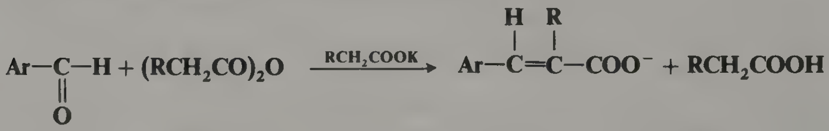


49 **50** **51**

to α-dithiomethylene ketones **51.**[456] Compounds of the form ZCH_2Z' also react with bases and CS_2 to give dianions analogous to **50.**[457]

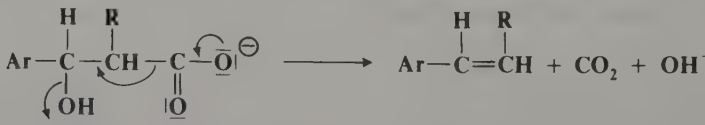
6-44 The Perkin Reaction

α-Carboxyalkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\mathrm{Ar{-}\underset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}{-}H + (RCH_2CO)_2O \xrightarrow{RCH_2COOK} Ar{-}\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}COO^- + RCH_2COOH}$$

The condensation of aromatic aldehydes with anhydrides is called the *Perkin reaction.*[458] When the anhydride has two α-hydrogens (as shown), dehydration always occurs; the β-hydroxy acid salt is never isolated. In some cases, anhydrides of the form $(R_2CHCO)_2O$ have been used, and then the hydroxy compound is the product since dehydration cannot take place. The base in the Perkin reaction is nearly always the sodium or potassium salt of the acid corresponding to the anhydride. Besides aromatic aldehydes, their vinylogs ArCH=CHCHO also give the reaction. Otherwise, the reaction is not suitable for aliphatic aldehydes.[459] There is a possible side reaction: decarboxylation of the initial β-hydroxy acid salt instead of simple dehydration. Sometimes this is the main reaction:



---

[451] Stiles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2598 (1959), *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* **88,** 332 (1960); Crombie, Hemesley, and Pattenden, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3021 (1968).

[452] Finkbeiner and Stiles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 616 (1963); Finkbeiner and Wagner, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 215 (1963).

[453] Martin, Watts, and Johnson, *Chem. Commun.* 27 (1970).

[454] Bottaccio, Marchi, and Chiusoli, *Gazz. Chim. Ital.* **107,** 499 (1977); Grochowski, Chmielewski, and Jurczak, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 876 (1977), and references cited in these papers.

[455] Corey and Chen, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4086 (1973).

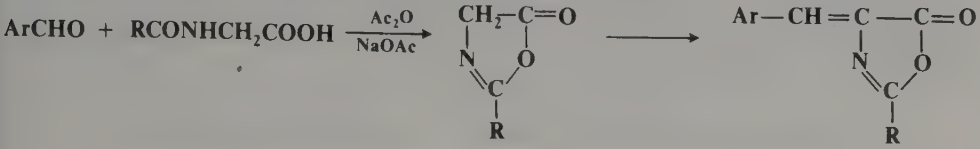
[456] Corey and Chen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3817 (1973).

[457] Jensen, Dalgaard, and Lawesson, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 2413 (1974); Konen, Pfeffer, and Silbert, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 2507 (1976), and references cited in these papers.

[458] For a review of the Perkin reaction and the related Erlenmeyer synthesis, see Johnson, *Org. React.* **1,** 210–266 (1942).

[459] Crawford and Little, *J. Chem. Soc.* 722 (1959).

An important variation of the Perkin reaction is the *Erlenmeyer azlactone synthesis.*[460] In this reaction aromatic aldehydes are condensed with N-acyl derivatives of glycine in the presence of acetic anhydride and sodium acetate. The product is an azlactone:



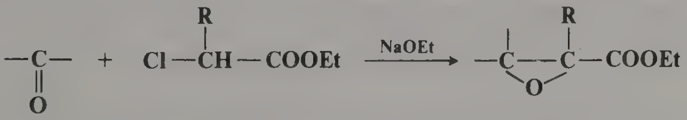
52

An azlactone

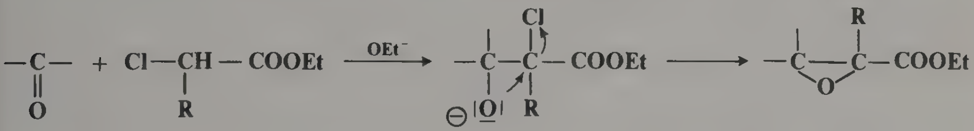
The intermediate **52** is formed first and then condenses with the aldehyde. When **52** was prepared independently, it reacted with aromatic aldehydes to give azlactones.[461] The Erlenmeyer reaction can be extended to aliphatic aldehydes by the use of THF as solvent and replacement of NaOAc by $Pb(OAc)_2$.[462]

OS **I,** 398; **II,** 1, 55, 61, 229, 489; **III,** 426. Also see OS **II,** 333, 519.

6-45 Darzen's Glycidic Ester Condensation



Aldehydes and ketones condense with α-halo esters in the presence of bases to give α,β-epoxy esters, called *glycidic esters.* This is called *Darzen's condensation.*[463] The reaction consists of an initial Knoevenagel-type condensation (**6-42**), followed by an internal SN2 reaction (**0-15**):[464]



Although the intermediate halo alkoxide is generally not isolated, it has been done, not only with α-fluoro esters (since fluorine is such a poor leaving group in nucleophilic substitutions) but also with α-chloro esters.[465] This is only one of several types of evidence that rule out a carbene intermediate.[466] Sodium ethoxide is often used as the base, although other bases, including sodium amide, are sometimes used. Aromatic aldehydes and ketones give good yields, but aliphatic aldehydes react poorly. However, the reaction can be made to give good yields (~80%) with simple aliphatic aldehydes as well as with aromatic aldehydes and ketones by treatment of the α-halo ester with the base lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide $LiN(SiMe_3)_2$ in tetrahydrofuran at −78°C (to form the conjugate base of the ester) and addition of the aldehyde or ketone to this solution.[467] If a preformed dianion of an α-halo carboxylic acid $\mathrm{Cl{-}\overset{\ominus}{C}R{-}COO^{\ominus}}$ is used instead, α,β-epoxy acids are produced directly.[468] The Darzen's reaction has also been carried out on α-halo ketones, α-halo nitriles,[469] α-halo sulfones,[470] α-halo N,N-disubstituted amides,[471] and even on allylic[472] and benzylic halides. Phase transfer catalysis has been used.[473] Aldehydes react with a dialkyltelluronium iodide to give α,β-unsaturated epoxides:[474]

---

[460] For reviews, see Ref. 459; Carter, *Org. React.* **3,** 198–239 (1946); Baltazzi, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **9,** 150–173 (1955).

[461] Crawford and Little, *J. Chem. Soc.* 729 (1959).

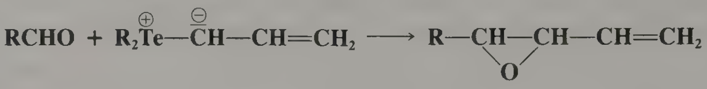
[462] Baltazzi and Robinson, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 191 (1954).

[463] For a review, see Berti, *Top. Stereochem.* **7,** 93–251 (1973), pp. 210–218.

[464] For discussions of the mechanism of the reaction, and especially of the stereochemistry, see Roux-Schmitt, Seyden-Penne, and Wolfe, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 4965 (1972); Bansal and Sethi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 1197 (1980).

[465] Ballester and Pérez-Blanco, *J. Org. Chem.* **23,** 652 (1958); Martynov and Titov, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **30,** 4072 (1960), **32,** 716 (1962), **33,** 1350 (1963), **34,** 2139 (1964); Elkik and Francesch, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1277, 1281 (1973).

[466] Another, based on the stereochemistry of the products, is described by Zimmerman and Ahramjian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5459 (1960).

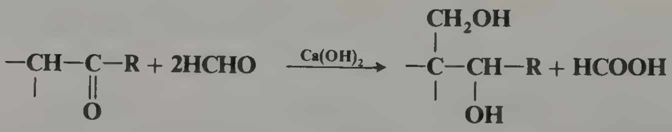


The mechanism is similar.

Glycidic esters can easily be converted to aldehydes (**2-39**). The reaction has been extended to the formation of analogous aziridines by treatment of an imine with an α-halo ester or an α-halo N,N-disubstituted amide and *t*-BuOK in the solvent 1,2-dimethoxyethane.[475] However, yields were not high. Acid-catalyzed Darzen's reactions have also been reported.[476] See also **6-63.**

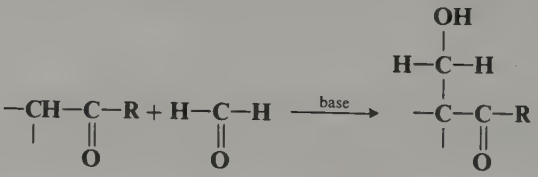
OS **III,** 727; **IV,** 459, 649.

6-46 Tollens' Reaction
***O*-Hydro-*C*-(β-hydroxyalkyl)-addition**



$$\mathrm{-\underset{|}{C}H-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-R + 2HCHO \xrightarrow{Ca(OH)_2} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{CH_2OH}{|}}{C}}-\underset{\overset{|}{OH}}{C}H-R + HCOOH}$$

In *Tollens' reaction* an aldehyde or ketone containing an α-hydrogen is treated with formaldehyde in the presence of $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$ or a similar base. The first step is a mixed aldol condensation (**6-40**), in which the α-carbon of the aldehyde or ketone adds to the carbonyl carbon of formaldehyde:



$$\mathrm{-\underset{|}{C}H-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-R + H-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-H \xrightarrow{base} -\underset{|}{\overset{\overset{\overset{\overset{OH}{|}}{H-C-H}}{|}}{C}}-\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{C}-R}$$

The reaction can be stopped at this point, but more often a second mole of formaldehyde is permitted to reduce the newly formed aldol to a 1,3-glycol, in a crossed Cannizzaro reaction (**9-70**). If the aldehyde or ketone has several α-hydrogens, they can all be replaced. An important use of the reaction is to prepare pentaerythritol from acetaldehyde:

---

[467] Borch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3761 (1972).

[468] Johnson and Bade, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1205 (1982).

[469] See White and Wu, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 988 (1974).

[470] Vogt and Tavares, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 2875 (1969).

[471] Tung, Speziale, and Frazier, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1514 (1963).

[472] Mauzé, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **170,** 265 (1979).

[473] See Jończyk, Kwast, and Makosza, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 902 (1977); Gladiali and Saccolini, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 355 (1982); Starks and Liotta, "Phase Transfer Catalysis," pp. 197–198, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[474] Osuka and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5109 (1983).

[475] Deyrup, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2724 (1969).

[476] Sipos, Schöbel, and Baláspiri, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1154 (1970); Sipos, Schöbel, and Sirokmán, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 805 (1975).

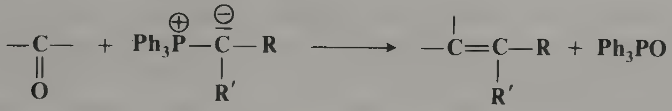
$$\text{CH}_3\text{CHO} + 4\text{HCHO} \longrightarrow \text{C(CH}_2\text{OH)}_4 + \text{HCOOH}$$

When aliphatic nitro compounds are used instead of aldehydes or ketones, no reduction occurs, and the reaction is essentially a Knoevenagel reaction, though it is usually also called a Tollens' reaction:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{NO}_2 + \text{HCHO} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-} \text{HOCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NO}_2$$

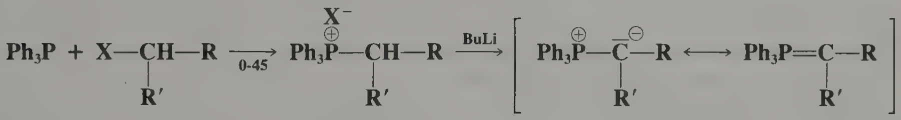
OS **I,** 425; **IV,** 907; **V,** 833.

6-47 The Wittig Reaction
Alkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\underset{\text{O}}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{-\text{C}-}}} + \text{Ph}_3\overset{\oplus}{\text{P}}-\underset{\text{R}'}{\underset{|}{\overset{\ominus}{\bar{\text{C}}}}}-\text{R} \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{\text{C}}=\underset{\text{R}'}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}-\text{R} + \text{Ph}_3\text{PO}$$

In the *Wittig reaction* an aldehyde or ketone is treated with a *phosphorus ylide* (also called a *phosphorane*) to give an olefin.[477] Phosphorus ylides, which are hybrids of two canonical forms, are usually prepared by treatment of a phosphonium salt with a base, and phosphonium salts are usually prepared from the phosphine and an alkyl halide (**0-45**):



$$\text{Ph}_3\text{P} + \text{X}-\underset{\text{R}'}{\underset{|}{\text{CH}}}-\text{R} \xrightarrow[\text{0-45}]{} \text{Ph}_3\overset{\overset{\text{X}^-}{\oplus}}{\text{P}}-\underset{\text{R}'}{\underset{|}{\text{CH}}}-\text{R} \xrightarrow{\text{BuLi}} \left[\text{Ph}_3\overset{\oplus}{\text{P}}-\underset{\text{R}'}{\underset{|}{\overset{\ominus}{\bar{\text{C}}}}}-\text{R} \longleftrightarrow \text{Ph}_3\text{P}=\underset{\text{R}'}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}-\text{R}\right]$$

Phosphonium salt

Ylide

The overall sequence of three steps may be called the Wittig reaction, or only the final step.[478] Phosphonium salts are also prepared by addition of phosphines to Michael olefins (like **5-8**) and in other ways. The phosphonium salts are most often converted to the ylides by treatment with a strong base such as butyllithium, sodium amide,[479] sodium hydride, or a sodium alkoxide, though weaker bases may be used if the salt is acidic enough. For $(\text{Ph}_3\text{P}^+)_2\text{CH}_2$, sodium carbonate is a strong enough base.[480] When the base used does not contain lithium, the ylide is said to be prepared under "salt-free" conditions.[481] The conversion of phosphonium salts to ylides is apparently a simple acid–base reaction (**2-19**), but, at least with alkyllithiums, it must be more complicated than that, since, in addition to a simple proton abstraction, exchange of groups can occur. Thus, $Ph_3\overset{\oplus}{P}CH_3\ Br^-$ with methyllithium gave 26% *benzene*.[482] It is likely that an intermediate Ph_3PMe_2 was formed, which lost either methane or benzene to give an ylide.

---

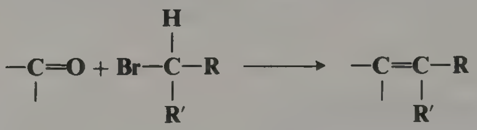
[477] For a general treatise, see Cadogan, "Organophosphorus Reagents in Organic Synthesis," Academic Press, New York, 1979. For a monograph on the Wittig reaction, see Johnson, "Ylid Chemistry," Academic Press, New York, 1966. For reviews, see Bestmann and Vostrowsky, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **109,** 85–164 (1983); Pommer and Thieme, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **109,** 165–188 (1983); Pommer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 423–429 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 437–443]; Maercker, *Org. React.* **14,** 270–490 (1965); House, Ref. 158, pp. 682–709; Lowe, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1070–1079 (1970); Bergelson and Shemyakin, in Patai, Ref. 355, pp. 295–340, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 250–260 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 113–123], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **5,** 154–175 (1968), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 271–283 (1964); Trippett, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **17,** 406–440 (1963), *Adv. Org. Chem.* **1,** 83–102 (1960), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 255–269 (1964); Schöllkopf, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **3**, 111–150 (1964); Yanovskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **30,** 347–362 (1961). For related reviews, see Tyuleneva, Rokhlin, and Knunyants, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 280–290 (1981); Starks and Liotta, Ref. 473, pp. 288–297; Weber and Gokel, "Phase Transfer Catalysis in Organic Synthesis," pp. 234–241, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1977; Zbiral, *Synthesis* 775–797 (1974); Bestmann, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1619–1634 (1971), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 583–587, 645–660, 830–838 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 609–613, 651–666, 850–858], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **5,** 1–60 (1968); Horner, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **7,** 1–61 (1966). For a historical background, see Wittig, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 245–254 (1964).

[478] When phosphonium *fluorides* are used, no base is necessary, as these react directly with the substrate to give the olefin· Schiemenz, Becker, and Stöckigt, *Chem. Ber.* **103,** 2077 (1970).

[479] For a convenient method of doing this that results in high yields, see Schlosser and Schaub, *Chimia* **36,** 396 (1982).

[480] Ramirez, Pilot, Desai, Smith, Hansen, and McKelvie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6273 (1967).

In the overall Wittig reaction, an olefin is formed from the aldehyde or ketone and an alkyl halide in which the halogen-bearing carbon contains at least one hydrogen:

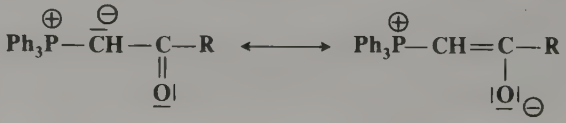


$$-\underset{|}{C}=O + Br-\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{\overset{\overset{H}{|}}{C}}-R \longrightarrow -\underset{|}{C}=\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{C}-R$$

This result is similar to that obtained in the Reformatsky reaction (**6-31**), but this is more general since no ester or other group is required to be α to the halogen. Another important advantage of the Wittig reaction is that the *position* of the new double bond is always certain, in contrast to the result in the Reformatsky reaction and in most of the base-catalyzed condensations (**6-40** to **6-46**). Examples of this are given below.

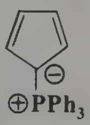
The reaction is very general. The aldehyde or ketone may be aliphatic, alicyclic, or aromatic (including diaryl ketones); it may contain double or triple bonds; it may contain various functional groups, such as OH, OR, NR_2, aromatic nitro or halo, acetal, or even ester groups.[483] Double or triple bonds *conjugated* with the carbonyl also do not interfere, the attack being at the C=O carbon. In some cases enolization of the aldehyde or ketone is a side reaction that decreases the yield. This can be avoided by repeated addition of stoichiometric amounts of water and the ylide.[484]

The phosphorus ylide may also contain double or triple bonds and certain functional groups. Simple ylides (R, R′ = hydrogen or alkyl) are highly reactive, reacting with oxygen, water, hydrohalic acids, and alcohols, as well as carbonyl compounds and esters, so that the reaction must be run under conditions where these materials are absent. When an electron-withdrawing group, e.g., COR, CN, COOR, CHO, is present in the α position, the ylides are much more stable. The stability is increased because the charge on the carbon is spread by resonance:



$$Ph_3\overset{\oplus}{P}-\overset{\ominus}{C}H-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R \longleftrightarrow Ph_3\overset{\oplus}{P}-CH=\underset{\underset{O^{\ominus}}{|}}{C}-R$$

These ylides react readily with aldehydes, but slowly or not at all with ketones. In extreme cases, e.g., compound **53**, the ylide does not react with ketones *or* aldehydes. Besides these groups, the



53

---

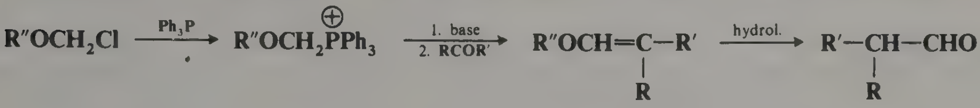
[481] Bestmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** p. 586 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** p. 612].

[482] Seyferth, Hughes, and Heeren, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2847, 3467 (1965).

[483] Although phosphorus ylides also react with esters, that reaction is too slow to interfere: Greenwald, Chaykovsky, and Corey, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1128 (1963).

[484] Adlercreutz and Magnusson, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **34,** 647 (1980).

ylide may contain one or two α-halogens[485] or an α-OR or α-OAr group. In the latter case the product is an enol ether, which can be hydrolyzed (**0-7**) to an aldehyde,[486] so that this reaction is

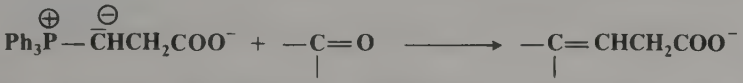


$$R''OCH_2Cl \xrightarrow{Ph_3P} R''OCH_2\overset{\oplus}{P}Ph_3 \xrightarrow[2.\ RCOR']{1.\ base} R''OCH{=}\underset{\displaystyle R}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}R' \xrightarrow{hydrol.} R'{-}\underset{\displaystyle R}{\underset{|}{CH}}{-}CHO$$

a means of achieving the conversion RCOR′ → RR′CHCHO. However, the ylide may not contain an α-nitro group. If the phosphonium salt contains a potential leaving group, such as Br or OMe, in the β position, treatment with a base gives elimination, instead of the ylide:

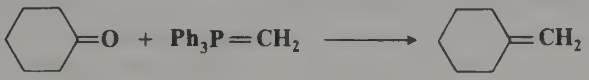
$$Ph_3\overset{\oplus}{P}CH_2CH_2Br \xrightarrow{base} Ph_3\overset{\oplus}{P}CH{=}CH_2$$

However, a β-COO⁻ group may be present, and the product is a β,γ-unsaturated acid:[487]

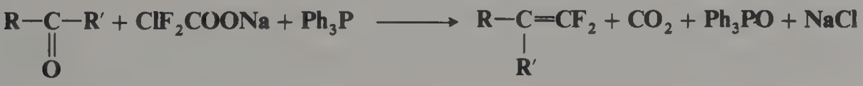


$$Ph_3\overset{\oplus}{P}{-}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}HCH_2COO^- + {-}\underset{|}{C}{=}O \longrightarrow {-}\underset{|}{C}{=}CHCH_2COO^-$$

This is the only convenient way to make these compounds, since elimination by any other route gives the thermodynamically more stable α,β-unsaturated isomers. This is an illustration of the utility of the Wittig method for the specific location of a double bond. Another illustration is the conversion of cyclohexanones to olefins containing exocyclic double bonds, e.g.,[488]



This is the only general method for the synthesis of these compounds. Still another example is the easy formation of anti-Bredt bicycloalkenones[489] (see p. 138). As indicated above, α,α′-dihalophosphoranes can be used to prepare 1,1-dihaloalkenes. Another way to prepare such compounds is to treat the carbonyl compound with a mixture of CBr_4 (or CCl_4) and triphenylphosphine, either with or without the addition of zinc dust (which allows less Ph_3P to be used).[490] Aldehydes and ketones can be converted to 1,1-difluoroalkenes by treatment with a salt of chlorodifluoroacetic acid in the presence of triphenylphosphine:[491]



$$R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}R' + ClF_2COONa + Ph_3P \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\displaystyle R'}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CF_2 + CO_2 + Ph_3PO + NaCl$$

---

[485] Seyferth, Grim, and Read, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1510 (1960), **83,** 1617 (1961); Seyferth, Heeren, Singh, Grim, and Hughes, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **5,** 267 (1966); Schlosser and Zimmermann, *Synthesis* 75 (1969); Burton and Greenlimb, *J. Fluorine Chem.* **3,** 447 (1974); Smithers, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2833 (1978); Miyano, Izumi, Fujii, Ohno, and Hashimoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 1197 (1979).

[486] For example, see Levine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6150 (1958); Wittig, Böll, and Krück, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 2514 (1962). For a similar example with a thioether, see Corey and Shulman, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 777 (1970); see also Corey and Märkl, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3201 (1967).

[487] Corey, McCormick, and Swensen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1884 (1964).

[488] Wittig and Schöllkopf, *Chem. Ber.* **87,** 1318 (1954).

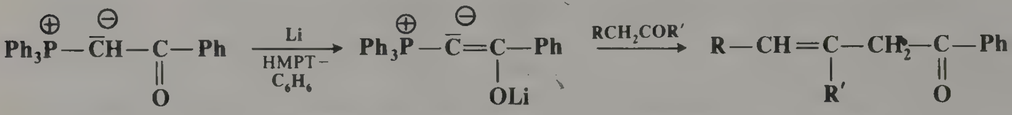
[489] Bestmann and Schade, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3543 (1982).

[490] Rabinowitz and Marcus. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1312 (1962); Ramirez, Desai, and McKelvie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1745 (1962); Raulet and Levas, *C. R. Acad. Sci., Ser. C* **270,** 1467 (1970); Corey and Fuchs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3769 (1972); Posner, Loomis and Sawaya, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1373 (1975); Bestmann and Frey, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 2061 (1980); Suda and Fukushima, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 759 (1981).

[491] Fuqua, Duncan, and Silverstein, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1027, 2543 (1965).

The Wittig reaction has been carried out with polymer-supported ylides[492] (see p. 373).

When the phosphorane **54** is treated with lithium in HMPT–benzene, a second proton is removed to give the enolate ylide **55.** This ylide reacts with ketones of the form RCH$_2$COR′ to give the

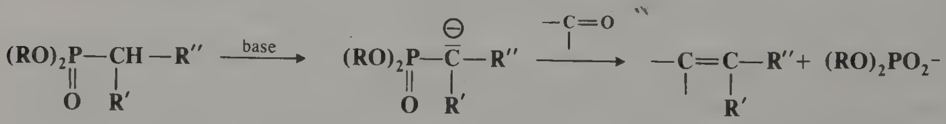


$$\overset{\oplus}{Ph_3P}-\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}H}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Ph \xrightarrow[\text{HMPT}-C_6H_6]{Li} \overset{\oplus}{Ph_3P}-\overset{\ominus}{\overline{C}}=\underset{\underset{OLi}{|}}{C}-Ph \xrightarrow{RCH_2COR'} R-CH=\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{C}-CH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Ph$$

54 **55** **56**

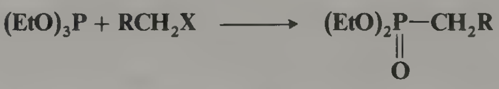
nonconjugated β,γ-unsaturated ketones **56.**[493] As mentioned above, ylides of the type **54** are too unreactive to react with the ketones themselves, but if **54** did react directly with RCH$_2$COR′, the normal Wittig product would be the α,β-unsaturated ketone RCH$_2$CR′=CHCOPh.

Ylides are usually prepared from triphenylphosphine, but other triarylphosphines,[494] trialkylphosphines,[495] and triphenylarsine have also been used. The Wittig reaction has also been carried out with other types of ylides, the most important being prepared from phosphonates:[496]



$$(RO)_2\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{P}-\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{CH}-R'' \xrightarrow{\text{base}} (RO)_2\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{P}-\overset{\ominus}{\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{\overline{C}}}-R'' \xrightarrow{\underset{|}{-C=O}} -\underset{|}{C}=\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{C}-R'' + (RO)_2PO_2^-$$

This method, sometimes called the *Horner–Emmons* or *Wadsworth–Emmons reaction,*[497] has several advantages over the use of phosphoranes. These ylides are more reactive than the corresponding phosphoranes, and when R′ is an electron-withdrawing group, these compounds often react with ketones that are inert to phosphoranes. In addition, the phosphorus product is a phosphate ester and hence soluble in water, unlike Ph$_3$PO, which makes it easy to separate it from the olefin product. Phosphonates are also cheaper than phosphonium salts and can easily be prepared by the *Arbuzov reaction:*[498]



$$(EtO)_3P + RCH_2X \longrightarrow (EtO)_2\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{P}-CH_2R$$

Ylides formed from $Ar_2\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{P}CHRR'$, phosphonic acid bisamides (R$_2''$N)$_2$POCHRR′,[499] and alkyl phosphonothionates (MeO)$_2$PSCHRR′[500] share some of these advantages. Phosphonates Ph$_2$POCH$_2$NR$^1_2$ react with aldehydes or ketones R^{2}COR^3 to give good yields of enamines R^{2}R^{3}C=CHNR$^1_2$.[501]

---

[492] Bernard, Ford, and Nelson, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3164 (1983).

[493] Broquet, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 3595 (1973), **31,** 1331 (1975).

[494] Schiemenz and Thobe, *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 2663 (1966).

[495] For example, see Johnson and LaCount, *Tetrahedron* **9,** 130 (1960); Bestmann and Kratzer, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 1894 (1962).

[496] Horner, Hoffmann, and Wippel, *Chem. Ber.* **91,** 61 (1958); Horner, Hoffmann, Wippel, and Klahre, *Chem. Ber.* **92,** 2499 (1959); Wadsworth and Emmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1733 (1961).

[497] For reviews, see Wadsworth, *Org. React.* **25,** 73–253 (1977); Stec, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 411–417 (1983); Walker, in Cadogan, Ref. 477, pp. 156–205; Dombrovskii and Dombrovskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 733–741 (1966); Boutagy and Thomas, *Chem. Rev.* **74,** 87–99 (1974).

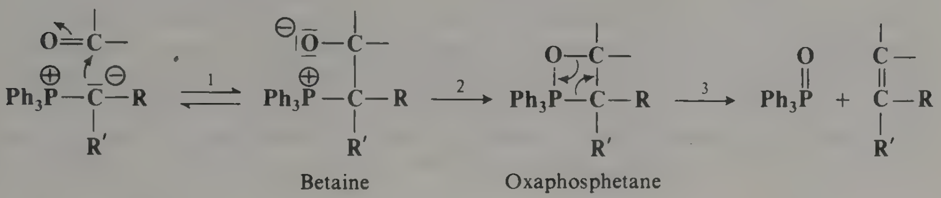
[498] For a review of the Arbuzov reaction, see Arbuzov, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 307–335 (1964).

[499] Corey and Kwiatkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6816 (1968); Corey and Cane, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3053 (1969).

[500] Corey and Kwiatkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5654 (1966).

[501] Broekhof, Jonkers, and van der Gen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2671 (1980).

The mechanism[502] of the key step[503] of the Wittig reaction consists of at least two, and perhaps three steps:



Step 1 may or may not be an equilibrium reaction. Steps 2 and 3 constitute an elimination of Ph_3PO (see **7-23**) and may be simultaneous.[504] Either step 1 or steps 2–3 may be rate-determining. Step 1 has been shown to be reversible for stable ylides (those containing COR, CN, etc. groups) by the preparation in another way of the betaine and the demonstration that the ylide can be prepared from it.[505] With unstable ylides it has been suggested[506] that steps 1 and 2 may be simultaneous[507] (so that the betaine is not an intermediate). Evidence for this is that ^{31}P nmr spectra taken of the reaction mixture at low temperatures are compatible with an oxaphosphetane structure that persists for some time but not with a tetracoordinated phosphorus species. Since a betaine, an ylide, and a phosphine oxide all have tetracoordinated phosphorus, these species could not be causing the spectra, leading to the conclusion that an oxaphosphetane intermediate is present in the solution.[508] Under these conditions, steps 1 and 2 are obviously fast and step 3 rate-determining. According to any of these mechanisms, an optically active phosphonium salt $RR'R''\overset{\oplus}{P}CHR_2$ should retain its configuration all the way through the reaction, and it should be preserved in the phosphine oxide $RR'R''PO$. This has been shown to be the case.[509]

When ylides of the form $Ph_3P{=}CHR$ undergo the Wittig reaction in protic solvents, a different mechanism may compete with the one shown above, depending on the structure of the reactants and the reaction conditions. This mechanism involves protonation of the betaine and cleavage of the resulting β-hydroxy phosphonium salt.[510]

In reactions in which there is a betaine intermediate, we may examine the question of when step 1 is faster than steps 2–3 and vice versa. We have already seen that the ylide is increased in stability (and decreased in reactivity) by the presence of electron-withdrawing groups on the carbon. Another factor is the presence of electron-donating groups on the phosphorus. These groups stabilize the ylide canonical form (of the resonance hybrid) at the expense of the C=P form by decreasing the positive charge on the phosphorus. This increases the reactivity of the ylide and explains, for example, why trialkyl phosphorus ylides are more reactive than the triaryl variety. On the other hand, once the betaine is formed, these factors work in precisely the opposite direction. Electron-withdrawing groups on the carbon increase the reactivity of the betaine because they stabilize (by conjugation) the newly forming double bond; and electron-donating substituents on the phosphorus decrease the reactivity of the betaine since they decrease the positive charge on the phosphorus and make it less attractive to the negative oxygen. We see from all this that with ylides containing electron-donating groups on the phosphorus, the first step will be faster than the subsequent ones. In some cases, indeed, it has proved possible to isolate the betaine, an example being **57**.[511] However,

---

[502] It has been contended that another mechanism, involving single electron transfer, may be taking place in some cases, at least as a competing pathway: Olah and Krishnamurthy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 3987 (1982).

[503] It has been proposed that step 3 consists of two steps: cleavage of the C—P bond to give a different type of betaine, followed by cleavage of the C—O bond: Bestmann, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 771–788 (1980).

[504] For a review of the mechanism, see Cockerill and Harrison, Ref. 181, pp. 232–240.

[505] Speziale and Bissing, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3878 (1963). However, this interpretation has been challenged: see Nesmayanov, Binshtok, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **210,** 499 (1973).

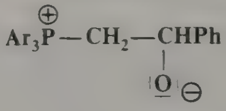
[506] Vedejs and Snoble, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5778 (1973); Vedejs, Meier, and Snoble, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2823 (1981).

[507] Such a mechanism has been suggested for stable ylides as well: Nesmeyanov, Binshtok, and Reutov, Ref. 505.

[508] In certain cases, oxaphosphetanes have been isolated: Birum and Matthews, *Chem. Commun.* 137 (1967); Mazhar-Ul-Haque, Caughlan, Ramirez, Pilot, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5229 (1971). See also Schlosser, Piskala, Tarchini, and Tuong, *Chimia* **29,** 341 (1975); Reitz, Mutter, and Maryanoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1873 (1984).

[509] McEwen, Kumli, Blade-Font, Zanger, and VanderWerf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2378 (1964).

[510] Schweizer, Crouse, Minami, and Wehman, *Chem. Commun.* 1000 (1971); Richards and Tebby, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1059 (1971); Smith and Trippett, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 191 (1972); Allen, Heatley, Hutley, and Mellor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2529 (1976).

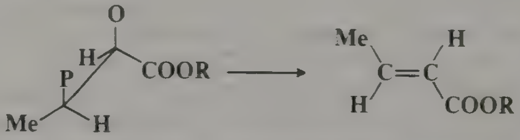


$$Ar_3\overset{\oplus}{P}-CH_2-\underset{O^{\ominus}}{\underset{|}{CH}}Ph \qquad Ar = p\text{-}MeOC_6H_4$$

57

if there are electron-withdrawing groups on the carbon, the first step will be slower than the subsequent ones and it should be much more difficult to isolate the betaine. Up to now, no such betaine has been isolated.

These considerations make possible at least some conclusions about the stereochemistry of the reaction.[512] If the betaine has two chiral carbons, there are two diastereomeric *dl* pairs. In cases where betaine formation is reversible, the thermodynamically more stable diastereomer will be predominantly formed before elimination (a syn process, in this case) occurs, and this diastereomer will normally give the trans olefin:



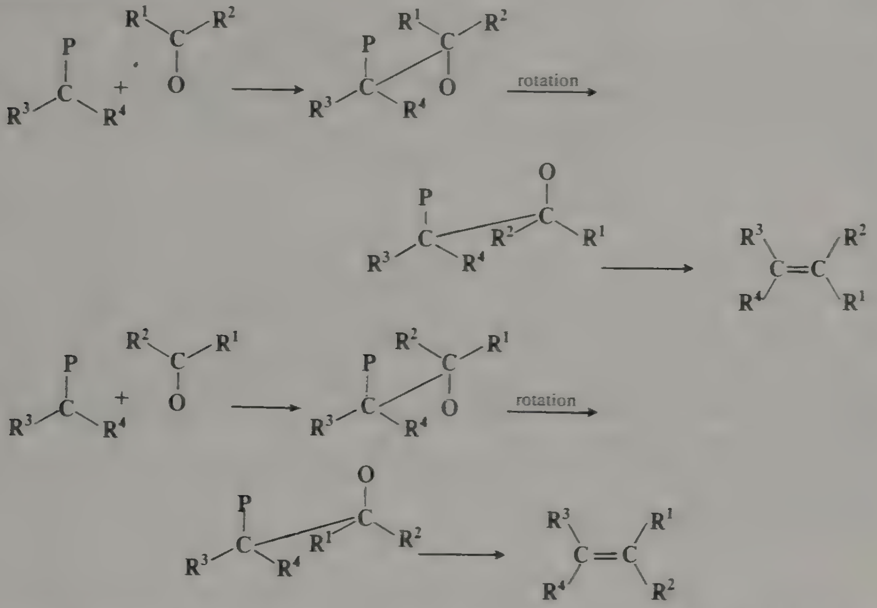
Indeed, it is generally found that ylides containing stabilizing groups or formed from trialkylphosphines give trans olefins.[513] However, ylides formed from triarylphosphines and not containing stabilizing groups often give cis or a mixture of cis and trans olefins.[513] One explanation for this[506] is based on the suggestion, mentioned earlier, that in these cases steps 1 and 2 of the mechanism are simultaneous. If this is so, the reaction of the ylide with the carbonyl compound is a 2 + 2 cycloaddition, which in order to be concerted must adopt the $[_{\pi}2_s + _{\pi}2_a]$ pathway. As we have seen earlier (p. 762), this pathway leads to the formation of the more sterically crowded product, in this case the cis olefin. It is also possible to explain the formation of cis olefins and cis–trans mixtures, even in reactions in which there is a betaine intermediate, if we assume that in cases where such products are formed, step 1 is irreversible. In such cases, which diastereomer forms is determined by the way the ylide and carbonyl compound line up. Once the betaine is formed, the stereochemistry of the olefin is determined by the fact that elimination is syn. The two possibilities can be shown:

---

[511] Wittig, Weigmann, and Schlosser, *Chem. Ber.* **94**, 676 (1961). See also Schlosser, Tuong, and Tarchini, *Chimia*, **31**, 219 (1977); Schlosser and Tuong, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18**, 633 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91**, 675]; Allen, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 384 (1980).

[512] For reviews of the stereochemistry of the Wittig reaction, see Gosney and Rowley, in Cadogan, Ref. 477, pp. 17–153; Reucroft and Sammes, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **25**, 135–169 (1971), pp. 137–148, 169; Schlosser, *Top. Stereochem.* **5**, 1–30 (1970). Also see Bergelson and Shemyakin, *Tetrahedron* **19**, 149 (1963); House, Jones, and Frank, *J. Org. Chem.* **29**, 3327 (1964); Wadsworth, Schupp, Seus, and Ford, *J. Org. Chem.* **30**, 680 (1965); Schlosser, Müller, and Christmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5**, 667 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78**, 677]; Bergelson, Barsukov, and Shemyakin, *Tetrahedron* **23**, 2709 (1967); Boden, *Synthesis* 784 (1975); Maryanoff and Duhl-Emswiler, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22**, 4185 (1981); Buss, Cruse, Kennard, and Warren, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 243 (1984).

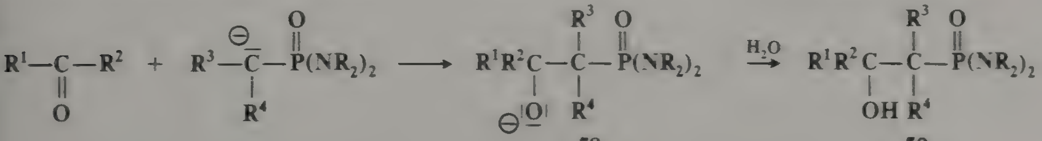
[513] See, for example, Ketcham, Jambotkar, and Martinelli, *J. Org. Chem.* **27**, 4666 (1962); House and Rasmusson, *J. Org. Chem.* **26**, 4278 (1961); Bestmann and Kratzer, Ref. 495; Yanovskaya and Kucherov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1252 (1964).



The natural preference seems to be for the ylide and carbonyl compound to line up in such a way as to give the cis isomers ultimately, probably because the three aryl groups on the phosphorus cause steric hindrance.[514] It is also possible that cis isomers are not formed by the betaine pathway at all, but only by the $[_{\pi}2_s + {}_{\pi}2_a]$ route.

The cis–trans ratio of the product can often be changed by a change in solvent or by the addition of salts. It has been found possible to control the reaction so that either the cis or the trans olefin is the main product.

Another way of controlling the stereochemistry of the product is by use of the aforementioned phosphonic acid bisamides. In this case the betaine (**58**) does not undergo spontaneous elimination



58 **59**

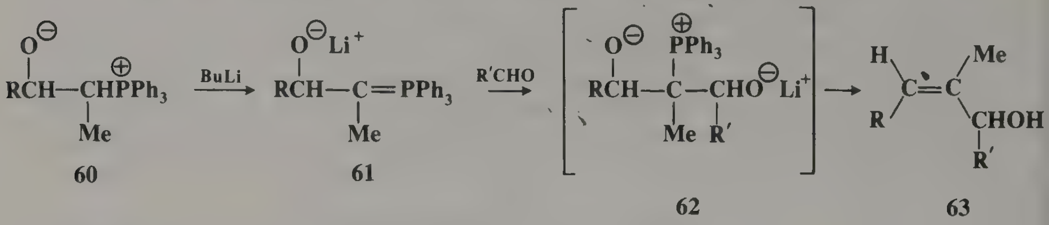
$$R^1-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-R^2 + R^3-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle R^4}{|}}{\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}}-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{P}(NR_2)_2 \longrightarrow R^1R^2\underset{\underset{\displaystyle \ominus|\underline{\bar{O}}|}{|}}{C}-\overset{\displaystyle R^3}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle R^4}{|}}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{P}(NR_2)_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} R^1R^2\underset{\underset{\displaystyle OH}{|}}{C}-\overset{\displaystyle R^3}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle R^4}{|}}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{P}(NR_2)_2$$

but when treated with water gives the β-hydroxyphosphonic acid bisamides **59**, which can be crystallized and then cleaved to $R^1R^2C{=}CR^3R^4$ by refluxing in benzene or toluene in the presence of silica gel.[499] **59** are generally formed as mixtures of diastereomers, and these mixtures can be separated by recrystallization. Cleavage of the two diastereomers gives the two isomeric olefins.

In reactions where the betaine intermediate is present in the solution, it is possible to extend the chain further if a hydrogen is present α to the phosphorus. For example, reaction of ethylidenetriphenylphosphorane with heptanal at −78°C gave the betaine **60**, which with butyllithium gave the ylide **61**. Treatment of this with an aldehyde R′CHO gave the intermediate **62**, which

---

[514] Schlosser and Schaub, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 5821 (1982); See also McEwen and Cooney, *J. Org. Chem.* **48**, 983 (1983).

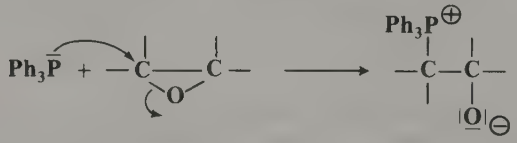


60 **61** **62** **63**

R = n-C_6H_{13}

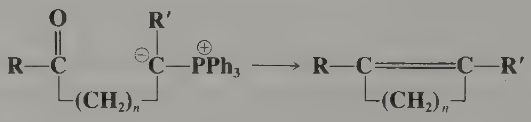
after workup gave **63**.[515] This reaction gives the unsaturated alcohols **63** stereoselectively. **61** also reacts with other electrophiles. For example, treatment of **61** with N-chlorosuccinimide or $PhICl_2$ gives the vinyl chloride RCH═CMeCl stereoselectively: NCS giving the cis and $PhICl_2$ the trans isomer.[516] The use of Br_2 and $FClO_3$ gives the corresponding bromides and fluorides, respectively.[517] Reactions of **61** with electrophiles have been called *scoopy* reactions (α-substitution plus carbonyl olefination via β-oxido phosphorus ylides).[518]

The betaine can be formed in a completely different manner, by nucleophilic substitution by a phosphine on an epoxide (**0-51**):

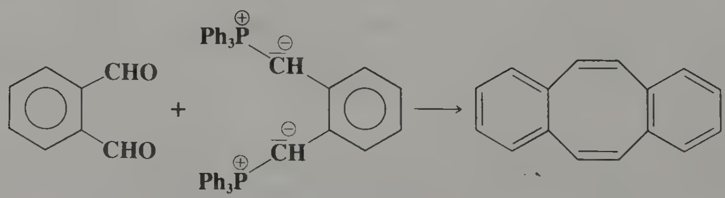


The betaine formed in this way, of course, can then be converted to the olefin.

The Wittig reaction has been carried out intramolecularly, to prepare rings containing from 5 to 16 carbons,[519] both by single ring closure



and double ring closure.[520]



---

[515] Corey and Yamamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 226 (1970); Schlosser, Christmann, Piskala, and Coffinet, *Synthesis* 29 (1971); Schlosser and Coffinet, *Synthesis* 380 (1971), 575 (1972); Corey, Ulrich, and Venkateswarlu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3231 (1977); Schlosser, Tuong, Respondek, and Schaub, *Chimia* **37,** 10 (1983).

[516] Schlosser and Christmann, *Synthesis* 38 (1969); Corey, Shulman, and Yamamoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 447 (1970).

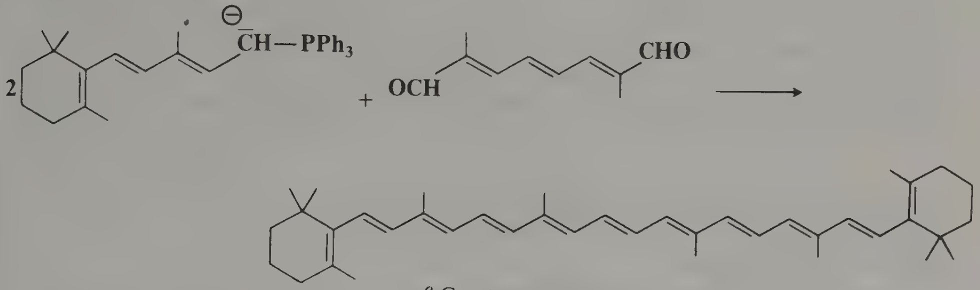
[517] Schlosser and Christmann, Ref. 516.

[518] Schlosser, Ref. 512, p. 22.

[519] For a review, see Becker, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1717–1745 (1980).

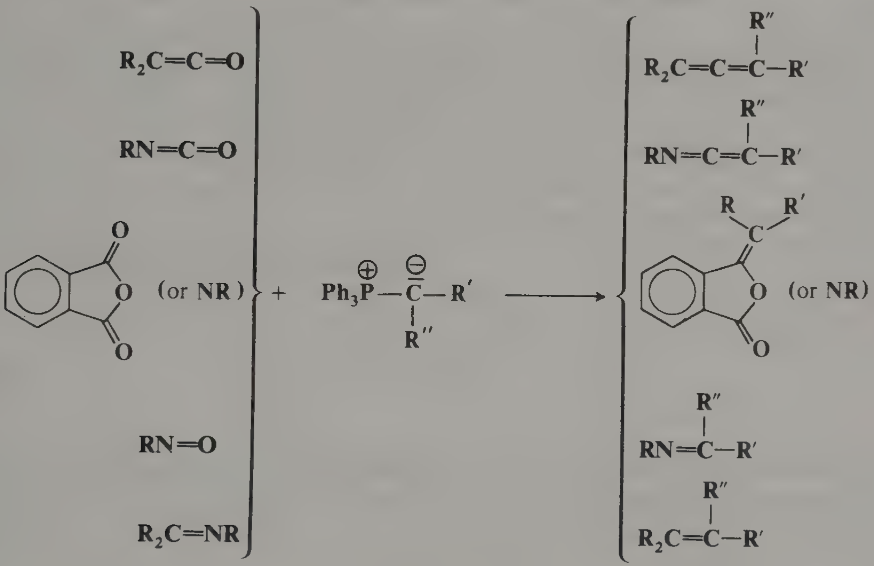
[520] For a review of these double ring closures, see Vollhardt, *Synthesis* 765–780 (1975).

The Wittig reaction has proved very useful in the synthesis of natural products, some of which are quite difficult to prepare in other ways.[520a] One example out of many is the synthesis of β-carotene:[521]



β-Carotene

Phosphorus ylides also react in a similar manner with the C=O bonds of ketenes,[522] isocyanates,[523] and certain[524] anhydrides and imides, the N=O of nitroso groups, and the C=N of imines.[525]



Phosphorus ylides react with carbon dioxide to give the isolable salts **64**,[526] which can be hydrolyzed to the carboxylic acids **65** (thus achieving the conversion RR′CHX → RR′CHCOOH) or (if neither

---

[520a] For a review of applications of the Wittig reaction to the synthesis of natural products, see Bestmann and Vostrowsky, Ref. 477.

[521] Wittig and Pommer, German patent 954,247 (1956), *CA* **53,** 2279 (1959).

[522] For example, see Aksnes and Frøyen, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **22,** 2347 (1968).

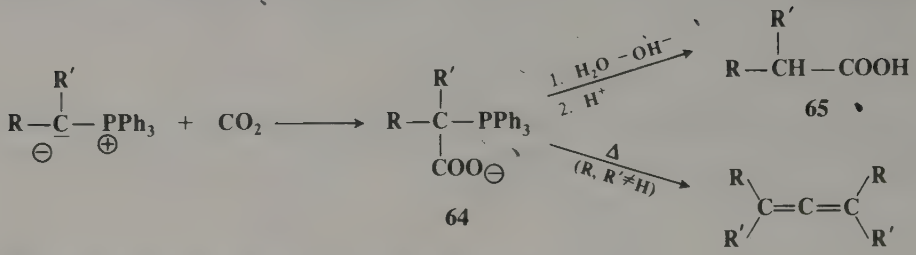
[523] For example, see Frøyen, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **28,** 586 (1974).

[524] For example, see Chopard, Hudson, and Searle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2357 (1965); Flitsch and Peters, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1161 (1969); Gara, Massy-Westropp, and Reynolds, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4171 (1969); Abell and Massy-Westropp, *Aust. J. Chem.* **35,** 2077 (1982). For a review with respect to imides, see Flitsch and Schindler, *Synthesis* 685–700 (1975).

[525] Bestmann and Seng, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 1373 (1965).

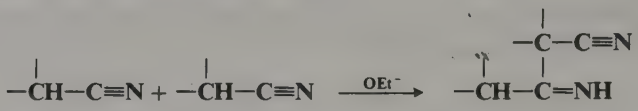
[526] Bestmann, Denzel, and Salbaum, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1275 (1974).

R nor R′ is hydrogen) dimerized to allenes.



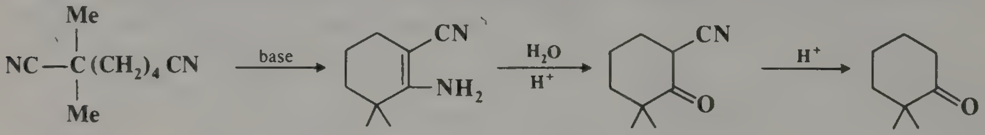
OS **V,** 361, 390, 499, 509, 547, 751, 949, 985; **53,** 104.

6-48 The Thorpe Reaction
***N*-Hydro-*C*-(α-cyanoalkyl)-addition**



$$-\overset{|}{C}H-C\equiv N + -\overset{|}{C}H-C\equiv N \xrightarrow{OEt^-} -\overset{|}{C}H-\overset{\overset{|}{-C-C\equiv N}}{\overset{|}{C}}=NH$$

In the *Thorpe reaction,* the α-carbon of one nitrile molecule is added to the CN carbon of another, so that this reaction is analogous to the aldol condensation (**6-40**). The C=NH bond is, of course, hydrolyzable (**6-2**), so that β-keto nitriles can be prepared in this manner. The Thorpe reaction can be done internally, in which case it is called the *Thorpe–Ziegler reaction.*[527] This is a useful method for closing large rings. Yields are high for five- to eight-membered rings, fall off to about zero for rings of nine to thirteen members, but are high again for fourteen-membered and larger rings, if high-dilution techniques are employed. The product in the Thorpe–Ziegler reaction is not the imine, but the tautomeric enamine, e.g., **66;** if desired this can be hydrolyzed to an α-cyano ketone (**6-2**), which can in turn be hydrolyzed and decarboxylated (**6-5, 2-39**). Other active compounds can also be added to nitriles.[528]

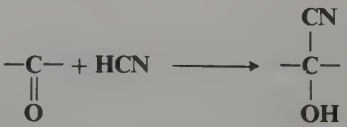


66

OS **53,** 98.

J. Other Carbon Nucleophiles

6-49 The Formation of Cyanohydrins
***O*-Hydro-*C*-cyano-addition**

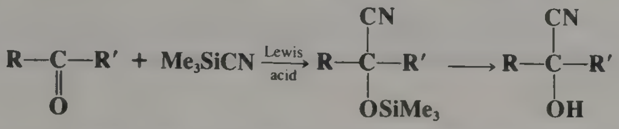


$$-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- + HCN \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{CN}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}-$$

[527] For a monograph, see Taylor and McKillop, "The Chemistry of Cyclic Enaminonitriles and *ortho*-Amino Nitriles," Interscience, New York, 1970. For a review, see Schaefer and Bloomfield, *Org. React.* **15,** 1–203 (1967).

[528] See for example, Josey, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 707 (1964); Barluenga, Fustero, Rubio, and Gotor, *Synthesis* 780 (1977); Hiyama and Kobayashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1597 (1982).

The addition of HCN to aldehydes or ketones produces cyanohydrins.[529] This is an equilibrium reaction. For aldehydes and aliphatic ketones the equilibrium lies to the right; therefore the reaction is quite feasible, except with sterically hindered ketones such as diisopropyl ketone. However, ketones ArCOR give poor yields, and the reaction cannot be carried out with ArCOAr since the equilibrium is too far to the left. With aromatic aldehydes the benzoin condensation (**6-55**) competes. With α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones, 1,4 addition competes (reaction **5-25**). Ketones of low reactivity, such as ArCOR, can be converted to cyanohydrins by treatment with diethylaluminum cyanide Et_2AlCN (see OS **52,** 96) or, indirectly, with cyanotrimethylsilane Me_3SiCN in the presence of a Lewis acid,[530] followed by hydrolysis of the resulting O-trimethylsilyl cyanohydrin.[531]



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} + \mathrm{Me_3SiCN} \xrightarrow[\text{acid}]{\text{Lewis}} \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\overset{CN}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OSiMe_3}{|}}{C}}{-}R'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\overset{CN}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}{-}R'}$$

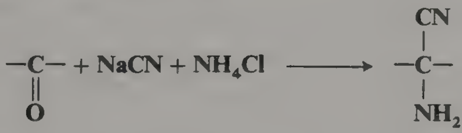
Frequently it is the bisulfite addition product that is treated with CN^-, in which case the reaction is actually nucleophilic substitution. This method is especially useful for aromatic aldehydes, since it avoids competition from the benzoin condensation. If desired, it is possible to hydrolyze the cyanohydrin in situ to the corresponding α-hydroxy acid. This reaction is important in the *Kiliani–Fischer* method of extending the carbon chain of a sugar.

The addition is nucleophilic and the actual nucleophile is CN^-, so that the reaction rate is increased by the addition of base.[532] This was demonstrated by Lapworth in 1903, and consequently this was one of the first organic mechanisms to be known.[533]

OS **I,** 336; **II,** 7, 29, 387; **III,** 436; **IV,** 58, 506; **52,** 96; **60,** 14, 126. For the reverse reaction, see OS **III,** 101.

6-50 The Strecker Synthesis

Cyano,amino-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}} + \mathrm{NaCN} + \mathrm{NH_4Cl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{{-}\overset{\overset{CN}{|}}{\underset{\underset{NH_2}{|}}{C}}{-}}$$

α-Amino nitriles can be prepared in one step by the treatment of an aldehyde or ketone with NaCN and NH_4Cl. This is called the *Strecker synthesis;* it is a special case of the Mannich reaction (**6-16**). Since the CN is easily hydrolyzed to the acid, this is a convenient method for the preparation of α-amino acids. The reaction has also been carried out with NH_3 + HCN and with NH_4CN. Salts of primary and secondary amines can be used instead of NH_4^+ to obtain N-substituted and N,N-disubstituted α-amino nitriles. When *formaldehyde* is treated with NaCN and the salt of an amine, the reaction is known as *cyanomethylation* of the amine. Unlike reaction **6-49,** the Strecker synthesis is useful for aromatic as well as aliphatic ketones.

There are two possible pathways for the reaction. The cyanohydrin may be produced first and a nucleophilic substitution (**0-48**) may then follow, or ammonia (or the amine) may add first to give an imine (**6-13**), to which NaCN adds (**6-51**).[534]

---

[529] For reviews, see Friedrich, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 2, pp. 1345–1390, Wiley, New York, 1983; Friedrich and Wallenfels, in Rappoport, Ref. 270, pp. 72–77.

[530] For a procedure involving a crown ether, see Greenlee and Hangauer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4559 (1983).

[531] For a review of Me_3SiCN and related compounds, see Groutas and Felker, *Synthesis* 861–868 (1980).

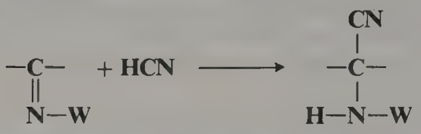
[532] For a review, see Ogata and Kawasaki, in Zabicky, Ref. 18, pp. 21–32. See also Okano, do Amaral, and Cordes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 4201 (1976); Ching and Kallen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6119 (1978).

[533] Lapworth, *J. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 998 (1903).

OS **I,** 21, 355; **III,** 66, 84, 88, 275; **IV,** 274; **V,** 437; **58,** 101.

6-51 The Addition of HCN to C═N and C≡N Bonds

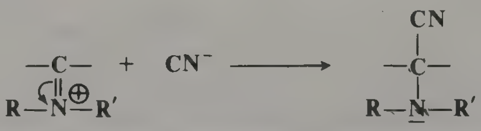
***N*-Hydro-*C*-cyano-addition**



$$-\underset{\underset{\text{N}-\text{W}}{\|}}{\text{C}}- \; + \text{HCN} \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{\text{CN}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\text{H}-\text{N}-\text{W}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-$$

W = H, R, Ar, OH, NHAr, etc.

HCN adds to imines, Schiff bases, hydrazones, oximes, and similar compounds. CN^- can be added to iminium ions:[267]

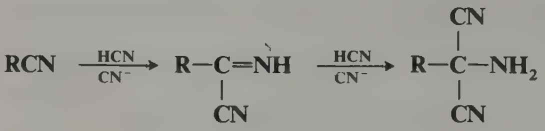


$$-\underset{\underset{\text{R}-\overset{\oplus}{\text{N}}-\text{R}'}{\|}}{\text{C}}- \; + \; \text{CN}^- \longrightarrow -\overset{\overset{\text{CN}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\text{R}-\underline{\text{N}}-\text{R}'}{|}}{\text{C}}}-$$

The addition of KCN to triisopropylbenzenesulfonyl hydrazones **67** provides an indirect method for achieving the conversion RR′CO → RR′CHCN.[535] The reaction is successful for hydrazones of aliphatic aldehydes and ketones.

$$\underset{\textbf{67}}{\text{RR}'\text{C}{=}\text{NNHSO}_2\text{Ar}} + \text{KCN} \xrightarrow{\text{MeOH}} \text{RR}'\text{CHCN} \qquad \text{Ar} = 2,4,6\text{-(i-Pr)}_3\text{C}_6\text{H}_2$$

HCN can also be added to the C≡N bond to give iminonitriles or α-aminomalononitriles.[536]



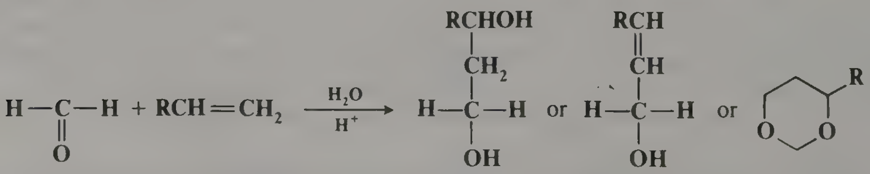
$$\text{RCN} \xrightarrow[\text{CN}^-]{\text{HCN}} \text{R}-\underset{\underset{\text{CN}}{|}}{\text{C}}{=}\text{NH} \xrightarrow[\text{CN}^-]{\text{HCN}} \text{R}-\overset{\overset{\text{CN}}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\text{CN}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-\text{NH}_2$$

OS **V,** 344. See also OS **V,** 269.

6-52 Addition of ArH to C═O, C═N, and C≡N Bonds

These reactions are discussed under aromatic substitution: **1-18, 1-22** to **1-27, 1-29,** and **1-30.**

6-53 The Prins Reaction



$$\text{H}-\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\text{H} + \text{RCH}{=}\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow[\text{H}^+]{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{H}-\overset{\overset{\overset{\text{RCHOH}}{|}}{\overset{\text{CH}_2}{|}}}{\underset{\underset{\text{OH}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-\text{H} \text{ or } \text{H}-\overset{\overset{\overset{\text{RCH}}{\|}}{\overset{\text{CH}}{|}}}{\underset{\underset{\text{OH}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-\text{H} \text{ or }$$

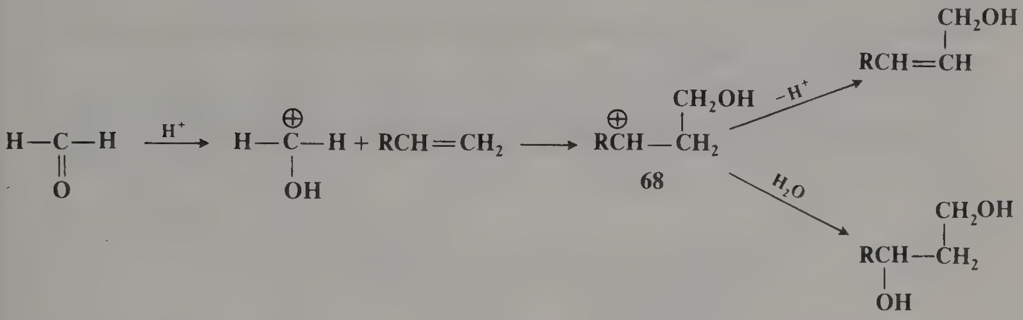
---

[534] For evidence that α-amino nitriles can be formed by the second pathway, see Ogata and Kawasaki, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 325 (1971); Stanley, Beasley, and Mathison, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3746 (1972); Walia, Bannore, Walia, and Guillot, *Chem. Lett.* 1005 (1974). For evidence for both pathways, see Taillades and Commeyras, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 2493 (1974).

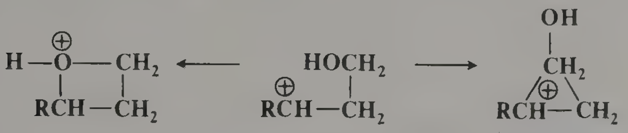
[535] Jiricny, Orere, and Reese, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1487 (1980). For other methods of achieving this conversion, see Ziegler and Wender, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2001 (1977); Cacchi, Caglioti, and Paolucci, *Synthesis* 120 (1975).

[536] For an example, see Ferris and Sanchez, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 344.

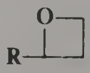
The addition of an olefin to formaldehyde in the presence of an acid[537] catalyst is called the *Prins reaction.*[538] Three main products are possible; which one predominates depends on the olefin and the conditions. When the product is the 1,3-diol or the dioxane,[539] the reaction involves addition to the C=C as well as to the C=O. The mechanism is one of electrophilic attack on both double bonds. The acid first protonates the C=O, and the resulting carbocation attacks the C=C:



68 may undergo loss of H^+ to give the olefin or may add water to give the diol.[540] It has been proposed that **68** is stabilized by neighboring-group attraction, with either the oxygen[541] or a carbon[542] stabilizing the charge (**69** and **70**, respectively). This stabilization is postulated to explain the fact that with 2-butenes[543] and with cyclohexenes the addition is anti. A backside attack of H_2O on the three- or four-membered ring would account for it. Other products are obtained too, which can be explained on the basis of **69** or **70.**[541,542] Additional evidence for the intermediacy of **69** is the finding that oxetanes (**71**) subjected to the reaction conditions (which would protonate **71** to give **69**) give essentially the same product ratios as the corresponding alkenes.[544] An argument against the intermediacy of **69** and **70** is that not all alkenes show the anti stereoselectivity mentioned above. Indeed, the stereochemical results are often quite complex, with syn, anti, and nonster-



69 **68** **70**



71

---

[537] The Prins reaction has also been carried out with basic catalysts: Griengl and Sieber, *Monastsh. Chem.* **104,** 1008, 1027 (1973).

[538] For reviews, see Adams and Bhatnagar, *Synthesis* 661–672 (1977); Isagulyants, Khaimova, Melikyan, and Pokrovskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **37,** 17–25 (1968); Roberts, in Olah, "Friedel-Crafts and Related Reactions," vol. 2, pp. 1175–1210, Interscience, New York, 1963.

[539] The reaction to produce dioxanes has also been carried out with equimolar mixtures of formaldehyde and another aldehyde RCHO. The R appears in the dioxane on the carbon between the two oxygens: Safarov, Nigmatullin, Ibatullin, and Rafikov, *Doklad. Chem.* **236,** 507 (1977).

[540] Hellin, Davidson, and Coussemant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1890, 3217 (1966).

[541] Blomquist and Wolinsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 6025 (1957); Schowen, Smissman, and Schowen, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1873 (1968).

[542] Dolby, Lieske, Rosencrantz, and Schwarz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 47 (1963); Dolby and Schwarz, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1456 (1963); Safarov, Isagulyants, and Nigmatullin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **10,** 1378 (1974).

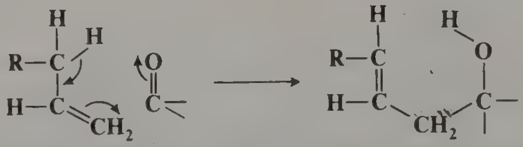
[543] Fremaux, Davidson, Hellin, and Coussemant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4250 (1967).

[544] Meresz, Leung, and Denes, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2797 (1972).

eoselective addition reported, depending on the nature of the reactants and the reaction conditions.[545] Since addition to the C=C bond is electrophilic, the reactivity of the olefin increases with alkyl substitution and Markovnikov's rule is followed. The dioxane product may arise from a reaction between the 1,3-diol and formaldehyde[546] (**6-6**) or between **68** and formaldehyde, or even between the olefin and a formaldehyde dimer $HOCH_2OCH_2^+$.[547]

Lewis acids such as $SnCl_4$ also catalyze the reaction, in which case the species that adds to the olefins is $H_2\overset{\oplus}{C}—O—\overset{\oplus}{S}nCl_4$.[548] The reaction can also be catalyzed by peroxides, in which case the mechanism is probably a free-radical one.

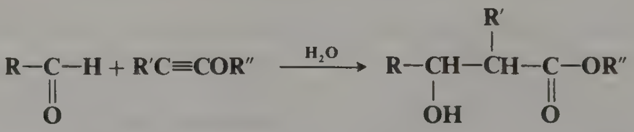
The reaction has been performed with other aldehydes and even with ketones; without a catalyst, but with heat.[549] The aldehydes and ketones here are active ones, such as chloral and acetoacetic ester. The product in these cases is a β-hydroxy olefin, and a cyclic mechanism has been postulated:[550]



This reaction is reversible and suitable β-hydroxy olefins can be cleaved by heat (**7-46**). There is evidence that the cleavage reaction occurs by a cyclic mechanism (p. 935), and, by the principle of microscopic reversibility, the addition mechanism should be cyclic too.[551] Note that this reaction is an oxygen analog of the ene synthesis (**5-16**). This reaction can also be done with unactivated aldehydes (aliphatic and aromatic), if Lewis-acid catalysts such as dimethylaluminum chloride Me_2AlCl[552] or ethylaluminum dichloride[553] are used.[554]

OS **IV,** 786.

6-54 The Addition of Triple-Bond Compounds
***O*-Hydro-*C*-(α-alkoxycarbonylalkyl)-addition**



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-H + R'C{\equiv}COR'' \xrightarrow{H_2O} R-\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{CH}-\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{CH}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-OR''$$

---

[545] For example, see LeBel, Liesemer, and Mehmedbasich, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 615 (1963); Portoghese and Smissman, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 719 (1962); Bernardi and Leone, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 499 (1964); Dolby, Wilkins, and Frey, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1110 (1966); Wilkins and Marianelli, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 4131 (1970); Karpaty, Hellin, Davidson, and Coussemant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1736 (1971); Coryn and Anteunis, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **83,** 83 (1974).

[546] Ref. 540; Isagulyants, Isagulyants, Khairudinov, and Rakhmankulov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **22,** 1810 (1973); Sharf, Kheifets, and Freidlin, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **23,** 1681 (1974).

[547] Smissman, Schnettler, and Portoghese, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 797 (1965). See, however, Gaillard, Hellin, and Coussemant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3360 (1967); Dolby, Wilkins, and Rodia, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 4155 (1968).

[548] Yang, Yang, and Ross, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 133 (1959).

[549] Arnold and Veeravagu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5411 (1960); Klimova, Abramov, Antonova, and Arbuzov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 1308 (1969); Klimova, Antonova, and Arbuzov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 1312, 1315 (1969); Gill and Wallace, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* **380,** 382 (1977).

[550] See for example, Achmatowicz and Szymoniak, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1228 (1980); Jenner and Papadopoulos, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4201 (1982). There is evidence that the mechanism is somewhat more complicated than shown here: Kwart and Brechbiel, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3353 (1982).

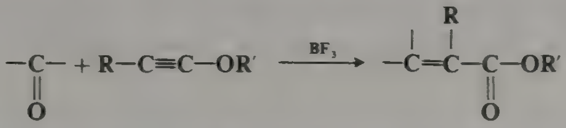
[551] For other evidence, see Ref. 550; Papadopoulos and Jenner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2773 (1981).

[552] Snider, Rodini, Kirk, and Cordova, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 555 (1982); Snider, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 426–432 (1980).

[553] Snider and Phillips, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 464 (1983).

[554] For discussions of the mechanism with Lewis-acid catalysts, see Stephenson and Orfanopoulos, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2200 (1981); Kwart and Brechbiel, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 5409 (1982).

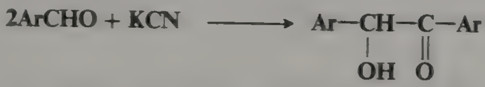
Aldehydes and water can be added to alkynyl ethers to give β-hydroxy esters.[555] The reaction is applicable to aldehydes only, but the yields rapidly diminish with chain length.[556] Formaldehyde is most commonly used. If the alkynyl ether is treated with a carbonyl compound in the absence of water but in the presence of BF_3, an α,β-unsaturated ester is produced:[557]



$$-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}- + R-C{\equiv}C-OR' \xrightarrow{BF_3} -\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{\overset{R}{|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-OR'$$

This reaction is much more general, and the carbonyl compound may be an aldehyde, ketone, ester, or amide.

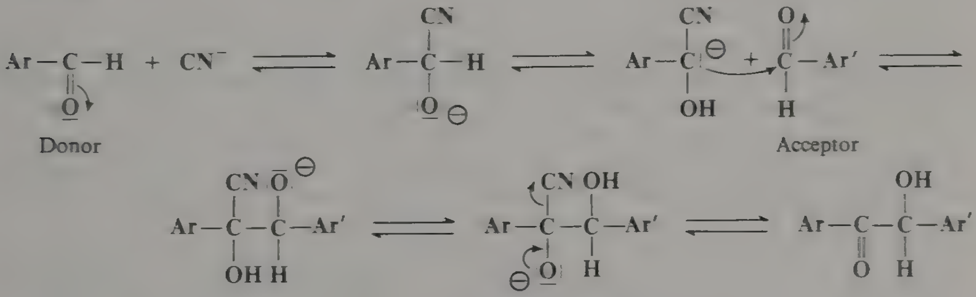
6-55 The Benzoin Condensation



$$2ArCHO + KCN \longrightarrow Ar-\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{CH}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Ar$$

When certain aldehydes are treated with cyanide ion, *benzoins* are produced in a reaction called the *benzoin condensation*. The condensation may be regarded as involving the addition of one molecule of aldehyde to the C=O group of another. The reaction can be accomplished only for aromatic aldehydes, though not for all of them,[558] and for glyoxals RCOCHO. The two molecules of aldehyde obviously perform different functions. The one that no longer has a C—H bond in the product is called the *donor*, because it has "donated" its hydrogen to the oxygen of the other molecule, the *acceptor*. Some aldehydes can perform only one of these functions and hence cannot be self-condensed, though they can often be condensed with a different aldehyde. For example, *p*-dimethylaminobenzaldehyde is not an acceptor but only a donor. Thus it cannot condense with itself, but it can condense with benzaldehyde, which can perform both functions, but is a better acceptor than it is a donor.

The following is the accepted mechanism [559] which was originally proposed by Lapworth in 1903:[560]



---

[555] For a review, see Arens, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **2**, 117–212 (1960), pp. 174–178.

[556] Vieregge and Arens, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **78**, 921 (1959).

[557] Vieregge, Bos, and Arens, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **78**, 664 (1959); Krasnaya and Kucherov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 990 (1962), 96 (1965); Vieregge, Schmidt, Renema, Bos, and Arens, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **85**, 929 (1966).

[558] For a review, see Ide and Buck, *Org. React.* **4**, 269–304 (1948).

[559] For a discussion, see Kuebrich, Schowen, Wang, and Lupes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93**, 1214 (1971).

[560] Lapworth, *J. Chem. Soc.* **83**, 995 (1903), **85**, 1206 (1904).

The reaction is reversible. The key step, the loss of the aldehydic proton, can take place because the acidity of this C—H bond is increased by the electron-withdrawing power of the CN group. Thus, CN^- is a highly specific catalyst for this reaction, because, almost uniquely, it can perform three functions: (1) It acts as a nucleophile; (2) its electron-withdrawing ability permits loss of the aldehydic proton; and (3) having done this, it then acts as a leaving group. Certain thiazolium salts can also catalyze the reaction.[561] In this case aliphatic aldehydes can also be used[562] (the products are called *acyloins*), and mixtures of aliphatic and aromatic aldehydes give mixed α-hydroxy ketones.[563]

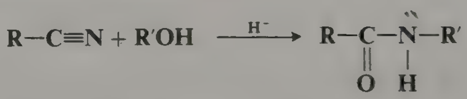
OS **I,** 94.

Reactions in Which Carbon Adds to the Hetero Atom

A. Oxygen Adding to the Carbon

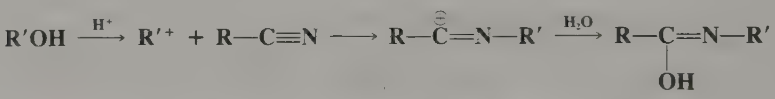
6-56 The Ritter Reaction

***N*-Hydro,*N*-alkyl-*C*-oxo-biaddition**



$$R{-}C{\equiv}N + R'OH \xrightarrow{H^+} R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{N}{-}R'$$

Alcohols can be added to nitriles in an entirely different manner from that of **6-9**. In this reaction, the alcohol is converted by a strong acid to a carbocation, which adds to the negative nitrogen, water adding to the carbon:



$$R'OH \xrightarrow{H^+} R'^+ + R{-}C{\equiv}N \longrightarrow R{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}{=}N{-}R' \xrightarrow{H_2O} R{-}\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}{=}N{-}R'$$

The immediate product tautomerizes to the N-alkyl amide. Only alcohols that give rise to fairly stable carbocations react (secondary, tertiary, benzylic, etc.); primary alcohols do not give the reaction. The carbocation need not be generated from an alcohol but may come from protonation of an olefin or from other sources. In any case, the reaction is called the *Ritter reaction.*[564] HCN also gives the reaction, the product being a formamide. Since the amides (especially the formamides) are easily hydrolyzable to amines, the Ritter reaction provides a method for achieving the conversions $R'OH \rightarrow R'NH_2$ (see **0-48**) and alkene → $R'NH_2$ (see **5-8**) in those cases where R′ can form a relatively stable carbocation. The reaction is especially useful for the preparation of tertiary alkyl amines because there are few alternate ways of preparing these compounds. The reaction can be extended to alcohols that do not give stable carbocations (e.g., 1-decanol) by treating the alcohol with $Ph_2CCl^+\ SbCl_6^-$ or a similar salt in the nitrile as solvent.[565]

---

[561] See Ugai, Tanaka, and Dokawa, *J. Pharm. Soc. Jpn.* **63,** 296 (1943) [*CA* **45,** 5148]; Breslow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 3719 (1958). For another catalyst, see Lappert and Maskell, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 580 (1982).

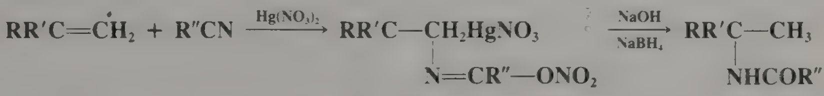
[562] Stetter, Rämsch, and Kuhlmann, *Synthesis* 733 (1976).

[563] Stetter and Dämbkes, *Synthesis* 403 (1977).

[564] Ritter and Minieri, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70,** 4045 (1948). For reviews, see Krimen and Cota, *Org. React.* **17,** 213–325 (1969); Beckwith, in Zabicky, Ref. 62, pp. 125–130; Johnson and Madroñero, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **6,** 95–146 (1966); Zil'berman, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **29,** 331–344 (1960), pp. 334–337.

[565] Barton, Magnus, Garbarino, and Young, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 1* 2101 (1974). See also Top and Jaouen, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 78 (1981).

Olefins of the form RCH=CHR′ and RR′C=CH_2 add to nitriles in the presence of mercuric nitrate to give, after treatment with $NaBH_4$, the same amides that would be obtained by the Ritter reaction.[566] This method has the advantage of avoiding strong acids.



$$RR'C{=}CH_2 + R''CN \xrightarrow{Hg(NO_3)_2} RR'\underset{\displaystyle N{=}CR''{-}ONO_2}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}CH_2HgNO_3 \xrightarrow[NaBH_4]{NaOH} RR'\underset{\displaystyle NHCOR''}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}CH_3$$

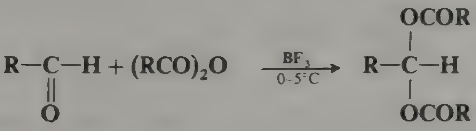
Two other methods use alkyl halides rather than alcohols: RCN + R′X → RCONHR′. In one of these, primary, secondary, and tertiary halides (X = any of the four halogens) are treated with nitrosonium hexafluorophosphate $NOPF_6$ in the nitrile as solvent.[567] Carbocations (produced by $RX + NO^+ \rightarrow R^+ + NOX$) are intermediates in at least some of these cases. In the other method, primary and secondary bromides and iodides react with nitriles in the presence of pulverized KOH and *t*-BuOH.[568]

The Ritter reaction can be applied to cyanamides RNHCN to give ureas RNHCONHR′.[569]

OS **V**, 73, 471.

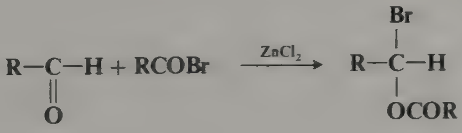
6-57 Acylation of Aldehydes and Ketones

***O*-Acyl-*C*-acyloxy-addition**



$$R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}H + (RCO)_2O \xrightarrow[0\text{–}5^\circ C]{BF_3} R{-}\overset{\displaystyle OCOR}{\underset{\displaystyle OCOR}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}}{-}H$$

Aldehydes can be converted to *acylals* by treatment with an anhydride in the presence of BF_3, other Lewis acids,[570] proton acids,[571] or PCl_3.[572] The reaction cannot normally be applied to ketones, though an exception has been reported when the reagent is trichloroacetic anhydride, which gives acylals with ketones without a catalyst.[573] In a similar reaction, aldehydes and some ketones add the elements of an acyl bromide when treated with the acyl bromide and $ZnCl_2$:[574]



$$R{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}H + RCOBr \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} R{-}\overset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{\displaystyle OCOR}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}}{-}H$$

OS **IV**, 489.

---

[566] Sokolov and Reutov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 225 (1968); Beger and Vogel, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **311**, 737 (1969); Brown and Kurek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91**, 5647 (1969); Chow, Robson, and Wright, *Can. J. Chem.* **43**, 312 (1965); Fry and Simon, *J. Org. Chem.* **47**, 5032 (1982).

[567] Olah, Gupta, and Narang, *Synthesis* 274 (1979). See also Bach, Holubka, and Taaffee, *J. Org. Chem.* **44**, 1739 (1979).

[568] Linke, *Synthesis* 303 (1978).

[569] Anatol and Berecoechea, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 395 (1975), *Synthesis* 111 (1975).

[570] For example, $FeCl_3$: Kochhar, Bal, Deshpande, Rajadhyaksha, and Pinnick, *J. Org. Chem.* **48**, 1765 (1983).

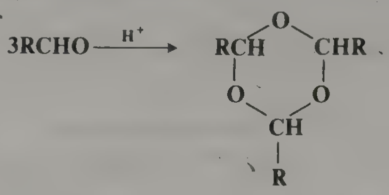
[571] For example, see Olah and Mehrotra, *Synthesis* 962 (1982).

[572] See Michie and Miller, *Synthesis* 824 (1981).

[573] Libman, Sprecher, and Mazur, *Tetrahedron* **25**, 1679 (1969).

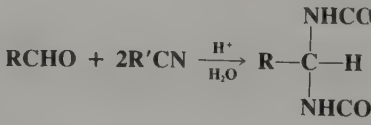
[574] See Euranto and Kujanpåå, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **15**, 1209 (1961); Bigler and Neuenschwander, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61**, 2165, 2381 (1978); Bigler, Mühle, and Neuenschwander, *Synthesis* 593 (1978).

6-58 The Addition of Aldehydes to Aldehydes



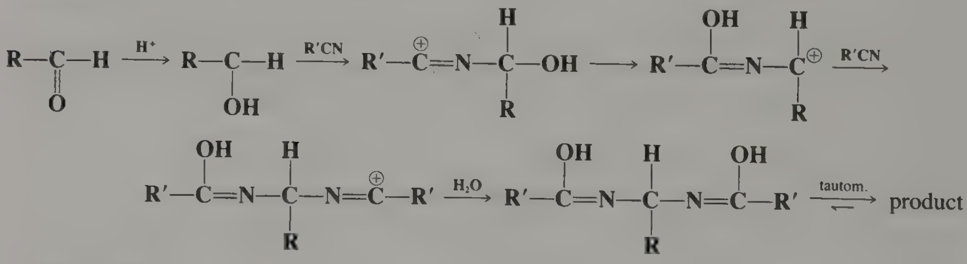
When catalyzed by acids, low-molecular-weight aldehydes add to each other to give cyclic acetals, the most common product being the trimer.[575] The cyclic trimer of formaldehyde is called *trioxane*, and that of acetaldehyde is known as *paraldehyde*. Under certain conditions, it is possible to get tetramers[576] or dimers. Aldehydes can also polymerize to linear polymers, but here a small amount of water is required to form hemiacetal groups at the ends of the chains. The linear polymer formed from formaldehyde is called *paraformaldehyde*. Since trimers and polymers of aldehydes are acetals, they are stable to bases but can be hydrolyzed by acids. Because formaldehyde and acetaldehyde have low boiling points, it is often convenient to use them in the form of their trimers or polymers.

6-59 The Addition of Aldehydes to Nitriles
Bis(acylamino)-de-oxo-bisubstitution



$$\mathrm{RCHO} + 2\mathrm{R'CN} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H_2O}]{\mathrm{H^+}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\textstyle NHCOR'}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle NHCOR'}{|}}{C}}{-}H}$$

In the presence of acids, 2 moles of a nitrile add to 1 mole of aldehyde to give *amidals*.[577] The reaction is applicable only to aldehydes that do not contain an α-hydrogen. Apparently the mechanism is



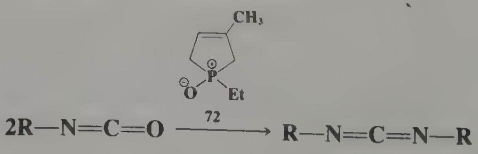
$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\textstyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}H} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H^+}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\textstyle OH}{|}}{C}{-}H} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R'CN}} \mathrm{R'{-}\overset{\oplus}{C}{=}N{-}\underset{\underset{\textstyle R}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}{-}OH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R'{-}\overset{\overset{\textstyle OH}{|}}{C}{=}N{-}\underset{\underset{\textstyle R}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}{}^{\oplus}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R'CN}}$$

$$\mathrm{R'{-}\overset{\overset{\textstyle OH}{|}}{C}{=}N{-}\underset{\underset{\textstyle R}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}{-}N{=}\overset{\oplus}{C}{-}R'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{R'{-}\overset{\overset{\textstyle OH}{|}}{C}{=}N{-}\underset{\underset{\textstyle R}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\textstyle H}{|}}{C}}{-}N{=}\overset{\overset{\textstyle OH}{|}}{C}{-}R'} \xrightleftharpoons{\text{tautom.}} \text{product}$$

OS IV, 518.

B. Nitrogen Adding to the Carbon

6-60 The Addition of Isocyanates to Isocyanates



$$2\mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}O} \xrightarrow{72} \mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}N{-}R}$$

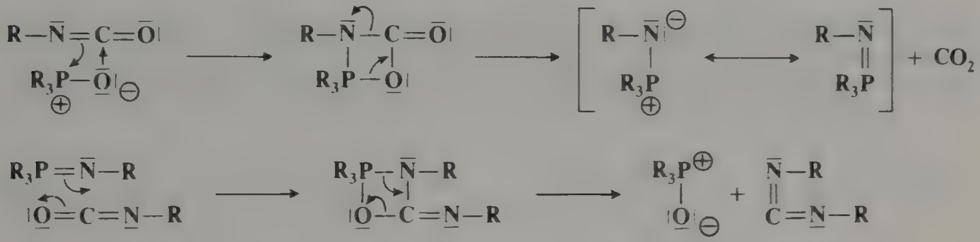
---

[575] For a review, see Bevington, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **6**, 141–156 (1952).

[576] Barón, *Nature* **192**, 258 (1961); Barón, Manderola, and Westerkamp, *Can. J. Chem.* **41**, 1893 (1963).

[577] For a review, see Zil'berman, Ref. 564, pp. 333–334.

The treatment of isocyanates with 3-methyl-1-ethyl-3-phospholene-1-oxide (**72**) is a useful method for the synthesis of carbodiimides[578] in good yields.[579] The mechanism does not simply involve the addition of one molecule of isocyanate to another, since the kinetics are first order in isocyanate and first order in catalyst. The following mechanism has been proposed (the catalyst is here represented as $R_3\overset{\oplus}{P}—\overset{\ominus}{O}$):[580]



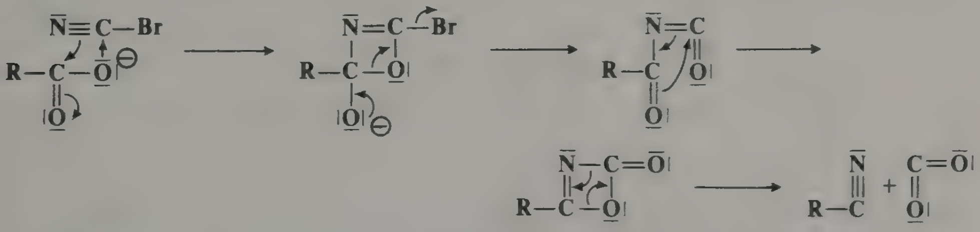
The first two steps together are rate-determining. According to this mechanism, one molecule of isocyanate undergoes addition to C═O and the other, addition to C═N. Evidence is that ^{18}O labeling experiments have shown that each molecule of CO_2 produced contains one oxygen atom derived from the ioscyanate and one from the phospholene oxide,[581] which is precisely what is predicted by this mechanism. Certain other catalysts are also effective.[582]

OS **V**, 501.

6-61 The Conversion of Acid Salts to Nitriles
Nitrilo-de-oxido,oxo-tersubstitution

$$RCOO^- + BrCN \xrightarrow{250\text{-}300°C} RCN + CO_2$$

Salts of aliphatic or aromatic acids can be converted to the corresponding nitriles by heating with BrCN or ClCN. Despite appearances, this is not a substitution reaction. When $R^{14}COO^-$ was used, the label appeared in the nitrile, not in the CO_2,[583] and optical activity in R was retained.[584] The acyl isocyanate RCON═C═O could be isolated from the reaction mixture; hence the following mechanism was proposed:[583]



---

[578] For reviews of the chemistry of carbodiimides, see Williams and Ibrahim, *Chem. Rev.* **81**, 589–636 (1981); Mikołajczyk and Kiełbasiński, *Tetrahedron* **37**, 233–284 (1981); Kurzer and Douraghi-Zadeh, *Chem. Rev.* **67**, 107–152 (1967).

[579] Campbell, Monagle, and Foldi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84**, 3673 (1962).

[580] Monagle, Campbell, and McShane, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84**, 4288 (1962).

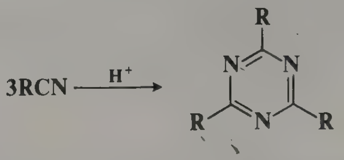
[581] Monagle and Mengenhauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **31**, 2321 (1966).

[582] Monagle, *J. Org. Chem.* **27**, 3851 (1962); Appleman and DeCarlo, *J. Org. Chem.* **32**, 1505 (1967); Ulrich, Tucker, and Sayigh, *J. Org. Chem.* **32**, 1360 (1967), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1731 (1967); Ostrogovich, Kerek, Buzás, and Doca, *Tetrahedron* **25**, 1875 (1969).

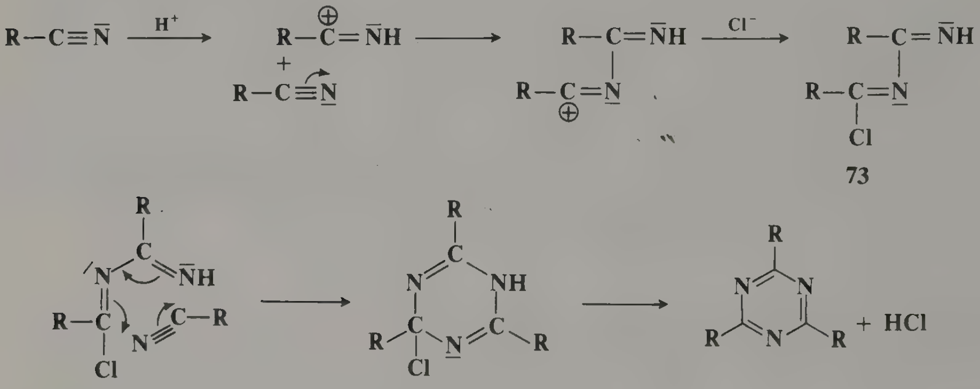
[583] Douglas, Eccles, and Almond, *Can. J. Chem.* **31**, 1127 (1953); Douglas and Burditt, *Can. J. Chem.* **36**, 1256 (1958).

[584] Barltrop, Day, and Bigley, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3185 (1961).

6-62 The Trimerization of Nitriles



Nitriles can be trimerized with various acids, bases, or other catalysts.[585] HCl is most often used, and then the reaction is similar to reaction **6-58.** However, most nitriles with an α-hydrogen do not give the reaction. Mixed triazines can be obtained from mixtures of nitriles.[586] The mechanism with HCl may be as follows:



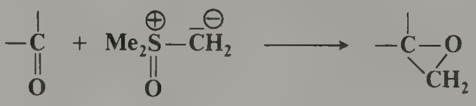
73

Intermediates of the type **73** have been isolated.

OS **III,** 71.

C. Carbon Adding to the Carbon. The reactions in this group (6-63 to 6-66) are cycloadditions.

6-63 The Formation of Epoxides from Aldehydes and Ketones



74

Aldehydes and ketones can be converted to epoxides[587] in good yields with the sulfur ylides dimethyloxosulfonium methylide (**74**) and dimethylsulfonium methylide (**75**).[588] For most purposes,

---

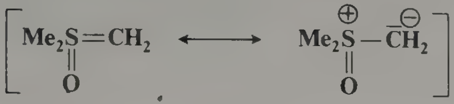
[585] For a review, see Martin, Bauer, and Pankratov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 975–990 (1978).

[586] Grundmann, Weisse, and Seide, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **577,** 77 (1952); Grundmann, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 3262 (1964).

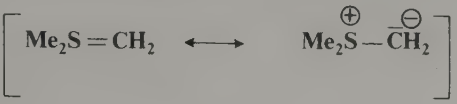
[587] For reviews, see Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," pp. 101–105, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Berti, *Top. Stereochem.* **7,** 93–251 (1973), pp. 218–232.

[588] For reviews, see House, Ref. 158, pp. 709–733; Durst, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 285–388 (1969), pp. 321–330; Johnson, Ref. 477, pp. 328–351. For a monograph on sulfur ylides, see Trost and Melvin, "Sulfur Ylides," Academic Press, New York, 1975.

74 is the reagent of choice, because **75** is much less stable and ordinarily must be used as soon as

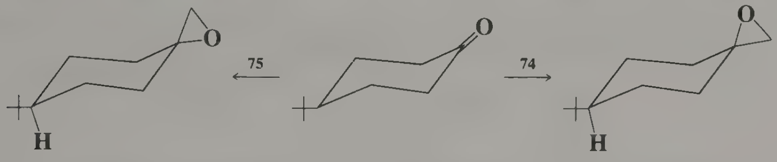


74



75

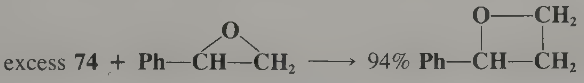
it is formed, while **74** can be stored several days at room temperature. However, when diastereomeric epoxides can be formed, **75** usually attacks from the more hindered and **74** from the less-hindered side. Thus, 4-*t*-butylcyclohexanone, treated with **74** gave exclusively **77** while **75** gave mostly **76.**[589] Another difference in behavior between **74** and **75** is that with α,β-unsaturated ketones, **74** gives only cyclopropanes (reaction **5-49**), while **75** gives oxirane formation. Other sulfur ylides have been used in an analogous manner, to transfer CHR or CR_2. Among these are $Me_2S{=}CHCOO^-$,[590] $Me_2S{=}CHPh$,[591] $Me_2S{=}CH$—vinyl,[592] and **100** on p. 774,[593] which transfer $CHCOO^-$, CHPh, CH—vinyl, and CPh_2, respectively. Nitrogen-containing sulfur ylides, such as **101** on p. 774 and $Ph(Me_2N)SO{=}CH_2$, as well as carbanions like **103** on p. 774 and trimethylsulfonium iodide $Me_3S^+\ I^-$ (with a phase-transfer catalyst)[594] have also been used.[595] High yields have been achieved by the use of sulfonium ylides anchored to insoluble polymers under phase transfer conditions.[596]



76 **77**

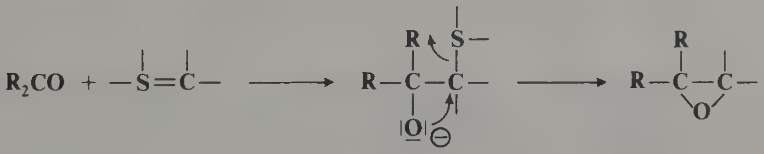
New bond is axial New bond is equatorial

74 reacts with epoxides to give oxetanes,[596a] e.g.,



$$\text{excess } \mathbf{74} + \text{Ph—}\overset{\text{O}}{\text{CH—CH}_2} \longrightarrow 94\%\ \text{Ph—}\overset{\text{O——CH}_2}{\text{CH—CH}_2}$$

The generally accepted mechanism for the reaction between sulfur ylides and aldehydes or ketones is



$$R_2CO + -\overset{|}{S}{=}\overset{|}{C}- \longrightarrow R-\underset{\underset{|\overline{O}|^{\ominus}}{|}}{\overset{R}{C}}-\overset{-S-}{C}- \longrightarrow R-\overset{R}{C}-C-$$

78

---

[589] Corey and Chaykovsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1353 (1965).

[590] Adams, Hoffman, and Trost, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1600 (1970).

[591] Yoshimine and Hatch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5831 (1967).

[592] Braun, Huber, and Kresze, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4033 (1973).

[593] Corey, Jautelat, and Oppolzer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2325 (1967).

[594] Borredon, Delmas, and Gaset, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 5283 (1982).

[595] Johnson, Haake, and Schroeck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6594 (1970); Johnson and Janiga, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7692 (1973); Johnson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 341–347 (1973); Tamura, Matsushima, Ikeda, and Sumoto, *Synthesis* 35 (1976).

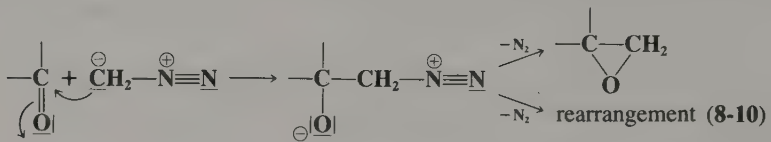
[596] Farrall, Durst, and Fréchet, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 203 (1979).

[596a] Okuma, Tanaka, Kaji, and Ohta, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 5133 (1983).

which is similar to that of the reaction of sulfur ylides with C=C double bonds (**5-49**).[597] The stereochemical difference in the behavior of **74** and **75** has been attributed to formation of the betaine **78** being reversible for **74** but not for the less stable **75**, so that the more-hindered product is the result of kinetic control and the less-hindered of thermodynamic control.[598]

Phosphorus ylides do not give this reaction, but give **6-47** instead.

Aldehydes and ketones can also be converted to epoxides by treatment with a diazoalkane,[599] most commonly diazomethane, but an important side reaction is the formation of an aldehyde or ketone with one more carbon than the starting compound (reaction **8-10**). The reaction can be carried out with many aldehydes, ketones, and quinones. A mechanism that accounts for both products is

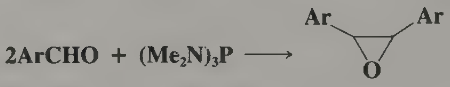


79

Compound **79** or nitrogen-containing derivatives of it have sometimes been isolated.

Dihalocarbenes and carbenoids, which readily add to C=C bonds (**5-49**), do not generally add to the C=O bonds of ordinary aldehydes and ketones, though addition of CCl_2 to certain cyclic ketones has been accomplished with $CHCl_3$ and OH^- under phase transfer conditions.[600]

Symmetrical epoxides can be prepared by treatment of aromatic aldehydes with hexamethylphosphorus triamide.[601]

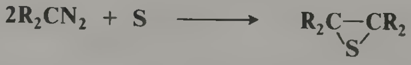


It is likely that the betaine $(Me_2N)_2\overset{+}{P}CHRO^-$ is formed first and then attacks a second molecule of the aldehyde.

See also **6-45**.

OS **V**, 358, 755.

6-64 The Formation of Episulfides and Episulfones[602]



Diazoalkanes, treated with sulfur, give episulfides.[603] It is likely that $R_2C=S$ is an intermediate, which is attacked by another molecule of diazoalkane, in a process similar to that shown in **6-63**. Thioketones *do* react with diazoalkanes to give episulfides.[604] Thioketones have also been converted to episulfides with sulfur ylides.[589] Several methods exist for converting ordinary aldehydes and ketones to episulfides with one more carbon, for example by treating them with a metallated 2-(alkylthio)-2-oxazoline (**80**).[605]

---

[597] See for example, Townsend and Sharpless, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3313 (1972); Johnson, Schroeck, and Shanklin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7424 (1973).

[598] Johnson, Schroeck, and Shanklin, Ref. 597.

[599] For a review, see Gutsche, *Org. React.* **8,** 364–429 (1954).

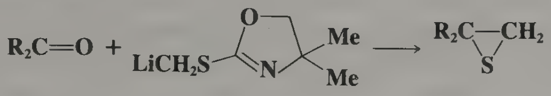
[600] Greuter, Winkler, and Belluš, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **62,** 1275 (1979).

[601] Mark, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1884 (1963), *Org. Synth.* **V,** 358; Newman and Blum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5598 (1964).

[602] For a review, see Muller and Hamer, "1,2-Cycloaddition Reactions," pp. 57–86, Interscience, New York, 1967.

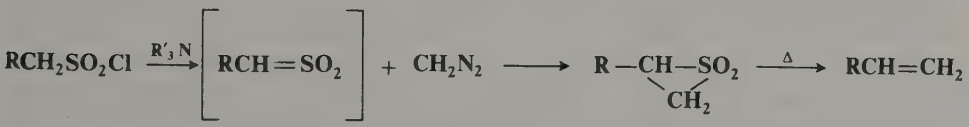
[603] Schönberg and Frese, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 2810 (1962).

[604] For example, see Beiner, Lecadet, Paquer, and Thuillier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1983 (1973).



80

Alkanesulfonyl chlorides, when treated with diazomethane in the presence of a base (usually a tertiary amine), give episulfones (**82**).[606] The base removes HCl from the sulfonyl halide to produce

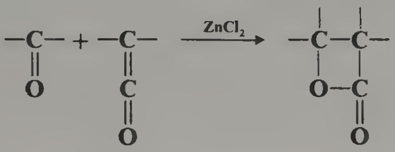


81 **82**

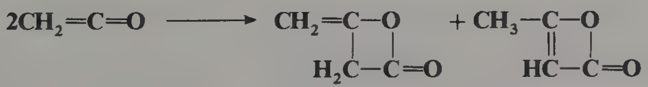
the highly reactive sulfene (**81**) (**7-15**), which then adds CH_2. The episulfone can then be heated to give off SO_2 (**7-25**), making the entire process a method for achieving the conversion $RCH_2SO_2Cl \rightarrow RCH{=}CH_2$.[607]

OS **V**, 231, 877.

6-65 The Formation of β-Lactones and Oxetanes



Aldehydes, ketones, and quinones react with ketenes to give β-lactones, diphenylketene being used most often.[608] The reaction is catalyzed by Lewis acids, and without them most ketenes do not give adducts because the adducts decompose at the high temperatures necessary when no catalyst is used. When ketene was added to chloral Cl_3CCHO in the presence of the chiral catalyst (+)-quinidine, the (S)-β-lactone was produced in 98% enantiomeric excess.[609] Ketene adds to another molecule of itself:



This dimerization is so rapid that ketene does not form β-lactones with aldehydes or ketones, except at low temperatures. Other ketenes dimerize more slowly. In these cases the major dimerization product is not the β-lactone, but a cyclobutenone (see p. 758). However, the proportion of ketene that dimerizes to β-lactone can be increased by the addition of catalysts such as triethylamine or triethyl phosphite $(EtO)_3P$.[610] 1,1-Dialkoxyalkenes (ketene acetals) $R_2C{=}C(OR')_2$ add to aldehydes and ketones in the presence of $ZnCl_2$ to give the corresponding oxetanes.[611] Oxetanes have also been prepared from ketones by treatment with the ion $MeSO({=}NTs)CH_2^-$.[612]

---

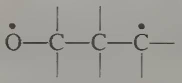
[605] Meyers and Ford, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1735 (1976). For other methods, see Johnson, Nakanishi, Nakanishi, and Tanaka, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2865 (1975); Hoppe and Follmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 462 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 478].

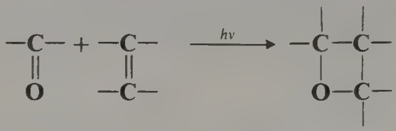
[606] Opitz and Fischer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 70 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 41].

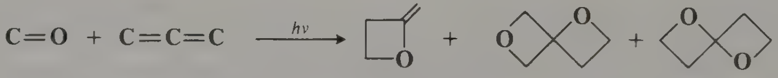
[607] For a review of this process, see Fischer, *Synthesis* 393–404 (1970).

[608] For reviews, see Ref. 602, pp. 139–168; Ulrich, "Cycloaddition Reactions of Heterocumulenes," pp. 39–45, 64–74, Academic Press, New York, 1967; Lacey, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **2,** 213–263 (1960), pp. 226–228.

[609] Wynberg and Staring, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 166 (1982).

Ordinary aldehydes and ketones can add to olefins, under the influence of uv light, to give oxetanes. This reaction, called the *Paterno–Büchi reaction*,[613] is similar to the photochemical dimerization of olefins discussed at **5-48.** In general, the mechanism consists of the addition of an excited state of the carbonyl compound to the ground state of the olefin, in many cases through the intermediacy of an exciplex[614] (p. 776). Both singlet (S_1)[615] and n,π^* triplet[616] states have been shown to add to olefins to give oxetanes. A diradical intermediate  $\dot{O}{-}\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\underset{|}{\dot{C}}{-}$ has been detected spectrally.[617] Yields in the Paterno–Büchi reaction are variable, ranging from very low to fairly high (80 to 90%). There are several side reactions. When the reaction proceeds through a triplet state, it can in general be successful only when the alkene possesses a triplet energy comparable to, or higher than, the carbonyl compound; otherwise energy transfer from the excited carbonyl group to the ground-state alkene can take place (triplet–triplet photosensitization, see p. 212). In most cases quinones react normally with alkenes, giving oxetane products, but other α,β-unsaturated ketones usually give preferential cyclobutane formation (**5-48**). Aldehydes and ketones also add photochemically to allenes to give the corresponding alkylideneoxetanes and dioxaspiro compounds:[618]





OS **III,** 508; **V,** 456. For the reverse reaction, see OS **V,** 679.

---

[610] Farnum, Johnson, Hess, Marshall, and Webster, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5191 (1965); Elam, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 215 (1967).

[611] Aben, Hofstraat, and Scheeren, *Recl: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 355 (1981).

[612] Welch and Prakasa Rao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6135 (1979).

[613] For reviews, see Jones, *Org. Photochem.* **5,** 1–122 (1981); Arnold, *Adv. Photochem.* *6*, 301–423 (1968); Chapman and Lenz, *Org. Photochem.* **1,** 283–321 (1967), pp. 283–294; Yang, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 591–596 (1964); Ref. 602, pp. 111–139.

[614] See, for example, Schore and Turro, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2482 (1975).

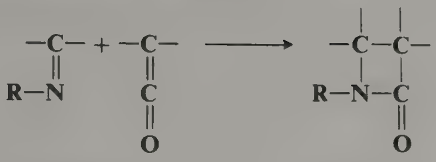
[615] See, for example, Turro, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **27,** 679–705 (1971); Yang, Kimura, and Eisenhardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5058 (1973); Singer, Davis, and Muralidharan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 897 (1969); Barltrop and Carless, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1951, 8761 (1972).

[616] Arnold, Hinman, and Glick, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1425 (1964); Yang, Nussim, Jorgenson, and Murov, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3657 (1964).

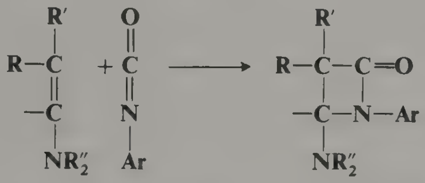
[617] Freilich and Peters, J. Am. Chem. Soc. **103,** 6255 (1981).

[618] Arnold and Glick, *Chem. Commun.* 813 (1966); Gotthardt, Steinmetz, and Hammond, *Chem. Commun.* 480 (1967), *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2774 (1968).

6-66 The Formation of β-Lactams



Ketenes add to imines to give β-lactams.[619] The reaction is generally carried out with ketenes of the form $R_2C=C=O$. It has not been successfully applied to $RCH=C=O$, except when these are generated in situ by decomposition of a diazo ketone (the Wolff rearrangement, **8-9**) in the presence of the enamine. It has been done with ketene, but the more usual course with this reagent is an addition to the enamine tautomer of the substrate. Thioketenes $R_2C=C=S$ give β-thiolactams.[620] Like the similar cycloaddition of ketenes to olefins (**5-48**), most of these reactions probably take place by the diionic mechanism *c* (p. 760).[621] β-Lactams have also been prepared in the opposite manner: by the addition of enamines to isocyanates:[622]



The reactive compound chlorosulfonyl isocyanate[623] $ClSO_2NCO$ forms β-lactams even with unactivated alkenes,[624] as well as with allenes,[625] conjugated dienes,[626] and cyclopropenes.[627]

OS **V,** 673.

Addition to Isonitriles[628]

Addition to $R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{C}$ is not simply a matter of a species with an electron pair adding to one atom and a species without a pair adding to the other, as is addition to the other types of double and triple bonds in this chapter and Chapter 15. In these additions the electrophile and the nucleophile *both add to the carbon.* No species adds to the nitrogen, which, however, loses its positive charge by obtaining as an unshared pair one of the triple-bond pairs of electrons:

---

[619] For reviews of the formation of β-lactams, see Isaacs, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **5,** 181–202 (1976); Mukerjee and Srivastava, *Synthesis* 327–346 (1973); Ref. 602, pp. 173–206; Ulrich, Ref. 608, pp. 75–83, 135–152; Anselme, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," Ref. 40, pp. 305–309.

[620] Schaumann, *Chem. Ber.* **109,** 906 (1976).

[621] See Moore, Hernandez, and Chambers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2245 (1978); Pacansky, Chang, Brown, and Schwarz, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2233 (1982); Brady and Shieh, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2499 (1983).

[622] For example, see Perelman and Mizsak, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4988 (1962); Opitz and Koch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 152 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 167].

[623] For reviews of this compound, see Szabo, *Aldrichimca Acta* **10,** 23–29 (1977); Rasmussen and Hassner, *Chem. Rev.* **76,** 389–408 (1976); Graf, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 172–182 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 179–189].

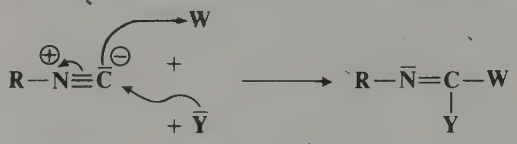
[624] Graf, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **661,** 111 (1963); Bestian, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **27,** 611–634 (1971).

[625] Moriconi and Kelly, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3657 (1966), *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3036 (1968); see also Martin, Carter, and Chitwood, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2225 (1971).

[626] Moriconi and Meyer, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2841 (1971); Malpass and Tweddle, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 874 (1977).

[627] Moriconi, Kelly, and Salomone, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3448 (1968).

[628] For a monograph, see Ugi, "Isonitrile Chemistry," Academic Press, New York; 1971. For reviews, see Walborsky and Periasamy, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 528, pt. 2, pp. 835–887; Hoffmann, Marquarding, Kliimann, and Ugi, in Rappoport, Ref. 270, pp. 853–883.

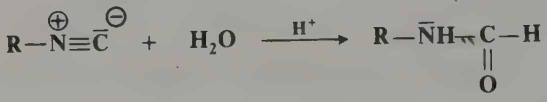


$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}} \quad + W \quad + \overline{Y} \longrightarrow R-\overline{N}=\underset{\displaystyle Y}{\underset{|}{C}}-W$$

83

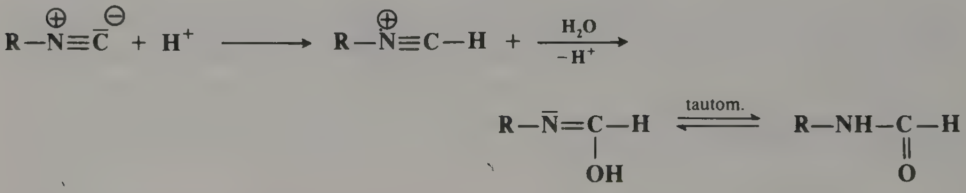
In most of the reactions considered below, **83** undergoes a further reaction, so that the product is of the form $R-\overline{N}H-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-$. See also **9-31.**

6-67 The Addition of Water to Isonitriles
1/*N*,2/*C*-Dihydro-2/*C*-oxo-biaddition



$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}} + H_2O \xrightarrow{H^+} R-\overline{N}H-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-H$$

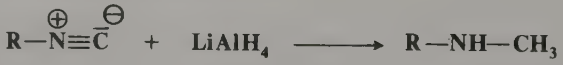
Formamides can be prepared by the acid-catalyzed addition of water to isonitriles. The mechanism is probably[629]



$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}} + H^+ \longrightarrow R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv C-H + \xrightarrow[-H^+]{H_2O}$$

$$R-\overline{N}=\underset{\displaystyle OH}{\underset{|}{C}}-H \overset{\text{tautom.}}{\rightleftharpoons} R-NH-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-H$$

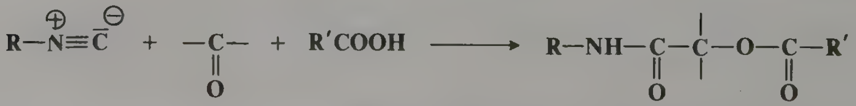
6-68 The Reduction of Isonitriles
1/*N*,2,2,2/*C*-Tetrahydro-biaddition



$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}} + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow R-NH-CH_3$$

Isonitriles have been reduced to N-methylamines with lithium aluminum hydride as well as with other reducing agents.

6-69 The Passerini and Ugi Reactions[630]
1/*N*-Hydro-2/*C*-(α-acyloxyalkyl),2/*C*-oxo-biaddition



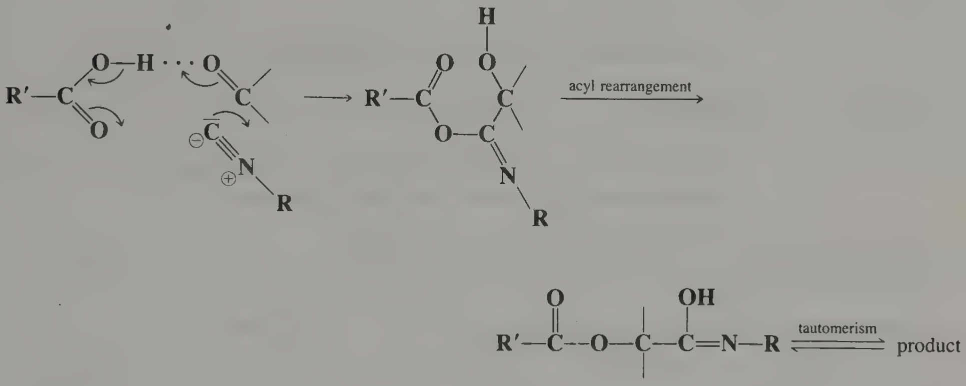
$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\underline{C}} + -\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}- + R'COOH \longrightarrow R-NH-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-O-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R'$$

---

[629] Drenth, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **81,** 319 (1962); Lim and Stein, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 2455 (1971).

[630] For reviews, see Ugi, *Angew, Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 810–819 (1982), **1,** 8–21 (1962) [*Angew Chem.* **94,** 826–836, **74,** 9–22], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **4,** 1–36 (1968); Marquarding, Gokel, Hoffmann, and Ugi, Ref. 628, pp. 133–143; Gokel, Lüdke, and Ugi, Ref. 628, pp. 145–199, 252–254.

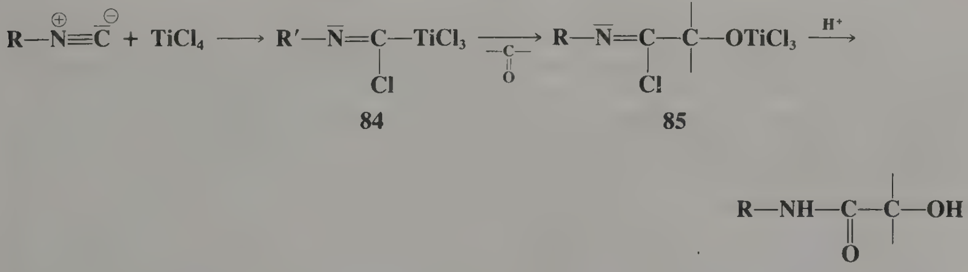
When an isonitrile is treated with a carboxylic acid and an aldehyde or ketone, an α-acyloxy amide is prepared. This is called the *Passerini reaction.* The following mechanism has been postulated:



If ammonia or an amine is also added to the mixture (in which case the reaction is known as the *Ugi reaction,* or the *Ugi four-component condensation,* abbreviated 4 CC), the product is the corresponding bisamide $R'—\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}—NH—\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}—\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}—NH—R$ (from NH_3) or $R'—\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}—NR''—\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}—\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}—NH—R$ (from a primary amine $R''NH_2$). This product probably arises from a reaction between the carboxylic acid, the isonitrile, and the *imine* formed from the aldehyde or ketone and ammonia or the primary amine. The use of an N-protected amino acid or peptide as the carboxylic acid component and/or the use of an isonitrile containing a C-protected carboxyl group allows the reaction to be used for peptide synthesis.[631]

The Ugi reaction can also be carried out with an isonitrile, an aldehyde or ketone, and ammonia or an amine, but with some other YH substituting for the carboxylic acid, e.g., H_2O, HN_3, HNCO.

In a variation of the Passerini reaction, isonitriles are treated with $TiCl_4$ to give adducts **84** which add to aldehydes or ketones to give **85,** which are hydrolyzed to α-hydroxy amides.[632]



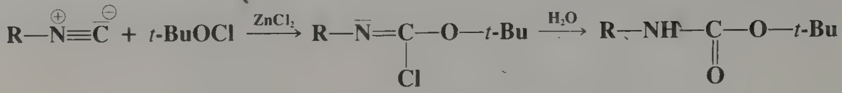
$$R—\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}} + TiCl_4 \longrightarrow \underset{\textbf{84}}{R'—\bar{N}=\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{C}—TiCl_3} \xrightarrow[\underset{O}{\|}]{—C—} \underset{\textbf{85}}{R—\bar{N}=\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{C}—\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}—OTiCl_3} \xrightarrow{H^+} R—NH—\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}—\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}—OH$$

---

[631] For reviews, see Ugi, in Gross and Meienhofer, "The Peptides," vol. 2, pp. 365–381, Academic Press, New York, 1980, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **5,** 229–261 (1971), *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **30,** 289–311 (1969). Gokel, Hoffmann, Kleimann, Klusacek, Lüdke, Marquarding, and Ugi, Ref. 628, pp. 201–215. See also Eberle, Lagerlund, Ugi, and Urban, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 977 (1978); Hoyng, and Patel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4795 (1980).

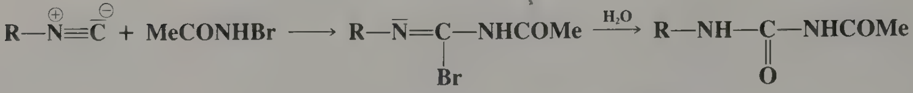
[632] Schiess and Seebach, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 1618 (1983).

6-70 The Addition of O- and N-Halides to Isonitriles



$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}} + t\text{-BuOCl} \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} R-\bar{N}=\underset{\displaystyle Cl}{\underset{|}{C}}-O-t\text{-Bu} \xrightarrow{H_2O} R-NH-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-O-t\text{-Bu}$$

1/*N*-Hydro-2/*C*-butoxy,2/*C*-oxo-biaddition



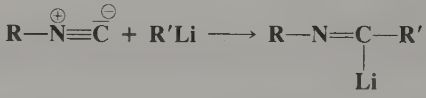
$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}} + MeCONHBr \longrightarrow R-\bar{N}=\underset{\displaystyle Br}{\underset{|}{C}}-NHCOMe \xrightarrow{H_2O} R-NH-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-NHCOMe$$

1/*N*-Hydro-2/*C*-acylamino,2/C-oxo-biaddition

Alkyl hypochlorites and N-halo amides add to isonitriles to give, after hydrolysis, carbamates and N-acylureas (ureides), respectively.[633]

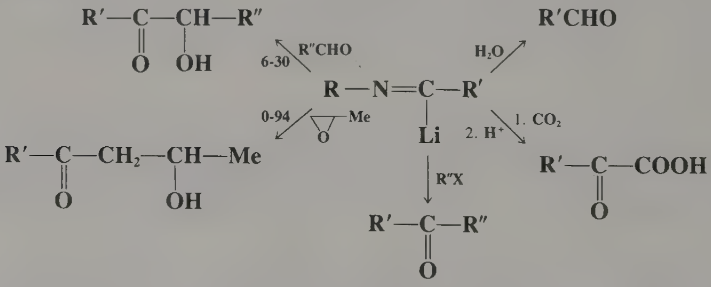
6-71 The Formation of Metalated Aldimines

1/1/Lithio-alkyl-addition



$$R-\overset{\oplus}{N}\equiv\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}} + R'Li \longrightarrow R-N=\underset{\displaystyle Li}{\underset{|}{C}}-R'$$

Isonitriles that do not contain an α-hydrogen react with alkyllithium compounds, as well as with Grignard reagents, to give lithium (or magnesium) aldimines.[634] These metalated aldimines are versatile nucleophiles and react with various substrates as follows (see also **8-27**):



The reaction therefore constitutes a method for converting an organometallic compound R′M to an aldehyde R′CHO (see also **2-31**), an α-keto acid,[635] a ketone R′COR (see also **2-31**), an α-hydroxy ketone, or a β-hydroxy ketone. In each case the C=N bond is hydrolyzed to a C=O bond (reaction **6-2**).

OS **51,** 31.

---

[633] Okano, Ito, Shono, and Oda, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **36,** 1314 (1963). See also Yamada, Wada, Tanimoto, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **55,** 2480 (1982).

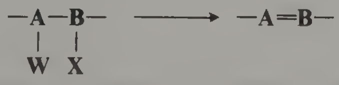
[634] Niznik, Morrison, and Walborsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 600 (1974); Hirowatari and Walborsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 604 (1974); Marks and Walborsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5405 (1981), **47,** 52 (1982). See also Walborsky and Ronman, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 731 (1978).

[635] For a review of the synthesis and properties of α-keto acids, see Cooper, Ginos, and Meister, *Chem. Rev.* **83,** 321–358 (1983).

17

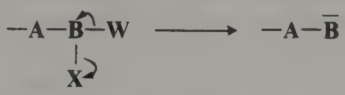
ELIMINATIONS

When two groups are lost from adjacent atoms so that a new double (or triple) bond is formed the



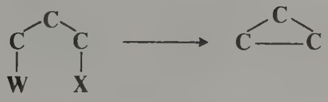
$$\underset{\substack{|\\W}}{-A}-\underset{\substack{|\\X}}{B}- \longrightarrow -A{=}B-$$

reaction is called β *elimination;* one atom is the α-, the other the β-atom. In an α elimination both groups are lost from the same atom to give a carbene (or a nitrene):



$$-A-\underset{\substack{|\\X}}{B}-W \longrightarrow -A-\overline{B}$$

In a γ elimination, a three-membered ring is formed:



Some of these processes were discussed in Chapter 10. Another type of elimination involves the expulsion of a fragment from within a chain or ring (X—Y—Z → X—Z + Y). Such reactions are called *extrusion reactions*. This chapter discusses β elimination and (beginning on p. 937) extrusion reactions; however, β eliminations in which X and W are both hydrogen are oxidation reactions and are treated in Chapter 19.

MECHANISMS AND ORIENTATION

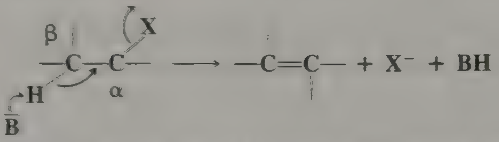
β elimination reactions may be divided into two types; one type taking place largely in solution, the other (pyrolytic eliminations) mostly in the gas phase. In the reactions in solution one group leaves with its electrons and the other without, the latter most often being hydrogen. In these cases we refer to the former as the leaving group or nucleofuge. For pyrolytic eliminations there are two principal mechanisms, one pericyclic and the other a free-radical pathway. A few photochemical eliminations are also known (the most important is Norrish type II cleavage of ketones, p. 214), but these are not generally of synthetic importance[1] and will not be discussed further. In most β eliminations the new bonds are C═C or C≡C; our discussion of mechanisms is largely confined to these cases.[2] Mechanisms in solution (E2, E1, E1cB) are discussed first.

---

[1] For synthetically useful examples of Norrish type II cleavage, see Neckers, Kellogg, Prins, and Schoustra, *J. Org. Chem.* **36**, 1838 (1971).

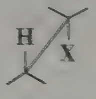
The E2 Mechanism

In the E2 mechanism (elimination, bimolecular), the two groups depart simultaneously, with the proton being pulled off by a base:

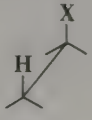


The mechanism thus takes place in one step and kinetically is second order: first order in substrate and first order in base. It is analogous to the SN2 mechanism (p. 256) and often competes with it. With respect to the substrate, the difference between the two pathways is whether the species with the unshared pair attacks the carbon (and thus acts as a nucleophile) or the hydrogen (and thus acts as a base). As in the case of the SN2 mechanism, the leaving group may be positive or neutral and the base may be negatively charged or neutral.

Among the evidence for the existence of the E2 mechanism are: (1) the reaction displays the proper second-order kinetics; (2) when the leaving hydrogen is replaced by deuterium in second-order eliminations, there is an isotope effect of from 3 to 8, consistent with breaking of this bond in the rate-determining step.[3] However, neither of these results alone could prove an E2 mechanism, since both are compatible with other mechanisms also (e.g., see E1cB p. 882). The most compelling evidence for the E2 mechanism is found in stereochemical studies.[4] As will be illustrated in the examples below, the E2 mechanism is stereospecific: the five atoms involved (including the base) in the transition state must be in one plane. There are two ways for this to happen. The H and X may be trans to one another (**A**) with a dihedral angle of 180°, or they may be cis (**B**) with a dihedral angle of 0°.[5] Conformation **A** is called *anti-periplanar*, and this type of elimination, in



A



B

---

[2] For monographs on elimination mechanisms, see Saunders and Cockerill, "Mechanisms of Elimination Reactions," Wiley, New York, 1973; Banthorpe, "Elimination Reactions," American Elsevier, New York, 1963. For reviews, see Aleskerov, Yufit, and Kucherov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47**, 134–147 (1978); Cockerill and Harrison, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement A," pt. 1, pp. 153–221, Wiley, New York, 1977; Willi, *Chimia* **31**, 93–101 (1977); More O'Ferrall, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Halogen Bond," pt. 2, pp. 609–675, Wiley, New York, 1973; Cockerill, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemicals Kinetics," vol. 9, pp. 163–372, American Elsevier, New York, 1973; Saunders, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9**, 19–25 (1976); Stirling, *Essays Chem.* **5**, 123–149 (1973); Bordwell, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5**, 374–381 (1972); Fry, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **1**, 163–210 (1972); LeBel, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **3**, 195–290 (1971); Bunnett, *Survey Prog. Chem.* **5**, 53–93 (1969), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1**, 225–235 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74**, 731–741]; in Patai, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 1, Interscience, New York, 1964, the articles by Saunders, pp. 149–201 (eliminations in solution) and by Maccoll, pp. 203–240 (pyrolytic eliminations); Grigor'eva and Kucherov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31**, 18–35 (1962); Köbrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4**, 49–68 (1965), pp. 59–63 [*Angew. Chem.* **77**, 75–94] (for the formation of triple bonds).

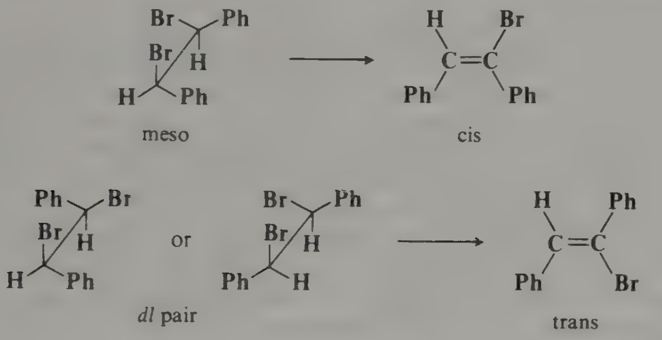
[3] See, for example, Saunders and Edison, *J. Am. Chem. Soc* **82**, 138 (1960); Shiner and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80**, 4095 (1958), **83**, 593 (1961). For a review of isotope effects in elimination reactions, see Fry, Ref. 2.

[4] For reviews, see Bartsch and Závada, *Chem. Rev.* **80**, 453–494 (1980); Coke, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **2**, 269–307 (1972); Sicher, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11**, 200–214 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84**, 177–191], *Pure Appl. Chem.* **25**, 655–666 (1971); Saunders and Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 105–163; Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 217–235; More O'Ferrall, Ref. 2, pp. 630–640.

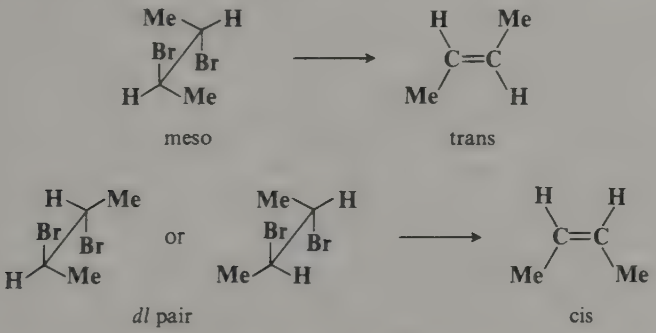
[5] DePuy, Morris, Smith and Smat, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 2421(1965).

which H and X depart in opposite directions, is called *anti elimination*. Conformation **B** is *syn-periplanar*, and this type of elimination, with H and X leaving in the same direction, is called *syn elimination*. Many examples of both kinds have been discovered. In the absence of special effects (discussed below) anti elimination is usually greatly favored over syn elimination, probably because **A** is a staggered conformation (p. 121) and the molecule requires less energy to reach this transition state than it does to reach the eclipsed transition state **B.** A few of the many known examples of predominant or exclusive anti elimination follow.

1. Elimination of HBr from *meso*-1,2-dibromo-1,2-diphenylethane gave *cis*-2-bromostilbene, while the (+) or (−) isomer gave the trans olefin. This stereospecific result, which was obtained



in 1904,[6] demonstrates that in this case elimination is anti. Many similar examples have been discovered since. Obviously, this type of experiment need not be restricted to compounds that have a meso form. Anti elimination requires that an erythro *dl* pair (or either isomer) give the cis olefin, and the threo *dl* pair (or either isomer) give the trans isomer, and this has been found many times. Anti elimination has also been demonstrated in cases where the positive leaving group is not hydrogen. In the reaction of 2,3-dibromobutane with iodide ion, the two bromines are removed (**7-29**). In this case the meso compound gave the trans olefin and the *dl* pair the cis:[7]



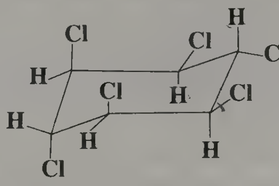
2. In open-chain compounds the molecule can usually adopt that conformation in which H and X are anti-periplanar. However, in cyclic systems this is not always the case. There are nine stereoisomers of 1,2,3,4,5,6-hexachlorocyclohexane: seven meso forms and a *dl* pair (see p. 113).

---

[6] Pfeiffer, Z. *Phys. Chem.* **48,** 40 (1904).

[7] Winstein, Pressman, and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61,** 1645 (1939).

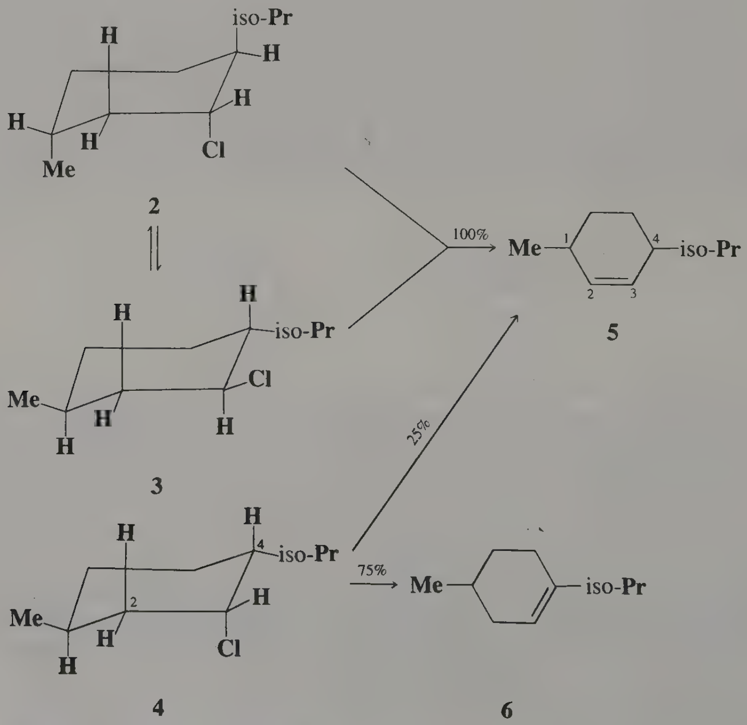
Four of the meso compounds and the *dl* pair (all that were then known) were subjected to elimination of HCl. Only one of these (**1**) has no Cl trans to an H. Of the other isomers, the fastest elimination



1

rate was about three times as fast as the slowest, but the rate for **1** was 7000 times slower than that of the slowest of the other isomers.[8] This result demonstrates that with these compounds anti elimination is greatly favored over syn elimination, though the latter must be taking place on **1**, very slowly, to be sure.

3. The preceding result shows that elimination of HCl in a six-membered ring proceeds best when the H and X are trans to each other. However, there is an additional restriction. Adjacent trans groups on a six-membered ring can be diaxial or diequatorial (p. 125) and the molecule is generally free to adopt either conformation, though one may have a higher energy than the other. Anti-periplanarity of the leaving groups requires that they be diaxial, even if this is the conformation of higher energy. The results with menthyl and neomenthyl chlorides are easily interpretable on this basis. Menthyl chloride has two chair conformations, **2** and **3**. **3**, in which the three substituents



---

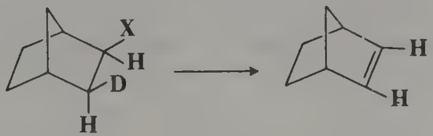
[8] Cristol, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **69**, 338 (1947); Cristol, Hause, and Meek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73**, 674 (1951).

are all equatorial, is the more stable. The more stable chair conformation of neomenthyl chloride is **4,** in which the chlorine is axial; there are axial hydrogens on both C-2 and C-4. The results are: neomenthyl chloride gives rapid E2 elimination and the olefin produced is predominantly **6** (**6**/**5** ratio is about 3:1) in accord with Zaitsev's rule (p. 889). Since an axial hydrogen is available on both sides, this factor does not control the direction of elimination and Zaitsev's rule is free to operate. However, for menthyl chloride, elimination is much slower and the product is entirely the anti-Zaitsev **5.** It is slow because the unfavorable conformation **2** has to be achieved before elimination can take place, and the product is **5** because only on this side is there an axial hydrogen.[9]

4. That anti elimination also occurs in the formation of triple bonds is shown by elimination from *cis*- and *trans*-HOOC—CH═CCl—COOH. In this case the product in both cases is HOOCC≡CCOOH, but the trans isomer reacts about 50 times faster than the cis compound.[10]

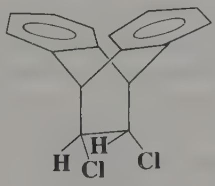
Some examples of syn elimination have been found in molecules where H and X could not achieve an anti-periplanar conformation.

1. The deuterated norbornyl bromide (**7**, X = Br) gave 94% of the product containing no deuterium.[11] Similar results were obtained with other leaving groups and with bicyclo[2.2.2] compounds.[12] In these cases the exo X group cannot achieve a dihedral angle of 180° with the endo β-hydrogen because of the rigid structure of the molecule. The dihedral angle here is about 120°. These leaving groups prefer syn elimination with a dihedral angle of about 0° to anti elimination with an angle of about 120°.



7

2. The molecule **8** is a particularly graphic example of the need for a planar transition state. In **8** each Cl has an adjacent hydrogen trans to it, and if planarity of leaving groups were not



8

---

[9] Hughes, Ingold, and Rose, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3839 (1953).

[10] Michael, J. *Prakt. Chem.* **52,** 308 (1895). See also Marchese, Naso, and Modena, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 958 (1968).

[11] Kwart, Takeshita, and Nyce, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 2606 (1964).

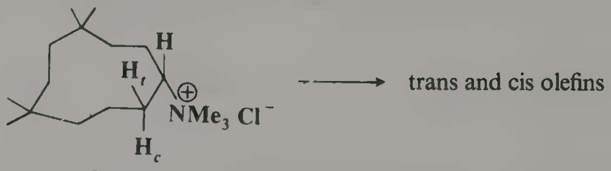
[12] For example, see Bird, Cookson, Hudec, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.* 410 (1963); Stille, Sonnenberg, and Kinstle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4922 (1966); Coke and Cooke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc,* **89,** 6701 (1967); DePuy, Naylor, and Beckman, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2750 (1970); Brown and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 200 (1970); Sicher, Pánkova, Závada, Kniežo, and Orahovats, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **36,** 3128 (1971).

required, anti elimination could easily take place. However, the crowding of the rest of the molecule forces the dihedral angle to be about 120°, and elimination of HCl from **8** is much slower than from corresponding nonbridged compounds.[13] (Note that syn elimination from **8** is even less likely than anti elimination.) Syn elimination can take place from the trans isomer of **8** (dihedral angle about 0°); this isomer reacted about eight times faster than **8.**[13]

The examples so far given illustrate two points. (1) Anti elimination *requires* a dihedral angle of 180°. When this angle cannot be achieved, anti elimination is greatly slowed or prevented entirely. (2) For the simple systems so far discussed syn elimination is not found to any significant extent unless anti elimination is greatly diminished by failure to achieve the 180° angle.

As noted in Chapter 4 (p. 135), six-membered rings are the only ones among rings of four to thirteen members in which strain-free anti-periplanar conformations can be achieved. It is not surprising, therefore, that syn elimination is least common in six-membered rings. Cooke and Coke subjected cycloalkyltrimethylammonium hydroxides to elimination (**7-6**) and found the following percentages of syn elimination with ring size: four-membered, 90%; five-membered, 46%; six-membered, 4%; seven-membered, 31 to 37%.[14] It should be noted that the NMe_3^+ group has a greater tendency to syn elimination than do other common leaving groups such as OTs, Cl, and Br.

Other examples of syn elimination have been found in medium-ring compounds, where both cis and trans olefins are possible (p. 111). As an illustration, we can look at experiments performed by Závada, Svoboda, and Sicher.[15] These workers subjected 1,1,4,4-tetramethyl-7-cyclodecyltrimethylammonium chloride (**9**) to elimination and obtained mostly *trans*- but also some *cis*-tetramethylcyclodecenes as products. (Note that *trans*-cyclodecenes, though stable, are less stable than the cis isomers). In order to determine the stereochemistry of the reaction, they repeated the elimination, this time using deuterated substrates. They found that when **9** was deuterated in the trans position (H_t = D), there was a substantial isotope effect in the formation of *both* cis and trans olefins, but when **9** was deuterated in the cis position (H_c = D), there was *no* isotope effect in the formation of either olefin. Since an isotope effect is expected for an E2 mechanism,[16] these results indicated that *only* the trans hydrogen (H_t) was lost, whether the product was the cis or the trans isomer.[17] This in turn means that *the cis isomer must have been formed by anti elimination and the trans isomer by syn elimination.* (Anti elimination could take place from approximately the conformation shown, but for syn elimination the molecule must twist into a conformation in which the C—H_t and C—NMe_3^+ bonds are syn-periplanar.) This remarkable result, called the *syn–anti dichotomy,* has also been demonstrated by other types of evidence.[18] The fact that syn



9

[13] Cristol and Hause, *J. Am. Chem Soc.* **74,** 2193 (1952).

[14] Cooke and Coke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5556 (1968). See also Coke, Smith, and Britton *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 4323 (1975).

[15] Závada, Svoboda, and Sicher, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1627 (1966), *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **33,** 4027 (1968).

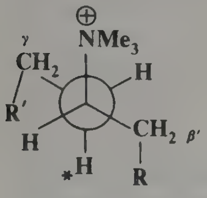
[16] Other possible mechanisms, such as E1cB (p. 882) or α′,β elimination (p. 908), were ruled out in all these cases by other evidence.

[17] This conclusion has been challenged by Coke, Ref. 4.

[18] Sicher, Závada, and Krupička, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1619 (1966); Sicher and Závada, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **32,** 2122 (1967); Závada and Sicher, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **32,** 3701 (1967). For a review, see Bartsch and Závada, Ref. 4.

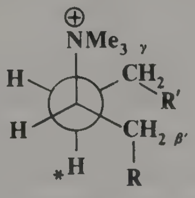
elimination in this case predominates over anti (as indicated by the formation of trans isomer in greater amounts than cis) has been explained by conformational factors.[19] The syn–anti dichotomy has also been found in other medium-ring systems (8- to 12-membered),[20] though the effect is greatest for 10-membered rings. With leaving groups,[21] the extent of this behavior decreases in the order $\text{NMe}_3^+ > \text{OTs} > \text{Br} > \text{Cl}$, which parallels steric requirements. When the leaving group is uncharged, syn elimination is favored by strong bases and by weakly ionizing solvents.[22]

Syn elimination and the syn–anti dichotomy have also been found in open-chain systems, though to a lesser extent than in medium-ring compounds. For example, in the conversion of 3-hexyl-4-*d*-trimethylammonium ion to 3-hexene with potassium *sec*-butoxide, about 67% of the reaction followed the syn–anti dichotomy.[23] The effects of leaving group, base strength, and solvents are similar. In general syn elimination in open-chain systems is only important in cases where certain types of steric effect are present. One such type is compounds in which substituents are found on both the β′- and the γ-carbons (the unprimed letter refers to the branch in which the elimination takes place). The factors that cause these results are not completely understood, but the following conformational effects have been proposed as a partial explanation.[24] The two anti- and two syn-periplanar conformations are, for a quaternary ammonium salt:



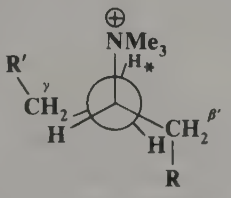
C

anti ⟶ trans



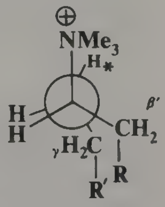
D

anti ⟶ cis



E

syn ⟶ trans



F

syn ⟶ cis

In order for an E2 mechanism to take place a base must approach the proton marked *. In **C** this proton is shielded on both sides by R and R′. In **D** the shielding is on only one side. Therefore, when anti elimination does take place in such systems, it should give more cis product than trans. Also, when the normal anti elimination pathway is hindered sufficiently to allow the syn pathway to compete, the anti → trans route should be diminished more than the anti → cis route. When syn elimination begins to appear, it seems clear that **E**, which is less eclipsed than **F**, should be the favored pathway and syn elimination should generally give the trans isomer. In general, deviations from the syn–anti dichotomy are greater on the trans side than on the cis. Thus, trans olefins are formed partly or mainly by syn elimination, but cis olefins are formed entirely by anti elimination. Predominant syn elimination has also been found in compounds of the form

---

[19] For discussions, see Ref. 4.

[20] For example, see Coke and Mourning, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5561 (1968), where the experiment was performed on cyclooctyltrimethylammonium hydroxide, and *trans*-cyclooctene was formed by a 100% syn mechanism, and *cis*-cyclooctene by a 51% syn and 49% anti mechanism.

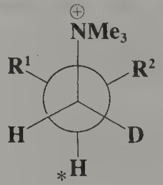
[21] For examples with other leaving groups, see Závada, Krupička, and Sicher, *Chem. Commun.* 66 (1967), *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **33,** 1393 (1968); Sicher, Jan, and Schlosser, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 926 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 1012]; Závada and Pánková, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **45,** 2171 (1980).

[22] See, for example, Sicher and Závada, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **33,** 1278 (1968).

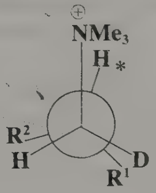
[23] Bailey and Saunders, *Chem. Commun.* 1598 (1968), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6904 (1970). For other examples of syn elimination and the syn–anti dichotomy in open-chain systems, see Pánková, Sicher, and Závada, *Chem. Commun.* 394 (1967); Pánková, Vítek, Vašíčková, Řeřicha, and Závada, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **37,** 3456 (1972); Schlosser and An, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **62,** 1194 (1979); Sugita, Nakagawa, Nishimoto, Kasai, and Ichikawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 871 (1979); Pánková, Kocián, Krupička, and Závada, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **48,** 2944 (1983).

[24] Bailey and Saunders, Ref. 23; Chiao and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 6699 (1977).

$R^1R^2CHCHDNMe_3^+$, where R^1 and R^2 are both bulky.[25] In this case also the conformation leading to syn elimination (**H**) is less strained than **G**, which gives anti elimination. **G** has three bulky groups (including NMe_3^+) in the gauche position to each other.

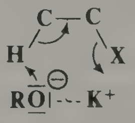


G



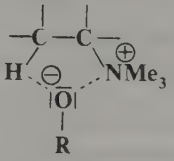
H

It was mentioned above that weakly ionizing solvents promote syn elimination when the leaving group is uncharged. This is probably caused by ion pairing, which is greatest in nonpolar solvents.[26] Ion pairing can cause syn elimination with an uncharged leaving group by means of the transition state shown in **10.**



10

This effect was graphically illustrated by elimination from 1,1,4,4-tetramethyl-7-cyclodecyl bromide.[27] The ratio of syn to anti elimination when this compound was treated with *t*-BuOK in the nonpolar benzene was 55.0. But when the crown ether dicyclohexano-18-crown-6 (p. 77) was added (this compound selectively removes K^+ from the *t*-BuO^- K^+ ion pair and thus leaves *t*-BuO^- as a free ion), the syn/anti ratio decreased to 0.12. Large decreases in the syn/anti ratio on addition of the crown ether were also found with the corresponding tosylate and with other nonpolar solvents.[28] However, with positively charged leaving groups the effect is reversed. Here, ion pairing *increases* the amount of anti elimination.[29] In this case a relatively free base (e.g., PhO^-) can be attracted to the leaving group, putting it in a favorable position for attack on the syn β-hydrogen, while ion pairing would reduce this attraction.



We can conclude that anti elimination is generally favored in the E2 mechanism, but that steric (inability to form the anti-periplanar transition state), conformational, ion-pairing, and other factors cause syn elimination to intervene (and even predominate) in some cases.

---

[25] Tao and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 3183 (1983).

[26] For reviews of ion pairing in this reaction, see Bartsch and Závada, Ref. 4; Bartsch, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 239–245 (1975).

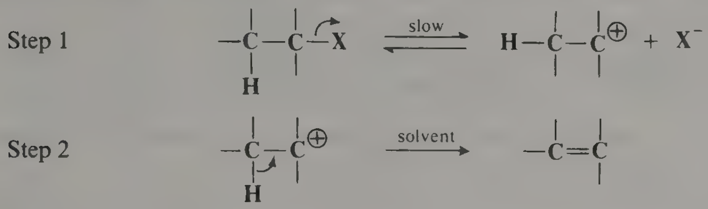
[27] Svoboda, Hapala, and Závada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 265 (1972).

[28] For other examples of the effect of ion pairing, see Bayne and Snyder, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 571 (1971); Bartsch and Wiegers, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3819 (1972); Bartsch, Mintz, and Parlman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4249 (1974); Fiandanese, Marchese, Naso, and Sciacovelli, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1336 (1973); Borchardt, Swanson, and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3918 (1974); Mano, Sera, and Maruyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 1758 (1974); Závada, Pánková, and Svoboda, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **41,** 3778 (1976); Baciocchi, Ruzziconi, and Sebastiani, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3718 (1979); Croft and Bartsch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2737 (1983).

[29] Borchardt and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3912 (1974).

The E1 Mechanism

The E1 mechanism is a two-step process in which the rate-determining step is ionization of the substrate to give a carbocation that rapidly loses a β-proton to a base, usually the solvent:

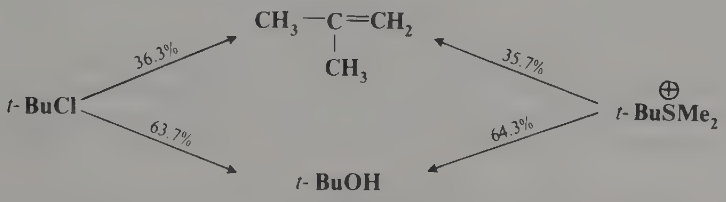


The E1 mechanism normally operates without an *added* base. Just as the E2 mechanism is analogous to and competes with the SN2, so is the E1 mechanism related to the SN1. In fact, the first step of the E1 is exactly the same as that of the SN1 mechanism. The second step differs in that the solvent pulls a proton from the β-carbon of the carbocation rather than attacking it at the positively charged carbon, as in the SN1 process. In a pure E1 reaction (i.e., without ion pairs, etc.) the product should be completely nonstereospecific, since the carbocation is free to adopt its most stable conformation before giving up the proton.

Some of the evidence for the E1 mechanism is as follows:

1. The reaction exhibits first-order kinetics (in substrate) as expected. Of course the solvent is not expected to appear in the rate equation, even if it were involved in the rate-determining step (p. 194), but this point can be easily checked by adding a small amount of the conjugate base of the solvent. It is generally found that such an addition does not increase the rate of the reaction. If this more powerful base does not enter into the rate-determining step, it is unlikely that the solvent does. An example of an E1 mechanism with a rate-determining second step (proton transfer) has been reported.[30]

2. If the reaction is performed on two molecules that differ only in the leaving group (for example, t-BuCl and t-Bu$\overset{\oplus}{S}$Me$_2$), the rates should obviously be different, since they depend on the ionizing ability of the molecule. However, once the carbocation is formed, if the solvent and the temperature are the same, it should suffer the same fate in both cases, since the nature of the leaving group does not affect the second step. This means that *the ratio of elimination to substitution should be the same*. The compounds mentioned in the example were solvolyzed at 65.3°C in 80% aqueous ethanol with the following results:[31]



Although the rates were greatly different (as expected with such different leaving groups), the product ratios were the same, within 1%. If this had taken place by a second-order mechanism, the nucleophile would not be expected to have the same ratio of preference for attack at the β-hydrogen compared to attack at a *neutral* chloride as for attack at the β-hydrogen compared to attack at a *positive* SMe_2 group.

---

[30] Baciocchi, Clementi, Sebastiani, and Ruzziconi, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 32 (1979).
[31] Cooper, Hughes, Ingold, and MacNulty, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2038 (1948).

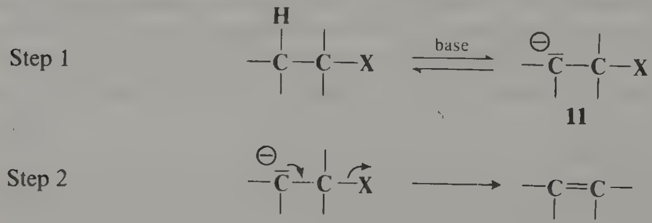
3. Many reactions carried out under first-order conditions on systems where E2 elimination is anti proceed quite readily to give olefins where a cis hydrogen must be removed, often in preference to the removal of a trans hydrogen. For example, menthyl chloride (**2**, p. 876), which by the E2 mechanism gave only **5**, under E1 conditions gave 68% **6** and 32% **5**, since the steric nature of the hydrogen is no longer a factor here, and the more stable olefin (Zaitsev's rule, p. 889) is predominantly formed.

4. If carbocations are intermediates, we should expect rearrangements with suitable substrates. These have often been found in elimination reactions performed under E1 conditions.

E1 reactions can involve ion pairs, just as is true for SN1 reactions (p. 263).[32] This effect is naturally greatest for nondissociating solvents: it is least in water, greater in ethanol, and greater still in acetic acid. It has been proposed that the ion-pair mechanism (p. 266) extends to elimination reactions too, and that the SN1, SN2, E1, and E2 mechanisms possess in common an ion-pair intermediate, at least occasionally.[33]

The E1cB Mechanism[34]

In the E1 mechanism, X leaves first and then H. In the E2 mechanism the two groups leave at the same time. There is a third possibility: the H leaves first and then the X. This is a two-step process, called the *E1cB mechanism*, or the *carbanion mechanism*, since the intermediate is a carbanion:



The name E1cB comes from the fact that it is the conjugate base of the substrate that is giving up the leaving group (see the SN1cB mechanism, p. 314). We can distinguish three limiting cases: (1) The carbanion returns to starting material faster than it forms product: step 1 is reversible. (2) Step 1 is the slow step, and formation of product is faster than return of the carbanion to starting material. In this case step 1 is essentially irreversible. (3) Step 1 is rapid, and the carbanion goes slowly to product. This case occurs only with the most stable carbanions. Here, too, step 1 is essentially irreversible. These cases have been given the designations: (1) $(E1cB)_R$, (2) $(E1cB)_I$, and (3) $(E1)_{anion}$. Their characteristics are listed in Table 1.[35] Investigations of the reaction order are generally not very useful (except for case 3 which is first order), because cases 1 and 2 are second order and thus difficult or impossible to distinguish from the E2 mechanism by this pro-

---

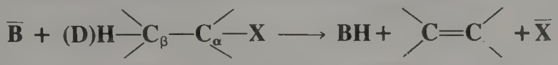
[32] Cocivera and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1702 (1963); Smith and Goon, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3127 (1969); Bunnett and Eck, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 897 (1971); Sridharan and Vitullo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8093 (1977); Seib, Shiner, Sendijarević, and Humski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 8133 (1978); Jansen, Koshy, Mangru, and Tidwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3863 (1981); Coxon, Simpson, and Ussher, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3631 (1982).

[33] Sneen and Robbins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3100 (1969); Sneen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 46–53 (1973). See, however, McLennan, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1577 (1972).

[34] For reviews, see Cockerill and Harrison, Ref. 2, pp. 158–178; Hunter, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **7**(3), 19–26 (1973); McLennan, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **21,** 490–506 (1967).

[35] Cockerill and Harrison, Ref. 2, p. 161.

TABLE 1 Kinetic predictions for base-induced β-eliminations[35]



$$\bar{B} + (D)H{-}C_\beta{-}C_\alpha{-}X \longrightarrow BH + C{=}C + \bar{X}$$

Mechanism	Kinetic order[a]	β-hydrogen exchange faster than elimination	General or specific base catalysis	k_H/k_D	Electron withdrawal at C_β[d]	Electron release at C_α[d]	Leaving-group isotope effect or element effect
$(E1)_{anion}$	1	Yes	General[c]	1.0	Rate decrease	Rate increase	Substantial
$(ElcB)_R$	2	Yes	Specific	1.0	Small rate increase	Small rate increase	Substantial
$(E1cB)_{ip}$	2	No	General[e]	$1.0 \rightarrow 1.2$	Small rate increase	Small rate increase	Substantial
$(E1cB)_I$	2	No	General	$2 \rightarrow 8$	Rate increase	Little effect	Small to negligible
E2[b]	2	No	General	$2 \rightarrow 8$	Rate increase	Small rate increase	Small

[a] All mechanisms exhibit first-order kinetics in substrate.

[b] Only transition states with considerable carbanion character considered in this table.

[c] Specific base catalysis predicted if extent of substrate ionization reduced from almost complete.

[d] Effect on rate assuming no change in mechanism is caused; steric factors upon substitution at C_α and C_β have not been considered. The rate predictions are geared to substituent effects such as these giving rise to Hammett reaction constants on β- and α-aryl substitution.

[e] Depends on whether ion pair assists in removal of leaving group.

cedure.[36] We would expect the greatest likelihood of finding the E1cB mechanism in substrates that have (a) a poor nucleofuge and (b) an acidic hydrogen, and most investigations have concerned such substrates. The following is some of the evidence in support of the E1cB mechanism.

1. The first step of the $(ElcB)_R$ mechanism involves a reversible exchange of protons between the substrate and the base. In that case, if deuterium is present in the base, then recovered starting material should contain deuterium. This was found to be the case in the treatment of $Cl_2C{=}CHCl$ with NaOD to give $ClC{\equiv}CCl$. When the reaction was stopped before completion, there *was* deuterium in the recovered olefin.[37] A similar result was found for pentahaloethanes.[38] These substrates are relatively acidic. In both cases the electron-withdrawing halogens increase the acidity of the hydrogen, and in the case of trichloroethylene there is the additional factor that a hydrogen on an sp^2 carbon is more acidic than one on an sp^3 carbon (p. 234). Thus, the ElcB mechanism is more likely to be found in eliminations yielding triple bonds than in those giving double bonds. Another likely place for the E1cB mechanism should be in reaction of a substrate like $PhCH_2CH_2Br$, since the carbanion is stabilized by resonance with the phenyl group. Nevertheless, no deuterium exchange was found here.[39] If this type of evidence is a guide, then it may be inferred that the

---

[36] $(E1cB)_I$ cannot be distinguished from E2 by this means, because it has the identical rate law: Rate = k[substrate][B^-]. The rate law for $(ElcB)_R$ is different: Rate = k[substrate][B^-]/[BH], but this is often not useful because the only difference is that the rate is also dependent (inversely) on the concentration of the conjugate acid of the base, and this is usually the solvent, so that changes in its concentration cannot be measured.

[37] Houser, Bernstein, Miekka, and Angus, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 6201 (1955).

[38] Hine, Wiesboeck, and Ghirardelli, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1219 (1961); Hine, Wiesboeck, and Ramsay, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1222 (1961).

[39] Skell and Hauser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **67,** 1661 (1945).

$(E1cB)_R$ mechanism is quite rare, at least for eliminations with common leaving groups such as Br. Cl, or OTs, which yield $C{=}C$ double bonds.

2. When the reaction

$$p\text{-}NO_2C_6H_4\text{—}CH_2\text{—}CH_2\text{—}NR_3^+ + B^- \longrightarrow p\text{-}NO_2C_6H_4\text{—}CH{=}CH_2 + BH + NR_3$$

was carried out in water containing acetohydroxamate buffers, a plot of the rate against the buffer concentration was curved and the rate leveled off at high buffer concentrations, indicating a change in rate-determining step.[40] This rules out an E2 mechanism, which has only one step. When D_2O was used instead of H_2O as solvent, there was an initial inverse solvent isotope effect of 7.7 (the highest inverse solvent isotope effect yet reported). That is, the reaction took place faster in D_2O than in H_2O. This is compatible only with an E1cB mechanism in which the proton-transfer step is not entirely rate-determining. The isotope effect arises from a partitioning of the carbanion intermediate **11.** This intermediate either can go to product or it can revert to starting compound, which requires taking a proton from the solvent. In D_2O the latter process is slower (because the O—D bond of D_2O cleaves less easily than the O—H bond of H_2O), reducing the rate at which **11** returns to starting compound. With the return reaction competing less effectively, the rate of conversion of **11** to product is increased.

3. We have predicted that the E1cB mechanism would be most likely to be found with substrates containing acidic hydrogens and poor leaving groups. Compounds of the type ZCH_2CH_2OPh, where Z is an electron-withdrawing group (e.g., NO_2, SMe_2^+, $ArSO_2$, CN, COOR, etc.), belong to this category, because OPh is a very poor leaving group (p. 311). There is much evidence to show that the mechanism here is indeed E1cB.[41] Isotope effects, measured for $MeSOCD_2CH_2OPh$ and $Me_2\overset{\oplus}{S}CD_2CH_2OPh$ with NaOD in D_2O, are about 0.7. This is compatible with an $(E1cB)_R$ mechanism, but not with an E2 mechanism for which an isotope effect of perhaps 5 might be expected (of course, an E1 mechanism is precluded by the extremely poor nucleofugal ability of OPh). The fact that k_H/k_D is less than the expected value of 1 is attributable to solvent and secondary isotope effects. Among other evidence for an E1cB mechanism in these systems is that changes in the identity of Z had a dramatic effect on the relative rates: a span of 10^{11} between NO_2 and COO^-. Note that elimination from substrates of the type $RCOCH_2CH_2Y$ is the reverse of Michael-type addition to $C{=}C$ bonds. We have seen (p. 664) that such addition involves initial attack by a nucleophile Y and subsequent attack by a proton. Thus the initial loss of a proton from substrates of this type (i.e., an E1cB mechanism) is in accord with the principle of microscopic reversibility.[42] It has been suggested that all base-initiated elimination reactions wherein the proton is activated by strong electron-withdrawing groups proceed by carbanion mechanisms.[43] It may also be recalled that benzyne formation (p. 581) can also occur by such a process.

Of the three cases of the E1cB mechanism, the one most difficult to distinguish from E2 is $(E1cB)_I$. One way to make this distinction is to study the effect of a change in leaving group. This was done in the case of the three acenaphthylenes **12,** where it was found that (1) the three rates were fairly similar, the largest being only about four times that of the smallest, and (2) in compound c (X = Cl, Y = F), the only product contained Cl and no F, i.e., only the poorer nucleofuge F departed while Cl remained.[44] Result (1) rules out all the E1cB mechanisms except $(E1cB)_I$, because the others should all have considerable leaving group effects (Table 1). An ordinary E2 mechanism

---

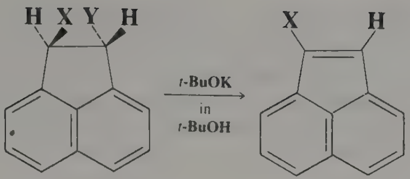
[40] Keeffe and Jencks, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 265 (1983).

[41] Crosby and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 671, 679 (1970); Redman and Stirling, *Chem Commun.* 633 (1970); Cann and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 820 (1974). For other examples, see Fedor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 908 (1969); More O'Ferrall and Slae, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 260 (1970); More O'Ferrall, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 268 (1970); Marshall, Thomas, and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1898, 1914 (1977); Kurzawa and Leffek, *Can. J. Chem.* **55,** 1696 (1977).

[42] Patai, Weinstein, and Rappoport, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1741 (1962). See also Hilbert and Fedor, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 452 (1978).

[43] Bordwell, Vestling, and Yee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5950 (1970); Bordwell, Ref. 2.

[44] Baciocchi, Ruzziconi, and Sebastiani, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3237 (1982).

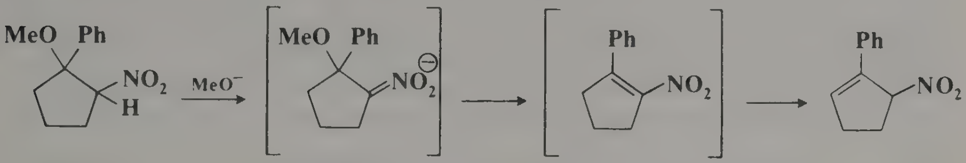


12

	X	Y
a	Br	Cl
b	Cl	Cl
c	Cl	F

should also have a large leaving group effect, but an E2 mechanism with substantial carbanionic character (see the next section) might not. However, no E2 mechanism can explain result (2), which can be explained by the fact that an α-Cl is more effective than an α-F in stabilizing the planar carbanion that remains when the proton is lost. Thus (as in the somewhat similar case of aromatic nucleophilic substitution, see p. 587), when X^- leaves in the second step, the one that leaves is not determined by which is the better nucleofuge, but by which has had its β hydrogen removed.[45]

4. An example of an $(E1)_{anion}$ mechanism has been found with the substrate **13**, which when treated with methoxide ion undergoes elimination to **15**, which is unstable under the reaction

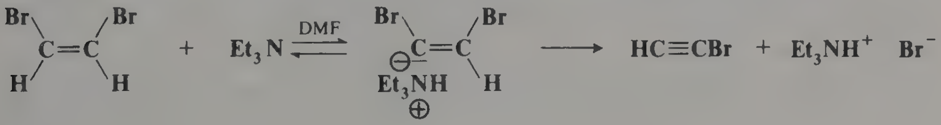


13 **14** **15**

conditions and rearranges as shown.[46] Among the evidence for the proposed mechanism in this case were kinetic and isotope-effect results, as well as the spectral detection of **14**.[47]

5. In many eliminations to form C=O and C≡N bonds the initial step is loss of a positive group (normally a proton) from the oxygen or nitrogen. These may also be regarded as E1cB processes.

There is evidence that some E1cB mechanisms may involve carbanion ion pairs, e.g.,[48]



---

[45] For other evidence for the existence of the $(E1cB)_I$ mechanism, see Bordwell, Vestling, and Yee, Ref. 43; Fedor and Glave, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 985 (1971); Redman, Thomas, and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1135 (1978); Thibblin, *Chem. Scr.* **15,** 121 (1980); Carey, More O'Ferrall, and Vernon, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1581 (1982); Baciocchi, Ruzziconi, and Sebastiani, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6114 (1983). The $(E1cB)_I$ mechanism has also been claimed for DDT and some of its analogs [McLennan and Wong, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 526, 1373 (1974), *Aust. J. Chem.* **29,** 787 (1976); McLennan, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 932 (1976)], but this has been challenged: MacLaury and Saracino, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3344 (1979). See also Jarczewski, Schroeder, and Leffek, *Pol. J. Chem.* **56,** 521 (1982).

[46] Bordwell, Yee, and Knipe, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5945 (1970).

[47] For other examples of this mechanism, see Rappoport, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3601 (1968); Berndt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 613 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 567]; Albeck, Hoz, and Rappoport, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1248 (1972), 628 (1975).

[48] Kwok, Lee, and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 468 (1969). See also Lord, Naan, and Hall, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 220 (1971); Rappoport and Shohamy, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 2060 (1971); Fiandanese, Marchese, and Naso, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 250 (1972); Koch, Dahlberg, Toczko, and Solsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2029 (1973); Hunter and Shearing, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8333 (1973); Thibblin and Ahlberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 7926 (1977), **101,** 7311 (1979); Thibblin, Bengtsson, and Ahlberg, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1569 (1977).

This case is designated $(E1cB)_{ip}$; its characteristics are shown in Table 1.

We have seen that in the E2 mechanism the hydrogen and nucleofuge must be either anti or syn; a perpendicular arrangement does not give the reaction. There is evidence that this is also true for the E1cB mechanism; i.e., after the hydrogen has left, a nucleofuge that is frozen into a perpendicular arrangement will not leave.[49]

The E1–E2–E1cB Spectrum

In the three mechanisms so far considered the similarities are greater than the differences. In each case there is a leaving group that comes off with its pair of electrons and another group (usually hydrogen) that comes off without them. The only difference is in the order of the steps. It is now generally accepted that there is a spectrum of mechanisms ranging from one extreme, in which the leaving group departs well before the proton (pure E1), to the other extreme, in which the proton comes off first and then, after some time, the leaving group follows (pure E1cB). The *pure* E2 case would be somewhere in the middle, with both groups leaving simultaneously. However, most E2 reactions are not exactly in the middle, but somewhere to one side or the other. For example, the nucleofuge might depart just before the proton. This case may be described as an E2 reaction with a small amount of E1 character. The concept may be expressed by the question: In the transition state, which bond (C—H or C—X) has undergone more cleavage?[50]

One way to determine just where a given reaction stands on the E1–E2–E1cB spectrum is to study isotope effects, which ought to tell something about the behavior of bonds in the transition state.[51] For example, $CH_3CH_2\overset{\oplus}{N}Me_3$ showed a nitrogen isotope effect (k^{14}/k^{15}) of 1.017, while $PhCH_2CH_2\overset{\oplus}{N}Me_3$ gave a corresponding value of 1.009.[52] It would be expected that the phenyl group would move the reaction toward the E1cB side of the line, which means that for this compound the C—N bond is not so greatly broken in the transition state as it is for the unsubstituted one. The isotope effect bears this out, for it shows that in the phenyl compound, the mass of the nitrogen has less effect on the reaction rate than it does in the unsubstituted compound. Similar results have been obtained with $\overset{\oplus}{S}R_2$ leaving groups by the use of $^{32}S/^{34}S$ isotope effects[53] and with Cl ($^{35}Cl/^{37}Cl$).[54] The position of reactions along the spectrum has also been studied from the other side of the newly forming double bond by the use of H/D and H/T isotope effects,[55] although interpretation of these results is clouded by the fact that β-hydrogen isotope effects are expected to change smoothly from small to large to small again as the degree of transfer of the β-hydrogen from the β-carbon to the base increases[56] (recall—p. 198—that isotope effects are greatest when the proton is half-transferred in the transition state), by the possibility of secondary isotope effects (e.g., the presence of a β-deuterium or tritium may cause the leaving group to depart more slowly), and by the possibility of tunneling[57] (see footnote 35 in Chapter 6). Other isotope-effect studies have involved labeled α- or β-carbon, labeled α-hydrogen, or labeled base.[51]

---

[49] Mulzer and Kerkmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3620 (1980).

[50] For discussions, see Cockerill and Harrison, Ref. 2, pp. 178–189; Saunders, *Acc. Chem. Res.*, Ref. 2; Bunnett, Ref. 2; Saunders and Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 47–104; Bordwell, Ref. 2.

[51] For a review, see Fry, Ref. 2. See also Hasan, Sims, and Fry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 3967 (1983).

[52] Ayrey, Bourns, and Vyas, *Can. J. Chem.* **41,** 1759 (1963). Also see Simon and Müllhofer, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 3167 (1963), **97,** 2202 (1964), *Pure Appl. Chem.* **8,** 379, 536 (1964); Smith and Bourns, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 125 (1970).

[53] Saunders and Zimmerman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3789 (1964); Cockerill and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4985 (1967).

[54] Grout, McLennan, and Spackman, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1758 (1977).

[55] For example, see Saunders and Edison, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 138 (1960); Hodnett and Sparapany, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **8,** 385, 537 (1964); Finley and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 898 (1967); Ghanbarpour and Willi, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1295 (1975); Simon and Müllhofer, Ref. 52.

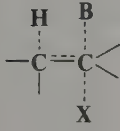
[56] There is controversy as to whether such an effect has been established in this reaction: See Cockerill, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 964 (1967); Blackwell, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 488 (1976).

Another way to study the position of a given reaction on the spectrum involves the use of β-aryl substitution. Since a positive Hammett ρ value is an indication of a negatively charged transition state, the ρ value for substituted β-aryl groups should increase as a reaction moves from E1-like to E1cB-like along the spectrum. This has been shown to be the case in a number of studies;[58] e.g., ρ values of $ArCH_2CH_2X$ increase as the leaving-group ability of X decreases. A typical set of ρ values was: X = I, 2.07; Br, 2.14; Cl, 2.61; SMe_2^+, 2.75; F, 3.12.[59] As we have seen, decreasing leaving-group ability correlates with increasing E1cB character.

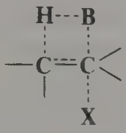
Still another method measures volumes of activation.[60] These are negative for E2 and positive for E1cB mechanisms. Measurement of the activation volume therefore provides a continuous scale for deciding just where a reaction lies on the spectrum.

The E2C Mechanism[61]

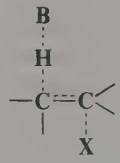
Certain alkyl halides and tosylates undergo E2 eliminations faster when treated with such weak bases as Cl^- in polar aprotic solvents or PhS^- than with the usual E2 strong bases such as RO^- in ROH.[62] In order to explain these results Parker and co-workers have proposed[63] that there is a spectrum[64] of E2 transition states in which the base may interact in the transition state with the α-carbon as well as with the β-hydrogen. At one end of this spectrum is a mechanism (called E2C) in which, in the transition state, the base interacts mainly with the carbon. The E2C mechanism is characterized by strong nucleophiles that are weak bases. At the other extreme is the normal E2 mechanism, here called E2H to distinguish it from E2C, characterized by strong bases. **16** represents



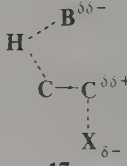
E2C



16



E2H



17

---

[57] For examples of tunneling in elimination reactions, see Miller and Saunders, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4247 (1981), and previous papers in this series. See also Shiner and Smith, Ref. 3; McLennan, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1753 (1977); Fouad and Farrell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4735 (1978); Kwart and Horgan, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 159 (1982); Koth, McLennan, Koch, Tumas, Dobson, and Koch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1930 (1983).

[58] Saunders, Bushman, and Cockerill, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1775 (1968); Oae and Yano, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 5721 (1968); Yano and Oae, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 27, 67 (1970); Baker and Spillett, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 481 (1969); Cockerill and Kendall, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1352 (1973); Blackwell, Buckley, Jolley, and MacGibbon, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 169 (1973); Smith and Tsui, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4760 (1973), *Can J. Chem.* **52,** 749 (1974). See also Yoshida, Yano, and Oae, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 5343 (1971); Smith and Tsui, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 917 (1972), 61 (1973).

[59] DePuy and Froemsdorf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 3710 (1957); DePuy and Bishop, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2532, 2535 (1960).

[60] Brower, Muhsin, and Brower, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 779 (1976).

[61] For reviews, see McLennan, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 2999–3010 (1975); Ford, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 410–415 (1973); Parker, *Chem. Technol.* 297–303 (1971).

[62] For example, see Winstein, Darwish, and Holness, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2915 (1956); de la Mare and Vernon, *J. Chem. Soc.* 41 (1956); Eliel and Ro, *Tetrahedron* **2,** 353 (1958); Bunnett, Davis, and Tanida, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1606 (1962); Kevill, Coppens, and Cromwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1553 (1964); McLennan, *J. Chem Soc. B* 705, 709 (1966); Hayami, Ono, and Kaji, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2727 (1970), *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 1628 (1971).

[63] Parker, Ruane, Biale, and Winstein, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2113 (1968).

[64] This is apart from the E1–E2–E1cB spectrum.

a transition state between these extremes. Additional evidence[65] for the E2C mechanism is derived from Brönsted equation considerations (p. 226), from substrate effects, from isotope effects, and from the effects of solvents on rates.

However, the E2C mechanism has been criticized, and it has been contended that all the experimental results can be explained by the normal E2 mechanism.[66] McLennan has suggested that the transition state is that shown as **17.**[67] An ion-pair mechanism has also been proposed.[68] Although the actual mechanisms involved may be a matter of controversy, there is no doubt that a class of elimination reactions exists that is characterized by second-order attack by weak bases.[69] These reactions also have the following general characteristics:[70] (1) they are favored by good leaving groups; (2) they are favored by polar aprotic solvents; (3) the reactivity order is tertiary > secondary > primary, which is the opposite of the normal E2 order (p. 894); (4) the elimination is always anti (syn elimination is not found), but in cyclohexyl systems, a diequatorial anti elimination is about as favorable as a diaxial anti elimination (unlike the normal E2 reaction, p. 876); (5) they follow Zaitsev's rule (p. 889), where this does not conflict with the requirement for anti elimination.

Orientation of the Double Bond

With some substrates, a β-hydrogen is present on only one carbon and (barring rearrangements) there is no doubt as to the identity of the product. For example, $PhCH_2CH_2Br$ can give only $PhCH{=}CH_2$. However, in many other cases two or three olefinic products are possible. In the simplest such case, a *sec*-butyl compound may give either 1-butene or 2-butene. There are a number of rules that enable us to predict, in many instances, which product will predominantly form.[71]

1. No matter what the mechanism, a double bond does not go to a bridgehead carbon unless the ring sizes are large enough (Bredt's rule, see p. 138). This means, for example, not only that **18** gives only **19** and not **20** (indeed **20** is not a known compound), but also that **21** does not undergo elimination.

---

[65] Lloyd and Parker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5183 (1968), 5029 (1970); Cook, Parker, and Ruane, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5715 (1968); Alexander, Ko, Parker, and Broxton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5049 (1968); Ko and Parker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6447 (1968); Parker, Ruane, Palmer, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem Soc.* **94,** 2228 (1972); Biale, Parker, Stevens, Takahashi, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2235 (1972); Cook, Hutchinson, and Parker, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3029 (1974); Cook, Hutchinson, MacLeod, and Parker, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 534 (1974); Cook, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2173 (1976); Kwart, Wilk, and Chatellier, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 756 (1983); Kwart, Gaffney, and Wilk, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4509 (1983); Muir and Parker, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 1667 (1983).

[66] Anderson, Ang, England, McCann, and McLennan, *Aust. J. Chem.* **22,** 1427 (1969); Bunnett and Baciocchi, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 11 (1967), **35,** 76 (1970); Jackson, McLennan, Short, and Wong, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 2308 (1972); McLennan and Wong, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 881 (1970), *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 279 (1972), 1818 (1974); Bunnett and Eck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1897, 1900 (1973); Ford and Pietsek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2194 (1975); Loupy, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2662 (1975); Miller and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6749 (1979); Bunnett, Sridharan, and Cavin, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1463 (1979); Bordwell and Mrozack, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4813 (1982).

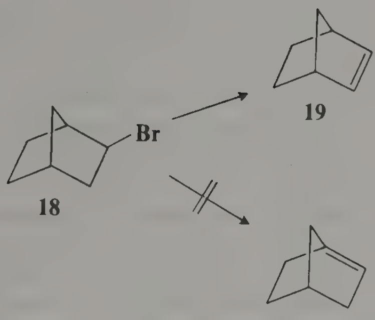
[67] McLennan, Ref. 61, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 293, 298 (1977); McLennan and Lim, *Aust. J. Chem.* **36,** 1821 (1983). For an opposing view, see Kwart and Gaffney, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4502 (1983).

[68] Ford, Ref. 61.

[69] For convenience, we will refer to this class of reactions as E2C reactions, though the actual mechanism is in dispute.

[70] Biale, Parker, Smith, Stevens, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 115 (1970); Biale, Cook, Lloyd, Parker, Stevens, Takahashi, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4735 (1971); Lloyd and Parker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 637 (1971); Lloyd, Muir, and Parker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3015 (1971); Beltrame, Biale, Lloyd, Parker, Ruane, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2240 (1972); Beltrame, Ceccon, and Winstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2315 (1972).

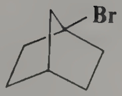
[71] For a review of orientation in cycloalkyl systems, see Hückel and Hanack, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 534–544 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 555–565].



18

19

20



21

2. No matter what the mechanism, if there is a double bond (C═C or C═O) already in the molecule that can be in conjugation with the new double bond, then the conjugated product usually predominates, sometimes even when the stereochemistry is unfavorable (for an exception, see p. 892).

3. In the E1 mechanism the leaving group is gone before the choice is made as to which direction the new double bond takes. Therefore the direction is determined almost entirely by the relative stabilities of the two (or three) possible olefins. In such cases *Zaitsev's rule*[72] *operates.* This rule states that *the double bond goes mainly toward the most highly substituted carbon.* That is, a *sec*-butyl compound gives more 2-butene than 1-butene, and 3-bromo-2,3-dimethylpentane gives more 2,3-dimethyl-2-pentene than either 3,4-dimethyl-2-pentene or 2-ethyl-3-methyl-1-butene. Thus Zaitsev's rule predicts that the olefin predominantly formed will be the one with the largest possible number of alkyl groups on the C═C carbons, and in most cases this is what is found. From heat of combustion data (see p. 22) it is known that olefin stability increases with alkyl substitution, though just why this should be is a matter of conjecture. The most common explanation is hyperconjugation. For E1 eliminations Zaitsev's rule governs the orientation, whether the leaving group is neutral or positive, since, as already mentioned, the leaving group is not present when the choice of direction is made. This statement does not hold for E2 eliminations, and it may be mentioned here, for contrast with later results, that E1 elimination of $Me_2CHCHMe\overset{\oplus}{S}Me_2$ gave 91% of the Zaitsev product and 9% of the other.[73] However, there *are* cases in which the leaving group affects the direction of the double bond in E1 eliminations.[74] This may be attributed to ion pairs; that is, the leaving group is not completely gone when the hydrogen departs. Zaitsev's rule breaks down in cases where the non-Zaitsev product is more stable for steric reasons. For example, E1 or E1-like eliminations of 1,2-diphenyl-2-X-propanes $PhMeCXCH_2Ph$ were reported to give about 50% $CH_2{=}CPhCH_2Ph$, despite the fact that the double bond of the Zaitsev product (PhMeC═CHPh) is conjugated with two benzene rings.[75]

4. For the anti E2 mechanism a trans β-proton is necessary; if this is available in only one direction, that is the way the double bond will form. Because of the free rotation in acyclic systems (except where steric hindrance is great), this is a factor only in cyclic systems. Where trans β-hydrogens are available on two or three carbons, two types of behavior are found, depending on substrate structure and the nature of the leaving group. Some compounds follow Zaitsev's rule and give predominant formation of the most highly substituted olefin, but others follow *Hofmann's rule: the double bond goes mainly toward the least highly substituted carbon.* Though many exceptions are known, the following general statements can be made: In most cases, compounds containing uncharged nucleofuges (those that come off as negative ions) follow Zaitsev's rule, just as they do in E1 elimination, no matter what the structure of the substrate. However, elimination from compounds with charged nucleofuges, e.g., NR_3^+, SR_2^+ (those that come off as neutral molecules), follow Hofmann's rule if the substrate is acyclic,[76] but Zaitsev's rule if the leaving group is attached to a six-membered ring.[77]

---

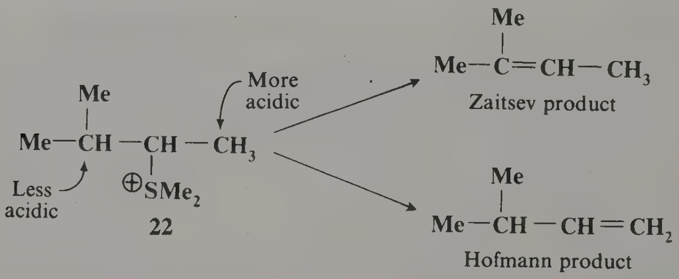
[72] Often given the German spelling: Saytzeff.

[73] de la Mare, *Prog. Stereochem.* **1,** 112 (1954).

[74] Cram and Sahyun, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1257 (1963); Silver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3482 (1961).

[75] Ho and Smith, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 4277 (1970).

Much work has been devoted to searching for the reasons for the differences in orientation. Since Zaitsev orientation almost always gives the thermodynamically more stable isomer, what needs to be explained is why in some cases the less stable Hofmann product predominates. Three explanations have been offered for the change in orientation in acyclic systems with a change from uncharged to charged nucleofuges. The first of these, by Hughes and Ingold,[78] is that Hofmann orientation is caused by the fact that the acidity of the β-hydrogen is decreased by the presence of the electron-donating alkyl groups. For example, under E2 conditions $Me_2CHCHMe\overset{\oplus}{S}Me_2$ (**22**) gives more of the Hofmann product; it is the more acidic hydrogen that is removed by the base.



Of course, the CH_3 hydrogens would still be more acidic than the Me_2CH hydrogen even if a neutral leaving group were present, but the explanation of Hughes and Ingold is that acidity matters with charged and not with neutral leaving groups, because the charged groups exert a strong electron-withdrawing effect, making differences in acidity greater than they are with the less electron-withdrawing neutral groups.[78] The explanation of Bunnett[79] is similar. According to this, the change to a positive leaving group causes the mechanism to shift toward the E1cB end of the spectrum, where there is more C—H bond breaking in the rate-determining step and where, consequently, acidity is more important. In this view, when there is a neutral leaving group, the mechanism is more E1-like, C—X bond breaking is more important, and olefin stability determines the direction of the new double bond. The third explanation, by H. C. Brown, is completely different. In this picture, field effects are unimportant, and the difference in orientation is largely a steric effect caused by the fact that charged groups are usually larger than neutral ones. A CH_3 group is more open to attack than a CH_2R group and a CHR_2 group is still less easily attacked. Of course, these considerations also apply when the leaving group is neutral, but, according to Brown, they are much less important here because the neutral groups are smaller and do not block access to the hydrogens as much. Brown was able to show that Hofmann elimination increases with the size of the leaving group. Thus the percentage of 1-ene obtained from $CH_3CH_2CH_2CHXCH_3$ was as follows (X listed in order of increasing size): Br, 31%; I, 30%; OTs, 48%; $\overset{\oplus}{S}Me_2$, 87%; SO_2Me, 89%; $\overset{\oplus}{N}Me_3$, 98%.[80] Hofmann elimination was also shown to increase with increase in bulk of the substrate.[81] With large enough compounds, Hofmann orientation can be obtained even with halides, e.g., *t*-amyl bromide gave 89% of the Hofmann product. Even those who believe in the acidity explanations concede that these steric factors operate in extreme cases.[82]

---

[76] An example of an acyclic quaternary ammonium salt that follows Zaitsev's rule is found in Feit and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5615 (1970).

[77] For examples where Zaitsev's rule is followed with charged leaving groups in cyclohexyl systems, see Gent and McKenna, *J. Chem. Soc* 137 (1959); Hughes and Wilby, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4094 (1960); Brownlee and Saunders, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 314 (1961); Booth, Franklin, and Gidley, *J. Chem. Soc C* 1891 (1968). For a discussion of the possible reasons for this, see Saunders and Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 192–193.

[78] For summaries of this position, see Ingold, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 265–274 (1962); Banthorpe, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4054 (1960); Banthorpe, Ref. 2, pp. 55–59.

[79] Bunnett, Ref. 2.

There is one series of results incompatible with the steric explanation—E2 elimination from the four 2-halopentanes gave the following percentages of 1-pentene: F, 83%; Cl, 37%; Br, 25%; I, 20%.[83] The same order was found for the four 2-halohexanes.[84] Although there is some doubt about the relative steric requirements of Br, Cl, and I, there is no doubt that F is the smallest of the halogens, and if the steric explanation were the only valid one, the fluoroalkanes could not give predominant Hofmann orientation. Another result that argues against the steric explanation is the effect of changing the nature of the base. An experiment in which the effective size of the base was kept constant while its basicity was increased (by using as bases a series of $XC_6H_4O^-$ ions) showed that the percentage of Hofmann elimination increased with increasing base strength, though the size of the base did not change.[85] These results are in accord with the explanation of Bunnett, since an increase in base strength moves an E2 reaction closer to the E1cB end of the spectrum. In further experiments, a large series of bases of different kinds was shown to obey linear free-energy relationships between basicity and percentage of Hofmann elimination,[86] though certain very large bases (e.g., 2,6-di-*t*-butyl-phenoxide) did not obey the relationships, steric effects becoming important in these cases. How large the base must be before steric effects are observed depends on the pattern of alkyl substitution in the substrate, but not on the nucleofuge.[87] Steric effects of the base can also become important in cases where the effective size of the base is increased by base association, when the leaving group is halogen or OTs.[88] Such base association effects are unimportant when the leaving group is NMe_3^+.[89]

5. Only a few investigations on the orientation of syn E2 eliminations have been carried out, but these show that Hofmann orientation is greatly favored over Zaitsev.[90]

6. In the E1cB mechanism the question of orientation seldom arises because the mechanism is generally found only where there is an electron-withdrawing group in the β-position, and that is where the double bond goes.

---

[80] Brown and Wheeler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2199 (1956).

[81] Brown, Moritani, and Nakagawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2190 (1956); Brown and Moritani, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2203 (1956); Bartsch, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1334 (1970). See also Charton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 6159 (1975).

[82] For example, see Banthorpe, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4054 (1960).

[83] Saunders, Fahrenholtz, Caress, Lowe, and Schreiber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3401 (1965). Similar results were obtained by Brown and Klimisch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1425 (1966).

[84] Bartsch and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 408 (1968).

[85] Froemsdorf and Robbins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1737 (1967). See also Froemsdorf, McCain, and Wilkison, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3984 (1965); Froemsdorf, Dowd, and Leimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2345 (1966); Bartsch, Kelly, and Pruss, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3795 (1970); Feit, Breger, Capobianco, Cooke, and Gitlin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2477 (1975); Ref. 76.

[86] Bartsch, Pruss, Bushaw, and Wiegers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3405 (1973); Bartsch, Roberts, and Cho, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4105 (1979).

[87] Bartsch, Read, Larsen, Roberts, Scott, and Cho, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1176 (1979).

[88] Bartsch, Pruss, Cook, Buswell, Bushaw, and Wiegers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6745 (1973); Bartsch and Ingram, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3138 (1975). This point is thoroughly discussed in Bartsch and Závada, Ref. 4, pp. 457–462. See also Bartsch and Cho, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4057 (1980); Závada, Pánková, Bartsch, and Cho, *Collect. Czech. Chem Commun.* **46,** 850 (1981); Závada, Pánková, and Vítek, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **46,** 3247 (1981); Bartsch and Croft, *J. Org Chem.* **47,** 1364 (1982).

[89] Bartsch, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 846 (1973).

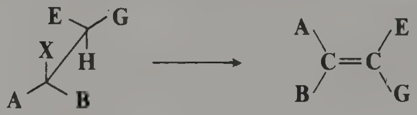
[90] Sicher, Svoboda, Pánková, and Závada, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **36,** 3633 (1971); Bailey and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6904 (1970).

7. As already mentioned, E2C reactions show a strong preference for Zaitsev orientation.[91] In some cases this can be put to preparative use. For example, the compound $PhCH_2CHOTsCHMe_2$ gave about 98% $PhCH{=}CHCHMe_2$ under the usual E2 reaction conditions (*t*-BuOK in *t*-BuOH). In this case the double bond goes to the side with more hydrogens because on that side it will be able to conjugate with the benzene ring. However, with the weak base $Bu_4N^+ Br^-$ in acetone the Zaitsev product $PhCH_2CH{=}CMe_2$ was formed in 90% yield.[92]

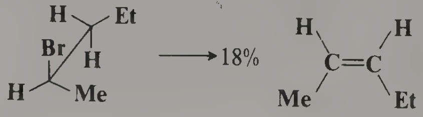
8. In cases where large isotope effects exist, the orientation can be changed by putting D in the substrate instead of H. For example, dehydration of an alcohol $RR'COHCH_3$ gave primarily $RR'C{=}CH_2$, but when $RR'COHCD_3$ was used, the double bond went the other way.[93]

Steric Orientation of the Double Bond

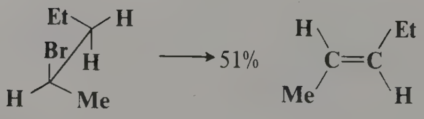
When elimination takes place on a compound of the form CH_3—CABX or CHAB—CGGX, the new olefin does not have cis–trans isomerism, but for compounds of the form CHEG—CABX (E and G *not* H) (**23**) and CH_2E—CABX (**24**), cis and trans isomers are possible. When the anti E2 mechanism is in operation, **23** gives the isomer arising from trans orientation of X and H and, as we have seen before (p. 875), an erythro compound gives the cis olefin and a threo compound the trans. For **24** two conformations are possible for the transition state; these lead to different isomers and often both are obtained. However, the one that predominates is often determined by an eclipsing effect.[94] For example, Zaitsev elimination from 2-bromopentane can occur as follows:



23



25



26

However, in **25** the ethyl group is between Br and Me, while in **26** it is between Br and H. This means that **26** is more stable, and most of the elimination should occur from this conformation. This is indeed what happens, and 51% of the trans isomer is formed (with KOEt) compared to

---

[91] For example, see Lloyd and Parker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 637 (1971); Ono, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 1369 (1971); Bailey and Saunders, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3363 (1973); Muir and Parker, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3201 (1976).

[92] Lloyd, Muir, and Parker, Ref. 70.

[93] Miyano, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1854 (1981).

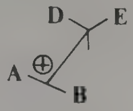
[94] See Cram, Greene, and DePuy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 790 (1956); Cram, in Newman, "Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry," pp. 338–345, Wiley, New York, 1956.

18% of the cis (the rest is the Hofmann product).[95] These effects become larger with increasing size of A, B, and E.

However, eclipsing effects are not the only factors that affect the cis/trans ratio in anti E2 eliminations. Other factors are the nature of the leaving group, the base, the solvent, and the substrate. Not all these effects are completely understood.[96]

For syn E2 elimination, we have seen (p. 879) that formation of the trans olefin should be greatly preferred to that of the cis isomer because of eclipsing effects. In accord with this, very high trans/cis ratios, higher than would be expected on the basis of olefin stabilities alone, have been found for syn elimination of the 5-decyltrimethylammonium ion.[97]

For E1 eliminations, if there is a free carbocation (**27**), then it is free to rotate, and no matter what the geometry of the original compound, the more stable situation is the one where the larger



27

(**D** may be **H**)

of the D–E pair is opposite the smaller of the A–B pair and the corresponding olefin should form. If the carbocation is not completely free, then to that extent, E2-type products are formed. Similar considerations apply in E1cB eliminations.[98]

REACTIVITY

In this section we examine the effects of changes in the substrate, base, leaving group, and medium on (1) overall reactivity, (2) E1 vs. E2 vs. E1cB,[99] and (3) elimination vs. substitution.

Effect of Substrate Structure

1. *Effect on overall activity.* We refer to the carbon containing the nucleofuge (X) as the α-carbon and to the carbon that loses the proton (or other positive species) as the β-carbon. Groups attached to the α- or β-carbons can exert at least four kinds of influence:

a. They may stabilize or destabilize the incipient double bond (α- or β-groups may do this).

b. They may stabilize or destabilize an incipient negative charge, affecting the acidity of the proton (β-groups only).

c. They may stabilize or destabilize an incipient positive charge (α-groups only).

d. They may exert steric effects (e.g., eclipsing effects) (both α- and β-groups).

Effects a and d can apply in all three mechanisms, though steric effects are greatest for the E2 mechanism. Effect b does not apply in the E1 mechanism, and effect c does not apply in the E1cB mechanism. Groups such as Ar and C=C increase the rate by any mechanism, whether they are α or β (effect a). Electron-withdrawing groups increase the acidity when in the β position, but have little effect in the α position unless they also conjugate with the double bond. Thus Br, Cl, CN, Ts, NO_2, CN, SR in the β position all increase the rate of E2 eliminations.

---

[95] Brown and Wheeler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2199 (1956).

[96] For discussions, see Bartsch and Bunnett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1376, 1382 (1969); Feit and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1630, 5615 (1970); Feit and Gitlin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 561 (1972); Alunni, Baciocchi, Ruzziconi, and Tingoli, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3299 (1974); Alunni and Baciocchi, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans.* 2 877 (1976); Saunders and Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 165–193.

[97] Sicher, Závada, and Pánková, *Chem. Commun.* 1147 (1968).

[98] See for example, Redman, Thomas, and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 43 (1978).

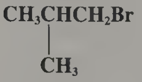
[99] For discussions, see Cockerill and Harrison, Ref. 2, pp. 178–189.

2. *Effect on E1 vs. E2 vs. E1cB.* α-Alkyl and α-aryl groups increase the extent of E1 elimination, since they stabilize the carbocation character of the transition state. That is, they shift the spectrum toward the E1 end. β-Alkyl groups also shift the mechanism toward E1, since they *decrease* the acidity of the hydrogen. However, β-aryl groups shift the mechanism the other way (toward E1cB) by stabilizing the carbanion. Indeed, as we have seen (p. 884), all electron-withdrawing groups in the β position shift the mechanism toward E1cB.[100] α-Alkyl groups also increase the extent of elimination with weak bases (E2C reactions).

3. *Effect on elimination vs. substitution.* Under second-order conditions α branching increases elimination, to the point where tertiary substrates undergo few SN2 reactions, as we saw in Chapter 10. For example, Table 2 shows results on some simple alkyl bromides. Similar results were obtained with $\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{S}}\mathrm{Me}_2$ as the leaving group.[104] Two reasons may be presented for this trend. One is statistical: as α branching increases, there are usually more hydrogens for the base to attack. The other is that α branching presents steric hindrance to attack of the base at the carbon. Under first-order conditions, increased α branching also increases the amount of elimination (E1 vs. SN1), though not so much, and usually the substitution product predominates. For example, solvolysis of *t*-butyl bromide gave only 19% elimination[103] (compare with Table 2). β branching also increases the amount of E2 elimination with respect to SN2 substitution (Table 2), not because elimination is faster but because the SN2 mechanism is so greatly slowed (p. 298). Under first-order conditions too, β branching favors elimination over substitution, probably for steric reasons.[105] However, E2 eliminations from compounds with charged leaving groups are slowed by β branching. This is related to Hofmann's rule (p. 890). Electron-withdrawing groups in the β position not only increase the rate of E2 eliminations and shift the mechanisms toward the E1cB end of the spectrum but also increase the extent of elimination as opposed to substitution.

TABLE 2 The effect of α and β branching on the rate of E2 elimination and the amount of olefin formed

The reactions were between the alkyl bromide and OEt⁻. The rate for isopropyl bromide was actually greater than that for ethyl bromide, if the temperature difference is considered. Neopentyl bromide, the next compound in the β-branching series, cannot be compared because it has no β-hydrogen and cannot give an elimination product without rearrangement

Substrate	Temperature, °C	Olefin, %	Rate × 10^5 of E2 reaction	Reference
CH_3CH_2Br	55	0.9	1.6	101
$(CH_3)_2CHBr$	25	80.3	0.237	102
$(CH_3)_3CBr$	25	97	4.17	103
$CH_3CH_2CH_2Br$	55	8.9	5.3	101
 $CH_3\underset{CH_3}{\underset{\vert}{C}}HCH_2Br$	55	59.5	8.5	101

---

[100] For a review of eliminations with COOH, COOR, CONH₂, and CN groups in the β position, see Batskus and Denis, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 839 (1966).

[101] Dhar, Hughes, Ingold, and Masterman, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2055 (1948).

[102] Dhar, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2058 (1948).

[103] Hughes, Ingold, and Maw, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2065 (1948).

[104] Hughes, Ingold, and Maw, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2072 (1948); Hughes, Ingold, and Woolf, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2084 (1948).

[105] Brown and Berneis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 10 (1953).

Effect of the Attacking Base

1. *Effect on E1 vs. E2 vs. E1cB.* In the E1 mechanism, an external base is generally not required: The solvent acts as the base. Hence, when external bases are added, the mechanism is shifted toward E2. Stronger bases and higher base concentrations cause the mechanism to move toward the E1cB end of the E1–E2–E1cB spectrum.[106] However, weak bases in polar aprotic solvents can also be effective in elimination reactions with certain substrates (the E2C reaction, p. 887). Normal E2 elimination has been accomplished with the following bases:[107] H_2O, NR_3, OH^-, OAc^-, OR^-, OAr^-, NH_2^-, CO_3^{2-}, $LiAlH_4$, I^-, CN^-, and organic bases. However, the only bases of preparative importance in the normal E2 reaction are OH^-, OR^-, and NH_2^-, usually in the conjugate acid as solvent. Weak bases effective in the E2C reaction are Cl^-, Br^-, F^-, OAc^-, and RS^-. These bases are often used in the form of their R_4N^+ salts.

2. *Effect on elimination vs. substitution.* Strong bases not only benefit E2 as against E1, but also benefit elimination as against substitution. With a high concentration of strong base in a nonionizing solvent, bimolecular mechanisms are favored and E2 predominates over SN2. At low base concentrations, or in the absence of base altogether, in ionizing solvents, unimolecular mechanisms are favored, and the SN1 mechanism predominates over the E1. In Chapter 10, it was pointed out that some species are strong nucleophiles though weak bases (p. 307). The use of these obviously favors substitution, except that, as we have seen, elimination can predominate if polar aprotic solvents are used. It has been shown for the base CN^- that in polar aprotic solvents, the less the base is encumbered by its counterion in an ion pair (i.e., the freer the base), the more substitution is favored at the expense of elimination.[108]

Effect of the Leaving Group

1. *Effect on reactivity.* The leaving groups in elimination reactions are similar to those in nucleophilic substitution. E2 eliminations have been performed with the following groups: NR_3^+, PR_3^+, SR_2^+, OHR^+, SO_2R, OSO_2R, OCOR, OOH, OOR, NO_2,[109] F, Cl, Br, I, and CN (*not* OH_2^+). E1 eliminations have been carried out with: NR_3^+, SR_2^+, OH_2^+, OHR^+, OSO_2R, OCOR, Cl, Br, I, and N_2^+.[110] However, the only important leaving groups for preparative purposes are OH_2^+ (always by E1) and Cl, Br, I, and NR_3^+ (usually by E2).

2. *Effect on E1 vs. E2 vs. E1cB.* Better leaving groups shift the mechanism toward the E1 end of the spectrum, since they make ionization easier. This effect has been studied in various ways. One way already mentioned was a study of ρ values (p. 887). Poor leaving groups and positively charged leaving groups shift the mechanism toward the E1cB end of the spectrum because the strong electron-withdrawing field effects increase the acidity of the β-hydrogen.[111] The E2C reaction is favored by good leaving groups.

3. *Effect on elimination vs. substitution.* As we have already seen (p. 881), for first-order reactions the leaving group has nothing to do with the competition between elimination and substitution, since it is gone before the decision is made as to which path to take. However, where ion pairs are involved, this is not true, and results have been found where the nature of the leaving group does affect the product.[112] In second-order reactions, the elimination/substitution ratio is not greatly dependent on a halide leaving group, though there is a slight increase in elimination in the order I > Br > Cl. When OTs is the leaving group, there is usually much more substitution. For example, n-$C_{18}H_{37}Br$ treated with t-BuOK gave 85% elimination, while n-$C_{18}H_{37}OTs$ gave, under the same conditions, 99% substitution.[113] On the other hand, positively charged leaving groups increase the amount of elimination.

---

[106] For a review, see Baciocchi, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 430–436 (1979). See also Baciocchi, Ruzziconi, and Sebastiani, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 827 (1980).

[107] This list is from Banthorpe, Ref. 2, p. 4.

[108] Loupy and Seyden-Penne, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2306 (1971).

[109] Gray, Norris, and Wright, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 259 (1979).

[110] These lists are from Banthorpe, Ref. 2, pp. 4, 7.

[111] For a discussion of leaving-group ability, see Stirling, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 198–203 (1979). See also Varma and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 553 (1981).

Effect of the Medium

1. *Effect of solvent on E1 vs. E2 vs. E1cB.* With any reaction a more polar environment enhances the rate of mechanisms that involve ionic intermediates. For neutral leaving groups, it is expected that E1 and E1cB mechanisms will be aided by increasing polarity of solvent and by increasing ionic strength. With certain substrates, polar aprotic solvents promote elimination with weak bases (the E2C reaction). Crown ethers have been used to assure that elimination of tosylates takes place entirely by E2 without incursion by E1 mechanisms.[114]

2. *Effect of solvent on elimination vs. substitution.* Increasing polarity of solvent favors SN2 reactions at the expense of E2. In the classical example, alcoholic KOH is used to effect elimination, while the more polar aqueous KOH is used for substitution. Charge-dispersal discussions, similar to those on p. 316,[115] only partially explain this. In most solvents SN1 reactions are favored over E1. E1 reactions compete best in polar solvents that are poor nucleophiles.

3. *Effect of temperature.* Elimination is favored over substitution by increasing temperature, whether the mechanism is first order or second order.[116] The reason is that the activation energies of eliminations are higher than those of substitutions (because eliminations have greater changes in bonding), so at higher temperatures there is a larger degree of elimination.

MECHANISMS AND ORIENTATION IN PYROLYTIC ELIMINATIONS

Mechanisms[117]

A number of types of compound undergo elimination on heating, with no other reagent present. Reactions of this type are often run in the gas phase. The mechanisms are obviously different from those already discussed, since all those require a base (which may be the solvent) in one of the steps, and there is no base or solvent present in pyrolytic elimination. Two mechanisms have been found to operate. One involves a cyclic transition state, which may be four-, five-, or six-membered.

---

[112] For example, see Skell and Hall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2851 (1963); Cocivera and Winstein, Ref. 32; Feit and Wright, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 76 (1975). See, however, Cavazza, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1031 (1975).

[113] Veeravagu, Arnold, and Eigenmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3072 (1964).

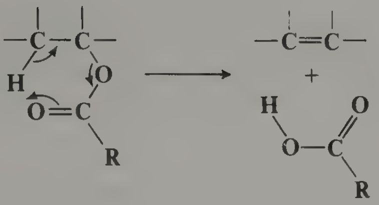
[114] Bartsch, Allaway, and Lee, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 779 (1977).

[115] Cooper, Dhar, Hughes, Ingold, MacNulty, and Woolf, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2043 (1948).

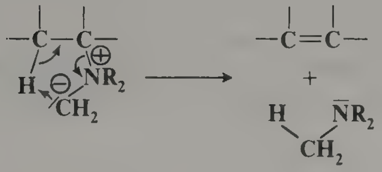
[116] Cooper, Hughes, Ingold, Maw, and MacNulty, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2049 (1948).

[117] For reviews, see Taylor, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement B," pt. 2, pp. 860–914, Wiley, New York, 1979; Smith and Kelly, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **8,** 75–234 (1971), pp. 75–143, 207–234; in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 5, American Elsevier, New York, 1972, the articles by Swinbourne, pp. 149–233 (pp. 158–188) and by Richardson and O'Neal, pp. 381–565 (pp. 381–446); Maccoll, Ref. 2, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **3,** 91–122 (1965); DePuy and King, *Chem. Rev.* **60,** 431–445 (1960). For reviews of mechanisms in pyrolytic eliminations of halides, see Egger and Cocks, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Halogen Bond," pt. 2, pp. 677–745, Wiley, New York, 1973; Maccoll, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 33–60 (1969).

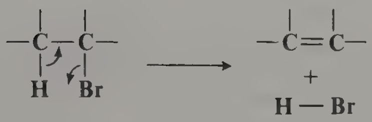
Examples of each size are:



(7-3)

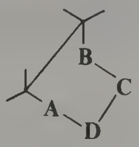


(7-7)



(7-14)

In this mechanism, which is called the *Ei mechanism,* the two groups leave at about the same time and bond to each other as they are doing so. The elimination must be syn and, for the four- and five-membered transition states, the four or five atoms making up the ring must be coplanar. Coplanarity is not required for the six-membered transition state, since there is room for the outside atoms when the leaving atoms are staggered (**28**).



28

As in the E2 mechanism, it is not necessary that the C—H and C—X bond be equally broken in the transition state. In fact, there is also a spectrum of mechanisms here, ranging from a mechanism in which C—X bond breaking is a good deal more advanced than C—H bond breaking to one in which the extent of bond breaking is virtually identical for the two bonds. Evidence for the existence of the Ei mechanism is:

1. The kinetics are first order, so that only one molecule of the substrate is involved in the reaction (that is, if one molecule attacked another, the kinetics would be second order in substrate).[118]

2. Free-radical inhibitors do not slow the reactions, so that no free-radical mechanism is involved.[119]

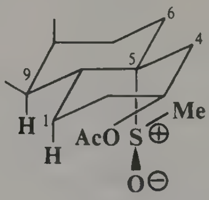
3. The mechanism predicts exclusive syn elimination, and this behavior has been found in many cases.[120] The evidence is inverse to that for the anti E2 mechanism and generally involves the following facts: (1) an erythro isomer gives a trans olefin and a threo isomer gives a cis olefin; (2) the reaction takes place only when a cis β-hydrogen is available; (3) if, in a cyclic compound, a cis hydrogen is available on only one side, the elimination goes in that direction. Another piece of evidence involves a pair of steroid molecules. In 3β-acetoxy-(*R*)-5α-methylsulfinylcholestane (**29** shows rings A and B of this compound) and in 3β-acetoxy-(*S*)-5α-methylsulfinylcholestane

---

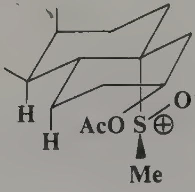
[118] O'Connor and Nace, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2118 (1953).

[119] Barton, Head, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1715 (1953).

[120] In a few instances anti or nonstereoselective elimination has been found; this behavior is generally ascribed to the intervention of other mechanisms. For example, see Bordwell and Landis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 2450, 6383 (1958); Briggs and Djerassi, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1625 (1968); Smissman, Li, and Creese, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1352 (1970).



29



30

(7-13)

(**30:** rings A and B), the *only* difference is the configuration of oxygen and methyl about the sulfur. Yet pyrolysis of **29** gave only elimination to the 4-side (86% 4-ene), while **30** gave predominant elimination to the 6-side (65% 5-ene and 20% 4-ene).[121] Models show that interference from the 1- and 9-hydrogens causes the two groups on the sulfur to lie *in front of it* with respect to the rings, rather than behind it. Since the sulfur is chiral, this means that in **29** the oxygen is near the 4-hydrogen, while in **30** it is near the 6 hydrogen. This experiment is compatible only with syn elimination.[122]

4. ^{14}C isotope effects for the Cope elimination (**7-8**) show that both the C—H and C—N bonds have been extensively broken in the transition state.[123]

5. Some of these reactions have been shown to exhibit negative entropies of activation, indicating that the molecules are more restricted in geometry in the transition state than they are in the starting compound.[118]

Where a pyrolytic elimination lies on the mechanistic spectrum seems to depend mostly on the leaving group. When this is halogen, all available evidence suggests that in the transition state the C—X bond is cleaved to a much greater extent that the C—H bond, i.e., there is a considerable amount of carbocation character in the transition state. This is in accord with the fact that a completely nonpolar four-membered cyclic transition state violates the Woodward–Hoffmann rules (see the similar case of **5-48**). Evidence for the carbocation-like character of the transition state when halide is the leaving group is that relative rates are in the order I > Br > Cl[124] (see p. 310), and that the effects of substituents on reaction rates are in accord with such a transition state.[125] Rate ratios for pyrolysis of some alkyl bromides at 320°C were: ethyl bromide, 1; isopropyl bromide, 280; *t*-butyl bromide, 78,000. Also, α-phenylethyl bromide had about the same rate as *t*-butyl bromide. On the other hand, β-phenylethyl bromide was only slightly faster than ethyl bromide. This indicates that C—Br cleavage was much more important in the transition state than C—H cleavage, since the incipient carbocation was stabilized by α-alkyl and α-aryl substitution, while there was no incipient carbanion to be stabilized by β-aryl substitution. These substituent effects, as well as those for other groups, are very similar to the effects found for the SN1 mechanism and thus in very good accord with a carbocation-like transition state. In certain cases, neighboring-group effects, similar to those discussed in Chapter 10, have been reported.[126]

---

[121] Jones and Saeed, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 81 (1964). See also Goldberg and Sahli, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2059 (1967).

[122] For other evidence for syn elimination, see Curtin and Kellom, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 6011 (1953); Skell and Hall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1557 (1964); Bailey and Bird, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3895 (1977).

[123] Wright, Sims, and Fry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 3714 (1983).

[124] Maccoll, Ref. 2, pp. 215–216.

[125] For reviews of such studies, see Maccoll, Ref. 2, Ref. 117.

For esters, the rate ratios were much smaller,[127] though still in the same order, so that this reaction is closer to a pure Ei mechanism, though the transition state still has some carbocationic character. Other evidence for a greater initial C—O cleavage with esters is that of a series of 1-arylethylacetates followed σ^+ rather than σ, showing carbocationic character at the 1 position.[128] The extent of E1 character in the transition state increases in the following order of ester types: acetate < phenylacetate < benzoate < carbamate < carbonate.[129] Cleavage of xanthates (**7-4**), cleavage of sulfoxides (**7-13**), the Cope reaction (**7-8**), and reaction **7-7** are probably very close to straight Ei mechanisms.[130]

The second type of pyrolysis mechanism is completely different from the Ei mechanism and involves free radicals. Initiation occurs by pyrolytic homolytic cleavage. The remaining steps may vary, and a few are shown:

$$\begin{array}{lll}
\text{Initiation} & R_2CHCH_2X & \longrightarrow R_2CHCH_2\bullet + X\bullet \\
\text{Propagation} & R_2CHCH_2X + X\bullet & \longrightarrow R_2\underset{\bullet}{C}CH_2X + HX \\
 & R_2\underset{\bullet}{C}CH_2X & \longrightarrow R_2C{=}CH_2 + X\bullet
\end{array}$$

Termination (disproportionation)

$$2R_2\underset{\bullet}{C}CH_2X \longrightarrow R_2C{=}CH_2 + R_2CXCH_2X$$

Free-radical mechanisms are mostly found in pyrolyses of polyhalides and of primary monohalides,[131] though they also have been postulated in pyrolysis of certain esters.[132] Much less is known about these mechanisms and we shall not consider them further. Free-radical eliminations in solution are also known but are rare.[133]

Orientation in Pyrolytic Eliminations

As in the E1–E2–E1cB mechanistic spectrum, Bredt's rule applies; and if a double bond is present, a conjugated system will be preferred, if sterically possible (p. 888). Apart from these considerations, the following statements can be made for Ei eliminations:

---

[126] Chuchani and Dominguez, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **15,** 1275 (1983), and references cited therein.

[127] For example, see Scheer, Kooyman, and Sixma, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **82,** 1123 (1963). See also Louw, Vermeeren, and Vogelzang, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1875 (1983); Louw, Tinkelenberg, and Werner, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 519 (1983).

[128] Taylor, Smith, and Wetzel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4817 (1962); Smith, Jones, and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 403 (1963); Amin and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1802 (1975); Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1255 (1978). See also Lum and Smith, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **1,** 401 (1969); Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 165 (1972), 1025 (1975); Ottenbrite and Brockington, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2463 (1974); Al-Awadi, Ballam, Hemblade, and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1175 (1982), and previous papers in this series; Thorne, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 222 (1978).

[129] Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1025 (1975).

[130] For a review of the mechanisms of **7-13, 7-8,** and the pyrolysis of sulfilimines, see Oae and Furukawa, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 2359–2367 (1977).

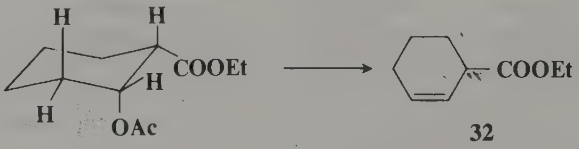
[131] For example, see Barton and Howlett, *J. Chem. Soc.* 155, 165 (1949).

[132] For example, see Rummens, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **83,** 901 (1964); Louw and Kooyman, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **84,** 1511 (1965).

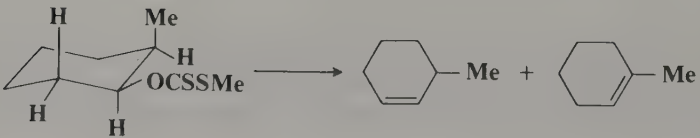
[133] For examples, see Kampmeier, Geer, Meskin, and D'Silva, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1257 (1966); Kochi, Singleton, and Andrews, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 3503 (1968); Hepinstall and Kampmeier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1904 (1973); Lythgoe and Waterhouse, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4223 (1977); Boothe, Greene, and Shevlin, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 794 (1980); Stark, Nelson, and Jensen, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 420 (1980); Kochi, "Organic Mechanisms and Catalysis," pp. 346–349, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

1. In the absence of considerations mentioned below, orientation is statistical and is determined by the number of β-hydrogens available (therefore *Hofmann's rule* is followed). For example, *sec*-butyl acetate gives 55 to 62% 1-butene and 38 to 45% 2-butene,[134] which is close to the 3:2 distribution predicted by the number of hydrogens available.[135]

2. A cis β-hydrogen is required. Therefore in cyclic systems, if there is a cis hydrogen on only one side, the double bond will go that way. However, when there is a six-membered transition state, this does not necessarily mean that the leaving groups must be cis to each other, since such transition states need not be completely coplanar. If the leaving group is axial, then the hydrogen obviously must be equatorial (and consequently cis to the leaving group), since the transition state cannot be realized when the groups are both axial. But if the leaving group is equatorial, it can form a transition state with a β-hydrogen which is either axial (hence, cis) or equatorial (hence, trans). Thus **31**, in which the leaving group is most likely axial, does not form a double bond in the direction of the carbethoxyl group, even though that would be conjugated, because there is no equatorial hydrogen on that side. Instead it gives 100% **32**.[136]



31 **32** (7-3)



33 (7-4)

On the other hand, **33**, with an equatorial leaving group, gives about 50% of each olefin, even though, for elimination to the 1-ene, the leaving group must go off with a trans hydrogen.[137]

3. In some cases, especially with cyclic compounds, the more stable olefin forms and Zaitsev's rule applies. For example, menthyl acetate gives 35% of the Hofmann product and 65% of the Zaitsev, even though a cis β-hydrogen is present on both sides and the statistical distribution is the other way. A similar result was found for the pyrolysis of menthyl chloride.[138]

4. There are also steric effects. In some cases the direction of elimination is determined by the need to minimize steric interactions in the transition state or to relieve steric interactions in the ground state.[139]

1,4 Conjugate Eliminations

1,4 eliminations of the type

$$\mathrm{H{-}C{-}C{=}C{-}C{-}X \longrightarrow C{=}C{-}C{=}C}$$

---

[134] Froemsdorf, Collins, Hammond, and DePuy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 643 (1959); Haag and Pines, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 877 (1959).

[135] DePuy and King, Ref. 117, have tables showing the product distribution for many cases.

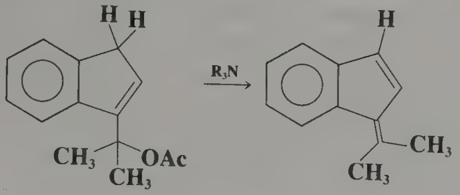
[136] Bailey and Baylouny, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2126 (1959).

[137] Botteron and Shulman, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 2007 (1962).

[138] Barton, Head, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc.* 453 (1952); Bamkole and Maccoll, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1159 (1970).

[139] Taylor, Ref. 117, pp. 885–890; Smith, Mutter, and Todd, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 44 (1977); Chuchani and Dominguez, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **13,** 577 (1981); Hernández A. and Chuchani, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **15,** 205 (1983).

are much rarer than conjugate additions (Chapter 15), but some examples are known.[140] One such is[141]



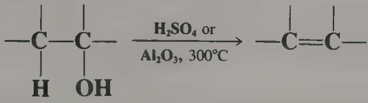
REACTIONS

First we consider reactions in which a C=C or a C≡C bond is formed. From a synthetic point of view, the most important reactions for the formation of double bonds are **7-1** (usually by an E1 mechanism), **7-6, 7-14,** and **7-29** (usually by an E2 mechanism), and **7-3, 7-4,** and **7-8** (usually by an Ei mechanism). The only synthetically important method for the formation of triple bonds is **7-14.**[142] In the second section we treat reactions in which C≡N bonds and C=N bonds are formed, and then eliminations that give C=O bonds and diazoalkanes. Finally, we discuss extrusion reactions.

Reactions in Which C=C and C≡C Bonds are Formed

A. Reactions in Which Hydrogen is Removed from One Side. In **7-1** to **7-5** the other leaving atom is oxygen. In reactions **7-6** to **7-11** it is nitrogen. For reactions in which hydrogen is removed from both sides, see **9-1** to **9-6.**

7-1 Dehydration of Alcohols
Hydro-hydroxy-elimination



$$-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{OH}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}- \xrightarrow[\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3,\ 300^\circ\text{C}]{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4\text{ or}} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-$$

Dehydration of alcohols can be accomplished in several ways. H_2SO_4 and H_3PO_4 are common reagents, but in many cases these lead to rearrangement products and to ether formation (**0-18**). If the alcohol can be evaporated, then vapor-phase elimination over Al_2O_3 is an excellent method since side reactions are greatly reduced. This method has even been applied to such high-molecular-weight alcohols as 1-dodecanol.[143] Other metallic oxides (e.g., Cr_2O_3, TiO_2, WO_3) have also been used, as have been sulfides, other metallic salts, and zeolites. Another method of avoiding side reactions is the conversion of alcohols to esters, and the pyrolysis of these (**7-3** to **7-5**). The ease of dehydration increases with α branching, and tertiary alcohols are dehydrated so easily with even a trace of acid that it sometimes happens even when the investigator desires otherwise. It may also be recalled that the initial alcohol products of many base-catalyzed condensations dehydrate spontaneously (Chapter 16) because the new double bond can be in conjugation with one already there. Many other dehydrating agents have been used on occasion: P_2O_5, I_2, $ZnCl_2$, BF_3-etherate, dimethyl sulfoxide, $KHSO_4$, KOH, anhydrous $CuSO_4$,[144] and phthalic ahydride, among others. Secondary and tertiary alcohols can also be dehydrated, without rearrangements, simply on refluxing in HMPT.[145] With nearly all reagents, dehydration follows Zaitsev's rule. An exception involves the passage of hot alcohol vapors over thorium oxide at 350 to 450°C, under which conditions Hofmann's rule is followed,[146] and the mechanism is probably different.

---

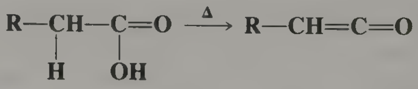
[140] For a discussion of the stereochemistry of 1,4 eliminations, see Hill and Bock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 637 (1978). For a review of certain types of 1,4 and 1,6 eliminations, see Wakselman, *Nouveau J. Chem.* **7,** 439–447 (1983).

[141] Thibblin, Onyido, and Ahlberg, *Chem. Scr.* **19,** 145 (1982).

[142] For reviews of methods for preparing alkynes, see Friedrich, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 2, pp. 1376–1384, Wiley, New York, 1983; Ben-Efraim, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," pt. 2, pp. 755–790, Wiley, New York, 1978. For a comparative study of various methods, see Mesnard, Bernadou, and Miginiac, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 270 (1981), and previous papers in this series.

[143] For example, see Spitzin, Michailenko, and Pirogowa, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4] **25,** 160 (1964); Bertsch, Greiner, Kretzschmar, and Falk, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4] **25,** 184 (1964).

Carboxylic acids can be dehydrated by pyrolysis, the product being a ketene:

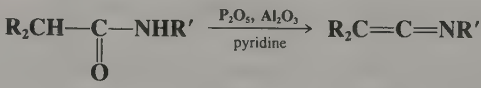


$$\underset{\text{H}}{\text{R—}\underset{|}{\text{CH}}}\text{—}\underset{\text{OH}}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}\text{=O} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \text{R—CH=C=O}$$

Ketene itself is commercially prepared in this manner. In a similar reaction, carbon suboxide is produced by heating malonic acid with P_2O_5:

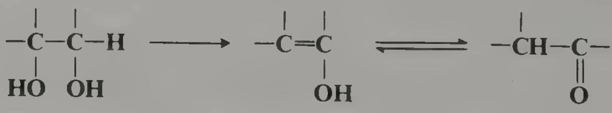
$$\text{HOOC—CH}_2\text{—COOH} \longrightarrow \text{O=C=C=C=O}$$

Analogously, amides can be dehydrated with P_2O_5, pyridine, and Al_2O_3 to give ketenimines:[147]



$$\text{R}_2\text{CH—}\underset{\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}\text{—NHR}' \xrightarrow[\text{pyridine}]{P_2O_5,\ Al_2O_3} \text{R}_2\text{C=C=NR}'$$

There is no way in which dehydration of alcohols can be used to prepare triple bonds: *gem*-diols and vinyl alcohols do not exist and *vic*-diols[148] give either conjugated dienes or lose only 1 mole of water to give an aldehyde or ketone:



$$-\underset{\text{HO}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}}-\underset{\text{OH}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}}-\text{H} \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{\text{C}}=\underset{\text{OH}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}} \rightleftharpoons -\overset{|}{\text{CH}}-\underset{\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}-$$

However, triple-bond compounds have been formed, in low-to-moderate yields, by dehydration of aryl ketones ($ArCOCH_2R \rightarrow ArC{\equiv}CR$) upon treatment with the reagent 2-chloro-3-ethylbenzoxazolium tetrafluoroborate in excess Et_3N.[149]

When proton acids catalyze alcohol dehydration, the mechanism is E1.[150] The principal process involves conversion of ROH to ROH_2^+ and cleavage of the latter to R^+ and H_2O, though with some acids a secondary process probably involves conversion of the alcohol to an inorganic ester and ionization of *this* (illustrated for H_2SO_4):

---

[144] Hoffman, Bishop, Fitch, and Hardenstein, *J. Org Chem.* **45,** 917 (1980).

[145] Monson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 567 (1971); Monson and Priest, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3826 (1971); Lomas, Sagatys, and Dubois, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 165 (1972).

[146] Lundeen and Van Hoozer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2180 (1963), *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3386 (1967); see also Davis, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 900 (1982).

[147] Stevens and Singhal, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 34 (1964).

[148] For a review on the dehydration of 1,2 and 1,3 diols, see Bartók and Molnár, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pt. 2, pp. 721–760, Wiley, New York, 1980.

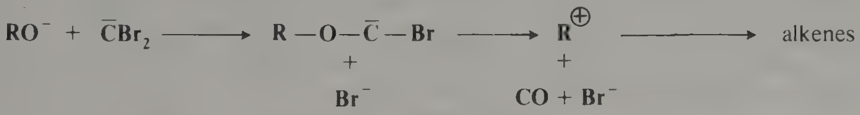
[149] Tsuji, Watanabe, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 481 (1979); See also Harrison, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3578 (1979).

[150] For reviews of dehydration mechanisms, see Saunders and Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 221–274, 317–331; Banthorpe, Ref. 2, pp. 145–158; Knözinger, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 2, pp. 641–718, Interscience, New York, 1971.

$$\mathrm{ROH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2SO_4}} \mathrm{ROSO_2OH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R^+ + HSO_4^-}$$

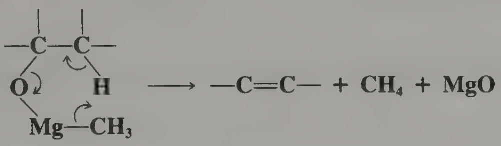
Note that these mechanisms are the reverse of those involved in the acid-catalyzed hydration of double bonds (**5-2**), in accord with the principle of microscopic reversibility. With anhydrides, such as P_2O_5 or phthalic anhydride, as well as with some other reagents such as HMPT,[151] it is likely that an ester is formed, and the leaving group is the conjugate base of the corresponding acid. In these cases the mechanism may be E1 or E2. The mechanism with Al_2O_3 and other solid catalysts has been studied extensively but is poorly understood.[152]

Dehydration of alcohols has also been accomplished by treating the *alkoxide* form of the alcohol with bromoform.[153] This reaction is called *deoxidation*. It is known that bromoform in basic solution gives rise to dibromocarbene, and the following mechanism is likely:



$$\mathrm{RO^- + \overline{C}Br_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\mathrm{Br^-}}{\overset{}{\mathrm{R{-}O{-}\overline{C}{-}Br}}\atop +} \longrightarrow \underset{\mathrm{CO + Br^-}}{\mathrm{R^{\oplus}}\atop +} \longrightarrow \text{alkenes}$$

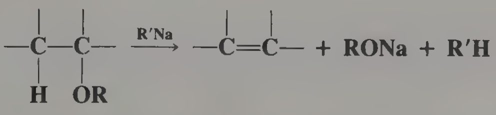
Note that the cleavage of the intermediate ROCBr is analogous to cleavage of RN_2^+ (p. 313) and the product distribution is similar.[154] Magnesium alkoxides (formed by ROH + $Me_2Mg \rightarrow$ ROMgMe) have been decomposed thermally, by heating at 195–340°C to give the alkene, CH_4, and MgO.[155] Syn elimination is found and an Ei mechanism is likely:



Similar decomposition of aluminum and zinc alkoxides has also been accomplished.[156]

OS **I,** 15, 183, 226, 280, 345, 430, 473, 475; **II,** 12, 368, 408, 606; **III,** 22, 204, 237, 312, 313, 353, 560, 729, 786; **IV,** 130, 444, 771; **V,** 294; **50,** 66; **52,** 96; **60,** 101; **61,** 56. No attempt has been made to list olefin-forming dehydrations accompanying condensations or rearrangements.

7-2 Cleavage of Ethers to Olefins
Hydro-alkoxy-elimination



$$\underset{\mathrm{H}\quad\mathrm{OR}}{-\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}-\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}-} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R'Na}} -\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}{=}\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}- + \mathrm{RONa + R'H}$$

---

[151] See, for example, Kawanisi, Arimatsu, Yamaguchi, and Kimoto, *Chem. Lett.* 881 (1972).

[152] For reviews, see Beránek and Kraus, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 20, pp. 274–295, Elsevier, New York, 1978; Pines, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **6**(2), 1–42 (1972), pp. 17–21; Noller, Andréu, and Hunger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 172–181 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 185–194]; Knözinger, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 791–805 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 778–792]; Pines and Manassen, *Adv. Catal.* **16,** 49–93 (1966); Ref. 150.

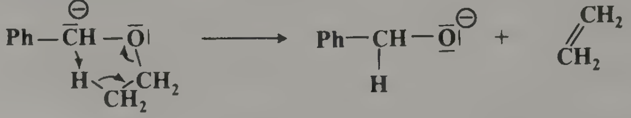
[153] Skell and Starer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4117 (1959).

[154] See, for example, Lee and Hahn, *Can. J. Chem.* **45,** 2129 (1967).

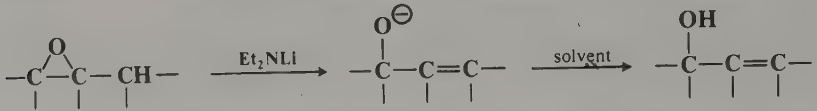
[155] Ashby, Willard, and Goel, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1221 (1979).

[156] Ref. 155; Brieger, Watson, Barar, and Shene, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1340 (1979).

Olefins can be formed by the treatment of ethers with very strong bases, such as alkylsodium or alkyllithium compounds or sodium amide,[157] though there are usually side reactions too. The reaction is aided by electron-withdrawing groups in the β-position, and, for example, $EtOCH_2CH(COOEt)_2$ can be converted to $CH_2{=}C(COOEt)_2$ without any bse at all, but simply on heating.[158] *t*-Butyl ethers are cleaved more easily than others. Several mechanisms are possible for the elimination. In many cases the mechanism is probably E1cB or on the E1cB side of the mechanistic spectrum,[159] since the base required is so strong, but it has been shown (by the use of $PhCD_2OEt$) that $PhCH_2OEt$ reacts by the five-membered Ei mechanism:[160]

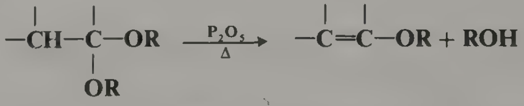


Epoxides can be converted to allylic alcohols[160a] by treatment with several reagents, including



lithium diethylamide,[161] *t*-butyldimethylsilyl iodide,[162] a dialkylboryl triflate,[163] and a diethylaluminum dialkylamide R_2NAlEt.[164] An alternative procedure is given in **7-13.**

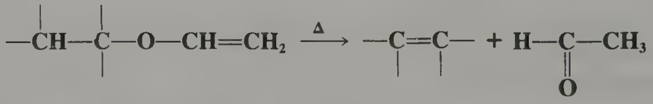
Ethers have also been converted to olefins and alcohols by passing vapors over hot P_2O_5 or Al_2O_3 (this method is similar to **7-1**), but this is not a general reaction. However, acetals can be converted to vinyl ethers in this manner:



$$-\overset{|}{C}H-\underset{OR}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-OR \xrightarrow[\Delta]{P_2O_5} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-OR + ROH$$

This can also be done at room temperature by treatment with Me_3SiI in the presence of hexamethyldisilazane.[165]

Vinyl ethers can be pyrolyzed to olefins and aldehydes in a manner similar to that of reaction **7-3:**



$$-\overset{|}{C}H-\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-O-CH=CH_2 \xrightarrow{\Delta} -\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + H-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_3$$

---

[157] For a review, see Köbrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 382–399 (1962), p. 389 [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 453–465].

[158] Feely and Boekelheide, *Org. Synth.* **IV,** 298.

[159] For an investigation in the gas phase, see DePuy and Bierbaum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 5034 (1981).

[160] Letsinger and Pollart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 6079 (1956). See also Maercker and Demuth, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1909 (1977).

[160a] For a review, see Crandall and Apparu, *Org. React.* **29,** 345–443 (1983).

[161] See, for example, Cope, Brown, and Lee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 2855 (1958); Crandall and Chang, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 435 (1967); Thummel and Rickborn, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1365 (1971); Kissel and Rickborn, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2060 (1972); Crandall and Crawley, *Org. Synth.* **53,** 17.

[162] Detty, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 924 (1980). For another silyl reagent, see Murata, Suzuki, and Noyori, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2738 (1979).

[163] Inoue, Uchimaru, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1215 (1977).

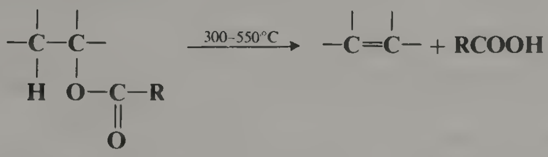
[164] For a review, see Yamamoto and Nozaki, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 169–175 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 180–186]. See also Yasuda, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 1705 (1979); Yasuda, Tanaka, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 1752 (1979).

[165] Miller and McKean, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 323 (1982). For another method, see Marsi and Gladysz, *Organometallics* **1,** 1467 (1982).

The rate of this reaction for R—O—CH═CH$_2$ increased in the order Et < i-Pr < *t*-Bu.[166] The mechanism is probably similar to that of **7-3.**

OS **IV,** 298, 404; **V,** 25, 642, 859, 1145; **53,** 17, 116; **54,** 19, 74, 77; **57,** 65.

7-3 Pyrolysis of Esters of Carboxylic Acids
Hydro-acyloxy-elimination



$$\text{H}-\overset{|}{\text{C}}-\overset{|}{\text{C}}-\text{O}-\underset{\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}-\text{R} \xrightarrow{300\text{–}550^\circ\text{C}} -\overset{|}{\text{C}}=\overset{|}{\text{C}}- + \text{RCOOH}$$

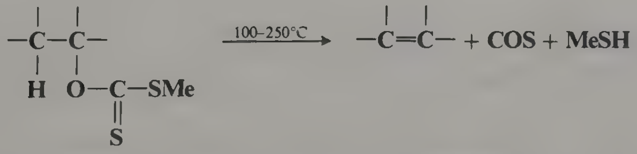
Esters in which the alkyl group has a β-hydrogen can be pyrolyzed, most often in the gas phase, to give the corresponding acid and an olefin.[167] No solvent is required. Since rearrangement and other side reactions are few, the reaction is synthetically very useful and is often carried out as an indirect method of accomplishing **7-1.** The yields are excellent and the workup is easy. Many olefins have been prepared in this manner. For higher olefins (above about C$_{10}$) a better method is to pyrolyze the *alcohol* in the presence of acetic anhydride.[168]

The mechanism is Ei (see p. 897). Lactones can be pyrolyzed to give unsaturated acids, provided that the six-membered transition state required for Ei reactions is available (it is not available for five- and six-membered lactones, but it is for larger rings[169]). Amides give a similar reaction but require higher temperatures.

Allylic acetates give dienes when heated with O,N-bis(trimethylsilyl)acetamide and molybdenum hexacarbonyl.[170]

OS **III,** 30; **IV,** 746; **V,** 235.

7-4 The Chugaev Reaction



$$\text{H}-\overset{|}{\text{C}}-\overset{|}{\text{C}}-\text{O}-\underset{\text{S}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}-\text{SMe} \xrightarrow{100\text{–}250^\circ\text{C}} -\overset{|}{\text{C}}=\overset{|}{\text{C}}- + \text{COS} + \text{MeSH}$$

Methyl xanthates are prepared by treatment of alcohols with NaOH and CS$_2$ to give RO—CS—SNa, followed by treatment of this with methyl iodide. Pyrolysis of the xanthate to give the olefin, COS, and the mercaptan is called the *Chugaev reaction.*[171] The reaction is thus, like **7-3,** an indirect method of accomplishing **7-1.** Elimination is easier with xanthates than with ordinary esters and the temperatures required are lower, which is advantageous because possible isomerization of the resulting olefin is minimized. The Chugaev reaction is used even more often than **7-3.** The mechanism is Ei, similar to that of **7-3.** For a time there was doubt as to which sulfur atom closed the ring, but now there is much evidence, including the study of ^{34}S and ^{13}C isotope effects, to show that it is the C=S sulfur:[172]

---

[166] McEwen and Taylor, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1179 (1982).

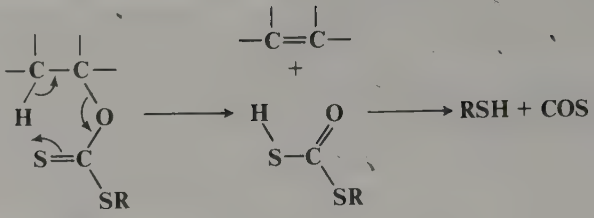
[167] For a review, see DePuy and King, Ref. 117, pp. 432–444.

[168] Aubrey, Barnatt, and Gerrard, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 681 (1965).

[169] See, for example, Bailey and Bird, Ref. 122.

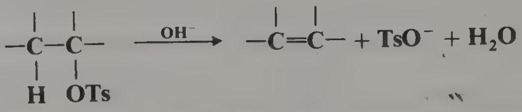
[170] Trost, Lautens, and Peterson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4525 (1983).

[171] For reviews, see DePuy and King, Ref. 117, pp. 444–448; Nace, *Org. React.* **12,** 57–100 (1962).



The mechanism is thus exactly analogous to that of **7-3**.

7-5 Decomposition of Other Esters
Hydro-tosyloxy-elimination

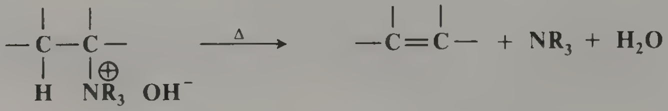


$$\underset{\displaystyle \text{H}}{\overset{|}{\text{—C}}}\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle \text{OTs}}{\overset{|}{\text{C—}}} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-} \text{—}\overset{|}{\text{C}}\text{=}\overset{|}{\text{C}}\text{—} + \text{TsO}^- + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Several types of inorganic esters can be cleaved to olefins by treatment with bases. Esters of sulfuric, sulfurous, and other acids undergo elimination in solution by E1 or E2 mechanisms, as do tosylates and other esters of sulfonic acids. It has been shown that bis(tetra-*n*-butylammonium) oxalate $(Bu_4N^+)_2\ (COO^-)_2$ is an excellent reagent for inducing tosylates to undergo elimination rather than substitution[173] (see p. 896). High yields of olefins are obtained by heating arylsulfonates in such solvents as dimethyl sulfoxide or HMPT.[174]

OS **50,** 84.

7-6 Cleavage of Quaternary Ammonium Hydroxides
Hydro-trialkylammonio-elimination[175]



$$\underset{\displaystyle \text{H}}{\overset{|}{\text{—C}}}\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle \text{NR}_3\ \text{OH}^-}{\overset{|}{\text{C—}}}{}^{\oplus} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \text{—}\overset{|}{\text{C}}\text{=}\overset{|}{\text{C}}\text{—} + \text{NR}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Cleavage of quaternary ammonium hydroxides is the final step of the process known as *Hofmann exhaustive methylation or Hofmann degradation.*[176] In the first step, a primary, secondary, or tertiary amine is treated with enough methyl iodide to convert it to the quaternary ammonium iodide (**0-45**). In the second step, the iodide is converted to the hydroxide by treatment with silver oxide. In the cleavage step an aqueous or alcoholic solution of the hydroxide is distilled, often under reduced pressure. The decomposition generally takes place at a temperature between 100 and 200°C. Alternatively, the solution can be concentrated to a syrup by distillation or freeze-drying.[177] When the syrup is heated at low pressures, the cleavage reaction takes place at lower temperatures than are required for the reaction in the ordinary solution, probably because the base (OH^- or RO^-) is less solvated.[178] The reaction has not been used a great deal as a synthetic tool for synthesizing olefins, though some cyclic olefins are best prepared in this way. The principal importance of the method, especially in earlier years, was for structural determination of unknown amines. The reaction was extremely useful, especially in the alkaloid field. In many of these compounds the nitrogen is in a ring, or even at a ring junction, and in such cases the olefin still contains nitrogen. Repetitions of the process are required to remove the nitrogen completely, e.g.,

---

[172] Bader and Bourns, *Can. J. Chem.* **39,** 348 (1961).

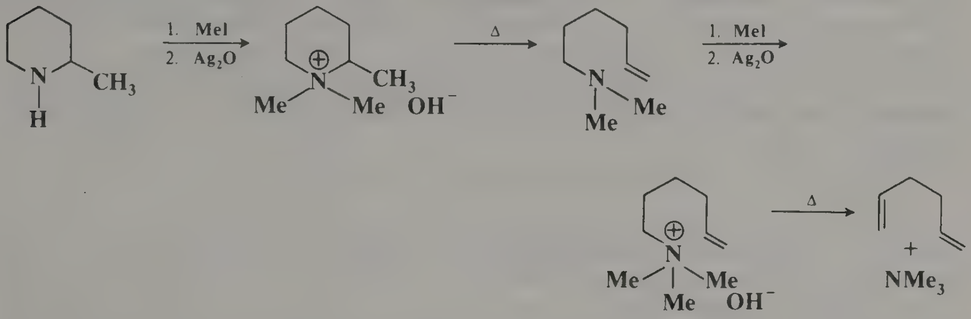
[173] Corey and Terashima, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 111 (1972).

[174] Nace, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5428 (1959).

[175] This name also applies to reaction **7-7**.

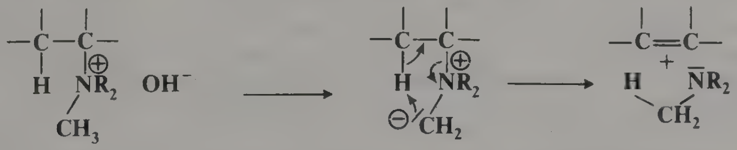
[176] For reviews, see Bentley, in Bentley and Kirby, "Elucidation of Organic Structures by Physical and Chemical Methods," 2d ed. (vol. 4 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Chemistry"), pt. 2, pp. 255–289, Wiley, New York, 1973; White and Woodcock, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 409–416, Interscience, New York, 1968; Cope and Trumbull, *Org. React.* **11,** 317–493 (1960).

[177] Archer, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1327 (1971).



A side reaction involving nucleophilic substitution to give an alcohol ($R_4N^+ OH^- \rightarrow ROH + R_3N$) generally accompanies the normal elimination reaction[179] but seldom causes trouble. However, when none of the four groups on the nitrogen has a β-hydrogen, then substitution is the only reaction possible. On heating $Me_4N^+ OH^-$ in water, methanol is obtained, though without a solvent the product is not methanol but dimethyl ether.[180]

The mechanism is usually E2; Hofmann's rule is generally obeyed by acyclic and Zaitsev's rule by cyclohexyl substrates (p. 890). In certain cases, where the molecule is highly hindered, a five-membered Ei mechanism, similar to that in **7-7**, has been shown to operate. That is, the OH^- in these cases does not attract the β-hydrogen, but instead removes one of the methyl hydrogens:



The obvious way to distinguish between this mechanism and the ordinary E2 mechanism is by use of deuterium labeling. For example, if the reaction is carried out on a quaternary hydroxide deuterated on the β-carbon ($R_2CDCH_2NMe_3^+ OH^-$), then the fate of the deuterium indicates the mechanism. If the E2 mechanism is in operation, the trimethylamine produced would contain no deuterium (which would be found only in the water). But if the mechanism is Ei, the amine would contain deuterium. In the case of the highly hindered compound $(Me_3C)_2CDCH_2NMe_3^+ OH^-$, the deuterium did appear in the amine, demonstrating an Ei mechanism for this case.[181] With simpler compounds, the mechanism is E2, since here the amine was deuterium-free.[182] This is also true in the case of the *cis*-norbornyl compound **7** (X = NMe_3^+) (p. 877), where a maximum of 6% of the elimination takes place by the Ei mechanism.[183] The mechanism here is chiefly syn E2.

---

[178] Saunders and Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 4–5.

[179] Baumgarten, *J. Chem. Educ.* **45,** 122 (1968).

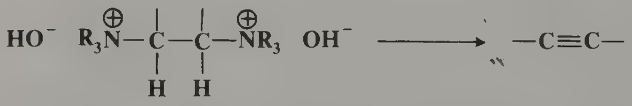
[180] Musker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 960 (1964), *J. Chem. Educ.* **45,** 200 (1968); Musker and Stevens, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3515 (1968); Tanaka, Dunning, and Carter, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3431 (1966).

[181] Cope and Mehta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1949 (1963). See also Baldwin, Banthorpe, Loudon, and Waller, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 509 (1967).

[182] Cope, LeBel, Moore, and Moore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3861 (1961).

When the nitrogen bears more than one group possessing a β-hydrogen, which group cleaves? The Hofmann rule says that *within* a group the hydrogen on the least alkylated carbon cleaves. This tendency is also carried over to the choice of which group cleaves: thus ethyl with three β-hydrogens cleaves more readily than any longer *n*-alkyl group, all of which have two β-hydrogens. "The β-hydrogen is removed most readily if it is located on a methyl group, next from RCH_2, and least readily from R_2CH."[184] In fact, the Hofmann rule as first stated[185] in 1851 applied only to which group cleaved, not to the orientation within a group; the latter could not have been specified in 1851, since the structural theory of organic compounds was not formulated until 1857–1860. Of course, the Hofmann rule (applied to which group cleaves *or* to orientation within a group) is superseded by conjugation possibilities. Thus $PhCH_2CH_2NMe_2Et^+\ OH^-$ gives mostly styrene instead of ethylene.

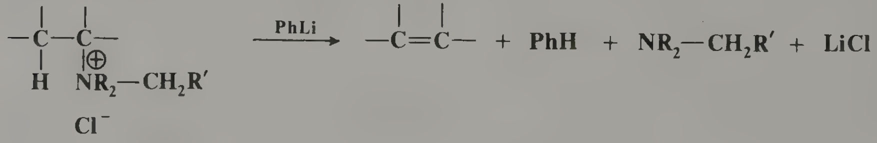
Triple bonds have been prepared by pyrolysis of 1,2-bis salts.[186]



$$HO^-\ R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}-\overset{\oplus}{N}R_3\ \ OH^- \longrightarrow -C\equiv C-$$

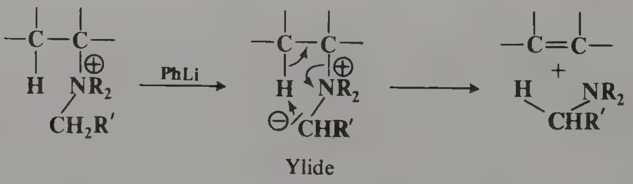
OS **IV,** 980; **V,** 315, 608; **55,** 3. Also see OS **V,** 621, 883; **53,** 13.

7-7 Cleavage of Quaternary Ammonium Salts with Strong Bases



$$-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{\substack{NR_2-CH_2R'\\ Cl^-}}{\overset{|}{\underset{\oplus}{C}}}- \xrightarrow{PhLi} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}- + PhH + NR_2-CH_2R' + LiCl$$

When quaternary ammonium halides are treated with strong bases (e.g., PhLi, KNH_2 in liquid NH_3[187]), an elimination may occur that is similar in products, though not in mechanism, to **7-6.**[188] This represents an alternative to **7-6** and is done on the quaternary ammonium halide, so that it is not necessary to convert this to the hydroxide. The mechanism is Ei:



An α′-hydrogen is obviously necessary so that the ylide can be formed. This type of mechanism is called α′,β elimination, since a β-hydrogen is removed by the α′-carbon. The mechanism has been confirmed by labeling experiments similar to those described at **7-6**.[189] and by isolation of the intermediate ylides.[190] An important synthetic difference between this and most instances of **7-6** is that syn elimination is observed here and anti elimination in **7-6**, so that products of opposite configuration are formed when the olefin exhibits cis–trans isomerism.

---

[183] Coke and Cooke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6701 (1967).

[184] Cope and Trumbull, Ref. 176, p. 348.

[185] Hofmann, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **78,** 253 (1851).

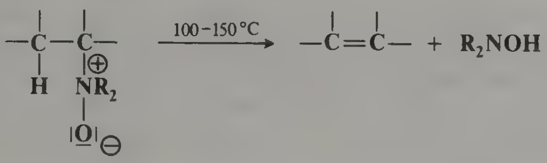
[186] For a review, see Franke, Ziegenbein, and Meister, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 391–400 (1960), pp. 397–398.

[187] Bach and Andrzejewski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 7118 (1971); Bach, Bair, and Andrzejewski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8608 (1972), *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 819 (1974).

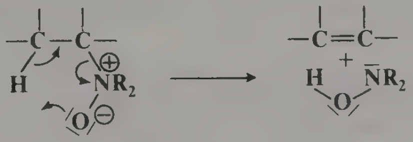
[188] For reviews, see Wittig, *Experientia* **14,** 393 (1958); Cope and Trumbull, Ref. 176, pp. 373–374.

An alternative procedure that avoids the use of a very strong base is heating the salt with KOH in polyethylene glycol monomethyl ether.[191]

7-8 Cleavage of Amine Oxides
Hydro-(Dialkyloxidoammonio)-elimination



Cleavage of amine oxides to produce an alkene and a hydroxylamine is called the *Cope reaction* (not to be confused with the Cope *rearrangement*, **8-36**). It is an alternative to **7-6** and **7-7**.[192] The reaction is usually performed with a mixture of amine and oxidizing agent (see **9-29**) without isolation of the amine oxide. Because of the mild conditions side reactions are few, and the olefins do not usually rearrange. The reaction is thus very useful for the preparation of many olefins. However, it does not open 6-membered rings containing hetero nitrogen, though it does open rings of 5 and 7 to 10 members.[193] Rates of the reaction increase with increasing size of α- and β-substituents.[194] The reaction can be carried out at room temperature in dry Me_2SO or THF.[195] The elimination is a stereoselective syn process,[196] and the five-membered Ei mechanism operates:



Almost all evidence indicates that the transition state must be planar.[197] Deviations from planarity as in **7-3** (see p. 897) are not found here, and indeed this is why six-membered heterocyclic nitrogen compounds do not react. Because of the stereoselectivity of this reaction and the lack of rearrangement of the products, it is useful for the formation of trans cycloolefins (eight-membered and higher).

OS **IV**, 612.

---

[189] Weygand, Daniel, and Simon, *Chem. Ber.* **91**, 1691 (1958); Bach, Andrzejewski, and Bair, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 820 (1974); Bach and Knight, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3815 (1979).

[190] Wittig and Polster, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **612**, 102 (1958); Wittig and Burger, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **632**, 85 (1960).

[191] Hünig, Öller, and Wehner, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1925 (1979).

[192] For reviews, see Cope and Trumbull, Ref. 176, pp. 361–370; DePuy and King, Ref. 117, pp. 448–451.

[193] Cope and LeBel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 4656 (1960); Cope, Ciganek, Howell, and Schweizer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 4663 (1960).

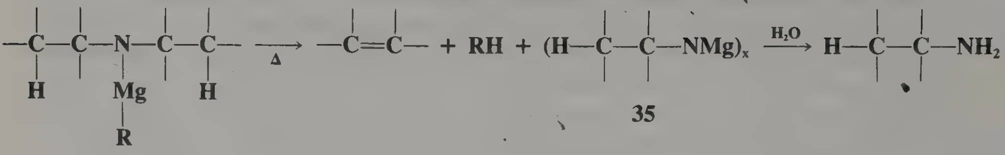
[194] Závada, Pánková, and Svoboda, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **38**, 2102 (1973).

[195] Cram, Sahyun, and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84**, 1734 (1962).

[196] See, for example, Bach, Andrzejewski, and Dusold, *J. Org. Chem.* **38**, 1742 (1973).

[197] There is evidence from isotope-effect studies that the C---H---O portion of the transition state is nonlinear: Kwart, George, Louw, and Ultee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100**, 3927 (1978); Kwart and Brechbiel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103**, 4650 (1981). This has led to the postulate that the five-membered transition state is nonplanar. However, a planar transition state could still have a nonlinear C---H---O portion.

7-9 Cleavage of Other Amine Derivatives
Hydro-magnesioalkylamino-elimination

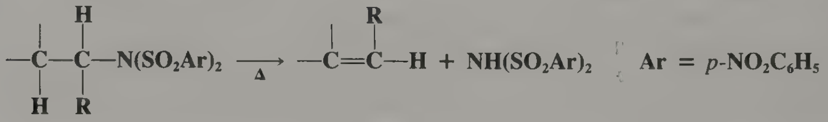


$$-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{R}{|}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\underset{Mg}{N}}}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}- \xrightarrow[\Delta]{} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}- + RH + (H-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-NMg)_x \xrightarrow{H_2O} H-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-NH_2$$

34 **35**

Secondary amines can be converted to magnesium amides (**34**) by treatment with a Grignard reagent RMgX. When heated either in the solid state or in an inert diluent such as *n*-dodecane, **34** decompose to give the alkene, RH, and an amide residue (represented as **35**) that is hydrolyzable to a primary amine.[198] Like the similar cleavage of magnesium alkoxides, mentioned at the end of **7-1**, the elimination is syn and an Ei mechanism is likely. Zinc and aluminum analogs of **34** react in a similar manner.

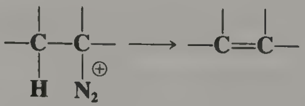
Primary amines with secondary alkyl groups can be cleaved by pyrolyzing their bis(*p*-nitrobenzenesulfonyl) derivatives.[199]



$$-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{R}{\overset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}}-N(SO_2Ar)_2 \xrightarrow[\Delta]{} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}-H + NH(SO_2Ar)_2 \qquad Ar = p\text{-}NO_2C_6H_5$$

The nucleofuge in this reaction, $N(SO_2Ar)_2$, is similar to the NTs_2 leaving group mentioned on p. 312. The reaction fails for amines with primary alkyl groups (R = H), but such amines, as well as those with secondary alkyl groups, can be cleaved after conversion to certain pyridium salts[200] (similar to the pyrylium salts shown on p. 313).

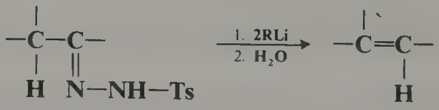
7-10 Olefins from Aliphatic Diazonium Salts
Hydro-diazonio-elimination



$$-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{N_2}{\overset{|}{\underset{|\oplus}{C}}}- \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-$$

The treatment of aliphatic amines with nitrous acid is not a useful method for the preparation of olefins any more than it is for the preparation of alcohols (**0-5**), though some olefin is usually formed in such reactions.

7-11 Decomposition of Toluene-*p*-sulfonylhydrazones



$$-\underset{H}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{N-NH-Ts}{\underset{\|}{C}}- \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ 2RLi} -\overset{|}{C}=\underset{H}{\underset{|}{C}}-$$

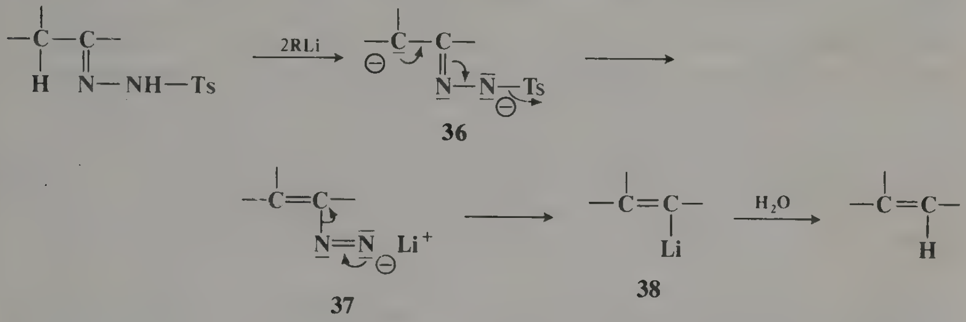
---

[198] Ashby and Willard, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4750 (1978).

[199] Curtis, Knutson, and Baumgarten, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 199 (1981).

[200] Katritzky and El-Mowafy, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3506, 3511 (1982); Katritzky and Lloyd, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2347 (1982).

Treatment of the tosylhydrazone of an aldehyde or a ketone with a strong base leads to the formation of an olefin, the reaction being formally an elimination accompanied by a hydrogen shift.[201] The reaction (the *Shapiro reaction*) has been applied to tosylhydrazones of many aldehydes and ketones. The most useful method synthetically involves treatment of the substrate with at least two equivalents of an organolithium compound[202] (usually MeLi) in ether, hexane, or tetramethylenediamine.[203] This procedure gives good yields of alkenes without side reactions and, where a choice is possible, predominantly gives the less highly substituted olefin. Tosylhydrazones of α,β-unsaturated ketones give conjugated dienes.[204] The mechanism[205] has been formulated as:



Evidence for this mechanism is: (1) two equivalents of RLi are required; (2) the hydrogen in the product comes from the water and not from the adjacent carbon, as shown by deuterium labeling;[206] and (3) the intermediates **36, 37,** and **38** have been trapped.[207] This reaction, when performed in tetramethylenediamine, can be a synthetically useful method[208] of generating vinyllithiums (**38**), which can be trapped by various electrophiles such as D_2O (to give deuterated alkenes), CO_2 (to give α,β-unsaturated carboxylic acids—**6-35**), or DMF (to give α,β-unsaturated aldehydes—**0-107**).

The reaction also takes place with other bases (e.g., NaOMe,[209] LiH,[210] Na in ethylene glycol, NaH, $NaNH_2$[211]) or with smaller amounts of RLi, but in these cases side reactions are common and the orientation of the double bond is in the other direction (to give the more highly substituted olefin). The reaction with Na in ethylene glycol is called the *Bamford–Stevens reaction.*[212] For these reactions two mechanisms are possible—a carbenoid and a carbocation mechanism.[213] The side reactions found are those expected of carbenes and carbocations. In general, the carbocation mechanism is chiefly found in protic solvents and the carbenoid mechanism in aprotic solvents.

[201] For reviews, see Adlington and Barrett, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 55–59 (1983); Shapiro, *Org. React.* **23,** 405–507 (1976).

[202] Shapiro and Heath, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5734 (1967); Kaufman, Cook, Shechter, Bayless, and Friedman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5736 (1967); Shapiro, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 345 (1968); Meinwald and Uno, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 800 (1968).

[203] Stemke and Bond, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1815 (1975).

[204] See Dauben, Rivers, and Zimmerman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3414 (1977).

[205] For a review of the mechanism, see Casanova and Waegell, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 922–932 (1975).

[206] Ref. 202; Shapiro and Hornaman, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2302 (1974).

[207] Shapiro, Lipton, Kolonko, Buswell, and Capuano, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1811 (1975); Ref. 203; Lipton and Shapiro, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1409 (1978).

[208] See Traas, Boelens, and Takken, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2287 (1976); Stemke, Chamberlin, and Bond, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2947 (1976).

[209] Bartlett and Stevens, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1964 (1967).

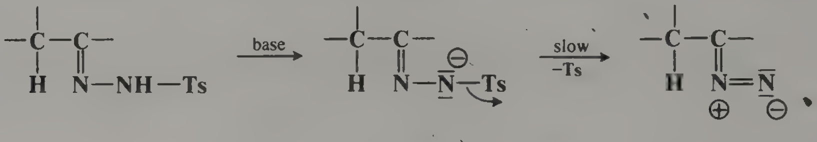
[210] Biellmann and Pète, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 675 (1967).

[211] Kirmse, von Bülow, and Schepp, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **691,** 41 (1966).

[212] Bamford and Stevens, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4735 (1952).

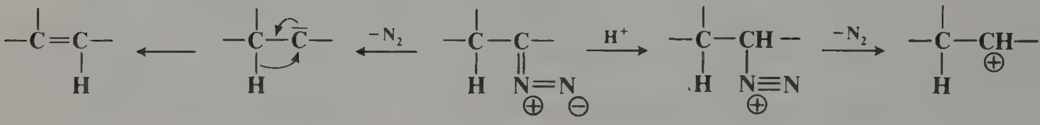
[213] Powell and Whiting, *Tetrahedron* **7,** 305 (1959), **12,** 168 (1961); DePuy and Froemsdorf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 634 (1960); Bayless, Friedman, Cook, and Shechter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 531 (1968); Nickon and Werstiuk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7081 (1972).

Both routes involve formation of a diazo compound (**39**) which in some cases has been isolated.[214]



39

In the absence of protic solvents **39** loses N_2, and hydrogen migrates, to give the olefin product. The migration of hydrogen may immediately follow, or be simultaneous with, the loss of N_2. In a protic solvent, **39** becomes protonated to give the diazonium ion **40** which loses N_2 to give the corresponding carbocation which may then undergo elimination (**7-10**) or give other reactions characteristic of carbocations. The reaction has been used as a synthetic method for the preparation of diazo compounds **39.**[215]

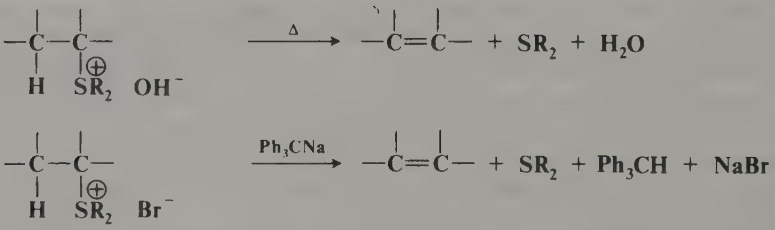


39 **40**

See also **7-28.**

OS **51,** 66; **61,** 141.

7-12 Cleavage of Sulfonium Compounds
Hydro-dialkylsulfonio-elimination



Sulfonium compounds undergo elimination similar to that of their ammonium counterparts (**7-6** and **7-7**) in scope and mechanism. The decomposition by heat of sulfonium hydroxides has been known for many years.[216] The ylide reaction was discovered more recently.[217] Neither is important synthetically.

---

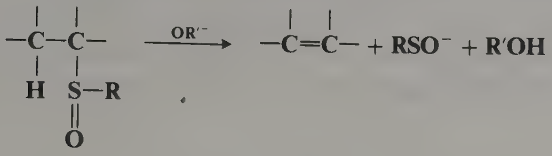
[214] For example, see Powell and Whiting, Ref. 213; Jończyk, Włostowska, and Mąkosza, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **86,** 739 (1977).

[215] See for example, Jończyk and Włostowska, *Synth. Commun.* **8,** 569 (1978).

[216] For a discussion, see Knipe, in Stirling, "The Chemistry of the Sulphonium Group," pt. 1, pp. 334–347, Wiley, New York, 1981.

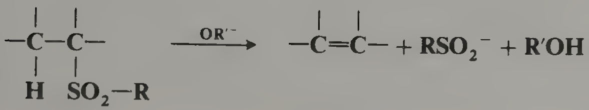
[217] Franzen and Mertz, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 2819 (1960). For a review, see Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," pp. 112–117, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

7-13 Cleavage of Sulfoxides, Selenoxides, and Sulfones



$$-\underset{\displaystyle H}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{\displaystyle S-R}}}{\overset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow{OR'^-} -\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}- + RSO^- + R'OH$$

Hydro-alkylsulfinyl-elimination

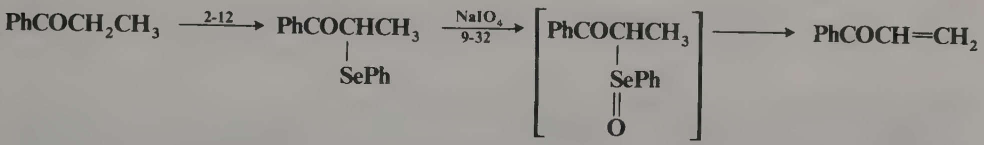


$$-\underset{\displaystyle H}{\overset{|}{C}}-\underset{\displaystyle SO_2-R}{\overset{|}{C}}- \xrightarrow{OR'^-} -\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}- + RSO_2^- + R'OH$$

Hydro-alkylsulfonyl-elimination

Sulfones and sulfoxides with a β-hydrogen undergo elimination on treatment with an alkoxide or, for sulfones,[218] even with OH^-.[219] In mechanism, these reactions belong on the E1–E2–E1cB spectrum.[220] Although the leaving groups are uncharged, the orientation follows Hofmann's rule, not Zaitsev's. Sulfoxides (but not sulfones) also undergo elimination on pyrolysis at about 80°C in a manner analogous to **7-8.** The mechanism is also analogous, being the five-membered Ei mechanism with syn elimination.[221] Selenoxides[222,223] and sulfinate esters $R_2CH—CHR—SO—OMe$[224] also undergo elimination by the Ei mechanism, the selenoxide reaction taking place at room temperature.[225] The reaction with selenoxides has been extended to the formation of triple bonds.[226]

Both the selenoxide[227] and sulfoxide[228] reactions have been used in a method for the conversion of ketones, aldehydes, and esters to their α,β-unsaturated derivatives (illustrated for the selenoxide).



$$PhCOCH_2CH_3 \xrightarrow{2\text{-}12} \underset{\displaystyle SePh}{PhCOCHCH_3} \xrightarrow[9\text{-}32]{NaIO_4} \left[\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{\displaystyle SePh}}}{PhCOCHCH_3}\right] \longrightarrow PhCOCH{=}CH_2$$

Because of the mildness of the procedure, this is probably the best means of accomplishing this conversion. The selenoxide reaction has been used in a procedure for the conversion of epoxides to allylic alcohols.[229]

---

[218] Certain sulfones undergo elimination with 5% HCl in THF: Yoshida and Saito, *Chem. Lett.* 165 (1982).

[219] Hofmann, Wallace, Argabright, and Schriesheim, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1234 (1963).

[220] Hofmann, Wallace, and Schriesheim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1561 (1964).

[221] Kingsbury and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1810 (1960); Walling and Bollyky, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2699 (1964); Entwistle and Johnstone, *Chem. Commun.* 29 (1965); Emerson, Craig, and Potts, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 102 (1967); Kice and Campbell, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1631 (1967).

[222] Jones, Mundy, and Whitehouse, *Chem. Commun.* 86 (1970); Sharpless, Young, and Lauer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1979 (1973); Toshimitsu, Owada, Uemura, and Okano, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 5037 (1980); Kwart, Horgan, and Kwart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1232 (1981); Reich, Hoeger, and Willis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2936 (1982). For reviews, see Reich, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **12,** 22–30 (1979), in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. C, pp. 15–101, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Sharpless, Gordon, Lauer, Patrick, Singer, and Young, *Chem. Scr.* **8A,** 9–13 (1975).

[223] Telluroxides also give elimination at room temperature: Uemura and Fukuzawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2748 (1983).

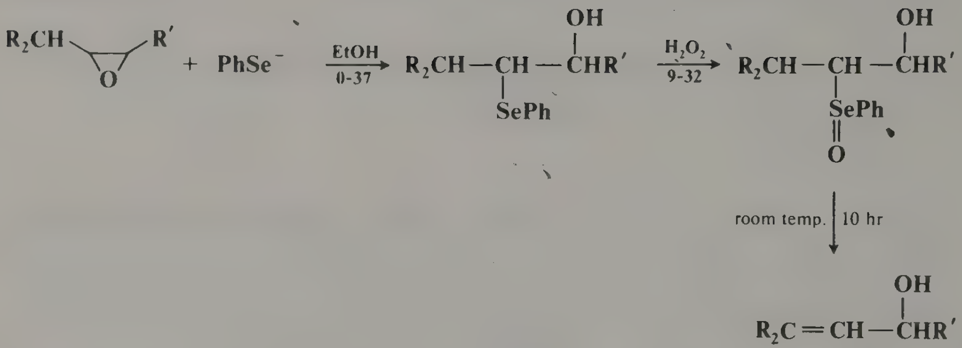
[224] Jones and Higgins, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 81 (1970).

[225] For reviews of organoselenium chemistry, see Clive, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 1049–1132 (1978), *Aldrichimica Acta* **11,** 43–49 (1978).

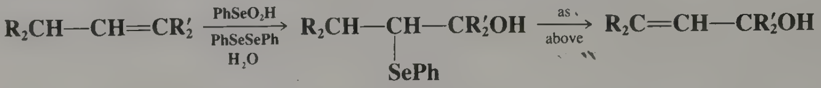
[226] Reich and Willis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 5967 (1980).

[227] Clive, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 695 (1973); Reich, Reich, and Renga, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5813 (1973); Reich, Renga, and Reich, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2133 (1974), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5434 (1975); Sharpless, Lauer, and Teranishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6137 (1973); Grieco and Miyashita, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 120 (1974).

[228] Trost, Salzmann, and Hiroi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 4887 (1976); for a review of this and related methods, see Trost, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 453–461 (1978).

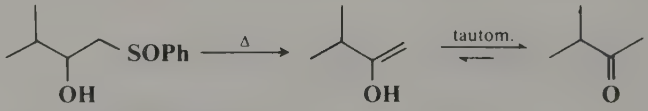


In another process, an olefin is converted to a rearranged allylic alcohol.[230]



$$R_2CH{-}CH{=}CR'_2 \xrightarrow[\text{PhSeSePh, } H_2O]{PhSeO_2H} R_2CH{-}\underset{\displaystyle SePh}{\underset{|}{CH}}{-}CR'_2OH \xrightarrow[\text{above}]{\text{as}} R_2C{=}CH{-}CR'_2OH$$

See p. 421 for another application of the selenoxide reaction. Pyrolysis of β-hydroxy sulfoxides gives ketones,[231] e.g.,



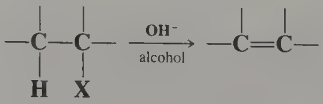
Allylic sulfoxides undergo 1,4 elimination to give dienes.[232]

Sulfides and disulfides also undergo elimination when heated with KOH in the polar aprotic solvent HMPT.[233] Thiophenol can be cleaved from diphenyl thioacetals and thioketals by treatment with cuprous ions and a tertiary amine $-\underset{|}{C}H-\underset{|}{C}(SPh)_2 \rightarrow -\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}-SPh$.[234] Vinylic sulfides are converted to alkynes by the base potassium 3-aminopropylamide $NH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2NHK$.[235]

OS **59,** 58, 202.

7-14 Dehydrohalogenation of Alkyl Halides

Hydro-halo-elimination[236]



$$-\underset{\displaystyle H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{\displaystyle X}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}- \xrightarrow[\text{alcohol}]{OH^-} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-$$

---

[229] Sharpless and Lauer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2697 (1973).

[230] Hori and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1689 (1978); Reich, Wollowitz, Trend, Chow, and Wendelborn, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1697 (1978). See also Reich, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 428 (1974); Clive, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 100 (1974); Sharpless and Lauer, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 429 (1974).

[231] Nokami, Kunieda, and Kinoshita, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2841 (1975); Reutrakul, Tiensripojamarn, Kusamran, and Nimgirawath, *Chem. Lett.* 209 (1979).

[232] de Groot, Jansen, Reuvers, and Tedjo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4137 (1981).

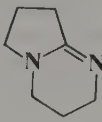
[233] Wallace, Hofmann, and Schriesheim, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1768 (1965).

[234] Cohen, Herman, Falck, and Mura, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 812 (1975); Cohen, Mura, Shull, Fogel, Ruffner, and Falck, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3218 (1976).

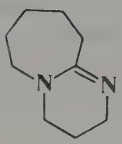
[235] Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3083 (1978).

[236] This name also applies to reaction **7-15.**

The elimination of HX from an alkyl halide is a very general reaction and can be accomplished with chlorides, fluorides, bromides, and iodides.[236a] Hot alcoholic KOH is the most frequently used base, though stronger bases[237] (OR^-, NH_2^-, etc.) or weaker ones (e.g., amines) are used where warranted. The bicyclic amidines 1,5-diazabicyclo[3.4.0]nonene-5 (DBN)[238] and 1,8-diazabicyclo-[5.4.0]undecene-7 (DBU)[239] are good reagents for difficult cases.[240] Phase transfer catalysis has been used with OH^- as base.[241] As previously mentioned (p. 887), certain weak bases in polar aprotic solvents are effective reagents for dehydrohalogenation. Among those most often used for synthetic purposes are LiCl or LiBr-$LiCO_3$ in DMF.[242] Dehydrohalogenation has also been effected by heating of the alkyl halide in HMPT with no other reagent present.[243]



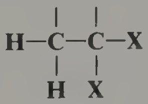
DBN



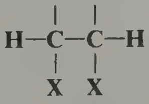
DBU

Tertiary halides undergo elimination most easily. Eliminations of chlorides, bromides, and iodides follow Zaitsev's rule, except for a few cases where steric effects are important (for an example, see p. 891). Eliminations of fluorides follow Hofmann's rule (p. 891).

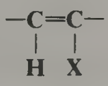
This reaction is by far the most important way of introducing a triple bond into a molecule.[244] This may be accomplished with substrates of the types:



$$\mathrm{H{-}\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{X}{|}}{C}}{-}X}$$



$$\mathrm{H{-}\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{X}{|}}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{X}{|}}{C}}{-}H}$$



$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{C}{=}\underset{\underset{X}{|}}{C}{-}}$$

The most commonly used base for triple-bond formation is $NaNH_2$. This base causes 1-alkynes to predominate (where possible), because it forms the salt of the alkyne, shifting any equilibrium between 1- and 2-alkynes. When the base is OH^- or OR^-, the equilibrium tends to be shifted to the internal alkyne, which is thermodynamically more stable. If another hydrogen is suitably located (e.g., $—CRH—CX_2—CH_2—$), then allene formation can compete, though alkynes are usually more stable.

Dehydrohalogenation is generally carried out in solution, with a base, and the mechanism is usually E2, though the E1 mechanism has been demonstrated in some cases. However, elimination of HX may also be accomplished by pyrolysis of the halide, in which case the mechanism is the Ei mechanism (p. 897) or, in some instances, the free-radical mechanism (p. 899). Pyrolysis is normally performed without a catalyst at about 400°C. The pyrolysis reaction is not generally useful synthetically, because of its reversibility. Less work has been done on pyrolysis with a catalyst[245] (usually a metallic oxide or salt), but the mechanisms here are probably E1 or E2.

[236a] For a review of eliminations involving the carbon-halogen bond, see Baciocchi, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement D," pt. 2, pp. 1173-1227, Wiley, New York, 1983.

[237] Triphenylmethylpotassium rapidly dehydrohalogenates secondary alkyl bromides and iodides, in over 90% yields, at 0°C: Anton and Crabtree, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24**, 2449 (1983).

[238] Truscheit and Eiter, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **658**, 65 (1962); Oediger, Kabbe, Möller, and Eiter, *Chem. Ber.* **99**, 2012 (1966); Vogel and Klärner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7**, 374 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80**, 402].

[239] Oediger and Möller, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6**, 76 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79**, 53 (1967)]; Wolkoff, *J. Org. Chem.* **47**, 1944 (1982).

[240] For a review of these reagents, see Oediger, Möller, and Eiter, *Synthesis* 591 (1972).

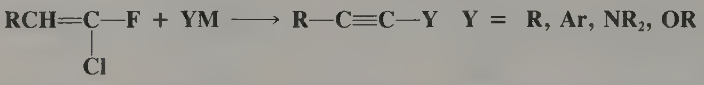
[241] Kimura and Regen, *J. Org. Chem.* **48**, 195 (1983). See also Barry, Bram, Decodts, Loupy, Pigeon, and Sansoulet, *J. Org. Chem.* **49**, 1138 (1984).

[242] For a discussion, see Fieser and Fieser, "Reagents for Organic Syntheses," vol. 1, pp. 606–609, Wiley, New York, 1967. For a review of alkali-metal fluorides in this reaction, see Yakobson and Akhmetova, *Synthesis* 169–184 (1983), pp. 170–173.

[243] Hanna, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2105 (1968); Monson, *Chem. Commun.* 113 (1971); Hutchins, Hutchins, and Milewski, *J. Org. Chem.* **37**, 4190 (1972).

[244] For reviews, see Ben-Efraim, Ref. 142; Köbrich and Buck, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 100–134, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Ref. 186, pp. 391–397; Köbrich, Ref. 2, pp. 50–53.

A combination elimination and substitution reaction has been used to synthesize alkynes. In this reaction a compound RCH=CFCl is treated with YM, where M is a metal and Y may be alkyl, aryl, NR_2, or OR:

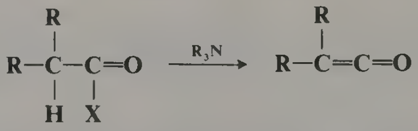


$$\mathrm{RCH{=}\underset{\displaystyle Cl}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}F + YM \longrightarrow R{-}C{\equiv}C{-}Y \qquad Y = R, Ar, NR_2, OR}$$

Alkynes, ynamines, and acetylenic ethers can be prepared in this manner.[246] In a similar reaction, trifluoro ethers and sulfides are converted to acetylenic ethers and thioethers: $CF_3CH_2—YR + R'Li \rightarrow R'—C{\equiv}C—YR$ (Y = O or S).[247]

OS **I,** 191, 205, 209, 438; **II,** 10, 17, 515; **III,** 125, 209, 270, 350, 506, 623, 731, 785; **IV,** 128, 162, 398, 404, 555, 608, 616, 683, 711, 727, 748, 755, 763, 851, 969; **V,** 285, 467, 514, 921; **51,** 115; **54,** 97; **55,** 12, 32, 86; **56,** 49, 65, 107; **57,** 41, 62, 65, 83, 117; **58,** 68; **59,** 10, 113; **60,** 63; **61,** 77. See also OS **56,** 118.

7-15 Dehydrohalogenation of Acyl Halides and Sulfonyl Halides



$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{\overset{|}{\underset{\displaystyle H}{\underset{|}{C}}}}{-}\underset{\displaystyle X}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}O \xrightarrow{R_3N} R{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}C{=}O}$$

Ketenes can be prepared by treatment of acyl halides with tertiary amines. The scope is broad, and most acyl halides possessing an α-hydrogen give the reaction, but if at least one R is hydrogen, only the ketene dimer, not the ketene, is isolated. However, if it is desired to use a reactive ketene in a reaction with a given compound, the ketene may be generated in situ in the presence of the given compound.[248]

Closely related is the reaction of tertiary amines with sulfonyl halides that contain an α-hydrogen. In this case the initial product is the highly reactive sulfene, which cannot be isolated but reacts further to give various products, one of which may be the alkene that is the dimer of RCH.[249] Here too, reactions of sulfenes in situ are common (for example, see **6-64**).

$$\mathrm{RCH_2SO_2Cl \xrightarrow{R_3N} \underset{Sulfene}{[RCH{=}SO_2]} \longrightarrow RCH{=}CHR} + \text{other products}$$

OS **IV,** 560; **V,** 294, 877; **52,** 36; **57,** 117.

7-16 Elimination of Boranes
Hydro-boranetriyl-elimination

$$\mathrm{(R_2CH{-}CH_2)_3B} + 3\ \text{1-decene} \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{3R_2C{=}CH_2 + [CH_3(CH_2)_8CH_2]_3B}$$

---

[245] For a review, see Noller, Andréu, and Hunger, Ref. 152.

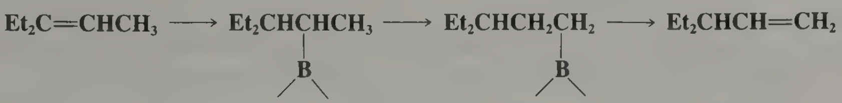
[246] Viehe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 477 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 638]. For reviews of ynamines, see Ficini, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 1448–1486 (1976); Viehe, in Viehe, Ref. 244, pp. 861–912.

[247] Tanaka, Shiraishi, Nakai, and Ishikawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3103 (1978).

[248] For a review of this procedure, see Luknitskii and Vovsi, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **38,** 487–494 (1969).

[249] For reviews of sulfenes, see Chapter 10, Ref. 1377.

Trialkylboranes are formed from an olefin and BH_3 (**5-13**). When the resulting borane is treated with another olefin, an exchange reaction occurs.[250] This is an equilibrium process that can be shifted by using a large excess of olefin, by using an unusually reactive olefin, or by using an olefin with a higher boiling point than the displaced olefin and removing the latter by distillation. The reaction is useful for shifting a double bond in the direction opposite to that resulting from normal isomerization methods (**2-2**). This cannot be accomplished simply by treatment of a borane such as **42** with an olefin, because elimination in this reaction follows Zaitsev's rule: It is in the direction of the most stable olefin, and the product would be **41**, not **44.** However, if it is desired to convert **41** to **44,** this can be accomplished by converting **41** to **42,** isomerizing **42** to **43** (**8-13**)



$$Et_2C{=}CHCH_3 \longrightarrow Et_2CH\underset{\underset{\diagup\;\diagdown}{B}}{\underset{|}{C}}HCH_3 \longrightarrow Et_2CHCH_2\underset{\underset{\diagup\;\diagdown}{B}}{\underset{|}{C}}H_2 \longrightarrow Et_2CHCH{=}CH_2$$

41 **42** **43** **44**

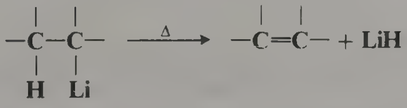
and then subjecting **43** to the exchange reaction with a higher-boiling olefin, e.g., 1-decene, whereupon **44** is produced. In the usual isomerizations (**2-2**), **44** could be isomerized to **41,** but not the other way around. The reactions **42** → **43** and **43** → **44** proceed essentially without rearrangement. The mechanism is probably the reverse of borane addition (**5-13**).

A similar reaction, but irreversible, has been demonstrated for alkynes.[251]

$$(R_2CH{-}CH_2)_3B + R'C{\equiv}CR' \longrightarrow 3R_2C{=}CH_2 + (R'CH{=}CR')_3B$$

Treatment of trialkylboranes (especially B-alkyl-9-BBN compounds) with benzaldehyde results in cleavage of one of the alkyl groups to give an olefin.[252]

7-17 Pyrolysis of Alkali-Metal Organometallic Compounds
Hydro-metallo-elimination



$$-\underset{H}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}-\underset{Li}{\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}}- \xrightarrow{\Delta} -\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}- + LiH$$

Solid lithium hydride and an olefin can be obtained by heating alkyllithium compounds containing a β-hydrogen.[253] With *sec*-BuLi the orientation followed Zaitsev's rule, although formation of *cis*-2-butene predominated over formation of the trans isomer.[254] The reaction has also been applied to alkylsodium and alkylpotassium compounds.[255] Grignard reagents gave olefins when thermally decomposed in nonsolvating solvents, e.g., cumene.[256] Alkenes have also been obtained from RLi and RMgX in solution, by treatment with ethylene and $NiCl_2$ or with certain other reagents.[257]

---

[250] Brown, Bhatt, Munekata, and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 567 (1967); Taniguchi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 2942 (1979).

[251] Hubert, *J. Chem. Soc.* 6669 (1965).

[252] Midland, Tramontano, and Zderic, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **156,** 203 (1978); Brown and Ford, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 647 (1981).

[253] Ziegler and Gellert, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **567,** 179 (1950).

[254] Glaze, Lin, and Felton, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1258 (1965).

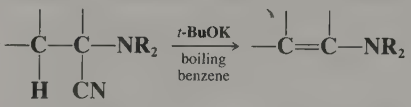
[255] For example, see Finnegan, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 895 (1962), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 851 (1963).

[256] Zakharkin, Okhlobystin, and Strunin, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **4,** 349 (1965); Lefrancois and Gault, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **16,** 7 (1969); Dymova, Grazhulene, Kuchinskii, and Kuznetsov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **20,** 1532 (1971).

[257] Reetz and Stephan, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 171 (1980), and previous papers in this series. See also Laycock and Baird, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3307 (1978).

Nitroalkenes have been obtained by cleavage of H and HgCl from β-nitro mercuric halides[258] (prepared by nitromercuration—see **5-8**). The mechanism is generally believed to be a four-centered pericyclic one (Ei).[259]

7-18 Dehydrocyanation
Hydro-cyano-elimination



$$-\underset{\mathrm{H}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}}-\underset{\mathrm{CN}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}}-\mathrm{NR_2} \xrightarrow[\text{boiling benzene}]{t\text{-BuOK}} -\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}=\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}-\mathrm{NR_2}$$

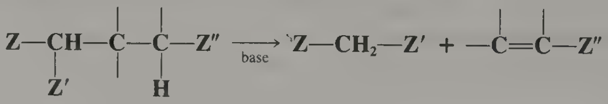
Enamines can be prepared from α-cyano tertiary amines by treatment with KOH or *t*-BuOK in boiling benzene or toluene, or in *t*-butyl methyl ether at room temperature.[260]

7-19 Decarbonylation of Acyl Halides
Hydro-chloroformyl-elimination

$$\mathrm{RCH_2CH_2COCl + RhCl(Ph_3P)_3 \xrightarrow{\Delta} RCH{=}CH_2 + HCl + RhClCO(Ph_3P)_2}$$

Acyl chlorides containing an α-hydrogen are smoothly converted to olefins, with loss of HCl and CO, on heating with chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium, with metallic platinum, or with certain other catalysts.[261] The mechanism probably involves conversion of $\mathrm{RCH_2CH_2COCl}$ to $\mathrm{RCH_2CH_2{-}RhCO(Ph_3P)_2Cl_2}$ followed by a concerted syn elimination of Rh and H.[262] See also **4-40** and **9-13.**

7-20 Reversal of the Michael Reaction
Hydro-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl-elimination, etc.

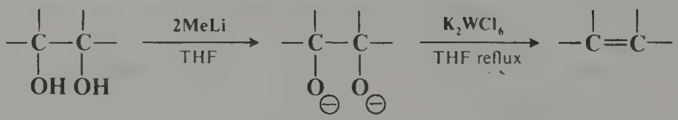


$$\mathrm{Z{-}\underset{Z'}{\underset{|}{CH}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{\underset{H}{|}}{C}}{-}Z''} \xrightarrow[\text{base}]{} \mathrm{Z{-}CH_2{-}Z'} + -\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}=\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}-\mathrm{Z''}$$

Olefins can be formed on base cleavage of Michael adducts. (See **5-17.** Z is defined on p. 664.) In some cases cleavage occurs simply on heating, without basic catalysis.

B. Reactions in Which Neither Leaving Atom is Hydrogen

7-21 Deoxygenation of Vicinal Diols
Dihydroxy-elimination



$$-\underset{\mathrm{OH}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}}-\underset{\mathrm{OH}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}}- \xrightarrow[\text{THF}]{\text{2MeLi}} -\underset{\mathrm{O^{\ominus}}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}}-\underset{\mathrm{O^{\ominus}}}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}}- \xrightarrow[\text{THF reflux}]{\mathrm{K_2WCl_6}} -\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}=\overset{|}{\mathrm{C}}-$$

---

[258] Corey and Estreicher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6294 (1978).

[259] See for example, Li and San Filippo, *Organometallics* **2,** 554 (1983).

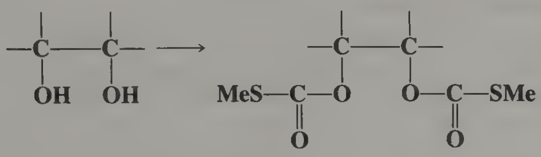
[260] Ahlbrecht, Raab, and Vonderheid, *Synthesis* 127 (1979); Ahlbrecht and Raab, *Synthesis* 320 (1980).

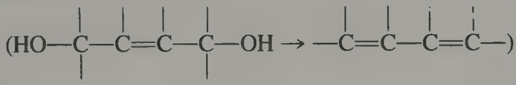
[261] Tsuji and Ohno, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3452 (1966), **90,** 94, (1968); Ohno and Tsuji, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 99 (1968). For a review, see Tsuji and Ohno, *Synthesis* 157–169 (1969).

[262] Lau, Becker, Huang, Baenziger, and Stille, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5664 (1977).

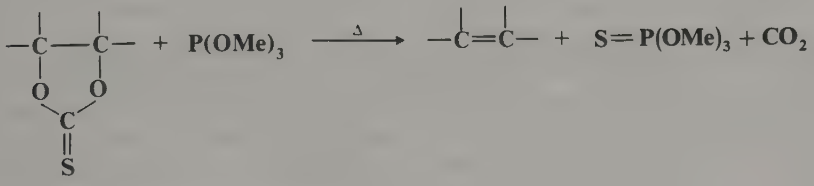
vic-Diols can be deoxygenated by treatment of the dilithium dialkoxide with the tungsten halide K_2WCl_6, or with certain other tungsten reagents, in refluxing THF.[263] Tetrasubstituted diols react most rapidly. The elimination is largely, but not entirely, syn. Several other methods have been reported, in which the diol is deoxygenated directly, without conversion to the dialkoxide. These include treatment with titanium metal,[264] with Me_3SiCl-NaI,[265] with Ph_3P-imidazole-I_2 in toluene,[266] and with PBr_3-CuBr-ether at low temperatures, followed by zinc powder.[267]

vic-Diols can also be deoxygenated indirectly, through sulfonate ester derivatives. For example, *vic*-dimesylates and *vic*-ditosylates have been converted to alkenes by treatment, respectively, with naphthalene–sodium[268] and with NaI in dimethylformamide.[269] In another procedure, the diols are converted to bisdithiocarbonates (bis xanthates), which undergo elimination (probably by a free-radical mechanism) when treated with tri-*n*-butylstannane in toluene or benzene.[270] *vic*-Diols can also be dehydrogenated through cyclic derivatives (**7-22**).



2-Ene-1,4-diols give 1,4-elimination  $(HO-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-OH \rightarrow -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-)$ when treated with $TiCl_3$ and $LiAlH_4$.[271]

7-22 Cleavage of Cyclic Thionocarbonates



45

Cyclic thionocarbonates (**45**) can be cleaved to olefins (the *Corey–Winter reaction*)[272] by heating with trimethyl phosphite[273] or other trivalent phosphorus compounds[274] or by treatment with bis(1,5-

---

[263] Sharpless and Flood, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 370 (1972); Sharpless, Umbreit, Nieh, and Flood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6538 (1972).

[264] McMurry and Fleming, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 896 (1976); McMurry, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 406–411 (1983).

[265] Sarma, Barua, Sharma, and Barua, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2843 (1983).

[266] Garegg and Samuelsson, *Synthesis* 469 (1979).

[267] Tanaka, Yasuda, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3252 (1975).

[268] Carnahan and Closson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3447 (1972).

[269] Defaye, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2099 (1968).

[270] Barrett, Barton, and Bielski, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2378 (1979).

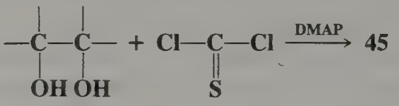
[271] Walborsky and Wüst, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5807 (1982).

[272] For reviews, see Block, *Org. React.* **30,** 457–566 (1984); Sonnet, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 557–604 (1980), pp. 593–598; Mackie, in Cadogan, "Organophosphorus Reagents in Organic Synthesis," pp. 354–359, Academic Press, New York, 1979; Block, Ref. 217, pp. 229–235.

[273] Corey and Winter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 2677 (1963).

[274] Corey, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **14,** 19–37 (1967), pp. 32–33.

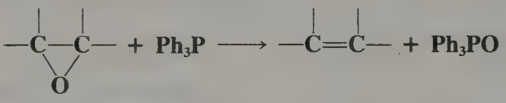
cyclooctadiene)nickel.[275] The thionocarbonates can be prepared by treatment of 1,2-diols with thiophosgene and 4-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP):[276]



$$-\underset{\text{OH}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}-\underset{\text{OH}}{\overset{|}{\text{C}}}- + \text{Cl}-\underset{\text{S}}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}}-\text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{DMAP}} \mathbf{45}$$

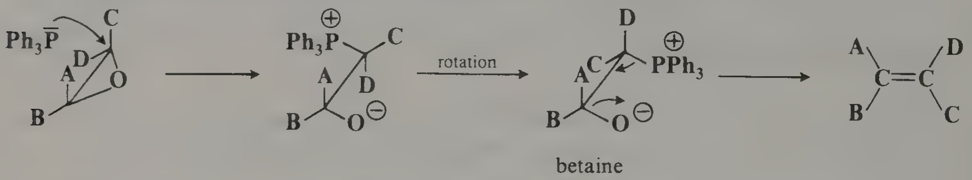
The elimination is of course syn, so the product is sterically controlled. Olefins that are not sterically favored can be made this way in high yield, e.g., *cis*-$PhCH_2CH{=}CHCH_2Ph$.[277] Certain other 5-membered cyclic derivatives of 1,2-diols can also be converted to alkenes.[278]

7-23 The Conversion of Epoxides to Olefins



$$-\overset{|}{\text{C}}-\overset{|}{\text{C}}- + Ph_3P \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{\text{C}}=\overset{|}{\text{C}}- + Ph_3PO$$

Epoxides can be converted to olefins[279] by treatment with triphenylphosphine[280] or triethyl phosphite $P(OEt)_3$.[281] The first step of the mechanism is nucleophilic substitution (**0-51**), followed by a four-center elimination. Since inversion accompanies the substitution, the overall elimination is anti, i.e., if two groups A and C are cis in the epoxide, they will be trans in the olefin:



Alternatively, the epoxide can be treated with lithium diphenylphosphide Ph_2PLi, and the product quaternized with methyl iodide.[282] For another method of preparing the betaine, and hence olefins, see the Wittig reaction (**6-47**). Olefins have also been obtained from epoxides by reaction with a large number of reagents, among them[283] Li in THF,[284] TsOH and NaI,[285] trimethylsilyl iodide,[286] dimethyl diazomalonate,[286a] 3-methyl-2-selenoxobenzothiazole,[287] PI_3,[288] P_2I_4,[289] alkylmanganese compounds,[289a] $Fe(CO)_5$,[290] F_3CCOI,[291] sodium (cyclopentadienyl)ferrate,[292] $TiCl_3$-$LiAlH_4$,[293] $FeCl_3$-BuLi,[294] the tungsten reagents mentioned in **7-21,**[263] and NaI-NaOAc-Zn-AcOH.[295] The last-mentioned method is actually a variation of **7-31,** since iodohydrins are intermediates. Some of these methods give syn elimination.

---

[275] Semmelhack and Stauffer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2667 (1973). For another method, see Vedejs and Wu, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3641 (1974).

[276] Corey and Hopkins, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1979 (1982).

[277] Corey, Carey, and Winter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 934 (1965).

[278] See Hines, Peagram, Whitham, and Wright, *Chem. Commun.* 1593 (1968); Josan and Eastwood, *Aust. J. Chem.* **21,** 2013 (1968); Hiyama and Nozaki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **46,** 2248 (1973); Marshall and Lewellyn, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 1311 (1977); Breuer and Bannet, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 997 (1978); Hanessian, Bargiotti, and LaRue, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 737 (1978); Hatanaka, Tanimoto, Oida, and Okano, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5195 (1981).

[279] For a review, see Sonnet, Ref. 272, pp. 576–586.

[280] Wittig and Haag, *Chem. Ber.* **88,** 1654 (1955).

[281] Scott, *J. Org. Chem.* **22,** 1118 (1957).

[282] Vedejs and Fuchs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4070 (1971), **95,** 822 (1973).

[283] For a list of some other reagents with references, see Suzuki, Fuchita, Iwasa, and Mishina, *Synthesis* 905 (1978).

[284] Gurudutt and Ravindranath, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1173 (1980).

[285] Baruah, Sharma, and Baruah, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 524 (1983).

[286] Denis, Magnane, Van Eenoo, and Krief, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **3,** 705 (1979). For other silyl reagents, see Reetz and Plachky, *Synthesis* 199 (1976); Dervan and Shippey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1265 (1976); Caputo, Mangoni, Neri, and Palumbo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3551 (1981).

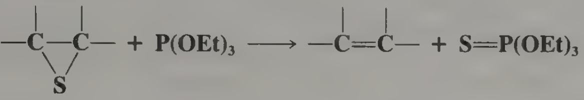
[286a] Martin and Ganem, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 251 (1984).

[287] Calò, Lopez, Mincuzzi, and Pesce, *Synthesis* 200 (1976).

[288] Denis, Magnane, Van Eenoo, and Krief, Ref. 286.

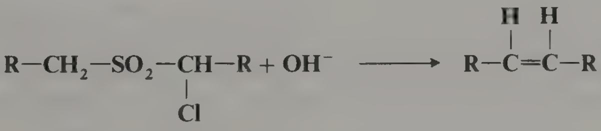
[289] Ref. 283; Ref. 288.

7-24 The Conversion of Episulfides to Olefins



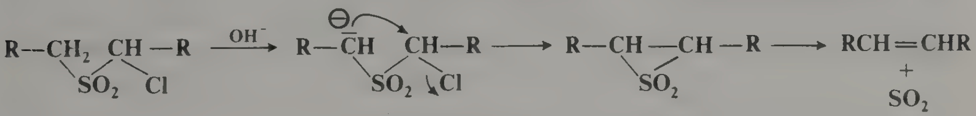
Episulfides[296] can be converted to olefins in a reaction similar in appearance to **7-23.**[297] However, in this case the elimination is syn, so that the mechanism cannot be the same as that of **7-23.** The phosphite attacks not the carbon, but the sulfur. Among other reagents that convert episulfides to olefins are phenyllithium, Bu_3SnH,[298] P_2I_4,[298] lithium aluminum hydride[299] (this compound behaves quite differently with epoxides, see **0-81**), and methyl iodide.[300] Episulfoxides can be converted to olefins and sulfur monoxide simply by heating.[301]

7-25 The Ramberg–Bäcklund Reaction



$$R-CH_2-SO_2-\underset{Cl}{\underset{|}{CH}}-R + OH^- \longrightarrow R-\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}=\overset{H}{\overset{|}{C}}-R$$

The reaction of an α-halo sulfone with a base to give an olefin is called the *Ramberg–Bäcklund reaction.*[302] The reaction is quite general for α-halo sulfones with an α′-hydrogen, despite the unreactivity of α-halo sulfones in normal SN2 reactions (p. 303). Halogen reactivity is in the order I > Br ≫ Cl. Phase transfer catalysis has been used.[303] In general, mixtures of cis and trans isomers are obtained, but usually the less stable cis isomer predominates. The mechanism involves formation



[289a] Kauffmann and Bisling, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 293 (1984).

[290] Alper and Des Roches, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4155 (1977).

[291] Sonnet, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1841 (1978).

[292] Giering, Rosenblum, and Tancrede, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7170 (1972); Rosenblum, Saidi, and Madhavarao, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4009 (1975).

[293] McMurry, Silvestri, Fleming, Hoz, and Grayston, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3249 (1978).

[294] Fujisawa, Sugimoto, and Ohta, *Chem. Lett.* 883 (1975).

[295] Cornforth, Cornforth, and Mathew, *J. Chem. Soc.* 112 (1959). See also Yamada, Goto, Nagase, Kyotani, and Hirata, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2076 (1978); Sonnet, *Synthesis* 828 (1980).

[296] For a review of this reaction, see Sonnet, Ref. 272, pp. 587–590. For a review of episulfides, see Goodman and Reist, in Kharasch and Meyers, "The Chemistry of Organic Sulfur Compounds," pp. 93–113, Pergamon, New York, 1966.

[297] Neureiter and Bordwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 578 (1959); Davis, *J. Org. Chem.* **23,** 1767 (1957).

[298] Schauder, Denis, and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1657 (1983).

[299] Lightner and Djerassi, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1236 (1962); Latif, Mishriky, and Zeid, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **312,** 421 (1970).

[300] Culvenor, Davies, and Heath, *J. Chem. Soc.* 282 (1949); Helmkamp and Pettitt, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 3258 (1964).

[301] Hartzell and Paige, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2616 (1966), *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 459 (1967); Aalbersberg and Vollhardt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 2792 (1977).

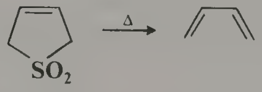
[302] For reviews, see Paquette, *Org. React.* **25,** 1–71 (1977); Rappe, in Patai, Ref. 2, pt. 2, pp. 1105–1110; Paquette, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **1,** 121–156 (1968), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 209–216 (1968); Bordwell, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **3,** 281–290 (1970), pp. 285–286; in Janssen, "Organosulfur Chemistry," pp. 271–284, Interscience, New York, 1967.

[303] Hartman and Hartman, *Synthesis* 504 (1982).

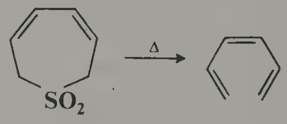
of an episulfone and then elimination of SO_2. There is much evidence for this mechanism,[304] including the preparation of episulfones in other ways and the demonstration that they give olefins under the reaction conditions faster than the corresponding α-halo sulfones.[305] Episulfones synthesized in other ways (e.g., **6-64**) are reasonably stable compounds but eliminate SO_2 to give olefins when heated or treated with base. A comparison of the reactivity of $PhCH_2SO_2CH_2OTs$ with that of $PhCH_2SO_2CH_2Cl$ showed that the tosylate reacted a great deal slower than the chloride,[306] despite the fact that OTs is normally a much better nucleofuge (p. 312).

If the reaction is run on the unsaturated bromo sulfones $RCH_2CH{=}CHSO_2CH_2Br$ (prepared by reaction of $BrCH_2SO_2Br$ with $RCH_2CH{=}CH_2$ followed by treatment with Et_3N), the dienes $RCH{=}CHCH{=}CH_2$ are produced in moderate-to-good yields.[307]

2,5-Dihydrothiophene-1,1-dioxides (**46**) and 2,7-dihydrothiepin-1,1-dioxides (**47**) undergo analogous 1,4 and 1,6 eliminations, respectively (see also **7-51**). These are concerted reactions and,



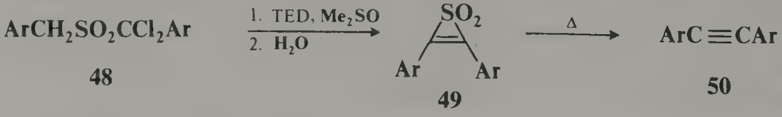
46



47

as predicted by the orbital-symmetry rules (p. 756), the former[308] is a suprafacial process and the latter[309] an antarafacial process. The rules also predict that elimination of SO_2 from episulfones cannot take place by a concerted mechanism (except antarafacially, which is unlikely for such a small ring), and the evidence shows that this reaction occurs by a nonconcerted pathway.[310] The eliminations of SO_2 from **46** and **47** are examples of *cheletropic reactions,*[311] which are defined as reactions in which two σ bonds that terminate at a single atom (in this case the sulfur atom) are made or broken in concert.[312]

α,α-Dichlorobenzyl sulfones (**48**) react with an excess of the base triethylenediamine in dimethyl sulfoxide at room temperature to give 2,3-diarylthiiren-1,1-dioxides (**49**), which can be isolated.[313]



48 **49** **50**

Thermal decomposition of **49** gives the alkynes **50**.[314] Alternatively, α,α-dichlorobenzyl sulfides $ArCH_2SCCl_2Ar$ can be converted to **50** by treatment with triphenylphosphine and *t*-BuOK in THF.[315]

---

[304] See, for example, Bordwell and Cooper, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 5187 (1951); Paquette, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4089 (1964); Neureiter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 558 (1966); Bordwell and Wolfinger, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2521 (1974); Bordwell and Doomes, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2526, 2531 (1974).

[305] Bordwell, Williams, Hoyt, and Jarvis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 429 (1968); Bordwell and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 435 (1968).

[306] Meyers, Hua, and Peacock, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1719 (1980).

[307] Block and Aslam, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6164 (1983); Block, Aslam, Eswarakrishnan, and Wall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6165 (1983).

[308] Mock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2857 (1966); McGregor and Lemal. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2858 (1966).

[309] Mock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5682 (1969).

[310] Ref. 305. See also Vilsmaier, Tropitzsch, and Vostrowsky, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3987 (1974).

[311] For a review, see Mock, in Marchand and Lehr, "Pericyclic Reactions," vol. 2, pp. 141–179, Academic Press, New York, 1977.

[312] Woodward and Hoffmann, "The Conservation of Orbital Symmetry," pp. 152–163, Academic Press, New York, 1970.

[313] Philips, Swisher, Haidukewych, and Morales, *Chem. Commun.* 22 (1971).

[314] Carpino, McAdams, Rynbrandt, and Spiewak, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 476 (1971); Philips and Morales, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 713 (1977).

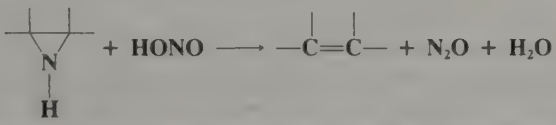
[315] Mitchell, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 955 (1973).

A Ramberg–Bäcklund-type reaction has been carried out on the α-halo *sulfides* $ArCHClSCH_2Ar$, which react with *t*-BuOK and PPh_3 in refluxing tetrahydrofuran to give the alkenes $ArCH{=}CHAr$.[316] Another analogous reaction is treatment of α-bromo ketones $R_2CBrCOCHR_2$ with base and hydrogen peroxide to give olefins $R_2C{=}CR_2$.[317] This reaction involves a cyclopropanone intermediate (see the Favorskii rearrangement, **8-8**) which loses CO on reaction with H_2O_2.

The Ramberg–Bäcklund reaction can be regarded as a type of extrusion reaction (see p. 937).

OS **V,** 877; **50,** 43, 65.

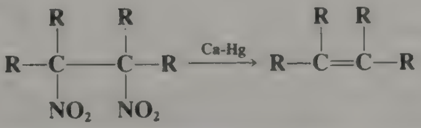
7-26 The Conversion of Aziridines to Olefins



Aziridines not substituted on the nitrogen atom react with nitrous acid to produce olefins.[318] An N-nitroso compound is an intermediate (**2-50**); other reagents that produce such intermediates also give olefins. The reaction is stereospecific: cis aziridines give cis olefins and trans aziridines give trans olefins.[319] Aziridines carrying N-alkyl substituents can be converted to olefins by treatment with ferrous iodide[320] or with *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid.[321] An N-oxide intermediate (**9-29**) is presumably involved in the latter case.

7-27 Conversion of Vicinal Dinitro Compounds to Olefins

Dinitro-elimination

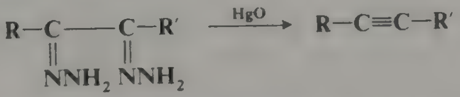


$$R-\underset{NO_2}{\overset{R}{C}}-\underset{NO_2}{\overset{R}{C}}-R \xrightarrow{\text{Ca-Hg}} R-\overset{R}{C}=\overset{R}{C}-R$$

Tetrasubstituted *vic*-dinitro compounds are converted to olefins by treatment with amalgamated calcium.[322] Various functional groups, such as CN and COOR, did not affect the reaction. Other reagents that have been used include sodium sulfide in DMF,[323] Bu_3SnH,[324] and $SnCl_2$.[325] Radical-ion mechanisms are likely in all these cases. *vic*-Dinitro compounds can be prepared by the reaction between an α,α-dinitro compound and the salt of a nitro paraffin (p. 415).

7-28 The Conversion of Dihydrazones to Alkynes

Dihydrazono-bielimination



$$R-\underset{NNH_2}{\underset{\|}{C}}-\underset{NNH_2}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R' \xrightarrow{\text{HgO}} R-C\equiv C-R'$$

---

[316] Mitchell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4395 (1973). For a similar reaction without base treatment, see Pommelet, Nyns, Lahousse, Merényi, and Viehe, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 585 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 594].

[317] Baldwin and Cardellina, *Chem. Commun.* 558 (1968).

[318] For reviews, see Sonnet, Ref. 272, pp. 591–592; Dermer and Ham, "Ethylenimine and other Aziridines," pp. 293–295, Academic Press, New York, 1969.

[319] Clark and Helmkamp, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 1316 (1964); Carlson and Lee, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4001 (1969).

[320] Imamoto and Yukawa, *Chem. Lett.* 165 (1974).

[321] Heine, Myers, and Peltzer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 374 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 395]. See also Hata and Watanabe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3827, 4659 (1972).

[322] Kornblum and Cheng, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2944 (1977).

[323] Kornblum, Boyd, Pinnick, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4316 (1971).

[324] Ono, Miyake, Tamura, Hamamoto, and Kaji, *Chem. Lett.* 1139 (1981).

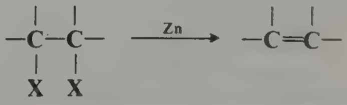
[325] Fukunaga and Kimura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 1107 (1979).

1,2-Dihydrazones can be made to lose two moles of nitrogen to give alkynes by treatment with HgO, Ag_2O, $CuCl_2$-O_2-pyridine, or certain other reagents. R and R′ may be alkyl or aryl. Highly strained seven- and eight-membered cycloalkynes (see p. 137), as well as large cycloalkynes, have been obtained by this reaction.[326]

OS **IV**, 377. See also OS **55**, 73.

7-29 Dehalogenation of Vicinal Dihalides

Dihalo-elimination[327]



$$-\underset{X}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{X}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}- \xrightarrow{Zn} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-$$

Dehalogenation has been accomplished with many reagents, the most common being zinc, magnesium, and iodide ion.[327a] Among reagents used less frequently have been phenyllithium, phenylhydrazine, chromous chloride $CrCl_2$, naphthalene–sodium,[328] Na-NH_3,[329] Na_2S in DMF,[330] and lithium aluminum hydride.[331] Though the reaction gives good yields, it is not very useful because the best way to prepare *vic*-dihalides is by the addition of halogen to a double bond (**5-27**). One useful feature of this reaction is that there is no doubt about the *position* of the new double bond, so that it can be used to give double bonds exactly where they are wanted. For example, allenes, which are not easily prepared by other methods, can be prepared from X—C—CX_2—C—X or X—C—CX=C— systems.[332] Cumulenes have been obtained from 1,4 elimination:

$$\mathbf{BrCH_2{-}C{\equiv}C{-}CH_2Br + Zn \longrightarrow CH_2{=}C{=}C{=}CH_2}$$

Triple bonds can be prepared from X—C=C—X or X_2C—CX_2 systems,[333] but availability considerations are even more extreme here.

The reaction can be carried out for any combination of halogens, except where one is fluorine. Mechanisms are often complex and depend on the reagent and reaction conditions.[334] For different reagents, mechanisms involving carbocations, carbanions, and free-radical intermediates, as well as concerted mechanisms, have been proposed. The reaction with I^- was found to proceed with stereospecific anti orientation (p. 875); from this fact an E2 mechanism was assumed in this case, but more recent work[335] shows that the reaction is not always stereospecifically anti and the mechanism is more complicated. When the reagent is zinc, anti stereospecificity has been observed in some cases,[336] but not in others.[337]

OS **III,** 526, 531; **IV,** 195, 268; **V,** 22, 255, 393, 901; **50,** 21. Also see OS **IV,** 877, 914, 964.

---

[326] For example, see Blomquist and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2153 (1953); Krebs and Kimling, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 761 (1970); Tsuji, Kezuka, Toshida, Takayanagi, and Yamamoto, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 3279 (1983).

[327] This name also applies to reaction **7-30**.

[327a] For a review of this reaction, see Baciocchi, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 236a, pt. 1, pp. 161–201.

[328] Scouten, Barton, Burgess, Story, and Garst, *Chem. Commun.* 78 (1969); Garst, Pacifici, Singleton, Ezzel, and Morris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5242 (1975).

[329] Allred, Beck, and Voorhees, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1426 (1974).

[330] Fukunaga and Yamaguchi, *Synthesis* 879 (1981). See also Nakayama, Machida, and Hoshino, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3001 (1983); Landini, Milesi, Quadri, and Rolla, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 152 (1984).

[331] For lists of reagents, see Fukunaga and Yamaguchi, Ref. 330; Gordon and Chang, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3062 (1973); Mathai, Schug, and Miller, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1733 (1970); King and Pews, *Can J. Chem.* **42,** 1294 (1964).

[332] For reviews of allene formation, see Landor, in Landor, "The Chemistry of the Allenes," vol. 1, pp. 19–233, Academic Press, New York, 1982; Taylor, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 317–359 (1967).

[333] For a review, see Köbrich and Buck, in Viehe, Ref. 244, pp. 134–138.

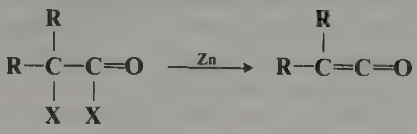
[334] For discussions, see Saunders and Cockerill, Ref. 2, pp. 332–368; Ref. 327a.

[335] Lee, Mathai, and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 4602 (1970); Mathai and Miller, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3416 (1970); Sonnet and Oliver, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3284 (1976).

[336] For example, see House and Ro, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 182 (1958); Gordon and Hay, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 427 (1968).

[337] For example, see Stevens and Valicenti, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 838 (1965); Sicher, Havel, and Svoboda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4269 (1968).

7-30 Dehalogenation of α-Halo Acyl Halides

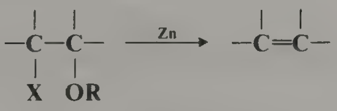


$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{R}{\underset{X}{C}}{-}\underset{X}{C}{=}O \xrightarrow{Zn} R{-}\overset{R}{C}{=}C{=}O}$$

Ketenes can be prepared by dehalogenation of α-halo acyl halides with zinc or with triphenylphosphine,[338] analogously to **7-2.** The reaction generally gives good results when the two R groups are aryl or alkyl, but not when either one is hydrogen.[339]

OS **IV,** 348.

7-31 Elimination of a Halogen and a Hetero Group
Alkoxy-halo-elimination

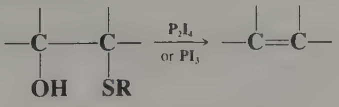


$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{X}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\underset{OR}{\overset{|}{C}}{-} \xrightarrow{Zn} {-}\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}{-}}$$

The elimination of OR and halogen from β-halo ethers is called the *Boord reaction.* It can be carried out with zinc, magnesium, or sodium. The yields are high and the reaction is of broad scope. β-Halo acetals readily yield vinyl ethers: $\mathrm{X{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{C}(OR)_2 \rightarrow {-}\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}{-}OR}$. Besides β-halo ethers, the reaction can also be carried out on compounds of the formula $\mathrm{X{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}Z}$, where X is halogen and Z is OCOR, OTs,[340] NR_2,[341] or SR.[342] Z may also be OH, but then X is limited to Br and I. Like **7-29,** this method ensures that the new double bond will be in a specific position. The fact that magnesium causes elimination in these cases limits the preparation of Grignard reagents from these compounds. It has been shown that treatment of β-halo ethers and esters with zinc gives nonstereospecific elimination,[343] so that the mechanism was not E2. It was postulated that the mechanism is E1cB, because of the poor leaving-group ability of OR and OCOR. Bromohydrins can be converted to olefins (elimination of Br, OH) in high yields by treatment with $LiAlH_4$-$TiCl_3$.[344]

OS **III,** 698; **IV,** 748; **55,** 62.

7-32 Cleavage of β-Hydroxy Sulfides, Selenides, and Related Compounds
Hydroxy-alkylthio-elimination, etc.



$$\mathrm{{-}\underset{OH}{\overset{|}{C}}{-}\underset{SR}{\overset{|}{C}}{-} \xrightarrow[\text{or } PI_3]{P_2I_4} {-}\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}{-}}$$

---

[338] Darling and Kidwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3974 (1968).

[339] For a procedure that gives 60 to 65% yields when one R = H, see McCarney and Ward, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1600 (1975).

[340] Cristol and Rademacher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1600 (1959). This reaction has also been accomplished with PhMgBr: Reeve, Brown, and Steckel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4607 (1971).

[341] Gurien, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 878 (1963).

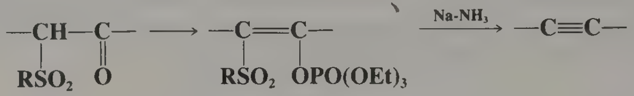
[342] Amstutz, *J. Org. Chem.* **9,** 310 (1944).

[343] House and Ro, Ref. 336.

[344] McMurry and Hoz, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3797 (1975).

β-Hydroxy sulfides can be converted to alkenes by treatment with P_2I_4, PI_3, or (for tetrasubstituted alkenes) $SOCl_2$.[345] Other reagents have also been used.[346] An analogous reaction for β-hydroxy selenides uses $SOCl_2$ or $MeSO_2Cl$ and Et_3N[347] or Me_3SiCl.[348] It was mentioned at **6-42** (p. 838) that β-hydroxysulfinamides, on heating, undergo a syn elimination.[349]

Triple-bond compounds can be prepared by elimination from β-keto sulfones by first converting them to the enol phosphorinates **51** and treatment of these with Na in liquid NH_3[350] or with Na-Hg in THF-Me_2SO.[351]

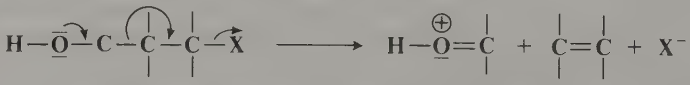


$$\underset{RSO_2}{\text{—}\underset{|}{\text{CH}}}\text{—}\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}\text{—} \longrightarrow \text{—}\underset{RSO_2}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}\text{=}\underset{OPO(OEt)_3}{\underset{|}{\text{C}}}\text{—} \xrightarrow{\text{Na-NH}_3} \text{—C}\equiv\text{C—}$$

51

Fragmentations

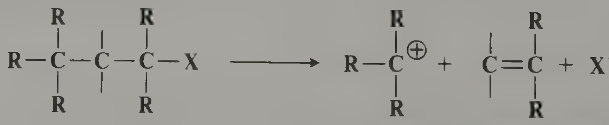
When carbon is the positive leaving group (the electrofuge) in an elimination, the reaction is called *fragmentation*.[352] These processes occur on substrates of the form W—C—C—X, where X is a normal nucleofuge (e.g., halogen, OH_2^+, OTs, NR_3^+, etc.) and W is a positive-carbon electrofuge. In most of the cases W is HO—C— or R_2N—C—, so that the positive charge on the carbon atom is stabilized by the unshared pair of the oxygen or nitrogen, e.g.,



$$H\text{—}\underline{\bar{O}}\text{—}C\text{—}C\text{—}C\text{—}X \longrightarrow H\text{—}\overset{\oplus}{\underline{O}}\text{=}C + C\text{=}C + X^-$$

The mechanisms are mostly E1 or E2. We shall discuss only a few fragmentations, since many are possible and not much work has been done on most of them. Reactions **7-33** to **7-39** and **7-41** may be considered fragmentations. See also **9-13** and **9-14.**

7-33 Fragmentation of γ-Branched Alcohols and Halides
Alkyl-halo-elimination



$$R\text{—}\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}}\text{—}C\text{—}\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}}\text{—}X \longrightarrow R\text{—}\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}}{}^{\oplus} + C\text{=}\underset{R}{\overset{R}{C}} + X^-$$

---

[345] Denis, Dumont, and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4111 (1979); Denis, Desauvage, Hevesi, and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4009 (1981).

[346] See Kuwajima, Sato, and Kurata, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 737 (1972); Mukaiyama and Imaoka, *Chem. Lett.* 413 (1978).

[347] Rémion and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3743 (1976); Lucchetti and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2693 (1978); Reich, Chow, and Shah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6638, 6648 (1979).

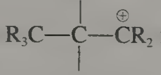
[348] Clive and Kālè, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 231 (1981).

[349] For some other eliminations of a sulfur function and OH or a derivative, see Julia and Paris, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4833 (1973); Kocienski, Lythgoe, and Waterhouse, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1045 (1980); Shono, Matsumura, and Kashimura, *Chem. Lett.* 69 (1978); Durst, Huang, Sharma, and Smith, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 512 (1978); Johnson and Kirchhoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3602 (1979).

[350] Bartlett, Green, and Rose, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4852 (1978).

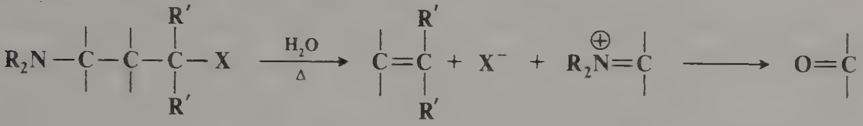
[351] Lythgoe and Waterhouse, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2625 (1978).

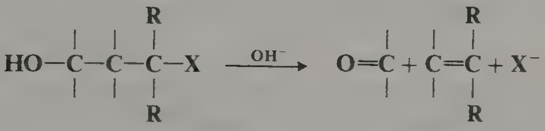
[352] For reviews, see Becker and Grob, in Patai, Ref. 2, pt. 2, pp. 653–723; Grob, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 535–546 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 543–554]; Grob and Schiess, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 1–15 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 1–14].

When alkyl halides or alcohols with both α and γ branching are subjected to solvolysis, they may undergo fragmentation to give an olefin and a carbocation. The carbocation then undergoes further elimination or substitution, depending on the conditions. This is of course an E1 process, with the first step being ionization of the halide or the protonated alcohol. This is another way of saying that carbocations of the form  $R_3C-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{\oplus}{C}R_2$ find it easy to lose a relatively stable R_3C^+ ion rather than H^+. As expected for a carbocation mechanism, these fragmentations occur to the greatest extent for tertiary substrates, to a smaller extent for secondary, and essentially not at all for primary substrates, even with γ branching. Even with apparently favorable substrates, fragmentation is not always observed.[353]

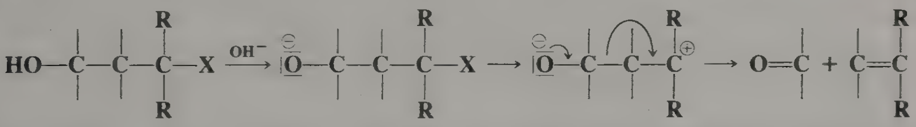
7-34 Fragmentation of γ-Amino and γ-Hydroxy Halides

Dialkylaminoalkyl-halo-elimination, etc.





γ-Dialkylamino halides undergo fragmentation when heated with water to give an olefin and an iminium salt, which under the reaction conditions is hydrolyzed to an aldehyde or ketone (**6-2**).[354] γ-Hydroxy halides and tosylates are fragmented with base. In this instance the base does not play its usual role in elimination reactions but instead serves to remove a proton from the OH group, which enables the carbon leaving group to come off more easily:



The mechanism of these reactions is often E1 and the side reactions are similar to those in **7-33.** However, in at least some cases, an E2 mechanism operates.[355] It has been shown that stereoisomers of cyclic γ-amino halides and tosylates in which the two leaving groups can assume an anti-periplanar conformation react by the E2 mechanism, while those isomers in which the groups cannot assume such a conformation either fragment by the E1 mechanism or do not undergo fragmentation at all, but in either case give rise to side products characteristic of carbocations.[356]

---

[353] Shiner and Meier, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 137 (1966). See, however, Dubois, Lomas, and Sagatys, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1349 (1971).

[354] Grob, Ostermayer, and Raudenbusch, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **45,** 1672 (1962).

[355] Grob and Schwarz, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **47,** 1870 (1964); Fischer and Grob, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **61,** 2336 (1978).

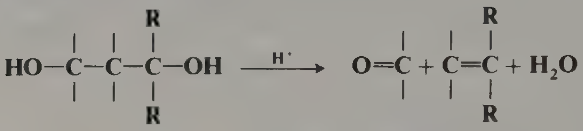
[356] Bottini, Grob, Schumacher, and Zergenyi, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **49,** 2516 (1966); Burckhardt, Grob, and Kiefer, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 231 (1967); Grob, Kiefer, Lutz, and Wilkens, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 416 (1967); Geisel, Grob, and Wohl, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **52,** 2206 (1969). See also Gleiter, Stohrer, and Hoffmann, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **55,** 893 (1972).

In certain cases (electron-withdrawing groups in the β-position, or the use of poor nucleofuges such as ArCOO) an E1cB mechanism has been shown.[357]

γ-Dialkylamino alcohols do not give fragmentation, since for ionization the OH group must be converted to OH_2^+ and this would convert NR_2 to NR_2H^+, which does not have the unshared pair necessary to form the double bond with the carbon.[358]

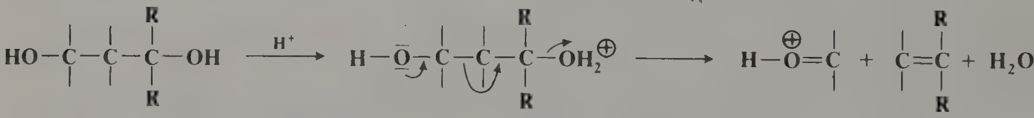
7-35 Fragmentation of 1,3-Diols

Hydroxyalkyl-hydroxy-elimination



$$HO-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{R}{\underset{R}{C}}-OH \xrightarrow{H^+} O=\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}} + \overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}=\overset{R}{\underset{R}{C}} + H_2O$$

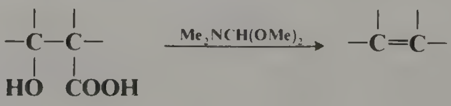
1,3-Diols in which at least one OH group is tertiary or is located on a carbon with aryl substituents can be cleaved by acid treatment.[359] At least in some cases the mechanism seems to be E2 since anti elimination is found:[360]



However, in other cases the mechanism is E1. Suitable β-hydroxy acids also give the reaction. As already mentioned (in **7-34**), γ-dialkylamino alcohols do not give fragmentation, but non-N-substituted γ-amino alcohols do give the reaction, when treated with nitrous acid, and give the same products as the corresponding 1,3-diol.[361] Here the mechanism is undoubtedly E1.

7-36 Decarboxylation of β-Hydroxy Carboxylic Acids and of β-Lactones

Carboxy-hydroxy-elimination



$$-\overset{|}{\underset{HO}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{COOH}{C}}- \xrightarrow{Me_2NCH(OMe)_2} -\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-$$

An OH and a COOH group can be eliminated from β-hydroxy carboxylic acids by refluxing with excess dimethylformamide dimethyl acetal.[362] Mono-, di-, tri-, and tetrasubstituted olefins have been prepared by this method in good yields.[363] There is evidence that the mechanism involves E1 or E2 elimination from the zwitterionic intermediate $^-O_2C-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}-OCH=\overset{\oplus}{N}Me_2$.[364] The reaction has also been accomplished under extremely mild conditions (a few seconds at 0°C) with PPh_3 and ethyl azodicarboxylate EtOOC—N=N—COOEt.[365] In a related procedure, β-lactones undergo thermal decarboxylation to give olefins in high yields. The reaction has been shown to be a

---

[357] Grob, Unger, Weiler, and Weiss, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **55,** 501 (1972).

[358] Grob, Hoegerle, and Ohta, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **45,** 1823 (1962).

[359] Zimmerman and English, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 2285, 2291, 2294 (1954).

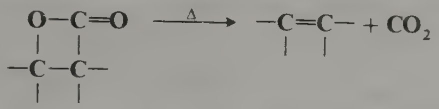
[360] Maggio and English, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 968 (1961).

[361] English and Bliss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 4057 (1956).

[362] Hara, Taguchi, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1545 (1975).

[363] For a 1,4 example of this reaction, see Rüttimann, Wick, and Eschenmoser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **58,** 1450 (1975).

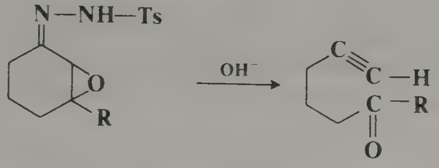
[364] Mulzer and Brüntrup, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1909 (1979).



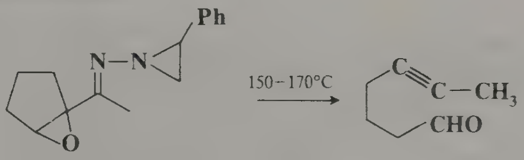
$$\begin{array}{c}\text{O}-\text{C}=\text{O}\\ |\qquad |\\ -\text{C}-\text{C}-\\ |\qquad |\end{array} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \begin{array}{c}-\text{C}=\text{C}-\\ |\qquad |\end{array} + \text{CO}_2$$

stereospecific syn elimination.[366] There is evidence that this reaction also involves a zwitterionic intermediate.[367]

7-37 Fragmentation of α,β-Epoxy Hydrazones



Cyclic α,β-unsaturated ketones[368] can be cleaved by treatment with base of their epoxy tosylhydrazone derivatives to give acetylenic ketones.[369] The reaction can be applied to the formation of acetylenic aldehydes (R = H) by using the corresponding 2,4-dinitrotosylhydrazone derivatives.[370] Hydrazones (e.g., **52**) prepared from epoxy ketones and ring-substituted N-aminoaziridines undergo similar fragmentation when heated.[371]

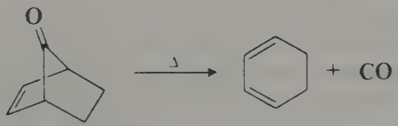


52

OS **55**, 52.

7-38 Reversal of the Diels–Alder reaction may be considered a fragmentation. See **5-47.**

7-39 Elimination of CO and CO_2 from Bridged Bicyclic Compounds



53

---

[365] Mulzer and Brüntrup, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 255 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 265]; Mulzer and Lammer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 628 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 629].

[366] Noyce and Banitt, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 4043 (1966); Adam, Baeza, and Liu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2000 (1972); Krapcho and Jahngen, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1322, 1650 (1974); Mageswaran and Sultanbawa, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 884 (1976); Adam, Martinez, Thompson, and Yany, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3359 (1981).

[367] Mulzer, Zippel, and Brüntrup, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 465 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 469]; Mulzer and Zippel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 751 (1980).

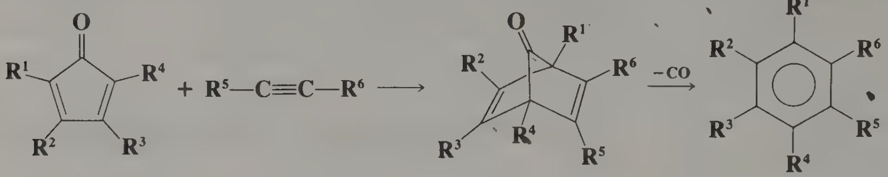
[368] For other methods of fragmentation of α,β-epoxy ketone derivatives, see MacAlpine and Warkentin, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 308 (1978), and references cited therein.

[369] Eschenmoser, Felix, and Ohloff, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 708 (1967); Tanabe, Crowe, Dehn, and Detre, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3739 (1967); Tanabe, Crowe, and Dehn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3943 (1967).

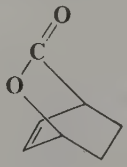
[370] Corey and Sachdev, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 579 (1975).

[371] Felix, Müller, Horn, Joos, Schreiber, and Eschenmoser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **55,** 1276 (1972).

On heating, bicyclo[2.2.1]heptenones (**53**) usually lose CO to give cyclohexadienes,[372] in a type of reverse Diels–Alder reaction. Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptadienones (**54**) undergo the reaction so readily (because of the stability of the benzene ring produced) that they cannot generally be isolated. **53** and **54** can be prepared by Diels–Alder reactions between a cyclopentadienone and an alkyne or olefin, so that this reaction is a useful method for the preparation of specifically substituted benzene ring and cyclohexadienes.[373] Unsaturated bicyclic lactones of the type **55** can also undergo the reaction, losing CO_2. See also **7-50.**



54

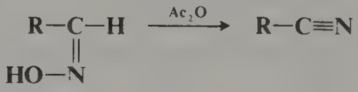


55

OS **III,** 807; **V,** 604, 1037.

Reactions in Which C≡N or C=N Bonds Are Formed

7-40 Dehydration of Aldoximes and Similar Compounds
C-Hydro-*N*-hydroxy-elimination



$$\underset{\substack{\| \\ \text{HO—N}}}{\text{R—C—H}} \xrightarrow{Ac_2O} \text{R—C≡N}$$

Aldoximes can be dehydrated to nitriles[374] by many dehydrating agents, of which acetic anhydride is the most common. Among reagents that are effective under mild conditions[375] (room temperature) are diphenyl hydrogen phosphonate[376] $(PhO)_2PHO$, ethyl orthoformate and H^+,[377] 2,4,6-trichloro-*s*-triazine,[378] trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride,[379] P_2I_4,[283] SeO_2,[380] CS_2 under phase transfer conditions,[381] Cl_3COCl-Et_3N,[382] chloromethylene dimethylammonium chloride $Me_2N{=}CHCl^+\ Cl^-$,[383] and dicyclohexylcarbodiimide in the presence of Et_3N and Cu(II) ions.[384] The reaction is most successful when the H and OH are trans. Various alkyl and acyl derivatives of aldoximes, for example, $RCH{=}NOR$, $RCH{=}NOCOR$, $RCH{=}NOSO_2Ar$, etc., also give nitriles, as do chlorimines $RCH{=}NCl$ (the latter with base treatment).[385] N,N-dichloro derivatives of primary amines give nitriles on pyrolysis: $RCH_2NCl_2 \rightarrow RCN$.[386]

---

[372] For reviews, see Stark and Duke, Ref. 439, pp. 16–46; Allen, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 653–664 (1962).

[373] For a review with many examples, see Ogliaruso, Romanelli, and Becker, *Chem. Rev.* **65,** 261–367 (1965), pp. 300–348.

[374] For reviews, see Friedrich, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 142, pt. 2, pp. 1345–1390; Friedrich and Wallenfels, in Rappoport, "The Chemistry of the Cyano Group," pp. 92–96, Interscience, New York, 1970. For a review of methods of synthesizing nitriles, see Fatiadi, in Patai and Rappoport, Ref. 142, pt. 2, pp. 1057–1303.

[375] For lists of some other reagents with references, see Molina, Alajarin, and Vilaplana, *Synthesis* 1016 (1982); Aizpurua and Palomo, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **7,** 465 (1983); Attanasi, Palma, and Serra-Zanetti, *Synthesis* 741 (1983).

[376] Foley, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2805 (1969).

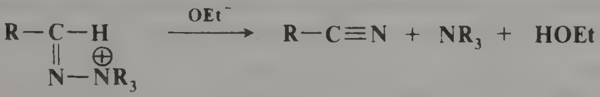
[377] Rogić, Van Peppen, Klein, and Demmin, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3424 (1974).

[378] Chakrabarti and Hotten, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1226 (1972).

[379] Hendrickson, Blair, and Keehn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 603 (1976).

[380] Sosnovsky and Krogh, *Synthesis* 703 (1978).

Quaternary hydrazonium salts (derived from aldehydes) give nitriles when treated with OEt^-:[387]



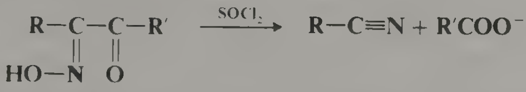
$$\underset{\underset{N-\overset{\oplus}{N}R_3}{\|}}{R-C-H} \xrightarrow{OEt^-} R-C\equiv N + NR_3 + HOEt$$

as do dimethylhydrazones $RCH{=}NNMe_2$ when treated with Et_2NLi and HMPT.[388] All these are methods of converting aldehyde derivatives to nitriles. For the conversion of aldehydes directly to nitriles, without isolation of intermediates, see **6-22.**

OS **II,** 622; **III,** 690.

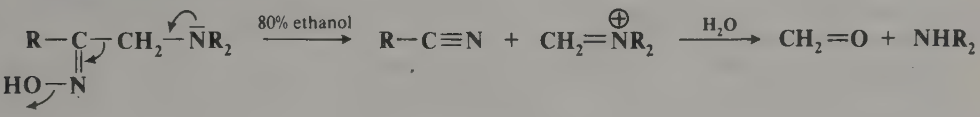
7-41 The Conversion of Ketoximes to Nitriles

C-Acyl-N-hydroxy-elimination



$$R-\underset{\underset{HO-N}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow{SOCl_2} R-C\equiv N + R'COO^-$$

Certain ketoximes can be converted to nitriles by the action of proton or Lewis acids.[389] Among these are oximes of α-diketones (illustrated above), α-keto acids, α-dialkylamino ketones, α-hydroxy ketones, β-keto ethers, and similar compounds.[390] These are fragmentation reactions, analogous to **7-34** and **7-35.** For example, α-dialkylamino ketoximes also give amines and aldehydes or ketones in addition to nitriles:[391]



$$R-\underset{\underset{HO-N}{\|}}{C}-CH_2-NR_2 \xrightarrow{\text{80\% ethanol}} R-C\equiv N + CH_2{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}R_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} CH_2{=}O + NHR_2$$

The reaction that normally occurs on treatment of a ketoxime with a Lewis or proton acid is the Beckmann rearrangement (**8-20**); fragmentations are considered side reactions, often called "abnormal" or second-order" Beckmann rearrangements.[392] Obviously, the substrates mentioned are much more susceptible to fragmentation than are ordinary ketoximes, since in each case an unshared pair is available to assist in removal of the group cleaving from the carbon. However, fragmentation is a side reaction even with ordinary ketoximes[393] and, in cases where a particularly stable carbocation may be cleaved, may be the main reaction:[394]

---

[381] Shinozaki, Imaizumi, and Tajima, *Chem. Lett.* 929 (1983).

[382] Saednya, *Synthesis* 748 (1983).

[383] Dulcere, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1599 (1981).

[384] Vowinkel and Bartel, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 1221 (1974). See also Ho, *Synth. Commun.* **3,** 101 (1973); Ho and Wong, *Synth. Commun.* **5,** 299 (1975).

[385] Hauser, Le Maistre, and Rainsford, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **57,** 1056 (1935).

[386] Roberts, Rittberg, and Kovacic, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4111 (1981).

[387] Smith and Walker, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4372 (1962); Grandberg, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **34,** 570 (1964); Grundon and Scott, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5674 (1964); Ioffe, and Zelenina, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **4,** 1496 (1968). See also Smith, Albright, and Waring, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 4100 (1966).

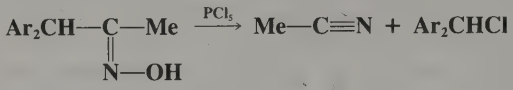
[388] Cuvigny, Le Borgne, Larchevêque, and Normant, *Synthesis* 237 (1976).

[389] For reviews, see Conley and Ghosh, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **4,** 197–308 (1971), pp. 197–251; McCarty, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon-Nitrogen Double Bond," pp. 416–439, Interscience, New York, 1970; Casanova, in Rappoport, Ref. 374, pp. 915–932.

[390] For more complete lists with references, see Olah, Vankar, and Berrier, *Synthesis* 45 (1980); Conley and Ghosh, Ref. 389.

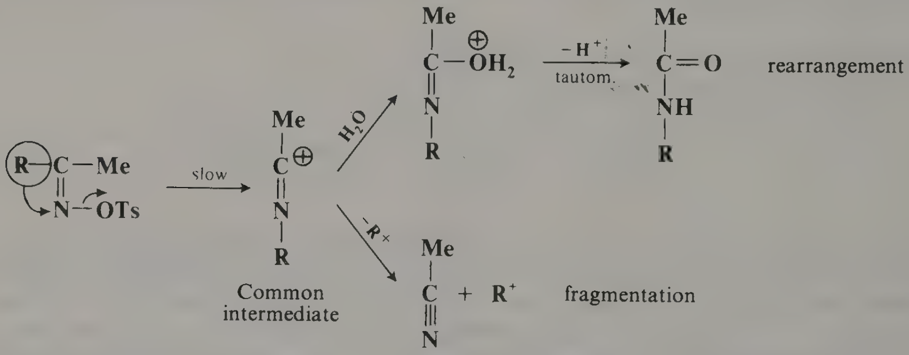
[391] Fischer, Grob, and Renk, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **45,** 2539 (1962); Fischer and Grob, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **46,** 936 (1963).

[392] See the discussion in Ferris, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 12 (1960).



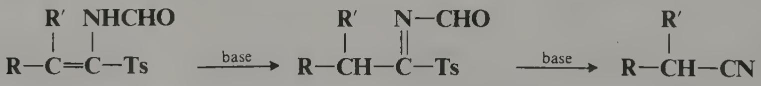
$$Ar_2CH-\underset{\underset{N-OH}{\|}}{C}-Me \xrightarrow{PCl_5} Me-C\equiv N + Ar_2CHCl$$

There are indications that the mechanism at least in some cases first involves a rearrangement and then cleavage. The ratio of fragmentation to Beckmann rearrangement of a series of oxime tosylates RC(=NOTs)Me was not related to the solvolysis rate but *was* related to the stability of R^+ (as determined by the solvolysis rate of the corresponding RCl), which showed that fragmentation did not take place in the rate-determining step.[395] It may be postulated then that the first step in the fragmentation and in the rearrangement is the same and that this is the rate-determining step. The product is determined in the second step:



However, in other cases the simple E1 or E2 mechanisms operate.[396] The fragmentation of certain ketoximes to nitriles has also been carried out with tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium $Pd(PPh_3)_4$.[397] In this case the other product is the aldehyde R′CHO.

The fragmentation of N-(1-tosyl-1-alkenyl)formamides (**56**) by refluxing with NaOMe in MeOH



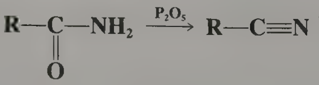
56

$$R-\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{C}=\overset{\overset{NHCHO}{|}}{C}-Ts \xrightarrow{\text{base}} R-\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{C}H-\overset{\overset{N-CHO}{\|}}{C}-Ts \xrightarrow{\text{base}} R-\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{C}H-CN$$

is a step in the conversion of a ketone to a nitrile,[398] since **56** can be prepared by treatment of ketones with $TsCH_2NC$ (p. 840). The overall conversion is RR′C=O to RR′CHCN.

OS **V**, 266.

7-42 Dehydration of Unsubstituted Amides
***NN*-Dihydro-*C*-oxo-bielimination**



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-NH_2 \xrightarrow{P_2O_5} R-C\equiv N$$

---

[393] See, for example, Hill and Conley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 645 (1960).

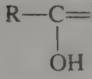
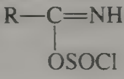
[394] Hassner and Nash, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 525 (1965).

[395] Grob, Fischer, Raudenbusch, and Zergenyi, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **47,** 1003 (1964).

[396] Ahmad and Spenser, *Can. J. Chem.* **39,** 1340 (1961); Ferris, Johnson, and Gould, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 1813 (1960); Grob and Sieber, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 2520 (1967); Green and Pearson, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 593 (1969).

[397] Maeda, Moritani, Hosokawa, and Murahashi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 689 (1975).

[398] Schöllkopf and Schröder, *Angew, Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 407 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 402].

Unsubstituted amides can be dehydrated to nitriles.[399] Phosphorus pentoxide is the most common dehydrating agent for this reaction, but many others, including $POCl_3$, PCl_5, CCl_4-Ph_3P,[400] $TiCl_4$-base,[401] $CHCl_3$-$PhCH_2NEt_3^+$ Cl^--base,[402] HMPT,[403] trifluoroacetic anhydride-pyridine,[404] cyanuric chloride,[405] $Me_2N{=}CHCl^+$ Cl^-,[406] trimethylsilyl polyphosphate,[407] phosphorus tris(diethylamide) $P(NEt_2)_3$,[408] and $SOCl_2$ have also been used. It is possible to convert an acid to the nitrile, without isolation of the amide, by heating its ammonium salt with the dehydrating agent.[409] Acyl halides can also be directly converted to nitriles by heating with sulfamide $(NH_2)_2SO_2$.[410] The reaction may be formally looked on as a β-elimination from the enol form of the amide  $\underset{\displaystyle \mathrm{OH}}{\mathrm{R{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}NH}}$, in which case it is like **7-40**, except that H and OH have changed places. In some cases, for example, with $SOCl_2$, the mechanism probably *is* through the enol form, with the dehydrating agent forming an ester with the OH group, for example,  $\underset{\displaystyle \mathrm{OSOCl}}{\mathrm{R{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}NH}}$, which undergoes elimination by the E1 or E2 mechanism.[411] N,N-Disubstituted ureas give cyanamides ($R_2N{-}CO{-}NH_2 \rightarrow R_2N{-}CN$) when dehydrated with $CHCl_3$-NaOH under phase transfer conditions.[412]

N-Alkyl-substituted amides can be converted to nitriles and alkyl chlorides by treatment with PCl_5. This reaction is called the *von Braun reaction* (not to be confused with the other von Braun reaction, **0-74**). In a similar reaction, treatment of N-alkyl-substituted amides with chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium $RhCl(PPh_3)_3$ or certain other catalysts give nitriles and the corresponding alcohols.[413] N-Sulfo chloride derivatives of amides (prepared by treatment of carboxylic acids or ketones with chlorosulfonyl isocyanate $ClSO_2NCO$) can be converted to nitriles by treatment with dimethylformamide[414] or with triethylamine.[415]

$$\mathbf{R'CONHR + PCl_5 \longrightarrow R'CN + RCl}$$

$$\mathbf{RCONHSO_2Cl \xrightarrow[Et_3N]{DMF\ or} RCN}$$

OS **I,** 428; **II,** 379; **III,** 493, 535, 584, 646, 768; **IV,** 62, 144, 166, 172, 436, 486, 706; **50,** 18, 52.

---

[399] For reviews, see Bieron and Dinan, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Amides," pp. 274–283, Interscience, New York, 1970; Friedrich and Wallenfels, Ref. 374, pp. 96–103; Friedrich, Ref. 374.

[400] Yamato and Sugasawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4383 (1970); Appel, Kleinstück, and Ziehn, *Chem. Ber.* **104,** 1030 (1971); Harrison, Hodge, and Rogers, *Synthesis* 41 (1977).

[401] Lehnert, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1501 (1971).

[402] Saraie, Ishiguro, Kawashima, and Morita, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2121 (1973).

[403] Monson and Priest, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 2897 (1971).

[404] Campagna, Carotti, and Casini, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1813 (1977).

[405] Olah, Narang, Fung, and Gupta, *Synthesis* 657 (1980).

[406] Barger and Riley, *Synth. Commun.* **10,** 479 (1980).

[407] Yokoyama, Yoshida, and Imamoto, *Synthesis* 591 (1982).

[408] Sodeyama, Kodomari, and Itabashi, *Chem. Lett.* 577 (1973).

[409] See, for example, Imamoto, Takaoka, and Yokoyama, *Synthesis* 142 (1983).

[410] Hulkenberg and Troost, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1505 (1982).

[411] Rickborn and Jensen, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 4608 (1962).

[412] Schroth, Kluge, Frach, Hodek, and Schädler, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **325,** 787 (1983).

[413] Blum, Fisher, and Greener, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 1073 (1973).

[414] Lohaus, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 2719 (1967); Rasmussen and Hassner, *Synthesis* 682 (1973).

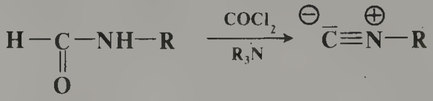
[415] Vorbrüggen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1631 (1968).

7-43 Conversion of Primary Nitro Compounds to Nitriles

$$\mathrm{RCH_2{-}NO_2} \xrightarrow[\text{pyridine}]{\mathrm{PCl_3}} \mathrm{RC{\equiv}N}$$

Nitriles can be obtained in one step by treatment of primary nitro compounds with PCl_3 and pyridine.[416] R may be alkyl or aryl and may contain C=C double bonds or various functional groups. Yields are moderate to good. The reaction has also been carried out with Me_3N-SO_2 and with HMPT.[417] Primary azides RCH_2N_3 have been converted to nitriles RCN with Pd metal.[418]

7-44 Conversion of N-Alkylformamides to Isonitriles
***CN*-Dihydro-*C*-oxo-bielimination**

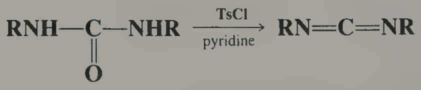


$$\mathrm{H{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH{-}R} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{R_3N}]{\mathrm{COCl_2}} \overset{\ominus}{\bar{\mathrm{C}}}{\equiv}\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{N}}{-}\mathrm{R}$$

Isonitriles can be prepared by elimination of water from N-alkylformamides with phosgene and a tertiary amine.[419] Other reagents, among them TsCl in quinoline, $POCl_3$ and a tertiary amine, $Me_2N{=}CHCl^+\ Cl^-$,[420] diphosgene $ClCOOCCl_3$,[421] 2-chloro-3-ethylbenzoxazolium tetrafluoroborate,[422] Ph_3P-CCl_4-Et_3N,[423] and Ph_3PBr_2-Et_3N[424] have also been employed.

OS **V,** 300, 772; **51,** 31; **57,** 102; **59,** 183. See also OS **61,** 14.

7-45 Dehydration of N,N′-Disubstituted Ureas and Thioureas
1/*N*,3/*N*-Dihydro-2/*C*-oxo-bielimination



$$\mathrm{RNH{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NHR} \xrightarrow[\text{pyridine}]{\mathrm{TsCl}} \mathrm{RN{=}C{=}NR}$$

Carbodiimides[425] can be prepared by the dehydration of N,N′-disubstituted ureas with various dehydrating agents, among which are TsCl in pyridine, $POCl_3$, PCl_5, P_2O_5-pyridine, and Ph_3PBr_2-Et_3N.[424] H_2S can be removed from the corresponding thioureas by treatment with HgO, NaOCl, organolithium or -magnesium compounds,[426] 2-chloro-1-methylpyridinium iodide–Et_3N,[427] phosgene,[428] or diethyl azodicarboxylate–triphenylphosphine.[429]

OS **V,** 555; **56,** 95.

[416] Wehrli and Schaer, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3956 (1977).

[417] Olah, Vankar, and Gupta, *Synthesis* 36 (1979).

[418] Hayashi, Ohno, and Oka, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 506 (1976). See also Jarvis and Nicholas, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2951 (1979).

[419] For reviews, see Hoffmann, Gokel, Marquarding, and Ugi, in Ugi, ''Isonitrile Chemistry,'' pp. 10–17, Academic Press, New York, 1971; Ugi, Fetzer, Eholzer, Knupfer, and Offermann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 472–484 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 492–504], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **4,** 37–66 (1968); Sandler and Karo, ''Organic Functional Group Preparations,'' vol. 3, pp. 188–200, Academic Press, New York, 1972.

[420] Walborsky and Niznik, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 187 (1972).

[421] Skorna and Ugi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 259 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 267].

[422] Echigo, Watanabe, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 697 (1977).

[423] Appel, Kleinstück, and Ziehn, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 132 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 143].

[424] Bestmann, Lienert, and Mott, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **718,** 24 (1968).

[425] For reviews of the reactions in this section, see Sandler and Karo, Ref. 419, vol. 2, pp. 212–219 (1971); Bocharov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **34,** 212–219 (1965). For a review of carbodiimide chemistry, see Williams and Ibrahim, *Chem. Rev.* **81,** 589–636 (1981).

[426] Sakai, Fujinami, Otani, and Aizawa, *Chem. Lett.* 811 (1976).

[427] Shibanuma, Shiono, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 575 (1977).

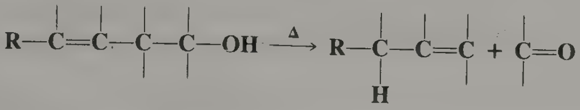
[428] Ulrich and Sayigh, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **5,** 704–712 (1966) [*Angew. Chem.* **78,** 761–769], *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **6,** 223–242 (1971).

[429] Mitsunobu, Kato, and Tomari, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 5731 (1970). See also Appel, Kleinstück, and Ziehn, *Chem. Ber.* **104,** 1335 (1971).

Reactions in Which C=O Bonds Are Formed

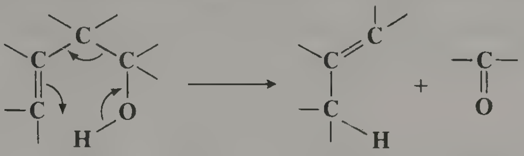
Many elimination reactions in which C=O bonds are formed were considered in Chapter 16, along with their more important reverse reactions. Also see **2-39** and **2-40.**

7-46 Pyrolysis of β-Hydroxy Olefins
O-Hydro-C-allyl-elimination



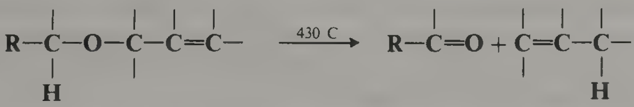
$$\mathrm{R{-}C{=}C{-}C{-}C{-}OH \xrightarrow{\Delta} R{-}\underset{H}{C}{-}C{=}C + C{=}O}$$

β-Hydroxy olefins are cleaved when pyrolyzed to give olefins and aldehydes or ketones.[430] Olefins produced this way are quite pure, since there are no side reactions. The mechanism has been shown to be Ei, primarily by observations that the kinetics are first order[431] and that, for ROD, the deuterium



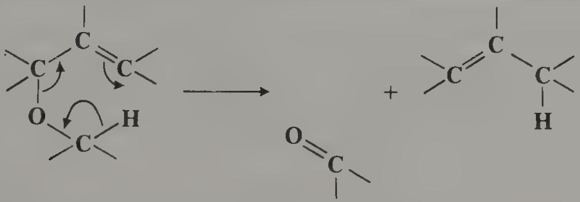
appeared in the allylic position of the new olefin.[432] β-Hydroxyacetylenes react similarly to give the corresponding allenes and carbonyl compounds.[433] The mechanism is the same despite the linear geometry of the triple bonds.

7-47 Pyrolysis of Allyl Ethers
C-Hydro-O-allyl-elimination



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{H}{C}{-}O{-}C{-}C{=}C{-} \xrightarrow{430\ C} R{-}C{=}O + C{=}C{-}\underset{H}{C}{-}}$$

Pyrolysis of allyl ethers that contain at least one α-hydrogen gives olefins and aldehydes or ketones. The reaction is closely related to reaction **7-46,** and the mechanism is also Ei, though not exactly



analogous.[434] Note that this mechanism is the reverse of that of the ene synthesis (**5-16**). Homoallylic ethers can be pyrolytically cleaved via an eight-membered cyclic transition state to give an aldehyde and two alkenes.[435]

---

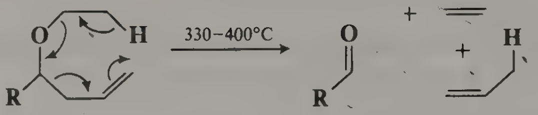
[430] Arnold and Smolinsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 6643 (1959). For a review, see Marvell and Whalley, in Patai, Ref. 150, pt. 2, pp. 729–734.

[431] Smith and Yates, *J. Chem. Soc.* 7242 (1965); Voorhees and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1755 (1971).

[432] Arnold and Smolinsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 128 (1960); Smith and Taylor, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 949 (1961).

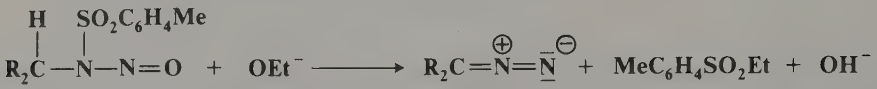
[433] Viola, MacMillan, Proverb, and Yates, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6967 (1971); Viola, Proverb, Yates, and Larrahondo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3609 (1973).

[434] Cookson and Wallis, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1245 (1966); Kwart, Slutsky, and Sarner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5242 (1973); Egger and Vitins, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **6,** 429 (1974).



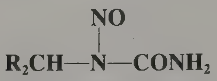
Reactions in Which N=N Bonds Are Formed

7-48 Eliminations to Give Diazoalkanes



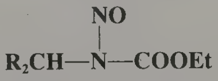
$$R_2\overset{\displaystyle H}{\overset{|}{C}}-\overset{\displaystyle SO_2C_6H_4Me}{\overset{|}{N}}-N{=}O + OEt^- \longrightarrow R_2C{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}\overset{\ominus}{\underline{N}} + MeC_6H_4SO_2Et + OH^-$$

Various N-nitroso-N-alkyl compounds undergo elimination to give diazoalkanes.[436] One of the most convenient methods for the preparation of diazomethane involves base treatment of N-nitroso-N-methyl-*p*-toluenesulfonamide (illustrated above, with R = H).[437] However, other compounds commonly used are (base treatment is required in all cases):



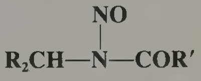
$$R_2CH-\overset{\displaystyle NO}{\overset{|}{N}}-CONH_2$$

N-nitroso-N-alkylureas



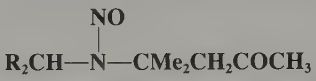
$$R_2CH-\overset{\displaystyle NO}{\overset{|}{N}}-COOEt$$

N-nitroso-N-alkylcarbamates



$$R_2CH-\overset{\displaystyle NO}{\overset{|}{N}}-COR'$$

N-nitroso-N-alkyl amides

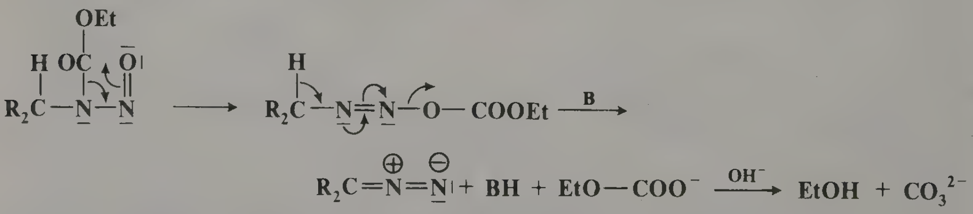


$$R_2CH-\overset{\displaystyle NO}{\overset{|}{N}}-CMe_2CH_2COCH_3$$

N-nitroso-N-alkyl-4-amino-4-methyl-2-pentanones

All these compounds can be used to prepare diazomethane, though the sulfonamide, which is commercially available, is most satisfactory. (N-Nitroso-N-methylcarbamate and N-nitroso-N-methylurea give good yields, but are highly irritating and carcinogenic.[438]) For higher diazoalkanes the preferred substrates are nitrosoalkylcarbamates.

Most of these reactions probably begin with a 1,3 nitrogen-to-oxygen rearrangement, followed by the actual elimination (illustrated for the carbamate):



OS **II,** 165; **III,** 119, 244; **IV,** 225, 250; **V,** 351; **57,** 95.

---

[435] Viola, Madhavan, Proverb, Yates, and Larrahondo, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 842 (1974).

[436] For a review of the preparation and reactions of diazomethane, see Black, *Aldrichimica Acta* **16,** 3–10 (1983). For discussions, see Cowell and Ledwith, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **24,** 119–167 (1970), pp. 126–131; Sandler and Karo, Ref. 419, vol. 1, pp. 389–397 (1968); Smith, "Open-chain Nitrogen Compounds," vol. 2, especially pp. 257–258, 474–475, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1966.

[437] de Boer and Backer, *Org. Synth.* **IV,** 225, 250; Hudlicky, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5377 (1980).

[438] Searle, *Chem. Br.* **6,** 5–10 (1970).

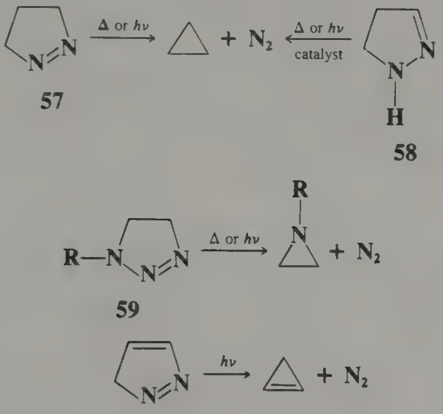
Extrusion Reactions

We consider an *extrusion reaction*[439] to be one in which an atom or group Y connected to two other atoms X and Z is lost from a molecule, leading to a product in which X is bonded directly to Z.

$$\text{X}-\text{Y}-\text{Z} \longrightarrow \text{X}-\text{Z} + \text{Y}$$

Reactions **4-40** and **7-25** also fit this definition. Reaction **7-39** does not fit the definition, but is often also classified as an extrusion reaction. An extrusibility scale has been developed, showing that the ease of extrusion of the common Y groups is in the order: $-\text{N}{=}\text{N}- > -\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\text{O}- > -\text{SO}_2- > -\text{CO}-$[440]

7-49 Extrusion of N_2 from Pyrazolines, Pyrazoles, and Triazolines



57 58 59 60

1-Pyrazolines (**57**) can be converted to cyclopropanes and N_2 on photolysis[441] or pyrolysis.[442] The tautomeric 2-pyrazolines (**58**), which are more stable than **57**, also give the reaction, but in this case an acidic or basic catalyst is required, the function of which is to convert **58** to **57**.[443] In the absence of such catalysts, **58** do not react.[444] In a similar manner, triazolines (**59**) are converted to aziridines.[445] Side reactions are frequent with both **57** and **59**, and some substrates do not give the reaction at all. However, the reaction has proved synthetically useful in many cases. In general, photolysis gives better yields and fewer side reactions than pyrolysis with both **57** and **59**. 3*H*-

---

[439] For a monograph, see Stark and Duke, "Extrusion Reactions," Pergamon, Oxford, 1967. For a review of extrusions that are photochemically induced, see Givens, *Org. Photochem.* **5**, 227–346 (1981).

[440] Paine and Warkentin, *Can. J. Chem.* **59**, 491 (1981).

[441] Van Auken and Rinehart, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84**, 3736 (1962).

[442] For reviews of the reactions in this section, see Adam and De Lucchi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19**, 762–779 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92**, 815–832]; Meier and Zeller, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16**, 835–851 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89**, 876–890]; Stark and Duke, Ref. 439, pp. 116–151. For a review of the formation and fragmentation of cyclic azo compounds, see Mackenzie, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydrazo, Azo, and Azoxy Groups," pt. 1, pp. 329–442, Wiley, New York, 1975.

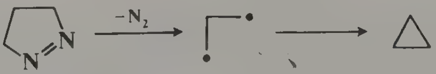
[443] For example, see Jones, Sanderfer, and Baarda, *J. Org. Chem.* **32**, 1367 (1967).

[444] McGreer, Wai, and Carmichael, *Can. J. Chem.* **38**, 2410 (1960); Kocsis, Ferrini, Arigoni, and Jeger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **43**, 2178 (1960).

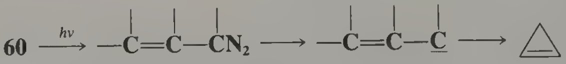
[445] For a review, see Scheiner, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1**, 327–362 (1970).

Pyrazoles[445a] (**60**) are stable to heat, but in some cases can be converted to cyclopropenes on photolysis,[446] though in other cases other types of products are obtained.

There is much evidence that the mechanism[447] of the 1-pyrazoline reactions generally involves diradicals, though the mode of formation and detailed structure (e.g., singlet vs. triplet) of these

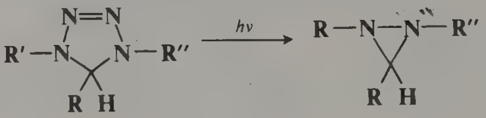


radicals may vary with the substrate and reaction conditions. The reactions of the 3*H*-pyrazoles have been postulated to proceed through a diazo compound that loses N_2 to give a vinylcarbene.[448]



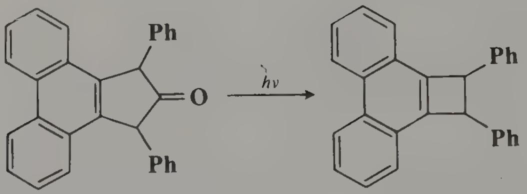
$$60 \xrightarrow{h\nu} -\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}-\overset{|}{C}N_2 \longrightarrow -\overset{|}{C}{=}\overset{|}{C}-\overset{|}{\underline{C}} \longrightarrow \triangle$$

Δ^2-Tetrazolines can be photolyzed to diaziridines.[449]



OS **V**, 96, 929.

7-50 Extrusion of CO or CO$_2$



61 **62**

Though the reaction is not general, certain cyclic ketones can be photolyzed to give ring-contracted products.[450] In the example above, the tetracyclic ketone **61** was photolyzed to give the diphenylphenanthro(*l*)cyclobutene compound **62**.[451] This reaction was used to synthesize tetra-*t*-butyltetrahedrane:[452]

[445a] For a review of 3*H*-pyrazoles, see Sammes and Katritzky, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **34,** 2–52 (1983).

[446] Closs and Böll, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3904 (1963), *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 399 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 640]; Ege, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1667 (1963); Closs, Kaplan, and Bendall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3376 (1967); Closs, Böll, Heyn, and Dev. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 173 (1968); Franck-Neumann and Buchecker, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 15 (1969); Pincock, Morchat, and Arnold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 7536 (1973).

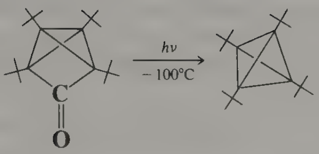
[447] For a review of the mechanism, see Engel, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 99–150 (1980). See also Engel and Nalepa, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **52,** 2621 (1980); Engel and Gerth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6849 (1983).

[448] Closs, Böll, Heyn, and Dev, Ref. 446; Pincock, Morchat, and Arnold, Ref. 446.

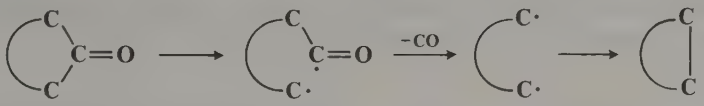
[449] Akiyama, Kitamura, Isida, and Kawanisi, *Chem. Lett.* 185 (1974).

[450] For reviews of the reactions in this section, see Redmore and Gutsche, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **3,** 1–138 (1971), pp. 91–107; Stark and Duke, Ref. 439, pp. 47–71; Quinkert, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 607–621 (1964); Srinivasan, *Adv. Photochem.* **1,** 83–113 (1963).

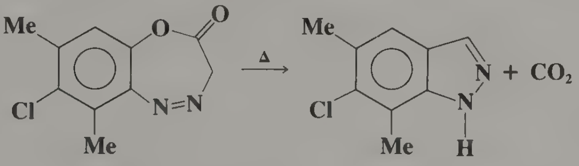
[451] Cava and Mangold, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1751 (1964).



The mechanism probably involves a Norrish type I cleavage (p. 213), loss of CO from the resulting radical, and recombination of the radical fragments.

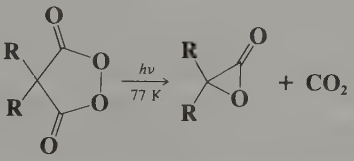


Certain lactones extrude CO_2 on heating or on irradiation, examples being pyrolysis of 7-chloro-6,8-dimethyl-1,4,5-benzoxadiazepin-2-one (**63**) to give the corresponding indazole **64**,[453]



63 **64**

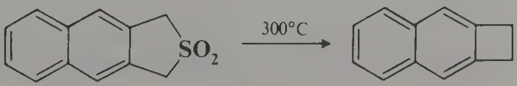
and the formation of α-lactones by photolysis of 1,2-dioxolane-3,5-diones.[454]



Decarboxylation of β-lactones (see **7-36**) may be regarded as a degenerate example of this reaction. Certain diaryl carbonates give diaryl ethers when heated with base: Ar—O—CO—O—Ar → Ar—O—Ar.[455] See also **7-39** and **7-54.**

There are no OS references, but see OS **57,** 45 for a related reaction.

7-51 Extrusion of SO_2



---

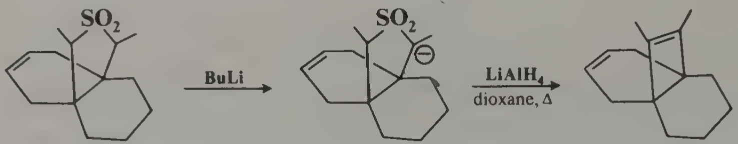
[452] Maier, Pfriem, Schäfer, and Matusch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 520 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 552].

[453] Ried and Dietrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 323 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 476]; Ried and Wagner, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **681,** 45 (1965).

[454] Chapman, Wojtkowski, Adam, Rodriquez, and Rucktäschel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 1365 (1972).

[455] Jost, Forestiere, Sillion, and Le Perchec, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4311 (1982).

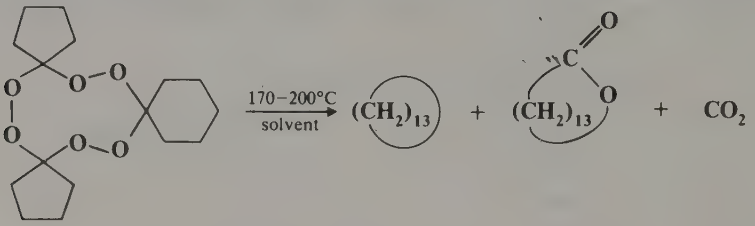
In a reaction similar to **7-50**, certain cyclic sulfones extrude SO_2 on heating or photolysis to give ring-contracted products.[456] An example is the preparation of naphtho(*b*)cyclobutene shown above.[457] In a different kind of reaction, five-membered cyclic sulfones can be converted to cyclobutenes by treatment with butyllithium followed by $LiAlH_4$,[458] e.g.,



This method is most successful when both the α and α′ positions of the sulfone bear alkyl substituents. See also **7-25.**

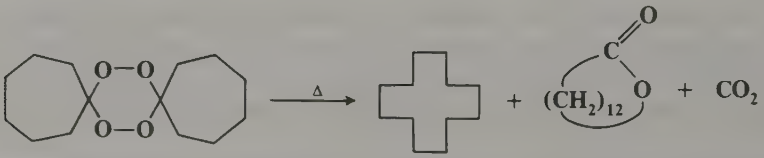
OS **50,** 53.

7-52 The Story Synthesis



65

When cycloalkylidene peroxides (e.g., **65**) are heated in an inert solvent (e.g., decane), extrusion of CO_2 takes place; the products are the cycloalkane containing three carbon atoms less than the starting peroxide and the lactone containing two carbon atoms less[459] (the *Story synthesis*).[460] The two products are formed in comparable yields, usually about 15 to 25% each. Although the yields are low, the reaction is useful because there are not many other ways to prepare large rings. The reaction is versatile, having been used to prepare rings of every size from 8 to 33 members. The method is also applicable to dimeric cycloalkylidene peroxides, in which case the cycloalkane and lactone products result from loss of two molecules and one molecule of CO_2, respectively, e.g.,



Both dimeric and trimeric cycloalkylidene peroxides can be synthesized[461] by treatment of the corresponding cyclic ketones with H_2O_2 in acid solution,[462] or in the presence of an ion-exchange resin.[463] The trimeric peroxide is formed first and is subsequently converted to the dimeric compound.[464]

---

[456] For reviews of extrusions of SO_2, see Vögtle and Rossa, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 515–529 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 534–549]; Stark and Duke, Ref. 439, pp. 72–90; Kice, in Kharasch and Meyers, Ref. 296, pp. 115–136.

[457] Cava and Shirley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 654 (1960).

[458] Photis and Paquette, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4715 (1974).

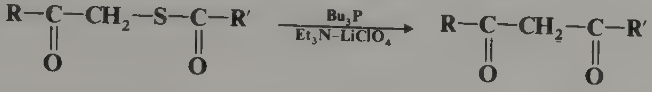
[459] Story, Denson, Bishop, Clark, and Farine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 817 (1968); Sanderson, Story, and Paul, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 691 (1975); Sanderson, Paul, and Story, *Synthesis* 275 (1975).

[460] For a review, See Story and Busch. *Adv. Org. Chem.* **8,** 67–95 (1972), pp. 79–94.

[461] For synthesis of mixed trimeric peroxides (e.g., **64**), see Sanderson and Zeiler, *Synthesis* 388 (1975); Paul, Story, Busch, and Sanderson, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1283 (1976).

[462] Kharasch and Sosnovsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **23,** 1322 (1958); Ledaal, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **21,** 1656 (1967).

7-53 Formation of β-Dicarbonyl Compounds by Extrusion of Sulfur

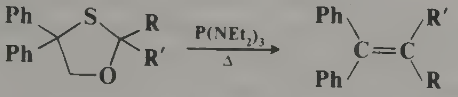


$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2-S-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow[Et_3N\text{-}LiClO_4]{Bu_3P} R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'$$

Thioesters containing a β-keto group in the alkyl portion can be converted to β-diketones by treatment with a tertiary phosphine under basic conditions.[465] The starting thioesters can be prepared by the reaction between a thiol acid and an α-halo ketone (similar to **0-26**).

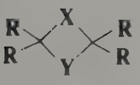
OS **55,** 127.

7-54 Olefin Synthesis by Twofold Extrusion

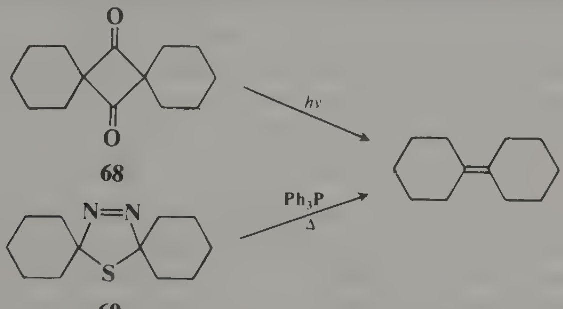


66

4,4-Diphenyloxathiolan-5-ones (**66**) give good yields of the corresponding olefins when heated with tris(diethylamino)phosphine.[466] This reaction is an example of a general type: olefin synthesis by twofold extrusion of X and Y from a molecule of the type **67**. Other examples are photolysis of 1,4-diones[467] (e.g., **68**) and treatment with Ph$_3$P of the azo sulfide **69**.[468] **66** can be prepared by the condensation of thiobenzilic acid Ph$_2$C(SH)COOH with aldehydes or ketones.



67



68

69

OS **V,** 297.

---

[463] Sanderson and Zeiler, *Synthesis* 125 (1975).

[464] Story, Lee, Bishop, Denson, and Busch, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3059 (1970). See also Sanderson, Wilterdink, and Zeiler, *Synthesis* 479 (1976).

[465] Roth, Dubs, Götschi, and Eschenmoser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 710 (1971).

[466] Barton and Willis, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 305 (1972).

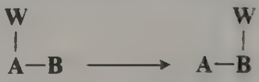
[467] Turro, Leermakers, Wilson, Neckers, Byers, and Vesley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2613 (1965).

[468] Barton, Smith, and Willis, *Chem. Commun.* 1226 (1970); Barton, Guziec, and Shahak, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1794 (1974). See also Buter, Wassenaar, and Kellogg, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4045 (1972); Bee, Beeby, Everett, and Garratt, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2212 (1975); Back, Barton, Britten-Kelly, and Guziec, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2079 (1976); Guziec and Murphy, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2890 (1980); Guziec and Moustakis, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 63 (1984).

18

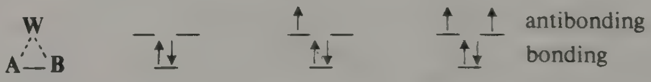
REARRANGEMENTS

In a rearrangement reaction a group moves from one atom to another in the same molecule.[1] Most are migrations from an atom to an adjacent one (called 1,2 shifts), but some are over longer distances. The migrating group (W) may move with its electron pair (these may be called *nucleophilic* or *anionotropic* rearrangements; the migrating group may be regarded as a nucleophile), without its electron pair (*electrophilic* or *cationotropic* rearrangements; in the case of migrating hydrogen, *prototropic* rearrangements), or with just one electron (free-radical rearrangements). The atom A is called the *migration origin* and B is the *migration terminus*. However, there are some rearrangements that do not lend themselves to neat categorization in this manner. Among these are those with cyclic transition states (**8-31** to **8-43**).



$$\overset{\mathbf{W}}{\mathbf{A}}\!-\!\mathbf{B} \longrightarrow \mathbf{A}\!-\!\overset{\mathbf{W}}{\mathbf{B}}$$

As we shall see, nucleophilic 1,2 shifts are much more common than electrophilic or free-radical 1,2 shifts. The reason for this can be seen by a consideration of the transition states (or in some cases intermediates) involved. We represent the transition state or intermediate for all three cases by **1**, in which the two-electron A—W bond overlaps with the orbital on atom B, which contains zero, one, and two electrons, in the case of nucleophilic, free-radical, and electrophilic migration, respectively. The overlap of these orbitals gives rise to three new orbitals, which have an energy relationship similar to those on p. 49 (one bonding and two degenerate antibonding orbitals). In a nucleophilic migration, where only two electrons are involved, both can go into the bonding orbital and **1** is a low-energy transition state; but in a free-radical or electrophilic migration, there are, respectively, three or four electrons that must be accommodated and antibonding orbitals must be occupied. It is not surprising therefore that, when 1,2-electrophilic or free-radical shifts are found, the migrating group W is usually aryl or some other group that can accommodate the extra one or two electrons and thus effectively remove them from the three-membered transition state or intermediate (see **37** on p. 956).



1 Nucleophilic Free radical Electrophilic

In any rearrangement we can in principle distinguish between two possible modes of reaction: In one of these the group W becomes completely detached from A and may end up on the B atom of a different molecule (*intermolecular* rearrangement); in the other W goes from A to B in the

---

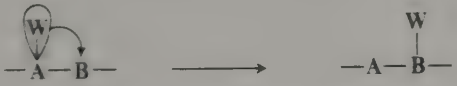
[1] For books, see Mayo, "Rearrangements in Ground and Excited States," 3 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1980 [we will refer to this as Mayo-RGES]; Mayo, "Molecular Rearrangements," 2 vols., Interscience, New York, 1963 [Mayo-MR]; Stevens and Watts, "Selected Molecular Rearrangements," Van Nostrand Reinhold, London, 1973. For a review of many of these rearrangements, see Collins and Eastham, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 1, pp. 761–821, Interscience, New York, 1966. See also the series *Mechanisms of Molecular Migrations*.

same molecule (*intramolecular* rearrangement), in which case there must be some continuing tie holding W to the A—B system, preventing it from coming completely free. Strictly speaking, only the intramolecular type fits our definition of a rearrangement, but the general practice, which is followed here, is to include under the title "rearrangement" all net rearrangements whether they are inter- or intramolecular. It is usually not difficult to tell whether a given rearrangement is intramolecular or not. The most common method involves the use of *crossover* experiments. In this type of experiment, rearrangement is carried out on a mixture of W—A—B and V—A—C, where V is closely related to W (say, methyl vs. ethyl) and B to C. In an intramolecular process only A—B—W and A—C—V are recovered, but if the reaction is intermolecular, then not only will these two be found, but also A—B—V and A—C—W.

MECHANISMS

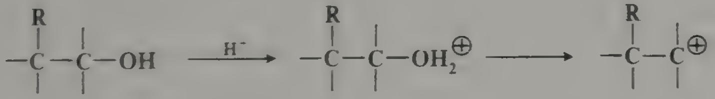
Nucleophilic Rearrangements[2]

Broadly speaking, such rearrangements consist of three steps, of which the actual migration is the second:



This process is sometimes called the Whitmore 1,2 shift.[3] Since the migrating group carries the electron pair with it, the migration terminus B must be an atom with only six electrons in its outer shell (an open sextet). The first step therefore is creation of a system with an open sextet. Such a system can arise in various ways, but two of these are the most important:

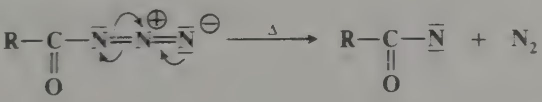
1. *Formation of a carbocation.* These can be formed in a number of ways (see p. 149), but one of the most common methods when a rearrangement is desired is the acid treatment of an alcohol:



2

These two steps are of course the same as the first two steps of the SN1cA or the E1 reactions of alcohols.

2. *Formation of a nitrene.* The decomposition of acyl azides is one of several ways in which nitrenes are formed (see p. 176):



3

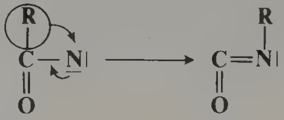
---

[2] For reviews, see Shubin, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **116**-**117**, 267–341 (1984); Saunders, Chandrasekhar, and Schleyer, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 1–53; Kirmse, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **80**, 89–124 (1979); Wheland, "Advanced Organic Chemistry," 3d ed., pp. 550–619, Wiley, New York, 1960. For a review of rearrangements in vinyl cations, see Shchegolev and Kanishchev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50**, 553–564 (1981).

[3] It was first postulated by Whitmore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **54**, 3274 (1932).

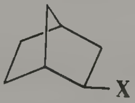
After the migration has taken place, the atom at the migration origin (A) must necessarily have an open sextet. In the third step this atom acquires an octet. In the case of carbocations, the most common third steps are combinations with a nucleophile (rearrangement with substitution) and loss of a hydrogen (rearrangement with elimination).

Though we have presented this mechanism as taking place in three steps, and some reactions do take place in this way, in many cases two or all three steps are simultaneous. For instance, in the nitrene example above, as the R migrates, an electron pair from the nitrogen moves into the C—N bond to give a stable isocyanate:



In this example, the second and third steps are simultaneous. It is also possible for the second and third steps to be simultaneous even when the "third" step involves more than just a simple motion of a pair of electrons. Similarly, there are many reactions in which the first two steps are simultaneous; that is, there is no actual formation of a species such as **2** or **3.** In these instances it may be said that R assists in the removal of the leaving group, with migration of R and the removal of the leaving group taking place simultaneously. Many investigations have been carried out in attempts to determine, in various reactions, whether such intermediates as **2** or **3** actually form, or whether the steps are simultaneous (see, for example, the discussions on pp. 946, 982), but the difference between the two possibilities is often subtle, and the question is not always easily answered.

Evidence for this mechanism is that rearrangements of this sort occur under conditions where we have previously encountered carbocations: SN1 conditions, Friedel–Crafts alkylation, etc. Solvolysis of neopentyl bromide leads to rearrangement products, and the rate increases with increasing ionizing power of the solvent but is unaffected by concentration of base,[4] so that the first step is carbocation formation. The same compound under SN2 conditions gave no rearrangement, but only ordinary substitution, though slowly. Thus with neopentyl bromide, formation of a carbocation leads only to rearrangement. Carbocations usually rearrange to more stable carbocations. Thus the direction of rearrangement is usually primary → secondary → tertiary. Neopentyl (Me_3CCH_2), neophyl ($PhCMe_2CH_2$), and norbornyl (e.g., **4**) type systems are especially prone to carbocation rearrangement reactions. It has been shown that the rate of migration increases with the degree of electron deficiency at the migration terminus.[5]



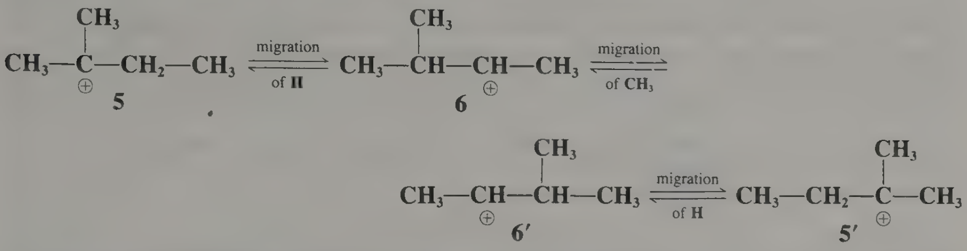
4

We have previously mentioned (p. 142) that stable tertiary carbocations can be obtained, in solution, at very low temperatures. Nmr studies have shown that when these solutions are warmed, rapid migrations of hydride and of alkyl groups take place, resulting in an equilibrium mixture of structures.[6] For example, the *t*-pentyl cation (**5**)[7] equilibrates as follows:

---

[4] Dostrovsky and Hughes, *J. Chem. Soc.* 166 (1946).

[5] Borodkin, Shakirov, Shubin, and Koptyug, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12,** 1293, 1298 (1976), **14,** 290, 924 (1978).



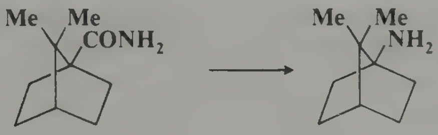
$$\underset{\mathbf{5}}{\mathrm{CH_3{-}\overset{CH_3}{\underset{\oplus}{C}}{-}CH_2{-}CH_3}} \underset{\text{of H}}{\overset{\text{migration}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \underset{\mathbf{6}}{\mathrm{CH_3{-}\overset{CH_3}{CH}{-}\underset{\oplus}{CH}{-}CH_3}} \underset{\text{of CH}_3}{\overset{\text{migration}}{\rightleftharpoons}}$$

$$\underset{\mathbf{6'}}{\mathrm{CH_3{-}\underset{\oplus}{CH}{-}\overset{CH_3}{CH}{-}CH_3}} \underset{\text{of H}}{\overset{\text{migration}}{\rightleftharpoons}} \underset{\mathbf{5'}}{\mathrm{CH_3{-}CH_2{-}\overset{CH_3}{\underset{\oplus}{C}}{-}CH_3}}$$

Carbocations that rearrange to give products of identical structure (e.g., $\mathbf{5} \rightleftharpoons \mathbf{5'}$, $\mathbf{6} \rightleftharpoons \mathbf{6'}$, or **64** or **65** on p. 286) are called *degenerate carbocations* and such rearrangements are *degenerate rearrangements*. Many examples are known.[8]

The Actual Nature of the Migration

Most nucleophilic 1,2 shifts are intramolecular. W does not become free but always remains connected in some way to the substrate. Apart from the evidence from crossover experiments, the strongest evidence is that when the group W is chiral, the configuration is *retained* in the product. For example, (+)-PhCHMeCOOH was converted to (−)-$\mathrm{PhCHMeNH_2}$ by the Curtius (**8-17**), Hofmann (**8-16**), Lossen (**8-18**), and Schmidt (**8-19**) reactions.[9] In these reactions the extent of retention varied from 95.8 to 99.6%. Retention of configuration in the migrating group has been shown many times since.[10] Another experiment demonstrating retention was the easy conversion of **7** to **8**.[11] Neither inversion nor racemization could take place at a bridgehead. There is much other evidence that retention of configuration usually occurs in W, and inversion never.[12] However, this is not the state of affairs at A and B. In many reactions, of course, the structure of W—A—B



7 **8**

---

[6] For reviews, see Brouwer and Hogeveen, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **9,** 179–240 (1972), pp. 203–237; Olah and Olah, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 2, pp. 751–760, 766–778, Interscience, New York, 1970. For a discussion of the rates of these reactions, see Sorensen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **9,** 257–265 (1976).

[7] Brouwer, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 210 (1968); Saunders and Hagen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2436 (1968).

[8] For reviews, see Ahlberg, Jonsäll, and Engdahl, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **19,** 223–379 (1983); Leone, Barborak, and Schleyer, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 6, vol. 4, pp. 1837–1939 (1973); Leone and Schleyer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 860–890 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 889–919].

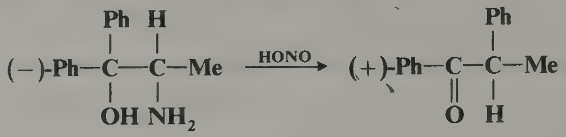
[9] Arcus and Kenyon, *J. Chem. Soc.* 916 (1939); Kenyon and Young, *J. Chem. Soc.* 263 (1941); Campbell and Kenyon, *J. Chem. Soc.* 25 (1946).

[10] For retention of migrating group configuration in the Wagner–Meerwein and pinacol rearrangements, see Beggs and Meyers, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 930 (1970); Kirmse and Gruber, *Chem. Ber.* **106,** 1365 (1973); Kirmse, Gruber, and Knist, *Chem. Ber.* **106,** 1376 (1973); Shono, Fujita, and Kumai, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3123 (1973); Borodkin, Panova, Shakirov, and Shubin, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 354 (1979), *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **19,** 103 (1983).

[11] Bartlett and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61,** 3184 (1939).

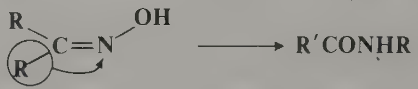
[12] See Cram, in Newman, "Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry," pp. 251–254, Wiley, New York, 1956; Wheland, Ref. 2, pp. 597–604.

is such that the product has only one steric possibility at A or B or both, and in most of these cases nothing can be learned. But in cases where the steric nature of A or B can be investigated, the results are mixed. It has been shown that either inversion or racemization can occur at A or B. Thus the following conversion proceeded with inversion at B:[13]



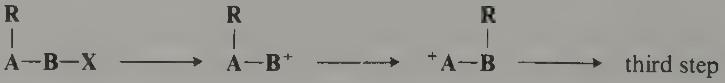
$$(-)\text{-Ph}-\underset{\text{OH}}{\overset{\text{Ph}}{C}}-\underset{\text{NH}_2}{\overset{\text{H}}{C}}-\text{Me} \xrightarrow{\text{HONO}} (+)\text{-Ph}-\underset{\text{O}}{\overset{}{\underset{\|}{C}}}-\underset{\text{H}}{\overset{\text{Ph}}{C}}-\text{Me} \qquad (8\text{-}2)$$

and inversion at A has been shown in other cases.[13] However, in many other cases, racemization occurs at A or B or both.[14] It is not always necessary for the product to have two steric possibilities in order to investigate the stereochemistry at A or B. Thus, in most Beckmann rearrangements (**8-20**), only the group trans (usually called *anti*) to the hydroxyl group migrates:



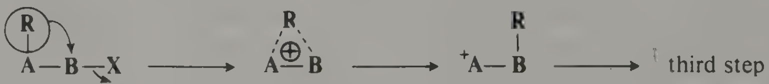
showing inversion at B.

This information tells us about the degree of concertedness of the three steps of the rearrangement. First we shall look at the migration terminus B. If racemization is found at B, then it is probable that the first step takes place before the second and that a positively charged carbon (or other sextet atom) is present at B:



$$\overset{\text{R}}{\underset{|}{\text{A}}}-\text{B}-\text{X} \longrightarrow \overset{\text{R}}{\underset{|}{\text{A}}}-\text{B}^{+} \longrightarrow {}^{+}\text{A}-\overset{\text{R}}{\underset{|}{\text{B}}} \longrightarrow \text{third step}$$

With respect to B this is an SN1-type process. If inversion occurs at B, then it is likely that the first two steps are concerted, that a carbocation is *not* an intermediate, and that the process is SN2-like:



9

In this case participation by R assists in removal of X in the same way that neighboring groups do (p. 268). Indeed, R *is* a neighboring group here. The only difference is that, in the case of the neighboring-group mechanism of nucleophilic substitution, R never becomes detached from A, while in a rearrangement the bond between R and A is broken. In either case, the anchimeric assistance results in an increased rate of reaction. Of course, for such a process to take place, R must be in a favorable geometrical position (R and X anti-periplanar). **9** may be a true intermediate or only a transition state, depending on what migrates. In certain cases of the SN1-type process, it is possible for migration to take place with net retention of configuration at the migrating terminus because of conformational effects in the carbocation.[15]

[13] For inversion at B, see Bernstein and Whitmore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61,** 1324 (1939). For inversion at A, see Meerwein and van Emster, *Ber.* **53,** 1815 (1920), **55,** 2500 (1922); Meerwein and Gérard, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **435,** 174 (1923).

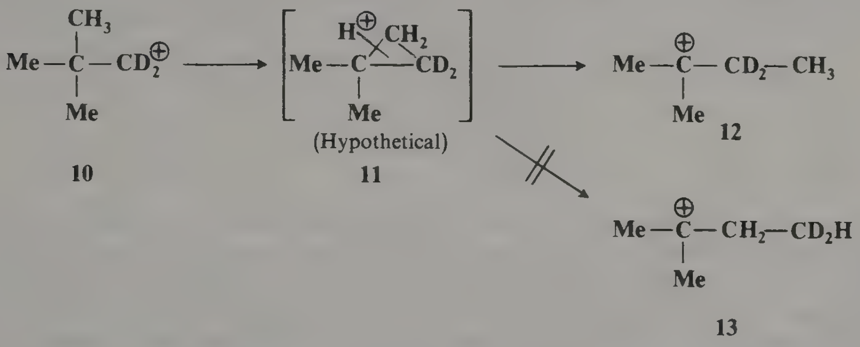
[14] For example, see Winstein and Morse, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 1133 (1952).

[15] Benjamin and Collins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3662 (1961); Collins, Staum, and Benjamin, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3525 (1962); Collins and Benjamin, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4358 (1972).

We may summarize a few conclusions:

1. The SN1-type process occurs mostly when B is a tertiary atom or has one aryl group and at least one other alkyl or aryl group. In other cases, the SN2-type process is more likely. Inversion of configuration (indicating an SN2-type process) has been shown for a neopentyl substrate by the use of the chiral neopentyl-1-*d* alcohol.[16] On the other hand, there is other evidence that neopentyl systems undergo rearrangement by a carbocation (SN1-type) mechanism.[17]

2. The question as to whether **9** is an intermediate or a transition state has been much debated. When R is aryl or vinyl, then **9** is probably an intermediate and the migrating group lends anchimeric assistance[18] (see p. 279 for resonance stabilization of this intermediate when R is aryl). When R is alkyl, **9** is a protonated cyclopropane (edge- or corner-protonated; see p. 678). There is much evidence that in simple migrations of a methyl group, the bulk of the products formed do not arise from protonated cyclopropane *intermediates*. Evidence for this statement has already been given (p. 285). Further evidence was obtained from experiments involving labeling. Rearrangement of the neopentyl cation labeled with deuterium in the 1 position (**10**) gave only *t*-pentyl products with the label in the 3 position (derived from **12**), though if **11** were an intermediate, the cyclopropane ring could just as well cleave the other way to give *t*-pentyl derivatives labeled in the 4 position (derived from **13**).[19]



10 **11** **12** **13**

Another experiment that led to the same conclusion was the generation, in several ways, of $\mathrm{Me_3C^{13}CH_2^+}$. In this case the only *t*-pentyl products isolated were labeled in C-3, that is, $\mathrm{Me_2\overset{\oplus}{C}{-}{}^{13}CH_2CH_3}$ derivatives; no derivatives of $\mathrm{Me_2\overset{\oplus}{C}{-}CH_2{}^{13}CH_3}$ were found.[20] Though the bulk of the products are not formed from protonated cyclopropane intermediates, there is considerable evidence that at least in 1-propyl systems, a small part of the product can in fact arise from such intermediates.[21] Among this evidence is the isolation of 10 to 15% cyclopropanes (mentioned on p. 285). Additional evidence comes from propyl cations generated by diazotization of labeled amines ($CH_3CH_2CD_2^+$, $CH_3CD_2CH_2^+$, $CH_3CH_2{}^{14}CH_2^+$), where isotopic distribution in the products indicated that a small amount (about 5%) of the product had to be formed from protonated cyclopropane intermediates, e.g.,[22]

---

[16] Sanderson and Mosher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4185 (1966); Mosher, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 1733 (1974). See also Guthrie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6718 (1967); Solladié, Muskatirovic, and Mosher, *Chem. Commun.* 809 (1968); Liggero, Sustmann, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4571 (1969).

[17] Nordlander, Jindal, Schleyer, Fort, Harper, and Nicholas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4475 (1966).

[18] For an opposing view, see Kirmse and Feyen, *Chem. Ber.* **108,** 71 (1975); Kirmse, Plath, and Schaffrodt, *Chem. Ber.* **108,** 79 (1975).

[19] Skell, Starer, and Krapcho, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5257 (1960).

[20] Karabatsos and Graham, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 5250 (1960); Karabatsos, Orzech, and Meyerson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1994 (1964).

[21] For reviews, see Saunders, Vogel, Hagen, and Rosenfeld, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **6,** 53–59 (1973); Lee, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 129–187 (1970); Collins, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 543–550 (1969). See also Cooper, Jenner, Perry, Russell-King, Storesund, and Whiting, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 605 (1982).

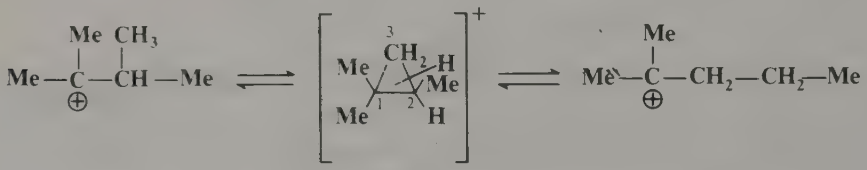
$$CH_3CH_2CD_2NH_2 \xrightarrow{HONO} \sim 1\%\ C_2H_4D{-}CHD{-}OH$$

$$CH_3CD_2CH_2NH_2 \xrightarrow{HONO} \sim 1\%\ C_2H_4D{-}CHD{-}OH$$

$$CH_3CH_2{}^{14}CH_2NH_2 \xrightarrow{HONO} \sim 2\%\ {}^{14}CH_3CH_2CH_2OH + \sim 2\%\ CH_3{}^{14}CH_2CH_2OH$$

Even more scrambling was found in trifluoroacetolysis of 1-propyl-1-^{14}C-mercuric perchlorate.[23] However, protonated cyclopropane intermediates accounted for less than 1% of the products from diazotization of labeled isobutylamine[24] and from formolysis of labeled 1-propyl tosylate.[25]

It is likely that protonated cyclopropane transition states or intermediates are also responsible for certain non-1,2 rearrangements. For example, in super-acid solution, the dimethylisopropylcarbonium ion (**14**) is an equilibrium with the dimethyl-*n*-propylcarbonium ion (**16**). It is not possible for these to interconvert solely by 1,2 alkyl or hydride shifts unless primary carbocations (which are highly unlikely) are intermediates. However, the reaction can be explained[26] by postulating that (in the forward reaction) it is the 1,2 bond of the intermediate or transition state **15** that opens up rather than the 2,3 bond, which is the one that would open if the reaction were a normal 1,2 shift of a methyl group. In this case opening of the 1,2 bond produces a tertiary cation, while opening of the 2,3 bond would give a secondary cation. (In the reaction **16** → **14,** it is of course the 1,3 bond which opens.)



14 **15** **16**

3. There has been much discussion of H as migrating group. There is no conclusive evidence for the viewpoint that **9** in this case is or is not a true intermediate, though both positions have been argued (see p. 285).

The stereochemistry at the migration origin A is less often involved, since in most cases it does not end up as a tetrahedral atom; but when there is inversion here, there is an SN2-type process at the beginning of the migration. This may or may not be accompanied by an SN2 process at the migration terminus B:

---

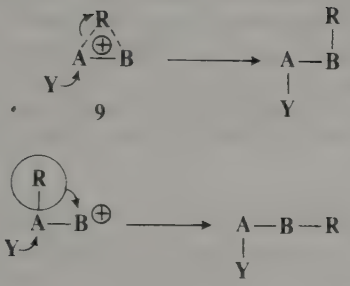
[22] Lee, Kruger, and Wong, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3985 (1965); Lee and Kruger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3986 (1965), *Tetrahedron* **23,** 2539 (1967); Karabatsos, Orzech, and Meyerson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4394 (1965); Lee and Wan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6416 (1969); Karabatsos, Orzech, Fry, and Meyerson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 606 (1970). See also Lee, Reichle, and Weber, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 658 (1978).

[23] Lee, Cessna, Ko, and Vassie, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5688 (1973). See also Lee and Chwang, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 1025 (1970); Lee and Law, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 2746 (1971); Lee and Reichle, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2058 (1977).

[24] Karabatsos, Hsi, and Meyerson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 621 (1970). See also Karabatsos, Mount, Rickter, and Meyerson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1248 (1970); Karabatsos, Anand, Rickter, and Meyerson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1254 (1970).

[25] Lee and Kruger, *Can. J. Chem.* **44,** 2343 (1966); Shatkina, Lovtsova, and Reutov, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 2616 (1967); Karabatsos, Fry, and Meyerson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 614 (1970). See also Lee and Zohdi, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 2092 (1983).

[26] Brouwer and Oelderik, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 721 (1968); Saunders, Jaffe, and Vogel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2558 (1971); Saunders and Vogel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2559, 2561 (1971). Kirmse, Loosen, and Prolingheuer, *Chem. Ber.* **113,** 129 (1980). See also Brouwer, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 1435 (1968); Kramer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4819 (1969), **92,** 4344 (1970); Hudson, Koplick, and Poulton, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 57 (1979).

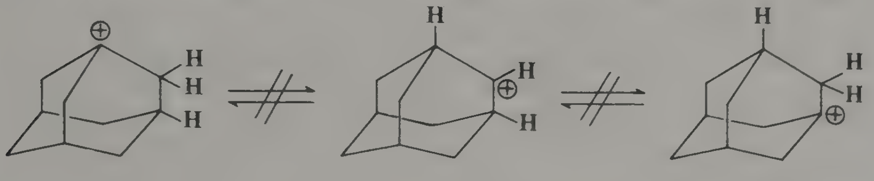


inversion at A and B

inversion at A only

In some cases it has been found that, when H is the migrating species, the configuration at A may be *retained*.[27]

There is evidence that the configuration of the molecule may be important even where the leaving group is gone long before migration takes place. For example, the 1-adamantyl cation (**17**) does not equilibrate intramolecularly, even at temperatures up to 130°C,[28] though open-chain (e.g., **5** ⇌ **5′**) and cyclic tertiary carbocations undergo such equilibration at 0°C or below. On the basis of this and other evidence it has been concluded that for a 1,2 shift of hydrogen or methyl to proceed as smoothly as possible, the vacant *p* orbital of the carbon bearing the positive charge and the sp^3 orbital carrying the migrating group must be coplanar,[28] which is not possible for **17.**



17 **17′**

Migratory Aptitudes[29]

In many reactions there is no question about which group migrates. For example, in the Hofmann, Curtius, and similar reactions there is only one possible migrating group in each molecule, and one can measure migratory aptitudes only by comparing the relative rearrangement rates of different compounds. In other instances there are two or more potential migrating groups, but which migrates is settled by the geometry of the molecule. The Beckmann rearrangement (**8-20**) provides an example. As we have seen, only the group trans to the OH migrates. In compounds whose geometry is not restricted in this manner, there still may be eclipsing effects (see p. 892), so that the choice of migrating group is largely determined by which group is in the right place in the most stable conformation of the molecule.[30] However, in some reactions, especially the Wagner–Meerwein

---

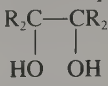
[27] Winstein and Holness, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 5562 (1955); Cram and Tadanier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2737 (1959); Bundel', Pankratova, Gordin, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **199,** 700 (1971); Kirmse and Arold, *Chem. Ber.* **104,** 1800 (1971); Kirmse, Ratajczak, and Rauleder, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 2290 (1977).

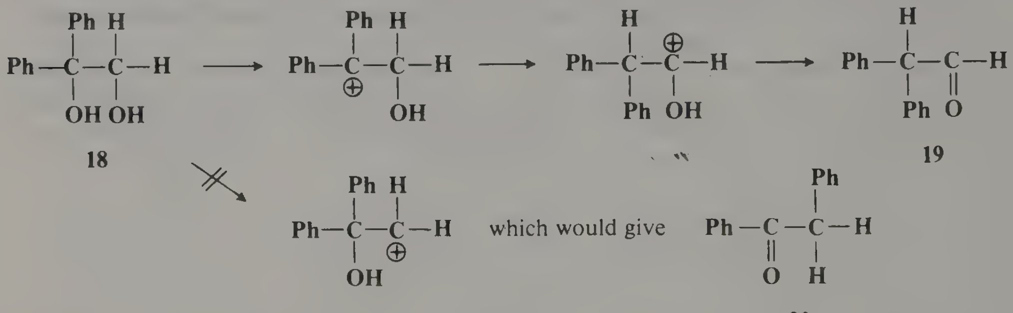
[28] Brouwer and Hogeveen, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **89,** 211 (1970); Majerski, Schleyer, and Wolf, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5731 (1970).

[29] For discussions, see Koptyug and Shubin, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **16,** 1685–1714 (1980); Wheland, Ref. 2, pp. 573–597.

[30] For a discussion, see Cram, Ref. 12, pp. 270–276. For an interesting example, see Nickon and Weglein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1271 (1975).

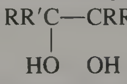
(**8-1**) and the pinacol (**8-2**) rearrangements, the molecule may contain several groups that, geometrically at least, have approximately equal chances of migrating, and these reactions have often been used for the direct study of relative migratory aptitudes. In the pinacol rearrangement there is the additional question of which OH group leaves and which does not, since a group can migrate only if the OH group on *the other* carbon is lost.

We deal with the second question first. To study this question, the best type of substrate to use is one of the form  $\underset{\text{HO}}{\text{R}_2\text{C}}\text{—}\underset{\text{OH}}{\text{CR}_2'}$, since the only thing that determines migratory aptitude is which OH group comes off. Once the OH group is gone, the migrating group is determined. As might be expected, the OH that leaves is the one whose loss gives rise to the more stable carbocation. Thus 1,1-diphenylethanediol (**18**) gives diphenylacetaldehyde (**19**), not phenylacetophenone (**20**).



21 **20**

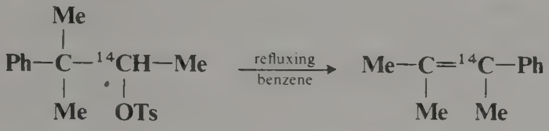
Obviously, it does not matter in this case whether phenyl has a greater inherent migratory aptitude than hydrogen or not. Only the hydrogen can migrate because **21** is not formed. As we have already seen, carbocation stability is enhanced by groups in the order aryl > alkyl > hydrogen, and this normally determines which side loses the OH group. However, exceptions are known, and which group is lost may depend on the reaction conditions (for an example, see the reaction of **40,** p. 963).

In order to answer the question about inherent migratory aptitudes, the obvious type of substrate to use (in the pinacol rearrangement) is  $\underset{\text{HO}}{\text{RR}'\text{C}}\text{—}\underset{\text{OH}}{\text{CRR}'}$, since the same carbocation is formed no matter which OH leaves, and it would seem that a direct comparison of the migratory tendencies of R and R′ is possible. On closer inspection, however, we can see that several factors are operating. Apart from the question of possible conformational effects, already mentioned, there is also the fact that whether the group R or R′ migrates is determined not only by the relative inherent migrating abilities of R and R′ but also by whether the group which does *not* migrate is better at stabilizing the positive charge which will now be found at the migration origin.[31] Thus, migration of R gives rise to the cation $\text{R}'\overset{\oplus}{\text{C}}\text{(OH)CR}_2\text{R}'$, while migration of R′ gives the cation $\text{R}\overset{\oplus}{\text{C}}\text{(OH)CRR}_2'$, and these cations have different stabilities. It is possible that in a given case R might be found to migrate less than R′, not because it actually has a lower inherent migrating tendency, but because it is much better at stabilizing the positive charge. In addition to this factor, migrating ability of a group is also related to its capacity to render anchimeric assistance to the departure of the nucleofuge.

---

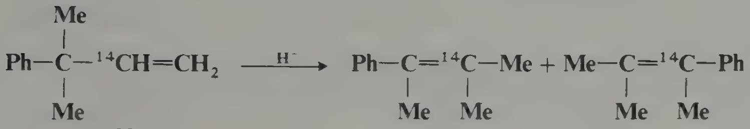
[31] For example, see Howells and Warren, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1645 (1973); McCall, Townsend and Bonner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2743 (1975); Brownbridge, Hodgson, Shepherd, and Warren, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2024 (1976).

An example of this effect is the finding that in the decomposition of the tosylate **22** only the phenyl group migrates, while in acid treatment of the corresponding alkene **23**, there is competitive



$$\mathrm{Ph{-}\overset{Me}{\underset{Me}{C}}{-}{}^{14}\underset{OTs}{C}H{-}Me \xrightarrow[\text{benzene}]{\text{refluxing}} Me{-}\underset{Me}{C}{=}{}^{14}\underset{Me}{C}{-}Ph}$$

22



$$\mathrm{Ph{-}\overset{Me}{\underset{Me}{C}}{-}{}^{14}CH{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow{H^+} Ph{-}\underset{Me}{C}{=}{}^{14}\underset{Me}{C}{-}Me + Me{-}\underset{Me}{C}{=}{}^{14}\underset{Me}{C}{-}Ph}$$

23

migration of both methyl and phenyl (in these reactions ^{14}C labeling is necessary to determine which group has migrated).[32] **22** and **23** give the same carbocation; the differing results must be caused by the fact that in **22** the phenyl group can assist the leaving group, while no such process is possible for **23.** This example clearly illustrates the difference between migration to a relatively free terminus and one that proceeds with the migrating group lending anchimeric assistance.[33]

It is not surprising therefore that clear-cut answers as to relative migrating tendencies are not available. More often than not migratory aptitudes are in the order aryl > alkyl, but exceptions are known, and the position of hydrogen in this series is often unpredictable. In some cases migration of hydrogen is preferred to aryl migration; in other cases migration of alkyl is preferred to that of hydrogen. Mixtures are often found, and the isomer that predominates often depends on conditions. For example, the comparison between methyl and ethyl has been made many times in various systems, and in some cases methyl migration and in others ethyl migration has been found to predominate.[34] However, it can be said that among aryl migrating groups, electron-donating substituents in the para and meta positions increase the migratory aptitudes, while the same substituents in the ortho positions decrease them. Electron-withdrawing groups decrease migrating ability in all positions. The following are a few of the relative migratory aptitudes determined for aryl groups by Bachmann and Ferguson:[35] *p*-anisyl, 500; *p*-tolyl, 15.7; *m*-tolyl, 1.95; phenyl, 1.00; *p*-chlorophenyl, 0.7; *o*-anisyl, 0.3. For the *o*-anisyl group, the poor migrating ability probably has a steric cause, while for the others there is a fair correlation with activation or deactivation of electrophilic aromatic substitution, which is what the process is with respect to the benzene ring.

Memory Effects[36]

Solvolysis of the endo bicyclic compound **24** (X = ONs, p. 312, or Br) gave mostly the bicyclic allylic alcohol **27,** along with a smaller amount of the tricyclic alcohol **31,** while solvolysis of the exo isomers **28** gave mostly **31,** with smaller amounts of **27.**[37] Thus the two isomers gave entirely different ratios of products, though the carbocation initially formed (**25** or **29**) seems to be the same for each. In the case of **25,** a second rearrangement (a shift of the 1,7 bond) follows, while with **29** it is an intramolecular addition of the positive carbon to the double bond that follows. It seems as if **25** and **29** "remember" how they were formed before they go on to give the second step. Such effects are called *memory effects* and other such cases are also known.[38] The causes of these effects are not well understood, though there has been much discussion. One possible cause is differential solvation of the apparently identical ions **25** and **29.** Other possibilities are: (1) that the ions have geometrical structures that are twisted in opposite senses (e.g., a twisted **29** might have its positive carbon closer to the double bond than a twisted **25**); (2) that ion pairing is responsible;[39] and (3) that nonclassical carbocations are involved.[40] One possibility that has been ruled out is that the steps **24** → **25** → **26** and **28** → **29** → **30** are concerted, so that **25** and **29** never exist at all. This possibility has been excluded by several kinds of evidence, including the fact that **24** gives not only **27,** but also some **31;** and **28** gives some **27** along with **31.** This means that some of the **25** and **29** ions interconvert, a phenomenon known as *leakage.*

---

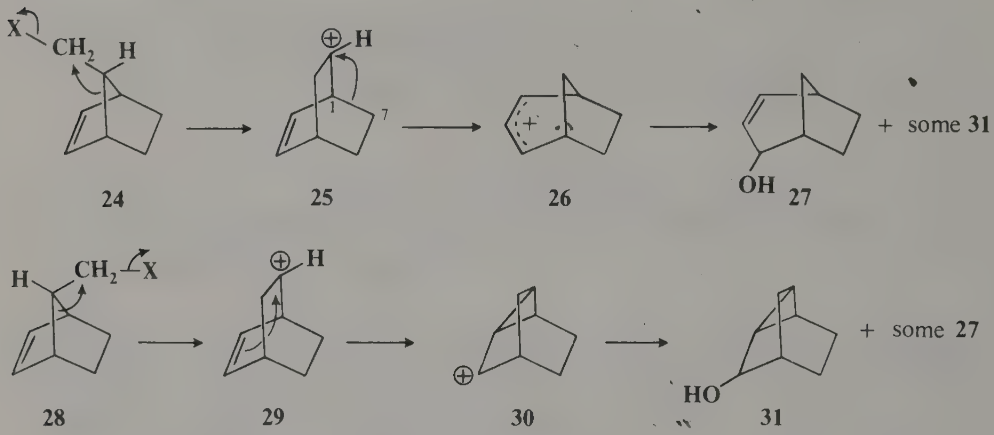
[32] Grimaud and Laurent, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3599 (1967).

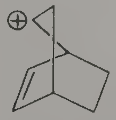
[33] A number of studies of migratory aptitudes in the dienone–phenol rearrangement (**8-6**) are in accord with the above. For a discussion, see Fischer and Henderson, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 279 (1979), and references cited therein. See also Palmer and Waring, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1089 (1979).

[34] For examples, see Cram and Knight, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 5839 (1952); Stiles and Mayer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1497 (1959); Heidke and Saunders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 5816 (1966); Dubois and Bauer, *J Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4510, 4511 (1968); Bundel', Levina, and Reutov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **6,** 1 (1970); Pilkington and Waring, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1349 (1976); Korchagina, Derendyaev, Shubin, and Koptyug, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **12,** 378 (1976); Wistuba and Rüchardt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4069 (1981); Jost, Laali, and Sommer, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **7,** 79 (1983).

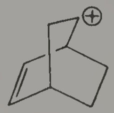
[35] Bachmann and Ferguson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **56,** 2081 (1934).

[36] For a review, see Berson, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 779–791 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 765–777].





Twisted **29**



Twisted **25**

---

[37] Berson, Poonian, and Libbey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5567 (1969); Berson, Donald, and Libbey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5580 (1969); Berson, Wege, Clarke, and Bergman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5594, 5601 (1969).

[38] For examples of memory effects in other systems, see Berson, Gajewski, and Donald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5550 (1969); Berson, McKenna, and Junge, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1296 (1971); Berson and Foley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1297 (1971); Berson, Luibrand, Kundu, and Morris, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3075 (1971); Collins, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 315–322 (1971); Collins, Glover, Eckart, Raaen, Benjamin, and Benjaminov, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 899 (1972); Svensson, *Chem. Scr.* **6,** 22 (1974).

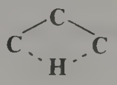
[39] See Collins, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **4,** 251–262 (1975).

[40] See, for example, Seybold, Vogel, Saunders, and Wiberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2045 (1973). Kirmse and Günther, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3619 (1978).

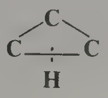
Longer Nucleophilic Rearrangements

The question as to whether a group can migrate with its electron pair from A to C in W—A—B—C or over longer distances has been much debated. Although claims have been made that alkyl groups can migrate in this way, the evidence is that such migration is extremely rare, if it occurs at all. One experiment that demonstrated this was the generation of the 3,3-dimethyl-1-butyl cation $Me_3CCH_2CH_2^+$. If 1,3 methyl migrations are possible, this cation would appear to be a favorable substrate for them, since such a migration would convert a primary cation into the tertiary 2-methyl-2-pentyl cation $Me_2\overset{\oplus}{C}CH_2CH_2CH_3$, while the only possible 1,2 migration (of hydride) would give only a secondary cation. However, no products arising from the 2-methyl-2-pentyl cation were found, the only rearranged products being those formed by the 1,2 hydride migration.[41] 1,3 Migration of bromine has been reported.[42]

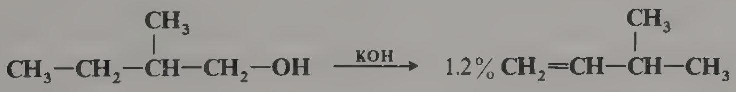
However, most of the debate over the possibility of 1,3 migrations has concerned not methyl or bromine but 1,3 hydride shifts.[43] There is no doubt that *apparent* 1,3 hydride shifts take place (many instances have been found), but the question is whether they are truly direct hydride shifts or whether they occur by another mechanism. There are at least two ways in which indirect 1,3 hydride shifts can take place: (1) by successive 1,2 shifts or (2) through the intervention of protonated cyclopropanes (see p. 948). A direct 1,3 shift would have the transition state **A**, while the transition state for a 1,3 shift involving a protonated cyclopropane intermediate would resemble **B**. The evidence is that most reported 1,3 hydride shifts are actually the result of successive 1,2 migrations,[44] but that in some cases small amounts of products cannot be accounted for in this way. For example, the reaction of 2-methyl-1-butanol with KOH and bromoform gave a mixture of olefins, nearly all of which could have arisen from simple elimination or 1,2 shifts of hydride or alkyl. However, 1.2% of the product was 3-methyl-1-butene (**32**):[45]



A



B



$$CH_3-CH_2-\overset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\overset{|}{CH}}-CH_2-OH \xrightarrow{KOH} 1.2\%\ CH_2{=}CH-\overset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\overset{|}{CH}}-CH_3$$

32

Hypothetically, **32** could have arisen from a 1,3 shift (direct or through a protonated cyclopropane) or from two successive 1,2 shifts:

---

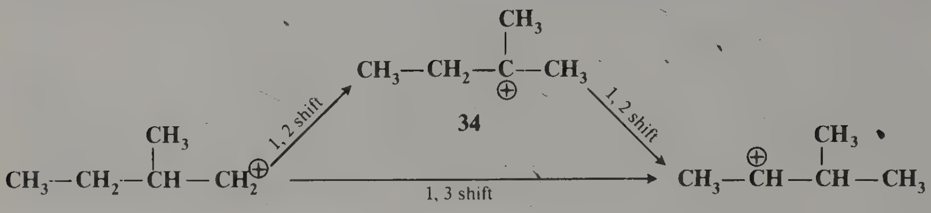
[41] Skell and Reichenbacher, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2309 (1968).

[42] Reineke and McCarthy, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6376 (1970); Smolina, Gopius, Gruzdneva, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **209,** 280 (1973).

[43] For reviews, see Fry and Karabatsos, in Olah and Schleyer, Ref. 6, vol. 2, pp. 527–566; Reutov, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **7,** 203–227 (1963).

[44] For example, see Bundel', Levina, Krzhizhevskii, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **181,** 583 (1968); Bundel', Levina, Prokhorenko, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **188,** 732 (1969); Fărcaşiu, Kascheres, and Schwartz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 180 (1972); Kirmse, Knist, and Ratajczak, *Chem. Ber.* **109,** 2296 (1976).

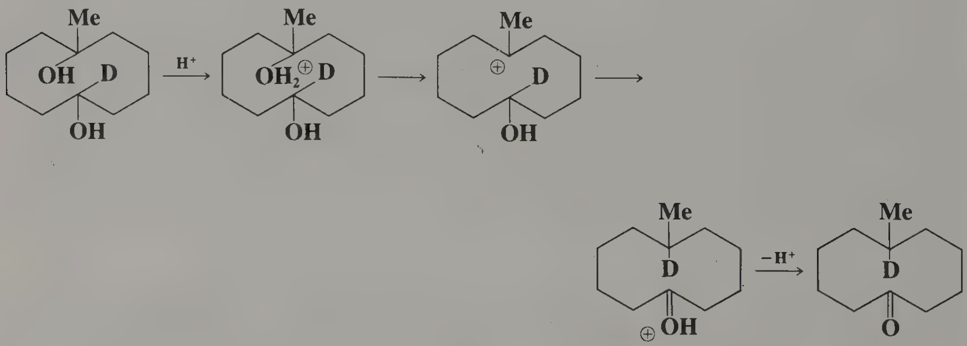
[45] Skell and Maxwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3963 (1962). See also Skell and Starer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3962 (1962).



33 **34** **35**

However, the same reaction applied to 2-methyl-2-butanol gave no **32,** which demonstrated that **35** was not formed from **34.** The conclusion was thus made that **35** was formed directly from **33.** This experiment does not answer the question as to whether **35** was formed by a direct shift or through a protonated cyclopropane, but from other evidence[46] it appears that 1,3 hydride shifts that do not result from successive 1,2 migrations usually take place through protonated cyclopropane intermediates (which, as we saw on p. 947, account for only a small percentage of the product in any case). However, there is evidence that direct 1,3 hydride shifts by way of **A** may take place in super-acid solutions.[47]

Although direct nucleophilic rearrangements over distances greater than 1,2 are rare (or perhaps nonexistent) when the migrating atom or group must move along a chain, this is not so for a shift across a ring of 8 to 11 members. Many such transannular rearrangements are known.[48] Several examples are given on p. 135. We look at the mechanism of one of these:[49]



It is noteworthy that the *methyl* group does not migrate in this system. It is generally true that alkyl groups do not undergo transannular migration. In most cases it is hydride that undergoes this type of migration, though a small amount of phenyl migration has also been shown.[50]

---

[46] For example, see Brouwer and van Doorn, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **88,** 573 (1969); Dupuy, Goldsmith, and Hudson, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 74 (1973); Hudson, Koplick, and Poulton, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1449 (1975); Fry and Karabatsos, Ref. 43.

[47] Saunders and Stofko, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 252 (1973).

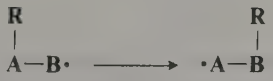
[48] For reviews, see Prelog and Traynham, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, pp. 593–615; Cope, Martin, and McKervey. *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **20,** 119–152 (1966). For many references, see Blomquist and Buck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 672 (1951).

[49] Prelog and Küng, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **39,** 1394 (1956).

[50] Cope, Burton, and Caspar, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4855 (1962).

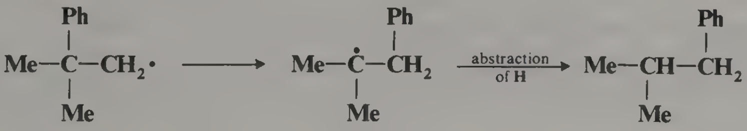
Free-Radical Rearrangements[51]

1,2-Free-radical rearrangements are much less common than the nucleophilic type previously considered, for the reasons mentioned on p. 942. Where they do occur, the general pattern is similar. There must first be generation of a free radical, and then the actual migration in which the migrating group moves with one electron:



$$\overset{R}{\overset{|}{A}}{-}B\cdot \longrightarrow \cdot A{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{B}}$$

Finally, the new free radical must stabilize itself by a further reaction. The order of radical stability leads us to predict that here too, as with carbocation rearrangements, any migrations should be in the order primary → secondary → tertiary, and that the logical place to look for them should be in neopentyl and neophyl systems. The most common way of generating free radicals for the purpose of detection of rearrangements is by decarbonylation of aldehydes (**4-40**). In this manner it was found that neophyl radicals *do* undergo rearrangement. Thus, $PhCMe_2CH_2CHO$ treated with di-*t*-butyl peroxide gave about equal amounts of the normal product $PhCMe_2CH_3$ and the product arising from migration of phenyl:[52]



$$Me{-}\underset{Me}{\underset{|}{\overset{Ph}{\overset{|}{C}}}}{-}CH_2\cdot \longrightarrow Me{-}\underset{Me}{\underset{|}{\dot{C}}}{-}\overset{Ph}{\overset{|}{CH_2}} \xrightarrow[\text{of H}]{\text{abstraction}} Me{-}\underset{Me}{\underset{|}{CH}}{-}\overset{Ph}{\overset{|}{CH_2}}$$

Many other cases of free-radical migration of aryl groups have also been found.[53]

It is noteworthy that the extent of migration is much less than with the corresponding carbocations: thus in the example given, there was only about 50% migration, whereas the carbocation would have given much more. Also noteworthy is that there was no migration of the methyl group. In general it may be said that free-radical migration of alkyl groups does not occur at ordinary temperatures. Many attempts have been made to detect such migration on the traditional neopentyl and bornyl types of substrates. However, alkyl migration is not observed, even in substrates where the corresponding carbocations undergo facile rearrangement.[54] Another type of migration that is very common for carbocations, but which is not observed for free radicals, is 1,2 migration of hydrogen. We confine ourselves to a few examples of the lack of migration of alkyl groups and hydrogen:

1. 3,3-Dimethylpentanal($EtCMe_2CH_2CHO$) gave no rearranged products on decarbonylation.[55]

---

[51] For reviews, see Beckwith and Ingold, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 161–310; Wilt, in Kochi, "Free Radicals," vol. 1, pp. 333–501, Wiley, New York, 1973; Stepukhovich and Babayan, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 750 (1972); Nonhebel and Walton, "Free-Radical Chemistry," pp. 498–552, Cambridge University Press, London, 1974; Huyser, "Free-Radical Chain Reactions," pp. 235–255, Interscience, New York, 1970; Freidlina, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **1,** 211–278 (1965); Fish, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **18,** 243–269 (1964); Pryor, "Free Radicals," pp. 266–284, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1966; Freidlina, Kost, and Khorlina, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **31,** 1–18 (1962); Walling, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, pp. 407–455.

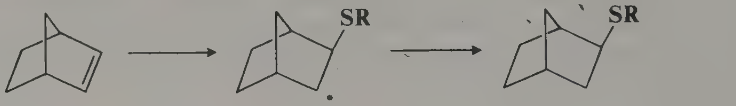
[52] Winstein and Seubold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **69,** 2916 (1947); Seubold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 2532 (1953). For the observation of this rearrangement by esr, see Hamilton and Fischer, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **56,** 795 (1973).

[53] For example, see Curtin and Hurwitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 5381 (1952); Wilt and Philip, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 441 (1959), **25,** 891 (1960); Pines and Goetschel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4207 (1965); Goerner, Cote, and Vittimberga, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 19 (1977); Collins, Roark, Raaen, and Benjamin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1877 (1979); Walter and McBride, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 7069, 7074 (1981).

[54] For a summary of unsuccessful attempts, see Slaugh, Magoon, and Guinn, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2643 (1963).

[55] Seubold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 3732 (1954).

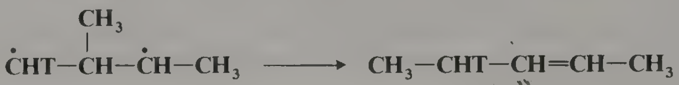
2. Addition of RSH to norbornene gave only *exo*-norbornyl sulfides, though **36** is an intermediate, and the corresponding carbocation cannot be formed without rearrangement.[56]



36

3. It was shown[57] that no rearrangement of isobutyl radical to *t*-butyl radical (which would involve the formation of a more stable radical by a hydrogen shift) took place during the chlorination of isobutane.

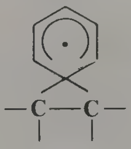
However, 1,2 migration of alkyl groups has been shown to occur in certain *diradicals*.[58] For example, the following rearrangement has been established by tritium labeling.[59]



$$\dot{C}HT-\underset{}{\overset{CH_3}{\overset{|}{C}}}H-\dot{C}H-CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3-CHT-CH=CH-CH_3$$

In this case the fact that migration of the methyl group leads directly to a compound in which all electrons are paired undoubtedly contributes to the driving force of the reaction.

The fact that aryl groups migrate, but alkyl groups and hydrogen generally do not, leads to the proposition that **37**, in which the odd electron is not found in the three-membered ring, may



37

be an intermediate. There has been much controversy on this point, but the bulk of the evidence indicates that **37** is a transition state, not an intermediate. Among the evidence is the failure to observe **37** either by esr[60] or CIDNP.[61] Both of these techniques can detect free radicals with extremely short lifetimes (pp. 162–163).[62]

Besides aryl, vinyl[63] and acetoxy groups[64] also migrate. Vinyl groups migrate by way of a cyclopropylcarbinyl radical intermediate,[65] while the migration of acetoxy groups may involve the charge-separated structure shown.[66] In addition, migration has been observed for chloro (and to a much lesser extent bromo) groups. For example, in the reaction of $Cl_3CCH{=}CH_2$ with bromine under the influence of peroxides, the products were 47% $Cl_3CCHBrCH_2Br$ (the normal addition product) and 53% $BrCCl_2CHClCH_2Br$, which arose by rearrangement:

---

[56] Cristol and Brindell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 5699 (1954).

[57] Brown and Russell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 3995 (1952). See also Desai, Nechvatal, and Tedder, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 386 (1970).

[58] For a review, see Freidlina and Terent'ev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 129–139 (1974).

[59] McKnight and Rowland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3179 (1966). For other examples, see Greene, Adam, and Knudsen, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2087 (1966); Gajewski and Burka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8857, 8860, 8865 (1972); Adam and Aponte, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4300 (1971).

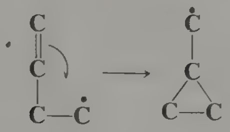
[60] Kochi and Krusic, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3940 (1969); Edge and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7695 (1972).

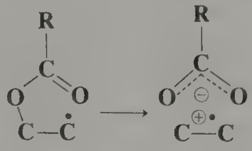
[61] Shevlin and Hansen, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3011 (1977); Olah, Krishnamurthy, Singh, and Iyer, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 955 (1983). **37** has been detected as an intermediate in a different reaction: Effio, Griller, Ingold, Scaiano, and Sheng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6063 (1980).

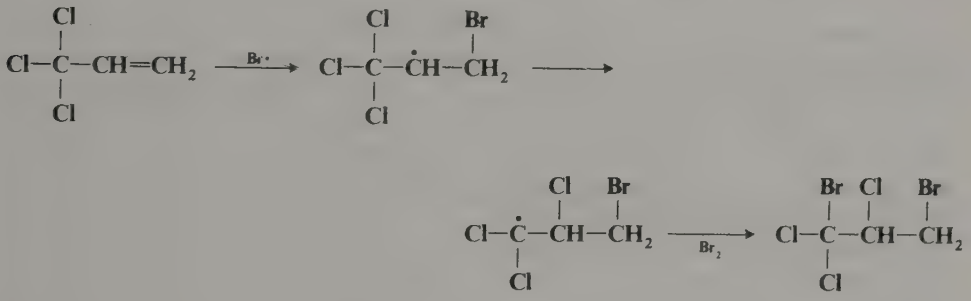
[62] For other evidence, see Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1986 (1962); Rüchardt and Hecht, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 957 (1962), *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 2460, 2471 (1965); Rüchardt and Trautwein, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 2478 (1965).

[63] For example, see Slaugh, Mullineaux, and Raley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3180 (1963); Slaugh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1522 (1965).

[64] Surzur and Teissier, *C. R. Acad. Sci., Ser. C* **264,** 1981 (1967); *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3060 (1970); Tanner and Law, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7535 (1969); Julia and Lorne, *C. R. Acad. Sci., Ser. C* **273,** 174 (1971); Lewis, Miller, and Winstein, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1478 (1972).







$$Cl_3C{-}CH{=}CH_2 \xrightarrow{Br\cdot} Cl_3C{-}\dot{C}H{-}CH_2Br \longrightarrow Cl_2\dot{C}{-}CHCl{-}CH_2Br \xrightarrow{Br_2} BrCCl_2{-}CHCl{-}CH_2Br$$

In this particular case the driving force for the rearrangement is the particular stability of dichloroalkyl free radicals. Nesmeyanov, Freidlina, and co-workers have extensively studied reactions of this sort.[67] It has been shown that the 1,2 migration of Cl readily occurs if the migration origin is tertiary and the migration terminus primary.[68] Migration of Cl and Br could take place by a transition state in which the odd electron is accommodated in a vacant *d* orbital of the halogen.

In summary then, 1,2 free-radical migrations are much less prevalent than the analogous carbocation processes, and are important only for aryl, vinyl, acetoxy, and halogen migrating groups. The direction of migration is normally toward the more stable radical, but "wrong-way" rearrangements are also known.[69]

Despite the fact that hydrogen atoms do not migrate 1,2, longer free-radical migrations of hydrogen are known.[70] The most common are 1,5 shifts, but 1,6 and longer shifts have also been found. The possibility of 1,3 hydrogen shifts has been much investigated, but it is not certain if any actually occur. If they do they are rare, presumably because the most favorable geometry for

---

[65] For evidence for this species, see Montgomery, Matt, and Webster, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 923 (1967); Montgomery and Matt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 934, 6556 (1967).

[66] Beckwith and Tindal, *Aust. J. Chem.* **24,** 2099 (1971); Beckwith and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 861 (1973); Barclay, Lusztyk, and Ingold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1793 (1984).

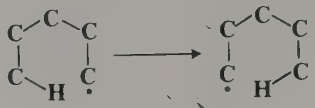
[67] For reviews, see Freidlina and Terent'ev, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **48,** 828–839 (1979); Nesmeyanov, Freidlina, Kost and Khorlina, *Tetrahedron* **16,** 94–105 (1961); Freidlina, Kost, and Khorlina, Ref. 51, pp. 6–11; Freidlina, Ref. 51, pp. 231–249.

[68] See, for example, Skell, Pavlis, Lewis, and Shea, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6735 (1973); Chen, Tang, Montgomery, and Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2201 (1974).

[69] Slaugh and Raley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1259 (1960); Bonner and Mango, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 29 (1964); Dannenberg and Dill, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1571 (1972).

[70] For a discussion, see Freidlina and Terent'ev, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 9–15 (1977).

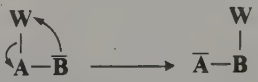
C---H---C in the transition state is linear and this geometry cannot be achieved in a 1,3 shift. 1,4 shifts are definitely known, but are still not very common. These long shifts may be regarded as internal abstractions of hydrogen (for reactions involving them, see **4-7** and **8-44**):



Transannular shifts of hydrogen atoms have also been observed.[71] A few shifts longer than 1,2 have been noted for aryl, but not for alkyl or halogen groups.

Electrophilic Rearrangements[72]

Rearrangements in which a group migrates without its electrons are much rarer than the two kinds previously considered, but the general principles are the same. A carbanion (or other negative ion) is created first, and the actual rearrangement step involves migration of a group without its electrons:



The product of the rearrangement may be stable or may react further, depending on its nature (see also pp. 962–963).

REACTIONS

The reactions in this chapter are classified into three main groups. 1,2 Shifts are considered first. Within this group, reactions are classified according to (1) the identity of the substrate atoms A and B and (2) the nature of the migrating group W. In the second group are the cyclic rearrangements. The third group consists of rearrangements that cannot be fitted into either of the first two categories.

Reactions in which the migration terminus is on an aromatic ring have been treated under aromatic substitution. These are **1-32** to **1-38, 1-42, 3-26** to **3-29,** and, partially, **1-39, 1-44,** and **1-45.** Double-bond shifts have also been treated in other chapters, though they may be considered rearrangements (p. 287, p. 520, and **2-2**). Another reaction that may be regarded as a rearrangement is the Willgerodt reaction (**9-73**).

1,2 Rearrangements

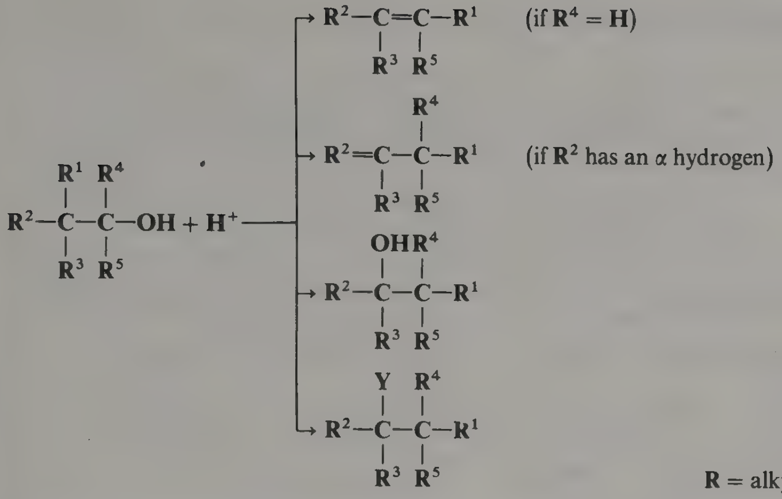
A. Carbon-to-Carbon Migrations of R, H, and Ar

8-1 Wagner–Meerwein and Related Reactions

---

[71] Heusler and Kalvoda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1001 (1963); Cope, Bly, Martin, and Petterson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3111 (1965); Fisch and Ourisson, *Chem. Commun.* 407 (1965); Traynham and Couvillon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3205 (1967).

[72] For reviews, see Hunter, Stothers, and Warnhoff, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 391–470; Grovenstein, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 313–332 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 317–336], *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **16,** 167–193 (1977); Jensen and Rickborn, "Electrophilic Substitution of Organomercurials," pp. 21–30, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1968; Cram, "Fundamentals of Carbanion Chemistry," pp. 223–243, Academic Press, New York, 1965.



(if $R^4 = H$)

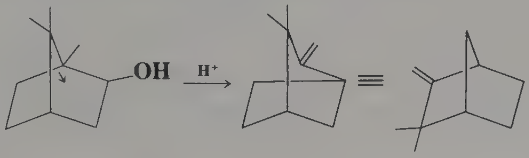
(if R^2 has an α hydrogen)

R = alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen

When alcohols are treated with acids, simple substitution (e.g., **0-68**) or elimination (**7-1**) usually accounts for most or all of the products. But in many cases, especially where two or three alkyl or aryl groups are on the β-carbon, some or all of the product is rearranged. These rearrangements are called *Wagner–Meerwein rearrangements.*[73] As pointed out previously, the carbocation that is a direct product of the rearrangement must stabilize itself, and most often it does this by the loss of a hydrogen β to it, so that the rearrangement product is usually an olefin. The proton lost may be R^4 (if this is a hydrogen) or an α-proton from R^2 (if it has one). If there is a choice of protons, Zaitsev's rule (p. 889) governs the direction, as we might expect. Sometimes a different positive group is lost instead of a proton.[74] Less often, the new carbocation stabilizes itself by combining with a nucleophile instead of losing a proton. The nucleophile may be the water which is the original leaving group, so that the product is a rearranged alcohol, or it may be some other species present, which we have called Y. Rearrangement is usually predominant in neopentyl and neophyl types of substrates, and with these types normal nucleophilic substitution is difficult (normal elimination of course impossible). Under SN2 conditions, substitution is extremely slow;[75] under SN1 conditions, carbocations are formed that rapidly rearrange. However, free-radical substitution, unaccompanied by rearrangement, can be carried out on neopentyl systems, though, as we have seen (p. 955), neophyl systems undergo rearrangement as well as substitution.

Wagner–Meerwein rearrangements were first discovered in the bicyclic terpenes, and most of the early development of this reaction was with these compounds.[76] An example is

Example *a*



isoborneol camphene

---

[73] For a review, see Pocker, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 6–15. See also Ref. 2.

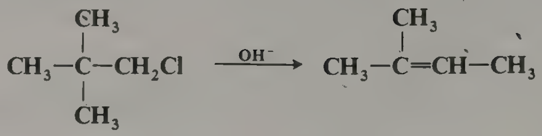
[74] For example, see Grob, Hoegerle, and Ohta, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **45,** 1823 (1962).

[75] See, however, Chapter 10, Ref. 226.

[76] For reviews of rearrangements in bicyclic systems, see Hogeveen and van Kruchten, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **80,** 89–124 (1979); Berson, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, pp. 111–231. For reviews of the Wagner–Meerwein rearrangement applied to natural products, see Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, as follows: King and Mayo, pp. 813–840 (terpenes); Warnhoff, pp. 842–879 (alkaloids); Wendler, pp. 1020–1028 (steroids). For reviews concerning caranes and pinanes see, respectively, Arbuzov and Isaeva, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 673–683 (1976); Banthorpe and Whittaker, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **20,** 373–387 (1966).

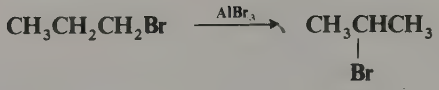
Examples in simpler systems are:

Example *b*



$$CH_3-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle CH_3}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{|}}{C}}-CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{OH^-} CH_3-\overset{\overset{\displaystyle CH_3}{|}}{C}=CH-CH_3$$

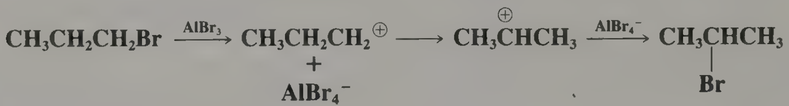
Example *c*



$$CH_3CH_2CH_2Br \xrightarrow{AlBr_3} CH_3\underset{\underset{\displaystyle Br}{|}}{C}HCH_3$$

These examples illustrate the following points:

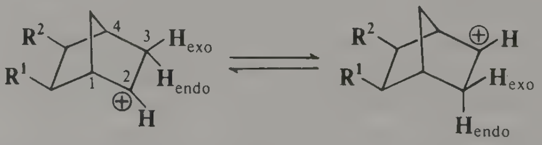
1. Hydride ion can migrate. In example *c*, it was hydride that shifted, not bromide:



$$CH_3CH_2CH_2Br \xrightarrow{AlBr_3} \underset{\displaystyle AlBr_4^-}{\underset{+}{CH_3CH_2CH_2^{\oplus}}} \longrightarrow CH_3\overset{\oplus}{C}HCH_3 \xrightarrow{AlBr_4^-} CH_3\underset{\underset{\displaystyle Br}{|}}{C}HCH_3$$

2. The leaving group does not have to be H_2O, but can be any departing species whose loss creates a carbocation, including N_2 from aliphatic diazonium ions[77] (see the section on leaving groups in nucleophilic substitution, p. 310). Also, rearrangement may follow when the carbocation is created by addition of a proton or other positive species to a double bond. Even alkanes give rearrangements when heated with Lewis acids, provided some species is initially present to form a carbocation from the alkane.
3. Example *c* illustrates that the last step may be substitution instead of elimination.
4. Example *b* illustrates that the new double bond is formed in accord with Zaitsev's rule.

2-Norbornyl cations, besides displaying the 1,2 shifts of a CH_2 group previously illustrated for the isoborneol → camphene conversion, are also prone to rapid hydride shifts from the 3 to the 2 position (known as 3,2 shifts). These 3,2 shifts usually take place from the exo side;[78] that is, the



3-exo hydrogen migrates to the 2-exo position.[79] This stereoselectivity is analogous to the behavior we have previously seen for norbornyl systems, namely, that nucleophiles attack norbornyl cations from the exo side (p. 281) and that addition to norbornenes is also usually from the exo direction (p. 676).

The direction of rearrangement is usually towards the most stable carbocation (or free radical), which is tertiary > secondary > primary, but rearrangements in the other direction have also been found,[80] and often the product is a mixture corresponding to an equilibrium mixture of the possible carbocations.

---

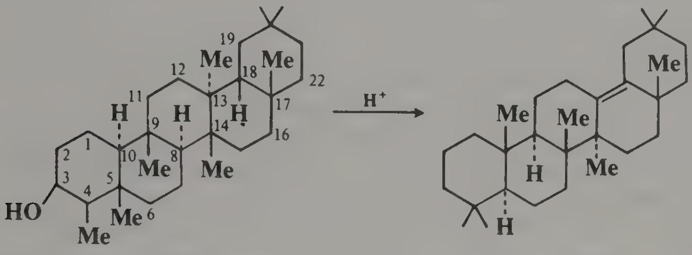
[77] For reviews of rearrangements arising from diazotization of aliphatic amines, see, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," Interscience, New York, 1968, the articles by White and Woodcock, pp. 407–497 (pp. 473–483) and by Banthorpe, pp. 585–667 (pp. 586–612).

[78] For example, see Kleinfelter and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2329 (1961); Collins, Cheema, Werth, and Benjamin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 4913 (1964); Berson, Hammons, McRowe, Bergman, Remanick, and Houston, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2590 (1967).

[79] For examples of 3,2 endo shifts, see Bushell and Wilder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5721 (1967); Wilder and Hsieh, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2552 (1971).

The term "Wagner–Meerwein rearrangement" is not precise. Some use it to refer to all the rearrangements in this section and in **8-2.** Others use it only when an alcohol is converted to a rearranged olefin. Terpene chemists call the migration of a methyl group the *Nametkin rearrangement*. The term *retropinacol rearrangement* is often applied to some or all of these. Fortunately, this disparity in nomenclature does not seem to cause much confusion.

Sometimes several of these rearrangements occur in one molecule, either simultaneously or in rapid succession. A spectacular example is found in the triterpene series. Friedelin is a triterpenoid ketone found in cork. Reduction gives 3β-friedelanol (**38**). When this compound is treated with acid, 13(18)-oleanene (**39**) is formed.[81] In this case *seven* 1,2 shifts take place. On removal of H_2O



38 **39**

from position 3 to leave a positive charge, the following shifts occur: hydride from 4 to 3; methyl from 5 to 4; hydride from 10 to 5; methyl from 9 to 10; hydride from 8 to 9; methyl from 14 to 8; and methyl from 13 to 14. This leaves a positive charge at position 13, which is stabilized by loss of the proton at the 18 position to give the 13(18)-ene. Until the elimination, each time a positive charge is formed, migration of a hydride or a methyl moves in to fill it, leaving another positive charge, which must be filled in its turn. All these shifts are stereospecific, the group always migrating on the side of the ring system on which it is located; that is, a group above the "plane" of the ring system (indicated by a solid line in **39**) moves above the plane, and a group below the plane (dashed line) moves below it. It is probable that the seven shifts are not all concerted, though some of them may be, for intermediate products can be isolated.[82] As an illustration of point 2 (p. 960), it may be mentioned that friedelene, derived from dehydration of **38,** also gives **39** on treatment with acid.[83]

It was mentioned above that even alkanes undergo Wagner–Meerwein rearrangements if treated with Lewis acids and a small amount of initiator. An interesting application of this reaction is the conversion of tricyclic molecules to adamantane and its derivatives.[84] It has been found that *all* tricyclic alkanes containing 10 carbons are converted to adamantane by treatment with a Lewis acids such as $AlCl_3$. If the substrate contains more than 10 carbons, alkyl-substituted adamantanes are produced. Some examples are

---

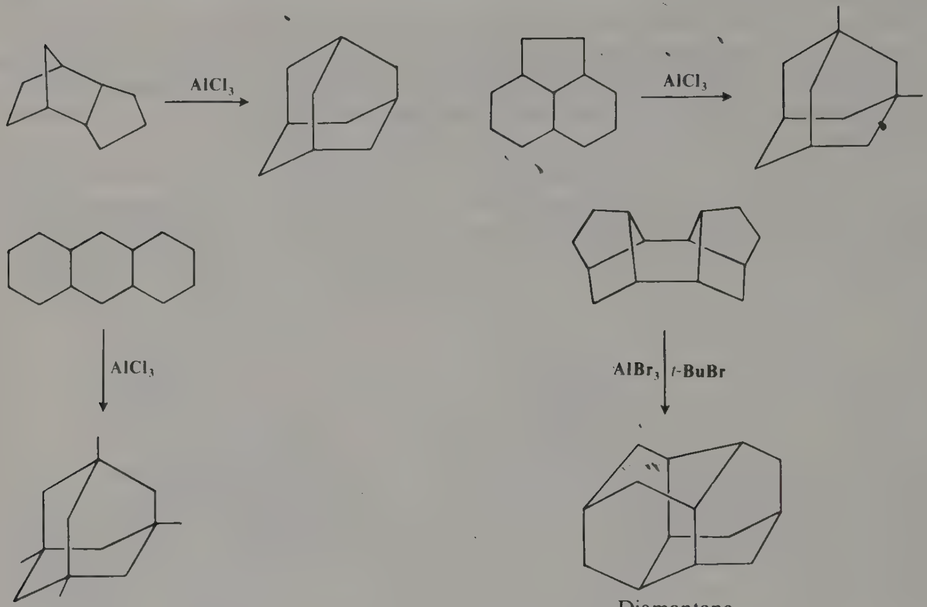
[80] See, for example, Cooper, Jenner, Perry, Russell-King, Storesund, and Whiting, Ref. 21.

[81] Corey and Ursprung, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 5041 (1956).

[82] For a discussion, see Whitlock and Olson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5383 (1970).

[83] Dutler, Jeger, and Ruzicka, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **38,** 1268 (1955); Brownlie, Spring, Stevenson, and Strachan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2419 (1956); Coates, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4143 (1967).

[84] For reviews, see McKervey, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 971–992 (1980), *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **3,** 479–512 (1974); Greenberg and Liebman, "Strained Organic Molecules," pp. 178–202, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Bingham and Schleyer, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **18,** 1–102 (1971), pp. 3–23; Fort and Schleyer, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 277–300 (1964); pp. 280–283.



Diamantane

If 14 or more carbons are present, the product may be diamantane or a substituted diamantane.[85] These reactions are successful because of the high thermodynamic stability of adamantane, diamantane, and similar diamond-like molecules. The most stable of a set of C_nH_m isomers (called the *stabilomer*) will be the end product if the reaction reaches equilibrium.[86] Best yields are obtained by the use of ''sludge'' catalysts[87] (i.e., a mixture of AlX_3 and *t*-butyl bromide or *sec*-butyl bromide) or by passing the substrate in the gas phase through a tube containing a chlorinated platinum–alumina catalyst.[88] Though it is certain that these adamantane-forming reactions take place by nucleophilic 1,2 shifts, the exact pathways are not easy to unravel because of their complexity.[89] Treatment of adamantane-2-^{14}C with $AlCl_3$ results in total carbon scrambling on a statistical basis.[90]

As already indicated, the mechanism of the Wagner–Meerwein rearrangement is usually nucleophilic. Free-radical rearrangements are also known (see the mechanism section of this chapter), though virtually only with aryl migration. However, carbanion mechanisms (electrophilic) have also been found.[72] Thus Ph_3CCH_2Cl treated with sodium gave Ph_2CHCH_2Ph along with unrearranged products.[91] The intermediate is $Ph_3C\overline{C}H_2^{\ominus}$, and the phenyl moves without its electron pair. There is evidence that the reaction involves a tight ion pair.[92] Only aryl and not alkyl groups migrate by the electrophilic mechanism (p. 942) and a transition state analogous to **37** is likely.[93]

---

[85] See Gund, Osawa, Williams, and Schleyer, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2979 (1974).

[86] For a method for the prediction of stabilomers, see Godleski, Schleyer, Ōsawa, and Wipke, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **13,** 63–117 (1981).

[87] Schneider, Warren, and Janoski, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 1617 (1966); Williams, Schleyer, Gleicher, and Rodewald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3862 (1966); Robinson and Tarratt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5 (1968).

[88] Johnston, McKervey, and Rooney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2798 (1971).

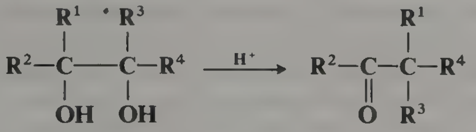
[89] See, for example, Engler, Farcasiu, Sevin, Cense, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 5769 (1973); Ōsawa, Aigami, Takaishi, Inamoto, Fujikura, Majerski, Schleyer, Engler, and Farcasiu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 5361 (1977); Klester and Ganter, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 1200 (1983).

[90] Majerski, Liggero, Schleyer, and Wolf, *Chem. Commun.* 1596 (1970).

[91] Grovenstein, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 4985 (1957); Zimmerman and Smentowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5455 (1957); Grovenstein and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 412 (1961); Zimmerman and Zweig, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1196 (1961). See also Crimmins, Murphy, and Hauser, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 4273 (1966); Grovenstein and Cheng, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4971 (1972).

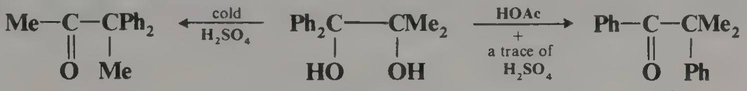
OS **V,** 16, 194; **53,** 30; **59,** 85.

8-2 The Pinacol Rearrangement



R = alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen

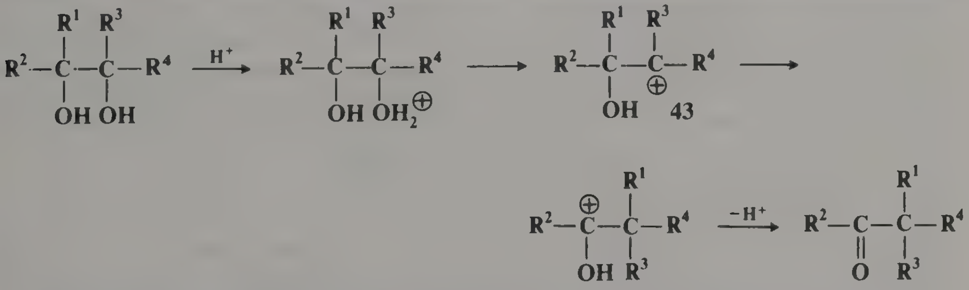
When *vic*-diols (glycols) are treated with acids, they can be rearranged to give aldehydes or ketones, though elimination without rearrangement can also be accomplished. This reaction is called the *pinacol rearrangement;* the reaction gets its name from the typical compound pinacol $Me_2COHCOHMe_2$, which is rearranged to pinacolone Me_3CCOCH_3.[94] The reaction has been accomplished many times, with alkyl, aryl, hydrogen, and even ethoxycarbonyl (COOEt)[95] as migrating groups. In most cases each carbon has at least one alkyl or aryl group, and the reaction is most often carried out with tri- and tetrasubstituted glycols. As mentioned earlier, glycols in which the four R groups are not identical can give rise to more than one product, depending on which group migrates (see p. 950 for a discussion of migratory aptitudes). Mixtures are often produced, and which group preferentially migrates may depend on the reaction conditions as well as on the nature of the substrate. Thus the action of cold, concentrated sulfuric acid on **40** produces mainly the ketone **41** (methyl migration),



41 **40** **42**

while treatment of **40** with acetic acid containing a trace of sulfuric acid gives mostly **42** (phenyl migration).[96] If at least one R group is hydrogen, aldehydes can be produced as well as ketones. Generally, aldehyde formation is favored by the use of mild conditions (lower temperatures, weaker acids), because under more drastic conditions the aldehydes may be converted to ketones (**8-4**).

The mechanism involves a simple 1,2 shift. The ion **43** (where all four R groups are Me) has been trapped by the addition of tetrahydrothiophene.[97] It may seem odd that a migration takes place



---

[92] Grovenstein and Williamson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 646 (1975).

[93] Grovenstein and Wentworth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2348 (1967); Bertrand, Grovenstein, Lu, and VanDerveer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7835 (1976).

[94] For reviews, see Bartók and Molnár, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pp. 722–732, Wiley, New York, 1980; Collins and Eastham, Ref. 1, pp. 762–771; Pocker, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, pp. 15–25; Collins, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **14,** 357–377 (1960).

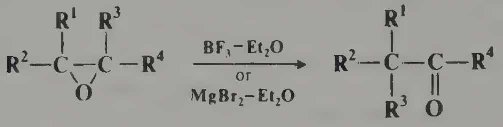
[95] Kagan, Agdeppa, Mayers, Singh, Walters, and Wintermute, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2355 (1976). COOH has been found to migrate in a Wagner–Meerwein reaction: Berner, Cox, and Dahn, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2631 (1982).

[96] Ramart-Lucas and Salmon-Legagneur, *C. R. Acad. Sci.* **188,** 1301 (1928).

[97] Bosshard, Baumann, and Schetty, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 1271 (1970).

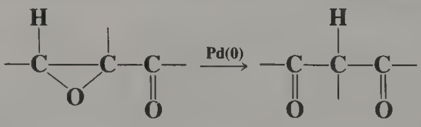
when the positive charge is already at a tertiary position, but carbocations stabilized by an oxygen atom are even more stable than tertiary alkyl cations (p. 146). There is also the driving force supplied by the fact that the new carbocation can immediately stabilize itself by losing a proton.

It is obvious that other compounds in which a positive charge can be placed on a carbon α to one bearing an OH group can also give this rearrangement. This is true for β-amino alcohols, which rearrange on treatment with nitrous acid (this is called the *semipinacol* rearrangement), iodohydrins, for which the reagent is mercuric oxide or silver nitrate, and allylic alcohols, which can rearrange on treatment with a strong acid that protonates the double bond. A similar rearrangement is given by epoxides, when treated with acidic[98] reagents such as BF_3-etherate or $MgBr_2$-etherate, or sometimes by heat alone.[99] It has been shown that epoxides are intermediates in the pinacol rearrangements of certain glycols.[100] Among the evidence[101] for the mechanism given is that $Me_2COHCOHMe_2$, $Me_2COHCNH_2Me_2$, and $Me_2COHCClMe_2$ gave the reaction at different rates (as expected) but yielded the *same mixture* of two products—pinacol and pinacolone—indicating a common intermediate.[102]



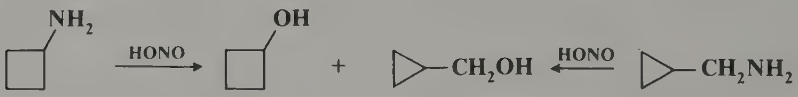
R = alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen

Epoxides can also be rearranged to aldehydes or ketones on treatment with certain transition-metal catalysts.[103] A good way to prepare β-diketones consists of heating α,β-epoxy ketones at 80–140°C in toluene with small amounts of $(Ph_3P)_4Pd$ and 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane.[104]

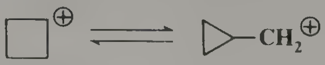


OS **I,** 462; **II,** 73, 408; **III,** 312; **IV,** 375, 957; **V,** 326, 647; **56,** 1; **57,** 36; **60,** 25.

8-3 Expansion and Contraction of Rings



When a positive charge is formed on an alicyclic carbon, migration of an alkyl group can take place to give ring contraction, producing a ring that is one carbon smaller than the original.



Note that this change involves conversion of a secondary to a primary carbocation. In a similar manner, when a positive charge is placed on a carbon α to an alicyclic ring, ring expansion can take place.[105] The new carbocation, and the old one, may then give products by combination with a nucleophile (e.g., the alcohols shown above), or by elimination, so that this reaction is really a special case of **8-1.** Often, both rearranged and unrearranged products are formed, so that, for example, cyclobutylamine and cyclopropylmethylamine give similar mixtures of the two alcohols shown above on treatment with nitrous acid (a small amount of 3-buten-1-ol is also produced). When the carbocation is formed by diazotization of an amine, the reaction is called the *Demyanov rearrangement,*[106] but of course similar products are formed when the carbocation is generated in other ways. The expansion reaction has been performed on rings of C_3 to C_8,[107] but yields are best with the smaller rings, where relief of small-angle strain provides a driving force for the reaction. The contraction reaction has been applied to four-membered rings and to rings of C_6 to C_8, but contraction of a cyclopentyl cation to a cyclobutylmethyl system is generally not feasible because of the additional strain involved. Strain is apparently much less of a factor in the cyclobutyl–cyclopropylmethyl interconversion (for a discussion of this interconversion, see p. 283).

---

[98] Epoxides can also be rearranged with basic catalysts, though the products are usually different. For a review, see Yandovskii and Ershov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **41,** 403–410 (1972).

[99] For a review, see Parker and Isaacs, *Chem. Rev.* **59,** 737–799 (1959), pp. 772–778.

[100] See, for example, Matsumoto, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 6851 (1968); Pocker and Ronald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3385 (1970), *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3362 (1970); Tamura and Moriyoshi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 2942 (1974).

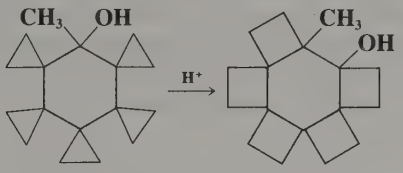
[101] See also Herlihy, *Aust. J. Chem.* **34,** 107 (1981).

[102] Pocker, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 332 (1959).

[103] For example, see Alper, Des Roches, Durst, and Legault, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3611 (1976); Milstein, Buchman, and Blum, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2299 (1977).

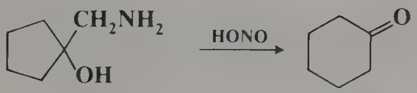
[104] Suzuki, Watanabe, and Noyori, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2095 (1980).

An interesting example of a cascade of ring expansions, similar to the friedelin example described in **8-1,** is the conversion of 16-methylpentaspiro[2.0.2.0.2.0.2.0.2.1]hexadecan-16-ol (**44**) to 2-methylhexacyclo[12.2.0.$0^{2,5}$.$0^{5,8}$.$0^{8,11}$.$0^{11,14}$]hexadecan-1-ol (**45**) on treatment with *p*-toluenesulfonic acid in acetone–water.[108] The student may wish to write out the mechanism as an exercise.

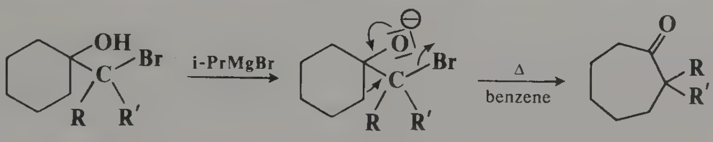


44 **45**

Ring expansions of certain hydroxyamines, e.g.,



are analogous to the semipinacol rearrangement (**8-2**). This reaction is called the *Tiffeneau–Demyanov ring expansion.* These have been performed on rings of C_4 to C_8 and the yields are better than for the simple Demyanov ring expansion. A similar reaction has been used to expand rings of from five to eight members.[109] In this case, a cyclic bromohydrin of the form **46** is treated with



46 **47**

---

[105] For a monograph on ring expansions, see Gutsche and Redmore, "Carbocyclic Ring Expansion Reactions," Academic Press, New York, 1968. For a review of ring contractions, see Redmore and Gutsche, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **3,** 1–138 (1971). For a review of ring expansions in spirane systems, see Dolbier, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 1–66 (1971). For a review of expansions and contractions of three- and four-membered rings, see Conia and Robson, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 473–485 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 505–516].

[106] For a review, see Smith and Baer, *Org. React.* **11,** 157–188 (1960).

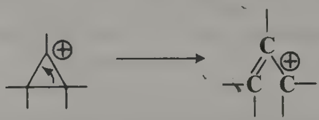
[107] For a review concerning three- and four-membered rings, see Breslow, in Mayo-MR, Ref. vol. 1, pp. 233–294.

[108] Fitjer, Wehle, Noltemeyer, Egert, and Sheldrick, *Chem. Ber.* **117,** 203 (1984).

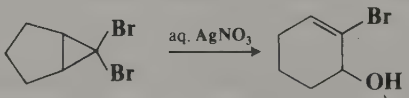
[109] Sisti, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5327 (1967), *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 453 (1968). See also Sisti and Vitale, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4090 (1972).

a Grignard reagent which, acting as a base, removes the OH proton to give the alkoxide **47.** Refluxing of **47** brings about the ring enlargement. The reaction has been accomplished for **46,** in which at least one R group is phenyl or methyl,[110] but fails when both R groups are hydrogen.[111]

A positive charge generated on a three-membered ring gives "contraction" to an allylic cation.[112]

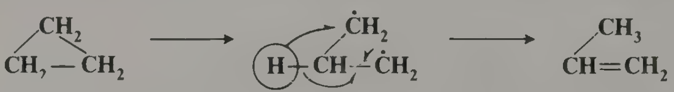


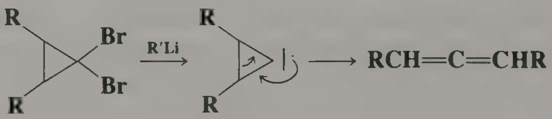
We have previously seen (p. 304) that this is the reason nucleophilic substitutions are not feasible at a cyclopropyl substrate. The reaction is often used to convert cyclopropyl halides and tosylates to allylic products, especially for the purpose of ring expansion, an example being[113]



The stereochemistry of these cyclopropyl cleavages is governed by the principle of orbital symmetry conservation (for a discussion, see p. 1011).

Three-membered rings can also be cleaved to unsaturated products in at least two other ways. (1) On pyrolysis, cyclopropanes may undergo "contraction" to propenes.[114] In the simplest case, cyclopropane gives propene when heated to 400 to 500°C. The mechanism is generally regarded[115] as involving a diradical intermediate[116] (recall that free-radical 1,2 migration is possible for diradicals, p. 956). (2) The generation of a carbene or carbenoid carbon in a three-membered ring can lead to allenes, and allenes are often prepared in this way.[117] One way to generate such a species is treatment of a 1,1-dihalocyclopropane with an alkyllithium compound (**2-38**).[118] In





---

[110] Sisti, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2670 (1970), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3305 (1970); Sisti and Meyers, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4431 (1973); Sisti and Rusch, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1182 (1974).

[111] Sisti, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3953 (1968).

[112] For reviews, see Marvell, Ref. 365, pp. 23–53; Sorensen and Rauk, in Marchand and Lehr, "Pericyclic Reactions," vol. 2, pp. 1–78, Academic Press, New York, 1977.

[113] Skell and Sandler, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 2024 (1958).

[114] For reviews, see Berson, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 324–352, *Ann. Rev. Phys. Chem.* **28,** 111–132 (1977); Bergman, in Kochi, Ref. 51, vol. 1, pp. 191–237; Frey, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 147–193 (1966), pp. 148–170; Breslow, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, pp. 234–245.

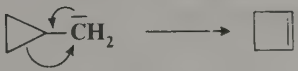
[115] For evidence that diradical intermediates may not be involved, at least in some cases, see Fields, Haszeldine, and Peter, *Chem. Commun.* 1081 (1967); Parry and Robinson, *Chem. Commun.* 1083 (1967); Holbrook and Parry, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1019 (1970); Clifford and Holbrook, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1972 (1972); Baldwin and Grayston, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1629, 1630 (1974).

[116] We have seen before that such diradicals can close up to give cyclopropanes (**7-49**). Therefore, pyrolysis of cyclopropanes can produce not only propenes but also isomerized (cis → trans or optically active → inactive) cyclopropanes. See, for example, Berson and Balquist, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7343 (1968); Bergman and Carter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7411 (1969).

[117] For a review, See Kirmse, "Carbene Chemistry," 2d ed., pp. 462–467, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

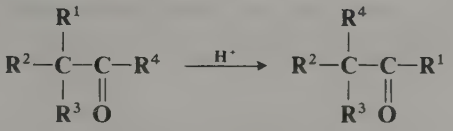
[118] See Baird and Baxter, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2317 (1979), and references cited therein.

contrast, the generation of a carbene or carbenoid at a cyclopropylmethyl carbon gives ring expansion.[119]



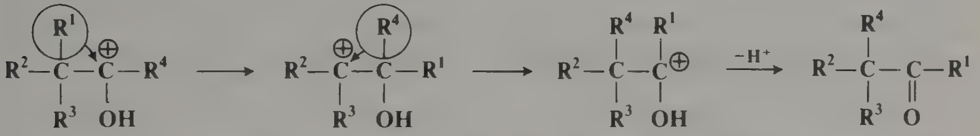
OS **III,** 276; **IV,** 221, 957; **V,** 306, 320; **51,** 60; **56,** 32; **60,** 6, 20, 25.

8-4 Acid-Catalyzed Rearrangements of Aldehydes and Ketones

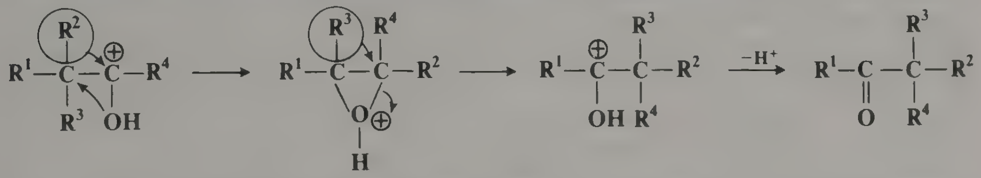


$$R^2-\overset{\overset{\Large R^1}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\Large R^3}{|}}{C}}-\underset{\underset{\Large O}{\|}}{C}-R^4 \xrightarrow{H^+} R^2-\overset{\overset{\Large R^4}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\Large R^3}{|}}{C}}-\underset{\underset{\Large O}{\|}}{C}-R^1$$

Rearrangements of this type, where a group α to a carbonyl "changes places" with a group attached to the carbonyl carbon, occur when migratory aptitudes are favorable.[120] R^2, R^3, and R^4 may be alkyl or hydrogen. Certain aldehydes have been converted to ketones, and ketones to other ketones (though more drastic conditions are required for the latter), but no rearrangement of a ketone to an aldehyde (R^1 = H) has so far been reported. There are two mechanisms,[121] each beginning with protonation of the oxygen and each involving two migrations. In one mechanism, the migrations are in opposite directions:[122]



In the other pathway the migrations are in the same direction. The actual mechanism of this pathway is not certain, but an epoxide (protonated) intermediate[123] is one possibility:[124]



If the reaction is carried out with ketone labeled in the C=O group with ^{14}C, then the first pathway predicts that the product will contain all the ^{14}C in the C=O carbon, while in the second pathway the label will be in the α-carbon (demonstrating migration of oxygen). The results of such experiments[125] have shown that in some cases only the C═O carbon was labeled, in other cases only the α-carbon, while in still others both carbons bore the label, indicating that in these cases both pathways were in operation. With α-hydroxy aldehydes and ketones, the process may stop after only one migration (this is called the *α-ketol rearrangement*).

---

[119] For a review, see Gutsche and Redmore, Ref. 105, pp. 111–117.

[120] For reviews, see Fry, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **4,** 113–196 (1971); Collins and Eastham, in Patai, Ref. 1, pp. 771–790.

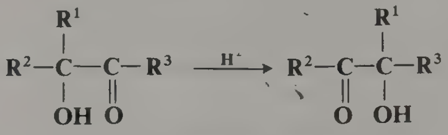
[121] Favorskii and Chilingaren, *C. R. Acad. Sci.* **182,** 221 (1926).

[122] Raaen and Collins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 1409 (1958); Kendrick, Benjamin, and Collins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 4057 (1958); Rothrock and Fry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 4349 (1958); Collins and Bowman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3614 (1959).

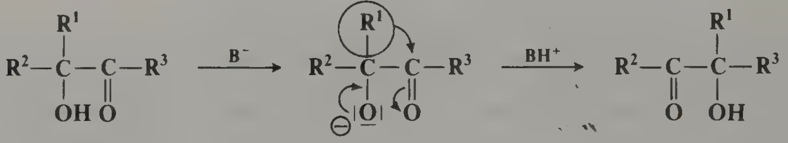
[123] Zook, Smith, and Greene, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 4436 (1957).

[124] Some such pathway is necessary to account for the migration of oxygen that is found. It may involve a protonated epoxide, a 1,2-diol, or simply a 1,2 shift of an OH group.

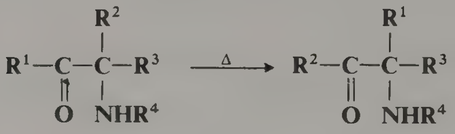
[125] See, for example, Barton and Porter, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2483 (1956); Fry, Carrick, and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 4743 (1958); Oka and Fry, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2801 (1970); Zalesskaya and Remizova, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **35,** 29 (1965); Oka, Hinton, Fry, and Whaley, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3545 (1979); Fry and Oka, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6353 (1979).



The α-ketol rearrangement can also be brought about by base catalysis, but only if the alcohol is tertiary, since if R^1 or R^2 = hydrogen, enolization of the substrate is more favored than rearrangement.

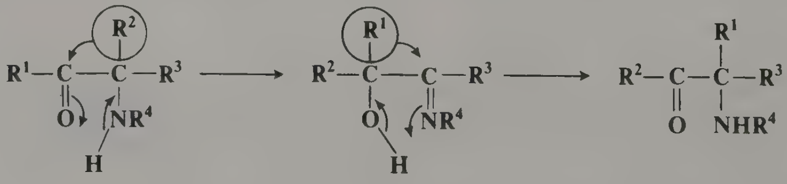


8-5 Thermal Rearrangement of Amino Ketones



R = alkyl, aryl

When heated, ketones containing an α secondary amino group may undergo a rearrangement,[126] similar in appearance to **8-4**, in which two R groups "change places."[127] R may be alkyl or aryl. The mechanism is different from that of **8-4**, though it also involves two migrations in opposite directions. In this case the 1,2 migrations of R are accompanied by 1,4 migration of hydrogen between O and N:



48

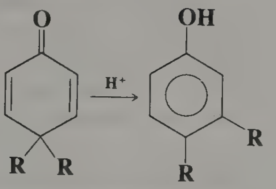
The mechanism predicts that when heated, α-hydroxy imines (**48**) in which the OH group is tertiary should rearrange to α-amino ketones; this has been found to be the case.

---

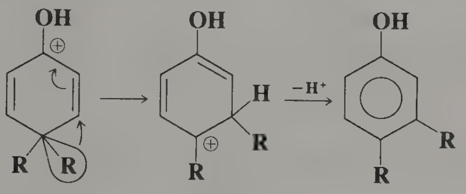
[126] For a review of amino ketone rearrangements, see Stevens, Pillai, Munk, and Taylor, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 271–296 (1971).

[127] Stevens, Elliott, Winch, and Klundt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2272 (1962); Stevens, Elliott, and Winch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1464 (1963).

8-6 The Dienone–Phenol Rearrangement

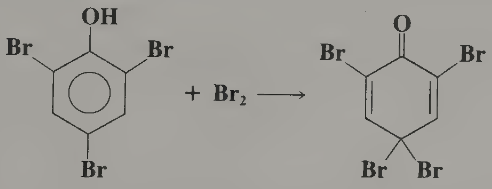


Compounds in which a cyclohexadienone has two alkyl groups in the 4 position undergo, on acid treatment, 1,2 migration of one of these groups:

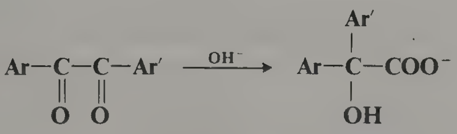


49 **50**

The driving force in the overall reaction (the *dienone–phenol rearrangement*) is of course creation of an aromatic system.[128] It may be noted that ions **49** and **50** are arenium ions (p. 448), the same as those generated by attack of an electrophile on a phenol.[129] Sometimes, in the reaction of a phenol with an electrophile, a kind of reverse rearrangement (called the *phenol–dienone rearrangement*) takes place, though without an actual migration.[130] An example is



8-7 The Benzil–Benzilic Acid Rearrangement



$$\text{Ar}-\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\underset{\underset{\text{O}}{\|}}{\text{C}}-\text{Ar}' \xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-} \text{Ar}-\overset{\overset{\text{Ar}'}{|}}{\underset{\underset{\text{OH}}{|}}{\text{C}}}-\text{COO}^-$$

When treated with base, α-diketones rearrange to give the salts of α-hydroxy acids, a reaction known as the *benzil–benzilic acid rearrangement* (benzil is PhCOCOPh; benzilic acid is

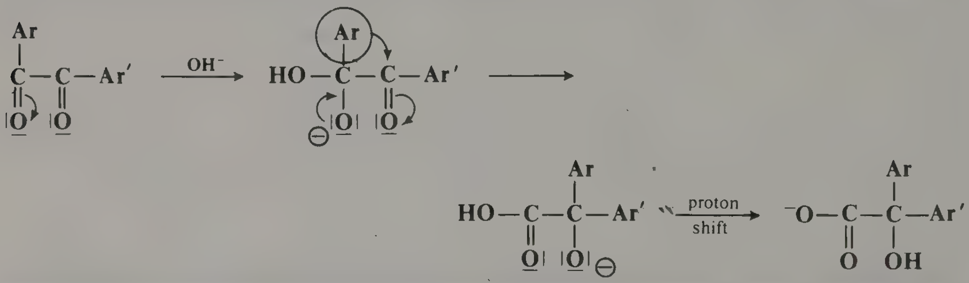
---

[128] For reviews, see Perkins and Ward, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **4,** 55–112 (1971), pp. 90–103; Miller, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **1,** 247–313 (1968); Shine, "Aromatic Rearrangements," pp. 55–68, American Elsevier, New York, 1967; Waring, *Adv. Alicyclic Chem.* **1,** 129–256 (1966), pp. 207–223. For a review of other rearrangements of cyclohexadienones, see Miller, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 245–256 (1975).

[129] For evidence that these ions are indeed intermediates in this rearrangement, see Vitullo, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 224 (1969), *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3976 (1970); Vitullo and Grossman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3844 (1972).

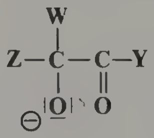
[130] For a review, see Ershov, Volod'kin, and Bogdanov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **32,** 75–93 (1963).

$Ph_2COHCOOH$).[131] Though the reaction is usually illustrated with aryl groups, it can also be applied to aliphatic diketones and to α-keto aldehydes. The use of alkoxide ion instead of OH^- gives the corresponding ester directly,[132] though alkoxide ions that are readily oxidized (such as OEt^- or $OCHMe_2^-$) are not useful here, since they reduce the benzil to a benzoin. Aroxide ions (OAr^-) are not strong enough bases for the reaction. The mechanism is similar to the rearrangements in **8-1** to **8-4,** but there is a difference: The migrating group does not move to a carbon with an open sextet. The carbon has an octet but can still accept a group with its pair of electrons by releasing a π pair of electrons from the C=O bond to the oxygen. The first step is attack of the base at the carbonyl group, the same as the first step of the tetrahedral mechanism of nucleophilic substitution (p. 290) and of many additions to the C=O bond (Chapter 16):



The mechanism has been intensively studied,[131] and there is much evidence for it.[133] The reaction is irreversible. There is evidence that the oxygen atom of the C=O group that is attacked by OH^- is first coordinated to the Na^+ or K^+ of NaOH or KOH.[134]

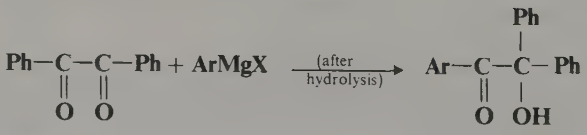
There are other related reactions in which an intermediate of the form



$$\begin{array}{c}W\\|\\Z-C-C-Y\\\ \ \ |\ \ \ \ \ \|\\\ \ {}^{\ominus}O\ \ \ O\end{array}$$

51

is formed and then rearrangement follows. An example is



$$\underset{\ \ \ O\ \ O}{\overset{}{Ph-\overset{}{C}-C-Ph}} + ArMgX \xrightarrow[\text{hydrolysis)}]{\text{(after}} Ar-\underset{O}{\overset{}{C}}-\underset{OH}{\overset{Ph}{C}}-Ph$$

In the intermediate **51,** for the benzilic acid rearrangement, Z = OH, W and Y = R, Ar, or H; for the benzilic ester case, Z = OR, W and Y = R or Ar; for the Grignard example shown, Z, W, and Y all = Ar. In other cases, W and Z may be ArNH, ArCO, RCO, etc. and Y may be OH, RCO, etc. The base-catalyzed α-ketol rearrangement (**8-4**) also belongs to this group of reactions, with W and Z = R or Ar; Y = R, Ar, or H.

OS **I,** 89.

---

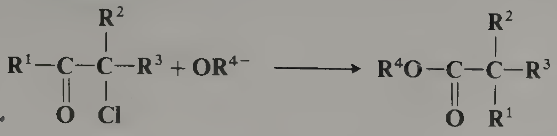
[131] For a review, see Selman and Eastham, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **14,** 221–235 (1960).

[132] Doering and Urban, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 5938 (1956).

[133] However, some evidence for an SET pathway has been reported: Screttas, Micha-Strettas, and Cazianis, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 3287 (1983).

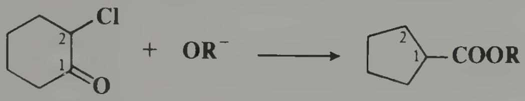
[134] Poonia, Porwal, and Sen, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **90,** 247 (1981).

8-8 The Favorskii Rearrangement



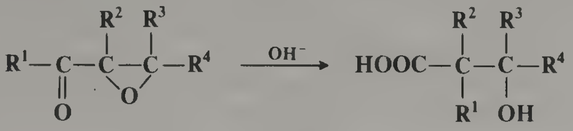
$$R^1-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{\overset{R^2}{|}}{\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{C}}-R^3 + OR^{4-} \longrightarrow R^4O-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\overset{\overset{R^2}{|}}{\underset{\underset{R^1}{|}}{C}}-R^3$$

The reaction of α-halo ketones (chloro, bromo, or iodo) with alkoxide ions[135] to give rearranged esters is called the *Favorskii rearrangement*.[136] The use of hydroxide ions or amines as bases leads to the free acid (salt) or amide, respectively, instead of the ester. Cyclic α-halo ketones give ring contraction:



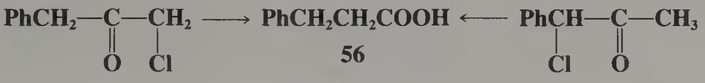
52 **53**

The reaction has also been carried out on α-hydroxy ketones[137] and on α,β-epoxy ketones:[138]



The fact that an epoxide gives a reaction analogous to a halide indicates that the oxygen and halogen are leaving groups in a nucleophilic substitution step.

Through the years, the mechanism[139] of the Favorskii rearrangement has been the subject of much investigation; at least five different mechanisms have been proposed. However, the finding[140] that **54** and **55** *both* give **56** (this behavior is typical) shows that any mechanism where the halogen leaves and R^1 takes its place is invalid, since in such a case **54** would be expected to give **56** (with $PhCH_2$ migrating), but **55** should give PhCHMeCOOH (with CH_3 migrating). That is, in the case of **55**, it was PhCH that migrated and not methyl. Another important result was determined by radioactive labeling. **52**, in which C-1 and C-2 were equally labeled with ^{14}C, was converted to **53**. The product was found to contain 50% of the label on the carbonyl carbon, 25% on C-1, and 25% on C-2.[141] Now the carbonyl carbon, which originally carried half of the radioactivity, still



$$PhCH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{CH_2} \longrightarrow \underset{\textbf{56}}{PhCH_2CH_2COOH} \longleftarrow Ph\underset{\underset{Cl}{|}}{CH}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_3$$

54 **55**

---

[135] The reaction has also been reported to take place with $BF_3 \cdot MeOH$ and Ag^+: Giordano, Castaldi, Casagrande, and Abis, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1385 (1982).

[136] For reviews, see Hunter, Stothers, and Warnhoff, in Mayo-RGES, vol. 1, pp. 437–461; Chenier, *J. Chem. Educ.* **55,** 286–291 (1978); Rappe, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Halogen Bond," pt. 2, pp. 1084–1101, Wiley, New York, 1973; Redmore and Gutsche, Ref. 105, pp. 46–69; Akhrem, Ustynyuk, and Titov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **39,** 732–746 (1970); Kende, *Org. React.* **11,** 261–316 (1960).

[137] Craig, Dinner, and Mulligan, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 3539 (1972).

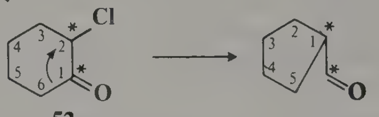
[138] See, for example, House and Gilmore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 3972 (1961); Mouk, Patel, and Reusch, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 13 (1975).

[139] For a review of the mechanism, see Baretta and Waegell, *React. Intermed. (Plenum)* **2,** 527–585 (1982).

[140] McPhee and Klingsberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **66,** 1132 (1944); Bordwell, Scamehorn, and Springer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2087 (1969).

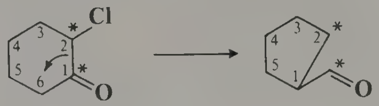
[141] Loftfield, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 4707 (1951).

had this much, so that the rearrangement did not directly affect *it*. However, if the C-6 carbon had migrated to C-2, then the other half of the radioactivity would be only on C-1 of the product:



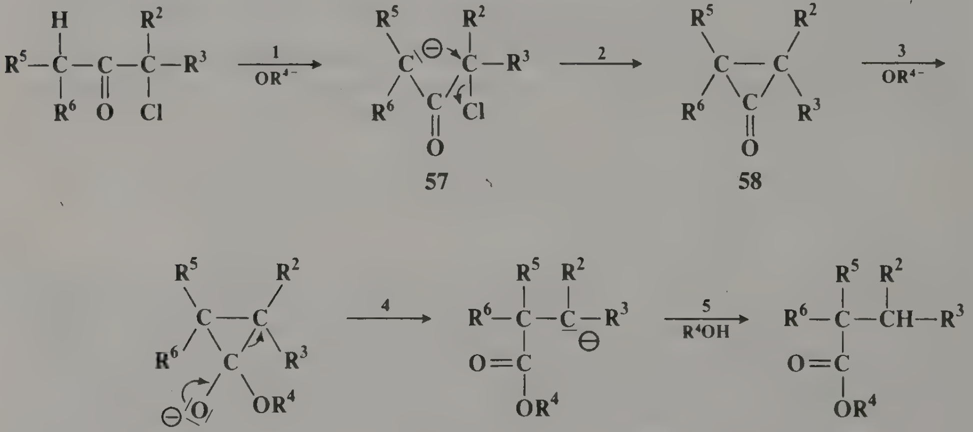
52

On the other hand, if the migration had gone the other way—if the C-2 carbon had migrated to C-6—then this half of the radioactivity would be found solely on C-2 of the product:



52

The fact that C-1 and C-2 were found to be equally labeled showed that *both migrations occurred,* and with equal probability. Since C-2 and C-6 of **52** are not equivalent, this means that there must be a symmetrical intermediate.[142] The type of intermediate that best fits the circumstances is a cyclopropanone,[143] and the mechanism (for the general case) is formulated (replacing R^1 of our former symbolism with CHR^5R^6, since it is obvious that for this mechanism an α-hydrogen is required on the nonhalogenated side of the carbonyl):



57

58

The intermediate corresponding to **58** in the case of **52** is a symmetrical compound, and the three-membered ring can be opened with equal probability on either side of the carbonyl, accounting for the results with ^{14}C. In the general case, **58** is not symmetrical and should open on the side that gives the more stable carbanion.[144] This accounts for the fact that **54** and **55** give the same product.

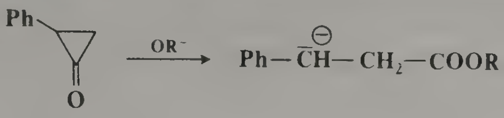
---

[142] A preliminary migration of the chlorine from C-2 to C-6 was ruled out by the fact that recovered **52** had the same isotopic distribution as the starting **52**.

[143] Although cyclopropanones are very reactive compounds, several of them have been isolated. For reviews of cyclopropanone chemistry, see Wasserman, Clark, and Turley, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **47,** 73–156 (1974); Turro, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **2,** 25–32 (1969).

[144] Factors other than carbanion stability (including steric factors) may also be important in determining which side of an unsymmetrical **58** is preferentially opened. See, for example, Rappe and Knutsson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **21,** 2205 (1967); Rappe, Knutsson, Turro, and Gagosian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2032 (1970).

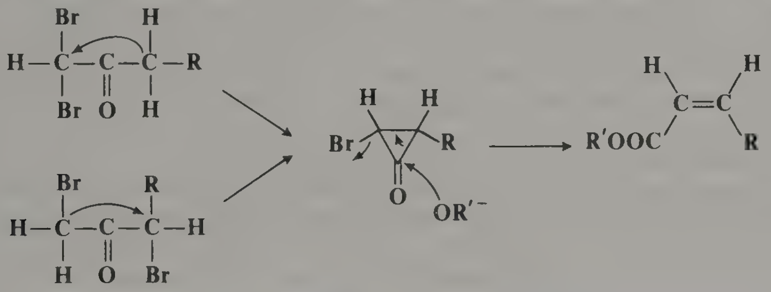
The intermediate in both cases is **59**, which always opens to give the carbanion stabilized by



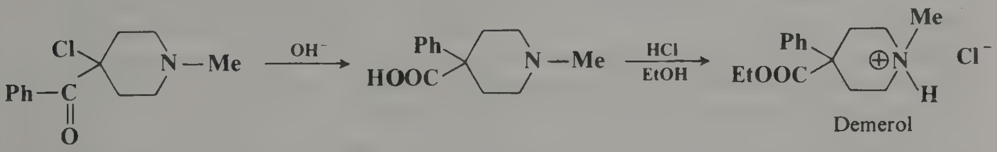
59

resonance. The cyclopropanone intermediate (**58**) has been isolated in the case where $R^2 = R^5 = t$-Bu and $R^3 = R^6 = H$,[145] and it has also been trapped.[146] Also, cyclopropanones synthesized by other methods have been shown to give Favorskii products on treatment with NaOMe or other bases.[147]

When the Favorskii rearrangement is applied to α,α-dihalo ketones containing an α′-hydrogen[148] or to α,α′-dihalo ketones containing an α-hydrogen,[149] the product is an α,β-unsaturated ester. In either case the same cyclopropanone is formed. Ring opening is different here, involving simultaneous elimination of halide ion:



The mechanism discussed is in accord with all the facts when the halo ketone contains an α-hydrogen on the other side of the carbonyl group. However, ketones that do not have a hydrogen there also rearrange to give the same type of product. This is usually called the *quasi-Favorskii rearrangement*. An example is found in the preparation of Demerol:[150]



The quasi-Favorskii rearrangement obviously cannot take place by the cyclopropanone mechanism. The mechanism that is generally accepted (called the *semibenzilic mechanism*[151]) is a base-catalyzed pinacol rearrangement–type mechanism similar to that of **8-7**. This mechanism requires inversion at the migration terminus and this has been found.[152] It has been shown that even where there *is* an appropriately situated α-hydrogen, the semibenzilic mechanism may still operate. One such example is the ring contraction of α-halocyclobutanones[153] (for these substrates, boiling water may be all that is necessary; a stronger base is not always required). The semibenzilic mechanism has been shown for these compounds by experiments involving deuterium labeling, as well as by other experiments.[154] In at least one case it has been shown that an α-halo ketone with an α′-hydrogen can give the Favorskii reaction by either the cyclopropanone or the semibenzilic mechanism, depending on the experimental conditions.[155]

---

[145] Pazos, Pacifici, Pierson, Sclove, and Greene, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1990 (1974).

[146] Fort, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4979 (1962); Cookson and Nye, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 129 (1963); Breslow, Posner, and Krebs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 234 (1963); Baldwin and Cardellina, *Chem. Commun.* 558 (1968).

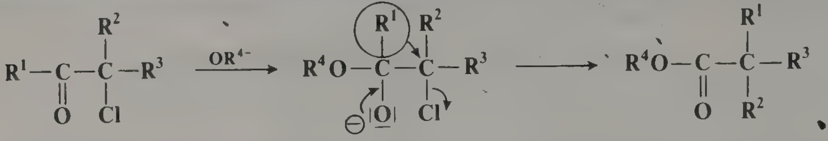
[147] Turro and Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3258 (1965); Crandall and Machleder, *J. Org. Chem.* **90,** 7347 (1968); Turro, Gagosian, Rappe, and Knutsson, *Chem. Commun.* 270 (1969); Wharton and Fritzberg, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1899 (1972).

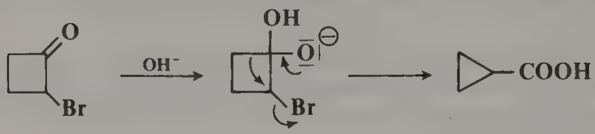
[148] Kennedy, McCorkindale, Raphael, Scott, and Zwanenburg, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 148 (1964).

[149] Rappe and Adeström, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **19,** 383 (1965); Rappe, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **20,** 862 (1966).

[150] Smissman and Hite, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1201 (1959).

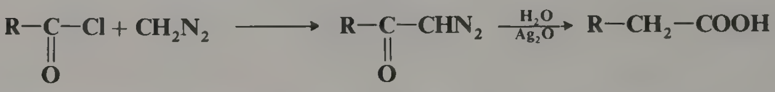
[151] Tchoubar and Sackur, *C. R. Acad. Sci.* **208,** 1020 (1939).





OS **IV,** 594; **53,** 123; **56,** 107.

8-9 The Arndt–Eistert Synthesis



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-Cl + CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CHN_2 \xrightarrow[Ag_2O]{H_2O} R-CH_2-COOH$$

In the *Arndt–Eistert synthesis* an acyl halide is converted to a carboxylic acid with one additional carbon.[156] The first step of this process is reaction **0-115.** The actual rearrangement occurs in the second step on treatment of the diazo ketone with water and silver oxide or with silver benzoate and triethylamine. This rearrangement is called the *Wolff rearrangement.* It is the best method of increasing a carbon chain by one if a *carboxylic acid* is available (**0-103** and **6-35** begin with alkyl halides). If an alcohol R′OH is used instead of water, the ester RCH_2COOR' is isolated directly. Similarly, ammonia gives the amide. Other catalysts are sometimes used, e.g., colloidal platinum, copper, etc., but occasionally the diazo ketone is simply heated or photolyzed in the presence of water, an alcohol, or ammonia, with no catalyst at all. The photolysis method[157] often gives better results than the silver catalysis method. Of course, diazo ketones prepared in any other way also give the rearrangement.[158] The reaction is of wide scope. R may be alkyl or aryl and may contain many functional groups including unsaturation, but not including groups acidic enough to react with CH_2N_2 or diazo ketones (e.g., **0-6** and **0-28**). Sometimes the reaction is performed with other diazoalkanes (that is, $R'CHN_2$) to give RCHR′COOH. The reaction has been used for ring contraction of cyclic diazo ketones,[159] e.g.,[160]

---

[152] Baudry, Bégué, and Charpentier-Morize, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1416 (1971), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2147 (1970).

[153] For a review of cyclobutane ring contractions not involving carbocations, see Conia and Salaun, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 33–40 (1972).

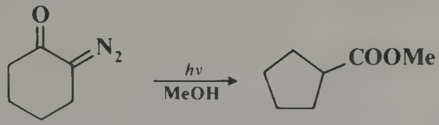
[154] Conia and Salaun, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1175 (1963), *Bull. Soc. Chem. Fr.* 1957 (1964); Salaun, Garnier, and Conia, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 2895 (1973); Rappe and Knutsson, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **21,** 163 (1967).

[155] Warnhoff, Wong, and Tai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 514 (1968).

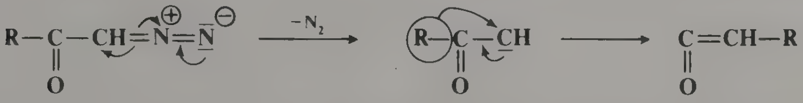
[156] For reviews, see Meier and Zeller, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 32–43 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 52–63]; Kirmse, Ref. 117, pp. 475–493; Rodina and Korobitsyna, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 260–272 (1967); Weygand and Bestmann, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 535–554 (1960), *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **3,** 451–508 (1964); For a review of rearrangements of diazo and diszonium compounds, see Whittaker, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Diazonium and Diazo Compounds," pt. 2, pp. 593–644, Wiley, New York, 1978.

[157] For a review of the photolysis method, see Ando, in Patai, Ref. 156, pp. 458–475.

[158] For a method of conducting the reaction with trimethylsilyldiazomethane instead of CH_2N_2, see Aoyama and Shioiri, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4461 (1980).

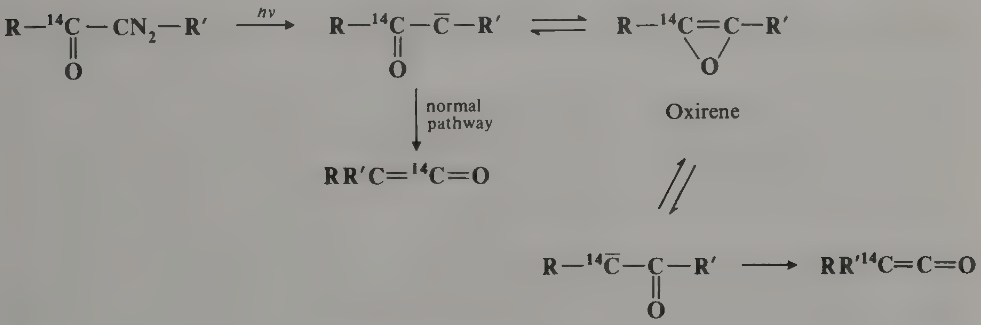


The mechanism is generally regarded to involve formation of a carbene. It is the divalent carbon that has the open sextet and to which the migrating group brings its electron pair:



The actual product of the reaction is thus the ketene, which then reacts with water (**5-2**), an alcohol (**5-4**), or ammonia or an amine (**5-8**). Particularly stable ketenes (e.g., $Ph_2C{=}C{=}O$) have been isolated and others have been trapped in other ways (e.g., as β-lactams,[161] **6-66**). The purpose of the catalyst is not well understood, though many suggestions have been made. This mechanism is strictly analogous to that of the Curtius rearrangement (**8-17**). Although the mechanism as shown above involves a free carbene and there is much evidence to support this,[162] it is also possible that at least in some cases the two steps are concerted and a free carbene is absent.

When the Wolff rearrangement is carried out photochemically, the mechanism is basically the same,[157] but another pathway can intervene. Some of the ketocarbene originally formed can undergo a carbene–carbene rearrangement, through an oxirene intermediate.[163] This was shown by ^{14}C labeling experiments, where diazo ketones labeled in the carbonyl group gave rise to ketenes that



---

[159] For a review, see Redmore and Gutsche, Ref. 105, pp. 125–136.

[160] Korobitsyna, Rodina, and Sushko, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **4,** 165 (1968); Jones and Ando, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2200 (1968).

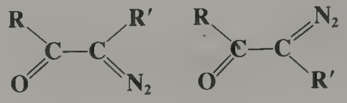
[161] Kirmse and Horner, *Chem. Ber.* **89,** 2759 (1956); also see Horner and Spietschka, *Chem. Ber.* **89,** 2765 (1956).

[162] For a summary of evidence on both sides of the question, see Kirmse, Ref. 117, pp. 476–480. See also Torres, Ribo, Clement, and Strausz, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 996 (1983); Tomioka, Hayashi, Asano, and Izawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 758 (1983).

[163] For a review of oxirenes, see Lewars, *Chem. Rev.* **83,** 519–534 (1983).

bore the label at both C=C carbons.[164] In general, the smallest degree of scrambling (and thus of the oxirene pathway) was found when R′ = H. The oxirene pathway is not found in the thermal Wolff rearrangement. It is likely that an excited singlet state of the carbene is necessary for the oxirene pathway to intervene.[165]

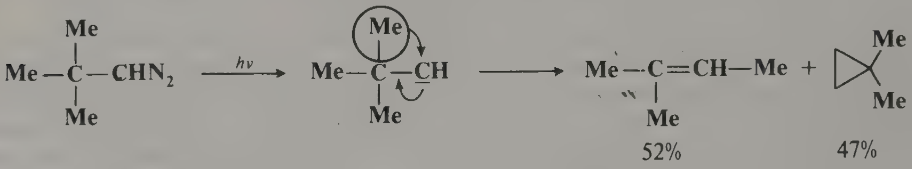
The diazo ketone can exist in two conformations, called *s-E* and *s-Z*. Studies have shown that



s-Z *s-E*

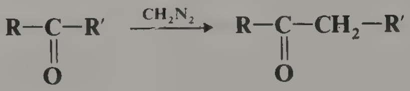
Wolff rearrangement takes place preferentially from the *s-Z* conformation.[166]

Other 1,2 alkyl migrations to a carbene or carbenoid terminus are also known,[167] e.g.,[168]

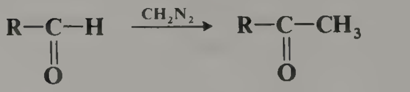


OS **III,** 356; **50,** 77; **52,** 53.

8-10 Homologization of Aldehydes and Ketones



$$\underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{R-C-R'}} \xrightarrow{CH_2N_2} \underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{R-C-CH_2-R'}}$$



$$\underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{R-C-H}} \xrightarrow{CH_2N_2} \underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{\|}{R-C-CH_3}}$$

Aldehydes and ketones can be converted to their homologs[169] with diazomethane.[170] Formation of the epoxide (**6-63**) is a side reaction. Although this reaction appears superficially to be similar to the insertion of carbenes into C—H bonds (**2-18**), the mechanism is quite different. This reaction is a true rearrangement and no free carbene is involved. The first step is an addition to the C=O bond of the aldehyde or ketone:

---

[164] Csizmadia, Font, and Strausz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7360 (1968); Fenwick, Frater, Ogi, and Strausz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 124 (1973); Zeller, *Chem. Ber.* **112,** 678 (1978). See also Thornton, Gosavi, and Strausz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1768 (1970); Russell and Rowland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7508 (1970); Majerski and Redvanly, *J. Chem. Soc. Chem. Commun.* 694 (1972).

[165] Csizmadia, Gunning, Gosavi, and Strausz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 133 (1973).

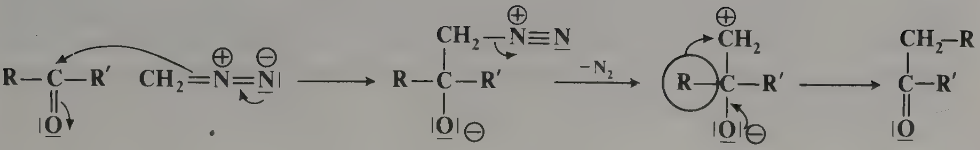
[166] Kaplan and Mitchell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 759 (1979); Tomioka, Okuno, and Izawa, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5278 (1980).

[167] For a review, see Kirmse, Ref. 117, pp. 457–462. See also Kowalski and Fields, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 321 (1982).

[168] Kirmse and Horn, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 2698 (1967).

[169] Other homologization reagents have also been reported: See Taylor, Chiang, and McKillop, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1827 (1977); Villieras, Perriot, and Normant, *Synthesis* 968 (1979); Hashimoto, Aoyama, and Shioiri, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4619 (1980).

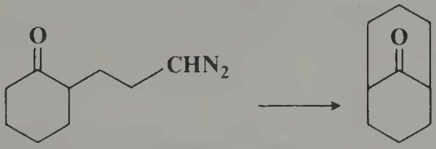
[170] For a review, see Gutsche, *Org. React.* **8,** 364–429 (1954).



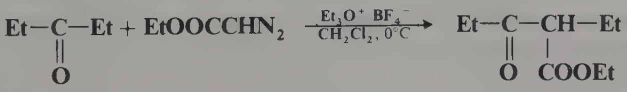
60 **61**

The betaine **60** can sometimes be isolated. As shown on p. 866, **60** can also go to the epoxide. The evidence for this mechanism is summarized in the review by Gutsche.[170] It may be noted that this mechanism is essentially the same as in the apparent ''insertions'' of oxygen (**8-22**) and nitrogen (**8-19**) into ketones.

Aldehydes give fairly good yields of methyl ketones; that is, hydrogen migrates in preference to alkyl. The most abundant side product is not the homologous aldehyde, but the epoxide. However, the yield of aldehyde at the expense of methyl ketone can be increased by the addition of methanol. If the aldehyde contains electron-withdrawing groups, the yield of epoxides is increased and the ketone is formed in smaller amounts, if at all. Ketones give poorer yields of homologous ketones. Epoxides are usually the predominant product here, especially when one or both R groups contain an electron-withdrawing group. The yield of ketones also decreases with increasing length of the chain. The use of boron trifluoride[171] or aluminum chloride[172] increases the yield of ketone.[173] Cyclic ketones,[174] three-membered[175] and larger, behave particularly well and give good yields of ketones with the ring expanded by one.[176] Aliphatic diazo compounds ($RCHN_2$ and R_2CN_2) are sometimes used instead of diazomethane, with the expected results.[177] An interesting example is the preparation of bicyclic compounds from alicyclic compounds with a diazo group in the side chain, e.g.,[178]



Ethyl diazoacetate can be used analogously, in the presence of a Lewis acid or of triethyloxonium fluoroborate,[179] e.g.,



$$\underset{\displaystyle O}{\overset{}{Et-\underset{\|}{C}-Et}} + EtOOCCHN_2 \xrightarrow[CH_2Cl_2,\ 0^\circ C]{Et_3O^+\ BF_4^-} Et-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle COOEt}{|}}{CH}-Et$$

---

[171] House, Grubbs, and Gannon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4099 (1960).

[172] Müller and Heischkeil, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2809 (1964).

[173] For a review of homologizations catalyzed by Lewis acids, see Müller, Kessler, and Zeeh, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **7,** 128–171 (1966), pp. 137–150.

[174] For another method for the ring enlargement of cyclic ketones, see Labar, Laboureur, and Krief, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 983 (1982).

[175] For example, see Turro and Gagosian, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2036 (1970).

[176] For a review, see Gutsche and Redmore, Ref. 105, pp. 81–98.

[177] For example, see Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 453 (1960); Warner, Walsh, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1232 (1962); Loeschorn, Nakajima, and Anselme, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belg.* **90,** 985 (1981).

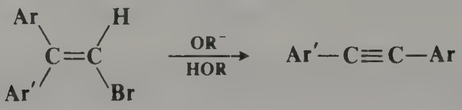
[178] Gutsche and Bailey, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 607 (1963); Bailey, Bowers, and Gutsche, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 610 (1963); Gutsche and Zandstra, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 324 (1974).

[179] Mock and Hartman, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 459, 466 (1977); Baldwin and Landmesser, *Synth. Commun.* **8,** 413 (1978).

When unsymmetrical ketones were used in this reaction (with BF_3 as catalyst), the less highly substituted carbon preferentially migrated.[180] For unsymmetrical ketones, the reaction can be made regioselective by applying this method to the α-halo ketone, in which case only the other carbon migrates.[181] The ethyl diazoacetate procedure has also been applied to the acetals or ketals of α,β-unsaturated aldehydes and ketones.[182]

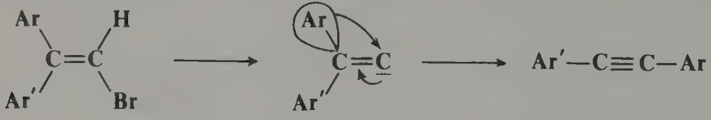
OS **IV**, 225, 780.

8-11 The Fritsch–Buttenberg–Wiechell Rearrangement



The rearrangement of 1,1-diaryl-2-haloethylenes to diarylacetylenes with strong bases[183] is called the *Fritsch–Buttenberg–Wiechell rearrangement*.[184] Alkoxide ions, sodium amide, and alkyl- and aryllithiums have been used as bases. The order of halide reactivity is Br > I ≫ Cl.[185] There are two main side reactions, which may predominate. One is simple nucleophilic substitution of the halide by the base (e.g., $Ar_2C{=}CHBr + OEt^- \rightarrow Ar_2C{=}CHOEt$), and the other, which occurs with alkyl- and aryllithiums, is halogen–metal interchange (**2-38**).

In this rearrangement, a hydrogen and a halogen are removed from the same carbon on treatment with a base, and it is tempting to assume that a carbene intermediate is involved here (see p. 173):



However, a major piece of evidence against this mechanism is that the reaction is stereoselective: the predominant migrating group is the one trans to the halogen. This was determined by the use of two different aryl groups and the labeling of one of the ethylenic carbons with ^{14}C.[186] A free carbene should be symmetrical, and it should not matter which group migrates.[187] Other evidence against the carbene mechanism is that products of carbene insertion or addition are not found. If we reject the carbene mechanism, there are still two major possibilities.[188] The aryl group may migrate with (mechanism *a*) or without (mechanism *b*) its electrons:

---

[180] Liu and Majumdar, *Synth. Commun.* **5,** 125 (1975).

[181] Dave and Warnhoff, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 2590 (1983).

[182] Doyle, Trudell, and Terpstra, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 5146 (1983).

[183] For reviews, see Köbrich and Buck, in Viehe, "Acetylenes," pp. 117–122, 131–134, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Köbrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4,** 49–68 (1965), pp. 63–67 [*Angew. Chem.* **77,** 75–94].

[184] Fritsch, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **279,** 319 (1894); Buttenberg, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **279,** 327 (1894); Wiechell, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **279,** 337 (1894).

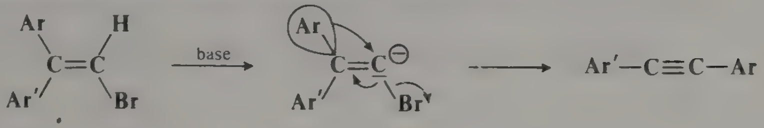
[185] Pritchard and Bothner-By, *J. Phys. Chem.* **64,** 1271 (1960).

[186] Curtin, Flynn, and Nystrom, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 4599 (1958); Bothner-By, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 3293 (1955).

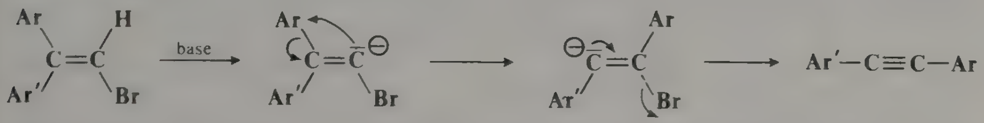
[187] It has been shown [Tadros, Sakla, Ishak, and Armanious, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4218 (1963)] that the reaction of 1-phenyl-1-*p*-anisyl-2-bromoethylene with sodium glycoxide in boiling ethylene glycol is not stereoselective, the anisyl group preferentially migrating, whether cis or trans. It may be that the mechanism in this case is different or, more simply, that here the olefin isomerizes before migration takes place.

[188] An *intermolecular* mechanism was ruled out by crossover experiments and by the fact that a substituent on a migrating ring is found in the same position in the product.

Mechanism *a*



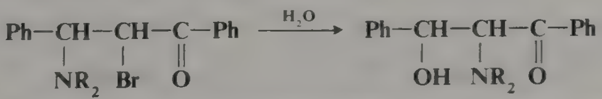
Mechanism *b*



Although we have shown these mechanisms with two and three steps, respectively, it is also possible that two or three of the steps are concerted. The principal way of distinguishing between mechanisms *a* and *b* is the study of the effects of substituents on the migrating group. In mechanism *a* the reaction with respect to the migrating group is electrophilic aromatic substitution, with a transition state in which the ring is positively charged. Electron-donating substituents in the ortho or para position should aid the migration, and withdrawing substituents should hinder it. In mechanism *b* the reaction is nucleophilic aromatic substitution, with a negatively charged transition state, and the effect of substituents should be just the opposite. The results are in accord with mechanism *a*.[189] The question remains as to whether it is a one-step or two-step process. There is evidence that, at least in some cases, there is a two-step mechanism: the intermediate **62** has been isolated as the lithium compound and on heating gave the diarylacetylene;[190] and hydrogen–deuterium exchange has been shown.[185] However, it may be that in other cases the two steps are concerted. The fact that the reaction is stereoselective does not *require* that the reaction be concerted, since vinyl carbanions can hold their configurations (p. 156).

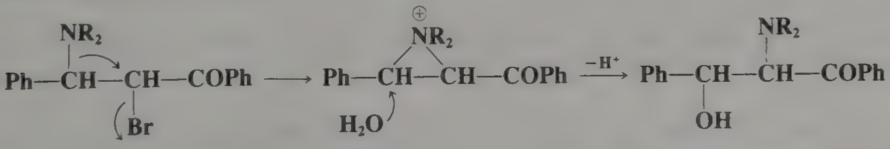
B. Carbon-to-Carbon Migrations of Other Groups

8-12 Migrations of Halogen, Hydroxyl, Amino, etc.



$$\underset{NR_2}{Ph{-}CH}{-}\underset{Br}{CH}{-}\underset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}{-}Ph \xrightarrow{H_2O} \underset{OH}{Ph{-}CH}{-}\underset{NR_2}{CH}{-}\underset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}{-}Ph$$

When a nucleophilic substitution is carried out on a substrate that has a neighboring group (p. 268) on the adjacent carbon, then if the cyclic intermediate is opened on the opposite side, the result is migration of the neighboring group. In the example shown above (NR_2 = morpholino),[191] the reaction took place as follows:



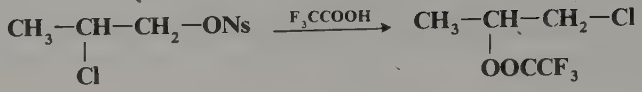
---

[189] Köbrich and Trapp, *Z. Naturforsch.* **18**, 1125 (1963), *Chem. Ber.* **99**, 680 (1966); Jones and Damico, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85**, 2273 (1963); Köbrich, Trapp, and Hornke, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1131 (1964), *Chem. Ber.* **100**, 961 (1967).

[190] Köbrich and Trapp, Ref. 189.

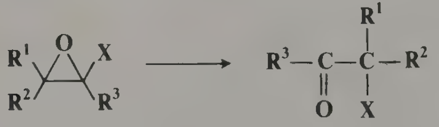
[191] Southwick and Walsh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77**, 405 (1955). See also Suzuki, Okano, Nakai, Terao, and Sekiya, *Synthesis* 723 (1983).

Another example is[192] (ONs = nosylate, see p. 312):



$$CH_3-\underset{Cl}{CH}-CH_2-ONs \xrightarrow{F_3CCOOH} CH_3-\underset{OOCCF_3}{CH}-CH_2-Cl$$

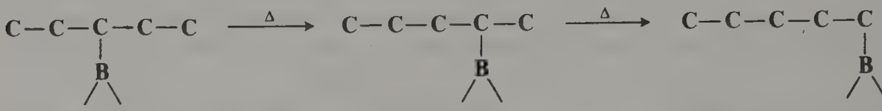
α-Halo and α-acyloxy epoxides undergo ready rearrangement to α-halo and α-acyloxy ketones, respectively.[193] These substrates are very prone to rearrange, and often do so on standing without



X=F, Cl, Br, or OCOR

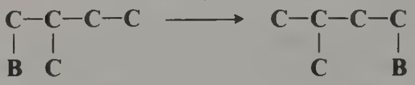
a catalyst, though in some cases an acid catalyst is necessary. The reaction is essentially the same as the rearrangement of epoxides shown in **8-2,** except that in this case halogen or acyloxy is the migrating group (as shown above; however, it is also possible for one of the R groups—alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen—to migrate instead, and mixtures are sometimes obtained).

8-13 Migration of Boron



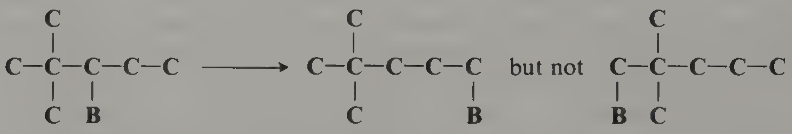
$$C-C-\underset{B}{C}-C-C \xrightarrow{\Delta} C-C-C-\underset{B}{C}-C \xrightarrow{\Delta} C-C-C-C-\underset{B}{C}$$

When a nonterminal borane is heated at temperatures ranging from 100 to 200°C, the boron moves toward the end of the chain.[194] The reaction is catalyzed by small amounts of borane or other species containing B—H bonds. The boron can move past a branch, e.g.,



$$\underset{B}{C}-\underset{C}{C}-C-C \longrightarrow C-\underset{C}{C}-C-\underset{B}{C}$$

but not past a double branch, e.g.,



$$C-\overset{C}{\underset{C}{C}}-\underset{B}{C}-C-C \longrightarrow C-\overset{C}{\underset{C}{C}}-C-C-\underset{B}{C} \quad \text{but not} \quad C-\overset{C}{\underset{B}{C}}-\underset{C}{C}-C-C$$

The reaction is an equilibrium: **63, 64,** and **65** each gave a mixture containing about 40% **63,** 1%

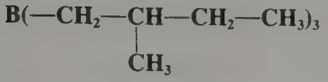
---

[192] For a review of Cl migrations, see Peterson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 407–413 (1971). See also Loktev, Korchagina, Shubin, and Koptyug, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **13,** 201 (1977); Dobronravov and Shteingarts, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **13,** 420 (1977). For examples of Br migration, see Gudkova, Uteniyazov, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **214,** 70 (1974); Smolina, Shchekut'eva, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **228,** 424 (1976); Brusova, Gopius, Smolina, and Reutov, *Doklad. Chem.* **253,** 334 (1980). For an example of OH migration, see Cathcart, Bovenkamp, Moir, Bannard, and Casselman, *Can. J. Chem.* **55,** 3774 (1977). For a review of migrations of ArS and $Ar_2P(O)$, see Warren, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 403–406 (1978).

[193] For a review, see McDonald, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 67–107 (1971).

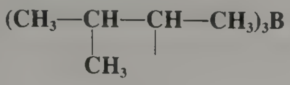
[194] Brown, "Hydroboration," pp. 136–149, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1962; Brown and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1433 (1966). See also Brown and Racherla, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **241,** C37 (1982).

64, and 59% **65**. The migration can go quite a long distance. Thus $(C_{11}H_{23}CHC_{11}H_{23})_3B$ was



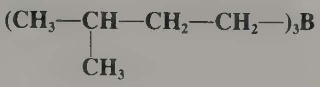
$$\mathrm{B(-CH_2-\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_2-CH_3)_3}$$

63



$$\mathrm{(CH_3-\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-\underset{|}{CH}-CH_3)_3B}$$

64

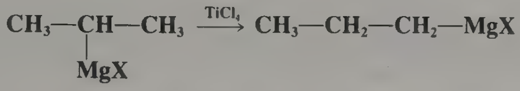


$$\mathrm{(CH_3-\underset{\displaystyle CH_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_2-CH_2-)_3B}$$

65

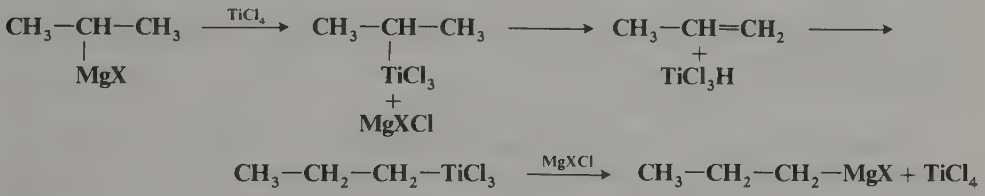
completely converted to $(C_{23}H_{47})_3B$, involving a migration of 11 positions.[195] If the boron is on a cycloalkyl ring, it can move around the ring; if an alkyl chain is also on the ring, the boron may move from the ring to the chain, ending up at the end of the chain.[196] The reaction is useful for the migration of double bonds in a controlled way (see **2-2**). There is evidence that a π complex mechanism is involved in the migration.[197]

8-14 Rearrangement of Grignard Reagents



$$\mathrm{CH_3-\underset{\displaystyle MgX}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_3 \xrightarrow{TiCl_4} CH_3-CH_2-CH_2-MgX}$$

The MgX of Grignard reagents[198] can migrate to terminal positions in the presence of small amounts of $TiCl_4$.[199] The proposed mechanism consists of metal exchange (**2-34**), elimination–addition, and metal exchange:

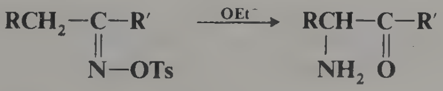


$$\mathrm{CH_3-\underset{\displaystyle MgX}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_3 \xrightarrow{TiCl_4} \underset{\displaystyle MgXCl}{\underset{+}{CH_3-\underset{\displaystyle TiCl_3}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_3}} \longrightarrow \underset{\displaystyle TiCl_3H}{\underset{+}{CH_3-CH{=}CH_2}} \longrightarrow}$$

$$\mathrm{CH_3-CH_2-CH_2-TiCl_3 \xrightarrow{MgXCl} CH_3-CH_2-CH_2-MgX + TiCl_4}$$

The addition step is similar to **5-13** or **5-14** and follows Markovnikov's rule, so that the positive titanium goes to the terminal carbon.

8-15 The Neber Rearrangement



$$\mathrm{RCH_2-\underset{\displaystyle N-OTs}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R' \xrightarrow{OEt^-} R\underset{\displaystyle NH_2}{\underset{|}{CH}}-\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-R'}$$

α-Amino ketones can be prepared by treatment of ketoxime tosylates with a base such as ethoxide ion or pyridine.[200] This is called the *Neber rearrangement*. R is usually aryl, though the reaction has been carried out with R = alkyl or hydrogen. R′ may be alkyl or aryl but not hydrogen. The Beckmann rearrangement (**8-20**) and the abnormal Beckmann reaction (elimination to the nitrile, **7-41**) may be side reactions, though these generally occur in acid media. A similar rearrangement is given by N,N-dichloroamines of the type $\mathrm{RCH_2CH(NCl_2)R'}$, where the product is also $\mathrm{RCH(NH_2)COR'}$.[201] The mechanism of the Neber rearrangement is as follows:[202]

---

[195] Logan, *J. Org. Chem.* **26**, 3657 (1961).

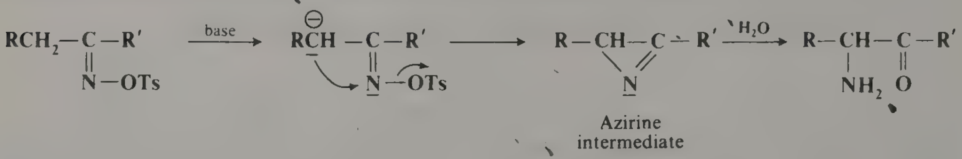
[196] Brown and Zweifel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 561 (1967).

[197] Wood and Rickborn, *J. Org. Chem.* **48**, 555 (1983).

[198] For reviews of rearrangements in organomagnesium chemistry, see Hill, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **16**, 131–165 (1977), *J. Organomet. Chem.* **91**, 123–271 (1975).

[199] Cooper and Finkbeiner, *J. Org. Chem.* **27**, 1493 (1962); Fell, Asinger, and Sulzbach, *Chem. Ber.* **103**, 3830 (1970). See also Ashby and Ainslie, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **250**, 1 (1983).

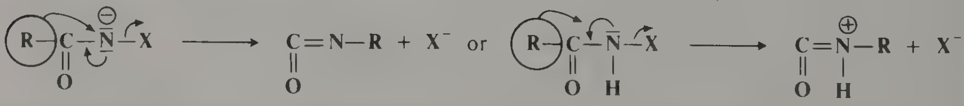
[200] For reviews, see Conley and Ghosh, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **4**, 197–308 (1971), pp. 289–304; O'Brien, *Chem. Rev.* **64**, 81–89 (1964).



The best evidence for this mechanism is that the azirine intermediate has been isolated.[203] In contrast to the Beckmann rearrangement, this one is sterically indiscriminate:[204] both a syn and an anti ketoxime give the same product. Where there are two possible C—H groups to which the nitrogen can migrate, the more acidic proton is lost. The mechanism as shown above consists of three steps, the last being hydrolysis of an imine (**6-2**). However, it is possible that the first two steps are concerted, and it is also possible that what is shown as the second step is actually two steps: loss of OTs to give a nitrene, and formation of the azirine. In the case of the dichloroamines, HCl is first lost to give $\mathrm{RCH_2}\underset{\underset{\mathrm{NCl}}{\|}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{R'}$, which then behaves analogously.[205] N-Chloroimines prepared in other ways also give the reaction.[206] Analogously, N-chloroimino esters $\mathrm{RCH_2}\underset{\underset{\mathrm{NCl}}{\|}}{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{OR'}$ give α-amino ortho esters $\mathrm{RCH(NH_2)C(OR')_3}$[207] or α-amino esters $\mathrm{RCH(NH_2)COOR'}$,[208] each of which can be hydrolyzed to α-amino acids.

OS **V**, 909.

C. Carbon-to-Nitrogen Migrations of R and Ar. The reactions in this group are nucleophilic migrations from a carbon to a nitrogen atom. In each case the nitrogen atom either has six electrons in its outer shell (and thus invites the migration of a group carrying an electron pair) or else loses a nucleofuge concurrently with the migration (p. 944). Reactions **8-16** to **8-19** are used to prepare amines from acid derivatives. Reactions **8-19** and **8-20** are used to prepare amines from ketones. The mechanisms of reactions **8-16, 8-17, 8-18,** and **8-19** (with carboxylic acids) are very similar and follow one of two patterns:



Some of the evidence[209] is: (1) configuration is retained in R (p. 945); (2) the kinetics are first order; (3) intramolecular rearrangement is shown by labeling; and (4) no rearrangement occurs *within* the migrating group, e.g., a neopentyl group on the carbon of the starting material is still a neopentyl group on the nitrogen of the product.

---

[201] Baumgarten and Petersen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 459 (1960), and references cited therein.

[202] Cram and Hatch, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 33 (1953); Hatch and Cram, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 38 (1953).

[203] Neber and Burgard, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **493,** 281 (1932); Parcell, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1396 (1963); Ref. 202.

[204] House and Berkowitz, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2271 (1963).

[205] For example, see Oae and Furukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **38,** 62 (1965); Nakai, Furukawa, and Oae, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 2917 (1969).

[206] Baumgarten, Petersen, and Wolf, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2369 (1963).

[207] Graham, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2223 (1969).

[208] Baumgarten, Dirks, Petersen, and Zey, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 3708 (1966).

[209] For a discussion of this mechanism and the evidence for it, see Smith, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 528–550.

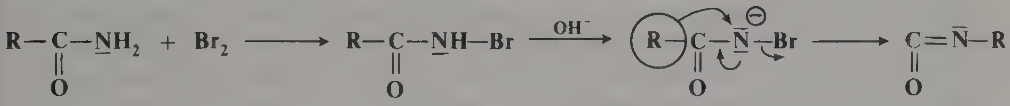
In many cases it is not certain whether the nucleofuge X is lost first, creating an intermediate nitrene[210] or nitrenium ion, or whether migration and loss of the nucleofuge are simultaneous, as shown above.[211] It is likely that both possibilities can exist, depending on the substrate and reaction conditions, and that there is a spectrum of mechanisms.

8-16 The Hofmann Rearrangement

$$\mathrm{RCONH_2 + NaOBr \longrightarrow R{-}N{=}C{=}O \xrightarrow{\text{hydrolysis}} RNH_2}$$

In the *Hofmann rearrangement*, an unsubstituted amide is treated with sodium hypobromite (or sodium hydroxide and bromine, which is essentially the same thing) to give a primary amine that has one carbon fewer than the starting amide.[212] The actual product of the reaction is the isocyanate, but this compound is seldom isolated[213] since it is usually hydrolyzed under the reaction conditions. R may be alkyl or aryl, but if it is an alkyl group of more than about six or seven carbons, low yields are obtained unless Br_2 and NaOMe are used instead of Br_2 and NaOH.[214] Under these conditions the product of addition to the isocyanate is the carbamate RNHCOOMe (**6-8**), which is easily isolated or can be hydrolyzed to the amine. Side reactions when NaOH is the base are formation of ureas RNHCONHR and acylureas RCONHCONHR by addition, respectively, of RNH_2 and $RCONH_2$ to RNCO (**6-17**). If acylureas are desired, they can be made the main products by using only half the usual quantities of Br_2 and NaOH. Another side product, though only from primary R, is the nitrile derived from oxidation of RNH_2 (**9-5**). Imides react to give amino acids, e.g., phthalimide gives *o*-aminobenzoic acid. α-Hydroxy and α-halo amides give aldehydes and ketones by way of the unstable α-hydroxy- or α-haloamines. However, a side product with an α-halo amide is a *gem*-dihalide. Ureas analogously give hydrazines. This reaction is sometimes called the *Hofmann degradation*, but this name is easily confused with **7-6.**

The mechanism follows the pattern outlined on p. 982.



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}\underline{N}H_2 + Br_2 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}\underline{N}H{-}Br \xrightarrow{OH^-} R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}\overset{\ominus}{\overline{N}}{-}Br \longrightarrow \underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{=}\overline{N}{-}R}$$

66

The first step is an example of **2-54** and the intermediate N-halo amides (**66**) have been isolated. In the second step, **66** lose a proton to the base. **66** are acidic because of the presence of two electron-withdrawing groups (acyl and halo) on the nitrogen. It is possible that the third step is actually two steps: loss of bromide to form a nitrene, followed by the actual migration, but most of the available evidence favors the concerted reaction.[215]

A similar reaction can be effected by the treatment of amides with lead tetraacetate.[216] In this case the initial isocyanate and the amine formed from it react with the acetic acid liberated from the lead tetraacetate to give, respectively, ureas and amides. If the reaction is carried out in the presence of an alcohol, carbamates are formed (**6-8**).

---

[210] For a review of rearrangements involving nitrene intermediates, see Boyer, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **2,** 267–318 (1969). See also Ref. 221.

[211] The question is discussed by Lwowski, in Lwowski, "Nitrenes," pp. 217–221, Interscience, New York, 1970.

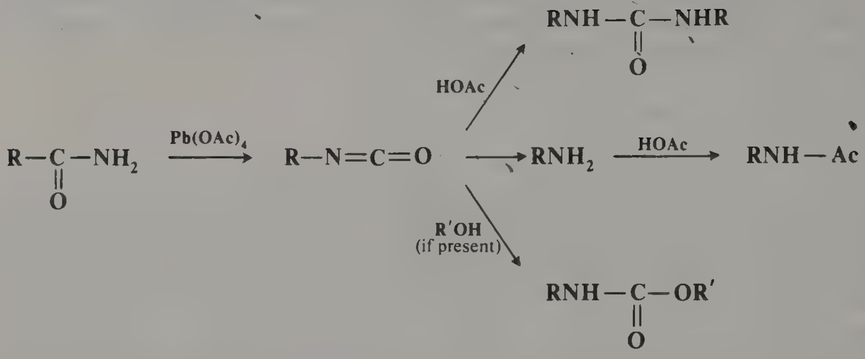
[212] For a review, see Wallis and Lane, *Org. React.* **3,** 267–306 (1946).

[213] If desired, the isocyanate can be isolated by the use of phase transfer conditions: see Sy and Raksis, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2223 (1980).

[214] For an example of the use of this method at low temperatures, see Radlick and Brown, *Synthesis* 290 (1974).

[215] See, for example, Imamoto, Tsuno, and Yukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 1632, 1639, 1644 (1971); Imamoto, Kim, Tsuno, and Yukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 2776 (1971).

[216] Acott and Beckwith, *Chem. Commun.* 161 (1965); Baumgarten and Staklis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1141 (1965); Acott, Beckwith, Hassanali, and Redmond, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4039 (1965); Acott, Beckwith, and Hassanali, *Aust. J. Chem.* **21,** 185, 197 (1968); Baumgarten, Smith, and Staklis, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3554 (1975).



Another reagent that converts $RCONH_2$ to RNH_2 (R = alkyl, but not aryl) is I,I-bis-(trifluoroacetoxy)iodobenzene $PhI(OCOCF_3)_2$.[217]

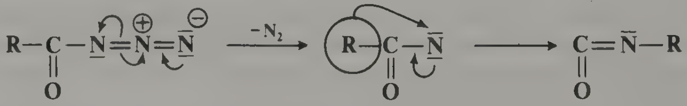
OS **II,** 19, 44, 462; **IV,** 45.

8-17 The Curtius Rearrangement

$$RCON_3 \xrightarrow{\Delta} R{-}N{=}C{=}O$$

The *Curtius rearrangement* involves the pyrolysis of acyl azides to yield isocyanates.[218] The reaction gives good yields of isocyanates, since no water is present to hydrolyze them to the amine. Of course, they can be subsequently hydrolyzed, and indeed the reaction *can* be carried out in water or alcohol, in which case the products are amines, carbamates, or acylureas, as in **8-16.**[219] This is a very general reaction and can be applied to almost any carboxylic acid: aliphatic, aromatic, alicyclic, heterocyclic, unsaturated, and containing many functional groups. Acyl azides can be prepared as in **0-63** or by treatment of acylhydrazines (hydrazides) with nitrous acid (analogous to **2-49**). The Curtius rearrangement is catalyzed by Lewis or protic acids, but these are usually not necessary for good results.

The mechanism is similar to that in **8-16:**



Also note the exact analogy between this reaction and **8-9.** However, in this case, there is no evidence for a free nitrene and it is probable that the steps are concerted.[220]

Alkyl azides can be similarly pyrolyzed to give imines, in an analogous reaction:[221]

$$R_3CN_3 \xrightarrow{\Delta} R_2C{=}NR$$

---

[217] Radhakrishna, Parham, Riggs, and Loudon, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1746 (1979). See also Swaminathan and Venkatasubramanian, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1161 (1975).

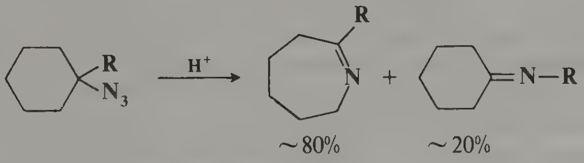
[218] For reviews, see Banthorpe, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Azido Group," pp. 397–405, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[219] For a variation that conveniently produces the amine directly, see Pfister and Wyman, *Synthesis* 38 (1983).

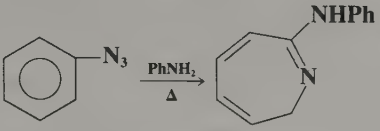
[220] See, for example, Lwowski, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 897–906 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 922–931]; Linke, Tissue, and Lwowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6308 (1967); Smalley and Bingham, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2481 (1969).

[221] For reviews, see Stevens and Watts, Ref. 1, pp. 45–52; Smith, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 462–479. For reviews of the formation of nitrenes from alkyl and aryl azides, see, in Lwowski, Ref. 211, the chapters by Lewis and Saunders, 47–97, pp. 47–78 and by Smith, pp. 99–162.

The R groups may be alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen, though if hydrogen migrates, the product is the unstable $R_2C{=}NH$. The mechanism is essentially the same as that of the Curtius rearrangement. However, in pyrolysis of tertiary alkyl azides, there is evidence that free alkyl nitrenes are intermediates.[222] The reaction can also be carried out with acid catalysis, in which case lower temperatures can be used, although the acid may hydrolyze the imine (reaction **6-2**). Cycloalkyl azides give ring expansion.[223]

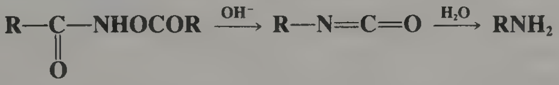


Aryl azides also give ring expansion on heating, e.g.,[224]



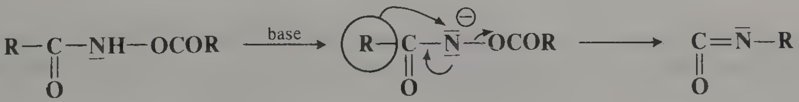
OS **III,** 846; **IV,** 819; **V,** 273; **51,** 48; **59,** 1. Also see OS **55,** 32.

8-18 The Lossen Rearrangement



$$R-\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}-NHOCOR \xrightarrow{OH^-} R-N{=}C{=}O \xrightarrow{H_2O} RNH_2$$

The O-acyl derivatives of hydroxamic acids[225] give isocyanates when treated with bases or sometimes even just on heating,[226] in a reaction known as the *Lossen rearrangement.* The mechanism is similar to that of reactions **8-16** and **8-17:**



This reaction is performed much less often than reactions **8-16, 8-17,** or **8-19,** because hydroxamic acids are not readily available. The reaction can be carried out under particularly mild conditions by treatment of a hydroxamic acid with 1-benzyl-3-dimethylaminopropylcarbodiimide, which is water-soluble.[227] It is possible to convert ArCOOH to $ArNH_2$ in one step by heating the acid with nitromethane in polyphosphoric acid. The hydroxamic acid is an intermediate, and this is actually a Lossen rearrangement.[228] An N-phenyl hydroxamic acid derivative has been reported to give a Lossen rearrangement.[229]

---

[222] Abramovitch and Kyba, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 480 (1974); Montgomery and Saunders, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2368 (1976).

[223] Smith and Lakritz, cited in Smith, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, p. 474.

[224] Huisgen, Vossius, and Appl, *Chem. Ber.* **91,** 1, 12 (1958).

[225] For a review of hydroxamic acids, see Bauer and Exner, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **13,** 376–384 (1974) [*Angew. Chem.* **86,** 419–428].

[226] For a review, see Yale, *Chem. Rev.* **33,** 209 (1943).

[227] Hoare, Olson, and Koshland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1638 (1968). For other variations see Bittner, Grinberg, and Kartoon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1965 (1974); King, Pike, and Walton, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 351 (1978).

[228] Bachman and Goldmacher, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 2576 (1964).

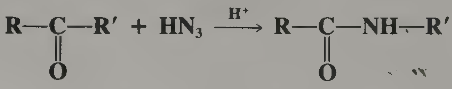
[229] Sheradsky and Avramovici-Grisaru, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2325 (1978).

8-19 The Schmidt Reaction

$$\mathrm{RCOOH} + \mathrm{HN_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H^+}} \mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}O} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{RNH_2}$$

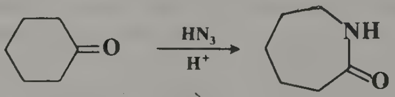
There are actually three reactions called by the name *Schmidt reaction,* involving the addition of hydrazoic acid to carboxylic acids, aldehydes and ketones, and alcohols and olefins.[230] The most common is the reaction with carboxylic acids, illustrated above.[231] Sulfuric acid is the most common catalyst, but Lewis acids have also been used. Good results are obtained for aliphatic R, especially for long chains. When R is aryl, the yields are variable, being best for sterically hindered compounds like mesitoic acid. This method has the advantage over **8-16** and **8-17** that it is just one step (in practice, not in mechanism) from the acid to the amine, but conditions are more drastic.[232] Under the acid conditions employed, the isocyanate is virtually never isolated, though this has been accomplished.[233]

The reaction between a ketone and hydrazoic acid is a method for "insertion" of NH between the carbonyl group and one R group, converting a ketone into an amide.[234]



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'} + \mathrm{HN_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H^+}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH{-}R'}$$

Either or both of the R groups may be aryl. In general, dialkyl ketones and cyclic ketones react more rapidly than alkyl aryl ketones, and these more rapidly than diaryl ketones. The latter require sulfuric acid and do not react in concentrated HCl, which is strong enough for dialkyl ketones. Dialkyl and cyclic ketones react sufficiently faster than diaryl or aryl alkyl ketones—or carboxylic acids or alcohols—that these functions may be present in the same molecule without interference. Cyclic ketones give lactams:[235]



With alkyl aryl ketones, it is the aryl group that generally migrates to the nitrogen, except when the alkyl group is bulky.[236] The reaction has been applied to a few aldehydes, but rarely. With aldehydes the product is usually the nitrile (**6-22**). Even with ketones, conversion to the nitrile is often a side reaction, especially with the type of ketone that gives **7-41**. Aromatic aldehydes and ketones containing an *o*-hydroxy group give *o*-hydroxy aromatic amides when treated with NaOH and monochloroamine NH_2Cl.[237]

Alcohols and olefins react with HN_3 to give alkyl azides, which in the course of reaction rearrange in the same way as discussed in reaction **8-17**.[221]

There is evidence that the mechanism with carboxylic acids[231] is similar to that of reaction

---

[230] For a review, see Banthorpe, Ref. 218, pp. 405–434.

[231] For a review, see Koldobskii, Ostrovskii, and Gidaspov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **47,** 1084 (1978).

[232] For a comparison of reactions **8-16** to **8-19** as methods for converting an acid to an amine, see Smith, *Org. React.* **3,** 337–449 (1946), pp. 363–366.

[233] Rutherford and Newman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 213 (1957).

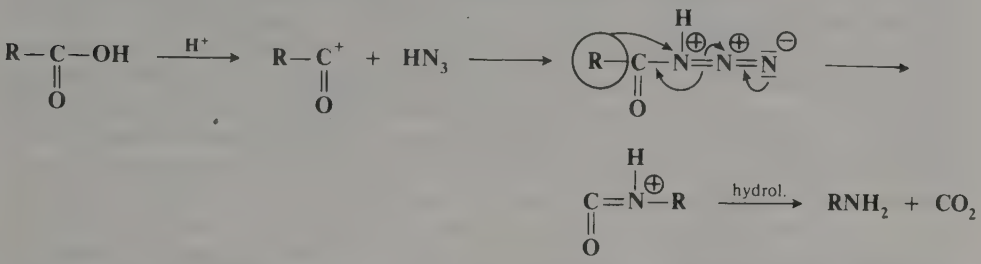
[234] For reviews, see Koldobskii, Tereshchenko, Gerasimova, and Bagal, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 835–846 (1971); Beckwith, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Amides," pp. 137–145, Interscience, New York, 1970; Smith, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 507–527.

[235] For a review with respect to bicyclic ketones, see Krow, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 1283–1307 (1981).

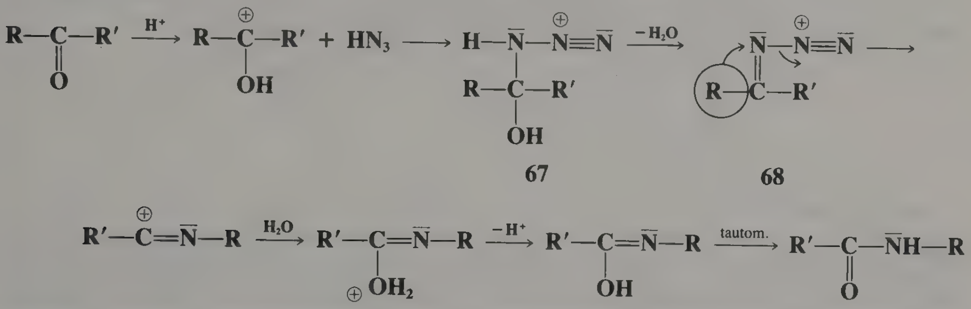
[236] Exceptions to this statement have been noted in the case of cyclic aromatic ketones bearing electron-donating groups in ortho and para positions: Bhalerao and Thyagarajan, *Can. J. Chem.* **46,** 3367 (1968); Tomita, Minami, and Uyeo, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 183 (1969).

[237] Crochet and Kovacic, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 716 (1973).

8-17, except that it is the protonated azide that undergoes the rearrangement:[238]



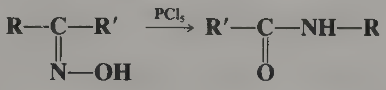
The first step is the same as that of the AAC1 mechanism (**0-11**), which explains why good results are obtained with hindered substrates. The mechanism with ketones is[239]



Note the similarity of this mechanism to those of "insertion" of CH_2 (**8-10**) and of O (**8-22**). The three reactions are essentially analogous, both in products and in mechanism.[240] Also note the similarity of the latter part of this mechanism to that of the Beckmann rearrangement (**8-20**).

OS **V**, 408; **56**, 107. See also OS **V**, 623.

8-20 The Beckmann Rearrangement



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{N-OH}{\|}}{C}{-}R' \xrightarrow{PCl_5} R'{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}NH{-}R$$

When oximes are treated with PCl_5 or a number of other reagents, they rearrange to substituted amides in a reaction called the *Beckmann rearrangement*.[241] Among other reagents used have been concentrated H_2SO_4, formic acid, liquid SO_2, PPh_3-CCl_4,[242] HMPT,[243] 2-chloropyridinium fluorosulfonate,[244] $SOCl_2$,[245] silica gel,[246] P_2O_5-methanesulfonic acid,[247] HCl-HOAc-Ac_2O, and polyphosphoric acid.[248] The group that migrates is generally the one anti to the hydroxyl, and this is often used as a method of determining the configuration of the oxime. However, it is not unequivocal. It is known that with some oximes the syn group migrates and that with others, especially where R and R′ are both alkyl, mixtures of the two possible amides are obtained. However, this behavior does not necessarily mean that the syn group actually undergoes migration. In most cases the oxime undergoes isomerization under the reaction conditions *before* migration takes place.[249] The scope of the reaction is quite broad. R and R′ may be alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen. However, hydrogen very seldom *migrates,* so that the reaction is not generally a means of converting aldoximes to unsubstituted amides $RCONH_2$. This conversion can be accomplished, though, by treatment of the aldoxime with nickel acetate under neutral conditions[250] or by heating the aldoxime for 60 hr at 100°C after it has been adsorbed onto silica gel.[251] As in the case of the Schmidt rearrangement, when the oxime is derived from an alkyl aryl ketone, it is generally the aryl group that preferentially migrates. The oximes of cyclic ketones give ring enlargement,[252] e.g.,

---

[238] There has been some controversy about this mechanism. For a discussion, see Vogler and Hayes, *J. Org. Chem.* **44**, 3682 (1979).

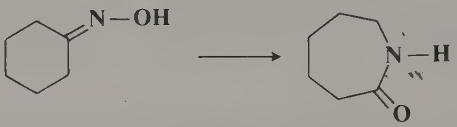
[239] Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **70**, 320 (1948); Smith and Antoniades, *Tetrahedron* **9**, 210 (1960. A slightly different mechanism, involving direct rearrangement of **67**, has been shown in certain cases: Fikes and Shechter, *J. Org. Chem.* **44**, 741 (1979). See also Bach and Wolber, *J. Org. Chem.* **47**, 239 (1982).

[240] For evidence for this mechanism, see Koldobskii, Enin, Naumov, Ostrovskii, Tereshchenko, and Bagal, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **8**, 242 (1972); Ostrovskii, Koshtaleva, Shirokova, Koldobskii, and Gidaspov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **10**, 2365 (1974); Ref. 234.

[241] For reviews, see McCarty, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," pp. 408–439, Interscience, New York, 1970; Donaruma and Heldt, *Org. React.* **11**, 1–156 (1960); Smith, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 483–507.

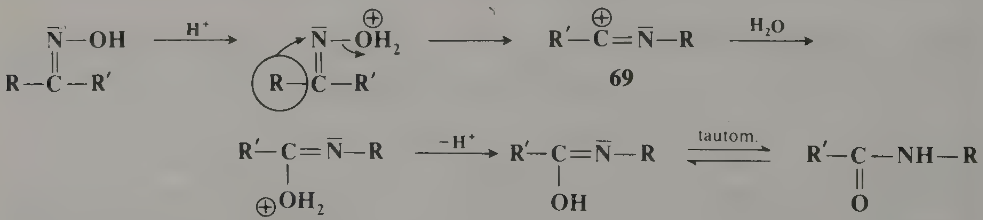
[242] Waters, Wakabayashi, and Fields, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **6**, 53 (1974).

[243] Monson and Broline, *Can. J. Chem.* **51**, 942 (1973); Gupton, Idoux, Leonard, and DeCrescenzo, *Synth. Commun.* **13**, 1083 (1983).



Not only do oximes undergo the Beckmann rearrangement, but so also do esters of oximes with many acids, organic and inorganic. A side reaction with many substrates is the formation of nitriles (the "abnormal" Beckmann rearrangement, **7-41**). Cyclic ketones can be converted directly to lactams in one laboratory step by treatment with NH_2OSO_2OH and formic acid (**6-20** takes place first, then the Beckmann rearrangement).[253]

In the first step of the mechanism, the OH group is converted by the reagent to a better leaving group. After that, the mechanism follows a course analogous to that for the Schmidt reaction of ketones (**8-19**) from the formation of **68** on:[254]



---

[244] Shiono, Echigo, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 1397 (1976).

[245] Butler and O'Donoghue, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 18 (1983).

[246] Costa, Mestres, and Riego, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 1003 (1982).

[247] Eaton, Carlson, and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4071 (1973).

[248] For reviews of Beckmann rearrangements with polyphosphoric acid, see Beckwith, in Zabicky, Ref. 234, pp. 131–137; Uhlig and Snyder, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **1,** 35–81 (1960), pp. 65–68.

[249] Lansbury and Mancuso, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2445 (1965) have shown that some Beckmann rearrangements are *authentically* nonstereospecific.

[250] Field, Hughmark, Shumaker, and Marshall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1983 (1961). See also Leusink, Meerbeek, and Noltes, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **95,** 123 (1976), **96,** 142 (1977).

[251] Chattopadhyaya and Rama Rao, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 2899 (1974).

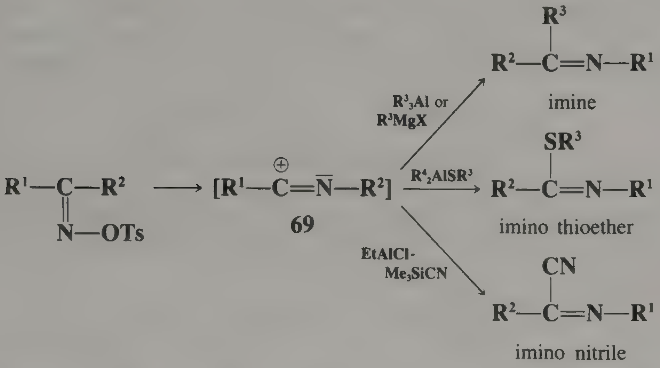
[252] For a review of such ring enlargements, see Vinnik and Zarakhani, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 51–64 (1967). For a review with respect to bicyclic oximes, see Ref. 235.

[253] Olah and Fung, *Synthesis* 537 (1979). See also Novoselov, Isaev, Yurchenko, Vodichka, and Trshiska, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 2284 (1981).

[254] For summaries of the considerable evidence for this mechanism, see Ref. 241: Donaruma and Heldt, pp. 5–14; Smith, pp. 488–493.

The other reagents convert OH to an ester leaving group (e.g., $OPCl_4$ from PCl_5 and OSO_2OH from concentrated H_2SO_4[255]). Alternatively, the attack on **69** can be by the leaving group, if different from H_2O. Intermediates of the form **69** have been detected by nmr and uv spectroscopy.[256] The rearrangement has also been found to take place by a different mechanism, involving formation of a nitrile by fragmentation, and then addition by a Ritter reaction (**6-56**).[257] Beckmann rearrangements have also been carried out photochemically.[258]

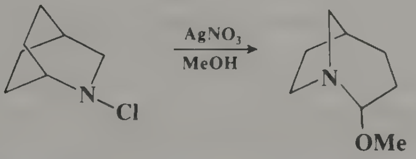
If the rearrangement of oxime sulfonates is induced by organoaluminum reagents, the intermediate **69** is captured by the nucleophile originally attached to the Al. By this means an oxime



can be converted to an imine, an imino thioether, or an imino nitrile[259] (in the last case, the nucleophile comes from added trimethylsilyl cyanide). The imine can be reduced to an amine (**6-27**) or treated with a Grignard reagent (**6-36**) to give a *t*-alkyl secondary amine. The imine-producing reaction can also be accomplished with a Grignard reagent in benzene or toluene.[260]

OS **II,** 76, 371.

8-21 Stieglitz and Related Rearrangements



Besides the reactions discussed at **8-16** to **8-20**, a number of other rearrangements are known in which an alkyl group migrates from C to N. Certain bicyclic N-haloamines, for example N-chloro-2-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane (above), undergo rearrangement when solvolyzed in the presence of silver nitrate.[261] This reaction is similar to the Wagner–Meerwein rearrangement (**8-1**) and is initiated by the silver-catalyzed departure of the chloride ion.[262] Similar reactions have been used for ring expansions and contractions, analogous to those discussed for reaction **8-3**.[263] An example is the conversion of 1-(N-chloroamino)cyclopropanols to β-lactams.[264]

---

[255] Gregory, Moodie, and Schofield, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 338 (1970); Kim, Kawakami, Ando, and Yukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **52,** 1115 (1979).

[256] Gregory, Moodie, and Schofield, Ref. 255.

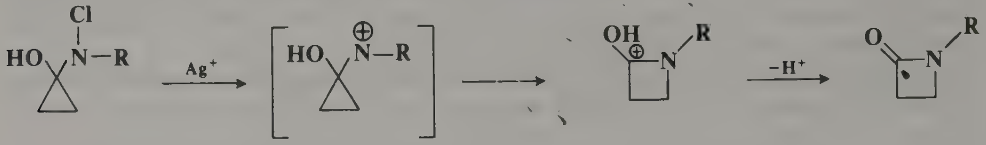
[257] Hill, Conley, and Chortyk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5646 (1965); Palmere, Conley, and Rabinowitz, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4095 (1972).

[258] For example, see Izawa, Mayo, and Tabata, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 51 (1969); Cunningham, Ng Lim, and Just, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 2891 (1971); Suginome and Yagihashi, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2488 (1977).

[259] Maruoka, Miyazaki, Ando, Matsumura, Sakane, Hattori, and Yamamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2831 (1983).

[260] Hattori, Maruoka, and Yamamoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3395 (1982).

[261] Gassman and Fox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 338 (1967). See also Gassman and Cryberg, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2047 (1969); Fleury, Biehler, and Desbois, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4091 (1969); Schell and Ganguly, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4069 (1980).



The name *Stieglitz rearrangement* is generally applied to the rearrangements of trityl N-haloamines and hydroxylamines. These reactions are similar to the rearrangements of alkyl azides

$$Ar_3CNHX \xrightarrow{\text{base}} Ar_2C{=}NAr$$

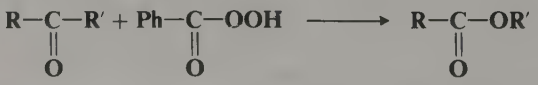
$$Ar_3CNHOH \xrightarrow{PCl_5} Ar_2C{=}NAr$$

(**8-17**), and the name Stieglitz rearrangement is also given to the rearrangement of trityl azides. Another similar reaction is the rearrangement undergone by tritylamines when treated with lead tetraacetate:[265]

$$Ar_3CNH_2 \xrightarrow{Pb(OAc)_4} Ar_2C{=}NAr$$

D. Carbon-to-Oxygen Migrations of R and Ar

8-22 The Baeyer–Villiger Rearrangement



$$\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{R—C—R'}} + \underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{Ph—C—OOH}} \longrightarrow \underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{R—C—OR'}}$$

The treatment of ketones with peracids such as perbenzoic or peracetic acid, or with other peroxy compounds in the presence of acid catalysts, gives esters by "insertion" of oxygen. The reaction is called the *Baeyer–Villiger rearrangement*.[266] A particularly good reagent is peroxytrifluoroacetic acid. Reactions with this reagent are rapid and clean, giving high yields of product, though it is often necessary to add a buffer such as Na_2HPO_4 to prevent transesterification of the product with trifluoroacetic acid. The reaction is often applied to cyclic ketones to give lactones.[267] For acyclic compounds, R′ must usually be secondary, tertiary, or vinylic, although primary R′ has been rearranged with peroxytrifluoroacetic acid,[268] with BF_3-H_2O_2,[269] and with $K_2S_2O_8$-H_2SO_4.[270] For unsymmetrical ketones the approximate order of migration is tertiary alkyl > secondary alkyl, aryl > primary alkyl > methyl. Since the methyl group has a low migrating ability, the reaction provides a means of cleaving a methyl ketone R′COMe to produce an alcohol or phenol R′OH (by hydrolysis of the ester R′OCOMe). Diaryl ketones give the reaction but are seldom used preparatively. The migrating ability of aryl groups is increased by electron-donating and decreased by electron-withdrawing substituents.[271] Enolizable β-diketones do not react. α-Diketones can be converted to anhydrides. With aldehydes, migration of hydrogen gives the carboxylic acid, and this is a way of accomplishing reaction **4-6.** Migration of the other group would give formates, but this seldom happens, though in some cases aryl aldehydes have been converted to formates[272] (see also the Dakin reaction in **9-12**).

---

[262] For C → N rearrangements induced by $AlCl_3$, see Kovacic, Lowery, and Roskos, *Tetrahedron* **26,** 529 (1970).

[263] Gassman and Carrasquillo, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 109 (1971).

[264] Wasserman, Adickes, and Espejo de Ochoa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5586 (1971); Wasserman, Glazer, and Hearn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4855 (1973).

[265] Sisti, *Chem. Commun.* 1272 (1968); Sisti and Milstein, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3932 (1974).

[266] For reviews, see Plesničar, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. C, pp. 254–267, Academic Press, New York, 1978; House, "Modern Synthetic Reactions," 2d ed., pp. 321–329, W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972; Lewis, in Augustine, "Oxidation," vol. 1, pp. 237–244, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Lee and Uff, *Q. Rev. Chem. Soc.* **21,** 429–457 (1967), pp. 449–453; Smith, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 577–589.

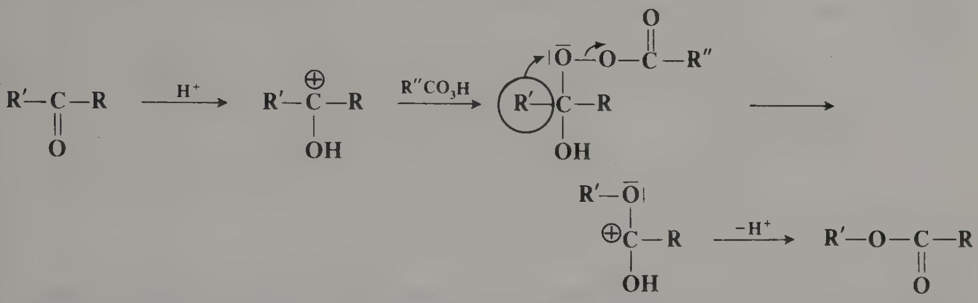
[267] For a review of the reaction as applied to bicyclic ketones, see Krow, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 2697–2724 (1981).

[268] Emmons and Lucas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 2287 (1955).

[269] McClure and Williams, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 24 (1962).

[270] Deno, Billups, Kramer, and Lastomirsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3080 (1970).

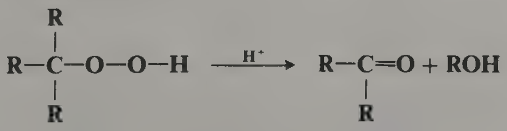
The mechanism[273] is similar to those of the analogous reactions with hydrazoic acid (**8-19** with ketones) and diazomethane (**8-9**):



One important piece of evidence for this mechanism was that benzophenone–^{18}O gave ester entirely labeled in the carbonyl oxygen, with none in the alkoxyl oxygen.[274] Carbon-14 isotope-effect studies on acetophenones have shown that migration of aryl groups takes place in the rate-determining step,[275] demonstrating that migration of Ar is concerted with departure of OCOR″.[276] (It is hardly likely that migration would be the slow step if the leaving group departed first to give an ion with a positive charge on an oxygen atom, which would be a highly unstable species.)

Ketones can be doubly oxidized to dialkyl carbonates [$R_2CO \rightarrow (RO)_2CO$] by treatment with *m*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid.[277]

8-23 Rearrangement of Hydroperoxides



$$R_3C{-}O{-}O{-}H \xrightarrow{H^+} R_2C{=}O + ROH$$

Hydroperoxides (R = alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen) can be cleaved by proton or Lewis acids in a reaction whose principal step is a rearrangement.[278] The reaction has also been applied to peroxy esters $R_3COOCOR'$, but less often. When aryl and alkyl groups are both present, migration of aryl dominates. Among alkyl groups the migratory order is tertiary R > secondary R > Pr ≈ H > Et ≫ Me.[270] It is not necessary actually to prepare and isolate hydroperoxides. The reaction takes place when the alcohols are treated with H_2O_2 and acids. Migration of an alkyl group of a primary hydroperoxide provides a means for converting an alcohol to its next lower homolog ($RCH_2OOH \rightarrow CH_2{=}O + ROH$).[270]

---

[271] For a report of substituent effects in the α, β, and γ positions of alkyl groups, see Noyori, Sato, and Kobayashi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 2661 (1983).

[272] For example;, see Godfrey, Sargent, and Elix, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1353 (1974).

[273] Proposed by Criegee, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **560,** 127 (1948).

[274] Doering and Dorfman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 5595 (1953). For summaries of the other evidence, see Smith, Ref. 266, pp. 578–584.

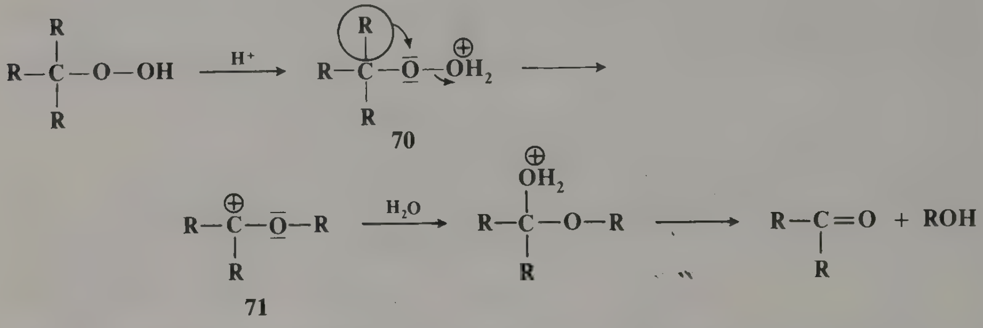
[275] Palmer and Fry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2580 (1970). See also Mitsuhashi, Miyadera, and Simamura, *Chem. Commun.* 1301 (1970). For secondary isotope-effect studies, see Winnik, Stoute, and Fitzgerald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1977 (1974).

[276] In some cases the rate-determining step has been shown to be the addition of peracid to the substrate [see, for example, Ogata and Sawaki, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2953 (1972)]. Even in these cases it is still highly probable that migration is concerted with departure of the nucleofuge.

[277] Bailey and Shih, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1769 (1982).

[278] For reviews, see Yablokov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 833–842 (1980); Lee and Uff, Ref. 266, 445–449.

The mechanism is as follows:[279]



70

71

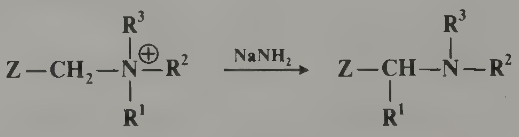
$$R_3C{-}O{-}OH \xrightarrow{H^+} R_3C{-}\overline{O}{-}\overset{\oplus}{O}H_2 \longrightarrow R_2\overset{\oplus}{C}{-}\overline{O}{-}R \xrightarrow{H_2O} R_2C(\overset{\oplus}{O}H_2){-}O{-}R \longrightarrow R_2C{=}O + ROH$$

The last step is hydrolysis of the unstable hemiacetal. Alkoxycarbocation intermediates (**71**, R = alkyl) have been isolated in super-acid solution,[280] at low temperatures, and their structures proved by nmr.[281] The protonated hydroperoxides (**70**) could not be observed in these solutions, evidently reacting immediately on formation.

OS **V**, 818.

E. Nitrogen-to-Carbon, Oxygen-to-Carbon, and Sulfur-to-Carbon Migration

8-24 The Stevens Rearrangement



$$Z{-}CH_2{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}R^1R^2R^3 \xrightarrow{NaNH_2} Z{-}CH(R^1){-}NR^2R^3$$

In the *Stevens rearrangement* a quaternary ammonium salt containing an electron-withdrawing group Z on one of the carbons attached to the nitrogen is treated with a strong base (such as NaOR or $NaNH_2$) to give a rearranged tertiary amine. Z is a group such as RCO, ROOC, phenyl, etc.[282] The most common migrating groups are allyl, benzyl, benzhydryl, 3-phenylpropargyl, and phenacyl, though even methyl migrates to a sufficiently negative center.[283] When an allyl group migrates, it may or may not involve an allylic rearrangement within the migrating group (see **8-39**), depending on the substrate and reaction conditions. In a few cases the reaction has been applied to compounds without a Z group, but stronger bases are required and yields are often low.[284]

---

[279] For a discussion of the transition state involved in the migration step, see Wistuba and Rüchardt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3389 (1981).

[280] For a review of peroxy compounds in super acids, see Olah, Parker, and Yoneda, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 909–931 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 962–984].

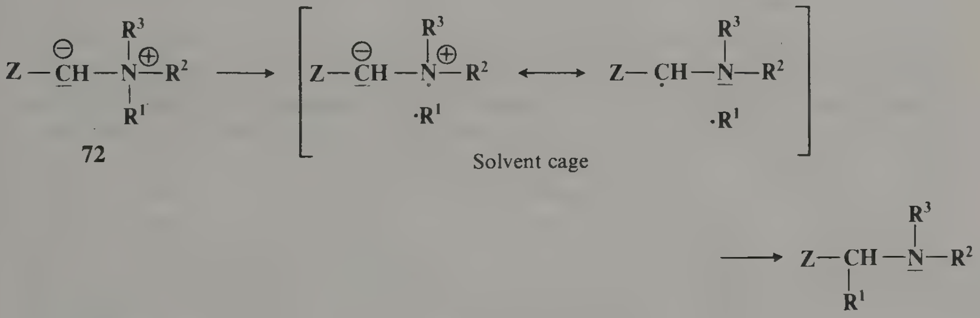
[281] Sheldon and van Doorn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1021 (1973).

[282] For reviews of the Stevens rearrangement, see Lepley and Giumanini, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 297–440 (1971); Pine, *Org. React.* **18,** 403–464 (1970). For reviews of the Stevens and the closely related Wittig rearrangement (**8-26**), see Stevens and Watts, Ref. 1, pp. 81–116; Wilt, in Kochi, Ref. 51, pp. 448–458; Iwai, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **2,** 73–116 (1969), pp. 105–113; Stevens, *Prog. Org. Chem.* **7,** 48–74 (1968); Zimmerman, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 345–406.

[283] Migration of aryl is rare, but has been reported: Heaney and Ward, *Chem. Commun.* 810 (1969); Truce and Heuring, *Chem. Commun.* 1499 (1969).

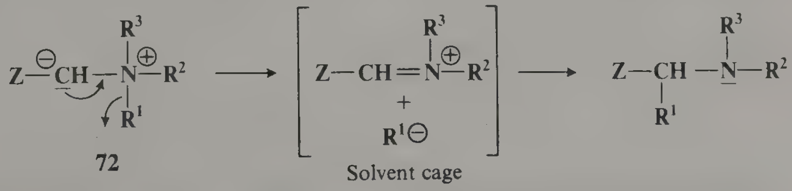
The mechanism has been the subject of much study.[285] That the rearrangement is intramolecular was shown by crossover experiments, by ^{14}C labeling,[286] and by the fact that retention of configuration is found at R.[287] The first step is loss of the acidic proton to give the ylide **72,** which has been isolated.[288] The finding[289] that CIDNP spectra[290] (p. 163) could be obtained in many instances shows that in these cases the product is formed directly from a free-radical precursor. The following radical pair mechanism was proposed:[291]

Mechanism *a*



The radicals do not drift apart because they are held together by the solvent cage. According to this mechanism, the radicals must recombine rapidly in order to account for the fact that R^1 does not racemize. Other evidence in favor of mechanism *a* is that in some cases small amounts of coupling products (R^1R^1) have been isolated,[292] which would be expected if some $\cdot R^1$ leaked from the solvent cage. However, not all the evidence is easily compatible with mechanism *a*.[293] It is possible that another mechanism (*b*) similar to mechanism *a*, but involving ion pairs in a solvent cage instead of radical pairs, operates in some cases. A third possible mechanism would be a

Mechanism *b*



---

[284] For example, see Adams, Liu, and Kovacic, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 427 (1974); Fry, Adlington, Badger, and McCullough, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 429 (1974).

[285] For example, see Pine, *J. Chem. Educ.* **48,** 99–102 (1971).

[286] Stevens, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2107 (1930); Johnstone and Stevens, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4487 (1955).

[287] Brewster and Kline, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 5179 (1952); Schöllkopf, Ludwig, Ostermann, and Patsch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3415 (1969).

[288] Jemison, Mageswaran, Ollis, Potter, Pretty, Sutherland, and Thebtaranonth, *Chem. Commun.* 1201 (1970).

[289] Lepley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1237 (1969), *Chem. Commun.* 1460 (1969); Lepley, Becker, and Giumanini, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1222 (1971); Baldwin and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3646 (1969); Jemison and Morris, *Chem. Commun.* 1226 (1969); Ref. 288; Schöllkopf, Ludwig, Ostermann, and Patsch, Ref. 287.

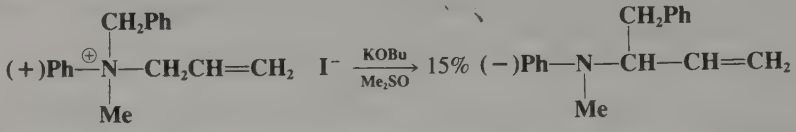
[290] For a review of the application of CIDNP to rearrangement reactions, see Lepley, in Lepley and Closs, "Chemically Induced Magnetic Polarization," pp. 323–384, Wiley, New York, 1973.

[291] Schöllkopf and Ludwig, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 2224 (1968); Ollis, Rey, and Sutherland, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 1* 1009, 1049 (1983).

[292] Schöllkopf, Ludwig, Ostermann, and Patsch, Ref. 287; Hennion and Shoemaker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1769 (1970).

[293] See, for example, Pine, Catto, and Yamagishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3663 (1970).

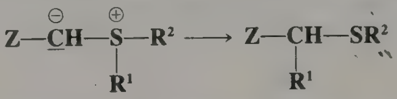
concerted 1,2-shift,[294] but the orbital symmetry principle requires that this take place with inversion at R′.[295] A migration with retention is forbidden (see p. 1019). Since the actual migration takes place with retention, it cannot, according to this argument, proceed by a concerted mechanism.[296] However, in the case where the migrating group is allylic, a concerted mechanism can also operate (**8-39**). An interesting finding which is compatible with all three mechanisms is that optically active allylbenzylmethylphenylammonium iodide (asymmetric nitrogen, see p. 86) gave optically active product:[297]



$$(+)\mathrm{Ph}\overset{\oplus}{-}\underset{\underset{\mathrm{Me}}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{CH_2Ph}}{|}}{\mathrm{N}}}-\mathrm{CH_2CH{=}CH_2}\quad \mathrm{I}^- \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Me_2SO}]{\mathrm{KOBu}} 15\%\ (-)\mathrm{Ph}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{Me}}{|}}{\mathrm{N}}-\overset{\overset{\mathrm{CH_2Ph}}{|}}{\mathrm{CH}}-\mathrm{CH{=}CH_2}$$

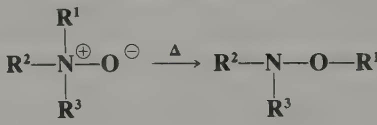
The Sommelet–Hauser rearrangement competes when Z is an aryl group (see **3-27**). Hofmann elimination competes when one of the R groups contains a β-hydrogen atom (**7-6** and **7-7**).

Sulfur ylides containing a Z group give an analogous rearrangement, often also referred to as a Stevens rearrangement.[298] In this case too, there is much evidence (including CIDNP) that a



$$\mathrm{Z}-\overset{\ominus}{\underline{\mathrm{C}}\mathrm{H}}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{R^1}}{|}}{\overset{\oplus}{\mathrm{S}}}-\mathrm{R^2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Z}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{R^1}}{|}}{\mathrm{CH}}-\mathrm{SR^2}$$

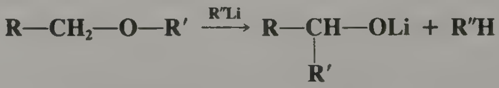
radical-pair cage mechanism is operating,[299] except that when the migrating group is allyl, the mechanism may be different (see **8-39**). Another reaction with a similar mechanism[300] is the *Meisenheimer rearrangement,*[301] in which certain tertiary amine oxides rearrange on heating to give



$$\mathrm{R^2}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{R^3}}{|}}{\overset{\overset{\mathrm{R^1}}{|}}{\mathrm{N}}}\overset{\oplus}{-}\mathrm{O}^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathrm{R^2}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{R^3}}{|}}{\mathrm{N}}-\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{R^1}$$

substituted hydroxylamines. The migrating group R^1 is almost always allylic or benzilic.[302] R^2 and R^3 may be alkyl or aryl, but if one of the R groups contains a β-hydrogen, the Cope elimination reaction (**7-8**) often competes.

8-25 The Wittig Rearrangement



$$\mathrm{R}-\mathrm{CH_2}-\mathrm{O}-\mathrm{R'} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{R''Li}} \mathrm{R}-\underset{\underset{\mathrm{R'}}{|}}{\mathrm{CH}}-\mathrm{OLi} + \mathrm{R''H}$$

The rearrangement of ethers with alkyllithium is called the *Wittig rearrangement* (not to be confused with the Wittig reaction, **6-47**) and is similar to **8-24.**[282] However, a stronger base is required (e.g., phenyllithium or sodium amide). R and R′ may be alkyl, aryl, or vinyl.[303] Also, one of the hydrogens may be replaced by an alkyl or aryl group, in which case the product is the salt of a tertiary alcohol. Migratory aptitudes here are allyl, benzyl > ethyl > methyl > phenyl.[304] The following radical-pair mechanism[305] (similar to mechanism *a* of **8-24**) is likely, after removal of the proton by the base. One of the radicals in the radical pair is a ketyl radical. Among the evidence for this mechanism is (1) the rearrangement is largely intramolecular; (2) migratory aptitudes are in the order of free-radical stabilities, not of carbanion stabilities[306] (which rules out an ion-pair mechanism similar to mechanism *b* of **8-24**); (3) aldehydes are obtained as side products;[307] (4) partial racemization of R′ has been observed[308] (the remainder of the product retained its configuration); (5) crossover products have been detected;[309] and (6) when ketyl radicals and R· radicals from different precursors were brought together, similar products resulted.[310] However, there is evidence that at least in some cases the radical-pair mechanism accounts for only a portion of the product, and some kind of concerted mechanism can also take place.[311] Most of the above investigations were carried out with systems where R′ is alkyl, but a radical-pair mechanism has also been suggested for the case where R′ is aryl.[312] When R′ is allylic a concerted mechanism can operate (**8-39**).

---

[294] For evidence against this mechanism, see Jenny and Druey, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 155 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 152].

[295] Woodward and Hoffmann, "The Conservation of Orbital Symmetry," p. 131, Academic Press, New York, 1970.

[296] It has been argued that the rearrangement takes place by a concerted mechanism, in violation of the orbital-symmetry rules: Dewar and Ramsden, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1839 (1974).

[297] Hill and Chan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 866 (1966).

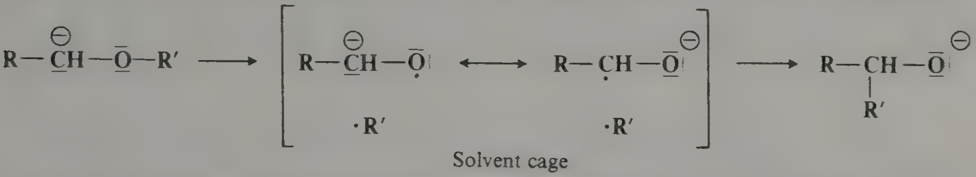
[298] For a review, see Olsen and Currie, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 2, pp. 561–566, Wiley, New York, 1974.

[299] See, for example, Baldwin, Erickson, Hackler, and Scott, *Chem. Commun.* 576 (1970); Schöllkopf, Schossig, and Ostermann, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **737,** 158 (1970); Iwamura, Iwamura, Nishida, Yoshida, and Nakayama, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 63 (1971).

[300] For some of the evidence, see Schöllkopf and Ludwig, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 2224 (1968); Ostermann and Schöllkopf, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **737,** 170 (1970); Lorand, Grant, Samuel, O'Connell, and Zaro, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4087 (1969).

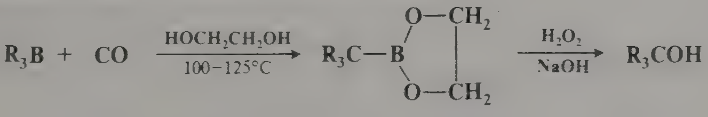
[301] For a review, see Johnstone, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **2,** 249–266 (1969).

[302] Migration of aryl and of certain alkyl groups has also been reported. See Khuthier, Ahmed, and Jallo, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1001 (1976), and references cited therein.



F. Boron-to-Carbon Migrations.[313] For another reaction involving boron-to-carbon migration, see **0-101.**

8-26 Conversion of Boranes to Tertiary Alcohols



73

---

[303] For migration of vinyl, see Rautenstrauch, Büchi, and Wüest, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2576 (1974).For migration of C(Ph)=NAr, see Katritzky and Ponkshe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1215 (1981).

[304] Wittig, *Angew. Chem.* **66,** 10 (1954).

[305] For a review of the mechanism, see Schöllkopf, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **9,** 763–773 (1970) [*Angew. Chem.* **82,** 795–805].

[306] Lansbury, Pattison, Sidler, and Bieber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 78 (1966); Schäfer, Schöllkopf, and Walter, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2809 (1968).

[307] For example, see Hauser and Kantor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 1437 (1951); Cast, Stevens, and Holmes, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3521 (1960).

[308] Schöllkopf and Fabian, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **642,** 1 (1961); Schöllkopf and Schäfer, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **663,** 22 (1963); Felkin and Frajerman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3485 (1977); Hebert and Welvart, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1035 (1980); *Nouveau J. Chim.* **5,** 327 (1981).

[309] Lansbury and Pattison, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 1933 (1962), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4295 (1962).

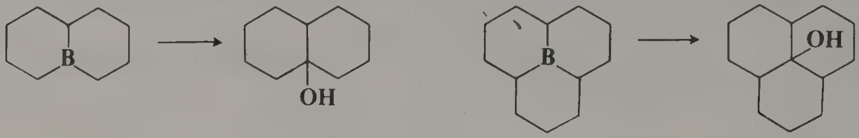
[310] Garst and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6870 (1973).

[311] Garst and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1526 (1976). For evidence against this, see Hebert, Welvart, Ghelfenstein, and Szwarc, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1381 (1983).

[312] Eisch, Kovacs, and Rhee, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **65,** 289 (1974).

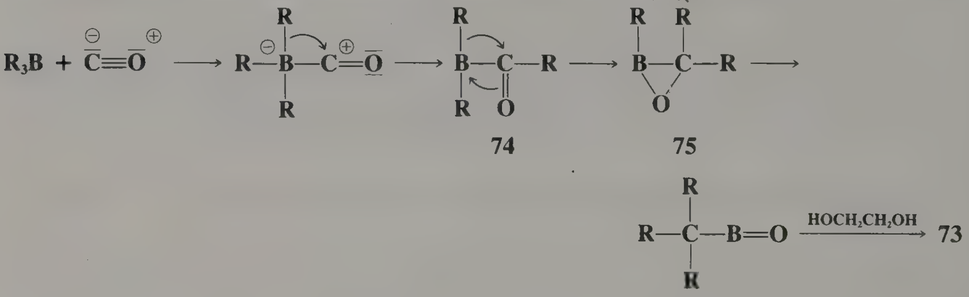
[313] For reviews, see Suzuki, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **112,** 67–115 (1983); Pelter, in Mayo-RGES, vol. 2, pp. 95–147, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **11,** 191–225 (1982); Cragg and Koch, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **6,** 393–412 (1977); Weill-Raynal, *Synthesis* 633–651 (1976); Cragg, "Organoboranes in Organic Synthesis," pp. 249–300, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1973; Paetzold and Grundke, *Synthesis* 635–660 (1973).

Trialkylboranes (which can be prepared from olefins by **5-13**) react with carbon monoxide[314] at 100 to 125°C in the presence of ethylene glycol to give the 2-bora-1,3-dioxolanes **73,** which are easily oxidized (**2-26**) to tertiary alcohols.[315] The R groups may be primary, secondary, or tertiary, and may be the same or different.[316] Yields are high and the reaction is quite useful, especially for the preparation of sterically hindered alcohols such as tricyclohexylcarbinol and tri-2-norbornylcarbinol, which are difficult to prepare by **6-30.** Heterocycles in which boron is a ring atom react similarly (except that high CO pressures are required), and cyclic alcohols can be obtained from these



substrates.[317] The preparation of such heterocyclic boranes was discussed at **5-13.** The overall conversion of a diene or triene to a cyclic alcohol has been described by H. C. Brown as "stitching" with boron and "riveting" with carbon.

Though the mechanism has not been investigated thoroughly, it has been shown to be intramolecular by the failure to find crossover products when mixtures of boranes are used.[318] The following scheme, involving three boron-to-carbon migrations, has been suggested.



74 **75**

76

The purpose of the ethylene glycol is to intercept the boronic anhydride **76,** which otherwise forms polymers that are difficult to oxidize. As we shall see in **8-27** and **8-28,** it is possible to stop the reaction after only one or two migrations have taken place.

There are two other methods for achieving the conversion $R_3B \rightarrow R_3COH$, which often give better results: (1) treatment with α,α-dichloromethyl methyl ether and the base lithium triethyl-

$$\text{Method 1}\quad R_3B + CHCl_2OMe \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O_2-NaOH]{\text{1. } LiOCEt_3-THF} R_3COH$$

$$\text{Method 2}\quad R_3B + CN^- \xrightarrow{\text{THF}} \underset{\mathbf{77}}{R_3\overset{\ominus}{B}-CN} \xrightarrow[\text{2. } NaOH-H_2O_2]{\text{1. excess } (CF_3CO)_2O} R_3COH$$

---

[314] For discussions of the reactions of boranes with CO, see Negishi, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* 7(1), 81–94 (1973); Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," pp. 343–371, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **2,** 65–72 (1969).

[315] Hillman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 4715 (1962), **85,** 982 (1963); Brown and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2737 (1967); Puzitskii, Pirozhkov, Ryabova, Pastukhova, and Eidus, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* **21,** 1939 (1972), **22,** 1760 (1973).

[316] Brown, Negishi, and Gupta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6648 (1970); Brown and Gupta, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1818 (1971); Negishi and Brown, *Synthesis* 197 (1972).

[317] Brown and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5478 (1967), **91,** 1224 (1969); Knights and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5283 (1968); Brown and Dickason, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1226 (1969).

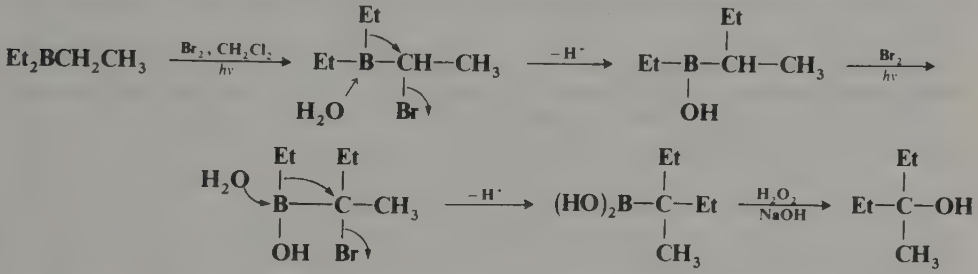
[318] Brown and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4528 (1967).

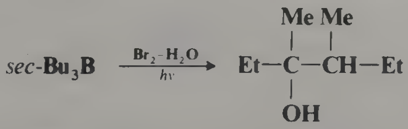
carboxide;[319] (2) treatment with a suspension of sodium cyanide in tetrahydrofuran followed by reaction of the resulting trialkylcyanoborate **77** with an excess (more than 2 moles) of trifluoroacetic anhydride.[320] All the above migrations take place with retention of configuration at the migrating carbon.[321]

Another method converts a trialkylborane to a tertiary alcohol in which only two of the R groups are derived from the borane. In this method the borane is treated with a 1-lithio-1,1-bis(phenylthio)alkane, then with $HgCl_2$, and the product is finally oxidized.[322] This method can be adapted to the preparation of secondary alcohols R_2CHOH ($R' = H$) if three equivalents of $HgCl_2$ are used.[322]

$$\mathbf{R_3B + R'\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}(SPh)_2 \longrightarrow R_3\overset{\ominus}{B}—CR'(SPh)_2 \longrightarrow R_2B—CRR'SPh \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O_2\text{-}OH^-]{\text{1. } HgCl_2} R_2R'COH}$$

A different kind of borane-to-tertiary-alcohol conversion involves treatment of a tri-*n*-alkylborane with 2 moles of bromine or N-bromosuccinimide in the presence of water and light, followed by oxidation.[323] In this reaction, illustrated for triethylborane, bromination steps (reaction **4-1**) are followed by migration steps. Tri-*sec*-alkylboranes give corresponding products, but in lower yields. However, when tri-*sec*-alkylboranes are treated with only 1 mole of Br_2, in the presence of water and light, only one migration takes place and the product is a tertiary alcohol derived from two alkyl groups.[324]





$$sec\text{-}\mathbf{Bu_3B} \xrightarrow[h\nu]{Br_2\text{-}H_2O} \mathbf{Et—\underset{OH}{\overset{Me}{C}}—\overset{Me}{C}H—Et}$$

Extension of this reaction to boranes of the form RR′R″B where R″ is thexyl, permits combination of R and R′, since thexyl neither can be α-brominated, nor does it migrate.[325]

Several other methods for the conversion of boranes to tertiary alcohols are also known.[326]

OS **61,** 103.

---

[319] Brown and Carlson, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2422 (1973); Brown, Katz, and Carlson, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3968 (1973).

[320] Pelter, Hutchings, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 186 (1973); Pelter, Hutchings, Smith, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 145 (1975); Pelter, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 206–209 (1973), *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* 7(1), 73–79 (1973).

[321] See however Pelter, Maddocks, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 805 (1978).

[322] Hughes, Ncube, Pelter, Smith, Negishi, and Yoshida, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1172 (1977).

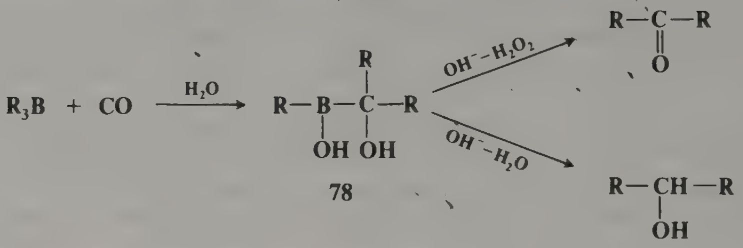
[323] Lane and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1025 (1971); Brown and Yamamoto, *Synthesis* 699 (1972).

[324] Lane and Brown, Ref. 323; Yamamoto and Brown, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 801 (1973), *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 861 (1974).

[325] Brown, Yamamoto, and Lane, *Synthesis* 304 (1972).

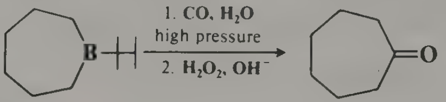
[326] See for example, Brown and Lane, *Synthesis* 303 (1972); Zweifel and Fisher, *Synthesis* 339 (1974); Midland and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2845 (1975); Levy and Schwartz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2201 (1976); Avasthi, Baba, and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 945 (1980); Baba, Avasthi, and Suzuki, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 1571 (1983); Pelter and Rao, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1149 (1981).

8-27 Conversion of Boranes to Secondary Alcohols or Ketones



78

If the reaction between trialkylboranes and carbon monoxide (**8-26**) is carried out in the presence of water followed by addition of NaOH, the product is a secondary alcohol. If H_2O_2 is added along with the NaOH, the corresponding ketone is obtained instead.[327] Various functional groups (e.g., OAc, COOR, CN) may be present in R without being affected,[328] though if they are in the α or β position relative to the boron atom, difficulties may be encountered. The reaction has been extended to the formation of unsymmetrical ketones by use of a borane of the form $R_2R'B$, where one of the groups migrates much less readily than the other (migratory aptitudes are in the order primary > secondary > tertiary). For example, *n*-alkyldicyclohexylboranes gave good yields of alkyl cyclohexyl ketones.[318] When R′ is thexyl, it is always the other two groups that migrate, so the product from a borane RR′R″B (R″ = thexyl) is the ketone RCOR′.[329] However, the thexyl reaction suffers from the disadvantage that carbonylation of boranes containing a thexyl group requires CO pressures of 70 atm. Cyclic thexylboranes give cyclic ketones,[330] e.g.,



The reaction follows the mechanism shown in **8-26** until formation of the borepoxide **75.** In the presence of water the third boron → carbon migration does not take place, because the water hydrolyzes **75** to the diol **78.**

Trialkylboranes can also be converted to ketones by the cyanoborate procedure, mentioned in **8-26.** In this case the procedure is similar, but use of an equimolar amount of trifluoroacetic

$$R_3\overset{\ominus}{B}—CN \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2\text{-}OH^-]{1.\ (CF_3CO)_2O} RCOR$$

77

anhydride leads to the ketone rather than the tertiary alcohol.[331] By this procedure thexylboranes RR′R″B (R″ = thexyl) can be converted to unsymmetrical ketones RCOR′ without the use of high pressures. Like the carbon monoxide procedure, this method tolerates the presence of various functional groups in R. Another method involves the treatment of borinic acid esters (which can be prepared by treatment of dialkylchloroboranes with alcohols) with α,α-dichloromethyl methyl

$$R_2BCl + R'OH \longrightarrow R_2BOR' \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2\text{-}OH^-]{1.\ CHCl_2OMe,\ LiOCEt_3\ \ THF,\ 25^\circ C} R_2CO$$

---

[327] Brown and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2738 (1967).

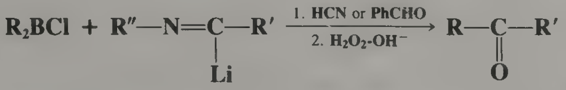
[328] Brown, Kabalka, and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4530 (1967).

[329] Brown and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5285 (1967); Negishi and Brown, *Synthesis* 196 (1972).

[330] Brown and Negishi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5477 (1967), *Chem. Commun.* 594 (1968).

[331] Pelter, Smith, Hutchings, and Rowe, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 129 (1975); Ref. 320. See also Pelter, Hutchings, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 142 (1975); Mallison, White, Pelter, Rowe, and Smith, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 234 (1978).

ether and lithium triethylcarboxide.[332] This method does not waste an R group and is carried out under mild conditions. In still another procedure ketones are prepared by the reaction between dialkylchloroboranes and lithium aldimines[333] (which can be prepared by **6-71**).



$$R_2BCl + R''\text{—}N{=}\underset{\displaystyle Li}{\underset{|}{C}}\text{—}R' \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O_2\text{-}OH^-]{\text{1. HCN or PhCHO}} R\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}\text{—}R'$$

For another conversion of trialkylboranes to ketones, see **8-30.**[334] Other conversions of boranes to secondary alcohols are also known.[335]

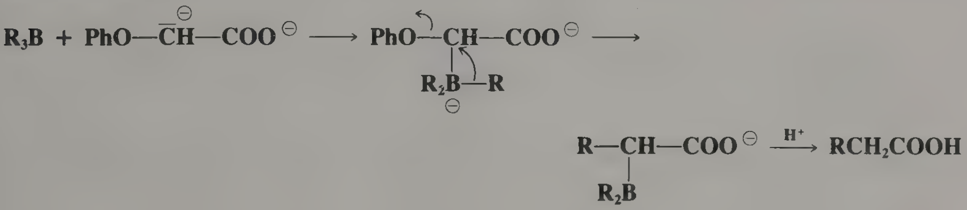
OS **58,** 24.

8-28 Conversion of Boranes to Primary Alcohols, Aldehydes, or Carboxylic Acids

$$R_3B + CO \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O_2\text{-}OH^-]{\text{1. } LiBH_4} RCH_2OH$$

$$R_3B + CO \xrightarrow[\text{2. } H_2O_2\text{-}NaH_2PO_4\text{-}Na_2HPO_4]{\text{1. } LiAl(OMe)_3} RCHO$$

When the reaction between a trialkylborane and carbon monoxide (**8-26**) is carried out in the presence of a reducing agent such as lithium borohydride or potassium triisopropoxyborohydride, the reducing agent intercepts the intermediate **74,** so that only one boron-to-carbon migration takes place, and the product is hydrolyzed to a primary alcohol or oxidized to an aldehyde.[336] This procedure wastes two of the three R groups, but this problem can be avoided by the use of B-alkyl-9-BBN derivatives (p. 426). Since only the 9-alkyl group migrates, this method permits the conversion in high yield of an alkene to a primary alcohol or aldehyde containing one more carbon.[337] When B-alkyl-9-BBN derivatives are treated with CO and lithium tri-*t*-butoxyaluminum hydride,[338] other functional groups (e.g., CN and ester) may be present in the alkyl group without being reduced.[339] Boranes can be directly converted to carboxylic acids by reaction with the dianion of phenoxyacetic acid.[340]



$$R_3B + PhO\text{—}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}H}\text{—}COO^{\ominus} \longrightarrow PhO\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle \underset{\ominus}{R_2B}\text{—}R}{\underset{|}{CH}}\text{—}COO^{\ominus} \longrightarrow R\text{—}\underset{\displaystyle R_2B}{\underset{|}{CH}}\text{—}COO^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{H^+} RCH_2COOH$$

---

[332] Carlson and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 6876 (1973), *Synthesis* 776 (1973).

[333] Yamamoto, Kondo, and Moritani, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 793 (1974); *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **48,** 3682 (1975). See also Yamamoto, Kondo, and Moritani, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3644 (1975).

[334] For still other methods, see Brown, Levy, and Midland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5017 (1975); Ncube, Pelter, and Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1893 (1979); Pelter and Rao, Ref. 326; Yogo, Koshino, and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 1059 (1981); Kulkarni, Lee, and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4542 (1980), *Synthesis* 193 (1982); Brown, Bhat, and Basavaiah, *Synthesis* 885 (1983).

[335] See for example, Zweifel and Fisher, Ref. 326; Brown and Yamamoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2796 (1971), *Chem. Commun.* 1535 (1971); Brown and DeLue, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 311 (1974); Brown and Yamamoto, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 71 (1972); Hubbard and Brown, *Synthesis* 676 (1978); Uguen, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* II-99 (1981).

[336] Brown and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2740 (1967); Brown, Coleman, and Rathke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 499 (1968); Brown, Hubbard, and Smith, *Synthesis* 701 (1979). For a discussion of the mechanism, see Brown and Hubbard, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 467 (1979).

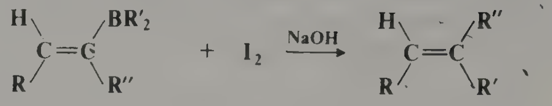
[337] Brown, Knights, and Coleman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2144 (1969).

[338] Brown and Coleman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4606 (1969).

[339] For other methods of converting boranes to aldehydes, see Yamamoto, Shiono, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 961 (1973); Negishi, Yoshida, Silveira, and Chiou, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 814 (1975); Brown and Imai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6285 (1983).

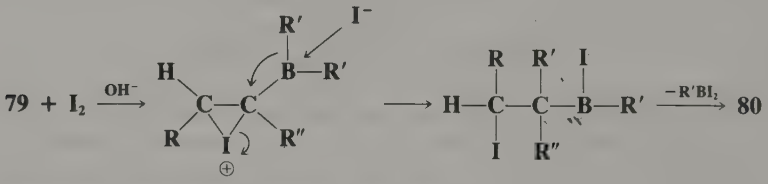
[340] Hara, Kishimura, and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2891 (1978). See also Brown and Imai, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 892 (1984).

8-29 Conversion of Vinylboranes to Alkenes



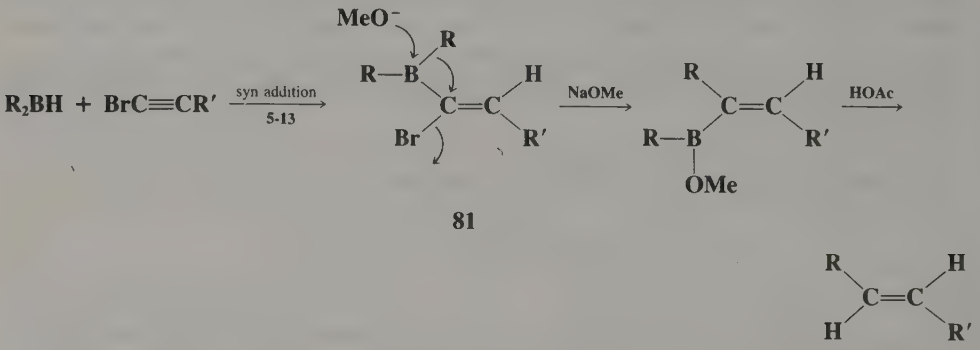
79 **80**

The reaction between trialkylborane and iodine to give alkyl iodides was mentioned at **2-28.** When the substrate contains a vinyl group, the reaction takes a different course, with one of the R′ groups migrating to the carbon, to give alkenes **80.**[341] The reaction is stereospecific in two senses: (1) if the groups R and R″ are cis in the starting compound, they will be trans in the product; (2) there is retention of configuration within the migrating group R′.[342] Since vinylboranes can be prepared from alkynes (**5-13**), this is a method for the addition of R′ and H to a triple bond. If R″ = H, the product is a cis alkene. The mechanism is believed to be



When R′ is vinyl, the product is a conjugated diene.[343]

In another procedure, the addition of a dialkylborane to a 1-haloalkyne produces an α-halovinylborane (**81**).[344] Treatment of this with NaOMe gives the rearrangement shown, and protonolysis



81

of the product produces the *E*-alkene **82.**[342] If R is a vinyl group the product is a 1,3-diene.[345] If one of the groups is thexyl, then the other migrates.[346] This extends the scope of the synthesis, since dialkylboranes where one R group is thexyl are easily prepared.

---

[341] Zweifel, Arzoumanian, and Whitney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3652 (1967); Zweifel and Fisher, *Synthesis* 376 (1975); Kulkarni, Basavaiah, and Brown, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **225,** C1 (1982); Brown, Basavaiah, and Kulkarni, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 171 (1982); Brown and Basavaiah, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3806, 5407 (1982). See also Negishi, Lew, and Yoshida, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2321 (1974).

[342] Zweifel, Fisher, Snow, and Whitney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6309 (1971).

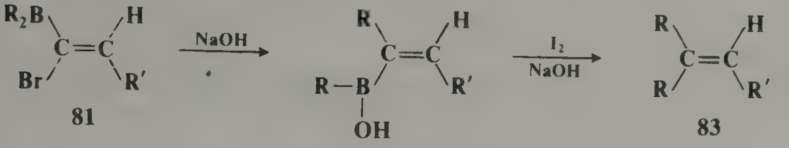
[343] Zweifel, Polston, and Whitney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 6243 (1968); Brown and Ravindran, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1617 (1973).

[344] For improvements in this method, see Brown and Basavaiah, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 754 (1982); Brown, Basavaiah, and Kulkarni, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3808 (1982).

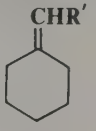
[345] Negishi and Yoshida, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 606 (1973).

[346] Corey and Ravindranathan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4013 (1972); Negishi, Katz, and Brown, *Synthesis* 555 (1972).

A combination of both of the procedures described above results in the preparation of trisubstituted olefins.[347] The entire conversion of haloalkyne to **83** can be carried out in one reaction vessel, without isolation of intermediates. If R_2BH is a heterocyclic borane, the product is an exocyclic olefin, e.g., **84.**



81 **83**



84

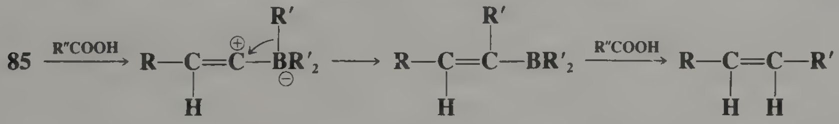
E-alkenes **82** can also be obtained[348] by treatment of **79** ($R'' = H$) with cyanogen bromide or cyanogen iodide in CH_2Cl_2[349] or with $Pd(OAc)_2$-Et_3N.[350]

8-30 Formation of Alkynes, Alkenes, and Ketones from Boranes and Acetylides

$$\mathrm{R'_3B + RC{\equiv}CLi \longrightarrow RC{\equiv}C{-}\overset{\ominus}{B}R'_3\ Li^+ \xrightarrow{I_2} RC{\equiv}CR'}$$

85

A hydrogen directly attached to a triple-bond carbon can be replaced in high yield by an alkyl or an aryl group, by treatment of the lithium acetylide with a trialkyl- or triarylborane, followed by reaction of the lithium alkynyltrialkylborate **85** with iodine.[351] R′ may be primary or secondary alkyl as well as aryl, so the reaction has a broader scope than the older reaction **0-102.**[352] R may be alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen, though in the last-mentioned case satisfactory yields are obtained only if lithium acetylide–ethylenediamine is used as the starting compound.[353] When the starting compound is ClC≡CLi, the Cl is also replaced and the product is the symmetrical alkyne RC≡CR.[354] The reaction may be adapted to the preparation of alkenes by treatment of **85** with an electrophile such as propionic acid[355] or tributyltin chloride.[356] The reaction with Bu_3SnCl stereoselectively produces the *Z* alkene.



$$85 \xrightarrow{R''COOH} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{H}{C}{=}\overset{\oplus}{C}{-}\overset{R'}{\underset{\ominus}{B}}R'_2 \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{H}{C}{=}\overset{R'}{C}{-}BR'_2 \xrightarrow{R''COOH} R{-}\underset{H}{C}{=}\underset{H}{C}{-}R'}$$

---

[347] Zweifel and Fisher, *Synthesis* 557 (1972).

[348] For other methods of converting boranes to alkenes, see Pelter, Subrahmanyam, Laub, Gould, and Harrison, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1633 (1975); Utimoto, Uchida, Yamaya, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron* **33,** 1945 (1977); Ncube, Pelter, and Smith, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1895 (1979); Levy, Angelastro, and Marinelli, *Synthesis* 945 (1980); Brown, Lee, and Kulkarni, *Synthesis* 195 (1982); Pelter, Hughes, and Rao, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 1* 719 (1982).

[349] Zweifel, Fisher, Snow, and Whitney, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6560 (1972). See also Miyaura, Abiko, Itoh, and Suzuki, *Synthesis* 669 (1975).

[350] Yatagai, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **53,** 1670 (1980).

[351] Suzuki, Miyaura, Abiko, Itoh, Brown, Sinclair, and Midland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3080 (1973); Yamada, Miyaura, Itoh, and Suzuki, *Synthesis* 679 (1977). For a review of reactions of organoborates, see Suzuki, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **15,** 178–184 (1982).

[352] For a study of the relative migratory aptitudes of R′, see Slayden, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2311 (1981).

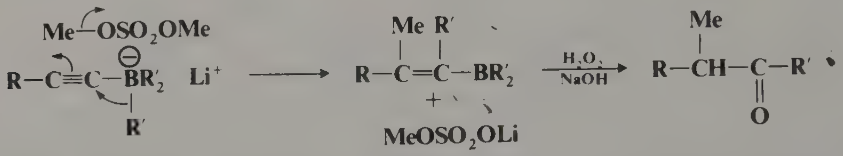
[353] Midland, Sinclair, and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 731 (1974).

[354] Yamada, Miyaura, Itoh, and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1961 (1975). For a procedure that leads to unsymmetrical alkynes, see Utimoto, Yabuki, Okada, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3969 (1976).

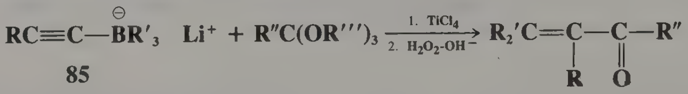
[355] Pelter, Harrison, and Kirkpatrick, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 544 (1973); Miyaura, Yoshinari, Itoh, and Suzuki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2961 (1974); Pelter, Gould, and Harrison, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3327 (1975).

[356] Hooz and Mortimer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 805 (1976).

Treatment of **85** with an electrophile such as methyl sulfate, allyl bromide, or triethyloxonium borofluoride, followed by oxidation of the resulting vinylborane gives a ketone (illustrated for methyl sulfate):[357]



The reaction of **85** with ortho esters in the presence of $TiCl_4$, followed by oxidation with H_2O_2 + OH^- gives α,β-unsaturated aldehydes or ketones,[358]



$$RC{\equiv}C{-}\overset{\ominus}{B}R'_3\ \ Li^+ + R''C(OR''')_3 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O_2\text{-}OH^-]{1.\ TiCl_4} R_2'C{=}\underset{R}{C}{-}\underset{O}{\overset{\|}{C}}{-}R''$$

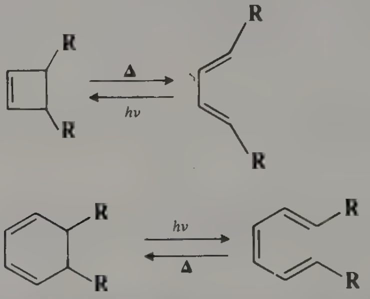
85

while reaction of **85** in THF with CO_2 (under pressure), followed by acetic acid, yields α,β-unsaturated acids R′CH=CRCOOH.[358a]

Non-1,2 Rearrangements

A. Electrocyclic Rearrangements

8-31 Electrocyclic Rearrangements of Cyclobutenes and 1,3-Cyclohexadienes



Cyclobutenes and 1,3-dienes can be interconverted by treatment with uv light or with heat. The thermal reaction is generally not reversible (though exceptions[359] are known), and many cyclobutenes have been converted to 1,3-dienes by heating at temperatures between 100 and 200°C. The photochemical conversion can in principle be carried out in either direction, but most often 1,3-dienes are converted to cyclobutenes rather than the reverse, because the dienes are stronger absorbers of light at the wavelengths used.[360] In a similar reaction, 1,3-cyclohexadienes interconvert with 1,3,5-trienes, but in this case the ring-closing process is generally favored thermally and the ring-opening process photochemically, though exceptions are known in both directions.[361]

---

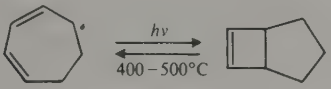
[357] Pelter, Bentley, Harrison, Subrahmanyan, and Laub, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2419 (1976); Pelter, Gould, and Harrison, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2428 (1976). See also Pelter, Harrison, and Kirkpatrick, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4491 (1973); Utimoto, Furubayashi, and Nozaki, *Chem. Lett.* 397 (1975).

[358] Hara, Dojo, and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 285 (1983).

[358a] Min-zhi, Yong-ti, and Wei-hua, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 1797 (1984).

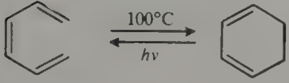
[359] For example, see Shumate, Neuman, and Fonken, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 3996 (1965); Gil-Av and Herling, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1 (1967); Doorakian and Freedman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3582 (1968); Brune and Schwab, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 4375 (1969); Steiner and Michl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6413 (1978).

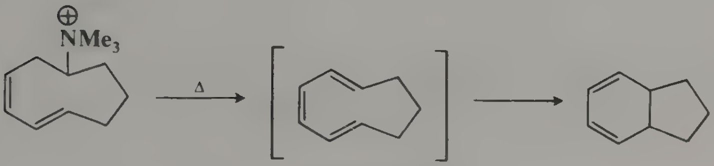
Some examples are



86

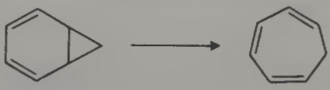
Ref. 362





Not isolated

An interesting example of a 1,3-cyclohexadiene-1,3,5-triene interconversion is the reaction of norcaradienes to give cycloheptatrienes.[363] Norcaradienes give this reaction so readily (because they are *cis*-1,2-divinylcyclopropanes, see p. 1022) that they cannot generally be isolated, though some exceptions are known[364] (see also p. 771).



Norcaradiene

These reactions, called *electrocyclic rearrangements*,[365] take place by pericyclic mechanisms. The evidence for this comes from stereochemical studies, which show a remarkable stereospecificity whose direction depends on whether the reaction is induced by heat or light. For example, it was found for the thermal reaction that *cis*-3,4-dimethylcyclobutene gave only *cis,trans*-2,4-hexadiene, while the trans isomer gave only the trans–trans diene:[366]

---

[360] For examples of photochemical conversion of a cyclobutene to a 1,3-diene, see Scherer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 7352 (1968); Saltiel and Lim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5404 (1969).

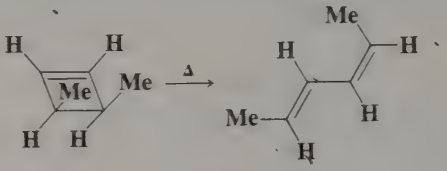
[361] For a review of photochemical rearrangements in trienes, see Dauben, McInnis, and Michno, in Mayo-RGES, vol. 3, pp. 91–129.

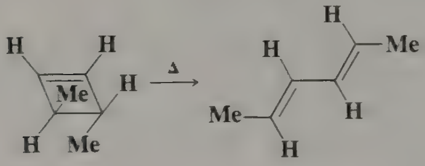
[362] Dauben and Cargill, *Tetrahedron* **12,** 186 (1961); Chapman, Pasto, Borden, and Griswold, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1220 (1962).

[363] For reviews of the norcaradiene–cycloheptatriene interconversion and the analogous benzene oxide–oxepin interconversion, see Maier, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 402–413 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 446–458]; Vogel and Günther, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 385–401 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 429–446]; Vogel, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **20,** 237–262 (1969).

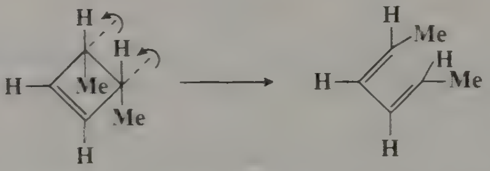
[364] See Chapter 15, Refs. 809 and 810.

[365] For a monograph on thermal isomerizations, which includes electrocyclic and sigmatropic rearrangements, as well as other types, see Gajewski, "Hydrocarbon Thermal Isomerizations," Academic Press, New York, 1981. For a monograph on electrocyclic reactions, see Marvell, "Thermal Electrocyclic Reactions," Academic Press, New York, 1980. For reviews, see George, Mitra, and Sukumaran, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 973–983 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 1005–1014]; Jutz, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **73,** 125–230 (1978); Gilchrist and Storr, "Organic Reactions and Orbital Symmetry," pp. 48–72, Cambridge University Press, New York, 1972; DeWolfe, in Bamford and Tipper, "Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," vol. 9, pp. 461–470, American Elsevier, New York, 1973; Crowley and Mazzocchi, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Alkenes," vol. 2, pp. 284–297, Interscience, New York, 1970; Criegee, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 559–565 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 585–591]; Vollmer and Servis, *J. Chem. Educ.* **45,** 214–220 (1968).

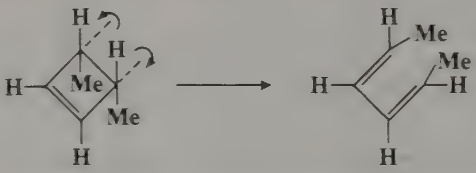




This is evidence for a four-membered cyclic transition state and arises from conrotatory motion about the C-3–C-4 bond. It is called conrotatory because both movements are clockwise (or both counterclockwise). Because both rotate in the same direction, the cis isomer gives the cis–trans diene:[367]



The other possibility (*disrotatory* motion) would have one moving clockwise while the other moves counterclockwise: the cis isomer would have given the cis–cis diene (shown) or the trans–trans diene:



If the motion had been disrotatory, this would still have been evidence for a cyclic mechanism. If the mechanism were a diradical or some other kind of noncyclic process, it is likely that no stereospecificity of either kind would have been observed. The reverse reaction is also conrotatory. In contrast, the photochemical cyclobutene-1,3-diene interconversion is *disrotatory* in either direction. On the other hand, the cyclohexadiene-1,3,5-triene interconversion shows precisely the opposite behavior. The thermal process is *disrotatory*, while the photochemical process is *conrotatory* (in either direction). These startling results are a consequence of the symmetry rules mentioned in Chapter 15 (p. 751).[368] As in the case of cycloaddition reactions, we will use the frontier-orbital and Möbius–Hückel approaches.[369]

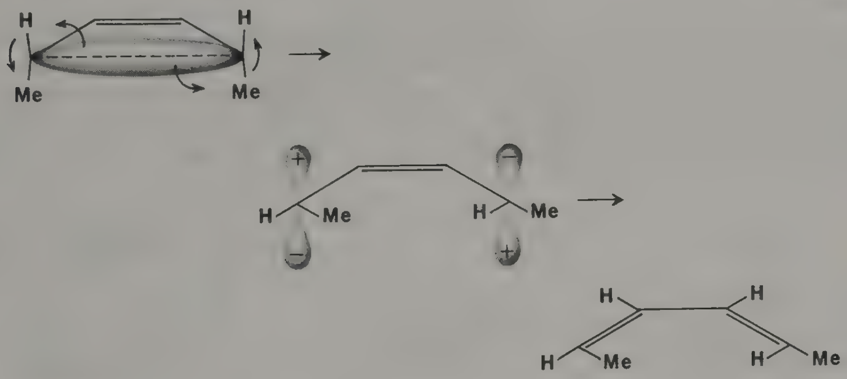
---

[366] Winter, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1207 (1965). Also see Vogel, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **615**, 14 (1958); Criegee and Noll, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **627**, 1 (1959).

[367] This picture is from Woodward and Hoffmann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 395 (1965), who coined the terms, *conrotatory* and *disrotatory*.

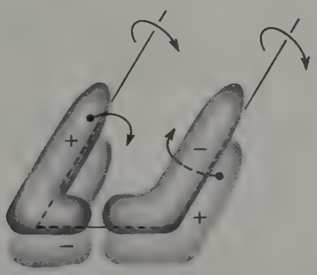
The Frontier-Orbital Method[370]

As applied to these reactions, the frontier-orbital method may be expressed: *A σ bond will open in such a way that the resulting p orbitals will have the symmetry of the highest occupied π orbital of the product.* In the case of cyclobutenes, the HOMO of the product in the thermal reaction is the χ_2 orbital (Figure 1). Therefore, in a thermal process, the cyclobutene must open so that on one side the positive lobe lies above the plane, and on the other side below it. Thus the substituents are forced into conrotatory motion:



On the other hand, in the photochemical process, the HOMO of the product is now the χ_3 orbital (Figure 1), and in order for the *p* orbitals to achieve this symmetry (the two plus lobes on the same side of the plane), the substituents are forced into disrotatory motion.

We may also look at this reaction from the opposite direction (ring closing). For this direction the rule is that *those lobes of orbitals that overlap (in the* HOMO) *must be of the same sign.* For thermal cyclization of butadienes, this requires conrotatory motion:



---

[368] Woodward and Hoffmann, Ref. 367. Also see Longuet-Higgins and Abrahamson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 2045 (1965); Fukui, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2009 (1965).

[369] For the correlation diagram method, see Jones, "Physical and Mechanistic Organic Chemistry," 2nd ed., pp. 352–359, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1984; Yates, "Hückel Molecular Orbital Theory," pp. 250–263, Academic Press, New York, 1978; Chapter 15, Ref. 675.

[370] See Chapter 15, Ref. 676.

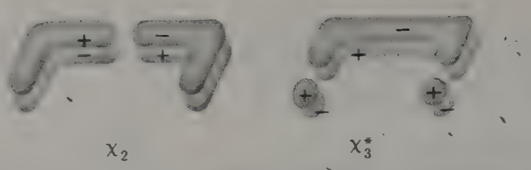


Figure 1 Symmetries of the χ_2 and χ_3* orbitals of a conjugated diene.

In the photochemical process the HOMO is the χ_3 orbital, so that disrotatory motion is required for lobes of the same sign to overlap.

The Möbius–Hückel Method[371]

As we saw on p. 753, in this method we choose a basis set of *p* orbitals and look for sign inversions in the transition state. Figure 2 shows a basis set for a 1,3-diene. It is seen that disrotatory ring closing (Figure 2*a*) results in overlap of plus lobes only, while in conrotatory closing (Figure 2*b*) there is one overlap of a plus with a minus lobe. In the first case we have zero sign inversions, while in the second there is one sign inversion. With zero (or an even number of) sign inversions,

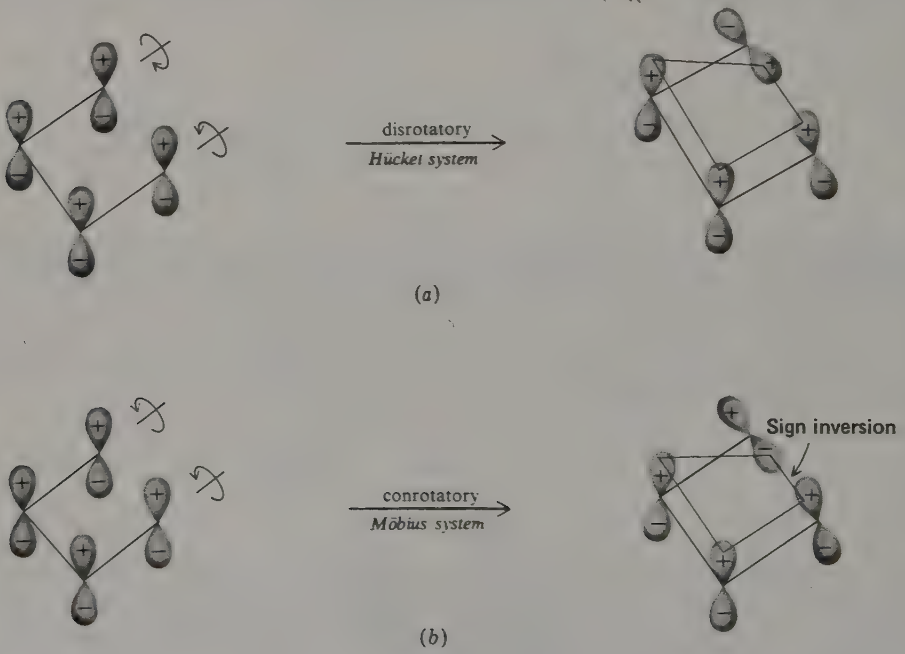


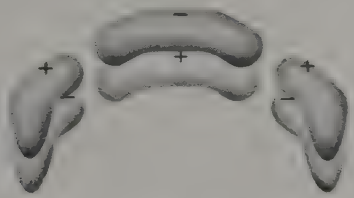
Figure 2 The 1,3-diene-cyclobutene interconversion. The orbitals shown are *not* molecular orbitals, but a basis set of *p* atomic orbitals. (a) Disrotatory ring closure gives zero sign inversions. (b) Conrotatory ring closure gives one sign inversion. We could have chosen to show any other basis set (for example, another basis set would have two plus lobes above the plane and two below, etc.) This would change the number of sign inversions, but the disrotatory mode would still have an even number of sign inversions, and the conrotatory mode an odd number, whichever basis set was chosen.

---

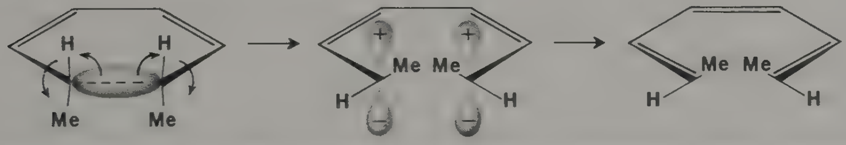
[371] See Chapter 15, Ref. 677.

the disrotatory transition state is a Hückel system, and so is allowed thermally only if the total number of electrons is $4n + 2$ (p. 754). Since the total here is 4, the disrotatory process is not allowed. On the other hand, the conrotatory process, with one sign inversion, is a Möbius system, which is thermally allowed if the total number is $4n$. The conrotatory process is therefore allowed thermally. For the photochemical reactions the rules are reversed: A reaction with $4n$ electrons requires a Hückel system, so that only the disrotatory process is allowed.

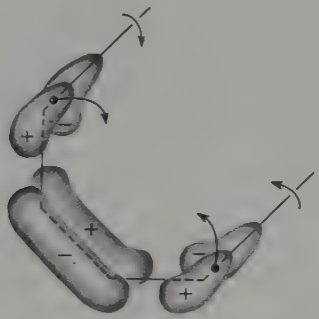
Both the frontier-orbital and the Möbius–Hückel methods can also be applied to the cyclohexadiene–1,3,5-triene reaction; in either case the predicted result is that for the thermal process, only the disrotatory pathway is allowed, and for the photochemical process, only the conrotatory. For example, for a 1,3,5-triene, the symmetry of the HOMO is



In the thermal cleavage of cyclohexadienes, then, the positive lobes must lie on the same side of the plane, requiring disrotatory motion:



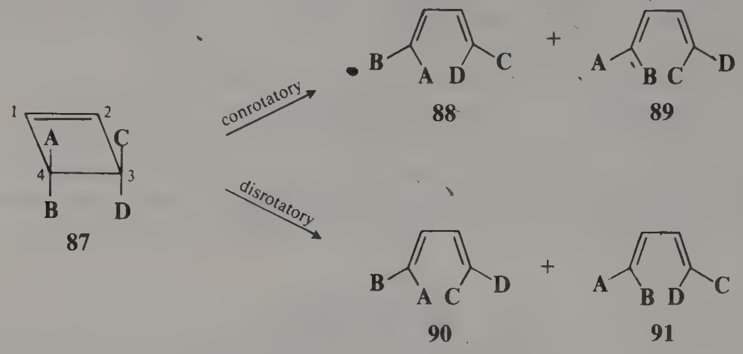
Disrotatory motion is also necessary for the reverse reaction, in order that the orbitals which overlap may be of the same sign:



All these directions are reversed for photochemical processes, because in each case a higher orbital, with inverted symmetry, is occupied.

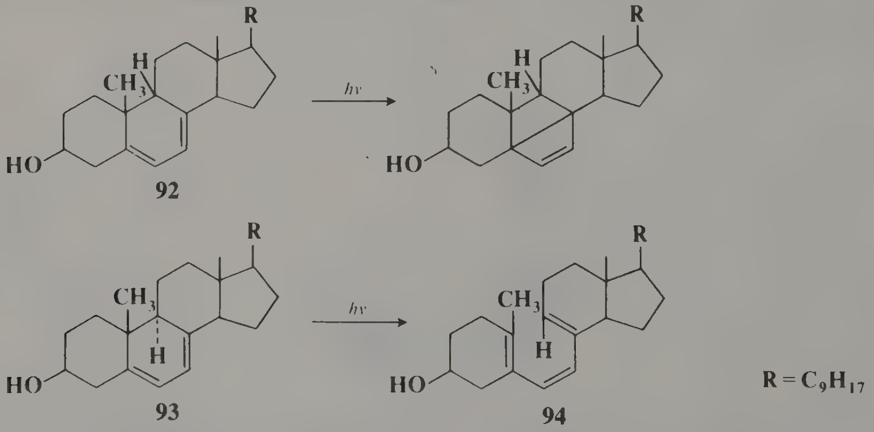
In the Möbius–Hückel approach, diagrams similar to Figure 2 can be drawn for this case. Here too, the disrotatory pathway is a Hückel system and the conrotatory pathway a Möbius system, but since six electrons are now involved, the thermal reaction follows the Hückel pathway and the photochemical reaction follows the Möbius pathway.

In the most general case, there are four possible products that can arise from a given cyclobutene or cyclohexadiene—two from the conrotatory and two from the disrotatory pathway. For example, conrotatory ring opening of **87** gives either **88** or **89,** while disrotatory opening gives either **90** or



91. The orbital-symmetry rules tell us when a given reaction will operate by the conrotatory and when by the disrotatory mode, but they do not say which of the two possible conrotatory or disrotatory pathways will be followed. It is often possible, however, to make such predictions on steric grounds. For example, in the opening of **87** by the disrotatory pathway, **90** arises when groups A and C swing in toward each other (clockwise motion around C-4, counterclockwise around C-3), while **91** is formed when groups B and D swing in and A and C swing out (clockwise motion around C-3, counterclockwise around C-4). We therefore predict that when A and C are larger than B and D, the predominant or exclusive product will be **91,** rather than **90.** Predictions of this kind have largely been borne out.[372]

Cyclohexadienes are of course 1,3-dienes, and in certain cases it is possible to convert them to cyclobutenes instead of to 1,3,5-trienes.[373] An interesting example is found in the pyrocalciferols. Photolysis of the syn isomer **92** (or of the other syn isomer, not shown) leads to the corresponding



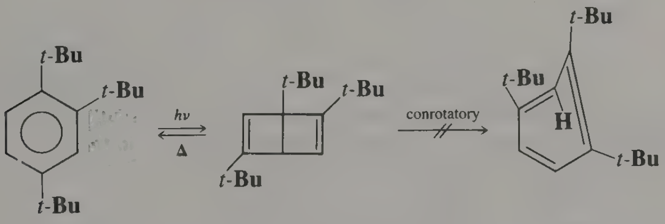
---

[372] For example, see Baldwin and Krueger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 6444 (1969); Spangler and Hennis, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 24 (1972). See also Dauben and Michno, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2284 (1981). For a contrary example, see Dolbier, Koroniak, Burton, Bailey, Shaw, and Hansen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 1871 (1984).

[373] For a discussion of the factors favoring either direction, see Dauben, Kellogg, Seeman, Vietmeyer, and Wendschuh, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **33,** 197–215 (1973).

cyclobutene,[374] while photolysis of the anti isomers (one of them is **93**) gives the ring-opened 1,3,5-triene **94.** This difference in behavior is at first sight remarkable, but is easily explained by the orbital-symmetry rules. Photochemical ring opening to a 1,3,5-triene must be conrotatory. If **92** were to proceed by this pathway, the product would be the triene **94,** but this compound would have to contain a *trans*-cyclohexene ring (either the methyl group or the hydrogen would have to be directed inside the ring). On the other hand, photochemical conversion to a cyclobutene must be disrotatory, but if **93** were to give this reaction, the product would have to have a trans-fused ring junction. Compounds with such ring junctions are known (p. 114) but are very strained. Stable *trans*-cyclohexenes are unknown (p. 137). Thus, **92** and **93** give the products they do owing to a combination of orbital-symmetry rules and steric influences. Note that **86** (p. 1003) can be opened thermally, though high temperatures are required. The orbital-symmetry rules require concerted thermal ring opening in this system to be conrotatory, but this is impossible here for similar reasons. It is possible that a diradical mechanism is operating, though it has been suggested that a concerted disrotatory pathway is allowed in this case.[375] A concerted mechanism has also been suggested in a case where a butadiene is thermally converted to a cyclobutene in a disrotatory manner.[376]

The 1,3-diene-cyclobutene interconversion can even be applied to benzene rings. For example,[377] photolysis of 1,2,4-tri-*t*-butylbenzene (**95**) gives 1,2,5-tri-*t*-butyl[2.2.0]hexadiene (**96,** a Dewar benzene).[378] The reaction owes its success to the fact that once **96** is formed, it cannot, under the conditions used, revert to **95** by either a thermal or a photochemical route. The orbital-symmetry rules prohibit thermal conversion of **96** to **95** by a pericyclic mechanism, because thermal conversion of a cyclobutene to a 1,3-diene must be conrotatory, and conrotatory reaction of **96** would result in a 1,3,5-cyclohexatriene containing one trans double bond (**97**), which is of course too strained to exist. **96** cannot revert to **95** by a photochemical pathway either, because light of the frequency used to excite **95** would not be absorbed by **96.** This is thus another example of a molecule that owes its stability to the orbital-symmetry rules (see p. 767). Pyrolysis of **96** does give **95,** probably



95 **96** **97**

---

[374] Dauben and Fonken, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4060 (1959). This was the first reported example of the conversion of a 1,3-diene to a cyclobutene.

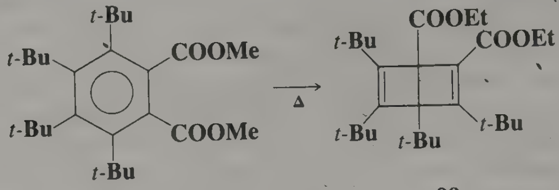
[375] Branton, Frey, Montague, and Stevens, *Trans. Faraday Soc.* **62,** 659 (1966); Frey, Metcalfe, and Brown, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 1586 (1970).

[376] Steiner and Michl, Ref. 359.

[377] Unsubstituted Dewar benzene has been obtained, along with other photoproducts, by photolysis of benzene: Ward and Wishnok, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1085 (1968); Bryce-Smith, Gilbert, and Robinson, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10,** 745 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83,** 803]. For other examples, see Arnett and Bollinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3803 (1964); Camaggi, Gozzo, and Cevidalli, *Chem. Commun.* 313 (1966); Haller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2070 (1966), *J. Chem. Phys.* **47,** 1117 (1967); Barlow, Haszeldine, and Hubbard, *Chem. Commun.* 202 (1969); Lemal, Staros, and Austel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3373 (1969).

[378] van Tamelen and Pappas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 3789 (1962); Wilzbach and Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4004 (1965); van Tamelen, Pappas, and Kirk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 6092 (1971); van Tamelen, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 186–192 (1972). As mentioned on p. 767 (Ref. 764), Dewar benzenes can be photolyzed further to give prismanes.

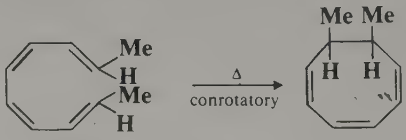
by a diradical mechanism.[379] In the case of **98** and **99**, the Dewar benzene is actually more stable



98 **99**

than the benzene. **98** rearranges to **99** in 90% yield at 120°.[380] In this case thermolysis of the benzene gives the Dewar benzene (rather than the reverse), because of the strain of four adjacent *t*-butyl groups on the ring.

A number of electrocyclic reactions have been carried out with systems of other sizes, e.g., conversion of the 1,3,5,7-octatetraene **100** to the cyclooctatriene **101**.[381] The stereochemistry of



100 **101**

these reactions can be predicted in a similar manner. The results of such predictions can be summarized according to whether the number of electrons involved in the cyclic process is of the form $4n$ or $4n + 2$ (where n is any integer including zero).

	Thermal reaction	Photochemical reaction
$4n$	conrotatory	disrotatory
$4n + 2$	disrotatory	conrotatory

Although the orbital-symmetry rules predict the stereochemical results in almost all cases, it is necessary to recall (p. 755) that they only say what is allowed and what is forbidden, but the fact that a reaction is allowed does not necessarily mean that that reaction takes place, and if an allowed reaction does take place, it does not *necessarily* follow that a concerted pathway is involved, since other pathways of lower energy may be available.[382] Furthermore, a ''forbidden'' reaction might still be made to go, if a method of achieving its high activation energy can be found. This was, in fact, done for the cyclobutene–butadiene interconversion (*cis*-3,4-dichlorocyclobutene gave the forbidden *cis,cis*- and *trans,trans*-1,4-dichloro-1,3-cyclobutadienes, as well as the allowed cis, trans isomer) by the use of ir laser light.[383] This is a thermal reaction. The laser light excites the molecule to a higher vibrational level (p. 203), but not to a higher electronic state.

As is the case for 2 + 2 cycloaddition reactions (**5-48**), certain forbidden electrocyclic reactions can be made to take place by the use of metallic catalysts.[384] An example is the silver ion–catalyzed conversion of tricyclo[$4.2.0.0^{2,5}$]octa-3,7-diene to cyclooctatetraene:[385]

---

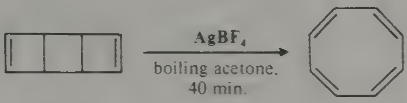
[379] See, for example, Oth, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 1185 (1968); Adam and Chang, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **1,** 487 (1969); Lechtken, Breslow, Schmidt, and Turro, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3025 (1973). See also Goldstein and Leight, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8112 (1977).

[380] Maier and Schneider, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **19,** 1022 (1980) [*Angew. Chem.* **92,** 1056].

[381] Marvell and Seubert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3377 (1967); Huisgen, Dahmen, and Huber, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 7130 (1967), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1461 (1969); Dahmen and Huber, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1465 (1969).

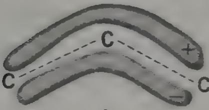
[382] For a discussion, see Baldwin, Andrist, and Pinschmidt, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 402–406 (1972).

[383] Mao, Presser, John, Moriarty, and Gordon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2105 (1981).

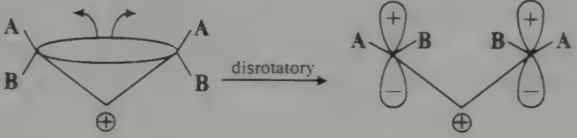


This conversion is very slow thermally (i.e., without the catalyst) because the reaction must take place by a disrotatory pathway, which is disallowed thermally.[386] Cyclobutenes in which carbanionic carbon is generated at a position α to one of the non-double–bonded carbons undergo ring opening to butadienes extremely readily, even at −30°C.[387] The mechanism of this process has not been investigated.

The ring opening of cyclopropyl cations (pp. 304, 966) is an electrocyclic reaction and is governed by the orbital symmetry rules.[388] For this case we may invoke the rule that the σ bond opens in such a way that the resulting *p* orbitals have the symmetry of the highest occupied orbital of the product, in this case, an allylic cation. We may recall that an allylic system has three molecular orbitals (p. 29). For the cation, with only two electrons, the highest occupied orbital is the one of lowest energy (**A**). Thus, the cyclopropyl cation must undergo a disrotatory ring opening in order to maintain the symmetry. (Note that, in contrast, ring opening of the cyclopropyl *anion* must be conrotatory, since in this case it is the next orbital of the allylic system which is the highest occupied, and this has the opposite symmetry.[389]) However, it is very difficult to generate a free cyclopropyl cation (p. 304), and it is likely that in most cases, cleavage of the σ bond is concerted with departure of the leaving group in the original cyclopropyl substrate.[390] This of course means that the σ bond provides anchimeric assistance to the removal of the leaving group (an S_N2-type process), and we would expect that such assistance should come from the back side. This has an important effect on the direction of ring opening. The orbital-symmetry rules require that the ring opening be disrotatory, but as we have seen, there are two disrotatory pathways and the rules do not tell us which is preferred. But the fact that the σ orbital provides assistance from the back side means that the two substituents which are trans to the leaving group must move *outward*, not inward.[391] Thus, the disrotatory pathway that is followed is the one shown in **B**, not the one shown



A



---

[384] For a review, see Pettit, Sugahara, Wristers, and Merk, *Discuss. Faraday Soc.* **47**, 71–78 (1969). See also Chapter 15, Ref. 755.

[385] Merk and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89**, 4788 (1967).

[386] For discussions of how these reactions take place, see Slegeir, Case, McKennis, and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96**, 287 (1974); Pinhas and Carpenter, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 15 (1980).

[387] Kametani, Tsubuki, Nemoto, and Suzuki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103**, 1256 (1981).

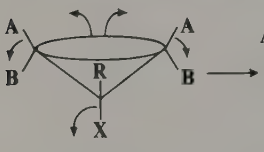
[388] For discussions, see DePuy, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1**, 33–41 (1968); Schöllkopf, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7**, 588–598 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80**, 603–613].

[389] For evidence that this is so, see Newcomb and Ford, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96**, 2968 (1974); Boche, Buckl, Martens, Schneider, and Wagner, *Chem. Ber.* **112**, 2961 (1979); Coates and Last, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105**, 7322 (1983). For a review of the analogous ring opening of epoxides, see Huisgen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16**, 572–585 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89**, 589–602].

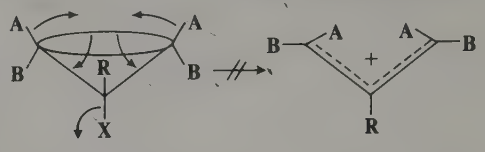
[390] There is evidence that cyclopropylic cations are intermediates in geometrically constrained bicyclic and tricyclic systems where the cyclopropyl ring is locked in in such a way that the ring-opening process is impossible or at least minimized: Olah, Liang, Ledlie, and Costopoulos, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 4196 (1977), and references cited therein.

[391] This statement was first proposed by DePuy, Schnack, Hausser, and Wiedemann, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87**, 4006 (1965).

in **C**, because the former puts the electrons of the σ bond on the side opposite that of the leaving

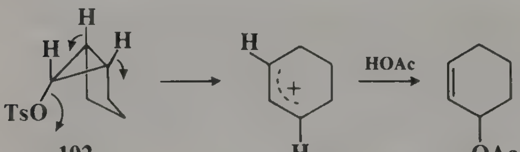


B

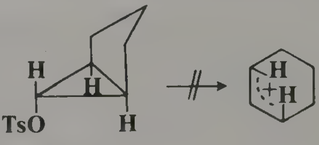


C

group.[392] Strong confirmation of this picture[393] comes from acetolysis of *endo*- (**102**) and *exo*-bicyclo[3,1,0]-hexyl-6-tosylate (**103**). The groups trans to the tosylate must move outward. For **102** this means that the two hydrogens can go outside the framework of the six-membered ring,



102

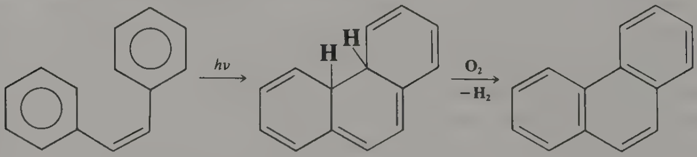


103

but for **103** they are forced to go inside. Consequently, it is not surprising that the rate ratio for solvolysis of **102**/**103** was found to be greater than 2.5 × 10^6 and that at 150°C **103** did not solvolyze at all.[394] This evidence is kinetic. Unlike the cases of the cyclobutene-1,3-diene and cyclohexadiene-1,3,5-triene interconversions, the direct product here is a cation, which is not stable but reacts with a nucleophile and loses some of its steric integrity in the process, so that much of the evidence has been of the kinetic type rather than from studies of product stereochemistry. However, it has been shown by investigations in super acids, where it is possible to keep the cations intact and to study their structures by nmr, that in all cases studied the cation that is predicted by these rules is in fact formed.[395]

OS **V**, 235, 277, 467; **50,** 24, 36; **55,** 15, 86; **56,** 1; **58,** 68.

8-32 Conversion of Stilbenes to Phenanthrenes



Stilbenes can be converted to phenanthrenes by irradiation with uv light[396] in the presence of an oxidizing agent such as dissolved molecular oxygen, $FeCl_3$, tetracyanoethylene,[397] or iodine. The reaction is a photochemically allowed conrotatory[398] conversion of a 1,3,5-hexatriene to a cyclohexadiene, followed by removal of two hydrogen atoms by the oxidizing agent. The intermediate dihydrophenanthrene has been isolated in one case.[399] The use of substrates containing hetero atoms (e.g., PhN=NPh) allows the formation of heterocyclic ring systems. The actual reacting species must be the *cis*-stilbene, but *trans*-stilbenes can often be used, because they are isomerized to the cis isomers under the reaction conditions. The reaction can be extended to the preparation of many fused aromatic systems, e.g.,[400]

---

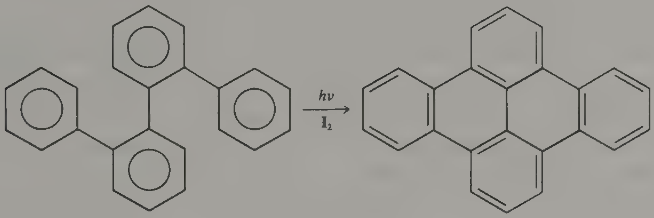
[392] It has been suggested that the pathway shown in **C** is possible in certain cases: Hausser and Grubber, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2648 (1972); Hausser and Uchic, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4087 (1972).

[393] There is much other evidence. For example, see Jefford and Medary, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2069 (1966); Jefford and Wojnarowski, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 199 (1968); Jefford and Hill, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1957 (1969); Schleyer, Van Dine, Schöllkopf, and Paust, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 2868 (1966); Sliwinski, Su, and Schleyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 133 (1972); Sandler, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3876 (1967); Ghosez, Slinckx, Glineur, Hoet, and Laroche, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2773 (1967); Parham and Yong, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3947 (1968); Baird and Reese, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2117 (1969); Reese and Shaw, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2566 (1970).

[394] Schöllkopf, Fellenberger, Patsch, Schleyer, Su, and Van Dine, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3639 (1967).

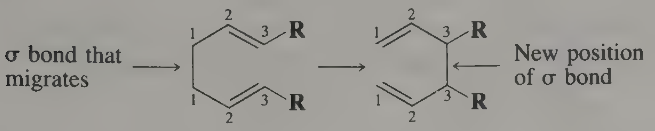
[395] Schleyer, Su, Saunders and Rosenfeld, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5174 (1969).

[396] For reviews, see Mallory and Mallory, *Org. React.* **30,** 1–456 (1984); Laarhoven, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 185–204, 241–254 (1983); Blackburn and Timmons, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **23,** 482–503 (1969); Stermitz, *Org. Photochem.* **1,** 247–282 (1967).

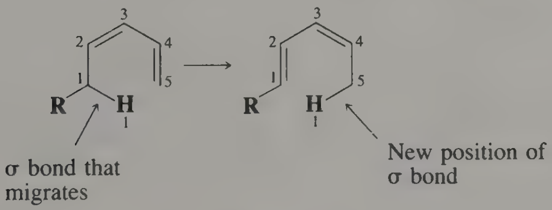


though not all such systems give the reaction.[401]

B. Sigmatropic Rearrangements. A sigmatropic rearrangement is defined[402] as migration, in an uncatalyzed intramolecular process, of a σ bond, adjacent to one or more π systems, to a new position in a molecule, with the π systems becoming reorganized in the process. Examples are



Reaction **8-36**
A [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement



Reaction **8-33**
A [1,5] sigmatropic rearrangement

The *order* of a sigmatropic rearrangement is expressed by two numbers set in brackets: $[i,j]$. These numbers can be determined by counting the atoms over which each end of the σ bond has moved. Each of the original termini is given the number 1. Thus in the first example above, each terminus of the σ bond has migrated from C-1 to C-3, so the order is [3,3]. In the second example the carbon terminus has moved from C-1 to C-5, but the hydrogen terminus has not moved at all, so the order is [1,5].

---

[397] Bendig, Beyermann, and Kreysig, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3659 (1977).

[398] Cuppen and Laarhoven, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 5914 (1972).

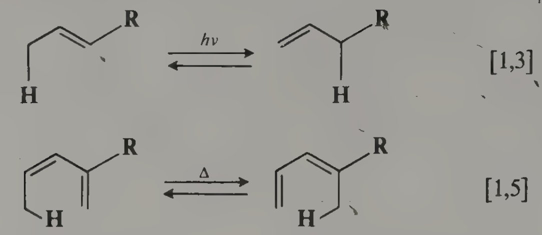
[399] Doyle, Benson, and Filipescu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3262 (1976); See also Toda and Todo, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 848 (1976).

[400] Sato, Shimada, and Hata, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 2484 (1971).

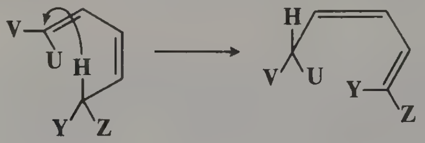
[401] For a discussion and lists of photocyclizing and nonphotocyclizing compounds, see Laarhoven, Ref. 396, pp. 185–204.

[402] Woodward and Hoffmann, "The Conservation of Orbital Symmetry," p. 114, Academic Press, New York, 1970.

8-33 [1,*j*] Sigmatropic Migrations of Hydrogen



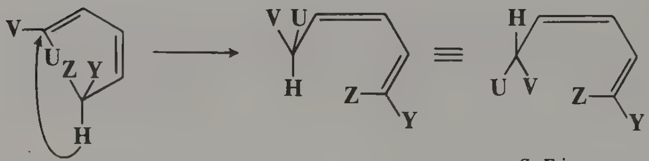
Many examples of thermal or photochemical rearrangements in which a hydrogen atom migrates from one end of a system of π bonds to the other have been reported,[403] though the reaction is subject to geometrical conditions. Pericyclic mechanisms are involved, and the hydrogen must, in the transition state, be in contact with both ends of the chain at the same time. This means that for [1,5] and longer rearrangements, the molecule must be able to adopt the cisoid conformation. Furthermore, there are two geometrical pathways by which any sigmatropic rearrangement can take place, which we illustrate for the case of a [1,5] sigmatropic rearrangement,[404] starting with a



104

R, *Z* isomer

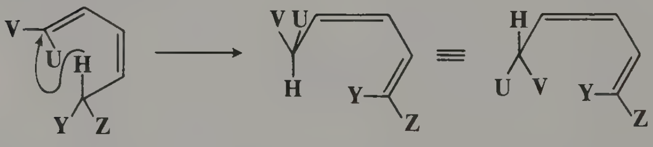
suprafacial



104

S, *E* isomer

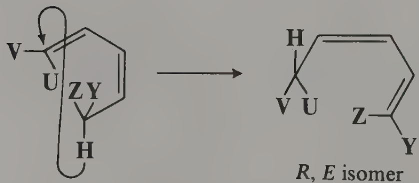
suprafacial



104

S, *Z* isomer

antarafacial



104

R, *E* isomer

antarafacial

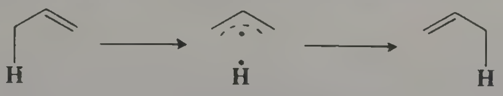
---

[403] For a monograph, see Gajewski, Ref. 365. For reviews, see Mironov, Fedorovich, and Akhrem, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 666–681 (1981); Spangler, *Chem. Rev.* **76,** 187–217 (1976); DeWolfe, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 365, pp. 474–480; Woodward and Hoffmann, Ref. 402, pp. 114–140; Hansen and Schmid, *Chimia* **24,** 89–99 (1970); Roth, *Chimia* **20,** 229–236 (1966).

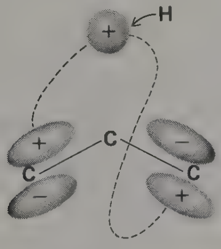
[404] Note that a [1,5] sigmatropic rearrangement of hydrogen is also an internal ene synthesis (**5-16**).

substrate of the form **104,** where the migration origin is an asymmetric carbon atom and U ≠ V. In one of the two pathways, the hydrogen moves along the top or bottom face of the π system. This is called *suprafacial migration.* In the other pathway, the hydrogen moves *across* the π system, from top to bottom, or vice versa. This is *antarafacial* migration. Altogether, a single isomer like **104** can give four products. In a suprafacial migration, H can move across the top of the π system (as drawn above) to give the *R,Z* isomer, or it can rotate 180° and move across the bottom of the π system to give the *S,E* isomer.[405] The antarafacial migration can similarly lead to two diastereomers, in this case the *S,Z* and *R,E* isomers.

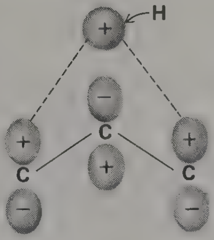
In any given sigmatropic rearrangement, only one of the two pathways is allowed by the orbital-symmetry rules; the other is forbidden. To analyze this situation we first use a modified frontier orbital approach.[406] We will imagine that in the transition state the migrating H atom breaks away from the rest of the system, which we may treat as if it were a free radical. Note that this is not what actually takes place; we merely imagine it in order to be able to analyze the process. In a [1,3] sigmatropic rearrangement the imaginary transition state consists of a hydrogen atom and an allyl radical. The latter species (p. 29) has three π orbitals, but the only one that concerns us here is the HOMO which, in a thermal rearrangement is **D.** The electron of the hydrogen atom is of course in a 1*s* orbital, which has only one lobe. The rule governing sigmatropic migration of hydrogen is that *the H must move from a plus to a plus or from a minus to a minus lobe, of the highest occupied molecular orbital; it cannot move to a lobe of opposite sign.*[407] Obviously, the only way this can happen in a thermal [1,3] sigmatropic rearrangement is if the migration is antarafacial. Consequently, the rule predicts that antarafacial thermal [1,3] sigmatropic rearrangements are allowed, but the suprafacial pathway is forbidden. However, in a photochemical reaction, promotion of an electron means that **E** is now the HOMO; the suprafacial pathway is now allowed and the antarafacial pathway forbidden.



Imaginary transition state for a [1,3] sigmatropic rearrangement



D



E

---

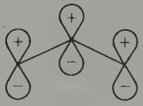
[405] Since we are using the arbitrary designations U, V, Y, and Z, we have been arbitrary in which isomer to call *R,Z* and which to call *S,E*.

[406] See Woodward and Hoffmann, Ref. 402, pp. 114–140.

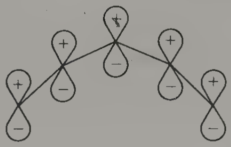
[407] This follows from the principle that bonds are formed only by overlap of orbitals of the same sign. Since this is a concerted reaction, the hydrogen orbital in the transition state must overlap simultaneously with one lobe from the migration origin and one from the terminus. It is obvious that both of these lobes must have the same sign.

A similar analysis of [1,5] sigmatropic rearrangements shows that in this case the thermal reaction must be suprafacial and the photochemical process antarafacial. For the general case, with odd-numbered j, we may say that $[1,j]$ suprafacial migrations are allowed thermally when j is of the form $4n + 1$, and photochemically when j has the form $4n - 1$; the opposite is true for antarafacial migrations.

As expected, the Möbius–Hückel method leads to the same predictions. Here we look at the basis set of orbitals shown in **F** and **G** for [1,3] and [1,5] rearrangements, respectively. A [1,3] shift involves four electrons, so an allowed thermal pericyclic reaction must be a Möbius system (p. 1007) with one or an odd number of sign inversions. As can be seen in **F**, only an antarafacial migration can achieve this. A [1,5] shift, with six electrons, is allowed thermally only when it is a Hückel system with zero or an even number of sign inversions; hence it requires a suprafacial migration.

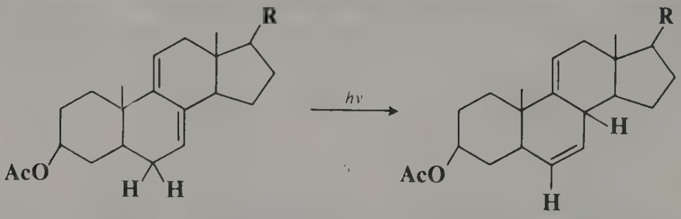


F

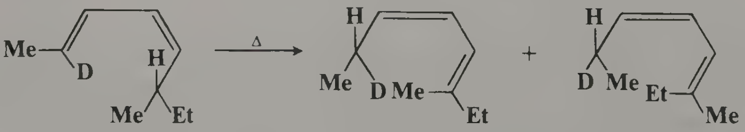


G

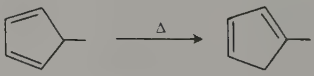
The actual reported results bear out this analysis. Thus a thermal [1,3] migration is allowed to take place only antarafacially, but such a transition state would be extremely strained, and thermal [1,3] sigmatropic migrations of hydrogen are unknown. On the other hand, the photochemical pathway allows suprafacial [1,3] shifts, and a few such reactions are known, an example being[408]



The situation is reversed for [1,5] hydrogen shifts. In this case the thermal rearrangements, being suprafacial, are quite common, while photochemical rearrangements are rare.[409] Examples of the thermal reaction are



Ref. 410



Ref. 411

---

[408] Dauben and Wipke, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **9,** 539–553 (1964), p. 546. For another example, see Kropp, Fravel, and Fields, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 840 (1976).

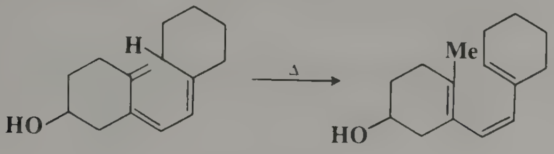
[409] For examples of photochemical [1,5] antarafacial reactions, see Kiefer and Tanna, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4478 (1969); Kiefer and Fukunaga, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 993 (1969); Dauben, Poulter, and Suter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7408 (1970).

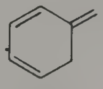
[410] Roth, König, and Stein, *Chem. Ber.* **103,** 426 (1970).

[411] McLean and Haynes, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 2329 (1965). For a review of such rearrangements, see Klärner, *Top. Stereochem.* **15,** 1–42 (1984).

Note that the first example bears out the stereochemical prediction made earlier. Only the two isomers shown were formed. In the second example, migration can continue around the ring. Migrations of this kind are called *circumambulatory rearrangements*.[412]

With respect to [1,7] hydrogen shifts, the orbital symmetry rules predict that the thermal reaction must be antarafacial. Unlike the case of [1,3] shifts, the transition state is not too greatly strained, and such rearrangements have been reported, e.g.,[413]



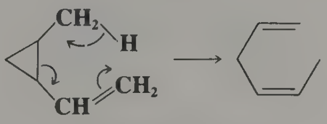


105

Photochemical [1,7] shifts are suprafacial and, not surprisingly, many of these have been observed.[414]

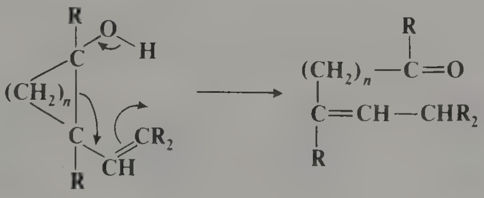
The orbital symmetry rules also help us to explain, as on pp. 767 and 1009, the unexpected stability of certain compounds. Thus, **105** could, by a thermal [1,3] sigmatropic rearrangement, easily convert to toluene, which of course is far more stable because it has an aromatic sextet. Yet **105** has been prepared and is stable at dry ice temperature and in dilute solutions.[415]

Analogs of sigmatropic rearrangements in which a cyclopropane ring replaces one of the double bonds are also known, e.g.,[416]



a homodienyl [1,5] shift

The reverse reaction has also been reported.[417] 2-Vinylcycloalkanols[418] undergo an analogous reaction, as do cyclopropyl ketones (see p. 1029 for this reaction).



---

[412] For a review, see Childs, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 567–608 (1982).

[413] Schlatmann, Pot, and Havinga, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **83,** 1173 (1964).

[414] See Murray and Kaplan. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3527 (1966); ter Borg and Kloosterziel, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **88,** 266 (1969); Tezuka, Kimura, Sato, and Mukai, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **43,** 1120 (1970).

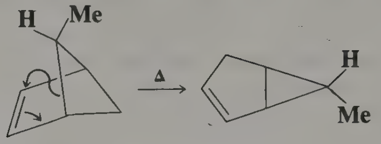
[415] Bailey and Baylouny, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3476 (1962).

[416] Ellis and Frey, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 221 (1964); Frey and Solly, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **1,** 473 (1969); Roth and König, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **688,** 28 (1965); Ohloff, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3795 (1965); Jorgenson and Thacher, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4651 (1969); Corey, Yamamoto, Herron, and Achiwa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6635 (1970). See also Crandall and Watkins, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1717 (1967); Dolbier and Sellers, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1 (1982).

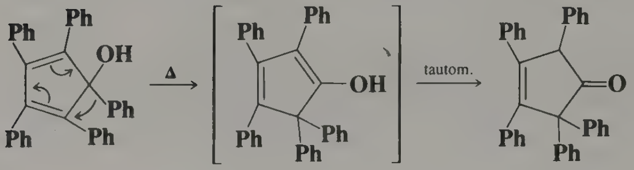
[417] Roth and König, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **688,** 28 (1965). Also see Grimme, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 756 (1965).

[418] Arnold and Smolinsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4918 (1960); Leriverend and Conia, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2681 (1969); Conia and Barnier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2679 (1969).

8-34 [1,*j*] Sigmatropic Migrations of Carbon

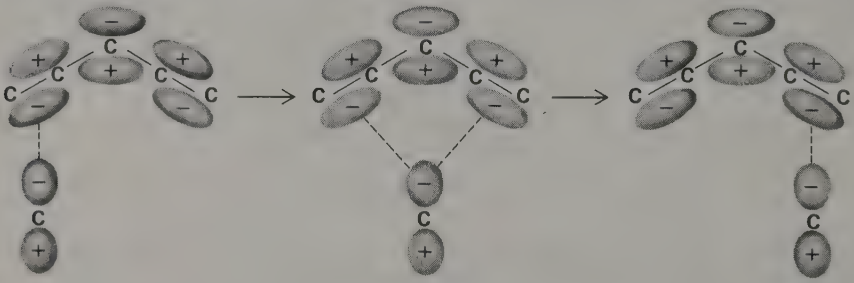


[1,3] migration of alkyl[419]



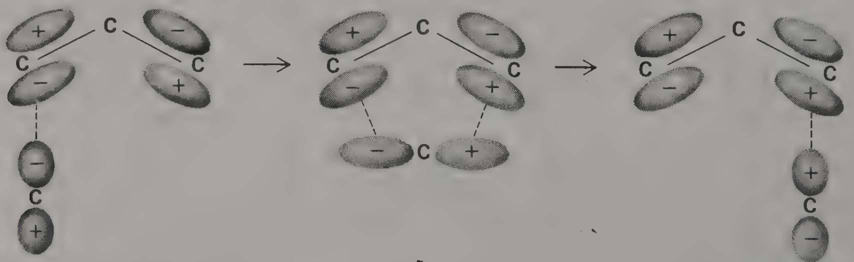
[1,5] migration of phenyl[420]

Sigmatropic migrations of alkyl or aryl groups[421] are less common than the corresponding hydrogen migrations.[422] When they do take place, there is an important difference. Unlike a hydrogen atom, whose electron is in a 1*s* orbital that has only one lobe, a carbon free radical has its odd electron in a *p* orbital that has *two lobes of opposite sign*. Therefore, if we draw the imaginary transition states for this case (see p. 1015), we see that in a thermal suprafacial [1,5] process (**H**), symmetry can be conserved only if the migrating carbon moves in such a way that the lobe which was originally attached to the π system remains attached to the π system. This can happen only if



H

configuration is *retained within the migrating group*. On the other hand, a thermal suprafacial [1,3] migration (**I**) *can* take place if the migrating carbon switches lobes. If the migrating carbon was



I

---

[419] Roth and Friedrich, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2607 (1969).

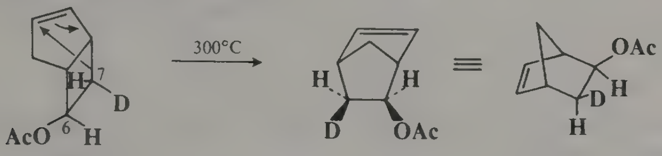
[420] Youssef and Ogliaruso, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2601 (1972).

[421] For reviews, see Mironov, Fedorovich, and Akhrem, Ref. 403; Spangler, Ref. 403.

[422] It has been shown that methyl and phenyl have lower migratory aptitudes than hydrogen in thermal sigmatropic rearrangements: Shen, McEwen, and Wolf, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 827 (1969); Miller, Greisinger, and Boyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1578 (1969).

originally bonded by its minus lobe, it must now use its plus lobe to form the new C—C bond. Thus, configuration in the migrating group will be *inverted*. From these considerations we predict that suprafacial [1,*j*] sigmatropic rearrangements in which carbon is the migrating group are always allowed, both thermally and photochemically, but that thermal [1,3] migrations will proceed with inversion and thermal [1,5] migrations with retention of configuration within the migrating group. More generally, we may say that suprafacial [1,*j*] migrations of carbon in systems where $j = 4n - 1$ proceed with inversion thermally and retention photochemically, while systems where $j = 4n + 1$ show the opposite behavior. Where antarafacial migrations take place, all these predictions are of course reversed.

The first laboratory test of these predictions was the pyrolysis of deuterated *endo*-bicyclo[3.2.0]-hept-2-en-6-yl acetate (**106**), which gave the *exo*-deuterio-*exo*-norbornyl acetate **107**.[423] Thus, as predicted by the orbital symmetry rules, this thermal suprafacial [1,3] sigmatropic reaction took place with complete inversion at C-7. Similar results have been obtained in a number of other cases.[424] However, because rotation of the C-7 carbon is required to be clockwise, the pathway leading to inversion can be blocked by the introduction into **106** of an endo methyl group at C-7, in which case the reaction takes place with predominant retention.[425] It has been suggested that an orbital-symmetry-forbidden concerted reaction takes place in these cases.[426] Photochemical suprafacial [1,3] migrations of carbon have been shown to proceed with retention, as predicted.[427]

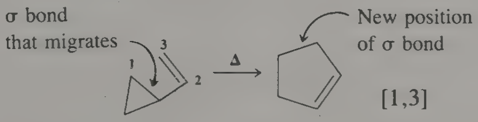


106 **107**

Thermal suprafacial [1,5] migrations of carbon have been found to take place with retention,[428] but also with inversion.[429,430] A diradical mechanism has been suggested for the latter case.[429]

Simple nucleophilic, electrophilic, and free-radical 1,2 shifts may also be regarded as sigmatropic rearrangements (in this case, [1,2] rearrangements). We have already (p. 942) applied similar principles to such rearrangements to show that nucleophilic 1,2 shifts are allowed, but the other two types are forbidden unless the migrating group has some means of delocalizing the extra electron or electron pair.

8-35 Conversion of Vinylcyclopropanes to Cyclopentenes



---

[423] Berson and Nelson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5503 (1967); Berson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 152–160 (1968).

[424] See Ref. 419; Berson, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 406–414 (1972); Bampfield, Brook, and Hunt, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 146 (1976); Franzus, Scheinbaum, Waters, and Bowlin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 1241 (1976); Klärner and Adamsky, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 674 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 738].

[425] Berson and Nelson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1096 (1970); Berson and Holder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2037 (1973); Berson, Ref. 424. See also Cookson and Kemp, *Chem. Commun.* 385 (1971); Krow and Reilly, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 3837 (1975).

[426] Berson, Ref. 424. For a discussion, see Berson, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, pp. 372–383.

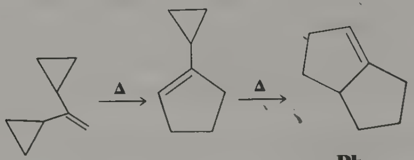
[427] Cookson, Hudec, and Sharma, *Chem. Commun.* 107, 108 (1971).

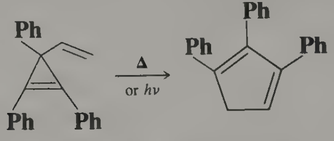
[428] Boersma, de Haan, Kloosterziel, and van de Ven, *Chem. Commun.* 1168 (1970).

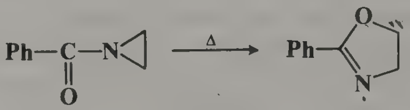
[429] Klärner, Yaslak, and Wette, *Chem. Ber.* **112,** 1168 (1979); Klärner and Brassel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2469 (1980); Borden, Lee, and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4841 (1980).

[430] Baldwin and Broline, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2857 (1982).

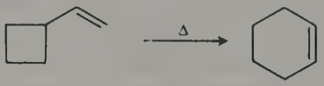
The thermal expansion of a vinylcyclopropane to a cyclopentene ring[431] is a special case of a [1,3] sigmatropic migration of carbon, though it can also be considered an internal $[_{\pi}2 + {}_{\sigma}2]$ cycloaddition reaction (see **5-48**). The reaction has been carried out on many vinylcyclopropanes bearing various substituents in the ring or on the vinyl group and has been extended to 1,1-dicyclopropylethene[432] and (both thermally[433] and photochemically[434]) to vinylcyclopropenes. Various heterocyclic analogs are also known, e.g.,[435]

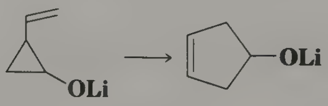






Vinylcyclobutenes can be similarly converted to cyclohexenes,[436] but larger ring compounds do not generally give the reaction.[437] Though high temperatures (as high as 500°C) are normally required for the thermal reaction, the lithium salts of 2-vinylcyclopropanols rearrange at 25°C.[438] Salts of 2-vinylcyclobutanols behave analogously.[439]





---

[431] For reviews, see Mil'vitskaya, Tarakanova, and Plate, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 469–478 (1976); DeWolfe, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 365, pp. 470–474; Gutsche and Redmore, Ref. 105, pp. 163–170; Frey, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **4,** 147–193 (1966), pp. 155–163, 175–176.

[432] Ketley, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1687 (1964); Branton and Frey, *J. Chem. Soc. A* 1342 (1966).

[433] Small and Breslow, cited in Breslow, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, p. 236.

[434] Padwa, Blacklock, Getman, Hatanaka, and Loza, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1481 (1978); Zimmerman and Aasen, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1493 (1978); Zimmerman and Kreil, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2060 (1982).

[435] For reviews of ring expansions of aziridines, see Heine, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 145–176 (1971); Dermer and Ham, "Ethylenimine and Other Aziridines," pp. 282–290, Academic Press, New York, 1969.

[436] Overberger and Borchert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1007 (1960); Vogel, Palm, and Ott, cited in Vogel, *Angew. Chem.* **72,** 4–26 (1960), p. 21.

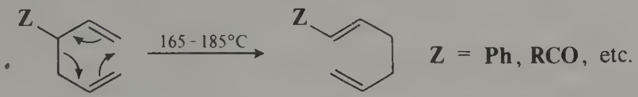
[437] For an exception, see Thies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7074 (1972).

[438] Danheiser, Martinez-Davila, and Morin, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1340 (1980); Danheiser, Martinez-Davila, Auchus, and Kadonaga, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2443 (1981).

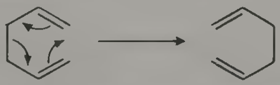
[439] Danheiser, Martinez-Davila, and Sard, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 3943 (1981).

The mechanisms of these ring expansions are not certain. Both concerted[440] and diradical[441] pathways have been proposed, and it is possible that both pathways operate, in different systems.

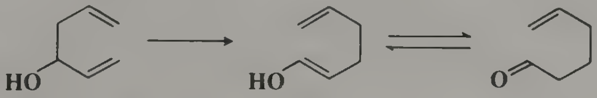
8-36 The Cope Rearrangement



When 1,5-dienes are heated, they isomerize, in a [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement known as the *Cope rearrangement* (not to be confused with the Cope elimination reaction, **7-8**).[442] When the diene is symmetrical about the 3,4 bond, we have the unusual situation where a reaction gives a product identical with the starting material:[443]



Therefore, a Cope rearrangement can be detected only when the diene is not symmetrical about this bond. Any 1,5-diene gives the rearrangement; for example, 3-methyl-1,5-hexadiene heated to 300°C gives 1,5-heptadiene.[444] However, the reaction takes place more easily (lower temperature required) when there is a group on the 3- or 4-carbon with which the new double bond can conjugate. The reaction is obviously reversible and produces an equilibrium mixture of the two 1,5-dienes, which is richer in the thermodynamically more stable isomer. However, the reaction cannot be reversed for 3-hydroxy-1,5-dienes, because the product tautomerizes to the ketone or aldehyde:



This is called the *oxy-Cope rearrangement*.[445] The oxy-Cope rearrangement is greatly accelerated (by factors of 10^{10} to 10^{17}) if the alkoxide is used rather than the alcohol.[446] In this case the direct product is the enolate ion, which is hydrolyzed to the ketone.

---

[440] For evidence favoring the concerted mechanism, see Shields, Billups, and Lepley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4749 (1968); Billups, Leavell, Lewis, and Vanderpool, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8096 (1973); Berson, Dervan, Malherbe, and Jenkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5937 (1976); Andrews and Baldwin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6705, 6706 (1976); Dolbier, Al-Sader, Sellers, and Koroniak, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2138 (1981).

[441] For evidence favoring the diradical mechanism, see Willcott and Cargle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 723 (1967); Doering and Schmidt, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 2005 (1971); Roth and Schmidt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3639 (1971); Simpson and Richey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2545 (1973); Gilbert and Higley, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2075 (1973); Caramella, Huisgen, and Schmolke, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2997, 2999 (1974); Mazzocchi and Tamburin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 555 (1975); Zimmerman and Fleming, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 622 (1983); Klumpp and Schakel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4595 (1983); Gajewski and Warner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 802 (1984). A "continuous diradical transition state" has also been proposed: Doering and Sachdev, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1168 (1974), **97,** 5512 (1975).

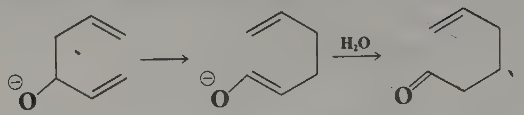
[442] For reviews, see Bartlett, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 2–72 (1980), pp. 28–39; Rhoads and Raulins, *Org. React.* **22,** 1–252 (1975); Smith and Kelly, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **8,** 75–234 (1971), pp. 153–201; DeWolfe, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 365, pp. 455–461; Vogel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 1–11 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 829–839 (1962)]: Doering and Roth, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 115–122 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 27–35]; Rhoads, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 684–706.

[443] Note that the same holds true for [1,*j*] sigmatropic reactions of symmetrical substrates (**8-33, 8-34**).

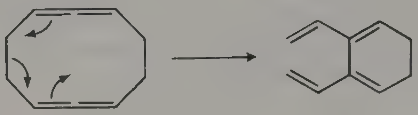
[444] Levy and Cope, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **66,** 1684 (1944).

[445] Berson and Jones, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5017, 5019 (1964); Viola and Levasseur, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1150 (1965); Berson and Walsh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4729 (1968); Viola, Padilla, Lennox, Hecht, and Proverb, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 491 (1974); For a review, see Marvell and Whalley, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 2, pp. 738–743, Interscience, New York, 1971.

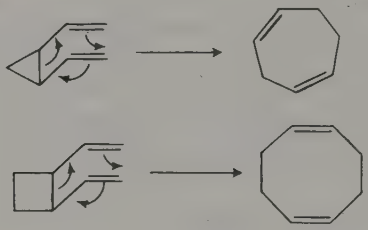
[446] Evans and Golub, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 4765 (1975); Evans and Nelson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 774 (1980); Miyashi, Hazato, and Mukai, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1008 (1978).



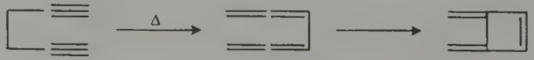
The 1,5-diene system may be inside a ring or part of an allenic system (this example illustrates both of these situations):[447]



but the reaction does not take place when one of the double bonds is part of an aromatic system, e.g., 4-phenyl-1-butene.[448] When the two double bonds are in vinyl groups attached to adjacent ring positions, the product is a ring four carbons larger. This has been applied to divinylcyclopropanes and cyclobutanes:[449]



Indeed, *cis*-1,2-divinylcyclopropanes give this rearrangement so rapidly that they generally cannot be isolated at room temperature,[450] though exceptions are known.[451] When heated, 1,5-diynes are converted to 3,4-dimethylenecyclobutenes.[452] A rate-determining Cope rearrangement is followed



by a very rapid electrocyclic (**8-31**) reaction. The interconversion of 1,3,5-trienes and cyclohexadienes (in **8-31**) is very similar to the Cope rearrangement, though in **8-31**, the 3,4 bond goes from a double bond to a single bond rather than from a single bond to no bond.

---

[447] Harris, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1359 (1965).

[448] See for example, Lambert, Fabricius, and Hoard, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1480 (1979); Marvell and Almond, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2777, 2779 (1979); Newcomb and Vieta, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4793 (1980). For exceptions in certain systems, see Doering and Bragole, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 385 (1966); Maas and Regitz, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **16,** 711 (1977) [*Angew. Chem.* **89,** 763]; Marvell and Lin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 877 (1978); Jung and Hudspeth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4309 (1978); Yasuda, Harano, and Kanematsu, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2368 (1980).

[449] Vogel, Ott, and Gajek, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **644,** 172 (1961). For a review, see Mil'vitskaya, Terakanova, and Plate, Ref. 431, pp. 475–476.

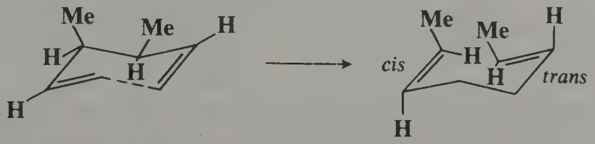
[450] Unsubstituted *cis*-1,2-divinylcyclopropane is fairly stable at −20°C: Brown, Golding, and Stofko, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 319 (1973); Schneider and Rebell, *J. Chem. Soc., Commun.* 283 (1975).

[451] See, for example, Brown, *Chem. Commun.* 226 (1965); Schönleber, *Chem. Ber.* **102,** 1789 (1969); Bolesov, Ii-hsein, and Levina, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **6,** 1791 (1970); Baldwin and Ullenius, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1542 (1974); Schneider and Rau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 4426 (1979).

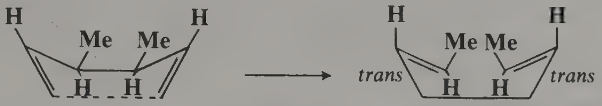
[452] For reviews of Cope rearrangements involving triple bonds, see Viola, Collins, and Filipp, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 3765–3811 (1981); Théron, Verny, and Vessière, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Carbon Triple Bond," pt. 1, pp. 381–445, Wiley, New York, 1978, pp. 428–430; Huntsman, *Intra-Sci. Chem. Rep.* **6,** 151–159 (1972).

Like 2 + 2 cycloadditions (p. 766), Cope rearrangements of simple 1,5-dienes can be catalyzed by certain transition-metal compounds. For example, the addition of $PdCl_2(PhCN)_2$ causes the reaction to take place at room temperature.[453]

As we have indicated with our arrows, the mechanism of the uncatalyzed Cope rearrangement is a simple six-centered pericyclic process. Since the mechanism is so simple, it has been possible to study some rather subtle points, among them the question of whether the six-membered transition state is in the boat or the chair form. For the case of 3,4-dimethyl-1,5-hexadiene it was demonstrated conclusively that the transition state is in the chair form. This was shown by the stereospecific nature of the reaction: The meso isomer gave the cis–trans product, while the *dl* compound gave the trans–trans diene.[454] If the transition state is in the chair form (taking the meso isomer, for example), one methyl must be "axial" and the other "equatorial" and the product must be the cis–trans olefin:



There are two possible boat forms for the transition state of the meso isomer. One of these leads to a trans–trans product:



and the other to a cis–cis olefin. For the *dl* pair the predictions are just the opposite: There is just one boat form, and it leads to the cis–trans olefin, while one chair form ("diaxial" methyls) leads to the cis–cis product and the other ("diequatorial" methyls) predicts the trans–trans product. Thus the nature of the products obtained demonstrates that the transition state is a chair and not a boat.[455] However, 3,4-dimethyl-1,5-hexadiene is free to assume either the chair or boat (it prefers the chair), but other compounds are not so free. Thus 1,2-divinylcyclopropane (p. 1022) can react *only* in the boat form, demonstrating that such reactions are not impossible.[456]

Not all Cope rearrangements proceed by the cyclic six-centered mechanism. Thus *cis*-1,2-divinylcyclobutane (p. 1022) rearranges smoothly to 1,5-cyclooctadiene, since the geometry is favorable. The trans isomer also gives this product, but the main product is 4-vinylcyclohexene (resulting from **8-35**). This reaction can be rationalized as proceeding by a diradical mechanism,[457] though it is possible that at least part of the cyclooctadiene produced comes from a prior epimerization of the *trans*- to the *cis*-divinylcyclobutane followed by Cope rearrangement of the latter.[458]

---

[453] Overman and Knoll, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 865 (1980); Hamilton, Mitchell, and Rooney, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 456 (1981). For a review of catalysis of Cope and Claisen rearrangements, see Lutz, *Chem. Rev.* **84,** 205–247 (1984).

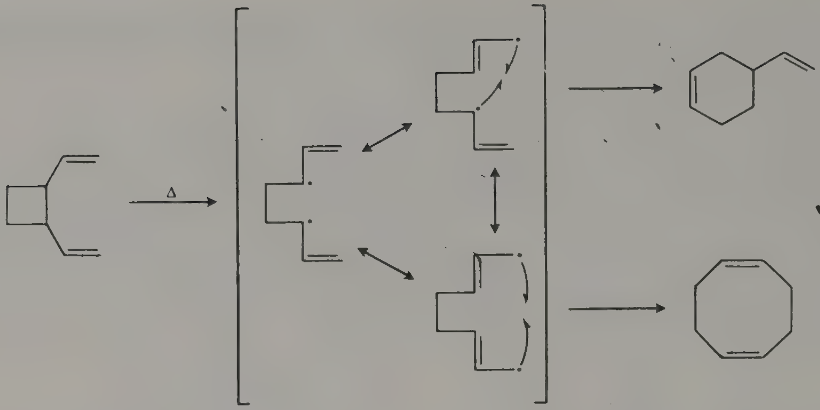
[454] Doering and Roth, *Tetrahedron* **18,** 67 (1962). See also Hill and Gilman, *Chem. Commun.* 619 (1967); Goldstein and DeCamp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 7356 (1974); Hansen and Schmid, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 1959 (1974).

[455] Preference for the chair transition state is a consequence of orbital-symmetry relationships: Hoffmann and Woodward, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4389 (1965); Fukui and Fujimoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 251 (1966).

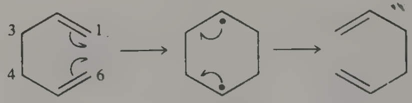
[456] For other examples of Cope rearrangements in the boat form, see Goldstein and Benzon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7147 (1972); Shea and Phillips, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 3156 (1980); Wiberg, Matturro, and Adams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 1600 (1981).

[457] Hammond and De Boer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 899 (1964); Trecker and Henry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 902 (1964). Also see Gibson and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 2620 (1965); Dolbier and Mancini, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2141 (1975); Berson et al., Ref. 440; Kessler and Ott, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5014 (1976). For a discussion of diradical mechanisms in Cope rearrangements, see Berson, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, pp. 358–372.

[458] See, for example, Berson and Dervan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 8949 (1972); Baldwin and Gilbert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 8283 (1976). For a similar result in the 1,2-divinylcyclopropane series, see Baldwin and Ullenius, Ref. 451.



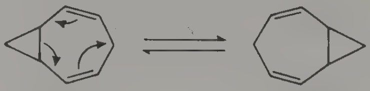
It has been suggested that another type of diradical two-step mechanism may be preferred by some substrates.[459] In this pathway, the 1,6 bond is formed before the 3,4 bond breaks:



108

so that a diradical intermediate (**108**) is involved.[460]

It was pointed out earlier that a Cope rearrangement of 1,5-hexadiene gives 1,5-hexadiene. This is a *degenerate Cope rearrangement* (p. 945). Another molecule that undergoes it is bicyclo[5.1.0]octadiene (**109**).[461] At room temperature the nmr spectrum of this compound is in accord



109 **109**

with the structure shown on the left. At 180°C it is converted by a Cope reaction to a compound equivalent to itself. The interesting thing is that at 180°C the nmr spectrum shows that what exists is an equilibrium mixture of the two structures. That is, at this temperature the molecule rapidly (faster than 10^3 times per second) changes back and forth between the two structures. This is called *valence tautomerism* and is quite distinct from resonance, even though only electrons shift.[462] The positions of the nuclei are not the same in the two structures. Molecules like **109** that exhibit valence tautomerism (in this case, at 180°C) are said to have *fluxional* structures. It may be recalled that *cis*-1,2-divinylcyclopropane does not exist at room temperature because it rapidly rearranges to 1,4-cycloheptadiene (p. 1022), but in **109** the *cis*-divinylcyclopropane structure is frozen into the molecule in both structures. Several other compounds in which this situation holds are also known. Of these, *bullvalene* (**110**) is especially interesting. The Cope rearrangement shown changes the position of the cyclopropane ring from 4,5,10 to 1,7,8. But the molecule could also have undergone rearrangements to put this ring at 1,2,8 or 1,2,7. Any of these could then undergo several Cope rearrangements. In all, there are 10!/3, or more than 1.2 million tautomeric forms, and the cyclopropane ring can be at any three carbons that are adjacent. Since each of these tautomers is equivalent to all the others, this has been called an infinitely degenerate Cope rearrangement. Bullvalene has been synthesized and its proton nmr spectrum determined.[463] At −25°C there are two peaks with an area ratio of 6:4. This is in accord with a single nontautomeric structure. The six are the vinyl protons and the four are the allylic ones. But at 100°C the compound shows only one nmr peak, indicating that we have here a truly unique situation where the compound rapidly interchanges its structure among 1.2 million equivalent forms.[464] The ^{13}C nmr spectrum of bullvalene also shows only one peak at 100°C.[465]

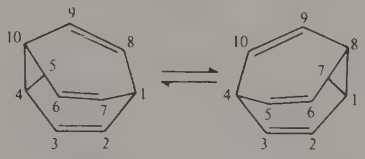
---

[459] Doering, Toscano, and Beasley, *Tetrahedron* **27**, 5299 (1971); Dewar and Wade, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 4417 (1977); Padwa and Blacklock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102**, 2797 (1980); Dollinger, Henning, and Kirmse, *Chem. Ber.* **115**, 2309 (1982). For evidence against this view, see Gajewski and Conrad, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100**, 6268, 6269 (1978), **101**, 6693 (1979); Gajewski, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13**, 142–148 (1980). For a discussion, see Wehrli, Belluš, Hansen, and Schmid, *Chimia* **30**, 416 (1976), *Helv. Chim. Acta* **60**, 1325 (1977).

[460] For a report of still another mechanism, featuring a diionic variant of **108**, see Gompper and Ulrich, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15**, 299 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88**, 298].

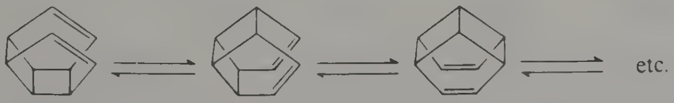
[461] Doering and Roth, *Tetrahedron* **19**, 715 (1963).

[462] For reviews of valence tautomerizations, see Decock-Le Révérend and Goudmand, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 389–407 (1973); Gajewski, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **4**, 1–53 (1971), pp. 32–49; Paquette, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **10**, 11–20 (1971) [*Angew. Chem.* **83**, 11–20]; Domareva-Mandel'shtam and D'yakonov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35**, 559–568 (1966); Schröder, Oth, and Merényi, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **4**, 752–761 (1965) [*Angew. Chem.* **77**, 774–784].

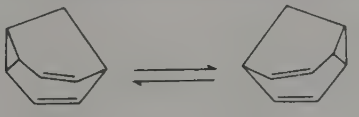


110

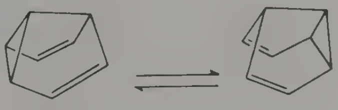
Another compound for which degenerate Cope rearrangements result in equivalence for all the carbons is *hypostrophene* (**111**).[466] In the case of the compound *barbaralane* (**112**) (bullvalene in which one CH═CH has been replaced by a CH_2):



111



112



113

---

[463] Schröder, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 481 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 772], *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 3140 (1964); Merényi, Oth, and Schröder, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 3150 (1964). See also Doering et al., Ref. 467. For a review of bullvalenes, see Schröder and Oth, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 414–423 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 458–467].

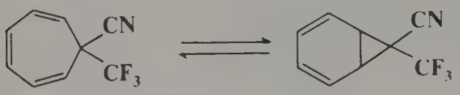
[464] A number of azabullvalenes (**110** containing heterocyclic nitrogen) have been synthesized. They also have fluxional structures when heated, though with fewer tautomeric forms than bullvalene itself: Paquette and Barton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5480 (1967); Paquette, Barton, and Whipple, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5481 (1967); Wegener, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4985 (1967); Paquette, Malpass, Krow, and Barton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5296 (1969).

[465] Oth, Müllen, Gilles, and Schröder, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 1415 (1974); Nakanishi and Yamamoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1803 (1974); Günther and Ulmen, *Tetrahedron* **30,** 3781 (1974).

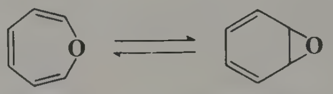
[466] McKennis, Brener, Ward, and Pettit, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4957 (1971); Paquette, Davis, and James, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1615 (1974).

there are only two equivalent tautomers.[467] However, nmr spectra indicate that even at room temperature a rapid interchange of both tautomers is present, though by about $-100°C$ this has slowed to the point where the spectrum is in accord with a single structure. In the case of *semibullvalene* (**113**) (barbaralane in which the CH_2 has been removed), not only is there a rapid interchange at room temperature, but even at $-110°C$.[468] **113** has the lowest energy barrier of any known compound capable of undergoing the Cope rearrangement.[469]

The molecules taking part in a valence tautomerization need not be equivalent. Thus, nmr spectra indicate that a true valence tautomerization exists at room temperature between the cycloheptatriene **114** and the norcaradiene **115**.[470] In this case one isomer (**115**) has the *cis*-1,2-divinylcyclopropane structure, while the other does not. In an analogous interconversion, benzene oxide and oxepin exist in a tautomeric equilibrium at room temperature.[471]

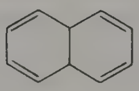


114 **115**

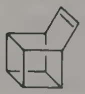


Oxepin Benzene oxide

Bullvalene and hypostrophene are members of a group of compounds all of whose formulas can be expressed by the symbol $(CH)_{10}$.[472] Many other members of this group are known, including **116** to **120** and the [10]annulenes (p. 55). All these compounds represent positions of minimum energy on the $(CH)_{10}$ energy surface, and many of them have been interconverted by electrocyclic or Cope rearrangements. Similar groups of $(CH)_n$ compounds exist for other even-numbered values of n.[472] For example, there are 20 possible $(CH)_8$ compounds,[473] including semibullvalene (**113**),

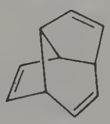


116

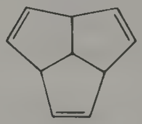


basketene

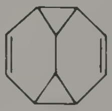
117



118



119



120

---

[467] Barbaralane was synthesized by Biethan, Klusacek, and Musso, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 176 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 152]; by Tsuruta, Kurabayashi, and Mukai, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3775 (1965); by Doering, Ferrier, Fossel, Hartenstein, Jones, Klumpp, Rubin, and Saunders, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 3943 (1967); and by Henkel and Hane, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3858 (1983).

[468] Zimmerman and Grunewald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 183 (1966); Meinwald and Schmidt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5877 (1969); Zimmerman, Robbins, and Schantl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 5878 (1969); Zimmerman, Binkley, Givens, Grunewald, and Sherwin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3316 (1969). See also Criegee and Askani, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 537 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 531]; Kobayashi, Ando, Kawada, and Kumadaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3958 (1981); Schneiders, Altenbach, and Müllen, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 637 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 638]; Quast, Christ, Görlach, and von der Saal, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3653 (1982).

[469] Cheng, Anet, Mioduski, and Meinwald, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 2887 (1974).

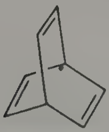
[470] Ciganek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1149 (1965). For other examples of norcaradiene–cycloheptatriene valence tautomerizations, see Görlitz and Günther, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 4467 (1969); Reich, Ciganek, and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5166 (1970); Ciganek, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2207 (1971); Dürr and Kober, *Chem. Ber.* **106,** 1565 (1973); Betz and Daub, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 2095 (1974); Maas and Regitz, *Chem. Ber.* **109,** 2039 (1976); Warner and Lu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 331 (1980); Takeuchi, Kitagawa, Toyama, and Okamoto, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 313 (1982); Neidlein and Radke, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **66,** 2626 (1983).

[471] For reviews, see Ref. 363. See also Boyd and Stubbs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2554 (1983).

[472] For reviews of rearrangements and interconversions of $(CH)_n$ compounds, see Balaban and Banciu, *J. Chem. Educ.* **61,** 766–770 (1984); Greenberg and Liebman, Ref. 84, pp. 203–215; Scott and Jones, *Chem. Rev.* **72,** 181–202 (1972); Balaban, *Rev. Roum. Chim.* **11,** 1097–1116 (1966).

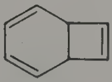
[473] The structures of all possible $(CH)_n$ compounds, for $n = 4, 6, 8$, and 10, are shown in Balaban, Ref. 472.

cubane (p. 132), cuneane (p. 1039), cyclooctatetraene (p. 54), **121** to **123**, and five possible (CH)$_6$ compounds, all of which are known: benzene, prismane (p. 132), Dewar benzene (p. 1009), bicyclopropenyl[474] (**124**), and benzvalene[475] (**125**).

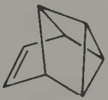


Barrelene

121

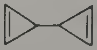


122

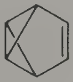


123

Some **(CH)$_8$** compounds



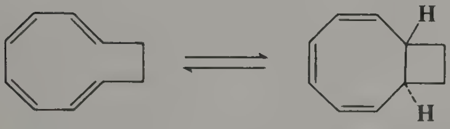
124



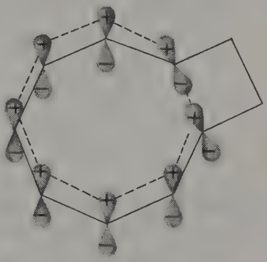
125

Two **(CH)$_6$** compounds

An interesting example of a valence tautomerization was reported for the molecules (*E*,*Z*,*Z*,*E*)-1,3,5,7-cyclodecatetraene (**126**) and *trans*-bicyclo[6.2.0]deca-2,4,6-triene (**127**), which rapidly interconvert at temperatures above 50°C[476] (an electrocyclic reaction, **8-31**). The transition state for this interconversion (**J**) consists of eight electrons connected in a Möbius array, i.e., with one sign inversion. Since the number of electrons is of the form 4*n*, the Möbius is the only allowed pathway for a thermal reaction (p. 754).

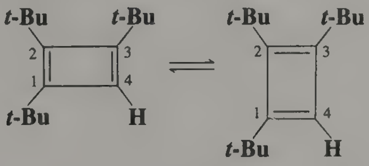


126 **127**



J

Another interesting example of a valence tautomerism is the case of 1,2,3-tri-*t*-butylcyclobutadiene (p. 51). There are two isomers, both rectangular, and ^{13}C nmr spectra show that they exist



in a dynamic equilibrium, even at −185°C.[477]

---

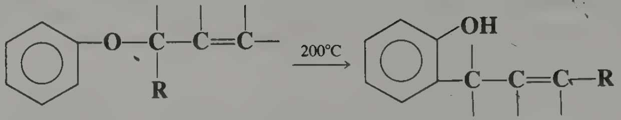
[474] For a study of how this compound isomerizes to benzene, see Davis, Shea, and Bergman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 1499 (1977).

[475] For reviews of benzvalenes, see Christl, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 529–546 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 515–531]; Burger, *Chimia,* 147–152 (1979).

[476] Staley and Henry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7612 (1970), **93,** 1294 (1971).

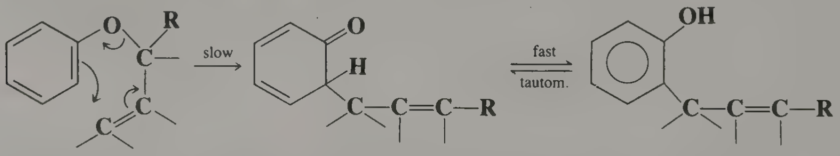
[477] Maier, Kalinowski, and Euler, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 693 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 706].

8-37 The Claisen Rearrangement

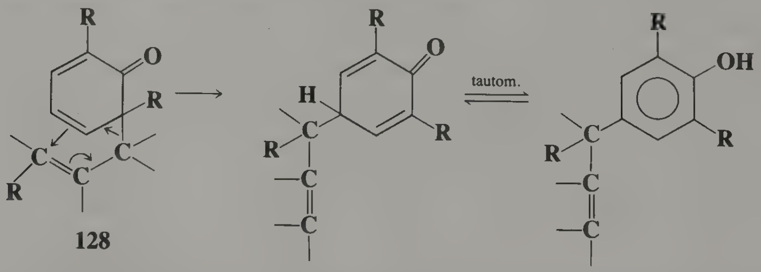


Allyl aryl ethers, when heated, rearrange to *o*-allylphenols in a reaction called the *Claisen rearrangement*.[478] If both ortho positions are filled, the allyl group migrates to the para position (this is often called the *para-Claisen rearrangement*). Sometimes some para product is obtained even if one or both ortho positions are free,[479] though in general, it may be said that when one or both ortho positions are open, the product is the *o*-allylphenol and that when both ortho positions are blocked, the product is the para compound. There is no reaction when the para and both ortho positions are filled. Migration to the meta position has not been observed. In the ortho migration the allyl group always undergoes an allylic shift. That is, as shown above, a substituent α to the oxygen is now γ to the ring (and vice versa). On the other hand, in the para migration there is never an allylic shift: the allyl group is found exactly as it was in the original ether. Propargyl groups (i.e., groups with a triple bond in the appropriate position) do not generally give the reaction.

The mechanism is a concerted pericyclic [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement[480] and accounts for all these facts. For the ortho rearrangement:



Evidence is the lack of a catalyst, the fact that the reaction is first order in the ether, the absence of crossover products when mixtures are heated, and the presence of the allylic shift, which is required by this mechanism. The allylic shift for the ortho rearrangement (and the absence of one for the para) has been demonstrated by ^{14}C labeling, even when no substituents are present. Studies of the transition-state geometry have shown that, like the Cope rearrangement, the Claisen rearrangement usually prefers a chairlike transition state.[481] When the ortho positions have no hydrogen, a second [3,3] sigmatropic migration (a Cope reaction) follows:



128

---

[478] For reviews, see Bartlett, Ref. 442, pp. 28–39; Ziegler, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **10,** 227–232 (1977); Bennett, *Synthesis* 589–606 (1977); Rhoads and Raulins, Ref. 442; Shine, "Aromatic Rearrangements," pp. 89–120, American Elsevier, New York, 1969; Smith and Kelly, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **8,** 75–234 (1971), pp. 153–201; Hansen and Schmid, *Chimia* **24,** 89–99 (1970), *Chem. Br.* **5,** 111–116 (1969); Jefferson and Scheinemann, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **22,** 391–421 (1968); Thyagarajan, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **8,** 143–163 (1967); Dalrymple, Kruger, and White, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Ether Linkage," pp. 635–660, Interscience, New York, 1967; Rhoads, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 660–684.

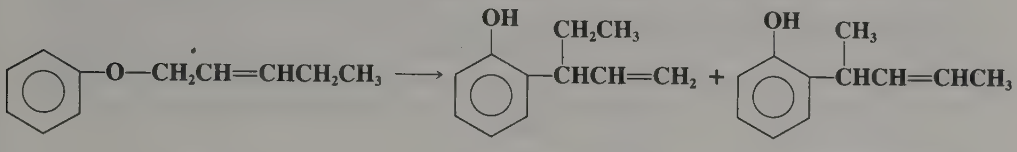
[479] Borgulya, Hansen, Barner, and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **46,** 2444 (1963); Scheinmann, Barner, and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **51,** 1603 (1968).

[480] For evidence regarding the nature of the concerted transition state, see McMichael and Korver, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2746 (1979); Gajewski and Conrad, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2747 (1979).

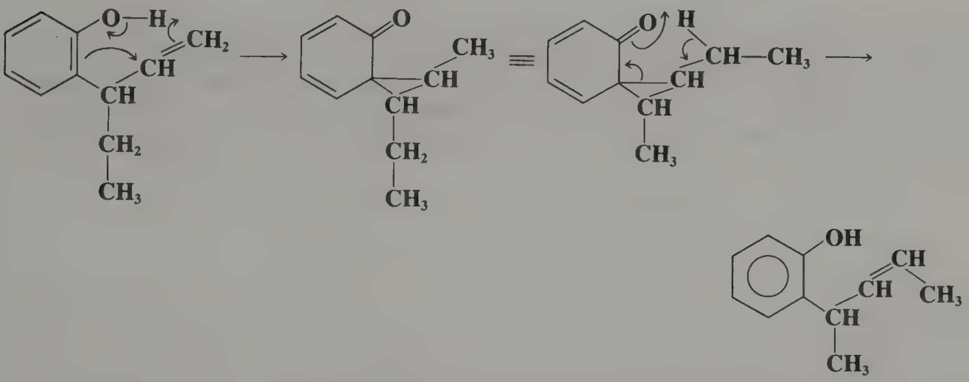
[481] Vittorelli, Winkler, Hansen and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **51,** 1457 (1968); Fráter, Habich, Hansen, and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **52,** 335 (1969); Wunderli, Winkler, and Hansen, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **60,** 2436 (1977).

and the group is restored to its original structure. Intermediates of structure **128** have been trapped by means of a Diels–Alder reaction.[482]

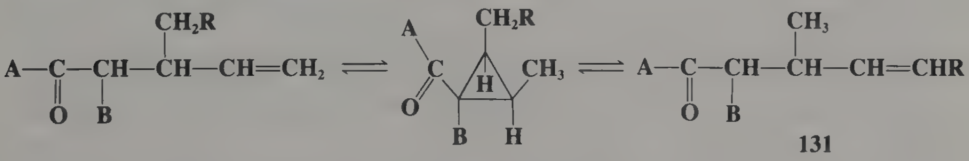
Ethers with an alkyl group in the γ position (ArO—C—C=C—R systems) sometimes give abnormal products, with the β-carbon becoming attached to the ring:[483]



It has been established that these abnormal products do not arise directly from the starting ether but are formed by a further rearrangement of the normal product:[484]



This rearrangement, which has been called an *enolene rearrangement*, a *homodienyl* [1,5] *sigmatropic hydrogen shift* (see p. 1017), and a [1,5] *homosigmatropic rearrangement*, involves a shift of three electron pairs over *seven* atoms. It has been found that this "abnormal" Claisen rearrangement is general and can interconvert the enol forms of systems of the types **129** and **131** through the cyclopropane intermediate **130**.[485]



129 **130** **131**

A = H, R, Ar, Or, etc.
B = H, R, Ar, COR, COAr, COOR, etc.

---

[482] Conroy and Firestone, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2290 (1956).

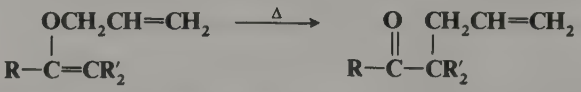
[483] For reviews of these abnormal Claisen rearrangements, see Hansen, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **3,** 177–236 (1971); Marvell and Whalley, in Patai, Ref. 445, pt. 2, pp. 743–750.

[484] Marvell, Anderson, and Ong, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 1109 (1962); Habich, Barner, Roberts, and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **45,** 1943 (1962); Lauer and Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2913 (1963); Fráter and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **49,** 1957 (1966); Marvell and Schatz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 67 (1967).

[485] Roberts, Landolt, Greene, and Heyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1404 (1967); Watson, Irvine, and Roberts, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3348 (1973).

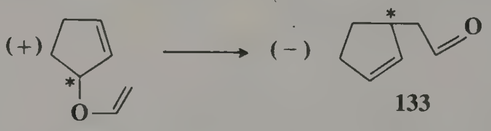
Since the Claisen rearrangement mechanism does not involve ions, it should not be greatly dependent on the presence or absence of substituent groups on the ring. This is the case. Electron-donating groups increase the rate and electron-withdrawing groups decrease it, but the effect is small, with the *p*-amino compound reacting only about 10 to 20 times faster than the *p*-nitro compound.[486] However, solvent effects are greater: rates varied over a 300-fold range when the reaction was run in 17 different solvents.[487] An especially good solvent is trifluoroacetic acid, in which the reaction can be carried out at room temperature.[488] Most Claisen rearrangements are performed without a catalyst, but $AlCl_3$ or BF_3 is sometimes used.[489] In this case it may become a Friedel–Crafts reaction, with the mechanism no longer cyclic,[490] and ortho, meta, and para products may be obtained.

Allyl ethers of enols (allyl vinyl ethers) also undergo the Claisen rearrangement; in fact, it was discovered with these compounds first:[491]



$$\begin{array}{c} OCH_2CH{=}CH_2 \\ | \\ R{-}C{=}CR'_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \begin{array}{c} O \quad CH_2CH{=}CH_2 \\ \| \quad | \\ R{-}C{-}CR'_2 \end{array}$$

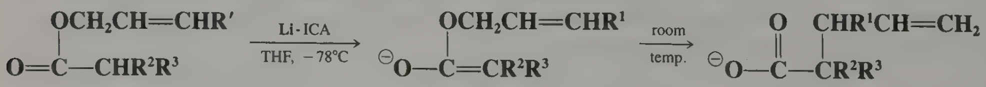
In these cases of course the final tautomerization does not take place even when R′ = H, since there is no aromaticity to restore, and ketones are more stable than enols. The mechanism is similar to that with allyl aryl ethers.[492] One experiment that demonstrated this was the conversion of optically active **132** to **133**, which was still optically active.[493] This is another example of asymmetric induction (p. 103):



132

133

It is possible to treat ketones with allyl alcohol and an acid catalyst to give γ,δ-unsaturated ketones directly, presumably by initial formation of the vinyl ethers, and then Claisen rearrangement.[494] In an analogous procedure, the enolates of allylic esters [formed by treatment of the esters with lithium isopropylcyclohexylamide (ICA)] rearrange to γ,δ-unsaturated acids.[495]



$$\begin{array}{c} OCH_2CH{=}CHR' \\ | \\ O{=}C{-}CHR^2R^3 \end{array} \xrightarrow[\text{THF, }-78^\circ\text{C}]{\text{Li-ICA}} \begin{array}{c} OCH_2CH{=}CHR^1 \\ | \\ {}^{\ominus}O{-}C{=}CR^2R^3 \end{array} \xrightarrow[\text{temp.}]{\text{room}} \begin{array}{c} O \quad CHR^1CH{=}CH_2 \\ \| \quad | \\ {}^{\ominus}O{-}C{-}CR^2R^3 \end{array}$$

---

[486] Goering and Jacobson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 3277 (1958); White, Gwynn, Schlitt, Girard, and Fife, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 3271 (1958); White and Slater, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 2908 (1962); Zahl, Kosbahn, and Kresze, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1733 (1975).

[487] White and Wolfarth, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2196 (1970). See also Miller and Scrimgeour, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1137 (1973).

[488] Svanholm and Parker, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 2* 169 (1974).

[489] For a review, see Lutz, Ref. 453.

[490] For example, crossover experiments have demonstrated that the $ZnCl_2$-catalyzed reaction is intermolecular: Yagodin, Bunina-Krivorukova, and Bal'yan, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **7,** 1491 (1971).

[491] Claisen, *Ber.* **45,** 3157 (1912).

[492] For a discussion of the transition state, see Burrows and Carpenter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 6983, 6984 (1981).

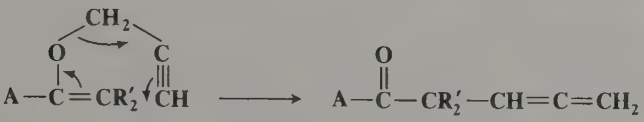
[493] Hill and Edwards, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3239 (1964).

[494] Lorette, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 4855 (1961). See also Saucy and Marbet, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 2091 (1967); Marbet and Saucy, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **50,** 2095 (1967); Thomas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3281 (1969); Johnson, Werthemann, Bartlett, Brocksom, Li, Faulkner, and Petersen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 741 (1970); Pitteloud and Petrzilka, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **62,** 1319 (1979); Daub, Sanchez, Cromer, and Gibson, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 743 (1982); Bartlett, Tanzella, and Barstow, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3941 (1982).

[495] Ireland, Mueller, and Willard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2868 (1976). See also Wilson and Price, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 1124 (1982); Burke, Fobare, and Pacofsky, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 5221 (1983).

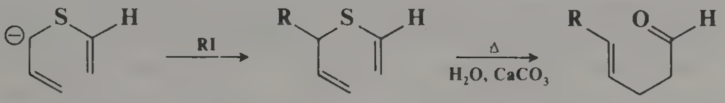
Diallylic ethers give the Claisen rearrangement when heated with tris(triphenylphosphine)ruthenium(II) dichloride. The latter presumably catalyzes the rearrangement of the diallylic ether to an allyl vinyl ether, which undergoes the actual Claisen rearrangement.[496]

A number of expected analogs of the Claisen rearrangement are known,[497] e.g., rearrangement of $ArNHCH_2CH{=}CH_2$,[498] of N-allyl enamines $R_2C{=}CRNRCR_2CR{=}CR_2$,[499] and of $RC(OCH_2CH{=}CH_2){=}NR$.[500] The rearrangement of $R^1CH{=}\overset{+}{N}R^2CHR^3CH_2CH{=}CH_2$ to $R_3CH{=}\overset{+}{N}R^2CHR^1CH_2CH{=}CH_2$ has been called the *aza-Cope rearrangement*.[501] Propargyl vinyl compounds give allenic aldehydes, ketones, esters, or amides:[502]



A = H, R, OR, NR₂

The conversion of allyl aryl thioethers $ArSCH_2CH{=}CH_2$ to *o*-allylthiophenols (the thio-Claisen rearrangement) is not feasible, because the latter are not stable[503] but react to give bicyclic compounds.[504] However, many allyl vinyl sulfides do give the rearrangement,[505] and this has been used in a synthesis of γ,δ-unsaturated aldehydes.[506]



Allyl vinyl sulfones $H_2C{=}CRCH_2{-}SO_2{-}CH{=}CH_2$ rearrange, when heated in the presence of ethanol and pyridine, to unsaturated sulfonate salts $CH_2{=}CRCH_2CH_2CH_2SO_3^-$, produced by reaction of the reagents with the unstable sulfene intermediates $CH_2{=}CRCH_2CH_2CH{=}SO_2$.[507]

---

[496] Reuter and Salomon, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3360 (1977).

[497] For a review of [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangements with hetero atoms present, see Winterfeldt, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **16,** 75–102 (1970). For a review of [3,3] rearrangements of iminium salts, see Heimgartner, Hansen, and Schmid, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **9,** pt. 2, 655–731 (1979).

[498] Marcinkiewicz, Green, and Mamalis, *Tetrahedron,* **14,** 208 (1961); Inada, Ikado, and Okazaki, *Chem. Lett.* 1213 (1973); Schmid, Hansen, and Schmid, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **56,** 105 (1973); Jolidon and Hansen, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **60,** 978 (1977).

[499] Ficini and Barbara, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6425 (1966); Hill and Gilman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1421 (1967); Hill and Newkome, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5059 (1968); Ireland and Willard, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 421 (1974); Hill and Khatri, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4337 (1978).

[500] For examples, see Synerholm, Gilman, Morgan, and Hill, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1111 (1968); Black, Eastwood, Okraglik, Poynton, Wade, and Welker, *Aust. J. Chem.* **25,** 1483 (1972); Overman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 597 (1974).

[501] Overman, Kakimoto, Okazaki, and Meier, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6622 (1983).

[502] For reviews of Claisen rearrangements involving triple bonds, see Viola et al., Ref. 452; Théron et al., Ref. 452, pp. 421–428.

[503] They have been trapped: see, for example, Mortensen, Hedegaard, and Lawesson, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 3831 (1971) Kwart and Schwartz, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1575 (1974).

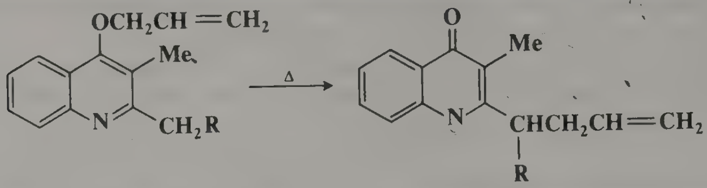
[504] Kwart and Hackett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1754 (1962); Meyers, Rinaldi, and Banoli, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 2440 (1963); Makisumi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6399 (1966); Kwart and Cohen, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3135 (1967), *Chem. Commun.* 319 (1968); Makisumi and Murabayashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1971, 2449 (1969).

[505] Schuijl and Brandsma, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **87,** 929 (1968), **88,** 1201 (1969); Corey and Shulman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 5522 (1970); Sasaki, Kojima, and Ohta, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 196 (1971); Kondo and Ojima, *Chem. Commun.* 62 (1972); Meijer, Vermeer, Bos, and Brandsma, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **93,** 26 (1974); Hartke and Gölz, *Chem. Ber.* **107,** 566 (1974); Morin, Paquer, and Smadja, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **95,** 179 (1976); Metzner, Pham, and Vialle, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 478 (1978); Schaumann and Grabley, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1746 (1979).

[506] Oshima, Takahashi, Yamamoto, and Nozaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2693 (1973). See also Brandsma and Verkruijsse, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **93,** 319 (1974).

[507] King and Harding, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 3312 (1976).

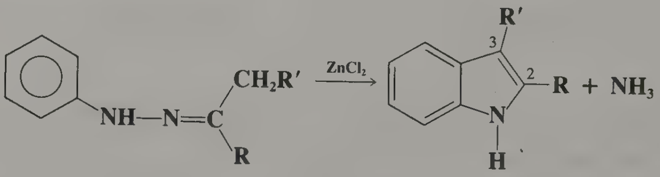
In some cases rearrangement has been shown to go to the α-position of a meta side chain:[508]



The mechanism of this process is the same as that of the para-Claisen rearrangement.

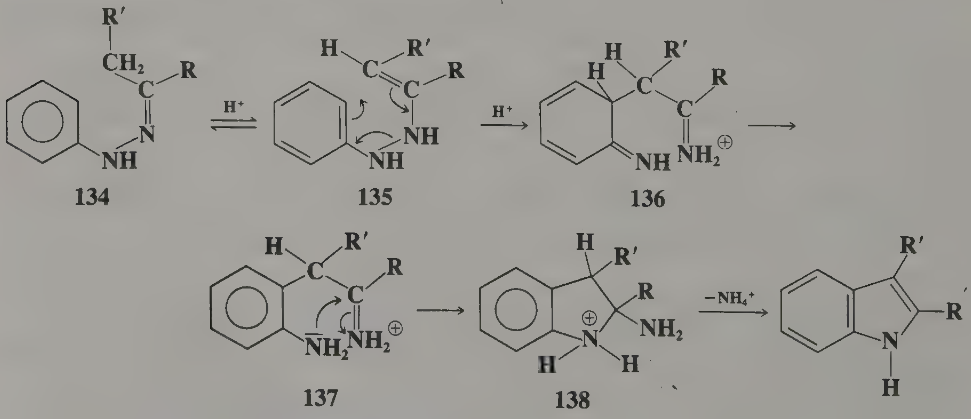
OS **III,** 418; **V,** 25; **53,** 116; **54,** 71, 74, 77; **58,** 5.

8-38 The Fischer Indole Synthesis



When arylhydrazones of aldehydes or ketones are treated with a catalyst, elimination of ammonia takes place and an indole is formed, in a reaction called the *Fischer indole synthesis*.[509] Zinc chloride is the catalyst most frequently employed, but dozens of others, including other metal halides, proton and Lewis acids, and certain transition-metals have also been used. Arylhydrazones are easily prepared by the treatment of aldehydes or ketones with phenylhydrazine (**6-2**) or by aliphatic diazonium coupling (**2-7**). However, it is not necessary to isolate the arylhydrazone. It can be treated with a mixture of the aldehyde or ketone and the catalyst: this is now common practice. In order to obtain an indole, the aldehyde or ketone must be of the form $RCOCH_2R'$ (R = alkyl, aryl, or hydrogen).

At first glance the reaction does not seem to be a rearrangement. However, the key step of the mechanism is a [3,3] sigmatropic rearrangement:[510]



---

[508] Makisumi, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1989 (1965).

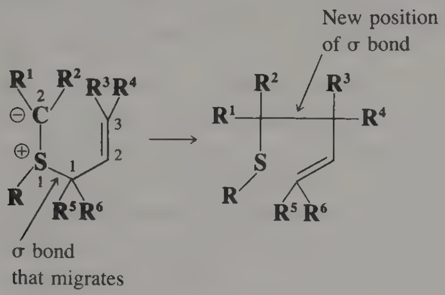
[509] For a monograph, see Robinson, "The Fischer Indole Synthesis," Wiley, New York, 1983. For reviews, see Grandberg and Sorokin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **43,** 115–128 (1974); Shine, "Aromatic Rearrangements," Ref. 478, pp. 190–207; Sundberg, "The Chemistry of Indoles," pp. 142–163, Academic Press, New York, 1970; Robinson, *Chem. Rev.* **69,** 227–250 (1969), **63,** 373–401 (1963). For reviews of some abnormal Fischer indole syntheses, see Ishii, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **14,** 275–283 (1981); Fusco and Sannicolo, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 161–170 (1980).

[510] This mechanism was proposed by Robinson and Robinson, *J. Chem. Soc.* **113,** 639 (1918).

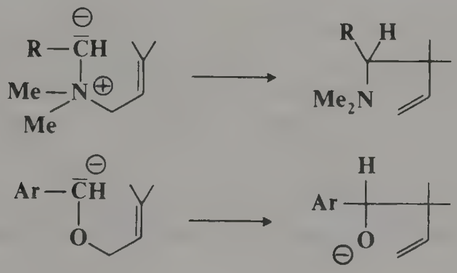
There is much evidence for this mechanism, e.g., (1) the isolation of **138**,[511] (2) the detection of **137** by ^{13}C and ^{15}N nmr,[512] (3) the isolation of side products that could only have come from **136**,[513] and (4) ^{15}N labeling experiments that showed that it was the nitrogen farther from the ring that was eliminated as ammonia.[514] The main function of the catalyst seems to be to speed the conversion of **134** to **135**. The reaction can be performed without a catalyst.

OS **III,** 725; **IV,** 884. Also see OS **IV,** 657.

8-39 [2,3] Sigmatropic Rearrangements



Sulfur ylides bearing an allylic group are converted on heating to unsaturated sulfides.[515] This is a concerted [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangement[516] and has also been demonstrated for the analogous cases of nitrogen ylides[517] and the conjugate bases of allylic ethers,[518] as well as certain other



---

[511] Southwick, McGrew, Engel, Milliman, and Owellen, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 3058 (1963); Southwick, Vida, Fitzgerald, and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2051 (1968); Forrest and Chen. *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1067 (1972).

[512] Douglas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6463 (1978), **101,** 5676 (1979).

[513] Robinson and Brown, *Can. J. Chem.* **42,** 1940 (1964); Bajwa and Brown, *Can J. Chem.* **46,** 1927, 3105 (1968), **47,** 785 (1969), **48,** 2293 (1970).

[514] Clausius and Weisser, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **35,** 400 (1952).

[515] For example, see Blackburn, Ollis, Plackett, Smith, and Sutherland, *Chem. Commun.* 186 (1968); Trost and LaRochelle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3327 (1968); Baldwin, Hackler, and Kelly, *Chem. Commun.* 537, 538, 1083 (1968); Bates and Feld, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 417 (1968); Kirmse and Kapps, *Chem. Ber.* **101,** 994, 1004 (1968); Biellmann and Ducep, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 33 (1971); Rautenstrauch, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **54,** 739 (1971); Grieco, Meyers, and Finkelhor, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 119 (1974); Kreiser and Wurziger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1669 (1975); Vedejs, Mullins, Renga, and Singer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 519 (1978); Snider and Füzesi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 877 (1978); Ceré, Paolucci, Pollicino, Sandri, and Fava, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3315 (1981).

[516] For a review of the stereochemistry of these reactions, see Hoffmann, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 563–572 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 625–634].

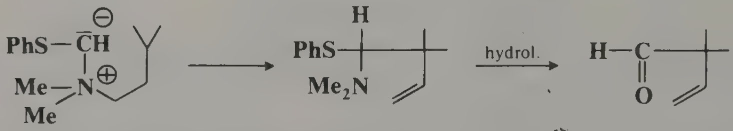
[517] For example, see Jemison and Ollis, *Chem. Commun.* 294 (1969); Rautenstrauch, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **55,** 2233 (1972); Mageswaran, Ollis, Sutherland, and Thebtaranonth, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 651 (1973); Ollis, Sutherland, and Thebtaranonth, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 657 (1973); Mander and Turner, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2915 (1973).

[518] Makisumi and Notzumoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6393 (1966); Schöllkopf and Fellenberger, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **698,** 80 (1966); Schöllkopf, Fellenberger, and Rizk, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **734,** 106 (1970); Rautenstrauch, *Chem. Commun.* 4 (1970); Baldwin and Patrick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3556 (1971); Thomas and Dubini, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 2084 (1974); Cazes and Julia, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 925, 931 (1977); Wada, Fukui, Nakamura, and Takei, *Chem. Lett.* 557 (1977); Still and Mitra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1927 (1978); Mikami, Taya, Nakai, and Fujita, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 5447 (1981).

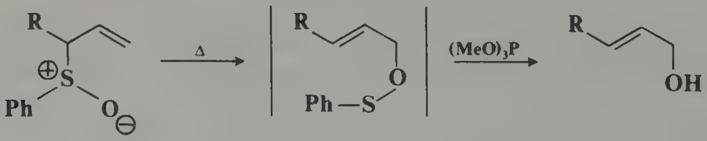
systems.[519] It has even been extended to all-carbon systems.[520]

Since the reactions involve migration of an allylic group from a sulfur, nitrogen, or oxygen atom to an adjacent negatively charged carbon atom, they are special cases of the Stevens or Wittig rearrangements (reactions **8-24**, **8-25**). However, in this case the migrating group *must* be allylic (in reactions **8-24** and **8-25**, other groups may also migrate). Thus, when the migrating group is allylic, there are two possible pathways: (1) the radical-ion or ion-pair mechanisms (**8-24**, **8-25**) and (2) the concerted pericyclic [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangement. These can easily be told apart, since the latter always involves an allylic shift (as in the Claisen rearrangement), while the former pathway does not. Of course, migration of groups other than allylic can take place only by the radical-ion or ion-pair mechanisms, because the orbital symmetry rules forbid a concerted mechanism for 1,2 shifts.

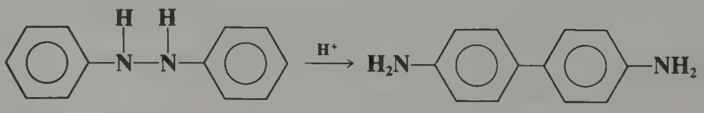
If an OR or SR group is attached to the negative carbon, the reaction becomes a method for the preparation of β,γ-unsaturated aldehydes, because the product is easily hydrolyzed.[521]



Another [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangement converts allylic sulfoxides to allylically rearranged alcohols by treatment with a thiophilic reagent such as trimethyl phosphite.[522] In this case the migration is from sulfur to oxygen. [2,3] oxygen-to-sulfur migrations are also known.[523] The Sommelet–Hauser rearrangement (**3-27**) is also a [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangement.



8-40 The Benzidine Rearrangement



139

---

[519] See, for example, Baldwin, Brown, and Höfle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 788 (1971); Yamamoto, Oda, and Inouye, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 848 (1973); Ranganathan, Ranganathan, Sidhu, and Mehrotra, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3577 (1973). For a review with respect to selenium compounds, see Reich, in Trahanovsky, "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," pt. C, pp. 102–111, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

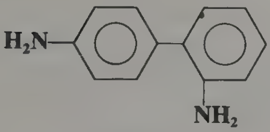
[520] Baldwin and Urban, *Chem. Commun.* 165 (1970).

[521] Huynh, Julia, Lorne, and Michelot, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4057 (1972).

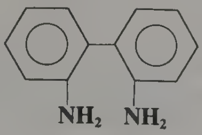
[522] Bickart, Carson, Jacobus, Miller, and Mislow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4869 (1968); Tang and Mislow, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2100 (1970); Grieco, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 702 (1972); Evans and Andrews, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **7,** 147–155 (1974); Isobe, Iio, Kitamura, and Goto, *Chem. Lett.* 541 (1978); Hoffmann, Goldmann, Maak, Gerlach, Frickel, and Steinbach, *Chem. Ber.* **113,** 819 (1980).

[523] Braverman and Mechoulam, *Isr. J. Chem.* **5,** 71 (1967); Braverman and Stabinsky, *Chem. Commun.* 270 (1967); Rautenstrauch, *Chem. Commun.* 526 (1970); Smith and Stirling, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1530 (1971).

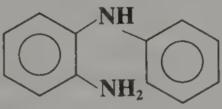
When hydrazobenzene is treated with acids, it rearranges to give about 70% 4,4′-diaminobiphenyl (**139,** benzidine) and about 30% 2,4′-diaminobiphenyl (**140**). This reaction is called the *benzidine rearrangement* and is general for N,N′-diarylhydrazines.[524] Usually, the major product is the 4,4′-diaminobiaryl, but four other products may also be produced. These are the 2,4′-diaminobiaryl (**140**), already referred to, the 2,2′-diaminobiaryl (**141**), and the *o*- and *p*-arylaminoanilines (**142** and **143**), called *semidines*. **141** and the **143** compounds are formed less often and in smaller amounts than the other two side products. Usually, the 4,4′-diaminobiaryl predominates, except when one or both of the para positions of the diarylhydrazine are occupied. However, the 4,4′-diamine may still be produced, even if the para positions are occupied. If SO_3H, COOH, or Cl (but not R, Ar, or NR_2) is present in the para position, it may be ejected. With dinaphthylhydrazines, the major products are not the 4,4′-diaminobinaphthyls, but the 2,2′ isomers. Another side reaction is disproportionation to $ArNH_2$ and ArN=NAr. For example, *p,p′*-$PhC_6H_4NHNHC_6H_4Ph$ gives 88% disproportionation products at 25°C.[525]



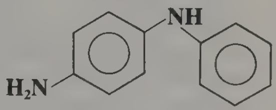
140



141



142



143

The mechanism has been exhaustively studied and several mechanisms have been proposed. At one time it was believed that NHAr broke away from ArNHNHAr and then became attached to the para position to give the semidine (**143**), which then went on to product. The fact that semidines could be isolated lent this argument support, as did the fact that this would be analogous to the rearrangements considered in Chapter 11 (**1-34** to **1-38**). However, this theory was killed when it was discovered that semidines could not be converted to benzidines under the reaction conditions. Cleavage into two independent pieces (either ions or free radicals) has been ruled out by many types of crossover experiments, which always showed that the two rings of the starting material are in the product; that is, ArNHNHAr′ gives no molecules (of any of the five products) containing two Ar groups or two Ar′ groups, and mixtures of ArNHNHAr and Ar′NHNHAr′ give no molecules containing both Ar and Ar′. An important discovery was the fact that, although the reaction is always first order in substrate, it may be either first[526] or second[527] order in $[H^+]$. With some substrates the reaction is entirely first order in $[H^+]$, while with others it is entirely second order in $[H^+]$, regardless of the acidity. With still other substrates, the reaction is first order in $[H^+]$ at low acidities and second order at higher acidities. With the latter substrates fractional orders can often be observed,[528] because at intermediate acidities, both processes take place simultaneously. These kinetic results seem to indicate that the actual reacting species can be either the monoprotonated substrate $\mathrm{ArNH\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2Ar}$ or the diprotonated $\mathrm{Ar\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2\overset{\oplus}{N}H_2Ar}$.

[524] For Reviews, see, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydrazo, Azo, and Azoxy Groups," pt. 2, Wiley, New York, 1975, the reviews by Cox and Buncel, pp. 775–807; Koga, Koga, and Anselme, pp. 914–921; Williams, in Bamford and Tipper, Ref. 365, vol. 13, pp. 437–448 (1972); Shine, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **2,** 191–247 (1969), "Aromatic Rearrangements," Ref. 478, pp. 126–179; Banthorpe, *Top. Carbocyclic Chem.* **1,** 1–62 (1969); Lukashevich, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 895–902 (1967).

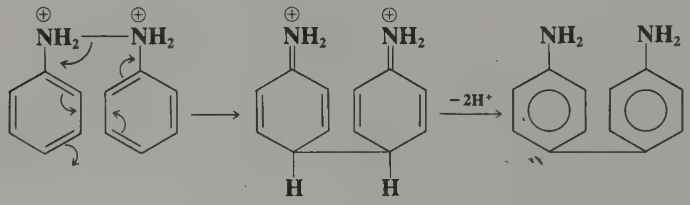
[525] Shine and Stanley, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 905 (1967). For an investigation of the mechanism of the disproportionation reaction, see Shine, Habdas, Kwart, Brechbiel, Horgan, and San Filippo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 2823 (1983).

[526] Banthorpe, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2386, 2402, 2407, 2413, 2418, 2429 (1962); Shine and Chamness, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1232 (1963); Banthorpe and O'Sullivan, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 627 (1968).

[527] Hammond and Shine, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 220 (1950); Banthorpe and Cooper, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 618 (1968); Banthorpe, Cooper, and O'Sullivan, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 2054 (1971).

[528] Carlin and Odioso, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **76,** 100 (1954); Banthorpe, Ingold, and Roy, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 64 (1968); Banthorpe, Ingold, and O'Sullivan, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 624 (1968).

Most of the proposed mechanisms[529] attempted to show how all five products could be produced by variations of a single process. An important breakthrough was the discovery that the two main products, the normal **139** and **140**, are formed in entirely different ways, as shown by isotope-effect studies.[530] When the reaction was run with hydrazobenzene labeled with ^{15}N at both nitrogen atoms, the isotope effect was 1.022 for formation of **139**, but 1.063 for formation of **140**. This showed that the N—N bond is broken in the rate-determining step in both cases, but the steps themselves are obviously different. When the reaction was run with hydrazobenzene labeled with ^{14}C at a para position, there was an isotope effect of 1.028 for formation of **139**, but essentially no isotope effect (1.001) for formation of **140**. This can only mean that for **139** formation of the new C—C bond *and* breaking of the N—N bond both take place in the rate-determining step; in other words, the mechanism is concerted. The following [5.5] sigmatropic rearrangement accounts for this:[531]



144

The diion **144** was obtained as a stable species in super-acid solution at −78°C by treatment of hydrazobenzene with FSO_3H-SO_2 (SO_2ClF).[532] Though the mechanism shown begins with the diprotonated substrate, it is possible that the monoprotonated substrate can also behave the same way. There is evidence that even in the diprotonated pathway, protonation may take place during the transition state rather than before.[533]

140 is formed by a completely different mechanism, although the details are not known. There is rate-determining breaking of the N—N bond, but the C—C bond is not formed during this step. There is evidence that formation of the *p*-semidine (**143**) is intramolecular and concerted.[534] Under certain conditions, benzidine rearrangements have been found to go through radical cations.[535]

C. Other Cyclic Rearrangements

8-41 Metathesis of Olefins

$$CH_3CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3 \xrightarrow[WCl_6\text{-}EtOH]{EtAlCl_2} CH_3CH{=}CHCH_3 + CH_3CH_2CH{=}CHCH_2CH_3$$

When olefins are treated with certain catalysts (most often tungsten or molybdenum complexes), they are converted to other olefins in a reaction in which the alkylidene groups ($R^1R^2C=$) have become interchanged by a process schematically illustrated by the equation:

---

[529] For example, see the "polar-transition-state" mechanism: Banthorpe, Hughes, and Ingold, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2864 (1964), and the "π-complex mechanism:" Dewar, in Mayo-MR, Ref. 1, vol. 1, pp. 323–344.

[530] Shine, Zmuda, Park, Kwart, Horgan, Collins, and Maxwell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 955 (1981); Shine, Zmuda, Park, Kwart, Horgan, and Brechbiel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2501 (1982).

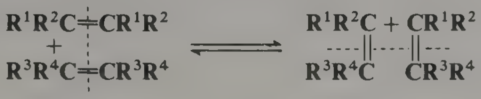
[531] This step was also part of the "polar-transition-state" mechanism; see Ref. 529.

[532] Olah, Dunne, Kelly, and Mo, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7438 (1972).

[533] Bunton and Rubin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 4236 (1976).

[534] Heesing and Schinke, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 3319 (1977); Shine, Zmuda, Kwart, Horgan, and Brechbiel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5181 (1982).

[535] See for example, Nojima, Ando, and Tokura, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1504 (1976).



The reaction is called *metathesis* of olefins.[536] In the example shown above, 2-pentene (either cis, trans, or a cis–trans mixture) is converted to a mixture of about 50% 2-pentene, 25% 2-butene, and 25% 3-hexene. The reaction is an equilibrium and the same mixture can be obtained by starting with equimolar quantities of 2-butene and 3-hexene.[537] In general, the reaction can be applied to a single unsymmetrical olefin, giving a mixture of itself and two other olefins, or to a mixture of two olefins, in which case the number of different molecules in the product depends on the symmetry of the reactants. As in the case above, a mixture of $R^1R^2C=CR^1R^2$ and $R^3R^4C=CR^3R^4$ gives rise to only one new olefin ($R^1R^2C=CR^3R^4$), while in the most general case, a mixture of $R^1R^2C=CR^3R^4$ and $R^5R^6C=CR^7R^8$ gives a mixture of ten olefins: the original two plus eight new ones. With simple alkenes the proportions of products are generally statistical,[538] which limits the synthetic utility of the reaction since the yield of any one product is low. However, in some cases one alkene may be more or less thermodynamically stable than the rest, so that the proportions are not statistical. Furthermore, it may be possible to shift the equilibrium. For example, 2-methyl-1-butene gives rise to ethylene and 3,4-dimethyl-3-hexene. By allowing the gaseous ethylene to escape, the yield of 3,4-dimethyl-3-hexene can be raised to 95%.[539] In another synthetic application, mixtures of two alkenyl tosylates $RCH=CH(CH_2)_nOTs$ ($n = 7$, 8, or 9) were converted to ditosylates $TsO(CH_2)_nCH=CH(CH_2)_nOTs$.[540] As expected for an equilibrium process, both cis and trans alkenes are produced, with the more stable trans isomers usually predominating. However, if the reaction is stopped before equilibrium is reached, there is some stereospecificity. Cis and trans alkenes produce a high proportion of cis and trans products, respectively.[541]

Many catalysts, both homogeneous[542] and heterogeneous,[543] have been used for this reaction. Some of the former[544] are WCl_6-EtOH-$EtAlCl_2$,[538] $MoCl_2(NO)_2(Ph_3P)_2$-$EtAlCl_2$,[545] WCl_6-BuLi,[546] and WCl_6-$LiAlH_4$,[547] while among the latter are oxides of Mo, W, and Re deposited on alumina or silica gel,[548] as well as certain polymer-supported catalysts.[549] In general, the former group are more useful for synthetic purposes. By choice of the proper catalyst, the reaction has been applied to terminal and internal alkenes, straight chain or branched. The effect of substitution on the ease of reaction is $CH_2= > RCH_2CH= > R_2CHCH= > R_2C=$.[550] Dienes may react intermolecularly or intramolecularly,[551] e.g.,

---

[536] For a monograph, see Ivin, "Olefin Metathesis," Academic Press, New York, 1983. For reviews, see Basset and Leconte, *CHEMTECH* 762–767 (1980); Banks, *CHEMTECH* 494–500 (1979), *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **25,** 39–69 (1972); Calderon, Lawrence, and Ofstead, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **17,** 449–492 (1979); Grubbs, *Prog. Inorg. Chem.* **24,** 1–50 (1978); Calderon, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups: Supplement A," pt. 2, pp. 913–964, Wiley, New York, 1977, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **5,** 127–132 (1972); Katz, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **16,** 283–317 (1977); Haines and Leigh, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **4,** 155–188 (1975); Hocks, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1893–1903 (1975); Mol and Moulijn, *Adv. Catal.* **24,** 131–171 (1975); Hughes, *Chem. Technol.* 486–495 (1975), *Organomet. Chem. Synth.* **1,** 341–374 (1972); Khidekel', Shebaldova, and Kalechits, *Russ, Chem. Rev.* **40,** 669–678 (1971); Bailey, *Catal. Rev.* **3,** 37–60 (1969).

[537] Calderon, Chen, and Scott, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3327 (1967); Wang and Menapace, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3794 (1968); Hughes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 532 (1970).

[538] Calderon, Ofstead, Ward, Judy, and Scott, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4133 (1968).

[539] Knoche, Ger. Pat. (Offen.) 2024835 (1970) [*Chem. Abstr.* **74,** 44118b (1971)]. See also Chevalier, Sinou, and Descotes, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2254 (1976); Bespalova, Babich, Vdovin, and Nametkin, *Doklad. Chem.* **225,** 668 (1975); Ichikawa and Fukuzumi, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2633 (1976); Baker and Crimmin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 441 (1977).

[540] Daly and McKervey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 2997 (1982).

[541] See for example, Hughes, *Chem. Commun.* 431 (1969); Leconte and Basset, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 7296 (1979).

[542] First reported by Calderon, Chen, and Scott, Ref. 537.

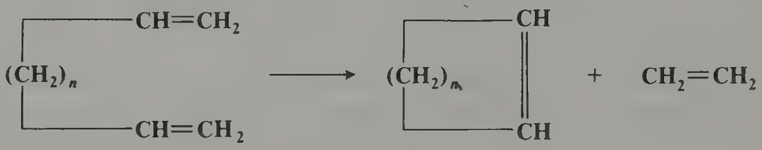
[543] First reported by Banks and Bailey, *Ind. Eng. Chem., Prod. Res. Dev.* **3,** 170 (1964).

[544] For a lengthy list, see Hughes, *Organomet. Chem. Synth.* Ref. 536, pp. 362–368.

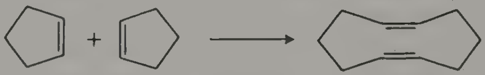
[545] Zuech, Hughes, Kubicek, and Kittleman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 528 (1970); Hughes, Ref. 537.

[546] Wang and Menapace, Ref. 537.

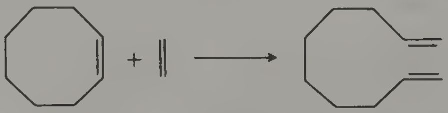
[547] Chatt, Haines, and Leigh, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1202 (1972); Matlin and Sammes, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 624 (1978).



Cyclic olefins give dimeric dienes,[552] e.g..



However, the products can then react with additional monomers and with each other, so that polymers are generally produced, and the cyclic dienes are obtained only in low yield. The reaction between a cyclic and a linear olefin can give a ring-opened diene:[553]



Olefins containing functional groups[554] do not give the reaction with most of the common catalysts, but some success has been reported with WCl_6-$SnMe_4$[555] and with certain other catalysts.

The reaction has also been applied to internal triple bonds:[556]

$$2RC{\equiv}CR' \rightleftharpoons RC{\equiv}CR + R'C{\equiv}CR'$$

but it has not been successful for terminal triple bonds.[557]

The most likely mechanism is a chain mechanism, involving the intervention of a metal-carbene

---

[548] For a list of heterogeneous catalysts, see Banks, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.*, Ref. 536, pp. 41–46.

[549] Tamagaki, Card, and Neckers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 6635 (1978), and references cited therein; Warwel and Buschmeyer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 131 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 131].

[550] For an explanation for this order, see McGinnis, Katz, and Hurwitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 605 (1976); Casey, Tuinstra, and Saeman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 608 (1976).

[551] Kroll and Doyle, *Chem. Commun.* 839 (1971); Zuech et al., Ref. 545.

[552] Calderon, Ofstead, and Judy, *J. Polym. Sci., Part A-1* **5,** 2209 (1967); Wasserman, Ben-Efraim, and Wolovsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3286 (1968); Wolovsky and Nir, *Synthesis* 134 (1972).

[553] Wasserman, Ben-Efraim, and Wolovsky, Ref. 552; Ray and Crain, Fr. Pat. 1511381 (1968) [*Chem. Abstr.* **70,** 114580q (1969)] Mango, U.S. Pat. 3424811 (1969) [*Chem. Abstr.* **70,** 106042a (1969)]; Rossi, Diversi, Lucherini, and Porri, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 879 (1974); Lal and Smith, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 775 (1975).

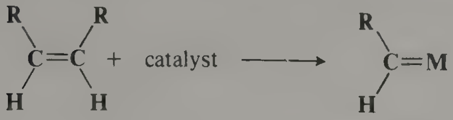
[554] For a review, seel Mol, *CHEMTECH* 250–255 (1983). See also Bosma, van den Aardweg, and Mol, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **255,** 159 (1983).

[555] First shown by van Dam, Mittelmeijer, and Boelhouwer, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1221 (1972).

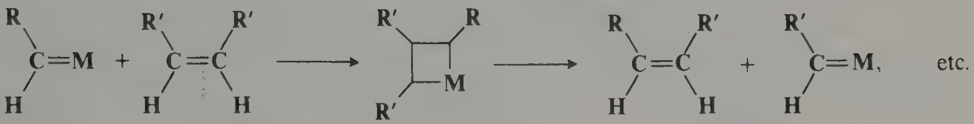
[556] Pennella, Banks, and Bailey, *Chem. Commun.* 1548 (1968); Mortreux, Petit, and Blanchard, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4967 (1978); Devarajan, Walton, and Leigh, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **181,** 99 (1979); Fritch and Vollhardt, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 409 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 439]; Wengrovius, Sancho, and Schrock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 3932 (1981); Villemin and Cadiot, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 5139 (1982).

[557] McCullough, Listemann, Schrock, Churchill, and Ziller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6729 (1983).

(**145**) and a four-membered ring containing a metal (**146**).[558]

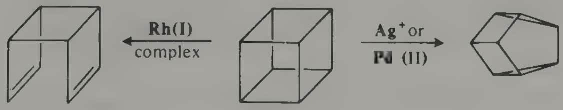


145



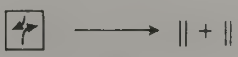
145 **146**

8-42 Metal-Ion-Catalyzed σ-Bond Rearrangements

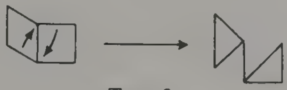


147 Cubane Cuneane

Many highly strained cage molecules undergo rearrangement when treated with metallic ions such as Ag^+, Rh(I), or Pd(II).[559] The bond rearrangements observed can be formally classified into two main types: (1) 2 + 2 ring openings of cyclobutanes and (2) conversion of a bicyclo[3.3.0] system to a bicyclopropyl system. The molecule cubane supplies an example of each type (see above). Treatment with Rh(I) complexes converts cubane to tricyclo[4.2.0.0^{2,5}]octa-3,7-diene (**147**),[560] an example of type 1, while Ag^+ or Pd(II) causes the second type of reaction, producing cuneane.[561]



Type 1



Type 2

---

[558] For reviews of the mechanism, see Grubbs, Ref. 536; Katz, Ref. 536; Calderon, Ofstead, and Judy, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **15,** 401–409 (1976) [*Angew. Chem.* **88,** 443–442]. See also McLain, Wood, and Schrock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3519 (1977); Casey and Polichnowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 6097 (1977); Mango, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 6117 (1977); Casey and Tuinstra, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 2270 (1978); Stevens and Beauchamp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 6449 (1979); Grubbs and Hoppin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 1499 (1979); Howard, Lee, and Grubbs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 6876 (1980); Lee, Ott, and Grubbs, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7491 (1982); Bencze, Ivin, and Rooney, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 834 (1980); Levisalles, Rudler, and Villemin, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **193,** 235 (1980); Rappé and Goddard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 448 (1982); Iwasawa and Hamamura, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 130 (1983).

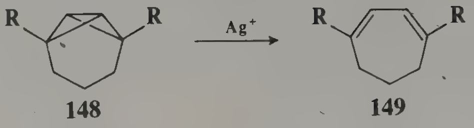
[559] For reviews, see Halpern, in Wender and Pino, "Organic Syntheses via Metal Carbonyls," vol. 2, pp. 705–721, Wiley, New York, 1977; Bishop, *Chem. Rev.* **76,** 461–486 (1976); Cardin, Cetinkaya, Doyle, and Lappert, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **2,** 99–144 (1973), pp. 132–139; Paquette, *Synthesis* 347–357 (1975), *Acc. Chem. Res.* **4,** 280–287 (1971).

[560] Cassar, Eaton, and Halpern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3515 (1970); Eaton and Chakraborty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 3634 (1978).

[561] Cassar, Eaton, and Halpern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6336 (1970).

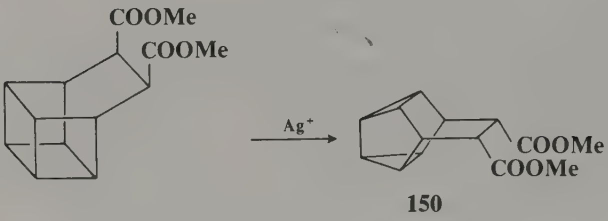
Other examples are:

Type 1



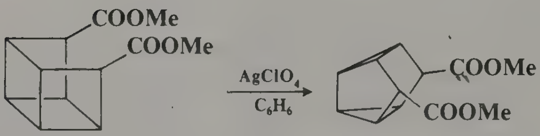
Ref. 562

Type 2



Ref. 563

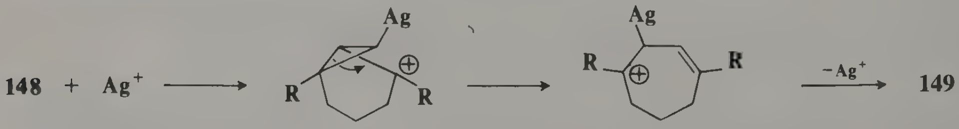
Type 2



Ref. 564

150 is the 9,10-dicarbomethoxy derivative of *snoutane* (pentacyclo[3.3.2.$0^{2,4}$.$0^{3,7}$.$0^{6,8}$]decane).

The mechanisms of these reactions are not completely understood, although relief of strain undoubtedly supplies the driving force. The reactions are thermally forbidden by the orbital-symmetry rules, and the role of the catalyst is to provide low-energy pathways so that the reactions can take place. The type 1 reactions are the reverse of the catalyzed 2 + 2 ring closures discussed at **5-48**. The following mechanism, in which Ag⁺ attacks one of the edge bonds, has been suggested for the conversion of **148** to **149**.[565]



Simpler bicyclobutanes can also be converted to dienes, but in this case the products usually result from cleavage of the central bond and one of the edge bonds.[566] For example, treatment of **151** with $AgBF_4$,[567] $(C_6F_5Cu)_4$,[568] or $[(\pi\text{-allyl})PdCl]_2$[569] gives a mixture of **152** and **153** resulting

---

[562] Paquette, Allen, and Henzel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7002 (1970); Gassman and Atkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4579 (1971), **94,** 7748 (1972); Sakai, Westberg, Yamaguchi, and Masamune, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4611 (1972); Paquette, Wilson, and Henzel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7771 (1972).

[563] See, for example, Furstoss and Lehn, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2497 (1966); Paquette and Stowell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2584 (1970), **93,** 2459 (1971); Dauben, Buzzolini, Schallhorn, and Whalen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 787 (1970); Dauben and Kielbania, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 7345 (1971); Paquette, Beckley, and Farnham, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1089 (1975).

[564] Paquette, Beckley, and McCreadie, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 775 (1971); Dauben, Schallhorn, and Whalen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1446 (1971).

[565] Gassman and Atkins, Ref. 562; Sakai et al., Ref. 562.

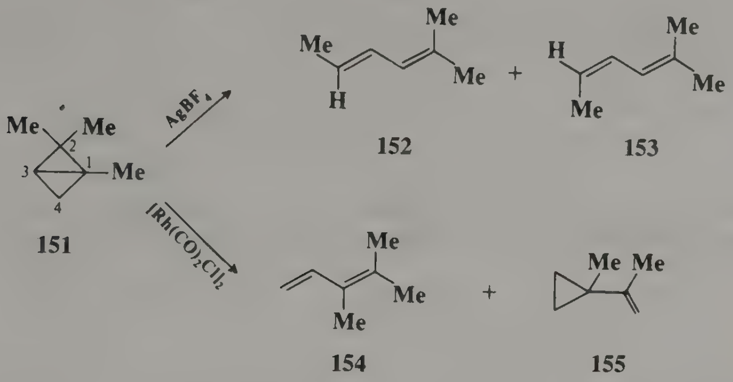
[566] **148** can also be cleaved in this manner, giving a 3-methylenecyclohexene. See, for example, Gassman and Atkins, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 1042 (1971); Dauben and Kielbania, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 3669 (1972); Gassman and Reitz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3057 (1973); Paquette and Zon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 203, 224 (1974).

[567] Paquette, Henzel, and Wilson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2335 (1971).

[568] Gassman and Williams, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1409 (1971).

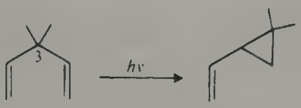
[569] Gassman, Meyer, and Williams, *Chem. Commun.* 842 (1971).

from a formal cleavage of the $C_1—C_3$ and $C_1—C_2$ bonds (note that a hydride shift has taken place). The use of $[Rh(CO)_2Cl]_2$,[570] $[Ru(CO)_3Cl_2]_2$,[570] or $Pd(PhCN)_2Cl_2$[569] cleaves **151** in a different way,

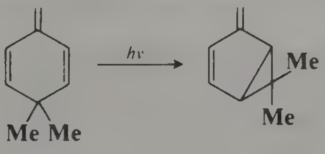


giving **154** and **155**. Although **154** could formally have arisen from a 2 + 2 ring opening with the $C_1—C_3$ bond intact, isotopic labeling has shown that this is not the case, at least for the rhodium complex. It was the $C_1—C_3$ and $C_2—C_3$ bonds that cleaved in this case.[570]

8-43 The Di-π-methane and Related Rearrangements



1,4-Dienes carrying alkyl or aryl substituents on C-3[571] can be photochemically rearranged to vinylcyclopropanes in a reaction called the *di-π-methane rearrangement*.[572] An interesting example is conversion of 1-methylene-4,4-dimethyl-2,5-cyclohexadiene to 2-methylene-6,6-dimethylbicyclo[3.1.0]-3-hexene.[573] For most[574] 1,4-dienes it is only the singlet excited states that give the reaction; triplet states generally take other pathways. For unsymmetrical dienes, the reaction is



156 **157**

---

[570] Gassman and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7631 (1970).

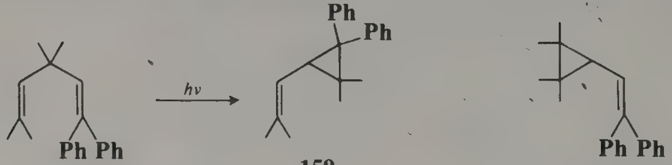
[571] Zimmerman and Pincock, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 2957 (1973).

[572] For reviews, see Zimmerman, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, vol. 3, pp. 131–166; Hixson, Mariano, and Zimmerman. *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 531–551 (1973).

[573] Zimmerman, Hackett, Juers, McCall, and Schröder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3653 (1971).

[574] However, some substrates, generally rigid bicyclic molecules, (e.g., barrelene, p. 1027, which is converted to semibullvalene) give the di-π-methane rearrangement only from triplet states.

regioselective. For example, **158** gave **159**, not **160**:[575]

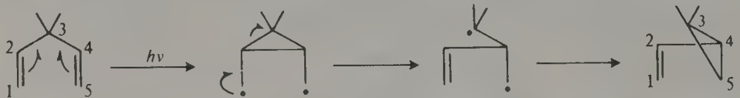


158

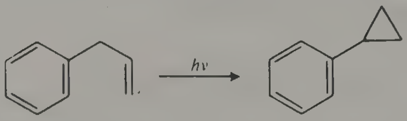
159

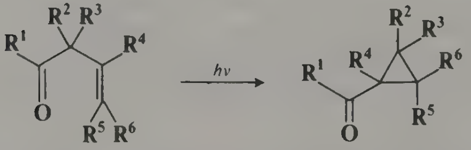
160
Not formed

The mechanism may be described by the diradical pathway given[576] (the C-3 substituents act to stabilize the radical), though the species shown are not necessarily intermediates, but may be transition states. It has been shown, for the case of certain substituted substrates, that configuration is retained at C-1 and C-5 and inverted at C-3.[577]



The reaction has been extended to allylbenzenes[578] (in this case C-3 substituents are not required), to β,γ-unsaturated ketones[579] (the latter reaction, which is called the *oxa-di-π-methane rearrangement*, occurs only from the triplet state[580]), and to triple-bond systems.[581]





When photolyzed, 2,5-cyclohexadienones can undergo a number of different reactions, one of which is formally the same as the di-π-methane rearrangement.[582] In this reaction, photolysis of the substrate **161** gives a bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-2-enone **166**.[583] Though the reaction is formally the same (note the conversion of **156** to **157** above), the mechanism is different from that of the di-π-methane rearrangement, because irradiation of a ketone can cause an $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ transition, which is of course not possible for a diene lacking a carbonyl group. The mechanism[583] in this case has

---

[575] Zimmerman and Pratt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6259, 6267 (1970); Zimmerman and Baum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3646 (1971). See also Zimmerman and Welter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 4131 (1978); Alexander, Pratt, Rowley, and Tipping, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 101 (1978); Paquette, Bay, Ku, Rondan, and Houk, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 422 (1982).

[576] See Zimmerman, Werthemann, and Kamm, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 439 (1974); Zimmerman and Little, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5143 (1974); Zimmerman, Boettcher, Buehler, and Keck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5635 (1975); Adam, Carballeira, and De Lucchi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 2107 (1980).

[577] Zimmerman, Robbins, McKelvey, Samuel, and Sousa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4630 (1974).

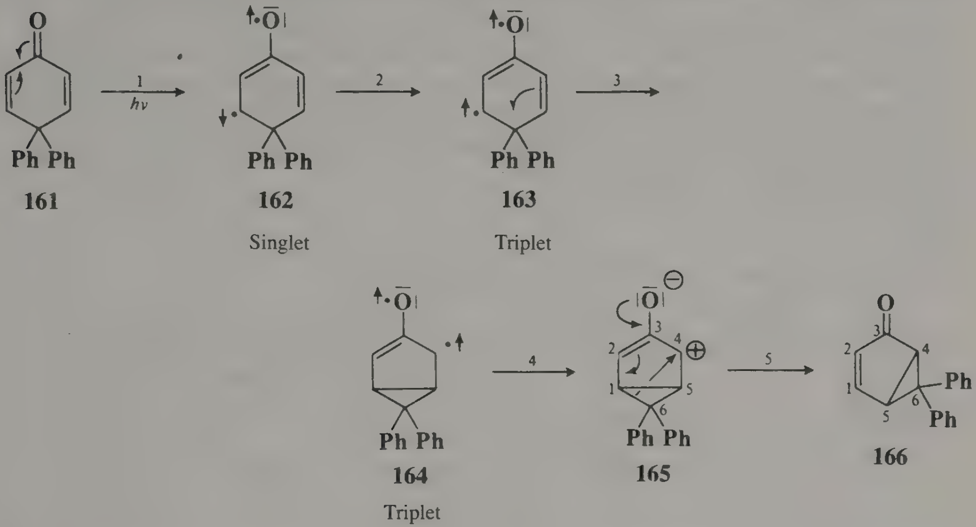
[578] For example, see Griffin, Covell, Petterson, Dodson, and Klose, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1410 (1965); Hixson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2507 (1972); Cookson, Ferreira, and Salisbury, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 665 (1974); Zimmerman, Gannett, and Keck, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 323 (1978), *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1982 (1979); Fasel and Hansen, *Chimia* **36,** 193 (1982).

[579] For reviews of photochemical rearrangements of unsaturated ketones, see Schuster, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, vol. 3, pp. 167–279; Houk, *Chem. Rev.* **76,** 1–74 (1976); Schaffner, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 641–653 (1976); Dauben, Lodder, and Ipaktschi, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **54,** 73–114 (1975).

[580] For an exception, see Eckersley, Parker, and Rogers, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4393 (1976).

[581] See Griffin, Chihal, Perreten, and Bhacca, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3931 (1976).

[582] For reviews of the photochemistry of 2,5-cyclohexadienones and related compounds, see Schaffner and Demuth, in Mayo-RGES, Ref. 1, vol. 3, pp. 281–348; Zimmerman, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 1–11 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 45–55], *Adv. Photochem.* **1,** 183–208 (1963); Kropp, *Org. Photochem.* **1,** 1–90 (1967); Schaffner, *Adv. Photochem.* **4,** 81–112 (1966); Chapman, *Adv. Photochem.* **1,** 323–420 (1963), pp. 330–344.



161

162 Singlet

163 Triplet

164 Triplet

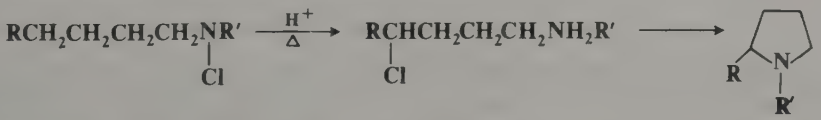
165

166

been formulated as proceeding through the excited triplet states **163** and **164**. In step 1, the molecule undergoes an $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ excitation to the singlet species **162,** which crosses to the triplet **163**. Step 3 is a rearrangement from one excited state to another. Step 4 is a $\pi^* \rightarrow n$ electron demotion (an intersystem crossing from $T_1 \rightarrow S_0$, see p. 210). The conversion of **165** to **166** actually consists of two 1,2 alkyl migrations (a one-step process would be a 1,3 migration of alkyl to a carbocation center, see p. 953): The old C_6—C_5 bond becomes the new C_6—C_4 bond and the old C_6—C_1 bond becomes the new C_6—C_5 bond.[584] This double-migration process is called the *slither mechanism,* as opposed to the single 1,3 migration, which in this case would be the *pivot mechanism.*

2,4-Cyclohexadienones also undergo photochemical rearrangements, but the products are different, generally involving ring opening.[585]

8-44 The Hofmann–Löffler and Related Reactions



$$\underset{\textstyle\text{Cl}}{\text{RCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}\text{R}'} \xrightarrow[\Delta]{\text{H}^+} \text{R}\underset{\textstyle\text{Cl}}{\text{C}}\text{HCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2\text{R}' \longrightarrow$$

A common feature of the reactions in this section[586] is that they serve to introduce functionality at a position remote from functional groups already present. As such, they have proved very useful in synthesizing many compounds, especially in the steroid field (see also **9-2** and **9-16**). When N-haloamines in which one alkyl group has a hydrogen in the 4 or 5 position are heated with sulfuric acid, pyrrolidines or piperidines are formed, in a reaction known as the *Hofman–Löffler reaction* (also called the *Hofmann–Löffler–Freytag reaction*).[587] R′ is normally alkyl, but the reaction has been extended to R′ = H by use of concentrated sulfuric acid solution and ferrous salts.[588] The first step of the reaction is a rearrangement, with the halogen migrating from the nitrogen to the 4 or 5 position of the alkyl group. It is possible to isolate the resulting haloamine salt, but usually this is not done, and the second step, the ring closure (**0-45**), takes place. Though the reaction is most often induced by heat, this is not necessary, and irradiation and chemical initiators (e.g., peroxides) have been used instead. The mechanism is of a free-radical type, with the main step involving an internal hydrogen abstraction.[589]

---

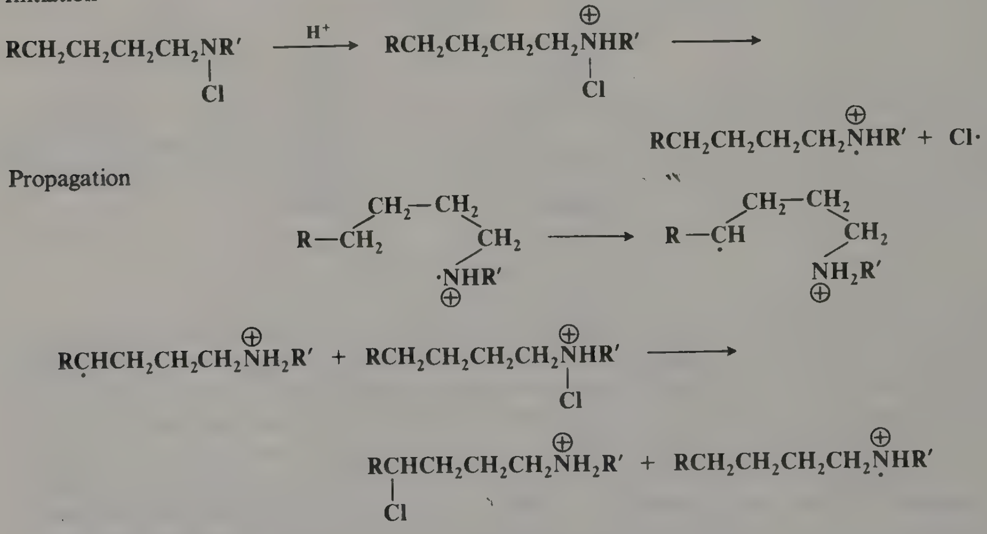
[583] Zimmerman and Schuster, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4486 (1961); Schuster and Patel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 5145 (1968); Schuster, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **11,** 65–73 (1978); Zimmerman and Pasteris, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4864, 4876 (1980); Schuster and Liu, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 3329 (1981).

[584] Zimmerman, Crumrine, Döpp, and Huyffer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 434 (1969).

[585] For reviews, see Schaffner and Demuth, Ref. 582; Quinkert, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **11,** 1072–1087 (1972) [*Angew. Chem.* **84,** 1157–1173]; Kropp, Ref. 582; Chapman, Ref. 582, pp. 344–351.

[586] For a review of the reactions in this section, see Carruthers, "Some Modern Methods of Organic Synthesis," 2d ed., pp. 231–257, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1978.

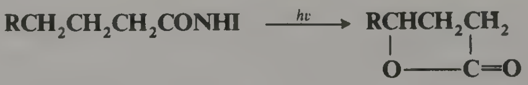
Initiation



Propagation

etc.

A similar reaction has been carried out on N-halo amides, which give γ-lactones:[590]



Another related reaction is the *Barton Reaction*,[591] by which a methyl group in the δ position to an OH group can be oxidized to a CHO group. The alcohol is first converted to the nitrite ester. Photolysis of the nitrite results in conversion of the nitrite group to the OH group and nitrosation of the methyl group. Hydrolysis of the oxime tautomer gives the aldehyde, e.g.,[592]

---

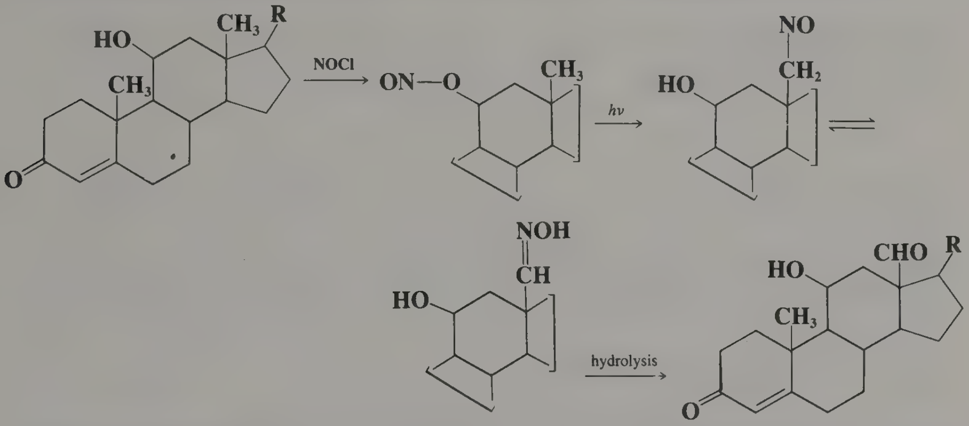
[587] For reviews, see Stella, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 337–350 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 368–380]; Sosnovsky and Rawlinson, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **4,** 203–284 (1972), pp. 249–259; Deno, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **3,** 135–154 (1972), pp. 136–143; Wolff, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 55–64 (1963).

[588] Schmitz and Murawski, *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 1493 (1966).

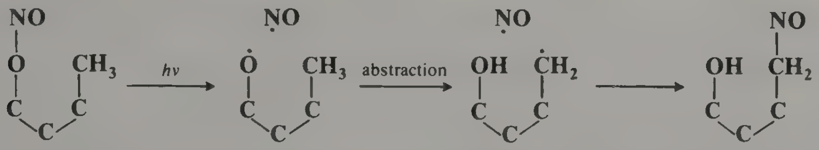
[589] Wawzonek and Thelan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 2118 (1950).

[590] Barton, Beckwith, and Goosen, *J. Chem. Soc.* 181 (1965); Petterson and Wambsgans, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 1648 (1964); Neale, Marcus, and Schepers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3051 (1966). For a review of N-halo amide rearrangements, see Neale, *Synthesis* 1–15 (1971).

[591] For reviews, see Hesse, *Adv. Free-Radical Chem.* **3,** 83–137 (1969); Barton, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **16,** 1–15 (1968); Akhtar, *Adv. Photochem.* **2,** 263–304 (1964).

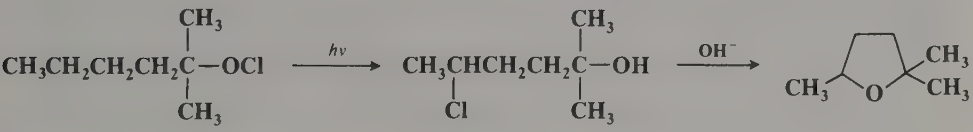


This reaction takes place only when the methyl group is in a favorable steric position. The mechanism is similar to that of the Hofmann–Löffler reaction.[593]



This is one of the few known methods for effecting substitution at an angular methyl group. Not only CH_3 groups but also alkyl groups of the form RCH_2 and R_2CH can give the Barton reaction if the geometry of the system is favorable. An RCH_2 group is converted to the oxime R(C=NOH)[594] (which is hydrolyzable to a ketone) or to a nitroso dimer, while an R_2CH group gives a nitroso compound $R_2C(NO)$. With very few exceptions, the only carbons that become nitrosated are those in the position δ to the original OH group, indicating that a six-membered transition state is necessary for the hydrogen abstraction.[595]

Another reaction with a similar mechanism is the photolytic conversion of tertiary hypohalites



to δ-chloro alcohols, which can then be cyclized to tetrahydrofurans.[596]

OS **III,** 159.

---

[592] Barton and Beaton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 4083 (1961). Also see Barton, Beaton, Geller, and Pechet, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 2640 (1960).

[593] Kabasakalian and Townley, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 2711 (1962); Akhtar, Barton, and Sammes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 4601 (1965). See also Nickon, Ferguson, Bosch, and Iwadare, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 4518 (1977); Barton, Hesse, Pechet, and Smith, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1159 (1979).

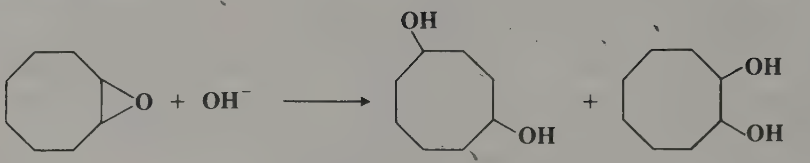
[594] For an example, see Reimann and Sarre, *Can J. Chem.* **49,** 344 (1971).

[595] For a discussion, see Nickon, et al., Ref. 593.

[596] Greene, Savitz, Lau, Osterholtz, and Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2196 (1961); Walling and Padwa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2207 (1961). See also Akhtar and Barton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2213 (1961). For a review of the case of hypobromites, see Brun and Waegell, *Tetrahedron* **32,** 517–527 (1976).

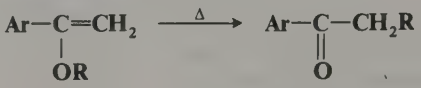
D. Noncyclic Rearrangements

8-45 Hydride Shifts



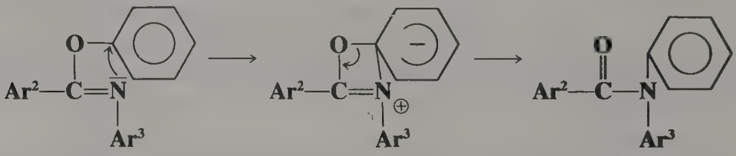
The above is a typical example of a transannular hydride shift. The 1,2-glycol is formed by a normal epoxide hydrolysis reaction (**0-8**). For a discussion of 1,3 and longer hydride shifts, see p. 953.

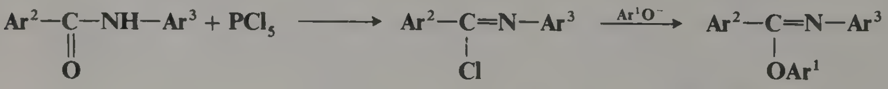
8-46 The Chapman Rearrangement



$$\mathrm{Ar{-}\underset{\displaystyle OR}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}CH_2} \xrightarrow{\Delta} \mathrm{Ar{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}CH_2R}$$

In the *Chapman rearrangement*, N,N-diaryl amides are formed when aryl imino esters are heated.[597] Best yields are obtained in refluxing tetraethylene glycol dimethyl ether (tetraglyme),[598] though the reaction can also be carried out without any solvent at all. Many groups may be present in the rings, e.g., alkyl, halo, OR, CN, COOR, etc. Aryl migrates best when it contains electron-withdrawing groups. On the other hand, electron-withdrawing groups in Ar^2 or Ar^3 decrease the reactivity. The products can be hydrolyzed to diarylamines, and this is a method for preparing these compounds. The mechanism probably involves an intramolecular[599] aromatic nucleophilic substitution, resulting in a 1,3 oxygen-to-nitrogen shift. Imino esters can be prepared from N-aryl amides by reaction with PCl_5, followed by treatment of the resulting imino chloride with an aroxide ion.[600] Imino esters with any or all of the three groups being alkyl also rearrange, but they require catalysis by H_2SO_4 or a trace of methyl iodide or methyl sulfate.[601] The mechanism is different, involving an intermolecular process.[602] This is also true for derivatives for formamide (Ar^2 = H).





$$\mathrm{Ar^2{-}\underset{\displaystyle O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}NH{-}Ar^3} + \mathrm{PCl_5} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ar^2{-}\underset{\displaystyle Cl}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}N{-}Ar^3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Ar^1O^-}} \mathrm{Ar^2{-}\underset{\displaystyle OAr^1}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}N{-}Ar^3}$$

---

[597] For reviews, see Schulenberg and Archer, *Org. React.* **14,** 1–51 (1965); McCarty, in Patai, Ref. 241, pp. 439–447; McCarty and Garner, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Amidines and Imidates," pp. 189–240, Wiley, New York, 1975. For a review of 1,3 migrations of R in general, see Landis, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **2,** 43–63 (1969).

[598] Wheeler, Roman, Santiago, and Quiles, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 503 (1969).

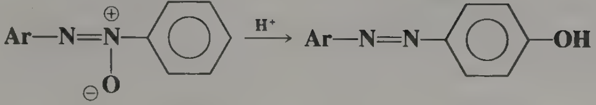
[599] For evidence for the intramolecular character of the reaction, see Wiberg and Rowland, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 2205 (1955); Wheeler, Roman, and Rosado, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 966 (1969).

[600] For a review of the formation and reactions of imino chlorides, see Bonnett, in Patai, Ref. 241, pp. 597–662.

[601] Landis, Ref. 597.

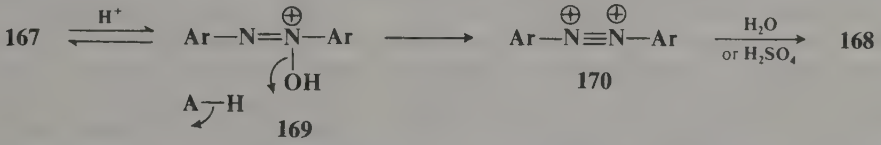
[602] See Challis and Frenkel, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 192 (1978).

8-47 The Wallach Rearrangement



167 **168**

The conversion of azoxy compounds, on acid treatment, to *p*-hydroxy azo compounds (or sometimes the *o*-hydroxy isomers[603]) is called the *Wallach rearrangement.*[604] When both para positions are occupied, the *o*-hydroxy product may be obtained, but ipso substitution at one of the para positions is also possible.[605] Although the mechanism[606] is not completely settled, the following facts are known: (1) The para rearrangement is intermolecular.[607] (2) When the reaction was carried out with an azoxy compound in which the N—O nitrogen was labeled with ^{15}N, *both* nitrogens of the product carried the label equally,[608] demonstrating that the oxygen did not have a preference for migration to either the near or the far ring. This shows that there is a symmetrical intermediate. (3) Kinetic studies show that two protons are normally required for the reaction.[609] The following mechanism,[610] involving the symmetrical intermediate **170,** has been proposed to explain the facts.[611]



It has proved possible to obtain **169** and **170** as stable acids in super-acid solutions.[532] Another mechanism, involving an intermediate with only one positive charge, has been proposed for certain substrates at low acidities.[612]

When other nucleophiles are used, it may be possible to obtain *o*- or *p*-substituted azo compounds as products. For example, azoxybenzene reacts with aryl sufonyl chlorides $ArSO_2Cl$ to give *o*- and *p*-arenesulfonyloxaazobenzenes $PhN{=}NC_6H_4OSO_2Ar$.[613]

A photochemical Wallach rearrangement[614] is also known: The product is the *o*-hydroxy azo compound, the OH group is found in the farther ring, and the rearrangement is intramolecular.[615]

[603] For example, see Dolenko and Buncel, *Can. J. Chem.* **52,** 623 (1974); Yamamoto, Nishigaki, Umezu, and Matsuura, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 3177 (1980).

[604] For reviews, see Buncel, *Mech. Mol. Migr.* **1,** 61–119 (1968); Shine, "Aromatic Rearrangements," Ref. 478, pp. 272–284, 357–359; Cox and Buncel, Ref. 524, pp. 808–837.

[605] See, for example, Shimao and Oae, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 643 (1983).

[606] For a review, see Buncel, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **8,** 132–139 (1975).

[607] See, for example, Oae, Fukumoto, and Yamagami, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **36,** 601 (1963).

[608] Shemyakin, Maimind, and Vaichunaite, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 755 (1958), *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 808 (1960). Also see Behr and Hendley, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2715 (1966).

[609] Buncel and Lawton, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1835 (1963); Hahn, Lee, and Jaffé, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4975 (1967); Cox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1059 (1974).

[610] Buncel and Lawton, *Can. J. Chem.* **43,** 862 (1965); Buncel and Strachan, *Can. J. Chem.* **48,** 377 (1970); Cox, Ref. 609; Buncel and Keum, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 578 (1983).

[611] For other proposed mechanisms, see Shemyakin, Maimind, and Agadzhanyan, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1223 (1961); Shemyakin, Agadzhanyan, Maimind, and Kudryavtsev, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1216 (1963); Hahn, Lee, and Jaffé, Ref. 609; Duffey and Hendley, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1918 (1968); Hendley and Duffey, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3579 (1970).

[612] Cox, Dolenko, and Buncel, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 471 (1975); Cox and Buncel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1871 (1975).

[613] Oae, Maeda, Kozuka, and Nakai, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 2495 (1971). For other examples, see Stevens, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2667 (1968); Oae and Maeda, *Tetrahedron* **28,** 2127 (1972); Shimao, Fujimori, and Oae, *Bull. Chem. Soc., Jpn.* **55,** 1538 (1982).

[614] For a thermal rearrangement (no catalyst), see Shimao and Hashidzume, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 754 (1976).

[615] For discussions of the mechanism of the photochemical reaction, see Goon, Murray, Schoch, and Bunce, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 3827 (1973); Squire and Jaffé, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8188 (1973).

19

OXIDATIONS AND REDUCTIONS

First we must examine what we mean when we speak of oxidation and reduction. Inorganic chemists define oxidation in two ways: loss of electrons and increase in oxidation number. In organic chemistry, these definitions, while still technically correct, are not easy to apply. While electrons are directly transferred in some organic oxidations and reductions, the mechanisms of most of these reactions do not involve a direct electron transfer. As for oxidation number, while this is easy to apply in some cases, e.g., the oxidation number of carbon in CH_4 is -4, in most cases attempts to apply the concept lead to fractional values or to apparent absurdities. Thus carbon in propane has an oxidation number of -2.67 and in butane of -2.5, though organic chemists seldom think of these two compounds as being in different oxidation states. An improvement could be made by assigning different oxidation states to different carbon atoms in a molecule, depending on what is bonded to them (e.g., the two carbons in acetic acid are obviously in different oxidation states), but for this a whole set of arbitrary assumptions would be required, since the oxidation number of an atom in a molecule is assigned on the basis of the oxidation numbers of the atoms attached to it. There would seem to be little gained by such a procedure. What organic chemists have done—though more by custom than by any formal agreement—is to set up a series of functional groups, in a qualitative way, arranged in order of increasing oxidation state, and then to define oxidation as *the conversion of a functional group in a molecule from one category to a higher one*. Reduction is the opposite. For the simple functional groups this series is shown in Table 1.[1] It should be noted that this classification applies only to a single carbon atom or to two adjacent carbon atoms. Thus 1,3-dichloropropane is in the same oxidation state as chloromethane, but 1,2-dichloropropane is in a higher one. Obviously, such distinctions are somewhat arbitrary, and if we attempt to carry them too far, we shall find ourselves painted into a corner. Nevertheless the basic idea will serve us well. It should be noted that conversion of any compound to another in the same category is not an oxidation or a reduction. Most oxidations in organic chemistry involve a gain of oxygen and/or a loss of hydrogen. The reverse is true for reductions.

Of course, there is no oxidation without a concurrent reduction. However, we classify reactions as oxidations or reductions depending on whether the *organic compound* is oxidized or reduced. In some cases both the oxidant and reductant are organic, and we will consider those reactions separately.

MECHANISMS

It must be noted tht our definition of oxidation has nothing to do with mechanism. Thus the conversion of bromomethane to methanol with KOH (**0-1**) and to methane with $LiAlH_4$ (**0-77**) have the same S_N2 mechanisms, but one is a reduction (according to our definition) and the other is not. It is impractical to consider the mechanisms of oxidation and reduction reactions in broad

---

[1] For more extensive tables, with subclassifications, see Soloveichik and Krakauer, *J. Chem. Educ.* **43,** 532–535 (1966).

TABLE 1 Categories of simple functional groups arranged according to oxidation state

Oxidation is the conversion of a functional group in a molecule to a higher category; reduction is conversion to a lower one. Conversions within a category are neither oxidations nor reductions. The numbers given at the bottom are only approximations

RH	$-\overset{\vert}{C}=\overset{\vert}{C}-$ ROH RCl RNH_2 etc.	$-C\equiv C-$ $R-\underset{\underset{O}{\Vert}}{C}-R$ $-\underset{\underset{Cl}{\vert}}{\overset{\vert}{C}}-Cl$ $-\underset{\underset{Cl}{\vert}}{\overset{\vert}{C}}-\underset{\underset{Cl}{\vert}}{\overset{\vert}{C}}-$ $-\underset{\underset{OH}{\vert}}{\overset{\vert}{C}}-\underset{\underset{OH}{\vert}}{\overset{\vert}{C}}-$ etc.	$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\Vert}}{C}-OH$ $R-\underset{\underset{O}{\Vert}}{C}-NH_2$ $-\underset{\underset{Cl}{\vert}}{\overset{\overset{Cl}{\vert}}{C}}-Cl$ etc.	CO_2 CCl_4
		Approximate oxidation number		
−4	−2	0	+2	+4

categories in this chapter as we have done for the reactions considered in Chapters 10 to 18.[2] The main reason is that the mechanisms are too diverse, and this in turn is because the bond changes are too different. For example, in Chapter 15, all the reactions involved the bond change $C{=}C \rightarrow W{-}C{-}C{-}Y$ and a relatively few mechanisms covered all the reactions. But for oxidations and reductions the bond changes are far more diverse. Another reason is that the mechanism of a given oxidation or reduction reaction can vary greatly with the oxidizing or reducing agent employed. Very often the mechanism has been studied intensively for only one or a few of many possible agents.

Though we therefore do not cover oxidation and reduction mechanisms in the same way as we have covered other mechanisms, it is still possible to list a few broad mechanistic categories. In doing this, we follow the scheme of Wiberg.[3]

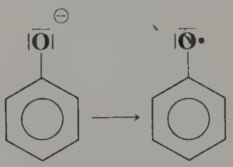
1. *Direct electron transfer.*[4] We have already met a few reactions in which the reduction is actually a direct gain of electrons or the oxidation a direct loss of them. An example is the Birch reduction (**5-11**), where sodium directly transfers an electron to an aromatic ring. An example from this chapter is found in the bimolecular reduction of ketones (**9-63**), where again it is a metal that supplies the electrons. This kind of mechanism is found largely in three types of reaction:[5] (a) the oxidation or reduction of a free radical (oxidation to a positive or reduction to a negative ion), (b) the oxidation of a negative ion or the reduction of a positive ion to a comparatively stable free radical, and (c) electrolytic oxidations or reductions (an example is the Kolbe reaction, **4-38**). An important example of (b) is oxidation of amines and phenolate ions:

---

[2] For monographs on oxidation mechanisms, see "Oxidation in Organic Chemistry," Academic Press, New York, pt. A [Wiberg (ed.)], 1965; pts. B, C, and D [Trahanovsky (ed.)], 1973, 1978, 1982; Waters, "Mechanisms of Oxidation of Organic Compounds," Wiley, New York, 1964; Stewart, "Oxidation Mechanisms," W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1964. For a review, see Wiberg, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **1,** 211–248 (1963).

[3] Wiberg, *Surv. Prog. Chem.* **1,** 211–248 (1963).

[4] For a review of direct electron-transfer mechanisms, see Eberson, *Adv. Phys. Org. Chem.* **18,** 79–185 (1982). For a review of multistage electron-transfer mechanisms, see Deuchert and Hünig, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 875–886 (1978) [*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 927–938].



These reactions occur easily because of the relative stability of the radicals involved.[6]

2. *Hydride transfer.*[7] In some reactions a hydride ion is transferred to or from the substrate. The reduction of epoxides with $LiAlH_4$ is an example (**0-81**). Another is the Cannizzaro reaction (**9-70**). Reactions in which a carbocation abstracts a hydride ion belong in this category:[8]

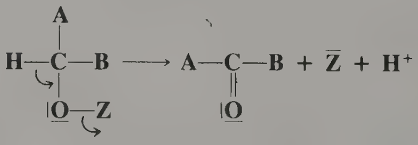
$$\mathbf{R^+ + R'H \longrightarrow RH + R'^+}$$

3. *Hydrogen-atom transfer.* Many oxidation and reduction reactions are free-radical substitutions and involve the transfer of a hydrogen atom. For example, one of the two main propagation steps of reaction **4-1** involves abstraction of hydrogen:

$$\mathbf{RH + Cl\bullet \longrightarrow R\bullet + HCl}$$

This is the case for many of the reactions of Chapter 14.

4. *Formation of ester intermediates.* A number of oxidations involve the formation of an ester intermediate (usually of an inorganic acid), and then the cleavage of this intermediate:



$$\mathrm{H{-}\underset{\underset{O{-}Z}{|}}{\overset{\overset{A}{|}}{C}}{-}B \longrightarrow A{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}B + \overline{Z} + H^+}$$

Z is usually CrO_3H, MnO_3 or a similar inorganic acid moiety. One example of this mechanism was seen in **4-6**, where A was an alkyl or aryl group, B was OH, and Z was CrO_3H. Another is the oxidation of a secondary alcohol to a ketone (**9-3**), where A and B are alkyl or aryl groups and Z is also CrO_3H. In the lead tetraacetate oxidation of glycols (**9-7**) the mechanism also follows this pattern, but the positive leaving group is carbon instead of hydrogen. It should be noted that the cleavage shown is an example of an E2 elimination.

5. *Displacement mechanisms.* In these reactions the organic substrate uses its electrons to cause displacement on an electrophilic oxidizing agent. One example is the addition of bromine to an olefin (**5-27**).

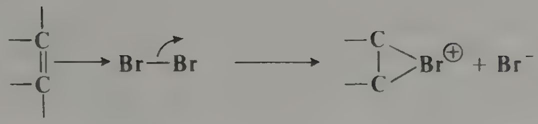
---

[5] Littler and Sayce, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2545 (1964).

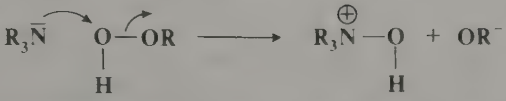
[6] For a review of the oxidation of phenols, see Mihailović and Čeković, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydroxyl Group," pt. 1, pp. 505–592, Interscience, New York, 1971.

[7] For reviews, see Deno, Peterson, and Saines, *Chem. Rev.* **60,** 7–14 (1960); Kursanov and Parnes, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **30,** 598–602 (1961).

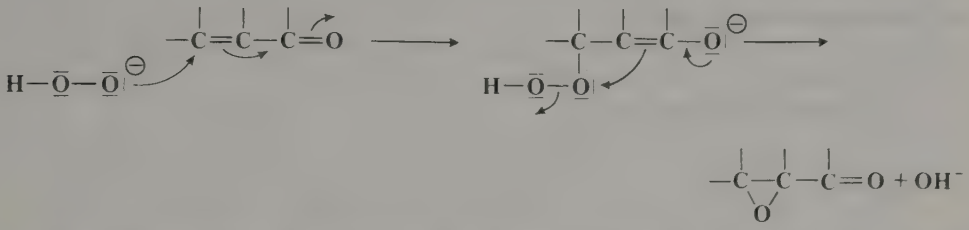
[8] For a review of these reactions, see Nenitzescu, in Olah and Schleyer, "Carbonium Ions," vol. 2, pp. 463–520, Interscience, New York, 1970.



An example from this chapter is found in **9-29**:



6. *Addition–elimination mechanisms.* In the reaction between α,β-unsaturated ketones and alkaline peroxide (**5-37**), the oxidizing agent adds to the substrate and then part of it is lost:



In this case the oxygen of the oxidizing agent was in oxidation state -1 and the OH^- departed with its oxygen in the -2 state, so it was reduced and the substrate oxidized. There are several reactions that follow this pattern of addition of an oxidizing agent and the loss of part of the agent, usually in a different oxidation state. Another example is the oxidation of ketones with SeO_2 (**9-16**). This reaction is also an example of category 4, since it involves formation and E2 cleavage of an ester. This example shows that these six categories are not mutually exclusive.

REACTIONS

In this chapter, the reactions are classified by the type of bond change occurring to the organic substrate, in conformity with our practice in the other chapters.[9] This means that there is no discussion in any one place of the use of a particular oxidizing or reducing agent, e.g., acid dichromate or $LiAlH_4$ (except for a discussion of selectivity of reducing agents, p. 1093). Some oxidizing or reducing agents are fairly specific in their action, attacking only one or a few types of substrate. Others, like acid dichromate, permanganate, $LiAlH_4$, and catalytic hydrogenation, are much more versatile.[10]

---

[9] For a table of oxidation and reduction reactions, and the oxidizing and reducing agents for each, see Hudlicky, *J. Chem. Educ.* **54**, 100–106 (1977).

[10] For books on certain oxidizing agents, see Arndt, "Manganese Compounds as Oxidizing Agents in Organic Chemistry," Open Court Publishing Company, La Salley, Ill., 1981; Lee, "The Oxidation of Organic Compounds by Permanganate Ion and Hexavalent Chromium," Open Court Publishing Company, La Salle, Ill., 1980. For some reviews, see Rubottom, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pt. D, pp. 1–145 (1982) (lead tetraacetate); Fatiadi, in Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 4, pp. 147–335, Wiley, New York, 1981, *Synthesis* 229–272 (1974) (HIO_4); Ogata, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pt. C, pp. 295–342 (1978) (nitric acid and nitrogen oxides); McKillop, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **43**, 463–479 (1975) (thallium nitrate); Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 2, pp. 143–174, Wiley, New York, 1974 (MnO_2); George and Balachandran, *Chem. Rev.* **75**, 491–519 (1975) (nickel peroxide); Sklarz, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **21**, 3–28 (1967) (HIO_4); Courtney and Swansborough, *Rev. Pure Appl. Chem.* **22**, 47–54 (1972) (ruthenium tetroxide); Ho, *Synthesis*, 347–354 (1973) (ceric ion); Aylward, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **25**, 407–

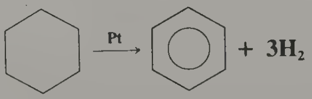
When an oxidation or a reduction could be considered in a previous chapter, this was done. For example, the catalytic hydrogenation of olefins is a reduction, but it is also an addition to the C=C bond and was treated in Chapter 15. In this chapter are discussed only those reactions that do not fit into the nine categories of Chapters 10 to 18. An exception to this rule was made for reactions that involve elimination of hydrogen (**9-1** to **9-6**) which were not treated in Chapter 17 because the mechanisms generally differ from those in that chapter.

Oxidations[11]

The reactions in this section are classified into groups depending on the type of bond change involved. These groups are: (A) eliminations of hydrogen, (B) reactions involving cleavage of carbon–carbon bonds, (C) reactions involving replacement of hydrogen by oxygen, (D) reactions in which oxygen is added to the substrate, and (E) oxidative coupling.

A. Eliminations of Hydrogen

9-1 Aromatization of Six-Membered Rings
Hexahydro-terelimination



Six-membered alicyclic rings can be aromatized in a number of ways.[12] Aromatization is accomplished most easily if there are already one or two double bonds in the ring or if the ring is fused to an aromatic ring. The reaction can also be applied to heterocyclic five- and six-membered rings. Many groups may be present on the ring without interference, and even *gem*-dialkyl substitution does not always prevent the reaction: In such cases one alkyl group often migrates or is eliminated. However, more drastic conditions are usually required for this. In some cases OH and COOH groups are lost from the ring. Cyclic ketones are converted to phenols. Seven-membered and larger rings are often isomerized to six-membered aromatic rings, though this is not the case for partially hydrogenated azulene systems (which are frequently found in nature); these are converted to azulenes.

---

429 (1971) (lead tetraacetate); Fatiadi, *Synthesis* 65–104, 133–167 (1976) (MnO_2); Meth-Cohn and Suschitzky, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 443–450 (1969) (MnO_2); Korshunov and Vereshchagin, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 942–957 (1966) (MnO_2); Weinberg and Weinberg, *Chem. Rev.* **68,** 449--523 (1968) (electrochemical oxidation). For reviews of the behavior of certain reducing agents, see Caubère, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 599–613 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 597–611] (modified sodium hydride); Nagai, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **12,** 13–48 (1980) (hydrosilanes); Pizey, "Synthetic Reagents," vol. 1, pp. 101–294, Wiley, New York, 1974 ($LiAlH_4$); Winterfeldt, *Synthesis* 617–630 (1975) (diisobutylaluminum hydride and triisobutylaluminum); Hückel, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **6,** 197–250 (1966) (metals in ammonia or amines); Popp and Schultz, *Chem. Rev.* **62,** 19–40 (1962) (cathodic reductions); and Jackman, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **2,** 329–366 (1960) (reductions in which the hydrogen comes from an organic molecule). For books on reductions with metal hydrides, see Hajós, "Complex Hydrides," Elsevier, New York, 1979; Gaylord, "Reduction with Complex Metal Hydrides," Interscience, New York, 1956, Also see House, "Modern Synthetic Reactions," 2d ed., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972; Refs. 9 and 11.

[11] For books on oxidation reactions, see Chinn, "Selection of Oxidants in Synthesis," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1971; Augustine and Trecker, "Oxidation," 2 vols., Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969, 1971; Ref. 2.

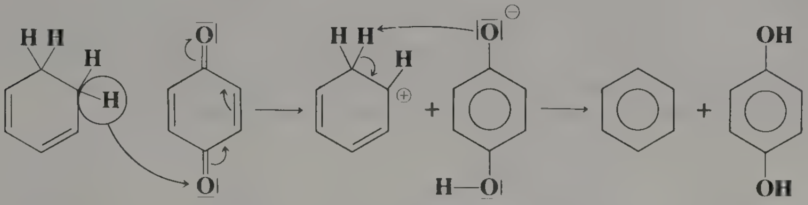
[12] For reviews, see Fu and Harvey, *Chem. Rev.* **78,** 317–361 (1978); Valenta, in Bentley and Kirby, "Elucidation of Chemical Structures by Physical and Chemical Methods" (vol. 4 of Weissberger, "Techniques of Chemistry"), 2d ed., pt. 2, pp. 1–76, Wiley, New York, 1973; House, Ref. 10, pp. 34–44.

There are three types of reagents most frequently used to effect aromatization.

1. Hydrogenation catalysts,[13] such as platinum, palladium, nickel, etc. In this case the reaction is the reverse of double-bond hydrogenation (**5-10** and **5-12**), and presumably the mechanism is also the reverse, though not much is known.[14] The substrate is heated with the catalyst at about 300 to 350°C. The reactions can often be carried out under milder conditions if a hydrogen acceptor, such as maleic acid, cyclohexene, or benzene, is present to remove hydrogen as it is formed. The acceptor is reduced to the saturated compound. It has been reported that dehydrogenation of 1-methylcyclohexene-1-^{13}C over an alumina catalyst gave toluene with the label partially scrambled throughout the aromatic ring.[15]

2. The elements sulfur and selenium, which combine with the hydrogen evolved to give, respectively, H_2S and H_2Se. Little is known about this mechanism either.[16]

3. Quinones,[17] which become reduced to the corresponding hydroquinones. Two important quinones often used for aromatizations are chloranil (2,3,5,6-tetrachloro-1,4-benzoquinone) and DDQ (2,3-dichloro-5,6-dicyano-1,4-benzoquinone).[18] The latter is more reactive and may be used in cases where the substrate is difficult to dehydrogenate. It is likely that the mechanism involves a transfer of hydride to the quinone oxygen, followed by the transfer of a proton to the phenolate ion:[19]



Other reagents that have been used are atmospheric oxygen, MnO_2,[20] SeO_2, various strong bases,[21] Ph_3COH in CF_3COOH,[22] and activated charcoal.[23] The last-mentioned reagent also dehydrogenates cyclopentanes to cyclopentadienes. In some instances the hydrogen is not released as H_2 or transferred to an external oxidizing agent but instead serves to reduce another molecule of substrate. This is a disproportionation reaction and may be illustrated by the conversion of cyclohexene to cyclohexane and benzene.

Aromatization reactions have been particularly important in the proof of structure of many cyclic natural products, especially steroids and terpenes. Diels–Alder adducts (which must contain at least one double bond) are also frequently aromatized.[24]

---

[13] For a review, see Rylander, "Organic Syntheses with Noble Metal Catalysts," pp. 1–59, Academic Press, New York, 1973.

[14] For a discussion, see Tsai, Friend, and Muetterties, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 2539 (1982).

[15] Marshall, Miiller, and Ihrig, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3491 (1973).

[16] House and Orchin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 639 (1960); Silverwood and Orchin, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 3401 (1962).

[17] For reviews, see Becker, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Quinonoid Compounds," pt. 1, pp. 335–423, Wiley, New York, 1974; Jackman, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **2,** 329–366 (1960).

[18] For reviews of DDQ, see Turner, in Pizey, Ref. 10, vol. 3, pp. 193–225 (1977); Walker and Hiebert, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 153–195 (1967).

[19] Braude, Jackman, Linstead, and Lowe, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3123, 3133 (1960); Trost, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 1847 (1967); Ref. 17. See also Stoos and Roček, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 2719 (1972); Müller, *Helv. Chim. Chim. Acta* **56,** 1243 (1973); Hashish and Hoodless, *Can. J. Chem.* **54,** 2261 (1976); Müller, Joly, and Mermoud, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **67,** 105 (1984).

[20] See, for example, Leffingwell and Bluhm, *Chem. Commun.* 1151 (1969).

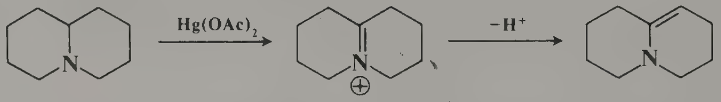
[21] For a review, see Pines and Stalick, "Base-Catalyzed Reactions of Hydrocarbons and Related Compounds," pp. 483–503, Academic Press, New York, 1977. See also Reetz and Eibach, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1598 (1978); Trost and Rigby, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1667 (1978).

[22] Fu and Harvey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3217 (1974).

[23] Shuikin and Naryschkina, *J. Prakt. Chem.* [4] **13,** 183 (1961).

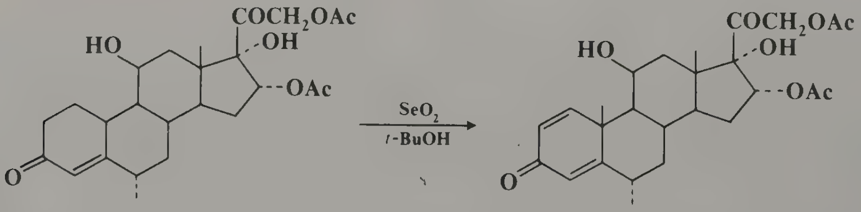
OS **II,** 214, 423; **III,** 310, 358, 729, 807; **IV,** 536; **54,** 11. Also see OS **III,** 329.

9-2 Dehydrogenations Yielding Carbon–Carbon Bonds
Dihydro-elimination



1

Dehydrogenation of an aliphatic compound to give a double bond in a specific location is not usually a feasible process, though industrially mixtures of olefins are obtained in this way from mixtures of alkanes (generally by heating with chromia–alumina catalysts). There are, however, some notable exceptions, and it is not surprising that these generally involve cases where the new double bond can be in conjugation with a double bond or with an unshared pair of electrons already present. One example is the synthesis developed by Leonard and co-workers,[25] in which tertiary amines give enamines when treated with mercuric acetate[26] (see the example above). In this case the initial product is the iminium ion **1** which loses a proton to give the enamine. In another example, the oxidizing agent SeO_2 can in certain cases convert a carbonyl compound to an α,β-unsaturated carbonyl compound by removing H_2[27] (though this reagent more often gives **9-16**). This reaction has been most often applied in the steroid series, an example being[28]



Similarly, SeO_2 has been used to dehydrogenate 1,4-diketones[29] ($RCOCH_2CH_2COR \rightarrow RCOCH{=}CHCOR$) and 1,2-diarylalkanes ($ArCH_2CH_2Ar \rightarrow ArCH{=}CHAr$). These conversions can also be carried out by certain quinones, most notably DDQ (see **9-1**).[18] Simple aldehydes and ketones have been dehydrogenated (e.g., cyclopentanone → cyclopentenone) by $PdCl_2$,[30] by $FeCl_3$,[31] by benzeneseleninic anhydride[32] (this reagent also dehydrogenates lactones in a similar manner), and by oxygen in the presence of a group VIII metal such as Pd(II) and a cocatalyst such as Cu(II) or a quinone.[33]

---

[24] For a review of the aromatization of Diels–Alder adducts, see Skvarchenko, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **32,** 571–589 (1963).

[25] For example, see Leonard, Hay, Fulmer, and Gash, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **77,** 439 (1955); Leonard and Musker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5631 (1959), **82,** 5148 (1960).

[26] For reviews, see Haynes, in Cook, "Enamines," pp. 68–81, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Lee, in Augustine, Ref. 11, vol. 1, pp. 102–107; Szmuszkovicz, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **4,** 1–113 (1963), pp. 12–16.

[27] For reviews, see Jerussi, *Sel. Org. Transform.* **1,** 301–326 (1970), pp. 315–321; Trachtenberg, in Augustine, Ref. 11, pp. 166–174.

[28] Bernstein and Littell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 1235 (1960).

[29] For example, see Barnes and Barton, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1419 (1953).

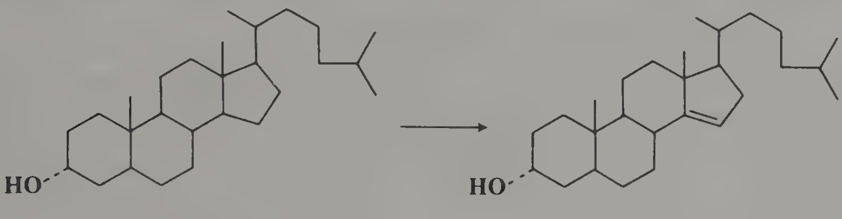
[30] Bierling, Kirschke, Oberender, and Schultz, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **314,** 170 (1972); Kirschke, Müller, and Timm, *J. Prakt. Chem.* **317,** 807 (1975); Mincione, Ortaggi, and Sirna, *Synthesis* 773 (1977); Mukaiyama, Ohshima, and Nakatsuka, *Chem. Lett.* 1207 (1983).

[31] Cardinale, Laan, Russell, and Ward, *Recl.: J. R. Neth. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 199 (1982).

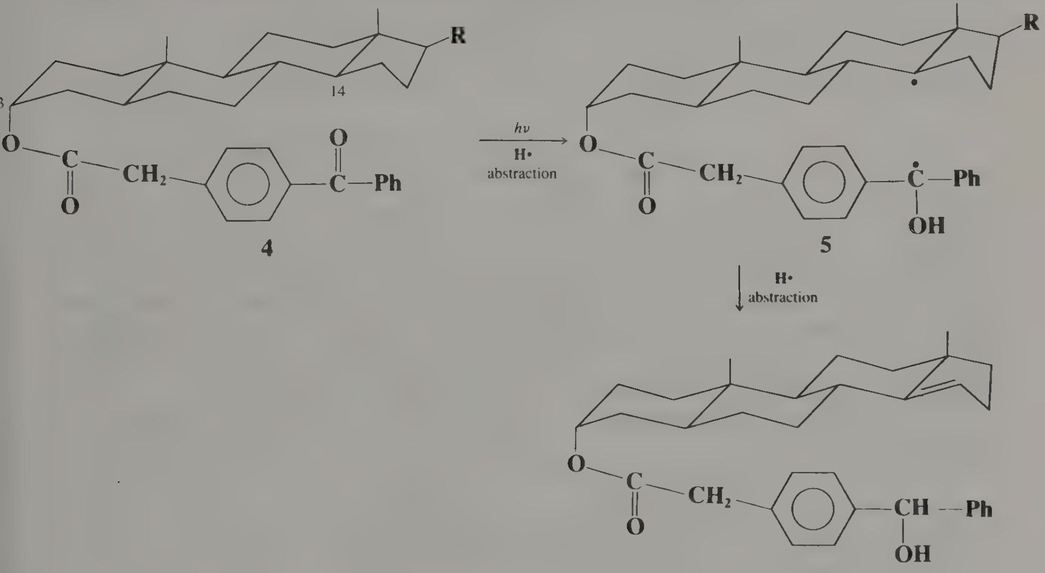
[32] Barton, Hui, Ley, and Williams, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1919 (1982); Barton, Godfrey, Morzycki, Motherwell, and Ley, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1947 (1982).

In an indirect method of achieving this conversion, the silyl enol ether of a simple ketone is treated with DDQ[34] or with triphenylmethyl cation[35] (for another indirect method, see **7-13**). Dialkyl sulfoxides are dehydrogenated and, at the same time, reduced to sulfides ($RSO_2CH_2CH_2R' \rightarrow RSCH{=}CHR'$) by treatment with Me_3SiI and a sterically hindered amine base.[36]

An entirely different approach to specific dehydrogenation has been reported by R. Breslow[37] and by J. E. Baldwin.[38] By means of this approach it was possible, for example to convert 3α-cholestanol (**2**) to 5α-cholest-14-en-3α-ol (**3**), thus *introducing a double bond at a specific site remote from any functional group.*[39] This was accompanied by conversion of **2** to the ester **4,** followed by irradiation of **4,** which gave 55% **6,** which was then hydrolyzed to **3.** The radiation



2 **3**



4 **5** **6**

---

[33] Theissen, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 752 (1971).

[34] Jung, Pan, Rathke, Sullivan, and Woodbury, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 3961 (1977).

[35] Ryu, Murai, Hatayana, and Sonoda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3455 (1978). For another method, which can also be applied to enol acetates, see Tsuji, Minami, and Shimizu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5635, 5639 (1983).

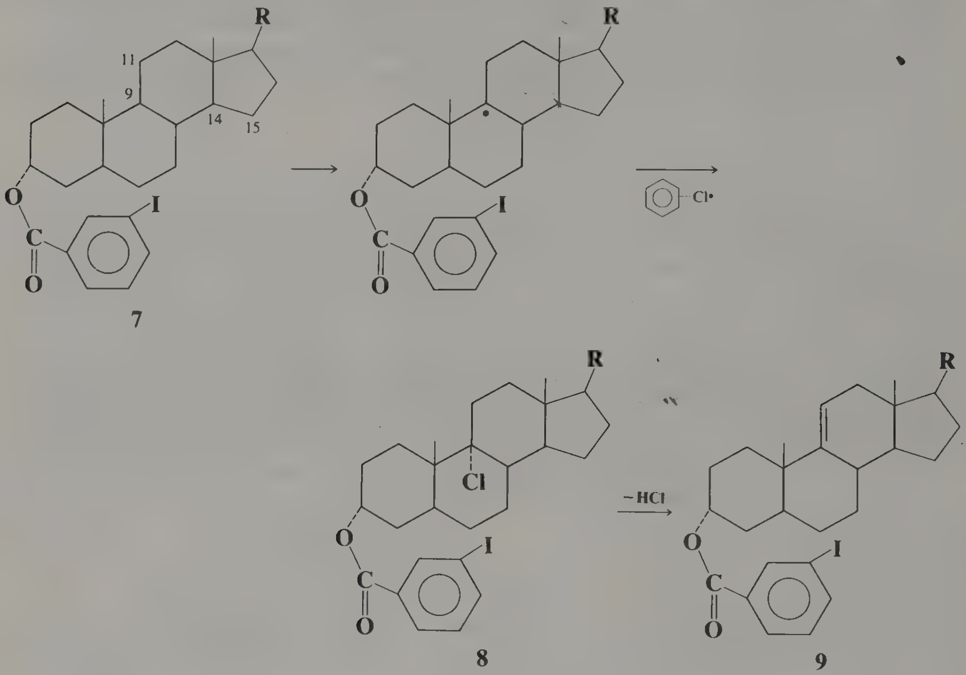
[36] Miller and McKean, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2619 (1983).

[37] Breslow and Baldwin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 732 (1970). For reviews, see Breslow, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **13,** 170–177 (1980), *Isr. J. Chem.* **18,** 187–191 (1979), *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **1,** 553–580 (1972).

[38] Baldwin, Bhatnagar, and Harper, *Chem. Commun.* 659 (1970).

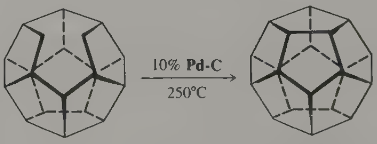
[39] For another method of introducing a remote double bond, see Čeković and Cvetković, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3791 (1982). See also Bégué, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4268 (1982).

excites the benzophenone portion of **4** (p. 216), which then abstracts hydrogen from the 14 position to give the diradical **5** which undergoes another internal abstraction to give **6**. In other cases, diradicals like **5** may close to a macrocyclic lactone (**9-16**). In an alternate approach,[40] a 9(11) double bond was introduced into a steroid nucleus by reaction of the *m*-iodo ester **7** with $PhICl_2$



and uv light, which results in hydrogen being abstracted regioselectively from the 9 position, resulting in chlorination at that position. Dehydrohalogenation of **8** gives the 9(11)-unsaturated steroid **9**. In contrast, use of the para isomer of results in chlorination at the 14 position and loss of HCl gives the 14-unsaturated steroid. These reactions are among the very few ways to introduce functionality at a specific site remote from any functional group (see also **9-16**).

A different kind of dehydrogenation was used in the final step of Paquette's synthesis of dodecahedrane:[41]



dodecahedrane

OS **V**, 428, **61**, 129.

---

[40] Breslow, Corcoran, Snider, Doll, Khanna, and Kaleya, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99**, 905 (1977). See also Wolner, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4613 (1979); Breslow and Heyer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104**, 2045 (1982).

[41] Paquette, Ternansky, Balogh, and Kentgen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105**, 5446 (1983); Paquette, *Top. Curr. Chem.* **119**, 1–158 (1984).

9-3 Oxidation or Dehydrogenation of Alcohols to Aldehydes and Ketones

***C,O*-Dihydro-elimination**

$$\mathrm{RCH_2OH} \xrightarrow[\text{chromite}]{\text{copper}} \mathrm{RCHO}$$

$$\mathrm{RCHOHR'} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H_2SO_4}]{\mathrm{K_2Cr_2O_7}} \mathrm{RCOR'}$$

Primary alcohols can be converted to aldehydes and secondary alcohols to ketones in four main ways:[42]

1. *With strong oxidizing agents.*[43] Secondary alcohols are easily oxidized to ketones by acid dichromate[44] at room temperature or slightly above. Though this is the most common reagent, many other strong oxidizing agents (e.g., $KMnO_4$, Br_2, MnO_2, ruthenium tetroxide,[45] etc.) have also been employed. A solution of chromic acid and sulfuric acid in water is known as the *Jones reagent.*[46] When secondary alcohols are dissolved in acetone,[47] titration with the Jones reagent oxidizes them to ketones rapidly and in high yield without disturbing any double or triple bonds that may be present (see **9-10**) and without epimerizing an adjacent chiral center.[48] The Jones reagent also oxidizes primary allylic alcohols to the corresponding aldehydes.[49] Three other Cr(VI) reagents commonly used[50] are dipyridine Cr(VI) oxide (Collins's reagent),[51] pyridinium chlorochromate (Corey's reagent),[52] and pyridinium dichromate.[53] MnO_2 is also a fairly specific reagent for OH groups and is often used to oxidize allylic alcohols to α,β-unsaturated aldehydes or ketones. For acid-sensitive compounds either CrO_3 in HMPT[54] or a CrO_3-pyridine complex[55] can be used. Sodium hypochlorite in acetic acid is useful for oxidizing larger amounts of secondary alcohols.[56] The oxidizing agent can be supported on a polymer.[57] Both chromic acid[58] and permanganate[59] have been used in this way (see p. 373). Phase transfer catalysis has also been used with permanganate[60] and chromic acid.[61] Phase transfer catalysis is particularly useful because the oxidizing agents are insoluble in most organic solvents, while the substrates are generally insoluble in water (see p. 320). Ultrasound has been used for $KMnO_4$ oxidations.[62]

---

[42] For reviews, see Müller, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement E," pp. 469–538, Wiley, New York, 1980; Cullis and Fish, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 1, pp. 129–157, Interscience, New York, 1966.

[43] For thorough discussions, see Carruthers, "Some Modern Methods of Organic Synthesis," 2d ed., pp. 338–355, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1978; Lee, Ref. 26, pp. 56–81; and (with respect to chromium and manganese reagents) House, Ref. 10, pp. 257–273.

[44] Various forms of H_2CrO_4 and of CrO_3 are used for this reaction. For discussions, see Fieser and Fieser, "Reagents for Organic Synthesis," vol. 1, pp. 142–147, 1059–1064, Wiley, New York, 1967, and subsequent volumes in this series.

[45] For a review, see Lee and van den Engh, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pp. 197–222.

[46] Bowden, Heilbron, Jones, and Weedon, *J. Chem. Soc.* **39,** (1946); Bowers, Halsall, Jones, and Lemin, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2548 (1953).

[47] Saturated secondary alcohols also give nonepimerized ketones in good yield when either is used instead of acetone: Brown, Garg, and Liu, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 387 (1971).

[48] For example, see Djerassi, Hart, and Warawa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 78 (1964).

[49] Harding, May, and Dick, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1664 (1975).

[50] For a comparative study of Jones's, Collins's, and Corey's reagents, see Warrener, Lee, Russell, and Paddon-Row, *Aust. J. Chem.* **31,** 1113 (1978).

[51] Collins, Hess, and Frank, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3363 (1968); Ratcliffe and Rodehorst, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 4000 (1970); Stensiö, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **25,** 1125 (1971); Collins and Hess, *Org. Synth.* **52,** 5 (1972); Sharpless and Akashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 5927 (1975).

[52] Corey and Suggs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2647 (1975). For a review of this reagent, see Piancatelli, Scettri and D'Auria, *Synthesis* 245–258 (1982).

[53] Coates and Corrigan, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 1594 (1969); Corey and Schmidt, *Tetrahedron Lett* 399 (1979).

[54] Cardillo, Orena, and Sandri, *Synthesis* 394 (1976).

[55] Poos, Arth. Beyler, and Sarett, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **75,** 422 (1953).

[56] Stevens, Chapman, and Weller, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2030 (1980). See also Schneider, Weber, and Faller, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 364 (1982).

[57] For a review of oxidations and other reactions with supported reagents, see McKillop and Young, *Synthesis* 401–422 (1979).

[58] Cainelli, Cardillo, Orena, and Sandri, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6737 (1976); Santaniello, Ponti, and Manzocchi, *Synthesis* 534 (1978). See also San Filippo and Chern, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2182 (1977).

[59] Regen and Koteel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3837 (1977); Noureldin and Lee, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4889 (1981). See also Menger and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3446 (1979).

Most of these oxidizing agents have also been used to convert primary alcohols to aldehydes, but precautions must be taken so that the aldehyde is not further oxidized to the acid (**9-22**).[63] One way to halt oxidation is by distillation of the aldehyde as it is formed. The following are among the oxidizing agents that have been used to convert at least some primary alcohols to aldehydes:[64] dimethyl sulfoxide (see **9-20**), Collins's reagent, Corey's reagent, pyridinium dichromate, ceric ammonium nitrate (CAN),[65] $Na_2Cr_2O_7$ in water,[66] Ag_2CO_3-on-celite,[67] hot HNO_3 in aqueous glyme,[68] N-methylmorpholine-N-oxide and a Ru complex,[69] O_2-pyridine-CuCl,[70] $Pb(OAc)_4$-pyridine,[71] and benzoyl peroxide-$NiBr_2$.[72] Most of these reagents also oxidize secondary alcohols to ketones. Reagents that can be used specifically to oxidize a secondary OH group in the presence of a primary OH group[73] are Cl_2-pyridine,[74] $(Bu_3Sn)_2O$-Br_2,[75] $NaBrO_3$-CAN,[76] and NaOCl in HOAc,[77] while $RuCl_2(PPh_3)_3$-benzene[78] and Br_2-$Ni(OBz)_2$[79] oxidize primary OH groups in the presence of a secondary OH group.

2. *By catalytic dehydrogenation.*[80] For the conversion of primary alcohols to aldehydes, dehydrogenation catalysts have the advantage over strong oxidizing agents that further oxidation to the acid is prevented. Copper chromite is the agent most often used, but other catalysts, e.g., silver and copper, have also been employed. Many ketones have also been prepared in this manner. Catalytic dehydrogenation is more often used industrially than as a laboratory method. However, a convenient laboratory procedure using copper oxide has been reported.[81]

3. *The Oppenauer oxidation.* When a ketone in the presence of base is used as the oxidizing agent (it is reduced to a secondary alcohol), the reaction is known as the *Oppenauer oxidation.*[82]

---

[60] For a review of phase transfer assisted permanganate oxidations, see Lee, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pt. D, pp. 147–206.

[61] See for example, Hutchins, Natale, and Cook, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4167 (1977); Landini, Montanari, and Rolla, *Synthesis* 134 (1979); Pletcher and Tait, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 788 (1979).

[62] Yamawaki, Sumi, Ando, and Hanafusa, *Chem. Lett.* 379 (1983).

[63] Though ketones are much less susceptible to further oxidation than aldehydes, such oxidation is possible (**9–8**), and care must be taken to avoid it, usually by controlling the temperature and/or the oxidizing agent.

[64] For some other reagents, not mentioned here, see Fleet and Little, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3749 (1977); Barton, Brewster, Hui, Lester, Ley, and Back, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 952 (1978); Flatt, Flatt, and Taylor, *Synthesis* 815 (1979); Barton, Kitchin, Lester, Motherwell, and Papoula, *Tetrahedron* **37,** Suppl. 73 (1981); Guziec and Luzzio, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1787 (1982).

[65] Trahanovsky and Young, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5777 (1965); Trahanovsky, Young, and Brown, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3865 (1967).

[66] Lee and Spitzer, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3589 (1970). See also Rao and Filler, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3304 (1974).

[67] Fetizon and Golfier, *C. R. Acad. Sci., Ser. C* **267,** 900 (1968); Kakis, Fetizon, Douchkine, Golfier, Mourgues, and Prange, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 523 (1974).

[68] McKillop and Ford, *Synth. Commun.* **2,** 307 (1972).

[69] Sharpless, Akashi, and Oshima, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2503 (1976).

[70] Jallabert and Riviere, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1215 (1977).

[71] Partch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3071 (1964); Partch and Monthony, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4427 (1967). See also Brocksom and Ferreira, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 412 (1980).

[72] Doyle, Patrie, and Williams, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2955 (1979).

[73] For other methods, see Jung and Speltz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7882 (1976); Jung and Brown, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2771 (1978); Kaneda, Kawanishi, Jitsukawa, and Teranishi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5009 (1983).

[74] Wicha and Zarecki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3059 (1974).

[75] Ueno and Okawara, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4597 (1976). Also see Narasaka, Morikawa, Saigo, and Mukaiyama, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 2773 (1977).

[76] Tomioka, Oshima, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 539 (1982).

[77] Stevens, Chapman, Stubbs, Tam, and Albizati, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 4647 (1982).

[78] Tomioka, Takai, Oshima, and Nozaki, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1605 (1981).

[79] Doyle and Bagheri, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4806 (1981); Doyle, Dow, Bagheri, and Patrie, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 476 (1983).

[80] For a review, see Heyns and Paulsen, *Angew. Chem.* **69,** 600–608 (1957), *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **2,** 303–335 (1963).

[81] Sheikh and Eadon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 257 (1972).

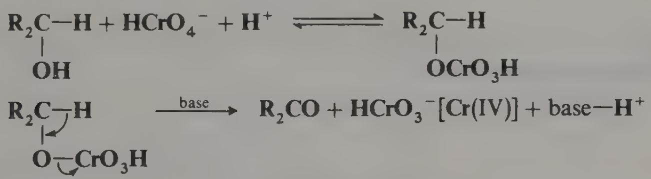
[82] For a review, see Djerassi, *Org. React.* **6,** 207–272 (1951).

This is the reverse of the Meerwein–Pondorf–Verley reaction (**6-26**), and the mechanism is also the reverse. The ketones most commonly used are acetone, butanone, and cyclohexanone. The most common base is aluminum *t*-butoxide.[83] The chief advantage of the method is its high selectivity. Although the method is most often used for the preparation of ketones, it has also been used for aldehydes.

4. *With* N-*bromosuccinimide or related compounds.* These compounds are chemoselective oxidizing agents and often oxidize OH groups without disturbing other oxidizable groups.[84] N-Bromosuccinimide does not oxidize aliphatic primary alcohols, but N-chlorosuccinimide does. With these reagents it is often possible to oxidize only one of several OH groups that may be present in a molecule. The combination of N-iodosuccinimide and $Bu_4N^+ I^-$ oxidize primary (to aldehydes) and secondary alcohols in high yields.[85]

Primary and secondary alcohols can also be oxidized, indirectly, through their esters (see **9-20**). In some cases, isolation of the ester is not required and the alcohol can then be oxidized to the aldehyde or ketone in one step. Alkoxide ions can be oxidized to aldehydes or ketones in good yield by photooxidation with O_2[86] (singlet O_2 is the oxidizing agent here; see **4-8, 5-38**).

The mechanism of oxidation with acid dichromate has been intensively studied.[87] The currently accepted mechanism is essentially that proposed by Westheimer.[88] The first two steps constitute an example of category 4 (p. 1050).



$$\underset{OH}{R_2C{-}H} + HCrO_4^- + H^+ \rightleftharpoons \underset{OCrO_3H}{R_2C{-}H}$$

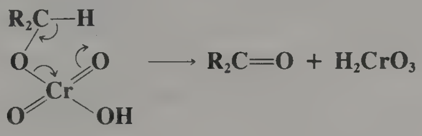
$$\underset{O{-}CrO_3H}{R_2C{-}H} \xrightarrow{\text{base}} R_2CO + HCrO_3^-[Cr(IV)] + \text{base}{-}H^+$$

$$R_2CHOH + Cr(IV) \longrightarrow R_2\dot{C}OH + Cr(III)$$

$$R_2\dot{C}OH + Cr(VI) \longrightarrow R_2CO + Cr(V)$$

$$R_2CHOH + Cr(V) \longrightarrow R_2CO + Cr(III)$$

The base in the second step may be water, though it is also possible[89] that in some cases no external base is involved and that the proton is transferred directly to one of the CrO_3H oxygens, in which



$$\longrightarrow R_2C{=}O + H_2CrO_3$$

---

[83] For the use of fluorenone and NaH, see Koenig, de Rostolan, Bourbier, and Jarreau, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2779 (1978).

[84] For a review, see Filler, *Chem. Rev.* **63,** 21–43 (1963), pp. 22–28.

[85] Hanessian, Wong, and Therien, *Synthesis* 394 (1981).

[86] Wasserman and Van Verth, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 585 (1974).

[87] See Müller, *Chimia* **31,** 209–218 (1977); Wiberg, in Wiberg, Ref. 2, pp. 142–170; Venkatasubramanian, *J. Sci. Ind. Res.* **22,** 397–400 (1963); Waters, Ref. 2, pp. 49–71; Stewart, Ref. 2, pp. 37–48; Durand, Geneste, Lamaty, Moreau, Pomarès, and Roque, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **97,** 42 (1978).

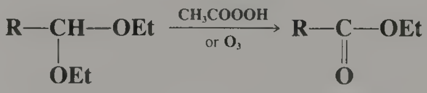
[88] Westheimer, *Chem. Rev.* **45,** 419–451 (1949), p. 434; Holloway, Cohen, and Westheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 65 (1951).

[89] Kwart and Francis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 2116 (1959); Stewart and Lee, *Can. J. Chem.* **42,** 439 (1964); Awasthy, Roček, and Moriarty, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5400 (1967); Kwart and Nickle, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3394 (1973), **96,** 7572 (1974), **98,** 2881 (1976). See also Müller and Perlberger, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **57,** 1943 (1974).

case the Cr(IV) species produced would be H_2CrO_3. Part of the evidence for this mechanism was the isotope effect of about 6 found on use of MeCDOHMe, showing that the α-hydrogen is removed in the rate-determining step.[90] Note that, as in **4-6,** the substrate is oxidized by three different oxidation states of chromium.[91]

With other oxidizing agents, mechanisms are less clear.[92] It seems certain that some oxidizing agents operate by a hydride-shift mechanism,[93] e.g., dehydrogenation with triphenylmethyl cation[94] and the Oppenauer oxidation, and some by a free-radical mechanism, e.g., oxidation with $S_2O_8^{2-}$ [95] and with VO_2^+.[96] A summary of many proposed mechanisms is given by Littler.[97]

Secondary alkyl ethers can be oxidized to ketones by bromine (e.g., $Me_2CHOCHMe_2 + Br_2 \rightarrow Me_2CO$).[98] Primary alkyl ethers give carboxylic acids (**9-22**) with bromine, but can be cleaved to aldehydes with 1-chlorobenzotriazole.[99] Acetals can be oxidized to esters with peracetic acid[100] or with ozone.[101]

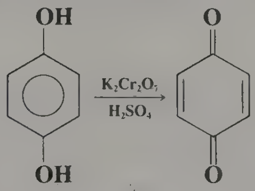


$$\underset{\displaystyle OEt}{R—\underset{|}{CH}—OEt} \xrightarrow[\text{or } O_3]{CH_3COOOH} R—\underset{\displaystyle \overset{||}{O}}{C}—OEt$$

OS **I,** 87, 211, 241, 340; **II,** 139, 541; **III,** 37, 207; **IV,** 189, 192, 195, 467, 813, 838; **V,** 242, 310, 324, 692, 852, 866; **52,** 5; **55,** 84; **56,** 99; **58,** 122, 152; **60,** 18, 20. Also see OS **IV,** 283.

9-4 Oxidation of Phenols and Aromatic Amines to Quinones

1/*O*,6/*O*-Dihydro-elimination



---

[90] Westheimer and Nicolaides, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 25 (1949). For other evidence, see Brownell, Leo, Chang, and Westheimer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 406 (1960); Roček, Westheimer, Eschenmoser, Moldoványi, and Schreiber, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **45,** 2554 (1962); Lee and Stewart, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2868 (1967); Wiberg and Schäfer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 455 (1967), **91,** 927, 933 (1969); Müller, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **53,** 1869 (1970), **54,** 2000 (1971); Lee and Raptis, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 1481 (1973).

[91] Rahman and Roček, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 5455, 5462 (1971); Doyle, Swedo, and Roček, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8352 (1973); Wiberg and Mukherjee, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1884, 6647 (1974).

[92] For a review, see Cockerill and Harrison, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement A," pt. 1, pp. 264–277, Wiley, New York, 1977.

[93] See Barter and Littler, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 205 (1967).

[94] Bonthrone and Reid, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2773 (1959).

[95] Ball, Crutchfield, and Edwards, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 1599 (1960); McIsaac and Edwards, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 2565 (1969); Bida, Curci, and Edwards, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **5,** 859 (1973); Snook and Hamilton, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 860 (1974); Walling and Camaioni, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3266 (1978); Clerici, Minisci, Ogawa, and Surzur, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1149 (1978).

[96] Littler and Waters, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4046 (1959).

[97] Littler, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2190 (1962).

[98] Deno and Potter, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3550, 3555 (1967). See also Miller, Wolf, and Mayeda, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3306 (1971); Saigo, Morikawa, and Mukaiyama, *Chem. Lett.* 145 (1975); Olah, Gupta, and Fung, *Synthesis* 897 (1980).

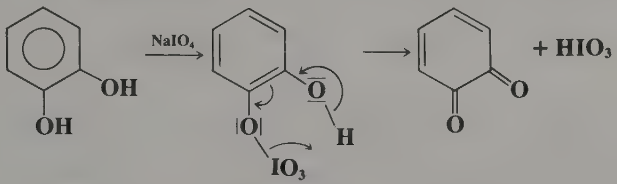
[99] Pojer, *Aust. J. Chem.* **32,** 2787 (1980).

[100] Heywood and Phillips, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 1699 (1960). See also Grieco, Oguri, and Yokoyama, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 419 (1978).

[101] Deslongchamps and Moreau, *Can J. Chem.* **49,** 2465 (1971); Taillefer, Thomas, Nadeau, Fliszár, and Henry, *Can. J. Chem.* **58,** 1138 (1980).

Ortho and para diols are easily oxidized to *ortho*- and *para*-quinones, respectively.[102] Either or both OH groups can be replaced by NH_2 groups to give the same products, though for the preparation of *ortho*-quinones only OH groups are normally satisfactory. The reaction has been successfully carried out with other groups para to OH or NH_2: halogen, OR, Me, *t*-Bu, and even H, though with the last yields are poor. Many oxidizing agents have been used: acid dichromate, silver oxide, lead tetraacetate, HIO_4, and atmospheric oxygen, to name a few. A particularly effective reagent for rings with only one OH or NH_2 group is $(KSO_3)_2N—O\bullet$ (dipotassium nitrosodisulfonate; Fremy's salt), which is a stable free radical.[103] Phenols, even some whose para positions are unoccupied, can be oxidized to *ortho*-quinones with diphenylseleninic anhydride.[104]

Less is known about the mechanism than is the case for **9-3,** but, as in that case, it seems to vary with the oxidizing agent. For oxidation of catechol with $NaIO_4$, it was found that the reaction conducted in $H_2{}^{18}O$ gave unlabeled quinone,[105] so that the following mechanism, which is an example of category 4 (p. 1050), was proposed:



However, for autoxidations (i.e., with atmospheric oxygen) a free-radical mechanism is known to operate.[106]

OS **I,** 383, 482, 511; **II,** 175, 254, 430, 553; **III,** 633, 753; **IV,** 148; **52,** 83, 88; **57,** 78.

9-5 Dehydrogenation of Amines
1/1/*N*,2/2/*C*-Tetrahydro-bielimination

$$RCH_2NH_2 \xrightarrow[2.\ H_2O]{1.\ IF_5} RCN$$

Primary amines at a primary carbon can be dehydrogenated to nitriles. The reaction has been carried out in a variety of ways: by treatment with IF_5,[107] lead tetraacetate,[108] nickel peroxide,[109] silver(II) picolinate,[110] $CuCl$-O_2-pyridine,[111] N-bromosuccinimide and triethylamine,[112] or Cl_2-$NaHCO_3$ followed by CsF.[113] Secondary amines can sometimes be dehydrogenated to imines.[114]

A reaction that involves dehydrogenation to an imine which then reacts further is the reaction of primary or secondary amines with palladium black.[115] The imine initially formed by the dehydrogenation reacts with another molecule of the same or a different amine to give an aminal, which loses NH_3 or RNH_2 to give a secondary or tertiary amine. An example is the reaction between N-methylbenzylamine and N-methylbutylamine, which produces 95% N-methyl-N-butylbenzylamine.

---

[102] For a review, see Thomson, in Patai, Ref. 17, pp. 112–132.

[103] For a review of oxidation with this salt, see Zimmer, Lankin, and Horgan, *Chem. Rev.* **71,** 229–246 (1971).

[104] Barton, Brewster, Ley, and Rosenfeld, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 985 (1976); Barton and Ley, in "Further Perspectives in Organic Chemistry," pp. 53–66, North Holland Elsevier, Amsterdam, 1979.

[105] Adler, Falkehag, and Smith, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **16,** 529 (1962).

[106] Shelton and Kochi, "Metal-Catalyzed Oxidations of Organic Compounds," pp. 368–381, Academic Press, New York, 1981; Walling, "Free Radicals in Solution," pp. 457–461, Wiley, New York, 1957.

[107] Stevens, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 2531 (1961).

[108] Stojiljković, Andrejević, and Mihailović, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 721 (1967).

[109] Nakagawa and Tsuji, *Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **11,** 296 (1963).

[110] Lee, Parkin, Shaw, Hampson, and MacDonald, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 751 (1973).

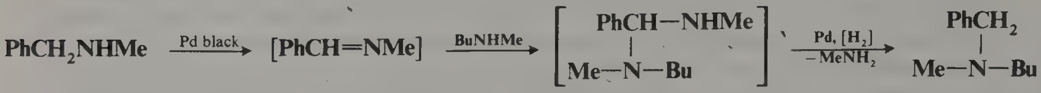
[111] Kametani, Takahashi, Ohsawa, and Ihara, *Synthesis* 245 (1977).

[112] Gottardi, *Monatsh. Chem.* **104,** 1690 (1973).

[113] Sharts, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1008 (1968).

[114] For a review, see Dayagi and Degani, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbon–Nitrogen Double Bond," pp. 117–124, Interscience, New York, 1970.

[115] Murahashi, Yoshimura, Tsumiyama, and Kojima, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 5002 (1983).



$$PhCH_2NHMe \xrightarrow{\text{Pd black}} [PhCH{=}NMe] \xrightarrow{BuNHMe} \left[\begin{array}{c} PhCH{-}NHMe \\ | \\ Me{-}N{-}Bu \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow[-MeNH_2]{Pd,\ [H_2]} \begin{array}{c} PhCH_2 \\ | \\ Me{-}N{-}Bu \end{array}$$

Another method for the conversion of primary to secondary amines ($2RNH_2 \rightarrow R_2NH$) involves treatment with a catalytic amount of sodium hydride.[116] This reaction also involves an imine intermediate.

9-6 Oxidation of Hydrazines, Hydrazones, and Hydroxylamines
1/*N*,2/*N*-Dihydro-elimination

$$Ar{-}NH{-}NH{-}Ar \xrightarrow{NaOBr} Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Ar$$

N,N′-Diarylhydrazines (hydrazo compounds) are oxidized to azo compounds by several oxidizing agents, including NaOBr, HgO,[117] $K_3Fe(CN)_6$ under phase transfer conditions,[118] benzeneseleninic anhydride,[119] MnO_2 (this reagent yields cis azobenzenes),[120] $CuCl_2$, and air and NaOH.[121] The reaction is also applicable to N,N′-dialkyl- and N,N′-diacylhydrazines. Hydrazines (both alkyl and aryl) substituted on only one side also give azo compounds,[122] but these are unstable and decompose to nitrogen and the hydrocarbon:

$$Ar{-}NH{-}NH_2 \longrightarrow [Ar{-}N{=}NH] \longrightarrow ArH + N_2$$

When hydrazones are oxidized with HgO, Ag_2O, or certain other oxidizing agents, diazo compounds are obtained (see also **7-28**):

$$R_2C{=}N{-}NH_2 \xrightarrow{HgO} R_2C{=}\overset{\oplus}{N}{=}\overset{\ominus}{N}$$

Hydrazones of the form $ArCH{=}NNH_2$ react with HgO in solvents such as diglyme or ethanol to give nitriles ArCN.[123] Aromatic hydroxylamines are easily oxidized to nitroso compounds, most commonly by acid dichromate.[124]

$$Ar{-}NH{-}OH \xrightarrow{CrO_3} Ar{-}N{=}O$$

OS **II,** 496; **III,** 351, 356, 375, 668; **IV,** 66, 411; **V,** 96, 160, 897; **50,** 6, 27; **51,** 121; **52,** 11, 77; **58,** 101; **61,** 17. Also see OS **V,** 258.

---

[116] Richey and Erickson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2807 (1972); Erickson and Richey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2811 (1972).

[117] For a review of HgO, see Pizey, Ref. 10, vol. 1, pp. 295–319 (1974).

[118] Dimroth and Tüncher, *Synthesis* 339 (1977).

[119] Barton, Lester, and Ley, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 276 (1978); Back, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 278 (1978).

[120] Hyatt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 141 (1977).

[121] For a review, see Newbold, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Hydrazo, Azo, and Azoxy Groups," pt. 1, pp. 543–557, 564–573, Wiley, New York, 1975.

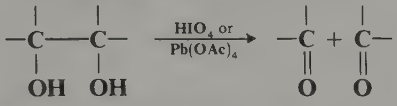
[122] See Mannen and Itano, *Tetrahedron* **29,** 3497 (1973).

[123] Mobbs and Suschitzky, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 361 (1971).

[124] For a review, see Sandler and Karo, "Organic Functional Group Preparations," vol. 2, pp. 410–416, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

B. Oxidations Involving Cleavage of Carbon–Carbon Bonds[125]

9-7 Oxidative Cleavage of Glycols and Related Compounds

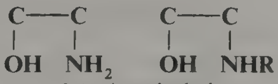


$$-\underset{OH}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{OH}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}- \xrightarrow[Pb(OAc)_4]{HIO_4\text{ or}} -\underset{O}{\overset{|}{\underset{\|}{C}}} + \underset{O}{\overset{|}{\underset{\|}{C}}}-$$

1,2-Glycols are easily cleaved under mild conditions and in good yield with periodic acid or lead tetraacetate.[126] The products are 2 moles of aldehyde, or 2 moles of ketone, or 1 mole of each, depending on the groups attached to the two carbons. The yields are so good that olefins are often converted to glycols (**5-36**) and then cleaved with HIO_4 or $Pb(OAc)_4$ rather than being cleaved directly with ozone (**9-9**) or dichromate or permanganate (**9-10**). A number of other oxidizing agents also give the same products, among them activated MnO_2,[127] thallium(III) salts,[128] pyridinium chlorochromate,[129] and O_2 catalyzed by Co(III) salts.[130] Permanganate, dichromate, N-iodosuccinimide,[131] N-bromosuccinimide-triphenylbismuth,[132] iodine triacetate,[133] and several other oxidizing agents also cleave glycols, giving carboxylic acids rather than aldehydes, but these reagents are seldom used synthetically.

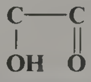
The two reagents (periodic acid and lead tetraacetate) are complementary, since periodic acid is best used in water and lead tetraacetate in organic solvents. When three or more OH groups are located on adjacent carbons, then the middle one (or ones) is converted to formic acid.

Similar cleavage is undergone by other compounds that contain oxygens or nitrogens on adjacent carbons:



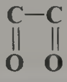
$$\underset{OH}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{NH_2}{\underset{|}{C}} \qquad \underset{OH}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{NHR}{\underset{|}{C}}$$

β-Amino alcohols



$$\underset{OH}{\underset{|}{C}}-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}$$

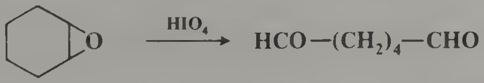
α-Hydroxy aldehydes and ketones



$$\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}$$

α-Diketones
α-Keto aldehydes
Glyoxal

α-Diketones and α-hydroxy ketones are also cleaved by alkaline H_2O_2.[134] HIO_4 has been used to cleave epoxides to aldehydes,[135] e.g.,



α-Hydroxy acids and α-keto acids are not cleaved by HIO_4 but are cleaved by $Pb(OAc)_4$, alkaline H_2O_2, and other reagents. These are oxidative decarboxylations. α-Hydroxy acids give aldehydes or ketones, and α-keto acids give acids:

---

[125] For a review, see Bentley, in Bentley and Kirby, Ref. 12, pp. 137–254.

[126] For reviews covering both reagents, see House, Ref. 10, pp. 353–363; Perlin, in Augustine, "Oxidation," vol. 1, pp. 189–212, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1969; Bunton, in Wiberg, Ref. 2, pp. 367–407. For reviews of lead tetraacetate, see Rubottom, Ref. 10; Aylward, Ref. 10. For reviews of HIO_4, see Fatiadi, Ref. 10; Sklarz, Ref. 10.

[127] Adler and Becker, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **15,** 849 (1961); Ohloff and Giersch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **12,** 401 (1973) [*Angew. Chem.* **85,** 401].

[128] McKillop, Raphael, and Taylor, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 4204 (1972).

[129] Cisneros, Fernández, and Hernández, *Synth. Comm.* **12,** 833 (1982).

[130] de Vries and Schors, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5689 (1968).

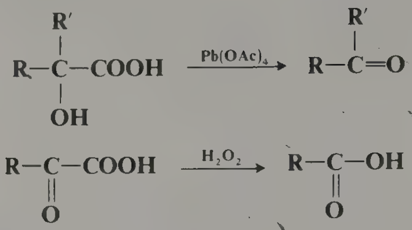
[131] Beebe, Hii, and Reinking, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1927 (1981).

[132] Cambie, Chambers, Rutledge, and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1483 (1978).

[133] Barton, Motherwell, and Stobie, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1232 (1981).

[134] See for example, Ogata, Sawaki, and Shiroyama, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 4061 (1977).

[135] Nagarkatti and Ashley, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4599 (1973).

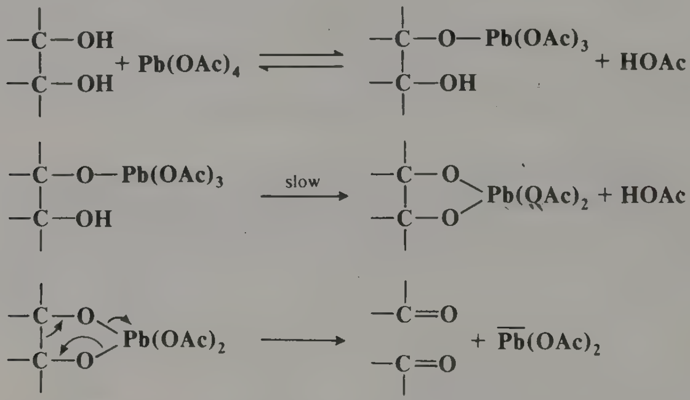


$$R{-}\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{\underset{\underset{OH}{|}}{C}}{-}COOH \xrightarrow{Pb(OAc)_4} R{-}\overset{\overset{R'}{|}}{C}{=}O$$

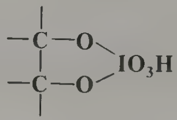
$$R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}COOH \xrightarrow{H_2O_2} R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}OH$$

Also see **0-13, 9-13,** and **9-14.**

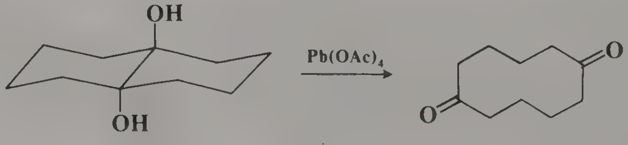
The mechanism of glycol oxidation with $Pb(OAc)_4$ was proposed by Criegee:[136]



This mechanism is supported by these facts: (1) the kinetics are second order (first order in each reactant); (2) added acetic acid retards the reaction (drives the equilibrium to the left); and (3) cis glycols react much more rapidly than trans glycols.[137] For periodic acid the mechanism is similar, with the intermediate[138]



However, the cyclic-intermediate mechanism cannot account for all glycol oxidations, since some glycols that cannot form such an ester (e.g., **10**) are nevertheless cleaved by lead tetraacetate



10

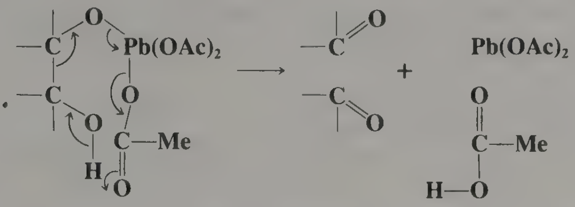
---

[136] Criegee, Kraft, and Rank, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **507,** 159 (1933). For reviews, see Waters, Ref. 2, pp. 72–81; Stewart, Ref. 2, pp. 97–106.

[137] For example, see Criegee, Höger, Huber, Kruck, Marktscheffel, and Schellenberger, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **599,** 81 (1956).

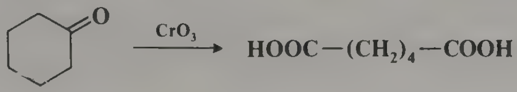
[138] Buist, Bunton, and Miles, *J. Chem. Soc.* 743 (1959); Buist, Bunton, and Hipperson, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 2128 (1971).

(though other glycols that cannot form cyclic esters are *not* cleaved, by either reagent[139]). To account for cases like **10**, a cyclic transition state has been proposed:[137]



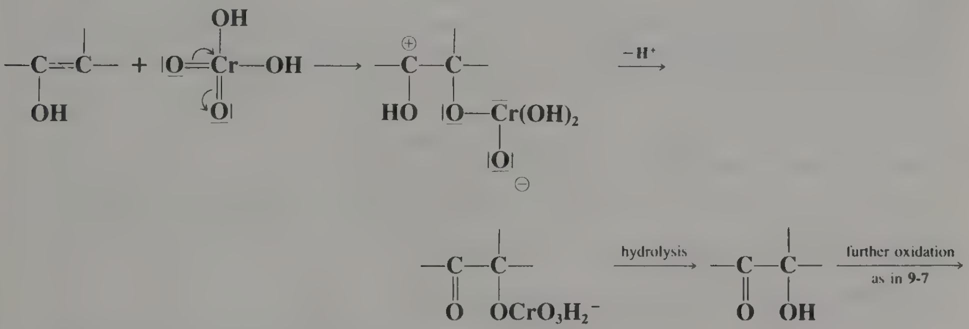
OS **IV,** 124.

9-8 Oxidative Cleavage of Ketones, Aldehydes, and Alcohols



Oxidative cleavage of open-chain ketones or alcohols[140] is seldom a useful preparative procedure, not because these compounds do not undergo oxidation (they do, with the exception of diaryl ketones) but because the result is generally a hopeless mixture. However, the reaction is quite useful for cyclic ketones and the corresponding secondary alcohols, the dicarboxylic acid being prepared in good yield. The formation of adipic acid from cyclohexanone (shown above) is an important industrial procedure. Acid dichromate and permanganate are the most common oxidizing agents, though autoxidation (oxidation with atmospheric oxygen) in alkaline solution[141] and potassium superoxide under phase transfer conditions[142] have also been used. The last-mentioned reagent has also been used to cleave open-chain ketones to give carboxylic acid products in good yield.[142]

The mechanism for the cleavage of ketones by strong oxidizing agents is probably through the enol form.[143] The process may be illustrated for chromic acid:



---

[139] Angyal and Young, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 5251 (1959).

[140] For a review of metal ion-catalyzed oxidative cleavage of alcohols, see Trahanovsky, *Methods Free-Radical Chem.* **4,** 133–169 (1973). For a review of the oxidation of aldehydes and ketones, see Verter, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," vol. 2, pp. 71–156, Interscience, New York, 1970.

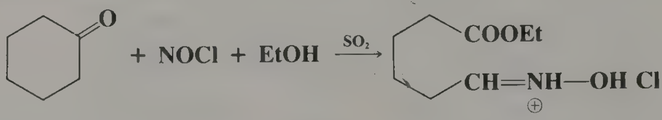
[141] Wallace, Pobiner, and Schriesheim, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 3768 (1965).

[142] Lissel and Dehmlow, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3689 (1978).

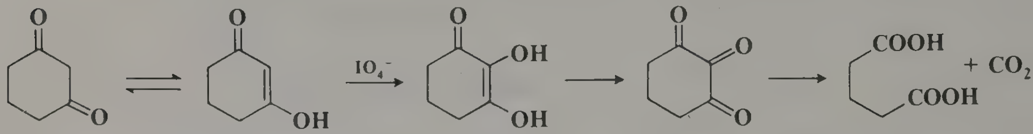
[143] Best, Littler, and Waters, *J. Chem. Soc.* 822 (1962); Littler, *J. Chem. Soc.* 827, 832 (1962); Roček and Riehl, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3569 (1967); *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6691 (1967); Littler, Quick, and Wozniak, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 657 (1980).

The formation of the chromium ester from the enol is similar to the bromination of ketones (**2-4**). A similar mechanism was demonstrated for nitric acid.[144] However, in some cases, the ketone is attacked directly, and not through the enol.[145]

Cyclic ketones can also be cleaved by treatment with NOCl and an alcohol in liquid SO_2 to give an ω-oximinocarboxylic ester, e.g.,[146]



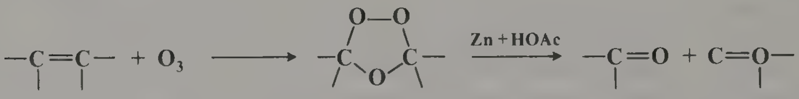
Cyclic 1,3-diketones, which exist mainly in the monoenolic form, can be cleaved with sodium periodate with loss of one carbon, e.g.,[147]



The species actually undergoing the cleavage is the triketone, so this is an example of **9-7**.

OS **I,** 18; **IV,** 19; **55,** 67. See also OS **57,** 113.

9-9 Ozonolysis



11

When compounds containing double bonds are treated with ozone, usually at low temperatures, they are converted to compounds called ozonides (**11**) that can be isolated but, because some of them are explosive, are more often decomposed with zinc and acetic acid or catalytic hydrogenation to give 2 moles of aldehyde, or 2 moles of ketone, or 1 mole of each, depending on the groups attached to the olefin.[148] The decomposition of **11** has also been carried out with many other reducing agents, among them trimethyl phosphite,[149] thiourea,[150] and dimethyl sulfide.[151] However, ozonides can also be *oxidized* with oxygen, peracids, or H_2O_2 to give ketones and/or carboxylic acids or *reduced* with $LiAlH_4$, $NaBH_4$, BH_3, or catalytic hydrogenation with excess H_2 to give 2 moles of alcohol.[152] Ozonides can also be treated with ammonia, hydrogen, and a catalyst to give the corresponding amines,[153] or with an alcohol and anhydrous HCl to give the corresponding carboxylic esters.[154] Ozonolysis is therefore an important synthetic reaction. In the past it was also very valuable for location of the double bonds in unknown compounds, though with the advent of instrumental methods of structure determination, this usage has declined.

---

[144] van Asselt and van Krevelen, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **82,** 51 (1963).

[145] Littler, *J. Chem. Soc.* 832 (1962).

[146] Rogić, Vitrone, and Swerdloff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 1156 (1977).

[147] Wolfrom and Bobbitt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 2489 (1956).

[148] For a treatise, see Bailey, "Ozonation in Organic Chemistry," 2 vol., Academic Press, New York, 1978, 1982. For reviews, see Odinokov and Tolstikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 636–657 (1981); Belew, in Augustine and Trecker, Ref. 11, vol. 1, pp. 259–335; Menyailo and Pospelov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **36,** 284–294 (1967).

[149] Knowles and Thompson, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 1031 (1960).

[150] Gupta, Soman, and Dev, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 3013 (1982).

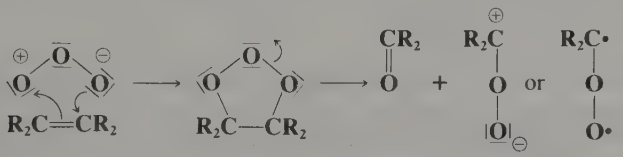
[151] Pappas, Keaveney, Gancher, and Berger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4273 (1966).

[152] Sousa and Bluhm, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 108 (1960); Diaper and Mitchell, *Can. J. Chem.* **38,** 1976 (1960); Diaper and Strachan, *Can. J. Chem.* **45,** 33 (1967); White, King, and O'Brien, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3587 (1971).

[153] Diaper and Mitchell, *Can. J. Chem.* **40,** 1189 (1962); Benton and Kiess, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 470 (1960); Pollart and Miller, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 2392 (1962); White, King, and O'Brien, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3591 (1971).

A wide variety of olefins undergo ozonolysis, including cyclic ones, where cleavage gives rise to one bifunctional product. Olefins in which the double bond is connected to electron-donating groups react many times faster than those in which it is connected to electron-withdrawing groups.[155] The reaction has often been carried out on compounds containing more than one double bond; generally the bonds are all cleaved. In some cases, especially when bulky groups are present, conversion of the substrate to an epoxide (**5-37**) becomes an important side reaction and can be the main reaction.[156] Ozonolysis of triple bonds[157] is less common and the reaction proceeds less easily, since ozone is an electrophilic agent[158] and therefore prefers double to triple bonds (p. 671). Compounds that contain triple bonds generally give carboxylic acids, though sometimes ozone oxidizes them to α-diketones. Aromatic compounds are also attacked less readily than olefins, but they have often been cleaved. Aromatic compounds behave as if the double bonds in the Kekulé structures were really there. Thus benzene gives 3 moles of glyoxal (HCOCHO), and *o*-xylene gives a glyoxal/MeCOCHO/MeCOCOMe ratio of 3:2:1, which shows that in this case cleavage is statistical. With polycyclic aromatic compounds the site of attack depends on the structure of the molecule and on the solvent.[159]

Although a large amount of work has been done on the mechanism of ozonization (formation of **11**), not all the details are known. The basic mechanism was formulated by Criegee.[160] The first step of the Criegee mechanism is a 1,3 dipolar addition (**5-46**) of ozone to substrate to give the "initial" or "primary" ozonide **12**.[161] This species is highly unstable and cleaves to an aldehyde or ketone (**13**) and an intermediate which Criegee showed as a zwitterion (**14**) but which may be a biradical (**15**). The intermediate (which we will represent as **14**) may then undergo various reactions, three of which lead to normal products. One of these is a recombination with **13**, the



12 **13** **14** **15**

---

[154] Neumeister, Keul, Saxena, and Griesbaum, *Angew, Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **17,** 939 (1978) (*Angew. Chem.* **90,** 999]. See also Schreiber, Claus, and Reagan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3867 (1982).

[155] Pryor, Giamalva, and Church, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6858 (1983).

[156] See, for example, Bailey and Lane, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4473 (1967); Gillies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 1276 (1975).

[157] For a discussion of the mechanism of ozonolysis of triple bonds, see Pryor, Govindan, and Church, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 7563 (1982).

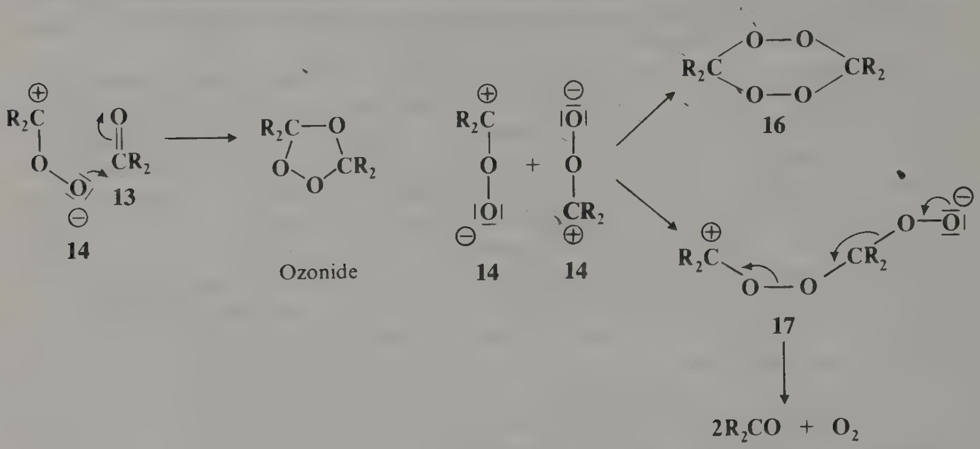
[158] See, for example, Wibaut and Sixma, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **71,** 761 (1952); Williamson and Cvetanović *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4248 (1968); Whitworth, Ayoub, Rousseau, and Fliszár, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 7128 (1969); Razumovskii and Zaikov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **8,** 468, 473 (1972); Klutsch and Fliszár, *Can. J. Chem.* **50,** 2841 (1972).

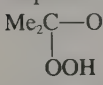
[159] Dobinson and Bailey, *Tetrahedron Lett.* no. 13, 14 (1960).

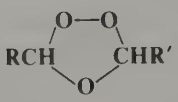
[160] For reviews, see Kuczkowski, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 42–47 (1983); Razumovskii and Zaikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 1163–1180 (1980); Criegee, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **14,** 745–752 (1975) [*Angew. Chem.* **87,** 765–771]; Murray, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **1,** 313–320 (1968).

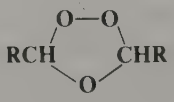
[161] Criegee did not specify the structure of this species, but it has been isolated and observed in solution and seems to have the structure **12**: Criegee and Schröder, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 689 (1960); Bailey, Thompson, and Shoulders, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4098 (1966); Durham and Greenwood, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 1629 (1968); Bailey, Carter, Fischer, and Thompson, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 1278 (1973); Hisatsune, Shinoda, and Heicklen, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2524 (1979); Mile, Morris, and Alcock, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1644 (1979); Kohlmiller and Andrews, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2578 (1981).

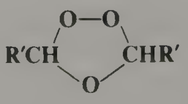
second a dimerization to the bisperoxide **16,** and the third a kind of dimerization to **17.**[162] If the



first path is taken (this is normally possible only if **13** is an aldehyde; most ketones are not reactive enough[163]), hydrolysis of the ozonide gives the normal products. If **16** is formed, hydrolysis of it gives one of the products, and of course **13,** which then does not undergo further reaction, is the other. **17,** if formed, can decompose directly, as shown, to give the normal products and oxygen. In protic solvents, **14** is converted to a hydroperoxide, and these have been isolated, for example,  $Me_2\underset{\displaystyle OOH}{\underset{|}{C}}—OMe$ from $Me_2C{=}CMe_2$ in methanol. Further evidence for the mechanism is that **16** can be isolated in some cases, e.g., from $Me_2C{=}CMe_2$. But perhaps the most impressive evidence comes from the detection of cross products. In the Criegee mechanism, the two parts of the original olefin break apart and then recombine to form the ozonide. In the case of an unsymmetrical olefin RCH=CHR′ there should be three ozonides:







since there are two different aldehydes **13** and two different species **14,** and these can recombine in the three ways shown. Actually *six* ozonides, corresponding to the cis and trans forms of these three, were isolated and characterized for methyl oleate.[164] Similar results have been reported for smaller olefins, e.g., 2-pentene, 2-hexene, 4-nonene, and even 2-methyl-2-pentene.[165] The last-mentioned case is especially interesting, since it is quite plausible that this unsymmetrical olefin would cleave in only one way, so that only one ozonide (in cis and trans versions) would be found; but this is not so, and three were found for this case too. However, terminal olefins give little or no cross ozonide formation.[166] In general, the less alkylated end of the olefin tends to go to **13** and the other to **14**. Still other evidence for the Criegee mechanism is: (1) When $Me_2C{=}CMe_2$ was ozonized in the presence of HCHO, the ozonide **18** could be isolated;[167] (2) **14** prepared in an

---

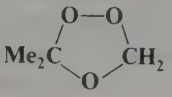
[162] Fliszár, Gravel, and Cavalieri, *Can. J. Chem.* **44,** 67, 1013 (1966); Fliszár and Chylińska, *Can. J. Chem.* **45,** 29 (1967), **46,** 783 (1968).

[163] It follows that tetrasubstituted alkenes do not normally give ozonides. However, they do give the normal cleavage products (ketones) by the other pathways.

[164] Riezebos, Grimmelikhuysen, and van Dorp, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **82,** 1234 (1963); Privett and Nickell, *J. Am. Oil Chem. Soc.* **41,** 72 (1964).

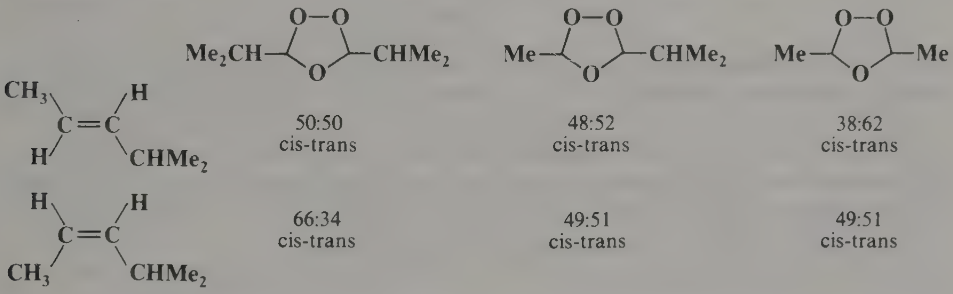
[165] Loan, Murray, and Story, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 737 (1965); Lorenz and Parks, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1976 (1965).

[166] Murray and Williams, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1891 (1969).



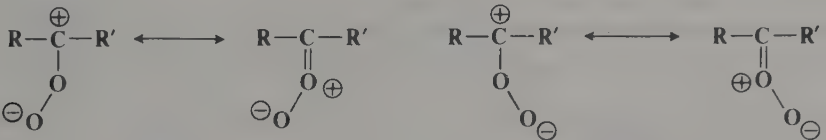
18

entirely different manner (photooxidation of diazo compounds), reacted with aldehydes to give ozonides;[168] and (3) cis and trans olefins generally give the same ozonide, which would be expected if they cleave first.[169] However, this was not true for $Me_3CCH{=}CHCMe_3$, where the cis olefin gave the cis ozonide (chiefly), and the trans gave the trans.[170] The latter result is not compatible with the Criegee mechanism. Also incompatible with the Criegee mechanism was the finding that the cis/trans ratios of symmetrical (cross) ozonides obtained from *cis*- and *trans*-4-methyl-2-pentene were not the same.[171]



If the Criegee mechanism operated as shown above, the cis/trans ratio for each of the two cross ozonides would have to be identical for the cis and trans olefins, since in this mechanism they are completely cleaved.

The above stereochemical results have been explained[172] on the basis of the Criegee mechanism with the following refinements: (1) The formation of **12** is stereospecific, as expected from a 1,3 dipolar cycloaddition. (2) Once they are formed, **14** and **13** remain attracted to each other, much like an ion pair. (3) **14** exists in syn and anti forms, which are produced in different amounts and



syn-**14** *anti*-**14**

---

[167] Even ketones can react with **14** to form ozonides, provided they are present in large excess: Criegee and Korber, *Chem. Ber.* **104,** 1812 (1971).

[168] Murray and Suzui, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3343 (1973); Higley and Murray, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 3330 (1974).

[169] See, for example, Murray and Williams, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1896 (1969).

[170] Schröder, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 733 (1962); Kolsaker, *Acta Chem. Scand., Ser. B* **32,** 557 (1978).

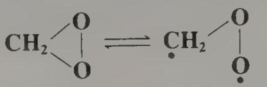
[171] Murray, Youssefyeh, and Story, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3143, 3655 (1966); Story, Murray, and Youssefyeh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3144 (1966). Also see Greenwood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 3146 (1966); Choe, Srinivasan, and Kuczkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4703 (1983).

[172] Bauld, Thompson, Hudson, and Bailey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1822 (1968); Lattimer, Kuczkowski, and Gillies, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 348 (1974); Bailey and Ferrell, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 899 (1978).

can hold their shapes, at least for a time. This is plausible if we remember that a C=O canonical form contributes to the structure of **14**. (4) The combination of **14** and **13** is also a 1,3 dipolar cycloaddition, so configuration is retained in this step too.[173]

Evidence that the basic Criegee mechanism operates even in these cases comes from ^{18}O labeling experiments, making use of the fact, mentioned above, that mixed ozonides (e.g., **18**) can be isolated when an external aldehyde is added. Both the normal and modified Criegee mechanisms predict that if ^{18}O-labeled aldehyde is added to the ozonolysis mixture, the label will appear in the ether oxygen (see the reaction between **14** and **13**), and this is what is found.[174] There is evidence that the anti-**14** couples much more readily than the syn-**14**.[175]

The ozonolysis of ethylene in the liquid phase (without a solvent) was shown to take place by the Criegee mechanism.[176] This reaction has been used to study the structure of the intermediate **14** or **15**. The compound dioxirane (**19**) was identified in the reaction mixture[177] at low temperatures



19 **15(R = H)**

and is probably in equilibrium with the biradical **15**(R = H). It had previously been proposed, on the basis of valence-bond calculations, that the ground state of the intermediate is in fact **15** and that **19** is more stable.[178]

Ozonolysis in the gas phase is not generally carried out in the laboratory. However, the reaction is important because it takes place in the upper atmosphere and contributes to air pollution. There is much evidence that the Criegee mechanism operates in the gas phase too, though the products are more complex because of other reactions that also take place.[179]

OS **V**, 489, 493; **52**, 135. Also see OS **IV**, 554. For the preparation of ozone, see OS **III**, 673.

9-10 Oxidative Cleavage of Double Bonds and Aromatic Rings

$$R_2C{=}CHR \xrightarrow{CrO_3} R_2C{=}O + RCOOH$$

Double bonds can be cleaved by many oxidizing agents,[180] the most common of which are neutral or acid permanganate and acid dichromate. The products are generally 2 moles of ketone, 2 moles of carboxylic acid, or 1 mole of each, depending on what groups are attached to the olefin. With ordinary solutions of permanganate or dichromate yields are generally low, and the reaction is seldom a useful synthetic method; but high yields can be obtained by oxidizing with $KMnO_4$ dissolved in benzene containing the crown ether dicyclohexano-18-crown-6 (see p. 77).[181] The crown ether coordinates with K^+, permitting the $KMnO_4$ to dissolve in benzene. Another reagent frequently used for synthetic purposes is the *Lemieux–von Rudloff reagent:* HIO_4 containing a trace of MnO_4^-.[182] The MnO_4^- is the actual oxidizing agent, being reduced to the manganate stage, and the purpose of the HIO_4 is to reoxidize the manganate back to MnO_4^-. Another reagent that behaves similarly is $NaIO_4$-ruthenium tetroxide.[183] The *Barbier–Wieland procedure* for decreasing the length of a chain by one carbon involves oxidative cleavage by acid dichromate ($NaIO_4$-ruthenium tetroxide has also been used), but this is cleavage of a 1,1-diphenyl olefin, which generally gives good yields:

---

[173] For isotope-effect evidence that this step is concerted in some cases, see Choe and Kuczkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 4839 (1983). However, there is evidence that it may not always be concerted: see for example, Murray and Su, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 817 (1983).

[174] Bishop, Denson, and Story, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5739 (1968); Fliszár, Carles, and Renard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 1364 (1968); Fliszár and Carles, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 2637 (1969); Gillies and Kuczkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7609 (1972); Gillies, Lattimer, and Kuczkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1536 (1974); Higley and Murray, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 4526 (1976); Mazur and Kuczkowski, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 3185 (1979).

[175] Mile and Morris, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 263 (1978).

[176] Fong and Kuczkowski, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **102,** 4763 (1980).

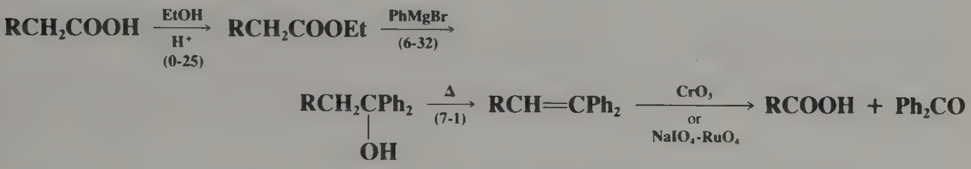
[177] Suenram and Lovas, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 5117 (1978).

[178] Harding and Goddard, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 7180 (1978).

[179] Herron, Martinez, and Huie, *Int. J. Chem. Kinet.* **14,** 201 (1982); Kühne, Forster, Hulliger, Ruprecht, Bauder, and Günthard, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **63,** 1971 (1980), and references cited in these papers.

[180] For a review of the oxidation of C=C and C=N bonds, see Henry and Lange, in Patai, Ref. 92, pp. 965–1098.

[181] Sam and Simmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 4024 (1972). See also Lee and Chang, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1532 (1978).



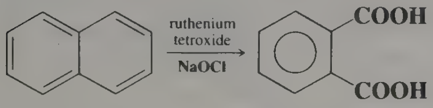
$$\mathrm{RCH_2COOH} \underset{(0\text{-}25)}{\xrightarrow[\mathrm{H^+}]{\mathrm{EtOH}}} \mathrm{RCH_2COOEt} \xrightarrow[(6\text{-}32)]{\mathrm{PhMgBr}}$$

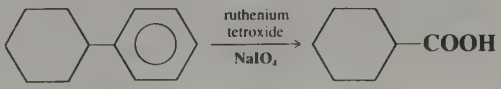
$$\mathrm{RCH_2}\underset{\mathrm{OH}}{\underset{|}{\mathrm{C}}}\mathrm{Ph_2} \xrightarrow[(7\text{-}1)]{\Delta} \mathrm{RCH{=}CPh_2} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{NaIO_4\text{-}RuO_4}]{\mathrm{CrO_3} \text{ or}} \mathrm{RCOOH} + \mathrm{Ph_2CO}$$

With certain reagents, the oxidation of double bonds can be stopped at the aldehyde stage, and in these cases the products are the same as in the ozonolysis procedure. Among these reagents are chromyl trichloroacetate[184] and $NaIO_4$-OsO_4.[185]

The mechanism of oxidation probably involves in most cases the initial formation of a glycol (**5-36**) or cyclic ester,[186] and then further oxidation as in **9-7.**[187] In line with the electrophilic attack on the olefin, triple bonds are more resistant to oxidation than double bonds.

Aromatic rings can be cleaved with strong enough oxidizing agents. An important laboratory reagent for this purpose is ruthenium tetroxide along with a cooxidant such as $NaIO_4$ or NaOCl (household bleach may be used).[188] Examples[189] are the oxidation of naphthalene to phthalic acid[190]





and, even more remarkably, of cyclohexylbenzene to cyclohexanecarboxylic acid[191] (note the contrast with **9-11**). The latter conversion was also accomplished with ozone.[192] Another reagent that oxidizes aromatic rings is air catalyzed by V_2O_5. The oxidations of naphthalene to phthalic anhydride and of benzene to maleic anhydride (p. 711) by this reagent are important industrial procedures.[193] *o*-Diamines have been oxidized with nickel peroxide, with lead tetraacetate,[194] and with O_2 catalyzed by CuCl:[195]

---

[182] Lemieux and Rudloff, *Can. J. Chem.* **33,** 1701, 1710 (1955); Rudloff, *Can. J. Chem.* **33,** 1714 (1955), **34,** 1413 (1956), **43,** 1784 (1965).

[183] For a review, see Lee and van den Engh, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pt. B, pp. 186–192.

[184] Schildknecht and Föttinger, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **659,** 20 (1962).

[185] Pappo, Allen, Lemieux, and Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.* **21,** 478 (1956).

[186] See for example, Lee and Spitzer, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3644 (1976); Lee, Chang, and Helliwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3644, 3646 (1976).

[187] There is evidence that oxidation with Cr(VI) in aqueous acetic acid involves an epoxide intermediate: Awasthy and Roček, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 991 (1969); Roček and Drozd, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 6668 (1970). See also Erickson and Clark, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3997 (1969).

[188] Ruthenium tetroxide is an expensive reagent, but the cost may be greatly reduced by the use of an inexpensive cooxidant such as NaOCl, the function of which is to oxidize RuO_2 back to ruthenium tetroxide.

[189] For other examples, see Piatak, Herbst, Wicha, and Caspi, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 116 (1969); Wolfe, Hasan, and Campbell, *Chem. Commun.* 1420 (1970); Ayres and Hossain, *Chem Commun.* 428 (1972).

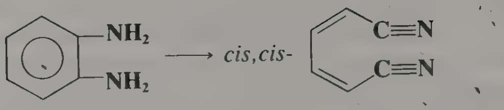
[190] Spitzer and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2468 (1974).

[191] Caputo and Fuchs, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4729 (1967).

[192] Klein and Steinmetz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4249 (1975). For other reagents that convert an aromatic ring to COOH and leave alkyl groups untouched, see Deno, Greigger, Messer, Meyer, and Stroud, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1703 (1977); Liotta and Hoff, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2887 (1980).

[193] For a review, see Pyatnitskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **45,** 762–776 (1976).

[194] Nakagawa and Onoue, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1433 (1965), *Chem. Commun.* 396 (1966).



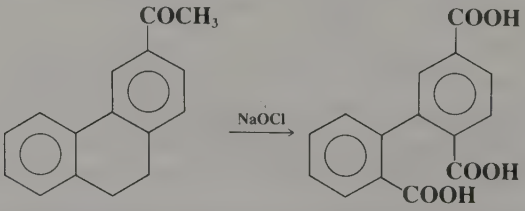
The last-named reagent also cleaves *o*-dihydroxybenzenes (catechols) to give, in the presence of MeOH, the monomethylated dicarboxylic acids $HOOC{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}\underset{|}{C}{=}\underset{|}{C}{-}COOMe$.[196] Terminal triple-bond compounds can be cleaved to carboxylic acids with thallium(III) nitrate ($RC{\equiv}CH \rightarrow RCOOH$).[197]

OS **II,** 53, 523; **III,** 39, 234, 449; **IV,** 136, 484, 824; **V,** 393; **55,** 67; **57,** 33; **60,** 11. Also see OS **II,** 551.

9-11 Oxidation of Aromatic Side Chains

$$ArR \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} ArCOOH$$

Alkyl chains on aromatic rings can be oxidized to COOH groups by many oxidizing agents, including permanganate, nitric acid, and acid dichromate.[198] The method is most often applied to the methyl group, though longer side chains can also be cleaved. However, tertiary alkyl groups are resistant to oxidation, and when they *are* oxidized, ring cleavage usually occurs too.[199] It is usually difficult to oxidize an R group on a fused aromatic system without cleaving the ring or oxidizing it to a quinone (**9-19**). However, this has been done (e.g., 2-methylnaphthalene was converted to 2-naphthoic acid) with aqueous $Na_2Cr_2O_7$.[200] Functional groups may be present anywhere on the side chain and, if in the α-position, greatly increase the ease of oxidation. However, an exception is an α-phenyl group. In such cases the reaction stops at the diaryl ketone stage. Molecules containing aryl groups on different carbons cleave so that each ring gets one carbon atom, e.g.,



It is possible to oxidize only one alkyl group of a ring that contains more than one. The order of reactivity[201] toward most reagents is $CH_2Ar > CHR_2 > CH_2R > CH_3$.[202] Groups on the ring susceptible to oxidation (OH, NHR, NH_2, etc.) must be protected. The oxidation can be performed with oxygen, in which case it is autoxidation, and the mechanism is like that in **4-8**, with a hydroperoxide intermediate. With this procedure it is possible to isolate ketones from $ArCH_2R$, and this is often done.[203]

---

[195] Kajimoto, Takahashi, and Tsuji, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1389 (1976).

[196] Tsuji and Takayanagi, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 641 (1978). See also Pandell, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 3992 (1976); Rogić, Demmin, and Hammond, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7441 (1976).

[197] McKillop, Oldenziel, Swann, Taylor, and Robey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 1296 (1973).

[198] For many examples, see Lee, Ref. 10, pp. 43–64.

[199] Brandenberger, Maas, and Dvoretzky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2146 (1961).

[200] Friedman, Fishel, and Shechter, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1453 (1965).

[201] Oxidation with Co(III) is an exception. The methyl group is oxidized in preference to the other alkyl groups: Onopchenko, Schulz, and Seekircher, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 1414 (1972).

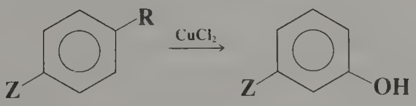
[202] For example, see Foster and Hickinbottom, *J. Chem. Soc.* 680 (1960); Ferguson and Wims, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 668 (1960).

[203] For a review, see Pines and Stalick, Ref. 21, pp. 508–543.

The mechanism has been studied for the closely related reaction: $Ar_2CH_2 + CrO_3 \rightarrow Ar_2C{=}O$.[204] A deuterium isotope effect of 6.4 was found, indicating that the rate-determining step is either $Ar_2CH_2 \rightarrow Ar_2CH\cdot$ or $Ar_2CH_2 \rightarrow Ar_2CH^+$. Either way this explains why tertiary groups are not converted to COOH and why the reactivity order is $CHR_2 > CH_2R > CH_3$, as mentioned above. Both free radicals and carbocations exhibit this order of stability (Chapter 5). The two possibilities are examples of categories 2 and 3 (p. 1050). Just how the radical or the cation goes on to the product is not known. $\mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}OH}$ may be an intermediate, in which case the further reaction would be like that in **9-3.**

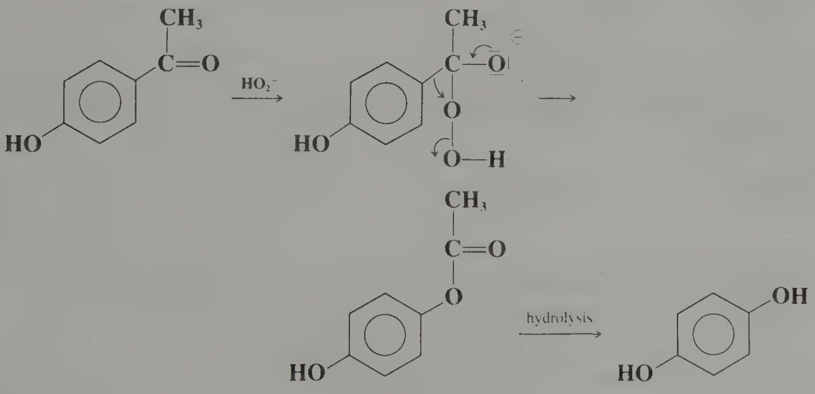
OS **I,** 159, 385, 392, 543; **II,** 135, 428; **III,** 334, 420, 740, 791, 820, 822; **V,** 617, 810.

9-12 Oxidative Cleavage of Alkyl Groups from Rings



It is possible to replace an alkyl group on a ring by an OH group. When the alkyl group is one oxidizable to COOH (**9-11**), cupric salts are oxidizing agents, and the OH group is found in a position ortho to that occupied by the alkyl group.[205] What happens here is initial oxidation to COOH, and then an example of **3-20.**[206] This reaction is used industrially to convert toluene to phenol.

In another kind of reaction, an aromatic aldehyde ArCHO or ketone ArCOR′ is converted to a phenol ArOH on treatment with alkaline H_2O_2,[207] but there must be an OH or NH_2 group in the ortho or para position. This is called the *Dakin reaction*.[208] The mechanism may be similar to that of the Baeyer–Villiger reaction (**8-22**):[209]



20

The intermediate **20** has been isolated.[210]

OS **I,** 149; **III,** 759.

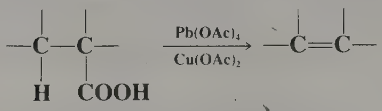
---

[204] Wiberg and Evans, *Tetrahedron* **8,** 313 (1960).
[205] Kaeding, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 3144 (1961).
[206] For a discussion, see Lee and van den Engh, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pt. B, pp. 91–94.
[207] For a convenient procedure, see Hocking, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 2384 (1973).
[208] See Schubert and Kintner, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Carbonyl Group," Ref. 42, pp. 749–752.
[209] For a discussion, see Hocking, Bhandari, Shell, and Smyth, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4208 (1982).
[210] Hocking, Ko, and Smyth, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 2646 (1978).

9-13 Oxidative Decarboxylation

$$\mathrm{RCOOH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Pb(OAc)_4}} \mathrm{ROAc}$$

Acetoxy-de-carboxy-substitution



Hydro-carboxy-elimination

Carboxylic acids can be decarboxylated[211] with lead tetraacetate to give a variety of products, among them the ester ROAc (formed by replacement of COOH by an acetoxy group), the alkane RH (see **2-39**), and, if a β-hydrogen is present, the alkene formed by elimination of H and COOH, as well as numerous other products arising from rearrangements, internal cyclizations,[212] and reactions with solvent molecules. When R is tertiary, the chief product is usually the alkene, which is often obtained in good yield. High yields of alkenes can also be obtained when R is primary or secondary, in this case by the use of $Cu(OAc)_2$-$Pb(OAc)_4$ instead of $Pb(OAc)_4$.[213] In the absence of $Cu(OAc)_2$, primary acids give mostly alkanes (though yields are generally low) and secondary acids may give esters or alkenes. Esters have been obtained in good yields from some secondary acids, from β,γ-unsaturated acids, and from acids in which R is a benzylic group. γ-Keto acids give good yields of α,β-unsaturated ketones.[214] Other oxidizing agents, including Co(III), Ag(II), Mn(III), and Ce(IV), have also been used to effect oxidative decarboxylation.[215]

The mechanism with lead tetraacetate is generally accepted to be of the free-radical type.[216] First there is an interchange of ester groups:

$$\mathrm{Pb(OAc)_4 + RCOOH \longrightarrow \underset{\textbf{21}}{Pb(OAc)_3OCOR} \quad or \quad \underset{\textbf{22}}{Pb(OAc)_2(OCOR)_2}}$$

There follows a free-radical chain mechanism (shown for **21** though **22** and other lead esters may behave similarly)

$$\text{Initiation} \qquad \underset{\textbf{21}}{\mathrm{Pb(OAc)_3OCOR}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{\dot{P}b(OAc)_3 + R\cdot + CO_2}$$

$$\text{Propagation} \qquad \mathrm{R\cdot + Pb(OAc)_3OCOR \longrightarrow R^+ + \dot{P}b(OAc)_2OCOR + OAc^-}$$

$$\mathrm{\dot{P}b(OAc)_2OCOR \longrightarrow Pb(OAc)_2 + R\cdot + CO_2}$$

---

[211] For reviews, see Serguchev and Beletskaya, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **49,** 1119–1134 (1980); Sheldon and Kochi, *Org. React.* **19,** 279–421 (1972).

[212] For examples, see Moriarty, Walsh, and Gopal, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4363 (1966); Davies and Waring, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1865, 2337 (1968).

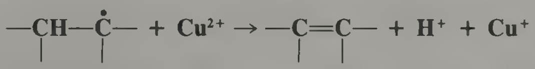
[213] Bacha and Kochi, *Tetrahedron* **24,** 2215 (1968); Ogibin, Katzin, and Nikishin, *Synthesis* 889 (1974).

[214] Sane, Divakar, and Rao, *Synthesis* 541 (1973); McMurry and Blaszczak, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2217 (1974). See also Hertzler, Berdahl, and Eisenbraun, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2008 (1968).

[215] For references, see Trahanovsky, Cramer, and Brixius, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1077 (1974); Kochi, "Organometallic Mechanisms and Catalysis," pp. 99–106, Academic Press, New York, 1978. See also Dessau and Heiba, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3647 (1975); Fristad, Fry, and Klang, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3575 (1983); Barton, Crich, and Motherwell, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 242 (1984).

[216] Kochi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 1811, 3609 (1965); Starnes, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5603 (1964); Davies and Waring, *Chem. Commun.* 263 (1965); Kochi, Bacha, and Bethea, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 6538 (1967); Cantello, Mellor, and Scholes, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 348 (1974); Beckwith, Cross, and Gream, *Aust. J. Chem.* **27,** 1673, 1693 (1974).

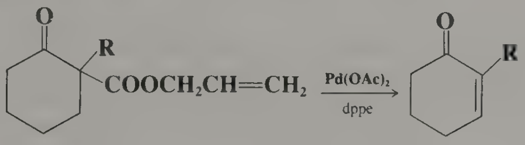
Products can then be formed either from R• or R^+. Primary R• abstract H from solvent molecules to give RH. R^+ can lose H^+ to give an alkene, react with HOAc to give the ester, react with solvent molecules or with another functional group in the same molecule, or rearrange, thus accounting for the large number of possible products. R• can also dimerize to give R—R. The effect of Cu^{2+} ions[217] is to oxidize the radicals to alkenes, thus producing good yields of alkenes



$$-\underset{|}{C}H-\underset{|}{\dot{C}}- + Cu^{2+} \rightarrow -\underset{|}{C}=\underset{|}{C}- + H^+ + Cu^+$$

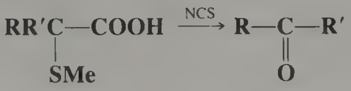
from primary and secondary substrates. Cu^{2+} has no effect on tertiary radicals, because these are efficiently oxidized to alkenes by lead tetraacetate.

Certain allylic β-keto esters (e.g., **23**) can be decarbalkoxylated, with removal of H and COOR, to give α,β-unsaturated ketones, by treatment with palladium(II) acetate and 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane (dppe).[218]



23

In another type of oxidative decarboxylation, α-methylthio carboxylic acids can be decarboxylated to the corresponding ketones with N-chlorosuccinimide (NCS) in an alcohol solvent containing $NaHCO_3$:[219]

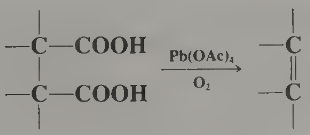


$$RR'\underset{\substack{|\\ SMe}}{C}-COOH \xrightarrow{NCS} R-\underset{\substack{\|\\ O}}{C}-R'$$

In still another type, arylacetic acids can be oxidized to aldehydes with one less carbon ($ArCH_2COOH \rightarrow ArCHO$) by tetrabutylammonium periodate.[220] Simple aliphatic carboxylic acids were converted to nitriles with one less carbon ($RCH_2COOH \rightarrow RC\equiv N$) by treatment with trifluoroacetic anhydride and $NaNO_2$ in F_3CCOOH.[221]

See also **4-39.**

9-14 Bisdecarboxylation
Dicarboxy-elimination



$$\begin{array}{l} -\overset{|}{C}-COOH \\ -\underset{|}{\overset{|}{C}}-COOH \end{array} \xrightarrow[O_2]{Pb(OAc)_4} \begin{array}{l} -\overset{|}{C} \\ \;\;\| \\ -\underset{|}{C} \end{array}$$

---

[217] Bacha and Kochi, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 83 (1968); Kochi and Bacha, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 2746 (1968); Torssell, *Ark. Kemi.* **31,** 401 (1970).

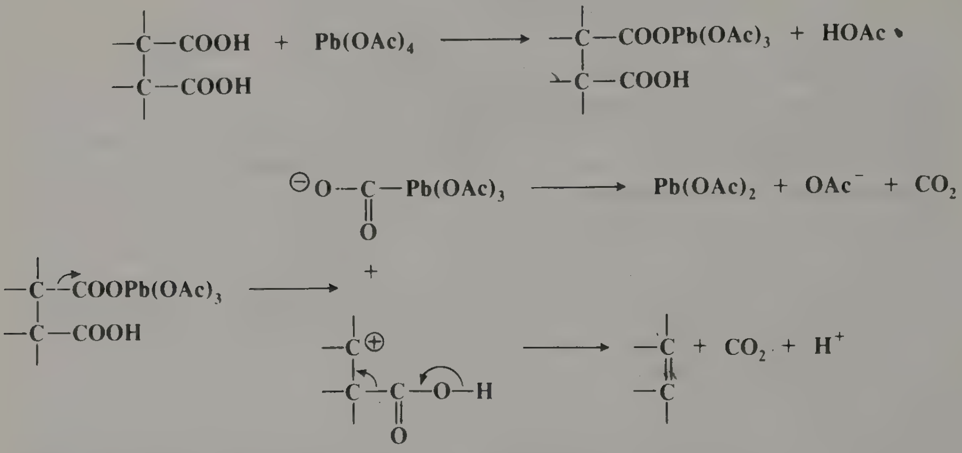
[218] Shimizu and Tsuji, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 5844 (1982).

[219] Trost and Tamaru, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3101 (1977).

[220] Santaniello, Ponti, and Manzocchi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2655 (1980). For other methods of accomplishing this and similar conversions, see Cohen, Song, Fager, and Deets, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 4968 (1967); Wasserman and Lipshutz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4611 (1975); Kaberia and Vickery, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 459 (1978); Doleschall and Tóth, *Tetrahedron* **36,** 1649 (1980).

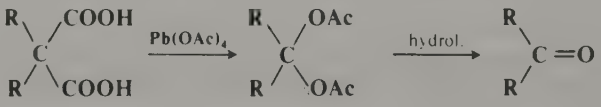
[221] Smushkevich, Usorov, and Suvorov, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **11,** 653 (1975).

Compounds containing carboxyl groups on adjacent carbons (succinic acid derivatives) can be bisdecarboxylated with lead tetraacetate in the presence of O_2.[211] The reaction is of wide scope. The elimination is stereoselective, but not stereospecific (both *meso*- and *dl*-2,3-diphenylsuccinic acid gave *trans*-stilbene);[222] a concerted mechanism is thus unlikely (see Chapter 15). The following mechanism is not inconsistent with the data:



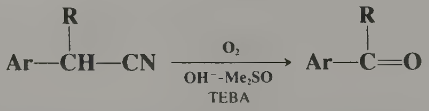
though a free-radical mechanism seems to hold in some cases.

Compounds containing geminal carboxyl groups (disubstituted malonic acid derivatives) can also be bisdecarboxylated with lead tetraacetate, *gem*-diacetates (acylals) being produced, which are easily hydrolyzable to ketones:[223]



Bisdecarboxylation of succinic acid derivatives to give alkenes has also been carried out by treatment of the corresponding anhydrides with nickel, iron, or rhodium complexes,[224] by decomposition of the corresponding bis peresters,[225] and electrolytically.[226]

9-15 Oxidative Decyanation
Oxo-de-hydro,cyano-bisubstitution



$$\mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}H{-}CN} \xrightarrow[\text{OH}^-\text{-Me}_2\text{SO}\ \ \text{TEBA}]{O_2} \mathrm{Ar{-}\overset{R}{\overset{|}{C}}{=}O}$$

α-Substituted aryl nitriles having a sufficiently acidic α-hydrogen can be converted to ketones by oxidation with air under phase transfer conditions. The nitrile is added to NaOH in benzene or

---

[222] Corey and Casanova, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 165 (1963).

[223] Tufariello and Kissel, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6145 (1966).

[224] Trost and Chen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2603 (1971).

[225] Cain, Vukov, and Masamune, *Chem. Commun.* 98 (1969).

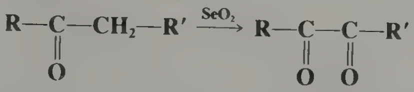
[226] Plieninger and Lehnert, *Chem. Ber.* **100,** 2427 (1967); Radlick, Klem, Spurlock, Sims, van Tamelen, and Whitesides, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5117 (1968); Westberg and Dauben, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5123 (1968).

Me_2SO containing a catalytic amount of triethylbenzylammonium chloride (TEBA).[227] This reaction could not be applied to aliphatic nitriles, but an indirect method for achieving this conversion is given in **9-58.** α,α-Dialkylamino nitriles can be converted to ketones [$R_2C(NMe_2)CN \rightarrow R_2C{=}O$] by hydrolysis with $CuSO_4$ in aqueous methanol.[228]

C. Reactions Involving Replacement of Hydrogen by Oxygen

9-16 Oxidation of Methylene to Carbonyl

Oxo-de-dihydro-bisubstitution[229]



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2-R' \xrightarrow{SeO_2} R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'$$

Methyl or methylene groups α to a carbonyl can be oxidized with selenium dioxide to give, respectively, α-keto aldehydes and α-diketones.[230] The reaction can also be carried out α to an aromatic ring or to a double bond, though in the latter case, hydroxylation (see **4-4**) is the more common result. Although SeO_2 is the reagent most often used, the reaction has also been carried out with N_2O_3 and other oxidizing agents.[231] Substrates most easily oxidized contain two aryl groups on CH_2, and these substrates can be oxidized with many oxidizing agents (see **9-11**). Monoaryl alkanes have been oxidized to alkyl aryl ketones with several oxidizing agents, including CrO_3-acetic acid,[232] ceric ammonium nitrate,[233] benzeneseleninic anhydride PhSe(O)OSe(O)Ph,[234] a silver ion-persulfate couple,[235] and DDQ,[236] as well as with SeO_2. With these substrates the oxidation sometimes takes place on the β-carbon (e.g., $PhCH_2CH_3 \rightarrow PhCH_2CHO$). It has been shown for the case where chromyl chloride is the oxidizing agent that there is initial α oxidation followed by rearrangement.[237] Alkenes of the form $C{=}C{-}CH_2$ have been oxidized to α,β-unsaturated ketones by sodium dichromate in HOAc-Ac_2O, by *t*-butyl chromate in CCl_4-HOAc-Ac_2O,[238] by aqueous Na_2O_2 (α,β-unsaturated alkenes),[239] by *t*-BuOOH and $Cr(CO)_6$,[239a] by CrO_3-pyridine complex,[240] and by mercuric salts.[241] CrO_3-pyridine has also been used to convert alkynes of the form $C{\equiv}C{-}CH_2$ to α-keto acetylenes.[242] Two mechanisms have been suggested for the reaction with SeO_2. One of these involves a selenate ester of the enol:[243]

---

[227] Masuyama, Ueno, and Okawara, *Chem. Lett.* 1439 (1977); Donetti, Boniardi, and Ezhaya, *Synthesis* 1009 (1980); Kulp and McGee, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 4097 (1983).

[228] Büchi, Liang, and Wüest, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2763 (1978).

[229] This name also applies to reactions **9–17, 9–18,** and **9–22.**

[230] For reviews of oxidation by SeO_2, see Krongauz, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **46,** 59–75 (1977); Rabjohn, *Org. React.* **24,** 261–415 (1976); Trachtenberg, in Augustine and Trecker, Ref. 11, pp. 119–187.

[231] For other methods, see Wasserman and Ives, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 7868 (1976); *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3238 (1978); Rao, Stuber, and Ulrich, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 456 (1979).

[232] For example, see Harms and Eisenbraun, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **4,** 67 (1972).

[233] Syper, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4493 (1966).

[234] Barton, Hui, and Ley, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2179 (1982).

[235] Daniher, *Org. Prep. Proced.* **2,** 207 (1970); Bhatt and Perumal, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 2605 (1981).

[236] Lee and Harvey, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 749 (1983).

[237] Wiberg, Marshall, and Foster, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 345 (1962).

[238] Marshall, Ray, Laos, and Riegel, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 6308 (1957); Suga, Sugimoto, Fujita, and Matsuura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **39,** 2546 (1966).

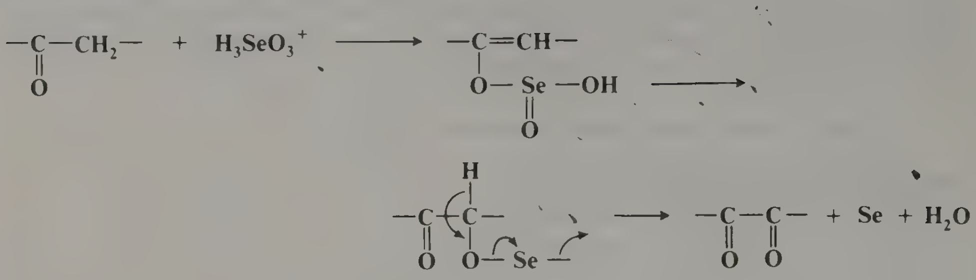
[239] Holland, Daum, and Riemland, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5127 (1981).

[239a] Pearson, Chen, Hsu, and Ray, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **25,** 1235 (1984).

[240] Dauben, Lorber, and Fullerton, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 3587 (1969); Fullerton and Chen, *Synth. Commun.* **6,** 217 (1976).

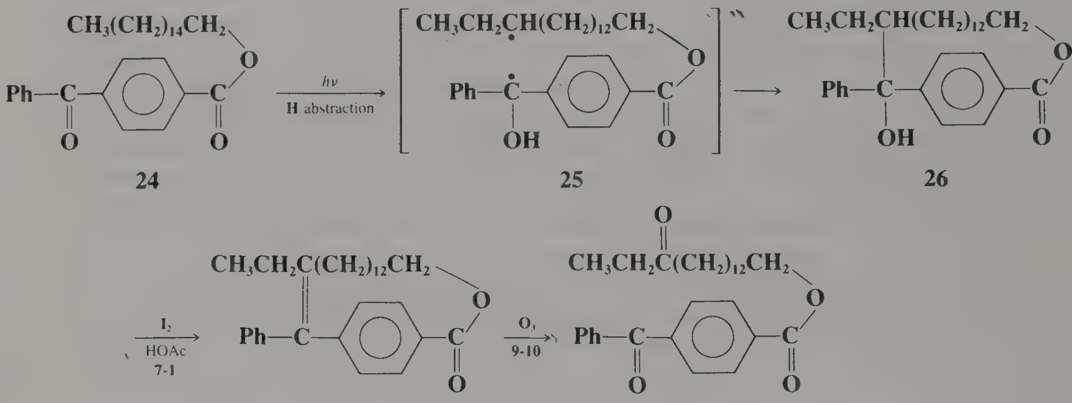
[241] Arzoumanian and Metzger, *Synthesis* 527–536 (1971); Charavel and Metzger, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 4102 (1968).

[242] Shaw and Sherry, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4379 (1971); Sheats, Olli, Stout, Lundeen, Justus, and Nigh, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 4075 (1979).



In the other proposed mechanism,[244] the principal intermediate is a β-ketoseleninic acid $—\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{C}CH\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{Se}OH$, and a selenate ester is not involved.

It has proved possible to convert CH_2 to C=O groups, even if they are not near any functional groups, indirectly, by the remote oxidation method of Breslow[37] (see **9-2**).[245] In a typical example,



24 **25** **26** **27** **28**

the keto ester **24** was irradiated to give the hydroxy lactone **26,** which was dehydrated to **27.** Ozonolysis of **27** gave the diketo ester **28,** in which the C-14 CH_2 group of **24** has been oxidized to a C=O group.[246] The reaction was not completely regioselective: **28** comprised about 60% of the product, with the remainder consisting of other compounds in which the keto group was located at C-12, C-15, and other positions along the carbon chain. When longer chains were used (C_{18}, C_{20}), the reaction was less regioselective, the maximum percentage of any single product being about 20%. The method has also been applied in the steroid series, with greater regioselectivity.[247] Greater regioselectivity was also achieved with flexible chains, when the aromatic portion was connected to the chain at two positions.[248] In the method so far described, the reaction takes place because one portion of a molecule (the benzophenone moiety) abstracts hydrogen from another portion of the same molecule, i.e., the two portions are connected by a series of covalent bonds. However, the reaction can also be carried out where the two reacting centers are actually in different molecules, providing the two molecules are held together by hydrogen bonding. For example, one of the CH_2 groups of *n*-hexadecanol hemisuccinate $CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CH_2OCOCH_2CH_2COOH$ was oxidized to a C═O group by applying the above procedure to a mixture of it and benzophenone-4-carboxylic acid *p*-$PhCOC_6H_4COOH$ in CCl_4.[249]

---

[243] Corey and Schaefer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 918 (1960).

[244] Sharpless and Gordon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 300 (1976).

[245] For another method, see Beckwith and Duong, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 413 (1978).

[246] Breslow and Winnik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3083 (1969); Breslow, Rothbard, Herman, and Rodriguez, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **100,** 1213 (1978). See also Eigendorf, Ma, and Money, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 896 (1979).

[247] Breslow and Baldwin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 732 (1970).

[248] Breslow, Rajagopalan, and Schwarz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 2905 (1981).

OS **I,** 266; **II,** 509; **III,** 1, 420, 438; **IV,** 189, 229, 579; **53,** 8. Also see OS **IV,** 23.

9-17 Oxidation of Arylmethanes

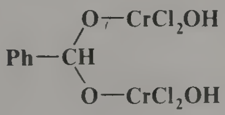
$$\mathbf{ArCH_3 \xrightarrow{CrO_2Cl_2} ArCHO}$$

Methyl groups on an aromatic ring can be oxidized to the aldehyde stage by several oxidizing agents. The reaction is a special case of **9-16.** When the reagent is chromyl chloride (CrO_2Cl_2), the reaction is called the *Étard reaction*[250] and the yields are high.[251] Another oxidizing agent is a mixture of CrO_3 and Ac_2O. In this case the reaction stops at the aldehyde stage because the initial product is $ArCH(OAc)_2$ (an acylal), which is resistant to further oxidation. Hydrolysis of the acylal gives the aldehyde.

Among other oxidizing agents that have been used to accomplish the conversion of $ArCH_3$ to ArCHO are ceric ammonium nitrate,[252] benzeneseleninic anhydride,[234] ceric trifluoroacetate,[253] and silver(II) oxide.[254] Oxidation of $ArCH_3$ to carboxylic acids is considered at **9-11.**

Conversion of $ArCH_3$ to ArCHO can also be achieved indirectly by bromination to give $ArCHBr_2$ (**4-1**), followed by hydrolysis (**0-2**).

The mechanism of the Étard reaction is not completely known.[255] An insoluble complex is formed on addition of the reagents, which is hydrolyzed to the aldehyde. The complex is probably a kind of acylal, but what the structure is is not fully settled, though many proposals have been made as to its structure and as to how it is hydrolyzed. It is known that $ArCH_2Cl$ is not an intermediate (see **9-20**), since it reacts only very slowly with chromyl chloride. Magnetic susceptibility measurements[256] indicate that the complex from toluene is **29,** a structure first proposed by Étard.



29

According to this proposal the reaction stops after only two hydrogens have been replaced because of the insolubility of **29.** There is disagreement on how **29** is formed, assuming that the complex has this structure. Both an ionic[257] and a free-radical[258] process have been proposed:

---

[249] Breslow and Scholl, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2331 (1971). See also Breslow and Heyer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5039 (1983).

[250] The name Étard reaction is often applied to any oxidation with chromyl chloride, e.g., oxidation of glycols (**9–7**), olefins (**9–10**), etc.

[251] For a review, see Hartford and Darrin, *Chem. Rev.* **58,** 1–61 (1958), pp. 25–53.

[252] Trahanovsky and Young, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2033 (1966); Radhakrishna Murti and Pati, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 702 (1967); Ref. 233.

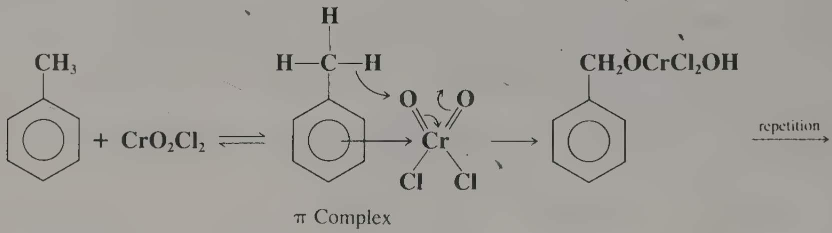
[253] Marrocco and Brilmyer, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1487 (1983).

[254] Syper, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4193 (1967).

[255] For a review, see Nenitzescu, *Bull Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1349–1357 (1968).

[256] Wheeler, *Can J. Chem.* **38,** 2137 (1960). See also Makhija and Stairs, *Can J. Chem.* **46,** 1255 (1968).

Ionic process:



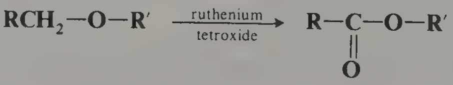
Free-radical process:

$$\mathrm{ArCH_3 + Cl_2CrO_2 \longrightarrow ArCH_2\cdot + HO\dot{C}rOCl_2}$$
$$\mathrm{ArCH_2\cdot + HO\dot{C}rOCl_2 \longrightarrow ArCH_2OCrCl_2OH \xrightarrow{\text{repetition}}}$$

An entirely different structure for the complex was proposed by Nenitzescu and co-workers.[259] On the basis of esr studies they proposed that the complex is $PhCH_2OCrCl_2OCrOCl_2OH$, which is isomeric with **29.** However, this view has been challenged by Wiberg and Eisenthal,[258] who interpret the esr result as being in accord with **29.** Still another proposal is that the complex is composed of benzaldehyde coordinated with reduced chromyl chloride.[260]

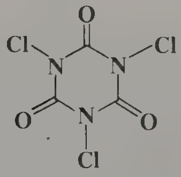
OS **II,** 441; **III,** 641; **IV,** 31, 713.

9-18 Oxidation of Ethers to Esters and Related Reactions

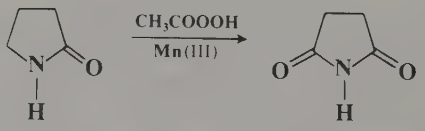


$$\mathrm{RCH_2{-}O{-}R' \xrightarrow[\text{tetroxide}]{\text{ruthenium}} R{-}\underset{\underset{\displaystyle O}{\|}}{C}{-}O{-}R'}$$

Ethers in which at least one group is primary alkyl can be oxidized to the corresponding esters in high yields with ruthenium tetroxide.[261] Cyclic ethers give lactones. The reaction, which is a special case of **9-16,** has also been accomplished with CrO_3 in sulfuric acid,[262] with benzyltriethylammonium permanganate,[263] and with trichloroisocyanuric acid (**30**) in the presence of an excess of water.[264] In a similar reaction, lactams (e.g., **31**) can be converted to cyclic imides by oxidation with a



30



31

---

[257] Stairs, *Can J. Chem.* **42,** 550 (1964).

[258] Wiberg and Eisenthal, *Tetrahedron* **20,** 1151 (1964). See also Gragerov and Ponomarchuk, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 1125 (1969).

[259] Necsoiu, Balaban, Pascaru, Sliam, Elian, and Nenitzescu, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 1133 (1963); Necsoiu, Przemetchi, Ghenciulescu, Rentea, and Nenitzescu, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 3037 (1966).

[260] Duffin and Tucker, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1262 (1966); *Tetrahedron* **24,** 6999 (1968).

[261] Berkowitz and Rylander, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 6682 (1958); Lee and van den Engh, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pt. B, pp. 222–225; Smith and Scarborough, *Synth. Commun.* **10,** 205 (1980); Carlsen, Katsuki, Martin, and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 3936 (1981).

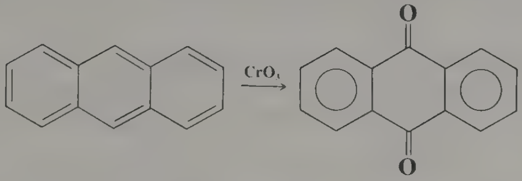
[262] Henbest and Nicholls, *J. Chem. Soc.* 221, 227 (1959); Harrison and Harrison, *Chem. Commun.* 752 (1966).

[263] Schmidt and Schäfer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **18,** 69 (1979) [*Angew. Chem.* **91,** 78].

[264] Juenge and Beal, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5819 (1968); Juenge, Corey, and Beal, *Tetrahedron* **27,** 2671 (1971).

hydroperoxide or peracid and an Mn(II) or Mn(III) salt.[265] Certain tertiary amines containing a methyl group can be oxidized[266] to formamides ($R_2NCH_3 \rightarrow R_2NCHO$) by MnO_2,[267] CrO_3-pyridine,[268] O_2 and platinum,[269] or other oxidizing agents, but the reaction is not general. Primary benzylic amines $ArCH_2NH_2$ can be converted to $ArCONH_2$ by an indirect method.[270]

9-19 Oxidation of Aromatic Hydrocarbons to Quinones



Condensed aromatic systems (including naphthalenes) can be directly oxidized to quinones by various oxidizing agents.[271] Yields are generally not high, though good yields have been reported with ceric ammonium sulfate.[272] Benzene cannot be so oxidized by strong oxidizing agents but can be electrolytically oxidized to benzoquinone.

OS **IV,** 698, 757. Also see OS **II,** 554.

9-20 Oxidation of Primary Halides and Esters of Primary Alcohols to Aldehydes
Oxo-de-hydro,halo-bisubstitution

$$RCH_2Cl \xrightarrow{(CH_3)_2SO} RCHO$$

Primary alkyl halides (chlorides, bromides, and iodides) can be oxidized to aldehydes easily and in good yields with dimethyl sulfoxide.[273] Tosyl esters of primary alcohols can be similarly converted to aldehydes,[274] and epoxides[275] give α-hydroxy ketones or aldehydes.[276] The reaction with tosyl esters is an indirect way of oxidizing primary alcohols to aldehydes (**9-3**). This type of oxidation can also be carried out without isolation of an intermediate ester: The alcohol is treated with dimethyl sulfoxide, dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC),[277] and anhydrous phosphoric acid.[278] In this way a primary alcohol can be converted to the aldehyde with no carboxylic acid being produced.[279]

---

[265] Doumaux, McKeon, and Trecker, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 3992 (1969); Doumaux and Trecker, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2121 (1970).

[266] See also Bettoni, Carbonara, Franchini, and Tortorella, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 4159 (1981); Schmidt and Schäfer, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 109 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 124].

[267] See, for example, Henbest and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc.* 3032 (1957); Henbest and Stratford, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 995 (1966).

[268] Cavé, Kan-Fan, Potier, Le Men, and Janot, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 4691 (1967).

[269] Davis and Rosenblatt, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4085 (1968).

[270] Nishinaga, Shimizu, and Matsuura, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 970 (1979).

[271] For a review, see Thomson, in Patai, Ref. 17, pp. 132–134.

[272] Periasamy and Bhatt, *Synthesis* 330 (1977).

[273] Nace and Monagle, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 1792 (1959); Kornblum, Jones, and Anderson, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 4113 (1959). For reviews, see Durst, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 285–388 (1969), pp. 343–356; Epstein and Sweat, *Chem. Rev.* **67,** 247–260 (1967).

[274] Kornblum, Jones, and Anderson, Ref. 273.

[275] Epoxides can be converted to α-halo ketones by treatment with bromodimethylsulfonium bromide: Olah, Vankar, and Arvanaghi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3653 (1979).

[276] Cohen and Tsuji, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 1681 (1961); Tsuji, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2413 (1966); Santosusso and Swern, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4261 (1968), *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 2764 (1975).

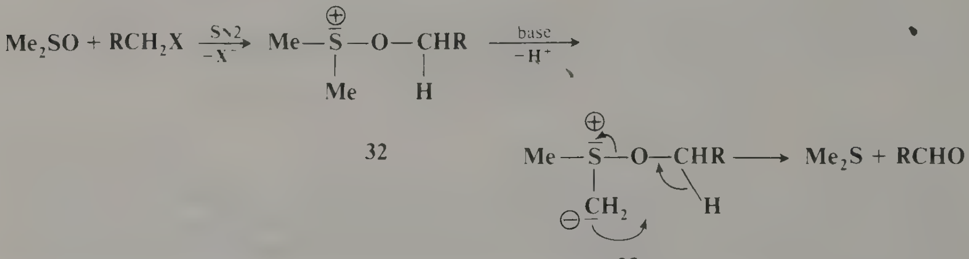
[277] The DCC is converted to dicyclohexylurea, which in some cases is difficult to separate from the product. One way to avoid this problem is to use a carbodiimide linked to an insoluble polymer: Weinshenker and Shen, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3285 (1972).

[278] Pfitzner and Moffatt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5661, 5670 (1965); Fenselau and Moffatt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1762 (1966); Albright and Goldman, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 1107 (1965).

[279] For a review, see Moffatt, in Augustine and Trecker, Ref. 11, vol. 2, pp. 1–64.

Similar oxidation of alcohols has been carried out with dimethyl sulfoxide and other reagents[280] in place of DCC: acetic anhydride,[281] SO_3-pyridine-triethylamine,[282] trifluoroacetic anhydride,[283] chlorosulfonyl isocyanate,[284] oxalyl chloride,[285] molybdenum peroxide,[286] tosyl chloride,[287] chlorine,[288] bromine,[289] $AgBF_4$ and Et_3N,[290] $(CF_3SO_2)_2O$,[291] KI and $NaHCO_3$,[292] and methanesulfonic anhydride,[287] among others.

The mechanism of these dimethyl sulfoxide oxidations is probably as follows:[293]



32

33

though in some cases the base abstracts a proton directly from the carbon being oxidized, in which case the ylide **33** is not an intermediate. Alkoxysulfonium salts **32** have been isolated.[294] This mechanism predicts that secondary compounds should be oxidizable to ketones, and this is the case. In a related procedure for the oxidation of alcohols, the intermediate **32**[295] is formed without the use of dimethyl sulfoxide by treating the substrate with a complex generated from chlorine or N-chlorosuccinimide and dimethyl sulfide.[296]

Another way to oxidize primary alkyl halides to aldehydes is by the use of hexamethylenetetramine followed by water. However, this reaction, called the *Sommelet reaction*,[297] is limited to benzylic halides. The reaction is seldom useful when the R in RCH_2Cl is alkyl. The first part of the reaction is conversion to the amine $ArCH_2NH_2$ (**0-46**), which can be isolated. Reaction of the amine with excess hexamethylenetetramine gives the aldehyde. It is this last step which is the actual Sommelet reaction, though the entire process can be conducted without isolation of intermediates. Once the amine is formed, it is converted to an imine ($ArCH_2N{=}CH_2$) with formaldehyde liberated from the reagent. The key step then follows: transfer of hydrogen from another mole of the arylamine to the imine:

---

[280] For a review of activated Me_2SO reagents and their use in this reaction, see Mancuso and Swern, *Synthesis* 165–185 (1981).

[281] Albright and Goldman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 2416 (1967).

[282] Parikh and Doering, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 5507 (1967).

[283] Huang, Omura, and Swern, *Synthesis* 297 (1978).

[284] Olah, Vankar, and Arvanaghi, *Synthesis* 141 (1980).

[285] Omura and Swern, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 1651 (1978). See also Marx and Tidwell, *J. Org. Chem.* **49,** 788 (1984).

[286] Masuyama, Tsuhako, and Kurusu, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3973 (1981).

[287] Albright, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 1977 (1974).

[288] Corey and Kim, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 919 (1973).

[289] Munavu, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 3341 (1980).

[290] Ganem and Boeckman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 917 (1974).

[291] Hendrickson and Schwartzman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 273 (1975).

[292] Bauer and Macomber, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 1990 (1975).

[293] Pfitzner and Moffatt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **87,** 5661 (1965); Johnson and Phillips, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1926 (1967); Torssell, *Acta Chem. Scand.* **21,** 1 (1967).

[294] Torssell, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4445 (1966); Johnson and Phillips, Ref. 293; Khuddus and Swern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 8393 (1973).

[295] It has been suggested that in the DCC reaction, **32** is not involved, but the ylide **33** is formed directly from a precursor containing DCC and dimethyl sulfoxide: Torssell, Ref. 294; Moffatt, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 1909 (1971).

[296] Vilsmaier and Sprügel, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **747,** 151 (1971); Corey and Kim, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 7586 (1972), *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1233 (1973); McCormick, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1701 (1974); Crosby, Weinshenker, and Uh, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 2232 (1975).

[297] For a review, see Angyal, *Org. React.* **8,** 197 (1954).

$$ArCH_2N{=}CH_2 + ArCH_2NH_2 \longrightarrow ArCH_2NHCH_3 + ArCH{=}NH$$

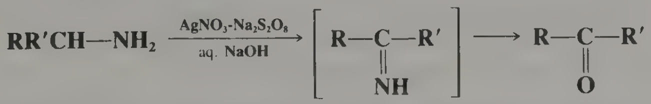
This last imine is then hydrolyzed by water to the aldehyde. Alternatively, the benzylamine may transfer hydrogen directly to hexamethylenetetramine. Primary amines (including alkyl RCH_2NH_2) can also be oxidized to imines (and hence hydrolyzed to aldehydes or ketones) by benzophenone and uv light.[298]

Other reagents that convert benzylic halides to aldehydes are 2-nitropropane-NaOEt in EtOH,[299] mercury(I) nitrate followed by ethanolic alkali,[300] and pyridine followed by *p*-nitrosodimethylaniline and then water. The latter procedure is called the *Kröhnke reaction*. Primary halides in general have been oxidized to aldehydes by trimethylamine oxide $Me_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-\overset{\ominus}{O}$,[301] 4-dimethylaminopyridine-N-oxide,[302] and by K_2CrO_4 in HMPT in the presence of a crown ether.[303] The first of these procedures has also been applied to primary tosylates.[301]

OS **II,** 336; **III,** 811; **IV,** 690, 918, 932; **V,** 242, 668, 825, 852, 872. Also see OS **V,** 689; **56,** 99.

9-21 Oxidation of Amines to Aldehydes, Ketones, or Dihalides

Oxo-de-hydro,amino-bisubstitution (overall transformation)



$$RR'CH{-}NH_2 \xrightarrow[\text{aq. NaOH}]{AgNO_3\text{-}Na_2S_2O_8} \left[\begin{array}{c} R{-}\underset{\underset{NH}{\|}}{C}{-}R' \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R'$$

Primary aliphatic amines can be oxidized to aldehydes or ketones by reaction with Ag(II) prepared in situ by treatment of silver nitrate with sodium persulfate.[304] The reaction consists of dehydrogenation to the imine (**9-5**), followed by hydrolysis. Other reagents that have been used are nitrosobenzene[305] (for benzylamines), 3,5-di-*t*-butyl-1,2-benzoquinone,[306] *p*-nitrobenzenesulfonyl peroxide,[307] diphenylseleninic anhydride,[308] 4-formyl-1-methylpyridinium benzenesulfonate,[309] $PdCl_2$ or $AuCl_3$,[310] and aqueous NaOCl with phase-transfer catalysts.[311] Benzylic amine salts $PhCHRNR_2'H^+\ Cl^-$ (R,R' = H or alkyl) give benzaldehydes or aryl ketones when heated in Me_2SO.[312] Several indirect methods for achieving the conversion $RR'CH{-}NH_2 \rightarrow RR'C{=}O$ (R' = alkyl, aryl, or H) have been reported.[313]

---

[298] Cohen and Baumgarten, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3471 (1967); Cohen and Chao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 165 (1968).

[299] Hass and Bender, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **71,** 1767 (1949).

[300] McKillop and Ford, *Synth. Commun.* **4,** 45 (1974).

[301] Franzen and Otto, *Chem. Ber.* **94,** 1360 (1961).

[302] Mukaiyama, Inanaga, and Yamaguchi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **54,** 2221 (1981).

[303] Cardillo, Orena, and Sandri, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 190 (1976), *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3985 (1976). For a related procedure, see Landini and Rolla, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 213 (1979).

[304] Bacon and Stewart, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1384 (1966). See also Lee and Clarke, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 415 (1967).

[305] Suzuki and Weisburger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5409 (1966), *J. Chem. Soc. C* 199 (1968).

[306] Corey and Achiwa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 1429 (1969).

[307] Hoffman and Cadena, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8226 (1977).

[308] Czarny, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 81 (1976). See also Czarny, *Snyth. Commun.* **6,** 285 (1976).

[309] Buckley and Rapoport, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 4446 (1982).

[310] Kuehne and Hall, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 2742 (1976).

[311] Lee and Freedman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1641 (1976).

[312] Traynelis and Ode, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 2207 (1970). For another method, see Takabe and Yamada, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 959 (1982).

[313] See for example, Dinizo and Watt, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 6900 (1975); Black and Blackman, *Aust. J. Chem.* **28,** 2547 (1975); Curtis, Raheja, Rejowski, Majewski, and Baumgarten, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3107 (1975); Scully and Davis, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1467 (1978); Doleschall, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2131 (1978); Katritzky, Cook, Ikizler, and Millet, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 2500 (1979); Babler and Invergo, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1937 (1981).

Primary, secondary, and tertiary aliphatic amines have been cleaved to give aldehydes, ketones, or carboxylic acids with aqueous bromine[314] and with neutral permanganate.[315] The other product of this reaction is the amine with one less alkyl group. A similar reaction has been performed on α-amino ketones, with mercuric acetate, to give 1,2-dicarbonyl compounds.[316]

In a different type of procedure, primary amines at a primary carbon can be converted to *gem*-dihalides[$RCH_2NH_2 \rightarrow RCHX_2$ (X = Br or Cl)] by treatment with an alkyl nitrite and the anhydrous copper(I) halide.[317]

9-22 Oxidation of Primary Alcohols to Carboxylic Acids

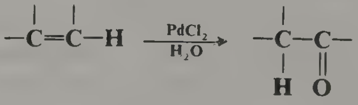
Oxo-de-dihydro-bisubstitution

$$RCH_2OH \xrightarrow{CrO_3} RCOOH$$

Primary alcohols can be oxidized to carboxylic acids by many strong oxidizing agents including chromic acid, permanganate, and nitric acid. The reaction may be looked on as a combination of **9-3** and **4-6.** When acid conditions are used, a considerable amount of ester RCOOR is often isolated, though this is probably not formed by a combination of the acid with unreacted alcohol, but by a combination of intermediate aldehyde with unreacted alcohol to give an acetal or hemiacetal, which is oxidized to the ester.[318] Aldehydes RCHO can be directly converted to carboxylic esters RCOOR′ by treatment with O_3 in the presence of an alcohol.[319] Lactones can be prepared by oxidizing diols in which at least one OH is primary.[320] Primary alkyl ethers can be selectively cleaved to carboxylic acids by aqueous Br_2 ($RCH_2OR' \rightarrow RCOOH$).[98]

OS **I,** 138, 168; **IV,** 499, 677; **V,** 580. Also see OS **III,** 745.

9-23 Oxidation of Olefins to Aldehydes and Ketones



$$-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-H \xrightarrow[H_2O]{PdCl_2} -\underset{H}{\overset{|}{\underset{|}{C}}}-\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}-$$

Monosubstituted and 1,2-disubstituted olefins can be oxidized to aldehydes and ketones by palladium chloride and similar salts of noble metals.[321] 1,1-Disubstituted olefins generally give poor results. The reaction is used industrially to prepare acetaldehyde from ethylene (the *Wacker process*), but it is also suitable for laboratory preparations. The palladium chloride is reduced to palladium.

---

[314] Deno and Friut, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 3502 (1968).

[315] Rawalay and Shechter, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3129 (1967).

[316] Möhrle and Schittenhelm, *Chem. Ber.* **104,** 2475 (1971).

[317] Doyle and Siegfried, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 433 (1976).

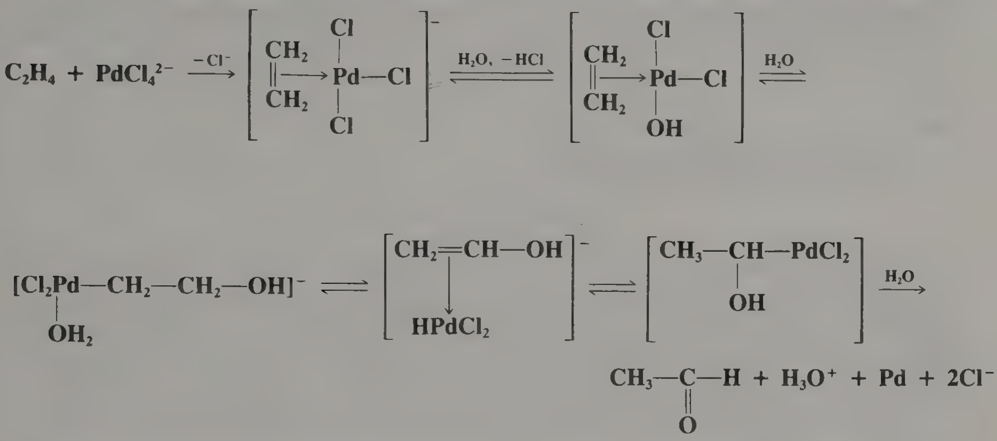
[318] Craig and Horning, *J. Org. Chem.* **25,** 2098 (1960). See also Berthon, Forestiere, Leleu, and Sillion, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4073 (1981); Nwaukwa and Keehn, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 35 (1982).

[319] Sundararaman, Walker, and Djerassi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1627 (1978). For other methods, see Grigg, Mitchell, and Sutthivaiyakit, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 4313 (1981); Massoui, Beaupère, Nadjo, and Uzan, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **259,** 345 (1983).

[320] For examples of the preparation of lactones by oxidation of diols, see Fétizon, Golfier, and Louis, *Chem. Commun.* 1118 (1969), *Tetrahedron* **31,** 171 (1975); Doyle and Bagheri, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4806 (1981); Murahashi, Ito, Naota, and Maeda, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 5327 (1981); Kageyama, Kawahara, Kitamura, Ueno, and Okawara, *Chem. Lett.* 1097 (1983).

[321] For a monograph, see Henry, "Palladium Catalyzed Oxidation of Hydrocarbons," Reidel Publishing Co., Dordrecht, Holland, 1980. For reviews, see Sheldon and Kochi, Ref. 106, pp. 189–193, 299–303; Tsuji, "Organic Synthesis with Palladium Compunds," pp. 6–12, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1980, *Adv. Org. Chem.* **6,** 109–255 1969, pp. 119–131; Henry, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **13,** 363–452 (1975), pp. 378–388; Jira and Freiesleben, *Organomet. Reac.* **3,** 1–190 (1972), pp. 1–44; Khan and Martell, "Homogeneous Catalysis by Metal Complexes," vol. 2, pp. 77–91, Academic Press, New York, 1974; Hüttel, *Synthesis* 225–255 (1970), pp. 225–236; Aguiló, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **5,** 321–352 (1967); Bird, "Transition Metal Intermediates in Organic Synthesis," pp. 88–111, Academic Press, New York, 1967; Smidt, Hafner, Jira, Sieber, Sedlmeier, and Sabel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **1,** 80–88 (1962) [*Angew. Chem.* **74,** 93–102]; Smidt, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 54–61 (1962).

Because the reagent is expensive, the reaction is usually carried out with a cooxidant, most often $CuCl_2$, whose function is to reoxidize the Pd to Pd(II). The $CuCl_2$ is reduced to Cu(I), which itself is reoxidized to Cu(II) by air, so that atmospheric oxygen is the only oxidizing agent actually used up. Many other cooxidants have been tried, among them O_3, Fe^{3+}, and PbO_2. The principal product is an aldehyde only from ethylene: With other olefins Markovnikov's rule is followed, and ketones are formed predominantly. The generally accepted mechanism involves π complexes of palladium.[322]



This mechanism accounts for the fact, established by deuterium labeling, that the four hydrogens of the acetaldehyde all come from the original ethylene and none from the solvent.

Similar reactions have been carried out with other oxidizing agents. An example involving migration of an alkyl group instead of hydrogen is oxidation of $Me_2C{=}CMe_2$ with peroxytrifluoroacetic acid-boron trifluoride to give Me_3COMe (pinacolone).[323] This reaction consists of epoxidation (**5-37**) followed by pinacol rearrangement of the epoxide (**8-2**). Other reagents used have been chromyl chloride[324] (e.g., $Me_3CCH_2CMe{=}CH_2 \rightarrow Me_3CCH_2CHMeCHO$), $Pb(OAc)_4$-F_3CCOOH[325] (e.g., $PhCH{=}CH_2 \rightarrow PhCH_2CHO$), thallium(III) nitrate-methanol[326] (e.g., cyclohexene → cyclopentanecarboxaldehyde), Cl_2 or Br_2 and $AgNO_3$,[327] disiamylborane followed by pyridinium chlorochromate,[328] H_2O_2 and a Pd catalyst,[329] O_2 and a catalyst,[330] CrO_3-H_2SO_4-Hg(II) salts,[331] $HgSO_4$-H_2O,[332] and $Hg(OAc)_2$ followed by $PdCl_2$.[333]

[322] Henry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1595 (1966), **94,** 4437 (1972); Jira, Sedlmeier, and Smidt, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **693,** 99 (1966); Hosokawa and Maitlis, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4924 (1973); Moiseev, Levanda, and Vargaftik, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 1003 (1974); Bäckvall, Åkermark, and Ljunggren, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 264 (1977), *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 2411 (1979); Gragor and Henry, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **103,** 681 (1981). See also Hamilton, Mitchell, and Rooney, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 456 (1981).

[323] Hart and Lerner, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2669 (1967).

[324] Freeman, Cameron, and DuBois, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 3970 (1968); Freeman and Arledge, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2656 (1972). See also Sharpless, Teranishi, and Bäckvall, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 3120 (1977).

[325] Lethbridge, Norman, and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 35 (1973).

[326] McKillop, Hunt, Kienzle, Bigham, and Taylor, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3635 (1973). See also Grant, Liau, and Low, *Aust. J. Chem.* **28,** 903 (1975).

[327] Kakis, Brase, and Oshima, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 4117 (1971).

[328] Brown, Kulkarni, and Rao, *Synthesis* 151 (1980).

[329] Roussel and Mimoun, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5387 (1980).

[330] Zombeck, Hamilton, and Drago, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **104,** 6782 (1982); Januszkiewicz and Alper, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5159, 5163 (1983).

[331] Rogers, McDermott, and Whitesides, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3577 (1975).

[332] Arzoumanian, Aune, Guitard, and Metzger, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 3445 (1974).

[333] Rodeheaver and Hunt, *Chem. Commun.* 818 (1971). See also Hunt and Rodeheaver, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3595 (1972).

Alkenes have also been converted to more-highly-oxidized products. Examples are: (1) treatment with $KMnO_4$ in aqueous acetone containing acetic acid gives α-hydroxy ketones.[334] (2) 1,2-Disubstituted and trisubstituted alkenes give α-chloro ketones when oxidized with chromyl chloride in acetone: $RCH{=}CR'R'' \rightarrow RCOCClR'R''$.[335] (3) $KMnO_4$ in acetic anhydride oxidizes large-ring cycloalkenes to 1,2-diketones.[336]

Enol ethers are oxidized to esters ($RCH{=}CHOR' \rightarrow RCH_2COOR'$) with pyridinium chlorochromate.[337] Carboxylic acids can be prepared from terminal alkynes ($RC{\equiv}CH \rightarrow RCH_2COOH$) by conversion of the alkyne to its thiophenyl ether $RC{\equiv}CSPh$ and treatment of this with $HgSO_4$ in $HOAc\text{-}H_2SO_4$.[338]

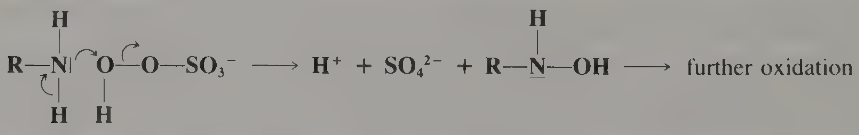
OS **51,** 4.

9-24 Oxidation of Amines to Nitroso Compounds

***N*-Oxo-de-dihydro-bisubstitution**

$$ArNH_2 \xrightarrow{H_2SO_5} Ar{-}N{=}O$$

Primary aromatic amines can be oxidized[339] to nitroso compounds. Most often the conversion is accomplished by Caro's acid (H_2SO_5) or with H_2O_2 in HOAc.[340] Hydroxylamines, which are probably intermediates in most cases, can sometimes be isolated, but under the reaction conditions they are generally oxidized to the nitroso compounds. Primary aliphatic amines can be oxidized in this manner, but the nitroso compound is stable only if there is no α-hydrogen. If there is an α-hydrogen, the compound tautomerizes to the oxime.[341] The mechanism with H_2SO_5 has been postulated to be an example of category 5 (p. 1050).[342]



$$R{-}\underset{H}{\overset{H}{N}}{-}\underset{H}{O}{-}O{-}SO_3^- \longrightarrow H^+ + SO_4^{2-} + R{-}\overset{H}{N}{-}OH \longrightarrow \text{further oxidation}$$

Secondary amines are oxidized to hydroxylamines (which are resistant to further oxidation) by benzoyl peroxide and Na_2HPO_4.[343]

OS **III,** 334.

9-25 Oxidation of Primary Amines, Oximes, or Nitroso Compounds to Nitro Compounds

$$R_3CNH_2 \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} R_3CNO_2$$

$$R_2C{=}NOH \xrightarrow{F_3CCOOOH} R_2CHNO_2$$

---

[334] Srinivasan and Lee, *Synthesis* 520 (1979). See also Tolstikov, Dzhemilev, and Yur'ev, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **8,** 1204 (1972).

[335] Sharpless and Teranishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 185 (1973). See also Cardillo and Shimizu, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 4268 (1978); D'Ascoli, D'Auria, Nucciarelli, Piancatelli, and Scettri, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4521 (1980); Kageyama, Tobito, Katoh, Ueno, and Okawara, *Chem. Lett.* 1481 (1983).

[336] Sharpless, Lauer, Repič, Teranishi, and Williams, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 3303 (1971); Jensen and Sharpless, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2314 (1974). See also Haynes, Redmore, and Timmons, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2420 (1963).

[337] Piancatelli, Scettri, and D'Auria, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3483 (1977).

[338] Abrams, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 2423 (1983).

[339] For reviews on the oxidation of amines, see Rosenblatt and Burrows, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement F," pt. 2, pp. 1085–1149, Wiley, New York, 1982; Challis and Butler, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Amino Group," pp. 320–338. Interscience, New York, 1968. For reviews confined to primary aromatic amines, see Hedayatullah, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2957 (1972): Surville, Jozefowicz, and Buvet, *Ann. Chem. (Paris)* [14] **2,** 149–157 (1967).

[340] Holmes and Bayer, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3454 (1960). See also Gorrod, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 6155 (1968).

[341] For example, see Kahr and Berther, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 132 (1960).

[342] Gragerov and Levit, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **30,** 3690 (1961).

[343] Biloski and Ganem, *Synthesis* 537 (1983).

Primary amines at a tertiary carbon can be oxidized to nitro compounds in excellent yields with $KMnO_4$.[344] This type of nitro compound is not easily prepared in other ways. Primary, secondary, and tertiary alkyl primary amines can be oxidized to the corresponding nitro compounds in good yields with dry ozone.[345] Primary and secondary alkylamines and primary aromatic amines[346] can be oxidized to nitro compounds with various peracids, including peracetic, peroxytrifluoroacetic, and *m*-chloroperbenzoic acids. Primary aromatic amines have also been oxidized to nitro compounds with *t*-butyl hydroperoxide in the presence of certain molybdenum and vanadium compounds,[347] and with sodium perborate.[348] Oximes can be oxidized to nitro compounds with peroxytrifluoroacetic acid, among other ways.[344] Aromatic nitroso compounds are easily oxidized to nitro compounds by many oxidizing agents.[349]

OS **III,** 334; **V,** 367, 845; **52,** 77.

9-26 Oxidation of Mercaptans and Other Sulfur Compounds to Sulfonic Acids

$$\mathbf{RSH} \xrightarrow{HNO_3} \mathbf{RSO_3H}$$

Mercaptans, sulfoxides, sulfones, disulfides,[350] and other sulfur compounds can be oxidized to sulfonic acids with many oxidizing agents, though for synthetic purposes the reaction is most important for mercaptans.[351] Among oxidizing agents used are boiling nitric acid and barium permanganate. Autoxidation (oxidation by atmospheric oxygen) can be accomplished in basic solution.[352] Aliphatic mercaptans can be oxidized to sulfinic acids with *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid in CH_2Cl_2.[353] Mercaptans can also be oxidized to disulfides (**9-36**).

OS **II,** 471; **III,** 226. Also see OS **V,** 1070.

9-27 Oxidation of Mercaptans and Other Sulfur Compounds to Sulfonyl Halides

$$\mathbf{RSH + Cl_2} \xrightarrow{H_2O} \mathbf{RSO_2Cl}$$

Oxidation of mercaptans with chlorine and water gives sulfonyl chlorides directly.[354] Among other sulfur compounds that give the same reaction are sulfides, disulfides, thiocyanates, thioacetates RSCOMe, Bunte salts (see **0-41**), and isothiuronium salts (see **0-37**). The method has also been used for the preparation of sulfonyl bromides, fluorides, and iodides. R may be primary or secondary alkyl or aryl, but not tertiary alkyl.

---

[344] Larson, in Feuer, "The Chemistry of the Nitro and Nitroso Groups," vol. 1, pp. 306–310, Interscience, New York, 1969; Kornblum, *Org. React.* **12,** 101–156 (1962), pp. 115–120. See also Barnes and Patterson, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 733 (1976). For a review of oxidations of nitrogen compounds, see Boyer, *Chem. Rev.* **80,** 495–561 (1980).

[345] Keinan and Mazur, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 844 (1977); Bachman and Strawn, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 313 (1968).

[346] Emmons, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5528 (1957); Gilbert and Borden, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 659 (1979).

[347] Howe and Hiatt, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 4007 (1970). See also Nielsen, Atkins, Norris, Coon, and Sitzmann, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 2341 (1980).

[348] McKillop and Tarbin, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1505 (1983).

[349] See Boyer, in Feuer, Ref. 344, pp. 264–265.

[350] For a review of the oxidation of disulfides, see Savige and Maclaren, in Kharasch and Meyers, "Organic Sulfur Compounds," vol. 2, pp. 367–402, Pergamon, New York, 1966.

[351] For a general review of the oxidation of mercaptans, see Capozzi and Modena, in Patai, "The Chemistry of the Thiol Group," pt. 2, pp. 785–839, Wiley, New York, 1974. For a review specifically on the oxidation to sulfonic acids, see Gilbert, "Sulfonation and Related Reactions," pp. 217–239, Interscience, New York, 1965.

[352] Wallace and Schriesheim, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 2271 (1965).

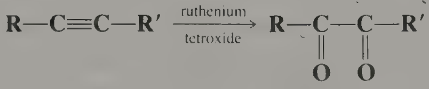
[353] Filby, Günther, and Penzhorn, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 4070 (1973). See also Oae, Takata, and Kim, *Tetrahedron* **37,** 37 (1981).

[354] For a review, see Gilbert, Ref. 351, pp. 202–214.

D. Reactions in Which Oxygen is Added to the Substrate

9-28 The Oxidation of Alkynes to α-Diketones

Dioxo-biaddition



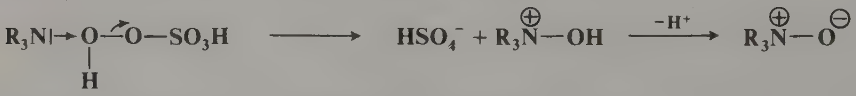
$$R-C\equiv C-R' \xrightarrow[\text{tetroxide}]{\text{ruthenium}} R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R'$$

Internal alkynes have been oxidized[354a] to α-diketones by several oxidizing agents, including ruthenium tetroxide,[355] neutral $KMnO_4$,[356] SeO_2 with a small amount of H_2SO_4,[357] N-bromosuccinimide in anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide,[358] iodosylbenzene and a ruthenium complex catalyst,[359] and thallium(III) nitrate.[197] Ozone generally oxidizes triple-bond compounds to carboxylic acids (**9-9**), but α-diketones are sometimes obtained instead. SeO_2 with a small amount of H_2SO_4 oxidizes arylacetylenes to α-keto acids ($ArC\equiv CH \rightarrow ArCOCOOH$).[357]

9-29 Oxidation of Tertiary Amines to Amine Oxides

$$R_3N \xrightarrow{H_2O_2} R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-\overset{\ominus}{O}$$

Tertiary amines can be converted to amine oxides by oxidation. Hydrogen peroxide is often used, but peracids are also important reagents for this purpose. Pyridine and its derivatives are oxidized only by peracids.[360] In the attack by hydrogen peroxide there is first formed a trialkylammonium peroxide, a hydrogen-bonded complex represented as $R_3N{\cdot}H_2O_2$, which can be isolated.[361] The decomposition of this complex probably involves an attack by the OH^+ moiety of the H_2O_2. Oxidation with Caro's acid has been shown to proceed in this manner:[362]

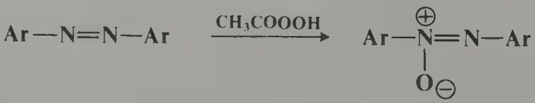


$$R_3N| \rightarrow \underset{\underset{H}{|}}{O}-O-SO_3H \longrightarrow HSO_4^- + R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-OH \xrightarrow{-H^+} R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-O^{\ominus}$$

This mechanism is the same as that of **9-24**; the products differ only because tertiary amine oxides cannot be further oxidized. The mechanism with other peracids is probably the same. The reaction has also been carried out with hydroperoxides in the presence of V or Mn complexes.[363]

OS **IV**, 612, 704, 828; **50**, 56; **58**, 43.

9-30 Oxidation of Azobenzenes to Azoxybenzenes



$$Ar-N=N-Ar \xrightarrow{CH_3COOOH} Ar-\underset{\underset{O^{\ominus}}{|}}{\overset{\oplus}{N}}=N-Ar$$

[354a] For a review of oxidations of triple bonds, see Simándi, in Patai and Rappoport, "The Chemistry of Functional Groups, Supplement C," pt. 1, pp. 513–570, 1982.

[355] Gopal and Gordon, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2941 (1971).

[356] Khan and Newman, *J. Org. Chem.* **17,** 1063 (1952); Srinivasan and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 1574 (1979); Lee and Chang, *Synthesis* 462 (1978), *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2726 (1979).

[357] Sonoda, Yamamoto, Murai, and Tsutsumi, *Chem. Lett.* 229 (1972).

[358] Wolfe, Pilgrim, Garrard, and Chamberlain, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 1099 (1971).

[359] Müller and Godoy, *Helv. Chem. Acta* **64,** 2531 (1981), *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3661 (1982). See also Merkushev, Karpitskaya, and Novosel'tseva, *Doklad. Chem.* **245,** 140 (1979).

[360] For a review, see Katritzky and Lagowski, "Chemistry of the Heterocyclic N-Oxides," pp. 21–72, 539–542, Academic Press, New York, 1971.

[361] Oswald and Guertin, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 651 (1963).

[362] Ogata and Tabushi, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **31,** 969 (1958).

[363] Kuhnen, *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 3384 (1966); Sheng and Zajacek, *J. Org. Chem.* **33,** 588 (1968).

Azo compounds can be oxidized to azoxy compounds by peracids[364] or by hydroperoxides and molybdenum complexes.[365] The mechanism is probably the same as that of **9-29.**[366]

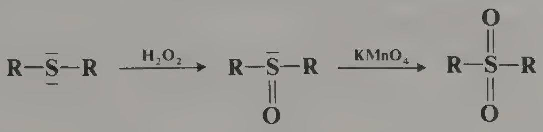
9-31 Oxidation of Isonitriles to Isocyanates

$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}{\equiv}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Me_2SO}]{\mathrm{Cl_2}} \mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}O}$$

Isonitriles have been oxidized to isocyanates with HgO and with O_3, as well as with a halogen and dimethyl sulfoxide (or pyridine N-oxide).[366a] In the latter case the oxidizing agent is the halogen, which converts the isonitrile to $R{-}N{=}CCl_2$ which is hydrolyzed to the isocyanate.[367] Isonitriles can also be oxidized by nitrile oxides, which are thus reduced to nitriles:[368] $\mathrm{Ar{-}C{\equiv}\overset{\oplus}{N}{-}\bar{\underline{O}}|^{\ominus}} + \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\oplus}{N}{\equiv}\bar{C}^{\ominus}} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ar{-}C{\equiv}N} + \mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}O}$. Cyanide ion has been oxidized to cyanate ion with many oxidizing agents. When isonitriles are oxidized by thallium(III) nitrate in the presence of methanol, carbamates are formed, by reaction of the initially formed isocyanate with the methanol (**6-8**).[369]

Isonitriles can be converted to isothiocyanates (RNC → RNCS) by treatment with a disulfide such as PhCOSSCOPh and thallium(I) acetate or lead(II) acetate.[370]

9-32 Oxidation of Sulfides to Sulfoxides and Sulfones



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underline{\bar{S}}{-}R} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O_2}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{\bar{S}}{-}R} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KMnO_4}} \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\overset{O}{\|}}{\underset{\overset{\|}{O}}{S}}{-}R}$$

Sulfides can be oxidized to sulfoxides by 1 mole of 30% H_2O_2 or by many other oxidizing agents,[371] including $NaIO_4$,[372] *t*-BuOCl,[373] acyl nitrites,[374] sodium perborate,[348] and peracids.[375] Sulfoxides can be further oxidized to sulfones by another mole of H_2O_2, $KMnO_4$, sodium perborate, potassium hydrogen persulfate $KHSO_5$,[376] or a number of other agents. If enough oxidizing agent is present, sulfides can be directly converted to sulfones without isolation of the sulfoxides. These reactions give high yields, and many functional groups do not interfere.[377] Selenides R_2Se can be oxidized to selenoxides and selenones.[378]

---

[364] For reviews, see Yandovskii, Gidaspov, and Tselinskii, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **50,** 164–179 (1981); Newbold, Ref. 121, pp. 557–563, 573–593.

[365] Johnson and Gould, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 407 (1974).

[366] Mitsuhashi, Simamura, and Tezuka, *Chem. Commun.* 1300 (1970).

[366a] For a review, see Ref. 355a, pp. 559–562.

[367] Johnson and Daughhetee, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 246 (1964); Johnson and Krutzsch, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1939 (1967).

[368] Vita-Finzi and Arbasino, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4645 (1965); Alpoim, Barrett, Barton, and Hiberty, *Nouveau J. Chim.* **4,** 127 (1980).

[369] Kienzle, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1771 (1972). See also Sawai and Takizawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4263 (1972).

[370] Tanaka, Uemura, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 2785 (1977).

[371] For a review, see Block, in Patai, "Supplement E," Ref. 42, pt. 1, pp. 539–608. For reviews on methods of synthesis of sulfoxides, see Drabowicz and Mikołajczyk, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **14,** 45–89 (1982); Oae, in Oae, "The Chemistry of Sulfur," pp. 385–390, Plenum, New York, 1977.

[372] Leonard and Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 282 (1962); Hiskey and Harpold, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3191 (1967).

[373] Walling and Mintz, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1286 (1967); Skattebøl, Boulette, and Solomon, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3111 (1967).

[374] Louw, Vermeeren, van Asten, and Ultée, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 496 (1976).

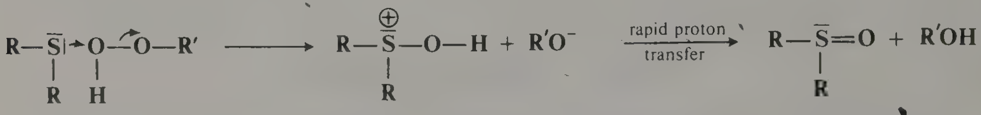
[375] For lists of some of the many oxidizing agents used in this reaction, see Ref. 371 and Block, "Reactions of Organosulfur Compounds," p. 16, Academic Press, New York, 1978.

[376] Trost and Curran, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 1287 (1981).

[377] For a review of the oxidation of α-halo sulfides, see Venier and Barager, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **6,** 77–102 (1974), pp. 85–86.

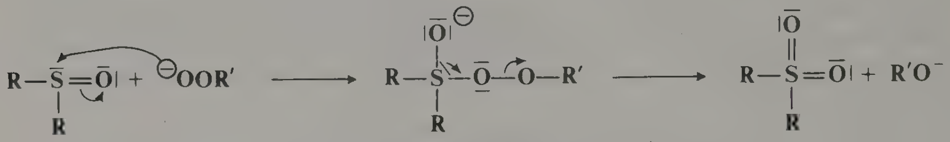
[378] See Reich, in Trahanovsky, Ref. 2, pt. C, pp. 7–13; Davis, Stringer, and Billmers, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 1213 (1983).

When the oxidizing agent is a peroxide, the mechanism[379] of oxidation to the sulfoxide is similar to that of **9-29.**[380]



$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{R}{\underset{|}{\bar{S}}}{-}\underset{H}{\underset{|}{O}}{-}O{-}R'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{\oplus}{\underset{R}{\underset{|}{\bar{S}}}}{-}O{-}H + R'O^-} \xrightarrow[\text{transfer}]{\text{rapid proton}} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{R}{\underset{|}{\bar{S}}}{=}O + R'OH}$$

The second oxidation, which is normally slower than the first[381] (which is why sulfoxides are so easily isolable), has the same mechanism in neutral or acid solution, but in basic solution it has been shown that the conjugate base of the peroxy compound ($R'OO^-$) also attacks the SO group as a nucleophile:[382]

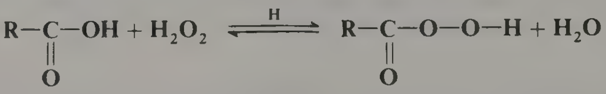


$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{R}{\underset{|}{\bar{S}}}{=}\bar{O}| + {}^{\ominus}OOR'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{|\bar{O}|^{\ominus}}{\overset{|}{\underset{R}{\underset{|}{S}}}}{-}\bar{O}{-}O{-}R'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\overset{|\bar{O}}{\overset{\|}{\underset{R}{\underset{|}{S}}}}{=}\bar{O}| + R'O^-}$$

OS **V,** 791; **50,** 31, 33; **57,** 53. Also see OS **V,** 723; **59,** 58.

9-33 Oxidation of Carboxylic Acids to Peroxy Acids

Peroxy-de-hydroxy-substitution

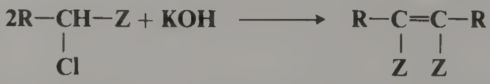


$$\mathrm{R{-}\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}OH + H_2O_2} \overset{H}{\rightleftharpoons} \mathrm{R{-}\underset{O}{\underset{\|}{C}}{-}O{-}O{-}H + H_2O}$$

The oxidation of carboxylic acids with H_2O_2 and an acid catalyst is the best general method for the preparation of peroxy acids.[383] The most common catalyst for aliphatic R is concentrated sulfuric acid. The reaction is an equilibrium and is driven to the right by removal of water or by the use of excess reagents. For aromatic R the best catalyst is methanesulfonic acid, which is also used as the solvent.

E. Oxidative Coupling

9-34 Coupling Involving Carbanions



$$\mathrm{2R{-}\underset{Cl}{\underset{|}{CH}}{-}Z + KOH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R{-}\underset{Z}{\underset{|}{C}}{=}\underset{Z}{\underset{|}{C}}{-}R}$$

---

[379] For a discussion of the mechanism with various other agents, see Srinivasan, Chellamani, and Kuthalingam, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 428 (1982).

[380] Modena and Todesco, *J. Chem. Soc.* 4920 (1962), and references cited therein. For a review, see Barnard, Bateman, and Cunneen, in Kharasch, "Organic Sulfur Compounds," vol. 1, pp. 229–247, Pergamon, New York, 1961.

[381] There are some reagents that oxidize sulfones in preference to sulfoxides, e.g., $NaMnO_4$: see Henbest and Khan, *Chem. Commun.* 1036 (1968).

[382] Curci and Modena, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1749 (1963), *Tetrahedron* **22,** 1227 (1966); Curci, DiFuria, and Modena, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 603 (1978). See also Ogata and Suyama, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 707 (1971), *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 755 (1973); Oae and Takata, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 3213 (1980); Akasaka and Ando, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 1203 (1983).

[383] For a review of the preparation of peroxy acids, see Swern, in Swern, "Organic Peroxides," vol. 1, pp. 313–516, Interscience, New York, 1970.

Alkyl halides with an electron-withdrawing group on the halogen-bearing carbon can be dimerized to olefins by treatment with bases. Z may be nitro, aryl, etc. Although carbene intermediates have sometimes been suggested, it is likely that in most cases the mechanism[384] involves nucleophilic substitution followed by elimination[385] (illustrated for benzyl chloride):

$$\mathrm{PhCH_2Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{base}} \mathrm{Ph\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}HCl} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{S_N}]{\mathrm{PhCH_2Cl}} \mathrm{PhCHClCH_2Ph} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{HCl}} \mathrm{PhCH{=}CHPh}$$

α,α-Dibromotoluenes $ArCHBr_2$ give tolanes $ArC{\equiv}CAr$, by debromination of the intermediates $ArCBr{=}CBrAr$.[386] In a related reaction, diarylmethane dihalides Ar_2CX_2 have been dimerized to tetraaryl alkenes $Ar_2C{=}CAr_2$ with sodium selenide,[387] with copper,[388] and with iron pentacarbonyl.[389] Aryl diazomethanes $ArCHN_2$ are oxidized to $ArCH{=}CHAr$ by ceric ammonium nitrate.[390]

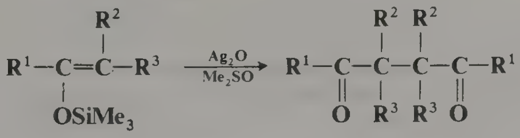
A somewhat different type of coupling is observed when salts of β-keto esters, arylacetonitriles $ArCH_2CN$, and other compounds of the form ZCH_2Z' are treated with an oxidizing agent such as iodine,[391] PbO_2,[392] Ag_2O,[393] Cu(II) salts,[394] or a Cu-amine-O_2 system,[395] e.g.,

$$\mathrm{Ar_2CH_2} \xrightarrow[\text{liq. NH}_3]{\mathrm{NaNH_2}} \mathrm{Ar\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}H} + \mathrm{I_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ar_2CH{-}CHAr_2}$$

In this case the product is a substituted alkane rather than an alkene. This reaction has been used to close rings.[396] The reaction with I_2 has been applied to enolates of monoesters to give succinic esters.[397]

OS **II,** 273; **IV,** 372, 869, 914. Also see OS **I,** 46; **IV,** 877.

9-35 Dimerization of Silyl Enol Ethers or of Lithium Enolates



$$\mathrm{R^1{-}C(OSiMe_3){=}C(R^2){-}R^3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{Me_2SO}]{\mathrm{Ag_2O}} \mathrm{R^1{-}C({=}O){-}C(R^2)(R^3){-}C(R^2)(R^3){-}C({=}O){-}R^1}$$

34

Silyl enol ethers can be dimerized to symmetrical 1,4-diketones by treatment with Ag_2O in dimethyl sulfoxide or certain other polar aprotic solvents.[398] The reaction has been performed with R^2, R^3 = hydrogen or alkyl, though best yields are obtained when $R^2 = R^3 = H$. In certain cases, unsymmetrical 1,4-diketones have been prepared by using a mixture of two silyl enol ethers. If R^1 = OR (in which case the substrate is a ketene silyl acetal), dimerization with $TiCl_4$ leads to a dialkyl succinate (**34,** R^1 = OR).[399]

---

[384] For discussion, see Saunders and Cockerill, "Mechanisms of Elimination Reactions," pp. 548–554, Wiley, New York, 1973.

[385] For example, see Hauser, Brasen, Skell, Kantor, and Brodhag, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **78,** 1653 (1956); Hoeg and Lusk, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **5,** 1 (1966); Reisdorf and Normant, *Organomet. Chem. Synth.* **1,** 375 (1972); Hanna and Wideman, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 486 (1968). In some cases a radical anion chain mechanism may take place: Bethell and Bird, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 1856 (1977).

[386] Vernigor, Shalaev, and Luk'yanets, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **17,** 317 (1981).

[387] Okamoto and Yano, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1492 (1969).

[388] Buckles and Matlack, *Org. Synth.* **IV,** 914.

[389] Coffey, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 1623 (1961).

[390] Trahanovsky, Robbins, and Smick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2086 (1971).

[391] See, for example, Kaiser, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **89,** 3659 (1967).

[392] Brettle and Seddon, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1320 (1970).

[393] Ito, Fujii, Konoike, and Saegusa, *Synth. Commun.* **6,** 429 (1976).

[394] Rathke and Lindert, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 4605 (1971).

[395] de Jongh, de Jonge, and Mijs, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3160 (1971).

[396] Chung and Dunn, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1125 (1983).

[397] Brocksom, Petragnani, Rodrigues, and Teixeira, *Synthesis* 396 (1975).

[398] Ito, Konoike, and Saegusa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **97,** 649 (1975).

In a similar reaction, lithium enolates RC(Li)=CH_2 were dimerized to 1,4-diketones $RCOCH_2CH_2COR$ with $CuCl_2$, $FeCl_3$, or copper(II) triflate, in a nonprotic solvent.[400]

9-36 Oxidation of Mercaptans to Disulfides

$$2RSH \xrightarrow{H_2O_2} RSSR$$

Mercaptans are easily oxidized to disulfides.[401] Hydrogen peroxide is the most common reagent, but many oxidizing agents give the reaction, among them thallium(III) acetate,[402] Me_2SO-I_2,[403] Br_2 under phase transfer conditions,[404] NO,[405] and NO_2.[405] However, strong oxidizing agents may give **9-26.** Even the oxygen in the air oxidizes mercaptans on standing, if a small amount of base is present. The reaction is reversible (see **9-62**), and the interconversion between cysteine and cystine is an important one in biochemistry.

The mechanism has been studied for several oxidizing agents and varies with the agent.[406] For oxygen it is[407]

$$\begin{array}{rcl} RSH + B^- & \rightleftharpoons & RS^- + BH \\ RS^- + O_2 & \longrightarrow & RS\cdot + \dot{O}_2{}^- \\ RS^- + \dot{O}_2{}^- & \longrightarrow & RS\cdot + O_2{}^{2-} \\ 2RS\cdot & \longrightarrow & RSSR \\ O_2{}^{2-} + BH & \longrightarrow & OH^- + B^- + O_2 \end{array}$$

With respect to the sulfur, this mechanism is similar to that of **4-15,** involving as it does loss of a proton, oxidation to a free radical, and radical coupling.

Unsymmetrical disulfides can be prepared[408] by treatment of a mercaptan RSH with diethyl azodicarboxylate EtOOCN=NCOOEt to give an adduct, to which another mercaptan R′SH is then added, producing the disulfide RSSR′.[409]

OS **III,** 86, 116.

9-37 Oxidation of Amines to Azo or Azoxy Compounds

$$ArNH_2 \xrightarrow{MnO_2} Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Ar$$

Primary aromatic amines have been oxidized to azo compounds by a variety of oxidizing agents, among them MnO_2, lead tetraacetate, O_2 and a base, barium permanganate,[410] and sodium perborate in acetic acid. *t*-Butyl hydroperoxide has been used to oxidize certain primary amines to azoxy compounds.[411]

---

[399] Inaba and Ojima, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2009 (1977).

[400] Ito, Konoike, Harada, and Saegusa, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 1487 (1977); Kobayashi, Taguchi, and Tokuno, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3741 (1977); Frazier and Harlow, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 5408 (1980).

[401] For a review, see Capozzi and Modena, Ref. 351, pp. 785–839. For a list of reagents, with references, see Block, Ref. 375.

[402] Uemura, Tanaka, and Okano, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **50,** 220 (1977).

[403] Aida, Akasaka, Furukawa, and Oae, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 1441 (1976).

[404] Drabowicz and Mikołajczyk, *Synthesis* 32 (1980).

[405] Pryor, Church, Govindan, and Crank, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 156 (1982).

[406] See Tarbell, in Kharasch, Ref. 380, pp. 97–102.

[407] Wallace, Schriesheim, and Bartok, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 1311 (1963).

[408] Mukaiyama and Takahashi, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 5907 (1968).

[409] For other methods, see Boustany and Sullivan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3547 (1970); Harpp, Ash, Back, Gleason, Orwig, VanHorn, and Snyder, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3551 (1970); Oae, Fukushima, and Kim, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 407 (1977).

[410] Firouzabadi and Mostafavipoor, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 914 (1983).

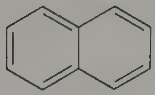
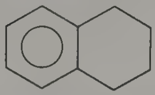
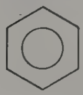
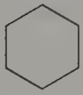
OS **V,** 341.

Reductions: Selectivity[411a]

It is often necessary to reduce one group in a molecule without affecting another reducible group. It is usually possible to find a reducing agent that will chemoselectively do this. The most common broad-spectrum reducing agents are the metal hydrides[412] and hydrogen (with a catalyst).[413] Many different metal–hydride systems and hydrogenation catalysts have been investigated in order to find conditions under which a given group will be reduced without reducing another group in the same molecule. Tables 2, 3, and 4 list the reactivity of various functional groups toward catalytic hydrogenation, $LiAlH_4$, and BH_3, respectively.[414,415] Table 5 shows which groups can be reduced by catalytic hydrogenation and various metal hydrides.[416] Of course, the tables cannot be exact,

TABLE 2 The ease of reduction of various functional groups toward catalytic hydrogenation[414]

The groups are listed in approximate order of ease of reduction

Reaction	Substrate	Product	
0-84	**RCOCl**	**RCHO**	Easiest
9-48	$\mathbf{RNO_2}$	$\mathbf{RNH_2}$	
5-10	**RC≡CR**	**RCH═CHR**	
6-26	**RCHO**	$\mathbf{RCH_2OH}$	
5-10	**RCH═CHR**	$\mathbf{RCH_2CH_2R}$	
6-26	**RCOR**	**RCHOHR**	
0-80	$\mathbf{ArCH_2OR}$	$\mathbf{ArCH_3 + ROH}$	
6-28	**RC≡N**	$\mathbf{RCH_2NH_2}$	
5-11			
9-43	**RCOOR′**	$\mathbf{RCH_2OH + R'OH}$	
9-40	**RCONHR′**	$\mathbf{RCH_2NHR}$	
5-11			Most difficult
9-39	$\mathbf{RCOO^-}$		Inert

---

[411] Kosswig, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **749,** 206 (1971).

[411a] For monographs on reductions in general, see Hudlický, "Reductions in Organic Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1984; Augustine, "Reduction," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1968. For a review, see Candlin and Rennie, in Bentley and Kirby, Ref. 12, pp. 77–135.

[412] For discussions of selectivity with metal hydride reducing agents, see Brown and Krishnamurthy, *Tetrahedron* **35,** 567–607 (1979); Walker, *Chem. Soc. Rev.* **5,** 23–50 (1976); Brown, "Boranes in Organic Chemistry," pp. 209–251, Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1972; Rerick, in Augustine, Ref. 411a. For books, see Hajós, Ref. 10 and Gaylord, Ref. 10.

[413] For a discussion of catalyst selectivity for hydrogenations, see Rylander, *Aldrichimica Acta,* **12,** 53–57 (1979).

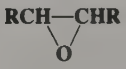
[414] Table 2 is from House, Ref. 10, p. 9.

[415] Tables 3 and 4 are from Brown, Ref. 412, pp. 213 and 232, respectively.

[416] The first ten columns are from Brown and Krishnamurthy, Ref. 412, p. 604. The columns on $(i\text{-}Bu)_2AlH$ and $NaAlEt_2H_2$ are from Stinson, *Chem. Eng. News* **58,** No. 44, 19 (Nov. 3, 1980). The column on $LiBEt_3H$ is from Brown, Kim, and Krishnamurthy, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 1 (1980). For a similar table that shows additional reducing agents, see Hajós, Ref. 10, pp. 16–17. For tables showing which agents reduce a wide variety of functional groups, see Hudlický, Ref. 411a, pp. 177–200.

TABLE 3 The ease of reduction of various functional groups with $LiAlH_4$ in ether[415]

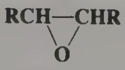
However, $LiAlH_4$ is a very powerful reagent, and much less chemoselectivity is possible here than with most of the other metal hydrides

Reaction	Substrate	Product	
6-26	RCHO	RCH_2OH	Easiest
6-26	RCOR	RCHOHR	
9-46	RCOCl	RCH_2OH	
9-43	Lactone	Diol	
0-81		RCH_2CHOHR	
9-43	RCOOR′	RCH_2OH + R′OH	
9-39	RCOOH	RCH_2OH	
9-39	$RCOO^-$	RCH_2OH	
9-40	$RCONR'_2$	$RCH_2NR'_2$	
6-28	RC≡N	RCH_2NH_2	
9-48	RNO_2	RNH_2	
9-68	$ArNO_2$	ArN═NAr	Most difficult
5-10	RCH═CHR		Inert

because the nature of R and the reaction conditions obviously affect reactivity. Nevertheless, the tables do give a fairly good indication of which reagents reduce which groups.[417] $LiAlH_4$ is a very powerful and unselective reagent.[418] Consequently, other metal hydrides are generally used when chemoselectivity is required. As mentioned on p. 813, a number of less reactive (and more selective) reagents have been prepared by replacing some of the hydrogens of $LiAlH_4$ with alkoxy groups (by treatment of $LiAlH_4$ with ROH).[419] Most of the metal hydrides are nucleophilic reagents and

TABLE 4 The ease of reduction of various functional groups with borane[415]

It is evident that this reagent and $LiAlH_4$ (Table 3) complement each other

Reaction	Substrate	Product	
9-39	RCOOH	RCH_2OH	Easiest
5-13	RCH═CHR	$(RCH_2CHR)_3B$	
6-26	RCOR	RCHOHR	
6-28	RCN	RCH_2NH_2	
0-81		RCH_2CHOHR	
9-43	RCOOR′	RCH_2OH + R′OH	Most difficult
0-84,9-46	RCOCl		Inert

---

[417] See also the table in Ref. 9.

[418] For a reviews of $LiAlH_4$, see Pizey, Ref. 10, vol. 1, pp. 101–194.

[419] For a review, see Málek and Černy, *Synthesis* 217–234 (1972).

TABLE 5 Reactivity of various functional groups with some metal hydrides and toward catalytic hydrogenation.[416] ± indicates a borderline case.

	Reaction	$NaBH_4$ in EtOH	$NaBH_4$ + LiCl in diglyme	$NaBH_4$ + $AlCl_3$ in diglyme	BH_3-THF[424]	Bis-3-methyl-2-butyl-borane (disiamylborane) in THF[422]	9-BBN[423]	$LiAlH(O\text{-}t\text{-}Bu)_3$ in THF	$LiAlH(OMe)_3$ in THF	$LiAlH_4$ in ether	AlH_3 in THF[425]	$LiBEt_3H$[421]	$(i\text{-}Bu)_2AlH$(DIBAL-H)	$NaAlEt_2H_2$	Catalytic hydrogenation
6-26	$RCHO \rightarrow RCH_2OH$	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
6-26	$RCOR \rightarrow RCHOHR$	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
0-84 9-46	$RCOCl \nearrow RCHO$ $RCOCl \searrow RCH_2OH$	+[420]	+	+	−	−	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
9-43	Lactone → diol	−	+	+	+	+	+	±	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
0-81	Epoxide → alcohol	−	+	+	+	±	±	±	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
9-43	$RCOOR' \rightarrow RCH_2OH + R'OH$	−	+	+	±	−	±	±	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
9-39	$RCOOH \rightarrow RCH_2OH$	−	−	+	+	−	±	−	+	+	+	−	+	+	−
9-39	$RCHOO^- \rightarrow RCH_2OH$	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	+	+	+	−	+		−
9-40 0-86	$RCONR_2' \nearrow RCH_2NR'_2$ $RCONR_2' \searrow RCHO$	−	−	−	+	+	+	−	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
6-28	$RC{\equiv}N \rightarrow RCH_2NH_2$	−	−	−	+	−	±	−	+	+	+	±	+	+	+
9-48 9-68	$RNO_2 \nearrow RNH_2$ $RNO_2 \searrow RN{=}NR$	−	−	−	−	−	−	−	+	+	−	−	+	+	+
5-10	$RCH{=}CHR \rightarrow RCH_2CH_2R$	−	−	−	+	+	+	−	−	−	−	+	−	−	+

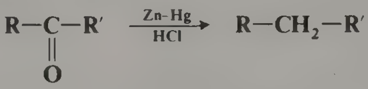
attack the carbon atom of a carbon–hetero single or multiple bond. However, BH_3[424] and AlH_3[425] are electrophiles (Lewis acids) and attack the hetero atom. This accounts for the different patterns of selectivity shown in the tables.

The reactions in this section are grouped into classifications based on bond charges, similar to those used for the oxidation reactions. These sections are: (A) reactions involving replacement of oxygen by hydrogen, (B) reactions in which an oxygen is removed from the substrate, (C) reduction with cleavage, and (D) reductive coupling.

A. Reactions Involving Replacement of Oxygen by Hydrogen In reactions **9-38** to **9-42**, a C=O is reduced to a CH_2 group.

9-38 Reduction of Carbonyl to Methylene in Aldehydes and Ketones

Dihydro-de-oxo-bisubstitution[426]



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-R' \xrightarrow[HCl]{Zn-Hg} R-CH_2-R'$$

There are various ways of reducing the C=O group of aldehydes and ketones to CH_2.[427] The two most important methods are the *Clemmensen reduction* and the *Wolff–Kishner reduction* (in the Russian literature this is called the *Kizhner reaction*). The Clemmensen reduction consists of heating the aldehyde or ketone with zinc amalgam and aqueous HCl.[428] Ketones are reduced more often than aldehydes. In the Wolff–Kishner reduction,[429] the aldehyde or ketone is heated with hydrazine hydrate and a base (usually NaOH or KOH). The *Huang–Minlon modification*[430] of the Wolff–Kishner reaction, in which the reaction is carried out in refluxing diethylene glycol, has completely replaced the original procedure. The reaction can also be carried out under more moderate conditions (room temperature) in dimethyl sulfoxide with potassium *t*-butoxide as base.[431] The Wolff–Kishner reaction can also be applied to the semicarbazones of aldehydes or ketones. The Clemmensen reduction is usually easier to perform, but it fails for acid-sensitive and high-molecular-weight substrates. For these cases the Wolff–Kishner reduction is quite useful. For high-molecular-weight substrates, a modified Clemmensen reduction, using activated zinc and gaseous HCl in an organic solvent such as ether or acetic anhydride, has proved successful.[432] The Clemmensen and Wolff–Kishner reactions are complementary, since the former uses acidic and the latter basic conditions.

Both methods are fairly specific for aldehydes and ketones and can be carried out with many

---

[420] Reacts with solvent, reduced in aprotic solvents.

[421] Brown, Kim, and Krishnamurthy, Ref. 416. For a review of the synthesis of alkyl-substituted borohydrides, see Brown, Singaram, and Singaram, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **239,** 43–64 (1982).

[422] Brown, Bigley, Arora, and Yoon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7161 (1970). For reductions with thexylborane, see Brown, Heim, and Yoon, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 2942 (1972).

[423] Brown, Krishnamurthy, and Yoon, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1778 (1976).

[424] See Brown, Heim, and Yoon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 1637 (1970); Cragg, "Organoboranes in Organic Synthesis," pp. 319–371, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1973. For reviews of reductions with BH_3, see Lane, *Chem. Rev.* **76,** 773–799 (1976), *Aldrichimica Acta* **10,** 41–51 (1977); Brown and Krishnamurthy, *Aldrichimica Acta* **12,** 3–11 (1979). For a review of reductions with borane derivatives, see Pelter, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 888–896 (1976).

[425] See Brown and Yoon. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 1464 (1966); Yoon and Brown, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2927 (1968).

[426] This name also applies to reactions **9-39** to **9-42.**

[427] For a review, see Reusch, in Augustine, Ref. 411a, pp. 171–211.

[428] For reviews, see Vedejs, *Org. React.* **22,** 401–422 (1975); Staschewski, *Angew. Chem.* **71,** 726–736 (1959); Martin, *Org. React.* **1,** 155–209 (1942). For a discussion of experimental conditions, see Fieser and Fieser, Ref. 44, pp. 1287–1289.

[429] For a review, see Todd, *Org. React.* **4,** 378–422 (1948).

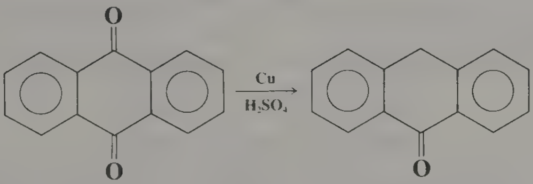
[430] Huang-Minlon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **68,** 2487 (1946), **71,** 3301 (1949).

[431] Cram, Sahyun, and Knox, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **84,** 1734 (1962), Also see Grundon, Henbest, and Scott, *J. Chem. Soc.* 1855 (1963); Szmant, Birke, and Lau, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 1863 (1977).

[432] Yamamura, Ueda, and Hirata, *Chem. Commun.* 1049 (1967); Toda, Hayashi, Hirata, and Yamamura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **45,** 264 (1972).

other functional groups present. However, certain types of aldehydes and ketones do not give normal reduction products. Under Clemmensen conditions,[433] α-hydroxy ketones give either ketones (hydrogenolysis of the OH, **0-79**) or olefins, and 1,3-diones usually undergo rearrangement, e.g., $MeCOCH_2COMe \rightarrow MeCOCHMe_2$.[434] A similar rearrangement is observed on Clemmensen reduction of unsaturated cyclic ketones.[435] Neither method is suitable for α,β-unsaturated ketones. These give pyrazolines[436] under Wolff–Kishner conditions, while under Clemmensen conditions both groups of these molecules may be reduced or if only one group is reduced, it is the C=C bond.[437] Sterically hindered ketones are resistant to both the Clemmensen and Huang–Minlon procedures but can be reduced by vigorous treatment with anhydrous hydrazine.[438] In the Clemmensen reduction, pinacols (**9-63**) are often side products.

Other reagents have also been used to reduce the C=O of aldehydes and ketones to CH_2. Among these are catalytic hydrogenation at 180 to 250°C[439] and, for aryl ketones (ArCOR and ArCOAr), $LiAlH_4$-$AlCl_3$,[440] $LiAlH_4$-P_2I_4,[441] Li-NH_3,[442] cyclohexene or limonene (as H_2 donors) and Pd-C-$FeCl_3$,[443] Raney nickel (which contains adsorbed hydrogen),[444] or trialkylsilanes in F_3CCOOH.[445] Most of these reagents also reduce aryl aldehydes ArCHO to methylbenzenes $ArCH_3$.[446] Aliphatic aldehydes RCHO can be reduced to RCH_3 with the sandwich compound titanocene dichloride $(C_5H_5)_2TiCl_2$.[447] One carbonyl group of 1,2-diketones can be selectively reduced by H_2S with an amine catalyst[448] or by HI in refluxing acetic acid.[449] One carbonyl group of quinones can be reduced with copper and sulfuric acid or with tin and HCl:[450]



An indirect method of accomplishing the reaction is reduction of tosylhydrazones ($R_2C=N-NHTs$) to R_2CH_2 with $NaBH_4$, BH_3, catecholborane, bis(benzyloxy)borane, $NaBH_3CN$, or bis(triphenylphosphine)copper(I) tetrahydroborate.[451] The reduction of α,β-unsaturated tosylhydrazones with $NaBH_3CN$, with $NaBH_4$-HOAc, or with catecholborane proceeds with migration of the double bond to the position formerly occupied by the carbonyl carbon, even if this removes the double bond from conjugation with an aromatic ring.[452] e.g.,

---

[433] For a review of Clemmensen reduction of diketones and unsaturated ketones, see Buchanan and Woodgate, *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.* **23,** 522–536 (1969).

[434] Cusack and Davis, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2062 (1965); Wenkert and Kariv, *Chem. Commun.* 570 (1965); Galton, Kalafer, and Beringer, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1 (1970).

[435] Davis and Woodgate, *J. Chem. Soc.* 5943 (1965), *Chem. Commun.* 65 (1966).

[436] Pyrazolines can be converted to cyclopropanes; see **7-49.**

[437] Cyclopropanols are intermediates in this conversion. See Jefford and Boschung, *Helv. Chim. Acta* **59,** 962 (1976).

[438] Barton, Ives, and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc.* 2056 (1955).

[439] See for example, Maier, Bergmann, Bleicher and Schleyer, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4227 (1981).

[440] Nystrom and Berger, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **80,** 2896 (1958). See also Volod'kin, Ershov, and Portnykh, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 384 (1967).

[441] Suzuki, Masuda, Kubota, and Osuka, *Chem. Lett.* 909 (1983).

[442] Hall, Lipsky, McEnroe, and Bartels, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 2588 (1971).

[443] Brieger and Fu, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 757 (1976).

[444] Mitchell and Lai, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 2637 (1980).

[445] Kursanov, Parnes, and Loim, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 1245 (1966); West, Donnelly, Kooistra, and Doyle, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 2675 (1973). See also Fry, Orfanopoulos, Adlington, Dittman, and Silverman, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 374 (1978).

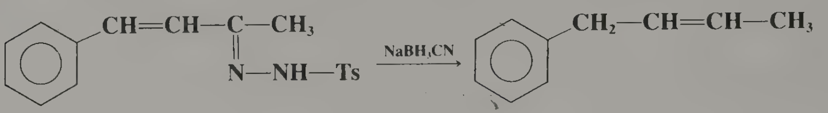
[446] See, for example, Hall, Bartels, and Engman, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 760 (1972); Kursanov, Parnes, Loim, and Bakalova, *Doklad. Chem.* **179,** 328 (1968).

[447] van Tamelen and Gladysz, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 5290 (1974).

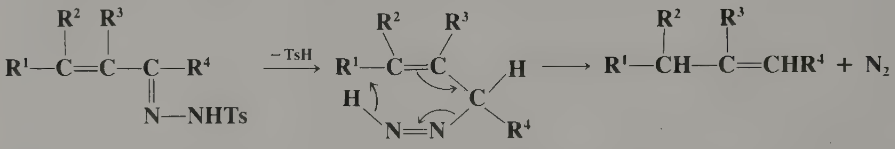
[448] Mayer, Hiller, Nitzschke, and Jentzsch, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **2,** 370–373 (1963) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 1011–1014].

[449] Reusch and LeMahieu, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 3068 (1964).

[450] Meyer, *Org. Synth.* **I,** 60; Macleod and Allen, *Org Synth.* **II,** 62.



A cyclic mechanism is apparently involved:



Conjugated acetylenic ketones give allenes.[453] Another indirect method is conversion of the aldehyde or ketone to a dithioacetal or ketal, and desulfurization of this (**4-37**). In still another indirect method, the ketone is converted to an enol triflate $-\overset{|}{C}=\overset{|}{C}-OTf$, which is reduced with H_2 and a platinum-oxide catalyst.[454]

The first step in the mechanism[455] of the Wolff–Kishner reaction consists of formation of the hydrazone (**6-20**).

$$R_2C{=}O \rightarrow R_2C{=}N{-}NH_2$$

It is this species that undergoes reduction in the presence of base, most probably in the following manner:

$$R_2C{=}N{-}NH_2 \overset{OH^-}{\rightleftharpoons} R_2CH{-}N{=}NH + OH^- \longrightarrow R_2CH{-}N{=}N^{\ominus} + H_2O$$

$$R_2CH{-}N{=}N^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{-N_2} R_2\overline{C}H^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{H_2O} R_2CH_2 + OH^-$$

Not much is known about the mechanism of the Clemmensen reduction, though a complex mechanism has been proposed.[456] One thing reasonably certain is that the corresponding alcohol is not an intermediate, since alcohols prepared in other ways fail to give the reaction. Note that the alcohol is not an intermediate in the Wolff–Kishner reduction either.

OS **I,** 60; **II,** 62, 499; **III,** 410, 444, 513, 786; **IV,** 203, 510; **V,** 533, 747; **52,** 122; **53,** 77; **59,** 42; **60,** 108. Also see OS **IV,** 218.

---

[451] Caglioti and Magi, *Tetrahedron* **19,** 1127 (1963); Caglioti and Grasselli, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 153 (1964); Caglioti, *Tetrahedron* **22,** 487 (1966); Fischer, Pelah, Williams, and Djerassi, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 3236 (1965); Elphimoff-Felkin and Verrier, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1515 (1968); Hutchins, Milewski, and Maryanoff, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 3662 (1973); Cacchi, Caglioti, and Paolucci, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **47,** 2323 (1974); Lane, *Synthesis* 135–146 (1975), pp. 145–146; Kabalka, Yang, Chandler, and Baker, *Synthesis* 124 (1977); Kabalka and Summers, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 1217 (1981); Fleet, Harding, and Whitcombe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4031 (1980).

[452] Hutchins, Kacher, and Rua, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 923 (1975); Kabalka, Yang, and Baker, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 574 (1976); Taylor and Djerassi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 2275 (1976); Hutchins and Natale, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2299 (1978); Greene, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 63 (1979).

[453] Kabalka, Newton, Chandler, and Yang, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 726 (1978).

[454] Jigajinni and Wightman, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 117 (1982).

[455] For a review of the mechanism, see Szmant, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **7,** 120–128 (1968) [*Angew. Chem.* **80,** 141–149].

[456] Horner and Schmitt, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* 1617 (1978). For earlier proposals, see Poutsma and Wolthius, *J. Org. Chem.* **24,** 875 (1959); Nakabayashi, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 3900, 3906 (1960).

9-39 Reduction of Carboxylic Acids to Alcohols

$$\mathrm{RCOOH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{LiAlH_4}} \mathrm{RCH_2OH}$$

Carboxylic acids are easily reduced to primary alcohols by $LiAlH_4$.[457] The reaction does not stop at the aldehyde stage (but see **0-85**). The conditions are particularly mild, the reduction proceeding quite well at room temperature. Other hydrides have also been used, but not $NaBH_4$ (see Table 5).[458] Catalytic hydrogenation is also generally ineffective. Borane is particularly good for carboxyl groups (Table 4) and permits selective reduction of them in the presence of many other groups (though the reaction with double bonds takes place at about the same rate).[459] Aluminum hydride reduces COOH groups without affecting carbon–halogen bonds in the same molecule.

OS **III,** 60.

9-40 Reduction of Amides to Amines

$$\mathrm{RCONH_2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{LiAlH_4}} \mathrm{RCH_2NH_2}$$

Amides can be reduced[460] to amines with $LiAlH_4$ or by catalytic hydrogenation, though high temperatures and pressures are usually required for the latter. Even with $LiAlH_4$ the reaction is more difficult than the reduction of most other functional groups, and other groups often can be reduced without disturbing an amide function. $NaBH_4$ by itself does not reduce amides, though it does so in the presence of certain other reagents.[461] Substituted amides can be similarly reduced:

$$\mathrm{RCONHR'} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RCH_2NHR'}$$
$$\mathrm{RCONR'_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{RCH_2NR'_2}$$

Borane is a good reducing agent for all three types of amides.[462] Another method for the reduction of mono- and disubstituted amides in high yields consists of treatment with triethyloxonium fluoroborate $Et_3O^+\ BF_4^-$ to give the imino ether fluoroborate $RC(OEt){=}NR_2^+\ BF_4^-$, followed by reduction of this with $NaBH_4$ in ethanol.[463] Still another reagent that reduces disubstituted amides to amines is trichlorosilane.[464]

With some $RCONR_2'$, $LiAlH_4$ causes cleavage, and the aldehyde (**0-86**) or alcohol is obtained. Lithium triethylborohydride produces the alcohol with most N,N-disubstituted amides, though not with unsubstituted or N-substituted amides.[465] Thioamides can be reduced with hydrogen and Raney nickel.[466] Lactams are reduced to cyclic amines in high yields with $LiAlH_4$, though cleavage sometimes occurs here too. Imides are generally reduced on both sides, though it is sometimes possible to stop with just one. Both cyclic and acyclic imides have been reduced in this manner, though with acyclic imides cleavage is often obtained, e.g.,[467]

---

[457] For a review, see Gaylord, Ref. 10, pp. 322–373.

[458] $NaBH_4$ in the presence of $Me_2N{=}CHCl^+\ Cl^-$ reduces carboxylic acids to primary alcohols chemoselectively in the presence of halide, ester, and nitrile groups: Fujisawa, Mori, and Sato, *Chem. Lett.* 835 (1983).

[459] Brown and Korytnyk, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82**, 3866 (1960); Batrakov and Bergel'son, *Bull. Acad. Sci. USSR, Div. Chem. Sci.* 348 (1965); Pelter, Hutchings, Levitt, and Smith, *Chem. Commun.* 347 (1970); Brown and Stocky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **99,** 8218 (1977).

[460] For a review, see Challis and Challis, in Zabicky, "The Chemistry of Amides," pp. 795–801, Interscience, New York, 1970. For a review of the reduction of amides, lactams, and imides with metallic hydrides, see Gaylord, Ref. 10, pp. 544–636.

[461] Satoh, Suzuki, Suzuki, Miyaji, and Imai, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4555 (1969); Rahman, Basha, Waheed, and Ahmed, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 219 (1976); Maki, Kikuchi, Sugiyama, and Seto, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 322 (1976); Umino, Iwakuma, and Itoh, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 763 (1976); Kuehne and Shannon, *J. Org. Chem.* **42,** 2082 (1977); Wann, Thorsen, and Kreevoy, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2579 (1981).

[462] Brown and Heim, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 912 (1973); Brown, Narasimhan, and Choi, *Synthesis* 441, 996 (1981); Krishnamurthy, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3315 (1982).

[463] Borch, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 61 (1968).

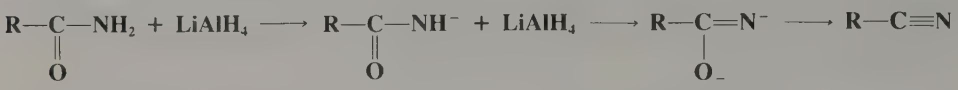
[464] Nagata, Dohmaru, and Tsurugi, *Chem. Lett.* 989 (1972). See also Benkeser, Li, and Mozdzen, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **178,** 21 (1979).

[465] Brown and Kim, *Synthesis* 635 (1977).

[466] Pettit and van Tamelen, *Org. React.* **12,** 356–529 (1962), pp. 385–389. For another method of reducing thioamides, see Raucher and Klein, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 4061 (1980).

$$\mathbf{PhN(COMe)_2 \longrightarrow PhNHEt}$$

Nitriles have been isolated as intermediates in the treatment of unsubstituted amides with $LiAlH_4$.[468] The following mechanism has been proposed for the conversion of the amide to the nitrile:[468]



$$R{-}C(=O){-}NH_2 + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow R{-}C(=O){-}NH^- + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow R{-}C(O^-){=}N^- \longrightarrow R{-}C{\equiv}N$$

OS **IV,** 339, 354, 564; **54,** 88; **61,** 24.

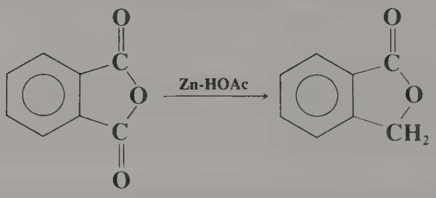
9-41 Reduction of Carboxylic Esters to Ethers

$$\mathbf{RCOOR'} \xrightarrow[\text{LiAlH}_4]{\text{BF}_3\text{-etherate}} \mathbf{RCH_2OR'}$$

Carboxylic esters and lactones have been reduced to ethers, though the more usual course is the obtention of 2 moles of alcohol (**9-43**). Reduction to ethers has been accomplished with a reagent prepared from BF_3-etherate and either $LiAlH_4$, $LiBH_4$, or $NaBH_4$,[469] with trichlorosilane and uv light,[470] and with catalytic hydrogenation. The reaction with the BF_3 reagent apparently succeeds with secondary R′, but not with primary R′, which give **9-43.** Lactones give cyclic ethers.[471] Thiono esters RCSOR′ can be reduced to ethers RCH_2OR' with Raney nickel (**4-37**).[472] Since the thiono esters can be prepared from carboxylic esters (**6-11**), this provides an indirect method for the conversion of carboxylic esters to ethers. Thiol esters RCOSR′ have been reduced to sulfides RCH_2SR'.[473]

See also **9-44, 0-82.**

9-42 Reduction of Cyclic Anhydrides to Lactones



---

[467] Witkop and Patrick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **74,** 3861 (1952).

[468] Newman and Fukunaga, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 693 (1960).

[469] Pettit, Ghatak, Green, Kasturi, and Piatak, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 1685 (1961); Pettit, Green, Kasturi, and Ghatak, *Tetrahedron* **18,** 953 (1962); Ager and Sutherland, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 248 (1982). See also Dias and Pettit, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3485 (1971).

[470] Tsurugi, Nakao, and Fukumoto, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **91,** 4587 (1969); Nagata, Dohmaru, and Tsurugi, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 795 (1973); Baldwin, Doll, and Haut, *J. Org. Chem.* **39,** 2470 (1974); Baldwin and Haut, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 3885 (1975). See also Kraus, Frazier, Roth, Taschner, and Neuenschwander, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2417 (1981).

[471] See, for example, Pettit, Kasturi, Green, and Knight, *J. Org. Chem.* **26,** 4773 (1961); Edward and Ferland, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 975 (1964).

[472] Baxter and Bradshaw, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 831 (1981).

[473] Eliel and Daignault, *J. Org. Chem.* **29,** 1630 (1964); Bublitz, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 1630 (1967).

Cyclic anhydrides can give lactones if reduced with Zn-HOAc, hydrogen and platinum or $RuCl_2(Ph_3P)_3$,[474] $NaBH_4$,[475] or even $LiAlH_4$, although with the last-mentioned reagent diols are the more usual product (**9-45**). With some reagents the reaction can be accomplished regioselectively, i.e., only a specific one of the two C=O groups of an unsymmetrical anhydride is reduced.[476] Open-chain anhydrides either are not reduced at all (e.g., with $NaBH_4$) or give 2 moles of alcohol.

There are no *Organic Syntheses* references, but see OS **II,** 526, for a related reaction.

9-43 Reduction of Carboxylic Esters to Alcohols

Dihydro,hydroxy-de-oxo,alkoxy-tersubstitution

$$RCOOR' \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} RCH_2OH + R'OH$$

$LiAlH_4$ reduces carboxylic esters to give 2 moles of alcohol.[477] The reaction is of wide scope and has been used to reduce many esters. Where the interest is in obtaining R'OH, this is a method of ''hydrolyzing'' esters. Lactones yield diols. $LiBH_4$ also gives the reaction,[478] as do i-Bu_2AlH, lithium triethylborohydride, BH_3-SMe_2 in refluxing THF,[479] and triethoxysilane $HSi(OEt)_3$.[480] $NaBH_4$ reduces phenolic esters, especially those containing electron-withdrawing groups,[481] but its reaction with other esters is usually so slow that such reactions are seldom feasible (though exceptions are known[482]), and it is generally possible to reduce an aldehyde or ketone without reducing an ester function in the same molecule. However, $NaBH_4$ reduces esters in the presence of certain compounds (see Table 5).[483] With the reagent $NaBH(OMe)_3$ it is possible to reduce a secondary ester function $R_2CHCOOR'$ in the presence of a tertiary ester function R_3CCOOR'.[484] Esters can also be reduced to alcohols by hydrogenation over copper chromite catalysts,[485] though high pressures and temperatures are required.[486] Ester functions generally survive low-pressure catalytic hydrogenations. Before the discovery of $LiAlH_4$, the most common way of carrying out the reaction was with sodium in ethanol, a method known as the *Bouveault–Blanc procedure*. This procedure is still sometimes used where selectivity is necessary. See also **9-41, 9-44,** and **0-82.**

OS **II,** 154, 325, 372, 468; **III,** 671; **IV,** 834; **53,** 70.

9-44 Reduction of Carboxylic Acids and Esters to Alkanes

Trihydro-de-oxo,alkoxy-tersubstitution, etc.

$$RCOOR' \xrightarrow{(C_5H_5)_2TiCl_2} RCH_3 + R'OH$$

The reagent titanocene dichloride reduces esters in a different manner from that of **0-82, 9-41,** or **9-43.** The products are the alkane RCH_3 and the alcohol R'OH.[447] The mechanism probably involves an alkene intermediate. Aromatic acids can be reduced to methylbenzenes by a procedure involving refluxing first with trichlorosilane in MeCN, then with tripropylamine added, and finally with KOH and MeOH (after removal of the MeCN).[487] The following sequence has been suggested:[487]

---

[474] Lyons, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 412 (1975); Morand and Kayser, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 314 (1976). See also Osakada, Obana, Ikariya, Saburi, and Yoshikawa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 4297 (1981).

[475] Bailey and Johnson, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3574 (1970).

[476] See, for example, Kayser, Salvador, and Morand, *Can. J. Chem.* **61,** 439 (1983); Kayser and Wipff, *Can. J. Chem.* **60,** 1192 (1982).

[477] For a review, see Gaylord, Ref. 10, pp. 391–531.

[478] See Brown and Narasimhan, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 1604 (1982).

[479] Brown and Choi, *Synthesis* 439 (1981); Brown, Choi, and Narasimhan, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 3153 (1982).

[480] Boyer, Corriu, Perz, Poirier, and Reye, *Synthesis* 558 (1981).

[481] Takahashi and Cohen, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 1505 (1970).

[482] For example, see Brown and Rapoport, *J. Org. Chem.* **28,** 3261 (1963).

[483] See also Kikugawa, *Chem. Lett.* 1029 (1975); Santaniello, Ferraboschi, and Sozzani, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4584 (1981); Soai, Oyamada, and Ookawa, *Synth. Commun.* **12,** 463 (1982); Brown, Narasimhan, and Choi, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4702 (1982).

[484] Bell and Gravestock, *Can. J. Chem.* **47,** 2099 (1969).

[485] For a review, see Adkins, *Org. React.* **8,** 1–27 (1954).

[486] See also Grey, Pez, Wallo, and Corsi, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 783 (1980).

$$\mathrm{ArCOOH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{SiHCl_3}} \mathrm{(ArCO)_2O} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{R_3N}]{\mathrm{SiHCl_3}} \mathrm{ArCH_2SiCl_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{MeOH}]{\mathrm{KOH}} \mathrm{ArCH_3}$$

Esters of aromatic acids are not reduced by this procedure, so that an aromatic COOH group can be reduced in the presence of a COOR′ group.[488] However, it is also possible to reduce aromatic ester groups, by a variation of the trichlorosilane procedure.[489] *o*- and *p*-hydroxybenzoic acids and their esters have been reduced to cresols $HOC_6H_4CH_3$ with sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminum hydride $NaAlH_2(OC_2H_4OMe)_2$[490]

Carboxylic acids can also be converted to alkanes, indirectly,[491] by reduction of the corresponding tosylhydrazides $RCONHNH_2$ with $LiAlH_4$ or borane.[492]

OS **56,** 83.

9-45 Reduction of Anhydrides to Alcohols

$$\mathrm{RCOOCOR} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{LiAlH_4}} \mathrm{2RCH_2OH}$$

$LiAlH_4$ usually reduces open-chain anhydrides to give 2 moles of alcohol. With cyclic anhydrides the reaction with $LiAlH_4$ can be controlled to give either diols or lactones[493] (see **9-42**).

OS **57,** 53.

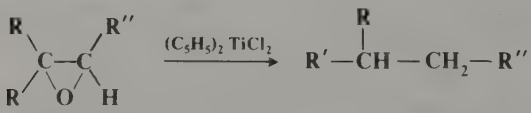
9-46 Reduction of Acyl Halides to Alcohols

$$\mathrm{RCOCl} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{LiAlH_4}} \mathrm{RCH_2OH}$$

Acyl halides are reduced[494] to alcohols by $LiAlH_4$ or $NaBH_4$, as well as by other metal hydrides (Table 5), but not by borane. The reaction may be regarded as a combination of **9-38** and **0-77.**

OS **IV,** 271.

9-47 Complete Reduction of Epoxides



Though the usual product of epoxide reductions is the alcohol (**0-81**), 1,2-epoxides are reduced all the way to the alkane by titanocene dichloride[447] and Et_3SiH-BH_3.[495]

---

[487] Benkeser, Foley, Gaul, and Li, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 3232 (1970).

[488] Benkeser and Ehler, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 3660 (1973).

[489] Benkeser, Mozdzen, and Muth, *J. Org. Chem.* **44,** 2185 (1979).

[490] Černý and Málek, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1739 (1969), *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **35,** 2030 (1970).

[491] For another indirect method, which can also be applied to acid derivatives, see Degani and Fochi, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1133 (1978).

[492] Attanasi, Caglioti, Gasparrini, and Misiti, *Tetrahedron* **31,** 341 (1975), and references cited therein.

[493] Bloomfield and Lee, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3919 (1967).

[494] For a review of the reduction of acyl halides, see Wheeler, in Patai, "The Chemistry of Acyl Halides," pp. 231–251, Interscience, New York, 1972.

[495] Fry and Mraz, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 849 (1979).

9-48 Reduction of Nitro Compounds to Amines

$$RNO_2 \xrightarrow[HCl]{Zn} RNH_2$$

Both aliphatic[496] and aromatic nitro compounds can be reduced to amines, though the reaction has been applied much more often to aromatic nitro compounds, owing to their greater availability. Many reducing agents have been used to reduce aromatic nitro compounds, among them Zn, Sn, or Fe (or sometimes other metals) and acid, catalytic hydrogenation,[497] AlH_3-$AlCl_3$, hydrazine and a catalyst,[498] dodecacarbonyltriiron[$Fe_3(CO)_{12}$]-methanol,[499] $TiCl_3$,[500] hot liquid paraffin,[501] formic acid and Pd-C,[502] and sulfides such as NaHS, $(NH_4)_2S$, or polysulfides. The reaction with sulfides or polysulfides is called the *Zinin reduction.*[503] The reagent sodium dihydro(trithio)borate $NaBH_2S_3$ reduces aromatic nitro compounds to amines,[504] but aliphatic nitro compounds give other products (see **9-59**). In contrast, $LiAlH_4$ reduces aliphatic nitro compounds to amines, but with aromatic nitro compounds the products with this reagent are azo compounds (**9-68**). Most metal hydrides, including $NaBH_4$ and BH_3, do not reduce nitro groups at all, though aromatic nitro compounds have been reduced to amines with $NaBH_4$ and various catalysts, such as $NiCl_2(PPh_3)_2$ or $CoCl_2$.[505] Treatment of aromatic nitro compounds with $NaBH_4$ alone has resulted in reduction of the *ring* to a cyclohexane ring with the nitro group still intact[506] or in cleavage of the nitro group from the ring.[507] With $(NH_4)_2S$ or other sulfides or polysulfides it is often possible to reduce just one of two or three nitro groups on an aromatic ring or on two different rings in one molecule.[508] The nitro groups of N-nitro compounds can also be reduced to amino groups, e.g., nitrourea $NH_2CONHNO_2$ gives semicarbazide $NH_2CONHNH_2$.

With some reducing agents, especially with aromatic nitro compounds, the reduction can be stopped at an intermediate stage, and hydroxylamines (**9-50**), hydrazobenzenes (**9-69**), azobenzenes (**9-68**), and azoxybenzenes (**9-67**) can be obtained in this manner. However, nitroso compounds, which are often postulated as intermediates, are too reactive to be isolated, if indeed they are intermediates (see however, **9-49**). Reduction by metals in mineral acids cannot be stopped, but always produces the amine. The mechanisms of these reductions have been very little studied, though it is usually presumed that, at least with some reducing agents, nitroso compounds and hydroxylamines are intermediates. Both of these types of compounds give amines when exposed to most of these reducing agents (**9-51**), and hydroxylamines can be isolated (**9-50**). With metals and acid the following path has been suggested:[509]

---

[496] For a review of selective reductions of aliphatic nitro compounds without disturbance of other functional groups, see Ioffe, Tartakovskii, and Novikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **35,** 19–32 (1966).

[497] For a review, see Rylander, "Catalytic Hydrogenation over Platinum Metals," pp. 168–202, Academic Press, New York, 1967.

[498] An explosion has been reported with *o*-chloronitro compounds: Rondestvedt and Johnson, *Synthesis* 851 (1977). For a review of the use of hydrazine, see Furst, Berlo, and Hooton, *Chem. Rev.* **65,** 51–68 (1965), pp. 52–60. See also Yuste, Saldaña, and Walls, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 147 (1982).

[499] Landesberg, Katz, and Olsen, *J. Org. Chem.* **37,** 930 (1972).

[500] Ho and Wong, *Synthesis* 45 (1974). See also George and Chandrasekaran, *Synth. Commun.* **13,** 495 (1983).

[501] Din, Lindley, and Meth-Cohn, *Synthesis* 23 (1978).

[502] Entwistle, Jackson, Johnstone, and Telford, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 443 (1977). See also Terpko and Heck, *J. Org. Chem.* **45,** 4992 (1980); Babler and Sarussi, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 925 (1981).

[503] For a review of the Zinin reduction, see Porter, *Org. React.* **20,** 455–481 (1973).

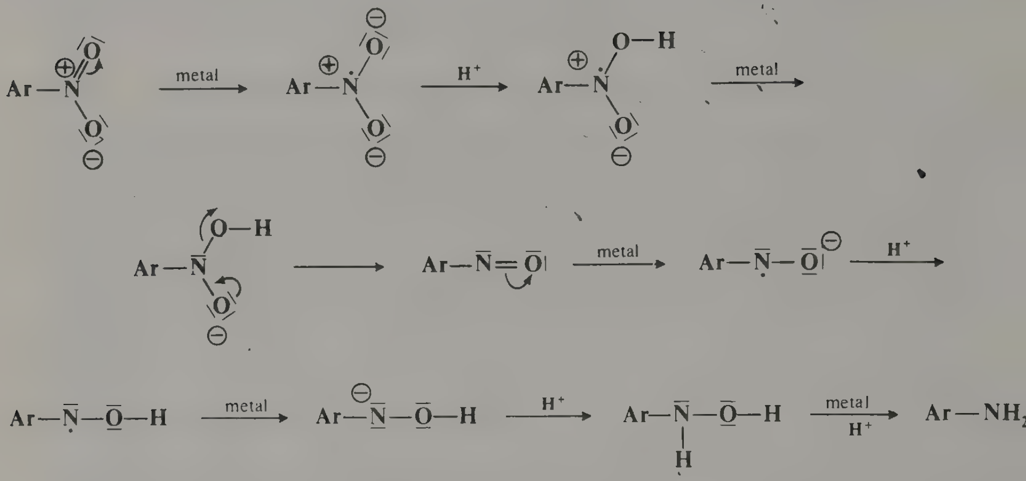
[504] Lalancette and Brindle, *Can. J. Chem.* **49,** 2990 (1971). See also Maki, Sugiyama, Kikuchi, and Seto, *Chem. Lett.* 1093 (1975).

[505] Ref. 461; Jardine and McQuillin, *Chem. Commun.* 626 (1970); Hanaya, Muramatsu, Kudo, and Chow, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans 1* 2409 (1979); Ono, Sasaki, and Yaginuma, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 480 (1983).

[506] Severin and Schmitz, *Chem. Ber.* **95,** 1417 (1962); Severin and Adam, *Chem. Ber.* **96,** 448 (1963).

[507] Kaplan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 740 (1964). See also Swanwick and Waters, *Chem. Commun.* 63 (1970).

[508] This result has also been achieved by hydrogenation with certain catalysts [Lyle and LaMattina, *Synthesis* 726 (1974); Knifton, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 1200 (1976); Ono, Terasaki, and Tsuruoka, *Chem. Ind. (London)* 477 (1983)], and with hydrazine hydrate and Raney nickel: Ayyangar, Kalkote, Lugade, Nikrad, and Sharma, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 3159 (1983).



OS **I,** 52, 240, 455, 485; **II,** 130, 160, 175, 254, 447, 471, 501, 617; **III,** 56, 59, 63, 69, 73, 82, 86, 239, 242, 453; **IV,** 31, 357; **V,** 30, 346, 552, 567, 829, 1067, 1130.

9-49 Reduction of Nitro Compounds to Nitroso Compounds

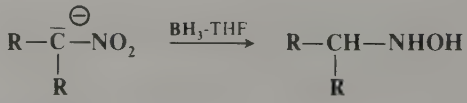
$$\mathrm{ArNO_2} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H_2O}]{h\nu,\ \mathrm{CN^-}} \mathrm{ArNO}$$

Certain aromatic nitroso compounds can be obtained in good yields by irradiation of the corresponding nitro compounds in 0.1 *M* aqueous KCN with uv light.[510] When nitro compounds are treated with most other reducing agents, nitroso compounds are either not formed or react further under the reaction conditions and cannot be isolated.

9-50 Reduction of Nitro Compounds to Hydroxylamines

$$\mathrm{ArNO_2} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H_2O}]{\mathrm{Zn}} \mathrm{ArNHOH}$$

When aromatic nitro compounds are reduced with zinc and water under neutral conditions,[511] hydroxylamines are formed. Borane in THF reduces *aliphatic* nitro compounds (in the form of their salts) to hydroxylamines:[512]



$$\mathrm{R{-}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{C}}(R){-}NO_2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{BH_3\text{-}THF}} \mathrm{R{-}CH(R){-}NHOH}$$

OS **I,** 445; **III,** 668; **IV,** 148; **52,** 77.

---

[509] House, Ref. 10, p. 211.

[510] Petersen and Letsinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2197 (1971); Vink, Cornelisse, and Havinga, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **90,** 1333 (1971).

[511] For some other methods of accomplishing this conversion, see Rondestvedt and Johnson, *Synthesis* 850 (1977); Entwistle, Gilkerson, Johnstone, and Telford, *Tetrahedron* **34,** 213 (1978).

[512] Feuer, Bartlett, Vincent, and Anderson, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2880 (1965).

9-51 Reduction of Nitroso Compounds and Hydroxylamines to Amines

$$\mathrm{RNO} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HCl}]{\mathrm{Zn}} \mathrm{RNH_2}$$

N-Dihydro-de-oxo-bisubstitution

$$\mathrm{RNHOH} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{HCl}]{\mathrm{Zn}} \mathrm{RNH_2}$$

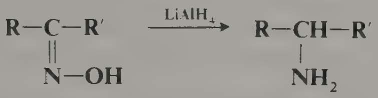
N-Hydro-de-hydroxylation or *N*-Dehydroxylation

Nitroso compounds and hydroxylamines can be reduced to amines by the same reagents that reduce nitro compounds (**9-48**). N-Nitroso compounds are similarly reduced to hydrazines:[513]

$$\mathrm{R_2N{-}NO} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R_2N{-}NH_2}$$

OS **I,** 511; **II,** 33, 202, 211, 418; **III,** 91; **IV,** 247.

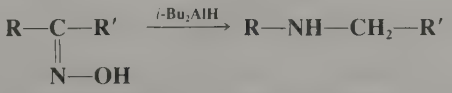
9-52 Reduction of Oximes to Primary Amines or Aziridines



$$\underset{\substack{\|\\ \mathrm{N{-}OH}}}{\mathrm{R{-}C{-}R'}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{LiAlH_4}} \underset{\substack{|\\ \mathrm{NH_2}}}{\mathrm{R{-}CH{-}R'}}$$

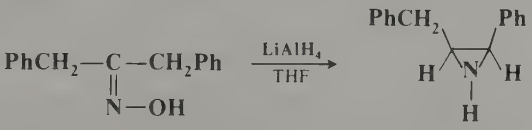
Both aldoximes and ketoximes can be reduced to primary amines with $\mathrm{LiAlH_4}$. The reaction is slower than with ketones, so that, for example, PhCOCH=NOH gave 34% PhCHOHCH=NOH.[514] Other reducing agents that give this reduction are zinc and acetic acid, sodium ethoxide, $\mathrm{BH_3}$ at 105 to 110°C,[515] bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminum hydride,[516] sodium dihydro(trithio)borate,[517] and sodium and an alcohol.[518] Catalytic hydrogenation is also effective.[519]

When the reducing agent is diisobutylaluminum hydride, the product is a secondary amine, arising from a rearrangement:[520]



$$\underset{\substack{\|\\ \mathrm{N{-}OH}}}{\mathrm{R{-}C{-}R'}} \xrightarrow{i\text{-}\mathrm{Bu_2AlH}} \mathrm{R{-}NH{-}CH_2{-}R'}$$

With certain oximes (e.g., those of the type $\mathrm{ArCH_2CR{=}NOH}$), treatment with $\mathrm{LiAlH_4}$ gives aziridines,[521] e.g.,



---

[513] For a discussion, see Sandler and Karo, Ref. 124, vol. 1, pp. 374–376 (1968). See also Entwistle, Johnstone, and Wilby, *Tetrahedron* **38,** 419 (1982).

[514] Felkin, *C. R. Acad. Sci.* **230,** 304 (1950).

[515] Feuer and Braunstein, *J. Org. Chem.* **34,** 1817 (1969). See also Hassner and Catsoulacos, *Chem. Commun.* 590 (1967).

[516] Černý, Málek, Čapka, and Chvalovský, *Collect. Czech. Chem. Commun.* **34,** 1033 (1969).

[517] Lalancette and Brindle, *Can J. Chem.* **48,** 735 (1970).

[518] For example, see Sugden and Patel, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 683 (1972).

[519] For a review, see Ref. 497, pp. 139–159.

[520] Sasatani, Miyazaki, Maruoka, and Yamamoto, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 4711 (1983). See also Rerick, Trottier, Daignault, and DeFoe, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 629 (1963); Petrarca and Emery, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 635 (1963); Graham and Williams, *Tetrahedron* **21,** 3263 (1965).

[521] For a review, see Kotera and Kitahonoki, *Org. Prep. Proced.* **1,** 305–324 (1969). For examples, see Shandala, Solomon, and Waight, *J. Chem. Soc.* 892 (1965); Kitahonoki, Kotera, Matsukawa, Miyazaki, Okada, Takahashi, and Takano, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1059 (1965); Kitahonoki, Takano, Matsuura, and Kotera, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 335 (1969); Landor, Sonola, and Tatchell, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1294 (1974); Ferrero, Rouillard, Decouzon, and Azzaro, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 131 (1974); Diab, Laurent, and Mison, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 1605 (1974).

Hydrazones, arylhydrazones, and semicarbazones can also be reduced to amines with various reducing agents, including Zn-HCl and H_2 and Raney nickel.

Oximes can also be reduced to hydroxylamines (**6-27**).

OS **II,** 318; **III,** 513; **V,** 32, 83, 373, 376.

9-53 Reduction of Miscellaneous Nitrogen Compounds

$$\mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}O \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} R{-}NH{-}CH_3}$$

$$\mathrm{R{-}N{=}C{=}S \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} R{-}NH{-}CH_3}$$

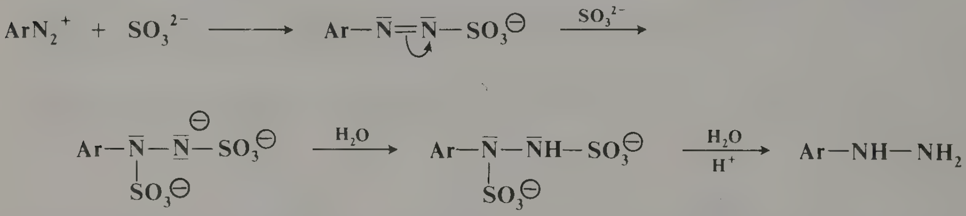
$$\mathrm{R{-}N_3 \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} RNH_2}$$

$$\mathrm{Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Ar \xrightarrow[catalyst]{H_2} Ar{-}NH{-}NH{-}Ar}$$

$$\mathrm{ArN_2^+\ Cl^- \xrightarrow{Na_2SO_3} ArNHNH_2}$$

$$\mathrm{R_2N{-}NO \xrightarrow[Ni]{H_2} R_2NH}$$

Isocyanates and isothiocyanates are reduced to methylamines, and azides to primary amines[522] on treatment with $LiAlH_4$. Sulfonyl azides RSO_2N_3 have been reduced to sulfonamides RSO_2NH_2 by irradiation in isopropyl alcohol[523] and with NaH.[524] $LiAlH_4$ does not usually reduce azo compounds[525] (indeed these are the products from $LiAlH_4$ reduction of nitro compounds, **9-68**), but these can be reduced to hydrazo compounds by catalytic hydrogenation or with diimide[526] (see **5-10**). Diazonium salts are reduced to hydrazines by sodium sulfite. This reaction probably has a nucleophilic mechanism.[527]



$$\mathrm{ArN_2^+ + SO_3^{2-} \longrightarrow Ar{-}\bar{N}{=}\bar{N}{-}SO_3^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{SO_3^{2-}}}$$

$$\mathrm{Ar{-}\underset{SO_3^{\ominus}}{\bar{N}}{-}\overset{\ominus}{\bar{N}}{-}SO_3^{\ominus} \xrightarrow{H_2O} Ar{-}\underset{SO_3^{\ominus}}{\bar{N}}{-}\bar{N}H{-}SO_3^{\ominus} \xrightarrow[H^+]{H_2O} Ar{-}NH{-}NH_2}$$

The initial product is a salt of hydrazinesulfonic acid, which is converted to the hydrazine by acid treatment. Diazonium salts can also be reduced to arenes (**4-23**). N-Nitrosoamines can be denitrosated to secondary amines by a number of reducing agents, including H_2 and a catalyst,[528] and $NaBH_4$-$TiCl_4$,[529] as well as by hydrolysis.[530]

A cyano group can be reduced to a methyl group by treatment with a terpene such as limonene

---

[522] For some other reagents that reduce azides to amines, see Bayley, Standring, and Knowles, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3633 (1978); Rolla, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 4327 (1982), and references cited in these papers.

[523] Reagen and Nickon, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4096 (1968).

[524] Lee and Closson, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 381 (1974).

[525] For a review see Newbold, in Patai, Ref. 121, pt. 2, pp. 601, 604–614.

[526] For example, see Ioffe, Sergeeva, and Dumpis, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **5,** 1683 (1969).

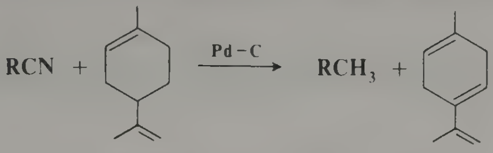
[527] Huisgen and Lux, *Chem. Ber.* **93,** 540 (1960).

[528] Enders, Hassel, Pieter, Renger, and Seebach, *Synthesis* 548 (1976).

[529] Kano, Tanaka, Sugino, Shibuya, and Hibino, *Synthesis* 741 (1980).

[530] Fridman, Mukhametshin, and Novikov, *Russ. Chem. Rev.* **40,** 34–50 (1971), pp. 41–42.

(which acts as reducing agent) in the presence of palladium–charcoal.[531] H_2 is also effective,[532]



Limonene

though higher temperatures are required. R may be alkyl or aryl.

OS **I,** 442; **III,** 475; **V,** 586; **60,** 104. Also see OS **V,** 43.

9-54 Reduction of Sulfonyl Halides and Sulfonic Acids to Mercaptans and Sulfides

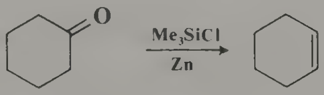
$$RSO_2Cl \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} RSH$$

Mercaptans can be prepared by the reduction of sulfonyl halides[533] with $LiAlH_4$. Usually, the reaction is carried out on aromatic sulfonyl chlorides. Zinc and acetic acid, and HI, also give the reduction. Sulfonic acids have been reduced to mercaptans with a mixture of triphenylphosphine and I_2.[534] Disulfides RSSR can also be produced.[535] For the reduction of sulfonyl chlorides to sulfinic acids, see **0-121.**

OS **I,** 504; **IV,** 695; **V,** 843.

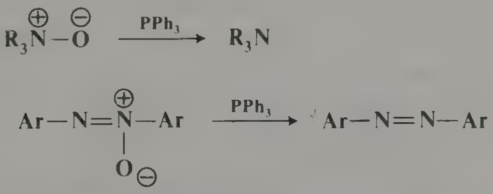
B. Reactions in Which an Oxygen Is Removed from the Substrate

9-55 Reduction of Cyclic Ketones to Cycloalkenes



Cyclic ketones can be directly reduced to cycloalkenes by treatment with chlorotrimethylsilane and zinc.[536] Halogen and ester groups are not affected. Yields are best for six-membered rings. There are many indirect methods for achieving this conversion, among them formation and decomposition of the tosylhydrazone (**7-11**).

9-56 Reduction of Amine Oxides and Azoxy Compounds



$$R_3\overset{\oplus}{N}-\overset{\ominus}{O} \xrightarrow{PPh_3} R_3N$$

$$Ar-N=\underset{\displaystyle O^{\ominus}}{\overset{\oplus}{N}}-Ar \xrightarrow{PPh_3} Ar-N=N-Ar$$

---

[531] Kindler and Lührs, *Chem. Ber.* **99,** 227 (1966), *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **707,** 26 (1967).

[532] See also Andrade, Maier, Zapf, and Schleyer, *Synthesis* 802 (1980); Brown and Foubister, *Synthesis* 1036 (1982).

[533] For a review, see Wardell, in Patai, Ref. 351, pp. 216–220.

[534] Oae and Togo, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 3802 (1983). See also Numata, Awano, and Oae, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **21,** 1235 (1980).

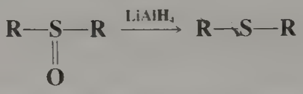
[535] For example, see Alper, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **8,** 677 (1969) [*Angew. Chem.* **81,** 706]; Chan, Montillier, Van Horn, and Harpp, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 7224 (1970). See also Olah, Narang, Field, and Karpeles, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 2408 (1981); Oae and Togo, *Synthesis* 152 (1982), *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **56,** 3813 (1983).

[536] Motherwell, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 935 (1973).

Amine oxides[537] and azoxy compounds (both alkyl and aryl)[538] can be reduced practically quantitatively with triphenylphosphine.[539] Other reducing agents, e.g., $LiAlH_4$, H_2-Ni, PCl_3, CS_2,[539a] and sulfur have also been used. Nitrile oxides[540] $R{-}C{\equiv}\overset{\oplus}{N}{-}\overset{\ominus}{O}$ can be reduced to nitriles with trialkylphosphines,[541] and isocyanates RNCO to isonitriles RNC with Cl_3SiH-Et_3N.[542]

OS **IV**, 166.

9-57 Reduction of Sulfoxides and Sulfones



$$R-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{S}-R \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} R-S-R$$

Sulfoxides can be reduced to sulfides, by $LiAlH_4$ or other reagents,[543] among them HI, Bu_3SnH,[544] $TiCl_2$,[545] $MeSiCl_3$-NaI,[546] PCl_3,[547] H_2-Pd-C,[548] acetyl chloride,[549] Ph_3P,[550] *t*-BuBr,[551] and tris(dimethylamino)phosphine-I_2.[552] Sulfones, however, are usually stable to reducing agents, though they have been reduced to sulfides with diisobutylaluminum hydride $(i\text{-}Bu)_2AlH$.[553] A less general reagent is $LiAlH_4$, which reduces some sulfones to sulfides, but not others.[554] Both sulfoxides and sulfones can be reduced by heating with sulfur (which is oxidized to SO_2), though the reaction with sulfoxides proceeds at a lower temperature. It has been shown by using substrate labeled with ^{35}S that sulfoxides simply give up the oxygen to the sulfur, but that the reaction with sulfones is more complex, since about 75% of the original radioactivity of the sulfone is lost.[555] This indicates that most of the sulfur in the sulfide product comes in this case from the *reagent*. There is no direct general method for the reduction of sulfones to sulfoxides, but an indirect method has been reported.[556] Selenoxides can be reduced to selenides with a number of reagents.[557]

9-58 Reduction of Hydroperoxides

$$R-O-O-H \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} ROH$$

---

[537] For a review of the reduction of heterocyclic amine oxides, see Katritzky and Lagowski, Ref. 360, pp. 166–231.

[538] For a review, see Newbold, in Patai, Ref. 121, pt. 2, pp. 602–603, 614–624.

[539] For a review, see Rowley, in Cadogan, "Organophosphorus Reagents in Organic Synthesis," pp. 295–350, Academic Press, New York, 1979.

[539a] Yoshimura, Asada, and Oae, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **55,** 3000 (1982).

[540] For a review of the chemistry of nitrile oxides, see Grundmann, *Fortschr. Chem. Forsch.* **7,** 62–127 (1966).

[541] Grundmann and Frommeld, *J. Org. Chem.* **30,** 2077 (1965).

[542] Baldwin, Derome, and Riordan, *Tetrahedron* **39,** 2989 (1983).

[543] For a review, see Drabowicz, Numata, and Oae, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **9,** 63–83 (1977). For a list of reagents with references, see Block, Ref. 375.

[544] Kozuka, Furumai, Akasaka, and Oae, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 496 (1974).

[545] Drabowicz and Mikołajczyk, *Synthesis* 138 (1978). For the use of $TiCl_3$, see Ho and Wong, *Synth. Commun.* **3,** 37 (1973).

[546] Olah, Husain, Singh, and Mehrotra, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 3667 (1983). See also Schmidt and Russ, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 822 (1981).

[547] Granoth, Kalir, and Pelah, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2424 (1969).

[548] Ogura, Yamashita, and Tsuchihashi, *Synthesis* 385 (1975).

[549] Numata and Oae, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 277 (1973).

[550] For a review, see Ref. 539, pp. 301–304.

[551] Tenca, Dossena, Marchelli, and Casnati, *Synthesis* 141 (1981).

[552] Olah, Gupta, and Narang, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 4503 (1978). See also Olah, Vankar, and Arvanaghi, *Synthesis* 984 (1979).

[553] Gardner, Kaiser, Krubiner, and Lucas, *Can. J. Chem.* **51,** 1419 (1973).

[554] Bordwell and McKellin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **73,** 2251 (1951); Whitney and Cram, *J. Org. Chem.* **35,** 3964 (1970); Weber, Stromquist, and Ito, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 2595 (1974).

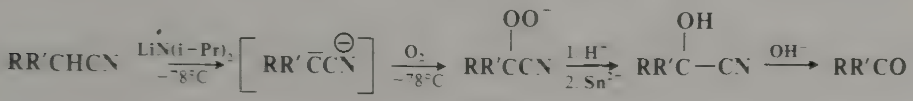
[555] Oae and Kawamura, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **36,** 163 (1963); Kiso and Oae, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **40,** 1722 (1967). See also Oae, Nakai, Tsuchida, and Furukawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **44,** 445 (1971); Ašperger, Hegedić, Pavlović, and Stefanović, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 3845 (1971).

[556] Still and Ablenas, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1617 (1983).

[557] See for example, Sakaki and Oae, *Chem. Lett.* 1003 (1977); Still, Hasan, and Turnbull, *Can. J. Chem.* **56,** 1423 (1978); Denis and Krief, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 544 (1980).

Hydroperoxides can be reduced to alcohols with $LiAlH_4$ or Ph_3P[558] or by catalytic hydrogenation. This functional group is very susceptible to catalytic hydrogenation, as shown by the fact that a double bond may be present in the same molecule without being reduced.[559]

The reaction is an important step in a method for the oxidative decyanation of nitriles containing an α-hydrogen.[560] The nitrile is first converted to the α-hydroperoxy nitrile by treatment with base



$$RR'CHCN \xrightarrow[-78^\circ C]{LiN(i\text{-}Pr)_2} \left[RR'\bar{C}CN^{\ominus}\right] \xrightarrow[-78^\circ C]{O_2} RR'\overset{OO^-}{\overset{|}{C}}CN \xrightarrow[2.\ Sn^{2+}]{1.\ H^+} RR'\overset{OH}{\overset{|}{C}}-CN \xrightarrow{OH^-} RR'CO$$

at −78°C followed by O_2. The hydroperoxy nitrile is then reduced to the cyanohydrin, which is cleaved (the reverse of **6-49**) to the corresponding ketone. The method is not successful for the preparation of aldehydes (R′ = H).

9-59 Reduction of Aliphatic Nitro Compounds to Oximes or Nitriles

$$RCH_2NO_2 \xrightarrow[HOAc]{Zn} RCH{=}NOH$$

Nitro compounds that contain an α-hydrogen can be reduced to oximes with zinc dust in HOAc[561] or with other reagents, among them Co-Cu(II) salts in alkanediamines,[562] $CrCl_2$,[563] and (for α-nitro sulfones) $NaNO_2$.[564]

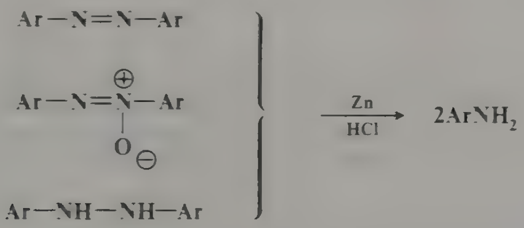
Primary aliphatic nitro compounds can be reduced to nitriles with sodium dihydro(trithio)borate.[565] Secondary compounds give mostly ketones (e.g., nitrocyclohexane → 45% cyclohexanone, 30% cyclohexanone oxime, and 19% N-cyclohexylhydroxylamine). Tertiary aliphatic nitro compounds do not react with this reagent. See also **9-48**.

$$RCH_2NO_2 \xrightarrow{NaBH_2S_3} RC{\equiv}N$$

OS IV, 932.

C. Reduction with Cleavage

9-60 Reduction of Azo, Azoxy, and Hydrazo Compounds to Amines



$$\left.\begin{array}{c} Ar-N{=}N-Ar \\ Ar-N{=}\overset{\oplus}{\underset{O^{\ominus}}{N}}-Ar \\ Ar-NH-NH-Ar \end{array}\right\} \xrightarrow[HCl]{Zn} 2ArNH_2$$

---

[558] For a review, see Ref. 539, pp. 318–320.

[559] Rebeller and Clément, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1302 (1964).

[560] Freerksen, Selikson, Wroble, Kyler, and Watt, *J. Org. Chem.* **48**, 4087 (1983). This paper also reports several other methods for achieving this conversion.

[561] Johnson and Degering, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **61**, 3194 (1939).

[562] Knifton, *J. Org. Chem.* **38**, 3296 (1973).

[563] Hanson and Organ, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 1182 (1970); Hanson, *Synthesis* 1–8 (1974), pp. 7–8.

[564] Zeilstra and Engberts, *Synthesis* 49 (1974).

Azo, azoxy, and hydrazo compounds can all be reduced to amines.[565] Metals (notably zinc) and acids, and $Na_2S_2O_4$, are frequently used as reducing agents. Borane reduces azo compounds to amines, though it does not reduce nitro compounds.[566] $LiAlH_4$ does not reduce hydrazo compounds or azo compounds, though with the latter, hydrazo compounds are sometimes isolated. With azoxy compounds, $LiAlH_4$ gives only azo compounds (**9-56**).

OS **I,** 49; **II,** 35, 39; **III,** 360. Also see OS **II,** 290.

9-61 Reduction of Peroxides

$$\mathbf{R{-}O{-}O{-}R \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} 2ROH}$$

Peroxides are cleaved to 2 moles of alcohol by $LiAlH_4$ or by catalytic hydrogenation. Peroxides can be reduced to ethers with $P(OEt)_3$.[567]

$$\mathbf{ROOR + P(OEt)_3 \longrightarrow ROR + OP(OEt)_3}$$

In a similar reaction, disulfides RSSR′ can be converted to sulfides RSR′ by treatment with tris(diethylamino)phosphine $(Et_2N)_3P$.[568]

OS **58,** 138.

9-62 Reduction of Disulfides to Mercaptans

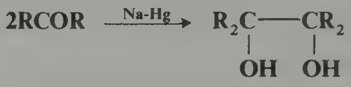
$$\mathbf{RSSR \xrightarrow[H^+]{Zn} 2RSH}$$

Disulfides can be reduced to mercaptans by mild reducing agents,[569] such as zinc and dilute acid or Ph_3P and H_2O.[570] The reaction can also be accomplished simply by heating with alkali.[571] $LiAlH_4$ has also been used.

OS **II,** 580. Also see OS **IV,** 295.

D. Reductive Coupling

9-63 Bimolecular Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones to Pinacols



$$\mathbf{2RCOR \xrightarrow{Na\text{-}Hg} \underset{OH}{R_2C}{-}\underset{OH}{CR_2}}$$

Pinacols can be synthesized by reduction of aldehydes and ketones with active metals such as sodium, magnesium, or aluminum.[572] Aromatic ketones give better yields than aliphatic ones. The use of a $Mg\text{-}MgI_2$ mixture has been called the *Gomberg-Bachmann pinacol synthesis*. As with a number of other reactions involving sodium, there is a direct electron transfer here, converting the ketone or aldehyde to a ketyl, which dimerizes.

---

[565] For a review, see Newbold, in Patai, Ref. 121, pt. 2, pp. 629–637.

[566] Brown and Subba Rao, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 681 (1960).

[567] Horner and Jurgeleit, *Liebigs Ann. Chem.* **591,** 138 (1955). See also Ref. 539, pp. 320–322.

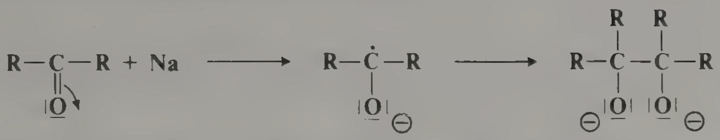
[568] Harpp, Gleason, and Snyder, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 4181 (1968); Harpp and Gleason, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 2437 (1971).

[569] For a review, see Wardell, in Patai, Ref. 351, pp. 220–229.

[570] Overman, Smoot, and Overman, *Synthesis* 59 (1974).

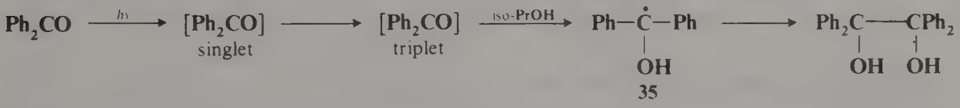
[571] For discussions, see Danehy and Hunter, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 2047 (1967); Danehy, in Kharasch and Meyers, Ref. 350, pp. 337–349.

[572] For a convenient method, see Schreibmann, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 4271 (1970).



Other reagents have been used, including SmI_2,[573] Ce-I_2,[574] and a reagent prepared from $TiCl_4$ and Mg amalgam.[575] Unsymmetrical coupling between a ketone R^1COR^2 and another ketone R^3COZ, where Z = CN, COOH, COOEt, or pyridyl, has been achieved with $TiCl_3$ in aqueous solution.[576] This reaction can also be accomplished with an α,β-unsaturated aldehyde R′CH=CH—CHO instead of R^1COR^2.[577]

The dimerization of ketones to pinacols can also be accomplished photochemically; indeed, this is one of the most common photochemical reactions.[578] The substrate, which is usually a diaryl or aryl alkyl ketone (though a few aromatic aldehydes and dialkyl ketones have been dimerized), is irradiated with uv light in the presence of a hydrogen donor such as isopropyl alcohol, toluene, or an amine.[579] In the case of benzophenone, irradiated in the presence of isopropyl alcohol, the ketone molecule initially undergoes $n \rightarrow \pi^*$ excitation, and the singlet species thus formed crosses to the T_1 state with a very high efficiency. The T_1 species abstracts hydrogen from the alcohol (p. 216)



and then dimerizes. The iso-PrO• radical, which is formed by this process, donates H• to another molecule of ground-state benzophenone, producing acetone and another molecule of **35**. This

$$\text{iso-PrO}\cdot + Ph_2CO \longrightarrow Me_2CO + \underset{\textbf{35}}{Ph_2COH}$$

mechanism[580] predicts that the quantum yield for the disappearance of benzoquinone should be 2, since each quantum of light results in the conversion of 2 moles of benzophenone to **35.** Under favorable experimental conditions the observed quantum yield does approach 2. Benzophenone abstracts hydrogen with very high efficiency. Other aromatic ketones are dimerized with lower quantum yields, and some (e.g., *p*-aminobenzophenone, *o*-methylacetophenone) cannot be dimerized at all in isopropyl alcohol (though *p*-aminobenzophenone, for example, can be dimerized in cyclohexane[581]). The reaction has also been carried out electrochemically.[582]

---

[573] Namy, Souppe, and Kagan, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 765 (1983).

[574] Imamoto, Kusumoto, Hatanaka, and Yokoyama, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 1353 (1982).

[575] Corey, Danheiser, and Chandrasekaran, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 260 (1976); Pons, Zahra, and Santelli, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **22,** 3965 (1981). For a review of such coupling with Ti and V halides, see Lai, *Org. Prep. Proced. Int.* **12,** 363–391 (1980).

[576] Clerici and Porta, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 2852 (1982), *Tetrahedron* **39,** 1239 (1983).

[577] Clerici and Porta, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1690 (1983).

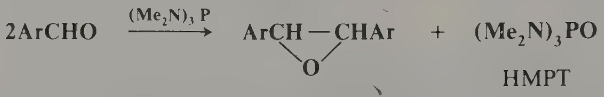
[578] For reviews, see Schönberg, "Preparative Organic Photochemistry," pp. 203–217, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1968; Neckers, "Mechanistic Organic Photochemistry," pp. 163–177, Reinhold, New York, 1967; Calvert and Pitts, "Photochemistry," pp. 532–536, Wiley, New York, 1966; Turro, "Modern Molecular Photochemistry," pp. 363–385, Benjamin/Cummings, Menlo Park, Calif., 1978; Kan, "Organic Photochemistry," pp. 222–229, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1966.

[579] For a review of amines as hydrogen donors in this reaction, see Cohen, Parola, and Parsons, *Chem. Rev.* **73,** 141–161 (1973).

[580] For some of the evidence for this mechanism, see Pitts, Letsinger, Taylor, Patterson, Recktenwald, and Martin, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 1068 (1959); Hammond and Moore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 6334 (1959); Moore, Hammond, and Foss, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **83,** 2789 (1961); Huyser and Neckers, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 3641 (1963). See also Weiner, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **93,** 425 (1971); Schuster and Weil, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **95,** 4091 (1973). See also Pfau, Gobert, Gramain, and Lhomme, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 509 (1978).

OS **I,** 459; **II,** 71.

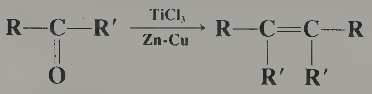
9-64 Bimolecular Reduction of Aldehydes and Ketones to Epoxides



Aromatic aldehydes can be dimerized to epoxides by treatment with hexamethylphosphorus triamide.[583] The reagent[584] is converted to hexamethylphosphoric triamide (HMPT). The reaction can be used for the preparation of mixed epoxides by the use of a mixture of two aldehydes in which the less reactive aldehyde predominates. Epoxides have also been prepared by treatment of aromatic aldehydes or ketones with the anions $(Me_2N)_2\overset{\ominus}{P}{=}O$ and $(EtO)_2\overset{\ominus}{P}{=}O$ (derived, respectively, by treatment with an alkali metal of HMPT or triethyl phosphite).[585]

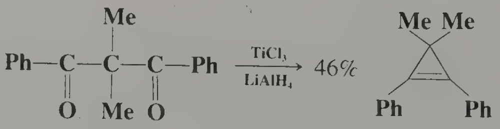
OS **V,** 358.

9-65 Bimolecular Reduction of Aldehydes or Ketones to Alkenes



$$R{-}\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}{-}R' \xrightarrow[\text{Zn-Cu}]{TiCl_3} R{-}\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{C}{=}\underset{\underset{R'}{|}}{C}{-}R$$

Aldehydes and ketones, both aromatic and aliphatic (including cyclic ketones), can be converted in high yields to dimeric alkenes[586] by treatment with $TiCl_3$ and a zinc–copper couple.[587] The reaction has also been accomplished with Mg and a $TiCl_3$–THF complex,[588] with $TiCl_4$ and Zn,[589] with $TiCl_3$-$LiAlH_4$,[590] with $TiCl_3$ and K or Li,[591] and with certain compounds prepared from WCl_6 and either lithium, lithium iodide, $LiAlH_4$, or an alkyllithium[592] (see **7-21**). The reaction has been used to convert dialdehydes and diketones to cycloalkenes.[593] Rings of 3 to 16 and 22 members have been closed in this way, e.g.,[594]



---

[581] Porter and Suppan, *Proc. Chem. Soc.* 191 (1964).

[582] For a review, see Baizer and Petrovich, *Prog. Phys. Org. Chem.* **7,** 189–227 (1970).

[583] Mark, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **85,** 1884 (1963); Newman and Blum, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **86,** 5598 (1964).

[584] For the preparation of the reagent, see Mark, *Org. Synth.* **V,** 602.

[585] Normant, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 3601 (1966).

[586] For reviews, see McMurry, *Acc. Chem. Res.* **16,** 405–411 (1983); Lai, Ref. 575.

[587] McMurry, Fleming, Kees, and Krepski, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3255 (1978); Castedo, Saá, Suau, and Tojo, *J. Org. Chem.* **46,** 4292 (1981).

[588] Tyrlik and Wolochowicz, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 2147 (1973).

[589] Mukaiyama, Sato, and Hanna, *Chem. Lett.* 1041 (1973); Lenoir, *Synthesis* 553 (1977); Lenoir and Burghard, *J. Chem. Res., Synop.* 396 (1980).

[590] McMurry and Fleming, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **96,** 4708 (1974); Dams, Malinowski, and Geise, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Belges* **91,** 149, 311 (1982); Bottino, Finocchiaro, Libertini, Reale, and Recca, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 2* 77 (1982). This reagent has been reported to give capricious results; see McMurry and Fleming, Ref. 591.

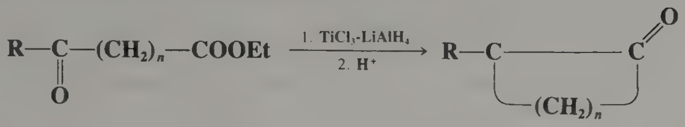
[591] McMurry and Fleming, *J. Org. Chem.* **41,** 896 (1976); Richardson, *Synth. Commun.* **11,** 895 (1981).

[592] Sharpless, Umbreit, Nieh, and Flood, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **94,** 6538 (1972); Fujiwara, Ishikawa, Akiyama, and Teranishi, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 2477 (1978); Dams, Malinowski, and Geise, Ref. 590. See also Petit, Mortreux, and Petit, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 341 (1984).

[593] Baumstark, Bechara, and Semigran, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3265 (1976); McMurry et al., Ref. 587.

[594] Baumstark McCloskey, and Witt, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3609 (1978).

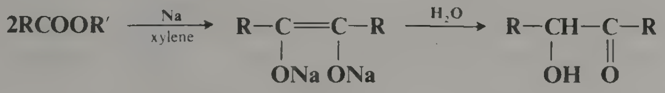
The same reaction on a keto ester gives a cycloalkanone.[595]



Unsymmetrical alkenes can be prepared from a mixture of two ketones, if one is in excess.[596] The mechanism consists of initial coupling of two radical species to give a 1,2-dioxygen compound (a titanium pinacolate), which is then deoxygenated.[597]

OS **60,** 113.

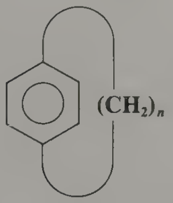
9-66 The Acyloin Condensation



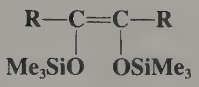
$$2\mathrm{RCOOR'} \xrightarrow[\text{xylene}]{\mathrm{Na}} \underset{\mathrm{ONa}\ \ \mathrm{ONa}}{\mathrm{R{-}C{=}C{-}R}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \underset{\mathrm{OH}\ \ \ \mathrm{O}}{\mathrm{R{-}CH{-}\overset{}{C}{-}R}}$$

36

When carboxylic esters are heated with sodium in refluxing ether or benzene, a bimolecular reduction takes place,and the product is an α-hydroxy ketone (called an acyloin).[598] The reaction, called the *acyloin condensation,* is quite successful when R is alkyl. Acyloins with long chains have been prepared in this way, for example, R = $C_{17}H_{35}$, but for high-molecular-weight esters, toluene or xylene is used as the solvent. The acyloin condensation has been used with great success, in boiling xylene, to prepare cyclic acyloins from diesters.[599] The yields are 50 to 60% for the preparation of 6- and 7-membered rings, 30 to 40% for 8- and 9-membered,[600] and 60 to 95% for rings of 10 to 20 members. Even larger rings have been closed in this manner. This is one of the best ways of closing rings of 10 members or more. The reaction has been used to close 4-membered rings,[601] though this is generally not successful. Small traces of oxygen greatly reduce the yields; hence the reaction must be conducted in an extremely pure nitrogen atmosphere. The presence of double or triple bonds does not interfere.[602] Even a benzene ring may be present, and many paracyclophane derivatives (**37**) with n = 9 or more have been synthesized in this manner.[603]



37



$$\underset{\mathrm{Me_3SiO}\quad\ \mathrm{OSiMe_3}}{\mathrm{R{-}C{=}C{-}R}}$$

38

---

[595] McMurry and Miller, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 1660 (1983).

[596] McMurry et al., Ref. 587; Nishida and Kataoka, *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 1612 (1978).

[597] McMurry et al., Ref. 587; Dams, Malinowski, Westdorp, and Geise, *J. Org. Chem.* **47,** 248 (1982).

[598] For a review, see Bloomfield, Owsley, and Nelke, *Org. React.* **23,** 259–403 (1976).

[599] For a review of cyclizations by means of the acyloin condensation, see Finley, *Chem. Rev.* **64,** 573–589 (1964).

[600] Yields of nine-membered ring products can be increased by adding a homologous diester, e.g., dimethyl tridecanedioate: Finley and Sasaki, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **88,** 4267 (1966).

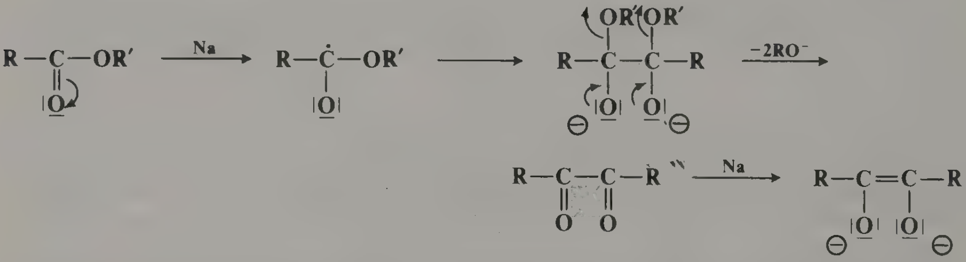
[601] Cope and Herrick, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **72,** 983 (1950); Bloomfield and Irelan, *J. Org. Chem.* **31,** 2017 (1966).

[602] Cram and Gaston, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 6386 (1960).

[603] For a review, see Cram, *Rec. Chem. Prog.* **20,** 71 (1959).

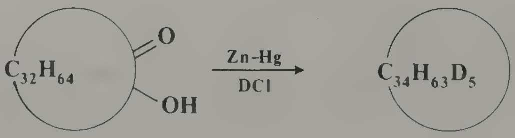
Yields in the acyloin condensation can be improved by running the reaction in the presence of chlorotrimethylsilane Me_3SiCl, in which case the dianion **36** is converted to the bis silyl enol ether **38,** which can be isolated and subsequently hydrolyzed to the acyloin with aqueous acid.[604] This is now the standard way to conduct the acyloin condensation. Among other things, this method inhibits the Dieckmann condensation[605] (**0-111**), which otherwise competes with the acyloin condensation when a five-, six-, or seven-membered ring can be closed (note that the ring formed by a Dieckmann condensation is always one carbon atom smaller than that formed by an acyloin condensation of the same substrate). The Me_3SiCl method is especially good for the closing of four-membered rings.[606]

The mechanism is not known with certainty, but it is usually presumed that the diketone RCOCOR is an intermediate,[607] since small amounts of it are usually isolated as side products, and when it is resistant to reduction (e.g., *t*-Bu—CO—CO—*t*-Bu), it is the major product. A possible sequence (analogous to that of **9-63**) is



In order to account for the ready formation of large rings, which means that the two ends of the chain must approach each other even though this is conformationally unfavorable for long chains, it may be postulated that the two ends become attached to nearby sites on the surface of the sodium.

The acyloin condensation was used in an ingenious manner to prepare the first reported catenane (see p. 80). The catenane (**41**) was prepared by a statistical synthesis (p. 81) in the following manner: An acyloin condensation was performed on the diethyl ester of the C_{34} dicarboxylic acid (tetratriacontandioic acid) to give the cyclic acyloin **39.** This was reduced by a Clemmensen reduction with DCl in D_2O instead of HCl in H_2O, thus producing a C_{34} cycloalkane containing deuterium (**40**):[608]



39 **40**

---

[604] Schräpler and Rühlmann, *Chem. Ber.* **97,** 1383 (1964). For a review of the Me_3SiCl method, see Rühlmann, *Synthesis* 236–253 (1971).

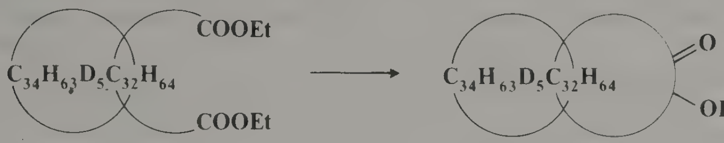
[605] Bloomfield, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 591 (1968).

[606] Bloomfield, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 587 (1968); Gream and Worthley, *Tetrahedron Lett.* 3319 (1968); Wynberg, Reiffers, and Strating, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **89,** 982 (1970); Bloomfield, Martin, and Nelke, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 96 (1972). See also Delbaere and Whitham, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 879 (1974).

[607] Another mechanism, involving addition of the ketyl to another molecule of ester (rather than a dimerization of two ketyl radicals), in which a diketone is not an intermediate, has been proposed: Bloomfield, Owsley, Ainsworth, and Robertson, *J. Org. Chem.* **40,** 393 (1975).

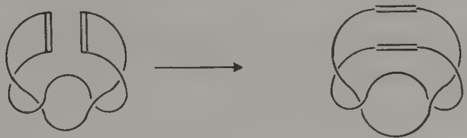
[608] This work was done by Wasserman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **82,** 4433 (1960). For other statistical syntheses, see Agam and Zilkha, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 5214 (1976); Schill, Schweickert, Fritz, and Vetter, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **22,** 889 (1983) [*Angew. Chem.* **95,** 909].

40 contained about five atoms of deuterium per molecule. The reaction was then repeated, this time *in a* 1 : 1 *mixture of xylene and* **40** *as solvent.* It was hoped that in some of the molecules of ester would be threaded through **40** before they closed:



41

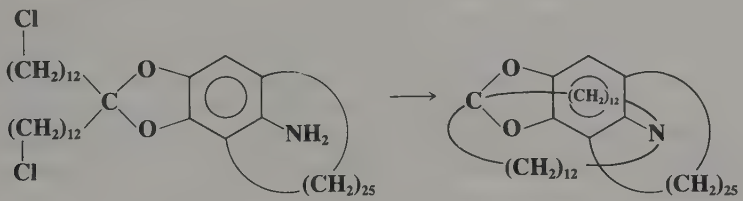
The first thing that was done with the product was to remove by chromatography the **40** that had been used as the solvent. The remaining material still contained deuterium, as determined by ir spectra, even with all the **40** gone. This was strong evidence that the material consisted not only of **39,** but also of **41.** As further evidence, the mixture was oxidized to open up the acyloin rings (reaction **9-7**). From the oxidation product was isolated the C_{34} diacid (as expected) *containing no deuterium,* and **40,** containing deuterium. The total yield of **41** and **39** was 5 to 20%, but the percentage of **41** in this mixture was only about 1 to 2%.[608] This synthesis of a catenane produced only a small yield and relied on chance, on the probability that a diester molecule would be threaded through **40** before it closed. Another statistical synthesis makes use of the olefin metathesis reaction (**8-41**).[609] When this is applied to large-ring dienes, some of the molecules become twisted (**42**)



42 **43**

before the reaction takes place. When such a molecule reacts, the product is the catenane **43.** Mass spectral evidence shows that some catenanes are indeed formed.

A catenane has also been prepared by a *directed* synthesis.[610] The key step here was formation of a tertiary amine by **0-45.**



44 **45**

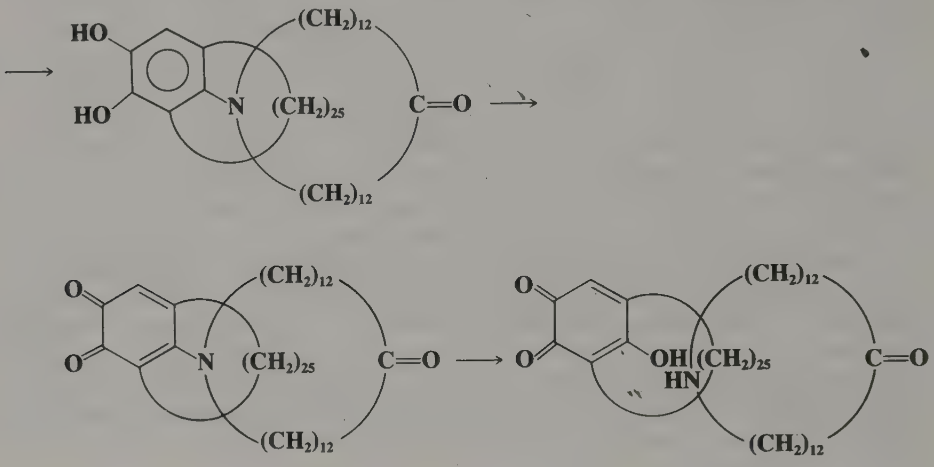
---

[609] Wolovsky, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2132 (1970); Ben-Efraim, Batich, and Wasserman, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **92,** 2133 (1970).

[610] Schill and Lüttringhaus, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 546 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **76,** 567]; Schill, *Chem. Ber.* **98,** 2906 (1965), **99,** 2689 (1966), **100,** 2021 (1967); Logemann, Rissler, Schill, and Fritz, *Chem. Ber.* **114,** 2245 (1981). For the preparation of [3]catenanes by a similar approach, see Schill and Zürcher, *Chem. Ber.* **110,** 2046 (1977); Schill, Rissler, Fritz, and Vetter, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 187 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 197]. See also Dietrich-Bucheker, Sauvage, and Kintzinger, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 5095 (1983); Dietrich-Bucheker, Sauvage, and Kern, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **106,** 3043 (1984).

Sterically, one of the halide groups of **44** is above the plane, and the other below it, so that ring closure must occur *through* the 28-membered ring. After **45** was formed, the acetal was cleaved (**0-7**). It was then necessary to cleave the remaining bond holding the two rings together, i.e., the C—N bond. This was done by oxidation to the *ortho*-quinone (**9-4**), which converted the amine function to an enamine, which was hydrolyzable (**6-2**) with acid to give the catenane (**46**):

45

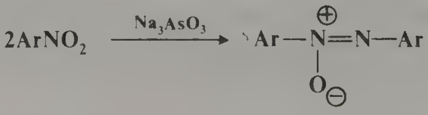


46

The original large ring (of **44**) was closed by a Thorpe–Ziegler reaction (**6-48**) after an attempted acyloin condensation proved unsuccessful.

OS **II,** 114; **IV,** 840; **57,** 1.

9-67 Reduction of Nitro to Azoxy Compounds



$$2ArNO_2 \xrightarrow{Na_3AsO_3} Ar-\overset{\oplus}{\underset{\underset{O^{\ominus}}{|}}{N}}=N-Ar$$

Azoxy compounds can be obtained from nitro compounds with certain reducing agents, notably sodium arsenite, sodium ethoxide, NaTeH,[611] lead,[612] $NaBH_4$-$CoCl_2$,[613] and glucose.[614] The most probable mechanism with most reagents is that one molecule of nitro compound is reduced to a nitroso compound and another to a hydroxylamine (**9-50**), and these combine (**2-53**). The combination step is rapid compared to the reduction process.[615] Nitroso compounds can be reduced to azoxy compounds with triethyl phosphite or triphenylphosphine[616] or with an alkaline aqueous solution of an alcohol.[617]

OS **II,** 57.

---

[611] Osuka, Shimizu, and Suzuki, *Chem. Lett.* 1373 (1983).

[612] Azoo and Grimshaw, *J. Chem. Soc. C* 2403 (1968).

[613] Satoh, Suzuki, Kikuchi, and Okada, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) 1626 (1970).

[614] For a discussion, see Sandler and Karo, Ref. 124, vol. 2, pp. 367–374 (1971).

[615] Ogata and Mibae, *J. Org. Chem.* **27,** 2048 (1962).

[616] Bunyan and Cadogan, *J. Chem. Soc.* 42 (1963).

[617] See, for example, Hutton and Waters, *J. Chem. Soc. B* 191 (1968). See also Porta, Pizzotti, and Cenini, *J. Organomet. Chem.* **222,** 279 (1981).

9-68 Reduction of Nitro to Azo Compounds

$$2ArNO_2 \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} Ar{-}N{=}N{-}Ar$$

Nitro compounds can be reduced to azo compounds with various reducing agents, of which $LiAlH_4$ and zinc and alkali are the most common.[618] With many of these reagents, slight differences in conditions may lead either to the azo or azoxy (reaction **9-67**) compound. Analogously to **9-67,** this reaction may be looked on as a combination of $ArN{=}O$ and $ArNH_2$ (**2-52**). However, when the reducing agent was $HOCH_2CH_2ONa$[619] or $NaBH_4$,[620] it was shown that azoxy compounds were intermediates. Nitroso compounds can be reduced to azo compounds with $LiAlH_4$.

OS **III,** 103.

9-69 Reduction of Nitro to Hydrazo Compounds

$$2ArNO_2 \xrightarrow[NaOH]{Zn} Ar{-}NH{-}NH{-}Ar$$

Nitro compounds can be reduced to hydrazo compounds with zinc and sodium hydroxide, or electrolytically, or with $LiAlH_4$ mixed with a metal chloride such as $TiCl_4$ or VCl_3.[621] The reduction has also been accomplished with hydrazine hydrate and Raney nickel.[622]

Reactions in Which an Organic Substrate is Both Oxidized and Reduced

Some reactions that belong in this category have been considered in earlier chapters. Among these are the Tollens' condensation (**6-46**), the benzil–benzilic acid rearrangement (**8-7**), and the Wallach rearrangement (**8-47**).

9-70 The Cannizzaro Reaction

$$2ArCHO \xrightarrow{NaOH} ArCH_2OH + ArCOO^-$$

Aromatic aldehydes, and aliphatic ones with no α-hydrogen, give the *Cannizzaro reaction* when treated with NaOH or other strong bases.[623] In this reaction one molecule of aldehyde oxidizes another to the acid and is itself reduced to the primary alcohol. Aldehydes with an α-hydrogen do not give the reaction, because when these compounds are treated with base the aldol condensation (**6-40**) is much faster.[624] Normally, the best yield of acid or alcohol is 50% each, but this can be altered in certain cases. When the aldehyde contains a hydroxide group in the ring, excess base oxidizes the alcohol formed and the acid can be prepared in high yield (the OH^- is reduced to H_2). On the other hand, high yields of alcohol can be obtained from almost any aldehyde by running the reaction in the presence of formaldehyde. In this case the formaldehyde reduces the aldehyde to alcohol and is itself oxidized to formic acid. In such a case, where the oxidant aldehyde differs from the reductant aldehyde, the reaction is called the *crossed Cannizzaro reaction*. The Tollens' condensation (**6-46**) includes a crossed Cannizzaro reaction as its last step. α-Keto aldehydes give internal Cannizzaro reactions:

---

[618] For a discussion, see Sandler and Karo, Ref. 124, vol. 2, pp. 313–317 (1971).

[619] Tadros, Ishak, and Bassili, *J. Chem. Soc.* 627 (1959).

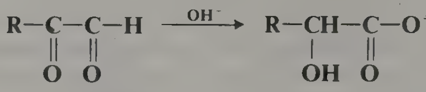
[620] Hutchins, Lamson, Rufa, Milewski, and Maryanoff, *J. Org. Chem.* **36,** 803 (1971).

[621] Olah, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **81,** 3165 (1959).

[622] Furst and Moore, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **79,** 5492 (1957).

[623] For a review, see Geissman, *Org. React.* **2,** 94–113 (1944).

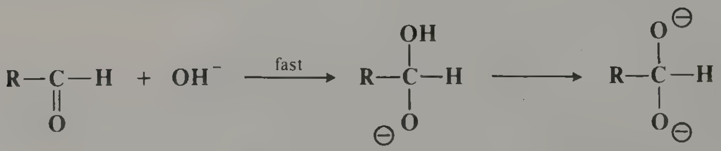
[624] An exception is cyclopropanecarboxaldehyde: van der Maeden, Steinberg, and de Boer, *Recl. Trav. Chim. Pays-Bas* **91,** 221 (1972).



$$R{-}\underset{\|}{\overset{}{C}}{-}\underset{\|}{C}{-}H \xrightarrow{OH^-} R{-}CH(OH){-}C(=O){-}O^-$$

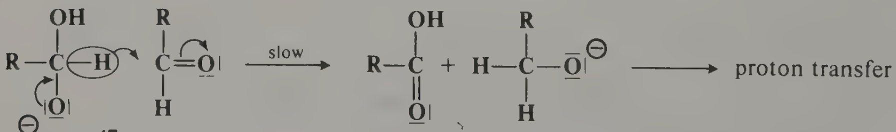
This product is also obtained on alkaline hydrolysis of compounds of the formula $RCOCHX_2$. Similar reactions have been performed on α-keto acetals[625] and γ-keto aldehydes.

The mechanism[626] of the Cannizzaro reaction[627] involves a hydride shift (an example of mechanism type 2, p. 1050). First OH^- adds to the C=O to give **47**, which may lose a proton in the basic solution to give the diion **48**.

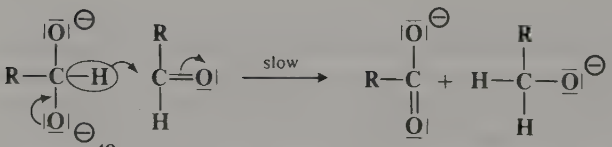


47 **48**

The strong electron-donating character of O^- greatly facilitates the ability of the aldehydic hydrogen to leave with its electron pair. Of course, this effect is even stronger in **48**. When the hydride does leave, it attacks another molecule of aldehyde. The hydride may come from **47** or **48**:



47



48

If the hydride ion comes from **47**, the final step is a rapid proton transfer. In the other case, the acid salt is formed directly, and the alkoxide ion acquires a proton from the solvent. Evidence for this mechanism is: (1) The reaction may be first order in base and second order in substrate (thus going through **47**) or, at higher base concentrations, second order in each (going through **48**); and

---

[625] Thompson, *J. Org. Chem.* **32,** 3947 (1967).

[626] For evidence that an SET pathway may intervene, see Ashby, Coleman, and Gamasa, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 851 (1983).

[627] See for example, Swain, Powell, Sheppard, and Morgan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3576 (1979).

(2) when the reaction was run in D_2O, the recovered alcohol contained no α-deuterium,[628] indicating that the hydrogen comes from another mole of aldehyde and not from the medium.[629]

OS **I,** 276; **II,** 590; **III,** 538; **IV,** 110.

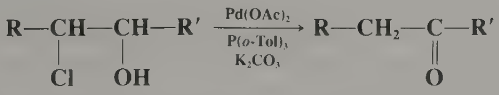
9-71 The Tishchenko Reaction

$$2\text{RCHO} \xrightarrow{\text{Al(OEt)}_3} \text{RCOOCH}_2\text{R}$$

When aldehydes, with or without α-hydrogen, are treated with aluminum ethoxide, one molecule is oxidized and another reduced, as in **9-70,** but here they are found as the ester. The process is called the *Tishchenko reaction.* Crossed Tishchenko reactions are also possible. With more strongly basic alkoxides, such as magnesium or sodium alkoxides, aldehydes with an α-hydrogen give the aldol condensation. Like **9-70,** this reaction has a mechanism that involves hydride transfer.[630] The Tishchenko reaction can also be catalyzed by ruthenium complexes,[631] by lithium tungsten dioxide $LiWO_2$,[632] by boric acid,[633] and, for aromatic aldehydes, by disodium tetracarbonylferrate $Na_2Fe(CO)_4$.[634]

OS **I,** 104.

9-72 Conversion of Halohydrins to Ketones



$$\underset{\text{Cl}}{\underset{|}{\text{R—CH}}}\text{—}\underset{\text{OH}}{\underset{|}{\text{CH}}}\text{—R}' \xrightarrow[\text{P}(o\text{-Tol})_3,\ \text{K}_2\text{CO}_3]{\text{Pd(OAc)}_2} \text{R—CH}_2\text{—}\underset{\text{O}}{\underset{\|}{\text{C}}}\text{—R}'$$

Halohydrins are converted to ketones by treatment with palladium acetate and tri-*o*-tolylphosphine in the presence of K_2CO_3.[635] One carbon atom of the substrate is oxidized; the other reduced.

9-73 The Willgerodt Reaction

$$\text{ArCOCH}_3 \xrightarrow{(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{S}_x} \text{ArCH}_2\text{CONH}_2 + \text{ArCH}_2\text{COO}^- \ \text{NH}_4^+$$

In the *Willgerodt reaction* a straight- or branched-chain aryl alkyl ketone is converted to the amide and/or the ammonium salt of the acid by heating with ammonium polysulfide.[636] The carbonyl group of the product is always at the end of the chain. Thus $ArCOCH_2CH_3$ gives the amide and the salt of $ArCH_2CH_2COOH$, and $ArCOCH_2CH_2CH_3$ gives derivatives of $ArCH_2CH_2CH_2COOH$. However, yields sharply decrease with increasing length of chain. The reaction has also been carried out on vinyl and ethynyl aromatic compounds and on aliphatic ketones, but yields are usually lower in these cases. The use of sulfur and a dry primary or secondary amine (or ammonia) as the reagent is called the *Kindler modification* of the Willgerodt reaction.[637] The product in this case is $Ar(CH_2)_nCSNR_2$, which can be hydrolyzed to the acid.[638] Particularly good results are obtained with morpholine as the amine. For volatile amines the HCl salts can be used instead, with NaOAc in DMF at 100°C.[639]

---

[628] Fredenhagen and Bonhoeffer, *Z. Phys. Chem., Abt. A* **181,** 379 (1938); Hauser, Hamrick, and Stewart, *J. Org. Chem.* **21,** 260 (1956).

[629] When the reaction was run at 100°C in MeOH-H_2O, isotopic exchange was observed (the product from PhCDO had lost some of its deuterium): Swain, Powell, Lynch, Alpha, and Dunlap, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **101,** 3584 (1979). Side reactions were postulated to account for the loss of deuterium. See however, Chung, *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Commun.* 480 (1982).

[630] See, for example, Zakharkin and Sorokina, *J. Gen. Chem. USSR* **37,** 525 (1967); Saegusa, Ueshima, and Kitagawa, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **42,** 248 (1969); Ogata, Kawasaki, and Kishi, *Tetrahedron* **23,** 825 (1967); Ogata and Kishi, *Tetrahedron* **25,** 929 (1969).

[631] Ito, Horino, Koshiro, and Yamamoto, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **55,** 504 (1982).

[632] Villacorta and San Filippo, *J. Org. Chem.* **48,** 1151 (1983).

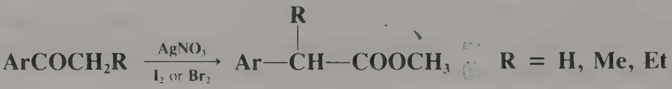
[633] Stapp, *J. Org. Chem.* **38,** 1433 (1973).

[634] Yamashita, Watanabe, Mitsudo, and Takegami, *Bull. Chem. Soc. Jpn.* **49,** 3597 (1976).

[635] Tsuji, Nagashima, and Sato, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **23,** 3085 (1982). For a different reagent, see Momose and Yamada, *Tetrahedron Lett.* **24,** 2669 (1983).

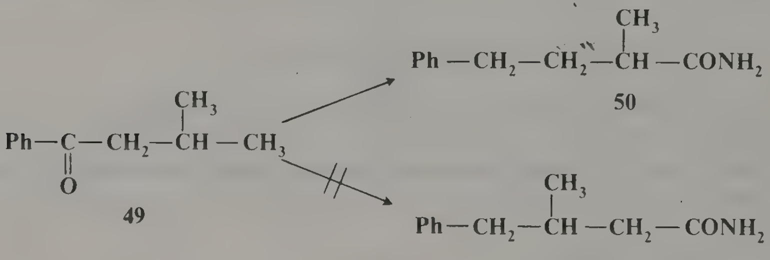
[636] For reviews, see Brown, *Synthesis* 358–375 (1975); Wegler, Kühle, and Schäfer, *Newer Methods Prep. Org. Chem.* **3,** 1–51 (1964).

Alkyl aryl ketones can be converted to arylacetic acid derivatives in an entirely different manner. The reaction consists of treatment of the substrate with silver nitrate and I_2 or Br_2,[640] or with thallium nitrate, MeOH, and trimethyl orthoformate adsorbed on K-10, an acidic clay.[641]



$$ArCOCH_2R \xrightarrow[I_2 \text{ or } Br_2]{AgNO_3} Ar{-}\overset{\displaystyle R}{\overset{|}{C}H}{-}COOCH_3 \qquad R = H, Me, Et$$

The mechanism of the Willgerodt reaction is not completely known, but some conceivable mechanisms can be excluded. Thus, one might suppose that the alkyl group becomes completely detached from the ring and then attacks it with its other end. However, this possibility is ruled out by experiments such as the following: When isobutyl phenyl ketone (**49**) is subjected to the Willgerodt reaction, the product is **50**, not **51**, which would arise if the end carbon of the ketone became bonded to the ring in the product:[642]



49 **50** **51**

This also excludes a cyclic-intermediate mechanism similar to that of the Claisen rearrangement (**8-37**). Another important fact is that the reaction is successful for singly branched side chains, such as **49**, but not for doubly branched side chains, as in $PhCOCMe_3$.[642] Still another piece of evidence is that compounds oxygenated along the chain give the same products; thus $PhCOCH_2CH_3$, $PhCH_2COMe$, and $PhCH_2CH_2CHO$ all give $PhCH_2CH_2CONH_2$.[643] All these facts point to a mechanism consisting of consecutive oxidations and reductions along the chain. Just what form these take is not certain, though a number of theories have been proposed. Initial reduction to the hydrocarbon may be ruled out, since alkylbenzenes do not give the reaction. In certain cases imines[644] or enamines[645] have been isolated from primary and secondary amines, respectively, and these have been shown to give the normal products, leading to the suggestion that they may be reaction intermediates.

---

[637] For reviews, see Mayer, in Oae, Ref. 371, pp. 58–63; Asinger, Schäfer, Halcour, Saus, and Triem, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **3,** 19–28 (1964) [*Angew. Chem.* **75,** 1050–1059 (1963)].

[638] The reaction between ketones, sulfur, and ammonia may also lead to heterocyclic compounds. For a review, see Asinger and Offermanns, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **6,** 907–919 (1967) [*Angew. Chem.* **79,** 953–965].

[639] Amupitan, *Synthesis* 730 (1983).

[640] Higgins and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 235 (1982). See also Higgins and Thomas, *J. Chem. Soc., Perkin Trans. 1* 1483 (1983).

[641] Taylor, Chiang, McKillop, and White, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **98,** 6750 (1976).

[642] King and McMillan, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **68,** 632 (1946).

[643] For an example of this type of behavior, see Asinger, Saus, and Mayer, *Monatsh. Chem.* **98,** 825 (1967).

[644] Asinger and Halcour, *Monatsh. Chem.* **95,** 24 (1964). See also Nakova, Tolkachev, and Evstigneeva, *J. Org. Chem. USSR* **11,** 2660 (1975).

[645] Mayer, in Janssen, "Organosulfur Chemistry," pp. 229–232, Interscience, New York, 1967.

Appendix A
THE LITERATURE OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

All discoveries made in the laboratory must be published somewhere if the information is to be made generally available. A new experimental result that is not published might as well not have been obtained, insofar as it benefits the entire chemical world. The total body of chemical knowledge (called *the literature*) is located on the combined shelves of all the chemical libraries in the world. Anyone who wishes to learn whether the answer to any chemical question is known and, if so, what the answer is, has only to turn to the contents of these shelves. Indeed the very expressions "is known," "has been done," etc., really mean "has been published." To the uninitiated, the contents of the shelves may appear formidably large, but fortunately the process of extracting information from the literature of organic chemistry is usually not difficult. In this appendix we shall examine the literature of organic chemistry, confining our attention chiefly to the results of laboratory work, rather than those of industrial organic chemistry.[1] The literature can be divided into two broad categories: *primary sources* and *secondary sources.* A primary source publishes the original results of laboratory investigations. Books, indexes, and other publications which cover material that has previously been published in primary sources are called secondary sources. It is because of the excellence of the secondary sources in organic chemistry (especially *Chemical Abstracts* and Beilstein) that literature searching is comparatively not difficult. The two chief kinds of primary source are journals and patents. There are several types of secondary source.

PRIMARY SOURCES

Journals

For more than a hundred years, nearly all new work in organic chemistry (except for that disclosed in patents) has been published in journals. There are thousands of journals that publish chemical papers, in many countries and in many languages. Some print papers covering all fields of science; some are restricted to chemistry; some to organic chemistry; and there are a few that are still more specialized. Fortunately for the sanity of organic chemists, the vast majority of important papers in "pure" organic chemistry (as opposed to "applied") are published in relatively few journals, perhaps 50 or fewer. Of course, this is still a large number, especially since some are published weekly and some semimonthly, but it is considerably smaller than the total number of journals (perhaps as high as 10,000) that publish chemical articles.

---

[1] For books on the chemical literature, see Mellon, "Chemical Publications," 5th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1982; Wolman, "Chemical Information," Wiley, New York, 1983; Skolnik, "The Literature Matrix of Chemistry," Wiley, New York, 1982; Maizell, "How to Find Chemical Information," Wiley, New York, 1979; Antony, "Guide to Basic Information Sources in Chemistry," Jeffrey Norton Publishers, New York, 1979; Bottle, "Use of the Chemical Literature," Butterworths, London, 1979; Woodburn, "Using the Chemical Literature," Marcel Dekker, New York, 1974; Crane, Patterson, and Marr, "A Guide to the Literature of Chemistry," 2d ed., Wiley, New York, 1957. For a three-part article on the literature of organic chemistry, see Hancock, *J. Chem. Educ.* **45,** 193–199, 260–266, 336–339 (1968).

In addition to ordinary papers, there are two other types of publications in which original work is reported: *notes* and *communications*. A note is a brief paper, usually without a summary (most papers are published with summaries or abstracts prepared by the author). Otherwise, a note is similar to a paper. In recent years, the use of notes has been declining and some journals no longer publish them. Communications (also called *letters*) are also brief and usually without summaries (though some journals now publish summaries along with their communications, a welcome trend). However, communications differ from notes and papers in three respects:

1. They are brief, not because the work is of small scope, but because they are condensed. Usually they include only the most important experimental details or none at all.

2. They are of immediate significance. Journals that publish communications make every effort to have them appear as soon as possible after they are received. Some papers and notes are of great importance, and some are of lesser importance, but all communications are supposed to be of high importance.

3. Communications are preliminary reports, and the material in them may be republished as papers at a later date, in contrast to the material in papers and notes, which cannot be republished.

Although papers (we use the term in its general sense, to cover notes and communications also) are published in many languages, the English-speaking chemist is in a fairly fortunate position. At present well over half of the important papers in organic chemistry are published in English. Not only are American, British, and British Commonwealth journals published almost entirely in English, but so are many others around the world. There are predominantly English-language journals published in Japan, Italy, Czechoslovakia, Sweden, the Netherlands, Israel, and other countries. Most of the articles published in other languages have summaries printed in English also. Furthermore, the second most important language (in terms of the number of organic chemical papers published) is Russian, and most of these papers are available in English translation, though in most cases, six months to a year later. A considerable number of important papers are published in German and French; these are generally not available in translation, so that the organic chemist should have at least a reading knowledge of these languages. An exception is the journal *Angewandte Chemie*, which in 1962 became available in English under the title *Angewandte Chemie International Edition in English*. Of course, a reading knowledge of French and German (especially German) is even more important for the older literature. Before about 1920, more than half of the important chemical papers were in these languages. It must be realized that the original literature is never obsolete. Secondary sources become superseded or outdated, but nineteenth century journals may be found in most chemical libraries and are still consulted. Table 1 presents a list of the more important current journals that publish original papers[2] and communications in organic chemistry.[3] Some of them also publish review articles, book reviews, and other material. Changes in journal title are not infrequent; footnotes to the table indicate some of the more important, but some of the other journals listed have also undergone title changes.

The primary literature has grown so much in recent years that attempts have been made to reduce the volume. One such attempt is the *Journal of Chemical Research*, begun in 1977. The main section of this journal, called the ''Synopses,'' publishes synopses, which are essentially long abstracts, with references. The full texts of most of the papers are published only in microfiche and miniprint versions. For some years, the American Chemical Society journals, including *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* and *J. Org. Chem.*, have provided supplementary material for some of their papers. This material is available from the Distribution Office at the ACS Washington office, either on microfiche or as a photocopy. These practices have not yet succeeded in substantially reducing the total volume of the world's primary chemical literature.

---

[2] In Table 1 notes are counted as papers.

[3] See Mellon and Crane, Patterson, and Marr, Ref. 1, for longer lists of journals, including discontinued ones.

TABLE 1 A list of the more important current journals that publish original papers in organic chemistry, listed in alphabetical order of *Chemical Abstracts* abbreviations, which are indicated in boldface.

Also indicated are the principal languages (E = English, G = German, F = French, R = Russian), the number of issues per year as of 1984 (exclusive of issues devoted entirely to indexes), and whether the journal primarily publishes papers (including in some cases notes) (P) or communications (C)

No.	Name	Principal languages	Papers or communications	Issues per year
1	**Acta Chem**ica **Scand**inavica, **Series B** (1947)	E	P	10
2	**Angew**andte **Chem**ie (1888)[4]	G	C^5	12
3	**Aust**ralian **J**ournal of **Chem**istry (1948)	E	P	12
4	**Bioorg**anic **Chem**istry (1971)	E	P^5	4
5	**Bull**etin of the **Chem**ical **Soc**iety of **Japan** (1926)	E	P	12
6	**Bull**etin des **Soc**iétés **Chim**ique **Belg**es (1887)	EF	P	12
7	**Bull**etin de la **Soc**iété **Chim**ique de **Fr**ance, Partie II (1858)	F	P^5	6
8	**Can**adian **J**ournal of **Chem**istry (1929)	EF	PC	12
9	**Carbohydr**ate **Res**earch (1965)	EGF	PC	24
10	**Chem**ische **Ber**ichte (1868)[6]	G	P	12
11	**Chem**istry and **Ind**ustry **(London)** (1923)	E	C	24
12	**Chem**istry **Lett**ers (1972)	E	C	12
13	**Chem**ica **Scr**ipta (1971)	E	P	10
14	**Chimia** (1947)	GEF	C^5	12
15	**Collect**ion of **Czech**oslovak **Chem**ical **Commun**ications (1929)	EG	P	12
16	Comptes **R**endus des **Seances** de l'**Acad**emie des **Sci**ences, **Sér**ie 2 (1835)[7]	F	C	52
17	**Dokl**ady **Akad**emii **Nauk SSSR** (1922)[4]	R	C	36
18	**Experientia** (1945)	E	C	12
19	**Gazz**etta **Chim**ica **Ital**iana (1871)	E	P	6
20	**Helv**etica **Chim**ica **Acta** (1918)	GEF	P	8
21	**Heterocycles** (1973)	E	C^5	12
22	**Int**ernational **J**ournal of **Chem**ical **Kinet**ics (1969)	E	PC	12
23	**Isr**ael **J**ournal of **Chem**istry (1963)	E	P^8	4
24	**Izv**estiya **Akad**emii **Nauk SSSR, Ser**iya **Khim**icheskaya (1936)[4]	R	PC	12
25	**J**ournal of the **Am**erican **Chem**ical **Soc**iety (1879)	E	PC	26
26	**J**ournal of **Chem**ical **Res**earch, **Synop**ses (1977)	E	P	12
27	**J**ournal of the **Chem**ical **Soc**iety, **Chem**ical **Commun**ications (1965)[9]	E	C	24
28	**J**ournal of the **Chem**ical **Soc**iety, **Perkin Trans**actions **1**: Organic and Bio-Organic Chemistry (1841)[10]	E	P	12

---

[4] These journals are available in English translation; see Table 2.

[5] These journals also publish review articles.

[6] Former title: *Berichte der deutschen chemischen Gesellschaft*.

[7] Division of *C. R.* into three sections began in 1981. Series 2 covers the physical sciences, including chemistry.

[8] Each issue of this journal is devoted to a specific topic.

[9] Successor to **Proc**eedings of the **Chem**ical **Soc**iety, which appeared from 1957 to 1964.

[10] Beginning with 1966 and until 1971, *J. Chem. Soc.* was divided into three sections: *A*, *B*, and *C*. Starting with 1972, Section *B* became *Perkin Trans. 2* and Section *C* became *Perkin Trans. 1*. Section *A* (Physical and Inorganic Chemistry) was further divided into *Faraday* and *Dalton Transactions*.

TABLE 1 *(Continued)*

No.	Name	Principal languages	Papers or communications	Issues per year
29	Journal of the **Chem**ical **Soc**iety, **Perkin Trans**actions **2**: Physical Organic Chemistry (1841)[10]	E	P	12
30	Journal of **Flourine Chem**istry (1971)	E	P	12
31	Journal of **Heterocycl**ic **Chem**istry (1964)	E	PC	8
32	Journal of the **Indian Chem**ical **Soc**iety (1924)	E	P	12
33	Journal of **Med**icinal **Chem**istry (1958)	E	PC	12
34	Journal of **Mol**ecular **Struct**ure (1967)	E	PC	12
35	Journal of **Organomet**allic **Chem**istry (1963)	EGF	PC	48
36	Journal of **Org**anic **Chem**istry (1936)	E	PC	26
37	Journal of **Photochem**istry (1972)	E	PC	12
38	Journal für **Prakt**ische **Chem**ie (1834)	GE	P	6
39	**Liebigs Ann**alen der **Chem**ie (1832)	G	P	12
40	**Monatsh**efte für **Chem**ie (1870)	GE	P	12
41	**Naturwissenschaften** (1913)	GE	C[5]	12
42	**Nouveau J**ournal de **Chim**ie (1977)	FE	P	11
43	**Organometallics** (1982)	E	PC	12
44	**Org**anic **Magn**etic **Reson**ance (1969)	E	PC	12
45	**Org**anic **Mass Spectrom**etry (1968)	E	PC	12
46	**Org**anic **Prep**arations and **Proced**ures **Inter**national (1969)	E	P[5]	6
47	**Photochem**istry and **Photobiol**ogy (1962)	E	P[5]	12
48	**Pol**ish **J**ournal of **Chem**istry (1921)[11]	E	PC	12
49	**Pure** and **Appl**ied **Chem**istry (1960)	EGF	[12]	12
50	**Recueil**: **J**ournal of the **R**oyal **Neth**erlands **Chem**ical **Soc**iety (1882)[13]	E	PC	12
51	**Synth**etic **Commun**ications (1971)	E	P	14
52	**Synthesis** (1969)	EG	P[5]	12
53	**Tetrahedron** (1958)	EGF	P[5]	24
54	**Tetrahedron Lett**ers (1959)	EGF	C	52
55	**Zh**urnal **Obshch**ei **Khim**ii (1869)[4]	R	PC	12
56	**Zh**urnal **Org**anicheskoi **Khim**ii (1965)[4]	R	PC	12
57	Zeitschrift für **Naturforsch**ung, **Teil B** (1946)	GE	P	12

Patents

In many countries, including the United States, it is possible to patent a new compound or a new method for making a known compound (either laboratory or industrial procedures), as long as the compounds are useful. It comes as a surprise to many to learn that a substantial proportion of the patents granted (on the order of 20 to 30%) are chemical patents. Chemical patents are part of the chemical literature, and both U.S. and foreign patents are regularly abstracted by *Chemical Abstracts*. In addition to learning about the contents of patents from this source, chemists may consult the *Official Gazette* of the U.S. Patent Office, which, published weekly and available in most

[11] Before 1978 this journal was called **Roczniki Chemii**.

[12] *Pure Appl. Chem.* publishes IUPAC reports and lectures given at IUPAC meetings.

[13] Previous to 1980 this journal was called **Recueil** des **Trav**aux **Chim**iques des **Pays-Bas.**

TABLE 2 Journals from Table 1 available in English translation
The numbers are keyed to those of Table 1: The year of first translation is given in parentheses

2. Angewandte Chemie, International Edition in English (1962)
17. Doklady Chemistry (English Translation) (1956)
24. Bulletin of the Academy of Sciences of the USSR, Division of Chemical Science (1952)
55. Journal of General Chemistry of the USSR (1949)
56. Journal of Organic Chemistry USSR (1965)

libraries, lists titles of all patents issued that week. Bound volumes of all U.S. patents are kept in a number of large libraries, including the New York Public Library, which also has an extensive collection of foreign patents. Photocopies of any U.S. patent and most foreign patents can be obtained at low cost from the U.S. Patent Office, Washington, D.C., 20231. In addition, *Chemical Abstracts* lists, in the introduction to the first issue of each volume, instructions for obtaining patents from 28 countries.

Although patents are often very useful to the laboratory chemist, and no literature search is complete that neglects relevant patents, as a rule they are not as reliable as papers. There are two reasons for this:

1. It is in the interest of the inventor to claim as much as possible. Therefore he or she may, for example, actually have carried out a reaction with ethanol and with 1-propanol, but will claim all primary alcohols, and perhaps even secondary and tertiary alcohols, glycols, and phenols. An investigator repeating the reaction on an alcohol that the inventor did not use may find that the reaction gives no yield at all. In general, it is safest to duplicate the *actual examples* given, of which most chemical patents contain one or more.

2. Although legally a patent gives an inventor a monopoly, any alleged infringements must be protected in court, and this may cost a good deal of money. Therefore some patents are written so that certain essential details are concealed or entirely omitted. This practice is not exactly cricket, because a patent is supposed to be a full disclosure, but patent attorneys are generally skilled in the art of writing patents, and procedures given are not always sufficient to duplicate the results.

Fortunately, the above statements do not apply to all chemical patents: many make full disclosures and claim only what was actually done. It must also be pointed out that it is not always possible to duplicate the work reported in *every* paper in a journal. In general, however, the laboratory chemist must be more wary of patents than of papers.

SECONDARY SOURCES

Journal articles and patents contain virtually all of the original work in organic chemistry. However, if this were all—if there were no indexes, abstracts, review articles, and other secondary sources—the literature would be unusable, because it is so vast that no one could hope to find anything in particular. Fortunately, the secondary sources are excellent. There are various kinds and the categories tend to merge. Our classification is somewhat arbitrary.

Listings of Titles

The profusion of original papers is so great that publications that merely list the titles of current papers find much use. Such lists are primarily methods of alerting the chemist to useful papers published in journals that he or she does not normally read. There are two ''title'' publications covering the whole of chemistry. One of these, *Current Contents Physical and Chemical Sciences*,[14] which began in 1967 and appears weekly, contains the contents pages of all issues of about 750 journals in chemistry, physics, mathematics, and allied sciences. Each issue contains an author index, which, however, lists only the first-named author of each paper. The author's address is also given, so that one may write for reprints. The other ''title'' publication is *Chemical Titles*, begun in 1961, which is published by Chemical Abstracts Service and is produced by a computer. This biweekly publication lists, in English, all titles from more than 700 journals, all in the field of chemistry. The most useful aspect of this publication is the way the titles are given. They are listed in alphabetical order of *every word in the title*, except for such words as ''the,'' ''of,'' ''investigation,'' ''synthesis,'' etc. (each issue contains a list of words prevented from indexing). This means that a title containing seven significant words is listed seven times. Furthermore, at each listing are given the words that immediately precede and follow the alphabetically listed word (called the *keyword*). For example, two short portions of the issue of January 9, 1984, are shown in Fig. 1. Note that a paper entitled ''Reactions of Cyclohexenyl Halides with Tributylstannane. Stereoelectronic Effects on SH2 Reactions at Halogen'' is listed under *cyclohexenyl* and under *stereoelectronic*. It is also listed under *hexenyl, halides, butylstannane, stannane*, and *halogen*, making seven listings in all. Certain words (e.g., cyclohexenyl, tributylstannane) are broken into two or more parts so that additional listings may be obtained. The = sign indicates the end of a title. The value of the index is increased by a ''wraparound'' feature. If the keyword ends (or begins) the title, what would otherwise be empty space is filled by as many words from the *beginning* (or the end) of the title as will fit. For example, at the entry under the keyword *steroidal*, in the above example, appears the title ''Preparation and Cleavage Reactions of some Steroidal Epoxides.'' There is room in front of the keyword only for *cleavage reactions of some*. The remainder of the title, *Preparation and* is therefore placed at the end of the line. Where the wraparound feature is used but the entire title still will not fit, the symbol + is given. This type of listing is called a *Keyword-in-Context* (KWIC) index and is obviously highly useful. For example, anyone interested in oxaziridine or any of its derivatives has only to look it up in *Chemical Titles* to find at once all the papers (in that issue) in which this word appears in the title (the Jan. 9, 1984 issue contains three such listings). The code number given at each entry refers to the source. For example, for the title on the stereoelectronic effects, mentioned above, the number is AJCHAS-0036-2123. The symbols have the following meanings: AJCHAS means *Aust. J. Chem.*, 0036 is the volume number (36), and 2123 is the page number. In the second section of each issue (called the Bibliography) the complete titles and the authors are given. Incidentally, this Bibliography duplicates, for the journals that they both cover, the listings in *Current Contents Physical and Chemical Sciences*, since the complete contents of journals are given in order of page number. Each issue of *Chemical Titles* has an author index, covering all authors, not just the first author. Addresses are not given.

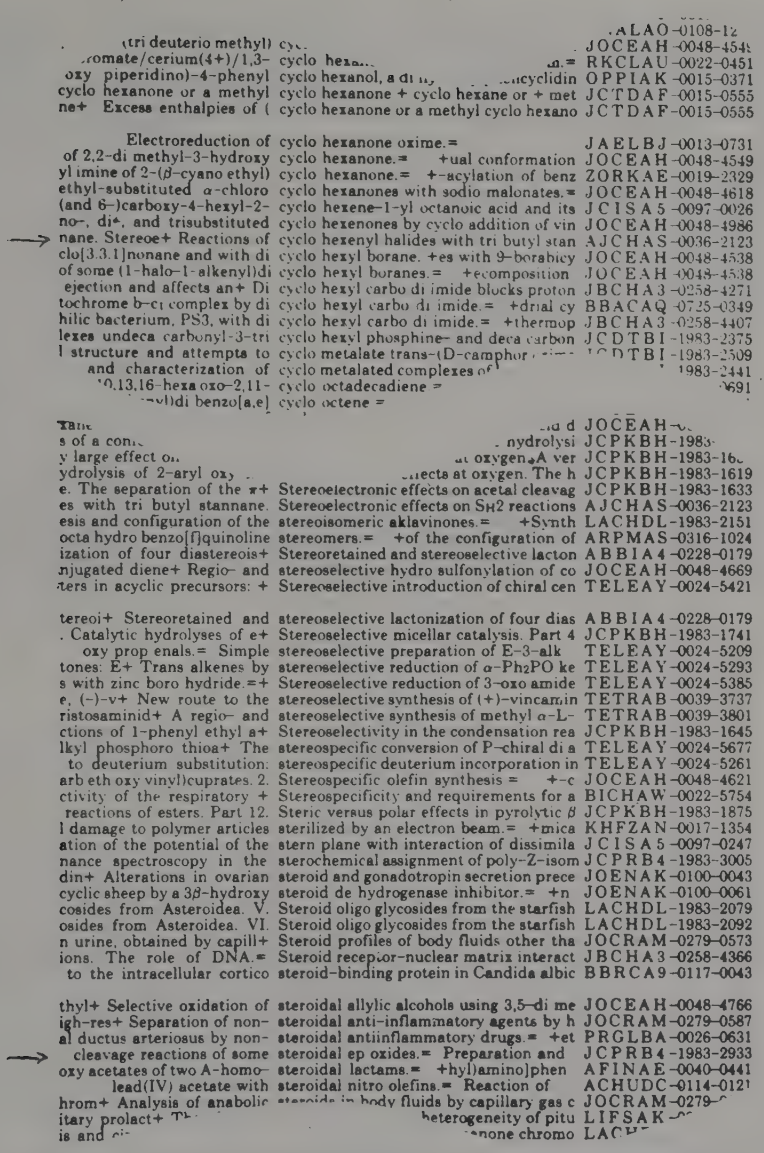
Abstracts

Listings of titles are valuable, as far as they go, but they do not tell what is in the paper, beyond the implications carried by the titles. From the earliest days of organic chemistry, abstracts of papers have been widely available, often as sections of journals whose principal interests lay elsewhere.[15] At the present time there are only two publications entirely devoted to abstracts covering

---

[14] Title pages of organic chemistry journals are also carried by *Current Contents Life Sciences*, which is a similar publication covering biochemistry and medicine.

[15] For example, *Chem. Ind.* (*London*) and *Synthesis* publish abstracts of papers that appear in other journals. In the past, journals such as *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, *J. Chem. Soc.*, and *Ber.* also did so.



		ALAO-0108-12
(tri deuterio methyl)	cyc	JOCEAH-0048-454
romate/cerium(4+)/1,3-	cyclo hexa	RKCLAU-0022-0451
oxy piperidino)-4-phenyl	cyclo hexanol, a di … cyclidin	OPPIAK-0015-0371
cyclo hexanone or a methyl	cyclo hexanone + cyclo hexane or + met	JCTDAF-0015-0555
ne+ Excess enthalpies of (	cyclo hexanone or a methyl cyclo hexano	JCTDAF-0015-0555
Electroreduction of	cyclo hexanone oxime.=	JAELBJ-0013-0731
of 2,2-di methyl-3-hydroxy	cyclo hexanone.= +ual conformation	JOCEAH-0048-4549
yl imine of 2-(β-cyano ethyl)	cyclo hexanone.= +-acylation of benz	ZORKAE-0019-2329
ethyl-substituted α-chloro	cyclo hexanones with sodio malonates.=	JOCEAH-0048-4618
(and 6-)carboxy-4-hexyl-2-	cyclo hexene-1-yl octanoic acid and its	JCISA5-0097-0026
no-, di-, and trisubstituted	cyclo hexenones by cyclo addition of vin	JOCEAH-0048-4986
⟶ nane. Stereoe+ Reactions of	cyclo hexenyl halides with tri butyl stan	AJCHAS-0036-2123
clo[3.3.1]nonane and with di	cyclo hexyl borane. +es with 9-borabicy	JOCEAH-0048-4538
of some (1-halo-1-alkenyl)di	cyclo hexyl boranes.= +ecomposition	JOCEAH-0048-4538
ejection and affects an+ Di	cyclo hexyl carbo di imide blocks proton	JBCHA3-0258-4271
tochrome b-c₁ complex by di	cyclo hexyl carbo di imide.= +drial cy	BBACAQ-0725-0349
hilic bacterium, PS3, with di	cyclo hexyl carbo di imide.= +thermop	JBCHA3-0258-4407
lexes undeca carbonyl-3-tri	cyclo hexyl phosphine- and deca carbon	JCDTBI-1983-2375
l structure and attempts to	cyclo metalate trans-(D-camphor	CDTBI-1983-2509
and characterization of	cyclo metalated complexes of	1983-2441
10,13,16-hexa oxo-2,11-	cyclo octadecadiene =	691
yl)di benzo[a,e]	cyclo octene =	
xan	d	JOCEAH-
s of a con	hydrolysi	JCPKBH-1983-
y large effect o	oxygen.A ver	JCPKBH-1983-16
ydrolysis of 2-aryl ox	ects at oxygen. The h	JCPKBH-1983-1619
e. The separation of the π+	Stereoelectronic effects on acetal cleavag	JCPKBH-1983-1633
es with tri butyl stannane.	Stereoelectronic effects on S_H2 reactions	AJCHAS-0036-2123
esis and configuration of the	stereoisomeric aklavinones.= +Synth	LACHDL-1983-2151
octa hydro benzo[f]quinoline	stereomers.= +of the configuration of	ARPMAS-0316-1024
ization of four diastereois+	Stereoretained and stereoselective lacton	ABBIA4-0228-0179
njugated diene+ Regio- and	stereoselective hydro sulfonylation of co	JOCEAH-0048-4669
ters in acyclic precursors: +	Stereoselective introduction of chiral cen	TELEAY-0024-5421
tereoi+ Stereoretained and	stereoselective lactonization of four dias	ABBIA4-0228-0179
. Catalytic hydrolyses of e+	Stereoselective micellar catalysis. Part 4	JCPKBH-1983-1741
oxy prop enals.= Simple	stereoselective preparation of E-3-alk	TELEAY-0024-5209
tones: E+ Trans alkenes by	stereoselective reduction of α-Ph_2PO ke	TELEAY-0024-5293
s with zinc boro hydride.=+	Stereoselective reduction of 3-oxo amide	TELEAY-0024-5385
e, (-)-v+ New route to the	stereoselective synthesis of (+)-vincamin	TETRAB-0039-3737
ristosaminid+ A regio- and	stereoselective synthesis of methyl α-L-	TETRAB-0039-3801
ctions of 1-phenyl ethyl a+	Stereoselectivity in the condensation rea	JCPKBH-1983-1645
lkyl phosphoro thioa+ The	stereospecific conversion of P-chiral di a	TELEAY-0024-5677
to deuterium substitution:	stereospecific deuterium incorporation in	TELEAY-0024-5261
arb eth oxy vinyl)cuprates. 2.	Stereospecific olefin synthesis = +-c	JOCEAH-0048-4621
ctivity of the respiratory +	Stereospecificity and requirements for a	BICHAW-0022-5754
reactions of esters. Part 12.	Steric versus polar effects in pyrolytic β	JCPKBH-1983-1875
l damage to polymer articles	sterilized by an electron beam.= +mica	KHFZAN-0017-1354
ation of the potential of the	stern plane with interaction of dissimila	JCISA5-0097-0247
nance spectroscopy in the	sterochemical assignment of poly-Z-isom	JCPRB4-1983-3005
din+ Alterations in ovarian	steroid and gonadotropin secretion prece	JOENAK-0100-0043
cyclic sheep by a 3β-hydroxy	steroid de hydrogenase inhibitor.= +n	JOENAK-0100-0061
cosides from Asteroidea. V.	Steroid oligo glycosides from the starfish	LACHDL-1983-2079
osides from Asteroidea. VI.	Steroid oligo glycosides from the starfish	LACHDL-1983-2092
n urine, obtained by capill+	Steroid profiles of body fluids other tha	JOCRAM-0279-0573
ions. The role of DNA.=	Steroid receptor-nuclear matrix interact	JBCHA3-0258-4366
to the intracellular cortico	steroid-binding protein in Candida albic	BBRCA9-0117-0043
thyl+ Selective oxidation of	steroidal allylic alcohols using 3,5-di me	JOCEAH-0048-4766
igh-res+ Separation of non-	steroidal anti-inflammatory agents by h	JOCRAM-0279-0587
al ductus arteriosus by non-	steroidal antiinflammatory drugs.= +et	PRGLBA-0026-0631
⟶ cleavage reactions of some	steroidal ep oxides.= Preparation and	JCPRB4-1983-2933
oxy acetates of two A-homo-	steroidal lactams.= +hyl)amino]phen	AFINAE-0040-0441
lead(IV) acetate with	steroidal nitro olefins.= Reaction of	ACHUDC-0114-0121
hrom+ Analysis of anabolic	steroids in body fluids by capillary gas c	JOCRAM-0279-
itary prolact+	heterogeneity of pitu	LIFSAK-
is and	none chromo	LAC

Figure 1 Two short portions from the Jan. 9, 1984 issue of *Chemical Titles*

the whole field of chemistry. One of these, *Referativnyi Zhurnal, Khimiya*, which began in 1953, is published in Russian and is chiefly of interest to Russian-speaking chemists. The other is *Chemical Abstracts*. This publication, which appears weekly, prints abstracts in English of virtually every paper containing original work in pure or applied chemistry published anywhere in the world. Approximately 12,000 journals are covered, in many languages. In addition, *CA* publishes abstracts of every patent of chemical interest from 18 countries, including the United States, United Kingdom, Japan, France, and the Soviet Union, as well as many patents from eight additional countries. *CA* lists and indexes but does not abstract review articles and books. The abstracts currently appear in 80 sections, of which sections 21 to 34 are devoted to organic chemistry, under such headings as Alicyclic Compounds, Alkaloids, Physical Organic Chemistry, Heterocyclic Compounds (One Hetero Atom), etc. Each abstract of a paper begins with a heading that gives (1) the abstract number;[16] (2) the title of the paper; (3) the authors names as fully as given in the paper; (4) the authors' address; (5) the abbreviated name of the journal (see Table 1);[17] (6) the year, volume, issue, and page numbers; and (7) the language of the paper. In earlier years *CA* gave the language only if it differed from the language of the journal title. Abstracts of patents begin with the title, inventor and company (if any), patent number, patent class number, date patent issued, country of priority, patent application number, date patent applied for, and number of pages in the patent. The body of the abstract is a concise summary of the information in the paper. For many common journals, e.g., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, *J. Org. Chem.*, *J. Chem. Soc.*, the author's summary (if there is one) is used in *CA* as it appears in the original paper, with perhaps some editing and additional information. Each issue of *CA* contains an author index, a patent index, and a keyword index, somewhat similar to the KWIC index of *Chemical Titles* (p. 1127). However, the words in the *CA* keyword index are taken from the titles *and* the texts or contexts of the abstracts. The keywords are not given in exact context, as in *Chemical Titles*, but a few extra words are given for each entry. The patent index lists all patents in order of number. The same compound or method is often patented in several countries. *CA* abstracts only the first patent, but does list the patent numbers of the duplicated patents in the patent index along with all previous patent numbers that correspond to it. Before 1981 there were separate Patent Number Indexes and Patent Concordances (the latter began in 1963).

At the end of each section of *CA* there is a list of cross-references to related papers in other sections.

Chemical Abstracts is, of course, highly useful for "current awareness"; it allows one to read, in one place, abstracts of virtually all new work in chemistry, though its large size puts a limit on the extent of this type of usefulness.[18] *CA* is even more useful as a repository of chemical information, a place for finding out what was done in the past. This value stems from the excellent indexes, which enable the chemist in most cases to ascertain quickly where information is located. From the time of its founding in 1907 until 1961, *CA* published annual indexes. Since 1962 there are two volumes published each year, and a separate index is issued for each volume. For each volume there is an index of subjects, authors, formulas, and patent numbers. Beginning in 1972 the subject index has been issued in two parts, a chemical substance index and a general subject index, which includes all entries that are not the names of single chemical substances. However, the indexes to each volume become essentially superseded as collective indexes are issued. The first collective indexes are ten-year (decennial) indexes, but the volume of information has made five-year indexes necessary since 1956. Collective indexes so far published are shown at the top of p. 1129. Thus a user of the indexes at this time would consult the collective indexes through 1981 and the semiannual indexes thereafter.

Beginning with the eighth collective index period, *CA* has published an *Index Guide*. This publication gives structural formulas and/or alternate names for thousands of compounds, as well as many other cross-references. It is designed to help the user efficiently and rapidly to find *CA* references to subjects of interest in the general subject, formula, and chemical substance indexes. Each collective index contains its own *Index Guide*. A new *Index Guide* is issued every 18 months.

Along with each index (annual, semiannual, or collective) appears an index of ring systems.

---

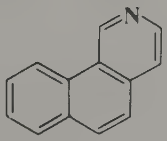
[16] Beginning in 1967. See p. 1129.

[17] These abbreviations are changed from time to time. Therefore the reader may notice inconsistencies.

[18] It is possible to subscribe to *CA Selects*, which provides copies of all abstracts within various narrow fields, such as organofluorine chemistry, organic reaction mechanisms, organic stereochemistry, etc.

Coll. index	Subject	Chemical substance	Author	Formula	Patent number
1	1907–1916		1907–1916		
2	1917–1926		1917–1926		1907–1936
3	1927–1936		1927–1936	1920–1946	
4	1937–1946		1937–1946		1937–1946
5	1947–1956		1947–1956	1947–1956	1947–1956
6	1957–1961		1957–1961	1957–1961	1957–1961
7	1962–1966		1962–1966	1962–1966	1962–1966
8	1967–1971		1967–1971	1967–1971	1967–1971
9	1972–1976	1972–1976	1972–1976	1972–1976	1972–1976
10	1977–1981	1977–1981	1977–1981	1977–1981	1977–1981

This valuable index enables the user to ascertain immediately if any ring system appears in the corresponding subject or chemical substance index and under what names. For example, someone wishing to determine whether any compounds containing this ring system



Benz(*h*)isoquinoline

are reported in the 1977–1981 collective index (even if he or she did not know the name) would locate, under the heading "3-ring systems," the listing **6, 6, 6** (since the compound has three rings of six members each), under which he or she would find the sublisting $C_5N—C_6—C_6$ (since one ring contains five carbons and a nitrogen while the others are all-carbon), under which is listed the name benz(*h*)isoquinoline, as well as the names of 34 other systems $C_5N—C_6—C_6$. A search of the subject index under these names will give all references to these ring systems that have appeared in *CA* from 1977 to 1981.

Before 1967, *CA* used a two-column page, with each column separately numbered. A row of letters from *a* to *h* appeared down the center of the page. These letters are for the guidance of the user. Thus an entry 7337*b* refers to the *b* section of column 7337. In early years superscript numbers, e.g., 4327^5, were used in a similar manner. In very early years these numbers were not printed on the page at all, though they are given in the decennial indexes, so that the user must mentally divide the page into nine parts. Beginning with 1967, abstracts are individually numbered and column numbers are discarded and replaced with page numbers. Therefore, beginning with 1967, index entries give abstract number rather than column number. The abstract numbers are followed by a letter that serves as a check character to prevent miscopying errors in computer handling. To use the *CA* subject, chemical substance, and formula indexes intelligently requires practice, and the student should become familiar with representative volumes of these indexes and with the introductory sections to them, as well as with the *Index Guides*.

In the *CA* formula indexes formulas are listed in order of (1) number of carbon atoms; (2) number of hydrogen atoms; (3) other elements in alphabetic order. Thus, all C_3 compounds are listed before any C_4 compound; all C_5H_7 compounds before any C_5H_8 compound; $C_7H_{11}Br$ before $C_7H_{11}N$; $C_9H_6N_4S$ before C_9H_6O, etc. Deuterium and tritium are represented by D and T and treated alphabetically, e.g., C_2H_5DO after C_2H_5Cl and before C_2H_5F or C_2H_6.

Since 1965, *CA* has assigned a Registry Number to each unique chemical substance. This is a number of the form [766-51-8] that remains invariant, no matter what names are used in the literature. More than 6 million numbers have already been assigned and thousands are added each week. Registry Numbers are primarily for computer use. All numbers so far have been published with the *CA* preferred names in a multivolume "Registry Handbook."

It is possible to use a computer to search *CA*, at least for recent years. All abstracts published since mid-1975 and some between 1967 and mid-1975 are available online in libraries that provide this service. All bibliographic citations, keyword index terms for the weekly *CA* issues, and general subject and chemical substance index entries since 1967 are currently available for retrieval and display. It is likely that this service will be expanded.

Although *CA* and *Referativnyi Zhurnal, Khimya* are currently the only chemical abstracting publications that cover the entire field of chemistry, there were a number of earlier abstracting publications now defunct. The most important of these are *Chemisches Zentralblatt* and *British Abstracts*. These publications are still valuable because they began before *CA* and can therefore supply abstracts for papers that appeared before 1907. Furthermore, even for papers published after 1907, *Zentralblatt* and *British Abstracts* are often more detailed. *Zentralblatt* was published, under various names, from 1830 to 1969.[19] *British Abstracts* was a separate publication from 1926 to 1953, but earlier abstracts from this source are available in the *Journal of the Chemical Society* from 1871 to 1925.

Another publication should also be mentioned here. *Current Abstracts of Chemistry and Index Chemicus*, begun in 1960, and appearing weekly, is largely devoted to printing structural formulas of all *new* compounds appearing in about 110 journals, with monthly formula, subject, author, and journal indexes, which are cumulated semiannually and annually.[20] As with *CA*, the material in this publication is available online via computer.

Beilstein

This publication is so important to organic chemistry that it deserves a section by itself. Beilstein's "Handbuch der organischen Chemie," usually referred to as *Beilstein*, lists all the known organic compounds reported in the literature during its period of coverage. For each compound are given: all names; the molecular formula; the structural formula; all methods of preparation (briefly, e.g., "by refluxing 1-butanol with NaBr and sulfuric acid"); physical constants such as melting point, refractive index, etc.; other physical properties; chemical properties including reactions; occurrence in nature (i.e., which species it was isolated from); biological properties, if any; derivatives with melting points; analytical data, and any other information that has been reported in the literature.[21] Equally important, for every piece of information, a reference is given to the original literature. Furthermore, the data in Beilstein have been critically evaluated. That is, all information is carefully researched and documented, and duplicate and erroneous results are eliminated. Some compounds are discussed in two or three lines and others require several pages. The value of such a work should be obvious.

[19] An "obituary" of *Zentralblatt* by Weiske, which gives its history and statistical data about its abstracts and indexes, was published in the April 1973 issue of *Chem. Ber.* (pp. I–XVI).

[20] For a discussion of this publication, see Garfield and Sim, *Pure Appl. Chem.* **49,** 1803 (1977).

[21] For a discussion of how data are processed for inclusion in Beilstein, see Luckenbach, Ecker, and Sunkel, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **20,** 841–849 (1981) [*Angew. Chem.* **93,** 876–885].

For many years a degree of training was required in order to use Beilstein, but the publication of a formula index now makes it fairly easy to use. The first three editions are obsolete. The fourth edition (*vierte Auflage*) covers the literature from its beginnings through 1909. This edition, called *das Hauptwerk*, consists of 27 volumes. The compounds are arranged in order of a system too elaborate to discuss fully here.[22] The compounds are divided into three divisions which are further subdivided into ''systems'':

Division	Volumes	System numbers
I. Acyclic compounds	1–4	1–449
II. Carbocyclic compounds	5–16	450–2359
III. Heterocyclic compounds	17–27	2360–4720

Das Hauptwerk is still the basis of Beilstein and has not been superseded. The later literature is covered by supplements that have been arranged to parallel *das Hauptwerk*. The same system is used, so that the compounds are treated in the same order. The first supplement (*erstes Ergänzungswerk*) covers 1910–1919; the second supplement (*zweites Ergänzungswerk*) covers 1920–1929; the third supplement (*drittes Ergänzungswerk*) covers 1930–1949; and the fourth supplement (*viertes Ergänzungswerk*) covers 1950–1959. Like *das Hauptwerk*, each supplement contains 27 volumes,[23] except that supplements 3 and 4 have been combined beginning with vol. 17, so that for vols. 17 to 27 the combined third and fourth supplement covers the years 1930–1959. Each supplement has been divided into volumes in the same way as *das Hauptwerk*, and, for example, compounds found in vol. 3, system number 199 of *das Hauptwerk* will also be found in vol. 3, system number 199 of each supplement.[24] To make cross-referencing even easier, each supplement gives, for each compound, the page numbers at which the same compound may be found in the earlier books. Thus, on page 545 of vol. 6 of the third supplement, under the listing phenetole are found the symbols (H 140; E I 80; E II 142) indicating that earlier information on phenetole is given on page 140 of vol. 6 of *das Hauptwerk*, on page 80 of the first, and page 142 of the second supplement. Furthermore, each page of the supplements contains, at the top center, the corresponding page numbers of *das Hauptwerk*. Since the same systematic order is followed in all five series, location of a compound in any one series gives its location in the other four. If a compound is found, for example, in vol. 5 of *das Hauptwerk*, one has but to note the page number and scan vol. 5 of each supplement until that number appears in the top center of the page (the same number may cover several pages). Of course, many compounds are found in only one, two, three, or four of the series, since no work may have been published on that compound during the period covered. Although a given volume of Beilstein is complete to the end of the time period specified, volumes in the second, third, and fourth supplements often contain material that goes considerably beyond that period. For example, p. 3962 of vol. 1 of the fourth supplement (1950–1959) contains references to papers published in 1968 and 1971.

---

[22] For descriptions of the Beilstein system and directions for using it, see Sunkel, Hoffmann, and Luckenbach, *J. Chem. Educ.* **58**, 982 (1981); Luckenbach, *CHEMTECH* 612–621 (1979). The Beilstein Institute has also published two English-language guides to the system. One, available free, is ''How to Use Beilstein,'' Beilstein Institute, Frankfurt/Main, 1979. The other is by Weissbach, ''A Manual for the Use of Beilstein's Handbuch der Organischen Chemie,'' Springer-Verlag, New York, 1976. An older work, which many students will find easier to follow, is by Huntress, ''A Brief Introduction to the Use of *Beilstein's Handbuch der Organischen Chemie*,'' 2d ed., Wiley, New York, 1938.

[23] In some cases, to keep the system parallel and to avoid books that are too big or too small, volumes are issued in two or more parts, and, in other cases, two volumes are bound as one.

[24] The fourth supplement (which will eventually cover vols. 1 to 16) is not yet complete as of this writing. The combined third and fourth supplements (vols. 17 to 27) are almost complete.

From *das Hauptwerk* to the fourth supplement, Beilstein is in German, though it is not difficult to read since most of the words are the names of compounds (a Beilstein German–English Dictionary, available free from the publisher, is in many libraries). The fifth supplement, covering 1960–1979, will be in English. Publication of the fifth supplement began in 1984, with the first part of vol. 17.

Volumes 28 and 29 of Beilstein are subject and formula indexes, respectively. The most recent complete edition of these volumes is part of the second supplement and covers not only *das Hauptwerk* but the first two supplements as well. For vol. 1 there is a cumulative subject and a cumulative formula index, which combine *das Hauptwerk* and all four supplements.[25] Similar index volumes, covering all four supplements, have been issued so far for vols. 2–3, 4, 5, 6, 17–18, 19, 20–22, and 23–25. Cumulative indexes for the remaining volumes will be issued as the volumes are completed. For English-speaking chemists (and probably for many German-speaking chemists) the formula indexes are more convenient. Of course, one must still know some German, because most formula listings contain the names of many isomers. If a compound is found only in *das Hauptwerk*, the index listing is merely the volume and page numbers, e.g., **1,** 501. Roman numbers are used to indicate the supplements, for example, **26,** 15, I 5, II 7. Thus the subject and formula indexes lead at once to locations in *das Hauptwerk* and the first two supplements (and, for vols. 1–6 and 17–25, for the third and fourth supplements as well). Locating the compound in the third and fourth supplements is then simple (if that volume has already appeared) by the page-number indication mentioned above. However, the most recent edition of vols. 28 and 29 obviously can contain only compounds that have appeared in the literature before 1930. In order to ascertain if a particular compound not listed in vol. 28 or 29 is listed in the third and/or fourth supplements, one can follow one of two procedures. For compounds that would be found in vols. 1–6 and 17–25 (and any later cumulative index volumes that have appeared), one can consult these index volumes. For compounds belonging elsewhere, each separately bound portion of each volume of the third and fourth supplements has its own subject and formula indexes. If one knows (from an approximate knowledge of the system) in which volume the compound is likely to be found, the searcher can turn to the indexes of that volume or (with a little extra labor) can look in all the indexes. The other procedure is to learn the system—which was done by most organic chemists before the appearance of the original formula index.[22] Even an approximate knowledge of the system often helps. The Beilstein formula indexes are constructed the same way as the *CA* indexes (p. 1129). Upon completion of the fourth supplement, complete cumulative subject and formula indexes will be issued for *das Hauptwerk* and all four supplements.

There is also a fourth division of Beilstein (systems 4721 to 4877) that covers natural products of uncertain structure: rubbers, sugars, etc. These are treated in vols. 30 and 31, which do not go beyond 1935 and which are covered in the collective indexes. These volumes will not be updated. All such compounds are now included in the regular Beilstein volumes.

Compendia and Tables of Information

In addition to Beilstein, there are many other reference works in organic chemistry that are essentially compilations of data. These books are very useful and often save the research worker a great deal of time. In this section we discuss some of the more important of such works.

---

[25] Most page number entries in the combined indexes contain a letter, e.g., $CHBr_2Cl$ 67f, II 33a, III 87d, IV, 81. These letters tell where on the page to find the compound and are useful because the names given in the index are not necessarily those used in the earlier series. The letter "a" means the compound is the first on its page, "b" is the second, etc. No letters are given for the fourth supplement.

1. Some years ago a work was announced that was to be the English equivalent of Beilstein: Elsevier's ''Encyclopedia of Organic Chemistry.'' Three volumes were published, in more than 15 parts: vol. 12, bicyclic compounds; vol. 13, tricyclic compounds; and vol. 14, tetra- and higher-cyclic compounds. These volumes cover many natural products, especially terpenes and steroids. Although the production of the earlier volumes in the series has now been abandoned, these volumes remain valuable.

2. The fifth edition of ''Heilbron's Dictionary of Organic Compounds,'' J. Buckingham, Ed., 7 vols., Chapman and Hall, London, 1982, contains brief listings of more than 150,000 organic compounds, giving names, structural formulas, physical properties, and derivatives, with references.[26] For many entries additional data concerning occurrence, biological activity, and toxicity hazard information are also given. The arrangement is alphabetical. The dictionary contains indexes of names, formulas, hetero atoms, and *CA* Registry Numbers. The first annual supplement was issued in 1983. A similar work, devoted to organometallic compounds, is ''Dictionary of Organometallic Compounds,'' 3 vols., published by Chapman and Hall in 1984.

3. A multivolume compendium of physical data is Landolt-Börnstein's ''Zahlenwerte und Funktionen aus Physik, Chemie, Astronomie, Geophysik, und Technik,'' 6th ed., Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1950–. This compendium, which is not yet complete, lists a great deal of data, some of which are of interest to organic chemists, e.g., indexes of refraction, heats of combustion, optical rotations, and spectral data. Literature references are given for all data.

4. ''The Handbook of Chemistry and Physics,'' CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida (called the ''rubber handbook''), which is revised annually (64th ed., 1983–84), is a valuable repository of data quickly found. For organic chemists the most important table is ''Physical Constants of Organic Compounds, which lists names, formulas, color, solubilities, and physical properties of thousands of compounds. However, there are many other useful tables. A similar work is Lange's ''Handbook of Chemistry,'' 12th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1979.

5. A list of most of the known natural compounds, e.g., terpenes, alkaloids, carbohydrates, to which structures have been assigned, along with structural formulas, melting points, optical rotations, and references, is provided in Devon and Scott, ''Handbook of Naturally Occurring Compounds,'' 3 vols., Academic Press, New York, 1972–.

6. Dreisbach, ''Physical Properties of Chemical Compounds,'' Advanced in Chemistry Series nos. 15, 22, 29, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C., 1955–1961 lists many physical properties of more than 1000 organic compounds.

7. Physical properties of thousands of organometallic compounds, with references, are collected in four large compendia: the ''Dictionary of Organometallic Compounds,'' mentioned under item 2, above; Dub, ''Organometallic Compounds,'' 2d ed., 3 vols. with supplements and index, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1966–1975; Hagihara, Kumada, and Okawara, ''Handbook of Organometallic Compounds,'' W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1968; and Kaufman, ''Handbook of Organometallic Compounds,'' Van Nostrand, Princeton, N.J., 1961.

8. ''The Merck Index of Chemicals and Drugs,'' 10th ed., Merck and Company, Rahway, N.J., 1983, is a good source of information about chemicals of medicinal importance. Many drugs are given three types of name: *chemical name* (which is the name an organic chemist would give it; of course, there may well be more than one); *generic name*, which must be placed on all containers of the drug; and *trade names*, which are different for each company that markets the drug. For example, the generic name for 1-(4-chlorobenzhydryl)-4-methylpiperazine is chlorcyclazine. Among the trade names for this drug, which is an antihistamine, are Trihistan, Perazyl, and Alergicide. The ''Merck Index'' is especially valuable because it gives all known names of all three types for each compound and the names are cross-indexed. A formula index is included. Also given, for each compound, are the structural formula, *CA* preferred name and Registry number, physical properties, medicinal and other uses, toxicity indications, and references to methods of synthesis. The ‘‘Merck Index’’ also includes a lengthy list of organic name reactions, with references, as well as miscellaneous tables.

---

[26] For a review of this work with particular attention to errors, see Smith, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **105,** 6198 (1983) [book review].

9. There are two publications that list properties of azeotropic mixtures. Timmermans, ‘‘The Physico-Chemical Constants of Binary Systems in Concentrated Solutions,’’ 4 vols., Interscience, New York, 1959–1960, with supplements beginning 1965, is by far the more comprehensive. The other is ‘‘Azeotropic Data,’’ 2 vols., Advances in Chemistry Series no. 6 and no. 35, American Chemical Society, Washington, D.C., 1952, 1962.

10. Calculated boiling points at many pressures are given for many compounds in Dreisbach, ‘‘Pressure–Volume–Temperature Relationships of Organic Compounds,’’ McGraw-Hill, New York, 1952.

11. Thousands of dipole moments, with references, are collected in McClellan, ‘‘Tables of Experimental Dipole Moments,’’ vol. 1, W. H. Freeman, San Francisco, Calif., 1963; vol. 2, Rahara Enterprises, El Cerrita, Calif., 1974.

12. ‘‘Tables of Interatomic Distances and Configurations in Molecules and Ions,’’ London Chemical Society Special Publication no. 11, 1958, and its supplement, Special Publication no. 18, 1965, include bond distances and angles for hundreds of compounds, along with references.

13. The ‘‘Ring Systems Handbook,’’ published in 1984 by the Chemical Abstracts Service, provides the names and formulas of ring and cage systems that have been published in *CA*. The ring systems are listed under a system essentially the same as that used for the *CA* index of ring systems (p. 1129). Each entry gives the *CA* index name and Registry Number for that ring system. In many cases a *CA* reference is also given. There is a separate Formula Index (for the parent ring systems) and a Ring Name Index. Supplements are issued twice a year. The ‘‘Ring Systems Handbook’’ supersedes earlier publications called ‘‘The Parent Compound Handbook’’ and ‘‘The Ring Index’’.

14. The Sadtler Research Laboratories publish large collections of ir, uv, nmr, and other spectra, in loose-leaf form. Indexes are available.

15. Infrared, uv, nmr, Raman, and mass spectral data, as well as melting-point, boiling-point, solubility, and density data for 21,000 organic compounds are collected in the ‘‘Atlas of Spectral Data and Physical Constants for Organic Compounds,’’ 2d ed., 6 vols., CRC Press, Cleveland, Ohio, 1973, edited by Grasselli and Ritchey. It differs from the Sadtler collection in that the data are given in tabular form (lists of peaks) rather than reproductions of the actual spectra, but this book has the advantage that all the spectral and physical data for a given compound appear on one line. References are given to the Sadtler and other collections of spectra. Volumes 5 and 6 contain indexes of spectral peaks for ir, uv, nmr, ^{13}C nmr, mass, and Raman spectra, as well as formula and physical constant indexes.

16. The ‘‘Aldrich Library of Infrared Spectra,’’ 3d ed., Aldrich Chemical Company, Milwaukee, Wis., 1981, by Pouchert contains more than 12,000 ir spectra so arranged that the user can readily see the change that takes place in a given spectrum when a slight change is made in the structure of a molecule.

17. An extensive list of visible and uv peaks is given in ‘‘Organic Electronic Spectral Data,’’ Interscience, New York. Twenty volumes have appeared so far, covering the literature through 1978.

18. A collection of 500 ^{13}C nmr spectra is found in Johnson and Jankowski, ‘‘Carbon-13 NMR Spectra,’’ Wiley, New York, 1972.

Reviews

A review article is an intensive survey of a rather narrow field; e.g., the titles of some recent reviews are "Preparation, Reactions, and Physical Properties of Organobismuth Compounds,"[27] "Lewis Acid Induced α-Alkylation of Carbonyl Compounds,"[28] and "The Chemistry of the Isoindoles."[29] A good review article is of enormous value, because it is a thorough survey of all the work done in the field under discussion. Review articles are printed in review journals and in certain books. The most important review journals in organic chemistry (though most are not exclusively devoted to organic chemistry) are, with the year of founding, principal languages, and issues per year:

Review journals

Accounts of **Chem**ical **Res**earch (1968)	E	12
Aldrichimica Acta (1968)	E	4
Angewandte **Chem**ie (1888)	G	12
and its English translation: **Angew**andte **Chem**ie, **Int**ernational **Edition** in **Engl**ish (1962)	E	12
Chemical **Rev**iews (1924)	E	6
Chemical **Soc**iety **Rev**iews (1947)[30]	E	4
Heterocycles (1973)	E	12
Natural **Prod**uct **Rep**orts (1984)	E	6
Reviews of **Chem**ical **Intermed**iates (1973)	E	4
Synthesis (1969)	EG	12
Tetrahedron (1958)	EGF	24
Topics in **Curr**ent **Chem**istry (1949)[31]	EG	Irreg.
Uspekhii **Khim**ii (1932)	R	12
and its English translation: **Russian Chemical Reviews** (1960)	E	12

Some of the journals listed in Table 1, notably the *Bull Soc. Chim. Fr.* and *J. Organomet. Chem.* also publish occasional review articles.

There are several open-ended serial publications that are similar in content to the review journals but are published irregularly (seldom more often than once a year) and are hardbound. Some of these publish reviews in all fields of chemistry; some cover only organic chemistry; some specialize further. The coverage is indicated by the titles. Some of the more important such publications, with *CA* abbreviations, are:

---

[27] Freedman and Doak, *Chem. Rev.* **82,** 15–57 (1982).

[28] Reetz, *Angew Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.* **21,** 96–108 (1982) [*Angew. Chem.* **94,** 97–109].

[29] Bonnett and North, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **29,** 341–399 (1981).

[30] Successor to *Quarterly Reviews* (abbreviated as *Q. Rev., Chem. Soc.*).

[31] Formerly called **Fortschr**itte der **Chem**ischen **Forsch**ung.

Irregularly published serial publications

Advances in Alicyclic Chemistry
Advances in Carbohydrate Chemistry
Advances in Catalysis
Advances in Fluorine Chemistry
Advances in Free-Radical Chemistry
Advances in Heterocyclic Chemistry
Advances in Organometallic Chemistry
Advances in Organic Chemistry
Advances in Photochemistry
Advances in Physical Organic Chemistry
Advances in Protein Chemistry
Essays in Chemistry
Fluorine Chemistry Reviews
Fortschritte der Chemie Organischer Naturstoffe
Isotopes in Organic Chemistry
Mechanisms of Molecular Migrations
Methods in Free-Radical Chemistry
Organic Photochemistry
Organometallic Reactions
Organic Reactions
Perspectives in Structural Chemistry
Progress in Bioorganic Chemistry
Progress in Macrocyclic Chemistry
Progress in Organic Chemistry
Progress in Physical Organic Chemistry
Progress in Stereochemistry
Reactive Intermediates (Plenum)
Reactive Intermediates (Wiley)
Selective Organic Transformations
Soviet Scientific Reviews, Section B, Chemistry Reviews
Stereochemistry: Fundamentals and Methods
Survey of Progress in Chemistry
Topics in Nonbenzenoid Aromatic Chemistry
Topics in Phosphorus Chemistry
Topics in Stereochemistry
Topics in Sulfur Chemistry

There are several publications that provide listings of review articles in organic chemistry. The most important is the *J. Org. Chem.*, which began to list review articles in 1978 (the first list is at *J. Org. Chem.* **43,** 3085). These lists, which appear twice each year, give the titles and reference sources of virtually all review articles in the field of organic chemistry that have appeared in the preceding six months, including those in the review journals and serials mentioned above, as well as those in monographs and treatises of the type mentioned on p. 1138. There is also a listing of new monographs on a single subject. Each list includes a subject index.

Another publication is the "Index of Reviews in Organic Chemistry," compiled by Lewis, Chemical Society, London, a classified listing of review articles. The first volume, published in 1971, lists reviews from about 1960 (in some cases much earlier) to about 1970 in alphabetical order of topic. Thus four reviews are listed under "Knoevenagel condensation," five under "Inclusion compounds," and one under "Vinyl ketones." There is no index. A second volume (1977) covers the literature to 1976. Annual or biannual supplements have appeared beginning in 1980. Still another list of review articles (unclassified, but with author and subject indexes) is found in Kharasch, Wolf, and Harrison, "Index to Reviews, Symposia Volumes, and Monographs in Organic Chemistry," Pergamon, New York. Three volumes have appeared, covering 1940–1960 (published 1962); 1961–1962 (published 1964); and 1963–1964 (published 1966). Classified lists of review articles on organometallic chemistry are found in articles by Smith and Walton[32] and by Bruce.[33] A similar list for heterocyclic chemistry is found in articles by Katritzky and coauthors.[34]

[32] Smith and Walton, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **13,** 453–558 (1975).

[33] Bruce, *Adv. Organomet. Chem.* **10,** 273–346 (1972), **11,** 447–471 (1973), **12,** 380–407 (1974).

[34] Katritzky and Jones, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **25,** 303–391 (1979); Katritzky and Weeds, *Adv. Heterocycl. Chem.* **7,** 225–299 (1966).

Annual Reviews

The review articles discussed in the previous section are each devoted to a narrow topic covering the work done in that area over a period of years. An annual review is a publication that covers a broad area but limits the period covered, usually to 1 or 2 years.

1. The oldest annual review publication still publishing is *Annual Reports on the Progress of Chemistry*, published by the Royal Society of Chemistry (formerly the Chemical Society) which began in 1905, and which covers the whole field of chemistry. Since 1967, it has been divided into sections. Organic chemistry is found in Section B.

2. Because the number of papers in chemistry has become so large, the Royal Society of Chemistry publishes annual-review-type volumes of smaller scope, called *Specialist Periodical Reports*. Among those of interest to organic chemists are ''Aliphatic and Related Natural Product Chemistry'' (vol. 3 covers 1980–1981); ''Photochemistry'' (vol. 13 covers 1980–1981); ''The Alkaloids,'' (vol. 12 covers 1980–1981); ''General and Synthetic Methods,'' (vol. 6 covers 1981).

3. Organic Reaction Mechanisms,'' published by Wiley, New York, is an annual survey that covers the latest developments in the field of mechanisms. The first volume, covering 1965, appeared in 1966.

4. There are two annual reviews devoted to progress in organic synthesis. Theilheimer, ''Synthetic Methods of Organic Chemistry,'' S. Karger Verlag, Basel, is an annual compilation, beginning in 1946, of new methods for the synthesis of organic compounds, arranged according to a system based on bond closings and bond breakings. Equations, brief procedures, yields, and literature references are given. Volume 37 was issued in 1983. Volumes 3 and 4 are available only in German, but all the rest are in English. There is an index to each volume. Cumulative indexes appear in every fifth volume. Beginning with vol. 8, each volume includes a short summary of trends in synthetic organic chemistry. A more recent series is ''Annual Reports in Organic Synthesis,'' Academic Press, New York, which has covered the literature of each year since 1970. Equations are listed with yields and references according to a fairly simple system. A monthly publication, also devoted to new synthetic methods, is *Methods in Organic Synthesis*, which began in 1984. The journal *Synthesis* also publishes similar reports (taken from other journals) in each issue.

5. The *Journal Of Organometallic Chemistry* several times a year publishes annual surveys arranged according to metallic element. For example, vol. 262, published in January 1984, contains annual surveys for 1982 of organic compounds containing B, Sb, Bi, Mn, Tc, Re, Co, Rh, and Ir, as well as the use of transition metals in organic synthesis. These annual reviews formerly appeared in *Organometallic Chemistry Reviews, Section B*, which was a separate journal published from 1968 to 1974. Still earlier (for 1964–1966), these reviews were published in book form.

General Treatises

There are a number of large-scale multivolume treatises that cover the whole field of organic chemistry or large areas of it.

1. ''Rodd's Chemistry of Carbon Compounds,'' edited by Coffey, Elsevier, Amsterdam, is a treatise consisting of five main volumes, each of which contains several parts. Publication began in 1964 and is not yet complete. The organization is not greatly different from most textbooks, but the coverage is much broader and deeper. Supplements to some of the volumes have appeared. An earlier edition, called ''Chemistry of Carbon Compounds,'' edited by Rodd, was published in 10 parts from 1951 to 1962.

2. Houben-Weyl's ''Methoden der organischen Chemie,'' Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart, is a major treatise in German devoted to laboratory methods. The fourth edition, which was begun in 1952 and consists of 16 volumes, most of them in several parts, is edited by E. Muller. Supplementary volumes have begun to appear. The first four volumes contain general laboratory methods, analytical methods, physical methods, and general chemical methods. The later volumes are devoted to the synthesis of specific types of compounds, e.g., hydrocarbons, oxygen compounds, nitrogen compounds, etc.

3. ''Comprehensive Organic Chemistry,'' Pergamon, New York, 1979, is a six-volume treatise on the synthesis and reactions of organic compounds. The first three volumes cover the various functional groups, vol. 4, heterocyclic compounds, and vol. 5, biological compounds such as proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids. Probably the most useful volume is vol. 6, which contains formula, subject, and author indexes, as well as indexes of reactions and reagents. The last two of these not only refer to pages within the treatise, but directly give references to review articles and original papers. For example, on p. 1129, under ''Chromic acid-sulphuric acid (Jones reagent), oxidation, alcohols,'' are listed 13 references to original papers. Two similar treatises, the nine-volume ''Comprehensive Organometallic Chemistry'' (1982) and the eight-volume ''Comprehensive Heterocyclic Chemistry'' (1984) are also published by Pergamon. The indexes to these works also include references.

4. A major treatise devoted to experimental methods of chemistry is ''Techniques of Chemistry,'' edited by Weissberger, Wiley, New York. This publication, which began in 1970, so far consists of 18 volumes, most of them in several parts, covering such topics as electrochemical and spectral methods, kinetic methods, photochromism, and organic solvents. ''Techniques of Chemistry'' is a successor to an earlier series, called ''Techniques of Organic Chemistry,'' which appeared in 14 volumes, some of them in more than one edition, from 1945 to 1969.

5. ''Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics,'' edited by Bamford and Tipper, 1969–, Elsevier, Amsterdam, is a multivolume treatise covering the area of reaction kinetics. Six of these volumes (not all published at the time of writing) deal with the kinetics and mechanisms of organic reactions in a thorough and comprehensive manner.

6. Three multivolume treatises that cover specific areas are Elderfield, ''Heterocyclic Compounds,'' Wiley, New York, 1950–; Manske and Holmes, ''The Alkaloids,'' Academic Press, New York, 1950–; Simonson, Owen, Barton, and Ross, ''The Terpenes,'' Cambridge University Press, London, 1947–1957.

Monographs and Treatises on Specific Areas

Organic chemistry is blessed with a large number of books devoted to a thorough coverage of a specific area. Many of these are essentially very long review articles, differing from ordinary review articles only in size and scope. Some of the books are by a single author, and others have chapters by different authors but all are carefully planned to cover a specific area. Many of these books have been referred to in footnotes in appropriate places in this book. Several companies have published series of monographs of which we shall mention three of the most notable.

1. A series of unrelated monographs covering various areas of organic chemistry is published by Academic Press, New York. More than 40 titles have been published so far. Typical books in the series are Johnson, ''Ylid Chemistry,'' 1966; Ugi, ''Isonitrile Chemistry,'' 1971; Wasserman and Murray, ''Singlet Oxygen,'' 1979; Mayo, ''Rearrangements in Ground and Excited States,'' 1980; Trost and Melvin, ''Sulfur Ylides,'' 1975; Cram, ''Fundamentals of Carbanion Chemistry,'' 1965; Shamma, ''The Isoquinoline Alkaloids,'' 1972; and Rochester, ''Acidity Functions,'' 1970.

2. Wiley-Interscience publishes a series called ''The Chemistry of Functional Groups,'' under the general editorship of Patai. Each volume deals with the preparation, reactions, and physical and chemical properties of compounds containing a given functional group. Volumes covering more than 20 functional groups have appeared so far, including books on alkenes, cyano compounds, amines, carboxylic acids and esters, quinones, etc. Several more are planned.

3. A series of monographs on reaction mechanisms is published by the Elsevier Publishing Company. Among the books so far published in this series are Bunton, ''Nucleophilic Substitution at a Saturated Carbon Atom,'' 1963; Norman and Taylor, ''Electrophilic Substitution in Benzenoid Compounds,'' 1965; Miller, ''Nucleophilic Aromatic Substitution,'' 1968; Shine, ''Aromatic Rearrangements,'' 1967; and Buncel, ''Carbanions,'' 1974.

Textbooks

There are many excellent textbooks in the field of organic chemistry. We restrict ourselves to listing only a few of those published, mostly since 1977. Some of these are first-year texts and some are advanced (advanced texts generally give references; first-year texts do not, though they may give general bibliographies, suggestions for further reading, etc.); some cover the whole field, and others cover reactions, structure, and/or mechanism only. All the books listed here are not only good textbooks but valuable reference books for graduate students and practicing chemists.

Alder, Baker, and Brown, ''Mechanism in Organic Chemistry,'' Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1971.

Carey and Sundberg, ''Advanced Organic Chemistry,'' 2 vols., Plenum, 2d. ed., 1983, 1984.

Carruthers, ''Some Modern Methods of Organic Synthesis,'' 2d ed., Cambridge University Press, London, 1978.

Ege, ''Organic Chemistry,'' D.C. Heath, New York, 1984.

Fessenden and Fessenden, ''Organic Chemistry,'' 2d ed., Willard Grant Press, Boston, 1982.

Harris and Wamser, ''Fundamentals of Organic Reaction Mechanisms,'' Wiley, New York, 1976.

Pine, Hendrickson, Cram, and Hammond, ''Organic Chemistry,'' 4th ed., McGraw-Hill, New York, 1980.

House, ''Modern Synthetic Reactions,'' 2d ed., W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1972.

Ingold, ''Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry,'' 2d ed., Cornell University Press, Ithaca, N.Y., 1969.

Jones, ''Physical and Mechanistic Organic Chemistry,'' 2d ed., Cambridge University Press, London, 1984.

Kemp and Vellaccio, ''Organic Chemistry,'' Worth Publishers, New York, 1980.

Loudon, ''Organic Chemistry,'' Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1984.

Lowry and Richardson, ''Mechanism and Theory in Organic Chemistry,'' Harper and Row, New York, 1981.

McMurry, ''Organic Chemistry,'' Brooks/Cole, Monterey, Calif., 1984.

Morrison and Boyd, ''Organic Chemistry,'' 4th ed., Allyn and Bacon, Boston, 1982.

Solomons, ''Organic Chemistry,'' 3d ed., Wiley, New York, 1984.

Streitwieser and Heathcock, ''Introductory Organic Chemistry,'' 2d ed., Macmillan, New York, 1981.

Sykes, ''A Guidebook to Mechanism in Organic Chemistry,'' 5th ed., Longmans, New York, 1981.

Weininger and Stermitz, ''Organic Chemistry,'' Academic Press, New York, 1984.

Wingrove and Caret, ''Organic Chemistry,'' Harper and Row, New York, 1981.

Other Books

In this section we mention several books that do not fit conveniently into the previous categories. All but the last have to do with laboratory synthesis.

1. *Organic Syntheses,* published by Wiley, New York is a collection of procedures for the preparation of specific compounds. The thin annual volumes have appeared each year since 1921. The procedures for each 10- (or 9-) year period are collected in cumulative volumes, in this manner:

Annual volumes	Collective volumes
1–9	I
10–19	II
20–29	III
30–39	IV
40–49	V

The advantage of the procedures in *Organic Syntheses,* compared with those found in original journals, is that these procedures are *tested.* Each preparation is carried out first by its author and then by a member of the *Organic Syntheses* editorial board, and only if the yield is essentially duplicated is the procedure published. While it is possible to repeat most procedures given in journals, this is not always the case. All *Organic Syntheses* preparations are noted in Beilstein and in *CA*. In order to locate a given reaction in *Organic Syntheses,* the reader may use the OS references given in the present volume (through OS **61**); the indexes in *Organic Syntheses* itself; Sugasawa and Nakai; ''Reaction Index of Organic Syntheses,'' Wiley, New York, 1967 (through OS **45**); or Shriner and Shriner, ''Organic Syntheses Collective Volumes I, II, III, IV, V Cumulative Indices,'' Wiley, New York, 1976. A similar publication is *Organic Photochemical Syntheses,* also published by Wiley, New York; vol. 1 appeared in 1971.

2. Volume 1 of ''Reagents for Organic Synthesis,'' by Fieser and Fieser, Wiley, New York, 1967, is a 1457-page volume which discusses, in separate sections, some 1120 reagents and catalysts. It tells how each reagent is used in organic synthesis (with references) and, for each, tells which companies sell it, or how to prepare it, or both. The listing is alphabetical. Ten additional volumes have so far been published, which continue the format of vol. 1 and add more recent material.

3. ''Survey of Organic Synthesis,'' by Buehler and Pearson, Wiley, New York, 2 vols., 1970, 1977, discusses hundreds of reactions used to prepare the principal types of organic compounds. The arrangement is by chapters, each covering a functional group, e.g., ketones, acyl halides, amines, etc. Each reaction is thoroughly discussed and brief synthetic procedures are given. There are many references.

4. A similar publication is Sandler and Karo, ''Organic Functional Group Preparations,'' 3 vols., Academic Press, 1968–1972 (part of the series of Academic Press monographs mentioned on p. 1138). This publication covers more functional groups than Buehler and Pearson.

5. "Compendium of Organic Synthetic Methods," Wiley, New York, contains equations describing the preparation of about 4000 monofunctional and difunctional compounds with references. Five volumes have been published so far (1971 and 1974, edited by Harrison and Harrison; 1977, edited by Hegedus and Wade; 1980 and 1984, edited by Wade).

6. Two books that are rich in experimental procedures, both translated from the German, are Weygand and Hilgetag, "Preparative Organic Chemistry," edited by Hilgetag and Martini, Wiley, New York, 1972, and Becker et al., "Organicum," translated by Hazzard, Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1973. Another valuable book, more devoted to general laboratory technique than to specific procedures, is "Fundamentals of Preparative Organic Chemistry," by Keese, Müller, and Toube, Wiley, New York, 1982.

7. "The Vocabulary of Organic Chemistry," by Orchin, Kaplan, Macomber, Wilson, and Zimmer, Wiley, New York, 1980, presents definitions of more than 1000 terms used in many branches of organic chemistry, including stereochemistry, thermodynamics, wave mechanics, natural products, and fossil fuels. There are also lists of classes of organic compounds, types of mechanism, and name reactions (with mechanisms). The arrangement is topical rather than alphabetical, but there is a good index. An official IUPAC list of definitions, "Glossary of Terms Used in Physical Organic Chemistry," was published in 1983 in *Pure and Applied Chemistry* (**55,** 1281–1371).

LITERATURE SEARCHING

Information about a Specific Compound

Most organic chemists find it necessary, occasionally or frequently, to search the literature for information concerning specific compounds. They may need to know if a compound has ever been prepared and if so, how, and/or they may be seeking a melting point, an ir spectrum, or some other property. The directions for this particular type of literature search are so much more specific than for other searches that we discuss them first. Someone who wants all the information that has ever been published on any compound begins by consulting the formula index to the second supplement of Beilstein (p. 1132), which quickly shows whether the compound is mentioned in the literature through 1929. If it is there, the searcher turns to the pages indicated, where all methods used to prepare the compound are given, as well as all physical properties, with references. If the compound is in a volume of Beilstein of which the third and/or fourth supplement has been published, it may be found there, by the method described on p. 1131. If the compound is not listed in the cumulative formula index (and is thus absent from the literature through 1929), the next step is to ascertain whether it is in the third or fourth supplement, which is done as described on p. 1132. If the compound is in one of the volumes for which a cumulative formula index is already available, much of this labor is unnecessary, since this index will give, in one place, the Beilstein locations in *das Hauptwerk* and all four supplements. At this point the investigator will know (1) all information published through 1959[35] or 1949,[36] or (2) that the compound is not mentioned in the literature through 1959[35] or 1949.[36] In some cases, scrutiny of Beilstein will be sufficient, perhaps if only a boiling point or a refractive index is required. In other cases, especially where specific laboratory directions are needed, the investigator will have to turn to the original papers.

To carry the search past 1949 (or 1959), the chemist next turns to the collective formula indexes of *Chemical Abstracts:* 1947–1956 (if this period was not covered by Beilstein); 1957–1961; 1962–

---

[35] For compounds that would naturally belong to a volume for which the fourth supplement has already been published.

[36] For compounds that would naturally belong to a volume for which the fourth supplement has not been published.

1966; 1967–1971; 1972–1976; 1977–1981; such later collective indexes as have appeared; and the semiannual indexes thereafter. If a given formula index contains only a few references to the compound in question, the pages or abstract numbers will be given directly in the formula index. However, if there are many references, the reader will be directed to see the chemical substance index or (before 1972) the subject index for the same period; and here the number of page or abstract numbers may be very large indeed. Fortunately, numerous subheadings are given, and these often help the user to narrow the search to the more promising entries. Nevertheless, one will undoubtedly turn to many abstracts that do not prove to be helpful. In many cases, the information in the abstracts will be sufficient. If not, the original references must be consulted. In some cases (the index entry is marked by an asterisk or a double asterisk) the compound is not mentioned in the abstract, though it is in the original paper or patent. Incidentally, all entries in the *CA* indexes that refer to patents are prefixed by the letter P. Since 1967, the prefixes B and R have also been used to signify books and reviews, respectively.

By the procedure outlined above, all information regarding a specific compound that has been published up to about a year before the search can be found by a procedure that is always straightforward and that in many cases is rapid (if the compound has been reported only a few times). Equally important, if the compound has not been reported, the investigator will know that, too. It should be pointed out that for common compounds, such as benzene, ether, acetone, etc., trivial mentions in the literature are not indexed (so that they will not be found by this procedure), only significant ones. Thus, if acetone is converted to another compound, an index entry will be found, but not if it is used as a solvent or an eluent in a common procedure.

There are several methods for learning whether a compound is mentioned in the literature after the period covered by the latest semiannual formula index of *CA*. One may consult *Chemical Titles* and the keyword index (p. 1128) at the end of each issue of *CA*. In these cases, of course, it is necessary to know what name might be used for the compound. The name is not necessary for *Current Abstracts of Chemistry and Index Chemicus* (p. 1130); one consults the monthly formula indexes. However, these methods are far from complete. *Current Abstracts of Chemistry and Index Chemicus* lists primarily *new* compounds, those which would not have been found in the earlier search. As for *Chemical Titles*, the compound can be found only if it is mentioned in the title. The keyword indexes in *CA* are more complete, being based on internal subject matter as well as title, but they are by no means exhaustive. Furthermore, all three of these publications lag some distance behind the original journals, though *Chemical Titles* is very close. There is no method for the *complete* location of all references to a compound after the period covered by the latest semiannual formula index of *CA*.

The complete procedure described above may not be necessary in all cases. Often all the information one needs about a compound will be found in one of the handbooks (p. 1133), in the "Dictionary of Organic Compounds" (p. 1133), or in one of the other compendia listed in this chapter, most of which give references to the original literature.

Other Searches[37]

There is no definite procedure for making other literature searches. Any chemist who wishes to learn all that is known about the mechanism of the reaction between aldehydes and HCN, or which compounds of the general formula Ar_3CR have been prepared, or which are the best catalysts for Friedel–Crafts acylation of naphthalene derivatives with anhydrides, or where the group $C(NH_2){=}NH$ absorbs in the ir, is dependent on his or her ingenuity and knowledge of the literature

---

[37] This discussion is necessarily short. For much more extensive discussions, consult the books in Ref. 1.

(though computer searching can often help). If a specific piece of information is needed, it may be possible to find it in one of the compendia mentioned previously. If the topic is more general, the best procedure is often to begin by consulting one or more monographs, treatises, or textbooks that will give general background information and often provide references to review articles and original papers. For example, Olah's treatise on Friedel–Crafts reactions (Ref. 195 in Chapter 11) should certainly be consulted on the Friedel–Crafts topic mentioned above. In many cases this is sufficient, but when a complete search is required, it is necessary to consult the *CA* subject and/or chemical substance indexes, where the ingenuity of the investigator is most required, for now it must be decided which words to look under. If one is interested in the mechanism of the reaction between aldehydes and HCN, one might look under "aldehydes," or "hydrogen cyanide," or even under "acetaldehyde" or "benzaldehyde," etc., but then the search is likely to prove long. A better choice in this case would be "cyanohydrin," since these are the normal products and references there would be fewer. It would be a waste of time to look under "mechanism." In any case, many of the abstracts would not prove helpful. Literature searching of this kind is necessarily a wasteful process. Of course, the searcher would not consult the *CA* annual indexes but only the collective indexes as far as they go and the semiannual indexes thereafter. If it is necessary to search before 1907 (and even before 1920, since *CA* was not very complete from 1907 to about 1920), recourse may be made to *Chemisches Zentralblatt* (p. 1130) and the abstracts in the *Journal of the Chemical Society* (p. 1130).

Science Citation Index

A publication that can greatly facilitate literature searching is the computer-produced *Science Citation Index* (*SCI*), begun in 1961. This publication, which is quite different from any other mentioned in this chapter, gives a list of all papers in a given year that have cited a given paper, patent, or book. Its utility lies in the fact that it enables the user to search *forward* from a given paper or patent, rather than backward, as is usually the case. For example, suppose a chemist is familiar with a paper by Jencks and Gilchrist [*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **90,** 2622 (1968)] entitled "Nonlinear Structure-Reactivity Correlations. The Reactivity of Nucleophilic Reagents toward Esters." The chemist is easily able to begin a search for earlier papers by using references supplied in this paper and can then go further backward with the aid of references in those papers, etc. But for obvious reasons the paper itself supplies no way to locate *later* papers. *SCI* is designed to make up for this gap. The citation index of *SCI* lists all papers, patents, or books cited in a given year or quarter (by first author only) and then gives a list of papers that have done the citing. The index is published bimonthly and cumulated annually. For example, column 27216 of the 1982 *Citation Index* shows that the Jencks paper mentioned above was cited as a footnote in 18 papers published in 1982 or late 1981. It is reasonable to assume that most of the papers that cited the Jencks paper were on closely related subjects. For each of the 18 papers are listed the first author, journal abbreviation, volume and page numbers, and year. In a similar manner, if one consulted *SCI* for all the years from 1968 on, one would have a complete list of papers that cited that paper. One could obviously broaden the search by then consulting *SCI* (from 1982 on) for papers that cited these 18 papers and so on. Papers, patents, or books listed, for example, in the 1982 *SCI* may go back many years, e.g., papers published by Einstein in 1905 and 1906 are included. The only requirement is that a paper published in 1982 (or late 1981) has mentioned the earlier paper in a footnote. The arrangement of cited papers or books is alphabetical by cited first author and then by cited year. The arrangement of patents is by patent number, regardless of country.

SCI covers about 3300 journals in the physical and biological sciences, as well as in medicine, agriculture, technology, and the behavioral sciences. In addition to the Citation Index, each bimonthly and annual *SCI* also includes three other indexes. One of these, called *Source Index*, is similar to the *CA* author index. It lists the titles, journal abbreviations, volume, issue, page numbers, and year of all papers published by a given author during that two-month period or year. All authors are listed; not just first authors. The second, called the *Corporate Index*, lists all publications that have been published from a given institution during that period, by first author. Thus the *Corporate Index* for 1982 lists 22 papers by 17 different first authors emanating from the Department of Organic Chemistry of the University of Adelaide, Australia. The third index included in *SCI* is the *Permuterm*[38] *Subject Index*. This index alphabetically lists every significant word in the titles of all papers published in that year or quarter, paired with all other significant words in the same title. Thus, for example, a title with seven significant words appears at 42 separate places in the index. Each of the seven words appears six times as the main word, each time paired with a different word as the co-word. The user is then led to the *Source Index*, where the full reference is given. *SCI* is also available online.

The publishers of *SCI* also produce another publication, called *Index to Scientific Reviews*, that appears semiannually (the second issue of each year cumulates the first). This publication, which began in 1974, is very similar to *SCI*, but confines itself to listing citations to review articles. The citations come from about 2500 journals in the same general areas as are covered by *SCI*. The review articles cited appeared in about 150 review journals and books, as well as in those journals that publish occasional review articles. Like *SCI*, the *Index to Scientific Reviews* contains citation, source, corporate, and Permuterm indexes.

How to Locate Journal Articles

Having obtained a reference from Beilstein, *SCI, CA*, a treatise, or some other source, one often needs to consult the original journal (the location of patents is discussed on p. 1125). The first step is to ascertain the full name of the journal, since it is the abbreviation that is generally given. Of course, everyone should be familiar with the abbreviations of the very important journals, such as *J. Org. Chem.*, *Chem. Ber.*, etc., but references are often found to journals whose titles are not at all familiar (e.g., *K. Skogs Lantbruksakad. Tidskr.* or *Nauchn. Tr. Mosk. Lesotekh. Inst.*). In such cases, one consults the *Chemical Abstracts Service Source Index* (*CASSI*), 1979 edition, which contains the names of all of the journals covered by *CA* from 1907 to 1979 (even those no longer published), with the most recent abbreviations in bold print. The journals are listed in alphabetical order of the *abbreviations*, not of the titles. Journal title changes have not been infrequent, and *CASSI* also contains all former names, with cross-references to the current names. Quarterly supplements, cumulated annually, to *CASSI* have appeared since 1980 listing new journals and recent changes in journal titles. It should be pointed out that, while many publications use the *CA* abbreviations, not all do. The student will find that usages vary from country to country, and even from journal to journal within a country. Furthermore, the *CA* abbreviations change from time to time.

Once the complete title is known, the journal can easily be obtained if it is in the library customarily used by the chemist. If not, one must use another library, and the next step is to find out which libraries carry the journal. *CASSI* answers this question too, since it carries a list of some 369 libraries in the United States and other countries, and *for each journal it tells which of these libraries carries it*, and furthermore, if the holdings are incomplete, which volumes of that journal are carried by each library. It may be possible to visit the closest library personally. If not, many of these libraries maintain one or more of the following services: lending, microfilms, photocopying; and a copy of the article may be obtained in one of these ways, photocopying being most common. *CASSI* also includes lists of journal publishers and sales agents, document suppliers, and document depositories. Photocopies of most documents cited in *CA* can be obtained from Chemical Abstracts Service, Customer Services, P.O. Box 3012, Columbus, Ohio, 43210, U.S.A.

---

[38] Registered trade name.

Appendix B

CLASSIFICATION OF REACTIONS BY TYPE OF COMPOUND SYNTHESIZED

Acetals and Ketals

0-14 Reaction between alkoxides and *gem*-dihalides (Williamson) or α-halo ethers
0-17 Reaction between diazoalkanes and alcohols
0-19 Transetherification
0-80 Reduction of ortho esters
0-85 Reduction of mesylate esters
0-93 Reaction between Grignard reagents and ortho esters
5-4 Addition of alcohols or phenols to triple bonds
6-6 Addition of alcohols to aldehydes or ketones
6-53 Addition of aldehydes to olefins (Prins)
6-58 Trimerization and polymerization of aldehydes

Acetylenes (*see* Alkynes)

Acids (*see* Carboxylic Acids, Sulfonic Acids)

Acylals

5-5 Addition of acids to alkynes
6-57 Acylation of aldehydes or ketones
9-14 Bisdecarboxylation of malonic acids
9-17 Oxidation of arylmethanes with CrO_3 and Ac_2O

Acyl Halides

0-3 Reaction between 1,1,1-trihalides and SO_3
0-75 From carboxylic acids
0-76 Conversion of acid derivatives to acyl halides
4-3 Halogenation of aldehydes
5-1 Addition of hydrogen halides to ketenes
5-21 Free-radical addition of acyl halides to olefins

Acyloins (*see* Hydroxy Aldehydes and Ketones)

Alcohols (*see also* Diols, Hydroxy Esters, etc.)

0-1 Hydrolysis of alkyl halides
0-4 Hydrolysis of inorganic esters
0-5 Diazotization of primary aliphatic amines
0-7 Hydrolysis of enol ethers, acetals, or ortho esters
0-11 Hydrolysis of carboxylic esters
0-13 Decarbonylation of carboxylic acids
0-19 Transetherification
0-25 Transesterification
0-57 Ammonolysis of esters
0-69 Cleavage of ethers with concentrated acids
0-80 Reduction of acetals or ortho esters
0-81 Reduction of epoxides
0-93 Cleavage of acetals or ortho esters with Grignard reagents
0-94 Reaction between organometallic compounds and epoxides
0-99 Alkylation of alcohols
0-117 Hydrolysis of sulfonic esters
1-13 Alkylation of aromatic rings with ethylene oxide
1-24 Hydroxyalkylation of aromatic rings
2-23 Reaction between organometallic reagents and oxygen
4-4 Hydroxylation at an aliphatic carbon
5-2 Hydration of olefins
5-13 Hydroboration–oxidation of alkenes
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to unsaturated alcohols

Alcohols (continued)

5-21 Free-radical addition of alcohols to olefins
5-43 Addition of OH and SR to double bonds
6-26 Reduction of aldehydes or ketones
6-30 Additions of Grignard reagents to aldehydes or ketones
6-33 Addition of Grignard reagents to esters or acyl halides
7-2 Alkaline cleavage of ethers
7-42 Reaction of N-substituted amides with certain catalysts
8-1 Rearrangement of alcohols or olefins (Wagner–Meerwein)
8-3 Expansion and contraction of rings (Demyanov)
8-22 Cleavage of methyl ketones with peracids (Baeyer–Villiger)
8-23 Cleavage of hydroperoxides
8-25 Rearrangement of ethers upon treatment with alkyllithiums (Wittig)
8-26 From boranes and CO, or CN^-, or $CHCl_2OMe$; from boranes and bromine
8-27 From boranes, CO, water, and NaOH
8-28 From boranes, CO, and $LiAlH_4$
8-39 [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangements of allylic ethers or allylic sulfoxides
8-44 Photolysis of hypohalites
9-9 Reduction of ozonides
9-39 Reduction of carboxylic acids
9-43 Reduction of esters
9-44 Reduction of carboxylic esters with titanocene dichloride
9-45 Reduction of anhydrides
9-46 Reduction of acyl halides
9-58 Reduction of hydroperoxides
9-61 Reduction of peroxides
9-70 Reaction between aldehydes and base (Cannizzaro)

Aldehydes (*see also* Dicarbonyl Compounds, Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds, etc.)

0-2 Hydrolysis of *gem*-dihalides
0-4 Hydrolysis of vinyl esters of inorganic acids
0-7 Hydrolysis of enol ethers, acetals, thioacetals, etc.
0-11 Hydrolysis of enol esters
0-84 Reduction of acyl halides
0-85 Reduction of carboxylic acids, esters, or anhydrides
0-86 Reduction of amides
0-97 Alkylation and hydrolysis of imines; alkylation of aldehydes
0-99 Alkylation and hydrolysis of dithianes
0-100 Alkylation and hydrolysis of oxazines and similar compounds
0-101 Reaction of diazo aldehydes with boranes
0-104 Carbonylation of alkyl halides
0-107 Reaction between formates or formamides and organometallic compounds
0-113 Formylation of carboxylic acid salts
0-116 Reaction between formic acid, another acid, and thorium oxide
1-16 Formylation of aromatic rings with formamides and $POCl_3$ (Vilsmeier)
1-17 Formylation of aromatic rings with carbon monoxide and HCl (Gatterman–Koch)
1-18 Formylation of aromatic rings with HCN and HCl (Gatterman)
1-19 Formylation of aromatic rings with chloroform (Reimer–Tiemann)
1-20 Other formylations of aromatic rings
1-43 Reaction between arylcarbinols and diazonium salts (Stiles–Sisti)
2-31 Carbonylation of organometallic compounds
2-39 Decarboxylation of α-keto or glycidic acids
3-27 Rearrangement of aromatic amino sulfides (Sommelet–Hauser)
4-18 Arylation of allylic alcohols
4-30 Reaction of diazonium salts with oximes, followed by hydrolysis
5-3 Hydration of acetylene
5-10 Selective reduction of unsaturated aldehydes
5-13 Oxidation of boranes; hydrolysis of unsaturated boranes
5-17 Michael reaction of ketene thioacetal monoxides, followed by hydrolysis
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to unsaturated aldehydes
5-19 Addition of boranes to unsaturated aldehydes

Aldehydes (continued)
5-23 Hydroformylation of olefins (oxo process)
6-2 Hydrolysis of imines, oximes, hydrazones, or other C=N compounds
6-4 Hydrolysis of primary nitro compounds (Nef)
6-29 Reduction of nitriles
6-33 Addition of Grignard reagents to formamides
6-36 Reaction of alkyllithium compounds with oxazines
6-42 Reaction of aldehydes or ketones with boron methides
6-71 Hydrolysis of metalated aldimines
7-1 Dehydration of 1,2-diols
7-2 Pyrolysis of vinyl ethers
7-34 Fragmentation of γ-amino or γ-hydroxy halides
7-35 Fragmentation of 1,3-diols or γ-amino alcohols
7-41 Fragmentation of certain ketoximes
7-46 Pyrolysis of β-hydroxy olefins
7-47 Pyrolysis of allyl ethers
8-2 Rearrangements of diols (pinacol)
8-10 Homologization of aldehydes
8-16 Reaction between α-hydroxy or α-halo amides and NaOBr (Hofmann)
8-23 Cleavage of hydroperoxides
8-28 Treatment of boranes with CO and $LiAl(OMe)_3$
8-44 Photolysis of nitrites, followed by hydrolysis (Barton)
9-3 Oxidation of primary alcohols
9-7 Oxidative cleavage of glycols or related compounds
9-9 Ozonolysis of olefins
9-13 Oxidation of arylacetic acids
9-16 Oxidation of activated methyl groups
9-17 Oxidation of arylmethanes (Étard)
9-20 Oxidation of primary halides or esters of primary alcohols
9-21 Oxidation of amines
9-23 Oxidation of olefins with noble-metal salts

Alicyclic Compounds

0-87 Internal coupling (Wurtz)
0-89 Cyclization of diallylic halides
0-91 Cyclization of 1,3-diols
0-96 Internal malonic ester synthesis
0-101 Cyclization of haloboranes
0-111 Internal condensation of diesters (Dieckmann)
0-116 Ketonic decarboxylation of dicarboxylic acids
1-13 Intramolecular Friedel–Crafts alkylation
1-14 Scholl ring closure
1-15 Intramolecular Friedel–Crafts acylation
1-25 Cyclodehydration of aldehydes and ketones
2-18 Intramolecular insertion of carbenes
3-16 Cyclization of dihalobiphenyls
4-15 Coupling of terminal diynes (cycloalkynes)
4-16 Intramolecular arylation (Pschorr)
4-34 Cyclization of dimagnesio compounds
4-35 Coupling of dienes through borane intermediates
5-5 Cyclization of olefinic acids
5-11 Reduction of aromatic rings
5-15 Cyclization of dienes
5-18 Cyclization of unsaturated Grignard reagents
5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of dienes
5-46 Cycloaddition of allylic anions or cations to olefins
5-47 Addition of olefins to dienes (Diels–Alder)
5-48 Dimerization of olefins
5-49 Addition of carbenes or carbenoids to olefins or alkynes
5-50 Tetramerization of alkynes
5-51 Other cycloaddition reactions
6-30 Ring closure of halo carbonyl compounds
6-40 Internal aldol condensation
6-47 Internal Wittig reactions
6-48 Cyclization of dinitriles (Thorpe–Ziegler)
7-49 Extrusion of N_2 from pyrazolines or pyrazoles
7-50 Extrusion of CO from cyclic ketones
7-51 Extrusion of SO_2 from cyclic sulfones
7-52 Decarboxylation of cyclic peroxides (Story)
8-1 Wagner–Meerwein rearrangements to give cyclic products

Alicyclic Compounds (continued)

8-3	Expansion and contraction of rings (Demyanov)
8-8	Ring contraction of halo ketones (Favorskii)
8-9	Ring contraction of cyclic diazo ketones (Wolff)
8-10	Ring expansion of cyclic ketones
8-26	Treatment of cyclic boranes with CO
8-27	Treatment of cyclic boranes with CO, H_2O, NaOH, and H_2O_2
8-31	Cyclization of conjugated dienes and trienes
8-34	[1,*j*] sigmatropic migrations of carbon
8-35	Ring expansion of vinylcyclopropenes and cyclobutenes
8-36	Ring expansion of vinylcycloalkanes; cyclization of diynes
8-41	Metathesis of dienes
8-42	Metal-ion-catalyzed σ-bond rearrangements
8-43	The di-π-methane rearrangement
9-2	Dehydrogenative ring closing
9-34	Oxidative cyclization
9-55	Reduction of cyclic ketones to cycloalkenes
9-64	Cyclization of diketones or keto esters
9-66	Condensation of diesters (acyloin)

Alkanes (*see also* Alicyclic Compounds)

0-77	Reduction of alkyl halides
0-78	Reduction of tosylates and similar compounds
0-79	Hydrogenolysis of alcohols
0-82	Reductive cleavage of esters
0-83	Reduction of the C—N bond
0-87	Coupling of alkyl halides (Wurtz)
0-88	Coupling of alkyl halides with organometallic reagents
0-90	Reaction between organometallic reagents and alkyl sulfates or sulfonates
0-91	Coupling of alcohols
0-93	Reaction between Grignard reagents and ethers
0-99	Reduction of dithianes
2-16	Alkylation of alkanes
2-18	Insertion of carbenes
2-22	Reaction between organometallic compounds and acids
2-39	Decarboxylation of carboxylic acids
2-40	Cleavage of tertiary alkoxides
2-44	Cleavage of nonenolizable ketones
2-45	Cleavage of ketones with amide ion (Haller–Bauer)
2-46	Cleavage of alkanes
2-47	Decyanation of nitriles
4-14	Coupling of alkanes
4-34	Coupling of Grignard reagents
4-35	Coupling of boranes
4-36	Coupling of other organometallic compounds
4-37	Desulfurization of sulfur compounds
4-38	Decarboxylative dimerization (Kolbe)
4-40	Decarbonylation of aldehydes or acyl halides
5-10	Reduction of olefins and alkynes
5-11	Reduction of aromatic rings
5-12	Reductive cleavage of cyclopropanes
5-15	Addition of alkanes to olefins
6-30	Reaction of ketones with trimethylaluminum
6-33	Reaction of carboxylic acids with trimethylaluminum
9-6	Oxidation of hydrazines
9-13	Oxidative decarboxylation of carboxylic acids
9-38	Reduction of aldehydes or ketones (Wolff–Kishner; Clemmensen)
9-44	Reduction of carboxylic acids or esters
9-47	Reduction of epoxides
9-53	Reduction of cyano to methyl groups

Alkenes (*see also* Alicyclic Compounds, Unsaturated Acids, Unsaturated Alcohols, etc.)

0-70	Reduction of α-keto epoxides
0-77	Reduction of unsaturated halides
0-79	Reduction of allylic alcohols
0-83	Reductive cleavage of enamines
0-87	Coupling of vinyl halides
0-88	Coupling of unsaturated halides with organometallic reagents
0-89	Coupling of allylic halides, tosylates, or acetates
0-90	Coupling of vinyl triflates with organometallic reagents
0-91	Coupling of allylic alcohols with organometallic reagents
0-92	Coupling of allylic esters with organometallic reagents
0-93	Cleavage of allylic, vinylic, or silyl ethers

Alkenes (continued)

0-95	Coupling of vinylic and allylic sulfur and selenium compounds with organometallic compounds
2-2	Migration of double and triple bonds
2-31	Reaction of Grignard reagents or nickel complexes with CO
2-39	Decarboxylation of unsaturated acids
4-17	Arylation of olefins (Meerwein)
4-18	Arylation of olefins by organopalladium compounds
4-29	Vinylation of diazonium salts
4-34	Dimerization of allylic Grignard reagents
4-35	Dimerization of vinylchloroboranes
4-36	Dimerization of vinyl organometallic reagents
4-37	Desulfurization of thiophenes
4-38	Additive dimerization of olefins and carboxylic acids
5-10	Selective reduction of alkynes or allenes
5-11	Reduction of aromatic rings
5-13	Reduction of vinylic boranes
5-15	Dimerization of olefins
5-16	The ene synthesis
5-47	Addition of olefins to dienes (Diels–Alder)
5-49	Addition of carbenes to aromatic rings
5-50	Tetramerization of alkynes
5-51	Dimerization of dienes
5-52	Addition of two alkyl groups to an alkyne
5-54	Reaction of diphenylacetylene with methylsulfinyl carbanion
6-30	Reaction of *gem*-dimetallic compounds with aldehydes or ketones
6-42	Addition to aldehydes or ketones of α-sulfinyl carbanions or of α-lithiosilanes (Peterson); from tosylhydrazone salts
6-44	Reaction between anhydrides and aldehydes
6-47	Reaction between phosphorus ylides and aldehydes or ketones (Wittig)
6-64	Reaction of sulfonyl halides with tertiary amines and diazoalkanes
7-1	Dehydration of alcohols
7-2	Alkaline cleavage of ethers
7-3	Pyrolysis of carboxylic esters
7-4	Pyrolysis of xanthates (Chugaev)
7-5	Cleavage of inorganic esters and sulfonates
7-6	Cleavage of quaternary ammonium hydroxides (Hofmann)
7-7	Cleavage of quaternary ammonium salts
7-8	Cleavage of amine oxides (Cope)
7-9	Cleavage of other amine derivatives
7-10	Cleavage of aliphatic diazonium salts
7-11	Decomposition of tosylhydrazones
7-12	Cleavage of sulfonium compounds
7-13	Cleavage of sulfoxides, selenoxides, and sulfones
7-14	Dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides
7-15	Reaction of sulfonyl halides with tertiary amines
7-16	Elimination of boranes
7-17	Elimination of HM from organometallic compounds
7-19	Decarbonylation of acyl halides
7-20	Cleavage of Michael adducts
7-21	Deoxygenation of *vic*-diols
7-22	Cleavage of cyclic thionocarbonates
7-23	Deoxidation of epoxides
7-24	Desulfurization of episulfides
7-25	Reaction of α-halo sulfones with bases (Ramberg–Bäcklund)
7-26	Reaction of aziridines with nitrous acid
7-27	Denitration of *vic*-dinitro compounds
7-29	Dehalogenation of *vic*-dihalides
7-31	Elimination of a halo and a hetero group (Boord)
7-32	Cleavage of β-hydroxy sulfides and related compounds
7-33	Fragmentation of γ-branched alcohols or halides
7-34	Fragmentation of γ-amino or γ-hydroxy halides
7-35	Fragmentation of 1,3-diols or γ-amino alcohols
7-36	Decarbonylation of β-hydroxy carboxylic acids and of β-lactones
7-39	Elimination of CO and CO_2 from bridged bicyclic compounds
7-46	Pyrolysis of β-hydroxy olefins
7-47	Pyrolysis of allyl ethers
7-54	Twofold extrusion from certain cyclic molecules

Alkenes (continued)

8-1 Rearrangement of alcohols and olefins (Wagner–Meerwein)
8-3 Expansion and contraction of rings (Demyanov)
8-9 Rearrangement of carbenes or carbenoids
8-29 Reaction between vinylboranes and iodine or NaOMe
8-30 Reaction of lithium alkynyltrialkylborates with electrophiles
8-31 Electrocyclic rearrangements of cyclobutenes and cyclohexadienes
8-33 [1,*j*] sigmatropic migrations of hydrogen
8-34 [1,*j*] sigmatropic migrations of carbon
8-35 Rearrangement of vinylcyclopropanes
8-36 Rearrangement of 1,5-dienes (Cope)
8-41 Metathesis of olefins
8-42 Cyclobutane reversions
8-43 The di-π-methane rearrangement
9-2 Dehydrogenation of diarylalkanes; remote dehydrogenation
9-13 Oxidative decarboxylation of carboxylic acids
9-14 Bisdecarboxylation of succinic acids
9-34 Oxidative coupling of halides
9-38 Reduction of α-hydroxy ketones; of unsaturated tosylhydrazones
9-55 Reduction of cyclic ketones
9-65 Bimolecular reduction of aldehydes or ketones

Alkyl Halides (*see also* Dihalides, Halohydrins, etc.)

0-66 Halide exchange (Finkelstein)
0-67 Reaction between inorganic esters and halide ions
0-68 Reaction between alcohols and hydrogen halides or inorganic acid halides
0-69 Cleavage of ethers with HI or HBr
0-71 Cleavage of esters with LiI
0-73 Conversion of amines to halides
0-74 Cleavage of tertiary amines (von Braun)
0-77 Reduction of dihalides
0-88 Coupling of dihalides with Grignard reagents
1-13 Reaction between aromatic rings and carbon tetrachloride
1-26 Haloalkylation of aromatic rings
2-28 Halogenation of organometallic compounds
2-38 Exchange between halides and organometallic compounds
4-1 Free-radical halogenation
4-2 Allylic halogenation
4-39 Decarboxylative halogenation (Hunsdiecker)
5-1 Addition of hydrogen halides to alkenes or alkynes
5-21 Free-radical addition of alkyl halides to olefins
5-27 Addition of halogens to olefins or alkynes
5-34 Addition of alkyl or aryl halides to olefins
7-42 Reaction of N-substituted amides with PCl_5 (von Braun)

Alkynes (*see also* Alkynyl Halides, Alkynyl Ethers)

0-89 Propargylation of alkyl halides
0-102 Alkylation at an alkynyl carbon
2-2 Triple-bond migration
2-39 Decarboxylation of acetylenic acids
3-1 Reaction between aryl iodides and copper acetylides
4-15 Coupling of alkynes (Eglinton)
4-34 Dimerization of alkynyl organometallic compounds
4-35 Coupling of alkynyl borates
7-1 Dehydration of aryl ketones
7-6 Pyrolysis of bisquaternary ammonium hydroxides
7-13 Cleavage of selenoxides or vinylic sulfides
7-14 Dehydrohalogenation of dihalides or vinyl halides
7-25 Decomposition of thiiren-1,1-dioxides
7-28 Reaction of bistosylhydrazones with metallic oxides
7-29 Dehalogenation of tetrahalides
7-31 Cleavage of enol phosphorinates
8-11 Rearrangement of vinyl halides (Fritsch–Buttenberg–Wiechell)
8-30 From boranes and lithium acetylides
8-41 Metathesis of alkynes
9-34 Oxidation of dihalotoluenes

Alkynyl Halides

2-28 Reaction of acetylide ions with halogens

Alkynyl Ethers

7-14 Reaction between vinylidine dihalides and amide ion

Allenes

0-77 Reduction of propargyl halides
0-89 Alkylation of propargyl halides
0-90 Alkylation of propargyl tosylates
0-92 Reaction between propargyl esters and organometallic reagents
2-2 Rearrangement of alkynes
6-47 Reaction of phosphoranes with ketenes or CO_2
7-14 Dehydrohalogenation of dihalides
7-29 Dehalogenation of tetrahalides or dihaloalkenes
7-46 Pyrolysis of β-hydroxy alkynes
8-3 Contraction of three-membered rings
8-37 Rearrangement of propargyl vinyl compounds
9-38 Reduction of acetylenic ketones

Amidals (*see* Bisamides)

Amides (*see also* Bisamides)

0-12 Cleavage of an alkyl group from N-*t*-butyl amides
0-53 Reaction between secondary amines and chloroform
0-54 Amination of acyl halides
0-55 Amination of anhydrides
0-56 Amination of acids
0-57 Amination of esters
0-58 Amination of amides
0-59 Amination of other acid derivatives
0-60 N-Alkylation of amides
0-105 Carbonylation of alkyl halides
1-6 Amidation of aromatic rings with hydroxamic acids
1-21 Carbamoylation of aromatic rings (Gatterman)
1-23 Amidation of aromatic rings with isocyanates
1-37 Rearrangement of N-halo-N-acyl aromatic amines (Orton)
2-11 Insertion by nitrenes
2-29 Indirectly from aldehydes
2-31 From imines, CO, and a borane
2-41 Reaction between amino acids and anhydrides (Dakin–West)
2-45 Cleavage of ketones with amide ion (Haller–Bauer)
2-47 Decyanation of cyano amides
2-55 Carbonylation of amines
3-6 N-Arylation of amides
4-13 Reaction of aldehydes with ammonia
4-22 Carbamidation of nitrogen heterocycles
5-3 Hydration of ynamines
5-8 Addition of amides to olefins; addition of amines to ketenes
5-21 Free-radical addition of amides to olefins
5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of olefins in the presence of amines
6-5 Partial hydrolysis of nitriles
6-15 Reductive alkylation of amines (Leuckart)
6-27 Reduction of isocyanates
6-37 Addition of Grignard reagents to isocyanates
6-56 Addition of alcohols or other carbocation sources to nitriles (Ritter)
6-67 Addition of water to isonitriles
8-8 Rearrangement of α-halo ketones in the presence of amines (Favorskii)
8-9 Rearrangement of diazo ketones in the presence of amines (Arndt–Eistert)
8-16 Reaction between amides, lead tetraacetate, and acetic acid
8-19 Reaction between ketones and hydrazoic acid (Schmidt)
8-20 Rearrangement of oximes (Beckmann)
8-46 Rearrangement of aryl imidates (Chapman)
9-18 Oxidation of tertiary amines
9-73 Oxidation of aryl ketones with ammonium polysulfide (Willgerodt)

Amidines

0-36 Reaction of N-alkylimino esters with secondary amines
0-57 Amination of imidates
5-8 Addition of amines to ketenimines
6-18 Addition of ammonia or amines to nitriles or nitrilium salts

Aminals

6-14 Addition of amines to aldehydes or ketones

Amine Oxides

9-29 Oxidation of tertiary amines

Amines (*see also* Cyanoamines, Amino Acids, etc.)

0-12 Hydrolysis of amides
0-36 Reduction of N-alkylimino esters
0-38 Cleavage of amines or quaternary ammonium salts
0-45 Alkylation of ammonia or amines
0-46 Reaction between alkyl halides and hexamethylenetetramine (Delépine)
0-47 Reaction of alkyl halides with cyanamide
0-48 From alcohols or ethers
0-49 Transamination
0-50 Alkylation of amines with diazo compounds
0-52 Amination of alkanes
0-60 Hydrolysis of phthalimides (Gabriel); etc.
0-73 Cleavage of aromatic amines or quaternary ammonium salts
0-83 Reduction of quaternary ammonium salts or aziridines
0-93 Cleavage of amine ethers or thioethers with organometallic compounds
0-99 Alkylation of amines
0-117 Hydrolysis of sulfonamides
1-6 Direct amination of aromatic rings
1-27 Aminoalkylation of aromatic rings
1-34 Rearrangement of N-nitroamines
1-35 Rearrangement of N-nitrosoamines (Fischer–Hepp)
1-36 Rearrangement of triazenes
1-38 Rearrangement of arylamines or aryl alkyl ammonium salts
2-10 Amination at an activated position
2-29 Conversion of organometallic compounds to amines
2-47 Decyanation of cyanoamines
3-6 Arylation of ammonia or amines
3-7 Reaction between naphthols, bisulfite ion, and ammonia or amines (Bucherer)
3-18 Amination of heterocyclic nitrogen compounds (Chichibabin)
3-19 Direct amination of activated aromatic rings
3-20 Amination of aromatic acids
3-27 Rearrangement of benzyl quaternary ammonium salts (Sommelet–Hauser)
3-28 Rearrangement of aryl hydroxylamines
4-37 Desulfurization of thioamides
5-8 Addition of ammonia or amines to olefins
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to allylic amines
5-21 Free-radical addition of amines to olefins
5-24 Aminomethylation of alkenes
5-41 Diamination of alkenes
5-43 Addition of R_2N and SR to double bonds
6-2 Hydrolysis of imines, enamines, and iminium ions
6-3 Hydrolysis of isocyanates or isothiocyanates
6-5 Hydrolysis of cyanamides
6-9 Reduction of N-alkylimino esters
6-13 Addition of ammonia to aldehydes
6-15 Reductive alkylation of ammonia or amines
6-16 Reaction between aldehydes, ammonia or amines, and an active hydrogen compound (Mannich)
6-27 Reduction of imines, hydrazones, or other compounds containing the C═N bond
6-28 Reduction of nitriles or nitrilium ions
6-33 Addition of Grignard reagents to formamides
6-36 Addition of Grignard reagents to imines
6-68 Reduction of isonitriles
7-6 Cleavage of quaternary ammonium hydroxides (Hofmann)
7-7 Cleavage of quaternary ammonium salts
7-9 Cleavage of R_2NMgR
7-41 Fragmentation of certain ketoximes
8-16 Reaction between amides and NaOBr (Hofmann)
8-17 Rearrangement of acyl azides in the presence of water (Curtius)
8-18 Rearrangement of hydroxamic acids (Lossen)

Amines (continued)
8-19 Addition of hydrazoic acid to carboxylic acids (Schmidt)
8-21 Rearrangement of N-haloamines
8-24 Rearrangement of quaternary ammonium salts (Stevens)
8-39 [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangements of quaternary ammonium salts
8-40 Rearrangement of benzidines
8-44 Hofmann–Löffler and related reactions
9-5 Conversion of primary to secondary amines by dehydrogenation
9-9 Reaction between ozonides, ammonia, and hydrogen
9-21 Oxidative cleavage of amines
9-40 Reduction of amides
9-48 Reduction of nitro compounds
9-51 Reduction of nitroso compounds or hydroxylamines
9-52 Reduction of oximes
9-53 Reduction of isocyanates, isothiocyanates, azides, or N-nitroso compounds
9-56 Reduction of amine oxides
9-60 Reduction of azo, azoxy, or hydrazo compounds

Amino Acids and Esters

0-12 Hydrolysis of lactams
0-45 Amination of halo acids
0-57 Ammonolysis of β-lactones
0-96 Alkylation of N-acetylaminomalonic ester (Sorensen)
2-8 Nitrosation at a carbon bearing an active hydrogen and reduction of the resulting oxime or nitroso compound
6-5 Hydrolysis of cyanohydrins
6-16 Reaction between aldehydes, ammonia, and carboxylic acids or esters
6-50 Addition of cyanide and ammonium ions to aldehydes or ketones, followed by hydrolysis (Strecker)
8-15 Rearrangement of N-halo imino esters
8-16 Reaction between imides and NaOBr (Hofmann)
8-45 Rearrangement of hydroxy amides

Amino Carbonyl Compounds

0-48 Amination of α-hydroxy ketones
0-49 Transamination of Mannich bases
1-38 Photolysis of acylated arylamines
6-16 Reaction between aldehydes, ammonia, and aldehydes, ketones, or esters (Mannich)
6-36 Reaction of iminium ions with enol borinates
8-5 Rearrangement of amino ketones or aldehydes
8-15 Rearrangement of ketoxime tosylates (Neber)
8-24 Rearrangement of quaternary ammonium salts (Stevens)

Amino Ethers

0-20 Alcoholysis of aziridines
5-40 Aminomercuration of alkenes, followed by alcoholysis
6-16 Reaction between aldehydes, amines, and alcohols or phenols (Mannich)

Amino Mercaptans

0-51 Amination of episulfides
1-9 Sulfurization of aromatic amines (Herz)
6-16 Reaction between an aldehyde, ammonia, and a thiol (Mannich)

Anhydrides

0-29 Reaction of acyl halides with acid salts
0-30 Dehydration of carboxylic acids
0-34 Reaction of acid derivatives with inorganic acids
4-10 Acyloxylation of aldehydes
4-31 Reaction between diazonium fluoroborates, CO, and an acid salt
5-5 Addition of carboxylic acids to ketenes
5-21 Free-radical addition of anhydrides to olefins
8-22 Reaction between α-diketones and peroxy compounds (Baeyer–Villiger)
9-10 Oxidation of aromatic rings

Arenes

0-77 Reduction of aryl and benzylic halides
0-79 Hydrogenolysis of benzyl alcohols
0-80 Reduction of benzylic ethers
0-87 Coupling of halides containing aryl groups
0-88 Coupling of aryl halides with organometallic reagents
0-91 Coupling of benzylic alcohols

Arenes (continued)

0-95 Coupling of aryl sulfur compounds with organometallic compounds
1-13 Alkylation of aromatic rings (Friedel–Crafts)
1-14 Arylation of aromatic rings (Scholl)
1-24 Diarylation of ketones
1-25 Ring closure of aryl-substituted carbonyl compounds
1-39 Cleavage of rearrangement of alkyl arenes
1-40 Decarbonylation of aromatic aldehydes
1-41 Decarboxylation of aromatic acids
1-44 Desulfonation of aromatic sulfonic acids
1-45 Dehalogenation of aryl halides
1-47 Hydrolysis of organometallic compounds
2-39 Decarboxylation of α-aryl acids
2-40 Cleavage of tertiary alkoxides
2-44 Cleavage of aryl ketones
2-45 Cleavage of aryl ketones with amide ions (Haller–Bauer)
2-47 Decyanation of aryl nitriles
3-9 Reduction of phenols, phenolic ethers, or phenolic esters
3-10 Reduction of aromatic nitro compounds
3-13 Coupling of organometallic compounds with aryl halides, ethers, and esters
3-16 Coupling of aryl iodides (Ullmann)
3-17 Alkylation with organolithium compounds
4-16 Free-radical arylation by diazonium salts (Gomberg–Bachmann, Pschorr)
4-19 Free-radical arylation by peroxides
4-20 Photochemical arylation
4-23 Reduction of diazonium salts
4-28 Dimerization of diazonium salts
4-29 Methylation of diazonium salts
4-34 Dimerization of Grignard reagents
4-35 Dimerization of arylboranes
4-36 Dimerization of other organometallic compounds
4-37 Reduction of sulfur compounds
4-40 Decarbonylation of aromatic aldehydes
5-50 Trimerization of alkynes
6-30 Alkylation–reduction of aromatic aldehydes and ketones
7-39 Diels–Alder reactions of cyclopentadienones with alkynes
8-32 Photolysis of stilbenes to phenanthrenes
9-1 Aromatization of six-membered rings
9-6 Oxidation of hydrazines
9-34 Dimerization of arenes
9-38 Reduction of aromatic aldehydes
9-44 Reduction of aromatic acids

Aryl Halides

1-12 Halogenation of aromatic compounds
1-37 Rearrangement of N-haloamines (Orton)
1-41 Replacement of aromatic COOH by halogen
1-44 Replacement of aromatic SO_2Br by halogen
1-45 Migration of halogen
2-28 Reaction of aryl organometallic compounds with halogens
3-8 Aryl halide exchange; halo-de-nitration
3-24 Reaction between diazonium salts and iodide ion
3-25 Heating of diazonium fluoroborates (Schiemann)
4-24 Reaction between diazonium salts and CuCl or CuBr (Sandmeyer)
4-39 Decarboxylative halogenation (Hunsdiecker)
4-40 Decarbonylation of acyl halides

Azides

0-63 Alkylation or acylation of azide ion
2-30 Reaction of Grignard reagents with tosyl azide
2-49 Reaction between hydrazines and nitrous acid
2-51 Reaction of amine anions with tosyl azide
3-23 Reaction of diazonium salts with azide ion
4-39 Reaction of acyl peroxides with copper azide
5-9 Addition of hydrazoic acid to double bonds
5-32 Addition of halogen azides to double bonds
5-41 Treatment of olefins with sodium azide, ferrous ion, and hydrogen peroxide
5-43 Addition of SR and N_3 to double bonds
8-17 Reaction between hydrazides and nitrous acid

Azides (continued)

8-19 Reaction between alcohols or olefins and hydrazoic acid

Azines

6-20 Addition of hydrazine to aldehydes or ketones

Aziridines

0-45 Cyclization of haloamines
0-48 Cyclization of amino alcohols
0-63 Cyclization of β-azido alcohols
5-32 From β-iodo azides
5-42 Reaction of alkenes with azides
6-45 Reaction of imines with α-halo carbonyl compounds
7-49 Extrusion of N_2 from triazolines
9-52 Reduction of oximes

Azlactones

6-44 Condensation between aldehydes and N-acylglycines (Erlenmeyer)

Azo Compounds

1-4 Coupling of diazonium salts with aromatic rings
1-36 Rearrangement of aryl triazenes
1-43 Reaction between aromatic alcohols and diazonium salts (Stiles–Sisti)
1-47 Reaction between organometallic compounds and diazonium ions
2-7 Aliphatic diazonium coupling
2-52 Reaction of amines with nitroso compounds (Mills)
4-28 Coupling of aryl diazonium salts
8-47 Rearrangement of azoxy compounds (Wallach)
9-6 Oxidation of hydrazines
9-37 Oxidation of amines
9-56 Reduction of azoxy compounds
9-68 Reduction of nitro compounds

Azoxy Compounds

0-65 Reaction between alkyl halides and alkanediazotates
2-53 Reaction of nitroso compounds with hydroxylamines
9-30 Oxidation of azo compounds
9-37 Oxidation of amines
9-67 Reduction of nitro or nitroso compounds; reaction between nitroso compounds and hydroxylamines

Benzoins (*see* Hydroxy Aldehydes and Ketones)

Bisamides

6-14 Addition of amides to aldehydes or ketones
6-59 Addition of nitriles to aldehydes
6-69 Reaction between isonitriles, acids, amines, and aldehydes or ketones (Ugi)

Bisulfite Addition Compounds (*see* Hydroxy Sulfonic Acids)

Boranes

2-34 Reaction between boron halides and Grignard reagents
5-13 Hydroboration of olefins or alkynes
5-19 Reaction of borinates with organometallic compounds
7-16 Exchange reaction between boranes and olefins
8-13 Migration of boron

Bunte Salts

0-41 Reaction between alkyl halides and thiosulfate ion

Carbamates

0-54 Reaction between chloroformates and primary amines
0-64 Reaction between alkyl halides, ethanol, and thiocyanate ion
0-73 Cleavage of tertiary amines with ClCOOPh
2-11 Insertion by nitrenes
2-55 Carbonylation of amines in the presence of an alcohol
6-8 Addition of alcohols to isocyanates
6-9 Reaction of alcohols with ClCN
6-70 Addition of alkyl hypochlorites to isonitriles
8-16 Reaction between amides, bromine, and alkoxides (Hofmann); reaction between amides, lead tetraacetate, and acetic acid

Carbamates (continued)

8-17 Rearrangement of acyl azides in the presence of alcohols (Curtius)
9-31 Oxidation of isonitriles in the presence of alcohols

Carbodiimides

6-60 Addition of isocyanates to isocyanates
7-45 Dehydration of ureas and thioureas

Carbonates

0-22 Alcoholysis of phosgene
0-26 Reaction between alkyl halides and carbonate salts
8-22 Oxidation of ketones

Carboxylic Acids

0-3 Hydrolysis of 1,1,1-trihalides
0-7 Hydrolysis of ortho esters
0-9 Hydrolysis of acyl halides
0-10 Hydrolysis of anhydrides
0-11 Hydrolysis of carboxylic esters
0-12 Hydrolysis of amides
0-71 Cleavage of esters with LiI
0-75 Exchange between acids and acyl halides
0-82 Reductive cleavage of carboxylic esters
0-96 Malonic ester synthesis
0-98 Alkylation of carboxylate ions
0-100 Hydrolysis of oxazines
0-105 Carbonylation of alkyl halides and other substrates
1-21 Carboxylation of aromatic rings with carbonyl halides
1-22 Carboxylation of aromatic rings with carbon dioxide (Kolbe–Schmitt)
1-41 Rearrangement of aromatic carboxylate ions
2-39 Decarboxylation of dicarboxylic acids
2-42 Basic cleavage of β-keto esters or β-diketones
2-43 The haloform reaction
2-44 Cleavage of nonenolizable ketones
3-15 Carboxylation of aryl bromides
3-26 Rearrangement of aromatic nitro compounds upon treatment with cyanide ion (von Richter)
4-6 Oxidation of aldehydes
4-31 Reaction of diazonium fluoroborates with CO
5-2 Addition of water to ketenes
5-13 Oxidation of 1,1-diboranes
5-15 Addition of carbocations to 1,1-di-chloroethene; addition of carboxylates to olefins
5-18 Addition of alkylcopper reagents to unsaturated carboxylic acids
5-21 Free-radical addition of acids to olefins
5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of olefins
6-4 Hydrolysis of primary nitro compounds
6-5 Hydrolysis of nitriles
6-35 Addition of Grignard reagents to carbon dioxide
6-42 Reaction of ketones with tosylmethyl azide, followed by hydrolysis
6-47 Reaction of phosphoranes with CO_2
7-3 Pyrolysis of carboxylic esters
7-41 Fragmentation of certain ketoximes
8-8 Rearrangement of α-halo ketones (Favorskii)
8-9 Rearrangement of diazo ketones (Arndt–Eistert)
8-22 Oxidation of aldehydes
8-28 From boranes
9-7 Oxidative cleavage of α-diketones and α-keto acids
9-8 Oxidative cleavage of ketones and secondary alcohols
9-9 Oxidation of ozonides; ozonolysis of alkynes
9-10 Oxidative cleavage of olefins, terminal alkynes, or aromatic rings
9-11 Oxidation of aromatic side chains
9-21 Oxidation of amines
9-22 Oxidation of primary alcohols or ethers
9-23 Oxidation of arylthioalkynes
9-70 Reaction between aldehydes and base (Cannizzaro)
9-73 Oxidation of aryl ketones by ammonium polysulfide (Willgerodt)

Carboxylic Esters (*see also* Dicarbonyl Compounds, Unsaturated Esters, etc.)

0-7 Hydrolysis of ortho esters
0-13 Decarbonylation of α-keto esters
0-22 Alcoholysis of acyl halides
0-23 Alcoholysis of anhydrides
0-24 Esterification of acids
0-25 Transesterification

Carboxylic Esters (continued)

0-26 Alkylation of acid salts
0-27 Cleavage of ethers with anhydrides
0-28 Alkylation of acids with diazo compounds
0-97 Alkylation of esters
0-99 Alkylation of aryl esters
0-100 Alkylation and alcoholysis of oxazines
0-101 Reaction of halo esters or diazo esters with boranes
0-105 Carbonylation of alkyl halides and other substrates
0-106 Reaction between Grignard reagents and chloroformates
0-107 Reaction between Grignard reagents and carbonates
2-31 Carbonylation of organometallic compounds
2-42 Base cleavage of β-keto esters
3-4 Reaction between aryl halides and acid salts
3-14 Arylation of esters
3-15 Carbalkoxylation of aryl iodides
4-10 Free-radical acyloxylation
4-22 Carbalkoxylation of nitrogen heterocycles
4-39 Reaction between silver salts and iodine (Simonini)
5-3 Hydration of acetylenic ethers
5-4 Addition of alcohols or phenols to ketenes
5-5 Addition of acids or acyl peroxides to olefins
5-17 Addition of esters to acitvated olefins (Michael)
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to unsaturated esters
5-21 Free-radical addition of esters to olefins
5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of olefins in the presence of alcohols
5-36 Addition of acid salts to olefins
5-43 Addition of OAc and SR to double bonds
5-53 Dicarbalkoxylation of olefins and acetylenes
6-7 Reductive acylation of ketones
6-9 Alcoholysis of nitriles
8-8 Rearrangement of α-halo ketones (Favorskii)
8-9 Rearrangement of diazo ketones in the presence of alcohols (Arndt–Eistert)
8-22 Reaction between ketones and peroxy compounds (Baeyer–Villiger)
9-3 Oxidation of acetals
9-8 Cleavage of cyclic ketones with NOCl and an alcohol
9-9 From ozonides
9-13 Reaction between carboxylic acids and lead tetraacetate
9-18 Oxidation of ethers
9-22 Oxidation of primary alcohols or aldehydes
9-23 Oxidation of enol ethers
9-71 Reaction between aldehydes and aluminum ethoxide (Tishchenko)
9-73 Reaction of acetophenones with $AgNO_3$-I_2 or other reagents

Catenanes

9-66 Acyloin condensation or other methods

Cyanamides

0-47 Reaction between alkyl halides and cyanamide
0-74 Cleavage of tertiary amines with cyanogen bromide (von Braun)
7-42 Dehydration of disubstituted ureas

Cyanates

0-14 Reaction of aroxides and cyanogen halides

Cyanoamines

0-48 Amination of cyanohydrins
6-16 Reaction between aldehydes, ammonia, and nitriles (Mannich)
6-50 Addition of cyanide and ammonium ions to aldehydes or ketones (Strecker)
6-51 Addition of HCN to C=N or C≡N bonds

Cyano Carbonyl Compounds

0-96 Alkylation of cyano carbonyl compounds
0-109 Acylation of nitriles by acyl halides
0-112 Acylation of nitriles by esters
0-114 Reaction between acyl halides and CuCN
2-15 Cyanation of ketones
2-17 Cyanoethylation of enamines; reaction of enamines with cyanogen chloride

Cyano Carbonyl Compounds (continued)

3-14 Arylation of cyano carbonyl compounds
5-17 Addition of olefins (Michael)
5-20 Acylation of unsaturated nitriles
5-25 Addition of HCN to unsaturated aldehydes, ketones, or esters
6-42 Addition of cyano carbonyl compounds to aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)
6-48 Condensation of nitriles (Thorpe)
9-34 Dimerization of cyano carbonyl compounds

Cyanohydrins (*see* Hydroxy Nitriles)

Cycloalkanes and Alkenes (*see* Alicyclic Compounds)

Dialdehydes (*see* Dicarbonyl Compounds)

Diazo Compounds

0-115 Reaction between acyl halides and diazomethane
2-9 Reaction of active hydrogen compounds with tosyl azide
2-48 Diazotization of α-amino esters and similar compounds
6-42 Addition of diazo esters to aldehydes
7-48 Elimination from N-nitroso-N-alkyl compounds
9-6 Oxidation of hydrazones

Diazonium Salts

1-5 Direct diazotization of aromatic rings
2-48 Diazotization of primary amines

1,2-Dicarbonyl Compounds

0-108 Dimerization of acyl halides
0-112 Acylation of 1,3-dithianes, followed by hydrolysis
3-15 Carbalkoxylation of aryl iodides
6-30 Addition of RLi and CO to carboxylic esters
6-71 Reaction of metalated aldimines with CO_2
9-9 Ozonization of alkynes or aromatic rings
9-16 Oxidation of ketones with selenium dioxide
9-21 Oxidative cleavage of α-amino ketones
9-23 Oxidation of olefins
9-28 Oxidation of alkynes

1,3-Dicarbonyl Compounds

0-96 Alkylation at a carbon bearing an active hydrogen
0-109 Acylation at a carbon bearing an active hydrogen
0-110 Acylation of ketones by anhydrides
0-111 Acylation of esters by esters (Claisen; Dieckmann)
0-112 Acylation of ketones by esters
0-113 Acylation of carboxylic acid salts
1-24 Reaction between aromatic compounds and diethyl oxomalonate
2-14 Acylation of acetals or ketals followed by hydrolysis
2-17 Acylation of enamines followed by hydrolysis (Stork)
3-14 Arylation at a carbon bearing an active hydrogen
5-17 Addition of active hydrogen compounds to olefins (Michael)
5-21 Free-radical addition of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds to olefins
6-31 Reaction between nitriles, zinc, and α-halo esters (Blaise)
6-35 Addition of CO_2 to *gem*-dimetallic compounds
6-42 Addition of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds to aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)
6-43 Carboxylation of ketones and esters
7-20 Cleavage of Michael adducts
7-53 Extrusion of sulfur from β-keto thiol esters
8-2 Rearrangement of epoxy ketones
8-10 Reaction of ketones with ethyl diazoacetate
9-34 Dimerization of β-keto esters or similar compounds

1,4-Dicarbonyl Compounds

0-7 Cleavage of furans
1-15 Acylation of aromatic rings by succinic anhydride
5-20 Acylation of unsaturated ketones or alkynes
5-53 Dicarbalkoxylation of olefins and acetylenes
9-35 Dimerization of silyl enol ethers or of lithium enolates

1,5-Dicarbonyl Compounds

5-17 Addition of silyl enol ethers to unsaturated ketones or esters

Dicarboxylic Acids (*see* Dicarbonyl Compounds, Carboxylic Acids)

Dicyano Compounds

0-96 Alkylation of malononitriles
3-14 Arylation of malononitriles
5-17 Addition of nitriles to unsaturated nitriles (Michael)
5-25 Addition of HCN to triple bonds
6-42 Addition of malononitriles to aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)
6-51 Addition of HCN to nitriles
9-10 Oxidation of *o*-diamines

Diesters (*see* Dicarbonyl Compounds)

Dihalides and Polyhalides

0-70 Treatment of epoxides with $SOCl_2$, Ph_3P and CCl_4 or Ph_3PCl_2
0-72 From diazoketones
0-77 Reduction of trihalides
2-39 Decarboxylation of trihalo acids
2-43 The haloform reaction
4-1 Free-radical halogenation
5-1 Addition of hydrogen halides to alkynes
5-27 Addition of halogens to olefins or alkynes
5-34 Free-radical addition of polyhalides to olefins
6-25 Reaction of PCl_5, SF_4, or other reagents with aldehydes, ketones, or other C═O compounds
9-21 Treatment of amines with CuX and alkyl nitrites

Diketones (*see* Dicarbonyl Compounds)

Dinitro Compounds

4-12 Nitration of alkanes or nitro compounds
5-40 Addition of N_2O_4 to olefins

gem-Diols (Hydrates)

6-1 Hydration of aldehydes

1,2-Diols

0-8 Hydrolysis of epoxides
5-36 Hydroxylation of olefins
9-63 Bimolecular reduction of aldehydes or ketones

1,3-Diols

6-46 Condensation between formaldehyde and aldehydes or ketones (Tollens)
6-53 Addition of aldehydes to olefins (Prins)

Disulfides

0-40 Reaction between alkyl halides and disulfide ion
3-5 Reaction between aryl halides and disulfide ion
3-29 The Smiles rearrangement
5-29 Addition of ArSCl to alkenes
9-36 Oxidation of mercaptans
9-54 Reduction of sulfonyl halides

Dithiols

6-11 Addition of H_2S to carbonyl compounds or imines

Enamines

5-8 Addition of amines to triple-bond compounds
6-14 Addition of amines to aldehydes or ketones
6-33 Reaction between Grignard reagents and formamides
6-47 Reaction of phosphonates with aldehydes or ketones
7-18 Dehydrocyanation of cyano amines
9-2 Dehydrogenation of tertiary amines

Enolate Ions

0-97 From enol acetates
2-3 Treatment of aldehydes or ketones with base
2-20 Treatment of active hydrogen compounds with base

Enol Ethers and Esters

0-17 O-Alkylation of carbonyl compounds with diazo alkanes
0-19 Transetherifications
0-22 Reaction between acyl halides and active hydrogen compounds
0-25 Transesterifications
0-26 Acylation of vinyl halides
0-96 Alkylation with ortho esters

Enol Ethers and Esters (continued)

0-109	O-Acylation of 1,3-dicarbonyl compounds
5-4	Addition of alcohols or phenols to alkynes; addition of aldehydes or ketones to ketene
5-5	Addition of carboxylic acids to alkynes
6-6	Addition of alcohols to aldehydes or ketones
6-34	Reaction between carboxylic esters and a titanium complex
6-47	Reaction of α-alkoxy phosphoranes with aldehydes or ketones
7-2	Cleavage of acetals
7-31	Elimination from β-halo acetals

Enol Thioethers

5-6	Addition of mercaptans to alkynes
6-11	Reaction of aldehydes or ketones with mercaptans
9-2	Dehydrogenation and reduction of sulfoxides

Enynes

5-15	Dimerization of acetylenes

Episulfides

0-38	Reaction between epoxides and phosphine sulfides
5-29	Cyclization of β-halo disulfides
6-64	Reaction of diazoalkanes with sulfur or thioketones; from aldehydes or ketones

Epoxides

0-15	Cyclization of halohydrins
0-18	Cyclization of 1,2-glycols
5-37	Epoxidation of olefins
6-30	Reaction of carbonyl compounds with *gem*-dihalides and Li or BuLi
6-45	Condensation between aldehydes and α-halo esters, ketones, or amides (Darzens)
6-63	Addition of sulfur ylides or diazomethane to aldehydes or ketones
9-64	Bimolecular reduction of aldehydes or ketones

Esters (*see* Carboxylic Esters, Inorganic Esters)

Ethers (*see also* Hydroxy Ethers, etc.)

0-7	Cleavage of oxonium ions
0-11	Reaction between carboxylic esters and alkoxide ion
0-14	Reaction between alkoxides or aroxides and alkyl halides (Williamson)
0-16	Reaction between alkoxides or aroxides and inorganic esters
0-17	Alkylation of alcohols or phenols with diazo compounds
0-18	Dehydration of alcohols
0-19	Transetherification
0-21	Alkylation of alcohols with onium salts
0-31	Exchange of ethers and oxonium salts
0-69	Cleavage of oxonium salts
0-80	Reduction of acetals or ketals
0-93	Reaction between Grignard reagents and acetals or ketals; dimerization of acetals
2-25	Reaction between Grignard reagents and *t*-butyl peresters
3-4	Reaction between aryl halides and alkoxides or aroxides
4-7	Cyclization of alcohols with lead tetraacetate
4-37	Desulfurization of thiono esters
5-4	Addition of alcohols or phenols to olefins
5-21	Free-radical addition of ethers to olefins
6-7	Reductive alkylation of alcohols
9-41	Reduction of esters
9-61	Reduction of peroxides

Glycidic Esters

5-37	Epoxidation of α,β-unsaturated esters
6-45	Condensation between aldehydes or ketones and α-halo esters (Darzens)

Grignard Reagents (*see* Organometallic Compounds)

Halo Acids, Esters, Aldehydes, Ketones (*see* Halo Carbonyl Compounds)

Haloamines

5-30	Addition of N-haloamines to unsaturated compounds

N-Haloamines and Amides

2-54	Halogenation of amines or amides

Halo Carbonyl Compounds

0-70 Reaction of acyl chlorides with ethylene oxide and NaI
0-72 Reaction of diazo ketones with hydrohalic acids
2-4 Halogenation of aldehydes or ketones
2-5 Halogenation of acids (Hell–Volhard–Zelinskii) and acid derivatives
5-27 Addition of halogens to ketenes
5-28 Addition of HOBr or HOCl to triple bonds; addition of chlorine acetate or other reagents to olefins
5-35 Addition of acyl halides to olefins
6-57 Reaction between acyl bromides and aldehydes or ketones
8-12 Rearrangement of halo epoxides
9-23 Oxidation of certain alkenes with chromyl chloride

Halo Ethers and Acetals

2-4 Halogenation of acetals or ketals
5-28 Addition of hypohalites to double bonds
6-24 Addition of alcohols and hydrogen halides to aldehydes or ketones
6-25 Reaction of carboxylic esters with ClF or other reagents

Haloformic Esters

0-22 Alcoholysis of phosgene

Halohydrins

0-70 Cleavage of epoxides with hydrogen halides
5-28 Addition of hypohalous acids to olefins

Halo Sulfoxides and Sulfones

2-6 Halogenation of sulfoxides and sulfones
5-29 Addition of sulfonyl halides to olefins

Hemiacetals

6-6 Addition of alcohols to aldehydes or ketones

Hemiaminals

6-13 Reaction between aldehydes or ketones and ammonia
6-14 Reaction between aldehydes or ketones and amines

Hemimercaptals

6-11 Addition of mercaptans to aldehydes or ketones

Heterocyclic Compounds (*see also* Epoxides, Episulfides, Aziridines, Lactams, Lactones, Anhydrides, Imides)

0-15 Cyclization of halohydrins (cyclic ethers)
0-18 Cyclization of glycols (cyclic ethers; furans)
0-19 Reaction of diols with acetals (cyclic acetals)
0-38 Reaction of dihalides with sulfide ion (cyclic sulfides)
0-45 Cyclization of haloamines (cyclic amines); dealkylation of quaternary salts of nitrogen heterocycles
0-47 Reaction between dihalides and cyanamide (cyclic amines)
0-61 Reaction between ureas and malonic esters (cyclic ureides)
1-9 Sulfurization of aromatic rings (cyclic sulfides)
1-15 Intramolecular acylation
1-23 Intramolecular amidation of aromatic rings
1-25 Cyclization of amides with $POCl_3$ (isoquinolines)
2-11 Intramolecular nitrene insertion
3-6 Intramolecular arylation of amines (cyclic amines
3-14 Intramolecular arylation of active hydrogen compounds
3-17 Arylation of heterocyclic nitrogen compounds
3-18 Amination of heterocyclic nitrogen compounds
4-7 Cyclization of alcohols with lead tetraacetate (tetrahydrofurans)
4-16 Intramolecular arylation (Pschorr)
4-21 Alkylation and arylation of nitrogen heterocycles
4-22 Carbalkoxylation and carboamidation of nitrogen heterocycles
5-6 Addition of H_2S to conjugated diynes (thiophenes)
5-8 Addition of ammonia or primary amines to conjugated diynes (pyrroles)

Heterocyclic Compounds (continued)

5-11 Hydrogenation of heterocyclic aromatic rings
5-13 Addition of boranes to dienes (cyclic boranes)
5-37 Epoxidation of C=N compounds (oxaziranes)
5-40 Photooxidation of dienes (cyclic peroxides)
5-42 Addition of aminonitrenes to triple bonds (1-azirines); addition of nitrenoids to C=N or C=O bonds (diaziridines, oxaziranes)
5-46 1,3-Dipolar addition to double or triple bonds
5-47 Diels–Alder addition involving hetero atoms
5-49 Expansion of heterocyclic rings upon treatment with carbenes
5-51 Other cycloaddition reactions
6-6 Formation of cyclic acetals; reaction between diketones and acids (furans, pyrans)
6-11 Addition of H_2S to aldehydes or ketones (cyclic thioacetals)
6-13 Reaction between aldehydes and ammonia (cyclic amines)
6-14 Intramolecular addition of amines to carbonyl groups (cyclic imines)
6-18 Reaction of dinitriles with ammonia (cyclic imidines)
6-20 Reaction between hydrazines and β-diketones or β-keto esters (pyrazoles; pyrazolones)
6-42 Reaction of ketones with tosylmethylisocyanide (oxazolines)
6-53 Reaction between alcohols and aldehydes (dioxanes)
6-58 Trimerization of aldehydes (trioxanes)
6-62 Trimerization of nitriles (triazines)
6-63 Reaction between epoxides and sulfur ylides (oxetanes)
6-65 Addition of olefins to aldehydes or ketones (oxetanes)
7-25 Reaction of dichlorobenzyl sulfones with base (thiiren-1,1-dioxides)
7-49 Extrusion of N_2 from tetrazolines (diaziridines)
7-50 Extrusion of CO_2 from benzoxadiazepinones (indazoles)
7-54 Condensation of thiobenzilic acid with aldehydes or ketones (oxathiolan-5-ones)
8-17 Curtius rearrangement of cycloalkyl or aryl azides
8-21 Rearrangement of N-haloamines (cyclic amines)
8-35 Ring expansion of N-acylaziridines (oxazoles)
8-38 Cyclization of arylhydrazones (Fischer indole synthesis)
8-44 Acid-catalyzed rearrangement of N-haloamines (pyrrolidines; piperidines—Hofmann–Löffler); cyclization of chloro alcohols (tetrahydrofurans)
9-1 Aromatization of heterocyclic rings
9-38 Reduction of α,β-unsaturated ketones (pyrazolones)
9-40 Reduction of lactams (cyclic amines)
9-41 Reduction of lactones (cyclic ethers)

Hydrates (*see gem*-Diols)

Hydrazides

0-54 Acylation of hydrazines with acyl halides
0-57 Acylation of hydrazines with esters

Hydrazines

3-18 Hydrazination of heterocyclic nitrogen compounds
5-8 Addition of hydrazines to olefins
8-16 Reaction between ureas and NaOBr (Hofmann)
9-48 Reduction of N-nitro compounds
9-51 Reduction of N-nitroso compounds
9-53 Reduction of azo compounds or diazonium salts
9-69 Reduction of nitro compounds

Hydrazo Compounds (*see* Hydrazines)

Hydrazones

2-7 Aliphatic diazonium coupling
6-20 Addition of hydrazines to aldehydes or ketones

Hydroperoxides

0-32 Reaction between alkyl or acyl halides and hydrogen peroxide
2-23 Reaction between organometallic reagents and oxygen

Hydroperoxides (continued)

4-8 Autoxidation; reaction of alkenes with singlet oxygen

Hydroxamic Acids

0-54 Acylation of hydroxylamine with acyl halides
0-57 Acylation of hydroxylamine with esters
2-10 Reaction of alkenes with MeCONO
6-4 Hydrolysis of aliphatic nitro compounds

Hydroxy Acids

0-11 Hydrolysis of lactones
1-22 Carboxylation of phenols
1-24 Reaction between aromatic compounds and diethyl oxomalonate
2-23 Oxidation of dilithiated carboxylic acids
3-20 Hydroxylation of aromatic acids
6-5 Hydrolysis of cyanohydrins
6-31 Reaction between aldehydes or ketones and zinc carboxylates
6-42 Addition of dianions of carboxylic acids to ketones
8-7 Rearrangement of benzils
8-8 Rearrangement of α,β-epoxy ketones (Favorskii)
9-70 Reaction between keto aldehydes and base

Hydroxy Aldehydes and Ketones

0-6 Hydrolysis of diazo ketones
0-99 Reaction between dithiane salts and epoxides
0-100 Alkylation of oxazines with epoxides
1-32 Rearrangement of phenolic esters (Fries)
2-17 Alkylation of enamines with epoxides
4-4 Hydroxylation of ketones
6-26 Monoreduction of α-diketones
6-30 Addition of RLi and CO to ketones
6-40 Condensation of aldehydes and/or ketones (aldol)
6-42 Reaction of ketones with tosylmethylazide and thallium ethoxide, followed by hydrolysis; reaction of aldehydes, ketones, or esters with methoxyvinyllithium
6-46 Condensation of formaldehyde with aldehydes or ketones (Tollens)
6-55 Condensation of aromatic aldehydes (benzoin)
6-71 Reaction of metalated aldimines with aldehydes or epoxides
8-4 Rearrangement of α-hydroxy aldehydes or ketones
8-7 Reaction between benzils and Grignard reagents
9-20 Oxidation of epoxides
9-23 Oxidation of alkenes
9-66 Condensation of esters (acyloin)

Hydroxyamines and Amides

0-51 Amination of epoxides
1-24 Hydroxymethylation of aromatic amines
1-27 Aminoalkylation of phenols
3-28 Rearrangement of aryl hydroxylamines (Bamberger)
4-4 Hydroxylation of amides
4-5 Hydroxylation of amines
5-39 Oxyamination of double bonds
5-40 Aminomercuration of alkenes, followed by hydrolysis
6-13 Addition of ammonia to aldehydes or ketones
6-14 Addition of amines or amides to aldehydes or ketones
6-31 Reaction between aldehydes or ketones, zinc, and and halo amides
6-42 Reaction of aldehydes with the conjugate base of formamide
6-69 Reaction between isonitriles, $TiCl_4$ and aldehydes or ketones, followed by hydrolysis

Hydroxy Esters

0-25 Transesterification of lactones
4-4 Hydroxylation of esters
6-31 Reaction between aldehydes or ketones, zinc, and α-halo esters (Reformatsky)
6-41 Condensation between esters and aldehydes or ketones
6-42 Addition of α-metalated esters to ketones; reaction of unsaturated esters with an alkyl halide and zinc
6-54 Addition of aldehydes to alkynyl ethers
8-7 Rearrangement of benzils by means of alkoxide ion

Hydroxy Ethers

0-20 Alcoholysis of epoxides

Hydroxylamines

5-8 Addition of hydroxylamine to olefins
6-27 Reduction of oximes
6-36 Addition of alkyllithium compounds to oximes
7-8 Cleavage of amine oxides (Cope)
8-24 Rearrangement of N-oxides (Meisenheimer)
9-24 Oxidation of amines
9-50 Reduction of nitro compounds

Hydroxy Mercaptans and Sulfides

0-37 Reaction between epoxides and NaSH
0-38 Reaction between epoxides and mercaptides
1-28 Thioalkylation of phenols
6-11 Addition of H_2S to aldehydes or ketones

Hydroxy Nitriles

0-103 Reaction between epoxides and cyanide ion
4-4 Hydroxylation of nitriles
5-46 Addition of a nitrile oxide to an alkene, followed by reduction
6-31 Reaction between aldehydes and ketones, zinc, and halo nitriles
6-42 Addition of nitriles to ketones; reaction of unsaturated nitriles with an alkyl halide and zinc
6-49 Addition of HCN to aldehydes or ketones

Hydroxy Sulfonic Acids

0-43 Reaction between epoxides and bisulfite ion
6-12 Addition of bisulfite ion to aldehydes or ketones

Imides (including Ureides)

0-54 Reaction between acyl halides and lithium nitride
0-55 Amination of anhydrides
0-60 N-Alkylation of imides
0-61 N-Acylation of amides or imides
5-8 Addition of imides to olefins
5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of unsaturated amides
6-70 Addition of N-halo amides to isonitriles
8-16 Reaction between amides and NaOBr (Hofmann)
8-17 Rearrangement of acyl azides in the presence of water (Curtius)
9-18 Oxidation of lactams

Imines

2-8 Reaction between active hydrogen compounds and nitroso compounds
5-8 Addition of amines to triple-bond compounds
6-13 Addition of ammonia to aldehydes or ketones
6-14 Addition of amines to aldehydes or ketones
6-28 Reduction of nitrilium ions
6-38 Addition of Grignard reagents to nitriles
6-47 Addition of ylides to nitroso compounds
6-71 Reaction of isocyanides with organometallic compounds (metalated imines)
8-17 Pyrolysis of alkyl or aryl azides
8-20 Reaction between oxime sulfonates and organometallic compounds
8-21 Rearrangement of trityl N-haloamines and hydroxylamines (Stieglitz)
9-5 Dehydrogenation of secondary amines

Imino Esters (Imidates), Imino Thioesters, and Their Salts

0-36 Reaction between oxonium ions and amides
1-29 Reaction of phenols with nitriles
6-9 Alcoholysis of nitriles (Pinner)
8-20 Reaction between oxime sulfonates and organoaluminum sulfides
8-46 From amides

Imino Nitriles

8-20 Reaction between an oxime sulfonate, an organoaluminum compound, and Me_3SiCN

Inorganic Esters

0-33 Reaction of alcohols or alkyl halides with inorganic acids or halides
2-26 Oxidation of trialkylboranes
3-8 Reaction between aryl halides and $POCl_3$
5-40 Addition of N_2O_4 to alkenes (nitro nitrites, nitro nitrates)

Isocyanates

0-54 Reaction between amines and phosgene
0-61 Reaction between oxalyl chloride and unsubstituted amides
0-64 Alkylation or acylation of cyanate ion
2-55 Carbonylation of amines
5-33 Addition of iodine isocyanate to double bonds
8-16 Reaction between amides and NaOBr (Hofmann)
8-17 Rearrangement of acyl azides (Curtius)
8-18 Rearrangement of hydroxamic acids (Lossen)
8-19 Addition of hydrazoic acid to carboxylic acids (Schmidt)
9-31 Oxidation of isonitriles

Isonitriles

0-53 Reaction between primary amines and chloroform
0-103 Reaction between alkyl halides and cyanide ion
7-44 Elimination of water from N-alkylformamides
9-56 Reduction of isocyanates

Isothiocyanates

0-54 Reaction between amines and thiophosgene
0-64 Alkylation or acylation of thiocyanate ion
3-22 Reaction between diazonium salts and thiocyanate ion
6-19 Addition of amines to carbon disulfide
9-31 From isonitriles

Isothiuronium Salts

0-37 Reaction between alkyl halides and thiourea

Ketals (*see* Acetals)

Ketenes

7-1 Pyrolysis of carboxylic acids
7-15 Dehydrohalogenation of acyl halides
7-30 Dehalogenation of α-halo acyl halides
8-9 Rearrangement of diazo ketones (Wolff)

Ketenimines

0-100 Reaction of oxazines with butyllithium
6-47 Reaction between phosphoranes and isocyanates
7-1 Dehydration of amides

Keto Acids, Aldehydes, and Esters (*see* Dicarbonyl Compounds)

Ketones (*see also* Dicarbonyl Compounds, Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds, etc.)

0-1 Hydrolysis of vinyl halides
0-2 Hydrolysis of *gem*-dihalides
0-4 Hydrolysis of enol esters of inorganic acids
0-7 Hydrolysis of enol ethers, ketals, thioketals, etc.
0-11 Hydrolysis of enol esters
0-77 Reduction of halo ketones
0-79 Reduction of hydroxy ketones
0-83 Reduction of diazo ketones
0-88 Coupling of halo ketones with lithium alkylcopper reagents
0-96 Acetoacetic ester synthesis and similar reactions
0-97 Alkylation of ketones
0-99 Alkylation and hydrolysis of dithianes and similar compounds
0-100 Alkylation and hydrolysis of oxazines
0-101 Reaction of halo ketones or diazo ketones with boranes
0-104 Carbonylation of alkyl halides
0-106 Reaction between acyl halides and organometallic compounds
0-107 Reaction between other acid derivatives and organometallic compounds
0-109 Acylation of active hydrogen compounds followed by cleavage
0-112 Reduction of β-keto sulfoxides
0-113 Acylation of carboxylic acid salts followed by cleavage
0-116 Ketonic decarboxylation
1-15 Acylation of aromatic rings (Friedel–Crafts)
1-21 Reaction between aromatic rings and phosgene
1-29 Acylation of aromatic rings with nitriles (Hoesch)
1-32 Rearrangement of phenolic ethers (Fries)
1-38 Photolysis of acylated arylamines

Ketones (continued)

1-43 Reaction between arylcarbinols and diazonium salts (Stiles–Sisti)
1-47 Reaction of aryltrimethylsilanes with acyl chlorides
2-2 Rearrangement of hydroxy olefins
2-17 Alkylation of enamines followed by hydrolysis (Stork)
2-31 Carbonylation of organometallic compounds
2-39 Decarboxylation of β-keto acids or esters
2-40 Cleavage of tertiary alkoxides
2-41 Reaction between amino acids and anhydrides (Dakin–West)
2-42 Basic cleavage of β-diketones
3-14 Arylation of ketones
3-15 Acylation of aryl iodides
4-18 Arylation of allylic alcohols
4-21 Acylation of nitrogen heterocycles
4-30 Reaction of diazonium salts with oximes, followed by hydrolysis; or with R_4Sn and CO
5-3 Hydration of alkynes or allenes
5-5 Cyclization of olefinic acids
5-10 Selective reduction of unsaturated ketones
5-11 Reduction of phenols
5-13 Oxidation of boranes; hydrolysis of unsaturated boranes
5-17 Addition of ketones to activated olefins (Michael)
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to unsaturated ketones
5-19 Addition of boranes to unsaturated ketones
5-21 Free-radical addition of aldehydes or ketones to olefins
5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of dienes
5-23 Hydroacylation of alkenes
5-43 Indirectly, from alkenes
5-49 Hydrolysis of bicyclo[4.1.0]heptanes
6-2 Hydrolysis of imines, oximes, hydrazones, and other C═N compounds
6-4 Hydrolysis of secondary aliphatic nitro compounds (Nef)
6-32 Reaction between lithium carboxylates and alkyllithium compounds
6-34 Indirectly, from carboxylic esters
6-38 Addition of Grignard reagents to nitriles
6-42 Hydrolysis of epoxy silanes
6-71 Reaction of alkyl halides with metalated aldimines
7-1 Dehydration of 1,2-diols
7-13 Pyrolysis of β-hydroxy sulfoxides
7-34 Fragmentation of γ-amino or γ-hydroxy halides
7-35 Fragmentation of 1,3-diols or γ-amino alcohols
7-41 Fragmentation of certain ketoximes
7-46 Pyrolysis of β-hydroxy olefins
7-47 Pyrolysis of allyl ethers
8-2 Rearrangement of glycols and related compounds (pinacol)
8-3 Ring expansion of certain hydroxyamines (Tiffeneu–Demyanov)
8-4 Acid-catalyzed ketone rearrangements
8-10 Homologization of aldehydes or ketones
8-16 Reaction between α-hydroxy or α-halo amides and NaOBr (Hofmann)
8-23 Cleavage of hydroperoxides
8-27 Treatment of boranes with CO and H_2O, followed by NaOH and H_2O_2; or with CN^- followed by trifluoroacetic anhydride; from dialkylchloroboranes
8-30 Treatment of lithium alkynyltrialkylborates with electrophiles
9-3 Oxidation of secondary alcohols
9-7 Oxidative cleavage of glycols and related compounds
9-9 Ozonolysis of olefins
9-10 Oxidative cleavage of olefins
9-11 Oxidation of diarylmethanes
9-13 Oxidative cleavage of α-methylthio carboxylic acids
9-14 Bisdecarboxylation of malonic acids
9-15 Oxidative decyanation of nitriles
9-16 Oxidation of activated methylene groups
9-20 Oxidation of secondary alkyl halides and tosylates
9-21 Oxidation of amines
9-23 Oxidation of olefins with noble-metal salts
9-39 Reduction of diketones or quinones
9-58 Indirect oxidative decyanation of nitriles
9-72 From halohydrins

Lactams

0-56	Cyclization of amino acids
0-57	Reaction between lactones and ammonia or amines; ring expansion of lactams
0-60	Cyclization of halo amides
5-8	Addition of lactams to olefins
5-22	Hydrocarboxylation of unsaturated amines
6-32	Reaction between imines, zinc, and halo esters
6-47	Reaction between imides and phosphoranes
6-66	Addition of ketenes to imines; addition of enamines to isocyanates
8-19	Reaction between cyclic ketones and hydrazoic acid (Schmidt)
8-20	Rearrangement of oximes of cyclic ketones (Beckmann)
8-21	Expansion of aminocyclopropanols

Lactones

0-24	Cyclization of hydroxy acids
0-26	Cyclization of halo acids
5-5	Cyclization of olefinic acids
5-22	Hydrocarboxylation of unsaturated alcohols
5-44	Reaction of alkenes with manganese(III) acetate
6-47	Reaction of anhydrides with phosphoranes
6-65	Addition of ketenes to aldehydes or ketones
7-50	Extrusion of CO_2 from 1,2-dioxolane-3,5-diones
7-52	Decarboxylation of cyclic peroxides (Story)
8-22	Reaction between cyclic ketones and peroxy compounds (Baeyer–Villiger)
8-40	Rearrangement of N-halo amides
9-18	Oxidation of cyclic ethers
9-22	Oxidation of diols
9-42	Reduction of cyclic anhydrides

Mercaptals (*see* Thioacetals)

Mercaptans

0-11	Hydrolysis of thiol esters
0-37	Reaction of alkyl halides with NaSH; cleavage of isothiuronium salts
1-9	Sulfurization of aromatic compounds (Herz)
2-27	Reaction between Grignard reagents and sulfur
3-5	Reaction between aryl halides and NaSH
3-22	Reaction between diazonium salts and NaSH
5-6	Addition of H_2S to olefins
9-54	Reduction of sulfonic acids or sulfonyl halides
9-62	Reduction of disulfides

Metallocenes

2-34	Reaction between sodium cyclopentadienylide and metal halides

Monoesters of Dicarboxylic Acids

0-23	Alcoholysis of cyclic anhydrides
0-25	Equilibration of dicarboxylic acids and esters
0-113	Acylation of carboxylic acid salts with chloroformates or carbonates
6-9	Alcoholysis of cyano acids
9-10	Oxidative cleavage of catechols

Nitriles (*see also* Dicyano Compounds, Cyano Carbonyl Compounds, etc.)

0-97	Alkylation of nitriles
0-101	Reaction of halo nitriles or diazo nitriles with boranes
0-103	Reaction between alkyl halides and cyanide ion
1-30	Direct cyanation of aromatic rings
2-15	Cyanation of ketones or nitro compounds
2-32	Cyanation of organometallic compounds
2-39	Decarboxylation of α-cyano acids
3-11	Reaction between aryl halides and CuCN (Rosenmund–von Braun)
3-12	Cyanide fusion of sulfonic acid salts
3-14	Arylation of nitriles
4-27	Reaction between diazonium salts and CuCN (Sandmeyer)
4-39	Reaction of acyl peroxides with copper cyanide
4-40	Decarbonylation of aromatic acyl cyanides
5-17	Addition to activated olefins (Michael)
5-19	Addition of boranes to acrylonitrile

Nitriles (continued)

5-21	Free-radical addition of nitriles to olefins
5-25	Addition of HCN to olefins
5-43	Addition of CN and SR to double bonds
6-22	From aldehydes or carboxylic acids
6-42	Reaction of ketones with tosylmethylisocyanide
6-51	Addition of KCN to sulfonyl hydrazones
6-61	Reaction between acid salts and BrCN
7-40	Dehydration of aldoximes and similar compounds
7-41	Fragmentation of ketoximes
7-42	Dehydration of amides
7-43	From primary nitro compounds or azides
9-5	Dehydrogenation of amines
9-6	Oxidation of hydrazones
9-13	Treatment of carboxylic acids with trifluoroacetic anhydride and $NaNO_2$
9-56	Reduction of nitrile oxides
9-59	Reduction of nitro compounds with $NaBH_2S_3$
9-25	Oxidation of primary amines, oximes, or nitroso compounds

Nitro Compounds

0-62	Reaction between alkyl halides and nitrite ion
0-96	Alkylation of nitro compounds
1-2	Nitration of aromatic rings
1-34	Rearrangement of N-nitro aromatic amines
2-39	Decarboxylation of α-nitro acids
2-50	N-Nitration of amines or amides
3-17	Alkylation of aromatic nitro compounds
4-12	Nitration of alkanes
4-25	Reaction between diazonium salts and sodium nitrite
5-8	Nitromercuration–reduction of alkenes
5-17	Addition to activated olefins (Michael)
5-31	Addition of NOCl and other nitrogen compounds to olefins
5-40	Addition of N_2O_4 and other nitrogen compounds to olefins
5-43	Addition of NO_2 and SR to double bonds
6-42	Addition of nitro compounds to aldehydes or ketones; reaction of pyrylium salts with nitromethane
6-43	Carboxylation of nitro compounds

Nitrogen Ylides

2-19	Treatment of quaternary ammonium salts with organometallic compounds

Nitrones

0-35	Alkylation of oximes

Nitroso Compounds

1-3	Nitrosation of aromatic rings
1-35	Rearrangement of N-nitroso aromatic amines (Fischer–Hepp)
1-41	Nitrosative decarboxylation of aromatic acids
2-8	Nitrosation at a carbon bearing an active hydrogen
2-50	Reaction between secondary amines or amides and nitrous acid
5-31	Addition of NOCl to olefins
8-44	Photolysis of nitrites (Barton)
9-6	Oxidation of hydroxylamines
9-24	Oxidation of primary amines
9-49	Reduction of nitro compounds

Olefins (*see* Alkenes)

Organometallic Compounds (*see also* Boranes)

0-87	Reaction of alkyllithiums with alkylcopper reagents
2-19	Metallation of susceptible positions with organometallic compounds
2-20	Metallation of susceptible positions with metals or strong bases
2-22	Cleavage of alkyl groups from di- or polyvalent organometallic compounds
2-33	Reaction between an organometallic compound and a metal
2-34	Reaction between an organometallic compound and a metal halide
2-35	Reaction between an organometallic compound and an organometallic compound (exchange)
2-37	Metallation of alkyl or aryl halides with metals
2-38	Metallation of alkyl or aryl halides with organometallic compounds
4-32	Reaction of diazonium salts with metals
5-14	Hydrometallation of alkenes

Organometallic Compounds (continued)

5-18 The reaction between copper-containing compounds and organolithium compounds
8-14 Rearrangement of Grignard reagents

Ortho Esters

0-14 Reaction of alkoxides with 1,1,1-trihalides (Williamson)
0-19 Transetherification
6-6 Addition of alcohols to formic acid

Osazones

6-20 Addition of hydrazines to α-hydroxy aldehydes or ketones

Oxime Ethers

0-17 Alkylation of oximes with diazo compounds
0-35 Alkylation of oximes with alkyl sulfates

Oximes

2-8 Nitrosation at a carbon bearing an active hydrogen
5-31 Addition of NOCl to olefins
6-21 Addition of hydroxylamine to aldehydes or ketones
6-36 Addition of Grignard reagents to the conjugate bases of nitro compounds
8-44 Photolysis of nitrites (Barton)
9-8 Cleavage of cyclic ketones with NOCl and an alcohol
9-24 Oxidation of aliphatic primary amines
9-59 Reduction of nitro compounds

Oxiranes (*see* Epoxides)

Oxonium Salts

0-31 Reaction between alkyl halides and ethers or ketones

Ozonides

9-9 Ozonolysis of olefins

Peptides

0-56 Coupling of amino acids

Peroxides (*see also* Hydroperoxides, Peroxy acids)

0-32 Reaction of alkyl and acyl halides with peroxide ion
4-9 Reaction between hydroperoxides and susceptible hydrocarbons
5-4 Oxymercuration–reduction of alkenes in the presence of a hydroperoxide
5-38 Photooxidation of dienes
7-52 Reaction of ketones with H_2O_2

Peroxy Acids

9-33 Oxidation of carboxylic acids

Phenols

0-11 Hydrolysis of phenolic esters
0-33 Cleavage of phenolic ethers with sulfonic acids
0-38 Cleavage of phenolic ethers
0-48 Cleavage of aryl ethers
0-69 Cleavage of phenolic ethers with HI or HBr
0-93 Cleavage of aryl ethers with Grignard reagents
1-31 Electrophilic hydroxylation of aromatic rings
1-32 Rearrangement of phenolic esters (Fries)
1-33 Rearrangement of phenolic ethers
2-23 Oxidation of aryl organometallic compounds
2-24 Oxidation of arylthallium compounds
3-1 Hydrolysis of aryl halides and other compounds
3-2 Reaction between naphthylamines and bisulfite ion (Bucherer)
3-3 Alkali fusion of sulfonate ions
3-20 Nucleophilic hydroxylation of aromatic acids
3-21 Hydrolysis of diazonium salts
3-28 Rearrangement of N-hydroxylamines
4-5 Free-radical hydroxylation of aromatic rings
6-26 Reduction of quinones
8-6 The dienone–phenol rearrangement
8-22 Cleavage of aryl ketones with peracids (Baeyer–Villiger)
8-23 Rearrangement of aralkyl peroxides
8-37 Rearrangement of allyl aryl ethers (Claisen)
8-47 Rearrangement of azoxy compounds (Wallach)
9-1 Aromatization of cyclic ketones

Phenols (continued)

9-12 Oxidative cleavage of alkylbenzenes or aromatic aldehydes
9-43 Reduction of phenolic esters
9-44 Reduction of certain acids and esters

Phosphines

0-45 Reaction between alkyl halides and phosphine
0-83 Reduction of quaternary phosphonium salts
2-34 Reaction between phosphorus halides and Grignard reagents

Phosphonates

6-47 Reaction between alkyl halides and phosphites (Arbuzov)

Phosphoranes

6-47 Treatment of phosphonium ions with alkyllithiums

Quaternary Ammonium and Phosphonium Salts

0-45 Alkylation of amines (Menschutkin) or phosphines
5-8 Addition of tertiary amines to alkenes
6-47 Reaction of phosphines with Michael olefins or with alkyl halides

Quinones

1-15 Intramolecular Friedel–Crafts acylation of diaryl ketones
9-4 Oxidation of phenols or aromatic amines
9-19 Oxidation of aromatic hydrocarbons

Schiff Bases (*see* Imines)

Selenides

0-38 Selenylation of alkyl halides
2-12 Selenylation of aldehydes, ketones, and esters
2-27 Selenylation of organometallic compounds
9-57 Reduction of selenoxides

Semicarbazones

6-20 Addition of semicarbazide to aldehydes or ketones

Silyl enol ethers

2-21 Trialkylsilylation of ketones or aldehydes

Sulfenimides

0-60 Reaction of alkyl halides with $(PhS)_2NLi$

Sulfenyl Chlorides

4-11 Chlorosulfenation

Sulfides

0-38 Reaction between alkyl halides and thiolate ions or Na_2S
0-99 Alkylation of sulfides
1-9 Sulfurization of aromatic rings
1-28 Thioalkylation of aromatic rings
2-12 Sulfenylation of ketones, esters, and amides
2-27 Reaction between Grignard reagents and sulfur or disulfides
3-5 Reaction between aryl halides or phenols and mercaptides
3-22 Reaction between diazonium salts and mercaptides or Na_2S
4-33 Reaction of boranes with disulfides
5-6 Addition of mercaptans to olefins
5-29 Addition of sulfenyl chlorides to olefins
5-43 Dialkylamino-alkylthio-addition to double bonds
6-11 Reductive alkylation of thiols
7-12 Cleavage of sulfonium compounds
8-24 Rearrangement of sulfonium salts (Stevens)
8-39 [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangements of sulfur ylides
9-41 Reduction of thiol esters
9-57 Reduction of sulfoxides or sulfones
9-61 Reduction of disulfides

Sulfinic Acids and Esters

0-121 Reduction of sulfonyl chlorides
2-27 Reaction of Grignard reagents with SO_2
3-29 The Smiles rearrangement
4-26 Reaction of diazonium salts with $FeSO_4$ and Cu
7-13 Cleavage of sulfones
9-26 Oxidation of mercaptans

Sulfonamides

0-60 N-Alkylation of sulfonamides

Sulfonamides (continued)

0-96 Alkylation of sulfonamides
0-101 Reaction of halo sulfonamides with boranes
0-119 Reaction between sulfonyl halides and ammonia or amines
5-8 Addition of sulfonamides to olefins
9-53 Reduction of sulfonyl azides

Sulfones

0-42 Reaction between alkyl halides and sulfinates
0-96 Alkylation of sulfones
0-97 Alkylation of sulfones
0-101 Reaction of halo sulfones with boranes
0-112 Reaction between esters and methylsulfonyl carbanion
0-122 Reaction between sulfonic acid derivatives and organometallic compounds
1-10 Sulfonylation of aromatic rings
3-5 Reaction between aryl halides and sulfinate ions
5-17 Addition of sulfones to activated olefins (Michael)
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to unsaturated sulfones
5-29 Addition of sulfonyl halides to olefins
6-42 Addition of sulfones to aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)
9-32 Oxidation of sulfides or sulfoxides

Sulfonic Acid Esters

0-33 Reaction between alcohols or ethers and sulfonic acids
0-96 Alkylation of sulfonic acid esters
0-97 Alkylation of sulfonic acid esters
0-101 Reaction of halo sulfonic acid esters with boranes
0-118 Alcoholysis of sulfonic acid derivatives
6-42 Addition of sulfonic acid esters to aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)

Sulfonic Acids

0-43 Reaction between alkyl halides and sulfite ion
0-117 Hydrolysis of sulfonic acid derivatives
1-7 Sulfonation of aromatic rings
1-42 Sulfonation with rearrangement (Jacobsen)
2-13 Sulfonylation of aldehydes, ketones, or acids
3-5 Reaction between aryl halides and sulfite ion
5-7 Addition of sodium bisulfite to olefins
9-26 Oxidation of mercaptans or other sulfur compounds

Sulfonium Salts

0-38 Reactions between alkyl halides and sulfides

Sulfonyl Azides

0-119 Reaction between sulfonyl halides and azide ion

Sulfonyl Halides

0-120 From sulfonic acids and derivatives
1-8 Halosulfonation of aromatic rings
2-27 Reaction of Grignard reagents with sulfuryl chloride or with SO_2 followed by X_2
4-11 Free-radical halosulfonation (Reed)
4-26 Reaction of diazonium salts with SO_2 and $CuCl_2$
9-27 Oxidation of mercaptans and other sulfur compounds

Sulfoxides

0-96 Alkylation of sulfoxides
0-112 Reaction between esters and methylsulfinyl anion
1-9 Sulfurization of aromatic rings with thionyl chloride
2-27 Reaction of Grignard reagents with sulfinic esters
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to unsaturated sulfoxides
6-42 Addition of sulfoxides to aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)
9-32 Oxidation of sulfides
9-57 Indirectly, from sulfones

Thioacetals

5-6 Addition of mercaptans to alkynes
6-11 Addition of mercaptans to aldehydes or ketones

Thioamides

1-23 Amidation of aromatic rings with isothiocyanates

Thioamides (continued)

6-37 Addition of Grignard reagents to isothiocyanates
9-73 Reaction of ketones with sulfur and ammonia or amines

Thiocarbamates

2-55 Treatment of amines with CO and disulfides
6-5 Hydrolysis of thiocyanates
6-8 Addition of alcohols to isothiocyanates

Thiocyanates

0-44 Reaction between alkyl halides and thiocyanate ion
1-11 Thiocyanation of aromatic rings
2-13 Thiocyanation of ketones
3-5 Reaction between aryl halides and thiocyanate ion
3-22 Reaction between diazonium salts and thiocyanate ion
4-39 Reaction between acyl peroxides and copper thiocyanate
5-29 Addition of halogen and SCN to alkenes

Thioethers (*see* Sulfides)

Thiol Acids and Esters

0-39 Reaction between acid derivatives and mercaptans or H_2S
1-21 Reaction of aromatic rings with alkyl thiolchloroformates
1-29 Reaction between aromatic rings and thiocyanates
5-3 Hydration of acetylenic thioethers
5-6 Addition of thiol acids to olefins; addition of mercaptans to ketenes
5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of olefins in the presence of mercaptans
6-39 Addition of Grignard reagents to carbon disulfide
7-53 From thiol acids and α-halo ketones

Thiols (*see* Mercaptans)

Thioketones

6-11 From ketones

Thiono Esters and Thioamides

6-11 From carboxylic esters or amides
6-66 Addition of imines to thioketenes (β-thiolactams)

Thioureas (*see* Ureas)

Triazenes

1-4 Reaction between aromatic amines and diazonium salts
2-50 Reaction between amines and diazonium salts

Unsaturated Acids, Esters, Aldehydes, Ketones (*see* Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds)

Unsaturated Alcohols and Phenols

4-4 Allylic hydroxylation
5-11 Selective reduction of α,β-unsaturated aldehydes or ketones
5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to propargylic alcohols
6-26 Selective reduction of α,β-unsaturated aldehydes or ketones
6-30 Addition of vinyl or alkynyl organometallic compounds to aldehydes or ketones
6-42 Condensation of alkyne salts with aldehydes or ketones
6-47 Reaction of certain ylides with aldehydes (scoopy reactions)
6-53 Addition of aldehydes to olefins (Prins)
7-2 Reaction of epoxides with strong bases
7-13 From epoxides or alkenes via selenoxide cleavage
8-3 Ring opening of cycloalkyl carbocations
8-35 Rearrangement of Li salts of 2-vinylcyclopropanols
8-37 Rearrangement of allyl aryl ethers (Claisen)
8-39 [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangements

Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds

0-97 Vinylation of ketones or esters
0-99 Hydrolysis of bis(methylthio)alkenes
2-2 Isomerization of α-hydroxy alkynes
2-14 Acylation of olefins
2-31 From vinylic organometallic compounds
4-6 Oxidation of unsaturated aldehydes
5-17 Addition to activated alkynes (Michael)
5-18 Addition of vinyl organometallic compounds to unsaturated carbonyl compounds; addition of organometallic

Unsaturated Carbonyl Compounds (continued)

compounds to acetylenic carbonyl compounds

5-19 Addition of unsaturated boranes to methyl vinyl ketones

5-22 Hydrocarboxylation of triple bonds

5-35 Addition of acyl halides to triple bonds

6-16 Reaction between aldehydes, ammonia, and aldehydes, ketones, or esters (Mannich)

6-31 Reaction between aldehydes or ketones, zinc, and α-halo esters (Reformatsky)

6-35 Carbonation of vinyl ate complexes

6-40 Condensation of aldehydes and/or ketones (aldol)

6-41 Condensation between esters and aldehydes or ketones

6-42 Condensation between active-hydrogen compounds and aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)

6-44 Condensation between anhydrides and aldehydes (Perkin)

6-47 Condensation between β-carboxy phosphoranes and aldehydes or ketones

6-54 Addition of aldehydes, ketones, esters, or amides to alkynyl ethers

7-3 Pyrolysis of lactones

7-13 Cleavage of carbonyl-containing selenoxides and sulfones

7-37 Fragmentation of epoxy hydrazones

8-6 Rearrangement of dihalo ketones (Favorskii)

8-30 Reaction of alkynylborates with ortho esters and $TiCl_4$, followed by oxidation

8-33 Rearrangement of vinylhydroxycyclopropanes

8-36 Rearrangement of 3-hydroxy-1,5-dienes (oxy-Cope)

8-37 Rearrangement of allyl vinyl ethers (Claisen)

8-39 [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangements

9-2 Dehydrogenation of aldehydes or ketones

9-13 Decarboxylation of γ-keto acids; decarbalkoxylation of certain β-keto esters

9-16 Oxidation of a methylene group α to a double or triple bond

Unsaturated Ethers and Thioethers

0-96 Alkylation of allylic ethers

6-45 Addition of telluronium iodides to aldehydes

7-31 Elimination of X and OR from β-halo acetals

8-39 [2,3] sigmatropic rearrangement of allylic sulfur ylides

Unsaturated Nitriles, Nitro Compounds, and Sulfonic Acids and Esters

2-32 Cyanation of vinylic organometallic compounds

5-17 Addition of activated alkynes (Michael)

5-18 Addition of organometallic compounds to activated alkynes

5-25 Addition of HCN to alkynes

5-34 Addition of nitryl chloride to triple bonds

6-42 Condensation between active hydrogen compounds and aldehydes or ketones (Knoevenagel)

7-18 Cleavage of H and HgCl from β-nitro mercuric halides

8-37 Rearrangement of allyl vinyl sulfides

Ureas and Thioureas

0-58 Exchange of ureas

2-55 Carbonylation of amines

6-3 Hydrolysis of isocyanates

6-17 Addition of amines to isocyanates or isothiocyanates

6-19 Addition of amines to CO_2 or CS_2

6-56 Addition of alcohols or other carbocation sources to cyanamides (Ritter)

8-16 Reactive between amides and lead tetraacetate

Ureides (*see* Imides)

Urethanes (*see* Carbamates)

Vinylic Ethers (*see* Enol Ethers)

Vinylic Halides

2-28 Halogenation of alkenyl organometallic compounds

5-1 Addition of hydrogen halides to triple bonds

5-27 Halogenation of alkynes or allenes

5-34 Addition of alkyl halides to triple bonds

5-35 Addition of acyl halides to triple bonds

Vinylic Halides (continued)

6-25 Addition of PCl_5 to aldehydes or ketones

6-47 Reaction of halophosphoranes with aldehydes or ketones; reaction of certain ylides with halogen compounds (scoopy reactions)

Xanthates

6-10 Addition of alcohols to carbon disulfide

7-4 Reaction of alcohols with NaOH and CS_2, followed by methyl iodide

Ylides (*see* Nitrogen Ylides, Phosphoranes)

AUTHOR INDEX

Aalbersberg, W.G.L., 921
Aaron, H.S., 21, 72
Aasen, S.M., 1020
Abatjoglou, A.G., 155
Abbott, S.J., 88
Abboud, J.M., 65, 72, 235, 318, 320
Abdesaken, F., 9
Abdulla, R.F., 414
Abe, H., 590
Abe, M., 643
Abe, N., 350
Abe, T., 680
Abell, A.D., 853
Abell, P.I., 666, 667, 676
Aben, R.W., 868
Abidi, S., 388
Abiko, S., 1001
Abis, L., 971
Ablenas, F.J., 1108
Aboderin, A.A., 678
Abraham, M.H., 72, 126, 318, 320, 404, 512, 516, 521, 548, 552, 557
Abraham, R.J., 123, 126, 128, 661
Abrahams, S.C., 20
Abrahamson, E.W., 1005
Abraitys, V.Y., 764
Abram, T.S., 147
Abramenkov, A.V., 133
Abramov, A.I., 858
Abramovitch, A., 434
Abramovitch, R.A., 176, 177, 461, 641, 985
Abrams, S.R., 1086
Achiwa, K., 393, 1017, 1083
Achmatowicz, O., Jr., 858
Acke, M., 791
Acker, R., 410
Ackerman, J.H., 140
Ackerman, J.J.H., 426
Acott, B., 983
Acton, N., 133
Adachi. K., 532
Adachi, M., 364, 491, 494, 497
Adam, J., 625
Adam, M., 1103
Adam, M.J., 552
Adam, W., 348, 500, 549, 634, 737, 738, 929, 937, 939, 956, 1010, 1042
Adamcik, J.A., 324
Adamczyk, M., 745
Adams, B.L., 993
Adams, C., 813
Adams, C.T., 967
Adams, D.G., 160
Adams, D.R., 857
Adams, J., 865
Adams, J.H., 350
Adams, J.T., 437
Adams, R., 82, 84, 90, 1023
Adams, R.M., 96
Adams, W.R., 634, 737
Adamsky, F., 1019
Adcock, J.L., 621
Adcock, W., 16, 126, 149, 247
Addadi, L., 107
Addy, J.K., 326
Adema, E.H., 483
Adeström, R., 973
Adickes, H.W., 424, 425, 581, 827, 837, 990
Adkins, H., 1101
Adkins, J.D., 397
Adler, E., 1061, 1063
Adlercreutz, P., 846
Adlington, M.G., 393, 993, 1097
Adlington, R.M., 911
Adolfini, M., 734
Adolph, H.G., 529
Adrian, F.J., 167
Afanas'ev, I.B., 242, 248, 670
Agababyan, A.G., 800
Agadzhanyan, Ts.E., 1047
Agam, G., 81, 1114
Agami, C., 773
Agawa, T., 390, 643
Agdeppa, D.A., Jr., 963
Ager, D.J., 547, 1100
Agmon, N., 227
Agnihotri, R.K., 702
Agranat, I., 107, 479, 486, 506
Aguiló, A., 1084
Agwada, V.C., 799
Ahern, M.F., 570
Ahlberg, P., 885, 901, 945
Ahlbrecht, H., 414, 418, 423, 918
Ahlers, H., 715, 818
Ahmad, A., 796, 932
Ahmad, I., 736
Ahmad, M., 125, 330, 331
Ahmberg, C.H., 653
Ahmed, M.G., 312
Ahmed, S., 1099
Ahmed, S.S., 504
Ahmed, T.Y., 994
Ahn, K.H., 391, 694
Ahola, C.J., 138
Ahond, A., 802
Ahramjian, L., 843
Ahuja, V.K., 692
Aida, T., 383, 1092
Aigami, K., 962
Aigner, H., 372
Aihara, J., 63
Aikawa, Y., 372, 712
Ainslie, R.D., 981
Ainsworth, C., 440, 1114
Aitken, E.J., 235
Aizawa, T., 803, 934
Aizpurua, J.M., 930
Akabori, S., 325, 591
Akada, T., 629
Akam, T.M., 694, 695
Akasaka, T., 741, 807, 1090, 1092, 1108
Akashi, K., 733, 1057, 1058
Akelah, A., 373

Åkermark, B., 408, 690, 691, 1085
Akhmatdinov, R.T., 330
Akhmetova, N.E., 593, 915
Akhrem, A.A., 325, 700, 780, 971, 1014, 1018
Akhtar, M., 632, 1044, 1045
Akhtar, M.I., 676
Akimoto, H., 570
Akita, Y., 589
Akiyama, F., 643, 795, 1112
Akiyama, M., 394
Akiyama, S., 59, 62, 811
Akiyama, T., 938
Akkerman, O.S., 558, 559, 560
Aksel'rod, Zh.I., 461
Aksenov, V.S., 304
Akses, G., 853
Aktekin, N., 769
Alajarin, M., 803, 930
Al-Awadi, N. AL, 899
Al-Azzawi, S.F., 547
Albano, C., 281
Albarella, J.P., 440
Albeck, M., 885
Alberts, V., 548
Albertson, N.F., 371, 372
Albini, A., 211
Albini, F.M., 744
Albizati, K.F., 833, 1058
Al-Borno, A., 564
Alborz, M., 338
Albright, J.A., 931
Albright, J.D., 418, 1081, 1082
Alcais, P., 663
Alcock, W.G., 1067
Alcorn, P.G.E., 461
Alcudia, F., 128
Alden, L., 433
Alder, K., 711, 749
Alder, R.W., 115, 233, 312
Alderson, T., 710
Alderweireldt, F.C., 84
Aldous, G., 149
Aldred, S.E., 358
Aldridge, C.L., 723
Aldwin, L., 784
Alekseeva, N.F., 686
Alekserov, M.A., 415
Alemdaroğlu, N.H., 723
Aleskerov, M.A., 874
Aleskovskii, V.B., 634
Alewood, P.F., 535
Alexakis, A., 401, 409, 434, 713, 778
Alexander, D.W., 1042
Alexander, R., 888
Alexanian, V., 350
Alfrey, T., Jr., 505
Algrim, D., 223
Ali, M.B., 751
Ali, S.A., 744, 833
Ali, S.F., 314
Ali, S.M., 537
Alkabets, R., 694
Alker, D., 621
Allabash, J.C., 396
Allaway, J.R., 896
Allen, A.D., 286, 302, 328, 662, 671
Allen, C.F.H., 747, 930, 1097
Allen, D.S., Jr., 1071
Allen, D.W., 849, 850
Allen, F.H., 95, 136
Allen, G.F., 690
Allen, G.R., Jr., 1040
Allen, J.C., 719
Allen, L.C., 72, 86, 124, 133, 141, 148, 171
Allen, L.E., 656
Allen, R.B., 404
Allen, R.G., 667
Allen, R.H., 505
Allerhand, A., 74, 196
Alleston, D.L., 390, 557
Allinger, J., 517
Allinger, N.L., 21, 119, 120, 123, 125, 129, 565
Allred, A.L., 74
Allred, E.L., 133, 270, 924
Almenningen, A., 133
Almond, A.E., 191, 863
Almond, S.W., 1022
Almy, J., 519, 525
Alneri, E., 736
Al-Omran, F., 387
Alonso, R.A., 596
Alonso-Cires, L., 342, 353, 740
Alper, H., 75, 320, 390, 393, 555, 653, 700, 711, 721, 785, 921, 964, 1085, 1107
Alpha, S.R., 1119
Alpoim, C.M., 1089
Al-Sader, B.H., 1021
Alston, P.V., 744, 749
Alt, G.H., 540, 541
Altenbach, H., 745, 1026
Altenkirk, B., 574
Altland, H.W., 549
Altman, L.J., 50, 425, 610
Altmann, J.A., 29
Altona, C., 128
Alumbaugh, R.L., 326
Alunni, S., 488, 893
Aluotto, P.F., 223
Alvarez, F.S., 353
Alvernhe, G., 383, 828
Alzérreca, A., 51, 52
Amaratunga, W., 555
Amariglio, A., 102
Amariglio, H., 102
Amatore, C., 583
Ambidge, I.C., 286
Ambroz, H.B., 147, 579
Amer, M.I., 497
Ames, A., 377
Amice, P., 531
Amick, D.R., 496
Amiel, Y., 59, 639, 666, 728
Amin, H.B., 244, 899
Amin, N.V., 694
Amma, J.P., 693
Ammanamanchi, R., 554
Amosova, S.V., 360
Amouroux, R., 820
Amstutz, E.D., 925
Amupitan, J.O., 1120
An, T.D., 879
Anand, M., 948
Anantakrishnan, S.V., 662
Anastassiou, A.G., 56, 57, 536, 770
Anatol, J., 861
Andell, O.S., 724
Andersen, B., 133
Andersen, K.K., 86, 88, 443
Andersen, N.H., 154, 816
Andersen, P., 167
Anderson, A.G., 480
Anderson, A.G., Jr., 383, 385, 389
Anderson, B.R., 137
Anderson, D.J., 741
Anderson, D.R., 1029
Anderson, E., 331
Anderson, E.D., 172
Anderson, E.W., 125, 274
Anderson, G.J., 1081
Anderson, G.P., Jr., 481
Anderson, G.W., 372
Anderson, J.C., 500, 543
Anderson, J.E., 120, 125, 384
Anderson, J.M., 645
Anderson, N.H., 354
Anderson, P.C., 406

Anderson, P.H., 299
Anderson, R., 323, 545
Anderson, R.J., 409, 411, 435, 716, 888
Anderson, R.S., 1104
Anderson, S.W., 391
Anderson, T.J., 686
Ando, A., 1026
Ando, M., 989
Ando, T., 199, 264, 278, 280, 285, 377, 441, 989, 1036, 1058
Ando, W., 361, 370, 393, 628, 634, 738, 770, 974, 975, 1090
Ando, Y., 577
Andose, J.D., 86
Andrade, J.G., 441, 1107
Andreades, S., 481, 807
Andree, R., 58
Andreeta, A., 696
Andreev, S.A., 573
Andrejević, V., 632, 1061
Andreou, A.D., 506
Andréu, P., 903, 916
Andrews, A.F., 477
Andrews, G.C., 414, 810, 1034
Andrews, G.D., 673, 1021
Andrews, L., 163, 167, 172, 623, 1067
Andrews, L.J., 74, 77, 477, 899
Andrews, T.G., Jr., 44
Andrianov, K.A., 707
Andrisano, R., 298
Andrist, A.H., 677, 755, 1010
Andrulis, P.J., Jr., 785
Andrus, A., 431
Andrus, W.A., 331
Andrussow, K., 222
Andrzejewski, D., 908, 909
Aneja, R., 564
Anet, F.A.L., 21, 78, 120, 124, 125, 129, 136, 277, 282, 1026
Anet, R., 120, 136
Ang, K.P., 223
Ang, P., 888
Angelastro, R., 1001
Angelini, G., 258
Angelo, B., 440
Angeloni, A.S., 298
Angibeaud, P., 693, 694
Angus, J.C., 883
Angyal, S.J., 119, 120, 128, 129, 1065, 1082
Anh, N.T., 17, 103, 749
Anicich, V., 272
Anker, W., 58
Annunziata, R., 86, 157, 833
Ansell, H.V., 457, 461
Ansell, M.F., 388, 686
Anselme, J., 187, 573, 869, 977, 1035
Anselmi, C., 676
Anteunis, M., 266, 791, 858
Anthoine, G., 59
Anton, D.R., 915
Antoniades, E.P., 987
Antonioletti, R., 726
Antonova, N.D., 858
Antonucci, F.R., 816
Antony, A., 1121
Anzai, H., 511
Ao, M.S., 542
Aoki, K., 734, 766
Aoki, T., 494
Aoyama, T., 417, 554, 974, 976
Apeloig, Y., 281, 296, 297, 736
Aponte, G.S., 956
Apparu, M., 681, 904
Appel, R., 9, 383, 694, 933, 934
Appelbaum, A., 637
Appelman, E.H., 479, 726
Appl, M., 985
Applegate, L.E., 298
Applegath, F., 575
Appleman, J.O., 863
Applequist, D.E., 34, 88, 151, 400, 515, 613, 679
Applequist, J., 88, 99
Appleton, R.A., 391
Aprahamian, N.S., 478
ApSimon, J.W., 102
Arad, D., 281
Arad-Yellin, R., 105
Arai, H., 722
Arai, M., 626, 832
Araki, K., 303
Araki, M., 434, 435
Aramatunga, S., 555
Arapakos, P.G., 569
Arase, A., 556, 717, 718
Arata, K., 67
Arbasino, M., 1089
Arbelot, M., 229
Arbuzov, B.A., 848, 959
Arbuzov, Yu.A., 737, 747, 858
Arcadi, A., 715
Arce de Sanabia, J., 500
Arcelli, A., 367, 368
Archer, D.A., 906
Archer, S., 1046
Arcus, C.L., 945
Arens, J.F., 355, 410, 683, 859
Argabright, P.A., 381, 429, 599, 913
Arganbright, R.P., 725
Argile, A., 175, 661
Argyropoulos, J.N., 414, 813, 831
Arhart, R.J., 345
Arigoni, D., 85, 289, 627, 937
Arimatsu, S., 903
Arledge, K.W., 1085
Arlt, R.E., 289
Armanious, M.S., 978
Armet, O., 166
Armit, J.W., 37
Armor, J.N., 806
Armstrong, D.W., 322
Armstrong, R., 617
Arndt, D., 1051
Arnett, E.M., 65, 139, 147, 148, 155, 200, 222, 223, 224, 234, 235, 262, 281, 282, 320, 509, 565, 775, 1009
Arnett, J.F., 156
Arnold, C., 429
Arnold, D.R., 764, 868, 938
Arnold, R.G., 786
Arnold, R.T., 532, 711, 858, 896, 935, 1017
Arnold, S., 659
Arnold, Z., 488
Arnoldi, A., 645
Arnone, A., 646
Arnould, D., 420
Arold, H., 949
Aroney, M., 123
Aronoff, M.S., 560, 702
Aronovitch, H., 266
Arora, S., 550
Arora, S.K., 1096
Arotsky, J., 478
Arques, A., 803, 807
Arrhenius, G.M.L., 294
Arrieta, A., 350
Arsenijevic, V., 686
Arseniyadis, S., 416, 836

Artamkina, G.A., 404, 561, 577
Arth, G.E., 1057
Arthur, C.D., 479
Arthur, P., 348
Arthur, P., Jr., 724
Arvanaghi, M., 178, 276, 282, 391, 435, 441, 487, 787, 1081, 1082, 1108
Arya, P.S., 394
Arzoumanian, H., 707, 1000, 1077, 1085
Arzoumanidis, G.A., 601
Asada, K., 1108
Asai, T., 417
Asami, Y., 590
Asano, R., 353, 643
Asano, T., 975
Asencio, G., 450
Asensio, G., 342, 353, 740
Ash, D.K., 1092
Ashby, E.C., 158, 159, 160, 262, 390, 391, 394, 400, 404, 414, 438, 559, 694, 695, 715, 778, 780, 810, 812, 813, 817, 820, 821, 822, 829, 831, 903, 910, 981, 1118
Ashby, J., 494
Ashe, A.J., III, 145, 283, 284
Ashley, K.R., 1063
Ashton, D.S., 613
Asinger, F., 551, 981, 1120
Askani, R., 51, 133, 767, 1026
Aslam, M., 312, 922
Aslapovskaya, T.I., 502
Ašperger, S., 1108
Asscher, M., 725, 728, 731
Assenheim, H.M., 162
Astaf'ev, I.V., 525
Astin, K.B., 288
Asveld, E.W.H., 635
Atavin, A.S., 346, 684
Atkins, A.R., 548
Atkins, K.E., 367, 690
Atkins, R.L., 796, 1087
Atkins, T.J., 1040
Atkinson, J.G., 524, 698, 699
Atkinson, R.C., 671
Atkinson, V.A., 126
Atovmyan, L.O., 87
Atsumi, K., 363
Attanasi, O., 785, 930, 1102
Atta-ur-Rahman, 398
Attea, M., 280
Attiná, M., 593
Atwood, J.L., 61
Aubrey, D.W., 905
Auchus, R.J., 1020
Audeh, C.A., 140
Aue, D.H., 234, 235, 390, 536
Auerbach, R.A., 436
Aufdermarsh, C.A., Jr., 262
Augustijn, G.J.P., 510
Augustín, J., 370
Augustine, R.L., 692, 694, 1052, 1093
Aulmich, G., 165
Ault, A., 115
Aumiller, J.C., 400
Aune, J.P., 1085
Aurich, H.G., 166
Ausloos, P., 215
Austad, T., 325
Austel, V., 1009
Avakian, S., 581
Avasthi, K., 997
Averko-Antonovich, I.G., 382
Aver'yanov, V.A., 619
Aveta, R., 578
Avila, W.B., 546
Avison, A.W.D., 359
Avramovici-Grisaru, S., 985
Avramovitch, B., 298
Awachie, P.I., 799
Awang, D.V.C., 529
Awano, H., 1107
Awasthy, A., 1059
Awasthy, A.K., 1071
Axelrod, E.H., 384, 406
Axelrod, J., 628
Axiotis, G.P., 828
Ayad, K.N., 503
Ayad, M., 494
Aycock, B.F., 667, 676
Aydin, R., 58
Ayers, P.W., 549
Aylett, B.J., 86
Aylward, F., 699
Aylward, J.B., 1051, 1063
Ayoub, R., 1067
Ayres, D.C., 810, 1071
Ayres, R.L., 724
Ayrey, G., 578, 886
Ayyangar, N.R., 107, 704, 705, 1103
Azar, J.C., 619
Aznar, F., 740
Azoo, J.A., 399, 1116
Azovskaya, V.A., 676
Azrak, R.G., 73
Azzaro, M., 1105
Azzaro, M.E., 200

Baader, W.J., 738
Baarda, D.G., 937
Baardman, F., 766
Baarschers, W.H., 446
Baas, J.M.A., 458
Baba, H., 27
Baba, S., 403, 429
Baba, T., 997
Babad, H., 398
Babaeva, L.G., 347
Babanyan, Sh.O., 525
Babayan, V.I., 955
Babich, E.D., 1037
Babler, J.H., 396, 810, 1083, 1103
Baburao, K., 379
Baccolini, G., 716
Bach, R.D., 138, 638, 686, 762, 861, 908, 909, 987
Bacha, J.D., 1074, 1075
Bachhuber, H., 699
Bachman, G.B., 654, 691, 985, 1087
Bachman, G.L., 104, 693
Bachmann, W.E., 951
Baciocchi, E., 450, 467, 476, 880, 881, 885, 888, 893, 895, 915, 924
Back, R.A., 613, 699
Back, T.G., 140, 348, 941, 1058, 1062, 1092
Backeberg, O.G., 816
Backer, H.J., 936
Bäckvall, J., 690, 691, 724, 727, 738, 739, 740, 1085
Bacon, R.G.R., 591, 593, 597, 1083
Badaev, F.Z., 560
Badding, V.G., 394
Bade, T.R., 632, 844
Badea, F.D., 311
Bader, J.M., 661
Bader, R.F.W., 201, 343, 564, 906
Badet, B., 362
Badger, G.M., 37, 40
Badger, R.C., 638, 993
Badiger, V.V., 298, 773

Baechler, R.D., 86
Baenziger, N., 918
Baer, D.R., 965
Baer, H.H., 712, 800, 836
Baes, M., 91
Baese, H., 594
Baeza, J., 348, 929
Bafus, D.A., 158
Bagal, L.I., 648, 986, 987
Baganz, H., 344
Bagheri, V., 433, 768, 1058, 1084
Bagnell, L., 715, 828
Bagnell, L.J., 593
Bahl, M.K., 235
Bahn, C.A., 297
Bahr, M.L., 380
Bahrmann, H., 432, 720
Baiker, A., 367
Bailey, A.R., 1008
Bailey, D.M., 977, 1101
Bailey, D.S., 879, 891, 892
Bailey, F.P., 457
Bailey, G.C., 1037, 1038
Bailey, N.A., 56
Bailey, P.S., 1066, 1067, 1069
Bailey, W.F., 400, 991
Bailey, W.J., 393, 792, 898, 900, 905, 1017
Baillargeon, V.P., 431
Baine, P., 222
Baiocchi, F., 575
Bair, K.W., 420, 908, 909
Baird, J.C., 162
Baird, M.C., 513, 655, 917
Baird, M.S., 966, 1012
Baird, N.C., 235
Baird, R.L., 678
Baird, W.C., Jr., 478, 725
Baizer, M.M., 404, 653, 1112
Bajwa, G.S., 1033
Bak, D.A., 759
Bakalova, G.V., 1097
Baker, A.D., 10, 11
Baker, C., 10
Baker, D.C., 436
Baker, E.B., 142, 146
Baker, G., 591
Baker, J.D., Jr., 1098
Baker, J.W., 64, 65, 303
Baker, N.J., 452
Baker, R., 264, 405, 690, 776, 887, 1037
Baker, T.N., III, 729
Bakinovskii, L.V., 732
Bakos, J., 798
Bakoss, H.J., 505
Bakule, B., 225
Bakunin, V.N., 520, 521
Bal, B.S., 629, 861
Balaban, A.T., 37, 39, 484, 537, 732, 1026, 1080
Balachandran, K.S., 1051
Balakrishnan, P., 537
Balandin, A.A., 23, 696
Baláspiri, L., 844
Balasubramanian, A., 65
Balasubramanian, M., 124
Balasubramaniyan, V., 707
Balavoine, G., 104
Balchunis, R.J., 339, 536
Balci, M., 138, 737
Bald, E., 372
Balderman, D., 380
Baldwin, F.P., 371
Baldwin, J.E., 187, 546, 719, 755, 759, 761, 762, 794, 840, 923, 966, 973, 993, 994, 1008, 1010, 1019, 1021, 1022, 1023, 1033, 1034, 1055, 1108
Baldwin, M.A., 907
Baldwin, S.W., 621, 764, 977, 1055, 1078, 1100
Baliga, B.T., 662
Ball, A.L., Jr., 515
Ball, D.L., 1060
Ballam, J., 899
Ballantine, J.A., 368, 686
Ballard, D.H., 685
Ballard, R.E., 10
Ballatore, A., 399
Ballester, M., 165, 166, 477, 843
Ballini, R., 396, 836
Ballistreri, F.P., 443
Ballod, A.P., 637
Balls, D.M., 759, 767
Bally, T., 50
Balme, G., 331
Balogh, D.W., 1056
Balquist, J.M., 966
Baltazzi, E., 843
Baltzly, R., 368
Bal'yan, Kh.V., 1030
Balzani, V., 206
Bamfield, P., 598
Bamford, W.R., 911
Bamkole, T., 900
Bamkole, T.O., 578
Bampfield, H.A., 759, 761, 1019
Ban, Y., 600
Banaventura, M.M., 125
Banciu, M., 1026
Bandlish, B.K., 425
Banerjee, S.K., 343
Banerji, K.K., 631
Bangert, K.F., 46
Bánhidai, B., 837
Banitt, E.H., 929
Banjoko, O., 443
Bank, J., 370
Bank, S., 262, 273, 525
Bankovskii, Yu. A., 73
Banks, H.D., 128
Banks, M.L.A., 652
Banks, R.B., 402, 652
Banks, R.L., 1037, 1038
Bannard, R.A.B., 980
Bannerman, C.G.F., 771
Bannet, D.M., 920
Banno, K., 832
Bannore, S.N., 856
Banoli, L., 1031
Bansal, R.K., 843
Banthorpe, D.V., 74, 452, 501, 502, 874, 890, 891, 895, 902, 907, 959, 960, 984, 986, 1035, 1036
Banville, J., 417
Banwell, T., 459
Bao, L.Q., 532
Barager, H.J., III, 532, 1089
Baranova, V.A., 694
Barany, G., 373
Barar, D.G., 903
Barash, L., 479, 621
Barbara, C., 1031
Barber, J., 387
Barber, J.J., 560
Barber, M., 139
Barber, W., 304
Barbier, G., 661
Barborak, J.C., 133, 945
Barbot, F., 565
Barbour, A.K., 382, 593
Barclay, L.R.C., 337, 482, 957
Bard, A.J., 170, 565, 653
Bard, R.R., 596
Bares, J.E., 223
Baret, P., 115

Baretta, A., 971
Bargar, T., 596
Barger, T.M., 933
Bargiotti, A., 920
Bargon, J., 163, 644
Barilli, P., 645
Barker, G.K., 776
Barker, S.D., 415
Barkhash, V.A., 272
Barlet, R., 294, 769
Barlin, G.B., 229
Barlow, J.J., 351
Barlow, M.G., 1009
Barltrop, J.A., 202, 511, 527, 863, 868
Barluenga, J., 342, 353, 691, 740, 854
Barmess, J.E., 234
Barnard, D., 1090
Barnard, P.W.C., 328
Barnatt, A., 905
Barneis, Z., 351
Barner, R., 1028, 1029
Barnes, C.E., 466
Barnes, C.S., 1054
Barnes, D.S., 75
Barnes, M.W., 1087
Barnett, B., 776
Barnett, J.W., 341, 466
Barnett, K.W., 710
Barnette, W.E., 529
Barnier, J.P., 1017
Barnum, C., 537
Barón, M., 862
Baron, W., 368
Barone, G., 734
Barrault, J., 360
Barreiro, E., 409, 817
Barrelle, M., 681
Barrett, A.G.M., 371, 394, 395, 911, 919, 1089
Barrett, G.C., 120
Barrett, J.H., 758, 777
Barron, B.G., 393
Barrow, M.J., 44
Barry, B.J., 526
Barry, G.W., 224
Barry, J., 353, 915
Barstow, J.F., 1030
Barsukov, L.I., 850
Bartel, J., 931
Bartell, L.S., 18, 19, 20, 28, 200
Bartels, A.P., 1097
Bartels, H.M., 675
Barter, R.M., 1060
Barth, G., 85
Barth, J., 386
Barth, W.E., 35
Bartkus, E.A., 604
Bartlett, P.A., 102, 119, 361, 658, 780, 787, 926, 1021, 1028, 1030
Bartlett, P.D., 140, 240, 261, 272, 273, 275, 634, 662, 735, 738, 750, 756, 759–762, 766, 819, 945
Bartlett, R.K., 911
Bartlett, R.S., 815, 1104
Bartlett, W.R., 1030
Bartley, W.J., 136
Bartmess, J.E., 235
Bartók, M., 311, 902, 963
Bartok, W., 1092
Bartoletti, I., 555
Bartoli, G., 586, 716
Barton, D.H.R., 140, 242, 331, 358, 383, 393–396, 479, 528, 529, 536, 564, 574, 621, 632, 634, 655, 676, 725, 785, 787, 860, 897, 899, 900, 919, 941, 1044, 1045, 1054, 1058, 1061, 1062, 1063, 1074, 1077, 1089, 1097
Barton, F.E., Jr., 924
Barton, J.K., 286
Barton, S., 967
Barton, T.J., 223, 1025
Bartroli, J., 833
Bartsch, R.A., 570, 874, 878, 880, 891, 893, 896
Barua, J.N., 919, 920
Barua, N.C., 919
Barua, R.N., 920
Basavaiah, D., 704, 999, 1000
Basch, H., 11
Basha, A., 375, 398, 504, 553, 1099
Bashe, R.W., 401
Bass, A.M., 172
Bass, J.D., 764
Bass, K.C., 611
Basselier, J., 76
Basset, J.M., 1037
Bassi, P., 672
Bassili, E., 1117
Bässler, T., 296, 297
Bassova, G.I., 693
Bastiansen, O., 27, 29, 54, 119, 124
Bastide, J., 744, 746
Bastien, I.J., 142
Bateman, L., 1090
Bateman, L.C., 260, 261, 305
Bates, G.S., 348, 390, 694
Bates, R.B., 151, 589, 702, 1033
Batich, C., 58, 1115
Batog, A.E., 735
Batrak, T.A., 735
Batrakov, S.G., 1099
Batsanov, S.S., 13
Batskus, P.F., 894
Batt, L., 168, 194
Battioni, J., 716
Battiste, M.A., 276, 277, 281, 677
Batts, B.D., 328, 467
Batty, J.W., 689
Bauder, A., 46, 1070
Baudouy, R., 407
Baudry, D., 974
Bauer, D.P., 1082
Bauer, L., 671, 985
Bauer, M., 343, 864
Bauer, P., 434, 817, 951
Bauer, S.H., 133
Baughman, E.H., 224
Bauld, N.L., 51, 597, 1069
Baum, A.A., 1042
Baum, J.S., 49
Baum, K., 312, 574
Baumann, H., 59
Baumann, M.E., 963
Baume, E., 598
Baumgarten, E., 448
Baumgarten, H.E., 379, 982, 983
Baumgarten, R.J., 312, 354, 907, 910, 1083
Baumstark, A.L., 408, 1112
Bauslaugh, P.G., 764
Bautista, R.G., 124
Bavry, R.H., 728
Baxter, A.G.W., 966
Baxter, C.A.R., 108
Baxter, H.N., III, 619
Baxter, S.L., 652, 1100
Bay, E., 1042
Bayer, R.P., 1086
Bayles, J.W., 236

Bayless, J., 911
Bayless, J.H., 285, 911
Bayley, H., 1106
Baylouny, R.A., 900, 1017
Bayne, W.F., 880
Bazanova, G.V., 469
Baze, M.E., 137, 761
Bazikian, C.M., 340
Beadle, J.R., 570, 641
Beagley, B., 123
Beak, P., 69, 154, 262, 424, 538, 545, 553, 780
Beal, D.A., 495, 1080
Beale, J.H., 310
Beale, W.J., 526
Beam, C.F., 833
Beames, D.J., 713
Bear, J.L., 308
Beard, C., 503
Beard, C.D., 312
Beard, J., 759
Beard, R.D., 545
Beard, W.Q., 605
Beasley, G.H., 1024
Beasley, J.G., 856
Beaton, J.M., 1045
Beatty, H.R., 592
Beauchamp, J.L., 148, 234, 235, 272, 282, 1039
Beaufays, F., 341
Beaulieu, P.L., 391, 713
Beaupère, D., 1084
Bebb, R.L., 545
Bechara, E.J.H., 1112
Becher, G., 109
Beck, A.K., 436, 836
Beck, B.R., 133, 924
Beck, J.R., 587
Beck, S.M., 500
Becke, F., 788
Becker, A., 264
Becker, A.R., 573
Becker, E.I., 44, 510, 930
Becker, H., 440, 510, 1063
Becker, H.D., 1053
Becker, H.G.O., 603
Becker, J., 845
Becker, J.Y., 46
Becker, K.B., 138, 654, 663, 852, 926
Becker, L.W., 304
Becker, N., 735
Becker, P.N., 740
Becker, R.H., 993
Becker, W.E., 159
Becker, Y., 918
Beckhaus, H., 166, 249, 837
Beckler, J.D., 558
Beckley, R.S., 1040
Beckman, J.A., 877
Beckmann, W., 429
Beckwith, A.L.J., 370, 371, 372, 375, 510, 616, 647, 674, 788, 860, 955, 957, 983, 986, 988, 1044, 1074, 1078
Bedenbaugh, A.O., 275, 397
Bedenbaugh, J.H., 397
Bedford, A.F., 23
Bee, L.K., 941
Beebe, T.R., 1063
Beeby, J., 941
Beeby, P.J., 62
Beech, W.F., 649
Beers, M.J., 620
Beg, M.A., 736
Beger, J., 861
Beggs, J.J., 945
Bégué, J., 302, 434, 974, 1055
Behbahany, F., 516
Behr, L.C., 1047
Behrens, C.H., 325
Behrman, E.J., 310, 629
Beiner, J.M., 866
Beirich, C., 818
Bekárek, V., 320
Bel'chikova, F.A., 603
Belec, C.A., 274
Belen'kii, L.I., 134, 135, 240, 387, 495
Beletskaya, I.P., 151, 155, 219, 263, 308, 322, 325, 403, 404, 415, 433, 512, 520, 521, 522, 552, 561, 577, 583, 595, 651, 652, 1074
Belevskii, V.N., 163
Belew, J.S., 1066
Belf, L.J., 382, 593
Belikov, V.M., 106, 108
Belin, B., 366, 796
Belinka, B.A., Jr., 554
Belke, C.J., 352
Belkin, Yu. V., 36
Bell, A., 759, 798
Bell, F., 461
Bell, H.C., 644
Bell, H.M., 390, 391
Bell, J.A., 172, 542, 544, 769
Bell, K., 331
Bell, N.A., 158
Bell, R.A., 1101
Bell, R.P., 197, 199, 218, 222, 226, 229, 527, 530, 660, 783, 784
Bellassoued, M., 823
Bellatti, M., 645
Belleau, B., 372
Belli, A., 636
Belloli, R., 41, 86, 176
Bellucci, G., 663
Belluš, D., 500, 866, 1024
Belmont, J.A., 722
Belmonte, F.G., 702
Belokurova, A.P., 510
Belov, B.I., 472, 570, 646
Belsner, K., 386
Beltrame, P., 296, 743, 744, 745, 758, 888
Belyaev, E.Yu., 502
Belyaev, V.A., 633
Bemis, A.G., 634
Benaim, J., 542
Bencze, L., 1039
Bendall, V.I., 938
Bender, C.F., 171
Bender, D.D., 643
Bender, M.L., 190, 199, 226, 290, 292, 293, 294, 310, 333, 337, 338–341, 371, 1083
Bender, R., 575
Bendig, J., 1013
Benedetti, E., 222
Benedetti, F., 185
Benedict, D.A., 342
Ben-Efraim, D.A., 59, 109, 429, 901, 915, 1038, 1115
Beneš, M.J., 429
Benfey, O.T., 260
Bengtsson, S., 885
Benjamin, B.M., 314, 352, 946, 952, 955, 960, 967
Benjaminov, B.S., 314, 952
Benkeser, R.A., 546, 558, 565, 693, 702, 1099, 1102
Benkovic, P.A., 802
Benkovic, S.J., 802
Benn, F.R., 711
Bennett, G.B., 433, 1028
Bennett, J.N., 745
Bennett, M., 700
Bennett, M.A., 75, 138, 788

Bennett, M.J., 276, 811
Bennett, R.G., 212
Bennett, R.P., 472, 575
Bennett, S.G., 650
Benning, W.F., 805
Benoit, R.L., 234
Ben-Shoshan, G., 621
Ben-Shoshan, R., 679
Bensoam, J., 809
Benson, H., 676
Benson, R.E., 56, 169
Benson, S.W., 21, 172, 668
Benson, W.R., 1013
Bent, H.A., 6, 18, 76
Bentley, K.W., 906, 1063
Bentley, M.D., 75, 280
Bentley, T.W., 266, 290, 316, 317, 318, 320, 1002
Benton, F.L., 1066
Bentor, Y., 506
Bentrude, W.G., 166, 613
Ben-Yakov, H., 383
Benzon, M.S., 1023
Beránek, L., 903
Bercaw, J.E., 775
Bérces, T., 213
Berchtold, G.A., 759
Berdahl, J.M., 1074
Berdnikov, V.M., 640
Berecoechea, J., 861
Berezin, G.H., 131
Berezovskii, G.A., 510
Berezovskii, V.M., 461
Bergbreiter, D.E., 401, 419, 426, 433, 515, 707
Bergel'son, L.D., 845, 850, 1099
Berger, C.R.A., 1097
Berger, J.G., 175, 543
Berger, K.R., 538
Berger, M., 1066
Berger, R., 54, 144
Bergeron, R., 378, 445
Bergin, W.A., 397
Berglund-Larsson, U., 449
Bergman, E., 772
Bergman, R.G., 167, 297, 740, 775, 952, 960, 966, 1027
Bergmann, E.D., 37, 385, 656, 711
Bergmann, K., 1097
Bergon, M., 338
Bergson, G., 107, 525
Bergstrom, R.G., 329, 331, 580
Beringer, F.M., 1097
Berix, J.W.M., 740
Berkheimer, H.E., 147, 224
Berkoff, C.E., 569
Berkovitch-Yellin, Z., 107
Berkowitz, J., 158
Berkowitz, L.M., 1080
Berkowitz, W.F., 982
Berlan, J., 716
Berlin, A.J., 125
Berlin, K.D., 825
Berliner, E., 244, 447, 461, 477, 584, 671, 672
Berlo, R.C., 694, 1103
Berman, D.W., 272
Berman, J.D., 656
Bernadou, F., 429, 901
Bernard, D., 400, 434
Bernard, H.W., 172
Bernard, M., 848
Bernardi, F., 123, 154
Bernardi, L., 858
Bernardi, R., 621, 646
Bernasconi, C.F., 576, 578, 662, 682
Bernath, T., 637
Berndt, A., 672, 837, 885
Berneis, H.L., 894
Berner, D., 313, 963
Bernett, W.A., 130
Bernhardt, J.C., 403, 433, 652, 723
Bernheim, M., 553
Bernheim, R.A., 172
Bernheimer, R., 279
Berninger, R.W., 508
Bernstein, H.I., 946
Bernstein, M.D., 799
Bernstein, R.B., 883
Bernstein, S., 1054
Bernstein, W.J., 91, 104
Beronius, P., 268
Berrier, A.L., 276, 283, 931
Berrigan, P.J., 325
Berry, J.M., 552
Berry, R.S., 29, 581
Bersohn, R., 162
Berson, J.A., 109, 751, 755, 951, 952, 959, 960, 966, 1019, 1021, 1023
Bertelli, D.J., 43, 44, 46
Bertelson, R.C., 138
Berther, C., 1086
Berthier, G., 26
Berthon, B., 1084
Berti, G., 332, 343, 663, 676, 735, 843, 864
Bertie, J.E., 51
Bertin, J., 622
Bertini, F., 559, 621, 646, 818, 826
Bertrand, J.A., 963
Bertrand, M., 759, 761, 770
Bertsch, H., 901
Bertsch, R.J., 390
Bertz, S.H., 401
Berwin, H.J., 467
Besozzi, D., 390
Bespalova, N.B., 1037
Bessette, F., 795
Best, D.C., 278, 280
Best, P.A., 1065
Bestian, H., 869
Bestmann, H.J., 91, 774, 845–850, 853, 934, 974
Bethea, T.W., III, 1074
Bethell, D., 141, 147, 163, 170, 171, 199, 272, 344, 542, 543, 544, 768, 1091
Betkouski, M., 215
Betteridge, D., 10, 11
Bettess, P.D., 16
Bettoni, G., 1081
Betts, J., 633
Betz, W., 1026
Beug, M., 450
Beugelmans, R., 596
Beumel, O.F., Jr., 429, 813, 838
Beutler, M., 722
Bevan, C.W.L., 333
Beverwijk, C.D.M., 75
Bevington, J.C., 862
Beyermann, M., 1013
Beyler, R.E., 1057
Bezman, S.A., 766
Bezrodnyi, V.P., 443
Bhacca, N.S., 1042
Bhagwat, M.M., 696
Bhalerao, U.T., 627, 986
Bhandari, K., 1073
Bhanu, S., 429
Bhat, N.G., 999
Bhatnagar, A.K., 1055
Bhatnagar, S.P., 785, 857
Bhatt, M.V., 384, 385, 917, 1077, 1081

Bhattacharya, S.N., 550
Bhatti, A.M., 569
Biale, G., 887, 888
Bianchi, G., 743
Bianchi, M., 432, 720, 722
Bianchi, R., 56
Bianchi, T.A., 342, 445
Bianchini, J., 675
Bickart, P., 1034
Bickel, A.F., 523, 634
Bickelhaupt, F., 139, 160, 304, 558, 559, 560, 715, 770
Bida, G., 1060
Bieber, J.B., 995
Bieber, W., 362
Bieberbach, A., 56
Biechler, S.S., 339
Biehler, J., 989
Biellmann, J.F., 406, 414, 423, 526, 545, 692, 698, 699, 911, 1033
Bielski, B.H.J., 162
Bielski, R., 919
Biemann, K., 442
Bienvenue-Goetz, E., 661
Bierbaum, V.M., 310, 904
Bierenbaum, R.E., 137
Bieri, J.H., 771
Bierling, B., 1054
Biermann, D., 747
Bieron, J.F., 503, 933
Biethan, U., 133, 1026
Biffin, M.E.C., 380, 602, 691, 729
Bigam, G., 55
Bigeleisen, J., 197
Biggs, I.D., 502
Biggs, J., 326
Bigham, E., 1085
Bigham, E.C., 552
Bigler, P., 861
Bigley, D.B., 563, 564, 863, 1096
Bijvoet, J.M., 95
Bilevitch, K.A., 169, 262, 560
Bilke, H., 662
Biller, S.A., 739
Billet, J., 821
Billingham, N.C., 656
Billmers, J.M., 1089
Billups, W.E., 136, 191, 621, 622, 678, 990, 1021
Biloski, A.J., 1086
Bingel, W.A., 20
Binger, P., 550, 766
Bingham, E.M., 529
Bingham, R.C., 111, 167, 263, 300, 616, 961
Bingham, T.E., 984
Binkley, R.W., 1026
Binsch, G., 129, 196, 761
Binshtok, E.V., 849
Biordi, J., 342
Biranowski, J.B., 740
Birch, A.J., 569, 692, 693, 699, 700, 701
Birchall, J.M., 504, 543
Birckenbach, L., 730
Bird, C.N., 898, 905
Bird, C.W., 526, 655, 692, 720, 721, 722, 774, 776, 877, 1084
Bird, J.W., 785
Bird, P.H., 766
Bird, R., 417, 420, 1091
Biresaw, G., 773
Birke, A., 1096
Birmingham, J.M., 557
Birnbaum, G., 15
Birtwistle, J.S., 104
Birum, G.H., 849
Bischof, P., 46, 131
Bishop, C.A., 887
Bishop, C.E., 940, 941, 1070
Bishop, K.C., III, 1039
Bishop, R.D., 902
Bishop, R.J., 27
Bishop, S.W., 646
Biskup, M., 56, 58, 716
Bisling, M., 921
Biss, J.W., 816
Bissell, E.R., 725
Bissing, D.E., 849
Bittler, K., 721
Bittner, S., 351, 985
Bjorklund, C., 569
Björklund, G., 598
Björkman, E.E., 739
Black, C.J., 532
Black, D.S., 743, 1031, 1083
Black, T.H., 936
Blackburn, E.V., 396, 613, 1012
Blackburn, G.M., 375, 376, 1033
Blackburne, I.D., 21
Blacklock, T.J., 1020, 1024
Blackman, N.A., 1083
Blackman, S.W., 368
Blackwell, J., 392
Blackwell, L.F., 886, 887
Blackwood, R.K., 324
Bladé-Font, A., 372, 849
Blagoev, B., 421, 545
Bláha, K., 540
Blair, K.W., 930
Blair, L.K., 223, 235
Blais, C., 653
Blake, M.R., 468
Blake, P., 675
Blake, P.G., 687
Blanchard, E.J., 371
Blanchard, E.P., 767, 772, 773
Blanchard, M., 442, 1038
Blanco, L., 531
Blandamer, M.J., 197, 260, 266
Blankert, J.F., 405
Blanzat, J., 115
Blarer, S.J., 712
Blaschke, G., 106, 140
Blaszczak, L., 407
Blaszczak, L.C., 1074
Blatcher, P., 837
Blatter, H.M., 807
Blažević, N., 366, 796
Bleeke, J.R., 700
Bleicher, W., 1097
Bleisch, S., 794
Blindheim, U., 710
Bliss, A.D., 928
Bloch, M., 647
Bloch, R., 46
Block, E., 36, 154, 270, 418, 606, 652, 864, 912, 919, 922, 1089, 1092, 1108
Block, P., Jr., 806
Blomberg, C., 104, 139, 159, 160, 559, 560, 817, 820, 821
Blomquist, A.T., 92, 137, 857, 924, 954
Bloodworth, A.J., 685, 737
Bloomfield, J.J., 435, 438, 764, 854, 1102, 1113, 1114
Blount, J.F., 92
Blucher, W.G., 468
Blues, E.T., 392
Bluhm, A.L., 1066
Bluhm, H.J., 1053
Blukis, V., 19
Blum, J., 380, 408, 510, 656, 694, 933, 964
Blum, L., 646

Blum, S., 866, 1112
Blume, E., 840
Blume, R.C., 348
Blunt, J.W., 695
Bly, R.K., 275
Bly, R.S., 275, 958
Blyumberg, E.A., 629, 736
Boand, G., 235
Boar, R.B., 394, 395
Bobbitt, J.M., 1066
Bocharov, B.V., 934
Boche, G., 56, 553, 745, 1011
Bocher, S., 297
Bock, H., 10, 472
Bock, M.G., 901
Bock, P.L., 515
Bockrath, B., 153
Bodansky, M., 372
Bode, K., 792
Boden, H., 430
Boden, R.M., 850
Bodewitz, H.W.H.J., 560
Bodrikov, I.V., 661, 793
Boeckman, R.K., Jr., 417, 677, 694, 719, 834, 1082
Boehm, P., 396
Boekelheide, V., 57, 59, 62, 200, 422, 904
Boelens, H., 911
Boelhouwer, C., 399, 1038
Boer, F.P., 147, 487
Boerner, D., 290
Boersma, J., 823
Boersma, M.A.M., 1019
Boerth, D.W., 223
Boerwinkle, F., 661, 726, 730
Boettcher, R.J., 1042
Boev, V.I., 543
Bogatkov, S.V., 294, 347
Bogavac, M., 686
Bogdanov, G.N., 969
Bogdanov, V.S., 666
Bogdanova, A.V., 684
Bogdanović, B., 693, 707, 710
Boger, D.L., 715, 747
Boggs, J.E., 119
Boggs, R.A., 215, 409
Bogseth, R.C., 330
Boguslavskaya, L.S., 639, 726, 809
Böhle, C., 45
Bohlmann, F., 205, 320, 509
Bohm, B.A., 667
Böhm, H.P., 559
Böhm, M., 635
Bohme, D.K., 223, 234, 235, 308, 309
Böhme, H., 785
Böhmer, V., 510
Bois-Choussy, M., 596
Boldrini, G.P., 694
Boldt, P., 414, 675, 742
Bolesov, I.G., 768, 1022
Bolestova, G.I., 403, 699
Bolhofer, W.A., 378
Böll, W., 847
Böll, W.A., 56, 938
Bollinger, F.W., 534
Bollinger, J.M., 50, 139, 145, 146, 271, 775, 1009
Bollyky, L., 913
Bolon, D.A., 275
Bolster, J.M., 137
Bolton, J.R., 162
Bolton, P.D., 229, 236
Bolton, R., 611, 657
Bolze, C., 575
Bolze, R., 672
Bomben, K.D., 235
Bommer, P., 108
Bonačić-Koutecký, V., 133
Bonazza, B.R., 271, 312
Bonazzola, L., 166
Bond, F.T., 676, 911
Bond, G.C., 697
Bonde, S.E., 402
Bondybey, V.E., 699
Bonetti, G.A., 739
Bongini, A., 818
Bonham, R.A., 18
Bonhoeffer, K.F., 1119
Boniardi, O., 1077
Bonitz, G.H., 802
Bonneau, R., 137
Bonner, O.D., 783
Bonner, R.M., 392
Bonner, W.A., 653, 950, 957
Bonnett, R., 797, 1046, 1135
Bonnier, J., 617
Bonnier, J.M., 642
Bonnin, J.P., 487
Bonser, S.M., 114
Bonthrone, W., 1060
Bonvino, V., 480
Bonzougou, Y., 334, 434
Booms, R.E., 443
Boone, A.W., 199
Boone, J.R., 810, 812
Boord, C.E., 130
Booth, B.L., 432, 497
Booth, H., 126, 890
Booth, W.T., Jr., 434
Boothe, T.E., 899
Boozer, C.E., 287
Bopp, R.J., 271
Bor, G., 722
Borch, R.F., 146, 793, 799, 800, 815, 828, 844, 1099
Borchardt, J.K., 880
Borchert, A.E., 1020
Borchert, E.E., 478
Borčić, S., 275
Borden, G.W., 1003
Borden, W.T., 3, 51, 154, 167, 171, 289, 695, 1019, 1087
Bordwell, F.G., 43, 152, 157, 175, 222, 223, 227, 247, 266, 289, 302, 303, 307, 308, 740, 874, 884, 885, 886, 888, 897, 921, 922, 971, 1108
Borgardt, F.G., 739
Borgulya, J., 1028
Borgwardt, S., 308, 412
Borisov, A.E., 156
Borisov, A.V., 661
Borkowski, M., 241
Borodkin, G.I., 944, 945
Borredon, E., 865
Bos, H., 353
Bos, H.J.T., 683, 794, 859, 1031
Bos, W., 416
Bosc, J., 409
Bosch, A., 1045
Bosch, H.W., 86
Bosch, R.J., 172, 387
Boschetto, D.J., 515
Boschung, A.F., 1097
Bosco, M., 716
Bose, A.K., 380, 414
Bosin, T.R., 510
Bosma, R.H.A., 1038
Bosnich, B., 104, 693
Bosold, F., 553
Bosshard, H., 963
Boswell, C.J., 297
Boswell, G.A., Jr., 383, 808
Botelho, A.D., 314
Bothner-By, A.A., 59, 978
Bott, K., 313, 709, 722
Bott, R.W., 450

Botta, M., 367
Bottaccio, G., 842
Botteghi, C., 403, 722
Botteron, D.G., 900
Bottini, A.T., 137, 298, 364, 588, 927
Bottino, F.A., 1112
Bottle, R.T., 1121
Botto, R.E., 283
Bouas-Laurent, H., 430
Bouchoule, C., 442
Boudakian, M.M., 295, 298
Boudet, B., 596
Boudjouk, P., 399, 510, 823
Boué, S., 521
Bouillon, G., 357
Bouis, P.A., 143, 149
Boulette, B., 1089
Boulton, A.J., 395
Bourbier, J., 1059
Bourcier, S., 95
Bourdelande, J.L., 737
Bourgain, M., 410, 429
Bourgois, J., 298
Bourhis, M., 409
Bourn, A.J.R., 125
Bourns, A.N., 199, 578, 886, 906
Boussu, M., 434
Boustany, K.S., 1092
Boutagy, J., 848
Boutigue, M., 799
Bovenkamp, J.W., 980
Bovey, F.A., 125
Bowden, K., 16, 223, 225, 666, 1057
Bowen, C.T., 266, 317
Bower, T.R., 659
Bowers, A., 725, 1057
Bowers, C.W., 77
Bowers, J.E., 977
Bowers, J.R., Jr., 821
Bowers, J.S., Jr., 821
Bowers, K.W., 701
Bowers, M.T., 234, 235
Bowles, A.J., 613
Bowlin, H.B., 1019
Bowlus, S.B., 838
Bowman, N.S., 707, 967
Bowman, W.R., 415
Bowne, A.T., 759
Boyd, D.R., 87, 102, 1026
Boyd, R.H., 222, 224, 662
Boyd, S.D., 415, 923
Boyer, B., 810
Boyer, J., 810, 1101
Boyer, J.H., 573, 691, 983, 1087
Boyer, R.F., 1018
Boyle, P.H., 104, 105
Boyle, W.J., Jr., 227, 662
Boynton, W.A., 297
Braca, G., 720
Brachel, H. von, 711
Brackman, W., 648
Bradamante, S., 43
Bradbury, D., 511
Braddon, D.V., 280
Bradley, A., 627
Bradley, J., 644
Bradley, J.N., 175
Bradley, W.A., 266
Bradshaw, J.S., 77, 105, 590, 652, 794, 1100
Bradshaw, R.W., 377
Bradsher, C.K., 434, 494, 560, 751
Brady, D.G., 666
Brady, J.D., 451
Brady, W.T., 685, 759, 761, 762, 869
Braendlin, H.P., 476
Braga, A.L., 361
Bragin, J., 133
Bragole, R.A., 1022
Braig, W., 404
Braillon, B., 796
Braitsch, D.M., 598
Bram, G., 308, 325, 353, 915
Branca, J.C., 223
Branca, S.J., 133
Brand, J.C.D., 207
Brand, M., 725
Brand, W.W., 607
Brandänge, S., 391
Brandenberger, S.G., 505, 1072
Brandl, A., 699
Brandon, R.W., 170
Brandsma, L., 290, 362, 414, 683, 1031
Brändström, A., 320
Brandt, S., 773
Brannen, W.T., Jr., 302
Brannock, K.C., 417, 759, 798
Brant, J.B., 631
Branton, G.R., 1009, 1020
Brase, D., 1085
Brasen, W.R., 1091
Brassel, B., 1019
Bratolyubov, A.S., 622
Bratt, L., 340
Braude, E.A., 156, 1053
Brault, J., 795
Brauman, J.I., 63, 219, 223, 235, 258, 308, 309, 310, 430, 483, 627, 694, 722
Braun, A., 729
Braun, H., 865
Braun, M., 833
Braun, W., 172
Braunstein, D.M., 1105
Braunstein, P., 575
Braverman, S., 1034
Bray, L.E., 515
Breaux, E.J., 211
Brechbiel, M., 615, 858, 909, 1035, 1036
Brechbühler, H., 354
Brede, O., 685
Breder, C.V., 477
Breger, I.K., 891
Bregman, J., 57, 59
Breitbeil, F.W., 677
Bremner, J.B., 764
Brener, L., 704, 766, 1025
Brenner, S., 702
Brenner, W., 776
Breslow, D.S., 722
Breslow, R., 43, 49–54, 223, 458, 860, 965, 966, 973, 1010, 1020, 1055, 1056, 1078, 1079
Bresson, A., 727
Brett, D., 430
Brettle, R., 1091
Brettschneider, H., 165
Breuer, E., 553, 920
Breuer, S.W., 651
Breuker, K., 21
Brewer, R.G., 22
Brewster, A.G., 1058, 1061
Brewster, J.H., 86, 98, 99, 993
Bribes, J.L., 148, 285
Brickman, M., 456
Bridges, A.J., 749
Bridson, J.N., 428, 531, 828
Brieger, G., 325, 695, 745, 903, 1097
Briegleb, G., 75, 76
Brienne, M., 106
Brienne, M.J., 95
Brier, P.N., 121

Briggs, A.J., 294
Briggs, E.M., 379
Briggs, J.P., 235
Briggs, N.H., 477
Briggs, W.S., 897
Bright, G.M., 61
Brilkina, T.G., 548, 549
Brill, W.F., 301
Brilmyer, G., 1079
Brindell, G.D., 956
Brindle, J.R., 1103, 1105
Bringmann, G., 396
Brini, M., 385, 638
Brinich, J.M., 271
Brinkman, M.R., 163
Briody, J.M., 687, 690
Briody, R.G., 264, 265
Britelli, D., 61
Brittain, J.M., 477
Brittain, T.J., 637
Britten, A.Z., 541
Britten-Kelly, M.R., 941
Britton, G.H., Jr., 878
Brixius, D.W., 1074
Brizzolara, A., 540, 541
Broadbent, H.S., 838
Broaddus, C.D., 524, 545
Broadhurst, A.T., 521
Broadhurst, M.J., 59
Broch, N.C., 485
Brockington, J.W., 899
Brockington, R., 143
Brockmann, H., Jr., 103
Brocksom, T.J., 536, 1030, 1058, 1091
Brockway, N.M., 172
Brod, A.O., 354
Brod, L.H., 331
Brodhag, A.E., 1091
Brodie, B.B., 628
Broekhof, N.L.J.M., 848
Brois, S.J., 87
Brokaw, M.L., 223
Broline, B.M., 987, 1019
Bromilow, J., 247
Bromley, D., 476, 654
Brook, A.G., 9
Brook, M.A., 350, 629, 789
Brook, P.R., 759, 761, 762, 1019
Brookhart, M., 274, 275, 277
Brooks, D.W., 57, 833
Broquet, C., 848
Broster, F.A., 651
Brouwer, D.M., 142, 222, 448, 523, 945, 948, 949, 954
Brower, H.E., 887
Brower, K.R., 887
Brown, B.B., 602
Brown, C., 282
Brown, C.A., 439, 525, 692, 693, 707, 714, 810, 914
Brown, C.K., 722
Brown, D.E., 123
Brown, D.F., 899
Brown, D.J., 692, 759
Brown, D.W., 869
Brown, E., 355
Brown, E.S., 723, 724
Brown, E.V., 1119
Brown, F.J., 266
Brown, G.L., 1058
Brown, G.R., 1107
Brown, G.W., 379, 382
Brown, H.C., 107, 142, 149, 200, 223, 233, 240, 241, 243, 244, 274, 275, 278–282, 284, 304, 390, 391, 393, 394, 396, 397, 398, 403, 426, 427, 428, 451, 452, 458, 462, 464, 479, 482, 483, 505, 510, 515, 548–553, 625, 650, 651, 676, 681, 682, 685, 693, 694, 695, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 717, 718, 725, 730, 809–812, 815, 816, 817, 861, 877, 891, 893, 894, 917, 956, 980, 981, 996–1001, 1057, 1085, 1093, 1096, 1099, 1101, 1110
Brown, H.L., 712
Brown, J., 53
Brown, J.E., 993, 1034
Brown, J.M., 59, 155, 1009, 1022
Brown, K.C., 733
Brown, L.R., 983
Brown, M., 904
Brown, M.D., 157
Brown, M.G., 29
Brown, M.S., 1101
Brown, R., 925
Brown, R.A., 787
Brown, R.D., 48
Brown, R.K., 394, 1033
Brown, R.S., 52, 234
Brown, R.W., 1058
Brown, S.B., 78
Brown, T.H., 496
Brown, T.L., 157, 158
Brown, W.G., 694, 809
Brownbridge, P., 547, 950
Browne, A.R., 46
Brownell, R., 1060
Brownlee, R.T.C., 235, 246, 247
Brownlee, T.H., 890
Brownlie, G., 961
Brownridge, J.R., 733
Brownstein, S., 487, 501
Broxton, T.J., 338, 647, 888
Bruce, M.I., 44, 75, 1136
Bruck, D., 146, 450
Bruck, P., 390
Bruckenstein, S., 219, 223
Brückner, S., 87
Bruckner, V., 241
Brügge, H.J., 78
Brugger, W., 442
Bruggink, A., 596
Bruice, P.Y., 527, 528
Bruice, T.C., 116, 292, 293, 294, 310, 338, 375, 527
Brun, C., 751
Brun, P., 772, 1045
Brundle, C.R., 10, 11
Brune, H.A., 1002
Brunelle, D.J., 349, 401, 409, 713
Bruner, H.S., 792
Bruner, L.B., 554
Brunet, J., 298, 390, 597, 692, 694
Brunie, J., 527
Brunner, H., 165, 693
Bruno, F., 654
Bruno, J.J., 695
Brunsvold, W.R., 57
Brüntrup, G., 832, 928, 929
Brus, L.E., 500
Brusova, G.P., 980
Bruylants, A., 619, 785
Bruza, K.J., 719
Bryan, C.J., 478
Bryan, R.F., 135
Bryce, M.R., 580, 746
Bryce-Smith, D., 392, 404, 483, 546, 599, 1009

Bryker, W.J., 603
Brylikowska-Piotrowicz, J., 379
Bryson, T.A., 423, 802
Brzezinski, J.Z., 313
Bublitz, D.E., 44, 460, 557, 1100
Bubnov, N.N., 262
Bubnov, Yu.N., 817
Buchanan, D.H., 515
Buchanan, D.N., 756
Buchanan, G.L., 138, 564, 712
Buchanan, G.W., 55, 126
Buchanan, J.G., 325
Buchanan, J.G.S., 694, 1097
Buchardt, O., 91, 104
Buchecker, C., 938
Büchi, G., 346, 765, 995, 1077
Büchi, H., 354
Buchman, O., 408, 964
Büchner, W., 569, 694
Buchneva, L.M., 244
Buchwald, G., 635
Buck, C.J., 954
Buck, H.M., 207, 277, 405
Buck, J.S., 859
Buck, P., 576, 915, 924, 978
Buckingham, A.D., 99
Buckingham, J., 95, 804
Buckl, K., 1011
Buckles, R.E., 661, 724, 1091
Buckley, N.C., 684
Buckley, P., 123
Buckley, P.D., 887
Buckley, T.F., 485, 1083
Buckpitt, A.R., 510
Buckwalter, B., 414
Buckwalter, B.L., 408
Buddenbaum, W.E., 200
Buddrus, J., 790
Budnik, R.A., 736
Budzikiewicz, H., 817
Buehler, C.A., 457, 476, 485, 498
Buehler, E., 359
Buehler, N.E., 1042
Buenker, R.J., 207
Buess, C.M., 41
Bugaenko, L.T., 163
Bühl, H., 137
Bühler, J.D., 820, 821
Buhler, R.E, 619
Buisson, P., 692
Buist, G.J., 1064
Bui-The-Khai, 367, 368
Bulbulian, R.V., 506
Bulgarevich, S.B., 228
Bull, H.G., 329
Bulthuis, J., 123
Bumagin, N.A., 433, 595, 652
Bumgardner, C.L., 395, 605
Bunce, N.J., 621, 655, 1047
Buncel, E., 151, 153, 155, 175, 223, 310, 316, 563, 576, 1035, 1047
Bunch, B., 286
Bundel', Yu.G., 662, 949, 951, 953
Bunes, L., 387
Bunina-Krivorukova, L.I., 1030
Bunnett, J.F., 190, 195, 197, 225, 252, 264, 304, 375, 376, 478, 507, 510, 568, 576, 577, 578, 580, 581, 583, 585, 587, 590, 591, 592, 594, 596, 604, 607, 647, 874, 882, 886, 887, 888, 890, 891, 893
Bunton, C.A., 201, 255, 261, 264, 318, 328, 341, 501, 736, 1036, 1063, 1064
Bunyan, P.J., 1116
Bünzli, J., 59
Burawoy, A., 73
Burch, R.R., 696
Burckhardt, U., 582, 927
Burden, F.R., 48
Burdge, D.N., 653
Burditt, A.M., 191, 863
Burdon, J., 620
Burdon, M.G., 496
Burfield, D.R., 633
Burfitt, I.R., 408
Burgard, A., 982
Burger, G., 106
Burger, T.F., 909
Burger, U., 753, 770, 1027
Burgess, E.M., 367, 744
Burgess, J., 197, 260
Burgess, J.R., 924
Burghard, H., 1112
Burgmaier, G., 134
Burgmaster, J., 509
Burgoyne, W., 390, 394
Burgstahler, A.W., 396, 397
Burham, R.L., 724
Burk, P.L., 766
Burka, L.T., 956
Burke, J.J., 222
Burke, M.C., 545
Burke, S.D., 543, 768, 1030
Burkert, U., 139
Burkett, A.R., 837
Burkett, H., 506
Bürkle, W., 106, 109
Burkoth, T.L., 55
Burkus, T., 440
Burlingame, A.L., 529
Burlingame, T.G., 117
Burlitch, J.M., 769
Burmeister, J.L., 692
Burn, D., 539
Burnett, E., 802
Burns, T.P., 560
Burpitt, R.D., 761, 798
Burri, P., 579, 642
Burrous, M.L., 702
Burrows, C.J., 1030
Burrows, E.P., 1086
Burrows, H.D., 294
Bürstinghaus, R., 714, 837
Burt, R.A., 331
Burton, D.J., 172, 389, 847, 1008
Burton, P.E., 954
Burwell, R.L., Jr., 696, 697, 814
Busch, D.H., 78
Busch, P., 940, 941
Buschhoff, M., 544
Buschmann, E., 417
Buschmeyer, P., 1038
Bush, J.B., Jr., 742
Bushaw, B.A., 891
Bushby, R.J., 525
Bushell, A.W., 960
Bushman, D.G., 887
Bushweller, C.H., 119, 124, 125, 128
Buss, A.D., 850
Buss, D.R., 104
Buss, E., 727
Buss, V., 141, 146, 148, 702
Bussell, G.E., 190
Büssemeier, B., 776
Bussman, W., 105
Buswell, R.L., 891, 911
Butcher, S.S., 123
Buteiko, Zh.F., 404
Buter, J., 941
Butin, K.P., 151, 219, 522
Butler, A.B., 467

Butler, A.R., 16, 334, 370, 375, 478, 570, 1086
Butler, D.N., 672, 695
Butler, J.R., 591
Butler, R., 478
Butler, R.N., 146, 547, 571, 631, 636, 681, 785, 988
Butskus, P.F., 746
Butte, W.A., 545
Buttenberg, W., 978
Buttery, R.G., 174
Buu-Hoï, N.P., 511
Buvet, R., 1086
Buxton, M.W., 382, 593
Buys, H.R., 124, 128
Buza, M., 725
Buzás, A., 863
Buzbee, L.R., 588
Buzzolini, M.G., 1040
Byerley, J.J., 575
Byers, G.W., 941
Byk, S.Sh., 80
Bykhovskaya, M.Sh., 665
Byrd, L.R., 675
Byrne, M.P., 77
Byström, S.E., 739

Cabaret, D., 822
Cacace, F., 479, 593
Cacchi, S., 398, 715, 716, 788, 856, 1098
Cadena, R., 1083
Cadiot, P., 639, 640, 1038
Cadogan, J.I.G., 641, 646, 648, 666, 719, 768, 771, 845, 1116
Cady, G.H., 80
Cafferata, L.F.R., 300
Caglioti, L., 856, 1098, 1102
Cahiez, G., 400, 434, 552, 778
Cahn, R.S., 96
Caille, S.Y., 452
Cain, E.N., 275, 613, 1076
Cain, M.E., 361
Caine, D., 416, 420, 536, 546, 695, 832
Cainelli, G., 559, 818, 826, 837, 1057
Cairncross, A., 508, 598, 767
Cairns, T.L., 670, 763, 769, 772, 794
Cais, M., 75, 433, 695, 726
Calder, G.V., 223, 581
Calder, I.C., 57, 59, 61, 62
Calderbank, K.E., 42
Calderon, N., 1037, 1038, 1039
Caldin, E.F., 198
Caldwell, D., 120
Caldwell, D.J., 99
Caldwell, G., 299
Caldwell, R.A., 223, 764, 766
Calloway, N.O., 479
Calmon, J.P., 338
Calō, V., 362, 920
Calverley, M.J., 378
Calvert, J.G., 202, 206, 212, 213, 217, 1111
Calvert, R.L., 42
Calves, J., 143
Calvin, M., 91, 104
Calzada, J.G., 428
Camaggi, G., 1009
Camaioni, D.M., 498, 577, 629, 1060
Cambie, R.C., 478, 531, 654, 726, 728, 729, 730, 734, 1063
Cambillau, C., 325
Cameron, G.S., 526
Cameron, P.J., 1085
Cameron, R., 222
Camp, R.L., 736
Campagna, F., 933
Campaigne, E., 780, 793, 794
Campbell, A., 945
Campbell, B.N., Jr., 481
Campbell, D.H., 740
Campbell, D.S., 338
Campbell, G.A., 478
Campbell, J.B., Jr., 403, 651, 706
Campbell, J.D., 913
Campbell, J.R., 385, 590, 1071
Campbell, M.M., 726
Campbell, P., 458
Campbell, R.A., 737
Campbell, T.W., 863
Campos, P.J., 342, 353
Camps, F., 342
Camps, M., 686, 687
Canadell, E., 674
Canceill, J., 823
Candlin, J.P., 692, 1093
Cane, D.E., 413, 848
Canivet, P., 222
Cann, P.F., 884
Cannell, L.G., 766
Cannon, J.B., 723
Canonne, P., 820, 828
Cant, P.A.E., 763
Cantacuzène, J., 797
Cantello, B.C.C., 758, 1074
Cantone, A., 443
Cantow, H., 123
Cantrell, G.L., 479
Cantrell, T.S., 740
Cantu, A.A., 642
Capdevielle, P., 629
Čapka, M., 1105
Căplar, V., 693
Capobianco, A.M., 891
Capon, B., 67, 268, 293, 294, 331
Caporusso, A.M., 710
Capozzi, G., 661, 1087, 1092
Capparella, G., 696
Cappelli, F.P., 200
Capuano, L.A., 911
Caputo, J.A., 1071
Caputo, R., 385, 920
Capwell, R.J., 129
Caramella, P., 671, 744, 1021
Carballeira, N., 1042
Carbonara, G., 1081
Card, R.C., 1038
Cardani, S., 833
Cardellina, J.H.I., 923, 973
Cardillo, G., 837, 1057, 1083, 1086
Cardin, D.J., 1039
Cardinale, G., 1054
Caress, E.A., 891
Carey, E., 885
Carey, F.A., 102, 264, 282, 392, 920
Carey, J.G., 602
Cargill, R.L., 216, 765, 1003
Cargioli, J.D., 222
Cargle, V.H., 1021
Carhart, R.E., 101
Carles, J., 1070
Carless, H.A.J., 213, 868
Carlin, R.B., 1035
Carlsen, P.H.J., 1080
Carlsmith, L.A., 581, 584
Carlson, B.A., 997, 999
Carlson, G.R., 988
Carlson, R., 798
Carlson, R.M., 599, 923
Carlson, S.C., 396, 415
Carlson, T.A., 10
Carlsson, D.J., 622

Carlton, L., 710
Carlyle, D.W., 364
Carmack, M., 361
Carman, R.M., 383
Carmichael, G., 937
Carmody, M.J., 45, 763
Carnahan, E., 213
Carnahan, J.C., Jr., 147, 919
Caro, B., 810
Caron, G., 837
Caron, H., 820
Caronna, T., 645, 646
Carotti, A., 933
Carpenter, B.K., 51, 189, 1011, 1030
Carpenter, J.G.D., 21
Carpenter, T.C., 388
Carpino, L.A., 922
Carr, D.B., 715
Carr, M.D., 525, 526
Carr, R.V.C., 747
Carrasquillo, A., 990
Carreira, L.A., 129
Carretto, J., 318
Carrick, W.L., 967
Carrington, A., 162, 701
Carriuolo, J., 375
Carroll, F.I., 490
Carrothers, W.H., 815
Carruthers, W., 138, 412, 419, 692, 711, 745, 1043, 1057
Carson, A.S., 114
Carson, F.W., 1034
Carter, F.L., 49, 136
Carter, G.E., 290, 318
Carter, H.E., 843
Carter, J.C., 907
Carter, J.P., 424
Carter, J.V., 266
Carter, L.G., 424
Carter, P., 273
Carter, P.L., 869
Carter, R.E., 200
Carter, T.L., 659
Carter, T.P., Jr., 1067
Carter, W.L., 966
Cartledge, F.K., 512
Cartwright, W.F., 562
Caruso, T.C., 77
Carver, D.R., 583
Carver, J.R., 627
Casadevall, A., 266
Casadevall, E., 266
Casado, J., 571
Casagrande, F., 971
Casanova, J., 106, 129, 133, 338, 911, 931, 1076
Casapieri, P., 267
Case, R., 1011
Caserio, M.C., 290, 344, 675, 742, 763
Casey, C.J., 1038
Casey, C.P., 215, 409, 527, 651, 652, 716, 1039
Cashen, M.J., 331
Casini, G., 480, 933
Casiraghi, G., 490, 493
Casnati, G., 490, 493, 1108
Cason, J., 383, 433, 434, 823, 828
Caspar, M.L., 954
Caspi, E., 1071
Cassar, L., 432, 556, 595, 597, 766, 1039
Casselman, A.A., 980
Cassimatis, D., 487
Cassis, F.A., 483
Cast, J., 995
Castaldi, G., 971
Castañer, J., 165, 166, 477
Castedo, L., 1112
Castelhano, A.L., 166
Castle, L., 629
Castro, A., 571
Castro, B., 367, 559
Castro, B.R., 383
Castro, C.E., 390, 433, 595, 693
Castro, E.A., 803
Casy, A.F., 368
Catalane, D.B., 379
Cate, L.A., 342, 445
Catelani, G., 676
Catellani, M., 779
Cathcart, R.C., 980
Catsoulacos, P., 1105
Cattania, M.G., 296, 744
Catto, B.A., 993
Caubere, P., 298, 390, 586, 596, 597, 692, 694, 1052
Caughlan, C.N., 849
Cauquis, G., 76
Cava, M.P., 50, 938, 940
Cavalieri, E., 1068
Cavazza, M., 896
Cavé, A., 802, 1081
Caveng, P., 577
Cavin, W.P., 888
Cawley, J.J., 330
Cawse, J.N., 430
Cayzergues, P., 256
Cazes, B., 1033
Cazes, J., 617, 642
Cazianis, C.T., 970
Ceasar, G.P., 53
Ceccon, A., 267, 888
Cecere, M., 646, 728
Cedar, F.J., 811
Čeković, Ž., 631, 632, 1050, 1055
Cella, J.A., 408
Cellerino, G., 744
Cellura, R.P., 56, 770
Cenini, S., 1116
Cense, J.M., 962
Ceppi, E., 17
Ceré, V., 137, 1033
Cerefice, S.A., 767
Cerfontain, H., 222, 474, 475, 509, 607
Černý, M., 813, 1094, 1102, 1105
Černý, V., 392
Červinka, O., 540
Cesa, M.C., 716
Cessac, J., 51
Cessna, A.J., 948
Cetinkaya, B., 1039
Cevidalli, G., 1009
Cha, D.Y., 733
Cha, J.K., 460, 732
Chaabouni, R., 535
Chabaud, B., 590, 628
Chafetz, H., 538
Chaikin, S.W., 809
Chakrabarti, J.K., 930
Chakrabarti, P., 123
Chakrabartty, S.K., 567
Chakraborty, D.P., 492
Chakraborty, U.R., 1039
Chalfont, G.R., 644
Chalk, A.J., 643, 722
Challand, S.R., 177
Challis, B.C., 339, 341, 377, 379, 467, 470, 471, 570, 571, 572, 798, 1046, 1086, 1099
Challis, J.A., 339, 377, 379, 572, 798, 1099
Challis, M.S., 370
Chalova, Z.I., 686
Chaly, T., 789

Chamberlain, P., 681, 1088
Chamberlain, P.H., 661
Chamberlin, A.R., 911
Chambers, D., 728, 1063
Chambers, D.J., 647
Chambers, R., 869
Chambers, R.A., 387
Chambers, R.D., 498, 670, 689
Chambers, V.C., 304
Chambers, W.T., 283
Chamness, J.T., 1035
Chamot, E., 46
Chan, A.S.C., 693
Chan, D.M.T., 745
Chan, H., 138
Chan, R.P.K., 398
Chan, S.I., 129
Chan, T., 55, 839, 994
Chan, T.H., 350, 362, 416, 551, 735, 789, 795, 839, 1107
Chan, W.H., 350, 373
Chanan, H., 406
Chandler, J.H., 1098
Chandra, S., 20
Chandrasekaran, S., 350, 356, 705, 1103, 1111
Chandrasekhar, J., 154, 282, 943
Chandrasekharan, J., 707, 812
Chang Kuo, M.C., 747
Chang, C., 479
Chang, C.J., 223
Chang, C.T., 598
Chang, D.C.K., 303, 532
Chang, D.W.L., 215
Chang, E., 839
Chang, F.C., 444
Chang, H.W., 43, 50, 54
Chang, J.C., 1010
Chang, J.S., 869
Chang, K., 574
Chang, L., 904
Chang, L.W., 467
Chang, L.W.K., 579
Chang, S., 264, 281
Chang, V.S., 1070, 1071, 1088
Chang, V.S.K., 924
Chang, Y., 9
Chang, Y.W., 1060
Chanon, M., 229, 262, 583
Chao, C.S., 598
Chao, H.M., 1083
Chao, L., 820, 823, 829
Chao, Y.L., 387
Chapdelaine, M.J., 811
Chapleo, C.B., 289
Chapman, K.T., 1057, 1058
Chapman, N.B., 242, 326
Chapman, O.L., 51, 124, 213, 581, 583, 764, 868, 939, 1003, 1042, 1043
Chappell, I., 711
Charavel, B., 1077
Charbonneau, L.F., 820
Charles, G., 409, 694, 695, 800, 838
Charles, K.R., 224
Charles, R., 106, 108
Charles-Sigler, R., 106
Charlton, J.L., 215
Charman, H.B., 515
Charpentier-Morize, M., 302, 974
Charton, M., 131, 242, 244–249, 676, 702, 891
Chase, C.R., 290
Chassaing, G., 157
Chassin, C., 391
Chastrette, M., 318, 820, 828
Chatani, N., 819
Chatellier, D., 888
Chatt, J., 1037
Chatterjee, B.G., 414
Chatterjee, S., 433
Chattopadhyaya, J.B., 988
Chatziiosifidis, I., 430
Chaudhary, S.S., 369
Chaudhuri, N., 174
Chauncy, B., 641
Chauvière, G., 822
Chavdarian, C.G., 713
Chawla, H.P.S., 695
Chaykovsky, M., 440, 773, 846, 865
Cheema, Z.K., 960
Cheikh, R.B., 535
Chekulaeva, I.A., 666, 689
Chellamani, A., 1090
Chemerda, J.M., 785
Chen, A., 152, 223
Chen, C., 461, 1077
Chen, F., 1076
Chen, F.M.F., 1033
Chen, H.E., 806
Chen, H.J., 331
Chen, H.K., 716
Chen, H.Y., 1037
Chen, J.C., 704
Chen, K.S., 167, 613, 957
Chen, M.C., 333, 337
Chen, N.Y., 458
Chen, R.H.K., 842
Chen, S., 377
Chen, Y., 1077
Chêne, A., 590
Chênevert, R., 504
Cheng, A.K., 1026
Cheng, C., 797
Cheng, C.H., 598
Cheng, L., 923
Cheng, T., 707
Cheng, Y., 962
Cheng, Y.M., 543, 544
Chenier, J.H.B., 613, 633
Chenier, P.J., 277, 971
Cherednichenko, L.V., 573
Chérest, M., 314
Cherkasova, E.M., 294
Cherluck, R.M., 828
Chermprapai, A., 387
Chern, C., 357, 1057
Cherry, W., 209
Chervin, I.I., 87
Chesnut, D.B., 56
Cheung, M.F., 336
Cheung, Y., 626
Chevalier, P., 1037
Chevli, D.M., 271
Chevrier, B., 485, 487
Chhabra, B.R., 628
Chianelli, D., 589, 590, 595
Chiang, C., 976, 1120
Chiang, C.C., 56, 57
Chiang, J.F., 133
Chiang, Y., 67, 224, 331, 332, 341, 467, 662, 671
Chiao, W., 879
Chiche, L., 289
Chihal, D.M., 1042
Chihara, T., 685, 796
Child, W.C., Jr., 80
Childers, W.E., Jr., 629
Childs, R.F., 63, 213, 767, 1017
Chilingaren, A., 967
Chiltz, G., 622
Chin, J., 291
Ching, W., 855
Ching-Yun, C., 783
Chinn, J.W., Jr., 559

Chinn, L.J., 627, 629, 633, 1052
Chinoporos, E., 170
Chiola, V., 301
Chiong, K.N.G., 352
Chiou, B.L., 999
Chirinko, J.M., Jr., 421
Chittattu, G., 653
Chitwood, J.L., 285, 869
Chiu, K., 434
Chiurdoglu, G., 119
Chiusoli, G.P., 432, 779, 842
Chivers, T., 152, 223, 559
Chloupek, F.J., 279, 281, 282, 294
Chmielewski, M., 842
Chmurny, A.B., 311
Chmurny, G.N., 515
Cho, B.R., 891
Cho, M.H., 507
Chodkiewicz, W., 639, 640
Chodowska-Palicka, J., 507
Chodroff, S.D., 167
Choe, J., 131, 1069, 1070
Choguill, H.S., 510
Choi, H.K.J., 173
Choi, S.U., 483
Choi, Y.M., 815, 1099, 1101
Chong, A.O., 736, 738, 740
Chong, J.A., 139, 262
Chono, M., 575
Chopard, P.A., 853
Chorbadjiev, S., 363
Chortyk, O.T., 989
Chou, F.E., 68
Chou, S., 407
Chou, T., 327
Chow, D., 861
Chow, F., 914, 926
Chow, Y., 294
Chow, Y.L., 472, 728, 1103
Choy, W., 833
Chrétien, J.R., 673
Christ, J., 1026
Christ, W.J., 732
Christensen, J.J., 77, 78, 105
Christensen, L.W., 638, 728
Christiaens, L., 361
Christian, B., 323
Christl, M., 1027
Christman, D.R., 443
Christmann, A., 176
Christmann, F.K., 852
Christmann, K., 852
Christmann, K.F., 850
Christol, H., 281, 289, 590, 720
Christopher, T.A., 759
Christy, P.F., 452
Chu, C., 402
Chu, C.C.C., 542
Chu, K.C., 519
Chu, S., 752
Chu, W.K.C., 223
Chuang, L., 616
Chuaqui, C., 175, 310
Chuchani, G., 455, 483, 899, 900
Chucholowski, A., 712
Chuit, C., 286, 552, 713, 778
Chukovskaya, E.C., 390, 731
Chukovskaya, E.Ts., 399
Chumakov, L.V., 661
Chung, B.C., 383, 593, 736
Chung, F., 510
Chung, K., 137
Chung, S., 391, 510, 695, 1119
Chung, S.K., 1091
Chupakhin, O.N., 598
Chupp, J.P., 797
Church, D.F., 616, 1067, 1092
Churchill, M.R., 75, 1038
Chuvatkin, N.N., 809
Chvalovský, V., 128, 1105
Chwang, A.K., 148
Chwang, W.K., 332, 662, 678, 948
Chylińska, B., 599
Chylińska, J.B., 1068
Ciabattoni, J., 50, 737
Ciamician, G., 765
Ciappenelli, D.J., 545
Ciattini, P.G., 289, 409
Ciganek, E., 746–749, 770, 771, 909, 1026
Cilento, G., 12, 634, 738
Ciminale, F., 716
Cingolani, G.M., 480
Cinquini, M., 86, 157, 303, 532, 833
Cioffari, A., 549
Cisneros, A., 1063
Cistone, F., 390, 395, 703
Citterio, A., 636, 645, 649
Ciuffarin, E., 223, 442, 443
Ciula, R.P., 133
Claesson, A., 390, 410, 715
Claisen, L., 835, 1030
Claisse, J.A., 688
Clapp, L.B., 737
Clar, E., 39, 41, 48
Clardy, J., 581
Clark, A.C., 715, 722
Clark, B.C., Jr., 64, 274, 940
Clark, C.T., 628
Clark, D.R., 430
Clark, D.S., 372
Clark, D.T., 53
Clark, F.R.S., 598
Clark, G.M., 784, 972
Clark, G.W., 133
Clark, I.D., 521
Clark, J., 229
Clark, J.H., 353, 412
Clark, L.W., 563
Clark, M.T., 504
Clark, P.D., 74
Clark, R.A., 131
Clark, R.D., 379, 923
Clark, R.F., 808
Clark, R.G., 4
Clark, R.L., 1071
Clark, T., 133
Clarke, C.T., 378
Clarke, D., 537
Clarke, G.M., 952
Clarke, H.L., 75
Clarke, J.K.A., 697
Clarke, L., 509
Clarke, M.J., 563
Clarke, R.L., 124
Clarke, T.C., 297
Clarke, T.G., 1083
Clarkson, D., 24, 26
Claus, P., 496
Claus, R.E., 1067
Clausen, K., 794
Clausen, T.P., 282
Clausius, K., 1033
Clayman, L., 317
Clayton, J.W., 287
Cleland, G.H., 731
Clemens, A.H., 467
Clement, A., 737, 975
Clément, G., 1109
Clementi, S., 881
Clerici, A., 616, 1060, 1111
Clevenger, J.V., 282
Cliff, G.R., 537
Clifford, A.A., 640
Clifford, P.R., 144, 271, 312
Clifford, R.P., 966

Clippinger, E., 263, 264, 280
Clive, D.L.J., 262, 391, 406, 536, 653, 713, 913, 914, 926
Closs, G.L., 49, 136, 163, 170, 171, 175, 544, 770, 771, 938
Closs, L.E., 544
Closson, W.D., 275, 919, 1106
Clough, R.L., 140
Clouse, A.O., 298
Clowes, G.A., 484
Clunie, J.C., 783
Coates, G.E., 45, 157, 512
Coates, R.M., 276, 420, 714, 818, 961, 1011
Coates, W.M., 1057
Coble, H.D., 792
Coburn, J.F., Jr., 770
Cocivera, M., 806, 882, 896
Cockerill, A.F., 313, 329, 806, 849, 874, 882, 886, 887, 890, 893, 902, 907, 924, 1060, 1091
Cocks, A.T., 763, 896
Coe, G.R., 558
Coenen, J.W.E., 190
Coffey, C.E., 1091
Coffi-Nketsia, S., 354
Coffinet, D., 852
Coffman, D.D., 809
Cogdell, T.J., 275
Cognion, J.M., 723
Cogolli, P., 590
Cohen, G.M., 761
Cohen, H., 1075
Cohen, H.M., 557
Cohen, J.F., 417
Cohen, L.A., 1101
Cohen, M., 1059
Cohen, M.H., 1031
Cohen, M.L., 361
Cohen, S.G., 656, 1083, 1111
Cohen, T., 287, 314, 363, 400, 423, 507, 508, 589, 598, 601, 649, 749, 839, 914, 1081
Cohen, Z., 627
Cohn, M., 783
Coisne, J.M., 547
Coke, J.L., 278, 874, 877, 878, 879, 908
Colapret, J.A., 839
Colb, A.L., 595
Colborn, R.E., 775
Cole, C.M., 702
Cole, L.L., 317, 383
Cole, S.M., 687
Cole, T., 166
Cole, T.E., 396
Cole, T.W., Jr., 16, 133
Coleman, D.T., III, 1118
Coleman, R.A., 707, 999
Colens, A., 388
Coles, J.A., 156
Coll, J., 342
Collet, A., 83, 104, 106
Collin, G., 662
Collington, E.W., 384, 424
Collins, C., 1036
Collins, C.H., 660, 663, 900
Collins, C.J., 191, 264, 266, 313, 314, 678, 942, 946, 947, 952, 955, 960, 963, 967
Collins, G.R., 601, 637
Collins, J.C., 785, 1057
Collins, J.J., 1022
Collman, J.P., 75, 405, 430, 432, 692, 694, 722, 775
Collum, D.B., 377, 539
Collumeau, A., 222
Colombo, L., 832, 833
Colon, C., 591
Colon, I., 390, 510
Colonge, J., 527
Colonna, S., 86, 88, 157, 303, 532
Colter, A.K., 148
Colvin, E.W., 420, 547, 553, 836
Comasseto, J.V., 361
Combes, C.M., 772
Comfort, D.R., 802
Comins, D.L., 555, 825, 837
Comisarow, M., 337
Comisarow, M.B., 142, 144, 145, 148, 279, 285
Comisso, G., 693
Commandeur, R., 478
Commercon, A., 402, 410
Commerçon-Bourgain, M., 713
Commeyras, A., 148, 282, 283, 285, 856
Compagnon, P.L., 788, 792
Conant, J.B., 302
Concannon, P.W., 737
Condon, F.E., 234, 452, 480
Conia, J.M., 331, 434, 531, 711, 772, 773, 965, 974, 1017
Conley, R.A., 702
Conley, R.T., 931, 932, 981, 989
Conlon, L.E., 346
Conlon, P., 785
Connell, R., 534
Connolly, J.W., 79
Connor, D.S., 133, 400
Connor, T.M., 14
Conover, W.W., 736
Conrad, N.D., 1024, 1028
Conroy, H., 1029
Considine, W.J., 559
Consiglio, G., 403, 408, 578, 722
Contento, M., 837
Conway, B.E., 653
Cook, A.G., 759
Cook, A.H., 690
Cook, D., 487, 888
Cook, D.M., 891
Cook, F., 911
Cook, F.B., 911
Cook, F.L., 77
Cook, J.A., Jr., 279
Cook, M.J., 39, 126, 157, 788, 1083
Cook, R.S., 463
Cook, W.J., 1058
Cooke, D.W., 692
Cooke, F., 839
Cooke, G.A., 337
Cooke, M.P., Jr., 395, 430, 431, 714, 723, 877, 878, 908
Cooke, T.W., 891
Cookson, P.G., 357
Cookson, R.C., 51, 431, 721, 758, 764, 877, 935, 973, 1019, 1042
Cookson, R.F., 219
Coombes, R.G., 452, 463, 464, 466
Coombs, R.V., 420
Coon, C.L., 468, 1087
Cooney, J.V., 335, 851
Cooper, A., 1035
Cooper, A.J.L., 872
Cooper, C.F., 571
Cooper, C.N., 947, 961
Cooper, G.D., 647, 922, 981
Cooper, J., 613
Cooper, J.C., 599
Cooper, J.S., 317
Cooper, K.A., 305, 881, 896

Cooper, M.A., 40
Cooper, R.A., 163, 404, 561
Cooper, R.M., 642
Cooper, T.A., 399
Coops, J., 104
Cope, A.C., 92, 111, 135, 258, 632, 904, 906–909, 954, 958, 1021, 1113
Coppens, G.A., 887
Coppolino, A., 834
Corbally, R.P., 114
Corbett, J.F., 594
Corbiau, J.L., 619
Corbin, V.L., 716
Corcoran, J.W., 348
Corcoran, R.J., 1056
Cordes, E.H., 329, 330, 785, 855
Cordova, R., 858
Corey, E.J., 106, 157, 289, 331, 343, 349, 357, 384, 393, 401, 405, 406, 407, 413, 417, 420–423, 430, 432, 440, 597, 694, 699, 713, 715, 716, 718, 734, 738, 759, 764, 773, 785, 818, 833, 837, 839, 841, 842, 846, 847, 848, 852, 865, 906, 918, 919, 920, 929, 961, 1000, 1017, 1031, 1057, 1076, 1078, 1082, 1083, 1111
Corey, H.S., Jr., 847
Corey, M.D., 1080
Corley, R.C., 169
Cornelisse, J., 583, 595, 1104
Cornforth, J.W., 116, 726, 921
Cornforth, R.H., 921
Cornils, B., 432, 722
Correia, J.S., 383
Corrigan, J.R., 1057
Corriu, R., 485, 487, 662, 687
Corriu, R.J.P., 86, 403, 452, 810, 816, 1101
Corset, J., 157
Corsi, J., 1101
Corson, F.P., 298
Cortes, D.A., 53
Cortese, N.A., 643
Cortez, C.N., 701
Cory, R.M., 761
Coryn, M., 858
Cosgrove, W.R., Jr., 79
Cossar, J., 223
Costa, A., 988
Costain, C.C., 19
Costanza, A., 276
Coste, C., 487
Coste, J., 281, 289
Costello, A.M., 379
Costisella, B., 840
Costopoulos, M.G., 1011
Cota, D.J., 860
Cote, P.N., 955
Cotter, R.J., 347
Cotterrell, G., 716
Cotton, F.A., 9, 129
Cottrell, C.E., 160
Cottrell, F.D., 133
Cottrell, T.L., 21
Coudert, G., 367
Couffignal, R , 436
Coulson, C.A., 24, 26–29, 39, 131
Coulson, D.R., 591
Coulson, J., 503
Coulter, J.M., 395
Court, J., 617
Courtneidge, J.L., 685
Courtney, J.L., 1051
Courtois, A., 390
Courtois, G., 520
Cousseau, J., 680
Coussemant, F., 662, 799, 857, 858
Couvillon, T.M., 958
Covell, J., 1042
Coverdale, A.K., 318
Covey, D.F., 155
Covey, W.D., 452
Cowan, D., 558
Cowan, D.O., 202, 205
Cowdrey, W.A., 256, 337
Cowell, G.W., 936
Cox, B.G., 199
Cox, D., 143
Cox, D.A., 764
Cox, D.P., 770, 963
Cox, G.R., 716
Cox, J.D., 22, 23
Cox, R.A., 223, 224, 225, 1035, 1047
Cox, R.H., 404
Coxon, J.M., 763, 882
Coyle, J.D., 202, 213
Coyle, J.J., 175
Cozzi, F., 157, 833
Crabbé, P., 120, 409, 817
Crabtree, R.H., 915
Cragg, G.M.L., 394, 426, 703, 704, 811, 995, 1096
Craig, A.P., 913
Craig, C.A., 807
Craig, D.P., 83
Craig, J.C., 398, 971, 1084
Craig, N.C., 699
Craig, R.A., 130
Crain, D.L., 1038
Cram, D.J., 35, 77, 78, 103, 105, 151, 156, 157, 219, 223, 257, 273, 277, 278, 279, 311, 314, 443, 517, 518, 519, 524, 525, 568, 817, 889, 892, 909, 913, 945, 949, 951, 958, 982, 1096, 1108, 1113
Cram, J.M., 35, 77, 105, 257, 518
Cramer, F.D., 79
Cramer, J., 1074
Cramer, P., 684
Cramer, R., 527, 591, 710
Crampton, M.R., 73, 223, 577
Crandall, J.K., 50, 390, 432, 715, 736, 904, 973, 1017
Crane, E.J., 1121, 1122
Crank, G., 1092
Crass, G., 104
Crawford, M., 842, 843
Crawford, R.J., 273
Crawley, L.C., 904
Craze, G., 330
Creary, X., 172, 276, 281, 302, 304, 590, 596
Creed, D., 766
Creese, M.W., 897
Cregar, P.L., 421
Cregge, R.J., 416
Crelier, A.M., 298
Cremer, D., 50, 130
Cresp, T.M., 37, 59
Creswell, C.J., 74
Cretton, A., 67
Crews, A.D., 591
Crews, P., 759
Crews, P.O., 44
Crich, D., 655, 1074
Criegee, R., 50, 133, 732, 767, 991, 1003, 1004, 1026, 1064, 1067, 1069
Crimmin, M.J., 1037
Crimmins, T.F., 414, 962

Crist, D.R., 478
Cristau, H.J., 590
Cristea, I., 598
Cristol, S.J., 264, 275, 383, 654, 677, 765, 876, 878, 925, 956
Cristol. S.J., 676
Crochet, R.A., 986
Croft, A.P., 880, 891
Crombie, L., 109, 842
Cromer, R.A., 1030
Cromwell, N.H., 131, 887
Crosby, G.A., 1082
Crosby, J., 884
Cross, R.T., 1074
Crossland, I., 821
Crossland, R.K., 312
Crounse, N.N., 488
Crouse, D., 837
Crouse, D.M., 849
Crouse, G.D., 747
Crout, D.H.G., 463
Crowe, D.F., 929
Crowell, T.I., 796
Crowley, J.I., 373, 438
Crowley, K.J., 764, 1003
Crowley, P.J., 21
Crozet, M.P., 399
Crozier, R.F., 743
Cruickshank, D.W.J., 39
Cruickshank, P.A., 565
Crumbliss, A.L., 561
Crumrine, D.S., 832, 1043
Cruse, W.B., 850
Crutchfield, M.M., 1060
Cruz, R., 126
Cryberg, R.L., 178, 989
Csizmadia, I.G., 123, 128, 154, 157, 976
Cueto, O., 549
Cullen, E., 604
Cullen, W.R., 55, 693
Cullinane, N.M., 500
Cullis, C.F., 1057
Cullis, P.M., 88
Culvenor, C.J., 921
Cumming, J.B., 234
Cummings, D.L., 74
Cummings, T.F., 801
Cundall, R.B., 764, 787
Cunneen, J.I., 1090
Cunningham, A.F., Jr., 133
Cunningham, I.M., 520
Cunningham, M., 989
Cupas, C.A., 142, 145
Cuppen, T.J.H.M., 1013
Curci, R., 1060, 1090
Curl, R.F., Jr., 19
Curphey, T.J., 312, 542, 737
Curran, A.C.W., 712
Curran, D.P., 1089
Curran, E.L., 271
Currie, J.O., Jr., 421, 795, 994
Curry, D.C., 812
Curry, M.J., 345
Curtin, D.Y., 106, 107, 156, 511, 898, 955, 978
Curtis, E.A., 828
Curtis, R.F., 640
Curtis, V.A., 312, 354, 910, 1083
Curtiss, L.A., 18
Cusack, N.J., 699, 1097
Cuscurida, M., 393
Cussans, N.J., 331
Cuvigny, T., 417, 444, 569, 628, 931
Cvetanović, R.J., 172, 764, 765, 1067
Cvetković, M., 1055
Cygler, M., 570
Cynkowski, T., 64
Cyr, C.R., 527
Cyvin, S.J., 39
Cywinski, N.F., 720
Czaja, R.F., 667, 676
Czarny, M.R., 1083
Czekalla, J., 76
Czernecki, S., 289, 560

D'Agostino, J., 215
d'Angelo, J., 418, 419, 528, 832
D'Angelo, J., 763
D'Ascoli, R., 1086
D'Auria, M., 726, 1057, 1086
d'Incan, E., 288
D'Silva, R.M., 899
D'yachenko, A.I., 174, 580, 603
D'yachenko, O.A., 87
D'yachkovskii, F.S., 404
D'yakonov, I.A., 49, 50, 1024
Daasvatn, K., 78
Dabbagh, G., 401
Dabdoub, A.M., 723
Dadali, V.A., 445
Dadjour, D.F., 521
Dafforn, A., 579
Dafforn, G.A., 300, 317
Dagani, D., 769
Dagonneau, M., 821
Dahl, A.R., 677
Dahlberg, D.B., 885
Dahlgren, G., Jr., 74
Dahlgren, L., 200
Dahlman, O., 391
Dahmen, A., 1010
Dahn, H., 329, 963
Dai, S., 762
Daignault, R.A., 1100, 1105
Dailey, B.P., 18, 40, 53
Dais, P., 247
Dal Bello, G., 826
Dal Pozzo, R., 716
Dale, J., 9, 78, 119, 129, 139, 822
Dale, J.A., 108
Dalessandro, J., 390
Daley, R.F., 715
Dalgaard, L., 842
Dali, H.M., 361
Dalley, N.K., 105
Dalman, G.W., 588
Dalrymple, D.L., 500, 1028
Dalton, D.R., 661, 726
Dalton, J.C., 211, 213, 214, 764
Daly, D.G., 1037
Daly, W.H., 798
Dalzell, H.C., 652
Dämbkes, G., 860
Damiano, J., 817
Damico, R., 979
Damin, B., 726
Damji, S.W.H., 577
Damrauer, R., 175
Dams, R., 1112, 1113
Danehy, J.P., 1110
Danen, W.C., 167, 414, 613, 616, 728
Daney, M., 430
Danforth, R.H., 549
Dang, H.P., 402
Dangat, V.T., 478
Danheiser, R.L., 1020, 1111
Daniel, H., 909
Danieli, R., 510
Daniels, K., 736
Daniels, R., 671
Daniewski, A.R., 314
Daniher, F.A., 1077

Danishefsky, S., 311, 679
Dannenberg, J.J., 286, 957
Danno, S., 643
Danova, B.V., 793
Darby, A.C., 478
Darby, N., 55
Darchen, A., 573
Dardis, R.E., 802
Dardoize, F., 421
Dar'eva, E.P., 392
Darling, S.D., 925
Darlington, W.H., 415
Darragh, K.V., 173
Darrin, M., 1079
Darwish, D., 887
Das, J., 734
Das Gupta, T.K., 742
Datta, A.P., 487
Daub, G.H., 835
Daub, G.W., 1030
Daub, J., 1026
Dauben, H.J., Jr., 37, 43, 46, 625, 1076
Dauben, W.G., 131, 133, 139, 213, 216, 285, 765, 911, 1003, 1008, 1009, 1016, 1040, 1042, 1077
Daughhetee, P.H., Jr., 1089
Daum, P.H., 290
Daum, U., 1077
Dauphin, G., 727
Dauzonne, D., 807
Davankov, V.A., 106
Dave, H.R., 371
Dave, V., 768, 978
Davenport, D., 123
Daviaud, G., 713
David, S., 128
Davidson, D., 379
Davidson, E.R., 51, 154, 167, 171
Davidson, E.W., 702
Davidson, M., 857, 858
Davidson, N., 166
Davidson, R.B., 105, 124, 131
Davidson, R.S., 565, 614, 766
Davies, A.G., 337, 357, 549, 550, 792
Davies, A.P., 564
Davies, D.G., 567
Davies, D.I., 404, 608, 617, 688, 1074
Davies, M., 686
Davies, M.H., 227
Davies, N.R., 526
Davies, R.V., 803
Davies, S.G., 408
Davies, W., 921
Davis, B.A., 176
Davis, B.H., 902
Davis, B.R., 1097
Davis, C.B., 379
Davis, D.D., 99, 515
Davis, F.A., 1089
Davis, G.A., 868
Davis, G.T., 375, 376, 887, 1081
Davis, H.A., 394
Davis, J.C., Jr., 73
Davis, J.H., 1027
Davis, M., 124, 812
Davis, P., 417
Davis, P.D., 669
Davis, R., 430, 442
Davis, R.A., 725
Davis, R.C., 1083
Davis, R.E., 921
Davis, R.F., 1025
Davis, R.M., 661
Davis, V.C., 743
Davis, W.H., Jr., 616
Dawe, R., 266
Dawes, K., 213
Dawson, L.R., 236
Dawson, M.I., 407
Day, A.C., 751, 804, 863
Day, A.R., 814
Day, J.C., 625
Dayagi, S., 797, 1061
Dayrit, F.M., 715
De, N.C., 682
De, S.K., 74
Deacon, G.B., 522
Deadman, W.G., 278
Deady, L.W., 334, 364, 366, 387
Dean, F.H., 725
De Angelis, F., 367, 368
Deans, F.B., 463
Dear, R.E.A., 510
Deb, K.K., 73
Debal, A., 839
DeBoer, A., 667, 676
DeBoer, C.D., 625, 764, 1023
DeBoer, J.E., 785
de Boer, T.J., 146, 304, 584, 784, 936, 1117
DeBruin, K.E., 682
DeBruin, K.R., 677
DeBruyn, D.J., 791
DeCamp, M.R., 1023
DeCarlo, V.J., 863
de Carvalho, M., 736
Decock-Le Révérend, B., 1024
Decodts, G., 353, 915
Decorzant, R., 420
Decouzon, M., 1105
DeCrescenzo, G., 987
Dedeoglu, E., 466
Deem, M.F., 812
Deets, G.L., 1075
Defaye, J., 919
DeFoe, J.D., 1105
DeFrees, D.J., 200, 235
Degani, I., 1102
Degani, Y., 797, 1061
Degen, P., 717
Degenhardt, C.R., 266
Deger, H.M., 59, 62
Degering, E.F., 1109
Deghenghi, R., 352
de Graaf, C., 715
de Groot, A., 914
de Gunst, G.P., 583
DeHaan, F.P., 452
de Haan, J.W., 277, 1019
Dehmlow, E.V., 320, 322, 335, 354, 543, 761, 769, 1065
Dehmlow, S.S., 320
Dehn, R.L., 929
Dehnicke, K., 133, 729
Deitch, J., 436
de Jeso, B., 70
De Jong, F., 77
de Jonge, A.P., 348
de Jonge, C.R.H.I., 1091
de Jongh, H.A.P., 1091
de Julien de Zélincourt, Y., 59
De Kimpe, N., 302, 529
Dekker, J., 823
Dekkers, H.P.J.M., 109
de Klein, W.J., 719
de Koning, A.J., 511
Delacroix, A., 689
Delahunty, C., 248
de la Mare, P.B.D., 244, 255, 287, 289, 301, 447, 448, 460, 468, 476, 477, 657, 670, 671, 724, 727, 887, 889
Delaumeny, M., 410
Delaunois, M., 760
Delavarenne, S.Y., 551

Delay, F., 289, 390
Delbaere, C.U.L., 1114
Delker, G.L., 452
Della, E.W., 310
Dellacoletta, B.A., 656
Dellaria, J.F., Jr., 642, 646, 648, 731
Delmas, M., 865
Del Re, G., 26
DeLucca, G., 385
De Lucchi, O., 747, 937, 1042
DeLue, N.R., 551, 999
Deluzarche, A., 632
Dem'yanov, N.Ya., 136
Dem'yanov, P.I., 308, 325
de Maheas, M., 488
De Maria, P., 298
de Meijere, A., 130, 148
DeMember, J.R., 143, 148, 282, 283, 285, 312, 540
Demers, J.P., 515
Demerseman, P., 807
de Meyer-van Duyse, A., 246
De Micheli, C., 743
De Mico, A., 726
Demisch, W.H., 276
Demmin, T.R., 930, 1072
Demonceau, A., 344
DeMore, W.B., 172
Dempsey, B., 222, 229
De Munary, S., 387
Demuth, M., 1042, 1043
Demuth, W., 904
Demuynck, M., 794
den Hertog, H.J., 582
Dence, C.W., 509
Denes, A.S., 857
DeNet, R.W., 412
Denis, G.I., 894
Denis, J., 68, 144
Denis, J.M., 772, 796
Denis, J.N., 383, 391, 920, 921, 926, 1108
Denise, B., 559, 723, 822
Denney, D.B., 549, 637
Denney, D.Z., 549, 637
Dennis, N., 128
Denniston, A.D., 154
Denny, R.W., 634, 635, 737
Deno, N.C., 141, 144–147, 222, 223, 224, 246, 361, 530, 538, 615, 621, 627, 678, 684, 990, 1044, 1050, 1060, 1071, 1084
Deno, P.T., 224
Denson, D.D., 940, 941, 1070
Dent, A.L., 692
Denyer, C.V., 262
Denzel, T., 853
DePalma, V.M., 155
de Peretti, D., 816
Depezay, J., 833
Depezay, J.C., 418
DePriest, R.N., 262, 391, 404, 822
DePuy, C.H., 304, 310, 534, 677, 784, 874, 877, 887, 892, 896, 900, 904, 905, 909, 911, 1011
Depuy, W.E., 285
Derenberg, M., 567, 568
Derendyaev, B.G., 951
Derevitskaya, V.A., 351
Derfer, J.M., 130
Derguini-Boumechal, F., 402, 410
Derkach, G.I., 808
Dermer, O.C., 325, 346, 365, 369, 620, 741, 923, 1020
Dernell, W., 825
Derome, A.E., 1108
de Rossi, R.H., 578, 583, 596
de Rostolan, J., 802, 1059
Dervan, P.B., 751, 920, 1021, 1023
des Abbayes, H., 390, 433
Desai, M.C., 705
Desai, N.B., 845, 847
Desai, R.C., 814
Desai, V.R., 956
Desauvage, S., 926
DeSavigny, C.B., 739
Desbois, M., 989
Descotes, G., 1037
DeSelms, R.C., 772
Deshayes, H., 395
De Shazo, M., 456
Deshpande, R.P., 861
Desimoni, G., 747
Desio, P.J., 817
Deslongchamps, P., 294, 1060
Desmond, K.M., 625
DeSouza, D.J., 647
Despeyroux, B., 721
de Spinoza, G.R., 383
Des Roches, D., 921, 964
Dessau, R.M., 725, 742, 1074
Dessy, R.E., 152, 223, 512, 521, 558
de Stevens, G., 807
Destro, R., 58, 61, 577
Desvard, O.E., 294, 300
De Tar, D.F., 185, 247, 248, 249, 290, 612, 617, 644, 647
Detoni, S., 72
Detre, G., 391, 929
Detsina, A.N., 452
Detty, M.R., 904
Deuchert, K., 1049
Deutsch, C.J., 733
Dev, S., 695, 795, 1066
Dev, V., 137, 938
de Valois, P.J., 510
Devant, R., 833
Devaprabhakara, D., 651, 694, 696, 705
Devarajan, S., 1038
de Ville, G.Z., 415
Devos, A., 388
de Vries, G., 1063
Devynck, J., 539
de Waard, E.R., 532
Dewar, M.J.S., 3, 16, 26, 29, 39, 47, 64, 75, 171, 237, 280, 281, 289, 451, 498, 659, 663, 680, 750, 751, 753, 994, 1024, 1036
Dewey, R.S., 699
Dewhurst, B.B., 565
de Wolf, W.H., 304, 770
DeWolfe, R.H., 287, 288, 301, 329, 339, 343, 345, 409, 415, 524, 790, 1003, 1014, 1020, 1021
Dey, K., 511
DeYoung, D.J., 9
DeYoung, S., 671
Deyrup, A.J., 146, 224
Deyrup, C.L., 276
Deyrup, J.A., 215, 844
Dhanoa, D., 281
Dhanoa, D.S., 433
Dhar, D.N., 350, 670
Dhar, M.L., 894, 896
Dhawan, K.L., 417
Diab, Y., 1105
Dial, J.L., 477
Diamond, S.E., 788
Diaper, D.G.M., 785, 1066
Dias, J.R., 1100
Diaz, A., 275, 277, 278
Diaz, A.F., 264
Diaz, G.E., 396
DiBiase, S.A., 836

Di Blasio, B., 222
Dick, C.R., 530
Dick, K.F., 1057
Dickason, W.C., 266, 996
Dickel, M., 78
Dicker, I.B., 78
Dickerhoof, D.W., 158
Dickerman, S.C., 617, 642, 647
Dickerson, D.R., 593
Dickinson, C.L., 671
Dickinson, R.A., 749
Dickstein, J.I., 300, 671
Dieck, H.A., 643
Diederich, F., 60
Dieffenbacher, A., 761
Dieter, R.K., 329
Dietl, H.K., 417, 529
Dietrich, B., 78, 115
Dietrich, C.O., 535
Dietrich, H., 158
Dietrich, R., 939
Dietrich-Bucheker, C.O., 1115
Dietsche, M., 349
Dietz, A.G., Jr., 589, 601
Dietz, S.E., 799
DiFate, V.G., 284
DiFuria, F., 1090
DiGiorgio, V.E., 207
Dill, K., 286, 957
Dillard, D.E., 271
Dilling, W.L., 694, 758, 764, 765
Dillon, R.L., 223
di Maio, G., 57
Dimitriadis, E., 392
Dimmel, D., 694
Dimmel, D.R., 133, 715
Dimroth, K., 146, 318, 320, 837, 1062
Din, L.B., 645, 1103
Dinan, F.J., 503, 933
Dinçtürk, S., 615
Diner, U.E., 394
Ding, J., 677
Dingle, T.W., 58
Dinizo, S.E., 677, 1083
Dinner, A., 971
DiPasquale, F., 420
DiPietro, J., 720
DiPol, J., 796
Dirks, J.E., 982
Dirkx, I.P., 584
Dirlam, J., 280
Dishong, D.M., 77
Distler, H., 363
Ditrich, K., 549
Dittman, W.R., Jr., 1097
Dittmer, B., 157
Dittmer, D.C., 661
Dittmer, H., 287
Divakar, K.J., 1074
Divakaruni, R., 779
Diversi, P., 91, 1038
Dix, D.T., 160
Dixon, J.A., 404, 599
Dixon, J.E., 310
Djerassi, C., 85, 101, 120, 694, 897, 921, 1057, 1058, 1084, 1098
Dmitriev, L.B., 715
Dmitrieva, L.G., 573
Dneprovskii, A.S., 616
Doak, G.O., 1135
do Amaral, A.T., 337
do Amaral, L., 855
Doan, P.E., 320
Dobaeva, N.M., 466
Dobashi, A., 106
Dobi, P., 319
Dobinson, F., 1067
Dobler, M., 56, 87
Dobronravov, P.N., 980
Dobrovolny, M., 50
Dobrynin, V.N., 325
Dobson, B., 887
Doca, N., 863
Dockx, J., 320
Dodderel, D., 125
Doddi, G., 578
Dodge, R.P., 53
Dodonov, V.A., 549
Dodson, R.M., 1042
Doecke, C.W., 277
Doering, W. van E., 991
Doering, W. von E., 43, 174, 175, 258, 525, 527, 534, 543, 751, 763, 770, 771, 970, 1021, 1022–1026, 1082
Doerjer, G., 429
Doherty, M.M., 275
Dohi, M., 265
Dohmaru, T., 1099, 1100
Döhnert, D., 167
Dojo, H., 1002
Dokawa, S., 860
Dolak, T.M., 423
Dolbier, W.J., Jr., 1008
Dolbier, W.R., Jr., 657, 758, 762, 965, 1017, 1021, 1023
Dolby, L.J., 857, 858
Doldouras, G.A., 395, 479, 621
Dolenko, A., 1047
Doleschall, G., 350, 397, 398, 1075, 1083
Dolfini, J.E., 666
Doll, R.J., 1056, 1100
Dollat, J., 409
Dolling, U., 417
Dollinger, H., 423
Dollinger, M., 1024
Dolphin, J.M., 841
Domaille, P.J., 724
Domain, R., 234
Domalski, E.S., 22
Domalski, M.S., 715
Domareva-Mandel'shtam, T.V., 1024
Dombrovskii, A.V., 731, 848
Dombrovskii, V.A., 848
Domelsmith, L.N., 749
Dominguez, R.M., 899, 900
DoMinh, T., 761
Donald, D.S., 952
Donaruma, L.G., 987, 988
Donath, W.E., 129
Done, J.N., 404
Donetti, A., 1077
Dönges, R., 46
Donnelly, S.J., 1097
Donohue, J.A., 340
Donovan, D.J., 143, 149, 285
Donow, F., 106
Donzel, A., 375
Doomes, E., 922
Doorakian, G.A., 1002
Doornbos, T., 355
Döpp, D., 1043
Dore, M., 487
Dorfman, E., 991
Dorfman, L.M., 153
Dorofeenko, G.N., 488, 539, 797
Doron'kin, V.N., 600
Dorow, R.L., 768
Dorrell, F.J., 516
Dorsch, H., 138
Dorsey, G.F., 336
Dossena, A., 1108
Dostrovsky, I., 944
Doty, J.C., 766
Dou, H.J., 320, 640, 641, 644
Douchkine, N., 1058
Douek, M., 53
Dougharty, K.W., 659

Dougherty, R.C., 3
Dougherty, T.J., 215
Douglas, A.W., 1033
Douglas, D.E., 191, 863
Douglas, K.T., 338
Douglass, D.C., 274
Douglass, J.E., 505
Doumaux, A.R., Jr., 636, 1081
Douraghi-Zadeh, K., 863
Dovinola, V., 734
Dow, R.L., 1058
Dowd, S.R., 542, 769
Dowd, W., 200, 318, 891
Doweyko, A.M., 532
Dowlatshahi, H.A., 564
Downie, I.M., 390, 430
Downing, J.W., 133
Dows, D.A., 129
Doyarenko, M.N., 136
Doyle, D.L., 537
Doyle, G., 1038
Doyle, M.J., 766, 1039
Doyle, M.P., 358, 387, 390, 477, 603, 632, 642, 646, 648, 693, 731, 768, 785, 791, 978, 1058, 1060, 1084, 1097
Doyle, T.D., 1013
Doyle, T.W., 810
Drabicky, M.J., 328
Drabowicz, J., 88, 1089, 1092, 1108
Draffehn, J., 246
Drâghici, C., 761
Drago, R.S., 74, 320, 1085
Drahowzal, F.A., 479, 481
Drake, B.V., 758
Drake, N.L., 588
Dralants, A., 55
Draper, J.D., 345
Draper, M.R., 466
Drauz, K., 102, 381
Dreher, E., 601
Drehfahl, G., 730
Dreiding, A.S., 519, 761
Drenth, W., 192, 371, 683, 870
Drew, G.M., 126
Drew, R.M., 781
Drewer, R.J., 213
Drewes, H.R., 496
Driessen, P.B.J., 277
Driggs, R.J., 403
Drisko, R.L., 202
Drobnica, Ľ., 370
Drozd, J.C., 1071
Drozd, V.N., 415, 583, 607, 715
Drucker, G.E., 43, 247
Druelinger, M., 417
Druelinger, M.L., 18
Druet, L.M., 223
Druey, J., 994
Druliner, J.D., 724
Druzhkov, O.N., 561
Dryuk, V.G., 735
Dua, S.S., 433, 595
Dubini, R., 1033
Duboc, C., 309
Dubois, J.E., 67, 247, 249, 280, 334, 391, 401, 416, 427, 434, 441, 450, 528, 542, 565, 654, 661, 663, 670, 673, 833, 902, 927, 951
Dubois, R., 695
DuBois, R.H., 1085
Duboudin, J.G., 715
Dubourg, P., 638
Dubrova, L.N., 501
Dubs, P., 941
Duce, P.P., 260
Ducep, J., 414, 545
Ducep, J.B., 406, 423, 1033
Duchin, L., 335
Duclos, J., 694
Ducom, J., 160, 559, 822
Duddy, N.W., 338
Dudinskaya, A.A., 746
Dudman, C.C., 398
Dueber, T.E., 297, 579
Duesler, E., 761
Duesler, E.N., 107
Dufaux, R., 569
Duffey, D., 1047
Duffey, D.C., 287
Duffin, G.F., 364
Duffin, H.C., 1080
Duffley, R.P., 652
Duffy, J.A., 341
Dufraisse, C., 747
Dugast, J., 391
Duhamel, L., 403, 798, 837
Duhamel, P., 797, 837
Duhl-Emswiler, B.A., 850
Duke, A.J., 761, 762, 930, 937, 938, 940
Dulcere, J., 931
Dull, D.L., 108
Dumont, W., 714, 926
Dumpis, Yu.Ya., 1106
Dumsha, T.C., 340, 352
Duncan, D.M., 694
Duncan, F.J., 172
Duncan, P., 644
Duncan, W.G., 762, 847
Dunford, J.A., 552
Dunitz, J.D., 53, 56, 58, 87, 123, 124, 129, 135
Dunkelblum, E., 704
Dunkin, I.R., 163
Dunlap, R.P., 200, 1119
Dunlop, A.K., 79
Dunn, G.E., 563
Dunn, L.B., Jr., 1091
Dunnavant, W.R., 835
Dunne, K., 146, 1036
Dunnigan, D.A., 412
Dunning, J.E., 907
Duong, T., 1078
DuPriest, M.T., 414
Dupuy, W.E., 954
Duraisamy, M., 652
Durand, D., 575
Durand, R., 1059
Durandetta, J.L., 425
Durbetaki, A.J., 744
Durbut, P., 736
Dürckheimer, W., 694
Durham, D.L., 634
Durham, L.J., 1067
Durig, J.R., 129
Dürr, H., 55, 176, 213, 771, 1026
Durrett, L.R., 173
Durst, H.D., 77, 321, 799
Durst, T., 110, 151, 154, 440, 532, 773, 839, 864, 865, 926, 1081
Durual, P., 723
Duschek, C., 662
Dusold, L.R., 909
Dusseau, C.H.V., 146
Dustman, C.K., 151
Dutler, H., 961
Dutly, A., 466
Dutra, G.A., 407
Dütsch, H.R., 616
Dutta, V.P., 726
Duval, X., 102
DuVernet, R.B., 59
Dux, F. III, 390
Dux, F.J., 361

Duynstee, E.F.J., 318, 740
Dvolaitzky, M., 390
Dvoretzky, I., 173, 174, 544, 1072
Dwyer, F.G., 458
Dwyer, J., 711
Dyall, L.K., 176, 581
Dyatkin, B.L., 671
Dyatkina, M.E., 167
Dymova, T.N., 917
Dyumaev, K.M., 234
Dzhemilev, U.M., 710, 1086
Dzidic, I., 235

Eaborn, C., 450, 453, 457, 461, 463, 511, 550
Eachus, S.W., 56
Eadon, G., 1058
Eapen, K.C., 595
Easdon, J.C., 659
Eastham, J.F., 545, 942, 963, 967, 970
Eastman, R.H., 627
Eastmond, R., 640
Easton, C.J., 616, 674
Eastwood, F.W., 920, 1031
Eaton, G., 564
Eaton, J.T., 799
Eaton, P., 749
Eaton, P.E., 133, 217, 764, 988, 1039
Eaton, S.S., 109
Eatough, D.J., 77
Ebel, H.F., 151
Eberbach, W., 767
Eberhardt, G.G., 545, 709
Eberhardt, R., 109
Eberius, K.W., 53
Eberle, G., 871
Eberle, M.K., 434
Eberlein, T.H., 379
Ebersberger, J., 481
Eberson, L., 233, 466, 589, 653, 1049
Ebine, S., 591
Eccles, J., 191, 863
Echigo, Y., 383, 385, 934, 988
Echter, T., 137
Eck, D.L., 882, 888
Eckart, M.D., 314, 952
Ecker, R., 1130
Eckersley, T., 1042
Eckert, C.A., 751
Eckes, L., 147, 297
Eckhardt, W., 17
Edens, M., 290
Edgar, K.J., 434
Edge, D.J., 956
Edgington, D.N., 314, 357
Edison, D.H., 874, 886
Edman, C., 806
Edmison, M.T., 620
Edmondson, P.B., 23
Edward, J.T., 225, 231, 785, 787, 1100
Edwards, A.G., 319, 1030
Edwards, B.E., 793
Edwards, B.F.R., 500
Edwards, J.O., 304, 310, 737, 1060
Edwards, K., 733
Edwards, O.E., 298
Edwards, W.R., Jr., 434, 485
Effenberger, F., 381, 450, 468, 476, 485, 492, 499, 579
Effio, A., 806, 956
Efraty, A., 53
Efros, L.S., 40
Ege, G., 938
Egert, E., 965
Eggensperger, H., 383
Egger, K.W., 668, 761, 896, 935
Eggerding, D., 63
Egli, H., 627
Egli, R.A., 510, 815
Eglinton, G., 355, 639
Egly, J., 385
Egorochkin, A.N., 72
Egorov, M.P., 577
Ehler, D.F., 1102
Ehmann, W.J., 693
Eholzer, U., 934
Ehrenson, S., 242, 244, 246, 247
Ehrlich, S., 671
Eibach, F., 1053
Eichenauer, H., 833
Eicher, T., 50, 816
Eichhorn, I., 789
Eichler, S., 774
Eickhoff, D.J., 736
Eidenschink, R., 745
Éidus, Ya.T., 432, 575, 720, 996
Eierdanz, H., 672
Eigendorf, G.K., 1078
Eigenmann, E.W., 896
Eigenmann, H.K., 614
Eimer, J., 771
Einstein, F.W.B., 55
Eisch, J.J., 476, 512, 695, 707, 715, 775, 995
Eisele, G., 409
Eisenbraun, E.J., 348, 1074, 1077
Eisenhardt, W., 868
Eisenstein, O., 17, 128, 310, 749, 813
Eisenthal, R., 627, 1080
Eissenstat, M.A., 420
Eiter, K., 915
Ekwuribe, N.N., 398
Elad, D., 504, 666, 719
El-Alaoui, M., 67
Elam, E.U., 796, 868
El-Bassiouny, F.A., 835
Elbasyouny, A., 78
El-Bouz, M., 714
El-Fekky, T.A., 432
Elguero, J., 69
Elhafez, F.A.A., 103
Elia, R.J., 287, 501
Elian, M., 761, 1080
Eliason, R., 331
Eliel, E.L., 21, 82, 84, 85, 99, 103, 105, 115, 116, 118, 119, 120, 124, 126, 128, 129, 155, 191, 241, 394, 610, 641, 780, 810, 813, 887, 1100
Eliev, S., 813
Elix, J.A., 57, 59, 62, 991
El-Khrisy, E.A.M., 794
Elkik, E., 541, 843
Elkobaisi, F.M., 501
Ellingboe, J.W., 833
Ellinger, C.A., 367
Elliott, J.D., 378
Elliott, R.C., 642, 731
Elliott, R.D., 968
Elliott, R.L., 57
Elliott, S.P., 761, 762
Ellis, J.E., 834
Ellis, R.J., 1017
Ellison, F.O., 3
Ellison, G.B., 166
Ellzey, M.L., 40
El-Morey, S.S., 385
El-Mowafy, A.M., 910
El-Nasr, M.M.S., 175
El-Newaihy, M.F., 835

Elofson, R.M., 570, 641, 642
Elphimoff-Felkin, I., 393, 1098
El-Sayed, M.A., 211
Elsenbaumer, R.L., 822
El-Shafie, S.M.M., 267
Elsinger, F., 386
Elsom, L.F., 650
Elson, I.H., 613
El-Taliawi, G.M., 625
Elvidge, J.A., 468, 803
Emerson, D.W., 913
Emerson, G.F., 53, 75
Emerson, M.T., 72
Emerson, T.R., 797
Emery, E.M., 1105
Emmons, W.D., 573, 735, 737, 848, 990, 1087
Emptoz, G., 434, 820
Emsley, J., 72, 311, 353
Enayat, E.I., 835
Encarnación, L.A.A., 738
Encina, M.V., 214
Enda, J., 643
Endell, R., 699
Enders, D., 417, 423, 833, 1106
Endo, K., 59
Endo, Y., 121
Engbert, T., 304
Engberts, J.B.F.N., 653, 1109
Engdahl, C., 945
Engel, C.R., 352
Engel, J., 120
Engel, P.S., 168, 212, 938
Engel, R.R., 1033
Engelking, P.C., 166
Engelsma, J.W., 620
Engenito, J.S., Jr., 473
England, B.D., 888
England, D.C., 724, 807
Engler, E.M., 300, 962
English, J., Jr., 928
Engman, A.M., 1097
Engroff, E.C., 599
Enikolopiyan, N.S., 325
Enin, A.S., 987
Enisov, E.T., 628
Ensley, H., 537
Entelis, S.G., 792
Enthistle, I.D., 913
Entwistle, I.D., 396, 594, 1103, 1104, 1105
Epiotis, N.D., 154, 749, 751, 756
Epple, G., 485
Eppley, R.L., 599
Epshtein, L.M., 72
Epstein, W.W., 1081
Epsztajn, J., 395
Erashko, V.I., 324
Erden, I., 57
Erdik, E., 402
Erdman, J., 323
Erfort, U., 719
Erhardt, J.M., 411
Erickson, A.S., 415, 787
Erickson, B.W., 331, 373, 423
Erickson, D., 383
Erickson, G.W., 417
Erickson, K.C., 351
Erickson, R.E., 785, 1071
Erickson, W.F., 715, 994, 1062
Eriks, K., 148
Erikson, C.M., 223
Eriksson, S.O., 340
Erivanskaya, L.A., 593
Erker, G., 762
Erman, W.F., 299
Ermanson, A.V., 552
Ermer, O., 51
Ermolaev, V.L., 212
Ermolenko, M.S., 435
Ershov, B.A., 964
Ershov, V.V., 68, 450, 969, 1097
Erwin, R.W., 418
Erykalov, Yu.G., 510
Érzyutova, E.I., 639
Esashi, Y., 393
Escale, R., 70
Eschenmoser, A., 87, 258, 354, 386, 392, 742, 802, 928, 929, 941, 1060
Espejo de Ochoa, O., 990
Espenson, J.H., 515
Ess, R.J., 653
Esselen, G.J., Jr., 509
Estes, G.W., 621
Esteve, R.M., Jr., 564
Estreicher, H., 918
Eswarakrishnan, V., 922
Etheredge, S.J., 417
Etlis, V.S., 744
Etter, M.C., 107
Etzemüller, J., 742
Eudy, N.H., 813
Eulenberger, A., 769
Euler, K., 1027
Euranto, E.K., 335, 338, 861
Eustathopoulos, H., 642
Evans, B.E., 392
Evans, C.A., 163
Evans, C.M., 294
Evans, D., 692
Evans, D.A., 312, 414, 795, 826, 833, 1021, 1034
Evans, D.F., 159
Evans, E., 286
Evans, E.A., 435, 468
Evans, E.A., Jr., 116
Evans, G.L., 794
Evans, J.C., 142
Evans, M.B., 361
Evans, R.J., 1073
Evans, S.A., 128
Evans, W.G., 74
Evans, W.J., 56
Evans, W.L., 147, 224
Everett, J.R., 126
Everett, J.W., 941
Everly, C.R., 613
Evers, M., 361
Evstigneeva, R.P., 1120
Ewing, D.F., 243
Exner, J.H., 546
Exner, O., 15, 16, 34, 243, 985
Eymann, W., 297
Eyring, H., 99, 120
Ezhaya, A., 1077
Ezzel, M.F., 924

Fabian, J., 780, 794
Fabian, W., 52, 995
Fabienke, E., 444
Fabre, C., 570
Fabre, P., 539
Fabricius, D.M., 1022
Faburada, A.L., 323
Fagan, J.F., 264
Fagan, M.W., 21
Fager, J.H., 1075
Fahey, R.C., 200, 658, 660–663
Fahrenholtz, S.R., 612, 891
Fahrni, H., 372
Faïn, D., 280
Fainberg, A.H., 263, 317, 318
Fainzil'berg, A.A., 170, 324, 529, 624
Fairlie, J.C., 391
Fajer, J., 479
Falbe, J., 720, 722

Falck, J.R., 914
Falk, F., 901
Falkehag, I., 1061
Faller, P., 1057
Fallis, A.G., 745
Fanelli, J., 694
Fanta, P.E., 445, 597
Farah, B.S., 808
Fărcaşiu, D., 188, 282, 450, 953
Farcasiu, M., 962
Farid, S., 215, 766
Farina, M., 82
Farina, V., 713
Farinacci, N.T., 261
Farine, J., 940
Farkas, L.V., 379
Farmer, M.L., 690
Farneth, W., 209
Farng, L.O., 443
Farnham, W.B., 283, 477, 621, 1040
Farnoux, C.C., 803
Farnum, D.G., 49, 149, 282, 283, 758, 868
Farooq, S., 258
Farooqui, T.A., 504
Farquhar, D., 61
Farquharson, G., 431
Farrall, M.J., 865
Farrant, G.C., 777
Farrar, A.C., 549
Farrar, W.V., 797
Farrell, P.G., 450, 887
Farrington, G., 213
Fasel, J., 1042
Fataftah, Z.A., 140
Fatiadi, A.J., 348, 412, 429, 930, 1051, 1052, 1063
Faubl, H., 138
Faulconer, J.M., 572
Faulkner, D.J., 1030
Faust, Y., 383, 621
Faustini, F., 387
Fauth, D.J., 692
Fauvarque, J., 416, 559, 821, 822
Fauvarque, J.F., 416
Fava, A., 137, 267, 442, 1033
Favini, G., 296
Favorskii, A., 967
Favre, A., 349
Fawcett, F.S., 139, 809
Fazakerley, V., 159
Featherman, S.I., 21
Fedder, J.E., 379
Fedenok, L.G., 640
Fedor, L.R., 292, 293, 682, 884, 885
Fedorov, B.S., 731
Fedorova, A.V., 675, 684
Fedorovich, A.D., 1014, 1018
Fedoryński, M., 412
Fedotov, Yu.A., 380
Fedrick, J.L., 584
Feely, W., 904
Fehlner, T.P., 281, 703
Fehnel, E.A., 361
Feibush, B., 106
Feig, G., 637
Feigel, M., 263
Feigl, F., 509
Feigon, J.F., 452
Feiler, L.A., 759, 761, 762, 763
Feit, I.N., 890, 891, 893, 896
Feitler, D., 372
Feld, D., 1033
Feldkimel, M., 398
Feldmann, R., 777
Felix, D., 87, 742, 929
Felix, S., 351
Felker, D., 855
Felkin, H., 106, 286, 314, 408, 715, 995, 1105
Fell, B., 551, 722, 981
Fellenberger, K., 304, 410, 1012, 1033
Fellmann, J.D., 368
Fellmann, P., 833
Fellous, R., 249
Fellows, C.A., 555
Felt, G.R., 266
Feltkamp, H., 120
Felton, E.G., 917
Felton, S.M., 375
Fendler, E.J., 577
Fendler, J.H., 577
Feng, M.S., 199
Feng, R.H.C., 612
Fenoglio, D.J., 123
Fenselau, A.H., 1081
Fentiman, A., 502
Fentiman, A.F., Jr., 275, 276
Fenton, D.M., 721, 779
Fenwick, J., 976
Fenzl, W., 717
Ferappi, M., 480
Ferber, P.H., 275, 280
Ferguson, C.P., 21
Ferguson, D.C., 810
Ferguson, G., 35
Ferguson, J.W., 951
Ferguson, L.N., 1072
Ferguson, R., 1045
Ferland, J.M., 1100
Fernandez, J., 129
Fernández, S., 1063
Fernelius, W.C., 96
Fernholt, L., 27, 123, 124
Ferraboschi, P., 1101
Ferrand, E.F., 325
Ferrari, G.F., 696
Ferreira, A.B., 1042
Ferreira, J.T.B., 361, 1058
Ferreira, T.W., 411
Ferrell, T.M., 1069
Ferreri, C., 385
Ferrero, L., 1105
Ferrier, B.M., 1026
Ferrini, P.G., 937
Ferris, A.F., 815, 931, 932
Ferris, J.P., 564, 816, 856
Fersht, A.R., 294, 334
Ferstandig, L.L., 74
Fessenden, R., 433
Fessenden, R.W., 38, 166, 167
Fétizon, M., 1058, 1084
Fetzer, U., 934
Feuer, B.I., 536
Feuer, H., 342, 370, 638, 787, 815, 1104, 1105
Feuer, J., 749, 751
Feutrill, G.I., 361
Feyen, P., 947
Feytmants-de Medicis, E., 785
Fiandanese, V., 434, 880, 885
Fiato, R.A., 131, 281
Fiaud, J.C., 102, 415
Fichter, K.C., 707
Ficini, J., 763, 916, 1031
Fickes, G.N., 748
Fiedler, P., 16
Field, F.H., 282
Field, K.W., 314, 725
Field, L., 795, 988
Field, L.D., 1107
Fields, D.B., 725
Fields, D.L., 369
Fields, E.K., 543, 580, 747
Fields, E.S., 987
Fields, K.W., 545, 832, 976

Fields, R., 966
Fields, T.R., 1016
Fierz, H.E., 454
Fieser, L.F., 332, 390, 444, 476, 725, 915, 1057, 1096
Fieser, M., 332, 444, 476, 725, 915, 1057, 1096
Fife, T.H., 330, 331, 332, 352
Fife, W.K., 1030
Fifolt, M.J., 415
Figeys, H.P., 37, 55, 547
Figuly, G.D., 545
Fikes, L.E., 987
Filby, W.G., 1087
Filipescu, N., 1013
Filipp, N., 1022
Filippini, G., 44
Filippova, T.V., 736
Filler, R., 230, 479, 725, 1058, 1059
Filley, J., 310
Fillipi, G., 641
Filmore, K.L., 510
Fina, N.J., 310
Finch, A.F., 326
Finch, M.A.W., 289
Finckenor, L., 725
Findlay, J.A., 806
Finger, A., 325
Finger, G.C., 593
Fink, M.J., 9
Fink, W.H., 199
Finkbeiner, H., 742
Finkbeiner, H.L., 842, 981
Finke, J., 832
Finke, R.G., 430, 694
Finkelhor, R.S., 774, 1033
Finkenbine, J.R., 362
Finlayson, A.J., 287
Finlayson, W.L., 334, 366
Finley, K.T., 664, 746, 886, 1113
Finley, R.L., 330
Finn, J.M., 106
Finn, M.G., 736
Finnegan, R.A., 500, 545, 559, 917
Finocchiaro, P., 1112
Finston, H.L., 218
Finzel, R.B., 274, 275
Fioshin, M.Ya., 654
Firestone, R.A., 24, 744, 1029
Firl, J., 747
Firouzabadi, H., 1092
Firth, W.C., 654
Fisanick, G.J., 133
Fisch, A., 547
Fisch, M., 958
Fischer, A., 216, 222, 459, 463, 467, 764, 765, 951
Fischer, C.M., 1067
Fischer, E.O., 75
Fischer, G., 39, 106, 108, 468, 699
Fischer, H., 151, 162, 163, 219, 500, 616, 758, 955
Fischer, H.P., 519, 931, 932
Fischer, J., 638
Fischer, K., 710, 867
Fischer, M., 504, 1098
Fischer, M.S., 129
Fischer, N.S., 867
Fischer, P., 457
Fischer, P.B., 467, 577
Fischer, R.G., 479
Fischer, S.F., 210
Fischer, W., 573, 927
Fischer, W.F., Jr., 401, 430, 713
Fischer-Hjalmars, I., 29
Fischli, A., 816
Fish, A., 955, 1057
Fishbein, R., 530, 615, 621
Fishel, D.L., 805, 1072
Fisher, A., 933
Fisher, I.P., 581
Fisher, R.D., 200, 263, 318
Fisher, R.P., 997, 999, 1000, 1001
Fisher, T.H., 613
Fisher, W.F., 16
Fishman, D.H., 599
Fishman, J., 653
Fitch, P.M., 902
Fitjer, L., 965
Fitzgerald, B.M., 1033
Fitzgerald, P., 991
Fitzgerald, P.H., 341, 662
Fitzgerald, R., 16, 298
Fitzpatrick, J.D., 51, 53
Fitzpatrick, J.M., 837
Fizet, C., 807
Flack, H.D., 67
Flammang, R., 138
Flammang-Barbieux, M., 91
Flatt, G.W., 1058
Flatt, S.J., 1058
Flautt, T.J., 545
Fleet, G.W.J., 396, 810, 1058, 1098
Fleig, H., 788
Fleischhauer, J., 749
Fleming, I., 420, 521, 749, 751, 752, 832
Fleming, M.P., 408, 654, 919, 921, 1112
Fleming, N.B., 490
Fleming, R.H., 759
Fleming, S.A., 1021
Fletcher, I.J., 838
Fletcher, R.S., 240
Fleury, J., 989
Fligge, M., 790
Flippin, L.A., 833
Fliszár, S., 149, 1060, 1067, 1068, 1070
Flitsch, W., 58, 853
Flood, S.H., 452, 480, 487
Flood, T.C., 513, 919, 1112
Flowers, L.I., 722
Floyd, D., 713
Floyd, D.M., 401
Flury, P., 281
Flynn, D.L., 339
Flynn, E.W., 978
Flynn, J., Jr., 298
Flynn, K.E., 137
Flynn, R., 596
Foà, M., 595, 597
Fobare, W.F., 477, 1030
Fochi, R., 1102
Fodor, G., 241, 293, 388, 495
Fogel, E.R., 914
Foglia, T.A., 353
Fokin, A.V., 325, 362
Foldi, V.S., 863
Foley, J.W., 952
Foley, K.M., 1102
Foley, P.J., Jr., 930
Folli, U., 34
Folliard, J.T., 787
Follmann, R., 867
Folsom, T.K., 351
Fomina, V.I., 80
Fomum, Z.T., 694
Fong, C.W., 551
Fong, F.K., 282
Fong, G.D., 1070
Fonken, G.J., 764, 1002, 1009
Fono, A., 687
Font, J., 976
Foote, C.S., 130, 634, 635, 738

Foote, J.L., 472
Foote, R.S., 833
Forbes, E.J., 507, 788
Forch, B.E., 62
Ford, G.P., 244
Ford, J.A., Jr., 850
Ford, M.E., 867, 1058, 1083
Ford, R.A., 125, 633
Ford, S.H., 429
Ford, T.M., 917
Ford, W.T., 308, 519, 745, 848, 887, 888, 1011
Foreman, M.I., 76
Forestier, C., 434
Forestiere, A., 939, 1084
Forlani, L., 797
Forni, A., 87
Forrest, J., 597
Forrest, T.P., 1033
Forrester, A.R., 164, 172
Forrester, J.L., 724
Forsén, S., 66, 68
Förster, H., 120, 140
Forster, M., 1070
Förster, S., 381
Forsyth, D.A., 279, 280, 450
Forsythe, G.D., 702
Fort, A.W., 973
Fort, R.C., Jr., 148, 167, 235, 258, 261, 282, 514, 616, 947, 961
Fortunato, J.M., 694
Foscolos, G., 820
Foscolos, G.B., 828
Foss, F.D., 290
Foss, R.P., 210, 1111
Fossel, E.T., 1026
Foster, G., 627, 1072, 1077
Foster, R., 74, 76, 577, 599
Fosty, R., 515
Föttinger, W., 1071
Fouad, F.M., 887
Foubister, A.J., 1107
Foulon, J.P., 713
Fountain, K.R., 187
Fouquet, G., 404
Four, P., 396, 694, 716
Fournier, L., 795
Fournier, P., 401
Fowler, F.W., 730
Fowler, J.S., 363, 547
Fowler, R., 802
Fox, A.S., 627
Fox, B.L., 989
Fox, R.C., 135
Frach, R., 933
Fraenkel, G., 157, 160, 293, 599, 808
Frajerman, C., 995
Frampton, V.L., 49, 136
Francesch, C., 843
Franceschetti, D.R., 171
Franchi, V., 645
Franchini, C., 1081
Francis, A.W., 481, 661
Francis, P.S., 1059
Franck-Neumann, M., 751, 938
Frank, D.L., 280
Frank, F.J., 1057
Frank, G.A., 850
Franke, F.P., 613
Franke, W., 147, 908
Frankel, E.N., 695
Frankel, J.J., 393
Frankel, M.B., 370
Franken, E., 139
Franklin, N.C., 120, 890
Franklin, R.E., 167
Franz, J.A., 345
Franz, R.A., 575
Franzen, V., 175, 479, 912, 1083
Franzus, B., 383, 1019
Fraser, A.R., 766
Fraser, R.R., 157, 417, 468
Frasnelli, H., 837
Frater, G., 976
Fráter, G., 1028, 1029
Fravel, H.G., Jr., 1016
Fray, G.I., 54, 749
Frazier, H.W., 844
Frazier, K.A., 1100
Frazier, R.H., Jr., 1092
Fréchet, J.M.J., 373, 555, 865
Fredenhagen, H., 1119
Freed, K.F., 210
Freedman, H.H., 50, 145, 1002, 1083
Freedman, L.D., 591, 1135
Freeman, C.H., 157
Freeman, F., 412, 631, 657, 787, 1085
Freeman, H.S., 591
Freeman, J.P., 157, 395
Freeman, P.K., 667, 759, 767
Freeman, R., 644
Freeman, R.C., 383, 690
Freeman, W.R., 621
Freenor, F.J., 383, 385
Freerksen, R.W., 1109
Freidlin, L.Kh., 696, 815, 858
Freidlina, R.Kh., 390, 399, 731, 955, 956, 957
Freiesleben, W., 526, 636, 643, 710, 1084
Freifelder, M., 692, 700, 815
Freilich, S.C., 868
Freiser, B.S., 466
Frejd, T., 403
Fremaux, B., 857
French, M.A., 74
Frenkel, A.D., 1046
Frensdorff, H.K., 77
Frenz, B.A., 129
Frese, E., 866
Frey, A., 392
Frey, E.J., 708
Frey, H., 847
Frey, H.M., 130, 171, 172, 174, 175, 544, 761, 763, 768, 770, 966, 1009, 1017, 1020
Frey, T.G., 666, 858
Freyberger, G., 760
Fricke, H., 772
Frickel, F., 1034
Fridkin, M., 373
Fridman, A.L., 424, 441, 572, 1106
Fried, H.E., 43, 247
Fried, J., 429
Fried, J.H., 671, 716, 818
Friedel, R.A., 702
Friederang, A., 730
Friedman, B.S., 479
Friedman, J.P., 498
Friedman, L., 175, 285, 313, 402, 429, 543, 582, 747, 911, 1072
Friedman, M., 671
Friedman, N., 144
Friedman, O.M., 807
Friedrich, A., 1018
Friedrich, E., 833
Friedrich, E.C., 63, 385, 773
Friedrich, K., 429, 723, 855, 901, 930, 933
Friege, H., 751, 769
Friend, C.M., 1053
Friesen, D., 123
Frihart, C., 61
Frimer, A.A., 634, 635, 738

Fringuelli, F., 42
Frisch, H.L., 93
Frisch, M.A., 124
Frisell, C., 549
Frisque-Hesbain, A., 388
Fristad, W.E., 654, 734, 1074
Fritch, J.R., 1038
Fritsch, P., 978
Fritz, H., 488, 807, 1114, 1115
Fritz, H.L., 515
Fritz, H.P., 75
Fritzberg, A.R., 973
Fritze, P., 138
Fritzen, E., 407
Froemsdorf, D.H., 887, 891, 900, 911
Frolov, A.N., 648
Froment, F., 157
Frommeld, H.D., 833, 1108
Frost, K.A., II, 137, 298
Frost, L.N., 338
Frøyen, P., 853
Fruchey, O.S., 289
Fruit, R.E., Jr., 145, 1084
Fry, A., 289, 661, 707, 874, 886, 898, 967, 991
Fry, A.J., 283, 861
Fry, F.S., Jr., 69
Fry, J.L., 263, 300, 393, 815, 816, 948, 953, 954, 993, 1097, 1102
Fry, M.A., 1074
Fryhle, C.B., 361
Fryzuk, M.D., 104, 693
Fu, C.C., 398
Fu, P.P., 1052, 1053
Fu, T., 1097
Fuchita, T., 920
Fuchs, B., 129
Fuchs, H., 88
Fuchs, P.L., 331, 785, 847, 920
Fuchs, R., 242, 308, 317, 383, 1071
Fudim, M., 509
Fueno, T., 83, 331, 675, 728, 749, 758
Fuerholzer, J.F., 379
Fuji, K., 361
Fujii, K., 847
Fujii, S., 553, 773, 1091
Fujii, T., 694
Fujikura, Y., 627, 962
Fujimori, K., 799, 1047
Fujimoto, E., 73
Fujimoto, E.K., 318
Fujimoto, H., 751, 752, 1023
Fujinami, T., 803, 934
Fujio, M., 234
Fujioka, Y., 595
Fujisawa, T., 397, 408, 435, 475, 695, 728, 811, 827, 921, 1099
Fujise, Y., 758
Fujishige, S., 692
Fujita, E., 361
Fujita, I., 106
Fujita, K., 832, 945, 1077
Fujita, T., 249
Fujita, Y., 1033
Fujiwara, F.Y., 74
Fujiwara, S., 773
Fujiwara, Y., 353, 491, 560, 643, 732, 1112
Fukata, G., 505
Fuks, R., 744, 746, 763, 770, 774, 793
Fukuda, E.K., 337
Fukuda, H., 372
Fukuda, N., 794
Fukuhara, T., 481, 680
Fukui, A., 1033
Fukui, K., 751, 752, 823, 1023
Fukumoto, T., 350, 443, 574, 1047, 1100
Fukumura, M., 807
Fukunaga, J.Y., 761, 1016
Fukunaga, K., 923, 924
Fukunaga, T., 38, 1100
Fukuoka, S., 575
Fukushima, A., 847
Fukushima, D., 1092
Fukushima, M., 403
Fukuta, G., 510
Fukuto, J.M., 515
Fukuyama, T., 19, 20
Fukuzawa, S., 628, 913
Fukuzumi, K., 1037
Fukuzumi, S., 516, 660
Fuller, D.L., 610, 614
Fuller, G., 725
Fuller, S.E., 140, 621
Fullerton, D.S., 1077
Fulmer, R.W., 1054
Fulton, R.P., 395
Funabiki, T., 430, 692
Funakoshi, W., 391
Funderburk, L.H., 198, 784
Fünfschilling, P.C., 677
Fung, A.P., 345, 498, 933, 988, 1060
Fung, L.W., 738
Fung, N.Y.M., 810
Fung, S.H., 377
Fuqua, S.A., 847
Furin, G.G., 480
Furmanova, N.G., 68
Furrow, S.D., 726
Furst, A., 694, 1103, 1117
Furstoss, R., 1040
Furter, H., 392
Furubayashi, T., 717, 1002
Furuhata, T., 361
Furukawa, H., 819
Furukawa, I., 350, 351
Furukawa, J., 83, 331, 749, 758, 766, 772, 773, 817
Furukawa, N., 383, 588, 601, 741, 807, 899, 982, 1092, 1108
Furukawa, S., 440
Furumai, S., 1108
Furusaki, A., 577
Furuyama, S., 668
Fusco, R., 1032
Fuson, R.C., 396, 398, 716
Fustero, S., 854
Füzesi, L., 1033
Fyfe, C.A., 450, 577, 588, 599, 806

Gaasbeek, C.J., 144, 282, 523
Gaasbeek, M.M.P., 767
Gabard, J., 823
Gabbard, R.B., 529
Gabhe, S.Y., 549
Gable, C.M., 79
Gabrielsen, B., 266
Gadallah, F.F., 641, 642
Gadberry, J.F., 660
Gaffney, A., 888
Gagnier, R.P., 400
Gagosian, R.B., 972, 973, 977
Gaillard, J., 858
Gajda, T., 377
Gajek, K., 1022
Gajewski, J.J., 53, 952, 956, 1003, 1014, 1021, 1024, 1028
Gal, C., 621
Gal, G., 495
Gale, L.H., 125, 552
Gall, J.S., 265, 308

Gall, M., 419, 420, 436
Gallagher, M.J., 88
Galle, J.E., 715, 775
Galley, M.W., 467
Galli, A., 621
Galli, C., 185, 353, 647
Galli, R., 621, 646, 728, 741
Galliani, G., 498
Gallina, C., 289, 409
Gallivan, R.M., Jr., 705
Gallo, R., 248, 320
Gallois, P., 692
Galloy, J., 78
Gallucci, R.R., 530
Galobardes, M.R., 787
Galton, S.A., 1097
Gamasa, M.P., 1118
Gambaryan, N.P., 783
Gambill, C.R., 445
Gammill, R.B., 694
Gan, L.H., 525
Ganboa, I., 806, 807
Gancher, E., 1066
Gandolfi, C.A., 387
Gandolfi, R., 743
Gandour, R.W., 64
Ganellin, C.R., 92
Ganem, B., 354, 377, 694, 815, 834, 920, 1082, 1086
Ganesan, R., 792
Ganguly, A.K., 479
Ganguly, R.N., 989
Gani, V., 340
Ganis, P., 58
Gannett, T.P., 1042
Gannon, W.F., 977
Gano, J.E., 170
Ganter, C., 962
Ganushchak, N.I., 642, 731
Ganz, C., 681
Gaoni, Y., 57, 58, 59, 61
Gapinski, R.E., 363
Gara, A.P., 853
Garapon, J., 726
Garbarino, J.A., 860
Garbisch, E.W., Jr., 44, 393, 530, 577, 587, 740
García, B.A., 382
Garcia, G.A., 832
Garcia, J., 376
Garcia, T., 350
Garcia-Luna, A., 372
Gardette, M., 778
Gardikes, J.J., 740
Gardiner, W.C., Jr., 192
Gardini, G.P., 621, 645, 646
Gardlik, J.M., 92
Gardner, H.C., 715
Gardner, J.N., 1108
Gardner, P.D., 138, 696
Gareev, G.A., 346
Garegg, P.J., 383, 919
Garfield, E., 1130
Garg, C.P., 705, 816, 1057
Gariano, A., 354
Gariano, P., Jr., 354
Garley, M., 358
Garner, A.Y., 770
Garner, C.S., 514
Garner, L.A., 1046
Garnett, J.L., 468
Garnier, B., 974
Garnovskii, A.D., 228
Garrard, T.F., 1088
Garratt, D.G., 657, 662, 672
Garratt, P.J., 37, 56, 57, 59, 62, 941
Garrison, B.J., 207
Garrou, P.E., 368
Garsky, V., 711
Garst, J.F., 404, 439, 549, 924, 995
Garst, R.H., 578
Garvey, D.S., 833
Garwood, D.C., 257
Garwood, R.F., 503
Garza, T., 758
Gasc, M.B., 689, 690, 691
Gaset, A., 865
Gash, V.W., 1054
Gaspar, P.P., 170, 523, 525, 771
Gasparrini, F., 1102
Gasperoni, S., 785
Gassman, P.G., 114, 115, 178, 275, 276, 277, 300, 302, 334, 339, 390, 413, 478, 496, 536, 567, 687, 766, 767, 989, 990, 1040, 1041
Gastaminza, A., 456
Gasteiger, J., 22, 245, 701
Gaston, L.K., 1113
Gates, J.W., Jr., 594
Gates, M., 280
Gati, A., 775
Gati, E., 107
Gatto, V.J., 77
Gattuso, M.J., 38
Gaudemar, M., 421, 823
Gaudry, M., 802
Gaugler, R.W., 222
Gaul, J.M., 1102
Gault, Y., 106, 917
Gäumann, T., 235
Gauthier, R., 828
Gautier, J., 803
Gautier, J.A., 694
Gavezzotti, A., 9, 19
Gavrilenko, V.V., 397, 398, 510, 551, 816
Gawley, R.E., 249, 834
Gaylord, N.G., 694, 1052, 1093, 1099, 1101
Gebelein, C.G., 730
Gebicki, J.M., 162
Gebrian, J.H., 56
Geels, E.J., 574
Geer, R.P., 899
Gehret, J.E., 770
Geiger, C.C., 281, 302
Geise, H.J., 123, 124, 1112
Geise, H.Y., 1113
Geisel, M., 654, 927
Geiss, K., 422
Geissman, T.A., 1117
Geke, J., 468
Gelas-Mialhe, Y., 807
Gella, I.M., 87
Geller, B.A., 368, 501
Geller, L.E., 1045
Gellert, E., 641
Gellert, H.G., 917
Geltz, Z., 224
Gemal, A.L., 391, 694, 810
Gembitskii, P.A., 457
Gendreau, Y., 410, 411
Geneste, J., 727
Geneste, P., 276, 1059
Gennari, C., 832, 833
Genoni, F., 696
Gensler, W.J., 695
Gent, B.B., 890
Geoffroy, M., 814
Geoghegan, P.J., Jr., 681
George, J., 1103
George, M.V., 1003, 1051
George, R.S., 819
George, T.J., 909
Georghiou, P.E., 390, 694
Georgoulis, C., 256, 289, 560
Gérard, L., 946
Gerasimova, E.S., 986

Gerecs, A., 499
Gerhardt, G., 187
Gerlach, D.H., 556
Gerlach, H., 108, 349
Gerlach, R., 1034
Germain, A., 146, 487
German, A.L., 352
German, L.S., 729
Germon, C., 409
Gero, A., 67
Gerrard, W., 223, 905
Gershtein, N.A., 510
Gersmann, H.R., 539, 634
Gerstenberger, M.R.C., 620
Gerth, D.B., 938
Geske, D.H., 162
Gesson, J., 498, 628
Getman, D., 1020
Geuss, R., 160
Gevorgyan, G.A., 800
Ghanbarpour, A., 200, 886
Ghatak, U.R., 1100
Ghattas, A.A.G., 794
Ghelfenstein, M., 995
Ghenciulescu, A., 1080
Gheorghiu, M.D., 761
Ghirardelli, R.G., 883
Ghiringhelli, D., 331
Ghose, B.N., 640
Ghosez, L., 388, 759, 760, 761, 1012
Ghosh, A.K., 293
Ghosh, S., 493, 931, 981
Giacobbe, T.J., 636
Giacomelli, G., 710, 811
Giacomello, P., 479
Giam, C., 555
Giam, C.S., 643
Giamalva, D., 1067
Gianni, M.H., 119, 128
Giansiracusa, J.J., 282
Gibbons, C.S., 134
Gibbs, H.W., 459
Gibian, M.J., 169
Gibson, D.H., 1023
Gibson, L.L., 1030
Gibson, M.S., 364, 377, 689
Gidaspov, B.V., 381, 468, 573, 986, 987, 1089
Gidley, G.C., 621, 725, 890
Gielen, M., 86, 515, 521
Giering, W.P., 921
Giersch, W., 1063
Giese, B., 166, 175, 666, 672, 674, 719, 769, 770
Giffney, C.J., 341
Giga, A., 378
Giger, U., 772
Giguère, P.A., 123
Gil-Av, E., 106, 108, 1002
Gilbert, A., 1009
Gilbert, B.C., 162
Gilbert, D.P., 687
Gilbert, E.C., 810
Gilbert, E.E., 364, 473, 475, 509, 537, 588, 637, 648, 688, 798, 808, 1087
Gilbert, H.F., 781
Gilbert, J.C., 137, 761, 1021
Gilbert, K.E., 1023, 1087
Gilbert, R.P., 297
Gilchrist, M., 291, 310
Gilchrist, T.L., 56, 170, 580, 741, 751, 758, 1003
Gilde, H., 653, 654
Giles, W.B., 751
Gilkerson, T., 1104
Gill, G.B., 751, 858
Gill, N.S., 712
Gilles, J., 59, 60, 61, 1025
Gillespie, R.J., 143, 218, 219, 470
Gillick, J.G., 694
Gillies, C.W., 1067, 1069, 1070
Gilman, H., 433, 512, 581
Gilman, N.W., 638, 1023, 1031
Gilmore, W.F., 971
Gilow, H.M., 456, 478
Gimzewski, J.K., 235
Ginak, A.I., 657
Gingrich, H.L., 744
Ginodman, L.G., 591
Ginos, J.Z., 872
Ginsburg, D., 711, 758
Ginzburg, B.M., 584
Giordano, C., 636, 971
Gipe, B.T., 659, 725
Girard, C., 772, 1030
Girard, J.P., 734
Girard, P., 390, 436
Gisler, M., 788
Gitlin, L.F., 891, 893
Gitlitz, M.H., 559
Gittos, M.W., 803
Giumanini, A.G., 423, 605, 992, 993
Givens, E.N., 264
Givens, R.S., 215, 937, 1026
Gladfelter, E.J., 621
Gladiali, S., 844
Gladysheva, F.N., 744
Gladysz, J.A., 904, 1097
Glass, L.E., 281, 338
Glass, R.S., 807
Glasson, W.A., 310
Glave, W.R., 885
Glaze, W.H., 157, 515, 917
Glazer, E.A., 990
Glazunova, E.M., 838
Gleason, J.G., 532, 1092, 1110
Gleicher, G.J., 29, 616, 617, 619, 962
Gleiter, R., 46, 74, 131, 146, 492, 635, 758, 777, 927
Gleize, P.A., 694
Glenn, R., 294
Glick, A.H., 868
Glick, M.D., 686
Glick, R., 270
Glick, R.E., 247
Glidewell, C., 477
Glineur, M., 1012
Glinka, T., 599
Glöckner, H., 54
Glockner, P., 774
Gloor, B.F., 596
Glotzmann, C., 109
Glover, I.T., 314, 952
Glover, S.A., 727
Glowinski, R., 652
Glushkov, R.G., 312, 346, 359
Glyde, E., 65
Gnanapragasam, N.S., 478
Gnedin, B.G., 443
Goasdoué, N., 823
Gobert, F., 1111
Godat, M., 322
Goddard, R., 777
Goddard, W.A., III, 171, 751, 1039, 1070
Godel, T., 713
Godfrey, C.R.A., 394, 1054
Godfrey, I.M., 991
Godfrey, M., 175, 463
Godhino, L.S., 529
Godleski, S., 281
Godleski, S.A., 962
Godovikova, T.I., 570
Godoy, J., 1088
Godschalx, J., 406
Godtfredsen, S., 289
Goedecke, E., 46
Goedicke, C., 91
Goel, A.B., 262, 391, 778, 813, 817, 822, 831, 903

Goerdeler, J., 379
Goering, H.L., 157, 264, 265, 275, 282, 288, 408, 409, 417, 637, 667, 676, 1030
Goerner, R.N., Jr., 955
Goetschel, C.T., 955
Goggin, P., 498
Goh, S.H., 510
Going, R., 530
Gojković, S., 632
Gokcek, D.Y., 349
Gokel, G.W., 77, 78, 320, 343, 353, 361, 370, 382, 416, 429, 543, 570, 641, 646, 769, 836, 845, 870, 871, 934
Golborn, P., 461
Gold, H., 329
Gold, P.M., 694
Gold, V., 141, 142, 147, 193, 200, 222, 233, 272, 311, 334, 467, 524, 546, 577, 662, 813
Goldacre, R.J., 145
Goldberg, B.J., 286
Goldberg, N.L., 353
Goldberg, S.I., 102, 898
Goldberg, S.Z., 56
Golden, D.M., 668
Golden, J.T., 501, 502
Golden, R., 16
Gol'dfarb, Ya.L., 134, 135, 240, 387
Goldfinger, P., 622, 625
Goldhamer, D., 133, 758
Goldhamer, D.M., 666
Golding, B.T., 1022
Gol'ding, I.R., 595
Golding, P.D., 503
Goldmacher, J.E., 985
Goldman, G., 476, 485
Goldman, G.K., 65
Goldman, I.M., 765
Goldman, L., 1081, 1082
Goldman, M., 106
Goldman, N., 420
Goldmann, A., 133
Goldmann, S., 1034
Gol'dshtein, I.P., 72
Goldsmith, B., 390, 395
Goldsmith, E.A., 954
Goldstein, M.J., 1010, 1023
Goldwhite, H., 504, 671
Golfier, M., 1058, 1084
Golik, V.D., 731
Goliński, J., 599
Goller, E.J., 780
Gollis, M.H., 369
Gollnick, K., 634, 635, 737
Golod, E.L., 452, 468, 573
Golovina, Z.P., 294
Golse, R., 409
Golub, A.M., 1021
Golubkin, L.N., 456
Gölz, G., 1031
Gomberg, M., 141, 165
Gomes de Mesquita, A.H., 148
Gómez Aranda, V., 740
Gompper, R., 52, 54, 324, 582, 763, 1024
Goncharov, A.N., 290
Gonzalez, T., 321
Gooch, E.E., 551, 552
Goode, E.V., 15
Goode, N.C., 233
Goodin, R., 223
Goodlett, V.W., 759, 761
Goodman, L., 921
Goodwin, T.H., 24, 26, 131
Goon, D.J.W., 882, 1047
Goosen, A., 727, 1044
Gopal, H., 1074, 1088
Gopalan, R., 530
Gopius, E.D., 953, 980
Goralski, C.T., 472, 728
Gordin, M.B., 949
Gordon, A.J., 633, 676, 1088
Gordon, J.E., 308, 924
Gordon, K.M., 913, 1078
Gordon, M., 632, 924
Gordon, M.D., 744, 749
Gordon, R.J., 1010
Gordon, S., 40
Goré, J., 331, 407, 409, 696, 761
Gore, P.H., 461, 485, 487, 506
Gorenstein, D.G., 579
Görlach, Y., 1026
Gorlier, J., 713
Görlitz, M., 1026
Gorman, A.A., 634
Görner, H., 215
Gorrod, J.W., 1086
Gorton, P.J., 681
Gorzynski, J.D., 400
Gosavi, R.K., 976
Goshaev, M., 597
Gosney, A.P., 471
Gosney, I., 771, 850
Gosselain, P.A., 625
Gosselck, J., 414
Gosselin, P., 310
Gosser, L., 518, 519
Gössinger, E., 594
Goswami, J.C., 831
Goto, S., 921
Goto, T., 715, 1034
Gotoh, Y., 811
Gotor, V., 854
Götschi, E., 941
Gott, P.G., 759
Gottardi, W., 477, 574, 1061
Gotthardt, H., 868
Goudmand, P., 1024
Gough, R.G., 404
Gouin, L., 680
Gould, D., 725
Gould, E.S., 736, 1089
Gould, F.E., 815, 932
Gould, I.R., 769, 770
Gould, K.J., 1001, 1002
Gover, T.A., 621
Govindan, C.K., 1067, 1092
Gowenlock, B.G., 572
Gowland, F.W., 813
Gozzo, F., 1009
Grabley, F., 1031
Grabowski, E.J.J., 417
Grabowski, J., 303
Grabowski, J.J., 310
Grachev, M.A., 732
Gracheva, E.P., 666, 687
Graczyk, D.G., 266
Graefe, J., 684
Graf, E., 78
Graf, N.A., 761
Graf, R., 869
Graffeuil, M., 235
Gragerov, I.P., 404, 641, 647, 1080, 1086
Gragor, N., 1085
Graham, G.R., 776
Graham, J., 470
Graham, J.D., 947
Graham, R., 87
Graham, S.H., 1105
Graham, W.D., 770
Graham, W.H., 982
Grahn, W., 672
Graiver, D., 81
Grakauskas, V., 479, 574, 655
Gramaccioli, C.M., 58, 577
Gramain, J., 1111
Gramain, J.C., 376
Gramstad, T., 72, 480
Grandberg, I.I., 931, 1032

Grandolini, G., 42
Granger, M.R., 222, 223
Granger, R., 734
Granik, V.G., 136, 312, 346, 359, 803
Granito, C., 442
Granoth, I., 694, 1108
Grant, B., 788
Grant, D.M., 9, 105
Grant, H.M., 223
Grant, J.L., 223
Grant, P.K., 1085
Grant, R.W., 994
Gras, J., 343, 759
Gras, J.L., 761
Grashey, R., 743, 745, 758, 768
Grasselli, P., 559, 818, 826, 1098
Grätz, W., 410
Gravel, D., 1068
Gravestock, M.B., 1101
Gravitz, N., 293
Gray, P., 618
Gray, P.G., 895
Gray, R., 59
Graybill, B.M., 476
Grayshan, R., 422
Grayson, J.I., 747
Grayson, M., 483
Grayston, M.W., 408, 921, 966
Grazhulene, S.S., 917
Graziani, M., 488
Grdina, M.J., 635
Grdinic, M., 673
Gream, G.E., 275, 280, 1074, 1114
Greasley, P.M., 450
Greeley, R.H., 55
Green, B., 1100
Green, B.S., 102, 105
Green, D.T., 726
Green, F.R., III, 787, 926
Green, J., 1031
Green, M., 310, 776, 932
Green, M.L.H., 45, 75, 157, 512
Green, R.D., 73
Greenberg, A., 50, 130, 133, 134, 961, 1026
Greenblatt, J., 86
Greene, A.E., 1098
Greene, F.D., 357, 736, 892, 956, 973, 1045
Greene, G.H., Jr., 16
Greene, J.L., 967
Greene, J.L., Jr., 899
Greene, R.N., 1029
Greene, T.W., 343
Greener, E., 933
Greenlee, K.W., 130, 695
Greenlee, W.J., 353, 855
Greenlimb, P.E., 847
Greenwald, R., 846
Greenwood, F.L., 1067, 1069
Greenwood, T.D., 832
Greer, S., 811
Gregor, I.K., 468
Gregorčič, A., 725
Gregoriou, G.A., 266
Gregory, B.J., 266, 989
Gregory, C.D., 400
Gregory, M.J., 310, 507
Gregory, T.A., 210
Gregson, M., 382, 406
Greibrokk, T., 730
Greiciute, D., 728
Greig, C.C., 459
Greigger, B.A., 1071
Greiner, A., 901
Greisinger, R., 1018
Grekov, A.P., 310
Grellier, P.L., 521
Gremaud, D., 767
Gresser, M., 201
Gresser, M.J., 376
Greuter, H., 866
Grey, R.A., 1101
Grgurina, I., 368
Gribble, G.W., 392, 511, 799, 810
Gribchenko, E.A., 603
Grice, P., 398
Grieco, C., 298
Grieco, P.A., 339, 372, 382, 406, 423, 536, 543, 685, 768, 774, 913, 1033, 1034, 1060
Griengl, H., 857
Griesbaum, K., 662, 675, 687, 688, 1067
Grieve, D.M.A., 293
Griffin, G.W., 173, 1042
Griffin, J.H., 768
Griffin, M.T., 364
Griffin, R.N., 564
Griffith, J.R., 792
Griffith, R.C., 123
Griffiths, G., 311
Griffiths, J., 202
Griffiths, J.G., 761
Griffiths, P.A., 764
Grigat, E., 343
Grigg, R., 59, 367, 743, 1084
Grigina, I.N., 838
Grigor, B.A., 222
Grigor'eva, N.Ya., 874
Grigoryan, M.Sh., 817
Griller, D., 162, 166, 616, 956
Grillot, G.F., 409, 503
Grim, S.O., 847
Grimaud, J., 951
Grimm, K.G., 795
Grimm, R.A., 653
Grimme, W., 136, 762, 1017
Grimmelikhuysen, J.C., 1068
Grimshaw, J., 399, 1116
Grimwood, B.E., 730
Grinberg, S., 985
Grineva, N.A., 347
Grisdale, E.E., 308
Grisdale, P.J., 16, 237
Griswold, A.A., 1003
Gritter, R.J., 325
Grivas, J.C., 803
Grob, C.A., 16, 17, 237, 280, 281, 282, 296, 297, 616, 654, 663, 926, 927, 928, 931, 932, 959
Gröbel, B., 331, 418, 837
Grochowski, E., 842
Groen, M.B., 107
Groenenwegen, F., 417
Groenewege, M.P., 222
Grohmann, K., 57
Gronowitz, S., 461
Grootveld, H.H., 139
Gros, C., 95
Grosjean, D., 670
Grosjean, M., 120
Gross, A.W., 420
Gross, B., 560
Gross, B. von, 52
Gross, E., 372
Gross, G., 138
Gross, H., 302, 490, 840
Grosse, D., 389
Grossie, D.A., 78
Grossman, N., 969
Grout, A., 886
Groutas, W.C., 855
Grovenstein, E., Jr., 478, 508, 569, 958, 962, 963

Groves, J.K., 537, 732
Groves, J.T., 49, 627, 741
Groves, L.G., 65
Groves, P.T., 224, 639
Grubber, M.J., 1012
Grubbs, E.J., 16, 977
Grubbs, R., 52
Grubbs, R.H., 766, 826, 832, 1037, 1039
Gruber, J.M., 628
Gruber, L., 678
Gruber, W., 945
Grubmüller, P., 569
Gruen, L.C., 467
Gruetzmacher, G., 496
Grünanger, P., 743
Gründemann, E., 87
Grundke, H., 995
Grundmann, C., 864, 1108
Grundon, M.F., 931, 1096
Grundy, J., 354
Grüner, H., 767
Grunewald, G.L., 378, 1026
Gruntz, U., 354, 364
Grunwald, E., 72, 192, 234, 318, 464
Grutzner, J.B., 155, 156, 638
Gruzdneva, V.N., 244, 953
Gschwend, H.W., 545
Guanti, G., 443
Gubelt, C., 551
Gudkov, B.S., 696
Gudkova, A.S., 980
Gudkova, I.P., 106, 108
Guella, F., 296
Guenzet, J., 662, 686, 687
Guérin, C., 86
Guerrieri, F., 432
Guertin, D.L., 1088
Guetté, J., 108, 109, 477, 529
Gugel, H., 137
Guggenberger, L.J., 159
Guggisberg, A., 377
Guibe, F., 223, 308, 325, 396, 694
Guida, A.R., 354
Guida, W.C., 354
Guilhem, J., 115
Guillaume, A., 625
Guillaumet, G., 367, 596
Guillemonat, A., 675
Guillot, L., 856
Guindon, Y., 361, 384
Guinn, V.P., 955
Guinot, A., 267
Guisnet, M., 360
Guitard, J., 1085
Guk, Yu.V., 452, 468
Gumby, W.L., 155, 308
Gunaratne, H.Q.N., 743
Gund, P., 133
Gund, T.M., 133, 962
Gundel, L., 527
Gundermann, K.D., 270
Gunn, D.M., 428
Gunning, H.E., 976
Gunsher, J., 772
Gunstone, F.D., 732
Günthard, H., 1070
Günthard, H.H., 46
Günther, B., 281, 952
Günther, H., 38, 56, 58, 61, 771, 1003, 1025, 1026
Günther, K., 1087
Günzl, W., 749
Gupta, B.D., 343
Gupta, B.G.B., 351, 383, 385, 386, 433, 787, 861, 933, 934, 1060, 1108
Gupta, C., 259
Gupta, D., 1066
Gupta, I., 672
Gupta, S.C., 628
Gupta, S.K., 692, 706, 996
Gupton, J.T., 555, 591, 987
Gurak, J.A., 559
Gurien, H., 925
Gurka, D.F., 457
Gurskii, M.E., 428
Gurudutt, K.N., 920
Gurwara, S.K., 682
Gur'yanova, E.N., 72
Gur'yanova, T.P., 552
Guseinova, S.N., 495
Gusel'nikov, L.E., 9
Gust, D., 21
Gustafson, D.H., 299
Gustafson, G., 323
Gutekunst, B., 9
Gutekunst, G., 9
Guthrie, J.P., 67, 223, 227, 291, 831
Guthrie, R.D., 161, 165, 345, 528, 947
Gutman, A.L., 57
Gutmann, H., 695
Gutmann, R., 499
Gutowski, F.D., 651
Gutowsky, H.S., 165, 196
Gutsche, C.D., 77, 866, 936, 938, 965, 967, 971, 975, 976, 977, 1020
Guttieri, M.J., 695
Gutzwiller, J., 108, 694
Guy, A., 477, 529
Guy, R.G., 364
Guyton, C.A., 763
Guziec, F.S., Jr., 941, 1058
Guzik, H., 653
Gwinn, W.D., 129
Gwynn, D., 1030

Haacke, C., 51
Haaf, W., 720
Haag, A., 836
Haag, W., 920
Haag, W.O., 900
Haage, K., 828
Haake, M., 785, 865
Haaland, A., 44
Haas, A., 620
Haas, C.K., 769
Haase, K., 389
Habdas, J., 1035
Haberfield, P., 290, 317, 325, 478
Haberland, H., 481
Haberland, U., 58
Habib, M.M., 692
Habibi, M.F., 115
Habich, A., 1028, 1029
Hach, V., 703
Hacker, N.P., 769, 770
Hackett, M.C., 1031
Hackett, P., 1041
Hackler, R.E., 994, 1033
Haddon, R.C., 37, 38, 57, 143, 171, 281
Haddon, V.R., 37, 57, 280
Hadj Ali Salem, M., 570
Hadži, D., 72
Haelg, P., 722
Häflinger, O., 223
Hafner, H., 460
Hafner, K., 37, 46, 741
Hafner, W., 1084
Hagaman, E., 715
Hagel, R., 106
Hageman, H.A., 387
Hageman, H.J., 126
Hagen, E.L., 143, 945, 947
Hagen, K., 123

Hagihara, N., 433, 694, 775
Hagitani, A., 347
Hagiwara, I., 417
Hague, D.N., 195
Hahn, B., 903
Hahn, C.S., 1047
Hahn, R.C., 467
Hahn, W., 481
Hahnfeld, J.L., 172
Hähnle, R., 383
Haiduc, I., 75
Haidukewych, D., 425, 426, 922
Haines, A.H., 115
Haines, R.J., 1037
Hájek, M., 719
Hajós, A., 389, 694, 809, 1052, 1093
Hajos, Z.G., 830
Håkansson, R., 120
Hakata, T., 367
Hakushi, T., 738
Haky, J.E., 660, 669
Halberstadt, M.L., 174, 544
Halcour, K., 1120
Halek, G.W., 773
Hales, J.L., 492
Hales, R.H., 590
Halevi, E.A., 199, 200, 573, 751
Hall, A.J., 341
Hall, C.D., 885
Hall, D., 477
Hall, D.G., 259
Hall, D.M., 89
Hall, D.W., 406, 429
Hall, G.E., 117, 468
Hall, G.G., 26
Hall, H.K., Jr., 234, 763
Hall, J.H., 788
Hall, K.J., 803
Hall, L.D., 125, 552, 725
Hall, L.H., 749
Hall, N.D., 337
Hall, R.E., 200, 263, 266
Hall, S.S., 822, 1097
Hall, T.C., 1083
Hall, T.N., 577
Hall, W.L., 896, 898
Hallberg, A., 595
Haller, I., 133, 1009
Haller, K.J., 9
Halliday, D.E., 690
Hallman, P.S., 692
Halpern, B., 106, 108
Halpern, J., 515, 693, 699, 766, 1039
Halpern, Y., 142, 144, 312, 342, 523
Halsall, T.G., 1057
Halstenberg, M., 383
Halterman, R.I., 428
Haltiwanger, R.C., 93
Halton, B., 136
Halvorsen, A., 302
Ham, G.E., 325, 346, 365, 369, 741, 923, 1020
Hamada, Y., 430, 436
Hamaguchi, H., 78
Hamamoto, I., 923
Hamamoto, K., 606
Hamamura, H., 1039
Hamana, H., 491
Hamanaka, E., 405
Hamanaka, S., 450
Hamano, T., 483
Hamaoka, T., 552
Hamblin, M.C., 483
Hambling, J.K., 619
Hambly, A.N., 223, 236
Hamelin, J., 744
Hamelin, R., 158
Hamer, J., 741, 742, 747, 866
Hamersma, J.W., 276, 699
Hamill, H., 88
Hamilton, D.E., 1085
Hamilton, E.J., Jr., 955
Hamilton, G.A., 498, 1060
Hamilton, J.A., 692
Hamilton, R., 1023, 1085
Hamilton, W.C., 72
Hamlin, K.E., 568
Hammar, W.J., 681
Hammerschmidt, E., 362
Hammes, G.G., 189
Hammett, L.P., 146, 192, 196, 223–226, 237, 242, 261, 337, 449
Hammond, G.S., 112, 167, 172, 188, 206, 210, 211, 213, 215, 216, 460, 500, 660, 663, 764, 765, 766, 868, 900, 1023, 1035, 1111
Hammond, W.B., 770, 784, 973, 1072
Hammons, J.H., 151, 219, 223, 677, 960
Hamon, L., 713
Hamor, T.A., 44
Hampel, M., 662
Hamprecht, G., 440
Hampson, N.A., 1061
Hampton, K.G., 597
Hamrick, P.J., Jr., 412, 836, 1119
Hamsen, A., 818
Han, B., 823
Han, B.H., 399, 510
Hanack, M., 119, 129, 147, 275, 276, 283, 296, 297, 312, 383, 579, 663, 675, 888
Hanafusa, T., 199, 377, 441, 1058
Hanamura, M., 285
Hanaya, K., 1103
Hancock, J.E.H., 1121
Hancock, J.W., 295
Hancock, R.A., 476
Hand, E.S., 292
Handel, H., 812, 821
Hane, J.T., 1026
Haneda, A., 391
Hanes, R.M., 434
Hanessian, S., 349, 361, 383, 920, 1059
Hangauer, D.G., 855
Hanna, J., 1112
Hanna, R., 915
Hanna, S.B., 227, 1091
Hannah, D.J., 716
Hannan, W., 468
Hannequin, F., 434
Hannick, S.M., 823
Hanreich, R., 281
Hansch, C., 248
Hansen, B., 350, 376, 845
Hansen, H., 756, 1014, 1023, 1024, 1028, 1029, 1031, 1042
Hansen, H.J., 956
Hansen, J., 600
Hansen, J.F., 644
Hansen, R.T., 715
Hansen, S.C., 694
Hansen, S.W., 1008
Hanson, A.W., 58
Hanson, G.C., 287
Hanson, J.R., 390, 1109
Hanson, K.R., 117
Hanson, M.P., 325
Hanson, P., 247
Hansson, C., 825

Hanzel, R.S., 653
Hanzlik, R.P., 408, 735
Hapala, J., 286, 880
Happel, G., 510
Happer, D.A.R., 247
Hara, S., 106, 928, 999, 1002
Harada, K., 814, 827
Harada, M., 551
Harada, R., 376
Harada, T., 817, 823, 833, 1092
Harano, K., 1022
Harbison, K.G., 579, 603
Harbusch-Görnert, E., 318
Harch, P.G., 149
Harcourt, R.D., 744
Hardegger, E., 392
Hardenstein, R., 902
Harder, R.J., 169
Hardie, B.A., 452, 487
Hardies, D.E., 318
Harding, C.E., 297
Harding, D.R.K., 1031
Harding, K.E., 1057
Harding, L.B., 1070
Harding, P.J.C., 396, 810, 1098
Hardy, W.B., 575
Hare, G.J., 199
Hare, P.E., 106
Hargis, J.H., 612, 613
Hargreaves, M.K., 371
Harirchian, B., 747
Härle, H., 747
Harless, J.H., 133
Harlow, R.L., 73, 1092
Harmon, C., 758
Harmon, C.A., 56
Harmon, K.H., 43
Harmon, R.E., 692
Harmony, J.A.K., 168
Harmony, M.D., 18, 131
Harms, R., 424
Harms, W.M., 1077
Harned, H.S., 223
Harney, D.W., 408
Harper, J.J., 278, 947
Harper, R.W., 1055
Harpold, M.A., 1089
Harpp, D.N., 532, 551, 1092, 1107, 1110
Harris, B.R., 262
Harris, C.M., 323
Harris, E.E., 156
Harris, H.C., 290
Harris, H.P., 321
Harris, J.C., 266
Harris, J.F., Jr., 666, 680, 687, 728, 739, 793, 1022
Harris, J.M., 200, 263, 264, 266, 278, 280, 299, 300
Harris, M.M., 354
Harris, R.F., 838
Harris, R.R., 28
Harris, S.H., 656
Harris, T.M., 323, 440, 597
Harrison, A.M., 771
Harrison, C.R., 933, 1001, 1002
Harrison, H.R., 348
Harrison, I.T., 81, 385, 772, 818, 1080
Harrison, J.J., 902
Harrison, J.M., 761, 762
Harrison, R.G., 329, 806, 849, 874, 882, 886, 893, 1060
Harrison, S., 81, 1080
Harrod, J.F., 722
Hart, A.J., 155
Hart, C.R., 578
Hart, H., 66, 146, 287, 483, 498, 501, 504, 679, 735, 736, 756, 1085
Hart, P., 51
Hart, P.A., 1057
Hart, P.W., 404
Hartemink, M.A., 793
Hartenstein, J.H., 1026
Hartford, W.H., 1079
Hartke, K., 46, 1031
Hartley, F.R., 75
Hartman, A.F., 354
Hartman, B.C., 410
Hartman, G.D., 281, 921
Hartman, M.E., 977
Hartman, R.D., 921
Hartmann, J., 545
Hartmann, V., 529
Hartog, F.A., 559, 817
Hartshorn, M.P., 467, 695, 763
Hartshorn, S.R., 255, 265, 318, 456, 466
Hartter, D.R., 224
Hartwig, W., 393, 394
Hartzell, G.E., 921
Hartzell, S.L., 839
Harvey, D.F., 331
Harvey, G.R., 691, 759
Harvey, M.C., 724
Harvey, R.G., 700, 701, 1052, 1053, 1077
Harvey, S.H., 259
Harwood, H.J., 531
Hasan, S.K., 378, 1071, 1108
Hasan, T., 886
Hase, H., 52
Hase, T.A., 418, 422
Hasek, R.H., 759, 796
Hasenfratz, H., 440
Hashidzume, H., 1047
Hashimoto, H., 402, 422, 589, 712, 773, 818, 847
Hashimoto, I., 718
Hashimoto, N., 802, 976
Hashimoto, S., 350, 351, 832
Hashish, Z.M., 1053
Hashtroudi, H., 682
Hasimoto, T., 555
Haslam, E., 348
Hass, H.B., 614, 637, 1083
Hassan, M., 525
Hassanali, A., 983
Hassanaly, P., 320
Hassdenteufel, J.R., 297
Hassel, O., 77, 124, 126
Hassel, T., 1106
Hasselmann, D., 751, 818
Hassid, A.I., 800
Hassner, A., 322, 350, 531, 534, 554, 628, 661, 726, 729, 730, 761, 869, 932, 933, 1105
Haszeldine, R.N., 480, 543, 966, 1009
Hata, G., 690
Hata, H., 391
Hata, K., 693, 1013
Hata, T., 355
Hata, Y., 923
Hatada, K., 92
Hatanaka, K., 920
Hatanaka, N., 1020
Hatanaka, Y., 1111
Hatayama, Y., 1055
Hatch, L.F., 301, 750
Hatch, M.J., 865, 982
Hatch, R.P., 363
Hatcher, B.G., 761
Hatfield, G.L., 383
Hathaway, C., 502
Hattori, K., 989
Hatz, E., 354
Haubenstock, H., 813

Haupt, F.C., 272
Hauptmann, H., 652
Hauri, R.J., 308
Hause, N.L., 876, 878
Hauser, C.R., 323, 412, 414, 437, 440, 545, 597, 605, 606, 785, 833, 835, 836, 883, 931, 962, 995, 1091, 1119
Hauske, J.R., 106
Hausser, J.W., 304, 1011, 1012
Haut, S.A., 1100
Hautala, R., 213
Hautala, R.T., 213
Havel, J.J., 560
Havel, M., 924
Havelka, F., 356
Havinga, E., 126, 128, 583, 595, 1017, 1104
Havlin, R., 433
Hawkins, E.G.E., 639
Hawks, G.H. III, 436
Hawley, D.M., 87
Hawthorne, J.O., 507
Hawthorne, M.F., 460, 549, 787
Hay, A.S., 1054
Hay, J.M., 162, 164
Hay, J.V., 596, 924
Hay, P.J., 171
Hayakawa, Y., 391, 745
Hayama, N., 381, 400, 433, 595, 598
Hayami, J., 200, 303, 887
Hayano, K., 628
Hayashi, H., 934
Hayashi, M., 265, 423, 832, 1096
Hayashi, N., 766, 975
Hayashi, T., 104, 402, 403, 410, 415, 422, 521
Hayashi, Y., 496
Hayasi, Y., 536
Hayday, K., 616
Hayes, J.M., 560, 987
Hayes, K.S., 92
Hayes, S., 158
Hayez, E., 344
Haymore, B.L., 78
Haynes, L.W., 75, 798, 1054
Haynes, N.B., 1086
Haynes, P., 1016
Haynes, W.M., 348
Hayse, D.C., 669
Hayward, R.C., 531, 654, 729, 734
Haywood-Farmer, J., 276, 277
Hazato, A., 1021
Hazen, G.G., 534
Head, A.J., 897, 900
Heaney, H., 558, 580, 591, 992
Hearn, M.J., 990
Hearn, R.A., 369
Heasley, G.E., 659, 669, 725
Heasley, V.L., 659, 661, 669, 725
Heath, M.J., 911
Heath, N.S., 921
Heathcock, C.H., 131, 691, 698, 713, 730, 833, 834
Heatley, P., 849
Hebel, D., 479
Hebert, E., 995
Hébert, N.C., 548
Hebrard, P., 378
Hecht, A., 1021
Hecht, R., 956
Hecht, S.S., 352
Heck, H. d'A., 293
Heck, R., 263, 270, 277, 280
Heck, R.F., 403, 432, 526, 538, 555, 636, 643, 692, 710, 722, 732, 776, 779, 811, 1103
Hedaya, E., 500
Hedayatullah, M., 1086
Hedberg, K., 54, 123
Hedberg, L., 54
Hedegaard, B., 1031
Hederich, V., 356
Hedgecock, H.C., Jr., 550, 551
Heep, U., 771
Heeren, J.K., 846, 847
Heermann, D., 349
Heesing, A., 1036
Hegarty, A.F., 313, 338, 471, 570
Hegde, S.G., 531
Hegedić, D., 1108
Hegedus, L.S., 75, 405, 406, 415, 430, 432, 434, 597, 690, 692, 718, 722
Hegeman, H.J., 504
Hegenberg, P., 63
Hehre, W.J., 18, 65, 123, 128, 148, 149, 199, 200, 235, 285
Hei, S., 526
Heiba, E.I., 742, 1074
Heiber, M., 762
Heicklen, J., 1067
Heid, P.F., 762
Heidelberger, C., 377
Heider, L., 492
Heidke, R.L., 951
Heikens, D., 352
Heikkila, K.E., 599
Heil, B., 722
Heilbron, I.M., 1057
Heilbronner, E., 51, 58, 130, 131, 577
Heilmann, S.M., 418
Heim, P., 1096, 1099
Heimbach, H., 416
Heimbach, P., 405, 776
Heimgartner, H., 756, 1031
Hein, G.E., 572
Heine, H.W., 744, 923, 1020
Heine, R.F., 298
Heinemann, G., 200
Heinrich, P., 146
Heinsohn, G., 715
Heinz, G., 551
Heinz, K.J., 650
Heinzman, S.W., 815
Heischkeil, R., 977
Heiszwolf, G.J., 325
Heitmann, P., 591
Hekkert, G.L., 86
Heldt, W.Z., 987, 988
Helgeson, R., 756
Helgeson, R.C., 78, 105
Helgren, P.F., 376
Helgstrand, E., 450
Hellin, M., 662, 857, 858
Helliwell, S., 1071
Hellman, H.M., 669
Hellmann, H., 709, 767, 800
Hellring, S., 424
Hellwinkel, D., 165
Helmchen, G., 96, 106, 111
Helmick, L.S., 600
Helmkamp, G.K., 921, 923
Helquist, P., 405, 510, 773, 778
Helquist, P.M., 400, 598
Helsby, P., 469
Hemblade, P.R., 899
Hemesley, P., 842
Hemingway, A., 116
Hemmer, H., 526
Henbest, H.B., 675, 810, 1080, 1081, 1090, 1096
Henchman, M., 309

Henderson, G.N., 951
Henderson, J.W., 148, 157
Henderson, R.M., 508
Henderson, W.A., Jr., 770
Henderson, W.G., 234, 235
Henderson, W.W., 343
Hendley, E.C., 1047
Hendrick, M.E., 172, 770
Hendrickson, J.B., 180, 343, 367, 378, 420, 445, 534, 646, 677, 726, 930, 1082
Hendriks, H., 483
Hendrix, J.P., 545
Hendry, D.G., 614, 619
Hendry, J.B., 467
Hendy, B.N., 328
Henggeler, B., 787
Henis, J.M.S., 523
Henkel, J.G., 1026
Henne, A.L., 695
Henneke, K., 424
Henning, W., 1024
Hennion, G.F., 407, 993
Hennis, R.P., 1008
Henri-Rousseau, O., 298, 744, 746
Henrichs, M., 157
Henrichs, P.M., 271, 320
Henrick, C.A., 409, 435, 716
Henry, H., 1060
Henry, J.P., 1023
Henry, P.M., 352, 727, 1070, 1084, 1085
Henry, T.J., 1027
Henson, P.D., 494
Hentchoya Hémo, J., 800
Hentges, S.G., 739
Henzel, R.P., 1040
Henzi, B., 562
Hepburn, D.R., 383
Hepinstall, J.T., Jr., 899
Hepler, L.G., 229, 236, 244
Hepp, H.J., 708, 720
Herbert, W., 398
Herbst, G., 1071
Herbst, M.D., 354
Hercules, D.M., 500
Herd, A.K., 372
Herlem, M., 142
Herlihy, K.P., 964
Herling, J., 1002
Herman, F., 1078
Herman, G., 914
Hermeling, D., 747
Hernández, J.E., 1063
Hernandez, L., Jr., 869
Hernández A., J.A., 900
Herndon, W.C., 24, 26, 39, 40, 287, 749, 751, 753, 764
Herod, A.A., 618
Herold, B.J., 170
Herold, L.R., 331
Herr, M.L., 52
Herr, R.W., 410, 411
Herranz, E., 738, 739
Herrick, E.C., 770, 1113
Herrmann, J.L., 416, 422, 440, 712, 718
Herron, D.K., 1017
Herron, J.T., 1070
Hershberger, S.S., 554, 652
Hershenson, F.M., 106
Hershkowitz, R.L., 383, 593
Hertel, L.W., 635
Hertenstein, U., 418
Herterich, I., 275
Hertler, W.R., 169
Hertzler, D.V., 1074
Herweh, J.E., 445
Herz, A.H., 456
Herzberg, G., 167, 173
Hess, B.A., Jr., 37, 52, 145, 275, 283, 284
Hess, G.P., 372
Hess, H., 106
Hess, H.M., 694
Hess, R.E., 758, 868
Hess, W.W., 1057
Hesse, G., 106
Hesse, M., 377
Hesse, R.H., 479, 528, 529, 574, 621, 725, 1044, 1045
Hester, N.B., 631
Heublein, G., 661
Heuman, P., 395
Heuring, D.L., 992
Heusler, K., 620, 632, 813, 958
Hevesi, L., 926
Hewitt, M., 157
Hey, D.H., 404, 611, 617, 640, 644, 719
Heyd, W.E., 297
Heydkamp, W.R., 553
Heyer, D., 1056, 1079
Heyer, E.W., 1029
Heyn, A.S., 715
Heyn, H., 938
Heyns, K., 1058
Heywood, D.L., 1060
Hiatt, J.E., 134
Hiatt, R., 357, 735
Hiatt, R.R., 736, 1087
Hibbert, F., 233
Hiberty, P.C., 17, 285, 1089
Hibino, S., 682, 1106
Hickey, M.J., 123
Hickinbottom, W.J., 392, 483, 501, 503, 1072
Hickmott, P.W., 540, 541
Hida, M., 591, 818
Hida, T., 385
Hiebert, J.D., 1053
Hiemstra, H., 108
Hienuki, Y., 131
Hierl, P.M., 309
Higashi, F., 804
Higasi, K., 27
Higginbotham, H.K., 18, 20
Higgins, J., 593
Higgins, R., 621, 629, 634
Higgins, R.J., 470, 471
Higgins, S.D., 1120
Higgins, W., 913
Highet, R.J., 68
Higley, D.P., 1021, 1069, 1070
Higuchi, K., 435
Higuchi, T., 372, 402, 574
Hii, P., 1063
Hiiragi, M., 361
Hikage, R., 577
Hilbert, J.M., 884
Hilderbrandt, R.L., 18
Hill, A.E., 777
Hill, C.L., 560
Hill, D.G., 440
Hill, D.T., 772, 1012
Hill, E.A., 715, 981
Hill, H.A.O., 593, 597
Hill, H.D.W., 644
Hill, H.W., 109
Hill, J.A., 516
Hill, K.A., 531
Hill, M.E., 468
Hill, R., 54
Hill, R.H., 395
Hill, R.K., 84, 711, 748, 901, 932, 989, 994, 1023, 1030, 1031
Hiller, G., 794, 1097
Hiller, J.J., 472
Hillgärtner, H., 510
Hillman, M.E.D., 996

Himmele, W., 722
Himoe, A., 457
Hinde, A.L., 700
Hine, J., 67, 170, 223, 229, 242, 244, 327, 490, 524, 542, 701, 883
Hines, J.N., 920
Hines, L.F., 779
Hines, W.G., 612
Hinkley, J.M., 323
Hinman, R.L., 728, 868
Hinney, H.R., 745
Hino, J.B., 624
Hinton, J., 967
Hipperson, W.C.P., 1064
Hirabayashi, Y., 362
Hirai, H., 458
Hirama, M., 833
Hirao, A., 811
Hirao, I., 435, 492
Hirao, T., 390, 643
Hiraoka, N., 450
Hirata, K., 349
Hirata, Y., 921, 1096
Hirayama, F., 210
Hiriart, J.M., 561
Hiroi, K., 537, 913
Hiroi, Y., 372
Hirota, E., 121
Hirota, K., 342, 368, 575
Hirota, Y., 554
Hirotsu, K., 402
Hirowatari, N., 872
Hirsch, J.A., 126
Hirschmann, H., 116, 117
Hirshfeld, F.L., 59
Hiršl-Starčević, S., 286
Hirst, D.M., 24
Hirst, J., 578
Hisada, R., 642
Hisatsune, I.C., 1067
Hiskey, R.G., 1089
Hite, G., 973
Hites, R.A., 442
Hiti, J., 167
Hixson, S.S., 1041, 1042
Hiyama, T., 401, 406, 409, 817, 818, 854, 920
Ho, C., 200
Ho, I., 889
Ho, T., 228, 334, 391, 399, 433, 542, 785, 812, 931, 1103, 1108
Ho, T.L., 1051
Hoa, K., 468
Hoard, J.A., 1022
Hoare, D.G., 985
Hoblitt, R.P., 730
Höbold, W., 662
Hobson, J.D., 387
Hoch, H., 541
Hocker, J., 445
Hocking, M.B., 1073
Hocks, L., 1037
Hockswender, T.R., Jr., 660
Hodek, W., 933
Hodge, J.D., 144, 145
Hodge, P., 373, 567, 568, 933
Hodges, F.W., 503
Hodgson, B., 167
Hodgson, P.K.G., 339, 950
Hodnett, E.M., 613, 886
Hodson, D., 441
Hoefnagel, A.J., 248
Hoeg, D.F., 561, 1091
Hoeger, C.A., 913
Hoegerle, R.M., 928, 959
Hoekstra, M.S., 106, 436
Hoet, P., 1012
Hofelich, T.C., 147
Hofer, O., 128
Hoff, E.F., 685, 761
Hoff, W.S., 1071
Hoffman, D.H., 519
Hoffman, D.M., 735
Hoffman, J.M., Jr., 54, 694
Hoffman, L., Jr., 865
Hoffman, N.W., 430
Hoffman, R.V., 902, 1083
Hoffman, T.D., 517, 568
Hoffmann, E., 1131
Hoffmann, F.W., 653
Hoffmann, H., 510, 848
Hoffmann, H.M.R., 259, 386, 389, 711, 745, 777
Hoffmann, P., 869, 870, 871, 934
Hoffmann, R., 26, 49, 92, 128, 131, 171, 751, 757, 768, 922, 927, 994, 1004, 1005, 1013, 1014, 1015, 1023
Hoffmann, R.W., 173, 549, 580, 582, 584, 591, 596, 648, 746, 759, 817, 1033, 1034
Höfle, G., 347, 1034
Höfle, G.A., 546, 840
Hofman, P.S., 505
Hofmann, A.W., 908
Hofmann, J.E., 493, 599, 913, 914
Hofstra, G., 794
Hofstraat, R., 868
Höft, E., 302, 490
Hogarth, M.J., 404
Hogen-Esch, T.E., 155
Höger, E., 1064
Hogeveen, H., 144, 282, 523, 540, 677, 683, 721, 763, 767, 945, 949, 959
Hogg, J.L., 336
Hoggett, J.G., 452, 453, 456, 457, 463, 466
Hoggett, J.H., 468
Hogrefe, F., 46
Hohlstein, G., 603
Höhn, R., 662
Hohner, G., 35
Hoigné, J., 500
Hoiness, C.M., 772
Hojatti, M., 16
Hojo, K., 55, 360, 380
Hojo, M., 265, 508, 532, 809
Hoke, D., 390, 392
Holbrook, K.A., 966
Holcomb, A.G., 50, 276
Holden, D.A., 613
Holder, R.W., 759, 761, 1019
Holland, G.W., 718
Holland, H.L., 1077
Holliday, R.E., 579
Hollingsworth, C.A., 3
Hollinshead, D.M., 394
Hollis, W.M., 564
Hollister, K.R., 420
Holloway, F., 1059
Holloway, R.L., 51
Hollowell, C.D., 19
Hollyhead, W.B., 223
Holm, A., 322, 343
Holm, T., 821, 822
Holmberg, B., 336
Holmberg, K., 350
Holme, D., 696
Holmes, H.L., 746
Holmes, J., 995
Holmes, J.L., 67
Holmes, R.R., 1086
Holmgren, A., 268
Holmquist, B., 338
Holness, N.J., 127, 887, 949
Holsboer, F., 52

Holst, C., 340
Holt, G., 441
Holt, P.F., 594
Holt, R.J., 770
Holtz, D., 234, 235
Holtz, H.D., 235, 303
Holubka, J.W., 638, 861
Holý, A., 488
Holy, N., 802
Holy, N.L., 169, 701
Homer, R.B., 222, 223, 338
Hommes, H., 414
Honda, S., 106
Honda, Y., 215
Honegger, E., 130
Honma, S., 718
Honnick, W.D., 722
Höntsch, R., 575
Hontschik, I., 495
Honwad, V.K., 433
Hoobler, M.A., 426
Hood, F.P., 125
Hoodless, I.M., 1053
Hoogzand, C., 139, 774
Hoornaert, G., 732
Hooton, S., 694, 1103
Hoover, D.J., 108
Hoover, F.W., 766
Hooz, J., 342, 419, 428, 531, 546, 715, 811, 828, 1001
Hope, H., 158
Hopf, H., 264, 675
Hopff, H., 352, 775
Hopkins, A., 443
Hopkins, H.P., Jr., 308
Hopkins, P.B., 920
Hopkinson, A.C., 73
Hoppe, D., 840, 867
Hoppen, V., 126
Hopper, C.R., 340
Hopper, S.P., 173, 769
Hopperdietzel, S., 726
Hoppin, C.R., 1039
Hore, P.J., 163
Horeau, A., 103, 107, 108, 109
Horgan, A.G., 887, 913, 1035, 1036
Horgan, S.W., 1061
Hori, I., 422
Hori, T., 535, 626, 914
Horikawa, M., 807
Horikawa, Y., 619
Horino, H., 1119
Horita, K., 621
Horiuchi, C.A., 531
Horiuti, I., 697
Horn, K., 976
Horn, U., 929
Hornaman, E.C., 911
Horner, L., 88, 176, 624, 737, 845, 848, 975, 1098, 1110
Hörner, L., 688
Hornfeld, H.L., 453
Hörnfeldt, A., 435
Horning, D.E., 601
Horning, E.C., 1084
Hornke, I., 979
Hornung, V., 131
Horrom, B.W., 308, 412
Horspool, W.M., 202
Horton, D., 128
Horvath, B., 627
Horvath, K., 387, 395
Hosaka, K., 438
Hoshi, M., 556
Hoshino, M., 924
Hosoda, Y., 823
Hosokawa, T., 932, 1085
Hosomi, A., 712, 833
Hosomi, H., 430
Hossain, A.M.M., 1071
Hotta, Y., 818
Hotten, T.M., 930
Hou, K., 628
Houbiers, J.P.M., 86
Houk, J., 561
Houk, K.N., 64, 154, 166, 452, 671, 744, 749–752, 758, 1042
Houlihan, W.J., 830
Houriet, R., 235
Hourigan, M.J., 287
House, H.O., 352, 401, 402, 412, 413, 419, 420, 430, 433, 436, 529, 537, 540, 681, 692, 694, 699, 700, 711, 713, 716, 724, 732, 735, 800, 809, 811, 817, 821, 829, 832, 845, 850, 864, 924, 925, 971, 977, 982, 990, 1052, 1053, 1057, 1063, 1093, 1104
Houser, J.J., 144, 145, 883
Houser, R.W., 532
Housmans, J.G.H.M., 740
Houston, D., 960
Höver, H., 50
Howard, A.E., 131
Howard, J.A., 168, 613, 614, 616, 633
Howard, J.A.K., 776
Howard, R.D., 344
Howard, T.R., 1039
Howe, C.A., 617, 642
Howe, G.R., 1087
Howe, N.E., 311
Howe, R., 280
Howe, R.S., 379
Howell, B.A., 304
Howell, C.F., 909
Howell, H.G., 814
Howell, R.G., 724
Howells, D., 950
Howells, R.D., 312
Howes, P.D., 689
Howk, B.W., 689
Howlett, K.E., 899
Howley, P.M., 770
Hoy, R.C., 807
Hoye, P.A.T., 259
Hoye, R.C., 115
Hoyle, C.E., 765
Hoyng, C.F., 871
Hoyt, E.B., Jr., 922
Hoyte, O.P.A., 353
Hoz, S., 309, 310, 885
Hoz, T., 408, 921, 925
Hrdlovič, P., 500
Hrncir, D.C., 61
Hrutfiord, B.F., 568, 591, 596
Hsi, N., 948
Hsia, M., 133
Hsieh, W., 960
Hsu, H.C., 551, 552
Hsu, J.N.C., 763
Hsu, S., 1077
Hsu, S.K., 517
Hu, H., 628
Hu, Q., 391
Hua, D.H., 922
Huang, F., 918
Huang, H.H., 507
Huang, J.C., 926
Huang, N.Z., 55
Huang, P.C., 647
Huang, S., 715
Huang, S.K., 264
Huang, S.L., 1082
Huang, T.T., 383
Huang-Minlon, 1096
Huba, F., 586
Hubbard, J.L., 233, 999

Hubbard, R., 1009
Hübel, W., 139, 774
Huber, C.S., 388
Huber, F.E., Jr., 569
Huber, G., 865, 1064
Huber, H., 1010
Huber, J.E., 275
Huber, M.B., 716
Huber, W., 58, 59, 62
Huber-Buser, E., 135
Huber-Emden, H., 368
Hubert, A.J., 344, 524, 917
Hübner, F., 416
Hückel, W., 700, 888, 1052
Huckin, S.N., 836
Hudec, J., 120, 721, 758, 764, 877, 1019
Hudlický, M., 327, 381, 382, 567, 620, 680, 936, 1051, 1093
Hudlicky, T., 381, 596
Hudrlik, A.M., 706, 778
Hudrlik, P.F., 410, 420, 706, 778
Hudson, A., 613
Hudson, B.E., Jr., 688
Hudson, C.E., 1069
Hudson, G.V., 131
Hudson, H.R., 285, 383, 948, 954
Hudson, J.A., 468
Hudson, R.F., 36, 304, 310, 333, 749, 853
Hudspeth, J.P., 1022
Huet, F., 331, 434, 820
Huet, J., 827
Huffman, J.W., 814
Huffman, R.W., 375
Huggins, M.L., 72
Hughes, D.L., 175, 307, 308
Hughes, D.O., 28
Hughes, E.D., 239, 256, 258–261, 305, 337, 469, 470, 501, 502, 514, 515, 571, 877, 881, 890, 891, 894, 896, 944, 1035, 1036
Hughes, L., 1001
Hughes, R., 651
Hughes, R.D., 676
Hughes, R.J., 997
Hughes, S., 311
Hughes, W.B., 846, 847, 1037
Hughmark, P.B., 988
Huheey, J.E., 14, 235
Hühnerfuss, H., 111
Hui, R.A.H.F., 1054, 1058, 1077
Hui, R.C., 819
Huie, R.E., 1070
Huisgen, R., 576, 587, 591, 593, 743, 744, 745, 758, 759, 761, 762, 763, 768, 985, 1010, 1011, 1021, 1106
Huisman, H.O., 532, 620
Hulce, M., 713
Hulkenberg, A., 933
Hull, W., 123
Hulliger, J., 1070
Hulshof, L.A., 86
Hume, B.A., 730
Hummel, K., 297, 761, 762
Hummel, K.F., 770
Humphrey, J.S., Jr., 200
Humphrey, L.B., 167
Humski, K., 264, 282, 288, 882
Hung, J.C., 542
Hung, N.M., 683
Hunger, M., 903, 916
Hünig, S., 176, 368, 418, 441, 534, 541, 694, 699, 840, 909, 1049
Hunsberger, I.M., 63
Hunt, D.F., 1085
Hunt, J.D., 547, 650, 784, 1085
Hunt, K., 1019
Hunt, W.J., 171
Hunte, K.P.P., 233
Hunter, D.H., 155, 156, 563, 882, 885, 958, 971
Hunter, W.E., 1110
Huntress, E.H., 1131
Huntsman, W.D., 525, 1022
Hurd, C.D., 789
Hurley, E., Jr., 406
Hurst, J.J., 114
Hurst, J.R., 635
Hurwitz, M.J., 955
Hurwitz, S., 1038
Husain, A., 334, 1108
Huser, D.L., 701
Husk, G.R., 715
Huskey, W.P., 336
Hussain, A., 574
Hussey, A.S., 698
Hussey, B.J., 594
Hussey, R.E., 302
Husson, H., 802
Huston, D., 502
Huszthy, P., 262
Huszti, Z., 378
Hutchings, M.G., 245, 997, 998, 1099
Hutchins, M.G., 915
Hutchins, M.G.K., 695
Hutchins, R.O., 128, 326, 361, 390–396, 694, 695, 703, 799, 810, 915, 1058, 1098, 1117
Hutchins, R.R., 839
Hutchinson, B.J., 157
Hutchinson, E.G., 569
Hutchinson, R.E.J., 888
Hutchinson, R.J., 140
Hutchison, C.A., 170
Hutchison, J.D., 308
Hutchison, R.J., 572
Huthmacher, K., 476
Hutley, B.G., 849
Hüttel, R., 1084
Hüttenhain, S.H., 416
Huttner, G., 712
Hutton, J., 574, 811, 1116
Hutton, R.S., 54, 167, 172
Huybrechts, G., 622, 750
Huyffer, P.S., 1043
Huynh, C., 410, 605, 1034
Huyser, E.S., 162, 608, 609, 612, 618–621, 633, 666, 676, 719, 731, 955, 1111
Hwang, H., 281
Hyatt, J.A., 1062
Hylarides, M.D., 551
Hylton, T., 422
Hyman, H.H., 479

Ibáñez, A., 165
Ibarbia, P.A., 675
Ibatullin, U.G., 857
Ibbitson, D.A., 15
Ibers, J.A., 72, 75
Ibne-Rasa, K.M., 309, 508, 604, 737
Ibrahim, I.T., 863, 934
Ibuki, E., 595
Ibuki, I., 430
Ichihashi, Y., 458
Ichikawa, K., 483, 556, 617, 725, 810, 879, 1037

Ichimura, K., 367
Idacavage, M.J., 420
Iddon, B., 803
Ide, J., 779
Ide, W.S., 859
Idei, M., 478
Idoux, J.P., 249, 591, 987
Iffland, D.C., 324, 571
Iflah, S., 694
Igami, M., 397
Iguchi, T., 804
Ihara, M., 1061
Ihrig, A.M., 1053
Ii-hsein, U., 1022
Iida, H., 532
Iida, S., 408, 435
Iijima, T., 18, 20, 27
Iio, H., 1034
Ikado, S., 1031
Ikariya, T., 1101
Ikeda, I., 807
Ikeda, M., 107, 553, 865
Ikeda, N., 839
Ikeda, S., 380
Ikeda, T., 575
Ikeda, Y., 556
Ikegami, S., 394
Ikeno, M., 393
Ikizler, A., 1083
Ikuta, S., 74, 235
Il'inich, G.N., 723
Illi, V.O., 347
Illig, C.R., 744
Illuminati, G., 185, 450, 467, 476, 577, 578, 584
Ilyushin, M.A., 468, 573
Imai, H., 724
Imai, T., 999
Imai, Z., 1099
Imaizumi, J., 532
Imaizumi, M., 931
Imaizumi, S., 393
Imamoto, T., 363, 383, 923, 933, 983, 1111
Imamura, T., 832
Imanaka, T., 353, 732
Imaoka, M., 393, 408, 926
Imashev, U.B., 330
Imhoff, M.A., 579
Imoto, E., 376, 391
Imoto, T., 59
Impastato, F.J., 568
Imperiali, B., 833
Inaba, S., 598, 832, 833, 1092
Inada, S., 1031
Inagaki, M., 536
Inaishi, M., 503
Inamoto, N., 14, 794
Inamoto, Y., 483, 627, 962
Inanaga, J., 349, 350, 1083
Inazu, T., 400
Inch, T.D., 102, 104
Incremona, J.H., 625, 679
Indelicato, J.M., 297
Ing, H.R., 378
Ingberman, A.K., 647
Ingham, R.K., 654
Ingle, D.M., 669
Ingold, C.F., 733
Ingold, C.K., 96, 207, 245, 256, 259, 260, 261, 305, 316, 335, 336, 337, 469, 470, 512, 514, 515, 517, 527, 571, 662, 877, 881, 890, 891, 894, 896, 1035, 1036
Ingold, E.H., 336
Ingold, K.U., 123, 162, 165, 396, 613, 616, 622, 633, 955, 956, 957
Ingram, D.D., 891
Ingrosso, G., 663
Inman, C.E., 529
Inokawa, S., 381, 598
Inomata, K., 372
Inomoto, Y., 286
Inoue, H., 391, 737
Inoue, I., 372
Inoue, K., 794
Inoue, M., 434
Inoue, N., 553
Inoue, T., 265, 383, 809, 832, 904
Inoue, T.C., 338
Inoue, Y., 738, 758
Inouye, Y., 380, 773, 1034
Insole, J.M., 579
Inukai, T., 243, 749
Invergo, B.J., 396, 810, 1083
Ioffe, B.V., 176, 481, 931, 1106
Ioffe, S.L., 815, 1103
Ip, D.P., 479
Ipaktschi, J., 281, 1042
Ippen, J., 46
Iqbal, A.F.M., 723
Iqbal, K., 694
Irelan, J.R.S., 1113
Ireland, D.T., 63
Ireland, J.F., 207
Ireland, R.E., 368, 407, 1030, 1031
Iri, K., 569
Irie, T., 276, 278, 280
Iriuchijima, S., 532
Irngartinger, H., 52, 133
Irsa, P., 696
Irvine, J.L., 264, 1029
Irwin, K.C., 736
Irwin, R.S., 765
Isaacs, N.S., 141, 151, 162, 170, 385, 521, 761, 762, 869, 964
Isaev, I.S., 506, 510
Isaev, S.D., 988
Isaeva, Z.G., 959
Isagulyants, G.V., 858
Isagulyants, V.I., 857, 858
Isakova, A.P., 491
Isbister, R.J., 730
Isenberg, N., 673
Ishak, M.S., 978, 1117
Ishibashi, Y., 478
Ishibe, N., 74
Ishigami, T., 694, 766
Ishige, M., 693
Ishiguro, M., 839
Ishiguro, T., 933
Ishihara, Y., 713
Ishii, A., 794
Ishii, H., 1032
Ishii, T., 438
Ishikawa, H., 410
Ishikawa, N., 106, 388, 552, 595, 840, 916
Ishikawa, R., 1112
Ishimori, T., 78
Ishitobi, H., 278, 280
Ishiyoda, M., 554
Isida, T., 938
Ismagilova, G.S., 441
Isnard, P., 723
Isobe, M., 715, 1034
Isola, M., 443
Isolani, P.C., 235
Ispiryan, R.M., 387
Israel. G., 603
Israelstam, S.S., 574
Itabashi, K., 933
Itano, H.A., 1062
Ito, A., 619
Ito, H., 521

Ito, K., 799, 811, 1084
Ito, M., 63, 131
Ito, O., 619
Itô, S., 758
Ito, T., 1119
Ito, T.I., 1108
Itō, Y., 368, 575, 724, 773, 872, 1091, 1092
Ito, Y., 138
Itoh, A., 409, 832
Itoh, M., 434, 551, 717, 718, 1001
Itoh, N., 1099
Itoh, T., 736
Itsuno, S., 811
Ittah, Y., 380
Ittel, S.D., 75
Iurkevich, A.M., 731
Ivakhnenko, E.P., 347
Ivanov, D., 545
Ivanov, S.N., 443
Ivanov, V.B., 634
Ivanova, T.M., 120
Ivanyk, G.D., 383
Ives, D.A.J., 1097
Ives, J.L., 569, 634, 737, 1077
Ivey, R.C., 173
Ivin, K.J., 1037, 1039
Iwadare, T., 1045
Iwai, I., 525, 779, 992
Iwakuma, T., 1099
Iwakura, Y., 370
Iwamoto, H., 322
Iwamoto, N., 575
Iwamura, H.I., 994
Iwamura, M., 994
Iwasa, A., 920
Iwasaki, Y., 589
Iwasawa, H., 413, 836
Iwasawa, N., 833
Iwasawa, Y., 1039
Iwashima, K., 78
Iwata, N., 650
Iyengar, N.R., 478
Iyer, P.S., 956
Iyoda, M., 59
Izatt, R.M., 77, 78, 105
Izawa, H., 989
Izawa, K., 675, 728
Izawa, T., 398, 408, 832
Izawa, Y., 975, 976
Izsak, D., 123
Izumi, T., 431, 809
Izumi, Y., 82, 102, 693, 833, 847
Izzo, P.T., 435

Jaakkola, P., 510
Jabłonski, R.J., 278
Jabri, N., 401, 713
Jachimowicz, F., 723
Jackman, L.M., 37, 57, 59, 155, 280, 308, 324, 692, 695, 1052, 1053
Jackson, A.E., 1103
Jackson, H.L., 430
Jackson, J.E., 133
Jackson, L.L., 365
Jackson, O.R., 888
Jackson, P.M., 463
Jackson, R.A., 395, 613, 615, 656
Jackson, W.R., 694, 723, 724
Jacob, L., 362
Jacob, P., 22
Jacob, P., III, 717, 817
Jacobs, T.L., 275, 301, 675, 762
Jacobsen, E.N., 824
Jacobson, B., 191
Jacobson, B.M., 758
Jacobson, N., 647
Jacobson, R.M., 423
Jacobson, R.R., 1030
Jacobus, J., 108, 109, 392, 610, 695, 707, 1034
Jacox, M.E., 163, 167, 170
Jacques, J., 95, 104, 106, 823
Jacquesy, J., 477, 498, 510, 628
Jacquesy, R., 799
Jadhav, P.K., 705, 811
Jaeger, C.D., 653
Jaffe, A., 54
Jaffé, H.H., 26, 206, 242, 243, 461, 1047
Jaffe, M.H., 948
Jafri, J.A., 51
Jagow, R.H., 200
Jähme, J., 685
Jahngen, E.G.E., Jr., 441, 929
Jahnke, D., 828
Jain, A.L., 631
Jais, M.J.B., 311
Jáky, M., 733
Jalander, L., 104
Jallabert, C., 1058
Jallo, L.I., 994
Jambotkar, D., 850
James, B.G., 354
James, B.R., 575, 692
James, D.E., 722, 779
James, D.R., 1025
James, E.L., 468
James, G.H., 312
James, J.C., 369
James, K.B., 712
James, L.L., 450
Jamison, W.C.L., 815
Jan, G., 879
Janda, H., 817
Janda, K.D., 589
Jani, A., 433
Janiga, E.R., 774, 865
Janik, D.S., 737
Jankowski, E.J., 314
Janoski, E.J., 962
Janot, M., 1081
Jansen, B.J.M., 914
Jansen, M.P., 302, 882
Janssen, E., 715
Janssen, M.J., 687, 786, 921
Janssens, F., 732
Januszkiewicz, K., 1085
Januszkiewicz, K.R., 700
Janzen, E.G., 163
Jao, L.K., 331
Jaouen, G., 810, 860
Jaques, D., 329
Jaques, J., 83
Jarczewski, A., 885
Jardine, F.H., 655, 692, 697
Jardine, I., 393, 692, 1103
Jarreau, F., 1059
Jaruzelski, J.J., 147, 224
Jarvis, B.B., 303, 679, 922, 934
Jasne, S.J., 289
Jasor, Y., 802
Jasserand, D., 734
Jastrzebski, J.T.B.H., 593
Jautelat, M., 423, 773, 865
Javaid, K., 521
Jawdosiuk, M., 133, 415
Jayalekshmy, P., 581
Jayaraman, H., 292, 340
Jedziniak, E.J., 621, 627, 632
Jefcoate, C.R.E., 629
Jefferson, A., 1028
Jeffery, E.A., 352, 497, 593, 715, 817, 828
Jeffery-Luong, T., 407
Jefford, C.W., 133, 289, 304, 390, 635, 753, 770, 772, 1012, 1097
Jeffrey, D.A., 418

Jeffs, P.W., 644
Jeger, O., 937, 961
Jellal, A., 712
Jemison, R.W., 993, 1033
Jen, M., 18
Jencks, W.P., 67, 190, 192, 197, 223, 226, 227, 266, 267, 268, 290–294, 310, 330, 334, 375, 376, 530, 563, 578, 780, 781, 784, 785, 795, 803, 805, 806, 884
Jenkins, C.L., 655
Jenkins, I.D., 88, 345
Jenkins, J.A., 751, 1021
Jenner, E.L., 710
Jenner, G., 750, 751, 858
Jenner, P.J., 947, 961
Jennings, C.A., 546
Jennings, W.B., 115
Jenny, E.F., 994
Jensen, E.V., 529
Jensen, F.R., 99, 124, 125, 476, 485, 512, 514, 515, 521, 548, 552, 557, 677, 899, 933, 958
Jensen, H.B., 699
Jensen, H.P., 627, 1086
Jensen, J.L., 27, 330, 331, 682
Jensen, K.A., 343
Jensen, L., 842
Jensen, W.B., 227
Jenson, T.M., 277
Jentzsch, J., 639, 794, 1097
Jeremić, D., 632
Jerina, D.M., 87
Jerkunica, J.M., 281
Jermini, C., 227
Jernberg, N., 373
Jernow, J.L., 174
Jersak, U., 52
Jerussi, R.A., 627, 1054
Jeskey, H., 491
Jesson, J.P., 556
Jeuell, C.L., 145, 285
Jewett, J.G., 200, 286, 304
Jia, J.H., 55
Jiang, G.J., 129
Jibril, I., 712
Jigajinni, V.B., 551, 1098
Jiménez, C., 691
Jinbo, T., 397
Jindal, S.P., 947
Jira, R., 526, 636, 643, 710, 1084, 1085
Jiricny, J., 379, 785, 856
Jitsukawa, K., 736, 1058
Jo, S., 490
Job, R.C., 116
Jochims, J.C., 803
Jochum, C., 701
Jodhan, A., 173
Joesten, M.D., 71, 72
Joffee, I., 367
Joh, T., 694
Johanson, R.G., 144, 286
Johansson, R., 383
John, K.C., 441
John, L., 1010
Johns, J.W.C., 173
Johnsen, U., 163
Johnson, A.L., 155
Johnson, A.W., 36, 59, 845, 848, 864
Johnson, C.D., 175, 222, 223, 242, 244, 461
Johnson, C.R., 289, 407, 410, 411, 433, 774, 818, 839, 844, 865, 866, 867, 926, 1082, 1089
Johnson, C.S., Jr., 120, 165, 196
Johnson, D.E., 765
Johnson, D.K., 552
Johnson, D.L., 369
Johnson, F., 127, 385, 842, 860
Johnson, G., 726
Johnson, G.H., 292
Johnson, G.J., 498
Johnson, G.L., 623
Johnson, G.S., 815, 932
Johnson, H.W., Jr., 1089
Johnson, J.L., 799
Johnson, J.R., 758, 842, 868
Johnson, K., 1109
Johnson, L.K., 92
Johnson, M.D., 244, 613
Johnson, M.R., 397, 681, 809
Johnson, M.W., 628
Johnson, N.A., 1089
Johnson, R.A., 357, 736
Johnson, R.E., 1101
Johnson, R.G., 654
Johnson, R.L., 741
Johnson, S.L., 290, 292, 294
Johnson, S.M., 61, 777
Johnson, T.A., 1029, 1103, 1104
Johnson, T.R., 640
Johnson, W.S., 124, 344, 361, 710, 835, 1030, 1071
Johnston, B.H., 348
Johnston, D.E., 962
Johnston, F., 662
Johnston, G.F., 516
Johnston, K.M., 503, 639
Johnstone, R.A.W., 342, 396, 412, 594, 746, 913, 993, 994, 1103, 1104, 1105
Johri, K.K., 655
Jokinen, S., 307
Jolidon, S., 1031
Jolley, K.W., 887
Jolly, P.W., 405, 776
Joly, D., 1053
Joly-Goudket, M., 408
Jonas, J., 196
Jonas, K., 710
Jonassen, H.B., 723
Jonathan, N., 40
Jończyk, A., 366, 844, 912
Jones, A., 362, 618
Jones, A.J., 37
Jones, B.A., 105, 794
Jones, B.E., 264
Jones, D., 726
Jones, D.A.K., 899
Jones, D.L., 725
Jones, D.M., 331
Jones, D.N., 898, 913
Jones, D.W., 51, 634, 749, 758
Jones, E.R.H., 355, 696, 1057
Jones, F.M., III, 234
Jones, F.N., 400, 606
Jones, G., 836
Jones, G., II, 167, 868
Jones, G.A., 815
Jones, G.C., 605
Jones, G.I.L., 123
Jones, G.T., 501
Jones, J.B., 422
Jones, J.H., 378
Jones, J.I., 492
Jones, J.K.N., 385
Jones, J.M., 199, 371
Jones, J.R., 152, 219, 468, 710
Jones, L.D., 598
Jones, M., Jr., 170, 172, 173, 175, 770, 771, 975, 1021, 1026
Jones, M.G., 278
Jones, M.R., 443
Jones, M.T., 701
Jones, N., 732
Jones, N.R., 422
Jones, P.M., 1136

Jones, P.R., 70, 422, 707, 817
Jones, R., 75, 382
Jones, R.A., 320, 436
Jones, R.A.Y., 27, 47, 222, 223, 225, 242, 244, 751, 1005
Jones, S.P., 341
Jones, S.R., 88, 637
Jones, T.B., 108
Jones, V.K., 850
Jones, W.A., 529, 564
Jones, W.H., 747, 805
Jones, W.J., 318, 1081
Jones, W.M., 138, 175, 176, 297, 937, 979
Jonkers, F.L., 848
Jonsäll, G., 945
Jönsson, L., 589
Joos, R., 929
Jordan, K.D., 672
Jorge, J.A.L., 303
Jorgenson, M.J., 131, 224, 527, 694, 824, 868, 1017
Joris, L., 74
Josan, J.S., 920
José, S.M., 337
Joseph, N., 692
Josey, A.D., 854
Joshi, G.C., 696
Joslin, C.G., 163
Jost, P., 939
Jost, R., 951
Jouannetaud, M., 477, 498, 510, 628
Joukhadar, L., 394
Joule, J.A., 354
Jousseaume, B., 715
Joussen, R., 818
Joussot-Dubien, J., 137
Jovanovic, B., 267
Jovanovich, A.P., 276
Joy, D.R., 777
Joyce, M.A., 769
Joyner, B.L., 16
Jozefowicz, M., 1086
Juan, B., 53, 223
Juaristi, E., 123, 219
Jubier, A., 434
Judd, K.R., 461
Judy, W.A., 1037, 1038, 1039
Juenge, E.C., 1080
Juers, D.F., 1041
Jugie, G., 488
Juhlke, T., 266
Jukes, A.E., 433
Jula, T.F., 175
Julia, M., 359, 362, 411, 420, 666, 667, 926
Julia, S., 605, 956, 1033, 1034
Juliusburger, F., 258
Jullien, J., 99
Jumonville, S., 610
Junck, H., 483
Juneja, P.S., 613
Jung, A., 817
Jung, C.W., 368
Jung, F., 839
Jung, M.E., 331, 334, 383, 385, 834, 1022, 1055, 1058
Jung, M.J., 698
Jung, S., 740
Junge, H., 952
Jungk, H., 479, 483, 505
Jurczak, J., 842
Jurewicz, A.T., 285
Jurgeleit, W., 1110
Jürgens, E., 737
Jurina, J.L., 730
Jurlina, J.L., 531, 654
Jurss, C.D., 591
Just, G., 662, 989
Justus, R., 1077
Jutz, C., 488
Jutz, J.C., 1003
Jutzi, P., 9
Juve, H.D., Jr., 636

Kaandorp, A.W., 474
Kaba, R.A., 165
Kabachnik, M.I., 234
Kabakoff, D.S., 146
Kabalka, G.W., 426, 427, 428, 550–553, 695, 706, 707, 715, 717, 718, 998, 1098
Kabasakalian, P., 1045
Kabbe, H., 915
Kabengele, nT., 770
Kaberia, F., 1075
Kabir, S.H., 682
Kabuss, S., 146
Kabuto, C., 59
Kabuto, K., 810
Kacher, M., 1098
Kadaba, P.K., 351, 744
Kader, A.T., 298
Kadin, S.B., 694
Kadoma, Y., 310
Kadonaga, J.T., 1020
Kadzyauskas, P.P., 729
Kaeding, W.W., 458, 601, 637, 1073
Kaeseberg, C., 715
Kaesz, H.D., 63
Kagan, H., 82, 104
Kagan, H.B., 98, 102, 120, 390, 436, 529, 622, 693, 1111
Kagan, J., 562, 963
Kageyama, T., 1084, 1086
Kahle, G.G., 434
Kahlert, E., 559
Kahn, G.M., 788
Kahn, M., 732
Kahne, D., 539
Kahr, K., 1086
Kaiho, T., 833
Kaiser, A., 16
Kaiser, E.M., 151, 323, 347, 545, 568, 700, 702, 1091
Kaiser, E.T., 157, 169, 334, 443
Kaiser, K.L., 767
Kaiser, R., 46
Kaiser, S., 1108
Kajfež, F., 366, 796
Kaji, A., 200, 303, 353, 361, 396, 412, 594, 887, 923
Kaji, K., 411
Kaji, S., 865
Kajimoto, T., 1072
Kakimoto, M., 1031
Kakis, F.J., 1058, 1085
Kalafer, M., 1097
Kalatzis, E., 610
Kalchschmid, F., 483
Kālé, V.N., 926
Kalechits, I.V., 1037
Kaleya, R., 1056
Kalinkin, M.I., 393, 692, 693
Kalinovskii, I.O., 433, 595, 652
Kalinowski, H., 104, 133, 423, 1027
Kalir, A., 380, 1108
Kalir, R., 499
Kalish, N., 359
Kalkote, U.R., 1103
Kallen, R.G., 855
Kallenberg, H., 417
Kalli, M., 401
Kallury, R.K.M.R., 9

Kalman, J.R., 644
Kalmus, C.E., 500
Kaloustian, M.K., 115, 128, 293
Kaloustian, S.A., 115
Kalvoda, J., 620, 632, 958
Kalyanam, N., 108, 788
Kalyanasundaram, S.K., 693
Kamagita, N., 641
Kamai, G., 88
Kamal, A., 796
Kamat, R.J., 271, 275
Kamata, K., 426
Kamata, S., 349
Kambara, H., 27, 124
Kambe, N., 536
Kamego, A.A., 305
Kamemura, I., 773
Kamernitskii, A.V., 780
Kametani, T., 361, 1011, 1061
Kamigata, N., 642
Kamio, K., 788
Kamitori, Y., 809
Kamkha, M.A., 404
Kamlet, M.J., 72, 318, 320, 529
Kamm, K.S., 1042
Kammann, K.P., Jr., 434
Kämmerer, H., 510
Kampar, V.E., 76
Kämper, F., 622
Kamphuis, J., 794
Kampmeier, J.A., 656, 899
Kamshii, L.P., 450
Kamyshova, A.A., 399
Kan, R.O., 492, 764, 1111
Kanai, H., 695
Kanaya, I., 433
Kandall, C., 343
Kandasamy, D., 128, 390, 391, 810
Kandetzki, P.E., 600
Kane, A.R., 556
Kane, V.V., 537
Kaneda, K., 643, 732, 736, 1058
Kaneko, T., 722, 773
Kanellias, L., 286
Kanematsu, K., 1022
Kanemoto, S., 406
Kan-Fan, C., 802, 1081
Kang, J., 702
Kang, J.W., 775
Kang, S., 663
Kanishchev, M.I., 731, 943
Kankaanperä, A., 331, 332, 342
Kano, S., 682, 1106
Kanska, M., 661
Kanters, J.A., 72
Kantlehner, W., 359, 488
Kantner, S.S., 288, 408, 409
Kantor, E.A., 330
Kantor, S.W., 606, 995, 1091
Kanzafarov, F.Ya., 688
Kao, J., 114
Kao, L., 643
Kapecki, J.A., 761, 762
Kaplan, E.D., 200
Kaplan, E.P., 435
Kaplan, F., 558, 976
Kaplan, L., 133, 162, 166, 383, 400, 612, 781, 791, 1009
Kaplan, L.A., 1103
Kaplan, L.R., 938
Kaplan, M.L., 72, 318, 634, 1017
Kapnang, H., 409, 800
Kappe, T., 685
Kapps, M., 1033
Kaptein, R., 163, 644
Kapur, J.C., 433
Karabatsos, G.J., 123, 200, 510, 947, 948, 953, 954
Karagise, R.E., 123
Karakida, K., 20
Karam, P.A., 285
Kara-Murza, C.G., 732
Karapinka, G.L., 722
Karger, B.L., 106
Karger, M.H., 354, 358, 359
Karim, A., 591
Kariv, E., 1097
Karkowski, F.M., 21
Karl, R., 639
Karmanova, I.B., 495
Karni, M., 736
Karntaing, P., 115
Karo, W., 290, 358, 375, 572, 670, 789, 792, 798, 805, 934, 936, 1062, 1105, 1116, 1117
Karpaty, M., 858
Karpeles, R., 1107
Karpitskaya, L.G., 1088
Karplus, M., 751
Karpyuk, A.D., 155, 308
Kartashov, V.R., 792
Kartoon, I., 985
Karydas, A.C., 824
Kasahara, A., 431, 691
Kasai, P.H., 19
Kasai, Y., 879
Kascheres, C., 953
Kashdan, D.S., 441
Kashimura, S., 926
Kashin, A.N., 520, 521, 522, 651
Kashiwagi, M., 717
Kashiwagi, T., 655
Kashmiri, M.A., 415
Kaska, W.C., 404, 695, 707
Kaskar, B., 738
Kasmai, H.S., 56
Kasner, M.L., 631
Kasperek, G.J., 444
Kasturi, T.R., 1100
Kasukhin, L.F., 404
Kasztreiner, E., 378
Kataoka, F., 1113
Katekar, G.F., 774
Kates, M.R., 282
Kathawala, F.G., 435
Kato, H., 59, 63, 724
Kato, J., 832
Kato, K., 378, 934
Kato, M., 832
Kato, T., 596, 819
Kato, Y., 590, 693
Katoh, A., 1086
Katritzky, A.R., 21, 27, 39, 69, 157, 222, 224, 225, 237, 244, 266, 267, 313, 354, 364, 387, 395, 415, 461, 584, 910, 938, 995, 1083, 1088, 1108, 1136
Katsuki, T., 107, 349, 350, 736, 1080
Katsuro, Y., 410
Kattenberg, J., 532
Kattija-Ari, M., 131
Katz, J., 427, 997, 1000
Katz, L., 1103
Katz, T.J., 46, 56, 133, 213, 751, 767, 1037, 1038, 1039
Katzenellenbogen, J.A., 406, 407, 716, 838
Katzin, M.I., 1074
Kauer, J.C., 343
Kauffmann, T., 400, 557, 582, 600, 650, 651, 715, 745, 818, 921
Kaufman, G., 911

Kaul, B.L., 642
Kaupp, G., 215, 574, 756
Kauzmann, W., 99
Kawa, H., 106
Kawabata, N., 772, 773, 817
Kawada, K., 529, 1026
Kawada, M., 280
Kawagishi, T., 713
Kawahara, S., 1084
Kawakami, J.H., 394, 676
Kawakami, T., 989
Kawaki, T., 589
Kawamura, S., 807, 1108
Kawanishi, M., 588
Kawanishi, Y., 1058
Kawanisi, M., 903, 938
Kawasaki, A., 490, 784, 789, 796, 855, 856, 1119
Kawasaki, K., 694
Kawasaki, T., 364
Kawase, M., 815
Kawashima, K., 933
Kawata, I., 491
Kawate, T., 441
Kawauchi, T., 491
Kay, P.S., 266
Kayama, M., 731, 742
Kaye, R.L., 751
Kayser, M.M., 813, 1101
Kazan, J., 357
Kazankov, M.V., 591
Kazanskii, B.A., 770
Kazitsyna, L.A., 244
Kazmaier, P.M., 535
Kazubski, A., 811
Kean, N.B., 564
Kearley, F.J., Jr., 581
Kearney, P.A., 199
Kearns, D.R., 634, 635, 738
Keating, J.T., 313, 314
Keaton, O.D., 805
Keaveney, W.P., 1066
Kebarle, P., 74, 234, 235, 282, 299
Keck, G.E., 406, 535, 1042
Keck, R., 387
Keefer, R.M., 74, 77, 477
Keeffe, J.R., 662, 884
Keegstra, K., 313
Keehn, P.M., 35, 930, 1084
Kees, F., 550
Kees, K.L., 1112
Keese, R., 138, 139
Keii, T., 710
Keinan, E., 367, 409, 627, 694, 787, 1087
Keller, C.E., 63
Kellie, G.M., 124
Kellogg, M.S., 1008
Kellogg, R.E., 212
Kellogg, R.M., 137, 353, 635, 873, 941
Kellom, D.B., 898
Kelly, C.A., 798
Kelly, C.F., 891
Kelly, D.P., 142, 149, 282, 285, 450, 1033, 1036
Kelly, E.G., 555
Kelly, F.W., 563, 896, 1021, 1028
Kelly, J.F., 869
Kelly, R.C., 733
Kelly, R.P., 471
Kelly, R.V., 544
Kelly, T.R., 361
Kelly, W.J., 278, 539, 638, 787
Kelly, W.L., 416
Kelsey, D.R., 297
Kelso, P.A., 214
Kemego, A.A., 631
Kemp, D.S., 490
Kemp, J., 743
Kemp, J.E., 1019
Kemp, N.R., 11
Kemp, R.H., 123
Kemp, T.J., 147, 579
Kemp-Jones, A.V., 55
Kempe, U.M., 742
Kemper, R., 51
Kendall, P.E., 717
Kendall, P.M., 434
Kendall, W.J., 887
Kende, A.S., 598, 971
Kendrick, L.W., Jr., 967
Keneda, T., 78
Kennard, O., 72, 73, 850
Kennedy, G.J., 171
Kennedy, J., 973
Kennedy, J.P., 403
Kenner, G.W., 594
Kennerly, R.E., 667
Kennewell, P.D., 774
Kenny, D.H., 354
Kent, B.A., 607
Kentgen, G., 1056
Kenyon, J., 258, 337, 945
Keogh, J., 390, 392, 730
Kerber, R.C., 414, 773
Kerdesky, F.A.J., 833
Kerek, F., 863
Kerekes, I., 383, 387, 388, 624, 680, 725, 809
Kergomard, A., 354, 727
Kerkmann, T., 886
Kerlinger, H.O., 637
Kern, J., 1115
Kerr, J.A., 21, 166, 614, 623, 781
Kershner, L., 340
Kershner, L.D., 292, 340
Kervennal, J., 575
Keshavamurthy, K.S., 350
Kessar, S.V., 596
Kessick, M.A., 318, 662
Kessler, H., 120, 263, 772, 977, 1023
Kester, F.L., 22
Ketcham, R., 763, 850
Ketley, A.D., 343, 1020
Kettle, S.F.A., 3
Keul, H., 1067
Keum, S., 1047
Keumi, T., 485, 498, 806
Keung, E.C., 711
Kevan, L., 162, 169
Kevill, D.N., 266, 290, 292, 312, 318, 887
Keyes, M., 391
Keyton, D.J., 390
Kézdy, F.J., 334
Kezuka, H., 924
Khac, T.B., 802
Khaimova, T.G., 857
Khairudinov, I.R., 858
Khalaf, A.A., 479, 482
Khalil, M.M., 735
Khan, A.M., 393
Khan, M.M.T., 526, 683, 710, 722, 774, 776, 1084
Khan, M.N., 339
Khan, M.S., 159
Khan, N.A., 1088
Khan, S.A., 1090
Khan, W.A., 423
Khananashvili, L.M., 707
Khanna, P.L., 1056
Khanna, R.K., 570, 648
Kharasch, M.S., 399, 402, 548, 619, 636, 639, 669, 687, 725, 816, 825–828, 940
Kharasch, N., 644
Khatri, H.N., 1031

Khatri, N.A., 807
Kheifets, G.M., 66
Kheifets, V.I., 858
Khidekel', M.L., 766, 799, 1037
Khmel'nitskii, L.I., 570
Khodakov, Yu.S., 692
Khokhlov, P.S., 732
Kholodov, L.E., 63
Khor, T., 247
Khorana, H.G., 349, 355
Khorlina, I.M., 394, 397, 398
Khorlina, M.Ya., 955, 957
Khouri, F., 293
Khrizolitova, M.A., 654
Khuddus, M.A., 1082
Khudyakov, I.V., 169
Khurana, J.M., 391
Khuthier, A.H., 994
Khutoretskii, V.M., 529
Khutoryanskii, V.A., 520
Kice, J.L., 166, 287, 310, 363, 443, 444, 913, 940
Kidwell, R.L., 925
Kieboom, A.P.G., 594
Kieczykowski, G.R., 712
Kiedaisch, W., 772
Kiefer, E.F., 762, 1016
Kiefer, H.R., 338, 927
Kiełbania, A.J., Jr., 1040
Kiełbasinski, P., 863
Kienitz, H., 508
Kienzle, F., 547, 599, 644, 1085, 1089
Kiess, A.A., 1066
Kigasawa, K., 361
Kiji, J., 458, 721, 766
Kikuchi, K., 1099, 1103
Kikuchi, T., 1116
Kikugawa, Y., 795, 812, 815, 1101
Kikukawa, K., 643, 649, 650
Kilby, D.C., 478
Killough, J.M., 433
Kilpatrick, J.E., 129
Kilpatrick, M., 451
Kim, C., 824
Kim, C.J., 278, 279, 285
Kim, C.U., 384, 716, 1082
Kim, J., 521
Kim, J.B., 461
Kim, J.I., 643
Kim, J.K., 290, 583, 742
Kim, M., 138, 388
Kim, S., 264, 278, 280, 350, 391, 435, 694, 983, 989
Kim, S.C., 390, 810, 1093, 1096, 1099
Kim, S.S., 629
Kim, Y., 294
Kim, Y.C., 350
Kim, Y.H., 648, 736, 1087, 1092
Kim, Y.J., 391
Kimling, H., 51, 137, 924
Kimoto, K., 903
Kimura, K., 794, 817, 818
Kimura, M., 20, 27, 438, 868, 923, 1017
Kimura, T., 78
Kimura, Y., 353, 431, 725, 915
Kinast, G., 802
Kindler, K., 1107
King, A.O., 595
King, F.D., 985
King, G.S.D., 61
King, G.W., 207
King, J.A., 1120
King, J.C., 773
King, J.F., 110, 258, 301, 312, 443, 924, 959, 1031
King, J.K., 443
King, K., 35, 442, 750
King, R.B., 75
King, R.W., 600, 896, 900, 905, 909
King, S.W., 1066
Kingsbury, C.A., 122, 278, 280, 518, 913
Kingsland, M., 461
Kinloch, E.F., 694
Kinner, L., 404
Kinney, W.A., 747
Kinoshita, H., 372
Kinoshita, M., 914
Kinoshita, T., 265
Kinoshita, Y., 376
Kinson, P.S., 61
Kinstle, T.H., 877
Kintner, R.R., 506, 655, 1073
Kintzinger, J.P., 1115
Kiprianova, L.A., 332, 647
Kirby, A.J., 128, 294, 330, 335, 337, 338, 352, 578
Kirby, G.W., 553
Kirby, R.E., 11
Kirchhoff, R., 787
Kirchhoff, R.A., 774, 839, 926
Kirichenko, S.E., 619
Kirin, V.N., 133
Kiritani, R., 443, 589, 590
Kirk, D.N., 120, 325, 810
Kirk, K.L., 1009
Kirk, T.C., 858
Kirkpatrick, D., 385, 390, 569, 1001, 1002
Kirkpatrick, J.L., 276
Kirms, M.A., 57, 61
Kirmse, W., 170, 173, 175, 272, 281, 289, 304, 313, 327, 542, 543, 544, 768, 769, 911, 943, 945, 947, 948, 949, 952, 953, 966, 974, 975, 976, 1024, 1033
Kirn, W.N., 808
Kirner, W.R., 302
Kirollos, K.S., 525
Kirrmann, A., 158
Kirsanov, A.V., 373, 808, 809
Kirsch, G., 61
Kirsch, J.F., 292
Kirschke, K., 1054
Kirschleger, B., 561
Kirst, H.A., 407
Kirtane, J.G., 325
Kise, M., 588
Kiseki, Y., 643
Kishi, I., 1119
Kishi, Y., 732, 823
Kishimura, K., 999
Kiso, S., 1108
Kispert, L.D., 50, 167
Kiss, J., 241, 392
Kissel, C.L., 904
Kissel, W.J., 1076
Kita, T., 303
Kita, Y., 364
Kitaev, Yu.P., 821
Kitagawa, A., 497
Kitagawa, S., 1119
Kitagawa, T., 302, 771, 1026
Kitagawa, Y., 406, 832
Kitaguchi, H., 529, 621
Kitahara, Y., 59, 138, 763
Kitahonoki, K., 1105
Kitajima, H., 485
Kitamura, K., 1084
Kitamura, M., 715, 1034
Kitamura, T., 483, 694, 938
Kitano, K., 483
Kitao, T., 596
Kitatani, K., 401

Kitazawa, E., 832
Kitchin, J.P., 1058
Kitching, W., 125, 126, 149, 152, 223, 512, 521, 522, 548, 551, 681
Kite, G.F., 654
Kito, T., 492
Kitschke, B., 46
Kittleman, E.T., 1037
Kivelevich, D., 52
Kivinen, A., 333, 371
Kiyan, N.Z., 303
Klaassen, A.A.K., 56
Klaboe, P., 123
Klabunde, K.J., 560
Klabunovskii, E.I., 102, 392, 693, 747
Klaeboe, P., 126
Klages, F., 807
Klahre, G., 848
Klamann, D., 358, 444, 790
Klang, J.A., 654, 1074
Klärner, F., 771, 915, 1016, 1019
Klauck, G., 55
Klausner, A.E., 223
Klausner, Y.S., 372
Klebe, J., 771
Kleeman, A., 102
Kleeman, M., 759
Kleijn, H., 778
Kleimann, H., 871
Klein, G., 277
Klein, H., 745, 760, 1071
Klein, H.P., 627
Klein, H.S., 18
Klein, J., 401, 545, 681, 704, 716
Klein, K.P., 930
Klein, P., 1099
Kleinberg, J., 621
Kleinfelter, D.C., 283, 960
Kleinshmidt, R.F., 690
Kleinstück, R., 933, 934
Klem, R., 1076
Klemmensen, P., 367
Klender, G.J., 703
Klessinger, M., 120
Klester, A.M., 962
Kliewer, M.A., 699
Kliimann, H., 869
Klimisch, R.L., 891
Klimov, E.M., 351
Klimova, E.I., 858
Kline, M.W., 993
Klinedinst, P.E., Jr., 264
Klingensmith, G.B., 509
Klingsberg, E., 971
Klingstedt, T., 403
Klink, J.R., 502
Kloetzel, M.C., 746
Kloosterziel, H., 325, 1017, 1019
Klopfenstein, C.E., 62
Klopman, G., 144, 523, 751
Klosa, J., 372
Klose, G., 1042
Klose, T.R., 574
Kluge, H., 933
Kluger, R., 291, 294
Klumpp, G.W., 183, 188, 226, 237, 266, 304, 316, 353, 715, 745, 751, 1021, 1026
Klundt, I.L., 968
Klusacek, H., 871, 1026
Klutsch, G., 1067
Klyashchitskii, B.A., 105
Klym, A., 223
Klyne, W., 95, 98, 120
Klyuev, M.V., 799
Knapp, F.F., 552
Knapp, S., 745
Knauer, K.H., 46
Knauss, E., 747
Kneen, G., 758
Kneipp, K.G., 199
Kniel, P., 594
Knier, B.L., 268
Kniežo, L., 877
Knifton, J.F., 721, 1103, 1109
Knight, G.T., 573
Knight, J.C., 1100
Knight, J.D., 951
Knight, J.W., 909
Knights, E.F., 704, 996, 999
Knipe, A.C., 77, 315, 343, 348, 414, 885, 912
Knist, J., 945, 953
Knobler, C.B., 78
Knoche, H., 1037
Knöchel, A., 78
Knoeber, M.C., 21, 128
Knoess, H.P., 823
Knoll, F., 9
Knoll, F.M., 1023
Knossow, M., 105
Knowles, J.R., 88, 1106
Knowles, W.S., 104, 693, 1066
Knox, B.E., 21, 22
Knox, G.R., 909, 1096
Knox, L.H., 43, 175, 261, 543, 771, 945
Knox, S.A.R., 46
Knözinger, H., 902, 903
Knudsen, G.A., Jr., 956
Knudsen, R.D., 588
Knunyants, I.L., 671, 728, 729, 783, 845
Knupfer, H., 934
Knutov, V.I., 78
Knutson, D., 190
Knutson, F.J., 312, 910
Knutson, P.L.A., 323
Knutson, R.S., 275
Knutsson, L., 972, 973, 974
Ko, E.C.F., 387, 888, 948
Ko, H.C., 244
Ko, M., 1073
Kobayashi, H., 322, 712, 991
Kobayashi, K., 854
Kobayashi, M., 327, 393, 595, 641, 642
Kobayashi, S., 297, 368, 372, 380, 383, 409, 483, 575, 788
Kobayashi, T., 596, 804
Kobayashi, Y., 327, 478, 710, 768, 1026, 1092
Kober, H., 176, 771, 1026
Kobori, N., 642
Kobori, T., 475, 728
Kobori, Y., 402
Köbrich, G., 138, 512, 561, 818, 874, 904, 915, 924, 978, 979
Kobrina, L.S., 584, 587, 611
Kobsa, H., 500
Kobuke, Y., 749, 758
Koch, F.W., Jr., 484
Koch, G.K., 441
Koch, H., 720
Koch, H.F., 885
Koch, J., 869
Koch, J.G., 887
Koch, K.R., 995
Koch, K.U., 78
Koch, N.H., 887
Koch, P., 575
Koch, S.D., Jr., 623
Koch, V.R., 617
Kochetkov, N.K., 296, 351, 435, 732
Kochetkova, N.S., 44

Kochhar, K.S., 861
Kochi, J.K., 162, 166, 167, 281, 390, 400, 402, 404, 405, 408, 516, 522, 598, 613, 628, 633, 636, 637, 645, 647, 651, 654, 655, 660, 687, 715, 732, 736, 775, 821, 899, 956, 957, 1061, 1074, 1075, 1084
Kocián, O., 879
Kocienski, P.J., 926
Kočovský, P., 392
Kocsis, K., 937
Koda, S., 807
Kodera, M., 363
Kodera, Y., 350
Kodoma, H., 403
Kodomari, M., 933
Koeberg-Telder, A., 222, 474, 475, 509
Koehl, W.J., Jr., 742
Koehn, W., 761
Koelling, J.G., 200
Koelsch, C.F., 430
Koeng, F.R., 276
Koenig, J., 1059
Koenig, K.E., 441
Koenig, P.E., 371
Koenigsberger, R.U., 521
Koeppl, G.W., 201
Koft, E.R., 765
Koga, G., 573, 1035
Koga, K., 104, 105, 569, 571
Koga, N., 1035
Kogan, G.A., 27, 29
Kogan, T.P., 713
Kogure, T., 694, 811
Koharski, D., 390, 392
Kohl, D.A., 18, 173, 667
Kohll, C.F., 353
Kohlmiller, C.K., 1067
Kohn, H., 740
Kohne, J., 390
Kohno, M., 575
Kohno, S., 390
Kohnstam, G., 266, 267, 318, 455, 606
Kojima, A., 1031
Kojima, T., 749, 1061
Kok, D.M., 763
Kokel, B., 472
Kokes, R.J., 692
Kokko, B., 553
Kokko, B.J., 553
Kolar, L.W., 354
Kolb, M., 386, 418
Kolbah, D., 366, 796
Koldobskii, G.I., 986, 987
Kolesar, T.F., 761
Koll, A., 577
Kollman, P.A., 72
Kollmar, H., 51
Kollonitsch, J., 383, 395, 479, 621
Kolomiets, A.F., 325, 362
Kolomnikov, I.S., 692, 826
Kolomnikova, G.D., 43, 692, 693
Kolonko, K.J., 911
Kolos, W., 4
Kolsaker, P., 1069
Kolshorn, H., 137
Kolthoff, I.M., 219, 223
Kol'tsov, A.I., 66
Kolyaskina, Z.N., 731
Komatsu, K., 50, 265
Komin, J.B., 736
Komiyama, M., 458
Kommandeur, J., 210
Komornicki, A., 281
Komoto, R.G., 432, 694
Kompa, K., 472
Koncos, R., 479, 543
Kondo, H., 695
Kondo, I., 650
Kondô, K., 367, 403, 575, 694, 999, 1031
Kondo, K., 773
Kondo, S., 715
Kondrat'eva, L.A., 838
Kondrat'eva, L.V., 666, 689
Kondratov, S.A., 591
Konen, D.A., 621, 842
König, C., 741
König, E., 647
König, H., 591
König, J., 1016, 1017
König, W.A., 106
Königshofen, H., 46, 57, 61
Konijn, M., 304
Konishi, A., 771
Konishi, H., 50, 458
Konishi, M., 402, 403
Kono, D.H., 389
Kono, H., 428, 693
Kono, K., 649, 650
Konoike, T., 1091, 1092
Konovalov, A.I., 746
Konstantinović, S., 632
Koo, I.S., 443
Koock, S.U., 275
Kooistra, D.A., 791, 1097
Koolpe, G.A., 715
Koosha, K., 716
Kooyman, E.C., 39, 341, 478, 510, 617, 620, 899
Kop, J.M.M., 441
Kopecký, J., 373
Kopecky, K.R., 103, 172, 517
Kopf, J., 78
Kopka, I.E., 140
Koplick, A.J., 948, 954
Kopp, J., 198
Kopp, L.D., 128
Kopp, R., 297
Koppel, I., 234
Koppel, I.A., 318
Koppenhöfer, B., 109
Koppes, W.M., 389
Koptyug, V.A., 450, 452, 506, 510, 944, 949, 951, 980
Kopyttsev, Yu.A., 696
Korber, H., 1069
Korcek, S., 633
Korchagina, D.V., 951, 980
Koren, R., 266
Koreshkov, Yu. D., 50
Koreshkov, Yu.D., 770
Kornblum, N., 318, 324, 325, 360, 380, 396, 414, 415, 539, 571, 638, 646, 647, 787, 788, 923, 1081, 1087
Kornegay, R.L., 125, 274
Korneva, L.M., 43
Korobitsyna, I.K., 313, 974, 975
Korolev, B.A., 234
Koroniak, H., 1008, 1021
Korostova, S.E., 409
Korostylev, A.P., 587
Korshak, V.V., 595
Korshunov, S.P., 1052
Kort, C.W.F., 474
Korte, S., 136
Korte, W.D., 404
Kortüm, G., 222
Korver, G.L., 1028
Korytnyk, W., 812, 1099
Korytsky, O.L., 366, 387
Korzeniowski, S.H., 77, 570, 641, 646
Kos, N.J., 21

Kosak, J.R., 504
Kośáry, J., 378
Kosbahn, W., 1030
Kosel, C., 600
Koshino, J., 999
Koshiro, Y., 1119
Koshland, D.E., Jr., 985
Koshtaleva, T.M., 987
Koshy, K.M., 302, 882
Koski, W.S., 163
Koskikallio, J., 307, 309, 351
Koskimies, J.K., 103, 418, 422
Kosower, E.M., 74, 131, 319, 647
Kosswig, K., 1093
Kost, A.N., 491, 689
Kost, V.N., 955, 957
Koster, D.F., 711
Koster, G.F., 271
Köster, H., 157
Köster, R., 550, 706, 717
Kostikov, R.R., 49, 50
Kostyanovskii, R.G., 87
Kosuge, T., 647
Kosugi, H., 715
Kosugi, K., 411
Kosugi, M., 406, 417, 434, 590
Kosugi, Y., 613
Kotake, H., 372
Kotani, Y., 303
Kotcher, P.G., 579
Koteel, C., 1057
Kotera, K., 1105
Koth, H.F., 887
Koubek, E., 604
Kouno, T., 215
Koutecký, J., 167
Kouwenhoven, A.P., 524, 766
Kovacic, P., 133, 365, 369, 472, 478, 484, 498, 574, 637, 725, 931, 986, 990, 993
Kovacs, C.A., 995
Kovacs, J., 287, 770
Kovalev, B.G., 818
Kovavic, P., 473
Kovelesky, A.C., 424, 837
Koveshnikova, G.M., 478
Kovrizhnykh, E.A., 157
Kowalski, C.J., 545, 832, 976
Kowalski, T., 286
Koyama, I., 297
Koyama, K., 731
Koyanagi, M., 441
Koyano, T., 725
Kozhevnikov, I.V., 318, 484, 643
Kozhushkov, S.I., 414
Koziar, J.C., 205
Koziara, A., 377, 691
Kozikowski, A.P., 377, 745
Kozima, K., 73
Kozlov, V.V., 472, 570, 592, 646
Kozlowski, J., 410, 713
Kozlowski, M.A., 785
Koz'min, A.S., 133, 727
Kozuka, S., 613, 655, 1047, 1108
Kraeutler, B., 565, 653
Kraft, L., 1064
Krakauer, H., 1048
Kramer, B.D., 766
Kramer, G.M., 142, 282, 677, 948
Kramer, G.W., 704
Kramer, K.E., 990
Kramer, P.A., 524
Kramer, U., 377
Krane, J., 78, 125
Krantz, A., 51, 737
Krapcho, A.P., 286, 441, 564, 770, 929, 947
Krasna, A.I., 697
Krasnaya, Zh.A., 415, 859
Kratzer, O., 848, 850
Kraus, G.A., 832, 1100
Kraus, K.W., 434, 828
Kraus, M., 903
Kraus, M.A., 373, 376
Kraus, W., 391
Krause, P., 276
Krauss, H.J., 527
Krauss, S.R., 716
Krausz, F., 499
Kray, W.C., Jr., 390
Krebs, A., 51, 52, 137, 139, 672, 924, 973
Krebs, A.W., 49
Krebs, E., 139
Kreevoy, M.M., 224, 330, 331, 344, 1099
Kreft, A.F. III, 289
Kreider, E.M., 607
Kreil, D.J., 1020
Kreiser, W., 812, 1033
Kreiter, C.G., 63
Kremer, K.A.M., 773
Krepski, L., 773
Krepski, L.R., 1112
Kresge, A.J., 67, 198, 200, 201, 224, 226, 331, 332, 341, 467, 662, 671
Krespan, C.G., 747
Kress, A., 50
Kress, R.B., 107
Kresze, G., 535, 747, 865, 1030
Kretchmer, R.A., 652
Kretzschmar, G., 901
Kreysig, D., 1013
Krichevtsova, T.I., 445
Kricka, L.J., 764, 766
Krief, A., 383, 391, 561, 920, 921, 926, 977, 1108
Krief, A., 714
Krieg, H., 58
Krieger, C., 60, 233
Krieger, J.K., 461, 652
Krieger, K.A., 814
Kriegesmann, R., 818
Krimen, L.I., 860
Krimer, M.Z., 661
Krimm, H., 493, 737
Krishnamurthy, S., 233, 390, 392, 393, 394, 510, 694, 810, 812, 1093, 1096, 1099
Krishnamurthy, V.V., 468, 849, 956
Kristián, P., 370
Kristiansen, P.O., 78
Kritchevsky, J., 669
Kriz, G.S., Jr., 200
Kříž, J., 429
Krizhechkovskaya, N.I., 475
Krogh, J.A., 806, 930
Krogh-Jesperson, K., 50
Kröhnke, F., 837
Krois, D., 784
Kroĺikiewicz, K., 349
Kroll, W.R., 1038
Kromhout, R.A., 72
Kroner, J., 52
Krongauz, E.S., 1077
Kronja, O., 275
Kroon, J., 72
Kropp, J.E., 730
Kropp, P.J., 215, 527, 1016, 1042, 1043
Krow, G., 84, 98
Krow, G.R., 986, 990, 1019, 1025
Krubiner, A., 1108

Krück, K., 847.
Kruck, P., 1064
Krueger, D.S., 547
Krueger, S.M., 1008
Krüerke, U., 139
Krüger, C., 45, 776, 777
Krüger, H., 195
Kruger, J.E., 948
Kruger, T.L., 223, 500, 1028
Kruglikova, R.I., 347
Kruizinga, W.H., 353
Kruk, C., 222
Krupička, J., 878, 879
Krupin, B.S., 683
Kruse, C.W., 690
Kruse, L.I., 187, 460
Kruse, R.B., 666
Krusic, P.J., 162, 167, 956
Krutzsch, H., 1089
Kryger, L., 257
Kryshtal, G.V., 712
Kryuchkova, L.V., 593
Krzhizhevskii, A.M., 953
Ku, A.T., 144
Kubicek, D.H., 1037
Kubler, D.G., 330
Kubo, M., 57, 62
Kubota, H., 393, 771, 1097
Kuchar, E.J., 725
Kucher, R.V., 735
Kucherov, V.F., 120, 415, 675, 712, 850, 859, 874
Kuchinskii, N.I., 917
Kuchitsu, K., 19, 20, 27, 124
Kuck, V.J., 54, 172
Kuczkowski, R.L., 18, 1067, 1069, 1070
Kudian, A.K., 15
Kudo, H., 1103
Kudo, M., 771
Kudo, Y., 393
Kudryavtsev, R.V., 1047
Kuebart, F., 58
Kuebrich, J.P., 859
Kuehne, M.E., 102, 540, 541, 636, 773, 798, 1083, 1099
Kugatova-Shemyakina, G.P., 120
Kuhla, D.E., 758, 777
Kühle, E., 637, 728, 1119
Kuhlmann, D., 651
Kuhlmann, H., 718, 860
Kuhlmann, K.F., 470
Kühn, A., 722
Kuhn, H.J., 634, 635
Kuhn, S.J., 146, 389, 450, 452, 468, 479, 480, 487, 490, 539
Kühne, H., 1070
Kuhnen, F., 654
Kuhnen, L., 1088
Kuimova, M.E., 495
Kuivila, H.G., 390, 392, 396, 594, 813
Kujanpåå, T., 861
Kukla, M.J., 763
Kukolja, S., 378
Kul'bovskaya, N.K., 666, 687
Kulczycki, A., Jr., 770
Kulenovic, S.T., 532
Kulganek, V.V., 712
Kulikov, N.S., 133
Kulkarni, S.U., 384, 397, 704, 705, 810, 999, 1000, 1001, 1085
Kulp, S.S., 1077
Kumada, M., 104, 402, 403, 410, 521, 598
Kumadaki, I., 327, 478, 768, 1026
Kumai, S., 945
Kumar, C.V., 651
Kumar, R., 602, 648
Kumar, V., 795
Kumarev, V.P., 502
Kumata, Y., 83
Kumli, K.F., 849
Kundu, N.G., 952
Kunerth, D.C., 353, 589
Küng, W., 135, 954
Kunieda, N., 914
Kunugi, T., 722
Kuo, M., 302
Kuo, S.C., 798
Kuo, Y., 440
Kupchan, S.M., 644
Kurabayashi, K., 1026
Kurabayashi, S., 303
Kuramitsu, T., 775
Kuramochi, J., 285
Kurata, Y., 591, 926
Kurek, J.T., 681, 861
Kurihara, T., 349, 641
Kurimoto, M., 431
Kurita, K., 370
Kurita, Y., 827
Kurkjy, R.P., 347
Kurkov, V.P., 622
Kurland, R.J., 148
Kuroda, T., 351, 818
Kurosaki, T., 282
Kurozumi, S., 537
Kursanov, D.N., 44, 50, 393, 403, 692, 693, 694, 699, 770, 791, 1050, 1097
Kurts, A.L., 322, 324, 325, 433
Kurtz, W., 579
Kurusu, T., 443
Kurusu, Y., 1082
Kurz, J.L., 175, 266
Kurz, M.E., 498
Kurzawa, J., 884
Kurzur, F., 863
Kusamran, K., 914
Kusano, Y., 215
Kustanovich, Z., 106
Kusumoto, H., 74
Kusumoto, T., 383, 1111
Kutepow, N.v., 721, 774
Kuthalingam, P., 1090
Kutney, G.W., 9
Kutzelnigg, W., 26
Kuwajima, I., 413, 419, 420, 818, 832, 833, 836, 839, 926
Kuyper, L.F., 155
Kuz'min, V.A., 169
Kuz'mina, N.A., 390
Kuznetsov, L.L., 573
Kuznetsov, M.A., 176
Kuznetsov, V.A., 917
Kuznetsova, T.S., 414
Kveseth, K., 123
Kwa, T.L., 399
Kwan, T., 106
Kwart, H., 35, 192, 197, 199, 235, 264, 442, 531, 615, 702, 735, 750, 858, 877, 887, 888, 909, 913, 935, 1031, 1035, 1036, 1059
Kwart, L.D., 615, 913
Kwast, A., 844
Kwei, G.H., 19
Kwiatek, J., 692
Kwiatkowski, G.T., 275, 848
Kwitowski, P.T., 766
Kwok, W., 294
Kwok, W.K., 885
Kyba, E.B., 105
Kyba, E.P., 177, 985
Kyler, K.S., 416, 836, 1109
Kyotani, Y., 921
Kyriacou, D.K., 653

Kyrtopoulos, S.A., 572

La Torre, F., 788
Laali, K., 222, 540, 579, 951
Laan, J.A.M., 1054
Laarhoven, W.H., 1012, 1013
Laba, V.I., 666, 687
Labadie, J.W., 434
Labar, D., 977
Labarre, J., 37, 235
L'Abbé, G., 176, 771
Labertrande, J., 289
Labinger, J.A., 707
Laboureur, J.L., 977
Labunskaya, V.I., 766
Lacey, R.N., 341, 685, 867
Lachance, A., 564, 795
Lachhein, S., 672
Lack, R.E., 676
Lacombe, S., 383
LaCount, R.B., 848
Lacourt, A., 727
Ladenheim, H., 339
Ladjama, D., 547
Laemmle, J., 820
Laemmle, J.T., 780, 821
Lafferty, W.J., 18
Laganis, E.D., 43, 737
Lagerlund, I., 871
Lago, J.M., 350
Lagow, R.J., 559, 620
Lagowski, J.M., 69, 584, 1088, 1108
Lahav, M., 102, 107
Lahousse, F., 923
Lahti, M., 331
Lahti, M.O., 331
Lai, C., 629
Lai, Y., 58, 408, 558, 1097, 1111
Laidlaw, G.M., 140
Laidler, D.A., 77
Laidler, K.J., 23
Laine, R.M., 695
Laity, J.L., 37
LaJohn, L.A., 154
Lajunen, M., 332
Lakritz, J., 985
Lal, B., 380
Lal, J., 1038
LaLancette, E.A., 56
Lalancette, J.M., 564, 795, 1103, 1105
Lallemand, J.Y., 421
Lalloz, L., 586
Laloi-Diard, M., 310
LaLonde, R.T., 117, 379, 677
Lam, B., 283
Lam, C., 294
Lam, K.B., 583
Lam, L.K.M., 263, 300
LaMattina, J.L., 1103
Lamaty, G., 200, 267, 276, 795, 810, 1059
Lamb, J.T., 276
Lamb, R.C., 549
Lambert, G.J., 652
Lambert, J.B., 21, 50, 86, 128, 172, 274, 275, 276, 281, 299, 771, 1022
Lambert, J.L., 155
Lamberti, V., 348
Lambrechts, H.J.A., 222
Lamm, B., 413, 583
Lammer, O., 712, 929
Lammert, J., 583
Lammert, S.R., 378
Lammertsma, K., 475
Lammiman, S.A., 792
Lampe, J., 833
Lampman, G.M., 133, 400
Lamson, D.W., 404, 1117
Lana, J.C.A., 371
Lancaster, J.E., 479
Lancelot, C.J., 263, 277, 278, 300
Landau, R.L., 163, 404, 561
Landells, R.G.M., 580
Landesberg, J.M., 76, 1103
Landesman, H., 540, 541
Landgrebe, J.A., 304, 515, 543, 544
Landini, D., 303, 320, 321, 378, 383, 384, 680, 924, 1058, 1083
Landino, J.P., 660
Landis, M.E., 738, 767
Landis, P.S., 897, 1046
Landmesser, N.G., 977
Landolt, R.G., 1029
Landor, P.D., 401, 924
Landor, S.R., 401, 675, 1105
Landro, F.J., 559
Lane, A.G., 1067
Lane, C.A., 336
Lane, C.F., 515, 551, 703, 706, 799, 812, 997, 1096, 1098
Lane, J.F., 983
Lang, D., 749, 751
Láng, K.L., 311
Lange, B.C., 155, 308, 324
Lange, G., 158
Lange, G.L., 1070
Lange, R.M., 472
Langemann, A., 517
Langer, A.W., Jr., 545
Langer, E., 784
Langer, W., 104
Langhals, H., 318
Langlet, J., 751
Langlois, D.P., 314
Langworthy, W.C., 547
Lankamp, H., 165
Lankin, D.C., 1061
Lansbury, P.T., 178, 418, 810, 988, 995
Lansinger, J.M., 808
Laos, I., 1077
Lapenue, M., 430
Lapidus, A.L., 720, 826
Lapouyade, R., 430
Lappert, M.F., 860, 1039
Lapporte, S.J., 608
LaPrade, J.E., 772, 814
Lapworth, A., 855, 859
Larchar, A.W., 794
Larchevêque, M., 417, 444, 569, 628, 693, 694, 839, 931
Lardelli, G., 348
Lardicci, L., 710, 811
Large, R., 639
Larkworthy, L.F., 571
Laroche, P., 1012
LaRochelle, R., 1033
LaRochelle, R.W., 773
Larock, R.C., 353, 403, 433, 554, 555, 652, 723
Larrahondo, J., 935, 936
Larsen, D.S., 671, 728
Larsen, D.T., 891
Larsen, D.W., 667
Larsen, J.W., 143, 149, 266, 267, 319, 467
Larson, C.A., 369
Larson, E.G., 172
Larson, H.O., 380, 638, 739, 1087
Larson, J.K., 413
LaRue, M., 920
Lashley, L.K., 650
Laskovics, F.M., 783
Lasne, M., 68, 725

Lasne, M.C., 796
Lasperas, M., 821
Lassau, C., 575
Last, L.A., 1011
Lastomirsky, R.R., 990
Laszlo, P., 14, 199
Lathan, W.A., 18
Latif, N., 921
Latimore, M.C., 199
Latourette, H.K., 486
Lattes, A., 689, 690, 691
Lattimer, R.P., 1069, 1070
Latypova, F.M., 403
Lau, H.H., 119, 120, 1045
Lau, K.S.Y., 918
Lau, M.P., 1096
Lau, P.W.K., 839
Lau, Y.K., 234
Laub, R.J., 1001, 1002
Laue, P., 551
Lauer, G., 52
Lauer, R.F., 536, 627, 913, 914, 1086
Lauer, W.M., 1029
Laufer, A.H., 172
Laughlin, R.G., 174
Laughton, P.M., 200
Laureillard, J., 266
Laurence, C., 242
Laureni, J., 737
Laurent, A., 383, 535, 828, 951, 1105
Laurie, V.W., 15, 18, 136, 235
Lautens, M., 905
Lauterbach, H., 661
Lauwers, M., 383
Lavallée, P., 383
Lavanish, J.M., 133
LaVietes, D., 678
Laviron, E., 598
Lavrik, P.B., 736
Lavrov, V.I., 346, 684
Law, F.C.P., 956
Law, J., 948
Lawesson, S., 367, 371, 549, 636, 794, 842, 1031
Lawler, R.G., 163, 404, 468, 560, 561
Lawlor, J.M., 692
Lawrence, J.P., 638, 1037
Lawrence, L.M., 560
Lawrie, C.W., 338
Lawson, A.J., 470, 471
Lawson, D.D., 41
Lawson, J., 59
Lawton, B.T., 1047
Lawton, R.G., 35, 273
Laycock, D.E., 917
Laye, P.G., 114
Layer, R.W., 797
Layton, R.B., 715
Lazaris, A.Ya., 789
Lazdins, D., 502
Lazdins, I., 264, 278
Lazzaroni, R., 722
Leach, C.T., 725
Leach, D.R., 652
Leader, H., 694
Leake, W.W., 596
Learn, K., 393, 395
Lease, M.F., 699
Leavell, K.H., 1021
Leaver, D., 61
Lebedev, B.A., 573
Lebedev, B.L., 708
LeBel, N.A., 275, 667, 676, 828, 858, 874, 907, 909
Le Berre, A., 689
Leblanc, Y., 383
Le Borgne, J.F., 417, 931
Lebrilla, C.B., 696
Le Bris, A., 799
Lecadet, D., 866
Le Carpentier, J., 147, 485, 487
Lecce, L., 676
Lechavallier, A., 331
Lechten, P., 1010
Lechtken, P., 213
Leclerc, G., 387
Leconte, M., 1037
L'Ecuyer, P., 604
Ledaal, T., 940
Lederer, M., 727
Ledlie, D.B., 304, 713, 1011
Lednicer, D., 91, 785
Ledon, H., 534
Ledon, H.J., 736
Ledoux, M.J., 697
Ledwith, A., 170, 175, 764, 766, 936
Lee, B., 941
Lee, C., 1057
Lee, C.C., 43, 277, 287, 483, 678, 903, 947, 948
Lee, C.S., 416
Lee, C.S.T., 924
Lee, D., 660
Lee, D.F., 361
Lee, D.G., 222, 225, 287, 593, 627, 629, 733, 1051, 1054, 1057, 1058, 1059, 1060, 1070–1073, 1080, 1086, 1088
Lee, G.A., 1083
Lee, H., 904, 1077
Lee, H.D., 999, 1001
Lee, I., 443
Lee, J., 69
Lee, J.B., 388, 390, 430, 990, 991, 1039, 1061, 1083
Lee, J.G., 896, 1019
Lee, J.I., 350, 435
Lee, J.T., 988
Lee, K., 104
Lee, K.W., 1047
Lee, L., 670
Lee, L.F., 817
Lee, M.K.T., 73
Lee, M.W., 197
Lee, P.G., 772
Lee, S.K., 1033
Lee, S.L., 1102
Lee, S.P., 350, 373
Lee, S.Y., 923
Lee, T.M., 312
Lee, T.S., 1057
Lee, T.W.S., 223, 443
Lee, W., 769, 770
Lee, W.G., 156, 885
Lee, Y., 1106
Leenson, I.A., 681
Leermakers, P.A., 172, 941
Lee-Ruff, E., 223
Lees, W.A., 73
Leese, R.M., 392
Le Fave, G.M., 327
Lefebvre, G., 799
Le Fèvre, R.J.W., 77, 123
Leffek, K.T., 199, 200, 387, 596, 884, 885
Lefferts, E.B., 140, 819
Leffingwell, J.C., 639, 1053
Leffler, J.E., 192, 464
Lefour, J.M., 749
Lefrancois, M., 917
Legan, E., 310
Legault, R., 964
Leggett, T.L., 173, 667
LeGoff, E., 46, 772
Legon, A.C., 129
Legrand, M., 120
Le Gras, J., 772

Le Guen, J., 457
Le Hénaff, P., 783
Leheup, B., 434
Lehmkuhl, H., 715
Lehn, J.M., 77, 78, 86, 87, 105, 115, 154, 1040
Lehner, H., 109, 784
Lehnert, W., 838, 933, 1076
Lehr, R.E., 751, 755
Leibfritz, D., 647
Leibovici, C., 235
Leigh, G.J., 1037, 1038
Leigh, S.J., 105
Leight, R.S., 1010
Leimer, K.E., 891
Lein, G.M., 78
Leiserowitz, L., 107
Leisten, J.A., 329, 341
Leitch, L.C., 468
Leiterig, T.J., 103
Leitich, J., 109
Leleu, G., 1084
LeMahieu, R., 764, 1097
Lemaire, J., 629
Lemaire, M., 477, 529
Le Maistre, J.W., 931
Lemal, D.M., 43, 133, 737, 767, 922, 1009
Lemay, G., 820, 828
Le Men, J., 1081
Le Merrer, Y., 833
Lemière, G.L., 84
Lemieux, R.U., 128, 733, 1071
Lemin, A.J., 1057
Lempert, K., 262, 350
Lengyel, I., 379
Lennox, D.M., 1021
le Noble, W.J., 151, 195, 264, 266, 281, 325, 327
Lenoir, D., 281, 282, 1112
Lenox, R.S., 406
Lentz, C.M., 401, 714
Le Ny, G., 275, 286
Lenz, F., 672
Lenz, G., 764, 868
Lenz, G.R., 764
Lenz, P.A., 330, 331
Leo, A., 1060
Leonard, J.E., 112, 308
Leonard, N.J., 135, 324, 798, 1054, 1089
Leonard, R., 987
Leonarduzzi, G.D., 682
Leone, A., 858
Leone, R.E., 945
Leong, A.Y.W., 419
Leonova, E.V., 44
Leopold, A., 570
Le Perchec, P., 711, 939
Lepeska, B., 663, 707
Lepley, A.R., 163, 404, 423, 561, 591, 605, 992, 993, 1021
LePoire, D.M., 358
Leray, E., 166
Leriverend, P., 1017
Lerman, O., 479, 529
Lerner, L.R., 1085
Leroi, G.E., 121
Leroux, Y., 818
Leshina, T.V., 404
Lesko, P.M., 139
Lessard, J., 728, 837
Lester, D.J., 536, 785, 1058, 1062
Lester, W.A., Jr., 207
Letendre, L.J., 411
Lethbridge, A., 1085
Letort, M., 629
Letourneau, F., 293
Letsinger, R.L., 595, 904, 1104, 1111
Leung, C., 16
Leung, K.P., 857
Leung, T., 131
Leuschner, G., 639
Leusink, A.J., 988
Leusink, J., 75
Levanda, O.G., 1085
Levas, É., 847
Levasseur, L.A., 1021
Levchenko, T.S., 415
Levek, T.J., 762
Levene, R., 401, 681
Lever, O.W., Jr., 418, 546, 719, 840
Leveson, L.L., 329
Levi, G.I., 23
Levi, N., 215
Levin, C., 280
Levin, C.C., 92
Levin, J.I., 375, 747
Levin, P.P., 169
Levin, R.H., 580, 759
Levina, I.Yu., 951, 953
Levina, R.Ya., 457, 1022
Levine, I.N., 20
Levine, R., 567, 596
Levine, S.G., 813, 847
Levisalles, J., 526, 713, 1039
Levisky, J.A., 472, 473
Levit, A.F., 641, 647, 1086
Levitan, S.R., 828
Levitin, I., 390
Levitin, I.Ya., 515, 643
Levitina, E.S., 102
Levitt, B.W., 600
Levitt, L.S., 17, 247, 600
Levitt, T.E., 362, 373, 1099
Levitz, M., 258
Levitz, R., 423
Levy, A.B., 428, 552, 553, 661, 730, 997, 999, 1001
Levy, A.J., 665
Levy, G.C., 222
Levy, H., 1021
Levy, J.F., 264, 265
Levy, M., 725
Lew, G., 1000
Lewarchik, R.J., 649
Lewars, E.G., 736, 975
Lewellyn, M., 137
Lewellyn, M.E., 920
Lewin, A.H., 353, 490, 589, 598
Lewis, D.C., 613, 957
Lewis, D.W., 108
Lewis, E.S., 189, 197, 198, 230, 242, 244, 287, 289, 579, 613, 647, 1021
Lewis, F.D., 765, 984
Lewis, G.J., 104
Lewis, G.N., 256
Lewis, H.B., 644
Lewis, H.L., 157
Lewis, I.C., 246, 247
Lewis, J.R., 350
Lewis, J.W., 395
Lewis, M.D., 735
Lewis, N.J., 549
Lewis, R.G., 299
Lewis, S.D., 352
Lewis, S.N., 956, 990
Lewis, T.B., 397
Lex, J., 58, 473
Ley, S.V., 56, 331, 531, 536, 785, 839, 1054, 1058, 1061, 1062, 1077
Leznoff, C.C., 59, 373
Lhomme, J., 286
Lhomme, M., 1111
Li, C., 73

Li, G.S., 1099, 1102
Li, J.C., 136
Li, J.P., 897
Li, M., 918
Li, P.T., 560
Li, R., 210
Li, T., 695, 1030
Liang, C.D., 106
Liang, G., 45, 144, 146, 149, 262, 271, 282, 283, 450, 1011
Liang, K.S.Y., 644
Liang, P.H., 1077
Liau, H.T.L., 1085
Libbey, W.J., 952
Libby, E.M., 468
Liberatore, F., 799
Liberek, B., 386
Liberles, A., 3
Liberman, A.L., 702, 782
Libert, V., 91
Libertini, E., 1112
Libman, J., 861
Lichtin, N.N., 308
Lick, C., 357
Lide, D.R., Jr., 15, 18, 20, 21, 121
Lidert, Z., 56
Liebeskind, L.S., 598
Liebman, J.F., 20, 50, 130, 133, 134, 961, 1026
Liechti, P., 838
Lieder, C.A., 258
Liedhegener, A., 445
Lien, A.P., 505
Lienert, J., 934
Lienhard, G., 331
Lienhard, G.E., 292, 528
Lienhard, U., 372
Liesemer, R.N., 858
Liesenfelt, H., 699
Lieske, C.N., 857
Liggero, S.H., 947, 962
Lightner, D.A., 108, 921
Likholobov, V.A., 723
Lilburn, J., 342, 589
Liler, M., 219, 222, 224, 225, 229, 342, 682
Lilje, K.C., 599
Lillford, P.J., 681, 682, 687, 690
Lim, E.C., 210
Lim, G., 888
Lim, L.N., 1003
Lim, W.Y., 677
Lim, Y.Y., 870
Lin, C., 429, 479, 1022
Lin, C.Y., 51
Lin, D.K., 631, 787
Lin, G.M.L., 312
Lin, H.C., 143, 342, 452, 464, 468, 469, 487, 638, 660
Lin, J., 917
Lin, J.J., 390, 694, 695
Lin, S., 510
Lin, S.H., 210
Lin, Y., 283, 481
Lincoln, D.N., 145
Lind, G., 131
Linda, P., 39, 69, 488
Lindblad, C., 793
Linden, S., 524
Lindert, A., 416, 532, 1091
Lindlar, H., 695
Lindley, J., 589
Lindley, J.M., 1103
Lindner, E., 146
Lindner, H.J., 46, 52
Lindow, D.F., 701
Lindsay, D.G., 543
Lindsay Smith, J.R., 140, 476, 621, 629, 749
Lindsey, A.S., 491, 492
Lindsey, R.V., Jr., 654, 710, 766
Lindstrom, M.J., 625
Lindy, L.B., 420
Lineberger, W.C., 166
Linevsky, M.J., 22
Lingenfelter, D.S., 105
Linhard, M., 730
Linke, S., 428, 861, 984
Lin'kova, M.G., 728
Linn, W.J., 746
Linnett, J.W., 24
Linsay, E.C., 288
Linss, J., 87
Linstead, R.P., 803, 1053
Linstrumelle, G., 402, 403, 407, 410, 571
Lion, C., 286, 334, 391, 401, 416, 427, 434, 441, 542
Lions, F., 712
Liotta, C., 16, 77, 289, 308, 320, 321, 343, 353, 382, 416, 429, 543, 723, 769, 844, 845
Liotta, D., 361, 536, 537, 821
Liotta, R., 704, 1071
Lipinski, C.A., 407
Lipisko, B.A., 836
Lipkowitz, K.B., 231
Lipnick, R.L., 129
Lipp, H.I., 365
Lipshutz, B.H., 331, 401, 404, 410, 628, 713, 737, 1075
Lipsky, S., 210
Lipsky, S.D., 822, 1097
Lipton, M., 375
Lipton, M.F., 911
Lisle, J.B., 18
Liso, G., 799
Lissel, M., 354, 422, 1065
Lissi, E.A., 214
Listemann, M.L., 1038
Lister-James, J., 621, 725
Liston, T.V., 546
Littell, R., 1054
Litterer, W.E., 716
Little, D.A., 56
Little, E.L., 689
Little, J., 572
Little, R.D., 404, 1042
Little, W., 1058
Little, W.F., 44
Little, W.T., 842, 843
Littler, J.S., 1050, 1060, 1065, 1066
Litvin, E.F., 696
Litvinenko, L.M., 290, 444, 445, 587
Litvinenko, S.L., 318
Liu, H., 120, 350, 363, 373
Liu, H.J., 978
Liu, J., 348, 929, 993
Liu, J.S., 145
Liu, K., 281, 302, 676, 877, 1043, 1057
Liu, L.H., 137, 924
Liu, L.K., 443
Liu, M.M., 766
Liu, M.T.H., 168, 174, 751
Liu, R.S.H., 747, 764, 766
Liukkonen, R.J., 599
Livant, P., 560
Livinghouse, T., 410
Ljunggren, S.O., 1085
Llewellyn, J.A., 199, 200
Lloyd, D., 37
Lloyd, D.J., 888, 892
Lloyd, G.J., 338, 352
Lloyd, J.M., 313, 910

Lloyd, J.R., 143
Lloyd, R.V., 612
Lloyd, W.G., 608, 633
Lo, S.M., 434
Loan, L.D., 1068
Lock, J.D., 312
Locke, A.W., 787
Lockley, W.J.S., 468
Lodder, G., 1042
Loening, K., 96
Loeppky, R.N., 303, 532, 572
Loeschorn, C.A., 977
Loev, B., 334
Loewenschuss, H., 227
Loftfield, R.B., 971
Logan, T.J., 545, 981
Logbo, K.D., 390
Logemann, E., 429, 1115
Logue, M.W., 436, 564
Logullo, F.M., 582
Lohaus, G., 933
Löhrer, H., 713
Lohri, B., 103
Loim, L.M., 791
Loim, N.M., 693, 694, 1097
Loken, H.Y., 561
Lokensgard, J.P., 133, 767
Loktev, V.F., 980
Lomas, D., 758
Lomas, J.S., 565, 902, 927
Lombard, R., 733
Long, D.A., 495
Long, F.A., 74, 225, 337, 467, 507, 528
Long, M.A., 468
Long, R.A.J., 612, 644
Longas, M.O., 286
Longone, D.T., 550
Longridge, J.L., 507
Longuet-Higgins, H.C., 59, 60, 1005
Lonsdale, K., 18
Loo, S.N., 479
Loomis, G.L., 847
Loosen, K., 948
Loosmore, S.M., 312
Loots, M.J., 715
Lopatin, B.V., 666
Lopez, L., 920
Lopez, R.C.G., 794
Lopez, V.O., 247
Lopp, I.G., 821
Lorand, J.P., 83, 167, 994
Lora-Tamayo, M., 748
Lorber, M., 730, 1077
Lord, E., 885
Lord, P.D., 799
Lord, R.C., 129
Lorenc, Lj., 632
Lorenz, D.H., 510
Lorenz, O., 1068
Lorenz, R., 802
Lorenzo, A., 387
Lorette, N.B., 1030
Lorne, R., 403, 605, 956, 1034
Los, J.M., 507
Lossing, F.P., 54, 67, 581
Lothrop, W.C., 598
Lotsch, W., 165
Loubinoux, B., 367
Loudon, A.G., 907
Loudon, G.M., 535, 662, 984
Loudon, J.D., 587, 628
Louis, J., 1084
Loupy, A., 353, 812, 821, 888, 895, 915
Louw, R., 341, 510, 532, 899, 909, 1089
Lovas, F.J., 18, 1070
Loveitt, M.E., 685
Lovel, C.G., 723, 724
Lovering, E.G., 23
Lovey, A.J., 441
Lovtsova, A.N., 948
Low, K., 1085
Lowe, G., 88, 1053
Lowe, J.P., 121, 891
Lowe, P.A., 36, 362, 845
Lowell, S., 302
Lower, S.K., 211
Lowery, M.K., 365, 990
Lown, J.W., 744
Lowry, N., 276
Lowry, T.H., 157
Loza, R., 1020
Lozinskii, M.O., 381
Lu, L.D., 736, 833
Lu, M.D., 107
Lu, P., 963
Lu, S., 1026
Lubinkowski, J.J., 589
Luborsky, F.E., 451
Lucas, G.B., 990
Lucas, H., 1108
Lucas, H.J., 269
Lucas, J., 142
Lucchese, R.R., 171
Lucchetti, J., 714, 926
Lucchini, V., 225, 661, 747
Luche, J., 409, 694, 810, 817
Luche, J.L., 391, 622
Luche, M., 802
Lucherini, A., 1038
Lucien, J., 360
Lucken, E.A.C., 158
Luckenbach, R., 1130, 1131
Lüdke, G., 870, 871
Ludwieg, A., 414
Ludwig, U., 993, 994
Luft, R., 249
Luftmann, H., 622
Lugade, A.G., 1103
Lugasch, M.N., 224
Luh, T., 377
Lührs, K., 1107
Lui, C.Y., 282, 283
Luibrand, R.T., 952
Luka, G.Ya., 642
Lukas, E., 452, 487
Lukas, J., 452, 487, 524, 766
Lukas, J.H., 766
Lukashevich, V.O., 1035
Lukasiewicz, A., 799
Lukaszewski, H., 807
Luke, M.O., 524, 698, 699
Lukina, M.Yu., 130, 676
Lukins, P.B., 42
Luknitskii, F.I., 759, 783, 916
Luk'yanets, E.A., 1091
Lum, K.K., 899
Lumb, J.T., 567
Lunazzi, L., 123, 396
Lundeen, A.J., 902
Lundeen, J.T., 1077
Lungle, M.L., 785
Luo, F., 403, 433
Luong-Thi, N., 433, 434, 643
Lupes, M.E., 859
Lupton, E.C., Jr., 237, 248
Lusch, M.J., 187, 714
Lusk, D.I., 561, 1091
Luskus, L.J., 758
Lustgarten, R.K., 274, 275
Lusztyk, E., 396
Lusztyk, J., 396, 957
Luteri, G.F., 745
Luthra, N.P., 185
Lutskii, A.E., 73
Lüttke, W., 20
Lüttringhaus, A., 1115
Lutz, H.J., 927
Lutz, R.P., 1023, 1030

Lutz, W., 833
Luukkonen, E., 307
Lux, R., 1106
Luz, Z., 129
Luzikov, Yu.N., 133
Luzzio, F.A., 1058
L'vova, A.Ya., 510
Lwowski, W., 176, 380, 535, 536, 741, 983, 984
Lyerla, J.R., 450
Lyle, R.E., 1103
Lynch, G.J., 681, 682
Lynch, P.P., 395
Lynch, T.J., 1119
Lynd, R.A., 403, 555
Lyons, A., 213
Lyons, J.E., 692, 1101
Lyster, M.A., 334, 385
Lythgoe, B., 899, 926
Lyushin, M.M., 495

Ma, C., 1078
Ma, V., 356
Maag, H., 802
Maagin, A., 774
Maahs, G., 63
Maak, N., 1034
Maarsen, P.K., 474
Maas, G., 1022, 1026
Maas, L.W., 1072
Maas, W., 786
McAdams, L.V., III, 922
McAlister, D.R., 775
MacAlpine, G.A., 929
Macaulay, S.R., 525
McBay, H.C., 639
McBee, E.T., 476, 614, 747
McBride, J., 165
McBride, J.M., 54, 955
McCabe, J.R., 751
McCague, R., 56
McCain, M.E., 891
McCall, J.M., 1041
McCall, M.J., 950
McCann, V.H., 888
McCapra, F., 242
McCarney, C.C., 925
Maccarone, E., 443
McCarthy, J.R., Jr., 953
McCarty, C.G., 110, 931, 987, 1046
McCasland, G.E., 84
McCauley, D.A., 505
Macchia, B., 332
Macchia, F., 332
Macciantelli, D., 123
McClellan, A.L., 15, 72
McClelland, B.J., 169
McClelland, R.A., 224, 293, 330, 331, 336, 340
McCloskey, C.J., 408, 1112
McClung, G.R., 669
McClure, J.D., 710, 990
McCluskey, J.G., 387
Maccoll, A., 874, 896, 898, 900
McCollum, G.J., 247
McCollum, G.W., 553
McCombs, D.A., 702
McConaghy, J.S., Jr., 176
McConnell, H.M., 166
McCorkindale, N.J., 973
McCormick, J.P., 628, 1082
McCormick, J.R.D., 847
Mc Cown, J.D., 312
McCoy, L.L., 625, 774
McCrae, W., 639
McCrary, T.J., Jr., 299
McCreadie, T., 1040
McCrindle, R., 391
McCullagh, L.N., 573
McCullough, J.J., 675
McCullough, K.J., 92
McCullough, L.G., 1038
McCullough, S.K., 993
McDaniel, D.H., 74, 223, 244
McDermott, J.X., 1085
McDermott, M., 321
McDonagh, P.M., 125
MacDonald, D.J., 63
McDonald, G.J., 200
McDonald, J.H., III, 103
McDonald, K., 544
MacDonald, K.I., 1061
McDonald, R.L., 225
McDonald, R.N., 737, 980
McDonald, R.S., 294, 662
Macdonald, T.L., 414, 817
McDonald, W.S., 759, 761
McDougall, A.O., 783
McElvain, S.M., 345
McEnroe, F.J., 822, 1097
McEwen, A.B., 695
McEwen, I., 905
McEwen, W.E., 486, 589, 849, 851, 1018
McFarland, P.E., 433
McFarlane, F.E., 278
McFarlin, R.F., 396
McGahan, T.J., 353
McGahey, L.F., 515
McGarrity, J.F., 67, 313, 344
McGarrity, M.J., 258, 312
McGarvey, B.R., 692
McGarvey, G., 560
McGee, H.A., Jr., 770
McGee, L.R., 833
McGee, M.J., 1077
McGee, T.W., 724
McGhie, J.F., 394, 395
MacGibbon, A.K.H., 887
MacGillavry, C.H., 148
McGillivray, G., 547, 549
McGinnis, J., 1038
McGirk, R.H., 262
McGlinchey, M.J., 560
McGrath, B.P., 626
McGreer, D.E., 937
McGregor, S.D., 922
McGrew, B., 1033
McGuinness, J.A., 622
McGuire, M.A., 415
McGuire, R.R., 725
McGuirk, P.R., 778
Mach, G.W., 224
Mach, M.H., 478, 510
McHenry, B.M., 839
Machida, H., 924
Machida, Y., 357
Machiguchi, T., 51
Machii, Y., 807
Machleder, W.H., 736, 973
Machleidt, H., 529
Macho, V., 282
McInnis, E.L., 1003
McIntosh, C.L., 51, 581
McIntosh, J.M., 320
MacIntyre, D.W., 247
McIntyre, J.S., 142
McIsaac, J.E., Jr., 310, 1060
McIver, R.T., Jr., 65, 234, 235, 337, 565
Mack, A.G., 598
Mackay, G.I., 223, 235, 308, 309
McKean, D.R., 382, 547, 904, 1055
McKee, D.B., 725
McKee, D.W., 697
McKeer, L.C., 476
McKellin, W.H., 1108
McKelvey, D.R., 3, 200

McKelvey, J.M., Jr., 478
McKelvey, R.D., 616, 1042
McKelvie, N., 845, 847
McKendrick, J.J., 80
McKenna, C.E., 647
McKenna, J., 890
McKenna, J.M., 952
McKennis, J.S., 1011, 1025
McKenzie, A., 660
Mackenzie, D.R., 479
Mackenzie, K., 287, 524, 937
McKeon, J.E., 1081
McKeown, E., 634
McKervey, M.A., 88, 102, 135, 569, 954, 961, 962, 1037
Mackie, R.K., 383, 919
Mackiernan, J., 677
McKillop, A., 347, 373, 436, 441, 476, 484, 495, 547, 549, 552, 596, 627, 644, 650, 654, 784, 854, 976, 1051, 1057, 1058, 1063, 1072, 1083, 1085, 1087, 1120
McKinley, J.W., 262
McKinney, M.A., 331, 391
McKinnie, B.G., 424
Macklen, E.D., 223
McKnight, C., 956
Mackor, E.L., 142, 448
McKusick, B.C., 430, 670, 671, 760, 769, 794
McLafferty, F.W., 623
McLain, S.J., 1039
McLane, R.C., 827
Maclaren, J.A., 1087
McLauchlan, K.A., 163
McLaughlin, M.P., 459
McLaughlin, T.G., 631
MacLaury, M.R., 885
McLay, G.W., 347, 712
MacLean, C., 123, 165, 448
McLean, S., 1016
McLeish, M.J., 647
McLennan, D.J., 198, 266, 510, 882, 885–888
MacLeod, J.K., 888
Macleod, L.C., 1097
McLeod, R.K., 796
McLeod, W.D., Jr., 828
McLoughlin, J.I., 811
McMahon, T.B., 234
McManimie, R.J., 298
McManus, S., 268
McManus, S.P., 141, 264, 272, 369, 661, 792
McMeeking, J., 766
McMichael, K.D., 1028
McMillan, F.H., 1120
MacMillan, J.H., 935
McMurry, J.E., 315, 386, 391, 407, 408, 431, 595, 694, 785, 787, 834, 919, 921, 925, 1074, 1112, 1113
McNees, R.S., 545
McNeill, E.A., 768
McNelis, E., 508
McNesby, J.R., 174, 544
MacNicol, D.D., 80
MacNulty, B.J., 881, 896
Macomber, R., 275
Macomber, R.S., 1082
McOmie, J.F.W., 343, 385
McOsker, C.C., 390, 693
MacPeek, D.L., 735
MacPhee, J.A., 247, 249, 334, 416, 434
McPhee, W.D., 971
McPherson, C.A., 662, 837
MacQuarrie, R.A., 223
McQuilkin, R.M., 59
McQuillin, F.J., 393, 692, 1103
McRowe, A.W., 960
McShane, H.F., Jr., 863
McSweeney, J.V., 599
McTigue, P., 223
McTigue, P.T., 222
McVie, G.J., 501
McWeeny, R., 3
Madan, V., 515, 737
Madaule-Aubry, F., 317
Madawinata, K., 424
Maddocks, P.J., 997
Madhavan, S., 936
Madhavarao, M., 921
Madjdabadi, F.A., 495
Mador, I.L., 692
Madroñero, R., 860
Maeda, K., 932
Maeda, M., 137
Maeda, T., 1047
Maeda, Y., 1084
Maemura, K., 643
Maercker, A., 160, 845, 904
Maesschalck, L., 750
Magaha, S., 320
Magennis, S.A., 643
Mager, S., 128
Mageswaran, S., 929, 993, 1033
Maggio, T.E., 928
Magi, M., 1098
Magid, R.M., 288, 289, 384, 405
Magnane, R., 920
Magnera, T.F., 299
Magnotta, F.A., 445
Magnus, P., 839
Magnus, P.D., 420, 747, 860
Magnuson, R.H., 515
Magnusson, B., 794
Magnusson, G., 846
Magoon, E.F., 955
Magyar, E.S., 276
Mahadevan, R., 58, 59
Mahalanabis, K.K., 714
Mahalingam, S., 656
Mahdavi-Damghani, Z., 714
Mahendran, K., 308
Mahler, J.E., 63
Mahler, W., 169, 770
Maia, A., 321
Maia, A.M., 303
Maier, G., 50, 51, 52, 133, 139, 771, 939, 1003, 1010, 1027
Maier, W.F., 138, 416, 564, 695, 696, 1097, 1107
Maillard, A., 632
Maillard, B., 396
Maimind, V.I., 44, 574, 1047
Main, L., 469
Mains, H.E., 636
Maiolo, F., 590
Maitlis, P.M., 53, 767, 774, 775, 1085
Maizell, R.E., 1121
Maj, S.P., 613
Majerski, Z., 68, 284, 286, 949, 962, 976
Majestic, V.K., 395
Majetich, G., 423
Majewski, R.W., 1083
Majumdar, S.P., 978
Mak, T.C.W., 55
Makani, S., 477
Makarova, L.G., 548, 551, 556, 557, 603
Makhija, R.C., 1079
Maki, A.G., 18
Maki, Y., 1099, 1103

Makin, S.M., 714
Makisumi, Y., 1031, 1032, 1033
Mąkosza, M., 320, 366, 412, 416, 599, 712, 844, 912
Makovetskii, K.L., 774
Maksić, Z., 130
Maksimović, Z., 632
Maksyutin, Yu.K., 74
Malament, D.S., 770
Malatesta, V., 616
Maldonado, L., 418, 719
Malek, F., 395, 656
Malek, G., 372
Málek, J., 719, 813, 1094, 1102, 1105
Malherbe, R., 751, 1021
Malhotra, R., 345, 383, 385, 386, 469, 470
Mali, R.S., 545
Mali, S.I., 478
Malinowski, M., 1112, 1113
Malkus, H., 276
Mallan, J.M., 545, 702
Malleron, J.L., 415
Mallet, J.J., 750
Mallion, R.B., 26, 37
Mallison, P.R., 998
Mallory, C.W., 1012
Mallory, F.B., 1012
Malone, G.R., 424, 425, 837
Malpass, J.R., 869, 1025
Malrieu, J., 751
Malsch, K., 133
Malte, A., 433
Maltsev, A.K., 170
Malykhin, E.V., 628
Mamalis, P., 1031
Mamedova, Yu.G., 166
Mammarella, R.E., 558
Mamuzić, R.I., 632
Manabe, O., 215, 606
Manassen, J., 903
Manatt, S.L., 40, 52
Mancelle, N., 837
Mancini, G.J., 1023
Mancuso, A.J., 1082
Mancuso, N.R., 988
Mandal, A.K., 492, 705, 811
Mandava, N., 293
Mandel, F., 197
Mandelbaum, A., 433
Mander, L.N., 1033
Manderola, O.B. de, 862
Mandolini, L., 185, 353
Mangeney, P., 713
Mangini, A., 154
Manglik, A.K., 466
Mango, F.D., 766, 957, 1038, 1039
Mangold, D., 747, 938
Mangoni, L., 734, 920
Mangru, N.N., 302, 882
Manhas, M.S., 380, 414
Mann, D.E., 15, 20, 170
Mann, K., 50
Mann, M., 57
Mannen, S., 1062
Manner, J.A., 279
Mannhardt, H., 205
Mannschreck, A., 87, 109, 111
Mano, H., 880
Manoharan, M., 126
Manor, S., 385
Mansfield, K.T., 766, 767
Manske, R.H.F., 378
Manson, D.L., 385
Manyik, R.M., 367, 690
Manzocchi, A., 823, 1057, 1075
Mao, C., 1010
Mappes, G.W., 703
Maquestiau, A., 138
Marais, D.J., 28
Marbet, R., 1030
Marburg, S., 383
Marcacci, F., 710
Marcaccioli, S., 34
March, J., 473, 562, 565, 567, 819
Marchand, A.P., 172, 751, 755, 768
Marchand-Brynaert, J., 759, 761
Marchelli, R., 1108
Marchese, G., 400, 434, 877, 880, 885
Marchese, L., 362
Marchesini, A., 43
Marchi, M., 842
Marchini, P., 799
Marcinkiewicz, S., 1031
Marco, J.A., 58
Marcum, J.D., 169
Marcus, N.L., 728, 1044
Marcus, R., 847
Marcuzzi, F., 663, 731
Mareda, J., 770
Mares, F., 223, 468
Marets, J., 716
Marfat, A., 778
Margaretha, P., 202, 764
Margerison, D., 195, 196
Margolin, Z., 200, 223, 342
Margrave, J.L., 124, 172, 620
Margulis, T.N., 129
Marhevka, V.C., 459
Marianelli, R.S., 858
Mariano, P.S., 1041
Marianucci, E., 797
Marinelli, E.R., 1001
Marinelli, G.P., 595
Marino, G., 42, 461, 462, 488
Marino, J.P., 174, 496, 745, 773
Marisco, W.E., 695
Mark, H.W., 275, 276, 281
Mark, V., 289, 748, 866, 1112
Markby, R., 721
Markiewicz, W., 361
Märkl, G., 847
Markl, R., 297
Markó, L., 722, 723, 798
Markov, P., 363
Markov, V.I., 87
Marković, D., 225
Markovski, L.N., 389
Markovskii, L.N., 809
Markowitz, M., 396
Marks, M.J., 872
Marktscheffel, F., 393, 1064
Markwell, R.E., 621
Marlier, J.F., 291
Maroni, R., 297, 731
Marquarding, D., 372, 869, 870, 871, 934
Marquet, A., 103, 157, 802
Marquis, E.T., 138
Marr, E.B., 1121, 1122
Marriott, P.R., 616
Marriott, S., 247
Marrocco, M., 1079
Marsh, F.D., 477, 536, 621
Marshall, B., 1077
Marshall, C.W., 1077
Marshall, D.R., 37, 884
Marshall, J.A., 137, 138, 685, 816, 920
Marshall, J.L., 351, 390, 1053
Marshall, P.A., 704
Marshall, T.B., 758, 868
Marshall, W.S., 988

Marsi, M., 904
Martel, B., 561
Martell, A.E., 526, 683, 710, 722, 774, 776, 1084
Marten, D.F., 409
Martens, D., 56, 745, 1011
Martens, G., 622
Martens, H., 732
Martens, J., 102
Martin, A., 537
Martin, B., 563
Martin, D., 316, 343, 864
Martin, E.L., 1096
Martin, G.J., 488
Martin, H., 767, 777
Martin, J., 128, 842
Martin, J.C., 146, 165, 284, 345, 545, 610, 613, 619, 625, 759, 761, 796, 869
Martin, J.G., 748
Martin, J.M., Jr., 173
Martin, J.S., 74
Martin, K.J., 395
Martin, M., 488
Martin, M.G., 920
Martin, M.M., 135, 954, 956, 958
Martin, P.L., 266
Martin, R., 499
Martin, R.A., 1114
Martin, R.B., 336, 786, 806, 1111
Martin, R.H., 91, 92, 107
Martin, R.J.L., 294
Martin, S.F., 327, 414, 418, 839
Martin, S.J., 742
Martin, V.S., 107, 1080
Martin, W.B., 798
Martin, Z.Z., 285
Martinelli, L., 850
Martinez, A.G., 297
Martinez, G., 929
Martinez, R.I., 1070
Martinez-Davila, C., 1020
Martinon, S., 763
Márton, J., 450
Marty, R.A., 46
Martynov, V.F., 843
Maruoka, K., 553, 832, 989, 1105
Marusawa, H., 617
Maruyama, K., 403, 406, 408, 429, 651, 713, 781, 817, 821, 832, 833, 880
Maruyama, O., 643
Marvel, C.S., 82, 84
Marvell, E.N., 275, 509, 695, 935, 966, 1003, 1010, 1021, 1022, 1029
Marx, J.N., 680
Marx, M., 1082
Maryanoff, B., 1117
Maryanoff, B.E., 391, 849, 850, 1098
Maryanoff, C.A., 390, 391
Maryott, A.A., 15
Marzilli, T.A., 404
Marzin, C., 69
Masada, H., 342, 433
Masaki, M., 70
Masaki, Y., 411
Masamune, S., 9, 50, 51, 52, 55, 57, 275, 276, 348, 349, 390, 694, 833, 1040, 1076
Masaracchia, J., 761
Masci, B., 468
Mashyanov, M.N., 681
Masias, A., 325
Masilamani, D., 391
Maskell, R.K., 860
Maskill, H., 264, 273, 281, 314
Maskornick, M.J., 223
Masler, W.F., 693
Maslin, D.N., 397, 398, 816
Maslov, S.A., 629
Maslowsky, E., Jr., 512
Mason, R., 56, 75
Mason, S.F., 99
Massa, W., 416, 672
Massad, M.K., 369
Masse, J.P., 403
Masson, S., 725
Massoui, M., 1084
Massy-Westropp, R.A., 392, 853
Masterman, S., 256, 258, 337, 894
Mastrorilli, E., 663
Masuda, R., 809, 1097
Masuda, S., 14, 483
Masuda, Y., 556, 718
Masuyama, Y., 1077, 1082
Matacz, Z., 412, 539, 638
Matasa, C., 637
Mateescu, G.D., 50, 147, 282, 450
Mateo, S., 198
Matesich, M.A., 564
Mathai, I.M., 924
Mathais, H., 478
Mathehy, N.P., 632
Matheson, A.F., 200
Mathew, K.K., 921
Mathey, F., 809
Mathieu, J., 102, 751
Mathisen, D., 299
Mathison, I.W., 856
Mathur, N.K., 373
Mathur, S.N., 131
Matić, R., 632
Matin, S.B., 398
Matinopoulos-Scordou, A.E., 596
Matiskella, J.D., 387
Matlack, G.M., 1091
Matlin, S.A., 1037
Matlock, P.L., 694
Matsuda, I., 833
Matsuda, K., 280
Matsuda, M., 619, 643
Matsuda, S., 650
Matsuda, T., 643, 649, 650
Matsui, H., 292
Matsui, K., 577
Matsui, T., 244
Matsukawa, K., 596
Matsukawa, Y., 1105
Matsummura, N., 376
Matsumoto, H., 327, 598, 717, 731, 742
Matsumoto, K., 833, 964
Matsumoto, M., 692
Matsumoto, T., 327, 383, 628, 823
Matsumura, S., 391
Matsumura, Y., 646, 926, 989
Matsushima, H., 865
Matsushita, H., 403, 595
Matsuura, A., 1105
Matsuura, T., 737, 1047, 1077, 1081
Matt, J.W., 957
Matta, K.L., 351
Mattern, D.L., 711
Mattes, K., 581
Mattes, S.L., 215, 766
Matteson, D.S., 512, 733, 841
Matthews, C.N., 849
Matthews, G.J., 730
Matthews, W.S., 152
Matthey, G., 490
Matts, T.C., 266

Matturro, M., 1023
Matusch, R., 46, 133, 939
Matveev, K.I., 484
Matveeva, M.K., 603
Matyushecheva, G.I., 808
Matz, J.R., 839
Matzner, M., 347
Mauger, E., 672
Maumy, M., 629
Maurel, R., 360
Maurer, W., 580
Mauzé, B., 409, 844
Maverick, A., 313
Maverick, E., 78
Mavrov, M.V., 675
Maw, G.A., 894, 896
Maxwell, B.E., 1036
Maxwell, J.I., 223
Maxwell, R.J., 621, 953
May, G.L., 597, 644
May, H., 344
May, L.M., 1057
May, P.J., 242
Mayahi, M.F., 375, 617
Maybury, P.C., 692
Mayeda, E.A., 1060
Mayer, A., 1120
Mayer, E., 483
Mayer, J., 57
Mayer, R., 362, 780, 794, 1097, 1120
Mayer, R.P., 951
Mayer, U., 137, 637
Mayer, W., 51
Mayers, C.J., 16
Mayers, D.A., 963
Maynes, G.G., 679
Mayo, F.R., 609, 633, 669, 680
Mayo, P. de, 46, 794, 810, 942, 959, 989
Mayr, H., 577, 731, 745, 760, 761
Mazaleyrat, J., 817
Mazhar-Ul-Haque, 849
Mazume, T., 362
Mazur, R.H., 283
Mazur, S., 54, 581
Mazur, U., 1070
Mazur, Y., 354, 358, 359, 627, 787, 861, 1087
Mazzocchi, P.H., 764, 1003, 1021
Mecca, T.G., 266, 289
Mechoulam, H., 1034
Meckler, H., 744
Medary, R., 1012
Medary, R.T., 304
Medina, R., 579
Medvedeva, A.A., 815
Meek, A.G., 285
Meek, J.S., 363, 876
Meerbeek, T.G., 988
Meerwein, H., 356, 542, 946
Megarity, E.D., 215
Mehmedbasich, E., 858
Mehrotra, A., 362
Mehrotra, A.K., 331, 334, 759, 861, 1034, 1108
Mehta, A.S., 907
Mehta, G., 49, 283, 353
Meidar, D., 385, 510, 683
Meidine, M.F., 379
Meienhofer, J., 372
Meier, G.F., 927
Meier, G.P., 849, 1031
Meier, H., 137, 937, 974
Meijer, E.W., 489
Meijer, J., 290, 552, 715, 778, 1031
Meinecke, A., 410
Meintzer, C.P., 625
Meinwald, J., 114, 133, 536, 729, 911, 1026
Meinwald, Y.C., 92, 133, 729
Meinzer, R.A., 196
Meisenheimer, J., 577
Meisinger, R.H., 56
Meislich, H., 289
Meister, A., 872
Meister, H., 908
Meister, J., 769
Meisters, A., 408, 715, 817, 825, 828
Mekhtiev, S.D., 495
Melander, L., 197, 449
Melby, E.G., 271
Melby, L.R., 76, 169
Melega, W.P., 45
Melera, A., 57
Melikyan, V.R., 857
Mellon, M.G., 1121, 1122
Melloni, G., 297, 663, 671, 731
Mellor, D.P., 83
Mellor, J.M., 637, 758, 1074
Mellor, M.T.J., 849
Mel'nikova, V.I., 694
Melpolder, J.P., 643
Melton, J., 787
Melvin, L.S., Jr., 36, 349, 864
Melzer, D., 78
Menahem, Y., 529
Menapace, H.R., 1037
Menapace, L.W., 392, 594
Mende, U., 51
Mendenhall, G.D., 634
Mengenhauser, J.V., 863
Menger, F.M., 133, 281, 293, 338, 340, 1057
Mengler, H., 441
Menon, B., 153, 155, 223
Menon, B.C., 563
Mensch, S., 52
Menyailo, A.T., 1066
Menzel, P., 450
Mercer, G.D., 785
Meredith, C.C., 41
Merényi, R., 133, 139, 775, 923, 1024, 1025
Merer, A.J., 207
Meresz, O., 857
Mergelsberg, I., 656
Merger, F., 348
Merk, W., 1011
Merkel, C., 429
Merkley, J.H., 715
Merkushev, E.B., 478, 1088
Mermoud, F., 1053
Merrifield, R.B., 373
Merrill, R.E., 434, 595
Merritt, M.V., 357
Merritt, R.F., 725
Mertens, A., 718
Mertz, C., 912
Merz, E., 641
Mesbergen, W.B., 745
Meshcheryakov, A.P., 639
Meskens, F.A.J., 789
Meske-Schüller, J., 137, 138
Meskin, A.J., 899
Mesnard, D., 429, 901
Messer, L.A., 627, 1071
Messina, G., 450
Messmer, G.G., 577
Mestdagh, H., 359
Mestres, R., 355, 988
Mészáros, L., 399, 436
Metcalf, B.W., 59, 62
Metcalfe, J., 1009
Metelitsa, D.I., 628, 735
Metesich, M.A., 684
Meth-Cohn, O., 494, 645, 1052, 1103

Metts, L., 215
Metz, T.E., 748
Metzger, J., 640, 641, 644, 1077, 1085
Metzner, P., 780, 1031
Meul, T., 58
Meunier, A., 713
Meunier, B., 736
Meurling, L., 107
Meurling, P., 793
Meyer, F.J., 158
Meyer, G., 602
Meyer, G.R., 663, 694, 831
Meyer, H.J., 371
Meyer, H.R., 838
Meyer, J.W., 500
Meyer, K.H., 67, 1097
Meyer, M.D., 627, 1071
Meyer, M.W., 506
Meyer, N., 424
Meyer, R., 837
Meyer, R.G., 1040
Meyer, W.C., 869
Meyers, A.I., 106, 384, 417, 419, 424, 425, 426, 542, 546, 555, 654, 827, 833, 837, 867
Meyers, C.Y., 922, 1031
Meyers, M., 661, 966, 1033
Meyers, M.B., 945
Meyerson, S., 580, 641, 747, 947, 948
Meystre, C., 813
Mez, H.C., 53
Mhatre, S., 611
Miano, J.D., 211
Mibae, J., 1116
Michael, A., 660, 877
Michael, D., 510
Michael, J.P., 749
Michael, U., 435
Michaels, R.J., 412
Michaelson, R.C., 736
Michaely, W.J., 432
Michailenko, I.E., 901
Michalak, R., 694
Michalczyk, M.J., 9
Michalski, C., 739
Micha-Strettas, M., 970
Michejda, C.J., 724, 740
Michel, R.E., 414
Michelot, D., 605, 1034
Michelotti, E.L., 410, 411
Michie, J.K., 861
Michl, J., 9, 133, 751, 1002, 1009
Michno, D.M., 1003, 1008
Míčková, R., 725
Middleton, W.J., 383, 389, 529, 809
Midland, M.M., 428, 549, 550, 551, 553, 650, 717, 810, 811, 838, 917, 997, 999, 1001
Midorikawa, H., 422
Miekka, R.G., 883
Mielert, A., 749
Mielke, Z., 77
Migaichuk, I.V., 731
Miginiac, L., 409, 429, 520, 716, 901
Miginiac, P., 565, 713
Migita, T., 406, 417, 434, 590
Migliorese, K.G., 726
Mihailović, M.Lj., 631, 632, 1050, 1061
Mihel, I., 275
Mihelich, E.D., 106, 425, 426, 736
Miiller, D.E., 1053
Mijlhoff, F.C., 123, 124
Mijs, W.J., 1091
Mikaelyan, R.G., 170
Mikami, K., 1033
Mikawa, H., 760
Mikhailov, B.M., 20, 29, 428, 495, 817
Mikhailov, V.S., 808
Mikhaleshvili, I.L., 666
Mikheev, V.V., 380
Mikhotov, V.V., 792
Miki, T., 372
Miklukhin, G.P., 392
Mikol, G.J., 440
Mikołajczyk, M., 88, 863, 1089, 1092, 1108
Milakofsky, L., 318
Milas, N.A., 733
Milaszewski, R.F., 289
Mile, B., 163, 1067, 1070
Miles, J.H., 507, 1064
Miles, M.L., 440
Miles, W., 615
Milesi, L., 924
Milewski, C., 1117
Milewski, C.A., 915, 1098
Militzer, H., 414
Mill, T., 614
Millar, I.T., 602
Millar, R.W., 79
Millard, A.A., 417
Millen, D.J., 470
Miller, A., 745
Miller, A.E.G., 816
Miller, A.H., 550
Miller, A.L., 577
Miller, B., 155, 459, 969
Miller, C.E., 699
Miller, D., 822
Miller, D.B., 403
Miller, D.D., 1113
Miller, D.J., 528, 887, 888
Miller, E.B., 579
Miller, E.G., 1034
Miller, F.A., 129
Miller, F.W., 297
Miller, G., 713
Miller, I.J., 146
Miller, J., 236, 303, 380, 576, 579, 583, 584, 587, 602, 691, 729
Miller, J.A., 380, 381, 433, 861, 1030
Miller, J.J., 956
Miller, J.L., 661
Miller, J.M., 353, 412
Miller, J.S., 235, 565
Miller, K.D., 452
Miller, L.L., 498, 1018, 1060
Miller, M.J., 415, 535
Miller, N., 233
Miller, N.C., 564
Miller, R.B., 560, 715
Miller, R.D., 133, 547, 904, 1055
Miller, R.E., 1066
Miller, R.G., 582, 747
Miller, R.L., 652
Miller, S.I., 23, 156, 298, 300, 666, 671, 751, 885, 924
Miller, S.J., 836
Miller, W.T., Jr., 623, 671
Millet, G.H., 1083
Millie, P., 751
Milligan, B., 363
Milligan, D.E., 167, 170
Milliman, G.E., 1033
Millon, J., 403
Mills, I.M., 129
Mills, O.S., 44, 53
Milne, G.M., 384, 406
Milowiz, L., 495

Milstein, D., 964
Milstein, S.R., 990
Mil'vitskaya, E.M., 1020, 1022
Mimoun, H., 1085
Mimun, A., 58
Minachev, Kh.M., 692
Minami, I., 1055
Minami, K., 638
Minami, N., 832
Minami, S., 986
Minami, T., 215, 849
Minamida, I., 563
Minamikawa, J., 553
Minasz, R.J., 305, 769
Minato, H., 521, 641, 642
Mincione, E., 812, 1054
Mincuzzi, A., 920
Mineo, S., 807
Minieri, P.P., 860
Minisci, F., 472, 611, 616, 621, 645, 646, 666, 728, 741, 1060
Minkiewicz, J.V., 643
Minkin, V.I., 73, 128, 488, 539
Minkoff, G.J., 736
Minns, R.A., 761, 762
Minot, C., 17, 310
Minsky, A., 59
Mintas, M., 109
Mintz, E.A., 880
Mintz, M.J., 621, 626, 1089
Minyaev, R.M., 128
Min-zhi, D., 1002
Miocque, M., 496, 683, 694, 788, 792, 803
Mioduski, J., 133, 1026
Mirbach, M.F., 722
Mirkind, L.A., 654
Mironov, V.A., 1014, 1018
Mirrington, R.N., 361
Mirskova, A.N., 69
Mirviss, S.B., 550
Misbach, P., 710
Miser, J.R., 601
Mishina, T., 920
Mishra, A., 176
Mishriky, N., 921
Misiti, D., 716, 788, 1102
Mislow, K., 55, 82, 86, 92, 107, 108, 115, 139, 669, 1034
Mison, P., 282, 535, 1105
Misono, A., 807
Misra, S.C., 394
Misumi, S., 59
Mita, N., 403, 643
Mitani, M., 731
Mitchell, D.J., 310
Mitchell, D.L., 1066
Mitchell, H.L., 560
Mitchell, J.A., 372
Mitchell, M.J., 50, 52
Mitchell, M.L., 976
Mitchell, R.D., 53
Mitchell, R.H., 58, 59, 62, 922, 923, 1097
Mitchell, T.R.B., 367, 810, 1023, 1084, 1085
Mitice, J.J., 500
Mitra, A., 1003, 1033
Mitra, R.B., 764
Mitsch, R.A., 170, 770
Mitsky, J., 235
Mitsudo, T., 397, 433, 799, 1119
Mitsuhashi, T., 991, 1089
Mitsui, S., 393, 691
Mitsunobu, O., 349, 378, 934
Mitsuo, N., 702
Mittelmeijer, M.C., 1038
Mitton, C.G., 201
Miura, I., 388
Miura, M., 411
Mixan, C.E., 299
Miyadera, H., 991
Miyahara, Y., 400
Miyaji, Y., 1099
Miyake, A., 690, 695
Miyake, H., 361, 396, 923
Miyamoto, I., 59
Miyano, M., 892
Miyano, S., 773, 818, 847
Miyasaka, T., 57
Miyashi, T., 756, 1021
Miyashita, A., 766
Miyashita, M., 536, 685, 913
Miyata, Y., 303
Miyataka, H., 702
Miyaura, N., 403, 434, 555, 717, 736, 1001
Miyazaki, H., 643
Miyazaki, S., 1105
Miyazaki, T., 29, 989, 1105
Miyoshi, H., 734
Miyoshi, K., 555
Miyoshi, N., 536
Mizoguchi, T., 571
Mizoroki, T., 597, 643
Mizsak, S.A., 694, 869
Mizuno, A., 430
Mizuno, K., 766
Mizuno, M., 433
Mizushima, K., 433
Mizuta, M., 362
Mladenova, M., 421
Mndzhoyan, O.L., 800
Mo, Y.K., 144, 146, 271, 312, 450, 523, 539, 624, 671, 1036
Mo, Y.M., 146
Mobbs, D.B., 1062
Mobbs, R.H., 670, 689
Mobilio, D., 745
Möbius, K., 162
Mocadlo, P.E., 390
Mochalin, V.B., 46
Mochalina, E.P., 671
Mochalkin, A.I., 732
Mochel, W.E., 169
Mochizuki, H., 811
Mochizuki, K., 733
Mock, W.L., 694, 699, 922, 977
Mockus, J., 678
Modena, G., 147, 225, 295, 296, 297, 661, 663, 671, 675, 731, 747, 877, 1087, 1090, 1092
Modro, A., 661, 672
Modro, T.A., 16, 223, 341, 456
Moelwyn-Hughes, E.A., 342
Moerck, R.E., 747
Moerikofer, A.W., 704
Moersch, G.W., 549, 837
Moffatt, E.A., 266
Moffatt, J.G., 349, 496, 1081, 1082
Moggi, L., 206
Mohacsi, E., 351
Mohanraj, S., 595
Mohrig, J.R., 313
Möhrle, H., 1084
Moinet, C., 573
Moir, R.Y., 980
Moisak, I.E., 382
Moiseenkov, A.M., 325
Moiseev, I.I., 1085
Moiseeva, L.V., 694
Moiseikina, N.F., 491
Mojé, S., 433, 693
Mok, K., 751
Mol, J.C., 1037, 1038

Molander, G.A., 402, 403, 415, 515, 718
Molchanov, A.P., 50
Moldoványi, L., 1060
Mole, T., 408, 468, 557, 715, 817, 825, 828
Molina, G.A., 646
Molina, P., 387, 803, 807, 930
Molinari, H., 322
Molinet, C., 477
Molle, G., 817
Möller, F., 412, 915
Mollère, P.D., 10
Mollet, P., 759
Molnár, Á., 902, 963
Molosnova, V.P., 808
Molyneux, R.J., 57
Momany, F.A., 18
Momose, D., 399, 1119
Monack, L.C., 584
Monagle, J.J., 863, 1081
Monahan, M.W., 660, 663
Monasterios, J.R., 123, 661
Mondal, M.A.S., 352
Mondelli, R., 645
Mondon, M., 401, 728
Money, T., 1078
Mongelli, N., 364
Monroe, B.M., 212, 213, 738
Monson, R.S., 902, 915, 933, 987
Montague, D.C., 1009
Montaigne, R., 759, 761
Montanari, F., 87, 320, 321, 322, 383, 384, 595, 833, 1058
Montanucci, M., 589, 590
Montel, G., 79
Montelatici, S., 697
Montgomery, F.C., 985
Montgomery, L.K., 167, 298, 759, 762, 957
Montgomery, S.H., 833
Monthony, J., 1058
Monti, L., 676
Monti, S.A., 133
Montillier, J.P., 551, 1107
Montury, M., 696
Montzka, T.A., 387
Moodie, R.B., 14, 341, 452, 453, 456–459, 463, 464, 466, 468, 469, 989
Moody, C.J., 56
Moody, R.J., 841
Mooij, J.J., 56
Moon, S., 335, 632, 677, 681, 761
Moon, Y.C., 694
Moore, D.R., 671
Moore, D.W., 796
Moore, G.G., 353
Moore, G.J., 560
Moore, G.R., 631
Moore, H.W., 762, 763, 869
Moore, J.W., 183
Moore, M., 745
Moore, M.L., 799
Moore, M.W., 778
Moore, P.T., 111, 907
Moore, R.E., 1117
Moore, R.H., 787
Moore, W.B., 281
Moore, W.M., 210, 1111
Moore, W.R., 111, 138, 175, 762, 772, 907
Moosmayer, A., 165
Moracci, F.M., 799
Moradpour, A., 104
Morales, O., 922
Moran, K.D., 469
Morand, P., 1101
Morandi, J.R., 699
Morandini, F., 408
Moravcová, J., 338
Morawetz, H., 294
Morchat, R., 938
Mordenti, L., 694
Moreau, C., 1059, 1060
Moreau, J., 436
Moreau, J.J.E., 86, 816
Moreland, M., 839
Moreland, W.T., Jr., 16, 246
Morellet, G., 628
More O'Ferrall, R.A., 199, 201, 225, 313, 874, 884, 885
Moretó, J.M., 342
Moretti, I., 87
Moretti, R., 713
Morgan, C.R., 1118
Morgan, J.W., 1031
Morgan, K.J., 279
Morgan, T.D.B., 502
Morganstern, J., 780
Mori, A., 832
Mori, A.L., 331
Mori, K., 422, 643, 823
Mori, O., 807
Mori, S., 554, 833
Mori, T., 397, 435, 1099
Mori, Y., 652
Moriarty, R.M., 129, 177, 628, 632, 734, 1010, 1059, 1074
Moricone, E.J., 869
Moriconi, E.J., 869
Morigaki, M., 62
Morikawa, A., 1058, 1060
Morikawa, M., 508, 721
Morin, F.G., 105
Morin, J.G., 694
Morin, J.M., Jr., 1020
Morin, L., 1031
Morino, Y., 19
Morio, K., 57
Morisaki, H., 264, 285
Morita, K., 529, 933
Morita, T., 331, 383, 385, 393
Morita, Y., 550
Moritani, I., 367, 643, 760, 891, 932, 999
Moritz, K.L., 460
Moriyoshi, T., 964
Morizawa, Y., 406
Morizur, J., 652
Morkovnik, A.S., 466
Morneweck, S.T., 498
Morokuma, K., 285
Moroz, A.A., 589
Morozova, I.D., 167
Morrell, C.E., 295
Morren, G., 91
Morrill, T.C., 676
Morris, D.F.C., 506
Morris, D.G., 36, 537, 952, 993
Morris, G.A., 21
Morris, G.F., 832, 874
Morris, G.M., 1070
Morris, G.W., 1067
Morris, J.I., 924
Morris, K.P., 222, 629
Morrison, A., 758
Morrison, G.A., 119, 120, 129, 537
Morrison, G.F., 428
Morrison, H., 215
Morrison, H.A., 215
Morrison, J.D., 102, 104, 693, 822
Morrison, J.J., 833
Morrison, M.A., 675
Morrison, R.T., 617, 642
Morrison, W.H., III, 872

Morriss, F.V., 575
Morrow, D.F., 135
Morse, B.K., 946
Morse, C.S., 459
Morten, D.H., 266
Mortensen, J.Z., 1031
Mortimer, C.T., 23
Mortimer, R., 1001
Morton, D., 213
Morton, H.E., 384
Morton, T.H., 259
Mortreux, A., 1038, 1112
Morzycki, J.W., 536, 1054
Moseley, K., 775
Moser, W.R., 772
Moses, L.M., 715
Mosher, H.S., 102, 104, 108, 158, 299, 382, 821, 822, 947
Mosher, M.W., 621
Mosher, W.A., 716
Moss, G.E., 333
Moss, J.C., 761
Moss, N., 406
Moss, R.A., 50, 170, 313, 381, 768–771
Moss, R.E., 115
Mosser, S., 14
Mostafavipoor, Z., 1092
Motell, E.L., 199, 623
Motes, J.M., 156
Motherwell, R.S.H., 393
Motherwell, W.B., 393, 396, 536, 564, 655, 787, 1054, 1058, 1063, 1074, 1107
Motoki, S., 794
Motoyama, I., 693
Mott, L., 934
Mott, R.C., 531, 547, 636
Mouk, R.W., 971
Moule, D.C., 207
Moulijn, J.A., 1037
Moulineau, C., 401
Moulton, W.N., 814
Mount, R.A., 948
Moural, J., 725
Mourgues, P., 1058
Mourning, M.C., 278, 879
Moustakis, C.A., 941
Mouvier, G., 670
Mowat, R., 477
Mowry, D.T., 594
Moyer, C.E., Jr., 510
Mozdzen, E.C., 565, 1099, 1102
Mpango, G.B., 714
Mrani, M., 794
Mraz, T.J., 1102
Mrozack, S.R., 888
Mucci, A., 234
Muchowski, J.M., 601
Mudryk, B., 415, 599
Mueller, R.A., 773
Mueller, R.H., 694, 1030
Mueller, W.H., 661
Muenster, L.J., 222
Muenter, J.S., 15, 235
Muetterties, E.L., 556, 694, 696, 700, 1053
Mugnier, Y., 598
Mugnoli, A., 58, 61
Mühlbauer, E., 807
Mühle, H., 861
Mühlstadt, M., 684
Muhsin, M., 887
Mui, J.Y., 175, 769
Muir, D.M., 888, 892
Mukai, T., 635, 771, 1017, 1021, 1026
Mukaiyama, S., 1083
Mukaiyama, T., 349, 355, 360, 363, 372, 378, 380, 383, 385, 388, 393, 397, 398, 408, 409, 410, 423, 434, 435, 712, 788, 795, 803, 817, 823, 824, 832, 833, 902, 904, 926, 934, 988, 999, 1054, 1058, 1060, 1092, 1112
Mukerjee, A.K., 869
Mukhametshin, F.M., 424, 572, 1106
Mukherjee, S., 74
Mukherjee, S.K., 1060
Mulder, J.J.C., 751
Mulhausen, H.A., 310
Mullen, A., 720
Müllen, K., 46, 57, 58, 59, 61, 62, 1025, 1026
Muller, B.L., 635
Müller, C., 52
Müller, E., 165, 368, 637, 722, 772, 775, 977
Müller, G., 850
Müller, H., 695, 707, 1054
Müller, H.R., 694, 699
Müller, K., 87
Muller, L.L., 741, 742, 866
Muller, M., 540
Muller, N., 65
Müller, P., 308, 312, 337, 392, 393, 430, 1053, 1057, 1059, 1060, 1088
Müller, R.K., 929
Müller, S., 139
Müller, W., 381, 627
Müller, W.M., 78
Müllhofer, G., 886
Mullholland, D.L., 63
Mulligan, P.J., 971
Mulliken, R.S., 65, 74, 77, 207
Mullineaux, R.D., 956
Mullins, M.J., 1033
Mulzer, J., 712, 832, 886, 928, 929
Munavilli, S., 499
Munavu, R.M., 1082
Mundy, B.P., 834
Mundy, D., 913
Munekata, T., 917
Muneyuki, R., 280
Munger, P., 554
Munjal, R.C., 50
Munk, M.E., 968
Munro, M.H.G., 695
Munson, M.S.B., 235
Münsterer, H., 535
Mura, A.J., Jr., 423, 914
Mura, L.A., 426
Murabayashi, A., 1031
Murahashi, S., 52, 289, 361, 367, 391, 394, 403, 407, 408, 430, 643, 651, 932, 1061, 1084
Murai, S., 536, 597, 694, 731, 819, 1055, 1088
Murakami, S., 9
Muraki, M., 397, 398
Muralidharan, V.P., 868
Muralimohan, K., 596
Muramatsu, I., 347
Muramatsu, T., 1103
Muraoka, M., 794
Murata, I., 40, 62
Murata, S., 106, 832, 904
Murati, M.P., 408
Murawski, D., 1044
Murayama, D.R., 52
Murov, S., 868
Murphy, C.J., 941
Murphy, D.K., 326
Murphy, R., 651
Murphy, R.B., 506

Murphy, T.J., 767
Murphy, W.S., 412, 553, 962
Murr, B.L., 200
Murray, C.D., 641
Murray, K., 695
Murray, M.A., 594
Murray, N.G., 655, 1047
Murray, R.E., 556
Murray, R.W., 170, 370, 634, 1017, 1067, 1068, 1069, 1070
Murrell, J.N., 3, 76
Murto, J., 587
Muscio, O.J., Jr., 762
Musco, A., 92
Musgrave, O.C., 385
Musgrave, W.K.R., 498
Muskatirovic, M., 947
Musker, W.K., 36, 907, 1054
Musliner, W.J., 594
Musso, H., 106, 133, 647, 1026
Musumarra, G., 266, 267, 313
Muszkat, K.A., 755
Muth, C.L., 1102
Muthard, J.L., 64
Mutter, L., 900
Mutter, M., 373
Mutter, M.S., 849
Muzart, J., 831
Myers, J.D., 923
Myers, J.L., 368
Myers, M.M., 715
Myers, R.J., 19
Myhre, P.C., 143, 282, 286, 328, 450, 459, 466, 673
Myshenkova, T.N., 432

Naab, P., 660, 662, 663
Naae, D.G., 661
Naan, M.P., 885
Nababsing, P., 611
Nabeya, A., 424, 837
Nace, H.R., 897, 905, 906, 1081
Nachtigall, G.W., 264, 275
Nadeau, Y., 1060
Nadelson, J., 433
Nadjo, L., 1084
Nadworny, H.A., 285
Naegele, W., 675
Naemura, K., 91, 138, 408
Näf, F., 420, 717
Nafti, A., 535
Nagai, K., 406
Nagai, T., 165, 443, 536, 619
Nagai, Y., 327, 731, 742, 1052
Nagami, S., 811
Nagarkatti, J.P., 1063
Nagasawa, N., 715
Nagase, H., 344, 921
Nagase, S., 285
Nagashima, H., 1119
Nagata, J., 760
Nagata, W., 494, 723, 724
Nagata, Y., 1099, 1100
Nagendrappa, G., 694
Nagira, K., 643, 649, 650
Nagubandi, S., 495
Nagumo, K., 483
Nagumo, M., 92
Nahabedian, K.V., 507
Nahm, S., 435
Naidenov, S.V., 452
Naik, R.G., 706
Nair, M., 398
Nájera, C., 691
Naka, M., 773
Nakabayashi, T., 1098
Nakagawa, J., 879
Nakagawa, K., 638, 807, 1061, 1071
Nakagawa, M., 57, 58, 59, 62, 91, 137, 639, 891
Nakagawa, Y., 503
Nakahama, S., 811
Nakahara, S., 138
Nakai, K., 979
Nakai, M., 982, 1047, 1108
Nakai, S., 254
Nakai, T., 840, 916, 1033
Nakaji, T., 215
Nakajima, K., 508
Nakajima, M., 573, 977
Nakajima, T., 49, 483
Nakajima, Y., 349, 380
Nakamaye, K.L., 515
Nakamura, A., 391, 771, 817
Nakamura, E., 419, 420, 832, 833
Nakamura, H., 1033
Nakamura, K., 105, 473, 780
Nakamura, N., 51, 607
Nakane, R., 483
Nakanishi, A., 867
Nakanishi, H., 1025
Nakanishi, K., 388
Nakanishi, N., 867
Nakanishi, S., 408, 431, 529
Nakano, T., 327, 731, 742
Nakao, R., 350, 1100
Nakao, Y., 692
Nakashita, Y., 377
Nakatsuji, H., 331
Nakatsuji, S., 62
Nakatsuka, N., 275
Nakatsuka, T., 1054
Nakayama, J., 646, 924
Nakayama, M., 597, 731
Nakayama, T., 994
Nakazaki, M., 137, 138
Nakazano, Y., 555
Nakazawa, T., 62, 650
Nakhapetyan, L.A., 770
Nakhshunov, V.S., 692
Nakova, E.P., 1120
Nalepa, C.J., 938
Namanworth, E., 142, 146, 279, 311
Nambu, H., 426, 427
Nambu, N., 450
Nametkin, N.S., 9, 1037
Namy, J.L., 390, 1111
Nangia, A., 356
Naota, T., 1084
Naples, J.O., 349
Narang, C.K., 373
Narang, S.C., 331, 334, 351, 358, 372, 383, 385, 386, 468, 861, 933, 1107, 1108
Naranjo, S.B., 335
Narasaka, K., 423, 712, 832, 1058
Narasimhan, M.S., 545
Narasimhan, N.S., 554
Narasimhan, S., 815, 1099, 1101
Narayan, C.R., 785
Narayana, M., 696
Narayanan, K.V., 290
Narita, N., 612, 617, 628
Narula, A.P.S., 695
Naruta, Y., 817
Naryschkina, T.I., 1053
Nash, E.G., 932
Nasibov, S.S., 87
Nasielski, J., 91, 521
Nasipuri, D., 701
Naso, F., 400, 877, 880, 885
Nass, D., 290
Natale, N., 694
Natale, N.R., 799, 1058, 1098

Natat, A., 795
Nathan, E.C., III, 50
Nathan, W.S., 65, 303
Natta, G., 82
Naudet, M., 612, 625
Naumov, V.N., 987
Naumov, Yu.A., 491
Nauta, W.T., 165, 505
Nave, P.M., 632
Nayak, B., 261, 341
Naylor, C.G., 877
Naylor, R.D., 784
Nazarenko, N., 424
Nazarov, V.N., 383
Nazarova, N.M., 696
Nazarova, T.A., 732
Nazer, M.Z., 390
Ncube, S., 997, 999, 1001
Neale, R.S., 728, 1044
Nebenzahl, L., 219, 223
Neber, P.W., 982
Nebzydoski, J.W., 277
Nechvatal, A., 613, 624, 956
Neckers, D.C., 373, 764, 873, 941, 1038, 1111
Necsoiu, I., 1080
Needleman, S.B., 747
Neeman, M., 344
Nefedov, B.K., 356, 575, 720
Nefedov, O.M., 170, 174, 580
Nefedov, V.A., 593
Neff, J.R., 281
Negishi, E., 403, 420, 429, 433, 434, 512, 551, 558, 561, 595, 703, 706, 707, 714, 716, 717, 778, 996, 997, 998, 999, 1000
Neidle, S., 95
Neidlein, R., 1026
Neilson, D.G., 792
Neiman, L.A., 44
Neiman, M.B., 166
Neises, B., 350
Nekhoroshev, M.V., 347
Nelke, J.M., 435, 1113, 1114
Nelson, B.W., 610
Nelson, C.H., 627
Nelson, D.P., 78
Nelson, E.C., 848
Nelson, G.L., 1019
Nelson, J.A., 786
Nelson, J.V., 833, 1021
Nelson, K.L., 458, 473
Nelson, N.T., 899
Nelson, P., 373
Nelson, R.B., 511
Nelson, S.F., 166, 728
Nelson, S.J., 391
Nelson, T.R., 390
Nelson, V., 574
Nemo, T.E., 627
Nemoto, H., 1011
Nenitzescu, C.D., 484, 537, 732, 1050, 1079, 1080
Nerdel, F., 790
Neri, O., 920
Nesmeyanov, A.N., 44, 156, 296, 671, 957
Nesmeyanov, N.A., 849
Nesterov, O.V., 792
Nestrick, T.J., 695
Neubauer, D., 721
Neuberg, M.K., 693
Neuberger, K.R., 215
Neuenhoeffer, O., 591
Neuenschwander, K., 1100
Neuenschwander, M., 52, 372, 861
Neugebauer, F.A., 165
Neuman, P.N., 1002
Neumann, C., 770
Neumann, F.W., 588
Neumann, H., 345, 560
Neumann, H.M., 820, 829
Neumann, P., 35
Neumann, S.M., 402
Neumann, T.E., 200
Neumann, W.P., 510
Neumeister, J., 1067
Neumüller, O., 635
Neureiter, N.P., 921, 922
Nevitt, T.D., 660, 663
Newall, A.R., 344
Newbold, B.T., 1062, 1089, 1106, 1108, 1110
Newcomb, M., 78, 419, 426, 1011, 1022
Newcomb, R.C., 339
Newham, J., 702, 814
Newirth, T.L., 555
Newkirk, D.D., 619
Newkome, G.R., 395, 805, 1031
Newman, H., 817
Newman, M.S., 91, 146, 191, 348, 430, 434, 568, 661, 806, 808, 866, 986, 1088, 1100, 1112
Newman, P.A., 244
Newman, R.M., 559
Newton, B.N., 415
Newton, C.G., 63
Newton, J., 450
Newton, M.D., 51
Newton, R.F., 289
Newton, R.J., Jr., 695, 707, 1098
Ng Lim, L.S., 989
Ng, C., 630, 631
Ng, L., 672
Ng, W.W., 672
Nibler, J.W., 699
Nicholas, P.E., 934
Nicholas, R.D., 947
Nicholls, B., 76, 1080
Nichols, J.D., 275
Nicholson, J.M., 155
Nickell, E.C., 1068
Nickle, J.H., 1059
Nickon, A., 155, 283, 395, 634, 677, 737, 911, 949, 1045, 1106
Niclas, H., 316
Niclause, M., 629
Nicolaides, N., 1060
Nicolaou, K.C., 348, 349, 357
Nicolas, E.C., 528
Nicoletti, R., 367, 368
Nicoud, J.F., 104
Nidy, E.G., 357
Nie, P., 395
Niederer, P., 601, 647
Niederhauser, A., 52
Nieh, M.T., 1112
Nieh, T., 919
Nielsen, A.T., 796, 830, 1087
Nielsen, J.R., 123
Nielsen, W.D., 157
Niemczyk, M., 213
Niemeyer, H.M., 223
Nier, A.O., 116
Niess, R., 492
Niessner, M., 553
Niethammer, K., 747
Nifant'ev, E.Ye., 732
Nigam, A., 391, 404
Nigh, W.G., 529, 601, 629, 639, 640, 650, 1077
Nigmatullin, N.G., 857
Niino, Y., 702
Nikeryasova, S.V., 491
Nikiforov, G.A., 68

Nikishin, G.I., 655, 1074
Nikitin, V.I., 838
Nikitina, T.V., 44
Nikolenko, L.N., 475, 808
Nikonova, L.A., 607
Nikrad, P.V., 1103
Nikulicheva, T.I., 502
Nill, G., 106
Nilsson, A., 268, 450, 798
Nilsson, M., 66, 68, 507, 598
Nilsson, N.H., 794
Nimgirawath, S., 840, 914
Nimitz, J.S., 349
Nimmo, K., 331
Nir, Z., 535, 1038
Nishi, M., 378
Nishi, T., 297
Nishibuchi, T., 408
Nishida, I., 832
Nishida, S., 131, 760, 1113
Nishida, T., 994
Nishida, Y., 215
Nishide, K., 361
Nishigaki, Y., 1047
Nishiguchi, I., 841
Nishihara, A., 781
Nishiki, M., 702
Nishimoto, K., 879
Nishimura, J., 149, 480, 773
Nishinaga, A., 1081
Nishioka, T., 249
Nishiyama, H., 344
Nishizawa, K., 234
Nisimura, T., 599
Nitsche, R., 58
Nitta, I., 265
Nittala, S.S., 737
Nitzschke, M., 794, 1097
Niu, J., 63
Niu, J.H.Y., 781
Nivard, R.J.F., 794
Niwa, H., 385, 794
Niwa, J., 14
Nixdorf, M., 52
Niznik, G.E., 396, 872, 934
Noall, W.I., 726
Noble, P., Jr., 739
Node, M., 361
Noe, E.A., 131
Noël, Y., 63
Noels, A.F., 344
Nogami, T., 760
Nogi, T., 492
Nógrádi, M., 82
Nojima, M., 383, 387, 388, 432, 680, 725, 729, 809, 1036
Nokami, J., 817, 914
Nokkeo, S., 436
Nolan, G.S., 235
Noland, W.E., 786
Nolde, C., 371
Nolen, R.L., 424, 426, 837
Noll, K., 690, 1004
Noller, H., 903, 916
Nolley, J.P., Jr., 643
Nolte, R.J.M., 371
Noltemeyer, M., 965
Noltes, J.G., 75, 557, 593, 988
Nomoto, T., 59
Nomura, Y., 511
Nonhebel, D.C., 162, 478, 608, 611, 666, 667, 955
Noordik, J.H., 56
Noori, G.F.M., 497
Nordberg, R.E., 727
Nordlander, J.E., 278, 281, 299, 379, 660, 669, 947
Noreen, A.L., 264
Norman, R.O.C., 162, 195, 404, 447, 457, 476, 485, 498, 598, 611, 621, 629, 749, 1085
Normant, H., 316, 417, 559, 561, 569, 628, 693, 694, 931, 1091
Normant, J.F., 296, 400, 401, 402, 409, 410, 411, 429, 434, 552, 713, 778, 976, 1112
Normark, J.R., 529
Norris, A.R., 576
Norris, R.K., 169, 415, 583, 895
Norris, W.P., 1087
North, S.A., 1135
Norton, H.M., 336
Nosek, J., 399
Noto, R., 578
Notzumoto, S., 1033
Nour, A.R.O.A., 525
Noureldin, N.A., 1057
Nourse, J.G., 101
Novikov, S.S., 170, 424, 441, 572, 624, 729, 746, 815, 1103, 1106
Novol'tseva, G.I., 1088
Novoselov, E.F., 988
Nowlan, V.J., 662
Noyce, D.S., 125, 338, 564, 662, 682, 684, 929
Noyd, D.A., 262
Noyori, R., 106, 391, 394, 399, 423, 694, 713, 745, 766, 777, 791, 811, 832, 904, 964, 991
Nozaki, H., 399, 401, 406, 409, 423, 599, 717, 773, 817, 818, 819, 832, 839, 904, 919, 920, 928, 1001, 1002, 1031, 1058
Nozawa, S., 551, 718
Nozoe, T., 43, 44
Nucciarelli, L., 1086
Nudelman, A., 443
Nudelman, N.S., 578
Nugent, S.T., 404
Nugent, W.A., 281, 522, 725
Numata, T., 1107, 1108
Nunn, M.J., 381
Nunokawa, O., 555
Nurgatin, V.V., 584
Nuridzhanyan, K.A., 381
Nurok, D., 106
Nussim, M., 200, 868
Nutaitis, C.F., 810
Nwaukwa, S.O., 1084
Nyberg, K., 637
Nyburg, S.C., 9, 672
Nyce, J.L., 877
Nye, M.J., 751, 973
Nyhus, B.A., 133
Nyman, C.J., 655
Nyns, C., 923
Nyström, J., 727
Nystrom, R.F., 694, 978, 1097

Oae, S., 310, 359, 383, 443, 475, 563, 574, 588, 589, 590, 601, 628, 648, 655, 741, 799, 807, 887, 899, 982, 1047, 1087, 1089, 1090, 1092, 1107, 1108
Oba, H., 799
Obana, K., 577
Obana, M., 1101
Obayashi, M., 817
Oberender, H., 1054
Oberlinner, A., 167
Obrecht, J.P., 289
O'Brien, C., 468, 981
O'Brien, D.F., 151

O'Brien, D.H., 151, 155, 219, 311, 329
O'Brien, J.L., 1066
Obushak, N.D., 642
Occolowitz, J.L., 155
Ochal, Z., 366
Ochiai, H., 431
Ochiai, M., 361
O'Connell, E., 994
O'Connor, C., 339, 341
O'Connor, C.J., 341, 727
O'Connor, G.L., 897
O'Connor, U., 745
Oda, J., 380, 1034
Oda, M., 50, 138, 351
Oda, R., 496, 872
Odaira, Y., 491
Ode, R.H., 1083
Odinokov, V.N., 1066
Odioso, R.C., 1035
O'Donnell, M.J., 759
O'Donoghue, D.A., 988
O'Donohue, A.M., 785
O'Dowd, M.L., 545
Ody, K., 613
Oediger, H., 412, 915
Oehl, R., 488
Oelderik, J.M., 948
Oepen, G., 120
Oesch, U., 105
Oesterling, R.E., 529
Oestreich, T.M., 600
Offermann, K., 934
Offermann, W., 625
Offermanns, H., 1120
Ofstead, E.A., 1037, 1038, 1039
Ogan, M.D., 796
Ogasawara, K., 394
Ogata, Y., 478, 490, 495, 498, 499, 503, 508, 532, 573, 629, 637, 734, 735, 737, 739, 784, 789, 796, 855, 856, 991, 1051, 1063, 1088, 1090, 1116, 1119
Ogawa, H., 57, 59, 62, 515, 685
Ogawa, K., 1060
Ogawa, M., 450
Ogawa, T., 215
Ogg, R.A., Jr., 130
Ogi, K., 976
Ogibin, Yu.N., 1074
Ogino, H., 81
Ogino, T., 733
Ogle, C.A., 151
Ogliaruso, M., 155
Ogliaruso, M.A., 44, 348, 355, 930, 1018
Ogoshi, H., 50
Ogston, A.G., 116
Ogura, H., 804
Ogura, K., 422, 440, 532, 837, 1108
Oguri, T., 1060
Oguro, K., 434, 555
Ohara, M., 106
O'Hara, R.K., 46
Óhegyi, G., 241
Ohkata, K., 277
Ohkawa, K., 327
Ohlmstead, W., 143
Ohloff, G., 634, 635, 929, 1017, 1063
Ohlsson, L., 525
Ohme, R., 87
Ohno, A., 433, 473, 595, 780, 934
Ohno, K., 344, 655, 656, 918
Ohno, T., 498
Ohno, Y., 847
Ohsawa, T., 391, 1061
Ohshima, M., 1054
Ohshiro, Y., 643
Ohsugi, Y., 367
Ohta, A., 589
Ohta, H., 289, 350, 408, 617, 695, 865, 921
Ohta, K., 106
Ohta, M., 63, 70, 616, 928, 959, 1031
Ohta, T., 473
Ohtsu, M., 741
Ohtsuka, N., 475
Ohtsuka, T., 628
Oida, T., 920
Oikawa, T., 715
Oine, T., 372
Oishi, T., 391
Oishi, Y., 342
Ojha, N.D., 131
Ojima, I., 694, 811, 832, 833, 1031, 1092
Oka, K., 106, 350
Oka, M., 967
Oka, S., 433, 473, 595, 780, 781, 934
Okada, I., 367
Okada, K., 494, 635, 1001
Okada, M., 595
Okada, T., 1105, 1116
Okahara, M., 807
Okamoto, I., 106
Okamoto, K., 50, 265, 267, 282, 302, 303, 771, 1026
Okamoto, T., 433, 473, 595, 607
Okamoto, Y., 92, 106, 243, 331, 383, 385, 393, 703, 831, 1091
Okamura, H., 411
Okamura, M.Y., 762
Okamura, W.H., 59
Okano, K., 979
Okano, M., 468, 478, 490, 495, 547, 628, 725, 728, 734, 872, 913, 920, 1089, 1092
Okano, T., 458
Okano, V., 855
Okawara, M., 392, 1058, 1077, 1084, 1086
Okawara, R., 817
Okazaki, H., 725
Okazaki, M., 62, 1031
Okazaki, M.E., 1031
Okazaki, N., 501
Okazaki, R., 794
Okazawa, N.E., 148
Okhlobystin, O.Yu., 169, 262, 347, 466, 560, 917
Okhlobystina, L.V., 529
Ōki, M., 90, 135, 140, 241, 391
Okraglik, R., 1031
Oku, M., 56
Ōkubo, M., 821
Okuda, T., 758
Okude, Y., 406, 817
Okuhara, K., 822
O'Kuhn, S., 407
Okukado, N., 403, 595
Okuma, K., 865
Okumura, A., 501
Okumura, N., 796
Okuno, H., 976
Okura, I., 710
Okuyama, T., 331, 675, 728
Okwuiwe, R., 443
Olagbemiro, T.O., 339
Olah, G.A., 45, 50, 141–147, 148, 149, 178, 219, 262,

Olah, G.A. (*continued*) 271, 272, 276, 279, 280, 282, 283, 285, 311, 312, 329, 330, 331, 334, 342, 345, 351, 372, 383, 385–389, 391, 399, 433, 435, 441, 448, 450, 452, 457, 461, 464, 466, 468, 469, 479, 480, 481, 485, 487, 490, 491, 495, 497, 498, 505, 506, 510, 523, 539, 540, 577, 603, 624, 638, 660, 671, 680, 683, 720, 725, 729, 785, 787, 806, 809, 812, 849, 861, 931, 933, 934, 945, 956, 988, 992, 1011, 1036, 1060, 1081, 1082, 1107, 1108, 1117

Olah, J.A., 142, 143, 144, 311, 383, 387, 461, 491, 495, 510, 539, 680, 720, 945

Oldenziel, O.H., 840, 1072

O'Leary, B., 26

O'Leary, M.H., 291

Olejniczak, B., 691

Oles, S.R., 359

Oliver, J.E., 385, 821, 924

Oliver, S.S., 276

Olivero, A.G., 817

Oliveto, E.P., 725

Öller, M., 418, 909

Olli, L.K., 1077

Ollinger, J., 818

Ollis, W.D., 63, 993, 1033

Olmstead, H.D., 419, 420, 832

Olmstead, W.N., 223, 308, 310

O'Loane, J.K., 82

Olofson, R.A., 174, 387, 496

Olomucki, M., 378

Olsen, A.R., 256

Olsen, C., 1103

Olsen, F.P., 225

Olsen, R.K., 421, 795, 994

Olson, A., 985

Olson, A.H., 961

Olson, J.M., 677

Olsson, K., 422

Olsson, L., 390, 410, 715

Olszowy, H.A., 126

Oltay, E., 723

Ölund, J., 391

Omae, I., 75

Omata, T., 105

Omura, H., 597

Omura, K., 1082

Ona, H., 51

O'Neal, H.E., 563, 896

O'Neal, H.R., 759, 762

O'Neill, J., 54

O'Neill, T.H., 621

Ong, B.S., 735, 795

Ong, J., 1029

Ono, A., 1103

Ono, N., 353, 361, 396, 412, 415, 594, 887, 892, 923

Onoe, A., 478, 725

Onopchenko, A., 1072

Onoue, H., 638, 1071

Onsager, O., 399, 710

Onuma, K., 402

Onyido, I., 578, 901

Ookawa, A., 378, 1101

Oomkes, P.G., 840

Ooms, P.H.J., 794

Oosterbeek, W., 248

Oosterhoff, L.J., 121, 751

Opgenorth, H., 648

Opitz, G., 443, 759, 867, 869

Oppenheimer, E., 656

Oppolzer, W., 711, 713, 745, 747, 765, 865

Or, A., 725

Or, Y.S., 133

Orahovats, A., 877

Orchin, M., 31, 206, 526, 722, 770, 1053

Ordronneau, C., 275

Orena, M., 1057, 1083

Orere, D.M., 785, 856

Orfanopoulos, M., 393, 635, 858, 1097

Orfanos, V., 46

Organ, T.D., 1109

Oritani, T., 289

Orlović, M., 275

Ornstein, P.L., 331, 653

Orpen, A.G., 115

Orr, B.J., 123

Orr, G., 581

Orsini, F., 823

Ortaggi, G., 1054

Ortar, G., 810

Ortiz, M., 792

Ortoleva, E., 61

Orvedal, A.W., 55, 61, 776

Orville-Thomas, W.J., 72, 77, 123

Orwig, B.A., 1092

Orzech, C.E., Jr., 947, 948

Osa, T., 807

Osakada, K., 1101

Osaki, M., 712, 824

Ōsawa, E., 962

Osawa, E., 962

Osborn, C.L., 761

Osborn, J.A., 692, 697, 722, 766

Osborne, D.W., 725

Osborne, M.R., 471

Osborne, R., 330

Oshima, A., 1085

Oshima, K., 406, 408, 409, 423, 738, 740, 818, 832, 839, 1031, 1058

Ōshima, T., 105

Oshiro, Y., 390

Oshry, L., 564

Osipov, O.A., 228

Osman, M.A., 352

Osokin, Yu.G., 139

Osowska, K., 691

Osrovskii, V.A., 986

Osterholtz, F.D., 1045

Ostermann, G., 993, 994

Ostermayer, F., 927

Ostrogovich, G., 863

Ostrovskii, V.A., 987

Osuka, A., 372, 391, 393, 590, 596, 844, 1097, 1116

O'Sullivan, M., 1035

Oswald, A.A., 675, 687, 688, 1088

Ota, K., 492

Otani, N., 934

Otera, J., 817

Oth, J.F.M., 46, 57, 59–62, 133, 139, 768, 775, 1010, 1024, 1025

Otonnaa, D., 733

Otroshchenko, O.S., 597

Otsubo, T., 59

Otsuji, Y., 376, 408, 431

Otsuka, S., 771

Ott, K.C., 1039

Ott, K.H., 1020, 1022

Ott, R.A., 816

Ott, W., 1023

Ottenbrite, R.M., 749, 899

Ottenheym, J.H., 222

Otteson, D., 751

Otto, P., 759, 762, 763

Otto, S., 1083

Otvos, J.W., 696

Ou, Y.X., 313
Oudenes, J., 419
Oulevey, G., 486
Oullette, R.J., 280, 681
Ourisson, G., 286, 958
Outram, J.R., 572
Overberger, C.G., 773, 1020
Overchuk, N.A., 452, 461, 506
Overman, J.D., 1110
Overman, L.E., 419, 749, 1023, 1031, 1110
Overton, K.H., 289, 520
Owa, M., 811
Owada, H., 913
Owellen, R.J., 1033
Owen, N.E.T., 383
Owen, N.L., 123
Owen, W.S., 541
Owens, P.H., 223, 616
Owens, P.J., 653
Owsley, D.C., 435, 764, 1113, 1114
Owuor, P.O., 669
Oyama, H., 794
Oyama, T., 483
Oyamada, H., 1101
Oyler, A.R., 599
Ozaki, A., 643
Ozaki, S., 370
Ozasa, S., 595
Ozawa, F., 569
Ozawa, S., 832
Ozier, I., 15
Ozorio, A.A., 419
Ozretich, T.M., 762

Paatz, R., 432
Pabon, H.J.J., 416
Pac, C., 766
Pacansky, J., 51, 581, 869
Pacifici, J.A., 924
Pacifici, J.G., 973
Packer, J., 222
Pacofsky, G.J., 1030
Paddon-Row, M.N., 166, 1057
Padegimas, S.J., 473
Padgett, H., 787
Padilla, A.J., 1021
Padwa, A., 621, 743, 744, 761, 1020, 1024, 1045
Paetzold, P.I., 995
Pagani, G., 43
Pagano, A.H., 740
Pagano, A.S., 573, 735
Page, I.D., 315
Page, M.I., 269, 471
Paget, W.E., 551
Pai, G.G., 706, 811
Paiaro, G., 92
Paige, J.N., 921
Paik, C.H., 264, 647
Pailer, M., 594
Paine, A.J., 937
Paknikar, S.K., 325
Palenik, G.J., 577
Palermo, R.E., 733, 738
Paleta, O., 731
Paley, B.A., 551
Palit, S.K., 325
Palit, S.R., 74
Palla, F., 811
Palleros, D., 578
Palm, D., 197
Palm, R., 1020
Palm, V.A., 318
Palma, P., 930
Palmer, B.W., 991
Palmer, D.A., 888
Palmer, H.B., 21, 22
Palmer, J.D., 951
Palmer, M.H., 501, 686
Palmere, R.M., 989
Palmieri, G., 716
Palomo, C., 350, 355, 806, 807, 930
Palumbo, G., 385, 920
Palumbo, R., 92
Pan, Y., 1055
Panaye, A., 249
Pande, K.C., 463
Pandell, A.J., 627, 1072
Pandey, P.N., 510
Pandit, U.K., 294
Panek, E.J., 651
Pánková, M., 286, 877, 879, 880, 891, 893, 909
Pankowski, J., 599
Pankratov, V.A., 864
Pankratova, K.G., 949
Panov, V.B., 466
Panova, Y.B., 945
Panteleeva, I.Yu., 809
Panunzi, A., 92
Panunzio, M., 694
Panzeri, A., 387
Paolucci, C., 137, 1033
Paolucci, G., 398, 856, 1098
Papa, I., 267
Papa, R., 280
Papadopoulos, M., 751, 858
Papaioannou, C.G., 200
Papay, J.J., 275
Pape, M., 534
Pape, P.G., 390
Papoula, M.T.B., 1058
Pappalardo, J.A., 364, 800
Pappas, B.C., 764
Pappas, B.C.T., 55
Pappas, J.J., 1066
Pappas, S.P., 764, 1009
Pappo, R., 711, 1071
Paquer, D., 829, 866, 1031
Paquette, L.A., 45, 46, 54, 56, 64, 92, 157, 277, 299, 532, 635, 747, 758, 763, 777, 921, 922, 940, 1024, 1025, 1039, 1040, 1042, 1056
Paradisi, C., 264
Paradisi, M.P., 810
Paradkar, V.M., 378
Parameswaran, K.N., 807
Paraskewas, S., 788
Parcell, R.F., 982
Pardo, S.N., 493
Parham, M.E., 984
Parham, W.E., 172, 434, 543, 560, 768, 1012
Parikh, J.R., 1082
Parini, V.P., 76
Paris, J., 926
Pariser, R., 26
Park, C.H., 115, 632
Park, K.H., 1036
Park, W., 438
Park, W.S., 262
Párkányi, C., 24
Parker, A.J., 236, 308, 317, 353, 584, 589, 887, 888, 892
Parker, C.A., 211
Parker, D., 78
Parker, D.G., 992
Parker, R.E., 310, 326, 583, 587, 964
Parker, S.D., 1042
Parker, S.R., 490
Parker, V.D., 190, 1030
Parker, W., 317
Parkin, C., 1061
Parks, C.R., 1068
Parlman, R.M., 395, 431, 723, 880
Parmerter, S.M., 533
Parnes, Z.N., 43, 393, 403, 692, 693, 694, 699, 791, 1050, 1097

Parola, A., 1111
Parr, J.E., 420
Parr, R.G., 26, 228
Parrilli, M., 734
Parris, G., 158, 160
Parrott, M.J., 608
Parry, F.H., III, 761
Parry, K.A.W., 966
Pars, H.G., 572
Parshall, G.W., 468, 556, 826
Parsons, G.H., Jr., 1111
Parsons, J.L., 692
Parsons, J.M., 699
Partch, R., 631, 1058
Parton, R.L., 496
Partyka, R.A., 387
Pârvulescu, L., 761
Pascali, V., 818
Pascard, C., 115
Pascaru, I., 1080
Pascone, J.M., 300
Pashinnik, V.E., 389, 809
Pasquato, L., 747
Pässler, P., 788
Pasteris, R.J., 1043
Pasto, D.J., 407, 420, 428, 660, 663, 675, 694, 699, 707, 762, 1003
Pastukhova, I.V., 996
Patai, S., 295, 365, 664, 671, 736, 838, 884
Patat, F., 311
Pataud-Sat, M., 816
Patchornik, A., 373, 499
Pate, B.D., 552
Patel, A.D., 759, 871
Patel, B.A., 643
Patel, D.J., 1043
Patel, H.P., 472
Patel, J.J.B., 1105
Patel, K.M., 971
Patel, P.K., 354
Patel, R.C., 313, 387, 415
Patel, V., 563
Pater, R.H., 737
Paterson, I., 416, 832
Pati, S.C., 1079
Patinkin, S.H., 479
Patrick, D.W., 739, 913
Patrick, J.B., 1100
Patrick, J.E., 1033
Patrick, T.B., 479, 655, 767
Patrie, W.J., 1058
Patsch, M., 993, 1012
Pattenden, G., 354, 842
Patterson, A.M., 1121, 1122
Patterson, D., 444
Patterson, D.B., 677
Patterson, J.M., 1087
Patterson, R.T., 749
Patterson, S., 1111
Patterson, W.I., 90
Pattison, F.L.M., 725
Pattison, J.B., 382
Pattison, V.A., 995
Patton, D.S., 275, 390
Patwardhan, B.H., 661
Paudler, W.W., 61
Paukstelis, J.V., 114, 388, 798, 814
Paul, D.B., 380, 602, 691, 729
Paul, D.F., 478
Paul, I.C., 56, 57, 61, 106, 107, 777
Paul, J.G., 350
Paul, K., 940
Paul, R., 372, 692
Paulik, F., 512
Pauling, L., 13, 167
Paulissen, R., 344
Paull, E.W., 631
Paulsen, H., 370, 1058
Paulson, J.F., 309
Pauson, P.L., 44
Paust, J., 304, 1012
Paventi, M., 478
Pavlis, R.R., 613, 724, 957
Pavlov, S., 686
Pavlović, D., 1108
Payne, D.A., 529
Payne, G.B., 736, 773
Payne, M.T., 660
Payzant, J.D., 308
Pazhenchevsky, B., 378
Pazos, J.F., 973
Peach, M.E., 360, 589
Peacock, N.J., 922
Peagram, M.J., 920
Peake, D.A., 599
Pearce, P.J., 817
Pearlman, P.S., 396
Pearson, A.J., 1077
Pearson, D.E., 244, 387, 457, 476, 477, 485, 558, 805
Pearson, D.P.J., 105
Pearson, R., 610, 625
Pearson, R.G., 183, 223, 228, 229, 234, 304, 308, 309, 314, 357, 400, 751
Pearson, S.C., 932
Pearson, W.H., 554
Peavy, R., 744
Pechet, M.M., 479, 528, 529, 574, 621, 725, 1045
Pechhold, E., 160
Pedersen, B.S., 794
Pedersen, C.J., 77, 78
Pederson, K.J., 564
Peeling, E.R.A., 470
Peerdeman, A.F., 95
Peet, N.P., 436
Peeters, H., 58, 266
Pegolotti, J.A., 289
Peiffer, G., 625
Pelah, Z., 1098, 1108
Peled, P., 296
Pelegrina, D.R., 628
Pelizzoni, F., 823
Pel'kis, P.S., 381
Pellerite, M.J., 219, 309
Pellet, M., 331, 434
Pelletier, W.M., 325
Peloso, C., 779
Pelter, A., 362, 373, 651, 704, 707, 995, 997, 998, 999, 1001, 1002, 1096, 1099
Peltzer, E.T., III, 923
Peña, S.A., 803
Pennella, F., 1038
Penninger, J.L.M., 723
Pensak, D., 610
Penton, H.R., Jr., 367
Penton, J.R., 453, 456, 457, 468, 471
Penzhorn, R.D., 1087
Peoples, P.R., 156
Pepe, J.P., 387
Perchinunno, M., 646
Perchonock, C., 54
Pereira, W.E., Jr., 106
Perelman, M., 869
Perepelkova, T.I., 72
Perevalova, E.G., 44
Pereyre, M., 515, 694
Perez, L.A., 769
Pérez-Blanco, D., 843
Perez-Rubalcaba, A., 821
Periasamy, M., 282, 1081
Periasamy, M.P., 370, 869
Périé, J.J., 689, 690, 691
Peries, R., 833
Perinis, M., 281

Perkampus, H., 448
Perkins, L.M., 383
Perkins, M.J., 114, 153, 163, 611, 641, 642, 644, 666, 768, 969
Perkins, N.A., 483
Perlberger, J., 1059
Perlin, A.S., 1063
Perlmutter-Hayman, B., 107
Perraud, R., 821
Perreten, J., 1042
Perrin, C., 468
Perrin, C.L., 133, 294, 452, 458, 466, 751
Perrin, D.D., 222, 229
Perriot, P., 976
Perry, D.A., 794
Perry, N.B., 947, 961
Perry, R.A., 563
Person, W.B., 74, 77, 129
Perst, H., 270, 312
Pertsikov, B.Z., 616
Perumal, P.T., 1077
Perz, R., 810, 1101
Pesce, G., 362, 920
Peška, J., 429
Petch, W.A., 606
Pete, J., 395
Pète, J., 911
Peter, D., 966
Peter, R., 403, 818, 832
Peters, D., 48, 131
Peters, D.A.V., 725
Peters, E.N., 149, 241, 275, 281, 282, 284
Peters, G.A., 792
Peters, H., 853
Peters, J.A., 396
Peters, K., 55
Peters, K.S., 265, 868
Peters, N.K., 701
Petersen, H., 137
Petersen, J.M., 982
Petersen, M.R., 1030
Petersen, W.C., 1104
Peterson, B., 905
Peterson, D., 410
Peterson, D.J., 558, 559, 839
Peterson, H.J., 147, 224, 709, 1050
Peterson, J.O., 810
Peterson, J.R., 734
Peterson, M., 825
Peterson, M.L., 654
Peterson, M.R., Jr., 17
Peterson, P.E., 143, 271, 275, 297, 312, 320, 661, 676, 684, 686, 980
Pethrick, R.A., 121
Petiniot, N., 344
Petit, F., 1038, 1112
Petit, M., 1112
Peto, A.G., 485, 486
Petragnani, N., 416, 536, 1091
Petrarca, A.E., 1105
Petrašiūnas, G.L.R., 794
Petro, C., 148, 262, 281, 282
Petropoulos, J.C., 501
Petrosyan, V.S., 522
Petrov, A.A., 670, 671, 675, 683, 684, 731
Petrov, A.D., 435
Petrovich, J.P., 1112
Petrzilka, M., 747, 1030
Petterson, R.C., 379, 958, 1042, 1044
Pettit, G.H., 496
Pettit, G.R., 510, 652, 1099, 1100
Pettit, L.D., 75
Pettit, R., 41, 51, 53, 63, 133, 396, 766, 1011, 1023, 1025
Pettitt, D.J., 921
Petty, J.D., 323
Petty, R., 16
Pevzner, M.S., 648
Pews, R.G., 131, 924
Peyerimhoff, S.D., 207
Peynircioğlu, N.B., 153
Pez, G.P., 1101
Pfab, J., 572
Pfaffenberger, C.D., 706
Pfau, M., 1111
Pfeffer, P.E., 352, 353, 421, 441, 638, 842
Pfeifer, W.D., 297
Pfeiffer, P., 875
Pfister, J.R., 984
Pfitzner, K.E., 1081, 1082
Pflug, J.L., 725
Pfohl, W.F., 400
Pfordte, K., 639
Pfriem, S., 133, 939
Pham, T.N., 391, 1031
Phelan, N.F., 31
Philip, H., 955
Philip, J.B., Jr., 656
Philippi, K., 735
Philips, J.C., 223, 922
Phillips, B., 735, 1060
Phillips, B.A., 495
Phillips, C.J., 827
Phillips, D.D., 157
Phillips, G.B., 858
Phillips, G.W., 839
Phillips, H., 257, 258
Phillips, J.B., 57
Phillips, J.C., 299
Phillips, J.N., 145
Phillips, L., 123
Phillips, R., 463
Phillips, R.B., 1023
Phillips, R.E., 16
Phillips, R.R., 533
Phillips, W.G., 1082
Photis, J.M., 940
Piacenti, F., 432, 720, 722
Piancatelli, G., 726, 1057, 1086
Piatak, D.M., 510, 1071, 1100
Piccolo, O., 408
Pick, R.M., 354
Pickard, P.L., 828
Pickering, R.A., 358
Pickles, G.M., 588
Pienta, N., 282
Pienta, N.J., 148, 262, 320
Pierce, J.B., 702
Pierini, A.B., 596, 750
Pierre, J., 115, 812, 821
Pierri, F., 612
Pierson, C., 621
Pierson, G.O., 973
Pieter, R., 1106
Pietra, F., 43, 44, 578, 583
Pietrasanta, F., 281
Pietroni, B.R., 480
Pietsek, D.J.J., 888
Piette, L.H., 629, 667
Pigeon, P., 353, 915
Pihlaja, K., 342
Pike, S., 985
Pilati, T., 56
Pilcher, G., 22
Pilgrim, W.R., 1088
Pilichowska, S., 378
Pilkiewicz, F.G., 769
Pilkington, J.W., 951
Pillai, C.N., 715
Pillai, P.M., 968
Pillai, V.N.R., 373
Pillay, M.K., 745
Pilling, M., 172

Pilot, J.F., 845, 849
Pilotti, Å., 793
Pimentel, G.C., 71, 72, 167
Pincock, J.A., 660, 661, 672, 938, 1041
Pincock, R.E., 93, 107, 134, 167, 262, 276, 277, 400
Pinder, A.R., 389
Pine, S.H., 605, 606, 800, 826, 992, 993
Pines, H., 524, 525, 689, 709, 710, 900, 903, 955, 1053, 1072
Pines, S.H., 785
Ping, Y.Y., 826
Pinhas, A.R., 1011
Pinhey, J.T., 511, 597, 644
Pinkerton, A.A., 67
Pinkus, A.G., 530, 822
Pinnell, R.P., 621
Pinnick, H.W., 628, 629, 787, 861, 923
Pino, P., 720, 722
Pinschmidt, R.K., Jr., 755, 1010
Pinsky, B., 806
Pinson, J., 583
Pinsonnault, J., 416
Piotrowska, H., 539, 638
Pirazzini, G., 510
Pirkle, W.H., 106, 108, 117, 699
Pirogowa, G.N., 901
Pirozhkov, S.D., 432, 996
Pirrung, M.C., 833
Pisanenko, D.A., 662
Piskala, A., 849, 852
Pistorius, R., 654
Piszkiewicz, L., 614
Pitacco, G., 798
Pitcher, R.G., 108
Pitman, I.H., 574
Pitteloud, R., 1030
Pittman, C.U., Jr., 50, 141, 142, 144, 145, 146, 272, 434, 675, 722
Pitts, J.N., Jr., 202, 206, 212, 213, 217, 1111
Pitzer, K.S., 129
Pitzer, R.M., 121
Pivnitskii, K.K., 694
Pizey, J.S., 344, 382, 389, 478, 488, 624, 692, 1051, 1052, 1062, 1094
Pizzotti, M., 1116
Plachky, M., 920
Plackett, J.D., 1033
Plankl, W., 567
Plante, R., 504
Plate, A.F., 1020, 1022
Plath, P., 947
Plato, M., 162
Platonov, V.E., 510, 593
Platz, M.S., 170, 173
Plau, B., 387, 395
Pleiss, M.A., 378
Plénat, F., 281, 289
Plepys, R.A., 694
Plesničar, B., 735, 990
Plesske, K., 45
Pletcher, D., 1058
Pletcher, W.A., 138
Plieninger, H., 747, 1076
Plinke, G., 59
Plotnikova, G.I., 684
Plum, H., 749
Plumeré, P., 105
Plusquellec, D., 355
Pluth, J.J., 693
Pobiner, H., 1065
Poblet, J.M., 674
Pochini, A., 493
Pocker, Y., 267, 546, 567, 662, 784, 959, 963, 964
Podoplelov, A.V., 404
Podstawczyńska, I., 378
Poeth, T., 400
Pogorelyi, V.K., 73
Pohl, D.G., 621
Poirier, J., 403
Poirier, M., 1101
Pojer, P.M., 395, 1060
Pokrovskaya, S.V., 857
Polanyi, M., 336, 697
Poleshchuk, O. Kh., 74
Polezhaeva, N.A., 36
Poli, G., 832
Poli, M., 323
Polichnowski, S.W., 1039
Poling, B., 768
Politanskii, S.F., 383
Politzer, I.R., 424, 425, 837
Politzer, P., 28
Polk, D.E., 555
Polla, E., 275
Pollack, R.M., 338, 340, 352, 564
Pollak, A., 725
Pollak, I.E., 409
Pollart, D.F., 904
Pollart, K.A., 1066
Pollicino, S., 137, 1033
Polster, R., 909
Polston, N.L., 1000
Pomarès, O., 1059
Pomerantz, M., 20
Pomeroy, J.H., 807
Pommelet, J., 923
Pommer, H., 845, 853
Pommier, J., 70
Pomponi, A.M., 369
Ponder, B.W., 784
Ponec, R., 128, 248
Ponkshe, N.K., 995
Ponomarchuk, M.P., 404, 1080
Ponomarov, A.B., 595
Pons, J., 1111
Ponsold, K., 246, 730
Ponti, F., 1057, 1075
Poole, C.P., Jr., 162
Poole, G.A., 312
Poole, H.G., 470
Poon, N.L., 682
Poon, Y.C., 9
Poonia, N.S., 77, 970
Poonian, M.S., 952
Poos, G.I., 1057
Popa, V., 75
Pople, J.A., 18, 26, 50, 60, 65, 123
Popov, E.M., 27, 29
Popov, S.I., 808
Popp, F.D., 398, 486, 1052
Poppelsdorf, H., 750
Poppinger, D., 133, 143
Porai-Koshits, B.A., 502
Poranski, C.F., Jr., 577
Porri, L., 1038
Porshnev, Yu. N., 46
Porta, F., 1116
Porta, O., 611, 616, 645, 646, 1111
Porter, C.R., 967
Porter, G., 1112
Porter, G.B., 206
Porter, H.K., 1103
Porter, R.D., 145, 149, 279, 285, 450
Portnoy, R.C., 424, 837
Portnykh, N.V., 1097
Portoghese, P.S., 858
Porwal, P.K., 970

Porzi, G., 367, 368
Posey, I.Y., 416
Poshkus, A.C., 445
Posner, G.H., 346, 351, 361, 401, 407, 409, 410, 433, 713, 714, 811, 847
Posner, J., 973
Pospelov, M.V., 1066
Possel, O., 419
Postovskii, I.Ya., 598
Pot, J., 1017
Potapova, I.M., 838
Potier, P., 802, 1081
Potter, A., 619
Potter, G.J., 726
Potter, N.H., 1060
Potter, S.E., 993
Potts, A.W., 11
Potts, I.W., Jr., 913
Potts, K.T., 49, 712
Poulter, C.D., 146, 1016
Poulter, S.R., 131, 698
Poulton, D.J., 948, 954
Poupart, M.A., 349
Poupko, R., 129
Pousse, A., 385
Poutsma, M.L., 609, 614, 620, 675, 679, 725, 726, 1098
Powell, A.L., 1118, 1119
Powell, D.L., 63, 73
Powell, J.W., 911, 912
Powell, M.F., 198, 331
Powell, R.E., 3
Power, P.P., 158
Powers, J.W., 390
Poynton, A.J., 1031
Pozharskii, A.F., 600
Prabhu, A.V., 817
Pracejus, H., 102, 685
Praeger, D., 125
Prager, R.H., 428, 651, 704
Prakasa Rao, A.S.C., 868
Prakash, G.K.S., 141, 149, 178, 276, 282, 283, 285, 387, 433, 441, 787
Pramanik, B.N., 380
Prange, T., 1058
Prather, J., 394
Prato, M., 331
Pratt, A.C., 1042
Pratt, B.C., 724
Pratt, E.F., 345
Pratt, R.J., 519
Pregaglia, G.F., 696
Prelog, V., 88, 96, 102, 129, 135, 954
Premuzic, E., 390
Press, J.B., 385
Presser, N., 1010
Pressman, D., 875
Preston, S.B., 428
Preto, R.J., 200
Pretty, A.J., 993
Pretzer, W., 56
Preuss, H., 666
Prevost, C., 289, 560, 773
Prewo, R., 771
Pri-Bar, I., 408
Pribytkova, L.G., 731
Price, C.C., 602
Price, M.F., 1030
Price, M.J., 666
Price, W.C., 11
Priest, D.N., 902, 933
Priest, W.J., 130
Priester, W., 545
Prikazchikova, L.P., 665
Prilezhaeva, E.N., 666, 676, 687
Prince, R.H., 656
Pring, M., 660
Prins, W.L., 873
Prinzbach, H., 543, 765, 767, 777
Pritchard, D.E., 166
Pritchard, J.G., 371, 978
Pritt, J.R., 300, 315
Pritzkow, H., 45
Pritzkow, W., 662, 735
Privett, O.S., 1068
Probasco, E.K., 677
Procházka, M., 430
Proença, M.F.J.R.P., 497
Prokhorenko, I.R., 953
Prokipcak, J.M., 287
Prokof'ev, A.K., 174, 580
Prokopiou, P.A., 394, 395
Prolingheuer, E., 948
Proskow, S., 84, 763
Pross, A., 175, 227, 266
Protschuk, G., 436
Proverb, R.J., 935, 936, 1021
Pruett, R.L., 722
Pruitt, K.M., 577, 587
Prunier, L., 286
Pruss, G.M., 891
Pryor, W.A., 162, 199, 608, 610, 614, 616, 666, 955, 1067, 1092
Przemetchi, V., 1080
Przybylska, M., 570
Przystas, T.J., 330
Psarras, T., 152, 223
Ptitsyna, O.A., 650
Puar, M.S., 308
Puckette, T.A., 839
Puddephatt, R.J., 792
Pudjaatmaka, H., 223
Puerta, J.E., 325
Puglia, G., 490, 493
Puglis, J., 390
Pujadas, J., 165
Pullman, A., 24
Pullman, B., 24, 37
Pumphrey, N.W.J., 21
Pupyshev, V.I., 681
Purcell, K.F., 74
Purchase, M., 337
Purdham, J.T., 276
Purdon, J.G., 699
Purkayastha, M.L., 510
Purnell, H., 368, 686
Purohit, V.G., 417
Purrington, S.T., 529
Puterbaugh, W.H., 606, 661, 835
Putnam, W.E., 173
Putt, S.R., 436
Pütter, R., 343
Putz, G.J., 299
Puza, M., 468
Puzitskii, K.V., 432, 720, 996
Pyatin, B.M., 312, 346, 359
Pyatnitskii, Yu.I., 1071
Pyron, R.S., 751
Pyryalova, P.S., 816

Quadbeck, G., 685
Quadri, M.L., 924
Quan, P.M., 598, 746
Quang, Y.V., 744
Quast, H., 550, 1026
Quayle, O.R., 336
Queen, A., 266, 267
Quest, D.E., 569
Qui, N.T., 555
Quici, S., 322
Quick, G.R., 1065
Quiles, F., 1046
Quillinan, A.J., 429
Quinkert, G., 102, 771, 938, 1043

Quinn, H.W., 75
Quinn, R.A., 627
Quintela, M.A.L., 571
Quintily, U., 331
Quiram, E.R., 675
Quirk, R.P., 222
Quiroga-Feijoo, M.L., 821
Qureshi, A.A., 796
Qureshi, M.I., 138

Raab, G., 557
Raab, W., 418, 918
Raaen, V.F., 191, 266, 314, 952, 955, 967
Rabalais, J.W., 10
Raban, M., 86, 107, 108, 115
Rabenstein, D.L., 55
Raber, D.J., 263, 266, 280, 299, 354
Rabideau, P.W., 701
Rabinovich, D., 59, 102
Rabinovich, E.A., 525
Rabinovitch, B.S., 172, 544
Rabinovitz, M., 45, 46, 57, 59, 146, 479, 711, 815
Rabinowitz, J.L., 724, 989
Rabinowitz, R., 847
Rabjohn, N., 627, 1077
Racela, W., 222
Racherla, U.S., 980
Rack, E.P., 724
Radda, G.K., 611
Radeglia, R., 87
Radell, J., 79
Rademacher, L.E., 925
Rademacher, P., 120
Radford, D.V., 77
Radhakrishna, A., 535
Radhakrishna, A.S., 785, 984
Radhakrishna Murti, P.S., 1079
Radics, L., 111
Radke, C.M., 1026
Radlick, P., 56, 983, 1076
Radner, F., 466, 468
Radom, L., 45, 123, 143, 235, 700
Radziszewski, G.J., 133
Raecke, B., 508
Raffaelli, A., 722
Rafikov, S.R., 857
Raheja, A., 1083
Rahm, A., 515
Rahman, A., 1099
Rahman, M., 771, 1060
Rahn, B.J., 402
Rainsford, A.E., 931
Rainville, D.P., 515, 707
Rajadhyaksha, S.N., 861
Rajagopalan, R., 1078
Rajan, S., 596, 638
Rajaram, J., 695
Rajput, A.S., 20
Rakhmankulov, D.L., 330, 858
Rakitin, O.A., 570
Rakowski, M.C., 694
Rakshit, A.B., 235
Raksis, J.W., 723, 983
Raksit, A.B., 309
Raley, J.H., 956, 957
Ralph, E.K., 234
Ramachandran, J., 829
Ramadas, S.R., 829
Ramakers, J.E., 138
Ramamurthy, V., 209, 634
Rama Rao, A.V., 988
Ramart-Lucas, P., 963
Ramasamy, K., 693
Ramaswamy, P.S., 785
Rambaud, M., 561
Ramirez, F., 845, 847, 849
Rammler, D.H., 355
Rampi, R.C., 591
Ramsay, D.A., 18
Ramsay, O.B., 883
Rämsch, R.Y., 860
Ramsden, C.A., 26, 63, 994
Ramsey, B., 10, 146, 279
Rana, S.S., 351
Rand, C.L., 595, 716, 778
Rand, M.H., 784
Randall, J.J., 583
Randić, M., 130
Rando, R.R., 527
Ranganathan, D., 759, 1034
Ranganathan, S., 759, 1034
Ranganayakulu, K., 146
Rank, B., 1064
Rao, A.S., 325, 1074
Rao, C.G., 241, 281, 282, 304, 397, 705, 785, 788, 1085
Rao, C.N.R., 65, 74
Rao, C.T., 394
Rao, D.P., 596
Rao, D.V., 504, 1077
Rao, J.M., 997, 999, 1001
Rao, T.S., 478
Rao, V.V.R., 651, 705
Rao, Y.S., 1058
Raphael, R.A., 134, 973, 1063
Rapoport, H., 35, 373, 392, 438, 485, 627, 1083, 1101
Rapp, M.W., 318
Rappé, A.K., 1039
Rappe, C., 530, 921, 971–974
Rappoport, Z., 147, 275, 295–298, 483, 663, 664, 671, 675, 736, 838, 884, 885
Raptis, M., 1060
Rashchupkina, Z.A., 414
Rasmussen, J.K., 418, 420, 534, 547, 869, 933
Rasmussen, J.R., 515
Rasmussen, S.E., 257, 485
Rasmusson, G.H., 850
Raspin, K.A., 656
Rassat, A., 162, 814
Rast, H., 118
Rasteikiene, L., 728
Rastetter, W.H., 735
Ratajczak, A., 311
Ratajczak, H., 72, 77, 949, 953
Ratananukul, P., 840
Ratcliffe, R., 1057
Rathjen, H., 542
Rathke, M.W., 140, 416, 417, 426, 427, 428, 436, 532, 553, 717, 823, 824, 836, 839, 996, 998, 999, 1055, 1091
Rathman, T.L., 832
Rathore, B.S., 825
Ratts, K.W., 691
Ratuský, J., 508
Rau, A., 1022
Rau, H., 206
Rau, M., 663
Rauch, F.C., 601
Raucher, S., 715, 1099
Raudenbusch, W., 927, 932
Rauhut, M.M., 190, 604
Rauk, A., 86, 123, 128, 157, 535, 966
Rauleder, G., 949
Raulet, C., 847
Raulins, N.R., 1021, 1028
Raunio, E.K., 666
Rausch, D.A., 725
Rausch, M.D., 44, 545
Rauscher, G., 133
Rauschwalbe, G., 549

Rautenstrauch, V., 635, 814, 995, 1033, 1034
Rav-Acha, C., 296
Ravindran, N., 552, 705, 1000
Ravindranath, B., 920
Ravindranathan, M., 241, 275, 281, 282, 304, 788
Ravindranathan, T., 759, 1000
Rawalay, S.S., 1084
Rawdah, T.N., 141
Rawlinson, D.J., 472, 621, 628, 629, 635, 636, 728, 1044
Rawson, R.J., 772, 818
Ray, G.C., 1038
Ray, R., 733
Ray, R.E., 1077
Ray, T., 1077
Ray, W.J., 607
Rayanakorn, M., 368, 686
Raymond, K.N., 56
Raymond, M.G., 510
Raynier, B., 478
Razdan, R.K., 652
Razumovskii, S.D., 1067
Razuvaev, G.A., 549, 639
Rea, D.G., 129
Read, G., 710
Read, R.A., 891
Read, T.O., 583, 587, 847
Readio, P.D., 612, 613, 625, 676
Reagan, J., 1067
Reagan, M.T., 224, 1106
Reale, A., 1112
Reardon, E.J., Jr., 527, 773
Reardon, R.C., 177
Rebbert, R.E., 215
Rebek, J., 372, 373
Rebell, J., 1022
Rebeller, M., 1109
Recca, A., 1112
Recktenwald, G., 1111
Redaelli, V., 744
Reddy, G.S., 826
Reddy, S., 503
Redlich, O., 79
Redman, R.P., 884, 885, 893
Redmond, J.W., 983
Redmond, W., 603
Redmore, D., 938, 965, 967, 971, 975, 977, 1020, 1086
Redvanly, C.S., 976
Ree, B., 146, 284
Reece, P.A., 428
Reed, D.W., 625
Reed, J.N., 553
Reed, L.L., 44
Reed, R., 559
Reed, S.F., Jr., 727
Reed, W.L., 739
Reel, H., 58
Reents, W.D., Jr., 466
Rees, C.W., 56, 170, 741, 772
Rees, J.H., 16
Rees, T.C., 715
Reese, C.B., 398, 500, 543, 699, 785, 856, 1012
Reetz, M.T., 403, 408, 416, 430, 613, 817, 818, 820, 832, 917, 920, 1053, 1135
Reeve, W., 223, 925
Reeves, R.L., 785, 797, 829
Reeves, W.P., 380
Regen, S.L., 322, 353, 362, 915, 1057
Reger, D.L., 692
Reggel, L., 702
Regis, R.R., 532
Regitz, M., 445, 534, 571, 1022, 1026
Regnier, B., 383
Regulski, T.W., 661
Reho, A., 799
Rei, M., 281, 282, 685
Reich, C.J., 328
Reich, H.J., 271, 361, 421, 536, 913, 914, 926, 1026, 1034, 1089
Reich, I.L., 271, 536, 913
Reich, S.D., 276
Reichard, D.W., 155
Reichardt, C., 316, 318, 320, 619, 837
Reichel, C.J., 802
Reichenbach, T., 715
Reichenbacher, P.H., 953
Reichle, R., 948
Reichle, W.T., 512
Reichmanis, E., 56, 57
Reid, C.G., 637
Reid, D.H., 40, 1060
Reid, D.J., 266
Reid, E.E., 360, 372, 794
Reid, I., 525, 526
Reiding, D.J., 505
Reif, L., 506, 547
Reiff, H., 833
Reiffers, S., 1114
Reijnders, P.J.M., 405
Reikhsfel'd, V.O., 774
Reilly, J., 1019
Reimann, H., 1045
Reimlinger, H., 344, 524
Rein, B.M., 383, 593
Reinecke, M.G., 581, 582
Reinehr, D., 715
Reineke, C.E., 953
Reinheckel, H., 828
Reinheimer, J.D., 587
Reinhoudt, D.N., 77, 758
Reinking, P., 1063
Reinmuth, O., 402, 548, 816, 825–828
Reis, H., 721
Reisch, J., 688, 690
Reischer, R.J., 774
Reisdorf, D., 1091
Reist, E.J., 921
Reitz, A.B., 849
Reitz, D.B., 154, 424
Reitz, O., 198
Reitz, R.R., 1040
Reitz, T.J., 378
Rejoan, A., 695
Rejowski, J.E., 1083
Rekasheva, A.F., 329, 332
Rekker, R.F., 507
Remanick, A., 960
Remar, J.F., 361
Rembaum, A., 27
Rémion, J., 388, 926
Remizova, T.B., 967
Rempel, G.L., 575
Rémuson, R., 376
Renard, G., 281
Renard, J., 1070
Renaud, R.N., 468
Rendleman, J., 644
Renema, J., 859
Renes, G., 123
Renga, J.M., 536, 913, 1033
Renger, B., 423, 1106
Renk, E., 616, 621, 931
Renner, C.A., 737
Renner, R., 624
Rennick, L.E., 692
Rennie, R.A.C., 692, 1093
Rentea, C.N., 1080
Repič, O., 772, 1086
Reppe, W., 774
Requin, F., 99

Řeřicha, R., 879
Rerick, M.N., 394, 1093, 1105
Reshotova, I.G., 700
Resnick, P., 533
Respess, W.L., 713
Respondek, J., 852
Restelli, A., 833
Rétey, J., 387
Rettig, K.R., 771
Reuben, D.M.E., 813
Reucroft, J., 850
Reusch, W., 971, 1096, 1097
Reuss, R.H., 531, 628
Reuter, J.M., 1031
Reuterhäll, A., 793
Reutov, O.A., 86, 151, 155, 219, 308, 322, 324, 325, 404, 433, 512, 515, 520, 521, 522, 552, 561, 650, 662, 685, 849, 861, 948, 949, 951, 953, 980
Reutrakul, V., 840, 914
Reuvers, J.T.A., 914
Reuwer, J.F., Jr., 528
Rewicki, D., 151, 219
Rey, M., 761, 993
Reye, C., 687, 810, 1101
Reynolds, D.D., 369
Reynolds, G.D., 853
Reynolds, G.F., 521
Reynolds, J., 574
Reynolds, W.F., 16, 29, 245, 247, 248
Reynolds-Warnhoff, P., 813
Rezende, M.C., 354, 364
Rhee, I., 555, 597
Rhee, S., 707, 995
Rho, M.M., 241
Rhoads, S.J., 1021, 1028
Rhodes, S.P., 427
Rhodes, Y.E., 276, 284, 824
Rhom, D., 295
Ribo, J., 975
Ricard, M., 747
Ricca, G., 823
Ricci, A., 16, 510
Ricci, M., 736
Rice, J.E., 703
Rice, S.N., 176
Rich, N., 129
Richard, J.P., 267
Richard, T.J., 735
Richards, A.C., 27
Richards, D.H., 817
Richards, E.M., 849
Richards, H.C., 108
Richards, K.E., 463, 467
Richards, R.M., 93
Richardson, D.B., 173, 174, 544
Richardson, W.H., 563, 630, 896, 1112
Richarz, W., 367
Riche, C., 763
Richey, H.G., Jr., 144, 145, 147, 153, 154, 274, 275, 283, 579, 663, 675, 684, 715, 827, 1021, 1062
Richey, J.M., 147, 579, 663, 675
Richheimer, S.L., 425
Richman, J.E., 416, 422, 440, 718, 785
Richmond, G.D., 413
Richter, R., 370, 383
Richter, W.J., 529
Rickborn, B., 157, 289, 326, 397, 410, 512, 518, 548, 552, 557, 681, 809, 904, 933, 958, 981
Rickter, D.O., 948
Ridd, J.H., 16, 447, 452, 453, 456, 460, 463, 466, 468, 469, 478, 502, 510, 570, 571, 572
Riddell, F.G., 124, 128
Riddle, C.A., 143
Rider, H.D., 381
Rieche, A., 490, 592, 685
Ried, W., 441, 838, 939
Riedel, O., 508
Riefling, B., 652
Riegel, B., 1077
Rieger, A.L., 625
Riego, J.M., 988
Riehl, A., 1065
Riehl, J.J., 547
Rieke, R.D., 560, 598, 823
Rieker, A., 165, 601, 647
Riemann, J., 509
Riemenschneider, J.L., 147, 282
Riemland, E., 1077
Riera, J., 165, 166
Riesz, P., 662
Rietz, E.G., 330
Riezebos, G., 1068
Rifi, M.R., 43, 400
Rigamonti, J., 603
Rigaudy, J., 737, 747
Rigby, J.H., 1053
Rigby, R.D.G., 511
Riggs, R.M., 984
Righini-Tapei, A., 411
Riley, C.M., 933
Riley, T., 528
Rimbault, C.G., 635
Rimmelin, J., 750
Rimmelin, P., 222, 632
Rinaldi, C., 1031
Rinaudo, J., 642
Rinderknecht, H., 356
Rindone, B., 498
Rinehart, K.L., Jr., 44, 460, 557, 823, 937
Ring, D.F., 544
Ring, R.N., 671
Riordan, J.C., 341
Riordan, J.D., 225
Riordan, P.D., 1108
Ripka, W.C., 383, 808
Ripoll, J., 68
Ripoll, J.L., 750, 796
Risbood, P.A., 810
Risch, N., 103
Risius, A.C., 699
Rissler, K., 1115
Ritchie, C.D., 175, 242, 246, 247, 305, 309
Ritchie, E., 395
Ritchie, G.L.D., 42
Rittberg, B.R., 931
Ritter, J.J., 860
Ritter, W., 123
Rivard, D.E., 569
Riveros, J.M., 235, 337
Rivers, G.T., 911
Rivers, P., 88
Rivière, H., 433, 434, 643, 716, 1058
Rizk, M., 1033
Rizvi, S.Q.A., 16
Ro, R.S., 887, 924, 925
Roark, W.H., 955
Robbins, C.R., 607
Robbins, H.J., 233
Robbins, H.M., 266, 882
Robbins, J.D., 139, 1026, 1042
Robbins, M.D., 339, 891, 1091
Roberts, B.P., 357, 549, 550, 613
Roberts, C.W., 857

Roberts, D.D., 283
Roberts, D.K., 891
Roberts, F.E., 264, 795
Roberts, J.D., 16, 52, 123, 130, 140, 160, 196, 246, 283, 285, 298, 304, 344, 581, 584, 588, 617, 758, 763, 1026
Roberts, J.L., 734
Roberts, J.T., 931
Roberts, R., 313
Roberts, R.M., 479, 481, 482, 505, 1029
Roberts, R.M.G., 505, 547, 660
Roberts, S., 761
Roberts, S.M., 289, 761
Roberts, T.D., 445
Roberts, W.J., 720
Robertson, G.B., 138
Robertson, J.M., 35, 48
Robertson, P.W., 724
Robertson, R.E., 197, 199, 200, 260, 266, 286, 328, 443, 1114
Robertson, W.G.P., 792
Robey, R.L., 547, 1072
Robin, M.B., 10, 11
Robinson, B., 1032
Robinson, C.H., 725
Robinson, D.A., 1009
Robinson, D.L., 124
Robinson, D.R., 293
Robinson, E.A., 490
Robinson, F.P., 1033
Robinson, G.C., 263
Robinson, G.M., 1032
Robinson, G.W., 207
Robinson, J.K., 198
Robinson, L., 318
Robinson, M.J.T., 21, 128, 962
Robinson, P.J., 966
Robinson, R., 37, 749, 801, 835, 843, 1032
Robinson, R.A., 223
Robinson, R.E., 702
Robson, J.H., 861
Robson, M.J., 965
Roček, J., 629, 630, 631, 733, 1053, 1059, 1060, 1065, 1071
Rochester, C.H., 72, 219, 223, 224, 225
Rochow, E.G., 559
Rockstuhl, A., 727
Rodeheaver, G.T., 1085
Rodehorst, R., 656, 1057
Rodewald, H., 52
Rodewald, L.B., 962
Rodewald, P.G., 742
Rodewald, R.F., 308
Rodgers, A.S., 770
Rodgers, M.A.J., 634
Rodia, R.M., 858
Rodin, J.O., 751
Rodina, L.L., 974, 975
Rodini, D.J., 858
Rodionov, V., 346
Rodrigues, R., 536, 1091
Rodriguez, H.R., 545
Rodriguez, M.L., 1078
Rodriquez, O., 939
Roe, R., Jr., 761, 762
Roelofsen, D.P., 797, 798
Roengsumran, S., 505
Roeterdink, F., 582
Rogers, D., 95
Rogers, D.Z., 346
Rogers, G.A., 293
Rogers, H.R., 560, 561, 1085
Rogers, M.T., 135, 157, 167
Rogers, N.A.J., 1042
Rogers, P., 331
Rogers, R.J., 560, 603
Rogers, W.J., 933
Rogić, M.M., 426, 427, 428, 717, 930, 1066, 1072
Rogne, O., 443, 444
Rogowski, F., 18
Rogozhin, S.V., 106
Rogozhnikova, O.Yu., 452
Rohatgi-Mukherjee, K.K., 202
Rohr, W., 339
Rohrbaugh, P.E., 587
Roitman, J.N., 518
Rokhlin, E.M., 783, 845
Roland, J.R., 508
Rold, K.D., 669, 725
Roling, P.V., 821
Röll, W., 281
Rolla, F., 320, 378, 383, 384, 680, 924, 1058, 1083, 1106
Rolston, J.H., 661
Roman, F., 1046
Roman, S.A., 275
Romanelli, M.G., 44, 930
Romanet, R.F., 712
Romano, L.J., 622, 725
Romers, C., 128
Rømming, C., 77, 570, 794
Ron, A., 573
Ron, M., 200
Rona, P., 409, 776
Rona, R.J., 410
Ronald, B.P., 964
Ronald, R.C., 808
Roncin, J., 166
Rondan, N.G., 64, 154, 1042
Rondestvedt, C.S., Jr., 327, 642, 1103, 1104
Ronman, P., 872
Ronzini, L., 434
Roobeek, C.F., 540, 677, 722
Rooney, J.J., 697, 962, 1023, 1039, 1085
Roos, B.O., 171
Roothaan, C.C.J., 4, 26
Roozpeikar, B., 699
Rop, D., 323
Ropp, G.A., 342, 508
Roque, J., 276
Roque, J.P., 795, 1059
Ros, F., 414, 415
Rosado, O., 371, 1046
Roscher, N.M., 632
Rose, E.H., 926
Rose, J., 74
Rose, J.B., 877
Rose, M.E., 342, 412
Rosen, P., 420
Rosen, S., 730
Rosen, W., 56, 78
Rosenberg, A., 15
Rosenberg, A.M., 337
Rosenberg, D.E., 641
Rosenberg, J.L. von, 63
Rosenberg, S., 806
Rosenberger, M., 46
Rosenblatt, D.H., 728, 1081, 1086
Rosenblum, L.D., 435
Rosenblum, M., 44, 45, 604, 921
Rosencrantz, D.R., 857
Rosenfeld, J., 143, 947
Rosenfeld, J.C., 1012
Rosenfeld, M.N., 603, 1061
Rosenfeld, S.M., 35, 564
Rosenman, H., 656
Rosenquist, N.R., 248
Rosenthal, R., 739
Rosini, C., 396

Rosini, G., 836
Roskos, P.D., 990
Ross, C.B., 858
Ross, D.A., 601
Ross, D.S., 469, 470
Ross, S.D., 347, 576, 587
Rossa, L., 940
Rossall, B., 443
Rosser, M.J., 727
Rossetti, Z.L., 126
Rossi, A.R., 744
Rossi, J.C., 734
Rossi, R., 91, 1038
Rossi, R.A., 583, 592, 594, 596
Rossiter, B.E., 736
Rössler, K., 602
Rossy, P.A., 390
Rostovshchikova, T.N., 662
Rotem, M., 686
Rotermund, G.W., 706
Roth, A.S., 702
Roth, B.D., 1100
Roth, E.A., 19
Roth, H.D., 56, 176, 544, 771
Roth, J.A., 510
Roth, M., 941
Roth, W., 91, 564
Roth, W.R., 762, 1014, 1016, 1017, 1018, 1021, 1023, 1024
Rothbard, J., 1078
Rother, H., 762
Rothgery, E.F., 770
Rothman, E.S., 352
Rothrock, T.S., 967
Rotman, A., 627
Rotstein, D., 390, 694
Röttele, H., 57, 60
Rottendorf, H., 594
Rouessac, A., 750
Rouessac, F., 750
Rouget, E., 821
Rouillard, M., 1105
Roulleau, F., 355
Roumestant, M., 409
Roumian, C., 363
Rouot, B., 387
Roush, D.M., 744
Rousseau, A.D., 215
Rousseau, Y., 1067
Roussel, A., 759, 761
Roussel, M., 1085
Rousset, C., 383
Roux, M.C., 714
Roux-Schmitt, M., 821, 843
Rovira, C., 166
Rowe, B.A., 597
Rowe, C.A., Jr., 525
Rowe, C.D., 554
Rowe, K., 704, 998
Rowland, B.I., 1046
Rowland, C., 167
Rowland, F.S., 956, 976
Rowland, N.E., 57
Rowley, A.G., 850, 1108
Rowley, D.H., 1042
Roy, D.A., 648
Roy, F., 456
Roy, G., 839
Roy, J., 1035
Roy, S.K., 492
Roy, U.V., 762
Royer, R., 807
Rozantsev, E.G., 164, 166
Rozantsev, G.G., 170
Rozen, S., 383, 479, 529, 621, 725
Rozhkov, I.N., 714, 729
Rua, L., 1098
Ruane, M., 887, 888
Ruasse, M., 175, 661
Rubenstein, P.A., 223
Rubin, M.B., 213, 771
Rubin, R.J., 1036
Rubin, R.M., 1026
Rubinshtein, B.I., 622
Rubio, V., 854
Rubottom, G.M., 531, 547, 628, 636, 824, 1051, 1063
Ruch, R.R., 814
Rüchardt, C., 165, 167, 579, 614, 641, 646, 648, 685, 951, 956, 992
Rücker, C., 751
Rucktäschel, R., 939
Rudakov, E.S., 318
Rudchenko, V.F., 87
Rudd, E., 732
Ruden, R.A., 716
Rudler, H., 569, 1039
Rudloff, E. von, 1071
Rudolph, G., 78
Rudolph, J., 336
Rudolph, S.E., 820
Rudy, T.P., 619
Rufa, L., 1117
Ruff, J.K., 574
Ruffner, R.J., 914
Ruge, B., 213
Rüger, C., 575
Rüger, W., 672
Rühlmann, K., 1114
Rule, H.G., 597
Rull, M., 339
Rummens, F.H.A., 899
Rundel, W., 368
Rundle, R.E., 159
Runge, J., 573
Runge, W., 91
Runquist, A.W., 811
Ruo, T.C., 625
Ruo, T.C.S., 613
Ruostesuo, J., 307
Rupilius, W., 722
Ruppert, I., 9
Ruprecht, H., 1070
Rusakov, A.F., 510
Rusch, G.M., 966
Ruske, W., 496
Russ, M., 389, 1108
Russell, C.R., 155
Russell, G.A., 162, 169, 404, 414, 415, 440, 480, 574, 599, 614, 615, 616, 619, 625, 634, 956
Russell, J.A., 478
Russell, K.E., 576
Russell, R.A., 1057
Russell, R.K., 56
Russell, R.L., 472, 976
Russell, S.W., 1054
Russell, T.W., 694
Russell-Hill, D.Q., 583
Russell-King, J., 947, 961
Russo, T.J., 325
Ruth, T.J., 552
Ruther, F., 627
Rutherford, K.G., 603, 986
Ruthven, D.M., 810
Rutledge, P.S., 478, 531, 654, 726, 728, 729, 730, 734, 1063
Rutman, O.G., 710
Rüttimann, A., 928
Ruzicka, L., 442, 961
Ruzsicska, B.P., 173
Ruzziconi, R., 880, 881, 885, 893, 895
Ryabokobylko, Yu.S., 593
Ryabova, K.G., 432, 996
Ryabtsev, M.N., 662

Ryan, G., 49, 50
Ryan, P.W., 702
Ryang, H.S., 619
Ryang, M., 431, 554, 555, 597, 718
Rybakova, N.A., 497
Rybin, L.V., 671
Rybinskaya, M.I., 43, 44, 296, 671
Rychtman, A.C., 218
Rycroft, D.S., 67
Rydon, H.N., 383
Rykowski, A., 599
Rylander, P.N., 392, 394, 396, 636, 655, 692, 702, 710, 733, 799, 811, 814, 815, 1053, 1080, 1093, 1103
Rynbrandt, R.H., 922
Rys, P., 452, 466
Rytting, J.H., 78
Ryu, I., 1055
Rzepa, H., 281

Saá, J.M., 1112
Sabacky, M.J., 104, 165, 693
Sabel, A., 1084
Sabesan, A., 822
Sabesan, S.I., 363
Sabin, J.R., 74
Sable, H.Z., 325
Sabol, M.A., 86, 443
Sabourin, E.T., 440
Saburi, M., 1101
Sachdev, H.S., 929
Sachdev, K., 1021
Sachs, D.H., 390
Sacks, C.E., 785
Sackur, O., 973
Sadakari, N., 59
Sadar, M.H., 225
Sadd, J.S., 172
Sadekov, I.D., 73
Sadowski, J.S., 342, 589
Sadri, A.R., 505
Sadykov, A.S., 597
Sadykov, R.A., 729
Saednya, A., 806, 931
Saeed, M.A., 898
Saegusa, T., 368, 575, 694, 724, 773, 1091, 1092, 1119
Saeki, H., 349
Saeman, M.C., 1038
Safarov, M.G., 857
Safavy, K.K., 264
Safir, S.R., 435
Safonova, I.L., 770
Saga, H., 485
Sagatys, D.S., 902, 927
Sagdeev, R.Z., 404
Sager, W.F., 242, 246, 627
Saha, J.G., 461, 641
Sahli, M.S., 898
Sahm, W., 400, 651
Sahyun, M.R.V., 314, 889, 909, 1096
Saidi, M.R., 921
Saiganov, I.V., 443
Saigo, K., 372, 712, 795, 824, 832, 1058, 1060
Saikachi, H., 57
Saindane, M., 537, 821
Saines, G., 224, 1050
Sainsbury, G.L., 104
Sainsbury, M., 597, 639
Saishō, H., 492
Saito, I., 737
Saito, K., 302
Saito, S., 67, 121, 913
Saitô, S., 267
Saito, T., 353, 361, 412
Saito, Y., 280
Sakabe, N., 577
Sakai, K., 693
Sakai, M., 155, 277, 430, 785, 1040
Sakai, S., 803, 934
Sakajiri, T., 342
Sakaki, K., 1108
Sakakibara, T., 491
Sakakibara, Y., 430, 433, 595
Sakane, S., 989
Sakata, J., 832
Sakata, S., 434, 435
Sakata, Y., 57
Sakato, Y., 59
Sakizadeh, K., 266, 267
Sakla, A.B., 978
Sako, R., 731
Sakuma, K., 411
Sakurai, H., 166, 331, 383, 385, 393, 575, 712, 766, 833
Salaman, A.M., 803
Salaun, J., 790
Salaun, J.R., 974
Salbaum, H., 853
Saldaña, M., 1103
Sale, A.A., 345
Salem, G.F., 331, 351
Salem, L., 103, 128, 137, 167, 213, 751
Salem, M.R., 835
Salemnick, G., 535
Salfeld, J.C., 598
Salinger, R., 152, 223
Salinger, R.M., 158, 558, 822
Salisbury, K., 1042
Sališová, M., 393
Sall, D.J., 378
Salman, S.R., 74
Salmon-Legagneur, F., 963
Salmond, W.G., 12
Salomaa, P., 327, 329, 332, 342, 785
Salomon, C., 722
Salomon, M.F., 357, 408
Salomon, R.G., 357, 408, 493, 1031
Salomone, R.A., 869
Saltiel, J., 215, 1003
Saluja, P.P.S., 282
Salvador, J., 1101
Salvadori, P., 722
Salzmann, T.N., 536, 913
Sam, D.J., 321, 621, 1070
Sam, D.S., 477
Samanich, D., 733
Samkoff, N., 617, 642
Sammes, M.P., 73, 938
Sammes, P.G., 764, 850, 1037, 1045
Samoilova, Z.E., 87
Samokhvalov, G.I., 670
Samoshin, V.V., 126
Sample, T.E., Jr., 750
Samuel, C.J., 1042
Samuel, D., 342, 604
Samuel, P.A., 994
Samuelsson, B., 383, 413, 919
Sanchez, B.L., 606, 800
Sanchez, M.G., 1030
Sanchez, R.A., 676, 856
Sancho, J., 1038
Sanda, J.C., 139
Sandall, J.P.B., 466, 502
Sandefur, L.O., 714
Sander, E.G., 310
Sander, G.E., 379
Sander, M.R., 500
Sanderfer, P.O., 937
Sanders, L.A., 677
Sanderson, J.R., 940, 941
Sanderson, R.T., 14

Sanderson, W.A., 104, 947
Sandifer, R.M., 833
Sandler, S.R., 290, 358, 375, 383, 572, 670, 789, 792, 798, 805, 934, 936, 966, 1012, 1062, 1105, 1116, 1117
Sandorfy, C., 71
Sandri, E., 137, 1033
Sandri, S., 1057, 1083
Sandrock, G., 264, 265
Sane, P.P., 1074
San Filippo, J., Jr., 357, 401, 561, 622, 651, 725, 918, 1035, 1057, 1119
Sangalov, Yu.A., 688
Sangster, D.F., 628
Sannicolo, F., 1032
Sano, H., 432
Sano, T., 378
Sansoulet, J., 353, 915
Santaniello, E., 823, 1057, 1075, 1101
Santelli, M., 712, 1111
Santiago, C., 452, 744
Santiago, M.V., 1046
Santiesteban, H., 361
Santini, S., 488
Santos, J.G., 803
Santosusso, T.M., 1081
Santry, L.J., 293, 331
Saporovskaya, M.B., 106, 108
Sapre, R., 290
Saracino, A., 885
Saraf, S.D., 494
Saraie, T., 933
Sarancha, V.N., 383
Sard, H., 1020
Sarda, P., 393
Sarel, S., 283, 679
Sarel-Imber, M., 283
Sarett, L.H., 1057
Sargent, G.D., 276, 280, 662
Sargent, M.V., 37, 57, 59, 991
Sarkanen, K.V., 509
Sarkice, A.Y., 224
Sarkis, G., 286
Sarma, J.C., 919
Sarner, S.F., 935
Sarre, O.Z., 1045
Sarthou, P., 325
Sartoré, G., 338
Sartori, G., 490, 493
Sartoris, N., 761
Sarussi, S.J., 1103
Sasaki, H., 1103
Sasaki, K., 833
Sasaki, M., 841
Sasaki, N., 434
Sasaki, N.A., 1113
Sasaki, S., 388, 409
Sasaki, T., 1031
Sasakura, K., 494, 497, 833
Sasaoka, M., 66
Sasatani, S., 1105
Sasson, S., 756
Sasson, Y., 380, 694
Sastry, K.A.R., 551, 552, 553
Sastry, K.U., 551
Sastry, V.V.S.K., 829
Satchell, D.P.N., 228, 290, 333, 341, 352, 358, 375, 487, 497, 537, 539, 546, 681, 682, 687, 690, 786
Satchell, R.S., 228, 290, 375, 524, 537, 539, 681, 786, 792
Sathe, S.S., 773
Sato, A., 1017
Sato, F., 397, 403, 434, 555, 652, 695, 715
Sato, H., 749
Sato, K., 1119
Sato, M., 397, 403, 408, 434, 555, 591, 652, 695, 715
Sato, N., 372, 393
Sato, S., 394, 695, 926
Sato, T., 397, 408, 435, 811, 817, 827, 832, 991, 1013, 1099, 1112
Sato, Y., 467
Satoh, J.Y., 289, 531
Satoh, T., 702, 815, 1099, 1116
Satterthwait, A.C., 376
Satti, A.M., 525
Saucy, G., 1030
Sauer, J., 404, 576, 587, 593, 743, 745, 749, 750, 751, 758, 768
Sauer, J.D., 395
Sauermann, D., 726
Sauermann, G., 157, 158
Saunders, D.G., 167
Saunders, M., 54, 143, 144, 274, 282, 285, 370, 943, 945, 947, 948, 952, 954, 1012, 1026
Saunders, W.H., Jr., 197, 313, 528, 874, 879, 880, 886, 887, 888, 890, 891, 892, 893, 902, 907, 924, 951, 984, 985, 1091
Saupe, T., 233
Saus, A., 1120
Sauvage, J.P., 78, 115, 1115
Sauve, D.M., 693, 702
Sauvetre, R., 296, 714
Savchenko, I.A., 433
Savéant, J., 583
Savedoff, L.G., 308
Savelli, G., 488
Savelova, V.A., 444, 445
Savel'yanov, V.P., 383
Savel'yanova, R.T., 383
Savenko, T.V., 735
Savenkov, N.F., 732
Savides, C., 638
Savige, W.E., 1087
Saville, B., 363, 573, 688
Savin, V.I., 88, 821
Savinykh, Yu.V., 304
Savitz, M.L., 1045
Savoia, D., 417, 569, 818
Sawa, Y., 431, 555, 718
Sawada, M., 175, 305
Sawada, S., 773
Sawai, H., 1089
Sawaki, Y., 498, 737, 991, 1063
Sawaya, H.S., 847
Sawdaye, R., 810
Sawinski, J., 509
Sawistowska, M.H., 699
Saxena, M.P., 1067
Saxton, R.G., 54
Sayce, I.G., 1050
Sayer, J.M., 785, 806
Sayigh, A., 258
Sayigh, A.A.R., 863, 934
Sayles, D.C., 399
Sayrac, T., 50
Sayre, L.M., 521
Sbarbati, N.E., 555
Scaiano, J.C., 214, 616, 956
Scalzi, F.V., 531
Scamehorn, R.G., 971
Scannon, P.J., 223
Scarborough, R.M., Jr., 361, 1080
Scardiglia, F., 298
Scettri, A., 726, 1057, 1086
Schaad, L.J., 37, 52, 71, 528
Schaaf, J.v.d., 715

Schaafsma, S.E., 146, 784
Schaap, A., 410, 738
Schaap, L.A., 709
Schaart, B.J., 560
Schachtschneider, J.H., 766
Schade, G., 847
Schädler, H.D., 933
Schadt, F.L., 278, 317
Schaefer, A.D., 376
Schaefer, F.C., 782, 792
Schaefer, H.F., III, 9, 45, 171, 175, 207
Schaefer, J.P., 44, 383, 438, 593, 627, 854, 1078
Schaefer, T., 74
Schaeffer, W.D., 85, 314
Schaer, B., 934
Schäfer, H., 654, 995, 1060
Schäfer, H.J., 622, 653, 747, 1080, 1081
Schafer, M.E., 581
Schäfer, U., 133, 939
Schäfer, W., 50, 767, 775, 1119, 1120
Schaffner, K., 500, 1042, 1043
Schaffrodt, H., 947
Schakel, M., 353, 1021
Schaleger, L.L., 331
Schaller, R., 441
Schallhorn, C.H., 1040
Schallner, O., 148
Schambach, R.A., 507
Schank, K., 357, 363, 440, 570
Schantl, J., 1026
Scharf, D.J., 773
Scharf, G., 510
Scharf, H., 749, 764
Schat, G., 160, 558
Schatz, B., 1029
Schaub, B., 845, 851, 852
Schaub, F., 716
Schauble, J.H., 694, 810
Schauder, J.R., 921
Schaumann, E., 763, 780, 869, 1031
Schaus, J.M., 542
Scheer, J.C., 899
Scheeren, J.W., 487, 794, 868
Scheffler, K., 165
Scheibye, S., 794
Scheidt, F., 289
Scheinbaum, M.L., 1019
Scheiner, P., 937
Scheinmann, F., 429, 1028
Scheithauer, S., 362
Schell, F.M., 424, 989
Schellenberg, K.A., 799
Schellenberger, H., 1064
Schellman, J.A., 120
Schenck, G.O., 635, 737
Schenk, H., 379
Schenk, W.N., 334
Schenker, E., 809
Schenker, K., 135
Schenkluhn, H., 776
Schepers, R.G., 1044
Schepp, H., 911
Scheppele, S.E., 200, 279, 280
Scherer, K.V., Jr., 1003
Scherer, P., 521
Scherowsky, G., 790
Scherrer, R.A., 592
Schertler, P., 133
Schetty, G., 963
Scheurer, P.G., 327
Schewene, C.B., 282
Schexnayder, D.A., 289
Schiavelli, M.D., 290, 297, 684
Schick, H., 325
Schiemenz, G.P., 118, 845, 848
Schiess, M., 871
Schiess, P.W., 926
Schijf, R., 487
Schildknecht, H., 1071
Schill, G., 80, 81, 93, 422, 429, 1114, 1115
Schilling, P., 491, 496, 624, 660
Schilling, W., 349
Schimelpfenig, C.W., 460
Schindbauer, H., 372
Schindler, S.R., 853
Schinke, U., 1036
Schinz, H., 442
Schipper, P., 277
Schipperijn, A.J., 766
Schippers, P.H., 109
Schissler, D.O., 696
Schittenhelm, D., 1084
Schlag, E.W., 172, 210
Schlatmann, J.L.M.A., 1017
Schlatter, M.J., 136
Schlegel, H.B., 154, 310
Schleker, W., 749
Schlenk, W., 158
Schlenk, W., Jr., 98, 105, 158
Schlessinger, R.H., 416, 422, 440, 694, 712, 718
Schleyer, P. von R., 14, 17, 50, 65, 73, 74, 133, 138, 141, 146, 148, 154, 157, 200, 235, 258, 262, 263, 266, 272, 274, 277, 278, 280–284, 297, 300, 304, 316, 317, 320, 514, 564, 569, 579, 616, 702, 767, 943, 945, 947, 949, 960, 961, 962, 1012, 1097, 1107
Schlicher, J.W., 816
Schlitt, R., 1030
Schlögl, K., 92, 106, 109
Schlögl, R., 48
Schlosberg, R.H., 143, 144, 312, 450, 523, 679
Schlosser, M., 157, 404, 545, 548, 549, 551, 557, 832, 845, 847, 849–852, 879
Schlubach, H.H., 729
Schlüter, K., 672
Schmeising, H.N., 29
Schmelzer, A., 130
Schmerling, L., 498, 708, 709, 731
Schmickler, H., 38
Schmid, G.H., 273, 275, 657, 661, 662, 671, 672
Schmid, H., 377, 756, 1014, 1023, 1024, 1028, 1029, 1031
Schmid, M., 1031
Schmid, P., 578
Schmidbaur, H., 140
Schmidlin, J., 716
Schmidt, A.H., 63, 389, 1010, 1108
Schmidt, C., 751
Schmidt, D., 1026
Schmidt, E.K.G., 771, 1021
Schmidt, E.W., 637
Schmidt, G., 1057
Schmidt, G.M.J., 59
Schmidt, H., 137, 662, 1080, 1081
Schmidt, H.M., 859
Schmidt, J., 134, 400
Schmidt, R., 391
Schmidt, R.E., 416
Schmidt, R.R., 54, 424
Schmidt, U., 349
Schmidt, W., 48, 52, 747, 755

Schmiedel, R., 50
Schmitt, E., 1098
Schmitt, H.J., 710
Schmittou, E.R., 328
Schmitz, E., 87, 685, 737, 742, 789, 1044
Schmitz, P.H., 418
Schmitz, R., 594, 716, 1103
Schmitz, R.F., 353, 745
Schmolke, B., 582, 1021
Schmuff, N.R., 415
Schnack, L.G., 304, 1011
Schneemeyer, L.F., 74
Schneider, A., 962
Schneider, D.R., 1011
Schneider, F., 162
Schneider, H., 126, 241, 283, 627, 661, 735
Schneider, J.A., 103
Schneider, K., 139, 1010
Schneider, M., 1057
Schneider, M.P., 1022
Schneider, S., 210, 678
Schneiders, C., 1026
Schnell, H., 165, 493
Schnell, H.W., 145
Schnettler, R.A., 858
Schnur, R.C., 387
Schnurpfeil, D., 662, 727
Schöbel, G., 844
Schoch, J., 1047
Schoeller, W.W., 769
Schoenberg, A., 555
Schoeneck, W., 600
Schofield, K., 452, 453, 456–459, 463, 464, 466, 468, 469, 989
Scholer, F.R., 768
Scholes, G., 1074
Scholl, P.C., 678, 1079
Scholl, T., 473
Schöllkopf, U., 102, 304, 424, 514, 768, 837, 840, 845, 847, 932, 993, 994, 995, 1011, 1012, 1033
Scholz, D., 536, 728
Schomaker, V., 53
Schönberg, A., 526, 666, 737, 764, 776, 866, 1111
Schonbrunn, A., 806
Schönleber, D., 1022
Schoofs, A.R., 289
Schoolenberg, J., 692
Schore, N.E., 868
Schors, A., 1063
Schossig, J., 994
Schotte, L., 530
Schoustra, B., 873
Schowen, K.B., 857
Schowen, R.L., 200, 201, 292, 340, 857, 859
Schrage, K., 697
Schräpler, U., 1114
Schrauzer, G.N., 774
Schreader, L., 393
Schreck, J.O., 170, 249
Schrecken, H., 651
Schreckenberg, M., 418
Schreiber, J., 354, 386, 802, 929, 1060
Schreiber, M.R., 891
Schreiber, S.L., 1067
Schreibmann, A.A.P., 1110
Schreifels, J.A., 692
Schriesheim, A., 145, 147, 224, 479, 493, 525, 599, 913, 914, 1065, 1087, 1092
Schrock, R.R., 826, 1038, 1039
Schröder, B., 1041
Schröder, F.A., 159
Schröder, G., 57, 59, 60, 61, 131, 1024, 1025, 1067, 1069
Schröder, M., 732
Schröder, R., 840, 932
Schroeck, C.W., 865, 866
Schroeder, G., 733, 885
Schroeter, S., 635
Schroll, G., 367, 693
Schroth, W., 39, 933
Schrott, W., 553
Schrumpf, G., 123, 410
Schuber, F.J., 157
Schubert, R.M., 394
Schubert, U., 140
Schubert, W.M., 65, 457, 477, 486, 506, 655, 662, 1073
Schue, F., 632
Schueller, K., 762
Schug, K., 924
Schug, R., 763
Schuijl, P.J.W., 1031
Schulenberg, J.W., 67, 1046
Schuler, R.H., 166, 167
Schulman, D.R., 783
Schulman, E.M., 783
Schulman, J.M., 133
Schulman, M.F., 702
Schulte, K., 52
Schulte, K.E., 688, 690
Schulte-Elte, K.H., 635
Schulte-Frohlinde, D., 215
Schultz, F., 506
Schultz, H.P., 442, 1052
Schultz, R.A., 77
Schulz, G., 832
Schulz, J.G.D., 1072
Schulz, L., 414
Schulz, M., 1054
Schulze, P.D., 173
Schulze, U., 106
Schumacher, E., 927
Schupp, O.E., III, 850
Schurig, V., 106, 109
Schurter, J.J., 91
Schüssler, H., 355, 372
Schuster, D.I., 1042, 1043, 1111
Schuster, G.B., 635
Schuster, I.I., 148
Schuster, P., 71
Schut, J., 653
Schütte, H., 304
Schwab, P.A., 737
Schwab, W., 1002
Schwartz, H.S., 354
Schwartz, J., 536, 707, 715, 723
Schwartz, J.L., 1031
Schwartz, L.H., 953
Schwartz, L.M., 231
Schwartz, M., 123
Schwartz, R.A., 545
Schwartz, R.H., 401
Schwartz, S., 222
Schwartz, S.J., 997
Schwartzman, L.H., 816
Schwartzman, S.M., 1082
Schwarz, H., 147, 325
Schwarz, J., 223, 1078
Schwarz, M.J., 857
Schwarz, S., 325
Schwarz, V., 725
Schwarz, W., 601, 869, 927
Schwarzenbach, D., 67
Schwarzenbach, K., 772
Schweig, A., 50, 52, 137
Schweikert, N., 1114
Schweinsberg, F., 613
Schweitzer, D., 60
Schweizer, E.E., 172, 768, 849, 909
Schweizer, T., 16

Schweizer, W.B., 123, 521
Schwellnus, K., 416
Schwendeman, R.H., 18, 20
Schwenker, R.P., 212
Schwetlick, K., 575, 639
Schwickardi, M., 707
Sciacovelli, O., 880
Scilly, N.F., 435, 817
Sclove, D.B., 973
Scolastico, C., 833
Scopes, P.M., 98
Scorrano, G., 223, 225, 331
Scott, A.C., 611
Scott, A.D., 256, 337
Scott, C.B., 309, 920
Scott, F.L., 146
Scott, J.A., 234, 235
Scott, J.M.W., 197, 266, 503
Scott, J.W., 102
Scott, J.W.M., 260
Scott, K.J., 891
Scott, K.W., 1037
Scott, L.T., 57, 61, 349, 1026
Scott, M.D., 931, 1096
Scott, M.K., 569
Scott, R.M., 994
Scott, S.L., 689
Scott, W.B., 134, 262, 400
Scott, W.J., 407
Scott, W.T., 973
Scouten, C.G., 704, 924
Screttas, C.G., 247, 545, 970
Scribner, R.M., 383, 808
Scrimgeour, C.M., 1030
Scriven, E.F.V., 176, 347, 469
Scully, F.E., Jr., 1083
Seaman, N.E., 293
Seapy, D.G., 383
Searle, C.E., 936
Searle, R., 34
Searle, R.J.G., 853
Sears, P.G., 236
Sebastian, J.F., 17
Sebastiani, G.V., 880, 881, 885, 895
Sechrest, R.C., 128
Secor, R.M., 107
Seddon, D., 1091
Sedelmeier, G., 767, 777
Sederholm, C.H., 125
Sedlmeier, J., 1084, 1085
Seebach, D., 102, 104, 133, 331, 418, 419, 421–424, 436, 440, 536, 560, 712, 714, 751, 817, 820, 836, 837, 871, 1106
Seeboth, H., 588, 592
Seekircher, R., 1072
Seeley, D.A., 756
Seeman, J.I., 241, 1008
Seetz, J.W.F.L., 558, 559
Sefcik, M.D., 523
Segall, Y., 694
Segi, M., 483
Seguin, R.P., 102
Seib, R.C., 280, 285, 882
Seibel, W.L., 378
Seibl, J., 258
Seide, S., 864
Seidel, B., 759
Seidel, C.F., 442
Seidel, W.C., 724
Seidl, P., 276
Seidner, R.T., 55, 694
Seiji, Y., 606
Seijo, E., 835
Seikaly, H.R., 682
Seip, H.M., 27, 119, 124
Seites, P.G., 387
Seitz, A.H., 582
Seitz, D.E., 839
Seitz, G., 50
Seitz, W., 87
Sekiguchi, A., 361
Sekiguchi, S., 577, 578
Sekiya, A., 552, 595
Sekiya, M., 799, 979
Selby, D.W., 289
Selig, H., 479
Selikson, S.J., 1109
Selimov, F.A., 710
Sellers, C., 603
Sellers, D.J., 104
Sellers, S.F., 1017, 1021
Sellmann, D., 699
Selman, C.M., 515
Selman, S., 970
Seltzer, R., 325
Seltzer, S., 750
Selva, A., 645
Selve, C., 367
Semenow, D., 314
Semenow, D.A., 581, 584
Semigran, M.J., 1112
Semmelhack, M.F., 400, 405, 406, 555, 596, 598, 694, 776, 920
Sen, S., 970
Senaratne, P.A., 744
Senatore, L., 443
Senders, J.R., 133, 775
Sendijarević, V., 264, 882
Seng, F., 774, 853
Sengupta, D., 569
Senkler, C.A., 297
Senn, M., 529
Senthilnathan, V.P., 170, 173
Senzaki, Y., 771
Sera, A., 880
Serelis, A.K., 674
Sergeev, G.B., 560, 662, 681
Sergeev, N.M., 126
Sergeeva, N.S., 575
Sergeeva, Z.I., 1106
Sergi, V., 331
Serguchev, Yu.A., 1074
Serjeant, E.P., 222, 229
Serratosa, F., 63, 339
Serravalle, M., 649
Serra-Zanetti, F., 930
Servis, K.L., 577, 751, 1003
Servoss, W.C., 822
Sesana, G., 645
Seshadri, S., 625
Sessions, R.B., 115
Seter, J., 277
Sethi, K., 843
Sethna, S., 485, 486
Seth-Paul, W.A., 246
Setiloane, B.P., 625
Seto, S., 1099, 1103
Setsune, J., 596
Setton, R., 529
Seubert, J., 1010
Seubold, F.H., Jr., 955
Seufert, W., 450
Seuring, B., 422
Seus, E.J., 850
Severin, T., 594, 716, 1103
Sevin, A., 640, 763, 962
Sevost'yanova, V.V., 624
Sevrin, M., 383
Seybold, G., 52, 582, 952
Seydel, R., 481
Seyden-Penne, J., 228, 714, 812, 816, 821, 843, 895
Seyferth, D., 173, 175, 390, 543, 544, 554, 557, 558, 769, 819, 846, 847
Seyler, J.K., 692
Sha, C., 822
Shaapuni, D.Kh., 393, 693

Shabana, R., 794
Shackelford, S.A., 725
Shaefer, C.G., 396
Shaeffer, W.D., 481
Shafer, J.A., 352
Shah, A.C., 372
Shah, S.K., 421, 926
Shahak, I., 380, 385, 941
Shaik, S., 751
Shain, S.A., 292
Shainyan, B.A., 69
Shakhidayatov, Kh., 524
Shakirov, M.M., 944, 945
Shalaev, V.K., 747, 1091
Shamma, M., 361
Shandala, M.Y., 1105
Shani, A., 56, 402
Shank, R.S., 772
Shanklin, J.R., 818, 839, 866
Shanmugam, P., 693
Shannon, P.J., 1099
Shannon, P.T., 215
Shapiro, B.L., 38
Shapiro, I.O., 152
Shapiro, P., 510
Shapiro, R.H., 911
Shapley, J.R., 766
Sharf, B., 210
Sharf, V.Z., 858
Sharma, M., 1019
Sharma, N.K., 839, 926
Sharma, R.K., 644
Sharma, R.P., 919, 920
Sharma, S.D., 433
Sharma, V.K., 1103
Sharnin, G.P., 584
Sharp, D.W.A., 148
Sharp, J.T., 641, 719
Sharp, K.G., 172
Sharp, R.L., 704, 705
Sharpless, K.B., 107, 325, 408, 535, 536, 626, 627, 628, 727, 733, 736, 738, 739, 740, 866, 913, 914, 919, 1057, 1058, 1078, 1080, 1085, 1086, 1112
Sharts, C.M., 327, 381, 382, 383, 385, 529, 574, 680, 725, 729, 758, 761, 769, 1061
Shatavsky, M., 274
Shatenshtein, A.I., 152, 157, 468, 525
Shatkina, T.N., 948
Shatskaya, V.A., 444
Shaw, A., 1012
Shaw, B.L., 355
Shaw, G.S., 1008
Shaw, I.M., 383
Shaw, J.E., 353, 589, 1077
Shaw, M.J., 479, 1061
Shchegolev, A.A., 943
Shchekut'eva, L.F., 980
Shea, K.J., 138, 612, 613, 679, 957, 1023, 1027
Shearer, G.O., 735
Shearer, H.M.M., 53
Shearing, D.J., 885
Sheats, G.F., 466
Sheats, J.E., 579, 603
Sheats, J.R., 434
Sheats, W.B., 1077
Shebaldova, A.D., 766, 1037
Shechter, H., 175, 398, 429, 445, 729, 739, 740, 772, 787, 911, 987, 1072, 1084
Sheehan, J.C., 372, 378, 379, 565
Sheffy, F.K., 406
Sheikh, H., 354
Sheikh, M.Y., 1058
Shein, S.M., 404, 591
Sheinker, Yu. N., 63
Shekhtman, N.M., 128
Sheldon, R.A., 628, 633, 654, 732, 736, 992, 1061, 1074, 1084
Sheldrick, G.M., 965
Sheldrick, W.S., 120
Shell, B., 1073
Shellhamer, D.F., 659
Shelton, J.R., 670, 801
Shemyakin, M.M., 44, 574, 845, 850, 1047
Shen, C., 1081
Shen, C.C.C., 155
Shen, J., 523, 540
Shen, K., 751, 1018
Shene, A.L., 903
Sheng, M.N., 1088
Sheng, S.J., 956
Shenhav, H., 671
Shepelavy, J.N., 536
Shepherd, J.P., 733
Shepherd, J.W., 638
Shepherd, R., 950
Shepherd, R.G., 584
Sheppard, H.C., 468
Sheppard, N., 28, 148
Sheppard, P.J., 461
Sheppard, R.C., 373
Sheppard, W.A., 327, 381, 382, 383, 385, 508, 529, 570, 598, 680, 725, 729, 769, 809, 1118
Sheradsky, T., 535, 985
Sherbine, J.P., 839
Sheridan, R.S., 124
Sherman, V.W., 656
Sherrington, D.C., 373
Sherrod, S.A., 200, 297
Sherry, A.D., 74
Sherry, J.J., 353, 1077
Sherwin, M.A., 1026
Shevchuk, V.U., 383
Shevelev, S.A., 324
Shevlin, P.B., 613, 899, 956
Shibanuma, T., 803, 934
Shibasaki, M., 357
Shibata, T., 131, 742
Shibuya, S., 1106
Shida, S., 542
Shieh, C.H., 869
Shieh, W., 768
Shields, T.C., 1021
Shigemura, K., 450
Shigetani, T., 29
Shih, C., 314
Shih, H., 769
Shih, J., 387
Shih, M., 991
Shih, N.C., 699
Shih, T.L., 833
Shih, Y., 486, 506
Shiley, R.H., 593
Shillaker, B., 267
Shilov, A.E., 404
Shim, S., 799
Shimada, S., 1013
Shimada, Y., 731
Shimamura, T., 367
Shimao, I., 1047
Shimizu, H., 817, 1116
Shimizu, I., 1055, 1075
Shimizu, M., 420, 832, 1086
Shimizu, N., 278
Shimizu, T., 368, 590, 1081
Shimizu, Y., 434
Shimoji, K., 423, 839
Shin, C., 70
Shin, J., 149
Shine, H.J., 170, 492, 498,

499, 501, 502, 503, 505, 603, 605, 607, 969, 1028, 1032, 1035, 1036, 1047
Shiner, C.S., 357
Shiner, V.J., 285
Shiner, V.J., Jr., 199, 200, 201, 263, 264, 265, 280, 286, 312, 318, 563, 813, 814, 874, 882, 887, 927
Shingaki, T., 536
Shingu, H., 265, 267, 303
Shingū, K., 91
Shinhama, K., 648
Shinkai, S., 215, 606
Shinkarenko, N.V., 634
Shinoda, H., 29
Shinoda, K., 1067
Shinozaki, H., 931
Shiobara, J., 590
Shioiri, T., 417, 430, 436, 554, 974, 976
Shiomi, K., 511
Shiono, M., 803, 934, 988, 999
Shippey, M.A., 920
Shirafuji, T., 399
Shirahama, H., 628
Shiraishi, S., 916
Shiraishi, T., 400
Shirley, D.A., 545
Shirley, R.L., 940
Shirokova, N.P., 987
Shirota, Y., 760
Shiroyama, M., 1063
Shizuka, H., 504
Shizume, Y., 780
Shlyapintokh, V.Ya., 634
Shoaf, C.J., 816
Shoemaker, M.J., 993
Shohamy, E., 885
Sholle, V.D., 164, 166
Shone, R.L., 200, 510
Shönleber, D., 771
Shono, T., 646, 841, 872, 926, 945
Shoosmith, J., 167, 173
Shoppee, C.W., 275, 676
Shore, N., 213
Shore, P.A., 628
Short, E.L., 506
Short, S.A., 888
Shorter, J., 242, 245, 247, 248, 249, 318, 803
Shortridge, R.W., 130
Shostakovskii, M.F., 346, 666, 684, 687
Shoulders, B.A., 1067
Shpan'ko, I.V., 290
Shpan'ko, L.V., 587
Shriner, R.H., 254
Shriner, R.L., 82, 84, 254
Shtamburg, V.G., 87
Shtark, A.A., 628
Shteingarts, V.D., 450, 628, 980
Shtern, V.Ya., 637
Shu, C., 302
Shubert, D.C., 402
Shubin, V.G., 943, 944, 945, 949, 951, 980
Shudo, K., 473
Shue, R.S., 643
Shuekhgeimer, G.A., 746
Shuford, R.J., 698
Shuikin, N.I., 481, 593, 708, 1053
Shulgin, A.T., 601
Shull, D.W., 914
Shulman, G.P., 900
Shulman, J.I., 423, 847, 852, 1031
Shulman, N., 587
Shul'pin, G.B., 44
Shults, R.H., 407
Shumaker, S.H., 988
Shumate, K.M., 1002
Shundo, T., 408
Shusherina, N.P., 747
Shushunov, V.A., 548, 549
Shutt, G.R., 258
Shvartsberg, M.S., 589, 640
Shvekhgeimer, G.A., 729
Shvets, V.F., 619
Shvets, V.I., 105
Shvo, Y., 686, 695
Sibelle, E.C., 485
Sicher, J., 129, 134, 135, 286, 314, 874, 877, 878, 879, 891, 893, 924
Sicre, J.E., 300
Siddall, J.B., 409, 716
Siddhanta, A.K., 67
Siddiquei, A.S., 461
Sidhu, R.S., 1034
Sidler, J.D., 995
Sidot, C., 597
Sieber, A., 932
Sieber, R., 1084
Sieber, W., 756, 857
Siebert, W., 45
Sieck, R., 381
Sieczkowski, J., 76
Siegbahn, P.M., 171
Siegel, E., 357
Siegel, H., 561, 722
Siegel, J., 139
Siegel, M.G., 105
Siegel, S., 697
Siegfried, B., 308, 337, 430, 642, 646, 648, 731, 1084
Siegfried, R., 281
Siegl, W.O., 430
Siegmann, R.H., 620
Siegrist, A.E., 838
Siehl, H., 147, 285
Siepmann, T., 320
Sievers, S., 106
Siew, L.C., 56
Sifniades, S., 638
Sigimoto, T., 758
Siklosi, M.P., 565
Sikorsky, P., 707
Silber, E., 751
Silber, P., 765
Silberman, L., 187
Silberman, R.G., 49
Silbermann, J., 561
Silbert, L.S., 352, 353, 357, 421, 441, 621, 638, 842
Silbey, R., 210
Sillion, B., 726, 939, 1084
Silveira, A., Jr., 420, 999
Silver, D.M., 751
Silver, M.S., 285, 889
Silver, S.M., 806
Silverman, S.B., 1097
Silversmith, E.F., 763
Silverstein, R.M., 117, 847
Silverthorn, W.E., 75, 76
Silverwood, H.A., 1053
Silvestri, M., 785
Silvestri, M.G., 408, 921
Sim, M., 1130
Simakhina, N.D., 478
Simamura, O., 646, 991, 1089
Simándi, L.I., 639, 733, 1088
Simandoux, J., 662
Simchen, G., 409
Sime, J.M., 222
Simig, G., 262
Simmons, H.D., Jr., 769
Simmons, H.E., 27, 56, 112, 115, 321, 536, 581, 759, 763, 772, 773, 1070

Simmons, K.A., 108
Simmons, M.C., 174, 544
Simmons, T.C., 653
Simms, J.A., 666
Simon, H., 197, 886, 909
Simon, J.A., 861
Simon, J.D., 265
Simon, W., 105
Simonetta, M., 9, 19, 56, 58, 61, 577, 751
Simonov, A.M., 600
Simons, J.H., 808
Simpkins, N., 839
Simpson, C.C., 461
Simpson, C.F., 461
Simpson, G.W., 882
Simpson, J.M., 1021
Sims, J.J., 1076
Sims, L.B., 886, 898
Sims, L.L., 676
Simson, J.M., 536
Sinclair, J.A., 651, 718, 1001
Sineokov, A.P., 744
Singaram, B., 705, 1096
Singaram, S., 707, 788, 1096
Singer, H., 710
Singer, L.A., 868
Singer, M.S., 822
Singer, S.P., 535, 740, 913, 1033
Singh, A., 362, 406
Singh, B.B., 785
Singh, B.P., 334, 956, 1108
Singh, G., 769, 847
Singh, H.K., 539, 638
Singh, J., 834
Singh, K., 343
Singh, P.R., 391, 404, 602, 648
Singh, S., 74, 436
Singh, S.P., 562, 963
Singh, T., 834
Singh, V., 537
Singhal, G.H., 902
Singleton, D.M., 400, 899
Singleton, V.D., Jr., 409, 924
Sinke, G.C., 22
Sinn, H., 726
Sinnige, H.J., 676
Sinnott, M.L., 312, 315
Sinnreich, J., 728
Sinou, D., 1037
Sinoway, L., 401
Šipoš, F., 314
Sipos, G., 844
Sirna, A., 1054
Sirokmán, F., 844
Široký, M., 430
Sisti, A.J., 302, 509, 661, 726, 965, 966, 990
Sitzmann, M.E., 1087
Sivakamasundari, S., 792
Sivaram, S., 403, 788
Sivasankaran, K., 693
Sixma, F.L.J., 483, 506, 899, 1067
Sjöberg, B., 342, 793
Sjöberg, K., 320, 342, 793
Sjöström, M., 242, 244
Skattebøl, L., 770, 1089
Skell, P.S., 171, 172, 246, 285, 313, 314, 560, 612, 613, 619, 625, 667, 676, 679, 724, 770, 771, 883, 896, 898, 903, 947, 953, 957, 966, 1091
Skelton, B.W., 345
Skinner, G.A., 458
Skinner, H.A., 22
Sklarz, B., 1051, 1063
Skobeleva, S.E., 72
Skoglund, M.J., 524
Skolnik, H., 1121
Skonieczny, S., 312
Skorcz, J.A., 596
Skorna, G., 934
Skorobogatova, E.V., 792
Skotnicki, J., 799
Skovronek, H., 379
Skrabal, P., 452
Skrypnik, Yu.G., 443
Skvarchenko, V.R., 747, 1054
Slack, D.A., 513
Slade, J., 106
Sladkov, A.M., 595
Sladkova, T.A., 815
Slae, S., 884
Slagle, J.D., 383
Slama, F.J., 271, 312
Slater, C.D., 1030
Slaugh, L.H., 404, 656, 955, 956, 957
Slayden, S.W., 550, 1001
Slaymaker, S.C., 173
Sleezer, P.D., 520
Slegeir, W., 1011
Sleiter, G., 450
Sliam, E., 1080
Slinckx, G., 1012
Sliwinski, W.F., 304, 1012
Slocum, D.W., 151, 546
Slopianka, M., 322
Slotin, L., 116
Ślusarska, E., 378
Slutsky, J., 935
Smadja, S., 1031
Smadja, W., 675
Small, A., 1020
Small, L.E., 235, 565
Small, P.A., 467
Small, V.R., Jr., 354
Smalley, R.K., 984
Smart, B.E., 477, 621
Smat, R.J., 874
Šmejkal, J., 373
Smentowski, F.J., 574, 962
Smick, D., 1091
Smid, J., 155
Smidt, J., 222, 1084, 1085
Smiles, S., 607
Smiley, R.A., 324, 429
Smirnov, V.V., 662, 681
Smirnyagin, V.A., 729
Smissman, E.E., 857, 858, 897, 973
Smit, P.J., 648
Smit, W.A., 661
Smith, A.B., III, 329, 361, 765, 1080
Smith, A.S., 434
Smith, B., 1061
Smith, B.H., 92
Smith, B.V., 153
Smith, C., 1033
Smith, C.D., 549, 995
Smith, C.P., 845, 849
Smith, C.R., 222, 294
Smith, C.V., 622
Smith, D.F., 565, 819
Smith, D.G., 396
Smith, D.H., 101
Smith, D.J.H., 396, 721, 849, 926
Smith, D.M., 59, 648
Smith, E.H., 941
Smith, E.M., 425, 542
Smith, F.R., 597
Smith, G., 1034
Smith, G.D., 878
Smith, G.G., 563, 896, 899, 900, 935, 1021, 1028
Smith, G.V., 697, 698
Smith, H.L., 983

Smith, H.M., 120
Smith, J.A., 722
Smith, J.A.S., 488
Smith, J.D., 1136
Smith, J.G., 889
Smith, J.K., 419
Smith, J.S., 874
Smith, J.W., 73, 232
Smith, K., 321, 362, 551, 651, 704, 837, 997, 998, 999, 1001, 1099
Smith, L.A., 578
Smith, L.C., 1045
Smith, L.M., Jr., 616
Smith, L.R., 379
Smith, M., 349, 700
Smith, M.B., 159, 160
Smith, M.L., 874, 887
Smith, M.R., 272
Smith, N.P., 768
Smith, P.A.S., 177, 492, 554, 572, 602, 936, 965, 982, 984, 985, 986, 987, 988, 990, 991, 1133
Smith, P.J., 426, 886, 887
Smith, R.A., 532
Smith, R.A.J., 716
Smith, R.D., 772, 773
Smith, R.F., 931, 977
Smith, R.G., 165, 396, 415, 923
Smith, R.K., 106
Smith, R.N.M., 522
Smith, R.R., 1038
Smith, R.S., 402, 778, 817
Smith, S., 264, 265
Smith, S.G., 308, 317, 325, 716, 820, 821, 882, 888
Smith, T.N., 690
Smith, W.B., 654
Smith, W.C., 808
Smith, W.E., 490, 967
Smith, W.N., 429, 1045
Smith, W.N., Jr., 559
Smith-Palmer, T., 478, 729
Smithen, C.E., 772
Smithers, R.H., 847
Smolina, T.A., 953, 980
Smolinsky, G., 35, 176, 536, 935, 1017
Smoot, C.R., 483
Smoot, J., 1110
Smushkevich, Yu.I., 1075
Smuszkovicz, J., 798
Smyth, T., 344
Smyth, T.A., 1073
Smyth-King, R.J., 415
Snatzke, G., 120
Sneeden, R.P.A., 723, 826
Sneen, R.A., 266, 267, 337, 632, 882
Snell, R.L., 294, 765
Snider, B.B., 711, 858, 1033, 1056
Snieckus, V., 545, 553, 711, 714
Snitman, D.L., 833
Snoble, K.A.J., 716, 849
Snook, M.E., 1060
Snow, J.T., 9, 1000, 1001
Snow, R.A., 64
Snyckers, F., 450
Snyder, C.H., 651
Snyder, E.I., 278, 383, 384, 695, 699, 880
Snyder, E.S., 426
Snyder, G.A., 140
Snyder, H.R., 486, 588, 988
Snyder, J.P., 37, 1092, 1110
Snyder, L.C., 274
Snyder, R.C., Jr., 283
So, Y.H., 498
Soai, K., 378, 380, 712, 817, 1101
Sobczak, R.L., 57
Sobel, H., 309
Soccolini, F., 844
Socha, J., 338
Soderquist, J.A., 704
Sodeyama, T., 933
Sōfuku, S., 347
Sogah, G.D.Y., 105
Sohn, E., 485
Soja, P., 536
Sojka, S.A., 736
Sokolenko, V.I., 510
Sokolov, V.I., 86, 136, 685, 861
Solash, J., 287, 314
Soler, A., 807
Solladié, G., 299, 382, 413, 720, 947
Solladié-Cavallo, A., 483
Sollenberger, P.Y., 786, 806
Solly, R.K., 613, 1017
Solomon, J.J., 282
Solomon, M.D., 1105
Solomon, S., 1089
Soloveichik, S., 1048
Solov'yanov, A.A., 151, 155, 308
Solsky, R.L., 885
Solter, L.E., 545
Soman, R., 1066
Somayajulu, G.R., 19, 29
Sombroek, J., 58, 59
Sommer, H.Z., 365
Sommer, J., 142, 222, 311, 487, 540, 951
Sommer, J.M., 632
Sommer, L.H., 264, 404
Sommers, A.H., 412
Sondengam, B.L., 694, 695, 800
Sondheimer, F., 37, 55–59, 61, 62, 639
Sone, T., 606
Song, I.H., 1075
Songstad, J., 228, 302, 309, 325
Sonnenberg, F.M., 877
Sonnet, P.E., 215, 385, 919, 920, 921, 923, 924
Sonnichsen, G., 200, 223
Sonoda, A., 289, 391, 394, 408, 651
Sonoda, N., 536, 575, 597, 694, 819, 1055
Sonoda, S., 1088
Sonoda, T., 322
Sonogashira, K., 433
Sonola, O.O., 1105
Sonveaux, E., 115
Soong, L.T., 695
Sordo, T., 674
Sorensen, T.S., 144, 146, 148, 319, 945, 966
Šorm, F., 508
Sorokin, V.D., 727
Sorokin, V.I., 662, 1032
Sorokina, L.P., 397, 1119
Sorrell, T.N., 396
Sorrenti, P., 836
Sorriso, S., 570
Sosnovsky, G., 472, 620, 621, 628, 629, 634–637, 639, 654, 666, 680, 687, 719, 728, 729, 731, 739, 806, 930, 940, 1044
Souček, J., 707
Soulen, R.L., 55
Souma, Y., 432

Soumillion, J.P., 619
Souppe, J., 1111
Sousa, J.A., 1066
Sousa, L.R., 105, 1042
South, J.A., 590
Southwick, P.L., 979, 1033
Souto-Bachiller, F.A., 51
Sowerby, R.L., 420
Sowinski, A.F., 622, 725
Sozzani, P., 1101
Spaar, R., 297
Spackman, I.H., 886
Spaeth, E.C., 481
Spalding, T.R., 516
Spanget-Larsen, J., 46
Spangler, C.W., 1008, 1014, 1018
Sparapany, J.J., 886
Spassky, A., 433
Spear, R.J., 144, 279, 280, 285, 450
Speck, D.H., 77
Spector, M.L., 575
Spehar, A., 390
Speier, J.L., 707
Speiser, S., 573
Speizman, D., 309
Spek, A.L., 160
Speltz, L.M., 1058
Spencer, A., 643
Spencer, B., 311
Spencer, J.L., 776
Spenser, I.D., 932
Speranza, M., 258
Speth, D.R., 627
Speziale, A.J., 379, 383, 844, 849
Spialter, L., 364, 800
Spiegler, L., 725
Spietschka, E., 975
Spiewak, J.W., 922
Spillett, M.J., 887
Spillett, R.E., 461
Spillner, C.J., 146
Spinelli, D., 578
Spinicelli, L.F., 638, 787
Spirin, Yu.L., 618
Spitzer, R., 129
Spitzer, U.A., 627, 1058, 1071
Spitzin, V.I., 901
Spohn, R.J., 554
Spokes, G.N., 581
Spratt, R., 87
Sprecher, M., 258, 398, 861
Sprecher, R.F., 44
Spring, F.S., 961
Springer, W.R., 971
Sprügel, W., 1082
Sprung, M.M., 501
Spryskov, A.A., 443, 456, 473
Spurlock, S., 1076
Squillacote, M., 124
Squire, R.H., 1047
Sreinbach, R., 403
Sridharan, S., 303, 882, 888
Srinivasan, C., 1090
Srinivasan, M., 1069
Srinivasan, N.S., 1086, 1088
Srinivasan, P.S., 829
Srinivasan, R., 133, 227, 763, 938
Srivastava, P.C., 552
Srivastava, S., 404
Srivstava, R.C., 869
Staab, H.A., 60, 165, 233, 339, 487, 660, 662, 663
Stabba, R., 710
Stabinsky, Y., 1034
Stacey, F.W., 666, 680, 687, 725, 728, 739
Stacey, M., 621
Stackhouse, J., 86
Staemmler, V., 51
Stahl, D., 147
Stahl, R.E., 92
Stahl-Larivière, H., 99
Stahly, B.C., 599
Stahly, G.P., 599
Staib, R.R., 747
Stairs, R.A., 1079, 1080
Stakem, F.G., 643
Staklis, A., 983
Staley, R.H., 148, 234, 282
Staley, S.W., 55, 61, 131, 151, 155, 702, 776, 1027
Stalick, W.M., 524, 525, 689, 709, 1053, 1072
Stals, J., 18
Stam, C.H., 304
Stamhuis, E.J., 786
Stammann, G., 662
Stanbury, P., 761, 762
Standring, D.N., 1106
Stang, P.J., 147, 172, 296, 297, 312, 480, 579, 663, 675
Stange, A., 393
Stangeland, L.J., 325
Stanley, J.H., 656
Stanley, J.P., 614, 616, 1035
Stanley, J.W., 856
Stapp, P.R., 1119
Staral, J., 271
Staral, J.S., 45, 50, 285, 450
Starcher, P.S., 735
Starer, I., 285, 903, 947, 953
Staring, E.G.J., 867
Stark, B.P., 930, 937, 938, 940
Stark, H., 102
Stark, T.J., 899
Starks, C.M., 320, 321, 343, 353, 382, 416, 429, 543, 769, 844, 845
Starnes, W.H., Jr., 1074
Staros, J.V., 1009
Staroscik, J., 289
Starr, L.D., 593
Staschewski, D., 1096
Staskun, B., 816
Staude, E., 311
Stauffer, R.D., 694, 920
Staum, M.M., 946
Stavber, S., 479
Stears, N.D., 452
Stec, W.J., 848
Steckel, T.F., 925
Steckhan, E., 400
Stedman, D.E., 14
Steele, F., 69
Steele, R.B., 818, 826
Steele, W.V., 114
Stefani, A., 616, 722
Stefanović, D., 1108
Stegel, F., 450, 577
Stegemann, J., 46
Stegemeyer, H., 91
Steglich, W., 347, 350, 832
Stéhelin, L., 286
Stein, A.R., 266, 870
Stein, K., 1016
Stein, M., 165
Stein, R.L., 560
Steinbach, G., 1034
Steinbach, R., 403, 408, 817
Steinbeck, K., 543, 561
Steinberg, H., 146, 304, 506, 784, 1117
Steiner, G., 763
Steiner, P.R., 565
Steiner, R.P., 1002, 1009
Steinheimer, T.R., 573
Steinmetz, A., 1071
Steinmetz, R., 764, 868

Steinwand, P.J., 779
Steliou, K., 349, 794
Stella, L., 1044
Stelter, E.D., 452
Stemke, J.E., 911
Stenberg, V.I., 500, 504
Stensiö, K., 1057
Stepanov, N.F., 681
Stephan, E., 266
Stephan, E.A., 61
Stephan, W., 917
Stephanou, E., 377
Stephens, J.R., 567
Stephens, R., 382
Stephens, R.D., 595, 693
Stephenson, B., 299, 382
Stephenson, L.M., 627, 635, 711, 776, 858
Stepukhovich, A.D., 955
Sterk, H., 762
Sterling, J.J., 401, 713
Stermitz, L.F., 1012
Stern, A., 510
Stern, E.W., 575
Sternbach, D.D., 378, 420, 815
Sternberg, H.W., 721
Sternhell, S., 594, 644
Sternson, L.A., 573
Stetter, H., 418, 561, 566, 718, 860
Stevens, A.E., 1039
Stevens, B., 320
Stevens, C.L., 287, 690, 902, 924, 968
Stevens, I.D.R., 308, 763, 768, 888, 1009
Stevens, J.B., 225, 341
Stevens, K.D., 662
Stevens, M.F.G., 573
Stevens, R.M., 379
Stevens, R.R., 907, 911
Stevens, R.V., 191, 1057, 1058
Stevens, R.W., 833
Stevens, T.E., 573, 725, 1047, 1061
Stevens, T.S., 501, 605, 607, 911, 942, 984, 992, 993, 995
Stevens, W., 347, 487
Stevenson, D.P., 696
Stevenson, G.R., 62
Stevenson, R., 961
Stewart, A.T., 1119
Stewart, D., 1083
Stewart, E.T., 4
Stewart, F.H.C., 63
Stewart, J.M., 373
Stewart, R., 14, 222, 223, 227, 627, 1049, 1059, 1060, 1064
Stewart, R.W., 478
Stick, R.V., 383
Stigliani, W.M., 136
Stiles, A.W., 398
Stiles, M., 509, 581, 582, 747, 842, 951
Stiles, P.J., 77, 99
Still, I.W.J., 1108
Still, W.C., 103, 414, 817, 1033
Stille, J.K., 406, 431, 434, 676, 693, 722, 737, 779, 877, 918
Stille, J.R., 832
Stillings, M.R., 749
Stimson, V.R., 526
Stinson, S.R., 1093
Stirling, C.J.M., 86, 88, 185, 298, 311, 414, 417, 420, 689, 874, 884, 885, 893, 895, 1034
Stivers, E.C., 528
Stobie, A., 1063
Stock, L.M., 16, 235, 303, 452, 453, 457, 462, 464, 482
Stöckel, K., 62
Stöckigt, J., 845
Stöcklin, G., 602
Stockmann, H., 749
Stockton, J.D., 761
Stocky, T.P., 1099
Stoddart, I.K., 613
Stoddart, J.F., 77, 105
Stodola, F.H., 341
Stoffer, J.O., 286
Stofko, J.J., Jr., 954, 1022
Stohrer, W., 289, 927
Stoicheff, B.P., 19, 28
Stojanac, N., 749
Stojanac, Ž., 749
Stojiljković, A., 1061
Stoll, A.T., 433
Stoll, M., 442
Stolle, W.T., 841
Stolow, A., 154
Stolow, R.D., 125, 127
Stone, F.G.A., 46, 776
Stone, J.A., 751
Stone, J.M.R., 129
Stone, R.M., 244
Stoneberg, R.L., 396
Stoos, F., 1053
Storesund, H.J., 947, 961
Stork, G., 289, 382, 406, 417–420, 423, 540, 541, 542, 719, 732, 832, 834
Stork, P.J., 349
Storr, R.C., 751, 758, 1003
Story, P.R., 64, 274, 637, 924, 940, 941, 1068, 1069, 1070
Stothers, J.B., 155, 199, 958, 971
Stotskii, A.A., 469
Stott, P.E., 77
Stotter, P.L., 531
Stotz, D.S., 325
Stoughton, R.W., 90
Stout, R., 509, 1077
Stoute, V., 991
Stowell, J.C., 151, 399, 711, 829, 1040
Stoye, D., 370
Strachan, A.N., 466
Strachan, W.M.J., 1047, 1066
Strachan, W.S., 961
Strand, J.W., 365, 369, 472, 725
Strandberg, R., 104
Stratford, M.J.W., 1081
Strating, J., 660, 1114
Strauss, H.L., 125
Strauss, M.J., 577
Strauss, U., 22
Strausz, O.P., 173, 737, 761, 975, 976
Strawn, K.G., 1087
Streib, H., 605
Streicher, H., 149
Streith, J., 807
Streitwieser, A., Jr., 3, 18, 24, 27, 39, 85, 151, 155, 156, 200, 219, 223, 255, 258, 264, 268, 299, 300, 301, 314, 317, 468, 481, 506, 547, 579
Strickland, D.K., 669
Striepe, W., 731
Strijtveen, B., 353
Stringer, O.D., 1089
Stroh, R., 481
Strohmeier, W., 692, 722
Stromquist, P., 1108
Strömqvist, M., 798
Stroud, M.A., 461

Stroud, S.G., 627, 1071
Strozier, R.W., 64, 671, 749
Strunin, B.N., 917
Strzalko-Bottin, T., 816
Stuart, R.S., 524
Stubbs, C.A., 1058
Stubbs, M.E., 1026
Stuber, F.A., 1077
Stuckwisch, C.G., 743
Stucky, G., 159, 160
Studzinskii, O.P., 313
Stühler, G., 109
Stull, D.R., 22
Sturaro, A., 331
Sturm, E., 57
Sturmer, D., 275
Stutchbury, J.E., 792
Su, A.C.L., 710
Su, B.M., 157
Su, J., 1070
Su, S.C.K., 352
Su, T.M., 304, 1012
Suau, R., 1112
Subba Rao, B.C., 396, 812, 1110
Subba Rao, G., 700
Subbaraman, J., 310
Subbaraman, L.R., 310
Subbotin, O.A., 126, 244
Subrahmanyam, C., 1001, 1002
Subramanian, L.R., 147, 296, 297, 312, 579, 663, 675
Subramanian, R., 383, 417
Suchanek, P., 833
Suchkov, V.V., 383
Suda, M., 46, 51, 847
Sudo, R., 367
Sudo, T., 817
Sudweeks, W.B., 838
Suehiro, T., 616
Suemitsu, R., 431, 555, 693
Suenram, R.D., 1070
Suga, S., 433, 483
Suga, T., 1077
Sugahara, H., 1011
Sugasawa, S., 254, 933
Sugasawa, T., 491, 494, 497, 833
Sugden, J.K., 785, 1105
Sugden, S., 303
Suggs, J.W., 656, 723, 1057
Sugimoto, K., 695, 921
Sugimoto, M., 1077
Sugimoto, T., 490, 532
Sugino, E., 1106
Suginome, H., 403, 989
Sugita, T., 478, 483, 879
Sugiura, F., 490
Sugiyama, H., 1099, 1103
Sukumaran, K.B., 1003
Sullivan, A.B., 1092
Sullivan, D.F., 824, 839, 1055
Sullivan, G.R., 38, 108
Sullivan, P.J., 163
Sullivan, R.J., 478
Sultanbawa, M.U.S., 929
Sulzbach, R.A., 981
Sumi, S., 1058
Sumiejski, J., 574
Suminov, S.I., 689
Sumitani, K., 403
Summerhays, K.D., 235
Summers, B., 617
Summers, S.T., 1098
Summerville, R.H., 297
Sumoto, K., 865
Sumrell, G., 724
Sun, S.F., 787
Sunay, U., 361
Sundaralingam, M., 148
Sundaraman, P., 1084
Sundberg, J.E., 596
Sundberg, R.J., 1032
Šunjić, V., 366, 693, 796
Sunkel, J., 1130, 1131
Sunko, D.E., 199, 200, 286
Suppan, P., 1112
Surmina, L.S., 414
Surridge, J.H., 478, 725
Surville, R. de, 1086
Surzur, J., 399, 667, 956, 1060
Suschitzky, H., 598, 602, 603, 803, 1052, 1062
Sushko, T.P., 975
Süss, H.U., 46
Sussman, S., 733
Sustmann, R., 744, 749, 750, 751, 947
Susz, P.B., 486
Suter, A.K., 777
Suter, C., 1016
Sutherland, I.O., 105, 993, 1033, 1100
Sutherland, J.K., 710
Sutherland, R.G., 176
Sutthivaiyakit, S., 367, 1084
Suttle, N.A., 443
Sutton, L.E., 27
Suvorov, N.N., 1075
Suyama, S., 1090
Suzui, A., 1069
Suzuki, A., 403, 434, 481, 551, 554, 555, 616, 680, 717, 718, 995, 997, 999, 1001, 1002
Suzuki, H., 372, 391, 393, 468, 495, 509, 590, 596, 844, 920, 1097, 1116
Suzuki, K., 817, 979, 1011, 1083
Suzuki, M., 394, 422, 713, 791, 832, 904, 964
Suzuki, S., 200, 785, 815, 839, 1099, 1116
Suzuki, T., 713
Suzuki, Y., 1099
Svadkovskaya, G.E., 653
Svanholm, U., 1030
Svensson, T., 952
Sveshnikova, E.B., 212
Svetlakov, N.V., 380, 382
Sviridov, A.F., 435
Svoboda, J.J., 144, 146, 147, 312
Svoboda, M., 135, 878, 880, 891, 909, 924
Swain, C.G., 201, 237, 248, 309, 343, 478, 528, 564, 579, 603, 1118, 1119
Swain, M.S., 248
Swamer, F.W., 437
Swaminathan, K., 837, 984
Swaminathan, S., 290, 568
Swan, G.A., 567
Swan, J.M., 363
Swann, B.P., 1072
Swansborough, K.F., 1051
Swanson, J.C., 880
Swanson, S.B., 589
Swanwick, M.G., 1103
Swart, E.R., 267
Swartz, J.E., 583
Swartz, W.E., Jr., 692
Sweany, R.L., 699
Sweat, F.W., 1081
Swedlund, B.E., 255, 477, 729, 730
Swedo, R.J., 1060
Sweeney, A., 289
Sweeney, W.A., 65, 486
Sweet, J., 266
Sweetman, B.J., 795

Swensen, W.E., 847
Swerdloff, M.D., 1066
Swern, D., 357, 629, 662, 730, 735, 1081, 1082, 1090
Swett, L.R., 412
Swierczewski, G., 408, 715
Swinborne-Sheldrake, R., 40
Swinbourne, E.S., 896
Swindell, C.S., 410
Swindell, R.T., 275
Swisher, J.V., 922
Switzer, F., 304
Sy, A.O., 983
Symes, T.J., 710
Symons, M.C.R., 65, 72, 162, 166, 260, 415, 613
Synerholm, M.E., 258, 1031
Syper, L., 1077, 1079
Syriopoulos, G.T., 408
Syrkin, Ya. K., 13
Szabo, A.L., 336
Szabo, W.A., 869
Szabó, Z.G., 192
Szarek, W.A., 128
Szczygielska-Nowosielska, A., 349
Szeimies, G., 138, 284, 630
Szele, I., 200, 450, 471, 579, 580, 601
Szilágyi, G., 378
Szilagyi, P., 146
Szilagyi, S., 331
Szkrybalo, W., 133
Szmant, H.H., 1096, 1098
Szmuszkovicz, J., 354, 540, 541, 759, 1054
Szucs, S.S., 715
Szwarc, H., 995
Szwarc, M., 142, 169
Szymoniak, J., 858

Taafee, T.A., 861
Taagepera, M., 234, 235, 750
Tabata, A., 725, 734
Tabata, M., 554, 651
Tabata, T., 989
Taber, D.F., 745
Taber, T.R., 833
Tabuchi, H., 499, 503
Tabushi, I., 62, 77, 529, 543, 621, 735, 1088
Tacconi, G., 747
Tada, M., 515
Tadanier, J., 949
Tadros, W., 978, 1117
Taeger, E., 559
Taffer, I.M., 326, 394
Taft, R.W., 72, 146, 149, 229, 232, 234, 235, 244, 246, 247, 318, 320, 330, 339, 662
Tagaki, W., 563
Tagliavini, E., 569
Taguchi, H., 819, 839, 928
Taguchi, K., 798
Taguchi, T., 378, 1092
Tai, A., 82, 102
Tai, J.J., 285
Tai, W.T., 974
Taillades, J., 856
Taillefer, R.J., 294, 1060
Taira, S., 710
Tait, S.J.D., 1058
Tait, T.A., 837
Tajima, K., 355
Tajima, M., 931
Takabe, K., 1083
Takada, S., 275
Takagaki, T., 391
Takagi, K., 381, 400, 433, 595, 598
Takagi, M., 795
Takagi, W., 443
Takagi, Y., 573
Takahashi, H., 423, 1031, 1072, 1105
Takahashi, J., 888
Takahashi, K., 690, 1061, 1092
Takahashi, M., 403
Takahashi, N., 543, 710
Takahashi, S., 1101
Takahashi, T., 741
Takahashi, T.T., 289
Takahashi, Y., 481
Takai, K., 818, 1058
Takaishi, N., 627, 962
Takakis, I.M., 276
Takakis, J.M., 681
Takaku, M., 483, 773
Takamura, N., 571
Takano, S., 394
Takano, Y., 1105
Takaoka, T., 933
Takasaki, K., 327
Takashima, K., 337
Takasu, K., 731
Takata, T., 1087, 1090
Takaya, H., 106, 766
Takayanagi, H., 924, 1072
Takebayashi, M., 536
Takebe, N., 575
Takeda, K., 804
Takeda, M., 384, 716
Takeda, T., 363
Takegami, Y., 397, 433, 478, 799, 1119
Takehira, Y., 400
Takei, H., 409, 411, 434, 435, 788, 1033
Takenaka, Y., 422
Takeoka, Y., 73
Takeshima, T., 794
Takeshita, T., 235, 621, 877
Takeuchi, H., 165
Takeuchi, K., 265, 281, 282, 302, 771, 1026
Takeuchi, Y., 21, 698
Takigawa, T., 422
Takiguchi, H., 625
Takimoto, S., 350
Takino, T., 276
Takizawa, T., 1089
Takken, H.J., 911
Talbot, R.J.E., 290, 333, 339
Talbott, R., 506
Talley, J.J., 302
Talley, P., 552
Tam, W.W., 1058
Tamagaki, S., 1038
Tamagawa, K., 27
Tamao, K., 403, 598
Tamaru, Y., 431, 638, 1075
Tamborra, P., 185
Tamborski, C., 560, 595
Tamburin, H.J., 1021
Tambuté, A., 715
Tamura, K., 964
Tamura, M., 402, 404, 651
Tamura, R., 396, 412, 594, 923
Tamura, S., 199
Tamura, Y., 364, 553, 865
Tan, L.K., 487
Tan, L.Y., 167
Tan, S.L., 294, 625
Tanabe, K., 372
Tanabe, M., 391, 929
Tanaka, C., 392
Tanaka, I., 504
Tanaka, J., 577, 907
Tanaka, K., 105, 308, 353, 840, 867, 916
Tanaka, M., 441, 555, 597, 799
Tanaka, N., 200, 303

Tanaka, R., 666
Tanaka, S., 860, 904, 919, 1089, 1092
Tanaka, T., 388, 682, 717
Tanaka, Y., 865, 1106
Tancrede, J., 921
Tang, C.S., 806
Tang, D.Y.H., 167, 957
Tang, F.Y., 616
Tang, P.W., 716
Tang, R., 1034
Tang, R.H., 616
Tang, R.T., 637
Tang, Y.S., 67
Tangari, N., 818
Tanguy, G., 433
Tani, H., 393
Tani, J., 372
Tanida, H., 276, 278, 280, 887
Tanigawa, Y., 289, 367, 407, 408, 636
Taniguchi, H., 297, 483, 491, 643, 917
Taniguchi, M., 483
Taniguchi, R., 485
Taniguchi, Y., 59
Tanikaga, R., 412
Tanimoto, M., 773
Tanimoto, S., 490, 872, 920
Tanimoto, Y., 811
Tanio, M., 364
Taniuchi, M., 781
Tanna, C.H., 1016
Tanner, D., 62
Tanner, D.D., 396, 613, 621, 625, 626, 725, 956
Tanzella, D.J., 1030
Tao, E.V.P., 686
Tao, Y., 880
Tapuhi, E., 67, 223, 530
Tapuhi, Y., 107
Tarakanova, A.V., 1020
Tarama, K., 430, 692, 695
Tarao, R., 511
Tarbell, D.S., 456, 501, 1092
Tarbin, J.A., 1087
Tarchini, C., 849, 850
Tarhouni, R., 561
Tarino, J.Z., 649
Tarrant, P., 758
Tarratt, H.J.F., 962
Tartakovskii, V.A., 815, 1103
Tarygina, L.K., 593
Taschner, E., 386
Taschner, M.J., 1100
Tashiro, M., 215, 505, 510
Tatchell, A.R., 1105
Tate, D.P., 653
Taticchi, A., 42
Tatlow, J.C., 382, 620, 621, 725
Taub, B., 624
Taube, H., 788
Taurins, A., 803
Tautou, H., 354
Tavares, D.F., 844
Tawara, Y., 50
Taya, K., 796
Taya, S., 1033
Tayal, S.R., 404
Taylor, A.F., 236
Taylor, B.J., 1058
Taylor, C.K., 619
Taylor, D.R., 223, 290, 670, 675, 762, 924
Taylor, E.A., 367
Taylor, E.C., 347, 436, 441, 476, 484, 547, 549, 552, 644, 650, 654, 784, 854, 976, 1063, 1072, 1085, 1120
Taylor, E.J., 1098
Taylor, F.M.H., 258
Taylor, G.F., 749
Taylor, H.T., 732
Taylor, J.A., 640
Taylor, J.B., 774
Taylor, J.E., 647, 733
Taylor, J.W., 266
Taylor, K.G., 172, 968
Taylor, P.G., 466
Taylor, P.R., 206
Taylor, R., 65, 72, 73, 244, 447, 452, 457, 461, 467, 468, 474, 476, 477, 482, 485, 486, 498, 506, 507, 509, 511, 547, 564, 896, 899, 900, 905, 935, 1111
Taylor, R.C., 587
Taylor, R.L., 276
Taylor, S.K., 650
Taylor, W.C., 395, 738
Tazaki, M., 795
Tchoubar, B., 693, 694, 812, 973
Tebbe, F.N., 826
Tebby, J.C., 849
Tedder, J.M., 3, 162, 472, 508, 608, 611, 613, 614, 619, 620, 626, 672, 674, 956
Tedjo, E.M., 914
Tee, O.S., 293, 478, 701
Teeter, J.S., 730
Teissier, P., 956
Teixeira, H., 1091
Tel, L.M., 123, 128
Telford, R.P., 396, 1103, 1104
Teller, R.G., 696
Telschow, J.E., 628
Temkin, O.N., 686
Temme, H., 594
Temnikova, T.I., 616
Temple, D.L., Jr., 426, 837
Temple, D.T., 425
Temple, R.D., 736
Templeton, D.H., 56
TenBrink, R., 323
Tenca, G., 1108
Tencer, M., 266
Ten Hoeve, W., 86
Tenud, L., 258
Teo, K.E., 530
Terada, K., 595
Teraji, T., 760
Terakanova, A.V., 1022
Teranishi, A.Y., 536, 832, 913, 1085, 1086
Teranishi, S., 353, 643, 732, 736, 1058, 1112
Terao, T., 542
Terao, Y., 979
Terapane, J.F., Jr., 722
Terasaki, S., 1103
Terashima, S., 759, 906
Teratini, S., 685
ter Borg, A.P., 1017
Terenghi, G., 490
Terent'ev, A.B., 956, 957
Terent'ev, A.P., 731
Terent'eva, G.A., 304
Tereshchenko, G.F., 986, 987
Ternansky, R.J., 1056
Terpko, M.O., 1103
Terpstra, J.W., 358, 978
Terrell, R., 376, 540, 541
Terrett, N.K., 521
Terrier, F., 310, 577
ter Wiel, J., 736
Teschner, M., 536
Tesoro, G.C., 671
Testa, B., 82
Testaferri, L., 589, 590, 595, 644

Tewson, T.J., 452
Texier, F., 298, 744
Teyssié, P., 344
Tezuka, T., 612, 617, 628, 1017
Tezuka, Y., 1089
Thacher, A.F., 1017
Thaler, W.A., 612, 620, 624, 680, 688
Thalmann, A., 349
Thea, S., 443
Theaker, G., 472, 508
Thebtaranonth, Y., 993, 1033
Theilacker, W., 624
Theissen, R.J., 1055
Thelan, P.J., 1044
Theobald, D.W., 124
Theophanides, T., 487
Therien, M., 1059
Théron, F., 525, 666, 1022, 1031
Thi, M.P.N., 312
Thibblin, A., 885, 901
Thiébault, A., 583
Thiede, R.J., 787
Thielecke, W., 414, 742
Thieme, P.C., 845
Thier, W., 694, 699
Thies, I., 564
Thies, R.W., 264, 1020
Thind, S.S., 387
Thirase, G., 157, 158
Thirot, G., 229, 242
Thobe, J., 848
Thomas, A., 1081
Thomas, A.F., 1030, 1033
Thomas, B., 215
Thomas, B.R., 1097
Thomas, C.B., 598, 957, 1085, 1120
Thomas, C.R., 725
Thomas, C.W., 329, 833
Thomas, F., 241
Thomas, H., 702
Thomas, J.A., 501, 502
Thomas, J.M., 368, 686
Thomas, M.J., 736
Thomas, P.J., 884, 885, 893
Thomas, P.N., 464
Thomas, R., 848
Thomas, R.C., 187
Thomas, R.J., 292, 340, 341
Thomas, S.E., 1060
Thomas, S.J., 344
Thomas, T.D., 235
Thomassin, R., 442, 487
Thomm, E.W.C.W., 574
Thompson, C.C., Jr., 75
Thompson, D., 390
Thompson, G., 676
Thompson, H.W., 716
Thompson, J., 929
Thompson, J.A., 278, 279, 1067, 1069
Thompson, J.E., 1118
Thompson, J.T., 264
Thompson, M., 10
Thompson, M.J., 466
Thompson, Q.E., 1066
Thompson, R.D., 379
Thomsen, I., 371
Thomson, R.H., 164, 486, 1061, 1081
Thomson, S.J., 697
Thorburn, S., 461
Thorne, M.P., 899
Thornton, D.E., 976
Thornton, E.R., 200, 201, 255, 750
Thornton, S.D., 823
Thorpe, D.H., 504
Thorpe, F.G., 588
Thorsen, P.T., 1099
Thorsett, E.D., 353
Thudium, F., 242
Thuillier, A., 725, 866
Thummel, R.P., 115, 904
Thurmaier, R.J., 661
Thurman, D.E., 543, 544
Thweatt, J.G., 529, 759
Thyagarajan, B.S., 644, 1028
Thyagarajan, G., 986
Tichenor, G.J.W., 666
Tichý, M., 72, 73, 286, 314
Tidwell, T.T., 139, 140, 147, 240, 286, 302, 662, 671, 676, 682, 684, 714, 819, 882, 1082
Tiecco, M., 589, 590, 595, 618, 644
Tien, J.M., 63
Tiensripojamarn, A., 914
Tiers, G.V.D., 740
Tietze, L., 802
Tilhard, H., 715
Tille, A., 685
Timm, D., 1054
Timmins, G., 155, 200, 281
Timmons, C.J., 1012, 1086
Timmons, R.J., 699
Timms, G.H., 785
Timms, P.L., 560
Tin, K., 532
Tinapp, P., 816
Tindal, P.K., 957
Ting, J., 361, 401
Tingoli, M., 589, 590, 595, 893
Tinkelenberg, A., 899
Tinker, J.M., 725
Tipping, A.E., 1042
Tipton, T.J., 167
Tirpak, R.E., 436
Tishbee, A., 106
Tissington, P., 543
Tissue, G.T., 984
Titov, M.I., 843
Titov, Yu.A., 700, 749, 971
Titterington, D.R., 725
Tius, M.A., 841
Tiwari, H.P., 262
Tkachuk, R., 43
Tkatchenko, I., 776
Tlumak, R.L., 625
Tobe, M.L., 262, 583
Tobey, S.W., 50, 292
Tobias, M.A., 677
Tobiason, F.L., 20
Tobito, Y., 1086
Tobler, H.J., 46
Tochtermann, W., 129
Toczko, A.G., 885
Toda, F., 105, 400, 1013
Toda, M., 1096
Toda, T., 771
Todd, D., 1096
Todd, G.P., 900
Todd, H.E., 616
Todd, M.J., 262
Todeschini, R., 61
Todesco, P.E., 586, 797, 1090
Todo, Y., 1013
Toekelt, W.G., 709
Togo, H., 1107
Toh, H.T., 621
Tohda, Y., 433
Toi, H., 391, 394
Tojo, G., 1112
Token, K., 280
Tökes, L., 409
Tokue, R., 804
Tokumaru, K., 617
Tokumoto, T., 807

Tokuno, E., 1092
Tokura, N., 165, 391, 432, 443, 619, 1036
Tolbert, L.M., 751
Tolbert, T.L., 828
Toldy, L., 111
Tolgyesi, W.S., 142, 146, 452, 495, 510, 603
Tolkachev, O.N., 1120
Tollenaere, J.P., 246
Tolman, C.A., 724
Tolson, T.J., 408
Tolstikov, G.A., 688, 1066, 1086
Tom, G.M., 788
Tomalia, D.A., 146
Tomari, M., 934
Tomaselli, G.A., 443
Tomasik, P., 244
Tomasik, W., 572, 628
Tomaszewski, J.E., 822
Tomezsko, E.S., 627
Tomi, K., 397
Tomino, I., 811
Tomioka, H., 975, 976, 1058
Tomioka, I., 50
Tomioka, K., 569
Tomita, M., 986
Tomita, Y., 431
Tomizawa, K., 498
Tomkins, R.P.T., 50
Tomo, Y., 839
Tomoto, N., 577
Tonachini, G., 154
Tonellato, U., 147, 296, 610, 663, 671, 672, 675
Toney, J., 160
Toney, M.K., 549
Tongpenyai, N., 367
Toniolo, L., 488
Tonsbeek, C.H.T., 507
Top, S., 860
Topley, B., 258
Toppet, S., 761, 771
Topping, R.M., 294
Topsom, R.D., 16, 237, 244, 247, 248
Tor, Y., 479
Torck, B., 662
Torigoe, M., 653
Torimoto, N., 536
Toromanoff, E., 780, 782
Torre, G., 87
Torres, M., 737, 975
Torssell, K., 793, 1075, 1082
Tortorella, V., 1081
Tortorelli, V.J., 771
Torupka, E.J., 134, 400
Toscano, V.G., 1024
Toshida, Y., 924
Toshimitsu, A., 468, 547, 628, 913
Tosi, G., 773
Tóth, G., 1075
Totov, A.I., 638
Totten, G.E., 824
Toullec, J., 67, 95, 527, 528, 661
Touster, O., 534
Townley, E.R., 1045
Towns, D.L., 157
Townsend, J.M., 866, 950
Townson, M., 613
Toyama, T., 1026
Toyoda, T., 491, 494, 497, 833
Traas, P.C., 911
Trachtenberg, E.N., 627, 1054, 1077
Traeger, J.C., 54
Traetteberg, M., 29
Trahanovsky, W.S., 275, 632, 1049, 1058, 1065, 1074, 1079, 1091
Tramontano, A., 810, 811, 917
Tramontini, M., 102, 298, 313, 800, 810
Trancik, R.J., 262
Trani, M., 293
Trapp, H., 979
Trattner, R.B., 290
Trautwein, H., 956
Traxler, M.D., 823
Traylor, T.G., 281, 514, 521, 647, 676
Traynelis, V.J., 599, 1083
Traynham, J.G., 269, 458, 612, 613, 618, 954, 958
Trecker, D.J., 500, 761, 764, 1023, 1052, 1081
Treffers, H.P., 337
Treiber, A.J.H., 769
Treibs, W., 573
Tremaine, P.H., 787
Tremblay, J.P., 613
Tremble, J., 409
Tremelling, M.J., 596
Trémillon, B., 539
Tremper, H.S., 282, 392
Trend, J.E., 914
Trevillyan, E.A., 546
Triem, H., 1120
Trifan, D., 280
Trifunac, A.D., 409
Trimitsis, G.B., 323
Trinajstic̀, N., 39, 68
Trindle, C., 751
Tripolone, M., 443
Tripoulas, N.A., 379
Trippett, S., 845, 849
Tristram, E.W., 805
Tritle, G.L., 280
Trofimov, B.A., 346, 360, 409, 684
Trombetti, A., 699
Trombini, C., 417, 569
Tröndlin, F., 579, 646
Troost, J.J., 933
Tropitzsch, R., 922
Trost, B.M., 36, 61, 352, 367, 409, 413, 415, 419, 536, 537, 554, 599, 636, 653, 742, 745, 749, 773, 774, 864, 865, 905, 913, 1033, 1053, 1075, 1076, 1089
Trotman-Dickenson, A.F., 166, 234, 618, 623
Trotter, J., 20, 134
Trottier, C.H., 1105
Trousson, P.M.R., 613
Trozzolo, A.M., 170, 173, 612
Trshiska, Ya., 988
Truax, D.R., 119
Truce, W.E., 295, 298, 420, 426, 443, 488, 607, 638, 653, 665, 666, 714, 728, 773, 795, 992
Trudell, M.L., 978
Trueblood, K.N., 78
Truesdale, L.K., 535, 739, 795
Trumbull, E.R., 906, 908, 909
Truscheit, E., 915
Trusty, S., 331
Trzupek, L.S., 555
Tsai, J.H., 75
Tsai, M., 1053
Tsang, G.T.Y., 301
Tsang, W., 361
Tsangaris, M.N., 726
Tsaroom, S., 380
Tschuikow-Roux, E., 172
Tse, A., 234
Tsel'eva, M.A., 715

Tselinskii, I.V., 381, 573, 1089
Tseng, C.C., 409, 417
Tsir, Ya., 435
Tsou, T.T., 598
Tsoucaris, G., 104, 105
Tsubata, K., 646
Tsubuki, M., 1011
Tsuchida, M., 573
Tsuchida, Y., 616, 1108
Tsuchihashi, G., 422, 440, 475, 532, 837, 1108
Tsuchiya, S., 20
Tsuda, T., 694
Tsuge, O., 381
Tsuge, S., 397
Tsuhako, A., 1082
Tsui, S.K., 887
Tsuji, J., 106, 372, 393, 420, 555, 575, 636, 655, 656, 710, 721, 918, 924, 1055, 1072, 1075, 1084, 1119
Tsuji, K., 264
Tsuji, T., 131, 276, 278, 378, 529, 647, 902, 1061, 1081
Tsuji, Y., 367
Tsujitani, R., 771
Tsukamoto, A., 398
Tsumaki, H., 361, 370
Tsumiyama, T., 1061
Tsunawaki, S., 602
Tsuno, Y., 278, 983
Tsunoda, T., 394, 791
Tsurugi, J., 1099, 1100
Tsuruoka, Y., 1103
Tsuruta, H., 1026
Tsushima, T., 529
Tsutsui, M., 383
Tsutsumi, S., 431, 554, 555, 575, 718, 731, 1088
Tsyban', A.V., 817
Tuccarbasu, S., 654
Tucker, B., 383, 863
Tucker, O., 639
Tucker, R.B., 1080
Tuddenham, D., 56
Tueting, D., 434
Tufariello, J.J., 114, 390, 744, 1076
Tuggle, R.M., 811
Tuinstra, H.E., 1038, 1039
Tuji, H., 325
Tuleen, D.L., 612, 613, 625
Tuli, D., 412
Tullman, G.M., 654
Tullock, C.W., 383, 808, 809
Tumas, W., 887
Tuncay, A., 404
Tüncher, W., 1062
Tundo, P., 322
Tung, C.C., 844
Tuong, H.B., 849, 850, 852
Tuong, T.D., 591
Turetzky, M.N., 647
Turk, A., 406
Turkenburg, L.A.M., 304, 770
Turkevich, J., 696
Turley, H.G., 258
Turley, P.C., 784, 972
Turnbull, K., 9, 1108
Turnbull, P., 818
Turner, A.B., 1053
Turner, D.W., 10
Turner, J.O., 145, 222
Turner, J.V., 350, 1033
Turner, L.M., 156, 519
Turner, R.B., 139
Turney, T.A., 341
Turos, E., 375
Turrell, A.G., 484
Turro, N.J., 167, 202, 209, 211–214, 216, 634, 738, 764, 765, 769, 770, 784, 868, 941, 972, 973, 977, 1010, 1111
Tuszynski, W.J., 281
Tuulmets, A., 821
Tveten, J.L., 511
Tweddle, N.J., 869
Tweedie, V.L., 393, 396
Twitchett, H.J., 370
Tyczkowski, E.A., 529
Tyobeka, T.E., 476
Tyrlik, S., 1112
Tyuleneva, V.V., 845
Tyurin, V.S., 510
Tyurina, L.A., 681

Ucciani, E., 612, 625
Uchic, J.T., 304, 1012
Uchida, A., 650
Uchida, K., 1001
Uchida, M., 839
Uchida, N., 267
Uchimaru, T., 904
Uchino, N., 430
Uchiyama, T., 732
Udenfriend, S., 628
Uebel, J.J., 289
Ueda, H., 577
Ueda, K., 215
Ueda, S., 1096
Uehara, H., 435
Uemura, S., 468, 478, 547, 556, 628, 725, 728, 734, 913, 1089, 1092
Ueno, K., 555
Ueno, Y., 392, 1058, 1077, 1084, 1086
Ueshima, T., 1119
Uff, B.C., 812, 990, 991
Ugai, T., 860
Ugi, I., 370, 701, 869, 870, 871, 934
Uglova, E.V., 515
Ugo, R., 696
Uguen, D., 999
Uh, H., 354, 1082
Uhlig, F., 486, 988
Uhm, S.T., 560
Ukhin, L.Yu., 595
Ullenius, C., 598, 1022, 1023
Ullman, E.F., 604
Ulmen, J., 1025
Ulrich, H., 370, 759, 863, 867, 869, 934, 1077
Ulrich, P., 343, 852
Ulrich, W., 1024
Ultee, W., 909, 1089
Umani-Ronchi, A., 417, 569, 694, 818, 837
Umbreit, M.A., 628, 919, 1112
Umeda, I., 694
Umen, M.J., 402, 713, 716
Umezu, M., 1047
Umhoefer, S.G., 806
Umino, N., 1099
Umpleby, J.D., 715
Uneyama, K., 563
Ungaro, R., 493
Unger, D., 277
Unger, F.M., 928
Unger, L.R., 787
Unger, S.H., 248
Ungermann, T.S., 669
Ungnade, H.E., 747
Ungur, N.D., 345
Ungváry, F., 723
Unni, M.K., 705
Uno, F., 911
Untch, K.G., 60, 61, 430
Unverferth, K., 575
Upton, C.J., 679

Urasaki, I., 478
Urban, F.J., 1034
Urban, R., 871
Urban, R.S., 970
Urbanek, L., 617
Urbanski, T., 539, 638
Urbas, L., 712, 800, 836
Urey, H.C., 783
Uriarte, A.K., 215
Urry, G.W., 414
Urry, W.H., 639, 781
Ursprung, J.J., 961
Usacheva, G.M., 88
Ushida, S., 817
Usković, M., 108
Usorov, M.I., 1075
Ussher, J.A., 882
Ustynyuk, T.K., 971
Ustynyuk, Yu.A., 244, 715
Uteniyazov, K., 980
Uthe, J.F., 483
Utimoto, K., 717, 1001, 1002
Utley, J.H.P., 456, 457
Uyeda, R.T., 115, 525
Uyeo, S., 986
Uzan, R., 450, 1084
Uzhik, O.N., 318

Vahrenhorst, A., 818
Vaichunaite, B.K., 574, 1047
Vaidyanathaswamy, R., 696
Vail, O.R., 275
Vaish, S.P., 806
Valade, J., 694
Valange, P., 133, 139, 775
Valenta, Z., 749, 1052
Valentin, E., 798
Valentine, D., Jr., 102
Valentine, J.S., 357
Valette, G., 628
Valicenti, J.A., 924
Valleé, R.E., 74
Valls, J., 102
Valter, R.E., 70
Valters, R., 185
van Albada, M.P., 475, 510
van Asselt, W.J., 1066
van Asten, J.J.A., 1089
Van Atta, R.E., 814
Van Auken, T.V., 92, 937
van Bac, N., 511
van Bekkum, H., 243, 396, 594, 692, 797, 798
van Bergen, T.J., 496
van Bommel, A.J., 95
Van Buren, W.D., II, 638
Van-Catledge, F.A., 828
Van Cleave, W.C., 456
van Dam, P.B., 1038
van den Aardweg, G.C.N., 1038
van den Berg, J., 123
van den Engh, M., 1057, 1071, 1073, 1080
van den Haak, H.J.W., 600
van den Hark, T.E.M., 56
van de Putte, T., 692
van der Ent, A., 697
Vanderesse, R., 390
van der Gen, A., 417, 848
Vander Jagt, D.L., 282
van der Kirk, G.J.M., 75, 823
van der Lugt, W.T.A.M., 766
van der Maeden, F.P.B., 1117
van der Meer, R., 352
van der Plas, H.C., 21, 582, 591, 600
Vanderpool, S., 1021
Vanderslice, C.W., 390
van der Vecht, J.R., 304
van der Veen, J.M., 490
VanDerveer, D., 569, 833, 963
VanderWerf, C.A., 849
van der Zeeuw, A.J., 539
van de Ven, L.J.M., 1019
Van Dine, G.W., 284, 304, 1012
van Doorn, J.A., 222, 954, 992
van Dorp, D.A., 1068
van Duijneveldt, F.B., 72
van Duijneveldt-van de Rijdt, J.G.C.M., 72
Van Eenam, D.N., 606
Van Eenoo, M., 383, 920
van Emster, K., 946
van Es, A., 347, 487
van Es, T., 816
van Gorkom, M., 117
van Helden, R., 353
Van Hoozer, R., 902
Van Horn, D., 833
Van Horn, D.E., 716, 778
Van Horn, W.F., 1092, 1107
Vanier, N.R., 152
Vankar, Y.D., 350, 383, 387, 391, 394, 487, 680, 787, 931, 934, 1081, 1082, 1108
van Koten, G., 593
van Krevelen, D.W., 1066
van Kruchten, E.M.G.A., 959
van Leeuwen, P.W.N.M., 722
Van Lente, M.A., 477
van Leusen, A.M., 419, 840
van Leusen, D., 840
Vanlierde, H., 759, 761
van Mele, B., 750
van Melick, J.E.W., 375
van Muijlwijk, A.W., 594
Van Peppen, J.F., 930
van Raayen, W., 222
van Rantwijk, F., 692
VanRheenen, V., 733
van Schaik, E.J.M., 123
Van Sickle, D.E., 547, 751
Van Stappen, P., 771
van Tamelen, E.E., 55, 384, 406, 408, 569, 652, 699, 710, 768, 787, 812, 1009, 1076, 1097, 1099
van Veldhuizen, B., 21, 600
Van Verth, J.E., 1059
Varadarajan, A., 63
Vara Prasad, J.V.N., 715
Varescon, F., 736
Vargaftik, M.N., 1085
Varkony, T.H., 627
Varma, K.R., 553
Varma, M., 895
Varma, V., 811
Vartanyan, S.A., 525
Varughese, P., 308
Vasella, A., 627
Vašícková, S., 879
Vasil'ev, G.S., 666
Vasil'eva, S.P., 791
Vasil'eva, V.F., 63
Vasil'tsov, A.M., 360
Vasina, T.V., 782
Vaskan, R.N., 818
Vassie, S., 277, 948
Vater, H., 289
Vathke-Ernst, H., 745
Vaughan, C.W., 584
Vaughan, H.L., 339
Vaughan, J., 222, 463
Vaughan, K., 573
Vaughan, L.G., 557, 558
Vaughan, T.A., 457
Vaughan, W.R., 562, 823
Vaughn, W.L., 685
Vavra, N., 496

Vayjooee, M.H.B., 687
Vazquez, M.A., 628
Vdovin, V.M., 1037
Veale, H.S., 715
Večeřa, M., 338
Veciana, J., 166
Vedejs, E., 331, 628, 794, 841, 849, 920, 1033, 1096
Veefkind, A.H., 715
Veenland, J.U., 510
Veeravagu, P., 858, 896
Veerkamp, T.A., 222
Vega, J.C., 803
Vegter, G.C., 617
Velichko, F.K., 731
Velluz, L., 102, 120
Venier, C.G., 532, 1089
Venkatachalam, T.K., 563
Venkataraman, K., 349, 388
Venkatasubban, K.S., 340
Venkatasubramanian, N., 984, 1059
Venkatesan, K., 135
Venkateswarlu, A., 852
Vennesland, B., 116
Venturello, C., 736
Verbang, J.J., 786
Verbeke, G., 622
Verbicky, J.W., Jr., 656
Verbit, L., 85
Verbrugge, C., 651
Verchere, J., 310
Verducci, J., 70
Vereshchagin, L.I., 1052
Verhé, R., 302, 529
Verheijdt, P.L., 595
Verhelst, W.F., 683
Verhoeven, J.W., 674
Verhoeven, T.R., 415
Verkade, P.E., 243
Verkruijsse, H.D., 414, 1031
Verma, M., 735
Vermeer, P., 290, 552, 556, 715, 778, 1031
Vermeeren, H.P.W., 899, 1089
Vermeulen, T., 104
Vermont, G.B., 617, 642
Vernigor, E.M., 1091
Vernin, G., 640, 641, 644
Vernon, C.A., 289, 887
Vernon, J.M., 580, 746
Vernon, N.M., 885
Verny, M., 525, 1022
Verpeaux, J., 411
Verrier, M., 1098
Verrinder, D.J., 287
Versichel, W., 72
Verter, H.S., 1065
Verzele, M., 791
Veselov, V.Ya., 310
Veselovskaia, I.K., 592
Vesely, J.A., 498
Vesley, G.F., 941
Vessière, R., 525, 666, 807, 1022
Vestling, M.M., 884, 885
Vetter, W., 81, 1114, 1115
Vialle, J., 780, 794, 1031
Viau, R., 154
Vibet, A., 780
Vickery, B., 1075
Vida, J.A., 1033
Vidal, S., 617
Vidrine, D.W., 143, 275, 320
Viehe, H.G., 133, 139, 472, 551, 728, 744, 746, 763, 768, 770, 774, 775, 916, 923
Vieregge, H., 859
Vierfond, J., 496
Vierhapper, F.W., 21, 127
Vieta, R.S., 1022
Vietmeyer, N.D., 1008
Vig, O.P., 433
Vijh, A.K., 653
Viktorova, E.A., 481
Vilaplana, M.J., 387, 930
Vilarrasa, J., 339, 376
Villa, V., 387
Villacorta, G.M., 401, 1119
Villamaña, J., 691
Ville, G., 256, 289
Villemin, D., 564, 1038, 1039
Villieras, J., 402, 410, 411, 552, 561, 778, 976
Vilsmaier, E., 922, 1082
Vincent, B.F., Jr., 815, 1104
Vines, S.M., 551
Vineyard, B.D., 104, 693
Vingiello, F.A., 494
Vining, R.F.W., 468
Vink, J.A.J., 595, 1104
Vinnik, M.I., 224, 988
Vinograd, L.Kh., 823
Vinogradov, A.N., 633
Vinogradov, M.G., 655
Vinokur, E., 839
Viola, A., 935, 936, 1021, 1022, 1031
Viout, P., 288, 340
Virtanen, I., 510
Virtanen, J., 307
Virtanen, P.O.I., 305
Vishwakarma, L.C., 707
Vismara, E., 649
Visser, J.P., 138
Vita-Finzi, P., 1089
Vitale, A.C., 965
Vitali, D., 578
Vítek, A., 879, 891
Vitins, P., 935
Vitrone, J., 1066
Vitt, S.V., 106, 108
Vittimberga, B.M., 955
Vittorelli, P., 1028
Vitulli, G., 722
Vitullo, V.P., 303, 564, 882, 969
Vivarelli, P., 34
Vizgert, R.V., 442
Vlad, P.F., 345
Vladuchick, W.C., 749
Vladuchik, S.A., 772
Vlasov, V.M., 584, 593
Vliegenthart, J.A., 72
Vlietstra, E.J., 371
Vodichka, L., 988
Vofsi, D., 725, 728, 731
Vogel, A., 58
Vogel, D., 861
Vogel, E., 46, 55–59, 61, 62, 130, 136, 473, 771, 833, 915, 1003, 1004, 1020, 1021, 1022
Vogel, G., 157
Vogel, G.C., 74
Vogel, H., 719
Vogel, P., 947, 948, 952
Vogel, P.C., 265
Vogel, W., 222
Vogelfanger, E., 280
Vogelzang, M.W., 899
Vogler, E.A., 560, 987
Vogt, P.F., 844
Vogt, S., 772
Vögtle, F., 35, 77, 78, 135, 140, 362, 625, 940
Voisey, M.A., 175
Voitkevich, S.A., 653
Voitsekhovskaya, I.Yu., 373
Volger, H.C., 353, 514, 677, 767
Vol'kenshtein, Yu.B., 495

Volkova, L.G., 643
Vollhardt, K.P.C., 50, 774, 775, 852, 921, 1038
Vollmar, A., 459
Vollmer, J.J., 751, 1003
Volod'kin, A.A., 450, 969, 1097
Vol'pin, M.E., 37, 44, 50, 390, 515, 554, 643, 692, 770, 826
Völter, H., 111
Volz, H., 54, 145, 149, 165
von Bülöw, B., 911
Vonderheid, C., 418, 918
von der Saal, W., 1026
von Deuten, K., 78
von Felten, W.C., 280
Von Lehman, T., 275
von Nagy-Felsobuki, E., 247
von Puttkamer, H., 61
Von Rein, F.W., 715
von Schnering, H.G., 55
Vontor, T., 338
Vo-Quang, Y., 769
Voorbergen, P., 160
Voorhees, K.J., 924, 935
Vorbrüggen, H., 347, 349, 354, 933
Voronenkov, V.V., 139, 633
Voronkov, M.G., 78
Vorozhtsov, N.N., Jr., 506, 593
Voskuil, W., 740
Vossius, D., 985
Vostrowsky, O., 845, 853, 922
Vött, V., 275
Vovsi, B.A., 759, 916
Vowinkel, E., 345, 594, 931
Vrencur, D.J., 420
Vreugdenhil, A.D., 159
Vrielink, A., 266
Vrielink, J.J., 353
Vukov, R., 275, 276, 1076
Vul'fson, N.S., 823
Vyas, V.A., 886
Vyrypaev, E.M., 688
Vysotskaya, N.A., 628
V'yunov, K.A., 657

Waack, R., 546
Wächtershäuser, G., 543
Wada, F., 643, 649, 650
Wada, M., 378, 393, 832, 1033
Wada, Y., 872
Wade, A.M., 1031
Wade, K., 45, 157, 512
Wade, L.E., Jr., 1024
Wade, P.A., 694, 745, 787
Wadia, M.S., 785
Wadsworth, D.H., 850
Wadsworth, W.S., Jr., 848
Waegell, B., 129, 478, 772, 911, 971, 1045
Wagatsuma, N., 361
Wagemann, W., 58, 59
Wagenknecht, J.H., 396
Wagle, D.R., 349, 388
Wagner, C.D., 696
Wagner, G.W., 842
Wagner, H., 52, 324, 1011
Wagner, J., 86, 87
Wagner, K., 939
Wagner, P., 619
Wagner, P.J., 167, 211, 213, 214, 215
Wagner, R.S., 18
Wagner, W.M., 173
Wagner-Jauregg, T., 747
Wagnon, J., 713
Waheed, N., 1099
Wahl, G.H., Jr., 17, 579, 580
Wahren, R., 694
Wai, W., 937
Waight, E.S., 1105
Wakabayashi, N., 987
Wakabayashi, T., 796
Wakabayashi, Y., 811
Wakamatsu, T., 600
Wakatsuki, Y., 775
Wakefield, B.J., 157, 158, 392, 559, 598, 599
Wakemoto, H., 596
Wakisaka, K., 361
Wakselman, C., 401
Wakselman, M., 901
Walba, D.M., 93, 368
Walborsky, H.M., 156, 166, 370, 396, 402, 408, 515, 519, 560, 568, 652, 656, 702, 869, 872, 919, 934
Walden, F.A., 264
Walden, P., 191, 257
Waldner, A., 282
Wale, P.D., 341
Walia, A.S., 856
Walia, J.S., 856
Walinsky, S.W., 174
Walker, B.J., 848
Walker, D., 456, 1053
Walker, E.C., 1084
Walker, E.R.H., 1093
Walker, F., 160
Walker, F.H., 133
Walker, F.W., 160, 820
Walker, G.J., 694
Walker, H., 690
Walker, K.A.M., 361, 398, 693, 699
Walker, L.E., 931
Walker, M.D., 613
Walker, W.E., 367, 690
Wall, A., 922
Wall, D.K., 441
Wall, J.S., 671
Wallace, B., 858
Wallace, R.G., 694
Wallace, R.W., 167
Wallace, T.J., 443, 913, 914, 1065, 1087, 1092
Wallenfels, K., 429, 723, 855, 930, 933
Waller, F.D., 907
Waller, F.J., 312, 320
Walling, C., 168, 281, 498, 549, 608, 615, 617, 619, 621, 622, 624, 625, 626, 628, 629, 637, 666, 719, 731, 913, 955, 1045, 1060, 1061, 1089
Wallis, E.S., 501, 983
Wallis, S.R., 935
Wallo, A., 1101
Walls, F., 1103
Walsh, A.D., 14, 207, 671
Walsh, E.J., Jr., 396, 977, 1021
Walsh, H.G., 632, 1074
Walsh, P.A., 67
Walsh, R., 681
Walsh, T.D., 264, 268
Walsh, W.L., 979
Walshe, N.D.A., 645
Walter, D., 995
Walter, D.W., 955
Walter, H., 559
Walter, W., 111, 780, 792
Walter, W.F., 652
Walters, M.E., 594
Walters, M.J., 963
Walton, D.R.M., 453, 463, 511, 550, 640, 985, 1038, 1136
Walton, H.F., 63
Walton, J.C., 162, 477, 608, 611, 613, 666, 667, 672,

674, 955
Walz, P., 416
Wambsgans, A., 1044
Wan, J.K.S., 162, 213
Wan, K., 678, 948
Wan, P., 223
Wang, C., 230
Wang, C.S., 445
Wang, G.L., 565
Wang, H., 710
Wang, I., 735
Wang, J., 1037
Wang, J.Y.C., 621
Wang, K.K., 707, 812
Wang, L.L., 55
Wang, M., 859
Wang, P.S., 172
Wang, T., 528
Wang, T.C., 331
Wang, T.S., 412
Wang, W., 819
Wann, S.R., 330, 1099
Wannegat, U., 603
Warawa, E.J., 1057
Warburton, M.R., 762
Warburton, W.K., 475
Ward, D.G., 223
Ward, H.R., 138, 163, 175, 404, 561, 1009
Ward, J.F., 558
Ward, J.P., 1037, 1054
Ward, J.S., 1025
Ward, N.D., 812
Ward, P., 153, 969
Ward, R.S., 925
Ward, T.J., 992
Wardell, J.L., 360, 550, 687, 1107, 1110
Ware, J.C., 478, 521
Waring, A.J., 224, 951, 969
Waring, A.M., 931
Waring, C., 1074
Warkentin, J., 929, 937
Warner, C.D., 568
Warner, C.R., 977
Warner, D.T., 774
Warner, J.M., 1021
Warner, P.M., 1026
Warnet, R.J., 677
Warnhoff, E.W., 155, 530, 768, 813, 958, 959, 971, 974, 978
Warpehoski, M.A., 628
Warren, C.T., 336
Warren, R.W., 962
Warren, S., 837, 850, 950, 980
Warren, S.E., 675, 762
Warrener, R.N., 764, 1057
Warrick, P., 198
Warshawsky, A., 499
Wartski, L., 714
Warwel, S., 1038
Waseda, T., 435
Washtien, W., 806
Wassen, J., 46, 57
Wassenaar, S., 941
Wasserman, A., 745
Wasserman, B., 308
Wasserman, E., 54, 93, 167, 170, 172, 173, 176, 1038, 1114, 1115
Wasserman, H.H., 564, 628, 634, 737, 784, 972, 990, 1059, 1075, 1077
Wassmundt, F.W., 473
Waszczylo, Z., 303
Wat, E.K.W., 405
Watabe, T., 601
Watanabe, A., 964
Watanabe, H., 555
Watanabe, K., 693, 788
Watanabe, M., 923
Watanabe, N., 728
Watanabe, O., 725
Watanabe, S., 532
Watanabe, T., 597
Watanabe, W.H., 346
Watanabe, Y., 367, 378, 385, 397, 433, 799, 902, 934, 1119
Waterhouse, A., 407
Waterhouse, I., 899, 926
Waterman, E.L., 690
Waters, D.L., 1019
Waters, R.M., 987
Waters, W.A., 404, 574, 633, 634, 640, 1049, 1059, 1060, 1064, 1065, 1103, 1116
Watkin, D.J., 44
Watkins, C.J., 211
Watkins, J.J., 400
Watkins, R.J., 1017
Watson, D., 293
Watson, J.M., 1029
Watson, S.W., 903
Watson, T.W., 67
Watson, W.H., 78
Watt, A.N., 353
Watt, C.I.F., 317
Watt, D.S., 416, 836, 1083, 1109
Wattanasin, S., 435
Watts, D.W., 803
Watts, L., 51, 53, 133
Watts, M.L., 385
Watts, P.C., 842
Watts, W.E., 147, 148, 282, 348, 501, 605, 607, 942, 984, 992
Waugh, J.S., 38
Wawzonek, S., 1044
Waxman, B.H., 681
Wayda, A.L., 56
Waykole, L., 821
Wayman, M., 574
Wayne, R.P., 634
Weaver, W.M., 308, 468
Webb, C.F., 758
Webb, D., 509
Webb, G., 697
Webb, H.M., 234, 235
Webb, T.R., 787
Webb, V.L., 126
Weber, A., 440
Weber, E., 77
Weber, H., 56
Weber, J., 1057
Weber, J.L., 50
Weber, K., 838
Weber, P., 614
Weber, R., 106
Weber, U., 948
Weber, W.P., 320, 343, 353, 361, 370, 382, 416, 429, 441, 543, 547, 733, 769, 839, 845, 1108
Webster, B., 758, 868
Webster, J.R., 957
Webster, O.W., 43, 746
Wedegaertner, D.K., 515, 656
Weedon, A.C., 794, 810
Weedon, B.C.L., 653, 1057
Weeds, S.M., 1136
Weeks, D.P., 331
Wege, D., 952
Wegener, P., 1025
Weglein, R.C., 949
Wegler, R., 1119
Wehle, D., 965
Wehman, A.T., 849
Wehner, G., 840, 909
Wehrli, P.A., 934
Wehrli, R., 1024

Weidman, B., 817
Weidmann, B., 820
Weidmann, R., 103, 109
Weigel, H., 476
Weigel, L.O., 396
Weigert, F.J., 130
Weigmann, H., 850
Wei-hua, X., 1002
Weil, T.A., 597
Weil, T.M., 1111
Weiler, E.D., 928
Weiler, L., 836
Weill-Raynal, J., 102, 426, 995
Weinberg, D.S., 383
Weinberg, H.R., 1052
Weinberg, N.L., 1052
Weinberger, B., 433
Weiner, H., 267
Weiner, M.A., 157
Weiner, P.K., 171
Weiner, S.A., 599, 1111
Weingarten, H., 372, 589, 797, 798
Weinheimer, A.J., 695
Weinkauff, D.J., 104, 693
Weinlich, J., 137
Weinman, S.A., 88
Weinreb, S.M., 363, 375, 435, 747, 807
Weinshenker, N.M., 1081, 1082
Weinstein, R.M., 819
Weinstein, S., 106, 107, 884
Weinstock, L.M., 534
Weintraub, L., 359, 376
Weinwurzel, D.H., 286
Weisburger, E.K., 1083
Weise, A., 316
Weisgerber, G., 432
Weiske, C., 1130
Weisman, G.R., 165
Weiss, A., 616, 928
Weiss, A.W., 4
Weiss, D.S., 211, 213, 764
Weiss, E., 157, 158, 159
Weiss, J., 258, 356
Weiss, K., 647
Weiss, R., 147, 485, 487
Weiss, R.G., 383
Weiss, S., 121, 365
Weissbach, O., 1131
Weissbuch, I., 107
Weisse, G., 864
Weissenbach, P., 454
Weisser, H.R., 1033
Weissermel, K., 727
Weissman, P.M., 397
Weitkamp, A.W., 700
Welch, C.J., 106
Welch, D.E., 557
Welch, J., 383, 387
Welch, J.T., 680
Welch, S.C., 594, 868
Welker, C.H., 1031
Weller, A., 207
Weller, H.N., 1057
Weller, T., 436
Weller, W.T., 348
Wellmann, J., 400
Wells, J.I., 276
Wells, P.B., 695, 697
Wells, P.R., 14, 242, 243, 244, 246, 309, 461, 613
Wells, S., 313
Wells, W.E., 312
Welsher, T.L., 51
Welter, T.R., 1042
Welvart, Z., 199, 570, 822, 995
Wendel, K., 52
Wendelborn, D.F., 914
Wender, I., 702, 721
Wender, P.A., 411, 420, 542, 856
Wenderoth, B., 403, 818
Wendler, N.L., 959
Wendschuh, P.H., 1008
Wengrovius, J.H., 1038
Wenke, G., 824
Wenkert, E., 408, 410, 411, 595, 715, 773, 837, 1097
Wennerström, O., 59, 62, 598
Wenning, E., 744
Went, C.W., 541
Wentrup, C., 138, 175, 322
Wentworth, G., 963
Wenzinger, G.R., 276
Wepplo, P.J., 440, 712
Wepster, B.M., 34, 243, 248, 458
Werkman, C.H., 116
Wermuth, C.G., 387
Werner, E.A., 365
Werner, E.S.E., 899
Werner, H., 45, 542
Werner, N.D., 338, 613
Werner, W., 348, 818
Wersel, O.A., 756
Werstiuk, N.H., 155, 200, 281, 911
Werth, R.G., 960
Werthemann, D.P., 1042
Werthemann, L., 1030
Wertz, D.W., 129
Wertz, J.E., 162
Wescott, L.D., Jr., 172
Wessel, H., 624
Wessely, F., 817
West, C.T., 390, 1097
West, D.E., 385
West, J.C., 468
West, P., 546
West, R., 9, 63, 73, 157, 545, 766
Westaway, K.C., 200, 303, 314
Westberg, H.H., 1040, 1076
Westdorp, I., 1113
Westerkamp, J.F., 862
Westerlund, C., 595
Westerman, P.W., 144, 147, 149, 271, 450, 660
Westermann, J., 403, 408, 817
Westhead, E.W., Jr., 294
Westheimer, F.H., 330, 564, 798, 1059, 1060
Westley, J.W., 106, 108
Westmijze, H., 552, 556, 778
Weston, A.W., 568
Weston, J.B., 466
Westphal, J., 747
Westrum, E.F., Jr., 22
Westwood, S.W., 616
Wettach, R.H., 170
Wette, M., 1019
Wetter, H., 521
Wettermark, G., 110
Wetzel, W.H., 899
Wexler, S., 634, 738
Weyerstahl, P., 358, 769
Weygand, F., 909, 974
Weyler, W., Jr., 762
Whaite, T.J., 341
Whalen, D.L., 1040
Whalen, E.J., 677
Whalen, R., 621
Whaley, T.W., 967
Whalley, E., 662
Whalley, W., 935, 1021, 1029
Whangbo, M., 154
Wharton, P.S., 973
Whatley, L.S., 73
Wheatley, P.J., 75
Wheeler, D.M.S., 677
Wheeler, O.H., 371, 396, 809,

810, 891, 893, 1046, 1079, 1102
Whelan, W.P., Jr., 258
Wheland, G.W., 24, 66, 74, 82, 99, 104, 943, 945, 949
Whiffen, D.H., 18
Whimp, P.O., 138
Whipple, E.B., 1025
Whipple, L.D., 515
Whitcombe, M.J., 1098
White, A.H., 345
White, A.M, 50
White, A.M., 145, 146, 149, 219, 282, 283, 285, 330
White, C.T., 833
White, D.H., 655
White, D.N.J., 998
White, D.R., 844
White, E.H., 211, 262, 313, 314, 367, 906, 960
White, E.P., 724
White, H.S., 502
White, J.D., 138, 346
White, J.F., 1120
White, M.A., 740
White, R., 766
White, R.F.M., 450
White, R.W., 1066
White, S., 417
White, V.A., 503
White, W.A., 797, 798
White, W.N., 289, 500, 501, 502, 1028, 1030
Whitehouse, M., 691
Whitehouse, R.D., 913
Whitehurst, D.D., 737
Whiteley, M.W., 45
Whitesell, J.K., 417, 540
Whitesell, M.A., 417, 540
Whitesides, G.M., 108, 160, 342, 401, 515, 555, 560, 589, 651, 652, 693, 713, 717, 1085
Whitesides, T., 1076
Whitham, G.H., 681, 920, 1114
Whiting, M.C., 76, 286, 288, 300, 312, 314, 315, 355, 696, 804, 911, 912, 947, 961
Whitlock, H.W., Jr., 419, 961
Whitman, D.W., 51
Whitman, G.M., 689, 724
Whitmore, F.C., 314, 662, 819, 943, 946
Whitney, C.C., 552, 1000, 1001
Whitney, G.C., 417
Whitney, T.A., 519, 1108
Whittaker, D., 141, 344, 813, 814, 959, 974
Whitten, C.E., 401, 433, 713
Whittingham, D.J., 259
Whittle, A.J., 531
Whitworth, A.J., 1067
Whyman, R., 722
Wiaux-Zamar, C., 424
Wibaut, J.P., 1067
Wiberg, K.B., 21, 133, 134, 136, 145, 276, 283, 284, 400, 623, 627, 630, 733, 952, 1023, 1046, 1049, 1059, 1060, 1073, 1077, 1080
Wiberg, N., 699
Wicha, J., 1058, 1071
Wick, A., 928
Wickberg, B., 825
Wickham, G., 521, 548
Widdowson, D.A., 603
Wideman, L.G., 1091
Widhalm, M., 106
Widing, H.F., 17, 247
Widmer, J., 360, 396, 415
Wiechell, H., 978
Wiedemann, W., 771, 1011
Wiegers, K.E., 880, 891
Wieland, D.M., 289, 410, 411
Wieland, P., 88, 813
Wiener, H., 266
Wierenga, W., 785
Wieringa, J.H., 660
Wiesboeck, R., 574, 883
Wiesemann, T.L., 821
Wieser, H., 119
Wieser, J.D., 18
Wiest, H., 749, 751
Wieting, R.D., 148, 282
Wife, R.L., 57, 749
Wigfield, D.C., 810, 813
Wightman, R.H., 1098
Wiitig, G., 833
Wijers, H.E., 362
Wilbur, D.S., 763
Wilby, A.H., 1105
Wilby, J., 890
Wilchek, M., 398
Wilcox, C.F., 16, 281, 417
Wild, D., 747
Wilder, P., Jr., 960
Wildman, T.A., 74
Wilds, A., 811
Wildsmith, E., 785
Wilen, S.H., 83, 104, 105
Wiley, D.W., 671, 760
Wiley, G.A., 280, 383, 593
Wiley, P.F., 266
Wilhelm, R.S., 401, 404, 410, 713
Wilk, K.A., 888
Wilka, E., 104
Wilke, G., 405, 695, 707, 710, 776
Wilke, J., 137
Wilkens, H.J., 927
Wilkins, C.L., 661, 858
Wilkins, J.M., 402, 817
Wilkinson, A.L., 463
Wilkinson, F., 207, 211
Wilkinson, G., 655, 692, 697, 722
Wilkison, W.W., 891
Willard, A.K., 1030, 1031
Willard, G.F., 903, 910
Willard, J.E., 621
Willcott, M.R., 1021
Willey, F.G., 216
Willey, P.R., 839
Willi, A.V., 199, 200, 226, 507, 874, 886
Williams, A., 338, 341, 443, 803, 863, 934
Williams, A.J.S., 1105
Williams, D., 733
Williams, D.A., 515
Williams, D.H., 1098
Williams, D.J., 9, 997, 1054
Williams, D.L.H., 358, 455, 470, 498, 501, 502, 534, 606, 1035
Williams, D.R., 417, 419, 1086
Williams, E.D., 814
Williams, F.J., 277, 1040, 1041
Williams, F.T., Jr., 787
Williams, F.V., 234
Williams, G.H., 503, 610, 611, 639, 640
Williams, G.J., 1068, 1069
Williams, G.R., 48
Williams, J.K., 760
Williams, J.L.R., 766
Williams, J.M., 74, 696
Williams, J.M., Jr., 157, 331, 922
Williams, J.R., 787
Williams, K.J., 368, 686

Williams, L., 656
Williams, L.P., Jr., 962
Williams, P.H., 736, 990
Williams, R.E., 373, 415
Williams, R.J., 897, 900
Williams, R.O., 721, 877
Williams, R.V., 58, 747
Williams, S.B., 1058
Williams, T., 108
Williams, T.R., 443
Williams, V.Z., Jr., 962
Williamson, D.G., 207, 1067
Williamson, D.H., 692
Williamson, K.L., 14
Williamson, R.E., 963
Williard, P.G., 361
Willis, A.C., 55
Willis, B.J., 941
Willis, C., 699
Willis, J.B., 303
Willis, J.N., Jr., 129
Willis, W.W., Jr., 913
Willner, I., 45, 46, 57, 59
Wills, J., 527
Willy, W.E., 129, 382
Wilshire, C., 528
Wilson, A., 133, 758
Wilson, A.A., 264, 273
Wilson, A.C., 553
Wilson, C.L., 517
Wilson, C.V., 654
Wilson, D.R., 80
Wilson, E.B., 28, 73, 120
Wilson, E.B., Jr., 123
Wilson, E.R., 400
Wilson, G.E., 759
Wilson, H., 310, 316
Wilson, H.R., 941
Wilson, J.A., 502
Wilson, J.D., 37, 372
Wilson, J.N., 696
Wilson, K.E., 694
Wilson, K.R., 93, 107
Wilson, M.A., 727
Wilson, N.D.V., 354
Wilson, N.H., 771
Wilson, P.W., 172
Wilson, S.E., 1040
Wilson, S.R., 1030
Wilt, J.K., 955
Wilt, J.W., 615, 667, 955, 992
Wilt, M.H., 507
Wilterdink, R.J., 941
Wilzbach, K.E., 133, 1009
Wims, A.I., 1072
Winans, R.E., 479
Winch, B.L., 968
Wineman, R.J., 369
Winer, A.M., 167
Wingen, R., 135
Wingrove, A.S., 157
Winikov, E.H., 244
Wink, D.J., 56
Winkelmann, E.H., 624
Winkler, A., 414
Winkler, H.J.S., 75, 92
Winkler, J., 407
Winkler, T., 866, 1028
Winnik, M.A., 185, 991, 1078
Winstein, S., 63, 64, 127, 155, 263, 264, 265, 269, 270, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 280, 288, 308, 317, 318, 390, 514, 520, 875, 882, 887, 888, 896, 946, 949, 955, 956
Winter, J.G., 503
Winter, R.A.E., 919, 920
Winter, R.E.K., 1004
Winter, R.L., 613
Winter, S.R., 430, 432
Winter, W., 165
Winterfeldt, E., 666, 671, 672, 1031, 1052
Wintermute, R.D., 963
Wipff, G., 154, 1101
Wipke, W.T., 216, 962, 1016
Wippel, H.G., 848
Wirthwein, R., 582
Wirz, J., 67
Wiseman, J.R., 138, 139, 262, 332
Wishnok, J.S., 1009
Wiskott, E., 767
Wisotsky, M.J., 144, 145, 146, 222
Wistrand, L., 589
Wistrand, L.G., 637
Wistuba, E., 951, 992
Witanowski, M., 160
Withers, G.P., 372
Witkop, B., 1100
Witt, K.E., 1112
Witt, O.N., 454
Witte, K., 287, 289
Wittig, C.M., 662
Wittig, G., 137, 138, 158, 228, 580, 605, 648, 747, 772, 845, 847, 850, 853, 908, 909, 920, 995
Witting, G., 137
Wlostowska, J., 912
Wnuk, T.A., 369
Woell, J.B., 721
Woggon, W., 627
Wohl, J., 716
Wohl, R.A., 325, 927
Wojciechowski, K., 412
Wojnarowski, W., 304, 1012
Wojtkowiak, B., 242
Wojtkowski, P.W., 420, 428, 939
Wolak, R.A., 836
Wolber, G.J., 987
Wold, S., 242, 244, 281, 525
Wolf, A.D., 283
Wolf, A.P., 479, 593, 949, 962, 1018
Wolf, D.C., 982
Wolf, G.C., 728
Wolf, J.F., 149, 234, 235, 1060
Wolf, K.H., 837
Wolf, R.A., 223
Wolf, W., 644
Wolf, W.A., 534
Wolfarth, E.F., 1030
Wolfe, J.F., 348, 355, 583, 596, 832
Wolfe, J.R., Jr., 268
Wolfe, S., 123, 128, 154, 157, 310, 378, 385, 529, 733, 843, 1071, 1088
Wolfenden, J.H., 467
Wolff, C., 594
Wolff, M.A., 704
Wolff, M.E., 1044
Wolfinger, M.D., 922
Wolford, R.K., 236
Wolfrom, M.L., 1066
Wolfsberg, M., 197
Wolinsky, J., 531, 857
Wolkoff, P., 915
Wollenberg, R.H., 349, 833, 836
Wollowitz, S., 914
Wolman, Y., 1121
Wolner, D., 1056
Wolochowicz, I., 1112
Wolovsky, R., 57, 59, 639, 1038, 1115
Wolter, D., 639
Woltermann, A., 715, 818

Wolters, E.T.M., 375
Wolthius, E., 1098
Won, C.M., 507
Wong, C., 61
Wong, C.K., 653
Wong, C.M., 391, 542, 785, 931, 974, 1103, 1108
Wong, D.H., 1059
Wong, E.W.C., 948
Wong, G.B., 386
Wong, M.Y.H., 813
Wong, R.J., 885, 888
Wong, S.C., 225
Wong, S.M., 519
Wong-Ng, W., 9
Woo, E.P., 59, 62
Wood, C.D., 1039
Wood, D.E., 612
Wood, H.G., 116
Wood, J., 589
Wood, J.L., 74, 807
Wood, J.T., 508
Wood, L.L., Jr., 808
Wood, L.S., 172
Wood, N.F., 331
Wood, S.E., 981
Woodard, R.A., 686
Woodard, S.S., 107, 736
Woodburn, H.M., 1121
Woodbury, R.P., 1055
Woodcock, D.J., 313, 906, 960
Woodgate, P.D., 478, 531, 654, 694, 726–730, 1063, 1097
Woodgate, S.D., 728
Woodruff, R.A., 347
Woodward, R.B., 751, 757, 758, 768, 834, 922, 994, 1004, 1005, 1013, 1014, 1015, 1023
Woodworth, C.W., 17, 702
Woodworth, R.C., 171, 770
Wooley, G.T., 289
Woolf, L.I., 894, 896
Woolhouse, R.A., 500
Woollins, J.D., 693
Worden, L.R., 397
Worley, J.W., 780
Wormser, H.C., 644
Worthley, S., 1114
Wotiz, J.H., 525, 586
Wovkulich, P.M., 408
Wozniak, D., 1065
Woznow, R.J., 749
Wray, V., 123, 326
Wright, D.B., 762
Wright, D.G., 896
Wright, D.R., 898
Wright, G.F., 41, 861
Wright, G.J., 247, 463, 467
Wright, M., 920
Wright, T.A., 895
Wrighton, M., 215
Wristers, J., 766, 1011
Wrobel, J., 574
Wroble, R.R., 1109
Wu, C., 478, 484
Wu, C.Y., 222
Wu, D.K., 844
Wu, E.S.C., 920
Wu, G., 319
Wu, M.M., 281
Wüest, H., 995, 1077
Wulff, W.D., 277
Wulfman, D.S., 570, 571, 573, 601, 646, 768
Wunderli, A., 1028
Wunderlich, D., 709
Wunderlich, K., 356
Wurziger, H., 1033
Wüst, H.H., 919
Wyatt, P.A.H., 207
Wyatt, R.J., 27
Wyckoff, J.C., 615, 621
Wylie, W.A., 578
Wyman, B.M., 724
Wyman, D.P., 621
Wyman, W.E., 984
Wynberg, H., 83, 86, 102, 107, 108, 489, 653, 660, 786, 867, 1114
Wyn-Jones, E., 121, 123
Wynne-Jones, K.M.A., 784
Wysocki, D.C., 61
Wysong, R.D., 477
Wyvratt, M.J., 157

Xodo, L.E., 126
Xuong, N.D., 511

Yablokov, V.A., 991
Yabuki, Y., 1001
Yadani, N., 430
Yaeger, D.B., 659
Yagahashi, F., 989
Yager, W.A., 54, 170, 172, 173, 176
Yaginuma, F., 1103
Yagodin, V.G., 1030
Yagupol'skii, L.M., 808
Yahner, J.A., 440
Yakobson, G.G., 480, 510, 584, 587, 593, 603, 915
Yakushin, F.S., 199
Yakushina, L.M., 687
Yale, H.L., 985
Yamada, H., 265, 872
Yamada, K., 385, 921, 1001
Yamada, S., 104, 569, 570, 571
Yamada, T., 353, 556, 1083
Yamada, Y., 107, 399, 431, 438, 638, 1119
Yamagami, M., 574, 1047
Yamagishi, F.G., 993
Yamaguchi, F., 106
Yamaguchi, H., 924, 1040
Yamaguchi, M., 349, 350, 435, 817, 1083
Yamaguchi, R., 903
Yamaguchi, S., 810
Yamaichi, A., 714
Yamaji, M., 353
Yamakado, Y., 839
Yamakazi, H., 775
Yamamoto, A., 569, 1119
Yamamoto, D., 123
Yamamoto, H., 56, 406, 409, 423, 553, 819, 832, 839, 852, 904, 919, 928, 989, 1017, 1031, 1105
Yamamoto, J., 1047
Yamamoto, K., 137, 555, 839, 924
Yamamoto, N., 695
Yamamoto, O., 1025
Yamamoto, S., 403, 713, 999
Yamamoto, T., 536, 591, 794
Yamamoto, Y., 391, 394, 399, 403, 406, 408, 429, 599, 625, 651, 713, 817, 832, 833, 997, 999, 1034, 1088
Yamamura, K., 77, 430
Yamamura, M., 403, 643
Yamamura, S., 431, 1096
Yamasaki, R., 345
Yamase, Y., 485, 487
Yamashita, A., 525, 694
Yamashita, M., 397, 422, 431, 433, 555, 693, 799, 1108, 1119
Yamataka, H., 199, 280, 285
Yamato, E., 933

Yamawaki, J., 280, 285, 377, 441, 1058
Yamaya, M., 1001
Yamazaki, H., 390, 764, 765, 775
Yamazaki, J., 616
Yamazaki, N., 804, 811
Yambushev, F.D., 88
Yamdagni, R., 235
Yan, S., 797
Yan, T., 481
Yanagi, J., 137
Yanagisawa, K., 403
Yanai, H., 431
Yanchang, S., 36
Yandovskii, V.N., 381, 964, 1089
Yang, D.H., 214, 858
Yang, D.T.C., 1098
Yang, M., 702
Yang, N.C., 214, 549, 636, 858, 868
Yang, S., 350
Yankee, E.W., 311
Yannoni, C.S., 53, 143, 282, 450
Yano, K., 276
Yano, T., 361, 1091
Yano, Y., 310, 887
Yanovskaya, L.A., 524, 712, 845, 850
Yany, F., 929
Yao, H.C., 533
Yaozeng, H., 36
Yarwood, A.J., 137
Yashima, E., 92
Yashunskii, V.G., 63
Yashunsky, D.V., 435
Yaslak, S., 1019
Yasman, Ya.B., 330
Yasuda, A., 904, 919
Yasuda, M., 1022
Yasuhara, F., 810
Yasuhara, T., 575
Yasuhara, Y., 492
Yatagai, H., 403, 406, 429, 651, 713, 832, 1001
Yates, B.L., 935, 936
Yates, J.B., 406, 535
Yates, K., 26, 222–225, 336, 337, 341, 530, 660, 661, 672, 751, 1005
Yates, P., 749
Yates, R.L., 154
Yates, W.F., 725
Yats, L.D., 505
Yavari, I., 21, 285
Yee, K.C., 884, 885
Yemul, S.S., 529
Yen, C., 281
Yen, V.Q., 683, 732
Yeramyan, A., 787
Yermakov, Y.I., 723
Yeroushalmi, S., 63, 155
Yoakim, C., 384
Yogo, T., 999
Yohitake, J., 555
Yokota, K., 458
Yokoyama, K., 745, 832
Yokoyama, M., 363, 383, 933, 1111
Yokoyama, Y., 1060
Yonashiro, M., 416
Yoneda, G.S., 364
Yoneda, N., 481, 680, 992
Yonemitsu, T., 342
Yong, K.S., 1012
Yong-ti, T., 1002
Yoon, N.M., 394, 705, 1096
Yorke, M., 396
Yoshida, J., 403, 598
Yoshida, K., 503, 579, 760, 832, 833
Yoshida, M., 56, 646, 994
Yoshida, S., 383, 430, 933
Yoshida, T., 138, 434, 478, 716, 778, 788, 887, 913, 997, 999, 1000
Yoshida, Y., 596
Yoshida, Z., 49, 50, 74, 431, 532, 543, 638
Yoshidomi, M., 643
Yoshikawa, S., 766, 1101
Yoshikoshi, A., 685
Yoshimine, M., 865
Yoshimoto, H., 799
Yoshimura, M., 322, 432
Yoshimura, N., 1061
Yoshimura, T., 412, 741, 807, 1108
Yoshinari, T., 1001
Yoshino, H., 360
Yoshino, T., 400
Yoshioka, H., 327, 553
Yoshioka, M., 723, 724
Young, A.E., 50, 515
Young, D., 521
Young, D.A., 529
Young, D.J., 463
Young, D.P., 945
Young, D.W., 373, 484, 627, 1057
Young, F., 426
Young, J.E., Jr., 19
Young, J.F., 692, 697, 722
Young, L.B., 223, 1058, 1079
Young, M.G., 632
Young, M.W., 727, 913
Young, P.R., 330, 795
Young, R.J., 1065
Young, R.M., 131
Young, R.N., 149, 151, 860
Young, S.D., 1019
Young, W.G., 287, 288, 289, 301, 314, 520, 875
Young, W.R., 156, 223
Youssef, A.K., 1018
Youssefyeh, R.D., 539, 1069
Yovell, J., 283
Yu, S.H., 495, 559, 821
Yudina, N.D., 478
Yufit, S.S., 120, 415, 874
Yukawa, Y., 264, 278, 280, 285, 785, 923, 983, 989
Yuki, H., 106
Yukizaki, H., 408
Yurchenko, A.G., 988
Yur'ev, V.P., 1086
Yur'ev, Yu.K., 665
Yur'eva, L.P., 774
Yur'eva, N.M., 133
Yus, M., 691
Yuste, F., 1103

Zabicky, J., 483
Zaborsky, O.R., 443
Zafiriou, O.C., 215
Zagorsky, V.V., 560
Zahl, G., 1030
Zahler, R., 826
Zahler, R.E., 576, 581, 585, 587, 607
Zahn, H., 355, 372
Záhorsky, U.I., 647
Zahra, J., 1111
Zahradnik, R., 48
Zaidlewicz, M., 704
Zaikov, G.E., 1067
Zajacek, J.G., 1088
Zajc, B., 529
Zajdel, W.J., 154
Zakharkin, L.I., 394, 397, 398,

510, 551, 560, 728, 816, 917, 1119
Zakharov, V.P., 491
Zaklika, K.A., 738
Zalar, F.V., 567
Zalesov, V.S., 441
Zalesskaya, T.E., 967
Zaleta, M.A., 785
Zalewski, R.I., 224
Zalkow, L.H., 723
Zalukaev, L.P., 694
Zalut, C., 475
Zamashchikov, V.V., 318
Zander, M., 41
Zandstra, H.R., 977
Zanger, M., 724, 849
Zanotti, V., 396
Zapata, A., 839
Zapf, L., 1107
Zarakhani, N.G., 988
Zard, S.Z., 787
Zarecki, A., 1058
Zaret, E.H., 634
Zaro, J., 994
Zarytovskii, V.M., 619
Zaugg, H.E., 308, 376, 412, 496, 798
Závada, J., 135, 874, 877–891, 893, 909
Zawadzki, S., 377
Zawalski, R.C., 574
Zbiral, E., 845
Zdanovich, V.I., 693
Zderic, S.A., 811, 917
Zdunek, L.Z., 222
Zecchi, G., 744
Zecchini, G.P., 810
Zeeh, B., 417, 772, 977
Zefirov, N.S., 123, 126, 128, 133, 136, 414, 661, 665, 681, 727, 729
Zeid, I., 921
Zeifman, Yu.V., 783
Zeiler, A.G., 940, 941
Zeilstra, J.J., 1109
Zeiss, H., 75
Zelenina, N.L., 931
Zelenova, L.M., 688
Zelesko, M.J., 547
Zelle, R.E., 339
Zeller, J., 276
Zeller, K., 937, 974, 976
Zembayashi, M., 598
Zenneck, U., 45
Zens, A.P., 109
Zepp, R.G., 214
Zergenyi, J., 927, 932
Zey, R.L., 982
Zhadonva, M.P., 797
Zhao, C., 625
Zhdankin, V.V., 727
Zhdanov, Yu.A., 128
Zhigareva, G.G., 728
Zhil'tsov, S.F., 561
Zhmurova, I.N., 373
Zhulin, V.M., 622
Ziegenbein, W., 429, 541, 547, 838, 908
Zieger, H.E., 299
Ziegler, C.B., Jr., 643
Ziegler, E., 495, 685
Ziegler, F.E., 856, 1028
Ziegler, K., 917
Ziehn, K., 933, 934
Zil'berman, E.N., 496, 497, 788, 789, 792, 816, 860, 862
Zilkha, A., 81, 1114
Ziller, J.W., 1038
Zilm, K.W., 9
Zima, G., 537
Zimmer, H., 1061
Zimmer-Gasser, B., 140
Zimmering, P.E., 294
Zimmerman, H.E., 605, 753, 823, 843, 928, 962, 992, 1020, 1021, 1026, 1041, 1042, 1043
Zimmerman, S.E., 886
Zimmerman, W.T., 911
Zimmermann, G., 120
Zimmermann, H., 129, 336, 717
Zimmermann, M., 847
Zinn, J., 129
Zippel, M., 832, 929
Zmuda, H., 1036
Zohdi, H.F., 948
Zollenkopf, H., 81
Zollinger, H., 227, 344, 448, 449, 450, 452, 467, 471, 503, 570, 577–580, 601, 642, 646
Zolopa, A.R., 428
Zolotoi, A.B., 87
Zoltewicz, J.A., 345, 364, 576, 600
Zombeck, A., 1085
Zon, G., 1040
Zook, H.D., 155, 308, 325, 416, 565, 819, 967
Zoorov, H.H.A., 811
Zoretic, P.A., 536
Zubarev, V.E., 163
Zubiani, G., 559, 818, 826
Zucco, C., 67
Zudin, V.N., 723
Zuech, E.A., 1037, 1038
Zuidema, L.J., 632
Zuika, I.V., 73
Zundel, G., 71
Zupan, M., 479, 529, 725
Zürcher, C., 81, 429, 1115
Zurqiyah, A., 810
Zvezdina, E.A., 797
Zvolinskii, V.P., 491
Zwanenburg, B., 736, 973
Zweifel, G., 107, 403, 552, 555, 556, 652, 695, 703, 704, 705, 707, 818, 826, 917, 980, 981, 997, 999, 1000, 1001
Zweig, A., 479, 962
Zweig, J.S., 817
Zwick, W., 719
Zwiefel, G., 695
Zwierzak, A., 377, 378, 379, 691
Zwiesler, M.L., 549
Zwikker, J.W., 371

SUBJECT INDEX

AAC1 mechanism, 335–337, 341, 349, 351
AAC2 mechanism, 335–338, 340–341, 349
AAL1 mechanism, 335, 337, 341, 349
AAL2 mechanism, 335–337
Absolute configuration, 94–99, 101, 103
Absolute hardness, 228*n*
Abstraction:
  by carbenes, 176, 544
  by free radicals, 169, 216, 610, 613–617, 666, 1111
  of halogens, 616
  of hydride ions, 709, 1050
  internal, 632, 958, 1044, 1045, 1055–1056
  by nitrenes, 177
  polar transition states, 610
Abstract publications, 1126–1130
Acetaldehyde, 124, 783, 862
Acetals:
  acylation of, 539
  in the aldol condensation, 832
  conversion to enol ethers, 904
  dimerization of, 410
  formation of, 1146
  hydrolysis of, 329–331
  oxidation of, 1060
  as protecting groups, 331, 343
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 414
    with organometallic compounds, 409–410, 825
  reduction of, 393–394
  transacetalation of, 345, 790
Acetanilide, 591
Acetic acid, 72, 788
Acetic anhydride:
  in dehydrations, 355, 356, 930
  formation of, 687
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 905
    with ethers, 354
Acetoacetic ester, *see* Ethyl acetoacetate
Acetoacetic ester synthesis, 413, 414
Acetone, hydration of, 783
Acetoxy-de-carboxy-substitution, 1074
Acetoxy fluoride, 479
N-Acetylaminomalonic ester, 413
Acetyl cation, 146
Acetyl chloride, 1108
Acetylene:
  acidity of, 154, 222
  dimerization of, 710
  electronic structure of, 9
  excited state, 207
  reaction:
    with aromatic rings, 480
    with dialkylcopper lithium compounds, 778
  trimerization and tetramerization of, 774
Acetylenes, *see* Alkynes
Acetyl hypofluorite, 529
Acetylide ions:
  acylation of, 440
  alkylation of, 429, 1001
  halogenation of, 551
  reaction:
    with aldehydes or ketones, 836, 838
    with aryl halides, 595
    with boranes, 1001
Acetyl nitrate, 638
Acetyl tosylate, 354
Achiral, definition, 82
Acid:
  Brönsted definition, 218
  Lewis definition, 227
Acid-base theory, 218–236
Acid catalysis, 226–227, 781
Acid dichromate, *see* Chromic acid
Acidity functions, 224–225
Acids, *see* Carboxylic acids; Sulfonic acids; etc.
Acid strengths, 218–223
  of carbon acids, 151–152
  determination of, 545
  effect:
    of medium, 223, 234–236
    of structure, 229–234
    of temperature, 223
  of excited states, 207
  in the gas phase, 234–236
  of Lewis acids, 228, 232, 233
  tables of, 220–222, 230, 236
Aci forms, 69, 787
Acrylonitrile, 541, 665, 723, 746*n*
Actinometer, 217
Activated complexes, 183, 192
  of chiral molecules, 100
Activating groups:
  in electrophilic aromatic substitution, 453, 455–457, 459, 461
  in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 584–585
Activation energy, 183, 197
Activation volumes, 887
Active hydrogen, definition of, 548
Active hydrogen compounds:
  acylation of, 436
  acyloxylation of, 636
  addition to multiple bonds, 711–712, 719
  alkylation of, 411–426
  amination of, 535

Active hydrogen compounds (*Continued*)
  arylation of, 596
  condensation:
    with aldehydes or ketones, 835–841
    with CO_2 and CS_2, 841–842
  conversion:
    to diazo compounds, 534
    to enolates, 546
  dimerization of, 1091
  formation of, 436–441
  halogenation of, 531
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  nitration of, 638
  nitrosation of, 533
  reaction:
    with diazonium ions, 532–533
    with nitroso compounds, 534
O-Acyl-*C*-acyloxy-addition, 861
α-Acylalkyl-de-acyloxy-substitution, 437
α-Acylalkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution, 439
α-Acylalkyl-de-halogenation, 416
α-Acylalkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 829
Acylals, 1079
  formation of, 1146
Acylamino-de-halogenation, 377, 379
Acyl,amino-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 800
Acylation:
  at an aliphatic carbon, 433–441, 537–539, 861
  of amines and ammonia, 370–377
  of aromatic rings, 484–487, 496–497
  definition, 255
  of enamines, 541
  of heterocycles, 645
  of multiple bonds, 718–720
C-Acylation versus O-acylation, 323, 436
N-Acylation of amides and imides, 379
Acyl azides, 380, 943, 984
N-Acylaziridines, 1020
Acyl cations, 146, 486–487, 538, 721
Acyl cleavages, 566–568
Acyl cyanides, 441, 656
Acyl-de-carboxylation, 565
Acyl-de-diazoniation, 649
Acyl-de-hydrogenation, 484, 496, 537
Acyl-de-metallation, 554
Acyl fluorides, 389, 808
N-Acylglycines, 843
Acyl halides:
  addition to multiple bonds, 719, 732
  in the Arndt-Eistert synthesis, 974
  complexes of, 485, 487, 538
  conversion:
    to acyl azides, 380
    to acyl cyanides, 441
    to acyl isocyanates, 381
    to acyl isothiocyanates, 381
    to amides, 370
    to anhydrides, 355
    to carboxylic esters, 346–347
    to imides, 379
    to ketenes, 916
    to ketones, 433–436
    to nitriles, 933
    to other acyl halides, 388, 389
    to peroxides, 357
    to thiol acids and esters, 362
    to trifluorides, 808
  coupling of, 435
  decarboxylation of, 655, 656, 918
  formation of, 1146
  halogenation of, 531–532
  hydrolysis of, 333
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 436
    with aldehydes and ketones, 861
    with alkenes, 537
    with aromatic rings, 484–487, 511
    with diazomethane, 441
    with disodium tetracarbonyl ferrate, 431
    with dithiane salts, 440
    with enamines, 541
    with ethylene oxide, 386
    with Grignard reagents, 825
    with multiple bonds, 719, 732
  reduction of, 389–392, 396, 1102
  in reductive acylation of ketones, 791
Acyl-halo-addition, 732
O-Acylhydroxamic acids, 985
C-Acyl-*N*-hydroxy-elimination, 931
Acyl isocyanates, 379, 381, 863
Acyl isothiocyanates, 381
Acyl nitrites, 1089
Acyloin condensation, 1113–1116
Acyloxy amides, 871
Acyloxyboranes, 377
Acyloxy-de-alkoxylation, 354
Acyloxy-de-halogenation, 353, 355
Acyloxy-de-hydrogenation, 636
Acyloxy epoxides, 980
Acyloxylation, 636
Acyl peroxides, *see* Diacyl peroxides
Acylphenols, 499
Acyl sulfonylhydrazides, 398
N-Acylureas, *see* Ureides
O-Acylureas, 350
Adamantanes, 88, 569, 961–962
Adamantyl cation, 148, 949
2-Adamantyl substrates, solvolysis of, 300
Addition, to multiple bonds, 180, 657–872
Addition compounds, 74–81
Addition-elimination mechanism, 290*n*, 295–296, 538, 592, 594, 599, 643, 1051
Addition transformations, naming of, 253
Additive dimerization, 654
AdE2 mechanism, 658
AdE3 mechanism, 660
Adipic acid, 1065
*Ad*N-*E* mechanism, 295
Air, *see* Autoxidation; Oxygen
Alane, *see* Aluminum hydride

- Alanine, 98
- Alcoholic KOH, 896, 915
- Alcohols:
  - acidity of, 231, 235
  - addition to multiple bonds, 684–685, 719, 789–793, 807, 860
  - carbocations from, 142, 144, 147
  - carboxylation of, 432
  - cleavage of, 565, 567, 992
  - conversion:
    - to alkyl halides, 382–384
    - to amides, 638
    - to amines, 367
    - to azides, 380
    - to inorganic esters, 358
    - to mercaptans, 360
    - to nitriles, 430
    - to peroxides, 357
    - to phthalimides, 378
    - to tetrahydrofurans, 631–632
    - to xanthates, 905
  - coupling of, 407–408
  - dehydration of, 344–345, 901–903, 905
  - formation of, 1146
  - fragmentation of, 927
  - haloform reaction of, 567
  - in hydrocarboxylation, 722
  - hydrogenolysis of, 392
  - in Mannich reaction, 800
  - as nucleophiles, 342, 344–353
  - nucleophilic substitution of, 311, 312
  - oxidation of, 1057–1060, 1065, 1084
  - protection of, 684–685
  - reaction:
    - with alkenes and CO, 779
    - with aromatic rings, 479–482
    - with diazo ketones, 974
    - with dichloroboranes, 998
    - with $LiAlH_4$, 813, 1094
    - with mercaptans, 361
    - with ozonides, 1066
    - with sulfonic acid derivatives, 445
    - with thionyl chloride, 287
  - rearrangement of, 943, 959, 986, 992
  - reductive alkylation of, 791
  - resolution of, 105
- Alcoholysis:
  - of acyl halides, 346
  - of amides, 353
  - of anhydrides, 347
  - of carboxylic acids, 348–351
  - of carboxylic esters, 351–352
  - of epoxides, 346
- Aldehyde ammonias, 796
- Aldehydes:
  - acylation of, 861
  - in acylation of heterocycles, 645
  - acyloxylation of, 636
  - addition to multiple bonds, 712, 718–720, 862
  - in the aldol condensation, 829–834
  - alkylation of, 417–419
  - in the benzoin condensation, 859
  - bimolecular reduction of, 1110–1113
  - Cannizzaro reaction of, 1117–1119
  - condensation:
    - with active hydrogen compounds, 835–841, 845
    - with anhydrides, 842
    - with aromatic rings, 493–496
    - with esters, 835
    - with halo esters, 843–844
    - with phosphoranes, 845–853
  - conversion:
    - to acetals, 789–791
    - to amides, 553, 638
    - to anhydrides, 636
    - to carboxylic esters, 1084
    - to dihalides, 807–809
    - to episulfides, 867
    - to epoxides, 864–866
    - to formates, 991
    - to halo alcohols and ethers, 807
    - to ketones, 418–419, 422, 976–977
    - to nitriles, 806–807
    - to oximes, 805–806
    - to phenols, 1073
    - to silyl enol ethers, 547
    - to unsaturated aldehydes, 913, 1054
  - 2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 867–868
  - cyclodehydration of, 494
  - decarboxylation of, 506, 655–656, 955
  - formation of, 214, 1147
  - halogenation of, 626
  - homologization of, 976–977
  - in Mannich reaction, 800–802
  - oxidation of, 629–631, 633, 991
  - in Passerini and Ugi reactions, 870–871
  - photochemistry of, 213–215
  - protection of, 789, 811
  - reaction:
    - with alcohols, 789–790
    - with alkenes, 856–858, 868
    - with alkynyl ethers, 858–859
    - with amines, 796–802, 806
    - with ammonia, 796, 798–802
    - with HCN, 854–855
    - with hydrazines, 804–806, 1096–1098
    - with ketenes, 685, 867
    - with mercaptans or H_2S, 793–795
    - with metalated aldimines, 872
    - with organometallic compounds, 816–825
    - with sodium bisulfite, 795
    - with thiobenzilic acid, 941
    - with water, 783
  - rearrangement of, 967–968, 986, 1032
  - reduction of, 809–814, 1096–1098, 1110–1113
  - in reductive alkylations, 791, 795, 798–800
  - Reformatsky reaction of, 822–824
  - resolution of, 105
  - selenation of, 536
  - sulfonation of, 537
  - in Tishchenko reaction, 1119
  - in Tollens' reaction, 844

Aldehydes (*Continued*)
  trimerization and polymerization of, 862
  see also Dialdehydes; Unsaturated Aldehydes; etc.
Aldimines, *see* Imines
Aldol condensation, 829–834, 844
Aldoximes, *see* Oximes
"Aldrich Library of Infrared Spectra," 1134
Alicyclic compounds, formation of, 1148
Aliphatic substitution, *see* Electrophilic substitution; Free-radical substitution; Nucleophilic substitution
Alkali fusion of aryl sulfonates, 588
Alkaloids, 959*n*
Alkanediazotates, 381
Alkanes:
  acylation of, 538
  addition to alkenes, 708–709
  alkylation of, 539–540
  amination of, 369
  carbocations from, 142, 144
  carboxylation of, 432
  chlorosulfonation and chlorosulfenation of, 637
  cleavage of, 568–569
  conversion to hydroperoxides, 633
  coupling of, 639
  dipole moments, 15
  formation of, 1149
  halogenation of, 620–624
  hydrogen exchange of, 523
  hydroxylation of, 627
  insertion by carbenes, 542–544
  nitration of, 637–638
  nitrosation of, 534
  positions of abstraction, 614
  reaction:
    with aromatic rings, 480
    with nitrenes, 535–536
  rearrangement of, 960–962
Alkenes:
  acylation of, 537–539, 718–720
  acyloxylation of, 636
  addition:
    of active hydrogen compounds, 711–712
    of acyl halides, 732
    of alcohols and phenols, 684–685
    of alkanes and alkenes, 708–711
    of alkyl halides, 730–732
    of ammonia and amines, 689
    of boranes, 702–707, 717–718
    of carbenes and carbenoids, 768–774
    of carboxylic acids, 686
    to formaldehyde, 856–858
    of HCN, 723
    of HOX and ROX, 726–727
    of hydrogen halides, 679–681
    to nitriles, 860–861
    of nitrogen compounds, 689–691, 728–730, 738–745
    of OH and CN, 745
    of organometallic compounds, 713–717
    of RH, 708–720
    of sulfur compounds, 687–688, 727–728, 742
  addition reactions:
    mechanisms, 657–670
    orientation and reactivity, 670–676
    stereochemical orientation, 675–676
  alkylation of, 642–643
  allylic halogenation of, 624–626
  allylic hydroxylation of, 627–628
  amidation of, 535
  amination of, 535
  aminomethylation of, 723
  arylation of, 642–643
  carbocations from, 142, 144
  complexes of, 75, 92, 229
  conversion:
    to aziridines, 741
    to cyclopropanes, 768–774
    to hydroperoxides, 634–635
    to lactones, 742
  coupling of, 651
  2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 751–756, 758–768, 869
  dicarbalkoxylation of, 779
  Diels-Alder reactions of, 745–758
  1,3-dipolar addition to, 743–745
  double bond migration in, 520–521, 524–527, 696–698, 917, 1014–1016, 1098
  epoxidation of, 733, 735–736
  exchange with boranes, 916–917
  formation, 214, 1149
  formylation of, 539
  halogenation of, 724–726
  hydration of, 681–682
  hydroboration of, 702–707
  hydrocarboxylation of, 720–722
  hydroformylation of, 722–723
  hydrogenation of, 104, 691–699
  hydrometallation of, 707–708
  hydroxylation of, 732–734
  metathesis of, 1036
  oxidation of, 1077, 1084–1086
  oxidative cleavage of, 1066–1072
  oxyamination of, 738–739
  oxymercuration of, 681
  ozonolysis of, 1066–1070
  photochemistry of, 215
  positions of abstraction, 615
  reaction:
    with an alkyl halide and a carbonyl compound, 841
    with aromatic rings, 479–483
    with singlet oxygen, 634–635, 738
  rearrangement of, 986, 1014–1016
  resolution of, 107
  stability of, 889
  see also Dienes; Trienes; etc.
Alkenylboranes, 435

Alkenylboronic acids, 552
Alkoxide ions:
  in carbalkoxylation of halides, 433
  cleavage of, 517, 565
  deoxidation of, 903
  as nucleophiles, 337, 342–347, 444, 589, 684, 793, 970, 971, 978
  oxidation of, 1059
Alkoxyalumino hydrides, 813
Alkoxycarbocations, 992
Alkoxycarbonylalkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution, 437
α-Alkoxycarbonylalkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 835
Alkoxycarbonyl-de-halogenation, 431, 597
Alkoxycarbonyl-de-hydrogenation, 645
Alkoxy-de-acyloxy-substitution, 347
Alkoxy-de-alkoxylation, 351
S-Alkoxy-de-chlorination, 444
Alkoxy-de-halogenation, 342, 346, 589
Alkoxy-de-hydroxylation, 345, 346, 348
Alkoxy-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution, 343
Alkoxy,halo-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 807
Alkoxy-halo-elimination, 925
Alkoxy,oxo-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution, 792
Alkoxysilanes, 791
Alkoxysulfonium salts, 1082
Alkylaluminum cyanides, 724
Alkylaluminum halides, 711
Alkylation:
  of aldehydes, 417–419
  at an aliphatic carbon, 399–430
  of alkanes, 539–540
  of alkenes, 642–644
  of alkynes, 429
  of amines, 423
  of aromatic compounds, 479–484, 598–599, 643–645
  of carboxylic acids, 421, 426, 428, 709
  of carboxylic esters, 416–418, 424
  definition, 255
  of diazonium ions, 649
  of dithianes, 421–422
  of enamines, 540–542
  of enolates, 411–421, 714
  of heterocycles, 598–599, 645
  of hydrazones, 417
  of imines, 417, 419*n*
  of ketones, 401, 416–420, 428, 540–542, 733
  of nitriles, 416, 418
  of oxazines and oxazolines, 424–426
  at a position α to a hetero atom, 421–424
  of selenoxides, 421
  of sulfones and sulfonates, 420
  with trialkylboranes, 426–428
C-Alkylation versus O-alkylation, 323–325, 412
N-Alkylation, of amides and imides, 377
O-Alkyl-*C*-alkoxy-addition, 789
O-Alkyl-*C*-alkoxy-elimination, 329
Alkylamino-de-amination, 368, 376
Alkylamino-de-hydrogenation, 535
Alkyl-*NNO*-azoxy-de-halogenation, 381
B-Alkyl-9-BBN compounds, 426–428, 717, 917, 999
9-Alkyl-9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonanes, *see* B-Alkyl-9-BBN compounds
Alkyl borates, 328, 550
B-Alkylborinates, 717
N-Alkylcarbamoyl-de-hydrogenation, 492
Alkyl chloroformates, 287, 370, 395, 441
Alkyl chlorosulfites, 287, 354, 384
Alkyl-de-acyloxy-substitution, 409, 434
Alkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution, 409
Alkyl-de-alkylthio-substitution, 411
Alkyl-de-halogenation, 400, 426, 433, 595
Alkyl-de-hydrogenation, 479, 539, 598, 642
Alkyl-de-oxido-substitution, 824
Alkyl-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution, 407
Alkyl-de-dialkylboration, 651
Alkyldioxy-de-hydrogenation, 635
Alkyldiphenylsulfonium salts, 359
2-(2-Alkyl-1,3-dithianyl)-de-halogenation, 421
Alkyl formates, 347, 348*n*, 719, 825
Alkyl fluorides, 142, 655
Alkylfluorosulfonates, 312
Alkyl groups, field effects of, 17–18, 235, 247
Alkyl halides:
  addition to multiple bonds, 719, 730–732, 777, 778
  in amine rearrangements, 504
  carbocations from, 144
  conversion:
    to aldehydes and ketones, 430–431
    to alkenes, 875–877, 887, 891, 894, 898, 914–916
    to amides, 377–379
    to amines, 364–366
    to azides, 380
    to azoxy compounds, 381
    to carbamates, 381
    to carboxylic acids and derivatives, 431–433
    to ethers, 342–343
    to inorganic esters, 358
    to isocyanates, 380–381
    to isothiocyanates, 380–381
    to nitriles, 429
    to nitro compounds, 380
    to organometallic compounds, 558–561
    to oxonium salts, 356
    to peroxides, 356–357
  coupling of, 399–408, 1090–1091
  ethanolysis of, 239

Alkyl halides (*Continued*)
  formation of, 287, 1151
  fragmentation of, 926–927
  halogenation of, 612–613
  homologization of, 423
  hydrolysis of, 240, 326
  oxidation of, 1081–1083
  reaction:
    with acetylide ions, 429
    with active hydrogen compounds, 412–426
    with an alkene and a carbonyl compound, 841
    with aromatic rings, 479–483
    with carboxylate ions, 353–354
    with cyanide ions, 429–430
    with enamines, 540–542
    with halide ions, 381–382
    with metalated aldimines, 872
    with oximes, 359
    with phosphines, 845
    with sulfur compounds, 360–364
  rearrangement of, 960
  reduction of, 548
  in the Ritter reaction, 861
  see also Dihalides; Halo ketones; etc.
Alkyl-halo-addition, 730
Alkyl-halo-elimination, 926
C-Alkyl-*O*-halomagnesio-addition, 826
C-Alkyl-*S*-halomagnesio-addition, 829
Alkyl hypohalites, 872, 1045
Alkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 845
Alkylidineoxetanes, 868
Alkylimino-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 796
Alkyl nitrates, 357–358, 638
Alkyl nitrites:
  in amine reduction, 646
  in arylation reactions, 641, 642
  exchange with alcohols, 358
  formation of, 357–358, 380
  hydrolysis of, 328
  photolysis of, 1044–1045
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 534
    with amines and CuCl, 1084
    with nitro compounds, 787
Alkylolysis, 568
O-Alkyl oximes, *see* Oxime ethers
Alkyloxyphosphonium perchlorates, 367
Alkyl perchlorates, 312
Alkyl phosphates, 88, 328, 357
Alkyl phosphonothionates, 848
Alkyl picrates, 315*n*
Alkyl sulfates:
  conversion:
    to alkenes, 906
    to amides, 377
    to amines, 365
    to ethers, 343
    to halides, 382
    to mercaptans and sulfides, 360
    to peroxides, 356
    to sulfones, 363
    to thiocyanates, 364
  coupling of, 407
  formation of, 357–358
  hydrolysis of, 328
  reaction:
    with acetylides, 429
    with active hydrogen compounds, 414
    with aromatic rings, 480
    with cyanide ion, 430
    with oximes, 359
Alkyl sulfinates, 88, 363, 551, 913
Alkyl sulfites, 88, 328
Alkylsulfo-chloro-addition, 727
Alkylsulfo-de-halogenation, 363
Alkylsulfo-de-hydrogenation, 476
Alkyl sulfonates:
  alkylation of, 420
  carbonylation of, 432
  conversion:
    to alkenes, 906
    to amides, 377, 378
    to amines, 365
    to halides, 382
    to mercaptans and sulfides, 360
    to peroxides, 356–357
    to sulfones, 443, 446
    to thiocyanates, 364
  coupling of, 407
  formation of, 1172
  hydrolysis of, 328, 443, 444
  nucleophilic substitution of, 312
  oxidation of, 1081, 1083
  reaction:
    with acetylides, 429
    with active hydrogen compounds, 414
    with aromatic rings, 480
    with cyanide ion, 430
    with disodium tetracarbonylferrate, 431
  reduction of, 391, 392
Alkylsulfonylation, 476
Alkylsulfuric acids, 357–358, 682, 903
Alkylthio-de-dialkylboration, 650
Alkylthio-de-halogenation, 360, 362, 589
Alkylthio-de-hydrogenation, 536
Alkylthioalkylation, 496
Alkylthioalkyl-de-hydrogenation, 496
Alkyl thiolchloroformates, 491
Alkyl tosylates, *see* Alkyl sulfonates
Alkyne complexes, 683
Alkynes:
  acidity of, 154, 234
  acylation of, 718, 720
  addition:
    of active hydrogen compounds, 712
    of acyl halides, 732
    of alcohols and phenols, 684
    to aldehydes and ketones, 836, 838
    of alkyl halides, 731
    of alkynes, 710
    of boranes, 706–707, 718
    of carbenes and carbenoids, 770
    of carboxylic acids, 686
    of HCN, 723
    of hydrogen halides, 680
    of nitrogen compounds, 689–690, 728–730, 739

    of ROX, 727
    of sulfur compounds, 687–688, 728
    of two alkyl groups, 777–778
  addition reactions:
    mechanisms, 657, 659–661, 663, 666–668
    orientation and reactivity, 671–672
  alkylation of, 429
  conversion:
    to butadienes, 779
    to carboxylic acids, 1086
  coupling of, 639–640
  2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 759, 763–766
  dicarbalkoxylation of, 779
  in the Diels-Alder reaction, 746
  1,3-dipolar addition to, 744, 745
  formation of, 1151
  halogenation of, 726
  hydration of, 683–684
  hydroboration of, 706–707
  hydrocarboxylation of, 720–721
  hydroformylation of, 722
  hydrogenation of, 695, 696
  hydroxylation of, 628
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  metallation of, 545, 547
  metathesis of, 1038
  oxidation of, 1077, 1088
  oxidative cleavage of, 1071, 1072
  ozonolysis of, 1067
  reaction with boranes, 706–707, 917
  trimerization and tetramerization of, 774
  triple bond migrations in, 525
Alkynyl aldehydes and ketones, 929
Alkynyl-de-halogenation, 429
Alkynyl ethers, 683, 858, 916
Alkynyl ketones, 1077, 1098
Alkynyl thioethers, 916, 1086
Allene oxides, 735
Allenes:
  addition:
    of carbenes and carbenoids, 770, 773
    of nitrogen compounds, 728, 730
  addition reactions, 675
  chirality of, 90–91
  cyclic, 138
  2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 758, 759, 762, 868, 869
  in the Diels-Alder reaction, 746
  epoxidation of, 735
  formation of, 290, 670, 1152
  halogenation of, 726
  hydration of, 684
  hydrogenation of, 695
  isomerism of, 110*n*
  rearrangement of, 1022
Allophanates, 792
Allylamines, 1031
Allylbenzenes, 1042
Allyl bromide, 1002
N-Allyl enamines, 1031
Allylic alcohols, 904, 913–914, 964, 1030
Allylic anions, 30, 153, 669, 745
Allylic cations, 30, 144, 288, 668, 745, 760, 777, 966, 1011
Allylic ethers, 413, 935, 1028–1033
Allylic halides, coupling of, 405–406
Allylic halogenation, 624
Allylic hydroperoxylation, 633
Allylic hydroxylation, 627
Allylic radicals, 30, 164, 615, 669, 1015
Allylic rearrangements, *see* Rearrangements, allylic
Allylic sulfoxides, 1034
Allylic thioethers, 1031
Allylimines, 1031
Allyllithium compounds, 557
π-Allylpalladium chloride, 1040
Allylthiophenols, 1031
Allyltributylstannane, 406
Allyl vinyl ethers, 1030
Allyl vinyl sulfides, 1031
Allyl vinyl sulfones, 1031
Alpha effect, 310, 375
Alpha prime-beta mechanism, 907–909
Alpha scale, for hydrogen bonds, 72
Alternant hydrocarbons, 47, 462, 586, 618
Alternating axis of symmetry, 84–85
Aluminum, 1110
Aluminum amalgam, 413
Aluminum *t*-butoxide, 1059
Aluminum chloride, 480–487, 499–500, 510, 730–731, 961–962, 990*n*
Aluminum ethoxide, 1119
Aluminum hydride, 395, 694, 707, 809, 810, 1095, 1096, 1099, 1103
Aluminum isopropoxide, 785, 811, 813–814
Aluminum oxide, 901, 903, 904
Ambident nucleophiles, 322–325
Ambident substrates, 325–326
Amidals, 862
Amidation:
  of alkenes, 535
  of aromatic rings, 473, 492
Amide ion, in the Sommelet-Hauser rearrangement, 605
Amide ions, as nucleophiles, 365, 591, 592, 599–600
Amides:
  N-acylation of, 379
  addition to multiple bonds, 689
  alcoholysis of, 353
  N-alkylation of, 377
  O-alkylation of, 359
  conversion:
    to anhydrides, 355, 359
    to thiomides, 794
    to trifluorides, 808
  cyclization of, 495
  dehydration of, 902, 932–933
  formation of, 1152
  N-halogenation of, 574
  hydrolysis of, 239, 338–341
  hydroxylation of, 628
  isomerism of, 111
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  nitration of, 638
  N-nitration of, 573
  N-nitrosation of, 572
  protonation site, 222*n*
  pyrolysis of, 905

- Amides (*Continued*)
  - reaction:
    - with aldehydes, 798
    - with alkynyl ethers, 859
    - with amines, 376
    - with dithiane salts, 440
    - with Grignard reagents, 825
    - with organometallic compounds, 435
  - rearrangement of, 504, 983–984
  - reduction of, 398, 816, 1099–1100
  - sulfenylation of, 536
- Amide N-sulfo chlorides, 934
- Amidines, formation of, 1152
- Amidomercuration, 691
- Aminals, 798, 1061
- Amination:
  - of aldehydes, 638
  - of alkanes, 369
  - of alkenes, 535
  - of aromatic rings, 472, 599–601
  - of heterocycles, 599–600
- Amine ditosylates, 312, 354, 387, 395
- Amine oxides:
  - chirality of, 86
  - cleavage of, 909
  - formation of, 1088
  - rearrangement of, 994
  - reduction of, 1107–1108
- Amines:
  - acylation of, 370–377
  - addition to multiple bonds, 689–691, 719, 740, 796–804
  - alkylation of, 414
  - C-alkylation of, 423
  - aminoalkylation of, 496
  - in aminomethylation of alkenes,723
  - basicity of, 233–236
  - chirality of, 92–93
  - cleavage of, 387–388
  - conversion:
    - to alkenes, 906–910
    - to alkyl halides, 387
    - to alkyl nitrates, 358
    - to azides, 573
    - to azo compounds, 573
    - to enamines, 1054
    - to halides, 648
    - to phenols, 588
    - to thiocyanates, 364
    - to triazenes, 573
  - coupling with diazonium ions, 471
  - dealkylation of, 361
  - deamination of, 313–314, 646
  - dehydrogenation of, 1061
  - diazotization of, 313–314, 329, 570–571
  - formation of, 1153
  - formylation of, 487–488, 490–491
  - Friedel-Crafts reactions of, 481, 483, 485, 497
  - halogenation of, 476–477
  - N-halogenation of, 574
  - in hydrocarboxylation, 722
  - hydroxylalkylation of, 494
  - hydroxylation of, 629
  - introduction of diazonium groups, 472
  - in Mannich reaction, 800–802
  - nitration of, 469
  - N-nitration of, 573
  - nitrosation of, 470–471
  - N-nitrosation of, 572
  - as nucleophiles, 364–372, 375, 590–592, 689–691, 796–804, 855–856
  - nucleophilic substitutions of, 312–314
  - optical activity of, 86–87
  - oxidation of, 1050, 1061, 1081–1084, 1086–1088, 1092
  - protection of, 445, 469
  - reaction:
    - with acyl halides, 370, 916
    - with alcohols, 366
    - with aldehydes, 638
    - with alkyl halides, 364
    - with alkyl sulfates and sulfonates, 365
    - with amides, 376
    - with anhydrides, 371
    - with aryl compounds, 578
    - with carbon monoxide, 574–575
    - with carboxylic acids, 371–374
    - with carboxylic esters, 375–376
    - with chloroform, 369
    - with cyanogen bromide, 387–388
    - with diazo compounds, 368
    - with epoxides, 369
    - with formaldehyde and aromatic rings, 496
    - with halo ketones, 971
    - with heterocycles, 600
    - with multiple bonds, 742
    - with palladium complexes, 739
    - with sulfonyl halides, 445
  - rearrangements of, 503–504, 964–965, 990
  - reduction of, 395
  - reductive alkylation of, 798–800
  - in Strecker synthesis, 855
  - sulfonation of, 473
  - thioalkylation of, 496
  - thiocyanation of, 476
  - transamination of, 368
  - in the Ugi reaction, 871
  - in the Willgerodt reaction, 1119–1120
- Aminium radical ions, 472, 615, 622
- Amino acids:
  - conversion:
    - to amido ketones, 565
    - to fluoro acids, 387
    - to lactams, 372
  - formation of, 1154
  - protection of, 370, 373
- Amino alcohols, *see* Hydroxyamines
- Aminoalkylation, 490, 496
- Aminoboranes, 494
- Amino-de-acyloxy-substitution, 371
- Amino-de-alkoxylation, 375
- *S*-Amino-de-chlorination, 445
- Amino-de-halogenation, 364, 366, 370, 590
- Amino-de-hydrogenation, 369, 472, 599, 638
- Amino-de-hydroxylation, 366, 371, 591
- Amino-de-metallation, 553
- Amino ethers, 346, 409

Amino ketones:
  formation of, 1154
  rearrangement of, 968
Aminomalononitriles, 856
Amino mercaptans, formation of, 1154
Aminomercuration, 690, 740
Aminomethylation, 723
Aminonitrenes, 741
Amino ortho esters, 982
Aminophenols, *see* Hydroxyamines
Aminopyridines, 413
Amino thioethers, 409, 742
5-Amino-2,4,6-triiodo-N,N,N′,N′-tetramethylisophthalamide, 140
Ammonia:
  addition to multiple bonds, 689–690, 796, 798–803
  in Birch reduction, 700
  bond angles, 6, 20–21
  inversion of, 86
  in Mannich reaction, 800–802
  as nucleophile, 364–366, 368–371, 375, 590–592, 689–690, 796, 798–803, 855–856
  reaction:
    with acyl halides, 370
    with aldehydes, 638, 796
    with alkyl halides, 364
    with alkyl sulfates and sulfonates, 365
    with anhydrides, 371
    with carboxylic acids, 371
    with carboxylic esters, 375
    with copper carboxylates, 601
    with diazo compounds, 368, 974
    with epoxides, 368–369
    with multiple bonds, 742
    to give NH, 177
    with ozonides, 1066
    with sulfonyl halides, 445
  reductive alkylation of, 798–800
  in Strecker synthesis, 855
  in the Ugi reaction, 871
  in the Willgerodt reaction, 1119
Ammonium chloride, 593, 855
Ammonium dihydrogen phosphate, 807
Ammonium peroxydisulfate, 645
Ammonium polysulfide, 1119
Ammonium sulfide, 1103
Anchimeric assistance, 268, 272–278, 280–285, 946, 947, 950, 951, 1011
  in free radical reactions, 612–613
Angular methyl group, oxidation of, 1045
Anhydrides:
  addition to multiple bonds, 719
  bisdecarboxylation of, 1076
  condensation with aldehydes, 842
  conversion:
    to acyl azides, 380
    to acyl fluorides, 389
    to amides, 371
    to esters, 347
    to imides, 371
    to mixed anhydrides, 358
    to peroxides, 357
    to thiol acids and esters, 362
  disproportionation of, 355
  formation of, 1154
  halogenation of, 531–532
  hydrolysis of, 333
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 436
    with aldehydes and ketones, 437, 861
    with alkenes, 538
    with amino acids, 565
    with aromatic rings, 485, 486
    with enamines, 541
    with Grignard reagents, 825
    with organometallic compounds, 434, 825
    with phosphoranes, 853
    with SF_4, 808
  reduction of, 397, 1100–1102
Aniline, 235
Anionic cleavage, 533, 534, 562–568
1,3-Anionic cycloadditions, 745
Anionotropic rearrangements, 942
Annellation, 41, 43
Annual Reviews, 1137
Annulenes, 48–62
[18] Annulene, 639
Anomeric effect, 128
Antarafacial reactions, 756, 761, 762, 776, 850, 922, 1014–1017, 1019
Anthracenes, 34, 40, 1081
Anthranilic acid, 582
Anthraquinone, 1081
Anti addition, 658–663, 665–667, 673, 675, 696, 729, 730, 733, 734, 771, 780, 857
Antiaromaticity, 51–54, 60–63, 672, 737, 741
Antibonding orbitals, 4–5, 8–9, 11, 47–48, 752
Anticlinal conformation, 122
Anti conformation, 122, 123
Anti elimination, 875–880, 886, 888, 889, 892, 897*n*, 909, 920, 924
Anti isomers, 110
Anti-Markovnikov addition, 552, 553, 673, 674, 680, 682, 687, 688, 690, 705
Antimony pentachloride, 431–432, 478, 480*n*, 725
Antimony pentafluoride, 142–145, 219, 220, 524
Antiperiplanar conformation, 122, 874, 876–879, 927, 946
A1 mechanism, 311, 330, 332, 335
Aprotic solvents, 236, 308, 316–317, 320, 325
Arbuzov reaction, 848
Arenes:
  acylation of, 484–487
  acyloxylation of, 636
  alkylation of, 479–484
  amidation of, 492
  amination of, 472–473
  carboxylation of, 491–492
  cleavage of, 505–506
  conversion to organopalladium compounds, 643

- Arenes (*Continued*)
  - coupling of, 484, 640–644
  - coupling with diazonium ions, 471
  - cyanation of, 497
  - deuteration of, 467
  - in the Diels-Alder reaction, 747
  - electrocyclic rearrangements of, 1009
  - formation of, 1154
  - formylation of, 487–491
  - haloalkylation of, 495
  - halogenation of, 476–479, 620
  - halosulfonation of, 475
  - hydrogenation of, 700–702
  - hydrogen exchange, 467
  - hydroxylation of, 498, 628
  - hydroxyalkylation of, 493
  - insertion by carbenes, 542
  - mercuration of, 547
  - metallation of, 545
  - nitration of, 468–470
  - oxidation of, 1073, 1077, 1079, 1081
  - oxidative cleavage of, 1071–1073
  - ozonolysis of, 1067
  - positions of abstraction, 615
  - reaction with carbenes, 771
  - rearrangement of, 505–506, 508
  - sulfonation of, 473–475
  - sulfonylation of, 476
  - sulfurization of, 475
- Arenium-ion mechanism, 447–453, 506, 507
  - orientation and reactivity, 453–467
- Arenium ions, 144, 279, 448–462, 467, 484, 969
- Arndt-Eistert synthesis, 974–976
- Aromatic compounds, complexes of, 75–76, 229
- Aromaticity, 37–64
- Aromatic rings, as neighboring groups, 277–280
- Aromatic sextet, 26, 37–47
- Aromatic side chains, oxidation of, 1072, 1079
- Aromatic substitution, *see* Electrophilic substitution; Free-radical substitution; Nucleophilic substitution
- Aromatization, 1052–1054
- Aroxide ions, as nucleophiles, 342–343, 347, 589
- Aroxy tetrazoles, 594
- Arrhenius activation energy, 197
- Arrow convention, 182
- Arsines, 848
- Arylation:
  - of alkenes, 642–643
  - of aromatic rings, 599, 611–612, 640–641, 643–644
  - of aryl halides, 597
  - Friedel-Crafts, 484
  - of heterocycles, 598–599
  - photochemical, 644
- Arylazo-de-hydrogenation, 471
- Arylazo-de-hydroxyalkyl-substitution, 509
- Aryl cations, 579, 603
- *S*-Aryl-de-chlorination, 446
- Aryl-de-hydrogenation, 640
- Aryldiazenecarboxylate ions, 647
- Aryl diethyl phosphates, 592, 594
- Aryl halides:
  - carbalkoxylation of, 432
  - conversion:
    - to aldehydes, 431
    - to amines, 590–591
    - to arylpalladium compounds, 643
    - to carboxylic esters, 589, 597
    - to ethers, 589
    - to nitriles, 594
    - to organometallic compounds, 558–560
  - coupling of, 399, 401–404, 406, 597–598
  - dehalogenation of, 510–511
  - formation of, 1155
  - hydrolysis of, 588
  - reaction:
    - with active hydrogen compounds, 596
    - with arenes, 644
    - with carboxylic esters, 417
    - with enamines, 541
    - with halide ions, 593
    - with organometallic compounds, 595
  - rearrangement of, 510
- Arylhyrazono-de-dihydrobisubstitution, 532
- Aryllead tricarboxylates, 597, 644
- Arylmercury compounds, formation of, 547
- Arylmethanes, oxidation of, 1079
- Aryl phosphates, 593
- Aryl sulfonates, 591, 594, 595
- Arylsulfonic trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydrides, 476
- Arylthallium bis(trifluoroacetates), 547
  - conversion:
    - to biaryls, 644
    - to carboxylic esters, 555
    - to halides, 552
    - to nitriles, 555–556
    - to phenols, 549
- Arylthallium difluorides, 552
- O-Arylureas, 594
- Arynes, 580–582, 584, 586
- A-SE2 mechanism, 331, 332, 662
- Asymmetric atoms, 85–88
- Asymmetric synthesis, 102–104, 403, 417, 426, 693, 705, 711, 722, 736, 1030
- Ate complexes, 826
  - definition, 228
- "Atlas of Spectral Data," 1134
- Atomic orbitals, linear combination of, 5
- Atropisomers, 90
- A2 mechanism, 311, 330, 332, 335
- Autoxidation, 633, 1061, 1065, 1072, 1087, 1092
- Auxochromes, 206
- Axial bonds, 125–128
- Azabullvalenes, 1025*n*
- Aza-Cope rearrangement, 1031
- Azasulfenylation, 742
- Azeotropic data, 1134
- Azide ion, 380, 445, 602, 740–741

Azides:
  addition to multiple bonds, 743, 744
  conversion:
    to amines, 591
    to nitriles, 934
  formation of, 1155
  hydrolysis of, 588
  nitrenes from, 176
  reaction:
    with aromatic rings, 473
    with chloroboranes, 553
    with CO, 575
    with double bonds, 741
  rearrangement of, 984, 986
  reduction of, 1106
Azido alcohols, 380
(Azidochloromethylene)dimethylammonium chloride, 472
Azido-de-diazoniation, 602
Azido-de-halogenation, 380
Azido-de-metallation, 554
Azido-iodo-addition, 729
Azidomercuration, 691
Azidomethyl phenyl sulfide, 554
Azido sulfides, 742
Azines, 804
Aziridines:
  addition to multiple bonds, 744
  alcoholysis of, 346
  amination of, 369
  chirality of, 87
  conversion to alkenes, 923
  formation of, 177, 1156
  reduction of, 396
  nucleophilic substitution of, 311, 325
Azirines, 741, 982
Azlactones, 843
Azo compounds:
  in arylations, 641
  cleavage of, 168, 608, 641
  conversion to amines, 591
  formation of, 177, 1156
  isomerism of, 110
  oxidation of, 1088
  photolysis of, 213
  reductive of, 1106, 1109–1110
  reductive alkylation of, 800
  tautomerization of, 533
Azo crown ethers, isomerization of, 215
Azo hydroperoxides, 628
Azonines, 56
Azo sulfides, 941
Azoxy compounds:
  addition to multiple bonds, 744
  formation of, 1156
  rearrangement of, 1047
  reduction of, 1107–1110
Azulenes, 45–47, 210, 1052

BAC1 mechanism, 335–337
BAC2 mechanism, 335–337, 339–341, 375
Backside attack, 256
Baeyer test, 733
Baeyer-Villiger rearrangement, 990–991
Bakelite polymers, 493
Baker-Nathan effect, 14*n*, 65, 303, 457
Baldwin ring-closure rules, 187
BAL1 mechanism, 335, 337, 341
BAL2 mechanism, 335, 337, 344, 376
Bamberger rearrangement, 606
Bamford-Stevens reaction, 911
Banana bonds, 131
Barbaralane, 1025
Barbier reaction, 817
Barbier-Wieland procedure, 1071
Barbituric acid, 379
Barium permanganate, 1087, 1092
Barium pernitride, 871
Barrelene, 1027, 1041*n*
Barrier to rotation, 121–123
Barton reaction, 1044
Base:
  Brönsted definition, 218
  Lewis definition, 227
Base catalysis, 226–227, 781
Base-catalyzed condensations, 829–854
Base strength, 218–223
  correlation with nucleophilicity, 305–308
  effect:
    of medium, 223, 234–236
    of structure, 229–234
    of temperature, 223
  in the gas phase, 234–236
  of Lewis bases, 233
  tables of, 220–222, 233
Basis sets of orbitals, 753–754, 1006, 1016
Basketanes, 1040
Basketene, 1026
Bathochromic shifts, 205, 206
9-BBN, 426–427, 694, 704, 707, 810, 812
  selectivity, 1095
Beckmann rearrangement, 946, 949, 987–989
  abnormal, 931
Beilstein, 1130–1132, 1141
Benedict's solution, 629
Bent benzene rings, 35, 140
Bent bonds, 131
Benzaldehyde, 917
Benzene:
  halogenation of, 726
  structure of, 24–26
  oxidation of, 1071, 1081
  valence isomers of, 768, 1027
Benzeneboronic acid, 494
Benzenechromium tricarbonyl, 76
Benzenediazonium chloride, 570
Benzene oxide, 1026
Benzeneseleninic anhydride, 331, 536, 785, 1054, 1061, 1062, 1077, 1079, 1083
Benzeneselenyl halides, 536
Benzenesulfonyl chloride, 348
Benzenonium ion, 277–279, 450–451, 457
Benzhydrol, 216
Benzidine rearrangement, 1034–1036
Benzil-benzilic acid rearrangement, 969–970
Benzilic acids, 969–970
Benzils, 436, 597
Benzocyclopropene, 136
Benzoin condensation, 859–860
Benzophenones:
  excited states, 210, 216
  irradiation of, 1055–1056, 1078, 1111
Benzoyl chloride, 436

Benzoyl peroxide, 400, 637, 1086
Benzpinacol, 216
Benzvalene, 1027
Benzyldimethylaminopropylcarbodiimide, 985
Benzylic anions, 47, 153
Benzylic cations, 47, 145
Benzylic halides, oxidation of, 1082
Benzylic radicals, 47, 164, 616
Benzyltriethylammonium permanganate, 1080
Benzyne mechanism, 580–582, 588, 591, 596
  reactivity in, 584, 586
Benzynes:
  2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 758, 759
  as dienophiles, 746
Betaines, 849–852, 866, 920, 977
Beta scale, for hydrogen bonds, 72
Betweenanenes, 137
Betylates, 312
Biaryls, formation of, 484, 597, 599, 611–612, 640–641, 643–644, 649–651
Bicyclobutanes, 132–133, 400, 767, 770, 1040–1041
Bicyclo[6.2.0]decatriene, 1027
Bicyclo[2.2.1]heptenones, 930
Bicyclo[3.2.0]hept-2-en-6-yl acetate, 1019
$\Delta^{1,4}$-Bicyclo[2.2.0]-hexene, 132
Bicyclo[3.1.0]hex-2-enones, 1043
Bicyclo[3.1.0]hexyl-6-tosylate, 1012
Bicyclo[5.1.0]octadiene, 1024
Bicyclo[3.3.0]octyl systems, 1039, 1040
Bicyclo[1.1.1]pentane, 132
Bicyclo[2.1.0]pentanes, 767
Bicyclopropenyl, 1027
Bicyclopropyls, 770, 1039
Binaphthyls, 107
Biochemical resolution, 106
Biphenylenes, 758
Biphenyls, chirality of, 89–90. *See also* Biaryls
Biradicals, *see* Diradicals
Birch reduction, 700
Bis(acylamino)-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 862
Bisamides, formation of, 798, 862, 871
Bisbenzenesulfenimides, 378
Bis(benzyloxy)borane, 1097
Bischler-Napieralski reaction, 495
Bis(chloromethyl) ether, 495
Bis(1,5-cyclooctadiene)nickel, 919–920
Bisdecarboxylation, 1075–1076
1,8-Bis(diethylamino)-2,7-dimethoxynaphthalene, 233
4,5-Bis(dimethylamino)fluorene, 233
1,2-Bis(diphenylphosphino)-ethane, 1075
Bisecting conformations, 123–124
Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methyl-de-halogenation, 411, 436, 596
Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methylene-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 835
Bishomoaromatic compounds, 64*n*
Bismethano[14]annulene, 58
Bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminum hydride, 1105
2,4-Bis(4-methoxyphenyl)-1,3,2,4-dithiaphosphetane-2,4-disulfide, 794
Bisoxido[14]annulene, 58
Bisphenols, 493
Bisquaternary salts, 908
Bis(tetra-*n*-butylammonium) oxalate, 906
Bis(tricyclohexyltin) sulfide, 794
I,I,-Bis(trifluoroacetoxy)-iodobenzene, 984
N,O-Bistrifluoroacetylhydroxylamine, 806
N,O-Bis(trimethylsilyl)-acetamide, 905
Bis(triphenylphosphine)-carbonylalkylrhodium(I), 434
Bis(triphenylphosphine)-palladium dichloride, 721
Bis(triphenylphosphine)-tetrahydroboratocopper(I), 396, 1098
Bisulfite addition compounds, 688, 795, 855
Bis xanthates, 919
Blaise reaction, 823
Boat conformation, 124, 125, 128
Boat transition states, 1023
Bond angles, 18*n*, 20–21
  table, 21
Bond distances, 18–20, 23
  tables, 18, 19
Bond energies, 14, 21–23, 27, 182–186, 623
  tables, 22, 166, 623, 624
  of tautomers, 67
Bonding:
  coordinate-covalent, 13
  covalent, 3–9
  delocalized, 24–37
  localized, 3–23
  weaker than covalent, 71–81
Bonding orbitals, 4–5, 8–9, 11, 47–48, 752
Bonder order, 24, 26, 28, 31, 39, 40, 702
Boord reaction, 925
9-Borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane, *see* 9-BBN
2-Bora-1,3-dioxolanes, 995, 996
Borane:
  reduction:
    of alkyl halides, 391
    of amides, 1099
    of azo compounds, 1110
    of carboxylic acids, 397, 1099
    of carboxylic esters, 1101
    of epoxides, 394, 1102
    of nitro compounds, 1103, 1104
    of oximes, 1105
    of ozonides, 1066
    of tosylhydrazides, 1102
    of tosylhydrazones, 1097
  selectivity, 1093–1096
  see also Boranes

Boranes:
  addition to multiple bonds, 702–707, 717–718, 1000
  conversion:
    to alkenes, 916–917
    to amides, 555
    to amines, 553
    to azides, 554
    to sulfides, 650
  coupling of, 651
  coupling with halides, 403
  formation of, 1156
  hydrolysis of, 548, 695
  oxidation of, 550, 705
  reaction with acetylides, 1001
    with alkynes, 917
    with amides, 435
    with aryl halides, 588
    with diazo compounds, 428
    with α-halo compounds, 426–428
    with halogens, 551
    with oxygen, 549
  reactions of, 705
  rearrangement of, 428, 527, 980–981, 995–1002
  reduction:
    of aldehydes and ketones, 811–812
    of nitriles, 816
    of oximes, 815
  structure of, 703*n*
Borderline mechanisms, 266–268
Borepoxides, 996, 998
Boric acid, 1119
Boric anhydride, 564
Borinic acid esters, 998
Boron:
  hybridization in, 7
  migration of, 428, 550
Boronic anhydrides, 996
Boron tribromide, 808
Boron trichloride, 491, 494
Boron trifluoride, 7, 437, 785, 990, 1100
Bouveault-Blanc procedure, 811–1101
Bouveault reaction, 825
Boyland-Sims oxidation, 629
Bradsher reaction, 494
Bredt's rule, 138–139, 564, 847, 888, 899
Bridged carbocations, *see* Nonclassical carbocations
Bridged free radicals, 612–613, 667
Bridged ring systems, isomerism of, 114–115
Bridgehead diazonium ions, 471
Bridgehead positions:
  carbanions at, 156
  carbocations at, 148
  electrophilic substitution at, 514, 517
  elimination at, 888
  free radicals at, 167, 616
  nucleophilic substitutions at, 258, 261–262, 304
  rearrangements at, 945
  reduction at, 390, 391
  see also Bredt's rule
British Abstracts, 1130
Bromination:
  of acids and derivatives, 531–532
  of aldehydes and ketones, 529–531
  of alkanes, 620–621, 623–624
  of alkyl halides, neighboring groups in, 612–613
  at an allylic position, 624–626
  of aromatic rings, 476–478
  of cyclopropanes, 679
  of multiple bonds, 657, 660–661, 669, 670, 671, 724–726
  of sulfoxides, 532
Bromine:
  complexes of, 77
  in the haloform reaction, 567
  oxidation:
    of alcohols, 1057
    of aldehydes, 629
    of alkenes, 1085
    of amines, 1084
    of ethers,1060, 1084
    of mercaptans, 1092
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 631
    with boranes, 997
    with amides, 983
    with carboxylate ions, 654
    with ketones, 1120
    with organometallic compounds, 551, 552
    with phosphoranes, 852
Bromine atoms, abstraction by, 614, 615, 618
Bromine azide, 729, 730
Bromine chloride, 724
Bromine monoxide, 621
N-Bromo amides, 624, 725, 726
p-Bromobenzenesulfonate, as leaving group, 312
N-Bromocaprolactam, 624
Bromo-de-carboxylation, 654
Bromo-de-dialkylamino-substitution, 387
2-Bromoethanol, 123
Bromoform, 903
N-Bromohydantoins, 624
Bromo ketones, 401
Bromonium ions, 269, 271, 589, 658–662, 669, 671, 673
2-Bromopropane, bond angle, 20
N-Bromosuccinimide:
  in brominations, 529, 531, 532, 621, 624–626
  formation of, 574
  oxidation:
    of alcohols, 1059
    of amines, 1061
  in oxidative cleavages, 1063
  reaction:
    with alkynes, 1088
    with allylic halides, 384
    with aromatic rings, 477
    with boranes, 997
    with vinylcopper compounds, 552
Bromosulfuric acid, 475
Bromotrichloromethane, 621, 655, 731
Bromotriphenylmethane, 611
Brönsted acid-base theory, 218–223
Brönsted catalysis equation, 226, 227, 310, 331
Brosylate, as leaving group, 312
Brown σ^+ values, 243, 244, 249, 303, 464, 899
Brucine, 105
B strain, 240, 300
Bucherer reaction, 588, 591–592

Bullvalene, 1025
Bunnett-Olsen equation, 225
Bunte salts, 360, 363, 1087
1,3-Butadiene:
  in the Diels-Alder reaction, 746, 750
  structure, 27–29
Butane, conformations of, 122
1-Butanol-1-*d*, 85
t-Butyl acetate, enolate of, 824
n-Butylamine, 314
B-*n*-Butyl-9-BBN, 391
t-Butyl bromide, 1108
sec-Butyl cation, 143*n*
t-Butyl cation, 143–144, 146, 483, 524, 540, 568
t-Butyl chromate, 1077
4-*t*-Butylcyclohexanecarboxylic acids, 127
t-Butyl group, used to "freeze" conformations, 127
t-Butyl halides, solvolysis of, 260
t-Butyl hydroperoxide, 628, 733, 787, 1087, 1093
t-Butyl hypobromite, 621
t-Butyl hypochlorite, 532, 574, 621, 622, 624, 626, 1089
t-Butyl hyphohalites, 727
t-Butyl hypoiodate, 621
t-Butyl isocyanide, 724
Butyllithium, 400, 545
t-Butyllithium, 400
t-Butyl nitrite, 477, 603, 648
t-Butyl peresters, 636
t-Butyl radicals, 616, 618
t-Butyl thionitrate, 648
t-Butyl thionitrite, 648

C_0, 147
C-acylation versus O-acylation, 323, 436
Cadiot-Chodkiewicz procedure, 640
Cage compounds, 79–80
Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system, 96–98, 118
Calcium, 702
Calcium amalgam, 923
Calcium cyanamide, 366
C-alkylation versus O-alkylation, 323–325, 412
Camphene, 959
Camphenilone, 155
Cannizzarro reaction, 1117–1119
Canonical forms, 5, 24
  of fused aromatic rings, 39–41
  in hyperconjugation, 64–66
  rules in drawing, 32
  stability of, 32–33
Carbalkoxycarbenes, 768
Carbalkoxylation:
  of aryl halides, 597
  of heterocycles, 645–646
Carbamates:
  conversion to ketones, 435
  formation of, 1156
  hydrolysis of, 338
Carbamic acids, 786
Carbamoyl chlorides, 435, 491
Carbanion mechanism, *see* E1cB mechanism
Carbanions, 141, 151–162
  in addition to multiple bonds, 664–665, 709
  coupling with, 1090–1091
  in elimination reactions, 882
  in the Favorskii rearrangement, 972–973
  generation and fate, 160–162
  oxidation of, 634
  rearrangement of, 161, 962–963
  in the SE1 mechanism, 516–519
  stability of, 151–155, 586
  structure, 155–157
Carbenes, 141, 170–176
  abstraction by, 176
  addition to multiple bonds, 171, 174, 768–774, 866
  generation and fate, 173–176
  insertion reactions of, 174, 542–544
  as intermediates:
    in ether formation, 344
    in nucleophilic substitution, 314
  rearrangement of, 175, 966–967, 975, 976
  stability and structure, 170–173
Carbene transfer, 769
Carbenium ions, 142
Carbenoids, 174, 561, 768–774, 866
Carboamidation, of heterocycles, 645–646
Carbobenzoxy chloride, 347, 370
Carbocations, 141–151
  in aromatic electrophilic substitution, 448–462, 467
  in electrophilic addition, 657, 659, 661–663, 668, 673, 708, 731
  in eliminations, 932
  in the E1 mechanism, 881–882, 893
  formation of, 523, 569
  in fragmentations, 927
  in Friedel-Crafts reactions, 482, 483, 486
  generation and fate, 149–151
  geometry of, 148–149
  hyperconjugation in, 65–66
  in the Prins reaction, 857
  reaction:
    with alkanes, 539–540
    with nitriles, 860–861
  rearrangement of, 142–144, 150, 662, 682, 686, 709, 943–954, 959–961, 963–968
  in SN1 mechanism, 259–262
  stability of, 142
Carbodiimides:
  formation of, 863, 934
  see also Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide
Carbon acids, 219, 221–222
Carbonate ion, 30
Carbonates, 347, 441, 825, 939
Carbon atoms, hybridization, 7
Carbon-carbon double bonds, as neighboring groups, 274–276
Carbon-carbon triple bonds, as neighboring groups, 275
Carbon dioxide:
  extrusion of, 930, 939, 940
  reaction:
    with alkoxide ions, 793
    with amines, 804
    with borates, 1002
    with organometallic compounds, 826

    with phenoxides, 491–492
    with phosphoranes, 853
    with metalated aldimines, 872
    with SF_4, 809
Carbon disulfide, 793, 803, 829, 842, 905, 930, 1108
Carbon isotope effects, 199
Carbonium ions, 141
  see also Carbocations
Carbon monoxide:
  extrusion of, 341, 655–656, 918, 923, 929–930, 938, 941
  in formylation of ketones, 539
  in carboxylation reactions, 431–432, 597, 720–723
  in preparation of ketones, 431
  reaction:
    with alkenes, 720–723
    with alkenes and alcohols, 779
    with amines, 574–575
    with aromatic rings, 488
    with boranes, 995, 996, 998, 999
    with diazonium ions, 649
    with ketones and organolithium compounds, 819
    with nitrogen compounds, 575
    with organometallic compounds, 554–555
Carbon suboxide, 685, 902
Carbon tetrachloride, 492, 532, 593, 621, 731
Carbon tetrahalides, 532
Carbon tetrafluoride, 809
Carbon vapor, 172
N,N′-Carbonyldiimidazole, 350, 372
Carbonyl fluoride, 809
α-Carboxyalkyl-de-alkoxy-substitution, 440
α-Carboxyalkyl-de-halogenation, 421
α-Carboxyalkylidene-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 842
Carboxy-de-diazoniation, 649
Carboxy-de-hydrogenation, 491
Carboxy-hydroxy-elimination, 928
Carboxylate dianions, 421, 440–441, 837, 844, 709, 999
Carboxylate ions, as nucleophiles, 353–356, 421, 440–441, 589, 837
Carboxylation:
  of active hydrogen compounds, 841–842
  of aromatic rings, 491–492
  of aryl halides, 597
Carboxylic acids:
  acidity of, 231
  acylation of, 440–441
  addition to multiple bonds, 686, 719
  alkylation of, 421, 426, 428, 709
  in alkylation of heterocycles, 645
  conversion:
    to acyl halides, 388
    to amides, 371–373
    to anhydrides, 355, 359
    to imides, 379
    to ketenes, 902
    to ketones, 435, 824
    to nitriles, 863
    to peroxides, 357
    to trifluorides, 808
  decarbonylation of, 341–342, 507, 562–565
  decarboxylative dimerization of, 653
  decarboxylative halogenation of, 654–655
  esterification of, 299, 348–351, 353–354
  exchange with acyl halides, 388
  exhaustive methylation of, 825
  formation of, 1157
  halogenation of, 531–532
  hydroxylation of, 600–601
  ketonic decarboxylation, 442
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  as nucleophiles, 353–356
  oxidation of, 1090
  oxidative decarboxylation of, 1074
  in the Passerini and Ugi reactions, 870–871
  protection of, 426
  protonation site, 222*n*
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 436
    with alkenes, 538
    with aromatic rings, 485, 486
    with boranes, 548, 705
    with diazo compounds, 441
  rearrangement of, 984, 986–987
  reduction of, 397, 1099, 1101–1102
  resolution of, 105
  sulfonation of, 537
  see also Dicarboxylic acids
Carboxylic esters:
  acylation of, 437–439
  acyloin condensation of, 1113–1116
  acyloxylation of, 636
  addition to multiple bonds, 712, 719
  alkylation of, 416–418, 424
  arylation of, 596
  carboxylation of, 842
  Claisen condensation of, 437–439
  cleavage to alkenes, 899, 900, 905
  condensation with aldehydes or ketones, 835, 836
  conversion:
    to acyl halides, 389
    to amides, 375–376
    to anhydrides, 355, 359
    to dihalo ethers, 808, 809
    to diketones, 819
    to enolates, 546
    to enol ethers, 826
    to imides, 379
    to nitriles, 430, 807
    to triol esters, 363
    to thiono esters, 794
    to unsaturated esters, 913
  coupling of, 409
  decarboxylation of, 341
  demethylation of, 361
  dimerization of, 1091
    formation of, 1157
  halogenation of, 532

Carboxylic esters (*Continued*)
  hydrolysis of, 240, 245–246, 248, 292, 299, 334–338
  hydroxylation of, 628
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  protonation site, 222*n*
  reaction:
    with alkynyl ethers, 859
    with aromatic rings, 480, 485
    with carboxylate ions, 440–441
    with dithiane salts, 440
    with ketones, 439
    with LiI, 386
    with methoxyvinyllithium, 840
    with nitriles, 439–440
    with organometallic compounds, 434–435, 825
    with SF$_4$, 808
    with zinc and halo esters, 824
  reduction of, 394–395, 397, 1100–1102
  selenylation of, 536
  sulfenylation of, 536
  transesterification of, 351–352
Carboxylic sulfonic anhydrides, 485
Carbynes, 173
Caro's acid, 1086, 1088
Carotene, 853
Carvone, 765
CAS registry numbers, 1130
CASSI, 1144–1145
Catalysis, mechanistic information from, 190
Catalytic dehydrogenation, 1053, 1058
Catecholborane, 552, 706, 1097, 1098
Catechols, 1072
Catenanes, 80–81, 93, 1114–1116
Cation molecule pairs, 266
Cationotropic rearrangements, 942
Cellosolve, 346
Center of symmetry, 84
Ceric ammonium nitrate, 632, 787, 1058, 1077, 1079, 1091
Ceric ammonium sulfate, 1081
Ceric trifluoroacetate, 1079
Cerium, 1111
Cerium ions, 785, 1051*n*, 1074
Cesium fluoroxysulfate, 479
Chain reactions, 217, 583, 609–610, 622–623, 666–667
Chair conformation, 124–128
Chair transition states, 1023, 1028
Chapman rearrangement, 1046
Charcoal, 1053
Charge transfer bonding, 77
Charge-transfer spectra, 75, 516
Charge types, in nucleophilic substitution, 255, 259, 316
Charton ν values, 249
(CH)$_n$ compounds, 1026–1027
Cheletropic reactions, 922
Chemical Abstracts, 1126–1130, 1141–1143
Chemical literature, 1121–1145
Chemically induced dynamic nuclear polarization *see* CIDNP
Chemical shifts, 37
Chemical Titles, 1126–1127, 1142
Chemisches Zentralblatt, 1130, 1143
"Chemistry of Functional Groups," 1139
Chemoselectivity, definition of, 810
Chichibabin reaction, 600
Chiral, definition, 82
Chiral atoms, 85–88
Chiral carbanions, 157
Chiral carbon atom, definition, 85
Chiral catalysts and solvents, 104, 108
Chiral center, creation of, 93, 102
  definition of, 93
  molecules with more than one, 100–102
Chirality, 82–109
Chloral, 867
Chloral hydrate, 783
Chloramine, 553, 986
Chloramine-T, 726, 738
Chloranil, 1053
Chlorimines, 931
Chlorination:
  of acids and derivatives, 531–532
  of aldehydes and ketones, 529–531, 626
  of alkanes, 620–624
  at an allylic position, 624
  of aromatic rings, 452, 476–478
  of cyclopropanes, 679
  of multiple bonds, 671, 724–726
  of sulfoxides and sulfones, 532
N-Chlorination, 574
Chlorine:
  in chlorosulfonation, 637
  complexes of, 77
  in the haloform reaction, 567
  reaction:
    with carboxylate ions, 654
    with nitro compounds, 593
  oxidation:
    of alcohols, 1082
    of alkenes, 1085
    of amines, 1061
    of isonitriles, 1089
    of mercaptans, 1087
  see also Chlorination
Chlorine acetate, 727
Chlorine atoms:
  abstraction by, 614–618
  complexes with arenes, 619
Chlorine azide, 729, 730
Chloro, as neighboring group, 271
Chloroacetic acid, 236
Chloroaluminum hydride, 394
N-Chloroammonium salts, 476*n*
1-Chlorobenzotriazole, 1060
Chlorobenzoyl chloride, 568
Chloroborane, 705
1-Chloro-4-(chloromethoxy)butane, 495
Chlorocyclohexane, 125
N-Chlorocyclohexylbenzenesulfonamide, 624

Chloro-de-diazoniation, 647, 648
N-Chlorodialkylamines, 472, 615
2-Chloroethanol, 123
2-Chloro-3-ethylbenzoxazolium tetrafluoroborate, 902, 934
Chloroform, 327, 369, 489, 769, 836, 933
Chloroformamides, 370
Chlorohydrins, *see* Halo alcohols
N-Chloroimines, 982
N-Chloroimino esters, 982
Chloromethylation, 495
Chloromethylene dimethylammonium chloride, 397, 931, 933, 934
Chloromethyl methyl ether, 343, 495
2-Chloro-1-methylpyridinium iodide, 934
Chloronitro compounds, 1103*n*
Chloronium ions, 661
m-Chloroperbenzoic acid, 628, 923, 991, 1087
N-Chlorophthalimide, 621
2-Chloropyridinium fluorosulfonate, 987
N-Chlorosuccinimide, 384, 531, 532, 552, 624, 626, 654, 727, 852, 1059, 1075, 1082
Chlorosulfenation, 637
Chlorosulfo-de-diazoniation, 648
Chlorosulfo-de-hydrogenation, 637
Chlorosulfonation, 637
Chlorosulfonyl isocyanate, 350, 372, 869, 933
Chlorosulfuric acid, 473, 475, 488
Chlorotrimethylsilane, 385, 386, 393, 394, 407, 547, 919, 926, 1107, 1114
2-Chloro-1,3,5-trinitrobenzene, 350
Chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)-rhodium, 510, 655, 656, 692, 694, 696–698, 918, 933
Cholestanol, 1055
Cholestenol, 1055
Chromatography:
  in determining optical purity, 108–109
  for resolution, 106
Chromic acid (acid dichromate):
  hydroxylation with, 627
  oxidation:
    of alcohols, 1057–1060, 1066, 1084
    of aldehydes, 629–631
    of alkenes, 1070, 1077
    of arene side chains, 1072, 1077, 1079
    of arenes to quinones, 1081
    of ethers, 1080
    of hydroxylamines, 1062
    of ketones, 1065–1066
    of phenols, 1061
  in oxidative cleavages, 1063
Chromium(II) acetate, 785
Chromium chlorides, 406, 924, 1109
Chromium salts, 390, 650, 693
Chromophores, 204, 206
Chromyl chloride, 727, 1077, 1079, 1085, 1086
Chromyl trichloroacetate, 1071
Chugaev reaction, 905
CIDEP, 163*n*
CIDNP, 163, 404, 500, 544, 560, 561, 612, 613, 644, 699, 993, 994
Cine substitution, 581–583, 588, 591, 603, 1073
Circular dichromism, 120
Circularly polarized light, 83, 99, 104
Circumambulatory rearrangements, 1017
Cis isomers, 109–114
  properties of, 111
Cisoid conformation, 748, 1014
Cis-trans isomerism, 91, 109–115
Cis-trans isomerization, 215, 667–668, 696–698
Citric acid, 116
Claisen condensation, 437–439, 835
Claisen rearrangement, 1028–1032
  catalyzed, 1030
Claisen-Schmidt reaction, 832
Clathrate compounds, 79–80
Clemmensen reduction, 1096–1098, 1114
Cobalt(III), 1075
Cobalt fluoride, 725
Cobalt salts, 650
Cobalt tetracarbonyls, 538, 539
Cobalt trifluoroacetate, 637
Collins's reagent, 1057, 1058
Collman's reagent, 430
Common-ion effect, 261
Communications, 1122–1124
Compendia, 1132–1134
"Comprehensive Chemical Kinetics," 1138
"Comprehensive Heterocyclic Chemistry," 1138
"Comprehensive Organic Chemistry," 1138
"Comprehensive Organometallic Chemistry," 1138
Conducted tour mechanism, 519, 525
Configurations:
  absolute, 94–99
  definition, 82, 119–120
  determination of, 98–99
  DL system, 95
  RS system, 96–98
Conformational analysis, 119–130
  methods for determining, 120
Conformational effects, on reactivity, 241
Conformational energies, 121, 122
Conformational isomers, 120
Conformational preferences, 125–126
Conformational transmission, 242
Conformations, definition of, 119–120
  in cyclic compounds, 124–130
  in open-chain systems, 120–124
Conformers, 120
Conjugate acids and bases, 218
Conjugate addition, definition of, 664

Conjugated systems:
  addition to, 668–670, 674, 680, 688, 709–719, 722, 724, 726, 728–731, 735, 736, 770, 773, 777, 778
  2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 758, 760, 764–766
  Diels-Alder reactions of, 745–758
  hydroboration of, 706
  photooxidation of, 737–738
  reactivity of, 782
  reduction of, 694–695
Conjugate elimination, 900
Conjugation:
  of cyclopropanes with double bonds, 131, 679, 1017
  effect on spectra, 205
  see also Resonance
Conrotatory motion, 1004–1011, 1013
Conservation of orbital symmetry, *see* Orbital symmetry
Contact ion pairs, 263
Coordinate-covalent bond, 13
Cope reaction, 909
Cope rearrangement, 1021–1027
  catalyzed, 1023
Copper:
  in cyclopropanations, 773
  in decarboxylation, 507, 562
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 1058
    with aryl halides, 510, 597–598
    with diazonium ions, 647, 649
    with dihalides, 1091
    with nitriles, 788
  in reduction of quinones, 1097
Copper acetate, 1074, 1075
Copper acetylides, 433, 595, 640
Copper benzoate, 589, 637
Copper bromide, 477, 647, 654, 725
Copper carboxylates, 600–601
Copper chromite, 1058
Copper chloride:
  in alkene oxidation, 1085
  in alkyne dimerization, 710
  in chlorination, 529, 532
  in halogenation of alkenes, 725
  in Meerwein arylation, 642
  reaction:
    with amines, 1061
    with aromatic rings, 478
    with benzal bromides, 399
    with carboxylate ions, 654
    with diazonium ions, 647, 648
    with enolates, 1092
    with Grignard reagents, 650
    with hydrazines, 1061
    with hydrazones, 924
    with vinylic halides, 400
Copper cyanide, 430, 441, 556, 594, 648
Copper halides, as catalysts, 596
Copper iodide, 406
Copper ions, 591, 639–642, 648, 649, 654, 714, 1073, 1091
Copper nitrate, 601
Copper oxide, 507, 598, 601, 1058
Copper sulfate, 785, 1077
Copper thiocyanate, 537
Copper triflate, 1092
Corannulene, 35
Corey's reagent, 1057, 1058
Corey-Winter reaction, 919
Corporate Index, 1144
Correlation analysis, 242*n*
Correlation diagram method, 751, 768
Counterions, 142, 263
Coupling constants, 14, 40
Coupling reactions:
  of alkyl groups, 399–411, 639, 650, 653–654
  of alkynes, 639–640
  of aryl groups, 484, 597, 611–612, 640–644, 649, 650
  of boranes, 651
  definition of, 399
  of diazonium salts, 649
  of organometallic compounds, 650–652
  oxidative, 1090–1093
Covalent bonding, 3–9
Cram's rule, 103, 780
p-Cresol, dipole moment, 15
Criegee mechanism, 1067–1070
Cross conjugation, 31
Cross-coupling reactions, 399
Crossed aldol condensation, 832
Crossed Cannizzaro reaction, 844, 1117
Crossover experiments, 499, 943, 978*n*, 993, 1035
Crowded molecules, 139–140, 775
12-Crown-4, 77–78
15-Crown-5, 77
18-Crown-6, 371, 395
Crown ethers, 77–79
  chiral, 105
  as phase transfer catalysts, 321–322
Cryptands, 78, 309
  as phase transfer catalysts, 321–322
Cryptates, 78, 115
C=S double bonds, 9, 780
C=Si double bonds, 9
Cubanes, 132–133, 1027, 1039
Cumulenes, 91, 924
Cuneane, 1027, 1039
Current Abstracts of Chemistry, 1130, 1142
Current Contents, 1126
Curtius rearrangement, 945, 949, 984
Cyanamides:
  conversion:
    to guanidine, 803
    to ureas, 861
  formation of, 366, 387, 933
  in formation of secondary amines, 366
  hydrolysis of, 789
Cyanate ion, 380–381, 1089
Cyanates, formation of, 322, 343
Cyanation:
  of aromatic rings, 497
  of ketones and nitro compounds, 539
  of organometallic compounds, 555–556
Cyanic acid, 791, 802–803, 871
Cyanide fusion, 595
Cyanide ion:
  addition to multiple bonds, 718, 723, 855–856

  - in benzoin condensation, 859–860
  - in formation of Reissert compounds, 398
  - as nucleophile, 429–430, 594–595, 603–604, 855–856
  - oxidation of, 1089
  - reaction:
    - with alkyl halides, 321
    - with arylthallium compounds, 555–556
    - with nitro compounds, 539
- Cyanoacetic ester, addition to multiple bonds, 711, 719
- Cyanoacetic ester synthesis, 413
- Cyano acids, decarbonylation of, 562–564
- Cyano aldehydes, formation of, 1158
- Cyanoamines, 918
  - formation of, 1158
- Cyanoamino-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 855
- Cyano-de-halogenation, 429, 441, 594
- Cyano-de-hydrogenation, 497, 539
- Cyano-de-metallation, 555
- Cyano-de-sulfonato-substitution, 595
- α-Cyano-α-(1-ethoxyethoxy)-methyl carbanion, 719
- Cyanoethylation, 665
- Cyanogen bromide, 497, 863, 1001
- Cyanogen chloride, 541, 793, 863
- Cyanogen halides, 343
- Cyanogen iodide, 1001
- Cyanohydrins:
  - alkylation of, 418, 718
  - conversion to amines, 366
  - formation of, 854–855, 1109
- α-Cyano-α-hydroxymethyl-carbanions, 718
- Cyano ketones, conversion to amides, 377
  - formation of, 1158
- Cyanomethylation, 855
- Cyano sulfides, 742
- Cyanotrimethylsilane, 441, 885
- α-Cyano-α-trimethylsilylbenzyl anion, 840
- Cyanuric chloride, 933
- Cyanuric fluoride, 388
- Cycl[3.3.3]azine, 61
- Cycloadditions, 743–777, 850–851, 864–869, 1020
- Cycloalkanes, formation of, 1148
- Cycloalkenes, formation of, 1148
- Cycloalkynes, 137
- Cyclobutadiene-metal complexes, 53
- Cyclobutadienes, 48–53, 763, 1027
- Cyclobutanes:
  - cleavage of, 763, 766, 1039–1041
  - conformation of, 129
  - formation of, 751–756, 758–768
  - strain in, 133
- Cyclobutanols, 215
- Cyclobutenes, interconversion with dienes, 1002–1011
- Cyclobutenium dications, 50
- Cyclobutyl, as neighboring group, 277
- Cyclobutyl cations, 283
- Cyclodecadienes, 776
- Cyclodecapentaene, 55–56
- Cyclodecatetraene, 1027
- Cyclodecatrienes, 776
- Cyclodehydration, 494–495
- Cyclodextrins, 458
- Cyclododecatrienes, 706, 775–776
- 1,2-Cycloheptadiene, 138
- Cycloheptatrienes, 43, 771–772, 1026
- Cycloheptatrienide ion, 43, 55
- Cycloheptyne, 137
- Cyclohexaamylose, 458
- 1,2-Cyclohexadiene, 138
- Cyclohexadienes, formation of, 700–702, 930
  - interconversion with hexatrienes, 1002–1004, 1007–1009
- Cyclohexadienones, rearrangements of, 969, 1042–1043
- Cyclohexadienyl cations, 448
- Cyclohexanes:
  - aromatization of, 1052–1054
  - conformations of, 124–127, 134
- Cyclohexene, 695, 1097
- Cyclohexenes:
  - formation of, 702, 745–758, 1020
- Cyclohexyne, complexes of, 137
- 1,2-Cyclononadiene, 138
- Cyclononatetraenide ion, 56
- Cyclononyne, 137
- 1,2-Cyclooctadiene, 138
- Cyclooctadienes, 704, 775–776
- Cyclooctadiendiynes, 55
- Cyclooctatetraene dianion, 56
- Cyclooctatetraenes, 48, 54–55, 63, 774–775, 1011, 1027
- Cyclooctatrienes, 1010
- *trans*-Cyclooctene, 92
- Cyclooctynes, 137
- Cyclopentadienes, 42, 45, 413, 836
- Cyclopentadienones, 44, 747*n*
- Cyclopentadienide ion, 42–43, 54
- Cyclopentadienyl cations, 53–54
- Cyclopentanes:
  - conformation of, 129
  - dehydrogenation of, 1053
- Cyclopentenone, 217
- Cyclopentenes, 1019–1020
- Cyclophanes, *see* Paracyclophanes
- Cyclopropanediazonium ions, 471
- Cyclopropanes:
  - addition reactions:
    - mechanisms, 676
  - conjugation with double bonds, 131, 679, 1017
  - cleavage of, 311
  - 2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 766–767
  - formation of, 171, 285, 399–400, 408, 427, 543, 768–774, 937
  - hydrogenolysis of, 702
  - pyrolysis of, 966
  - reaction:
    - with acetyl chloride, 679
    - with aromatic rings, 481
    - with Cl_2 and Br_2, 679

Cyclopropanes (*Continued*)
    with hydrogen bromide, 676
    with lead tetraacetate, 677
    with sulfuric acid, 678
    with trifluoroacetic acid, 677
  strain in, 130–133
Cyclopropanols, formation of, 550
Cyclopropanones, 770, 784, 790, 923, 972, 973
Cyclopropenes, 49*n*, 136, 770
Cyclopropenone, 50
Cyclopropenyl anion, 53
Cyclopropenyl cation, 49–50, 54
Cyclopropyl, as neighboring group, 276
Cyclopropyl anions, 156, 1011
Cyclopropyl cations, 1011–1012
Cyclopropylmethyl anions, 153–154
Cyclopropylmethyl cations, 145, 272, 283–285
Cyclopropyl radicals, 616
Cyclopropyl substrates, nucleophilic substitution, 304, 966

D (dissociation energy), 21, 166, 614, 615, 618, 623–624
Dakin reaction, 1073
Dakin-West reaction, 565
Dammaradienol, 710
Darzen's condensation, 843
DAST, 809
DBN, 915
DBU, 353, 361, 412, 915
DCC, *see* Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide
D configuration, 95
DDQ, 1053, 1055, 1077
DDT, 493
Deactivating groups:
  in electrophilic aromatic substitution, 453, 455, 456, 459
  in nucleophilic aromatic substitution, 584–585
Deacyloxylation, 394
Dealkoxylation, 393
Dealkylation, 505
Deamination, 395, 646, 647
Decarbonylation, 214, 341, 506, 655, 656, 918, 955
Decarboxylation:
  of aliphatic acids, 412, 413, 562–565, 836
  of aromatic acids, 507
  of azo acids, 533
  of hydroxy acids, 842, 928
  ketonic, 442
  of lactones, 929
  oxidative, 1074–1076
Decarboxylative dimerization, 653–654
Decarboxylation halogenation, 654–655
Decene, 916–917
S-Dechlorination, 445
Decyanation, 569, 1076, 1109
Dediazoniation, 646–647
Deformylation, 506
Degenerate carbocations, 945
Degenerate rearrangements, 945, 1024–1026
Dehalogenation, 396, 510, 875, 924, 925
Dehydration:
  of alcohols, 344–345, 901
  of amides, 902, 932–933
  of oximes, 930–931
  of ureas and thioureas, 934
1,3-Dehydroadamantane, 134
Dehydroannulenes, 58–59, 61–62
Dehydrobenzenes, 581
Dehydrocyanation, 918
Dehydrogenations, 1052–1062
Dehydrohalogenation, 875–867, 887, 891, 894, 898, 914–916
Dehydroxylation, 392, 397, 593
N-Dehydroxylation, 1105
Delépine reaction, 366
Demerol, 973
Demetallation, 511, 547
Demyanov rearrangement, 965
Deoxidation, 903
Deoxygenation, 1107–1109
Desulfonation, 509
Desulfurization, 422, 652–653, 795
Deuteriation, 548
  of aldehydes and ketones, 529
  of alkanes, 390, 523
  of aromatic rings, 467
Deuterioaniline, 501
Deuterio-de-hydrogenation, 467, 523
Deuterium, field effect of, 18
Deuterium bromide, 663
Deuterium isotope effects, *see* Isotope effects
Deuterium oxide, 467, 468
Deuterogenation, of alkenes, 696–699
Dewar benzenes, 767, 768, 775, 1009–1010, 1027
Dewar structure, 24
Dextro isomer, 83
Diacyl peroxides, 168, 654, 687
Dialdehydes:
  cyclization of, 1112
  formation of, 1159
gem-Dialkali metal compounds, 545
Dialkyl-addition, 777
Dialkylaminoalkylation, 496
Dialkylaminoalkyl-halo-elimination, 927
Dialkylamino-alkylthio-addition, 742
Dialkylaminobenzyl alcohols, 509
Dialkylamino-chloro-addition, 728
Dialkylamino-de-hydrogenation, 496
Dialkylaminothiocarbamates, 395
Di(alkylarylamino)-addition, 740
Dialkylchloroboranes, 998, 999
Dialkyltelluronium iodides, 844
Diallylic ethers, 1031
1,1-Dialuminum compounds, 707–708
Diamagnetic ring current, *see* Ring currents
Diamantanes, 962
Diamination, 740
gem-Diamines, hydrolysis of, 331
Diamines:
  formation of, 369, 740
  oxidation of, 1071
Diaminoaluminum hydrides, 397, 398

Diaminobiphenyls, formation of, 1035
Diaryldialkoxysulfuranes, 345
Diarylhydrazines, 1034–1036
Diaryliodonium salts, 431, 597
Diarylmethanes, oxidation of, 1073, 1077
Diarylmethyl cations, 145
Diarylmethyl halides, solvolysis of, 260, 261
Diarylthallium trifluoracetates, 549
Diastereomeric atoms, groups, and faces, 117–119
Diastereomers, 109
  definition of, 100
  separation of, 105
Diatropic compounds, 37–38, 43, 45–46, 56–59, 63–64
Diaxial addition, 676
1,5-Diazabicyclo[3.4.0]nonene-5, 915
1,8-Diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-undecene-7, 915
Diazenes, 647
Diazides, 741
Diaziridines, 741–742, 938
  chirality of, 87
Diazirines, 174
Diazo aldehydes, 428
Diazo alkanes:
  conversion to ethers, 344
  coupling of, 1091
  formation of, 534, 912, 936, 1159
  protonation of, 313
  reaction:
    with aldehydes and ketones, 866, 977
    with amides, 378
    with amines, 368
    with carboxylic acids, 354
    with sulfur and sulfur compounds, 866–867
Diazo-de-dihydro-bisubstitution, 534
Diazo esters:
  formation of, 837
  reaction:
    with aldehydes, 837
    with boranes, 428
Diazoethane, 441
Diazohydroxides, 314, 471
Diazo ketones:
  conformations of, 976
  formation of, 441, 535, 1159
  conversion:
    to ethers, 344
    to halo ketones, 386
  hydrolysis of, 329
  reaction:
    with boranes, 428
    with carboxylic acids, 355
  rearrangement of, 974
  reduction of, 395
Diazomethane:
  in generation of CH_2, 172, 174, 175, 772
  in methylation:
    of alcohols and phenols, 344
    of amines, 368
    of carboxylic acids, 355
  reaction:
    with acyl halides, 441, 974
    with aldehydes and ketones, 866, 976–978
    with aromatic rings, 772
Diazomethyl-de-halogenation, 441
Diazoniation, 472
Diazonio-de-hydrogenation, 472
Diazo nitriles, 428
Diazonium coupling, 449, 471, 532–533
Diazonium fluoroborates, 602–603
Diazonium ions:
  in aliphatic nucleophilic substitution, 313–314
  alkylation of, 649
  in arylation:
    of alkanes, 641
    of aromatic rings, 640–641
  conversion:
    to aldehydes and ketones, 649
    to alkenes, 910
    to azides, 602
    to carboxylic acids, 649
    to halides, 602–603, 647
    to nitriles, 648
    to nitro compounds, 648
    to organometallic compounds, 650
    to phenols, 601
    to sulfonyl halides, 648
    to sulfur compounds, 601
  dediazoniation of, 646–647
  coupling of, 471, 532–533
  dimerization of, 649
  formation of, 329, 472, 570–571
  reaction:
    with alkenes, 731
    with benzylic alcohols, 509
    with nucleophiles, 579, 601–603
    with organometallic compounds, 511
  rearrangement of, 579, 960
  reduction of, 646–647, 1106
  vinylation of, 649
Diazosulfides, 602
Diazotization, 313, 329, 339, 341, 387, 570–571, 583, 964–965
Diazo transfer reaction, 534, 573
DIBAL-H, *see* Diisobutylaluminum hydride
1,1-Dibora compounds, 706
Diborane, 703
Dibromoborane, 706
Dibromocarbene, 173, 903
Dibromocyclohexane, 126
Dibromoethane, 123
Dibromoisocyanuric acid, 477, 574
Dibromo ketones, alkylation of, 401
Di-*t*-butylbenzoquinone, 1083
Di-*t*-butyl ether, 342
Di-*sec*-butylmercury, 514
Di-*t*-butylmethylamine, 140*n*
Di-*t*-butylnitroxide, 611
Di-*t*-butyl peroxide, 655
Dicarbalkoxylation, of multiple bonds, 779
Dicarbanions, 323
Dicarboxy-addition, 779
Dicarboxy-elimination, 1075
Dicarboxylic acids:
  acidity of, 232
  bisdecarboxylation of, 1075–1076
  cyclization of, 442
  formation of, 826, 1065

Dicarboxylic esters:
  cyclization of, 438, 1113–1115
  formation of, 438, 596, 712
Dichlorine oxide, 477, 621
Dichloroalkenes, hydrolysis of, 327
Dichloroaluminum hydride, 394
N,N-Dichloroamines, 931, 982
Dichlorobenzyl sulfides and sulfones, 922
Dichloroboranes, 428, 705, 730
Dichlorocarbene, 172, 173, 328, 489, 769
Dichlorocyclohexane, 126
Dichlorodicyanobenzoquinone, *see* DDQ
Dichlorodifluoroethene, 758, 759
Dichloroethane, 123
Dichloroethene, 709
Dichloromethyl methyl ether, 490, 996, 998
Dicobalt octacarbonyl, 554, 597, 722, 724, 775
"Dictionary of Organic Compounds," 1133, 1142
"Dictionary of Organometallic Compounds," 1133
Dicyano compounds:
  cyclization of, 803, 854
  formation of, 1160
Dicyclohexano-18-crown-6, 77–78, 321, 1070
Dicyclohexylcarbodiimide:
  in formation:
    of amides, 372–374
    of anhydrides, 355
    of diazo ketones, 441
    of esters, 349–350
    of ethers, 345
    of nitriles, 931
    of peroxides, 357
  in alcohol oxidation, 1081
Dicyclohexylurea, 349
Dicyclopentadienyltitanium dichloride, 826
Dicyclopropylethene, 1020
Dieckmann condensation, 438, 1114
Diels-Alder adducts, aromatization of, 1054
Diels-Alder reaction, 738, 745–758, 930
  reverse, 750, 751, 753
Dienes:
  acylation of, 538
  cyclization of, 667, 709, 720, 1002–1009, 1038
  4 + 3 cycloadditions of, 777
  Diels-Alder reactions of, 745–758
  dimerization and trimerization of, 775, 776
  formation of, 400, 401, 403, 405, 406, 408, 409, 650–652, 654, 700–702, 710, 779, 902, 905, 911, 914, 922, 1000, 1014–1017, 1021–1025, 1041, 1054
  hydroformylation of, 722
  interconversion with cyclobutenes, 1002–1010
  metathesis of, 1038
  photooxidation of, 737
  reaction with carboxylate ions, 654
  rearrangements of, 1014–1017, 1021–1025, 1041–1043
  see also Conjugated systems
Dienone-phenol rearrangement, 969
Dienophiles, 711, 738, 744–751
Diethylaluminum cyanide, 855
Diethylaminosulfur trifluoride, 383, 389, 809
Diethyl azodicarboxylate, 345, 934, 1092
Diethylene glycol, 346, 1096
Diethyl oxomalonate, 493
Diethyl phosphonate, 390
Diethyl succinate, 835
Diethylzinc, 773
Diffusion-controlled reactions, 184
Difluoroamine, 395
Difluorocyclohexane, 126*n*
Difluoroethane, 123
Digonal hybridization, 7
Dihalides:
  conversion:
    to acetals, 343
    to alkenes, 875, 924
    to alkynes, 915
    to amines, 366
    to epoxides, 818
    to Grignard reagents, 558
  coupling of, 401, 1091
  cyclization of, 362, 414
  in cyclopropanations, 772–773
  formation of, 1160
  reaction with aromatic rings, 480
Dihalo-addition, 724
Dihaloalkenes, 847
Dihalocarbenes, 768–770, 772, 866
Dihalocyclopropanes, 769
Dihalo-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 807
Di-halo-elimination, 924
Dihalo ketones, 1118
Dihydrazones, 923–924
Dihydrazono-bielimination, 923
Dihydro-addition, 691
1/4/Dihydro-addition, 700
C,*N*-Dihydro-addition, 814
C,*O*-Dihydro-addition, 809
Dihydro-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 1096
N-Dihydro-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 1105
Dihydro-elimination, 1054
C,*O*-Dihydro-elimination, 1057
1/*N*,2/*N*-Dihydro-elimination, 1062
1/*O*,6/*O*-Dihydro-elimination, 1060
Dihydro,hydroxy-de-oxo,alkoxy-tersubstitution, 1101
Dihydro-1,3-oxazines, 424–426, 827, 837
Dihydro-oxo-biaddition, 683
1/*N*,2/*C*-Dihydro-2/*C*-oxo-biaddition, 870
NN-Dihydro-*C*-oxo-biaddition, 788
CN-Dihydro-*C*-oxo-bielimination, 934
NN-Dihydro-*C*-oxo-bielimination, 932
1/*N*,3/*N*-Dihydro-2/*C*-oxo-bielimination, 934
Dihydrophenanthrenes, 1012–1013
Dihydropyran, 684
Dihydropyrenes, 57–58

Dihydropyrene dianion, 62
Dihydrothiepin dioxides, 922
Dihydrothiophene dioxides, 922
Dihydroxy-addition, 732
Dihydroxy-elimination, 918
Diimide, 177, 698–699, 812, 1106
Diiododimethylsilane, 393
Diiodomethane, 772, 773
Diiodosamarium, 436
Diisobornyloxyaluminum isopropoxide, 811*n*
Diisobutylaluminum hydride, 1052*n*
  reduction:
    of acetals, 394
    of allenes, 696
    of amides, 398
    of carboxylic acids, 397
    of carboxylic esters, 397, 1101
    of C=O bonds, 694, 809
    of nitriles, 816
    of oximes, 1105
    of sulfones, 1108
    of triple bonds, 695
  selectivity, 1095
Diisopinocampheylborane, 107, 705
Diisopropylcarbinol, 811
Diketones:
  alkylation of, 412
  conversion:
    to anhydrides, 991
    to enediones, 1054
    to pyrazoles, 804
  cleavage of, 566, 1063, 1066
  cyclization of, 791, 834, 1112
  formation of, 332, 435–437, 439, 440, 596, 597, 712, 718, 719, 819, 941, 964, 1067, 1077, 1086, 1088, 1092
  photolysis of, 941
  rearrangement of, 969–970, 1097
  reduction of, 812
1,1-Dilithio compounds, 545
Dilithio N-methanesulfinyl-*p*-toluidine, 838
Dilithium cyanodialkylcopper compounds, 401, 595
Dilongifolylborane, 705
Dimagnesio compounds, 559, 818
Dimercapto-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 793*n*
Dimesitylborane, 707
Dimesylates, 919
gem-Dimetallic compounds, 559, 818, 826
Dimetalloalkynes, 838
Di-π-methane rearrangement, 1041–1043
Dimethylaluminum amides, 375, 807
4-Dimethylaminopyridine, 920
2,3-Dimethylbutane, 123
3,3-Dimethyl-1-butyl cation, 953
N,N-Dimethylchloromethyleniminium chloride, *see* Chloromethylene dimethylammonium chloride
Dimethylcyclohexanes, 126
Dimethyl diazomalonate, 920
Dimethylene-biaddition, 779
Dimethylenecyclobutenes, 1022
Dimethyl ether, 907
Dimethylformamide, 376, 440, 541, 646, 933
Dimethylformamide dimethyl acetal, 345, 928
3,4-Dimethylhexane, 123
Dimethyl(methylene)ammonium iodide, 802
Dimethy(methylthio)sulfonium fluoroborate, 742
Dimethyloxosulfonium methylide, 599, 773, 864–865
2,3-Dimethylpentane, 123
Dimethyl sulfate, 354
Dimethyl sulfide, 496, 1066, 1082
Dimethylsulfonium benzylide, 865
Dimethylsulfonium methylides, 773–774, 864–865
Dimethyl sulfoxide, 331, 332, 496, 1058, 1081, 1083, 1092
Dimethylsulfur dibromide, 383
Dimethyltitanium dichloride, 408, 817
Dinitriles, *see* Dicyano compounds
Dinitro-addition, 739
Dinitro compounds, 638, 739, 923
Dinitro-elimination, 923
2,4-Dinitrofluorobenzene, 590
Dinitrogen tetroxide, 358, 468, 572, 739
Dinitrogen trioxide, 572, 1077
Dinitrogen pentoxide, 468, 469
Dinitromethane, 153
2,4-Dinitrophenylhydrazine, 804
O-(2,4-Dinitrophenyl)hydroxylamine, 535
N,C-Dinitroso compounds, 470
Diols:
  cleavage of, 1063–1065
  conversion:
    to acetals, 789
    to cyclic ethers, 345
    to cyclopropanes, 408
  deoxygenation of, 918–919
  formation of, 332, 732–734, 838, 844–845, 856–858, 1046, 1101, 1102, 1110–1112
  fragmentation of, 928
  hydrogenolysis of, 393
  oxidation of, 1084
  rearrangement of, 963–964
gem-Diols, 783
1,3-Dioxanes:
  conformations, 128
  formation of, 856–858
Dioxaspiro compounds, 868
Dioxetanes, 738
Dioxirane, 1070
Dioxo-biaddition, 1088
Dioxovanadium(V) ion, 1060
Diphenyl hydrogen phosphonate, 930
Diphenylmethyl carbanions, 153
Diphenylmethyl cation, 145, 149
Diphenyloxathiolan-5-ones, 941
Diphenylphosphinamide, 378
Diphenylphosphoryl azide, 380
Diphenylpicrylhydrazyl, 166
Diphenylseleninic anhydride, *see* Benzeneseleninic anhydride
Diphenyl sulfimide, 741

Diphenylsulfoniumisopropylide, 773–774, 865
Diphenyltin hydride, 813
Diphosphorus tetraiodide, 372, 391, 393, 920, 921, 925–926, 930
1,3-Dipolar addition, 741, 743–745, 1067–1070
Dipole moment, 15, 65, 207, 1134
Dipotassium nitrosodisulfonate, 1061
Dipyridine Cr(VI) oxide, 1057
Diradicals, 167, 956
Directed aldol reaction, 833
Directed syntheses, 81, 1115
Disiamylborane, 703, 704, 706, 1085
  selectivity, 1095
Diphosgene, 934
Disodium tetracarbonylferrate, 397, 430–432, 434, 1119
Disproportionation, of radicals, 169
Disrotatory motion, 1004–1012
Dissociation energy, 21
Dissolving metal reductions, 700–701
Disulfide ions, 590, 602
Disulfides:
  conversion to alkenes, 914
  desulfurization of, 652
  formation of, 1160
  oxidation of, 1087
  reaction:
    with aldehydes and ketones, 795
    with amines and CO, 575
    with boranes, 650
    with enolates, 536
    with Grignard reagents, 551
  reduction of, 1110
Disulfur dichloride, 475, 477
1,3-Dithianes, 719
  acylation of, 440
  alkylation of, 421–422
  condensation with ketones, 837
  conformations of, 128
Dithiocarbamic acid, 803
gem-Dithiols, 794
Dithiomethylene ketones, 842
1,8-Di-*o*-tolylnaphthalene, 140
Ditosylates, 919
Divinylcyclobutanes, 1022, 1023
Divinylcyclopropanes, 1022–1026
Divinylmethyl cations, 144
Diynes, 639, 640, 651, 688, 690, 1022
Dodecahedrane, 1056
Dodecylbenzenesulfonyl azide, 534
Doebner modification, 838
Double-bond compounds, electronic structure of, 8–9
Double bond migrations, 520–521, 524–527, 686, 696–698, 917, 1014–1017, 1098
  see also Rearrangements, allylic
Double bonds, in rings, 136–139
Doublets, 163
Drugs, names of, 1133
Duff reaction, 490
Durene, 498

E (bond energy), 21–22, 26–27
  table, 22
E_s values, 248, 249
E_T values, 320
Eclipsed conformations, 120–123, 135
Eclipsing conformations, 123–124
Eclipsing effects, 129, 892, 949
Eclipsing strain, 135–136, 241
EDA complexes, 74–77, 516, 766
Eglinton reaction, 639
Ei mechanism, 897–900, 903–905, 907–910, 913, 916, 918, 935
E isomer, 110, 111, 113
Elbs reaction, 629
Electrical effects, 237, 243–248
Electrochemical oxidation, 1052*n*
Electrocyclic rearrangements, 1002–1013, 1027
Electrofugal, definition, 179
Electrolysis, of carboxylate ions, 653–654
Electron-donating groups, 16–18, 34, 237–238
  effect:
    on abstraction by free radicals, 617
    on acidity, 230, 235
    on addition reactions, 670–671, 782
    on carbene additions, 770
    on the Diels-Alder reaction, 749, 751
    on electrophilic substitution, 454–457, 464, 521
    on migratory aptitudes, 951
    on nucleophilic substitution, 303, 584, 586
    on the Wittig reaction, 850
Electron donor-acceptor (EDA) complexes, 74–77, 516, 766
Electronegativity, 13–15
Electronic spectra, 202–203, 206
Electron paramagnetic resonance, *see* Electron spin resonance
Electron spin resonance (esr), 162–163, 166, 172, 404, 613, 667, 701, 821, 1080
Electronic structures of molecules, 11–13
Electron transfer, 1049–1050
Electron-withdrawing groups, 16–18, 33–34, 237–238
  effect:
    on abstraction by free radicals, 615, 617
    on acidity, 230
    on addition reactions, 670–672, 782
    on cycloadditions, 770
    on the Diels-Alder reaction, 749, 751
  electrophilic substitution, 455–457, 464, 521
  on eliminations, 890, 893, 894, 895
  on migratory aptitudes, 951

    on nucleophilic substitution, 303, 584, 586
    on the Wittig reaction, 846, 850
Electrophile, definition, 179
Electrophilic addition:
  to cyclopropane rings, 677–679
  to multiple bonds, 657–663, 668
  orientation and reactivity in, 670–676
Electrophilic radicals, 610, 615, 618, 672
Electrophilic rearrangements, 942, 958, 962–963
Electrophilic substitution:
  aliphatic, 512–575
  aromatic, 447–511
  at nitrogen, 570–575
Element effect, 296, 578
α Elimination, 173, 176, 561, 769, 873
α′,β Elimination, 907–909
β Elimination, 181, 873–941
  entropy of, 184
  of hydrogen, 1052–1062
  mechanism and orientation, 873–901
γ Elimination, 873
1,4 Elimination, 900, 919, 922, 924
Elimination-addition mechanism, 297–298, 313, 338, 443, 524, 580–581, 981
Elimination transformations, naming of, 253
Elsevier's "Encyclopedia," 1133
Emde reduction, 395
Enamines:
  acylation of, 541
  acyloxylation of, 636
  alkylation of, 540–542
  cleavage of, 395
  2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 759, 760, 869
  fluorination of, 529
  formation of, 1160
  hydrolysis of, 332, 785–786
  hydroxylation of, 628
  tautomerism of, 69–70
Enamino nitriles, 854
Enantiomeric excess, 107
Enantiomers:
  definition, 82
  nomenclature of, 101–102
  properties, 83
  reaction rates, 83, 100
Enantiomorphs, 82
Enantioselective addition, 705
Enantioselective hydrogenation, 693
Enantioselective reactions, 104, 712, 771, 817, 833, 867
  see also Asymmetric synthesis
Enantioselective reduction, 811
Enantiotopic atoms, groups, and faces, 115–119
Encounter complexes, 453, 466
Endo addition, 674, 676, 748–749, 757–758
Endo isomers, 114
Energy barrier, to rotation, 121–123
Energy cascade, 209–211
Ene synthesis, 628, 647, 711, 858, 935
Enolate ions, 68, 153
Enolate ions:
  acylation of, 436–441
  in the aldol condensation, 830–833
  alkylation of, 322–325, 412–421, 714
  conversion to silyl enol ethers, 547
  dimerization of, 1092
  formation of, 419–420, 528, 546–547, 664
  halogenation of, 530, 531
  hydroxylation of, 628
  nitration of, 638
  selenylation of, 536
  sulfenylation of, 536
Enolate ylides, 848
Enol borinates:
  in the aldol condensation, 832, 833
  conversion to enolate ions, 420
  formation of, 717
  halogenation of, 531
  hydrolysis of, 717
  reaction with iminium ions, 828
Enol content, of carbonyl compounds, 67
Enolene rearrangement, 1029
Enol esters:
  in the aldol condensation, 832
  conversion to enolate ions, 420
  formation of, 1160
  halogenation of, 531
  hydrolysis of, 338
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 352
    with carboxylic acids, 356
Enol ethers:
  in the aldol condensation, 832
  conversion to esters, 1086
  cycloadditions of, 760
  fluorination of, 529
  formation of, 1160
  hydrolysis of, 329, 331–332
  pyrolysis of, 904
  reaction with alcohols, 684
  transesterification of, 346
Enol form, in tautomerism, 66–68, 527–528
Enolization, as a side reaction in Grignard addition, 819, 822, 825
Enol phosphorinates, 926
Enol thioethers:
  acyloxylation of, 636
  cycloadditions of, 760
  formation of, 688, 795, 798
Enol triflates, 1098
Enophiles, 711
Enthalpy, 182
  of activation, 184–185, 197
Entropy, 182–186
  of activation, 184–185, 197, 269, 607, 776, 834, 898
  effect on acid and base strength, 236
Envelope conformation, 129
Enynes, addition reactions, 670, 671, 726, 748
E1cB mechanism, 443, 882–886, 891, 893–896, 904, 925, 928
  in ester hydrolysis, 338
E1-E2-E1cB spectrum, 886, 890, 894–896

- E1 mechanism, 881–882, 889, 893–896, 902, 903, 915, 927–928, 932
- Ephedrine, 105
- Epimerization, 528
- Epimers, definition of, 101
- Episulfides:
  - amination of, 369
  - conversion to alkenes, 921
  - formation of, 362, 728, 866
  - nucleophilic substitution at, 311, 325
- Episulfones, 867, 922
- Episulfoxides, 921
- Epoxidation, 733, 735–737
- Epoxides:
  - alcoholysis of, 346
  - amination of, 368–369
  - carboxylation of, 433
  - conversion:
    - to alkenes, 920
    - to allylic alcohols, 904, 913–914
    - to halohydrins, 385
    - to hydroxymercaptans and sulfides, 360, 362
    - to hydroxy sulfonic acids, 364
    - to unsaturated ketones, 431
  - cleavage of, 1063
  - formation of, 270, 1067, 1081, 1161
  - hydrolysis of, 332
  - nucleophilic substitution of, 311, 325–326
  - reaction:
    - with acetylides, 429
    - with active hydrogen compounds, 414
    - with aldehydes, 790
    - with azide ion, 380
    - with cyanide ion, 430
    - with dimethyloxosulfonium methylide, 865
    - with dithiane ions, 422
    - with enamines, 541
    - with metalated aldimines, 872
    - with organometallic compounds, 410–411
    - with oxazine ions, 425
    - with phosphines, 852
    - with sulfides, 423
    - with triphenylphosphine, 369
  - rearrangement of, 964
  - reduction of, 394, 1102
- Epoxy esters, formation of, 842–843
- Epoxy hydrazones, 929
- Epoxy ketones, 386, 865, 964, 971
- Epoxy silanes, 839
- Equatorial bonds, 125–128
- Equilibration of carbonyl compounds, 528
- Equivalent atoms and groups, 116
- Erlenmeyer azlactone synthesis, 843
- Erythro isomers, 102, 269, 277, 658, 875, 892, 898
- Eschenmoser's salt, 802
- Eschweiler-Clarke procedure, 799, 800
- Esr, *see* Electron spin resonance
- Esterification of acids, 240, 348–351
- Esters, *see* Carboxylic esters; Inorganic esters; *etc.*
- Étard reaction, 1079
- Ethane:
  - conformations of, 120–122
  - conversion to *t*-butyl cation, 540
  - heat of atomization, 22
- Ethanolamines, 368, 369
- Ethanedithiol, 795
- Ethanol, 646
- Ethanolysis of alkyl halides, 239
- Ethers:
  - acyloxylation of, 636
  - addition to multiple bonds, 719
  - autoxidation of, 633
  - cleavage of, 329, 354, 358, 367, 384, 410, 903–905, 935
  - conversion:
    - to amines, 591
    - to nitriles, 595
    - to oxonium salts, 356
  - demethylation of, 361
  - formation of, 1161
  - halogenation of, 621
  - hydrolysis of, 343
  - nucleophilic substitution of, 311
  - oxidation of, 1060, 1080, 1084
  - reaction:
    - with aromatic rings, 480
    - with carboxylic acids, 351
    - with organometallic compounds, 409–410, 595
  - rearrangement of, 994–995, 1028–1032
  - reduction of, 393–394, 594
  - transetherification of, 345, 589
- 2-Ethoxy-1,3-dithiolane, 490
- α-Ethoxyvinyl carbanion, 719
- Ethyl acetoacetate, 67, 323, 413–414, 711–712, 719
- Ethylaluminum dichloride, 1036
- Ethyl azodicarboxylate, 378, 929
- Ethyl carbamate, 492
- Ethyl carbonate, 435, 438, 439
- 1-Ethyl-4-carbomethoxypyridinium ion, 319
- Ethyl chloroformate, 434, 541
- Ethylenediaminechromium (II), 400
- Ethyl diazoacetate, 977
- Ethylene:
  - electronic structure of, 8–9
  - excited state, 207
- Ethylene glycol, 995–996
- Ethylene oxide, 130, 386, 480
- Ethyl ethylthiomethyl sulfoxide, 422, 718
- Ethyl formate, 419, 438, 441
- Ethylmagnesium bromide, 159
- Ethyl malonate, *see* Malonic esters
- Ethyl nitrate, 468
- Ethyl orthoformate, 930
- 5-Ethyl-5-propylundecane, 86
- Ethyl vinyl ether, 418
- E2 mechanism, 874–880, 889–891, 893–896, 903, 907, 908, 915, 924, 927–928, 932, 1050, 1051
- E2C mechanism, 887–888, 892, 894–896
- E2H mechanism, 887
- Exciplexes, 766, 868
- Excited states, 202–217

  nomenclature of, 206
  properties of, 207
Exhaustive alkylation, 365
Exhaustive methylation, 817, 825, 906
Exo addition, 674, 676, 748–749, 757–758
Exo attack, 280–281
Exo-endo rate ratios, 280–282
Exo isomers, 114
Extinction coefficients, 204
Extrusion reactions, 741, 873, 922, 929–930, 937–941

Favorskii reaction, 838
Favorskii rearrangement, 971–974
Fehling's solution, 629
Fenton's reagent, 628, 639, 645, 646
Ferric chloride, 354, 478, 921, 1054, 1092
Ferrocenes, 44–45, 460*n*
  see also Metallocenes
Ferrous iodide, 923
Ferrous sulfate, 648
Field effects, 16–18
  on acid and base strength, 230, 234–235
  of alkyl groups, 65, 247
  in arenium ions, 454–457
  in benzyne mechanism, 586
  on carbanion stability, 152, 154
  on carbocation stability, 143
  in free radical abstraction, 615–616
  on nucleophilic substitutions, 303–304
  on reactivity, 237–239, 243–248
Finkelstein reaction, 381
First-order reactions, 192, 195
Fischer-Hepp reaction, 502
Fischer indole synthesis, 1032
Fischer projection, 94, 97
Flash photolysis, 217
Fluorenes, 43
Fluorescence, 210, 211, 217
Fluoride, as leaving group, 310
Fluoride ions, 593
Fluorination:
  of aldehydes and ketones, 529
  of aliphatic compounds, 620–621, 623–624
  of aromatic rings, 479
  of multiple bonds, 725
Fluorine, reaction with amines and amides, 574
Fluorine atoms, abstraction by, 614
N-Fluoro-N-alkylsulfonamides, 529
Fluoro-de-diazoniation, 602
2-Fluoroethanol, 123
2-Fluoroethyl trichloroacetate, 123
Fluoroform, 567
Fluoroxytrifluoromethane, 479, 621
Fluorosulfuric acid, 219, 220, 475
Fluxional structures, 1025
Forbidden transitions, 204
Formal charge, 12, 33
Formaldehyde, 784
  condensation with aromatic rings, 493, 495, 496
  conversion to aldehyde and ketones, 422
  in cyanomethylations, 855
  excited state, 207
  hydration of, 783
  in Mannich reaction, 800–802
  reaction:
    with alkenes, 856–858
    with alkynyl ethers, 859
    with ammonia, 796
    with organometallic compounds, 816
    with phenols, 493
  reduction of aldehydes, 1117
  in reductive alkylation, 799, 800
  in Tollens' reaction, 844
  trimerization and polymerization of, 862
Formamides:
  addition to multiple bonds, 719
  in carbamoylations, 646
  condensation with aldehydes, 837
  dehydration of, 934
  formation of, 575, 860, 870, 1081
  reaction:
    with alkenes, 539, 732
    with aromatic rings, 487–488
    with organometallic compounds, 825
  see also Dimethylformamide
Formic acetic anhydride, 541
Formic acid, 555, 720, 788, 791, 799, 987, 1063, 1103
Formic anhydride, 347, 371, 487
Formylation:
  of alkenes, 539
  of amines, 371, 375
  of aromatic rings, 485, 487–491
  of triple bonds, 732
N-Formylation, 574
Formyl chloride, 487
Formyl-de-halogenation, 430
Formyl-de-hydrogenation, 487
N-Formyl-de-hydrogenation, 574
Formyl fluoride, 389, 490
4-Formyl-1-methylpyridinium benzenesulfonate, 1083
Four component condensation, 871
Fractional crystallization, 105
Fragmentation reactions, 632, 926–932
Franck-Condon principle, 208
Free-electron method, 24*n*
Free energy, 182–186
  of activation, 183–186, 197
Free radical addition:
  to cyclopropane rings, 679
  to multiple bonds, 666–670, 680, 687, 781
    orientation and reactivity in, 672, 674–676
Free radical cyclization, 667, 674
Free radical eliminations, 899, 916
Free radical mechanisms, 608–613, 666–668, 955–958
Free radical rearrangements, 169, 942, 955–959, 993–995, 1042, 1044–1045
Free radicals, 141, 162–170
  bridged, 612

Free radicals (*Continued*)
  detection of, 162–163
  electrophilic character of, 610
  generation and fate, 168–169
  hyperconjugation in, 65–66
  in nucleophilic substitution, 262
  polar character of, 250, 610, 615–616, 618
  produced by photochemical reactions, 208, 213
  oxidation of, 1050
  reactivity of, 618–619
  reduction of, 1050
  stability, 163–166, 674
  structure, 166–167
Free radical substitution, 462, 608–656
Free radical transition states, polar character, 610, 615
Fremy's salt, 1061
3β-Friedelanol, 961
Friedel-Crafts acylation, 484–487, 496–497
  at an aliphatic carbon, 537–538, 732
  reversal of, 506
Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 479–484
  at an aliphatic carbon, 708, 730–731
  reversal of, 505
Friedel-Crafts arylation, 484
Friedel-Crafts catalysts, 480, 484, 485
Friedel-Crafts heteroalkylations, 493–497
Friedelin, 961
Friedlander quinoline synthesis, 797
Fries rearrangement, 499
Fritsch-Buttenberg-Wiechell rearrangement, 978–980
Frontier-orbital method, 751–755, 757–758, 761, 762, 1005–1007, 1011, 1015, 1018
F strain, 233
Fumaric acid, 111–112
Furans, 42, 332, 460, 791
Furfurals, 345
Fused-ring compounds:
  aromatic substitution of, 460
  isomerism of, 113–115
F values, 248
Gabriel synthesis, 377, 591
Gallium hydride, addition to multiple bonds, 707
Gas phase acidity and basicity, 234–236
Gas phase, nucleophilicity in, 308, 309
Gatterman amide synthesis, 491
Gatterman-Koch reaction, 488
Gatterman method, 649
Gatterman reaction (formylation), 488, 497
Gatterman reaction (halogenation), 647
Gauche conformation, 122, 123, 134
Gauche effect, 123*n*
Gegenions, 142, 263
General acid catalysis, 331, 332, 376, 467, 662, 784
  definition, 226
General base catalysis, 352, 376, 784
  definition, 226
Generic names, 1133
Geometrical isomerism, 109*n*
Gerade orbitals, 5, 204
Germanium peroxide, 357
Girard's reagents, 805
Glaser reaction, 640
Glucose, 1116
Glucosides, 128
Glyceraldehyde, 95, 97
Glyceric acid, 95
Glycidic acids, decarboxylation of, 562
Glycidic esters, formation of, 735, 843–844
Glycols, *see* Diols
Glyoxals, 859, 1063, 1067
Goldberg reaction, 591
Gold chloride, 1083
Gomberg-Bachmann reaction, 640–641
Gomberg-Bachmann pinacol synthesis, 1110
Gomberg reaction, 640–641
Grignard reaction, 816–822
Grignard reagents:
  addition to multiple bonds, 714–716, 816–822, 825
  conjugate addition of, 714
  conversion:
    to aldehydes, ketones, or esters, 555
    to alkenes, 917
    to amines, 553, 554
    to azides, 554
    to sulfur compounds, 550–551
  coupling of, 650
  coupling with alcohols, 408
    with halides, 406, 407
  halogenation of, 551
  hydrolysis of, 511, 548
  in metallation reactions, 545
  optically active, 515
  reaction:
    with acetals, 409
    with acid derivatives, 434–435
    with alkynes, 511
    with bromohydrins, 966
    with carboxylic esters, 409
    with CO_2, 826
    with CS_2, 829
    with diazonium ions, 511
    with diketones, 970
    with epoxides, 410–411
    with ethers, 409–410, 595
    with halides, 402–404
    with iminium salts, 425
    with isocyanates, 828
    with isonitriles, 872
    with metal halides, 557
    with naphthalene, 599
    with nitriles, 828–829
    with oxime sulfonates, 989
    with oxygen, 548
    with peresters, 549
    with sulfates and sulfonates, 407
    with sulfonyl chlorides or sulfonates, 446
    with sulfur and selenium compounds, 411
  rearrangement of, 981
  structure of, 158–160
Group electronegativities, 14, 17
Grunwald-Winstein equation, 318, 320
S-Guaiazulene, 46
Guaiol, 46
Guanidine, 378, 803
Guest, in inclusion compounds, 79

H_0 and similar functions, 224–225

H_R, 147
Half-chair conformation, 129
Half-life, 195
Halide exchange, 258, 381–382, 389, 593
Halide ions:
  as leaving groups, 296, 310, 578, 581, 587
  as nucleophiles, 307, 593
Haller-Bauer reaction, 568
Halo acetals, 727, 925
Halo acids:
  conversion:
    to amino acids, 365
    to lactones, 353
  formation of, 1162
  lactonization of, 348
  in the Reformatsky reaction, 823
Halo acyl halides:
  deacylation of, 925
  formation of, 532, 726
Halo alcohols, 343, 927, 1045
α-Halo alcohols, 807
Halo aldehydes, formation of, 1162
Halo alkoxides, 843
Haloalkylation, 480, 495
Haloalkyl-de-hydrogenation, 495
Halo alkynes, 551, 640, 1000
Halo amides, 823, 844, 983
N-Halo amides, 503, 728, 872, 983, 1044
  formation of, 1161
Haloamines, 472, 728, 742, 927, 1043–1044
N-Haloamines, 615, 621, 622, 728, 989–990, 1043–1044
  formation of, 1161
Halo azides, 729–730
Halobenzenes, rearrangement of, 509
Halocarbenes, 543, 768, 769, 771, 772
Halo-de-acyloxy-substitution, 389
Halo-de-alkoxylation, 384
Halo-de-amination, 387
Halo-de-diazoniation, 602
Halo-de-halogenation, 381–382, 389, 593
Halo-de-hydrogenation, 476, 529, 620
N-Halo-de-hydrogenation, 574
Halo-de-hydroxylation, 382, 388
S-Halo-de-hydroxylation, 445
Halo-de-metallation, 551
Halo-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution, 382
Halo disulfides, 728
Halo epoxides, rearrangement of, 980
Halo esters:
  Darzen's reaction of, 843–844
  formation of, 1162
  reaction with boranes, 426–428
  in Reformatsky reaction, 822–824
Halo ethers, 559, 727, 807, 925
Haloformic esters, formation of, 347
Haloform reaction, 567
Halogenation:
  of acids and derivatives, 531–532
  of aldehydes, 529–531, 626
  of alkanes, 620–624
  of alkyl halides:
    neighboring groups in, 612–613
  at an allylic position, 624–626
  of aromatic rings, 476–479
  of ketones, 529–531, 626
  of multiple bonds, 724–726
  of organometallic compounds, 551–552
  of sulfoxides and sulfones, 532
N-Halogenation, 574
Halogen dance, 510
Halogen exchange, 445
Halohydrins:
  conversion:
    to alkenes, 925
    to ketones, 1119
  formation of, 385, 726–727
  rearrangement of, 964, 965
Halo ketones, 302*n*
  alkylation of, 401
  conversion to alkenes, 923
  cyclization of, 818
  Darzen's reaction of, 844
  formation of, 1162
  reaction:
    with boranes, 426–428
    with thiol acids, 941
  rearrangements of, 971–975, 978
  reduction of, 391
Halo nitriles, 426–428, 823, 844
Halo nitro compounds, 729
Halo nitroso compounds, 729
Halonium ions, 271–272, 312
α-Halo organometallic compounds, 174, 561
Halo oximes, 729
Halopyridinium salts, 349
Halo sulfides, 923
Halosulfo-de-hydrogenation, 475
Halosulfonation, 475
Halo sulfones, 532, 727–728, 844, 921–922
Halo sulfonyl derivatives, reaction with boranes, 426, 428
Halo sulfoxides, formation of, 532
Halothiocyanation, 728
Halo thioethers, 728
α-Halovinylboranes, 1000, 1001
Hammett acidity function, 224
Hammett equation, 242–250, 303, 464, 586
Hammond postulate, 188, 299, 453, 673
Handbooks, 1133
"Handbuch der Organischen Chemie" (Beilstein), 1130
Hard and soft acids and bases, 228–229, 308, 310, 324, 444
Hartree-Fock method, 26
Haworth reaction, 486
Heat:
  of atomization, 22, 26
  of combustion, 22
    of cycloalkanes, 136
  of hydrogenation, 27, 28
Heavy-atom isotope effects, 199
Heilbron's Dictionary, 1133
Helical molecules, 91–92
Helicenes, 91–92
Hell-Volhard-Zelinskii reaction, 531
Hemiacetals, 789–791, 992, 1084
Hemiaminals, 796, 797, 801–802
Hemimercaptals, 794–795

Henkel reaction, 508
Henry reaction, 836*n*
Heptalene, 45–46
Heptahelicene, 91*n*, 107
Herz reaction, 475
Hetarynes, 582*n*
Heterocycles, aromatization of, 1052
Heterocyclic compounds:
  acylation of, 485, 645
  alkylation of, 481, 598–599, 645
  amination of, 599–600
  arylation of, 599
  carbalkoxylation of, 645–646
  carboamidation of, 645–646
  formation of, 1162
  orientation in, 460–461
  tautomerism in, 69
Heterogeneous hydrogenation, 692–700, 798, 811
Heterolytic mechanisms, definition, 179
Heteronins, 56*n*
Hexachloro-2,4-cyclohexadiene, 529
Hexachloroethane, 532
Hexachlorocyclohexane, 875
Hexacyclo[4.4.0.0^{2,4}.0^{3,9}.0^{5,8}.0^{7,10}]decane, 132
Hexacyclo[5.3.0.0^{2,6}.0^{3,10}.0^{4,9}.0^{5,8}]decane, 132
Hexadecanol hemisuccinate, 1079
Hexafluoro-2-propanol, 317
Hexahelicene, 91–92, 140
Hexahydro-teraddition, 700
Hexahydro-terelimination, 1052
Hexaisopropylbenzene, 139, 775
Hexamethylenetetramine, 366, 490, 796, 1082
Hexamethylphosphoric triamide, *see* HMPT
Hexamethylphosphorus triamide, 866, 1112
Hexamethylprismane, 767, 768
Hexaphenylethane, 165
t-Hexyl cation, 143
Highest-occupied molecular orbital, *see* HOMO
Hinsberg test, 445
HMO method, 26
HMPA, 316
HMPT, 316, 591, 616, 915, 933, 934, 987, 1112
Hoesch reaction, 496
Hofmann elimination, 890, 891, 893, 894, 900, 902, 906–908, 913, 915
Hofmann exhaustive methylation, 906–908
Hofmann-Löffler-Freytag reaction, 1044
Hofmann-Löffler reaction, 1043–1044
Hofmann-Martius reaction, 503
Hofmann rearrangement, 945, 949, 983–984
Hofmann's rule, 890–892
HOMO, 752, 753, 756–758, 761, 762, 1005–1007, 1011, 1015
Homoallylic carbocations, 273
Homoallylic ethers, 935
Homoaromaticity, 63–64
Homocuprates, 433
Homoenolate ions, 155
Homogeneous hydrogenation, 692, 696, 697–698, 700, 798, 811
Homologization:
  of aldehydes and ketones, 976–978
  of primary halides, 423
Homolytic cleavage, 608, 609
Homolytic mechanisms, definition, 179
Homodienyl sigmatropic rearrangements, 1017, 1029
Homosigmatropic rearrangements, 1029
Homosolvolysis, 611
Homotopic atoms, groups, and faces, 119
Homotropylium ion, 63
Horner-Emmons reaction, 848
Host, in inclusion compounds, 79
"Hot" carbocations, 313, 314
Houben-Hoesch reaction, 496
Houben-Weyl, 1138
Huang-Minlon modification, 1096
Hückel calculations, 26
Hückel's rule, 49, 50, 54, 55, 753
Hückel systems, 754, 1006–1007, 1016
Hund's rule, 49, 204
Hunsdiecker reaction, 613, 654–655
Hurtley reaction, 596
Hybridization, 6–9, 12
  effect:
    on acid and base strength, 233–234
    on bond angles, 20–21
    on bond distances, 18–20
    on bond energies, 23
    on electron-withdrawing power, 18
  variable, 20–21
Hydrates, 783–784
Hydration:
  of alkenes, 681–682
  of allenes, 684
  of triple bonds, 683–684
  see also Water
Hydrazide ions, 600
Hydrazides:
  formation of, 370, 375
  in generation of diimide, 699
  hydrolysis of, 339
  oxidation of, 1062
  reaction with nitrous acid, 984
  reaction with PCl_5, 808
Hydrazine:
  conversion to hydrazides, 370, 375
  reaction:
    with aldehydes and ketones, 1096–1098
    of alkenes, 693, 696, 698
    to give NH, 177
    with phthalimides, 378
  reduction:
    of aryl tosylates, 594
    of nitro compounds, 1103, 1117
    of sulfonyl chlorides, 446
Hydrazines:
  addition to alkenes, 689
  conversion to azides, 572
  formation of, 1163
  oxidation of, 1062
  reaction with aldehydes and ketones, 804–805
  rearrangement of, 1034–1036
  reduction of, 1109–1110

Hydrazobenzene, 1034–1036
Hydrazo compounds, *see* Hydrazines
Hydrazoic acid:
  reaction:
    with aldehydes, 807
    with aromatic rings, 472
    to give NH, 177
    with multiple bonds, 691
  in Schmidt reaction, 986
  in Ugi reaction, 871
Hydrazones, 1098
  in the aldol condensation, 833
  alkylation of, 417
  conversion:
    to nitriles, 931
    to thioketones, 794
  exchange of, 805
  formation of, 533, 804
  hydrolysis of, 784–785
  oxidation of, 1062
  reaction:
    with HCN, 856
    with organometallic compounds, 827
  rearrangement of, 1032
  reduction of, 814, 1106
Hydrazono-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 804
Hydride ions, abstraction of, 709, 1050
Hydride shifts, 282*n*, 944–945, 948–950, 953, 954, 960, 961, 967, 1041, 1046
Hydride transfer, 1050
Hydridocarbonyltris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium, 722
Hydridopentacarbonylmanganese(I), 699
Hydro-acyl-addition, 718
O-Hydro-*C*-(α-acylalkyl)-addition, 829
1/*N*-Hydro-2/*C*-acylamino,2/*C*-oxo-biaddition, 872
Hydroacylation, 723
Hydro-acyloxy-addition, 686
1/*N*-Hydro-2/*C*-(α-acyloxyalkyl),2/*C*-oxo-biaddition, 870
Hydro-acyloxy-elimination, 905
N-Hydro-*C*-alkoxy-addition, 791
O-Hydro-*C*-(α-alkoxycarbonylalkyl)-addition, 835, 858
Hydro,alkoxy-de-diazo-bisubstitution, 344
Hydro-alkoxy-addition, 684
Hydro-alkoxy-elimination, 903
Hydro-alkyl-addition, 708, 713, 717
C-Hydro-*O*-alkyl-addition, 791
N-Hydro-*C*-alkyl-addition, 827
O-Hydro-*C*-alkyl-addition, 816
N-Hydro-*C*-alkylamino-addition, 802
N-Hydro,*N*-alkyl-*C*-oxo-biaddition, 860
Hydro-alkylsulfinyl-elimination, 913
Hydro-alkylsulfonyl-elimination, 913
Hydro-alkylthio-addition, 687
Hydro-allyl-addition, 711
C-Hydro-*O*-allyl-elimination, 935
O-Hydro-*C*-allyl-elimination, 935
Hydro-amino-addition, 689
N-Hydro-*C*-amino-addition, 803
Hydro-azido-addition, 691
Hydrobenzamides, 796
Hydro-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)-methyl-addition, 711
Hydro-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)-methyl-elimination, 918
Hydro-boranetriyl-elimination, 916
Hydroboration, 691, 702–707
1/*N*-Hydro-2/*C*-butoxy,2/*C*-oxo-biaddition, 872
Hydrocarbons, resolution of, 105
Hydro-carboxy-addition, 720
Hydro-carboxy-elimination, 1074
Hydrocarboxylation, 720–722
Hydro-chloroformyl-elimination, 918
Hydro-cyano-addition, 723
Hydro-cyano-elimination, 918
N-Hydro-*C*-cyano-addition, 856
O-Hydro-*C*-cyano-addition, 854
N-Hydro-*C*-(α-cyanoalkyl)-addition, 854
Hydro-de-acylation, 566, 567
Hydro-de-acyloxylation, 394
Hydro-de-alkoxylation, 393
Hydro-de-alkylation, 505
Hydro-de-amination, 395
Hydro-de-*t*-butylation, 568
Hydro-de-carboxylation, 507
S-Hydro-de-chlorination, 445
Hydro-de-cyanation, 569
Hydro-de-dialkylamino-substitution, 398
Hydro-de-diazoniation, 646
Hydro-de-formylation, 506
Hydro-de-halogenation, 396, 510
Hydro-de-hydroxylation, 392, 397, 593
N-Hydro-de-hydroxylation, 1105
Hydro-de-mercapto-substitution, 652
Hydro-de-metallation, 511, 547
Hydro-de-(α-oxidoalkyl)-substitution, 565
Hydro-de-sulfonation, 509
Hydro-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution, 392
Hydro-dialkylaminoalkyl-addition, 723
Hydro,dialkylamino-de-diazo-bisubstitution, 368
Hydro,dialkylamino-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 798
Hydro-(dialkyloxidoammonio)-elimination, 909
Hydro-dialkylsulfonio-elimination, 912
Hydro-diazonio-elimination, 910
O-Hydro-*C*-α-ethoxycarbonylalkyl-addition, 822
Hydro-formyl-addition, 722
Hydroformylation, 722–723
Hydrogen:
  free-radical migration of, 955, 957, 958
  in hydroformylation, 722
  as a neighboring group, 285–286
  see also Hydrogenation; Hydrogenolysis
Hydrogenation:
  of aldehydes and ketones, 811, 814, 1097
  of alkenes and alkynes, 672, 691–700

Hydrogenation (*Continued*)
  of amides, 1099
  of anhydrides, 1101
  of aromatic rings, 700–702
  of azo compounds, 1106
  of carboxylic esters, 1100, 1101
  of C═N compounds, 814
  of enol triflates, 1098
  of hydrazones, 1105
  of hydroperoxides, 1109
  of nitriles, 815
  of nitro compounds, 1103
  of oximes, 1105
  of ozonides, 1066
  in reductive alkylation, 798–800
  selectivity, 1093, 1095
  see also Hydrogenolysis
Hydrogen bonding, 67, 71–74, 233
Hydrogen bromide:
  addition to multiple bonds, 663, 667, 674, 680–681
  in amine cleavage, 387
  in haloalkylation, 495
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 382–384
    with cyclopropanes, 676
    with diazo ketones, 386
    with epoxides, 385
    with ethers, 384
Hydrogen chloride:
  addition to multiple bonds, 663, 669, 674, 680–681
  in the Fischer-Hepp rearrangement, 502
  in formylations, 488–489
  in haloalkylation, 495
  in the Orton rearrangement, 503
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 382–384
    with aldehydes and ketones, 807
    with arenes, 451
    with diazo ketones, 386
    with epoxides, 385
    with ethers, 384
    with nitriles, 788
    with nitro compounds, 593
Hydrogen cyanide, addition to multiple bonds, 723, 854–856, 860
Hydrogen exchange, 467–468, 518–519, 523, 539, 696, 697
Hydrogen fluoride, addition to multiple bonds, 671, 680–681, 729
  reaction:
    with acyl halides, 389
    with alcohols, 383
    with anhydrides, 389
    with epoxides, 385
Hydrogen iodide:
  addition to multiple bonds, 680–681
  in cleavage of amines, 387
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 382, 384
    with epoxides, 385, 386
    with ethers, 384
  reduction:
    of aryl halides, 510
    of diazo ketones, 386, 395
    of diketones, 1097
    of keto epoxides, 386
    of phenols, 593
    of sulfonyl halides, 1107
    of sulfoxides, 1108
Hydrogenolysis:
  of acyl halides, 396
  of adamantanes, 569
  of alcohols, 392–393
  of alkyl halides, 390
  of amine oxides, 1108
  of amines, 395
  of aryl halides, 510
  of azoxy compounds, 1108
  of cyclopropanes, 702
  definition, 389
  of epoxides, 394
  of nitriles, 1107
  of N-nitrosoamines, 1106
  of peroxides, 1110
  of phenols and phenolic ethers, 593–594
  in reduction alkylation, 791, 798–800
  of sulfoxides, 1108
  of sulfur compounds, 652–653
Hydrogen peroxide:
  in carbalkoxylations, 645, 646
  conversion to singlet oxygen, 634
  in Dakin reaction, 1073
  in hydrolysis:
    of C═N bonds, 785
    of nitro compounds, 787
    of thioacetals, 331
  hydroxylation with, 627, 628
  reaction:
    with alkenes, 733
    with bromo ketones, 923
    with ketones, 940
    with nitriles, 788
  oxidation:
    of alkenes, 1085
    of amines, 1086, 1088
    of arenes, 498
    of boranes, 550, 705, 995–999, 1002
    of carboxylic acids, 1090
    of diketones, 1063
    of ozonides, 1066
    of sulfur compounds, 1089, 1092
  in peroxide formation, 357
Hydrogen sulfide, 360, 362, 687, 688, 793, 794, 1097
Hydro-halo-addition, 679
Hydro,halo-de-diazo-bisubstitution, 386
Hydro-halo-elimination, 914
Hydro-hydroxy-addition, 681
O-Hydro-*C*-hydroxy-addition, 783
O-Hydro-*C*-(β-hydroxyalkyl)-addition, 844
Hydro,hydroxy-de-diazo-bisubstitution, 329
Hydro-hydroxy-elimination, 901
C-Hydro-*N*-hydroxy-elimination, 930
Hydrolysis:
  of acetals, 329–331
  of acyl halides, 333
  of alkyl halides, 240, 326
  of amides, 239, 338–341
  of anhydrides, 333
  of aryl halides, 588
  of boranes, 695
  of Bunte salts, 360
  of carboxylic esters, 240, 245–246, 248, 292, 299, 334–338
  of C═N compounds, 784–786

  of cyclopropanes, 773
  of diazo ketones, 329
  of diazonium ions, 601
  of dihalides, 327
  of dihalo ketones, 1118
  of enamines, 785–786
  of enol borinates, 717
  of enol ethers, 329, 331–332
  of epoxides, 332
  of inorganic esters, 328
  of isocyanates and isothiocyanates, 786
  of nitriles, 788
  of nitro compounds, 786–787
  of organometallic compounds, 511, 548
  of ortho esters, 329–331
  of oximes, 1045
  of sulfonic acid derivatives, 444
  of thioacetals and thioketals, 331
  of trihalides, 327
Hydro-magnesioalkylamino-elimination, 910
O-Hydro-*C*-mercapto-addition, 793
Hydrometallation, 707
  see also Hydroboration
Hydro-metallo-addition, 707
Hydro-metallo-elimination, 917
Hydro,oxy-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution, 815
Hydroperoxide ion, 736
Hydroperoxides:
  addition to alkenes, 685
  conversion to peroxides, 635
  formation of, 1068, 1163
  oxidation:
    of amines, 1088
    of azo compounds, 1089
    of lactams, 1080–1081
  reduction of, 1108–1109
  rearrangement of, 991–992
Hydroperoxy-de-halogenation, 356
Hydroperoxy-de-hydrogenation, 633
Hydroperoxy-de-metallation, 548
Hydroquinones, 80, 810
Hydrosilanes, 1052*n*
Hydro-sulfonato-addition, 688
O-Hydro-*C*-sulfonato-addition, 795
Hydro-tosyloxy-elimination, 906
Hydro-trialkylammonio-elimination, 906
Hydroxamic acids:
  formation of, 370, 375, 535, 787
  reaction with phenolic ethers, 473
  rearrangement of, 985
Hydroxide ion, as nucleophile, 326–341, 588, 970, 971
Hydroxy acids:
  cleavage of, 1063, 1064
  decarbonylation of, 341
  formation of, 1164
  fragmentation of, 928
  lactonization of, 348–349
  cleavage of, 831, 1063
Hydroxy aldehydes:
  conversion to osazones, 804
  formation of, 1164
  rearrangement of, 968
Hydroxyalkylation, 493
Hydroxyalkyl-de-hydrogenation, 493
Hydroxyalkyl-hydroxy-elimination, 928
Hydroxy-alkylthio-elimination, 925
Hydroxy alkynes, 290, 935
Hydroxy amides:
    formation of, 1164
    rearrangement of, 983
Hydroxyamines:
  cleavage of, 1063
  conversion to aziridines, 367
  formation of, 1164
  fragmentation of, 928
  rearrangement of, 964, 965
Hydroxy azo compounds, formation of, 1047
Hydroxy-chloro-addition, 726
Hydroxy-de-acyloxy-substitution, 333
Hydroxy-de-alkoxylation, 334, 345
Hydroxy-de-amination, 338, 588
Hydroxy-de-(bistrifluoro-acetoxy)thallation, 549
S-Hydroxy-de-chlorination, 444
Hydroxy-de-diazoniation, 329, 601
Hydroxy-de-halogenation, 326, 333, 588
Hydroxy-de-hydrogenation, 498, 600, 627
Hydroxy-de-metallation, 548
Hydroxy-de-sulfonyloxy-substitution, 328
Hydroxy enol ethers, 840
Hydroxy esters, formation of, 1164
Hydroxy ethers, formation of, 346
Hydroxy imines, rearrangement of, 968
Hydroxyimino-de-dihydro-bisubstitution, 533
Hydroxyimino-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 805
Hydroxy ketones:
  cleavage of, 831, 1063
  conversion:
    to amino ketones, 367
    to osazones, 804
  formation of, 1164
  rearrangement of, 968, 971
  reduction of, 393, 1097
Hydroxylamines, 370, 375, 600, 689, 694, 698, 805–807, 1103
  formation of, 1165
  oxidation of, 1062, 1086
  reaction:
    with aromatic compounds, 473
    with nitroso compounds, 573
  rearrangement of, 606, 990
  reduction of, 1105
Hydroxylamine-O-sulfonic acid, 395, 553, 694, 696, 805, 807, 988
Hydroxylamine-O-sulfonic acids, 742
Hydroxylation:
  at an aliphatic carbon, 627–631
  of alkenes, 732–734
  of aromatic acids, 600–601
  of aromatic rings, 498
Hydroxy mercaptans, formation of, 1165
Hydroxy nitriles, formation of, 1165

α-Hydroxy nitriles, *see* Cyanohydrins
Hydroxy,oxo-de-nitrilo-tersubstitution, 788
Hydroxy,oxo-de-trihalo-tersubstitution, 327
4-Hydroxypyridine, 69
Hydroxy selenides, 926
Hydroxy sulfides:
  conversion to alkenes, 925–926
  formation of, 742, 1165
Hydroxysulfinamides, 838, 926
Hydroxy sulfonic acids, formation of, 364, 795
Hydroxy sulfoxides, 914
Hydroxy thiols, 361, 793
Hyperconjugation, 64–66, 143, 164, 199, 457
Hypobromous acid, 477, 726, 727
Hypochlorous acid, 477, 531, 726, 727
Hypofluorous acid, 726
Hypoiodous acid, 726
Hypophosphorous acid, 646, 647
Hypostrophene, 1025
Hypsochromic shifts, 205, 206

+*I* and −*I* groups, 16–18
Imidates, *see* Imino esters
Imidazoles, 352, 398, 919
Imidazolides, 339, 350, 436
Imides:
  additions to multiple bonds, 689
  N-alkylation of, 377
  formation of, 1165
  hydrolysis of, 339
  reaction with phosphoranes, 853
  rearrangement of, 983
  reduction of, 1100
  see also Ureides
Imidines, formation of, 803
Imido selenium compounds, 535
Imido sulfur compounds, 535
Imine-enamine tautomerism, 69–70
Imines:
  alkylation of, 417, 419*n*
  condensation with active hydrogen compounds, 838
  conversion:
    to enamine salts, 542
    to β-lactams, 869
  Darzen's reactions of, 844
  formation of, 1165
  hydrolysis of, 784
  isomerism of, 110
  reaction:
    with aldehydes and ketones, 833
    with HCN, 856
    with H_2S, 794
    with organometallic compounds, 827
    with phosphoranes, 853
  reduction of, 814, 827
  tautomerism of, 69
Iminium ions, 798, 1054
  hydrolysis of, 785, 786
  in Mannich reaction, 802
  reaction:
    with cyanide ions, 856
    with enol borinates, 828
    with organometallic compounds, 425, 827
  reduction of, 814
  rearrangement of, 1031*n*
Imino[10]annulene, 56–57
Imino chlorides, 495, 1046
Imino esters:
  conversion to amidines, 375
  formation of, 1165
  hydrolysis of, 336*n*
  rearrangement of, 1046
Imino ether fluoroborates, 1099
Imino ethers, *see* Imino esters
Iminonitriles, 854, 856
Inclusion compounds, 79–80, 105
Increasing electron demand, principle of, 271, 272, 275, 276, 278, 661
Indenes, 43
Index Chemicus, 1130, 1142
Index Guide, 1128
Index of ring systems, 1128–1129
Index to Scientific Reviews, 1144
Indicators, 224
Indium, 823
Indoles, 461, 772, 1032
Inductive effects, 16–18
Infrared spectra, 204
  and hydrogen bonding, 72
Ing-Manske procedure, 378
Inhibitors, 609
Initiation steps, 608–610, 666
Initiators, 610, 672
Inorganic esters:
  conversion:
    to alkenes, 906
    to ethers, 343
  formation of, 1165
Insertion:
  of carbenes, 174–175, 542–544, 771
  of nitrenes, 177, 535–536
Intermediate complex mechanism, 577*n*
Intermediates, 185
  determination of, 189–190
Internal conversion, 210
Internal return, 263–265, 288
Intersystem crossing, 210, 211
Intimate ion pairs, 263
Intramolecular rearrangements, 943
Inverse isotope effects, 198
Inversion of configuration, 98
  in cyclopropane systems, 677–679
  in electrophilic substitution, 514–515, 517
  in free radical substitution, 610
  in nucleophilic substitution, 256–258, 263–264, 267–268, 287
  in rearrangements, 946–948
  at a sulfur atom, 443
Inverted tetrahedra, 134
Iodide, as leaving group, 310
Iodide ion, 602, 924
Iodination:
  of aldehydes and ketones, 529–531
  of alkanes, 621, 623
  of aromatic rings, 478
  of carboxylic acids, 532
  of multiple bonds, 724
Iodine:
  in alcohol reduction, 392

  complexes of, 77
  in the haloform reaction, 567
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 1091
    with alcohols, 631
    with boranes, 1000, 1001
    with carboxylate ions, 654
    with ketones, 1120
    with organometallic compounds, 551, 552
  see also Iodination
Iodine azide, 729, 730
Iodine bromide, 724
Iodine chloride, 478, 724
Iodine isocyanate, 730
Iodine pentafluoride, 1061
Iodine triacetate, 1063
Iodobenzene dichloride, 532, 725, 852, 1056
Iodo-de-acyloxy-substitution, 386
Iodo-de-diazoniation, 602
Iodoform, 567, 655
Iodo isocyanates, 730
Iodonium ions, 579*n*, 597, 661, 729
Iodosobenzene, 1088
o-Iodosobenzoic acid, 628
N-Iodosuccinimide, 1059, 1063
Iodo thiocyanates, 728
Iodo (triarylphosphine) copper compounds, 401
Iodotrimethylsilane, 331, 334, 385, 547, 920, 1055
Ion-assisted solvolysis, 318
Ion cyclotron resonance, 147
Ionic bonding, 15
Ionic strength, 318
Ionization potentials, 10
Ion-molecule pairs, 580
Ion-pair mechanism, 266, 522, 882, 888
Ion pairs, 142
  in addition to multiple bonds, 659, 661*n*, 669
  in allylic rearrangements, 288
  with carbanions, 155, 517–519
  in elimination reactions, 880, 885, 889, 895
  in Friedel-Crafts reactions, 483
  in rearrangements, 952, 963
  in SN1 mechanism, 263–266, 287
Ipso attack, 458–459, 467, 618, 1047
Iron, 399, 406, 1103
Iron azide, 554
Iron complexes, 1076
Iron pentacarbonyl, 391, 392, 393, 430, 555, 785, 799, 921, 1091
Isoamyl nitrite, 571
Isoborneol, 959
Isobutane, dipole moment, 15
Isobutylmagnesium bromide, 397
Isochronous hydrogens, 117
Isocyanates:
  conversion to lactams, 869
  formation of, 944, 1166
  hydrolysis of, 786
  as intermediates, 338, 983, 986
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 791, 792
    with ammonia and amines, 802
    with aromatic rings, 492
    with organometallic compounds, 828
    with phosphoranes, 853
    with sodium bisulfite, 795
  reduction of, 814, 1106, 1108
Isocyanato-de-halogenation, 380
Isocyanato-iodo-addition, 730
Isoinversion, 518
Isonitriles:
  addition reactions of, 869–872
  formation of, 1166
  in formylation of aromatic rings, 491
  oxidation of, 1089
  reduction of, 396
Isopinocampheylborane, 705
Isopropenyl acetate, 352
Isopropenyl formate, 375
Isoquinolines, formation of, 495
Isoracemization, 518, 519
Isothiocyanates:
  formation of, 1166
  hydrolysis of, 786
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 792
    with ammonia and amines, 802
    with aromatic rings, 492
    with organometallic compounds, 828
  reduction of, 1106
Isothiocyanato-de-halogenation, 380
Isothiuronium salts, 360, 1087
Isotope effects, 197, 201, 1036
  in aromatic substitution, 448–450, 471
  in eliminations, 874, 878, 883–884, 886–887, 898
  in nucleophilic substitution, 304
  in oxidation of arenes, 1073
  secondary, 199, 201
  solvent, 200–201
  in tautomerization, 528
Isotopic labeling, 191
Isovalent hyperconjugation, 66
I strain, 240, 304, 784
IUPAC nomenclature for transformations, 252–254
Ivanov reaction, 837*n*

J, *see* Coupling constants
J_0, 147
Jablonski diagram, 209
Jacobsen reaction, 508
Japp-Klingemann reaction, 533
Jones reagent, 1057
Journals, 1121–1125
  abbreviations, 1123, 1144

K_c pathway, 278*n*
K_Δ pathway, 277–278
K_s pathway, 278
Ketals, *see* Acetals
Katritzky pyrylium-pyridinium method, 313, 354, 364, 387, 395, 415
Kekulene, 59–60
Ketene, photolysis of, 174, 215
Ketene acetals, 868
Ketene dimers, 867–868, 916

- Ketenes:
  - addition:
    - of alcohols and phenols, 685
    - of amines, 690
    - of carbenes, 770
    - of carboxylic acids, 687
    - of enols, 685
    - of hydrogen halides, 681
    - of mercaptans, 688
    - of water, 682
  - 2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 758–763, 867, 869
  - dimerization of, 758, 763
  - formation of, 1166
  - halogenation of, 726
  - as intermediates, 338, 541
  - reaction:
    - with aromatic rings, 485
    - with phosphoranes, 853
- Ketene thioacetal monoxides, 712
- Ketenimines, 542
  - formation of, 425, 853, 902
  - reaction with amines, 690
- Ketenimmonium salts, 759
- Ketimines, *see* Imines
- Keto acids:
  - cleavage of, 1063, 1064
  - decarbonylation of, 341
  - decarboxylation of, 563, 564
  - formation of, 440, 486, 841–842, 872, 1088
  - lactonization of, 348
  - oxidation of, 1074
  - cleavage of, 1063
  - conversion to hydroxy acids, 1118
  - formation of, 439, 440, 539, 1067, 1077
  - hydration of, 783
  - rearrangement of, 970
- α-Keto diazonium salts, 329
- Keto-enol tautomerism, 66–68
- Keto-enol tautomerization, 527–529
- Keto esters:
  - acidity of, 231
  - addition to multiple bonds, 712, 719
  - cleavage of, 566
  - condensation with aldehydes, 836
  - conversion to pyrazolones, 804
  - cyclization of, 1113
  - decarbalkoxylation of, 1075
  - decarbonylation of, 341
  - decarboxylation of, 564
  - formation of, 437–439, 596, 597, 824, 977
  - reaction with heterocycles, 645–646
  - reduction of, 809*n*, 813
- Keto ethers, formation of, 344
- Keto form, in tautomerism, 66–68, 527–528
- α-Ketol rearrangement, 968, 970
- Ketones:
  - acylation of, 436–437, 439–440, 541, 861
  - acyloxylation of, 636
  - addition to multiple bonds, 712, 719
  - in the aldol condensation, 829–834
  - alkylation of, 401, 416–420, 428, 540–542, 716, 773
  - arylation of, 596, 716
  - bimolecular reduction of, 1110–1113
  - cleavage of, 567, 1065, 1066
  - condensation:
    - with active hydrogen compounds, 835–841
    - with aromatic rings, 493
    - with carboxylic esters, 835
    - with CO_2 and CS_2, 841–842
    - with halo esters, 843–844
    - with phosphoranes, 845–853
  - conversion:
    - to amides, 986, 987
    - to carbonates, 991
    - to carboxylic esters, 990
    - to dihalides, 807–809
    - to enolate ions, 419–420, 546
    - to enol ethers, 344
    - to episulfides, 867
    - to epoxides, 864–866
    - to halo alcohols and ethers, 807
    - to oximes, 805–806
    - to oxonium salts, 356
    - to peroxides, 940
    - to phenols, 1073
    - to silyl enol ethers, 547
    - to thioketones, 794
    - to unsaturated ketones, 913, 1054
  - cyanation of, 539
  - 2 + 2 cycloadditions of, 867–868
  - cyclodehydration of, 494
  - dehydration of, 902
  - formation of, 214, 1166
  - formylation of, 539
  - homoligization of, 976–978
  - hydroxylation of, 628
  - in Mannich reaction, 800
  - nitration of, 638
  - oxidation of, 1065–1066, 1077
  - in oxidation of alcohols, 1059
  - in the Passerini and Ugi reactions, 870–871
  - photochemistry of, 213, 214, 217, 938–939, 941
  - protection of, 789, 795, 811
  - reaction:
    - with alcohols, 789–790
    - with alkenes, 858, 868
    - with alkynyl ethers, 859
    - with allylic alcohols, 1030
    - with amines, 796–798, 806
    - with ammonia, 796, 798–800
    - with HCN, 854–855
    - with hydrazines, 804–806, 1096–1098
    - with ketenes, 685, 867
    - with mercaptans or H_2S, 793–795
    - with organometallic compounds, 104, 816–824
    - with sodium bisulfite, 795
    - with thiobenzilic acid, 941
    - with water, 783
  - reduction of, 104, 809–814, 1096–1098, 1107, 1110–1113
  - in reductive acylations, 791
  - in reductive alkylations, 791, 795, 798–800
  - rearrangements of, 967–974, 986–987, 1032

  Reformatsky reaction of, 822–824
  selenylation of, 536
  sulfenylation of, 536
  sulfonation, 537
  thiocyanation of, 537
  Tollens' reaction of, 844
  Willgerodt reaction of, 1119
  see also Diketones; Unsaturated ketones, *etc.*
Ketonic decarboxylation, 442
Keto nitriles, *see* Cyano ketones
Keto sulfides, 413*n*, 742
Keto sulfones:
  alkylation of, 413
  conversion to triple bonds, 926
Keto sulfoxides, 413, 440
Keto thioesters, 941
Ketoximes, *see* Oximes
Ketyls, 169–170, 216, 814, 821, 995, 1111, 1114
Keywords, 1127, 1128, 1142
Kiliani-Fischer method, 855
Kindler modification, 1120
Kinetic acidity, 152
Kinetic control of product, 187–188
Kinetic requirements for reaction, 183–186
Kinetics, mechanistic information from, 192–201
Kizhner reduction, 1096
Knoevenagel condensation, 835–841
Knots, 93
Koch-Haaf reaction, 432, 720
Koch reaction, 720
Kolbe reaction, 653
Kolbe-Schmitt reaction, 491
Kornblum's rule, 324*n*
Krebs cycle, 116
Kröhnke reaction, 1083
KWIC index, 1127

Lactams:
  addition to multiple bonds, 689
  conversion to thiolactams, 794
  formation of, 1168
  hydrolysis of, 339
  oxidation of, 1080
  reduction of, 1099
  ring expansion of, 376–377
  sulfenylation of, 536
α-Lactams, 379
Lactic acid, configuration of, 95, 98
Lactones:
  carboxylation of, 842
  cleavage of, 361
  condensation with aldehydes or ketones, 835
  conversion:
    to alanine, 376
    to enol ethers, 826
    to hydroxy esters, 351
    to lactams, 375
    to thiolactones, 794
    to unsaturated lactones, 1054
  decarboxylation of, 929, 930, 939
  formation of, 185, 270, 1168
  hydrolysis of, 334, 337
  pyrolysis of, 905
  reduction of, 1100
  sulfenylation of, 536
α-Lactones, 939
Ladenburg formula, for benzene, 768
Landolt-Börnstein, 1133
Lanthanide shift reagents, 108, 118
Large-angle strain, 135
LCAO method, 5
L configuration, 95
Lead, 1116
  see also Pyrophoric lead
Lead(II) acetate, 1089
Lead dioxide, 331, 1091
Lead tetraacetate, 1051*n*, 1052*n*
  acyloxylation with, 636
  in quinone methylation, 644
  reaction:
    with alkenes, 742
    with amides, 983
    with amines, 990
    with arylthallium compounds, 549
    with carboxylate ions, 654
  oxidation:
    of alcohols, 631–632, 1058
    of alkenes, 734, 1085
    of amines, 1061, 1092
    of carboxylic acids, 1074–1076
    of diamines, 1071
    of diols, 1063–1065
    of oximes, 785
    of phenols, 1061
Leakage, 952
Least motion principle, 701
Leaving groups:
  definition, 179
  in aromatic nucleophilic substitution, 577–578, 581, 587
  effect on neighboring groups, 272
  in electrophilic substitution, 447, 466–467, 512, 522
  in elimination reactions, 884, 885, 887, 890, 895–896, 898
  in nucleophilic aliphatic substitution, 310–316
Lederer-Manasse reaction, 493
Lemieux-von Rudloff reagent, 1071
Letters, in journals, 1122
Leuckart reaction, 799
Levo isomer, 82
Levulinic acid, 784
Lewis acids and bases, 227–229
  strengths of, 228, 232, 233
Lewis structures, 11–13
Limiting SN1 mechanism, 260
Limonene, 634, 1097, 1106
Lindlar catalyst, 695
Linear free energy equations, 226, 242–250, 309, 318, 320
Literature, chemical, 1121–1145
Literature searching, 1141–1145
Lithiation, 545–546
1/1/Lithio-alkyl-addition, 872
1-Lithio-1,1-bis(phenylthio)alkanes, 997
Lithiotrialkylsilanes, 839
Lithio-1-trimethylsilylpropane, 407
Lithium, 399, 436, 817, 818, 920, 1112
Lithium in ammonia or amines:
  reduction:
    of aldehydes and ketones, 420, 1097

Lithium in ammonia or amines (*Continued*)
  of alkoxide ions, 822
  of aromatic rings, 700–702
  of carboxylic acids, 397
  of carboxylic esters, 394
  of cyclopropanes, 702
  of epoxides, 394
  of multiple bonds, 693, 695, 699
  of sulfides, 406
Lithium in *t*-BuOH, 390
Lithium acetylides, 1001
Lithium aldimines, 872, 999
Lithium alkoxyalkylcuprates, 408
Lithium alkylcyanocopper compounds, 713
Lithium alkynyltrialkylborates, 1001–1002
Lithium amalgam, 400
Lithium aryltrialkylborates, 434
Lithium aluminum deuteride, 390
Lithium aluminum hydride, 1052*n*
  in acetal dimerization, 410
  in coupling of alcohols, 408
  dehalogenation, 924
  reaction:
    with episulfides, 921
    with sulfones, 940, 1108
  reduction:
    of acetals, 393–394
    of acyl halides, 1102
    of alcohols, 392, 393
    of aldehydes, 809–813, 1112
    of alkyl halides, 389–391
    of alkyl sulfonates, 392, 393
    of amides, 398, 1099
    of amine oxides, 1108
    of amines, 396
    of anhydrides, 1101, 1102
    of aryl halides, 510
    of azides, 730, 1106
    of azoxy compounds, 1108, 1110
    of carboxylic acids, 1099
    of carboxylic esters, 1100, 1101
    of C═C bonds, 694, 695
    of C═N compounds, 814
    of disulfides, 1110
    of epoxides, 394
    of ethers, 393
    of hydroperoxides, 1108–1109
    of isocyanates and isothiocyanates, 1106
    of isonitriles, 870
    of ketones, 809–813, 1097, 1112
    of nitriles, 815, 816
    of nitro compounds, 1103, 1117
    of nitroso compounds, 1117
    of ortho esters, 394
    of osmic esters, 739
    of oximes, 1105
    of ozonides, 1066
    of peroxides, 1110
    of quaternary salts, 395
    of sulfonyl halides, 1107
    of sulfoxides, 1108
    of tosylhydrazides, 1102
  selectivity, 1093–1095
Lithium bis(dialkylamino)copper compounds, 401
Lithium bis(dialkylphosphino)-copper compounds, 401
Lithium bis(diphenylphosphino)-copper compounds, 401
Lithium bis(ethylenedioxyboryl)-methide, 841
Lithium borohydride, 999, 1100, 1101
Lithium boronate complexes, 406
Lithium *t*-butoxy(alkyl)copper, 402
Lithium butylborohydride, 694
Lithium carboxylates, 824
Lithium dialkylcopper reagents:
  addition to multiple bonds, 713–717, 778, 817
  dimerization of, 651
  formation of, 402
  reaction:
    with acyl halides, 433
    with alkyl halides, 400–404
    with amines, 553
    with amino ethers, 409
    with aryl halides, 595
    with carboxylic esters, 409
    with epoxides, 410–411
    with sulfones, 411
    with thiol esters, 435
    with tosylates, 407
Lithium dialkyldialkynylborates, 651
Lithium N-dihydropyridylaluminum hydride, 810
Lithium diisopropylamide, 391, 421
Lithium dimesitylborohydride bis(dimethoxyethane), 811
Lithium dimethylcopper, 400*n*, 401, 817
Lithium diphenylphosphide, 368, 920
Lithium enolates, 824, 832, 833, 1092. *See also* Enolate ions
Lithium ethoxyvinylcopper, 719
Lithium fluoroborate, 331
Lithium iodide, 385, 386
Lithium nitride, 371
Lithium organoaluminates, 652
Lithium phenylthioalkylcopper compounds, 401, 433, 713
Lithium tri-*t*-butoxyaluminum hydride, 393, 396–398, 813, 999, 1095
Lithium tri-*sec*-butylborohydride, 810
Lithium triethoxyaluminum hydride, 816
Lithium triethylborohydride, 390, 392, 394, 395, 1095, 1099, 1101
Lithium triethylcarboxide, 996–999
Lithium trimethoxyaluminum hydride, 390, 1095
Lithium tris[(3-ethyl-3-pentyl)oxy]aluminum hydride, 810
Lithium tungsten dioxide, 1119
Lone pair size, 20–21, 128
Loose ion pairs, 263
Lossen rearrangement, 945, 985
Lowest-unoccupied molecular orbital, *see* LUMO
LUMO, 752, 753, 756–758, 761, 762

$+M$ and $-M$ groups, 237–238
McFadyen-Stevens reduction, 398
Magnesiotrialkylsilanes, 839
Magnesium, 392, 406, 558, 560, 817, 820, 924, 925, 1110, 1112
Magnesium aldimines, 872
Magnesium amides, 910
Magnesium dialkylcopper reagents, 433
Magnesium hydride, 707
Magnesium methyl carbonate, 842
Magnetic susceptibility, 162
Maleic acid, 111–112
Maleic anhydride, 746, 751, 1071
Maleic esters, 779
Malonic acids, 836, 902
  decarboxylation of, 563, 564
  formation of, 440–441, 826
Malonic esters:
  addition to multiple bonds, 711, 719
  condensation with aldehydes or ketones, 838
  formation of, 438, 685
Malonic ester synthesis, 412, 493, 596–597
Manganese(III) acetate, 742
Manganese compounds, as oxidizing agents, 1051*n*
Manganese dioxide, 788, 1051*n*, 1052*n*, 1053, 1057, 1062, 1063, 1081, 1092
Manganese ions, 1074, 1081
Mannich bases, 298, 313
  formation of, 800–802, 828
  nucleophilic substitutions of, 368
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 415, 712
    with boranes, 717
Mannich reaction, 496, 800–802, 834, 855
Markovnikov addition, 483, 538, 673–675, 677, 679–680, 682–687, 690–691, 704, 721, 726, 729–731, 740, 858, 981, 1085
Masked ions, 418*n*, 419, 718
Masochistic steric effects, 762
Mass-law effect, 261
Mechanical resolution, 106
Mechanisms:
  general discussion, 179–189
  methods of determining, 189–201, 217
  types of, 179
Medium effects on acid and base strength, 234–236
Meerwein arylation reaction, 641–642
Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley reduction, 811, 813–814
Meisenheimer rearrangement, 994
Meisenheimer salts, 577–578
MEM group, 343
Memory effects, 951–952
Menschutkin reaction, 364
Menthyl acetate, 900
Menthyl chloride, 876, 882, 900
Menthyllithium, 157–158
Mercaptals, 794*n*
Mercaptans, 646
  addition to multiple bonds, 687–688, 794–795
  desulfurization of, 652
  formation of, 1168
  in hydrocarboxylation, 722
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  as nucleophiles, 361–362
  oxidation of, 1087, 1092
  reaction:
    with aromatic rings, 480
    with organometallic compounds, 411
  reductive alkylation of, 795
Mercaptide ions, *see* Thiolate ions
Mercapto-de-diazoniation, 601
Mercapto-de-halogenation, 360, 362, 589
Mercapto-de-metallation, 550
Mercaptoles, 794*n*
Merck Index, 1133
Mercuration, of aromatic compounds, 547
Mercuric acetate, 1054, 1084, 1085
  acyloxylation with, 636
Mercuric bromide, 513, 514
Mercuric chloride, 7, 331, 997
Mercuric ions, 681, 683, 685, 686
Mercuric oxide:
  in the Hunsdiecker reaction, 654
  hydrolysis of thioacetals, 331
  oxidation:
    of hydrazines, 1062
    of hydrazones, 1062
    of isonitriles, 1089
  reaction:
    with dihydrazones, 923–924
    with halohydrins, 964
    with thioureas, 934
Mercuric salts, 547, 1077
Mercuric sulfate, 1085, 1086
Mercuric trifluoroacetate, 326
Mercuriodioctacarbonylcobalt, 775
Mercury, hybridization in, 6
Mercury fulminate, 497
Mercury nitrate, 1083
Mesitoic acid esters, 336
Mesitylene, 498
Meso compounds, 100–101, 113, 119, 269
Mesoionic compounds, 63
Mesomeric effect, *see* Resonance effects
Mesylates, 312
Meta directing groups:
  in electrophilic substitution, 453, 455–460
  in nucleophilic substitution, 584, 586
Metalated aldimines, 872
α-Metalated isocyanides, 840*n*
Metal-carbenes, 1038–1039
Metal halides, reaction with organometallic compounds, 557
Metal hydride addition-elimination mechanism, 526
Metal ion complexes, 75–76, 229
Metallacyclobutanes, 1039
Metallation, 545–547
S-Metallo-*C*-alkoxy-addition, 793
S-Metallo-*C*-alkylamino-addition, 803

Metallocenes, 44–45
  chirality of, 92
  formation of, 567
  see also Ferrocenes
Metallocycles, 775
Metallo-de-diazoniation, 650
Metallo-de-halogenation, 558
Metallo-de-hydrogenation, 545
Metallo-de-metallation, 556
Metal-metal multiple bonds, 9*n*
Metals:
  reaction:
    with diazonium ions, 650
    with organometallic compounds, 556
Metals in ammonia or amines, 1052*n*
Metathesis of alkenes, 1036–1039, 1115
Methane:
  bonding in, 9, 11
  conversion to *t*-butyl cation, 540
  dipole moment, 15
  heat of atomization, 21–22
  photoelectron spectrum of, 11
N-Methanesulfinyl-*p*-toluidine, 838
Methanesulfonates, 312
Methanesulfonic acid, 334, 357, 988
Methanesulfonyl chloride, 350
Methanimine, 796*n*
Methano[10]annulenes, 56–57
Methano[12]annulenes, 61
Methanol, 907
  C-alkylation of, 424
Methanonium ion, 523
Methoxyacetyl chloride, 495
Methoxyacetylene, 355
Methoxyamines, 553
2-Methoxyethoxymethyl group, 343
Methoxymethyl cation, 146
Methoxymethyl group, 343
Methoxyvinyllithium, 840
Methyl as neighboring group, 285
Methylation, of diazonium salts, 649
3-Methylbenzothiazole-2-thione, 362
1-Methyl-4-carbomethoxypyridinium ion, 319
Methyl-de-diazoniation, 649
Methylene, 171–173, 543, 768–772
2-Methylenebicyclo[3.1.0]-3-hexenes, 1041–1042
1-Methylene-2,4-cyclohexadiene, 1017
1-Methylene-2,5-cyclohexadienes, 1041–1042
Methylene-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 826
3-Methyl-1-ethyl-3-phospholene-1-oxide, 862–863
1-Methyl-2-fluoropyridinium tosylate, 393
Methylhexacyclohexadecanol, 965
Methyl iodide, 905, 906, 921
Methyllithium, 407–408
N-Methylmorpholine-N-oxide, 733, 1058
Methyl nitrate, 468
Methylpentaspirohexadecanol, 965
Methylpyridines, 440, 836
Methyl radical, 163, 167, 610, 616
Methylselenol esters, 377
3-Methyl-2-selenoxobenzothiazole, 920
Methyl sulfate, 344, 1002
Methylsulfinyl carbanion, 440, 599, 779, 793
Methylsulfonyl carbanion, 440
Methylsulfonyl chloride, 926
α-Methylthio carboxylic acids, 1075
2-Methylthiosemicarbazide, 806
Methylthiotrimethylsilane, 795
Methyl vinyl ketone, 834
Meyer-Schuster rearrangement, 290
Meyers synthesis, 424–426
Michael reaction, 711–712, 834, 838
  reversal of, 918
Michael-type reactions, 541, 665, 671, 674, 680, 682 684, 687, 689, 691, 713–719, 724, 729, 736, 773, 774, 778, 845, 884
Microscopic reversibility, 189
Microwave spectra, 120, 204
Migration, *see* Rearrangements
Migratory aptitudes, 949–951
Mills reaction, 573
Mirror plane, 84
Mixed SN1 and SN2 mechanisms, 265–268
Möbius array, 1027
Möbius-Hückel method, 751, 753–755, 1006–1007, 1016
Möbius strip, 93
Möbius systems, 754, 1006–1007, 1016, 1027
Molar rotation, 84
Molecularity of reactions, 192
Molecular orbital method, 4–5, 25–31
Molybdenum complexes, 1036, 1037
Molybdenum hexafluoride, 809
Molybdenum pentachloride, 622, 725
Molybdenum pentoxide, 787
Molybdenum peroxide, 628
MOM ethers, 343
Monochloroborane, *see* Chloroborane
Monographs, 1138–1139
Monopersuccinic acid, 733
Morphine, 105
Multiple bonds, 8–9
Multiple valence, 5–6

"Naked" anions, 322
Nametkin rearrangement, 961
Naphthalenes, 1071
  alkylation of, 599
  canonical forms, 39, 41
  Friedel-Crafts reactions of, 481, 484
  orientation in, 460–462
  oxidation of, 1081
  sulfonation of, 454
Naphthols, 588, 590, 591–592
Naphthylamines, 588, 591–592
n donors, 74, 76, 77
Neber rearrangement, 981–982
Net reaction:
  of acetylides, 838
  of nitro compounds, 786
Negative enhancement, 163
Neighboring-group mechanism, 268–286, 734
  at a carbonyl carbon, 294

Neighboring group participation:
  by alkyl groups, 280–285
  by aryl groups, 277–280
  by double bonds, 274–276
  by cyclobutyl groups, 277
  by cyclopropyl groups, 276, 283–285
  free radical, 612–613
  by halogens, 271
  by hydrogen, 285–286
Neighboring groups, 268–286
  migration of, 946
Neomenthyl chloride, 877
Neopentyl compounds:
  electrophilic substitution at, 514
  nucleophilic substitution of, 299
  rearrangement of, 285, 944, 947, 955, 959
Neopentyl halides, reduction of, 390
Neophyl compounds, rearrangement of, 944, 955, 959
Newman projection formula, 120
Nickel, 598, 1053. *See also* Raney nickel
Nickel acetate, 988
Nickel boride, 653, 692
Nickel carbonyl, 432, 554, 597, 718
  in allylic coupling, 405
  in hydrocarboxylation, 720–721
Nickel complexes, 776, 1076
Nickel cyanide, 774
Nickel peroxide, 638, 1051*n*, 1061, 1071
Niobium pentachloride, 408
Nitration:
  of alkanes, 637–638
  of aromatic rings, 452, 458–459, 468–470
N-Nitration, 573
Nitrenes, 141, 176–178
  addition to double bonds, 741
  insertion reactions of, 535–536
  rearrangement of, 943–944, 982–990
Nitrenium ions, 178
Nitric acid, 637, 1051*n*
  oxidation:
    of alcohols, 1058, 1084
    of arene side chains, 1072
    of ketones, 1066
    of sulfur compounds, 1087
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 357
    with anhydrides, 358
    with aromatic rings, 468–470
  see also Nitration
Nitrile oxides, 744, 1089
  reduction of, 1108
Nitriles:
  addition to multiple bonds, 712, 719
  acylation of, 439–440
  alcoholysis of, 792
  alkylation of, 416, 418
  condensation:
    with ketones, 836
    with nitriles, 854
  decyanation of, 569, 1076
  formation of, 1168
  hydrolysis of, 788
  hydroxylation of, 628
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  nitration of, 638
  oxidative decyanation of, 1076, 1109
  reaction:
    with aldehydes, 862
    with ammonia or amines, 803
    with aromatic rings, 496–497
    with HCN, 856
    with organometallic compounds, 828
    with zinc and halo esters, 823
  reduction of, 815–816, 1106
  in Ritter reaction, 860–861
  trimerization of, 864
  in von Richter rearrangement, 604
Nitrilium ions, 792, 815
Nitrilo-de-hydro,oxo-tersubstitution, 806
Nitrite ion, 358, 380
Nitro alcohols, formation of, 739, 740
Nitro aldehydes and ketones, 739
Nitroalkanes, acidity of, 153
Nitro alkyl nitrates and nitrites, 739
Nitroamines, formation of, 501
N-Nitroamines, rearrangement of, 501
Nitrobenzaldehydes, 215
Nitrobenzene, 15, 651
p-Nitrobenzenesulfonate, as leaving group, 312
p-Nitrobenzenesulfonyl peroxide, 1083
Nitro compounds:
  addition to multiple bonds, 712
  acylation of, 436
  alkylation of, 599
  carboxylation of, 842
  conversion:
    to amines, 591
    to aryl halides, 593
    to ethers, 589
    to nitriles, 595, 934
    to thiols, 360
  cyanation of, 539
  formation of, 1169
  hydrolysis of, 588, 786
  condensation:
    with aldehydes, 836, 845
    with pyrylium ions, 837
  in Mannich reaction, 800
  methylation of, 599
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 415
    with aromatic rings, 480
    with CO, 575
    with Grignard reagents, 716, 827
  rearrangement of, 603–604
  reduction of, 396, 594, 1103–1104, 1109, 1116–1117
  reductive alkylation of, 800
  tautomerism of, 69
N-Nitro compounds, 469, 1103
Nitro-de-diazoniation, 648
Nitro-de-halogenation, 380
Nitro-de-hydrogenation, 468, 637
Nitrogen:
  bonding in, 10–11

Nitrogen (*Continued*)
  extrusion of, 937–938
  photoelectron spectrum of, 10
  reaction with organolithium compounds, 554
Nitrogen atom, bonding of, 6
Nitrogen oxides, 573, 638, 1051*n*, 1092
Nitrogen trichloride, 365, 369, 472, 725
Nitrogen ylides, *see* Ylides, nitrogen
Nitromercuration, 691
Nitro mercuric halides, 918
Nitromethane, 153
Nitrones, formation of, 359
Nitronic esters, 324
Nitro-nitrosooxy-addition, 739
Nitronium ions, 452, 468–470, 638, 729
Nitrooxy-de-acyloxy-substitution, 358
Nitrophenylhydrazine, 804
Nitropropane, 1083
Nitrosoamines, 502
N-Nitrosoamines, denitrosation of, 1106
  rearrangement of, 502
Nitrosation:
  of active hydrogen compounds, 533–534
  of alkanes, 534
  of alkyl groups, 1045
  of aromatic rings, 469–471
N-Nitrosation, 572
Nitroso amides, 604
N-Nitroso amides, 339*n*, 641
Nitrosobenzene, 1083
Nitrosobenzoic acids, 215
Nitrosocarbonylmethane, 535
Nitroso-chloro-addition, 729
Nitroso compounds, 1103
  conversion to imines, 534
  formation of, 1169
  oxidation of, 1087
  reaction:
    with amines, 573
    with CO, 575
    with hydroxylamines, 573
    with phosphoranes, 853
  as spin traps, 163
  reduction of, 1105, 1116, 1117
  reductive alkylation of, 800
  tautomerism of, 69
N-Nitroso compounds:
  alkylation of, 423
  cleavage of, 936
  formation of, 572
  reduction of, 1105
Nitroso-de-hydrogenation, 470, 534
N-Nitroso-de-hydrogenation, 572
Nitroso dimers, 1045
p-Nitrosodimethylaniline, 1083
Nitroso nitrates, 740
Nitrosonium fluoroborate, 785
Nitrosonium ion, 470, 571, 861
Nitroso-oxime tautomerism, 69
Nitrosooxy-de-hydroxylation, 357
Nitro sulfides, 742
Nitro sulfones, 415
Nitrosyl chloride, 532, 571, 572, 534, 729, 1045, 1066
p-Nitrotoluene, 15
Nitrourea, 1103
Nitrous acid, reaction:
  with active hydrogen compounds, 533–534
  with alcohols, 357
  with amides, 339
  with amines, 313, 314, 329, 570–572, 910, 928, 964
  with aromatic rings, 470, 472
  with aziridines, 923
  with C═N bonds, 785
  with hydrazides, 985
  with hydrazines, 572
  with sulfonamides, 444
Nitroxide radicals, 166
Nitryl chloride, 729
Nmr, *see* Nuclear magnetic resonance
No-bond resonance, 64
7-Nobornenyl cations, 272, 274–276
Nodes, 27
  in antibonding orbitals, 4–5
  in benzene, 29
  of π orbitals, 8–9
  in *p* orbitals, 3
Nonaflates, 312
Nonafluorobutanesulfonates, 312
Nonalternant hydrocarbons, 47–48, 50
Nonbenzenoid aromatic compounds, 37–38, 41–64
Nonbonded interactions, 130, 134–140
Nonbonding orbitals, 29–30, 47–48
Nonclassical carbocations, 272–286
Nonpairing method, 24*n*
Norbornadiene, 765, 767
Norbornadienone, 76
Norbornadienyl cation, 274
Norbornanes, 125, 617
Norbornenes, 676, 772
Norbornyl bromide, 877, 889
Norbornyl cation, 272–273, 280–283
Norbornyl systems, rearrangement of, 944, 959, 960
Norcaradienes, 771, 1003, 1026
Norrish type I cleavage, 213, 939
Norrish type II cleavage, 214
Nortricyclane, 282
Nosylate, as leaving group, 312
Notes, in journals, 1122
Nuclear magnetic resonance (nmr):
  and antiaromaticity, 51, 60–62
  and aromaticity, 37–38, 56–60
  of carbocations, 144–145, 149
  and conformation, 120
  electronegativity information from, 14
  of enantiotopic and diastereotopic hydrogens, 117
  and homoaromaticity, 63–64
  and hydrogen bonding, 73
  in kinetics, 195, 196
  and optical purity, 108
Nucleofugal, definition, 179
Nucleophile, definition, 179
Nucleophilic addition:
  to multiple bonds, 664–666, 669, 689, 781
    orientation and reactivity in, 670–674

Nucleophilic catalysis, 294, 333, 334, 339, 347
Nucleophilic free radicals, 616, 618, 672
Nucleophilicity, 304–310, 443–444, 587
Nucleophilicity relationship, 309
Nucleophilic rearrangements, 942–954
Nucleophilic substitution:
  aliphatic, 255–446
    mechanisms, 255–298
  at an aliphatic trigonal carbon, 290–298
  at an allylic carbon, 287–290, 301
  aromatic, 300, 462, 576–607, 1047
  at a benzylic carbon, 301
  versus elimination, 874, 881, 894–896
  reactivity, 298–320, 584–587
  at a sulfur atom, 442–446
  at a tertiary carbon, 300
  at a vinylic carbon, 295–298
Nu values, 249

O-acylation versus C-acylation, 323, 436
O-alkylation versus C-alkylation, 323–325, 412
Octatetraenes, 1010
13(18)-Oleanene, 961
Olefins, *see* Alkenes
Omega-minus-one halogenation, 621–622, 627
One-electron transfers, 608
One-stage mechanism, 583
Onium salts, definition of, 228
Oppenauer oxidation, 1058, 1060
Optical activity, 82–109
  cause of, 99
Optical comparison, 98
Optical purity, 107–109
Optical rotatory dispersion, 120
Orbitals, 3, 10
  antibonding, 4–5, 8–9, 11, 47–48, 752
  bonding, 4–5, 8–9, 11, 47–48, 752
  gerade, 5, 204
  hybrid, 6–9, 12
  molecular, 4–5
  nonbonding, 29–30, 47–48
  p, 3–4, 6–9, 11, 1006, 1011
  π, 8–9, 25–26, 752, 753, 1005, 1006
  π^*, 8–9
  $p\pi$-$d\pi$, 35–37
  s, 3–4, 6–7, 11
  σ, 4–5, 7–9
  σ^*, 4–5
  sp, 6–7, 9, 90
  sp^2, 7–9, 25, 130
  sp^3, 7–9
  sp^3d^2, 12
  sp^5, 130
  ungerade, 5, 205
Orbital symmetry, 751–758, 761, 762, 767–768, 776, 777, 994, 1004–1011, 1015–1019, 1034
Order, of a reaction, 192–197
"Organic Functional Group Preparations," 1140
"Organic Syntheses," 1140
  references, ground rules, 254
Organoaluminum compounds:
  addition to multiple bonds, 707–708, 715–717, 817, 825–828
  conversion to esters, 555
  coupling:
    with alcohols, 408
    with carboxylic esters, 409
    with halides, 403
  dimerization of, 652
  formation of, 707
  hydrolysis of, 548
  reaction:
    with halides, 429
    with halogens, 552
    with oxime sulfonates, 989
Organoboron compounds, *see* Boranes
Organocadmium compounds, 433, 435, 548
Organocalcium compounds, 826
Organocesium compounds, 157
Organocopper compounds, 508, 598
  addition to multiple bonds, 713, 714, 777, 778
  conversion to nitriles, 556
  coupling:
    with halides, 401–404, 407
    with tosylates, 407
  dimerization of, 651–652
  reaction:
    with halogens, 552
    with organolithium compounds, 713
  see also Lithium dialkylcopper compounds
Organogallium compounds, 548, 707
Organolithium compounds:
  addition to multiple bonds, 714–715, 778, 817–822, 824, 826
  conversion:
    to amines, 553, 554
    to aldehydes, 555
    to ketones, 435
    to nitriles, 556
  coupling with halides, 403, 404, 406
  dimerization of, 652
  formation of, 1169
  hydrolysis of, 548
  in metallation reactions, 545–546
  pyrolysis of, 917
  reaction:
    with aromatic rings, 599
    with aryl halides, 595
    with ethers, 904, 994–995
    with iminium salts, 425
    with isonitriles, 872
    with ketenimines, 542
    with lithium carboxylates, 824
    with metal halides, 557
    with multiple bonds and nickel carbonyl, 718
    with 9-BBN, 427
    with organocopper compounds, 713
    with oxygen, 549
    with sulfonates, 446
    with tosylhydrazones, 910–911
  structure of, 157
Organomagnesium compounds, 559
  formation of, 707
  structure of, 158–160
  see also Grignard reagents

Organomanganese compounds, 434, 920
Organomercury compounds:
  addition to multiple bonds, 715
  conversion:
    to ketones, 597
    to organopalladium compounds, 643
  dimerization of, 652
  exchange with organolithium compounds, 558
  reaction:
    with acyl halides, 433
    with alkenes, 732
    with metals, 556
  reduction of, 548
  resolution of, 515
Organometallate ions, 561
Organometallic compounds:
  addition to multiple bonds, 713–717
  conversion:
    to aldehydes, ketones, esters, or amides, 554–555
    to amines, 553–554
    to azides, 554
  cyanation of, 555–556
  definition, 151
  dimerization of, 651–652
  exchange reactions, 556–558, 560–561
  formation of, 1169
  halogenation of, 515, 551–552
  hydrolysis of, 511, 547–548
  in metallation reactions, 545–546
  pyrolysis of, 917
  reaction:
    with acid derivatives, 825
    with aldehydes and ketones, 816–822
    with alkyl halides, 560–561
    with C=N compounds, 827, 828
    with CO_2, 826
    with isonitriles, 872
    with metal halides, 557
    with metals, 556
    with nitriles, 828
    with oxygen, 548–549
  structure, 157–160
  see also Grignard reagents
Organonickel complexes, conversion to cyanides, 556
Organopalladium compounds, 403, 642–643, 715
Organopotassium compounds, 157
  formation of, 556
  hydrolysis of, 548
  in metallation reactions, 545
Organopotassium compounds:
  reaction with halides, 403
Organorubidium compounds, 157
Organosodium compounds, 157
  addition to multiple bonds, 826
  formation of, 556
  hydrolysis of, 548
  in metallation reactions, 545
  reaction:
    with ethers, 904
    with halides, 403
Organothallium compounds, 547, 549
Organotin compounds, 433–434, 707
  addition to multiple bonds, 817
  conversion:
    to ketones, 554
    to organolithium compounds, 557
  coupling:
    with halides, 406
    with carboxylic esters, 409
  reaction with diazonium salts, 649
Organotin hydrides, 390, 392
Organotin oxides, 349
Organotitanium compounds:
  addition to multiple bonds, 817, 820
  coupling:
    with alcohols, 408
    with halides, 403
Organozinc compounds, 403, 433, 548, 716, 817, 823
Organozirconium compounds, 707, 820
Ortho effect (in aromatic substitution), 460
Ortho effect (in Hammett equation), 249
Ortho esters:
  formation of, 1170
  hydrolysis of, 329–331
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 415
    with aromatic rings, 490
    with borates, 1002
    with organometallic compounds, 409
  reduction of, 394
  transacetalation of, 790
  transetherification of, 345
Ortho-para directing groups, 617
  in electrophilic substitution, 453–460
  in nucleophilic substitution, 584, 586
Ortho-para ratio, 457, 617
Orthothioborates, 795
Orton rearrangement, 503
Osazones, 804
Osmium amines, 738–739, 740
Osmium tetroxide, 628, 732–733, 1071
Out-in isomerism, 115
Oxa-di-π-methane rearrangement, 1042
Oxaloacetic acid, 116
Oxalyl bromide, 388
Oxalyl chloride, 379, 388, 491
Oxaphosphetanes, 849
Oxazines, 424–426
Oxaziranes, 742
Oxaziridines, 737
  chirality of, 87
Oxazolidines, 87
Oxazolines, 425, 426, 840, 867
Oxazolones, 565
Oxepin, 1026
Oxetanes, 129, 857
  formation of, 865, 868
Oxidation numbers, 1048, 1049
Oxidations, 1048–1093, 1117–1120
  definitions, 1048
  mechanisms, 1048–1051
Oxidative cleavages, 1063–1077
Oxidative coupling, 1090–1093
Oxidative decarboxylation, 1074–1076
Oxidative decyanation, 1076

Oxido[10]annulene, 56–57
Oxido-de-sulfonato-substitution, 588
Oxime esters, 931, 988
Oxime ethers, 827
  conversion to nitriles, 931
  formation of, 344, 359
Oxime sulfonates, rearrangement of, 989
Oxime tosylates, 981–982
Oximes:
  alkylation of, 359
  O-alkylation of, 344
  conversion:
    to nitriles, 930–932
    to thioketones, 794
  dehydration of, 930–931
  formation of, 324, 1170
  fragmentation of, 931–932
  hydrolysis of, 784–785, 1045
  isomerism of, 110
  oxidation of, 1086–1087
  reaction:
    with diazonium salts, 649
    with HCN, 856
    with organometallic compounds, 827
  rearrangement of, 946, 987–989
  reduction of, 815, 1105
  tautomerism of, 69
Oximinocarboxylic esters, 1066
Oxiranes, *see* Epoxides
Oxirenes, 736–737, 1975
Oxocarbons, 63*n*
Oxo-de-alkylimino-bisubstitution, 784
Oxo-de-dihalo-bisubstitution, 327
Oxo-de-dihydro-bisubstitution, 1077, 1084
N-Oxo-de-dihydro-bisubstitution, 1086
Oxo-de-hydro,amino-bisubstitution, 1083
Oxo-de-hydro,cyano-bisubstitution, 1076
Oxo-de-hydro,halo-bisubstitution, 1081
Oxo-de-hydro,nitro-bisubstitution, 786
α-Oxoglutaric acid, 116
Oxonin, 56
Oxonium ions, 312
  cleavage of, 332, 385
  formation of, 356
  reaction:
    with alcohols and phenols, 346
    with amides and esters, 359
    with carboxylate ions, 354
Oxo process, 722
Oxyamination, 738
Oxy-Cope rearrangement, 1021–1022
Oxygen:
  addition to multiple bonds, 736
  in dehydrogenations, 1055, 1061
  in hydroxylations, 628
  reaction:
    with aldehydes, 629
    with alkanes, 633–634
    with alkenes, 634–635, 737–738
    with organometallic compounds, 548, 651
  oxidation:
    of alkenes, 1085
    of amines, 1081, 1092
  in oxidative cleavages, 1063, 1066, 1071
  see also Autoxidation; Singlet oxygen
Oxygen atom, bonding of, 5–6
Oxygen molecule, bonding of, 12
Oxymercuration, 681–682, 685
Ozone:
  conversion to singlet oxygen, 634
  hydroxylation with, 627
  oxidation:
    of acetals, 1060
    of amines, 1087
    of arenes, 1071
  reaction:
    with aldehydes, 1084
    with alkenes, 1066–1070
    with alkynes, 1067, 1088
    with C═N compounds, 785
    with isonitriles, 1089
    with nitro compounds, 787
    787
Ozonides, 1066–1070
Ozonolysis, 1066–1070
Palladium, 643, 655, 656, 934, 1053, 1061
Palladium acetate, 484, 636, 643, 1001, 1075, 1119
Palladium-on-charcoal, 692, 1056, 1097
Palladium chloride, 1054, 1083–1085
Palladium complexes, 690
Palladium ions, 1039
Para-Claisen rearrangement, 1028, 1032
Paracyclophanes, 35, 38, 92, 1113
Paracyclophanetetraene tetraanion, 62
Paraffin, 1103
Paraformaldehyde, 490, 862
Paraldehyde, 862
Paramagnetic ring currents, 60, 62
Paratropic compounds, 60–62
Partial bond fixation, 40
Partial rate factors, 457, 462, 465, 467, 617, 618
Partitioning effects, 293, 315, 449–450, 578, 884
Passerini reaction, 870–871
Pasteur, Louis, 95, 106
Patents, 1124–1125
Paterno-Büchi reaction, 868
Pauli exclusion principle, 4
Pauling electronegativity scale, 13–14
Pentacyclo[4.2.0.$0^{2,5}$.$0^{3,8}$.$0^{4,7}$]octane, 132–133
Pentadecker sandwiches, 45
Pentadienes, 28
Pentaerythritol, 845
Pentahelicene, 91*n*
Pentakis(trifluoromethyl)cyclopentadiene, 43
Pentalene, 45, 46
Pentalene dianion, 46
Pentaphenylpyridinium-*N*-phenolbetaine, 320
Pentaprismane, 132
Pentasulfides, 363
t-Pentyl cation, 143, 144, 568, 945, 947
Peptide synthesis, 347, 372–374, 871
Peracetic acid, 627, 1060, 1087
Peracids, *see* Peroxy acids

Perbenzoic acids, hydroxylation with, 627
Percent ionic character, 15
m-Perchlorobenzoic acid, 735
Perchlorocyclopentadiene, 747*n*, 751
Perchlorotriphenylamine, 92–93
Perchloryl fluoride, 529, 551, 852
Peresters, 357, 549, 991–992
Perfluorotetracyclobutacyclooctatetraene, 55*n*
Perhydroboraphenalene, 706
Pericyclic mechanism, definition, 180. *See also* Orbital symmetry
Periodic acid, 1051*n*, 1061, 1063–1065, 1071
Periodic table effects on acid or base strength, 232
Perkin reaction, 842–843
Permanganate, 1051
  hydroxylation with, 627
  oxidation:
    of alcohols, 1057–1058, 1084
    of aldehydes, 629, 631
    of alkenes, 732–733
    of alkenes to hydroxy ketones or diketones, 1086
    of alkynes, 1088
    of amines, 1084, 1086, 1087, 1092
    of nitro compounds, 787
    of sulfur compounds, 1087, 1089
  in oxidative cleavages, 1063, 1065, 1070–1072, 1084
Permuterm Subject Index, 1144
Peroxides:
  as catalysts in addition reactions, 680, 720, 731, 858
  cleavage of, 608, 610
  in coupling reactions, 639
  in epoxidations, 735–736
  formation of, 1170
  pyrolysis of, 940
  reaction:
    with aldehydes, 655–656
    with arenes, 643, 644
  reduction of, 1110
Peroxiranes, 635
Peroxy acids:
  formation of, 1090
  hydroxylation with, 628
  oxidation:
    of amines, 1087, 1088
    of azobenzenes, 1089
    of ketones, 990
    of lactams, 1081
    of ozonides, 1066
    of sulfur compounds, 1089
  reaction with multiple bonds, 735
Peroxy-de-hydroxy-substitution, 1090
Peroxydisulfate ion, 1060
Peroxymercuration, 685
Peroxytrifluoroacetic acid, 990, 1085, 1087
Perpendicular disymmetric planes, 89–91
Peterson olefination reaction, 839
Phantom atoms, 96–97
Phase transfer catalysis, 320–322
  in acylations, 436*n*
  in addition reactions, 680, 700, 715, 733, 738, 769
  in alkylations, 416, 417
  in amidations, 377
  in amine formation, 366
  in anhydride formation, 355
  in aryl coupling, 598
  in azide formation, 380
  in carbene insertion, 543
  in carboxylations, 597
  in cyanations, 441, 595
  in Darzen's reaction, 844
  in diazo transfer, 534
  in eliminations, 921, 930, 933
  in epoxide formation, 865, 866
  in ester formation, 347, 353, 354
  in ester hydrolysis, 335
  in ether formation, 343
  in halide formation, 382, 383*n*
  in ketone formation, 431
  in nitrile formation, 429
  in oxidations, 1058, 1062, 1065, 1076, 1083, 1092
  in reductions, 700
  in sulfide formation, 361
Phenacylsulfonyl chloride, 445
Phenalene, 40
Phenanthrene, canonical forms, 40
Phenanthrenes, 40, 1012–1013
Phenolate ions, oxidation of, 1050
Phenol-dienone rearrangement, 969
Phenol-formaldehyde resins, 493
Phenolic esters:
  rearrangement of, 499–500
  reduction of, 594
Phenolic ethers:
  rearrangement of, 500
  reduction of, 594
Phenol-keto tautomerism, 68
Phenols:
  addition to multiple bonds, 684–685
  amidation of, 473
  amination of, 472
  carboxylation of, 491–492
  coupling with diazonium ions, 471
  conversion:
    to amines, 591–592
    to aryl halides, 593
    to ethers, 589
    to sulfur compounds, 590
  cyanation of, 497
  formation of, 1170
  formylation of, 487–490
  Friedel-Crafts reactions of, 481, 483, 485, 496–497
  haloalkylation of, 495
  halogenation of, 476–478
  hydroxylation of, 629
  hydroxymethylation of, 493
  introduction of diazonium groups, 472
  nitration of, 469
  nitrosation of, 470–471
  as nucleophiles, 342–344, 346, 348
  oxidation of, 1060–1061
  protection of, 684–685
  reaction with sulfonic acid derivatives, 444
  reduction of, 593–594, 700
  sulfonation of, 473
  tautomerism of, 68

thioalkylation of, 496
thiocyanation of, 476
Phenonium ion, *see* Benzenonium ion
Phenoxide ions, alkylation of, 324
Phenoxyacetic acid dianion, 999
Phenyl cation, 147, 603
Phenyl chloroformate, 387
1-Phenyl-5-chlorotetrazole, 594
Phenyl dichlorophosphate, 350
Phenyl(dimethylamino)-oxosulfonium ylides, 774, 865
Phenyl diselenide, 536
o-Phenylene phosphorochlorodite, 384
Phenylhydrazides, 375, 804, 924
Phenyliodoso acetate, 628
Phenyllithium, 908, 921, 924
N-Phenyl-N-methylformamide, 488
Phenyl radicals, 610, 616
Phenyl selenide ion, 361
Phenylselenium halides, 531
Phenylseleno ketones and esters, 536
Phenylsulfur trifluoride, 809
Phenyl vinyl sulfone, 747
Phenyl vinyl sulfoxide, 747
Phosgene, 347, 370, 488, 491, 621, 934
Phosphine oxides, 848
Phosphines:
  conversion:
    to betaines, 852
    to phosphonium salts, 845, 848
  formation of, 366, 395
  reaction:
    with alkyl halides, 366
    with quaternary heterocycles, 366
    with thioesters, 941
Phosphine sulfides, 362
Phosphonates, 848
Phosphonic acid bisamides, 848, 851
Phosphonium salts, 321, 366, 395, 845, 849
Phosphoranes:
  condensation with aldehydes and ketones, 845–853
  formation of, 845
  reaction:
    with double bonds, 774
    with miscellaneous compounds, 853
Phosphorescence, 211, 217
Phosphoric acid, 901
  anhydrides of, 359
Phosphorus oxychloride, 372, 382, 487–488, 495, 539, 593, 732, 933, 934
Phosphorus pentabromide, 383, 388, 808
Phosphorus pentachloride:
  in chlorination of alkanes, 621, 622
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 382–383
    with aldehydes and ketones, 807–808
    with alkenes, 725
    with amides, 933, 1046
    with carboxylic acids, 388
    with hydrazides, 808
    with nitro compounds, 593
    with oximes, 932, 987, 989
    with phenols, 593
    with sulfonic acids, 445
    with ureas, 934
Phosphorus pentoxide, 355, 902–904, 932, 933, 988
Phosphorus sulfide, 794
Phosphorus tribromide, 383, 388, 919
Phosphorus trichloride, 382, 383, 388, 445, 934, 1108
Phosphorus triiodide, 391, 920, 925, 926
Phosphorus tris(dimethyl)amide, 390, 933
Phosphorus ylides, *see* Phosphoranes
Photochemical addition, of alcohols, 685
Photochemical aromatic nucleophilic substitution, 583
Photochemical cleavage, 168, 207, 213
Photochemical cycloadditions, 753–756, 764–767, 776–777
Photochemical eliminations, 873
Photochemical mechanisms, 217
Photochemical rearrangements, 215, 500, 503, 504, 989, 1002–1010, 1012–1017, 1019–1020, 1041–1045, 1047
Photochemistry, 202–217
Photodimerization, 217, 764, 765, 1111
Photoelectron spectroscopy, 9–11, 120
Photo-Fries rearrangement, 500
Photoisomerization, 215, 500, 526, 527
Photolysis, 174, 176, 208, 213
  of aryl iodides, 644
  of arylthallium compounds, 644
  of diazo ketones, 974
  of ketones, 938–939, 941
  of nitrogen heterocycles, 937–938
  of peroxides, 939
  of sulfones, 940
Photolytic reduction, 1104
Photooxidation, 634, 737–738
Photosensitization, 211–212, 634, 737–738, 764, 765, 868
Phthalate ion, 508
Phthalic acid, 1071
Phthalide, 352
Phthalimides, 377–378
Pi-allyl complexes, 405, 415, 526, 555
Pi complexes:
  in addition to multiple bonds, 660
  in aromatic substitution, 451–453, 466
Pi-complex mechanism, 1036*n*
Picrates, 76
Picric acid, 76, 236
Picryl halides, 34, 590, 597
Pi donors, 74–77
Pinacolone, 963
Pinacol rearrangement, 945*n*, 949–950, 963–964
Pinacols, *see* Diols
B-(3-Pinanyl)-9-borabicyclo-[3.3.1]nonane, 811
Pinene, 705, 706
Pinner synthesis, 792

Pi orbitals, 8–9, 25–26, 752, 753, 1005, 1006
Piperidines, formation of, 1044
Pi route to nonclassical ions, 273, 283
Pi-star orbitals, 8–9
Pi-star scale, of solvent polarity, 320
Pitzer strain, 135–136
Pivot mechanism, 1043
pK_a values, 219–222, 230–236
  tables of, 220–222, 230, 236
pK_{R^+}, 147
Plane of symmetry, 84, 89–90, 92, 100, 112, 113, 126–127
Platinum, 918, 1053
Polarity scales, of solvents, 318–320
Polarizability:
  of alkyl groups, 235
  of nucleophiles, 308, 324
Polarized light, 82–84, 99. *See also* Circularly polarized light
Polar-transition-state mechanism, 1036*n*
Polar transition states, 316, 610, 615
Polyhydrogen fluoride-pyridine, 385, 386, 389, 680, 729
Polymerization, 151, 169, 667
Polymer supported synthesis, 373
Polymer-supported ylides, 848
Polyphosphoric acid, 486, 494, 985, 988
Polysulfides, 1103
Polyurethans, 792
p orbitals, 3–4, 6–9, 11, 753, 1006
Potassium, 395, 569, 1112
  in ammonia, 592, 596, 700
Potassium amide, 592, 908
Potassium azodicarboxylate, 699
Potassium benzoate, 508
Potassium *t*-butoxide, 339, 567
Potassium chromate, 1083
Potassium cyanide, 1104
Potassium ferricyanide, 539
Potassium fluoride, 593, 788
Potassium hexachlorotungstate(IV), 918–919
Potassium hydrogen persulfate, 1089
Potassium hydroxide, 909, 915
Potassium phthalimide, 377, 591
Potassium peroxydisulfate, 629, 990
Potassium superoxide, 357, 1065
Potassium triisopropoxyborohydride, 810, 813, 999
$p\pi$-$d\pi$ bonding, 35–37, 154
Preformed enol derivatives, in the aldol condensation, 832, 833
Prevost method, 733
Prilezhaev reaction, 735
Primary isotope effects, 197–199
Primary sources, 1121–1125
Prins reaction:
  addition of aldehydes to alkenes, 856–858
  polyhalide formation, 731
Prismanes, 132–133, 767, 1027
Prochirality, 117
Product criterion of mechanism, 189
Product spread, 288
Propagation reactions, 169, 609–610, 666
Propane, dipole moment, 15
2-Propanol, 811
Propargylation, of alkyl halides, 407
Propargyl vinyl compounds, 1031
Propellanes, 132–134
Propionaldehyde, 124
Propionic acid, 1001
Propyl cations, 947
Propyllithium, 334
pro-R and *pro-S* groups, 117
Protic solvents, effect on acidity or basicity, 236
Protonated cyclopropanes, 285, 678–679, 947, 948, 953, 954
Prototropic rearrangement, 524, 942
Pschorr ring closure, 641
Pseudoasymmetric carbon, 101
Pseudo-axial, 130
Pseudo-equatorial, 130
Pseudo-order reactions, 194, 256, 261
Pseudorotation, 129
Puckered rings, 124, 129
Push-pull effect, 52
Pyramidal inversion, 86–88, 156
Pyrans, 791
Pyrazoles, 804, 938
Pyrazolines, 937, 938, 1097
Pyrazolones, 804
Pyridine:
  aromatic substitution of, 461
  basicity of, 235
  as catalyst in anhydride hydrolysis, 334
  reaction with benzylic halides, 65, 1083
Pyridine-N-oxides, 461
Pyridines:
  acylation of, 645
  alkylation of, 598–599, 645
  amination of, 600
  carbalkoxylation of, 645–646
  carboamidation of, 645–646
  formation of, 772
Pyridinethiol esters, 349, 435
Pyridinium bromide perbromide, 725
Pyridinium chlorocarbonate, 1057
Pyridinium chlorochromate, 1063, 1085, 1086
Pyridinium compounds, nucleophilic substitution of, 313
Pyridinium dichromate, 1057, 1058
Pyridinium ions, cleavage of, 910
  formation of, 797
4-Pyridone, 69
Pyrocalciferols, 1008
Pyrolytic eliminations, 896–900
Pyrones, 747*n*
Pyrophoric lead, 399, 435
Pyrrole:
  basicity of, 235
  conversion to pyridines, 772
  electronic structure, 42
  formation of, 690
  orientation in, 460

Pyrrolidines, 365, 744, 1043–1044
Pyrrolidone hydrotribromide, 529
Pyrylium ions, 39, 313, 797, 837

Quadricyclane, 765, 767
Quantum yields, 217, 609, 1111
Quasi-Favorskii rearrangement, 973
Quaternary ammonium compounds:
  as alkylating agents, 346
  chirality of, 86
  cleavage of, 354
  conversion:
    to alkenes, 878–880, 884, 886, 906–909
    to ethers, 589
    to ylides, 546
  dealkylation of, 361, 368, 387, 395
  formation of, 364, 365, 689
  hydrolysis of, 588
  as phase transfer catalysts, 321
  reaction with active hydrogen compounds, 597
  rearrangement of, 605–606, 992–994
Quaternary hydrazonium salts, 931
Quaternary nitrogen heterocycles, dealkylation of, 366
Quaternary sulfonamide salts, 445
Quaterphenyls, 612
Quinhydrones, 76
Quinolines, 398, 461, 507, 562, 772, 797
Quinones:
  addition of active hydrogen compounds, 711
  addition reactions of, 664*n*
  alkylation of, 644
  arylation of, 640
  2 + 2 cyclizations of, 867, 868
  cycloadditions of, 746, 764
  in dehydrogenation, 1053
  epoxidation of, 736
  formation of, 486, 498, 1060–1061, 1081
  reaction:
    with diazo alkanes, 866
    with organometallic compounds, 817
    with SF_4, 808
  reduction of, 810, 1097

r (to denote reference group), 113
Racemate, definition, 83
Racemic mixtures:
  definition, 83
  formation of, 93
  resolution of, 104–107
Racemization:
  of carbonyl compounds, 528
  in electrophilic substitution, 514, 517, 518
  in free radical substitution, 610
  in nucleophilic substitution, 258, 263–265, 267
  in rearrangements, 946
Radical ions, 169–170, 472, 502, 583, 615, 622, 701
Radical pairs, 466, 613
Radicals, *see* Free radicals
Ramberg-Bäcklund reaction, 921–923
Raney nickel, 509, 511, 652–653, 692, 795, 1097, 1100
Rate constants, 192–200
Rate-determining step, 193, 194, 196–197
Rate-limiting step, 193*n*
Rates of reaction, 192–203
R configuration, 97
Reactions:
  numbering of, 251
  nomenclature of, 252
  types of, 180–182
Reactivity:
  effect of structure on, 237–250
    quantitative treatments, 242–250
Reactivity-selectivity relationship, 174–175
"Reagents for Organic Synthesis," 1140
Rearrangements, 942–1047
  allylic, 287–290, 405–411, 418, 992, 993, 995
    electrophilic, 520–521, 524–527
    free radical, 615, 624, 633, 636–637
    sigmatropic, 627, 1028–1034
    in singlet oxygen reactions, 634
  aryl, 498–506, 508–510, 603–607
  of N-benzoylnorephedrine, 241
  of boranes, 428, 527, 980–981, 995–1002
  of carbanions, 161, 962
  of carbenes, 175, 975–976
  of carbocations, 142–144, 150, 662, 682, 686, 709, 943–954, 959–961, 963–968
  of cyclopropylmethyl cations, 284
  of double bonds, 696, 520–521, 524–527, 686, 917, 1014–1017, 1098
  electrocyclic, 1002–1013
  of free radicals, 169, 942, 955–959, 993–995, 1044
  in Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 481, 483
  of ketones, 967–974, 1097
  of neopentyl substrates, 285
  of nitrenes, 177, 943–944, 982–990
  of N-nitroso compounds, 936
  of oximes, 932, 946, 987–989
  photochemical, 215, 500, 503, 504, 989, 1002–1010, 1012–1017, 1019–1020, 1041–1045, 1047
  sigmatropic, 1013–1036
  versus substitution, 270
  of tosylhydrazones, 1098
  types of, 181
Reduced mass, 197
Reductions, 389–398, 593–594, 646, 691–702, 809–816, 1066, 1048–1051, 1093–1120

Reductions (*Continued*)
  definitions, 1048
  mechanisms, 1048–1051
  selectivity, 1093–1096
  as a side reaction in Grignard addition, 819, 822, 825
Reductive acylation, 791
Reductive alkylation:
  of alcohols, 791
  of ammonia and amines, 798–800
  of mercaptans, 795
Reductive amination, 798
Reductive coupling, 1110–1117
Reed reaction, 637
Re faces, 118
Referativnyi Zhurnal, 1127
Reformatsky reaction, 822–824
Regioselectivity, definition, 322
Rehybridization, 130, 133, 137
Reilly-Hickinbottom rearrangement, 504
Reimer-Tiemann reaction, 489, 492
Reissert compounds, 398
Remote functionality, introduction of, 1043, 1055–1056, 1078
Resolution:
  definition, 83
  methods of, 103–107
Resonance, 24–35
  rules of, 31–33
  steric inhibition of, 34–35, 471
Resonance effects, 33–34
  on acid and base strength, 231, 235–236
  in arenium ions, 455–457
  on reactivity, 237–239, 243–248
Resonance energy, 25, 27, 28, 32, 40, 42, 43
Resonance integral, 27
Restricted rotation, and chirality, 89–93, 109–115
Retention of configuration:
  in cyclopropane systems, 677–678
  in electrophilic substitution, 513–515, 517
  in free radical substitution, 610, 612–613
  in migrations, 945, 949, 993, 994, 997, 1000, 1018
  in nucleophilic substitution, 265, 268–269, 274, 277–278, 286–287
Retrograde aldol condensation, 831
Retropinacol rearrangement, 961
Review articles, 1135–1137
Rhodium complexes, 1076
Rhodium ions, 1039–1041
Rho values, in Hammett equation, 242–246, 249–250, 303, 464, 474, 610, 887
Ring-chain tautomerism, 70
Ring-closing reactions, entropy of, 185, 187
Ring-contraction reactions, 964–966, 971, 974, 975, 990
Ring currents, 37–38, 51, 60, 62–64
Ring-expansion reactions, 283, 771–772, 865, 964–967, 977, 985, 986, 988–990, 1019–1020, 1022
"Ring Systems Handbook," 1134
Ring systems index, 1128–1129
Ritter reaction, 860–861
Riveting with carbon, 996
Robinson annulation, 834
"Rodd's Chemistry of Carbon Compounds," 1137
Rosenmund reduction, 396
Rosenmund-von Braun reaction, 594
Rotational barriers, 121–123
Rotaxanes, 80–81, 93
Rotamers, 120
Ruthenium complexes, 1119
Ruthenium tetroxide, 1051*n*, 1057, 1071, 1080, 1088
Ruzicka cyclization, 442
R values, 248

Sacrificial hyperconjugation, 65
Sadtler spectra, 1134
Salt effects, 261, 318, 516
Salt-free conditions, 846
Samarium iodide, 1111
Sanderson electronegativity scale, 14
Sandmeyer reaction, 477, 647, 648
Sandwich compounds, 44–45
α-Santalene, 405
Saponification, 334
Saytzeff rule, 899*n*
SCF method, 26
s character, and acidity, 154
Schiemann reaction, 602–603
Schiff bases, *see* Imines
Schlenk equilibrium, 158–160, 820
Schmidt rearrangement, 945, 986–987
Scholl reaction, 484
Schotten-Baumann procedure, 346, 370
Schrödinger equation, 3, 4
SCI, 1143–1144
Science Citation Index, 1143–1144
S configuration, 97
Scoopy reactions, 852
SEC mechanism, 516
Secondary isotope effects, 199–201, 304, 579
Secondary orbital overlap, 758
Secondary sources, 1121, 1125–1141
Second order Beckmann rearrangements, 931
Second-order reactions, 192, 195–196
s–E conformation, 976
Seeding, 107
SEi mechanism, 513–516, 520, 521–523, 552
Selectivity:
  of free-radical abstractions, 613–617
  in reductions, 1093–1096
Selectivity-reactivity relationship, 174–175
Selectivity relationship, 464–466
Selenides:
  formation of, 362, 536–537, 550
  oxidation of, 913, 1089
  reaction with organometallic compounds, 411
  reduction of, 653
Selenium, 536, 1053

Selenium dioxide, 627, 930, 1053, 1054, 1077, 1088
Selenium tetrafluoride, 383, 809
Selenoesters, 435
Selenones, 1089
Selenophene, 42*n*
Selenophenol, 799
Selenoxides, 1089
  alkylation of, 421
  conversion to alkenes, 913–914
  reduction of, 1108
Selenylation, 536
Self-consistent field method, 26
Semibenzilic mechanism, 973, 974
Semibullvalene, 1026, 1041*n*
Semicarbazide, 805, 1103
Semicarbazones, 784, 805
  reduction of, 1096, 1106
Semidines, 1035, 1036
Semipinacol rearrangement, 964
Semiquinones, 169–170
SE1 mechanism, 453, 468, 479, 507, 508, 510, 516–522, 563, 564, 566
SE1(*N*) reactions, 522
Sequence rules:
  in the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog system, 96
SET mechanisms, 262, 813*n*, 821, 822, 831, 970*n*
SE2 mechanism, 447*n*, 678
SE2′ mechanism, 520
SE2 (back) mechanism, 513, 515–516, 521–523, 552
SE2 (co-ord) mechanism, 516
SE2 (front) mechanism, 513–516, 521–523, 552
SF2 mechanism, 513*n*
SH1 and SH2 steps, 610
Shapiro reaction, 911
Si faces, 118
Sigma-bond rearrangements, 1039–1041
Sigma complexes, 448
Sigma-dot scale, 615
Sigma-*I* values, 246, 247, 616
  of alkyl groups, 247
Sigma-minus values, 243, 244, 249, 586
Sigma orbitals, 4–5, 7–9
Sigma-plus values, 243, 244, 249, 303, 464, 899
Sigma route to nonclassical ions, 273, 283
Sigma-*R* values, 246, 247
Sigma-star orbitals, 4–5
Sigma-star values, 243*n*, 246*n*
Sigma-substitution mechanism, 473
Sigmatropic rearrangements, 1013–1036
  definition of, 1013
[1,*j*] Sigmatropic rearrangements, 1014–1021
[2,3] Sigmatropic rearrangements, 606, 628, 1033–1034
[3.3] Sigmatropic rearrangements, 1021–1033
[5.5] Sigmatropic rearrangements, 1036
Sigma values, 242–246, 248–250, 617
Sign inversions, 753–754, 1006–1007, 1016, 1027
Silanes, 839
  reaction with acyl halides, 433
Silica gel, 331, 787, 988
Silicic esters, 377
Silver, 399, 1058
Silver(II), 1074, 1083
Silver benzoate, 974
Silver carbonate, 1058
Silver carboxylates:
  reaction with halogens, 654
Silver cyanide, 430
Silver fluoride, 479
Silver ions, 650, 1077, 1039–1041
Silver nitrate, 1083, 1120
Silver nitrite:
  conversion to alkyl nitrites, 380
  reaction:
    with N-halo amines, 989
    with organometallic compounds, 650, 651
Silver oxide, 906, 974
  oxidation:
    of aldehydes, 629
    of arylmethanes, 1079
    of hydrazones, 1062
    of phenols, 1061
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 1091
    with silyl enol ethers, 1091
Silver picolinate, 1061
Silylated vinyl ketones, 834
Silyl enol ethers:
  acylation of, 436
  in acyloin condensation, 1114
  acyloxylation of, 636
  in the aldol condensation, 832, 833
  alkylation of, 416
  cleavage of, 410
  conversion to enolate ions, 420
  dehydrogenation of, 1055
  dimerization of, 1091–1092
  formation of, 547
  halogenation of, 529, 531
  nitrosation of, 534
  reaction, with multiple bonds, 712
Silyl ketene acetals, 824
Simmons-Smith reaction, 772–773
Simonini reaction, 654, 655
Single-electron-transfer mechanism, 262, 813*n*, 821, 822, 831, 970*n*
Singlet carbenes, 171–173, 175–176, 544, 770
Singlet nitrenes, 176
Singlet nitrenium ions, 178
Singlet oxygen, 634–635, 738, 787*n*
  oxidation of alkoxide ions, 1059
Singlet-singlet transfer, 212
Singlet states, 204, 205, 207–216, 765, 868, 1041, 1043, 1111
Si═Si and Si═C double bonds, 9
Slither mechanism, 1043
Sludge catalysts, 962
Small-angle strain, 130–134, 136, 185, 311
Smiles rearrangement, 607
SN(ANRORC) mechanism, 591
SNAr mechanism, 576–578
  reactivity in, 584–587
SNi mechanism, 286–287, 367
SNi′ mechanism, 289

- SN1cA mechanism, 311, 330, 335, 384
- SN1cB mechanism, 314, 328, 357, 369
- SN1 mechanism, 240, 259–268
  - in acetal hydrolysis, 330
  - in acid decarbonylation, 342
  - in alcohol coupling, 408
  - in aminations, 369
  - at an aryl carbon, 579, 601, 603
  - at a carbonyl carbon, 290
  - effect:
    - of leaving group, 310–315
    - of medium, 316–320
    - of nucleophile, 304–305
    - of substrate structure, 299–305
  - in ester hydrolysis, 335–337
  - in ether formation, 342
  - in hydrolysis of aryl halides and anhydrides, 333
  - ion pairs in, 263–268
  - isotope effects in, 304
  - in reduction of alkyl halides, 391
  - versus E1, 881, 895
  - at a vinylic carbon, 297
- SN1′ mechanism, 288
- Snoutane, 1040
- SN2Ar mechanism, 577*n*
- SN2cA mechanism, 311, 330, 335, 384
- SN2 (intermediate) mechanism, 266
- SN2 mechanism, 98, 256–259, 267–268
  - at an allylic position, 288
  - at an aryl substrate, 337, 583
  - at a carbonyl substrate, 290
  - in coupling reactions, 404
  - effect:
    - of leaving group, 310–315
    - of medium, 316–320
    - of nucleophile, 305–310
    - of substrate structure, 298–305
    - versus E2, 874, 894–896
    - in ester hydrolysis, 335–337
    - in Friedel-Crafts alkylation, 483
    - ion pairs in, 266
    - isotope effects in, 304
  - in reduction of alkyl halides, 391
  - steric effects in, 239
  - at sulfur, 442–443
  - table of reactions, 306
  - at a trigonal carbon, 298
- SN2′ mechanism, 288–289, 669
- *S* number, 139
- Sodium, 693, 925, 1105
  - in acyloin condensation, 1113
  - in ammonia or amines:
    - in arylations, 596
    - in decyanations, 569
    - in eliminations, 924
    - reaction with enol phosphorinates, 926
    - reduction:
      - of aromatic rings, 700–701
      - of cyclopropanes, 702
      - of multiple bonds, 695
      - of quaternary salts, 395
  - in *t*-BuOH, 390
  - in decyanation reactions, 569
  - in ethanol, 811, 813, 814, 1101
  - in ethylene glycol, 911
  - reaction with alkyl halides, 399, 400
  - reduction of carboxylic esters, 395
- Sodium aluminum hydride, 397, 398, 408, 510, 816
- Sodium amalgam, 394, 395, 926, 1110
  - reduction of sulfones, 747
- Sodium amide, 568
  - in eliminations, 915
  - reaction:
    - with aryl halides, 591
    - with ethers, 904
- Sodium ammonium tartrate, 106, 107
- Sodium arsenite, 390, 1116
- Sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminum hydride, 1102
- Sodium bisulfite, 588, 591–592, 688, 785
- Sodium borohydride:
  - decyanations with, 570
  - in demercuration, 548, 681, 685, 691, 861
  - in generation of borane, 703
  - reaction with alkenes and $TiCl_4$, 682
  - reduction:
    - of acyl halides, 396, 1102
    - of alcohols, 392
    - of aldehydes, 809–813
    - of alkyl halides, 390–392
    - of alkyl sulfonates, 392
    - of amides, 1099
    - of anhydrides, 1101
    - of aromatic rings, 702
    - of aryl halides, 510
    - of carboxylic esters, 395, 1100, 1101
    - of C=C bonds, 694, 695
    - of C=N compounds, 814
    - of C=O bonds, 694
    - of diazonium salts, 646, 647
    - of ditosylates, 395
    - of esters, 397
    - of imino esters, 793
    - of ketones, 809–813
    - of nitriles, 815
    - of nitro compounds, 594, 1103, 1116, 1117
    - of N-nitrosoamines, 1106
    - of ozonides, 1066
    - of tosylhydrazones, 1097, 1098
  - in reductive alkylation, 799, 800
- Sodium chlorite, 629
- Sodium cyanamide, 366
- Sodium cyanide, 594–595, 996–997
- Sodium cyanoborohydride, 391, 394, 799, 800, 815, 1097, 1098
- Sodium (cyclopentadienyl)ferrate, 921
- Sodium dichromate, 1058, 1072, 1077
- Sodium diethylaluminum hydride, 1095
- Sodium dihydro(trithio)borate, 1103, 1105, 1109
- Sodium ethoxide, 1105, 1116
- Sodium ethylene glycolate, 1117
- Sodium hydride, 511, 1052*n*, 1062, 1106
- Sodium hydrogen telluride, 391, 693

Sodium hydrosulfite, 391, 810, 1110
Sodium hydrotelluride, 1116
Sodium hypobromite, 574, 983, 1062
Sodium hypochlorite:
  oxidation of alcohols, 1057, 1058
  reaction:
    with amines, 574, 1083
    with arenes, 1071
    with thioureas, 934
    with tosylhydrazones, 785
Sodium hypophosphate, 816
Sodium iodide, 391, 392
Sodium methoxide, 1000
Sodium methyl mercaptide, 391, 396
Sodium nitrite, 648, 787, 1075, 1109
Sodium N,N-dimethylthiocarbamate, 360
Sodium perborate, 1087, 1089, 1092
Sodium periodate, 1066, 1071, 1089
Sodium peroxide, 339, 357, 785, 1077
Sodium peroxydisulfate, 636, 1083
Sodium persulfate, 654
Sodium selenide, 1091
Sodium stannite, 646
Sodium sulfhydride, 360, 362
Sodium sulfide, 361, 446, 923, 924
Sodium sulfite, 446, 1106
Sodium superoxide, 788
Sodium tetracarbonylferrate(−II), 430–432, 434
Sodium triacetoxyborohydride, 810
Sodium trialkylcyanoborates, 556
Sodium trimethoxyborohydride, 1101
Soft acids and bases, 228
Solid phase synthesis, 373
Solvated electrons, 569, 583
Solvation:
  of acids and bases, 234–236
  of anions, 517–518
  as the cause of the Baker-Nathan effect, 65
  of free radicals, 619
  of nucleophiles, 308, 317
Solvent:
  effect:
    on electrophilic substitution, 522
    on eliminations, 887, 896
    on free radical substitution, 619
    on nucleophilic substitution, 308, 316–320
Solvent acidity, measurement of, 223–225
Solvent effects, in acid and base strength, 234–236
Solvent isotope effects, 200–201, 330, 332, 884
Solvent polarity scales, 318–320
Solvent-separated ion pairs, 263
Solvolysis, definition, 255
Sommelet-Hauser rearrangement, 605–606
Sommelet reaction, 1082
Sonn-Müller method, 816
s orbitals, 3–4, 6–7, 11
Sorensen method, 413
Source Index, 1144
Soxhlet extractor, 831
Specialist Periodical Reports, 1137
Specific acid and base catalysis, definition, 226
Specific acid catalysis, 330
Specific rotation, 84, 107
Special salt effect, 264
Spectral data, 1134
Spectrophotometers, 202
Spherands, 78
Spin-forbidden transitions, 204, 205
Spin trapping, 163
Spiranes, chirality of, 91
Spiro compounds, 773
  formation of, 770
Spiro dioxides, 735–736
sp orbitals, 6–7, 9, 90
sp^2 orbitals, 7–9, 25, 130
sp^3 hybridization, of oxygen and nitrogen, 20–21
sp^3 orbitals, 7–9
sp^3d^2 orbitals, 12
sp^5 orbitals, 130
Squalene oxide, 710
Squaric acid and dianion, 63
SRN1 mechanism, 415, 582–583, 590–592, 596
Stabilomers, 962
Staggered conformation, 120–122
Stannous chloride, 390, 810, 816, 923
Statistical effects, on acid and base strength, 232
Statistical syntheses, 81, 1114–1115
Steady-state assumption, 193
Stephen reduction, 816
Stephens-Castro coupling, 595
Stereochemical evidence, 191
Stereochemistry, 82–140
Stereoelectronic control, 293
Stereoelectronic effects, 128*n*, 293–294, 616
Stereoheterotopic atoms, groups, and faces, 118
Stereoisomerism, 82–119
Stereoisomers, nomenclature of, 101–102, 109–115
Stereoselective, definition of, 119
Stereoselective, addition, 659–661, 665, 667, 679, 696, 713, 722, 744, 778, 817
Stereoselective, reactions, 102–104, 712, 852, 865
Stereoselective, reduction, 810, 811
Stereospecific, definition of, 119
Stereospecific, addition, 658–663, 665, 667, 673, 699, 707, 730, 735, 741, 748, 750, 760–763, 765, 770, 773
Stereospecific, aldol condensations, 833
Stereospecific, elimination, 874, 892, 923, 924, 929
Stereospecific, rearrangements, 961, 1003–1004, 1023
Steric effects:
  on acid and base strength, 233

Steric effects (*Continued*)
  in aromatic substitution, 457, 459–460, 463
  in electrophilic substitution, 521–522
  in elimination reactions, 890–893, 900
  quantitative treatments, 248–249
  on reactivity, 239–242
Steric hindrance, 240
  in biphenyls, 89–90
Steric inhibition of resonance, 34–35
Steroids:
  designation of stereochemistry, 102
  introduction of remote functionality, 1055–1056, 1078
  rearrangement of, 959*n*
Stevens rearrangement, 605, 606, 992–994
Stieglitz rearrangement, 989–990
Stilbenes:
  cyclization of, 1012–1013
  formation of, 1054
  isomerization of, 215
Stiles-Sisti reaction, 509
Stitching with boron, 996
Stobbe condensation, 835
Stork enamine reaction, 540–542
Story synthesis, 940–941
Strain, 130–140
  in medium rings, 134–136
  in small rings, 130–134, 136
  in unsaturated rings, 136–139
Strecker synthesis, 855
Strychnine, 105
Substitutions, types of, 180
Substitution transformations, naming of, 252
Substrate, definition, 179
Succinic anhydride, 486
Succinic esters, 779
Sulfamide, 933
Sulfamidomercuration, 691
Sulfamoyl chlorides, 367
Sulfenes, 443, 867, 916, 1031
Sulfenic acids, 607
Sulfenimides, 378
Sulfenylation, 536
Sulfenyl chlorides, 475, 637, 728
Sulfhydride ion, 589, 601
Sulfide ions, 601
Sulfides:
  acyloxylation of, 636
  alkylation of, 422–423
  conversion to alkenes, 914
  conversion to amines, 591
  coupling with halides, 406
  desulfurization of, 652
  formation of, 1171
  oxidation of, 1087, 1089
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 596
    with alkyl halides, 362
    with organometallic compounds, 411
Sulfinic acids:
  conversion to sulfones, 363, 590
  formation of, 1171
α-Sulfinyl carbanions, 154*n*
Sulfinic esters, formation of, 1171
Sulfite ion, 363, 590
Sulfo-de-hydrogenation, 473, 537
3-Sulfolene, 750
Sulfonamides:
  addition to multiple bonds, 689
  N-alkylation of, 377, 378
  conversion to sulfonates, 444
  formation of, 1171
  N-halogenation of, 574
  hydrolysis of, 444
Sulfonates, *see* Alkyl sulfonates; Aryl sulfonates
Sulfonation:
  of aromatic rings, 454, 473–475
  of carbonyl compounds, 537
Sulfonato-de-halogenation, 363
Sulfonatothio-de-halogenation, 363
Sulfones:
  addition to multiple bonds, 712, 818
  alkylation of, 420
  chirality of, 86
  conversion to alkenes, 913
  formation of, 1172
  halogenation of, 532
  nitration of, 638
  oxidation of, 1087
  pyrolysis of, 939–940
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 415
    with organometallic compounds, 411
  reduction of, 1108
Sulfonic acids:
  conversion:
    to amines, 591
    to anhydrides, 359
    to nitriles, 595
    to phenols, 588
    to sulfonyl halides, 445
  desulfonation of, 509
  formation of, 1172
  reaction:
    with aromatic rings, 476
    with ethers, 358
  reduction of, 1107
Sulfonium salts:
  chirality of, 88
  conversion to alkenes, 912
  formation of, 362
Sulfonylation, of aromatic rings, 476
Sulfonyl azides, 445, 1106
Sulfonyl halides:
  addition to multiple bonds, 727–728
  conversion:
    to episulfones, 867
    to sulfenes, 916
    to sulfonamides, 443, 445
    to sulfonates, 444
    to sulfones, 446
    to sulfonyl azides, 445
  desulfonation of, 509
  formation of, 1172
  hydrolysis of, 444
  reaction:
    with aromatic rings, 476
    with azoxybenzene, 1047
  reduction of, 445–446, 1107
  substitution reactions of, 442–446
Sulfonyl hydrazides, 445
Sulfonyl hydrazones, 856
Sulfoxides:
  chirality of, 88

  condensation with aldehydes and ketones, 836
  conversion:
    to alkenes, 913–914
    to unsaturated sulfides, 1055
  desulfurization of, 652
  formation of, 1172
  halogenation of, 532
  oxidation of, 1087, 1089
  reaction, with organometallic compounds, 411
  reduction of, 1108
Sulfoximides, 774*n*
Sulfur, 475, 550, 866, 1053, 1108, 1119
  extrusion of, 941
Sulfur dichloride, 475, 637
Sulfur dioxide, 551, 637, 648, 987
  extrusion of, 939–940
Sulfuric acid, reaction:
  with aromatic aldehydes, 506
  with aromatic rings, 473
  with alcohols, 344, 901, 903
  with alkenes, 682
  with N-haloamines, 1044
  with nitriles, 788
  with nitro compounds, 786, 787
  with oximes, 987, 989
  with polyalkylbenzenes, 508
  with sulfonic acids, 509
Sulfurization, of aromatic rings, 475
Sulfur tetrafluoride, 383, 725, 808–809
Sulfur trioxide, 327, 358, 473, 475, 537
Sulfuryl chloride, 529, 532, 550, 621, 725
  in chlorinations, 626
Sulfuryl chloride fluoride, 372
Sulfur ylides, *see* Ylides, sulfur
Super acids, 142–144, 219–220, 523, 540, 568
Suprafacial reactions, 756, 761, 762, 776, 777, 922, 1014–1016, 1019
"Survey of Organic Synthesis," 1140
Swain-Lupton treatment, 248
Swain-Scott equation, 309
Sydnones, 63
Symmetry:
  elements of, 84–85
  orbital, *see* Orbital symmetry
Symmetry factors, 233*n*
Symmetry-forbidden transitions, 204, 205
Syn addition, 658, 659, 662, 663, 665–666, 668, 669, 675, 696, 698, 699, 707, 721, 722, 729, 733, 734, 744, 748, 770, 773, 774, 778, 779, 780, 857
Syn-anti dichotomy, 878–880
Synclinal conformation, 122
Syn elimination, 850–851, 875–880, 886, 891, 893, 897, 898, 909–910, 913, 918–921, 926, 929
Syn isomers, 110
Synopses, 1122
Synperiplanar conformation, 122, 875, 878, 879
Synthon, definition of, 422
s–Z conformation, 976

Taft equation, 245–248
Tartaric acid, 83, 95, 101, 106
Tautomerism, 66–70
Tautomerization, 517, 527–529
"Techniques of Chemistry," 1138
Telluride ions, 406
Tellurides, formation of, 362
Tellurophene, 42*n*
Telluroxides, 913*n*
Telomers, 667
Termination reactions, 168, 608–609
Terpenes, 959, 961
Terphthalate ion, 508
Tetraalkylammonium fluorides, 412
Tetrabromoethane, 123
Tetra-*t*-butylallene, 672
Tetrabutylammonium periodate, 1075
Tetra-*t*-butylbenzenes, 139, 1010
Tetra-*t*-butylcyclobutadiene, 52*n*
Tetra-*t*-butylmethane, 140
Tetra-*t*-butylphenonium cation, 140
Tetra-*t*-butyltetrahedrane, 938–939
Tetracarbonylhydrocobalt, 723
Tetrachloroethane, 123
Tetracyanoethylene, 76, 670*n*, 746*n*, 751, 760, 769
Tetracyclo[3.3.1.1^{3,7}.0^{1,3}]decane, 400
Tetracyclo[2.2.0.0^{2,6}.0^{3,5}]hexane, 132
Tetracyclo[3.3.1.0^{2,8}.0^{4,6}]nonane, 132
Tetradecker sandwiches, 45
Tetraethyllead, 560
Tetrafluoroethane, 123
Tetrafluorethene, 671, 758, 759
Tetrahedral angles, 7, 20
Tetrahedral mechanism, 290–296, 781
  in acyl cleavages, 566
  in aldehyde oxidation, 630
  in the Claisen condensation, 438
  effect:
    of leaving group, 314–316
    of nucleophile, 310
    of substrate structure, 299, 301, 304
  in ester hydrolysis, 335–337
  in hydrolysis of acyl halides and anhydrides, 333
  table of reactions, 307
Tetrahedranes, 132–133, 938–939
Tetrahedron, inverted, 134
CC,NN-Tetrahydro-biaddition, 815
1/*N*,2,2,2/*C*-Tetrahydro-biaddition, 870
1/1/*N*,2/2/*C*-Tetrahydro-bielimination, 1061
Tetrahydrofuran, 393
Tetrahydrofurans, formation of, 631–632, 1045
Tetrahydropyrans, 631, 632
Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)-palladium, 932
Tetramethylammonium hydroxide, 907
Tetramethylcyclooctatetraene, 92
1,3,5,7-Tetramethyl-cyclooctatetraene dication, 45

Tetramethylenediamine, 705
Tetramethylsilane, 403
Tetramethyltin, 649
Tetrasulfides, 363
Tetrazolines, 938
Textbooks, 1139
Thallium, 594
Thallium acetate, 734, 785, 1089, 1092
Thallium bromide, 650
Thallium carboxylates, 654
Thallium cyanide, 441
Thallium nitrate, 784, 1051*n*, 1072, 1085, 1088, 1089, 1120
Thallium salts, 1063
Thallium thiocyanate, 728
Thallium triacetate, 636
Thallium trifluoroacetate, 484, 547
Theilheimer, 1137
Thermal-Michael reaction, 712*n*
Thermodynamic acidity, 152
Thermodynamic control of product, 187–188, 669
Thermodynamic requirements for reaction, 182
Thexylborane, 703, 706, 1096*n*
Thiazoles, 425
Thiazolines, 425
Thiazolium salts, 860
Thiiranes, *see* Episulfides
Thiiranium ions, 661*n*
Thiiren-1,1-dioxides, 922
Thiirenes, 737
Thiirenium ions, 661*n*
Thioacetals, 794, 795
  alkylation of, 422
  conversion to alkenes, 914
  desulfurization of, 652
  formation of, 688
  hydrolysis of, 331
  as protecting groups, 331
Thioaldehydes, 794
Thioalkylation, 496
Thioamides, 828
  desulfurization of, 652
  formation of, 493, 794, 1120
  isomerism of, 111
  reduction of, 1099
Thiobenzilic acid, 941
Thiocarbamates, formation of, 575, 789, 792
Thio-Claisen rearrangement, 1031
Thiocyanate ion, 364, 380–381, 590, 601, 728
Thiocyanates:
  conversion to thiocarbamates, 789
  coupling of, 597
  formation of, 1173
  oxidation of, 1087
  reaction with aromatic rings, 497
Thiocyanation, 476
  of ketones, 537
Thiocyanato-de-halogenation, 364
Thiocyanato-de-hydrogenation, 476
Thiocyanogen, 476
Thiocyanogen chloride, 476
Thioethers, *see* Sulfides
Thioketals, 795
  hydrolysis of, 331
  as protecting groups, 331
Thioketenes, 869
Thioketones, 780, 793, 794, 866
Thiol acids:
  addition to multiple bonds, 687
  conversion to amides, 377
  formation of, 1173
  reaction with halo ketones, 941
Thiolactams, 794, 869
Thiolactones, 794
Thiolate ions:
  as demethylating agents, 361
  as nucleophiles, 360–362, 589, 601, 687
Thiol esters:
  conversion:
    to amides, 377
    to diketones, 941
    to ketones, 435
  formation of, 1173
  hydrolysis of, 334
  oxidation of, 1087
  reduction of, 1100
Thiols, *see* Mercaptans
Thionocarbonates, 919
Thiono esters:
  desulfurization of, 652
  reduction of, 1100
Thionyl bromide, 383
Thionyl chloride:
  reaction:
    with alcohols, 287, 357, 382–384
    with amides, 933
    with aromatic rings, 475
    with carboxylic acids, 388
    with epoxides, 385
    with hydroxy sulfides and selenides, 926
    with nitro compounds, 593
    with oximes, 931, 988
    with sulfonic acids, 445
Thiophenes, 688
  electronic structure, 42
  desulfurization of, 653
  orientation in, 460–461
Thiophenols, *see* Mercaptans
Thiophosgene, 370
Thiosulfate ion, 363
Thioureas, 80, 360, 934, 1066
Thioxo-de-oxo-bisubstitution, 793*n*
Third-order reactions, 192
Thorium oxide, 442
Thorpe reaction, 854
Thorpe-Ziegler reaction, 854, 1116
Three-center, two-electron bond, 523
Threo compounds, 269, 277, 659, 875, 892, 898
Threo configuration, 102
Tiffeneau-Demyanov ring expansion, 965
Tight ion pairs, 263
Tin, 393, 510, 823, 1097, 1103
Tin hydrides, 813
Tin peroxide, 357
Tishchenko reaction, 1119
Titanium, 919
Titanium cyclopentadienide complexes, 826
Titanium dichloride, 1108
Titanium tetrachloride, 372, 410, 682, 724, 788, 871, 933, 981, 1002, 1092, 1111, 1112
Titanium trichloride, 391, 407–408, 784, 787, 919, 921, 925, 1103, 1108*n*, 1111, 1112

Titanocene dichloride, 1097, 1101, 1102
Title publications, 1125–1127
TMED, 705
Tollens' reaction, 844, 1117
Toluene:
  dipole moment, 15
  electrophilic substitution of, 465
p-Toluenesulfonate:
  as leaving group, 312
  see also Alkyl sulfonates; Aryl sulfonates
p-Toluenesulfonic acid, 920, 965
Tool of increasing electron demand, *see* Increasing electron demand, principle of
Torsion angle, 121
N-(1-Tosyl-1-alkenyl)formamides, 932
Tosylamino-hydroxy-addition, 738
Tosylates, as leaving group, 312. *See also* Alkyl sulfonates, Aryl sulfonates
N-Tosylated hydroxyamines, 738
Tosyl azide, 534, 535, 554, 573
Tosyl chloride, 532, 934
Tosyl cyanide, 539
Tosylhydrazides, reduction of, 1102
Tosylhydrazones:
  decomposition of, 910–912
  hydrolysis of, 785
  reaction with active hydrogen compounds, 841
  reduction of, 1097
Tosylmethylisocyanide, 840
Trade names, 1133
Transacetalation, 790
Transamination, 368, 592
Transannular interactions, 134–136
Transannular migration, 954, 958
Transannular reactions, 632, 1046
Transannular strain, 241
Trans cycloalkenes, 92, 106, 111, 137, 138
Transesterification, 351–352
Transetherification, 345, 589
Transfer hydrogenation, 695
Transformations:
  nomenclature, 252–254
Trans isomers, 109–114
  properties of, 111
Transition states, 183–186
  geometry, 188–189
  polar character of, 316, 610, 615
  of SN2 reaction, 256, 258–259
Transmetallation, 556–558
Transoid conformation, 748
Transoximation, 806
Treatises, 1137–1139
Tresylates, 312
Triacylamines, 371
1,1,1-Trialkali metal compounds, 545
Trialkoxyalkyl phosphorus halides, 383
Trialkylboranes, *see* Boranes
Trialkylcyanoborates, 996–998
Trialkylphosphine dihalides, 383
Trialkylsilanes, 1097
Trialkylzinclithium compounds,715
Triarylacetic acids, 341
Triarylmethyl cations, 145, 148
Triarylmethyl radicals, 164–167
Triaryl phosphates, 589
Triasterane, 132
Triazenes, 471, 502–503, 554, 573, 603, 641
Triazines, 864
Triazoles, 744
Triazolines, 741, 743, 937
Tri-*t*-butylamine, 140
Tri-*t*-butylbenzenes, 139, 1009–1010
Tri-*t*-butylcarbinol, 140
Tri-*t*-butylcyclobutadiene, 51, 1027
Tri-*t*-butylcyclopropenyl cation, 50
Tributyltin chloride, 1001
Tributyltin cyanide, 441
Tributyltin hydride, 390, 392, 396, 564, 646, 810, 919, 921, 923, 1108
Tri-*t*-butyltrifluorobenzene, 775
Tributylvinyltin, 649
Tricarbonylhydrocobalt, 722
Trichloroacetic acid, acidity of, 236
Trichloroacetonitrile, 497
Trichloroacetyl chloride, 931
Trichloroamine, *see* Nitrogen trichloride
Trichloroisocyanuric acid, 1080
Trichloromethanesulfonyl halides, 621
Trichloromethyl chloroformate, 370
Trichloromethyl radical, 616
Trichloromethylsilane, 334, 391, 1108
Trichlorosilane, 1099, 1100, 1102, 1108
Trichlorotriazine, 930
Tricyanomethyl radical, 165
Tricyclo[1.1.0.0^{2,4}]butane, 132–133
Tricyclo[3.1.1.0^{3,6}]heptane, 132
Tricyclo[1.1.1.0^{1,3}]pentane, 132
Tricyclopropylcyclopropenyl cation, 50
Trienes:
  interconversion with cyclohexadienes, 1002–1004, 1007–1009
  rearrangements of, 1017
Triethoxysilane, 1101
Triethylaluminum, 828
Triethylamine, 933
Triethylammonium chlorochromate, 785
Triethylenediamine, 922
Triethyloxonium fluoroborate, 1002, 1099
Triethyl phosphite, 810, 920, 921, 1110, 1112, 1116
Triethylsilane, 390, 646, 693, 694, 699, 791, 815, 1102
Triflate, as leaving group, 297, 312
Trifluoroacetic acid, as a solvent, 278, 286, 317
Trifluoroacetic anhydride, 355, 933, 996–998, 1075
Trifluoroacetyl iodide, 921
Trifluoroethanesulfonates, 312
Trifluoroethanol, 317
Trifluoroiodomethane, 731
Trifluoromethanesulfonates, 312

Trifluoromethanesulfonic acid, 499
Trifluoromethane sulfonic anhydride, 930
Trifluoromethyl hypofluorite, 529
Trifluoromethyl radical, 167
Trifluoroperacetic acid, 498
Trigonal hybridization, 7
Trihalides:
  conversion to ortho esters, 343
  hydrolysis of, 327
  reaction with aromatic rings, 480
Trihydro-de-oxo,-alkoxy-tersubstitution, 1101
Triirondodecacarbonyl, 1103
Triisobutylaluminum, 1052*n*
Triketones, formation of, 440
1,1,1-Trilithio compounds, 545
Trimethylaluminum, 408, 817, 825, 826
Trimethylamine, 934
Trimethylamine oxide, 13, 1083
Trimethyl borate, 549
Trimethylenemethane, 167
Trimethyl orthoformate, 1120
Trimethyl phosphate, 354
Trimethyl phosphite, 919, 1034, 1066
O-(Trimethylsilyl)aldehyde cyanohydrins, 553
Trimethylsilyl cyanide, 430
O-Trimethylsilyl cyanohydrins, 855
Trimethylsilyl iodide, *see* Iodotrimethylsilane
Trimethylsilylmethylpotassium, 545
Trimethylsilyl polyphosphate, 933
2-Trimethylsilylpropene, 719
Trimethylsilyl sulfides, 363
Trimethylsulfonium iodide, 865
Trinitrobenzene, 76
Trioxane, 862
Triphase catalysts, 322
Triphenylbismuth, 1063
Triphenylcarbinol, 1053
Triphenylchloromethane, 145
Triphenylene, 41
Triphenylmethyl carbanion, 153
Triphenylmethyl cation, 145, 149, 1055
Triphenylmethyl compounds, rearrangement of, 990
Triphenylmethylpotassium, 915*n*
Triphenylmethyl radical, 164–165, 167, 618
Triphenylphosphine, 987
  in dehalogenations, 925
  in phthalimide formation, 378
  reaction:
    with alcohols and CCl_4, 384
    with amides, 933, 934
    with azo sulfides, 941
    with carboxylic acids and CCl_4, 388
    with diols, 919
    with epoxides, 369, 385, 920
    with hydroxy acids, 928
    with sulfides, 923
  reduction:
    of amine oxides, 1107–1108
    of aryl halides, 510
    of azoxy compounds, 1107–1108
    of disulfides, 1110
    of hydroperoxides, 1109
    of nitrile oxides, 1108
    of nitroso compounds, 1116
    of sulfonic acids, 1107
    of sulfoxides, 1108
Triphenylphosphine dibromide, 367, 385, 389, 593, 934
Triphenylphosphine dichloride, 385, 389
Triphenyltin hydride, 510, 653
Triple-bond compounds, electronic structure of, 9
Triple bonds:
  migration of, 525
  in rings, 137–138
Triple-decker sandwiches, 45
Triplet biradicals, 167
Triplet carbenes, 171–173, 175–176, 544, 771
Triplet nitrenes, 176
Triplet nitrenium ions, 178
Triplet states, 204, 205, 207, 209–216, 765, 868, 1041–1043, 1111
  energies of, 212
Triplet-triplet transfer, 212, 868
Tripropylcyclopropenyl cation, 50
Tripropylsilane, 395, 656
Triptycene, 747
Trisalkylaminoboranes, 373
Trisalkylthioboranes, 362
Trisdialkylaminoboranes, 373
Tris(diethylamino)phosphine, 941, 1108, 1110
Trishomobarrelyl cation, 148
Tris[3-trifluoroacetyl-*d*-camphorato]europium-(III), 108
Tris(triphenylphosphine)-ruthenium(II) dichloride, 1031
Trithianes, 793, 794
Tritiation, 548
  of aromatic rings, 467, 468
Tritium isotope effects, 199
Tritium oxide, 468
Tritolylphosphine, 1119
Trityl, *see specific* Triphenylmethyl *entries*
Trivinylmethyl cations, 144
Tröger's base, 88
Tropinone, 801
Tropolones, 44
Tropones, 44
Tropylium ions, 43, 45, 483
Tungsten hexachloride, 1036–1038, 1112
Tunneling, 198*n*, 887
Twistane, 125
Twist conformation, 124–125
Twofold extrusion, 941
Two-stage mechanism, 583
Types I and II cleavage, *see* Norrish type I cleavage; Norrish type II cleavage

Udenfriend's reagent, 628
Ugi reaction, 870–871
Ullmann coupling reaction, 597–598
Ullmann ether synthesis, 589
Ultrasound, 335, 399, 436, 441, 510, 772, 823, 1058
Ultraviolet spectra, 202–203, 206
Umbrella effect, 86, 156
Umpolung, 419, 422

Ungerade orbitals, 5, 204
Unsaturated acids:
  cyclization of, 686
  cycloadditions of, 764
  decarboxylation of, 562–564
  formation of, 1173
Unsaturated alcohols:
  cleavage of, 858, 935
  formation of, 1173
  isomerization to ketones, 527
  pyrolysis of, 935
  rearrangement of, 1021
Unsaturated aldehydes:
  aldol condensation of, 831
  cleavage of, 831
  epoxidation of, 736
  formation of, 1173
  halogenation of 529*n*, 531
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 711–712
    with boranes, 717
    with organometallic compounds, 713–717
  rearrangement of, 1029
  reduction of, 692, 809, 810
Unsaturated esters:
  acylation of, 718
  condensation with aldehydes or ketones, 835
  epoxidation of, 735
  formation of, 1173
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 711–712
    with organometallic compounds, 713–717
  rearrangement of, 1029
Unsaturated ketones:
  acylation of, 718
  aldol condensation of, 831
  alkylation of, 418, 420
  cleavage of, 831
  conversion to epoxides, 865
  cycloadditions of, 764, 765
  epoxidation of, 735
  formation of, 1173
  fragmentation of, 929
  halogenation of, 529*n*, 531
  reaction:
    with active hydrogen compounds, 712
    with boranes, 717
    with HCN, 724
    with organometallic compounds, 713–717, 778
  rearrangement of, 1029, 1042–1043
  reduction of, 809, 810, 1097
Unsaturated nitriles:
  acylation of, 718
  formation of, 724
Unsaturated phenols, formation of, 1173
Unsaturated rings, strain in, 136–139
Unsaturated sulfides, formation of, 1033
Unsaturated sulfonates, 1031
Unsaturated sulfones:
  epoxidation of, 736
  formation of, 818
  reaction with organometallic compounds, 713
Unsaturated sulfoxy compounds, 714
Unsaturated tosylates:
  metathesis of, 1037
Unsaturated tosylhydrazones, 1098
Urea, 109, 376, 491
  inclusion compounds of, 79
Ureas:
  conversion to cyanamides, 933
  dehydration of, 934
  formation of, 1174
  rearrangement of, 983
Ureides, formation of, 1165
Urethanes, *see* Carbamates

Valence-bond method, 4–5, 24–26
Valence electrons:
  number of, 12
Valence isomerism, 768
Valence tautomerism, 1024–1027
Vanadium chloride, 399, 812
Vanadium pentoxide, 1071
van der Waals forces, 71, 79
Vibrational states, 204, 208, 209, 211
Vilsmeier-Haack reaction, 487
Vilsmeier reaction, 539, 732
Vinylacetylene, 710
Vinyl alcohol, 67
Vinylation, of diazonium salts, 649
Vinylboranes, 1000–1002
Vinyl cations, 663
Vinyl chloride, structure, 29
Vinylcyclobutenes, 1020
Vinylcyclopropanes, 1019–1020, 1041–1043
Vinylcyclopropanols, 1020
Vinylcyclopropenes, 1020
Vinyl ethers, *see* Enol ethers
Vinylic anions, 154*n*, 156, 519, 979
Vinylic boranes, 706
Vinylic cations, 147, 296–297, 483, 526
Vinylic cyanides, 430
Vinylic halides:
  conversion:
    to enol acetates, 353
    to alkynes, 915
  coupling of, 400, 401
  formation of, 1174
  hydrolysis of, 326
  rearrangement of, 978
Vinylic sulfides, 914
Vinyllithium compounds, 557, 911
Vinylology, 418, 831, 835, 842
Vinyl sulfides, *see* Enol thioethers
Visible spectra, 202–203
von Braun reaction:
  amide dehydration, 933
  amine cleavage, 387
von Richter rearrangement, 189, 190, 603–604

w (Bunnett value), 225, 336
Wacker process, 1084
Wadsworth-Emmons reaction, 848
Wagner-Meerwein rearrangement, 945*n*, 949, 958–963
Walden inversion, 256–258
Wallach reaction, 799
Wallach rearrangement, 1047
Water:
  addition to multiple bonds, 681–684, 783–789
  bond angle, 6, 20–21
  clathrates of, 80
  in hydrocarboxylation, 720

Water (*Continued*)
  in hydrolysis of sulfonyl halides, 444
  as nucleophile, 326–341, 601
  reaction:
    with diazo ketones, 974
    with isonitriles, 870, 871
    with metalated aldimines, 872
  see also Hydration; Hydrolysis
Wave nature of electrons, 3
Wheland intermediates, 448
Whitmore 1,2 shift, 943
Wigner spin-conservation rule, 211–212, 765*n*
Wilkinson's catalyst, *see* Chlorotris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium
Willgerodt reaction, 1119–1120
Williamson reaction, 342
Windshield-wiper effect, 281
Wittig reaction, 845–854
Wittig rearrangement, 994–995
Wöhler synthesis of urea, 803
Wohl-Ziegler bromination, 624
Wolff-Kishner reduction, 1096–1098
Wolff rearrangement, 176, 974
Woodward-Hoffmann rules, *see* Orbital symmetry
Woodward method, 734
Wurtz-Fittig reaction, 399
Wurtz reaction, 399

Xanthate ions, 602
Xanthates:
  cleavage of, 900, 905, 919
  formation of, 793, 905
Xenon fluorides, 479, 529, 655, 725

Ylides:
  definition, 36
  nitrogen:
    cleavage of, 907–909
    formation of, 546
    reaction with double bond compounds, 774, 865
    rearrangement of, 1033–1034
    stability of, 154
  phosphorous, *see* Phosphoranes
  sulfur, 773
    cleavage of, 912
    reaction with double bond compounds, 864–866
    rearrangement of, 606, 994, 1033–1034
Ynamines, 760
  alkylation of, 413
  formation of, 916
  hydration of, 683
Yukawa-Tsuno treatment, 248*n*
Y values, 318–320

Zaitsev elimination, 524, 877, 882, 888–893, 900, 902, 907, 915, 917, 959, 960
Zentralblatt, 1130, 1143
Zerewittenoff process, 548
Zero-point vibrational energy, 197
Ziegler alkylation, 599
Ziegler catalysts, 710
Zinc, 392, 393
  conversion to zinc-copper couple, 772
  reaction:
    with alkyl halides, 390, 399, 400
    with aryl halides, 510
    with dihalides, 924, 925
    with β halo compounds, 925
    with ozonides, 1066
  reduction:
    of aldehydes, 1112
    of alkenes, 693
    of anhydrides, 1101
    of azo and azoxy compounds, 1109–1110
    of diketones, 812
    of disulfides, 1110
    of hydrazo compounds, 1109–1110
    of hydrazones, 1105
    of hydroxylamines, 1105
    of ketones, 1107, 1112
    of nitriles, 816
    of nitro compounds, 1103, 1104, 1109, 1117
    of nitroso compounds, 1105
    of oximes, 1105
    of phenols, 593
    of sulfonyl halides, 445–446, 1107
  in reductive alkylation, 799
  in Reformatsky reaction, 822–824
Zinc amalgam, 1096
Zinc bromide, 401
Zinc chloride, 495–497
Zinc-copper couple, 772, 823
Zinc cyanide, 488–489
Zinin reduction, 1103
Zip reaction, 377
Z isomer, 109–111, 113
Z values, 319–320

WHITMAN COLLEGE LIBRARY

WHITMAN COLLEGE

QD 2.M37 1985
Advance rganic chemistry
3 5916 0103585 2

QD
251.2
.M37
1985
March, Jerry
Advanced organic
chemistry

ISBN 0-471-88841-9